ANESTHESIOLOGIST'S MANUAL OF SURGICAL PROCEDURES

Fifth Edition

EDITOR

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD
Professor of Anesthesia and Neurosurgery

ASSOCIATE EDITORS

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Anesthesia

Brenda Golianu, MD
Assistant Professor of Anesthesia

Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Wolters Kluwer
Health

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Brian Brown
Managing Editor: Nicole Dernoski
Senior Manufacturing Manager: Beth Welsh
Senior Marketing Manager: Daniel Dressler
Designer: Holly McLaughlin
Production Services: SPi Global

Copyright © 2014 by Wolters Kluwer Health
Two Commerce Square
2001 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103
LWW.com

Fourth edition, © 2009 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
Third edition, © 2004 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
Second edition, © 1999 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
First edition, © 1994 Lippincott-Raven Press

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form by any means, including photocopying, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright.

Printed in USA

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Anesthesiologist's manual of surgical procedures / editor, Richard A. Jaffe ; associate editors, Clifford A. Schmiesing, Brenda Golianu. — Fifth edition.
p. ; cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-4511-7660-5 (alk. paper)
I. Jaffe, Richard A., editor. II. Schmiesing, Clifford A., editor. III. Golianu, Brenda, editor.
[DNLM: 1. Anesthesia—methods. 2. Surgical Procedures, Operative. WO 235]
RD81
617.9'6—dc23

2014009122

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information presented and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of the information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in the publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at (800) 638-3030 or fax orders to (301) 223-2320. International customers should call (301) 223-2300.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: at LWW.com. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6 pm, EST.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Vernon J. Adams, Jr., DMD
Plastic and Dental Surgery
Palo Alto, California

Craig Albanese, MD
Professor of Surgery and, by courtesy, of Obstetrics & Gynecology and Pediatrics
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

D. M. Alcorn, MD
Associate Professor of Ophthalmology and Pediatrics
Department of Ophthalmology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Timothy Angelotti, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Department of Anesthesiology/CCM
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Martin S. Angst, MD
Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Philip Barbosa, MD
Resident in Urology
Department of Urology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Sandra Leigh Bardas, BSP, RPH, FCSHP
Clinical Pharmacist
Stanford Hospitals and Clinics
Stanford, California

Michael J. Bellino, MD
Clinical Associate Professor
Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford, California

Claudia Benkwitz, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology
Division of Pediatric Cardiac Anesthesiology
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Nashville, Tennessee

Melissa T. Berhow, MD, PhD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

David A. Berman, MD
Medical Director Dermatologic Surgeon
Berman Skin Institute
Palo Alto, California

William E. Berquist, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Packard Children's Hospital
Stanford University
Stanford, California

Nikolas H. Blevins, MD
Professor
Chief, Division of Otology/Neurotology
Medical Director, LPCH
Stanford Cochlear Implant Center Department
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

M. Gail Boltz, MD
Clinical Professor of Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

C. Andrew Bonham, MD
Associate Professor of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

John Brock-Utne, MD, MSc, PhD
Professor (Clinical) of Anesthesia, Emeritus
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Jay B. Brodsky, MD
Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University
School of Medicine
Medical Director – Perioperative Services
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Adam P. Brown, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
University of California
Los Angeles, California

Carlos Brun, MD
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Elizabeth Buescher, MD
Fellow in Minimally Invasive Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Alex J. Butwick, MD, MS, FRCA
Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Natalia F. Callaway, MD
Resident Physician
Bascom Palmer Eye Institute
Miami, Florida

Walter B. Cannon, MD
Clinical Professor of Surgery, Emeritus
Department of Cardiothoracic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Sean Carlton, PharmD, BCPS
Clinical Pharmacist
Stanford Hospital and Clinics
Stanford, California

Eugene J. Carragee, MD, FACS
Professor and Vice-Chairman
Chief, Spinal Surgery Section
Director, Orthopaedic Spine Clinic
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Ian Carroll, MD, MS
Clinical Instructor
Anesthesia and Pain Management
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Brendan Carvalho, MBBCh, FRCA
Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Michael W. Champeau, MD
Adjunct Clinical Professor of Anesthesia
Associated Anesthesiologists
Palo Alto, California

James Chang, MD
Professor of Surgery, and by courtesy, Orthopaedic Surgery
Division Chief of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California
Palo Alto Veterans Administration Health Care Center
Palo Alto, California

Steven D. Chang, MD
Professor of Neurosurgery
Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Bertha Chen, MD
Associate Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Michael I. Chen, MD
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Ivan Cheng, MD
Associate Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Sam Cheshier, MD
Assistant Professor of Neurosurgery, and by courtesy, of Neurology
Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Emilie V. Cheung, MD
Associate Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Benjamin I. Chung, MD
Assistant Professor of Urology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Rebecca E. Claure, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Lee Coleman, MD
Fellow, Obstetric Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

George W. Commons, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Functional Restoration
Plastic Surgery Center
Stanford University School of Medicine
Palo Alto, California

Waldo Concepcion, MD
Professor of Surgery
Multi-Organ Transplantation
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

John J. Csongradi, MD
Orthopedic Surgery
Santa Clara Valley Medical Center
San Jose, California

Myriam J. Curet, MD, FACS
Professor, Department of Surgery
Chief, Section of Minimally Invasive Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Michael D. Dake, MD
Professor, Cardiothoracic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Edward J. Damrose, MD
Associate Professor
Chief, Division of Laryngology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Charles DeBattista, MD
Professor of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences
Stanford University Medical Center
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences
Stanford, California

Dev M. Desai, MD, PhD, FACS
Associate Professor
Department of Surgery
University of Texas Southwestern Medical School
Chief, Division of Pediatric Transplantation
Children's Medical Center
Dallas, Texas

Alimorad G. Djalali, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Robert L. Dodd, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor of Neurosurgery and of Radiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Department of Neurosurgery/Neuroradiology
Stanford, California

Sarah S. Donaldson, MD, FACR, FASTRO
Catharine and Howard Avery Professor
Stanford School of Medicine
Radiation Oncology-Radiation Therapy
Stanford, California

Genevieve D'Souza, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor in Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Anne M. Dubin, MD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics (Pediatric Cardiology)
Lucile Packard Children's Hospital
Department of Pediatrics – Cardiology
Stanford, California

Michael Edwards, MD
Professor in Pediatric Neurosurgery and, by courtesy, of Pediatrics
Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Dan Eisenberg, MD, MS
Assistant Professor of Surgery,
Department of General Surgery
Palo Alto Veteran's Administration Health Care System
Palo Alto, California

Yasser Y. El-Sayed, MD
Associate Professor and Associate Chief
Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine and Obstetrics
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Carlos O. Esquivel, MD, PhD
Professor of Surgery
Department of Surgery
Chief, Division of Transplantation
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

James I. Fann, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Cardiothoracic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Ruth M. Fanning, MB, BCh, MRCPI, FFARCSI
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

William W. Feaster, MD
Clinical Professor of Anesthesia and Pediatrics
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Willard E. Fee, Jr., MD
Edward C. and Amy H. Sewall Professor
Stanford School of Medicine
Department of Otolaryngology/Head and Neck Surgery
Stanford, California

Jeffrey A. Feinstein, MD, MPH
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Lucile Packard Children's Hospital
Department of Pediatrics – Cardiology
Stanford, California

Stephen P. Fischer, MD
Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Linda E. Foppiano, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Brooke E. Friedman, MD
Fellow in Reproductive Endocrinology and Infertility
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Joan K. Frisoli, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor of Radiology
Department of Radiology-Diagnostic Radiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Louise Furukawa, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor in Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Amy E. Gallo, MD
Assistant Professor of Surgery, Abdominal Transplantation
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

James G. Gamble, MD, PhD
Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Paul R. Gigante, MD
Spine and Brain Clinic
Fairview Southdale Hospital
Edina, Minnesota

Harcharan S. Gill, MD
Associate Professor of Urology
Department of Urology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Brenda Golianu, MD
Associate Professor of Anesthesia (Pediatric Anesthesia)
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Julie Good, MD
Clinical Associate Professor in Anesthesia
Pediatric Pain and Symptom Management/ Palliative Care
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Stuart B. Goodman, MD, PhD, FRCSC, FACS
Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford, California

Ralph S. Greco, MD
Johnson and Johnson Professor of Surgery and Professor, by courtesy, of Mechanical Engineering
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Bruce D. Halperin, MD
Adjunct Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Gregory B. Hammer, MD
Professor of Anesthesia and, by courtesy, of Pediatrics
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Frank L. Hanley, MD
Lawrence Crowley, MD Endowed Professor in Child Health
Department of Cardiothoracic Surgery, Pediatric Cardiac Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Gary E. Hartman, MD
Clinical Professor of Pediatric Surgery and Surgical Education
Lucile Packard Children's Hospital
Stanford, California

Jaimie M. Henderson, MD
Professor of Neurosurgery
Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Vincent R. Hentz, MD
Professor of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, Emeritus
Chief, Hand and Upper Limb Service
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Charles C. Hill, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor in Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Susan Hiniker, MD
Fellow in Radiation Therapy
Department of Radiation Oncology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Terri D. Homer, MD
Anesthesiologist
Associated Anesthesiologists
Palo Alto, California

Anita Honkanen, MD
Clinical Associate Professor in Anesthesia
Chief, Pediatric Anesthesia Service
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

James I. Huddleston, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Kevin Huoh, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Otolaryngology – Head and Neck Surgery
University of California, Irvine School of Medicine
Division of Pediatric Otolaryngology
CHOC Children's Hospital
Orange, California

Peter H. Hwang, MD
Associate Professor
Chief, Rhinology, Otolaryngology Head & Neck Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Jerry Ingrande, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Robert K. Jackler, MD
Professor
Sewall Professor and Chair, OHNS
Associate Dean CME
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD
Professor of Anesthesia and, by courtesy, of Neurosurgery
Chief, Neurosurgical Anesthesia Service
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Stefanie S. Jeffrey, MD, FACS
Professor
Department of Surgery, Division of Surgical Oncology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Ronald Jou, MD
Surgical Critical Care Fellow
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

David M. Kahn, MD
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Surgery - Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Clayton Kaiser, MD
Cardiothoracic Fellow
Stanford School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Komal Kamra, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Michael J. Kaplan, MD
Professor
Chief, Head and Neck Surgery
Department of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Andrew C. Karich, MD
Orthopedic Surgeon
Saint Jude Heritage Healthcare
Fullerton, California

Sayed A. Karim, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Stephen T. Kee, MD
Associate Professor of Radiology and, by courtesy, of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Palo Alto, California

Vivek Kulkarni, MD
Clinical Associate Professor Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Amy L. Ladd, MD
Professor, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery
Chief, Robert A. Chase Hand Center
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Azeem K. Lakha, DMD
Private Practice, Dentist and Oral Surgeon
Palo Alto, California

C. Philip Larson, Jr., MD, CM
Professor of Anesthesia and Neurosurgery, Emeritus
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California
Professor of Clinical Anesthesiology, Emeritus
University of California, Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Mary Laughlin, MD
Fellow of Pediatric Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens, MD, PhD
Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

L. Bing Liem, DO
Cardiology, Cardiac Electrophysiology
Advanced Cardiovascular Specialist
El Camino Hospital
Mountain View, California

Dana T. Lin, MD
Fellow, General Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Eva D. Littman, MD
OBGYN/Infertility Specialist
Nevada Fertility CARES Center
Summerlin Medical Center
Las Vegas, Nevada

Birgit Maas, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Katsuhide Maeda, MD, PhD
Clinical Assistant Professor, Cardiothoracic Surgery
Department of Cardiothoracic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Hari R. Mallidi, MD
Associate Chief, Transplant Service
Surgical Director, Heart/Lung Transplantation
Texas Heart Institute
Houston, Texas

Kevin A. Malott, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Neyssa Marina, MD
Professor of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Michael P. Marks, MD
Chief, Interventional Neuroradiology
Professor of Radiology and, by courtesy, of Neurosurgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Marc L. Melcher, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor, Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Julianne Mendoza, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Robert E. Merritt, MD
Assistant Professor
Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Anna H. Messner, MD
Professor of Otolaryngology
Head of Neck Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Lucile Packard Children's Hospital
Stanford, California

Frederick G. Mihm, MD
Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Amin A. Milki, MD
Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology (Reproductive Endocrinology and Infertility)
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Brett L. Miller, MD
Clinical Instructor in Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Jacqualin Miller, MD
Fellow in Minimally Invasive Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Samuel A. Mireles, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

R. Scott Mitchell, MD
Professor of Cardiothoracic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Darius M. Moshfeghi, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Ophthalmology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Sam P. Most, MD
Professor
Chief, Facial Plastic Surgery Division
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Claudia Mueller, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor of Surgery (Pediatric Surgery)
Department of Pediatric Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Manchula Navaratnam, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Vladimir Nekhendzy, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Anesthesia and Otolaryngology
Chief, ENT Anesthesia Division
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Jordan L. Newmark, MD
Clinical Instructor in Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Camran R. Nezhat, MD, FACOG, FACS
Fellowship Director
Center for Special Minimally Invasive and Robotic Surgery
Clinical Professor of OB/GYN
University of California at San Francisco
Clinical Professor of OB/GYN and Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Sara Nikravan, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Jeffrey A. Norton, MD
Professor of Surgery
Chief, Surgical Oncology and General Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Daryl Oakes, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Harry A. Oberhelman, MD, FACS
Professor of Surgery, Emeritus
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Einar Ottestad, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Chandhana Paka, MD
Fellow in Minimally Invasive Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Julia Park, MD
Resident, General Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

M. Ali Parsa, MD, FACOG
Fellow in Minimally Invasive Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Ronald G. Pearl, MD, PhD
Chairman, Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Stanton B. Perry, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Cardiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Carlos E. Pineda, MD
Fellow in Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Nelson B. Powell, MD
Adjunct Clinical Professor
Department of Otolaryngology/Head & Neck Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Chandra Ramamoorthy, MD
Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

R. J. Ramamurthi, MD, FRCA
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Emily Ratner, MD
Clinical Professor in Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

V. Mohan Reddy, MD
Associate Professor of Cardiothoracic Surgery (Pediatric Cardiac Surgery) and Pediatrics
Lucile Packard Children's Hospital
Stanford, California

Bruce A. Reitz, MD
Norman E. Shumway Professor
Department of Cardiothoracic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Robert W. Riley, DDS, MD
Adjunct Clinical Professor
Department of Otolaryngology/Head & Neck Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Daniel J. Riskin, MD
Consulting Assistant Professor of Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Stephen I. Ryu, MD
Surgeon
Department of Neurosurgery
Palo Alto Medical Foundation
Palo Alto, California

Nima Salari, MD
Spinal Surgery
Desert Institute for Spine Care
Phoenix, Arizona

Thomas S. Satterwhite, MD
Plastic Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Stephen A. Schendel, MD, DDS, FACS
Professor Emeritus
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Donald M. Sesso, DO
Surgeon
Center for Facial and Airway Reconstructive Surgery
Palo Alto, California

Jeannie Seybold, MD
Adjunct Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Steven L. Shafer, MD
Professor of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Andrew A. Shelton, MD
Professor of Surgery (General Surgery)
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Linda M. Dairiki Shortliffe, MD
Professor and Chair of Urology
Stanford School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Lawrence M. Shuer, MD
Professor, Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Lawrence C. Siegel, MD
Professor of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Veterans Administration Hospital
Palo Alto Health Care System
Palo Alto, California

Vanila Singh, MD
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Eric J. Sirulnick, MD
Cardiologist
Cardiovascular Consultants of Nevada
Henderson, Nevada

Samuel K. S. So, MD, FACS
Lui Hac Minh Professor
Department of Surgery – General Surgery
Stanford School of Medicine
Stanford, California

David A. Spain, MD
Professor of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Gary K. Steinberg, MD, PhD
Bernard and Ronni Lacroute-William Randolph Hearst Professor of Neurosurgery and the Neurosciences
Chairman, Department of Neurosurgery
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Amanda Stevens, MD
Fellow in General Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Kristin Sun, MD
Clinical Instructor in Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Nai Yi Sun, MD
Fellow in Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Sarmela T. Sunder, MD
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Daniel Y. Sze, MD, PhD
Professor, Interventional Radiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Pedro P. Tanaka, MD
Clinical Associate Professor, Anesthesia
Department of Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

M. Mark Taslimi, MD
Clinical Professor of Obstetrics & Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California
Medical Director, Santa Cruz PDC
Santa Cruz, California

Maureen M. Tedesco, MD
Clinical Instructor
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Nelson N. Teng, MD, PhD
Associate Professor in Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Kalyani R. Trivedi, MD
Pediatrics, Pediatric Cardiology
California Pacific Medical Center
San Francisco, California

Pieter J. A. van der Starre, MD, PhD
Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Lindsey Vokach-Brodsky, MB, ChB, FFARCSI
Clinical Associate Professor of Anesthesia
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

James Wall, MD, MSE
Assistant Professor of Surgery (Pediatric Surgery)
Department of Pediatric Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Ellen Wang, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor, Anesthesiology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Irene L. Wapnir, MD, FACS
Associate Professor
Chief of Breast Surgery
Department of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Mark Lane Welton, MD
Harry A. Oberhelman Professor of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Gina Westhoff, MD
Gynecology Oncology Fellow
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Lynn M. Westphal, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Richard I. Whyte, MD, MBA
Vice Chair, Clinical Affairs
Department of Surgery
Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center
Harvard Medical School
Boston, Massachusetts

Julie Williamson, DO, FAAP
Clinical Assistant Professor of Anesthesia and Pediatrics-Critical Care
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Kimberley Wirsing, MD
Surgery
Department of Orthopaedics
Kaiser Permanente
Wailuku, Hawaii

Sherry M. Wren, MD
Professor of Surgery
Stanford University Medical Center
Palo Alto Veterans Hospital
Palo Alto, California

Imad M. Yamout, MD
Pediatric Anesthesiologist
Cook Children's Hospital
Fort Worth, Texas

Ann Ming Yeh, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
Department of Pediatrics-Gastroenterology
Stanford University Medical Center
Stanford, California

Kenneth K. Yim, MD, FACS
Plastic Surgeon
Santa Clara Valley Medical Center
San Jose, California

PREFACE

The goals of the fifth edition remain unchanged from those of the first—that is, to provide an easily accessible source of clinically relevant information about a wide variety of both common and not-so-common surgical procedures. As with the first edition, this edition does not pretend to be either a textbook of anesthesia or a textbook of surgery. Indeed, in the formulation of an anesthetic plan, there is no substitute for experience and sound clinical judgment.

Those familiar with the preceding editions will notice that the format and organization of this edition remain largely unchanged. Along with new procedures, every existing procedure was carefully reviewed and revised to reflect current clinical practice. We have continued to make use of color to improve readability of the tables and clarity of the figures. New to this edition, we are experimenting with the use of online video content for a subset of the procedures that we hope will help the reader understand these procedures better than a standard text presentation. All this video material is available through public online sources (e.g., YouTube), and thus the stability of each link and the quality of the content may vary over time in a way that is unfortunately beyond our control. If you find this video content useful or if you know of other video material that we should include, please contact us at AnesthesiologistsManual@gmail.com. Digital editions of this textbook are available through www.inkling.com

Once again, we have made extensive use of abbreviations, medical symbols, and telegraphic sentence structure to present a large quantity of information in a condensed format. Although we realize that it may be aesthetically more pleasing to read: "hypoxia or hypercapnia can lead to the development of tachycardia and hypertension," it takes up a lot less space to write: $\downarrow PaO_2$ or $\uparrow PaCO_2 \rightarrow \uparrow HR + \uparrow BP$.

As always, the editorial team welcomes comments and suggestions from our readers (e-mail: Anesthesiologists-Manual@gmail.com), and we remain hopeful that this fifth edition will become a useful resource in their training and subsequent clinical practice.

Richard A. Jaffe
Stanford University
February 2014

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This edition is built on the foundation of its predecessors and thus includes material from prior editions. We remain grateful to our many former contributors, some of whose words continue to live on in the current edition.

We would like to thank our families for their support, patience, and understanding; our colleagues on both sides of the blood–brain barrier for the time and effort they have generously invested in this educational project; our readers, whose many kind comments have been very much appreciated; Donna J. Allison, PhD, for a remarkable job of proofreading under adverse circumstances; our Executive Editor Brian Brown and our Managing Editor Nicole Dernoski for their patient and enthusiastic support of this project; and finally, our teachers and mentors, who have made anesthesiology such an exciting and fulfilling profession for us all.

CONTENTS

Contributing Authors iii
Preface xv
Acknowledgments xvii

1.0 NEUROSURGERY 1

1.1 Intracranial Neurosurgery 3

SURGEONS *Gary K. Steinberg, Robert L. Dodd, Sayed A. Karim, Lawrence M. Shuer, Steven D. Chang* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Richard A. Jaffe*

Craniotomy for intracranial aneurysms 4
Craniotomy for cerebral embolectomy 15
Craniotomy for intracranial vascular malformations 17
Craniotomy for extracranial-intracranial revascularization (EC-IC bypass) 23
Craniotomy for tumor 29
Considerations for awake craniotomy 34
Craniotomy for skull tumor 36
Craniotomy for trauma 37
Microvascular decompression of cranial nerve 44
Bifrontal craniotomy for CSF leak 47
Transoral or transnasal approach to the cervicomedullary junction and odontoid 50
Transsphenoidal resection of pituitary tumor 52
Ventricular shunt procedures 57
Craniocervical decompression (Chiari malformation) 61
Stereotactic neurosurgery 64

1.2 Functional Neurosurgery 71

SURGEONS *Jaimie M. Henderson, Paul R. Gigante, Lawrence M. Shuer*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Richard A. Jaffe*

Functional neurosurgery—introduction: the surgical treatment of pain, movement disorders, and epilepsy 72
Stereotactic procedures: deep brain stimulation, pallidotomy, and thalamotomy 73
Surgical analgesics: spinal cord stimulation, intrathecal pumps, and cortical stimulation 77
Vagus nerve stimulation 80
Epilepsy surgery 83
Surgery for spasticity 87
Percutaneous procedures for trigeminal neuralgia 89

1.3 Spinal Neurosurgery 93

SURGEONS *Stephen I. Ryu, Lawrence M. Shuer*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Adam P. Brown, C. Philip Larson, Jr.*

Anterior fusion/fixation of the upper cervical (C1-C2) spine 94
Posterior fusion/fixation of the upper cervical spine 96
Anterior fusion/fixation of the mid and lower cervical spine 100
Posterior fusion/fixation of the mid and lower cervical spine 103
Anterior cervicothoracic spine surgery 107
Anesthetic considerations for cervical neurosurgical procedures 108
Anterior thoracic spine surgery 114
Posterior thoracic spine surgery 116
Anterior lumbar/lumbosacral spine surgery 119

Posterior lumbar spine surgery 122
Posterior lumbar fusion and instrumentation 124
Combined anterior and posterior instrumentation of the thoracic and lumbar spine 126
Anesthetic considerations for thoracolumbar neurosurgical procedures 127

1.4 Carotid Endarterectomy 133

SURGEONS *Gary K. Steinberg, Robert L. Dodd* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Richard A. Jaffe*

Carotid endarterectomy 134

2.0 OPHTHALMIC SURGERY 143

SURGEONS *Natalia F. Callaway, Darius M. Moshfeghi* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Richard A. Jaffe*

Cataract extraction with intraocular lens insertion 144
Corneal transplant 146
Trabeculectomy 148
Ectropion repair 151
Entropion repair 152
Ptosis repair 153
Eyelid reconstruction 155
Pterygium excision 157
Repair of ruptured or lacerated globe 162
Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR) 165
Enucleation 168
Orbitotomy—anterior and lateral 170
Retinal surgery 171

3.0 OTOLARYNGOLOGY—HEAD AND NECK SURGERY 177

SURGEONS *Michael J. Kaplan, Edward J. Damrose, Nikolas H. Blevins, Robert K. Jackler, Peter H. Hwang, Sarmela T. Sunder, Sam P. Most, Willard E. Fee, Jr., Robert W. Riley, Nelson B. Powell, Donald M. Sesso* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Vladimir Nekhendzy, Brett L. Miller, Michael W. Champeau*

Introduction—surgeon's perspective 178
Introduction—anesthesiologist's perspective 178
Anesthetic management 179
Laryngoscopy/bronchoscopy/esophagoscopy 181
Tracheotomy/tracheostomy and cricothyroidotomy 190
Intubation for epiglottitis 194
Zenker's diverticulectomy (open approach) 195
Laryngeal framework surgery (thyroplasty, arytenoid adduction, injection laryngoplasty) 197
Tracheal and cricotracheal resection 200
Laryngectomy: partial and total 203
Tonsillectomy and/or adenoidectomy 207
Glossectomy 212
Maxillectomy and orbit exenteration 214
Composite resection with marginal or segmental mandibulectomy (and neck dissection) 217
Neck dissection 218
Lymph node biopsy 223
Parotidectomy: superficial, total, or radical 224
Submandibular gland excision 226
Endoscopic sinus surgery 229
External sinus surgery 235
Nasal surgery (rhinoplasty, septoplasty, septorhinoplasty) 237
Facial plastic surgery 238
Otology and neurotology 244

Neurotological skull base surgery 249
Reconstructive surgery for sleep-disordered breathing 258

4.0 DENTAL SURGERY 269

SURGEON *Stephen A. Schendel* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Richard A. Jaffe*

Temporomandibular joint arthroscopy/arthrotomy 270
Oral surgery 272
Restorative dentistry 273

5.0 THORACIC SURGERY 277

SURGEONS *Robert E. Merritt, Walter B. Cannon*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Vivek Kulkarni, Jay B. Brodsky*

Introduction—surgeon's perspective 278
Lobectomy, pneumonectomy 281
Wedge resection of lung lesion 290
Chest-wall resection 293
Repair of pectus excavatum or carinatum 295
Thoracoplasty 299
Drainage of empyema 300
Tracheal resection 304
Excision of mediastinal tumor 308
Mediastinoscopy 309
Endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration 315
Bronchoscopy—flexible and rigid 320
Airway laser surgery 324
Video-assisted thoracoscopy surgery (VATS) 326
Thymectomy 329
Excision of blebs or bullae 333
Lung-volume reduction surgery 336
Bronchopulmonary lavage 340
Lung transplant 344

6.0 CARDIOVASCULAR SURGERY 345

6.1 Cardiac Surgery 347

SURGEON *R. Scott Mitchell* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Linda E. Foppiano, Lawrence C. Siegel, Daryl Oakes*

Cardiopulmonary bypass 348
Coronary artery bypass graft surgery 354
Left ventricular aneurysmectomy 360
Aortic valve replacement 361
Mitral valve repair or replacement 365
Tricuspid valve repair 369
Septal myectomy/myotomy 372
Pacemaker insertion 376
Pericardiectomy 379

6.2 Minimally Invasive Cardiac Surgery 383

SURGEONS *James I. Fann, Clayton Kaiser* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Lawrence C. Siegel*

Off-pump and minimally invasive coronary artery bypass grafting 384
Port-access coronary revascularization 389
Limited thoracotomy and port-access approaches to valve surgery 394
Transcatheter valve replacement procedures 396

6.3 Vascular Surgery 405

SURGEONS *James I. Fann, R. Scott Mitchell, Clayton Kaiser, Stephen T. Kee, Michael D. Dake* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Pieter J. A. van der Starre*

Carotid endarterectomy (vascular) 406
Repair of thoracic aortic aneurysms 409
Endovascular stent-grafting of aortic aneurysms 412
Repair of acute aortic dissections 416
Repair of aneurysms of the thoracoabdominal aorta 422
Surgery of the abdominal aorta 428
Infrainguinal arterial bypass 434
Arterial embolectomy 438
Lumbar sympathectomy 439
Venous surgery—thrombectomy or vein excision 442
Surgery for portal hypertension 444
Arteriovenous access for hemodialysis 451
Permanent vascular access 453
Venous surgery—vein stripping and perforator ligation 457
Varicose vein stripping and ablation 458

6.4 Heart/Lung Transplantation 463

SURGEONS *Hari R. Mallidi, Bruce A. Reitz*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Daryl Oakes, Linda E. Foppiano*

Surgery for heart transplantation 464
Surgery for lung and heart/lung transplantation 469

7.0 GENERAL SURGERY 479

7.1 Esophageal Surgery 481

SURGEONS *Richard I. Whyte, Jeffrey A. Norton* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Vivek Kulkarni*

Esophagostomy 482
Esophageal diverticulectomy 483
Management of esophageal perforation 487
Esophagomyotomy 489
Esophagogastric fundoplasty 490
Esophagectomy 492

7.2 Stomach Surgery 501

SURGEONS *Dan Eisenberg, Myriam J. Curet, Sherry M. Wren, Maureen M. Tedesco*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Kevin A. Malott, Jay B. Brodsky, Jerry Ingrande*

Gastric resections 502
Gastric or duodenal perforation 505
Operations for peptic ulcer disease 506
Open operations for morbid obesity 511
Gastrostomy placement 517

7.3 Intestinal Surgery 519

SURGEONS *Jeffrey A. Norton, Harry A. Oberhelman* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Kevin A. Malott*

Duodenotomy 520
Open appendectomy 521
Excision of Meckel's diverticulum 523
Enterostomy 526
Continent ileostomy pouch (Kock) 528

Small-bowel resection with anastomosis 530
Enterolysis 532
Closure of enteric fistulae 533

7.4 Colorectal Surgery 537

SURGEONS *Andrew A. Shelton, Carlos E. Pineda, Mark Lane Welton*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Clifford A. Schmiesing, Alimorad G. Djalali*

Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) 538
Laparoscopic colorectal surgery 538
Total proctocolectomy 539
Segmental (partial) colectomy 542
Stoma closure or peristomal hernia repair 545
Operations for rectal prolapse 549
Rectal surgery 551
Anorectal surgery 554
Surgery for anal fistulas 554
Hemorrhoidectomy/stapled hemorrhoidopexy 556
Operations for fecal incontinence 558

7.5 Hepatic Surgery 563

SURGEONS *Samuel K. S. So, Harry A. Oberhelman*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens*

Hepatic resection 564
Hepatorrhaphy 566

7.6 Biliary Tract Surgery 571

SURGEON *C. Andrew Bonham* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens*

Open cholecystectomy and common bile duct exploration 572
Biliary drainage procedures 574
Excision of bile duct tumor 577
Choledochal cyst excision or anastomosis 578
Anesthetic considerations for biliary tract surgery 580

7.7 Laparoscopic General Surgery 583

SURGEONS *Myriam J. Curet, Sherry M. Wren, Maureen M. Tedesco* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Ruth M. Fanning, Clifford A. Schmiesing, Jay B. Brodsky, Jerry Ingrande, Brendan Carvalho*

Laparoscopic repair of perforated peptic ulcer 584
Laparoscopic esophageal fundoplication 585
Laparoscopic Heller myotomy ± antireflux procedure 588
Laparoscopic cholecystectomy, ± common duct exploration 589
Laparoscopic splenectomy 595
Laparoscopic adrenalectomy 599
Laparoscopic bowel resection 602
Laparoscopic appendectomy 605
Laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair 609
Laparoscopic bariatric surgery 611
Anesthesia for laparoscopy in pregnancy 619

7.8 Pancreatic Surgery 623

SURGEON *Jeffrey A. Norton* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Martin S. Angst*

Operative drainage for pancreatitis 624
Drainage of pancreatic pseudocyst 625

Longitudinal pancreaticojejunostomy 627
Pancreatectomy 629
Whipple resection 632

7.9 Peritoneal Surgery 639

SURGEONS *Jeffrey A. Norton, Harry A. Oberhelman* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Martin S. Angst*

Exploratory or staging laparotomy 640
Splenectomy 645
Excision of intraabdominal, retroperitoneal tumors 647
Drainage of subphrenic abscess 649
Inguinal herniorrhaphy 651
Femoral herniorrhaphy 653
Repair of incisional hernia 654
Repair of abdominal dehiscence 655

7.10 Breast Surgery 659

SURGEONS *Irene L. Wapnir, Stefanie S. Jeffrey* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Clifford A. Schmiesing*

Breast biopsy 660
Sentinel lymph node biopsy 661
Breast-conserving surgery and mastectomy ± reconstruction 664

7.11 Endocrine Surgery 669

SURGEONS *Julia Park, Dana T. Lin, Ralph S. Greco*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Sara Nikravan, Frederick G. Mihm*

Excision of thyroglossal duct cyst 670
Thyroidectomy 672
Parathyroidectomy 678
Adrenalectomy 683

7.12 Liver/Kidney/Pancreas Transplantation 693

SURGEONS *Amy E. Gallo, Marc L. Melcher, Dev M. Desai, Carlos O. Esquivel*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Timothy Angelotti, Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens*

Kidney transplantation—cadaveric and live-donor 694
Cadaveric kidney/pancreas transplantation 696
Live-donor nephrectomy—laparoscopic and open 700
Kidney transplant nephrectomy 702
Liver transplantation 705
Living-donor liver transplantation 718
Multiorgan procurement 720

7.13 Trauma Surgery 727

SURGEONS *Daniel J. Riskin, David A. Spain, Ronald Jou* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Charles C. Hill*

Initial assessment and airway management for trauma surgery 728
Emergency tube thoracostomy 730
Emergency department thoracotomy 732
Exploratory surgery for neck trauma 733
Anesthetic considerations for neck trauma surgery 736
Chest trauma: pericardial window, release of tamponade, repair of cardiac laceration 737
Chest trauma: repair of great vessels 740
Chest trauma: pneumonectomy, lobectomy, repair of tracheobronchial injury 741
Abdominal trauma: damage control 745
Abdominal trauma: hepatic and splenic injuries 747

Abdominal trauma: vascular injuries 749
Pediatric trauma 754

8.0 OBSTETRIC/GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY 757

8.1 Gynecologic Oncology 759

SURGEONS *Gina Westhoff, Nelson N. Teng* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Clifford A. Schmiesing*

Staging laparotomy for ovarian, fallopian tube, and primary peritoneal cancer 760
Interval, secondary cytoreductive, and second look assessment laparotomy 764
Radical vulvectomy 768
Conization of the cervix 773
Anesthetic considerations for laser therapy to vulva, vagina, cervix 776
Suction curettage for gestational trophoblastic disease 777
Pelvic exenteration 781
Exploratory laparotomy or laparoscopy, hysterectomy/BSO for uterine cancer 787
Radical hysterectomy 790
Robotic-assisted laparoscopy and surgery in gynecologic oncology 794
Interstitial perineal implants 796

8.2 Gynecology/Infertility Surgery 801

SURGEONS *Bertha Chen, Eva D. Littman, Amin A. Milki, Lynn M. Westphal, Brooke E. Friedman*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Clifford A. Schmiesing*

Dilatation and curettage (D&C) 802
Therapeutic abortion, dilatation, and evacuation (D&E) 803
Hysteroscopy 807
Pelvic laparotomy 811
Transvaginal oocyte retrieval (TVOR) 813
Infertility operations/assisted reproductive technologies 815
Hysterectomy—vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic or robotic 820
Operations for pelvic organ prolapse: anterior and posterior colporrhaphy, enterocele repair, sacrospinous ligament vaginal vault suspension, uterosacral ligament vaginal vault suspension, sacrocolpopexy 824
Operations for stress urinary incontinence 828

8.3 Obstetric Surgery 833

SURGEONS *M. Mark Taslimi, Yasser Y. El-Sayed*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Brendan Carvalho, Lee Coleman*

Cesarean section—lower segment and classic 834
Medical and surgical management of postpartum hemorrhage 841
Repair of uterine rupture 844
Postpartum tubal ligation 845
Repair of vaginal/cervical lacerations 848
Cervical cerclage—elective and emergent 851
Removal of retained placenta 854
Management of uterine inversion 858

8.4 Laparoscopic Procedures for Gynecologic Surgery 861

SURGEONS *Camran R. Nezhat, Jacqualin Miller, Amanda Stevens, Chandhana Paka, Elizabeth Buescher, M. Ali Parsa*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Clifford A. Schmiesing*

Laparoscopic surgery for endometriosis 862
Laparoscopic surgery for ectopic pregnancy or adnexal mass 865
Laparoscopic myomectomy 867

Laparoscopic hysterectomy 869
Laparoscopic surgery for vaginal vault suspension 872

9.0 UROLOGY 877

SURGEONS *Harcharan S. Gill, Benjamin I. Chung* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Ronald G. Pearl*

Diagnostic transurethral (endoscopic) procedures 878
Therapeutic transurethral procedures (except TURP) 880
Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) 883
Open prostate operations 887
Nephrectomy 891
Operations on the renal pelvis and upper ureter 895
Cystectomy 899
Open bladder operations (other than cystectomy) 903
Inguinal operations 906
Penile operations 910
Scrotal operations 913
Perineal operations 916
Vaginal operations 918
Special considerations for robotic-assisted laparoscopic procedures 922

10.0 ORTHOPEDIC SURGERY 925

10.1 Hand Surgery 927

SURGEONS *Vincent R. Hentz, Kimberley Wirsing* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Lindsey Vokach-Brodsky*

Darrach procedure 928
Dorsal stabilization and extensor synovectomy of the rheumatoid wrist 929
Metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joint arthroplasty and arthrodesis 931
Arthrodesis of the wrist 932
Total wrist replacement 934
Thumb carpometacarpal joint fusion/arthroplasty/stabilization 935
Excision of ganglion of the wrist 939
Palmar and digital fasciectomy 940
Repair of lacerated tendons/nerves 941
Wrist arthroscopy/repair of triangular fibrocartilage complex tears 946
Carpal tunnel release 947
Fixation of fractures and dislocations of the wrist and hand 950
Digit and hand replantation 953

10.2 Shoulder/Arm Surgery 957

SURGEONS *Amy L. Ladd, Andrew C. Karich, Emilie V. Cheung*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Lindsey Vokach-Brodsky*

Arthroscopic shoulder surgery 958
Surgery for acromial impingement, rotator cuff tears, and acromioclavicular joint arthritis 960
Surgery for shoulder instability 964
Glenohumeral shoulder arthroplasty 969
Shoulder girdle procedures 973
Brachial plexus surgery 974
Arm surgery 978

10.3 Spine Surgery 983

SURGEONS *Eugene J. Carragee, Ivan Cheng, Nima Salari*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Adam P. Brown, C. Philip Larson, Jr.*

Minimally invasive posterior lumbar discectomy (microdiscectomy) 984

Minimally invasive anterior lumbar interbody fusion through a transpsoas approach 985
Spinal reconstruction and fusion—thoracic and thoracolumbar spine 988
Spinal reconstruction and fusion—lumbosacral spine 992
Spinal reconstruction and fusion—cervical spine 995

10.4 Hip, Pelvis, Upper Leg Surgery 1003

SURGEONS *James I. Huddleston, Michael J. Bellino, Stuart B. Goodman*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Frederick G. Mihm, Pedro P. Tanaka*

Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of pelvis or acetabulum 1004
Closed reduction and external fixation of the pelvis 1006
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of acetabulum fractures 1008
Osteotomy and bone graft augmentation of the pelvis 1011
Arthrodesis of the sacroiliac joint 1012
Amputations about the hip and pelvis: disarticulation of the hip and hindquarter amputation 1014
Arthroplasty of the hip 1018
Arthrodesis of the hip 1021
Synovectomy of the hip 1022
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of proximal femoral fractures (femoral neck, intertrochanteric, subtrochanteric fractures) 1026
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of distal femur fractures 1029
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of the femoral shaft with plate 1030
Intramedullary nailing of femoral shaft 1031
Repair of nonunion/malunion of proximal third of femur, proximal femoral osteotomy for osteoarthritis 1033
Closed reduction and external fixation of femur 1034

10.5 Knee Surgery 1037

SURGEONS *James I. Huddleston, John J. Csongradi, Stuart B. Goodman*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Frederick G. Mihm, Pedro P. Tanaka*

Arthroplasty of the knee 1038
Arthrodesis of the knee 1039
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of patellar fractures 1041
Repair or reconstruction of knee ligaments 1042
Patellar realignment 1044
Arthroscopy of the knee 1046
Knee arthrotomy 1047
Repair of tendons—knee and leg 1048

10.6 Lower Leg, Ankle, Foot, and Other Lower-Extremity Procedures 1055

SURGEON *John J. Csongradi* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Frederick G. Mihm, Pedro P. Tanaka*

Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of the tibial plateau fracture 1056
Intramedullary nailing, tibia 1057
External fixation, tibia 1058
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of distal tibia, ankle, and foot fractures 1059
Repair nonunion/malunion, tibia 1060
Arthroscopy of the ankle 1061
Ankle arthrotomy 1063
Ankle arthrodesis 1064
Repair/reconstruction of ankle ligaments 1065
Amputation through ankle (syme) 1066
Amputation, transmetatarsal 1068
Lengthening or transfer of tendons, ankle, and foot 1069

Amputation above the knee 1070
Amputation below the knee 1072
Fasciotomy of the thigh 1075
Fasciotomy of the leg 1077
Biopsy, leg and foot 1080
Biopsy or drainage of abscess/excision of tumor 1081

11.0 PLASTIC AND RECONSTRUCTIVE SURGERY 1087

11.1 Facial Cosmetic Surgery 1089

SURGEONS *Thomas S. Satterwhite, David M. Kahn* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Vanila Singh*

Introduction to cosmetic facial surgery 1090
Facelift and necklift 1090
Browlift and blepharoplasty 1095
Rhinoplasty 1101
Facial laser resurfacing 1104

11.2 Nonfacial Aesthetic Surgery 1107

SURGEONS *Thomas S. Satterwhite, David M. Kahn, George W. Commons*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Vanila Singh, Bruce D. Halperin*

Augmentation mammoplasty 1108
Reduction mammoplasty 1110
Mastopexy/breast lift 1112
Brachioplasty 1114
Abdominoplasty 1116
Body lifts 1120
Liposuction 1122

11.3 Craniofacial Surgery 1127

SURGEON *Stephen A. Schendel* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Richard A. Jaffe*

Repair of facial fractures 1128
Lefort osteotomies 1136
Mandibular osteotomies/genioplasty 1140

11.4 Functional Restoration 1147

SURGEONS *James Chang, David M. Kahn* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Vanila Singh*

Microsurgery-free-flap reconstruction 1148
Microsurgery-replantation 1152
Breast surgery—introduction 1155
Breast reconstruction 1155
Chest wall reconstruction 1160
Pressure sore reconstruction 1162

11.5 Burn Surgery 1167

SURGEON *Kenneth K. Yim* **ANESTHESIOLOGIST** *Melissa T. Berhow*

Free skin graft for burn wound (with tangential excision, excision to fascia, or debridement) 1168

12.0 PEDIATRIC SURGERY 1175

12.1 Pediatric Neurosurgery 1177

SURGEONS *Michael Edwards, Sam Cheshier*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Michael I. Chen, William W. Feaster*

Craniofacial surgery 1178
Closure of myelomeningocele 1181
Surgical correction of occult spinal dysraphism 1184
Craniotomy for vein of galen malformation 1187
Ventriculoscopy and third ventriculostomy 1190
Pediatric brain arteriovenous malformations (AVM) 1194

12.2 Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery 1197

SURGEONS *D. M. Alcorn, Natalia F. Callaway, Darius M. Moshfeghi*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Julie Williamson*

Strabismus surgery 1198
Pediatric vitreoretinal surgery 1201

12.3 Pediatric Otolaryngology 1209

SURGEONS *Anna H. Messner, Kevin Huoh* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Samuel A. Mireles, Ellen Wang, Gregory B. Hammer*

Myringotomy and tympanostomy tube placement 1210
Tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy 1212
Bronchoscopy/esophagoscopy 1216
Laryngoscopy, supraglottoplasty, excision of laryngeal lesions 1217
Removal of branchial cleft cyst or thyroglossal duct cyst 1221
Incision/drainage of deep neck abscess 1222
Laryngotracheal reconstruction, cricotracheal resection, laryngotracheoplasty 1224
Choanal atresia repair 1227
Pediatric tracheostomy 1229

12.4 Pediatric Cardiovascular Surgery 1231

SURGEONS *Katsuhide Maeda, V. Mohan Reddy, Frank L. Hanley*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Claudia Benkwitz, Komal Kamra, M. Gail Boltz, Chandra Ramamoorthy*

Surgery for atrial septal defect (ostium secundum) 1232
Surgery for atrioventricular canal defect 1237
Surgery for ventricular septal defect 1241
Surgery for patent ductus arteriosus 1244
Surgery for coarctation of the aorta 1248
Surgery for tetralogy of fallot 1252
Surgery for total anomalous pulmonary venous connection 1258
Surgery for complete transposition of the great arteries 1262
Surgery for truncus arteriosus 1267
Surgery for tricuspid atresia 1270
Surgery for double-outlet right ventricle 1274
Surgery for hypoplastic left heart syndrome 1276

12.5 Pediatric General Surgery 1281

SURGEONS *James Wall, Craig Albanese*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Rebecca E. Claure, Brenda Golianu, Gregory B. Hammer*

Resection of cystic hygroma, branchial cleft cyst, thyroglossal duct cyst, or other cervical mass 1282
Esophagus-foreign body removal and dilation 1285
Repair of tracheoesophageal fistula and esophageal atresia 1287
Mediastinal mass—biopsy or resection 1292
Neonatal lung resection 1295
Drainage of empyema 1299
Repair of pectus excavatum/carinatum 1301
Esophageal replacement, colon interposition 1305
Repair of congenital diaphragmatic hernia 1308
Pyloromyotomy for pyloric stenosis 1312
Abdominal tumor: resection of neuroblastoma, Wilms' tumor, hepatic tumors 1316
Laparotomy for intestinal perforation, necrotizing enterocolitis 1320
Repair of biliary atresia and choledochal cysts 1323
Repair of abdominal wall defects: omphalocele/gastroschisis 1327
Pull-through for Hirschsprung's disease 1331
Pull-through for imperforate anus, cloaca 1335
Repair of inguinal & umbilical hernias, hydrocele 1337
Surgery for the undescended testicle 1340
Resection of sacrococcygeal teratoma 1342
Anesthesia for minimally invasive surgery in pediatric patients 1344
Ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure 1346
Pediatric bariatric surgery 1350

12.6 Pediatric Urology 1357

SURGEONS *Philip Barbosa, Linda M. Dairiki Shortliffe*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Imad M. Yamout, Anita Honkanen*

Kidney and upper urinary tract operations 1358
Transurethral procedures 1363
Open bladder operations 1365
Bladder augmentation 1367
Penile surgery 1369
Genital procedures (clitoroplasty, vaginoplasty, urethroplasty) 1371
Inguinoscrotal procedures 1374
Laparoscopic procedures 1377
Robotic-assisted procedures 1378
Stone procedures 1380

12.7 Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery 1383

SURGEONS *James G. Gamble, Amy L. Ladd*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Genevieve D'Souza, Brenda Golianu, R. J. Ramamurthi*

Percutaneous pinning of displaced supracondylar humerus fracture 1384
Closed or open reduction of displaced lateral condyle humerus fracture 1386
Aspiration and injection of unicameral bone cyst 1387
Release for torticollis 1389
Pollicization of a finger 1390
Syndactyly repair 1392
Posterior spinal instrumentation and fusion 1396
Anterior spinal fusion for scoliosis 1399
Pelvic osteotomy 1401

Acetabular augmentation (shelf) & Chiari osteotomy 1404
Ober fasciotomy, Yount-Ober release 1405
Hip, open reduction & femoral shortening 1407
Adductor release or transfer, psoas release 1409
Pinning of slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE) 1410
Flexible intramedullary nailing of long-bone fractures 1412
Proximal femoral osteotomy 1414
Epiphysiodesis 1415
Sofield procedure 1417
Limb lengthening 1418
Patellar realignment 1420
Tendon transfer, lengthening (posterior tibial) 1422
Triple arthrodesis and grice procedure (extra-articular subtalar arthrodesis) 1423
Surgical correction of clubfoot 1425
Surgery for epidermolysis bullosa 1431

12.8 Surgery for Craniofacial Malformations 1435

SURGEON *Stephen A. Schendel* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Nai Yi Sun, Mary Laughlin, Louise Furukawa*

Surgical correction of craniosynostosis 1436
Major secondary craniofacial surgical procedures 1442
Cleft lip repair—unilateral/bilateral 1447
Palatoplasty 1450
Pharyngoplasty 1453
Alveolar cleft repair with bone graft 1456
Secondary cleft lip/nasal surgery 1457
Otoplasty 1462

12.9 Pediatric Transplantation 1467

SURGEONS *Waldo Concepcion, Amy E. Gallo*
ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Julianne Mendoza, Louise Furukawa, Gregory B. Hammer*

Pediatric renal transplantation 1468
Pediatric liver transplantation 1472

13.0 OUT-OF-OPERATING ROOM PROCEDURES 1481

13.1 Out-of-Operating Room Procedures—Adult 1483

PROCEDURAL SPECIALISTS *Charles DeBattista, L. Bing Liem, Michael P. Marks, Stephen T. Kee, Daniel Y. Sze, Joan K. Frisoli, Eric J. Sirulnick, John Brock-Utne, Richard A. Jaffe*

Anesthesia for out-of-operating room procedures 1484
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) 1484
Interventional neuroradiology 1489
Direct current (DC) cardioversion 1495
Implantation of cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD) or cardiac resynchronization therapy defibrillator (CRT-D) 1498
Extraction of pacemaker (PM) and implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD) leads 1500
Catheter ablation of atrial fibrillation 1502
Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) 1507
Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) 1512
Imaging and image-guided procedures 1515
Tracheobronchial stenting 1521
Radiofrequency ablation of tumors 1526
Irreversible electroporation (IRE ablation) 1530

13.2 Out-of-Operating Room Procedures—Pediatric 1535

PROCEDURAL SPECIALISTS *Claudia Mueller, William E. Berquist, Sarah S. Donaldson, Anne M. Dubin, Jeffrey A. Feinstein, Gary E. Hartman, Susan Hiniker, Neyssa Marina, Stanton B. Perry, Kalyani R. Trivedi, Ann Ming Yeh* **ANESTHESIOLOGISTS** *Komal Kamra, Rebecca E. Claure, Brenda Golianu, Manchula Navaratnam, Chandra Ramamoorthy, Kristin Sun, Claudia Benkwitz*

Pediatric radiation therapy 1536
Pediatric cardiac catheterization and electrophysiology 1541
Pediatric oncologic procedures 1550
Upper/lower GI endoscopy 1554
Cross-sectional imaging (CT, MRI) 1556
Surgical considerations for ECMO 1558
Anesthetic management for surgical procedures under ECMO 1560

14.0 OFFICE-BASED ANESTHESIA 1563

SURGEONS *David A. Berman, Vernon J. Adams, Jr., Azeem K. Lakha*
ANESTHESIOLOGIST *Terri D. Homer*

Introduction—anesthesiologist's perspective 1564
Facial rejuvenation: lasers and RF tissue tightening 1566
Office dental rehabilitation under deep iv sedation 1568
Dental implants and bone grafting 1571

15.0 EMERGENCY PROCEDURES FOR THE ANESTHESIOLOGIST 1573

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS *Carlos Brun, Frederick G. Mihm*

Emergency cricothyrotomy 1574
Emergency pericardiocentesis 1578
Emergency ultrasound-guided pericardiocentesis 1578
Emergent needle/catheter thoracostomy 1582
Emergent ultrasound-guided needle/catheter thoracostomy 1583
Emergency intraosseous access 1586

APPENDICES A-1

AUTHORS *Sandra Leigh Bardas, Alex J. Butwick, Sean Carlton, Ian Carroll, Brendan Carvalho, Rebecca E. Claure, Genevieve D'Souza, Stephen P. Fischer, Brenda Golianu, Julie Good, Anita Honkanen, Richard A. Jaffe, C. Philip Larson, Jr., Birgit Maas, Jordan L. Newmark, Einar Ottestad, Emily Ratner, Clifford A. Schmiesing, Jeannie Seybold, Steven L. Shafer, Nai Yi Sun*

A. Preoperative considerations A-2
B. Standard adult anesthetic protocols B-1
C. Standard perioperative pain management C-1
D. Standard pediatric anesthetic management D-1
E. Standard pediatric postoperative pain management E-1
F. Tables of drug interactions and recommendations for preop management F-1
G. Special considerations for latex allergy G-1
H. Perioperative acupuncture H-1
I. Management of the difficult airway I-1
J. Anticoagulation guidelines for neuraxial procedures J-1
K. Abbreviations K-1

INDEX INDEX-1

SECTION

1.0 NEUROSURGERY

CHAPTER

1.1 Intracranial Neurosurgery

SURGEONS

Gary K. Steinberg, MD, PhD (*Neurovascular surgery*)
Robert L. Dodd, MD, PhD (*Neurovascular surgery*)
Sayed A. Karim, MD (*General neurosurgery*)
Lawrence M. Shuer, MD (*General neurosurgery*)
Steven D. Chang, MD (*General neurosurgery, Stereotactic neurosurgery*)

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

CRANIOTOMY FOR INTRACRANIAL ANEURYSMS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Gary K. Steinberg and Robert L. Dodd

Description: Intracranial aneurysms are focal protrusions arising from vessel wall weaknesses at major bifurcations of the arteries at the base of the brain (some frequent sites of aneurysms are shown in Fig. 1.1-1) and are most commonly treated by microsurgical clip ligation. The high rate of mortality and morbidity from aneurysmal rupture necessitates treatment for symptomatic lesions. Treatment for asymptomatic lesions generally is recommended when the lifetime risk of rupture exceeds the risk of treatment. The most important surgical considerations include clinical presentation, aneurysm size and location, patient age, neurologic status, and medical comorbidities. Aneurysm rupture into the subarachnoid space is the most common clinical presentation; however, symptoms from the mass effect of enlarging aneurysms or ischemic symptoms from emboli also may occur. Aneurysm morphology, size, and location are important in determining the surgical approach, and these aneurysm characteristics, as well as patient age, condition, and comorbidities, affect the overall outcome. The **Hess and Hunt clinical grading system** (Table 1.1-1) has been proven useful in describing patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms because it has been shown to have prognostic value in terms of ultimate clinical outcome. Grading is based on the neurologic examination, and ranges from grade I (minimal headache, no neurologic deficit) to grade V (moribund) (see Table 1.1-1).

Through a **craniotomy** or **craniectomy,** using microscopic techniques, the parent vessel giving rise to the aneurysm is identified. The aneurysm neck is isolated, and a small, nonferromagnetic alloy spring clip is placed across the aneurysm neck, excluding it from the circulation. A **frontotemporal (pterional) craniotomy** normally is used to approach anterior circulation aneurysms. This requires extensive drilling of the medial sphenoid wing (pterion)

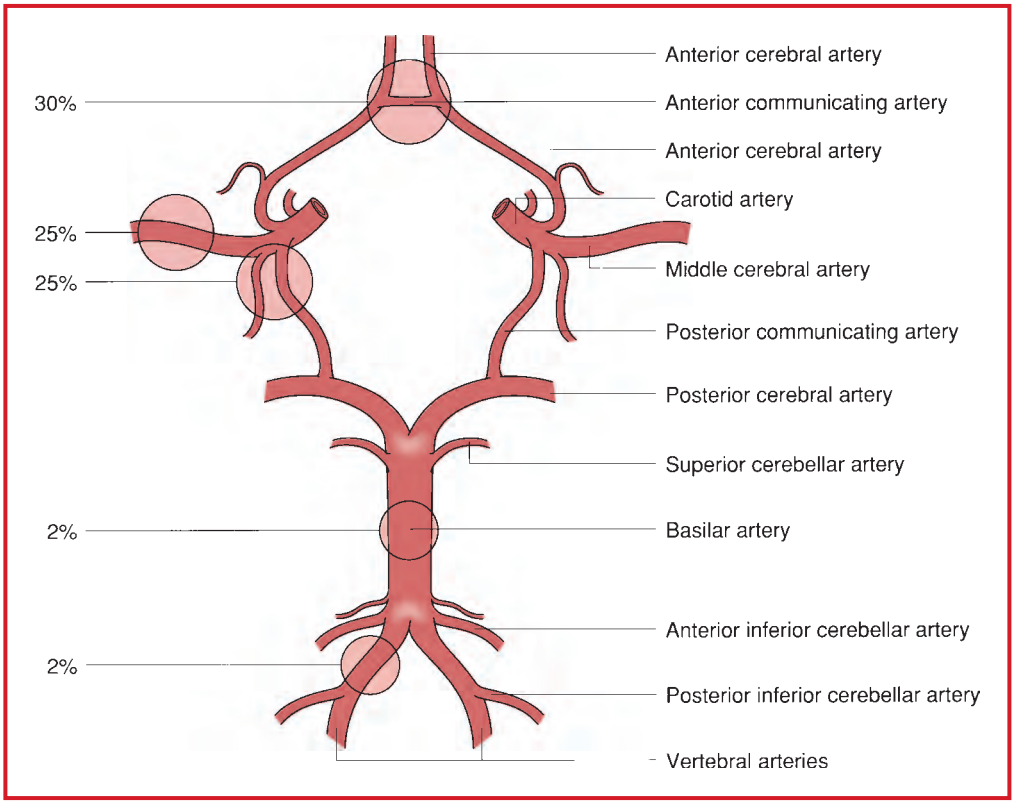


Figure 1.1-1. Locations of aneurysms of the circle of Willis and their relative occurrence. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Lillemoe KD, et al: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Table 1.1-1. Hunt-Hess Grading System for Aneurysmal SAH*

Grade	Description
I	Asymptomatic or minimal headache and slight neck stiffness (mortality ~2%)
II	Moderate-to-severe headache, neck stiffness, no neurological deficit (except cranial nerve palsy)—(mortality ~5%)
III	Drowsiness, confusion, or mild focal deficit (mortality 15–20%)
IV	Stupor, moderate-to-severe hemiparesis, possible early decerebrate rigidity, and vegetative disturbances (mortality 30–40%)
V	Deep coma, decerebrate rigidity, moribund (mortality 50–80%)

* The presence of serious systemic disease—such as hypertension, diabetes, severe arteriosclerosis, chronic pulmonary disease, and angiographic vasospasm—results in placement in the next less-favorable category.

and allows access to most aneurysms on the anterior and lateral circle of Willis vessels: internal carotid-paraclinoid/superior hypophyseal artery; internal carotid-ophthalmic artery; posterior communicating artery; anterior choroidal artery; internal carotid artery bifurcation; middle cerebral artery; and anterior communicating artery. Posterior circulation aneurysms are approached via a pterional or **subtemporal exposure** (upper basilar artery, posterior cerebral artery, superior cerebellar artery), a **suboccipital exposure** (vertebral artery, posterior inferior cerebellar artery), or a combined subtemporal and suboccipital exposure (basilar trunk, vertebrobasilar junction). Circulatory arrest under CPB with deep hypothermia (16–20°C) is used for repairing some giant (> 2.5 cm) aneurysms.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cerebral aneurysm; subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH); intracerebral hemorrhage; progressive neurological deficits (mass effect on cranial nerves or CNS structures); TIAs; cerebral infarct

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Anterior Circulation Aneurysms	Posterior Circulation Aneurysms	Circulatory Arrest (CPB) W/Deep Hypothermia
Position	Supine, head in Mayfield headrest, turned 30–45° to side away from aneurysm, vertex dropped (Fig. 1.1-5)	⇐ or lateral decubitus, head lateral in Mayfield headrest	⇐ + Both groins must be accessible for arterial + venous cannulation; access to chest for defibrillation
Incision	Frontotemporal	⇐ or temporal, temporosuboccipital, or suboccipital	⇐
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; aneurysm clips; radiolucent table, and headrest for intraop angiography	⇐ + Aperture clips to accommodate cranial nerves and critical vessels	⇐ + CPB pump; femoral cannulae; defibrillator; CUSA for partially thrombosed aneurysms
Unique considerations	Temporary arterial clipping; mild hypothermia (33°C); intraop angiography with access to femoral artery; electrophysiological monitoring (SEPs, BAERs); brain relaxation; ± lumbar subarachnoid CSF drainage; dexamethasone 8–12 mg iv; indocyanine green for video angiography	⇐	⇐ + No manipulation of brain retractors after systemic heparinization; meticulous attention to hemostasis
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv q 12 h (avoid mixing with Ca^{++} containing solutions)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–5 h	3–6 h	6–8 h
Closing considerations	Rewarming	⇐	⇐
EBL	250–1000 mL	⇐	2000–4000 mL

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Anterior Circulation Aneurysms	Posterior Circulation Aneurysms	Circulatory Arrest (CPB) W/Deep Hypothermia
Postop care	ICU 1–7 d; postop CBF monitoring, transcranial Doppler (TDC) monitor	⇐	⇐ + ICP monitoring
Mortality	Unruptured: 0.5% Ruptured: Hunt and Hess grades I–III: < 10% (See Table 1.1-1.) Hunt and Hess grades IV–V: 20–40% (See Table 1.1-1.)	1.5% 15% 20–50%	5–10% (giant aneurysms) 5–15% 15–50%
Morbidity	Neurological: 5–20% Cranial nerve injury Stroke: 5.2% (38% if ruptured) Hydrocephalus: 15–25% Hyponatremia (SIADH vs CSW) Respiratory failure: Rare Seizures: 2–20% Thromboembolism: Rare CSF leak: Rare Infection: Rare Massive blood loss: Rare	10–30% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	10–50% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–4	3–4	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–70 yr (Peak incidence in 5th and 6th decades)
Male:Female	44:56
Incidence	8–16/100,000/yr for ruptured aneurysms with SAH (highest in Japan and Finland). ~85% survive initial bleed. Overall incidence of rebleeding is ~11% (4% in the first 24 h).
Etiology	Idiopathic (probably acquired and related to hemodynamic stress at arterial branch points, although may have congenital predisposition to loss of internal elastic lamina); traumatic; infectious; familial
Associated conditions	Polycystic kidney disease; coarctation of the aorta; Marfan syndrome; Ehlers-Danlos syndrome; intracranial AVMs; aortic aneurysm; fibromuscular dysplasia; pseudoxanthoma elastica; Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome; cocaine/amphetamine use

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: craniotomy for intracranial aneurysms; craniotomy for cerebral embolectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Aneurysms may occur in any age group, although they generally become symptomatic and are diagnosed in young or middle-aged adults who are usually in otherwise good health. Most patients have warning Sx before the first major bleed, but these tend to be mild and nonspecific (e.g., headache, dizziness, orbital pain, slight motor or sensory disturbances). The symptoms are generally disregarded by both patients and physicians. Most patients with SAH will be receiving oral nimodipine or iv nicardipine; SBP should be maintained between 120 and 140 mm Hg using vasoactive drug infusions if necessary. Patients with symptomatic vasospasm may benefit from single-H therapy (see below).

Respiratory	Respiratory complications (e.g., neurogenic pulmonary edema [up to 23%], pneumonia, ARDS, PE) are the most common nonneurologic causes of death following SAH. Pulmonary aspiration may have occurred as the result of a neurological deficit from an intracranial hemorrhage. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P. Elevated cTnI may predict pulmonary complications.

Cardiovascular	Generally, these patients do not have other cardiovascular diseases, although intracerebral aneurysms occur more commonly in patients with certain congenital disorders, such as polycystic disease of the kidneys, coarctation of the aorta, fibromuscular hyperplasia, and Marfan or Ehlers-Danlos syndromes. Patients who have had a recent intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) are prone to develop systemic HTN, hypovolemia, ↓ Mg^{++} and ECG abnormalities. The HTN is thought to be due to autonomic hyperactivity and is generally treated with antihypertensive medication, which should be continued up to the time of anesthesia and surgery. ECG abnormalities occur in many patients following ICH and may represent subendocardial injury 2° catecholamine release from intracardiac nerve terminals (contraction band injury). Dysrhythmias (most commonly PVCs) occur in 30–80% of patients, and ischemic changes (typically T-wave inversion and S–T-segment depression) are seen in > 50%. Appropriate preop preparation includes ECG characterization of the abnormality. If patient has Hx of ischemic heart disease, ECHO and cardiac enzyme studies may be helpful in determining whether the myocardial injury and consequent ECG changes are likely to be of clinical significance. **Tests:** ECG; others (e.g., cardiac enzymes) as indicated from H&P
Neurological	Occasionally unruptured aneurysms produce neurological Sx by enlarging to the point that they compress adjacent neural tissue or cause ↑ ICP. If ICH occurs, the neurological dysfunction will vary, depending on the site and extent of the hemorrhage. Typically, SAH → ↑↑ ICP → sudden severe HA ± confusion and disorientation, ± motor deficit, ± coma. Admission GCS < 12 predicts ↑ mortality. Subsequent cerebral vasospasm (~70% incidence) and delayed cerebral ischemia (DCI) may cause worsening of the neurological deficits. Clinically detectable vasospasm commonly begins on day 1 reaching a maximum at 5–14 d and usually is resolved within 2–4 wk. The precipitating agent is believed to be free Hb → release of vasospastic substances from brain tissue. Treatment of vasospasm usually involves support of BP (occasionally, induced HTN), euvolemia, and systemic Ca^{++} antagonists (e.g., nimodipine (60 mg PO q 4 h) or iv (3–15 mg/h iv)). Triple H therapy (↑ volume, ↑ BP, ↓ Hct) should be avoided in favor of euvolemia and a trial of ↑ BP for DCI. Control of BP is important: any substantial ↑ BP may → serious rebleed, permanent neurological deficits or death; any substantial ↓ BP may → cerebral ischemia and infarction. Arterial catheterization and continuous beat-to-beat monitoring of BP prior to induction of anesthesia is essential in these patients. **Tests:** CT; MRI; CTA, which the anesthesiologist should examine preop to identify the nature and site of the aneurysm. DSA is the gold standard for detection of vasospasm.
Hydrocephalus	Acute hydrocephalus occurs in 15–20% of patients within 24 h of SAH. External ventricular drainage may be necessary.
Hematologic	Thrombocytopenia may develop following SAH. DVT prophylaxis (e.g., SCD) is beneficial. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT
Radiographic findings	CT: Blood in basal cisterns (~95% of patients) or ventricles; CTA (replacing conventional angiography): anatomical characteristics of the aneurysm.
Laboratory	Cardiac enzymes if ECG changes observed (↑ cTnI predicts ↓ neurologic outcome and ↑ mortality); serum Mg^{++} and glucose; others as indicated from H&P. Hyponatremia may be 2° SIADH or CSW. In contrast to SIADH, patients with CSW are hypovolemic (↓ plasma volume, ↓ CVP, ↓ PCWP), ± ↑ K^{+}.
Hepatic	Hepatic dysfunction following SAH is not uncommon (24% in one series). **Tests:** LFTs, as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Small doses of midazolam 1–3 mg iv are preferable to opiates. Detailed discussion with the patient about the anesthetic plan, with appropriate reassurance, is essential. Should an intracranial aneurysm leak or rupture in the immediate preop period, its signs may be difficult to distinguish from those associated with excessive response to premedication.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The goals of anesthesia for this operation are to: (a) maintain optimum CPP (cerebral MAP minus cerebral venous pressure or ICP, whichever is greater), although it may be necessary to ↓ CPP rapidly if intracranial hemorrhage occurs during surgery; (b) decrease intracranial volume (blood and tissue) to optimize working space for surgeons within the cranial compartment, thereby minimizing the need for surgical retraction of brain tissue; and (c) decrease metabolic rate and $CMRO_2$ with the expectation that the brain will tolerate hypotension and ischemia if sudden decreases in MAP and, hence, CPP become necessary.

Induction	Smooth induction is essential. Propofol 1–2 mg/kg iv to provide amnesia and ↓ cerebral blood volume by inducing cerebral vasoconstriction. Fentanyl 7–10 mcg/kg iv to blunt response to intubation and provide analgesia for the first hours of surgery. Vecuronium 0.15 mg/kg, or rocuronium 0.6–1.2 mg/kg to provide muscle relaxation for tracheal intubation and positioning. Patients on nimodipine may require pressors (e.g., phenylephrine) during and after induction. Poor H-H grade patients (IV–V) may not tolerate ↓ MAP during induction. These patients may benefit from moderate hyperventilation during induction.	
Maintenance	Isoflurane or sevoflurane (1/2 MAC if EP monitoring is used), inspired with O_2. Avoid N_2O > 50% and entirely in patients with ↑↑ ICP. Propofol (75–100 mcg/kg/min) may be used to further ↓ cerebral blood volume, ↓ cerebral metabolism, and ↓ $CMRO_2$. If movement is of concern, rocuronium 7 mcg/kg/min will provide adequate neuromuscular blockade. A remifentanil infusion (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) can be used to supplement the anesthetic without interfering with EP monitoring. TIVA is not necessary for monitoring SSEPs or MEPs.	
Emergence	H-H grade IV–V patients are not extubated and should be kept sedated on ventilator support postop. For grade I–III patients, with the start of dural closure, consider using low-dose sevoflurane (e.g., 0.5%) in 50% N_2O, supplemented with a low-dose remifentanil infusion (e.g., 0.05 mcg/kg/min). As recovery from anesthesia occurs, the patient's BP generally will increase in response to the emergence stimuli. Titration of β-adrenergic blocking drugs (e.g., labetalol and esmolol) with vasodilators (e.g., SNP) may be needed; if so, the dose should be stabilized before transport to ICU. (See Control of BP, below.) The inhalation agent can be D/C'd at the time of dressing application. Most patients will breathe spontaneously and can be extubated uneventfully while on the remifentanil infusion. If the brain has not been injured by the surgical procedure, the patient should awaken within 10 min after cessation of remifentanil administration. As the patient is awakening, it is important to ensure full reversal from neuromuscular blockade and close regulation of BP. If the patient begins to cough on ETT, either it should be removed or cough reflex suppressed with iv lidocaine (0.5–1 mg/kg). Patient is placed in bed in a 30° head-up position and transported to ICU for monitoring overnight. Supplemental O_2 should be administered and close regulation of BP maintained. Prophylactic antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg and ondansetron 4-8 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation. Consider iv acetaminophen (1 g) and/or local anesthetic scalp infiltration for postop analgesia.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–18 ga × 2 NS @ < 10 mL/kg + UO	Maintain euvolemia. If blood volume is normal, crystalloid fluid should not exceed 10 mL/kg beyond that required to replace UO. Rapid, massive blood loss is possible.
	Expand blood volume with albumin 5% if Hct > 30%. Albumin + PRBC if Hct < 30% Maintain colloid oncotic pressure Hetastarch may → coagulopathy.	If blood volume is low because of vasospasm or prolonged bed rest, albumin 5% is given if Hct > 30%; combinations of albumin and blood, if Hct is < 30%. Hetastarch 6% may be used in place of albumin, but limit use because of potential for coagulopathy.
Brain relaxation	Hyperventilate to $PaCO_2$ = 35 mm Hg ($PetCO_2$ = 30 mm Hg). PaO_2 > 100 mm Hg	↓ $PaCO_2$ → ↓ cerebral vascular volume (better surgical access) + ↑ CBF to ischemic areas ("Robin Hood" effect) + ↓ anesthetic requirements + ↑ lactic acid buffering.

Brain relaxation (cont'd)	Consider propofol infusion to replace N_2O	Propofol → cerebrovasoconstriction → ↓ ICP
	↓ isoflurane/sevoflurane to < 1/2 MAC	Remifentanil infusion (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) may then be required to provide adequate analgesia.
	Mannitol 0.5–1 g/kg ± Furosemide 0.3 mg/kg	Mannitol/furosemide → ↓ K^+; monitor level and replace as necessary. If mannitol is administered too rapidly, ↓ BP may occur, 2° peripheral vasodilation.
	± Steroids	e.g., 8 mg dexamethasone
	± Lumbar CSF drain	CSF drain may be placed after induction of anesthesia, avoid rapid drainage → rupture or remote hemorrhage
	Head up to provide venous drainage Minimize neck flexion/rotation	Otherwise → ↑ venous pressure → ↑ ICP and ↓ CBF
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line Bladder/esophageal temperature Blood glucose (keep < 180 mg/dL) UO (Foley catheter) CVP line (subclavian preferred) ± Evoked potentials/EEG	Direct monitoring of arterial BP is essential for ABGs and because marked BP fluctuations may occur, necessitating drug therapy. Transducers should always be leveled at the head. Monitoring CVP is desirable in virtually all patients to assess adequacy of fluid therapy, for infusion of vasoactive drugs both intraop and postop, and for aspiration of VAE. Localization of the catheter can be determined by CXR, ECG tracing (noting P-wave changes) or pressure-wave contour and value as the catheter is withdrawn from the right atrium.
Hypothermia	Water-circulating pads Cold operating room Bladder irrigation	Mild hypothermia (33–34°C) is used in some centers to ↓ $CMRO_2$ and to ↓ susceptibility to ischemic injury during temporary clip application. $CMRO_2$ decreases ~30% @ 33°C. This level of hypothermia has minimal effect on coagulation or the incidence of cardiac dysrhythmias. Rewarming using surface means can be quite slow. The use of bladder irrigation (40–42°C saline) or an InnerCool®-type device is useful.
	InnerCool® or equivalent	A heat-exchange catheter may be placed in the vena cava (via femoral vein) to facilitate patient cooling and rewarming.
	IHAST Study[13]	Although it implied that mild hypothermia was not useful in aneurysm surgery, the IHAST study was not designed to assess the effectiveness of mild hypothermia in the patient group most likely to benefit: otherwise intact patients requiring long temporary clip times. Generalizing the IHAST findings to all aneurysm patients is an unfortunate disservice to many of them.
	Delayed response to peripherally administered drugs	Administer drugs through CVP line in hypothermic patients to ensure prompt effect.
Single H therapy (for vasospasm)	Hypertension	Goal: SBP 120–150 mm Hg (preclipping); 160–200 mm Hg (postclipping)
	~~Hypervolemia~~	No benefit. ↑ cardiopulmonary complications, ↑ infection. Euvolemia is recommended.
	~~Hemodilution~~	Not recommended. Optimal Hct is difficult to predict but is probably 30–33% for most patients.

Control of BP	During application of head fixation device (Mayfield): remifentanil: 100–200 mcg iv bolus 1–2 min in advance. During aneurysm exposure: ↓ MAP to ~80% of baseline. Temporary clipping: ↑ MAP to ~120% of baseline. Postclipping: MAP typically 70–90 mm Hg	Control of BP is critical to the successful outcome of the case. ↑↑ BP → ↑↑ transmural pressure across the aneurysmal wall → rupture of the aneurysm. Many neurosurgeons apply a temporary clip on the major feeding vessel(s) in advance of clipping the aneurysm. This technique collapses the aneurysm and makes the clipping easier and less likely to cause inadvertent rupture. If this technique is used, it is essential for the anesthesiologist to ↑ BP ~20% above baseline pressure to maximize collateral flow while the feeding vessel(s) is occluded. Phenylephrine is preferred because it has minimal dysrhythmogenic potential. EEG/EP monitoring can be useful to guide BP management. If it becomes necessary to ↓ BP, use esmolol 50–200 mcg/kg/min to ↓ HR to 50–60, supplemented as necessary with SNP 0.1–4 mcg/kg/min to desired effect. Responses to vasoactive drugs are much easier to regulate if euvolemia has been established and maintained throughout the anesthetic period. Labetalol (5–100 mg total dose) is a useful adjunct for postop BP control.
Video Angiography	Indocyanine Green (ICG) NB: Usually contains iodine	ICG is an iv fluorescent dye for video angiography using specially equipped microscopes. Usual dose is 2.5–7.5 mg depending on tissue thickness. Rarely anaphylactic or other allergic reactions may occur.
Aneurysmal rupture	↓ MAP to 40–50 mm Hg Consider carotid compression Adenosine 12 mg iv (CVP line)	Bolus SNP: MAP will ↓ ~20 mmHg/15 mcg SNP. Ipsilateral or bilateral carotid occlusion is often effective in controlling hemorrhage while a temporary clip is applied. Adenosine will produce asystole, allowing time for the application of a temporary clip. An external pacemaker should be available for hypothermic patients.
Positioning	For most aneurysms: Supine, head turned Three-point fixation (beware of marked ↑ BP with use of pins). Use shoulder roll. ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Anesthetic gas hoses and all monitoring and vascular catheter lines are directed to patient's side or feet, where the anesthesiologist is positioned during surgery. SCDs used to minimize DVT. Shoulder roll to ↓ brachial plexus stretch. Remifentanil (100–200 mcg bolus) to minimize ↑ BP during skull pinning.
Complications	Aneurysm rupture (intraop) Hypothermia (mild) DVT	6–18% incidence; up to 2% rupture during induction. Many patients can be extubated safely at core T ≥ 35°C with active rewarming in progress. SCDs should be used for DVT prophylaxis

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Intracranial hemorrhage Stroke Cerebral vasospasm SIADH/CSW	New deficits or delayed emergence may necessitate urgent transport to CT scanner and/or return to the OR. Avoid prophylactic triple H therapy (↑ volume, ↑ BP, ↓ Hct).

Pain management	Meperidine (10–20 mg iv prn) Acetaminophen 1 g iv	Meperidine will ↓ postop shivering. Avoid oversedation → interferes with neuro exam.
Tests	CT scan, if any change in neurological status	Be prepared to re-secure airway.

Suggested Readings

1. Chalouhi N, Hoh BL, Hasan D: Review of cerebral aneurysm formation, growth, and rupture. *Stroke* 2013; 44(12):3613–22.
2. Dashti R, Hernesniemi J, Niemela M, et al: Microneurosurgical management of middle cerebral artery bifurcation aneurysms. *Surg Neurol* 2007; 67(5):441–56.
3. Dodd RL, Steinberg GK: Aneurysms. In: Aminoff MJ, Daroff RB, eds. *Encyclopedia of the Neurological Sciences*. Academic Press, San Diego: 2003, 161–172.
4. Gross BA, Thomas AJ, Frerichs KU, Du R: Cerebrovascular neurosurgery in 2012. *J Clin Neurosci* 2013; 20(6):776–82.
5. Mayer SA, Lin J, Homma S, et al: Myocardial injury and left ventricular performance after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke* 1999; 30:780–6.
6. Mocco J, Rose JC, Komotar RJ, et al: Blood pressure management in patients with intracerebral and subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2006; 17 (Suppl 1):25–40.
7. Molyneux A, Kerr R, Stratton I, et al: International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) of neurosurgical clipping versus endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomized trial. *Lancet* 2002; 360(9342):1267–74.
8. Pierot L, Wakhloo AK: Endovascular treatment of intracranial aneurysms: current status. *Stroke* 2013; 44(7):2046–54.
9. Priebe HJ: Aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage and the anaesthetist. *Br J Anaesth* 2007; 99(1):102–18.
10. Qureshi AI, Janardhan V, Hanel RA, et al: Comparison of endovascular and surgical treatments for intracranial aneurysms: an evidence-based review. *Lancet Neurol* 2007; 6(9):816–25.
11. Randell T, Niemela M, Kytta J, et al: Principles of neuroanesthesia in aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: the Helsinki experience. *Surg Neurol* 2006; 66(4):1271–6.
12. Sundt TM Jr: *Surgical Techniques for Saccular and Giant Intracranial Aneurysms.* Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1990.
13. Todd MM, Hindman BJ, Clarke WR, et al: Mild intraoperative hypothermia during surgery for intracranial aneurysm. *N Engl J Med* 2005; 352(2):121–4.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR CRANIOTOMY FOR GIANT INTRACRANIAL ANEURYSMS (REQUIRING DEEP HYPOTHERMIC CIRCULATORY ARREST)

PREOPERATIVE

Aneurysms are classified as "giant" when they are > 2.5 cm in diameter. These represent ~5% of all aneurysms. They occur twice as often in women, usually become symptomatic in the 4th or 5th decade of life, and present particularly difficult surgical challenges: (a) their large size makes direct visualization of the vascular anatomy difficult; (b) vascular branches essential to maintaining flow to normal brain may arise from the aneurysmal/SAC and cannot be included in the clipping without causing permanent neurological injury; (c) standard aneurysm clips may not occlude a large, turgid aneurysm, or may slip or move, once applied; and (d) giant aneurysms may easily rupture during dissection or clip application. Many of these aneurysms are amenable to coiling or other interventional radiologic techniques. For those requiring craniotomy, temporary clips applied during mild hypothermia often provide sufficient opportunity to decompress and occlude the aneurysm. More rarely, deep hypothermia to 18°C, achieved with fem-fem CPB/ECMO and temporary circulatory arrest may be required to safely decompress the aneurysm, and protect the brain during circulatory arrest. The duration of asystole may be as long as 45 minutes.

Respiratory	None unless patient has Hx of smoking or has sustained pulmonary aspiration as a result of a neurological deficit from an intracranial hemorrhage. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P; elevated cTnI may predict pulmonary complications.
Cardiovascular	Generally, these patients do not have other cardiovascular diseases. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Intracranial Aneurysms, p. 6.) **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	These patients usually present with complaints of intermittent or persistent headaches or visual disturbances that are probably due to aneurysmal compression of adjacent neural

Neurological (cont'd)	tissue or ↑ ICP. If an intracranial hemorrhage occurs, neurological dysfunction varies, depending on site and extent of the hemorrhage. Cerebral vasospasm is a major complication of intracranial hemorrhage (see discussion in Anesthetic Considerations for Intracranial Aneurysms, p. 6). **Tests:** CT; MRI; angiogram. The anesthesiologist should examine the cerebral angiogram preop to visualize the size and site of aneurysm.
Hematologic	T&C for 6 U PRBCs. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; hemogram; others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Premedication is usually desirable, with small doses of midazolam (e.g., 1–2 mg) preferable to opiates. Detailed discussion with patient about the anesthetic plan, with appropriate reassurance, is effective in reducing premedication requirements. Should an intracranial aneurysm leak or rupture in the immediate preop period, it may be difficult to distinguish this event from changes associated with excessive responses to premedication.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The goals of anesthesia for this procedure are to: (a) provide adequate surgical anesthesia; (b) ↓ intracranial volume (blood and tissue) to optimize working space within the cranial compartment, thereby minimizing the need for surgical retraction of brain tissue; and (c) ↑ tolerance of the brain to ischemia by decreasing $CMRO_2$, which occurs with the use of deep hypothermia, barbiturate or propofol therapy, ± isovolemic hemodilution.

Induction	Propofol 2–3 mg/kg iv to provide anesthesia and ↓ CBV by inducing cerebral vasoconstriction. Fentanyl 7–10 mcg/kg iv to blunt the response to laryngoscopy/intubation, and provide analgesia for the first hours. Vecuronium 0.15 mg/kg or rocuronium 0.6–1.2 mg/kg to provide relaxation for intubation and positioning.	
Maintenance	Propofol 100–200 mcg/kg/min administered by constant-infusion pump. These doses provide additional amnesia and ↓ CBV and $CMRO_2$. Isoflurane ≤ 1%. N_2O not used. An additional dose of NMB is administered just prior to the start of CPB.	
Emergence	Because of the length and nature of the operation and the potential for temporary neurological injury, it is advisable to leave the ETT in place immediately postop and send patient to the ICU on controlled ventilation. If patient begins to cough, the reflex should be suppressed with opiates, NMBs, and/or LTA sprayed down the ETT. The patient is placed in bed in a 30° head-up position and transported to ICU for overnight monitoring. Supplemental O_2 should be administered and close regulation of BP maintained. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., droperidol 0.625 mg or metoclopramide 10–20 mg and ondansetron 4 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation. Consider iv acetaminophen and/or local anesthetic scalp infiltration for postop analgesia.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS @ 1–2 mL/kg/h PRBC 4–6 U	Maintain euvolemia. Cold NS up to 10 mL/kg, + a volume equal to UO, is administered during surgery.
Isovolemic hemodilution	5% albumin: 4–8 × 250 mL NS: 2–4 × 1000 mL CPD bags (for blood collection)	Albumin and NS are placed in a refrigerator at 4°C the night before surgery to be used as necessary for cooling during isovolemic hemodilution. After induction of anesthesia, a 2nd arterial or large-vein cannula is placed for removal of blood into CPD bags. Generally, about 1000 mL of blood are removed and replaced with 1 L of cold albumin 5%. This usually → ↓ Hct to 22–26%. Frequent intraop Hct checks are appropriate. The withdrawn blood is held for reinfusion at the conclusion of operation. In addition, the perfusate from the CPB unit is spun down, and packed cells are returned to patient.

Control of ICP (brain relaxation)	Hyperventilate to $PaCO_2$ = 25–30 mm Hg Limit crystalloid < 10 mL/kg + UO Limit isoflurane ≤ 1%. ± Mannitol 0.5–1 g/kg ± Furosemide 0.3 mg/kg Dexamethasone 8–12 mg ± Lumbar CSF drainage Position head to promote venous drainage.	Ventilation is controlled and TV and RR adjusted such that $PaCO_2$ = ~35 mm Hg. There are some advantages to mild hypocarbia, including ↓ CBV; improving regional distribution of CBF by preferentially diverting blood to ischemic areas of the brain and better buffering of brain lactic acid that may form as a result of focal ischemia. Elevate head of bed, and minimize neck flexion/rotation if possible.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Temperature: esophageal, bladder and brain surface Arterial line CVP (triple-lumen) line Blood glucose UO	Frequent checks are made of Hct, electrolytes, and ACT values, before, during, and after CPB. CVP line is used for infusions of esmolol, SNP, and phenylephrine. Subclavian preferred. Keep glucose between 80 and 180 mg/dL. Keep UO > 0.5 mL/kg/h.
Control of BP	Maintain BP normal to 20% below normal. Phenylephrine	BP control is critical to successful surgery. ↑ BP during induction or prior to CPB will ↑ transmural pressure across the aneurysmal wall and ↑ likelihood of rupture. Prior to CPB, BP is generally kept at normal to 20% below patient's usual pressure, using anesthetic agents ± an esmolol infusion to ↓ HR to a range of 50–60 bpm. If desired level of BP is not achieved with this combination, SNP or propofol infusion may be added. SNP also facilitates both cooling and rewarming because of its peripheral vasodilatory effect. If a vasoconstrictor is needed, particularly during CPB while patient is still cold, phenylephrine is preferred because of its minimal dysrhythmogenic potential.
Positioning	Shoulder roll 180° table rotation ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Circuit extension tubes SCD	Anesthetic gas hoses and all monitoring and vascular catheter lines are directed to patient's feet. Make sure that all will reach the foot of operating table. SCDs used to minimize DVT.
Deep hypothermia and CPB	Initial cooling: Circulating water blankets Ice packs InnerCool®-type device SNP infusion Heparinization ACT monitoring	Surface cooling and/or central cooling is begun as soon as induction is complete, using either a central venous heat exchange device (e.g., InnerCool®) or thermal blankets above and below patient, ice packs and infusion of cold fluids during establishment of isovolemic hemodilution. An SNP infusion (if tolerated) will promote surface cooling. Once the aneurysm is exposed and the decision is made that CPB is required, systemic **heparinization** (load: 300 U/kg; maintenance: 100 U/kg/h) is established, and patient is put on CPB using femfem bypass and cooled to ~18°C. During CPB

Deep hypothermia and CPB (cont'd)		cooling, the heart will usually fibrillate between 22 and 26°C. After 18°C is reached, the CPB unit is shut off to deflate the aneurysm; it may be activated and shut off several times during clipping to evaluate adequacy of the surgical occlusion of the aneurysm and to apply additional clips**. Total circulatory arrest time should not exceed 45 min**.
	Rewarming	When clipping is complete, CPB is resumed and warming instituted. Partial CPB is continued until normal cardiac rhythm is established and body temperature reaches ~36°C. Once partial CPB is D/C, patient will tend to cool unless vigorous efforts at warming are continued. Warming the OR and iv fluids, use of a Bair Hugger, or an InnerCool®-type device will facilitate the warming process. ACT analysis is performed to establish that heparin reversal is complete 5–10 min after protamine (1 mg/100 U heparin activity). Blood is sent for clotting studies, and Plts, FFP, and calcium gluconate are administered as needed. Hetastarch is not used in these patients because of its potential for inducing a coagulopathy.
Complications	↓↓ BP 2° failure to maintain circulating volume	Restore circulating volume.
	Dysrhythmias 2° ↓ K^+ from diuresis and cold	✓ K^+ level and replace as indicated.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	HTN	HTN Rx: esmolol + SNP titrated to effect.
	Vasospasm	Vasospasm Rx: euvolemia, trial of ↑ MAP; consider nimodipine.
	Intracranial hemorrhage, stroke	
	Hypothermia	Patient should be rewarmed to 36–37°C before terminating CPB.
	Hypervolemia	
	Coagulopathy	✓ coag status.
	DVT	SCDs may be useful.
	Seizures	Sz Rx: Phenytoin (1 g iv slowly to avoid ↓BP).
	PE	NB: Phenytoin is incompatible with dextrose containing solutions.
Pain management	Meperidine (10–25 mg iv prn) Codeine (30–60 mg im q 4 h prn)	Meperidine reduces postop shivering.
Tests	CT scan	If any question about neurological status arises, a CT scan is performed postop.
	Coag panel	Coagulation studies are needed early postop to assure normal coagulation.

Suggested Readings

1. Cully MD, Larson CP Jr, Silverberg GD: Hetastarch coagulopathy in a neurosurgical patient. *Anesthesiology* 1987; 66(5):706–7.
2. Larson CP Jr: Anesthetic management for surgical ablation of giant cerebral aneurysms. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 1996; 34(4): 151—60.

3. Parkinson RJ, Eddleman CS, Batjer JJ, et al: Giant intracranial aneurysms: endovascular challenges. *Neurosurgery* 2006; 59(5 suppl 3):S103–12; discussion S3–13.
4. Young WL, Lawton MT, Gupta DK, et al: Anesthetic management of deep hypothermic circulatory arrest for cerebral aneurysm clipping. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 96:497–503.

CRANIOTOMY FOR CEREBRAL EMBOLECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Gary K. Steinberg and Robert L. Dodd

Description: Although intravenous or endovascular intraarterial thrombolysis is the current standard therapy for intracranial intravascular clots, embolic occlusion of a major intracranial vessel occasionally requires microsurgical embolectomy. In particular, when the embolus is a large atherosclerotic plaque or foreign body (such as a balloon or microcoil from endovascular treatment), surgery may be the treatment of choice. Because cerebral ischemia often proceeds to irreversible infarction before the surgeon can restore blood flow, early diagnosis is of the utmost importance, and several studies have demonstrated that the best results from embolectomy occur when the procedure is performed within 6 h following the onset of a neurologic deficit.

A standard craniotomy is fashioned as previously described for other lesions involving the vasculature at the skull base (see p. 4), and the occluded intracranial artery is exposed using microsurgical techniques. The involved arterial segment is isolated and temporarily occluded with miniature clips, and an arteriotomy is performed to remove the thrombus or embolus (Fig. 1.1-2). The arteriotomy is then closed and blood flow reestablished.

Usual preop diagnosis: Stroke; TIA; intracranial arterial occlusion; catheter embolization to intracranial artery

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Incision	Frontal, temporal, or occipital
Special instrumentation	Microscopic instruments (fine forceps, miniature vascular clips, operating microscope)
Unique considerations	Neuroprotective agents during arterial segment occlusion (barbiturates, mannitol), mild hypothermia (33°C)
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv (avoid mixing with Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	3–4 h
Closing considerations	Avoid ↓ BP (MAP 80–100 mm Hg). Induced mild HTN (MAP 90–110) during temporary arterial occlusion.
EBL	100–250 mL
Postop care	Control BP (MAP 80–100 mm Hg); start aspirin postop d 1; ICU: 1–2 d.
Mortality	5–10%
Morbidity	Intracerebral hemorrhage Stroke MI: Rare Thromboembolism: Rare Respiratory failure: Rare Infection: Rare
Pain score	3–4

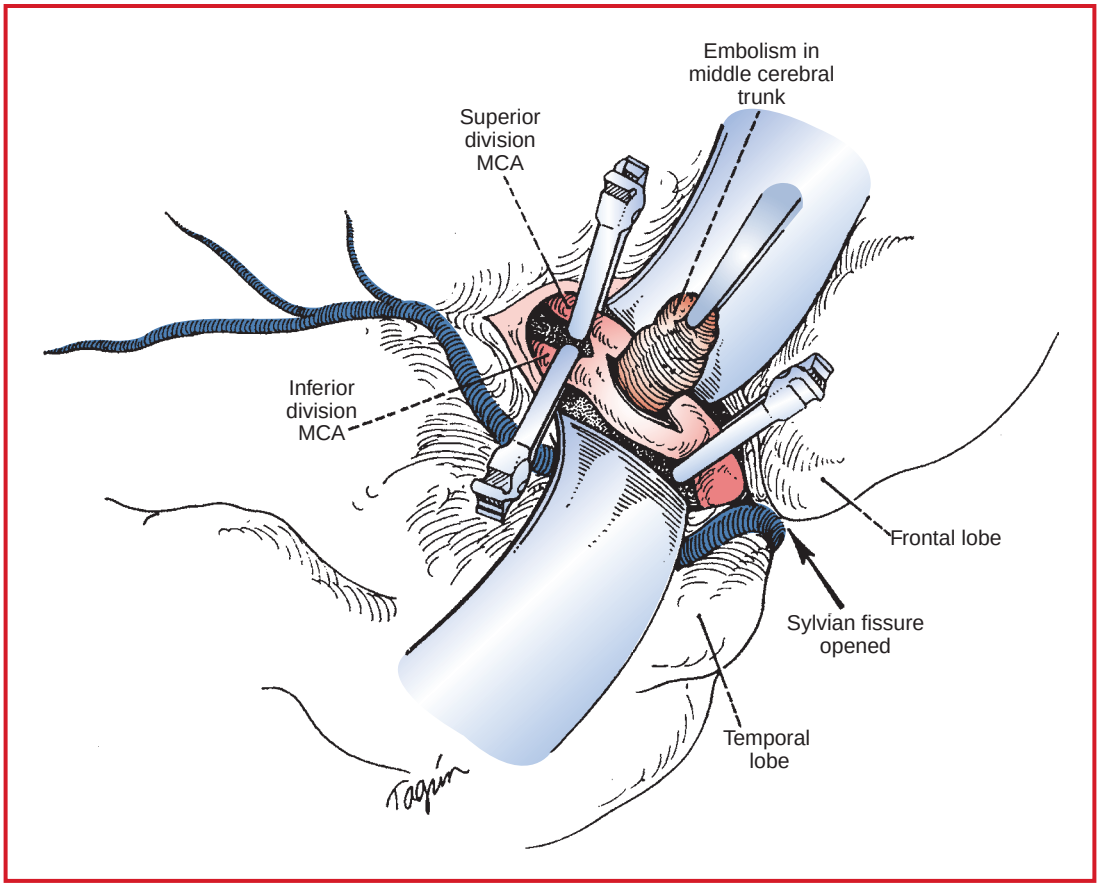


Figure 1.1-2. Middle cerebral artery (MCA) embolectomy. Exposure of right MCA in the sylvian fissure and removal of an embolus from the MI segment. (Reproduced with permission from Ojemann RG, Ogilvy CS, Crowell RM, et al: *Surgical Management of Neurovascular Disease,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1995.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	50–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Atherosclerosis; carotid artery disease; atrial fibrillation; iatrogenic endovascular catheter complication
Associated conditions	HTN; CAD; PVD; carotid artery disease; hyperlipidemia; smoking; alcohol abuse; obesity; atrial fibrillation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Craniotomy for Intracranial Aneurysms, p. 6.

Suggested Readings

1. Ansari S, Rahman M, Waters MF, et al: Recanalization therapy for acute ischemic stroke, part 1: surgical embolectomy and chemical thrombolysis. *Neurosurg Rev* 2011; 34(1):1–9.
2. Gomez CR, Orr SC, Soto RD: Neuroendovascular rescue: interventional treatment of acute ischemic stroke. *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med* 2002; 4:405–19.
3. Kakinuma K, Ezuka I, Takai N, et al: The simple indicator for revascularization of acute middle cerebral artery occlusion using angiogram and ultra-early embolectomy. *Surg Neurol* 1999; 51:332–41.
4. Pikus HJ, Heros RC: Stroke: indications for emergent surgical intervention. *Clin Neurosurg* 1999; 45:113–27.

CRANIOTOMY FOR INTRACRANIAL VASCULAR MALFORMATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Gary K. Steinberg

Description: Intracranial vascular malformations are congenital abnormalities that cause intracranial hemorrhage, seizures, headaches, progressive neurological deficits, or audible bruits. Intracranial vascular malformations comprise high-flow, arteriovenous malformations (AVMs); low-flow, angiographically occult vascular malformations (AOVMs), including cavernous malformations (a collection of enlarged capillaries with thin inelastic walls prone to leaking), "cryptic" AVMs, capillary telangiectasias and transitional malformations; and low-flow, venous angiomas (developmental venous anomalies). **Microsurgical resection** is the optimal treatment for these lesions, although preop endovascular embolization and preop or postop focused **stereotactic radiosurgery** (heavy particle or photon) may be useful adjuncts.

Most moderate-sized and large **AVMs** (> 3 cm diameter) will have been partially embolized in the cath lab prior to surgery. Resection is accomplished using a standard **scalp flap** and with **craniotomy** centered over the area of the AVM using image-guidance techniques. The patient is positioned appropriately to place the craniotomy site uppermost in the field and parallel to the floor. For example, a patient with a left frontal AVM would be positioned supine, head turned to the right, a left frontal or bicranial scalp flap raised and a left frontal craniotomy bone flap removed. A patient with a right medial occipital AVM would be positioned in the left lateral decubitus position with head turned semiprone and a right occipital scalp flap and craniotomy performed. Smaller AVMs (< 3 cm diameter), many low-flow AOVMs, and many deep-seated vascular malformations (AVMs and AOVMs) require a small, **stereotactic craniotomy.** This is performed by attaching fiducial markers or (less frequently) a stereotactic base frame to the patient's skull (using local anesthetic and sedation). Next, a CT or MRI scan is obtained. The location of the AVM in relation to the markers (or frame) is calculated, using a computer and stereotactic geometric principles. The patient is taken to the OR, intubated (fiberoptically if a frame is used), and positioned for surgery. The surgical navigation system reference is attached to the headrest and microscope and calibrated. A small scalp flap and a small craniotomy (a few cm in diameter) can be fashioned precisely for microscopic exposure of the malformation. Microsurgical resection of brain stem and thalamic vascular malformations often necessitate special positioning. In frame-based surgery, a three-dimensional arc frame is fixed to the base frame, and coordinates are set to localize the vascular malformation within the brain.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cerebral AVM; dural AVM (an A-V shunt within the dura mater); cavernous malformation (low-flow hemangioma); angiographically occult vascular malformation; intracerebral hemorrhage; subarachnoid hemorrhage; seizures; epilepsy; progressive neurological deficit; migraine or vascular headaches

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Standard Craniotomy (High-Flow AVM)	Stereotactic Craniotomy (Low-Flow AOVM)	Brain Stem/Thalamic Vascular Malformations
Position	Supine, lateral, Concorde (modified prone; Fig. 1.1-3)	⇐	Lateral, Concorde, or semisitting (Fig. 1.1-4)
Incision	Frontal, temporal, parietal, occipital, suboccipital, or combination	⇐	Suboccipital (midline), paramedian, or occipital
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; radiolucent table and headrest. Access to femoral artery for intraop angiography. Surgical navigation system.	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Standard Craniotomy (High-Flow AVM)	Stereotactic Craniotomy (Low-Flow AOVM)	Brain Stem/Thalamic Vascular Malformations
Unique considerations	Induced hypotension (MAP 60–65 mm Hg) during resection, use of neuroprotective agents (see Craniotomy for Aneurysms, pp. 6–11). Relaxed brain. Mild hypothermia (33°C); ± lumbar CSF drain.	Use of neuroprotective agents and relaxed brain (see Craniotomy for Aneurysms, pp. 8–9).	⇐
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1 g iv (avoid mixing with Ca^{++}-containing solutions)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4–10 h	2–5 h	3–6 h
Closing considerations	Maintain MAP 65–75 mm Hg to ↓ post-resection hyperemia. Avoid ↑ venous pressure. Consider loading dose of phenytoin (1 g iv for adults) if not previously on anticonvulsants.	Keep MAP 70–90 mm Hg. ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ No anticonvulsants necessary
EBL	500–3000 mL	< 250 mL	⇐
Postop care	ICU × 1–2 d. Maintain MAP 65–75 mm Hg for 1 d. ICP monitoring, ventricular drain; normovolemic in ICU.	ICU × 1 d; normovolemic in ICU	⇐
Mortality	1–10%, depending on AVM size, location, and venous drainage pattern	< 0.5%	< 2%
Morbidity	Overall: 5–30% Breakthrough bleeding: < 5% Intracranial hemorrhage Cerebral edema Stroke < 15% Hydrocephalus Massive blood loss: Occasional Thromboembolism: Rare Infection: Rare	< 5% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	10–50% (transient) < 5% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–4	3–4	3–4

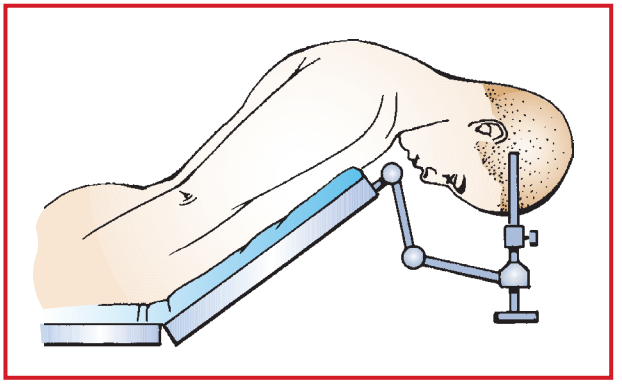


Figure 1.1-3. Concorde (modified prone) position for resection of posterior fossa vascular malformations.

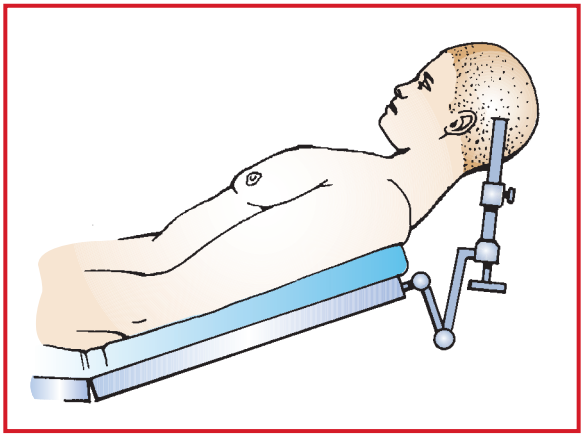


Figure 1.1-4. Semisitting position for resection of deep posterior corpus callosum or thalamic vascular malformations.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	15–40 yr (most common), 41–60 yr (less frequent). Average age: 33 yr.
Male:Female	1:1 (slight male predominance)
Incidence	0.2% of the U.S. population (AVM); 0.1% (cavernous malformation)
Etiology	Congenital; traumatic for dural AVM
Associated conditions	Intracranial aneurysm (~10% of AVM patients [up to 58% in some studies]); Von Hippel-Lindau disease; Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome; familial cavernous malformation syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

AVMs are typically direct arterial-to-venous communications without intervening normal capillary circulation. On histological exam, the vessel walls are thin and lack a muscular layer; consequently, the vessels exhibit loss of normal vasomotor control or responsiveness to changes in $PaCO_2$. **Stereotactic localization** is essential for safe excision of deep-seated AVMs (e.g., those located in the corona radiata, basal ganglia, visual center, cerebellar white matter, or corpus callosum). Untreated, the overall risk of rupture is ~2–4% per year (varies by size). AVMs > 6 cm in maximum diameter and located near eloquent areas of cortex or with deep venous drainage (grade IV and V) have a high complication rate and may not be suitable for surgical resection without prior partial embolization.

Respiratory	Not usually significant unless patient has Hx of smoking, or has aspiration pneumonitis as a result of a neurological deficit from an intracranial hemorrhagic or ischemic event. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Generally, these patients do not have other cardiovascular diseases. Occasionally, ECG changes are noted following intracranial hemorrhage and may represent subendocardial injury 2° catecholamine release. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	Presenting Sx depend on location and size of AVM and whether it is a low- or high-flow lesion. Hemorrhage with resultant headache and/or neurological deficit is the most common Sx, although patients also may present with intractable seizure disorder, recurrent HAs,

Neurological (cont'd)	or Sx of cerebral ischemia 2° high-flow AV shunts, causing an intracerebral steal. Surgical treatment is essential to prevent future hemorrhage (incidence of 2–4%/yr) with substantial mortality (6–30%) or severe morbidity (15–80%). Unlike hemorrhages from an intracerebral aneurysm (generally subarachnoid), hemorrhages from an AVM are usually ventricular or intraparenchymal; hence, they are seldom associated with cerebral vasospasm. **Tests:** CTA; MRI; cerebral angiogram. Preop cerebral angiogram indicates size and location of the AVM and whether it is likely to be a low- or high-flow lesion.
Hematologic	After surgery for AVM, it is fairly common for surrounding brain tissue to swell and resection sites to bleed. The cause of this is unknown, but it may be related to diversion of former AVM blood flow into the surrounding vasculature, producing a fragile hyperemic state. Thus, it is advisable to attempt embolization of the lesion before surgery; obtain coag studies preop, and consider staging resection over more than one sitting when the residual AVM is large. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; Plt count
Laboratory	CBC; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If medication is desirable, small doses of midazolam (e.g., 1–3 mg iv) are useful. Detailed discussion with patient about the anesthetic plan, with appropriate reassurance, is essential.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The goals of anesthesia for this operation are to: (a) ↓ $CMRO_2$ to lessen the dependence of normal brain on vessels feeding the AVM; (b) decrease intracranial volume (blood and tissue) to optimize surgical working space within the cranial compartment and minimize the need for surgical retraction; and (c) reduce CPP (10–20% below normal) to lessen blood loss during excision of the AVM (post-craniotomy CPP = cerebral arterial pressure minus cerebral venous pressure). For stereotactic image-guided surgery, scalp localizing markers are attached. The patient is then sent to MR or CT, where the exact coordinates defining the AVM and critical adjacent structures are established. The patient is brought to OR, and anesthesia is induced.

Induction	Propofol 1–2 mg/kg iv provides amnesia and ↓ CBV by inducing cerebral vasoconstriction. Fentanyl 7–10 mcg/kg iv blunts the response to laryngoscopy and provides analgesia for the first hours. High-dose opiates used as a primary anesthetic technique do not alter CBF or $CMRO_2$ enough to provide any special benefits. Vecuronium (0.15 mg/kg) or rocuronium (0.6–1 mg/kg), provides muscle relaxation for intubation and patient positioning. Occasionally the patient may be in a stereotactic frame, and ET intubation must be accomplished before anesthesia is induced because the frame may partially occlude the mouth, making conventional laryngoscopy impossible. Awake oral fiberoptic intubation of the trachea is the easiest method for accomplishing this (see p. I-2).
Maintenance	Isoflurane ≤ 1% or sevoflurane ≤ 2% (limit to 1/2 MAC maximum if EP monitoring is used) with 1:1 O_2/N_2O. With EP monitoring, a remifentanil infusion (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) may be necessary to supplement the anesthetic. Propofol (50–150 mcg/kg/min) by continuous infusion may be administered to provide ↓ CBV and ↓ $CMRO_2$ and allow for reduction in inhalation agent concentration or elimination of N_2O. Mild hypothermia (33°C) provides additional cerebral protection (see below). Additional neuromuscular blocking drugs are usually not necessary, but can be administered if patient movement is of concern. Induced mild hypotension is often useful during AVM resection. Following resection, induced brief hypertension (e.g., 90 mm Hg) may be requested to assess hemostasis.
Emergence	With the start of dural closure, consider changing the anesthetic to low-dose sevoflurane (e.g., 0.5%) in 50% N_2O, supplemented with a low-dose remifentanil infusion (e.g., 0.05 mcg/kg/min). A propofol infusion (if used) should be discontinued at the start of the scalp closure. The patient's BP generally will increase, and titration of β-adrenergic blocking drugs (e.g., labetalol or esmolol) and/or vasodilators (e.g., SNP) may be needed. (See Control of BP, below.) The inhalation agents can be D/C'd at the time of dressing application.

Emergence (cont'd)	Most patients will breathe spontaneously and can be extubated uneventfully while on a 0.05 mcg/kg/min remifentanil infusion. If the brain has not been injured by the surgical procedure, the patient should awaken within 10 min after cessation of remifentanil administration. Close regulation of BP is essential. If the patient begins to cough on ETT, either it should be removed or cough reflex suppressed with iv lidocaine (1 mg/kg). Patient is placed in bed in a 20–30° head-up position and transported to ICU for monitoring overnight. Supplemental O_2 should be administered and close regulation of BP maintained (typically at ~10% below baseline values). Prophylactic antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg and ondansetron 4 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation. Consider iv acetominophen (1g) and/or local anesthetic scalp infiltration for postop analgesia.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS @ < 10 mL/kg + UO Massive blood loss possible Maintain euvolemia Maintain colloid oncotic pressure	If blood volume is normal, NS—not to exceed 10 mL/kg beyond that required to replace UO—is given. If hypovolemic, albumin 5% is given if Hct > 30%; combination of albumin and blood, if Hct < 30%.
Hypothermia	Water-circulating blankets Cool air blower Cold OR InnerCool®-type device Bladder irrigation	Mild hypothermia (33°–34°C) is used in some centers for cerebral protection and to ↓ brain size. This level of hypothermia does not interfere appreciably with coagulation, nor is it generally associated with cardiac dysrhythmias. Warming is begun as soon as possible after lesion resection and is greatly facilitated by the use of a central warming device (e.g., InnerCool®).
Brain Relaxation (control of ICP)	Hyperventilate to $PaCO_2$ = ~35 mm Hg or $PetCO_2$ = 30 mm Hg. Limit isoflurane ≤ 1%. Maintain euvolemia. Consider propofol infusion (50 mg/kg/min) to replace N_2O. Mannitol 0.5–1 g/kg Furosemide 10–20 mg q 6 h Lumbar CSF drainage	↓ $PaCO_2$ → ↓ cerebral vascular volume →↑ working space and lessens need for vigorous retraction of brain tissue. ↓ $PaCO_2$ may also improve the regional distribution of CBF by preferentially diverting blood to potentially ischemic areas of the brain. If AVM is superficial, decreasing brain volume is less important, and the first four techniques listed (at left) are usually sufficient. If AVM is deep, the additional listed therapies may be needed.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Core temp: deep esophageal best Arterial line CVP line, subclavian preferred UO Blood glucose (100–180 mg%)	Direct monitoring is essential for rapid control of BP. Transducer should always be placed at the level of the head rather than the heart because CPP is arterial pressure at the brain level minus CVP or ICP, whichever is higher. Monitoring CVP via a near right atrial catheter is desirable in virtually all patients to assess adequacy of fluid therapy, for infusion of vasoactive drugs and aspiration of VAE. Localization of the catheter can be determined by CXR, ECG tracing, noting P-wave changes or pressure-wave contour and value as the catheter is withdrawn from the right atrium. **NB**: If patient has a high-flow AVM causing a large AV shunt, venous blood may appear arterialized (bright red) during central venous catheterization.
Control of BP	Isoflurane/sevoflurane Esmolol infusion SNP infusion Maintain normovolemia. Labetalol (emergence)	Close regulation of BP during induction and prior to excision of AVMs is important, both to prevent bleeding (↑ BP) and to avoid ischemia 2° steal (↓ BP). After surgical excision is underway, however, modest decreases in MAP (≤ 20% below normal) using isoflurane, alone or in combination

Control of BP (cont'd)		with esmolol and/or SNP, should be used to prevent excessive bleeding. Responses to vasoactive drugs are much easier to regulate if the patient is euvolemic.
Positioning	Shoulder roll Three-point fixation (Mayfield) ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes 180° rotation SCDs	For most AVMs, patient is supine, head turned laterally in three-point fixation, a roll under shoulder on the side of operation (Fig. 1.1-5). Anesthetic hoses and all monitoring/vascular catheter lines are directed toward patient's feet or side. Make sure that all will reach the foot of operating table. SCDs are used to minimize DVT. Remifentanil (2–4 mcg/kg iv bolus) should be used to minimize ↑ BP during skull pinning.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Neurological deficits	If these complications occur, the patient likely will have to be reintubated and transported to the CT scanner for further neurological evaluation or possible reoperation.
	Cerebral edema and ↑ ICP	Careful regulation of BP is essential to avoid postop hemorrhage.
	Intracerebral hemorrhage	
	Seizures	*Sz Rx: Phenytoin (1 g loading dose). **NB**: Incompatible with dextrose-containing solutions.
Pain management	Meperidine 10–20 mg iv/70 kg Codeine (30–60 mg im q 4 h prn)	At this dose, meperidine minimizes postop shivering without producing excessive sedation.
Tests	CT scan	If neurological status changes.

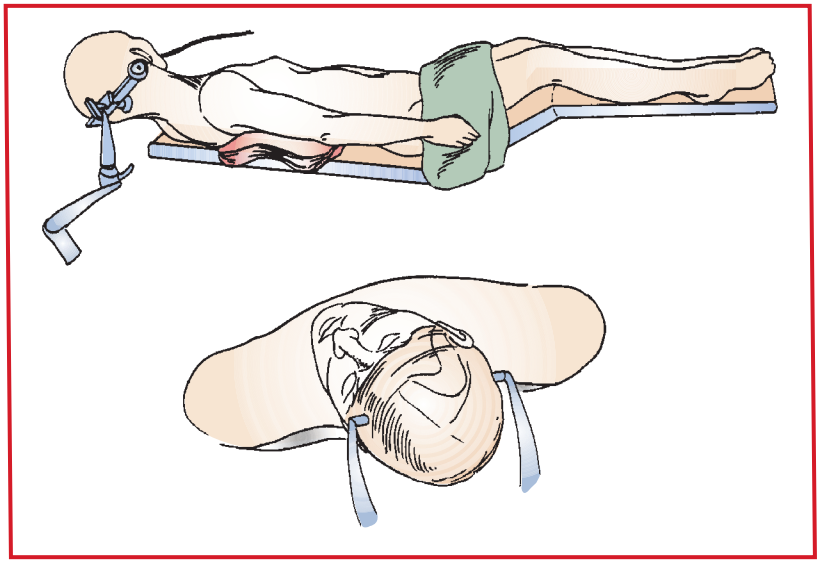


Figure 1.1-5. Supine position, head elevated above heart, turned 30–45° to side, vertex dropped for approach to anterior circulation aneurysms and frontal vascular malformations. (Reproduced with permission from Long DM: *Atlas of Operative Neurosurgical Technique*, Vol 1. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1989.)

Suggested Readings

1. Al-Rodhan NR, Sundt TJ, Piepgras DG, et al: Occlusive hyperemia: a theory for the hemodynamic complications following resection of intracerebral arteriovenous malformations. *J Neurosurg* 1993; 78:167.
2. Chang SD, Lopez JR, Steinberg GK: The usefulness of electrophysiologic monitoring during resection of central nervous system vascular malformations. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis* 1999; 8:412–22.
3. Fleetwood IG, Steinberg GK: Arteriovenous malformations. *Lancet* 2002; 359:863–73.
4. Friedlander RM: Arteriovenous malformations of the brain. *N Engl J Med* 2007; 356(26):2704–2712.
5. Gross BA, Du R: Natural history of cerebral arteriovenous malformations: a meta-analysis. *J Neurosurg* 2013; 118(2):437–43.
6. Miller C, Mirski M: Anesthesia considerations and intraoperative monitoring during surgery for arteriovenous malformations and dural arteriovenous fistulas. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2012; 23(1):153–64.
7. Pradilla G, Coon AL, Huang J, Tamargo RJ: Surgical treatment of cranial arteriovenous malformations and dural arteriovenous fistulas. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2012; 23(1):105–22.
8. Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds: *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques: Indications, Methods, and Results,* Vols I–II. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000.
9. Steinberg GK, Chang SD, Gerwitz RJ, et al: Microsurgical resection of brain stem, thalamic and basal ganglia angiographically occult vascular malformation. *Neurosurgery* 2000; 46:260–71.
10. Steinberg GK, Stoodley MA: Surgical management of intracranial arteriovenous malformations. In: Schmidek HH, ed: *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques,* 4th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 1363–91.
11. Wilkins RH: Natural history of intracranial vascular malformations: a review. *Neurosurgery* 1985; 16(3):421–30.
12. Young WL, Kader A, Ornstein E, et al: Cerebral hyperemia after arteriovenous malformation resection is related to "breakthrough" complications but not to feeding artery pressure. The Columbia University Arteriovenous Malformation Study Project. *Neurosurgery* 1996; 38:1085–95.

CRANIOTOMY FOR EXTRACRANIAL-INTRACRANIAL REVASCULARIZATION (EC-IC BYPASS)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Gary K. Steinberg and Robert L. Dodd

Description: **Extracranial-intracranial (EC-IC) revascularization** procedures are performed when: (a) deliberate occlusion of a major cervical artery (carotid or vertebral) is necessary and inadequate collateral CBF is available or (b) stenosis or occlusion of major cervical or intracranial arteries causes TIA or stroke, despite the use of maximum medical therapy (e.g., antiplatelet drugs, heparin, or Coumadin). The chief causes of stenosis or occlusion are atherosclerotic disease, radiation injury, and moyamoya disease. The subset of patients who benefit from revascularization are those whose radiographic and metabolism studies demonstrate that they have ↓ CBF and poor or absent vascular reserve. The most important surgical considerations include site of stenosis, adequacy of donor graft, and patient age.

A standard craniotomy is fashioned as previously described for other lesions involving the vasculature around the skull base, and the intracranial site of anastomosis is exposed using microscopic techniques. Typically, a donor extracranial scalp artery (e.g., superficial temporal artery) is anastomosed to an intracranial artery (e.g., middle cerebral artery) distal to the site of stenosis. When scalp vessels are inadequate, an interposition vein segment can be sutured to a cervical artery and then anastomosed to the designated intracranial artery. The most common EC-IC procedure is a **superficial temporal artery (STA)-to-middle cerebral artery (MCA) branch anastomosis** (See Figs. 1.1-6 to 1.1-10). Other grafts include STA-to-posterior cerebral artery, STA-to-superior cerebellar artery, occipital artery-to-posterior inferior cerebral artery or interposition saphenous vein segment graft from the cervical external carotid artery to the middle cerebral artery, posterior cerebral artery, or superior cerebellar artery.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Indirect revascularization** is commonly employed in patients in whom the graft vessels are too small for direct anastomosis. Vascular source tissues include a temporalis muscle flap and a flap of dura folded under so that its outer vascular surface is apposed to the cortical surface. **Encephalo-duro-arteriosynangiosis (EDAS)** is an indirect variant procedure wherein the STA is dissected circumferentially with its adventitia in the scalp, left in continuity, and laid on the surface of the brain after opening the dura. **Omentum-to-brain**

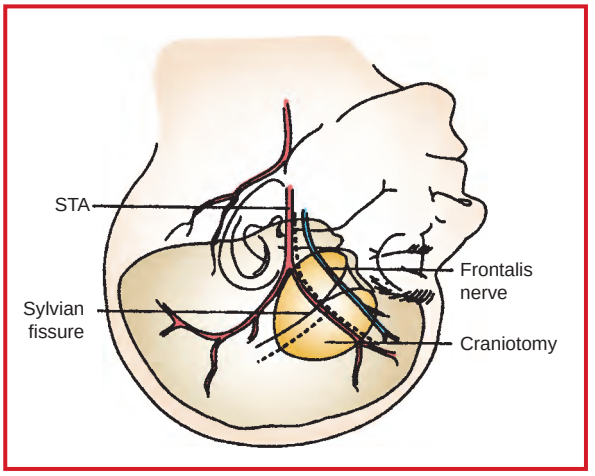


Figure 1.1-6. Typical skin incision for EC-IC bypass. The main incision is planned over the superficial temporal artery (STA) with a T extension to allow exposure of the bone. (Reproduced from Chang SD, Steinberg GK: Superficial temporal artery to middle cerebral artery anastomosis. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6(2):86–100.)

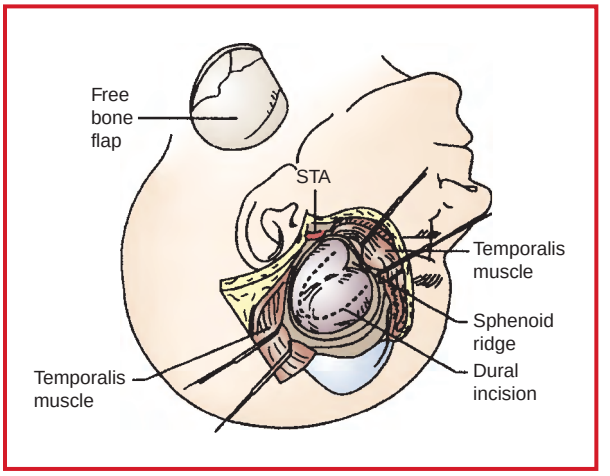


Figure 1.1-7. After the STA is dissected out, the temporalis muscle is divided, and the bone flap is made to allow exposure of the brain over the anterior sylvian fissure. (Reproduced from Chang SD, Steinberg GK: Superficial temporal artery to middle cerebral artery anastomosis. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6(2):86–100.)

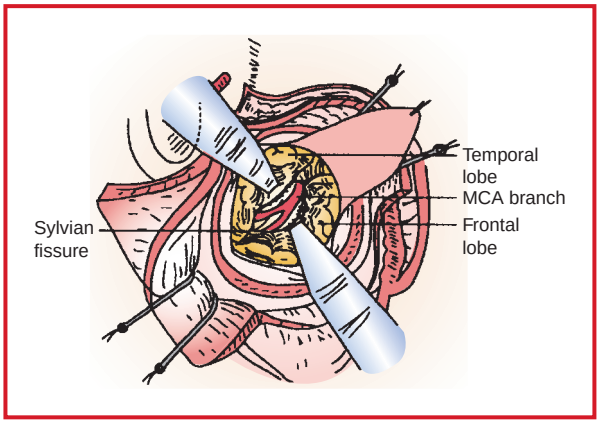


Figure 1.1-8. A middle cerebral artery (MCA) recipient vessel is identified. The sylvian fissure can be split to allow identification of a larger, more proximal branch of the MCA, preferably an M3 branch. (Reproduced from Chang SD, Steinberg GK: Superficial temporal artery to middle cerebral artery anastomosis. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6(2):86–100.)

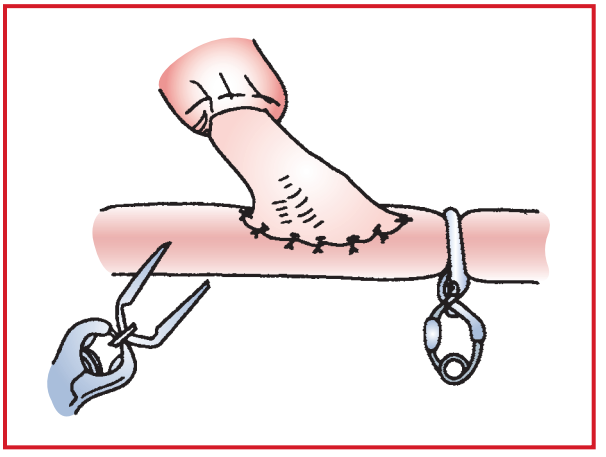


Figure 1.1-9. When the anastomosis is complete, the vascular clips are removed. (Reproduced from Chang SD, Steinberg GK: Superficial temporal artery to middle cerebral artery anastomosis. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6(2):86–100.)

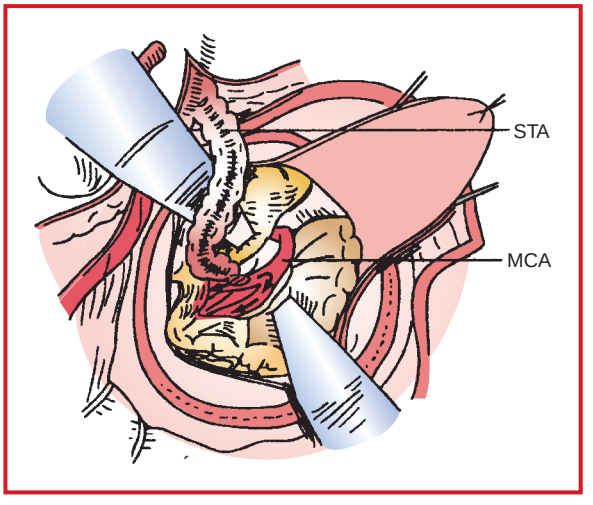


Figure 1.1-10. The completed anastomosis shows the STA positioned such that flow is directed toward the proximal portions of the MCA. (Reproduced from Chang SD, Steinberg GK: Superficial temporal artery to middle cerebral artery anastomosis. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6(2):86–100.)

transposition is a rarely used variant, wherein the omentum, with its luxuriant blood supply, is lengthened, left attached to the right gastroepiploic artery, tunneled subcutaneously in the chest and neck, and laid over a large area of poorly vascularized cerebral cortex after opening the dura. Sometimes an omental graft is transposed to the brain by anastomosing the omental gastroepiploic artery and vein to the superficial temporal artery and vein. Revascularization is induced by angiogenesis factors and growth substances secreted by the brain and omentum.

Usual preop diagnosis: Moyamoya disease (cerebral ischemia due to occlusion of vessels at base of the brain); stroke; TIA; carotid artery stenosis (inaccessible to carotid endarterectomy); carotid artery occlusion; middle cerebral artery stenosis or occlusion; vertebral artery stenosis or occlusion; basilar artery stenosis or occlusion

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	EC-IC Bypass	EC-IC Bypass with Vein Graft	Indirect Procedures
Position	Supine or lateral decubitus	⇐	⇐
Incision	Frontal, parietal, temporal, occipital, or a combination of these, depending on area to be vascularized.	⇐ + Medial aspect of leg and thigh for harvesting greater saphenous vein	⇐ + possible abdominal incision for harvesting omentum and chest/neck incision for tunneling
Special instrumentation	Microscopic instruments; microvascular Doppler to identify scalp donor artery course and confirm graft patency. Videoangiography with indocyanine green.	⇐ + Tunneling instruments	⇐
Unique considerations	Neuroprotective agents (barbiturates, mannitol) and induced mild HTN (MAP 90–110 mm Hg) during cross-clamp of recipient intracranial artery. Avoid hypocapnia. Mild hypothermia (33°C). Dexamethasone 8–12 mg iv.	⇐ + Attention to proper alignment of vein when tunneled to avoid kinking; heparinization if major cervical artery (carotid, vertebral) is temporarily occluded.	⇐ + Avoid devascularizing source tissue during dissection or compromise to blood supply during closure.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv q d (avoid Ca^{++} containing solution)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4–6 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Careful attention to hemostasis. Avoid compromise of graft with dural closure, bone replacement or scalp closure.	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL	⇐	100–200 mL
Postop care	Start aspirin on POD 1; monitor for subdural hygroma (CSF fluid collection in subdural space); ICU × 1 d.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 0.5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Transient neurologic deficit: 20–40% Subdural hygroma: Rare Wound infection: Rare Stroke: Rare	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	 ⇐ ⇐ Abdominal hernia: Rare
Pain score	3	3–5	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	40–80 yr; 2–20 yr for moyamoya disease
Male:Female	1:1 for atherosclerotic disease; 1:1.4 for moyamoya disease
Incidence	Thromboembolic stroke common, but indications for EC-IC bypass rare; 1/million/yr for moyamoya disease
Etiology	Atherosclerosis; embolism from heart or carotid artery
Associated conditions	HTN; CAD; PVD; hyperlipidemia; smoking; alcohol abuse; obesity; moyamoya disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients range in age from pediatric (classic moyamoya disease) to adult. These patients may have significant pre-existing neurologic deficits. HTN in these patients is often an adaptation to cerebral vascular insufficiency → hypoperfusion. Inappropriate treatment of this compensatory HTN → cerebral ischemia and stroke. Patients with symptomatic moyamoya disease or bilateral carotid stenosis or occlusion may be good candidates for EC-IC bypass, especially since there are no alternative forms of therapy that have proven to be effective. Most patients present with h/o TIAs or stroke, and most are receiving antiplatelet medication.

Respiratory	None unless patient has Hx of smoking or has sustained pulmonary aspiration 2° neurological deficit. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	HTN is a common adaptive mechanism to maintain cerebral perfusion; therefore, "normalization" of BP preop may be undesirable. Adult patients may have generalized vascular disease, including CAD, so a careful cardiac Hx, physical exam, and ECG analysis should be done. If findings are positive, consider a more complete evaluation, including ECHO and coronary angiography. Be aware that cardiac insufficiency is the cause of about half of the deaths in patients with cerebrovascular disease. **Tests:** Consider ECG, others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Patients present with Sx of focal ischemic lesions. Cerebral angiography is necessary to r/o other causes of TIAs and characterize collateral circulation. Regional CBF studies are generally not helpful because measurement does not distinguish between low flow due to cerebrovascular obstruction and that due to low metabolic demands 2° prolonged cerebral ischemia. Preexisting deficits should be well characterized. **Tests:** CTA; MRI; angiogram
Hematologic	For most patients: a platelet-suppressive dose of aspirin should be continued through the day of surgery; drugs affecting PT/PTT should be D/C'd at least 1 wk before surgery to avoid excessive bleeding; Clopidogrel (Plavix) should be D/C'd 5 d before surgery. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; hemogram
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If medication is desirable, small doses of midazolam (e.g., 1–3 mg iv) are useful. Detailed discussion with the patient about the anesthetic plan with appropriate reassurance is essential.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The goals of anesthesia for this procedure are to: (a) maximize flow to the ischemic area through collateral channels by maintaining BP at normal or somewhat elevated values; (b) ↑ tolerance of the brain to ischemia by decreasing $CMRO_2$ with the use of mild hypothermia (33–34°C) and anesthesia; (c) ↓ intracranial volume (blood and tissue) to optimize working space within the cranial compartment, thereby minimizing the need for surgical retraction; and (d) provide adequate surgical anesthesia.

Induction	Propofol 1–2 mg/kg iv to provide amnesia and ↓ cerebral blood volume by inducing cerebral vasoconstriction. Fentanyl 7–10 mcg/kg iv to blunt response to intubation and provide analgesia for the first hours of surgery. Vecuronium 0.15 mg/kg, or rocuronium 0.6–1.0 mg/kg to provide muscle relaxation for tracheal intubation. Bolus ephedrine and/or phenylephrine are often necessary to maintain CPP during induction.	
Maintenance	Isoflurane ≤ 1% or sevoflurane ≤ 2% (1/2 MAC maximum if EP monitoring is used) with 1:1 O_2/N_2O. A phenylephrine infusion is usually necessary to maintain CPP during the procedure. Burst-suppression is induced with propofol (~1 mg/kg) just before cross-clamping of the cerebral artery in preparation for anastomosis. A bolus dose of phenylephrine and/or ephedrine is usually given concomitantly to offset the hypotensive effects of propofol. If mild hypothermia was employed, rewarming should start as soon as revascularization is complete.	
Emergence	With the start of dural closure, consider changing the anesthetic to low-dose sevoflurane (e.g., 0.5%) in 50% N_2O, supplemented with a low-dose remifentanil infusion (e.g., 0.05 mcg/kg/min). A propofol infusion (if used) should be discontinued at the start of the scalp closure. The patient's BP generally will increase and titration of β-adrenergic blocking drugs (e.g., labetalol or esmolol) and/or vasodilators (e.g., SNP) may be needed. (See Control of BP, below.) The inhalation agents can be D/C'd at the time of dressing application. Most patients will breathe spontaneously and can be extubated uneventfully while on the remifentanil infusion. If the brain has not been injured by the surgical procedure, the patient should awaken within 10 min after cessation of remifentanil administration. Close regulation of BP is essential. If the patient begins to cough on ETT, either it should be removed or cough reflex suppressed with iv lidocaine (1.0 mg/kg). Patient is placed in bed in a 20–30° head-up position and transported to ICU for monitoring overnight. Supplemental O_2 should be administered and close regulation of BP maintained (typically at baseline values). Prophylactic antiemetics (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg ± metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv) should be given 30 min before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 2 NS @ < 10 mL/kg + UO CVP (triple-lumen)	In hypothermic patients, iv drugs should be administered through the central line to ensure timely entry into the central circulation. Use low volume (1 mL) extension for drug infusions. Reserve distal lumen for pressure monitoring and air aspiration.
Control of brain volume (ICP)	Avoid hypovolemia ↓ isoflurane ≤ 0.5%, or sevoflurane < 1% N_2O ≤ 50% ± Furosemide 10–20 mg iv ± Mannitol 0.5–1.0 g/kg	Maintain normovolemia. Generally, vigorous control of brain volume is not necessary because surgeon is working with cerebral vessels on the surface of the brain. Keep $PaCO_2$ = ~40 mm Hg. Excessive hypocarbia may cause unwanted cerebral vasoconstriction in these patients.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Core temperature Arterial line CVP (triple-lumen catheter) UO	Core temperature is best approximated by a deep esophageal temperature probe. Bladder temp tends to lag behind core temp. The distal CVP lumen is used for pressure monitoring.
Control of BP	Maintain normal BP (MAP). Phenylephrine infusion	Maintenance of normal MAP is important because cerebral perfusion is often impaired in these patients, particularly during temporary occlusion of the surgical vessel being anastomosed. If a vasoconstrictor is needed, a pure α-adrenergic agonist, such as phenylephrine, is preferred because it has minimal dysrhythmogenic potential.

Control of BP (cont'd)	Normovolemia	Responses to vasoactive drugs are much easier to regulate if a normal blood volume has been maintained throughout the anesthetic period.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Shoulder roll SCDs	Anesthetic hoses, monitoring and vascular lines directed to patient's feet where anesthesiologist is usually positioned during surgery. Used to minimize DVT.
Hypothermia	Cold-water circulating blankets. Core temp goal: 33–34°C. InnerCool®-type device Bladder irrigation	Surface cooling is quite effective in patients with high surface-to-volume ratios and should be started as soon as induction of anesthesia is complete, using a cold-water circulating blanket underneath and above the patient. When anastomosis is nearly complete, vigorous efforts at warming, including bladder irrigation, are initiated. Cooling, and especially rewarming can be greatly facilitated by the use of a central heat-exchange device (e.g., InnerCool®) placed in the inferior vena cava through a femoral vein introducer.
Complications	Seizures Stroke Hemorrhage at anastomosis Brain swelling	*Sz Rx: Phenytoin (1 g loading dose). **NB**: Incompatible with dextrose-containing solutions. May be 2° hyperemia in revascularized territory.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Localized scalp necrosis Brain swelling	Major complications uncommon; localized scalp necrosis unique to this procedure. May be 2° to delayed hyperemia. Careful control of BP is important.
Pain management	Meperidine (10–20 mg iv prn) Acetaminophen 1 g iv	Useful to suppress shivering Postop pain is usually not severe.
Tests	Cerebral angiogram Regional blood flow studies CT scan	Cerebral angiography documents patency of graft and collateral flow. Regional blood flow studies are often useful. If any question about neurological status, a CT scan is performed.

Suggested Readings

1. Baykan N, Ozgen S, Ustalar ZS, et al: Moyamoya disease and anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2005; 15(12):1111–5.
2. Chang SD, Steinberg GK: Superficial temporal artery to middle cerebral artery anastomosis. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6:86–100.
3. Crowley RW, Mendel R, Dumont AS: Evolution of cerebral revascularization techniques. *Neurosurg Focus* 2008; 24(2):E3.
4. Firlick AD, Newell DW, Steinberg GK, eds: Cerebral revascularization. *Neurosurg Clin North Am* 2001; 12(3).
5. Fujimura M, Kaneta T, Mugikura S, et al: Temporary neurologic deterioration due to cerebral hyperperfusion after superficial temporal artery-middle cerebral artery anastomosis in patients with adult-onset moyamoya disease. *Surg Neurol* 2007; 67(3):273–82.
6. Kato R, Terui K, Yokota K, et al: Anesthetic management for cesarean section in moyamoya disease: a report of five consecutive cases and a mini-review. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 2006; 15(2):152–58.
7. Kikuta K, Takagi Y, Nozaki K, et al: Effects of intravenous anesthesia with propofol on regional cortical blood flow and intracranial pressure in surgery for moyamoya disease. *Surg Neurol* 2007; 68(4):421–4.
8. Ohue S, Kumon Y, Kohno K, et al: Postoperative temporary neurological deficits in adults with moyamoya disease. *Surg Neurol* 2007.
9. Sia SF, Morgan MK: High flow extracranial-to-intracranial brain bypass surgery. *J Clin Neurosci* 2013; 20(1):1–5.
10. Steinberg GK, ed: Cerebral revascularization techniques. *Tech Neurosurg* 2000; 6(2).
11. Zhao WG, Luo Q, Jia JB, Yu JL: Cerebral hyperperfusion syndrome after revascularization surgery in patients with moyamoya disease. *Br J Neurosurg* 2013.

CRANIOTOMY FOR TUMOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Sayed A. Karim, Lawrence M. Shuer, and Steven D. Chang

Description: Many classification systems exist for brain tumors. Generally, brain tumors can be classified by their location, and a differential diagnosis can be generated based on tumor location and patient age. Brain tumors are either supratentorial or infratentorial (Table 1.1-2) or intraaxial or extraaxial (Table 1.1-3). The surgical approach depends on the location of the lesion, the need for brain relaxation, and whether exposure will require brain resection. Patient positioning generally depends on the location and surgical approach to the tumor (Table 1.1-4). Once positioned, the patient's head typically is placed in a Mayfield pin fixation system to prevent head movement during surgery and to allow for intraoperative image-guided stereotactic navigation.

Several types of incisions are used for these procedures. **Linear incisions** can be used to resect small tumors over the convexity or when using a midline approach to the posterior fossa and often have the advantage of a more rapid wound closure. **Curvilinear** or **horseshoe-shaped incisions** are commonly used for larger tumors. After the skull is exposed, burr holes are made with a drill, and the bone flap is cut with the craniotome. Some surgeons routinely use a **free-bone flap**, in which the bone is completely removed and stored for the duration of the case. Other surgeons turn an **osteoplastic flap**, where the bone is left attached to muscle and/or pericranium to keep it partially vascularized. When performing certain posterior fossa resections (e.g., a retromastoid craniotomy or low suboccipital craniotomy), the surgeon may choose to remove the bone without replacement, performing a **craniectomy** instead of a craniotomy. After the bone is removed, a few small holes are drilled near the edge of the craniotomy. These holes are used to suspend the dura using sutures. This helps prevent blood from accumulating in the epidural space during the rest of the case. The dura is then opened either in a stellate or curvilinear fashion. The method of dural opening generally is based on the size of the bone opening and its proximity to venous sinuses. The surgeon then proceeds with tumor removal if it is on the surface or with brain retraction/resection if the tumor is deep to the surface. At this point, the surgeon may request anesthetic interventions for brain relaxation (osmotic diuresis, hyperventilation) and specific BP control. After the tumor is removed, hemostasis is achieved and the dura is closed. The bone flap

Table 1.1-2. Common Tumor Location (Supratentorial vs Infratentorial)

Supratentorial	Infratentorial
Metastatic tumors	Metastatic tumors
Astrocytoma/glioblastoma	Acoustic neuromas
Oligodendroglioma	Meningiomas
Ependymoma	Hemangioblastoma
Meningioma	Medulloblastoma
Choroid plexus papilloma	
Craniopharyngioma	
Primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET)	

Table 1.1-3. Intraaxial (Within-the-Brain Parenchyma) vs Extraaxial (Outside-the-Brain Parenchyma)

Intraaxial Tumors	Extra-axial Tumors
Astrocytoma/glioblastoma	Meningioma
Metastatic tumors	Acoustic neuroma
Oligodendroglioma	Choroid plexus papilloma
Ependymoma	Craniopharyngioma
Hemangioblastoma	Hemangiopericytoma
Medulloblastoma	
PNET	

Table 1.1-4. Common Patient Positions Based on Tumor Location

Supine:	Most supratentorial tumors in the frontal, temporal, or anterior parietal lobe. Tumors of the lateral ventricles and 3rd ventricle. Tumors of the anterior 2/3 of the interhemispheric fissure.
Lateral:	Tumors of the posterior or lateral parietal lobe, posterior temporal lobe, cerebellopontine angle, or lateral cerebellum. Tumors of the posterior ventricular horn.
Prone:	Tumors of the occipital lobe, most midline cerebellar tumors, and tumors of the 4th ventricle. Tumors of the posterior 1/3 interhemispheric fissure and the tentorium.
Sitting:	Tumors of the pineal region. Tumors of the 4th ventricle or midline cerebellum.

is replaced and fixated, the galea is closed with sutures, and the skin incision is closed with staples. During closure, the surgeon may ask for specific BP parameters to ensure that there is hemostasis in the resection bed and surgical field. Patients typically are extubated after cranial surgery because it is paramount to obtain a neurologic exam as soon after surgery as possible. Patients undergoing a craniotomy almost always require a postoperative ICU course.

Electrophysiologic monitoring detects changes in SSEP, brain stem auditory evoked potentials (BAEP), and motor cranial nerve EMGs. Such monitoring is commonly used for tumors of the brain stem and skull base, or when resecting tumors in critical locations. Early changes in electrophysiologic monitoring potentials may alert the anesthesiologist to manipulate BP and may help the surgeon to further define the extent of safe retraction and tumor resection to minimize the likelihood of a postoperative deficit.

Image-guided navigation involves the use of a computerized workstation that can track the position of specific instruments before and during the operation. This allows the surgeon to: (a) plan appropriate skin and bone openings, (b) choose an optimal trajectory to the tumor, and (c) achieve a volumetric resection of the tumor. Image-guided navigation involves obtaining a CT or MRI scan prior to the start of the surgical procedure; the time required to obtain this study is usually offset by a shorter operative time. Data from the operative microscope can also be incorporated into the navigation system to aid in tumor dissection.

Mild hypothermia is often utilized when resecting tumors in eloquent areas of the brain because hypothermia has been shown to provide neuroprotection.

CSF drainage usually is accomplished by use of a lumbar drain. Lumbar drainage typically is used for tumors in the cerebellopontine angle, in the pineal region, or tumors associated with significant edema. CSF drainage can also be accomplished by placing a ventriculostomy or by draining various cisterns during the operation.

Awake craniotomies typically are reserved for tumors adjacent to or within the speech areas of the dominant cortex. Patients are sedated during cranial opening and are awakened once the dura is open. Direct cortical stimulation is performed to determine the relationship between the tumor and the speech centers. The surgeon then maps out eloquent and noneloquent areas of the brain prior to beginning the tumor resection. The patient continues to converse during the tumor resection to ensure that language function is not altered.

Interstitial chemotherapy or brachytherapy can be performed after the tumor resection by implanting chemotherapy impregnated wafers or radioactive seeds in the resection cavity. In addition, a balloon tip catheter can be placed in the resection bed and injected with radioactive material at a later date.

Variant procedure or approaches: Patient position varies depending on tumor location and surgeon preference (Table 1.1-4). Tumors on the convexity, or surface, of the brain may require minimal brain relaxation or exposure. Deep tumors, or tumors around the brain stem or skull base, may require substantial brain relaxation and retraction for optimal exposure. For deep tumors or tumors within or adjacent to critical structures, the operating microscope is commonly used. Large vascular tumors may undergo preoperative embolization of the tumor blood supply to minimize intraoperative blood loss.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Glioma; glioblastoma multiforme; astrocytoma; oligodendroglioma; ependymoma; PNET; meningioma; craniopharyngioma; choroid plexus papilloma; hemangioblastomas; medulloblastoma; acoustic neuroma; brain metastasis; hemangiopericytoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, lateral, prone, or sitting, based on location of tumor
Incision	Linear or curvilinear, based on location of tumor
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope, laser, CUSA, electrophysiologic monitoring, image-guided navigation, lumbar drain, ventriculostomy
Unique considerations	ETT must be taped securely in a location satisfactory to the surgeon; anode or RAE tube is helpful in certain situations. Decadron is usually given preoperatively and dosed every 6 h to minimize brain edema. Brain relaxation techniques may be required. The patient with ↑ ICP may require special consideration for induction of anesthesia. Awake craniotomy (see p. 34) may be required for tumors involving eloquent brain areas.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv (avoid Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	3–5 h typically
Closing considerations	Possible requirement for dural graft. Drain often left in the epidural or subgaleal space. Good BP control during closing and extubation to prevent hemorrhage into tumor resection bed.
EBL	50–500 mL (Meningiomas and renal cell mets are highly vascular tumors, and blood loss may be substantial.)
Postoperative care	ICU or close observation unit × 1–3 d. Fluid and electrolytes require frequent monitoring. BP may need to be controlled with antihypertensives.
Mortality	0–5% (mortality higher for tumors in critical locations)
Morbidity	Infection: 1% Neurological: neurologic disability, nerve injury: 0–10% CSF leak: 1–3% Venous sinus injury, air embolus Endocrine disorder Massive blood loss
Pain score	2–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Infant to 85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	~1:1
Incidence	Common neurosurgical procedure (~40,000 dx/yr in the United States)
Etiology	Neoplastic

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: craniotomy for tumor; craniotomy for skull tumor)

PREOPERATIVE

Typically this is a healthy patient population, apart from Sx attributable to intracranial pathology (↑ ICP, Sz, HA, N/V, visual disturbances). Discuss surgical approach, positioning, tumor type, and potential for blood loss with surgeon. These patients are often receiving steroids to ↓ ICP.

Respiratory	Occasionally neurogenic pulmonary edema may occur. H/o chemotherapy or radiation therapy may affect pulmonary function and airway management. Otherwise no special considerations, unless indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	Benign or malignant brain tumors cause edema formation in adjacent normal brain tissue, which may → ↑ ICP. If ICP increases sufficiently to cause herniation of the brain stem, patients develop the "Cushing triad" of HTN, bradycardia, and respiratory irregularity. These changes will resolve when ICP is reduced, so vigorous attempts to regulate BP and HR prior to craniotomy are not warranted. After the diagnosis of brain tumor is made, most patients are placed on high-dose steroid therapy to lessen edema in surrounding normal brain. Steroids are extremely effective in this setting, and Sx of ↑ ICP will often abate. **Tests:** Consider ECG; others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Patients may present with complaints related to ↑ ICP (e.g., HA, N/V, visual changes, recent onset of Sz), neurological deficits from compression of motor area, or as a result of hemorrhage from the tumor or edema in surrounding normal brain. Document preop physical findings. **Tests:** A CT scan or MRI will delineate the site and size of the tumor, especially if iv contrast material, such as gadolinium, is administered to enhance the margins of the tumor. Look for intracranial mass effects: midline shift, ↓ ventricular volume, ↓ peri-brainstem (basal cisterns) CSF space, obstructive hydrocephalus.
Laboratory	Coags should be normal. Hct, electrolytes, and other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Standard premedication (except for patients with the possibility of ↑ ICP: no sedation)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Small tumors, particularly those located in deeper brain structures, may be localized and resected using stereotactic or image-guidance techniques. Generally, scalp markers (fiducials) or a stereotactic frame are placed on the patient's head; then the patient is taken to CT/MR for determination of the exact tumor site. GETA is almost invariably used for tumor removal, although MAC (see Awake Craniotomy, p. 34) is used on rare occasions when the surgeon needs to assess motor or sensory function during the resection of the tumor adjacent to critical motor or speech areas.

Induction	If the patient is in a stereotactic frame, or a difficult intubation is anticipated, orotracheal intubation will need to be accomplished before induction of GA. Awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. I-2) is the best choice because fitting a mask on the face with the stereotactic frame in place is impossible. After the airway is secured, anesthesia usually is induced with propofol (1–3 mg/kg) and fentanyl (5 mcg/kg) in combination with a NMR (e.g., vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg or rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg). To minimize ↑↑ BP and ↑ ICP with ET intubation, it is important that the patient be well anesthetized (and paralyzed) before undertaking laryngoscopy. Induction doses of propofol, or fentanyl may not be sufficient to abolish increases in ICP that may occur with laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation. Consider hyperventilating the patient and using remifentanil (2–3 mcg/kg) as part of the induction technique to further blunt the response to laryngoscopy in patients with ↑ ICP.
Maintenance	Isoflurane or sevoflurane ≤ 1 MAC (≤ 1/2 MAC if EP monitoring is used), inspired with 50:50 O_2/N_2O. Propofol (50–100 mcg/kg/min) can replace N_2O and may be used to further ↓ cerebral blood volume, ↓ cerebral metabolism, and ↓ $CMRO_2$. If movement is of concern, rocuronium 10 mcg/kg/min will provide adequate neuromuscular blockade. A remifentanil infusion (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) can be used to supplement the anesthetic without interfering with EP monitoring.
Emergence	Surgeons should request transient ↑ MAP to 90–100 mm Hg to test hemostasis after the tumor has been resected. With the start of dural closure, consider changing the anesthetic

Emergence (cont'd)	to low-dose sevoflurane (e.g., 0.5%) with 50% N_2O (or propofol replacement), supplemented with a low-dose remifentanil infusion (e.g., 0.05 mcg/kg/min). The patient's BP generally will increase, and titration of β-adrenergic blocking drugs (e.g., labetalol or esmolol) and/or vasodilators (e.g., SNP) may be needed. (See Control of BP, below.) Reverse NMB as necessary. The anesthetic agents can be D/C'd at the time of dressing application while continuing the remifentanil infusion. Most patients will breathe spontaneously and can be extubated uneventfully while on 0.05 mcg/kg/min remifentanil. If the brain has not been injured by the surgical procedure, the patient should awaken within 10 min after cessation of remifentanil administration. Keep close regulation of BP. Patient is placed in bed in a 20–30° head-up position and transported to ICU for monitoring overnight. Supplemental O_2 should be administered and BP control maintained. Prophylactic antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg and ondansetron 4 mg) should be given iv ~30 min before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 2 NS @ 2–3 mL/kg/h	Brain tumors (e.g., meningioma) can be highly vascular. To minimize postop cerebral edema, limit NS to ≤ 10 mL/kg + replacement of UO. If volume is needed, administer albumin 5% as required.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line CVP line ± Precordial Doppler ± BAER, SSEP, MEP UO	If the head of the OR table is significantly elevated (≥ 30°) or if the patient is in the seated position, a precordial Doppler monitor is necessary to monitor for VAE. Evoked potentials can be monitored in the presence of inhaled anesthetics (e.g., ≤ 0.6% isoflurane with 50% N_2O).
Positioning	Supratentorial: supine/lateral Posterior fossa: prone/sitting ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	For brain tumors in the frontal, parietal, or temporal lobes, patient will be supine with head in Mayfield-Kees skeletal fixation, turned to the side and a roll under the shoulder on the operative side (Fig. 1.1-5). For occipital or posterior fossa tumors, patient may be prone or, occasionally, sitting (see Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, Positioning, p. 108). Acoustic neuromas are generally most easily removed with patient in the lateral ("park-bench") position with a roll under the axilla. The patient generally lies on a "bean bag" which holds her/him firmly in the lateral position.
Control of ICP	Maintain normovolemia Control BP in normal range for patient PaO_2 > 100 mm Hg Limit isoflurane or sevoflurane to 1/2 MAC if EP monitoring Steroids: 8–12 mg decadron iv $PaCO_2$ = 25–30 mm Hg Replace N_2O with propofol infusion Mannitol 0.5–1.0 g/kg ± Furosemide 10–20 mg ± Lumbar CSF drain Head up 20–30°	Patients with intracranial tumors may be on the steep portion of the intracranial compliance curve such that any increase in intracranial volume may → ↑↑ ICP. Transient increases in ICP—even up to 50–60 mm Hg—are tolerated, provided they are promptly terminated. Sustained increases in ICP > 25–30 mm Hg are associated with severe neurologic injury and poor outcome. ↓ $PaCO_2$ → ↓ CBV (providing better surgical access) + ↑ CBF to ischemic areas ("Robin Hood" effect). If further reduction in ICP is needed, consider replacing N_2O with a propofol infusion. Mannitol/furosemide → ↓ K^+; monitor level and replace as necessary. If mannitol is administered too rapidly, profound ↓ BP will occur, probably from peripheral vasodilation. CSF drain may be placed after induction of anesthesia and may be opened as required to ↓ CSF volume and pressure.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Seizures Neurologic deficits Tension pneumocephalus Hemorrhage requiring reexploration Edema and ↑ ICP	*Sz Rx: Phenytoin (1 g loading dose). **NB**: Incompatible with dextrose-containing solutions. In seated position, additional rare, but possible complications include quadriplegia from excessive flexion of head, or tension pneumocephalus from intracranial air. Severe tension pneumocephalus may delay emergence from anesthesia or cause postop neurologic deficits. CT scan may be necessary for Dx.
Pain management	Meperidine (10–20 mg iv prn) Acetaminophen 1 g iv	Meperidine reduces postop shivering. Avoid excessive sedation.
Tests	CT scan	If patient exhibits any delay in emergence from anesthesia and surgery, or any new neurologic deficits emerge postop, a CT scan is invariably obtained.

Suggested Readings

1. Buckner JC, Brown PD, O'Neill BP, et al: Central nervous system tumors. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2007; 82(10):1271–86.
2. DeAngelis LM: Brain tumors. *N Engl J Med* 2001; 344(2):114–23.
3. Domaingue CM, Nye DH: Hypotensive effect of mannitol administered rapidly. *Anaesth Intensive Care* 1985; 13(2):134–6.
4. Domino KB, Hemstad JR, Lam AM, et al: Effect of nitrous oxide on intracranial pressure after cranial-dural closure in patients undergoing craniotomy. *Anesthesiology* 1992; 77(3):421–5.
5. Grady RE, Horlocker TT, Brown RD, et al: Neurologic complications after placement of cerebrospinal fluid drainage catheters and needles in anesthetized patients: implications for regional anesthesia. Mayo Perioperative Outcomes Group. *Anesth Analg* 1999; 88:388–92.
6. Grände PO, Romner B: Osmotherapy in brain edema: a questionable therapy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2012; 24(4):407–12.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR AWAKE CRANIOTOMY

PREOPERATIVE

These patients typically are otherwise healthy except for a tumor (or AVM) involving eloquent (speech or motor) areas of the brain. In some centers, awake craniotomies are still used for epilepsy surgery. Awake craniotomies for functional procedures (e.g., deep brain electrode placement) usually involve 1 or 2 burr holes with small dural punctures and are discussed on page 73.

In addition to the preop anesthetic considerations for brain tumors (see p. 31) or vascular malformations (see p. 34), it is essential that these patients (and family) meet with their anesthesiologist and monitoring neurologist to discuss in detail both the anesthetic and surgical aspects of the procedures, as well as the specific speech mapping techniques that will be used. The patient should be told that a Foley catheter will be placed while they are sedated; however after the sedation is stopped, the catheter will become annoying, and the patient may be convinced that he/she has a full bladder. Intraoperative cooperation is critical, and there is no pharmacologic substitute for a well-informed patient.

Premed	Midazolam 1–3 mg iv is usually tolerated. Beware of respiratory depression → ↑ ICP. Antiemetic: e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv slowly and q 2–3 h during the procedure

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Although some centers use an asleep-awake-asleep technique with airway control (ETT or LMA) during the sleep phases, we prefer the following technique that minimizes airway manipulation and its inherent risk of coughing and bucking.

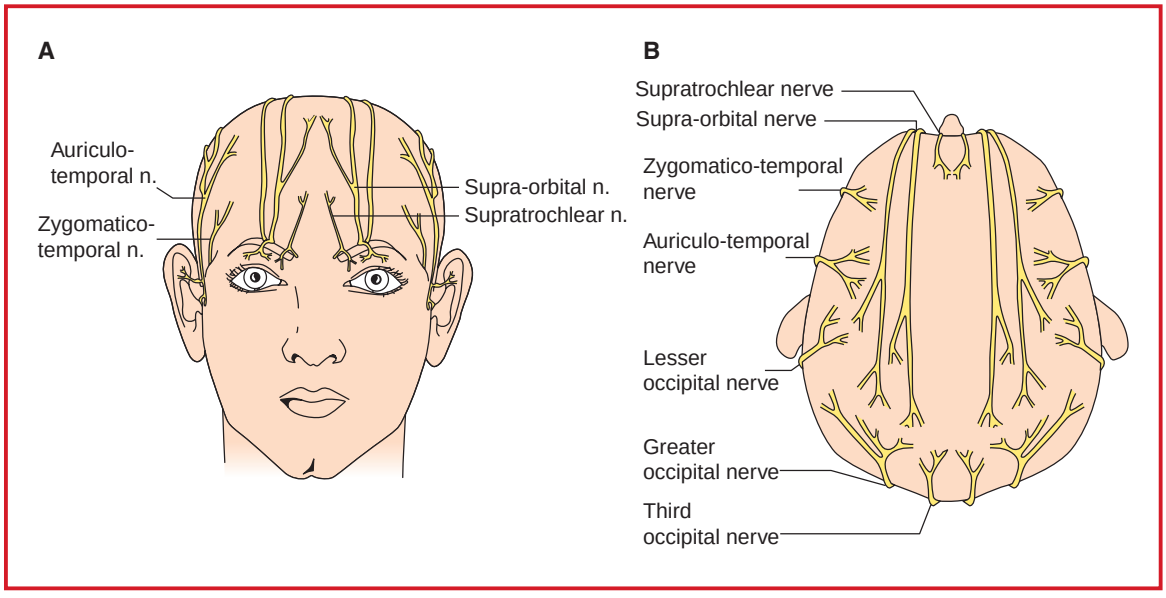


Figure 1.1-11. Scalp innervation. Typically the supraorbital, auriculotemporal, lesser occipital and greater occipital nerves are blocked near their scalp origins.

Premapping	Most patients with space-occupying lesions will benefit from the early administration of mannitol 0.5 g/kg by slow iv infusion (check with surgeon for possible contraindications). With the patient in a lounge-chair position and following the application of standard monitors and nasal prong O_2, initial sedation is provided by incremental midazolam titrated to effect (1–10 mg iv). A loading dose of dexmedetomidine (1 mcg/kg iv over 10–15 min as tolerated) is given while the sites for arterial line and central line (subclavian or antecubital PICC-line) placement are infiltrated with local anesthetic. Following the loading dose, a maintenance infusion of dexmedetomidine (0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h) typically 0.4 mcg/kg/h is started. The dexmedetomidine produces cooperative sedation and analgesia without respiratory depression. A ↓ BP and ↓ HR are common and occasionally will require treatment with vagolytics and/or pressors. Sedation is usually deepened with a propofol infusion (25–75 mcg/kg/min) to cover the more painful aspects of the procedure. A nasal airway may be useful in some patients. Scalp blocks (supraorbital, temporal, and occipital nerves) are placed using 0.5% bupivacaine with epinephrine (see Fig. 1.1-11). Arterial line, central line, and Foley catheter are placed. Pin sites for the Mayfield skull fixation are infiltrated with local anesthetic and the clamp is applied. The incision is infiltrated with local anesthetic, and after patient comfort has been ensured, the craniotomy is allowed to proceed. Drapes should be arranged so that the anesthesiologist and neuromonitoring team have an unobstructed view of, and access to, the patient's face and airway.
Mapping	The dexmedetomidine (and propofol) infusions are stopped at the end of the craniotomy. Initial mapping (e.g., phase-reversal localization) can be accomplished while the patient is recovering from the sedation. Some direct cortical stimulation can produce seizures; it is important that sterile, iced saline be immediately available for cortical irrigation to suppress the seizure activity. If seizure activity spreads, it will be necessary to administer a bolus dose of propofol (20–30 mg iv) through the central line. Airway support (e.g., LMA) may be necessary in the postictal phase. The patient should be awake and cooperative ~20 min after the dexmedetomidine and propofol infusions have stopped. Occasionally, flumazenil may be necessary to remove residual midazolam effects. Detailed speech-mapping can then be readily accomplished. We use a miniature wireless microphone taped near the patient's mouth to amplify the patient's voice during testing and tumor resection.

Resection	If the lesion is located safely away from the mapped speech areas, the resection can be accomplished after reinstituting the dexmedetomidine and propofol infusions. Otherwise, the patient must be kept awake and talking throughout the resection. Often the patient will benefit from a low-dose remifentanil infusion (e.g. 0.05 mcg/kg/min) to improve ability to tolerate positional discomfort.
Closing	Closing is best accomplished by resuming the previously effective infusions of dexmedetomidine and propofol. The infusions should be stopped during the final phase of wound closure. Careful control of BP may require the use of labetalol, esmolol, and SNP, which should be titrated during emergence. Typically, the patient will be awake and alert for transport to the ICU.

Suggested Reading

1. Brown T, Shah AH, Bregy A, et al: Awake craniotomy for brain tumor resection: the rule rather than the exception? *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2013; 25(3):240–7.

CRANIOTOMY FOR SKULL TUMOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Lawrence M. Shuer and Steven D. Chang

Description: Tumors of the skull fall into the classification of other bony tumors. Examples of types of skull tumors often requiring surgery include eosinophilic granuloma, histiocytosis, hemangioma, osteoma, epidermoid, dermoid, metastases, osteosarcoma, fibrous dysplasia, chordoma, chondrosarcoma, and meningioma. These tumors may occur anywhere on the skull, except chordoma and chondrosarcoma, which usually arise from the skull base. The exact positioning of the patient depends on the location of tumor. For example, the sitting or prone position often is used for tumors in the occipital or suboccipital regions, and the supine position is used for frontal, temporal, or parietal tumors. Some surgeons prefer the lateral position for temporal or parietal bone lesions and the prone position for occipital and some suboccipital bone lesions. Complete immobilization of the head is often not necessary, so the patient's head can be placed in a horseshoe or a Shea headrest. If complete immobilization is required, Mayfield pin fixation is used. The tumor is removed by placing burr holes near or around the tumor. Then the affected skull is removed by cutting a bone flap around the tumor with the craniotome. In a suboccipital or posterior fossa craniectomy, the bone often is removed piecemeal with either a drill or a series of rongeurs. The dura usually is not opened unless it is involved with the tumor. The surgeon may elect to perform a **cranioplasty** to cover the defect, depending on the size and location. The defect can be repaired using a variety of methods, which include the use of a polymer, such as methylmethacrylate, or a bone cement, such as hydroxyapatite. In addition, autologous bone may be harvested from another location on the skull or another site (hip or rib) for reconstruction. Last, the surgeon may elect to repair the cranial defect at a later date, using a custom implant made from titanium, methylmethacrylate, or polyethylethylketone (PEEK). After the tumor is removed and the reconstruction is completed, the skin incision is closed. Occasionally, the skull tumor will be approached intracranially, if its location favors that approach. Examples include tumors of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, fibrous dysplasia involving the optic canal, or skull base tumors, such as chordomas and chondrosarcomas.

Usual preop diagnosis: Eosinophilic granuloma; histiocytosis; hemangioma; osteoma; epidermoid; dermoid tumor; metastatic tumors; osteosarcoma; fibrous dysplasia; chordoma; chondrosarcoma; meningioma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, lateral, prone, or sitting, based on the location of the tumor
Incision	Dependent on location of tumor
Special instrumentation	Neuro drill, craniotome, image-guided navigation (if intracranial)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Unique considerations	ETT must be taped securely in a location satisfactory to the surgeon. Anode or RAE tube may be helpful in certain situations.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (if dura not opened)
Surgical time	1–4 h
Closing considerations	Drain often left in epidural space. Surgeon often requests control of BP to avoid hemorrhage into the bed of tumor.
EBL	25–500 mL
Postop care	ICU or close observation unit
Mortality	0–2% (higher for tumors in critical locations)
Morbidity	Usually < 5% Infection Neurological disability CSF leak Massive blood loss 2° venous sinus injury
Pain score	2–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Infant–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	~1:1
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	Neoplastic

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Craniotomy for Tumor, p. 31. Note, however, that patients with skull tumors rarely have problems with ICP.

Suggested Readings

1. Scolozzi P, Martinez A, Jaques B: Complex orbito-fronto-temporal reconstruction using computer-designed PEEK implant. *J Craniofac Surg* 2007; 18(1):224–8.
2. Verret DJ, Ducic Y, Oxford L, et al: Hydroxyapatite cement in craniofacial reconstruction. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2005; 133(6):897–9.

CRANIOTOMY FOR TRAUMA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Sayed A. Karim, Lawrence M. Shuer, and Steven D. Chang

Description: Head injuries occasionally require emergent surgical procedures to evacuate mass lesions or debride contused or contaminated brain. The majority of these injuries are supratentorial. The surgical procedure depends on the exact type and location of the injury (e.g., epidural, subdural, intraparenchymal hematomas, or depressed skull fracture); however, most traumatic injuries can be addressed through a wide frontotempoparietal craniotomy. Often the entire head is shaved and placed in a headrest (pins, suction cups, or horseshoe). If the C-spine has not been cleared, the patient may be placed in a lateral position to minimize neck involvement. Timing is often important for these procedures because the patient usually has a component of ↑ ICP, either from a hematoma or from cerebral edema due to the trauma. Hyperventilation, mannitol, hypertonic saline, and diuresis may be necessary to control the patient's ICP until the patient can be taken into the operating room and undergo a wide decompressive hemicraniectomy (frontotempoparietal craniectomy). For a standard trauma craniotomy, the scalp incision starts anterior to the tragus and continues

superiorly in a question-mark type path, ending in the frontal area (Fig. 1.1-11). This incision can be modified according to the location and extent of the injury. The skin is reflected and the skull is perforated with a cranial drill. The temporal burr hole should be placed first because if the patient's condition deteriorates rapidly, the temporal burr hole can be enlarged quickly to a craniectomy for decompression before continuing with the craniotomy.A chronic subdural hematoma may be drained through burr holes. However, if there is an acute subdural hematoma, epidural hematoma, intraparenchymal hemorrhage, depressed fracture, or penetrating wound, a formal bone flap is elevated. Wide exposure is used to visualize and control sources of bleeding. Gentle warm irrigation may be used to aid in removal of an acute subdural hematoma. Mass lesions and associated contused brain parenchyma are identified and removed (Fig. 1.1-12). For penetrating head injuries or depressed skull fractures, the wound is debrided, foreign bodies are removed, bleeding is controlled, and the dura is repaired if lacerated. It is important to debride the wound as much as possible, but it is often not possible to safely remove all fragments from the wound. Depending on the injury and the presence of brain swelling, it may be necessary to close the dura with autologous pericranium, or fascia lata. If these are not available, a synthetic dural substitute or bovine pericardium can be used. Alternatively, the dura may be left open, or multiple relaxing incisions may be made in the dura to allow for brain swelling. The surgeon can often repair and reconstruct a depressed skull fracture after removing a bone flap that surrounds the fracture. In addition, the bone flap may be left out to compensate for brain swelling and replaced later. A subgaleal drain may be inserted and brought out through a separate incision. An ICP monitor or a ventriculostomy may be placed at the end of the procedure.

Frontal sinus fracture: If a skull fracture involves the frontal sinus and/or there is a CSF leak, the sinus may need to be obliterated or cranialized. Obliteration involves removal of the mucosa of the sinus and filling the sinus with antibiotic soaked Gelfoam sponges. Cranialization of the frontal sinus involves removing the posterior bony wall of the sinus and removing the mucosa. If there is a CSF leak, the dura will need to be repaired.

Variant indication: Some patients, after having a large ischemic stroke, will develop malignant cerebral edema, which may necessitate a decompressive hemicraniectomy (frontotempoparietal craniectomy) to control rising ICPs and prevent herniation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Epidural hematoma; acute subdural hematoma; intracerebral hematoma; depressed skull fracture; cerebral contusion; gunshot wound of the brain; malignant cerebral edema

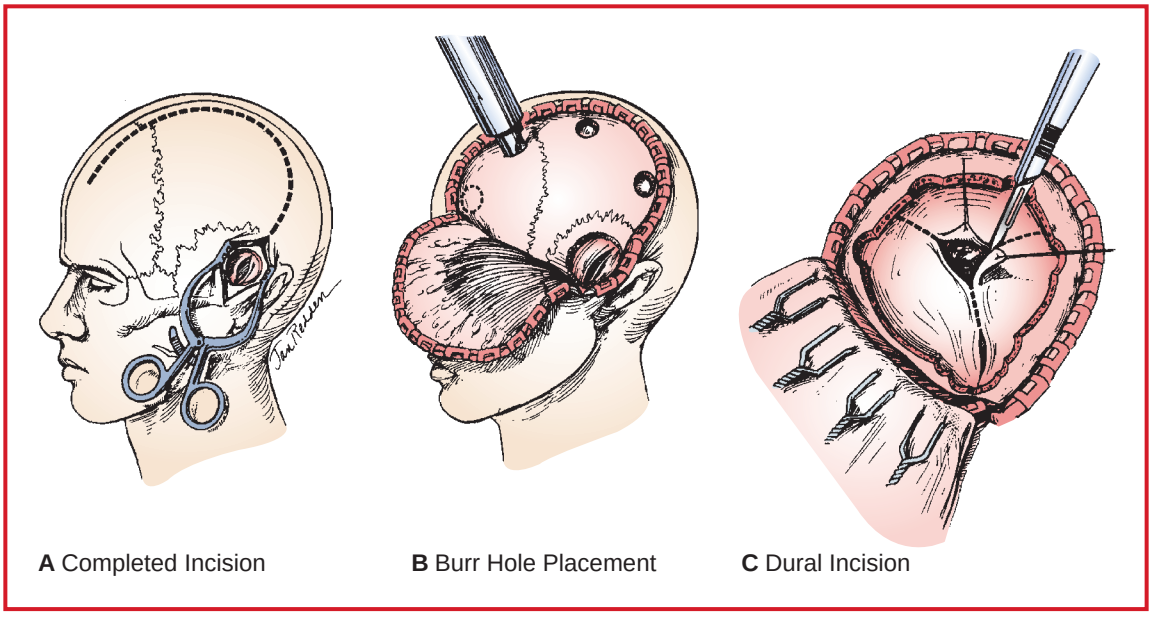


Figure 1.1-12. In an acute subdural hematoma: **A:** burr hole is made, followed by craniectomy, and the incision is extended upward to form a large question mark, the medial extent of which follows the midline. **B:** Additional burr holes are made, with the medial ones 1.5 cm off the midline to avoid injury to the major venous structures and granulations. The anterior burr hole is placed above the frontal sinus (the size of which can be estimated from preop radiographs). **C:** The dura can be opened with a Y- or X-shaped incision, with a flap being based on the superior sagittal sinus. (Reproduced with permission from Grossman RG, Loftus CM: *Principles of Neurosurgery,* 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1999.)

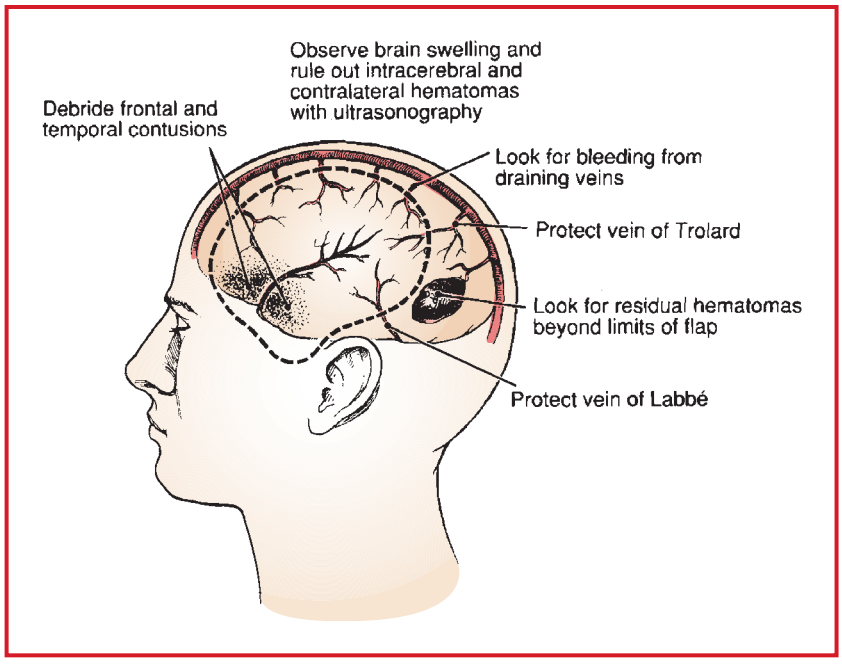


Figure 1.1-13. Precautions to be taken during a craniotomy for subdural hematoma. (Reproduced with permission from Grossman RG, Loftus CM: *Principles of Neurosurgery,* 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven, 1999.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, lateral, prone, or sitting, depending on site of injury
Incision	Varies with location of injury (typical incision shown in Fig. 1.1-12)
Unique considerations	The patient may have ↑↑ ICP. Because incipient herniation and/or associated injuries may be a concern, timing is critical. C-spine precautions may be necessary. Patients may also be on anticoagulation medications, necessitating transfusions of blood products or recombinant activated factor VII.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1 g iv (avoid Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	1.5–6 h
Closing considerations	Application of head dressing may jostle ETT at end of case → ↑ BP. Patient may stay intubated postop. ICP monitor or external ventricular drain may be placed. Antiepileptic medications may be given for prophylaxis, if the patient had a seizure.
EBL	25–500 mL
Postop care	ICU or close observation unit until stable. Fluid and electrolytes require frequent monitoring, as the patient may develop SIADH. BP may need to be controlled with vasodilator and β-blocker infusions.
Mortality	10–50%, depending on lesion; higher for acute subdural hematomas, lower for epidural hematomas.
Morbidity	Morbidity depends on lesion; morbidity from craniotomy itself is low. Infection Neurologic disability Nerve injury CSF leak Endocrine disorders: SIADH, CSW, panhypopituitarism, DI Massive blood loss: venous sinus injury
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Infant–85 yr (usually 15–40 yr); peaks at 0–4 yr and 15–19 yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Relatively common: > 1.7 million TBI/yr in US (mostly concussion)
Etiology	Trauma
Associated conditions	Abdominal injuries; C-spine fractures

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Traumatic brain injury (TBI) is the leading cause of death of persons < 24 years old. A penetrating injury of the skull usually will cause major damage to the brain as a result of both focal and diffuse neuronal injury with hemorrhage into brain tissue. Surgery is necessary to evacuate hematomas, control intracranial bleeding, debride the wound, and remove bone fragments, foreign material, and damaged brain so that the cranial vault can better accommodate the brain swelling that inevitably occurs. Epidural hematomas form between the skull and dura, and are usually due to bleeding from an artery (e.g., middle meningeal). Hence, time is of the essence, and rapid evacuation and control of the bleeding is essential if permanent neurological injury is to be avoided. Subdural bleeding occurs between the dura and the leptomeninges lining the brain surface. This bleeding is usually venous in origin and usually occurs more gradually. Focal intracranial hemorrhages may be either arterial or venous, and, as with subdural hematomas, must be evacuated if they are enlarging.

Respiratory	Ensure a secure airway and adequate ventilation. Localized injuries to the frontal or parietal lobes may not cause any respiratory changes. If ↑ ICP, respirations may become phasic (Cheyne-Stokes) or slow (< 10 min) and deep resulting in substantial hypocapnia. Many patients with head injuries demonstrate partial airway obstruction from the tongue falling back into the posterior pharyngeal space. If this occurs, or if the patient is comatose and unable to protect the airway and prevent aspiration of gastric contents, immediate tracheal intubation should be performed. Head injuries in the region of the occipital lobes may → hypoventilation or apnea. Neurogenic pulmonary edema may occur in up to 20% of TBI patients. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P and as time allows
Cardiovascular	Most patients with head injuries evidence ↑ BP and ↑ HR. Even transient hypotension (SBP < 90 mm Hg) → ↑ morbidity and mortality. If ICP increases sufficiently to cause herniation of brain stem, patients develop the "Cushing triad" of ↑ BP, ↓ HR, ± irregular respiration. These changes resolve when ↑ ICP is relieved, so vigorous attempts to regulate BP prior to craniotomy are not warranted. However, the patient should be taken to OR as quickly as possible. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P and as time allows
Neurological	Neurological evaluation of the head-injured patient is based on the Glasgow Coma Scale (Table 1.1-5). The scale involves evaluation of three functions: eye opening, verbal response, and motor response. Using this scoring system, the severity of brain injury may be classified as mild (13–15 points), moderate (9–12 points), or severe (8 points or less). By definition, any patient having 8 points or less is in a coma. Additional useful neurological examinations include assessment of pupillary size and reactivity to the light, reflex responses, and evidence of asymmetry or flaccidity of the extremities or decerebrate (e.g., rigid arm extension) or decorticate (e.g., rigid arm flexion) posturing. Head-injured patients whose neurological function is deteriorating rapidly, and in whom an epidural or subdural hemorrhage is suspected, should be taken to OR immediately. Hyperventilation is appropriate if herniation is eminent. **Tests:** CT scan

Table 1.1-5. Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS)

Category	Score
I. Eyes open:	
Never	1
To pain	2
To verbal stimuli	3
Spontaneously	4
II. Best verbal response:	
None	1
Incomprehensible sounds	2
Inappropriate words	3
Patient disoriented and converses	4
Patient oriented and converses	5
III. Best motor response:	
None	1
Extension (decerebrate rigidity)	2
Flexion abnormal (decorticate rigidity)	3
Flexion withdrawal	4
Patient localizes pain	5
Patient obeys	6
	I + II + III Total = 3–15

Hematologic	Severe head injury may be associated with a progressively worsening coagulopathy, resulting in a clinical picture similar to that of DIC. The reason for this is not known, but the brain is rich in thromboplastin and other coagulation factors. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; others as indicated from H&P
Associated Injuries	Multiple organ system injury must be considered. Evidence of intrathoracic or intraperitoneal hemorrhage should be sought and repaired first if the patient is hemodynamically unstable. **Tests:** May include MRI, CT, ultrasound, and others as indicated
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P, and as time permits
Premedication	Usually none

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	↑ ICP is likely in most patients with head injury requiring operation, and induction of anesthesia is best accomplished with drugs that ↓ ICP. A mannitol infusion (0.25–1 mg/kg iv over 10–20 min) may be necessary to control ICP. If the patient is hemodynamically stable and not hypovolemic, titrated induction with propofol (1–3 mg/kg) + fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg) is satisfactory. If hemodynamically unstable, etomidate (0.1–0.4 mg/kg) is suitable for induction. Ketamine is not used because of its ability to ↑ ICP. If the patient is comatose, anesthetic requirement is less, needing only O_2 and muscle relaxant, or low-dose isoflurane (0.5%) or sevoflurane (1%). A nondepolarizing muscle relaxant (vecuronium [0.1 mg/kg] or rocuronium [1 mg/kg]) is administered for ET intubation. Succinylcholine may ↑ ICP transiently, but is still appropriate for emergency airway management. A defasciculating dose of a nondepolarizing NMB may attenuate the ICP ↑. Nasotracheal intubation is not recommended for patients with the possibility of maxillary and/or basilar skull fractures because of the potential for inserting the tube through the fracture site into the brain. To minimize ↑↑ BP and ↑↑ ICP with ET intubation, consider bolus remifentanil (2–5 mcg/kg iv) 1–2 min before laryngoscopy. In hypovolemic patients, hydration with a mixture of crystalloid (e.g., NS) and colloid (e.g., 5% albumin) should be initiated prior to induction.

Maintenance	The ideal drug for maintenance of anesthesia decreases ICP and $CMRO_2$, maintains cerebral autoregulation, redistributes flow to potentially ischemic areas, and provides protection for the brain from focal ischemia. Unfortunately, there is no ideal anesthetic. Both isoflurane and sevoflurane are good choices for patients undergoing neurosurgical procedures. Although these agents cause dose-dependent increases in CBF and volume, and hence ↑ ICP, these effects tend to be mitigated by the prior administration of propofol, hyperventilation, and by limiting the inspired concentrations to < 1 MAC. At these concentrations, CBF responses to changes in $PaCO_2$ are maintained, and cerebral autoregulation remains intact. N_2O is best avoided in patients with significantly elevated ICP. A propofol infusion is a reasonable alternative, although its use has been associated with a ↓ CBF > ↓ $CMRO_2$ → ↑ potential for ischemia. Jugular bulb O_2 saturation may be reduced during propofol anesthesia, consistent with an unfavorable supply-demand balance. BP Goals: Keep SBP > 90 mm Hg and CPP 60–70 mm Hg. Avoid prophylactic hyperventilation. Mild hypothermia may be beneficial if maintained > 48 h. DVT prophylaxis is recommended. High-dose steroid administration is associated with worsened outcomes. Muscle relaxation can be maintained as necessary.	
Emergence	Because recovery from head injury is so unpredictable, it is generally advisable to leave the ETT in place and maintain controlled ventilation until there is sufficient clinical evidence that normal neurological recovery is occurring. Postop sedation can be accomplished using dexmedetomidine (0.2-0.7 mcg/kg/h) or propofol (20–75 mcg/kg/min) not to exceed 5 mg/kg/h to minimize the occurrence of propofol-related infusion syndrome (including: metabolic acidosis, ↑ K^+, rhabdomyolysis).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Possible severe blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 NS @ 2–4 mL/kg/h ± Albumin 5%	Blood transfusion to keep Hct ~30. Minimize postop cerebral edema by limiting crystalloid volume to < 10 mL/kg + replacement of UO. Glucose-containing solutions should be avoided; blood glucose levels should be maintained between 80–180 mg%. If volume is needed, albumin 5% should be administered.
	Coagulopathy is common	Consider Rx with tranexamic acid (load = 10–15 mg/kg over 30 mins) for persistent bleeding.
Control of blood pressure	Keep CPP 60–70 mm Hg Keep SBP > 90 mm Hg Maintain normovolemia	Controlled hypotension generally is not used unless bleeding becomes profuse and difficult to control. ↓ BP is better treated initially with volume replacement than vasopressors.
	Vasopressors	Phenylephrine or norepinephrine infusions can be used to maintain CPP.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line ± CVP line UO	If the injury is extensive or unknown, or if the patient is unstable, invasive monitoring is mandatory. Monitor for VAE if head is elevated above heart. Level the arterial line at the head. EEG, EP, and SjO_2 monitoring may be desirable.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	For occipital or posterior fossa lesions, patient may be prone or sitting (see Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, Positioning, p. 108). Otherwise, patient will be supine with head in Mayfield-Kees skeletal fixation and turned to the side, with a roll placed under the shoulder on the operative side.
Control of ICP	Adequate anesthesia Head up 20–30° Keep SBP ≥ 90 mm Hg Propofol infusion	Transient increases in ICP—even up to 50–60 mm Hg—are generally tolerated, provided they are promptly terminated. Sustained increases in ICP > 25–30 mm Hg are associated with severe neurologic injury and poor outcome. Patients with skull fractures or intracranial bleeding may be on the steep portion of intracranial compliance curve such that any increase in intracranial volume may cause ↑↑ ICP.

Control of ICP (cont'd)	Hyperventilation to $PaCO_2$ = 25–30 mm Hg PaO_2 > 100 mm Hg	↓ CO_2 → cerebral vasoconstriction → ↓ CBV, ↓ CBF, and ↓ ICP. Patients with diffuse brain injury may have lost cerebrovascular sensitivity to $PaCO_2$. Despite maintaining adequate ventilation, oxygenation and BP, patients with diffuse head injury often exhibit arterial and CSF lactic acidosis, a further indication of the metabolic derangement that exists in the brain from the injury.
	Keep CPP 60–70 mm Hg	Control MAP and cerebral venous pressure so that CPP = 60–70 mm Hg. In severe, diffuse head injury with loss of autoregulation, some parts of the brain may exhibit "luxury perfusion," while other areas exhibit severe ischemia.
	Mannitol 0.25–1.0 g/kg	Vigorous diuresis will commence in 20–30 min (if blood volume and renal perfusion are adequate), and brain shrinkage will follow. Max serum osmolarity = 320 mOsm/L. It may be necessary to provide supplemental potassium (20–30 mEq iv slowly). If mannitol is administered too rapidly, profound hypotension will occur, probably from peripheral vasodilatation.
	Furosemide 10–20 mg	Simultaneous administration of furosemide (10–20 mg) is recommended to avoid the transient ↑ CBV and ↑ ICP following mannitol.
	7.5% Hypertonic Saline	Hypertonic saline (7.5% : 3 mL/kg) may provide better control of ICP than mannitol.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Seizures	Sz Rx: phenytoin (1 g loading dose). **NB:** Incompatible with dextrose-containing solutions.
	Neurologic deficits Hemorrhage	Some patients with severe head injury remain unconscious for weeks or months, without evidencing any substantial neurological recovery. A late complication of head injury is hydrocephalus requiring a shunt procedure.
	SIADH/CSW DI	These causes of ↓ Na^+ must be differentiated for proper Rx.
	NPE ↑ ICP	Neurogenic pulmonary edema may result from massive sympathetic discharge 2° ↑↑ ICP. Rx: ↓ ICP, alpha-blockers to control BP, respiratory support.
	DIC	TBI is a risk factor for DIC.
Pain management	Fentanyl/dexmedetomidine infusion	Most patients will remain intubated and sedated postop.
Tests	CT scan ICP monitor	Unless neurological recovery is rapid, periodic CT scans are obtained postop to follow the intracranial changes. In addition, in many institutions, a device for monitoring ICP postop is placed at the time of operation.

Suggested Readings

1. Sharma D, Vavilala MS: Lund concept for the management of traumatic brain injury: a physiological principle awaiting stronger evidence. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2011; 23(4):363–7.
2. Grände PO: The Lund concept for the treatment of patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2011; 23(4):358–62.
3. Wright WL: Sodium and fluid management in acute brain injury. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep* 2012; 12(4):466–73.
4. Davison DL, Terek M, Chawla LS: Neurogenic pulmonary edema. *Crit Care* 2012; 12(2):212.

5. Kelly DF, McBride DQ, Becker DP: Surgical management of severe closed head injury in adults. In: Schmidek HA, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques: Indications, Methods, and Results.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 61–90.
6. King LR, McLaurin RL, Knowles HC Jr: Acid-base balance and arterial and CSF lactate levels following human head injury. *J Neurosurg* 1974; 40(5):617–25.
7. Minassian AT, Dube L, Guilleux AN, et al: Changes in intracranial pressure and cerebral autoregulation in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med* 2002; 30:1616–22.
8. Pasternak JJ, Hertzfeldt DN, Stanger SR, et al: Disseminated intravascular coagulation after craniotomy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2008; 20(1):15–20.
9. Piek J: Medical complications in severe head injury. *New Horiz* 1995; 3:534–9.
10. Powner DJ, Hartwell EA, Hoots WK: Counteracting the effects of anticoagulants and antiplatelet agents during neurosurgical emergencies. *Neurosurgery* 2005; 57(5):823–31.
11. Curry P, Viernes D, Sharma D: Perioperative management of traumatic brain injury. *Int J Crit Illn Inj Sci* 2011; 1:27–35.

MICROVASCULAR DECOMPRESSION OF CRANIAL NERVE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Sayed A. Karim, Lawrence M. Shuer, and Steven D. Chang

Description: Microvascular decompression is used to treat various disorders of the cranial nerves, including trigeminal neuralgia (TN), hemifacial spasm and, more rarely, glossopharyngeal neuralgia (GN). Trigeminal neuralgia is characterized by brief episodes of intense, stabbing facial pain along the distribution of the trigeminal nerve. This pain usually can be elicited by gentle stimulation of the affected area. Trigeminal neuralgia is further subdivided into Type 1 (episodic pain) and Type 2 (continuous pain) variants. Continuous pain is a poor prognostic factor when treating trigeminal neuralgia with any modality including surgery. Hemifacial spasm is characterized by paroxysmal repetitive twitching of the facial muscles. The twitching usually starts with the muscles around the eye and can progress to involve the rest of the facial muscles. Glossopharyngeal neuralgia is characterized by paroxysmal pain that involves the ear and throat. Typically, the pain is described as "stabbing" and radiates from one site to the other. Swallowing, drinking cold beverages, talking, or coughing can elicit the pain. A Chiari malformation may mimic the symptoms of glossopharyngeal neuralgia. Combinations of vascular compression syndromes involving multiple nerves and multiple offending vessels have also been reported.

All of these conditions are usually unilateral and are often caused by compression of a cranial nerve by a vascular structure. In trigeminal neuralgia, the superior cerebellar artery is the usual culprit. In hemifacial spasm, usually the anterior inferior cerebellar or vertebral artery is compressing the facial nerve. In glossopharyngeal neuralgia, the posterior inferior cerebellar or vertebral artery is usually the offending artery. Large veins can also compress the cranial nerves. The goal of a microvascular decompression is to remove the pressure on the cranial nerve. To perform a microvascular decompression, a linear incision is made behind the ear on the affected side (Fig. 1.1-14A). Dissection is taken down to the skull, and several burr holes are made. The burr holes can be enlarged into a **craniectomy** (Fig. 1.1-14B) or used for elevation of a bone flap. The craniectomy is placed below the transverse sinus and medial to the sigmoid sinus to allow access to the cerebellopontine angle. The mastoid air cells are sealed with bone wax to prevent CSF leak. Any venous sinus bleeding is controlled, and the dura is opened (Fig. 1.1-14C). With brain relaxation, the cerebellum is retracted. The operating microscope allows the surgeon to explore the involved cranial nerve. If an offending vessel is identified, it is carefully dissected away from the nerve and shredded Teflon felt or a small, plastic sponge is placed to keep the vessel away from the cranial nerve. In the case of trigeminal or glossopharyngeal neuralgia, if no offending vessel is identified, a **partial section of the nerve** may be performed. Partial section of the 9th or 10th cranial nerve may cause some vasomotor instability. BAERs, facial nerve monitoring, and EMGs can be monitored intraop to protect the cranial nerves. Once the cranial nerve has been decompressed, the dura is closed, and the wound is closed in layers. The main variations in this procedure are in patient positioning and surgeon's preference of monitoring modalities. Patient positioning may be lateral, prone, supine, or rarely sitting. Intraop, mannitol (0.5–1 g/kg) and/or a lumbar drain (for CSF removal) may be needed for brain relaxation. Success rate is typically 75–95%, with a recurrence rate as high as 3.5% per year.

Alternative Procedure: Gamma Knife surgery is less effective than microvascular decompression, but may be appropriate for patients unwilling or unable to undergo surgery. Other, less frequently used options include radiofrequency rhizotomy (see p. 88), glycerol injection, and balloon compression.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trigeminal neuralgia; tic douloureux; hemifacial spasm; tinnitus; glossopharyngeal neuralgia

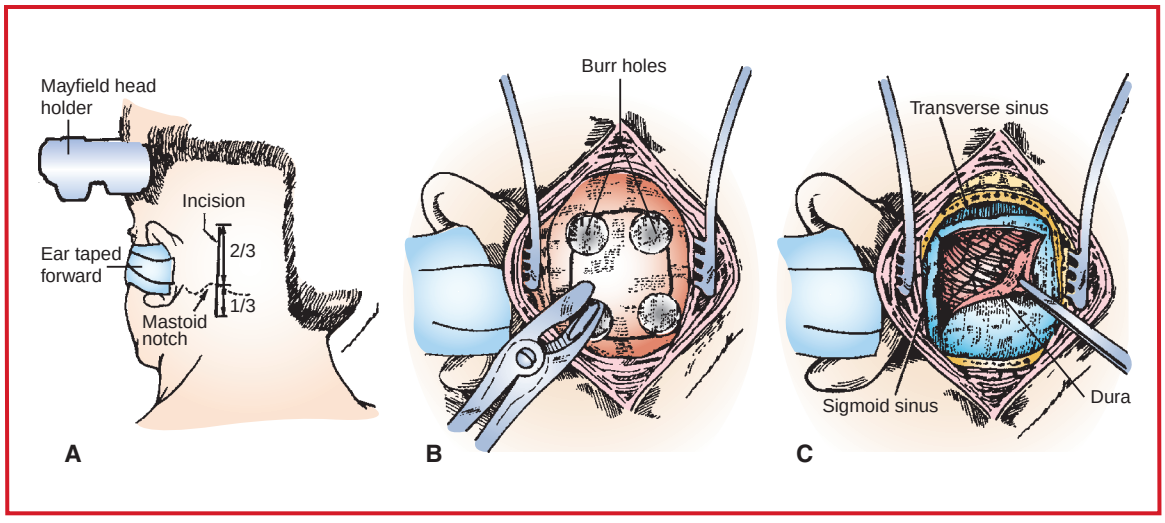


Figure 1.1-14. Microvascular decompression: **A.** Location of incision. **B.** Enlargement of burr holes into craniectomy with a rongeur. **C.** Dural opening on the left side. Note position of venous sinuses. (Reproduced with permission from Wilson CB: *Neurosurgical Procedures: Personal Approaches to Classic Operations.* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1992.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Normally, lateral rotation with shoulder roll, head elevated; upper shoulder retracted caudally
Incision	Retroauricular (mastoid) (See Fig. 1.1-14A.)
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; cranial perforator; ± facial nerve monitoring; ± EMG; ± BAER
Unique considerations	Risk of air embolus in head-elevated positions. Precordial Doppler or TEE required for head elevation ≥30°.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv q d (avoid simultaneous administration with Ca^{++}-containing solutions)
Surgical time	2–3 h
EBL	25–250 mL
Postop care	ICU or close observation unit. Observe for change in neurologic status (e.g., level of alertness, response to commands), usually for 12–24 h.
Mortality	~1%
Morbidity	Facial sensory deficit: 25% (often transient) Aseptic meningitis: ≤ 20%, usually occurring 3–7 d postop Hearing loss: 3% Diplopia (usually transient) Facial weakness: 2% Deafness: 1% Infection CSF leak Massive blood loss due to vertebral artery injury or venous sinus laceration
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–85 yr (usually 60–70 yr)
Male:Female	1:2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	TN: 4.3/100,000/yr; GN: 25.6/100,000/yr at age >70 y; Prevalence: 16/100,000
Etiology	Vascular compression of cranial nerve demyelination; multiple sclerosis plaque; cerebellopontine angle tumor
Associated conditions	HTN; multiple sclerosis; rheumatoid arthritis; charcot-marie-tooth disease; sjogren syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Microvascular decompression involves a full craniotomy for decompression of a cranial nerve that is causing facial pain and/or spasm of facial muscles. Generally, these patients have trigeminal neuralgia or tic douloureux that has not been responsive to medical management (e.g., carbamazepine [Tegretol] therapy) and percutaneous rhizotomy or glycerol injection has failed.

Respiratory	None unless the patient has a long-standing Hx of smoking and has COPD.
Cardiovascular	Many patients will have Hx of idiopathic HTN requiring antihypertensive medications. Good preop control of BP is important because it will make intraop and postop management of BP easier. Anticipate exaggerated hemodynamic response to anesthetic medications.
Neurological	The presenting symptom is usually pain ± muscle spasm in the maxillary and/or mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, unaccompanied by any motor or sensory deficits. Identify trigger points so that they may be avoided during mask placement and induction.
Laboratory	None, except for routine preop studies.
Premedication	Generally, patients for these procedures are elderly and do not require any special premedication. Midazolam 1–3 mg iv will provide amnesia for the preop events, if that is desired by patient or surgeons.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA is necessary because a full craniotomy is performed. ICP is not increased in these patients. Brain volume reduction (typically using mannitol 0.25–0.5 g/kg), however, is important to provide the surgeon with sufficient space to identify and relieve the pressure on the offending nerve without requiring excessive brain retraction in the process.

Induction	Induction is best accomplished with drugs that cause brain volume reduction, including STP (2–5 mg/kg) or propofol (1–2 mg/kg), followed by neuromuscular blockade and ET intubation.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3) is usually satisfactory. Desflurane has been associated with ↑ PONV. BP is maintained in the normal range during the operation. Hyperventilation to achieve a $PaCO_2$ of 25–30 mm Hg is helpful to ↓ brain volume and ↑ workspace. Once the nerve has been isolated, stop hyperventilation. A spinal drain may be used to remove CSF during the operation and improve exposure. The drain usually is opened at the time of dural opening and closed as soon as surgery on the nerve is complete.
Emergence	The ETT is removed at the conclusion of operation. Postop HTN may need to be controlled with esmolol and/or SNP by continuous pump infusion. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., metoclopramide 20 mg and ondansetron 4–8 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation. The incidence of PONV is high following this procedure. Consider acetaminophen (1 g iv) and/or local anesthetic scalp infiltration for postop analgesia.

Blood and fluid requirements	Large blood loss is rare IV: 18 ga × 1 NS @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	Mannitol 0.5–1 mg/kg is sometimes necessary to provide sufficient brain volume reduction to permit adequate surgical exposure.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line ± CVP line ± EMG and/or SSEP	Invasive monitoring will facilitate intraop and postop BP management. Sometimes EMG and/or SSEP monitoring of the facial nerve is performed.
Positioning	Lateral, rotation with shoulder roll ± Pillow between legs ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patients usually will be positioned with their head in a "far lateral" position. Padding of the shoulder and placing a pillow between the legs may be necessary. A bean bag can be used to hold patient stable in the lateral ("park bench") position.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Bleeding Brain edema	PONV is common and usually requires multimodal treatment (see p. C-1). Postop recovery is usually uneventful. On rare occasion, significant brain edema or bleeding may be experienced.
Pain management	Codeine (30–60 mg im q 4 h)	
Tests	CT scan, if neurological recovery is delayed.	

Suggested Readings

1. Ashkan K, Marsh H: Microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia in the elderly: a review of the safety and efficacy. *Neurosurgery* 2004; 55(4):840–8; discussion 848–50.
2. Cheshire WP: Trigeminal neuralgia: for one nerve a multitude of treatments. *Expert Rev Neurother* 2007; 7(11):1565–79.
3. Meng L, Quinlan JJ: Assessing risk factors for postoperative nausea and vomiting: a retrospective study in patients undergoing retromastoid craniectomy with microvascular decompression of cranial nerves. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2006; 18(4):235–9.
4. Minahan RE, Mandir AS: Neurophysiologic intraoperative monitoring of trigeminal and facial nerves. *J Clin Neurophysiol* 2011; 28(6):551–65. Review.
5. Oesman C, Mooji JJ: Long-term follow-up of microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia. *Skull Base* 2011 Sep; 21(5):313–22. PMID:22451832[PubMed]
6. Parmar M, Sharma N, Modgill V, Naidu P: Comparative evaluation of surgical procedures for trigeminal neuralgia. *J Maxillofac Oral Surg* 2013; 12(4):400–9.
7. Sheehan J, Pan HC, Stroila M, et al: Gamma Knife surgery for trigeminal neuralgia: outcomes and prognostic factors. *J Neurosurg* 2005; 102(3):434–41.
8. Zakrzewska JM, Coakham HB: Microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia: update. *Curr Opin Neurol* 2012; 25(3):296–301. Review.

BIFRONTAL CRANIOTOMY FOR CSF LEAK

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Lawrence M. Shuer and Steven D. Chang

Description: Trauma (44% accidental; 29% surgical) is the leading cause of CSF leaks. CSF leaks can also be caused by tumors (22%), congenital malformations, or as a result of transsphenoidal surgery. Most CSF leaks involve the floor of the anterior cranial fossa (e.g., cribriform plate: 35%), with drainage through the auditory canal (otorrhea), nasopharynx (rhinorrhea), sinus air cells, or other less common routes. CSF leaks can occasionally stop on their own or by management with a lumbar drain. However, to lessen the risk of meningitis, surgical repair is the usual treatment.

The surgical repair of CSF leaks has changed with the advent of the endoscope. The success rates of endoscopic closure are similar to open surgical approaches while avoiding the morbidity associated with craniotomies. Although it is common to attempt closure of a CSF leak endoscopically before proceeding on to an open repair, selected patients may benefit by proceeding directly to an open surgical approach.

An open surgical repair is typically done through a bifrontal craniotomy. The patient is placed in a supine position, and the head is stabilized with a Mayfield clamp. A bicoronal skin incision (Fig. 1.1-15) is made, and the pericranium is often turned as a separate flap and kept moist during the case. Next, burr holes are drilled and a bifrontal free-bone flap is elevated. Care is taken to avoid injury to the underlying superior sagittal sinus. If the frontal sinuses are entered, the mucosa is stripped and the sinus is packed with antibiotic-soaked Gelfoam. The dura is opened over the inferiomedial frontal lobes and the sagittal sinus is ligated. An intradural exploration is undertaken to determine the site of the leak. Identification of the leak site is essential for successful outcome. The source of the leak may be identified using radioactive tracer or CT metrizimide studies. Brain relaxation is usually necessary to reduce the need for mechanical retraction and may require mannitol, hyperventilation, and/or the placement of a lumbar drain. The frontal lobes are elevated, and the olfactory tracts may be sacrificed. If the site of the leak can be determined, the dural repair can be performed using fascia lata, pericranium, bovine pericardium, or a synthetic dural substitute. It usually is necessary to strip the dura off the anterior cranial fossa to complete the repair. Defects in the bone can be plugged with a variety of materials (e.g., pericranial flap, fat, temporalis muscle flap, bone, or wax). After the repair is complete, the dura can be closed and the bone flap replaced, often with a drain left in the epidural space. In addition, tissue sealants such as fibrin glue can be sprayed over the dural suture line to help create a watertight seal. At this point, brain relaxation is no longer required. The wound is closed with stitches, and skin is closed with staples.

A combined approach may be used for CSF leaks 2° to a tumor that invades the dura and the cribriform plate. In these cases, the procedure often is performed with an otorhinolaryngologist. The intracranial part of this procedure is identical to the bifrontal craniotomy, except that bone and tumor are removed at the floor of the anterior cranial fossa. The extracranial part of this procedure is performed by the otorhinolaryngologist, who approaches the sinonasal region endoscopically or through a lateral rhinotomy or degloving gingival incision. The extracranial approach is chosen to complement the cranial exposure, and a common space is created between the two operative fields. Closure involves isolating the two operative fields once again. The dural repair is as above. The mucosa of the nasal cavity is replaced with the use of a skin graft.

Alternate Procedure: Transnasal endoscopic repair of selected CSF leaks has been shown to be effective with significantly ↓ morbidity compared with craniotomy.

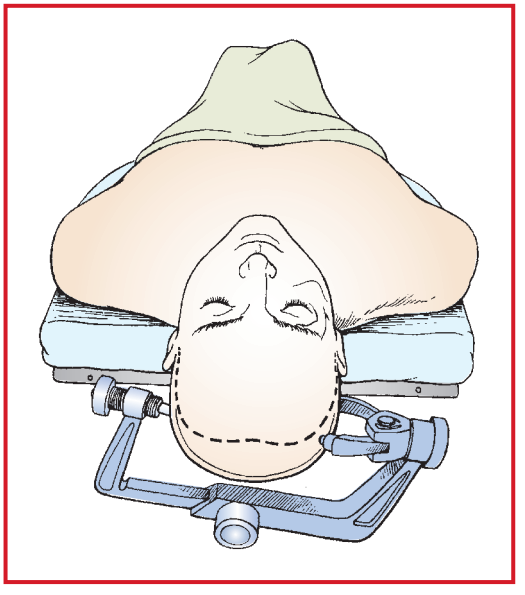


Figure 1.1-15. Patient positioning for bifrontal craniotomy with bicoronal skin incision outlined. This position allows the frontal lobes to separate from the anterior cranial fossa with minimal retraction on the frontal lobes. (Reproduced with permission from Tindall GT, Cooper PR, Barrow DL: *The Practice of Neurosurgery.* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1996.)

Usual preop diagnosis: CSF leak or rhinorrhea; fracture of the anterior cranial fossa; intracranial encephalocele; cribriform plate tumor; olfactory neuroblastoma (tumor of the olfactory epithelium). β-2 transferrin is a relatively sensitive and specific marker for CSF and can be used to establish the diagnosis.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Bicoronal (Fig. 1.1-15); Transnasal for endoscopic
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; endoscope; image-guidance system
Unique considerations	Brain relaxation desired; lumbar subarachnoid catheter; fascia lata graft
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv q d (avoid co-administration with Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	2–3.5 h, depending on extent of leak or lesion
Closing considerations	Drain often left in epidural space. Anticipate that the application of a full head dressing will jostle patient and ETT → ↑ BP + coughing/bucking.
EBL	75–500 mL
Postop care	ICU or close observation unit; Valsalva maneuver, coughing and vomiting can cause ↑↑↑ ICP → recurring CSF leak.
Mortality	≤ 5%
Morbidity	Usually < 5% for all complications Infection (ascending meningitis) Recurrent CSF leak Neurologic disability Nerve injury Massive blood loss: venous sinus injury
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–65 yr
Male:Female	~3:2
Incidence	Relatively uncommon neurosurgical procedure
Etiology	Traumatic (73%); congenital; neoplastic

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Transsphenoidal Resection of Pituitary Tumor, p. 54.

NB: Positive pressure mask ventilation in patient with an anterior CSF leak may produce severe pneumocephalus.

Suggested Readings

1. Abuabara A: Cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea: diagnosis and management. *Med Oral Patol Oral Cir Bucal* 2007; 12(5):E397–400.
2. Kerr JT, Chu FWK, Bayles SW: Cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea: diagnosis and management. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2005; 38(4):597–611.
3. Martin TJ, Loehrl TA: Endoscopic CSF leak repair. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2007; 15(1):35–39.
4. Osguthorpe J, Patel S: Craniofacial approaches to tumors of the anterior skull base. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2001; 34(6):1123–42.
5. Psaltis AJ, Schlosser RJ, Banks CA, et al: A systematic review of the endoscopic repair of cerebrospinal fluid leaks. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2012; 147(2):196–203.

TRANSORAL OR TRANSNASAL APPROACH TO THE CERVICOMEDULLARY JUNCTION AND ODONTOID

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Sayed A. Karim, Lawrence M. Shuer, and Steven D. Chang

Description: The transoral or transnasal approaches provide excellent access to the odontoid process of the C2 vertebral body, as well as the skull base just anterior to the brain stem (Fig. 1.1-16). This is important for conditions where there is pressure on the ventral brain stem or spinal cord → Sx: HA, impaired ambulation, hyperreflexia, paresthesias, neurogenic bladder, etc. Common indications for this approach include basilar impression (upward translocation of the odontoid process; Fig. 1.1-17A); degeneration of the odontoid due to rheumatoid disease (Fig. 1.1-18); fracture of the odontoid, and resection of extradural tumors, such as chordomas and metastases. In these cases, the operation is performed through the oral cavity with an incision in the posterior wall of the pharynx. Special retractors hold the mouth open and keep the tongue out of the way. Fluoroscopic or image guidance helps the surgeon maintain proper trajectory. Intraop monitoring of evoked potentials (i.e., SSEP or BAER), and use of the operative microscope helps avoid injury to the brain stem and spinal cord. The dissection is carried down to expose the anterior arch of C1 and body of C2. To decompress the region, the anterior arch of C1 and the odontoid process are removed. For basilar impression, a portion of the clivus may need to be removed to gain access to the dens (Fig. 1.1-17B). For rheumatoid arthritis, the pannus (thickened fibrous tissue) surrounding the dens is also removed (Fig. 1.1-17B). If an extradural tumor is found, it is resected in a piecemeal fashion. If a CSF leak occurs, the dura can be closed with fascia, muscle, fibrin glue, or thrombin-soaked Gelfoam. Upon completion of the decompression, the mucosa is closed. It may be necessary to fuse the occiput to the upper C-spine to correct any cervical instability. This may take place at the same time, or at a later date. C-spine precautions normally are used during and after the case. The patient may be in traction with tongs or a halter.

Variations in procedure: A fiberoptic nasal intubation or tracheostomy may be necessary to gain adequate exposure and maintain ventilation. It also may be necessary to split the soft palate, hard palate, tongue, and/or mandible to obtain adequate exposure. Because of the morbidity associated with a transoral decompression of the craniocervical junction, some surgeons recommend a posterior decompression with stabilization first, followed by an anterior decompression if necessary. An anterior resection of the odontoid creates an unstable craniocervical junction that

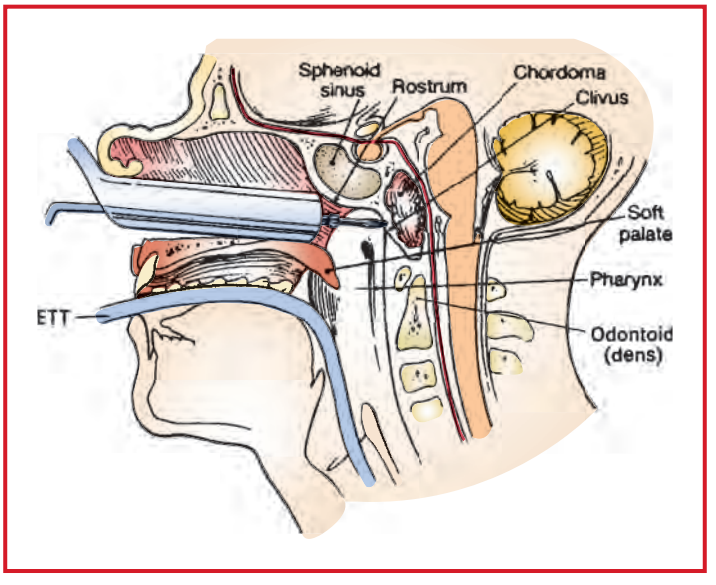


Figure 1.1-16. Transnasal inferior exposure of the clivus and chordoma. (Reproduced with permission from Grossman RG, Loftus CM: *Principles of Neurosurgery,* 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1999.)

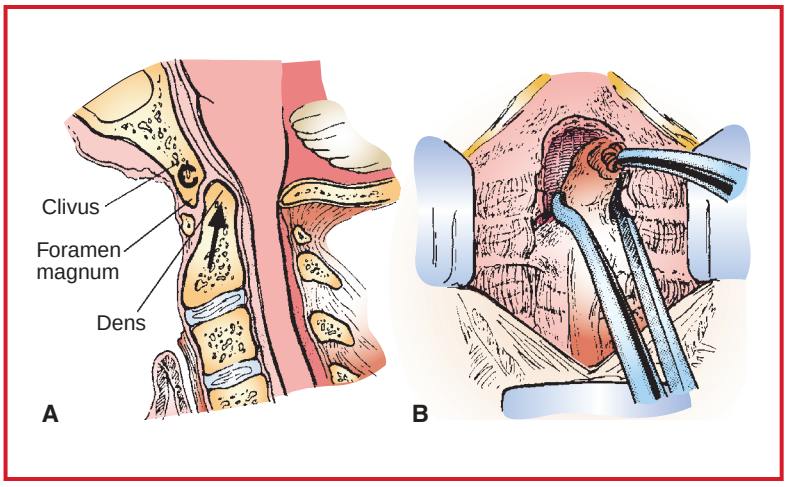


Figure 1.1-17. **A.** Basilar impression. The dens has moved superiorly into the foramen magnum (*arrow*). **B.** Removal of the dens with a drill. The arch of C1 and a portion of the clivus have been removed. (Reproduced with permission from Donald PJ: *Surgery of the Skull Base.* Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1998.)

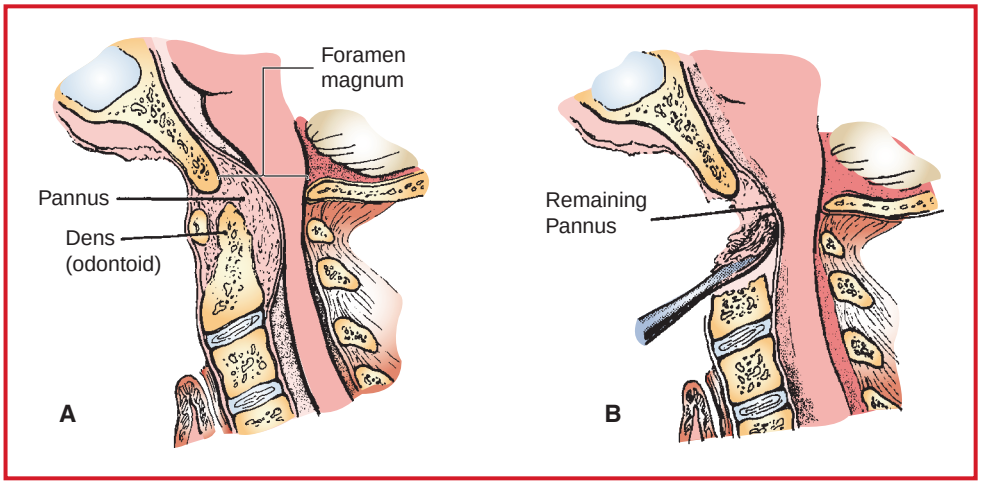


Figure 1.1-18. **A.** Pannus formation in a patient with rheumatoid arthritis. **B.** Removal of pannus. (Reproduced with permission from Donald PJ: *Surgery of the Skull Base.* Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1998.)

requires at least a halo stabilization and more commonly an occipital-cervical fusion. This procedure may also be performed endoscopically.

Usual preop diagnosis: Basilar impression (platybasia); odontoid fracture; rheumatoid arthritis with atlantoaxial instability and anterior impingement of the cord; chordoma; metastatic tumor

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; head in traction or pins
Incision	Back of oropharynx or nasopharynx
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; I.I.; intraop monitoring = SSEP or BAER; micro drill; intraoral/intranasal retractors for exposure; image-guided navigation system (optional)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Unique considerations	FOL may be necessary. ETT must be taped securely in a location satisfactory to surgeon. Anode or RAE tube may be helpful. Occasionally, a **tracheostomy** is performed in advance. Odontoidectomy creates an unstable craniocervical junction which may need to be temporarily stabilized with a halo or immediate occipital cervical fusion.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1g iv (avoid co-administration with Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	2.5–3 h
Closing considerations	Patient may remain intubated postop. C-spine precautions may be necessary.
EBL	25–250 mL
Postop care	ICU or close observation unit; monitor airway for swelling (✓ for stridor).
Mortality	0–3%
Morbidity	All < 5%: Infection CSF leak Neurological Massive blood loss
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	18–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	~1:2
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic; congenital; degenerative
Associated conditions	Rheumatoid arthritis (atlantoaxial subluxation in 25%; basilar compression in 8%); traumatic injury

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Transsphenoidal Resection of Pituitary Tumor, p. 54.

Suggested Readings

1. Hadley MN, Spetzler RF, Sonntag VKH: The transoral approach to the superior cervical spine. *J Neurosurg* 1989; 71(1):16–23.
2. Vangilder JC, Menezes AH: Craniovertebral abnormalities and their neurosurgical management. In: Schmidek HA, Sweet WH, eds: *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques: Indications, Methods, and Results.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 1934–45.
3. Seker A, Inoue K, Osawa S, Akakin A, Kilic T, Rhoton AL Jr: Comparison of endoscopic transnasal and transoral approaches to the craniovertebral junction. *World Neurosurg* 2010; 74(6):583–602.

TRANSSPHENOIDAL RESECTION OF PITUITARY TUMOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Robert L. Dodd, Lawrence M. Shuer, and Steven D. Chang

Description: The transsphenoidal approach to the sella turcica is a direct procedure used to gain access to the pituitary gland and sella region and is associated with relatively fewer complications than a craniotomy. The procedure

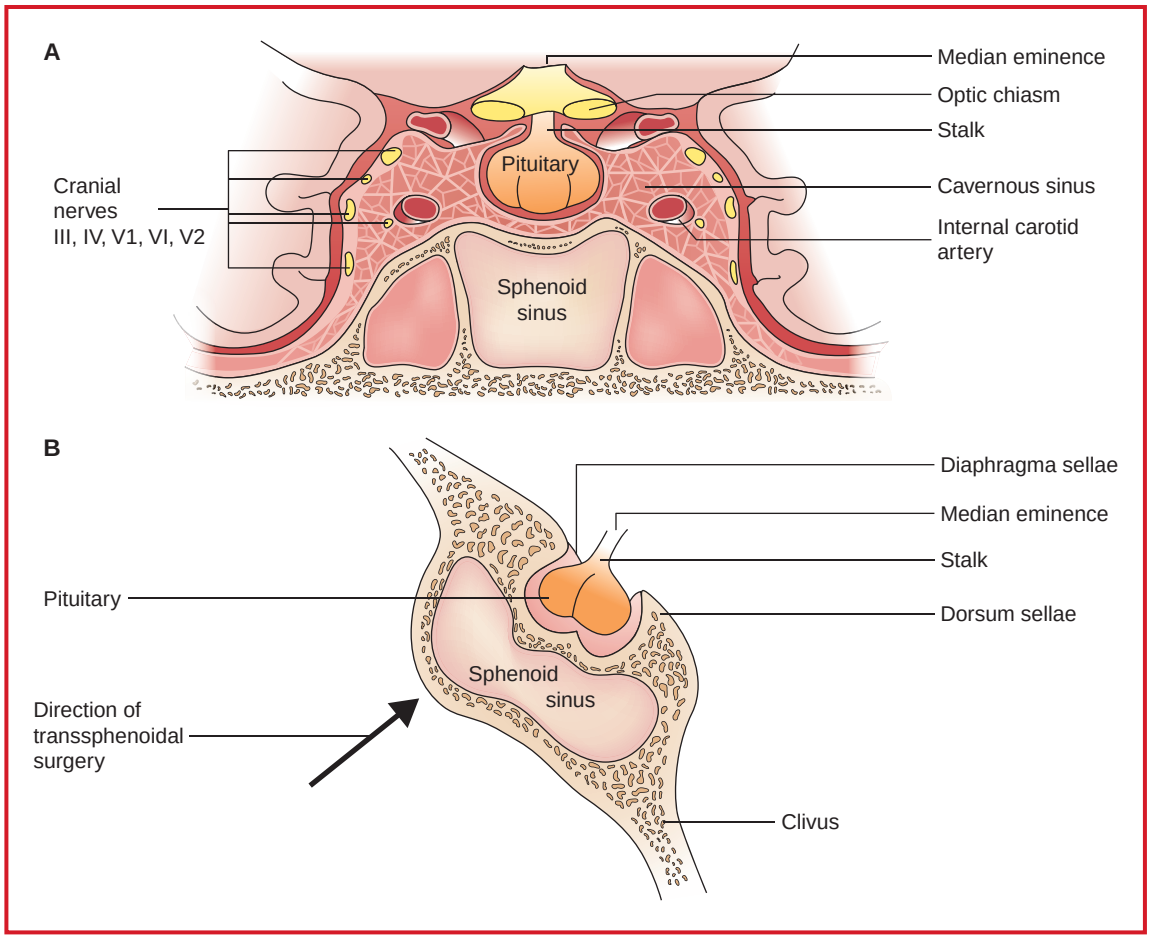


Figure 1.1-19. **A.** Midpituitary coronal view of parasellar region. The sphenoid sinus is below and the cavernous sinuses are lateral. **B.** Midsagittal view of pituitary and surrounding bony structures. Note the approach for transsphenoidal surgery. Anterior is to the left.

usually is performed transnasally; although a sublabial transseptal approach is out of favor, it may be used in patients with large tumors. An otorhinolaryngologist often will participate in obtaining the exposure, transnasally with an endoscope. Once the sphenoid sinus is reached, it is entered by removing the face and rostrum. The thin bone of the lateral wall of the sphenoid sinus protects portions of the optic nerve and carotid artery. The sella is entered by removing a portion of the sellar floor (Fig. 1.1-19). Under image guidance and with the aid of the operating microscope and/or endoscope, the surgeon can operate safely on the pituitary gland, respecting the midline and avoiding injury to the carotid arteries in the cavernous sinus on either side of the exposure. After the sellar floor is removed, the dura is opened and the tumor is removed with a series of microdissectors and curettes. Following tumor removal, if there is a CSF leak, the surgeon may harvest fat, muscle, or fascia from the thigh or abdomen to pack into the sella to reduce free intrasellar space and serve as a graft to prevent a leak. Resorbable materials, such as Gelfoam and fibrin glue, also may be used to obliterate dead space within the sella. The floor of the sella can be reconstructed with bone salvaged from the exposure or artificial material. During the closure, the sphenoid sinus also may be packed and sealed with the same materials used to close the sella. The nostrils may or may not be packed, depending on the details of the technique used.

Alternative Procedure: Endoscopic transsphenoidal approach has several advantages (improved surgical view and access, fewer complications, and more rapid recovery).

Usual preop diagnoses: Pituitary tumor; prolactin-secreting tumor; growth hormone-secreting tumor (acromegaly); ACTH-secreting tumor (Cushing's disease); visual compromise, intrasellar tumor; craniopharyngioma; meningioma; Forbes-Albright syndrome (galactorrhea-amenorrhea syndrome)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, head elevated 20–30°
Incision	Endonasal; + abdomen (or thigh) for fat graft; occasionally sublabial, maxillary gingiva
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; operating endoscope; micro drill; neuronavigation (image guidance) Throat packs may be used but are usually unnecessary.
Unique considerations	ETT must be taped securely in a location away from the surgeon (usually left side of mouth). Anode or RAE tube may be helpful but is not essential. The generous use of topical vasoconstrictors and the injection of epinephrine-containing solutions may → ↑ BP and dysrhythmias. Dissection in the nasal cavity can be painful → ↑ BP and ↑ ICP. There is a risk of VAE following inadvertent entry into the cavernous sinus. Valsalva maneuver, jugular compression, or injection of saline through a lumbar intrathecal catheter may be requested to facilitate tumor exposure. Injuries to sphenopalatine or carotid arteries are rare but may be dramatic when they occur.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1 g iv (avoid co-administration with Ca^{++}-containing solutions)
Surgical time	2.5–3 h
Closing considerations	Possible abdominal or thigh fat graft. Closure quite fast. Prevent straining and bucking if there has been an intraoperative CSF leak. Remove throat pack before extubation.
EBL	25–250 mL
Postop care	Fluid and electrolytes require frequent monitoring as the patient may develop diabetes insipidus (DI), usually transient, following this procedure.
Mortality	1%
Morbidity	Anterior pituitary insufficiency: 19.4% DI: 0.5–31%; SIADH: 9–25% Sinusitis: 8.5% Septum perforation: 3% CSF leak: 3.5% Epistaxis: 3.0% Loss of vision: 1.8% Meningitis: 1.5% Carotid artery injury: 1.1% stroke (rare)
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–85 yr (usually 30–50 yr)
Male:Female	2:3 (microadenomas)
Incidence	16.7% (autopsy studies); 1.5/100,000/yr diagnosed
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic
Associated conditions	Cushing's disease (ACTH); acromegaly (GH); amenorrhea/galactorrhea (prolactin); hyperthyroidism (TSH); hypergonadotropism (FSH; LH); multiple endocrine neoplasia I

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: bifrontal craniotomy for CSF leak; transoral approach to cervicomedullary junction, odontoid; transsphenoidal resection of pituitary tumor)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting with pituitary tumors can be divided into two categories, those with functional (hormone secreting) tumors and those with nonfunctional (nonsecreting) tumors. Nonfunctional tumors are usually large at the time

of diagnosis (headache, visual changes, panhypopituitarism), producing Sx as a result of compression. Functional tumors can be subcategorized:

Prolactin Secreting: Few anesthetic implications beyond possible mass effect and ↑ ICP

ACTH Secreting: HTN is very common and is often associated with diastolic dysfunction. OSA is common and may have implications for postop airway management. Hyperglycemia is common and should be treated if blood glucose > 180 mg/dL. ↑ cortisol → fragile skin and veins → difficult iv access.

Growth Hormone Secreting: Hypertrophy of the mandible, tongue and other facial tissues is common and complicates airway management. Hoarseness suggests laryngeal stenosis or recurrent laryngeal nerve dysfunction. OSA is very common with its attendant risk of postop airway compromise. HTN and diastolic dysfunction (with a need for ↑ filling pressure) are very common. The incidence of intraop ventricular ectopy and SVT is higher in these patients. ECG changes (e.g., ST/T wave changes, conduction abnormality) are common.

Pituitary tumors may present with the sudden onset of Sx (including severe headache, ophthalmoplegia, coma) as the result of hemorrhagic infarction (pituitary apoplexy). This is a life-threatening emergency often requiring urgent transsphenoidal decompression following stabilization with volume and high-dose corticosteroids.

Endocrine	Rarely, the mass effect may cause the clinical picture of panhypopituitarism requiring preop treatment with thyroxine, glucocorticoid, and vasopressin. Functional tumors commonly secrete prolactin (→ lactation), ACTH (→ adrenal hyperplasia), or growth hormone (→ acromegaly). Hyperprolactinemia may occur with any tumor 2° loss of inhibition of prolactin secretion. **Tests:** Preop endocrine studies, including serum and urinary levels of pituitary, thyroid, and adrenal hormones; appropriate replacement therapy established before proceeding with surgery. "Stress-dose" hydrocortisone (e.g., 100 mg iv q 8 h) is often unnecessary; treatment should be guided by symptoms and periop cortisol levels. Dexamethasone will not interfere with cortisol assays.
Respiratory	No special requirements, unless patient has acromegaly, in which case large facial features, long neck, large tongue, and redundant soft tissue in the oropharynx may make mask fit and ET intubation difficult. If these patients evidence hoarseness or inspiratory stridor, they should have a full clinical and radiological evaluation of the upper airway. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	No special requirements unless patient has acromegaly, in which case they may have refractory HTN, ischemic heart disease, and diabetes. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	Secretory tumors of the pituitary are usually small, confined to the sella, rarely cause ↑ ICP (2° direct tumor effects or by obstruction of 3rd ventricle), and commonly produce Sx of endocrine dysfunction early in their growth. In contrast, nonfunctional pituitary tumors may not produce Sx until they extend beyond the boundaries of the sella, causing HAs (the most common presenting symptom) or compression of the optic chiasm, producing visual field defects (temporal or bitemporal hemianopsia). **Tests:** A CT or MRI will delineate the site and size of the tumor, especially if iv contrast material, such as gadolinium, is administered to enhance the margins of the tumor.
Musculoskeletal	If growth hormone is the primary secretant, patient will exhibit Sx of acromegaly, including large hands, feet, head, and tongue. Cushing's myopathy (UE proximal muscle weakness) may affect apparent recovery from muscle relaxant. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Metabolic panel, Hct, and others as indicated from H&P. ↓ Na^+ may indicate DI; ↑↑ Ca^{++} may indicate MEN I.
Premedication	If ↑ ICP is not a concern, patients may benefit from midazolam 1–2 mg iv. In patients with ↑ ICP consider pretreatment with mannitol (e.g., 0.25 g/kg 20 min before induction). Acromegalic patients may develop airway obstruction following even small doses of sedatives or narcotics.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is required for these operations because the surgical approach is through either the nose or the mouth above the maxillary gum line and behind the nose. A lumbar drain may be placed to permit intraop management of ICP and access to the tumor.

Induction	If a difficult intubation is anticipated (e.g., severe acromegalic patients), orotracheal intubation will need to be accomplished before induction of GA. LMA placement may be difficult, and awake FOL is often the best choice (see p. B-5). Because pituitary tumors generally are confined to the sella turcica and, hence, ICP usually is not increased, a standard induction technique with standard ETT is appropriate (see p. B-2). An oral RAE tube may be preferred by some surgeons. If increased ICP is of concern, induction should be similar to that used for patients with other kinds of brain tumors (see Anesthetic Considerations for Craniotomy for Tumor, p. 31). Because the surgeon will be working from the patient's right side, the ETT must be positioned at the far left side of the mouth. The surgeon may infiltrate the nasal mucosa with lidocaine and epinephrine →↑ BP + dysrhythmias → possible myocardial ischemia.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance with sevoflurane (or propofol infusion) supplemented with remifentanil (see p. B-3). Generally, no further NMBs are administered beyond ET intubation. With adequate anesthesia, and the head in a Mayfield clamp, patient movement of any consequence is highly unlikely. Ventilation is controlled with $PaCO_2$ maintained in the normal range. Hyperventilation is not desirable because it makes it more difficult to access the tumor in the sella and establish that it has been removed in its entirety. Following the resection, the surgeon may request a Valsalva maneuver to check for CSF leak.	
Emergence	If the patient evidences normal emergence from anesthesia, the ETT should be removed before vigorous coughing ensues. Before removing the ETT, however, make certain that all blood accumulated in the back of the throat is suctioned out and that oropharyngeal packs that may have been placed in the back of the throat have been removed. An OG tube should be used to suction out the stomach. The surgeon may have packed the nose at the end of operation, making the patient an obligatory mouth breather. If there is any question about airway patency because of a large tongue, small mouth, or soft-tissue redundancy in the oropharynx, the ETT should be left in place until patient is fully awake from anesthesia. Prophylactic antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 20 mg and ondansetron 4–8 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss usual Potential large blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS @ 4–8 mL/kg/h	Blood loss is minimal, unless the surgeon inadvertently enters the internal carotid artery or cavernous sinus. Additional iv access may be necessary.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± UO ± CVP line ± precordial Doppler	Monitor for VAE in semisitting position if > 30°. Ulnar artery flow may be compromised in acromegaly—document Alan test before placing radial artery catheter. CVP line should be placed in patients at significant risk for VAE or as medically indicated.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Shoulder roll Table turned 90–180°	The surgeon will use an operating microscope or endoscope, which means that the anesthesiologist will be positioned at the side or foot. Anesthetic hoses and intravascular lines must be long enough to be accessible.
Complications	Carotid injury VAE	Potential for large-volume hemorrhage and intraop stroke. Deliberate hypotension may facilitate repair. Carotid compression may → ↓ CBF → ischemia.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypopituitarism Diabetes insipidus (24–48 h postop) CSF leak SIADH Cranial nerve injury	Replacement therapy with steroids is necessary in hypopituitary patients until normal pituitary function returns. Occasionally, patients will develop DI postop → polyuria and ↓ urine specific gravity < 1.005. Rarely, this may occur in the PACU necessitating fluid replacement and/or DDAVP.
Pain management	Codeine (30–60 mg im q 4 h)	Frontal HA is the most common complaint. Consider acetaminophen (1 g iv) for postop analgesia.
Tests	CT scan Serum cortisol Visual acuity/fields	If a patient exhibits any delay in emergence from anesthesia and surgery, or any new neurologic deficits emerge postop, a CT scan is ordinarily obtained.

Suggested Readings

1. Burton CM, Nemergut EC: Anesthetic and critical care management of patients undergoing pituitary surgery. *Front Horm Res* 2006; 34:236–55.
2. Chan VWS, Tindal S: Anesthesia for transsphenoidal surgery in a patient with extreme giantism. *Br J Anaesth* 1998; 60:464–8.
3. Ciric I, Ragin B, Baumgartner C, et al: Complications of transsphenoidal surgery: results of a national survey, review of the literature, and personal experience. *Neurosurgery* 1997; 40(2):225–36.
4. Elias JW, Laws ER Jr: Transsphenoidal approaches to lesions of the sella. In: Schmidek HA, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques: Indications, Methods, and Results.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 373–84.
5. Fahlbusch R, Honegger KR, Paulus W, et al: Surgical treatment of craniopharyngiomas: experience with 168 patients. *J Neurosurg* 1999; 90:237–50.
6. Lim M, Williams D, Maartens N: Anaesthesia for pituitary surgery. *J Clin Neurosci* 2006; 13(4):413–8.
7. Murad-Kejbou S, Eggenberger E: Pituitary apoplexy: evaluation, management, and prognosis. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2009 Nov; 20(6):456–61. Review.
8. Semple PL, Laws ER: Complications in a contemporary series of patients who underwent transsphenoidal surgery for Cushing's Disease. *J Neurosurg* 1999; 91:175–9.
9. Swearingen B: Update on pituitary surgery. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2012; 97(4):1073–81.

VENTRICULAR SHUNT PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Lawrence M. Shuer and Steven D. Chang

Description: Many conditions exist where it is necessary to shunt CSF from the ventricles to another body cavity where it can be absorbed readily. The most common condition is hydrocephalus, where there is dilation of the ventricular system due to an obstruction in the flow of CSF (Fig. 1.1-20) or decreased absorption of CSF by the arachnoid villi. Hydrocephalus is commonly treated by diverting CSF to the peritoneal cavity via a ventriculoperitoneal shunt (**VP shunt**). Most shunt systems have a one-way, pressure-dependent valve to regulate the flow of CSF. These valves usually have a preset pressure setting (e.g., low, medium, high) at which they open and allow CSF to flow. Newer valves have externally adjustable opening pressures, flow-regulating devices, and/or antisiphon systems to prevent overshunting. In addition, antibiotic impregnated catheters can be used to reduce the risk of infection.

To insert a VP shunt, the patient is positioned so that the cranial incision and abdominal incision are aligned in the same plane. The scalp is shaved (usually over the frontal or parietal region), and a continuous surgical field is created from head to abdomen. The cranial incision is made over the intended region of cannulation of the ventricle, and a burr hole is made in the cranium. A subgaleal pocket is created for the valve, usually behind the ear. A separate incision is made in the abdomen, and the dissection is carried down to the level of the peritoneum. A catheter is then passed subcutaneously from the abdominal incision to the cranial incision with a special tunneling instrument (Fig. 1.1-21A). Alternatively, the catheter can be threaded from the cranial incision to the abdominal incision. It may

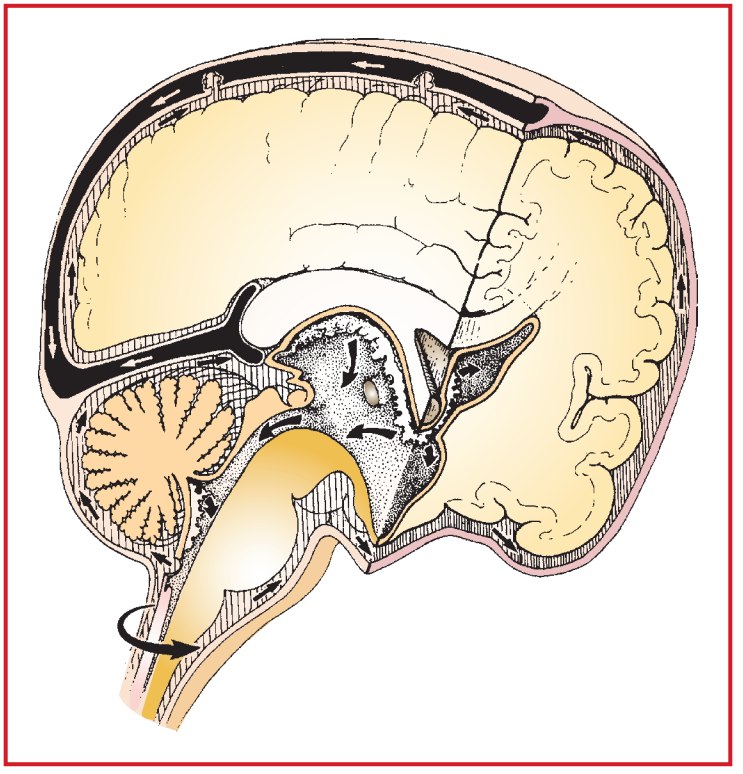


Figure 1.1-20. Pathways of CSF flow and potential sites of obstruction. (Reproduced with permission from Tindall GT, Cooper PR, Barrow DL: *The Practice of Neurosurgery,* Vol III. Williams & Wilkins, 1996. Orig. from Scott RM: *Hydrocephalus. Concepts in Neurosurgery,* Vol III. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1990.)

be necessary to use one or more incisions between the head and the abdomen to thread the catheter. The valve is connected to the peritoneal catheter and placed in the subgaleal pocket. A ventricular catheter is then inserted into the ventricle (Fig. 1.1-21B), and a small amount of CSF is drained to check placement and patency of the catheter. The ventricular catheter is then connected to the valve, and CSF flow through the entire shunt system is checked by draining some CSF from the distal end of the peritoneal catheter. The distal end is then placed into the peritoneal cavity and all wounds are closed.

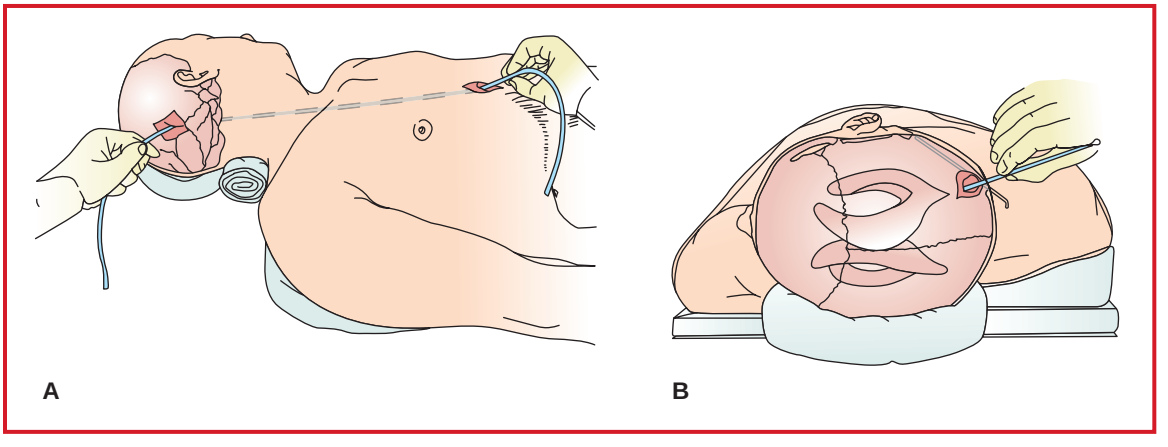


Figure 1.1-21. **A.** The catheter is threaded from the abdominal incision to the cranial incision. **B.** Insertion of the ventricular catheter. (Reproduced with permission from Meyer FB: *Atlas of Neurosurgery: Basic Approaches to Cranial and Vascular Procedures.* Churchill Livingstone, 1999).

Any component of the shunt may malfunction; thus, it may be necessary to test each component at the time of revision to identify the problem. To test the patency of the ventricular catheter, it is disconnected from the valve, and CSF should flow freely through it. A saline-filled manometer can be attached to the valve to measure the opening pressure of the valve. The manometer should drain spontaneously until the opening pressure of the valve is reached. An elevated opening pressure may indicate a valve malfunction or a distal occlusion. If a distal occlusion is suspected, gentle irrigation may clear it, but externalization may be necessary.

Variant procedure or approaches: Endoscopy, fluoroscopy, ultrasound, image-guided navigation, or intraoperative MRI may be used to help place the catheter into the ventricle. The ventricular catheter can be placed in either lateral ventricle; occasionally, both lateral ventricles are cannulated. This procedure also is used to shunt the 4th ventricle and sometimes, subarachnoid cysts and subdural hygromas. The distal end alternatively may be placed in the pleural cavity or the right atrium (ventriculoatrial or **VA shunt**). If the distal end of the catheter is placed into the pleural cavity, a Valsalva maneuver is performed upon closure to reinflate the lung. To place the distal end into the atrium, a vein is cannulated in the neck (usually IJ, EJ, or facial vein), and the catheter is fed into the atrium under fluoroscopic guidance. It may be necessary to inject radiopaque contrast to verify proper placement. Rarely, the distal end of the catheter can be placed in an intracranial venous sinus, the gallbladder, or the ureter.

Endoscopic Third Ventriculostomy (ETV): Endoscopic third ventriculostomy is being used with increasing frequency to treat both obstructive and communicating forms of hydrocephalus. Head fixation is generally not needed, and the procedure involves a small skin incision over the frontoparietal lobe to gain access to the skull. A small burr hole is then made. The dura is opened over the burr hole, permitting the insertion of the endoscope into the lateral ventricle. Under endoscopic guidance, the tuber cinereum is then fenestrated with a balloon tip catheter. CSF is diverted through the membranous floor of 3rd ventricle into the basal cisterns. The endoscope is then removed and the wound is closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Hydrocephalus; obstructive or communicating hydrocephalus; aqueductal stenosis; Dandy-Walker malformation (cystic dilation of the 4th ventricle and incomplete formation of the cerebellar vermis); occult hydrocephalus; normal-pressure hydrocephalus; subarachnoid cyst; subdural hygroma; pseudotumor cerebri.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	VP Shunt	VA Shunt	ETV
Position	Supine, with head turned to contralateral side	⇐	⇐
Incision	Scalp, either coronal and retroauricular, or parietal; + neck and abdomen	Scalp, either coronal and retroauricular or parietal; + neck	Scalp over frontoparietal lobe
Special instrumentation	Ventricular endoscope (optional)	⇐ + I.I.	Ventricular endoscope
Unique considerations	Patient to be treated as if there is ↑ ICP.	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv q d (avoid Ca^{++} containing solutions)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	⇐	⇐
EBL	5–25 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room; usually kept flat for 24 h.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	VP Shunt	VA Shunt	ETV
Morbidity	Infection: < 15% Neurological: Intracranial bleed: < 1% Subdural hematoma: < 1% Hardware failure: < 1%	⇐	⇐ Basilar artery injury ↑↑ ICP → ↓↓ HR or asystole
Pain score	4–6	2–4	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–elderly
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Congenital (3–4/1000 live births); acquired; neoplastic; infectious; posthemorrhagic
Associated conditions	Subarachnoid hemorrhage; myelodysplasia; spina bifida (95% incidence); intraventricular hemorrhage; intraventricular tumor

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Ventricular shunts are inserted to ameliorate hydrocephalus or cyst formation, which may be either congenital or acquired.

Cardiovascular	↑ ICP → ↑ BP + ↓↓ HR (Cushing's response) **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	The most common presenting Sx is HA. If hydrocephalus is severe, Sx of ↑ ICP (> 15 mm Hg); e.g., N/V, drowsiness, papilledema, Sz, and focal neurological defects) develop.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated by H&P
Premedication	Usually not required; should be avoided in patients with ↑ ICP.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	If ↑ ICP, iv induction with propofol (1–2 mg/kg) or STP (2–5 mg/kg) is preferred because of their ability to decrease cerebral blood volume → ↓ ICP. ET intubation is accomplished with the use of a NMB (e.g., rocuronium [0.6–1 mg/kg]).
Maintenance	Isoflurane ≤ 1% or sevoflurane < 2%, inspired with 50:50 N_2O/O_2 mixture. Depending on duration of operation, additional doses of rocuronium (0.2 mg/kg) may be needed. Maintain normal temperature in children by keeping OR warm (78°F) and using a forced-air warming blanket. Ventilation should be controlled. TV and frequency should be adjusted such that the $PetCO_2$ = 35–40 mm Hg. Hyperventilation and hypocarbia are undesirable because they make cannulation of the ventricle(s) more difficult. Maintain normotension. During endoscopic 3rd ventriculostomy (ETV), puncture of the floor of the 3rd ventricle may be associated with significant ↓↓ HR or asystole. The surgeon should be immediately informed if bradycardia occurs.
Emergence	ETT is removed at the conclusion of the anesthetic. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg and ondansetron 4 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Administer crystalloid, usually NS. Blood is rarely, if ever, necessary.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Invasive monitors as indicated
Positioning	Table turned 180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Supine with a bolster under the shoulder on the operative side. The head, chest, and abdomen are prepped, so all anesthesia equipment and lines must be at the sides of the patient.
Complications	Valve malfunction ↓↓ HR or asystole Basilar artery injury	Major intraop complications from this operation are rare. ETV may be associated with severe bradycardia and injury to the basilar artery or its branches.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Children < 2 yr: Tylenol suppositories (10–15 mg/kg q 4 h) Adults: meperidine 10–20 mg iv prn

Suggested Readings

1. Spennato P, Ruggiero C, Aliberti F, et al: Third ventriculostomy in shunt malfunction. *World Neurosurg* 2013; 79(2 Suppl):S22.e21–6.
2. Thomas R, Lee S, Patole S, Rao S: Antibiotic-impregnated catheters for the prevention of CSF shunt infections: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Neurosurg* 2012; 26(2):175–84.
3. Woodworth GF, McGirt MJ, Elfert P, et al: Frameless stereotactic ventricular shunt placement for idiopathic intracranial hypertension. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg* 2005; 83(1):12–6.
4. Wu Y, Green NL, Wrensch MR, et al: Ventriculoperitoneal shunt complications in California: 1990–2000. *Neurosurgery* 2007; 61(3):557–562.

CRANIOCERVICAL DECOMPRESSION (CHIARI MALFORMATION)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Lawrence M. Shuer and Steven D. Chang

Description: Historically, congenital hindbrain abnormalities characterized by cerebellar descent were known collectively as **Arnold-Chiari malformations**; now they are known as **Chiari malformations**. In these abnormalities, portions of the cerebellum protrude through the foramen magnum and may compress the brain stem and upper cervical spinal cord. Frequently, the malformation is accompanied by **syringomyelia**, a condition in which CSF is located abnormally within the spinal cord. In **Type I Chiari** malformation, the cerebellar tonsils are herniated through the foramen magnum. In **Type II Chiari** malformation, the tonsils, vermis, 4th ventricle, pons, and medulla are displaced caudally through the foramen magnum. Type II Chiari malformations are usually found in infants and are associated with myelomeningoceles. In **Type III Chiari** malformations there is a defect in the back of the head or neck through which the cerebellum and/or brain stem is herniated. Patients with **Type IV Chiari** malformations usually do not survive past infancy.

To make room for the brain stem and caudally displaced cerebellum, decompression of the craniocervical junction is necessary. This procedure may be performed in either the prone, 3/4 prone, or seated position. The head is placed in Mayfield pin fixation. A midline incision is made, and the dissection is carried down to the skull and the posterior arch of C1. Paramedian burr holes are placed to aid in the suboccipital craniectomy. The craniotome is then used to remove an approximately 4 cm by 3 cm bone flap that includes the foramen magnum. Care is taken to avoid injury to the underlying venous sinuses when performing the craniectomy.

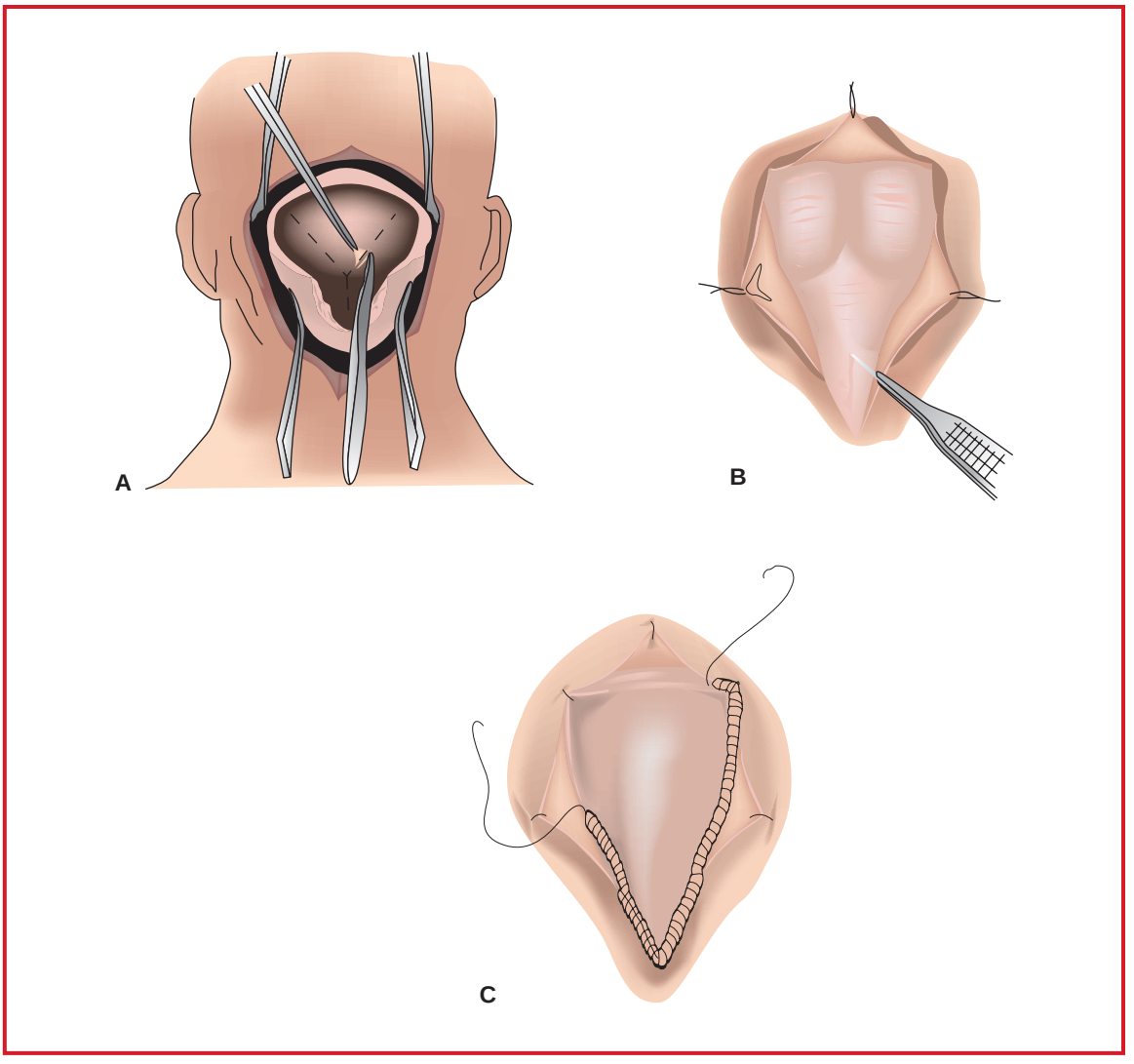


Figure 1.1-22. Surgical anatomy in Chiari I decompression. The use of the no. 12 blade is demonstrated. Because the cutting surface is drawn up and away from the central nervous system tissue, the risk of injury is minimized with patch graft. (Adapted from Barrow Neurological Institute, with permission.) **C.** Surgical anatomy in Chiari II malformation. Demonstration of the surgical anatomy of the Chiari II malformation showing a low-lying torcula and a medullary kink that is more caudally displaced than the cerebellar vermis.

The posterior arch of C1 is removed and as many upper cervical lamina as are needed to fully decompress the Chiari malformation are removed. Next, any constricting fibrous bands are cut and the dura is opened. Any subarachnoid adhesions should be lysed to allow the free flow of CSF. The tonsils are dissected apart under microscopic guidance to gain an opening to the 4th ventricle (Fig. 1.1-22). The cerebellar tonsils can be reduced with electrocautery or by resection to facilitate the outflow of CSF from the 4th ventricle. A stent or a shunt may be placed in the 4th ventricle and brought out to the subarachnoid space to ensure adequate drainage of the 4th ventricle. The dura is closed loosely with autologous pericranium, fascia lata, or bovine pericardium (Fig. 1.1-22B). This creates a widely patent cisterna magna and prevents constriction at the cervicomedullary junction.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chiari Malformation I or II, Arnold-Chiari malformation; syringomyelia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Prone or sitting
Incision	Midline posterior, posterolateral thigh for fascia lata graft (optional)
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope
Unique considerations	Risk of air embolus; brain stem manipulation can cause BP and pulse instability; dural patch used to expand dura at foramen magnum
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1–2 g iv q d (avoid co-administration Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	2.5–3.5 h
Closing considerations	BP control to ensure adequate hemostasis
EBL	25–250 mL
Postop care	ICU or constant observation unit; neurological function monitored.
Mortality	0–3% (usually respiratory arrest)
Morbidity	Respiratory depression: 14% up to 5 d postop All others < 5%: Infection Neurological: dysphagia and ↓ gag reflex Aseptic meningitis CSF leak Massive blood loss; vertebral artery or transverse sinus injury
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Infant–70 yr; Chiari I: average age = 41 yr
Male:Female	~1:1
Incidence	Relatively rare neurosurgical procedure
Etiology	Congenital; acquired, S/P lumboperitoneal shunting
Associated conditions	Hydrocephalus; syringomyelia; scoliosis; myelodysplasia

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 108.

Suggested Readings

1. Hankinson TC, Klimo P Jr, Feldstein NA, et al: Chiari malformations, syringohydromyelia and scoliosis. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2007; 18(3):549–68.
2. Klekamp J, Batzdorf U, Samii M, et al: The surgical treatment of Chiari I malformation. *Acta Neurochir* 1996; 138:788–801.
3. Schuster JM, Zhang F, Norvell DC, Hermsmeyer JT: Persistent/recurrent syringomyelia after chiari decompression-natural history and management strategies: a systematic review. *Evid Based Spine Care J* 2013; 4(2):116–25.

STEREOTACTIC NEUROSURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Steven D. Chang

Description: Stereotaxis applies simple rules of geometry to radiographic images to allow precise localization within the brain. Such techniques can be applied to a variety of neurosurgical procedures, providing up to 1-mm accuracy. This precision makes it possible to perform certain intracranial procedures less invasively. Methods include both frame-based and frameless navigation systems, as well as specific stereotactic applications for functional neurosurgery and radiosurgery.

Frame-based stereotaxy: Stereotactic localization was developed using frames; however, with the widespread use of image-guided, "frameless" stereotactic systems, frame-based stereotaxy is rarely used. These procedures begin with the attachment of a frame to the patient's head using four screws that anchor it to the skull. This is typically done outside the OR, using local anesthetic and, sometimes, light sedation. In the cooperative adult, frame application takes only 5–10 min; however, GA typically is used for children. Once the frame is in place, access to the patient's airway is restricted. A key for emergency removal of the frame must be kept with the patient at all times. With the stereotactic frame in place, CT, MRI, and/or cerebral angiography are used for target identification and localization. During imaging, a set of fiducials (radiographically visible markers) is attached to the frame. These fiducials provide the geometric reference points needed for localization. Data from imaging studies are used to calculate the spatial coordinates of the target(s). In nearly all cooperative patients, there is no need for sedation or analgesia during this stage of the procedure.

Frame-based stereotaxy is used most frequently for brain biopsies; however, drainage of cystic lesions or placement of a catheter or depth electrodes also can be performed. These common procedures involve relatively minor surgery, usually requiring only light sedation and local anesthesia. After prepping and draping, specialized operating tools are attached to the stereotactic frame. These instruments provide spatial guidance throughout the surgical procedure. A burr or twist drill hole is the usual form of intracranial access. Maximal sedation is needed during drilling and dural opening. Anesthetic considerations include ensuring adequate oxygenation and ventilation, which may be compromised by the sterile drapes. In addition, sedation should be light enough at times to allow the neurosurgeon to test gross neurologic function, such as extremity movement, both during and immediately after biopsy. At the completion of the case, the frame is removed, and the patient is brought to the recovery room.

Image-guided "frameless" stereotaxy: Over the last several years, techniques have been developed to provide neurosurgeons with a real-time computer display of position and trajectory. Spatial information is displayed on high-speed computer workstations as two-dimensional images and three-dimensional renderings obtained from CT and/or MRI. These devices have the added advantage of being frameless; instead of a frame providing a system of reference, small markers (fiducials) are affixed to the scalp and forehead with adhesive. Advances in image-guided navigation also allow the incorporation of ultrasound and endoscopy to provide intraoperative updating of the preoperative radiographic images.

Image-guided surgery begins with an imaging study performed with fiducials in place. The remainder of the case is performed in the OR, usually under GA. After the patient's head is appropriately fixed and positioned, the locations of the fiducials are entered into a computer, using any one of several different commercially available digitizing techniques. The most common system uses triangulation of infrared light from LEDs to determine the position of a pointer in space. The computer calculates the position of the pointer with respect to the patient and displays on the monitor the images from the scan with a representation of the pointer superimposed. Because the process of localization assumes a constant frame of reference, it is important that fiducials do not move between the time of imaging and registration in the OR. A further refinement, the dynamic reference frame, may be affixed to the craniotomy headrest to allow intraoperative repositioning of the patient. The OR must be set up to accommodate the computer and monitor as well as to allow a direct line-of-sight between the operative site and an array of infrared sensors. (See Fig. 1.1-22.) Care must be taken to avoid patient movement during the initial registration of the fiducials because this introduces a component of error with respect to the accuracy of the navigation system. The camera system can be repositioned during the case and still maintain accuracy.

The spatial information provided to neurosurgeons by image guidance can be used to access deep or critically located lesions through the most direct trajectory and a smaller craniotomy. These techniques have been used primarily during craniotomy for tumor or vascular malformation; however, image guidance also can be used for brain biopsy, shunt placement, cyst drainage or other smaller procedures. As with most craniotomies, GA is used. Maneuvers that alter the spatial relationship of the intracranial contents, such as hyperventilation, diuresis or CSF drainage, will result in brain shift relative to the presurgical images and should be avoided if possible, particularly during the early stages of surgery.

Radiosurgery: This technique uses focused radiation to ablate small or residual tumors and vascular malformations. It can also be used to treat some pain, psychiatric, and movement disorders. In contrast to other stereotactic operations, radiosurgery is performed outside the OR, using a linear accelerator or other specialized irradiation device. Cooperative adults need little or no sedation during the procedure. Children, however, almost always require GA from the beginning of frame placement through the actual treatment, which may last from 5–8 h. Consequently, anesthesia must be administered at several locations in the hospital, as well as during transport between these sites. Ideally, GA is initiated in the imaging suite just prior to frame placement. After transport to the recovery unit, the child is maintained under anesthesia while radiosurgical treatment is being planned, which takes from 1–3 h. The patient is then transported to the radiosurgery suite, still anesthetized, and treatment is performed. Depending on complexity, radiosurgery itself may last from 1–2 h. At the completion of treatment, the stereotaxic frame is removed and the child is awakened.

Newer, frameless radiosurgical systems can obviate the need for GA, and most children can be set up and treated with iv sedation alone. However, the setup and treatment are usually performed on different days, and the child can go home while the treatment plan is created. These systems also allow for fractionation of the total dose, which may spare damage to surrounding critical structures.

Functional Neurosurgery: (See p. 72 for additional discussion of these procedures.) Surgery using precisely placed lesions (e.g., **pallidotomy**, **thalamotomy**) or deep-brain stimulators for the treatment of movement disorders, pain, and certain psychiatric syndromes are encompassed by the term "**functional stereotaxy**." These techniques depend on absolutely precise localization of specialized instruments. These surgeries traditionally have required the use of a stereotactic frame. However, advances in imaging and image-guided navigation have obviated the need for a stereotactic frame. Concurrent neuroanatomic localization using electrophysiologic techniques is routinely used, regardless of the stereotactic system employed. To preserve neural potentials and allow the patient to cooperate with neurologic testing, GA is not used. Frameless procedures begin with placement of the fiducials (small screws) and imaging. Typically the fiducials are implanted in the patient's skull using local anesthetic and a special screwdriver. Then the patient undergoes a CT scan, which is uploaded into the image-guided navigation system. The surgeon can then plan the trajectory in the computer. In the OR, the patient's head is placed in Mayfield pins, and the imaged-guided navigation system is set up and the fiducials are registered. A small skin incision is made, and a burr hole is placed with the patient under iv sedation. The patient is then awakened and must remain awake and cooperative throughout a several-hour procedure, which may require patient participation in various neurologic tests. The recording electrodes are positioned using the image-guided navigation system and the electrophysiologic monitoring. After the proper electrophysiologic position is obtained, the recording electrode is removed and the deep brain stimulator is placed in the exact same position and depth. After the deep-brain stimulator is placed, a subgaleal pocket may be created to house the leads until they can be connected to the pulse generator. Frame-based procedures begin with the attachment of a rigid frame to the patient's skull with local anesthesia. The stereotactic frame provides an immobile reference that aids in targeting. The remainder of the procedure is similar to the frameless procedure previously described.

Usual preop diagnosis: Brain disease requiring biopsy; brain tumor; vascular malformation; Parkinson's disease; hydrocephalus; pseudotumor cerebri; pain syndromes; psychiatric syndromes; cyst drainage

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Frame-Based Stereotaxy	Frameless Stereotaxy	Radiosurgery	Functional Neurosurgery
Position	Supine or prone	Sitting, supine, prone, or lateral	Supine or prone	Supine, frameless, or head fixed in frame

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Frame-Based Stereotaxy	Frameless Stereotaxy	Radiosurgery	Functional Neurosurgery
Incision	0.5–2 cm, scalp	1–12 cm, scalp	None	1–3 cm, scalp
Special instrumentation	Stereotactic treatment arc	Sensor array, pointer, computer, monitor, dynamic reference frame	Linear accelerator (LINAC) Cyberknife	Electrophysiologic monitoring equipment, image-guided navigation, C-arm
Unique considerations	Key for emergency removal of frame	1. Minimize brain shift. 2. No patient movement during registration. 3. Clear line-of-sight between camera and dynamic reference frame.	Extended anesthesia in several different locations for pediatric patients	Patient must be awake, able to cooperate with testing. Key for emergency removal of frame
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1 g iv (avoid Ca^{++} containing solutions)	⇐	None	Ceftriaxone 1g iv (avoid Ca^{++} containing solutions)
Surgical time	0.5–1.5 h	2–6 h	5–8 h	2–6 h
EBL	< 10 mL	20–1000 mL	None	< 100 mL
Postop care	PACU	ICU	PACU	Neuroobservation unit
Mortality	< 0.5%	1%	None	< 1%
Morbidity	Overall: < 1% Symptomatic intracerebral hemorrhage	Infection Air emboli Hemorrhage Stroke Sz Worsening edema	N/V: 2–3%	N/V: 1–10% Intracerebral hemorrhage New neurologic deficits
Pain score	2	4	2	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages	⇐	0–12 yr	18–90 yr
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐	⇐
Incidence	Uncommon	Unusual	⇐	Rare
Etiology	Tumor; infection; AIDS; demyelinating syndromes	Tumor; vascular malformations; epilepsy	⇐	Parkinson's disease; pain syndromes; psychiatric syndromes

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Neurosurgical procedures are performed using stereotactic guidance when the lesion is small and/or is located deep within brain tissue, or as a means of obtaining a biopsy of a lesion for diagnosis. For example, focal, deep-seated AVMs may be resected under stereotactic, or image-guided, control. These patients are often otherwise healthy.

Neurological	Neurological Sx vary (depending on site and size of the lesion), and they should be carefully documented. In addition to the usual tests, a CT or MRI scan is obtained preop with the frame or fiducial markers in place to determine stereotactic coordinates. Once the coordinates are established, the frame or fiducial markers must not be moved until the operation is complete.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or MAC. In adults, fiducial markers or a stereotactic frame are placed, and the patient is taken to the radiologic suite for CT/MRI scan to determine stereotactic coordinates before surgery. The patient is then brought to OR with the frame or fiducial markers in place. The tool for removing the stereotactic frame must be readily available in the event of an airway emergency. Biopsies may be accomplished under local anesthesia with MAC or GETA. If a complete resection is planned (e.g., AVM resection), GETA is used. In children, it is usually necessary to induce GA before placing the frame, thus necessitating the maintenance of GA during the CT/MRI scan. The child is then moved to the OR, still anesthetized, and the operation is completed.

Induction	If MAC is planned, O_2 (keep $O_2 \leq$ to 30%) by nasal prongs is administered, and the patient is lightly sedated with dexmedetomidine (load: 1 mcg/kg over 10 mins; infusion: 0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h) or with a combination of propofol 25–50 mcg/kg/min ± midazolam 1–4 mg/kg in divided doses to provide amnesia. It is important that the patient be able to communicate with the surgeon as needed throughout the operation. For functional neurosurgery (e.g., pallidotomy), sedation should be minimized to preserve normal electrophysiological activity essential for mapping. If GETA is needed in a framed stereotactic procedure, FOL (see p. I-2) is necessary before inducing anesthesia because the frame may preclude intubation by direct laryngoscopy. After ET intubation is established, anesthesia may be induced with STP 2–5 mg/kg or propofol 1–2 mg/kg, followed by a nondepolarizing NMB to facilitate positioning of patient.	
Maintenance	If GA is used, maintenance is the same as for a tumor (see Anesthetic Considerations for Craniotomy for Tumor, p. 31) or AVM (see Anesthetic Considerations for Craniotomy for Intracranial Vascular Malformations, p. 19). If children are to be transported from the site of placement of the stereotactic frame to the radiologic suite and then to the OR, it is best to use a propofol infusion (e.g., 75–150 mcg/kg/min) or dexmedetomidine infusion (load: 1 mcg/kg over 10 mins; infusion: 0.5–1 mcg/kg/h) with spontaneous or controlled ventilation to ensure adequate ventilation and oxygenation during transport and study. Opiates and nondepolarizing NMBs should not be administered until the child is in the operating suite.	
Emergence	ETT generally is removed at the conclusion of the operation. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg and ondansetron 4 mg) in adults should be given 30 min before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 2 (adults); 20–22 ga (children) NS @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Blood loss is minimal because the volume of tissue removed is small.
Monitoring	If local anesthesia: standard monitors (see p. B-1). If GA: standard monitor (B-1) ± Arterial line ± CVP line ± UO (Foley catheter)	Choice of monitors depends on the condition of the patient and the nature and extent of the surgery.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Sitting position presents special hazards including VAE and nerve injury.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding	Focal bleeding may occur postop, causing onset of a neurological deficit.
Pain management	Vicodin (1–2 mg po q 4 h prn)	
Tests	CT or MRI scan, if a new neurological deficit occurs.	

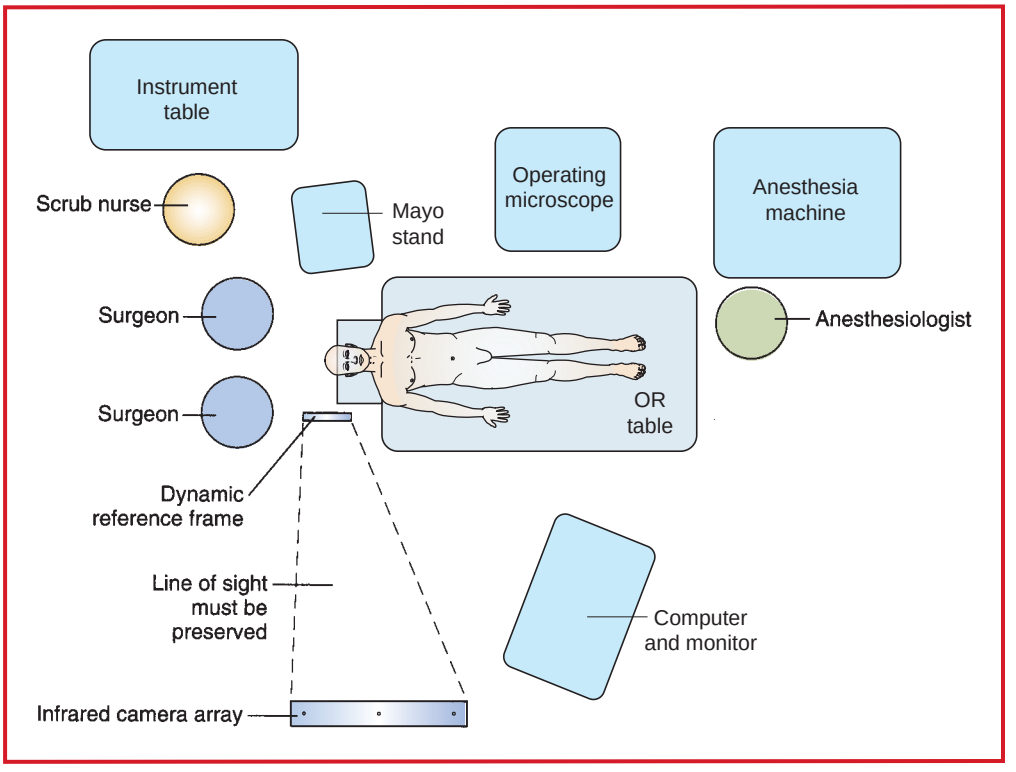


Figure 1.1-23. OR layout for frameless stereotactic surgery.

Suggested Readings

1. Holloway KL, Gaede SE, Starr PA, et al: Frameless stereotaxy using bone fiducial markers for deep brain stimulation. *J Neurosurg* 2005; 103(3):404–13.
2. Kondziolka D: Functional neurosurgery. *Neurosurgery* 1999; 44(l):12–20.
3. Risholm P, Golby AJ, Wells W 3rd: Multimodal image registration for preoperative planning and image-guided neurosurgical procedures. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2011; 22(2):197–206, viii.
4. Venkatraghavan L, Manninen P, Mak P, et al: Anesthesia for functional neurosurgery: review of complications. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2006; 18(1):64–67.
5. Woodworth GF, McGirt MJ, Samdani A, et al: Frameless image guided stereotactic brain biopsy procedure: diagnostic yield, surgical morbidity, and comparison with the frame based technique. *J Neurosurg* 2006; 104(2):233–7.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Endoscopic Pituitary Surgery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=66M_oyMGqjk

Adenosine for Temporary Flow Arrest During Intracranial Aneurysm Surgery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2KkgbtocnNY

Cavernous Malformations of the Brainstem: A Supracerebellar Infratenorial Approach: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1jl62S2xH6c

Chronic Subdural Hematoma: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lBgQqvYK8xA

Neurosurgery: Craniopharyngioma Supra-Orbital Removal: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gyVALlTTFQQ

Superficial Temporal Artery Dissection: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=djL_utmksEI

Surgery for Giant PCOM Aneurysms Video 1: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QhJ8NElcLIw

The Middle Fossa Approach and Extended Middle Fossa Approach Video 1: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OLgkeJ1u3kw

Intra-operative Real-time Querying of White Matter Tracts: Frameless Stereotactic Neuronavagation: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KrGkGPR5hs0

Bypass for Complex Basilar Aneurysms: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yQu0w4xr1aU

Neuroendoport(SM) Technique – Minimally Invasive Brain Surgery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=z6gidGVkzno

Aneurysm Clip Surgery – Middle Cerebral Artery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8vCBMiEgXQg

CHAPTER

1.2 Functional Neurosurgery

SURGEONS

Jaimie M. Henderson, MD
Paul R. Gigante, MD
Lawrence M. Shuer, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

FUNCTIONAL NEUROSURGERY—INTRODUCTION: THE SURGICAL TREATMENT OF PAIN, MOVEMENT DISORDERS, AND EPILEPSY

INTRODUCTION

Jaimie M. Henderson, MD

Functional neurosurgery differs from most surgical subspecialties in that it aims to alter the function of the nervous system, rather than addressing anatomical abnormalities. The most common treatment areas include chronic pain, epilepsy, and movement disorders. Each of these disease states has a distinctive anesthetic requirement dictated by the specific pathophysiology and subsequent intraoperative objectives. Procedures may be performed under local anesthesia, conscious sedation, or GA and can be divided into ablative (destructive) or augmentative (nondestructive) techniques. Ablative techniques are less frequently performed because of their unpredictable duration of effect and irreversible nature of the lesion. Neuroaugmentation (electrical stimulation or continuous local drug administration) tends to produce more lasting benefits and, more importantly, can be changed to meet fluctuations in the patient's symptoms.

One of the keys to successful functional neurosurgical therapies is target identification. Many targets can be identified anatomically on appropriate radiographic studies, whereas others may be difficult to visualize even with special techniques. However, even areas that can be targeted anatomically may vary in terms of their physiological function. Thus, it is important to incorporate physiological testing in many functional neurosurgical procedures. Most physiological confirmation techniques require that the patient be awake and cooperative during testing. Thus, the need for physiological identification often dictates a specific anesthetic technique.

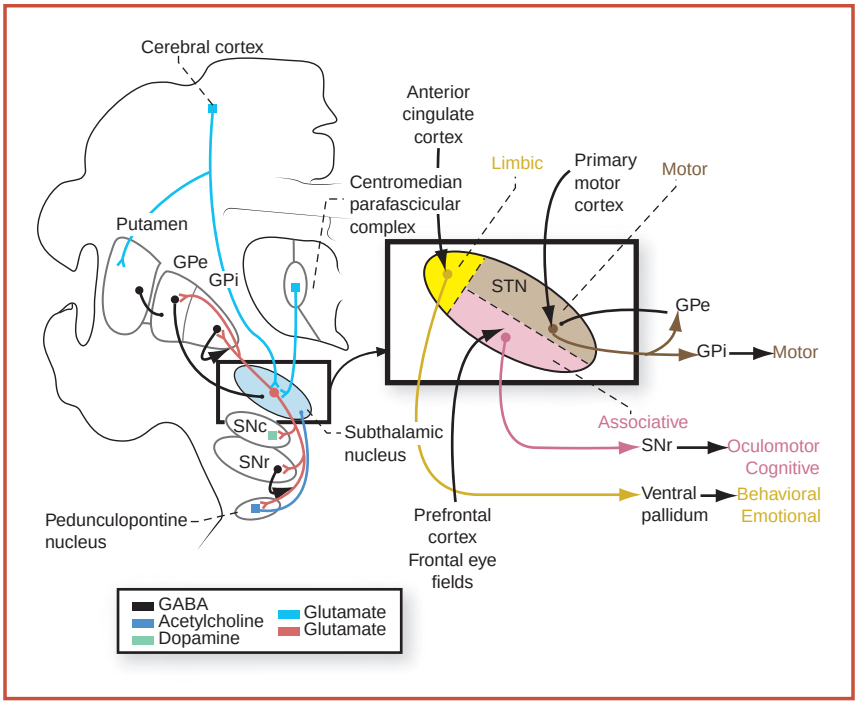


Figure 1.2-1. Topographical anatomy of the ventrolateral thalamus. GPe = external segment of globus pallidus; GPi = internal segment of globus pallidus; SNc = substantia nigra pars compacta; SNr = substantia nigra pars reticulata; STN = subthalamic nucleus.

STEREOTACTIC PROCEDURES: DEEP BRAIN STIMULATION, PALLIDOTOMY, AND THALAMOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Many procedures are currently performed with **frame-based stereotactic techniques,** with intracranial access achieved via a burr hole or twist drill. There is a growing trend to use "frameless" stereotactic approaches, with two major systems currently in use. Real-time frameless localization can be achieved by replacing the stereotactic frame with rigidly attached skull markers ("fiducials") that provide a fixed reference. Another innovative alternative is to produce a custom-made fixed trajectory guide using rapid prototyping techniques. Both of these approaches have been used successfully and appear to be equivalent in accuracy to a stereotactic frame.

Two approaches to identification of the functional target are used following initial stereotactic CT or MRI radiographic localization; both require patient cooperation. In one approach, the target is confirmed by assessing symptomatic resolution during high-frequency macrostimulation and by identifying surrounding structures using their characteristic stimulation-evoked responses. In the other approach, before stimulation testing, single-neuron recordings are performed to localize the appropriate target through somatotopic kinesthetic and/or somatosensory responses. In an awake patient, appropriate stimulation is delivered to the skin or by passive and active movement of the joints. This technique utilizes specialized high-impedance microelectrodes and amplifiers susceptible to interference from monitoring equipment, which may necessitate manual measurements of BP and clinical assessment of oxygenation. Anesthesia or sedation can modify neuronal activity significantly and, thus, interfere with functional mapping. For example, propofol has been shown to inhibit globus pallidus and subthalamic neurons for several minutes beyond its behavioral effects. In addition, many of these agents have been shown to change evoked potential (EP) responses, raising the possibility that they could alter stimulation thresholds for either the internal capsule or optic tract.

Thermal ablation for pallidotomy or thalamotomy typically is performed with a radiofrequency (RF) lesion generator operating at 500 kHz, which may interfere with some types of monitoring equipment; however, the ablation process only lasts 12–30 sec.

A variety of movement disorders are amenable to surgical treatment. They can be divided into akinetic (e.g., Parkinson's) and hyperkinetic (e.g., dystonias, tremor, spasticity) syndromes. Idiopathic **Parkinson's disease (PD)** is best treated with either **deep brain stimulation (DBS)** or RF ablation targeted to a functional subcomponent of either the subthalamic nucleus or globus pallidus interna (Fig. 1.2-2). Tremor syndromes are treated by targeting the ventral intermedius thalamic nucleus (**thalamotomy** or stimulation), whereas dystonias are treated by stimulation of the globus pallidus interna. **Spasticity** is not treated stereotactically, but through the administration of intrathecal baclofen (GABA-like synaptic inhibition) in the lumbar cistern via an internalized pump system. Abrupt loss of intrathecal infusion of baclofen, however, can quickly lead to a serious withdrawal syndrome with dysautonomia, circulatory collapse, and death within hours. Spasticity refractory to intrathecal baclofen may be amenable to selective dorsal root rhizotomy performed through an open laminectomy.

For **DBS,** mapping and implantation of the intracranial stimulating electrode is performed under local anesthesia to permit monitoring of behavioral and physiologic responses. A 2–3 cm linear incision (burr-hole access) or stab wound (twist-drill access) generally is placed near the coronal suture and 10–50 mm from the midline in the frontal bone. This can be accomplished under propofol sedation for patient comfort. Subsequently, minimal or no sedation is used, as patient cooperation is necessary during the functional mapping component of the case. If single-neuron recordings are used, propofol should be discontinued at least 20 min in advance of mapping because it can produce prolonged suppression of target neuronal activity. If analgesia is needed, use a low-dose (0.01–0.05 mcg/kg/min) remifentanil infusion. Local anesthetics should not contain epinephrine. Avoid central-acting β-blockers (e.g., propranolol), which suppress tremor activity in target neurons. Sedation with meperidine in patients taking selegiline is contraindicated. No dopaminergic antagonist (e.g., metoclopramide, droperidol) should be given to Parkinsonian patients or patients with dopamine-responsive dystonia. To enhance single-cell responses, withhold medications prescribed for target symptoms for 8–24 h. In some cases (e.g., Parkinson's disease), this may result in a rebound HTN requiring active treatment; however, patients will resume their medications postop (often in the postanesthesia recovery area), and the HTN will resolve. The **implantable pulse generator (IPG)** may be placed in an infraclavicular subcutaneous pocket during a separate surgical procedure or at the time of the intracranial electrode implantation. Implantation of the IPG and subcutaneous tunneling of the electrode lead can be done under MAC, but is best tolerated under GETA. To facilitate intubation, the calvarial wound is closed

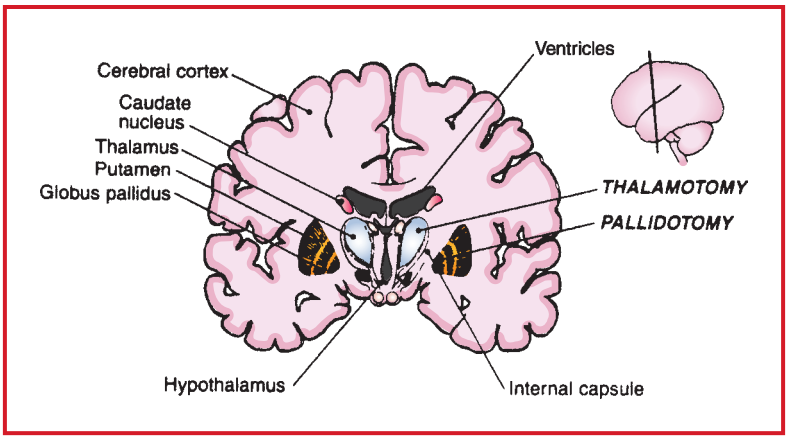


Figure 1.2-2. Anatomical locations for therapeutic lesions (thalamotomy and pallidotomy) for the surgical treatment of Parkinson's disease. Inset shows the plane of the coronal section through the diencephalon, identifying the lesions. (Reproduced with permission from Mason LJ, Cojocaru TT, Cole DJ: Surgical intervention and anesthetic management of the patient with Parkinson's disease. In: Jaffe RA, Giffard RG, eds. *International Anesthesiology Clinics: Topics in Neuroanesthesia.* Little, Brown, Boston: 1996; 4(34):141.)

temporarily, and the stereotactic localizing apparatus is removed. Closure consists of a single, interrupted suture for stab wounds or two-layer suture/staple closure for a burr hole. IPG pockets are closed in two layers. The subcutaneous layer is closed with absorbable sutures, and the skin is closed with staples or sutures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Medically intractable idiopathic PD with disabling L-dopa-induced dyskinesia, bradykinesia, or rigidity; severe fluctuations in medication responses; dystonia musculorum deformans; post-CVA dystonia; occasionally, torticollis; tremor; movement disorders

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Linear (burr holes); stab-wound (twist drill)
Unique considerations	Minimal/no sedation. BP ↑ in patients who have their antihypertensive medications withheld. Manual vital sign monitoring if electronic monitors interfere with single-cell recordings. Be aware that BP cuff or iv's may produce sensations that distract the patient during awake stimulation testing for sensory side effects.
Antibiotics + other meds	Ceftriaxone or cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	3–5 h
EBL	25–150 mL
Postop care	Continue antibiotics at surgeon's discretion, Parkinson's medications. BP may ↓. Maintain MAP <90 mm Hg to prevent postop bleeding. PACU
Mortality	<0.5%
Morbidity	Overall: 8–27% Infection: < 10% Hardware failure: Rare Intracranial hemorrhage: 3.3–6% Cognitive disturbances
Pain score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	12–80 yr; PD: 45–60 yr at onset
Male:Female	PD: M > F
Incidence	PD: 1% > 60 yr; 4% > 80 yr
Etiology	Idiopathic; genetic (10–15% will have a 1st or 2nd degree relative with PD)
Associated conditions	Dystonia; PD: Cognitive impairment, depression, dysphagia, orthostatic hypotension

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Parkinson's disease (PD) is the most common movement disorder, affecting ~1% of the population > 60 yr. It is caused by the loss of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra → ↓ dopamine (dopamine/acetylcholine imbalance) in basal ganglia → movement disorder. Medical treatment is directed primarily to restoring dopamine levels by increasing the availability of the dopamine precursor (L-dopa), inhibiting liver dopa decarboxylase (carbidopa, usually given in combination with L-dopa as Sinemet), by releasing endogenous dopamine (amantadine [Symmetrel]) and by blocking MAO-B (selegiline [Eldepryl]). Medical treatment also may include dopamine agonists (pergolide [Permax]; bromocriptine [Parlodel]), and acetylcholine antagonists (amantadine [Symmetrel], benztropine [Cogentin]) to correct the dopamine/acetylcholine imbalance. Patients presenting for surgery usually have failed medical therapy. They will have been taken off their antiparkinsonian medications 8–24 h before surgery. This will maximize their symptoms to help assess treatment effects intraop; thus, preop assessment on the day of surgery will be difficult.

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Autonomic dysfunction → esophageal dysfunction →↑ risk of aspiration. Patients typically have ↓ vital capacity 2° rigidity, dyskinesia →↓ respiratory function, and ↓ cough. Laryngospasm and respiratory failure may occur following withdrawal of antiparkinsonian medications. **Tests:** CXR; consider ABG; PFTs may be difficult to obtain.
Cardiovascular	Autonomic dysfunction → orthostatic hypotension. Dopamine replacement therapy → cardiac dysrhythmias, ↓ BP, and hypovolemia. In patients taking selegiline (MAOI): avoid meperidine →↑↑ BP, rigidity, agitation; sympathomimetics → exaggerated ↑ BP.
Neurological	The primary Sx of Parkinson's disease include rigidity, tremor, bradykinesia, muscle weakness. Secondary symptoms include dementia, depression, and speech difficulty. Patients may alternate between a state of immobility and one of exaggerated tremor (which may interfere with intraop monitoring). PD medications are sedating—modafinil may be used to improve daytime function.
Renal	Urinary retention is common.
Gastrointestinal	Autonomic dysfunction → gastroparesis, ↑ incidence of reflux. Poor nutrition. Pharyngeal muscle dysfunction → dysphagia.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P.
Premedication	None. These patients may have received small doses of fentanyl and/or midazolam to facilitate placement of the stereotactic frame. For frameless procedures, fiducial markers or mounting screws will have been placed before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: MAC, with minimal sedation limited to surgical opening and closing, as patient cooperation and typical neuronal activity are essential for the success of the procedure.

Induction	Low-dose remifentanil (0.01–0.05 mcg/kg/min), propofol (25–75 mcg/kg/min), or dexmedetomidine (0.1–0.4 mcg/kg/h) may be used for sedation during burr-hole placement. If propofol or dex is used, it should be discontinued 20–30 min before electrophysiologic recording or mapping. In the event of an airway emergency in framed procedures, a means of releasing the patient from the stereotactic frame must be readily available.	
Maintenance	BP control is important to decrease the risk of intracranial hemorrhage during passage of the recording and stimulating electrodes. If not otherwise contraindicated, MAP should be kept 10–20% below normal for that patient. This usually can be accomplished without an arterial line by using an infusion of NTG and/or esmolol titrated to effect, or by using small doses of atenolol (0.5–1 mg increments iv). Esmolol and atenolol are preferred over other parenteral β-blockers because CNS penetration is limited → minimal effect on central tremor.	
Emergence	Postop BP control can be continued by using atenolol or labetalol titrated to effect at the end of the procedure. The patient is usually transported to the PACU, then to the neurology ward for postop monitoring. Antiparkinsonian medication should be given in the PACU and may result in a further reduction in BP.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18–20 ga ×1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	For unilateral procedures, iv should be placed in the ipsilateral arm (relative to side of surgery).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	Exaggerated tremors and/or neurologic testing in these patients may interfere with monitoring. It may be helpful to place the BP cuff on a leg (less tremor). For unilateral procedures, monitors should not be placed on the contralateral arm and leg, which must be kept free for testing.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ stereotactic frame clearance	Patient comfort may be improved by placing pillows under the knees to relieve lower back strain. A massage therapist can greatly improve patient comfort during the procedure.
Complications	Intracerebral hemorrhage Loss of airway in stereotactic frame	Dx: ↓ mental status and hemiparesis. CT scan usually required to confirm Dx. Emergency craniotomy may be necessary. Rx: may require rapid removal of the stereotactic frame.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Intracranial hemorrhage Motor deficit Visual field deficit Aphasia	Intracranial hemorrhage may require emergency craniotomy. The surgeon should be notified immediately if any new deficits are noted.
Tests	None	Unless otherwise indicated.
Pain management	Usually not necessary	

Suggested Readings

1. Balachandran R, Mitchell JE, Dawant BM, Fitzpatrick JM: Accuracy evaluation of microtargeting platforms for deep-brain stimulation using virtual targets. Biomedical Engineering. *IEEE Transact* 2009; 56(1):37–44.
2. Benabid AL, Torres N: New targets for DBS. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2012; 18(Supp 1):S21–3.
3. Deuschl G, Schade-Brittinger C, Krack P, et al: A randomized trial of deep-brain stimulation for Parkinson's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2006; 355(9):896–908.
4. Fasano A, Daniele A, Albanese A: Treatment of motor and non-motor features of Parkinson's disease with deep brain stimulation. *Lancet Neurol* 2012; 11(5):429–42.

5. Heit G, Murphy G, Jaffe R, Golby A, Silverberg GS: The effects of propofol on human globus pallidus neurons. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg* 1997; 67(1–2):74.
6. Holloway KL, Gaede S, Starr PA, Rosenow JM, Ramakrishnan V, Henderson JM: Frameless stereotaxy using bone fiducial markers for deep brain stimulation. *J Neurosurg* 2005; 103:404–13.
7. Joint C, Nandi D, Parkin S, Gregory R, Aziz T: Hardware-related problems of deep brain stimulation. *Move Disord* 2002; 17(Suppl 3):S175–80.
8. Krack P, Fraiz V, Mendes A, et al: Postoperative management of subthalamic nucleus stimulation for Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2002; 17(Suppl 3):S188–97.
9. MacIver MB, Hill BC, Henderson JM, Bronte-Stewart JM, Jaffe RA, Brock-Utne JG: Human subthalamic neuron spiking exhibits subtle response to sedatives. *Anesthesiology* 2011; 115:254–64.
10. Moro E, Lang AE: Criteria for deep-brain stimulation in Parkinson's disease: review and analysis. *Expert Rev Neurother* 2006; 6(11):1695–705.
11. Pereira EA, Green AL, Nandi D, Aziz TZ: Deep brain stimulation: indications and evidence. *Expert Rev Med Devices* 2007; 4(5):591–603.
12. Rozet I: Anesthesia for functional neurosurgery: the role of dexmedetomidine. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2008; 21(5):537–43.
13. Tierney TS, Sankar T, Lozano AM: Deep brain stimulation emerging indications. *Prog Brain Res* 2011; 194:83–95.

SURGICAL ANALGESICS: SPINAL CORD STIMULATION, INTRATHECAL PUMPS, AND CORTICAL STIMULATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Chronic pain arises from a variety of etiologies. It can involve both neuropathic and nociceptive processes and occur in a variety of anatomical distributions (e.g., radicular versus a hemibody pattern). Therapeutic interventions are dictated by the pathophysiology of the pain, its qualitative nature, etiology, and the patient's prognosis. Many common procedures for chronic pain are directed at the spinal cord and may consist of epidural or intrathecal medications or electrical stimulation.

For **chronic spinal cord stimulation** (e.g., postlaminectomy syndrome) an epidural electrode is implanted either percutaneously or via an open laminectomy. **Percutaneous electrodes** are easier to implant and have less associated surgical pain. The surgical electrode (implanted via laminectomy) confers greater mechanical stability in the epidural space. In addition, given its larger contact size, it can generate higher current densities with less drain on the implanted system. For percutaneous electrodes, a small skin incision is made two to three vertebral levels caudal to the target region of the spinal cord. For **"surgical paddle" electrodes,** the skin incision is made one to two levels caudal to the target zone of the spinal cord, and a laminectomy is performed to provide access to the epidural space. Incisions are closed in the standard fashion.

Most percutaneous electrode placements and some paddle electrode placements are done awake so that intraoperative test stimulation can be performed. The procedures are done in the prone or lateral position with consequent implications for airway management in the sedated patient. Localization of the electrodes is accomplished initially based on radiographic criteria; however, these localizations are only approximate, and it is recommended that the electrode placement be confirmed by intraop stimulation. The patient needs to be sufficiently alert to communicate the quality, distribution, and intensity of the stimulation-induced paresthesias. Surgical paddle placement requires a variable extent of muscle dissection and laminectomy, which may be done under general anesthesia or with epidural anesthesia for patient comfort. If done under general anesthesia, response to paddle test stimulation may be measured by manual palpation of musculature stimulated at higher test voltage, and/or using intraoperative electrophysiologic monitoring. To assess efficacy, the electrode may be externalized and percutaneous stimulation used for assessment. If there is ≥ 50% reduction in pain, the patient may return to the OR for internalization of the implantable pulse generator (IPG). Postop, these patients can have an exacerbation of pain, particularly if neuropathic in nature. They may require iv lidocaine or ketamine infusions to return them to their preop baseline, even with a functioning and appropriately located stimulating electrode.

For **pain of central origin** (e.g., poststroke, multiple sclerosis, and trigeminal nerve pathology), surgical procedures are often directed at the thalamus and cortex. Thalamic interventions include stereotactic insertion of stimulating electrodes into sensory thalamus. **Thalamic DBS** requires awake mapping of the somatotopic representation of the affected body part through either microelectrode mapping or stimulation-induced paresthesias. For medically intractable neuropathic pain syndromes, **epidural motor cortex stimulation** has shown mixed results. Functional mapping of the motor cortex for epidural stimulation can be done with anatomical and physiological mapping under GA via a craniotomy, with the anesthetic tailored to minimize interference with EP recording. The incision consists of a 5–10 cm linear or 5 × 10 cm trapezoidal incision placed over and paralleling the motor cortex.

Identification of the appropriate location on the motor strip can be done initially with epidural mapping using SSEPs elicited from the part of the body where the pain originates. In cases of denervation syndromes, SSEP may not be present, and the minimum intensity point for epidural stimulation-induced movements is used. In rare cases, the surgeon may elect to perform the surgery awake to facilitate mapping. To assess efficacy, the electrode may be externalized and percutaneous stimulation assessed for overall therapeutic efficacy. If there is ≥ 50% reduction in pain, the patient will return to the OR for internalization of the IPG. Closure consists of calvarial reconstruction with externalization of leads. The craniotomy incision is closed in the standard fashion. If a percutaneous trial is done, the IPG implant requires a second GETA with reopening of wounds.

The mainstay of surgical treatment of trigeminal neuralgia is **microvascular decompression of the trigeminal nerve** in the prepontine cistern (see p. 44). In patients who are poor surgical candidates, treatment is accomplished with ablative procedures aimed at the gasserian ganglia, using chemolytic, mechanical, or RF techniques. Patients who fail gasserian ganglion interventions or have atypical facial pain may be candidates for **thalamic DBS** or **motor cortex stimulation.** Stereotactic radiosurgical techniques are increasingly utilized as an ablative treatment for trigeminal neuralgia, particularly in the elderly (> 65 yr old) population or in other surgically averse candidates. Radiosurgery employs highly focused beams of radiation to partially ablate the intracisternal portion of the trigeminal nerve while sparing surrounding structures (brain stem and other cranial nerves). The downside to radiosurgery is that the effects and consequent pain relief may take weeks to months to manifest, as opposed to other surgical and ablative treatments whose effects are immediate.

For pain unresponsive to spinal cord stimulation or because of unacceptable side effects of parental medications, continuous intrathecal administration of analgesics can be accomplished with an **implantable medication delivery system.** An incision is made over the L3–L4, L4–L5, or L5–S1 spinous process and a second incision is placed in the RLQ of the abdomen. An intrathecal catheter is then placed and anchored to the lumbodorsal fascia. A tunneling tool is used to bring the catheter from the lumbar spinal region to the abdomen. This tunneling procedure is rarely tolerated without GETA or deep sedation. A reservoir or continuous-delivery pump is then placed in the abdomen and attached to the catheter. Both incisions are closed in two layers.

Intrathecal narcotics (typically morphine) can produce satisfactory results because therapeutic drug concentrations can be achieved at the level of spinal opiate receptors without influencing higher CNS opiate systems. This therapeutic intervention can be assessed through a percutaneous catheter trial. Patients who experience ≥ 50% reduction in pain are candidates for a **totally implanted pump system.** These are low-morbidity procedures (5–10%) with infections and hardware failures constituting the greatest problems. Abrupt cessation of medications—through either patient noncompliance with refill schedules (10–12 wk) or hardware failure—however, can lead to a serious withdrawal syndrome.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic pain

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Prone/lateral
Incision	2–3 levels above target area (spinal cord stimulation) + laminectomy; L3, 4, 5 (intrathecal pump) + 2nd incision RLQ of abdomen.
Unique considerations	Patient communication important; therefore, avoid oversedation. Copious use of local anesthetics (avoid overdosing).
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	1.5–3 h
EBL	25 mL
Postop care	May have ↑ pain during recovery period
Mortality	< 0.5%
Morbidity	Overall: 5–10% Infection Hardware failure Withdrawal Sx
Pain score	3–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–75 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Iatrogenic; neuropathic; traumatic
Associated conditions	Opiate dependency

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients with chronic pain often present unique challenges to the anesthesiologist and surgeon. They may be intolerant of any additional pain (e.g., iv placement, positioning on the OR table, postop pain) and seemingly immune to typical doses of systemic analgesics while remaining vulnerable to respiratory depression. In most cases, patients should continue their usual pain medications and co-analgesics until ~2 h before surgery. Typically any transdermal fentanyl patch should be left in place unless its location will be subject to intraoperative heating, compression, or other manipulation. A detailed h/o of patient pain, effective (and ineffective) pain management techniques and drugs, and the current medication regime (including the use of both over and under the counter drugs and herbals) is essential.

Respiratory	Chronic pain → ↓ physical activity → ↓ respiratory reserve.
Cardiovascular	Ventricular dysrhythmias have been associated with methadone at doses > 200 mg/day. Chronic pain → ↓ physical activity → ↓ cardiovascular reserve.
Neurological	A careful neurologic assessment is essential to detect preexisting deficits.
Psychological	These patients often benefit from a detailed explanation of the surgical and anesthetic procedures including expectations and contingency plans for intraop pain management if an awake procedure is planned. These patients may have a higher incidence of co-existing psychiatric disease and often have high scores on standardized measures of hysteria and hypochondria. Patients on serotonergic drugs or antipsychotic medication may develop serotonin syndrome or neuroleptic malignant syndrome (hyperthermia, muscle rigidity, encephalopathy, autonomic dysfunction).
Gastrointestinal	Chronic opioid use may →↓ gastric emptying and ↓ GI motility with chronic constipation. Inactivity 2° chronic pain → obesity.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P. For patients on anticonvulsants, drug levels are useful to exclude toxic effects.
Premedication	Chronic opioid use may make the patients at risk for gastric aspiration 2° ↓ bowel motility. Consider metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv 30 min preinduction with Na citrate 30 mL po on transport to the OR. Midazolam iv titrated to effect can be beneficial.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The placement of intrathecal pumps and cortical stimulators is often best accomplished under GA using anesthetic techniques appropriate for spinal or intracranial procedures. Accurate electrode placement may require an awake patient during at least a portion of the procedure. For intracranial electrode placement, see the anesthetic technique for awake craniotomy (p. 34). These same general principles can also be used for spinal cord electrode placement, although regional techniques are usually simpler and just as effective.

Thoracic epidural	Following the application of standard monitors and with an iv catheter in place, the patient should be seated carefully on the edge of the operating table. Provide support for feet and arms as necessary. The epidural injection should be at the level of the surgery (usually 2–3 levels below the electrode target site). A single bolus injection of 10 mL of 0.75% bupivacaine usually provides excellent surgical anesthesia without compromising the ability to map the more rostral portion of the spinal cord. It is important to avoid oversedation and to minimize the use of systemic analgesics in order to ensure accurate spinal cord mapping.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga ×1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	After replacement of preop deficit
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Positioning	Prone ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	The patient should self-position on bolsters (hips and upper chest) or Wilson frame.
Complications	Spinal cord injury Serotonin syndrome (SS) vs neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)	May be precipitated by meperidine, droperidol, metoclopramide, oxycodone among others. Ddx can be difficult. Dantrolene may be effective for NMS but not for SS.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Spinal cord injury Epidural hematoma Respiratory distress Drug withdrawal symptoms	Prompt postop neurologic assessment is essential. May occur in response to the patient's usual opiate dose if the spinal stimulation has produced significant pain relief.
Tests	None unless otherwise indicated	Surgeons may request specific tests.
Pain management	Typically complex and multimodal	Patient often intolerant of postop pain while remaining susceptible to narcotic overdose. Acute pain service consult recommended.

Suggested Readings

1. Brill S, Ginosar Y, Davidson EM: Perioperative management of chronic pain patients with opioid dependency. *Curr Opin Anaesth* 2006; 19:325–31.
2. Farrell C, McConaghy P: Perioperative management of patients taking treatment for chronic pain. *BMJ* 2012; 3(345):e4148.
3. North RB: Spinal cord stimulation patient selection. In: Burchiel KJ, ed. *Surgical Management of Pain.* Thieme Medical Pub, New York: 2002, 527–34.
4. Pagura JR, Rabello JR, Cerueira de Lima W: Microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia. In: Gildenberg PL, Tasker RK, eds. *Textbook of Stereotactic and Functional Neurosurgery.* McGraw Hill, New York: 1998, 1715–21.
5. Perry PJ, Wilborn CA: Serotonin syndrome vs neuroleptic malignant syndrome: a contrast of causes, diagnoses, and management. *Ann Clin Psychiatry* 2012; 24(2):155–62.
6. Tsubokawa T: Motor cortex stimulation for the relief of central deafferented pain. In: Burchiel KJ, ed. *Surgical Management of Pain.* Thieme Medical Pub, New York: 2002, 555–64.

VAGUS NERVE STIMULATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The surgical treatment of medically intractable epilepsy consists of either **surgical resection** of the epileptic site (see p. 83) or **vagus nerve stimulation (VNS).** For patients who are not candidates for resective surgery, VNS can be a viable surgical strategy. Although it is a low-morbidity procedure, its efficacy also is

low. VNS tends to produce a 50% or greater reduction of Sz in ~48% of patients after 18 mo of stimulation. By contrast, **temporal lobectomy** (often with amygdalohippocampectomy) for patients with medial temporal lobe epilepsy has an 80–85% chance of seizure freedom in carefully selected patients whose seizures are refractory to medications. Surgery for **extratemporal epilepsy** originating in neocortex has a 50% chance of making the patient seizure-free, in the absence of a structural lesion. (If an anatomical abnormality is present, then that figure increases to ~75%.) In general, the complication rate is ~7%, dependent on the exact location of the Sz focus and its relationship to eloquent cortex.

Left vagus nerve stimulation is also used to treat some types of medically refractory **depression**. As with its use in epilepsy, the exact mechanism of action remains unclear.

Two incisions are used for VNS: one left anterior cervical, placed approximately at the C6–C7 level, with a second incision in the left infraclavicular region for placement of the implantable pulse generator (IPG). Most surgeons perform the procedure through a carotid-type incision and place the IPG caudally through blunt dissection. The left vagus nerve is isolated, and the electrode assembly is wrapped around the nerve below the origin of the superior and inferior cervical cardiac branches. During surgery, the interface between the vagus nerve and the electrode is tested with electrical stimulation. Fortunately, this is associated with a very low incidence of bradycardia and extremely rare reports of asystole. All resolve with cessation of stimulation and administration of atropine. The surgeon should inform the anesthesiologist when vagus stimulation is about to begin. The incisions are closed using the standard technique; however, because many patients are developmentally delayed, the final skin layer is often closed with a subcutaneous technique that does not require subsequent suture removal.

Usual preop diagnosis: Partial onset seizures refractory to medication; chronic or recurrent depression refractory to other medical treatment

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior cervical (C6–7) + infraclavicular pocket (for IPG)
Unique considerations	Possible bradycardia → asystole during stimulation testing
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	1.5 h
EBL	<50 mL
Postop care	Observe for ↑ Sz activity postop × 8 h
Mortality	<0.5%
Morbidity	Hoarseness: ~50%, may be 2° nerve injury or fatigue, device malfunction Cough: ~40% in first 3 mo after surgery Infection: 2% Dysphagia during stimulation →↑ aspiration risk Dyspnea during stimulation; patients with OSA may have ↑ apneic events Nerve/vascular injury (similar to carotid surgery)
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	12–80 yr (≥18 yr for treatment of depression)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	20–40% of epilepsy patients are medically refractory
Etiology	Idiopathic, typically
Associated conditions	Developmental delay; severe depression

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Antiepileptic medications can control seizure disorders in most (~70%) patients, but some develop intolerable side effects; others are refractory to medical therapy. Surgical resection of the Sz focus may be the only effective therapy for some patients. For patients who are not candidates for surgical resections, the placement of a vagus nerve stimulator may be a viable alternative. These patients typically take multiple antiepileptic medications that should be continued throughout the morning of surgery. These same general considerations are also applicable to patients with refractory depression.

Neurologic	The only common neurological finding in epilepsy patients is a Hx of uncontrollable Sz, either focal or generalized. Obtain a description of Sz and any prodromal Sx.
Psychiatric	Medications used to treat depression (e.g., MAOIs, SSRIs) may have significant interactions with other drugs (e.g., meperidine → serotonin syndrome). Antiepileptic medications may have additive effects with anesthetics, and significantly alter the pharmacodynamics of other drugs (e.g., ↓ duration of NMB).
Gastrointestinal	Abnormal liver function may be associated with use of valproate and carbamazepine. **Tests:** LFT and others as indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Phenytoin/phenobarbital → ↓ Hct; carbamazepine/valproate/ethosuximide/primidone → ↓ Plt; carbamazepine/primidone → ↓ WBC. **Tests:** CBC and others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1) is usually appropriate.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Chronic use of antiepileptic medications may cause hepatic enzyme induction → accelerated drug metabolism; resistance to muscle relaxants including succinylcholine.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Once anesthesia is induced, a nondepolarizing NMR is administered.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-2). Generally, no further NMBs are administered beyond those used for tracheal intubation. Hyperventilation may promote Sz activity. Sevoflurane and enflurane can induce epileptiform EEG activity.	
Emergence	No special considerations. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg) should be given 30–60 min before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Possibility of injury to carotid artery or jugular vein may result in significant blood loss.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-2). EEG monitoring not necessary	O_2 sat and $ETCO_2$ monitoring will indicate the adequacy of ventilation and oxygenation.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Head turned to the right with neck extension
Complications	Asystole Bronchospasm Sz Vascular injury	Rarely (<1%), the SA node is innervated by the left vagus nerve. In those patients, vagal stimulation may result in severe bradycardia or asystole. Rx: stop stimulation; atropine 0.5 mg iv ± CPR. Bronchospasm may occur as a result at vagal nerve stimulation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Seizure Vocal cord paralysis Hoarseness Peritracheal hematoma	Sz precautions may be necessary. Monitor carefully for altered mental status. Airway obstruction may occur.
Pain management	Usually mild discomfort	Rx: See p. C-3.
Tests	No routine tests	

Suggested Readings

1. Augustinsson LE, Ben-Menachem E: Vagal nerve stimulation for the treatment of refractory seizures. In: Gildenberg PL, Tasker RK, eds. *Textbook of Stereotactic and Functional Neurosurgery.* McGraw Hill, New York: 1998, 1715–21.
2. Connor DE Jr, Nixon M, Nanda A, Guthikonda B: Vagal nerve stimulation for the treatment of medically refractory epilepsy: a review of the current literature. *Neurosurg Focus* 2012; 32(3):E12.
3. Hatton KW, McLarney JT, Pittman T, Fahy BG: Vagal nerve stimulation: overview and implications for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg* 2006; 103(5):1241–9.
4. Multon S, Schoenen J: Pain control by vagus nerve stimulation: from animal to man...and back. *Acta Neurol Belg* 2005; 105(2):62–7.
5. Perks A, Cheema S, Mohanraj R: Anaesthesia and epilepsy. *Br J Anaesth* 2012; 108(4):562–71.
6. Rizvi SJ, Donovan M, et al: Neurostimulation therapies for treatment resistant depression: a focus on vagus nerve stimulation and deep brain stimulation. *Int Rev Psychiatry* 2011; 23(5):424–36.

EPILEPSY SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Lawrence M. Shuer

Description: In the United States, the prevalence of epilepsy is ~5–20/1,000 (0.5–2%), meaning that at least 1.5 million people have epilepsy. In childhood, the incidence and prevalence are higher, with 90% of all new cases occurring before the age of 20. Intractable epilepsy is defined as persistent seizure activity of such frequency or severity that it prevents normal function and/or development. This diagnosis is made only after an adequate trial of anticonvulsant medication(s), with therapeutic levels, has been documented. Of all those with epilepsy, 10–20% prove to be intractable; it is estimated that ~20–30% of patients with intractable epilepsy may benefit from a surgical procedure.

The causes of epilepsy are varied, ranging from idiopathic to neoplastic. Epilepsy surgery is most beneficial in patients with partial epilepsy 2° a structural lesion. Most commonly, this lesion is located in the temporal lobe, and the most common operation is a **temporal lobectomy,** in both children and adults. Cerebral dominance and, hence, the location of speech, may be determined using a preop Wada test (intracarotid amobarbital or other anesthetic injection to localize language function). Functional MRI mapping of speech centers is replacing this invasive test at many centers. Studies to define the epileptogenic focus include simultaneous recordings of video/EEG and high-resolution MRI and PET scans. Temporal lobe surgery may involve removal of only the structural lesion and associated epileptogenic cortex, cortical resection alone, excision of the amygdala and hippocampus, or removal of the entire anterior temporal lobe, with the extent of posterior resection dependent on dominance. Depending on the local protocol, intraop electrocorticography may be used, requiring modification of the anesthetic technique. In addition, the speech center may need to be identified intraop, necessitating an awake procedure. These differing options will significantly alter the choice of anesthesia and must be established before surgery.

For a standard **temporal lobectomy,** the patient is placed supine on the operating table with the head turned 90° and held with pin fixation. A "question mark" temporal incision is often used, and hemostasis is achieved with skin clips.

A flap—either a free temporal bone flap or an osteoplastic flap, based on the temporalis muscle—is elevated with a high-speed craniotome. A **subtemporal craniectomy** allows visualization of the entire anterior temporal lobe. The dura is opened, widely exposing the anterior 6–6.5 cm of the temporal lobe. Labbe's vein must be preserved. At this point, surface and/or depth electrocorticography may be employed, and **inhalation anesthetics must not be used.** After mapping the lesion, amygdala and hippocampus or anterior temporal lobe is removed. Temporal lobectomy involves resection of both the lateral and medial temporal structures and is commonly performed in two steps. Often an operating microscope will be used to completely resect medial structures, including the uncus and hippocampal formation. Injury to the brain stem, 3rd and 4th cranial nerves, and either the middle cerebral or posterior cerebral arteries can occur; these are known complications of this surgery. Closure of the dura, bone flap, and scalp concludes the surgery.

Variant procedure or approaches: There are four common variant procedures. The first is sectioning of the corpus callosum, known as a **corpus callosotomy.** This is commonly used for patients with atonic seizures or partial seizures with secondary generalization. Either the anterior two-thirds or the entire corpus callosum is divided in the midline. The approach is the same as any transcallosal, intraventricular procedure and uses a bifrontal, paramedian scalp incision and elevation of free-bone flap adjacent to the midline in the region of the coronal suture. Injury to the sagittal sinus is possible and may result in massive VAE or hemorrhage. In addition, numerous bridging veins across the interhemispheric fissure must be preserved to avoid venous congestion and possible infarction. The right cerebral hemisphere is gently retracted from the falx, exposing the paired anterior cerebral arteries and underlying corpus callosum. If an anterior two-thirds transection is performed, an intraop x-ray is required to determine the posterior border.

The second variant involves either a **frontal, temporal,** or **occipital craniotomy** for resection of a structural, epileptogenic focus, such as a tumor or AVM. This procedure may use **stereotaxic localization,** and the resultant craniotomy may be performed with image guidance or in a stereotaxic head frame, which affects the method of intubation. The subsequent craniotomy is similar to the excision of any structural lesion, with the exception of intraop electrocorticography of surrounding cortex, which if used will affect the choice of anesthetic.

The third variant is most common and consists of a diagnostic procedure involving placement of **surface and/or depth electrodes.** This may be performed with or without stereotaxic localization. Often only burr holes, outlining the future craniotomy flap, are used. After placement, the electrodes are externalized, and postop the patient's naturally occurring Sz are recorded, in conjunction with video monitoring, to register the clinical presentation with the onset of ictal activity. This recording/observation period may last for several days. The patient is then returned to the OR and the epileptogenic focus resected as described earlier.

The fourth alternative is **selective amygdalohippocampectomy,** a variation of the standard anterior temporal lobectomy. In this procedure, the surgeon makes a cortical incision in the anterior temporal lobe and exposes and resects the amygdala and hippocampus, sparing the remaining portions of the temporal lobe. This procedure is sometimes used on the dominant side of the brain in an effort to lower the risk of postop speech and language dysfunction.

Usual preop diagnosis: Temporal lobe epilepsy; partial epilepsy; intractable epilepsy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, rarely prone for occipital lesions; table turned 180°
Incision	Temporal question mark, reverse question mark, paramedian, frontal, or occipital
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; Cavitron; bipolar cautery; surface electrode grids and strips; depth electrode
Unique considerations	Electrocorticography requiring neuroleptic anesthesia; awake procedures for mapping of temporal and/or frontal speech areas; stereotaxic craniotomy and lesionectomy
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1 g iv (avoid administration with calcium-containing solutions)
Surgical time	3 h
EBL	Minimal for diagnostic procedures; 250–500 mL with craniotomy (adults)
Postop care	After craniotomy, ICU for 12–24 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Mortality	<1%
Morbidity	Hemiplegia Dysphasia Ophthalmoplegia Brain stem injury
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	New onset Sz: pediatric (< 2 yr) and geriatric (> 65 yr) populations most commonly
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	200,000/yr (new cases of epilepsy): ~10% eventually present for surgery/yr
Etiology	Idiopathic (mesial temporal sclerosis); infectious (brain abscess, encephalitis); traumatic (glial scar); vascular (AVM, infarct); neoplastic (glioma, hamartoma, ganglioglioma); congenital (cortical dysplasia)
Associated conditions	Tuberous sclerosis; Sturge-Weber syndrome; infantile hemiplegia; encephalitis; hemimegalencephaly; infections; tumors; trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Epilepsy is a common neurologic disorder among young adults. Antiepileptic medications will abolish seizure disorders in most patients, but some develop intolerable side effects to such medications; others are refractory to medical therapy. Surgical ablation of the seizure focus may be the only effective therapy for these patients if they are to become self-sufficient. Several operations may be done, the most common being placement of surface or depth electrodes to determine the focus of the Sz, with subsequent temporal lobectomy for removal of the focus. In some cases, the lesion may be very focal and amenable to stereotactic localization and removal. At some centers both seizure mapping and resection are carried out during the course of an awake craniotomy (see p. 34). If wake-up testing is planned, the procedure should be explained to the patient in detail, including what the patient can expect to hear and feel during the test.

Neurological	Usually the only neurological finding is a Hx of uncontrollable seizures, either focal or generalized. Obtain a description of Sz and any prodromal Sx. Sz medications should be continued through the morning of surgery. Antiepileptic medications may have additive effects with anesthetics, and significantly alter the pharmacodynamics of other drugs (e.g. ↓ duration of NMB). **Tests:** A preop Wada test (intracarotid injection of anesthetic) and/or fMRI mapping is performed to determine whether the area of proposed surgery has any cerebral dominance or speech function.
Gastrointestinal	Abnormal liver function may be associated with valproate and carbamazepine use. **Tests:** LFT and others as indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Phenytoin/phenobarbital →↓ Hct; Carbamazepine/valproate/ethosuximide/primidone →↓ Plt; Carbamazepine/primidone →↓ WBC **Tests:** CBC and others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1) is usually appropriate.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA (± wake-up testing), conscious sedation (sometimes called neurolept anesthesia) or local anesthesia (awake craniotomy). Typically, the placement of surface or depth electrodes is done under GETA, as is a temporal lobectomy in the nondominant hemisphere. If the seizure focus is in the dominant hemisphere and/or if there is any question about possible injury to speech or motor areas, the procedure may be performed under local anesthesia (awake craniotomy, see p. 34), with intraop localization of the seizure focus.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). After anesthesia is induced, a nondepolarizing neuromuscular relaxant is administered. If a difficult intubation is anticipated (e.g., stereotactic frame), orotracheal intubation is best accomplished before induction of GA. An awake fiberoptic intubation is the best technique (see p. I-2).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Generally, no further NMBs are administered beyond that used for tracheal intubation. With adequate anesthesia, and the head fixed in pins (Mayfield-Kees skeletal fixation), patient movement of any consequence is highly unlikely. Furthermore, it may be useful to see movement of an extremity as an indicator of inadequate depth of anesthesia.
Emergence	No special considerations. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv, ±metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv) should be given 30 min before extubation. Surgeon should infiltrate wound with 0.5% bupivacaine (max = ~30 mL) or 0.75% ropivacaine (max = ~40 mL) with epinephrine (1:200K) to improve postop analgesia.
Conscious sedation	Most commonly accomplished using infusions of propofol (25–75 mcg/kg/min) with remifentanil (0.02–0.05 mcg/kg/min) or dexmedetomidine (1 mcg/kg load over 10 min + 0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/hr infusion).

Wake-up testing: At some institutions, an asleep-awake-asleep technique is used in which the patient is placed under GETA for positioning and craniotomy. After surgical exposure of the seizure area, the patient is allowed to awaken to assess neurologic function while areas of the brain are stimulated. When the seizure focus has been adequately delineated, GA is reinstituted for the remainder of the operation. An excellent anesthetic technique under these circumstances includes the use of sevoflurane (± 50% N_2O) for amnesia, and remifentanil (0.05–2 mcg/kg/min) by continuous infusion for analgesia. The advantage of these drugs is that they are quickly eliminated, allowing for rapid emergence for the awake component of the procedure, followed by rapid reinduction of anesthesia when the testing period is over. To allow the patient to talk during the awake portion of the procedure, the ETT must be removed. This is best accomplished by inserting a small or medium-sized tube changer through the ETT before it is removed. The tube changer can then be used as a guide for reinsertion of the ETT, and it will not prevent normal vocalization by the patient during the awake phase. Alternatively, an LMA can be used to secure the airway initially, removed for the awake testing and reinserted for closure.

Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 18 ga ×2 NS @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Two iv cannulae are useful: one for fluid administration, another for infusion of anesthetic and other drugs. Alternatively, one peripheral iv and a CVP catheter are inserted. Blood transfusions are seldom needed.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line ± CVP line UO	O_2 sat and $ETCO_2$ monitoring will indicate the adequacy of ventilation and oxygenation in awake patients.
Positioning	Table rotated 180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Semisitting position with head held in Mayfield-Kees 3-pin clamp and rotated laterally with a roll under the shoulder on the operative side. Anesthetic hoses and intravascular lines must be long enough to be accessible.
Complications	Anxiety/agitation Sz	Local anesthetic toxicity may produce agitation and seizures. Iced NS should be immediately available to flood cortical surface for Sz control.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Seizure/cerebral edema Bleeding	Monitor carefully for altered mental status. May require urgent reexploration and removal of electrode grid if present.
Pain management	Codeine 30–60 mg im q 4 h PCA (selected patients)	Avoid oversedation. LA infiltration of the incision effectively reduces postop pain. Hydromorphone PCA (e.g., 0.2–0.4 mg, 5–10 min lockout) combined with ondansetron 4 mg iv q 4 h
Tests	CT scan	If a patient exhibits any delay in emergence from anesthesia and surgery, or any new neurologic deficits appear, a CT scan is invariably obtained.

Suggested Readings

1. Duncan JS: Epilepsy surgery. *Clin Med* 2007; 7(2):137–42.
2. Kofke WA: Anesthetic management of the patient with epilepsy or prior seizures. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2010; 23(3):391–3.
3. NIH Consensus Development Conference: Consensus statement: surgery for epilepsy. *JAMA* 1990; 264:729–33.
4. Perks A, Cheema S, Mohanraj R: Anaesthesia and epilepsy. *Br J Anaesth* 2012; 108(4):562–71.
5. Soriano SG, Bozza P: Anesthesia for epilepsy surgery in children. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2006; 22(8):834–43.
6. Tanriverdi T, Poulin N, Olivier A: Life 12 years after temporal lobe epilepsy surgery: a long-term prospective clinical study. *Seizure* 2008; 17(4):339–49.
7. Zimmerman RS, Sirven JI: An overview of surgery for chronic seizures. *Mayo Clinic Proc* 2003; 78(1):109–17.

SURGERY FOR SPASTICITY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Neurologic conditions associated with spasticity of the extremities include spinal cord injury, multiple sclerosis, stroke, etc. The spasticity is often managed with oral medications. An alternative approach is to infuse baclofen (GABA-agonist that decreases frequency and amplitude of tonic impulses to the muscle spindles) into the spinal subarachnoid space via an implanted pump. When these therapeutic modalities fail, it may be necessary to perform surgery. Some of the procedures are destructive in that a lesion is placed in certain nerves or the spinal cord to destroy the reflex arc that is contributing to the spasticity. There are both percutaneous and open techniques for placing the lesion. In the **open procedures,** a **laminectomy** is performed (see Posterior Lumbar Spine Surgery, p. 122). In a case where a **myelotomy** is to be performed, the lower spinal cord is exposed and incised at the appropriate location to interrupt the reflex arc. In certain cases, selective electrical stimulation can be performed on isolated dorsal rootlets from the involved extremity. Abnormal responses in the extremities are monitored via EMG and direct observation. When abnormal responses are detected, that particular rootlet is divided (**selective dorsal rhizotomy**). This procedure is somewhat tedious and requires that stable anesthetic conditions be maintained so that motor and sensory nerve monitoring can be carried out during the procedure. The surgeon usually must sacrifice 50–75% of the dorsal rootlets in cases of spastic diplegia found in cerebral palsy. Selective dorsal rootlet rhizotomy reduces spasticity by decreasing facilitatory input to spinal motor neurons.

Variant procedure or approaches: Percutaneous **RF rhizotomy** is another procedure used for spasticity. A thermal lesion is placed in the appropriate dorsal roots with an RF generator. Needles are passed into the neural foramen via a posterolateral trajectory for levels L1–L5 and then from a midline approach to the S1 root. The needle position is determined by A-P and lateral fluoroscopy and by stimulus mapping. Stimulating current is delivered via an electrode passed through the needle. A low-level stimulating current causes muscle twitching in the appropriate leg if the needle is in the proper location. Once placed and verified, the RF generator is used to produce the lesion. At the termination of this procedure, the patient's legs should be flaccid. Patients with spinal cord injury producing anesthesia below T10 may not require additional anesthetic for the procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Spasticity; multiple sclerosis; spinal cord injury

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open Rhizotomy or Myelotomy	RF Rhizotomy
Position	Prone	⇐
Incision	Midline	Needles placed in lumbar region
Special instrumentation	EMG monitor; nerve stimulator	RF generator; fluoroscope
Unique considerations	Anesthetic that allows EMG recordings/no muscle relaxation	May not require anesthesia if anesthetic below waist (2° spinal cord surgery).
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 1 g iv (avoid co-administration with calcium-containing solutions)	None
Surgical time	4 h	2 h
Closing considerations	Surgeon may wish to test dural closure with Valsalva maneuver.	
EBL	50–250 mL	Negligible
Postop care	Head flat; PACU room	⇐
Mortality	<1%	⇐
Morbidity	All <5%: CSF leak Infection Hemorrhage Neurological impairment	⇐
Pain score	4	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–55 yr
Male:Female	~3:2
Incidence	Relatively uncommon neurosurgical procedure
Etiology	Hyperactivity of gamma stretch reflex
Associated conditions	Multiple sclerosis; cerebral palsy; spinal cord injury

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Surgical Correction of Spinal Dysraphism, Pediatric Neurosurgery, p. 1184.

Suggested Readings

1. Kennemore DE: Percutaneous electrocoagulation of spinal nerves for the relief of pain and spasticity. In: *Radionics Procedure Technique Series.* Radionics, Burlington, MA: 1978.
2. Peacock WJ, Staudt LA, Nuwer MR: A neurosurgical approach to spasticity: selective posterior rhizotomy. In: Wilkins RH, Rengachary SS, eds. *Neurosurgery Update,* Vol II. McGraw-Hill, New York: 1991, 403–7.
3. Steinbok P: Selective dorsal rhizotomy for spastic cerebral palsy: a review. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2007; 23(9):981–90.
4. Turner RP: Neurophysiologic intraoperative monitoring during selective dorsal rhizotomy. *J Clin Neurophysiol* 2009; 26(2):82–4.

PERCUTANEOUS PROCEDURES FOR TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Lawrence M. Shuer

Description: Three percutaneous procedures are commonly used to treat trigeminal neuralgia (a well-defined pain disorder of the face). Each involves placing a needle percutaneously from the cheek into the foramen ovale at the base of the skull under iv anesthetic. For **glycerol injection** (rarely used), it is necessary for the surgeon to verify that the needle is placed in the cistern of the trigeminal (AKA Gasserian) ganglion. This usually is done via I.I. or x-ray films with contrast instilled into the cistern by the surgeon. There should be free flow of CSF through the needle. The patient is then placed in the seated position with head flexed, and sterile glycerol is injected into the cistern (a painful event). The patient is taken to the recovery room sitting up with the head still flexed for 1 h. The glycerol damages neurons in the ganglion, which usually causes mild sensory loss and relieves the tic pain in most cases. **Percutaneous balloon compression** of the ganglion is a procedure done in some centers for this condition. The needle is placed similarly to the previously mentioned procedure, but in this case, a balloon catheter is placed through the needle, and the balloon is inflated after it is successfully located in the Gasserian ganglion cistern. The patient may be kept sedated throughout this procedure. Compression of the ganglion will relieve the pain in many patients.

Radiofrequency (RF) rhizotomy is the most common percutaneous procedure used for trigeminal neuralgia. This procedure differs from glycerol injection in that a RF generator is used to place a thermal lesion in the appropriate portion of the Gasserian ganglion. The needle is actually an insulated electrode with a portion of the tip exposed. The proper needle position is determined by applying stimulating current, with the patient awake, while assessing patient's responses. Multiple brief periods of anesthesia will be required to adjust the needle position or to lesion the nerve. It is important for the patient to awaken quickly and be able to cooperate with the stimulus localization throughout this procedure. This same approach may be used to place a stimulating electrode in the ganglion **(ganglionic stimulation)** with the leads subsequently tunneled to an implantable pulse generator. Direct stimulation has been shown to provide pain relief in many patients.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trigeminal neuralgia; tic douloureux; hemifacial spasm

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Glycerol Injection	Balloon Compression	RF Rhizotomy
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Needle placed lateral to mouth on cheek	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	I.I.	⇐	⇐ + RF generator

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Glycerol Injection	Balloon Compression	RF Rhizotomy
Unique considerations	Hypertensive response to needle placement	⇐	⇐ + Requirement for periodic deep sedation with rapid awakening for RF lesioning.
Antibiotics	Usually none	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	0.5 h	1 h	1–1.5 h
EBL	None	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Seated position with head flexed for 1 h	PACU	PACU
Mortality	rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: rare	⇐	⇐
	Complete facial numbness (anesthesia dolorosa): ~4%	⇐	⇐
	Extraocular muscle paresis (diplopia): <4%	⇐	⇐
	CSF leak: rare	⇐	⇐
	Masticatory problem: common	⇐	⇐
	Facial hematoma	⇐	⇐
	Sensory loss: common	⇐	⇐
	Recurrence: >50% in 5 yr	~50% in 5 yr	⇐
Pain score	3–7	2–4	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–85 yr (usually 60–70 yr)
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	Trigeminal neuralgia: 4.3/100,000/yr (25.6/100,000/yr > 70 yr)
Etiology	Vascular compression of trigeminal nerve → demyelination; multiple sclerosis plaque; cerebellopontine angle tumor; AVMs
Associated conditions	HTN; multiple sclerosis; rheumatoid arthritis; Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease; Sjogren syndrome; hemifacial spasm

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Trigeminal neuralgia, or tic douloureux, is a condition that develops in adults usually > 60 yr old. It is more common in women in whom an intermittent, severe, lancinating pain arises over the maxillary and/or mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve. The ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve is rarely involved. The pain is unilateral and often can be precipitated by stimulating a trigger point, such as by rubbing the cheek, mastication, or brushing the teeth. The cause of this condition is not known. Medical management consists of therapy with carbamazepine (Tegretol) or oxcarbazepine (Trileptal), anticonvulsants, and analgesics specific for this condition. The failure rate for medical treatment is 50–60%. Stereotactic radiosurgery (dose = ~60 Gy) has been shown to have long-term effectiveness in ~50% of patients who failed drug therapy. Surgery is considered when medical or radiotherapy management fails to control pain or complications of drug therapy develop (anemia, bleeding disorders, dizziness, etc.). One of three types of percutaneous procedures is performed: either **glycerol injection, RF rhizotomy** of the symptomatic branches of the trigeminal ganglion or direct **ganglionic stimulation**. If these treatments fail, microvascular decompression of the trigeminal nerve is considered.

Respiratory	No common associations or special considerations, unless patient has a longstanding Hx of smoking and has COPD. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Most patients have Hx of idiopathic HTN and take antihypertensive medications. Good control of BP preop is important because most patients become hypertensive during the operative procedure. Intraop HTN is often unavoidable because of the surgical need to have the patient awake during much of the procedure. **Tests:** As indicated by H&P
Neurological	The presenting symptom is pain (shock-like = better outcome) in the maxillary and/or mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, unaccompanied by motor or sensory deficits. (Dx should be questioned in the presence of sensory deficits). Patients likely will have failed first line Rx and now be partially treated with second line drugs including phenytoin, baclofen, gabapentin, and various antidepressants which may have anesthetic management implications.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P. CBC/platelets if Rx carbamazepine. Anticonvulsant drug levels.
Premedication	Midazolam (1–2 mg iv).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA, regardless of which percutaneous technique is to be used. O_2 by nasal cannula should be administered before induction of anesthesia. To keep the O_2 cannula out of the surgeon's field, it must be taped above the eye on the side of operation.

Induction	Because the surgeon will want the patient awake to check pain distribution as soon as the needle or electrode is in place, the induction drug must be potent, but short-acting. Methohexital (0.5–1 mg/kg) is preferred for this purpose, but propofol (1–2 mg/kg) alone or at a reduced dose in combination with remifentanil (0.5 mcg/kg) has been used successfully. The drug should be injected by bolus into a rapidly flowing iv to achieve a high concentration in the brain quickly. Continuous infusion is not satisfactory because it fails to achieve a high brain concentration quickly, and its continuous administration prolongs the time before the patient is sufficiently able to communicate with the surgeon. In experienced hands, the needle is placed within a matter of 2–3 min. If difficulty is encountered in placing the needle, additional bolus doses of induction drug may be needed. Patients may develop apnea for 1–2 min, followed by partial or total airway obstruction, while the surgeon has his hand in the mouth positioning the needle. Prior to induction of anesthesia, therefore, it is essential that the anesthesiologist optimize ventilation and oxygenation by asking the patient to take a series of deep breaths through the nose with the mouth closed. This will ↑ the O_2 level and ↓ the CO_2 level in the lungs before induction. To maintain adequate spontaneous ventilation and oxygenation, it may be necessary to institute forward displacement of the mandible while the surgeon inserts the needle. Another alternative is to insert a nasal airway. If **glycerol injection** is used, needle position is verified by radiological imaging, using a radio-opaque dye. Patient is awakened and placed in a seated position with head flexed. The glycerol is injected, causing severe pain. Patient is then moved to recovery room still in seated position with the head forward to keep the glycerol localized to the region of the trigeminal ganglion. If **RF rhizotomy** electrode placement is performed, the patient is awakened and the position of the electrode is verified by stimulating the ganglion with heat or directly and determining the site of pain. The patient is then reanesthetized with a smaller bolus of the same drug to permit electrode adjustment or local heating for ~1 min. This procedure may be repeated several times. Each time, the patient needs less anesthetic because of both the cumulative effects of the drug and the fact that the ganglion is becoming damaged by the heat and manipulation.

Emergence	Following glycerol injection patients are maintained in a seated position with an ice pack on the cheek at the site of needle insertion to minimize postop bleeding and swelling. These patients often complain of pain in the face, requiring opiate analgesics. Following RF rhizotomy, the affected area of the face is usually numb, which is the end point for concluding the operation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga ×1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	HTN patients may require an arterial line.
Control of BP	Labetalol Esmolol bolus dose SNP infusion may be necessary	Patients almost invariably become hypertensive during this therapy. Attempts to lessen these episodes with a clonidine patch preop or use of intermittent doses of esmolol or labetalol prophylactically or therapeutically are only partially successful.
Positioning	Table turned 180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patient in reclining position with head in the midline.
Complications	Failure of needle placement Bleeding Respiratory arrest Oculocardiac reflex	Major complications from this operation are uncommon, but include (1) Failure to identify the foramen ovale, through which the needle must be inserted to reach the trigeminal ganglion. If the needle cannot be placed within 30–40 min, the procedure usually is delayed pending additional imaging studies. (2) Bleeding into cheek from puncture of a branch of the facial artery. (3) Apnea from spillover of the glycerol solution into CSF, presumably affecting the respiratory center in the 4th ventricle.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Parenteral opiates (see p. C-3).	Usually needed for post-glycerol pain Rx.

Suggested Readings

1. Bennetto L, Patel NK, Fuller G: Trigeminal neuralgia and its management. *BMJ* 2007; 334(7586):201–5.
2. Jorns TP, Zakrzewska JM: Evidence-based approach to the medical management of trigeminal neuralgia. *Br J Neurosurg* 2007; 21(3):253–61.
3. Monstad P: Microvascular decompression as a treatment for cranial nerve hyperactive dysfunction—a critical view. *Acta Neurol Scand Suppl* 2007; 187:30–3.
4. Young RF: Stereotactic procedures for facial pain. In: Apuzzo MU, ed. *Brain Surgery: Complication, Avoidance and Management*. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 1993, 2097–113.
5. Zakrzewska JM, McMillan R: Trigeminal neuralgia: the diagnosis and management of this excruciating and poorly understood facial pain. *Postgrad Med J* 2011; 87(1028):410–6.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Microvascular Decompression for Atypical Hemifacial Spasm: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4aOuANvc2-g

Microvascular Decompression Surgery – Part Two:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?feature=endscreen&NR=1&v=x2RoGxfkOb4

Deep Brain Stimulation (DBS) Parkinsons (Australia 60 Minutes segment):
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j3NjNKm0pio

CHAPTER

1.3 Spinal Neurosurgery

SURGEONS

Stephen I. Ryu, MD
Lawrence M. Shuer, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Adam P. Brown, MD
C. Philip Larson, Jr., MD, CM

ANTERIOR FUSION/FIXATION OF THE UPPER CERVICAL (C1-C2) SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Transoral odontoid excision**: The **transoral approach** is indicated primarily to relieve ventral irreducible compression of the cervicomedullary junction due to extradural lesions involving the lower part of the clivus, C1 and C2 vertebral bodies. This approach provides direct access to the C1 anterior arch and odontoid process of C2. The anesthetized patient is positioned supine usually with cervical traction. A Dingman or similar retractor is used to facilitate surgical access. The soft palate is retracted upward with stay sutures. Through a posterior midline incision over the pharyngeal wall, the C1 anterior arch and C2 vertebra are exposed (Fig. 1.3-1). Using fluoroscopic guidance, bony decompression of the clivus, C1 anterior arch, odontoid process, and C2 vertebral body is performed. Instrumentation of C1-C2 may be performed with plate and screws. The wound is closed in two layers after securing hemostasis. As the procedure often results in significant instability at the craniovertebral junction, posterior occipitocervical fusion often is required.

Variants of the transoral procedure: **Transpalatal exposure** with removal of hard palate or a **tongue-splitting transmandibular approach** may be required for adequate exposure of the clivus or upper C-spine, respectively. A **high cervical anterior retropharyngeal approach** is rarely used to approach C1-C3 without traversing the oral cavity and with less destabilization. A transcervical approach to the C2 body can be performed using an endoscope and a highly beveled tubular retractor.

Transodontoid screw fixation: Fractures of the odontoid process of C2 account for 10–20% of all C-spine fractures and are classified (**Anderson and D'Alonzo**) into three types, based on anatomical location. **Type I fractures**, which occur at the tip of dens, are treated conservatively. **Type II fractures**, which occur through the waist of the odontoid process, are the most common and are often inherently unstable, requiring surgical treatment. Internal instrumented fixation is the ideal treatment for Type II fractures because it provides immediate stability while preserving C1-C2 rotation. **Type III fractures** occur through the body of C2 and can be treated surgically or with external immobilization.

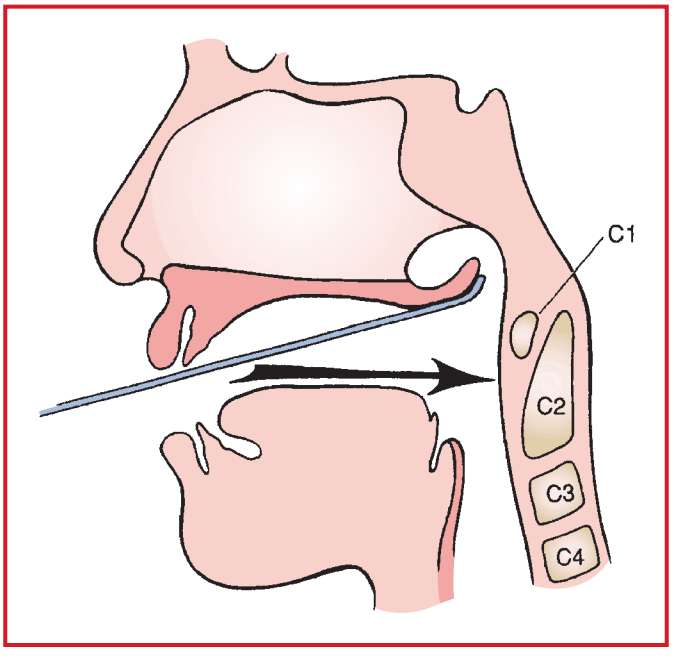


Figure 1.3-1. The transoral approach. (Reproduced with permission from An HS, Cotler JM: *Spinal Instrumentation*. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1992.)

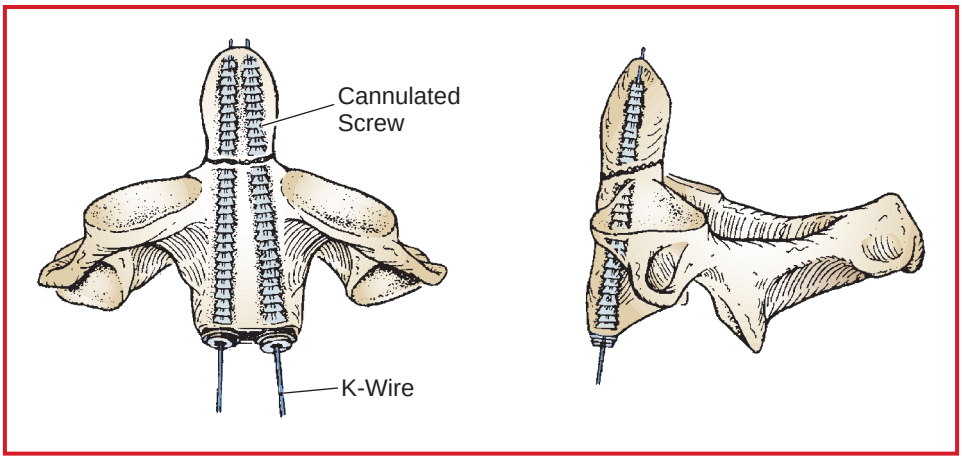


Figure 1.3-2. Screw fixation technique, using cannulated screws. K-wire provides provisional stabilization and allows guided tapping and screw placement. (Reproduced with permission from An HS, Cotler JM: *Spinal Instrumentation*. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1992.)

The anesthetized patient is placed in a supine position with traction of 5–10 lb. The mouth may be kept open using a radiolucent jaw distractor. A horizontal skin incision is made at approximately C5 level, and the platysma is cut along the skin incision. The anterior C-spine is exposed by opening the natural plane between the trachea and esophagus medially and carotid sheath laterally. Using a guide tube, a hole is drilled under fluoroscopy through the body of C2, the odontoid process, and its apex, through the fracture. The drilled hole is tapped, and an appropriately sized screw is placed (Fig. 1.3-2). At this point, fluoroscopy of the patient's neck in flexion and extension is done to exclude C1-C2 instability.

Usual preop diagnosis: Basilar impression (telescoping of C-spine into posterior fossa); odontoid fracture; rheumatoid arthritis with atlantoaxial instability; traumatic irreducible atlantoaxial instability; Type II odontoid fractures (recent or remote)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transoral	Transodontoid Screw Fixation
Position	Supine; head in mild extension with traction	Supine; head in mild extension with traction
Incision	Posterior oropharynx	Transverse skin incision in the anterolateral neck at C5 level
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope, I.I., Dingman retractor	K-wire, drill, odontoid screw instrumentation
Unique considerations	Requires ≥ 3 cm mouth opening; armored ETT must be taped securely away from surgical field. Tracheostomy is needed occasionally. Fiberoptic intubation may be required.	Fiberoptic intubation in patients with C1-C2 instability; biplanar fluoroscopy is mandatory.
Surgical time	2–4 h	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Extubation may be delayed due to lingual swelling.	Routine wound closure
EBL	25–200 mL	25–200 mL
Postop care	ICU or close observation unit. Monitor airway for respiratory obstruction. ± Postop immobilization. Will require leaving NG tube in postop.	PACU → room; cervical collar
Mortality	0–3%	1%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Transoral	Transodontoid Screw Fixation
Morbidity	All: < 20%: CSF leak/dural tear Infection Neural injury Pharyngeal wound dehiscence	All: < 15% Hardware failure (screw pullout, screw fracture): 10% Nonunion: 5–10% Superficial wound infection: 2%
Pain score	3–5	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)	15–90 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	1:2	1.5:1
Incidence	Rare	Common (10–20% of C-spine fractures)
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic; congenital; degenerative	Traumatic
Associated conditions	Rheumatoid arthritis	-

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 108.

Suggested Readings

1. Apelbaum RI, Lonser RR, Veres R, et al: Direct anterior screw fixation for recent and remote odontoid fractures. *J Neurosurgery (Spine 2)* 2000; 93:227–36.
2. Crockard AH: Transoral approach to intra/extradural tumors. In: Sekhar LN, Janecka ID, eds. *Surgery of Cranial Base Tumors*. Raven Press, New York: 1993, 225–34.
3. Fountas KN, Kapsalaki EZ, Nikolakakos LG, et al: Anterior cervical discectomy and fusion associated complications. *Spine* 2007; 32(21):2310–7.
4. Menezes AH: Transoral approach to the clivus and upper cervical spine. In: Wilkins RH, Rengachary SS, eds. *Neurosurgery*. McGraw-Hill, New York: 1995, 306–13.
5. Vender JR, Harrison SJ, McDonnell DE: Fusion and instrumentation at C1–3 via the high anterior cervical approach. *J Neurosurgery (Spine 1)* 2000; 92:24–9.

POSTERIOR FUSION/FIXATION OF THE UPPER CERVICAL SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Craniocervical (occipitocervical, craniovertebral) fusion/fixation** or instrumentation involves stabilization of the occiput and upper three or four cervical vertebrae, whereas **atlantoaxial fusion/fixation** involves stabilization of the atlas (C1) and axis (C2). Instability may be caused by congenital, traumatic, degenerative, neoplastic, or infectious conditions resulting in compression of the lower brain stem or cervical spinal cord. Symptoms may include paresthesias and/or weakness of the upper and lower extremities.

Atlantoaxial techniques: **Atlantoaxial (C1-C2) fusion** is performed in the prone position, with or without traction. Through a posterior midline incision, the occiput and upper C-spine are exposed. A posterior iliac or rib graft may be harvested and fashioned appropriately. The bone graft can be secured with wires to the decorticated segments to be fused. Traditionally, the fixation has been performed with sublaminar wires alone; however, other fixation techniques—such as **C1-C2 transarticular screw fixation** and more recently the **C1-C2 lateral mass fusion**

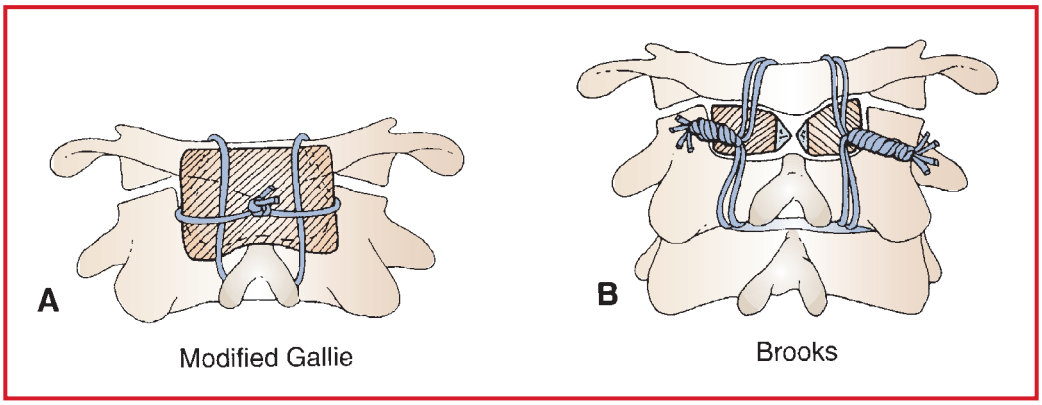


Figure 1.3-3. Posterior wiring techniques. **A.** Modified Gallie using an H-shaped bone graft from the iliac crest, contoured to fit over the posterior arches of C1 and C2. A double U-shaped 18- or 20-ga wire is passed under the arch of C1 from inferior to superior. **B.** Brooks-type fusion with doubled-twisted 24-ga wires passed under the arch of C1 and then under the lamina of C2. Rectangular iliac crest bone grafts are fitted in the intervals between the arch of C1 and each lamina of the axis. (Reproduced with permission from An HS, Cotler JM: *Spinal Instrumentation.* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1992.)

techniques are being used more often because they are biomechanically stronger and permit early ambulation with minimal orthotic support.

In **C1-C2 posterior wiring techniques**, the posterior arches of C1 and C2 laminae are exposed through a midline incision. Of the various wiring techniques used, **Gallie's** and **Brooks's** are the most widely accepted. In **Gallie's fusion** (Fig. 1.3-3A), a wire loop or cable is passed underneath the C1 arch and brought over a bone graft wedged between C1 and C2 and then tightened over the C2 spinous process. In **Brooks's technique** (Fig. 1.3-3B), wires are passed beneath the C2 lamina and C1 posterior arch on each side and tightened over a bone graft placed between C1 and C2. The posterior aspects of C1 and C2 are decorticated to facilitate the bony fusion. Wiring techniques are simpler, but carry the risk of cord injury during wire placement.

C1-C2 transarticular screw fixation was initially popular because of its greater biomechanical stability, higher fusion rates (87–100%), and superior fixation of atlantoaxial rotation. The occiput and C1-C3 vertebrae are exposed

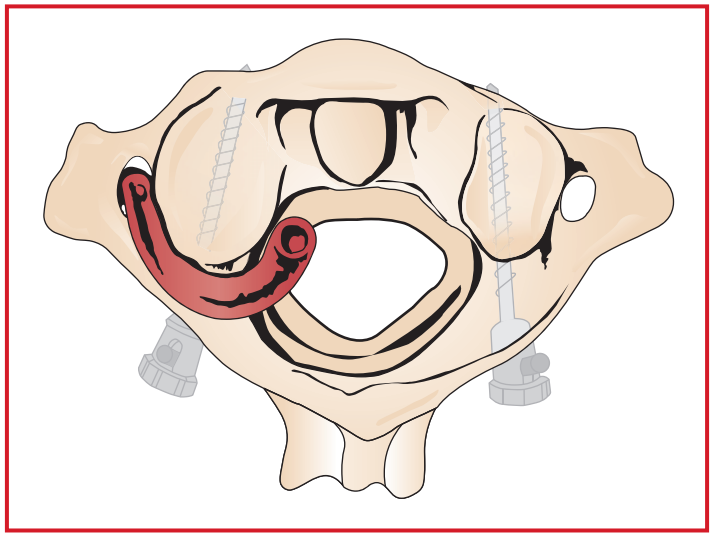


Figure 1.3-4. Axial view of C1 lateral mass screws. (Reproduced with permission from Harms J, Melcher RP: Posterior C1-C2 fusion with polyaxial screw and rod fixation. *Spine* 2001; 26(22):2467–71.)

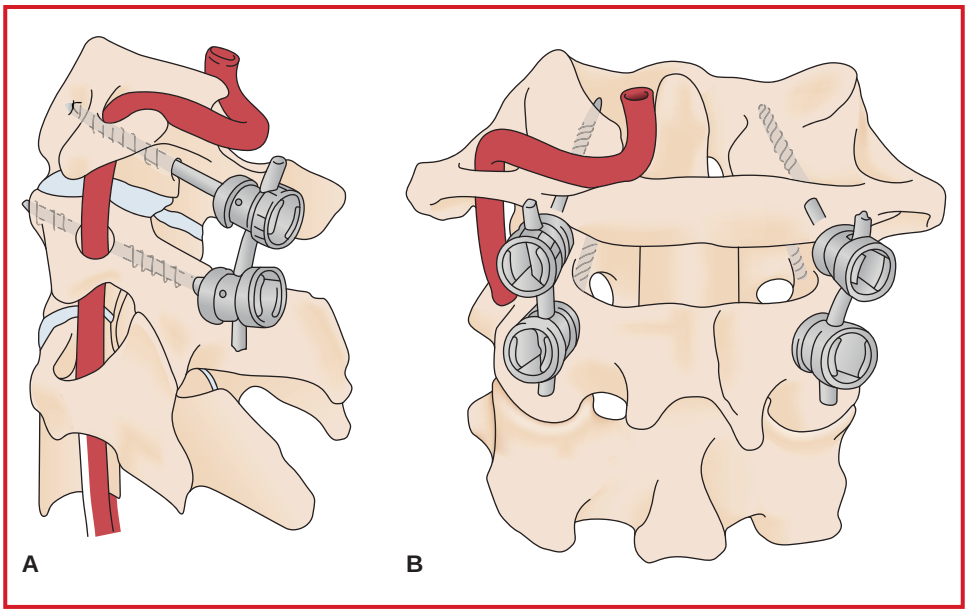


Figure 1.3-5. Lateral **(A)** and AP view **(B)** of C1-C2 fusion. (Reproduced with permission from Harms J, Melcher RP: Posterior C1-C2 fusion with polyaxial screw and rod fixation. *Spine* 2001; 26(22):2467–71.)

by a conventional posterior approach. Screws are placed from each lateral mass toward the anterior tubercle of C1 under fluoroscopic guidance. The major risks of this technique include injury to the vertebral artery (4.1%), malposition of screws, or instrumentation failure. Twenty percent of patients will have an anomalous vertebral artery, demonstrated by radiographic studies, precluding use of this technique.

In **C1-C2 lateral mass fusion**, the C-spine is exposed subperiosteally from occiput to C3-4 vertebrae by a conventional posterior approach. In this technique, polyaxial screws are passed into the lateral mass of C1 (Fig. 1.3-4). In addition, C2 pedicle screws are also placed and then attached to the C1 screws by connecting rods (Fig. 1.3-5). If required, a reduction maneuver is carried out by repositioning the head or by direct manipulation of the C1 and C2 vertebrae. C1-C2 interfacetal fusion or posterior interlaminar fusion may be performed with wiring. The C1-C2 construct can be combined with cervical decompression. Because of the superior and medial placement of C2 pedicle screws, the risk of injuring the vertebral artery is less than with a transarticular fusion.

Craniocervical techniques: **Occipitocervical fusion** involves a surgical exposure similar to that of atlantoaxial fusion, except that a more extensive exposure of the occipital bone is required. In the past, fixation was performed with a **Luque rectangle/contoured rod and wiring** or plate and screws. An appropriately fashioned rib or iliac crest graft was then secured in place.

In **occipitocervical contoured rod fixation**, the occiput and posterior C-spine are exposed through a posterior incision, and trephines are made 2.5 cm to either side of the midline and about 2 cm above the foramen magnum. Wires or cables are passed from these occipital holes through the foramen magnum on both sides. Sublaminar wires are passed beneath laminae of the atlas, axis, and C3 vertebrae on each side and are tightened over a rod. Other cervical vertebrae may be included in the fixation as required. A tricorticate iliac or rib graft is fixed with wires over the occipitocervical region. Decortication of occipital bone and laminae of the atlas, axis, or C3 vertebrae is essential for bony fusion.

Occipitocervical plate fixation can be performed by using a T- or Y-shaped plate fixed by screws to the occiput and lateral masses of the cervical vertebrae. C1-C2 transarticular screws, lateral mass screws, or wiring techniques can be added for additional stability. Occipitocervical plating techniques are biomechanically stable, often obviating the need for postop halo immobilization; however, they can be technically challenging. The major concerns include possible dural penetration by occipital screws and obtaining adequate contouring of the construct.

Usual preop diagnosis: Transoral odontoid resection; occipitoatlantal instability; atlantoaxial instability; odontoid fractures; spinal fractures; cervical instability; previous failed fusions

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Atlantoaxial (C1-C2) Fusion/Fixation	Occipitocervical Fusion/Fixation
Position	Prone, head in tong traction or pins	⇐
Incision	Posterior midline incision	⇐
Special instrumentation	Fluoroscopy; drills; wires/cables; lateral mass plate and/or screws; transarticular screws	Fluoroscopy; drills; rods, wires/cables; plates and screws
Unique considerations	Iliac/rib autograft ± posterior ilium for graft. Fiber optic intubation and SSEPs	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	3–4 h
Closing considerations	Routine wound closure	Halo vest may be needed in selected cases.
EBL	100–500 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU, then → room	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Vertebral artery injury: 4.1% CSF leak Instrumentation failure Nonunion	Neural injury ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	5–9	5–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic; congenital; degenerative; infections; rheumatoid arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 108.

Suggested Readings

1. Harms J, Melcher R: Posterior C1-C2 fusion with polyaxial screw and rod fixation. *Spine* 2001; 26:2467–71.
2. Menendez JA, Wright NM: Techniques of posterior C1-C2 stabilization. *Neurosurgery* 2007; 60(Suppl 1):S103–11.
3. Vangilder JC, Menezes AH: Craniovertebral abnormalities and their neurosurgical management. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 1934–45.
4. Wright N, Lauryssen C: Vertebral artery injury in C1–2 transarticular screw fixation: results of a survey of the AANS/CNS section on disorders of the spine and peripheral nerves. *J Neurosurg* 1998; 88:634–40.

ANTERIOR FUSION/FIXATION OF THE MID AND LOWER CERVICAL SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The first description of the anterior approach for excision of a cervical disc was made by Smith and Robinson in 1958. This approach permits easy and safe access to the entire C-spine below C2. **Anterior cervical discectomy** is commonly indicated for the removal of herniated discs or osteophytes compressing the spinal cord or nerve roots. Multisegmental cervical spondylosis (narrowing of spinal canal) may require single- or multi-level corpectomy (removal of a vertebral body). During anterior cervical discectomy, an approach from the left side of the neck is often preferred because it minimizes the chances of injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The dissection is carried along the avascular plane between the trachea and esophagus medially and the carotid sheath laterally (Figs 1.3-6 and 1.3-7). The fascia is incised to expose the longus colli muscles and anterior C-spine. The disc level is confirmed using fluoroscopy. The annulus is incised, and the disc is removed in piecemeal fashion with the use of an operating microscope. **Fusion and instrumentation** are often performed after discectomy to maintain disc space height, restore normal cervical lordosis, prevent graft extrusion, facilitate early ambulation, and possibly prevent delayed deformity and pain due to collapse of the disc space. After the discectomy, osteophytes are removed from the vertebral bodies, and an appropriately sized bone graft or prosthesis is placed in the intervertebral space. PEEK and carbon-fiber cages are radiolucent and allow good assessment of bony fusion. Fusion with instrumentation is often essential for immediate stability and early ambulation.

Anterior screw-plate fixation (with MRI-compatible titanium) is the preferred method of fixation for C2-C7. It provides stable fixation after discectomy or corpectomy, prevents bone graft migration, improves fusion rate, corrects spinal deformities, and may restore anterior and middle column function following cervical trauma. Plates and screws are placed under fluoroscopic guidance to prevent dural penetration or malposition. Hemodynamic changes should be monitored closely during the procedure, because ↓ HR or ↓ BP during the instrumentation may suggest cord compression.

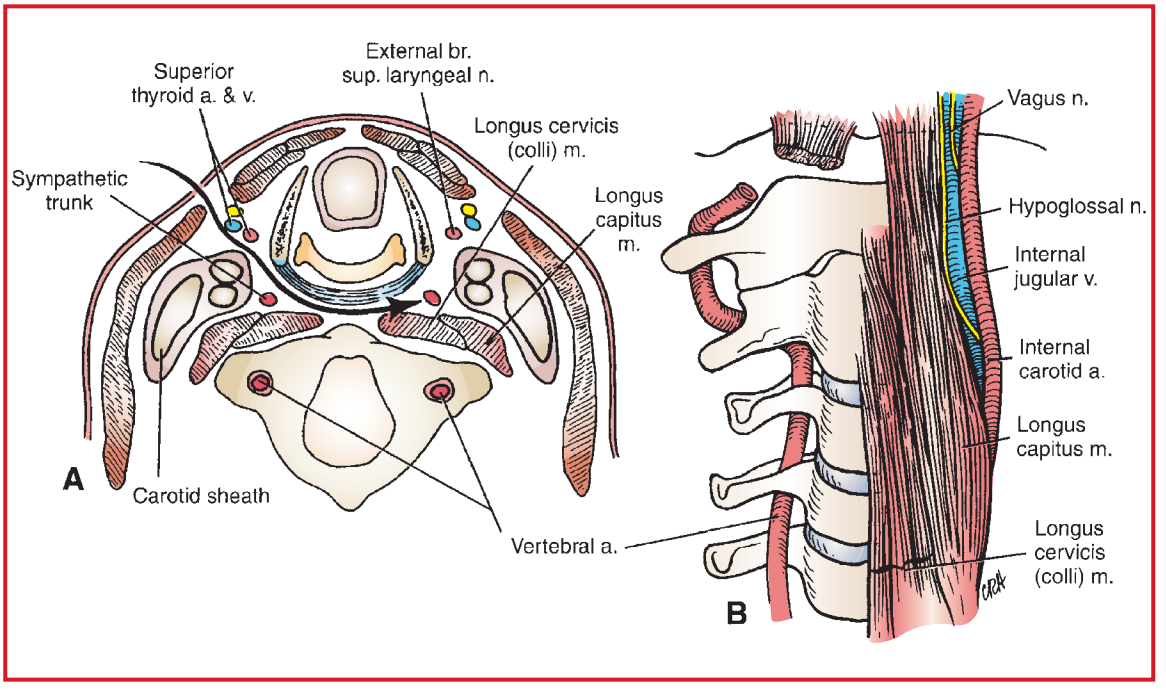


Figure 1.3-6. Upper C-spine. **A.** Cross-section showing the anteromedial approach. **B.** Anterior aspect, after stripping the longus collis muscle. (Reproduced with permission from An HS, Cotler JM: *Spinal Instrumentation*. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1992.)

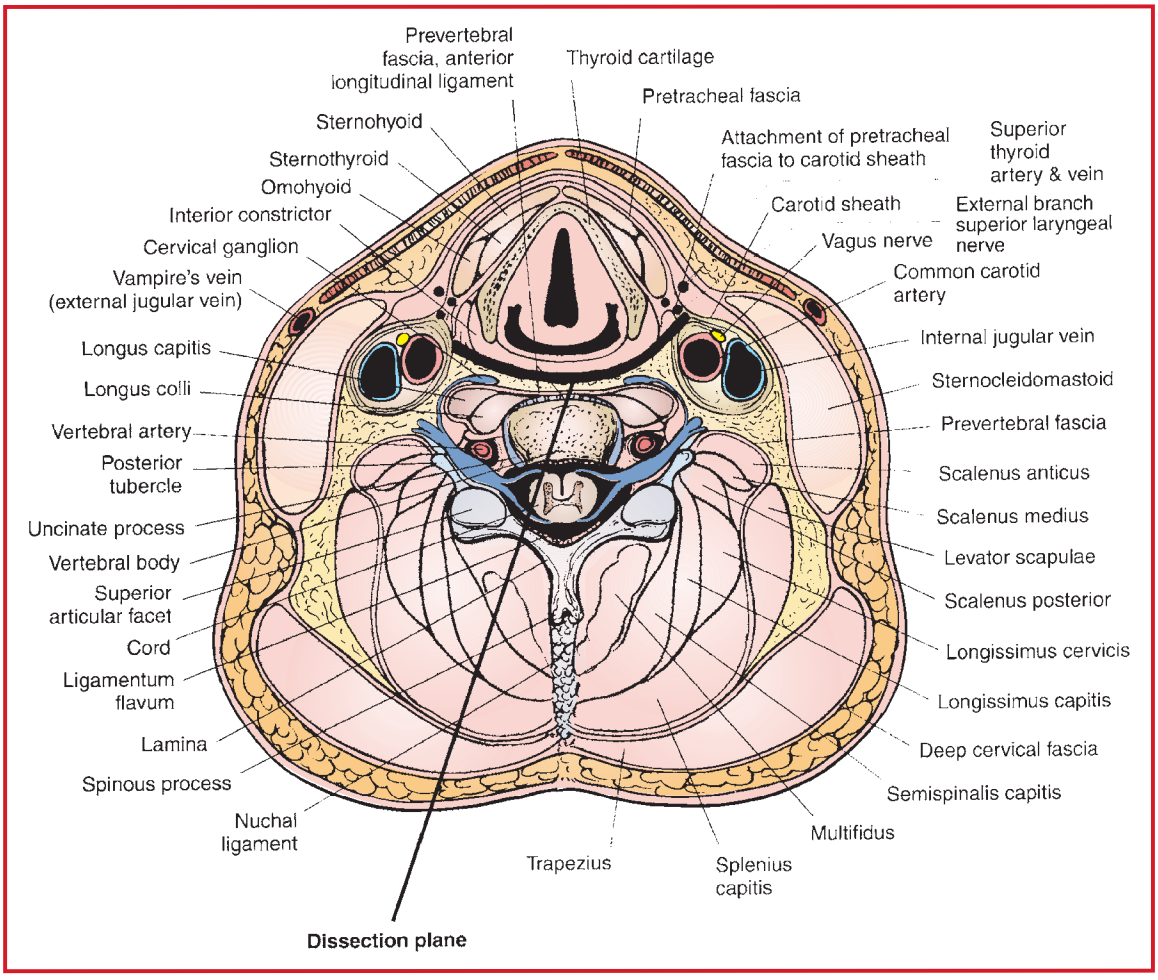


Figure 1.3-7. Cross-section of the C-spine at C5 level. Note the deep cervical fascia, the pretracheal fascia, and the prevertebral fascia. Note the relationship of the pretracheal fascia to the carotid sheath. Dissection plane is shown. (Modified with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach*, 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1994.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical radiculopathy (nerve-root compression due to disc herniation or osteophytic compression); cervical myelopathy (spinal-cord compression by disc/osteophytes); cervical instability (ligamentous laxity or disruption)

Variant procedures: **Cervical (vertebral) corpectomy and fusion** are used to treat conditions in which there is anterior impingement of the spinal cord or narrowing of the spinal canal at the level of the vertebral body, including multisegmental cervical spondylitic compression, ossification of the posterior longitudinal ligament (OPLL), tumors, infections (e.g., TB, osteomyelitis), or C-spine injury. The surgical exposure is similar to that for anterior cervical discectomy. A transverse neck incision is preferred for corpectomy involving two or three vertebrae; however, a vertical skin incision along the anterior border of the sternomastoid may be used if more than three vertebrae are involved. Before the removal of a vertebral body, adjacent discs are resected. The posterior part of the vertebra and osteophytes at the posterior margins are excised. Reconstruction is accomplished with an autograft, allograft, or cages (metal or carbon fiber spaces filled with bone fragments). Some of the newer cages are expandable, facilitating a good fit. Supplemental fixation with plates and screws is essential to prevent graft extrusion, to facilitate fusion, and to permit early ambulation.

A **cervical artificial disc** can be placed via an approach that is similar to that of an ACDF but instead of placing a bone graft or cage, a mobile prosthetic disc is placed according to manufacturer's instruction. No additional stabilization or bone grafting is required. Accurate placement of this disc is absolutely critical to the success of

this procedure. Fluoroscopy is used extensively to ensure this. There is immediate stability and because motion is preserved, early mobilization is recommended.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical myelopathy (spinal cord compression) 2° fracture of the C-spine (traumatic or pathologic); narrowing of the spinal canal due to congenital conditions; degenerative conditions, such as severe disc disease with osteophyte formation; OPLL; cervical instability (ligamentous laxity or disruption or destruction of bone due to tumor or infection); failed previous spinal fusion

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Cervical Discectomy ± Fusion and Plating; Artificial Disc Placement	Cervical Corpectomy ± Fusion and Plating
Position	Supine, head extended on headrest	⇐
Incision	Transverse anterolateral	⇐ or vertical anterolateral
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; anterior cervical plates	⇐
Unique considerations	Fiberoptic intubation may be necessary; ± cervical traction	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h (+ 1 h for fusion/plating)	1.5–3 h for single level; add 20–30 min for each additional level.
Closing considerations	Cervical collar (soft/hard)	⇐
EBL	25–250 mL	50–1000 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	0–5%
Morbidity	Esophageal perforation: < 1% Infection: < 1% Massive blood loss–carotid or jugular injury: < 1% Myelopathy: < 1% Nerve injury: Recurrent laryngeal nerve: 5% Root: < 1% Sympathetic chain: < 1% Postop instability: < 1% Instrument failure: < 1% Slipped graft: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 1–15% ⇐
Pain score	3–5	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)	⇐
Male:Female	1:2	⇐
Incidence	Rare	⇐
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic; congenital; degenerative; OPLL	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 108.

Suggested Readings

1. Brislin BT, Hilibrand AS: Avoidance of complications in anterior cervical spine revision surgery. *Curr Opin Orthop* 2001; 12(3):257–64.
2. Dickman CA, Marciano FF: Principles and techniques of screw fixation of the cervical spine. In: Menezes AH, Sonntag VKH, eds. *Principles of Spinal Surgery.* McGraw-Hill, New York: 1995, 123–39.

POSTERIOR FUSION/FIXATION OF THE MID AND LOWER CERVICAL SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Posterior cervical laminectomy** (removal of lamina), **foraminotomy** (opening of the neural foramina), and **laminotomy** (removal of a portion of the lamina) are posterior procedures for decompression of the neural elements in the C-spine. These procedures are used to treat cervical radiculopathy 2° degenerative disc disease (e.g., herniated discs, osteophytes). The major advantage of **foraminotomy** over an anterior approach is that it does not require fusion and, thus, preserves the motion of the involved vertebral segments and obviates the need for immobilization for fusion. It also permits decompression of multiple levels, if required. Disadvantages of foraminotomy include an increased incidence of neck pain and the fact that it is not an effective approach to midline disc herniation. **Decompressive laminectomy** can be used to treat cervical canal stenosis (congenital or degenerative) and for removal of intraspinal masses (tumors, AVMs, infective granulomas), which may be extradural, intradural, extramedullary, or intramedullary. Depending on the location of the tumor, the surgeon may need to open the dura and/or spinal cord. Obviously, the intradural intramedullary tumors involve more risk and are more delicate to remove. Many laminae may be removed to expose and excise the tumor. Surgical adjunctive tools (e.g., CUSA, laser, surgical microscope.) may be used to aid in removal of the tumor. Intraop evoked potential monitoring may be used during these procedures to test the integrity of the dorsal columns. After the tumor has been removed, the wound is closed in layers, as in a simple laminectomy.

Surgery is performed in the prone or sitting position through a posterior midline incision over the involved vertebrae. The paraspinal muscles are dissected off the spinous processes, and lamina and bone are removed piecemeal. The extent of the procedure depends on the indications for treatment. Hemostasis is achieved with bipolar cautery, and raw bone surfaces are sealed with bone wax. Topical hemostatic agents are used to aid in hemostasis in the epidural gutters. If the patient has an intradural tumor or process, such as syringomyelia, the dura is opened, and the operating microscope is used for this portion of the procedure. After the intradural procedure is complete, the dura is closed, and the surgeon may wish to test the integrity of the closure with a Valsalva-like maneuver (sustained inspiration to 30–40 cm H_2O). The wound is closed in layers, and a drain may be left in the epidural space. Multilevel laminectomies with foraminotomies (involving partial removal of cervical facet joints) can result in late-onset cervical kyphosis, an extremely difficult condition to treat. These patients are usually considered for concomitant posterior fusion and instrumentation, especially in the presence of cervical segmental instability.

Newer less-traumatic techniques can be used to perform foraminotomies and discectomies in the cervical spine in a **minimally invasive (MIS)** fashion. These use one of many tubular retractor systems (e.g., **METRx** [Medtronic, Memphis, TN, USA]). These afford similar exposure but minimize blood loss, scar, and pain by spreading the muscles. The disadvantage is unfamiliar exposure, difficulty with retractor placement, and potential of neurological injury by inadvertent penetration of the interlaminar space.

Posterior cervical wiring techniques include (a) **interspinous wiring** (Fig. 1.3-8) (wires are passed through drilled holes in the base of adjacent spinous processes and then tightened); (b) **sublaminar wiring** with Luque rods or rectangles (sublaminar wires are passed at each level on both sides and are tightened over the rods or rectangles); and (c) **a triple-wire technique** with the first wire being passed through drill holes at the base of each spinous process, and the second and third wires passed through the same holes and then through drill holes in the previously placed bone

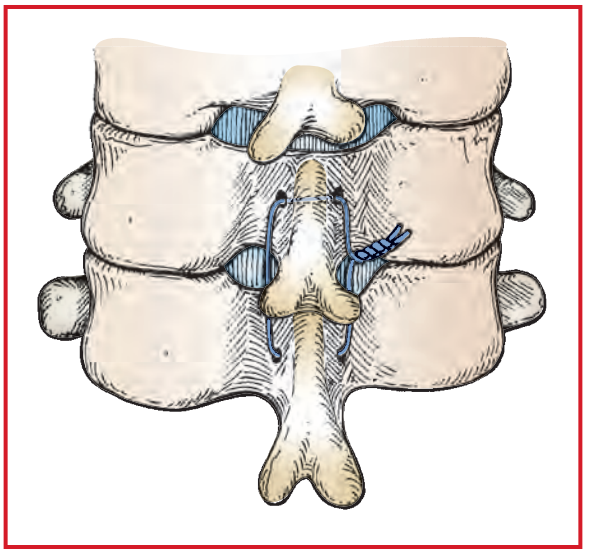


Figure 1.3-8. Intraspinous wiring. Wires passed through drilled holes in base of adjacent spinous processes and tightened. (Reproduced with permission from An HS, Cotler JM: *Spinal Instrumentation*, 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1999.)

grafts. This latter technique is biomechanically sound because it places the bone grafts in compression. Wiring techniques, although stable in flexion, however, are less stable in extension and rotation, and they cannot be performed in patients with prior laminectomy or requiring laminectomy.

In the **posterior cervical lateral mass screw fixation** technique, the C-spine is exposed through a midline incision over the involved vertebral segments. The lateral mass (bony column between facet joints) is identified, drilled, and tapped. Cortical screws are passed into the lateral mass and fixed with plates or rods. The trajectory of the screws in the lateral mass is to the upper outer corner in the classic Magerl technique. The entry point should be approximately 1 mm medial to the midpoint of the lateral mass (Fig. 1.3-9). The axial trajectory angulation should be 25°, and the

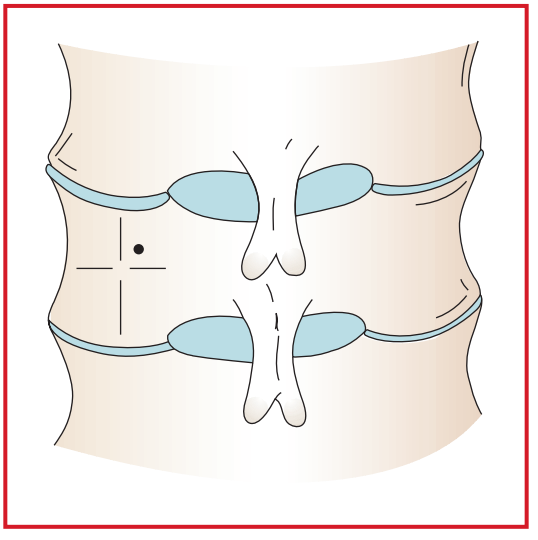


Figure 1.3-9. Magerl technique lateral mass screw entry point. (Reproduced with permission from Barrey C, Mertens P, et al: Quantitative anatomic evaluation of cervical lateral mass fixation with a comparison of the Roy-Camille and the Magerl screw techniques. *Spine* 2005; 30(6):E140–7.)

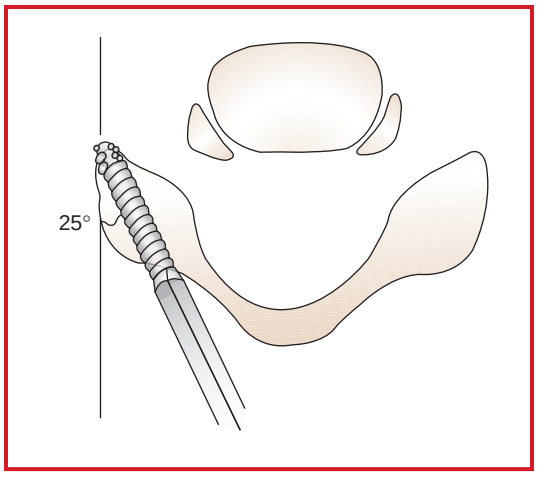


Figure 1.3-10. Magerl technique lateral mass screw axial trajectory angulation. (Reproduced with permission from Barrey C, Mertens P, et al: Quantitative anatomic evaluation of cervical lateral mass fixation with a comparison of the Roy-Camille and the Magerl screw techniques. *Spine* 2005; 30(6):E140–7.)

sagittal angulation should be 45°, which is inline with the facet joints (Figs 1.3-10 and 1.3-11). Adjacent facet joints are decorticated, and bone grafts are placed. Lateral mass plating provides a rigid multisegmental fixation and can be performed in patients with prior laminectomy. The major risks involved with this procedure are nerve-root and vertebral artery injuries.

Cervical pedicle screw plate fixation is an effective alternative to lateral mass fixation. In this technique, screws are passed under fluoroscopic guidance into the cervical pedicles and secured to plates or rods. This procedure is technically demanding, as the cervical pedicles are narrow and in close proximity to nerve roots, vertebral artery, and spinal cord, and their trajectories are typically unfamiliar. This technique is biomechanically stable and permits the

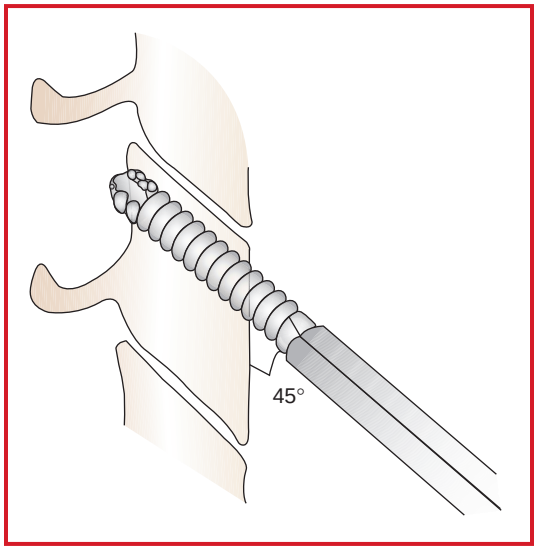


Figure 1.3-11. Magerl technique lateral mass screw sagittal trajectory angulation. (Reproduced with permission from Barrey C, Mertens P, et al: Quantitative anatomic evaluation of cervical lateral mass fixation with a comparison of the Roy-Camille and the Magerl screw techniques. *Spine* 2005; 30(6):E140–7.)

correction of deformity by application of compression or distraction forces. It is most commonly performed at C2 where the pedicles are relatively larger.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical radiculopathy (nerve-root compression); cervical myelopathy (spinal-cord compression); cervical disc disease (herniation or degeneration of one or more cervical discs); C-spine injury

Variant procedures: Patients with panvertebral disease (involving anterior and posterior elements of the spine) and three-column spinal instability often require **combined anterior and posterior decompression, reconstruction, and instrumentation**. Anterior screw plates provide a strong tension band to resist vertical/horizontal translation and neck extension; however, they are less able to resist flexion or rotation. By contrast, posterior cervical plates strongly resist flexion or rotation, but are less able to resist extension. Thus, in the presence of three-column spinal instability, combined anterior and posterior instrumentation often is required. This technique provides rigid fixation of spinal segments and avoids the need for rigid external orthotic devices.

Combined instrumentation techniques are challenging and require several special considerations. Patients with any unstable C-spine may require fiberoptic intubation, intraop cervical traction, and electrophysiological monitoring. **Anterior and posterior cervical instrumentation** is usually carried out in a single surgical session although may be staged. The transition between the anterior and posterior approaches requires a specialized operating table (e.g., Jackson spinal table or Stryker frame) and careful coordination among the entire OR team. The long duration of surgery may be associated with increased incidence of respiratory complications, blood loss, and prolonged ICU stays. In rare instances, an additional anterior or posterior approach may be performed ("540-degree procedure").

Usual preop diagnosis: C-spine injury causing three-column (severe, unstable) injuries; cervicothoracic junctional pathologies; correction of kyphotic deformities; panvertebral disorders involving C-spine (neoplasms, infection, spondylitic myelopathy); failed symptomatic anterior cervical fusions

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

	Cervical Laminotomy/ Foraminotomy	Cervical Laminectomy with Instrumentation	Combined Anterior/ Posterior Cervical Instrumentation
Position	Prone or sitting; pin fixation or horseshoe headrest	Prone; pin fixation or horseshoe headrest	⇐ + supine
Incision	Posterior midline neck	⇐	⇐ + transverse or longitudinal anterolateral
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope for intradural procedures	⇐ + implants, pedicle screws with plates	Implants; anterior and posterior plates with screws
Unique considerations	Fiberoptic intubation; I.I. to assess correct level	⇐ ; I.I. for screw placement	Implants; anterior and posterior plates with screws
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–2 h	⇐ Add 30–45 min/level of instrumentation	4–5 h
EBL	25–500 mL	⇐	250–600 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐; sometimes needs short ICU stay
Mortality	0–3%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	All < 5%: Neurological deterioration Myelopathy Nerve-root injury CSF leak Postop instability Infection	⇐ ⇐ additionally: Instrumentation failure Vascular injury Nerve-root injury 2° screws	5–10% ⇐ additionally: Bone graft dislodgement Respiratory problems
Pain score	2–6	5–10	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	18–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male: Female	1:2
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic; congenital; degenerative; infections; rheumatoid arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 108.

Suggested Reading

1. Cason GW, Herkowitz HN: Cervical intervertebral disc replacement. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2013; 95(3):279–85.
2. Collias JC, Roberts MP: Posterior surgical approaches for cervical disk herniation and spondylitic myelopathy. In: Schmidek HH, ed. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2016–28.

ANTERIOR CERVICOTHORACIC SPINE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The **anterior approach** to the **cervicothoracic junction** (CTJ-C7-T3) is performed for discectomy, stabilization of spinal fractures, tumor resection, spinal reconstruction, and instrumentation. Anterior approaches to the CTJ often are challenging, as this area represents a rapid transition from cervical lordosis to thoracic kyphosis, resulting in abrupt increase in the depth of the wound. The confluence of great vessels and visceral (trachea, esophagus) and neural structures at the thoracic inlet makes them susceptible to injury. The modified anterior approach utilizes a "hockey stick" incision to allow greater access to the lower cervical and upper thoracic spine. This technique does not require any additional bone resection during the approach. The **transsternal** approach involves a longitudinal incision along the anterior border of the sternomastoid, extended over the midline of the sternum to the xiphisternum. The sternum is divided using an oscillating saw and retracted to expose the anterior aspect of the CTJ. The wide exposure available with this approach permits vertebral resection, reconstruction, and instrumentation. The **transclavicular** approach involves a T-shaped incision over the clavicles, with a vertical limb extending down the midline of the sternum. Subplatysmal flaps are elevated, and the sternal and clavicular heads of the sternomastoid are detached from their origin and retracted superolaterally. The medial third of the clavicle and manubrium are resected to provide an excellent direct anterior approach to the CTJ for vertebral decompression, reconstruction, and stabilization.

Variant procedure and approaches: **Axillary thoracotomy and high transthoracic thoracotomy** approaches permit an anterolateral exposure to CTJ. As these procedures involve entering the thoracic cavity, they typically require OLV during the procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: C7-T3 disc disease, fracture, tumor, and deformity

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES			
	Transsternal Approach	**Transclavicular Approach**	**Axillary/High Thoracotomy**
Position	Supine	⇐	Lateral
Incision	Longitudinal incision along anterior border of sternomastoid	T-shaped incision over clavicles with a vertical limb down the midline of sternum	Lateral chest wall

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Transsternal Approach	Transclavicular Approach	Axillary/High Thoracotomy
Special instrumentation	Anterior cervical plates Special oscillating saw for sternal opening	⇐ Special blades for clavicular resection	⇐
Unique considerations	OLV not necessary	⇐	OLV necessary
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–4 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Soft cervical collar	⇐	⇐
EBL	200–500 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	1–2%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Wound infection/breakdown Injury to great vessels at thoracic inlet	⇐ ⇐ Cosmetic deformity	⇐ ⇐ Respiratory problems
Pain score	7–10	7–10	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–50 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Disc herniations; trauma; tumor; infections

Suggested Reading

1. Kim DH, Beck CE, Dietz DD, et al: Surgical approaches to the cervicothoracic junction. In: Schmidek HH, ed. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2107–21.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR CERVICAL NEUROSURGICAL PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: anterior/posterior fusion/fixation of upper and mid/lower C-spine; anterior cervicothoracic spine surgery)

PREOPERATIVE

Surgery of the C-spine is common primarily because of the frequency of herniation of a cervical intervertebral disc causing compression of the adjacent spinal nerve roots. Other less frequent indications for cervical surgery include

acute or chronic instability of the neck requiring fusion, removal of a tumor of the spinal cord, or craniocervical decompression for Arnold-Chiari malformation.

Respiratory	Trauma to the head and high C-spine may be associated with loss of consciousness and/or acute respiratory failure resulting in severe hypoxemia and hypercapnia. These cases require immediate airway control. While efforts should be made to minimize neck movement, these concerns should not be allowed to delay the restoration of adequate ventilation and oxygenation. Direct laryngoscopy with manual in-line stabilization is a rapid and reasonable approach to emergently securing the airway without producing excessive neck motion. If a video laryngoscope or a fiberoptic bronchoscope is immediately available, these techniques may allow airway control with less motion of the neck, but may also take more time to perform. C-spine trauma patients should be assessed for the presence of other injuries such as pulmonary contusion, pneumo- or hemothorax, tracheal injury, or facial injury that may affect pulmonary function, impede ventilation, or make airway control difficult. **Tests**: Consider ABG to quantify the degree of respiratory impairment, if present.
Cardiovascular	Acute fractures of the C-spine and associated spinal cord trauma may → ↓ sympathetic tone → ↓BP and ↓HR (neurogenic or spinal shock). Generally, this condition can be treated effectively with crystalloid and/or colloid infusion and atropine to ↑ HR. Rarely is it necessary to use vasopressors to maintain BP or HR. If spinal cord injury is suspected, an A-line must be placed, and MAP should be > 80 mm Hg at all times to avoid vascular insufficiency of the spinal cord. Severe cervical spine disease may compromise blood flow through the vertebral arteries. If present, careful positioning and maintenance of adequate MAP are essential. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	Patients with herniation of a cervical disc generally complain first of pain in the neck, particularly with lateral rotation of the head. The pain may radiate down one or, rarely, both arms. As nerve compression continues, patients begin to develop weakness and atrophy of specific muscle groups in the arm. These Sx, however, are not specific to herniation of a disc and may be caused by a spinal cord tumor or cyst. Patients with acute fractures of the neck and attendant spinal cord trauma at the T1 level may be paraplegic to some degree, whereas fractures above C5 may result in quadriplegia and loss of phrenic nerve function. Injuries between these two levels result in variable loss of motor and sensory functions in the upper extremities. A careful documentation of preop sensory and motor deficits is important. Be aware that changes in the head or neck position may alter patient signs and symptoms. **Tests:** MRI is the primary diagnostic test to evaluate disease affecting the spinal cord. Patients with suspected acute cervical trauma are usually evaluated with multiple imaging techniques.
Hematologic	Antiplatelet agents should be stopped 10 d before elective surgery. At least 2 U of PRBCs should be crossmatched if large blood loss is anticipated. Expect more blood loss during surgeries involving multiple levels, tumor resection (especially metastases), or at C1 and C2. **Tests**: Hct; T&C, others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Elective cases for chronic disease should be premedicated as usual. Acute trauma victims demand extreme caution with premedication since the possibility of intoxication, brain, chest, and/or spinal cord trauma may predispose the patient to serious adverse effects. Proper topicalization and cautious sedation (consider dexmedetomidine: load 0.5–1 mcg/kg over 10 min) are critical when attempting awake intubation to prevent coughing and gagging-induced motion of the neck.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	It is important to discuss the severity of the surgical lesion and the planned intubation with the surgeon before proceeding. The ideal technique for airway management in patients with cervical spine disease remains a topic of debate. All airway management techniques (including mask ventilation) will likely result in some C-spine movement, but direct laryngoscopy seems to result in more motion than other intubation techniques. Minimizing neck motion during airway management is an important goal. For patients with a stable neck, orotracheal intubation using standard laryngoscopy is acceptable. Manual inline stabilization will likely reduce neck motion, but will also make direct laryngoscopy more difficult. Alternative techniques should be employed in patients with an unstable C-spine, if a difficult airway is anticipated or if neck manipulation exacerbates symptoms. Depending on the clinical situation, fiberoptic intubation before or after induction (with or without an LMA; see p. B-5 for details), a lighted stylet device, or a video laryngoscope (e.g., a Glidescope®) might be most appropriate (with care being taken to minimize neck motion). An awake intubation has the advantage of permitting a neurological assessment after intubation and positioning. Consider using a wire-reinforced tube as it allows for maximal bending of the tube to remove it from the surgical field, and it will not be compressed by the Dingman retractor. A wire-reinforced tube may be useful when the surgical procedure is to be done in the prone position. Whether it is done before or after intubation, induction is typically accomplished with propofol 0.5–2.5 mg/kg. If MEP monitoring will be used, consider succinylcholine or low dose rocuronium (0.5 mg/kg) vs. deep anesthesia and remifentanil bolus (1.5 mcg/kg) to facilitate intubation yet permit the rapid return of neuromuscular transmission.
Maintenance	If no neurophysiologic monitoring is used, then standard maintenance (see p. B-3) is sufficient. Neuromuscular blockade with rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg is helpful for positioning the patient and insertion of the Dingman retractor. After muscle dissection is complete and the retractors are in place, further use of relaxants is usually not necessary. When EP monitoring is used the anesthetic plan must be adapted to ensure optimal monitoring conditions. Standard NMB doses will completely abolish MEPs and must be avoided although small NMB doses may be needed to suppress interfering EMG activity. Doses > 0.5 MAC each of a volatile anesthetic and N_2O interfere with MEP and, to a lesser extent, SSEP monitoring. An anesthetic consisting of 50% N_2O in O_2 with up to 0.6% isoflurane in combination with a remifentanil infusion (0.05–2mcg/kg/min) will provide anesthesia while permitting both MEP and SSEP monitoring. TIVA (see p. B-3) may be preferred by local custom when monitoring EPs but is not necessary. The neurophysiology monitoring team must be updated when conditions that affect the evoked potentials change (depth of anesthesia, anesthetic agent, blood pressure, PCO_2, PO_2). As soon as neuro monitoring is complete, switching to an inhaled anesthetic and stopping the propofol will allow for a timely emergence. In general, keep MAP > 80 mm Hg to ensure adequate perfusion pressure to the cord.
Emergence	If a cervical fusion has been performed and the patient has been returned to a halo device or body jacket, it is desirable to leave ETT in place until the patient is fully awake, responding to commands, and able to manage his/her own airway as reintubation is likely to be difficult. **NB:** Immediate airway obstruction 2° soft-tissue occlusion or superior laryngeal nerve damage may occur on extubation. A useful way to test for airway patency is to deflate the cuff of the tracheal tube and determine that the patient is able to breathe around the tube as well as through it. If there is any question about adequacy of the airway, it is prudent to leave the ETT in place and spray lidocaine 4% 4 mL down the trachea using a laryngotracheal anesthesia device (LTA) before emergence. This technique will usually prevent or minimize coughing or bucking on the ETT for about 15–30 min. One also should consider inserting an airway exchange catheter (AEC) through the ETT before its removal.

Emergence (cont'd)	AECs are well tolerated and can be left in place until one is confident that no further airway compromise will occur. So long as the AEC is not touching the carina, it will not induce coughing or bucking, and the patient can talk without difficulty. This catheter will provide a conduit for immediate reinsertion of an ETT if airway obstruction from early or delayed swelling, bleeding, or hematoma formation should occur. Remifentanil will not provide postop analgesia and a longer acting opioid (e.g. hydromorphone 0.2–0.6mg iv) must be administered prior to emergence.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h T&C 1–2 units depending on type of surgery	While blood transfusion is rarely needed for operations on the C-spine, expect more blood loss during surgeries involving multiple levels, tumor resection (especially metastases), or C1 and C2.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line ± Precordial Doppler ± Urinary catheter ± BIS monitor MEP/SSEP	If a standard BP cuff is to be used, consider placing it on a leg at the ankle. If placed on an arm without rigid protection (e.g., sleds), the surgeons tend to lean on the cuff, making it difficult to take consistent, reliable measurements. If the patient has a CV, respiratory, or metabolic disorder (e.g., insulin-dependent diabetes), consider inserting an arterial catheter. For patients with spinal cord injury or severe stenosis, an arterial line should be placed prior to induction when hypotension is most likely. If a posterior surgical approach with patient in seated position is planned, arterial and CVP catheters should be placed. If a CVC is placed for the purpose of aspirating air from the RA, then its location must be confirmed before the start of surgery by x-ray, transcatheter ECG, or echocardiography. A precordial Doppler flow probe also should be placed on the anterior chest wall; confirm position by injecting 1 mL of agitated NS into CVP line and listening for the characteristic change in Doppler sound, alternatively by transcatheter ECG or by x-ray.
Positioning	Supine: ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Shoulder roll ± Cervical traction	For **anterior cervical discectomy** and/or fusion, patient is positioned supine with a roll under the shoulders or neck, and the head is moderately extended. A cervical strap may be placed below the chin and behind the occiput and attached to a weight of 5–10 lb hung over the head of the bed. If patient is in a halo or tongs, 5–10 lb of weight are attached to the device. Alternatively, the surgeon may request traction intermittently during insertion of bone plugs for fusion. The surgical incision can be made on either side of the neck at the discretion of the surgeon.
	Prone: ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes ✓ genitalia	The head will usually be placed in a Mayfield 3-point attachment. Ensure that there is no posterior pressure on the ETT, as it can injure the uvula or soft palate.

Positioning (cont'd)		Ensure a neutral C-spine position. Malpositioning, when maintained for several hours, may result in catastrophic damage to the spinal cord. If there are signs of cord dysfunction on evoked potential monitoring with no obvious physiologic or surgical explanation, consider adjustments to the position of the head to try to relieve any occult malpositioning.
	Sitting: ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes VAE monitoring: ✓ ETT position	Although seldom used today, there are some advantages to the sitting position compared to the prone position. For the surgeon: (a) easier access to the lesion; (b) less blood loss; (c) less interference from CSF; and (d) lower incidence of neurological injury. For the anesthesiologist: (a) less chance of ETT and line dislodgement; (b) less chance for inadvertent pressure injury; (c) easier assessment and management of ventilation; and (d) easier access to patient for insertion of additional catheters, if necessary. NB: measure (or calculate) blood pressure at the level of the head to avoid cerebral hypoperfusion. The previous notes of caution about malpositioning of the neck apply in the sitting position as well.
Complications	VAE	The major disadvantage of the sitting position is the risk of VAE, particularly paradoxical air embolism through a PFO (or, rarely, through the pulmonary circulation) → CNS or coronary emboli. Incidence of VAE is up to 76% in patients operated on in the seated position. VAE is easily detected using a combination of Doppler, $ETCO_2$, and ETN_2 analysis and complications are rare. If VAE is suspected (Sx =↓$ETCO_2$, ↑ETN_2, ↓BP, dysrhythmias), notify the surgeon to flood the field, d/c N_2O, lower the head if possible, and aspirate the right atrial catheter using a syringe. This generally will confirm the Dx as well as provide treatment. If VAE continues, and the surgeon has difficulty identifying the site of air entrainment, consider using PEEP ≤ 10 cm H_2O or bilateral jugular compression to increase cerebral venous pressure. PEEP may promote paradoxical air embolism. In cases of massive systemic air embolism, hypothermia and hyperbaric oxygen therapy should be started ASAP.
	Esophagus perforation	A possible complication of anterior cervical surgery is esophageal perforation. One way to assess for this type of injury is to flood the operative field with saline and then force air though the oropharynx and look for any signs of bubbling. These can be occult and manifest postop as fistulas as well.
	Retraction nerve injury	Another potential complication of anterior surgery is retraction injury to various nerves including the recurrent laryngeal. Pressure can be taken off the nerve by reducing the ETT cuff pressure once the retractors are in place to mitigate any compression due to the nerve being trapped between the retractor and the ET cuff.

Complications (cont'd)	Hypotension (calculate MAP at head level)	↓ BP caused by venous pooling, inadequate venous return → ↓ CO can be treated by wrapping lower extremities while patient is supine, infusing adequate fluid volume to maintain right heart filling pressure, and avoiding excessive depth of anesthesia. Any **acute** drop in MAP may be due to a vascular injury, either obvious (vertebral artery injury) or occult (deep great vessel injury) until proven otherwise. The source of bleeding should be identified. Again, be sure to measure (or calculate) blood pressure at the level of the head to avoid cerebral hypoperfusion.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway obstruction, edema Hematoma Neurologic deficit	Airway obstruction is usually the result of soft tissue falling back against the posterior pharyngeal wall, which may be difficult to correct by forward displacement of the mandible. Tissue edema from prone positioning and surgical manipulation, vocal cord paresis from recurrent laryngeal nerve injury, or hematoma formation may also contribute. Obstruction may require oral or nasal airway or reintubation. Consider inserting an airway exchange catheter before removing the ET tube. If a hematoma is suspected as the cause of respiratory distress, the wound must be opened immediately for evacuation. This should be done before any attempts at intubation, because direct laryngoscopy may not be possible if tracheal compression distorts the view. Emergent tracheostomy or cricothyrotomy can be lifesaving in patients with extreme soft tissue swelling.
	Tension pneumothorax	Delayed respiratory insufficiency usually is caused by either development of a tension pneumothorax or from bleeding into the neck at the surgical site, with progressive compression of the airway. If a tension pneumothorax is suspected and circulatory signs are stable, immediate CXR should confirm the Dx. If circulation is failing, an 18- or 20-ga needle catheter should be inserted immediately anteriorly at the 2nd intercostal space on the suspected side to relieve the pneumothorax. If the Dx is airway obstruction from bleeding into the neck, the wound should be opened immediately and clots and blood removed. This should be done before any attempts at intubation because direct laryngoscopy may not be possible if tracheal deviation distorts the view. Emergent tracheostomy or cricothyrotomy can be lifesaving.

Complications (cont'd)	Tension pneumothorax (cont'd)	It is sometimes difficult to distinguish airway obstruction from tension pneumothorax by physical signs. One useful way is to check for the "puff sign." With airway obstruction from any cause, what gas moves in and out of the airway does so very slowly because of an obstruction. In contrast, with tension pneumothorax, gas moves out of airway with great speed because of high intrapleural pressure. By applying positive pressure to the airway and listening at the patient's mouth for the sound of gas escaping as airway pressure is released, one hears either a puff or jet of air escaping (tension pneumothorax) or slow, gradual exit of air (airway obstruction).
Pain management	IV hydromorphone IV acetaminophen PCA	0.2–0.6 mg IV before emergence 1 g q 6 h for adults, 15 mg/kg q 6 h if ≤ 50 kg or ≤ 12 yr. (see p. C-3).
Tests	CXR (as indicated) Hct	Repeat neurological exam prior to discharge from PACU.

Suggested Readings

1. Aziz M: Airway management in neuroanesthesiology. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(2):229–40.
2. Cason GW, Herkowitz HN: Cervical intervertebral disc replacement. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2013; 95(3):279–85.
3. Cavallone LF, Vannucci A: Review article: Extubation of the difficult airway and extubation failure. *Anesth Analg* 2013 Feb; 116(2):368–83.
4. Chen CJ, Saulle D, Fu KM, et al: Dysphagia following combined anterior-posterior cervical spine surgeries. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2013 Sep; 19(3):279–87.
5. Crosby ET: Airway management in adults after cervical spine trauma. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 104:1293.
6. Fehlings MG, Brodke DS, Norvell DC, Dettori JR: The evidence for intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring in spine surgery: does it make a difference? *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 2010; 35(9 Suppl):S37–46.
7. Isley MR, Zhang XF, Balzer JR, Leppanen RE: Current trends in pedicle screw stimulation techniques: lumbosacral, thoracic, and cervical levels. *Neurodiagn J* 2012; 52(2):100–75.
8. Joglekar SB, Mehbod AA: Surgeon's view of pedicle screw implantation for the monitoring neurophysiologist. *J Clin Neurophysiol* 2012; 29(6):482–8.
9. Larson CP: A safe, effective, reliable modification of the ASA difficult airway algorithm for adult patients. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth* 2002; 23:1–12.

ANTERIOR THORACIC SPINE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The **anterior approach** to the mid and lower thoracic spine (T4-T12/L1) is performed for spinal fracture, scoliosis/kyphosis, tumor, and infection. The **anterior transthoracic approach** provides a wide and easy exposure of the thoracic spine from T4-T10. The patient is placed in a lateral decubitus position (right or left, based on spinal pathology). An incision is made over the involved vertebrae and extended rostrally one or two intercostal spaces. The muscles and ribs are retracted, the pleura are opened, and lungs retracted to expose the vertebral bodies. Discectomy, corpectomy, bony reconstruction, and stabilization can be performed as

required under radiographic guidance. The risk of spinal cord injury depends on the extent of surgery and reconstruction. The complex vasculature can be challenging. Hemostasis is vital to prevent hemothorax. Chylothorax and lymphatic injury are rare.

The **transition zone** at the thoracolumbar (TL) spine (T11-L1) is somewhat difficult to expose and requires a combined transthoracic and retroperitoneal approach through the diaphragm **(thoracolumbar transdiaphragmatic approach)**. A left-sided approach is preferred because it is easier to retract the spleen and stomach than the liver. The skin incision is made over the 10th rib, down to thoracic muscles, and the rib is resected subperiosteally to provide wide exposure. Blunt dissection separates the peritoneum from the undersurface of the diaphragm and lateral and posterior abdominal walls. With gentle retraction of the lung and abdominal contents, the diaphragm is well visualized and is sectioned circumferentially from the chest wall. This provides an excellent exposure of the anterior aspect of the TL junction. Most procedures can be performed with minimal retraction of lung tissue at this level; thus, OLV is not typically required. Vertebral resection, reconstruction, and stabilization are performed with radiographic guidance. Reconstruction of the diaphragm is important to prevent herniation. This is rare with pure retroperitoneal approaches.

Variant procedure or approach: **An 11th rib extrapleural-retroperitoneal approach** offers an alternative approach to the TL junction. It provides excellent exposure without the need to incise the diaphragm, resulting in less morbidity and reduced risk of pulmonary complications. Because the pleural cavity is not entered, chest drains and OLV are not needed.

Thoracoscopic spine surgery: This technically challenging procedure is performed in the lateral position with GA, using OLV. Four or more 10–15 mm portals are made, with the working portal centered over the target vertebra. The optical (scope) portal is placed two or three intercostal spaces cranial to the target vertebra. Separate portals anterior to the working channel allow suction/irrigation and retraction. When using **thoracoscopic instrumentation**, hardware is placed through the portals in the chest wall under fluoroscopic guidance. Blood loss must be minimized as hemostasis is difficult with this approach. Because instrumentation requires a wide exposure of the spine, OLV is essential. The major advantages of thoracoscopic surgery include minimal rib retraction; minimal blood loss, with consequent early removal of chest drain; reduced wound pain; early ambulation; and low morbidity. These factors combine to reduce hospital stay.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fractures (usually at the TL junction); scoliosis; primary and metastatic tumors of the spine; pyogenic and tuberculous osteomyelitis; Scheuermann's kyphosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transthoracic (T4-T10)	Transdiaphragmatic (T11-L1),10th Rib	Thoracoscopic
Position	Lateral decubitus + axillary roll	⇐	⇐
Incision	Over involved vertebrae	Along 10th rib	3–4 portals (10–15 mm)
Special instrumentation	Anterior thoracic instrumentation/cages	⇐	Thoracoscopic spinal instrumentation
Unique considerations	DLT ± OLV	⇐	DLT; OLV mandatory
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2–6 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Transfer to bed before emergence. **NB:** sudden movement may dislodge grafts or implants.	⇐	⇐ + May need closure of diaphragm.
EBL	200–5,000 mL; nontumor cases: 200–400 mL	⇐	50–200 mL
Postop care	Chest tube to water seal	⇐	⇐
	Chest physiotherapy/incentive spirometer Short ICU stay is usual. Bleeding > 200 mL/h → re-exploration		Shorter period of chest drain/ICU stay

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Transthoracic (T4-T10)	Transdiaphragmatic (T11-L1),10th Rib	Thoracoscopic
Mortality	3–5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Overall: 5–15%	⇐	⇐ + Problems with OLV
	DVT	⇐	
			Conversion to open surgery: 4%
	Neurological: 1–2%	⇐	
	Infection	⇐	–
	Vascular injury	⇐	–
	Sepsis	⇐	–
	Atelectasis	⇐	⇐
	Pneumonia	⇐	⇐
Pain score	7–10	7–10	5–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	12–30 yr (scoliosis surgery); > 40 yr (tumor and infection surgery)
Male:Female	1:1; except for > scoliosis surgery in females
Incidence	20,000/yr
Etiology	Scoliosis, idiopathic (50%); trauma (20%); scoliosis, neuromuscular (15%); infections, tumors (10%); scoliosis, congenital (5%)
Associated conditions	See Etiology

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Thoracolumbar Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 127.

Suggested Readings

1. Francaviglia N, Maiello M: Anterolateral techniques for stabilization in the thoracic spine. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2141–5.
2. Johnson MR, Murphy JM, Southwick OW: Surgical approaches to the spine. In: Herkowitz NH, Garfin RS, eds. *The Spine.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1999, 1463–1571.
3. Kim M, Nolan P, Finkelstein JA: Evaluation of 11th rib extrapleural-retroperitoneal approach to the thoracolumbar junction. *J Neurosurgery (Spine)* 2000; 93:168–74.
4. Kumar R, Dunsker SB: Surgical management of thoracic disc herniation. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques*. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2122–40.
5. Kurz LT, Pursel SE, Herkowitz HN: Modified anterior approach to the cervicothoracic junction. *Spine* 1991; 16(10 Suppl): S542–47.
6. Sundaresan N, Shah J, Feghali JG: A transsternal approach to the upper thoracic vertebrae. *Am J Surg* 1984; 148:473–7.
7. Sunderesan N, Shah J, Foley KM, et al: An anterior approach to upper thoracic vertebrae. *J Neurosurg* 1984; 61: 686–90.

POSTERIOR THORACIC SPINE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Thoracic laminectomy** (midline removal of the lamina) and **costotransversectomy** (off midline removal of the rib head and transverse process) are procedures for decompressing the neural elements of the thoracic spine via a posterior approach. (Commonly used approaches are shown in Fig. 1.3-12.)

Thoracic laminectomy is used to treat spinal cord compression due to disc herniation, neoplasm, or trauma. It also is used to gain access to the spinal canal or spinal cord for various intradural mass lesions, including syringomyelia. Thoracic laminectomy is done through a posterior midline incision centered over the involved vertebrae. The paraspinal muscles are retracted subperiosteally from the spinous processes and laminae on both sides. Laminae are removed piecemeal with rongeurs or drills. Extensive laminectomy involving several segments or requiring removal of facet joints may require stabilization with transpedicular screws or hooks. Intradural procedures are performed with an operating microscope and microneurosurgical instruments. After completion of the intradural procedure, watertight closure of the dura is obtained and tested with Valsalva maneuver (sustained inspiration at 30–40 cm H_2O).

A **transpedicular approach** may be indicated for removal of herniated discs, excision or decompression of tumors, and the treatment of infection involving vertebral bodies. This procedure is performed in the prone position through a posterior midline incision centered over the affected vertebrae. The paraspinal muscles are retracted subperiosteally on both sides to expose laminae and facet joints. Facet joints and the superior half of the involved pedicle are drilled out to expose the lateral limits of the thecal sac and the nerve roots. A laterally herniated disc can be removed in a piecemeal fashion. If required, total removal of the pedicle is done to facilitate adequate bony decompression. Posterior instrumentation by pedicle screws, sublaminar wiring with rods, or a hook-rod construct may be performed.

The **lateral extracavitary approach** is a modification of a **costotransversectomy** and provides access to the anterior and posterior elements of the spine, thereby avoiding the need for a thoracotomy. This approach is performed with the patient in the prone position. A midline skin incision is made three levels above and below the involved vertebrae. The lower part of the incision may be curved over the involved side, if needed. A myocutaneous flap is developed by dissecting the scapular muscles (trapezius, rhomboids, etc.) laterally. Paraspinal muscles are freed from the spinous processes and dorsal spinal elements to enable retraction, which exposes the entire rib cage and dorsal vertebral elements. Subperiosteal resection, from its costovertebral tip to the posterior bend of the appropriate rib is done. The parietal pleura are gently separated from the ribs and the vertebrae to expose the posterolateral aspect of the vertebral bodies. The transverse process, pedicle, and laminae are removed, as required, to permit direct visualization of the cord during decompression of the vertebral body. Discectomy/corpectomy, vertebral reconstruction, and instrumentation are performed as required. Complete spondylectomy and anterior reconstruction is possible with this approach with minimal retraction to the cord. Combined anterior-posterior instrumentation can

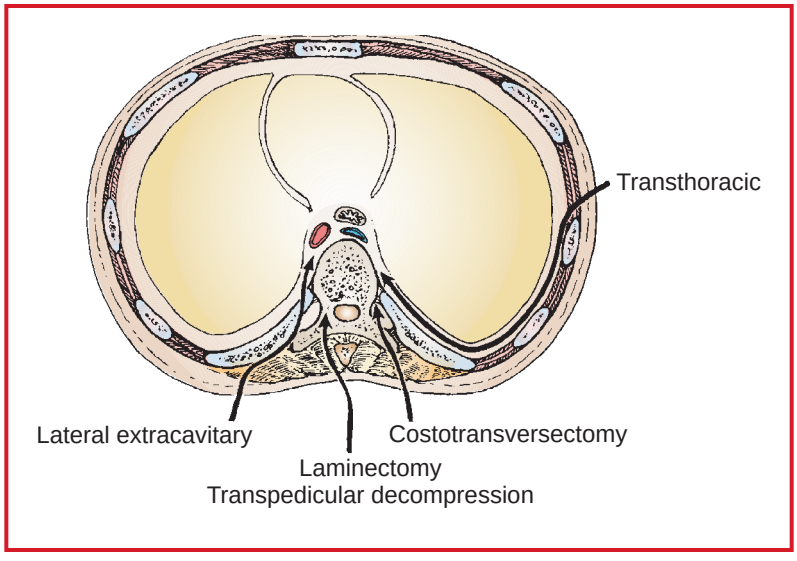


Figure 1.3-12. Surgical approaches to the thoracic spine. (Reproduced with permission from Tindall GT, Cooper PR, Barrow DL: *The Practice of Neurosurgery*, Vol. II. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1996.)

be used to leverage off each other for deformity correction. At the end of the procedure, the operative field is filled with saline to check for any evidence of air leak. A small chest tube can be placed if an air leak is present. A layered wound closure with drain is performed.

Thoracic pedicle screws have largely replaced the older hook-rod construct and **Harrington** rods as the fixation of choice. These can be technically challenging because the thoracic pedicles tend to be rather narrow and variable. Potential complications include injury to surrounding nerves, spinal cord, blood vessels (both local and great vessel), and lung parenchyma.

Usual preop diagnosis: Thoracic radiculopathy (nerve-root compression); thoracic disc disease (herniation or degeneration of thoracic disc); thoracic myelopathy (spinal cord compression); thoracic canal stenosis (degenerative); infections (TB, pyogenic osteomyelitis) and tumors to spine (primary bone tumors or metastatic); intraspinal tumors; syringomyelia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thoracic Laminectomy	Transpedicular Approach	Lateral Extracavitary Approach
Position	Prone	⇐	⇐
Incision	Posterior midline	⇐	⇐; with/without hockey-stick extension
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope ± EP monitoring ± Pedicle screws/hooks	⇐	⇐ ± anterior and posterior spinal instrumentation
Unique considerations	I.I. localization	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	⇐ Add 30–45 min for bony/tumor decompression	3–7 h, based on need for anterior bony resection/ reconstruction
Closing considerations	Often no cast	TL support/orthosis	⇐
EBL	100–1000 mL	200–1000 mL	300–3000 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐ ± ICU
Mortality	0–5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	All < 5% Neurological: Myelopathy Nerve-root injury Massive blood loss CSF leak	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–10	6–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–85 yr (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Neoplastic; traumatic; congenital; degenerative

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Thoracolumbar Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 127.

Suggested Readings

1. Fessler RG: Lateral extracavitary and extrapleural approaches to the thoracic and lumbar spine. In: Menezes AH, Sonntag VKH, eds. *The Principles of Spine Surgery.* McGraw-Hill, New York: 1995, 1279–91.
2. Kim DH, Beck CE, Dietz DD, et al: Surgical approaches to the cervicothoracic junction. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2107–21.
3. Kumar R, Dunsler SB: Surgical management of thoracic disc herniation. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2122–31.

ANTERIOR LUMBAR/LUMBOSACRAL SPINE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The use of anterior procedures is steadily increasing among spine surgeons. Most procedures permit short-segment instrumentation of the spine, which often obviates the need for subsequent posterior fixation. The most significant disadvantage of these procedures involves the risk of injury to the great vessels; thus, these procedures are commonly done in association with a vascular or general surgeon. There is also risk of injury to the peritoneal contents and the neural plexus around the lumbosacral spine. Anterior instrumentation systems generally fall into three categories: (a) **plating systems** (e.g., Z plating, anterior locking plates, and MACS-TL); (b) **rod systems** (e.g., Kostuik-Harrington, Kaneda, and Moss-Miami); and (c) **interbody devices** (e.g., cages and allografts).

An **anterior lumbar interbody fusion** (ALIF) can be done with artificial cages or bone. After exposure of the disc space, the exact midline of the space is marked and verified with fluoroscopy. A spacing guide determines the exact position for pilot holes, and a partial discectomy is performed through these pilot holes, which are

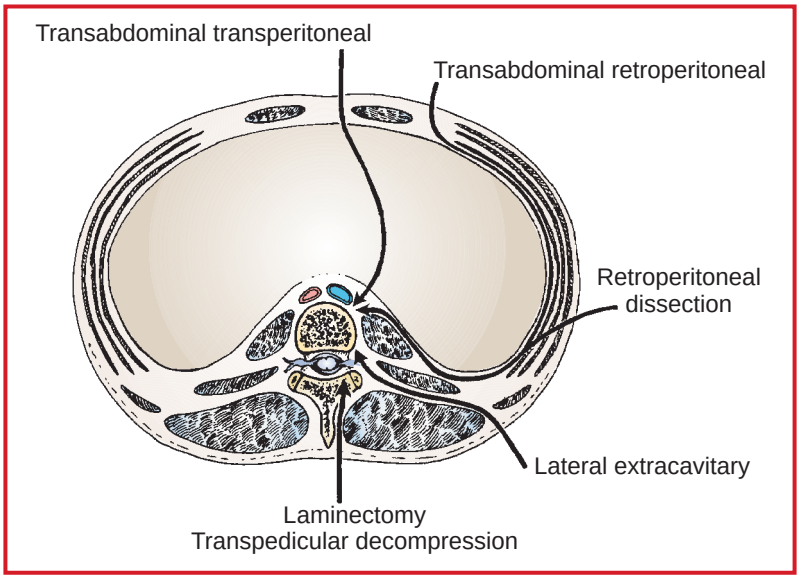


Figure 1.3-13. Surgical approaches to the lumbar spine. (Reproduced with permission from Tindall GT, Cooper PR, Barrow DL: *The Practice of Neurosurgery*, Vol. II. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1996.)

distracted and later reamed. Bone or cage is then attached to a specialized implant driver for insertion under fluoroscopic guidance. Harvested bone chips and other fusion enhancers are placed into the cages or around the bone dowel. Anterior lumbar interbody fusion provides immediate mechanical stability and long-term load support, with the ability to heal through the disc space. Its primary disadvantages include bleeding and possible major vessel injury.

A **lumbar artificial disc** can be placed via this approach. The approach is similar to that of the ALIF but instead of placing a bone graft or cage, a mobile prosthetic disc is placed according to manufacturer's instruction. No additional stabilization or bone grafting is required. Accurate placement of this disc is absolutely critical to the success of this procedure. Fluoroscopy is used extensively to ensure this. There is immediate stability and because motion is preserved, early mobilization is recommended.

Anterior instrumentation after ALIF can be done with a variety of screws and/or plates. These include a screw and screw/plate combination to buttress the graft from falling out. Other devices provide plate stabilization across interspaces. These can be used alone or with a posterior stabilization surgery. These add time to the anterior case and run the risk of hardware failure, but have the advantage of potentially improving the overall fusion rate and decreasing the graft related complications.

A **transperitoneal approach** involves laparotomy through a Pfannenstiel's or subumbilical vertical midline incision. After opening the peritoneum, intestines are retracted to expose the anterior aspect of lower lumbar and lumbosacral spine, an exposure that is often difficult to achieve with the retroperitoneal approach. Exposure of L4-L5 disc spaces requires mobilization of the aorta and inferior vena cava, along with its bifurcations.

Variants of the transperitoneal approach: **A laparoscopic transperitoneal approach** often is used at the L5-S1 level. With the patient supine, Trendelenburg position is used to move the small intestine away from the operative field. The procedure is performed through one 10-mm portal for a 30° endoscope, two 5-mm portals for retraction, and one 20-mm working portal for instruments. For access to the L5-S1 level, the posterior peritoneum is incised at the base of the sigmoid mesocolon with endoscopic scissors. Laparoscopic interbody fusion and instrumentation is performed as required, using specially designed long-alignment tubes, distraction plugs, and a reamer, as in the open procedure. The peritoneum is closed with endoscopic sutures or clips. The major advantages of this technique are related to the minimal manipulation of abdominal viscera required and minimal trauma to the abdominal wall. In addition, postop pain, recovery time, and length of hospitalization are often less, permitting an early return to the patient's normal activities.

Variants of the retroperitoneal approach: A lateral retroperitoneal approach provides an excellent exposure of the lumbar spine from L1-S1 through a flank incision. The procedure is performed in the lateral decubitus position. The skin incision is made from the lateral border of the paravertebral muscles at the midlumbar level to the lateral border of the rectus abdominis. The incision is angulated below the umbilicus for exposure of the lower lumbar and lumbosacral junction and is carried down to the peritoneum.

The **supine retroperitoneal approach** is accomplished through a left paramedian incision, and the peritoneum and abdominal contents are retracted. This is one of the most common approaches. Ligation of lumbar intersegmental arteries and tributaries of the iliac vein may be required to allow a direct anterior exposure from L3-S1. An approach surgeon trained in vascular or general surgery can often expose even more. With blunt dissection, the peritoneum is peeled off the lateral and posterior abdominal walls, diaphragm, and iliopsoas, exposing the anterior aspect of the lumbar spine. Vertebral resection and reconstruction are carried out in the routine manner. During this procedure, the great vessels, ureter, and sympathetic trunk need to be protected. Monopolar cautery is avoided because it can cause injury to the presacral plexus, which can result in retrograde ejaculation.

A **laparoscopic retroperitoneal approach** can be used for performing an anterior lumbar interbody fusion following discectomy in patients with lumbar segmental instability. This procedure is performed in the right lateral decubitus position. A 10–12 mm port is made in the posterior axillary line midway between the 12th rib and iliac crest, and a trochar is advanced into the peritoneum. Retroperitoneal dissection is accomplished by balloon inflation, with 1,000 mL of air or saline, through a trochar. This procedure is carried out under direct vision through the laparoscope. Discectomy, fusion, or instrumentation requires two additional working portals. Retroperitoneal insufflation with CO_2 may be required during the procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Degenerative disc disease; segmental instability; vertebral fractures; benign and neoplastic diseases of lumbar spine; vertebral osteomyelitis; TB

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transperitoneal Instrumentation	Retroperitoneal Instrumentation	Endoscopic Approach
Position	Supine	Supine/lateral decubitus	Right lateral decubitus
Incision	Pfannenstiel's/vertical subumbilical	Flank incision	3–4 ports
Special instrumentation	Z plates, Kaneda instrumentation, MACS-TL, femoral rings, cages; intervertebral disc replacements	⇐	Endoscopic instrumentation; balloon dissector
Unique considerations	NG tube, preop bowel prep	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–4 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Transfer to bed while anesthetized. Smooth emergence necessary to avoid graft/implant disruption.	⇐	Rapid closure of ports
EBL	200–600 mL	200–5000 mL; nontumor cases: 200–400 mL	100–500 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward; patients with infections/tumors → ICU. Postop ileus common.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Malignancy and sepsis: 1–2% Elective: < 1%	⇐ ⇐	–
Morbidity	Neurological injury: 2–6% Vascular injury: 2–15% Retrograde ejaculation: 5–35%	⇐ ⇐ < 5%	– – –
Pain score	6–7	6–7	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Variable, infant–adult (usually 20–60 yr)
Male:Female	1:1 (usually)
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Degenerative; lumbar segmental instability; neoplastic; traumatic; infectious

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Thoracolumbar Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 127.

Suggested Readings

1. Harrington FJ, Friehs G, Epstein MH: Surgical management of segmental spinal instability. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2280–302.
2. Kostuik JP, Carl A, Ferron S: Anterior Zielke instrumentation for spinal deformity in adults. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1989; 71(6):898–906.
3. Kozak JA, O'Brien JP: Simultaneous combined anterior and posterior fusion. An independent analysis of a treatment for the disabled low-back pain patient. *Spine* 1990; 15(4):322–8.
4. Leong JCY: Anterior interbody fusion. In: Lin PM, Gill K, eds. *Lumbar Interbody Fusion.* Raven Press, New York: 1989, 133–47.

POSTERIOR LUMBAR SPINE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Lumbar laminotomy** (partial removal of lamina) and **laminectomy** (complete removal of lamina) are procedures for decompressing the neural elements of the lumbar spine via a posterior approach. They can be used to treat lumbar radiculopathy 2° degenerative disc disease (e.g., herniated discs or osteophytes). **Decompressive laminectomy** can be used to treat compression of the cauda equina, usually 2° degenerative disease, congenital stenosis, neoplasm, and, occasionally, trauma. Lumbar laminectomy is also used to gain access to the spinal canal for dealing with intradural tumors, arteriovenous malformations (AVMs), and other spinal cord lesions.

Through a vertical midline incision, the lumbodorsal fascia is exposed, and then the paraspinal muscles are dissected off the spinous process and lamina of the segments intended for decompression. The level may need to be checked by intraop x-ray or fluoroscopy if the surgeon is not able to identify location based on visual confirmation of anatomic level. The bone landmarks are identified and ligamentous attachments are cut. The bone is removed piecemeal with rongeurs, gouges, or power drills. Care is taken not to injure the underlying dura. If a dural tear is found, it usually must be repaired. The surgeon may want a **Valsalva-like maneuver** (sustained inspiration at 30–40 cm H_2O) performed to test the integrity of the repair. If disc is to be removed, the dura is retracted and the annulus incised. The disc is removed piecemeal with a series of curettes and disc-biting rongeurs. There is a risk of damage to retroperitoneal structures (e.g., great vessels or intestines) during this portion of the procedure. More commonly, there may be troublesome epidural bleeding, which may be difficult to control and will necessitate transfusion. Hemostasis is obtained prior to closure. The wound is closed in layers, and a drain may be left in the epidural space. The patient is rolled supine onto a bed at the completion of the procedure.

Minimally invasive surgery (MIS) lumbar surgery is performed through a short paramedian incision at the level of the affected disc. Under radiographic guidance, a series of soft tissue dilators are inserted over a previously placed guide wire to create an operative corridor through the paraspinous musculature. A tubular retractor is inserted over the dilators and connected to a flexible support arm assembly. Endoscope or microscope is used to perform laminotomy and discectomy and/or decompressive laminectomy. As the retractor is withdrawn at the end of the procedure, the paraspinal muscles resume their normal anatomic position, obliterating the dead space. Skin margins are closed with subcuticular sutures. Although all the major risks of surgery are still present, the blood loss, postoperative pain, and hospital stay are reduced. In theory, less trauma to the paraspinous muscles compromises less the post-operative function of the spine.

Usual preop diagnosis: Lumbar radiculopathy (nerve-root compression); lumbar disc disease (herniation or degeneration of lumbar discs); lumbar canal stenosis; lateral recess stenosis; neurogenic claudication; herniated disc; metastatic tumor to spine; lumbar spine tumor; lumbar spondylosis (degeneration of lumbar spine); spondylolysis (structural defect in the pars interarticularis of the vertebra); spondylolisthesis (slipping of one vertebra over another)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Lumber Laminectomy	Lumbar Laminotomy	MIS
Position	Prone	⇐	⇐
Incision	Posterior midline	⇐	Paramedian port over disc
Special instrumentation	± Operative microscope	⇐	Endoscopic instrumentation (optional)
Unique considerations	I.I. localization to assess the correct level	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h for single level; add 0.5–1 h/additional level	2 h for single level; add 0.5 h/additional level	⇐
EBL	25–500 mL	50–1000 mL	10–50 mL
Postop care	PACU →room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	0.5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	All < 5%:	⇐	⇐
	CSF leak	⇐	⇐
	Nerve root injury	⇐	⇐
	Infection	⇐	–
	Postop instability	–	–
	Massive blood loss	–	–
	Injury to retroperitoneal structures	⇐	⇐
Pain score	4–7	4–9	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–85 yr (usually 30–60 yr)
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Degenerative; traumatic; neoplastic; infectious

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Thoracolumbar Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 127.

Suggested Readings

1. Blamoutier A: Surgical discectomy for lumbar disc herniation: surgical techniques. *Orthop Traumatol Surg Res* 2013; 99(1 Suppl):S187–96.
2. Finneson BE, Schmidek HH: Lumbar disc excision. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2219–31.
3. Foley KT, Smith MM, Raja Rampersaud Y: Microendoscopic discectomy. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2246–56.

POSTERIOR LUMBAR FUSION AND INSTRUMENTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Posterior lumbar spinal fusion** may relieve low-back pain resulting from intervertebral movement. This surgery is often indicated for segmental lumbar instability, spondylolisthesis, or iatrogenic instability due to extensive laminectomy or facetectomy.

The **pedicle screw stabilization** technique provides rigid three-column spinal fixation and is the preferred mode of instrumentation in lumbar spinal surgery (Fig. 1.3-14). Pedicle screws are passed after tapping the entry site and are fixed with rods or plates on each side of each vertebral segment. The major risks with pedicle screw fixation include screw malposition and nerve-root injury. Pedicle screws may be combined with hooks to provide fixation of the lumbar/thoracolumbar spine, an approach that improves the stability of the construct and minimizes the risk of instrumentation failure. Facet screw stabilization can also be performed to fix levels together. This is usually not used in a stand-alone fashion but in combination with anterior fixation. Instrumentation can be placed via percutaneous techniques that decrease blood loss and patient pain; however, complications often go undetected and unseen.

Posterolateral fusion (PLF) is performed through a posterior midline incision, with the paraspinal muscles retracted subperiosteally from the affected lumbar vertebrae. Decompressive laminectomy and discectomy are performed as needed. Posterolateral fusion is performed by decorticating the facet joints and transverse processes. Bone graft is then placed over the decorticated bone. Instrumentation with pedicle screws and plate/rod constructs often is done for stability and to facilitate fusion.

Posterior lumbar interbody fusion (PLIF) consists of a bilateral laminectomy and removal of the inferior facet and the medial portion of the superior facet. The dural sac is retracted, and a total discectomy, together with the removal of cartilaginous end plates, is performed. The anterior disc space is packed with bone graft. Appropriately sized rectangular bone grafts or cages are inserted into the posterior half of the disc space on both sides to provide structural support close to the center of rotation. The nerve roots above and below the disc space should be visualized during the procedure to avoid excessive retraction. Instrumentation with pedicle screws and a rod/plate construct is often added to facilitate early fusion and ambulation, while preventing the extrusion of the graft. The major advantage of this procedure is that it provides the ability to achieve combined anterior and posterior spinal fusion, while avoiding the significant morbidity often associated with anterior lumbar surgery. Its major disadvantages include the potential risk of nerve-root injury and compromise of the structural integrity of both facet joints.

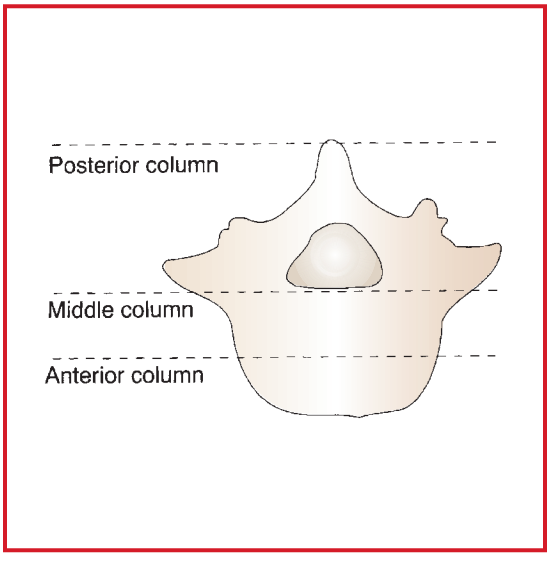


Figure 1.3-14. Spinal three-column model developed by F. Denis. Disruption of elements of two or more columns renders the spine unstable. (Reproduced with permission from Tindall GT, Cooper PR, Barrow DL: *The Practice of Neurosurgery*, Vol. II. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1996.)

Tansforaminal lumbar interbody fusion (TLIF) is a modification of the PLIF, using a unilateral posterolateral approach. A **hemilaminectomy and total facetectomy** is performed on one side. A near total discectomy is performed and the first bone graft or cage is inserted across the disc space to the contralateral side. A second bone graft may be inserted into the ipsilateral posterior disc space, and satisfactory placement of the bone grafts is confirmed by fluoroscopy. Supplemental pedicle screw stabilization is indicated as in PLIF. This approach has been adopted to be performed with MIS techniques to afford circumferential lumbar decompression and stabilization via an all posterior approach.

Direct/extreme lateral interbody fusion (DLIF/XLIF) is an MIS (minimally invasive surgery) procedure performed by having the patient positioned on his/her side where the surgeons approach to the spine will be directly laterally through the retroperitoneal cavity. A specialized retractor is used with multiple long blades that allow for visualization of the spine through the deep layers of tissue. **Neuromonitoring** (EMG nerve root mapping) is essential in the procedure to help avoid nerve injury. Therefore, when this neuromonitoring is being performed, minimal or no paralytic should be used as they may confound monitoring.

Transaxial lumbo-sacral fusion (Trans1) is an **MIS** procedure performed by having the patient positioned prone. A complete L5-S1 discectomy and fusion with screw instrumentation is performed. This is done via a 1-cm incision at the base of the sacrum. Specialized tubular dilators and shims protect the visceral contents while a reamer and disc remover tools are used to remove disc. There is minimal blood loss, but occult injury to peritoneal contents including the viscera and blood vessels can occur acutely or present in a delayed fashion.

Usual Preop diagnosis: Lumbar segmental instability; spondylolisthesis; iatrogenic lumbar instability; lumbar disc disease, spondylolysis; mechanical back pain syndrome

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Posterolateral Fusion	PLIF	TLIF (DLIF/XLIF)
Position	Prone	⇐	⇐ (DLIF/XLIF: Lateral)
Incision	Posterior midline	⇐	⇐ (DLIF/XLIF: Lateral)
Special instrumentation	Drills, pedicle screws, or hooks	⇐ ; osteotomes, curettes, bone plugs, or cages	⇐ ; angled curettes, angled impactors
Unique considerations	I.I. localization and guidance	⇐	⇐ (DLIF/XLIF: EMG)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2 h for single level + 0.5 h/ additional level	3–4 h for single level + 1 h/ additional level	2–3 h for single level + 1 h/ additional level
Closing considerations	No brace/lumbosacral corset	⇐	⇐
EBL	250–500 mL	250–1000 mL	250–750 mL (less with MIS)
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	0–5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Nonunion: 20–30% Nerve-root injury CSF leak Infection Massive blood loss	10–20% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–10	6–10	6–10 (4–7 with MIS)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–85 yr (usually 30–60 yr)
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Degenerative; traumatic; neoplastic; infectious

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Thoracolumbar Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 127.

COMBINED ANTERIOR AND POSTERIOR INSTRUMENTATION OF THE THORACIC AND LUMBAR SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients with multilevel vertebral collapse, unstable three-column injuries, severe kyphosis or scoliosis, and/or neoplastic or infective conditions involving multiple spinal levels often require **combined anterior and posterior instrumentation**. This approach provides (a) complete circumferential neural decompression, which facilitates maximal neuronal recovery; (b) rigid short-segment spinal fixation, which facilitates early ambulation with minimal orthotic support; and (c) maximal correction of deformities with low instrumentation failure and high fusion rates. The combined approach maximizes the possibility of complete resection of the neoplastic or infective process. Patients with major systemic disease or poor marrow reserve may require staged procedures. Combined instrumentation procedures are often lengthy, requiring 5–10 h of surgery. Major related morbidities include infection, wound breakdown, respiratory complications, and significant blood loss. The transition between anterior and posterior procedures should be performed carefully to minimize disruption of the instrumentation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Lumbar segmental instability; spondylolisthesis; iatrogenic lumbar instability; spondylolysis; mechanical back pain syndrome

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Prone + supine/lateral
Incision	Posterior midline skin incision + transverse
Special instrumentation	Anterior and posterior spinal implants and instrumentation sets
Unique considerations	OLV for anterior thoracic approaches; radiological localization; intraop EP monitoring (optional)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	4–10 h
EBL	500–5000 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; sometimes needs short ICU stay.
Mortality	0–3%
Morbidity	Respiratory problems: atelectasis, pneumonia Infection Bone graft dislodgement
Pain score	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	15–85 yr (usually 30–60 yr)
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Congenital, degenerative; traumatic; neoplastic; infectious

Suggested Readings

1. Denis FF: The three column spine and its significance in the classification of acute thoracolumbar spinal injuries. *Spine* 1983; 8:817–31 .
2. Harrington FJ, Friehs G, Epstein MH: Surgical management of segmental spinal instability In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2280–302.
3. Leong JCY: Anterior interbody fusion. In: Lin PM, Gill K, eds. *Lumbar Interbody Fusion.* Raven Press, New York: 1989, 133–47.
4. Lowe TG, Tahernia D: Unilateral transforaminal posterior lumbar interbody fusion. *Clin Ortho* 2002; 394:227–36.
5. Sundaresan N, Steinberger AA, Moore F, et al: Surgical management of primary and metastatic tumors of the spine. In: Schmidek HH, Sweet WH, eds. *Operative Neurosurgical Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 2146–70.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR THORACOLUMBAR NEUROSURGICAL PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: anterior/posterior thoracic spine surgery; anterior lumbar/lumbosacral spine surgery; posterior lumbar spine surgery; posterior lumbar fusion and instrumentation; combined anterior/posterior instrumentation of the thoracic and lumbar spine)

PREOPERATIVE

Surgery of the lumbar or thoracic spine is common as a result of a variety of spinal disorders, including herniation of lumbar or thoracic intervertebral disks causing compression of the adjacent spinal cord or nerve roots; spinal stenosis from bony overgrowth causing compression of the nerve roots or spinal cord; spondylolisthesis; traumatic injury to the spine; and removal of a spinal tumor or AVM. Because these diseases span a wide age range, the patients may be healthy, or they may have severe cardiovascular and/or respiratory disorders. Generally, the surgical incision is made in the posterior thoracic or lumbar region, but the surgeon may elect to use an abdominal (transperitoneal) or flank (retroperitoneal) approach. Sometimes both anterior and posterior approaches are used sequentially. Finally, some anterior abdominal or thoracic procedures are performed endoscopically.

Neurologic	Patients with a herniated disk or spinal stenosis generally complain of pain, often in the pelvis or radiating down one or both legs. As nerve or spinal cord compression continues, patients develop motor weakness and atrophy of muscle groups in the legs as well as sensory deficits and/or bowel/bladder dysfunction. These changes can also result from a spinal cord tumor, vascular malformation, or cyst. MRI helps delineate the etiology of the neural compression. **Tests:** MRI
Hematologic	Blood loss may be substantial if the surgeon plans both an anterior and posterior approach in the same patient, or if the operation includes both spinal cord decompression and posterior spinal instrumentation. For these operations, 2 U of blood should be available at all times. Consideration should also be given to using a red cell salvage device. Generally, the anticipated blood loss will be proportional to the number of levels involved in the surgery. Prepare for significant blood loss in tumor resection cases.
Laboratory	Preop Hct, platelet count, and coagulation studies—to assess baseline. Other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Anxiolysis (e.g., midazolam 2–4 mg iv) and analgesia (e.g., meperidine 25 mg iv) as necessary. These patients may be experiencing an exacerbation of their chronic pain because they have likely been off NSAIDs and may have skipped their normal AM meds.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA is almost invariably used for these operations because it maximizes patient comfort, provides airway control, and permits use of controlled hypotension. Spinal and epidural anesthesia are, in principle, excellent techniques for lumbar surgery, particularly for removal of a lumbar intervertebral disc, but they are seldom

used because of the medicolegal concern that the regional anesthetic may be blamed for a new neurological deficit, if one should occur as a result of the surgery. Regional anesthesia is generally not suitable for lumbar fusion or removal of a spinal cord tumor or cyst because of the potentially prolonged duration of the surgery.

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2) unless MEP monitoring will be used. Consider a wire-reinforced tube if the patient is to be turned prone to avoid tube kinking and occlusion. If the surgeon selects a transthoracic approach, one-lung ventilation will be necessary to deflate the lung on the operative side and a compatible airway technique must be employed (e.g., DLT, bronchial blocker). If MEP monitoring will be used, consider succinylcholine vs. low dose rocuronium (0.5 mg/kg) vs. deep anesthesia and remifentanil bolus (1.5 mcg/kg) to facilitate intubation yet permit the rapid return of neuromuscular transmission.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) will suffice if no neurophysiologic monitoring is used. Once exposure is completed with the posterior approach, muscle relaxation is no longer needed. For thoracoscopic or anterior abdominal approaches, neuromuscular blockade should be maintained until the spine surgery is complete and closure is under way. When evoked potential monitoring is used, the anesthetic plan must be adapted to ensure optimal monitoring condition. Standard NMB doses will completely abolish MEPs and must be avoided although small NMB doses may be needed to suppress interfering EMG activity. More than 0.5 MAC each of volatile anesthetics and N_2O interfere with MEP and, to a lesser extent, SSEP monitoring. An anesthetic consisting of 50% N_2O in O_2 with up to 0.6% isoflurane in combination with a remifentanil infusion (0.05–2 mcg/kg/min) will provide anesthesia while permitting MEP and SSEP monitoring. TIVA (see B-3) may be preferred by local custom when monitoring MEPs but is not necessary. The propofol infusion should be tapered as the drug saturates the various compartments of distribution. The neurophysiology monitoring team must be updated as conditions that affect the evoked potentials change (depth of anesthesia, anesthetic agent, blood pressure, PCO_2, PO_2). After the baseline SSEP and motor-evoked potentials have been established, some surgeons will request paralysis during dissection of the muscles from the bones. This can be accomplished safely with rocuronium (20–40 mg).	
Emergence	Standard emergence (p. B-4), after the patient has been returned to the supine position on a bed or gurney. If the intubation was difficult or the operation was prolonged and airway edema or respiratory depression is possible, it may be advisable to leave the patient's trachea intubated overnight. Consider performing a leak test if there is concern for airway edema and extubate over an airway exchange catheter. Keep in mind that remifentanil will not provide postop analgesia and that another longer-acting opioid (e.g. hydromorphone 0.2–0.6 mg iv) must be administered prior to emergence.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 5 mL/kg/h up to a maximum of 40 mL/kg.	To perhaps lessen the chance of ischemic optic neuropathy in the prone position, do not administer more than 40 mL/kg of crystalloid regardless of the blood loss or duration of surgery. If additional fluid is needed, administer hetastarch 6% up to a maximum of 20 mL/kg, albumin 5% or blood. Blood transfusion is often necessary when there has been extensive bony decompression and fusion. Consider the use of a red-cell salvage device if large blood loss is anticipated. Some tumors, particularly metastases, can bleed profusely. Epidural venous bleeding, particularly during an anterior approach, can also be severe and difficult to control.

Control of blood loss	Controlled hypotension	In the absence of cord compression, modest ecreases in BP may be helpful to ↓ blood loss when extensive surgery is anticipated. This may be accomplished with anesthetics and opiates, or by the use of α- and β-blockers (e.g., labetalol, esmolol) and SNP. BP values ~ 20% below the patient's lowest recorded pressure when awake are usually satisfactory, but should not be < 60 mm Hg MAP in young adults or 80 mm Hg in elderly patients. After the bony dissection is complete, any possible benefit of deliberate ↓ BP wanes, and a more normal BP is advisable.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line ± Urinary catheter ± BIS Monitor (for TIVA)	For simple back surgery, standard monitors are sufficient. If controlled ↓ BP or if an extensive posterior or anterior and posterior approach are planned, an arterial catheter is essential to monitor BP, and a CVC is recommended for infusion of vasoactive drugs and monitoring of CVP. A urinary drainage catheter is also desirable if surgery is expected to last several h or substantial fluid shifts are anticipated. Do not administer excessive crystalloid volume to promote urine output. Urine output is often less than expected when patients are positioned prone. Increased intra-abdominal pressure may → ↓ GFR.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes and ears frequently ✓ breasts and genitals ✓ free abdominal movement Neutral C-spine	Usually, patients are positioned prone on a Jackson table, Wilson frame, or bolsters. Less commonly, the knee-chest position on an Andrews table is necessary. For anterior approaches, the patient will be supine, for retroperitoneal or transthoracic approaches, the patient will be positioned lateral or semilateral with some flexion in the table. When prone, the head is placed in a neutral position using a foam pillow with cutouts for the eyes, nose, and chin. Whenever possible maintain the patient's head at or above the level of the heart to lessen the development of facial or intracranial edema. If the patient also has cervical disk disease, it is advisable to place a cervical collar before turning the patient prone. If an anterior and then posterior approach are to be used in the same patient, either move the patient to a gurney after the anterior portion is completed, and then roll the patient back onto the same operating table, or transfer the patient from one OR table to another. Alternatively, perform the operation on a Jackson table, which allows the patient to be turned from supine to prone without having to move them. If this table is used, the anesthesiologist must pay careful attention to all lines and wires so they are not inadvertently pulled out during the 180° rotation.

Positioning (cont'd)		Other options are to use a horseshoe headrest or place the head in Gardner-Wells tongs or in a Mayfield head clamp. When placed in a headrest, the breathing circuit should be supported so that the ET tube is strain-free to prevent gradual extubation due to gravity or pressure injury to the posterior oropharynx. Typically, the arms are abducted, they should be limited to <90° at the shoulder and extended <90° at the elbow. When the arms are tucked, take special care to ensure that all stopcocks under the drapes are secured in the desired position and capped to prevent bleeding or leakage, and padded to prevent pressure injury. Elbows, knees, feet, and arm pressure points need padding.
Complications	↓ BP Bowel or ureteral injury Hemorrhage	↓ BP may be 2° abdominal compression and ↓ venous return. ↑ blood loss may occur 2° epidural vein engorgement, abdominal compression or vascular injury. Any acute ↓ BP may be due to a vascular injury, either obvious (segmental artery or epidural vein) or occult (deep great vessel injury) until proven otherwise. The source of bleeding should be identified. If ↓ BP persists despite vigorous blood and fluid administration, suspect bleeding into the retroperitoneal space or abdomen. Alert the surgeon of this possibility and prepare for immediate exploration. Tumor resection, especially of metastases, can result in massive blood loss.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	↓ BP Hemorrhage Nerve injury Blindness	Postop, bleeding may persist. Drain output and vital signs should be monitored closely. As above, acute hypotension may be the result of ongoing hemorrhage. Rarely an epidural hematoma can form, resulting in evolving neurologic symptoms. In either case, emergent surgical re-exploration should be considered. Intubation may be more difficult if airway edema has accumulated during the initial operation. Postoperative blindness is a rare but devastating complication of surgery in the prone position. Risk factors include prolonged duration of surgery, large blood loss, and large volume crystalloid administration.
Pain management	IV acetaminophen (1 g) ± Ketorolac (discuss with surgeon) PCA (p. C-3) Epidural opiate (p. C-3)	Some surgeons may place a mixture consisting of Duramorph® ± fentanyl, ± steroid, in Avitene® hemostat into the epidural space before closing. This provides excellent postop analgesia for 12+ h.
Tests	Hct; document neurological status.	If postop bleeding is suspected, serial Hct determinations are useful.

Suggested Reading

1. Aziz M: Airway management in neuroanesthesiology. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(2):229–40.
2. Elgafy H, O'Brien P, Blessinger B, Hassan A: Challenges of spine surgery in obese patients. *Am J Orthop (Belle Mead NJ)* 2012; 41(3):E46–50.
3. Fehlings MG, Brodke DS, Norvell DC, Dettori JR: The evidence for intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring in spine surgery: does it make a difference? *Spine* (*Phila Pa 1976*) 2010; 35(9 Suppl):S37–46.
4. Isley MR, Zhang XF, Balzer JR, Leppanen RE: Current trends in pedicle screw stimulation techniques: lumbosacral, thoracic, and cervical levels. *Neurodiagn J* 2012; 52(2):100–75.
5. Joglekar SB, Mehbod AA: Surgeon's view of pedicle screw implantation for the monitoring neurophysiologist. *J Clin Neurophysiol* 2012; 29(6):482–8.
6. Lachiewicz PF: The role of intravenous acetaminophen in multimodal pain protocols for perioperative orthopedic patients. *Orthopedics* 2013; 36(2 Suppl):15–9.
7. Lee LA: Perioperative visual loss and anesthetic management. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2013; 26(3):375–81.
8. Sugrue PA, Halpin RJ, Koski TR: Treatment algorithms and protocol practice in high-risk spine surgery. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2013; 24(2):219–30.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Anterior Cervical Decompression and Fusion (ACDF): http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yfSkOF_DAfA

Dr. Ali Bydon Performs a Minimally Invasive Lumbar Discectomy:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2j9QyiOxVF4

Minimally Invasive Tubular Microdiscectomy: 3-D Video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Cpkr_oy5Enc

Scoliosis Spinal Fusion Animation: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WBIf4AQj5s0

C1 Lateral Mass Fixation: A Comparison of Constructs: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZRcafQ3xLSs

Dr. Ali Bydon Removes an Intramedullary Spinal Cord Tumor:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HoWWRQfWYTo

Posterior Spinal Instrumentation & Fusion for Idiopathic Scoliosis:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TbQaT7z54E4

Transforaminal Lumbar Interbody Fusion (TLIF) Surgery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1I5j4EPOmW4

L5 S1 Fusion TLIF Back Surgery Video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I2lHCdX28D0

Posterior Cervical Foraminotomy Herniated Disc Neck Surgery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0edUnIJpg3o

CHAPTER

1.4 Carotid Endarterectomy

SURGEONS

Gary K. Steinberg, MD, PhD
Robert L. Dodd, MD, PhD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

CAROTID ENDARTERECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Gary K. Steinberg and Robert L. Dodd

Description: **Carotid endarterectomy** (CEA) is frequently used to treat severe atherosclerotic occlusive disease involving internal carotid arteries at the common carotid artery bifurcation. Atherosclerotic carotid artery disease commonly causes thromboembolic or hemodynamic stroke and transient ischemic attacks (TIAs). Recent studies proved the efficacy of this operation, compared with medical treatment for symptomatic high-grade stenosis (70–99%), symptomatic moderate stenosis (50–69%), and asymptomatic high-grade stenosis (≥ 60%).

The operation involves opening the common carotid artery and the proximal internal carotid artery in the neck (Fig 1.4-1), removing atherosclerotic plaque from the inside the artery, and repairing the wall of the arteries (media and adventitia). Opening the carotid artery (**arteriotomy**) requires temporary occlusion of the proximal common carotid artery, distal internal carotid artery, external carotid artery, and, usually, its first branch, the superior thyroid artery. The entire procedure can be achieved under continued occlusion of these vessels if the collateral blood flow to the territory supplied by the occluded internal carotid is deemed adequate (on the basis of intraop EEG monitoring, internal carotid artery back-bleeding, stump pressures, CBF studies, or angiography). Alternatively, an internal shunt between the proximal common carotid artery and distal internal carotid artery can be placed after the arteriotomy for use during the endarterectomy. Often a synthetic graft (e.g., Dacron) or, occasionally, a vein graft, is used to reconstruct ("patch") the arteriotomy site and increase the luminal diameter.

Variant Procedure or Approaches: The vascular surgeon's approach to CEA is described in Chapter 6.3. Carotid stenting is described in the Interventional Neuroradiology, Section 13.1. Stenting appears to be inferior to CEA in

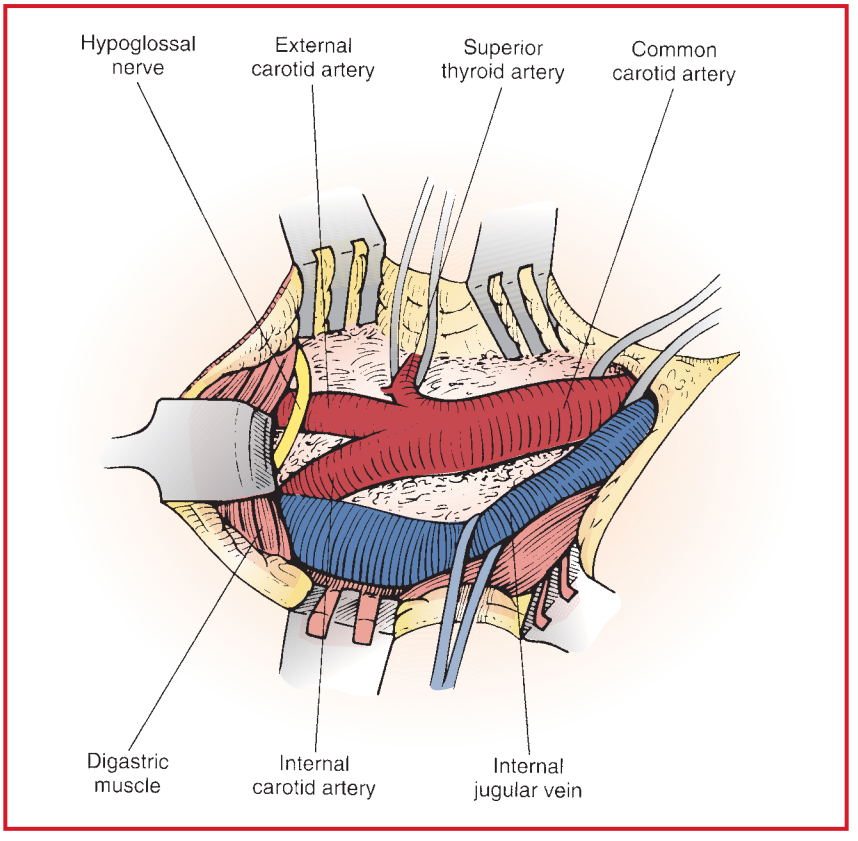


Figure 1.4-1. Exposure and control of carotid artery. (Reproduced with permission from Calne R, Pollard SG: *Operative Surgery*. Gower Medical Pub: 1992.)

outcome studies (↑ stroke, ↑ death) but is associated with ↓MI. EC-IC bypass for treatment of carotid occlusion is described in Section 1.1.

Usual preop diagnosis: Stroke; TIAs; carotid artery stenosis; carotid artery dissection

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Anterolateral neck; occasionally, if "patching" arteriotomy, may have to harvest portion of greater saphenous vein from leg.
Special instrumentation	Magnification loupes; vascular instruments ± shunt (Bard, Javid, Pruitt-Inahara)
Unique considerations	Techniques for monitoring cerebral perfusion: EEG-spectral analysis or raw EEG, somatosensory evoked potentials (SEPs), back-bleeding, internal carotid artery stump pressure (> 50 mm Hg), or transcranial Doppler. Full anticoagulation with heparin (typically 100 U/kg iv) during arterial occlusion ± reversal with protamine (typically 0.5 mg/kg iv) 10 min after repair and reopening of carotid arteries. Maintaining ↑ BP during internal carotid artery occlusion (MAP 90–110). Use of neuroprotective agents just before internal carotid artery occlusion (e.g., iv STP 2–3 mg/kg or propofol 1–2 mg/kg as necessary to produce EEG burst-suppression).
Antibiotics	Cefazolin (1–2 g iv q 6 h)
Surgical time	~3 h
Closing considerations	Avoid ↑ BP or ↓ BP (typical MAP 80–100); meticulous hemostasis.
EBL	50–150 mL
Postop care	Control of BP (MAP 80–100 mm Hg); start aspirin on postop d 1; ICU or other monitored bed × 6–24 h.
Mortality	0.3–1.1% (if combined CABG/CEA: up to 17.7%)
Morbidity	Postop MI: 0.5–4% Cranial nerve injury: Up to 39% (typically 8%) • recurrent/superior laryngeal nerve (hoarseness) • hypoglossal nerve (tongue deviates to side of injury) • mandibular br. of facial nerve (lower lip weakness) Cerebral hyperperfusion syndrome (if postop BP not well controlled) Intraop MI: 1–2% Postop bleeding: 1.7–2.7% Wound infection: Rare
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	50–90 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~150,000 CEAs/yr in the United States
Etiology	Atherosclerosis; occasionally, traumatic (dissection)
Associated conditions	HTN; CAD; PVD; smoking; obesity; alcohol abuse; hyperlipidemia

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedure covered: carotid endarterectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

The incidence of occlusive or ulcerative lesions of the extracranial or intracranial vasculature increases with advancing years. Generally, these lesions are asymptomatic until the cross-sectional area of the vessel is decreased by at least 50%. This is because in most patients the cerebral vasculature has excellent collateral circulation, most important the circle of Willis (normal in only 50% of patients), but also persistent anastomoses from the basilar artery, and extra- to intracranial collateral flow via the ophthalmic artery or branches of the vertebral artery. Patients presenting for CEA generally fall into one of three categories: (1) Those with TIAs, presenting with symptoms that may be focal or generalized. (2) Patients with completed stroke. If the stroke is recent (< 2–4 wk), some surgeons will not operate on the patient for fear of converting an ischemic infarct into a hemorrhagic infarct; however, if the infarct is small and clinical deficit minor, early surgery may be indicated. Angiographic evaluation usually demonstrates a stenotic and/or ulcerative lesion at the carotid bifurcation. (3) Patients with asymptomatic bruit, which usually is found during a routine physical examination of the neck. These are of concern because they may signal the development of carotid stenosis and may benefit from surgical intervention.

Respiratory	Patients should be asked to stop smoking prior to anesthesia, even if only the night before. Although cessation of smoking for such a short time will not lessen the volume of secretions appreciably or make the airways less irritable to a foreign body, such as an ETT, it will provide sufficient time for the carbon monoxide levels in the blood to decrease, thereby enhancing O_2-carrying capacity. Any Hx of pulmonary disease should be evaluated with spirometry, ABGs, and CXR. If there is evidence of pulmonary infection, appropriate antibiotic therapy should be instituted. If secretions are excessive, preop pulmonary physiotherapy, including bronchodilator therapy, may be indicated. **Tests:** ABGs; spirometry; CXR, if indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Careful evaluation of cardiovascular status is essential and should include a detailed Hx of cardiovascular function and serial determinations of BP in both arms to establish the range of pressures that normally occur and whether there are regional differences. If BP is different in the two arms, it should be measured intraop and postop in the arm with the higher values. Also, a preop ECG is mandatory. The reason for concern about cardiovascular function is twofold: (1) It is often necessary to administer vasoactive drugs to regulate BP during CEA, either to maintain it at a normal value, or sometimes to increase it as much as 20% above the highest resting pressure to maintain optimal collateral circulation during intraop carotid occlusion. (2) The incidence of perioperative MI in this surgical population is > 1%, and represents the most common major postop complication. Except in the case of emergencies, anesthesia and surgery should not proceed in the face of severe, uncontrolled HTN, diabetes, or recent MI. Antihypertensive medications should be continued up to the time of anesthesia. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	The Sx of cerebrovascular insufficiency are due to either critical stenosis or occlusion of cerebral vessels, combined with inadequate collateral circulation. The degenerative plaques or mural thrombi readily break off from the vessel wall and cause focal ischemic lesions. Manual occlusion of the carotid arteries is not an appropriate test of tolerance to temporary circulatory occlusion, as it may endanger the patient by precipitating embolization from an ulcerative lesion or by inducing bradycardia and ↓BP from activation of the carotid sinus reflex. It is desirable, however, to position the patient's head in the operative position as a test of the effect of that position on CBF. It is well documented that hyperextension and lateral rotation of the head may occlude vertebral-basilar flow and, if sustained, contribute to postop cerebral ischemia. Sx of dizziness or diplopia will emerge with this maneuver if CBF is compromised. **Tests:** Carotid and cerebral angiography will identify type of lesion (ulcerative or stenotic), its location, and extent of collateral circulation. Other commonly used techniques include MR or CT angiography, and duplex ultrasonography. The anesthesiologist should examine the angiograms of the patient or discuss the case with the surgeon to understand the type, location, and extent of the lesion.

Hematologic	Aspirin or other anti-Plt therapy usually is begun preop to ↓ the risk of periop thromboembolic complications. Aspirin may be continued up to the day of surgery. **Tests:** PT; PTT
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Use of premedication in patients undergoing CEA is controversial. Should a new TIA or stroke occur in the immediate preop period, its Sx may be difficult to distinguish from those associated with excessive responses to premedication. In this population, detailed discussion about the anesthetic and surgical plan, with appropriate reassurance, is usually sufficient. If medication is desired, midazolam 1–3 mg is preferable to opiates.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique (regional): Historically, regional anesthesia—in the form of superficial and deep cervical plexus blocks, supplemented as needed by a local field block—was used for most CEAs. It provided the opportunity to evaluate cerebral function during a trial occlusion of 2–3 min. If the patient showed no adverse effects, the operation was completed under regional anesthesia. If the patient developed neurological changes, a shunt was inserted or GA was induced and ET intubation performed, following which the operation was completed. Regional anesthesia, however, has several disadvantages: absence of cerebral protection, patients may tolerate carotid occlusion for 10 min or more before suddenly losing consciousness or developing a Sz, and conversion to GETA may be technically difficult. Nevertheless, the technique still has some advocates among anesthesiologists and surgeons. It is claimed that: (1) it decreases the need for a surgical shunt and, thereby, avoids the complications of shunt insertion; (2) it decreases the length of stay in the ICU; and (3) as an anesthetic technique, it is well accepted by some patients with fast surgeons.

Anesthetic technique (GETA): GETA offers both direct and indirect advantages for patients undergoing CEA: cerebral protection by decreasing $CMRO_2$ and redistributing flow toward the potentially ischemic area; greater patient comfort; and the ability to regulate PO_2, PCO_2, and MAP. Despite these arguments favoring GA, recent studies comparing regional and GA suggest that there is no clear outcome advantage of one technique over the other, although GA may be associated with a higher risk for postop MI.

Induction	Propofol (1–2 mg/kg), when carefully titrated, is suitable for induction, as arterial BP will generally remain at acceptable levels (± 20% of baseline) in normovolemic patients. Propofol will ↓ $CMRO_2$, constrict normally reactive cerebral vessels, and → a redistribution of CBF toward potentially ischemic areas. Etomidate (0.1–0.4 mg/kg) may be useful for induction of anesthesia in hemodynamically unstable patients. A muscle relaxant, such as vecuronium (0.15 mg/kg) or rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) is administered for tracheal intubation. An analgesic, such as fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg) or remifentanil (1–3 mcg/kg), may be given to minimize the cardiovascular responses to ET intubation. These opiates have minimal effects on CBF or $CMRO_2$.
Maintenance	Isoflurane (up to 0.6%) or sevoflurane (up to 1%) inspired, in combination with N_2O 50% and remifentanil (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min), is satisfactory and will not interfere with EEG or EP/MEP monitoring. Just before cross-clamping of the carotid artery, an additional dose of propofol sufficient to produce burst suppression on the EEG (usually 0.5–1 mg/kg propofol) may be administered for cerebral protective effects. A low-dose NTG infusion may be beneficial for patients at high risk for MI.
Emergence	Total carotid occlusion time should be noted on the anesthetic record. After 10 min and once bleeding from the arteriotomy site has been controlled, protamine (typically 0.5 mg/100 U heparin) is administered iv slowly over at least 10 min. If ↓BP occurs, rate of protamine administration should be slowed. If vasopressors were used during surgery, patient should be weaned from them during emergence because HTN is likely as patient awakens from anesthesia. The need to control BP with labetolol and/or a combination of esmolol and SNP/NTG is likely in the emergence phase. Antiemetic prophylaxis (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv 30 min before end of case) is usually appropriate. Prophylactic β-blockers may be quite useful in this patient population.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 5–10 mL/kg/h Hetastarch 6% < 20 mL/kg	Blood replacement is seldom an issue. Studies indicate that blood glucose > 180 mg/dL may ↓ tolerance of brain to ischemia; thus, it is prudent to avoid glucose-containing solutions and treat levels > 180 mg/dL. One iv is dedicated to drug infusions. If volume expansion is needed, hetastarch stays in the intravascular compartment longer (2–3 d) than crystalloid solutions (1–3 h).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line (often preinduction) UO CVP (if otherwise indicated) ± Stump pressure transducer	Marked fluctuations in BP may occur, necessitating vasoactive drug therapy. The arterial pressure transducer should be placed at the level of the head to accurately assess CPP. A CVP catheter is seldom necessary. Vasoactive drugs usually can be given safely through a second iv placed in the proximal arm. A second pressure transducer setup may be needed for stump pressure measurements. Monitors incorporating EASI ECG analysis technology can emulate 12-lead ECGs using only five actual leads. ETT cuff pressure should be monitored and kept at the minimum required to prevent leak. This will minimize ischemic injury to the tracheal mucosa and to the recurrent laryngeal nerve, which may be trapped between the cuff and surgical retractor.
Cerebral perfusion monitoring	rCBF	Regional CBF (rCBF) ≥ 25 mL/min/100 g brain is satisfactory, and < 20 mL/min/100 g indicates potential for cerebral ischemia; however, capability for making rCBF measurements is not generally available in OR.
	EEG (multi-lead)	Common BIS-type monitors are inadequate for detecting most ischemic events. Even multi-lead EEG may not identify small focal areas of ischemia. The depth of anesthesia and arterial CO_2 must be stable or the EEG may not be interpretable. There is a significant incidence of false positives and negatives.
	Stump pressure (back pressure)	Stump pressure (pressure distal to the carotid clamp) is used to evaluate the adequacy of cerebral perfusion. Cerebral ischemia rarely occurs at stump pressures > 40 mm Hg. False positives are not uncommon and result in a shunt being placed when none is needed. The simplicity of the measurement and its relative validity when pressure is > 40 mm Hg still make it a useful clinical method for ensuring adequate perfusion.
	Cerebral oximetry (rSO_2)	Cerebral oximetry (e.g., Somanetics Invos) is often used to evaluate superficial frontal cortex perfusion during CEA. With carotid occlusion, ipsilateral rSO_2 values may decrease suggesting inadequate cerebral perfusion. The method is nonquantitative, and an unknown portion of the signal may originate from structures superficial to the cortex perfused by branches of the external carotid artery. Postop increased rSO_2 may predict onset of cerebral hyperperfusion syndrome.

Cerebral perfusion monitoring (cont'd)	SSEP/MEP	SSEPs/MEPs are being used with increasing frequency as a means of determining the adequacy of cerebral perfusion during temporary occlusion of the carotid artery. This technique requires continuous monitoring by personnel with special training. Areas of focal ischemia may not be detected. False positive and false negative results can occur.
	Transcranial Doppler (TCD)	TCD scanning alone or combined with EEG monitoring is a useful method for detecting microemboli (air or particulate matter) during CEA. It also has been suggested that TCD can be used as a guide for regulating BP postop to minimize the occurrence of post-CEA cerebral hyperperfusion states. This technique requires continuous monitoring by personnel with special training and is technically difficult to implement intraop.
Control of BP	Keep MAP ≥ awake levels. Autoregulation Vasopressors: Phenylephrine infusion	It is highly desirable to maintain MAP at or slightly above the patient's highest recorded resting pressure while awake. Volatile anesthetics impair autoregulation; therefore, the higher the pressure, the more likely it is that cerebral perfusion will be adequate during surgical occlusion. A pure α-adrenergic agonist (e.g., phenylephrine) is ideal to support BP because it has minimal dysrhythmogenic potential. A V-4 or V-5 lead usually will indicate if induced ↑ BP is causing myocardial ischemia.
	Coronary vasodilation NTG infusion	A simultaneous infusion of NTG (0.2–0.4 mcg/kg/min) may improve coronary flow during periods of induced ↑ BP. If hypertensive episodes occur during surgery, infusions of esmolol ± NTG/SNP work well to control BP.
	Labetalol (pre-emergence)	Long duration effect makes intraop titration difficult
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Sudden ↓ HR or ↓ BP	Surgical stimulation of carotid baro-receptors. RX: Have surgeon apply 2–3 mL of 1% plain lidocaine to carotid bulb.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Circulatory instability: ↓ BP	Circulatory instability is common. ↓ BP may be due to hypovolemia, residual anesthetic dysrhythmias, or exposure of the carotid sinus baroreceptor to a new higher pressure, causing an exaggerated reflex response. Rx by volume expansion and/or pressors.
	HTN MI Stroke	HTN may be due to loss of the normal carotid baroreceptor mechanism. It may → excessive bleeding, ↑ myocardial O_2 consumption, dysrhythmias, MI, intracerebral hemorrhage and ↑ ICP from cerebral edema.

Complications (cont'd)	Loss of carotid body function	Ipsilateral chemoreceptor function is lost in most patients after CEA → ↓ ventilatory and circulatory responses to hypoxia and a modest increase in resting arterial $PaCO_2$. These patients should be given supplemental O_2 postop. Special attention must be directed toward preventing atelectasis or other pulmonary or circulatory abnormalities that might cause hypoxemia.
	Respiratory insufficiency Tracheal compression Vocal cord paralysis Tension pneumothorax	Acute respiratory insufficiency may occur 2° hematoma formation with tracheal deviation, vocal cord paralysis from surgical traction on laryngeal nerves, or tension pneumothorax from dissection of air through the wound into the mediastinum and pleural space. Unexpected respiratory distress should immediately bring these three possibilities to mind, with appropriate Dx and therapy. A hematoma that causes respiratory distress always should be evacuated before reintubation is attempted.
	Circulatory insufficiency MI Tension pneumothorax	If there is evidence of circulatory insufficiency, consider MI or tension pneumothorax and treat appropriately.
	Intimal flap → stroke	Should a patient emerge from anesthesia with a new neurological deficit, immediate surgical exploration of the operative site or immediate cerebral angiography should be performed to determine if an intimal flap or thrombosis has formed at the site of operation. These are surgically correctable lesions and, if corrected immediately, may lessen the severity of the subsequent neurological deficit.
Pain management	Acetaminophen (1 g iv)	Complaints of "sore throat" are common and rarely require opiate treatment.
Tests	As indicated by Sx	Consider urgent carotid ultrasound or cerebral angiography for delayed emergence.

Suggested Readings

1. Augoustides JG: Advances in the management of carotid artery disease: focus on recent evidence and guidelines. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2012; 26(1):166–71. Review.
2. Doig D, Brown MM: Carotid stenting versus endarterectomy. *Annu Rev Med* 2012; 63:259–76. Review.
3. Kearse LA Jr, Lopez-Bresnahan M, McPeck K, Zaslavsky A: Preoperative cerebrovascular symptoms and electroencephalographic abnormalities do not predict cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy. *Stroke* 1995; 26:1210–4.
4. Leichtle SW, Mouwad NJ, Welch K, Lampman R, Whitehouse WM Jr, Heidenreich M: Outcomes of carotid endarterectomy under general and regional anesthesia from the American College of Surgeons' National Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *J Vasc Surg* 2012; 56(1):81–8.e3.
5. Liu ZJ, Fu WG, Guo ZY, Shen LG, Shi ZY, Li JH: Updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials comparing carotid artery stenting and carotid endarterectomy in the treatment of carotid stenosis. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2012; 26(4):576–90.
6. Mutch WAC, White IWC, Donin N, et al: Haemodynamic instability and myocardial ischaemia during carotid endarterectomy: a comparison of propofol and isoflurane. *Can J Anaesth* 1995; 42:577–87.
7. Sajid MS, Vijaynager B, Singh P, et al: Literature review of cranial nerve injuries during carotid endarterectomy. *Acta Surg Belg* 2007; 107(1):25–8.
8. Schechter MA, Shortell CK, Scarborough JE: Regional versus general anesthesia for carotid endarterectomy: The American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program perspective. *Surgery* 2012; 152(3):309–14.

9. Sejersten M, Wagner GS, Pahlm O, et al: Detection of acute ischemia from the EASI-derived 12-lead electrocardiogram acquired in clinical practice. *J Electrocardiol* 2007; 40:120–6.
10. Wade JG, Larson CP Jr, Hickey RF, Ehrenfeld WK, Severinghaus JW: Effect of carotid endarterectomy on carotid chemoreceptor and baroreceptor function in man. *N Engl J Med* 1970; 282(15):823–9.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following video:

Carotid Endarterectomy: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9lDf3sx_ZrE

SECTION

2.0 OPHTHALMIC SURGERY

SURGEONS

Natalia F. Callaway, MD
Darius M. Moshfeghi, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

CATARACT EXTRACTION WITH INTRAOCULAR LENS INSERTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Cataract—the leading cause of treatable blindness in the world—is defined as opacification of the crystalline lens. **Cataract surgery** is the most common surgical procedure, with more than 3 million performed in the United States each year. Several approaches to cataract removal have evolved as a result of advances in both instrumentation and artificial intraocular lenses (IOL). Most modern cataract surgery is performed using a variation of the **extracapsular technique,** which involves removal of the crystalline lens through an opening made in the anterior lens capsule (known as a **capsulectomy**). Removal of the lens nucleus can then be accomplished intact, which requires an 8- to 10-mm corneal incision, or more commonly by **phacoemulsification** wherein ultrasound energy is used to fragment the lens, allowing aspiration of the lens material. The advantages of phacoemulsification are that the entire procedure can be performed through a much smaller, clear corneal incision (usually ~3 mm in length) and is associated with fewer adverse events. With both approaches, the softer, more peripheral cortical lens material is then removed by aspiration, leaving the posterior capsular bag intact to support an IOL implant (Fig. 2-1). If the lens capsule is torn or is for any reason unable to support an IOL, the lens can be fixated with sutures in the posterior chamber (behind the iris), or an anterior chamber IOL can be placed in front of the iris. Presently, the most popular materials for IOL implants are polymethylmethacrylate, silicon, and acrylic. Only silicon and acrylic are foldable, which allows their insertion through a small corneal incision and, therefore, are the most commonly used. The wound is closed with nylon or Vicryl suture (9-0 or 10-0) to achieve a watertight seal, although when small incisions are used, the wounds are often self-sealing and do not require sutures.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Intracapsular cataract extraction** involves removal of the crystalline lens with its surrounding capsular bag intact. To accomplish this, the zonules that normally stabilize and center the lens must be broken, and a cryoprobe often is used to remove the lens from the eye through a large incision. This procedure is performed infrequently, given the superior visual outcomes of extracapsular techniques. It may be indicated in situations where capsular bag support has been compromised by either trauma, malignancy, or inherited disorders.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cataract

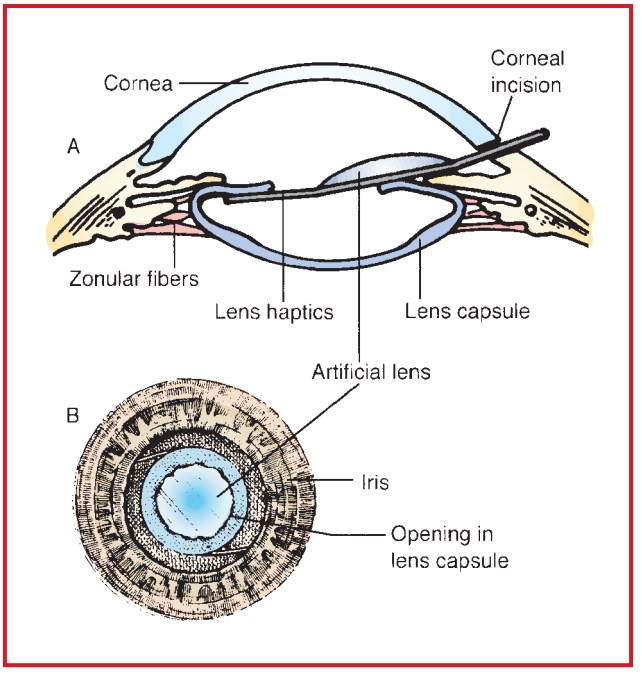


Figure 2-1. **A:** Placement of intraocular lens into remaining capsular bag. **B:** "In-the-bag" insertion.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	2.8-mm peripheral cornea (phacoemulsification) or 8–10 mm (corneoscleral junction)
Special instrumentation	Surgical microscope; phacoemulsification machine
Antibiotics	Subconjunctival cefazolin (50–100 mg) or gentamicin (20–40 mg) or a topical fluoroquinolone
Surgical time	15–60 min
EBL	None
Postop care	Possible eye patch/shield for 24 h, topical medications
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Posterior capsule opacification: ~25% (may require Nd:YAG laser treatment) Posterior capsule rupture: 3.1% Corneal edema: < 2% Macular edema: 1–2% Retinal detachment: < 1% Choroidal hemorrhage: 0.3% Endophthalmitis: < 0.2 %
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3 mo–80+ yr (depends on type of cataract)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	> 1,000,000/yr in the United States. Prevalence: 50% @ 65–74 yo; 70% @ 75+ yo
Etiology	90% age related; congenital (1/250 newborns); metabolic; traumatic; medication-induced (steroids)
Associated conditions	Systemic diseases of elderly patients–common; cardiovascular disease; diabetes; HTN. Genetic: Marfan's disease; metabolic disorders Patients may be on antiplatelet or anticoagulant therapy. It is generally accepted that these drugs do not need to be discontinued before cataract surgery (especially if INR ≤ 1.5)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

At the present time in the United States, cataract surgery is most commonly performed using only topical anesthetic agents (e.g., preservative-free 2–4% lidocaine, levobupivacaine 0.75%, ropivacaine 1%, or oxybuprocaine 1%) to block trigeminal nerve endings in the cornea and conjunctiva. Iris and ciliary body anesthesia depend on local anesthetic penetration into the anterior chamber. Thus, in a few patients, there may be a need for supplemental anesthetic administration (e.g., intracameral, 1% lidocaine) and less commonly systemic analgesic and sedative drugs. Inadvertent eye and lid movement should be expected. Adverse reactions to topical anesthetics are extremely rare and typically allergic in nature. High concentrations or prolonged exposure to local anesthetics can be toxic to the corneal epithelium (delayed wound healing; corneal erosion), and to the retina. A prospective randomized double-blind series demonstrated that combining topical anesthesia with intracameral lidocaine anesthesia was safe and effective in phacoemulsification with intraocular lens implantation. This technique avoided potential sequelae of retrobulbar or peribulbar anesthesia for cataract surgery. However, in one study of patients undergoing cataract surgery using topical anesthesia reported greater intraoperative and postoperative discomfort than those given a sub-Tenon block. Use of intravenous sedation increased the incidence of adverse events as compared with topical anesthesia without

sedation. All local anesthetic techniques should be avoided in patients with uncontrolled movement disorders, or an inability to cooperate.

Anesthesia-trained personnel monitored most patients during cataract surgery, and the most commonly used local anesthetic was lidocaine. The anesthetic method associated with the lowest degree of pain, dissatisfaction, drowsiness, or nausea and vomiting was a regional block technique with administration of sedatives and diphenhydramine.

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC (adult), p. 158, or for Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery, p. 1199.

Suggested Readings

1. Ashwin PT, Shah S, Wolffsohn JS: Advances in cataract surgery. *Clin Exp Optom* 2009; 92(4):333–42.
2. Borazan M, Karalezli A, Akova YA, Algan C, Oto S: Comparative clinical trial of topical anaesthetic agents for cataract surgery with phacoemulsification: lidocaine 2% drops, levobupivacaine 0.75% drops, and ropivacaine 1% drops. *Eye* 2008; 22(3):425–9.
3. Chuang LH, Yeung L, Ku WC, et al: Safety and efficacy of topical anesthesia combined with a lower concentration of intracameral lidocaine in phacoemulsification: paired human eye study. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2007; 33(2):293–6.
4. Coelho RP, Weissheimer J, Romão E, et al: Pain induced by phacoemulsification without sedation using topical or peribulbar anesthesia. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2005; 31(2):385–8.
5. Eichel R, Goldberg I: Anaesthesia techniques for cataract surgery: a survey of delegates to the Congress of the International Council of Ophthalmology, 2002. *Clin Experiment Ophthalmol* 2005; 33(5):469–72.
6. Eke T, Thompson JR: Serious complications of local anaesthesia for cataract surgery: a 1 year national survey in the United Kingdom. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2007; 91(4):470–5.
7. Malik A, Fletcher EC, Chong V, Dasan J: Local anesthesia for cataract surgery. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2010; 36(1):133–52.
8. Rogers GM, Goins KM: Cataract surgery in the patient that cannot lie flat. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2010; 21(1):71–4.
9. Sanmugasunderam S, Khalfan A: Is fasting required before cataract surgery? A retrospective review. *Can J Ophthalmol* 2009; 44(6):655–6.
10. Srinivasan S, Fern AI, Selvaraj S, et al: Randomized double blind clinical trial comparing topical and sub-Tenon's anaesthesia in routine cataract surgery. *Br J Anaesth* 2004; 93:683–6.
11. Tan CS, Au Eong KG, Kumar CM: Visual experiences during cataract surgery: what anaesthesia providers should know. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2005; 22(6):413–9.
12. Vann MA, Ogunnaike BO, Joshi GP: Sedation and anesthesia care for ophthalmologic surgery during local/regional anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 2007; 107(3):502–8.

CORNEAL TRANSPLANT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients with corneal pathology who have failed stem-cell techniques may require **corneal transplantation (penetrating keratoplasty [PKP] or lamellar keratoplasty).** Corneal transplantation involves replacing a portion of the host cornea with tissue from a donor eye (allograft). The primary goals of this procedure are to both restore the integrity of the cornea and establish a clear visual axis. The ideal death-to-preservation time of the donor cornea is < 18 h, and the donor cornea can be stored for up to 2 wk before transplantation. The procedure often begins with the placement of a scleral fixation ring (Flieringa ring) just beyond the corneoscleral junction, which is secured with 7-0 Vicryl sutures. This provides additional scleral support that is especially helpful in children or patients who have undergone previous cataract surgery. The donor corneal button is removed from the surrounding corneoscleral rim with a trephine and kept in storage medium until the recipient bed is prepared. The host cornea is then trephined in a previously marked central location, using either manual or vacuum-assist techniques while the anterior chamber is maintained with viscoelastics. After the eye is opened, it is critical to avoid patient movement, coughing, bucking, or any Valsalva maneuvers to prevent expulsion of the intraocular contents through the wound. The size of the donor button is generally cut ~0.25 mm larger than the host bed. The donor cornea is then sutured endothelial side down into place with 10-0 nylon sutures, which can be accomplished using 16 interrupted sutures (generally preferred with corneas that are inflamed, thinned, or vascularized), running sutures, or a combination, depending on a number of factors unique to each patient. Great care is taken during manipulation of the allograft to avoid trauma to the inner surface of the graft, as damage to the endothelial cells in this location can result in primary graft failure.

Variant procedure or approaches: PKP may be combined with **cataract extraction** or exchange of a previously placed intraocular lens (IOL). In addition, PKP may be combined with **limbal stem-cell transplantation** (autograft from less injured eye) in cases where the most superficial corneal epithelial layer is unable to regenerate following damage (e.g., chemical burn injuries) to the limbal stem cells. **Partial-thickness transplants,** called **lamellar keratoplasty,** also can be performed in certain clinical situations. PKP may be combined with glaucoma filtration procedure and retinal surgery.

Usual preop diagnosis: Persistent corneal edema; inherited corneal dystrophy; keratoconus; corneal scar; infectious keratitis; chemical injury

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Corneal
Special instrumentation	Surgical microscope
Unique considerations	Open-globe precautions: Avoid coughing, bucking, or Valsalva maneuvers to prevent expulsion of intraocular contents.
Antibiotics	Subconjunctival cefazolin (50–100 mg) or gentamicin (20–40 mg)
Surgical time	60–90 min
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Patch/shield for 24 h, long-term topical immunosuppression to prevent graft rejection
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Graft rejection: ~5% Suprachoroidal hemorrhage: < 1% (higher for MAC: ~4%) Infection: < 1%
Pain score	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	> 40,000 cases/yr in the United States and Canada
Etiology	Corneal opacity or decompensation resulting from endothelial failure; inherited dystrophy; keratoconus; scarring related to trauma/chemical burn/infection
Associated conditions	Congenital malformations; sleep apnea; atopic disease/asthma; Down syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Corneal transplants commonly require GA or a retrobulbar/peribulbar block to prevent movement of the eyelids or extraocular muscles that could lead to distortion of the globe during the procedure. However, in patients with significant coagulopathy, a history of perforated corneal ulcers, severe systemic disease, or other conditions that make the use of these forms of anesthesia less preferable, corneal transplant can be performed with topical anesthesia in cooperative patients.

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC (adult), p. 158, or for Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery, p. 1199.

Suggested Readings

1. Kallio H, Rosenberg PH: Advances in ophthalmic regional anaesthesia. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol* 2005; 19(2):215–27.
2. Riddle HK Jr, Price MO, Price FW Jr: Topical anesthesia for penetrating keratoplasty. *Cornea* 2004; 23(7):712–4.
3. Tan DT, Dart JK, Holland EJ, Kinoshita S: Corneal transplantation. *Lancet* 2012; 379(9827):1749–61.
4. Yeung SN, Kim P, Lichtinger A, et al: Combined topical and intracameral anesthesia for Descemet's stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty. *Int Ophthalmol* 2012; 32(3):273–6.

TRABECULECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Glaucoma** is a chronic disorder characterized by progressive and irreversible optic neuropathy with visual field defect. Glaucoma can develop at any intraocular pressure (IOP), but most current treatments are targeted at decreasing IOP. It is the second most common cause of blindness in the United States and accounts for more than 5.1 million cases of blindness throughout the world. **Trabeculectomy** (glaucoma filtration procedure) is the most common surgical procedure used to reduce IOP and is often undertaken only after maximal medical therapy has failed. In trabeculectomy, a drainage fistula (ostium) is created from the anterior chamber to the subconjunctival space, allowing aqueous humor to drain from the eye. (Normal anatomy relevant for aqueous fluid production is shown in Fig. 2-2). First, a limbus-based or fornix-based incision is created in the conjunctiva and Tenon's layer, exposing the underlying bare sclera. A partial-thickness (4–5 mm) scleral flap, hinged at the limbus, is then created. Because scarring (secondary to inflammation) is the most common cause of surgical failure, antimetabolites, such as mitomycin-C or 5-fluorouracil, are often applied to the surgical site to slow or prevent fibroblast proliferation. Next, an incision into the anterior chamber is created at the base of the scleral flap and converted to a sclerotomy by removing an approximate 1 × 4 mm piece of corneoscleral tissue. To prevent the iris from entering the ostium as well as to protect against future angle closure, an **iridectomy** is performed, followed by closure of the overlying scleral flap with 10-0 nylon sutures. Before closure, it is important to avoid coughing, bucking, or Valsalva maneuvers, which might cause suprachoroidal hemorrhage or expulsion of intraocular content. The conjunctiva is then reapposed, using running 8-0 or 9-0 absorbable or nylon sutures.

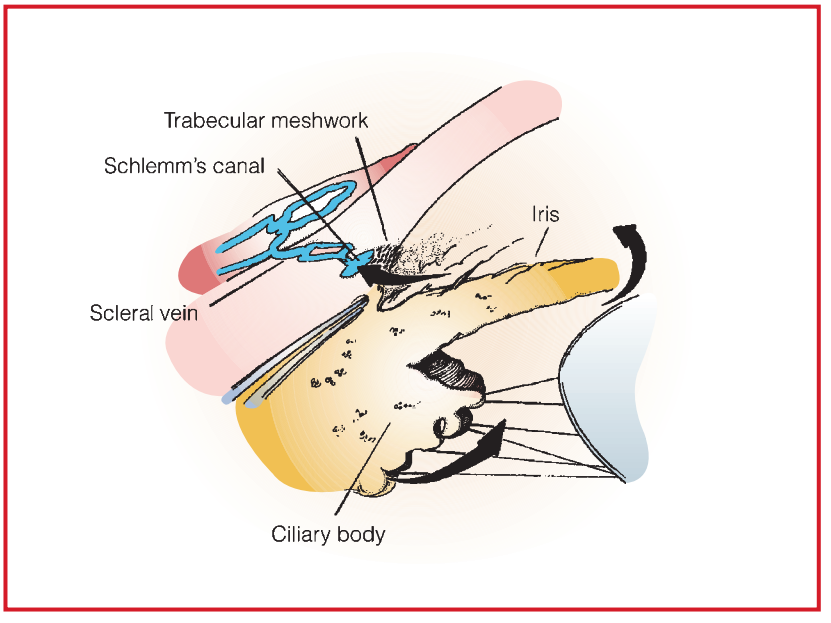


Figure 2-2. Ocular anatomy concerned with control of IOP. (Reproduced with permission from Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, et al., eds: *Clinical Anesthesiology,* 7th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013.)

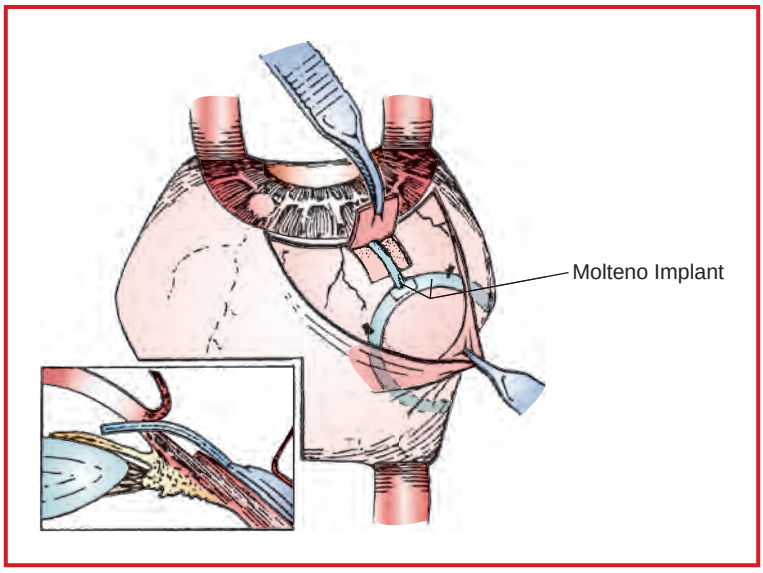


Figure 2-3. Basic technique of inserting Molteno implant. Silicone tube is inserted into anterior chamber via needle track and is connected to a subconjunctival acrylic plate that is attached to the sclera near the equator. (Reproduced with permission from Allingham RR, ed: *Shield's Textbook of Glaucoma,* 6th edition. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2010.)

Variant procedure or approaches: In patients for whom trabeculectomy has failed, a variety of drainage implants have been created to maintain the patency of the drainage ostium. These devices (e.g., **Ahmed, Molteno, Krupin, Baerveldt**) consist of plastic reservoirs that are placed in the sub-Tenon's space and are connected to a tube that enters the anterior chamber (Fig. 2-3). These devices differ in implant size and whether or not there is an internal valve to prevent excessive drainage. Long-term IOP reduction with drainage implants is not as successful as trabeculectomy.

In infants and children with congenital glaucoma (see Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery, p. 1198), the anterior chamber angle, which normally allows outflow of aqueous, develops abnormally and often requires surgical intervention. Goniotomy (opening Schlemm's canal) is usually the initial procedure of choice. An alternative procedure is a trabeculotomy performed by exposing Schlemm's canal (the drainage system) in a corneoscleral cutdown. A trabeculotome is then threaded into this canal and is rotated, creating a tear in the trabecular meshwork and allowing direct communication between the anterior chamber and Schlemm's canal.

Usual preop diagnosis: Glaucoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Superior portion of eye
Special instrumentation	Surgical microscope
Unique considerations	Prevent coughing, bucking, Valsalva maneuvers while globe is open, to prevent expulsion of intraocular contents.
Antibiotics	Subconjunctival cefazolin (50–100 mg) or gentamicin (20–40 mg)
Surgical time	30–60 min
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Patch/shield × 24 h; long-term topical corticosteroids to reduce scarring. Topical antibiotics for the fistula. Scleral flap sutures can be cut with a laser postop to increase flow. Patient advised to wear patch at night × 1–2 wk.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Overfiltration causing hypotony Leaking bleb Fistula scarring Infection Anterior chamber bleeding/hyphema Serous choroidal detachment/effusion Persistent corneal edema Suprachoroidal hemorrhage
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age; more common in the elderly
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1.7% Caucasians; 5.6% African Americans
Etiology	Impaired aqueous outflow. Cause of primary open angle glaucoma unknown, but elevated IOP is the strongest risk factor. Many secondary causes, including angle closure, trauma, inflammation, neovascularization, and congenital abnormalities.
Associated conditions	Diseases of the elderly, including cardiovascular disease, HTN, and diabetes. Children may have multiple congenital anomalies.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Trabeculectomy is typically accomplished using sub-Tenon anesthesia, which allows monitoring of conjunctival mobility when selecting the surgical site. Alternatively, it can be done using topical anesthetics. GA is usually reserved for pediatric patients, patients unlikely or unable to cooperate during the procedure, or if low intraocular pressure from anesthesia is desirable.

Subconjunctival anesthesia at the bleb site may be associated with a poorer outcome, because it may stimulate fibroblasts to cause scarring due to hemorrhage and tissue damage. Peribulbar and retrobulbar injections in patients with advanced glaucoma may be associated with increased intraocular pressure, which can be prevented by decreasing anesthetic volumes and avoiding the use of orbital Honan balloons.

Topical and intracameral anesthesia are being increasingly employed for trabeculectomy to avoid injection pain and potential complications, such as conjunctival button holes and hemorrhage. However, topical agents have the following limitations: inferior duration and intensity of anesthetic effect and lack of ocular akinesia, which is necessary to prevent globe compression in patients with prominent eyelid squeezing. Intracameral lidocaine as a supplement to topical anesthesia has the theoretical advantage of increasing depth of anterior chamber, but it poses the risk of damaging the phakic lens and excessive iridectomy enlargement. To avoid these possible complications, intracameral acetylcholine or topical pilocarpine can be used in conjunction with intracameral lidocaine.

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC (adult), p. 158, or for Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery, p. 1199.

Suggested Readings

1. Edmunds B, Bunce CV, Thompson JR, et al: Factors associated with success in first-time trabeculectomy for patients at low risk of failure with chronic open-angle glaucoma. *Ophthalmology* 2004; 111:97–103.
2. Kumar CM, Eid H, Dodds C: Sub-Tenon's anaesthesia: complications and their prevention. *Eye (Lond)* 2011; 25(6): 694–703.
3. Sauder G, Jonas JB: Topical anesthesia for penetrating trabeculectomy. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2002; 240:739–42.
4. Zabriskie NA, Ahmed IIK, Crandall AS, et al: A comparison of topical and retrobulbar anesthesia for trabeculectomy. *J Glaucoma* 2002; 11:306–14.

ECTROPION REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Ectropion is a malposition of the eyelid often due to laxity in the tarsoligamentous sling, in which the lid margin is everted away from the globe. The surgical approach depends on the underlying anatomic abnormality, which can be congenital, involutional, cicatricial (scarring), or due to mechanical traction from masses or facial nerve palsy. A lateral **tarsal strip procedure** is often used, with the lateral canthal tendon first released by performing a **lateral canthotomy and cantholysis** of the crus (Fig. 2-4). A lateral portion of tarsus is then dissected free of overlying skin, muscle, and conjunctiva. This strip of tarsus is trimmed to the appropriate length and is secured to the periosteum of the lateral orbital rim with suture. Excess skin is removed and the defect is closed. If punctal malposition is present, the tarsal strip procedure may be combined with a **medial conjunctival spindle procedure**.

Variant procedure or approaches: Cicatricial ectropion from a contracting scar can sometimes be released with a Z-plasty incision that releases vertical skin tension. Alternatively, a full-thickness skin graft may be required and can be harvested from the upper lid or the postauricular or supraclavicular regions.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ectropion of the eyelid

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Lateral canthal region or area of scarring
Special instrumentation	Surgical loupes
Antibiotics	None intraop
Surgical time	0.5–1 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Topical antibiotic ointment
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Lid malposition Infection: Very rare Corneal injury Local postop bleeding
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age, but most common in older adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common in elderly patients
Etiology	Congenital; aging; malignancy; facial nerve palsy
Associated conditions	Systemic diseases of elderly patients common; cardiovascular disease; diabetes; HTN; neurological disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC (adult), p. 158, or for Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery, p. 1199.

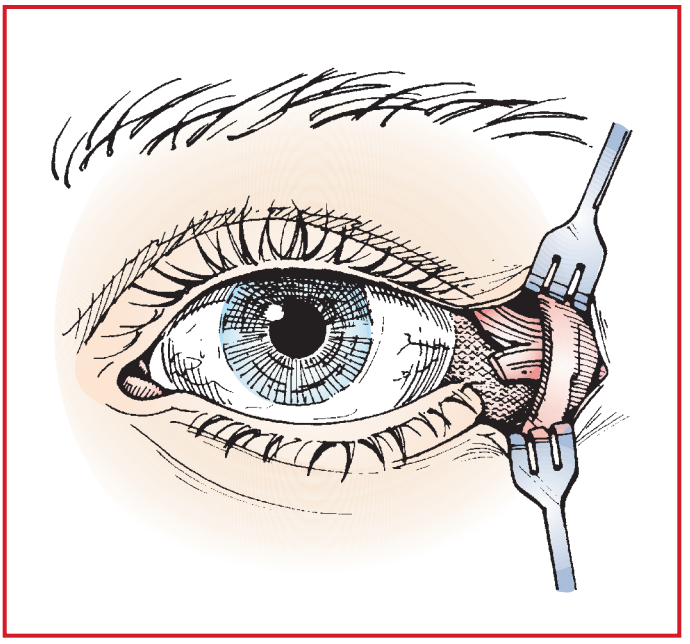


Figure 2-4. In the tarsal strip procedure, the lower eyelid is incised laterally. The entire lower crus of the canthal tendon must be severed. (Redrawn with permission from *Duane's Ophthalmology,* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013.)

Suggested Reading

1. See Suggested Readings following Ophthalmic Surgery section, p. 176.

ENTROPION REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Entropion is a condition characterized by an inward rotation of the eyelid margin. The surgical approach depends on the underlying anatomic abnormality, which can be congenital, spastic, involutional, or cicatricial (scarring). For the more common involutional or age-related cases, the primary defect involves horizontal lid laxity, disinsertion of the lower lid retractors, and/or an overriding orbicularis muscle. Correction often involves use of the **lateral tarsal strip procedure** (see description under Ectropion Repair) to achieve tightening of the lower lid. Reattachment of the eyelid retractor muscles/aponeurosis may also be used in certain cases, either alone or in addition to a tarsal strip procedure.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Cicatricial entropion** results from a contracting scar of the tarsus and/or conjunctiva pulling the lid margin inward. Correction requires release of this tension and either a **lid-splitting procedure** with tarsal advancement, rotational grafts, or free mucosal grafts harvested from hard palate. In the latter case, nasal intubation will be required to allow access to the graft site. **Quickert procedure** involves the placement of 2–3 sutures under local anesthesia to evert the eyelid. Entropion frequently recurs after this procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Entropion of eyelid

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Lateral canthal region or area of conjunctival scarring. Mucosal graft may be harvested from hard palate.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Surgical loupes
Antibiotics	None intraop
Surgical time	0.5–1 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Topical antibiotic ointment
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Infection: Very rare Lid malposition Local bleeding Corneal injury
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Congenital; aging; inflammation
Associated conditions	Cicatricial entropion can be associated with pemphigoid; Stevens-Johnson syndrome (a sometimes fatal form of erythema multiforme); chemical burns; trachoma.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Entropion repair can usually be accomplished as an outpatient procedure using local anesthesia and MAC.

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC (adult), p. 158, or for Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery, p. 1199.

Suggested Reading

1. See Suggested Readings following Ophthalmic Surgery section, p. 176.

PTOSIS REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Ptosis** (drooping of the upper eyelid margin) can be severe enough to obstruct the visual axis. Causes include congenital maldevelopment, mechanical traction, myogenic conditions (e.g., dystrophies, myasthenia gravis), neurogenic conditions (e.g., Horner's syndrome, cranial nerve III palsy), actinic skin changes and aponeurotic dehiscence. The surgical approach depends primarily on the presence or absence of adequate levator muscle function that is responsible for elevating the upper eyelid. The most common etiology is age-related dehiscence or disinsertion of the levator aponeurosis from its normal attachment to the tarsus. Because levator muscle function is usually satisfactory in these patients, surgical correction involves reinserting the aponeurosis to the anterior tarsus alone or in combination with shortening of the aponeurosis by advancement or resection. Access is obtained by an incision in the upper eyelid crease. Removal of excess skin and orbicularis muscle (**blepharoplasty**) may be performed simultaneously. Although several formulas have been devised to determine the amount of aponeurotic shortening, intraop measurement usually is performed to ensure that the appropriate lid position and contour are achieved. This

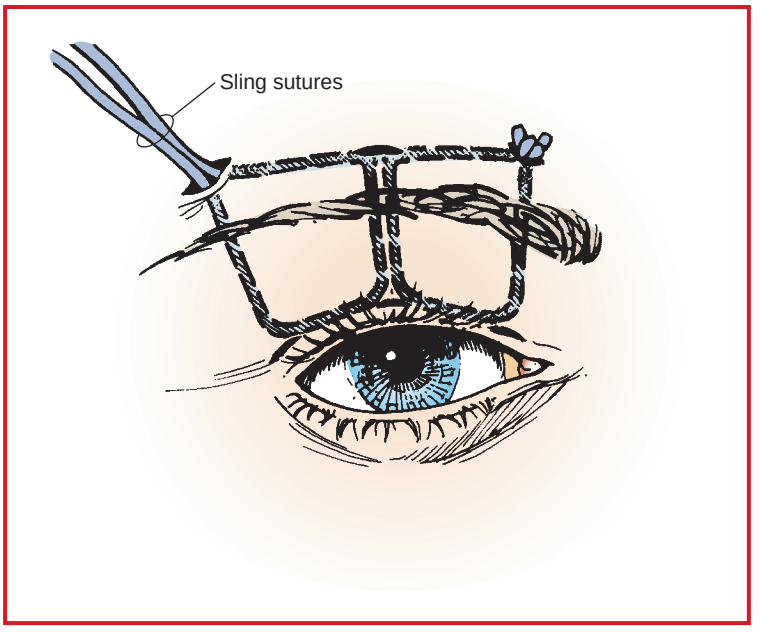


Figure 2-5. Frontalis sling (modified Crawford technique). Note location of brow and lid incisions and double rhomboid fascial slings. (Redrawn with permission from *Duane's Ophthalmology,* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013.)

requires that the procedure be performed under local anesthesia and that the patient be positioned and draped in a way that allows him/her to sit upright during surgery. Incisions are closed, and crease reformation can be performed if desired.

Variant procedure or approaches: In patients with levator muscle function that is not adequate to achieve eyelid elevation, a **frontalis sling procedure** is performed to elevate the upper eyelid (Fig. 2-5). More commonly required in children with congenital ptosis, this allows the patient to open the eye by elevating the brow. A variety of materials can be used to accomplish this suspension, including silicon rods or fascia. In children < 3 yr, autologous fascia lata can be harvested from the outer thigh from hip to knee. The material is tunneled beneath the skin and muscle from the brow incisions to the anterior tarsal region of the eyelid using Wright needles. After appropriate contour and height are achieved, the sling is secured and incisions are closed. Frontalis suspension usually is performed under GA in both adults and children.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ptosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Upper eyelid crease; brow; and lateral thigh (frontalis sling)
Special instrumentation	Surgical loupes
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	0.5–1 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Topical antibiotic ointment; cool compresses
Mortality	Rare

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Lid malposition (overcorrection, undercorrection, asymmetry) Corneal exposure (lagophthalmos) Infection: More common with silicone rods Numbness below incision
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any Age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Congenital; aponeurotic; neurogenic; myogenic; mechanical; aging
Associated conditions	Neurogenic causes associated with myasthenia gravis; myogenic causes include chronic external ophthalmoplegia (can have dysrhythmias and Sz disorders); oculopharyngeal dystrophy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Ptosis repair typically requires GA for infants and children and can be accomplished with local anesthesia (± subcutaneous epinephrine) and MAC as an outpatient procedure in adults. The need for patient cooperation during the surgery should be discussed with the surgeon and patient in advance. See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC, p. 158.

Suggested Reading

1. See Suggested Readings following Ophthalmic Surgery section, p. 176.

EYELID RECONSTRUCTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Given the relatively small tissue area of the eyelids and their importance in both ocular health and cosmesis, excision of lid tumors often requires some form of reconstructive surgery. For lesions suspected of being malignant, **frozen-sections** are often performed prior to closing the defect. In addition, **Mohs technique** (microscopically controlled serial excision) may be performed (usually by a dermatologist) to achieve clear margins, with reconstruction undertaken during a separate operation. During closure of full-thickness defects that involve the eyelid margin, attention is focused on aligning the lid in all dimensions (Fig. 2-6), while avoiding exposed sutures on the conjunctival surface that might damage the cornea. For small lid defects involving < ¼ of the lid length, direct closure often can be accomplished with release of the lateral canthal tendon (**canthotomy and cantholysis**) to reduce wound tension, if necessary.

Variant procedure or approaches: Larger excisions often require grafting techniques that are designed to replace both the anterior (skin/orbicularis) and posterior (tarsus/conjunctiva) lamellae of the eyelid. This can be accomplished with rotational grafts, a tarsoconjunctival advancement flap or free grafts of cartilage, hard palate, cadaver sclera, or composite grafts as posterior lamellar replacement materials.

Usual preop diagnosis: Basal-cell carcinoma; squamous-cell carcinoma; melanoma; sebaceous carcinoma; or trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Upper and/or lower eyelid. Postauricular, supraclavicular, or hard palate if graft harvesting required

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Special instrumentation	Surgical loupes
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	0.5–2 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Topical antibiotic ointment; cool compresses; pressure dressing
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Graft failure Lid deformity Corneal exposure Infection: < 1%
Pain score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually elderly
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Sun exposure-related malignancy
Associated conditions	Diseases of the elderly, including cardiovascular disease, HTN, and diabetes

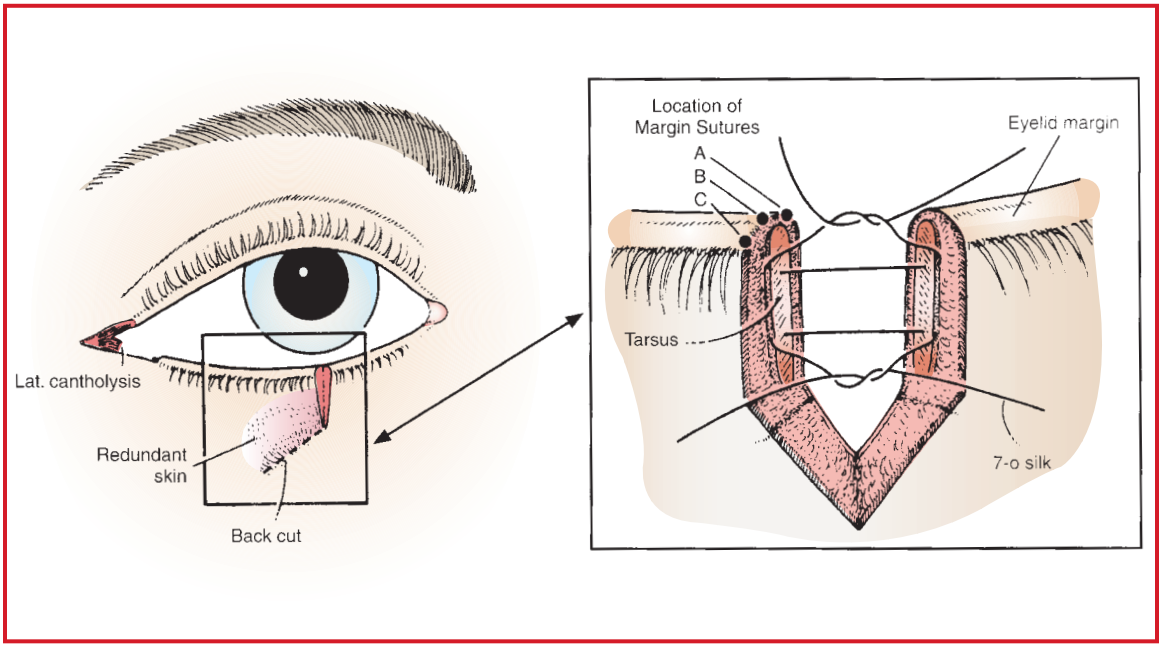


Figure 2-6. Closure of full-thickness defect in the lower lid. The tarsal sutures and half-thickness tarsus are placed first, with the secondary closures at points A, B, C, and the eyelid margin. (Reproduced with permission from McCord CD, Tanenbaum M, eds: *Oculoplastic Surgery,* 2nd edition. Raven Press, New York: 1987.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Eyelid reconstruction can often be accomplished with local anesthesia and MAC. See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC, p. 158.

Suggested Readings

1. Codner MA, Weinfeld AB: Comprehensive eyelid reconstruction. *ANZ J Surg* 2007; 77(Suppl 1):A71.
2. See Suggested Readings following Ophthalmic Surgery section, p. 176.

PTERYGIUM EXCISION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pterygia are fibrovascular growths that originate in the limbal conjunctiva within the palpebral fissure and grow into the superficial layer of the cornea. They often produce refractive changes and/or obstruct the central visual axis and, thus, require removal. Although this procedure is often performed in the clinic or minor-procedure room, larger lesions may require an OR. In both settings, local anesthesia is applied both topically (tetracaine 0.5%) and subconjunctivally (lidocaine 2%). The lesion is dissected from the cornea and from the surrounding healthy conjunctiva, leaving a bed of bare sclera that may or may not be closed primarily (Fig. 2-7).

Variant procedure or approaches: For larger excisions and to decrease the rate of recurrence, **conjunctival transposition** or **free-graft techniques** can be used to cover the area of bare sclera. Topical antimetabolites, such as mitomycin-C, also may be applied to prevent recurrence. Recently, a method known as P.E.R.F.E.C.T. (pterygium extended removal followed by extended conjunctival transplant) has been employed to reduce the long-term recurrence rate.

Preop diagnosis or indications: Pterygium

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Interpalpebral area adjacent to involved limbus
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope
Antibiotics	Topical postop
Surgical time	15–45 min
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Topical antibiotic ointment
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Recurrence: 37%, without adjunctive therapy or grafting, < 1% with P.E.R.F.E.C.T. method Extraocular muscle injury (higher risk in re-op eyes) Cyst Local bleeding Infection
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually young-to-middle age
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Related to sun exposure with higher rate in latitudes near the equator

Suggested Readings

1. Ang LP, Chua JL, Tan DT: Current concepts and techniques in pterygium treatment. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2007; 18(4): 308–13.
2. Hirst LW: Recurrent pterygium surgery using pterygium extended removal followed by extended conjunctival transplant: recurrence rate and cosmesis. *Ophthalmology* 2009; 116(7):1278–86.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR OPHTHALMIC SURGICAL PROCEDURES UNDER MAC

(Procedures covered: cataract extraction and other procedures; corneal transplant; trabeculectomy; ectropion-entropion repair; ptosis surgery; eyelid reconstruction; pterygium excision)

PREOPERATIVE

Ophthalmic procedures that are of relatively short duration and those that result in minimal blood loss are being performed increasingly more often on an outpatient basis, usually with topical or regional anesthesia (e.g., retrobulbar or peribulbar blocks) under MAC (see p. B-5). **Retrobulbar and peribulbar injections** achieve excellent anesthesia and provide equal degrees of akinesia. Given the associated risk of inadvertent intrathecal injection of anesthetic, orbital hemorrhage, need for heavy sedation during injection, and delayed return of visual function postop, most cataract surgeries are performed using **topical anesthesia**. An additional benefit is that the bleeding risk is lower and the procedure can be performed safely in most patients taking anticoagulants or with bleeding disorders. Although satisfactory pain relief usually is achieved with this method, the lack of akinesia requires a highly cooperative patient to prevent sudden eye movements during surgery. Some surgeons will supplement topical anesthesia with **intracameral lidocaine**

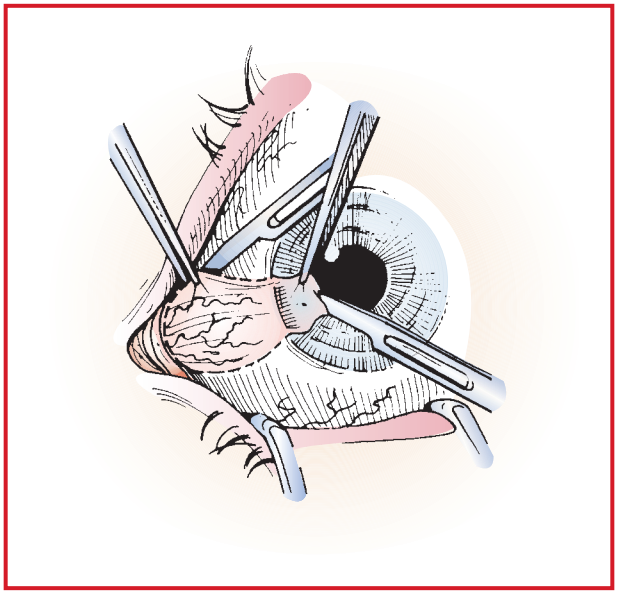


Figure 2-7. Bare sclera excision can be started from the corneal apex or by incising around the conjunctival body of the pterygium. (Redrawn with permission from *Duane's Clinical Ophthalmology,* Vol 6. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

(injections into the anterior chamber), although this has not been proven better than topical anesthetics alone in terms of patient comfort and satisfaction. **Sub-Tenon's injection** is another anesthetic technique used by many surgeons as a compromise between topical application and orbital injections. After preop application of topical anesthetics, a small incision is made in the bulbar conjunctiva, exposing the episcleral (sub-Tenon's) space. A blunt cannula is inserted under direct visualization and local anesthetic injected into the episcleral space. The main benefit is that no sharp needle is used, thereby reducing the risk of intrathecal injection and orbital hemorrhage from vessel injury. The onset of akinesia, however, is often delayed, and this technique still has the disadvantage of delayed return of postop visual function.

The pain on injection is slightly less with peribulbar blocks or sub-Tenon blocks as compared with retrobulbar techniques. For many patients, placement of the intravenous cannula was the most painful event during eye surgery, suggesting that some eye blocks are well tolerated. Intraoperative pain is significantly less with retrobulbar or peribulbar blocks than with topical anesthesia. Rates of ocular perforation following injection blocks are low (1 in 1000–10,000).

Because the majority of ocular procedures are performed on elderly patients, multiple coexisting medical illnesses are often present. A thorough preop H&P along with appropriate ancillary studies are mandatory even though local anesthesia/MAC is planned. Contraindications to regional anesthesia/MAC for ocular surgery may include uncontrolled movement disorder, bleeding diathesis, open-eye injuries, claustrophobia, chronic cough (or other Valsalva-producing conditions), symptomatic gastric reflux, inability to lie flat, inability to communicate or cooperate, or patient refusal.

Respiratory	Elderly patients have increased incidence of hiatal hernia and, therefore, are at increased risk for pulmonary aspiration. Assess the patient's ability to lie flat for the duration of the procedure. Patients with chronic cough may require GA. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Hx of HTN, CAD, CHF, or poor exercise tolerance should prompt a thorough investigation into the patient's cardiac status, including efficacy of current medications and recent ECG (compared with previous ECGs). Consultation with a cardiologist may be appropriate to optimize the patient's condition before surgery. Patients on antithrombotic drugs may be at higher risk for bleeding complications. The decision to stop these drugs and institute heparin bridge therapy should be made in consultation with both the surgeon and the prescribing physician. **Tests:** ECG; others (e.g., ECHO) as indicated from H&P
Diabetes	Diabetic patients are at increased risk for silent myocardial ischemia. Pulmonary aspiration 2° diabetic gastroparesis is also a risk in this population. Patients usually take 1/2 of their normal intermediate or long-acting insulin dose on the morning of surgery; fasting blood sugar is checked; and an iv infusion of D5 LR is started if glucose $<$ 90 mg/dL, or treated with regular insulin if glucose $>$ 200 mg/dL. Blood glucose is checked intraop and postop. Patients on insulin pumps should maintain their basal infusion rate and eliminate preprandial boluses. The anesthesiologist should ask the patient about their insulin sensitivity (the amount of insulin necessary to ↓ blood glucose by 50 mg/dL). Blood glucose should be monitored hourly.
Musculoskeletal	Arthritic changes make lying flat difficult for some patients. Careful positioning and padding are essential. A low-level remifentanil infusion (~0.05 mcg/kg/min) may be helpful in some cases.
Neurological	Patients with tremor, agitation, severe anxiety, cognitive impairment, or inability to cooperate are not appropriate candidates for regional anesthesia/MAC.
Hematologic	✓ for antiplatelet or anticoagulant drug use, particularly in patients undergoing lid or orbital procedures where both the risks and consequences of hemorrhage may be significant. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P (e.g., PT if patient is on anticoagulant).
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P

Premedication	Patients will benefit from a detailed explanation of events prior to surgery (including iv placement, application of monitors, performance of local block, ocular compression, prepping eye, draping of the whole face, and provision of supplemental air/O_2) and the assurance that the anesthesiologist will always be present, monitoring them. Midazolam (0.5–1 mg iv) is often beneficial. For patients with increased risk of aspiration (e.g., with hiatal hernia or diabetic gastroparesis) and for obese and/or very anxious patients, metoclopramide 10 mg iv may enhance gastric emptying.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: MAC (see p. B-5). Topical anesthesia typically is accomplished by the ophthalmologist, often using long lasting LA, supplemented with 2% lidocaine with epinephrine, injected subconjunctivally. Placement of retrobulbar or peribulbar blocks may be painful, and very short-acting agents (e.g., remifentanil 0.25–1 mcg/kg, alfentanil 5–7 mcg/kg, or propofol 30–50 mg) should be administered to minimize patient discomfort. Dose requirements vary significantly among patients, and the anesthesiologist should be prepared to treat sudden ↓ BP and apnea. Usually, further sedation is unnecessary and may interfere with patient cooperation during the surgery. Coughing, or other Valsalva maneuvers, should be avoided during the procedure, and the anesthesiologist must always be prepared to administer GA if necessary. If it is possible that cautery may be used during the surgery, then the delivered FiO_2 should be < 0.3 to minimize fire hazard when using open oxygen delivery methods (e.g., nasal prongs, mask, etc.).

Retrobulbar block: Using a 25- or 27-ga needle (1.5"), the retrobulbar space is approached from the infratemporal quadrant of the orbit. The eye should be in a neutral position. Once the needle is positioned and there is no return of blood or CSF on aspiration, 3–5 mL of anesthetic solution is injected slowly. A facial nerve block is necessary to prevent eyelid movement. This can be accomplished by injecting 4–8 mL of anesthetic solution above and below the

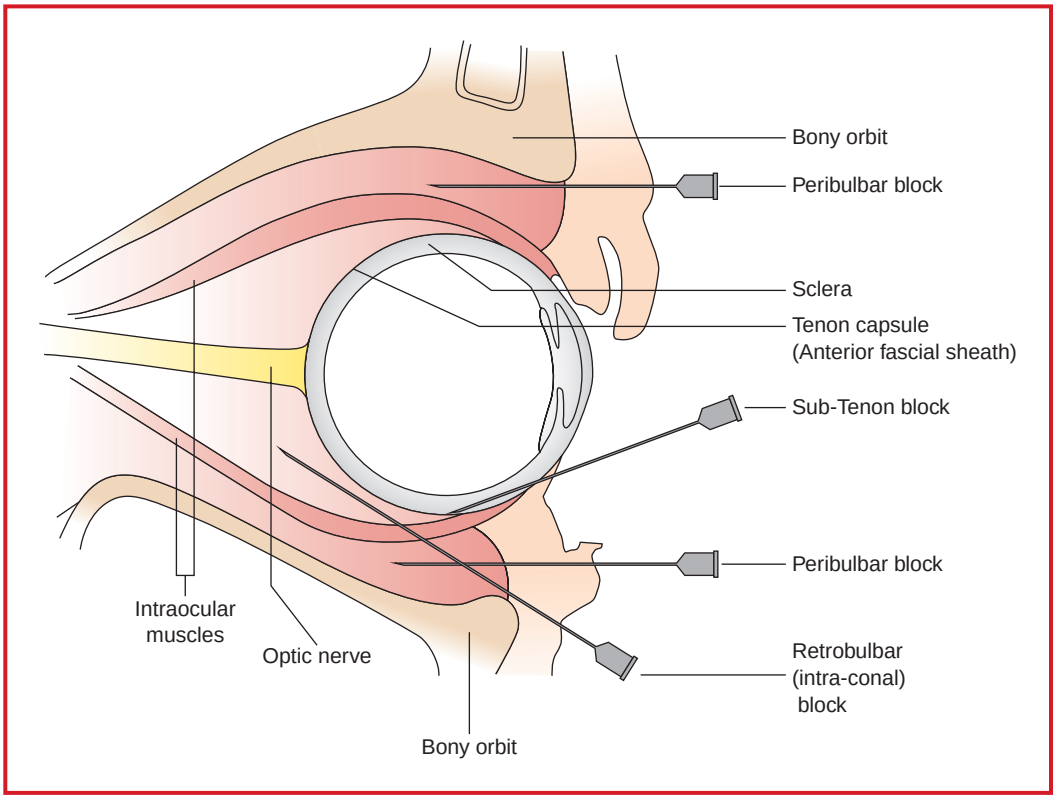


Figure 2-8. Horizontal section of the orbit illustrating regional blocks. There is continuum between the episcleral (sub-Tenon) space and the rectus muscle sheaths.

lateral aspect of the orbit. Typically, the anesthetic solution consists of a 50:50 mixture of 0.5–0.75% bupivacaine and 2% lidocaine ± hyaluronidase, ± epinephrine 1:400,000.

Peribulbar block: Using a 25- or 27-ga needle (5/8"–1"), 6–8 mL of anesthetic solution is injected into the peribulbar space, entering just superior to the inferior rim of the orbit at the junction of the lateral and middle thirds of the lower lid. Orbital compression is usually applied to facilitate spread of local anesthetic. Although perforation of the globe and hemorrhage are still possible, direct injury to the optic nerve and subdural injection are not likely due to the length and position of the needle. Peribulbar blocks generally have a slower onset than retrobulbar blocks and are more likely to cause conjunctival swelling, which may interfere with surgery.

Sub-Tenon's anesthesia: Injection of LA (often 1% lidocaine ± epi) through a 22-ga cannula into the space below Tenon's capsule (episcleral membrane) produces ocular anesthesia in many ways similar to retrobulbar block. However, the onset is slower and akinesia is less reliable. The usual injection volume is 3–5 mL with more necessary if akinesia is required. Unlike retrobulbar block, significant complications with the technique are extremely rare.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h	Excessive fluids → bladder distention → ↑ BP, agitation
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Verbal response	It is important to remain in communication with the patient throughout the procedure. (Take care to avoid evoking head movement.)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ nonoperated eye	Place pillows under knees to relieve back strain.
Complications	Dysrhythmias, especially ↓HR	Usually 2° traction or pressure on ocular/periocular tissues. Rx: stop surgical stimulation
	↑ BP	2° anxiety, pain, phenylephrine eye drops. Rx: reassurance, local anesthetics, labetalol 5 mg or hydralazine 2.5-mg increments, as appropriate.
	Retrobulbar hemorrhage (1–3%)	Rx: pressure bandage; usually cancel surgery
	Globe perforation	If a needle perforation, usually no repair is necessary.
	Convulsions 2° iv local anesthetic	Supportive treatment with IPPV; cancel surgery
	Respiratory/circulatory arrest	2° subarachnoid anesthetic injection. Rx: CPR, IPPV
	Oculocardiac reflex (OCR)	OCR: traction on EOM's → ↓↓ HR, ↓↓ BP, ventricular ectopy, asystole. Rarely occurs during GA or following adequate retrobulbar block. Rx: stop surgical manipulation, atropine for persistent bradycardia, CPR.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Myocardial ischemia	Rx: Provide O_2; ✓ BP; ✓ ECG; cardiology consultation. Rx may include sublingual NTG, aspirin, β-blocker, MS.
	Corneal abrasion	
	Photophobia	
	N/V	Rx: Ondansetron 4 mg iv
	Diplopia	
Pain management	Acetaminophen 325–1000 mg po	

Table 2-1. Commonly Used Ophthalmic Drugs and Their Systemic Effects

Phenylephrine	An α-adrenergic agonist that causes mydriasis (pupillary dilation) and vasoconstriction to aid ocular surgery; however, it also can precipitate significant HTN and dysrhythmias.
Echothiophate	An irreversible cholinesterase inhibitor used in glaucoma treatment to cause miosis and ↓ IOP. Its systemic absorption can reduce plasma cholinesterase activity and thereby prolong paralysis 2° to succinylcholine (usually not more than 20–30 min).
Timolol	A nonselective β-blocker that decreases production of aqueous humor → ↓ IOP. Rarely, it may be associated with atropine-resistant bradycardia, asthma, CHF, and ↓ BP.
Acetazolamide	A carbonic anhydrase inhibitor used to ↓ IOP. It also can cause diuresis and a hypokalemic metabolic acidosis.
Betaxolol	A relatively oculospecific β-blocker used to ↓ IOP. Effects may be additive to systemic β-blockers.
Cyclopentolate	A commonly used mydriatic with the potential for CNS toxicity, including Sz, psychotic reactions, and dysarthria.
Atropine	An anticholinergic that produces mydriasis to aid with ocular examination and surgery. It also can precipitate central anticholinergic syndrome. (Sx range from dry mouth, tachycardia, agitation, delirium, and hallucinations to unconsciousness.) Physostigmine 0.01–0.03 mg/kg will increase central acetylcholine and reverse the symptoms. (It may be repeated after 15–30 min.)
Apraclonidine	An α-2 adrenergic agonist used to treat glaucoma (↓ aqueous formation + ↑ outflow). Systemic absorption → sedation, drowsiness. Hypotension is possible.

Suggested Readings

1. Ashwin PT, Shah S, Wolffsohn JS: Advances in cataract surgery. *Clin Exp Optom* 2009; 92(4):333–42.
2. Malik A, Fletcher EC, Chong V, Dasan J: Local anesthesia for cataract surgery. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2010; 36(1):133–52.
3. Rogers GM, Goins KM: Cataract surgery in the patient that can not lie flat. *Curr Opin Opthalmol* 2010; 21(1):71–4.
4. Sanmugasunderam S, Khalfan A: Is fasting required before cataract surgery? A retrospective review. *Can J Ophthalmol* 2009; 44(6):655–6.

REPAIR OF RUPTURED OR LACERATED GLOBE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A ruptured globe involves a tear of either the corneal or scleral layers of the eye and can occur in the setting of blunt, penetrating, or perforating trauma. The primary goal of surgical repair is to replace extruded intraocular contents, close defects, and remove any foreign body. Orbital CT scans are performed preop to aid in the identification of the latter. To reduce the risk of causing further damage, complete examination of the eye is often delayed until the patient is in the controlled setting of the OR under GA. Although anterior injuries are readily identifiable, posterior injuries may require extensive exploration that can require a 360° opening of the conjunctiva and isolation of each extraocular muscle to allow adequate inspection of the entire scleral surface. Corneal lacerations usually are closed with 10-0 nylon sutures while 8-0 nylon or Vicryl may be used for scleral tissue. Until these wounds are closed, it is crucial that Valsalva maneuvers (which raise IOP), be avoided to prevent further extrusion of intraocular contents.

Variant procedures or approaches: After globe integrity has been established, other associated injuries may be addressed, including repair of conjunctival lacerations, extraocular muscle injuries/detachments, retinal detachments, or removal of a traumatic cataract.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ruptured globe

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Conjunctival peritomy (360° conjunctival incision) to allow exposure of posterior sclera

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope
Antibiotics	IV gentamicin (80 mg) and cefazolin (1 g); subconjunctival and topical antibiotics
Closing considerations	Avoid Valsalva-like maneuvers (coughing, bucking, etc.)
Surgical time	1–2 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Hospital admission for iv antibiotics
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Wound leak Infection: Rate depends on injury Sympathetic ophthalmia: Rare Retinal detachment Suprachoroidal hemorrhage
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Usually < 40 yr
Male:Female	8:1 (as a result of recreational and occupational preferences)
Incidence	Common (~2 million eye injuries in US per year with ~40,000 resulting in vision loss)
Etiology	Work- or sports-related injury; motor vehicle accidents
Associated conditions	Intoxication; orbital/facial trauma; head injury

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This is a generally healthy patient population; however, patients with penetrating eye injuries present the anesthesiologist with two special challenges: (1) They invariably have full stomachs, resulting in risk of aspiration. (2) They are at risk of blindness 2° ↑ IOP → loss of ocular contents, which may be a result of coughing, crying, and/or struggling during induction. Normal IOP ranges from 10–22 mm Hg, depending on the rates of formation and drainage of aqueous humor, choroidal blood volume, scleral rigidity, extraocular muscle tone, as well as extrinsic pressure on the eye (e.g., a poorly fitting mask or retrobulbar hematoma). Patient movement, coughing, straining, vomiting, hypercarbia, HTN, and ET intubation may ↑ IOP to 40 mm Hg or more.

Full-stomach precautions	Consider patient to have a full stomach if the injury occurred within 8 h of the last meal. Pain and anxiety due to trauma will delay gastric emptying. Goal is to minimize risk of aspiration pneumonitis by decreasing gastric volume and acidity. Consider premedication with metoclopramide (10–20 mg iv), antacids such as Na citrate (15–30 mL po, immediately prior to induction), and H_2-histamine receptor antagonists (ranitidine [50 mg iv, ~15 min before induction]). H_2-histamine receptor antagonists, however, have no effect on the pH of gastric secretions present in the stomach prior to administration and are, therefore, of limited value in patients presenting for emergency surgery. If patient has Hx of smoking or is an asthmatic, consider preop use of inhalers such as albuterol (2–4 puffs).

Associated injuries	A ruptured globe may be only one of multiple injuries to the head and neck or other structures. Other injuries should be excluded preoperatively.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients often are very anxious and may benefit from benzodiazepines (e.g., for pediatric population, midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po in cola or apple juice, 15–30 mL). Avoid narcotic premedication, which may ↑ nausea and possibility of emesis.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Regional anesthesia (e.g., retrobulbar block) is contraindicated in patients with open-eye injury because of ↑ IOP, which may accompany injection of local anesthetic behind the globe. Thus, despite the increased risk of aspiration from a full stomach, GETA is recommended. In patients where the risk of GA is unacceptably high (e.g., extensive pulmonary or unstable cardiac disease) surgical repair can be accomplished using topical anesthesia (see Auffarth GU, et al.).

Induction	To protect the airway and prevent ↑ IOP, a rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure and a smooth intubation are required. Although the choice of induction agent is relatively straightforward—propofol 1–2 mg/kg—the choice of neuromuscular blocking agents for facilitating intubation is controversial. Succinylcholine provides a rapid onset, short duration of action, and excellent intubating conditions, but it also transiently increases IOP (~9 mm Hg). This minor ↑ IOP is usually attenuated by pretreatment with a nondepolarizing agent (e.g., rocuronium) followed by propofol induction. Rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg) produces muscle relaxation in 1–2 min and may be a satisfactory alternative to succinylcholine; however, a premature attempt at intubation may significantly ↑ IOP as a result of coughing and straining. Of interest, there are no reports in the literature documenting exacerbation of eye injuries with the use of succinylcholine following pretreatment with a NMR. Given that the anesthesiologist's main concern is safe airway management, the following is a suggested induction plan: (1) Preoxygenation, avoiding external pressure on the eye from face mask (2) Pretreatment with a nondepolarizing relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 0.06–0.12 mg/kg or equivalent), followed by iv lidocaine (1 mg/kg) and fentanyl (2–3 mcg/kg) to blunt the cardiovascular response to laryngoscopy and intubation (3) 4 min later, with cricoid pressure, induce with propofol (1–2 mg/kg) and succinylcholine (1.5 mg/kg). Intubate with oral RAE tube. Note: for pediatric patients, it might be appropriate to induce with sevoflurane while maintaining cricoid pressure and intubating when the patient is deeply anesthetized. Trying to start an iv prior to induction may precipitate struggling and crying, leading to further eye injury.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance or TIVA (see p. B-3). Avoid hypercapnia, which → ↑ IOP. Muscle relaxation is mandatory until the eye is surgically closed. Humidify gases for pediatric patients. Avoid N_2O in patients receiving intraocular gas injection.
Emergence	Decompress the stomach with OG tube. Goal is smooth emergence and extubation with patient awake with intact airway reflexes. IV lidocaine (1.5 mg/kg) 5 min before extubation; posterior pharyngeal suctioning with patient deeply anesthetized, combined with a small amount of narcotic (remifentanil ~1 mcg/kg), may blunt cough reflex prior to extubation. The common occurrence of PONV requires administration of intraop antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv, and ondansetron 4 mg iv 30 min before end of surgery).
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga ×1 (adult) 20 ga ×1 (child) NS/LR @ 5–10 mL/kg/h Warm fluids if large volume will be administered.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Neuromuscular blockade must be monitored closely and additional relaxant given as necessary to prevent patient movement during surgery.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ nonoperated eye	
Complications	↑ IOP with extrusion of intraocular contents Aspiration of gastric contents	IOP (normal = ~10–22 mm Hg) increased by: blink = 10–15 mm Hg; forced lid closure = > 70 mm Hg.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	N/V	Rx: Metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv, droperidol 0.625 mg iv (with due respect to the black-box warning), ondansetron 4 mg iv
	Aspiration pneumonitis Photophobia Diplopia Hemorrhagic retinopathy Corneal abrasion	Provide O_2 by face mask, if not intubated. Follow O_2 sat. ✓ CXR.
Pain management	Acetaminophen	Occasionally, parenteral opiates (see p. C-3).

Suggested Readings

1. Auffarth GU, Vargas LG, Klett J, et al: Repair of a ruptured globe using topical anesthesia. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2004; 30(3):726–9.
2. Boscia F, La Tegola MG, Columbo G, et al: Combined topical anesthesia and sedation for open-globe injuries in selected patients. *Ophthalmology* 2003; 110(8):1555–9.
3. Chidiac EJ, Raiskin AO: Succinylcholine and the open eye. *Ophthalmol Clin North Am* 2006; 19(2):279–85.
4. Kumar C, Doods C, Fanning G, eds: *Ophthalmic Anaesthesia*. Swets and Zeitlinger BV, Lisse: 2002.
5. McGoldrick KE, Gayer S: Anesthesia for ophthalmic surgery. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia,* 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009.
6. Vachon CA, Warner DO, Bacon DR: Succinylcholine and the open globe. Tracing the teaching. *Anesthesiology* 2003; 99:220–3.

DACRYOCYSTORHINOSTOMY (DCR)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR)** is performed for patients with symptomatic obstruction of the nasolacrimal duct (NLD) and is commonly associated with chronic dacryocystitis. The procedure is designed to create a fistula from the common canaliculus to the nasopharynx, which bypasses the site of obstruction. This involves removal of bone adjacent to the nasolacrimal sac and incorporating the sac with the lateral nasal mucosa. DCR can be performed under GA or local anesthesia (subcutaneous [equal mixture of 1–2% lidocaine and 0.5% bupivacaine with 1:100k epinephrine] and nasal cavity cocaine 4%) with most patients preferring local anesthesia. Intranasal phenylephrine and/or cocaine pledgets are often placed to decrease mucosal bleeding. A skin incision is made below the medial canthal tendon that is extended to the lacrimal fossa with blunt dissection. Bleeding can be excessive if the angular vessels are injured. The now exposed periosteum is incised, and a 1.5 cm × 1.5 cm osteotomy is created with a burr and/or Kerrison punch, exiting at the level of the middle meatus. A Crawford lacrimal probe attached to silicone tubing is inserted into the superior punctum and advanced into the lacrimal sac, which is then opened along

its medial wall. Following incision of the nasal mucosa through the osteotomy, the posterior flap of the lacrimal sac is sutured to the posterior nasal mucosa flap. The probe is advanced through the osteotomy and into the middle meatus, where it is retrieved through the nare. The second end of the probe is advanced along the same path but beginning through the inferior punctum. The ends of the silicone tubing are tied together in the nare and the anterior flaps of lacrimal sac and nasal mucosa are sutured together. Thrombin and gel foam can be used to control mucosal bleeding, and the skin is reapproximated after ensuring hemostasis. Meticulous hemostasis is essential to a successful outcome.

Variant procedures or approaches: If the lacrimal obstruction is more proximal to the lacrimal sac, a **Jones tube** can be placed (Fig. 2-9), creating an artificial lumen from the conjunctiva to the nasopharynx to bypass the entire nasolacrimal drainage system. An endonasal approach using a rigid endoscopic ± laser offers the advantage of no skin incision, good visualization of intranasal pathology and less postop discomfort. The endoscopic approach is more common in children and young adults where the absence of skin creases makes scar concealment difficult.

Usual preop diagnosis: NLD obstruction

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	15 mm, just below medial canthus (Fig. 2-10)
Special instrumentation	Headlight; surgical loupes
Unique considerations	Nasal packing with phenylephrine/4% cocaine/lidocaine. Blood may drain into upper airway during surgery
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
EBL	100–200 mL
Postop care	Outpatient tube removal required
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Failure to drain Bleeding: 5% Infection: < 1% Cerebrospinal fluid leak
Pain score	3–4 (Pain scores are lower following local anesthesia compared to GA.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–70 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Adults: Usually scarring from prior infection or trauma Children: Congenital or prior infection
Associated conditions	Deviated septum; nasal polyps; nasopharyngeal masses; congenital anomalies

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

DCR can be performed with local anesthetic and MAC or under GA depending on patient and surgeon preferences. See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under MAC: p. 158 or GA: p. 170.

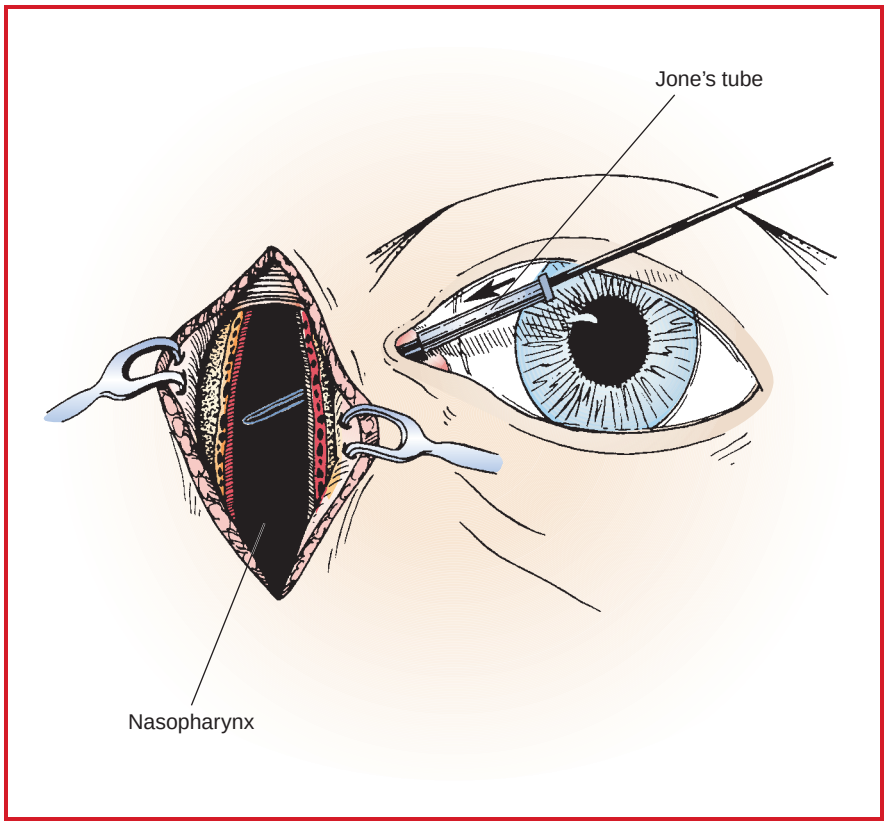


Figure 2-9. Insertion of a Pyrex Jones tube. (Reproduced with permission from McCord CD, Tanenbaum M, Nunery WR: *Oculoplastic Surgery.* Raven Press: 1995.)

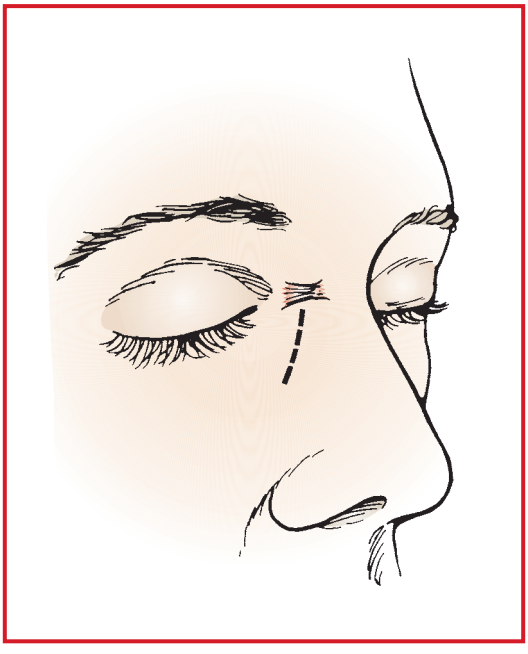


Figure 2-10. Linear skin incision for a standard DCR. (Reproduced with permission from Wright KW: *Textbook of Ophthalmology.* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1997.)

Suggested Readings

1. Madge SN, Selva D: Intubation in routine dacryocystorhinostomy: why we do what we do. *Clin Experiment Ophthalmol* 2009; 37(6):620–3.
2. Watkins LM, Janfaza P, Rubin PA: The evolution of endonasal dacryocystorhinostomy. *Surg Ophthalmol* 2003; 48(1):73–84.
3. See Suggested Readings following Ophthalmic Surgery section, p. 176.

ENUCLEATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Enucleation involves removal of the entire globe and a portion of the optic nerve. It usually is performed for painful blind eyes or intraocular tumors (e.g., retinoblastoma, melanoma). If possible, the surrounding ocular adnexa, including the conjunctiva, Tenon's connective tissue, and extraocular muscles, are left in place to secure an orbital implant. The procedure begins with a 360° conjunctival incision (**peritomy**) at the limbus, allowing exposure of the underlying extraocular muscles and sclera. Each of the recti muscles is isolated with a muscle hook and secured with fixation sutures before disinsertion from the globe. The oblique muscles are cut and allowed to retract into the orbit (Fig. 2-11). A curved clamp is closed across the optic nerve ~3–10 mm posterior to the globe, and the nerve is cut and the globe removed. After hemostasis has been ensured, an orbital implant (polymethylmethacrylate or hydroxyapatite) is placed into the socket. The overlying muscles, connective tissue, and conjunctiva are closed to improve motility and prevent extrusion.

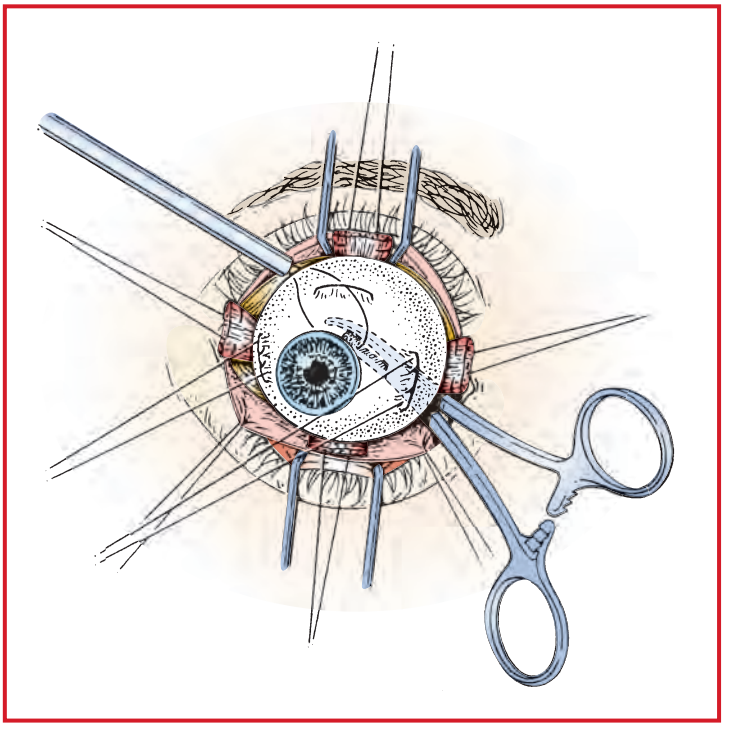


Figure 2-11. Each of the four recti is isolated with 6-0 Dexon suture. The superior oblique tendon is detached. The inferior oblique is sutured to the inferior border of the lateral rectus. 4-0 silk traction sutures are in place over the medial and lateral rectus stump. The globe is rotated laterally, while a curved clamp is introduced from the medial direction. Either a curved scissors or an enucleation snare may be used to transect the optic nerve. (Reproduced with permission from McCord CD Jr, Tanenbaum M, Nunery WR: *Oculoplastic Surgery.* Raven Press, Philadelphia: 1995.)

Variant procedure or approaches: **Evisceration** involves removing all intraocular contents through a corneoscleral incision, leaving the scleral shell with the attached adnexa in place. This usually is performed in cases of endophthalmitis, but never if malignancy is suspected. **Exenteration** is a more extensive procedure for the management of aggressive malignant tumors or infections where all orbital tissue, often including surrounding orbital bone and adjacent sinuses, is removed. If the extent of orbital tumors is unknown, frozen sections from the surgical margins will be used to determine if exenteration is needed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Painful blind eye; intraocular tumors; sympathetic ophthalmia; trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	360° conjunctival (peritomy)
Special instrumentation	Surgical loupes
Antibiotics	Irrigate socket with gentamicin postop
Surgical time	1 h
EBL	< 100 mL
Postop care	Outpatient
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Extrusion of implant Infection: < 1%
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Relatively common (typically related to eye trauma)
Etiology	Trauma; infection; glaucoma; tumors (e.g., retinoblastoma, melanoma); inflammation
Associated conditions	Diabetes mellitus

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ophthalmic Surgical Procedures under GA, p. 170.

Suggested Reading

1. See Suggested Readings following Ophthalmic Surgery section, p. 176.

ORBITOTOMY—ANTERIOR AND LATERAL

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Surgical access to the orbit is required for biopsy/excision of masses, drainage of orbital abscesses, removal of a foreign body, or repair of orbital fractures, among other procedures. The orbit may be divided into several compartments, and the surgical approach will vary by the location and size of the lesion. In general, an **anterior orbitotomy** is used for small tumors in the anterior orbit and can be approached from a transconjunctival, transseptal, or transperiosteal incision. By contrast, a **lateral orbitotomy** allows for removal of larger masses located further posteriorly in the orbit, as well as those lesions involving the lacrimal gland. In this procedure, the skin incision can be placed just under the brow (**Stallard-Wright**), in the lid crease with lateral extension, or higher in the eyebrow (**coronal**). The dissection is carried down to the periosteum, which is then incised and reflected. The lateral orbital wall is exposed, and an osteotomy is performed using an oscillating saw, after preplacing suture holes with a power drill. The section of bone is removed with a clamp, and the periorbita is opened, allowing intraorbital dissection. After biopsy or removal of the mass, the periorbita is closed and the bone fragment replaced.

Variant procedures or approaches: A **medial orbitotomy** is often required to access lesions that are located medial to the optic nerve.

Usual preop diagnosis: Orbital mass; fractures; foreign body; abscess

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90–180°
Incision	Variable (see above)
Special instrumentation	Surgical loupes
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1–3 h
EBL	Usually minimal, unless vascular tumor
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Orbital hemorrhage (retrobulbar → proptosis, retinal ischemia) Impaired ocular motility, strabismus Perforation of the globe: < 1:1000 needle blocks Loss of vision; optic nerve injury Infection: < 1%
Pain score	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Fairly common
Etiology	Tumor, such as hemangioma, lymphangioma, lymphoma; lacrimal gland tumors; infection; fracture; foreign body

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR); enucleation; anterior and lateral orbitotomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for DCR, enucleation, and orbitotomy represent a diverse population. These patients are generally healthy, aside from the infection, tumor, or trauma underlying their ocular or periocular pathology. Preop evaluation should focus on possible coexisting disease and the systemic manifestations of previous therapeutic interventions (e.g., chemotherapy and drugs used to treat glaucoma). NB: Always verify that surgery is performed on the correct side.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique	GETA	
Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). An oral RAE ETT may be preferred.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see, p. B-3). Muscle relaxation is not required.	
Emergence	No special considerations. The common occurrence of PONV requires the administration of intraop antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 10 mg iv, and ondansetron 4 mg iv).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss variable IV: 18-20 ga ×1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Positioning	Table rotated 90° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ nonoperated eye	
Complications	Oculocardiac reflex (OCR)	OCR: tractions on EOM's → ↓↓ HR, ↓↓ BP, ventricular ectopy, asystole. Rarely occurs during GA or following adequate retrobulbar block. Rx: stop surgical manipulation, atropine for persistent bradycardia, OPR.
	Brainstem anesthesia	Onset < 20 min → ↓ HR, ↓ BP, apnea, agitation, asystole. Rx may require CPR, intubation and prolonged ventilation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV	Rx: Metoclopramide 10 mg iv, and/or ondansetron 4 mg iv
Pain management	Acetaminophen	Occasionally parenteral opiates (see p. C-2).

RETINAL SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Retinal surgery is performed for a wide variety of conditions (see Usual preop diagnoses, below). Most **retinal detachments** are due to one or more small tears in the retina. Retinal detachments are classified as traction, exudative (not usually treated with surgery), or rhegmatogenous (rupture, tear). Children, especially those with ROP

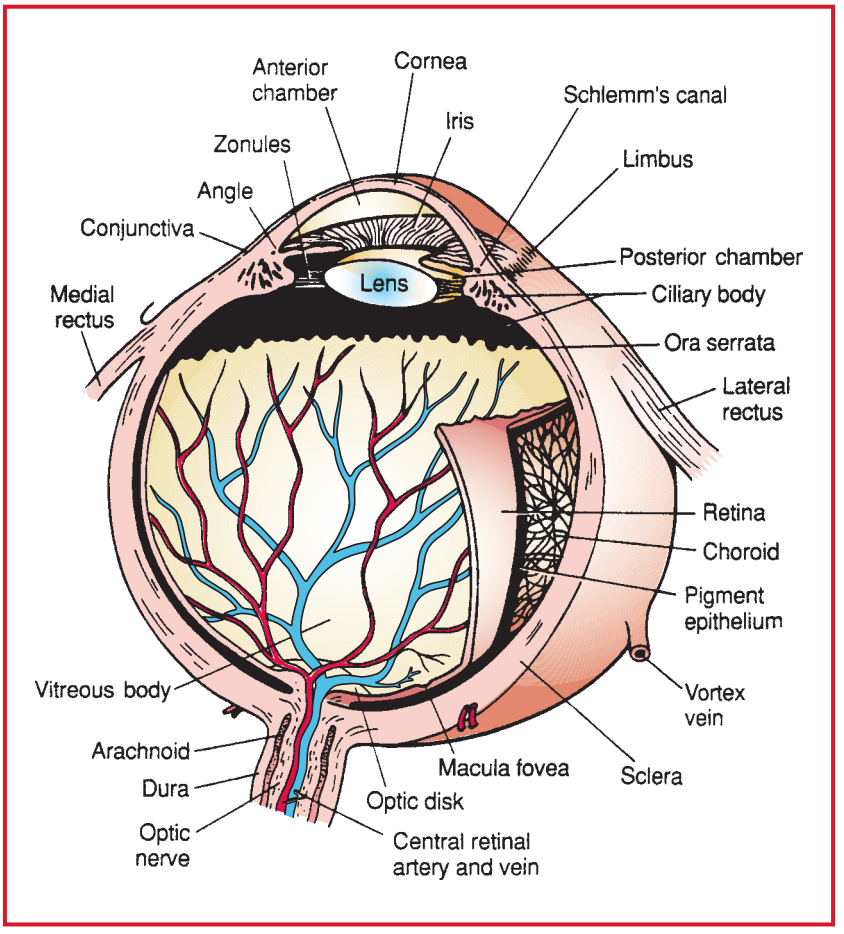


Figure 2-12. Eye anatomy. (Reproduced with permission from Langston D, ed: *Manual of Ocular Diagnosis and Therapy,* 2nd edition. Little, Brown, Boston: 1985.)

or trauma, may develop retinal detachments. In adults, retinal detachments are most frequently associated with diabetes, myopia, trauma, and previous cataract surgery. Rhegmatogenous retinal detachments (more common in adults) start off with a small retinal tear, which allows the vitreous to seep in between the retina and pigment epithelium, forcing retinal separation. Sx range from floaters and flashing lights to showers of black specks and, ultimately, to a dark shadow that impinges on the field of vision. Retinal detachments may be complicated by proliferative vitreoretinopathy (PVR), in which scar tissue grows along the surface of the retina, rendering it stiff and difficult to reattach. Less commonly, retinal detachments are induced by other forms of vitreoretinal traction, or by trauma involving an open globe. Care must be taken to avoid any increase in intraocular pressure (IOP) in an eye that may be ruptured. On rare occasion, retinal detachments are due to the formation of a giant retinal tear. Just as rarely, retinal surgery may be done on premature infants in an effort to prevent or repair retinal detachments. The ultimate aim of retinal surgery is the preservation or recovery of vision through the restoration of normal posterior segment anatomy. (Anatomy of the eye is shown in Fig. 2-12.)

Retinal surgery may involve various procedures alone or in combination, including scleral buckling, vitrectomy, gas–fluid exchange, and injection of vitreous substitutes. **Scleral buckles** are silicone rubber appliances sutured to the sclera to indent the eye wall, thereby relieving vitreous traction and functionally closing retinal tears. This is an external procedure in which the eye may either not be entered at all or entered with a small needle puncture through the sclera for drainage of subretinal fluid, or injection of gas.

Cryotherapy or lasers are used frequently to establish chorioretinal adhesions around retinal tears. Cryotherapy is applied to the sclera; a laser is applied with a fiberoptic cable introduced into the vitreous cavity during vitrectomy surgery, often in combination with a wide-field viewing system. It also can be administered with an indirect ophthalmoscope delivery system for those eyes not undergoing vitrectomy.

Simple detachments frequently can be repaired by a pneumatic retinopexy, in which retinal tears are treated with cryotherapy and/or laser, and an expanding gas is injected into the vitreous cavity. This technique usually is done in phakic eyes (eyes with intact lens) with tears between the 9 o'clock and 4 o'clock positions. Pneumatic retinopexy usually is done as an outpatient office procedure, with local anesthesia, or, less commonly, MAC. The other procedures discussed usually are done with MAC, although GA may be used, according to surgeon's preference and the patient's systemic condition. Some surgeons inject retrobulbar or subconjunctival bupivacaine at the end of a procedure done under GA to decrease postop pain.

Vitrectomy (removal of vitreous) is commonly performed to reduce traction on the retina (↓ retinal detachment), clear blood and debris, and remove scar tissue. It is an intraocular procedure in which three 20–25-ga openings are made into the vitreous cavity with a myringotomy blade 3–4 mm posterior to the limbus (junction of the cornea and sclera.) One of these openings in the inferotemporal quadrant is used for infusion of balanced salt solution via a sutured or transconjunctival trochar-based cannula. The remaining openings are at the 9:30 and 2:30 o'clock positions. One is used for a handheld fiberoptic light, the other for insertion of a variety of manual and automated instruments, including suction cutters, scissors, and forceps, used to remove and section abnormal tissue within the vitreous cavity.

Visualization of the retina during vitrectomy is made possible by a contact lens, which is either sutured to the eye or held in position by an assistant. Some of these lenses provide a wide-field, inverted view of the retina, necessitating an image inverter on the microscope. Alternatively, a noncontact, wide-field lens may be positioned just above the cornea, suspended from the microscope. Balanced salt solution gas, silicone oil, or liquid perflurocarbon replaces the vitreous and other tissues removed during the operation. A bubble of gas (e.g., sulfur hexafluoride or perfluoropropane mixed with air) is sometimes introduced into the vitreous cavity during a scleral buckle or a vitrectomy when the surgeon wants an internal tamponade of retinal tears that cannot be closed adequately by a scleral buckle alone. N_2O must be discontinued before a gas–fluid exchange to avoid an intraop or postop change in gas bubble size, possibly accompanied by abnormal IOP.

In the case of a giant retinal tear, a **gas–fluid exchange** formerly was performed with the patient in the prone position toward the end of the operation. This required that the patient be on a Stryker frame, so that he or she could be moved from the supine to the prone position for the gas-fluid exchange. Perfluorocarbon liquids now obviate the need for a Stryker frame.

Liquid vitreous substitutes, such as perfluorocarbon liquids or silicone oil, are sometimes introduced into the vitreous cavity during a vitrectomy. Perfluorocarbon liquids are heavier than water and are used as an intraoperative tool to unfold the detached retina; they are removed at the end of the procedure. Perfluorocarbon liquids make possible repair of giant retinal tears in the supine position, thus eliminating the need for a Stryker frame. They also facilitate reattaching the retina when PVR is present, by allowing a relaxing retinotomy for those situations where the retina is too stiff and foreshortened to be reattached by less-invasive measures. Silicone oil is used for complex detachments in which a long-term, internal tamponade of retinal tears is deemed necessary to prevent redetachment. It usually is removed a few months postoperatively with a second operation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Simple and complex retinal detachment; diabetic retinopathy; vitreous hemorrhage or opacification; macular epiretinal membranes; other surgically correctable macular conditions, such as macular holes or macular degeneration with subfoveal choroidal neovascularization or hemorrhage; dislocated intraocular lenses; endophthalmitis; macular degeneration with posterior segment trauma, including repair of ruptured globes and removal of intraocular foreign bodies; retinopathy of prematurity (ROP); high myopia; trauma.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Transconjunctival
Special instrumentation	Vitrectomy machine; cryoprobe; laser; indirect ophthalmoscope; microscope
Unique considerations	Ruptured globe—avoid ↑ IOP. Stop N_2O 5–10 min before a gas-fluid exchange. Retinal detachments often require urgent surgery (< 24 h).

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	May use iv antibiotics at the start of surgery, in addition to subconjunctival antibiotics at conclusion of surgery.
Surgical time	Pneumatic retinopexy: 20 min Scleral buckle: 30 min to 2 h Vitrectomy: 1–4+ h
Closing considerations	Try to avoid postop coughing, bucking, vomiting or other Valsalva-like events. Specific head positioning may be required following intraocular gas injection.
EBL	None
Postop care	Prone positioning may be necessary if gas was injected
Mortality	Extremely rare
Morbidity	Hemorrhage: < 5% Retinal detachment: < 5% Infection: < 1% Proliferative retinopathy
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Usually adults; occasionally premature infants (ROP) and children (retinal detachment or trauma)
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	1/10,000/yr phakic; 1–3% of patients postcataract extraction with placement of intraocular lens
Etiology	Majority idiopathic possibly related to anatomic predisposition; some related to systemic disease or induced by trauma or cataract surgery
Associated conditions	Idiopathic: retinal detachment, epiretinal membrane, macular hole Diabetic retinopathy: vitreous hemorrhage or traction retinal detachment Macular degeneration: subfoveal choroidal neovascularization or hemorrhage Trauma: vitreous hemorrhage, retinal detachment, ruptured globe Intraocular foreign body (IOFB) HTN: vitreous hemorrhage Extreme prematurity: ROP Proliferative sickle-cell retinopathy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In MAC cases, the need for anxiolytics can often be reduced or eliminated by discussing in detail what will happen to the patient during the procedure and by addressing patient concerns (e.g., claustrophobia, positional pain, supine dyspnea). Most vitreous and retinal procedures can be accomplished using regional anesthetic techniques (retrobulbar, peribulbar, or sub-Tenon's block with MAC. Procedures requiring more than 2 h and patients (or surgeons) with special needs (e.g., claustrophobia, uncooperative, immature) may benefit from GA. With MAC, the anesthesiologist's goal should be a comfortable, cooperative patient who can lie completely still without falling asleep (thereby avoiding uncontrolled movement when suddenly awakened) for 1–2 h, while avoiding Valsalva-like events (e.g., coughing).

Cardiovascular	Mannitol decreases IOP by increasing plasma oncotic pressure relative to aqueous humor pressure. It may be given just before or during surgery. Total dosage should not exceed 1.5–2 g/kg iv over a 30–60 min period. Rapid infusion of large doses of mannitol may precipitate ↓ BP, CHF, pulmonary edema, electrolyte abnormalities, and, possibly, myocardial ischemia; hence, the importance of a thorough evaluation of the patient's renal and cardiovascular status prior to administering mannitol. Patients on antithrombotic drugs may be at higher risk for bleeding complications. The decision to stop these drugs and institute heparin bridge therapy should be made in consultation with both the surgeon and the prescribing physician. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Diabetes	Diabetic patients are at increased risk for silent myocardial ischemia. Pulmonary aspiration 2° diabetic gastroparesis is also a risk in this population. Patients usually take 1/2 or 1/3 of their normal long-acting insulin dose (on the morning of surgery); fasting blood sugar is checked; and an iv infusion of D5 LR is started if glucose < 90 mg/dL or treated with regular insulin if glucose > 200 mg/dL. Blood sugar is checked intraop and postop.
Renal	Acetazolamide, a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor, decreases secretion of aqueous humor. It also inhibits renal carbonic anhydrase, thereby causing loss of HCO_3, Na^+, K^+, and water. Thus, patients on chronic therapy may be acidotic, hypokalemic, and hyponatremic. **Tests:** Electrolytes; others as indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Sickle-cell disease → retinopathy. Sickle-cell trait is not commonly associated with periop complications. Patients with sickle-cell anemia should be well hydrated and transfused preop, as necessary to increase HbA concentration > 40%.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5 mg/kg po for pediatric patients (~30 min to peak effect; ~30 min duration of effect) and midazolam 1–2 mg iv incrementally for adults, will help alleviate anxiety. Avoid excessive sedation (respiratory depression) in sickle-cell patients. Surgeons prefer a normal IOP during retinal reattachment surgery, and therefore, patients may be given acetazolamide or mannitol to decrease IOP.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Retinal detachment surgery may be performed under regional anesthesia (e.g., retrobulbar or peribulbar block); however, if the surgery is expected to be > 2 h, GETA may be preferable. If it is possible that cautery may be used during the surgery, then the delivered FiO_2 should be < 0.3 to minimize fire hazard when using open oxygen delivery methods (e.g., nasal prongs, mask, etc.)

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate for these patients with care being taken not to put pressure on the affected eye with the face mask.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Ophthalmologists, however, may use expanding gases, such as sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6) or perfluoropropane (C_3F_8), for internal tamponade of the retinal tears and, if N_2O is used, the injected bubble may expand rapidly, causing a dramatic rise in IOP. This can impair retinal blood flow. N_2O, if used at all, should be D/C'd at least 15 min before gas injection. For any subsequent surgery, N_2O should be avoided for at least 14 d after an air injection, 30 d after a SF_6 injection, and 90 d after C_3F_8. Given the importance of patient immobility, nondepolarizing muscle relaxants may be advantageous, especially if N_2O is D/C'd.
Emergence	Use narcotics for pain control and consider iv lidocaine 1.0–1.5 mg/kg 5 min prior to extubation to provide smooth emergence. The common occurrence of PONV requires the administration of intraop antiemetics (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv and ondansetron 4–8 mg iv 30 min before the end of surgery).

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga ×1 (adult) 20 ga ×1 (child) NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	Processed EEG may be useful in monitoring level of sedation Care should be taken to avoid CO_2 accumulation under the drapes in MAC cases. A suction line can be used to improve air circulation under the drape
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ and pad nonsurgical eye	For long MAC cases, short "time-outs" should be taken to allow patients to reposition themselves
Complications	Oculocardiac reflex (OCR)	OCR: traction on EOM's → ↓↓ HR, ↓↓ BP, ventricular ectopy, asystole. Rarely occurs during GA or following adequate retrobulbar block. Rx: stop surgical manipulation, atropine for persistent bradycardia, CPR.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Corneal abrasion Vitreous hemorrhage Glaucoma Ptosis Diplopia Loss of vision Infection	Rx: ondansetron 4–8 mg iv ± metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv; however, eye pain (e.g., 2° to corneal abrasion) may also cause N/V. If this is the case, treat eye pain (ophthalmology consult). Persistently low BP → retinal ischemia and central retinal artery occlusion
Pain management	Retrobulbar anesthesia	
Tests	None routinely required	

Suggested Readings

1. Bryant JS, Busbee BG, Reichel E: Overview of ocular anesthesia: past and present. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2011; 22(3):180–4.
2. Charles S, Fanning GL: Anesthesia considerations for vitreoretinal surgery. *Ophthalmol Clin North Am* 2006; 19(2):239–43.
3. Kumar CM, Eld H, Dodds C: Sub-Tenon's anaesthesia: complications and their prevention. *Eye (Lond.)* 2011; 25(6):694–703.
4. McGoldrick KE, Gayer SI: *Anesthesia for Opthalmic Surgery.* In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009:1375–92.
5. Nouvellon E, Cuvillon P, Ripart J: Regional anesthesia and eye surgery. *Anesthesiology* 2010; 113(5):1236–42.
6. Ryan SJ, Hinton DR, et al, eds: *Retina,* 5th edition. CV Mosby Co, St. Louis: 2012.

General Ophthalmic Surgery Suggested Readings

1. Ahmad S, Ahmad A: Complications of ophthalmologic nerve blocks: a review. *J Clin Anesth* 2003; 15(7):564–9.
2. Albert DM, Jakobiec FA, eds: *Principles and Practice of Ophthalmology.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000;1463–76.
3. Kumar C, Dodds C, Gayer S: *Ophthalmic Anaesthsia* (Oxford Specialist Handbooks in Anesthesia). Oxford University Press, 2012.
4. Levine MR, ed: *Manual of Oculoplastic Surgery,* 2nd edition. Butterworth-Heinmann, New York: 1996.
5. Nesi FA, Smith BC, eds: *Ophthalmic Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery,* 2nd edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1997.
6. Pokhrel PK, Loftus SA: Ocular emergencies. *Am Fam Physician* 2007; 76(6):829–36.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Scleral Buckle and Vitrectomy for Retinal Detachment: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CJy8qjNojAc

Vitrectomy for Vitreous Opacities (Floaters): http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4FJYeEGl98g

Advanced Cataract Surgery – "In Simple English": http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aohAHNYpAOs

SECTION

3.0 OTOLARYNGOLOGY—HEAD AND NECK SURGERY

SURGEONS

Michael J. Kaplan, MD (*Head & Neck Surgery*)
Edward J. Damrose, MD (*Laryngology*)
Nikolas H. Blevins, MD (*Otology & Neurotology*)
Robert K. Jackler, MD (*Otology & Neurotology*)
Peter H. Hwang, MD (*Endoscopic Sinus Surgery*)
Sarmela T. Sunder, MD (*Endoscopic Sinus Surgery*)
Sam P. Most, MD (*Nasal Surgery*)
Willard E. Fee, Jr. MD (*Head & Neck Surgery*)
Robert W. Riley, DDS, MD (*Sleep-disordered breathing*)
Nelson B. Powell, MD (*Sleep-disordered breathing*)
Donald M. Sesso, DO (*Sleep-disordered breathing*)

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Vladimir Nekhendzy, MD (*All topics*)
Brett L. Miller (*Sleep-disordered breathing*)
Michael W. Champeau, MD (*Sleep-disordered breathing*)

INTRODUCTION—SURGEON'S PERSPECTIVE

Interdisciplinary cooperation is nowhere more critical than where the priority of airway maintenance is confronted both with abnormalities in the airway and with adjacent surgical goals. An anesthesiologist versed both in the management of the difficult airway and an ability to accurately anticipate the issues confronting the surgeon is critical. Similarly, a communicative surgeon fully aware of the problems the anesthesiologist is likely to encounter is critical to minimizing complications. Important issues that require mutual understanding include:

(a) Airway management: anesthesia induction, endotracheal tube size, head range of motion with shared airway space, a well-secured ETT, postop airway edema, and smooth emergence from anesthesia
(b) Muscle relaxation, patient immobility, patient positioning
(c) Deliberate relative hypotensive anesthesia and management of bradycardia
(d) Antiemetics and pain management postop
(e) Patient population considerations: frequent cardiac and pulmonary issues associated with older patients, especially with alcohol and tobacco use; degenerative c-spine issues; and prior irradiation affecting neck mobility.

Airway management: An initially compromised airway is not uncommon in many otolaryngology head and neck procedures. Many others may develop airway loss at induction or if premature extubation occurs. Communication between the surgeon and anesthesiologist is essential, as is a discussion of a plan and backup plan should an emergency arise. Availability of a sliding Jackson scope and tracheotomy equipment, as well as plans for fiberoptic intubation, awake intubation, or retrograde intubation, should be discussed as indicated.

For procedures within the airway, an endotracheal tube no larger than 6 mm should be adequate and will reduce postop airway edema. An armored tube is helpful when the surgical procedure is intraoral and the tube may be compressed. A nasotracheal intubation should be discussed as an alternative in this situation. If laser surgery is planned, maintaining the FiO_2 at < 0.3 is indicated. If fiberoptic bronchoscopy is planned, then a 7.0- or 7.5-mm ETT will facilitate passage of the bronchoscope through the ETT, after which for a longer case, changing to a smaller tube may be warranted.

As the patient is generally turned 90° or 180° away from the anesthesiologist, a very secure airway is important. If the surgeon needs access in the mouth, securing the tube via a wire to several teeth may work better than tape.

Muscle relaxation and patient positioning: Avoidance of muscle relaxation is important if a motor nerve, such as the facial nerve, is to be dissected. Muscle relaxation is important, on the other hand, in esophagoscopy and tongue surgery. Communicate and coordinate timing of drug administration. Frequently the surgeon will need to turn the patient's head during surgery. Anticipating this movement when initially securing the endotracheal tube and its connections will prevent disconnection. In neck surgery, the neck is often rotated away from the surgeon; overrotation presents the risk of brachial plexus stretch injuries. If a radial free flap is anticipated, then positioning of the arm as well as rotation of the head should be carefully coordinated to avoid injury while still providing needed access and a secure airway.

Deliberate relative hypotensive anesthesia, to a SBP of <100 mmHg, depending on individual patient's needs, is often a boon to the surgeon operating in the highly vascular fields of the head and neck, or operating with a microscope. For selected cases the patient also will have had preop embolization of a tumor and its blood supply (e.g., angiofibromas and skull base paragangliomas). **Bradycardia** may occur if the surgeon operates near the vagus nerve or carotid bifurcation. If this occurs, it is usually sufficient for the anesthesiologist to communicate this and the surgeon can desist for a period of time. Occasionally topical or locally injected anesthetics will be necessary.

INTRODUCTION—ANESTHESIOLOGIST'S PERSPECTIVE

PATIENT POPULATION

Many ENT patients are smokers and elderly, and have ↑incidence of CAD, HTN, chronic renal insufficiency, and COPD. Careful H&P must be performed to ensure that the patient's functional status is optimized. Chronic cigarette smoking and alcohol use also cause an induction of cytochrome P450 multi-enzyme system → ↑ opioids and ↑ NMB requirements.

Table 3-1. Predictors of Difficult Face Mask Ventilation
Age > 57 y.o.
Body Mass Index ≥ 30 kg/m^2
Beard
Snoring or OSA
Lack of teeth
Mallampati III or IV
Limited mandibular protrusion

Table 3-2. Predictors of Impossible Mask Ventilation
Male
Beard
Obstructive sleep apnea (moderate to severe, requiring PAP treatment)
Mallampati III or IV
H/o neck radiation

AIRWAY

ENT patients often present with H&P findings associated with a difficult airway including: (1) anatomic characteristics (e.g., ↓ C-spine ROM, large tongue, receding jaw, etc.); (2) Hx of stridor and hoarseness (airway narrowing and possible vocal cord (VC) dysfunction); (3) previous Hx of neck surgery, trauma, or XRT (↓ compliance of the tissues, ↓ neck ROM, ↓ mouth opening); (4) previous Hx of difficult intubation, and (5) infections (e.g., epiglottitis, retropharyngeal abscess, Ludwig's angina).

Meticulous examination of the airway must be performed, and there should be a low threshold for an awake intubation if the airway is questionable. The awake vs. asleep approach to tracheal intubation should be guided by the presence of predictors of difficult or impossible mask ventilation, and their association with difficult intubation (DI) (Tables 3-1 and 3-2).

If intubation difficulty is anticipated, but a conventional DL after induction of GA is nevertheless chosen, at least two clearly defined backup airway management plans should be in place. Video laryngoscopy (e.g., Glidescope) will often improve airway visualization, and the LMA-Fastrach™ provides rescue ventilation with a 95–100% success rate in difficult airway situations. If a conventional DL was chosen as a first approach, the patient's head positioning should be optimized and simple intubating aids (e.g., stylets, gum elastic bougie) as well as the ETTs of different sizes made readily available. The number of DL intubation attempts should be limited to two; repeated intubating attempts are associated with increased incidence of airway trauma, unanticipated ICU admission and "cannot ventilate-cannot intubate" events.

For most ENT surgical procedures the patient's airway is shared with the surgeon, and immediate access to the airway may be difficult or impossible. The ETT must be secured diligently to prevent an accidental extubation or pullout of the ETT to the subglottic area, which may result in exerting direct pressure on the recurrent laryngeal nerves by the ETT cuff. For certain procedures (e.g., excision of tumors of the base of the tongue) nasal intubation may be required to facilitate surgical access, and the surgeon should be consulted before induction.

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

Some of the essential anesthesia management requirements for ENT surgery include: (1) assurance of good intraop and postop analgesia (most of the procedures are performed on highly reflexogenic areas); (2) quiet surgical field (the operated areas are highly vascular). Moderate controlled hypotension is widely employed: ↓SBP <100 mm Hg, MAP = 60–70 mm Hg, unless contraindicated; (3) immobility (for certain procedures profound muscle relaxation may be required, while for others administration of NMB must be avoided); (4) smooth emergence from anesthesia. The latter constitutes one of the most challenging tasks, as every attempt should be made to avoid or minimize the patient's

reaction to the ETT during tracheal extubation. Straining, bucking, or coughing may provoke early postop bleeding (↑ venous and arterial pressure), disrupt delicate suture lines (e.g., facial nerve repair), dislodge surgical grafts (e.g., tympanoplasty), or cause additional trauma to the vocal cords after VC surgery. Many ENT surgeons have their own "list" of the procedures where the patient's reaction to the ETT should be completely avoided during extubation, and an anesthesiologist should be familiar with the surgeon's preferences.

Opioid-based anesthetic techniques are especially advantageous and result in significant ↓ MAC while providing sufficient blunting of the tracheal responses to the in-situ ETT. In an opioid-naive patient, the choice of an opioid analgesic depends primarily on several factors: anticipated surgical stimulation and postop pain, duration of surgery, coexisting medical conditions. High dose opioids (fentanyl: loading dose 3–10 mcg/kg iv, sufentanil: loading dose 0.5–1.5 mcg/kg iv), followed by either intermittent boluses or continuous infusion are the author's preferred choice for major ENT surgery. For procedures that may be highly stimulating, but associated with minimal postop discomfort (e.g., laser surgery of the airway), shorter-acting opioids are preferred: remifentanil (loading dose 0.5–1.0 mcg/kg iv, infusion 0.1–0.3 mcg/kg/min iv).

TIVA is commonly employed, especially for endoscopic procedures. Most studies demonstrate that, compared to inhalational and balanced inhalational techniques, TIVA offers improved hemodynamic stability, quicker recovery times, decreased incidence of PONV, and improved patient satisfaction.

Maintenance of moderate **controlled hypotension** (MAP, 60–70 mmHg) is useful for maintaining optimal operating conditions. A variety of pharmacological approaches have been successfully employed for this purpose. The use of remifentanil is particularly effective in that regard, and is equally useful with both inhalational and TIVA techniques. The use of esmolol 0.5–1 mg/kg iv bolus, followed by continuous iv infusion 100–300 mcg/kg/min represents another attractive therapeutic option.

GETA is most widely employed. Use of a **laryngeal mask airway** (LMA) for ENT surgery, when feasible, is beneficial (↓ coughing, ↓ laryngospasm; see Table 3-3). Furthermore, the use of an LMA does not require NMB and facilitates the resumption of spontaneous ventilation. When used appropriately in selected patients, absence of immediate access to the patient's airway is not a deviation from the standard of care.

A flexible laryngeal mask airway (FLMA), but not an LMA Classic™, LMA ProSeal™, or LMA Supreme™, is most frequently used in ENT anesthesia, because its shaft can be bent away from the surgical field without causing cuff displacement. Close communication between the surgeon and anesthesiologist is essential, as even a properly placed FLMA can become dislodged during surgical manipulations. The LMA-Proseal/Supreme is preferred whenever central positioning of the LMA can be safely maintained, (e.g., otologic surgery). Proper LMA insertion technique is crucial for minimizing the risk of aspiration or gastric insufflation especially if positive pressure ventilation (PPV) is planned. To minimize leaks, the largest size (FLMA #5) should be used for PPV whenever possible. Gastric insufflation is further minimized by ↓ Vt to 6–10 mL/kg and by keeping PIP < 20 cm H_2O. The absence of gastric insufflation should be documented in the anesthesia record after auscultating the epigastric area.

Smooth emergence from anesthesia constitutes a particularly challenging task when GETA is used. Deeper stages of anesthesia are usually required until the very end of the procedure to blunt patient's laryngo-tracheal responses. A low-dose remifentanil infusion to blunt the tracheal responses and promote smooth extubation may be helpful. The EC_{95} effect site concentration of remifentanil for blunting tracheal reflexes after balanced desflurane and sevoflurane anesthesia is in the range 2.3–2.9 ng/mL (corresponding manual infusion rate 0.08–1.0 mcg/kg/min).

Antiemetic prophylaxis should be routine and is most commonly achieved by iv administration of a 5-HT3 blocker. Multimodal antiemetic prophylaxis should be employed for patients at high risk for PONV. The addition of metoclopromide (10–20 mg iv) may be beneficial for the patients who had undergone the procedures resulting in accumulation of the passively swallowed blood in the stomach (e.g., nasal or intraoral surgery).

Table 3-3. Advantages of the LMA Compared with the ETT

Adverse Event ETT:LMA	ETT %	LMA %	Ratio
Clinically significant problems	3.4	0.9	3.8
Laryngeal spasm	0.38	0.12	3.2
Aspiration	0.017	0.02	0.85
Sore throat	50	10	5
Laryngeal trauma	6.2	? (< 1)	> 6
Coughing on emergence	60	2	30

(Modified from Brimacombe JR, Brain AJ: *The Laryngeal Mask Airway. A Review and Practical Guide*, Saunders: 1997.)

Suggested Readings

1. Apfel CC, Philip BK, Cakmakkaya OS, et al: Who is at risk for postdischarge nausea and vomiting after ambulatory surgery? *Anesthesiology* 2012; 117:475–86.
2. Beer GM, Goldscheider E, Weber A, et al: Prevention of acute hematoma after face-lifts. *Aesthetic Plast Surg* 2010; 34:502–7.
3. Bitar G, Mullis W, Jacobs W, et al: Safety and efficacy of office-based surgery with monitored anesthesia care/sedation in 4778 consecutive plastic surgery procedures. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2003; 111:150–6.
4. Blake DR: Office-based anesthesia: dispelling common myths. *Aesthet Surg J* 2008; 28:564–70.
5. Caloss R, Lard MD: Anesthesia for office-based facial cosmetic surgery. *Atlas Oral Maxillofacial Surg Clin N Am* 2004; 12:163–77.
6. Chuang YC, Wang CH, Lin YS: Negative pressure pulmonary edema: report of three cases and review of the literature. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 2007; 264:1113–6.
7. Clevens RA: Avoiding patient dissatisfaction and complications in facelift surgery. *Facial Plast Surg Clin North Am* 2009; 17:515–30.
8. Friedberg BL: Propofol-ketamine technique: dissociative anesthesia for office surgery (a 5-year review of 1264 cases). *Aesthetic Plast Surg* 1999; 23:70–5.
9. Hoefflin SM, Bornstein JB, Gordon M: General anesthesia in an office-based plastic surgical facility: a report on more than 23,000 consecutive office-based procedures under general anesthesia with no significant anesthetic complications. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 107:243–51.
10. Kolodzie K, Apfel CC: Nausea and vomiting after office-based anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2009; 22:532–8.
11. Liu YH, Li MJ, Wang PC, et al: Use of dexamethasone on the prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting after tympanomastoid surgery. *Laryngoscope* 2001; 111:1271–4.
12. Mamiya H, Ichinohe T, Kaneko Y: Negative pressure pulmonary edema after oral and maxillofacial surgery. *Anesth Prog* 2009; 56:49–52.
13. Niamtu J: Expanding hematoma in face-lift surgery: literature review, case presentations, and caveats. *Dermatol Surg* 2005; 31:1134–44.
14. Prendiville S, Weiser S: Management of anesthesia and facility in facelift surgery. *Facial Plast Surg Clin North Am* 2009; 17:531–8.
15. Steely RL, Collins DR Jr, Cohen BE, et al: Postoperative nausea and vomiting in the plastic surgery patient. *Aesthetic Plast Surg* 2004; 28:29–32.
16. Taub PJ, Bashey S, Hausman LM: Anesthesia for cosmetic surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; 125:1e–7e.
17. Westreich R, Sampson I, Shaari CM, et al: Negative-pressure pulmonary edema after routine septorhinoplasty: discussion of pathophysiology, treatment, and prevention. *Arch Facial Plast Surg* 2006; 8:8–15.

LARYNGOSCOPY/BRONCHOSCOPY/ESOPHAGOSCOPY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Laryngoscopy** is used for inspection of the pharynx, hypopharynx, or larynx for diagnostic and/or therapeutic benefit. The patient is supine with cervical spine flexed and atlantoaxial joint extended (this position is best achieved with a headrest); and the teeth are protected with a mouth guard. The laryngoscope is introduced (Fig. 3-1); then, with a lifting motion, a thorough examination of the oropharynx, hypopharynx, laryngopharynx, and larynx is carried out and biopsies can be taken. Any bleeding normally can be controlled easily with cotton pledgets soaked in epinephrine, packing, or endoscopic cautery. Laryngoscopy often is combined with esophagoscopy,

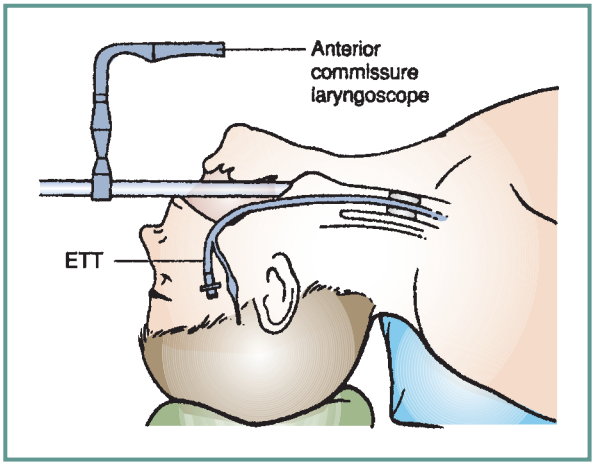


Figure 3-1. Placement of anterior commissure laryngoscope for laryngoscopy.

bronchoscopy, or direct nasopharyngoscopy to survey the aerodigestive tract for malignancy. If the procedure is diagnostic, the surgeon may need to visualize the airway before intubation and/or muscle relaxation. If a laser is to be utilized, a special laser ETT, < 30% FiO_2, and avoidance of N_2O are required.

Usual preop diagnosis: Oropharyngeal, hypopharyngeal, or laryngeal tumors

Description: **Operative microlaryngoscopy.** A variety of laryngeal lesions, including papilloma, cysts, and polyps, can be removed endoscopically. Because of their close apposition to the delicate tissues of the vocal fold, a high degree of precision may be needed to remove the growth without damaging the underlying membrane. To this end, specialized endoscopes, such as the Dedo operating laryngoscope, are deployed transorally to allow the surgeon a binocular view of the vocal fold and the target lesion. They can be suspended from a Mayo stand to free both of the surgeon's hands for operating. Using the microscope, a variety of specialized endoscopic instruments and the CO_2 laser, the surgeon may be afforded excellent visualization of and unobstructed access to the vocal folds for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. Operative microlaryngoscopy may necessitate several hours of work. Because of the precision involved in such procedures and the high degree of stimulation to the patient, general anesthesia (± jet ventilation) with muscle relaxation is required. Intubation with a small-caliber microlaryngeal or laser-safe tube (5 or 6 mm) may be required for these procedures. In cases where jet ventilation is to be performed, an endoscope suitable for this technique should be available. Intermittent apneic ventilation is also a possibility, although this involves periodic interruption of surgery, which can be cumbersome and distracting.

Usual preop diagnosis: Vocal fold neoplasm; vocal fold paralysis

Description: **Bronchoscopy** is used for visualization of the tracheobronchial tree for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. The patient is supine with head elevated and neck extended at the upper cervical level. The bronchoscope is directed along the right side of the tongue forward toward the midline to visualize the epiglottis. Next, the bronchoscope tip is used to lift the epiglottis and advance the bronchoscope through the vocal cords, into the trachea and bronchus (Fig. 3-2). With the aid of telescopes, the bronchoscope can be directed for inspection of the carina, main bronchi, and the segmental bronchi. Rigid bronchoscopes provide a large working channel through which to

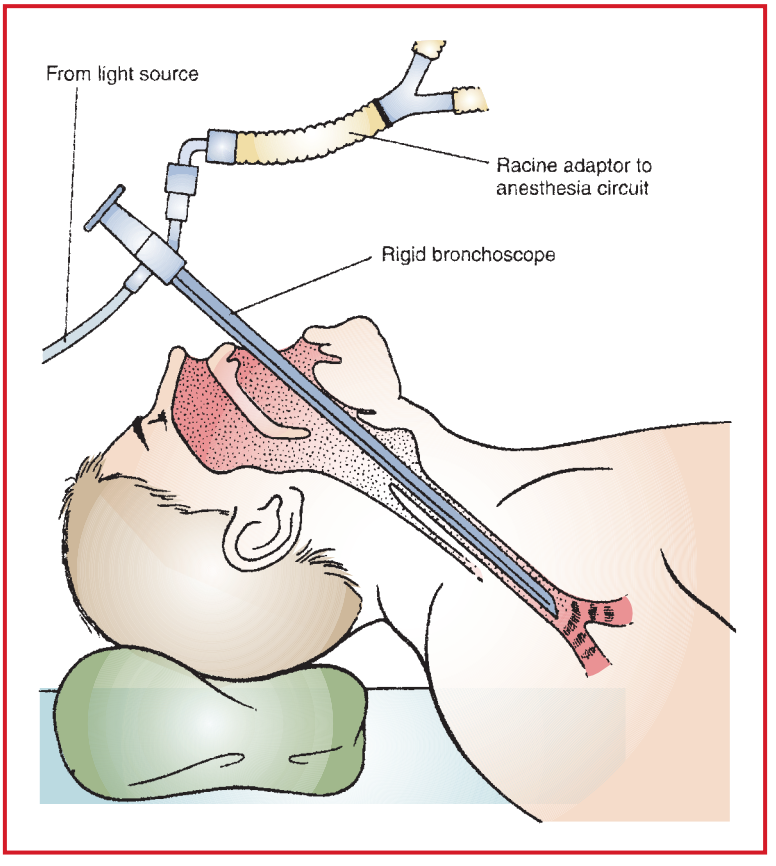


Figure 3-2. Rigid bronchoscopy showing adaptor (Racine) for anesthesia machine. Note neck flexion and head extension to align oropharyngeal and tracheal axes.

introduce grasping and biopsy forceps. As such, rigid bronchoscopes may provide a more stable platform for removal or retrieval of foreign bodies, tumors, and stents than flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopes.

Flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy is more commonly performed than rigid bronchoscopy. The endoscope is usually connected to a monitor, and suction, irrigation, and biopsy channels are self-integrated. Spontaneous ventilation can be maintained, which can allow the procedure to be performed without an ETT in place, affording unobstructed visualization of the entire upper airway. A bite block is usually placed to protect the endoscope from dental trauma and to allow easier advancement through the oropharynx into the larynx.

Usual preop diagnosis: Head and neck squamous-cell carcinoma; foreign body (FB) in bronchus

Description: **Esophagoscopy** is used for visualization of the esophagus for either diagnostic or therapeutic benefit. The patient is supine with head elevated and neck extended at the upper cervical level. The esophagoscope (held in the dominant hand) is advanced through the mouth behind the arytenoids, gently using the thumb of the nondominant hand. The bevel of the scope is then used to advance through the cricopharyngeal muscle (upper esophageal sphincter) with an upward lifting movement, entering the cervical esophagus. As the scope advances, the head may have to be lowered or the neck extended and the scope directed slightly toward the left. The scope is advanced to the gastroesophageal junction with great care to ensure a visible lumen is seen at all times to avoid inadvertent perforation. **Flexible fiberoptic esophagoscopy** is performed in an essentially identical manner. Superior visualization has made this the technique of choice for many surgeons. Biopsies may be taken and percutaneous gastrostomy tubes may be placed using the fiberoptic esophagoscope.

Usual preop diagnosis: Head and neck squamous-cell carcinoma; FB ingestion

Description: **Panendoscopy**, or triple endoscopy, is the combination of laryngoscopy, bronchoscopy, and esophagoscopy. It is usually performed as part of the evaluation of patients with newly diagnosed cancer of the head and neck for several reasons: (a) to gauge the extent of the primary tumor and to evaluate resectability; (b) to evaluate for the presence of synchronous tumors in other locations within the upper aerodigestive tract; and (c) to identify the source of the primary lesion in patients who present with secondary cervical metastases. In the 3rd case, after PET-CT, endoscopy is supplemented with directed biopsies from those locations most likely to contain the occult primary lesion, including the nasopharynx, tonsillar fossae, and tongue base, with tonsillectomy commonly performed as well. Identification of the source of the primary lesion allows for more directed therapy, tailored irradiation fields, improved local control, and decreased morbidity.

Usual preop diagnosis: Head and neck squamous-cell carcinoma.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Laryngoscopy	Bronchoscopy	Esophagoscopy	If Therapeutic Procedure Added
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Endoscopes, video monitors, suction	⇐	⇐	Laser, laser-safe ETT, gastroscope and G-tube (abdominal prep)
Unique considerations	Dexamethasone 4–8 mg if airway edema	⇐	⇐	⇐ If laser ablation, keep O_2 < 30%
Antibiotics	None	None	None	cefazolin 1 g and metronidazole 500 mg or clindamycin 600 mg
Surgical time	10–30 min	⇐	⇐	30–120+ min
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐	typically minimal
Postop care	PACU; rarely 23 h stay 2° airway issues	⇐	⇐	⇐; depends on specific intervention, if G-tube: monitor for abdominal signs
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	With MDL, incisor trauma < 1%	⇐	Perforation < 1%	⇐ ; if G-tube placement, <2% abdominal bleed or free air; if MDL with laser of laser bronchoscopy < 1% pneumothorax, < 5% airway compromise

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Laryngoscopy	Bronchoscopy	Esophagoscopy	If Therapeutic Procedure Added
Morbidity (cont'd)	Airway obstruction or postprocedure edema requiring reintubation: < 1%	⇐	⇐	
	Laryngospasm: < 5%	⇐	⇐	
Pain score	1–2	1–2	1–2	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–90+	⇐	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐	⇐
Incidence	Common	⇐	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Tumors, foreign bodies, congenital webs	⇐	⇐	⇐ ; nutritional need (G-tube)
Association Conditions	Other congenital issues; if malignancy, prior RT or chemotherapy and the conditions associated with that malignancy	⇐	⇐	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: bronchoscopy, esophagoscopy, panendoscopy, operative microlaryngoscopy, Zenker's diverticulectomy, laser surgery of the airway)

PREOPERATIVE

Many of these patients are elderly and have a history of smoking and alcohol abuse with corresponding implications for intraop management. Patient fluid and nutritional status may be further compromised by preexisting malignancy. Meticulous attention to airway management is paramount in these procedures, and close communication with the surgeon is essential. Some patients presenting for esophagoscopy may have obstructing lesions of the esophagus or **Zenker's diverticulum**, active gastrointestinal bleeding, or require the removal of a foreign body, putting them at increased risk of aspiration.

Airway	Although rare, the airway may be compromised in these patients at both the upper and lower airway levels; thus a thorough preop airway assessment is essential. A clear backup plan for securing the airway should be devised and discussed with the surgeon before induction of GA. Stridor at rest suggests an airway narrowing ≤4.5 mm, although the airway diameter can be seriously reduced even without stridor being present. Patients with lesions in the mediastinum may have involvement of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, presenting with hoarseness and potential airway management problems (e.g., difficult mask ventilation, difficult intubation, ↑ aspiration risk). (See also Anesthetic Considerations for Laryngectomy, p. 206)

Respiratory	These patients may have a high incidence of COPD and ↓respiratory reserve. The nature and characteristics of a productive cough must be noted. Wheezing on exam must be treated with bronchodilators before induction. Patients presenting with vocal cord (VC) paralysis or achalasia may have had the repeated episodes of pulmonary aspiration. **Tests:** CXR; other tests as indicated from H&P
Dental	Physical exam should include a careful dental assessment and documentation of any missing, loose, or damaged teeth. Patients (or parents, as appropriate) should be informed that dental trauma may occur as a result of surgical instrumentation of the patient's mouth during the procedure.
Cardiovascular	Adrenergic responses during endoscopy may be associated with up to a 4% incidence of myocardial ischemia. Careful preop Hx and thorough physical exam should be undertaken in patients with Hx of CAD and CHF, or those with cardiac risk factors (including age > 40 yr, male, HTN, hypercholesterolemia, long Hx of smoking, obesity, and family Hx). The volume status of debilitated patients who are unable to eat because of obstructing lesions of the esophagus should be assessed by measuring orthostatic BP changes. **Tests:** ECG; other tests as indicated from H&P
Neurologic	Some patients may have Hx of ETOH abuse, which may result in ↑ anesthetic requirements 2° hepatic enzyme induction. Symptoms of alcohol withdrawal (e.g., tremulousness, ↑ sympathetic activity, and altered mental status), if present, should be controlled before surgery.
Hematologic	Patients with malignancy or chronic disease may have evidence of anemia or coagulopathy. **Tests:** CBC; coagulation studies as indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	In some patients (e.g., with malignant tumors), significant electrolyte abnormalities may be present 2° malnutrition. Hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia should be corrected preop. In patients with Hx of ETOH abuse, liver disease and cirrhosis may be present. **Tests:** Electrolytes; BUN; Cr; LFT; coag studies, as indicated from H&P
Premedication	An antisialogogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv) may be desired by the surgeon to faciliate panendoscopy, especially in patients with copious secretions. Sedative premedication is routine, but should be minimized in the elderly and avoided in patients with symptoms of upper airway obstruction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Airway management requires careful planning and continuous communication with the surgeon. Surgical requirements include adequate muscle relaxation (movement, coughing, or bucking during endoscopy may have disastrous consequences) and immobile vocal cords for vocal cord surgery. Cardiovascular stability is important: laryngeal, tracheal, and carinal reflexes may provoke severe ↑ BP and ↑ HR, which can be detrimental in some patients. Adequate depth of anesthesia is essential, but the requirements for rapid awakening and return of laryngeal reflexes present additional challenges in anesthetic management. Short-acting β-blockers (e.g., esmolol) may be indicated to treat breakthrough sympathetic responses, especially in patients with cardiac disease. Remifentanil or alfentanil (see Introduction, p. 178) is useful for these procedures, which, although highly stimulating, are characterized by minimal or absent postop pain, and the majority of patients are discharged home from the recovery room.

Special considerations: If **flexible bronchoscopy** is planned, the patient's trachea is intubated in routine fashion by the anesthesiologist with a large-diameter ETT (7.5–8.0 mm ID) to acommodate a flexible video bronchoscope. The ETT is usually taped midline. As an alternative, in selected patients, flexible bronchoscopy can be performed without tracheal intubation through the **Patil-Syracuse mask** during manual bag-mask ventilation. Placement and manipulation of the flexible bronchoscope by the surgeon will be facilitated by the concomitant use of one of the hollow oral airways used for the fiberoptic intubation (e.g., **Williams airway**). The patient can then be tracheally intubated with a smaller diameter ETT (e.g., 6.0 mm ID), to facilitate surgical access.

Flexible esophagoscopy is rarely performed as an isolated procedure but, if done, would also be facilitated by tracheal placement of a small-diameter (e.g., 6.0 mm ID) ETT. The ETT is usually moved over to the left corner of the mouth and taped to the lower jaw, to provide more room for the esophagoscope advancement and manipulation.

If **rigid bronchoscopy** is planned first, GA is induced, and the patient is hyperventilated through the face mask with $FiO_2 = 1.0$. Following muscle relaxation, the surgeon may proceed, without securing an airway. Quick and gentle DL for application of topical lidocaine to the larynx and upper trachea (LTA, 4% lidocaine 3–4 cc) before rigid bronchoscopy may help blunt hemodynamic responses to the subsequent surgical manipulation. DL with LTA should be avoided in patients with tumors at the base of the tongue (↑ risk of bleeding; see Anesthetic Considerations for Glossectomy, p. 212) or when preexisting copious secretions or bleeding are present in the upper airway 2° ↑ risk of pulmonary aspiration on emergence from anesthesia. It is advisable to demonstrate to the surgical team and document in the chart absence of dental damage after DL has been performed.

After the rigid bronchoscope is introduced into the patient's trachea, it is connected to an anesthesia circuit through a flexible side port adapter (Racine, Fig. 3-1), and the patient is ventilated manually. High flows are usually required because of the leak around the bronchoscope. Close communication with the surgeon is essential for adjusting ventilation when the bronchoscope is introduced into the mainstem bronchus to avoid high inflating pressures and to ensure complete exhalation (↓ risk of barotrauma). After rigid bronchoscopy is completed, mask ventilation with $FiO_2 = 1.0$ before intubation is advisable to ensure adequate oxygenation and normocapnia. A reinforced ETT is useful for **rigid esophagoscopy** to avoid possible compression of the ETT**.** The ETT should be moved to the left side of the patient's mouth to facilitate introduction of the surgical instruments and taped to the lower jaw because full opening of the patient's mouth is required.

For **operative microlaryngoscopy,** a small-diameter (usually 5.0 mm ID), cuffed long microlaryngeal tube (MLT) is most commonly used to facilitate visualization of the larynx, but will interfere with posterior glottis lesions, for which jet ventilation (see below) is most commonly employed. The CO_2 laser, which can precisely vaporize superficial tissue, is widely used for vocal cord **laser surgery**, whereas the Nd:YAG (neodymium-yttrium-aluminum-garnet) laser is usually employed for airway tumor debulking because of its ability to coagulate deeper lesions. The Nd:YAG can be used through the suction channel of the fiber optic or video bronchoscope, whereas the CO_2 laser must be aimed directly at the targeted tissue. Both the CO_2 and Nd:YAG wavelengths lie outside the visible spectrum, and a separate, lower energy visible beam is used for aiming. The patient must be motionless, the patient's eyes must be protected with tape and moistened gauze, and OR personnel must wear protective goggles.

An **intermittent apnea technique** involves hyperventilation, followed by intermittent tracheal extubation for 1–5 min, during which the laser is used. This approach is time consuming and may be associated with a higher incidence of airway trauma and edema 2° repeated intubations. Careful pulse oximeter monitoring is essential for this technique.

Manual low-frequency jet ventilation (Fig. 3-3), or **automated high-frequency jet ventilation** (HFJV) may be necessary when an ETT cannot be used (e.g., some supraglottic and subglottic lesions). For supraglottic manual jet ventilation, the ventilating laryngoscope is most commonly employed. The axis of the jet should be in line with the trachea, and full egress of air (complete chest deflation) should be ensured between the jet ventilator "puffs." Close communication with the surgeon is essential. The jet should be triggered during pauses between laser firings to keep the vocal cords immobile. If jet ventilation is used for laser resection of papillomas, there is a risk of spreading the virus to OR personnel, and special face masks should be worn in the OR. Jet ventilation generally provides adequate ventilation without introducing flammable material into the airway or obstructing the surgical field. Its use, however, may be associated with potentially severe complications, including barotrauma, pneumothorax and gastric distension (risk of regurgitation), and is hindered by ↓ chest-wall into the airway or lung compliance. Full muscle relaxation is usually required to facilitate precise laser firing. HFJV is most commonly delivered through a subglottic catheter or specialized tube (e.g., Hunsaker tube).

For laser cases, precautions must be taken to prevent **airway fire**, including

- Use special laser ETT (e.g., Mallinkrodt Laser-Flex, Xomed Laser Shield), although none of them provides 100% protection from all types of lasers. Small (5.0 mm ID and smaller) diameter laser ETTs are preferred to facilitate surgical access.
- Use the lowest possible FiO_2 (≤ 0.3 strongly preferred), that will ensure adequate oxygenation (dilute O_2 with air, N_2, or helium) and avoid N_2O (both O_2 and N_2O promote combustion).
- Use colored (methylene blue-tinged) NS in the ETT cuff (will immediately alert the surgeon in case of a laser hit).
- Place the ETT sufficiently deep into the trachea for the cuff to reduce the risk of laser contact.

Similar considerations apply in patients undergoing endoscopic **Zenker's diverticulectomy**, when the CO_2 laser is used.

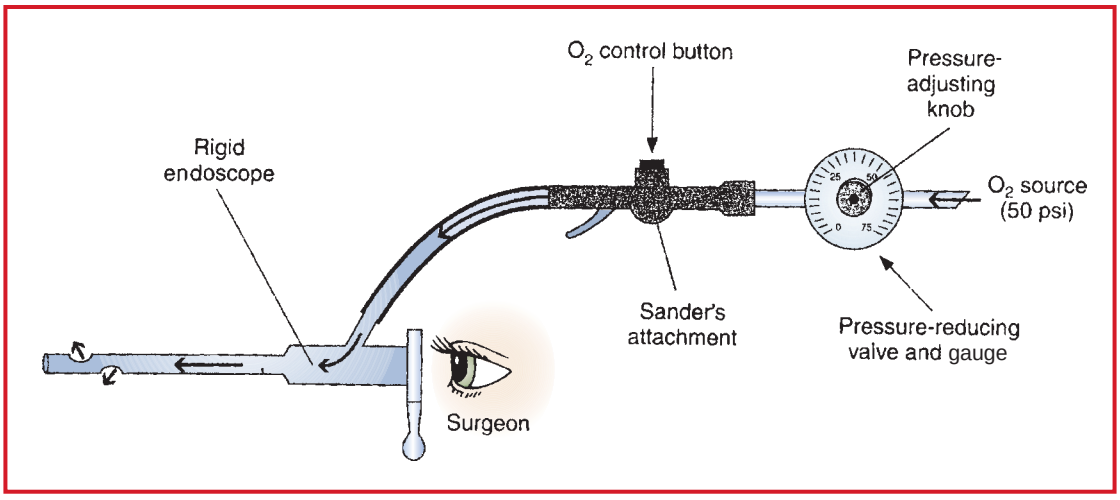


Figure 3-3. Rigid endoscope with modified Sanders jet ventilation technique. The oxygen supply at 50 psi is connected to a reducing valve that allows the pressure to be adjusted from 0 to 50 psi. The side port of the endoscope is used as the Venturi injector site, and the open end can be used for continuous viewing by the endoscopist.

Induction	Patients at risk for aspiration may require RSI with cricoid pressure (CP) if symptoms of active gastroesophageal reflux disease are present. Otherwise, anatomical location of the diverticulum (above the cricoid cartilage) makes application of CP largely ineffective. With the possible exception of endoscopic Zenker's diverticulectomy, fentanyl use should be minimized (1–2 mcg/kg) or even completely avoided in favor of the short-acting opioids (remifentanil or alfentanil iv; see Introduction, p. 178), 2° minimal postop pain. Propofol (1–2 mg/kg) is the ideal induction agent. Patients with mobile, floppy, supraglottic tumors (e.g., papillomatosis, epiglottic cancer, large vocal cord polyps) are at ↑ risk for complete airway obstruction after induction of GA with or without neuromuscular blockade. Anesthetic management of these patients requires careful planning and meticulous preparation (see Anesthetic Considerations for Laryngectomy, p. 206.) The surgeon should be consulted about the extent of the disease and the potential need for a tracheostomy. If the disease is severe, the surgeon should be present during induction for the possible need to perform urgent or emergent rigid bronchoscopy or cricothyrotomy/tracheostomy.
Maintenance	TIVA (e.g., propofol: 80–180 mcg/kg/min; remifentanil 0.1–0.25 mcg/kg/min) is widely used, especially when rigid bronchoscopy or jet ventilation/intermittent apnea techniques are planned. Compared to alfentanyl, the use of remifentanil during TIVA is associated with the increased hemodynamic stability, reduction in propofol dose and faster respiratory recovery. When the ETT is used throughout the case, delivery of anesthetic gases may be used instead of a propofol infusion, especially if a bronchodilating effect is desirable. Desflurane and sevoflurane are the preferred agents because of their low blood:gas solubility; sevoflurane may be favored in patients with preexisting cardiac disease to minimize the risk of a dose-dependent tachycardia. Breakthrough sympathetic responses can be managed safely by administration of β-blockers iv or small boluses of a short-acting opioid (see Introduction, p. 178). With intermittent apnea or jet ventilation techniques, it may be difficult to avoid hypercapnia and hypoxemia, which may provoke intraop dysrhythmias. Full muscle relaxation is routine: vocal cord immobility is essential for microlaryngeal and laser surgery. Monitoring the neuromuscular blockade may be more accurate at the facial

Maintenance (cont'd)	nerve (orbicularis oculi muscle), than the ulnar nerve (adductor pollicis muscle) because the recovery of the former better reflects the recovery of the laryngeal muscles. Care should be taken to avoid inadvertent prolonged neuromuscular blockade by coordinating administration of additional doses of muscle relaxants with the surgeon. As the surgery approaches its end, deepening the level of anesthesia may be the preferred approach to minimize VC movement. A succinylcholine infusion (2–6 mg/min iv) can be used safely in selected patients (limiting the total dose of succinylcholine ≤ 4–6 mg/kg will help avoid phase 2 block).	
Emergence	Patient should have full return of protective airway reflexes prior to extubation. The patient's stomach may need to be decompressed following jet ventilation. Smooth emergence from anesthesia is obligatory to avoid additional trauma to the vocal cords. For this reason, some surgeons request deep extubation after vocal cord surgery, which presents extra challenges to the anesthesiologist (see Emergence for Tonsillectomy, Adenoidectomy, p. 210).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: GI bleeder: 14–16 ga × 2 Others: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–3 mL/kg/h	Blood loss is usually minimal; however, in patients with ↑ risk of GI bleed, blood loss may be massive. T&C these patients for 2 U PRBC with blood immediately available in OR.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1). ± arterial line	In patients with ↑ risk of GI bleed, an arterial line is desirable.
Positioning	OR table rotated 90° or 180° away from the anesthesiologist ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	A shoulder roll is placed and the patient's neck is extended to facilitate endoscopy. Special attention should be paid to prevent compression of the patient's shoulder by the vertical bar of the Mayo stand, which is frequently employed for suspending the operating laryngoscope or endoscope.
Complications	Inadequate ventilation Loss of airway	Hypoxia and hypercarbia may be difficult to avoid with jet ventilation.
	Perforation of airway Dysrhythmias Pneumothorax	Mechanical or laser perforation of the airway may → bronchospasm or uncontrollable hemorrhage. Dx: ↑RR, ↓BP, ↑CVP, wheezing, ↓O_2 saturation, ↑PIP, SOB, chest pain, ↓breath sounds, ↓ECG amplitude, dullness on percussion. Rx: chest tube or needle aspiration, FiO_2 = 1.0, ventilation and volume expansion.
	Eye trauma Bleeding postbiopsy	Eye trauma from surgical instruments used during endoscopy may require ophthalmology consult.
Airway fire (steps taken **simultaneously** by the anesthesiologist and surgeon)	Disconnect the inspiratory limb of the anesthesia circuit. Remove ETT Extinguish fire with oral NS Remove all burning material	This is an acute, life-threatening emergency. NB: turning ventilator off only may not be sufficient due to continued delivery of fresh gas to the patient's lungs. Rigid or flexible bronchoscopy is required to ✓ extent of damage, presence of ETT fragments, and airway edema. All inhaled gases should be humidified. Patients are usually reintubated and monitored in the ICU.
	Resume ventilation by face mask with 100% O_2. Consider reintubation.	
	Flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy. Save ETT for later examination.	To assess lower airway damage and to remove ETT fragments.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Dental trauma Bleeding Eye trauma	Dental trauma may result from surgical manipulation of the airway, and the anesthesiologist must check the teeth immediately after airway access is gained. If dental trauma is detected, notify the surgeon to discuss management options, both immediate and subsequent.
	Postop airway compromise	Has a higher incidence than in general surgery patient population. Patients with T3 lesions and those with associated laryngeal biopsy (↑ airway swelling) after panendoscopy may be at high risk for reintubation in PACU. Delayed upper airway edema after laser surgery has been described, when the coagulation (Nd:YAG) laser is used.
	Esophageal perforation	Complaints of painful swallowing as well as fever, tachycardia, neck/chest/back pains postop may suggest an esophageal perforation.
	Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Hemothorax Aspiration	Pneumothorax (see above), mediastinal air or hemothorax from esophageal perforation may present as ↓ BP and cardiovascular collapse.
Pain management	Short-acting opiod	Fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv prn is usually sufficient.
Tests	✓ CXR	For evidence of pneumothorax, hemothorax, mediastinal air.

Suggested Readings

1. Abdelmalak B, Ryckman JV, AlHaddad S, et al: Respiratory arrest after successful neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser treatment of subglottic tracheal stenosis. *Anesth Analg* 2002; 95:485–6.
2. Bacher A, Lang T, Weber J, et al: Respiratory efficacy of subglottic low-frequency, subglottic combined-frequency, and supraglottic combined-frequency jet ventilation during microlaryngeal surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 91:1506–12.
3. Braverman I, Sichel JY, Halimi P, et al: Complication of jet ventilation during microlaryngeal surgery. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1994; 103:624–7.
4. Donati F, Meistelman C, Benoit P: Vecuronium neuromuscular blockade at the adductor muscles of the larynx and adductor pollicis. *Anesthesiology* 1991; 74:833–7.
5. Gaumann DM, Tassonyi E, Fathi F, et al: Effects of topical laryngeal lidocaine on the sympathetic response to rigid panendoscopy under general anesthesia. *J Otorhinolaryngol Relat Spec* 1992; 54:49–53.
6. Hill RS, Koltai PJ, Parnes SM: Airway complications from laryngoscopy and panendoscopy. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1987; 96:691–4.
7. Jaquet Y, Monnier P, Van Melle G, et al: Complications of different ventilation strategies in endoscopic laryngeal surgery: a 10-year review. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 104:52–9.
8. McRae K: Anesthesia for airway surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19:497–541.
9. Ozkose Z, Yalcin Cok O, Tuncer B, et al: Comparison of hemodynamics, recovery profile, and early postoperative pain control and costs of remifentanil versus alfentanil-based total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA). *J Clin Anesth* 2002; 14:161–8.

TRACHEOTOMY/TRACHEOSTOMY AND CRICOTHYROIDOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: When an airway needs to be obtained right away and intubation is not an option, a cricothrotomy is indicated. A vertical incision is made in the midline through the cricothyroid membrane, an initial influx of air is facilitated if the patient is spontaneously breathing, and a small ETT placed. It is wise to convert this to a tracheostomy as soon as it is convenient to do so as this reduces the subsequent incidence of subglottic stenosis and cricoid chondritis.

A tracheotomy is generally done in a controlled setting, either under general anesthesia in an intubated patient or under local anesthesia. Either a short transverse incision 1–2 cm inferior to the cricoid or a midline vertical incision beginning at the same location may be used. Strap muscles are retracted laterally, the thyroid isthmus is divided if necessary, and in adults an inferiorly based tracheal flap consisting of the 2nd or 3rd tracheal ring is made and secured to the skin inferiorly. In small children, it is better to make only a vertical midline incision to minimize the incidence of stenosis; left and right stay sutures are then placed to assist in reintubation in the event of accidental dislodgment of the tracheotomy tube. The tracheotomy tube in all patients is secured to the skin with sutures. Trach ties supplement this securing of the tube unless these circumferential ties would interfere with venous drainage of a flap used in the head and neck reconstruction.

When prolonged use of a tracheotomy is anticipated and it is unlikely that mechanical ventilation will be needed, there are specialized silicon tracheotomy tubes with minimal intraluminal plastic and may be associated with fewer intraluminal potential complications.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Indications for tracheostomy are numerous, but share the common theme of securing a safe airway either in anticipation of postop airway edema, inability to protect the airway from aspiration, or as an urgent need to obtain an upper airway in pending obstruction. The fastest way to obtain an airway in an outright emergency when intubation is not an option is a cricothyrostomy. Another 3rd general indication is to protect the larynx from injury if prolonged intubation is anticipated, such as in a prolonged ICU setting or in paralysis associated with cervical spinal cord trauma. Rarer indications are bilateral vocal cord paralysis or a history of recurrent allergy associated with larynogspasm.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Tracheostomy	Cricothyrotomy
Position	Supine, head extended	⇐
Incision	Transverse or vertical	Stab incision through cricothyroid membrane
Special instrumentation	None (most institutions have a "trach set")	Scalpel is all that is initially needed in this emergency setting
Unique considerations	Local or general, intubated or not. Specialized equipment and silicon trach cannulas selectively arranged for.	⇐
Antibiotics	None	⇐
Surgical Time	3–20 min	30 sec–2 min
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop Care	Warm humidification; suctioning; changing inner cannula; skin care; monitor for bleeding and dislodgement; in emergency remove entire tracheotomy tube	⇐; convert to tracheotomy as soon as convenient
Mortality	<1%	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Tracheostomy	Cricothyrotomy
Morbidity	Bleeding <5% cellulitis/tracheitis <5% tracheal stenosis <1%	Subglottic stenosis risk if not converted
Pain score	1–2	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All	⇐
Male:Female	Dependent on underlying condition	⇐
Incidence	Common	⇐
Etiology	Anticipated or actual airway obstruction, prolonged intubation	Trauma
Associated conditions	Dependent on underlying condition, but typically cardiopulmonary or neurological conditions	Trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, there are three patient populations presenting for tracheostomy: (1) critically ill intubated patients in chronic respiratory failure or following major trauma; (2) patients for whom tracheostomy is part of a scheduled procedure (e.g., laryngectomy); and (3) patients with impending or total upper airway obstruction (e.g., Ludwig's angina, retropharyngeal abscess). If the latter constitutes life-threatening emergency, tracheotomy/cricothyroidotomy may be the preferred approach. Aside from an occasional otherwise healthy patient in the 3rd category, all patients presenting for tracheostomy are usually debilitated, have associated cardiac or pulmonary disease, and frequently present with neurological and metabolic abnormalities.

Respiratory	Patients in group 1 usually require mechanical ventilation with PEEP to maintain adequate oxygenation. The continued application of PEEP may be an important consideration during their transport from ICU to OR. Patients in group 2 require a careful airway evaluation (see Anesthetic Considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220, and Laryngectomy, p. 206). Based on the assessment, the anesthesiologist must decide whether to choose a DL, an awake FOI, or a tracheostomy under local anesthesia to secure the airway. Patients in group 3 will usually require semi-emergent or emergent tracheostomy. Patients in all three groups should be evaluated for the presence of possible recurrent aspiration. **Tests:** CXR; ABG, as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	All patients may have significant cardiac risk factors, including smoking, ETOH abuse, male gender, ↑ cholesterol, family Hx, and HTN. Some patients may have recently undergone major cardiac surgery and may be on pharmacological inotropic support, with full invasive monitoring, including PA line. **Tests:** ECG, and other tests as indicated, in patients of the 2nd group
Neurological	Preop neurological deficits should be fully documented.
Hematologic	In cases of malignancy or chronic disease, coagulopathies or anemia may be present **Tests:** CBC; Coagulation studies.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1) in elective cases. Premedication is best avoided in critically ill patients and patients with symptoms of upper airway obstruction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA in intubated patients, or in patients who pose no problems for conventional DL and tracheal intubation. In the presence of significant airway compromise or anticipated very difficult intubation local anesthesia may be required. Most tracheostomies are elective or semiurgent and are performed under GA. Patients with ↑ mucosal swelling (e.g., generalized edema, prolonged intubation) and ↑ tissue fragility (e.g., chronic steroid therapy) are at risk for tracheal mucosal separation → creation of a false passage during tracheostomy. This will constitute a true emergency (see Postoperative Complications, below).

Induction	If already intubated (group 1, above), convert preexisting ICU sedation to GA, using carefully titrated induction (e.g., etomidate 0.2–0.3 mg/kg iv) or an inhalational agent. If not intubated, and no airway problems are anticipated, a standard induction (p. B-2) may be appropriate. If airway problems are anticipated, an awake FOI or tracheostomy performed under local anesthesia may be the techniques of choice (see Anesthetic Considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220, and Laryngectomy, p. 206). In any event, the anesthesiologist should be prepared to deal with a failed intubation and have a surgeon immediately available to perform cricothyrotomy/tracheostomy if ventilation proves impossible.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Full muscle relaxation is required. FiO_2 = 1.0 usually is required before insertion of the tracheostomy tube. This high O_2 concentration, combined with electrocautery, may precipitate airway fire (see Postoperative Complications, below). A cuffed ETT should be used to prevent O_2 from leaking into the surgical site. In order to avoid inadvertent ETT cuff puncture, consider advancing the ETT closer toward the carina, before the trachea is opened. The trachea is usually opened above the cuff, and the ETT is slowly retracted cephalad, under direct vision by the surgeon (NOTE: Do not remove the ETT completely!). Sterile gas sampling tubing, extra ETTs, and anesthesia circuit should be readily available (see Maintenance for Laryngectomy, p. 207). After the tracheostomy tube is secured, it should be suctioned and connected to the anesthesia circuit. Verify the $ETCO_2$ tracing, ✓ the inflation pressures, and remove the ETT.	
Emergence	Considerations for group 2 and 3 patients are described above. Patients in the first group will continue on ventilatory support in the ICU. The tracheostomy tube must be carefully suctioned, and the delivered O_2 should be humidified. Opioid sedation will minimize reaction to suctioning in the early postop period. Tracheostomy tubes should not be removed for at least the first 5–7 days until a track is formed.	
Blood and Fluid Requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–3 mL/kg/h	EBL is typically minimal, when the tracheostomy is performed as an isolated procedure
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Avoid ECG pad placement in the prepped area. Invasive monitoring may be appropriate depending on the patient's condition.
Positioning	Shoulder roll ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	A shoulder roll is usually placed, and patient's neck extended, which may result in ETT cuff migrating cephalad, closer to the incision site (danger of inadvertent perforation by the surgeon on entering the trachea!). Make sure the ETT is positioned at the sufficient depth and taped securely.
Complications	Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Hemorrhage Aspiration of blood	Pneumothorax may occur with a low neck dissection, or if a false passage (see Postop Complications, below) has been created during the tracheostomy tube insertion. Dx and Rx—see Anesthetic Considerations for Laryngoscopy/Bronchoscopy/Esophagoscopy, p. 184.
	False tracheal passage/tracheal disruption Difficult ETT insertion/reinsertion	This is an airway emergency and must be quickly recognized (absent CO_2, ↑ PIP, absent or very distant breath sounds). Reintroduction of the existing ETT from the proximal trachea should be attempted.

Complications (cont'd)	Difficult ETT insertion/reinsertion (cont'd)	Rigid bronchoscope should be available to reestablish the airway, in case of a failed reintubation. An alternative approach is to insert a large-bore iv catheter into the tracheal lumen distal to the tracheostomy site and jet-ventilate the patient. Insertion of an airway exchange catheter through the bronchoscopy elbow adapter attached to the existing ETT has been advocated prior to tracheostomy tube insertion in patients at high risk for this complication.
	Airway fire	Tracheostomy fires are usually not catastrophic, possibly because the tracheostomy acts as a vent. Rx: immediately disconnect the patient from the anesthesia machine, extinguish the fire with NS, and ventilate the lungs with room air using a self-inflating bag. Removing or changing the existing ETT at this point may be more risky than leaving it in, especially if the patient was previously difficult to intubate or the airway has become edematous.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Hemorrhage	See Postoperative complications after Laryngoscopy/Bronchoscopy/Esophagoscopy, p. 189.
	Occlusion of the tracheostomy tube	This could be due to secretions, mucus plug, blood, or positioning of the tube in the mainstem bronchus or against the tracheal wall.
	Tracheostomy tube displacement	Reintubate orally or through the tracheostomy site
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) IV opioids	
Tests	CXR	✓ tracheostomy tube position and ✓ for evidence of either pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum

Suggested Readings

1. Atkins JH, Mirza N: Anesthetic considerations and surgical caveats for awake airway surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2010; 28(3): 555–75.
2. Brown BR: Anaesthesia for ear, nose, throat and maxillofacial procedures. In: Prys-Roberts C, Brown BR, eds. *International Practice of Anaesthesia*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford: 1996, 2–9.
3. Chee WK, Benumof JL: Airway fire during tracheostomy: extubation may be contraindicated. *Anesthesiology* 1998; 89:1576–8.
4. Donlon JV, Feldman MA: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 6th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2005, 2527–49.
5. Mcguire G, El-Beheiry H, Brown D: Loss of the airway during tracheostomy: rescue oxygenation and re-establishment of the airway. Can *J Anesth* 2001; 48:697–700.
6. Rogers ML, Nickalls RWD, Brackenbury ET, et al: Airway fire during tracheostomy: prevention strategies for surgeons and anaesthetists. Ann *R Coll Surg Engl* 2001; 83:376–80.
7. Sheinbein DS, Loeb RG: Laser surgery and fire hazards in ear, nose, and throat surgeries. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2010; 28(3): 485–96.

INTUBATION FOR EPIGLOTTITIS

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Epiglottitis is an acute inflammation and swelling of the epiglottis, associated with a generalized systemic toxicity, usually due to *Haemophilus influenza* Type B. It also can be caused by β-hemolytic streptococci, staphylococci, pneumococci, or unusual pathogens among immunocompromised individuals and drug/alcohol abusers. It occasionally results in total laryngeal obstruction and death 2° asphyxia. At one time, the typical patient was a previously healthy child 3–5 yr old; however, since the advent of the H-flu vaccine, epiglottitis is more common in adults (predominantly males). The most common presenting symptoms are sore throat, dysphagia/odynophagia, fever, respiratory difficulty, and drooling. Pediatric patients may appear toxic on presentation.

Airway	Enlarged epiglottis seen frequently on neck x-ray. Neck tenderness or swelling also observed in some patients. Patients with stridor are at high risk for upper airway obstruction.
Respiratory	The patient, typically sitting upright, may display hoarseness, muffled voice, dyspnea, and chest-wall retractions. **NB:** Rapid treatment should be instituted instead of performing time-consuming investigations. The sudden development of respiratory obstruction in the x-ray suite could have a disastrous outcome.
Hematologic	A high leukocyte count usually is found in these patients. **Tests:** Blood drawing before the airway is secured may be inadvisable.
Premedication	None

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Patients presenting with imminent or actual airway obstruction should be intubated immediately. Airway management for **adult** patients presenting with **mild-to-moderate** symptoms is controversial. Although routine prophylactic intubation of these patients may not be necessary, 18% subsequently develop complete airway obstruction; thus, close monitoring is mandatory if intubation is deferred. It is imperative to realize that total airway obstruction can occur suddenly and without warning.

An experienced anesthesiologist should be present for this procedure. In the pediatric patient, it is critical that neither visualization of the epiglottis nor other maneuvers be attempted to confirm the Dx before anesthesia. In adults, it has been suggested that indirect laryngoscopy or FOB may be performed without the risk of precipitating complete airway obstruction, although this approach is controversial.

Induction	If an iv is in place, atropine 0.02 mg/kg may be given to the pediatric patient to prevent vagal reflexes resulting from manipulation of the inflamed epiglottis. If no iv access is available, inhalation induction (sevoflurane in $FiO_2 = 1.0$) with the patient in the sitting position should be used. Intramuscular injection should be avoided to prevent agitation, crying, and subsequent total airway obstruction (iv line is placed after induction of anesthesia). An experienced ENT surgeon, ready to perform an emergency tracheostomy, must be present at induction. Early application of CPAP is essential to maintain the upper airway patency. Inhalation induction may be prolonged and intubation extremely difficult. Different sizes of ETTs must be available.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3)
Emergence	The patient will remain intubated for 24–48 h and should be kept sedated and restrained to prevent accidental extubation.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga (adult) 22–26 ga (child) NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h (adult); @ 1.5 mL/kg/h (child)	Minimal blood loss Fluid requirements may be ↑ 2° fever and dehydration.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	POPE (postobstructive pulmonary edema)	A short-lived POPE occasionally occurs after relief of the obstruction and must be treated with IPPV.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Accidental extubation ETT blockage	These complications can prove fatal. The blockages are sometimes due to crusting of the ETT 2° insufficient humidification.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) IV opioids	Postop sedation and manual restraints are often required.

Suggested Readings

1. Crockett DM, Healy GB, McGill TJ, et al: Airway management of acute supraglottitis at the Children's Hospital, Boston: 1980–1985. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1988; 97(2Pt1):114–19.
2. Dort JC, Frohlich AM, Tate RB: Acute epiglottis in adults: diagnosis and treatment in 43 patients. *J Otolaryngol* 1994; 23:281–5.
3. Feldman MA, Patel A: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2010, 2357–88.
4. Park KW, Darvish A, Lowenstein E: Airway management for adult patients with acute epiglottitis. *Anesthesiology* 1998; 88:254–61
5. Senior BA, Radkowski D, MacArthur C, et al: Changing patterns in pediatric supraglottitis: a multi-institutional review, 1980 to 1992. *OHNS* 1994; 110:203–10.
6. Verbruggen K, Halewyck S, Deron P, Foulon I, Gordts F: Epiglottitis and related complications in adults. Case reports and review of the literature. *B-ENT* 2012; 8(2):143–8.

ZENKER'S DIVERTICULECTOMY (OPEN APPROACH)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Zenker's diverticulum is a herniation of mucosa through the posterior hypopharyngeal wall immediately above the cricopharyngeus muscle and below the inferior constrictor in an area called Killian's dehiscence. This is an acquired disorder, usually seen in the 6th to 9th decades of life and felt secondary to tonic spasm or achalasia of the cricopharyngeus muscle. Clinically, patients may experience dysphagia, globus, coughing, and regurgitation of undigested food. Weight loss and aspiration pneumonia can be seen in severe cases. Barium swallow is usually diagnostic. Endoscopy will reveal the presence of a pouch of variable size posterior to the cricopharyngeus muscle often filled with undigested debris. Cricopharyngeal achalasia may present in the absence of a well-formed diverticulum with much the same symptom complex. Treatment is usually aimed at division of the cricopharyngeus muscle and eradication of the pouch.

Variant approaches. **Open:** Under GA with muscle relaxation, an incision is made in the left side of the neck to expose the diverticulum and cricopharyngeus muscle. The muscle is cut, the diverticulum resected, and the hypopharyngeal defect closed. In patients with pure cricopharyngeal spasm, the muscle alone is cut. A drain is placed,

and the wound is closed. A nasogastric tube may be placed for postop feeding. Aspiration precautions should be observed at both induction (consider awake intubation in severely symptomatic patients) and reversal of anesthesia, as this is a common comorbidity in patients with Zenker's diverticulum. **Endoscopic:** Selected patients may be candidates for endoscopic treatment of a Zenker's diverticulum. This is better described as diverticulotomy rather than diverticulectomy because the redundant hypopharyngeal mucosa is not removed, and the cricopharyngeus muscle is not divided in its entirety. Rather, the common wall separating the diverticulum from the esophagus is reduced to prevent food and debris from collecting within the confines of the diverticulum. With the patient under general anesthesia and muscle relaxation, an esophagodiverticuloscope is placed transorally and advanced into the hypopharynx. The endoscope is deployed to visualize clearly the opening into the diverticulum. The common wall separating the diverticulum from the true esophageal inlet is then cut, either with a stapler or with a CO_2 laser.

Usual preop diagnosis: Dysphagia; Zenker's diverticulum; cricopharyngeal spasm

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open	Endoscopic
Position	Supine; table 90°; head extended	Supine
Special instrumentation	Anode or laser ETT; microscope	⇐ ; endoscopic stapler or CO_2 laser
Unique considerations		Keep O_2 < 30% and avoid N_2O if lasering.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g and metronidazole 500 mg; clindamycin 600 mg	
Surgical time	1–2 h	30 min to 1 h
EBL	< 25 mL	0–25 mL
Postop care	Reflux precautions should be observed; patients may require nasogastric tube feeding for several days	Reflux precautions should be observed
Mortality	< 1%	< 1%
Morbidity	Fistula formation < 5% Vocal cord paralysis Hematoma 1–5% Infection 1–5% Aspiration	Perforation < 5% Aspiration
Pain score	3–5	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	60–90
Male:Female	1.5:1
Incidence	1 in 50,000; Caucasians
Etiology	GERD; neurogenerative disorders
Associated conditions	GERD

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(See p. 184)

Suggested Readings

1. Aly A, Devitt PG, Jamieson GG: Evolution of surgical treatment for pharyngeal pouch. *Br J Surg* 2004; 9(6):657–64.
2. Dzeletovic I, Ekbom DC, Baron TH: Flexible endoscopic and surgical management of Zenker's diverticulum. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; 6(4):449–65.
3. Feeley MA, Righi PD, Weisberger EC, et al: Zenker's diverticulum: analysis of surgical complications from diverticulectomy and cricopharyngeal mytomoy. *Laryngoscope* 1999; 109(6):858–61.
4. Huang B, Payne WS, Cameron AJ: Surgical management for recurrent pharygoesophageal (Zenker's) diverticulum. *Ann Thoracic Surg* 1984; 37(3):189–91.
5. van Overbeek JJ: Pathogenesis and methods of treatment of Zenker's diverticulum. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 2003; 112(7):583–93.

LARYNGEAL FRAMEWORK SURGERY (THYROPLASTY, ARYTENOID ADDUCTION, INJECTION LARYNGOPLASTY)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Thyroplasty** is a surgical technique of medializing a paralyzed vocal fold via placement of an implant inserted through the cartilage of the thyroid ala. Under local anesthesia with intravenous sedation, a skin incision is made at the level of the larynx and the thyroid cartilage exposed. Using a small saw, drill bit, or knife, a window is cut in the cartilage to the level of the inner perichondrium. Lateral pressure is then applied to the paralyzed side to gauge the amount of medialization necessary to improve phonation. Because the shape and size of the implant is created based on the location and degree of medialization needed to improve the voice, it is important for the patient to be awake and able to phonate during the procedure. Often the patient is kept in a state of deeper sedation in the beginning of the case and then is lightened as the case proceeds to allow the patient to be responsive and interactive with the surgeon. This can be a challenge for the anesthesiologist to strike a happy medium between patient comfort and coherence. After the desired degree of medialization is obtained, the implant is secured in place and the wound closed over a drain.

Description: **Arytenoid adduction** is often performed in conjunction with thyroplasty. This involves placement of a suture around the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage, which, when tightened, causes posteromedial rotation of the vocal process and adduction of the vocal fold. Usually the technique is employed when there is a persistent gap between the vocal folds posteriorly.

Description: **Injection laryngoplasty** refers to medialization of a paralyzed vocal fold by means of injection, whether percutaneous or endoscopic. Its minimally invasive nature is its chief advantage over thyroplasty or arytenoid adduction. However, the longevity of the injected material as well as its side effect profile are major determinants as to whether or not this procedure should be considered. Traditionally, Teflon was the injectable material of choice. However, because of the potential for a foreign body reaction, Teflon has been replaced by more biocompatible materials, such as acellular human dermis, fat, gelfoam, and calcium hydroxylapatite to name a few. Because of the low viscosity of some of these injectibles, many patients are candidates for percutaneous injection, which can be performed in the office or procedure room under simple topical anesthetic. The patient is seated upright and the nasal cavity topically anesthetized with lidocaine 2% and neosynephrine. A fiberoptic rhinolaryngoscope attached to a camera and television monitor is then passed transnasally to the level of the glottis. Through a 25- or 27-gauge needle, the desired material is injected either transcartilagenously, through the cricothyroid membrane, or under the thyroid ala into the paraglottic space. Observing on the monitor, the material is injected until the desired degree of medialization is obtained. This is well tolerated by patients with minimal pain. Airway obstruction or bleeding are exceedingly rare.

For those who request or require injection under GETA a 5.0 microlaryngeal tube is desirable. Jet ventilation and apneic techniques can also be used. An operating laryngoscope is advanced to the level of the glottis and suspended from a Mayo stand. The paryalyzed vocal fold is then injected, usually at the mid and posterior aspects, until adequate medialization is seen. Usually this entails slight overcorrection such that the medialized fold will now be slightly across midline. Hemostasis if needed is usually obtained with epinephrine-soaked pledgets placed directly on the vocal fold. The scope is then withdrawn and the procedure terminated.

It is important for the anesthesiologist to be aware if a patient has undergone a prior medialization procedure. This is not a contraindication to orotracheal intubation for subsequent procedures requiring GETA. However, traumatic intubation or the use of a tube larger than 6 mm may cause trauma to the adducted fold. A laceration of the vocal fold can potentially expose or dislodge a thyroplasty implant, making it more likely to become infected and potentially extrude.

Usual preop diagnosis: Vocal fold paralysis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thyroplasty	Arytenoid Adduction	Injection Laryngoplasty
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Head and neck set; headlights	–	Operating laryngoscope; laryngeal injection needles; jet ventilation setup.
Unique considerations	Overmedialization of the vocal fold can potentially cause stridor and dyspnea; coordination between the surgeon and anesthesiologists is essential to time lightening of anesthesia; stimulation can cause coughing.	If GETA is requested, intubate with 5.0 microlaryngeal tube.	Overmedialization of the vocal fold can potentially cause stridor and dyspnea.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	⇐	30 min
EBL	< 10 mL	10–20 mL	Minimal
Postop care	Decadron intravenously for 24 h; racemic epinephrine; cool mist.	⇐	Racemic epinephrine; cool mist as needed
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Need for revision: 10–20% Transient dyspnea or laryngospasm Infection: < 5% Airway obstruction requiring tracheostomy: 1% Extrusion: rare	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	Need for repeat injection common 5–10% Rare ⇐
Pain score	3–4	4–5	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18 and over
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Surgical trauma to recurrent laryngeal nerve; cancer; trauma; idiopathic
Associated conditions	Cancer; coronary artery disease; lung disease; tumors of skull base

Suggested Readings

1. Cotter CS, Avidano MA, Crary MA, et al: Laryngeal complications after type 1 thyroplasty. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1995; 113(6): 671–3.
2. Damrose EJ, Berke GS: Advances in the management of glottic insufficiency. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2003; 11(6):480–4.
3. Flint PW, Purcell LL, Cummings CW: Pathophysiology and indications for medialization thyroplasty in patients with dysphagia and aspiration. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1997; 116(3):349–54.
4. Herman C: Medialization thyroplasty for unilateral vocal cord paralysis. *AORN J* 2002; 75(3):512–22.
5. Isshiki N, Morita H, Okamura H, et al: Thyroplasty as a new phonosurgical technique. *Acta Otolaryngol* 1974; 78(5–6): 451–7.
6. Isshiki N, Taira T, Tanabe M: Surgical alteration of the vocal pitch. *J Otolarygnol* 1983; 12(5):335–40.
7. Isshiki N, Tsuji DH, Yamamoto Y, et al: Midline lateralization thyroplasty for adductor spasmodic dysphonia. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 2000; 109(2):187–93.
8. Pou AM, Carrau RL, Eibling DE et al: Laryngeal framework surgery for the management f aspiration in high vagal lesions. *Am J Otolaryngol* 1998; 19(1):1–7.
9. Weinman EC, Maragos NE: Airway compromise in thyroplasty surgery. *Laryngoscope* 2000; 110(7):1082–5.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The laryngeal framework surgery (LFS) is the surgery of choice for dysphonias resulting from incomplete glottic closure or inadequate vocal fold tension. With thyroplasty, direct surgery on the vocal folds is avoided, eliminating the possibility of scarring and voice aggravation. Type I (medialization) thyroplasty is most commonly performed for the unilateral VC paralysis or bowing (in elderly patients), and involves placement of a small silicon implant within the larynx on the affected side.

Airway	No airway problems are usually encountered in these patients.
Cardiovascular	Elderly patients may present with advanced cerebrovascular, cardiovascular, or pulmonary disease. Preop pulmonary aspiration due to glottic incompetence is uncommon, but may be seen when the VC paralysis is of central origin, affecting both motor and sensory components of the VC innervation.
Tests	EKG; other tests as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Tests, as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication with iv midazolam can frequently be reduced or avoided, especially in the elderly.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Most commonly, thyroplasty is performed under MAC, which allows the surgeon to achieve optimal improvement in the patient's voice quality (sometimes facilitated by visualization of the VC movement through a nasally introduced flexible fiberoptic endoscope) before locking the laryngeal implant in place. It can also be performed under GA, when the concomitant use of the LMA and flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope allows a real-time assessment of VC positioning. **Arytenoid adduction** and **injection laryngoplasty** are usually performed under GETA with the use of a small (5.0 mm ID) MLT ETT.

The essential surgical requirements for **thyroplasty** performed under MAC include patient immobility for an effective injection of a local anesthetic; alternating levels of MAC sedation, depending on the part of the surgery (deep level of sedation during the surgical approach to the cartilage, light for the implant placement, and deep again during the surgical closure); absence of straining/bucking/coughing during the implant placement and manipulation on the thyroid cartilage necessitates the use of iv opioids.

GETA for **arytenoid adduction** and **injection laryngoplasty** requires full muscle relaxation with quick return of protective airway reflexes and smooth emergence from anesthesia.

When providing MAC for thyroplasty, a quick patient transition to the "light" state for the implant placement is required. A combination of a small dose (1–2 mcg/kg) of iv fentanyl with the iv propofol infusion, or iv midazolam

with iv remifentanil infusion (typically, 0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min to avoid severe respiratory depression), will achieve the stated objective. For a thyroplasty performed under GA, as well as for the GETA employed for a **arytenoid adduction** and **injection laryngoplasty** surgery, the use of TIVA (see Introduction, Anesthesiologist's Perspectives, p. 178) has been shown to be highly beneficial. **Injection laryngoplasty** procedures can be very short and, if properly coordinated with the surgeon, can occasionally be performed without tracheal intubation, using an apneic technique following full preoxygenation, iv induction, administration of a relatively large dose of succinylcholine (1.5–2 mg/kg) and brief mask hyperventilation with $FiO_2 = 1.0$.

Blood and fluid Requirements	IV: 20 ga × 1 LR @ 2 cc/kg/h	EBL is minimal during all the LFS procedures.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± arterial line	Even in patients with preexisting significant CV disease, A-line monitoring is usually not necessary.
Positioning	Table may be turned 90–180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	To prevent claustrophobia, inform the patient presenting for thyroplasty under MAC that his/her face will be partially covered with surgical towels.
Complications	Overmedialization Stridor and dysphonia	Can be quickly corrected by the surgeon

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Wound hematoma Airway obstruction Stridor Extrusion of the prosthesis
Pain management	Short-acting parenteral opioids (p. C-1) are usually sufficient.

Suggested Readings

1. Grundler S, Stacey MR: Thyroplasty under general anesthesia using a laryngeal mask airway and fibreoptic bronchoscope. *Can J Anaesth* 1999; 46(5Pt1):460–3.
2. Hoffman H, McCabe D, McCulloch T, et al: Laryngeal collagen injection as an adjunct to medialization laryngoplasty. *Laryngoscope* 2002; 112(8 Pt1):1407–13.
3. Lundy DS, Casiano RR, Xue JW: Can maximum phonation time predict voice outcome after thyroplasty type I? *Laryngoscope* 2004; 114:1447–54.
4. Razzaq I, Wooldridge W: A series of thyroplasty cases under general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth* 2000; 85:547–9.
5. Remacle M, Lawson G, Jamart J, et al: Treatment of vocal fold immobility by injectable homologous collagen: short-term results. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 2006; 263:205–9.
6. Remacle M, Lawson G, Mayné A: Use of a laryngeal mask during medialization laryngoplasty. *Rev Laryngol Otol Rhinol (Bord)* 2003; 124:335–8.

TRACHEAL AND CRICOTRACHEAL RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Prolonged endotracheal intubation and complications from tracheotomy account for most cases of subglottic or tracheal stenosis. Wegener's disease commonly affects the subglottic airway, and secondary dyspnea may be the first presenting sign of the disease. In females in the 4th to 6th decades of life, subglottic stenosis can be idiopathic. Whatever the etiology, subglottic and tracheal stenosis can be a major source of morbidity for afflicted

patients, resulting in dyspnea, dysphonia, and tracheostomy dependence. In selected individuals, resection of the stenotic region with primary repair can often produce marked and sustained relief of symptoms in a single-stage procedure, often without need for a temporary tracheostomy.

Tracheal resection is the treatment of choice in patients with isolated tracheal stenosis. Up to four to five rings of cartilage can be resected, more if releasing maneuvers to mobilize the larynx and intrathoracic trachea are performed. Induction of anesthesia is simplest in patients with preexisting tracheostomies. For those patients who present without a tracheostomy, a tracheostomy under local anesthesia can be performed at or immediately below the stenotic segment. If possible, it is preferable to dilate the stenosis and proceed to endotracheal intubation to avoid further injury to the trachea with a fresh tracheotomy. With the patient in the supine position, a transverse cervical incision is made. The thyroid isthmus is divided and separated from the cervical trachea. Careful blunt dissection on the lateral aspects of the diseased segment is performed to avoid injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerves. A vertical incision is made along the face of the stenotic segment until a healthy complete ring of cartilage is identified above and below the stenotic segment. The anesthesiologist withdraws the ETT up into the subglottis, and the diseased segment of trachea is resected. At this time, the surgeon may intubate the distal segment of trachea to afford better access to the superior aspect of the diseased segment. In this case, the breathing circuit will need to be switched from the orotracheal tube to the distal tube. The distal trachea can be more easily mobilized superiorly following blunt finger dissection along the anterior tracheal wall into the mediastinum. The orotracheal tube is then advanced inferiorly into the distal healthy segment. The healthy distal and proximal segments of trachea are then reanastomosed over the ETT using interrupted sutures. The wound is closed and a drain placed. If the patient is to remain intubated overnight, it is important to ensure that the cuff of the endotracheal tube remains inferior to the suture line so as not to put tension on the repair. If the patient is to be extubated in the OR, care should be taken to minimize coughing or bucking so as not to rupture the repair site. Endoscopy can be performed prior to transport from the operating room to ensure that at least one vocal fold is mobile. If neither vocal fold is mobile, a bilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury should be suspected and a tracheostomy performed. Regardless of whether or not the patient is extubated immediately or later, fiberoptic laryngoscopy to assess vocal fold motion postop is standard of care. Voice quality is not an adequate assesment of vocal fold function. A paralyzed vocal fold can be midline with complete compensation by the mobile fold and no overt dysphonia. In bilateral vocal fold paralysis, the voice is often normal, and the patient's only symptoms will be dyspnea and stridor.

Cricotracheal resection allows single-stage repair of subglottic or a combined subglottic/tracheal stenosis. The procedure is similar to that of tracheal resection with several caveats. It is important to carefully gauge the relationship of the stenosis to the vocal folds. Stenosis that involves the vocal folds is a contraindication to cricotracheal resection. The anterior arch of the cricoid cartilage is usually resected, along with the subglottic soft tissue component of the stenosis, preserving the cricoid plate. This creates a cradle into which the trachea will slide superiorly. No more than one-third of the inferior aspect of the cricoid plate can be resected. More than this will disrupt the posterior cricoarytenoid muscles and prevent vocal fold abduction during inspiration. As resection proceeds, the ETT will be withdrawn above the glottis. It is helpful at this point to attach an umbilical tape to the distal tip of the ETT to allow the surgeon to assist the anesthesiologist in advancing the tube back through the glottis and into the trachea when the resection is complete. The trachea is sutured to the thyroid cartilage anteriorly and the cricoid ring laterally; the wound is closed; and a drain may be placed. The patient is extubated in the OR and vocal fold mobility checked. Tracheostomy is only required in the setting of bilateral vocal fold paralysis and should otherwise be avoided. As with tracheal resection, a preop assesment of vocal fold motion is critical in planning surgery. If unilateral paralysis is present preop, great care is needed to minimize potential injury to the contralateral recurrent laryngeal nerve.

Usual preop diagnosis: Subglottic stenosis; tracheal stenosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Tracheal Resection	Cricotracheal Resection
Position	Supine	Supine
Incision	Transverse cervical	Transverse cervical
Special instrumentation	Major head and neck tray; headlights	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Tracheal Resection	Cricotracheal Resection
Unique considerations	Intubation may be difficult owing to degree of stenosis; dilation may be required prior to intubation; awake tracheostomy under local anesthesia may be necessary in select cases.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g and metronidazole 500 mg; clindamycin 600 mg; vancomycin 1 g; piperacillin/tazobactam 3.375 g	⇐
Surgical time	3 h	⇐
EBL	50–100 mL	⇐
Postop care	Most patients can be extubated at the conclusion of surgery; coughing and stimulation should be minimized; if significant edema is expected, patients may remain intubated for 24 to 48 h then extubated; patients may require temporary NG tube feedings if laryngeal releasing maneuvers performed; monitoring in ICU setting for airway compromise or subcutaneous emphysema required postop	⇐
Mortality	1–2%	⇐
Morbidity	Restenosis: 10% Vocal cord paralysis: 2–3% Dehiscence: 5% Subcutaneous emphysema: 1–2% Airway edema requiring tracheotomy: 2%	10–15% 3–5% < 5% 1–2% 5%
Pain score	5–6	5–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	1% of all patients requiring intubation
Etiology	Prolonged intubation; prior tracheostomy; Wegener's disease; external trauma; neoplasm; radiation; gastroesophageal reflux; idiopathic.
Associated conditions	Atherosclerosis; asthma; gastroesophageal reflux.

Suggested Readings

1. Brown BR: Anaesthesia for ear, nose, throat and maxillofacial procedures. In: Prys-Roberts C, Brown BR, eds. *International Practice of Anaesthesia*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford: 1996, 2–9.
2. Chee WK, Benumof JL: Airway fire during tracheostomy: extubation may be contraindicated. *Anesthesiology* 1998; 89:1576–8.
3. Feldman MA, Patel A: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2010, 2357–88.
4. Hobai IA, Chhangani SV, Alfille PH: Anesthesia for tracheal resection and reconstruction. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(4): 709–30.
5. McGuire G, El-Beheiry H, Brown D: Loss of the airway during tracheostomy: rescue oxygenation and re-establishment of the airway. *Can J Anesth* 2001; 48:697–700.
6. Rogers ML, Nickalls RWD, Brackenbury ET, et al: Airway fire during tracheostomy: prevention strategies for surgeons and anaesthetists. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2001; 83:376–80.

LARYNGECTOMY: PARTIAL AND TOTAL

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Either radiation, chemoradiation or surgery is commonly employed as primary treatment of laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Selected tumors can be removed endoscopically, as reviewed above. Open procedures, which may be primary or following recurrence after irradiation, are designed to fit tumor extent. If at least one cricoarytenoid unit (innervated posterior cricoarytenoid muscle and working cricoarytenoid joint) is uninvolved by tumor, the patient may be a candidate for less than a total laryngectomy.

A **vertical partial laryngectomy** (VPL) involves removal of the affected true and false vocal folds, and up to one-third of the contralateral folds including the anterior commissure. The contralateral cricoarytenoid unit is preserved, and reconstruction often includes a pedicled sternohyoid flap as well as thyroid cartilage perichondrium. Exposure and anesthetic considerations are similar to that of a total laryngectomy (discussed below) other than the fact that a temporary tracheotomy is used in the partial laryngectomy.

A **supraglottic laryngectomy** (Figs. 3-4 and 3-5) or **anterior horizontal partial laryngectomy** (AHPL; Fig. 3-6) involves removal of laryngeal structures superior to the true vocal cords. Both cricoarytenoid units remain. The resection may include some of the base of tongue. Exposure and anesthetic considerations are the same as for for a VPL, including the need for a temporary tracheotomy.

A **supracricoid laryngectomy** involves removal of the larynx from the top of the cricoid ring to the hyoid bone with preservation of at least one arytenoid. A temporary tracheostomy is required. Cuts are made above the thyroid ala, through the cricothyroid membrane, and anterior to the arytenoid cartilages. The epiglottis may be included in the resection if necessary, depending upon the extent of the tumor. Blunt finger dissection anterior to the trachea into the mediastinum is performed to allow for superior mobilization of the trachea. A cricohyoidopexy, involving the suturing of the cricoid ring to the hyoid bone, is then performed with three heavy sutures. If the epiglottis has been preserved, a cricohyoidoepiglottopexy is performed. The strap muscles are then used to reinforce the closure, and drains are placed.

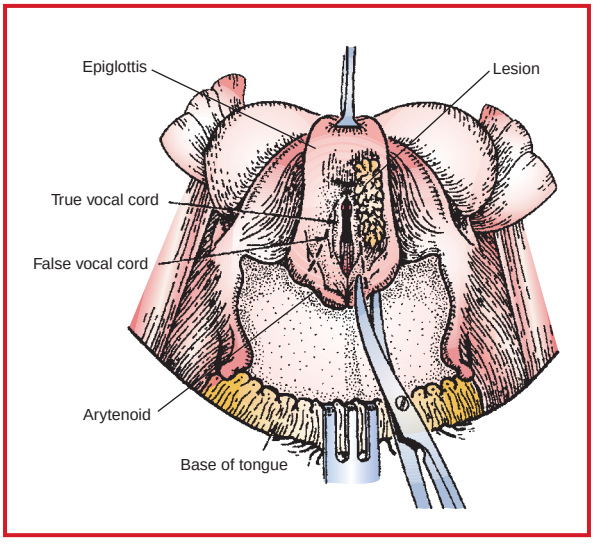


Figure 3-4. The larynx is viewed from the midline, as seen by the surgeon standing at the head of the operating table. Unless the lesion extends posteriorly to the arytenoid, the aryepiglottic fold is transected on each side by placing one blade of the dissecting scissors into the laryngeal ventricle or above the false vocal cord and the other blade in the pyriform sinus. The arytenoid on one side can be resected if the tumor extends posteriorly to involve this structure. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

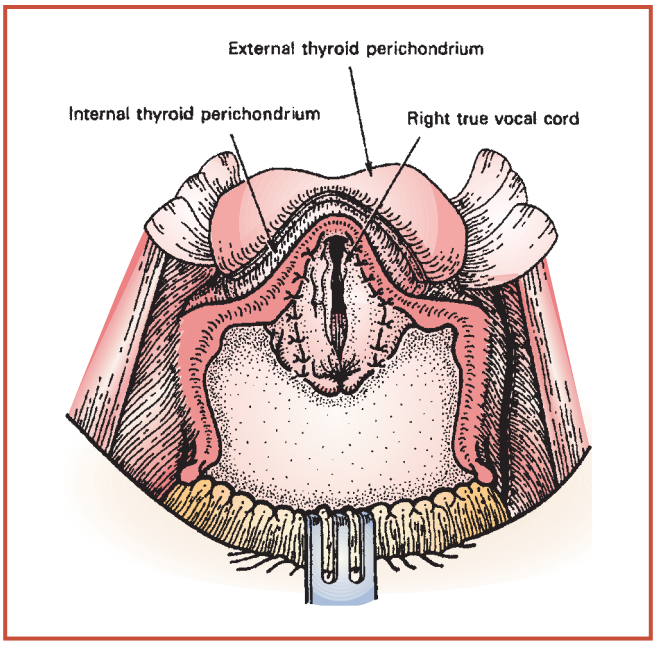


Figure 3-5. The repair following supraglottic partial laryngectomy begins by carefully approximating the margin of the mucous membrane of the pyriform sinus to the lateral margin of the laryngeal ventricle, or to the margin of resection above the false vocal cord. There is usually some distortion of the true vocal cord when the repair is accomplished, as is shown on the patient's right side. The repair is continued anteriorly by placing multiple interrupted 3-0 chromic catgut sutures. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

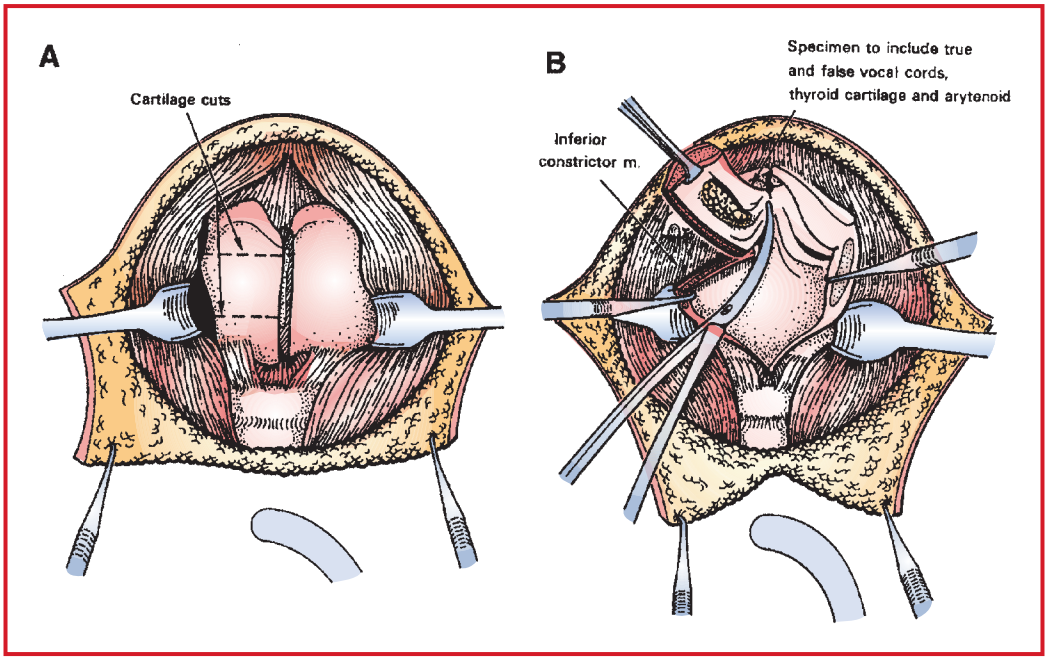


Figure 3-6. **A:** Horizontal incisions, corresponding to the mucosal incision, are made through the thyroid lamina. **B:** The specimen—including true and false vocal cords, the arytenoid, and a portion of the thyroid lamina—is resected en bloc. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

A **total laryngectomy (TL)** involves the resection of the entire larynx and can be done via an incision about 8 cm long, low in the midline neck. An apron incision is often used instead, or the low incision is extended toward a mastoid tip to provide exposure for a neck dissection if indicated. The thyroid gland is often preserved, pedicled on its superior and inferior vasculature after dividing the isthmus; but if indicated a partial thyroidectomy may be included. The thyoid is resected with the specimen and the pharynx closed primarily. A nasogastric tube is used for nutrition for all open laryngeal tumor surgery, unless the surgeon opts to provide nutrition via a tracheoesphageal puncture, discussed below. As the remaining trachea is sutured to the anterior skin in a true tracheostoma, no tracheotomy tube or ETT is required postop unless there is marked stomal edema or mechanical ventilaton is required, which is not common.

If a TL is performed, a **tracheoesphageal puncture** (TEP) may be performed simultaneously. This involves the creation of a tract or fistula between the trachea and the esophagus for placement of a voicing prosthesis (a one-way valve that allows airflow from the trachea into the pharynx for alaryngeal speech). The voicing prosthesis may be placed at the time of the laryngectomy or as a secondary procedure at a later date. If performed secondarily, it is placed using the technique of rigid esophagoscopy (see previous section). If TEP is performed at the time of laryngectomy, the valve can be placed simultaneously. Some surgeons prefer to place a red rubber catheter instead, which can allow the patient to be fed via this route in lieu of a nasogastric or gastrostomy tube. After the patient is deemed fit to start oral intake, the catheter can be exchanged secondarily for the voice prosthesis. If a rubber catheter is used, the tube will protrude from the stoma, and care must be taken not to dislodge it during suctioning or while removing or replacing the laryngectomy tube if one is temporarily used during the period of postop edema.

A TL can be extended to include part of the hypopharyx or oropharynx as dictated by tumor extent. If flap reconstruction is necessary because of the extent of the tumor, options include use of a pectoralis major myocutaneous flap or a free flap, such as a radial free flap, to reconstruct less than a circumferential defect. If a circumferential defect following resection exists (e.g., after resection of the superior cervical esophagus and the larynx), options for reconstruction include use of a laparascopically harvested jejunal free flap, gastric pullup, or a tubed radial free flap reinforced with a pectoralis major myogenous flap.

Postop care: Inpatient admission for 5–10 d; monitored bed or ICU for tracheostomy care or following more extensive pharyngeal reconstruction; a cuffed tracheostomy tube (and a temporary tracheotomy) will usually be required for partial laryngectomy patients or if the patient will require postop mechanical ventilation. A shorter tracheostomy tube following a TL will be needed if there is significant peristomal edema or if mechanical ventilation is required. General and drain management is similar to a neck dissection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cancer of larynx; intractable aspiration with resultant pneumonia unresponsive to other techniques

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Total or Partial	Pharyngolaryngectomy
Position	Supine, head extended	⇐
Special instrumentation	Major head/neck set; headlights	⇐
Unique considerations	Laryngeal tumors may distort airway. Fiberoptic intubation or other management of the difficult airway should be considered. May be combined with neck dissection.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g and metronidazole 500 mg; clindamycin 600 mg	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h; 4–8 if neck dissection added	8 + h; reconstruction required +/– free flap
EBL	50–300 mL With neck dissection: up to 500 mL. Transfusions rarely indicated.	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Postop care	Tracheotomy care, drain management; tube feedings	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Total or Partial	Pharyngolaryngectomy
Morbidity	Fistula formation: 5%: 15–20% if prior irradiation Hematoma: < 4% Infection: < 5% DVT/PE: < 1%	1% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	4–6	4–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–80, occasionally older and younger
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Smoking; alcohol
Associated conditions	COPD; atherosclerosis; diabetes

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

See preop considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220.

Airway	If a stridor at rest is present, its severity must be carefully evaluated. Patients with symptoms and signs of severe obstruction (complaints of difficulty breathing, nocturnal symptoms, sleeping upright, use of accessory muscles on inspiration at rest) will likely be difficult to ventilate and intubate.
Respiratory	Patients with severe stridor may manifest baseline hypoxemia (with or without hypercarbia) 2° ↓ airway diameter and atelectases caused by ↓ ability to effectively handle secretions.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Although tracheostomy is universally performed in TL patients, smooth emergence is still important 2° delicate suture lines. Full muscle relaxation is essential. Moderate ↓ BP (see Introduction, p. 178) is desirable, but may be limited by concomitant cardiovascular disease.

Induction	There is no universal recipe for management of the partially obstructed airway. One approach is outlined below. If stridor is **absent** and airway assessment is normal, standard induction followed by DL is appropriate. In patients with preexisting stridor, attempts to secure an airway while awake (including awake FOI) may precipitate complete upper airway obstruction. In patients with **moderate stridor,** in whom intubation is considered possible (larynx visible on preop nasal endoscopy, tumor not too large, absence of gross anatomical distortion, absence of fixed hemilarynx), inhalational induction followed by gentle DL, or asleep FOI, are useful techniques. The ENT surgeon should be present in the OR, ready to perform rigid bronchoscopy or emergent tracheostomy. If the airway cannot be secured after 2 attempts, tracheostomy must be performed under controlled conditions with the patient anesthetized and breathing spontaneously. In patients with **severe stridor** and low probability of successful intubation, a preliminary tracheostomy should be performed under local anesthesia without any sedation.

Induction (cont'd)	Although in the majority of patients presenting for laryngectomy the location of tumor is submucosal, exophytic tumor growth may be present (e.g., VC). In this circumstance, direct visualization of the passage of the ETT through the VC (DL or video laryngoscopy) is essential to eliminate or greatly diminish the risk of tumor fragmentation with seeding of the lower airway and bleeding. Other anesthetic considerations are similar to those in Neck Dissection, p. 220
Maintenance	See Anesthetic Considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220. After tracheostomy, a sterile reinforced ETT (6.0–7.0 mm ID) is inserted by the surgeon and connected to an anesthesia breathing circuit. Proper ETT placement should be confirmed by presence of $ETCO_2$ equal bilateral breath sounds and normal airway compliance. Following tracheostomy, ↑ FiO_2 to at least 50% because the surgeon will continue working around the ETT, occasionally removing it from the patient's trachea for suture application. The position of the ETT in the tracheostoma should be monitored closely to prevent the ETT from slipping into the right mainstem bronchus.
Emergence	See Anesthetic Considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220.

For further discussion, see Intraoperative Considerations for Neck Dissections, p. 220.

POSTOPERATIVE

See Postop Considerations for Neck Dissections, p. 222.

Suggested Readings

1. Bonner S, Taylor M: Airway obstruction in head and neck surgery. *Anaesthesia* 2000; 55:290–1.
2. Dougherty TB, Nguyen DT: Anesthetic management of the patient scheduled for head and neck cancer surgery. *J Clin Anesth* 1994; 6:74–82.
3. Feldman MA, Patel A: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2010, 2357–88.
4. Mason RA, Fielder CP: The obstructed airway in head and neck surgery. *Anaesthesia* 1999; 54:625–8.
5. See Suggested Readings for Neck Dissection, p. 222.

TONSILLECTOMY AND/OR ADENOIDECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The dissection for **tonsillectomy** is carried out with the patient supine, shoulders elevated on a small pillow (Fig. 3-7). A mouth gag is inserted; and, if an **adenoidectomy** is being done concurrently, adenoids are removed first with a curette, and the nasopharynx packed. The tonsillectomy is accomplished by firmly grasping the upper pole of the tonsil and drawing it medially, allowing a mucosal incision to be made over the anterior faucial pillar. The tonsil is dissected from its bed and removed. A snare may be used to snip the dissected tonsil off at the lower pole. Hemostasis is secured with gauze packs and the use of electrocautery. Packs are removed from the nasopharynx and tonsillar beds before extubation. Tonsillectomy may be combined with **palatopharyngoplasty** in cases of obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) or stertorous breathing (see p. 258).

Variant procedure or approaches: **Guillotine technique** (rarely used)

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic tonsillitis and/or adenoiditis (most common); OSA; asymmetric enlargement of tonsils (to r/o cancer); nasal airway obstruction; snoring; peritonsillar abscess

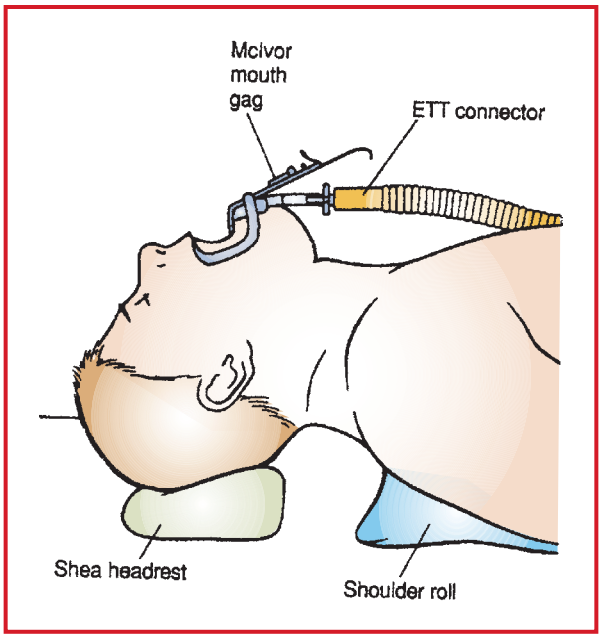


Figure 3-7. The "Rose" position for tonsillectomy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	"Rose" (supine, shoulder roll, head extended); surgeon at head of table (turned 90–180°)
Incision	Intraoral mucosal
Special instrumentation	Mouth gag (McIvor)
Unique considerations	Use of armored ETT prevents compression of tube by mouth gag. Tube should be secured to lower lip in midline.
Antibiotics	Amoxicillin po
Surgical time	30–60 min
Closing considerations	If patient has OSA, a heightened sensitivity to narcotics and sedatives may make emergence more difficult. Avoid hypercapnia on emergence to prevent vasodilation and resultant bleeding. Awake extubation will provide maximum airway protection.
EBL	25–200 mL. Monitor suction bottle contents and irrigation as an indication of blood loss.
Postop care	Lateral position; head down; gentle suctioning
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Bleeding: 4% Infection: 4% Delayed bleeding: 3.2% Aspiration: Rare Tooth damage: Rare
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2+ yr
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	50 per 10,000 children in the United States
Etiology	Chronic infection; OSA (most common indication); peritonsillar abscess; snoring; cancer
Associated conditions	Nonspecific

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Most patients are young and otherwise healthy; however, a subset of both pediatric and adult patients may present with Sx of OSA or URI. For many children, this is their first anesthetic; therefore, it is imperative to ✓ family Hx for anesthetic problems. Most adult and pediatric patients are discharged from the hospital on the day of surgery.

Airway	In patients with a Hx of snoring or OSA, the probability of difficult mask ventilation and/or intubation may be high, 2° airway characteristics peculiar to these patients (see Introduction, p. 178, and Anesthetic Considerations for Reconstructive Surgery for Sleep-Disordered Breathing, p. 263). In children with short-stature syndrome, including achondroplastic dwarfism and selected cases of Down syndrome, atlantoaxial subluxation and stenosis of the spinal canal may be present, and neck extension in these patients should be avoided.
Respiratory	In patients presenting with Sx of acute URI (purulent sputum or nasal secretions, fever, etc.), the general recommendation is to postpone any elective procedure until symptoms have abated, usually within 7–14 d. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Dental	The presence of chipped, loose, or broken teeth should be documented preop and the patient (or parents, if appropriate) should be informed that there is a possibility of further tooth damage/dislodgement by the mouth gag applied by the surgeon.
Cardiovascular	Rarely, chronic airway obstruction (e.g., OSA) with hypoxemia may → pulmonary HTN and right heart failure. Patients with Down syndrome may have concomitant CHD. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	✓ for recent aspirin use and Hx of excessive bleeding following minor trauma or tooth extraction.
Laboratory	CBC; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedative premedication is routine (see p. B-1), but should be avoided in OSA patients and patients with Sx of upper airway obstruction. Some surgeons request preop administration of an antisialagogue to achieve a dry surgical field.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Balanced GETA is most commonly used in adults. (For pediatric anesthetic considerations, see p. 964.) Adequate muscle relaxation is an essential surgical requirement: it facilitates surgical exposure and prevents patient from swallowing. Continuous control and protection of the airway is another major objective, along with smooth emergence from anesthesia and prevention of early postop laryngospasm. Specific airway considerations include the possibility of difficult mask ventilation and/or difficult intubation 2° large tonsils and ↓ pharyngeal space, as well as the possibility of intraop obstruction of the ETT with the mouth gag placed by the surgeon.

Induction	An **intravenous induction** with propofol (2 mg/kg) and fentanyl (2–3 mcg/kg) is suitable for the majority of patients. If difficulty with mask ventilation is encountered, an oral airway is preferred to a nasal airway, 2° the possibility of trauma to the hypertrophied adenoid tissue and the resultant brisk bleeding. Patients with peritonsillar abscess may

Induction (cont'd)	have trismus, which usually resolves after induction of anesthesia and administration of a muscle relaxant. Great care should be exercised with introduction and manipulation of laryngoscope blade to avoid bleeding 2° inadvertent trauma to the enlarged tonsils, and to prevent soiling of the airway in patients with a peritonsillar abscess. The lightwand technique of tracheal intubation should be used with caution or avoided in these patients. The use of a small (6.0 mm ID) reinforced ETT is preferred over an oral RAE ETT because of better resistance to kinking/obstruction by the mouth gag. The use of a FLMA can safely protect the airway during adenotonsillectomy and reduce the incidence of postextubation complications in adults and children. Its use for this procedure, however, has not become popular in the United States.
Maintenance	Opening of a mouth gag and the tonsillectomy itself constitute powerful noxious stimuli; therefore, an adequate depth of anesthesia must be maintained. It is essential to verify the ETT position before and after Boyle-Davis or McIvor mouth gag application (e.g., chest movement, bilateral and equal breath sounds, and nomal PIP) since the ETT may be obstructed, dislodged, kinked, or inadvertently advanced into a mainstem bronchus, or the patient's trachea can be prematurely extubated when the mouth gag is repositioned/removed. Moderate ↓BP is desirable but not obligatory; and judicious use of vasoactive drugs (see Introduction, p. 178) is preferred to deep levels of anesthesia 2° short duration of the procedure. Low-dose remifentanil infusion (see Introduction, p. 178) as part of either balanced or TIVA technique will provide superior hemodynamic stability and facilitate smooth emergence from anesthesia. For a balanced inhalational technique, desflurane and sevoflurane are the preferred agents for these short surgical procedures. Isoflurane may be favored in pediatric patients 2° ↓ agitation on emergence. The mouth gag may be repositioned several times during the procedure and is removed only at the end of the case. Vigorous patient movement while the mouth gag is hooked on the Mayo stand may cause C-spine injury; thus, neuromuscular blockade should usually be maintained until the end of the surgery. Prevention of PONV is of major importance. If a throat pack is not used by the surgeon, the patient's stomach should be suctioned at the end of the case, and further gastric emptying may be facilitated by administration of metoclopromide (1–2 mg/kg up to 20 mg iv). Administration of 5-HT_3 blockers (e.g., ondansetron 0.1 mg/kg up to 4 mg iv), with or without steroids (e.g., dexamethasone 4–10 mg iv), will usually provide adequate antiemetic prophylaxis.
Emergence	Removal of a throat pack (if used by the surgeon) should be verified before extubation. Care must be exercised while suctioning the oropharynx to avoid bleeding. The use of the rubber-tipped vs. Yankauer tip suction catheter may be preferred. Extubation should be smooth and performed after the patient is able to follow commands because this usually signifies return of protective airway reflexes. If extubation is to be performed at deeper levels of anesthesia (e.g., in small children), the patient should be placed in the lateral decubitus, head-down position ("tonsillar position") to protect the airway from soiling 2° postop bleeding or aspiration of gastric contents. The patient should remain in this position until fully awake. This method of extubation is time and labor consuming, requires adequate depth of anesthesia to prevent postextubation laryngospasm, and does not prevent postextubation upper airway obstruction. Careful attention is required to protect patient's pressure points and to prevent the patient from rolling supine. Furthermore, with the head-down position, venous pressure in the surgical wound is increased with the possibility of provoking postop bleeding. This method of extubation cannot be advocated for routine use in adults.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 (adult) 20 ga × 1 (child) NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h (adult) Blood loss is typically minimal. Adequate hydration should continue in the immediate postop period.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)

Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	See Anesthetic Considerations for Panendoscopy, p. 184.
Complications	ETT obstruction dislodgement Bleeding	ETTs of different sizes should be readily available. Blood loss sometimes may be difficult to assess 2° drainage into stomach, especially if a throat pack is not used. Careful observation of suction canisters and close communication with the surgeon are essential.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Retention of throat pack	Manifested by immediate symptoms of upper airway obstruction. Under direct laryngoscopy, remove pack with Magill forceps.
	Laryngospasm	A relatively common complication, particularly in the pediatric population. Rx: 100% O_2 via mask ventilation with jaw thrust and CPAP. Rapid-sequence induction (RSI) and direct laryngoscopy/intubation for persistent laryngospasm.
	Bleeding tonsil	Bleeding usually occurs at a slow pace; large volumes of blood may be swallowed, and hypovolemia may occur before any bleeding is detected. Frequent swallowing should alert to the possibility of ongoing hemorrhage. ET intubation (RSI) may prove difficult due to poor visualization secondary to bleeding (effective suction must always be available) and upper airway edema. (See Pediatric section on Anesthesia for Tonsillectomy, p. 964.)
	Postobstructive (negative pressure) pulmonary edema (POPE)	POPE is a rare complication; however, it may occur in patients with preexisting symptoms of severe upper airway obstruction. Although most cases resolve spontaneously, some patients may require reintubation and postop ventilatory support.
Pain management	See p. C-1	Adult tonsillectomy is a painful procedure; however, most patients are discharged home unless unable to sustain po intake. Fentanyl is the preferred PACU drug, but the addition of morphine or Dilaudid may be necessary in some patients.
Tests	Hct	If blood loss is suspected

Suggested Readings

1. Acevedo JL, Shah RK, Brietzke SE: Systematic review of complications of tonsillotomy versus tonsillectomy. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2012; 146(6):871–9.
2. Brimacombe JR, Keller C, Gunkel AR, et al: The influence of the tonsilar gag on efficacy of seal, anatomic position, airway patency, and airway protection with the flexible laryngeal mask airway: a randomized, cross-over study on fresh adult cadavers. *Anesth Analg* 1999; 89:181–6.
3. Davis L, Cook-Sather SD, Schreiner MS: Lighted stylet tracheal intubation: a review. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 90:745–56.
4. Dougherty TB: The difficult airway in conventional head and neck surgery. In: Benumof JL, ed. *Airway Management: Principles and Practice*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996, 686–97.
5. Ebert TJ, Robinson BJ, Uhrich TD, et al: Recovery from sevoflurane anesthesia. A comparison to isoflurane and propofol anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 1998; 89:1524–31.
6. Sunkhani R, Pappas AL, Lurie J, et al: Ondansetron and dolasetron provide equivalent postoperative vomiting control after ambulatory tonsillectomy in dexamethasone-pretreated children. *Anesth Analg* 2002; 95:1230–5.
7. Webster AC, Morley-Forster PK, Dain S, et al: Anaesthesia for adenotonsillectomy: a comparison between tracheal intubation and the armored laryngeal mask airway. *Can J Anesth* 1993; 40:1171–7.

GLOSSECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Glossectomy,** either **partial** or **total,** is performed for neoplastic lesions of the tongue. During this procedure, nasal intubation is helpful, but not mandatory. Complete muscle relaxation is necessary. Additionally, a drying agent, such as scopolamine or glycopyrrolate, helps reduce oral secretions and facilitates surgery. A side-biting or Dingman mouth gag is used to gain adequate surgical exposure. The lesion is resected with electrocautery and usually can be closed primarily. Depending on the extent of resection, and location on the tongue, a **tracheostomy** may be indicated; or oral intubation alone may suffice for a period of 24–48 h. If neither is done, a short course of steroids helps reduce the lingual edema. A NG tube is placed for postop feeding. A **total glossectomy** is performed in similar fashion, but frequently is combined with a **laryngectomy** because of ensuing aspiration.

Variant procedure or approaches: Glossectomy can be done with a **neck dissection** or **mandibulectomy** and (on occasion) also can be combined with a **total laryngectomy.**

Usual preop diagnosis: Neoplastic disease of the tongue or adjacent structures (e.g., alveolus, floor of mouth) with involvement of the tongue.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Partial	Total
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Intraoral	⇐ + suprahyoid approach/neck approach
Special instrumentation	Dingman mouth gag	⇐
Unique considerations	Hypotensive anesthesia Nasal intubation Postop tracheostomy Steroids, if tracheostomy not performed.	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ (required)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g, metronidazole 500 mg	⇐
Surgical time	30 min–1 h	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Usually primary closure. May keep patient intubated 24–48 h if minimal tongue edema expected.	Flap repair required; laryngeal suspension usually required. Tracheostomy mandatory postop.
EBL	50–100 mL	200–400 mL
Postop care	Intubated 24–48 h	Tracheostomy care
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding Infection Aspiration	Aspiration Bleeding Infection
Pain score	1–2	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Adults
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	Uncommon

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Neoplasia
Associated conditions	Nonspecific

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

For preop considerations, see Preoperative Considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220

Airway	Thorough airway assessment is mandatory. Nasal intubation may or may not be required, depending on location of tumor (side vs. base of tongue [BOT]) and surgeon's preference (inquire preop).
Premedication	Standard. (see p. B-1) Preop administration of antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv) may improve operating conditions—check with the surgeon.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Complete muscle relaxation is an essential surgical requirement. For partial glossectomy, smooth extubation is desirable but not mandatory unless skin graft was used for closure (graft hematomas are the primary cause of skin graft failure). Intraop infiltration with a local anesthetic effectively supplements intraop and postop analgesia.

Induction	With a normal airway and submucosal location of tumor on the side of the tongue, standard induction (p. B-2) is appropriate. With mobile, fungating BOT tumors inhalational induction with subsequent DL or video laryngoscopy (VL) may be a safer approach to avoid the risk of upper airway obstruction. Similar to the considerations for laryngectomy (see Anesthetic Considerations for Laryngectomy, p. 206), direct visualization of the passage of the ETT through the VC (DL or VL) is essential, to reduce the risk of tumor fragmentation with seeding of the lower airway, or bleeding. Among the video laryngoscopes, the Pentax Airway Scope™ (AWS) is beneficial for use in BOT pathology, as the blade lodges under the epiglottis. Large immobile tumors may make ET intubation by conventional means extremely difficult or impossible. Awake nasal FOI may be the technique of choice in these cases. Transoral robotic surgery (TORS) is gaining popularity for many BOT operations, as well as for such procedures as supraglottic laryngectomy. Orotracheal intubation with a small size (6.0 mm ID) wire-reinforced ETT is ususallly sufficient, but nasotracheal intubation may be required by the surgeon. Instrumentation around the patient's face makes immediate access to the airway impossible, and the ETT must be well secured; suturing ETT in place has been advocated. Adequate muscle relaxation and absence of patient's swallowing must be meticulously observed. Administration of glycopyrrolate (0.1–0.4 mg iv) may improve the surgical field.
Maintenance	During a partial glossectomy, surgical closure is quick, and short-acting inhalational agents (desflurane, sevoflurane) may be favored; TIVA may also be employed. ↓ BP (see Introduction, p. 178), although desirable, is not mandatory for partial glossectomy. If tracheostomy is performed as part of the planned procedure, the usual considerations apply (see Anesthetic Considerations for Laryngectomy, p. 206, and Tracheostomy, p. 191).
Emergence	With prolonged procedures, especially involving BOT tumors, it is prudent to assess the degree of upper airway edema prior to extubation (it may be impossible to reintubate the patient if postextubation upper airway obstruction occurs). Rapid recovery with full return of protective airway reflexes is essential in patients after partial glossectomy.
Complications	Vagal reflexes: ↓ HR, ↓ BP, mediated by surgical manipulation at the base of the tongue — Rare. Rx: notify surgeon; deepen anesthetic; iv atropine (0.4 mg).

For further discussion, see Intraoperative Considerations for Neck Dissection, p. 220.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Postop airway obstruction	May occur 2° ↑ airway edema; emergent tracheostomy may be required. Prophylactic intraop steroids are beneficial.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Parenteral opiates (p. C-3)	

For further discussion, see Neck Dissection, p. 218.

Suggested Readings

1. Doughrty TB, Nguyen DT: Anesthetic management of the patient scheduled for head and neck cancer surgery. *J Clin Anesth* 1994; 6:74–82.
2. Feldman MA, Patel A: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2010, 2357–88.

MAXILLECTOMY AND ORBIT EXENTERATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Transfacial approaches to the paranasal sinuses may also include a maxillectomy or orbital exenteration or both. In an **orbital exenteration** the contents of the orbit are removed, including the eyeball and its attached extraocular muscles posterior toward the conus. This can be done via an incision that is made around the upper and lower eyelashes, occasionally with an extension that includes a limited incision for an external ethmoidectomy; no lateral rhinotomy incision is needed. If the eyelid skin is not involved by tumor it is preserved other than the eyelashes and lid margins. Bradycardia may occur with dissection near the optic nerve.

A **maxillectomy** may be done with the orbit exenteration. If the palate is to be preserved, the incision is the same because access to the superior maxilla is provided by the exenteration. If the orbit is to be preserved, but the hemipalate is to be resected, then the resection can often be done fully through intraoral incisions. For example, if the anterior palate is to be resected, the approach is essentially the same as the Caldwell-Luc. If the anterior maxilla is to be preserved, but the posterior maxillary alveolar ridge is to be resected (as for a tumor involving the alveolar ridge and extending into the maxillary sinus), then the resection of the alveolar ridge usually provides adequate access for the complete resection. If necessary, either a transfacial incision, or endoscopic equipment may be used to supplement the access. Rarely is a full Weber-Ferguson incision (that involves an ethmoidectomy incision, lateral rhinotomy incison, and lip splitting incision) necessary. Osteotomies are generally made with power equipment, though osteotomes and rongeurs may at times be adequate.

Reconstruction of palate defects are generally done with an obdurator with a split thickness skin graft placed intraop on exposed soft tissue. There are a number of options to reconstruct orbit defects depending on whether skin was also resected. These options include the pericranial-galeal flap discussed for anterior cranial base surgery, a free myogenous flap such as the rectus abdominus, covered with a skin graft (as the subcutaneous fat associated with using abdominal skin generally is too bulky for this site), or if there is extensive skin loss, then a radial free flap or lateral thigh free flap.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Maxillectomy	Orbital Resection
Position	Head raised 30°, back raised (reduces bleeding)	⇐
Incision	Same as external sinus approach; combinable with intraoral incisions.	Eyelash incision; if necessary add external ethmoidectomy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Maxillectomy	Orbital Resection
Special instrumentation	Paranasal sinus set; headlight	⇐
Unique considerations	Nasal packing	⇐; see reconstruction
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g + metronidazole 500 mg; or clindamycin 600 mg	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	2–4 h	1.5–3 h
EBL	100–300 mL	25–100 mL
Postop care	Same as endoscopic surgery	Reconstruction-dependent
Mortality	Rare	Very rare
Morbidity	Bleeding: 5% Transient Diplopia: 5% Infection: 5%	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	2–3 if no oral entry; 4–6 if palate	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	50–70	40–80
Male:Female	3:1	2:1
Incidence	Common	⇐
Etiology	Malignant tumors, selected benign tumors	Malignancies, rare benign proceses
Associated conditions	Tobacco, alcohol, rare others	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, these patients are older males who may have concomitant cardiopulmonary disease. Their nutritional status is not usually affected.

Airway	For patients presenting for maxillectomy, careful inspection is warranted, although it is unlikely that the disease process will → airway compromise. With large tumors, space available for laryngoscope blade manipulation may be somewhat decreased. XRT typically is done postop.
Cardiovascular	Preop evaluation should focus on the patient's suitability for controlled ↓ BP: may be contraindicated in patients with advanced cerebrovascular or cardiovascular disease. **Tests:** ECG; other tests as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Bifrontal craniotomy may be required if the disease process extends into the paranasal sinuses, dura, and anterior skull base. These procedures can be lengthy and very stimulating; the use of potent opioids (see Introduction, p. 178) is beneficial. The essential surgical requirement is ↓ bleeding into the field. Intraop hemorrhage may occasionally be brisk and substantial (in excess of 500 cc) during maxillectomy. Maintaining adequate circulating volume is crucial. Promotion of rapid awakening with full return of protective airway reflexes presents additional challenges to the anesthesiologist.

Induction	An opioid-based technique, as outlined previously (see Introduction, p. 178). Any iv induction agent can be safely used; ↓ dose in elderly and patients with significant cardiac disease. Oral tracheal intubation is performed with a small (6.0 mm ID) reinforced ETT to facilitate surgical manipulation inside patient's mouth. With large tumors, especially on the right side, care is necessary when performing DL to avoid bleeding. ETT should be secured over the chin. Placement of a small-diameter esophageal temperature probe will not interfere with the surgical field.	
Maintenance	Controlled hypotension is often requested. A combination of opioid (e.g., remifentanil) or sufentanil infusion with a potent, quickly titratable inhalational agent (e.g., desflurane), supplemented with iv β-blockers, if required, is usually sufficient. After the specimen has been removed, surgical stimulation decreases, and the inhalational anesthetic should be significantly reduced to promote rapid awakening.	
Emergence	The patients are routinely extubated, even after extended procedures. The stomach should be suctioned at the end of the case (throat pack is removed only by the surgeon to facilitate placement of a dental prosthesis). Stomach emptying should be facilitated by administration of iv metoclopromide (10–20 mg). Nasal passages may be packed → obligate mouth breathing; oropharynx must be suctioned thoroughly and carefully. No dressing is applied postop. Washing blood from the patient's face is frequently accompanied by vigorous movement of the patient's head and ETT. If a sufficient dose of opioids has been used, the patient will tolerate this well without coughing/gagging/straining, while breathing spontaneously. Extubation must be smooth, with full return of protective airway reflexes. Hemoptysis may occur after extubation, and the patient's mouth should be promptly covered with an O_2 mask, to avoid contamination.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16 ga × 1 LR @ 5–7 cc/kg/h	Blood loss minimal-to-severe. It can be sudden and substantial.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line	A-line monitoring is warranted for anterior cranial base surgery or in patients with significant cardiovascular disease.
Positioning	Head elevated 20–30° Table may be turned 90–180°. ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	VAE Dysrhythmias Hypotension ↓↓ HR Brain edema	A risk of air embolism, with surgery on the paranasal sinuses, should be kept in mind. Dysrhythmias may occur 2° significant surgical stimulation and breakthrough adrenergic responses. ↓ BP may be sudden 2° brisk blood loss. Trigeminocardiac reflex may occur during intraoperative manipulation of the trigeminal nerve. Careful fluid management, not to promote/exacerbate brain edema associated with the bifrontal craniotomy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Occult postop bleeding	Postop bleeding may cause the patient to swallow large quantities of blood, which represents an aspiration risk and may manifest as ↓ BP.
	Pneumocephalus	Persistent pneumocephalus (if the paranasal sinuses were opened) with symptoms of increased ICP.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Parenteral opioids (p. C-1)	Pain is moderate

Suggested Readings

1. Dougherty TB, Nguyen DT: Anesthetic management of the patient scheduled for head and neck cancer surgery. *J Clin Anesth* 1994; 6:74–82.
2. Feldman MA, Patel A: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2010, 2357–88.

COMPOSITE RESECTION WITH MARGINAL OR SEGMENTAL MANDIBULECTOMY (AND NECK DISSECTION)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A composite resection means that part of the mandibular alveolar ridge is resected, often along with the floor of mouth and a part of the tongue, generally for advanced squamous cell carcinoma, though occasionally for osteoradionecrosis following complications of prior irradiation or for other malignancies such as osteosarcoma. In a **marginal mandibulectomy,** bone inferior to the plane of the inferior alveolar nerve (which runs just below the teeth and provides dental innervation and cutaneous sensation to the lower lip and chin) is preserved. In a **segmental mandibulectomy,** a through-and-through segment of bone is removed such that there is a bone gap. A marginal mandibulectomy may at times be reconstructed with intraoral advancement flaps in an edentulous patient, or a pectoralis major myocutaneous flap or radial free flap may be indicated. A segmental resection requires either bone replacement, such as fibula free flap, or a titanium bridging bar beneath a pectoralis major myocutaneous flap. A composite resection generally requires a tracheostomy although an intraoral marginal mandibulectomy repaired locally may allow a 2–3 d intubation, thereby avoiding tracheostomy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Composite Resection (often with MRND)	. . . and Free Flap
Position	Supine, head extended and turned to opposite side	⇐ + Preparation of 2nd sterile site, such as arm or leg; two surgical teams
Incision	Intraoral and neck	⇐ and donor site
Special Instrumentation	Depends on technique used; headlights, suction or suction cautery, mouth gag	Surgeon-specific, but point cautery, mouth gag, and plastic bilateral cheek retractor common
Unique Considerations	Armored ETT converted to, or initial, tracheostomy	Dependent on 2nd site
Antibiotics	Common is ampicillin or cefazolin 1 g [± metronidazole 500 mg]; or clindamycin 600 mg	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Composite Resection (often with MRND)	. . . and Free Flap
Surgical time	6–8 h	⇐ Add 3–6 h
EBL	200–400 mL; transfusions uncommon	⇐ ; little additional loss
Postop care	Drain management, monitor for wound breakdown	⇐ + ICU for flap surveillance
Mortality	<1%	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding: < 4% Infection ± fistula: < 10% DVT/PE: < 1% Medical: MI < 1% Pneumonia: < 3%	⇐ Flap failure requiring return to OR < 5% Donor site morbidity
Pain Score	4–8	⇐

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–70, occasionally older and younger	⇐
Male:Female	3:1	⇐
Incidence	Common	⇐
Etiology	SCC and other malignancy	⇐
Associated conditions	Smoking and alcohol; COPD, atherosclerostic heart disease	⇐

NECK DISSECTION

Description: The goal of a neck dissection is a lymphadenectomy either to remove known cervical metastases (an N_+ neck) or as a staging procedure in a patient apparently without clinically or radiologically involved nodes (an N_0 neck) but at significant risk nevertheless. The most common indication by far is in the management of squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) of the head and neck. For the purpose of discussing a neck dissection, the neck can be divided into five levels. Level 1 is the tissue that is inferior to the mandible, anterior to the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, and superior to the hyoid bone, including the submental triangle between the left and right anterior belly of the digastric muscles. The most prominent structure in level 1 is the submandibular gland. Level 2 through 4 includes the tissue beneath and anterior to the sterncleidomastoid muscle (SCM): level 2 is superior to the hyoid bone, level 3 between the hyoid and cricoid bone, and level 4 is inferior to the cricoid. Level 5 contains the tissue between the posterior edge of the SCM and the anterior edge of the trapezius muscle.

There are several different kinds of neck dissection, depending on which levels are removed:

(a) **Radical neck dissection (RND)** or **modified radical neck dissection** (**MRND**): this involves the removal of levels 1–5. Except in markedly advanced disease, seldom is a RND (which removes the internal jugular vein, SCM, and accessory (XI) nerve) necessary. A MRND preserves one or more of those three structures, generally at least the XI nerve. The term *functional* neck dissection is sometimes used to indicate preservation of all three of these three structures. A MRND (or RND) is generally done when there is N_+ disease. Similar surgery may also be necessary to remove extensive tumors other than SCC, such as a sarcoma or paraganglioma. An extended neck dissection involves removal of additional tissue, such as muscles deep to the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia. MRND is a common additional procedure done for an N_+ neck at the time of removal of a primary SCC of the head and neck.

(b) **Selective neck dissection** (SND) removes less than all five levels, generally for N_0 disease when adjacent surgery is planned or in an effort to ascertain there is no histologically demonstrable disease, thereby avoiding postop irradiation to the primary site and neck. The two most common types of SND are

i. **Supraomohyoid neck dissection (SOHND)**: This removes levels 1–3, generally in a patient with an oral cavity SCC with a depth of > 3.5- to 5-mm at risk for nodal involvement despite a clinically N_0 neck.

ii. **Lateral neck dissection:** Removes levels 2–4, generally in N_0 patient with glottic or supraglottic carcinoma in whom, again, it is hoped that postop XRT may be avoided.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	MRND (or RND)	SOHND
Position	Supine, head extended and turned to opposite side; table 90° or 180°.	⇐
Incision	Common incisions include a reverse hockey (submandibular RSTL to mastoid tip then extended inferiorly); utility/hockey; superior and inferior neck RSTL (McFee).	~7 cm RSTL (resting skin tension line) incision 3 cm inferior to the mandible, beginning anterior to SCM extending toward the mentum.
Special instrumentation	Major head & neck set; headlights	⇐
Unique considerations	Avoid paralysis until after marginal mandibular nerve and XI identified. If bilateral, larnygeal edema may occur; dissection near carotid body and vagus may produce transient bradycardia.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g [and metronidazole 500 mg if UADT entry planned]; or clindamycin 600 mg	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h	1.5 h
EBL	50–250 mL; transfusions rarely indicated	⇐
Postop care	Drain management	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Unanticipated neuropathy (e.g., XII, X, VII marginal branch, recurrent laryngeal nerve and phrenic nerve) < 1%; Chyle leak < 2% Hematoma < 4% Infection < 5% DVT/PE ~1% XI weakness expected Shoulder pain ~20%	⇐
Pain Score	4–8	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–80, occasionally older and younger	⇐
Male:Female	3:1	⇐
Incidence	Common	⇐
Etiology	1° site SCC; Smoking and alcohol	⇐
Associated conditions	COPD, atherosclerostic heart disease	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Many of these patients are older males with a long Hx of heavy smoking and ETOH use and have a high incidence of associated cardiopulmonary diseases. Nutritional status of the patients may be poor and should be optimized before surgery. Neck dissections are lengthy, but are rarely associated with significant blood loss, except in patients who have undergone radiation therapy.

Airway	Airway management may be difficult 2° limited head and neck mobility, ↓ mouth opening, distorted airway, ↓ pharyngeal space and fixation of tissues 2° tumor expansion, radiation fibrosis or previous surgeries. Backup plans for airway management are essential, and a review of preop findings on indirect laryngoscopy and/or CT scan with the surgeon may be helpful in planning a strategy for intubation. If a difficult intubation is foreseen, awake FOI may be the technique of choice (see Anesthetic Considerations for Laryngectomy, p. 206). Emergent tracheostomy may technically be very difficult 2° advanced disease, neck edema, previous surgeries and distorted anatomy.
Respiratory	High incidence of chronic bronchitis and COPD. **Tests:** CXR; preop ABG in patients with advanced COPD, CO_2 retention and O_2-dependence. Flow-volume loops may be helpful in patients with symptoms of partial airway obstruction.
Cardiovascular	Careful assessment of cardiac risk factors and functional status. Documenting asymptomatic neck bruits or existing carotid artery stenosis, as well as any Sx of compromised cerebral circulation is important (see Emergence, below). HTN must be controlled preop especially in patients presenting for radical neck dissection and flap reconstruction. Uncontrolled HTN in these patients carries additional risk of exaggerated hemodynamic responses postop 2° surgical denervation of the carotid sinus (discussed below). **Tests:** ECG. Consider carotid ultrasound, cardiac stress testing and imaging studies if indicated from H&P.
Neurologic	See Preoperative Considerations for Laryngoscopy/Bronchoscopy/Esophagoscopy, p. 184. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	In cases of malignancy or chronic disease, anemia or coagulopathies may be present. **Tests:** CBC, coagulation studies
Laboratory	LFTs, electrolytes, albumin, BUN and creatinine; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1). Avoid premedication in patients with symptoms of partial airway obstruction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The anesthetic considerations for **composite resection and neck dissection** are similar. The use of deep and superficial cervical plexus blocks, as well as cervical epidural anesthesia, either alone or in combination with light GETA, has been described in the literature, but used rarely. GETA is virtually universally employed. The specific surgical requirements for the anesthetic technique are outlined above (see Introduction, p. 178). Straining or coughing/gagging on the ETT during emergence from anesthesia is particularly undesirable in neck surgery 2° easily provoked bleeding and swelling at the surgical site. Smooth emergence from anesthesia is essential. Use of a FLMA in major cancer neck surgery is dubious.

Induction	Choice of induction will depend on the degree of the airway compromise and anatomical location of any obstructing lesion. The airway may need to be secured asleep, with the patient breathing spontaneously, awake (FOI), or a tracheostomy may need to be

Induction (cont'd)	performed preinduction. In patients with uncompromised airways, potent opioids (see Introduction, p. 178) can be safely used for induction. The induction dose of a hypnotic agent frequently must be reduced because of the patients' age, preexisting medical conditions, and hypoalbuminemia.	
Maintenance	Maintaining moderate ↓ BP (see Introduction, p. 178) and aggressive treatment of ↑ BP are necessary. In patients with flap reconstruction, ↑ BP may overcome vasospasm, dislodging a hemostatic blood clot or poorly tied ligature → formation of a flap hematoma. Muscle relaxation is usually avoided to facilitate identification of nerves. All inspired gases should be humidified to minimize ↓ T° and propensity for mucous plugging in this patient population. However, the use of low gas flows is preferred to use of an in-circuit humidifier. Venous air embolism (VAE) during radical neck surgery occurs very rarely; maintaining adequate intravascular volume and PPV will further ↓ the incidence of this complication. If a large collection of air bubbles is observed by the surgeon in the internal jugular vein, the anesthesiologist should be notified immediately; these bubbles can be safely aspirated with a fine needle by the surgeon. Vagal reflexes from the carotid sinus may cause ↓ HR and ↓ BP. Transient prolongation of the QT interval during right radical neck dissection has been described and may potentially progress to ventricular arrhythmias and even cardiac arrest. Tracheostomy can be performed as part of the radical neck dissection with implications for anesthesia management (see Anesthetic Considerations for Tracheostomy, p. 191).	
Emergence	If airway compromise is present preop, but tracheostomy was **not** performed, consider staged extubation over an airway exchange catheter to facilitate possible reintubation. The majority of patients with microvascular flap reconstruction will have a tracheostomy placed and could be awakened or continued on overnight ventilatory support in the ICU. Awakening the patient in the OR may help to exclude possible intraop embolic stroke before their transfer to the PACU or ICU. Administration of iv labetalol before awakening may prevent rebound hypertension. Up to 10% of patients may develop a sustained hypertensive response postop, probably 2° denervation of the carotid sinus; Rx aggressively 2° ↑ risk of stroke.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16(18) ga x 1 NS/LR @ 5–7mL/kg/h Fluid warmer ± humidifier	Blood loss is typically gradual. Sudden blood loss resulting from injury to the internal jugular vein or carotid artery can be surgically controlled.
Control of blood loss	Surgical hemostasis Deliberate ↓ BP	Continue aggressive Rx of ↑ BP in the PACU.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line ± CVP line Foley catheter	A line may be indicated for patients with preexisting severe cardiac and pulmonary disease, chronic renal insufficiency (CRI), symptoms of cerebrovascular insufficiency, location of tumor near the carotid artery, or in patients presenting for lengthy procedures, including microvascular flap reconstruction. CVP monitoring may be warranted in severely malnourished patients, patients with severe COPD, patients with CRI and patients presenting for microvascular flap reconstruction.
Positioning	Usually supine, head elevated 30° Table turned 180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Vagal reflexes: ↓ HR and ↓ BP	2° carotid sinus stimulation; Rx: stop surgery; lidocaine infiltration of the carotid sinus by the surgeon; iv atropine.

Complications (cont'd)	↑ QT interval (with right radical neck dissection) Dysrhythmias	Probably caused by interruption of cervical sympathetic outflow to heart Due to either the carotid sinus stimulation or the ↑ QT interval
VAE	↓ $ETCO_2$ ↑ ETN_2 ↓ BP ↑ ST segment "Mill wheel" murmur Dysrhythmias	With large veins open in the neck, VAE is possible and may account for unexplained ↓ BP and/or dysrhythmia. Rx: Notify surgeon (compress open neck veins); flood field with NS; left lateral decubitus/head-down position; aspirate CVP; FiO_2 = 1.0; circulatory support (fluid, pressors, as required).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	↑ BP and ↑ HR	2° carotid sinus denervation; Rx: aggressive pharmacological intervention.
	Nerve injury Diaphragmatic paralysis	Facial nerve injury → facial droop. Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury can result in VC dysfunction. Phrenic nerve injury → respiratory problems 2° diaphragmatic paralysis.
	Pneumothorax	Pneumothorax may occur with low neck dissection. Dx and Rx: See Postop Complications after Laryngoscopy/Bronchoscopy/Esophagoscopy, p. 189
	Agitation	Agitation → ↑$PaCO_2$, ↓PaO_2, ↑HR. Rx: ✓ restrictive neck dressings; evacuate any hematoma; reestablish airway with ETT; FiO_2=1.0; ventilatory support, if required.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Parenteral opiates (p. C-3)	
Tests	CXR	For position of tracheostomy tube, evidence of pneumothorax and CVP line placement
	ECG	For diagnosis of rhythm disturbances

Suggested Readings

1. Bonner S, Taylor M: Airway obstruction in head and neck surgery. *Anaesthesia* 2000; 55:290–1.
2. Brown BR: Anaesthesia for ear, nose, throat and maxillofacial procedures. In: Prys-Roberts C, Brown BR, eds. *International Practice of Anaesthesia*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford: 1996, 2–9.
3. Cavallone LF, Vannucci A: American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. Review article: extubation of the difficult airway and extubation failure. *Anesth Analg* 2013; 116(2):368–83.
4. Dougherty TB, Nguyen DT: Anesthetic management of the patient scheduled for head and neck cancer surgery. *J Clin Anesth* 1994; 6:74–82.
5. Mason RA, Fielder CP: The obstructed airway in head and neck surgery. *Anaesthesia* 1999; 54:625–8.
6. McGuirt WF, May JS: Postoperative hypertension associated with radical neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1987; 113:1098–110.
7. Prasad KC, Shanmugam VU: Major neck surgeries under regional anesthesia. *Am J Otol* 1998; 19:163–9.
8. Rice JH, Gonzalez RM: Large visible gas bubbles in the internal jugular vein: a common occurrence during supine radical neck surgery? *J Clin Anesth* 1992; 4:21–4.
9. Rice M, Turner M, Carapiet D: The use of the laryngeal mask airway in maxillofacial surgery. *Anaesthesia* 2002; 57:826.
10. Wittich DJ, Berny JJ, Davis RK: Cervical epidural anesthesia for head and neck surgery. *Laryngoscope* 1984; 94:615–9.

LYMPH NODE BIOPSY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: An open cervical node biopsy is indicated when a fine needle aspiration biopsy (FNA) has proven inadequate or is felt likely to be inadequate (as in determining a type of lymphoma). This can be done under local anesthesia, with or without monitoring, or under general anesthesia. A node is chosen based on its likelihood to answer the clinical question and minimization of operative risk to adjacent structures, especially, for example, the accesory nerve that runs in level 5 (posterior triangle) from about the midportion of the posterior border of the SCM toward the posterior clavicle and may be quite superficial.

Operative and anesthesia considerations are similar to that of a SOHND, except that the incision should be only a few cm, and its location is variable though still in a RSTL (resting skin tension line), pain should be low, a small drain or no drain is used, and the patient should be able to go home the day of surgery. Often the surgeon will request a frozen section to be sure there is diagnostic tissue available.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, head extended and turned to opposite side
Incision	Small (often requiring only local anesthesia)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical Time	10 min
EBL	Minimal
Postop Care	Drain management
Mortality	Very rare
Morbidity	Rare injury to adjacent structures (e.g., accessory nerve)
Pain Score	1–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Wide range
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	In adults: 80% benign: pleomorphic adenoma (benign mixed tumor) 75% of these. 20% malignant: low grade mucoepidermoid carcinoma, adenoid cystic carcinoma, other. Chronic sialadenitis/stone rare In children: a greater % malignancy; 60% benign, 35% malignant. Chronic sialadenitis/stone <5%
Associated conditions	None

Suggested Reading

1. Mandel JE: Laryngeal mask airways in ear, nose, and throat procedures. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2010; 28(3):469–83.

PAROTIDECTOMY: SUPERFICIAL, TOTAL, OR RADICAL

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **superficial parotidectomy** (more accurately a lateral or a **supraneural parotidectomy**) removes tissue of the parotid lateral to the facial nerve, dissecting and protecting the facial nerve (Fig. 3-8). It usually is performed for a tumor, but occasionally is performed for infectious disorders or to enable the surgeon to approach tumors of the deep lobe. A **total parotidectomy** is performed for either infectious disorders or for parotid tumors that arise in or extend medial to the facial nerve. The integrity of the facial nerve is preserved during total parotidectomy, as long as it is not involved with malignancy. It may be combined with a neck dissection or with a modified temporal bone resection when the tumor extends into the ear canal or middle ear or invades the facial nerve at the base of the skull.

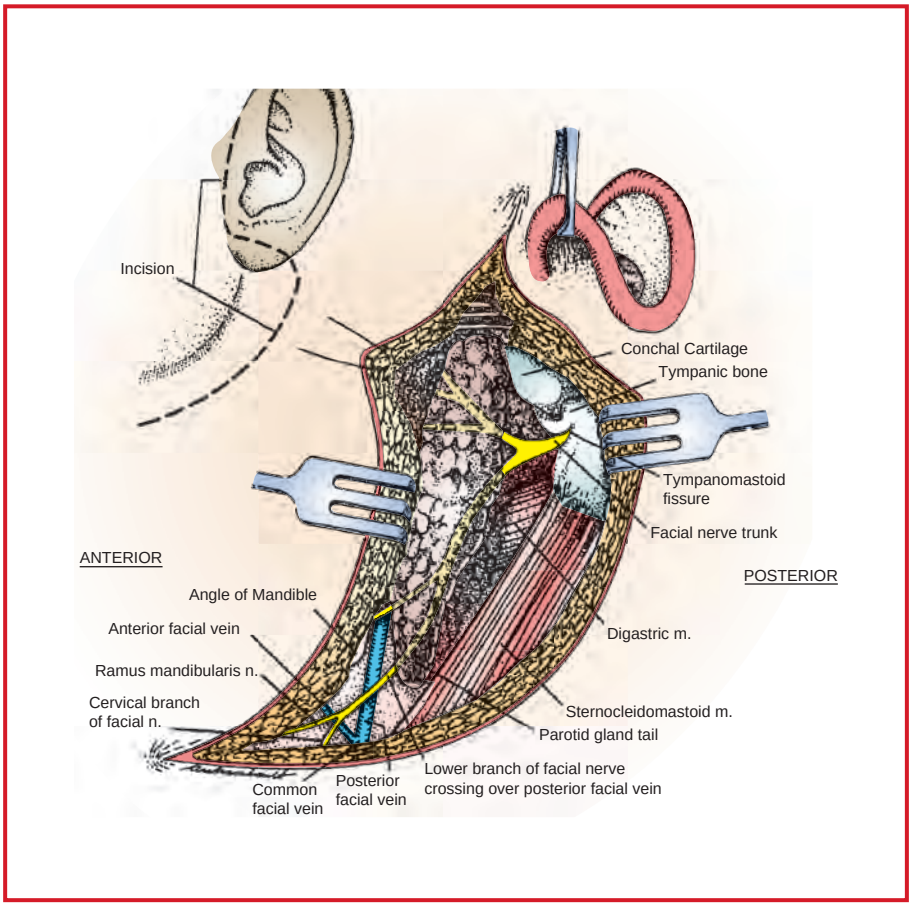


Figure 3-8. Inferior approach to facial nerve. The lower branch of the facial nerve is found immediately external to the posterior facial vein as it exits the lower pole of the parotid gland. The lower branch may divide into the ramus mandibularis and cervical branches before or after crossing the posterior facial vein. The lower branch of the facial nerve is dissected proximally to the facial-nerve trunk. The posterior facial vein should not be confused with the external jugular vein, as the facial vein runs deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, whereas the external jugular vein lies superficial to this muscle. Elevation of the tail of the parotid gland greatly facilitates this dissection, which must be accomplished in a plane between the posterior facial vein and the parotid gland. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

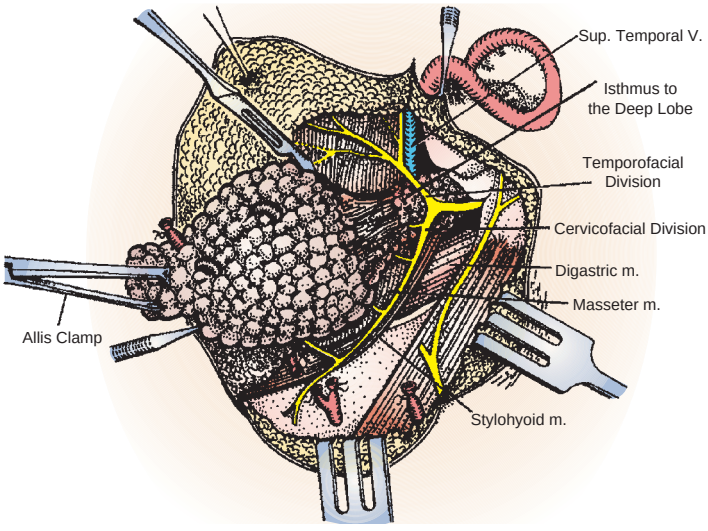


Figure 3-9. The parotid gland has been dissected from the trunk, divisions, and branches of the facial nerve. The anterior projection of the gland has been dissected free, and the parotid duct is being ligated. This dissection is conducted, for the most part, with a hemostat clamp. First, tunnels are created lateral to the branches; and the fascia between tunnels is incised as the gland is dissected forward. The facial-nerve stimulator is a useful adjunct to this dissection. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

A **radical parotidectomy** removes the total parotid gland, together with the facial nerve, (which usually is reconstructed with a facial-nerve graft). The mastoid may have to be drilled to get a healthy proximal end of the facial nerve. **Microsurgical techniques** are then used to graft the resected nerve. The donar nerve may be the greater auricular nerve or the sural nerve.

Usual preop diagnosis: Benign or malignant tumor; occasionally infectious

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Superficial/Total	Radical
Position	Supine; head turned slightly to opposite side	⇐
Incision	Preauricular, extending into neck; has many variations, including modified face-lift incision.	May require postaural extension for mastoid access.
Special instrumentation	Facial nerve stimulator, facial nerve monitor.	⇐+ drill for mastoidectomy; microscope/ microsurgical instruments and 9-0 nylon for nerve reanastomosis.
Unique considerations	Initial muscle relaxation is not indicated 2° facial nerve identification. Tape oral ETT to the opposite side of the mandible.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–4 h	4–8 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Superficial/Total	Radical
EBL	25–200 mL	500–700 mL for total parotidectomy, neck dissection, and modified temporal bone resection. Sudden, large blood losses do not occur; transfusion usually not necessary.
Mortality	Very rare	⇐
Morbidity	Dysesthesia or anesthesia of the greater auricular nerve: 100% (almost all will recover within 1 yr) Facial nerve weakness (temporary): 20–50% Frey's syndrome: < 5% will have clinically bothersome gustatory sweating. Bleeding: 4% Infection: 4% Permanent facial nerve paralysis: < 1%	Facial nerve loss: With graft, function returns slowly over 1 yr. ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	2–4	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Infants–old age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Benign mixed tumor (pleomorphic adenoma) (75%); variety of low- to high-grade malignant cancers (25%); chronic sialoadenitis (results from ductal strictures and/or stones) (rare)
Associated conditions	Nonspecific

SUBMANDIBULAR GLAND EXCISION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Removal of the submandibular gland is performed for either chronic sialoadenitis due to ductal strictures and/or stones or benign or malignant tumors of the submandibular gland. (General anatomy of the area is shown in Fig. 3-10.) The patient lies supine with a pillow under the shoulder, and head turned slightly to the opposite side. A skin crease incision is made below the mandible and skin flaps elevated. The marginal mandibular nerve is identified or may be avoided by identifying the facial vein and dissecting deep to its plane, employing the **Hayes-Martin maneuver.** Dissection is carried out within the capsule of the submandibular gland, which is then excised and removed. Frozen section usually is performed, and if necessary, further excision, including a neck dissection for high-grade malignancies, is done.

Variant procedure or approaches: Occasionally, it may be necessary to perform a **neck dissection** (radical or functional) in the case of high-grade malignancy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic sialoadenitis; stones; benign or malignant tumors

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Upper neck skin crease

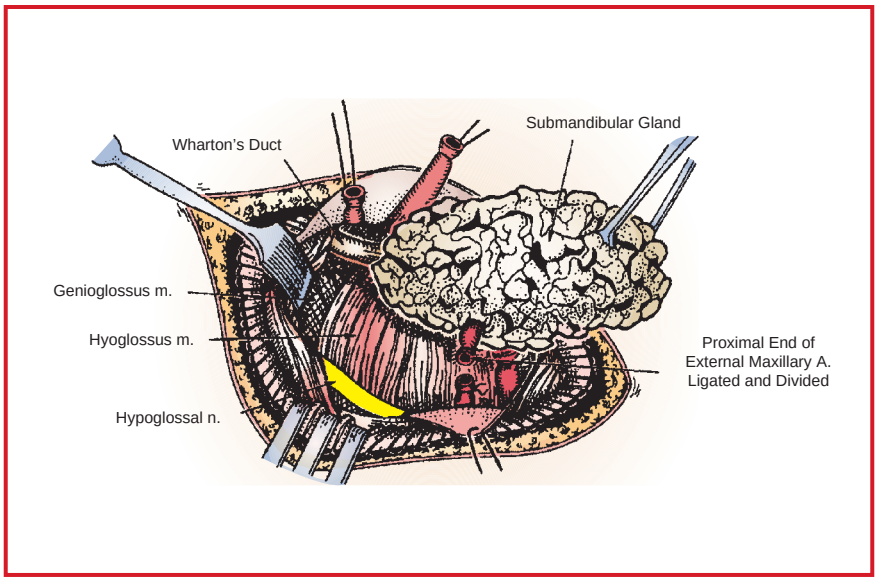


Figure 3-10. Exposure of the submandibular gland. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Special instrumentation	Occasionally, facial nerve stimulator
Unique considerations	If surgeon plans to use facial nerve stimulator, muscle relaxation is contraindicated.
Antibiotics	Usually not indicated
Surgical time	0.5–1 h
EBL	25 mL (400 mL if neck dissection is done)
Postop care	PACU → room or home
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Marginal mandibular nerve paresis or paralysis: 20% Bleeding: 4% Infection: 4% Lingual dysesthesia: 1% XIIth nerve paresis or paralysis: ≤1%
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Unlimited
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Chronic infection Neoplasia: ~60% of tumors are benign with the remaining being low- and high-grade malignancies.
Associated conditions	Nonspecific

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: parotidectomy, submandibular gland excision)

PREOPERATIVE

The majority of these patients are > 40 yr, and any coexisting medical conditions should be fully evaluated. Diseases of the parotid gland have been associated with ETOH abuse and with autoimmune disease (e.g., Mikulicz-Sjögren syndrome); therefore, Sx of these conditions should be sought.

Respiratory	Airway may be affected by impaired mouth opening or parotid gland enlargement. Patients with involvement of the masseter muscle may present with trismus. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	Surgical approach to the parotid gland will place the facial nerve at jeopardy; any preop facial nerve deficits should be documented. Also see Preoperative Considerations for Laryngoscopy/Bronchoscopy/Esophagoscopy, p. 184. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Submandibular and parotid malignancies may be associated with chronic debilitation and anemia. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P; liver panel and coags in patients with Hx of ETOH abuse
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is most commonly used. Use of a FLMA also has been advocated, but does not represent the author's preference due to the possibility of distorted neck anatomy caused by the inflated FLMA cuff. The FLMA also may be displaced 2° surgical intrusion into the submandibular space and occasional intraoral surgical manipulation. These procedures involve meticulous surgical dissection and are characterized by alternating levels of stimulation: relatively long, stable levels of stimulation, with sudden adrenergic responses when surgery progresses into deeper fascial planes. (For essential surgical requirements, see Introduction, p. 178.) Emergence should be rapid enough to allow immediate patient cooperation for assessment of facial nerve function by the surgeon. Muscle relaxation with nondepolarizing NMB may or may not be contraindicated, depending on the surgeon's preference and type of surgery performed (inquire preop). Patients after **submandibular gland resection** may be discharged home the same day, while parotidectomy patients are admitted to the ward.

Induction	Opioid-based techniques (see Introduction, p. 178) are beneficial. Standard iv induction with propofol (1–2 mg/kg) is typically employed. ETT should be carefully secured on the nonoperative side. Nasal intubation may be requested by the surgeon (inquire preop) for selected cases, to allow full manipulation of the patient's jaw.
Maintenance	Moderate ↓ BP (see Introduction, p. 178) will greatly improve operating conditions and speed up the surgery. The use of a remifentanil infusion supplemented with sufentanil or fentanyl will promote ↓BP. Anticipate ↑ anesthetic requirements in patients with Hx of ETOH abuse. NMB is typically avoided to allow for intraop monitoring of the facial nerve (parotidectomy) or marginal mandibular nerve (submandibular gland excision).
Emergence	Smooth emergence is extremely desirable, and absence of reaction to the ETT is obligatory if facial nerve repair has been performed.
Blood and fluid requirements	EBL typically ~200 mL IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h 3rd spacing is usually minimal.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)

Positioning	Table usually is rotated 90–180° away from the anesthesiologist. ✓ pad pressure points ✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Facial paralysis 2° surgical trauma	Notify surgeons.
Pain management	Parenteral opiates (p. C-3) PCA (p. C-3)	

Suggested Readings

1. Feldman MA, Patel A: Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2010, 2357–88.
2. Mandel JE: Laryngeal mask airways in ear, nose, and throat procedures. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2010; 28(3):469–83.

ENDOSCOPIC SINUS SURGERY

Peter H. Hwang and Sarmela T. Sunder

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Sinus surgery is performed most often for the management of chronic sinus disease, nasal polyps, recurrent sinus infections, or for neoplastic conditions that may cause obstruction of the sinus cavities. This surgery includes either external procedures, through the skin or oral cavity, or endoscopic approaches, through the nostrils. The endoscopic approach—the preferred technique for most surgeons—is called **endoscopic sinus surgery (ESS)** or **functional ESS (FESS).** Other surgical procedures—including septoplasty, turbinate reduction, and, occasionally, sleep apnea surgery involving the tonsils, palate, and oropharynx—may be combined with FESS.

Endoscopic Sinus Surgery: ESS or FESS is a minimally invasive technique that utilizes telescopes intranasally to visualize and access the paranasal sinuses and anterior skull base. The primary indication for ESS is chronic sinusitis that has failed to clear with aggressive medical therapy. The goal of ESS is to open the sinuses through a transnasal minimally invasive approach. Inflamed bone and tissue are cleared from the outflow tracts of the sinuses under direct endoscopic illumination and magnification. By surgically enhancing the drainage and ventilation of the sinuses, normal mucociliary clearance can be restored. Depending on the extent of disease, surgery may involve the maxillary, ethmoid, sphenoid, and/or frontal sinuses. If all four sinuses are being treated, a maxillary antrostomy is typically performed first, followed by an ethmoidectomy. A sphenoidotomy and frontal sinusotomy usually follow thereafter.

Providing openings (drainage, aeration) to the sinus cavities and obtaining tissue for pathological evaluation are the main aims of ESS. Patients are orally intubated, and a throat pack can be placed in the pharynx to decrease the amount of blood swallowed. Oral gastric tubes are recommended if more than minimal bleeding is expected. Following induction of anesthesia, local medications are applied to the nasal cavity, including injection of 1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine and/or topical application of 4% cocaine. It is important that these local medications be noted in the anesthesia record, as complications (HTN, dysrhythmias, seizures) from local application have been reported. Patients with a history of illicit cocaine use should be warned of potential drug interactions, and the intraop use of vasoactive drugs should be limited to avoid unexpected cardiovascular events.

At the end of the procedure, packing may be placed. It is imperative that any pharyngeal or throat pack be removed before the end of the procedure to avoid airway destruction.

Sinus surgical procedures may use **image guidance or surgical navigation tools.** These computer-assisted techniques involve a preop CT or MRI scan to create a navigational map for the surgeon to localize disease, normal

tissues, and the boundaries of the surgical dissection. Surrounding the sinuses are several vital structures, including the periorbital tissues (e.g., orbital muscles, lacrimal apparatus, and the optic nerve), the sphenopalatine artery, ethmoid arteries, the carotid artery, as well as the skull base.

Variant procedure or approaches: For **external approaches** to sinus surgery, see External Sinus Surgery, p. 235.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nasal polyps; chronic sinusitis; recurrent acute sinus infections, benign and malignant tumors, inverted papilloma, and management of previous surgical complications (e.g., repair of CSF leak, lacrimal duct injury, and persistent or remnant ethmoid cells, scar tissue formation)

Preoperative Management: Patients should receive a decongestant nasal spray, such as oxymetazoline, pre-op to reduce nasal edema. This is generally given 30 min. before the start of the case, with repeat administration every 10–15 min. Preop antibiotics or steroids will vary depending on surgeon preference. Typically, an antibiotic with gram-positive and some gram-negative coverage (such as cephalexin) and an intravenous steroid such as dexamethasone are administered.

Intraoperative Management: ESS is usually performed under GA, using either endotracheal intubation or an LMA. The LMA offers the potential advantages of reducing the entry of blood into the stomach and causing less bucking or coughing during emergence (which may provoke unnecessary bleeding from the surgical site). The tube should be taped securely to the left side or midline of the patient's mouth. The OR table is routinely turned 90° or 180°, and the patient is positioned with the head slightly elevated. The surgeon sits or stands at the patient's right and operates from a video monitor positioned at the patient's head.

The eyes are taped but should remain visible in the surgical field throughout the procedure so that the status of the orbits may be noted by the surgeon. The presence of ecchymosis or proptosis suggests a transgression of the thin bony orbital wall and requires immediate attention. Throughout the procedure, the surgeon may palpate the orbit externally while endoscopically evaluating for dehiscences of the orbital wall, which if present will reveal transmitted movement of orbital fat or periorbita.

In more complex FESS or endoscopic skull base surgery, the surgeon may use a stereotactic navigation system to map out the surgical field according to a preoperatively acquired CT or MRI scan. During preparation of the patient, a localizing headset is placed over the patient's forehead, and a computer workstation tower is positioned adjacent to the head of the patient. After a registration process, a navigating probe communicates with the workstation via electromagnetic or infrared technology to provide triplanar localization of the probe tip relative to critical anatomic structures in and adjacent to the sinuses.

Hemostasis is critical in endoscopic sinus surgery, where the small lens of the endoscope (4 mm) can be easily obscured by blood. When possible, a hypotensive anesthesia regimen can reduce bleeding and thereby optimize the surgeon's view of the operative field. It may be reasonable to maintain blood pressure at ~ 80% of the preop level.

To improve hemostasis, the surgeon may place pledgets soaked in a vasoconstrictive agent such as cocaine, oxymetazoline, or epinephrine in the nasal cavity before starting the case. A transoral or transnasal sphenopalatine ganglion block may be performed using 1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine, which will provide vasoconstriction of the sphenopalatine artery. The lateral nasal wall and middle turbinate are also infiltrated with lidocaine/epinephrine. Additional vasoconstrictor-soaked pledgets may be placed in the operative field during the procedure to control oozing.

Complications of Endoscopic Sinus Surgery: Along the boundaries of the paranasal sinuses lie important structures that may be injured in the course of the procedure.

Maxillary Sinus: Just anterior to the maxillary sinus ostium lies the **nasolacrimal duct**. Injury to this structure, manifesting as excessive tearing, will not usually be evident until postop.

Ethmoid Sinus: Two critical boundaries of the ethmoid sinus are the medial orbital wall laterally and the skull base superiorly. **Transgression of the orbit** may result in medial rectus injury, prolapse of orbital fat, or orbital hemorrhage. If orbital hemorrhage progresses to the point of marked proptosis, vision may be threatened, and an emergent decompression of the orbit may be required via lateral canthotomy and cantholysis.

The superior extent of the ethmoid dissection is the cribriform plate and the anterior skull base. A breach through the ethmoid roof may result in a **cerebrospinal fluid leak**. Cerebrospinal fluid leaks require immediate repair using autogenous tissue grafts and require an inpatient recovery period. Vigorous bag-mask ventilation should be avoided in patients with known skull base defects because of the risk of creating a pneumocephalus.

Sphenoid Sinus: The sphenoid sinus, the posteriormost of the paranasal sinuses, lies adjacent to critical structures of the parasellar region. The **carotid artery** and **optic nerve** run along the superolateral wall of the sphenoid sinus. Any

significant bleeding on entry into or while working in the sphenoid sinus is concerning for potential carotid injury. Carotid artery injury requires emergent tamponade, possible fluid resuscitation, and angiography with embolization.

Frontal Sinus: Endoscopic approaches to the frontal sinus are especially challenging because of the narrowness of the region. Violation of the cribriform plate medially or the orbital wall laterally may lead to complications of **CSF leak** or **eye injury**, respectively.

Postop Management: In the PACU, patients s/p ESS require continued monitoring for possible delayed manifestation of complications. Maintaining normotensive hemodynamics is extremely helpful in controlling postop bleeding. Changing nasal dressings for oozing every 20–30 min is expected, but brisker bleeding should be evaluated by the surgeon for possible arterial sources requiring intervention.

Orbital injury can also present in the postop period with significant pain, diminished visual acuity, diplopia, proptosis, or ecchymosis. Any complaints of eye pain or visual changes need to be addressed urgently. The surgeon must be alerted immediately, and an ophthalmology consult should be considered.

Altered mental status, focal neurologic exam, or severe headache may indicate a possible intracranial complication. Clear rhinorrhea, especially unilateral, should be closely evaluated for the possibility of cerebrospinal fluid leak.

Other Applications of Endoscopes in Sinonasal Surgery: Although the most common indication for endoscopic sinus surgery is medically refractory chronic sinusitis, endoscopic techniques can be applied to wide range of sinonasal and skull base pathology. OR setup and patient positioning is identical to that for ESS (except as noted).

Turbinate Reduction: The inferior turbinate is the largest of the nasal turbinates (inferior, middle, superior) and when hypertrophied can cause nasal obstruction. Various methods exist for inferior turbinate reduction and include radiofrequency ablation, cauterization, submucosal resection, partial resection and out-fracture. Both turbinate

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table turned 90° or 180°
Incision	Mucosal, intranasal
Special instrumentation	4 mm nasal endoscopes, camera monitor, computer-guided navigation system
Premedication	Cefazolin 1 g, dexamethasone 8–12 mg
Surgical time	1–3 h
EBL	50–300 mL; transfusions rare
Postop care	PACU monitoring for surgical complications; discharge home from PACU
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	1% major complication rate (see complications of ESS above)
Pain Score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–80
Male:Female	1:1.5
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Medically refractory chronic sinusitis
Associated conditions	Asthma, allergic rhinitis, migraine

cauterization and RF ablation involve inserting a probe into the soft tissue of the turbinate and producing a coagulative lesion, which ultimately contracts to reduce the turbinate soft tissue. Similarly, submucosal reduction involves making an incision through the mucosa and mechanically reducing the underlying soft tissue. Partial resection of the turbinate involves cutting through the bone, soft tissue, and mucosa of the anterior one-third of the turbinate. At the conclusion, the cut edges are cauterized. The main adverse event from the majority of procedures on the turbinate is bleeding, which is usually controlled with cautery or nasal packing.

Septoplasty: Septal deviation may arise congenitally or during periods of rapid craniofacial growth, or from nasal trauma. Septoplasty is indicated when the septal deviation causes obstructed nasal breathing. Through an incision in the nasal vestibule, a mucoperichondrial septal flap is elevated to reveal deflections in the underlying septal cartilage and bone. Selective excision of bone and cartilage allows the septum to return to a midline position. Although the procedure may be performed using direct visualization with a headlight, nasal endoscopy provides superb visualization and allows for precise surgical maneuvering.

Control of Epistaxis: Control of epistaxis can usually be performed in the clinic; however, the OR provides a controlled environment suitable for high-risk patients and patients with profuse bleeding. Under endoscopic visualization, bleeding sites can be readily identified and controlled with cautery or laser. A more definitive procedure to control posterior epistaxis is sphenopalatine artery ligation. The artery is identified at the posteriormost aspect of the middle turbinate through a mucoperiosteal incision. The artery is then cauterized or ligated with surgical clips.

Orbital Decompression: Endoscopic orbital decompression is performed for Graves' ophthalmopathy to preserve diminishing vision and to improve cosmesis associated with exophthalmos. An ethmoidectomy is performed first, followed by removal of the medial orbital wall. After adequate exposure is achieved, the orbital periosteum is incised, causing the orbital fat to prolapse into the ethmoid cavity, thereby decompressing the orbit contents. Decompression may be extended to the floor of the orbit if medial decompression alone is insufficient.

Repair of CSF leak: Discontinuity of the anterior skull base, occurring traumatically or spontaneously, may result in CSF rhinorrhea. The defect may be a small crack in the skull base or a larger defect with prolapse of meninges or brain tissue through the defect. The majority of anterior skull base CSF leaks can be closed effectively with endoscopic approaches. Meningoencephaloceles that protrude through a bony skull base defect are reduced with bipolar cautery. After endoscopic visualization of the bony defect, a layered repair is performed using bone or cartilage, followed by a free mucosal graft.

A lumbar subarachnoid drain may be placed prior to starting the case. Fluorescein can be placed through the drain to aid in identifying the leak site during surgery. If fluorescein is used, it must be carefully measured and administered to avoid the neurotoxic effects of overdose (accepted dose is 0.1 cc of 10% fluorescein mixed in 10cc of nonbacteriostatic saline, administered slowly over 5 min). Postop, patients remain at bedrest for 1–3 d, typically as an inpatient.

Pituitary Surgery: The application of endoscopic technique to transnasal transphenoidal approaches to the sella provides an excellent panoramic view unavailable with microscopic approaches. Pituitary adenomas, craniopharyngiomas, and other sellar masses are suitable for endoscopic resection. The operating team consists of a neurosurgeon and an otolaryngologist working in concert. The approach is performed by the otolaryngologist, while the tumor resection is performed by the neurosurgeon under endoscopic guidance by the otolaryngologist ("four hands technique"). After performing intraoral greater palatine blocks and topically decongesting the nasal mucosa, the surgeon performing the approach creates bilateral sphenoidotomies. The posterior portion of the septum is then resected, allowing for the subsequent removal of the remainder of the sphenoid rostrum. This provides wide exposure of the sella and parasellar anatomy. The sella is then entered, and tumor resection is performed endoscopically.

The dissection of the sella risks injury to the adjacent optic nerve, cavernous sinus, and carotid artery. The anesthesiologist should be prepared to hemodynamically resuscitate the patient in the rare event of a carotid injury. Additional monitoring such as an arterial line may be indicated at the discretion of the anesthesiologist.

A CSF leak may occur if the arachnoid is breached during the tumor resection. This is repaired easily with abdominal fat, fibrin glue, and an absorbable reconstruction plate. In the event of a CSF leak, a lumbar subarachnoid drain may be placed.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The majority of these procedures are performed on an outpatient basis. Patients with extensive polypoid disease may be at risk for substantial (> 400 mL) blood loss. Many of these patients will have received a short preop course of steroid therapy to decrease tissue swelling and reduce bleeding intraop. Routine intraop administration of decadron (8–12 mg iv) to minimize postop edema makes additional stress-dose of glucocorticoids unnecessary.

Respiratory	Many patients with nasal polyposis have a high incidence of reactive airway disease (up to 26%) as well as a hypersensitivity to aspirin, which can precipitate bronchospasm (triad patients). In these patients, NSAIDs, including ketorolac, should be avoided. In general, ketorolac administration for postop pain relief is not recommended in these patients because it may promote microvascular bleeding. **Tests:** CXR, as indicated by H&P
Cardiovascular	See Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal Surgery, p. 241.
Premedication	See Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal Surgery, p. 241.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: **FESS** can be performed under local anesthesia with sedation (MAC) or GA. The essential surgical requirements are similar to those for other types of nasal surgery (see Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal Surgery, p. 241), although more meticulous control of intraop BP is crucial. Local anesthesia offers the advantage of reduced blood loss, but GA is performed more frequently and may be associated with ↓ incidence of surgical complications. Patients with extensive sinus disease, history of multiple previous nasal and sinus surgeries, patients feeling uneasy about being awake, and those with reactive airway disease, or labile HTN may not be candidates for MAC. Use of a FLMA instead of an ETT offers significant advantages (see Introduction, p. 178), including decreasing airway reactivity and improving mucociliary clearance.

Maintaining intraop controlled hypotension (see Introduction, p. 178) is essential for improving surgical visibility and operating conditions. Although MAP may largely affect the arterial inflow, other factors including the condition of the vascular network, local mechanisms regulating functional nasal capillary density, and local venous pressure also play a significant role in regulating overall nasal capillary perfusion. As with other types of nasal surgery, these procedures are typically characterized by minimal immediate postop pain 2° submucosal infiltrative local anesthesia used by the surgeon.

Induction	(See Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal Surgery, p. 241). The patient's eyes should be protected in a manner that allows the surgeon to quickly diagnose proptosis in case of inadvertent orbital wall penetration and intraorbital hemorrhage.	
Maintenance	(See Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal Surgery, p. 241). TIVA, with or without nitrous oxide, promotes superior hemodynamic stability and minimizes direct peripheral vasodilation. When additional ↓ BP is required esmolol is preferred over SNP. Breakthrough adrenergic responses occur more frequently with FESS compared to other types of nasal surgery because many reflexogenic areas (e.g., skull base) cannot be blocked by infiltrative local anesthesia. These responses can be effectively controlled by vasoactive agents or additional boluses of remifentanil (0.5–1.0 mcg/kg iv). The anesthesiologist should frequently observe the video monitor for signs of possible complications—prolapse of periorbital fat (orbital injury), "wash-out" of blood in the surgical field (CSF leak).	
Emergence	(See Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal Surgery, p. 241). If a dural injury has occurred, a smooth extubation is mandatory.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20 ga × 1 (unilateral FESS)	Blood loss can be substantial in high-risk patients (as described above).

Blood and fluid requirements (cont'd)	20–18 ga × 1 (bilateral FESS) NS/LR @ 3–4 cc/kg/h Blood loss generally 100–150 mL	Meticulous surgical technique and the use of injectable vasoconstrictors are essential in reducing intraop bleeding. An iv is usually placed at the side where the surgeon is positioned (patient's right upper extremity).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) BP cuff left arm	Prevent BP cuff from inflating against the surgeon's hands during delicate endoscopic manipulation.
Positioning	Table turned 90–180° Head elevated 15–30° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patient's arms usually tucked and carefully padded
Complications	Dysrhythmias Tachycardia	Usually related to use of vasoconstrictor agents; and may present a problem in patients with CAD. Short-acting β-blocker (esmolol 0.5–1.0 mg/kg iv boluses) should be available to blunt these hemodynamic effects.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Occult bleeding	Occult postop bleeding may cause the patient to swallow large quantities of blood (↑ aspiration risk), and repacking the nostrils may be required.
Pain management	Fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv prn is usually sufficient.	Occasionally, pain after FESS may be significant. If external approaches to the sinuses were utilized, higher doses of opioids may be necessary.

Suggested Readings

1. Bhatti MT, Stankiewicz JA: Ophthalmic complications of endoscopic sinus surgery. *Surv Ophthalmol* 2003; 48:389–402.
2. Boezaart AP, Van der Merwe J, Coetzee A: Comparison of sodium nitroprusside- and esmolol-induced hypotension for functional endoscopic sinus surgery. *Can J Anesth* 1995; 42:373–6.
3. Bolger WE, Kennedy DW: Surgical complications and postoperative care. In: DW Kennedy, WE Bolger, SJ Zinreich, eds. *Diseases of the Sinuses: Diagnosis and Management*. B.C. Decker, Hamilton: 2001, 303–16.
4. Eberhart LH, Folz BJ, Wulf H, et al: Intravenous anesthesia provides optimal surgical conditions during microscopic and endoscopic sinus surgery. *Laryngoscope* 2003; 113:1369–73.
5. Enoki T, Tsuchiya N, Shinomura T, et al: Effect of hypercapnia on arterial hypotension after induction of anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 2005; 49:687–91.
6. Howarth PH: Leukotrienes in rhinitis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000; 161:S133–6.
7. Jacobi KE, Bohm BE, Rickauer AJ, et al: Moderate controlled hypotension with sodium nitroprusside does not improve surgical conditions or decrease blood loss in endoscopic sinus surgery. *J Clin Anesth* 2000; 12:202–7.
8. Kinsella JB, Calhoun KH, Bradfield JJ, et al: Complications of endoscopic sinus surgery in a residency training program. *Laryngoscope* 1995; 105:1029–32.
9. May M, Levine HL, Mester SJ, et al: Complications of endoscopic sinus surgery: analysis of 2108 patients—incidence and prevention. *Laryngoscope* 1994; 104:1080–3.
10. Nair S, Collins M, Hung P, et al: The effect of beta-blocker premedication on the surgical field during endoscopic sinus surgery. *Laryngoscope* 2004; 114:1042–6.
11. Nekhendzy V, Lemmens HJ, Vaughan WC, et al: The effect of deliberate hypercapnia and hypocapnia on intraoperative blood loss and quality of surgical field during functional endoscopic sinus surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 105:1404–9.
12. Webster AC, Morley-Foster PK, Janzen V, et al: Anesthesia for intranasal surgery: a comparison between tracheal intubation and the flexible reinforced laryngeal mask airway. *Anesth Analg* 1999; 88:421–5.
13. Wormald PJ, Van Renen G, Perks J, et al: The effect of the total intravenous anesthesia compared with inhalational anesthesia on the surgical field during endoscopic sinus surgery. *Am J Rhinol* 2005; 19:514–20.

EXTERNAL SINUS SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Transfacial approaches to the paranasal sinuses include a transoral sublabial approach to the maxillary sinus and pterygomaxillary space (**Caldwell-Luc**), external ethmoidectomy (often with medial orbitotomy and/or medial maxillectomy), and osteoplastic approaches to the frontal sinus via a bicoronal incision just behind the hairline. The usual indication for such approaches are resection of malignant and occasionally benign locally extensive tumors such as angiofibroma, especially when for technical reasons (e.g., angle of access or extension into the orbit) it is felt that an endoscopic approach is not indicated. The continued improvement in endoscopic equipment along with increasing surgical experience makes endoscopic resection increasingly more common, safe, and appropriate.

Anterior cranial base surgery: When tumors transgress the anterior cranial base at the cribriform plate and ethmoid roof, an anterior cranial base resection is often done. If the extent of the anticipated dural resection is limited, then the resection can be accomplished endoscopically. In more extensive resections most surgeons opt for an open approach. Rarely is a central facial incision required as adequate exposure may be obtained via a bicoronal incision and bifrontal craniotomy. The CSF leak is addressed by a combination of dural substitution (autologous tissue, such as temporalis fascia, bovine pericardium, or manufactured substitutes) and a pericranial-galeal flap. A lumbar subarachnoid drain is sometimes used in this setting.

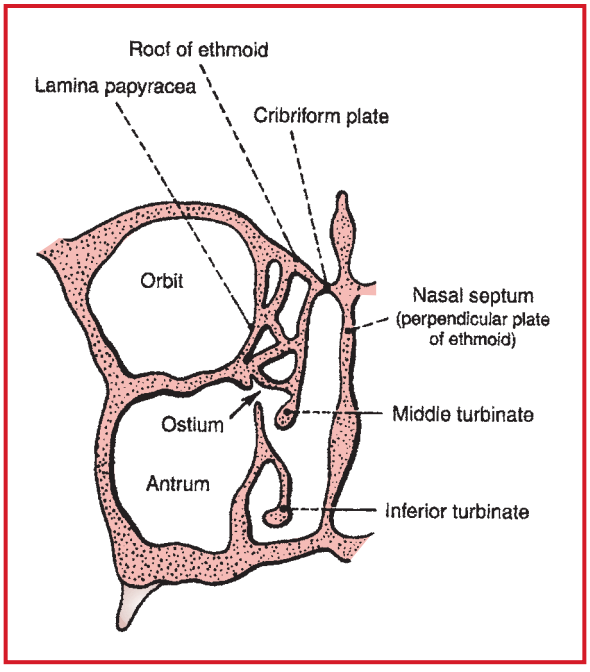


Figure 3-11. Diagrammatic representation of the relationships of the orbit, maxillary antrum, ethmoid labyrinth, and nasal cavity. Note that the medial wall of the ethmoid labyrinth is an upper extension of the attachment of the middle turbinate. The attachment of the upper extension separates the roof of the ethmoid and the cribriform plate. (Reproduced with permission from Montgomery WW: *Surgery of the Upper Respiratory System,* 3rd edition. Williams & Wilkins, 1996.)

Variant approaches: Approaches to the middle cranial base include an orbitozygomatic approach to the infratemporal fossa. The zygomatic arch and part of the zygomatic body is temporarily removed, the temporalis major muscle is transposed inferiorly. The lateral orbital bone with or without the orbital rim may be temporarily removed. A middle fossa craniotomy or craniectomy is usually done. This provides access to the foramen ovale, foramen rotundum, and carotid artery at the skull base, as well as the lateral orbit and superior infratemporal fossa and pterygomaxillary fossa to the pterygoid plates, and, as needed, lateral sphenoid sinus and maxillary sinus. Following tumor resection, part of the temporalis muscle may be used to assist in CSF leak management.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Malignant and some benign tumors

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	External Sinus Surgery	Anterior Cranial Base Surgery
Position	Head up 30°, back raised (reduces bleeding)	⇐ Also reduces intracranial pressure
Incision	Access to the ethmoid and maxilla is via a 3–4 cm incision midway between the medial canthal ligament and the midline, in the shadow of the nasal bone; a lateral rhinotomy incision is not needed.	A bicoronal incision posterior to the hairline masks the scar. A supplemental facial incision is rarely needed.
Special instrumentation	Paranasal sinus set; headlight	⇐ + craniotomy set
Unique considerations	Nasal packing	⇐ see frontal craniotomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–4 h	5–8 h
EBL	25–300 mL	150–750 mL
Postop care	Same as endoscopic surgery	Same as craniotomy
Mortality	Very rare	Rare
Morbidity	Bleeding: < 5%	Anosmia if bifrontal craniotomy CSF leak: < 2% CVA: <1% Bone flap loss: < 1% Meningitis: < 1% Infection: < 1%
Pain score	4–6	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Children–seniors
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Malignant tumors, selected benign tumors, occasionally infectious
Associated conditions	Dependent on specific tumor; also see Endoscopic Sinus Surgery

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Endoscopic Sinus Surgery, p. 233.

NASAL SURGERY (RHINOPLASTY, SEPTOPLASTY, SEPTORHINOPLASTY)

Sam P. Most

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Nasal surgery is performed for cosmetic and functional restoration of the airway. Functional restoration is usually performed for either congenital or posttraumatic deviations of the septum. The nasal cavity is first cocainized with 4% cocaine-soaked pledgets placed in each nostril for 5–10 min. **Septoplasty** (reconstruction of the nasal septum) usually can be carried out under sedation with local anesthesia, using 1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine. **Rhinoplasty-septorhinoplasty** usually is carried out under local anesthesia, but if GA is used, a mouth pack is inserted. Local infiltration with 1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine is used to ensure vasoconstriction and to minimize bleeding. Intranasal incisions are made and septal problems corrected. Generally, an anterior hemitransfixion incision is made down to the cartilage, and a submucoperichondrial flap is elevated the length of the septum. A similar flap may be elevated on the contralateral side. Bony deformities are resected with an osteotome, whereas cartilaginous deformities are either resected or weakened by morselizing, either in situ or after removal, and then replaced. The incision is closed with interrupted absorbable sutures. In **rhinoplasty,** tip remodelling, hump reduction, and bony osteotomies are performed to remodel the nasal contour. Surgery on the inferior turbinates in the form of intramural cautery, resection of turbinate bone, resection of turbinate mucosa or, in some cases, complete turbinectomy may be required to produce a satisfactory airway. After the surgery is complete, both nasal cavities are packed and external splints may be used for rhinoplasty and septorhinoplasty cases. For the plastic surgeon's perspective see Chapter 11.1.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nasal deformity or deviation; deviated septum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Head up 30° to reduce bleeding. Table may be turned 90–180°.
Incision	Intranasal, usually; extended only in open septorhinoplasty
Unique considerations	Nose initially cocainized; use of 1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine to ↓ bleeding
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv; routinely used as long as nasal packs are in place.
Surgical time	1–2.5 h
Closing considerations	Nose often packed postop, necessitating oral airway after extubation.
EBL	50–100 mL (excessive blood loss rare)
Postop care	PACU
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Septal perforation: 5% Bleeding: 4% Infection: 4%
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Young teens–young adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Congenital/traumatic septal and/or nasal deviation

FACIAL PLASTIC SURGERY

Overview: Facial plastic surgery encompasses both reconstructive and aesthetic surgery of the face and neck. Typically, surgeons are trained in either otolaryngology-head & neck surgery/facial plastic surgery or general plastic surgery (see Chapter 11.1) or both. The procedures to be covered in this section are rhinoplasty, rhytidectomy (facelift), and blepharoplasty (eyelid rejuvenation).

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

RHINOPLASTY

Description: Rhinoplasty has traditionally been considered an aesthetic procedure. However, when combined with a septoplasty (rhinoseptoplasty, septorhinoplasty) it is both a functional and aesthetic operation. In some cases, a purely functional operation (functional rhinoplasty) is performed to improve the ability to breathe through the nose. The approach and anesthetic requirements for these can be considered together.

Technique: A septoplasty involves a unilateral intranasal incision along the anterior septum with minor variations in the placement of the incision in the antero-posterior plane. The approaches to rhinoplasty can be intranasal, extranasal or both. Frequently, the external (or "open") approach to rhinoplasty is employed. The intranasal approach involve incisions along the septum anteriorly and some combination of incisions in the nasal vestibule. The external approach combines these approaches with a midcolumellar incision. In both functional and aesthetic rhinoplasty, the maneuvers include cartilage remodeling or resection, and possibly osteotomies to manipulate the bony pyramid of the nose.

Usual preop diagnosis: For aesthetic patients, the typical preop diagnosis is nasal deformity. However, many patients also complain of nasal obstruction, and some rhinoplasty patients have purely functional concerns. Patients with significant nasal obstruction may have some component of sleep disordered breathing or even OSA. Because of this, patients with nasal obstruction are routinely asked about snoring and daytime somnolence (if they have not already had a diagnostic sleep study).

Preop and intraop preparation: Preoperatively patients receive a nasal decongestant spray (0.05% oxymetazoline spray, 3 doses 10 min apart) to reduce intraop bleeding. Preop corticosteroid (4–8 mg Decadron iv) and antibiotics (cefazolin, 1 g iv) are administered. Intraop, we prefer LMA for protection of the airway and esophageal inlet, as some bleeding in the nasopharynx is expected. If an endotracheal tube is used, a throat pack can be placed to reduce blood entrance into the esophagus/stomach. The tube should be secured to the *midline of the lower lip* to avoid distortion of the nose/nasal base.

Postop care: At the end of the procedure, prior to extubation, the surgeon will place an external splint of some type on the nose. Any mask placed on the patient should be done in such a fashion as to not place pressure on the nose. We prefer the transport oxygen mask be cut off such that no contact occurs. Any Valsalva can result in epistaxis and/or bleeding under the septal or nasal skin flaps. Thus, any manuevers to reduce bucking or coughing during extubation are in order.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Intranasal + columella (external rhinoplasty)
Special instrumentation	Headlight
Unique considerations	Nasal obstruction postop
Antibiotics	Often administered preop: cefazolin 1 g iv
Other preoperative meds	Nasal decongestant spray, dexamethasone 4–8 mg iv
Surgical time	1–3 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
EBL	25–50 mL
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Epistaxis, septal perforation, unsatisfactory aesthetic result
Pain score	1–4, typically mild

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	15+ yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Nasal obstruction, desire for change in nasal form.

RHYTIDECTOMY (FACELIFT)

Description: Rhytidectomy (facelift) is almost always an aesthetic procedure. In the common vernacular, "facelift" is often used to describe total surgical facial rejuvenation (including eyelids and forehead). Strictly speaking, rhytidectomy involves aesthetic improvement of the lower half of the face and upper neck. For this reason, some have called it a "necklift" or "lower facelift" to avoid confusion. Perhaps the latter term is more appropriate, as a separate 'necklift' procedure does exist. In any event, the anesthetic requirements for these are similar.

Technique: Rhytidectomy incisions are bilateral, extending pre and postauricularly with minor variations. In addition, the surgeon may place a small (0.5–2 cm) incision submentally for access to submental fat and/or platysma muscle. As dissection may be near branches of the facial nerve, ***avoidance of muscle relaxants*** is required.

Usual preop diagnosis: For aesthetic patients, the typical preop diagnosis is simply desire for reduction in nasolabial and labiomandibular lines, jowling, and neck skin laxity. Patients are typically over the age of 40 and usually in good health. Smoking is a contraindication due to the risk of poor wound healing and/or skin flap necrosis.

Preop and intraop preparation: Preop patients receive corticosteroid (4–8 mg Decadron iv) and antibiotics (cefazolin, 1 g iv). Intraop, we prefer LMA for protection of the airway and esophageal inlet, though an ETT can be used. The tube should be secured to the ***midline of the lower lip*** to avoid distortion of the lower face/neck. The tube is prepped in to the field and may be manipulated side-to-side during the procedure as the submental incision is accessed. In addition, the head may be turned about 30–45° to the side opposite the surgeon. Typically, dissection near the branches of the facial nerve is undertaken, and visual monitoring for any twitches is performed by the assistant, thus ***avoidance of muscle relaxants is imperative.***

Postop care: At the end of the procedure, prior to patient extubation, the surgeon will place a circumferential external pressure dressing of some kind on the face. Typically, cotton balls soaked in antibiotic ointment are placed in the ears. The patient may have difficulty hearing due to this dressing. Drains may have been placed on each side of the neck. Any Valsalva can result in bleeding under the skin flaps. Hematoma is one of the most common periop complications and requires evacuation. Thus, any maneuvers to reduce bucking or coughing during extubation are in order.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Pre or postauricular and submental
Special instrumentation	Headlight
Unique considerations	Facial nerve is monitored (visually); avoid paralytics.
Antibiotics	Often administered preop: cefazolin 1 g iv

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Other preoperative meds	Dexamethasone: 4–8 mg iv
Surgical Time	3 h
EBL	25–50 mL
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Hematoma, facial paralysis, unsatisfactory aesthetic result
Pain Score	1–4, typically mild

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	40+
Male:Female	1:8
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Desire for change in facial aesthetics
Associated conditions	Other facial aesthetic considerations

BLEPHAROPLASTY

(For the plastic surgeon's perspective see Chapter 11.1)

Description: Blepharoplasty (eyelid rejuvenation surgery) is, in the overwhelming marjority of cases, an anesthetic procedure. In some cases, *functional upper lid blepharoplasty* may be performed to reduce visual field obstruction and is typically covered by insurance. These procedures are often performed under local anesthesia with sedation. However, as they are often combined with other procedures (browlift, facelift), the patients are often under general anesthesia.

Technique: Upper blepharoplasty incisions are placed on curvilinear fashion along the upper eyelid creases with minor variations. The amount of skin to be excised is marked by the surgeon, and local anesthetic with epinephrine is administered. The evolution of upper eyelid blepharoplasty has led to a more conservative approach with less muscle and fat excision being performed. As the procedure becomes more skin-only, many are being performed under local anesthesia as an isolated procedure.

Lower blepharoplasty is generally performed transcutaneously with a subciliary incision or transconjunctivally via the inner portion of the lower eyelid. In the former approach, a small amount of lower lid skin and muscle is typically excised. With both approaches, the surgeon removes or repositions a small amount of the intraorbital fat pockets for the desired aesthetic result.

Usual preop diagnosis: For aesthetic patients, the typical preop diagnosis is simply desire for reduction upper lid skin excess, which may obstruct their vision (see above). In the lower lid, the most common complaint is "puffiness" of the lower eyelid, which is often due to pseudoherniation of orbital fat and descent of the midface fat with age. Patients are typically over the age of 30 and usually in good health.

Preop and intraop preparation: Preop patients receive corticosteroid (4–8 mg Decadron iv) and antibiotics (cefazolin, 1 g iv). Intraop, we prefer LMA for protection of the airway and esophageal inlet. The tube should be secured to the midline of the lower lip to avoid distortion of the lower face/neck.

Postop care: At the end of the procedure, prior to patient extubation, the surgeon will confirm satisfaction with symmetry and aesthetic result. No dressings are used. Any Valsalva can result in bleeding under the skin flaps. More important, intraorbital pressure must be avoided as it may result in a serious complication, placing the patient's vision at risk. Thus, any maneuvers to reduce bucking or coughing during extubation are in order.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Upper lid crease, lower lid via transconjunctival or transcutaneous approaches
Special instrumentation	None
Unique considerations	None
Antibiotics	Often administered preop: cefazolin 1 g iv
Other preoperative meds	Dexamethasone: 4–8 mg iv
Surgical time	1.25 h (upper or lower only); 2 h (both upper and lower)
EBL	< 5 mL
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Asymmetry, dry eye, ectropion, corneal abrasion, blindness (rare)
Pain score	1–4, typically mild

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	30+
Male:Female	1:8
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Desire for change in facial aesthetics; in some cases upper blepharoplasty is performed for functional reasons
Associated conditions	Other facial aesthetic considerations

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR FACIAL COSMETIC SURGERY (NASAL SURGERY, RHYTIDECTOMY, AND BLEPHAROPLASTY)

PREOPERATIVE

These cases typically are performed on an outpatient basis. Most of the patients are young and otherwise healthy, but some patients presenting for rhino/septoplasty and turbinate reduction surgery may have OSA with the corresponding implications for intraop management (see p. 265). Older patients may present for major reconstructive nasal surgery following resections of a basal cell carcinoma of the nose. Patients presenting for closed reduction of nasal fractures may have suffered concomitant closed head trauma. If the nose injury is recent, blood may have been swallowed, and the patient should be considered "full stomach."

Patients with *diabetes mellitus* (DM) and those with *rheumatologic diseases* may be particularly prone to bruising, infection, and delayed healing. The use of *nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications* (NSAIDs), *aspirin*, and certain herbal supplements, such as gingko or echinacea, and certain *vitamins* (e.g., vitamin E) should be stopped at least two weeks prior to surgery to avoid the risk of excessive microvascular bleeding.

Respiratory	Some patients may present with a Hx of reactive airway disease; their functional status should be checked and optimized preop. Increased airway reactivity may provoke excessive postop coughing and straining, increasing the risk of bleeding. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Special attention should be directed to the presence of HTN, which may predispose the patients to hematoma formation. HTN should be well controlled preop. In patients with preexisting cardiac disease, cocaine for topical anesthesia or control of bleeding may be contraindicated. **Tests:** ECG in older population; others as indicated from H&P
Neuro	Psychological disturbances are common in patients presenting for rhinologic surgery.
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1). Sedation should be avoided or used with caution in patients with OSA.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The anesthetic plan should provide for patient immobility, smooth emergence from anesthesia, a rapid return of consciousness, prevention of PONV, and fast-tracking patients for discharge. A wide variety of office-based cosmetic procedures, including rhinoplasty, rhytidectomy, blepharoplasty can be performed either under local anesthesia with iv sedation or GA. The choice is frequently dictated by the patient's desires and the surgeon's level of comfort. MAC removes the triggers for malignant hyperthermia (MH) GA-induced emergence phenomena, reduces the incidence of PONV and facilitates patient discharge; however, administration of a successful MAC without immediate access to the patient's airway is frequently more challenging than conducting GA. With MAC, FiO_2 must not exceed 0.3 to prevent intraop fire.

Induction	Standard induction with propofol (1–2 mg/kg) is an ideal induction agent because of its short duration and intrinsic antiemetic effect. For GETA, the use of an oral RAE or reinforced ETT will facilitate surgical access. Spontaneous or controlled ventilation can be used, and FLMA is strongly preferred over tracheal intubation (see Introduction, p. 178). Both ETT and FLMA are usually taped midline.
Maintenance	All GA techniques (balanced, inhalational, or TIVA) can be used safely, although TIVA is preferred. Propofol infusion (80–150 mcg/kg/min) may offer the advantage of ↓ BP without compensatory ↑ HR, and ↓ PONV. Remifentanil infusion (0.1–0.25 mcg/kg/min) will improve hemodynamic stability and facilitate rapid and smooth emergence. Maintaining moderate degree of ↓ BP is essential.
Emergence	Aggressive prevention of PONV, usually with iv 5-HT_3 antagonist (e.g., ondansetron 4–8 mg) in combination with iv dexamethasone (8–10 mg) is highly effective and may lead to improved patient outcome. An iv dexamethasone is administered routinely during facial cosmetic surgery. Multimodal PONV prophylaxis (e.g., the addition of transdermal scopolamine patch) is warranted in high-risk patients. Avoidance of bucking and coughing on emergence, and accompanying hypertensive responses, is essential for preventing microvascular bleeding and hematoma formation, especially after rhinoplasty and rhytidectomy. Emergence from anesthesia after nasal surgery presents significant challenges to the anesthesiologist. Nasal passages may be packed at the end of surgery, making the patients obligate mouth-breathers; the oropharynx should be suctioned carefully. No pressure on the patient's nose with the face mask should be allowed after tracheal extubation or FLMA removal. Full return of airway reflexes should occur before extubation, which must be accomplished smoothly without excessive bucking and coughing. The FLMA is superior to the ETT in this regard.
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss usually minimal IV: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–3 mL/kg/h Blood loss controlled with surgical hemostasis and topical applications of vasoconstrictor (epinephrine), but also may include cocaine.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)

Positioning	Head elevated 15–30° Table turned 90–180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patient's arms usually tucked in and should be carefully padded. The eyes are usually protected by the surgeon according to surgeon's preference.
Complications	Tachycardia, dysrhythmias	These are usually related to use of vasoconstrictor agents and may present a problem in patients with CAD. Short-acting β-blocker (esmolol, 0.5–1 mcg/kg in boluses) should be available to blunt these hemodynamic effects.
	Laryngospasm, negative pressure pulmonary edema	Treatment is supportive: reestablishment of airway patency, oxygen supplementation, ventilatory support (CPAP, or tracheal intubation with positive pressure ventilation and PEEP), management of fluid shifts, and maintenance of normal intravascular volume.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Occult bleeding	Occult postop bleeding may cause the patient to swallow large quantities of blood (↑ aspiration risk); and repacking the nostrils may be required. Adequate prophylaxis of hypertensive responses postop (iv bolus doses of labetalol, 0.1-0.2 mg·kg^{-1}) and PONV are essential.
Pain management	Fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv prn is usually sufficient	

Suggested Readings

1. Abdulatif M: Sodium nitroprusside induced hypotension: haemodynamic response and dose requirements during propofol or halothane anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intens Care* 1994; 22:155–60.
2. Apfel CC, Philip BK, Cakmakkaya OS, et al: Who is at risk for postdischarge nausea and vomiting after ambulatory surgery? *Anesthesiology* 2012; 117:475–86.
3. Beer GM, Goldscheider E, Weber A, et al: Prevention of acute hematoma after face-lifts. *Aesthetic Plast Surg* 2010; 34:502–7.
4. Bitar G, Mullis W, Jacobs W, et al: Safety and efficacy of office-based surgery with monitored anesthesia care/sedation in 4778 consecutive plastic surgery procedures. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2003; 111:150–6.
5. Blake DR: Office-based anesthesia: dispelling common myths. *Aesthet Surg J* 2008; 28:564–70.
6. Caloss R, Lard MD: Anesthesia for office-based facial cosmetic surgery. *Atlas Oral Maxillofacial Surg Clin N Am* 2004; 12:163–77.
7. Chuang YC, Wang CH, Lin YS: Negative pressure pulmonary edema: report of three cases and review of the literature. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 2007; 264:1113–6.
8. Clevens RA: Avoiding patient dissatisfaction and complications in facelift surgery. *Facial Plast Surg Clin North Am* 2009; 17:515–30.
9. Friedberg BL: Propofol-ketamine technique: dissociative anesthesia for office surgery (a 5-year review of 1264 cases). *Aesthetic Plast Surg* 1999; 23:70–5.
10. Hinni ML, Kern EB: Psychological complications of septo-rhinoplasty. *Facial Plast Surg* 1997; 13:71–5.
11. Hoefflin SM, Bornstein JB, Gordon M: General anesthesia in an office-based plastic surgical facility: a report on more than 23,000 consecutive office-based procedures under general anesthesia with no significant anesthetic complications. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 107:243–51.
12. Kolodzie K, Apfel CC: Nausea and vomiting after office-based anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2009; 22:532–8.
13. Liu YH, Li MJ, Wang PC, et al: Use of dexamethasone on the prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting after tympanomastoid surgery. *Laryngoscope* 2001; 111:1271–4.
14. Mamiya H, Ichinohe T, Kaneko Y: Negative pressure pulmonary edema after oral and maxillofacial surgery. *Anesth Prog* 2009; 56:49–52.
15. Niamtu J: Expanding hematoma in face-lift surgery: literature review, case presentations, and caveats. *Dermatol Surg* 2005; 31:1134–44.
16. Prendiville S, Weiser S: Management of anesthesia and facility in facelift surgery. *Facial Plast Surg Clin North Am* 2009; 17:531–8.
17. Steely RL, Collins DR Jr, Cohen BE, et al: Postoperative nausea and vomiting in the plastic surgery patient. *Aesthetic Plast Surg* 2004; 28:29–32.

18. Taub PJ, Bashey S, Hausman LM: Anesthesia for cosmetic surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; 125:1e–7e.
19. Van Den Berg AA, Savva D, Honjol NM, et al: Comparison of total intravenous, balanced inhalational and combined intravenous-inhalational anaesthesia for tympanoplasty, septorhinoplasty and adenotonsillectomy. *Anaesth Intens Care* 1995; 23:574–82.
20. Webster AC, Morley-Foster PK, Janzen V, et al: Anesthesia for intranasal surgery: a comparison between tracheal intubation and the flexible reinforced laryngeal mask airway. *Anesth Analg* 1999; 88:421–5.
21. Westreich R, Sampson I, Shaari CM, et al: Negative-pressure pulmonary edema after routine septorhinoplasty: discussion of pathophysiology, treatment, and prevention. *Arch Facial Plast Surg* 2006; 8:8–15.
22. Williams PJ, Thompsett C, Bailey PM: Comparison of the reinforced laryngeal mask airway and tracheal intubation for nasal surgery. *Anaesthesia* 1995; 50:987–9.

OTHER ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR FACIAL COSMETIC SURGERY

(see Anesthetic Considerations for Office-based procedures (p. 878) and Anesthetic Considerations for Facial Cosmetic Surgery p. 879)

OTOLOGY AND NEUROTOLOGY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Otologic Surgery: Otologic surgery is indicated for a spectrum of disorders, including traumatic, developmental, infectious, and neoplastic disease. Procedures involving the external auditory canal, middle ear, and inner ear will be considered in this section. Surgery confined to the pinna or that requiring craniotomy is considered elsewhere.

The temporal bone is as complex as any region of human anatomy (Figs. 3-12 and 3-13). Multiple vital neurovascular structures interrelate in a small confined space. These include the organs of hearing and balance, the facial nerve, the carotid artery, jugular vein, and the delicate mechanisms of the middle ear. The density and complexity of the anatomy dictate the delicate nature of otologic procedures and hence many of its anesthetic requirements. Most procedures are either performed via a transcanal approach (through the natural meatus of the external ear), a retroauricular incision, or a combination of the two.

Many otologic procedures are undertaken to control recurrent or chronic ear infections (otomastoiditis). The simplest of these is the **myringotomy**, in which the tympanic membrane (TM) is incised through the ear canal, and the middle ear contents are aspirated. In most cases, a myringotomy tube is also placed to maintain middle ear aeration and drainage. This procedure usually takes just a few minutes and is performed under mask GA. A myringoplasty involves the

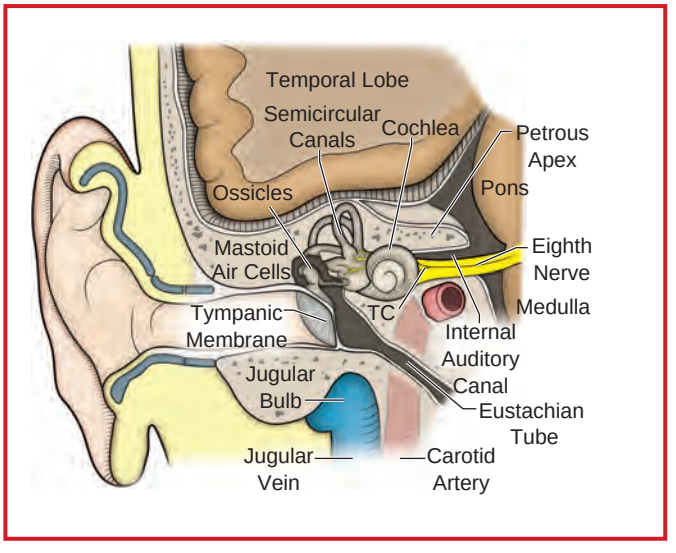


Figure 3-12. Coronal diagram of right ear.

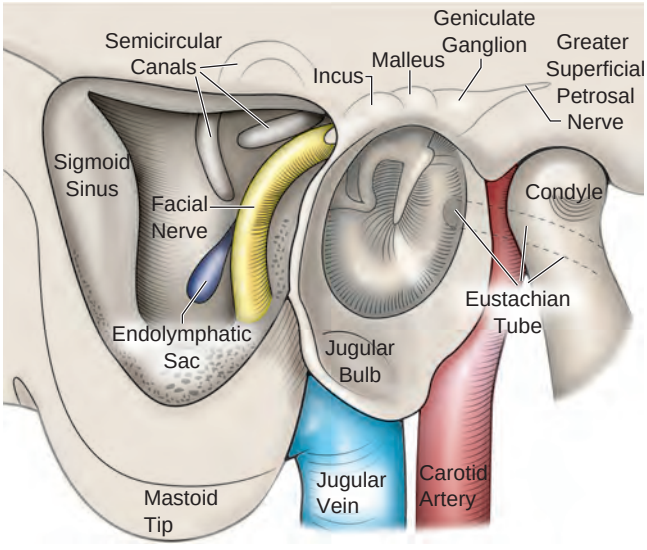


Figure 3-13. Lateral diagram of right ear.

repair of a persistent TM perforation and usually involves placement of autologous tissues as a patch to enable healing. When combined with repair of chronic middle ear changes, the procedure is termed a tympanoplasty.

The mastoid is an area of bone and air spaces situated behind the middle ear and external auditory canal. The removal of this bone, through a **simple mastoidectomy**, enables the removal of loculated infection and diseased tissue and provides access to additional anatomy. This is often combined with tympanoplasty **(tympanomastoidectomy)** to address the changes from chronic infection. This is the standard surgical approach to resect a **cholesteatoma**, which is a keratin-containing epithelial cyst originating from the TM that has grown into the middle ear and mastoid cavity. When the posterior bony wall of the external auditory canal is left in place to keep the mastoid cavity anatomically distinct from the external auditory canal, the procedure is called a **canal-wall-up tympanomastoidectomy**. In contrast, for more aggressive disease, the partition between the external canal and the mastoid cavity can be removed, thereby exteriorizing the mastoid cavity in what is termed a **canal-wall-down tympanomastoidectomy**. During this procedure, the external auditory canal meatus should also be enlarged to accommodate the resulting mastoid bowl. The complete removal of mastoid and middle ear contents is sometimes referred to as a **radical mastoidectomy**. Tympanomastoid surgery is usually performed under GA and may take several hours to complete.

Surgery is often performed to improve the mechanical conduction of sound vibrations through the middle ear into the inner ear ("conductive hearing loss"). If the cause of the mechanical dysfunction is not clear, the surgeon may perform an **exploratory tympanotomy**, during which the TM is elevated and the middle ear structures are inspected and palpated to reveal deficits in their function. **Ossicular chain reconstruction** involves rebuilding or replacing the bones of hearing (malleus, incus, and stapes) with either the patient's own tissues or with aloplastic prostheses. Otosclerosis is a disorder characterized by the progressive fixation of the stapes to the surrounding bone, resulting in hearing loss. One option for affected patients is to perform a **stapedectomy** (or stapedotomy) in which the stapes is replaced by a prosthesis to restore more normal continuity of sound conduction. This procedure can be performed either under local or general anesthesia. It involves extreme accuracy for success and can be one of the most challenging cases for the otologic surgeon.

Cochlear implantation is an option to address severe or profound inner ear hearing loss ("sensorineural hearing loss"). During implantation, a retroauricular incision and mastoidectomy are performed to provide a pathway for device placement into the inner ear. A receiver-stimulator is placed under the skin behind the ear, and a flexible electrode array is threaded into the turns of the cochlea to later be used to stimulate the cochlear nerve directly, and thereby bypass the dysfunctional inner ear. The devices are activated usually several weeks following placement, at which time hearing function is expected to increase.

A number of procedures address disorders specifically confined to the external auditory canal. Patients may develop extra bone growths (exostoses) in the ear canal that obstruct the canal. **Exostoses resection** can be performed through a

retroauricular incision or via a transcanal approach if the disease is limited. Patients may lack an ear canal (canal atresia) as the result of a congenital disorder, from chronic inflammation, or posttraumatic scarring. In such patients, a **canalplasty**, involving obstructing skin, bone, and scar can be performed. Similarly, patients may require the resection of a number of neoplastic lesions of the ear canal, most commonly of cutaneous origin. Such resections may require additional resection of adjacent tissues affected by the neoplastic process. A skin graft may be used to reconstruct the external auditory canal. This may be harvested from the retroauricular region, the inner aspect of the arm, or from the hip or thigh.

The majority of otologic surgery requires the use of a surgical microscope. The presence of the microscope has a number of implications for anesthesia. Often, the OR table is turned 180°. Of critical importance is that the patient remain entirely motionless. Any adjustment of equipment or position can have profound consequences during microdissection. Therefore, the surgeon must be made aware of any plans that may result in patient motion–even those that would otherwise seem insignificant. During microsurgery, even small amounts of bleeding can have dramatic implications, thus maintenance of a stable low blood pressure is useful.

One common theme to otologic procedures is the need to identify and preserve the **facial nerve.** The 7th cranial nerve winds its way through the temporal bone from its origin in the brainstem to the stylomastoid foramen. It passes through the middle ear and is at risk during almost all otologic procedures. The use of an EMG-based neural monitor is now commonplace to assess neural function. The monitor will not function if paralytic agents are in use, and their untimely use can prevent the surgeon from receiving critical warnings regarding nerve activity. As a standard rule, always check with the surgeon prior to the administration of any paralytic agents during otologic procedures.

Although the internal carotid artery and jugular bulb pass through the middle ear, significant vascular injury is quite rare. Most if not all bleeding can be readily controlled with packing in the surgical field. The use of absorbable gelatin sponges (e.g., Gelfoam) is routine to hold reconstructive materials in place and also can help with hemostasis. Venous injury, such as laceration of the sigmoid sinus during mastoidectomy, can usually be controlled using bone wax or with other hemostatic materials (e.g., Surgicel) held with pressure against the site of bleeding. In the case of a large venous injury, a **venous air embolism** can potentially result, and timely communication between the surgical and anesthesia teams can facilitate its identification and treatment. More severe arterial injury may require additional neuroradiologic or neurosurgical intervention. Even in these rare instances, hemodynamically significant blood loss can usually be avoided with prompt and secure packing.

The temporal bone abuts the dura of the middle fossa above and the posterior fossa behind. Rarely, transgression of the dura can result either as the result of pathology or from dissection of adjacent tissues. When this occurs, the surgeon can usually close the leak using autologous tissues. The surgeon may request administration of a Valsalva maneuver to check the integrity of the repair.

Usual preop diagnoses: Acute or chronic otitis media, cholesteatoma, hearing loss (conductive or sensorineural), otosclerosis, aural atresia (acquired or congenital), tympanic membrane perforation, temporal bone fracture, temporal bone neoplasm.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Postauricular or transcanal
Special instrumentation	Binocular surgical microscope, otologic micro-instruments, otologic drill, laser
Unique considerations	Complex microanatomy, no paralytics given need for facial nerve monitoring, possible avoidance of nitrous oxide
Antibiotics	Often administered preoperatively
Surgical time	< 1 h to > 4 h
EBL	Usually minimal
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Infection, hearing loss, vertigo, facial nerve dysfunction, spinal fluid leak
Pain score	1–6, typically mild

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Infectious, traumatic, congenital, neoplastic
Associated conditions	Hearing loss, head trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for ear surgery are generally young and healthy, and most procedures are performed on an outpatient basis. Communicating with these patients may be difficult 2° ↓hearing ability. Myringotomy and pressure equalization (PE) tube insertion are very short procedures. In contrast, ossicular and tympanic membrane reconstruction with facial nerve preservation may last several hours. Patients presenting for external ear reconstructions may have associated congenital abnormalities, which should be considered preop.

Respiratory	Patients may present with Sx of concurrent URI including cough (See Anesthetic Considerations for Tonsillectomy, p. 209). **Tests:** As indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	No special considerations. **Tests:** EKG in older population.
Neurological	Document brief neuro exam (including facial nerve function) and extent of any hearing loss
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA, often with moderate controlled hypotension.

Induction	Standard iv induction with propofol is used most often. If GETA is planned, a single intubating dose of an intermediate acting nondepolarizing NMB (e.g., rocuronium) is usually inconsequential with regard to intraop monitoring of the facial nerve. In the absence of contraindications, succinylcholine can also be safely administered for tracheal intubation. Coadministration of iv remifentanil bolus 3–4 μg/kg (or alfentanil 40–60 μg/kg) given over 90 sec, and propofol iv bolus 2–2.5 mg/kg, will provide excellent intubating conditions without the need for NMB in the majority of patients. PPV through the ETT or LMA are used most commonly, although spontaneous ventilation techniques can also be employed in selected patient.
Maintenance	Moderate ↓ BP (see Introduction, p. 178) may be requested. If an inhalational agent is used, N_2O is best avoided. Inhalational anesthesia, balanced inhalational anesthesia, TIVA, and even combined propofol-inhalational anesthetics have all been successfully used for maintenance. Sevoflurane may be preferred for outpatient surgery: it improves the quality of postop patient recovery, shortens the discharge time, is associated with reduced incidence of coughing and postop agitation compared to desflurane, and produces less somnolence and PONV compared to isoflurane. The use of an LMA in children undergoing myringotomy and PE tube placement may be associated with ↓ incidence of intraop hypoxemia and better operating conditions as compared to the standard face mask technique. The second-generation LMA family of devices (LMA-Proseal™ or LMA-Supreme) will offer the greatest advantages (see Introduction, p. 178).

Maintenance (cont'd)	As the patient's head is usually maintained in a fixed position (turned away from the surgeon), the position of these devices remains stable. A total intraoperative dose of fentanyl can be safely limited to 2–3 mcg/kg in the majority of patients, especially when remifentanil is used intraoperatively.	
Emergence	At the end of the procedure, the patient's head is moved during dressing application, which may provoke gagging or bucking. Smooth emergence from anesthesia is mandatory. The use of the LMA eliminates laryngeal stimulation and facilitates smooth emergence. If postextubation laryngospasm occurs, the use of CPAP or face mask ventilation may be contraindicated, as it may unseat the tympanic membrane graft or disrupt other repairs. Postoperative pain is usually mild-to-moderate, but may be minimal (e.g., laser stapedectomy, tympanoplasty) or severe (e.g., radical mastoidectomy).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 3–4 mL/kg/h	Blood loss is usually minimal. An IV is usually placed at the side where the surgeon is positioned, to eliminate the possibility of triggering sudden surgical tremor during cuff inflation.
Control of bleeding	Head-up position (10–15°), per surgeon's preference Injection of epinephrine-containing solutions by surgeon Deliberate moderate ↓ BP	These special considerations are applicable to surgical procedures carried out under microscopic control, where even the smallest quantity of blood may interfere with visualization.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes ✓ opposite ear	The LMA should be diligently secured midline. Surgical drapes can usually be arranged in a way that allows the anesthesiologist limited access to the patient's airway.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Facial nerve injury	Liberal prophylactic use of antiemetics is indicated.
Pain management	Fentanyl (outpatient) MSO_4 (inpatient)	The use of a PCA may be appropriate in older children and adults.

Suggested Readings

1. Dal D, Celiker V, Ozer E, et al: Induced hypotension for tympanoplasty: a comparison of desflurane, isoflurane and sevoflurane. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2004; 21:902–6.
2. Degoute CS: Controlled hypotension: a guide to drug choice. *Drugs* 2007; 67:1053–76.
3. Erhan E, Ugur G, Alper I, et al: Tracheal intubation without muscle relaxants: remifentanil or alfentanil in combination with propofol. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2003; 20:37–43.
4. Gupta A, Stierer T, Zuckerman R, et al: Comparison of recovery profile after ambulatory anesthesia with propofol, isoflurane, sevoflurane and desflurane: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg* 2004; 98:632–41.
5. Jellish WS, Leonetti JP, Avramov A, et al: Remifentanil-based anesthesia versus a propofol technique for otologic surgical procedures. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2000; 122:222–7.
6. Jellish WS, Leonetti JP, Fahey K, et al: Comparison of 3 different anesthetic techniques on 24-hour recovery after otologic surgical procedures. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1999; 120:406–11.
7. Jellish WS, Owen K, Edelstein S, et al: Standard anesthetic technique for middle ear surgical procedures: a comparison of desflurane and sevoflurane. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2005; 133:269–74.
8. Liang S, Irwin MG: Review of anesthesia for middle ear surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2010; 28:519–28.
9. Nekhendzy V: Anesthesia for otologic and neurotologic surgery. In: Abdelmakak B, Doyle J, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*, Chapter 29. Cambridge University Press, New York: 2013.
10. Richa F, Yazigi A, Sleilaty G, et al: Comparison between dexmedetomidine and remifentanil for controlled hypotension during tympanoplasty. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2008; 25:369–74.

11. Ruby RF, Webster AC, Morley-Forster PK, Dain S: Laryngeal mask airway in paediatric otolaryngologic surgery. *J Otolaryng* 1995; 24:288–91.
12. Siddik-Sayyid SM, Taha SK, Kanazi GE, et al: Excellent intubating conditions with remifentanil-propofol and either low-dose rocuronium or succinylcholine. *Can J Anaesth* 2009; 56:483–8.
13. White PF, Tang J, Wender RH, et al: Desflurane versus sevoflurane for maintenance of outpatient anesthesia: the effect on early versus late recovery and perioperative coughing. *Anesth Analg* 2009; 109:387–93.

NEUROTOLOGICAL SKULL BASE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

The skull base refers to the floor of the cranial cavity and can be divided into anterior, middle, and posterior fossae. It is formed by the frontal, ethmoid, sphenoid, temporal, and occipital bones. Neurotologists primarily deal with lesions in the posterior fossa, which is bordered by the clivus (anterior), temporal bone (lateral), and occipital bone (posterior). An axial view of the skull identifying these structures is shown in Fig. 3-14.

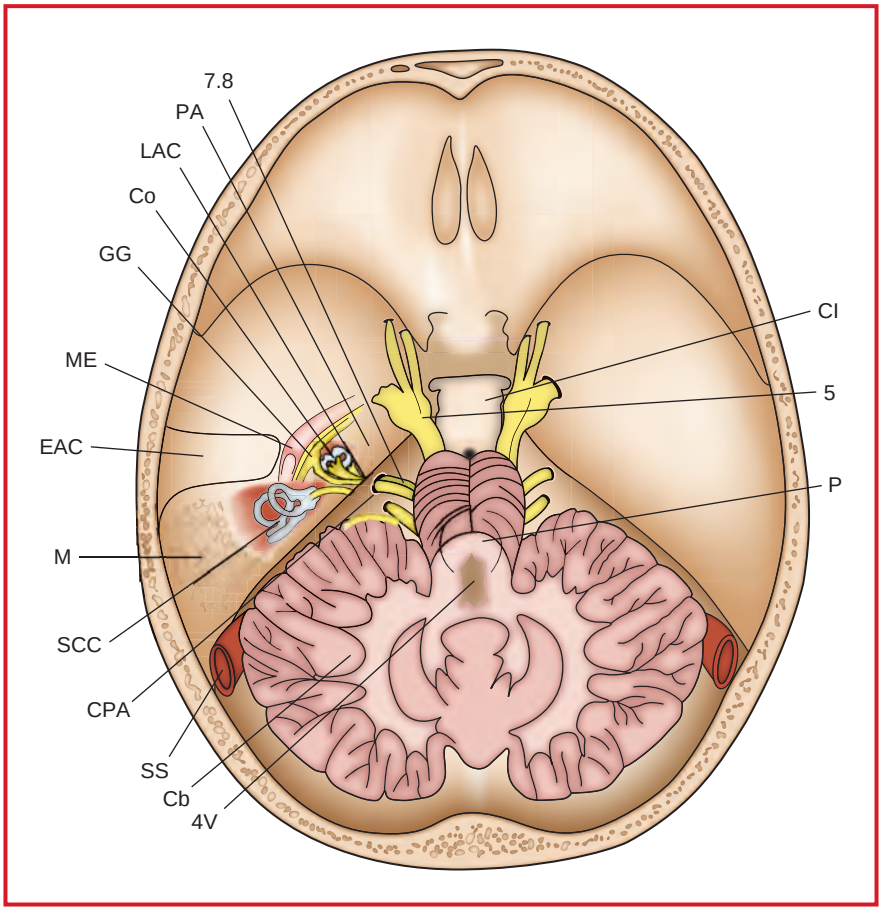


Figure 3-14. An axial view of the skull through the level of the internal auditory canal and cerebellopontine angle. *5*, Trigeminal nerve; *7*, facial nerve; *8*, audiovestibular nerve; *PA*, petrous apex; *IAC*, internal auditory canal; *Co*, cochlea; *GG*, geniculate ganglion of the facial nerve; *ME*, middle ear; *EAC*, external auditory canal; *M*, mastoid air cell system; *SCC*, semicircular canals; *CPA*, cerebellopontine angle; *SS*, sigmoid sinus; *4V*, 4th ventricle; *Cl*, clivus; *P*, pons; *Cb*, cerebellum. (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

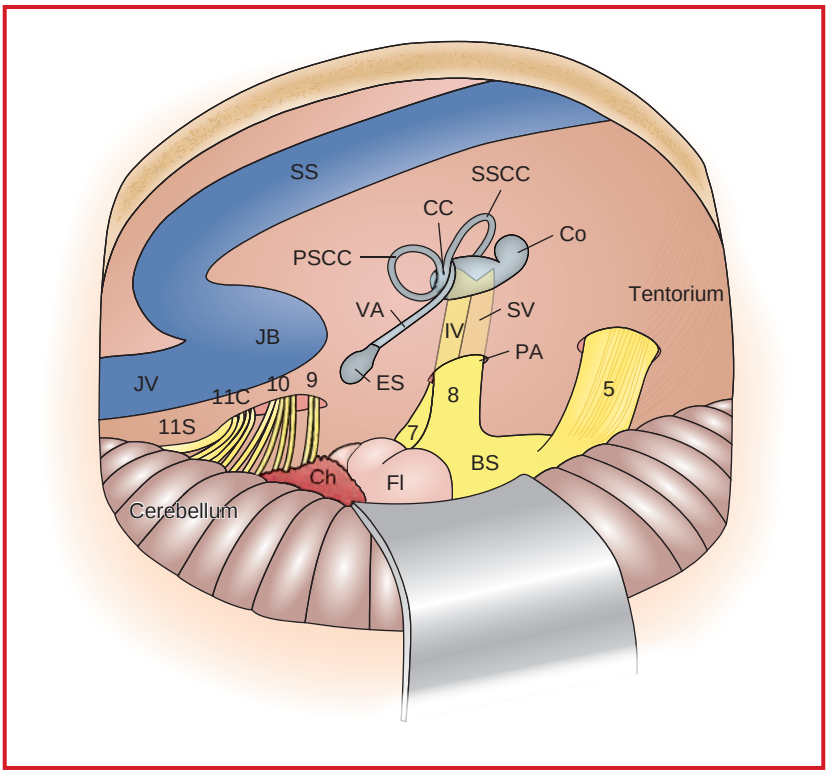


Figure 3-15. Anatomical relationships of the cerebellopontine angle shown through a retrosigmoid posterior fossa craniotomy. *JV*, jugular vein; *JB*, jugular bulb; SS, sigmoid sinus; *11s*, spinal component of the accessory nerve; *11c*, cranial component of the accessory nerve; *10*, vagus nerve; *9*, glossopharyngeal nerve; *Ch*, choroid plexus emanating from the lateral recess of the 4th ventricle; *Fl*, flocculus; *BS*, brainstem surface (pons); *5*, trigeminal nerve; *7*, facial nerve; *8*, audiovestibular nerve; *PA*, porus acousticus; *IV*, inferior vestibular nerve; *SV*, superior vestibular nerve; *ES*, endolymphatic sac; *VA*, vestibular aqueduct; *PSCC*, posterior semicircular canal; *CC*, common crus; *SSCC*, superior semicircular canal; *Co*, cochlea. (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

The term **skull base surgery** is a misnomer as the majority of lesions treated are located adjacent to the brainstem and not intrinsic to the skull base itself. Removal of the skull base bone allows exposure to these lesions while minimizing cerebral and cerebellar retraction.

The cerebellopontine angle (CPA) is a fluid-filled space containing the facial nerve (VII) and vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII) coursing laterally toward the internal auditory canal. A depiction of the CPA and associated cranial nerves is shown in Fig. 3-15. This is one of the most commonly approached areas in skull base surgery and lesions include vestibular schwannomas (91.3%), meningiomas (3.1%), epidermoids (2.4%), nonvestibular schwannomas (1.4%), and arachnoid cysts (0.5%).

Vestibular schwannomas (also known as **acoustic neuromas**) are removed via three surgical approaches: translabyrinthine, retrosigmoid, and middle fossa. The translabyrinthine approach uses a postauricular incision to access the temporal bone (Fig. 3-16). Retraction of the temporal lobe and cerebellum is minimized as the entire mastoid and labyrinth are removed to create access. This approach results in complete sensorineural hearing loss and is most commonly used in patients with large tumors and/or nonserviceable hearing. Patients with serviceable hearing may elect for a hearing conservation approach for their tumors (retrosigmoid or middle fossa). The retrosigmoid approach uses a more posterior craniotomy between the sigmoid and transverse sinuses. The cerebellum is retracted posterior away from the petrous face of the temporal bone (Fig. 3-15). Disadvantages include the increased

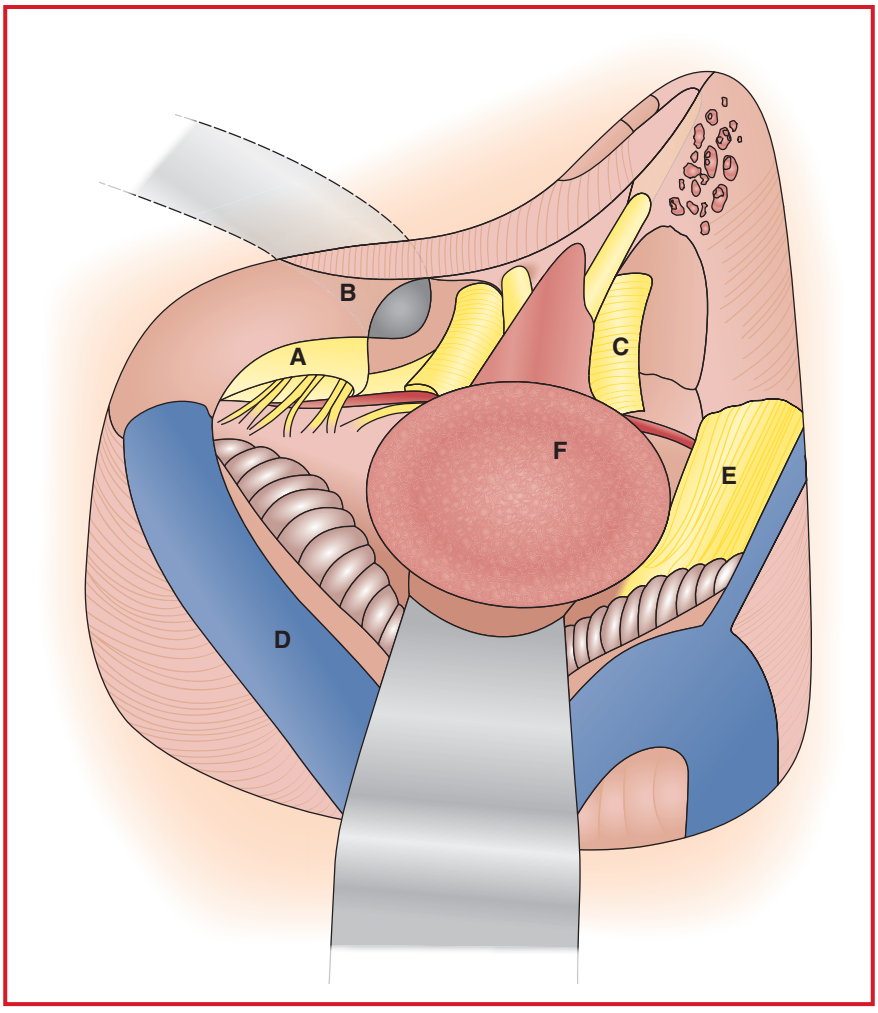


Figure 3-16. Typical left translabyrinthine posterior fossa craniotomy exposure of a medium-sized tumor. Inferiorly, the lower cranial nerves **(A)** are visible, and the jugular bulb **(B)** has been identified. Troughs have been drilled above and below the IAC, and the dura **(C)** has been reflected off the tumor surface. The sigmoid sinus **(D)** and cerebellum are gently retracted posteriorly. The trigeminal nerve **(E)** is located superiorly. The facial nerve **(F)** takes a variable and often serpentine course across the medial side of the tumor. (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

incidence of postop headache and the need for rigid skull fixation (e.g., Mayfield). The middle fossa approach places the craniotomy above the ear and requires retraction of the temporal lobe (Fig. 3-17). This approach has the highest rate of hearing conservation, but can only be used in smaller tumors without increasing the risk of postop facial palsy.

Another commonly approached area is the jugular foramen, which lies at the junction of the petrous apex and occipital bone. This foramen connects the intracranial compartment to the neck and contains the glossopharyngeal nerve (IX), vagus nerve (X), accessory nerve (XI), jugular bulb, and inferior petrosal sinus. The most common tumors in this area are paragangliomas. Paragangliomas are divided into two groups: (a) adrenal paragangliomas (also known as pheochromocytomas) and (b) extraadrenal paragangliomas located in the abdomen, chest, and head and neck regions. In the jugular foramen, these tumors are often referred to as **glomus jugulare**. Less common pathologies in this area include meningiomas and lower cranial nerve schwannomas.

Glomus jugulare tumors are highly vascular, and patients undergo preop embolization before surgery. Two to 4 U of autologous or crossmatched blood are kept available depending on the size and extent of the tumor. Large-bore

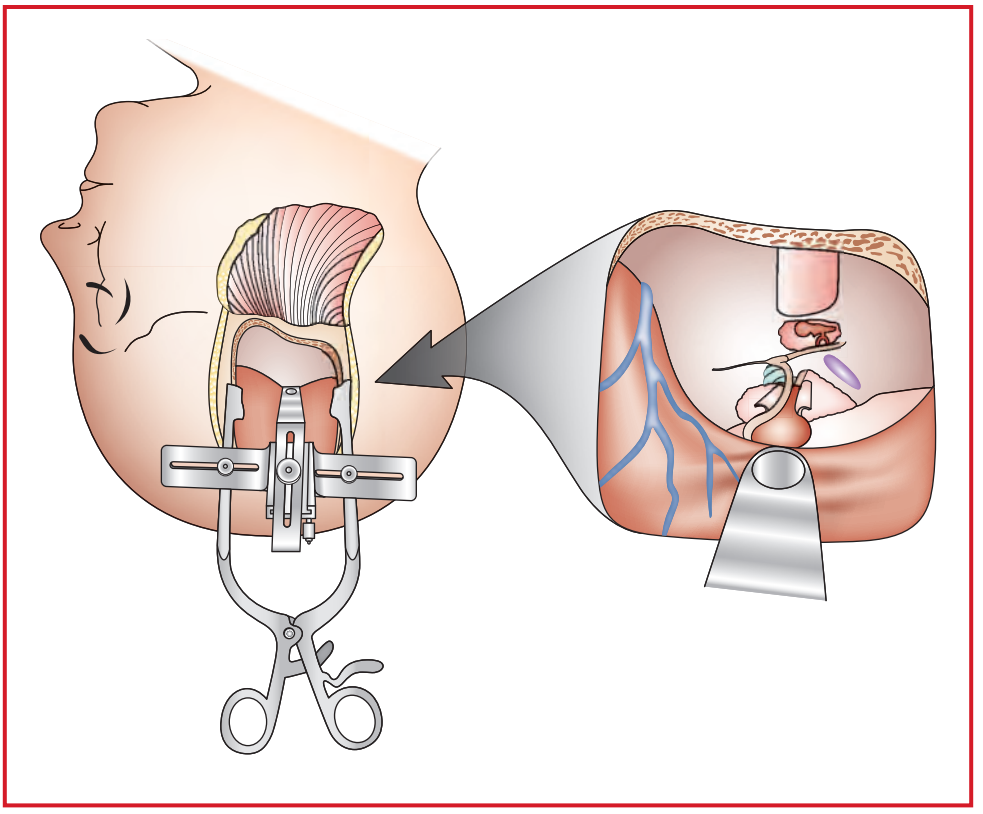


Figure 3-17. Middle fossa exposure of a small right-sided tumor. The retractor is engaged over the posterior lip of the petrous bone and retracts the temporal lobe. Bone has been removed around the IAC, and the dura has been opened to expose the tumor. The facial nerve typically courses across the superior aspect of the tumor surface. (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

ivs should be placed in case rapid transfusion is needed. In addition to a lateral craniotomy similar to the translabyrinthine approach, a limited neck dissection is performed to gain vascular control of the jugular vein and carotid artery. This transjugular craniotomy exposes the entire jugular fossa and involves resection of the involved sigmoid sinus and jugular vein (Fig. 3-18). New lower cranial nerve deficits occur in 25–50% of patients; therefore appropriate airway and aspiration precautions must be taken. Rehabilitation often involves speech therapy and vocal cord medialization. Tracheotomy and PEG tube placement are rarely necessary.

In all of the preceding craniotomies, the patient is turned 180° away from the anesthesiologist. This allows room for the operating microscope, scrub assistant, and surgeon to all be placed around the head of the patient (Figs. 3-19 and 3-20). The patient's head is turned to one side to allow exposure of the lateral cranium and neck. In the retrosigmoid craniotomy, a Mayfield is used for rigid skull fixation. As lateral table rotation is often used during these cases, three straps should be used to secure the patient, and the contralateral arm should be well padded in order to avoid ulnar neuropathy. Neurophysiologic monitoring (EMG, auditory brainstem reponses, and SSEPs) is used throughout the case; therefore, muscle relaxants should be avoided.

Stimulation of the trigeminal or vagus nerves can cause bradycardia; therefore, the surgeon should be informed of any unexpected physiologic changes occurring with the patient. Stable low blood pressure is useful in controlling slow bleeding in the surgical field. Significant hemodynamic blood loss is rare and can usually be controlled with secure packing. Large venous injuries may result in air embolism, and arterial injuries may require the assistance of interventional neuroradiology. Having 1 U of cross-matched blood available is prudent in most craniotomies, whereas 2–4 U may be required in glomus jugulare cases. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leaks are controlled using an abdominal fat graft.

Usual Preop Diagnoses: Vestibular schwannoma (acoustic neuroma); meningioma; paraganglioma (glomus jugulare); lower cranial nerve schwannoma; epidermoid cyst; arachnoid cyst; cholesterol granuloma; chondrosarcoma; chordoma

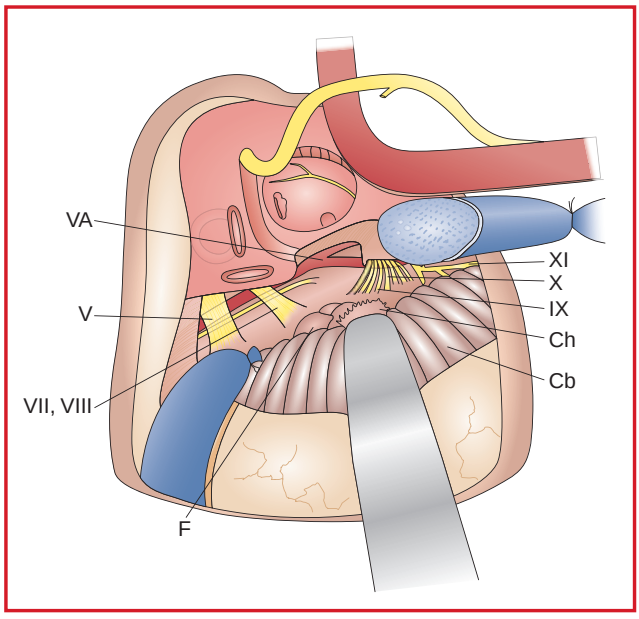


Figure 3-18. Transjugular craniotomy illustrating the degree of intracranial exposure obtained following resection of the sigmoid-jugular system and wide opening of the posterior fossa dura. Note the multiple small rootlets of the lower cranial nerves emanating from the lateral surface of the medulla. In contrast to extracranial procedures, the sigmoid sinus is ligated proximally rather than packed extralumenally. While this illustration depicts anterior rerouting of the facial nerve, this is not necessary in most intracranial jugular foramen tumors. The sigmoid sinus has been controlled with a suture ligature just distal to the transverse-sigmoid junction. (VA–vertebral artery, F–flocculus, Ch–choroid, Cb–cerebellum, V–trigeminal nerve, VII–facial nerve, VIII–audiovestibular nerve, IX–glossopharyngeal nerve, X–vagus nerve, XI–accessory nerve). (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery.* Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, turned 180° from anesthesia (Figs. 3-19 and 3-20). Three straps to secure patient and arms well padded. Mayfield rigid fixation in retrosigmoid craniotomies
Incision	Postauricular or temporal with possible extension into neck depending on approach
Special instrumentation	Microscope, neurophysiologic monitoring team, ultrasonic aspirator, neck dissection and vascular instruments (transjugular), middle fossa retractor (middle fossa), otologic drill
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone 2 g iv or vancomycin 1 g iv for CSF penetration
Procedure time	4–12 h
Closing considerations	Minimize coughing and ↑ICP. Abdominal fat often harvested for CSF leak closure. Head dressing may be placed.
EBL	100–1000 mL depending on approach and tumor. One unit of cross-matched or autologous blood for craniotomies (2–4 U for glomus jugulare tumors) should be available.
Postop care	Extubation in majority of cases. Monitoring in ICU for the first night. Minimal sedatives to allow neurological monitoring. Airway and aspiration precautions in patients with possible lower cranial nerve palsies.
Mortality	Rare

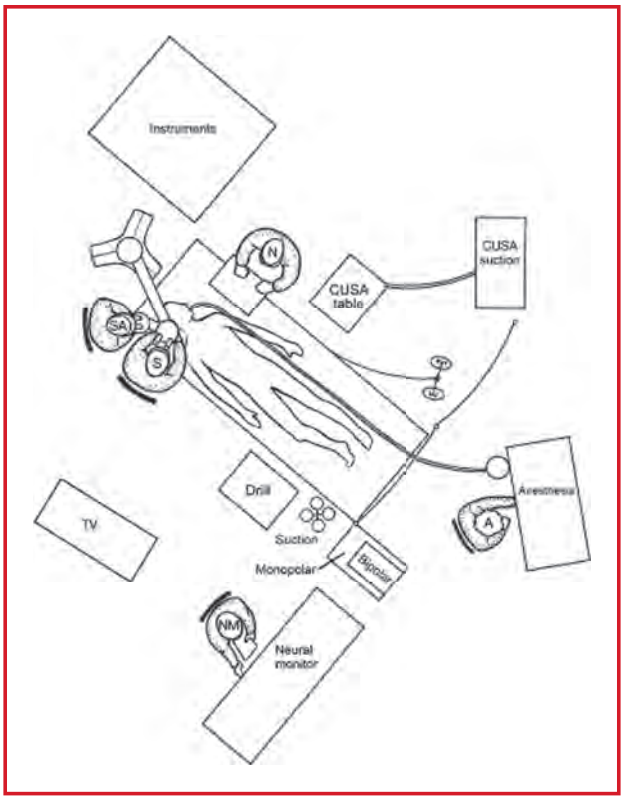


Figure 3-19. Operating room setup for posterior fossa craniotomy (translabyrinthine, retrosigmoid, and transjugular). (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	Hearing loss (approach dependent) Vertigo Facial nerve dysfunction Hoarseness Aspiration CSF leak Meningitis Stroke (rare)
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	5th to 6th decades for most pathology Younger patients in tumors associated with neurofibromatosis (NF-2)
Male:Female	1:1 for vestibular schwannoma
Incidence	1/100,000
Etiology	Neoplastic
Associated conditions	Hearing loss (use assistive devices when possible), vertigo, lower cranial nerve dysfunction (aspiration precautions), neurofibromatosis

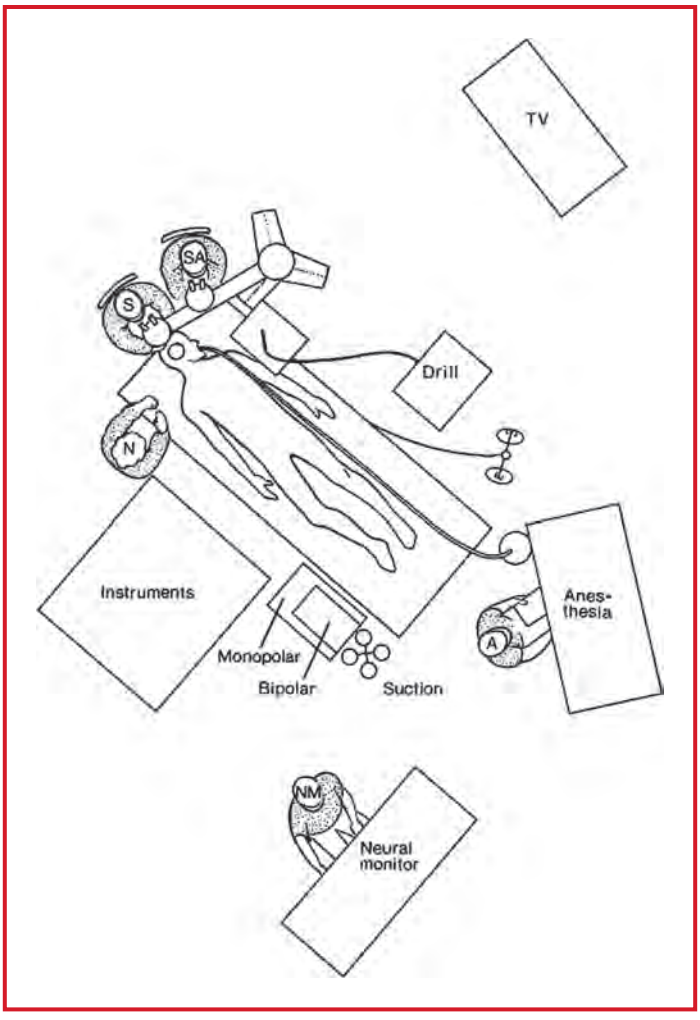


Figure 3-20. Operating room setup for middle fossa craniotomy. (Republished with permission from Jackler RK: *Atlas of Neurotology and Skull Base Surgery*. Mosby, St. Louis: 1996. Copyright Dr. R. K. Jackler © 2007.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR NEUROTOLOGIC SURGERY

PREOPERATIVE

Large **vestibular schwannomas** (*acoustic neuromas*) can compress the brainstem, cause cranial nerve deficits, and occasionally produce symptoms of ↑ ICP. If ↑ ICP is present, anesthetic management should follow the same general principles as for other intracranial mass lesions (see p. 675).

Highly **vascular tumors** are usually embolized during preop neuroangiography. If the tumor's blood supply is from the anterior and posterior ethmoidal arteries, these vessels cannot be safely embolized unless the patient has already lost vision. ICA balloon occlusion test is performed during angiography if the ICA is involved or encased.

Large **glomus tumors** (GT) are capable of secreting catecholamines and occasionally serotonin, presenting with symptoms of pheochromocytoma (e.g., hypertension, sweating, cardiovascular instability) or carcinoid syndrome. Urine and plasma catecholamine levels should be routinely checked preop for all extensive GT, even if the patient is asymptomatic. The same preop pharmacologic stabilization used for patients with a pheochromocytoma may be required for these patients (see p. 675). Dehydration and/or electrolyte abnormalities must be corrected preop. Intraop, the release of histamine and bradykinin can cause bronchospasm, tachycardia, and both hypotension and hypertension. Large GTs can cause cranial nerve IX, X, XI, and XII palsies, which may predispose to airway compromise, either by obstruction or aspiration (the risk of gastroparesis is increased in these patients).

The **anterior skull base** is a common location for many intradural and extradural cranial and/or facial pathologies. The anterior cranial base surgery may involve combined transethmoid incision and bifrontal craniotomy approaches. With that approach, the intraop surgical navigation set is frequently used, and a lumbar drain may be placed after induction of anesthesia.

Respiratory	GT patients may be at ↑ risk for aspiration (cranial nerve impairment) or airway obstruction depending on tumor location. GT may release histamine or bradykinin → bronchospasm **Tests:** Imaging studies
Cardiovascular	~5% of GTs secrete catecholamines → cardiovascular instability **Tests:** ECG, UA catecolamine metabolites
Neurological	Examine cranial nerves and document preop function. Check for Sx of ↑ ICP
Laboratory	CBC; coags; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	In the absence of airway compromise standard premed (p. 675) is appropriate.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The essential anesthesia considerations for neurotological surgery are largely similar to otological surgical procedures (see p. 675). The anesthesiologist must be familiar with the principles of neuroanesthesia and understand both the pathological process involved and the planned surgical approach.

Standard premedication with short-acting benzodiazepine (e.g., iv midazolam) is warranted in the majority of cases, but should be done with caution or avoided if symptoms of ↑ ICP are present. IV antibiotics with good CSF penetration (e.g., iv ceftriaxone 1–2 g) are uniformly used. Corticosteroids (e.g., iv dexamethasone 10–12 mg) may or may not be given, depending on the size of the tumor and presence of brain edema.

The most critical aspect of the skull base surgery is identification and preservation of the cranial nerves. Intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring (IOM) is used widely, especially when the tumors are located at the cervicomedullary junction, jugular foramen (JF), the upper clivus, when the tumors are large, and during revision surgeries. Cranial nerves VII, IX, X, XI, and XII are most commonly monitored.

These surgeries can be extremely lengthy, and meticulous attention to proper patient positioning is paramount.

Induction	Preop airway compromise is rare. Standard GETA is used in the majority of cases. Patients with GT or other lesions extending into the JF, upper neck, or skull base may require intraop identification and monitoring of the vagus nerve. In these patients, placement of specialized ETT (e.g., Xomed ETT, Medtronic Xomed Inc., Jacksonville, FL) to monitor EMG activity in the vocal cords may be requested by the surgeon. The use of an intermediate-acting NMB (e.g., rocuronium) for tracheal intubation is inconsequential with regard to IOM. In patients with ↑ ICP, standard induction precautions should be observed. With large tumors, a lumbar drain will be placed after induction to remove CSF to reduce surgical brain retraction.
Maintenance	The anesthetic technique should facilitate IOM. Intraop use of NMB is avoided. Remifentanil-based techniques, allowing a safe reduction of the concentration of inhalational agent to ≤0.5 minimal alveolar concentration (MAC) are widely used. Administration of iv mannitol (0.5–1 g/kg), started after the scalp incision, and the use of mild hyperventilation will facilitate brain relaxation for dural entry. Patients should be kept euvolemic, and electrolyte status should be monitored during the surgery. Stimulation of the trigeminal or vagus nerves during surgery can cause ↓↓ HR, ↓ BP or ↑BP, arrhythmias, and even transient asystole, and the surgeon should be promptly informed of their occurrence.

Emergence	A smooth extubation is important because coughing and bucking on the ETT may provoke postop bleeding, increase cerebral edema, and cause tension pneumocephalus (TP). Tracheal extubation is carried out in the majority of cases. The exceptions are the patients who had undergone free flap reconstruction of the cranial base and possibly those where cranial nerve deficits existed preop. New paralysis of the lower cranial nerves with dysphasia remains the most serious complication of surgery, and delayed extubation and tracheotomy may be required in some patients. The patients are observed in ICU overnight.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: large-bore access NS/LR @ 3–4 mL/kg/h	With the exception of GT, blood loss is usually gradual and rarely requires transfusion.
Monitoring	Standard monitors for induction (p. 676). Arterial line ± CVP Foley catheter	A-line is placed after induction of anesthesia. CVP should be guided by the patient's medical history; consider if significant blood loss is anticipated. A Foley catheter is used routinely.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Massive blood loss Cranial nerve injury VAE Aspiration	Glomus tumors are highly vascular. Airway compromise may preclude extubation. Monitor for VAE (e.g., $ETCO_2$).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Trigeminal and vagal reflexes Cranial nerve injury Tension pneumocephalus	IV atropine. Extubation considerations (cranial nerve deficits)
Pain management	MSO4/Dilaudid	The use of a PCA may be appropriate in older children and adults.

Suggested Readings

1. Abuzayed B, Canbaz B, Sanus GZ, et al: Combined craniofacial resection of anterior skull base tumors: long-term results and experience of single institution. *Neurosurg Rev* 2011; 34:101–13.
2. Gil Z, Cohen JT, Spektor S, et al: Anterior skull base surgery without prophylactic airway diversion procedures. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2003; 128:681–5.
3. Heman-Ackah, SE, Golfinos, JG, Roland, JT Jr: Management of surgical complications and failures in accoustic neuroma surgery. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2012; 45(2):455–70.
4. Jackler RK, Sim DW: Retrosigmoid approach to tumors of the cerebellopontine angle. In: Brackmann DE, Shelton C, Arriaga MA, eds. *Otologic Surgery*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia: 1994, 619–36.
5. Jackson LE, Roberson JB Jr: Vagal nerve monitoring in surgery of the skull base: a comparison of efficacy of three techniques. *Am J Otol* 1999; 20:649–56.
6. Jellish WS, Murdoch J, Leonetti JP: Perioperative management of complex skull base surgery: the anesthesiologist's point of view. *Neurosurg Focus* 2002; 12(5):e5.
7. Jensen NF: Glomus tumors of the head and neck: anesthetic considerations. *Anesth Analg* 1994; 78:112–9.
8. Kaplan MJ, Fischbein NJ, Harsh GR: Anterior skull base surgery. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2005; 38:107–31.
9. Lopez JR: The use of evoked potentials in intraoperative neurophysiologic monitoring. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am* 2004; 15:63–84.
10. Schaller B, Cornelius JF, Prabhakar H, et al: Trigemino-Cardiac Reflex Examination Group (TCREG): The trigemino-cardiac reflex: an update of the current knowledge. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2009; 21:187–95.
11. Smith MF, Roberson JB: Avoidance and management of complications. In: Brackmann DE, Shelton C, Arriaga MA, eds. *Otologic Surgery*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia: 1994, 359–71.
12. Topsakal C, Al-Mefty O, Bulsara KR, et al: Intraoperative monitoring of lower cranial nerves in skull base surgery: technical report and review of 123 monitored cases. *Neurosurg Rev* 2008; 31:45–53.

RECONSTRUCTIVE SURGERY FOR SLEEP-DISORDERED BREATHING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Robert W. Riley, Nelson B. Powell, Donald M. Sesso, and Jerome E. Hester

Description: The surgical approaches to the upper airway attempt to relieve obstruction occurring most commonly at the level of the palate, base of tongue, or pharynx. These fall into three categories: (a) classic procedures that directly enlarge the upper airway; (b) specialized procedures that directly enlarge the upper airway; and (c) tracheotomy to bypass the pharyngeal portion of the upper airway. The surgeon performs a preop evaluation, including complete head and neck exam, fiberoptic examination of the upper airway, and cephalometric radiographs. This, together with the results of the polysomnogram, will enable the surgeon to determine what levels of the airway need to be surgically modified. Individuals with severe obstruction may require a multistage approach to treatment.

Uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP) (Fig. 3-21) is a procedure that removes a rim of the soft palate, including the uvula. This shortens and tightens this tissue, thus preventing collapse during sleep. The tonsils, if present, are

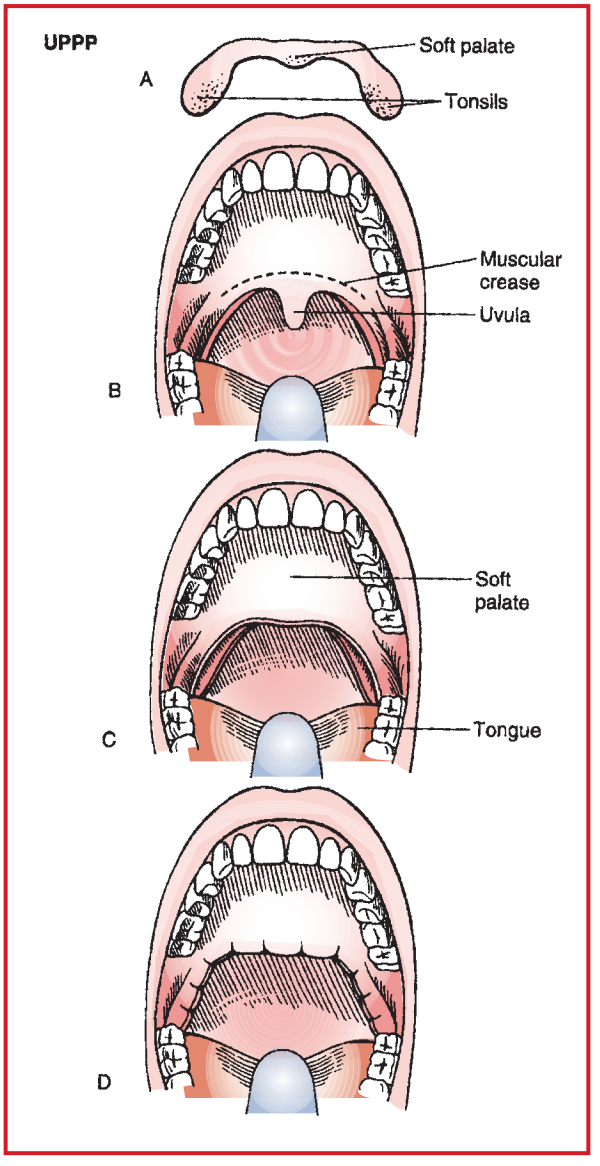


Figure 3-21. Uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP): **(A&B)** tonsils and redundant soft palate are excised; **(C)** mucosal flaps are prepared for closure; **(D)** the soft palate is closed to itself, and the anterior and posterior tonsillar pillars are sutured to each other.

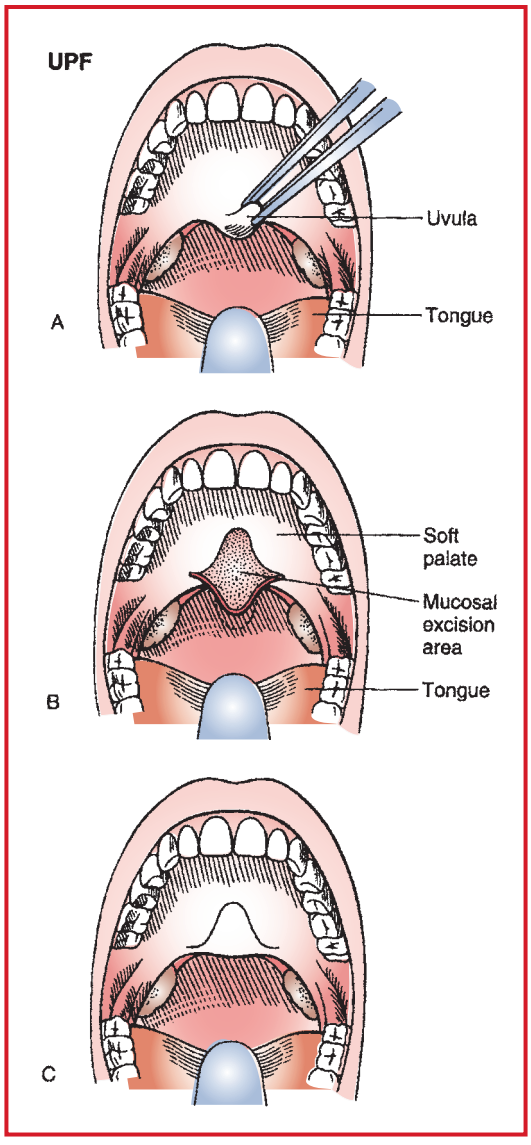


Figure 3-22. Uvulopalatal flap (UPF): **(A)** uvula is reflected back to the hard palate to identify the muscular crease; **(B)** mucosa on the oral side of the uvula and soft palate are removed, and part of the uvula is amputated; **(C)** mucosal incisions are closed with absorbable suture.

removed. The muscular crease of the palate is used as a landmark to prevent overly aggressive resection, which could → velopharyngeal insufficiency (VPI), an uncommon but serious complication. The wound is then closed, using interrupted absorbable sutures.

Uvulopalatal flap (UPF) (Fig. 3-22) is a variation of UPPP, used for treating palatal obstruction. Rather than excising a rim of the soft palate, the mucosa of the anterior aspect of the uvula is removed, along with a corresponding area of the soft palate. The uvula is then reflected superiorly and sutured into place with absorbable suture. This procedure may be done in combination with a tonsillectomy. UPF is theoretically reversible if signs of VPI become evident. UPF also may be somewhat less painful than UPPP.

Uvulopalatopharyngoglossoplasty (UPPGP) is a rarely performed, intraoral procedure incorporating a modified UPPP with limited resection of the base of tongue for both retropalatal and retrolingual collapse.

Laser midline glossectomy (LMG) is used to enlarge the retrolingual airway by excision of ~2.5 cm × 5 cm of midline tongue tissue through an intraoral approach. This also may require lingual tonsillectomy, reduction of the aryepiglottic folds, and partial epiglottectomy (Fig. 3-23). LMG usually is combined with a tracheotomy for airway protection.

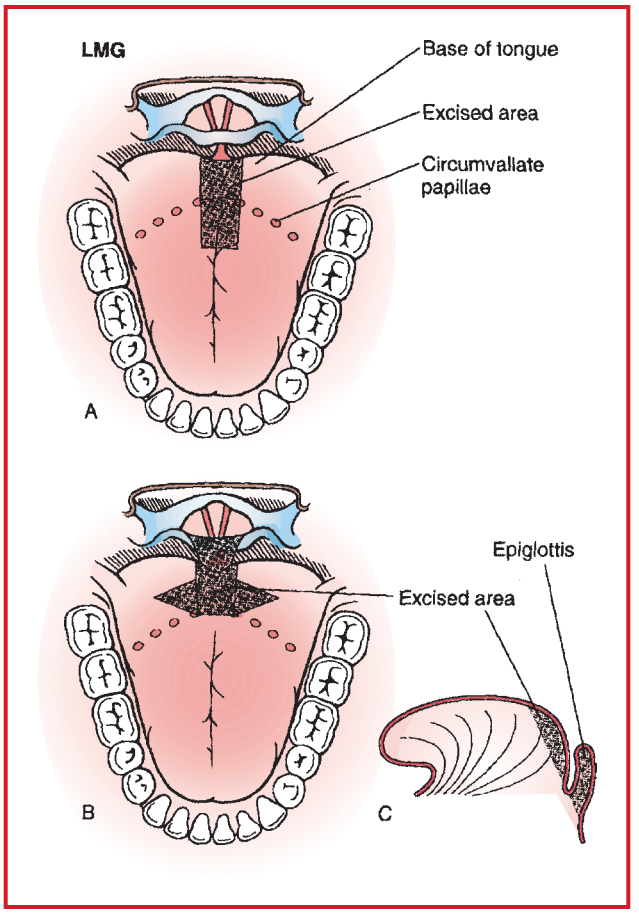


Figure 3-23. LMG/lingualplasty technique: **A:** Excision of a midline segment of the base of the tongue is performed with a laser or electrocautery; this excision occasionally is carried lateral. **B:** The remaining tongue muscle edges are reapproximated with absorbable suture. **C:** Lateral view of tongue.

Lingualplasty (LP) is the same procedure as LMG, except that additional tongue tissue is extirpated posteriorly and laterally to that portion removed by LMG (Fig. 3-23). It is usually combined with a tracheotomy (see below) for airway protection.

Inferior sagittal mandibular osteotomy and genioglossal advancement (MOGA) (Fig. 3-24) is an intraoral approach designed to enlarge the retrolingual area. This procedure relies on the firm attachment of the genioglossus muscle to the geniotubercle, a bony protuberance on the medial (lingual) aspect of the mandible. A mucosal incision is made intraorally, and soft tissue, including the mentalis muscle, is elevated off the mandible. Osteotomies, which include the geniotubercle on the inner cortex, are then performed. The segment is advanced and rotated to lock it in place. The outer cortex is removed, and the fragment is fixated to the inferior mandible with a titanium screw. The advancement is limited by the width of the mandible and laxity in the genioglossus muscle.

Hyoid myotomy and suspension (HM) is a retrolingual procedure that alleviates obstruction by redundant lateral pharyngeal tissue or a retrodisplaced epiglottis. A horizontal cervical incision above the hyoid bone is performed, and the dissection is carried down to the suprahyoid musculature. The midline hyoid bone is isolated and then advanced over the thyroid ala. It is then immobilized with two medial and two lateral permanent sutures (Fig. 3-25). The wound is closed, a drain placed, and a pressure dressing applied.

Maxillomandibular osteotomy and advancement (MMO) prevents retropalatal collapse through stenting of the superior pharyngeal muscles and widening of the nasopharyngeal inlet. It also minimizes retrolingual obstruction by placing the genioglossus muscle under tension, providing more room in the oral cavity for soft

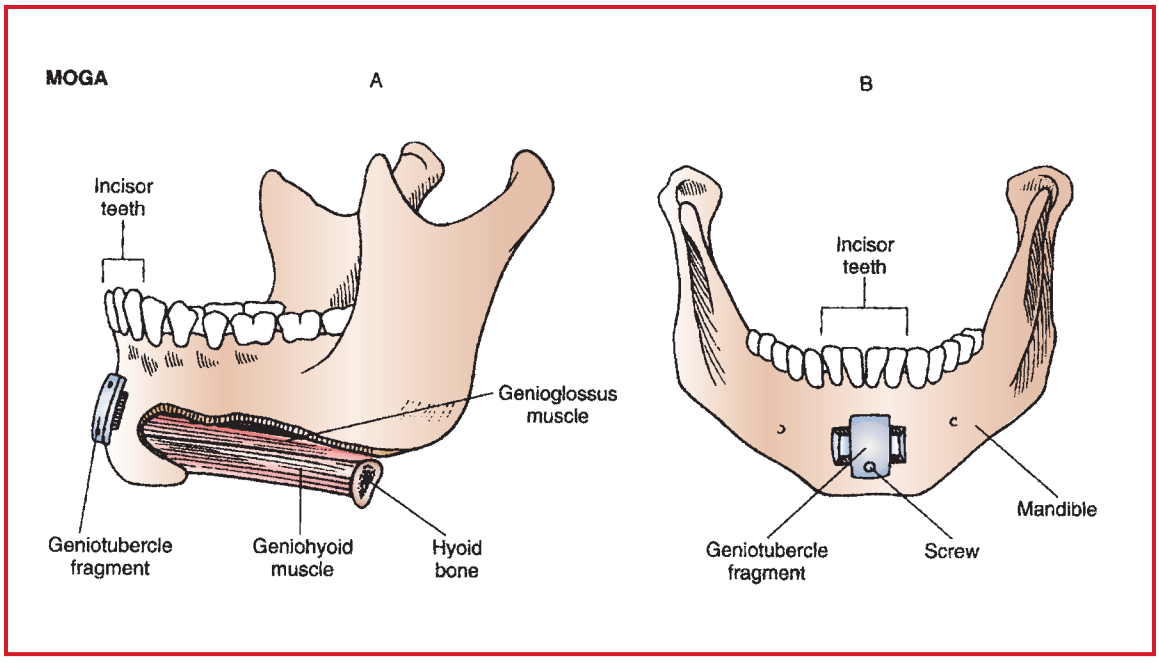


Figure 3-24. The mandibular osteotomy and genioglossus advancement (MOGA) technique: **A:** Lateral view. **B:** Anterior view. A rectangular anterior mandibular osteotomy below the incisor teeth is advanced, rotated, and immobilized.

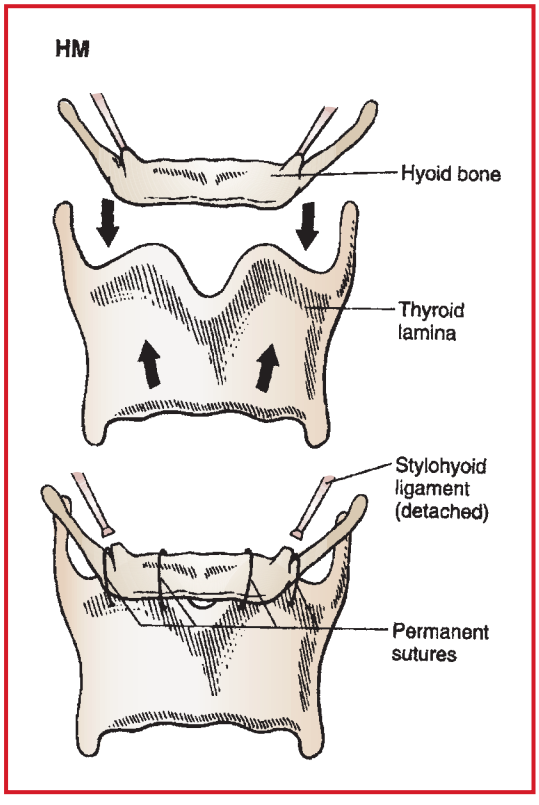


Figure 3-25. The hyoid myotomy (HM) and suspension technique: the hyoid is advanced over the thyroid lamina and immobilized.

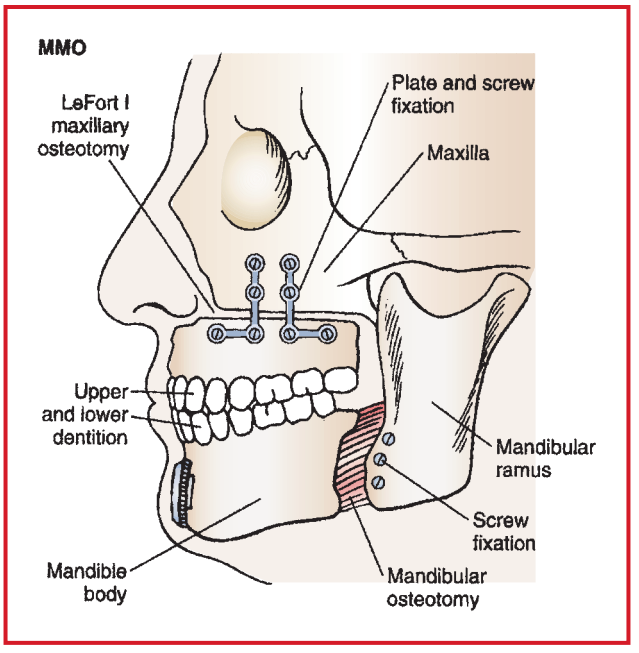


Figure 3-26. Maxillomandibular osteotomy (MMO) and advancement surgery technique.

tissues, and stenting the lateral pharyngeal wall. An outer-table cranial bone graft usually is performed, along with arch-bar placement (or orthodontic banding in an outpatient setting) prior to the osteotomies. A LeFort I maxillary osteotomy and bilateral sagittal-split mandibular osteotomy are performed. The skeletal arches are advanced forward ~10 mm and secured with the aid of a methylmethacrylate dental splint (Fig. 3-26). Immobilization with wires, plates, and screws follows, then wound closure, intermaxillary fixation, and pressure dressing application. This procedure usually is performed if previous upper airway procedures have not completely relieved the sleep-related obstruction.

Tracheotomy is a procedure performed to bypass pharyngeal obstruction. It is usually reserved for those individuals with severe OSA and may be used to secure the airway before other procedures. Preop evaluation, including fiberoptic examination, will help identify those individuals whose airways are so compromised that the tracheotomy should be done with the patient awake and under local infiltration anesthetic. A horizontal cervical incision is performed midway between the manubrium and the cricoid cartilage. Dissection is carried out in the midline down to the trachea, frequently transecting the thyroid gland; then, an opening in the superior trachea allows placement of a tracheotomy tube (see p. 190).

Radiofrequency (RF) probes use heat to cause reduction and tightening of tissue. This may be used to enable the airway at the level of the nose (by reduction of the turbinates), the palate, or the base of tongue. Whereas the nasal and palatal procedures are usually performed as outpatient under local anesthesia, the initial treatment of the base of tongue commonly is performed in the OR, either alone or in conjunction with other airway procedures. The area of the tongue just anterior to the circumvallate papillae is infiltrated with local anesthetic. A needle-like RF probe is then used to heat the tissue. There is usually little or no immediate edema, although the surgeon may admit the patient overnight for airway observation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Sleep-disordered breathing, including upper airway resistance syndrome and obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) syndrome

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Intraoral (except HM–horizontal cervical above hyoid bone)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	For osteotomy cases (MOGA, MMO), sagittal and reciprocating saws, drills
Unique considerations	When using a CO_2 laser (LMG, LP), a laser-safe ETT or, more commonly, a tracheotomy tube is required. MMO requires a nasal intubation. Tracheotomy may be performed with patient sitting with iv sedation and/or local infiltration. Dexamethasone 8 mg iv.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	UPPP, UPF: 20–60 min UPPGP, LMG, LP: 1–3 h MOGA, HM: 30–60 min MMO: 3–5 h
EBL	UPPP, UPF, MOGA, HM: 0–100 mL UPPGP, LMG, LP: 50–250 mL MMO: 100–500 mL
Postop care	UPPP, UPF: PACU → ward Multiple procedures, MMO, labile HTN: ICU → ward
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Paresthesias: 10% HTN: 5% Wound dehiscence: 5% Bleeding: 1–2% Infection: 1–2% Hematoma/seroma: 1–2% Upper airway obstruction: 1%
Pain score	UPPP, UPPGP, LMG, LP: 8–10 UPF, MOGA, HM, MMO: 6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Children, adolescents, adults
Male:Female	3–10:1
Incidence	4–10% of adult males; 2–4% of adult females
Etiology	Upper airway collapse by frank obstruction or muscular relaxation
Associated conditions	Systemic and pulmonary HTN; CAD; cardiac arrhythmias; GERD; depression; obesity; polycythemia

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Vladimir Nekhendzy, Brett L. Miller, and Michael W. Champeau

PREOPERATIVE

Sleep-disordered breathing is extremely common, affecting nearly 20% of adult population, with 7–8% suffering from moderate-to-severe OSA. It is estimated that over 20% of adult surgical population suffer from OSA, where it remains undiagnosed in the majority (70%) of patients. OSA is characterized by periods of intermittent upper airway occlusion during sleep, leading to repeated episodes of hypoxemia/hypercapnia, sympathetic activation, and sleep fragmentation. OSA adversely affects a variety of organ systems, with widespread implications for the surgical patient. The presence and severity of OSA is strongly correlated with obesity (see p. 514) and metabolic syndrome, systemic and pulmonary HTN, CHF, arrhythmias, heart attacks, and stroke. The mainstay of treatment is continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), which acts to stent open collapsible airways, and the CPAP treatment must be continued in the perioperative setting, especially in patients with severe OSA.

Table 3-4. The STOP-BANG Questionnaire for Screening for the Risk of Obstructive Sleep Apnea (OSA)

Snore loudly?	**B**MI > 35 kg/m^2?
Tired during the day?	**A**ge > 50 yr?
Observed cessation of breathing during sleep?	**N**eck circumference > 40 cm?
Pressure (high blood pressure)?	**G**ender male?

Answering "Yes" to 3 or more questions confers a high risk of OSA. The higher the cumulative risk score, the greater the possibility of severe OSA.

When screening for the presence of OSA during preop office visit, a physician may wish to use the highly sensitive and validated STOP-BANG questionnaire (Table 3-4). The patients with either known or presumed OSA should undergo outpatient surgery only if their comorbidities are optimized, if postop pain is going to be mild and can be predominantly managed with nonopioid analgesics, and if (for CPAP users) the patients can continue to use CPAP postop. For practical purposes, patients with severe OSA (ASA physical status III) should not routinely undergo office-based surgery under GA or sedation. Postop, the ASA recommends extended monitoring of outpatients with OSA for an additional 3 h.

Other ENT pathology (e.g., septal deviation, laryngo/tracheomalacia, tonsil and adenoid hypertrophy) may be present in OSA patients. Intraop, the OSA patients demonstrate enhanced sensitivity to opioids and benzodiazepines, which may lead to rapidly developing respiratory depression, upper airway collapse and airway obstruction. Conscious sedation of these patients should be performed with extreme caution. A multimodal approach that minimizes narcotic medications (e.g., NSAIDs, acetaminophen, cyclooxygenase-2 specific inhibitors) should be used perioperatively whenever feasible.

Respiratory	OSA patients may present with difficult airway problems, related to both mask ventilation and tracheal intubation. The awake vs asleep approach to tracheal intubation should be guided by careful airway evaluation with special attention to the presence of the predictors of difficult mask ventilation (DMV) and their association with difficult intubation (see Introduction, Anesthesiologist's Perspective, above). Awake intubation is rarely required, but should be considered if the predictors of DMV coincide with factors predicting difficult intubation. Mask ventilation problems encountered in OSA patients are most commonly due to the pharyngeal airway obstructing at the level of soft palate and base of the tongue. This obstruction can usually be managed with supraglottic airway, which can also serve as a conduit for a subsequent tracheal intubation, either blind (e.g., intubating LMA) or fiberoptic-guided. Discussion with the surgeon of the results of preop nasopharyngoscopy is useful. COPD/asthma often coexist and have a synergistic effect on worsening OSA. In advanced cases, chronic OSA → hypoxia/hypercarbia → pulmonary HTN → right heart failure. **Tests:** CXR, ABG and PFT as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Patients are at ↑ risk for systemic and pulmonary HTN (Sx: loud P_2, clubbing, ↑ JVD, cyanosis, RVH, right-axis deviation), CHF, cardiac arrhythmias (nonsustained VT, 2nd degree block, sinus arrest), MI, and stroke. Patients may have dyspnea on exertion and at rest, making routine assessment of cardiovascular function and reserve difficult. **Tests:** ECG; stress ECHO if abnormal ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurologic	A polysomnogram is typically performed preop, reporting the number of apneas (cessation or near cessation of airflow for 10 sec) and hypopneas (30% reduction in airflow over 10 seconds with 3% hemoglobin desaturation). The apnea hypopnea index (AHI) is the number of apneas and hypopneas per hour of sleep. AHI of <5 is normal, 5–15 indicates mild OSA, 15–30 indicates moderate OSA, and >30 indicates severe OSA. OSA patients exhibit various degrees of daytime somnolence and may be chronically fatigued and irritable due to sleep fragmentation. Daytime sleepiness also may be associated with hypothyroidism or anemia, which should be ruled out. The impaired sleep/arousal cycle leads to autonomic hyperactivity; peripheral neuropathy and gastroparesis due to obesity may occur. An exaggerated response to sedative medications is frequently observed. **Tests:** As indicated by H&P

Hematologic	Chronic hypoxia → polycythemia (Sx: clubbing, cyanosis) →↑ risk of CVA. Hypercoagulability may be present due to chronic oxidative stress that leads to associated systemic inflammation and endothelial dysfunction. **Test:** Hct, coags as required
Gastrointestinal and Renal	This patient population has a higher incidence of GERD and hiatal hernia; thus, full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5) may be required. Renal function may be impaired, likely due to chronic sympathetic activation.
Laboratory	**Tests:** As indicated from H&P. Impaired glucose control is often present. Elevated plasma bicarb levels point to coexisting obstructive respiratory disease (asthma, COPD) and/or CO_2 retention.
Premedication	Typically, sedative medications should be kept to a minimum or avoided in this patient population. If sedative premedication is given, the anesthesiologist **must** remain with the patient and be prepared to manage the airway. Occasionally, OSA patients may have been prescribed stimulants (i.e., amphetamine) to combat daytime somnolence. These patients may not respond to indirect sympathomimetics (i.e., ephedrine) used to treat postinduction hypotension.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA.

Induction	Asleep airway management is safe in the majority of OSA patients (see Preoperative Respiratory considerations, above). Supraglottic airways with gastric access (e.g., LMA-Proseal/Supreme™) should be readily available for rescue ventilation (see above). Topical anesthesia of the upper airway may impair airway reflexes and airway muscle tone, therefore provoking airway collapse and possibly worsening OSA postop. Orotracheal intubation is preferred, except in patients undergoing base of the tongue surgery (e.g., lingular tonsillectomy) or MMO, where nasotracheal intubation is required. Preoxygenation with CPAP in 25° head-up position for 3–5 minutes will prolong safe apnea time. OSA patients with severe GERD should receive aspiration prophylaxis, and RSI should be performed, when indicated. Standard induction with propofol and an opioid (e.g., fentanyl) is safe, followed by administration of an intermediate-acting neuromuscular blocker (e.g., Rocuronium) for tracheal intubation.
Maintenance	Maintenance using TIVA with propofol (80–180 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.05–0.3 mcg/kg/min), supplemented with iv boluses of fentanyl (usually not exceeding 2–4 mcg/kg total dose), with or without N_2O, is useful for OSA surgery. It facilitates maintenance of moderate-controlled hypotension and improves hemodynamic stability during even most stimulating parts of surgery. Propofol administration causes profound depression of airway reflexes, thereby facilitating smooth emergence from anesthesia. A "sandwich anesthetic" technique utilizing a combination of TIVA and a low-dose inhalational agent (e.g., sevoflurane 0.4–0.6%) can also be used to achieve the above-stated objectives. Hypertensive responses should be treated aggressively, especially during craniofacial advancement with down-fracture of the pterygoid plate in MMO. Maintaining low SBP (below 100 mmHg) and low MAP (60–70 mmHg) is critical during this part of the procedure. Administration of "ad lib" iv boluses of remifentanil 1–3 mcg/kg, supplemented with iv labetalol (5–10 mg increments) and hydralazine (5 mg increments) is usually effective. Esmolol and SNP infusions can be considered, but are usually not necessary. Administration of a dexmedetomidine infusion should be considered. A typical loading dose is 0.5–1.0 mcg/kg iv bolus over 10 min, followed by a continuous infusion of 0.2–1.0 mcg/kg/hr. Dexamethasone 0.1–0.15 mg/kg is recommended to decrease postop airway edema.

Emergence	The patient must remain intubated until sufficiently awake to respond to verbal commands. Neuromuscular blockade should be fully reversed, and the return of protective airway reflexes (e.g., swallowing) should be observed. The patient's stomach should be suctioned to remove swallowed blood. Premature extubation can cause complete loss of airway (2° glossopalatal obstruction) or laryngospasm. With extensive pharyngeal and base of the tongue work significant upper airway edema must be anticipated, and extubation over a tube changer may be appropriate in selected cases. An insertion of a nasopharyngeal airway before emergence can be recommended in patients who had extensive surgery or had severe OSA preop. Anticipate pain and ↑ BP during emergence, which will continue into first postop day. Narcotic analgesics (e.g., morphine 0.1–0.15 mg/kg) should be administered before emergence. Antihypertensive agents usually required to prevent rebound hypertension and associated postop bleeding, particularly from osteotomy sites.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–3 mL/kg/h	Minimal-to-little blood loss with all except MMO. EBL with MMO is 100–500 mL. Attempt to minimize fluids to reduce severity of postop airway edema (< 1000 mL of NS/LR for all except MMO; < 2000 mL for MMO).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line (MMO and ICU admits)	Arterial line also suggested for postop BP control in all patients with preexisting HTN and in any patient who displays labile BP intraop. Control of BP in the postop period is an extremely high priority.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Occasional requests for minimal Trendelenburg or semi-sitting positioning.
Complications	ETT damage Airway Hemorrhage Dysrhythmias	Airway problems and respiratory depression are the most common complications (hypercapnia, pulmonary edema, reintubation, bronchospasm, and laryngospasm). In addition, OSA patients are at increased risk for CHF, MI, arrhythmia, CVA, and delirium. ETT may become dislodged or kinked during surgical manipulations. Vagally mediated severe bradycardia/asystole may occur with maxillary or mandibular advancement during MMO.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway compromise Airway obstruction HTN Aspiration Infections	Airway compromise 2° hematoma, edema, excessive sedation, or underlying disease. Consider observation in ICU for patients having multiple procedures, MMO, or labile HTN. Postop HTN is extremely common and can contribute significantly to likelihood of postop airway obstruction 2° hematoma. The risk of wound infection is increased postop in OSA patients.
Pain management	Minimize iv narcotics.	Avoid excessive postop sedation. UPPP patients, in particular, should be warned preop of anticipated significant postop discomfort. CPAP should be continued throughout the entire postop period. Consider BiPAP if noncompliant with CPAP.

Suggested Readings

1. Adesanya AO, Lee W, Greilich NB, et al: Perioperative management of obstructive sleep apnea. *Chest* 2010; 138:1489–98.
2. Chung F, Elsaid H: Screening for obstructive sleep apnea before surgery: why is it important? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2009; 22:405–11.
3. Chung F, Yegneswaran B, Liao P, et al: STOP questionnaire: a tool to screen patients for obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology* 2008; 108:812–21.

4. Chung SA, Yuan H, Chung F: A systemic review of obstructive sleep apnea and its implications for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 107:1543–63.
5. Drummond GB: Comparison of sedation with midazolam and ketamine: effects on airway muscle activity. Br J Anaesth 1996; 76:663–7.
6. Finkel KJ, Searleman AC, Tymkew H, et al: Prevalence of undiagnosed obstructive sleep apnea among adult surgical patients in an academic medical center. *Sleep Med* 2009; 10:753–8.
7. Gross JB, Bachenberg KL, Benumof JL, et al: Practice guidelines for the perioperative management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 104:1081–93.
8. Hillman DR, Platt PR, Eastwood PR: Anesthesia, sleep, and upper airway collapsibility. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2010; 28:443–55.
9. Isono S. Obstructive sleep apnea of obese adults: pathophysiology and perioperative airway management. *Anesthesiology* 2009; 110:908–21.
10. Joshi GP, Ankichetty SP, Gan TJ, et al: Society for Ambulatory Anesthesia consensus statement on preoperative selection of adult patients with obstructive sleep apnea scheduled for ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115:1060–8.
11. Kheterpal S, Han R, Tremper KK, et al: Incidence and predictors of difficult and impossible mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 105:885–91.
12. Kheterpal S, Martin L, Shanks AM, et al: Prediction and outcomes of impossible mask ventilation: a review of 50,000 anesthetics. *Anesthesiology* 2009; 110:891–7.
13. Langeron O, Masso E, Huraux C, et al: Prediction of difficult mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 92:1229–36.
14. Lopez PP, Stefan B, Schulman CI, Byers PM: Prevalence of sleep apnea in morbidly obese patients who presented for weight loss surgery evaluation: more evidence for routine screening for obstructive sleep apnea before weight loss surgery. *Am Surg* 2008; 74:834–8.
15. Somers VK, White DP, Amin R, et al: Sleep apnea and cardiovascular disease: an American Heart Association/American College Of Cardiology Foundation Scientific Statement from the American Heart Association Council for High Blood Pressure Research Professional Education Committee, Council on Clinical Cardiology, Stroke Council, and Council On Cardiovascular Nursing. *Circulation* 2008; 118:1080–111.
16. Woodson BT, Franco R: Physiology of sleep disordered breathing. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2007; 40:691–711.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Segmental Anatomy (www.bronchoscopy.nl): http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ThYHLG50pH0

Principles of Laryngoscopy (Fibreoptic): http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6MKKdu2bFDw

TMJ Anatomy "The Yoint" Video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nH8KG3fIoBM

Clinical Complications of Tracheostomy: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UCYBGRj4Teo

Transoral Robotic Surgery: Supraglottic Laryngectomy – Johns Hopkins Hospital: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6q9q4umrBAI

Endoscopic Septoplasty: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bpSVrVL77kc&list=PL3FE459DF3EEEA621

Tonsillectomy: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RTFUpoqhbHo

Thyroidectomy: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZUhpivAkeHI

Modified Radical Neck Dissection: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ALcizhZln58

Modified Radical Neck Dissection, part 1: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2uilaptogdU

Modified Radical Neck Dissection, part 2: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pp6oqT2Pvr4

Modified Radical Neck Dissection, part 3: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HkdiXwN_yR8

Endoscopic View of Zenker Diverticulum Repair: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P79SsJxO2SA

Endoscopic Sinus Surgery: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=m0PeRHPn-lo

SECTION

4.0 DENTAL SURGERY

SURGEON

Stephen A. Schendel, MD, DDS, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT ARTHROSCOPY/ ARTHROTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Temporomandibular joint (TMJ)** surgical procedures include both open and closed surgical techniques.

TMJ arthrotomy involves a preauricular, postauricular, or endaural incision to gain access to the joint compartment. It usually is performed for severe fibrous adhesion removal in the TMJ, bony or fibrous ankylosis, tumor resection, chronic dislocation, painful nonreducing disc dislocation, and severe osteoarthritis. **Open TMJ** surgery may range from discoplasty; discectomy; arthroplasty; and/or eminoplasty (reshaping of articular eminentia) to optimize the fit of the disc, condyle, and fossa; to total joint replacement utilizing costochondral grafts or vitallium metal implants. For the open treatment of condylar fractures, extraoral approaches (e.g., preauricular, retromandibular, and submandibular) are used. All extraoral approaches to the TMJ have the risks of facial nerve damage and the creation of visible scars. Due to those possible complications, endoscopically assisted transoral approaches for open reduction and miniplate fixation of condylar mandible fractures are used increasingly more often.

TMJ arthroscopy is a minimally invasive technique that has reduced the need for open surgery of the TMJ. Arthroscopic TMJ surgery is indicated for treatment of internal derangements and intracapsular disorders. The major advantage is that it results in less periarticular tissue disruption and better preservation of vascular supply and lymphatic drainage of the joint. The procedure involves insertion of a TMJ miniscope through a preauricular puncture on the canthus–tragus line and insertion of an outflow needle. The joint compartment is continually lavaged with LR. A second cannula can be inserted. Arthroscopic procedures are performed using a triangulation technique. Arthroscopic TMJ procedures include lysis of adhesions and lavage, partial synovectomy, and abrasion arthroplasty. Sometimes a holmium:YAG laser is used to make intraarticular incisions anterior to displaced discs and to treat inflamed synovial tissue. Usually, at the end of the procedure, 2 mg dexamethasone is injected into the joint space. Injection of 2 mL 0.5% bupivacaine mixed with 1 mL sterile saline solution has been shown to significantly reduce postop pain. Arrhythmia, reflex bradycardia, and pulmonary edema have been reported as general complications in TMJ arthroscopy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Internal derangement, subluxation, and ankylosis of TMJ

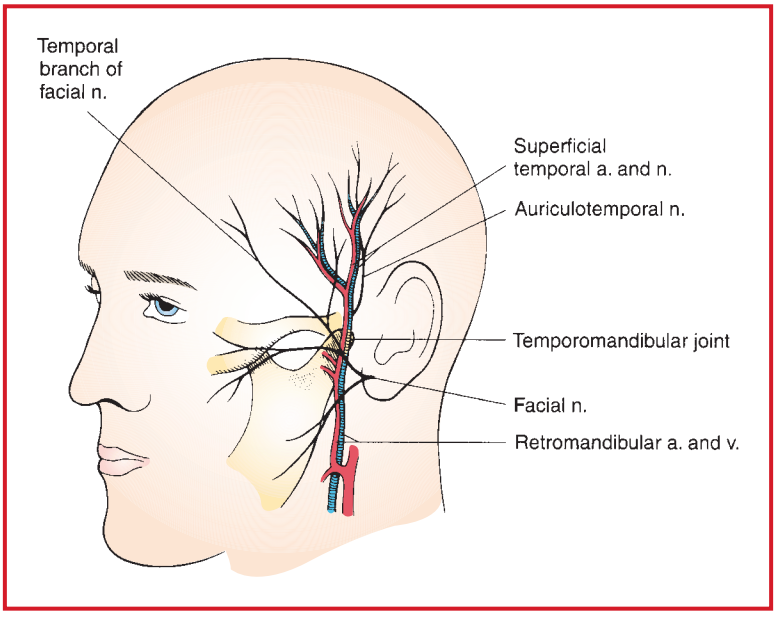


Figure 4-1. Anatomy for TMJ procedure.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Arthroscopy	Arthrotomy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Preauricular	⇐
Special instrumentation	Arthroscope; laser	Power tools, endoscope, implant plates
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	0.5 h	1.5–3.5 h/side
EBL	Minimal	Minimal-moderate
Postop care	Outpatient procedure	24 h stay
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	VII nerve damage V nerve damage Hemorrhage Partial hearing loss Ear fullness Vertigo	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–40 yr
Male:Female	1:9
Incidence	20% of adult population suffers from TMJ dysfunction (TMJD)
Etiology	TMJD possibly 2° muscle spasm, bruxism, osteoarthritis; idiopathic; trauma
Associated conditions	Psychiatric problems (typically depression); trismus; pain on opening mouth; stress

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Dental/Oral Surgery, p. 274.

Suggested Readings

1. Al-Ani Z, Gray R: TMD current concepts: 1. An update. *Dent Update* 2007; 34(5):278–80, 282–4, 287–8.
2. Fricton JR, Look JO, Schiffman E, et al: Long-term study of temporomandibular joint surgery with alloplastic implants compared with nonimplant surgery and nonsurgical rehabilitation for painful temporomandibular joint disc displacement. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2002; 60(12):1400–11.
3. Furst IM, Kryshtalskyj B, Weinberg S: The use of intra-articular opioids and bupivacaine for analgesia following temporomandibular joint arthroscopy: a prospective, randomized trial. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2001; 59(9):979–83.
4. Indresano AT: Surgical arthroscopy as the preferred treatment for internal derangements of the temporomandibular joint. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2001; 59(3):308–12.
5. Laskin DM: Temporomandibular disorders: the past, present and future. *Odontology* 2007; 95(1):10–5.
6. Mazzonetto R, Spagnoli DB: Long-term evaluation of arthroscopic discectomy of the temporomandibular joint using the Holmium YAG laser. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2001; 59(9):1018–23.
7. Rigon M, Pereira LM, Bortoluzzi MC, Loguercio AD, Ramos AL, Cardoso JR: Arthroscopy for temporomandibular disorders. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; (5):CD006385.
8. Schon R, Schramm A, Gellrich NC, et al: Follow-up of condylar fractures of the mandible in 8 patients at 18 months after transoral endoscopic-assisted open treatment. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2003; 61(1):49–54.
9. Tsuyama M, Kondoh T, Seto K, et al: Complications of temporomandibular joint arthroscopy: a retrospective analysis of 301 lysis and lavage procedures performed using the triangulation technique. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2000; 58(5):500–5.

ORAL SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The most common surgeries of the oral cavity are third-molar removal, surgical extractions, apicoectomies, orthodontic exposures of teeth, osseointegrated implants, bone grafting, treatment of oral pathologic conditions, and preprosthetic surgery. **Surgical extractions** of teeth involve intraoral exposure of the roots through a mucosal incision and removal of overlying bone with a surgical drill. Risks associated with removal of teeth in the mandible are damage to the inferior alveolar nerve (anesthetic numb lip), lingual nerve (anesthetic numb tongue), and, rarely, mandibular fracture. In the posterior maxilla, oroantral fistulas can occur and are closed with a mucoperiosteal flap. **Exposure of teeth** for orthodontic therapy involves creation of a mucoperiosteal flap and attachment of a bracket with a small gold chain on which the orthodontist can pull to integrate the tooth into the dental arch. **Bone grafting** to the maxilla and mandible is done for augmentation of the atrophied alveolar ridge and the maxillary sinus and in cases of cleft lip and palate. A second team usually harvests the bone at the same time. Possible extraoral harvesting sites include the anterior or posterior iliac crest, the tibia, and the skull. **Preprosthetic surgery** of the oral soft tissue in preparation for dentures has been replaced largely by insertion of **osseointegrated implants** for retention of individual teeth and dentures. Surgical treatment of **oral pathology** can range from removal of dentigerous cysts, with and without bone graft, to laser or surgical removal of mucosal lesions.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Dental Surgery	Dental Implants	Oral Pathology	Bone Grafting
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐	Supine or prone
Incision	Intraoral	⇐	⇐	Intraoral and donor site
Special instrumentation	Surgical drill	Implant drill and kit	Surgical drill, laser	–
Antibiotics	None	Penicillin 1 g	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Unique considerations	Nasotracheal intubation Throat pack	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐
Surgical time	0.5 h/tooth	0.5 h/implant	1–3 h	2–3 h
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐	Moderate
Postop care	Outpatient	⇐	⇐ or 24 h stay	24 h stay
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	V nerve damage Aspiration of dental debris	⇐ ⇐	⇐	Hemorrhage
Pain score	3	2	3–5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	12–40 yr	> 16 yr	All ages	> 8 yr
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Idiopathic	Tooth loss	Various	⇐
Associated conditions	Craniofacial syndromes			

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Dental/Oral Surgery, p. 274.

Suggested Readings

1. Bataineh AB: Sensory nerve impairment following mandibular third molar surgery. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2001; 59(9):1012–7.
2. Bilkay U, Tokat C, Ozek C, et al: Cancellous bone grafting in alveolar cleft repair: new experience. *J Craniofac Surg* 2002; 13(5):658–63.
3. Kaufman E: Maxillary sinus elevation surgery. *Dent Today* 2002; 21(9):96–101.
4. Perry PA, Goldberg MH: Late mandibular fracture after third molar surgery: a survey of Connecticut oral and maxillofacial surgeons. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2000; 58(8):858–61.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following video:

TMJ Anatomy "The Yoint" Video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nH8KG3fIoBM

RESTORATIVE DENTISTRY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Multiple dental restorative procedures are performed under GA when there are rampant caries, and an extensive amount of dental work must be performed at one time. The second most common indication for GA is for procedures that need to be performed on mentally retarded patients who are not candidates for a local anesthetic. The actual amount of restorative dentistry is quite variable, depending on the individual case; thus, surgical time can be quite variable. Generally, blood loss is not a problem.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Intraoral
Special instrumentation	Dental armamentarium
Unique considerations	Nasal intubation; throat pack
Antibiotics	Penicillin ×5 d po
Surgical time	0.5–3 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Pain Aspiration of dental debris Swelling
Pain score	1–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2 yr–adult
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	Idiopathic or congenital anomalies
Associated conditions	Mental retardation (majority), Down syndrome, seizures

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR DENTAL/ORAL SURGERY

PREOPERATIVE

Most patients presenting for dental or oral surgery usually will require only local anesthesia provided by the dentist/oral surgeon. Deep sedation or GA may be required, however, for several unique patient groups: (1) young children (some with systemic diseases such as CHD, hemophilia); (2) the mentally retarded; (3) those with poorly controlled seizure disorders; (4) those presenting for TMJ procedures; and (5) those with an oral septic focus, who may be quite ill. If the patient does not fall into one of these readily identifiable categories, the reasons for GA should be ascertained. An LMA with a flexible wire-reinforced airway tube (LMA-Flexible) has been used successfully for a variety of oral surgical procedures. The use of an LMA should be discussed with the surgeon in advance because its presence may interfere with the planned procedure.

Airway	Patients presenting for TMJ procedures may have problems with mouth opening (2° pain, trismus, and arthritis), making airway examination difficult. Mouth opening may not improve with GA and muscle relaxation. Nasotracheal intubation using FOL (done awake in patients with difficult airways) should be planned. Examine nares for patency; check for loose teeth.
Respiratory	Surgery should be postponed (at least 2 wk) in patients presenting with Sx of acute RTI (fever, coughing, purulent sputum, etc.). Sx of chronic respiratory disease should be sought and treated before surgery. LMA use has been reported to decrease respiratory complications in children with upper RTIs. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Patients with dysrhythmias may be sensitive to the epinephrine used in local anesthetic solutions administered intraop. As with other types of elective surgery, preexisting cardiovascular problems should be treated before surgery. Prophylactic antibiotics for endocarditis are not required in most patients; exceptions include patients with prosthetic valves, congenital heart disease, h/o infective endocarditis, or heart transplant. Endocarditis prophylaxis: amoxicillin 2 g po or cefazolin 1 g iv 30–60 min before procedure. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	Patients with seizure disorders should be on optimal medical therapy before surgery. Discuss precipitating factors and prodromal Sx with the patient. **Tests:** ✓ therapeutic levels of anticonvulsant (e.g., phenytoin = 10–20 mcg/mL; carbamazepine = 3–12 mcg/mL; phenobarbital = 10–40 mcg/mL).
Musculoskeletal	In addition to TMJ problems, rheumatoid arthritis is associated with cricoarytenoid joint immobility and cervical spine immobility/instability that may complicate intubation. Patients with prosthetic joints do not require special antibiotic prophylaxis.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1) usually is appreciated, although in patients with limited airway access, sedation may be inappropriate. If FOL is planned, pretreatment with an antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate 4 mcg/kg) is useful. Metoclopramide (e.g., 10–20 mg iv adult) will reduce the incidence of PONV 2° swallowed blood.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA (although LMAs have been used successfully for many procedures). Typically a nasotracheal intubation is requested, using an ETT 0.5–1 mm smaller than for oral intubation. In patients with difficult airways, an awake nasal FOL is indicated. (See general discussion of Awake FOL, p. I-2). Conscious sedation: dexmedetomidine (e.g., 0.3 mcg/kg loading dose + 0.5 mcg/kg/h infusion) in combination with midazolam (e.g., 0.03 mg/kg) ± propofol (e.g., 25 mcg/kg/min) has the advantage of minimal respiratory depression.

Induction	In patients with normal airways, a standard induction (see p. B-2) with nasal intubation is appropriate. Following loss of consciousness, topical intranasal cocaine may be applied (4% on pledgets, 4 mL maximum) to shrink the nasal mucosa and for vasoconstriction. Side effects are rare, but may include ↑ BP, ↑ or ↓ HR, dysrhythmias, and Sz. Other topical vasoconstrictors (e.g., 0.05% oxymetazoline) may be used; however, they are also associated with cardiovascular side effects. The well-lubricated ETT is passed through the nose into the trachea, either blindly or assisted by McGill's forceps under direct laryngoscopy. The ETT is often sewn to nasal septum. The successful use of a flexible reinforced LMA in both adult and pediatric dental patients has been reported. Claimed advantages include no risk of epistaxis and no need for a throat pack, laryngoscopy, or muscle relaxation. Disadvantages include interference with the procedure, throat trauma (e.g., swelling of the epiglottis) and aspiration risk.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3)
Emergence	**NB: throat packs must be removed prior to extubation.** An LMA is typically removed after the patient is awake and able to follow commands.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga ×1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

These patients may swallow blood, with consequent N&V. Rx: metoclopramide 10 mg iv ± ondansetron 4 mg iv.

Complications	Airway obstruction 2° retained throat pack PONV	Always check for retained throat pack in patients exhibiting symptoms of airway obstruction. Rx: ondansetron 4 mg iv
Pain management	Oral analgesics (see p. C-3)	

Suggested Reading for Dental/Oral Surgery

1. Atan S, Ashley P, Gilthrope MS, et al: Morbidity following dental treatment of children under intubation general anaesthesia in a day-stay unit. *Int J Paediatr Dent* 2004; 14(1):9–16.
2. Cummings DR, Yamashita DD, McAndrews JP: Complications of local anesthesia used in oral and maxillofacial surgery. *Oral Maxillofac Surg Clin North Am* 2011; 23(3):369–77.
3. Dolwick MF, Kretzschmar DP: Morbidity associated with the preauricular and perimeatal approaches to the temporomandibular joint. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 1982; 40(11):699–700.
4. Esposito M, Maghaireh H, Grusovin MG, et al: Interventions for replacing missing teeth: management of soft tissues for dental implants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 2:CD006697.
5. Mayhew JF: Airway management for oral and maxillofacial surgery. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2003; 41(3):57–65.
6. Ogle OE, Mahjoubi G: Local anesthesia: agents, techniques, and complications. *Dent Clin North Am* 2012; 56(1):133–48.
7. Smith MH, Lung KE: Nerve injuries after dental injection: a review of the literature. *J Can Dent Assoc* 2006; 72(6):559–64.
8. Todd DW: Anesthetic considerations for the obese and morbidly obese oral and maxillofacial surgery patient. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2005; 63(9):1348–53.
9. Wakita R, Kohase H, Fukayama H: A comparison of dexmedetomidine sedation with and without midazolam for dental implant surgery. *Anesth Prog* 2012; 59(2):62–8.

10. Wilson W, Taubert KA, Gewitz M, et al: Prevention of infective endocarditis: guidelines from the American Heart Association: a guideline from the American Heart Association Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis and Kawasaki Disease Committee, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, and the Council on Clinical Cardiology, Council on Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia, and the Quality of Care and Outcomes Research Interdisciplinary Working Group. *J Am Dent Assoc* 2007; 138(6):739–45, 747–60.
11. Yasny JS: Perioperative dental considerations for the anesthesiologist. *Anesth Analg* 2009; 108(5):1564–73.
12. Yu SH, Beirne OR: Laryngeal mask airways have a lower risk of airway complications compared with endotracheal intubation: a systematic review. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2010; 68(10):2359–76.

SECTION

5.0 THORACIC SURGERY

SURGEONS

Robert E. Merritt, MD
Walter B. Cannon, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Vivek Kulkarni, MD
Jay B. Brodsky, MD

INTRODUCTION—SURGEON'S PERSPECTIVE

AIRWAY AND LUNG ACCESS CONFLICTS

As in Chapter 3, induction and maintenance of anesthesia for thoracic surgery requires interdisciplinary cooperation. Perioperative communication between the surgeon and anesthesiologist is required for a satisfactory outcome. For example, during periods of OLV, significant hypoxia and hypotension may occur. Surgery may need to be stopped temporarily while the hypoxia is corrected by reinflation of the unventilated lung. Hypotension in the absence of bleeding can be corrected by less vigorous retraction of the lung and heart by the surgeon. Quick and timely communication between the anesthesiologist and the surgeon can be lifesaving. Occasionally, during critical parts of the dissection, cessation of all respiration for short periods of time can make the surgeon's job much easier. Testing the changes is an option.

TUBES AND TUBE SIZES

Although the size of the ETTs may not be particularly critical for most types of surgery, thoracic surgical procedures are often different. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy (FOB) through the ETT is a common event. The standard FOB just fits through an 8.0 ETT. The fiberoptic laryngoscope (FOL) used for difficult intubations will fit smaller ETTs and DLTs. Proper lubrication of the bronchoscope with a polyethylene glycol-based ointment (e.g., Carbowax rather than an aqueous jelly, which will dry out quickly) makes manipulation quite easy. The FOL can be used for correct positioning of the DLT. If the bronchial portion of the DLT cannot be advanced into the left main bronchus, the bronchoscope can be advanced through the bronchial side of the DLT into the left main bronchus. Then, through use of the bronchoscope as a stent, the DLT can be advanced over the bronchoscope into the left bronchus. The depth of the tube can be determined by bronchoscopic observation of the right main bronchus through the tracheal side of the DLT. If a laser is to be involved, have a laser-compatible ETT available, keep FiO_2 to < 0.3 and do not use N_2O.

PATIENT POSITIONING AND SURGICAL INCISIONS

Patient positioning for these procedures is dictated by the type of incision used. The incisions used most often by thoracic surgeons are the **posterolateral thoracotomy** (and its variations; Fig. 5-1A), the **median sternotomy** (Fig. 5-1B), and the anterior thoracotomy (often bilateral; Fig. 5-1C). For procedures where excellent exposure of both lungs is mandatory (e.g., bipulmonary lung transplantation), the **"clamshell" incision** (Fig. 5-2) has become popular. Generally, patients are in the **supine position** for anterior incisions (sternotomy, cervical, and anterior thoracotomy) and in the **lateral position** for lateral and posterolateral thoracotomies. Thoracoscopic procedures (VATS) typically are performed in the lateral position. (Note: A review of a recent CXR in the OR will help ensure that the thoracotomy is performed on the correct side.)

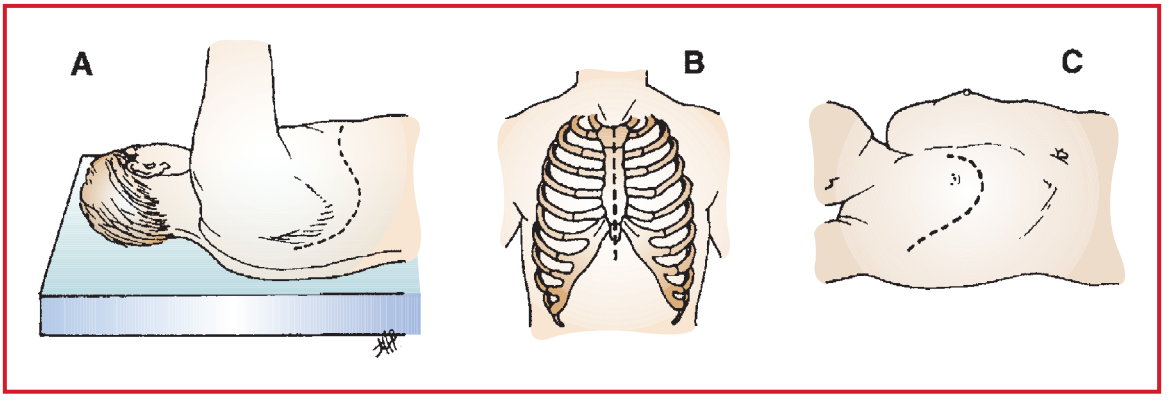


Figure 5-1. Primary incisions for thoracic surgery. **A:** Posterolateral thoracotomy, in lateral position. The incision curves in an S shape, passing under the tip of the scapula over in the fifth interspace anteriorly. **B:** Median sternotomy, in supine position, arms at side: the incision is made from the suprasternal notch to a point between the xiphoid process and umbilicus. **C:** Anterior thoracotomy in supine position. (Reproduced with permission from Fry WA: Thoracic incisions. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

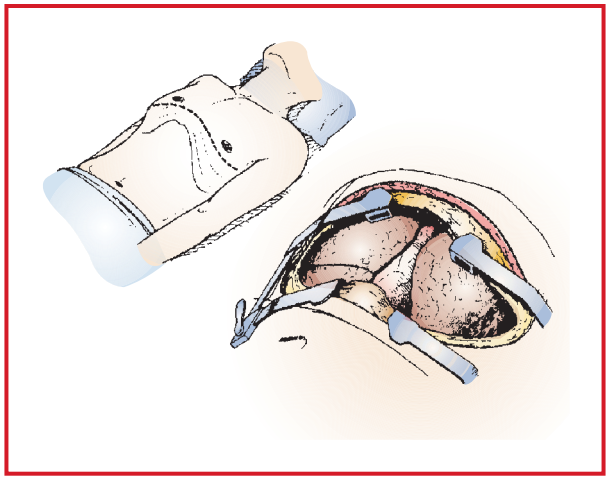


Figure 5-2. The "clamshell" incision, in classic supine position, affords excellent exposure, especially for bilateral lung procedures. (Reproduced with permission from Fry WA: Thoracic incisions. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

Patients undergoing surgery in the **lateral position** are initially placed on a bean bag. When GA is induced, the patient is rolled onto his/her side with the kidney rest being positioned at the level of the lower ribs. An axillary roll is placed to prevent axillary compression, and the table is flexed to assist in spreading the ribs. The head and neck must be aligned in a neutral position to avoid brachial plexus injuries. The lower arm can be either extended on an arm board or flexed and placed next to the patient's head (Fig. 5-3A). The upper arm is

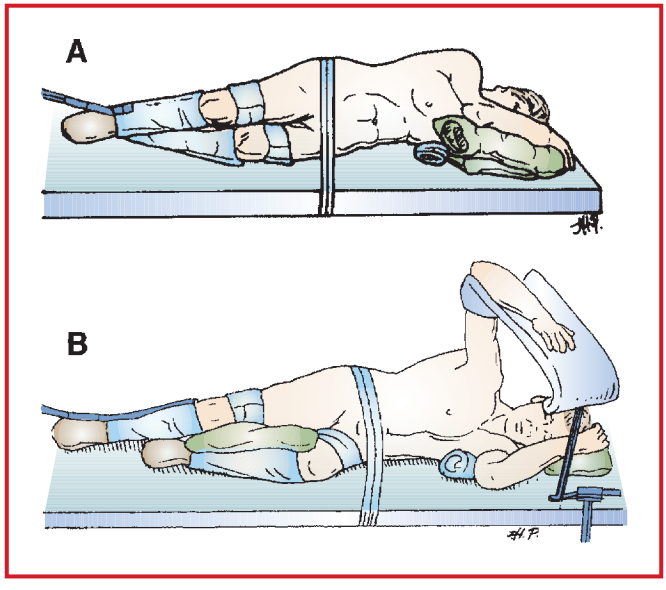


Figure 5-3. Lateral positioning for thoracic lateral and posterolateral procedures. **A:** Patient on his side, with kidney rest, axillary roll, pillows between knees, and padding under elbows. Wide adhesive tape secures the position. **B:** Upper arm abducted 90% on arm board. (Reproduced with permission from Fry WA: Thoracic incisions. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

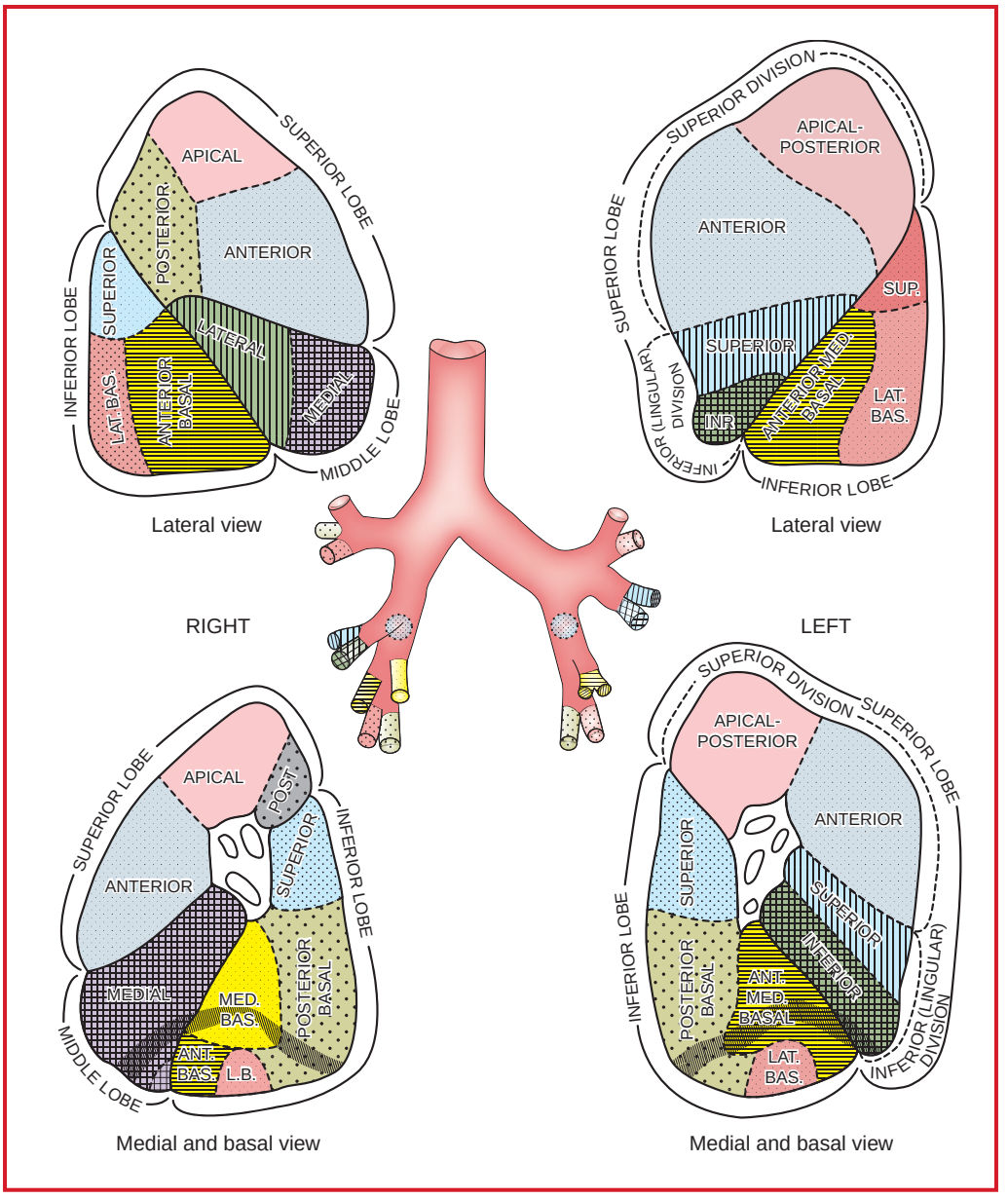


Figure 5-4. Segmental anatomy of the lungs. (Reproduced with permission from Clemente CD: *Gray's Anatomy,* 30th American edition. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1985.)

then extended and held in position with either an airplane holder or an arm board with several pillows (Fig. 5-3B). The lower leg should be flexed, and the upper leg should be left extended and supported by pillows. The back is kept in a vertical position while the beanbag is evacuated of air (blanket bolsters may be placed next to the patient). Wide adhesive tape is placed across the hips to further secure the patient. A lower-body warming blanket (e.g., Bair Hugger) should be used to avoid hypothermia. To facilitate closure, the table can be returned to the flat position. Ideally, this is accompanied by inflation, and subsequent deflation, of the beanbag. The anesthesiologist may be asked to exert downward pressure on the patient's shoulder to diminish tension on the latissimus dorsi closure.

Although the standard posterolateral thoracotomy involves division of the latissimus dorsi and serratus anterior muscles, **muscle-sparing incisions**—either transverse or vertical—are gaining in popularity because they are

perceived to decrease pain and provide a more rapid recovery. Variations on the posterolateral thoracotomy all have position requirements similar to those of the standard posterolateral incision.

For an anterior incision, the patient is placed supine. A small roll placed under the shoulder blades will serve to extend the neck and facilitate access to the upper mediastinum. This is particularly important for an operation on the upper trachea and improves visualization for cervical mediastinoscopy. In general, the arms should be tucked at the patient's sides. Having an arm extended during a sternotomy can place undue stretch on the brachial plexus → injury.

The probability of DVT in general thoracic cases is controversial, whereas the risks of prophylaxis are minimal. Given that patients undergoing thoracotomy often have protracted periods of immobility, both during and after surgery, and often have a Dx of a malignant disease (hypercoagulability), use of DVT prophylaxis is good practice. We use SCDs for all patients, except those undergoing short video-assisted procedures and reserve subcutaneous heparin for those at higher than normal risk (e.g., with prolonged postop immobility).

POSTOPERATIVE ISSUES

The most common postop issues relevant to anesthesiologists are

- The need for postop mechanical ventilation;
- Airway management;
- Hemodynamic instability; and
- Pain control.

The majority of patients undergoing thoracotomy can be extubated immediately postop. The most common exceptions are patients requiring preop mechanical ventilation, lung transplant patients, and those with "difficult" airways. Patients undergoing prolonged surgery may require postop mechanical ventilation. With shorter procedures, and those performed using minimally invasive techniques, even patients undergoing lung-volume-reduction surgery for severe emphysema generally can be extubated at the conclusion of the procedure.

Because DLTs are larger than standard ETTs, there is greater potential for laryngeal trauma and airway edema → loss of airway following extubation. By exchanging the DLT for a single-lumen ETT over a tube changer, this potentially catastrophic complication can be avoided.

Hemodynamic instability following surgery may be 2° several causes, the most important being ongoing blood loss (or inadequate intraop fluid replacement) and cardiac dysfunction. Use of epidural anesthesia may accentuate ↓ BP both intraop and postop.

With the use of epidural anesthesia and systemic analgesics (e.g., ketorolac) postop pain can be managed effectively. It is important for the anesthesiologist to communicate to the surgeon (and postop care team) which agents have been used, how the patient responded to them, and what types of hemodynamic, pulmonary, and neurological effects can be expected in the postop period.

LOBECTOMY, PNEUMONECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Surgery remains the most appropriate form of treatment for early-stage lung cancer. Other less common indications include infection (particularly mycobacterial disease and bronchiectasis), developmental abnormalities such as sequestrations, and trauma. Patients with Stage I or II non-small-cell lung cancer (disease confined to the lung or those with intrapulmonary node involvement only) generally are offered surgery, unless their pulmonary function is prohibitively poor or their comorbidities pose an unacceptable risk. Patients with Stage IIIA disease often receive preop chemotherapy and/or radiation; and those with Stage IIIB or IV disease are rarely offered an operation.

Table 5-1. Spirometric Criteria for Pulmonary Resection

Spirometry	Operable	Further Study Suggested
Forced vital capacity (FVC)	> 60% predicted	< 60% predicted
Forced expired volume in 1 see (FEV_1)	> 60% predicted	< 60% predicted
FEV_1 FVC ratio	> 50%	< 50%
Maximum voluntary ventilation	> 50% predicted	< 50% predicted
Gas exchange		
Diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide	> 60% predicted	< 60% predicted
Arterial carbon dioxide tension	< 45 mm Hg	> 45 mm Hg

Used with permission from Olson GN: Pulmonary physiologic assessment of operative risk. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.

Regardless of the underlying disease, the preoperative evaluation should include an assessment of pulmonary function (Table 5-1). Spirometry is adequate for most patients with little or no functional impairment, but more elaborate tests—such as measurement of diffusion capacity, quantitative ventilation/perfusion scans, or formal exercise testing (Fig. 5-5)—are appropriate for others.

Following induction of general anesthesia, many surgeons perform a preoperative bronchoscopy. In patients with tumors in the trachea or mainstem bronchi, this step may be important in determining whether the patient should undergo a lobectomy, sleeve lobectomy, or pneumonectomy. Most patients undergoing **lobectomy** or **pneumonectomy** are placed in the lateral decubitus position. This approach permits a lateral or posterolateral thoracotomy (Fig. 5-1A)—the incision that provides optimal exposure of the pulmonary hilum. A more limited, **muscle-sparing incision** may be used; however, the exposure may be somewhat limited. Occasionally, a **median sternotomy approach** (Fig. 5-1B) is used–particularly when there is significant involvement of the anterior mediastinum by the tumor.

Over the past several years, video-assisted thoracoscopic lobectomy (VATS-lobectomy) has become more widely available. Although the anesthetic and surgical details of VATS techniques are described later in the chapter, early experiences with this procedure have demonstrated similar outcomes to those associated with the more traditional open techniques. Although a limited "access" thoracotomy is necessary to remove the mobilized lobe from the chest cavity, the technique has the advantages of minimizing soft tissue trauma and the pain associated with spreading the ribs.

Following entry into the chest, the lung on the operative side is allowed to deflate. If the lung remains inflated, a flexible bronchoscope should be used to verify correct positioning of the DLT (Fig. 5-6). Alternatively, the surgeon may be able to feel the tip of the DLT and guide it into the correct position. After stable OLV has been obtained, the lung is mobilized and the bronchovascular structures are identified. Generally, the vascular structures are divided first although, when exposure is limited, it may be best to divide the bronchus first. Hypotension and arrhythmias may occur when the hilar structures or pericardium are retracted vigorously. Such aberrations generally resolve quickly on restoration of normal anatomic relationships. Inadvertent entry into a branch of the pulmonary artery during dissection can result in rapid blood loss. Because these vessels are usually under low pressure, bleeding generally can be controlled with direct pressure on the bleeding site, while the anesthesiologist resuscitates the patient and the surgeon obtains more definitive vascular control. During a lobectomy, the surgeon will ask the anesthesiologist to reinflate the lung while the bronchus leading to the lobe that will be removed is occluded. This will ensure that the remaining lobes inflate appropriately. Thorough suctioning immediately before the lobectomy eliminates secretions as a cause of continued atelectasis. Once the lung or lobe has been resected, positive pressure is applied to the bronchial stump (and lobe) to check that there is no significant postop air leak. Large air leaks are best addressed at the time of surgery, rather than waiting for them to resolve postop.

Chest drainage is standard following lobectomy and involves placement of one or two 28–36 Fr chest tubes attached to underwater seal or suction. Placing the tubes to suction typically increases observed air leak, whereas extubating the patient in the supine position typically decreases the leak. Following pneumonectomy, chest drainage is not uniformly carried out; however, if a chest tube is to be placed, a balanced drainage system must be used or the

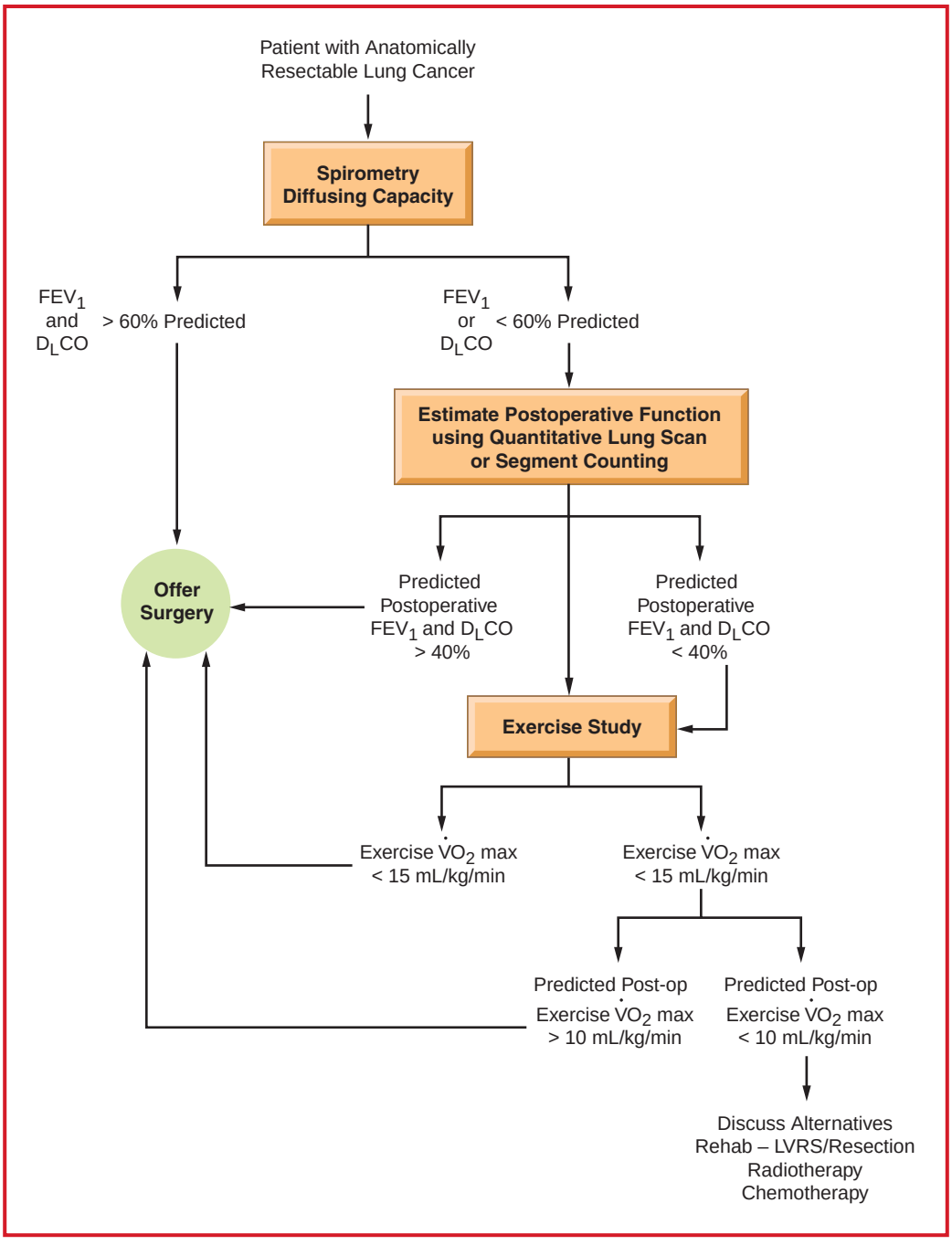


Figure 5-5. Physiologic assessment of patients with compromised lung function. (Reproduced with permission from Olson GN: Pulmonary physiologic assessment of operative risk. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

mediastinum will shift to the operative side, thus creating adverse hemodynamic consequences. An alternative to drainage (after the patient is placed supine) is to aspirate air from the operative pleural space until a slight negative pressure is obtained.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of the lung; infection; developmental abnormalities; trauma

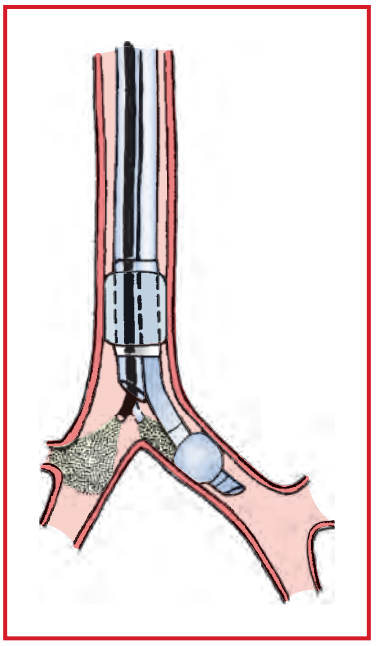


Figure 5-6. Use of a fiberoptic bronchoscope to ensure correct positioning of a left-side DLT. (Reproduced with permission from Fry WA: Thoracic incisions. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Lobectomy	Pneumonectomy
Position	Lateral/supine	⇐
Incision	Posterolateral/median sternotomy/VATS	⇐
Special instrumentation	DLT; SCD or TED hose	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	⇐
EBL	< 500 mL (more in redo or inflammatory cases)	⇐
Postop care	PACU ± ICU; careful attention to pulmonary toilet; chest tube output	⇐ + Special balanced drainage tube
Mortality	± 1%	± 5%
Morbidity	Dysrhythmias: 10–20% DVT: 5–20% ARDS PE MI Bronchopleural fistula Chylothorax Subcutaneous emphysema Phrenic nerve injury Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	30–40% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–8	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	0–80 yr
Male:Female	15:1
Incidence	Common thoracic procedure; increasing in females
Etiology	Smoking
Associated conditions	Cardiopulmonary disease; PVD

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The main indication for lung resection is neoplasm. Other indications include infection, hemorrhage, or air-leak. The majority of patients have a Hx of cigarette smoking with associated emphysema and/or chronic bronchitis. As most patients are older, other comorbidities are common (CAD, DM). Morbidity and mortality following thoracotomy is increased with preexisting pulmonary, cardiovascular, and neurologic disease. Lung resections are increasingly being performed via thoracoscopy, which decreases patient morbidity. Lung isolation (DLT or BB) and OLV are mandatory for surgical exposure.

Respiratory	Question patient about exercise tolerance, dyspnea, productive cough and cigarette smoking. Examine patient for cyanosis, clubbing, RR, and pattern. Listen to chest for wheezes, rhonchi, rales. Timely cessation of smoking (> 8 wk), adequate management of bronchospasm with bronchodilator treatment ± steroids, and prompt treatment of preexisting lung infections are important to reduce postop pulmonary complications. **Tests:** PFT (see below and Table 5-2); CXR; chest CT (if available), always examine chest imaging re: ease of lung isolation; ABG (only if indicated from H&P).
Pulmonary function	Nonsmoker with normal lungs may not require any studies for simple lobectomy. Any pre-existing respiratory disease (or possibility of pneumonectomy) should trigger lung function studies. Whole-lung tests (ABG, spirometry) are sufficient in most cases. Split-function lung tests (V/Q scan) should be considered if the patient has heterogeneous disease, or a planned pneumonectomy or borderline lung resection is planned. Many variables have been shown to correlate with poor outcome. The most important are FEV_1, D_LCO, and VO_2 max, which focus on different aspects (mechanics, parenchymal function, and cardio-pulmonary reserve, respectively). Postoperative predictive values of $FEV_1 < 40\%$, $D_LCO < 40\%$, or baseline $VO_2max < 15$ mL/kg/min predict ↑ risk for postop complications following pulmonary resection. Preop hypercapnia or PHTN/ RV dysfunction are relative contraindications to lung resection, except for specific circumstances (e.g., combined with LVRS in severe emphysema). Trial pneumonectomy with PA balloon occlusion is frequently discussed, but not used in clinical practice. Preop optimization of respiratory function with bronchodilator therapy should be routine.
Cardiovascular	RV dysfunction is a relative contraindication to lung resection (particularly pneumonectomy). Prophylactic digoxin or amiodarone to ↓ risk of postop atrial fibrillation have limited efficacy. **Tests:** ECG—look for evidence of RV hypertrophy, conduction problems, ischemia, and prior MI. ECHO to evaluate ventricular function; others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	✓ Hx of previous back surgery, peripheral neuropathy. Examine thoracolumbar area for skin lesions, infection, deformities.
Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic (Eaton-Lambert) syndrome with resistance to depolarizing muscle relaxants and ↑ sensitivity to NDMRs. Monitor relaxation with peripheral nerve stimulator.

Table 5-2. Assessment of Risk of Postop Pulmonary Complications Following Thoracic and Abdominal Procedures

Category	Point
I. Expiratory Spirogram	
a. Normal (%FVC + %FEV_1/FVC > 150)	0
b. %FVC + %FEV_1/FVC = 100–150	1
c. %FVC + %FEV_1/FVC < 100	2
d. Preop FVC < 20 mL/kg	3
e. Post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC < 50%	3
II. Cardiovascular System	
a. Normal	0
b. Controlled HTN, MI sequelae for more than 2 yr	0
c. Dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, dependent edema. CHF, angina	1
III. ABGs	
a. Acceptable	0
b. $PaCO_2$ >50 mm Hg or PaO_2 < 60 mm Hg on room air	1
c. Metabolic pH abnormality > 7.50 or < 7.30	1
IV. Nervous System	
a. Normal	0
b. Confusion, obtundation, agitation, spasticity, discoordination, bulbar malfunction	1
c. Significant muscular weakness	1
V. Postop Ambulation	
a. Expected ambulation (minimum, sitting at bedside) within 36 h	0
b. Expected complete bed confinement for at least 36 h	1
0 Points = Low Risk; 1–2 Points = Moderate Risk; 3 Points = High Risk	

With permission, Shapira BA, Harrison RA, Kacmarek RM, Cane RD: *Clinical Application of Respiratory Care,* 3rd edition. Year Book Medical Publishers, Chicago: 1985.

Hematologic	Adequate O_2-carrying capacity is important. Optimize Hb preoperatively if possible (iron, EPO), consider transfusion with Hb < 7 g/dL (<10 g/dL with CAD), depending on vital signs. Although rare, bleeding can be profuse, so blood should be immediately available. Coagulopathy may preclude neuraxial anesthesia. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT (if epidural anesthesia planned)
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5–2 mg iv if patient anxious (unless respiratory compromise). When epidural opioids are planned, avoid additional systemic opioid or sedative premedication that can potentiate postop respiratory effects of neuraxial opioids.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Combined GA with continuous regional technique (epidural or paravertebral). Anesthesia for lobectomy/pneumonectomy relies on OLV techniques to improve surgical exposure and minimize damage to the operative lung in the case of lobectomy or bi-lobectomy. The challenges to the anesthesiologist include maintaining adequate oxygenation in patients with poor pulmonary reserve and ensuring that the patient is comfortable, warm, and awake at the end of surgery.

Preinduction	Placement of a regional analgesia catheter is important for postop pain control. Continuous epidural (lumbar or thoracic) and paravertebral blocks have been shown to be effective. Epidural catheters should be placed in the awake patient, whereas paravertebral catheters can be sited asleep or intraop under direct vision. The catheter tip should be as close as possible to the level of incision to minimize the sympathectomy. Intraop use of

Preinduction (cont'd)	regional analgesia reduces the amount of systemic anesthetics/analgesics required and, therefore, facilitates rapid emergence. An adequate block can be established with lidocaine or bupivacaine; however, higher concentrations will be required for intraop anesthesia than postop analgesia.	
Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). If flexible bronchoscopy is planned prior to lung resection, intubate with an ETT (≥ 8 mm), which will be replaced with DLT after bronchoscopy (see below). Otherwise, proceed to intubation with an appropriate sized DLT (check imaging, rough guideline: adult male, 39–41 Fr; adult female, 35–37 Fr) after induction.	
Maintenance	Air/O_2 and isoflurane/desflurane/sevoflurane (around 0.5–0.7 MAC if neuraxial block established). Avoid N_2O. Use high FiO_2 = 0.8–1.0 at onset of OLV; titrate to lowest possible after HPV well established and operative lung collapsed. A local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine or 0.25–0.5% bupivacaine) can be infused or injected hourly into a thoracic (1–3 mL) or lumbar (5–10 mL) epidural catheter. Continuous infusion of local anesthetic generally provides better hemodynamic stability than hourly bolus injection. To enhance the effect of epidural analgesia, a loading dose of epidural opiate (e.g., hydromorphone 200–500 mcg [thoracic] or 1–1.5 mg [lumbar]) can be administered prior to incision. Epidural hydromorphone has a superior side-effect profile over morphine at equipotent doses. IV (compared to inhalational) anesthetics have a clinically insignificant benefit on OLV oxygenation (particularly if volatile agents are limited to < 1 MAC) and are, therefore, not necessary in the majority of cases.	
Emergence	Before chest closure, lungs are inflated gradually to 20–30 cmH_2O pressure to reinflate atelectatic areas and to ✓ for significant air leaks. Surgeon inserts chest tubes to drain pleural cavity and aid lung reexpansion. Patient is extubated in OR. If postop ventilation is required (rare), DLT exchanged for single-lumen ETT. Patient transferred in head-elevated position to PACU or ICU, breathing mask O_2. If hemodynamically unstable, monitor ECG, pulse oximetry, and arterial pressure during transfer.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 + 14 or 16 ga × 1 Maintain stable hypovolemia, Limit fluid to 10–15 mL/kg if possible Blood: available, but rarely required; use vasopressor (ephedrine 5–10 mg iv bolus or phenylephrine 50–100 mcg iv bolus) if hypotensive.	Postop, PVR is increased in proportion to the amount of lung tissue removed. An overhydrated patient is at risk of RV failure and pulmonary edema. Replace blood loss with colloid (1:1) to minimize volume load. Third-space loss is negligible and need not be replaced. Use of epidural local anesthetics can cause ↓ BP in a volume-restricted patient; vasopressor may be needed.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line Urinary catheter ± CVP line ± PA line or TEE (rare)	It is mandatory to follow oxygenation continuously during OLV. Typically, this can be done with pulse oximetry, although continuous intraarterial PO_2 monitoring is now commercially available. CVP and/or PA line optional for pneumonectomy and for patients with coexisting cardiac disease. CVP monitoring may be inaccurate intraop and is mostly placed for postop care. PA lines are rarely necessary and may interfere with PA stapling or endanger the PA stump. TEE may be of benefit in the borderline pneumonectomy to check for RV tolerance of PA cross-clamp.
Positioning	Axillary roll, "airplane" for upper arm Avoid hyperextending arms ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, ears, genitals	✓ radial pulses to ensure correct placement of axillary roll (if misplaced, will compromise distal pulses). Placing the oximeter probe on the down arm may assist in monitoring arm perfusion.

Fiberoptic bronchoscopy	FOB performed immediately before thoracotomy to evaluate resectability of lesion. Patient intubated with large ETT (≥ 8 mm), replaced with DLT or BB following bronchoscopy (see Bronchoscopy, p. 320).	Use the largest DLT that atraumatically passes through the glottis (typically, 39–41 Fr for men, 35–37 Fr for women). DLT can be placed accurately by careful auscultation ±confirmation by FOB. For a DLT, fiberoptic confirmation is done both through the tracheal lumen to confirm that the blue bronchial cuff is not hemiating above the carina, and through the bronchial lumen to confirm that the end of the tube is not abutting the secondary carina (L-DLT), or through the bronchial lumen to confirm the end of the tube is in the bronchus intermedius and the opening in the blue bronchial cuff is facing the (R)UL orifice (R-DLT). For small children, the balloon of a Fogarty embolectomy catheter is used as a BB; for adults, either a BB or a Univent tube may be used if the proper size DLT cannot be placed. BB not ideal as FOB always needed to confirm placement, lung collapse delayed, suction and CPAP not effective and repeated inflation and collapse may be difficult.
Lung isolation	Separate lungs to prevent contralateral contamination (infection, pus, blood, tumor), allow selective ventilation and facilitate operation.	
OLV	Two lung vent: Vt = 8–10 mL/kg, normocapnia, PEEP 3–5 cm H_2O OLV: Vt = 4–8 mL/kg, permissive hypercapnia ($PaCO_2$ 50–70 mm Hg), PEEP 3–8 cm H_2O (unless BPF), FiO_2: 0.6–1.0, PIP < 35 cm H_2O and plateau pressures < 25 cm H_2O, consider PCV.	Issues during OLV are oxygenation, ventilation, and lung injury. Oxygenation is rarely an issue if the DLT is adequately placed and derecruitment is avoided in the nonoperative lung. Ventilation is impaired by the smaller lumen of the DLT and the fact that only one lung is ventilated, resulting in higher ventilatory pressures. However, permissive hypoventilation allows for limiting the ventilatory stress. Acute lung injury may result in postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema, which may occur even after lesser resections. Limiting Vt, peak and plateau pressures, FiO_2, duration of OLV and atelectasis formation help to minimize the risk.
Complications	Hypoxemia	Hypoxemia is now relatively infrequent due to better lung isolation techniques and anesthetic agents with less suppression of HPV. If hypoxemia occurs, tube position should immediately be confirmed and FiO_2 increased toward 1.0. Suctioning of secretions and lung recruitment maneuvers are often all that is required. If derecruitment has occurred, higher levels of PEEP should be employed; however, this may potentially worsen oxygenation. CPAP to the (recruited) operative lung is always helpful, as is clamping of the PA to exclude shunt flow. Return to two-lung ventilation (if possible) will always improve oxygenation (even if used intermittently only) and should be considered with refractory hypoxemia.
	Hypercarbia	Mild hypercarbia is well tolerated except in the setting of severe PHTN. CO_2 levels above 70 mm Hg may be associated with tachycardia, dysrhythmias, and cardiac depression. Treat with higher minute ventilation.
	Arrhythmia	✓ for mechanical compression of heart or great vessels.

Complications (cont'd)	Hypotension	✓ volume status (but always hypovolemic) and cardiac function. Consider neosynephrine for BP support if ↓ BP is 2° epidural.
	Airway rupture	✓ integrity of intubated bronchus after reexpanding lung.
	DVT	Preventive measures: TED hose or SCD.
	Airway trauma from intubation, tracheobronchial rupture	Force should NEVER be used during insertion of a DLT, as it may result in catastrophic airway disruptions. Do not overdistend bronchial balloon or DLT cuffs. DLT bronchial cuff usually requires < 2 mL air for airtight seal, if an appropriate (large) DLT is used.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Injuries related to lateral positioning	Pressure damage to ear, eye, nose, deltoid muscle, iliac crest, brachial plexus, and radial, ulnar, common peroneal, and sciatic nerves have all been reported.
	Structural injuries related to thoracotomy	Neurologic (phrenic and recurrent laryngeal nerves), thoracic duct, spinal cord; bronchopleural fistula, tracheobronchial disruption
	Surgical complications	Cardiac herniation, tension pneumothorax, bleeding, torsion of residual lobe, acute lung injury/ARDS
	Cardiopulmonary complications	Supraventricular dysrhythmias, SVT, acute RV failure, atelectasis, BPF, pneumonia, PE. For SVT, treat underlying cause and correct electrolyte abnormalities. Most postop SVTs are 2° atrial fibrillation or 2° catecholamine surge and may resolve spontaneously. Hemodynamically unstable patients will require cardioversion. Beta-blockers, amiodarone, Ca^{++} channel blockers, and over-drive cardiac pacing are effective in patients with unstable AF.
Pain management	Neuraxial opioids—epidural or intrathecal Parenteral opioids (iv, im, continuous iv, PCA [p. C-3]) Intercostal blocks Interpleural analgesia Epidural local anesthetics Cryoanalgesia NSAID (ketorolac)	Effective analgesia via epidural or paravertebral route is essential for patient to cough, deep breathe, and ambulate early. Epidural infusions consist of a local anesthetic + opioid mixture (smaller volume and higher concentration with thoracic placement). Paravertebral infusions are local anesthetic only, thereby avoiding opioid side effects. Paravertebral analgesia interferes less with postop lung function than epidural analgesia. Ketorolac (10–15 mg) is helpful as adjunct analgesic, particularly with referred shoulder pain.
Tests	Hct, CXR, ABG, and others as indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Alam N, Flores RM: Video-assisted thoracic surgery (VATS) lobectomy: the evidence base. *JSLS* 2007; 11(3):368–74.
2. Amar D: Perioperative atrial tachyarrhythmias. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 97(6):1618–23.
3. Beckles MA, Sprio SG, Colice GL, et al: Initial evaluation of the patient with lung cancer: symptoms, signs, laboratory tests, and paraneoplastic syndromes. *Chest* 2003; 123:S1, 97S–104S.

4. Beckles MA, Sprio SG, Colice GL, et al: The physiologic evaluation of patients with lung cancer being considered for resectional surgery. *Chest* 2003; 123:S1, 105S–14S.
5. Bernstein WK, Deshpande S: Preoperative evaluation for thoracic surgery. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2008; 12(2):109–21.
6. Brodsky JB, Macario A, Mark JBD: Tracheal diameter predicts double-lumen tube size: a method for selecting left double-lumen tubes. *Anesth Analg* 1996; 82:861–4.
7. Davies RG, Myles PS, Graham JM: A comparison of the analgesic efficacy and side-effects of paravertebral vs epidural blockade for thoracotomy—a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Br J Anaesth* 2006; 96(4):418–26.
8. Fortier G, Cote D, Bergeron C, et al: New landmarks improve the positioning of the left Broncho-Cath double-lumen tube-comparison with the classic technique. *Can J Anaesth* 2001; 48(8):790–4.
9. Lohser J: Evidence-based management of one-lung ventilation. *Thorac Anesth Anesthesiol Clin North America* 2008; 26(2): accepted.
10. McKenna RJ Jr, Houck W, Fuller CB: Video-assisted thoracic surgery lobectomy: experience with 1,100 cases. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2006; 81(2):421–5; discussion 425–6.
11. Slinger P: Update on anesthetic management for pneumonectomy. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2009; 22(1):31–7.
12. Slinger PD: Postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema: good news, bad news. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 105(1):2–5.

WEDGE RESECTION OF LUNG LESION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Wedge resection** (removal of a mass in a manner that does not remove an entire anatomical pulmonary segment) may be carried out for a number of reasons. A known or suspected cancer may be removed by this limited resection. There is general agreement that this is an appropriate operation for patients with peripheral non-small-cell tumors and who have pulmonary reserve limited to the point that they are unable to tolerate lobectomy. Wedge resection also is used for resection of single- or multiple-metastatic lesions from various primary neoplasms. A single metastasis may be removed through a limited thoracotomy incision. At the other extreme, a **median sternotomy** may be used to remove bilateral lesions. Wedge resection also is indicated for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes in lesions that defy diagnosis by less-invasive techniques. Incisions vary with location, number of lesions, and technique used. **Limited thoracotomy, standard thoracotomy,** or **median sternotomy** may be used under different circumstances. **Stapling** (Fig. 5-7), **clamp and suture** technique, or **excision and suture** technique may be

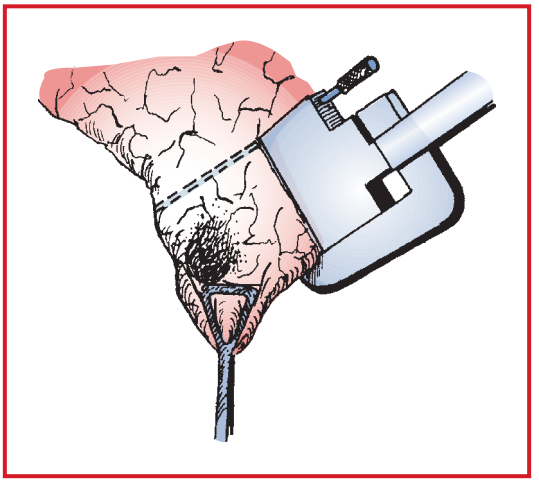


Figure 5-7. Stapler used to perform wedge incision. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

used for lesions in different locations. Wedge resection is best performed in the lateral position and with OLV. Small nodules on the edge of the lung and diagnostic biopsies for interstitial lung disease often can be performed with the thoracoscope, thereby avoiding a thoracotomy. In patients who cannot tolerate OLV (e.g., with ARDS), it may be necessary to keep the patient supine and ventilate both lungs. The wedge resection itself generally is carried out with a surgical stapling device (Fig. 5-7) that simultaneously staples the lung parenchyma and cuts between staple lines. Alternatively, the lung tissue can be clamped and oversewn—a technique applicable to particularly indurated lung tissue that is too thick for a stapler. A final option is to perform a pneumonotomy, enucleate the nodule, and suture the lung closed. A single chest tube usually is placed for postop chest drainage.

Variant approach: Video-assisted thoracoscopy surgery (VATS; see p. 326).

Usual preop diagnosis: Metastatic tumor to the lungs; primary lung cancer (typically, lobectomy); unknown pulmonary lesion

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Lateral or supine
Incision	Limited and related to location of solitary lesion; sternotomy for bilateral lesions
Special instrumentation	DLT
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g (or other antibiotic as indicated from culture and sensitivity)
Surgical time	< 1–3 h, depending on number of lesions
EBL	< 500 mL
Postop care	PACU ± ICU; careful attention to pulmonary toilet, chest tube output
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Air leaks Cardiac dysrhythmias
Pain score	2–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	30–60 yr most common
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common thoracic procedure
Etiology	Variable—neoplasm or inflammatory disease
Associated conditions	COPD; cardiovascular disease; malignancy; infection

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The anesthetic considerations for this procedure are very similar to those for lobectomy/pneumonectomy, although most wedge resections are easily accomplished via thoracoscopy. Wedge resection of the lung may be performed for diagnosis of interstitial process/lesion or for resection of neoplasm in patients with poor pulmonary reserve, who may not tolerate an anatomic resection.

Respiratory	PFTs similar to major thoracotomy. Further evaluation directed toward an underlying disease (immunocompromised patient for open-lung biopsy, patient with metastatic lesions). **Tests:** PFTs (see Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 281); CXR; chest CT (if available), always examine chest imaging for airway problems that might interfare with lung isolation, airway compression/obstruction; ABG (only if indicated from H&P).
Cardiovascular	**Tests:** ECG—look for evidence of RV hypertrophy, conduction problems, ischemia, and previous MI.
Neurological	Hx of previous back surgery or peripheral neuropathy. Examine thoracolumbar area for skin lesions, infection, deformities. The placement of an epidural catheter in patients with neurologic problems is controversial.
Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic (Eaton-Lambert) syndrome with resistance to depolarizing muscle relaxants and ↑ sensitivity to NMRs. Monitor relaxation with a peripheral nerve stimulator.
Hematologic	Patients are often anemic from primary disease. Consider preop blood transfusion or erythropoietin therapy. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5–2 mg iv if patient anxious. When epidural opioids are planned, avoid additional systemic opioid or sedative premedication, which can potentiate postop respiratory effects of central neuraxial opioids.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA with one lung ventilation using a DLT or BB. This is often combined with an epidural or paravertebral block. Sometimes intercostal nerve blocks are performed when the approach is thoracoscopic or when other regional techniques are contraindicated.

Induction	Standard induction. Short-acting paralytic (succinylcholine 1–1.5 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg or rocuronium 0.3–0.6 mg/kg for tracheal intubation)	
Maintenance	**Balanced technique:** Air-O_2, isoflurane, and iv opioids (usually fentanyl). No N_2O. Pain is highly variable after thoracoscopic procedures, dependent on degree of lung dissection. If a regional catheter is used, management should be similar to pneumonectomy/lobectomy (consider lower dose of opioid). If parenteral analgesia is insufficient, useful adjuncts include intercostal block, paravertebral block and/or intrapleural local anesthetic (given through the chest tube after the lung is inflated [maximum 0.5 mL/kg of bupivacaine 0.25% with epinephrine]).	
Emergence	Ensure complete recruitment of operative lung. Extubate in OR, transfer in head-up position to PACU or ICU, breathing O_2 by mask.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–14 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2 mL/kg/h (maintenance fluid)	Replace blood loss with colloid (1:1). Third-space loss is negligible and does not need to be replaced.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line	 Depending on comorbidities.
Positioning	Lateral decubitus or supine, with wedge under back on operated side. ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, ears, genitals	

Ventilation	Lung isolation (DLT or BB) usually required, except for easily accessible/peripheral lesions. DLT superior in regard to rapidity of lung collapse.	For OLV technique, see Anesthetic Considerations for Lobectomy/Pneumonectomy, p. 285.
Complications during OLV	See OLV under Intraop Anesthetic Considerations for Lobectomy/Pneumonectomy, p. 286.	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Same as for lobectomy, pneumonectomy Pain	See Postop Complications for Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 289. Pain may at times be poorly controlled with parenteral agents alone. May require neuraxial technique for rescue. More common with extensive resections than simple wedge
Complications during OLV	See OLV under Intraop Anesthetic Considerations for Lobectomy/Pneumonectomy, p. 288.	
Pain management	Parenteral opioids (iv, im, continuous iv, PCA [p. C-3]). Epidural Intercostal blocks Interpleural analgesia NSAID (ketorolac 10–15 mg)	See Pain Management for Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 298.

Suggested Readings

1. McKenna RJ Jr, Mahtabifard A, Pickens A, et al: Fast-tracking after video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery lobectomy, segmentectomy, and pneumonectomy. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; 84(5):1663–7.
2. Shah JS, Bready LL: Anesthesia for thoracoscopy. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(1):153–71.
3. See Pneumonectomy/ Lobectomy Suggested Readings p. 289–290.

CHEST-WALL RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Removal of portions of the thoracic cage may be required under several circumstances with the two most common indications being (a) lung cancer that has invaded the chest wall and (b) primary chest-wall tumors (the notable exceptions being Ewing's sarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma). Although preoperative chemotherapy is not standard treatment for chest-wall sarcomas, some patients may have received Adriamycin, which is associated with cardiotoxicity at high doses. If the tumor process involves the skin, an appropriate area of skin—typically, 4 cm around the tumor—must be resected along with the specimen. Underlying subcutaneous tissue and muscle should always be resected in continuity; however, the tumor itself must not be exposed. Wide skin flaps are frequently necessary as well. Limited resection (1–5 cm segments of one or two ribs) generally requires no specific reconstructive measures, but resection of larger areas of the chest wall may require extensive reconstruction including the use

of plastic mesh replacement with or without methylmethacrylate, rib grafts and muscle, or myocutaneous flaps. Removal of anterolateral or anterior portions of the chest wall, particularly resections that include the sternum, are associated with greater postoperative instability than are resections of posterior portions of the chest wall, which are protected by the back muscles and scapula. Larger defects can be tolerated posteriorly without reconstruction, as the scapula provides chest-wall stabilization and prevents lung herniation. If a prosthesis is required, it must be covered by viable muscle to avoid erosion through the skin. Extensive reconstruction of the chest wall is often carried out in conjunction with plastic surgeons.

Usual preop diagnosis: Lung cancer with a chest-wall attachment; primary tumor of the chest wall (bone, cartilage, or soft tissue); radiation necrosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral
Incision	Over mass to be resected
Special instrumentation	Bone instruments; Marlex (or other) mesh; methylmethacrylate
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g (or as indicated by culture and sensitivity)
Surgical time	1–8 h
Closing considerations	May require help of plastic surgeon in extensive cases.
EBL	100–2000 mL
Postop care	PACU or ICU; some patients require temporary ventilatory support.
Mortality	< 5%
Morbidity	Paradoxical chest-wall motion (less in posterior resections) Pneumothorax Wound complications
Pain score	3–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Adults of all ages; children, rarely
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Relatively rare
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Lung cancer; metastatic disease; smoking-related diseases; cardiovascular disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Repair of Pectus Excavatum or Carinatum, p. 297.

Suggested Readings

1. Sellke FW, Swanson S, del Nido P: *Sabiston & Spencer: Surgery of the Chest. Section I: Chest Wall*, 7th edition. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia: 2004.

REPAIR OF PECTUS EXCAVATUM OR CARINATUM

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Standard bony and cartilaginous repair of a pectus excavatum (funnel chest) or carinatum (pigeon breast) deformities is usually elective surgery with the aim of improving contour and body image. Evidence that these repairs have any positive effect on cardiopulmonary function is controversial, although some surgeons feel that it can be more than a cosmetic procedure—particularly in patients with prominent deformities. Recent evidence suggests that, although resting cardiopulmonary function tests do not improve after pectus repairs, maximal exercise capacity may improve.

To **repair pectus excavatum,** enough pairs of costal cartilages—usually four to six—must be removed to be able to mobilize and elevate the sternum. Depending on the severity of the defect and patient's age, fixation of the sternum in the corrected position may be necessary. **Repair of pectus carinatum** is somewhat more complicated because the defects are more varied—often with a rotational component as well as anteroposterior displacement; however, removal of cartilages and correction of the position of the sternum are still the mainstays of treatment.

A midline incision provides the most satisfactory access to the cartilages and sternum. For cosmetic reasons, however, it may be important to use a curvilinear transverse incision, particularly in females. This incision requires extensive mobilization of subcutaneous and muscle flaps. The wound complication rate is somewhat greater after transverse incisions. The costal cartilages are moved by subperichondrial dissection. This may be tedious and time consuming, especially because four or five, or even more, pairs of cartilages need to be removed. The elevation of the sternum is usually fairly straightforward and usually is accompanied by a transverse sternal osteotomy (Fig. 5-8). Intercostal muscle bundles may be left attached to the sternum or may be detached and reattached for better positioning of the sternum. Sternal support normally is not used in infants, but may be used in older children.

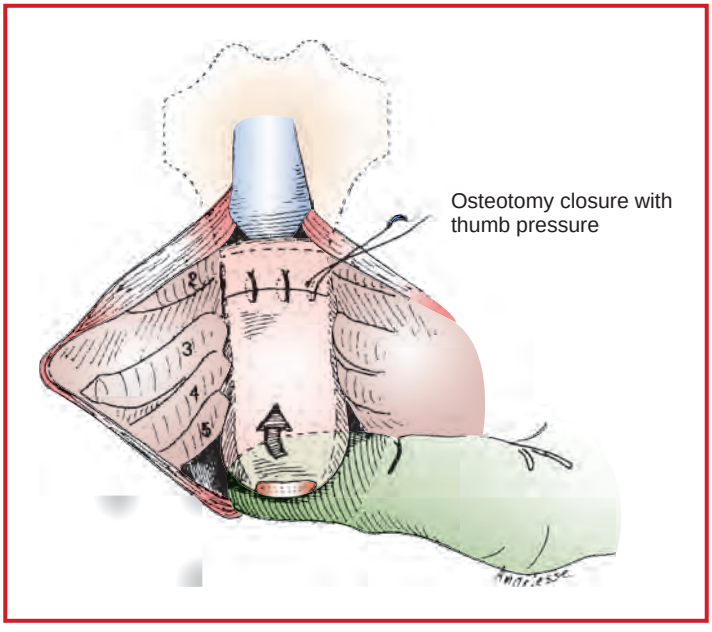


Figure 5-8. Correction of a pectus excavatum defect in a child. After subperichondrial resection of the involved costal cartilages, a wedge osteotomy permits anterior mobilization of the lower portion of the sternum. (Reproduced with permission from Shamberger RC: Chest wall deformities. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery*. 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

One common method of support is the use of a temporary transverse metal strut resting on the ribs, but beneath the sternum. The final position of the sternum is easier to predict following repair of the pectus carinatum than following repair of pectus excavatum. Because of the negative intrathoracic pressure, it is easier to hold the sternum down than up. Ideally, patients for repair of pectus excavatum are just under school age. Satisfactory repair, however, may be carried out at almost any time during childhood. As full growth is attained, results tend to be less favorable. Pectus carinatum generally has its onset during adolescence, and it is well to let the patient complete his or her growth spurt prior to undertaking repair. (Also see Repair of Pectus Excavatum/Carinatum in Pediatric General Surgery, p. 1301.)

Variant procedure or approaches: In certain circumstances, particularly in teenage girls and patients who do not engage in strenuous sports, subcutaneous, custom-made implants may be placed to improve body contour without necessitating major bony and cartilaginous repairs. These are usually carried out by plastic surgeons.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pectus excavatum or carinatum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Transverse or vertical
Special instrumentation	Bone instruments; sometimes metal struts or wires for reconstruction
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 8 h × 36–48 h
Surgical time	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Pleural and wound drainage common
EBL	100–500 mL
Postop care	ICU
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Pneumothorax: 5–10% Wound infection Sternum necrosis Immigration of strut Paradoxical chest-wall motion → hypoventilation/atelectasis
Pain score	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually children, 5–10 yr; teenagers, sometimes; adults, rarely
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Unusual
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Marfan syndrome; MVP

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: chest-wall resection; repair of pectus excavatum/carinatum)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients for chest-wall resection often have extensive cancer and may be weak and debilitated. A very large resection may create a "flail chest" situation, compromising postop ventilation.

Respiratory	Mild pectus seldom interferes with ventilation; no special studies indicated. Severe pectus deformity can be associated with restrictive lung defects. **Tests:** CXR; PFT, ABG, if indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	With severe pectus, the heart is displaced to the left and compressed; arrhythmias and RVOTO can occur 2° impaired filling, especially during exercise or in upright position. ECG may show right axis deviation, atrial and ventricular arrhythmias. A functional murmur may be detected. ECHO may reveal ↓ SV with MVP. **Tests:** ECG; cardiac catheterization if indicated. Echocardiogram if symptoms or signs suggest MVP or RVOTO.
Hematologic	**Tests:** Hct
Musculoskeletal	Chest-wall resection performed for invasive or metastatic cancer; patient may be markedly debilitated: pectus repair of chest-wall deformity for cosmetic, orthopedic, or cardiopulmonary indications: pectus deformity usually asymptomatic.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Consider anxiolysis with short-acting benzodiazepine. When epidural opioids are planned, minimize systemic opioid or sedative premedication to avoid potentiating postoperative respiratory depression from central neuroaxial opioids.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, occasionally combined with epidural for minimal chest-wall resection; however, epidural anesthesia is an excellent adjunct for extensive chest-wall resections or repair of pectus deformities.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). In the setting of RVOTO avoid myocardial depressants, hypovolemia and a short diastolic filling time (e.g., tachycardia). Lung isolation (DLT or BB) usually required for chest wall resections. Sequential OLV can often be accomplished with a single lumen ETT and a Rusch® EZ-Blocker™.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) or high-dose opioid technique (fentanyl 10–25 mcg/kg) for patient with severe RVOTO. Patients with MVP will require prophylactic antibiotics for bacterial endocarditis. OLV, if necessary, as outlined for lobectomy/pneumonectomy.	
Emergence	Extubate in OR; if high-dose opioid →ICU for later extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	Usually minimal blood loss. Fluid restriction unnecessary as this is extrapulmonary operation.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line	Close monitoring with arterial and central venous catheters may be required in patients with significant cardiopulmonary compromise.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

Complications	Pneumothorax	Unintentional pleural tear can cause pneumothorax. Intraop deterioration characterized by ↑ ventilatory pressure, hypotension, and hypoxemia suggests pneumothorax. Increase FiO_2; D/C N_2O. Ensure pleural space is decompressed appropriately with needle or tube thoracostomy.
	Cardiac perforation	Rare, catastrophic event reported with aberrant bar placement during minimally invasive approach. Heralded by signs of hemorrhagic or obstructive shock. Supporting bar may interfere with external cardiac compressions.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypoventilation Flail chest Atelectasis/pneumonia	Although most patients do not require postop ventilatory support, with extensive chest-wall resection, patient may hypoventilate. Respiratory stimulants, such as doxapram, should be avoided as they may → deep inspirations that can → severe sternal retractions. Paradoxical chest-wall movement may occur during spontaneous ventilation with flail chest; postop atelectasis 20 splinting. Obtain postop CXR.
	Pericarditis	Similar to post-pericardiotomy syndrome; usually responsive to NSAIDs though occasionally corticosteroids or percutaneous drainage required.
	Bar displacement	Following minimally invasive repair (Nuss) the bar may become displaced and require repositioning. Inadequate analgesia and absence of a stabilizing bar often cited as contributing factors.
Pain management	Depends on site and extent of chest wall resected. Parenteral or epidural opioids with local anesthetic.	Epidural opioids and local anesthetics are particularly useful if flail chest is present—reduces need for ventilatory support.

Suggested Readings

1. Frantz FW: Indications and guidelines for pectus excavatum repair. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2011; 23(4):486–91.
2. Ghory MJ, James FW, Mays W: Cardiac performance in children with pectus excavatum. *J Pediatr Surg* 1989; 24(8):751–5.
3. Gips H, Konstantin Z, Hiss J: Cardiac perforation by a pectus bar after surgical correction of pectus excavatum: case report and review of the literature. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2007.
4. Iida H: Surgical repair of pectus excavatum. *Gen Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2010; 58(2):55–61.
5. Jacobs JP, Quintessenza JA, Morell VO, et al: Minimally invasive endoscopic repair of pectus excavatum. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2002; 21(5): 869–73.
6. Mansour KA, Thourani VH, Odessey EA, et al: Thirty-year experience with repair of pectus deformities in adults. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2003; 76(2):391–5; discussion 395.
7. Nuss D, Croitoru DP, Kelly RE, et al: Review and discussion of the complications of minimally invasive pectus excavatum repair. *Eur J Pediatr Surg* 2002; 12(4):230–4.
8. Robicsek SA, Lobato EB: Repair of pectus excavatum. Anesthesia considerations. *Chest Surg Clin North Am* 2000; 10(2): 253–9.

THORACOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The objective of a **thoracoplasty** (removal of several ribs) is to permanently obliterate an existing pleural space or to collapse a portion of the lung. Formerly, this operation was used in the treatment of tuberculosis (TB); however, because of better drug therapy, appropriate pulmonary resection and the decrease in incidence of TB, thoracoplasty is now rare. The procedure also was used for obliterating empyema spaces and helping to close bronchopleural fistulas (BPFs). The use of **pedicled muscle flaps** (serratus anterior, pectoralis major, and latissimus dorsi are the most common) or an **omental transposition** have largely replaced thoracoplasty for filling empyema spaces and encouraging closing of BPFs. These operations are less deforming and better tolerated physiologically because they do not result in paradoxical motion of the chest wall.

For patients whose lungs will never expand to fill the space—such as those who have had a pneumonectomy or who have a permanently noncompliant lung—resection of multiple overlying ribs may be necessary (Fig. 5-9). Thoracoplasty is accomplished by removing several ribs in a subperiosteal fashion, allowing the underlying chest wall to collapse. This collapse is aided by the normally negative intrapleural pressure. Because the periosteum is left intact, the ribs will regenerate, resulting in a permanent, bony collapse of the chest wall. If the objective of the thoracoplasty is to obliterate a relatively small space (meaning that segments of only two to three ribs need be removed), the procedure may be done in a single stage, with little postop physiologic impairment of respiration. If extensive thoracoplasty is necessary, however, the procedure may be done in stages to minimize postop chest-wall instability and resultant respiratory problems.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pulmonary TB; BPF; empyema

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Usually lateral
Incision	Along rib line
Special instrumentation	Bone instruments
Unique considerations	TB or fungal infection may be present
Antibiotics	As indicated by culture and sensitivity
Surgical time	2–3 h
EBL	500 mL or more
Postop care	ICU
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Paradoxical chest-wall motion → atelectasis → hypoxemia: 10% Pneumothorax: Rare
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Middle-aged or older adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	TB; pneumococcal infection; neoplasm; complication of pneumonectomy
Associated conditions	Immunosuppression

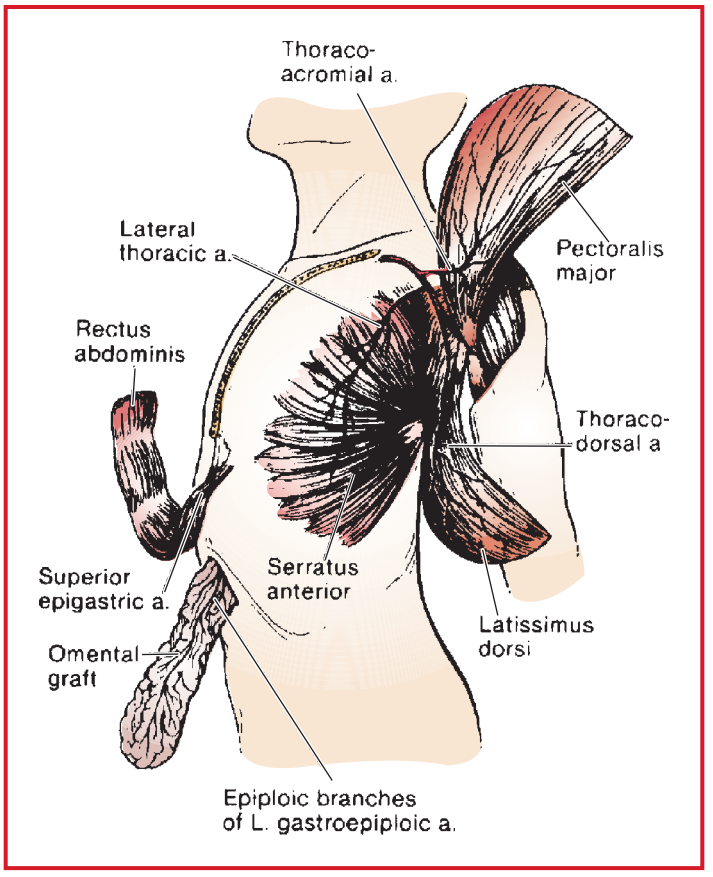


Figure 5-9. Extrathoracic muscle flaps that may be used to obliterate a postpneumonectomy empyema cavity. (Reproduced with permission from Miller JI Jr: Postsurgical empyema. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Drainage of Empyema, p. 302.

Suggested Reading

1. Seify H, Mansour K, Miller J, et al: Single-stage muscle flap reconstruction of the postpneumonectomy empyema space: the Emory experience. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2007; 120(7):1886–91.

DRAINAGE OF EMPYEMA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Empyema is infection within the pleural space, and the primary treatment for it is drainage. Patients may be acutely ill or they may have a history of prolonged infirmity. The most common cause of empyema is extraparenchymal extension of a pneumonia, although other causes include trauma, iatrogenic, and esophageal perforation. The three phases of an empyema are the exudative phase, the fibrinopurulent phase, and the organized phase. The early, or exudative, phase of an empyema is usually associated with fever, dyspnea, and a pleural effusion, with the diagnosis generally being made by thoracentesis. In more established infections, patients may complain of chronic symptoms, such as pain, dyspnea, and chest heaviness, and their medical history may include several previous courses of antibiotics.

Treatment of empyemas is based on the stage and the underlying cause of the infection. Except in its earliest phase, chest tube drainage alone rarely provides adequate therapy. In the fibrinopurulent stage, thoracoscopic drainage with disruption of loculations and removal of the fine peel on the lung is enough to drain the infected fluid and allow the underlying lung to expand. This procedure typically is done with the patient in the lateral position and involves three thoracoscopy ports. Blood loss is generally small, although large volumes of irrigation fluid may be necessary to thoroughly debride the thoracic cavity.

As the empyema becomes more established, the peel becomes thicker and more difficult to remove thoracoscopically. In such cases, an **open thoracotomy** is necessary. Due to the extensive intrapleural inflammation, blood and fluid losses may be substantial. To identify the correct plane between the lung and the thickened pleura, the lung may need to be reexpanded frequently throughout the procedure. Satisfactory drainage is accomplished when the infected fluid is removed and the lung expands freely. Because the peel often intimately adheres to the underlying lung, there may be a moderate postop air leak.

In patients too ill to undergo thoracotomy, **rib resection** with subsequent open drainage tube will permit the underlying lung to expand over a period of several weeks. Although this may be done under local anesthesia, a brief general anesthetic is often easier on the patient. In this operation, the patient is placed in the lateral position and an incision is made over the rib corresponding to the most dependent portion of the empyema cavity. A 6-cm length of the rib is excised and a large-diameter (≥ 50 Fr) tube is inserted into the empyema cavity. More permanent open drainage is obtained by fashioning an **Eloesser flap.** In this procedure, a U-shaped flap of skin is rotated into the empyema cavity after rib resection. This creates a long-term, skin-lined tube that will last indefinitely. A varient of this procedure—the **Claggett procedure**—is carried out for empyema (with or without bronchopleural fistula) following pneumonectomy because closed drainage rarely suffices in that situation. The principle is the same: drainage is accomplished through an epithelial-lined permanent opening. The opening is made anterolaterally and dependently so that drainage is effective and the patient can handle dressing changes without assistance. Segments of 2-3 ribs are removed, and the skin is sutured to the parietal pleura, leaving a permanent opening for drainage and irrigation. Without an underlying lung, and with a relatively fixed mediastinum, this procedure is well tolerated physiologically.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nontuberculosis empyema (typically pneumococcal)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Eloesser or Clagett	Tube Thoracostomy
Position	Usually lateral	Lateral
Incision	Over empyema pocket for Eloesser	Lateral
Special instrumentation	None	Large tubes
Unique considerations	Patient may have BPF	Local or GA
Antibiotics	As indicated by culture and sensitivity	⇐
Surgical time	1 h; occasionally more	< 1 h
Closing considerations	Wound left open	None
EBL	100 mL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Fluid drainage Bleeding: Rare	Air leak
Pain score	3–4	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Usually adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Decreasing
Etiology	Pneumonia; esophageal or bronchial leak; lymphatic or hematogenous spread of infection; post-trauma or thoracic surgery
Associated conditions	Bronchopleural fistula (BPF); sepsis; malnutrition

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: thoracoplasty; drainage of empyema)

PREOPERATIVE

The guiding principle in the anesthetic management of empyema is to protect the nonaffected lung from soiling by the affected side. These patients are often chronically ill with sepsis and cachexia, and there is usually an underlying BPF (which may require awake intubation).

Respiratory	Patients usually have preexisting pulmonary disease. Preop pulmonary findings may include collapse of the ipsilateral lung, impaired hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction 2° infection, and mediastinal shift to the ipsilateral side. Procedure often is performed for empyema in the presence of BPF following lung resection (particularly pneumonectomy), penetrating injury to chest, or rupture of a cyst or bulla. When possible, surgeon should drain empyema under local anesthesia before induction, with patient sitting upright. If empyema is loculated, complete drainage may not be possible. **Tests:** Consider PFTs; ABG; obtain CXR to determine efficacy of preop chest drainage; if chest CT available, look for airway obstruction that could interfere with DLT placement.
Cardiovascular	There may be ECG changes because of mediastinal shift to the affected side. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	✓ Hx of back surgery, peripheral neuropathy. Examine lumbar area for skin lesions, infection, deformities. Avoid placement of epidural catheter in patient with neurologic problems or if obviously bacteremic or septic.
Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic (Eaton-Lambert) syndrome with resistance to depolarizing muscle relaxant and ↑sensitivity to NDMRs. Monitor relaxation with peripheral nerve stimulator.
Hematologic	Transfuse patients with preop Hct < 25% or Hct < 30% in patients with CAD. (Hb level necessary to maintain adequate O_2 content.) Obtain autologous blood during the month before surgery or consider preop erythropoietin therapy in anemic patients.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5–2 mg iv if patient anxious. When epidural opioids are planned, avoid systemic opioid or sedative premedication, which can potentiate postop respiratory effects of central neuraxial opioids.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA; combined with epidural anesthesia/analgesia if thoracotomy is indicated and patient is not bacteremic or septic.

Induction	Consider inhalational induction (e.g., sevoflurane) if patient has significant BPF. Semi-Fowler position with a lateral tilt to make the infected side dependent, along with rapid control of the airway followed by isolation makes contralateral contamination less likely. Rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure is an alternative (p. B-5). Intubate with DLT; isolate lungs to protect from aspiration and tension pneumothorax. Consider using DLT with bronchial lumen to side opposite BPF. Contamination of the healthy lung from aspiration of pus is a major concern; thus, proper tube position should be verified by FOB, and adequate cuff inflation should be checked. Large DLT provides snug fit in bronchus and limits aspiration. Pus may appear in tracheal lumen (lumen to the diseased lung); suction frequently to avoid soiling good lung.	
Maintenance	O_2 and isoflurane (1.0–1.5%); less required if epidural local anesthetics used. No N_2O. Use FiO_2 = 0.5–1.0. A local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine or 0.25% bupivacaine) can be infused or injected hourly into a thoracic (3–5 mL) or lumbar (5–10 mL) epidural catheter. Continuous infusion of local anesthetic generally provides better hemodynamic stability than hourly bolus injection. To enhance the effect of epidural analgesia, a loading dose of opiate (e.g., hydromorphone 0.4–1 mg [thoracic] or 1–1.5 mg [lumbar]) can be administered early in the surgery and at least 1 h before conclusion. Following intubation, isolate lung with DLT or BB. The chest tube is then removed while the chest is prepped for the operation. Ventilate only the healthy lung. Because BPF is an abnormal communication between the bronchial tree and pleural cavity, if no chest tube is present, conventional intubation with IPPV can produce tension pneumothorax. Keep unclamped and do not remove a functioning chest tube until the lung is isolated and ventilation to the diseased lung is stopped. After the chest is opened, there is no chance of pneumothorax, but the large air leak through BPF may prevent satisfactory ventilation of that lung. High-frequency ventilation (HFV) is recommended by some, but studies show no benefit; in some patients the BPF is actually increased with HFV. See OLV Management under Anesthetic Considerations for Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 288.	
Emergence	Before closing the chest, lungs are inflated gradually to 30 cmH_2O pressure to reinflate atelectatic areas and to check for significant air leaks. The surgeon will insert chest tubes to drain pleural cavity and aid lung reexpansion. Patient is extubated while still in OR. If postop ventilation is required (rare), the DLT is exchanged for an ETT. If BPF is still open, consider selective ventilation postop through DLT. It may be necessary to ventilate each lung separately; use smaller TVs to lung with BPF. Alternatively, pressure-controlled ventilation may be used to avoid major air leaks through BPF.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 Avoid hypervolemia.	An overhydrated patient is at increased risk of right-heart failure and pulmonary edema. Replace blood loss with crystalloid (1:3) or colloid (1:1). Third-space losses are negligible and do not need to be replaced.
	Use vasopressor (ephedrine 5–10 mg iv bolus or phenylephrine 50–100 mcg iv bolus) if hypotensive.	Use of epidural local anesthetics can cause ↓ BP in a volume-restricted patient; vasopressor often needed.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± CVP and/or PA line ± Arterial line	
Positioning	Axillary roll, "airplane" for upper arm Avoid hyperextending arms ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, ears, genitals	Placing the oximeter probe on the down side may help detect inadequate perfusion from compression.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Tension pneumothorax Aspiration pneumonia ("down" lung)	Functioning chest tube necessary to prevent tension pneumothorax.
Pain management	Analgesic requirements minimal Parenteral opioids (iv, im, PCA [p. C-3]), epidural, NSAID	See Pain Management under Anesthetic Considerations for Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 289.

Suggested Readings

1. Alifano M, Gaucher S, Rabbat A, et al: Alternatives to resectional surgery for infectious disease of the lung: from embolization to thoracoplasty. *Thorac Surg Clin* 2012; 22(3):413–29.
2. Shiraishi Y: Surgical treatment of chronic empyema. *Gen Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2010; 58(7):311–6.

TRACHEAL RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The primary indications for **tracheal resection** are benign stricture and primary tracheal neoplasm. Benign strictures often are related to previous intubation or tracheostomy, whereas the most common malignant tumors include squamous cell carcinoma and adenoid cystic carcinoma. Proximal tracheal resections may also be required for trauma or idiopathic laryngotracheal stenosis. The preoperative assessment of patients with tracheal disease generally involves imaging with either CT or MRI. Important considerations include the length and position of the lesion and the caliber of the airway. Although up to 50% of the trachea can be resected with a successful primary anastomosis, shorter segment resections are technically simpler and do not require special techniques to maximize tracheal mobility.

Lesions of the upper and midtrachea can be approached through the neck, whereas lesions of the lower trachea and carina must be approached through the right chest. When using the **cervical approach,** the patient is positioned with the neck extended. A transverse collar incision is used and subplatysmal planes are developed. The trachea is then extensively mobilized anteriorly and posteriorly. To minimize the risk of devascularizing the trachea, only the region to be removed should be circumferentially dissected. During this portion of the operation, care is taken to avoid injury of the recurrent laryngeal nerves. The trachea is then opened, the oral ETT is withdrawn into the proximal trachea, and a sterile armored ETT is passed across the operative field. Fine, interrupted, absorbable sutures are placed, but not tied. Once all sutures are in place, the armored tube is removed and the oral ETT is positioned across the anastomosis. The ends of the trachea are approximated with minimal tension and the sutures are tied (Fig. 5-10). To provide minimal tension, it may be necessary to flex the neck for this portion of the procedure. A suture may be placed from the chin to the chest wall to maintain neck flexion for several days postop. At the end of the procedure, the patient should be extubated to minimize airway irritation and disruption of the anastomosis.

Lesions of the lower trachea must be approached through the right chest, where the same techniques as discussed above are used. To facilitate exposure of the distal trachea, OLV using either a DLT or a single-lumen tube advanced into the left main bronchus is helpful.

As is apparent from the preceding discussion, all tracheal procedures require cooperation and frequent communication between the surgeon and anesthesiologist. Occasionally, special techniques, such as jet ventilation or CPB, may be necessary for tracheal surgery.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tracheal stenosis or tumor (adenoid cystic carcinoma or squamous cell carcinoma most common)

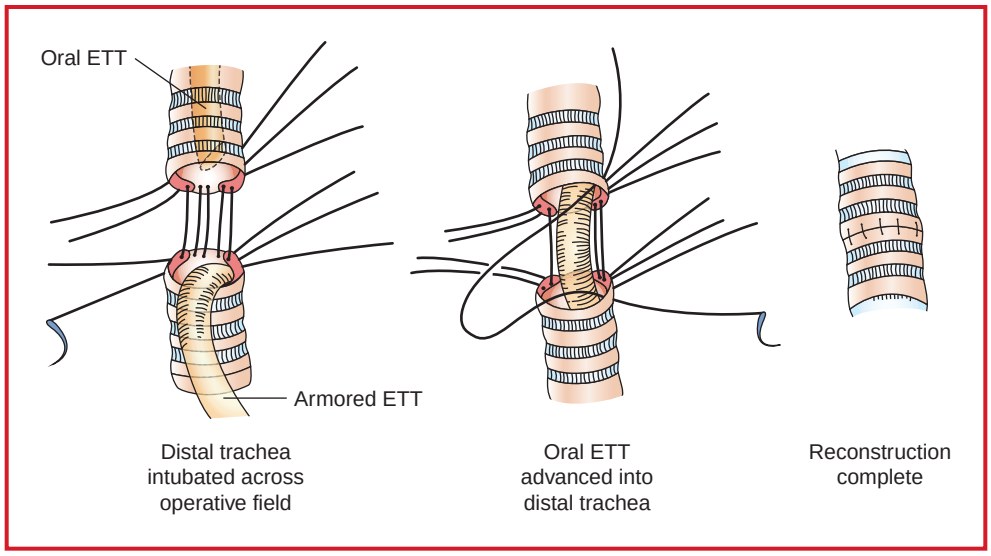


Figure 5-10. Stages of tracheal reconstruction. Note ETT in distal trachea. (Reproduced with permission from Grillo HC: *Current Problems in Surgery*. Year Book Medical Publishers: 1970.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Cervical Approach	Sternotomy	Right Thoracotomy
Position	Supine	⇐	Left lateral decubitus
Incision	Transverse low cervical	Cervical + sternotomy	Right thoracotomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3 h	3–4 h	4 h
Closing considerations	Neck flexion (chin stitch)	⇐	⇐
EBL	200 mL	350 mL	350–500 mL
Postop care	ICU	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 5%	5%	⇐
Morbidity	Retained secretions Dehiscence Recurrent stenosis Recurrent/superior laryngeal nerve injury Granuloma	⇐	⇐
Pain score	3–4	5–6	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Wide variation
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Stenosis usually 2° to intubation or injury; tumor, either primary (e.g., smoking) or secondary (e.g., esophageal, lung, thyroid cancer)
Associated conditions	Carcinoid syndrome; cardiopulmonary disease; tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Initial presentation may involve Sx of airway obstruction (stridor, cough, dyspnea), which may be misdiagnosed as asthma or pneumonitis. Patients presenting for tracheal resection almost exclusively have fixed obstruction, but may have an associated dynamic component. A careful preop evaluation of the airway usually includes bronchoscopic delineation of lesion site and size. This, in combination with a review of CT images, will help to determine a plan including type of induction, size of ETT and location of ETT tip. **Tests:** PFT with flow/volume loops; bronchoscopy; CT scan to determine extent of tracheal obstruction
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients with stridor or critical airway lesions should not receive preop sedation. It is probably best to avoid sedation in all patients. Patients may be unable to lie flat 2° respiratory distress. Low-density helium-oxygen mixtures (Heliox) have the clinical advantage of reducing airway resistance to flow past the obstruction, which may be beneficial in optimizing the patient prior to the procedure.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, combined with epidural or paravertebral catheter if sternotomy or thoracotomy approach is used. Surgery is divided into five phases: induction, dissection, open trachea, closure, and emergence. Induction, open trachea, and emergence are the critical and potentially dangerous stages. Close communication between surgeon and anesthesiologist is required.

Induction	Be prepared for airway emergency. Surgeon must be present and prepared for emergency rigid bronchoscopy and/or to perform tracheostomy below lesion. Induction depends on the site and degree of airway narrowing. Proximal or narrow lesions usually require inhalation induction or awake FOI, whereas distal or mild lesions may be approached with a rapid sequence iv induction. Sevoflurane/O_2 is preferred for smooth inhalation induction with depression of cough reflex; avoid N_2O. High concentrations of sevoflurane may be necessary. Heliox (79% helium in oxygen) has been recommended to decrease resistance to flow past the obstruction; however, helium is not widely available and limits the FiO_2 that can be administered. Have a variety of laryngeal blades and uncut ETTs of various sizes, including small 5-mm tubes available. If ETT passes beyond lesion, can begin IPPV. If ETT cannot be passed, spontaneous ventilation with 100% O_2 and sevoflurane will be required if there is a dynamic obstruction, while patients with fixed lesions will tolerate PPV through a proximal tube. Careful and gradual dilation of the stenotic lesion may be required, using different sizes of ETTs or rigid bronchoscopy to facilitate placement of an adequate size ETT for ventilation. For carinal resections, use a sterile ETT, which can be placed by surgeon directly into each bronchus during resection for cross-field ventilation. An armored tube is preferable because it avoids kinking during repeated manipulations by the surgeon. Another option is to place jet ventilation catheters into the mainstem bronchi and jet-ventilate the patient during the open trachea stage.

Maintenance	Inhalational anesthesia can be unreliable (and may pollute the OR environment) due to frequent tube changes and intermittent apnea. TIVA is preferable: use propofol (25–100 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) infusions. After the airway is secured, muscle relaxation should be given to avoid movement or coughing during the procedure. Standard maintenance (p. B-3). FiO_2 = 1.0 if using apneic oxygenation; continuous monitoring with pulse oximetry mandatory. Consider HFJV through a small-diameter catheter if ETT interferes with operation. HFJV will require iv anesthesia because inhalational agents cannot be delivered predictably; CPB can be used (rare). Analgesia requirements are highly dependent on surgical approach. Standard parenteral opioids are sufficient for the cervical approach, whereas epidural or paravertebral analgesia (similar to lobectomy) are used for open intrathoracic procedures.	
Emergence	Early extubation; presence of ETT and IPPV can disrupt fresh suture line. Remove ETT as soon as patient is awake enough to protect airway and breathing spontaneously, but before bucking and coughing occur. Presence of a "guardian suture" (chestwall to chin) will make reintubation more difficult. Assess integrity of recurrent laryngeal nerve after high tracheal resections.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 (left arm) NS/LR @ 3 mL/kg/h	✓ innominate artery compression, affects right arm perfusion.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line	Left radial artery cannulation permits uninterrupted monitoring of BP during periods of innominate artery compression. Placement of iv in left arm allows unimpeded infusion. Right-extremity pulse oximetry will help detect innominate artery occlusion (which otherwise could lead to stroke.)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Airway management	ETT replaced with sterile ETT and circuit intraop.	Ater the trachea is divided, the surgeon places a sterile ETT in the distal trachea. The original ETT is withdrawn above the surgical site. The surgeon attaches a sterile anesthesia circuit to distal ETT for ventilation. Then, the surgeon places a suture through the distal tip of the original ETT. Before reanastomosis of trachea, the distal trachea is suctioned to remove accumulated blood and secretions. After a posterior suture line is completed, the original ETT is pulled through the trachea, and the distal tube (which is below the resection) is removed. Reattach and ventilate patient through original ETT.
Complications	Tracheal edema Injury to neck	Corticosteroids (dexamethasone 6–8 mg iv) to ↓ tracheal edema. Any structure in the neck can be damaged, including superior and recurrent laryngeal nerves, trachea, and thoracic duct.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Tracheal disruption Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	Neck swelling, subcutaneous emphysema, and inability to ventilate indicate loss of airtight anastomosis. Immediate reexploration of neck is essential. May be fatal. Bilateral (occasionally unilateral) laryngeal nerve damage may → airway obstruction, necessitating reintubation. Mask ventilation may be ineffective.

Position	Airway edema Keep head flexed to reduce tension on tracheal suture line.	Place patient in head-up, neck-flexed position. Treat with nebulized racemic epinephrine if airway compromise occurs. If reintubation is required, a small ETT should be placed under direct vision or fiberoptic guidance, to avoid disruption of the anastomosis.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids (p. C-1) ± Epidural	After patient is fully awake.

Suggested Readings

1. Ashiku SK, Mathisen DJ: Idiopathic laryngotracheal stenosis. *Chest Surg Clin North Am* 2003; 13(2):257–69.
2. Gaissert HA, Grillo HC, Shadmehr MB, et al: Long-term survival after resection of primary adenoid cystic and squamous cell carcinoma of the trachea and carina. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2004; 78(6):1889–96, discussion 1896–7.
3. Hobai IA, Chhangani SV, Alfille PH: Anesthesia for tracheal resection and reconstruction. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(4): 709–30.
4. McRae K: Anesthesia for airway surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):497–541.

EXCISION OF MEDIASTINAL TUMOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Mediastinal tumors are characterized by their location (anterior, middle, and posterior) and their size. Common anterior mediastinal tumors include thymic tumors (benign or malignant thymoma and thymic carcinoma), germ-cell tumors, lymphoma, and substernal goiters. Typically, thymic and germ-cell tumors are resected, whereas lymphomas are biopsied. Substernal goiters usually can be resected through the neck. Tumors in the anterior mediastinum usually are removed through a **median sternotomy,** whereas tumors in the middle and posterior mediastinum usually are removed through a **lateral thoracotomy or thoracoscopy (VATS).** Although middle and posterior mediastinal tumors usually do not present airway management problems, the issue of functioning neuroendocrine tissue must be considered. Mediastinal pheochromocytomas are uncommon middle mediastinal tumors. However, as with pheochromocytomas arising in other locations, appropriate preop adrenergic management is necessary. Some cysts or small tumors may be excised using **video thoracoscopy** (see Video-Assisted Thoracoscopy, p. 326).

Mediastinal tumors that are well encapsulated generally are removed in a straightforward fashion. If anterior mediastinal tumors are not well encapsulated and are attached to pericardium or lung on either side, appropriate portions of these attached structures may be removed in continuity with the tumor. If there is attachment to phrenic nerves on either side, one nerve may be sacrificed, if necessary, to remove the tumor completely. In patients with anterior mediastinal tumors, invasion of the major vascular structures, particularly the aorta and arch vessels, presents an even greater problem.

Germ-cell tumors of the anterior mediastinum—particularly nonseminomatous tumors—are often treated with chemotherapy initially. A common regimen for these patients consists of cisplatin, etoposide, and bleomycin, and because bleomycin is associated with pulmonary toxicity—particularly in conjunction with high concentrations of inhaled oxygen—care must be taken to keep the $FiO_2 < 40\%$ when conducting these operations.

Another common issue with patients with large anterior mediastinal masses is that of intrathoracic airway obstruction at the time of anesthetic induction. Although most mediastinal masses do not cause obstruction of the trachea or tracheobronchial tree, large mediastinal masses in the anterior mediastinum, in conjunction with muscle relaxation, can lead to complete obstruction of the airway with inability to ventilate the patient. Although rigid bronchoscopy may permit ventilation through the obstruction, it cannot be counted on to relieve the obstruction; therefore, only short-acting or no muscle relaxants (spontaneous ventilation) should be used in these patients.

Usual preop diagnosis: Thymoma; teratodermoid; ganglioneuroma; lymphoma; schwannoma; substernal goiter

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral
Incision	Median sternotomy or lateral thoracotomy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Sternal or rib retractors
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	≤ 2 h
EBL	< 500 mL
Postop care	Frequently ICU
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Bleeding
Pain score	5–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages
Male:Female	1:1
Etiology	**Anterior mediastinum:** Thymoma; teratoma; pericardial cyst; lymphoma; parasternal (Morgagni) hernia; lipoma **Superior mediastinum:** Goiter; aneurysm; parathyroid tumor; esophageal tumor; angiomatous tumor **Middle mediastinum:** Lymphoma; lymph node inflammation; bronchogenic tumor; bronchogenic cyst **Posterior mediastinum:** Neurogenic tumor; aneurysm (enteric cyst); esophageal tumor; bronchogenic tumor
Associated conditions	SVC syndrome; myasthenia gravis; recurrent laryngeal nerve damage; airway obstruction; dyspnea; Horner's syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Mediastinoscopy, p. 312.

Suggested Readings

1. de Wit R: Refining the optimal chemotherapy regimen in good prognosis germ cell cancer: interpretation of the current body of knowledge. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; 25(28):4346–9.
2. Narang S, Harte HB, Body SC: Anesthesia for patients with a mediastinal mass. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3): 559–79.
3. Viswabathans S, Campbell CE, Cork RC: Asymptomatic undetected mediastinal mass: a death during ambulatory anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth* 1995; 7(2):151–5.

MEDIASTINOSCOPY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Mediastinoscopy is used for biopsy of mediastinal lymph nodes. The most common indication for this procedure is bronchogenic carcinoma, although lymphadenopathy associated with lymphoma, sarcoidosis, and infectious granulomatous diseases are also indications for mediastinoscopy. **Cervical mediastinoscopy** provides access to the pretracheal, paratracheal, and anterior subcarinal nodes (Fig. 5-11), whereas **transthoracic mediastinoscopy** (also known as **anterior mediastinotomy** or **Chamberlain's procedure**) provides access to the aortopulmonary lymph nodes. Previous mediastinoscopy and radiation are relative contraindications to this procedure. If a thoracic aneurysm is present or SVC is obstructed, mediastinoscopy is contraindicated because the anatomy is distorted and vessels can be punctured inadvertently by the mediastinoscope.

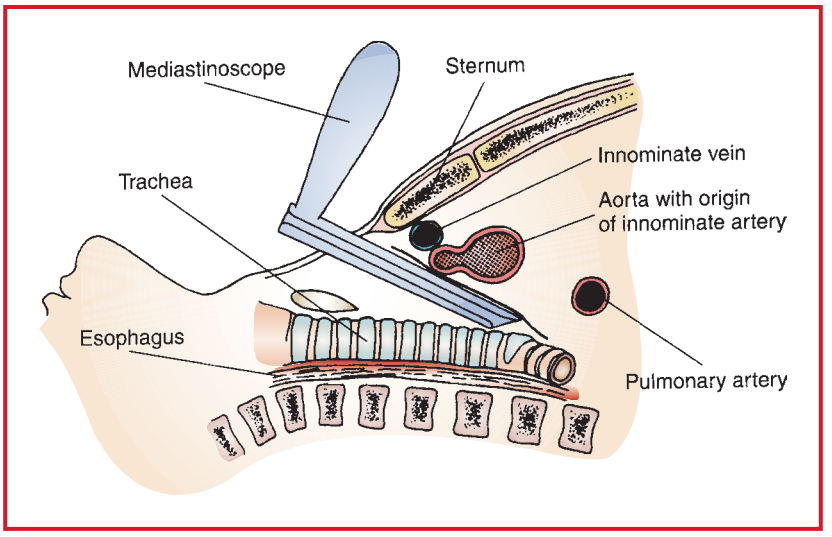


Figure 5-11. Mediastinoscope is inserted through a small cervical incision into the middle mediastinum, along the pretracheal plane. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Variant procedure or approaches: For nodes on the left side of the mediastinum, **transthoracic mediastinoscopy** is performed through a limited anterior thoracotomy. In the classic **Chamberlain's procedure,** the 3rd costal cartilage is resected and the mediastinum is explored without entering the pleural space. As with cervical mediastinoscopy, visualization is often limited and lymph nodes should be aspirated before biopsy. If the pleural space is entered during the course of the procedure, either a chest tube can be placed postop or the pleural space can be aspirated immediately before wound closure. Patients should be extubated at the end of the operation. Cervical mediastinoscopy is usually an outpatient procedure, whereas patients undergoing transthoracic mediastinoscopy are usually hospitalized overnight.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of the lung with enlarged mediastinal nodes; mediastinal node enlargement 2° lymphoma, thymoma, or other

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	For mediastinoscopy, suprasternal; usually left 2nd interspace for anterior mediastinotomy.
Special instrumentation	Mediastinoscope
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	≤ 1 h
EBL	Minimal (but risk of significant blood loss if major vascular injury occurs).
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	Bleeding Pneumothorax: Rare Vocal cord paralysis: Rare Esophageal perforation: Rare Pleural tear: Rare Tracheal laceration: Rare
Pain score	2 (mediastinoscopy); 2–3 (anterior mediastinotomy)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adults, usually > 50 yr
Male:Female	Male > female
Incidence	Frequently part of evaluation for patients with lung cancer.
Etiology	Lung cancer; lymphoma; thymoma; retrosternal goiter
Associated conditions	Airway obstruction

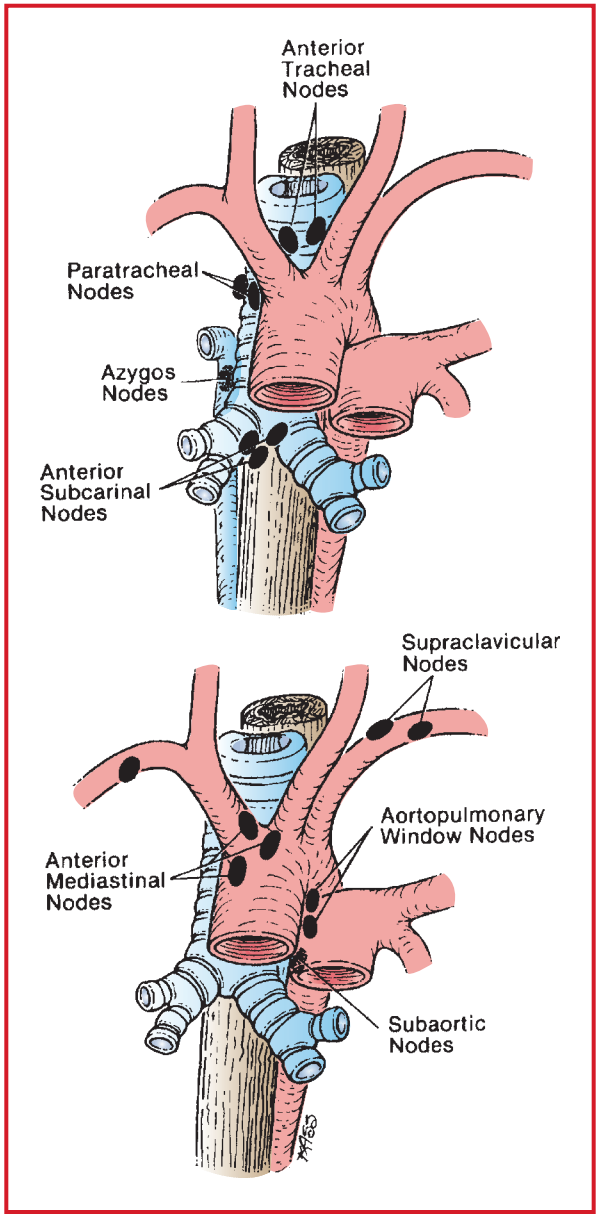


Figure 5-12. Lymph node sites accessible to mediastinoscope biopsy. Many of these can be reached by standard cervical mediastinoscopy. Anterior and aortopulmonary window nodes, however, require extended or anterior mediastinoscopy, VATS, or needle biopsy. (Reproduced with permission from Bocage J-P, Mackenzie JW, Nosher JL: Invasive diagnostic procedures. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB, eds. *General Thoracic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

(Procedures covered: excision of mediastinal tumor; mediastinoscopy)

Typically, these patients can be divided into two populations, depending on the presence or absence of a significant mediastinal mass (with the potential for catastrophic airway obstruction or cardiovascular collapse on induction of anesthesia). The preop assessment must focus on the differentiation of these two populations. Close consultation with the surgeon is essential in formulating the anesthetic plan. On occasion, patients with critical airway or cardiac compression may require a tissue biopsy for diagnostic purposes only. If general anesthesia poses a significant physiologic threat to the patient, search for an alternative, less-invasive biopsy site.

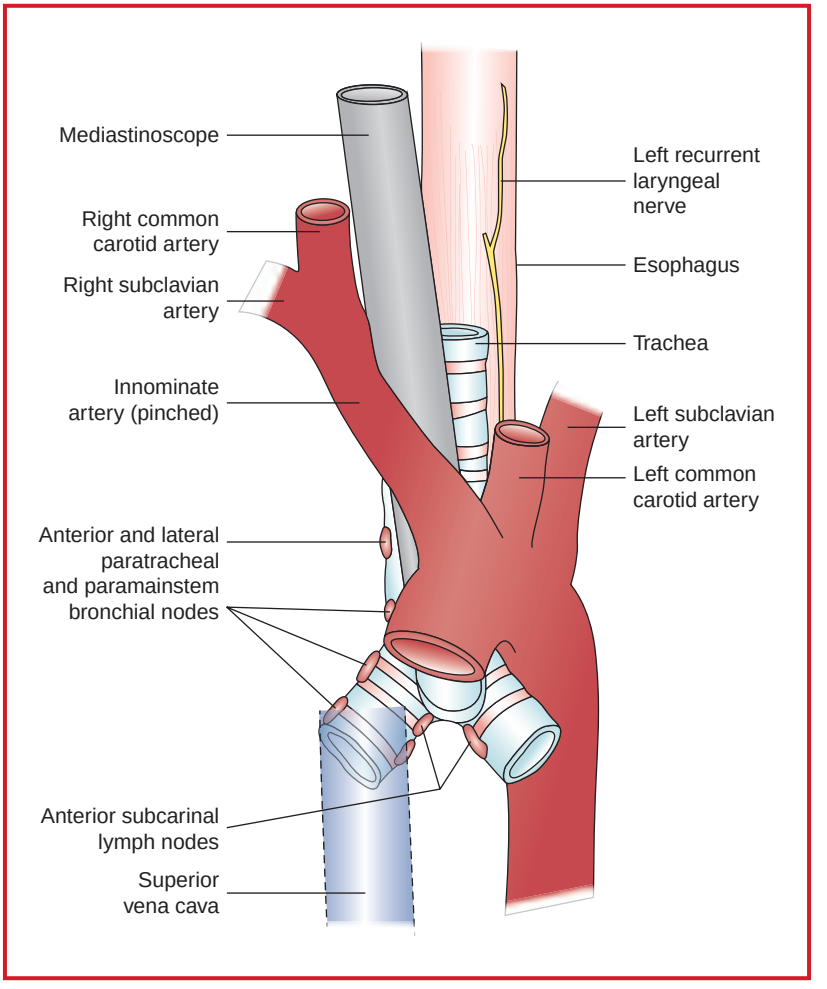


Figure 5-13. Relationship of mediastinoscope to trachea and great vessels. (Reproduced with permission from Petty C: Right radial artery pressure during mediastinoscopy. *Anesth Analg* 1979; 58:428. Modified in Rogers MC: *Principles & Practices of Anesthesiology.* Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1993.)

Respiratory	Question patient with anterior mediastinal mass about ability to lie supine and the presence of cough or dyspnea. Change in position may cause superior vena caval obstruction or cardiac and airway compression by mediastinal mass (which may be apparent only following induction or on emergence from anesthesia). On PE, ✓ for the presence of cyanosis, wheezing, or stridor in the upright and supine positions. If significant airway compression or SVC obstruction is present, the surgeon may delay surgery for radiation or chemotherapy. Patients with SVC syndrome (edema; venous engorgement of head, neck, and upper body; supine dyspnea; ± headache; mental status change) may have significant airway edema. **Tests:** Classic teaching has recommended PFTs with flow volume loops in upright and supine positions (Fig. 5-14 shows flow volume loop) in patients with suspected central airway obstruction. These investigations demonstrate airflow obstruction during inspiration in patients with an extrathoracic mass and during expiration in patients with an intrathoracic mass. CT scans obtained with the patient supine delineate the location and extent of both airway and cardiac ± vascular compression. These images may predict patients at higher risk (> 50% tracheal compression).
Cardiovascular	Intrathoracic vascular structures (e.g., right heart, PA, SVC) may be compressed → ↓ BP, hypoxia, SVC syndrome. Involvement of the pericardium may → tamponade. **Tests:** ECHO, CT/MRI if indicated by H&P
Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic (Eaton-Lambert) syndrome with resistance to depolarizing agents and ↑ sensitivity to NDMRs. Monitor relaxation with peripheral nerve stimulator.
Neurologic	Patient may have ↑ ICP if SVC is obstructed. Consider neurology consultation. Patients with preexisting carotid disease are at risk for stroke if there is significant compression of the innominate artery during the procedure.
Endocrine	Due to the diverse causes of an anterior mediastinal mass, consider comorbid thyroid disease and paraneoplastic syndromes.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Avoid sedation in patients with the potential for airway obstruction; otherwise, midazolam 1–2 mg iv may be appropriate. Antisialogogue may facilitate awake intubation. In patients with critical airway obstruction, heliox may prove useful.

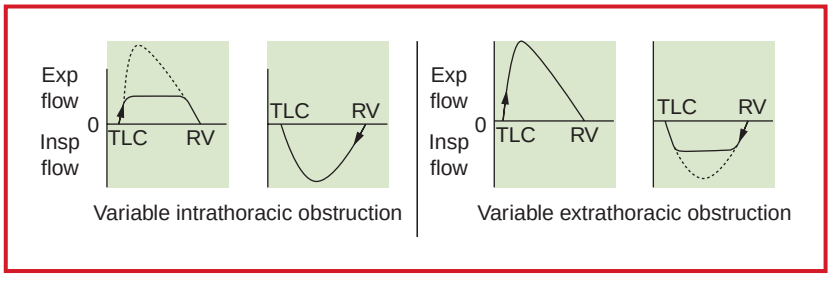


Figure 5-14. Flow volume loop: with variable extrathoracic lesion, the alteration in the flow volume loop is seen by flow limitation and a plateau on inspiration. The reverse occurs with variable intrathoracic lesions. (Reproduced with permission from Acres J, Kryger MH: Clinical significance of pulmonary function tests. *Chest* 1981; 80:207–11.)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, combined with epidural if thoracotomy is planned

Induction	Consider awake FOI (e.g., if symptomatic in supine position). Alternatively, a mask induction with sevoflurane/O_2 in a spontaneously breathing patient may be safe. Use of neuromuscular blockers in high-risk patients may precipitate airway obstruction and CV collapse. Select a reinforced endotracheal tube when intubating patients with airway compression. Complete or partial airway obstruction by anterior mediastinal mass can also be due to changes in lung and chest-wall mechanics associated with changes in the patient's position (sitting to supine during procedure) or to muscle relaxation. Consider placing the patient in the lateral or prone position in the event of central airway compression. A surgeon familiar with rigid bronchoscopy must be in the OR ready to bypass any obstruction. In rare instances, percutaneous cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) may be necessary to complete the procedure safely. If this is indicated, it must be employed electively, not as a rescue measure. Salvage or emergent use of CPB in these patients is rarely successful.	
Maintenance	O_2 (100%) and isoflurane (1–1.5%) or sevoflurane (1.5–2.5%). Avoid N_2O, especially during OLV. Short-acting muscle relaxant and opioid as indicated.	
Emergence	Extubation in OR	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h Blood in OR	Have blood for transfusion available in OR prior to surgery. Patients with SVC syndrome may have impaired venous return from upper-limb ivs. In these patients a large-bore iv cannula should be placed in lower limb for fluid and blood transfusions.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line ± CVP/PA	Invasive monitors are appropriate in patients with large mediastinal masses. In the presence of SVC syndrome, CVP/PA catheters should be placed, using the femoral vein. BP cuff on left arm; radial artery line (if used) and pulse oximeter on right. Mass or mediastinoscope can compress innominate artery, causing reduction in right-radial pulse and right-arm BP. If only right-arm BP is measured, patients may be treated inappropriately for "hypotension" or cardiac arrest. Suspect great vessel compression if right-arm pressure is lower than left or if right-arm BP disappears in the presence of a normal ECG. Arterial compression can compromise cerebrovascular perfusion → cerebral ischemia → stroke.
Positioning	Head-up position ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	In patients with an anterior mediastinal mass, the head-up position reduces mass compression effect on airway and vascular structures, but may subject the patient to ↑ risk of VAE if venous bleeding occurs during the procedure. Patients with SVC obstruction, if placed in head-down position with IPPV (further impedes venous return of thoracic cavity), are at ↑ risk of airway edema and airway obstruction following extubation.
Complications	Bleeding	Surgical tamponade through mediastinoscope may be indicated. For major hemorrhage, emergency thoracotomy or median sternotomy may be required to stop bleeding. Can occur from laceration of mediastinal vein.

Complications (cont'd)	Air embolism	Head elevation increases risk of embolism, particularly if patient breathes spontaneously. Monitor $ETCO_2$ and ETN_2.
	Airway rupture or obstruction	Requires immediate thoracotomy.
	Tracheal collapse	Acute obstruction may require rigid bronchoscope to reopen airway.
	Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	If recurrent laryngeal nerve injury is suspected, the vocal cords should be examined during spontaneous breathing at the time of extubation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax	(see Postop Complications for Cervical Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 113).
	Phrenic/recurrent laryngeal nerve damage	Bilateral laryngeal nerve damage may result in airway obstruction, necessitating reintubation. Mask ventilation may be ineffective.
	Tracheomalacia	May occur in patients with longstanding mediastinal mass (e.g., retrosternal goiter)
	Bleeding	
Pain management	Parenteral opioids (p. C-1) ± Epidural	
Tests	CXR on all patients to r/o pneumothorax.	See Postop Complications for VATS, p. 329.

Suggested Readings

1. Barash PG, Tsai B, Kitahata LM: Acute tracheal collapse following mediastinoscopy. *Anesthesiology* 1976; 44(1):67–8.
2. Bechard P, Letourneau L, Lacasse Y, et al: Perioperative cardiorespiratory complications in adults with mediastinal mass. *Anesthesiology* 2004; 100(4):826–34.
3. Campos JH: An update on robotic thoracic surgery and anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2012; 23(1):1–6.
4. Erdös G, Tzanova I: Perioperative anaesthetic management of mediastinal mass in adults. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2009; 26(8):627–32.
5. Gothard JW: Anesthetic considerations for patients with anterior mediastinal masses. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2008; 26(2):305–14, vi.
6. Hnatiuk OW, Corcoran PC, Sierra A: Spirometry in surgery for mediastinal masses. *Chest* 2001; 120(4):1152–6.
7. Narang S, Harte BH, Body S: Anesthesia for patients with mediastinal mass. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):559–79.
8. Petty C: Right radial artery pressure during mediastinoscopy. *Anesth Analg* 1979; 58(5):428–30.
9. Slinger P, Karsli C: Management of the patient with a large mediastinal mass: recurring myths. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20(1):1–3.

ENDOBRONCHIAL ULTRASOUND-GUIDED TRANSBRONCHIAL NEEDLE ASPIRATION

Robert E. Merritt, MD and Vivek Kulkarni, MD

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Endobronchial ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration (EBUS-TBNA) has been introduced as a less-invasive alternative to mediastinoscopy for pathologically staging the mediastinal lymph nodes. The procedure has been performed by both pulmonologists and thoracic surgeons. This technique has become widely adopted and will likely play an increasingly important role in cancer staging.

The EBUS bronchoscope (Olympus America Inc., Center Valley, PA) contains a curvilinear ultrasound probe, at the distal end of the bronchoscope, which provides a linear continuous B-mode ultrasound image and color Doppler capability to allow identification of vascular structures. There is a 30-degree fiberoptic lens and biopsy channel through which a 22-gauge biopsy needle (NA-202C Olympus) can be deployed. A latex balloon is placed over the ultrasound

probe and inflated with saline to provide a fluid interface between airway and probe that improves ultrasonic image transmitted. EBUS-TBNA can be performed under GA or MAC. The use of an LMA permits evaluation of the upper paratracheal lymph nodes that may not be accessible when a standard ETT is placed. The mediastinal lymph node stations (see Fig. 5-15) that are accessible by EBUS-TNBA include 2R, 2L, 4R, 4L, 7, 10R, 10L, 11R and 11L. With standard cervical mediastinoscopy, the 11R and 11L lymph node stations cannot be assessed for biopsy, although it is highly unusual that involvement at these stations would impact treatment decisions.

At the beginning of the procedure, the EBUS bronchoscope is advanced into airway, and the ultrasound probe is used to scan the mediastinal lymph node stations of interest. Significant vascular structures, such as the pulmonary artery and aorta, appear hyperechoic and can be further identified with color Doppler. Once the lymph node is visualized, the 22-guage biopsy needle is placed into the lymph node under direct ultrasound guidance. A suction syringe is applied to the biopsy needle, and the needle is passed into the lymph node for approximately 10 passes under ultrasound guidance. The aspirate is then placed on a slide with the assistance of a cytopathologist.

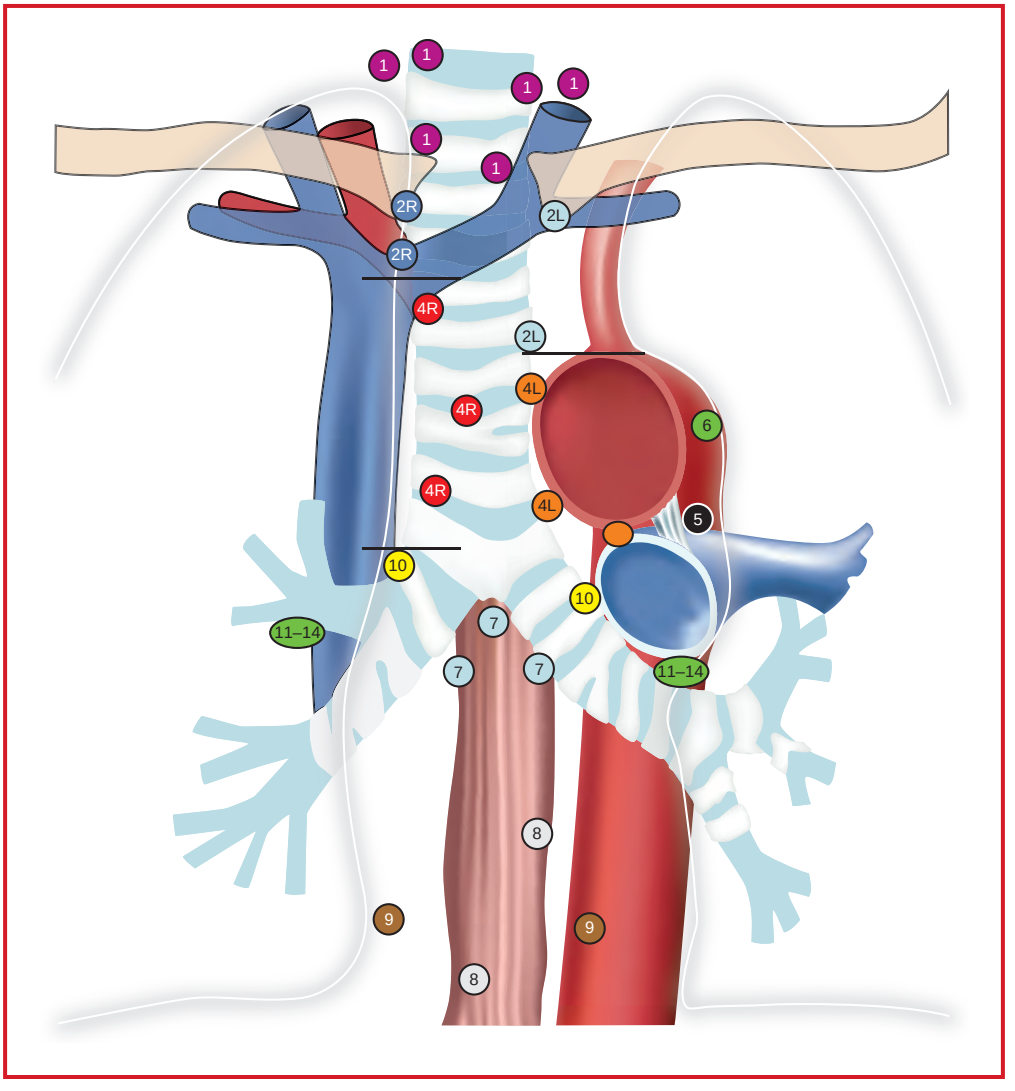


Figure 5-15. Regional lymph node stations for lung cancer staging.

The onsite cytology in the OR is essential to confirm adequacy of diagnostic material and for preliminary diagnosis. The observation of moderate to abundant numbers of lymphocytes or pigmented histiocytes may serve as an indicator of adequate sampling of lymph nodes that are free of metastatic carcinoma. A cytopathologist should be in the operating room during EBUS-TBNA cases to ensure adequacy of sampling, that the specimen preparation is optimal, and to provide preliminary diagnoses.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Carcinoma of the lung; sarcoidosis; lymphoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Fiberoptic EBUS bronchoscope
Antibiotics	None
Surgical time	< 1 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → Home
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	Pneumothorax: Rare Airway bleeding: Rare
Pain score	0–1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adults
Male:Female	Male > Female
Incidence	Frequently part of lung cancer evaluation
Etiology	Lung cancer; lymphoma; sarcoidosis
Associated conditions	Lymphadenopathy; mediastinal mass

Selected Readings

1. Adams K, Shah L, Edmonds L, et al: Test performance of endobronchial ultrasound and transbronchial needle aspiration biopsy for mediastinal staging in patients with lung cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Thorax* 2009; 64(9):757–62.
2. Alsharif M, Andrade RS, Groth SS, et al: Endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial fine-needle aspiration. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2008; 130(3):434–43.
3. Ernst A, Anantham D, Eberhardt R, et al: Diagnosis of mediastinal adenopathy-real-time endobronchial ultrasound guided needle aspiration versus mediastinoscopy. *J Thorac Oncol* 2008; 3(6):577–82.
4. Gomez M, Silvestri G: Endobronchial ultrasound for the diagnosis and staging of lung cancer. *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 2009; 6(2):180–6.
5. Herth F, Annema J, Eberhardt R, et al: Endobronchial ultrasound with transbronchial needle aspiration for restaging the mediastinum in lung cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; 26:3346–9.
6. Herth F, Eberhardt R, Krasnik M, et al: Endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration of lymph nodes in the radiologically and positron emission tomography-normal mediastinum in patients with lung cancer. *Chest* 2008; 133(4):887–91.
7. Sarkiss M, Kennedy M, Riedel B, et al: Anesthesia technique for endobronchial ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration of mediastinal lymph node. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2007; 21(6):892–6.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

EBUS-TBNA is a procedure performed for biopsy of mediastinal nodes or mass lesions. The procedure is therefore similar to a mediastinoscopy but is less invasive. Pulmonologists may perform the procedure under sedation and local anesthesia, whereas thoracic surgeons often perform the procedure under GA to ensure patient immobility, which may be safer when sampling nodes close to vascular structures. Occasionally the procedure may be unsuccessful requiring conversion to a mediastinoscopy.

PREOPERATIVE

The preop considerations for EBUS-TBNA are similar to those for bronchoscopy and mediastinoscopy (see p. 321). If the mediastinal mass to be biopsied is compressing the airway or a vascular structure, proceed with caution as described under excision of anterior mediastinal tumor (see p. 308).

Respiratory	H&P complemented by lab and radiologic studies to focus on the underlying disease, evaluating for pulmonary problems. Consider PFTs with flow-volume loops for lesions that may be compressing the airways. When respiratory distress is present at rest or when exercise tolerance is poor an ABG may be indicated to assess increased pulmonary risk ($PaO_2 < 70$ and $PCO_2 > 45$).
Cardiovascular	Many patients with tumor may have concomitant cardiac disease, which may need cardiac consultation to optimize cardiovascular status. Tests: ECG and stress-echo may be indicated.
Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic syndrome with sensitivity to nondepolarizing relaxants and resistance to depolarizing relaxants. Monitoring neuromuscular blockade during the procedure is essential.
Hematologic	Adequacy of oxygen-carrying capacity (Hb/Hct) is important to ascertain. A type and screen may be indicated when the node or mass to be biopsied is abutting a vascular structure (check with surgeon). Tests: Hct
Laboratory	Hb/Hct for oxygen-carrying capacity and BMP to ascertain that the K+ and creatinine levels are in the normal range for safe use of muscle relaxants.
Premedication	Antisialogogue 1 (e.g., glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv) to decrease secretions, and mild sedation with midazolam (0.5–2 mg iv) along with a small dose of fentanyl (25–50 mcg) may be needed. Avoid respiratory depression and oversedation.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic Technique: Sedation + topical anesthesia: If the procedure is to be done with sedation and topical anesthesia, the nerve blocks and topical anesthesia techniques are those described under bronchoscopy (see p. 322). General Anesthesia: This is the common technique requested by thoracic surgeons. For higher nodes a LMA is preferred, while lower nodes can be accessed via an endotracheal tube.

Induction	Following preoxygenation, a standard induction using propofol (1–2 mg/kg) or etomidate (0.3 mg/kg). A depolarizing relaxant (succinylcholine 1 mg/kg iv) or a short-acting nondepolarizing relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 0.3–0.6 mg/kg iv) can be used. A small dose of fentanyl (1–2 mcg/kg iv) or remifentanil (0.25–1 mcg/kg iv) can be used to facilitate intubation. Antibiotic is often not needed because only needle punctures are made.
Intubation	Higher nodes are often easier to access with a LMA (size #3 or larger), whereas lower nodes can be adequately accessed through an endotracheal tube. The ETT needs to be large enough to enable manipulation of the bronchoscope without damaging the balloon that surrounds the ultrasound probe. An 8.5-mm ID for women and 9.0-mm ID for men facilitates the procedure. The LMA or ETT is linked to the anesthesia circuit through an angled bronchoscopy adaptor. The seal on the adaptor is often slit to allow easier to-and-fro passage of the bronchoscope → significant leak.
Maintenance	Because of the significant leak at the adaptor, TIVA (see p. C-2) is a good choice for anesthetic maintenance. Because of the significant leak, ventilation is performed with higher fresh gas flows either manually to overcome the leak and changing compliance or in a pressure controlled mode with a FiO_2 sufficient to maintain adequate oxygen saturation. The adequacy of ventilation can only be assessed intermittently using $ETCO_2$ and manually closing the leak between biopsy attempts. Local anesthetic is often applied topically either prior to intubation or during surgery to decrease postop tracheal irritation caused by the procedure.

Emergence	Muscle relaxant is reversed and the patient is extubated sitting upright with remifentanil infusion (0.03–0.05 mcg/kg/min) for a smooth wake-up. Supplemental oxygen postop.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga minimum NS/LR @ 2 ml/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± arterial line Second pulse oximeter	Place the EKG electrodes away from the sternum in case an emergency sternotomy is necessary. Place a BP cuff or arterial line (when indicated) on the left side in the event of a possible mediastinoscopy (with intermittent pressure on the innominate artery). Place a pulse oximeter on both sides.
Positioning	Supine, arms tucked. ✓ and pad pressure points	To facilitate surgery the patient is usually turned 90 degrees from the anesthesia provider with a jelly doughnut to stabilize the head.
Complications	Hypoxia	Pulse oximetry monitored continuously. Interrupt the procedure to allow oxygenation to improve before proceeding.
	Hypercapnia	$ETCO_2$ monitoring is inaccurate because of the leak at the adaptor. Intermittently pause the procedure and manually close the leak to confirm that $ETCO_2$ is not too high. Ventilate to normalize the $ETCO_2$ before proceeding.
	Hemorrhage	Often minor and local, which can be controlled with epinephrine solution irrigation. Rarely major, which may require an emergency sternotomy or thoracotomy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway irritation	Airway irritation causing coughing (decreased by lidocaine topical spray prior to or during the procedure), or bronchospasm, treated with nebulized bronchodilators, e.g., racemic epinephrine or albuterol. Occasionally steroids may be necessary
	Hypoxia	Humidified O_2 by mask.
	Hypoventilation	Avoided by adequate reversal of neuromuscular blockade and using minimal dose short-acting opioids.
	Hemorrhage	Usually self-limiting.
Pain management	Usually minimal	
Tests	CXR	A postop CXR is often performed to confirm absence of pneumothorax or mediastinal emphysema.

Suggested Readings

1. Lee HJ, Haas AR, Sterman DH, et al: Pilot randomized study comparing two techniques of airway anaesthesia during curvilinear probe endobronchial ultrasound bronchoscopy (CP-EBUS). *Respirology* 2011; 16:102–6.
2. Sarkiss M, Kennedy M, Riedel, et al: Anesthesia technique for endobronchial ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration of mediastinal lymph node. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2007; 21(6):892–96.

BRONCHOSCOPY—FLEXIBLE AND RIGID

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Bronchoscopy can be performed using either rigid or flexible instrumentation. **Flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy (FOB)** is used for the diagnosis and evaluation of a variety of pulmonary conditions and can be accomplished using topical anesthesia and sedation without an anesthesiologist. Transbronchial biopsies can be performed in sedated patients, although more extensive interventions—such as laser ablation of a tumor, stent placement, and balloon dilation—generally require general anesthesia. When performed under general anesthesia, the bronchoscope should be passed through a size 8 or larger ETT.

Rigid bronchoscopy is more appropriate for evaluating hemoptysis and for intrabronchial procedures such as mechanical dilation of tracheal or bronchial strictures, laser or mechanical tumor debridement, and removal of foreign bodies that cannot be extracted with basket forceps through a flexible bronchoscope. Rigid bronchoscopy is performed under general anesthesia. With the patient's head and neck extended, the eyes, teeth, and gums must be protected, and the bronchoscope is inserted into the posterior pharynx until the epiglottis is visualized. The epiglottis is lifted anteriorly, with care being taken not to use the patient's teeth as a fulcrum. The bronchoscope is then advanced into the trachea (Fig. 5-16), and the diagnostic or therapeutic procedure is carried out. Ventilation is through the side-arm of the bronchoscope and, as there is no cuff to prevent escape of anesthetic gases, high ventilatory volumes may be required. Because interventions (e.g., biopsy or tumor debridement) require removal of the bronchoscope viewing lens, the anesthesiologist must time ventilation appropriately. A Venturi ventilator may be useful when the viewing lens must be off for prolonged periods.

Laser bronchoscopy can be performed using either flexible or rigid bronchoscopes. The CO_2 laser is characterized by limited tissue penetration. As such, it is useful for superficial lesions of the upper airway. The Nd:YAG lasers use higher energies, can be directed by fiberoptic light guides, and can be used for tumor ablation. As both of these types of lasers rely on thermal damage to tissues, precautions—particularly $FiO_2 \leq 40\%$—must be taken to prevent the devastating complication of airway fire. **Photodynamic therapy** uses visible light to activate a photosensitive compound into a locally toxic drug. Because no thermal energy is involved, airway fires are not an issue.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of the lung, primary or recurrent; hemoptysis; obstruction; foreign body; benign tumor; respiratory papillomatosis

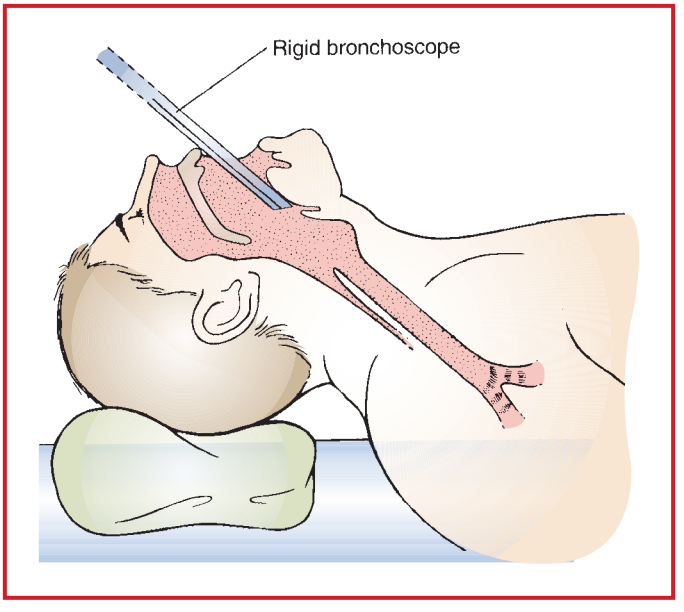


Figure 5-16. Patient positioning for rigid bronchoscopy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Fiberoptic Bronchoscopy	Rigid Bronchoscopy	Laser Bronchoscopy
Position	Supine	⇐ (see Fig. 5-16)	⇐
Special instrumentation	FOB and instruments	Rigid bronchoscope and instruments	Nd:YAG laser and bronchoscope
Unique considerations	None	Shared airway	⇐ + Keep $FiO_2 \leq 0.4$ during use of laser.
Antibiotics	Usually none	± Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	< 30 min	⇐	1 hr
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	5%
Morbidity	Barotrauma Airway obstruction Pneumothorax	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Tooth damage Tracheal laceration Pneumomediastinum Esophageal perforation	⇐ Airway fire Hemorrhage Perforation
Pain score	1	1	1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually adults > 50 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Smoking; hemoptysis; aspiration of foreign body
Associated conditions	Lung cancer or metastatic spread to tracheobronchial tree; airway obstruction 2° tumor or FB; lung infiltrates

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for bronchoscopy range from asymptomatic to those in severe respiratory distress. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy is performed most commonly as it is less invasive, usually easily done under sedation, and allows for more distal airway examination. Rigid bronchoscopy is mostly reserved for specific interventional procedures such as hemorrhage control, foreign body removal, tumor debulking, and stent placement.

Respiratory	H&P to focus on underlying condition. Evaluate for acute and chronic pulmonary problems by H&P and lab and radiologic studies. **Tests:** Consider ABG in patient with respiratory distress, SOB at rest, or poor exercise tolerance. $PaO_2 < 70$ mm Hg and/or $PaCO_2 > 45$ mm Hg indicate significant respiratory impairment and predict increased risk; PFT with flow-volume loop (for airway lesions); CXR.

Cardiovascular	Many patients have Hx of cardiac disease. Cardiology consultation should be obtained for active/unstable cardiac issues or for patient with poorly controlled chronic disease. **Tests:** Consider ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic (Eaton-Lambert) syndrome with resistance to depolarizing muscle relaxants and ↑ sensitivity to NDMRs. Monitor relaxation with peripheral nerve stimulator.
Hematologic	Type & cross rarely required unless high risk of hemorrhage from biopsy (✓ with surgeon). Adequate O_2-carrying capacity (Hct) important. **Tests:** Hb/Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Antisialagogue (glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv, avoids central anticholinergic effects). Light sedation with midazolam 1–2 mg iv and/or fentanyl, 50–100 mcg iv. Avoid heavy sedation that might impair postop ventilation.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Flexible bronchoscopy: Anesthetic technique for flexible FOB requires sedation or GA. Anxious patients and those with respiratory compromise may not tolerate sedation for awake FOB, and patients with Hx of gastric reflux or aspiration are not candidates for awake FOB. Local anesthetic toxicity is a distinct possibility; ensure availability of resuscitative equipment.

Sedation with topical anesthesia	Sedate patient as necessary to ensure comfort and cooperation (midazolam 1–2 mg iv and/or fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv). Bronchoscopy often better tolerated if using nasal route. Airway anesthesia can be provided with direct nerve blocks or topical anesthesia. **Nerve blocks:** Transtracheal local anesthesia: Pass needle through cricothyroid membrane, aspirate air into syringe, and then inject lidocaine (2%) 2 mL. Remove needle quickly because injection causes cough (spreads the anesthetic). Perform superior laryngeal nerve blocks: Insert needle anterior to superior cornu of thyroid cartilage. After resistance is felt, aspirate gently, then inject lidocaine (2%) 2 mL; repeat on other side. **Topical anesthesia:** Spray palate, pharynx, larynx, vocal cords, and trachea with lidocaine (4%), using nebulizer, or have patient gargle viscous lidocaine (4%). Hold base of tongue forward and, using Krause's forceps, place pledgets soaked in local anesthetic in each pyriform fossa to block the internal branch of superior laryngeal nerve. Laryngeal structures are well topicalized with having the patient gargle 4% lidocaine. The trachea can be topicalized by administering 1% lidocaine through the working channel of the fiberoptic scope. Patient can hold a suction catheter in the mouth to remove oral secretions. A special face mask (Patil-Syracuse) incorporates a diaphragm through which the FOB can pass while patient breathes 100% O_2. Use a special oral airway (Ovassapian) to guide FOB over back of tongue into trachea to prevent damage to FOB by teeth. Limit amount of suctioning by surgeon because suctioning through FOB decreases FiO_2 and FRC, → ↓ PaO_2.

General anesthesia: Almost any anesthetic technique is acceptable, including use of an LMA. A large ETT has less resistance to air flow; minimum size is 8 mm (ID) for adult FOB. If patient requires ETT < 8 mm, use a pediatric FOB. Placing an LMA allows for examination of the proximal airway and a size 2.5 or larger ProSeal LMA has an airway caliber equivalent to or larger than a size 8.0 ETT. Presence of a FOB in the ETT or LMA increases airway resistance and may result in intrinsic PEEP and dynamic hyperinflation/ pulmonary tamponade (hypotension).

Rigid bronchoscopy: Requires relatively deep GA and usually paralysis for scope insertion.

Induction	Preoxygenate well. Standard induction. Consider short-acting paralytics (e.g., succinylcholine 1 mg/kg or rocuronium 0.3–0.6 mg/kg). Use only small amount of iv opioids because postop analgesic requirements are minimal; consider remifentanil (1 mcg/kg) to avoid postop respiratory depression.

Maintenance	Commonly inhalation anesthesia with isoflurane, or sevoflurane and 100% O_2. The adequacy of inhaled agent delivery may be hampered by ongoing suctioning. TIVA is an alternative (p. C-2): propofol (50–150 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.1–0.3 mcg/kg/min). Paralysis is usually used for ETT placement and is required during rigid bronchoscopy. May be provided with short-acting, nondepolarizing agents (atracurium, vecuronium, or rocuronium) or alternatively a succinylcholine drip (1 g/250 mL NS, titrated to effect; be aware of onset of phase II block at doses > 5–6 mg/kg). Manual IPPV through side-arm of rigid bronchoscope. High flow (up to 20 L/min) to compensate for leak. Hyperventilate patient in preparation for periods of apnea. Ventilation must be interrupted whenever surgeon removes eyepiece to suction or biopsy. Manually ventilate to compensate for compliance changes that occur when bronchoscope is in trachea (ventilating both lungs) and when it is in bronchus (ventilating one lung). O_2 flush is used to compensate for leak; bypasses anesthetic vaporizer. Frequent flushing lowers anesthetic concentration. Sanders Jet Ventilator using Venturi effect is an alternative. Allows for uninterrupted ventilation and may shorten the length of the procedure (fewer interruptions). Requires TIVA (p. C-2). Entrainment of air results in variable FiO_2. Adequacy of ventilation is hard to determine as no $EtCO_2$ monitoring is available; prolonged procedures may require intermittent blood gas analysis or transcutaneous CO_2 monitoring.	
Emergence	Place ETT or LMA at conclusion of rigid bronchoscopy. Patient must be fully awake before extubation with no residual neuromuscular blockade. Emergence can be "stormy." Patient may cough violently to clear secretions and blood. Wake-up from remifentanil infusion tends to be smoother. Other considerations include early suctioning of the airway, lidocaine (1 mg/kg iv) to decrease airway reactivity. Provide postop O_2 supplementation (preferably humidified).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood usually not required. IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2 mL/kg/h	Transfusion unnecessary unless complicated by massive hemorrhage; may require emergency thoracotomy. Usually restrict iv fluids to avoid fluid overload.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	***NB:** $ETCO_2$ not accurate during rigid bronchoscopy because of dilution effect at sample port.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Shoulder roll for rigid bronchoscopy	
Complications	Hypoxemia Hypercapnia Bleeding Tracheobronchial injury Aspiration of debris Hypoxemia Hypoventilation Dental damage Airway trauma Pneumothorax	Monitor pulse oximetry continuously. If patient hypoxemic, surgeon must withdraw bronchoscope into trachea. If problem persists, remove bronchoscope and ventilate by mask or ETT. Common, due to hypoventilation. Mild hypercarbia is well tolerated except for the setting of severe pulmonary HTN. CO_2 levels above 70 mm Hg may be associated with tachycardia, dysrhythmias, and cardiac depression. Easily treated with higher minute ventilation/hyperventilation. IV lidocaine for dysrhythmias. Requires frequent suctioning. For major hemorrhage, place uncut ETT down healthy bronchus and ventilate good lung. Consider DLT. May require thoracotomy using DLT or BB to isolate and/or tamponade bleeding site. Rx: Supplemental O_2. Nebulized racemic epinephrine and steroids may ↓ airway edema. Humidified O_2 may ↓ airway irritation. Incomplete reversal of muscle relaxants or opioid overdosage can cause hypoventilation. Obtain ABG if patient has difficulty breathing or is oversedated. Be prepared to reintubate patient.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications (cont'd)	Hemorrhage Risk of aspiration Airway obstruction (bronchospasm, bleeding, dislodged tumor, FB)	If nerve blocks used to depress gag reflex, no eating or drinking for several hours postbronchoscopy.
Pain management	Minimal pain; easily treated with iv opioids.	
Tests	CXR	Obtain CXR in recovery room to ✓ for atelectasis, pneumothorax, mediastinal emphysema.

Suggested Readings

1. Bolliger CT, Sutedja TG, Strausz J, et al: Therapeutic bronchoscopy with immediate effect: laser, electrocautery, argon plasma coagulation and stents. *Eur Respir J* 2006; 27(6):1258–71.
2. Conacher ID: Anaesthesia and tracheobronchial stenting for central airway obstruction in adults. *Br J Anaesth* 2003; 90(3):367–74.
3. Conacher ID, Curran E: Local anaesthesia and sedation for rigid bronchoscopy for emergency relief of central airway obstruction. *Anaesthesia* 2004; 59(3):290–2.
4. Hobai IA, Chhangani SV, Alfille PH: Anesthesia for tracheal resection and reconstruction. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(4):709–30.
5. Lohser J, Brodsky JB: Bronchial stenting through a ProSeal laryngeal mask airway. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2006; 20(2):227–8.
6. McRae K: Anesthesia for airway surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):497–541.
7. Moghissi K, Dixon K, Thorpe JA, et al: Photodynamic therapy (PDT) in early central lung cancer: a treatment option for patients ineligible for surgical resection. *Thorax* 2007; 62(5):374–5.
8. Wain JC: Rigid bronchoscopy: the value of a venerable procedure. *Chest Surg Clin North Am* 2001; 11(4):691–9.

AIRWAY LASER SURGERY

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients usually present with complications related to long-term smoking and an airway mass (endobronchial, carinal, or tracheal). Resection tends to be a misnomer, as the laser is most commonly used for debulking of an unresectable lesion. Central airway obstruction is a primary concern when providing anesthesia.

Respiratory	It is imperative to define the exact location and magnitude of any central airway obstruction. This helps to estimate an appropriate ETT size and quantify the potential for obstruction during induction. CXR and CT scan must be studied. PFTs and flow volume loops may also characterize the lesion. **Tests:** PFTs; ABGs; CXR; CT scan (to delineate airway anatomy, including site and severity of airway lesion)
Musculoskeletal	Although there may be no clinically detectable muscle weakness, some of these patients will have Eaton-Lambert syndrome → ↓ sensitivity to NDMRs and ↑ resistance to depolarizing muscle relaxants.
Hematologic	Transfuse patients with preop Hct < 25% (or < 30%, if CAD present). **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Minimal; avoid respiratory depressants; consider antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Usually GA. Unexpected patient movement may be disastrous, which is why sedation and local anesthesia are rarely practical. Nd:YAG laser can be transmitted through a flexible quartz monofilament passed through either a rigid bronchoscope or FOB. Rigid bronchoscope provides improved visibility and better debris retrieval. It also maintains the airway with less chance of fire, although it can reflect the laser beam, causing tissue damage. Manual ventilation through the side-arm may be difficult. FOB is used with local anesthesia or through ETT under GA. Laser-safe ETTs (required for surgery in the proximal trachea) include regular ETTs wrapped in metallic tape or commercially available "laser" tubes (usually some combination of aluminum, stainless steel, Teflon, and/or silicon). Fill cuff with saline (+ methylene blue to facilitate leak detection) and avoid any petroleum-based lubricants on ETT. Steps also must be taken to protect the OR staff from laser injury. These include safety glasses to avoid ocular damage and specially designed and properly fitted filter face masks to protect from inhalation of vaporized viral particles. Photodynamic therapy is simpler in its considerations and risks: routine GETA with large ETT, immobile patient, and no risk of fire.

Induction	**Without or with distal airway obstruction** (past carina): Standard induction (see p. B-2). **With proximal airway obstruction:** Awake bronchoscopy may help to determine the feasibility of tracheal intubation. Awake fiberoptic intubation is the safest route. In patients with less severe obstruction, an inhalation induction with spontaneous ventilation may be appropriate. Avoid muscle relaxants until the airway has been secured. Several special laser ETTs are available though none guarantee against airway fire. The risk is minimized with Nd:YAG lasering of central airway lesions as the beam is directed distal to the tip of the ETT. **With rigid bronchoscopy:** GA with standard or rapid sequence induction.	
Maintenance	Use isoflurane/desflurane/sevoflurane, air–O_2 mixture. Keep $FiO_2 < 0.4$. Avoid N_2O, which supports combustion. TIVA (p. C-2) with propofol (50–150 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.1–0.3 mcg/kg/min) infusion is preferable during rigid bronchoscopy as it avoids anesthetic contamination of the OR. Frequent suctioning during bronchoscopic examination may make inhalation techniques unreliable. Short-acting, nondepolarizing relaxant or succinylcholine infusion should be used to provide an immobile patient during laser use. If the patient becomes hypoxemic, ventilate the lungs with higher FiO_2 and ask the surgeon to stop.	
Emergence	Following rigid bronchoscopy, the patient usually is intubated until awake and breathing well and protective airway reflexes have returned. Emergence can be "stormy," with bleeding and secretion clearance a problem. Patient should be recovered in the sitting position.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	There is a potential for massive blood loss following inadvertent perforation of a major blood vessel.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1).	Continuous pulse oximetry essential; monitor $ETCO_2$ to assess adequacy of ventilation ($ETCO_2$ value may be inaccurate, consider ABG during long cases). Keep alveolar $PO_2 < 40\%$.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes and laser shields	
Complications	Airway obstruction	From tumor, blood, tissue debris, etc.
	Hypoxemia/hypercarbia	From inadequate ventilation.
	Bleeding	Can be massive from perforation of blood vessel by laser. Apply topical epinephrine following laser photocoagulation to control bleeding.
	Perforation of tracheobronchial tree	May be catastrophic secondary to pneumothorax/ pneumomediastinum, cardiac tamponade; lung isolation may be lifesaving.
	Airway fire	Rx: stop ventilation, remove O_2 source, extubate trachea to decrease inhalation of toxic products. Douse fire with saline. Suction all debris from airway. Ventilate patient by mask, then reintubate. Prior to extubation, perform bronchoscopy to reevaluate airway damage and suction debris. Consider steroids.
	Venous air embolism	Rx: Inform surgeon, d/c laser, prevent further entrainment. If access present, attempt to aspirate air. Immediately volume load and support circulation with vasopressors.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway edema	Edema formation is difficult to appreciate simply based on epithelial changes during bronchoscopy. May progress dramatically after the procedure resulting in airway obstruction and need for emergency reintubation. Steroids are routinely given to minimize edema formation (dexamethasone 6–8 mg iv). Nebulized racemic epinephrine is helpful. Complications such as hemorrhage or obstruction can be delayed up to 48 h.
Pain management	Minimal pain; rarely requires analgesic.	
Tests	Continuous pulse oximetry.	

Suggested Readings

1. McRae K: Anesthesia for airway surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):497–541.
2. Ochroch EA: Laser endobronchial treatment does not need to occur in the operating room. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2005; 19(1):118–20.
3. Sullivan EA: Anesthetic considerations for special thoracic procedures. *Thorac Surg Clin* 2005; 15(1):131–42.
4. Vaitkeviciute I, Ehrenwerth J: Bronchial stenting and laser airway surgery should not take place outside the operating room. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2005; 19(1):121–2.

VIDEO-ASSISTED THORACOSCOPY SURGERY (VATS)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Video-assisted thoracoscopy surgery** (VATS) refers to the extension of laparoscopic and other minimally invasive techniques to thoracic surgery. Although initially used for the assessment of pleural processes of unknown etiology (e.g., pleural effusion that has defied diagnosis), VATS techniques are now accepted for treatment of spontaneous pneumothorax due to apical blebs, biopsy of peripheral infiltrates or nodules, talc pleurodesis, drainage of pleural effusions and other fluid collections, decortication of early empyemas, evaluation and evacuation of traumatic hemothorax, and standard pulmonary resections, such as wedge resection and lobectomy. Although not appropriate for all non-small-cell lung cancers, small, peripheral tumors without significant hilar of mediastinal lymph node involvement are often appropriate for VATS lobectomy. VATS also has been used for lung-volume reduction surgery (see p. 336), **esophageal (Heller) myotomy**, and **upper dorsal sympathectomy**. Less well-accepted procedures include **pneumonectomy** and **esophagectomy.**

In all VATS cases, use of a DLT to provide collapse of the ipsilateral lung is mandatory because satisfactory visualization of the pleural cavity is impossible without this collapse of the lung. The patient is usually in the lateral position. Several small incisions are used—usually three, sometimes four or more. The video thoracoscope is placed through the first incision, and the pleural cavity is inspected. Other small incisions are then made for insertion of instruments. The position of the video thoracoscope and instruments may be interchanged, depending on the location of the problem.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pleural disease (e.g., effusions); recurrent empyema; recurrent pneumothorax; localized lung masses; achalasia; pulmonary infiltrates; hyperhidrosis; reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lateral
Incision	Usually 3 to 5 small incisions (portals; Fig. 5-17)
Special instrumentation	Video thoracoscope with thoracoscopy instruments; DLT required.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g

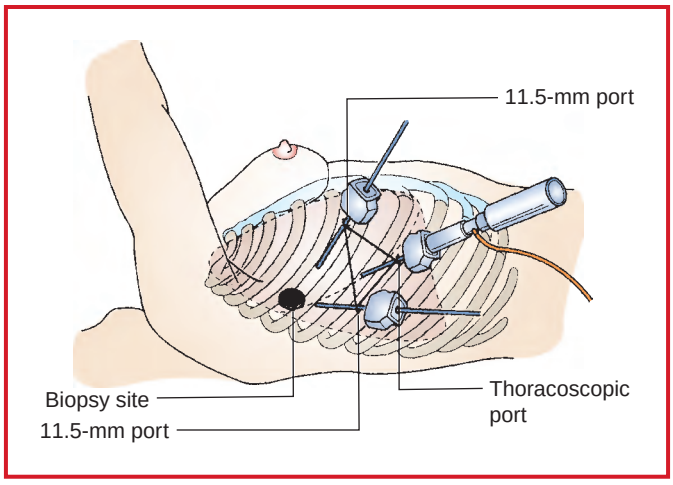


Figure 5-17. Example of thoracoscopic port placement. Positioning varies for individual need, but the principle of triangulation used for laparoscopic surgery is equally applicable in the thorax. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al., eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice.* Lippincott-Raven Publishers, Philadelphia: 1997, 741.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Surgical time	1–3 h
Closing considerations	Chest tube placed
EBL	Minimal, although there is a risk for major bleeding.
Postop care	Chest tube
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Major vascular injury: Rare Conversion to open thoracotomy: 4% Pneumothorax/persistent air leak
Pain score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All age groups
Male:Female	1:1
Associated conditions	Pleural effusions; lung mass; pneumothorax

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

As VATS is used for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes, this patient population is quite diverse: patients may be of any age group and may present with an asymptomatic mass or be in respiratory distress due to undiagnosed interstitial disease. VATS is also used for nonthoracic procedures such as sympathectomy, pericardial window, and minimally invasive cardiac surgery. For robotic-assisted thoracic surgery (RATS), the requirements are similar to those for a VATS procedure except for (1) lateral decubitus position for prolonged periods of time with the table turned 90 degrees, and (2) limited access to the patient, requiring extensions to vascular lines and anesthetic circuit tubing, and increased difficulty ensuring OLV with a properly positioned DLT.

Respiratory	The preop evaluation should focus on the patient's ability to tolerate OLV, as well as the postop effects of the planned surgery. PFTs and ABG are useful prognostic tests. Question patient about dyspnea, productive cough, and cigarette smoking; examine for cyanosis, clubbing, RR, and pattern. Listen to chest for wheezes, rhonchi, and rales. Preop lung function may be improved by treating respiratory tract infections, stopping smoking for several weeks, and treatment with bronchodilators and steroids, as indicated. **Tests:** PFT; CXR; if chest CT available, look for airway anomalies that could interfere with DLT placement; ABG.
Cardiovascular	Directed at any underlying disease process.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1). Avoid heavy sedation that might impair postop respiratory function.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, typically with OLV, using DLT or BB (see OLV, p. 288). OLV may be difficult to achieve in pediatric patients, so chest insufflation with CO_2 has been described, but is fraught with risks. Thoracoscopy has also been described in the awake, sedated patient under local or regional anesthetic technique. Although tissue trauma is significantly less than with the open thoracotomy, pain scores are not insignificant, and chronic pain syndromes are common. Referred pain due to lung dissection, chest wall pain due to decortication, and intercostal nerve impingements secondary to trocar insertion may cause marked postop pain. Multimodal therapy with opioid and NSAID is sufficient in many, but PCA may on occasion be required. Regional techniques (epidural or paravertebral) should be considered in compromised patients, in procedures with high conversion risk or in procedures with significant tissue trauma (e.g., decortication).

Regional anesthesia: The incision site is infiltrated with local anesthetics, and intercostal nerve blocks are performed at the level of incision and at several levels above and below incision. The same effect can be accomplished by multiple-level single-shot paravertebral nerve blocks, which can be performed awake or asleep in the lateral position. Alternatively, continuous paravertebral or epidural catheters can be placed.

General anesthesia: The patient is intubated with a DLT or BB to selectively collapse the operative lung. Lung collapse is slower than with thoracotomy because the chest cavity is not completely opened to atmospheric pressure. To accelerate lung collapse (1) start OLV early, use an FiO_2 of 1.0, and apply gentle suction to the unventilated lung; (2) make sure trocars are opened to atmosphere for 30 to 60 sec following insertion; and (3) CO_2 insufflation can be used to accelerate lung collapse. CO_2 insufflation is often well tolerated if begun slowly. There is a risk of venous gas embolism. Sudden insufflation can result in cardiovascular collapse as a result of ↑ intrathoracic pressure → ↓ BP, ↓ HR and hypoxemia. Insufflated gas will be absorbed and may → hypercarbia.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Placement of DLT is discussed on p. 288.	
Maintenance	O_2 (60–100%) and isoflurane, desflurane or sevoflurane (0.6–1 MAC). No N_2O. Short-acting muscle relaxant and opioids as required. Consider remifentanil infusion (0.1–0.2 mcg/kg/min).	
OLV	See pneumonectomy/ lobectomy for OLV technique. p. 288	
Emergence	Extubation in OR	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line	Arterial catheter generally not required, unless indicated by patient's medical condition.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, ears, genitals	See p. 278 for proper positioning.

Complications	Air leak from lung Hemorrhage Injury to intrathoracic structures Air embolism	Air leak observed on reexpansion of lung. Excessive blood drainage via chest tube; falling Hct Repair may require open thoracotomy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Tension pneumothorax	In the absence of chest tube, air leak can → pneumothorax that can progress to tension pneumothorax if not treated. This may manifest as hyperresonance, ↓ chest-wall movement, dyspnea, subcutaneous emphysema, tracheal shift, dysrhythmias, cardiovascular collapse, ↓ PO_2, and ↓ SaO_2. CXR diagnostic, but need to diagnose clinically if hemodynamically unstable. Requires immediate decompression of tension pneumothorax with 14-ga iv catheter through 2nd intercostal space @ midclavicular line, followed by chest tube and continuous suction.
Pain management	IV opioids, ketorolac (30 mg)	Analgesic requirements less than for lateral thoracotomy, but moderate to severe pain may occur and chronic pain is not uncommon.
	Intrapleural anesthesia	Intrapleural local anesthetics (0.25% bupivacaine + 1:200,000 epinephrine 0.5 mL/kg) via thoracostomy drainage tube after lung is reinflated but before chest tube suction applied.
	Epidural or paravertebral	Indicated in patients with significant comorbidities and/or for procedures with significant tissue trauma (decortication, lobectomy).
Tests	CXR postop	

Suggested Readings

1. Conacher ID: Anaesthesia for thoracoscopic surgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol* 2002; 16(1):53–62.
2. Harris RJ, Benveniste G, Pfitzner J: Cardiovascular collapse caused by carbon dioxide insufflation during one-lung anaesthesia for thoracoscopic dorsal sympathectomy. *Anaesth Intensive Care* 2002; 30(1):86–9.
3. Hutter J, Miller K, Moritz E: Chronic sequels after thoracoscopic procedures for benign diseases. *Eur J Cardithorac Surg* 2000; 17(6): 687–90.
4. Mineo TC: Epidural anesthesia in awake thoracic surgery. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2007; 32(1):13–9.
5. Shah JS, Bready LL: Anesthesia for thoracoscopy. *Anaesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(1):153–71.
6. Steenwyk B, Lyerly III R: Advances in robotic assisted thoracic surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30:699–708.
7. Taylor R, Massey S, Stuart-Smith K: Postoperative analgesia in video-assisted thoracoscopy: the role of intercostals blockade. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2004; 18(3):317–21.
8. Tobias JD: Anaesthesia for minimally invasive surgery in children. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol* 2002; 16(1):115–30.

THYMECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The two most common indications for **thymectomy are myasthenia gravis** and **thymoma.** The severity of myasthenia gravis can be classified using the Osserman scheme, which assigns Stage I to patients with ocular symptoms only, with Stages II–IV for progressive degrees of bulbar and systemic symptoms. Indications for surgery versus medical management remain controversial, with some neurologists referring nearly all patients with myasthenia gravis for surgery, whereas others refer only those with the most refractory symptoms. Patients referred

for surgery often take a combination of pyridostigmine (Mestinon) and immunosuppressants (steroids and azathioprine). In cases of severe myasthenia gravis, preop plasmapheresis may be helpful in minimizing periop muscle weakness. Patients with thymoma may be asymptomatic, although ~10–20% of them have a Hx of myasthenic symptoms.

Thymectomy can be a performed through a **complete sternotomy,** an upper sternal split (manubrium only), or via a cervical approach. The value of a complete sternotomy is that it allows for removal of all anterior mediastinal tissue that may harbor small thymic rests. This is the most invasive approach, however, and the one associated with the greatest degree of intraop tissue injury. An **upper sternal split** is performed with the neck extended and a roll placed under the shoulder blades. Either a short vertical incision or a transverse incision at the level of the sternal angle may be used. Division of only the manubrium provides adequate exposure for identification, dissection, and removal of the thymus. Mobilization of the thymus can be accomplished without entering the pleural space. Care must be taken to avoid injuring the phrenic nerves. In contrast with the removal of anterior mediastinal tumors, thymectomy usually does not require OLV.

Transcervical thymectomy is performed through a collar incision similar to that used for thyroidectomy (Fig. 7.11-3). The cervical extensions of the thymus are identified and the dissection is advanced progressively into the neck. Attachments of the gland are cauterized, and a clip is placed on the thymic vein (which drains directly into the innominate vein). Exposure is aided by a special retractor that elevates the sternum anteriorly and exposes the anterior mediastinum.

At the conclusion of the operation—whether it is done through the chest or the neck—the thymic bed is drained with a small suction drain. Preop medications should be resumed as soon as possible.

Usual preop diagnosis: Myasthenia gravis; thymoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Sternotomy	Cervical Approach
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Median sternotomy	Suprasternal
Special instrumentation	None	Special sternal retractor
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐
EBL	< 500 mL	⇐
Postop care	ICU — special attention to muscle strength, related to respiratory function	⇐
Mortality	< 5%	⇐
Morbidity	Infection Pneumothorax Hemothorax	⇐
Pain score	5–7	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually young adults
Male:Female	Females > males
Incidence	Infrequent
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Myasthenia gravis; benign or malignant thymoma; other autoimmune diseases (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for thymectomy may have myasthenia gravis, an autoimmune disease of the neuromuscular junction characterized by muscle weakness and easy fatiguability. Thymomas (benign or malignant) also may be associated with myasthenia gravis. The anesthesiologist needs to be aware of the possible compression effects of the tumor (see Excision of Mediastinal Tumor, p. 308), the potential for respiratory failure, and anticipate complications of various treatment modalities.

Respiratory	Patient may have marked reduction in VC 2° muscle weakness; establish baseline spirometry values. Classic (Leventhal) criteria predicting the need for postop ventilation include duration of disease > 6 yr; chronic comorbid pulmonary disease; pyridostigmine dose > 750 mg/d; VC < 2.9 L. Others include preop use of steroids, and previous episode of respiratory failure. These predictors have not been widely validated. Inform the patient of the potential requirement for prolonged ventilation. **Tests:** PFTs, others as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	There is a rare association between myasthenia gravis and cardiomyopathy. Consider ECG and cardiac consult if indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Review neurological assessment. Patients often exhibit diplopia, ptosis, and easy fatiguability of muscles. Difficulties with swallowing and speech are common. Review tests (EMGs, Tensilon test) done by neurologist to evaluate the adequacy of drug therapy (steroids, anticholinesterases, azathioprine, and cyclosporin A). Azathioprine (Imuran) may actually antagonize neuromuscular blockade by inhibiting phosphodiesterase. Cyclosporin A is reserved for severe disease because of the side effects of renal insufficiency and HTN. It may prolong neuromuscular blockade. 10–50% of the patients with thymomas will have myasthenia gravis, and > 85% of myasthenics will have thymus abnormalities.
Musculoskeletal	Determine adequacy of anticholinesterase medication. Evaluate hand strength, inspiratory efforts, and PFTs. Note that an excess of anticholinesterase agents can cause weakness and respiratory failure (cholinergic crisis). A deleterious response (weakness) to Tensilon®; administration (10 mg), as well as the presence of cholinergic side effects (e.g., pupil constriction), characterize a cholinergic crises. Plasmapheresis may offer temporary (days to weeks) improvement in symptoms. Typically, patients with worsening symptoms receive 4–8 treatments prior to surgery. There should be a 24-h delay between the last plasmapheresis and surgery to restore clotting factors and immunoglobulins. Plasmapheresis also may transiently decrease plasma cholinesterase, which could prolong the effects of succinylcholine, mivacurium, and ester-type local anesthetics.
Endocrine	Other autoimmune phenomena occur in 10–15% of myasthenic patients. Elucidate symptoms of thyroid or adrenal disease. Tests: TSH; evaluate screening test if indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Avoid premedication; for the anxious patient, give a small dose of midazolam (0.5–1 mg); avoid opioids or any other sedatives that may depress ventilation. Current recommendations for anticholinesterases suggest that, in mild disease without physiological dependence, the morning dose can be held or halved. Patients with severe disease or with marked anticholinesterase dependence should receive their regular morning dose. For patients on steroids—depending on dosage and duration of steroid therapy—hydrocortisone (up to 100 mg iv bolus) before induction, then 100 mg q 8 h × 24 h, may be helpful. Note that acute steroid exposure in naïve patients may paradoxically exacerbate neuromuscular weakness. Consider aspiration prophylaxis.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, combined with thoracic or lumbar epidural if transsternal thymectomy. DLT may be requested by surgeon.

Induction	Inhalational induction with sevoflurane to avoid muscle relaxants entirely; however, patients with profound muscle weakness are at risk for aspiration 2° inadequate airway protective mechanism. Alternatively, iv propofol induction with remifentanil 1–2 mcg/kg (without muscle relaxants). If absolutely necessary, succinylcholine may be used to facilitate intubation, although myasthenic patients are considered resistant and require a dose of 1.5–2.0 mg/kg to obtain adequate conditions, which then will result in prolonged muscle weakness. Anticholinesterase therapy may prolong the duration of action of succinylcholine.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Patients with myasthenia gravis have ↑ sensitivity to nondepolarizing NMBs, which are rarely ever needed, as maintenance with inhalational agents provides adequate neuromuscular relaxation when combined with the existing baseline weakness. If relaxants are needed, titrate small amounts (1/10 ED_{95}) of drug, using a peripheral nerve stimulator to maintain a single twitch. Cisatracurium (20–30 mcg/kg q 15–20 min or infusion 1–3 mcg/kg/min) is useful because it is rapidly eliminated. Alternatively, potent inhalation agents may provide adequate muscle relaxation and avoid the need for any muscle relaxant. Avoid drugs with neuromuscular blocking effects (e.g., antidysrhythmics, calcium channel blockers, diuretics, aminoglycosides, Mg^{+2}, iodinated contrast agents). Extremes of temperature, hypokalemia and hypophosphatemia may also aggravate neuromuscular weakness and should be prevented. If the patient has normal ventilatory function, then spontaneous ventilation during cervical thymectomy may be appropriate. Patients undergoing sternotomy, and any patient with ↓ pulmonary reserve, require mechanical ventilation.	
Emergence	Criteria for extubation include: head lift (5 sec); MIF > –25 cmH_2O; TV > 5 mL/kg; and full reversal evidenced by twitch monitor. Extubate when fully awake; usually immediate postop ventilation is not necessary. However, because of the variable response to muscle relaxation and delayed benefits of the surgery, some patients may require postop ventilation. Whether intubated or not, monitor patient for pulmonary function by measuring MIF and spirometry (Vt). Avoid residual pharmacologic neuromuscular blockade, which will → hypoventilation and ↑ risk of gastric aspiration if protective airway reflexes are inadequate.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	Consider lower extremity iv access when hemorrhage anticipated.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Avoid muscle relaxants if possible; use nerve stimulator.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hemorrhage Dysrhythmia Compression of mediastinal structures Pneumothorax	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax Respiratory failure Phrenic nerve damage Myasthenic or cholinergic crises	Pleura can be entered–usually the right side; if so, chest tube needed. (For Dx and Rx, see VATS, p. 326)

Pain management	Parenteral opioids (p. C-1) Epidural opioids (p. C-3)	Avoid respiratory depression; parenteral opioids for cervical incision; epidural opioids for median sternotomy. Of note, anticholinesterases are reported to potentiate the effect of morphine.
Drug management	Usually ↓ anticholinesterase requirement in the immediate postop period.	Reduce daily anticholinesterase by 20%. Beware of "cholinergic" crisis. Sx include ↑ salivation, sweating, lacrimation, abdominal cramps, urinary frequency, fasciculations, and weakness 2° anticholinesterase overdose. Rx: anticholinergic agent (e.g., atropine) ± intubation and mechanical ventilation.
Tests	Tensilon (edrophonium)	Tensilon test may differentiate between myasthenic (↑ strength) and cholinergic (↓ strength) crises.
	Muscle strength	Determine muscle strength postop (grip strength and sustained head lift).
	Pupil exam	Pupil dilation (myasthenic crisis); pupil constriction (cholinergic crisis).

Suggested Readings

1. Baraka A: Anesthesia and critical care of thymectomy for myasthenia gravis. *Chest Surg Clin North Am* 2001; 11(2):337–61.
2. Blichfeldt-Lauridsen L, Hansen BD: Anesthesia and myasthenia gravis. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 2012; 56(1):17–22.
3. Dillon F: Anesthesia issues in the perioperative management of myasthenia gravis. *Sem Neurol* 2004; 24(1):83–94.
4. Limmer KK, Kernstine KH: Minimally invasive and robotic-assisted thymus resection. *Thorac Surg Clin* 2011; 21(1):69–83, vii.
5. O'Neill GN: Acquired disorders of the neuromuscular junction. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2006; 42(2):107–21.
6. Shrager JB, Nathan D, Brinster CJ, et al: Outcomes after 151 extended transcervical thymectomies for myasthenia gravis. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2006; 82(5):1863–9.

EXCISION OF BLEBS OR BULLAE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pulmonary blebs or bullae requiring surgical treatment may vary from small, apical blebs—most usually seen in young people with spontaneous pneumothorax—to expanding, giant bullae causing respiratory distress. Specific indications for bullectomy include large size (> 30% of the lung), recurrent pneumothorax, dyspnea in conjunction with compressed adjacent parenchyma, and recurrent infection of the bullae. The small blebs can be excised through **video thoracoscopy** (see p. 326), although some surgeons still prefer an open technique for this procedure. Giant bullae are generally removed by **open thoracotomy,** although these lesions also may be excised by VATS techniques. In either case, the goal is to resect the nonfunctional bullae and allow the compressed, yet relatively preserved lung tissue to reexpand and contribute to gas exchange. The surgical technique generally involves **stapling** across the base of the bulla with reinforcing strips being applied to the staple line to minimize air leak. Alternatively, a **clamp and suture** technique may be used. However the most important point is that an airtight closure should be obtained as a prolonged air leak can be very debilitating. Patients undergoing operation for giant bullae frequently have limited pulmonary reserve and present formidable operative risks. Because the operation is planned to improve their pulmonary function, however, these patients frequently do well following operation. **Pleural abrasion** or, rarely, **pleurectomy** may accompany the excision of blebs or bullae. The blebs in young patients with recurrent spontaneous pneumothorax usually are located at the apex of the upper lobe. Bullae in patients with emphysema are usually in the upper lobe, but may be anywhere in the lung. Preop localization by CT scan is usually sufficient. If a thoracotomy is done, the approach is usually lateral.

Variant procedure or approaches: Patients with more generalized emphysema may be candidates for lung-volume reduction surgery (see p. 336).

Usual preop diagnosis: Spontaneous pneumothorax 2° ruptured blebs; giant bullae causing respiratory distress

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Usually lateral
Incision	Axillary
Special instrumentation	Staplers
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g
Surgical time	1–3 h
EBL	< 500 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; ICU or IIC for giant bullae
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Air leak: 20% or more in giant bullae
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Young adults (blebs/small bullae); elderly (large bullae)
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Emphysema (usually 2° smoking); congenital; infectious
Associated conditions	Spontaneous pneumothorax; emphysema; long smoking Hx; α-antitrypsin deficiency

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients with apical blebs tend to be young with normal lung function and otherwise healthy. Bleb resection in these patients tends to be a routine thoracoscopic wedge-resection procedure. Patients with bullous emphysema, on the other hand, may have end-stage lung disease, often with pulmonary hypertension and RV dysfunction. The risk of rupture of a bulla/bleb on the nonoperated side, with resultant tension pneumothorax, must be considered throughout the procedure. The majority of considerations and concerns therefore relate to the patient with bilateral disease. Most procedures are done thoracoscopically.

Respiratory	Cysts may be bronchogenic, postinfective, infantile, or emphysematous. With blebs, elicit Hx of repeat pneumothoraces. Bullae usually result from destruction of alveolar tissue; they represent end-stage emphysematous disease associated with severe COPD. Patients may have incapacitating dyspnea and limited pulmonary reserve. CO_2 retention ± hypoxia may be present. Obtain PFTs and ABG for baseline. **Tests:** CXR; presence of pneumothorax; if chest CT available, look for bilateral bullous disease and rule out airway anomalies that could interfere with DLT placement; ABG, as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	**Tests:** ECG
Neurological	✓ Hx for previous back surgery, peripheral neuropathy. Examine thoracolumbar area for skin lesions, infection, deformities.

Hematologic	Transfuse patient with preop Hct < 25% (Hct < 30% if patient has CAD). Cross-match 2 U of blood or obtain 1–2 U of autologous blood during the month before surgery, or consider erythropoietin therapy in patients who are anemic. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 1–2 mg iv if patient anxious and not in respiratory distress. Minimize sedation if planning epidural placement, as the combination of parenteral sedation and epidural opioid may result in significant respiratory depression.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA—combined with regional technique if open thoracotomy.

Induction	**Minor Bleb:** standard induction (see p. B-2) **Major bullae (particularly bilateral):** main issue is risk of pulmonary tamponade/tension pneumothorax secondary to bulla expansion by PPV. Best to establish lung isolation prior to instituting PPV (DLT essential in bilateral disease, to allow for ventilation/exclusion of either side; BB sufficient for unilateral disease). Strategies include awake intubation (difficult with DLT), spontaneous ventilation induction (inhalational or iv), or, in patients with easy airway anatomy, a true rapid sequence intubation. Lung isolation should immediately be confirmed with FOB prior to providing PPV. Rapid placement of a chest tube is essential should a bulla rupture.	
Maintenance	Patients with severe COPD may have significant auto-PEEP. To avoid worsening dynamic hyperinflation of lung, treat bronchospasm aggressively and allow adequate expiratory time (↓ I:E ratio, low RR). Caution with applied PEEP: It may increase total PEEP (and therefore air trapping). Minimize risk of bulla rupture by reducing ventilatory pressures (low tidal volumes, permissive hypercapnia and pressure-control ventilation @ < 20 cmH_2O). Inhalational anesthesia supplemented with epidural, local anesthetics, or iv opioids. Avoid N_2O at all times because bullae may be filled with air.	
Emergence	Reexpand lung under direct vision to check for major air leaks. Extubate patient early. Post-bullectomy, unlike other lung resections, patients have greater functional lung tissue than preop.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h Use vasopressors if hypotensive.	Excess fluid predisposes to right heart failure. Epidural local anesthetics can ↓ BP in a volume-restricted patient; vasopressor often needed (e.g., ephedrine 5–10 mg iv bolus or phenylephrine 50–100 mcg iv bolus).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line ± CVP, ± PA line, ± TEE	 For patients with coexisting severe cardiac disease
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, ears, genitals Axillary roll; "airplane" for upper arm	See Positioning, p. 278.
Ventilation	DLT or BB needed to separate the lungs.	Allows PPV of the nonoperative lung. Use gentle PPV (pressure control) with low Vt, permissive hypercapnea ($PaCO_2$ 50–70 mm Hg). Inspiratory pressure should be as low as possible (~10 cmH_2O), to reduce likelihood of rupture of bullae in nonoperative lung. Treat intraop hypoxemia with CPAP to "up" lung. In extreme cases consider CPB (rare).

Complications	Tension pneumothorax	Can occur on either side during induction, only on nonoperated side after chest is open, and again on either side postop. Presents with ↑ ventilatory pressure, progressive tracheal deviation, wheezing, cardiovascular collapse. CXR to r/o tension pneumothorax. Rx: insertion of chest tube.
	Broncho-pleural-cutaneous fistula	Placement of a chest tube can create a broncho-pleural-cutaneous fistula. Rx: low Vt, spontaneous ventilation; may require DLT for differential ventilation.
	Hypoxia Hypercarbia Dysrhythmias	✓ position of DLT, suction DLT, avoid hypoventilation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypoventilation Dental damage Airway trauma Pneumothorax Hemorrhage Risk of aspiration	Ensure complete reversal of muscle relaxants, and patient wide-awake with good respiratory effort prior to extubation. Obtain ABG if patient has difficulty breathing or is overly sedated.
	Airway obstruction (bronchospasm, bleeding, dislodged tumor, FB)	If nerve blocks used to depress gag reflex for awake FOI, keep patient NPO for several hours postop.
Pain management	Epidural opioids (see p. C-3). Parenteral opioids	Parenteral opioids + intrapleural local anesthetics (0.5% bupivacaine + 1:200,000 epinephrine, 0.5 mL/kg) + single-shot paravertebral blocks are adequate for thoracoscopy.
Tests	CXR	ABG if indicated.

Suggested Readings

1. Brister NW, Barnette RE, Kim V, et al: Anesthetic considerations in candidates for lung volume reduction surgery. *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 2008; 5(4):432–7.
2. Gasparini S, Zuccatosta L, Bonifazi M, et al: Bronchoscopic treatment of emphysema: state of the art. *Respiration* 2012; 84(3):250–63.
3. Palla A, Desideri M, Rossi G, et al: Elective surgery for giant bullous emphysema: a 5-year clinical and functional follow-up. *Chest* 2005; 128(4):2043–50.
4. Pompeo E, Tacconi F, Mineo D, et al: The role of awake video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery in spontaneous pneumothorax. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2007; 133(3):786–90.
5. Tiong LU, Davies R, Gibson PG, et al: Lung volume reduction surgery for diffuse emphysema. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 18(4):CD001001.

LUNG-VOLUME REDUCTION SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Lung-volume reduction surgery (LVRS) was initially described by Brantigan in 1958 but reintroduced by Joel Cooper in 1995 for the treatment of severe emphysema. Typically, patients referred for LVRS are chronically ill, requiring steroids, bronchodilators, and supplemental O_2. With appropriate preoperative selection and perioperative care, these patients survive surgery and demonstrate improved pulmonary function. Physiologically, reducing the volume of the lung by resecting diseased tissue improves elastic recoil and decreases airway resistance. The chest cavity also is reduced in size, thereby improving chest-wall and diaphragmatic function.

The procedure can be carried out either through a median sternotomy or endoscopically. The **open approach** begins with a median sternotomy. OLV is initiated following opening of the pleurae. Often the diseased portions of the lung remain inflated, whereas healthy areas develop absorption atelectasis. These diseased portions are resected with the aid of a linear stapler. The visceral pleura are very thin; the stapling is done with bovine pericardium to bolster the staple line; and high inspiratory pressures (> 20 cmH_2O) must be avoided. From 15–30% of the lung volume may be removed. Following careful examination for air leaks, the pleurae and chest wall are closed.

The **endoscopic approach** is carried out using standard VATS techniques and instrumentation. Diseased tissue will have been identified preop using V/Q and CT scans. Endoscopic forceps are used to guide this diseased tissue into the jaws of the stapler. Again, 15–30% of lung tissue may be removed by this means. At some centers, the anesthesiologist may be asked to measure inspiratory and expiratory volumes. Any difference between these volumes may represent an air leak requiring further exploration. Following this, access ports and the thoracotomy are closed, and chest tubes are placed. The patient is turned over to the opposite side, reprepped and redraped, and the surgery is repeated. With either approach, patients should be extubated in the OR so that no unnecessary ventilatory pressures are put on the lungs. There is usually no suction on the chest tubes and, thus, a water seal is the primary method of controlling the pleural cavity pressures. A small pneumothorax (≤ 10%) is acceptable if the patient is not in respiratory distress. A functional epidural catheter, early extubation, and the avoidance of chest tube suction are important to the success of this procedure, especially in the very ill patient. Pleural drainage consists of two chest tubes per side; in contrast with lobectomy however, they are often left to water seal so as not to exert excessive negative pressure on the lung and disrupt the staple lines. Ideally, patients are extubated at the conclusion of the operation. Because their respiratory status is often tenuous, close monitoring, vigorous pulmonary toilet, and good pain control are essential in the postop period.

Usual preop diagnosis: COPD (emphysema)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open LVRS	Endoscopic LVRS
Position	Supine	Lateral decubitus
Incision	Sternotomy	Minilateral thoracotomy
Special instrumentation	Stapling devices; DLT	⇐+ Endoscopic instrumentation
Unique considerations	Bovine pericardium to bolster staple line	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	45–60 min/side
Closing considerations	Avoid high PIPs (> 20 cmH_2O)	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	Extubated in OR; avoid chest tube suction	⇐
Mortality	≤ 5–10%	⇐
Morbidity	Pneumothorax Infection Tearing of suture line Wound healing problems	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–8	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	> 50 yr
Male:Female	Male > female
Incidence	Although the incidence of emphysema is high in the general population, only a fraction of these patients will be candidates for LVRS.
Etiology	Smoking; genetic factors
Associated conditions	CAD; pulmonary HTN; PVD; cerebrovascular disease

Table 5.3. Suggested Selection Criteria for LVRS

Medical history	Severe COPD (emphysema rather than chronic bronchitis) Age < 75 yr No cigarette smoking for 6 mo Lowest effective prednisone dose No previous chest surgery
Pulmonary function	FEV_1 >30–35% of predicted $PaCO_2$ < 50 mm Hg TLC > l20% of predicted
Cardiac function	Mean PAP < 35 mm Hg (if pulmonary HTN is suspected). No evidence of LV dysfunction on dobutamine stress testing (if Hx of angina or CHF is present)
Radiographic	Hyperinflation; flattened diaphragm (CXR) Decreased upper lobe perfusion (Ventilation-Perfusion scan) Emphysema, with upper lobe predominance (CT scan)
Relative exclusion criteria	Continued smoking Illness other than emphysema that may cause severe dyspnea (e.g., CAD; CHF; cancer; interstitial lung disease; bronchiectasis) Severe malnutrition Obliteration of pleural space (e.g., pleurodesis or pleurectomy) Previous thoracic surgery Morbid obesity Severe pulmonary HTN (mean PAP > 35) Chest-wall deformity with restrictive lung disease (e.g., kyphoscoliosis; severe pectus deformity; $PaCO_2$ > 55 mm Hg)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

LVRS involves either laser thermal contraction or surgical resection of emphysematous lung tissue. Patients have end-stage emphysema with associated pulmonary HTN and RV dysfunction. These patients are a great challenge to the anesthesiologist because it may be difficult to maintain relatively normal physiologic parameters intraop and to have an awake, comfortable, and spontaneously breathing patient at the completion of surgery.

Respiratory	These patients have advanced pulmonary emphysema. Examine patient for cyanosis, clubbing, RR and pattern. Listen to chest—breath sounds are often very distant or absent. Hx should include use of O_2 supplementation, recent infection, severe bronchospasm, prior surgery on the chest, and other associated diseases, such as CAD or CHF. **Tests:** PFT (± bronchodilators). Hyperinflation usually is indicated by TLC and RV value > 120%; V/Q scan; CXR; chest CT scan; noninvasive exercise test (6-min walk); preop ABG—check for hypoxemia, hypercarbia.
Cardiovascular	These patients often have coexisting cardiac disease with pulmonary HTN. **Tests:** Right heart function can be determined by echocardiography or selective right heart catheterization, if indicated by H&P.
Premedication	Avoid premedication with sedative or opioids—cannot have respiratory depressants—patients have severe COPD, often are CO_2 retainers.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA (with DLT or BB) ± epidural anesthesia. Place and test epidural catheter before surgery. (See Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, pp. 281.)

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). DLT or BB absolutely necessary during surgery to selectively ventilate each lung. DLT preferable if severe bilateral disease with increased risk of pneumothorax (See Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 281).	
Maintenance	Inhalational agent and/or propofol. IV opioids and sedative agents should not be used (exception, remifentanil infusion intraop). Anesthesia may be supplemented by continuous or bolus administration of epidural anesthetics. Mechanical ventilation with O_2 and inhalation agent only. During TLV: Vt = 6–10 mL/kg, limit PIP to < 25 cmH_2O (best to use PCV). Respiratory rate and inspiratory flow should be adjusted to minimize air trapping (low RR, long E-time). Beware of overinflation and "breath stacking," which can → pulmonary tamponade with severe ↓ BP and ↑ airway resistance. ABG to determine $ETCO_2$–$PaCO_2$ gradient. During OLV use PCV for Vt = 4–8 mL/kg, long E-time, RR 6–10, and permissive hypercapnia ($PaCO_2$: 50–70 mm Hg); monitor lung compliance closely because the ventilated lung also has emphysema/bullous disease. Avoid overdistention with hyperinflation (→ pneumothorax) on ventilated, nonoperated lung. Patients with severe COPD may have significant auto-PEEP. To avoid dynamic hyperinflation of lung, treat bronchospasm aggressively, allow adequate expiratory time (↓ I:E ratio), limit PIP to 15–20 cmH_2O, and cautiously use applied PEEP, as it may increase total PEEP (best managed with in-line spirometry). Moderate hypercapnia is well tolerated, but higher levels may result in significant pulmonary HTN, RV dysfunction, and tachydysrhythmias. CPAP to nonventilated lung may be necessary to maintain oxygenation. Maintenance of hemodynamic stability may require pressor support (e.g., ephedrine, phenylephrine, dopamine). Dynamic hyperinflation of the lung (pulmonary tamponade) during mechanical ventilation should be suspected if ↓ BP with ↑ PIP occurs.	
Emergence	Emergence is a critical time for these patients. All physiologic parameters need to be optimized. Air leaks are common and may be worsened by prolonged mechanical ventilation, coughing, or straining on the ETT. Different options are available to achieve those goals, including deep extubation or deep conversion to spontaneous pressure-support ventilation. Either way, ventilation has to be assisted until patients are wide-awake, comfortable, warm, and maintaining adequate respiration with minimal support. These patients are critically dependent on good analgesia, upright/sitting position, and suctioning to ↓ mucous plugging (can be catastrophic). Recovery from GA occurs in the OR and may take 1–2 h. Ventilatory assistance via face mask with supplemental O_2 is usually necessary. ABG and CXR may be useful. When spontaneous ventilation and analgesia are satisfactory, the patient is transported to ICU. If postop mechanical ventilation is required, consider using pressure support ventilation with low levels of CPAP. The CPAP may help minimize the inspiratory work of breathing caused by lung hyperinflation. The pressure support mode of ventilation will permit control of airway pressure, while allowing patient control of $PaCO_2$. If postop intubation is anticipated, changing from DLT to ETT is required.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h Autologous PRBC	Fluid management to restore preop deficit and provide maintenance fluid, but restrict fluids similar to lung resection surgery. Replace minor blood loss with colloid. Transfuse autologous blood for Hct < 30.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line Urinary catheter CVP and/or PA line	(See Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 281). ✓ ABGs: baseline (preop) during sternotomy; 15 min after initiation of OLV; 15 min after initiation of OLV on the second lung; during closure of sternotomy; prior to extubation. Useful for postop fluid management. Depending on level of PHTN, RV dysfunction and co-morbid CAD
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, ears, genitals	Axillary roll and support for upper airway is necessary for the lateral decubitus position. (See Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 281.)

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypercarbia Hypoxemia Air leak/pneumothorax Hemorrhage	
Pain management	Lumbar or thoracic epidural opioids ± local anesthetics (see p. C-3).	Essential that patient be comfortable. Begin infusion of epidural opioids and local anesthetics (see Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 281). Breakthrough pain treatment options include iv hydromorphone (cautious boluses of 0.2–0.5 mg) and/or ketorolac (10–30 mg).

Suggested Readings

1. Brister NW, Barnette RE, Kim V, et al: Anesthetic considerations in candidates for lung volume reduction surgery. *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 2008; 5(4):432–7.
2. Fishman A, Martinez F, Naunheim K, et al: A randomized trial comparing lung-volume-reduction surgery with medical therapy for severe emphysema. *N Engl J Med* 2003; 348(21):2059–73.
3. Geddes D, Davies M, Koyama H, et al: Effect of lung-volume-reduction surgery in patients with severe emphysema. *N Engl J Med* 2000; 343(4):239–45.
4. National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group: Patients at high risk of death after lung-volume-reduction surgery. *N Engl J Med* 2001; 345(15):1075–83.
5. Tschernko EM: Anesthesia considerations for lung volume reduction surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):591–609.

BRONCHOPULMONARY LAVAGE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Whole-lung bronchopulmonary lavage is occasionally required for patients with pulmonary alveolar proteinosis—a condition characterized by excessive (or abnormal) surfactant production with resultant flooding of the lungs with proteinaceous fluid. Although the underlying cause of the condition is unclear, treatment consists of periodic whole-lung lavage and, more recently, GM-CSF administration. It is our practice to perform **unilateral lavage** only, although single-session, bilateral lavage has been reported. After induction of GA, a DLT is placed, and the correct position is confirmed bronchoscopically. The lung is then lavaged in aliquots of 500–1000 mL NS to dilute and wash out excess alveolar surfactant, pus, or mucus and to obtain material for cytological and histochemical examination. Care should be taken not to overdistend the lung, and a running tally of fluid instilled and withdrawn should be performed to avoid overhydrating the patient. Frequently, 9–12 L of fluid are used, with the initial effluent being very cloudy and the final effluent being clear. Techniques that may improve the distribution of the lavage fluid include external chest percussion and tilting the operating table (laterally as well as in the craniocaudal directions).

Usual preop diagnosis: Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis; refractory asthma; cystic fibrosis; bronchiectasis; lipoid pneumonitis; silicosis; alveolar microlithiasis; inhalation of radioactive dust

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Special instrumentation	Bronchoscope; DLT; lavage fluids
Antibiotics	None
Surgical time	45 min/side
EBL	None

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Aspiration of lavage fluid Pneumothorax/hydrothorax Atelectasis
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	17–35 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis; cystic fibrosis; bronchiectasis; lipoid pneumonitis; silicosis
Associated conditions	Asthma and other abnormalities of lung function

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Although whole-lung lavage is primarily a treatment for pulmonary alveolar proteinosis, it is also used as a therapeutic modality for many other lung-related conditions (see Usual preop diagnosis, above). Respiratory dysfunction of variable symptomatology is expected in these patients. Indications for whole-lung lavage include dyspnea on exertion, resting room air $PaO_2 < 60$ mm Hg, or shunt fraction > 10–12%. Because the procedure requires GA with OLV, it is recommended that preop V/Q scans be obtained so that unilateral lung irrigation can be performed first on the more severely affected lung. If both lungs are equally diseased, lavage should be performed on the left lung initially to allow the larger right lung to be used for ventilation to provide better gas exchange. Patients then return in subsequent days or weeks for therapeutic lavage of the contralateral lung. A nonoperative treatment option for pulmonary alveolar proteinosis using granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) has shown promise for some patients with the acquired form of pulmonary alveolar proteinosis.

Respiratory	Patients with pulmonary alveolar proteinosis generally present with cough (nonproductive > productive), dyspnea, and fatigue. Physical findings consist of diffuse rales ± clubbing or cyanosis. CXR typically reveals diffuse bilateral patchy airspace consolidation. Pulmonary compliance is reduced 2° the restrictive disease pattern. PFTs show ↓ TLC, ↓ RV, ↓ VC, and ↓ D_LCO. Though nonspecific, baseline ABGs classically demonstrate respiratory alkalosis and hypoxemia, with a calculated elevation in A-a DO_2 gradient. Some patients may be O_2-dependent or have concomitant COPD 2° Hx of smoking. Secondary infections, especially in the respiratory tract, are well recognized risks in these patients. Cessation of smoking (> 6–8 wk) and prompt treatment of any underlying infections before whole-lung lavage may be prudent. **Tests:** CXR; PFT; ABG; V/Q scans; ± CT
Cardiovascular	Directed at any underlying disease process.
Laboratory	Abnormal elevation of serum LDH has been reported in some patients and has been shown to correlate with the severity of A-a DO_2. **Tests:** LDH; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1). Avoid heavy sedation that might impair adequate gas exchange before induction. O_2 supplementation may be required after premedication.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is required with OLV (see p. 288) using a DLT. In pediatric patients or small adults where appropriate sized DLT is not available, and in patients who cannot tolerate OLV, the use of partial venoarterial CPB, venovenous bypass, or even ECMO has been reported. In some cases, sequential lobar lavage with smaller volume of lavage fluid has been achieved under conscious sedation for those patients in whom OLV is not possible.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) with thorough preoxygenation. The largest DLT should be used to facilitate infusion and drainage of the lavage fluid. (Placement of DLT is discussed on p. 288.) Due to the underlying impaired respiratory function in these patients, instituting OLV will further compromise gas exchange. It is imperative to avoid spillage of lavage fluid into the ventilated lung during the procedure. This is achieved by verifying the correct position of the DLT with FOB and confirming the competency of the cuff seal by testing it against pressures as high as 50 cm H_2O. Baseline individual lung compliance, airway pressures, and ABG should be ✓'d after DLT placement.	
Maintenance	100% FiO_2 with inhalational agent (e.g., sevoflurane) or TIVA using propofol and remifentanil infusions. Muscle relaxation is necessary to avoid movement or coughing that can cause leakage of lavage fluid into the ventilated lung. Because chest physiotherapy, including vibration and percussion, is required after each cycle of lavage filling, any deleterious change from baseline lung compliance decrease or airway pressure increase of the ventilated lung should prompt the anesthesiologist to look for evidence of spillage. Filling the nonventilated lung with lavage fluid can → ↓ pulmonary shunting (→ improved O_2 sat) and ↑ PVR (→ ↓ CO). Draining the lavage fluid can → ↑ pulmonary shunting (→ ↓ O_2 sat) and ↓ PVR (→ ↑ CO). Accurate inflow and outflow volume of the lavage fluid should be recorded to ensure return volumes are 90%.	
Emergence	At the conclusion of surgery, the lavaged lung should be adequately suctioned to remove any residual fluid. Bilateral lung ventilation should be reinstituted. Because the compliance of the lavaged lung is greatly reduced, higher airway pressures are required to re-expand it, but at the risk of causing barotrauma to the nonlavaged lung. A brief period of OLV to the lavaged lung, using large TVs or ↑ airway pressure, may be necessary to recruit the collapsed alveoli (higher pressure, including PEEP, is needed to counter the increase in surface tension after the removal of significant amounts of surfactant). The patient's trachea should be extubated after adequate reversal of muscle relaxation; however, if prolonged postop ventilation is anticipated (e.g., in those who aspirated lavaged fluid to the ventilated lung), changing the DLT to single lumen tube is indicated. DLT should be maintained for patients in whom differential lung ventilation is required postop.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Although warmed lavage fluid is used, some patients may become hypothermic after several hours of lavage under GETA.
	Arterial line	
	± CVP line ± PA line	CVP or PA line only needed as indicated by comorbid conditions. Consider fluoroscopic or TEE guided positioning of a PA catheter to the lavaged lung. In doing so, the therapeutic potential of the catheter may be realized. Selective occlusion of pulmonary arterial blood flow can improve matching of blood flow to ventilation.

Positioning	Supine ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Some prefer the lavaged lung to be dependent to minimize the risk of contaminating the contralateral lung with lavage fluid. Others prefer the lavaged lung to be nondependent because, in this position, perfusion will more closely match ventilation in the dependent lung. As a compromise, we perform lavage with the patient supine. However, intermittent manipulation of the patient position may be required to facilitate the lavage and drainage of any retained fluid. Prevention of DLT displacement during repositioning is paramount.
Complications	Hypoxemia	Hypoxemia during OLV is most commonly 2° luminal obstruction (by blood or pulmonary secretions) of the DLT, worsening of shunting, or malposition of DLT. Rx: suctioning of the DLT; PEEP to ventilated lung (may ↑ shunting); return to two-lung ventilation; and ✓ DLT position. In extreme cases, temporarily inflating the balloon of the PA catheter (if available) may be necessary to improve shunting and, thus, oxygenation. Inadequate positioning of the DLT demands stopping further instillation of fluid. Most authors recommend suspending the lavage fluid 30 cm above the midaxillary line. Instilling fluid from excessive height or under pressure may precipitate pulmonary edema.
	Hypercarbia	Ensure adequate TV and RR.
	Aspiration	✓ DLT position. Turn patient to lavaged side down and head down, suction the ventilated lung, reinstitute bilateral lung ventilation with PEEP, after the lavaged lung is thoroughly drained and suctioned. Termination of procedure may be needed in severe cases. Patient may need to be kept intubated after the procedure.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax Hydrothorax	Obtain CXR; conservative measures if small pneumothorax or hydrothorax. Otherwise, chest tube placement will be required.
	Atelectasis	Decrease in surfactant after lavage will → airspace collapse. Most patients will experience moderate coughing, which will help reexpand the atelectatic lung units.
Pain management	Parental opioids or NSAID (ketorolac 30 mg iv)	Some patients may experience chest pain due to vigorous intraop percussion.

Suggested Readings

1. Ben-Abraham R, Greenfeld A, Rozenman J, et al: Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis: step-by-step perioperative care of the whole lung lavage procedure. *Heart Lung* 2002; 31(1):43–9.
2. Bussieres JS: Whole lung lavage. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):543–58.
3. Cohen E, Eisenkraft JB: Bronchopulmonary lavage: effects on oxygenation and hemodynamics. *J Cardiothorac Anesth* 1990; 4(5):609–15.
4. Venkateshiah SB, Yan TD, Bonfield TL, et al: An open-label trial of granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor therapy for moderate symptomatic pulmonary alveolar proteinosis. *Chest* 2006; 130(1):227–37.

LUNG TRANSPLANT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The most common indications for lung transplantation include emphysema, pulmonary fibrosis, cystic fibrosis, and pulmonary hypertension. Patients with the first three of these diagnoses have marked abnormalities in mechanical pulmonary function, whereas patients with pulmonary HTN often have normal lung mechanics but very abnormal cardiac function. Patients with emphysema and pulmonary fibrosis often receive single-lung transplants, and those with cystic fibrosis require double-lung transplants. The best operation for patients with pulmonary hypertension continues to be debated, with options including single-lung, double-lung, and heart-lung transplantation (see p. 469). Although candidates for lung transplantation, by definition, have end-stage lung disease, their overall state of health and functional abilities vary considerably. Furthermore, although these patients all have poor pulmonary function, many with multisystem disease are eliminated during the preop screening process. Thus, the remaining patients are generally well motivated and free of significant cardiac, renal, and vascular disease.

Single-lung transplants generally are carried out through a thoracotomy incision. Patients with emphysema as the underlying disease rarely require CPB, whereas those with pulmonary fibrosis (↓ pulmonary reserve, and ↑ incidence of pulmonary HTN) more commonly require bypass. Although the need for bypass can be assessed at the outset of the operation by instituting OLV, a CPB circuit and perfusionist should always be available. The route for vascular access for bypass (transthoracic or through the groin vessels) must be considered by the surgeon at the start of the case.

Double-lung transplants generally are done through bilateral anterior thoracotomies or a single bilateral "clamshell" incision (Fig. 5-2). Mobilization of the lung is facilitated by use of a DLT. If the patient does not tolerate OLV, CPB can be established using aortic and atrial cannulation. Some surgeons routinely use a single-lumen ETT, with a defined plan for using CPB.

The procedure for both single- and double-lung transplantation is the same for each side. The native lung is mobilized, and the bronchovascular structures are divided. Mediastinal adenopathy and extensive pleural adhesions are the rule, rather than the exception, for patients with cystic fibrosis. Such pneumonectomies take significantly longer than those for emphysema. Once the native lung is removed, the donor lung is brought into the surgical field. The bronchial anastomosis is created first, and the lung is allowed to fall into the posterior costovertebral gutter. The venous anastomosis (atrial cuff anastomosis) is fashioned next. The final sutures are placed but left untied for later deairing. The arterial anastomosis is created last. Upon removal of the arterial clamp, the lung is perfused and deaired. The venous sutures are then tied and the atrial clamp is removed. After ensuring that the vascular anastomoses are hemostatic and that there is no air leak at the bronchial site, the incision is closed or, in the case of double-lung transplant, attention is directed to the other side.

The anesthesiologist should be aware that hypotension is not uncommon on reperfusion of the donor lung, but that it usually resolves spontaneously. Specific immunosuppression protocols vary from institution to institution, but intravenous administration of steroids immediately before lung reperfusion is a common practice. Lung transplant patients typically are left intubated following surgery; however, changing from a DLT to a single-lumen tube at the conclusion of the operation facilitates postop ET suctioning.

Usual preop diagnosis: COPD; pulmonary fibrosis; cystic fibrosis; pulmonary HTN; Eisenmenger's syndrome

For Summary of Procedure and Anesthetic Management, see Surgery for Lung and Heart/Lung Transplantation, p. 469, and Anesthetic Considerations for Lung Transplantation, p. 471.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Part 1 of 3 VATS Thoracoscopic Lobectomy: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LPwsnQY3HkQ

Thoracotomy (On-Q catheter insertion for post-thoracotomy pain management): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XX_e4wTQ-90

chest tube insertion: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=EcIDkJHRq8c

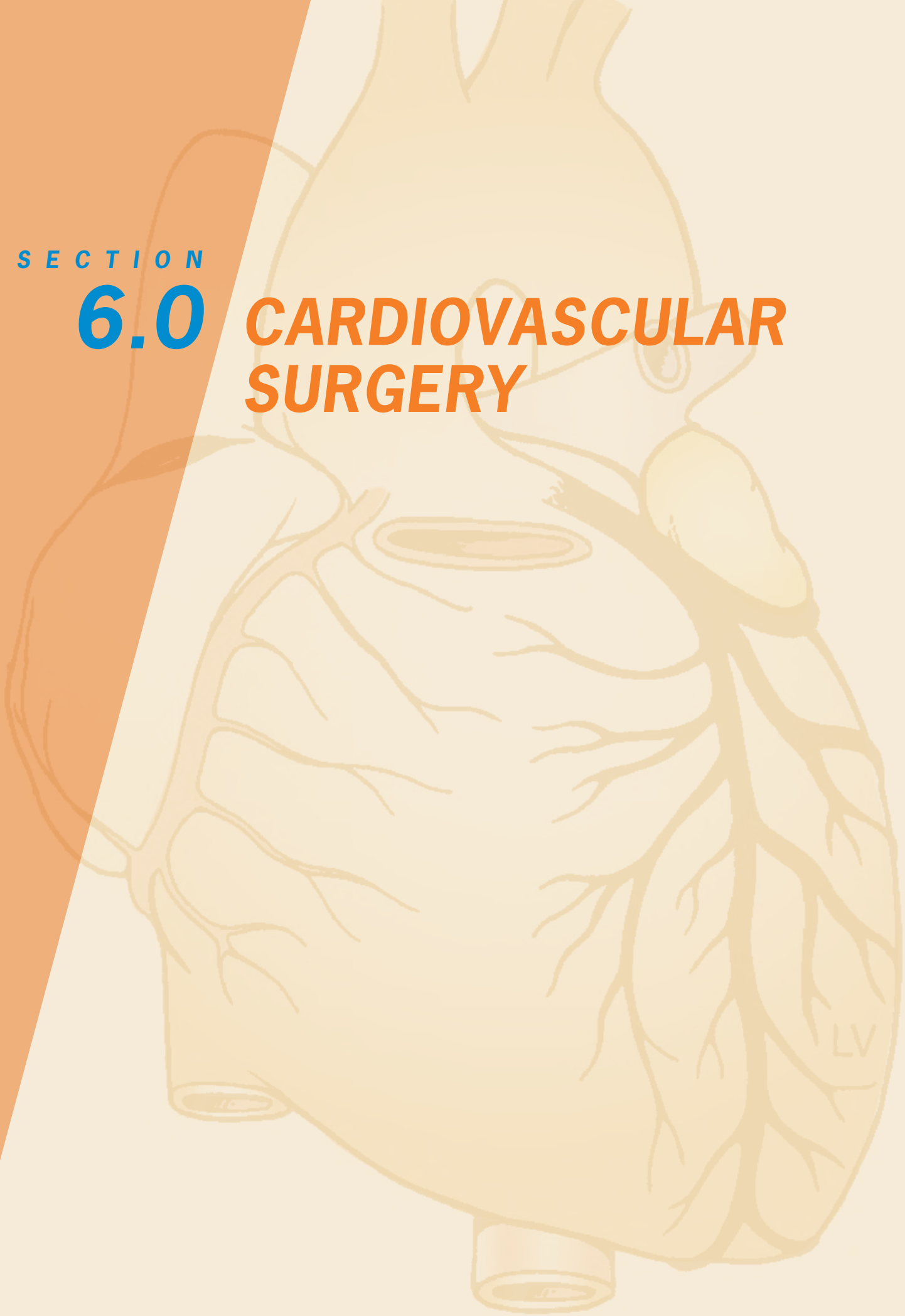
Decompressing A Tension Pneumothorax: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HbCuqpvx2EU

Thoracoscopic: Right Lower Lobectomy: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RgI4EcL0fDE

Sleeve Pneumonectomy for Lung Cancer: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GitI8FAU_vo

SECTION

6.0 CARDIOVASCULAR SURGERY



CHAPTER

6.1 Cardiac Surgery

SURGEON

R. Scott Mitchell, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Linda E. Foppiano, MD
Lawrence C. Siegel, MD
Daryl Oakes, MD

CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

The development of cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) technology has allowed the repair of many congenital and acquired lesions of the heart and great vessels. Designed to replace cardiac and pulmonary functions, full CPB requires a blood pump and oxygenator. The pump may be of the roller-head or centrifugal variety with the latter producing less trauma to formed blood elements. The oxygenator may bubble gases (O_2 and CO_2) through a blood-filled reservoir (bubble oxygenator) or allow O_2 and CO_2 to diffuse through a thin membrane into the surrounding blood (membrane oxygenator). Utilization of any blood pump requires at least partial heparinization (ACT > 180 sec), and introduction of an oxygenator mandates full heparinization (ACT > 400 sec).

Full CPB typically drains systemic venous return via the right atrium into a venous reservoir, from which the blood is pumped through an oxygenator and then returned to the aorta or femoral artery, completely bypassing the heart and lungs (Figs 6.1-1 and 6.1-2). **Partial CPB** usually supports only a portion of the body—typically the infradiaphragmatic portion—and may use the patient's lungs as an oxygenator (left atrium → femoral artery) or a mechanical oxygenator (femoral vein → femoral artery). Full CPB is utilized during a sternotomy for work on the heart, ascending aorta, and transverse arch. Partial CPB, in which some systemic venous blood returns to the heart and is ejected into the aorta, is normally used for work on the descending or thoracoabdominal aorta. Heparin-coated components, which partially eliminate the necessity for heparin, are available.

After exposure of the relevant organs (heart or descending thoracic aorta), and after heparinization, venous and arterial cannulae must be placed intraluminally. **Cannulation of the heart** usually involves venous drainage from the right atrium, with either two cannulae inserted through the atrium into the SVC and IVC (bicaval), or via a larger, dual-stage cannula draining the right atria and IVC. Bicaval cannulation reduces venous return (and rewarming) to the heart, and allows caval snares to be placed so that the right atrium can be opened without introducing air into the venous return. Occasionally, atrial manipulation for cannulation can depress CO with resultant hypotension. This usually can be reversed with volume replacement. Aortic cannulation usually is not associated with any physiologic perturbation, although HTN must be avoided to minimize aortic complications. After the cannulae are in place and connections are made to the bypass circuit, CPB may be instituted electively. Most cardiac operations are conducted under mild hypothermia (28°C), unless profound hypothermic circulatory arrest is to be utilized. In that case, a target temperature of 16–18°C is desirable. For operations on the descending thoracic aorta, normothermia is maintained.

Cessation of CPB is accomplished by gradually decreasing pump flows, allowing for right heart filling, and gradually replenishing the circulating blood volume. Pulmonary and coronary vasodilations are mandatory during this phase, as there appears to be heightened vasoreactivity after periods of ischemia and hypothermia. For periods of cardiac arrest, during which the heart is deprived of its arterial blood supply, the metabolic demands of the myocardium must be minimized. This usually is accomplished by achieving diastolic arrest with a hyperkalemic cardioplegic solution and also by lowering myocardial temperature to < 15°C. Frequent reinfusions of cardioplegia maintain hypothermia, prevent lactic acid accumulation, and deliver some minimally available dissolved O_2.

The **physiologic response to CPB** is complex and is associated with a massive catecholamine release that resolves after its cessation. Subsequent changes include abnormal bleeding tendencies, increased capillary permeability, leukocytosis, renal dysfunction, and impairment of the immune response. Hemodilution, nonpulsatile flow, hypothermia, exposure of formed elements to nonendothelial surfaces, complement activation, protein denaturation, cascading effects within the coagulation and fibrinolytic system, and activation of the kallikrein-bradykinin cascade, all contribute to this unphysiologic state, and account for much of the morbidity and mortality after CPB.

Many physiologic variables are now controlled by the anesthesiologist, perfusionist, and surgeon, including systemic flow and perfusion pressure, arterial O_2 and CO_2, temperature, and Hct. Other physiologic parameters follow either directly or indirectly. Thus, physiologic monitoring for the anesthesiologist and perfusionist include, at a minimum, arterial pressure, CVP, ABG determination (preferably online during CPB), CO, UO, and ECG. Constant communication among surgeons, perfusionist, and anesthesiologist is mandatory for a smooth operation. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is rapidly becoming standard practice for cardiac surgery.

Secondary effects of CPB demand some special considerations during the final stages of the procedure and chest closure. Adverse effects on coagulation have already been mentioned, and vigorous attention to maintenance and replacement of coagulation factors is essential. The capillary leak phenomenon results in interstitial myocardial and pulmonary edema. Decreased myocardial performance and compliance mandate an increased preload, especially

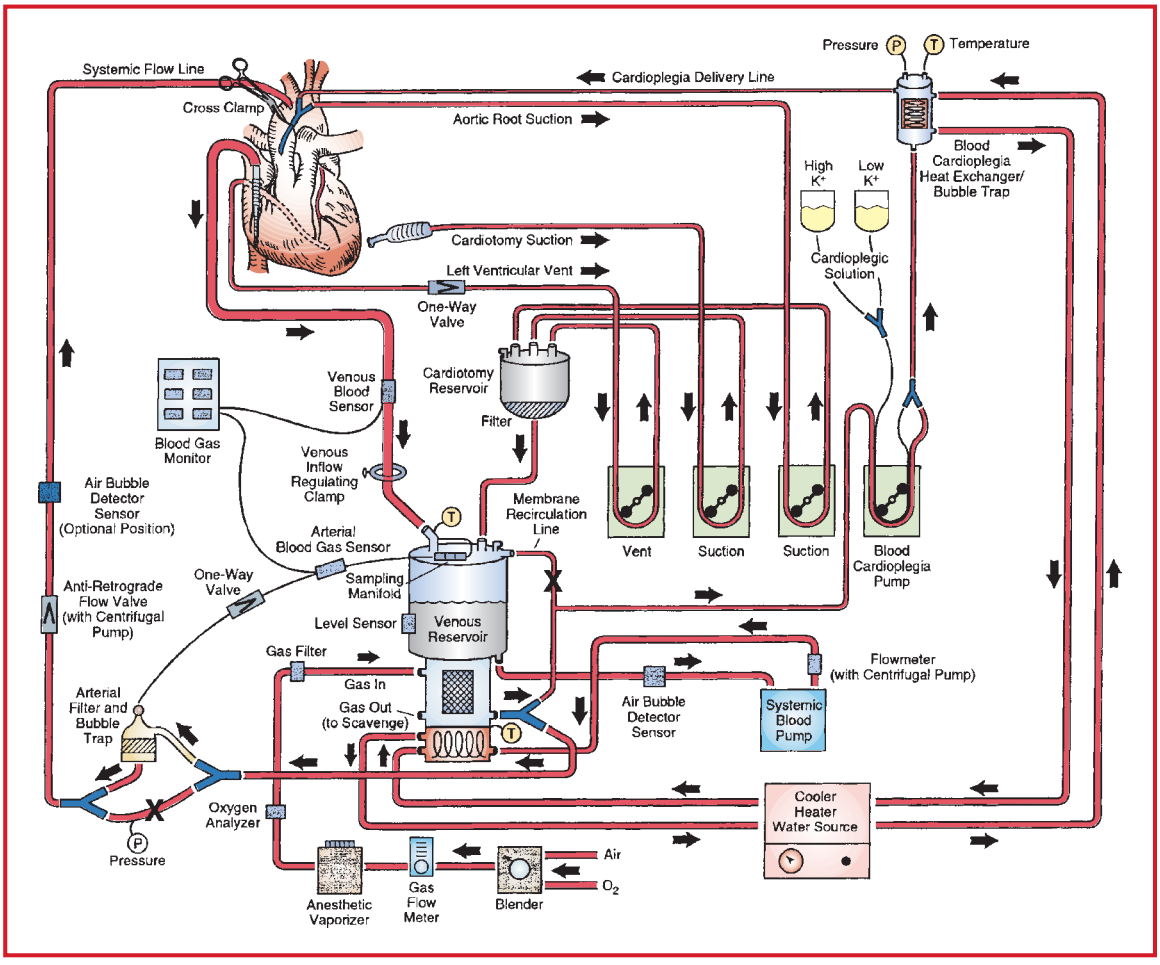


Figure 6.1-1. Detailed schematic diagram of the arrangement of a typical cardiopulmonary bypass circuit using a membrane oxygenator with integral hard-shell venous reservoir (**lower center**) and external cardiotomy reservoir. Venous cannulation is by a cavoatrial cannula, and arterial cannulation is in the ascending aorta. Some circuits do not incorporate a membrane recirculation line; in these cases, the cardioplegia blood source is a separate outlet connector built into the oxygenator near the arterial outlet. The systemic blood pump may be either a roller or centrifugal type. The cardioplegia delivery system (**right**) is a one-pass combination blood/crystalloid type. The cooler-heater water source may be operated to supply water to both the oxygenator heat exchanger and cardioplegia delivery system. The air bubble detector sensor may be placed on the line between the venous reservoir and systemic pump, between the pump and membrane oxygenator inlet, or between the oxygenator outlet and arterial filter (neither shown), or on the line after the arterial filter (optional position on drawing). One-way valves prevent retrograde flow (some circuits with a centrifugal pump also incorporate a one-way valve after the pump and within the systemic flow line). Other safety devices include an oxygen analyzer placed between the anesthetic vaporizer (if used) and the oxygenator gas inlet and a reservoir level sensor attached to the housing of the hard-shell venous reservoir (on the **left center**). *Arrows*, directions of flow; *X*, placement of tubing clamps; *P* and *T* (within circles), pressure and temperature sensors. Hemoconcentrator (described in text) not shown.

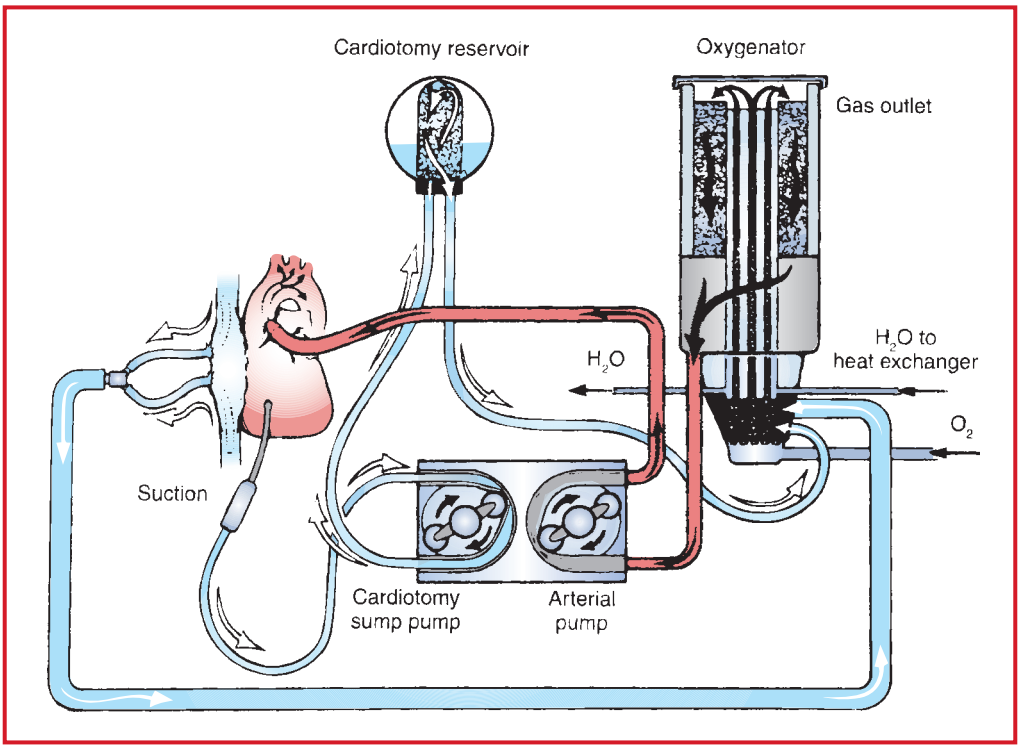


Figure 6.1-2. Schematic representation of the CPB circuit. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

during the physical act of chest closure, where a transient rise in intramediastinal pressure may depress systemic venous return. Similarly, decreased pulmonary compliance and gas exchange mandate vigilance over inspiratory pressures and lung volumes during chest closure because mediastinal volume is physically decreased.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS (CPB)

This segment is not meant to be a definitive text on CPB, but rather a guide to the anesthetic management of bypass. Communication among surgeons, anesthesiologists, and pump technicians is of vital importance in carrying out this procedure.

PREPARATION FOR BYPASS	
Prebypass/ anticoagulation	✓ baseline ACT (normal = 90–130 sec). Heparin (3 mg [~300 U]/kg) is administered via a central vein (✓ back-bleeding to verify intravascular position) or by the surgeon directly into the atrium (preferred). ✓ ACT 3 min after heparin. It is essential to ensure adequate anticoagulation (ACT > 400 sec).
Aortic cannulation	Control MAP to ~70 mm Hg for cannulation to ensure that the aortotomy does not extend. If needed, vasodilators may be used. The arterial line should be inspected for air bubbles.
Venous cannulation	Venous cannulation may be associated with atrial dysrhythmias. Blood loss can be excessive. Be prepared to infuse volume boluses, if necessary.
Pupils	Assess pupil symmetry for later comparison.

TRANSITION ONTO CPB

Stop ventilation	Commencing bypass is a dangerous period for the patient as a result of the many hemodynamic changes that occur. D/C ventilation once there is no pulmonary blood flow.
Withdraw PA catheter	Withdraw PA catheter 4–5 cm.
Stop infusions	Stop iv drugs and reduce iv fluid infusions to TKO.
Anticoagulation	ACT should be re-✓'d after 5 min on CPB to ensure anticoagulation (ACT > 400 sec).
Oxygenation	Verify oxygenation by checking arterial inflow color and inline sensors and by ABG within 5 min of beginning CPB.
Flow	✓ for adequate venous drainage (CVP falls to a low level). Ensure adequate arterial inflow. Initial pressures may be very low, but usually will increase. View the descending thoracic aorta on TEE to verify flow (no aortic dissection).
Anesthesia	Anesthetics (e.g., fentanyl and midazolam) may be needed. A repeat dose (e.g., 10 mg pancuronium or 50 mg of rocuronium) should be given to prevent movement or shivering (increases O_2 requirements).
Pupils	Assess pupils. Unilateral dilation may indicate arterial inflow into the innominate artery (unilateral carotid perfusion).

BYPASS PERIOD

Anticoagulation	ACT levels should be checked regularly (q 20–30 min) and kept at > 400. Add heparin (5000–10,000 U), if needed.
Pressure/flow	There is controversy about safe flows and pressures. Generally, flows of 1.2–3 L/m^2/min are used, with pressures of 30–80 mm Hg. A MAP of 50–60 mm Hg is probably best for cerebral perfusion and does not result in excessive noncoronary blood flow.
Acid-base status	α-stat (ABG measured and interpreted at 37°, regardless of actual patient temperature) regulation of acid-base status is preferred because of maintenance of normal cerebral flow and autoregulation on CPB.
Hct/Electrolytes	Generally, Hct will fall to ~20, which may be acceptable (however, Hct ≥ 25 is preferable) in most patients. Hypokalemia is common and should be corrected. A K^+ ~4.5 mEq/L is desirable. Blood glucose levels should be monitored q 1 h. Treat blood glucose ↑ 125 mg/dl with iv regular insulin. (See Table 6.1-2.)
UO	Keep UO >1 mL/kg/h. If needed, mannitol and/or furosemide should be given (assuming pump flow is adequate).
Temperature	During bypass, T is usually maintained at ~28°C.

Table 6.1-1. Difference Between α-Stat and pH-Stat Management During CPB

α–Stat (Temperature-uncorrected)	pH Stat (Temperature-corrected)
Plasma pH maintained at 7.4 (when measured at 37°C).	Plasma pH maintained at 7.4 at actual patient temperature.
Arterial PCO_2 maintained at 40 mm Hg (when measured at 37°C).	Arterial PCO_2 maintained at 40 mm Hg at actual patient temperature. Requires addition of CO_2 to inspired gases
Relative respiratory alkalosis during hypothermia	Relative normocapnia during hypothermia
Cerebral autoregulation preserved—CBF maintained.	Results in loss of cerebral autoregulation.

Table 6.1-2. Continuous Insulin Infusion in Intraoperative Adult Cardiac Surgery Patients

1. Bolus and start infusion pump as follows:

Blood Glucose	Insulin Bolus units	Insulin Drip units/h
< 125	0	0
125–175	5	1
175–225	10	2
> 225	15	3

2. Frequency of blood glucose determination: every 30 min intraoperatively!

3. Insulin titration:

Blood Glucose	Action
< 75	Stop insulin; give D50w and recheck blood glucose in 30 min. When blood glucose > 150, restart with rate 50% of previous rate.
75–100	Stop insulin; recheck blood glucose in 30 min. When blood glucose > 150, restart with rate 50% of previous rate, unless the dose is < 0.25 U/h.
101–125	If < 10% lower than last test, decrease rate by 0.5 U/h. If > 10% lower than last test, decrease rate by 50%. If neither, continue current rate.
126–175	Same rate
176–225	If lower than last test—same rate. If higher than last test—increase rate by 0.5 U/h.
> 225	If > 19% lower than last test— same rate. If < 10% lower than last test OR if higher than last test increase rate by 1 U/h. If blood glucose > 225 and has not decreased after the third hourly increase in insulin, then double the insulin rate.

TERMINATION OF BYPASS

Rewarming	Prior to discontinuing CPB, the patient should have a core temperature of at least 36°C.
Anesthesia/ relaxation	Patient awareness may be a problem during rewarming. Volatile agents ± benzodiazepine (e.g., midazolam 3–5 mg) ± a narcotic to prevent awareness. In addition, a muscle relaxant also should be given.
Acid-base/ electrolytes/Hct	✓ electrolytes, acid-base status, and Hct. Correct acidosis. K^+: 4.5–5.5, normal ionized Ca^{++}, and Hct ≥ 20 should be ensured.
Air maneuvers	Air maneuvers (to remove intracardiac and intraaortic air) are carried out when the heart is opened. Ventilation is commenced after there is pulmonary blood flow and will aid in the evacuation of air. Pleural fluid should be removed.

WEANING FROM BYPASS

Prior to weaning	Prior to weaning from CPB, the aortic cross-clamp should have been off for 30 min to allow rewarming and reperfusion of the heart. Defibrillation is often needed, and pacing may be required. NSR or AV pacing is preferred. Vasoactive drugs should be available. After normal T, ventilation, cardiac rhythm, and reperfusion are established, bypass may be terminated. The heart is gradually volume-loaded (transfused from oxygenator) to adequate filling pressures and bypass flow slowly decreased over 15–45 sec until it is off. Return to bypass in the event of progressive cardiac distension or dysfunction. Assess CO and BP and adjust vascular resistance as necessary. Inotropic agents often are required at this stage.
Reversal of anticoagulation	After the patient is off CPB, anticoagulation must be reversed with protamine (1–1.3 mg/100 U heparin), administered slowly over 10–20 min because rapid administration can be associated with ↓ BP (treat with volume, calcium, α-agonists as necessary). Other reactions include pulmonary HTN and true allergic reactions. ✓ ACT to ensure that it has returned to control (90–130 sec).
BP management	Vasoactive support often is needed in the postbypass period; the need varies with surgical procedure, disease process, and underlying cardiac function. In general, SBP should be limited to 120 mm Hg to avoid stress on the aortotomy site.

COAGULATION AND CPB

General	Bleeding is common post-CPB and may be considerable. Both preop and intraop factors contribute to this. Knowledge of these factors and the tests involved will aid with the management of these patients (Table 6.1-3).
Preop factors	Hx of previous bleeding during surgery is important. Many drugs may contribute to bleeding: aspirin/NSAIDs/clopidogrel (Plt dysfunction), anticoagulants (heparin, Coumadin) and fibrinolytic agents. These should be stopped preop, if possible, or their action reversed. Other pathological processes (e.g., liver failure/congestion, renal failure, or hemophilia) also play a role. Preop testing is important and should include PT, PTT, Plt count, and bleeding time, as a minimum.
Intraop factors	CPB is associated with ↓ Plt count and function. Circulating clotting factors are decreased, and fibrinolysis occurs. Many surgical teams routinely use either Amicar (5–10 g loading dose; 1 g/h, maintenance) or Aprotinin (1 mL, test dose; 1–2 million KIU, loading; 0.25–0.5 million KIU/h, maintenance) prophylactically during cardiac surgery to inhibit the fibrinolytic process. Aprotinin also has anti-inflammatory properties that may offset the inflammatory response to CPB. Recent studies have associated aprotinin (and not aminocaproic acid or tranexamic acid) with increased risk of CV events, including MI and heart failure, cerebrovascular events and renal dysfunction/failure in patients undergoing CABG surgery.
Post-CPB bleeding	The common causes of post-CPB bleeding are surgical causes, inadequate heparin reversal, ↓ number of Plt and Plt dysfunction, ↓ clotting factors, fibrinolysis, DIC, excessive BP, and hypothermia. Surgical causes and inadequate heparin reversal (✓ ACT) should be ruled out. If no surgical cause is found and ACT is normal, Plt (1–2 plateletpheresis units) should be infused. PT, PTT, Plt count, TT, reptilase time, fibrinogen, and FSP should be checked. TEG may prove very useful. (See Fig 7.12-9 and Table 7.12-3 in Liver/Kidney Transplantation, p. 717.)

Table 6.1-3. A Treatment Plan for Excessive Bleeding after Cardiac Surgery

Action	Dosage	Indication
Rule out surgical cause	—	Absence of oozing at puncture sites and incision
More protamine	0.5–1 mg/kg	ACT > 150 sec or aPTT > 1.5 times control
Warm the patient	—	"Core" temperature < 35°C
Apply positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP)*	5–10 cm H_2O	
Desmopressin	0.3 mcg/kg iv	Prolonged bleeding time
Aminocaproic acid	50 mg/kg, then 25 mg/kg/h	Elevated D-dimer or teardrop shaped TEG tracing
Tranexamic acid	10 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg/h	Elevated D-dimer or teardrop shaped TEG tracing
Platelet transfusion	1 U/10 kg	Platelet count < 100,000/mm^3
Fresh frozen plasma	15 mL/kg	PT or aPTT > 1.5 times control
Cryoprecipitate	1 U/4 kg	Fibrinogen < 1 g/L or 100 mg/dL

* PEEP is contraindicated in hypovolemia.

Suggested Readings

1. Conlon N, Grocott HP, Mackensen GB: Neuroprotection during cardiac surgery. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther* 2008; 6(4):503–20.
2. De Somer F: What is optimal flow and how to validate this? *J Extra Corpor Technol* 2007; 39(4):278–80.
3. Entwistle JWC III, Boateng P, Wechsler AS: Intraoperative myocardial protection. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013, 648–67.
4. Gibbs NM, Larach DR: Anesthetic management during cardiopulmonary bypass. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013, 214–37.
5. Hessell EA II, Murphy GS, Groom RC et al: Cardiopulmonary bypass: equipment, circuits, and pathophysiology. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2012, 587–629.

6. Mangano DT, Tudor IC, Dietzel C, et al: The risk associated with aprotinin in cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med* 2006; 336(4):353–65.
7. Morris BN, Romanoff ME, Royster RL. The postcardiopulmonary bypass period. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013, 238–64.
8. Shore-Lesserson L, Malayaman SN, Harrow JC et al: Coagulation management during and after cardiopulmonary bypass. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2012, 548–70.

CORONARY ARTERY BYPASS GRAFT SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG)** is the most frequently performed cardiac operation. Since the discovery that coronary thrombosis is the causative event for MI, many schemes have been devised to augment the restricted coronary blood flow, including collateral pericardial blood flow to epicardial arteries and implantation of the internal mammary artery (IMA) with unligated side branches into the LV muscle. With the discovery by Favaloro that saphenous veins can be anastomosed to the epicardial coronary arteries, a new era of myocardial revascularization began. Basically, the technique involves bypass to a narrowed or occluded epicardial coronary > 1 mm in diameter with a small-diameter conduit (usually reversed saphenous vein or IMA) distal to the narrowed segment, with the proximal arterial inflow source being the ascending aorta. The IMA may be mobilized from the chest wall, leaving its proximal origin with the subclavian artery intact (pedicled graft), or the IMA may be transected and its proximal end anastomosed to the aorta or saphenous vein as a "free mammary graft." An "**all-arterial revascularization,**" using the right IMA and nondominant RA, is being utilized with increasing frequency.

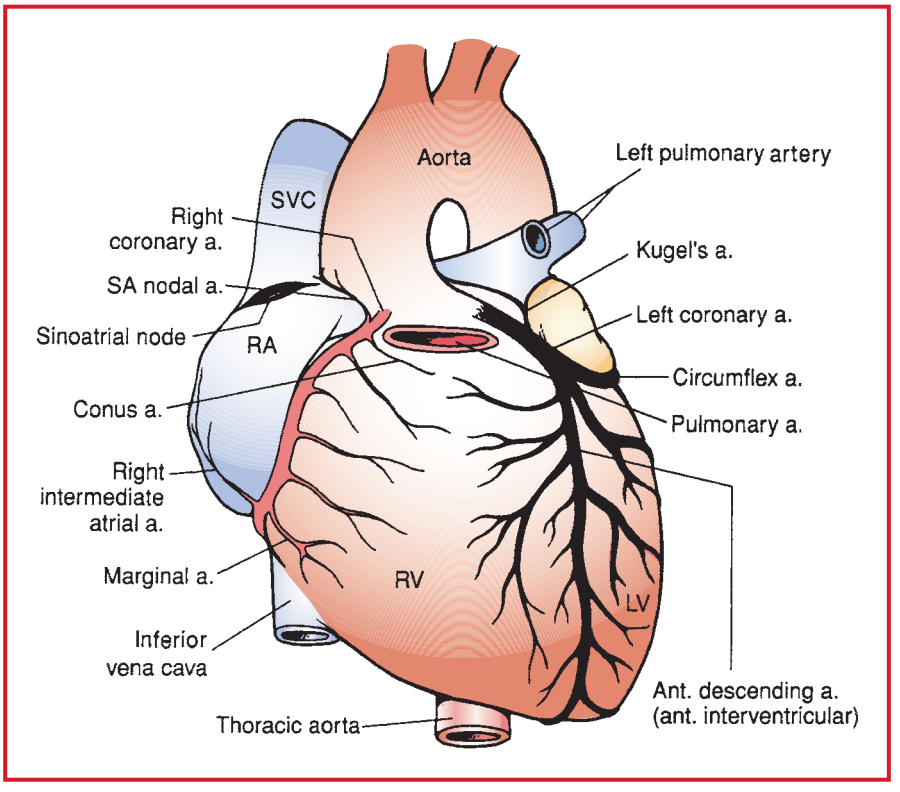


Figure 6.1-3. Coronary artery circulation—anterior view. (Reproduced with permission from Edwards EA, Malone PD, Collins JJ Jr: *Operative Anatomy of the Thorax.* Lea & Febiger, Philadelphia: 1972.)

The heart is approached through a median sternotomy, with the patient supported on full **CPB** (see separate section on CPB, p. 348). Although various operative strategies may be used, the most common regimen is for all distal (epicardial) anastomoses to be performed during a single period of aortic cross-clamping and cardiac arrest. During that period of induced asystole, myocardial protection is achieved by hypothermia and occasional reperfusion via antegrade or retrograde cardioplegia. Cardiac standstill and a bloodless field are mandatory to allow these very demanding small-diameter anastomoses to be constructed, with no obstruction to flow, in a minimal amount of time. The cross-clamp is then removed and the heart allowed to resume beating. A partially occluding aortic cross-clamp can then be applied to allow construction of the proximal aortic anastomoses. After a sufficient period of resuscitation, the patient is weaned from CPB, and decannulation, heparin reversal, and chest closure are allowed to proceed as previously noted.

The choice of conduit depends on availability and durability. Historically, the saphenous vein was the first small vessel conduit with acceptable patencies but with prolonged experience, it appears that 50% of vein grafts will be significantly diseased or occluded at 10 yr. The IMA appears to have superior long-term performance with ~90% 10-yr patency rates. Other arterial conduits, such as the left gastroepiploic artery, superficial epigastric artery, and the radial artery, are being investigated as to their long- and short-term durability. Typical target arteries include the distal right coronary and its major terminal branch, the posterior descending artery. From the left circulation, the left anterior descending (LAD), with its diagonal and septal branches, is the most important, having been estimated to supply blood to 60% of the left ventricle.

The left circumflex coronary artery courses in the posterior atrioventricular groove and is not easily accessible for bypass, which is usually performed to its obtuse marginal or posterolateral branches.

In a randomized study on coronary artery surgery (CASS), coronary bypass was noted to be superior to medical management for relief of angina and to prolong life in patients with left main CAD and in those with three-vessel disease and impaired LV function. Other patients may receive bypass for intractable angina refractory to medical management.

Variant procedure or approaches: **port access coronary artery revascularization** (see p. 389); **off-pump and minimally invasive coronary artery bypass** (see p. 389).

Usual preop diagnosis: CAD with Class 3 or 4 angina (angina with minimal exertion or at rest)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Median sternotomy with legs prepped for saphenous vein harvest
Special instrumentation	Complete hemodynamic monitoring; TEE
Unique considerations	CPB
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision, then 1 g q 4 h
Surgical time	3.5–4.5 h
Closing considerations	Prevention of coagulopathy; maintenance of preload
EBL	500–600 mL
Postop care	ICU: 1–3 d, intubated 6–24 h.
Mortality	2–4%
Morbidity	Cognitive decline in patients > 60 yr: 26% MI: 3–6% Pneumonia: 5% CVA/stroke: 2–4% ↓ renal function
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	60–80 yr (mean = 74 yr)
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Coronary atherosclerosis
Associated conditions	LV failure; pulmonary HTN; ischemic mitral regurgitation; diabetes mellitus; obstructive pulmonary disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: CABG; LV aneurysmectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

H&P and tests will divide these patients broadly into two groups: (a) high-risk, characterized by poor LV function (cardiac failure; EF < 40%; LVEDP > 18 mm Hg; CI < 2.0 L/min/m^2; ventricular dyskinesia; three-vessel disease; occlusion of left main or left main equivalent; valvular disease; recent MI; ventricular aneurysm; VSD; MI in progress; and old age); and (b) low-risk, characterized by good LV function. The type of monitoring chosen will depend on the patient's group.

Respiratory	Hx of smoking or COPD—patient should be encouraged to stop smoking at least 2 wk before surgery. Treat COPD and optimize therapy before surgery. **Tests:** CXR; PFTs; as indicated by H&P
Cardiovascular	In the preop assessment, the following factors will affect patient management and surgical outcome: • Hx of angina (stable, unstable at rest, and precipitating factors) • Patient's exercise tolerance will provide a clue to LV functions and surgical outcome. • The presence of CHF (Sx: SOB, PND, orthopnea, DOE, pulmonary edema, JVD, 3rd-heart sound). • Recent (< 6 mo) MI, dysrhythmias, HTN, vascular disease (particularly carotid stenosis, aortic disease). • Valvular disease (particularly MR or AS) or the presence of a VSD or LV aneurysm may portend increased risk of periop complications. **Tests:** 12-lead ECG: ✓ ischemia (area involved), LVH, previous MI, dysrhythmias. Exercise stress testing: ✓ exercise tolerance, area of ischemia, maximal HR and BP before ischemia occurs, dysrhythmias. Thallium scan: ✓ component of reversible ischemia. ECHO (may be combined with stress ECHO): ✓ LV function, wall motion abnormalities, valvular disease, VSD. Cardiac catheterization: ✓ extent and location of disease, LV function, valvular pathology, VSD, LVEDP, LV aneurysm.
Postinfarction VSD	The development of a postinfarction VSD is associated with high operative morbidity and mortality because of the difficulty in repairing the lesion due to friable tissue, difficulty in obtaining hemostasis, emergent nature of the condition, and possible pulmonary edema. These patients effectively have poor LV function and should be considered as high-risk patients. They often require support, including IABP, during induction, prebypass, and postbypass.
LV aneurysm	LV aneurysm is usually a late complication of infarction; however, it can occur early, when it usually is associated with cardiac rupture (and high mortality). These patients usually have poor myocardial function and should be anesthetized with full monitoring, including PA catheterization. Postbypass, the LV cavity is reduced in size and compliance. To ensure an adequate CO, maintain adequate preload, a higher than normal HR (A-V pacing if needed), and sinus rhythm, and consider the use of inotropes. LV aneurysms are often associated with dysrhythmias and may require cardiac mapping. Hemostasis is often difficult to obtain, and adequate iv access is a necessity. Treatment usually entails the use of blood and blood products.

Emergency revascularization	Emergency revascularization occurs in the setting of acute MI, often with acute LV failure or after failed PTCA, where the patient may be stable, suffering from acute ischemia and hemodynamically unstable, or even in full cardiac arrest. Factors to consider in these cases are full stomach (and the need for rapid-sequence induction [p. B-5] in the face of ischemia); the prior use of fibrinolytic agents (with increased risk of hemorrhage); need for inotropes; antianginals; IABP; and dysrhythmias. These patients have a higher morbidity and mortality. In patients who have received fibrinolytic agents, consider postbypass use of antifibrinolytic agents (e.g., aminocaproic acid).
Neurological	Previous stroke or Hx/Sx of carotid artery disease should be documented and evaluated.
Endocrine	Diabetes is common and periop control of blood glucose is important. **Tests:** Blood glucose
Renal	✓ baseline renal function, as CPB places these patients at risk for renal failure. **Tests:** Cr; BUN; electrolytes (particularly K^+)
Hematologic	Patients are often on aspirin or other antiplatelet therapy, which may lead to increased intraop hemorrhage. These agents should be stopped 7–10 d before surgery, if possible. Some patients may be on anticoagulants (usually heparin in the immediate preop period). Heparin should be stopped 6–8 h preop; however, in some patients, heparin infusion is continued into the OR. Other patients may have received thrombolytic agents that put them at increased risk for intraop hemorrhage. **Tests:** Consider Plt count, PTT, if indicated.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P. T&C 2–4 U PRBCs.
Premedication	Patients should be instructed to continue all medications (e.g., nitrates, β-blockers; Ca^{++} antagonists, antidysrhythmics, and antihypertensives) before surgery, with the exception of diuretics on the day of surgery. Allaying anxiety may decrease the incidence of periop ischemia and help with the preinduction placement of lines. If necessary, preop sedation may include diazepam (10 mg po) or lorazepam (1–2 mg po) the night before and again 1–2 h before arrival in the OR with the addition of morphine (0.1 mg/kg im) and scopolamine (0.3 mg im). Most often midazolam (1–5 mg iv) immediately prior to OR is used. Severely compromised patients will require less premedication.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An arterial line should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetic, before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical in the care of these patients, especially during induction. Although it is helpful to have a CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and drug infusion, it is not essential. This line usually is inserted after the patient is intubated. If infused drugs are necessary before the CVP catheter is in place, they can be administered through a separate peripheral iv.

Induction	Generally, a moderate- to high-dose narcotic technique (e.g., fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg or sufentanil 2.5–20 mcg/kg), supplemented by etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) or midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg), is appropriate. As with all cardiac cases, the speed of induction and total drug dose depend on the patient's cardiac function and pathology. Muscle relaxation may be obtained using pancuronium (0.1 mg/kg), given slowly to avoid tachycardia, or vecuronium (possibility of bradycardia, especially if the patient is β-blocked). It is important to avoid the sympathetic response to laryngoscopy. The use of high-dose narcotics (see above), esmolol (100–500 mcg/kg over 1 min, followed by 40–100 mcg/kg/min infusion), SNP (0.5–3 mcg/kg/min), lidocaine (1–2 mg/kg), or a combination of these agents, may decrease or ablate this response. NTG (0.5–2 mcg/kg/min) also may be used during induction if evidence of ischemia occurs.
Maintenance	Usually narcotic (total: fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg or sufentanil 5–20 mcg/kg) with midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg) for amnesia. Patients with good LV function may benefit from the decreased myocardial O_2 demand associated with the use of volatile agents (2° ↓ contractility). N_2O is generally avoided. Propofol infusion may be used while rewarming and postbypass.

Emergence	Transported to ICU, sedated, intubated, and ventilated. Extubate when able—often < 6 h if lower-dose narcotic technique used (fast-track).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids. Humidify gases.	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Standard monitors and an A-line are placed before induction.
	Arterial line	✓ BP in both arms. Right radial preferred if left IMA graft, because retraction of the sternum may compress the left subclavian.
	CVP or PA catheter	CVP (and/or PA line, if indicated), usually is placed after intubation. In the low-risk/good LV function group, CVP is adequate; in high-risk/poor LV function, a PA catheter is useful for hemodynamic monitoring, weaning from bypass, and vasoactive therapy. Some groups use routine PA catheterization for all patients undergoing CABG surgery.
	ECG	Five-lead monitoring using leads II and V_5 (or area most at risk for ischemia).
	TEE	Will reflect regional wall motion abnormalities, papillary muscle dysfunction, and MR.
Myocardial O_2 balance	Supply—Coronary blood flow: Perfusion pressure (DBP-LVEDP) Diastolic filling time (HR) blood viscosity (optimal Hct = 30) Coronary vasoconstriction: Spasm $PaCO_2$ (hypocapnia →constriction) α-sympathetic activity Supply—O_2 delivery: O_2 sat Hct Oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve Demand—O_2 consumption: BP (afterload) Ventricular volume (preload) Wall thickness (↓ subendocardial perfusion) HR Contractility	The balance of myocardial O_2 supply vs demand is important in the management of these patients. The goal of anesthesia is to ensure that this balance remains in equilibrium and that no ischemia occurs, or, if it does, that it is treated promptly. Those patients with poor LV function or complicated disease will benefit from maintenance of contractility (avoid volatile agents) and a high FiO_2, whereas those with good LV function may benefit from mild cardiac depression (↓ demand associated with the addition of low-dose volatile agents). Certain events are associated with **increased risk of intraop ischemia:** intubation, incision, sternotomy, cannulation, tachycardia, ↑ BP or ↓ BP, ventricular fibrillation or distension, inadequate cardioplegia, emboli, spasm, or inadequate revascularization. Care should be taken to avoid these complications and to ablate responses to stimuli.
Detection of ischemia	ECG	ST segment depression or elevation or a new T-wave alteration may suggest ischemia. Monitoring two leads—one lateral (e.g., V_5) and one inferior (e.g., II)—gives the best detection rate.
	PA catheter	Elevations of PCWP may be indicative of ischemia. A new V-wave on the PCWP trace is a better sign of possible ischemia (papillary muscle dysfunction).
	TEE	The appearance of a new regional wall motion abnormality is the most sensitive indicator of ischemia, but it requires constant monitoring.

Treatment of ischemia	Caused by tachycardia: Esmolol (100–500 mcg/kg) ↑ anesthesia Verapamil (2.5–10 mg iv) Caused by ↑ BP: NTG (0.5–4 mcg/kg/min) ↑ anesthesia Caused by ↓ BP: Phenylephrine (0.2–0.75 mcg/kg/min) ↑ preload Caused by ↓↓ HR: A-V pacing	Although avoidance of ischemia is the goal, when it does occur it should be treated aggressively. Treatment may include inotropic support (e.g., dopamine 1–5 mcg/kg/min, epinephrine 25–150 ng/kg/min or milrinone 0.375–0.75 mcg/kg/min). If LV failure persists despite other therapy, an IABP or VAD may be inserted.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Infarction Ischemia Tamponade Dysrhythmias Cardiac failure Coagulopathy Hemorrhage	Postop control of ischemia is important because hemodynamic instability may be associated with inadequate pain relief, awakening, and ventilation.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids	Supplement with benzodiazepine for sedation.
Tests	ECG CPK CXR Electrolytes ABG Coag profiles	

Suggested Readings

1. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Anesthesia for myocardial revascularization. In: *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell Science, Boston: 2008, Chapter 4.
2. Green MS, Okum GS, Harrow JC: Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds: *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013, 293–318.
3. Moller JT, Cluitmans P, Rasmussen LS, et al: Long-term postoperative cognitive dysfunction in the elderly ISPOCD1 study. International Study of Post-Operative Cognitive Dysfunction. *Lancet* 1998; 351(9119):1888–9.
4. Munsch C: What cardiology trainees should know about coronary artery surgery—and coronary artery surgeons: ischaemic heart disease? *Heart* 2008; 94(2):230–6.
5. Myles PS, McIlroy D: Fast-track cardiac anesthesia: choice of anesthetic agents and techniques. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2005; 9(1):5–16.
6. Okum G, Horrow JC: Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds: *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, 289–315.
7. Roach GW, Kanchuger M, Mangano CM, et al: Adverse cerebral outcomes after coronary bypass surgery. Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group and Ischemia Research and Education Foundation Investigators. *N Engl J Med* 1996; 335(25):1857–63.
8. Rogers WJ, Coggin CJ, Green B, et al: 10-year followup of quality of life in patients randomized to receive medical treatment or coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Circulation* 1990; 82(5):1647–58.

LEFT VENTRICULAR ANEURYSMECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Extensive MI may → large areas of myocardial necrosis, with subsequent aneurysm formation. LV failure may ensue as a result of continuous LV dilatation or mitral insufficiency 2° annular dilatation or involvement of papillary muscles. Indications for this surgery include worsening CHF and increased dysrhythmias.

Typically, apical dilatation with maintenance of basilar myocardial contractility allows for aneurysm resection and preservation of both myocardial contractility and chamber size to produce an adequate CO. Operation is commenced in the usual manner—by establishing CPB (see p. 348), cross-clamping the aorta, establishing myocardial protection, and then assessing the left ventricle. A thinned, dilated ventricular segment with full-thickness scar formation can be resected and ventricular continuity restored with improvement of ventricular geometry and myocardial energy demands. Coronary bypass can be performed during this same period. Then air is removed from the left side of the heart, the cross-clamp is removed, and coronary perfusion is reestablished. After a sufficient period of resuscitation and return of vigorous contractility, bypass is D/C'd, not infrequently with the assistance of intraaortic balloon pump (IABP) to augment forward output. Decannulation, protamine administration, and closure proceed as described in CPB, p. 348.

Usual preop diagnosis: LV aneurysm with CHF

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Median sternotomy, ± leg incision for saphenous vein harvest if coronary bypass is planned.
Unique considerations	Preparations (ECG leads) should be made for pre- or postop IABP or LV assist device (LVAD)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision, then 1 g q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 40–100 min CPB: 70–130 min Total: 3–4 h
EBL	300–400 mL
Postop care	ICU × 1–3 d, intubated 6–24 h; usually requires inotropic support ± mechanical support (LVAD, IABP).
Mortality	5–7%
Morbidity	Overall: 8–10% Requirement for IABP: 10% Respiratory insufficiency: 5% CVA: 2–3%
Pain score	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	50–70 yr
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Usually the end result of MI 2° CAD
Associated conditions	Mitral insufficiency; pulmonary HTN; CAD

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery, p. 356.

Suggested Readings

1. Mills NL, Everson CT, Hockmuth DR: Technical advances in the treatment of left ventricular aneurysm. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1993; 55:792–800.
2. Ohara K: Current surgical strategy for post-infarction left ventricular aneurysm—from linear aneurysmectomy to Dor's operation. *Ann Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2000; 6(5):289–94.
3. Sun B, Gravlee GP: Surgical ventricular restoration and remodeling. In: Hensley FA, ed. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, Chapter 17.

AORTIC VALVE REPLACEMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Disease of the aortic valve may present as valvular stenosis, insufficiency, or a combination of the two. Valvular disease most commonly occurs as a result of rheumatic disease, but also may occur 2° calcific degeneration (aortic sclerosis) in the elderly. Congenitally bicuspid valves and endocarditis account for most of the remainder. Repair of the aortic valve is rarely possible, and most conditions require valve replacement. The three most commonly used **prostheses** are: porcine bioprostheses, especially in the older patient; mechanical prostheses with the necessity for lifelong anticoagulation; and cryopreserved homografts, which, unfortunately, are expensive and in short supply. The operation, on full CPB, usually is performed through a median sternotomy. After routine bicaval and aortic cannulation, the patient is taken onto full CPB. Left heart drainage is through a pulmonary artery vent, and a left atrial vent usually is inserted through the right superior pulmonary vein. Because of the LV hypertrophy, myocardial protection is of utmost importance. Most centers favor hyperkalemic, hypothermic cardioplegic arrest, augmented by topical cooling, using either a continuous infusion of cold saline into the pericardial well or a cooling jacket. Cardioplegic administration can be achieved either antegrade into the coronary ostia or retrograde via the coronary sinus. Myocardial temperature is monitored continuously.

After the heart is arrested, the aorta is opened to expose the aortic valve. Continuous insufflation of the operative field with CO_2 reduces the amount of dislodged or trapped air. The rheumatic, stenotic valve, including aortic annulus, is frequently heavily calcified, and all Ca^{++} must be debrided to allow the prosthetic valve to be securely seated. This is frequently a tedious and time-consuming procedure, but one that then allows the remainder of the procedure to proceed in a timely fashion. After excision of the valve leaflets and debridement of the annulus, ensuring that no particulate debris embolizes into the ventricle or coronary arteries, the annulus is measured to ensure a proper match between prosthetic valve and annulus, and an appropriate valve prosthesis is selected. Interrupted sutures are placed through the annulus for its entire circumference and then passed through the sewing ring of the prosthesis. The prosthesis is lowered into the annulus and securely tied in place. Proper sizing and positioning are mandatory to prevent perivalve leaks or impingement on the coronary ostia. Systemic rewarming is initiated during the final stages of the valve implantation, and the LV is allowed to fill during aortic closure. With the patient in the head-down position, all remaining air is vented from the left heart and aorta, and the cross-clamp is removed to allow myocardial perfusion. The heart is allowed to recover from this period of ischemia, and after sufficient resuscitation, with continuous venting of air from the aorta, the patient is weaned from CPB. Vasodilators are almost always utilized, as there appears to be excessive vasospasm present in both the coronary and pulmonary circulations after hypothermia. Decannulation and heparin reversal with protamine are then accomplished in the routine manner.

Usual preop diagnosis: Severe AS with syncope, chest pain or CHF; aortic insufficiency with CHF

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Valve Replacement with Prosthesis	Homograft Valve Replacement
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Median sternotomy	⇐
Special instrumentation	TEE; hemodynamic monitoring; CPB	TEE or surface ECHO

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Valve Replacement with Prosthesis	Homograft Valve Replacement
Unique considerations	ECHO assessment of valve function and regional wall motion intraop	ECHO assessment of annular size and intraop evaluation of valve function after implantation
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision and 1 g q 4 h	⇐
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 45 min CPB: 90 min Total: 3 h	60 min 105 min ⇐
EBL	300–400 mL	⇐
Postop care	ICU: 1–3 d, intubated 6–24 h; hypertrophied, noncompliant LV requiring high preload.	⇐
Mortality	5–8%	⇐
Morbidity	Pneumonia: 5–10% Neurological sequela: Transient: 3–7% CVA: 1–2% Permanent: 1–2% Infection: 1%	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–10	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Bicuspid valves – 50–60 yr; rheumatic – 55–80 yr (mean = 58 ± 13 yr)
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	70–100 cases/yr in tertiary care center
Etiology	Postrheumatic (majority of patients); aortic sclerosis; progressive stenosis of a bicuspid aortic valve; endocarditis
Associated conditions	Poststenotic dilatation of the ascending aorta (may require separate surgical attention); rheumatic mitral valvular involvement; CAD; CHF

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Respiratory compromise may occur 2° pulmonary congestion (LV failure) and pleural effusion. An effusion, if significant, should be drained prior to surgery, as it may impair oxygenation and, with IPPV, may impair venous return →↓ CO + ↓ myocardial perfusion. **Tests:** CXR
Cardiovascular	**Aortic stenosis (AS):** Sx are those of angina pectoris (if at rest may indicate concurrent CAD), syncope, and CHF (indicates severe disease with 2-yr life expectancy). The ejection murmur of AS is best heard at the 2nd right interspace. ECG shows LVH. Important points in the preop investigations include: • Aortic orifice size: moderate AS = 0.7–0.9 cm^2; critical AS = < 0.5 cm^2 (normal = 2.6–3.5 cm^2) • Aortic valvular gradient: severe = > 70 mm Hg • Ejection fraction (EF): ↓ EF indicates evidence of LV failure (normal = > 0.6). • Coronary angiography: associated CAD often demonstrated. AS → ↑ LV work (↑ pressure load) → LV concentric hypertrophy → ↑ LV diastolic function + ↑ risk for ischemia (MVO_2 + O_2 supply). • Reliance on atrial "kick:" important to maintain NSR. • Sensitivity to changes in SVR: ↓ SVR → ↓↓ BP → ↓ myocardial perfusion + ↓ CO → ↓↓↓ BP. • Sensitivity to volume changes: hypovolemia → ↓ preload → ↓ ↓ CO.

Cardiovascular (cont'd)	• Sensitivity to rate changes: tachycardia → ↓ ejection time → ↓ myocardial perfusion. • LV wall tension + ↑ duration of systole → ↑ MVO_2. • ↑ LVEDP + ↑ wall thickness and tension + ↓ diastolic aortic pressure → ↓ O_2 supply. **Aortic regurgitation (AR):** Sx include DOE, orthopnea, PND, palpitations, and (less frequently) angina. Exercise tolerance may remain reasonably good, even with severe chronic AR. Acute AR is very poorly tolerated. The pandiastolic murmur of AR is loudest over the sternum and left lower sternal border. AR → chronic LV volume overload → LV eccentric hypertrophy → massive cardiomegaly → LV failure (CHF) → ↑ LVEDP → ↑ PA pressure and pulmonary congestion. • Possibility of ischemia: ↑ MVO_2 and ↓ supply (↓ diastolic pressure, ↑ HR). • Sensitivity to rate changes: ↓ HR → ↑ AR + ↓ CO. • Sensitivity to changes in SVR: ↑ SVR → ↑ regurgitation + ↓ CO. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ hypertrophy, LV strain, ischemia, rhythm. ECHO: ✓ LV function, valve area, regurgitant fraction. Angiography: ✓ LV function, right heart pressure, CAD, valve area, regurgitant fraction.
Hepatic	CHF may result in passive liver congestion with ↓ liver function and possible coagulopathy. **Tests:** LFTs; PT; PTT
Neurological	Syncopal episodes may have resulted in neurologic deficits. These should be well documented.
Renal	Prerenal failure often is associated with AR 2° ↓ CO. **Tests:** BUN; Cr, creatinine clearance, if indicated; electrolytes
Hematologic	**Tests:** Hb/Hct; clotting profile to investigate abnormalities. T&C for 8 U PRBCs.
Laboratory	✓ digitalis level and electrolytes; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Beware of oversedation in patients with AS where ↓ BP could be detrimental. Light premedication with an anxiolytic is usually sufficient. Digitalis and diuretics should be continued.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An arterial line should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetic, before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical in the care of these patients, especially during induction. Although it is helpful to have a CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and drug infusion, it is not essential. This line usually is inserted after the patient is intubated. If infused drugs are necessary before the CVP catheter is in place, they can be administered through a separate peripheral iv.

Induction	**AS:** Typically, O_2 with moderate- to high-dose narcotic (e.g., fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg). Avoid sufentanil in AS because of ↓ BP. Etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg), midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg) may be used to supplement the above. Paralysis with vecuronium or pancuronium (0.1 mg/kg, depending on desired HR). Induction is a critical period. CPB and surgeons should be available and ready to proceed. Danger is hypotension with a cycle of ischemia, further hypotension and more ischemia. Hypotension should be treated aggressively with fluid and α-adrenergic agonists (phenylephrine 50–100 mcg iv bolus, infusion 0.1–0.75 mcg/kg/min). Critical AS patients may benefit from the use of phenylephrine as an infusion during induction and prebypass. The avoidance of hypotension is even more critical in the presence of CAD. Drugs causing tachycardia should be avoided. Atrial fibrillation (AF) or SVT should be treated with cardioversion. β-blockers and other negative inotropes are generally contraindicated. Ventricular irritability should be treated early as ventricular fibrillation may be refractory to defibrillation. Beware of vasodilators, including NTG. **AR:** Again, O_2 with moderate- to high-dose narcotic (e.g., fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg or sufentanil 2.5–10 mcg/kg). Etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) or benzodiazepines (e.g., midazolam 50–350 mcg/kg) may be used to supplement the opiates. Muscle relaxation with pancuronium (0.1 mg/kg). These patients benefit from fluid augmentation, high normal HR (90 bpm) with afterload reduction (e.g., SNP 0.25–2 mcg/kg/min) to improve forward flow.

Maintenance

Narcotic (e.g., total fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg). Low–dose volatile agent/air/O_2. Relaxant. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cardiopulmonary Bypass, p. 350.) The following table summarizes the goals of intraop management:

Parameter	AS	R
LV preload	↑	Normal-to-↑
HR	Normal-to-slow ↓	Modest ↑
Rhythm	NSR	NSR
Contractility	Maintain	Maintain
SVR	Modest ↑	↓
PVR	Maintain	Maintain

Postbypass

AS: Postbypass, patients may be hyperdynamic and require vasodilators for HTN, although inotropes also may be needed. Because of the hypertrophied, noncompliant ventricle, filling pressure may be higher than normally required.

AR: In the immediate postbypass period, patients with AR may require inotropic support (e.g., dopamine 3–10 mcg/kg/min, dobutamine 5–10 mcg/kg/min; epinephrine 25–100 ng/kg/min) is often needed. Maintain LV filling. Other supportive measures (e.g., IABP) may be necessary.

Emergence

Transport to ICU sedated, intubated (6–24 h), and ventilated. Early extubation may be possible if a lower-dose narcotic technique is used (fast-track).

Blood and fluid requirements

IV: 14 ga × 1–2
NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h
UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h
Warm all fluids.
Humidify gases.
T&C 2–4 U blood

Monitoring

Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Standard monitors and arterial line should be placed before induction.
Arterial line	
CVP line	CVP (and/or PA line, if indicated), usually is placed after intubation. CVP may underestimate left-side pressures. In acute AR, PCWP may underestimate true LVEDP.
PA catheter	
ECG	V_5 lead should be monitored for ischemia.
TEE	TEE may be useful to estimate LV filling and regional wall motion abnormalities.
Urinary catheter	

Positioning

✓ and pad pressure points
✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications

Hemorrhage
Tamponade
Cardiac failure
Dysrhythmias
Ischemia

Inotropic and vasodilator therapy usually is continued into the postop period and then weaned.

Pain management

Parenteral opioids for pain relief
Benzodiazepine for sedation

Tests

ECG
CXR
Electrolytes
Coag profile
HCT

Suggested Readings

1. Cook DJ, Housmans PR, Rehfeldt KH: Valvular heart disease: replacement and repair. In: Kaplan JA, ed. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2006, Chapter 20.
2. Fann JI, Miller DC, Moore KA, et al: Twenty-year clinical experience with porcine bioprostheses. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1996; 62:1301–12.
3. Murtuza B, Pepper JR, Stanbridge RD, et al: Minimal access aortic valve replacement: is it worth it? *Ann Thorac Surg* 2008; 85(3):1121–31.
4. Tjang YS, van Hees Y, Körfer R, et al: Predictors of mortality after aortic valve replacement. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2007; 32(3):469–74.
5. Townsley MM, Martin DE: Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013, 319–58.

MITRAL VALVE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Mitral valve repair or replacement** is utilized typically for the correction of postrheumatic mitral valvular stenosis or insufficiency, as well as mitral valve prolapse, degenerative mitral insufficiency, or repair after endocarditis. For mitral regurgitation (MR) 2° posterior leaflet abnormalities (myxomatous degeneration, torn chordae) or pure annular dilatation, most valves can be repaired. For severe rheumatic calcific mitral stenosis (MS), mitral valve replacement with preservation of subannular structures may be necessary.

The technique of mitral valve repair or replacement is similar regardless of the mitral valve pathology. After aortic and bicaval venous cannulation, CPB (see p. 348) is established, and the left heart is vented through the PA. After cross-clamping of the aorta, diastolic arrest is accomplished with cardioplegia administered via the aortic root, augmented with topical cooling with either continuous pericardial saline infusion or a cooling jacket. Exposure is accomplished via a vertical incision in the left atrium just posterior to atrial septum. If the left atrium is not large enough, access may be gained via an incision in the right atrium and then incising the atrial septum, with caval snares in place to prevent air entry into the venous cannulae.

After suitable exposure, the atrium, atrial appendage, and mitral valve are carefully inspected, and a decision is made to repair or replace the valve. Repair of regurgitant valves caused primarily by posterior leaflet problems is usually possible. Similarly, annular dilatation 2° LV enlargement is also usually possible by means of a ring annuloplasty. Regurgitation 2° anterior leaflet abnormalities are more problematic, requiring significant expertise, and may be less durable. Preop and postop evaluations are greatly facilitated by use of TEE. Valve replacement can be performed after excising the valve leaflets; or, the leaflets may be preserved in an attempt to maintain the benefits of the subvalvar apparatus to global ventricular performance. After appropriate excision and debridement, the annulus is rimmed with interrupted sutures passed through the sewing ring of the valve prosthesis. The prosthesis is carefully positioned, and the sutures are tied. After filling both the LV and atrium with blood, the atrium is closed, air is evacuated from the left heart, and the cross-clamp is removed to allow coronary perfusion. After a satisfactory period of resuscitation, and after all air has been evacuated from the circulation, CPB may be D/C'd, usually with the assistance of vasodilator agents. TEE may be utilized at this stage to assess adequacy of mitral valve repair.

Variant procedure or approaches: Mitral valve repair may also be accomplished via a right anterior thoracotomy approach, with the patient positioned right side up in lateral decubitus position. Peripheral (femoral artery-femoral vein) or central (femoral vein-aorta) bypass is used, and operation may be performed during ventricular fibrillation or with aortic clamping and cardioplegia. Single lung anesthesia is necessary, either with a double lumen endotracheal tube or with a right-sided bronchial blocker. Cannulation of the coronary sinus may be requested, and the operative field will be flooded with CO_2. TEE is extensively used for preop diagnosis and postop monitoring of the surgical result. **Mitral commissurotomy** may be done as an endovascular procedure (e.g., during pregnancy).

Usual preop diagnosis: Class 3 or 4 CHF 2° mitral insufficiency or mitral stenosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Mitral Valve Replacement/Repair	Closed Commissurotomy
Position	Supine	Right lateral decubitus
Incision	Median sternotomy	Left lateral thoracotomy
Special instrumentation	TEE and epicardial ECHO to assess valve function and regional wall motion; CPB.	Performed without CPB.
Unique considerations	Special loading conditions may be used to estimate the amount of MR, which is frequently afterload-dependent.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision, then 1 g q 4 h	⇐
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 45–150 min CPB: 90–200 min	Total: 2 h Total: 3–4 h
EBL	300–400 mL	200–400 mL
Postop care	ICU × 1–3 d, intubated 6–24 h; vasodilator therapy for reversal of pulmonary HTN and afterload reduction.	⇐
Mortality	5–8%	< 5%
Morbidity	Pneumonia: 10–15% CNS complications: Transient neurologic dysfunction: 5–10% CVA: 1–2% Infection: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–10	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–75 yr	20–40 yr
Male:Female	1:1	Almost exclusively pregnant females
Etiology	Post-rheumatic: majority of cases; increased aging; myxomatous degeneration; ischemic etiologies (increasing)	⇐
Associated conditions	Aortic valvular involvement with rheumatic disease, CAD, pulmonary HTN, and tricuspid regurgitation	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Pulmonary congestion, edema, pleural effusions may be present, with an overall restrictive lung pattern. Pleural effusions should be drained before surgery if significant (↓ oxygenation, ↓ venous return with IPPV). ↑ LA volume may compress the left recurrent laryngeal nerve → left vocal cord paralysis (Ortner's syndrome). **Tests:** CXR; PFTs, if indicated

Cardiovascular	**Mitral Stenosis (MS):** Sx include exertional dyspnea and fatigue, progressing to pulmonary edema, atrial fibrillation (AF), and hemoptysis. Embolic events occur in 15% of patients. The opening snap and diastolic murmur of MS are best heard between apex and left sternal border. The ECG may show AF or wide-notched P-waves. It is important to grade the severity of MS by symptomatology and valve area: mild = 1.5–2 cm^2; moderate = 1–1.5 cm^2; and severe = < 1.0 cm^2 (nl = 4–6 cm^2). AF is often the factor precipitating deterioration in these patients. Because of the decreased LV filling, these patients are sensitive to: • Loss of atrial "kick:" maintain NSR. • Volume changes: keep full. • Rate changes: avoid ↑ HR → ↓diastolic filling time → ↓ CO. Pathophysiology: • MS → ↓ LVH filling → ↓ CO. • MS → ↑ LA pressure →pulmonary edema + ↑ PA pressure → ↑ PVR → RV failure + TR + left shift of iv septum → ↓ CO → ↑ LA pressure → ↑ LA volume → AF and thrombi. **Mitral Regurgitation (MR):** May be acute (MI/endocarditis) or chronic (often associated with MS). Chronic Sx include: palpitations, DOE, PND, fatigue, and orthopnea. Acute MR may → sudden ↓↓ CO and pulmonary edema. MR can be classified as mild (< 30% RF), moderate (30–60% RF), or severe (> 60% RF). The pansystolic murmur is loudest at the apex. The ECG may show LA and LV overload. MR patients are sensitive to: • Changes in SVR: ↑ SVR → ↑ RF → ↓ CO + ↓ BP. ↓ SVR → ↓ RF → ↑ CO + ↑ BP. • Change in HR: • ↓ HR →acute LA volume overload. Mild ↑ HR→ ↑ CO Pathophysiology: • Acute MR → ↑↑ LA pressure → ↓ CO + ↓ BP → ↑ HR → ↑ contractility → ↑ O_2 demand. → ↑ LV diastolic volume → ↑ LVEDP →↑ O_2 demand. → Pulmonary edema. • Chronic MR → ↑ LA volume + AF → pulmonary edema → RV failure. → LV volume overload → LVH → ↓ CO + LV failure. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ LVH, left and right atrial enlargement, rhythm. ECHO: ✓ RF, valve pressure gradients, LV function, valve pressure gradient and area.
Neurological	The large left atrium and AF may result in thrombus formation, with the possibility of embolism. Neurological deficits should be documented.
Gastrointestinal	Hepatic congestion may → decreased function, which may be reflected in coagulation problems. **Tests:** Consider LFTs; PT; PTT.
Renal	↓ CO may lead to renal failure. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes
Hematologic	Because of the potential for thromboembolism, these patients may be on anticoagulants, which may be given up to the day before surgery. In the case of Coumadin, anticoagulant effects can be reversed by the use of FFP and vitamin K. **Tests:** Consider PT; PTT.
Laboratory	T&C for 2–4 U PRBCs. Hb/Hct; coagulation profile; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Premedication with an anxiolytic (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po, midazolam 0.05–0.2 mg/kg im) or an analgesic (e.g., morphine 0.1–0.2 mg/kg); or a combination of these agents may be used, depending on patient status.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An arterial line should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetic, before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical in the care of these patients, especially during

induction. Although it is helpful to have a CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and drug infusion, it is not essential. This line usually is inserted after the patient is intubated. If infused drugs are necessary before the CVP catheter is in place, they can be administered through a separate peripheral iv.

Induction

Typically, moderate- to high-dose narcotic (fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg or sufentanil 2.5–20 mcg/kg), supplemental midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg) or etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg). Use pancuronium (MR) or vecuronium (MS) (0.1 mg/kg), depending on the desired HR to facilitate intubation.

MS: ↓ BP should be treated with fluid, but beware of precipitating pulmonary edema. Occasionally, phenylephrine may be needed to maintain SVR. Tachycardia should be avoided; if it occurs, it should be treated (↑ anesthesia, esmolol if ventricular function is preserved). Sinus rhythm should be maintained. New onset atrial flutter/AF should be treated with defibrillation. Avoid factors that may increase PVR (N_2O, acidosis, hypoxia, hypercarbia).

MR: Maintain or augment preload, depending on response to fluid load. Inotropic agents may be useful to maintain contractility. Afterload reduction will improve forward flow. Generally SNP (0.5–4 mcg/kg/min) is used, but NTG (0.5–4 mcg/kg/min) may be more appropriate in patients with ischemia-induced regurgitation. Avoid ↑ PVR caused by N_2O, acidosis, hypoxia, or hypercarbia. IABP may be useful periop in patients with acute MR 2° MI (↓ afterload, ↑ coronary perfusion pressure).

Maintenance

Narcotic (total = fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg, or sufentanil 5–20 mcg/kg) with benzodiazepine (e.g., midazolam 50–350 mcg/kg) for amnesia; low-dose isoflurane; O_2/air.

The following table summarizes the goals of intraop management:

Parameter	MS	MR
LV preload	Normal-to-↑	Normal-to-↑
HR	↓	↑
Rhythm	NSR	NSR
Contractility	Maintain	Maintain
SVR	Normal	↓
PVR	Avoid ↑	Avoid ↑

Postbypass

Although patients with MS generally do well after valve replacement, inotropes (e.g., dopamine, dobutamine) occasionally are necessary. This is especially true late in the disease when cardiomyopathy may be present.

Emergence

Transport to ICU, intubated and ventilated 6–24 h. Early extubation is possible if lower-dose narcotic technique is used (fast-track).

Blood and fluid requirements

IV: 14 ga × 1–2
NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h
Maintain UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h.
Warm all fluids.
Humidify gases.

Monitoring

Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line CVP line PA catheter Urinary catheter	Standard monitors and an A-line are placed before induction. CVP (and/or PA line, if indicated), usually is placed after intubation. Care should be exercised with PA catheter insertion because the dilated PA may be susceptible to rupture with the catheter. In MS, PCWP may overestimate the LV filling pressure due to stenosis.
TEE	TEE may help in volume management, regional wall motion abnormalities (postacute MI), and assessing the success of mitral valve repair. Occasionally, the use of a valve ring during repair may cause systolic anterior motion of the valve leaflet with resultant regurgitation, which may be seen on TEE.

Positioning

✓ and pad pressure points
✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage Tamponade Cardiac failure Dysrhythmias Conduction defects Atrioventricular disruption	Inotropic support or vasodilator therapy may be needed. IABP for mitral incompetence, especially in the presence of acute MR 2° infarction.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids for pain relief Benzodiazepine for sedation	
Tests	ECG CXR ABG Coag profile Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. Calvinho P, Antunes M: Current surgical management of mitral regurgitation. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther* 2008; 6(4):481–90.
2. Cook DJ, Housmans PR, Rehfeldt KH: Valvular heart disease: replacement and repair. In: Kaplan JA, ed. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2006, Chapter 20.
3. Dunning J, Versteegh M, Fabbri A, et al: Guideline on antiplatelet and anticoagulation management in cardiac surgery. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2008; 34(1):73–92.
4. Fann JI, Miller DC, Moore KA, et al: Twenty-year clinical experience with porcine bioprostheses. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1996; 62:1301–2.
5. Greco E, Zaballos JM, Alvarez L, et al: Video-assisted mitral surgery through a micro-access: a safe and reliable reality in the current era. *J Heart Valve Dis* 2008; 17(1):48–53.
6. Townsley MM, Martin DE: Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2013, 319–58.

TRICUSPID VALVE REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Insufficiency of the tricuspid valve is almost always 2° left-sided valvular disease, with tricuspid annular dilatation and resultant valvular insufficiency usually 2° pulmonary HTN. Some congenital conditions (e.g., Ebstein's deformity) may persist into early adulthood, when replacement is usually necessary. Tricuspid repair is normally possible in the absence of primary involvement of tricuspid leaflets. The procedure is usually accomplished on CPB (see p. 348), either with the heart fibrillating or during a brief period of aortic cross-clamping and diastolic arrest. After instituting CPB and snaring the venous cannulae to prevent air entry into the pump circuit, the tricuspid valve is exposed through an incision in the right atrium. In the absence of leaflet involvement by the rheumatic process, repair usually can be accomplished by a simple **annuloplasty.** After atrial closure, evacuation of air, and myocardial resuscitation, the patient is weaned from CPB with vasodilator agents. Temporary pacing wires usually are inserted and passed to the anesthesiologist in case inadvertent injury to the AV node or His bundle causes complete heart block.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Tricuspid valve replacement**

Usual preop diagnosis: Tricuspid regurgitation, 2° annular dilatation 2° pulmonary HTN and left-side failure

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Median sternotomy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Intraop ECHO; hemodynamic monitoring; CPB
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision, then 1 g q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–40 min CPB: 70–80 min Total: 3–4 h
EBL	400–800 mL (Long-standing tricuspid regurgitation may → impaired hepatic production of coagulation factors.)
Postop care	ICU × 1–3 d, intubated 6–24 h; vasodilator therapy for pulmonary HTN
Mortality	2–3%
Morbidity	3rd-degree heart block: 10% RV failure: 2–3%
Pain score	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	50–75 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Rheumatic; congenital (Ebstein's anomaly)
Associated conditions	Rheumatic involvement of left-side valves with pulmonary HTN

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Cardiovascular	**Tricuspid regurgitation (TR)** usually is well tolerated, and Sx (↓ CO) may go unnoticed, masked by Sx associated with left-side valvular disease and pulmonary HTN. Occasionally, TR is 2° endocarditis and raises the suspicion of iv drug abuse. TR may be caused by pulmonary HTN → ↑ RV afterload → RV dilation, ↑ RV wall tension → dilation of tricuspid valve annulus and TR. TR may also occur in heart transplant patients due to endomyocardial biopsies and in patients with PM and ICDs, particularly after lead removal. Pathophysiology: • TR → ↓ CO 2° ↑ RV size → shift of the intraventricular septum to the left → ↓ LV size, ↓ LV compliance → LV underloading due to ↓ LV size and ↓ RV stroke volume. • TR → atrial fibrillation (AF) 2° ↑ right atrial size. In isolated insufficiency, the ↑ in right atrial pressure may result in shunting across a patent foramen ovale (PFO), leading to paradoxical embolization with potentially disastrous consequences. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ AF. ECHO: ✓ relative chamber size, contractility, PFO, valve lesions. Cardiac catheterization: ✓ contractility, CO, pulmonary pressures and their response to vasodilators, other valvular pathology.
Respiratory	Pulmonary HTN (> 25 mm Hg mean pressure), pulmonary edema, and effusions may be present. **Tests:** CXR: ✓ pulmonary edema, pleural effusion.
Renal	Chronic venous congestion may → prerenal failure. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes
Hepatic	Hepatic congestion may → impaired synthetic function, particularly coag factors. **Tests:** Consider PT; PTT.

Hematologic	**Tests:** Hb/Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P and Sx. Consider viral testing (HIV, hepatitis in isolated tricuspid endocarditis or in iv drug abusers). T&C 2–4 U PRBCs.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1) is usually appropriate.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An arterial line should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetic, before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical in the care of these patients, especially during induction. Although it is helpful to have a CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and drug infusion, it is not essential. This line usually is inserted after the patient is intubated. If infused drugs are necessary before the CVP catheter is in place, they can be administered through a separate peripheral iv.

Induction	Typically, O_2 and premedicate with midazolam (2–5 mg). Induce with moderate- to high-dose narcotic (fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg or sufentanil 2.5–20 mcg/kg) with etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) or propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg). Muscle relaxation is obtained with a nondepolarizing agent (e.g., rocuronium 1–1.5 mg/kg, vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg).	
Maintenance	The choice of narcotic/benzodiazepine/O_2 or volatile agent and O_2 will be determined by the underlying lesion and ventricular function. Avoid N_2O (pulmonary HTN). Low-dose isoflurane may be used. Benzodiazepines (e.g., midazolam 50–200 mcg/kg) may be used for amnesia. Exact choice of agents for maintenance depends on underlying lesion, ventricular function, and coexisting disease. Management goals of TR are often those of coexisting valvular problems. The general principles, however, are: (1) Adequate preload (↓ preload →↓ RV stroke volume); (2) HR: normal-to-increased; (3) Contractility: normal. May require inotropic support for ↑ PVR, anesthetic myocardial depression or IPPV; (4) PVR: normal or decreased (high PVR →↓ RV stroke volume); (5) SVR: little effect unless it affects left-side pathology.	
Emergence	To ICU intubated and ventilated × 6–24 h. Early extubation may be possible if a lower-dose narcotic technique is used (fast-track).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids. Humidify gases. T&C 2–4 U PRBC.	Because of the possibility of PFO and R→L shunt, ensure that all venous lines are clear of air.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line CVP or PA catheter Urinary catheter TEE	Standard monitors and an A-line are placed before induction. CVP (and/or PA line, if indicated), usually is placed after intubation. CVP may be a poor indicator of RV or LV filling. The PA catheter may be helpful in the management of fluid balance, CO, and management of pulmonary HTN, but may be difficult to place and will require removal while valve or annular ring is placed. Because RV distention may affect LV filling and stroke volume, TEE may be useful in judging filling and relative LV size.
Pulmonary HTN	↑ PVR can result from: ↓ PaO_2 ↑ $PaCO_2$ ↓ pH N_2O α-agonists	In TR, control of PVR is important because ↑ PVR may result in ↓ CO. Hypoxia, hypercarbia, acidosis, N_2O, or α-agonists may ↑ PVR. PVR may be reduced with hypocarbia, inotropic support with dopamine (5–10 mcg/kg/min), isoproterenol (10–50 ng/kg/min), or milrinone 0.375–0.75 mg/kg/min

Pulmonary HTN (cont'd)	Inadequate anesthesia	and by using pulmonary vasodilators—NTG (1–4 mcg/kg/min), SNP (0.5–2 mcg/kg/min), prostaglandin E_1 (0.05–0.4 mcg/kg/min), or inhaled NO (10–100 ppm).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Coagulopathy Hemorrhage RV failure	Coagulopathy 2° prolonged bypass time for multiple valve replacements. RV failure 2° ↑ PVR (previously, RV decompressed by tricuspid incompetence). Rx includes inotropes: dopamine (5–10 mcg/kg/min), isoproterenol (25–100 ng/kg/min), milrinone (infusion 0.3–0.75 mcg/kg/min), epinephrine (25–100 ng/kg/min), avoidance of factors causing ↑ PVR, and the use of pulmonary vasodilators.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage Coagulopathy Dysrhythmias RV failure Infection Renal impairment Methemoglobinemia	Inotropic support and pulmonary vasodilators will need to be continued. Avoid those factors that ↑ PVR. Measure metHb levels during NO therapy.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids	Supplement with benzodiazepine for sedation.
Tests	ECG Coag profile Renal panel: BUN, Cr ABG Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. Cook DJ, Housmans PR, Rehfeldt KH: Valvular heart disease: replacement and repair. In: Kaplan JA, ed. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2006, Chapter 20.
2. Cook DJ, Housmans PR, Rehfeldt KH: Valvular heart disease: replacement and repair. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era,* 6th edition. Saunders/Elsevier, St. Louis: 2011, Chapter 19 (Tricuspid regurgitation, p. 603–4).
3. Townsley MM, Martin DE: Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease, Sections X. Tricuspid stenosis and XI. Tricuspid regurgitation. In: Hensley FA Jr, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2012, Chapter 12 p. 349–51.

SEPTAL MYECTOMY/MYOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients with asymmetric septal hypertrophy usually present with symptoms 2° LV outflow tract obstruction (LVOTO), increased diastolic dysfunction and stiffness, or a combination of the two, manifested as syncope, CHF, or severe chest pain. The systolic hemodynamic abnormality is caused by the anterior leaflet of the mitral

valve being drawn into the LV outflow tract (LVOT) and abutting the asymmetrically hypertrophied intraventricular septum, narrowing the LVOT, and producing a large dynamic intracavitary gradient. In addition, severe mitral insufficiency may result. The most common surgical procedure for asymmetric septal hypertrophy is **septal myectomy/myotomy.** After institution of CPB, aortic cross-clamping, and cardioplegic arrest, the aorta is opened, and visualization of the subvalvar ventricular septum is attained. Bimanual palpation, as well as TEE visualization, can localize the asymmetric hypertrophy. Using the right coronary orifice as a landmark, the ventricular septum is longitudinally incised with two parallel incisions ~1 cm apart, with care being taken to avoid injury of the papillary muscle or mitral valve chordae. A trough of the hypertrophied septum is then excised, alleviating the LVOTO. Removal of a portion of the asymmetrically hypertrophied myopathic septum also usually reduces the systolic anterior motion (SAM) of the anterior mitral leaflet and reduces the intracavitary gradient and mitral regurgitation (MR). Infrequently, mitral valve replacement may be necessary for persistent MR.

Usual preop diagnosis: Asymmetric septal hypertrophy with CHF, chest pain, and/or syncope

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Median sternotomy
Special instrumentation	TEE; hemodynamic monitoring; CPB
Unique considerations	Because of LV hypertrophy, maintenance of adequate preload is essential. Afterload also must be maintained to prevent LVOTO. Temporary pacing wires usually are placed at the start of the procedure.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision, then 1 g q 4 h
Surgical time	2.5 h
EBL	150 mL
Postop care	ICU, intubated on ventilator 6–24 h
Mortality	3–4%
Morbidity	Complete heart block: 5% Persistent MR: 5% New aortic insufficiency: 2–5% CVA: < 1% VSD: < 1%
Pain score	6–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–80 yr (mean = 45 yr)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	10/yr at Stanford University Medical Center
Etiology	Asymmetric septal hypertrophy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Affected only 2° to cardiac failure.
Cardiovascular	Patients with idiopathic hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy (HOCM) often present with Sx of syncope, angina pectoris (CAD), CHF, and palpitations. The main feature of HOCM is dynamic LVOTO 2° to septal hypertrophy and a possible venturi effect that draws the anterior mitral valve leaflet into the outflow tract. LVOTO →↑ LV hypertrophy

Cardiovascular (cont'd)	→ ↓ compliance and ↓ diastolic function → ↑ LVEDP, making diastolic filling dependent on preload and atrial contraction. Obstruction is worsened by decreased preload or afterload, increased contractility or HR. HOCM also results in ↑ MVO_2 and ↓ coronary perfusion, especially to the septum and subendocardium, which increases the risk of ischemia. Hypertrophy occurs throughout the whole myocardium and may lead to further dysfunction. MR, caused by a venturi suction effect, is often present and is exacerbated by the same conditions that increase LVOTO. (Note that ↓ afterload → ↑ MR, unlike the usual [nonventuri-suction] form of MR.) Patients are often on β-blockers or Ca^{++} antagonists. These should be continued to day of surgery. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ Q-waves (indicative of septal hypertrophy); short PR interval with slurred QRS complex; supraventricular tachycardia; LV hypertrophy. ECHO: ✓ septal hypertrophy; MR; LV hypertrophy, myocardial dysfunction. Cardiac catheterization: ✓ LVOT pressure gradient, which may increase with provocation (e.g., Valsalva maneuver); obliteration of the LV cavity; MR; CAD.
Neurological	Document syncope and any neurological deficits.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct; electrolytes; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Avoid activation of the sympathetic nervous system because this will cause ↑ HR and ↓ inotropy →↓ CO + ↓ BP. Thus, adequate anxiolysis is essential and can be obtained by premedication with a benzodiazepine (e.g., midazolam 0.05–0.2 mg/kg im, lorazepam 1–2 mg po, or diazepam 5–10 mg po). Avoid ↓ SVR, and maintain β-blockade and Ca^{++} channel blocker therapy.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An arterial line should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetic, before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring is critical in the care of these patients, especially during induction. Although it is helpful to have a CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and drug infusion, it is not essential. This line usually is inserted after the patient is intubated. If infused drugs are necessary before the CVP catheter is in place, they can be administered through a separate peripheral iv.

Induction	Typically, moderate dose narcotic (fentanyl 2–5 mcg/kg; avoid sufentanil due to vasodilation). Supplement with etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg), midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg), or propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg). Ketamine should be avoided due to the activation of the sympathetic nervous system. Introduction of a volatile agent prior to intubation may be helpful. Vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1–1.5 mg/kg) for muscle relaxation.	
Maintenance	O_2 and narcotic (total fentanyl 10–100 mcg/kg) + volatile agent. Midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg) can be used for amnesia. The cornerstone of anesthesia for HOCM is to avoid factors that will increase LVOTO: (1) ↓ preload, (2) ↓ afterload, (3) ↑ contractility, (4) loss of NSR, and (5) ↑ HR.	
Emergence	To ICU intubated and ventilated × 6–24 h. Early extubation is possible if a lower-dose narcotic technique is used (fast-track).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h Maintain UO 0.5–1 mL/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line PA catheter Urinary catheter	Standard monitors and an A-line are placed before induction. CVP (and/or PA line, if indicated), usually is placed after intubation. A PA catheter is useful for assessment of LV filling (keep high normal PCWP) and for

Monitoring (cont'd)		monitoring SVR (normal-to-high). A pacing or pace port PA catheter may be useful for conduction problems occurring postop.
	TEE	TEE is useful to judge LV filling, LV contractility, LVOTO, MR, and VSD (post myectomy).
Intraoperative problems	↓ Preload	Rx: volume, phenylephrine
	↓ Afterload	Rx: phenylephrine
	↑ Contractility	Rx: esmolol
	↑ HR	Rx: esmolol
	Loss of NSR	Rx: cardioversion, verapamil
	Complete heart block	Should have reliable means of pacing available, including temporary ventricular leads.
	VSD	Septum may be damaged, → VSD (diagnosed by TEE). If present, it should be repaired.
Position	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage	Dx: from chest tube drainage. Rx with blood and factors as needed. ✓ coag status. May require reexploration.
	Complete heart block	Pacing should be available. Occasionally, inotropes of vasodilators required. β-blockers and Ca^{++} antagonists usually D/C'd.
	Late VSD	Late VSD, indicated by development of a murmur, will require repair.
	Tamponade	Dx: by raising filling pressure, equalization of CVP, and PADP, ↓ CO, ↓ UO, and by ECHO. Rx: re-exploration and drainage.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids	Supplement with benzodiazepine for sedation.
Tests	ECG: ✓ conduction problems. ABG ECHO: ✓ LVOTO; VSD. Coag profile Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. Cook DJ, Housmans PR, Rehfeldt KH: Valvular heart disease: replacement and repair. In: Kaplan JA, ed. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2006, Chapter 20.
2. Cook DJ, Housmans PR, Rehfeldt: valvular heart disease: replacement and repair. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era,* 6th Edition. Saunders/Elsevier, St. Louis: 2011, Chapter 19 (Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy, p. 584–9).
3. Maron BJ: Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: a systematic review. *JAMA* 2002; 287(10):1308–20.
4. Togni M, Billinger M, Cook S, et al: Septal myectomy: cut, coil, or boil? *Eur Heart J* 2008; 29(3):296–8.
5. Townsley MM, Martin DE: Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease, Section VI. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. In: Hensley FA Jr, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013, Chapter 12, p. 349-51.

PACEMAKER INSERTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Pacemaker insertion** may be required for relief of abnormalities of the conduction system. A transvenous pacemaker lead may be placed via the subclavian vein, through the tricuspid valve into the RV (single-chamber pacing); or two leads may be placed, one into the right atrium and the other into the RV (dual-chamber pacing). Typically, 2nd- or 3rd-degree heart block is the diagnostic indication, although sick sinus syndrome (SSS) and other abnormalities also may be found. Access to the subclavian veins usually is attained percutaneously, although a cut-down may be used to expose the cephalic vein in the deltopectoral groove. Passage of a guide wire into the RV may cause frequent premature ventricular beats, which usually subside spontaneously with repositioning of the guide wire or lead. After ventricular and/or atrial lead placement, the pacing lead will have to be tested for sensing threshold, pacing threshold, depolarization amplitude, and lead resistance. After satisfactory placement of the pacing leads, the actual pacemaker generator unit is connected and then placed in a subcutaneous pocket at the site of percutaneous lead placement.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abnormalities of S-A nodal function (SSS) or A-V nodal function (heart block)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Left subclavicular; mostly percutaneous
Special instrumentation	Fluoroscopy with fluoro-table
Unique considerations	Patient usually awake with mild sedation
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv prior to incision
Surgical time	1 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → CCU; ECG monitoring × 2–4 h; chest radiograph to document lead configuration.
Mortality	0–1%
Morbidity	Lead displacement: 1–2% Pneumothorax: 1–2%
Pain score	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	50–80 yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Infrequent
Etiology	CAD; cardiac valve repair/replacement
Associated conditions	Complete heart block with syncope; SSS; paroxysmal tachycardia; SVT

Table 6.1-4. Five-Position Pacemaker Code (ICHD)

I	II	III	IV	V
Chamber(s) Paced	**Chamber(s) Sensed**	**Response(s) to Sensing**	**Programmability, Rate Modulation**	**Special Tachyarrhythmia Functions**
V - Ventricle	V - Ventricle	T - Triggered	P - Simple Programmable (rate and/or output)	B - Bursts
A - Atrium	A - Atrium	I - Inhibited	M - Multiprogrammable	N - Normal rate competition
D - Dual	D - Dual	D - Dual (T + I)	C - Communicating	S - Scanning
O - None	O - None	O - None	R - Rate modulation	
			O - None	E - External

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The indications for permanent pacemaker insertion are usually bradydysrhythmias (e.g., 3rd-degree heart block, sinus node dysfunction) or, less commonly, tachycardia (e.g., atrial flutter not responsive to medical therapy). There are many different types of pacemakers, which are classified according to the chamber paced, chamber sensed, response to sensing, programmability, and anti-tachyarrhythmia functions. The anesthesiologist should be aware of the type of pacemaker to be implanted and the means for external control.

Cardiovascular	Evaluate patient for associated disease, including CAD (~50%), HTN (~20%), cardiomyopathy, CHF, valvular defect, and for any symptoms or recent changes related to the conduction problems (syncope, CHF). It is important to know the reason for pacemaker implantation and the patient's escape rhythm. These patients are often on antidysrhythmics, diuretics, cardiac glycosides, and a variety of other cardiovascular agents, which should be continued up to the day of surgery. **Tests:** Exercise tolerance by Hx. ECG: ✓ rate, ischemic changes, rhythm. Other tests as indicated by H&P. ✓ serum digoxin and other antidysrhythmic levels.
Pacemaker	If a permanent pacemaker is already in place, its type and present functional state should be assessed. (Sx of problems include chest pain, palpitations, syncope, and weakness.) If no permanent pacemaker, a temporary transvenous pacemaker should be placed before surgery, except in unusual circumstances. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ Valsalva maneuver or carotid sinus massage—may slow the heart sufficiently to allow the permanent pacemaker to fire and allow assessment of function. A rate lower than the set rate may indicate battery failure. CXR: ✓ lead continuity.
Hematologic	Hct or Hb
Laboratory	✓ K^+ level, which can affect pacing threshold, → loss of pacemaker capture, if low, or ventricular tachycardia, if high. Other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Permanent pacemakers commonly are placed via the transvenous route, requiring only local anesthesia and MAC with sedation. For epicardial pacemaker placement, GETA is required. These patients should be monitored during transport to OR. Care is taken to avoid dislodging temporary pacing electrodes. The function of the temporary pacemaker should be checked prior to induction.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Usually anesthesia can be induced with propofol (1–2 mg/kg) or etomidate (0.2–0.3 mg/kg) in combination with an opiate (e.g., fentanyl 1–2 mcg/kg) to attenuate the response to intubation. Vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1 mg/kg) will provide adequate muscle relaxation.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). Avoid excessive hyperventilation (→↓ K^+), and use volatile agents with caution because they may increase A-V conduction time.	
Emergence	Generally, patient is extubated at the end of the case.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal fluid requirements IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Urinary catheter	Rarely, arterial line if patient disease indicates.
Electrocautery interference	Minimize by: • Using bipolar cautery, if possible; • Grounding pad on leg; • Limiting cautery output; • Limiting cautery use.	The use of electrocautery may interfere with pacemaker function and → dysrhythmias or failure of the pacemaker. Monitor ECG and pulse (because electrical activity does not mean CO) for interference. Have a magnet available to convert the pacemaker to asynchronous mode (check that this is possible and will not change the programming of the pacemaker).
Complications	Dysrhythmias Air embolism Cardiac tamponade Hemo/pneumothorax Hemorrhage	Availability of temporary pacing is important because complete heart block or dislodgement of leads may occur. In addition, pharmacologic agents (atropine, 0.5–2 mg; isoproterenol 10–100 ng/kg/min) to increase HR should be available.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Dislodging of electrodes Dysrhythmias Pneumothorax Tamponade
Pain management	Parenteral opioids for pain relief Benzodiazepine for sedation
Tests	ECG CXR Electrolytes

Suggested Readings

1. Luck JC: Arrhythmia, rhythm management devices, and catheter surgical ablation. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, Chapter 4.
2. Reynolds DW, Murray CM: New concepts in physiologic cardiac pacing. *Curr Cardiol Rep* 2007; 9(5):351–7.
3. Rosenfeld LE, Elefteriades JA: Surgical and device therapy for cardiac arrhythmias. In: Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG, eds. *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 617–36.
4. Rozner MA: The patient with a cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator and management during anaesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20(3):261–8.
5. Rozner MA: Cardiac pacing and defibrillation. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era,* 6th edition. Saunders/Elsevier, St. Louis: 2001, Chapter 25. (Pacemakers, p. 790–99).
6. Samii SM, Luck JC Jr: Arrhythmia, rhythm management devices and catheter and surgical ablation. In: Hensley FA Jr, Martin DE, Gravelee GP eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013, Chapter 17, p. 506–33.

PERICARDIECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Constrictive pericarditis, either acute or chronic, interferes with ventricular filling, reducing stroke volume and depressing the cardiac index (CI). Although there are many possible etiologies (infectious, nephrogenic, postradiation), the cause remains unknown for a majority of patients. Typically, patients present with a progressive Hx of breathlessness, fatigability, or peripheral or abdominal swelling, often months to years after the inciting event. The Dx may be confirmed by cardiac catheterization, with equalization of end diastolic pressures, although volume loading may be necessary to demonstrate this in the patient under medical management. The differentiation between constrictive pericardial disease and restrictive myocardial disease may be difficult, if not impossible, and may coexist in a single patient. After this Dx has been confirmed, surgical **pericardiectomy** should be undertaken because the outlook without surgical relief is one of gradual, but persistent deterioration. Although surgical mortality remains in the 10–15% range, long-term relief for survivors is good. Because these patients are usually significantly compromised hemodynamically, intensive monitoring is indicated. Approach may be through a **median sternotomy** or left **anterolateral thoracotomy.** Removal of both visceral and parietal pericardium is essential for relief, but dense adhesions of these layers to underlying muscle may make this dissection very difficult, tedious, and bloody, especially if the visceral pericardium and epicardium are involved in the constrictive process. CPB (see p. 348) may be utilized for hemodynamic instability, but it obviously increases bleeding complications. Complete excision from both ventricular surfaces is mandatory. Most periop difficulties evolve from cardiac failure.

Variant procedure or approaches: A limited **pericardial window,** draining fluid into the left hemithorax, may relieve tamponade, but will be of no benefit for a true constrictive process.

Usual preop diagnosis: Constrictive pericarditis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Median Sternotomy	Anterolateral Thoracotomy
Position	Supine	Supine, with elevation of left hemithorax
Incision	Midline	5th interspace
Special instrumentation	TEE; full hemodynamic monitoring; CPB standby	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv prior to incision, then 1 g q 4 h	⇐
Surgical time	2–5 h, depending on tenacity of visceral peel	⇐
Closing considerations	Avoid volume overload and cardiac distention. Chronically depressed hearts may require inotropic or mechanical support (i.e., IABP) postop.	⇐
EBL	100–500 mL	⇐
Postop care	ICU; intubated × 4–6 h. Hemodynamic monitoring. Low CO state may persist postop.	⇐
Mortality	5–15%, predominantly from cardiac failure	⇐
Morbidity	Persistent CHF: 5%	⇐
	Transient phrenic nerve dysfunction: < 1%	
Pain score	7–10	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	10–80 yr (median = 45 yr)
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	3–4 patients/yr at tertiary referral center
Etiology	Majority unknown. Infectious, radiation, prior cardiac operation, rheumatic pericarditis, amyloid deposition.
Associated conditions	Restrictive myocardial diseases

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pericardiectomy is performed most commonly for patients with constrictive pericarditis, whereas pericardial window procedures are used for patients with cardiac tamponade.

Respiratory	Restrictive disease may be present 2° fibrosis (e.g., post-TB) or pleural effusions. This may impair oxygenation and, if the effusions are significant, may ↓ venous return on institution of IPPV → rapid decompensation (↓ CO). Drain prior to surgery. **Tests:** CXR: ✓ active disease, fibrosis, effusions, pericardial calcification. Consider ABG, PFT, as indicated by CXR and Sx and if time permits.
Cardiovascular	Of importance is the presence or absence of a pericardial effusion. A large effusion that develops slowly (chronic pericarditis) may cause minimal Sx. Conversely, a small and rapidly forming effusion may → cardiac tamponade. Although the cardiovascular signs for both tamponade and constriction are similar (pulsus paradoxus, venous HTN, exaggerated venous pulsations, ↓ BP, tachycardia), it is important to differentiate between them because it may affect intraop management. Constrictive pericarditis can be differentiated from cardiac tamponade by ECHO, by pulsus paradoxus (frequent, with tamponade; rare, with constrictive pericarditis). Kussmaul's sign (distention of the jugular veins on inspiration) is rare with tamponade and common with constrictive pericarditis. Electrical alternans is present with tamponade and absent in constrictive pericarditis. Examination of the RV pressure wave form is unchanged in tamponade, but shows a dip and prominent Y descent in constrictive pericarditis. Anesthetic management is influenced by the planned procedure, the underlying process (constriction or tamponade), and its severity. Clues to severity are the physical symptoms and the degree of tachycardia, ↓ BP, and the filling pressure. (Although it is not possible to give exact figures, a HR of >100 bpm, systolic BP < 100 mm Hg, and a filling pressure > 15 mm Hg are probably significant.) In addition, it is important to assess concurrent cardiac problems: cardiomyopathy, CAD, or valvular disease (especially in constrictive disease associated with TB, radiation therapy, or in rheumatoid diseases, such as lupus). **Tests:** ECG: ✓ low-voltage complexes, electrical alternans. ECHO: ✓ pericardial effusion, calcification of pericardium, valvular lesions, myocardial function.
Gastrointestinal	Chronic hepatic congestion may → ↓ synthetic function (↓ procoagulants). Development of ascites may → ↑ intra-abdominal pressure. Because of this and the fact that these are sometimes emergency procedures, consider possible full stomach. **Tests:** Consider LFTs; PT; PTT.
Renal	Renal failure may cause pericarditis, and conversely, pericarditis may cause renal failure (2° prerenal factors: ↑ venous pressure, ↓ perfusion pressure). This may affect the choice of drugs used for anesthesia that depend on renal clearance (particularly muscle relaxants). **Tests:** BUN; Cr; consider creatinine clearance; electrolytes.

Hematologic	Some renal or hepatic conditions may be associated with coagulation disorders. These include both procoagulant and Plt problems. If possible, any coagulopathy should be corrected before surgery with FFP, Plt, or both. Consult with a hematologist, if necessary. **Tests:** Hb/Hct; PT; PTT; Plt count
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Little or no premedication may be indicated; otherwise, a benzodiazepine (e.g., midazolam 0.05–0.2 mg/kg im) may be used. Consider full-stomach precautions: H_2-antagonists (e.g., ranitidine 50 mg iv), metoclopramide (10 mg iv), antacids (e.g., Na citrate 0.3 M 30 mL po).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An arterial line should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetic, before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical in the care of these patients, especially during induction. Although it is helpful to have a CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and drug infusion, it is not essential. This line usually is inserted after the patient is intubated. If infused drugs are necessary before the CVP catheter is in place, they can be administered through a separate peripheral iv. Consider pericardiocentesis or pericardial window under local anesthesia prior to induction, as drainage of even a small amount of fluid may improve the patient's status dramatically. The considerable manipulation of the heart, extensive dissection, blood loss, dysrhythmias, and unrelieved tamponade make pericardiectomy cases a challenge.

Induction	Typically, ketamine (1–2 mg/kg) or etomidate (0.2–0.3 mg/kg) ± narcotic (fentanyl 2–30 mcg/kg), depending on patient status. Consider maintaining spontaneous ventilation in tamponade patients until drained, as institution of IPPV may result in rapid decompensation and cardiac arrest due to ↓↓ venous return. Otherwise, succinylcholine (1 mg/kg) with cricoid pressure (full stomach) or vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) for muscle relaxation. For unstable patients, may prep and drape and have surgeons standing by before induction of anesthesia.	
Maintenance	Narcotic (total fentanyl 5–50 mcg/kg), low-dose volatile agent, midazolam (50–350 mcg/kg), or a combination of these agents in 100% O_2. CO is dependent on maintaining a high preload to ensure adequate cardiac filling, avoiding and treating bradycardia and preserving myocardial contractility. The use of inotropes (dopamine, isoproterenol, or epinephrine) may be necessary; α-agonists should be avoided but, on occasion, may be needed to increase coronary perfusion. These anesthetic-considerations apply to both tamponade and constrictive disease. In patients with acute tamponade, dramatic increases in BP may occur when the pericardium is opened. Aggressive use of vasodilators and additional anesthetic agents may be necessary.	
Emergence	In general, plan for extubation in the OR in the case of pericardial window and transport to ICU for postop ventilation 4–24 h following pericardiectomy.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14 ga (or 7 Fr) × 1–2 UO: 0.5–1 mL/kg/h Warm fluids and humidify gases. T&C 2–4 U for pericardiectomy.	During pericardiectomy, anticipate rapid blood loss (a major cause of mortality). For this reason, CPB should be available on standby for all pericardiectomy procedures.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line CVP line PA catheter TEE Urinary catheter	Standard monitors and an A-line are placed before induction. CVP (and/or PA line, if indicated), usually is placed after intubation. PA catheters aid the management of filling pressures, CO, and afterload. TEE may be useful to gauge filling volume and degree of relief of pericardial constriction.

Complications	Cardiac tamponade Dysrhythmias	Intrathoracic pressure associated with IPPV may produce a ↓↓ CO in these patients (because of ↓ venous return). Spontaneous ventilation, therefore, is preferred until the tamponade is drained.
	Hemorrhage Coagulopathy Heart failure	Hemorrhage is not usually a problem unless penetrating trauma is the cause of the tamponade. Once constriction is relieved, myocardial function does not return to normal quickly. Inotropes are often needed. Due to extensive dissection and hemorrhage, coagulopathies may develop and should be treated aggressively.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage Coagulopathy Ventricular hypofunction Dysrhythmias Ischemia	Following pericardial window surgery, patients improve with the relief of the tamponade. Postpericardiectomy patients, however, may have a continuation of intraop dysrhythmias and myocardial depression. Inotropes (e.g., dopamine 5–10 mcg/kg/min) may be needed for 24–48 h. Normal cardiac function can take 4–6 wk to return.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids	Supplement with benzodiazepine for sedation.
Tests	ECG CXR ABG Coag profile Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Pericardial disease. In: *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery,* 3rd edition. Blackwell Science, Massachusetts: 2008, Chapter 8.
2. Hoit BD: Pericardial disease and pericardial tamponade. *Crit Care Med* 2007; 35(8 Suppl):S355–64.
3. Savage RM, Aronson S, Shanewise JS, et al: Intraoperative echocardiography. In: Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG, eds. *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 237–94.
4. Oliver WC Jr, Mauermann WJ, Nuttall GA: Uncommon cardiac diseases. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era,* 6th edition. Saunders/Elsevier St. Louis: 2011, Chapter 22. (Pericardial Heart Disease, p. 706–13).
5. Townsley MM, Shelton ML: Anesthetic considerations for patients with pericardial disease. In: Hensley FA Jr, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013, 571–6.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Bypass Surgery on a Beating Heart. Arie Blitz, MD, FACC: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=MGzyhuCs43o

Heart Transplantation: Surgical Technique. Arie Blitz, MD: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lB_2Xvmqxjo

Surgical Repair of a Ruptured Type A Aortic Dissection: Arie Blitz, MD.
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=O398CeblR3U

Mitral Valve Replacement for Rheumatic Heart Disease: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=W2FBtSysaPU

Repair of Ascending Aortic Aneurysm: Arie Blitz, MD: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h_u6SfPhHyc

Minimally Invasive Mitral Valve Surgery - Right Thoractomy Approach:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=EnJQh_W3r3A

NEJM Procedure: Deployment of an Endovascular Graft in an Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qUpXJBoAoWI

CHAPTER

6.2 Minimally Invasive Cardiac Surgery

SURGEONS

James I. Fann, MD
Clayton Kaiser, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Lawrence C. Siegel, MD

OFF-PUMP AND MINIMALLY INVASIVE CORONARY ARTERY BYPASS GRAFTING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Although coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) without cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) was originally proposed more than 6 decades ago, development and advances in CPB resulted in the abandonment of off-pump cardiac surgery by most cardiac centers until the 1990s. The resurgence of off-pump coronary revascularization was due in part to reported adverse effects of CPB, increased comorbidities in an aging population, medical economics, and the development of reliable mechanical stabilization devices (Fig. 6.2-1). From the standpoint of terminology, off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting (OPCAB) applies to all cases of coronary revascularization not using the CPB circuit and although it does not refer directly to the surgical approach, most are via conventional median sternotomy. Minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass grafting (MIDCAB) refers to off-pump coronary revascularization via a small anterolateral thoracotomy incision. Challenges of off-pump coronary revascularization include accurate vascular anastomosis while minimizing hemodynamic perturbations during the procedure. Interrupting flow to the target artery can → regional ischemia, arrhythmias, and hemodynamic instability; displacing the heart to expose lateral or posterior arteries may → ventricular compression and profound hemodynamic compromise. Pharmacologic interventions to decrease HR and ischemic preconditioning may facilitate the anastomosis. Although not fully defined, ischemic preconditioning results from exposure to transient myocardial ischemia and is an endogenous adaptation that may mitigate the effects of subsequent prolonged myocardial ischemia. Thus, mechanically occluding the coronary artery for a brief period may confer some protection from ischemic injury associated with coronary occlusion during the anastomosis. Important preop considerations include the number and suitability of distal-target coronary arteries, cardiac and pulmonary status, and other medical comorbidities. The presence of cardiomegaly may limit the degree of intraop cardiac manipulation. The perfusionist is present during the procedure so that rapid conversion to conventional on-pump CABG can be achieved if there is hemodynamic compromise, unsuitable distal target, inability

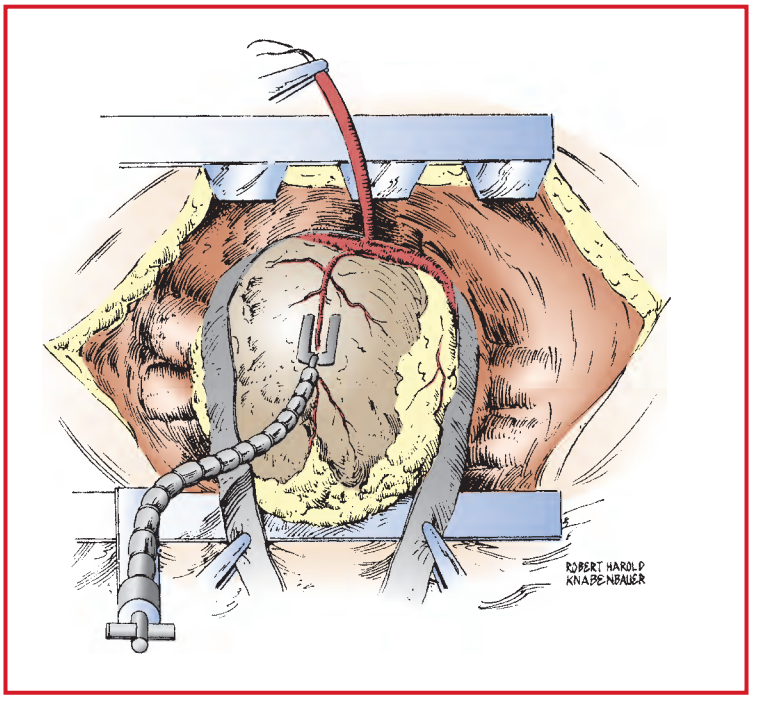


Figure 6.2-1. Manipulation of the heart and placement of a pressure-plate mechanical stabilizer is performed in preparation for OPCAB. (Reproduced with permission from Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG: *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

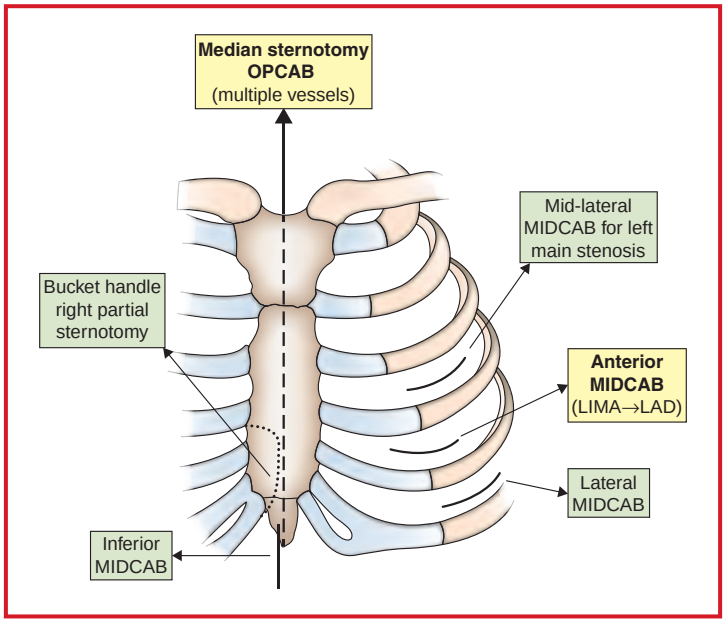


Figure 6.2-2. Incision sites for access to various target coronary arteries in MICAB. (Reproduced with permission from Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG: *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

to expose lateral or posterior target vessels, or regional myocardial ischemia. Occasionally, placement of intraaortic balloon pump intraop may facilitate the off-pump approach in a patient with ischemic cardiomyopathy.

For conventional **OPCAB**, a standard median sternotomy is made (Fig. 6.2-2). If the internal mammary artery (IMA) is to be used as a graft, it is harvested in the usual fashion. The patient is partially heparinized, and an intravenous bolus of lidocaine is given. A sternal retractor with attachments for coronary stabilization is placed (Fig. 6.2-1). If vein grafts are used, the proximal anastomoses may be performed at this point or later, after the completion of the distal anastomoses, using a partial side-biting aortic cross-clamp or automated anastomotic device. During the period of partial aortic clamping, BP typically is lowered to reduce potential complications associated with the use of the clamp. The goal of the operation is to establish adequate perfusion of the most critical vascular bed first. Provided it is a target vessel, the LAD artery is often approached first because an IMA graft (or vein graft) can provide immediate perfusion and requires minimal cardiac manipulation to construct the anastomosis. Mechanical coronary artery stabilizers, based on local myocardial compression (Fig. 6.2-1) or vacuum suction (Fig. 6.2-3) and attached to the retractor, provide stable local epicardial motion restraint, thereby facilitating the anastomosis. After stabilization, the artery is occluded (following a period of ischemic preconditioning), and an arteriotomy is made. Equipment that minimizes blood in the operative site includes standard suction attachments, temporary intracoronary shunts, vessel occluders, and "blower-misters" that displace blood by delivering a combination of gas (CO_2) and heparinized saline. The distal anastomosis is then performed. The patient is monitored closely at this point for any signs of myocardial ischemia and/or hemodynamic instability. To expose the lateral and posterior target vessels, manipulation of the heart is necessary and may not be well tolerated. During lateral and posterior pericardial suture placement, the surgeon displaces and compresses the heart, resulting in temporary hemodynamic compromise. Ventilation may need to be decreased temporarily to facilitate this maneuver. Additional exposure techniques include the use of an apical suction device to facilitate cardiac manipulation with potentially less hemodynamic compromise, Trendelenburg position and tilting the operating table to the right, release of right pericardial stay sutures, opening of the right pleura, and incising the right pericardium, and placement of laparotomy sponges. The target vessel is stabilized again, ischemic preconditioning is carried out, and the artery is opened. After construction of the distal anastomosis, the graft is relieved of any residual air before securing the sutures and the proximal anastomosis performed if not already done so as noted earlier. Graft flow is assessed using a Doppler flow probe.

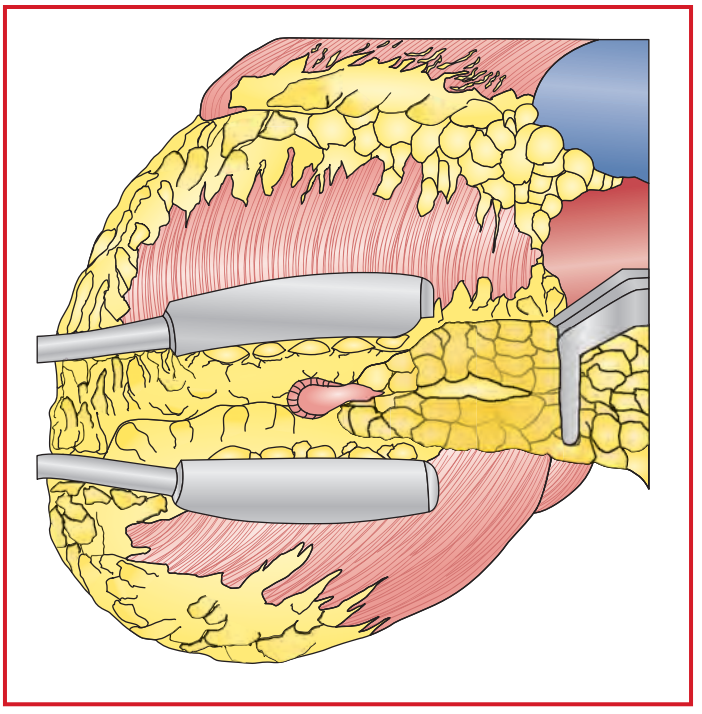


Figure 6.2-3. The Octopus stabilizer (Medtronic, Minneapolis MN) uses a series of suction cups on two fixed arms that adhere to the epicardial surface and reduce myocardial motion at the anastomotic site during OPCAB. (Reproduced with permission from Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG: *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine (Fig. 6.2-4)
Incision	Median sternotomy (OPCAB); alternatively, limited left anterolateral thoracotomy (MIDCAB; Fig. 6.2-2)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	3–4 h
Closing considerations	No special considerations. Patients often can be extubated in OR.
EBL	200–400 mL (consider using Cell-Saver)
Postop care	ICU for cardiac monitoring ± ventilator management; less volume required than with conventional CABG.
Mortality	0–5% (higher with increasing age)
Morbidity	AF: 10–30% Pulmonary insufficiency: 3–5% Reoperation for bleeding: 1–4% Cardiac (e.g., myocardial infarction): 0–4% Mediastinal infection: 1–2% Neurologic (cerebrovascular accident): 1–2% Renal dysfunction: 1–2% IABP use: 0–2%
Pain score	4–6

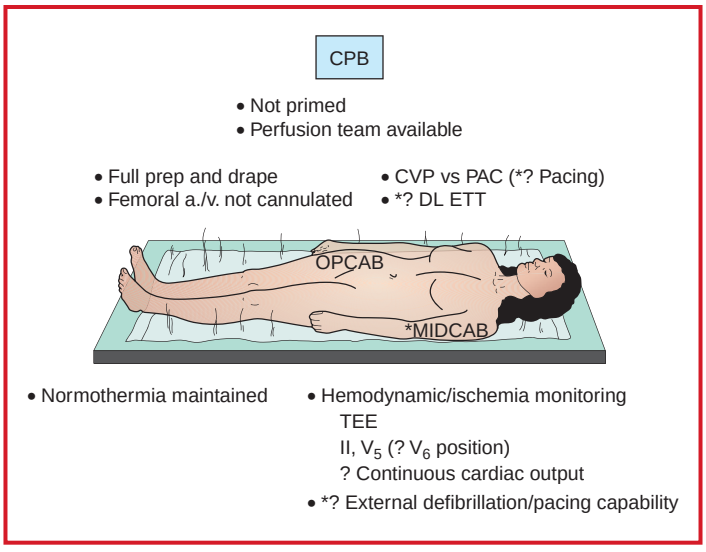


Figure 6.2-4. OR configuration for MICAB. (Reproduced with permission from Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG: *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	40 to > 90 yr
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	150,000/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Multifactorial for atherosclerosis
Associated conditions	HTN; diabetes; PVD; COPD; cigarette smoking

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR MICAB/OPCAB

PREOPERATIVE

Preop assessment is similar to that used for standard CABG patients (see p. 356). Relative contraindications for MICAB include low EF, morbid obesity, previous cardiac surgery, AF, and COPD. It is important to know the coronary artery anatomy and the planned surgical procedure and sequence. For example, proximal surgical occlusion of a coronary artery with high-grade distal disease may be poorly tolerated as compared with severe proximal disease with collateralization.

Premedication	Adequate control of preop anxiety using midazolam (titrated to effect) may reduce periop tachycardia.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. For MICAB, selective lung ventilation with DLT, Univent ETT, or bronchial blocker. Unlike CABG on CPB, the anesthetic demands for OPCABG are somewhat different, as CPB will not be providing hemodynamic support. Positioning of the heart for access to the target vessel, as well as mechanical stabilization of the heart to immobilize the vessel for accurate anastomosis tend to produce hemodynamic compromise. In particular, elevation of the LV apex to allow access to lateral and posterior wall vessels can limit LV filling and obstruct RV outflow tract. In addition, ↓ TV may be necessary to prevent obstruction of visualization. Snares may be placed around the coronary target vessel to create a dry operative field; however, this may provoke regional ischemia. Many of these changes are assessed by intraop TEE, and they may require resuscitative measures with volume

loading, vasoconstriction, and inotropic support (e.g., dopamine). Interventions on the RCA are particularly prone to arrhythmias, and appropriate antiarrhythmics and pacing should be available. For further discussion, see Intraoperative considerations for CABG, p. 357.

Induction	As for CABG surgery (see p. 357). For MICAB, these patients will undergo a small anterior thoracotomy, and the aim is to extubate them at the end of the procedure or shortly thereafter. Thus, the dose of narcotic should be moderate (e.g., fentanyl 5–15 mcg/kg). Long-acting muscle relaxants should be avoided for the same reason. Consider spinal narcotics (e.g., morphine 0.3–0.5 mg).	
Maintenance	Because early extubation is planned, volatile agents or propofol should be used and the overall dose of narcotic reduced. Remifentanil infusion may also be useful.	
Emergence	For further discussion, see Postoperative Considerations for CABG, p. 359. If the patient is not suitable for extubation in the OR, a DLT may be exchanged for a conventional ETT (over a tube changer) before transport to ICU.	
Blood and fluid requirements	See CABG surgery (p. 354).	Without the use of CPB, hemodilution from the pump prime is avoided.
Monitoring	See CABG surgery (p. 354).	Central venous access. PA catheters are useful for detecting ischemia in patients with poor LV function. If a continuous CO thermodilution catheter is used, consideration must be given to the large delays in data display. ST segment analysis.
	TEE	Useful for detecting ischemia and LV dysfunction. Views may be limited by surgical positioning of the heart within the chest.
Special considerations	Anticoagulation	Heparin should be administered before surgical coronary artery occlusion.
	Ischemic preconditioning Temporary occlusion → ischemia	Prior to occlusion, ischemic preconditioning may be accomplished with surgical manipulation and by pharmacologic means (e.g., isoflurane, sevoflurane). This is a great opportunity to consider how well transient ischemia is tolerated. During grafting, the vessel is temporarily occluded to avoid flooding the field with blood. The myocardium distal to this may become ischemic.
	✓ ECG, TEE.	TEE imaging will be affected by surgical mechanical manipulation of the heart, and ECG voltage may be decreased.
	Cardiac positioning →↓ CO	Cardiac output may be markedly reduced by the combination of heart positioning and coronary artery occlusion. Vasoconstriction may be required to maintain adequate blood pressure. Patients poorly responsive to vasoconstrictors may have extremely depressed cardiac output and severe acidosis. Inotropic support or intraaortic balloon pumping may be necessary.
	Coronary artery shunt	Surgical placement of a coronary artery shunt may be necessary. Treatment of rhythm disorders with pharmacologic agents, pacing, or defibrillation may be required. The capability to institute CPB rapidly should exist. A rest period with the heart returned to the normal position within the chest should be considered following each anastomosis to restore cardiac output and permit resolution of acidosis.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	See CABG surgery (p. 359). Premature extubation	
Pain management	Same as CABG surgery (p. 359).	Intrathecal narcotics or intercostal blocks (MICAB) placed at the end of surgery may aid in early extubation.
Tests	See CABG surgery (p. 359).	

Suggested Readings

1. Caputo M, Alwair H, Rogers CA, et al: Thoracic epidural anesthesia improves early outcomes in patients undergoing off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *Anesthesiology* 2011; 114(2):380–90.
2. Dorsa AG, Rossi AI, Thierer J, et al: Immediate extubation after off-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery in 1,196 consecutive patients: feasibility, safety and predictors of when not to attempt it. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2011; 25(3):431–6.
3. Halkos ME, Puskas JD: Teaching off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2009; 21:224–8.
4. Hemmerling TM, Romano G, Terrasini N, Noiseux N: Anesthesia for off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery. *Ann Card Anaesth* 2013; 16(1):28–39.
5. Huffmyer J, Raphael J: The current status of off-pump coronary bypass surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(1):64–9.
6. Lamy A, Devereaux PJ, Prabhakaran D, et al: Effects of off-pump and on-pump coronary-artery bypass grafting at 1 year. *N Engl J Med* 2013; 368(13):1179–88.
7. Puskas JD, Kilgo PD, Kutner M, et al: Off-pump techniques disproportionately benefit women and narrow the gender disparity in outcomes after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Circulation* 2007; 116 (Suppl):I-192–9.
8. Raja SG, Berg GA: Impact of off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery on systemic inflammation: current best available evidence. *J Card Surg* 2007; 22:445–55.
9. Rajakaruna C, Rogers C, Pike K, et al: Superior haemodynamic stability during off-pump coronary surgery with thoracic epidural anaesthesia: results from a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2013; 16(5):602–7.
10. Roosens C, Heerman J, De Somer F, et al: Effects of off-pump coronary surgery on the mechanics of the respiratory system, lung, and chest wall: comparison with extracorporeal circulation. *Crit Care Med* 2002; 30:2430–7.
11. Shroyer AL, Grover FL, Hattler B, et al: Veterans affairs randomized on/off bypass (ROOBY) study group. On-pump versus off-pump coronary-artery bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 361(19):1827–37.
12. Sisilio E, Marino MR, Juliano G, et al: Comparison of on pump and off pump coronary surgery: risk factors for neurological outcome. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2007; 31:1076–80.
13. Straka Z, Brucek P, Vanek T, et al: Routine immediate extubation for off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting without thoracic epidural analgesia. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2002; 74:1544–7.
14. Virmani S, Tempe DK: Anaesthesia for off-pump coronary artery surgery. *Ann Card Anaesth* 2007; 10(1):65–71.

PORT-ACCESS CORONARY REVASCULARIZATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Advances in videoscopic technology have led to less-invasive approaches in the treatment of many general and thoracic surgical disorders. The development of less-invasive surgery has resulted in alternative and novel approaches to cardiac surgery, including port-access cardiac surgery and off-pump coronary revascularization. The port-access approach was developed in the mid-1990s and is used less frequently in the current setting because of its complexity. With the development of robotic (or total endoscopic) techniques, the port-access technology is being employed as a means to achieve cardiopulmonary bypass and cardioplegic arrest. Using a port-access approach, the surgeon can perform cardiac operations (e.g., CABG) and valve surgery in a motionless, bloodless field through smaller chest incisions. This approach typically relies on peripheral CPB (femoral artery and femoral vein cannulation, Fig. 6.2-6). The femoral artery is cannulated with a 19–23 Fr Y-shaped cannula, which permits arterial inflow and insertion of the endoaortic clamp. Venous drainage is provided by the 22–25 Fr cannula, introduced through a femoral vein. Drainage may be augmented by 20–40%, using vacuum-assisted venous drainage or a centrifugal venous drainage pump placed between the venous cannula and the reservoir. The port-access system includes a 10.5 Fr endoaortic "clamp" (EAC), a triple-lumen catheter with an inflatable balloon at its distal end. This clamp is positioned in the ascending aorta using fluoroscopy and TEE guidance. The lumen used for balloon inflation is connected to a manometer to monitor balloon pressure. Cardioplegic solution is delivered through a central lumen, which also acts as an aortic root vent after cardioplegia delivery. A third lumen serves as an aortic root pressure monitor.

In addition, a percutaneous PA venting catheter, placed via the jugular approach, helps in ventricular decompression. The left internal mammary artery (IMA) is harvested under direct vision (Fig. 6.2-7) or with video-assisted thoracoscopy (VAT; Fig. 6.2-8). After peripheral CPB is achieved, the EAC provides aortic occlusion and cardioplegic arrest. Exposure of the lateral and posterior aspects of the heart is easily accomplished in the arrested heart, thereby permitting two- and three-vessel coronary revascularization. Notably, if the ascending aorta is accessible, a dual-armed, Y-shaped cannula can be placed directly into the ascending aorta with one arm of the cannula connected to the arterial inflow of the CPB circuit and the other arm as a conduit for introducing the EAC.

Usual preop diagnosis: CAD

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	4th interspace, left anterior thoracotomy for CABG; may need to resect 4th rib; may need thoracoscopy for IMA harvest.
Special instrumentation	TEE and fluoroscopy
Unique considerations	CPB used with peripheral femoral cannulation; percutaneous insertion of PA vent and retrograde cardioplegic catheter.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv at induction
Surgical time	3–5 h
Closing considerations	Assess chest wall for hemorrhage; chest tube insertion. Bupivacaine for field block.
EBL	250–500 mL

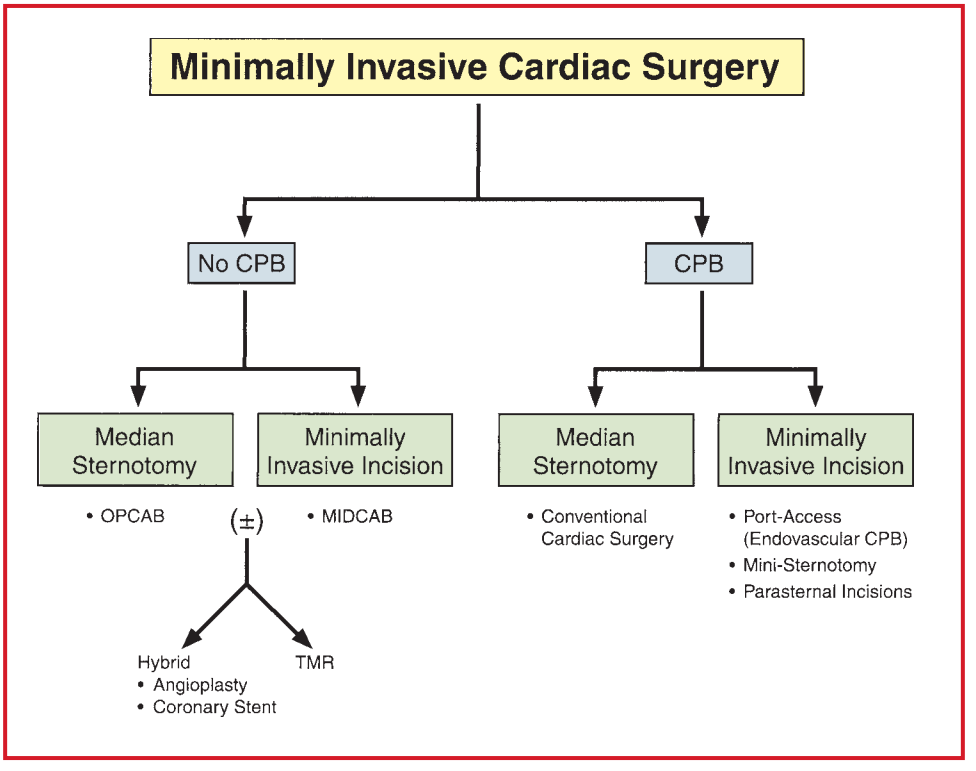


Figure 6.2-5. Variations in coronary artery bypass and valvular heart surgery, with minimally invasive techniques. CPB = cardiopulmonary bypass. OPCAB = off-pump coronary artery bypass. MIDCAB = minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass. TMR = transmyocardial revascularization. (Redrawn with permission from Estafanous FG, Barash PG, Reves JG: *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

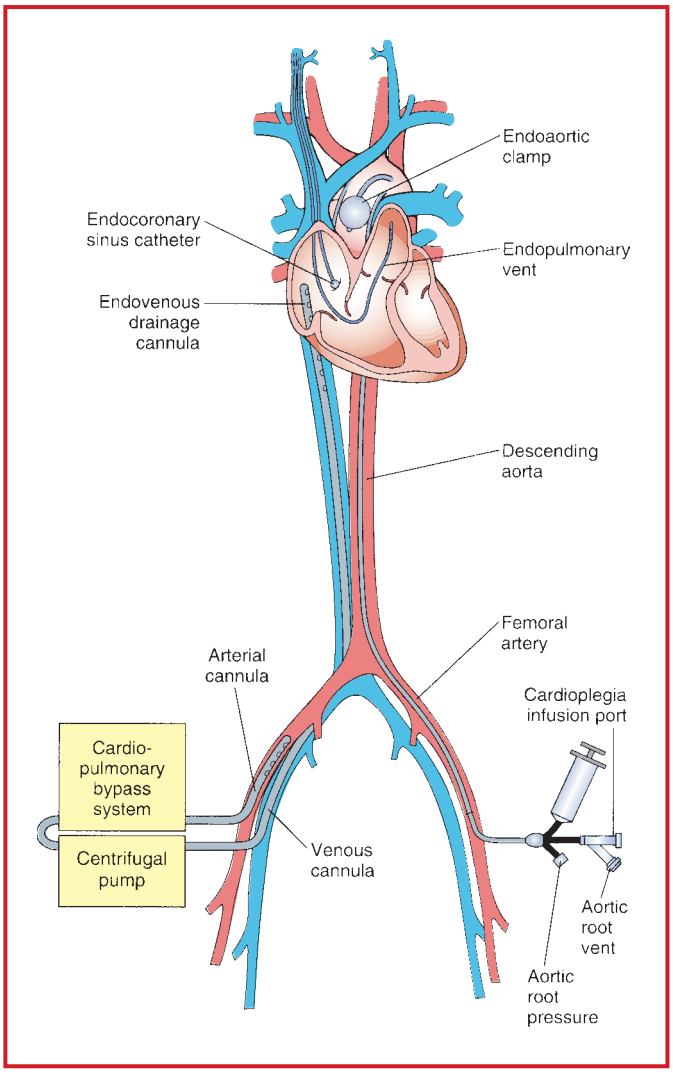


Figure 6.2-6. The port-access cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) system. Femoro-femoral (fem-fem) CPB is utilized, and a centrifugal pump augments venous drainage. The endoaortic balloon occlusion catheter is inflated in the ascending aorta, and antegrade cardioplegia is delivered through the central lumen. The endopulmonary vent assists in ventricular decompression. (Redrawn with permission from Fann JI, Pompili MF, Stevens JH, et al: Port-access cardiac surgery with cardioplegic arrest. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1997; 63:S35–9.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Postop care	ICU monitoring; early extubation; may require inotropic support.
Mortality	1–3%, depending on comorbidities
Morbidity	Arrhythmias (including atrial fibrillation): 10% Conversion to sternotomy: 4% MI: 0–4% Reoperation for bleeding: 3% Stroke: 2% Thrombosis of graft (graft failure): Rare Fem-fem bypass complications (e.g., arterial dissection): Rare
Pain score	1–4

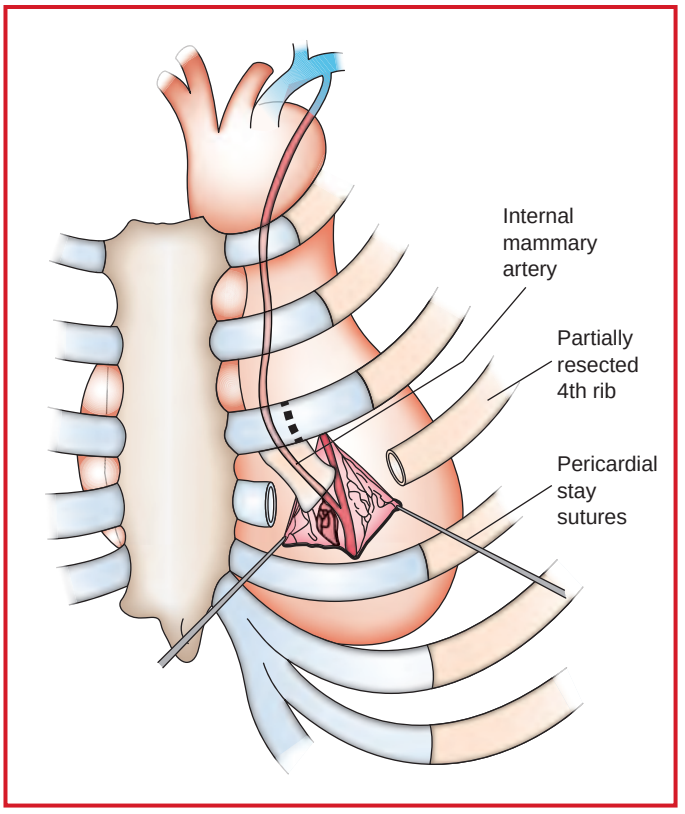


Figure 6.2-7. The left IMA-to-left anterior descending artery anastomosis is performed under direct vision. Stay sutures suspend the pericardium and bring the heart into view. (Redrawn with permission from Acuff TE, Landreneau RJ, Griffith BP, et al: Minimally invasive coronary artery bypass grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1996; 61:135–7.)

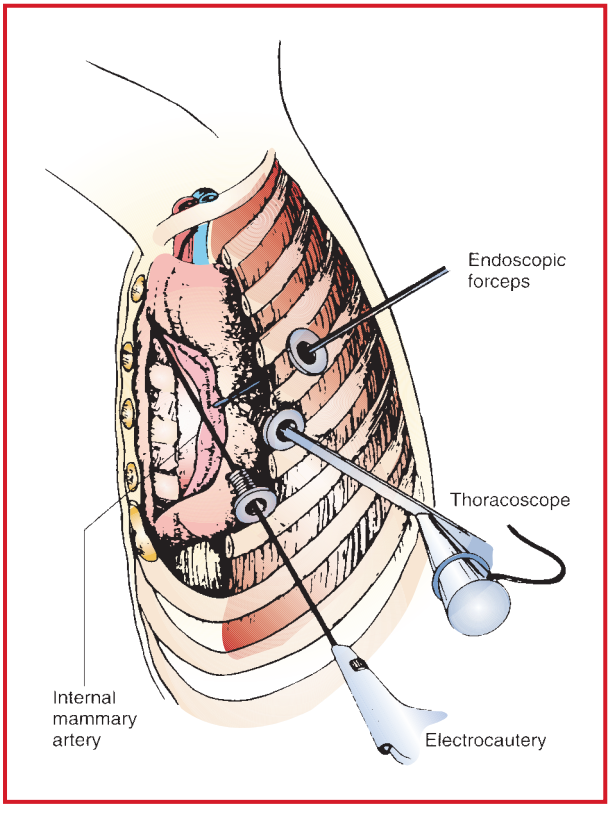


Figure 6.2-8. Dissection and harvesting of the left IMA using a thoracoscopic approach. (Redrawn with permission from Acuff TE, Landreneau RJ, Griffith BP, et al: Minimally invasive coronary artery bypass grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1996; 61:135–7.)

Table 6.2-1. Common Abbreviations Used in Minimally Invasive Cardiac Surgery

Abbreviation	Definition
MICS	Minimally invasive cardiac surgery
MICAB	Minimally invasive coronary artery bypass (includes OPCAB, MIDCAB. port-access, and mini-sternotomy techniques)
OPCAB	Off-pump coronary artery bypass ("beating heart surgery": median sternotomy)
MIDCAB	Minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass (direct vision, no sternotomy, CPB, or cardioplegia)
MIDCABG	Minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass graft (same as MIDCAB)
MITACAB	Minimally invasive thoracoscopically assisted coronary artery bypass
VADCAB	Video-assisted direct coronary artery bypass
LAST	Left anterior small thoracotomy
PACAB	Port-access coronary artery bypass (also called Port-CAB, Port-CABG)
TECAB	Totally endoscopic coronary artery bypass grafting

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–80 yr
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	< 50,000/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Multifactorial for atherosclerosis
Associated conditions	LV dysfunction; COPD; PVD; HTN; diabetes mellitus; cigarette smoking

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Port-Access Procedures, p. 400.

Suggested Readings

1. Bonatti J, Schachner T, Bonaros N, et al: Technical challenges in totally endoscopic robotic coronary artery bypass grafting. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2006; 131:146–53.
2. Casselman FP, LaMeir M, Jeanmart H, et al: Endoscopic mitral and tricuspid valve surgery after previous cardiac surgery. *Circulation* 2007; 116 (Suppl): I-270–5.
3. Dogan S, Graubitz K, Aybek T, et al: How safe is the port access technique in minimally invasive coronary artery bypass grafting? *Ann Thorac Surg* 2002; 74:1537–43.
4. Fann JI, Pompili MF, Stevens JH, et al: Port-access cardiac surgery with cardioplegic arrest. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1997; 63:S35–9.
5. Groh MA, Sutherland SE, Burton HG III, et al: Port-access coronary artery bypass grafting: technique and comparative results. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1999; 68:1506–8.
6. Grossi EA, Groh MA, Lefrak EA, et al: Results of a prospective multicenter study on port-access coronary bypass grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1999; 68:1475–7.
7. Maselli D, Pizio R, Borelli G, et al: Endovascular balloon versus transthoracic aortic clamping for minimally invasive mitral valve surgery: impact on cerebral microemboli. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2006; 5:183–86.
8. Murphy DA, Miller JS, Langford DA, et al: Endoscopic robotic mitral valve surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2006; 132: 776–81.
9. Stevens JH, Burdon TA, Peters WS, et al: Port-access coronary artery bypass grafting: a proposed surgical method. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1996; 111:567–73.
10. Subramanian VA, Patel NU, Patel NC, et al: Robotic assisted multivessel minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass with port-access stabilization and cardiac positioning: paving the way for outpatient coronary surgery? *Ann Thorac Surg* 2005; 79:1590–6.
11. Walther T, Falk V, Mohr FW: Minimally invasive surgery for valve disease. *Curr Probl Cardiol* 2006; 31:399–437.
12. Woo YJ, Rodriguez E, Atluri P, et al: Minimally invasive, robotic, and off-pump mitral valve surgery. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2006; 18:139–47.
13. See Suggested Readings for Port-Access Procedures, p. 404.

LIMITED THORACOTOMY AND PORT-ACCESS APPROACHES TO VALVE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Although the field of mitral valve surgery has seen marked advances in biomaterials and innovative repair techniques since the early 1960s, the **conventional median sternotomy approach** to access and expose the mitral valve has not changed substantially. Because of the progress in video-assisted surgery, a less-invasive approach to cardiac surgery has been developed, and various techniques of mitral valve surgery through **limited thoracotomy** or **upper sternotomy** incisions and a **port-access technique** to achieve cardioplegic arrest are now used in the clinical setting.

Limited thoracotomy: The right thoracotomy incision is a less-invasive approach (compared to median sternotomy) for mitral valve procedures (Fig. 6.2-9). Utilizing hypothermic fibrillatory or cardioplegic arrest, the mitral valve, annulus, and subvalvular apparatus can be visualized directly and the valve procedure carried out. The addition of video-assisted thoracoscopy (VAT) to mitral valve surgery or using robotic technology has resulted in even smaller incisions for these procedures.

A "micro-mitral" approach to mitral valve replacement has been described, using VAT through a limited thoracotomy. Peripheral CPB (fem-fem) is used, and a catheter is placed in the coronary sinus for retrograde cardioplegia delivery. An external aortic cross-clamp is introduced through a separate incision in the chest. After achieving cardioplegic arrest, the mitral valve is replaced with thoracoscopic assistance. Proposed advantages of the micro-mitral approach include the avoidance of a sternotomy, with decreased chest-wall trauma and patient discomfort.

An alternative **partial sternotomy approach** to mitral and aortic valve surgery has been described. The 7-cm partial sternotomy permits aortic and right atrial cannulation for CPB. The external aortic cross-clamp is positioned, and a left ventricular vent is placed through the right superior pulmonary vein. Mitral valve exposure is achieved through the dome of the left atrium.

Port-access mitral valve surgery: The port-access system has been used successfully in mitral valve surgery via limited thoracotomy incision using special instrumentation or even less-invasive robotic technology. To facilitate dissection and to provide adequate exposure of the left atrium, DLT intubation for OLV is used. Under fluoroscopic and TEE guidance, a retrograde cardioplegia catheter is directed into the coronary sinus via an introducer placed in the jugular vein; a PA-venting catheter is inserted through another jugular vein introducer. A limited right thoracotomy is made, with or without dividing the 4th rib, followed by the placement of a soft-tissue retractor. A separate port is placed in the 6th interspace for introduction of a thoracoscope, if necessary. The pericardium is opened anterior to the phrenic nerve. After systemic heparinization, the femoral artery and vein are cannulated. The endoaortic clamp is introduced through the side limb of the femoral arterial cannula and its tip positioned in the ascending aorta. CPB is initiated and systemic hypothermia achieved. The balloon of the endoaortic clamp is inflated, achieving effective aortic occlusion. Cold blood cardioplegia is delivered using the distal port of the endoaortic clamp; retrograde cardioplegia is administered via the coronary sinus catheter. A left atriotomy is made, and an atrial retractor is placed through a separate port. Valve repair or replacement is carried out using specially designed instruments. Before completion of atriotomy closure, deairing maneuvers are accomplished. These include temporarily discontinuing pulmonary and aortic root venting, inflating the lungs to displace residual air, and increasing the patient's blood volume from the venous reservoir. Also, the patient is placed in a Trendelenburg and left lateral decubitus position for further deairing. The balloon of the endoaortic catheter is deflated, and the catheter is left in place for further deairing through the aortic vent lumen. Temporary ventricular pacing wires are placed. After being weaned from CPB, the patient is decannulated and the anticoagulation reversed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Mitral valve disease

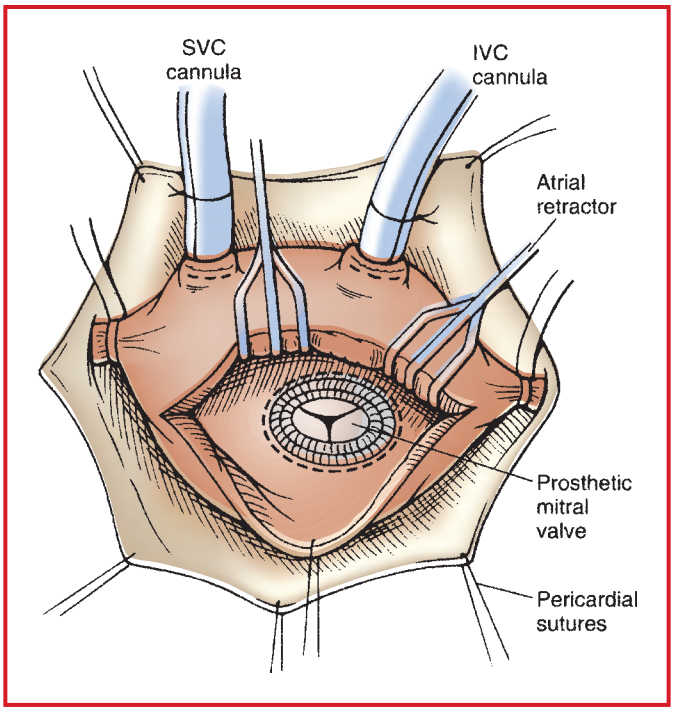


Figure 6.2-9. The right thoracotomy approach with left atriotomy and exposure of the mitral valve area with prosthetic valve in place. (Reproduced with permission from Tribble CG, Killinger WA Jr, Harman PK, et al: Anterolateral thoracotomy as an alternative to repeat median sternotomy for replacement of the mitral valve. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1987; 43:380–2.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

	Port-Access/Limited Thoracotomy
Position	Supine, with right side slightly elevated
Incision	4th interspace limited right thoracotomy; ports for possible thoracoscopy; port for atrial retractor.
Special instrumentation	Specially designed retractors; TEE and fluoroscopy for guiding placement of endopulmonary vent, retrograde cardioplegia catheter, and endoaortic clamp
Unique considerations	CPB is achieved with peripheral femoral cannulation; placement of endopulmonary vent; placement of retrograde cardioplegia catheter; may require conversion to open procedure.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv at induction
Surgical time	3–5 h
Closing considerations	Assess chest wall for hemorrhage.
EBL	250–500 mL
Postop care	ICU monitoring; early extubation; may require inotropic support.
Mortality	1–6%, depending on comorbidities (lower for mitral valve repairs)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	AF:10–40% Chest-wall hemorrhage: 2–9% Stroke: 1–3% Conversion to sternotomy: 2% Vascular injury: Rare Pneumonia Renal failure
Pain score	1–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	40–70 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	< 20,000/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Myxomatous mitral valve; rheumatic valve disease; endocarditis; ischemic (papillary muscle dysfunction); mitral annular calcification
Associated conditions	Pulmonary HTN; atrial arrhythmias; CAD; aortic valve disease; tricuspid regurgitation

TRANSCATHETER VALVE REPLACEMENT PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Minimally invasive approaches to aortic valve replacement include transvenous (antegrade), transarterial (retrograde), and transapical (transthoracic). These minimally invasive valve replacement procedures are usually performed in the cath lab, may only require sedation (transvenous approach), and can be accomplished without CPB. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVI) is becoming the preferred treatment for patients with severe aortic stenosis who are otherwise at high risk for not surviving open surgery. An alternative treatment, percutaneous balloon aortic valvuloplasty (BAV) has a high rate of restenosis and is now infrequently performed except to provide temporary relief while patients await more definitive treatment and during TAVI in preparation for valve placement.

Transcatheter approaches to mitral valve replacement have been slower to develop, in part because of the irregular shape of the valve orifice and the absence of heavy calcification to help anchor the prosthetic valve.

Transvenous *aortic or mitral valve replacement*: Under sedation, a guide wire is inserted through a femoral vein sheath into the right atrium. The atrial septum is punctured allowing the guide wire to enter the left atrium to cross the mitral valve and aortic valve, where it is snared by a device in the aorta introduced via the femoral artery (Fig. 6.2-10). The atrial septal puncture and the diseased valve are dilated, then the compressed prosthetic valve is positioned and deployed during rapid ventricular pacing which is used to ↓ LV stroke volume and the risk of unwanted device movement. This approach has largely been replaced by transarterial and transapical approaches for the aortic valve.

Transarterial *aortic valve replacement*: Usually under GETA, a guide wire is inserted from a femoral artery through the aorta (or directly into the aorta through the chest wall) and across the aortic valve. As in the transvenous approach, the diseased valve is dilated then the compressed prosthetic valve is positioned and deployed (Fig. 6.2-11) during rapid ventricular pacing to ↓LV stroke volume and the risk of unwanted device movement. Although the direct arterial approach to the valve has some advantages, patients with small, tortuous, or diseased iliac and femoral arteries may not be suitable candidates for distal arterial access, and more proximal access to the aorta may be obtained through a mini-thoracotomy.

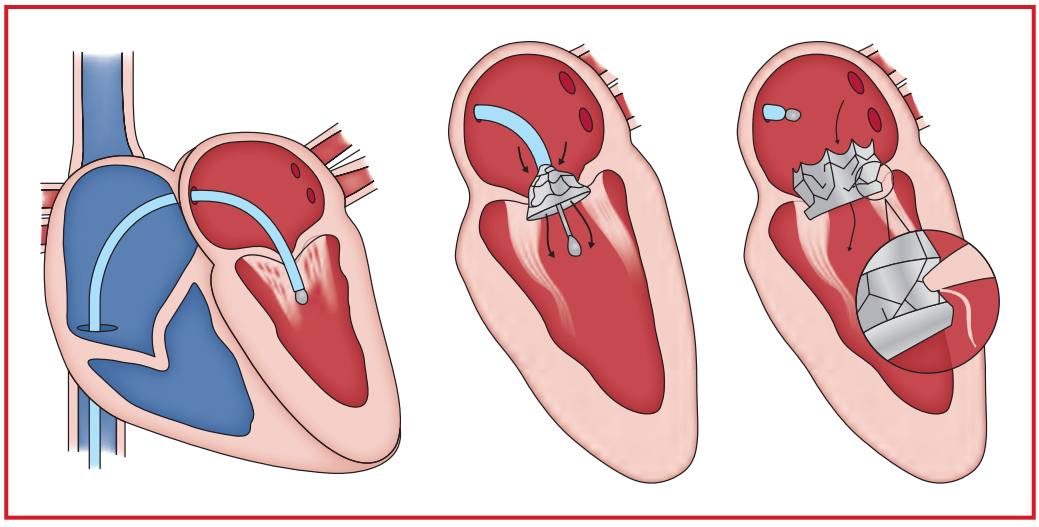


Figure 6.2-10. Transseptal (transvenous) approach to mitral valve (and aortic valve).

Transapical *aortic valve replacement:* Under GETA, a cardiothoracic surgeon exposes the LV apex through an anterolateral intercostal incision. Purse-string sutures are preplaced around the guide wire entry site at the apex, and the beating heart is punctured with insertion of a guide wire across the aortic valve. A sheath is placed, the diseased valve is dilated then the compressed prosthetic valve is positioned and deployed (Fig. 6.2-12) during rapid epicardial pacing to ↓ LV stroke volume and the risk of unwanted device movement. The sheath is removed and the myocardium closed using the preplaced sutures.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transvascular	Transapical
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Vascular sheaths	⇐ + Left mini-thoracotomy
Unique considerations	Anticoagulation (100 U heparin/kg) CPB standby (additional heparin will be necessary for CPB) Inotropic/vasopressor support may be necessary. TEE may be useful.	⇐
Key procedural steps *[with typical complications]*	Retrograde placement of pigtail catheter in the noncoronary sinus (serves as landmark to depict the level of the aortic annulus). *[Intraventricular position with provocation of arrhythmias]*	⇐
	—	Anterolateral mini-thoracotomy, Pericardiotomy *[Pneumothorax, Lung injury, Pleural bleeding]*
	Placement of temporary transvenous (transjugular or transfemoral) pacemaker in the right ventricle, testing of capture *[ventricular perforation by pacemaker, pacer induced hemodynamic deterioration]*	Placement of epicardial pacemaker electrodes, testing of capture *[Bleeding, pacer induced hemodynamic deterioration]*
	—	Placement of purse-string sutures at the anterolateral left ventricular wall, myocardial puncture, placement of delivery sheath. *[bleeding, tamponade, air embolism, MV damage]*
	Retrograde placement of a guidewire across the aortic valve. *[dysrhythmias]*	Antegrade placement of a guidewire across the aortic valve *[dysrhythmias]*

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Transvascular	Transapical
Key procedural steps *[with typical complications]* (Cont'd)	Start of rapid ventricular pacing (160–220 bpm) to ensure a stable balloon position during BAV. *[Hemodynamic deterioration, shock, myocardial ischemia,↑ MR, VF]*	⇐
	BAV *[Calcific embolism with myocardial or cerebral infarction, AR, rupture of aortic annulus/LVOT, aortic dissection, AV block]*	⇐
	Recovery	Recovery
	Retrograde placement of transcatheter aortic delivery catheter *[dysrhythmias]*	Antegrade placement of transcatheter aortic delivery catheter. *[dysrhythmias]*
	Start of rapid ventricular pacing (160–220 bpm) to ensure a stable device position during valve deployment. *[Hemodynamic deterioration, shock, myocardial ischemia,↑ MR, VF]*	⇐
	Valve positioning and deployment. *[Calcific embolism with myocardial or cerebral infarction, coronary flow obstruction, valve embolization/malposition/failure, paravalvular or transvalvular regurgitation, MV damage, rupture of aortic annulus/LVOT, aortic dissection, AV block]*	⇐
	Recovery and assessment of regular valve position and function	⇐
	Removal of delivery sheath using a vascular closure device or surgical closure; crossover ileofemoral angiogram to assess hemostasis and patency. *[bleeding, dissection, ischemia, atrioventricular fistula, pseudoaneurysm]*	Retrieval of delivery sheath, closure of apical puncture site and pericardium; closure of surgical incision. *[bleeding, dysrhythmias]*
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–3 h	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Assess entry sites for hemorrhage	⇐
EBL	Usually <200 mL	⇐
Postop care	Short ICU stay	Short ICU stay and may remain intubated.
Mortality	30 day: 5–11% 1 yr: 18–27%	⇐
Morbidity	MI (<72 h): 0.2–2% Stroke (<30 d): 4–9% Renal injury: 16–26% Bleeding: 12–21% Vascular complications: 14–24% Moderate-severe AR: 5–10%	⇐
Pain score	2–3 (6–8 if transaortic approach)	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	65–90
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	1.3–4% of the population >65 yo
Etiology	Degenerative calcification most common in this age group
Associated conditions	CAD (50%); HTN (40%); CHF, AF. Aortic regurgitation, mitral valve disease, von Willebrand disease with impaired platelet function is common with severe AS.

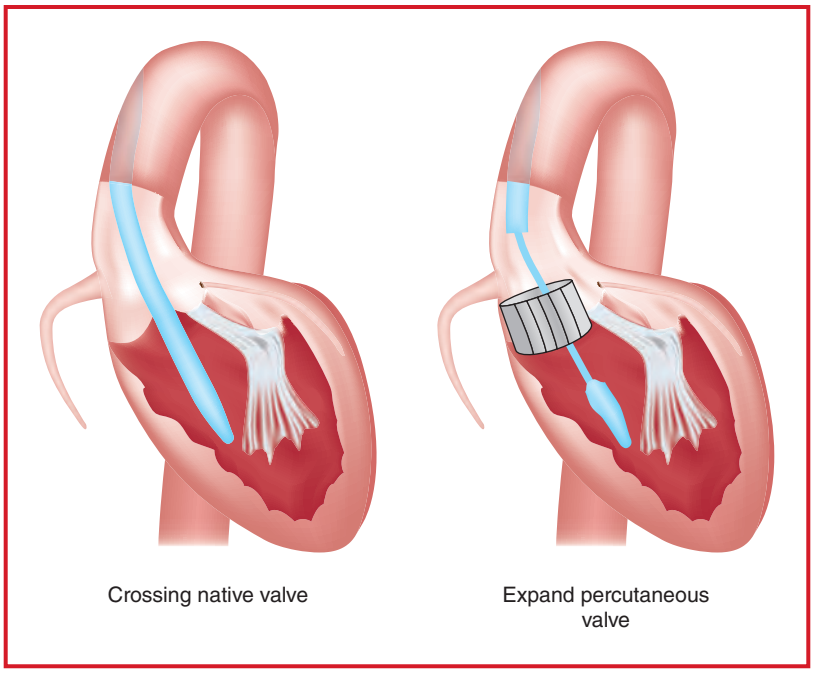


Figure 6.2-11. TAVI—Transcatheter Aortic Valve Implantation: retrograde approach.

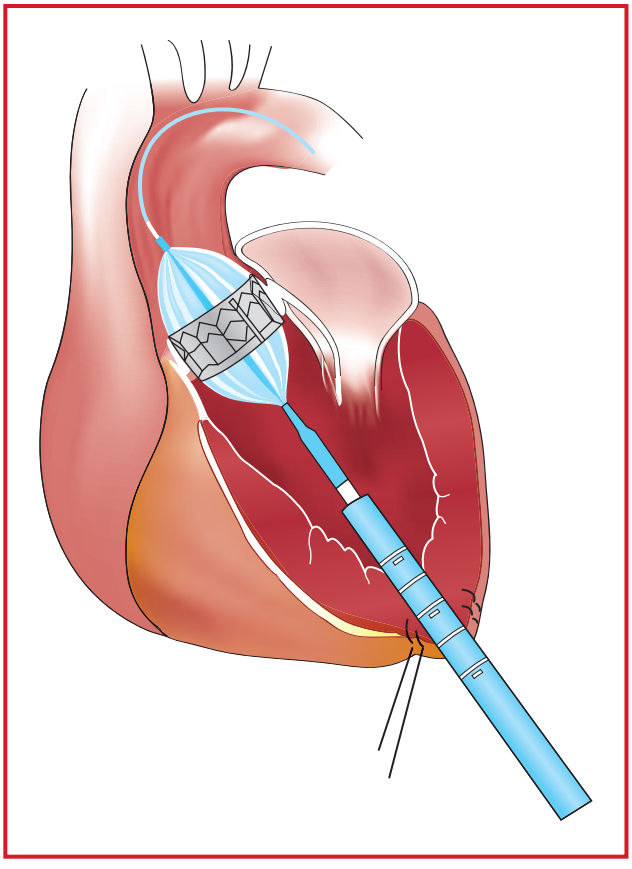


Figure 6.2-12. Transapical approach to aortic valve.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) are typically too frail to successfully undergo open surgical valve replacement. In addition to the problems associated with critical AS, these patients often have severe comorbidities including pulmonary hypertension, significant MR or TR, COPD, and renal disease that may challenge anesthetic management. TAVR is not currently recommended in patients with active endocarditis, thrombi in the left ventricle or ascending aorta, high risk of intraprocedure coronary ostium occlusion, or a valve annulus outside the range of 18–29 mm. For a complete preop discussion of AS, see Anesthetic Considerations for Aortic Valve Replacement, p. 362.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is used for a transapical approach and is often used for transvascular approaches, although sedation may be appropriate for some patients (↓ hemodynamic compromise, faster recovery). Although CPB is not used in these patients, there are brief periods of rapid ventricular pacing (RVP) at 160–220 bpm that will produce a functional asystole (facilitates balloon and valve placement). For a complete discussion of intraop management in AS, see Anesthetic Considerations for Aortic Valve Replacement, p. 362. A right radial art line, external defibrillation pads and standard monitors should be placed before induction. A multilumen CVC and TEE should be inserted postinduction. Maintain hemodynamic stability and coronary perfusion by guided volume repletion, avoiding hypotension or tachycardia, and preserving a sequential A-V rhythm. Before the start of RVP, ensure that MAP is >75 mm Hg (systolic BP >120 mm Hg) using vasopressors as necessary. Hypertension increases the risks of ventricular rupture.

POSTOPERATIVE

After GETA most patients can be extubated in the procedure room. For most patients, hemodynamics are improved immediately following valve replacement. However, diastolic dysfunction often persists and may worsen in the postop period, requiring continued hemodynamic support. Hypertension should be avoided to decrease the risk of ventricular rupture. In patients requiring a minithoracotomy, intercostal nerve blocks placed through the incision by the surgeons will provide good pain relief. Alternatively, paravertebral catheters can be used to infuse local anesthetic for continuous analgesia.

SUGGESTED READING

1. Billings FT IV, Kodali SK, Shanewise JS: Transcatheter aortic valve implantation: anesthetic considerations. *Anesth Analg* 2009; 108(5):1453–62.
2. Cheng DC, Martin J, Lal A, et al: Minimally invasive versus conventional open mitral valve surgery: a meta-analysis and systematic review. *Innovations (Phila)* 2011; 6(2):84–103.
3. Cheung A, Al-Lawati A: Transcatheter mitral valve-in-valve implantation: current experience and review of literature. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2013; 28(2):181–6.
4. Kodali SK, Williams MR, Smith CR, et al: PARTNER Trial Investigators. Two-year outcomes after transcatheter or surgical aortic-valve replacement. *N Engl J Med*. 2012; 366(18):1686–95.
5. Lehr EJ, Rodriguez E, Chitwood WR: Robotic cardiac surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(1):77–85.
6. Schmitto JD, Mokashi SA, Cohn LH: Past, present, and future of minimally invasive mitral valve surgery. *J Heart Valve Dis* 2011; 20(5):493–8.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR PERCUTANEOUS AND PORT-ACCESS PROCEDURES

PREOPERATIVE

As with all anesthetic procedures, the use of the port-access system should not be attempted without appropriate training. Catheter placement and monitoring relies on TEE and/or fluoroscopy. The evaluation of the patient for port-access cardiac surgery should parallel that of patients having conventional cardiac surgery. (For mitral valve surgery, see p. 365; for CABG surgery, see p. 356.) There are, however, a number of specific conditions that preclude the use of the port-access system:

1. Aortic regurgitation (AR): Although mild-to-moderate AR is not a contraindication, it may make the delivery of antegrade cardioplegia via the endoaortic clamp catheter (EAC) problematic; therefore, insertion of the endocoronary sinus catheter (ESC) is very important. Severe AR is a contraindication.

2. Atherosclerotic disease of the aorta: Perfusion may be associated with embolization of atheromatous plaques (particularly pedunculated lesions).
3. PVD: Femoral bypass may be associated with retrograde arterial dissection. PVD and tortuous femoral and iliac vessels are contraindications to use of femoral arterial cannulation.
4. Thoracic aortic aneurysm/Marfan syndrome: Port-access procedures require passage of the EAC into the thoracic aorta and inflation of the EAC balloon; therefore, aneurysms or a weakened aortic wall are contraindications.
5. Scarring of the pleural cavity (e.g., chest trauma, previous thoracotomy) may make surgical access difficult although the surgical approach may be desirable in the patient with previous median sternotomy.
6. Inability to obtain TEE or fluoroscope imaging because monitoring and placement of catheters relies on imaging.

Preop evaluation should focus on the underlying pathophysiology (valvular disease vs CAD). In addition, the following aspects should be considered:

Respiratory	OLV is used to facilitate surgical exposure; thus, evaluation of patients with severe lung disease may include CXR, ABG, PFTs (see Thoracic Surgery, pp. 277–344).
Cardiovascular	The vascular system should be evaluated with respect to insertion of the catheters and cannulae for endovascular CPB. Severity of arterial occlusive or atherosclerotic disease should be evaluated (embolization/dissection risk). The possible presence of a persistent left SVC should be considered. **Tests:** CXR; aortography; iliofemoral arteriography; vascular MRI/MRA; vascular ultrasound; TEE
Premedication	As for the underlying condition. Usually, a mild anxiolytic (e.g., midazolam 1–3 mg iv) is sufficient.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA (DLT or BB). Anesthetic technique depends on the underlying pathophysiology (e.g., valvular disease vs CAD). Early extubation and postop pain relief can be facilitated by using intrathecal narcotics (e.g., Duramorph 10 mcg/kg intrathecal) injected before induction.

Induction	Typically, induction can be accomplished with etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) or propofol (0.5–2 mg/kg), with fentanyl (5–20 mcg/kg) and pancuronium or vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg). The overall length of port-access procedures is similar to or slightly longer than conventional approaches, so that a long-acting muscle relaxant can be used. Intubation is accomplished with a DLT, and its placement is checked by auscultation or bronchoscopy. A bronchial blocker or Univent tube may also be used to provide selective lung ventilation.
Maintenance	With the goal of early extubation, it is important to avoid oversedation. The use of volatile agents or a propofol infusion (25–100 mcg/kg/min) before, during, and after CPB will facilitate early extubation. During dissection of the IMA or exposure of the left atrium, OLV is needed.
Emergence	At the end of the procedure, intercostal blocks with ropivacaine or bupivacaine may be placed, and infiltration of the skin incision also is helpful. Extubation in the OR may be appropriate for stable patients. Alternatively, the patient is transported to ICU and ventilated. The DLT may be exchanged for a single-lumen tube when postop mechanical ventilation is required.
Special considerations: **Placement/monitoring of endocardiopulmonary system**	The port-access system consists of CPB with venous drainage via an endovenous drain (EVD) and an aortic or femoral arterial return cannula, which is Y-ed to accept the EAC. These are placed by the surgeon with the aid of fluoroscopy and/or TEE. Additional drainage of the right side of the heart is accomplished via an endopulmonary vent (EPV) placed by the anesthesiologist. Immediately after intubation and before CVP insertion, a TEE exam should be performed to exclude any contraindication to endo-CPB (e.g., severe AR, aortic atheromatous disease, aortic aneurysm); the size of the

Special considerations: Placement/ monitoring of endocardio-pulmonary system (cont'd)	ascending aorta should be measured (aids the surgeon in inflation of the aortic balloon); and the coronary sinus should be identified to aid placement of the ESC (coronary sinus catheter). The right IJ vein is then cannulated with two sheaths (9 Fr for EPV and 11 Fr for the ESC). Cardioplegia is delivered in an anterograde fashion via the EAC or retrograde via an ESC, also placed by the anesthesiologist (Fig. 6.2-2).
Placement of ESC	The ESC can be placed with fluoroscopy and/or TEE. The coronary sinus is identified on TEE (transverse view of the right atrium or longitudinal bicaval view). Prior to placement, the patient should be partially anticoagulated with 70 U/kg of heparin. The ESC is placed through the 11 Fr sheath. After the tip of the catheter engages the coronary sinus, the catheter is advanced either directly or over a guiding wire until the occlusion balloon is 2–4 cm inside the sinus. Position is confirmed by inflating the balloon and obtaining ventricularization of the pressure tracing. Careful note should be taken of the volume of fluid required to occlude the coronary sinus (1–2 mL) so that overinflation and possible coronary sinus trauma do not occur. Contrast injection will define the correct positioning of the ESC in the coronary sinus. Care should be taken to avoid injecting contrast too quickly, thus pushing the ESC out of the coronary sinus. A time limit (20–30 min) should be set to pass this catheter, as repeated attempts increase the risk of cardiac injury (e.g., cardiac perforation).
Placement of EPV	The EPV (pulmonary vent) is positioned by advancing the catheter, using balloon flotation with pressure monitoring (as with a Swan-Ganz catheter). Fluoroscopy and/or TEE also may be used.
Placement of EVD	The EVD (venous drain) cannula is placed via the femoral vein into the right atrium over a guide wire. Fluoroscopy or TEE is used to ensure that the wire enters the SVC before advancing the EVD into position. The tip of the EVD should be at the SVC/RA junction or just inside the SVC.
Placement of arterial cannula	The aorta may be cannulated with a "Y" cannula with an incising introducer. For femoral arterial cannulation, a guide wire is advanced under fluoroscopy and no resistance to its passage should be felt. The guide wire is advanced into the descending aorta and its intraluminal position confirmed on TEE prior to advancing the aortic return cannulation into its final position. The perfusionist should confirm normal line pressures with a test bolus of fluid and ✓ that normal arterial pulsation is present. These precautions will decrease the likelihood of arterial dissection.
Placement of EAC	The EAC (endoaortic clamp) may be advanced via the "Y" arterial cannula. For a femoral arterial cannula, the EAC is advanced over a guide wire with imaging into the ascending aorta so that the tip of the catheter is just proximal to the sinotubular ridge (2–3 cm above the aortic valve). Position is confirmed by contrast injection and/or TEE. It is also useful to identify the takeoff of the innominate artery in relation to the balloon. Migration of the balloon proximally or distally can occur, and thus, its position needs to be monitored. Monitoring of the pressure in the aortic root via this catheter should show that the mean aortic root pressure is the same as mean radial artery pressure prior to the initiation of bypass.
Sequence of events during endo-CPB	After initiation of bypass, the anesthesiologist should observe the descending aorta to exclude aortic dissection and open the EPV to allow venting. EPV pressures during bypass should be negative (positive pressures may indicate inadequate decompression of the heart or kinking of the EPV). Once adequate CPB is established and the heart is drained, the EAC balloon can be inflated (balloon pressure = 250–350 mm Hg). Occlusion of the aorta is confirmed by a differential between the radial and aortic root pressures and by an aortic root contrast injection. Antegrade cardioplegia is delivered via the EAC with careful monitoring to ensure that the balloon is not displaced distally,

Sequence of events during endo-CPB (cont'd)	thus occluding the innominate artery (see Monitoring of endo-CPB: regional perfusion, below). After cardioplegic arrest, retrograde cardioplegia may be delivered via the ESC, and the left side of the heart may be vented via the EAC. Avoid overventing, high systemic pressures, or high CPB flow, which could displace the EAC toward the aortic valve. Initiation of retrograde cardioplegia should begin with a low flow to avoid displacing the ESC, followed by inflation of the ESC balloon until the pressure in the coronary sinus just starts to rise, indicating coronary sinus occlusion. No further inflation of the balloon should take place. Normal coronary sinus perfusion pressure is < 40 mm Hg. After retrograde cardioplegia is delivered, the ESC balloon is deflated. Once the surgery is completed, the EAC balloon is deflated (after deairing procedures, as needed); the heart is reperfused; and the EAC is removed. Prior to weaning from CPB, mobility of the ESC and EPV should be assessed in mitral procedures to ensure that they have not been incorporated in the atrial suture line. Weaning from bypass is routine. The ESC should be removed prior to heparin reversal, and the EPV can be replaced with a pulmonary artery catheter, if needed.	
Blood and fluid requirements	As for underlying condition: For mitral valve surgery, see p. 368. For CABG, see p. 354.	
Monitoring	As for underlying condition: For mitral valve surgery, see p. 368. For CABG, see p. 354.	Special monitoring considerations for port-access are discussed below. External defibrillator pads should be placed on all patients.
Positioning	Supine Roll under left chest for CABG and under right chest for mitral valve	
Monitoring of endo-CPB	Regional perfusion	Distal migration of the EAC (innominate artery occlusion → ↓ cerebral blood flow) is possible, especially while cardioplegia is being delivered when pressure in the aortic root exceeds that in the systemic arterial system. Monitoring for regional perfusion includes: (1) Right-sided arterial pressure—radial, brachial, or axillary. The pump-induced artifact may be of use if roller heads are being used. (2) Bilateral arterial lines—right-sided, plus a second line in the left radial or in the femoral vessels to allow comparison. (3) TEE—EAC visible in the ascending aorta proximal to the innominate artery. (4) Transcranial or carotid artery Doppler. (5) Fluoroscopy
	Proximal EAC balloon migration	Most likely to occur during aortic root venting when the systemic pressure exceeds aortic root pressure. Monitored by TEE.
	Cardiac decompression	TEE can be useful in monitoring for adequate decompression of the heart.
	EAC balloon pressure	This is usually monitored by the perfusionist and ranges from 250–550 mm Hg. Decreases in pressure may be 2° proximal migration of the balloon into a wider area of the ascending aorta, rupture of the balloon, or prolapse into the left ventricle. Loss of balloon occlusion is indicated by blood in the surgical field, return of cardiac activity, cardiac distension, increased root venting, and TEE evidence.

Monitoring of endo-CPB (cont'd)	Aortic root pressure	< 80 mm Hg while giving cardioplegia; 0–10 mm Hg during venting. Overventing should be avoided, as should venting when the left side of the heart is open, to avoid drawing air into the aortic root.
	Intracardiac air	TEE is very useful for determining that adequate deairing of the heart has occurred.
Complications of endo-CPB	Retrograde aortic dissection	
	Coronary sinus damage	
	EAC balloon migration	
	EAC balloon rupture	Especially 2° sutures placed in the mitral valve annulus.
	Retained EPV in atrial suture line	It is important that the surgeon ✓ the chest wall before closure.
	Chest-wall hemorrhage	
	Limb ischemia	May follow femoral cannulation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	As for the primary procedure Low CO Chest-wall hemorrhage Problems associated with peripheral cannulation (e.g., dissection, embolization) Perivalvular leak Heart block	See mitral valve surgery (p. 359) or CABG (p. 359).
Pain management	Parenteral narcotics NSAIDs	Pain control is important to facilitate early extubation. Intrathecal narcotics and/or intercostal blocks with wound infiltration may be useful.
Tests	ECG Electrolytes ABG	

Suggested Reading

1. Grossi EA, Galloway AC, LaPietra A, et al: Minimally invasive mitral valve surgery: a 6-year experience with 714 patients. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2002; 74:660–4.

CHAPTER

6.3 Vascular Surgery

SURGEONS

James I. Fann, MD
R. Scott Mitchell, MD
Clayton Kaiser, MD
Stephen T. Kee, MD (*Endovascular stent-grafting*)
Michael D. Dake, MD (*Endovascular stent-grafting*)

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Pieter J. A. van der Starre, MD, PhD

CAROTID ENDARTERECTOMY (VASCULAR)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Carotid endarterectomy (CEA) continues to be one of the commonly performed open vascular surgery procedures in the United States, even as carotid stenting is being employed as an alternative approach. Because of presumed microemboli from stenotic/ulcerated plaques at the carotid bifurcation, CEA is an effective procedure to reduce the risk of subsequent stroke. The NASCET Collaborators determined, in a prospective, randomized, blinded trial, that CEA is more effective than medical therapy for symptomatic patients with internal carotid artery narrowing between 60% and 90%. Symptoms are usually hemispheric (contralateral, upper or lower extremity paresis or numbness) or retinal (unilateral monocular blindness). Symptoms may be transient (TIA or reversible ischemic neurological deficit [RIND]) or permanent (CVA). The Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study (ACAS) has shown benefit from prophylactic CEA in asymptomatic patients with > 60% stenosis of the internal carotid artery. The Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial 1(ACST-1) is a recent randomized study of patients assigned to immediate CEA or deferral of any carotid artery procedure. Recruiting patients between 1993 to 2003 and following until 2006–08, this study shows that successful CEA for asymptomatic patients younger than 75 years of age reduces 10-year stroke risks, particularly for disabling or fatal strokes. Further studies will provide information on the risks from unoperated carotid lesions (or optimal medical management), on future stroke risks, and on 10-year survival rates.

Although some surgeons routinely prefer local anesthesia, most prefer GA with careful hemodynamic monitoring because of the frequent concomitant CAD. The carotid artery is approached through an oblique neck incision along the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. After division of the common facial vein, the carotid sheath is opened and the carotid artery is exposed, avoiding injury to the phrenic, vagus, ansa hypoglossi, and hypoglossal nerves (Fig. 6.3-1). After controlling the internal, external, and common carotid arteries, heparin is administered, and the internal, external, and common carotid arteries are clamped sequentially. To maintain carotid perfusion, an indwelling shunt may be utilized (Fig. 6.3-2B), at the discretion of the surgeon. During clamping mean arterial blood pressure is maintained at approximately 100 mm Hg with phenylephrine infusion or boluses. An endarterectomy plane is established proximally (Fig. 6.3-2C) and developed distally into both the external and internal branches, with establishment of a fine tapered end point. After removal of all thrombus, loose smooth-muscle fibers and endothelium, the arteriotomy is closed, with or without a patch, the artery flushed, and flow restored. The incision is closed after meticulous hemostasis has been ensured.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carotid artery disease

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with neck extended and turned away from the side of the lesion
Incision	Anterior to sternocleidomastoid from earlobe to base of neck or curvilinear in a skin crease over the carotid bifurcation
Special instrumentation	EEG monitor; ± shunt
Unique considerations	Capability to measure stump pressure may be needed. This can be accomplished by a high-pressure arterial line passed off the field to a pressure transducer. Avoid ↓ BP during carotid cross-clamping. An indwelling shunt may be utilized to restore carotid perfusion. Heparin 5000–10,000 U 5 min prior to cross-clamping, and protamine may be given after restoration of flow.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv at induction of anesthesia
Surgical time	Carotid cross-clamp: 30 min Total operating time: 90 min
Closing considerations	To assess the patient's neurologic status, it is best to be able to awaken and extubate the patient at the conclusion of the procedure. Avoidance of HTN is also critical during this period because the endarterectomy tissues are thin and friable.
EBL	100–200 mL
Postop care	ICU × 12–24 h; BP control; cardiac monitoring
Mortality	1%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	MI: Major cause of postop mortality Cranial nerve injury (recurrent and superior laryngeal nerves): 39% Restenosis Asymptomatic: 9–12% Symptomatic: < 3% Neurologic complications: < 2% Hemorrhage: 1% False aneurysm: < 0.5%
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	55–80 yr
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	Second most common vascular surgical procedure (after AAA repair)
Etiology	Arteriosclerosis; fibromuscular dysplasia
Associated conditions	Significant CAD coexists with carotid artery disease in at least 30% of patients, necessitating careful cardiac and hemodynamic monitoring.

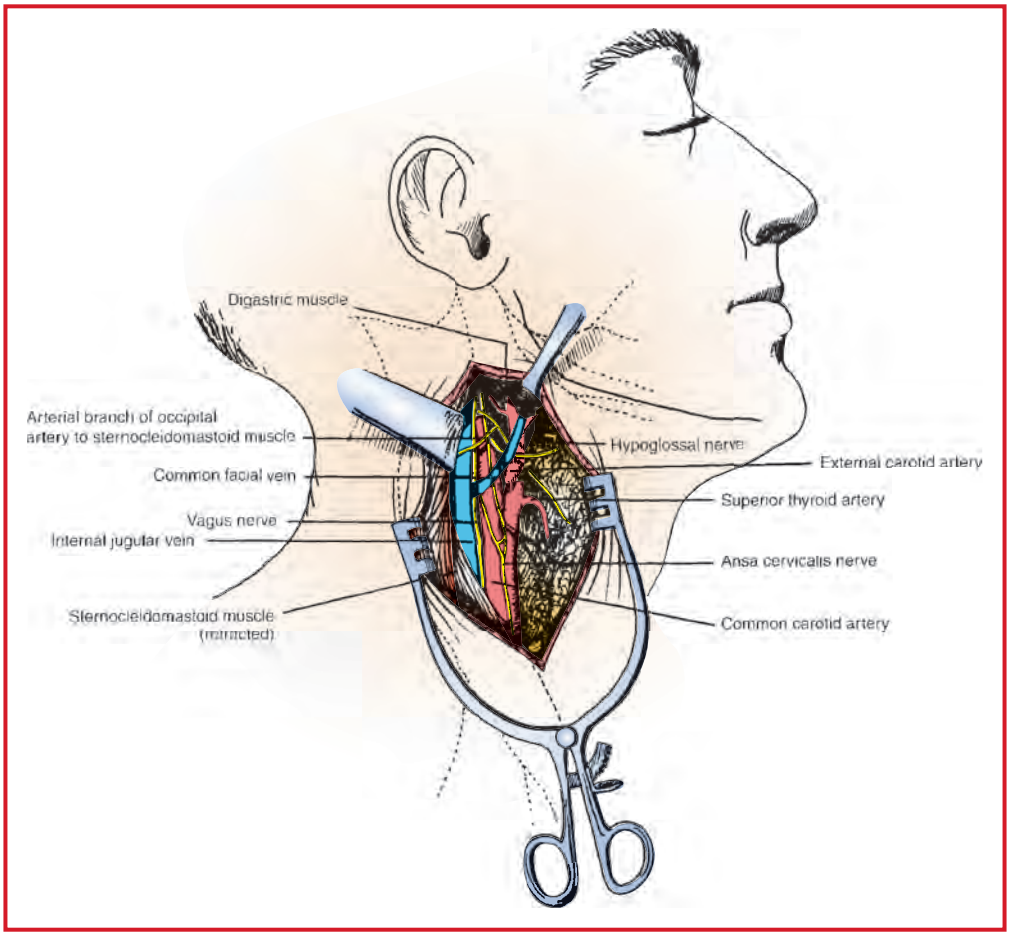


Figure 6.3-1. Exposure of the carotid bifurcation. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

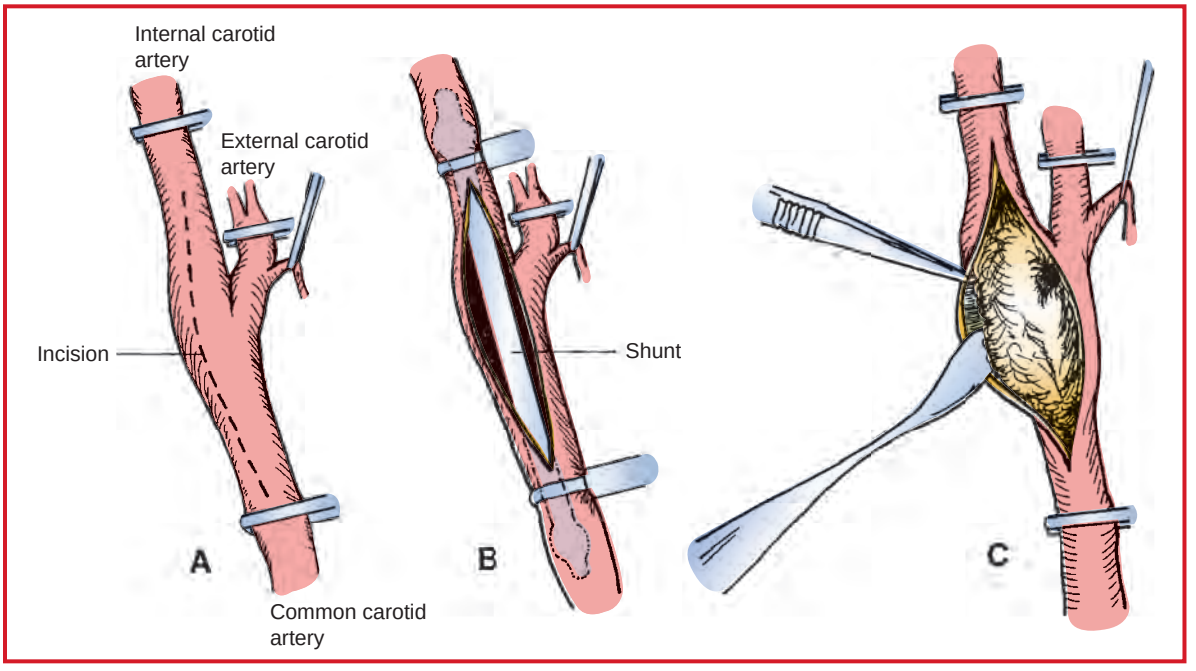


Figure 6.3-2. Carotid endarterectomy: **A.** Following occlusion of the superior thyroid and internal, external, and common carotid arteries, an arteriotomy is performed opposite the external carotid take off. **B.** A shunt may be placed to restore internal carotid flow. **C.** Plaque is separated from the artery wall. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy*, 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Carotid Endarterectomy (Neurosurgical) in Extracranial Procedures, p. 135.

Suggested Readings

1. Doig D, Brown M: Carotid stenting versus endarterectomy. *Annu Rev Med* 2012; 63:259–76.
2. Flanigan DP, Flanigan ME, Dorne AL, et al: Long-term results of 442 consecutive, standardized carotid endarterectomy procedures in standard-risk and high-risk patients. *J Vasc Surg* 2007; 46:876–82.
3. Halliday A, Harrison M, Hayter E, et al: Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial (ACST) Collaborative Group. 10-year stroke prevention after successful carotid endarterectomy for asymptomatic stenosis (ACST-1): a multicentre randomized trial. *Lancet* 2010; 376:1074–84.
4. Hines GL, Feuerman M, Cappello D, et al: Results of carotid endarterectomy with pericardial patch angioplasty: rate and predictors of restenosis. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2007; 21:767–71.
5. Howell SJ: Carotid endarterectomy. *Br J Anaesth* 2007; 99:119–31.
6. Mantese VA, Timaran CH, Chiu D, Begg RJ, Brott TG, CREST Investigators: Carotid Revascularization Endarterectomy versus stenting Trial (CREST): stenting versus carotid endarterectomy for carotid disease. *Stroke* 2010; 41:S31–4.
7. Moritz S, Kasprzak P, Arlt M, et al: Accuracy of cerebral monitoring in detecting cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy: a comparison of transcranial Doppler sonography, near-infrared spectroscopy, stump pressure, and somatosensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology* 2007; 107:563–9.
8. NASCET Collaborators: *N Engl J Med* 1991; 325:445–53.
9. Raman G, Moorthy D, Hadar N, et al: Management strategies for asymptomatic carotid stenosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 2013; 158:676–85.
10. Rockman C, Loh S: Carotid endarterectomy: still the standard of care for carotid bifurcation disease. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2011; 24:10–20.
11. Stoneham MD, Thompson MP: Arterial pressure management and carotid endarterectomy. *Br J Anesth* 2009; 102: 442–52.
12. Young B, Moore WS, Robertson JT, et al: An analysis of perioperative surgical mortality and morbidity in the Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study. ACAS Investigators. *Stroke* 1996; 27:2216–24.

REPAIR OF THORACIC AORTIC ANEURYSMS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Repairs of aneurysms of the ascending, transverse arch, and descending thoracic aorta are performed to repair expanding or leaking aneurysms, or prophylactically to prevent rupture. Patients with Sx of rapid expansion or aneurysm leaking may require urgent repair. Each surgical type—ascending, arch, and descending—is considered separately, as follows. Aneurysms of the **ascending aorta** may arise 2° the degenerative changes of atherosclerosis (exacerbated by old age, HTN, tobacco use); from inborn errors of metabolism (Marfan syndrome); or from poststenotic dilatation and continued expansion of a chronic dissection. Diseases of the entire ascending aorta, including the sinuses of Valsalva, as in Marfan syndrome and annuloaortic ectasia, require replacement of the ascending aorta and aortic root with a composite valved conduit or a valve-sparing aortic root replacement (VSARR), whereas acquired diseases limited to the ascending aorta usually allow replacement of the aorta distal to the sinotubular ridge. Repair of the ascending aorta is usually accomplished on full CPB with an aortic cross-clamp placed just proximal to the innominate artery and arterial inflow through the femoral artery. The aneurysmal ascending aorta is replaced with a Dacron tube graft from the sinotubular ridge to the innominate artery. Dilatation of the sinuses of Valsalva mandates replacement with a composite valved conduit sewn proximally to the aortic annulus and distally to a normal caliber ascending aorta, with coronary ostia reimplanted in the side of the tube graft, although in some cases with a normal-appearing aortic valve VSARR may be performed.

Aneurysms of the **aortic arch** are the least common of thoracic aortic aneurysms. Because of the need for concomitant replacement of the arch vessels, however, they are the most complex to repair. Total CPB is utilized, and cerebral protection is accomplished either by CPB perfusion of one or all cerebral vessels, by retrograde cerebral perfusion (RCP), or by profound hypothermic circulatory arrest at 15–18°C. Repair can originate from the aortic annulus and extend distally to the mid-descending thoracic aorta at the level of the carina. Routine caval cannulation is accomplished via a median sternotomy, and arterial access is gained via the femoral artery or axillary artery. If circulatory arrest is to be used, the patient is cooled to 15–18°C, the heart is arrested, and with no distal cross-clamp, distal anastomosis is accomplished, followed by implantation of the cerebral vessels attached to an island of aorta. This procedure is often performed with the use of RCP to remove all air from the cerebral circulation. Perfusion is then reinstituted, the graft clamped proximal to the innominate artery, and the proximal anastomosis performed, while the patient is being rewarmed. Alternatively, if one elects to perfuse the cerebral vessels, the innominate and left carotid arteries can be individually cannulated and perfused via a "Y" connection from the femoral arterial perfusion line. If axillary cannulation is used alone, antegrade cerebral perfusion can be achieved by control of the proximal innominate artery. This is termed "unilateral cerebral perfusion" and requires close monitoring with cerebral oximetry to estimate the adequacy of contralateral (e.g., left sided) perfusion. If a unilateral drop in cerebral oximetry occurs the surgeon may convert to bilateral perfusion by placing a catheter into the left carotid artery from inside the arch. The necessity for profound hypothermic circulatory arrest is thus avoided. After completion of the distal aortic arch, vessel island, and proximal aortic anastomoses, weaning from CPB and subsequent steps proceed in a routine fashion.

Repair of aneurysms of the **descending thoracic aorta** is usually performed for symptomatic and leaking aneurysms, enlarging aneurysms, and aneurysms of sufficient size to warrant prophylactic repair. **Aneurysm repair** is accomplished through a left posterolateral thoracotomy on full or partial CPB. After entry into the left thorax, venous drainage for CPB may be obtained from the left atrium (partial bypass) or the femoral vein (full bypass), and arterial return is via the femoral artery. This is termed "unilateral cerebral perfusion" and requires close monitoring with cerebral oximetry to estimate the adequacy of contralateral (e.g., left-sided) perfusion. If a unilateral drop in cerebral oximetry occurs, the surgeon may convert to bilateral perfusion by placing a catheter into the left carotid artery from inside the arch. If partial bypass without an oxygenator is elected, thus minimizing the amount of heparin necessary, venous access can be gained via the pulmonary veins or left atrium and arterial return via the femoral artery or distal thoracic aorta. After institution of bypass, the aorta is cross-clamped above and below the aneurysm, the aorta is divided, a tube graft is interposed, and clamps are removed. The patient is weaned from bypass, and the operation is terminated in the routine fashion.

Usual preop diagnosis: Enlarging or symptomatic aortic aneurysm

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Ascending Aorta	Transverse Arch	Descending Aorta
Position	Supine	⇐	Lateral decubitus with left side up
Incision	Median sternotomy	⇐	Left posterolateral thoracotomy with access to femoral artery and vein

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Ascending Aorta	Transverse Arch	Descending Aorta
Special instrumentation	CPB, if used.	Complete hemodynamic monitors; CPB	⇐ + DLT; lower extremity BP monitor
Unique considerations	Routine CPB hemodynamic monitoring	If profound hypothermic arrest is utilized, neuroprotective adjuncts, including local hypothermia, barbiturates, and steroids, should be used.	OLV; partial CPB
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 40–120 min CPB: 70–150 min Total: 2.5–5 h	Aortic cross-clamp: 75–120 min Circulatory arrest: 30–45 min CPB: 3–4.5 h Total: 4–6 h	Aortic cross-clamp: 25–45 min CPB: 30–60 min Total: 2.5–4.5 h
Closing considerations	Aggressive management of coagulopathy, if a long pump run is necessary.	Aggressive management of coagulopathy	Replacement of DLT with single-lumen tube
EBL	300–400 mL	400–700 mL	200–300 mL
Postop care	ICU, intubated 5–20 h, depending on preop condition	ICU, intubated 6–24 h	ICU, intubated 5–24 h
Mortality	5–10%	10–15%	⇐
Morbidity	Renal failure: 5–10% CVA: 4–6% Respiratory failure: 3–5% MI: 2–5%	— 2–5% 10% ⇐	10–15% 2–4% 10–15% 2–4%
Pain score	7–10	7–10	9–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	23–80 yr (mean = 55 yr)	50–75 yr	34–79 yr (mean = 65 yr)
Male:Female	3:1	2:1	2.5:1
Incidence	10–30/yr at tertiary center	5–10/yr at tertiary center	10–30/yr at tertiary center
Etiology	Degenerative disease Atherosclerotic disease	⇐ ⇐ Chronic dissections	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Associated conditions	CHF (50%); angina (30%); HTN (30%); COPD (15%)	Aortic valve disease (30%); COPD (20%); CAD (15%)	HTN (65%); CAD (50%); COPD (30%); CHF (10%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, patients with thoracic aortic aneurysms have atherosclerosis and HTN. A subset of patients will have a connective tissue disorder (e.g., Marfan syndrome). In contrast with thoracic aortic dissections, thoracic aortic aneurysms may be of a more chronic and asymptomatic nature. A ruptured or leaking aneurysm, however, may have a more precipitous presentation.

Cardiovascular	**Arch and ascending aneurysms** (60–70% of aneurysms): commonly associated with HTN, cystic medial necrosis, connective tissue disorder (e.g., Marfan syndrome), atherosclerosis, or syphilis. CHF may occur 2° to dilation of the aortic annulus and aortic incompetence (AR). Aneurysmal compression or intrinsic disease of the coronary arteries may result in myocardial ischemia. **Descending (30%):** usually associated with HTN, cystic medial necrosis, Marfan syndrome, and atherosclerosis. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ for LVH, ischemia. ECHO: ✓ for valvular disease, size and extent of aneurysm, LV function. Angiography: ✓ exact extent of aneurysm (allows planning of procedure and sites for arterial monitoring), coronary artery anatomy, and degree of occlusion.
Respiratory	Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy may → hoarseness (ascending/arch aneurysms). Tracheal deviation ± stridor or dyspnea may be present 2° tracheal or bronchial compression (✓ CT scan). Hemoptysis or a hemorrhagic pleural effusion suggest an aneurysmal leakage or rupture. The implications include the possibility of compromised oxygenation, risk of massive hemorrhage on thoracotomy, increased intrathoracic pressure, and consequent decreased venous return (especially when IPPV is instituted). **Tests:** CXR: ✓ for widened mediastinum, distortion of trachea and left main bronchus (because it may affect the placement of DLT); MRI/CT with contrast: ✓ anatomic relation of aneurysm to surrounding structures (e.g., trachea/bronchi); others as indicated from H&P.
Neurologic	Any deficit should be well documented as neurologic sequelae (e.g., paraplegia/paraparesia) may occur after surgery.
Renal	Renal problems may occur 2° to AR (↓CO) and heart failure, HTN, or involvement of renal arteries in the aneurysm. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; consider Cr clearance; electrolytes
Gastrointestinal	Descending aneurysms that involve the celiac or superior mesenteric arteries may → bowel ischemia. **Tests:** Consider ABG: ✓ persistent metabolic acidosis (2% bowel ischemia). If indicated by H&P, consider abdominal CT/x-ray: ✓ ileus.
Hematological	If time permits, consider autologous blood donation; preexisting coagulopathy increases risk of the procedure. **Tests:** PT; PTT; Hct/Hb
Musculoskeletal	✓ Marfanoid appearance; others as indicated from H&P.
Laboratory	Others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Pain and anxiety may significantly contribute to HTN and should be treated (e.g., morphine 0.1 mg/kg iv ± midazolam 0.025–0.1 mg/kg iv); but avoid obtundation. Because many of these patients present emergently, consider full-stomach precautions—H_2 antagonists (e.g., ranitidine 5 0 mg iv), metoclopramide (10 mg iv), and antacids (e.g., Na citrate 0.3 M 30 mL po).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The anesthetic management of patients with aortic dissections and aortic aneurysms are similar in many respects. For intraop and postop management of these conditions, see Anesthetic Considerations for Repair of Acute Aortic Dissections and Dissecting Aneurysms, p. 418.

Suggested Readings

1. Bisschoff MS, Di Luozzo G, Griepp EB, Griepp RB: Spinal cord preservation in thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. *Perspect Vasc Surg Endovasc Ther* 2011; 23:214–22.
2. Cheung AT, Pochettino A, McGarvey ML, et al: Strategies to manage paraplegia risk after endovascular stent repair of descending thoracic aortic aneurysms. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2005; 80:1280–8.
3. Coady MA, Ikonomidis JS, Cheung AT, et al: A surgical management of descending thoracic aortic disease: open and endovascular approaches: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 2010; 121:2780–804.
4. Estrera AL, Sheinbaum R, Miller CC, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid drainage during thoracic aortic repair: safety and current management. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2009; 88:9–15.

5. Fann JI: Descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms. *Coron Artery Dis* 2002; 13:93–102.
6. Fischbein MP, Miller DC: Long-term durability of open thoracic and thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2009; 22:74–80.
7. Goodwin MR, Blasius KR, Brand J, Silvay G: One-lung ventilation for surgical repair of thoracic aortic aneurysm. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2013; 17:146–51.
8. Harrer M, Waldenberger FR, Weiss G, et al: Aortic arch surgery using bilateral antegrade selective cerebral perfusion in combination with near-infrared spectroscopy. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2010; 38:561–7.
9. Hoel AW: Aneurysmal disease: thoracic aorta. *Surg Clin N Am* 2013; 93:893–910.
10. Hsu C, Kwan G, van Driel M, Rophael J: Distal aortic perfusion during thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair for prevention of paraplegia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; Issue 3. Art. No. CD008197.
11. Kahn RA, Stone ME, Moskowitz DM: Anesthetic consideration for descending thoracic aortic aneurysm repair. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2007; 11:205–23.
12. Kazui T, Yamashita K, Washiyama N, et al: Aortic arch replacement using selective cerebral perfusion. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; 83:S796–8.
13. Milewski RK, Pacini D, Moser GW, et al: Retrograde and antegrade cerebral perfusion: results in short elective arch reconstructive times. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2010; 89:1448–57.
14. Misfield M, Leontyev S, Borger MA, et al: What is the best strategy for brain protection in patients undergoing aortic arch surgery? A single center experience of 636 patients. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2012; 93:1502–8.
15. Olsson C, Eriksson N, Stahle E, et al: Surgical and long-term mortality in 2634 consecutive patients operated on the proximal thoracic aorta. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2007; 31:963–9.
16. Piazza M, Ricotta JJ: Open surgical repair of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2012; 6:600–5.
17. Reilly LM, Chuter TA: Endovascular repair of thoracoabdominal aneurysms: design options, device construct, patient selection and complications. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 2009; 50:447–60.
18. Stone DH, Brewster DC, Kwolek CJ, et al: Stent-graft versus open-surgical repair of the thoracic aorta: mid-term results. *J Vasc Surg* 2006; 44:1188–97.

ENDOVASCULAR STENT-GRAFTING OF AORTIC ANEURYSMS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The standard treatment for descending **thoracic aortic aneurysm** is surgical resection of the aneurysm and replacement with a segment of prosthetic graft material. Although resection of aneurysms often can be performed without the need for extracorporeal circulation, the procedure has a reported mortality rate of up to 50% in emergency cases and 12–15% in elective cases. Transluminal endovascular stent-grafting offers an alternative treatment that is less invasive, less hazardous, and potentially less expensive than standard operative repair.

In the initial workup, all patients have contrast-enhanced spiral CT scans of the thorax and thoracic aortography to assess the dimensions of the aneurysms. The most important features to consider in evaluating an aortic aneurysm for endovascular stent-graft treatment is the presence of an adequate proximal and distal neck. A minimum neck length of at least 1.5 cm is required to allow secure anchoring of most stent grafts. The distance from the origins of the left subclavian artery and celiac axis to the aneurysm should be at least 1.5–3 cm to ensure that the stent graft does not inadvertently block these arteries. In an effort to reduce the incidence of paraplegia and to limit exclusion of intracostal arteries, the overall length of the stent graft is kept to a minimum.

Another important anatomic consideration is the size of the proposed conduit vessel (e.g., iliac) to ensure that it is adequate for accommodation of the stent-introducer system, which usually requires at least an 8-mm-diameter vessel. Where the pelvic vessels are less than 8 mm, either a retroperitoneal iliac or retroperitoneal aortic approach is utilized. The stent is the metallic framework to which the graft material is applied. Various balloon-expandable or self-expanding stents are available. For application in the thoracic aorta, stents of 30–40 mm in diameter (mean 35 mm) are required.

Typically, thoracic aortic aneurysm stent-graft procedures are performed in the cath lab (although some may be performed in the OR, depending on equipment availability and local politics), with the patient intubated and under GA. The cath lab is prepared for aortic surgery, with the patient placed on the table in a shallow right decubitus position. The patient's thorax may be prepped and draped for a left thoracotomy. For an approach via the common femoral artery, the groin area is prepped for a femoral artery cutdown. When the iliac arteries are of insufficient size, the left

lower abdomen is prepped for a retroperitoneal approach to either the aorta or the common iliac artery. High-quality fluoroscopic equipment is essential to ensure accurate placement of the device, and a portable C-arm with digital subtraction capability is moved into position and centered over the thorax. When the iliac vessels are of sufficient size, a cutdown is performed on a femoral artery, the artery is punctured, and a guide wire is advanced into the thoracic aorta. A pigtail catheter is placed, and an aortogram is performed. The patient is then anticoagulated with iv heparin (100 IU/kg). A long, stiff guide wire is placed, and the 24 Fr sheath and dilator assembly is advanced over the wire until the sheath tip is proximal to the proximal aneurysm neck. The dilator and guide wire are withdrawn, and the stent graft is introduced into the sheath from its loading cartridge using the Teflon pusher. The device is pushed through the sheath until the stent graft approaches the tip of the sheath.

To reduce the likelihood of inadvertent downstream deployment of the stent graft caused by the force of blood flow during initial delivery, the arterial BP may be lowered to a mean of 50–60 mm Hg using SNP. Holding the pusher firmly in position, the sheath is rapidly withdrawn, and the stent graft expands into position. Rapid deployment helps to minimize distal migration of the stent graft. Immediately following deployment, the SNP is discontinued, allowing the BP to normalize. Repeat aortogram is performed, and any early leakage of contrast into the aneurysm is treated either with balloon angioplasty of the stent graft or further stent graft placement. Occasionally a faint, persistent leak of contrast is caused by leakage through the graft material. This typically ceases when the patient's coagulation status returns to normal. Following removal of the delivery sheath, heparin is reversed with protamine sulfate, and the arteriotomy is repaired surgically. For stent placement through the retroperitoneal aorta, the procedure has a more extensive surgical component; however, the technique is similar.

The basic concept of **abdominal aortic aneurysm** (AAA) repair via an endovascular route is similar to the preceding section on thoracic aneurysm repair, with some notable exceptions. AAAs commonly arise inferior to the renal arteries, and 80–90% of cases involve either one or both iliac arteries. For this reason, stent grafts that can accommodate this more complicated anatomy are required. The superior aneurysm neck needs to be of sufficient length (1.5–2 cm) inferior to the most inferior renal artery to provide for stable anchoring. Inferiorly the stent graft must accommodate either or both iliac arteries. The procedure is performed in a two-stage fashion. Initially an aorta-to-single-iliac-artery device is placed from the infrarenal aortic neck into one of the iliac vessels. A contralateral femoral artery puncture is then performed, and a catheter and guide wire are used to access an open stump of the stent graft from the contralateral limb. At this stage, a modular section of stent graft is placed from the aortic component into the contralateral limb; in this way, an aorta-to-bi-iliac graft is placed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Aortic aneurysm

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thoracic Aortic Aneurysms	Abdominal Aortic Aneurysms
Position	Supine/slight right decubitus	Supine
Incision	Femoral artery cutdown	Bilateral femoral artery cutdowns
Special instrumentation	Catheters, guide wires, sheaths, dilators, and stent grafts	⇐
Unique considerations	May require adjunctive procedure (e.g., brachial artery catheterization, balloon angioplasty, possible left subclavian-to-common carotid artery bypass procedure); iv heparin 100–300 IU/kg	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–3 h	⇐
Closing considerations	None	⇐
EBL	Usually minimal; however, can be up to 2–3 U	⇐
Postop care	ICU × 1 d	⇐
Mortality	3–5%	2–3%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Thoracic Aortic Aneurysms	Abdominal Aortic Aneurysms
Morbidity	Paraplegia: 2–3% Infection: 1% Surgical conversion: < 1%	Acute rupture: < 1% ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–4	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–90 yr	40–90 yr
Incidence	1/10,000 of the population in the United States.	1/1,000 of the population in the United States.
Etiology	Atherosclerosis; HTN; trauma; aortic dissection; infection	Atherosclerosis; infection
Associated conditions	CAD; aneurysmal disease elsewhere	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

The anesthetic considerations for thoracic and abdominal stent-grafting are similar because the surgical techniques, complications, patient concurrent disease, and stent-graft deployment techniques are similar. Patients may be asymptomatic; most will have coexisting CAD, PVD, and/or cerebrovascular disease.

Suggested Readings

1. Baril D, Kahn R, Ellozy SH, et al: Endovascular abdominal aortic repair: emerging developments and anesthetic considerations. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2007; 21:730–42.
2. Makkad B, Pilling S: Management of thoracic aneurysm. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2005; 9:227–40.
3. Riddell JM, Black JH, Brewster DC, et al: Endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2005; 43: 79–91.
4. Ruppert V, Leurs LJ, Steckmeier B, et al: Influence of anesthesia type on outcome after endovascular aortic aneurysm repair: an analysis based on EUROSTAR data. *J Vasc Surg* 2006; 44:16–21.

PREOPERATIVE

Preop considerations for these patients are the same as for any patient undergoing repair of a descending thoracic aneurysm, abdominal aortic aneurysm, or aortobifemoral aneurysm. Many of these patients, however, are not suitable for conventional repair via a thoracotomy because of respiratory disease (e.g., $FEV_1 < 1$ L, severe COPD, $PaCO_2 > 60$ mm Hg), CAD, renal failure, CHF, or a combination of these factors. As such, they generally are at very high risk for periop morbidity and mortality. Before surgery the anesthesiologist should consult with the surgical and radiological teams to decide what will be done should a complication such as penetration or rupture of the aneurysm occur during surgery (typically, an emergency thoracotomy or laparotomy performed in the cath lab).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Usually GETA (OLV may be required for emergency thoracotomy 2° ruptured thoracic aneurysm). Abdominal stent grafts may be placed under epidural or spinal anesthesia. Rarely, stent-grafting may be carried out with local anesthesia or MAC in patients unable to tolerate GA or epidural. In that case, the patient will come to the OR for removal of the introducer system and repair of the femoral artery.

Induction	Because these patients are typically extubated, the dose of fentanyl (5–10 mcg/kg) is limited to that which will suppress the hypertensive response to intubation, while still allowing for early extubation. The same considerations apply to the use of muscle relaxants (e.g., vecuronium [0.1 mg/kg] or rocuronium [1–1.5 mg/kg]). A DLT or a Univent ETT should be used, unless the team decides that a thoracotomy will not be performed under any circumstance.

Maintenance	Usually a balanced anesthetic technique of O_2/air/isoflune or sevoflurane, supplemented with fentanyl (or remifentanil infusion) as needed. Hemodynamic control of BP (esmolol, SNP, NTG) and heart rate to avoid myocardial ischemia is important. **Anesthetic management during stent-graft deployment:** During stent-graft deployment, the aorta is momentarily occluded. Formerly, this resulted in a rapid ↑ BP → stent graft being moved from its intended position. The newer generations of stent grafts, using thermal or mechanical means for rapid deployment, cause minimal hemodynamic change, eliminating the need for aggressive BP control.	
Emergence	Extubation is desirable, although hypothermia (< 34°C) may prevent this. Otherwise, aim for early extubation in the ICU. DLT (if used) may be replaced with a standard ETT at end of procedure if the patient is not extubated in the cath lab. Recovery is usually in the ICU.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–8 mL/kg/h PRBC available	Although usually minimal, blood loss can be considerable.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line CVP catheter Urinary catheter TEE CSF pressure/drainage	Arterial line placement should be on the right as the radiologists may require access to the left brachial artery. CVP monitoring is usually sufficient. Central access for vasoactive drugs may be needed. TEE is used to aid in the identification of the thoracic aneurysm necks, to monitor deployment of the stent graft and to identify any continued flow of blood into the aneurysmal sac after deployment (endoleak). CSF drainage → ↓ CSF pressure may be necessary to minimize spinal cord ischemia (anterior spinal artery syndrome).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Supine ± slight right lateral decubitus
Complications	Hemorrhage Vessel damage Rupture of aorta Deployment failure/incorrect position Hypothermia	Hemorrhage at the groin site can be considerable and may be concealed. Damage to the vessels (femoral, iliac, or abdominal aorta) during passage of the insertion system can occur with attendant massive hemorrhage. Rupture or penetration of the thoracic aneurysm also can occur, necessitating rapid conversion to open thoracotomy. The stent graft may deploy in an incorrect position or fail to fully deploy. This may require positioning of further stent grafts, balloon expansion of the stent graft, or conversion to thoracotomy. Hypothermia can be a problem as a circulating-water warming blanket cannot be used on the operating table (use of fluoroscopy). Much of the patient's body is exposed (upper-body Bair-Hugger usually okay), and a lower-body warming blanket cannot be used as the lower limbs may be ischemic during insertion of the stent graft.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Aortic perforation/rupture Migration of grafts Femoral artery dehiscence Distal embolization Paraplegia	Requires emergency surgery. → loss of distal pulses, mesenteric ischemia, acute renal insufficiency. Requires prompt return to OR. ✓ pulses; angiography/surgical intervention. ✓ reflexes; prompt return to OR.

Pain management	Minimal analgesic requirements	If groin incision, local anesthetic infiltration may be used.
Tests	As indicated by patient condition.	CT scan, angiogram prior to discharge and at regular intervals following discharge.

Suggested Readings

1. Coady MA, Ikonomidis JS, Cheung AT, et al: A surgical management of descending thoracic aortic disease: open and endovascular approaches: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 2010; 121:2780–804.
2. Crimi E, Lee JT, Dake MD, van der Starre PJ: Transesophageal echocardiography guidance for stent-graft repair of a thoracic aneurysm is facilitated by the ability of partial stent deployment. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2012; 26(6):861.e7–9.
3. Dake MD, Miller DC, Semba CP, et al: Transluminal placement of endovascular stent-grafts for the treatment of descending thoracic aortic aneurysms. *N Engl J Med* 1994: 331(26):1729–34.
4. Findeiss LK, Cody ME: Endovascular repair of thoracic aortic aneurysms. *Semin Intervent Radiol* 2011; 28(11):107–17.
5. Fleck T, Hutschala D, Weissl M, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid drainage as a useful treatment option to relieve paraplegia after stent-graft implantation for acute aortic dissection type B. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2002; 123:1003–5.
6. Foley OJ, Criado FJ, Farber MA, et al: VALOR Investegators: Long-term results with the Talent thoracic stent graft in the VALOR trial. *J Vasc Surg* 2012; 56:1214–21.
7. Herold U, Piotrowski J, Baumgart D, et al: Endoluminal stent graft repair for acute and chronic type B aortic dissection and atherosclerotic aneurysm of the thoracic aorta: an interdisciplinary task. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2002; 22:891–7.
8. Miller DC: Through the looking glass: the first 20 years of thoracic aortic stent-grafting. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2013; 145:S142–8.
9. Mitchell RS, Dake MD, Semba CP, et al: Endovascular stent-graft repair of thoracic aortic aneurysms. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1996; 111(5):1054–62.
10. Schutz W, Gauss A, Meierhenrich R, et al: Transesophageal echocardiographic guidance of thoracic aortic stent-graft implantation. *J Endovasc Ther* 2002; 9:14–9.

REPAIR OF ACUTE AORTIC DISSECTIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Repair of **acute aortic dissection** is performed to prevent life-threatening complications such as hemorrhage, tamponade, and heart failure 2° acute aortic valvular insufficiency and to redirect flow into the true lumen. Emergent repair of acute ascending dissections is generally accepted therapy to prevent rupture of the aortic root with exsanguination or pericardial tamponade. Mortality for acute ascending dissection is estimated at 1% per hour for the first 48 hours. The management of descending thoracic aortic dissections remains controversial, but surgical intervention probably should be recommended only for younger patients, patients with uncontrolled pain or evidence for continued expansion or extravasation, and those with branch-vessel compromise.

Ascending aortic dissections typically produce sharp, tearing retrosternal pain that penetrates straight through to the subscapular area. The presentation, however, is so frequently variable that any patient in extremis, especially with migratory pain or vacillating findings, and even asymptomatic patients with valvular aortic regurgitation (AR), should be considered for the diagnosis. With a suggestive Hx, a new murmur, or a pulse deficit, an enlarged mediastinal shadow on chest radiography should prompt further diagnostic efforts. CT scanning, MRI, and aortography may all be diagnostic, but no diagnostic modality has 100% sensitivity. TEE appears to be highly sensitive in detecting a mobile intimal flap in the ascending or descending aorta. In addition, TEE can provide useful information regarding AR, periaortic hematoma, and flow within a false channel. It is usually available at the bedside or in the emergency ward and does not subject the patient to a contrast load.

After the patients are diagnosed, they are transported immediately to the OR. Through a median sternotomy, venous access is gained via the right atrium, and arterial inflow is supplied through a femoral artery or axillary artery. CPB is established, the patient cooled to 18°C, and circulatory support discontinued although antegrade or retrograde cerebral perfusion may be employed. During a period of circulatory arrest, antegrade or retrograde cerebral perfusion, the ascending aorta is opened and the tear localized. The repair is carried distally into the arch, if the entire dissection can be resected, and the distal aortic layers are reapproximated with a Teflon felt strip supporting the medial and adventitial layers. The distal graft anastomosis is then completed, the graft clamped, the bypass pump restarted, and systemic warming commenced. Proximally, the aortic root is reconstructed, again using Teflon felt to support the medial and adventitial layers and to resuspend the aortic valve, which can be salvaged in approximately 85% of cases. The heart is then cleared of air and

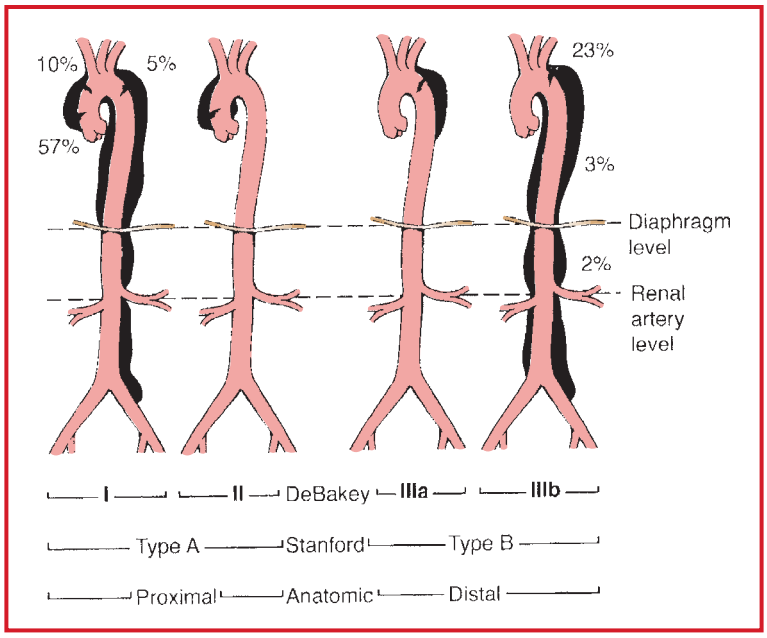


Figure 6.3-3. The three classification systems of aortic dissection and the distribution of the intimal tear.

the cross-clamp removed to allow reperfusion of the coronary circulation. After a sufficient period of resuscitation, the patient is weaned from CPB. Aggressive management of an acquired coagulopathy is not unusual prior to chest closure.

Repair of **dissections** involving the **descending thoracic aorta** is accomplished through a left thoracotomy utilizing partial CPB. Venous drainage is usually via the femoral vein, although the pulmonary vein may be used for partial or "left-heart" CPB. Arterial access is via the femoral artery. After institution of CPB, the dissected aorta above and below the most damaged area is cross-clamped and the aorta transected. After oversewing patent intercostal arteries, the medial and adventitial layers are buttressed with Teflon felt, and an interposition Dacron graft is sewn into place. After evacuation of air, clamps are removed, and the patient weaned from CPB. Heparin reversal, decannulation, and closure are accomplished in the usual manner.

Usual preop diagnosis: Acute dissection of the aorta (See Fig. 6.3-3 for types of dissection.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Ascending Aorta	Descending Aorta
Position	Supine	Lateral decubitus, left side up
Incision	Median sternotomy	Left lateral thoracotomy
Unique considerations	Full hemodynamic monitoring, with provisions for circulatory arrest, profound hypothermia, barbiturates and steroids; TEE	DLT; CPB; TEE; lumbar drain
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	Cross-clamp: 30–50 min Circulatory arrest: 20–30 min CPB: 60–100 min Total: 3–5 h	30–60 min — 35–60 min ⇐
Closing considerations	Aggressively treat coagulopathy (frequently 2° ↓ Plt).	Replace DLT with single-lumen ETT.
EBL	400–800 mL	600–800 mL
Postop care	ICU: 1–2 d, intubated	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Ascending Aorta	Descending Aorta
Mortality	10–25%	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding: 3–8% Respiratory insufficiency: 2–5% CVA: 2–4%	Paraplegia: 5% CVA: 1–2% MI: 1–2%
Pain score	7–10	9–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–70 yr
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	10/100,000
Etiology	Degenerative aortic disease
Associated conditions	HTN; secondary AR; bicuspid aortic valve; Marfan syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Sx are usually of sudden onset and depend on the site of dissection and specific organ involvement. Aortic dissections are divided into 2 types, depending on the site of intimal tear: **Type A**—ascending and aortic arch, and **Type B**—descending aorta (Fig 6.3-3). Initial treatment involves the use of antihypertensive medications (e.g., SNP) to control BP and β-blockers (e.g., esmolol) to ↓ contractility. Type A dissections usually require urgent surgery. Patients presenting electively for thoracotomy (descending aorta) may have a thoracic epidural catheter placed the night before surgery. These patients are only heparinized during the procedure.

Respiratory	✓ for recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy with chronic aneurysmal dilation. Tracheal and left main bronchus compression → difficult intubation, atelectasis; hemoptysis 2° rupture into lung; hemothorax → compromised oxygenation, ↑ intrathoracic pressure → ↓ venous return, especially with IPPV. **Tests:** CXR: ✓ for widened mediastinum, tracheal or left main bronchus compression and distortion (affects DLT placement), atelectasis, pleural effusion (or hemothorax 2° rupture).
Cardiovascular	Aortic dissections may be associated with chronic HTN, cystic medial necrosis, or other connective tissue disorder (e.g., Marfan syndrome) and trauma. Dissection may result in cardiac tamponade, acute aortic valve incompetence, acute cardiac failure, angina, MI, or rupture of the aorta. Dissection of major arteries may result in ↓ or absent peripheral pulses, which may affect the placement sites for intraarterial monitoring and central venous access. Pain and anxiety may result in HTN, while rupture or leakage may result in ↓ BP and shock. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ for Sx of LVH, ischemia or infarction, low voltage (tamponade). ECHO: ✓ for site of dissection, valvular competence, LV function, pericardial effusion, or tamponade. Angiography: ✓ for site of dissection (Type A or B), valvular function, involvement of coronary and other major arteries, sites of rupture, LV function. CT scan: ✓ site and extent of dissection.
Neurological	Deficits are not uncommon, especially with Type B dissections where the blood supply to the spinal cord may be jeopardized. Document preop exam carefully.
Renal	Renal failure 2° renal artery involvement in dissection, shock, or cardiac failure. UO should be monitored closely during initial medical therapy. **Tests:** UO; BUN; Cr; electrolytes

Gastrointestinal	Compromised blood supply to the bowel or liver may result in ischemia → metabolic acidosis and ↓ liver function. Tests: Consider ABG: ✓ persistent metabolic acidosis; LFTs, if indicated by H&P.
Hematologic	Coagulopathy may be present 2° massive hemorrhage or liver involvement and can increase risk of the surgery. **Tests:** PT; PTT; Hct/Hb
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Because many of these patients present emergently, consider full-stomach precautions: H_2-antagonists (ranitidine 50 mg iv), metoclopramide (10–20 mg iv), antacids (Na citrate 0.3 M 30 mL po). Alleviate anxiety and pain (midazolam 0.025–0.05 mg/kg iv), which may worsen HTN, but avoid obtundation.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± thoracic epidural. Preinduction control of BP and contractility (NTG or SNP to SBP = 105–115 and esmolol to HR = 60–80) is important in preventing extension of the dissection or rupture of the aneurysm. Fluid resuscitation may be necessary prior to induction.

Induction	Control of hypertensive response to laryngoscopy and intubation is important and may be accomplished with moderate-dose narcotic (fentanyl 10–15 mcg/kg or sufentanil 1–2 mcg/kg) and etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg), esmolol (5–10 mg iv bolus), or SNP (25–50 mcg bolus). Pretreatment with lidocaine (1.5 mg/kg) also may be required to further control the hypertensive response to laryngoscopy. Muscle relaxation may be obtained using vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1–2 mg/kg). Remember the possibility of a full stomach in this patient population. Hence, a modified rapid-sequence induction (cricoid pressure with manual ventilation and NMR) may achieve the two goals of relatively rapid induction and intubation and tight control of BP. Usually a left DLT is used in patients with descending lesions to improve surgical access; however, it may be difficult to place due to aneurysmal compression of the trachea and left mainstem bronchus, and it is associated with a small risk of aneurysmal rupture. For these reasons, a right DLT may be preferred. FOB is mandatory to verify ET placement.
Maintenance	O_2/narcotic/benzodiazepine: low-dose volatile agent (isoflurane [0.3–0.5%] or sevoflurane [0.5–1%]) may be used to control BP (MAP = 60–80), although infusion of vasopressors, vasodilators, or inotropes may be necessary. Control HR (< 80; anesthesia, esmolol) and contractility (β-blockade or inotropes, depending on circumstances). Benzodiazepines may be used for amnesia (midazolam 100 mcg/kg). If thoracic epidural in place, fentanyl (20–30 mcg/kg) or sufentanil (4–6 mcg/kg) may be used. Most Type A aneurysms and ascending/arch aneurysms require hypothermic CPB (see Anesthetic Considerations for Cardiopulmonary Bypass, p. 350). Intraop anesthetic considerations are governed primarily by the site of the aortic pathology. These considerations are discussed below.
Emergence	Transported to ICU, sedated, intubated, and ventilated × 24–48 h. Following repairs of the descending aorta (thoracotomy incision), weaning from ventilator may be aided by epidural narcotics after documentation of normal spinal cord function and coagulation.
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss. IV: 14 ga – 7 Fr × 2 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids. Humidify gases. Cross-match 6–8 U of blood. UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h In Type A dissections and arch aneurysms, if possible, avoid iv placement in the left arm or left IJ/subclavian veins because of the possibility of innominate vein ligation. Mannitol (0.25–0.5 g/kg iv) should be given if renal perfusion is compromised by dissection or before cross-clamping. Consider normovolemic hemodilution if the patient is stable and the Hct > 35. After unclamping: furosemide (1 mg/kg), if hemodynamically stable.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1). Arterial line CVP, PA catheter (optional) Urinary catheter	Arterial line site is dependent on type of surgery and location of the lesion. Because the right subclavian artery may be compromised in patients with ascending lesions, the left radial or femoral arteries may need to be used. Aortic arch lesions may involve the vascular supply to both upper extremities; hence, femoral artery catheterization may be necessary. In ascending lesions, two artery lines may be required—right radial (above clamp pressure) and left femoral (below clamp pressure). Consult with surgeon as to best site.
	TEE	TEE is useful to assess cardiac function, regional wall motion abnormalities, valvular pathology, aortic valvular repair (if required as part of a Type A repair). Probe passage may increase compression of the trachea, impeding ventilation. Caution should be used in the presence of aneurysmal compression of the esophagus.
	Temperature	Monitor both core (esophageal/bladder) and tympanic membrane T (as indicative of brain T)—important in deep hypothermic arrest.
	EEG/EP (arch/ascending lesions)	EEG/EP may help in assessing effectiveness of cerebral protection or adequacy of cerebral perfusion.
	SSEPs/MEPs (descending lesions)	SSEPs may detect posterior spinal perfusion problems, while MEPs may detect anterior cord dysfunction. Both EEG and EPs may require expert help to set up, monitor, and interpret.
	Cerebral oximetry	Cerebral oximetry may be helpful in detecting changes in cerebral blood flow after cannulation of the innominate artery.
Complications	Hemorrhage Coagulopathy	Both are common. Hemorrhage should be treated with crystalloid, colloid, or blood products, as indicated.
Ascending lesions	CPB AR Coronary arteries	Usual site of cannulation for CPB is the ascending aorta, axillary, or femoral arteries. Aortic valve replacement may be necessary. Patients may have myocardial ischemia 2° coronary artery occlusion; may require CABG or reimplantation of vessels.
	Deep hypothermic arrest	Cerebral protective measures and selective perfusion of cerebral vessels may be required. (See below.)
Arch lesions	CPB Deep hypothermic arrest	Usual site of cannulation for CPB is femoral or axillary artery. Cerebral protection relies on hypothermia (20–22°C) and drugs (hydrocortisone 100 mg iv or dexamethasone 8 mg iv) to reduce $CMRO_2$ and neuronal injury. The head is surface cooled (protect eyes and ears from cold injury). EEG may be monitored to ensure absence of brain electrical activity. Monitor tympanic membrane T as an indication of brain T. Avoid hyperglycemia and maintain normal pH and $PaCO_2$ when measured at 37°C (alpha stat). Maintain muscle relaxation.
Descending lesions	Precross-clamping	Mannitol (0.5 g/kg) and furosemide (20–40 mg iv) should be given before clamp application to provide renal protection, even if a shunt is placed. Hypothermia (32–34°C) may protect spinal cord.
	Shunt	A heparin-bonded shunt may be used from the aortic arch to the femoral artery to provide distal perfusion.

Descending lesions (cont'd)	Partial bypass	Partial CPB may be used to provide distal perfusion. In this arrangement, the heart perfuses the head and upper extremities, while CPB is used to perfuse and oxygenate the lower body. Venous drainage is from the femoral vein, PA, or left atrium and returned via the femoral artery. Distal and proximal pressures are altered by controlling cardiac filling, pump flow, and vasodilators.
	Cross-clamping	Application of clamp may → acute HTN with ischemia and LV failure. This may be controlled by partial bypass, shunting or use of vasodilators (SNP 0.5–2 mcg/kg/min, NTG 0.5–2 mcg/kg/min). During cross-clamping, monitor UO and ✓ metabolic acidosis (renal or bowel ischemia) with serial ABGs. Cross-clamp time should be < 30 min to reduce incidence of paraplegia. The surgeons often request that a lumbar CSF drain be inserted to ↓ CSF pressure (to ≤ CVP) and, thus, improve spinal cord blood flow.
	Unclamping	Unclamping may result in severe ↓ BP and myocardial depression. Hypovolemia, acidosis, vasoactive factors, and reactive hyperemia have been implicated as the cause. Prior to unclamping, ensure adequate volume status (CVP and/or PCWP 2–5 mm Hg above patient's normal); treat acidosis; have vasopressors available; and the clamp should be released slowly over 1–2 min. Use of partial bypass or a shunt to ensure distal perfusion will mitigate unclamping shock. When hemodynamically stable, give furosemide (1 mg/kg iv). Inotropes (dopamine) may be needed to support circulation.
Positioning	✓ eyes ✓ and pad pressure points Arch and ascending: supine, shoulder roll Descending: lateral decubitus, axillary roll, pillow between knees	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Myocardial ischemia, CHF Dysrhythmias Hemorrhage Coagulopathy Renal failure Bowel ischemia Respiratory failure Paraplegia	A DLT may be required in lesions of the descending aorta, if hemorrhage continues from left lung; otherwise, the tube may be replaced at the end of procedure by a single-lumen ETT. BP should be controlled to MAP 60–80 and HR < 100 to decrease the likelihood of repeat dissection, bleeding, or graft dehiscence. Anterior spinal artery syndrome
Pain management	PCA (p. E-4) Epidural (p. E-6)	Thoracic epidural catheter may be used in patients following thoracotomy if coagulation status normal.
Tests	ECG: ischemia, infarction, dysrhythmias CXR: line and ETT placement; pulmonary contusion Coagulation profile Renal: BUN, Cr ABG: Respiratory, gut ischemia CT scan: CNS or spinal neurologic deficits Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. Atkins MD Jr, Black JH III, Cambria RP: Aortic dissection: perspective in the era of stent-graft repair. *J Vasc Surg* 2006; (Suppl A):30A–43A.
2. Dong CCJ, MacDonald DB, Janusz MT: Intraoperative spinal cord monitoring during descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aneurysm surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2002; 74:S1873–6.
3. Dorotta I, Kimball-Jones P, Applegate R: Deep hypothermia and circulatory arrest in adults. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2007; 11:66–76.
4. Estrera AL, Miller CC, Goodrick J, et al: Update on outcomes of acute type B aortic dissection. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; 83:S842–5.
5. Fann JI, Smith JA, Miller DC, et al: Surgical management of aortic dissection over a 30-year period. *Circulation* 1995; 92(II):113–21.
6. Fattori R, Mineo G, Di Eusano M: Acute type B aortic dissection: current management strategies. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2011; 26:488–93.
7. Hughes GC, Andersen ND, McCann RL: Management of acute type B aortic dissection. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2013; 145:S202–7.
8. Knipp BS, Deeb GM, Prager RL, et al: A contemporary analysis of outcomes for operative repair of type A aortic dissection in the United States. *Surgery* 2007; 142:524–8.
9. Kohl BA, McGarvey ML: Anesthesia and neurocerebral monitoring for aortic dissection. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2005; 17:236–46.
10. Kruger T, Conzelmann LO, Bonser RS, et al: Acute aortic dissection type A. *Br J Surg* 2012; 99:1331–1344.
11. Kruger T, Weigang E, Hoffmann I, Blettner M, Aebert H: GERAADA Investegators: cerebral protection during surgery for acute aortic dissection type A: results of the German Registry for Acute Aortic Dissection Type A (GERAADA). *Circulation* 2011; 124:434–43.
12. Lips J, de Haan P, de Jager S, et al: The role of transcranial motor evoked potentials in predicting neurologic and histopathologic outcome after experimental spinal cord ischemia. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 97:183–91.
13. Lu S, Sun X, Hong T, et al: Bilateral versus unilateral antegrade cerebral perfusion in arch reconstruction for aortic dissection. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2012; 93:1917–20.
14. Olsson C, Thelin S, Stahle E, et al: Thoracic aortic aneurysm and dissection: increasing prevalence and improved outcomes reported in a nationwide population-based study of more than 14,000 cases from 1987 to 2002. *Circulation* 2006; 114:2611–8.
15. Penco M, Paparoni S, Dagianti A: Usefulness of transesophageal echocardiography in the assessment of aortic dissection. *Am J Cardiol* 2000; 86:53G–56G.
16. Szeto WY, Gleason TG: Operative management of ascending aortic dissections. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2005; 17: 247–55.

REPAIR OF ANEURYSMS OF THE THORACOABDOMINAL AORTA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Aneurysms of the thoracoabdominal aorta (TAAA) may occur because of degenerative aortic disease (atherosclerosis), as a consequence of hereditary disorders of metabolism (Marfan syndrome), or as a sequela of chronic aortic dissections. These aneurysms are classified into four types (Fig 6.3-4) that occur with equal frequency: Type I consists of aneurysms that involve most of the descending thoracic and upper abdominal aorta. Type II involves most of the descending thoracic aorta and most or all of the abdominal aorta. Type III involves the distal thoracic and varying segments of the abdominal aorta. Type IV involves most or all of the abdominal aorta, including the origins of the visceral vessels.

Repair of these aneurysms is an extensive, difficult, and demanding procedure, as blood flow to the entire body below the neck is interrupted, with resultant renal and visceral ischemia. In addition, the blood supply to the spinal cord may arise from lumbar and/or intercostal vessels in the affected aortic segment, producing critical cord ischemia during cross-clamping and postop paraplegia.

Almost all thoracoabdominal aneurysm repairs are performed through a thoracoabdominal incision (Fig. 6.3-5) using the **inclusion technique** (Fig. 6.3-6) as advocated by **Crawford** et al. After opening the chest, the incision is extended across the costal cartilage onto the abdomen. The diaphragm is radially incised to the aortic hiatus, and the retroperitoneal dissection plane established anterior to the psoas musculature. All intraabdominal contents, as well as the left kidney, are reflected anteriorly (Fig. 6.3-6). Only proximal aortic control is established. After minimal heparinization, OLV is established to allow collapse of the left lung, the proximal aorta at the aneurysm neck is cross-clamped, and the aneurysm is incised. Back-bleeding from patent intercostal, mesenteric, and renal vessels can be controlled by balloon catheters, and aggressive blood salvage with autotransfusion devices is mandatory. The repair entails suturing a tube graft proximally to the divided aorta and then sewing islands of aortic tissue containing

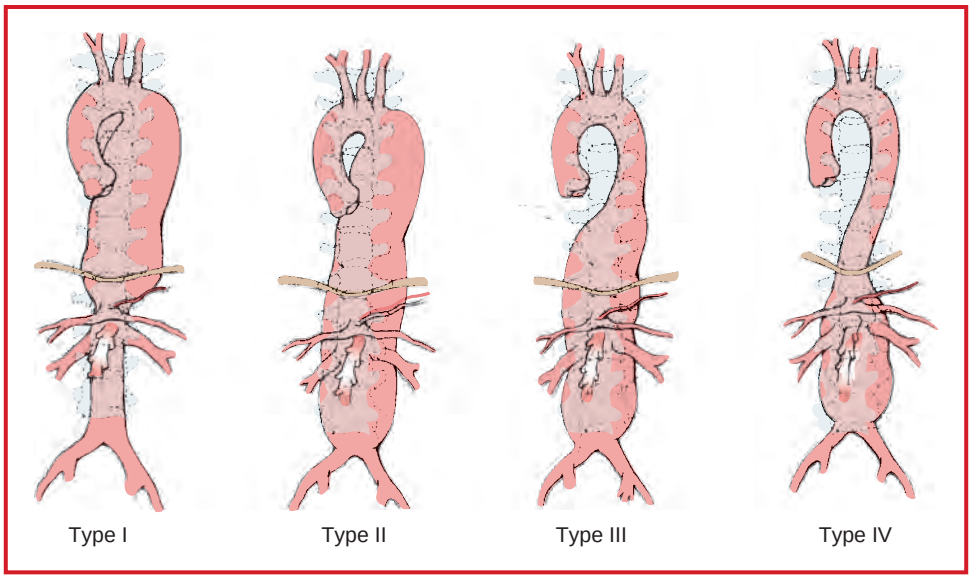


Figure 6.3-4. Crawford's classification of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms (TAAA). (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* Vol 2. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

intercostal visceral vessels onto appropriate-sized holes in the side of the tube graft. This allows reperfusion of important intercostal, celiac axis, superior mesenteric, renal arteries, and finally, the distal aorta or iliac arteries. Because there is obligate visceral ischemia during the period of cross-clamping (which must be limited to < 60–75 min), the operation must proceed expeditiously.

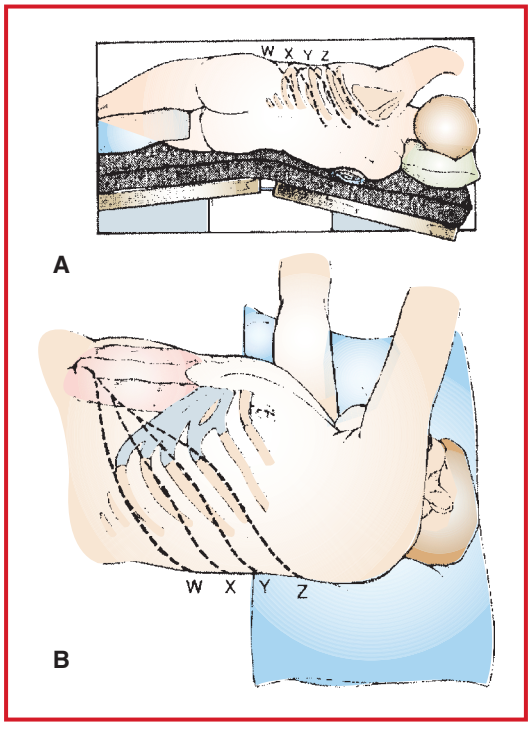


Figure 6.3-5. Lateral **A:** and frontal **B:** views of the thoracoabdominal incisions used for repair of type IV (W, X), type III (Y, Z), and types I and II (Z) TAAAs. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* Vol 2. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

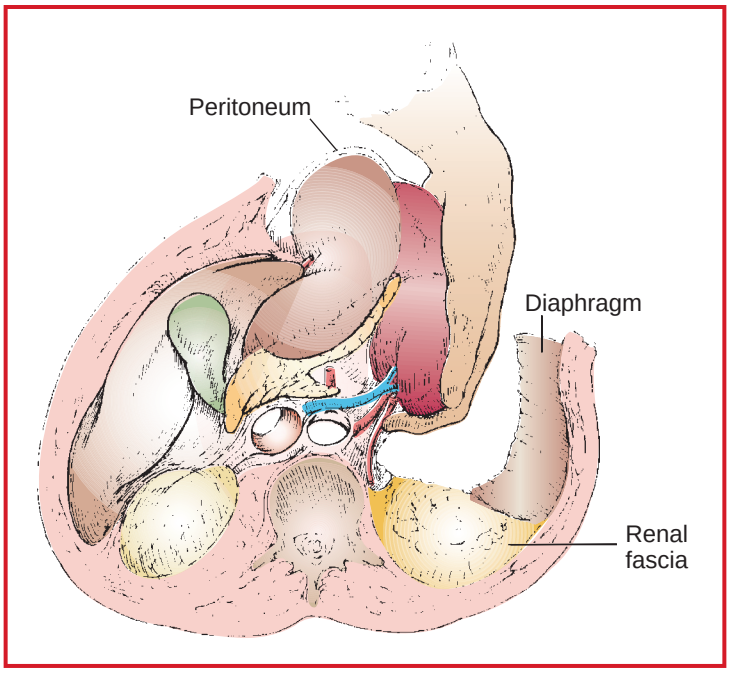


Figure 6.3-6. During the inclusion technique, the anterior renal fascia is opened and the kidney is mobilized, along with the upper abdominal organs (on the left). (Reproduced with permission from Wind GG, Valentine RJ: *Anatomic Exposures in Vascular Surgery*. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1991.)

Alternatively, in an effort to afford both spinal cord and visceral protection through hypothermia, the operation may be performed on CPB during a period of profound hypothermic circulatory arrest, which may exacerbate hemorrhagic complications.

After aortic cross-clamping, the aneurysm is opened and the repair performed from within the aneurysm, sewing on-lay patches of the intercostal, mesenteric, and renal vessels to openings created in the tube graft. This no-clamp technique allows reasonable management of these very extensive aneurysms, but results in an obligatory and ongoing blood loss through back-bleeding of visceral vessels until the anastomoses are complete.

Usual preop diagnosis: Expanding, painful, or large thoracoabdominal aneurysm

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Right lateral decubitus; hips rotated posteriorly to 45° and left arm draped forward over an airplane sling. Axillary roll placed. (See Fig. 6.3-5A.)
Incision	Posterolateral thoracotomy incision, in appropriate interspace, extended across the costal margin to midline, then extended inferiorly as a midline abdominal incision (Fig. 6.3-5). The incision is one of the largest incisions in surgery, necessitated by the absolute need for exposure in this difficult area, and is, unfortunately, associated with significant postop pain.
Special instrumentation	DLT; CPB; NG tube; Cell Saver; rapid-infusion device
Unique considerations	OLV with collapse of left lung necessary for most cases. Cold LR may be injected into renal or visceral arteries for organ preservation. Alternatively, operation can be performed under profound hypothermic circulatory arrest for spinal cord protection in patients with chronic dissections. Frequently, operation is performed with only proximal cross-clamping; so there may be an obligate ongoing blood loss.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv
Surgical time	6 h. Proximal aortic cross-clamping until completion of visceral revascularization may extend to 60 min. Longer cross-clamp times may be anticipated in patients with aneurysmal dilation from chronic aortic dissection for which profound hypothermic circulatory arrest may be utilized.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Closing considerations	OR → ICU, intubated × 24–72 h.				
EBL	Ongoing back-bleeding from visceral and iliac vessels results in substantial volume loss during cross-clamping. Most red-cell volume is salvaged via cardiotomy suckers and returned through cardiopulmonary bypass circuit or via a RBC salvage system (e.g., Cell Saver).				
Postop care	ICU, intubated and ventilated × 24–72 h. Rewarming, hemodynamic monitoring, and volume resuscitation are often required in ICU.				
	Aneurysm Group:	**Type I**	**Type II**	**Type III**	**Type IV**
Mortality	Overall: 9%	—	10–25%	—	5%
Morbidity	Paraplegia/spinal cord ischemia	6%	15%	3%	2%
	Other neurological complications	6%	12%	2%	1%
	Renal insufficiency	—	2–5%	—	—
	Respiratory failure	—	10%	—	—
	Hemorrhage	Common	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Graft infection	—	1–6%	—	—
	MI	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Graft failure	—	Rare	—	—
	False aneurysm	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Embolization	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Bowel ischemia	—	2–10%	—	—
	Impotence	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Ureteral injury	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
Pain score	6–10				

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Non-Marfan: 55–75 yr; Marfan: 35–55 yr
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	< 5 cases/yr in most hospitals, except major referral centers
Etiology	Predominantly atherosclerotic. Patients with Marfan syndrome may present with a progressive dilatation of a chronic dissection.
Associated conditions	HTN (75%); CAD (30%); COPD (30%); renal insufficiency (15%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Sx are usually of sudden onset and depend on the site of dissection and specific organ involvement. Initial treatment involves the use of antihypertensive medications (e.g., SNP) to control BP and β-blockers (e.g., esmolol) to ↓ contractility. Patients presenting electively for thoracotomy (descending aorta) may have a thoracic epidural catheter placed the night before surgery. These patients are only heparinized during the procedure.

Respiratory	Chronic pulmonary disease is associated with postop morbidity. Preop preparation with bronchodilators, cessation of smoking, incentive spirometry, and chest physiotherapy may decrease the risk of postop problems. **Tests:** CXR: ✓ for distortion of the left mainstem bronchus, which may affect placement of the DLT. May need PFTs, ABG to determine severity of pulmonary disease.

Cardiovascular	CAD is the most frequent cause of periop and late death in elective thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair. It is commonly associated with HTN. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ for LVH and ischemia.
Neurological	Increased risk of spinal cord ischemia with cross-clamping of the aorta; therefore, any preop neurologic deficits should be well documented. The use of CSF drainage and/or deep hypothermic circulatory arrest may be protective in patients with chronic aortic dissections.
Renal	Preop renal dysfunction increases the potential for postop renal problems. Aneurysmal involvement of the renal arteries also may occur. **Tests:** BUN; Cr. Consider creatinine clearance.
Gastrointestinal	Aneurysmal involvement of the inferior mesenteric and superior mesenteric arteries may cause visceral ischemia. **Tests:** Consider abdominal x-ray (ileus) and ABG (metabolic acidosis).
Hematologic	Preexisting coagulopathy increases risk. Many patients have been on aspirin preop. Excessive alcohol use is associated with anemia, thrombocytopenia, and low production of vitamin K-dependent factors. Rarely, a DIC process may occur within the lumen of the aneurysm. **Tests:** PT; PTT; Plt count; Hct
Laboratory	Electrolytes; radiologic assessment of aneurysm (ultrasonography, CT, and arteriography)
Premedication	Anxiety and pain may contribute to HTN and risk of aneurysmal rupture. Rx: morphine 0.1 mg/kg iv and midazolam 1–5 mg iv. Full-stomach precautions for emergent procedures (e.g., metoclopramide 10 mg iv, ranitidine 50 mg iv).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The goals of anesthesia for this procedure are (a) preserve myocardial, renal, pulmonary, CNS, and visceral organ function; (b) maintain adequate intravascular volume so that CO is not impaired; (c) control BP so that the transmural pressure across the aneurysm does not increase, which would increase the risk of rupture; and (d) provide good perfusion of other organs. CPB is used to accomplish deep hypothermic circulatory arrest. The rationale for this use is controversial. Deep hypothermic cardiac arrest (DHCA) may confer spinal cord protection and is usually reserved for patients with chronic dissections. Removal of CSF has been proposed as another means of protecting the spinal cord against ischemic injury. CPB also may be used for distal perfusion of organs and afterload protection of the left ventricle. Partial CPB usually is reserved for suprarenal or supraceliac aneurysms to perfuse bowel and kidneys. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cardiopulmonary Bypass, p. 350, and Repair of Acute Aortic Dissections, p. 418, for more discussion on CPB and DHCA.)

Induction	Prevent hypertensive response to laryngoscopy and intubation with moderate-dose narcotic technique (fentanyl 10–20 mcg/kg or sufentanil 1–2 mcg/kg) in combination with etomidate (0.2–0.3 mg/kg) or propofol (1–2 mg/kg). Esmolol 100–500 mcg/kg over 1 min, NTG 0.5–3 mcg/kg, or lidocaine administered either by topical spray or an iv dose of 1.5 mg/kg also will decrease the cardiovascular response to intubation. Muscle relaxation for intubation may be achieved with vecuronium (beware of ↓ HR) or rocuronium (1 mg/kg). A modified rapid-sequence induction may be necessary in emergent cases. A DLT is mandatory for this procedure; however it may be difficult to position due to distorted anatomy. FOB is mandatory to verify position of DLT.
Maintenance	O_2/air/narcotic, ± low-dose volatile agent. Benzodiazepines may be used for amnesia (e.g., midazolam 100 mcg/kg). When epidural catheter in place, sufentanil (loading dose 25–50 mcg, followed by 4–6 mcg/h) may provide adequate additional analgesia. In hemodynamically unstable patients, scopolamine (400 mcg) provides amnesia. Maintain CO and control of BP at preop levels. These patients may have increased hemodynamic variability on cross-clamping aorta, 2° bleeding, and coexisting disease. Keeping the patient warm may be difficult due to large incision and visceral exposure.

Emergence	Deferred to ICU. Postop ventilation 24–72 h. DLT may need to be maintained postop 2° to facial, oral, and airway edema.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss. IV: 14 ga or 7 Fr × 2 Rapid infuser Cell Saver T&C 8–10 U PRBCs. Warm fluids and humidify gases. Maintain UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h.	Large incision and visceral exposure requires administration of large volumes of fluid. Consider use of mannitol or furosemide if concerned about renal function and UO.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) CVP ± PA catheter ± ST segment analysis Arterial line UO TEE Core temperature ± EEG, SSEP, MEP ± Cerebral oxymetry	✓ for ↑ PA pressures and PCWP, ↓ in CO, TEE wall motion abnormalities, and changes in SV. Consult with surgeon regarding placement of cross-clamp so arterial line will not be affected. TEE is a good monitor for ventricular filling and myocardial ischemia. Monitor core T (esophageal, bladder). Tympanic membrane T (indicative of brain T) is monitored for circulatory arrest cases. EEG and EPs may be useful in assessment of cerebral protection (SSEP) and spinal cord perfusion problems (MEP ± SSEP). In case of the need of DHCA, cerebral oxymetry may be helpful in monitoring cerebral blood flow.
Cross-clamping	Clamping Unclamping	Application of cross-clamp at supraceliac level probably produces the greatest hemodynamic stress experienced by surgical patients. Application of the clamp may → HTN and ischemia. Preload, afterload, and HR can be controlled with SNP (0.25–5, mcg/kg/min) and esmolol (100–500 mcg/kg/min) infusions. Bolus dose NTG (100 mcg) may be useful to terminate an acute hypertensive episode. Ensure adequate volume; replace blood loss. Just before removal of the cross-clamp, filling volumes are allowed to rise gradually, avoiding the occurrence of myocardial ischemia. Dilators are D/C'd. ↓ BP may occur with removal of cross-clamp 2° hypovolemia, reactive hyperemia, acidosis, ↑ K^+, or myocardial dysfunction. BE > –5 should be corrected before unclamping. If necessary, surgeon can reclamp or occlude the aorta.
Positioning	Right axillary roll ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Right lateral decubitus with hips rotated posteriorly. Left arm placed in airplane sling or supported by pillows.
Complications	Myocardial ischemia HTN Coagulopathy Hemorrhage Hemostasis Hypothermia Other organ ischemia	Coagulopathy due to dilutional and consumptive processes. Hypothermia may exacerbate coagulopathy, cause dysrhythmias, and depress cardiac contractility.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Myocardial ischemia Neurologic deficits 2° cerebral or spinal cord ischemia Renal failure Respiratory failure	BP should be closely controlled postop to decrease bleeding from graft site and raw surfaces.
Pain management	Epidural narcotics (p. C-3)	In selected patients, a thoracic epidural catheter may be placed the night before surgery; otherwise, an epidural is placed only after normal neurologic and coagulation status is determined.
Tests	CXR: line and ETT placement Coagulation profile ABG analysis	

Suggested Readings

1. Cambria RP, Clouse WD, Davison JK, et al: Thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair: results with 337 operations performed over a 15-year interval. *Ann Surg* 2002; 236:471–9.
2. Conrad MF, Crawford RS, Davison JK, et al: Thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair: a 20-year perspective. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; 83:S856–61.
3. Coselli JS, Bozinovski J, LeMaire SA: Open surgical repair of 2286 thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; 83:S862–4
4. Coselli JS, LeMaire SA, Miller CC, et al: Mortality and paraplegia after thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair: a risk factor analysis. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2000; 69:408–14.
5. Dong CCJ, MacDonald DB, Janusz MT: Intraoperative spinal cord monitoring during descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aneurysm surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2002; 74:S1874–76.
6. Fann JI: Descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms. *Coron Artery Dis* 2002; 13:93–102.
7. Fedorow CA, Moon MC, Mutch WA, Grocott HP: Lumbar cerebrospinal fluid drainage for thoracoabdominal aortic surgery: rationale and practical considerations for management. *Anesth Analg* 2010; 111:46–58.
8. Fischbein MP, Miller DC: Long-term durability of open thoracic and thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2009; 22:74–80.
9. Jacobs MJ, Mommertz G, Koeppel TA, et al: Surgical repair of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 2007; 48:49–58.
10. Kazama S, Masaki Y, Maruyama S, et al: Effect of altering cerebrospinal fluid pressure on spinal cord blood flow. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1994; 58(1):112–5.
11. Levine WC, Lee JJ, Black JH, et al: Thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair: anesthetic management. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2005; 43:39–60.
12. Lima B, Nowicki ER, Blackstone EH, et al: Spinal cord protective strategies during descending and thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair in the modern era: the role of intrathecal papaverine. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2012; 143:945–52.
13. Ling E, Arrellano R: Systematic overview of the evidence supporting the use of cerebrospinal fluid drainage in thoracoabdominal aneurysm surgery for prevention of paraplegia. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 93:1115–22.
14. Lips J, de Haan P, de Jager S, et al: The role of transcranial motor evoked potentials in predicting neurologic and histopathologic outcome after experimental spinal cord ischemia. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 97:183–91.
15. Wong DR, Parenti JL, Green ST, et al: Open repair of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm in the modern surgical era: contemporary outcomes in 509 patients. *J Am Coll Surg* 2011; 212:569–79.

SURGERY OF THE ABDOMINAL AORTA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Operations on the abdominal aorta are generally performed for aneurysmal or occlusive diseases. Although **aortic aneurysms** may involve the suprarenal aorta, the majority are infrarenal in origin and may extend into the iliac arteries (Fig. 6.3-7). Most (> 95%) are asymptomatic and are discovered incidentally during investigation of another medical problem. Because of the associated increased risk for rupture as the aneurysm increases in size, most vascular surgeons recommend prophylactic repair for aneurysms > 5 cm in cross-section dimension. Repair

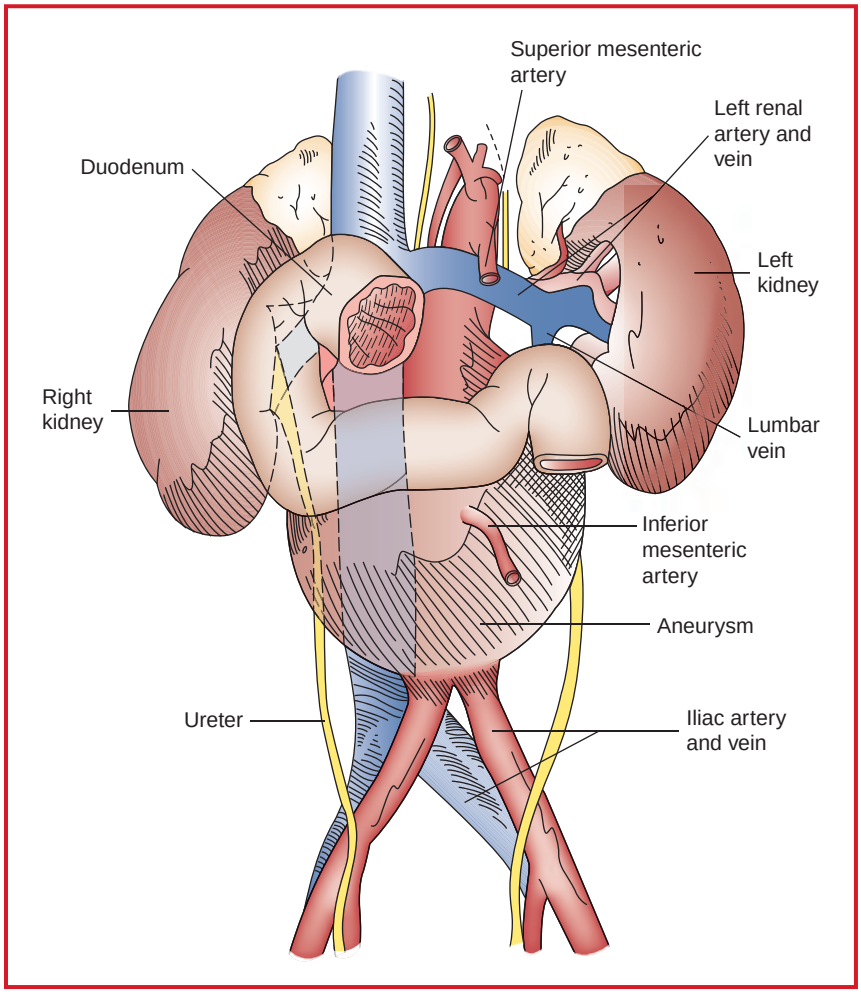


Figure 6.3-7. Aneurysm of the abdominal aorta.

also is indicated for painful aneurysms, those that have been associated with atheroembolism, and when there is documented recent increase in size or evidence of leak or rupture. CAD coexists in 30–40% of these patients and should be assessed preop.

Endovascular stent-grafting of abdominal aortic aneurysm has emerged as an alternative therapeutic approach. The open surgical repair may be either **transperitoneal** or **retroperitoneal** (Fig. 6.3-8). After exposure of the abdominal aorta from the level of the renal vein distally to the iliac arteries, the aorta is cross-clamped, distally at first to prevent atheroembolism, and then proximally. Graft origin is usually from the infrarenal aorta, but may arise from the intramesenteric aorta or even the supraceliac aorta. Graft termination may be to the distal aorta above the bifurcation (tube graft), to the common or external iliac arteries (Y graft), or the femoral arteries. Immediately prior to cross-clamping, vasodilators are increased to reduce afterload, which is significantly increased with application of the aortic cross-clamp. The aorta is then incised, lumbar vessels oversewn, and the aorta transected to allow an interposition graft to be sewn into place. The retroperitoneal approach has many advocates, as it may require less volume intraop, may be associated with less temperature loss, and may result in a shorter period of postop adynamic ileus. In a randomized, prospective study, however, no significant differences could be detected between these two approaches for blood loss or postop recovery time.

Aortoiliac occlusive disease can be a significant cause of lower extremity arterial insufficiency. Although the operative approach may be similar to that for aneurysmal disease, there exists a significant intraop difference in that there are not such profound changes associated with aortic clamping because there is already some element of increased afterload 2° the occlusive disease. Nevertheless, hemodynamic monitoring is mandatory to allow for rapid volume shifts and to ensure adequate preload and sufficient afterload reduction, especially during the period of aortic cross-clamping.

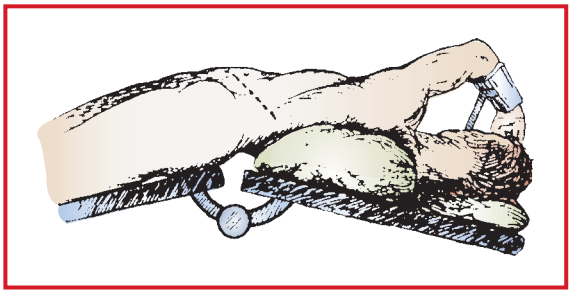


Figure 6.3-8. Retroperitoneal approach to the aorta: the incision is extended from the tip of the 11th rib or 10th intercostal space laterally toward the midhypogastrium. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

Variant procedure or approaches: In the rare patient with COPD severe enough to preclude weaning from the ventilator postop, extraanatomic grafts (e.g., axillofemoral, iliofemoral, and fem-fem bypass) can be constructed under local anesthesia.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA); severe aortoiliac stenosis sufficient to cause debilitating buttock, thigh, or calf claudication; isolated-inflow (aortoiliac) disease (rarely the sole cause for ischemic symptoms at rest or for tissue loss, except as a result of embolic complications)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transperitoneal Approach	Retroperitoneal Approach
Position	Supine	Supine with mild elevation of left flank
Incision	Midline abdominal	Left subcostal, left oblique, along 10th rib toward umbilicus (See Fig. 6.3-8.)
Special instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor; TEE; If suprarenal change: SMA + renal artery perfusion catheters.	⇐
Unique considerations	Will need pharmacologic manipulation to ↓ afterload or ↑ preload coincident with clamping or unclamping of aorta.	⇐ (The retroperitoneal approach is not used for emergency cases.)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 2 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	3–5 h	⇐
EBL	500 mL	⇐
Postop care	ICU 8–16 h, often extubated. Requires aggressive volume administration to allow for 3rd-space loss in 1st 12 h postop. Patient comfort and respiratory management markedly improved by epidural catheter for postop analgesia. Careful cardiac monitoring.	⇐
Mortality	2–5% elective; 50% emergent	⇐
Morbidity	MI: 10–15% (3% fatal) Respiratory insufficiency/pneumonia: 5–10% Lower extremity ischemia: 2–5% Renal insufficiency: 2–5% Bowel complications: 3–4% Hemorrhage: 2–4% CVA: < 1% Infection: < 1% Paraplegia: < 0.4%	⇐
Pain score	8–10	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	55 yr +
Male:Female	4:1
Incidence	3% of males > 55 yr; > 5% of patients > 50 yr in a general cardiology clinic; 30–66/1000
Etiology	Atherosclerosis; Marfan syndrome; Ehlers-Danlos syndrome; dissection; infection, including syphilis
Associated conditions	HTN; CAD; COPD; cerebrovascular disease; renal insufficiency

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for AAA repair are typically older males with multiple coexisting diseases (e.g., CAD, HTN, PVD, COPD). Most commonly these patients are asymptomatic and the Dx is made as an incidental finding during routine exams or other medical procedures; however, some patients may present with severe ↓ BP following aneurysm rupture. These patients require prompt resuscitation (SBP goal: 90–100 mm Hg) and emergent aortic cross-clamping. For anesthetic considerations, see Abdominal Trauma: Vascular Injuries (p. 751).

Respiratory	Many patients have COPD and a long Hx of smoking. Preop preparation—including bronchodilators, cessation of smoking, incentive spirometry, and chest physiotherapy—will ↓ risk of postop complications. **Tests:** CXR. May need PFTs and ABG to determine severity of pulmonary disease.
Cardiovascular	CAD is the most common cause of morbidity and mortality in this patient population. HTN increases risk of aneurysmal rupture; hence, preop control of BP is essential. ✓ BP in both arms to determine placement of arterial line intraop (arterial line should be placed in arm with higher BP). **Tests:** Radiologic assessment of aneurysm using ultrasonography, CT, arteriography, and MRI. ECG: ✓ for evidence of ischemia, infarction, and LVH. Stress testing, coronary angiography in case of suspicion of coronary disease.
Renal	Chronic renal insufficiency occurs frequently in this patient population 2° HTN, diabetes mellitus (DM), and atherosclerotic renovascular disease. Hypovolemia 2° radiographic dye studies and bowel prep → renal failure. **Tests:** BUN, Cr; consider creatinine clearance; electrolytes
Hematologic	Preop coagulation disorders should be corrected. Many patients are on aspirin, which should be D/C'd 7 d preop. Alcohol abuse can be associated with anemia, thrombocytopenia, and ↓ vitamin K-dependent factors. **Tests:** PT; PTT; Hct; Plt
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Anxiety and pain may cause HTN and ↑ risk of aneurysmal rupture. Sedatives and analgesics should be used as indicated (p. B-1). Full-stomach precautions for emergent procedures (p. B-5).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or combination of epidural and GA. The goals of anesthesia are to: (a) preserve myocardial, renal, pulmonary, and CNS perfusion; (b) maintain adequate intravascular volume and CO; (c) anticipate the surgical maneuvers that will affect BP and blood volume; and (d) control BP to minimize risk of rupture, while ensuring perfusion of other organs.

Induction	If it is planned to extubate the patient postop, anesthesia should be induced using fentanyl (4–6 mcg/kg) in conjunction with propofol (2 mg/kg) or etomidate (0.2–0.4 mg/kg). If an epidural will be used for postop pain management, decrease intraop iv opioid dose. Patients with an epidural typically receive morphine (2–4 mg), hydromorphone (0.2–0.8 mg), fentanyl (150–200 mcg), or sufentanil (50 mcg) in 10 mL into the epidural catheter. Local anesthetics may cause hemodynamic instability after unclamping 2° sympathectomy. Muscle relaxants are chosen to minimize tachycardia or ↓ BP (e.g., vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg or rocuronium 1 mg/kg). Anesthesia is deepened before intubation by mask ventilation with 1% sevoflurane. If there is a hemodynamic response to oral airway insertion, tracheal lidocaine or further anesthetic is given before gentle laryngoscopy and intubation. Etomidate is useful for induction in hemodynamically unstable patients. Full-stomach precautions may be necessary.	
Maintenance	O_2/air/narcotic and volatile agent. N_2O can be used, but it may cause bowel distention. Combining epidural and GA offers good abdominal relaxation. Patients receiving epidural local anesthesia may require phenylephrine to treat ↓ BP 2° sympathetic blockade. Epidural catheter placement before systemic anticoagulation is a safe technique. Narcotic epidural analgesia should be given within 1 h of skin incision if morphine 3–8 mg is used. If hydromorphone (0.5–0.8 mg) is given epidurally, it is given within 1 h of abdominal closure. Patient may become hypothermic 2° large incision with visceral exposure and prolonged operation.	
Emergence	Normothermic (> 35.5°C) patients who have had uneventful surgery, especially utilizing a retroperitoneal approach, are frequently extubated in the OR or shortly after arrival in the ICU. Patients with significant cardiac or pulmonary disease generally are left intubated and weaned from the ventilator in the ICU. Prevention of HTN and tachycardia during emergence may require titration of β-adrenergic-blocking drugs (e.g., esmolol 50–300 mcg/kg/min) and/or vasodilators (e.g., SNP 0.25–2.0 mcg/kg/min) or NTG (0.25–2.0 mcg/kg/min). Epidural morphine (2–4 mg) or hydromorphone (0.5–0.8 mg) is given ~60 min before the end of surgery. It is important to ensure full reversal from neuromuscular blockade.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Major blood loss iv: 14 ga (or 7 Fr) × 2 4 U PRBC UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids. Humidify all gases.	Use of rapid infusion and blood-salvaging devices helpful. Consider acute normovolemic hemodilution. Hemorrhage should be treated with crystalloid, colloid, or blood products as appropriate. Upper-body Bair-Hugger or equivalent.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Monitor for cardiac ischemia. Automated ST segment analysis is useful.
	CVP line	The measurement of CVP may be sufficient in patients with good ventricular function and exercise tolerance.
	PA catheter	In patients with recent MI, Hx of CHF, Hx of unstable angina, multisystem disease, or in those presenting emergently (without the benefit of a complete workup) a PA catheter is appropriate.
	TEE	TEE is invaluable for assessing cardiac changes 2° cross-clamping and unclamping the aorta.
	Arterial line Urinary catheter	The arterial line is generally placed in the radial artery of the arm having the higher BP (if difference exists).
Cross-clamping	↑↑ Afterload → HTN ↓ Preload ↑ Filling pressures ± ↓ Spinal cord perfusion ± ↓ Renal perfusion ↓ Perfusion to viscera below the clamp ABGs/electrolytes regularly	Application of aortic cross-clamp causes HTN proximal to the clamp. In a healthy heart, this is well tolerated, with minimal increase in filling pressure. In case of poor left ventricular function, filling pressures generally rise. Control of preload, afterload, and HR can be accomplished with vasodilators and β-blockers.

Cross-clamping (cont'd)		Negative inotropic agents (e.g., β-blockers, inhalational anesthetics) are used cautiously. Occlusion of infrarenal aorta → ↓ renal blood flow. Ensure adequate intravascular volume and CO. Administer mannitol (0.25–0.5 g/kg) before clamping to maintain UO.
Aortic unclamping	↓↓ Afterload Volume loading Lactate washout ± Phenylephrine	Immediately before unclamping, D/C dilators and negative inotropic agents. Gradually increase filling pressures (volume loading) to avoid myocardial ischemia. ↓↓ BP may occur with removal of cross-clamp 2° to hypovolemia, reperfusion, or myocardial dysfunction. Reperfusion of lower limbs and washout of lactate does not usually require use of HCO_3. Patients with an epidural sympathetic block often require phenylephrine support during unclamping. The surgeon can reclamp or occlude the aorta if ↓↓ BP persists. If hemodynamically stable with ↓ UO, consider furosemide 20–80 mg.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Myocardial ischemia HTN Hemorrhage Coagulopathy Hypothermia Organ ischemia	Hypothermia may cause dysrhythmias, depress contractility, and exacerbate coagulopathy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Myocardial ischemia Renal failure Respiratory failure	
Pain management	Epidural narcotics (p. C-1)	
Tests	CXR to ✓ line and ETT placement ABG Coagulation profile BUN; Cr	BP should be closely controlled postop to decrease bleeding from graft site and raw surfaces.

Suggested Readings

1. Arko FR, Lee WA, Hill BB, et al: Aneurysm-related death: primary endpoint analysis for comparison of open and endovascular repair. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 36:297–304.
2. Boccara G, Jaber S, Eliet J, et al: Monitoring of end-tidal carbon dioxide partial pressure changes during infrarenal aortic cross-clamping: a non-invasive method to predict unclamping hypotension. *Acta Anesthesiol Scand* 2001; 45:188–93.
3. Conrad MF, Crawford RS, Pedraza JD, et al: Long-term durability of open abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *J Vasc Surg* 2007; 46:669–75.
4. Filinger M: Who should we operate on and how do we decide: predicting rupture and survival in patients with aortic aneurysm. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2007; 20:121–7.
5. Gold MS, DeCrosta D, Rizzuto C, et al: The effect of lumbar epidural and general anesthesia on plasma catecholamines and hemodynamics during abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Anesth Analg* 1994; 78(2):225–30.
6. Lederle FA, Freischlag JA, Kyriakides TC, et al: Open versus Endovascular Repair (OVER) Veteran Affairs Cooperative Study Group: outcomes following endovascular vs open repair of abdominal aortic aneurysm: a randomized trial. *JAMA* 2009; 302:1532–42.
7. Nishimori M, Ballantyne JC, Low JHS: Epidural pain relief versus systemic opioid-based pain relief for abdominal aortic surgery (Cochrane Reviews). *Cochrane Library* 2006; 3:1577.

8. Panaretou V, Toufekzian L, Siafaka I, et al: Postoperative pulmonary function after open abdominal aortic aneurysm repair in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: epidural versus intravenous analgesia. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2012; 26:149–55.
9. Patra P, Chaillou P, Bizouarn P: Intraoperative autotransfusion for repair of unruptured aneurysms of the infrarenal abdominal aorta. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 2000; 41:407–13.
10. Rutherford RB: Open versus endovascular stent graft repair for abdominal aortic aneurysm: an historical review. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2012; 25:39–48.
11. Smaka TJ, Cobas M, Velasquez OC, Lubarsky DA: Perioperative management of endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2011; 25:166–176.
12. Sprung J, Abdelmalak B, Gottlieb A, et al: Analysis of risk factors for myocardial infarction and cardiac mortality after major vascular surgery. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 93:129–40.
13. Takayama T, Yamanouchi D: Aneurysm disease: the abdominal aorta. *Surg Clin N Am* 2013; 93:877–91.
14. Tang TY, Walsh SR, Fanshawe TR, et al: Comparison of risk-scoring methods in predicting the immediate outcome after elective open abdominal aortic aneurysm surgery. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg* 2007; 34:505–13.
15. Tsai S, Conrad MF, Patel VI, et al: Durability of open repair of juxtarenal abdominal aortic aneurysms. *J Vasc Surg* 2012; 56:2–7.
16. Young EL, Holt PJ, Poloniecki JD, et al: Meta-analysis and systematic review of the relationship between surgeon annual caseload and mortality for elective open abdominal aortic aneurysm repairs. *J Vasc Surg* 2007; 46:1287–94.

INFRAINGUINAL ARTERIAL BYPASS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Due to the limited durability of distal bypass procedures, surgical bypass to the infrainguinal arteries is indicated only for salvage of the severely ischemic lower extremity, as manifest by gangrene, ischemic ulceration, or ischemic rest pain. Less frequently, it is used to alleviate functional ischemia of claudication, or leg discomfort with exercise. Its use is predicated on the existence of adequate inflow to the level of the groin or femoral artery. Other necessary components include an adequate target vessel, preferably in continuity with runoff into the plantar arch of the foot, and an adequate conduit, preferably autologous saphenous vein. Long-term patency rates of nonautologous conduits to the below-knee arteries are distinctly inferior to that of saphenous vein and should be avoided whenever possible. This population, almost by definition, includes patients with diabetes mellitus (DM), CAD, and cerebrovascular disease, all of which must be assessed preop.

The operative repair usually involves incisions at the groin and distal bypass sites to expose the donor and recipient arteries and to harvest leg or arm venous conduit. The operative approaches are rather similar. An unobstructed inflow source—usually the common femoral, superficial femoral, or deep femoral artery—is exposed in the groin. The target distal artery, usually at the level of the knee or below, can be approached through a medial incision. More distally, the peroneal and anterior tibial arteries can be approached laterally at the midtibial level. At the level of the malleolus, both the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial arteries can be revascularized. After control of donor and recipient vessels, an anatomic tunnel is created, and the bypass conduit (saphenous vein, prosthetic graft) is passed through its length. After administration of 10,000 U of heparin, the distal anastomosis is constructed first, followed by the proximal anastomosis. A completion arteriogram confirms unobstructed flow. Heparin is then partially reversed and meticulous hemostasis obtained, and the wounds are closed.

Although conventional wisdom has held that the anesthetic and operative risks for patients undergoing distal reconstructions are low, there may be little difference in postop morbidity and mortality when compared with patients undergoing a major inflow procedure within the abdomen.

Usual preop diagnosis: Severe peripheral vascular disease (PVD); CAD; DM; HTN; obstructive PA disease. (These are almost ubiquitous comorbidities.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Groin, medial knee, ± distal leg incisions; + incision to harvest venous conduit
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv at induction of anesthesia
Surgical time	2–5 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Closing considerations	Optimization of coagulation status
EBL	200–300 mL
Postop care	Possible ICU × 24 h; patients are at risk for myocardial ischemia.
Mortality	2–4%
Morbidity	MI: 5–12% Respiratory insufficiency: 5% Infection: 2–5% Amputation: 2–4% CVA: <1%
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	> 55 yr (mean age = > 70 yr)
Male:Female	4:1
Incidence	Claudication fairly common in elderly; however, 75% will remain untreated, but stable, over 2–5 yr, with < 5% requiring amputation.
Etiology	Arteriosclerosis (primarily); chronic embolic disease (rare); vasculitis; popliteal artery entrapment; cystic adventitial disease of popliteal artery
Associated conditions	CAD; cerebrovascular disease; DM; HTN; COPD

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: infrainguinal arterial bypass; arterial embolectomy; lumbar sympathectomy; venous thrombectomy or vein excision)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for peripheral vascular surgery may suffer from major systemic diseases, including CAD, HTN, and DM. Three types of occlusive vascular disease have been described: Type 1—isolated to the aortic and iliac bifurcations; is not associated with CAD. Type 2—diffuse pattern involving coronary and cerebral circulations; associated with a higher incidence of DM and HTN. Type 3—involves small vessels, especially of the lower limbs; associated with higher postop morbidity and mortality.

Respiratory	Vascular patients frequently have Hx of smoking and COPD. Preop evaluation of pulmonary function helps to determine whether regional vs GA is appropriate, while providing baseline values for postop comparison. **Tests:** CXR; consider PFTs; ABG
Cardiovascular	Vascular surgery of the lower extremities is often associated with ↑ morbidity and mortality 2° ↑ incidence of CAD and HTN in this patient population. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ for LVH and ischemia; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	↑ incidence of cerebrovascular disease. Careful neurological assessment is necessary to document existing deficits.

Endocrine	↑ incidence of DM, which may be associated with peripheral and autonomic neuropathies (silent MI, labile BP) and delayed gastric emptying. Insulin requirements for most diabetic patients can be managed by administering one-half the usual a.m. dose of insulin, once a dextrose-containing iv (e.g., D5LR) has been established. Frequent blood glucose measurements should be made periop.
Renal	There is a higher incidence of renal artery disease and renal insufficiency in this patient population. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; consider creatinine clearance; electrolytes; UA
Hematologic	Many patients presenting for this surgery are taking anticoagulant/anti-Plt medications. Inquire as to bleeding or bruising tendency. **Tests:** Hct; Plt; consider PT, PTT.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P
Premedication	Continue usual medications up to time of surgery. Anxiety can contribute to HTN and tachycardia. Premedicate conservatively (midazolam 0.5–2 mg iv) for geriatric patients. If ischemic pain is present, a narcotic such as fentanyl (25–50 mcg iv) can be given. Avoid im administration in patients on anticoagulant therapy.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Either regional anesthesia or GETA may be used. For **infrainguinal arterial bypass,** there is evidence that regional anesthesia is superior for promoting graft survival. To date, no study has shown a difference in patient mortality between these anesthetic techniques. **Lumbar sympathectomy** may be accomplished with regional or GA. For **thrombectomy,** GETA with IPPV may reduce the risk of pulmonary emboli.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Hemodynamic stability is important; therefore, a slow, gradual induction is carried out. Preoxygenation is followed by smooth iv induction, using small, incremental doses of fentanyl (1–3 mcg/kg); then propofol is given in divided doses until the patient is asleep. Alternatively, if the LV function is poor, etomidate (0.2 mg/kg iv) in combination with fentanyl (100–200 mcg) is appropriate. A full dose of muscle relaxant (vecuronium or rocuronium) is given, and ventilation is controlled. Muscle relaxation is not necessary during the procedure, but muscle relaxant is given to facilitate intubation. The muscle relaxant is chosen to avoid undesirable effects on HR.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3) with fentanyl (1–2 mcg/kg/h). Continued muscle relaxation is usually unnecessary. These surgical procedures are associated with minimal hemodynamic instability.
Emergence	Tracheal extubation should be based on standard criteria, such as adequacy of ventilation, return of airway reflexes and reversal of muscle relaxation. Control of BP is accomplished with vasodilators (e.g., NTG 0.1–4.0 mcg/kg/min or SNP 0.25–5.0 mcg/kg/min). Esmolol can be given in incremental doses of 10 mg or by infusion (50–200 mcg/kg/min).

Regional anesthesia: Patients presenting for regional anesthesia must have a normal coagulation profile; also, they cannot be on heparin (including low molecular weight), urokinase, or streptokinase. The important goals in regional anesthesia are to achieve hemodynamic stability while establishing an adequate block. An epidural or spinal catheter (multiorifice) is frequently used to infuse local anesthetic for a gradual onset and to prevent an excessively high block. Hemodynamic stability can be improved by infusing 500–1000 mL of NS/LR before performing the block. The patient may be placed in the lateral decubitus position (with operative side down), which may provide a denser and more prolonged block on that side. Achieving a T8-T10 level is optimal. Overzealous hydration may → CHF in this patient population, when the vasodilation 2° regional sympathectomy dissipates. The use of regional anesthesia in patients who will receive intraop anticoagulation is controversial. We feel it is a relatively safe procedure and have

not had a complication with this technique. If blood is aspirated after placement of an epidural, we remove the catheter and then replace it at a different interspace. Patients on minidose heparin should have a normal PTT before use of regional anesthesia.

Spinal	**One-shot spinal:** 1% hyperbaric tetracaine (6–10 mg) or 0.75% bupivacaine (10–15 mg). Add epinephrine 0.2 mg (generally increases duration of block about 50%) or phenylephrine 5 mg (generally increases duration of block about 100%). Do not add vasoconstrictor if patient is diabetic. Large doses of hyperbaric local anesthetic should be avoided as they may cause postop cauda equina syndrome. **Continuous spinal:** A 20-ga catheter is placed via an 18-ga Tuohy needle. 0.5% hyperbaric tetracaine or 0.75% bupivacaine is titrated to desired anesthetic level (T8-T10). Catheters should be redosed every 60–80 min or as soon as BP trends upward. The risk of spinal headache is very low with continuous spinals.	
Epidural	Lidocaine 2% with 1:200,000 epinephrine or 0.5% bupivacaine is used. Titrate to desired anesthetic level (T8-T10).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14 or 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases. Maintain UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h.	Minimal-to-moderate blood loss. Use forced-air warmer (e.g., Bair-Hugger).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line ST-segment analysis	An arterial line is most often used in patients with severe cardiopulmonary disease or brittle diabetes. Blood sampling for ABGs, electrolytes, glucose, and Hct is facilitated by the use of an arterial line.
	± CVP/PA catheters ± TEE	CVP and PA catheters are not used routinely because large changes in intravascular volumes are uncommon. Patients with poor LV function, recent MI, or severe valvular disease may need PA and/or TEE monitoring.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Diabetic patients may be at risk of skin ischemia due to poor positioning or inadequate padding of limbs, etc.
Complications	HTN Ischemic reperfusion syndrome (postembolectomy) Hypothermia Hemorrhage	Reperfusion of an ischemic limb → ↓ pH, ↑ K+, and release of myoglobin from injured muscle → ATN.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	CHF	Infrainguinal bypass: Avoid overhydration; when epidural sympathectomy fades, these patients are at increased risk for CHF. Maintain normovolemia so that peripheral vasoconstriction (which may limit outflow to the graft) does not occur.
	Hypothermia Graft occlusion	Hypothermia causes vasoconstriction and also may limit outflow to the graft.
Pain management	Epidural/spinal opiates (p. C-2) PCA	Epidural (or spinal) catheter may be used for postop analgesia (p. C-3).
Tests	CXR if central line placed Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Chung J, Bartelson BB, Hiatt WR, et al: Wound healing and functional outcomes after infrainguinal bypass with reversed saphenous vein for critical limb ischemia. *J Vasc Surg* 2006; 43:1183–90.
2. Clair D, Shah S, Weber J: Current state of diagnosis and management of critical limb ischemia. *Curr Cardiol Rep* 2012; 14: 160–70.
3. Conte MA: Critical appraisal of surgical revascularization for critical limb ischemia. *J Vasc Surg* 2013; 57:8s–13s.
4. Damask MC, Weissman C, Barth A, et al: General vs epidural—which is the better anesthetic technique for femoral-popliteal bypass surgery? *Anesth Analg* 1986; 65:539.
5. Denny N, Masters R, Pearson D, et al: Postdural puncture headache after continuous spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg* 1987; 66(8):791–4.
6. Hull DJ, Kizilgul M, Aung W, Rousillon K, Keely EC: Frequency of coronary artery disease in patients undergoing peripheral artery disease surgery. *Am J Cardiol* 2012; 110:736–40.
7. Singh N, Sidawy AN, Dezee K, et al: The effects of the type of anesthesia in outcomes of lower extremity infrainguinal bypass. *J Vasc Surg* 2006; 44:964–8.
8. Taylor SM, Cull DL, Kalbaugh CA, et al: Critical analysis of clinical success after surgical bypass for lower-extremity ischemic tissue loss using a standardized definition combining multiple parameters: a new paradigm of outcomes assessment. *J Am Coll Surg* 2007; 204:831–8.

ARTERIAL EMBOLECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The etiology of acute arterial insufficiency is often the result of thromboembolism, which is usually of cardiac origin. Patients at high risk for embolization are those with MI, mitral stenosis, or atrial fibrillation (AF), all of which increase the risk of intracardiac thrombus formation. Noncardiac causes include thoracic and abdominal aortic pathology, such as aneurysms, severe atherosclerotic disease, and paradoxical embolus via a patent foramen ovale (PFO). The emboli usually become lodged at tapering regions and branch sites and most commonly involve the extremities; the cerebrovascular and mesenteric vasculature also may be involved. In the lower extremities, emboli frequently lodge at the iliac, femoral, or popliteal arteries; the common femoral artery is involved in up to 50% of all embolic events. Emboli to the upper extremities typically affect the brachial artery. Because the collateral circulation may not be well developed in patients without underlying peripheral vascular disease, muscle necrosis can appear within 4–6 h after onset, although this time frame is highly variable. Patients are heparinized at time of diagnosis. Therapy directed at the specific etiology is critical to achieve a successful outcome. Revascularization after 8–12 h of ischemia usually is less effective. If the underlying source of the emboli is not adequately treated, recurrence is likely and is associated with poor prognosis. The surgical approach to femoral embolectomy is a groin incision and isolation of the common, superficial, and deep femoral arteries. Both the superficial and deep femoral systems are explored, and small embolectomy catheters are passed into the distal lower extremity. In addition to passage of embolectomy catheters, angioscopy may be helpful. Residual thrombus on intraop arteriogram requires distal surgical exposure and exploration.

Usual preop diagnosis: Peripheral artery embolism

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Limited groin, medial knee, possible distal leg incisions
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	Variable, 1–4 h
Closing considerations	Ischemia-reperfusion syndrome with acidosis and hyperkalemia, renal tubular necrosis from myoglobinuria
EBL	100–300 mL
Postop care	May need ICU for cardiac monitoring; monitor metabolic disturbances, neurovascular status, and for compartment syndrome

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Mortality	10–40% (~80% cardiac); older age; acute onset →↑ risk.
Morbidity	Arterial reocclusion or thrombosis: 20% Wound hematoma: 10–20% Recurrent emboli: 6–45% (less with anticoagulation) Amputation: 5–10% Metabolic complications: Frequent Compartment syndrome: Occasional
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	30–90 yr
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	50/100,000 admissions
Etiology	Cardiac origin (AF accounts for 50–75% of patients; less frequent, LV thrombus from MI) or non-cardiac origin (mural thrombus from thoracic or abdominal aortic pathology)
Associated conditions	Rheumatic heart disease and mitral stenosis, mitral or aortic valve prosthesis, CAD and MI, CHF, endocarditis, peripheral vascular and cerebrovascular disease.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Infrainguinal Arterial Bypass, p. 435.

Suggested Readings

1. Bandyk DF, Johnson BL, Kirkpatrick AF, et al. Surgical sympathectomy for reflex sympathetic dystrophic syndromes. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 35:269–77
2. Beglaibter N, Berlatzky Y, Zamir O, et al. Retroperitoneoscopic lumbar sympathectomy. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 35:815–7.
3. Gassage JA, Ali T, Chambers J, et al: Peripheral arterial embolism: prevalence, outcome, and the role of echocardiography in management. *Vasc Endovascular Surg* 2006; 40:280–6.
4. Jaffery Z, Thornton SN, White CJ: Acute limb ischemia. *Am J Med Sci* 2011; 342:226–34.
5. Setacci C, de Donato G, Setacci F, Sirignano P, Galzerano G: Hybrid procedures for acute limb ischemia. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 2012; 53:133–43.
6. Varty K, Johnston JA, Beets G, et al: Arterial embolectomy. A long-term perspective. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 1992; 33:79–84.
7. Zaraca F, Stringari C, Ebner JA, Ebner H: Routine versus selective use of intraoperative angiography during thromboembolectomy for acute lower limb ischemia: analysis of outcomes. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2010; 24:621–7.

LUMBAR SYMPATHECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The role of open surgical or endoscopic **lumbar sympathectomy** is not well defined. The procedure is used selectively in patients with causalgia, inoperable lower limb ischemia with rest pain or toe gangrene, symptomatic vasospastic disorders (e.g., Raynaud's phenomenon, frostbite), and sometimes as an adjunct to distal revascularization procedures. Causalgia responds well to lumbar sympathectomy, especially if performed early in the clinical course. There may be some benefit of the procedure in 50–60% of patients with rest pain or ischemic ulceration. Sympathectomy may increase collateral blood flow and local skin blood flow. Scleroderma with impending "minor" amputation may benefit from sympathectomy with improved wound healing. Sympathetic denervation involves the division of preganglionic fibers along their segmental origins and resection of corresponding relay ganglia. For most clinical indications, L2 and L3 **ganglionectomy** sufficiently sympathectomizes the lower extremity (Fig. 6.3-9).

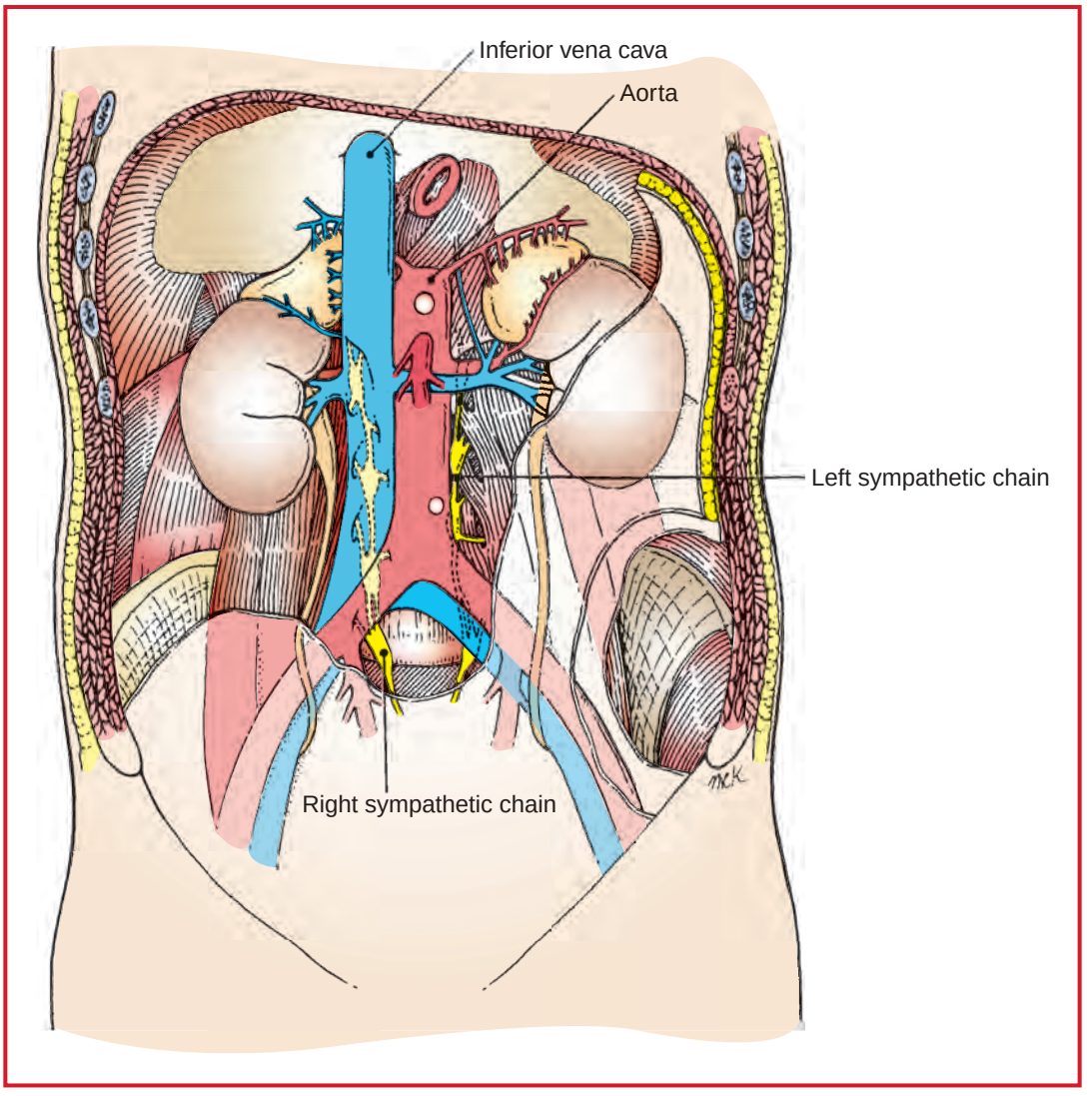


Figure 6.3-9. Surgical anatomy for lumbar sympathectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

The **anterolateral retroperitoneal approach** is the most commonly performed open surgical technique because of the adequate exposure and a relatively well tolerated incision. For this approach, an oblique incision is made through the abdominal musculature, extending from the lateral border of the rectus abdominus to the anterior axillary line. Cephalad and caudad blunt dissection is performed between the transversalis fascia and peritoneum. The dissection is continued in a retroperitoneal fashion. The psoas muscle is identified, with care being taken to leave the ureter and gonadal vessels attached to overlying peritoneum. The sympathetic chain is identified between the psoas muscle and the vertebra (medial to psoas and overlying the transverse process of lumbar vertebra). On the left side, the sympathetic chain is lateral to the abdominal aorta; on the right, the sympathetic chain is beneath the IVC. The sympathetic chain is dissected free from surrounding tissue, clipped proximally and distally, and resected. Hemostasis is achieved, and the abdominal wall is closed in layers.

A **posterior approach** is used less often because of significant postop paraspinous muscle spasms. In this approach, a transverse lumbar incision is made, and the paraspinous muscles are partially divided and retracted to expose the vertebra. The sympathetic chain is identified and resected as described. The **anterior/transperitoneal approach** is performed in conjunction with an abdominal aortic or intraperitoneal procedure. Dissection is carried to the psoas muscle; the retroperitoneum is entered, and the sympathetic chain is isolated in the groove between the psoas and the vertebra. The sympathetic chain is clipped proximally and distally and resected.

Usual preop diagnosis: Causalgia; inoperable arterial occlusive disease with limb-threatening ischemia causing rest pain, ulceration, or superficial digital gangrene; symptomatic vasospastic disorders (e.g., Raynaud's phenomenon or frostbite)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Anterolateral (Flowthow)	Posterior (Royle)	Anterior (Adson)
Position	Supine (flank slightly raised); widen distance between costal margin and iliac crest.	Prone	Supine
Incision	Oblique (lateral edge of rectus to ribs at anterior axillary line)	Posterior transverse over midlumbar region	Transverse or midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	May use frozen section to confirm specimen.	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	3 h	4 h
Closing considerations	Flex table to facilitate abdominal wall closure; occasionally drain is placed.	⇐	⇐
EBL	50–100 mL (unless complicated)	50–100 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → ward. (May require cardiac and hemodynamic monitoring in high-risk patients, or if combined with distal revascularization.)	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Postsympathectomy neuralgia: 50% Sexual derangement—retrograde ejaculation (usually bilateral L1 sympathectomy): 25–50% Wound hematoma: 10% Wound infection: 1–3%	~50% ~25–50% ~10% ~1–3% Paraspinous muscle spasms	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	5	5	5 (related to primary procedure)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	38–91 yr; younger patients with vasospastic disease; older patients with PVD
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Unknown. Approximately 30 cases/yr at Stanford University Medical Center, mainly for inoperable lower extremity ischemia or as an adjunct to revascularization procedures.
Etiology	PVD (rest pain and tissue loss);vasospastic disorders; causalgia
Associated conditions	PVD (rare); vasospastic disorders (rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Infrainguinal Arterial Bypass, p. 435.

Suggested Readings

1. Bandyk DF, Johnson BL, Kirkpatrick AF, et al: Surgical sympathectomy for reflex sympathetic dystrophic syndromes. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 35:269–77
2. Beglaibter N, Berlatzky Y, Zamir O, et al: Retroperitoneoscopic lumbar sympathectomy. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 35:815–7.
3. Nemes R, Surlin V, Chiutu L, Georgescu M, Georgescu I: Retroperitoneoscopic lumbar sympathectomy: prospective study upon a series of 50 consecutive patients. *Surg Endosc* 2011; 25(9):3066–70.
4. Repelaer van Driel OJ, van Bockel JH, van Schilfgaarde R: Lumbar sympathectomy for severe lower limb ischaemia: results and analysis of factors influencing the outcome. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 1988; 29(3):310–14.
5. Sanni A, Hamid A, Dunning J: Is sympathectomy of benefit in critical left ischaemia not amenable to revascularization? *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2005; 4:478–83.
6. Setaccia C, de Donatoa G, Teraa M, et al: Chapter IV: Treatment of critical limb ischemia. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg* 2011; 42(S2):S43–59.
7. Watarida S, Shiraishi S, Fujimura M, et al: Laparoscopic lumbar sympathectomy for lower-limb disease. *Surg Endosc* 2002; 16:500–3.

VENOUS SURGERY—THROMBECTOMY OR VEIN EXCISION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Standard therapy for acute DVT consists of anticoagulation, bed rest, and elevation of the extremity. Endovascular or catheter-directed thrombolysis and thrombectomy systems have been shown to extract large venous thrombus burden. Open surgical thrombectomy for acute iliofemoral DVT remains controversial. **Venous thrombectomy** is recommended for patients with threatened limb loss or venous gangrene caused by massive DVT associated with high compartment pressures and arterial insufficiency (phlegmasia cerulea dolens). Surgical venous thrombectomy requires exposure of the femoral vein via a groin cut-down. The common femoral vein is isolated (located medial or posteromedial to the femoral artery) and controlled proximally and distally. The patient is given iv heparin at this stage, if not already heparinized. A transverse venotomy is followed by extraction of the thrombus, using forceps and Fogarty embolectomy catheters (Fig. 6.3-10). Distal thrombi are expressed through the same incision with the aid of an Esmarch bandage placed on the extremity. After complete removal of the thrombus, the venotomy is closed with nonabsorbable sutures, and flow through the femoral vein is reestablished. The femoral incision is closed in layers. A plastic/Silastic drain may or may not be used. The best results of thrombectomy are obtained in young patients with the first episode of proximal (iliofemoral) thrombosis.

Nonsuppurative thrombophlebitis of the superficial veins may develop due to local trauma, prolonged inactivity, fungal infection, or the use of oral contraceptives. Suppurative thrombophlebitis may occur as a complication of iv line placement or iv drug abuse. Underlying varicose veins may predispose to thrombophlebitis. Migratory superficial thrombophlebitis may be associated with chronic ischemia of the extremities in Buerger's disease, or it may develop in patients with a malignancy. Conservative management with hot compresses, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications, and elevation of the extremity is effective in most cases. Rarely, **excision** of the acutely thrombosed greater saphenous vein is indicated to prevent progression of thrombosis to the saphenofemoral junction and into the deep venous system. Vein excision is simply approached by a longitudinal incision directly over the affected vein. The phlebitic vein is dissected from the surrounding tissue, ligated proximally and distally, and removed. The surrounding fibrotic tissue is debrided gently. The wound is irrigated and packed open with moist gauze. Suppurative phlebitis is treated with iv antibiotics and complete excision of the involved vein segment through multiple small incisions.

Usual preop diagnosis: Lower-limb venous thrombosis threatening viability; femoral thrombosis < 10 d; iliac thrombosis < 3 wk; floating thrombi at hip level; acute deep or superficial venous thrombosis; suppurative thrombophlebitis.

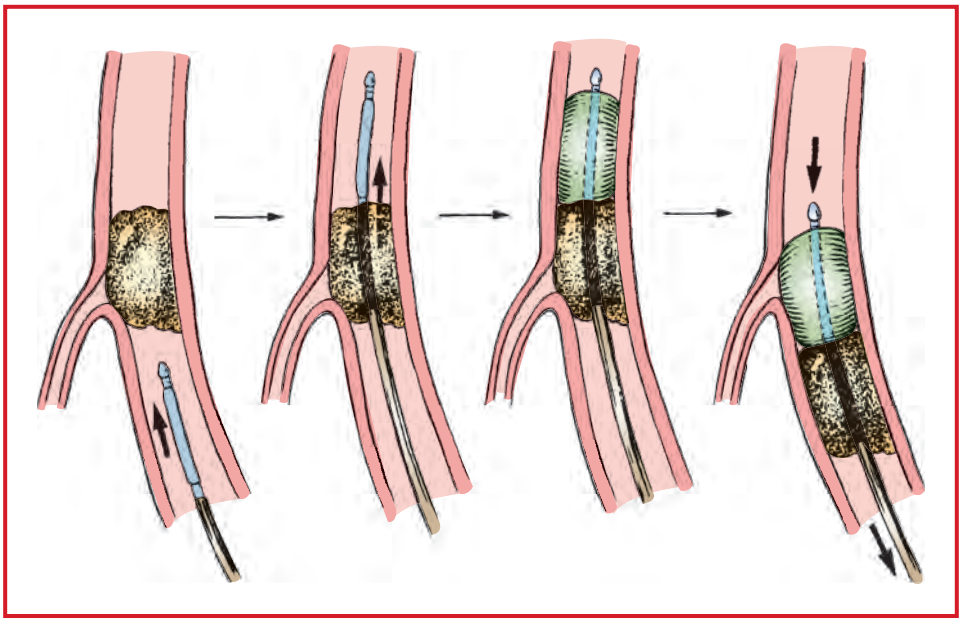


Figure 6.3-10. Fogarty catheter embolectomy with catheter insertion in the distal vessel. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* Vol 2. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thrombectomy	Vein Excision
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Ipsilateral longitudinal or oblique groin incision	Multiple small incisions along the course of vein to be excised
Special instrumentation	Fogarty embolectomy catheters; RBC salvage System	None
Unique considerations	IPPV during thrombectomy may decrease chance of PE 2° ↓ venous return → more complete extraction of the thrombus.	None
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv. If the patient has septic thrombus, antibiotic is dependent on blood culture.	Dependent on culture of aspirate. Usually a septic patient is on broad-spectrum antibiotics (guided by culture).
Surgical time	2–3 h	1–3 h
Closing considerations	None	Wound packed open for drainage
EBL	50–250 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → ward; ICU in high-risk patients; heparin administered before and after procedure, followed by Coumadin for 1–6 mo.	PACU → ward; support stockings
Mortality	Minimal (depending on underlying illness)	Minimal

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Thrombectomy	Vein Excision
Morbidity	Postthrombotic syndrome: < 10–44% Venous stasis Nonpitting edema Brawny induration Aching pain	Minimal
Pain score	3	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Young adult—elderly
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	6–7 million in the United States have adverse effects from chronic venous stasis; 500,000 have complications of leg ulceration.
Etiology	Chronic primary varicose veins; defective venous valves; impaired pumping action of muscles in leg; previous iliofemoral thrombophlebitis; obstruction of venous return
Associated conditions	Multifactorial: varicose veins; underlying malignancy; altered coagulation status (hypercoagulability, acquired or congenital); Hx of DVT/thrombophlebitis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Infrainguinal Arterial Bypass, p. 435.

Suggested Readings

1. Bluckians A, Meier GH III: Treatment of symptomatic lower extremity acute deep venous thrombosis: role of mechanical thrombectomy. *Vascular* 2007; 15:297–303.
2. Comerota AJ: The current role of operative venous thrombectomy in deep vein thrombosis. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2012; 25:2–12.
3. Davenport DL, Xenos ES: Early outcomes and risk factors in venous thrombectomy: an analysis of the American College of Surgeons NSQIP dataset. *Vasc Endovascular Surg* 2011; 45:325–8.
4. Kim HS, Patra A, Paxton BE, et al: Catheter-directed thrombolysis with percutaneous rheolytic thrombectomy versus thrombolysis along in upper and lower extremity deep vein thrombosis. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2006; 29:1003–7.
5. Vedantham S, Vesely TM, Parti N, et al: Lower extremity venous thrombolysis with adjunctive mechanical thrombectomy. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2002; 13:1001–8.
6. Wakefield TW: Treatment options for venous thrombosis. *J Vasc Surg* 2000; 31:613–20.
7. Wissgott C, Kamusella P, Andresen R: Percutaneous mechanical thrombectomy: advantages and limitations. *J Cardiovasc Surg* 2011; 52(4):477–84.

SURGERY FOR PORTAL HYPERTENSION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Alcoholic liver disease is the major cause of portal HTN, and end-stage liver disease (ESLD) with cirrhosis is the 10th leading cause of death in the United States (exceeding 23,000/yr). Of patients with portal HTN, 15–20% have variceal hemorrhage during the first yr of diagnosis (additional 5–10 % incidence of bleeding per yr); and the initial episode of variceal hemorrhage is associated with 50% mortality. Portal HTN (> 15 mm Hg) develops when splanchnic venous flow to the right heart becomes impeded. Medical and surgical therapeutic interventions are directed not at portal HTN per se, but at its complications—notably bleeding esophageal varices. Intractable ascites and hypersplenism are less common indications for operative therapy. Presinusoidal portal HTN, unlike sinusoidal

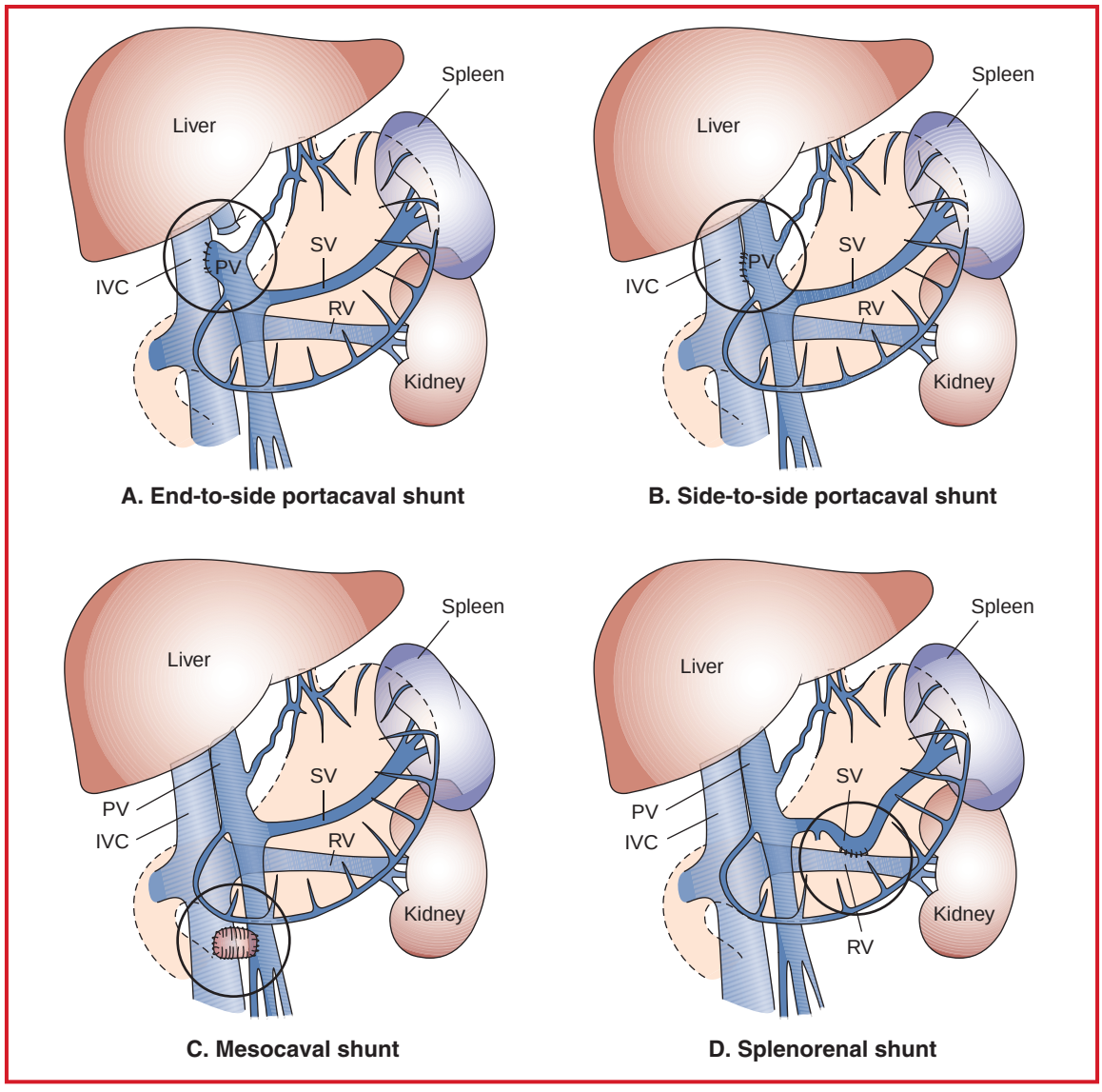


Figure 6.3-11. Types of shunts: **A.** End-to-side portacaval; **B.** side-to-side portacaval; **C.** mesocaval shunt; **D.** distal splenorenal. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

or postsinusoidal obstruction, is not associated with severe hepatocellular disease; thus, the prognosis for patients with presinusoidal block is better than for those with sinusoidal or postsinusoidal disease. Surgical approaches can be divided into shunt and nonshunt procedures. **Shunt procedures** can be classified as either **total** (decompression of the portal venous system) or **selective** (decompression of only the varix-bearing area). It should be noted, however, that surgery for portal HTN has been replaced largely by the TIPS procedure (see p. 1507).

SHUNT PROCEDURES

There are two general types of total shunt (**portosystemic shunt**) procedures. The **end-to-side portacaval shunt** (Fig. 6.3-11A) is technically simpler and may be more appropriate in emergency situations. It is associated with immediate control of hemorrhage in the majority of cases. The portacaval shunt, however, does eliminate portal perfusion of the liver and does not decompress the hepatic sinusoids. Alternatively, the **functional side-to-side shunt** (Fig. 6.3-11B) allows decompression of hepatic sinusoids and may preserve some degree of portal perfusion of the liver. Also, it is more effective in controlling ascites. Variations of the side-to-side shunt include **portacaval, splenorenal, mesocaval** (**Clatworthy**), and **portarenal** (rarely used).

For the **end-to-side** and **side-to-side portacaval shunts,** the approach is via an extended right subcostal incision. **Cholecystectomy** usually is not performed because of the likelihood of profuse bleeding from the liver bed. The hepatoduodenal ligament is identified, and the portal vein is exposed from the hilum of the liver to the pancreas. The gastroduodenal and right gastric branches may be divided to provide additional exposure of the portal vein. The IVC is exposed by incising the peritoneum just beneath the hepatic triad. Proximal and distal control of the portal vein is achieved, and a side-biting clamp is placed on the IVC. To perform an end-to-side portacaval shunt, the portal vein is divided and oversewn proximally; the end-to-side anastomosis is performed from the portal vein to the IVC. The alternative is to perform a side-to-side anastomosis of the portal vein to the IVC without division of the portal vein.

The **proximal splenorenal shunt** is approached through a left thoracoabdominal or transabdominal incision. The spleen is isolated and removed, and the distal splenic vein is mobilized from the distal pancreatic bed. The left renal vein is exposed and controlled. The distal splenic vein is then anastomosed in an end-to-side fashion to the midrenal vein. The **mesocaval shunt** (Fig. 6.3-11C) is indicated in cases of ascites, periportal fibrosis, portal vein thrombosis, and Budd-Chiari syndrome. The mesocaval shunt is approached through a vertical midline incision. The colon is retracted cephalad, and the superior mesenteric vein (SMV) is identified at the root of the mesentery. A length of the SMV is isolated and encircled. A **Kocher maneuver** (mobilization of the duodenum) is performed, and the IVC is exposed anteriorly and laterally. A side-biting clamp partially occludes the IVC, and a 14- to 20-mm Dacron graft is anastomosed in an end-to-side fashion to the IVC. The graft is clamped and the side-biting clamp removed from the IVC, thereby restoring flow via the IVC. The SMV is clamped, and an end-to-side anastomosis is created from the graft to the SMV. Flow is, thus, reestablished from the SMV through the graft to the IVC.

Selective shunts are designed to decompress esophageal varices, while some portal perfusion of the liver is maintained. The hallmark example of this approach is the **distal splenorenal shunt** (**Warren**; Fig. 6.3-11D), which is seldom used in emergency situations. The principal feature of this shunt is disconnection of the splenic and superior mesenteric venous drainage systems. The distal splenorenal shunt is approached through a left chevron or extended left subcostal incision. The lesser sac is entered after division of the gastroepiploic vessels and mobilization of the splenic flexure of the colon. The stomach is retracted cephalad, and the peritoneum overlying the inferior aspect of the pancreas is incised. The splenic vein is identified and controlled proximally and distally. The inferior mesenteric vein is divided. The splenic vein is divided proximally, and the proximal stump is oversewn. Then the splenic vein is mobilized from the pancreatic bed. The left renal vein is identified, and 5–7 cm of the vein is isolated. The splenic vein is anastomosed in an end-to-side fashion to the renal vein. The coronary vein is ligated close to its origin. The distal splenorenal shunt decompresses the stomach, distal esophagus, and spleen and controls variceal hemorrhage in 85% of patients.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Total shunt** (e.g., portacaval, proximal splenorenal, mesocaval); **selective shunt** (e.g., **Warren**); **nonshunt procedures** (e.g., **Sugiura, Hassab,** and **esophageal transection with stapling**)

Usual preop diagnosis: Bleeding esophageal varices (as a result of portal HTN); ascites; hypersplenism

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (TOTAL AND SELECTIVE SHUNTS)

	Portacaval	Proximal Splenorenal	Mesocaval (Clatworthy)	Distal Splenorenal (Warren)
Position	Supine	Supine ± left flank elevated	Supine	Supine, left side elevated slightly
Incision	Extended right subcostal—may be lengthened or converted to left thoracoabdominal.	Left thoracoabdominal or left subcostal, or vertical midline	Vertical midline abdominal	Left chevron or left subcostal with midline extension
Special instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor	⇐	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	May need FFP; consider Cell Saver.	⇐	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (TOTAL AND SELECTIVE SHUNTS) (cont'd)

	Portacaval	Proximal Splenorenal	Mesocaval (Clatworthy)	Distal Splenorenal (Warren)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4–6 h	⇐	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	None	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	1000–2000 mL	⇐	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Patient → ICU; careful fluid management; consider Na+ restriction; may require PA catheter.	⇐	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Emergency: 38% Elective: 3% Child's A: 0–15%* Child's B: 1–43%* Child's C: 6–58%*	5–10%	⇐	1–16%
Morbidity	Late liver failure: 50% Encephalopathy: 32% Child's A: 8%* Child's B: 20%* Child's C: 30%* Early rebleeding: 0–19% Shunt thrombosis: 1–10%	~50% ~32% ~0–19% 20%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 9–30% Duodenal obstruction; erosion through bowel wall	— 5–47% (overall) 5% at 2 yr 12% at 3–6 yr 27% at 10 yr — — Loss of selectivity: 60% (@ 2 yr) Recurrent variceal-hemorrhage (shunt occlusion): 3–19% Portal vein thrombosis: 4–10%
Pain score	6	6	6	6

Note: In addition to the shunt procedure itself, other factors that determine postop morbidity and mortality include severity of hepatocellular disease, degree of hepatic reserve, and urgency of the procedure. Although the specific numbers may vary, several comparative series have shown no difference in operative mortality rate or long-term survival rate among the various open shunt procedures.

NONSHUNT PROCEDURES

Nonshunt procedures are designed to devascularize the esophagogastric region, thus eliminating acute variceal hemorrhage. Procedures of this type include **portazygos disconnection; splenectomy; coronary vein ligation;** and **transesophageal** or **transgastric varix ligation**.

The **Sugiura operation,** approached via abdominal and thoracic incisions, includes esophageal transection and devascularization, splenectomy, and pyloromyotomy. This procedure is usually performed in two operative stages, sometimes with a delayed second stage. The **Hassab procedure** involves devascularization of the upper half of the stomach and splenectomy, thus effectively disconnecting the esophageal varices. (This operation has been reserved in some centers for the failures of sclerotherapy.) Finally, **esophageal transection,** using a stapling device, disconnects the varices in the lower esophagus. This is accomplished by placing a row of staples at the esophagus just above the esophagogastric junction. Because portal perfusion of the liver is maintained after the nonshunt procedures, hepatic function is preserved.

SUMMARY OF NONSHUNT PROCEDURES

	Sugiura (Two Stages)	Hassab	Esophageal Transection
Position	Supine, left side elevated	Supine	⇐
Incision	Abdominal stage: midline; thoracic stage: left thoracotomy	Vertical midline	⇐
Special instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4–6 h for both stages	4 h	⇐
EBL	1000–2000 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	ICU; careful hemodynamic monitoring; PA catheterization	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Overall: 5–14% Emergent: 14% (≤ 60%) Elective: 3%	12–38% 10%	10–83%
Morbidity	Recurrent hemorrhage: 2–50% Esophagopleural leak: 6% Encephalopathy: 3% Ascites: 2% Wound infection: 2%	7% — 1–25% 4% —	0–50% 3% 33% 11% 11%
Pain score	6	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS FOR SHUNT AND NONSHUNT PROCEDURES

Age range	11–72 yr (mean age = 48 yr); depending on etiology: pediatric (e.g., congenital hepatic fibrosis) to adult (e.g., alcoholic liver disease)
Male:Female	2–8:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Alcoholic liver disease (alcoholic hepatitis, chronic alcoholism, cirrhosis); postnecrotic cirrhosis; portal vein thrombosis; splenic vein occlusion; hematologic diseases; hepatic vein occlusion; schistosomiasis; congenital hepatic fibrosis; sarcoidosis; sinusoidal occlusion (vitamin A toxicity, Gaucher's disease); venoocclusive disease
Associated conditions	Alcohol dependency; cirrhosis/liver failure; poor nutritional status; coagulopathy; encephalopathy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: shunt and nonshunt procedures for portal HTN surgery)

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Hypoxemia may be present 2° ascites, V/Q mismatch, ↑ R→L pulmonary shunting, atelectasis, pulmonary infections and ↓ pulmonary diffusing capacity. **Tests:** Consider ABG; PFTs, as indicated; CXR.

Cardiovascular	Patients presenting with portal HTN often have a hyperdynamic circulatory state with ↑ plasma volume, ↑ CO, and ↓ SVR, with a decreased ability to ↑ SVR or ↑ HR in response to stimuli. Ventricular performance may be abnormal (CHF), especially in patients with alcoholic liver disease. Ascites →↑ intrathoracic pressure, ↓ FRC, ↓ venous return, and ↓ CO. Older patients in this population usually have CAD. **Tests:** ECG. If LV function in question, ECHO or angiography.
Hepatic	The physical manifestations of hepatic disease include palmar erythema, caput medusae, spider angiomas, and gynecomastia. Albumin and other products of liver synthesis (e.g., coagulation factors) may be decreased. Encephalopathy may be present 2° impaired ammonia metabolism. **Tests:** Bilirubin; albumin; PT; SGOT; SGPT; ammonia; alkaline phosphatase
Gastrointestinal	Portal HTN eventually → esophageal and gastric varices. Patients may present emergently with profuse GI bleeding. Ascites occurs in ~80% of patients with portal HTN, and splenomegaly is invariably present. As a result of elevated intraabdominal pressure from ascites and slow gastric emptying, a rapid-sequence induction with full-stomach precautions will be necessary (see p. B-5).
Renal	Portal HTN →↓ GFR and ↓ renal blood flow → renal failure. **Tests:** Consider UA; creatinine clearance as indicated from H&P.
Hematologic	These patients are often anemic as a result of poor nutrition, malabsorption, and intestinal tract blood loss. Hypersplenism may be present (Plt count < 50,000 and WBC < 2000). Synthesis of all coagulation factors is decreased except factor VIII and fibrinogen. A low-grade DIC may be present. T&C for 8–10 U PRBC. **Tests:** CBC; Plt count; PT; PTT; consider DIC screen.
Pharmacologic	The liver is the major site of drug biotransformation; however, the effects of hepatic dysfunction on drug elimination and disposition are inconsistent.
Laboratory	These patients may have significant electrolyte disturbances (e.g., ↓↓ Na^+, ↓ K^+). **Tests:** Electrolytes and others as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	If premedication is appropriate, small doses of anxiolytic, such as midazolam (0.5–1 mg iv), are preferable. Avoid im medications in patients with possible coagulopathy. Full-stomach precautions are necessary. Metoclopramide (10 mg iv) and ranitidine (50 mg iv) may be given 60 min before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Preservation of intravascular volume and myocardial stability can be a challenge in these patients.

Induction	Instable patients rapid-sequence induction with propofol (1–2 mg/kg) and succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg) should be used. Replace blood loss and ensure normovolemia before induction (if possible). Etomidate (0.2 mg/kg) or ketamine (1 mg/kg) may be preferable for induction in hemodynamically unstable patients.
Maintenance	Combination of narcotics (fentanyl) and inhalation agents (isoflurane/sevoflurane), titrated to hemodynamic condition. Midazolam (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) often is given in conjunction with the narcotic to ensure amnesia during times of hemodynamic instability when isoflurane cannot be tolerated. N_2O is avoided to prevent bowel distention. Muscle relaxation is needed (e.g., vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg or less, titrated using a nerve stimulator). ***NB:** After drainage of ascitic fluid, there may be a precipitous drop in BP requiring rapid volume replacement ± vasopressor.
Emergence	Generally deferred to ICU due to large fluid shifts and transfusion requirements. Patients who have undergone uneventful and nonemergent surgery may be candidates for extubation.

Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss. IV: 14 ga × 2 or 7 Fr × 2 Rapid infuser RBC salvage device 8–10 U PRBC Warm all fluids. Humidify all gases. Warming blanket	FFP, Plt, and cryoprecipitate should be available to treat coagulopathy. e. g., Bair-Hugger warmer
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line CVP or PA catheter UO Temperature ABGs Hct, coags, Ca^{++} Electrolytes Blood glucose	 Arterial and central pressure monitoring are essential. A PA catheter is useful in this setting because most patients are cirrhotic and may have excessive blood loss and large fluid shifts. UO is measured and is helpful as a monitor of renal perfusion. Mannitol (0.25–1 g/kg iv) may be needed to maintain UO. In these procedures, prevention of hypothermia is important. In patients with large varices, avoid esophageal placement of T probes or stethoscopes. Serial ABGs to determine adequacy of ventilation and normal acid base status should be done. Hct, coagulation, and Ca^{++} should be measured following replacement of large blood volumes. Electrolytes and glucose also should be monitored. Glucose metabolism in liver disease may be impaired → ↓ glucose.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Coagulopathy Hemorrhage Hypothermia	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Coagulopathy Hypothermia Encephalopathy Renal failure	
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Parenteral opiates	
Tests	CXR: line placement Hct Electrolytes Glucose	DIC screen, if continued bleeding.

Suggested Readings

1. Costa G, Cruz RJ Jr, Abu-Elmagd KM: Surgical shunt versus TIPS for treatment of variceal hemorrhage in the current era of liver and multivisceral transplantation. *Surg Clin N Am* 2010; 90:891–905.
2. Gusberg RJ: Selective shunts in selected older cirrhotic patients with variceal hemorrhage. *Am J Surg* 1993; 166(3):274–8.
3. Haberer JP, Schoeffler P, Couderc E, et al: Fentanyl pharmacokinetics in anesthetized patients with cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth* 1982; 54:1267.

4. Hassab MA: Nonshunt operations in portal hypertension without cirrhosis. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1970; 131(4):648–54.
5. Henderson JM: The distal splenoral shunt. *Surg Clin North Am* 1990; 70(2):405–23.
6. Henderson JM: Surgery versus transjugular intrahepatic portal systemic shunt in the treatment of severe variceal bleeding. *Clin Liver Dis* 2006; 10:599–612.
7. Jenkins RL, Gedaly R, Pomposelli JJ, et al: Distal splenorenal shunt: role, indications, and utility in the era of liver transplantation. *Arch Surg* 1999; 134:416–20.
8. Liu Y, Li Y, Ma J, et al: Modified Hassab's operation for portal hypertension: experience with 562 cases. *J Surg Res* 2013; e1–e6.
9. Orozco H, Mercado MA, Takahashi T, et al: Elective treatment of bleeding varices with the Sugiura operation over 10 years. *Am J Surg* 1992; 163(6):585–9.
10. Voros D, Polydorou A, Polymeneas G, et al: Long-term results with the modified Sugiura procedure or the management of variceal bleeding: standing the test of time in the treatment of bleeding esophageal varices. *World J Surg* 2012; 36:659–66.

ARTERIOVENOUS ACCESS FOR HEMODIALYSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Peripheral subcutaneous arteriovenous (AV) fistula,** or **prosthetic graft,** is the current procedure of choice for patients requiring permanent hemodialysis access. The blood flow in the autogenous AV fistula increases with time, and the resulting vein wall thickening prevents venous tears and infiltration during dialysis.

The standard AV fistula is usually constructed by anastomosing the cephalic vein to the radial artery at the wrist level (**Brescia-Cimino fistula**; Fig. 6.3-12). Other locations include the "snuff box," or antebrachium. Vascular access using vascular substitutes or prosthetic grafts is performed when there is a lack of suitable veins in patients who have had

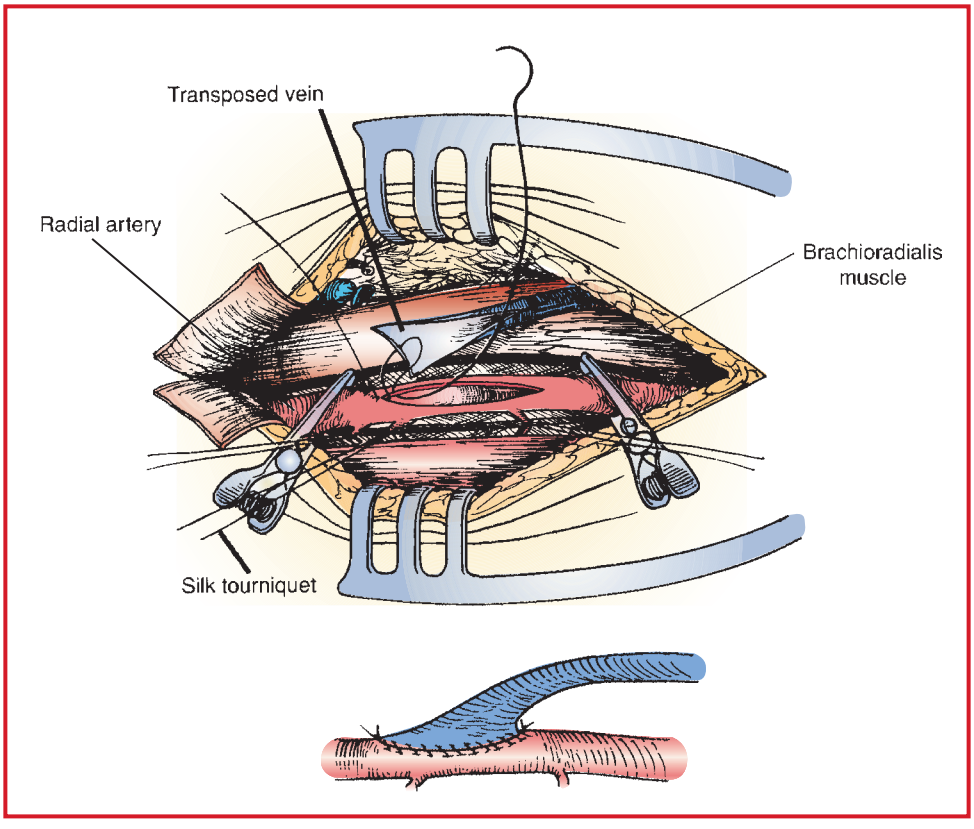


Figure 6.3-12. Brescia-Cimino fistula (side-to-end anastomosis). (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

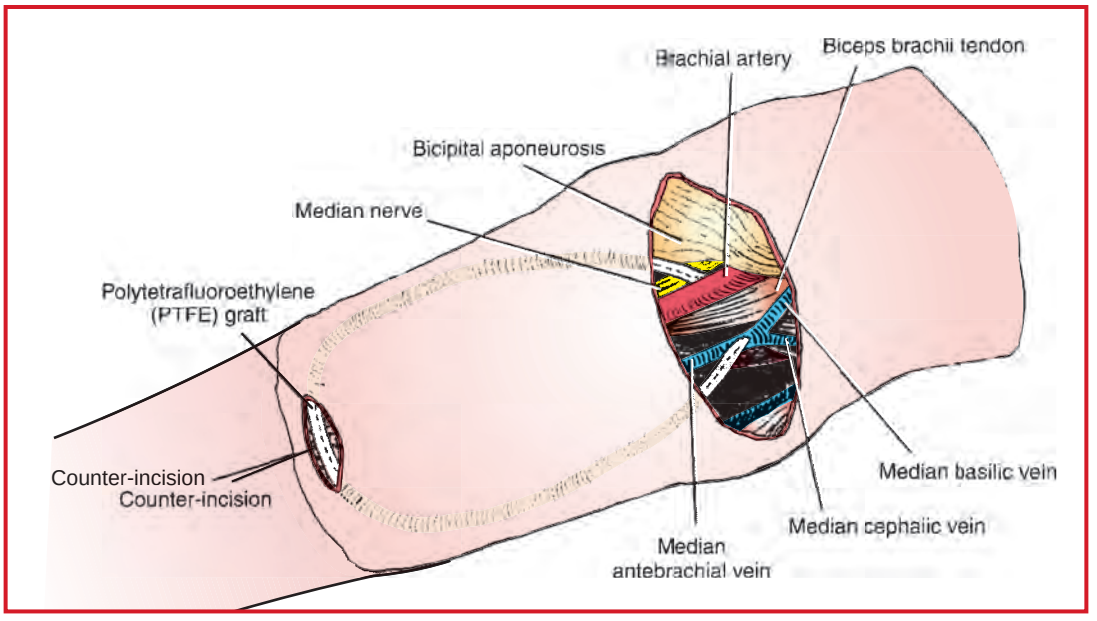


Figure 6.3-13. In arteriovenous hemodialysis access with prosthetic graft, the brachial artery and the median antebrachial, median basilic, and median cephalic veins are exposed via a horizontal incision below the antecubital joint crease. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

failed-access procedures, peripheral vein sclerosis, or severe arterial disease involving the upper extremity. Forearm grafts are constructed as a direct communication between the radial or ulnar artery and the antecubital or brachial vein, or as a "loop" between the brachial artery and these veins (Fig. 6.3-13). Similarly, an access can be constructed in the upper arm as a communication between the brachial artery above the elbow and the basilic or axillary vein in a straight fashion. The polytetrafluoroethylene (Teflon) graft has become the mainstay for hemodialysis access in patients who are not candidates for Brescia-Cimino fistula placement. These grafts are associated with a primary patency rate of 50–60% at 2–3 yr.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Loop or straight graft,** using vascular substitute in forearm; **upper-arm straight graft**

Usual preop diagnosis: End-stage renal failure requiring graft hemodialysis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Forearm AV Fistula	Forearm Loop or Straight Graft	Upper-Arm Straight Graft
Position	Supine, arm abducted	⇐	⇐
Incision	Longitudinal or transverse at wrist, or "snuff box"	Transverse at antecubital fossa and/or at wrist; counterincision in forearm	Transverse or longitudinal in upper arm
Special instrumentation	Arm/hand table (for arm abduction); Doppler flow probe may be used.	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	Local anesthesia; consider brachial plexus block (increased incidence of hematoma); heparinization	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Forearm AV Fistula	Forearm Loop or Straight Graft	Upper-Arm Straight Graft
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Use of Doppler to ✓ shunt patency	⇐	⇐
EBL	25–50 mL	25–100 mL	⇐
Postop care	Hemodynamic monitoring for poor-risk patients; can be done as outpatient.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal, depending on associated risk factors	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Thrombosis: 20% Technical failure: 10–15% Arterial steal: Rare Cardiac failure: Rare Infection: Rare No venous outflow: Rare Seroma: Rare Venous aneurysm: Rare Venous HTN: Rare	8–32% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 10% 6% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	~8–32% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ~6% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	1	2	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Pediatric and adult population
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Hemodialysis access is one of the most commonly performed procedures by vascular surgeons.
Etiology	Glomerulonephritis; diabetes; HTN; pyelonephritis
Associated conditions	Diabetes mellitus; PVD/CAD

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Permanent Vascular Access, p. 455.

Suggested Readings

1. Allon M, Robbin ML: Increasing arteriovenous fistulas in hemodialysis patients: problems and solutions. *Kidney Int* 2002; 62:1109–24.
2. Rose DA, Sonaike E, Hughes K: Hemodialysis access. *Surg Clin N Am* 2013; 93:997–1012.
3. Smith GE, Gohil R, Chetter IC: Factors affecting the patency of arteriovenous fistulas for dialysis access. *J Vasc Surg* 2012; 55:849–55.
4. Spergel LM, Ravani P, Asif A, et al: Autogenous arteriovenous fistula options. *J Nephrol* 2007; 20(3):288–98.

PERMANENT VASCULAR ACCESS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Silastic or plastic catheters are placed in patients who require venous access for chronic antibiotic therapy, TPN, chemotherapy, or hemodialysis. **Hickman, Broviac,** and **Groshong catheters** are made of silicone rubber or plastic with a cuff near the skin exit site, which (in theory) serves as a barrier to infection. Access is generally

achieved via subclavian, IJ, or femoral vein puncture. These catheters are available in various sizes and in single- or double-lumen configurations. Larger diameter (13 Fr) Hickman or **Permacath DL** catheters have been introduced for hemodialysis. **Mediport** and **Portacath devices** have a metallic or plastic reservoir connected to the catheters and are intended for complete subcutaneous implantation. These catheters are used in chronically ill patients, particularly those requiring chemotherapy. The implantable access ports have been associated with improved patient comfort and reduced infection rates. Long-term catheter survival is limited by infection. Removal and replacement of the catheter is the only way to eradicate the infection.

Variant procedure or approaches: Two major distinctions: Hickman/Broviac catheters (no reservoir) vs Mediport/Portacath catheters (subcutaneous with reservoir). Subclavian, IJ, or femoral vein puncture is selected, depending on vein status, previous operations, and patient comfort.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic antibiotic therapy; TPN; chemotherapy; end-stage renal failure

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Hickman/Broviac/Groshong	Mediport/Portacath
Position	Supine, slight Trendelenburg	⇐
Incision	Puncture site (subclavian, IJ, or femoral vein); subcutaneous tunnel for passage of catheter. Alternative: cephalic or IJ vein cut-down to achieve access.	Puncture site (subclavian, IJ, or femoral vein); subcutaneous pocket for port. Alternative: cephalic or IJ vein cut-down to achieve access.
Special instrumentation	I.I. or fluoroscope	⇐
Unique considerations	Local anesthesia; may need iv sedation; monitor for ectopy during placement.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	30–90 min	45–90 min
EBL	10–25 mL	25–50 mL
Postop care	CXR in recovery room; may be outpatient.	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Catheter thrombosis: 25% Skin exit site infection: 13% Poor flow: 10–13% Catheter sepsis: 5–8% Arterial puncture: 6% Local bleeding: 5% SVC thrombosis: 5% Catheter displacement: 3% Subclavian thrombosis: 2% Pneumothorax 1–2% Failed attempt: 1% Infection: 3–5/1000 cath days	4% — ~10–13% 2% ~6% — ~5% ~3% ~2% ~1–2% ~1% — Pocket hematoma: 2% Pocket infection: 3% Catheter leakage: 1%
Pain score	1	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Pediatrics and adults, 8–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	Depending on underlying disease
Etiology	Access for chemotherapy; infections; hemodialysis; chronic TPN
Associated conditions	Malignancy; chronic illness/infection; renal failure

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR VASCULAR ACCESS

(Procedures covered: arteriovenous access for hemodialysis; permanent vascular access)

PREOPERATIVE

The patient populations presenting for vascular access surgery are extremely diverse. Patients requiring vascular access for chemotherapy, TPN, and chronic antibiotic therapy frequently can be done with MAC (p. B-5). Also presenting for these procedures are end-stage renal failure patients who need arteriovenous access for hemodialysis (generally involving the upper extremity). These patients return to the OR frequently for revising or replacing of fistulas. They are often ASA III and IV patients who may require GA or an upper extremity block. Anesthetic considerations for the **chronic renal failure patient** are discussed below.

Respiratory	Pulmonary edema may be present from fluid overload. CHF and uremic pleuritis can occur. Pneumonia occurs more frequently in these patients due to depressed immune systems. Hemodialysis contributes to hypoxemia due to V/Q mismatch and hypoventilation. **Tests:** CXR; consider ABG.
Cardiovascular	Often have HTN related to hypervolemia and a disorder of the renin-angiotensin system. May have LVH 2° to HTN. Cardiomyopathy, pericarditis, and pericardial effusion occur with uremia. Hypervolemia and hypoalbuminemia can contribute to CHF. Uremic patients often have defective aortic and carotid body reflex arcs. Ejection murmurs are common. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Renal	A comprehensive preop evaluation should include an assessment of renal function and adequacy of recent dialysis therapy. Ascertaining the patient's usual and recent weights is useful. Dialysis is usually advisable shortly before anesthesia and surgery. The symptoms of uremia (Plt dysfunction, electrolyte/fluid abnormalities, CNS, and GI disturbances) improve with dialysis. If a transfusion is needed, it is best done during dialysis so intravascular volume can be controlled. **Tests:** Serum BUN; Cr. If patient produces urine, consider creatinine clearance, UA.
Hematologic	Chronic anemia with Hct ranging from 15–21 g/dL. Normochromic, normocytic anemia present 2° bone marrow depression, lack of erythropoietin, nutritional deficiency, and diminished red-cell survival time. Patients adjust to chronic anemia through ↑CO and ↑ 2,3-DPG levels. Accumulation of waste products inhibits Plt function. Defects do occur in the coagulation cascade, but PT and PTT are usually normal. **Tests:** CBC; Plt; PT; PTT
Gastrointestinal	Uremic patients commonly have hiccups, anorexia, N/V, and diarrhea. They are very prone to developing GI bleeds. Renal failure causes ↓ gastric emptying. Premedication with metoclopramide (10 mg po) and ranitidine (150 mg po) will ↓ gastric volume and pH.
Nervous system	CNS Sx of uremia range from malaise to Sz to coma. Fatigue and intellectual impairment commonly occur. Peripheral and autonomic neuropathies exist. Peripheral neuropathy presents as itching and paresthesia of the lower extremities. Autonomic dysfunction can cause postural ↓ BP. Document deficits carefully.
Endocrine	Diabetes frequently may be the cause of renal failure, with its attendant problems. **Tests:** Glucose
Immune system	Often impaired. Patients prone to sepsis. Hepatitis and HIV infections from blood products may exist.

Metabolic and biochemical	Accumulation of K^+ urea, parathyroid hormone (hypercalcemia), Mg, aluminum (neurotoxicity), acid metabolites, and phosphate occurs. Knowing hyperkalemia exists is of importance because of the potential for fatal cardiac dysrhythmias. Shift of the oxyhemoglobin curve to the right occurs due to the metabolic acidosis and ↑ 2,3-DPG (improves tissue oxygenation). Hyponatremia is a common electrolyte disturbance in chronic renal failure.
Premedication	If warranted, it is best to use light premedication with sedatives or opioids due to the possibility of exaggerated effects (p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA, upper extremity block, or MAC.

Regional anesthesia: May be advantageous due to decreased number of drug effects. See section on upper extremity blocks (Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936). If the patient was very recently dialyzed, there may be a residual heparin effect. Regional anesthesia is contraindicated if coagulopathy is present.

General anesthesia: The duration of action and elimination of many anesthetic drugs is altered in the patient with renal failure.

Induction	If general anesthesia is indicated, preferably LMA is used. Induction with propofol and low-dose fentanyl (25–50 mcg) is usually well tolerated. In case of the need for intubation, succinylcholine is indicated if $K^+ < 5.5$ mEq/L. If succinylcholine is contraindicated, cisatracurium (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) is the alternative muscle relaxant of choice because its elimination is not affected by renal failure. Etomidate (0.2–0.3 mg/kg) is preferred in case of preop hemodynamic instability.	
Maintenance	Inhalation anesthetics (isoflurane, sevoflurane) offer the advantage of not requiring renal elimination. Biotransformation may produce some inorganic fluoride (nephrotoxin); however, this is not an issue in dialysis patients. Opioids can produce an increased magnitude and duration of effect. Increased accumulation of morphine glucuronides → prolonged respiratory depression. Fentanyl and remifentanil are good choices, 2° rapid tissue redistribution (fentanyl) or rapid metabolism (remifentanil). Benzodiazepine dosage should be adjusted because protein binding in renal insufficiency/failure is reduced.	
Emergence	Prolonged effect of anticholinesterases (e.g., neostigmine and edrophonium) effectively offsets prolongation of blockade. Other factors affecting reversal of nondepolarizers should be taken into account. These include acid–base status, depth of blockade, temperature, and use of drugs such as diuretics or antibiotics, which can potentiate blockade.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	IV access may be difficult; avoid iv placement in operated arm. Minimize fluids in renal-failure patients.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Avoid BP cuff placement on operated arm.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Local anesthetic toxicity	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Nerve damage Hematoma	These are rare complications of brachial plexus blocks.
Pain management	PO analgesics	

Suggested Readings

1. Bour ES, Weaver AS, Yang HC, et al: Experience with the double lumen Silastic catheter for hemoaccess. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1990; 171(1): 33–9.
2. Heberlein W: Principles of tunneled cuffed catheter placement. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol* 2011; 14(4):192–7.
3. Monk J: Hemodialysis catheters and ports. *Semin Nephrol* 2002; 22:211–20.
4. Vasquez MA: Vascular access for dialysis: recent lessons and new insights. *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens* 2009; 18:116–21.

VENOUS SURGERY—VEIN STRIPPING AND PERFORATOR LIGATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Chronic venous insufficiency results from static blood flow in the deep, superficial, and perforating veins of the lower extremities. Clinical manifestations include pathologic changes in the skin and subcutaneous tissues, such as pigmentation, dermatitis, induration, and ulceration around the lower portion of the leg. The condition is most commonly caused by defective venous valves and less often by obstruction to the venous return or impaired pumping action of the muscles in the leg. The disorder is sometimes the residual of previous iliofemoral thrombophlebitis. Varicose veins of the primary type, particularly those of long duration, are a common cause of chronic venous insufficiency of milder degrees. Most symptoms respond well to conservative management, which includes compression stockings, elevation of the extremity, and topical treatment of ulcerations. Failure of medical management is an indication for surgical intervention. Split-thickness skin grafting is indicated for large ulcers to accelerate healing and shorten hospitalization time. **Ligation of perforators** is best performed when the ulcer has completely healed. The classic approach of **Linton** is rarely used today. If the quality of the skin overlying the perforators prevents a direct approach, **subfascial ligation** of the perforators may be performed through a short, posterior midline incision. The incompetent greater or lesser saphenous veins are resected only if patency of the deep system is confirmed. Venous ulcers recur in 30% of patients after surgical therapy, and ulcerations persist for prolonged period in 15% of patients. Adjunctive procedures include **valvuloplasty, vein transposition,** and **venous valve transplant.**

Alternative procedures: Minimally invasive radiofrequency techniques have been used successfully for ablation of varicose veins.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic deep venous insufficiency

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	**Vein stripping:** longitudinal or oblique groin incision and transverse incision at medial malleolus; transverse incision over posterior lower leg for lesser saphenous vein stripping. **Perforator ligation:** longitudinal incision along medial aspect of tibia to posterior medial malleolus
Special instrumentation	Vein stripper
Antibiotics	If patient has an associated venous ulcer, preop antibiotics should be based on culture results; generally, cefazolin 1 g iv, if culture results are not available.
Surgical time	3 h
EBL	50–250 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward; antiembolism stockings and SCDs
Mortality	Minimal

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Persistence of nonhealing ulcer: 20–53%
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Young adult–elderly (generally older adults, although present in younger patients as well)
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	6–7 million people in the United States have adverse effects from chronic venous stasis;[5] 500,000 have complications of leg ulceration.
Etiology	Chronic primary varicose veins; defective venous valves; impaired pumping action of muscles in leg; previous iliofemoral thrombophlebitis; obstruction of venous return
Associated conditions	Varicose veins; Hx of DVT/thrombophlebitis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Varicose Vein Stripping, p. 460.

Suggested Readings

1. Roth SM: Endovenous radiofrequency ablation of superficial and perforator veins. *Surg Clin North Am* 2007; 87(5):1267–84.
2. See Suggested Readings for Venous Surgery—Thrombectomy or Vein Excision, p. 444.

VARICOSE VEIN STRIPPING AND ABLATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In patients with primary varicose veins, no definite cause has been identified, although age, female sex, pregnancy, obesity, and positive family Hx are predisposing factors. The causes of secondary varicosity include incompetence or obstruction of the deep veins as a result of previous DVT, tumor, trauma, or congenital or acquired arteriovenous fistulas. Usual indications for operative therapy include aching, swelling, heaviness, cramps, itching, cosmesis, stasis dermatitis, pigmentation, burning, and ulcers. Surgical treatment is contraindicated in: pregnant patients; elderly patients who are considered high risk; and patients with arterial insufficiency of the lower extremities, lymphedema, skin infection, or coagulopathy. Endovenous thermal (laser/RF) ablation techniques have largely replaced the surgical treatment of varicose veins in the lower leg. These endovenous procedures are usually performed under local anesthesia.

There are two principal approaches: the **stab avulsion technique** and **high ligation and stripping**. With **stab avulsion,** the varicosities are marked preop. Small transverse or longitudinal incisions are made directly over these varicosities, which are dissected from the surrounding subcutaneous tissue (with undermining of the skin) and bluntly removed or avulsed. Firm pressure over the region being operated on will achieve hemostasis. After removal of all marked varicosities, sterile dressings are placed and a compression bandage wrapped around the affected leg. The patient is instructed to keep the leg elevated as much as possible while convalescing at home. The chief advantage of the stab avulsion technique is preservation of the saphenous vein when it is not directly involved with varicosities.

If there is valvular incompetence of the saphenous vein, the treatment of choice is **stripping** (**avulsion**) of the incompetent portion of the greater and lesser saphenous veins, together with avulsion of the superficial varicose veins of the thigh and calf. **High ligation and stripping** refers to the removal of the greater saphenous vein from the level of medial malleolus to the saphenofemoral junction. A small transverse incision is made at the level of the ankle and the

saphenous vein is dissected free. A longitudinal or oblique incision at the groin permits isolation of the saphenous vein at the saphenofemoral junction. The greater saphenous vein is ligated proximally and distally. After a **venotomy,** a plastic or metallic vein stripper is passed and the vein is removed or stripped in a distal-to-proximal fashion. Sterile dressings are applied, followed by a compressive dressing.

Although high ligation and stripping is the gold standard in the treatment of varicose veins, it has largely been replaced by thermal ablation in the United States. The use of either RF or laser ablation, which results in closure and often reabsorption of the vein, is highly successful and causes less postop discomfort. However, surgical ligation and stripping still has a role in the management of varicose veins. If all varicose veins are removed and the incompetent segment of the saphenous vein is stripped, 85% of the patients will have good-to-excellent results at late follow-up. These procedures can be performed with regional or GA.

Usual preop diagnosis: Varicose veins; symptoms of venous insufficiency; cosmetic considerations

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Stab Avulsion Technique	High Ligation and Stripping
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Varicosities marked preop; short stab incisions made and veins avulsed with small forceps.	Varicosities marked preop; small transverse incision over saphenous vein proximal to medial malleolus; proximal saphenous vein exposed via groin incisions and stripper passed.
Special instrumentation	None	Vein stripper
Unique considerations	May be facilitated by tourniquet.	⇐
Antibiotics	None	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Leg compressed with elastic wrap	⇐
EBL	50–250 mL	50–150 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward; support stockings	⇐ + Elevate foot of bed 10°; short periods of ambulation.
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Recurrence: < 10% Hematoma: Rare Infection: Rare Lymph fistula: Rare Nerve injury: Rare Postop DVT: Rare Femoral artery injury: Nil	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 5% Very rare
Pain score	2	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Wide range, young adult–elderly (average = 48 yr)
Male:Female	1:3
Incidence	24,000 in the United States.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Primary varicose veins: no definite cause (Predisposing factors include age, female sex, pregnancy, obesity, and positive family Hx.) Secondary varicose veins: incompetence or obstruction of the deep veins from DVT, tumor, trauma, or high venous pressures due to congenital or acquired arteriovenous fistulas
Associated conditions	Older age; pregnancy; obesity; DVT; tumor; trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: vein stripping and perforator ligation; varicose vein stripping)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for varicose vein surgery are a generally healthy patient population (ASA I & II). Preop considerations and tests, therefore, should be guided by the H&P.

Hematologic	If regional anesthesia planned, check patient's coagulation status. **Tests:** Plt count; Hct
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If necessary, standard premedication (p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: General, regional, or local anesthesia, ± sedation, are all appropriate anesthetic techniques. Choice depends on factors such as extent of surgery, patient physical status, and patient and surgeon preference.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	**Single-shot vs continuous:** Patient in sitting or lateral decubitus position (operative site down) for placement of hyperbaric subarachnoid block. Doses of local anesthetic for T10-T12 level: 0.75% bupivacaine in 8% dextrose (7–10 mg); or 0.5% tetracaine in 5% dextrose (10–12 mg). For continuous spinal (multiorifice catheter), titrate local anesthetic to desired surgical level (T12). Large doses of hyperbaric local anesthetic should be avoided as they may cause postop cauda equina syndrome.
Epidural	Patient in sitting or lateral decubitus position for placement of epidural catheter. After locating the epidural space, administer a test dose (e.g., 3 mL of 1.5% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine) to elucidate whether the catheter is subarachnoid (rapid onset outer block) or intravascular (↑ HR, tinnitis, etc.). Titrate local anesthetic until desired surgical level is obtained (3–5 mL at a time) usually < 15 mL.
Local	Requires gentle surgical technique. Surgical field block, plus ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerve blocks using 0.5% bupivacaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine. Usually done by surgeon.

General anesthesia:

Induction	LMA/mask vs ETT: Standard induction (p. B-2). LMA or mask GA may be suitable for many patients.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-2)

Emergence	No special considerations
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Cauda equina syndrome	The diagnosis of cauda equina syndrome (urinary and fecal incontinence, paresis of lower extremities, perineal hypoesthesias) should be sought in the postop period in patients who have received large doses of intrathecal local anesthetic during continuous spinal techniques. ✓ patients for bowel or bladder dysfunction and perineal sensory deficits. If present, consider a neurology consultation and continue followup of the patient's neurologic dysfunction.
	Urinary retention common with regional anesthesia	Patients with urinary retention may require intermittent catheterization until urinary function resumes.
Pain management	PO analgesics: Acetaminophen and codeine (Tylenol #3 1–2 tab q 4–6 h) Oxycodone and acetaminophen (Percocet 1 tab q 6 h)	Regional anesthesia should provide sufficient analgesia postop.

Suggested Readings

1. Biemans AA, Kockaert M, Akkersdijk GP, et al: Comparing endovenous laser ablation, foam sclerotherapy, and conventional surgery for great saphenous varicose veins. *J Vasc Surg* 2013; 58(3):727–34.
2. Brown KR, Rossi PJ: Superficial venous disease. *Surg Clin N Am* 2013; 93:963–82.
3. Hirsch SA, Dillavou E: Options in the management of varicose veins, 2008. *J Cardiovasc Surg* (Torino) 2008; 49:19–26.
4. Leopardi D, Hoggan BL, Fitridge RA, Woodruff PW, Maddern GJ: Systematic review of treatments for various veins. *Ann Vasc Surg* 2009; 23:264–76.
5. Mackenzie RK, Paisley A, Allan PL, et al: The effect of long saphenous vein stripping on quality of life. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 35:1197–1203.
6. Merchant RF, DePalma RG, Kabnick LS: Endovascular obliteration of saphenous reflex: a multicenter study. *J Vasc Surg* 2002; 35:1190–6.
7. Mowatt-Larssen E, Shortell CK: Treatment of primary varicose veins has changed with the introduction of new techniques. *Semin Vasc Surg* 2012; 25:18–24.
8. Rasmussen L, Lawaetz M, Bjoern L, Blemings A, Eklof B: Randomized clinical trial comparing endovenous laser ablation and stripping of the great saphenous vein with clinical and duplex outcome after 5 years. *J Vasc Surg* 2013; 58:421–6.

CHAPTER

6.4 Heart/Lung Transplantation

SURGEONS

Hari R. Mallidi, MD
Bruce A. Reitz, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Daryl Oakes, MD
Linda E. Foppiano, MD

SURGERY FOR HEART TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Although heart transplantation has been practiced since 1967, it has had its greatest expansion since the early 1980s with the introduction of cyclosporine. Currently, there are approximately 150 transplant centers and 2,200 heart transplant procedures performed yearly in the United States. Indications for heart transplantation range from hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) in the neonate to cardiomyopathy and ischemic heart disease in the adult. Recipients usually have end-stage heart disease manifested by CHF and a prognosis of less than 1-yr survival. Many patients are on inotropic drugs or on some type of additional mechanical assist, such as the use of an intraaortic balloon pump (IABP) or an implanted LV-assist device. Current immunosuppressive protocols consist of a combination of a calcineurin inhibitor with prednisone and mycophenolate mofetil. Immunosuppression begins either immediately preop or perioperatively and will continue throughout the life of the patient. Induction immunosuppression is commenced in the operating room after protamine administration with methylprednisolone 500 mg iv and basiliximab or rATG in the ICU after transplantation. Current 1-yr survival averages 85% in most centers with 3-yr survival of approximately 80%, and a median survival approaching 10 years.

In **adult heart transplantation,** following median sternotomy, the pericardium is opened with care being taken to preserve the phrenic nerve. The aorta and vena cava are cannulated, the aorta is cross-clamped, and caval tapes (tourniquets to prevent VAE) are applied. The aorta and PA are then transected. This is followed by an incision through the atria, and the recipient heart is removed. The donor heart is prepared by opening the left atrium through the pulmonary veins, separating the aorta and PA. The donor heart is attached by a long, continuous suture line around the left atrium, followed by separate anastomoses to the inferior and superior vena cavae. Alternatively, the donor right atrium is anastomosed to the recipient right atrium with a single long continuous suture. Next, the PA and aorta are anastomosed to their respective recipient vessels. Multiple de-airing maneuvers are followed by aortic unclamping and rewarming and resuscitation of the heart. NSR is established and CPB D/C'd. Heparin is reversed, hemostasis is secured, and the chest is closed in a routine manner. Following chest closure, these patients will often have implanted defibrillators that will be removed. An incision is made to access the pacemaker pocket, and the device is explanted. After hemostasis is established, the pocket is closed. (See pp. 348+ for discussion of CPB.)

Neonatal heart transplantation differs in that the PA is cannulated if the ductus arteriosus is patent. Reconstruction of the aortic arch in the patient with HLHS requires CPB with deep hypothermia (< 18°C) and circulatory arrest. The heart is then excised, and the transverse aortic arch is opened beyond the ductus arteriosus to minimize risk of late coarctation.

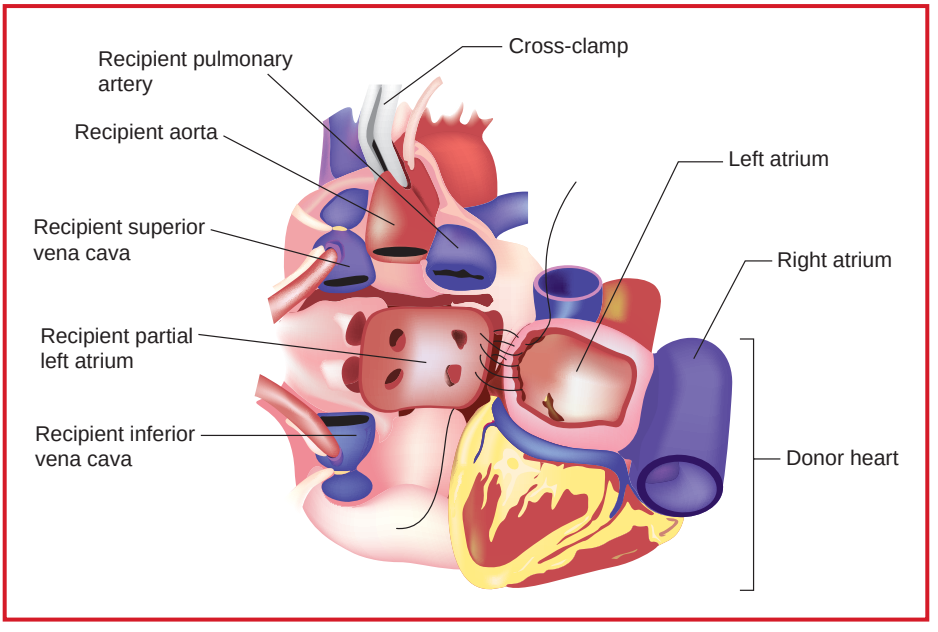


Figure 6.4-1. The donor left atrium is sutured to the recipient left atrial remnant and the graft vessels are anastomosed.

The donor heart is prepared, with special attention given to trimming the transverse aortic tissue for subsequent reconstruction. The left and right atrium, PA, and aorta are sutured in place. The new ascending aorta and right atrium are cannulated, and CPB with rewarming is reinstituted. Chest closure is routine. (See Pediatric Transplantation p. 1468.)

Pediatric heart transplantation has become commonplace in the past 10 years. Patients often have had previous cardiac surgery, and reentry and excision of the native heart are complicated by the presence of adhesions and graft material from previous attempts at palliative/corrective surgery. Patients are often highly sensitized and may require intraoperative plasmapheresis while on cardiopulmonary bypass. Preparation for cardiopulmonary bypass is often similar to the adult heart transplant patient, and the implantation procedure is also similar. However, provisions should be made for prolonged cross-clamp times necessary for implantation in the setting of abnormal systemic-cardiac or pulmonary-cardiac connections. (See Pediatric Transplantation p. 1468.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Cardiomyopathy; CAD with ischemic cardiomyopathy; CHD (e.g., HLHS or anomalous left coronary artery); end-stage valvular heart disease

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Adult Heart Transplantation	Neonatal/Pediatric Heart Transplantation
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Median sternotomy	⇐
Special instrumentation	Ascending aortic, SVC, and IVC cannulae	Ascending aortic and right atrial cannulae
Unique considerations	Due to complete excision of the heart, use of a PA catheter is usually not feasible.	Deep hypothermia with circulatory arrest
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv	Cefazolin 25–50 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	Cross-clamp: 45–60 min Surgery: 3–4 h	Circulatory arrest: 45–60 min; Cross-clamp: 80–100 min Surgery: 4–6 h
Closing considerations	Temporary AV pacing wires are occasionally placed. A PA catheter may be advanced, especially with concerns about residual pulmonary HTN and donor right heart function. An isoproterenol infusion is started intraop to keep HR = 100–110 and help improve right heart function and ↓ PVR. Inhaled NO may be used to further ↓ PVR.	Temporary ventricular pacing wire is usually placed. Temporary transthoracic left atrial line may be placed. Extensive aortic suture line requires avoidance of postop hypertensive episodes.
EBL	500–1500 mL	50–100 mL
Postop care	Cardiac ICU × 1–2 d of assisted ventilation; 2–3 d stay.	Pediatric ICU × 1–2 d of assisted ventilation; 4–5 d stay, with attention to pulmonary care.
Mortality	< 5%	⇐
Morbidity	Early acute rejection episodes from 10–21 d: 50% Infection, particularly pulmonary: 10% Pulmonary HTN with right heart dysfunction: < 10% Dysrhythmias with nodal rhythms: 5% Bleeding: 2–4% Hyperacute rejection: Rare (< 1%) Intracoronary air emboli	⇐ Respiratory problems: 20% Infection: 10% Pulmonary vasospasm with right heart dysfunction: < 10% Bleeding: 2–4%
Pain score	8–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–75+ yr (average 50–55 yr)	1 d–2 mo (neonatal); 2 mo–18 yr (pediatric)
Male:Female	7:3	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)		
Incidence	2200/yr (United States)	Rare
Etiology	Cardiomyopathy (50%); CAD with multiple previous infarcts (48%); other (2%)	No apparent correlation with any specific genetic disorder. Cardiomyopathy (49%); CHD (42%); other (7%)
Associated conditions	CHF	Other congenital anomalies

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients scheduled for heart transplantation are functionally compromised, typically with CHF, which is associated with a mortality of > 50% in 2 yr. (Studies have shown that patients with severe CHF have a mortality of 50% in 6 mo.) The progression of cardiovascular disease is usually well documented in these patients. A Hx of recent exacerbation of cardiac dysfunction should be sought, and all data should be interpreted in light of interval changes. Patients may arrive in the operating room from home or in hospital with inotropic infusions (dobutamine, milrinone) or VADS in place.

Respiratory	The presence of pulmonary HTN and ↑ PVR may be disclosed by catheterization. The severity of the abnormality and the responsiveness to specific vasodilators must be determined. **Tests:** Right heart catheterization
Cardiovascular	Indicators to consider include: hemodynamic status; LV EF (mortality is rapid in patients with EF < 10% and is worse for patients with EF of 10–20%, as compared with those with EF > 20%); myocardial structure and morphology, symptoms, and functional capacity; neuroendocrine status; serum sodium; and dysrhythmia. Unfortunately, while these measures show trends with mortality, they are not individually strong enough to predict a particular patient's course. Low maximum O_2 consumption (< 10 mL/kg/min) is associated with poor survival. Normal O_2 consumption is 40 mL/kg/min. In practice, however, this measure is too severe because many patients awaiting heart transplantation have maximum O_2 consumption of 20 mL/kg/min. Dysrhythmia is a major cause of death; unfortunately electrophysiology studies of these patients may not be helpful because dysrhythmia tends to be noninducible. This phenomenon frustrates efforts to select and test antidysrhythmic drug therapy. The effectiveness of past antidysrhythmic therapy should be reviewed. **Tests:** ECG; cardiac catheterization; ECHO
Hematologic	Patients with dilated cardiomyopathy or previous cardiac surgery are frequently treated with anticoagulants to reduce the risk of thrombus formation, although the efficacy of this therapy has not been studied. Hepatic dysfunction may result from RV failure and may reduce synthetic function. Mild hepatic dysfunction and chronic anticoagulation may contribute to postop bleeding. The anticoagulant effect of warfarin should be reversed with FFP and vitamin K (iv or subcutaneous). **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; fibrinogen; Plts
Endocrine	Neuroendocrine abnormalities are often present in severe CHF cases. The cardiomyopathy produces low CO → compensatory sympathetic activation and renin-angiotensin activity. The result is excessive vasoconstriction with salt and H_2O retention, which further impair myocardial performance. Markedly worse survival is seen in CHF patients with serum sodium < 130. This may indicate the importance of neuroendocrine pathophysiology or may simply be evidence of the severity of the CHF. It may also simply indicate that patients with more severe CHF are treated with more diuretics. When patients are treated with an angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor, such as enalapril, the serum sodium is normalized, and survival chances are improved because of the slowing of the progression of CHF, not from alteration in the incidence of sudden death. **Tests:** Electrolytes; Cr
Laboratory	Evidence of renal and hepatic dysfunction should be sought by H&P and lab studies. Hypokalemia is generally not treated in view of the K^+ in the graft.

Premedication	Although anxious, these patients are usually well informed and psychologically prepared to undergo heart transplantation. They respond well to the reassurance of the preop visit, and pharmacologic premedication usually is not necessary. O_2 therapy should commence prior to transport of the patient to the OR. Reassuring the family of a patient who suffers from rapidly progressive cardiac dysfunction also is valuable. The patient may be at increased risk for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents because of the unscheduled nature of the surgery and use of oral cyclosporine immediately preop. Ranitidine (50 mg) and metoclopramide (10 mg) may be administered iv, most efficiently accomplished in the OR.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. After the patient is placed on the operating table, O_2 and noninvasive monitors are applied. Dyspnea (a complication of the supine position) can be treated by raising the back of the table. As infection is a serious complication in the immunosuppressed transplant patient, aseptic technique is extremely important. Aseptic technique is used in inserting and securing all vascular catheters. The anesthesia machine should be equipped with a supply of air to control the FiO_2.

Induction	An arterial line for BP and blood gas monitoring should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetics before induction. There are rare exceptions to this rule, but the presence of real-time BP monitoring is critical during induction. If infusion drugs (e.g., dopamine) are necessary before insertion of the CVP catheter, they can be infused temporarily through a separate peripheral iv. In patients who have a ↓ EF, it is often helpful to infuse dopamine 3–10 mcg/kg/min during induction to avoid ↓ HR and ↓ CO. Anesthesia is not induced until the team harvesting the graft reports that the donor heart appears to be normal. The patient is preoxygenated (FiO_2 = 1.0), and cricoid pressure is applied just before induction. Induction agents include fentanyl (3–5 mcg/kg) or sufentanil (1–4 mcg/kg). Propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg, titrated) or etomidate (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) is useful in permitting rapid control of the airway. Midazolam also may be used. Vecuronium (0.15 mg/kg), rocuronium 1–1.5 mg/kg should be administered immediately to permit airway control. Care must be taken to avoid bradycardia, which often results in low CO in these patients. Immediate control of the airway is crucial, as hypercarbia and hypoxia must be avoided. The patient can be expected to have a low CO, resulting in a delayed induction of anesthesia, which must be anticipated to avoid anesthetic overdosage. Hypotension should be treated promptly with inotropes (bolus and/or infusion). Fluid boluses may be poorly tolerated in patients with diminished contractility and should be administered cautiously. The usual aids for managing the unexpectedly difficult airway should be readily available. Antibiotics are administered, and additional monitors (urinary catheter with thermistor, TEE) are set up. Nasopharyngeal temperature probes are avoided because full heparinization is needed for CPB. If there is a delay in the anticipated arrival of the graft, the recipient should be covered and kept warm, and skin prep should be delayed. Additional narcotics should be administered only in immediate anticipation of the commencement of surgery.
Maintenance	Typical cumulative anesthetic doses for the entire intraop course are fentanyl 15–20 mcg/kg or sufentanil 10–15 mcg/kg; midazolam 0.15 mg/kg; vecuronium 0.3 mg/kg or rocuronium 3–5 mg/kg.
Termination of CPB	Junctional rhythm is common in the denervated transplanted heart. Isoproterenol 10–75 ng/kg/min or epinephrine 50–105 ng/kg/min may be used to achieve a HR of 100–120 bpm. Isoproterenol is also useful in providing inotropic support and pulmonary vasodilation (see below). Atropine and neostigmine do not affect HR. HTN does not produce reflex bradycardia. The graft atrium produces normally conducted P-waves if the right atrial cuff anastomosis is used. The graft-conductive tissue contains adrenergic receptors and responds normally to norepinephrine, epinephrine, and isoproterenol. Inotropic support with dopamine (2–10 mcg/kg/min), isoproterenol (10–150 ng/kg/min), and epinephrine (20–100 ng/kg/min) may be necessary, especially if pulmonary HTN promotes RV failure. Inhaled NO (20 ppm) may provide selective pulmonary vasodilation. A PA catheter may be helpful in guiding the use of inotropes and vasodilators and may be placed after CPB.

Termination of CPB (cont'd)	After termination of CPB, TEE may be of particular value in assessing RV dysfunction, estimating PA pressures, and guiding appropriate fluid therapy, pharmacologic support, and mechanical support as necessary. RV failure may be produced by the presence of air in the RCA. Visual inspection may demonstrate this problem, and one should wait for the passage of the air and the resolution of ischemia before terminating CPB. SNP (0.2–2.0 mcg/kg/min) is used for afterload reduction. Inhaled NO, prostaglandin E_1 (20–100 ng/kg/min), and NTG (0.2–2.0 mcg/kg/min) may be used for pulmonary vasodilation, especially if a preop catheterization study demonstrates responsiveness of the pulmonary circulation. Isoproterenol infusion (10–100 ng/kg/min) may provide appropriate pulmonary vasodilation, chronotropy, and inotropy. IV fluid and vasodilators must be given with particular care, as the flow produced by the denervated heart is quite sensitive to preload.	
Postbypass hemorrhage	Postbypass bleeding is a common problem brought on by the preop use of anticoagulants, the depressed synthetic function of the liver in chronic heart failure, and the effects of CPB. Following administration of protamine, infusion of Plts, FFP, and RBCs may be necessary. Cryoprecipitate is needed occasionally, especially for patients with previous chest surgery. Epsilon-aminocaproic acid (EACA), or tranexamic acid may be appropriate in some cases. If bleeding persists, consider recombinant factor VIIa or FEIBA.	
Immuno-suppression	Methylprednisolone 500 mg is given after bypass is terminated. Daclizumab 1 mg/kg is also administered after administration of protamine, and hemostasis has been secured.	
Diuresis	There may be little urine production, especially if patient received high-dose diuretics preop. Mannitol and furosemide may be needed to induce diuresis.	
Transport	A Mapleson D or Jackson-Rees circuit is used in transporting the patient to the ICU. Sedation with iv infusion of propofol (20–50 mcg/kg/min) or dexmedetomidine (0.4–0.8 mcg/kg/min) may be used.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Possible severe bleeding IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Bleeding is often a problem after termination of CPB. A second iv catheter is inserted in patients with previous chest surgery.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line CVP/PA catheter UO	Although it may be helpful to have a triple-lumen CVP line before induction for preload monitoring and infusion of potent infusion drugs, it is not essential. This line is usually inserted after the patient is intubated to avoid patient dyspnea and discomfort. A PA catheter is usually not inserted before bypass because it must be removed during surgery. An 8.5-Fr introducer is used in anticipation that a PA catheter may be necessary to manage right heart failure following the transplantation. In some institutions (not Stanford), the left IJ vein is the preferred site of cannulation, which leaves the right IJ unscarred for repeated postop endomyocardial biopsy of the transplanted heart.
	TEE	TEE is used to optimize fluid therapy, inotropic agents, vasodilators, and chronotropic agents.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Arms padded at sides Chest roll	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	RV dysfunction	RV failure may occur in patients with pulmonary HTN and high RV afterload (see pulmonary HTN, below).
	Pulmonary HTN	Maneuvers which exacerbate pulmonary HTN should be avoided. These include hypoxia, hypercarbia, acidosis, and low minute ventilation. Inhaled NO can be used to treat pulmonary HTN (20–40 ppm inspired concentration). Efforts to treat pulmonary HTN with vasodilator therapy may be complicated by impaired V/Q matching with hypoxemia and by systemic ↓ BP producing poor coronary perfusion and RV ischemia. Inotropic support of the RV may be necessary (epinephrine 20–100 mg/kg/min, milrinone 0.2–0.4 mg/kg/min). Isoproterenol infusion (10–150 ng/kg/min) is attractive because it combines inotropy, pulmonary vasodilation, and chronotropy.
	Oliguria Drug side effects: • Cyclosporine: HTN, nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity • Corticosteroids: glucose intolerance, HTN, obesity, hyperlipidemia, aseptic necrosis of hip, bowel perforation, infection	Preexisting impairment may → chronic ↓ UO state. Other renal problems may be related to cyclosporine toxicity, diuretic toxicity, or CPB. Rx by optimizing hemodynamics. Consider reduction or elimination of nephrotoxins and continuing use of diuretics. Cyclosporine nephrotoxicity occurs in most patients. A functional toxicity with ↓ GFR occurs at low dose and is reversible. Tubular toxicity with morphologic changes occurs at high doses and is generally clinically unimportant and reversible. The most serious damage is vascular interstitial toxicity, which occurs over months at high doses and is not reversible.
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3) after weaning from mechanical ventilation.	
Tests	Cr Hct	

See Suggested Readings on page 478.

SURGERY FOR LUNG AND HEART/LUNG TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: With the availability of cyclosporine, the ability to successfully transplant the heart and both lungs was proven in monkeys and then successfully applied in a patient in March 1981. Subsequently, single-lung transplantation was successfully performed in 1984 and an en bloc, double-lung transplant in 1986. Clinical lung transplantation of these various types has increased markedly in the last few years, and currently, approximately 600 single-lung transplants, 1000 bilateral lung transplants, and 30 heart/lung transplants are performed in the United States each year.

Current indications for heart/lung transplantation are primarily those of combined heart and lung disease, including Eisenmenger's syndrome due to a congenital heart defect with irreversible pulmonary HTN. Certain types of diffuse lung disease, such as primary pulmonary HTN with significant right heart failure, are also treated in some centers by heart/lung transplantation. Recipients for single-lung transplant usually have end-stage pulmonary disease without significant sepsis. This includes patients with interstitial fibrosis, emphysema, and lymphangioleiomyomatosis.

Some patients with pulmonary vascular disease, such as primary pulmonary HTN or pulmonary HTN associated with an ASD, have undergone single-lung transplantation with or without cardiac repair. Bilateral lung transplantation is now performed usually as a sequential single-lung transplant with the major indications being septic lung disease, such as cystic fibrosis, chronic bronchiectasis, severe bullous emphysema, or pulmonary vascular disease with or without cardiac repair. Current immunosuppressive protocols consist of a combination of tacrolimus with prednisone and myophenolate mofetil, with or without early induction therapy, using a cytolytic agent (e.g., antithymocyte globulin) or an IL-2 receptor or blocker (e.g., baciliximab). Immunosuppression may begin preop and continue throughout the life of the patient. Current 1-yr survival rates average 70% for heart/lung transplants and 80% for lung transplants.

Heart/lung transplants usually are performed through a median sternotomy, although occasionally bilateral, transsternal thoracotomy has been used. **Single-lung transplants** (usually left side) and **bilateral sequential lung transplants** use a lateral thoracotomy, transsternal bilateral thoracotomy, or median sternotomy. Single- and double-lung transplants are greatly facilitated with OLV, which is essential for these procedures. If this type of ventilation is not feasible, a bronchial-blocker must be inserted through the operative field during pneumonectomy and reimplantation. CPB is routinely used for heart/lung transplantation and is used for either single- or bilateral-lung transplantation, depending on the stability of the patient during OLV and/or clamping of the PA. Patients with severe pulmonary HTN undergoing single- or double-lung transplantation will almost always require CPB to reduce PA pressure during clamping. For combined transplants, the recipient heart is removed as for standard heart transplantation (see Surgery for Heart Transplantation, p. 464). A portion of the PA near the ligamentum arteriosum, however, is left intact to preserve the recurrent laryngeal nerve. Next, each recipient lung is excised, and the trachea is transected above the carina. For single-lung transplant, usually the recipient lung is excised, leaving a bronchial stump and vascular pedicles for the PA and veins (left atrium). For bilateral-lung transplants, both recipient lungs are removed, both bronchi are resected just distal to the carina, and the main PA and left atrium prepared for subsequent anastomosis.

Implantation of the grafts involves a tracheal anastomosis, aortic and separate SVC and IVC anastomoses for heart/lung transplants, and a bronchial anastomosis with PA and pulmonary venous anastomosis for single-lung transplantation. **Bilateral sequential lung transplants** are performed as if they were single-lung transplants. CPB requires heparinization and protamine reversal. Prior to closure, extensive exploration for potential bleeding sites within the posterior mediastinum is carried out with placement of right and left pleural and mediastinal drainage. Thoracotomies are closed in standard fashion with routine chest tube drainage.

Usual preop diagnosis: End-stage heart and lung disease, such as Eisenmenger's syndrome; cystic fibrosis; primary pulmonary HTN; emphysema; bronchiectasis; lymphangioleiomyomatosis; interstitial pulmonary fibrosis; sarcoidosis; other unusual forms of lung disease

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Heart/Lung Transplantation	Single-Lung Transplantation	Bilateral-Lung Transplantation
Position	Supine	Lateral thoracotomy	Supine
Incision	Median sternotomy, usual; bilateral anterior thoracotomy, occasionally	Posterolateral thoracotomy	Transsternal bilateral thoracotomy; median sternotomy
Special instrumentation	Ascending aortic, SVC, and IVC cannulae	Occasional need for BB to be inserted through the operative field.	± Aortic, SVC, and IVC cannulation; occasional need for BB.
Unique considerations	CPB. If recipient has had previous thoracotomies, mediastinal collaterals may cause troublesome bleeding. Some patients with cystic fibrosis have severe bilateral scarring, requiring extensive dissection to remove the recipient lung.	± CPB. Patient may become severely hypoxic or hypercarbic during OLV, requiring CPB. During right thoracotomy, cannulation can be performed through the thorax, but left thoracotomy may require femoral artery and vein cannulation.	CPB. Thoracotomy usually is performed on left side first, with implantation of lung on this side, followed by completion of right side thoracotomy and right-lung transplantation. If patient becomes unstable, cannulation in the thorax is usually possible to facilitate transplantation.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Heart/Lung Transplantation	Single-Lung Transplantation	Bilateral-Lung Transplantation
Antibiotics	Continue specific antibiotic regimen. Coverage for pseudomonas is suggested in patients with cystic fibrosis.	Cefazolin 2 g iv then 1g q 4 h	⇐ With appropriate coverage for pseudomonas in patients with cystic fibrosis.
Surgical time	4–5 h	2–3 h	5–6 h
Closing considerations	Temporary pacing wire applied and isoproterenol infusion is usually started intraop to keep HR between 100 and 110, as with a cardiac transplant.	Ventilation with as low an FiO_2 as possible to maintain a PO_2 > 90. Minimize iv fluids.	⇐
EBL	500–2000 mL	< 500 mL (more if CPB is used)	500–2000 mL
Postop care	Cardiac ICU: 3–7 d; 1–2 d assisted ventilation	⇐	⇐
Mortality	10–15%	5%	5%
Morbidity	Early acute rejection episodes from 10–21 d: 75% Infection, particularly pulmonary: 30–40% Pulmonary interstitial edema: 20% Return for bleeding: 4–6% Hyperacute rejection: Rare	— ⇐ Bleeding: 2–4% Bronchial leak or stenosis: 2–4%	— ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	8–10	8–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Heart/Lung Transplantation	Single-Lung Transplantation	Bilateral-Lung Transplantation
Age range	3 mo–55 yr (average 30–40 yr)	1–65 yr	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐
Incidence	~30/yr (United States) 200/yr (worldwide)	600/yr (United States) 1,000/yr (worldwide)	1000/yr (United States) 2000/yr (worldwide)
Etiology	Eisenmenger's syndrome; CHD; cystic fibrosis; pulmonary HTN; other lung diseases	Acquired chronic lung disease; pulmonary HTN	Cystic fibrosis; interstitial fibrosis; emphysema
Associated conditions	Severe cyanosis and polycythemia; diabetes in patients with cystic fibrosis; sinus infections in patients with cystic fibrosis	Right heart dysfunction; pulmonary valve insufficiency and tricuspid valve insufficiency	Diabetes mellitus; sinus infections in patients with cystic fibrosis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR HEART/LUNG TRANSPLANTATION

PREOPERATIVE

Patients scheduled for heart/lung transplantation are terminally ill, although they may still be able to maintain limited activity. Indications include primary pulmonary HTN with irreversible heart failure, Eisenmenger's syndrome,

and combined cardiac and pulmonary disease. The standard preanesthetic evaluation is supplemented with considerations particular to these patients. The progression of disease is usually well documented.

Respiratory	Patients with severe pulmonary HTN (80/50 mm Hg) have enlarged PAs. Vocal cord dysfunction (Sx: hoarseness, inability to phonate "e") may occur when the left recurrent laryngeal nerve is stretched by an enlarged PA, making these patients at increased risk for pulmonary aspiration. Appropriate precautions to avoid aspiration should be taken (see Induction, below). **Tests:** ABG; cardiac catheterization
Cardiovascular	Hx of recent exacerbation of symptoms should be sought and cardiac catheterization data interpreted in light of interval changes. The severity of pulmonary HTN and the responsiveness to specific vasodilators during catheterization should be reviewed. **Tests:** ECG; cardiac catheterization; ECHO
Neurological	R → L intracardiac shunting may be present in patients with pulmonary HTN, and Hx of embolic episodes should be sought. Extra care should be used to avoid injection of even small quantities of intravenous air.
Hematologic	The medication schedule should be verified with particular attention to the recent use of anticoagulants. **Tests:** Hct; PTT; PT (special tubes required if severe polycythemia present 2° ↓ plasma volume); Plt count; fibrinogen
Laboratory	Evidence of renal and hepatic dysfunction should be sought by H&P and lab studies. Hypokalemia is generally not treated because the heart/lung graft is preserved with K^+ and implantation will reverse hypokalemia.
Premedication	Although anxious, these patients are usually well informed and psychologically prepared. They respond well to the reassurance of the preop visit, and pharmacologic premedication usually is not necessary. O_2 therapy should commence prior to transport of patient to the OR. Patient may be at increased risk for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents because of the unscheduled nature of the surgery and the presence of recurrent laryngeal nerve damage. Ranitidine (50 mg) and metoclopramide (10–20 mg) may be administered iv preop.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Infection is a serious potential complication in the immunosuppressed transplant patient; thus, aseptic technique is important. Aseptic technique is used in inserting and securing all vascular catheters. The anesthesia machine should be equipped with a supply of air to permit control of the FiO_2, and anesthesia is not induced until the team harvesting the graft reports that it appears to be normal on direct inspection.

Induction	In the OR, the patient should be placed on the operating table and O_2 and noninvasive monitors applied. An arterial line for BP and blood gas monitoring should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetics before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical during induction. A patient who is dyspneic in the supine position may be treated by raising the back of the table. Cricoid pressure may be used when the patient is at risk for aspiration of gastric contents. A major goal of anesthetic induction is the avoidance of further increases in PVR by guarding against respiratory acidosis, hypoxia, N_2O, light anesthesia, and extremes of lung volume. When hemodynamically tolerated, anesthetic is induced with titrated propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg) and fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg). Etomidate (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) may be used when hypotension limits administration of propofol and narcotics. Vecuronium (0.15 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1–1.5 mg/kg), should be administered early to permit rapid airway control. Midazolam and scopolamine produce amnesia. N_2O is not used because it may exacerbate pulmonary HTN, reduces FiO_2, and expands intravascular air bubbles. Patient should be ventilated by mask and cricoid pressure released only after the airway has been secured with a cuffed ETT. An ETT of internal diameter of 8.0 mm or greater will facilitate FOB postop.

Maintenance	Typical total anesthetic doses for the *entire* intraop course are fentanyl 10–30 mcg/kg or sufentanil 10–15 mcg/kg; midazolam 0.2 mg/kg; vecuronium 0.3–0.5 mg/kg, or rocuronium 2–3 mg/kg.	
Termination of CPB	After the tracheal anastomosis is complete, the lungs are suctioned with a sterile catheter and ventilated manually with air (FiO_2 0.21). Tidal volumes should be sufficient to reinflate areas of atelectasis under direct vision. Steroids (methylprednisolone 250–500 mg) may be given as the lung is reperfused. Once rewarmed, full ventilation is begun with the lowest FiO_2 to achieve $SpO_2 \geq 90\%$, usually $FiO_2 = 0.4–0.5$. Peak inspiratory pressures are typically 20–30 cm H_2O in the open chest. Optimal tidal volumes 6–8 mL/kg can be in part determined by direct visualization and lung protection strategy. PEEP may be added to optimize SpO_2 as well as inhaled NO. Junctional rhythm is common in the denervated transplanted heart. Epinephrine (50–150 ng/kg/min) or isoproterenol (10–75 ng/kg/min) is used to achieve a HR of 100–120. When sinus rhythm is achieved, it is common to see two P-waves if a biatrial anastomosis has been used. The residual atrial tissue produces nonconducting P-waves. Responses mediated by vagal tone will be seen in the rate of the original atrial tissue and have no clinical importance beyond the ease with which the ECG is interpreted. In the denervated heart, atropine and neostigmine will not affect HR, and HTN will not produce reflex bradycardia. The graft atrium produces normally conducted P-waves. The transplanted heart contains adrenergic receptors and responds normally to norepinephrine, epinephrine, and isoproterenol. The CO of the denervated heart is quite sensitive to preload; thus, iv fluid and vasodilators must be given with particular care. SNP is used for afterload reduction. TEE may be of particular value in assessing RV dysfunction and guiding appropriate fluid therapy, pharmacologic support, and mechanical support as necessary. Inhaled NO, PGE_1 (20–100 ng/kg/min), isoproterenol, and NTG (0.2–2.0 mcg/kg/min) also may be used for pulmonary vasodilation. Inotropic support with dopamine (2–10 mcg/kg/min), isoproterenol, and epinephrine (20–100 ng/kg/min) may be necessary, especially if pulmonary HTN and RV failure occur. TEE is useful in evaluating the PA anastomosis (diameter > 1 cm) and pulmonary veins (diameter > 0.5 cm). Flow rates by Doppler should be ≤ 100 cm/sec.	
Immunosuppression	Methylprednisolone 500 mg iv is given after bypass is terminated.	
Diuresis	There may be little urine production, especially if patient received high-dose diuretics preop. Cyclosporine may exacerbate renal dysfunction. Mannitol and furosemide may be needed to induce diuresis.	
Transport	A sterile, disposable Jackson-Rees system is used in transporting the patient to the ICU.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss. IV: 14–16 ga × 2	Bleeding is often a major problem after termination of CPB. Patients with intracardiac defects are at increased risk for cerebral embolic events. Care must be taken to remove all air bubbles from intravascular lines.
Control of blood loss	Postbypass bleeding is a common problem. Coagulation therapy necessary. Possible severe bleeding	Postbypass bleeding is exacerbated by preop use of anticoagulants, depressed synthetic liver function, trauma of CPB, and/or previous chest surgery. Coagulation therapy may include: protamine (30 mg/kg); Plts; FFP; RBCs; EACA (300 mcg/kg); DDAVP (0.3 mcg/kg). Severe bleeding prompts further therapy: cryoprecipitate, Feiba VH (factor 8 inhibitor bypassing activity), and/or recombinant factor 7a.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
	Arterial line	
	CVP/PA catheter UO	The CVP catheter is usually placed following anesthetic induction. An introducer permits the rapid insertion of a PA catheter when necessary. A "double-stick" technique, placing both a triple lumen CVL and a 9-F introducer in the right IJ is sometimes used. In some centers (not Stanford) the left IJ vein is the preferred site of cannulation, leaving the right IJ unscarred for repeated endomyocardial biopsies of the transplanted heart.
	TEE	TEE is used to optimize volume status (LV + RV size), inotropic agents (LV + RV contractility), vasodilators, and chronotropic agents.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Oliguria	Diuresis may be induced with mannitol and furosemide.
	Pulmonary edema	Given the lack of lymphatic drainage in the transplanted lung, pulmonary edema may occur. Diuresis and restriction of iv fluid may be required.
	RV dysfunction	RV failure may occur in patients with pulmonary HTN and high RV afterload (see Pulmonary HTN Rx, below).
	Hypoxia	If oxygenation does not improve with increasing FiO_2, PEEP, tidal volumes, and/or inhaled NO, ECMO may be considered.
	Pulmonary HTN	Maneuvers that exacerbate pulmonary HTN should be avoided. These include hypoxia, hypercarbia, acidosis, and hypoventilation. Inhaled NO can be used to treat pulmonary HTN (20 parts per million inspired concentration). Efforts to treat pulmonary HTN with vasodilator therapy may be complicated by impaired V/Q matching with hypoxemia and by systemic hypotension, producing poor right coronary perfusion and RV ischemia. Inotropic support of the RV may be necessary. Isoproterenol is attractive because it combines inotropy, pulmonary vasodilation, and chronotropy.
	Rejection Infection	Monitor rejection Sx with transvenous endomyocardial biopsy and transbronchial biopsy.
	Drug side effects: • Cyclosporine: HTN, nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity • Corticosteroids: glucose intolerance, HTN, obesity, hyperlipidemia, aseptic necrosis of hip, bowel perforation, infection • Azathioprine: anemia, thrombocytopenia, leukopenia, hepatotoxicity	Cyclosporine nephrotoxicity occurs in most patients. A functional toxicity with reduced GFR occurs at low dose and is reversible. Tubular toxicity with morphologic changes occurs at high doses and generally is clinically unimportant and reversible. The most serious damage is vascular interstitial toxicity, which occurs over months at high doses and is not reversible.
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3).	

See Suggested Readings on page 478.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR LUNG TRANSPLANTATION

PREOPERATIVE

The patient presenting for lung transplantation typically has end-stage pulmonary fibrosis, emphysema, cystic fibrosis, or bronchiectasis. Pulmonary HTN also may be treated by lung transplantation. The progression of the disease is usually well documented; however, Hx of recent exacerbation of symptoms should be sought.

Respiratory	Assess the patient's ability to undergo OLV by review of the V/Q scan. If little perfusion of the nonoperative lung is present, anticipate the need for CPB. The extent of the restrictive lung disease and diffusion abnormality must be assessed preop. For example, room-air $PaO_2 < 45$ mm Hg predicts the need for CPB. **Tests:** PFT; V/Q scan; ABG
Airway	Patients with severe pulmonary HTN (80/50 mm Hg) have enlarged pulmonary arteries. Vocal cord dysfunction (Sx: hoarseness, inability to phonate "e") may occur when the left recurrent laryngeal nerve is stretched by an enlarged PA, making these patients at increased risk for pulmonary aspiration; therefore, appropriate precautions to avoid aspiration should be taken (see Induction, below).
Cardiovascular	Evidence of RV dysfunction with tricuspid regurgitation should be sought by physical exam, ECHO, and cardiac catheterization. RV ejection fraction (EF) may be estimated with radionuclide ventriculography (normal EF = > 50%). Pulmonary HTN is considered to be severe and may produce RV failure when pressure is > 2/3 of systemic arterial pressure. Note response to specific vasodilators recorded during catheterization. **Tests:** Preview cardiac catheterization data; ECG; mean PAP > 40 mm Hg and PVR > 5 mm Hg/min/L may predict the need for partial CPB.
Neurological	R → L intracardiac shunting may be present in patients with pulmonary HTN, and Hx of embolic episodes should be sought. Extra care should be used to avoid injection of even small quantities of intravenous air.
Musculoskeletal	Chronic cachexia precludes the procedure.
Hematologic	Polycythemia 2° chronic hypoxemia is common. Autologous blood is collected as CPB is initiated. **Tests:** Hct; coagulation studies require special blood tubes to correct for low plasma volume in patients with severe polycythemia.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients awaiting lung transplantation are generally well informed about the planned perioperative course. These patients respond well to the reassurance of the preop visit, and pharmacologic premedication usually is not necessary. O_2 therapy, with the usual home O_2 regimen, should commence prior to transport to the OR. Patient may be at ↑ risk for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents because of the unscheduled nature of the surgery, the use of oral cyclosporin immediately before surgery, and the presence of recurrent laryngeal nerve damage. Ranitidine (50 mg) and metoclopramide (10–20 mg) may be administered iv before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Typically, OLV through a DLT is required for single-lung transplants and may be requested for BSLT to facilitate pre-CPB dissection and reperfusion. Also, some institutions (not Stanford) perform BSLT without CPB (standby only), thus requiring OLV. Consider ETT/BB in cystic fibrosis patients with tenacious sputum. Infection is a serious complication in the immunosuppressed transplant patient; thus, the aseptic technique is important. Aseptic technique is used in inserting and securing all vascular catheters.

Induction	An arterial line for BP and blood gas monitoring should be inserted, using liberal amounts of local anesthetics before induction. The presence of real-time BP monitoring can be critical during induction. After receiving confirmation from the procurement team regarding donor lung suitability and estimated arrival time, induction is begun. After preoxygenation, midazolam 0.2–0.4 mg/kg; fentanyl 2–4 mcg/kg; propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg) or etomidate 0.2–0.3 mg/kg; and rocuronium 1–1.5 mg/kg or vecuronium (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) is typically used. Cricoid pressure must be used when the patient is at risk for aspiration because of the unscheduled nature of the surgery and possible vocal cord dysfunction associated with stretch injury of the recurrent laryngeal nerve. Avoid further increases in PVR by guarding against hypoxemia, acidosis, hypercarbia, light anesthesia, and inadequate minute ventilation.	
Maintenance	Typically, narcotic/O_2/air/± isoflurane (in absence of hypoxemia and right heart failure). Typical total anesthetic doses for the entire intraop course: fentanyl 10–20 mcg/kg or sufentanil 10–15 mcg/kg, midazolam 0.2 mg/kg, vecuronium 0.5–1 mg/kg, or rocuronium 0.2–0.3 mg/kg.	
Emergence	Before closure of the chest, lungs are inflated under direct vision to reinflate atelectatic areas and check adequacy of bronchial closure. At the conclusion of surgery, both lumens of the DLT should be suctioned and the tube replaced with a single-lumen 8.0-mm or larger ETT to facilitate bronchoscopy. The patient is transported to the ICU intubated and ventilated.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14 or 16 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 4 mL/kg/h	Patients with intracardiac defects are at increased risk for cerebral embolic events; take care to remove all air bubbles from intravascular lines and syringes.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line PA catheter Urinary catheter with thermistor	ECG leads should be covered with tape to ensure that electrical contact is not degraded by prep solution or blood. Be careful of air embolization during catheter insertion. Patients who are profoundly dyspneic (→ high negative intrathoracic pressure) are at high risk for VAE; consider inserting the catheter after GA and IPPV have been instituted. Oxygenation must be watched closely.
	TEE	Assessment of RV size and function (normal EF = 0.5–0.7) may be helpful.
OLV	DLT: 41 Fr (men); 39 Fr (women)	A DLT is inserted in the left mainstem bronchus to permit surgical access. FOB is used to verify proper tube placement. Positioning of the bronchial cuff in the proximal left mainstem bronchus does not interfere with surgical access to the bronchus. The position of the DLT should be verified after the patient is moved to the lateral position for SLT. Finally, verify ventilation and proper functioning of the tube. Apply O_2 with CPAP at 5 cmH_2O to the nondependent lung. Further adjustment of CPAP may enhance oxygenation. The nondependent lung may be reinflated with O_2, if necessary, to achieve adequate oxygenation. If adequate oxygenation cannot be achieved, CPB should be initiated.
	Frequent suctioning	Frequent suctioning is necessary in patients with tenacious secretions.

PA clamping	Improve V/Q mismatch. Improve oxygenation. PAP ↑↑→ RV failure	Clamping of the PA will improve V/Q mismatch and oxygenation; however, severe pulmonary HTN and RV failure may develop. Vasodilators, such as NTG (0.2–2 mcg/kg/min), SNP (0.2–10 mcg/kg/min), PGE_1 (20–100 ng/kg/min), or inhaled NO (20–40 ppm) should be used to treat pulmonary HTN and ↓ RV afterload; however, care must be taken to avoid systemic hypotension. Inotropic support for the RV may be necessary (dopamine [2–10 mcg/kg/min] or epinephrine [20–100 ng/kg/min]). TEE and right atrial pressure should be monitored for evidence of tricuspid regurgitation associated with RV dilation.
PA unclamping	PIP: 20–25 cmH_2O O_2 sat: 90–100% PEEP: 5–10 mm Hg	Temporary unclamping of the PA may be necessary to allow further pharmacologic therapy. If RV failure cannot be controlled pharmacologically, CPB should be initiated. The PA should not be unclamped until ventilation is possible to the transplanted lung. Perfusion without oxygenation of the transplanted lung would produce profound shunt and hypoxemia. TV should be adjusted to eliminate atelectasis and to achieve a PIP of 20–25 cmH_2O with the chest open. The FiO_2 (0.3–0.5) is limited in the hope of curtailing free radical injury. PEEP and inhaled NO may be used to enhance oxygenation.
Positioning	For single-lung: • Supine to lateral decubitus • Axillary roll • Airplane splint • Avoid arm hyperextension (> 90°). For double-lung: • Supine with arms above head for bilateral subcostal incision ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Verify correct position of DLT or BB after moving patient to the lateral position. Difficult access to airway after patient positioned. ***NB:** potential for kinking of iv and arterial lines

POSTOPERATIVE

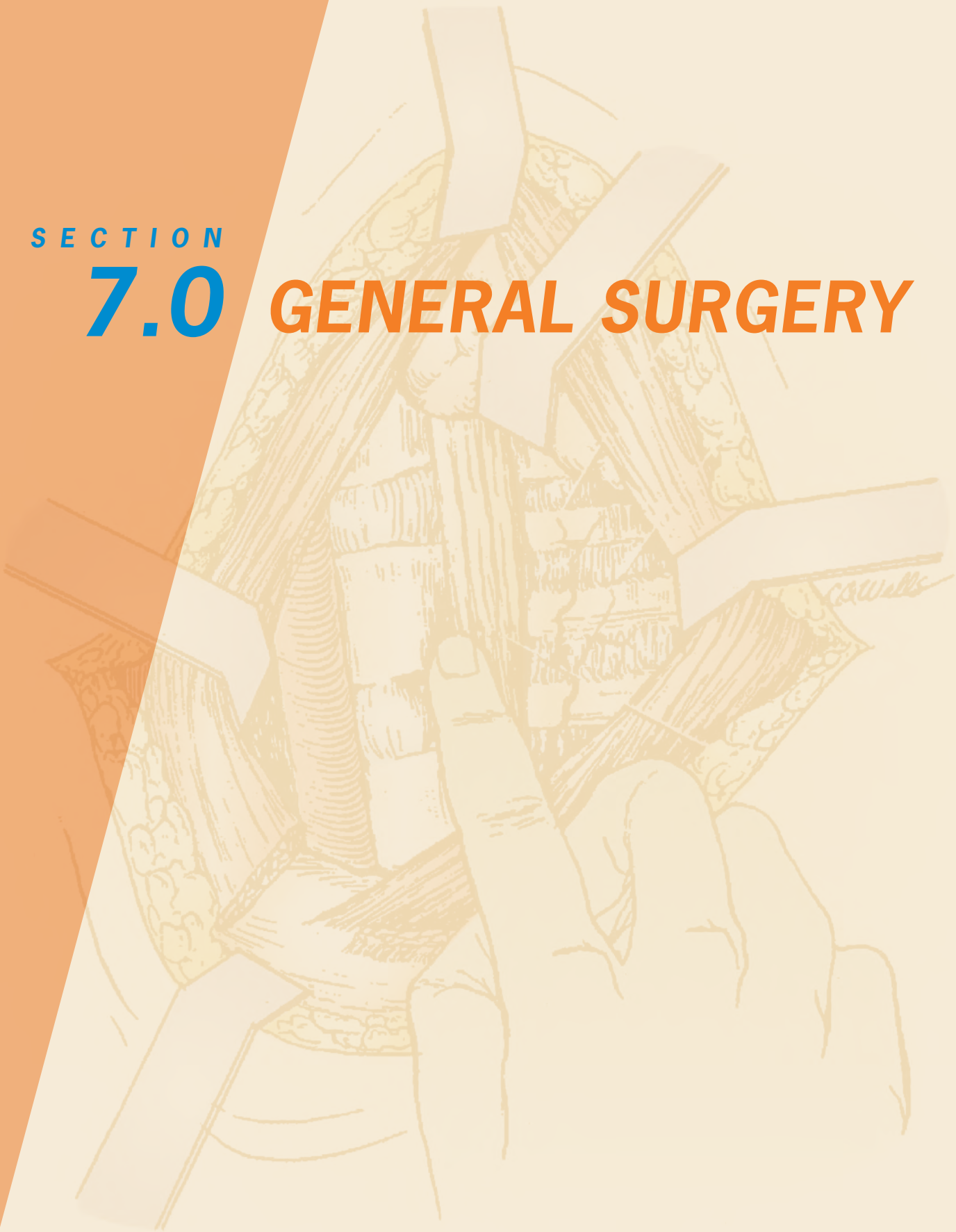
Complications	Pulmonary edema Infection: bacterial, viral, fungal, or protozoan Side effects of immunosuppressive agents: • Corticosteroids: HTN, osteoporosis, glucose intolerance, hyperlipidemia • Azathioprine: anemia, thrombocytopenia, leukopenia	Given the lack of lymphatic drainage in the transplanted lung, pulmonary edema may occur. Diuresis and restriction of iv fluid may be required. Mannitol and furosemide can be used to induce diuresis. Immunosuppression drugs typically include: tacrolimus, myophenolate mofetil, and corticosteroids. Early induction therapy with a cytolytic agent (e.g., antithymocyte globulin) may be used.
Pain management	Epidural narcotics (see p. C-3) Parenteral narcotics (see p. C-3)	Postop analgesia may be provided by infusion of narcotics through an epidural catheter. If CPB is used, the insertion of the epidural catheter should be delayed until normal coagulation function is documented in the ICU.

Suggested Readings

1. Baez B, Castillo M: Anesthetic considerations for lung transplantation. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2008; 12(2):122–7.
2. Benumof JL, Partridge BL, Salvatierra C, et al: Margin of safety in positioning modern double-lumen endotracheal tubes. *Anesthesiology* 1987; 67(5):729–38.
3. Carere R, Patterson GA, Liu P, et al: Right and left ventricular performance after single and double lung transplantation. The Toronto Lung Transplant Group. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1991; 102(1):115–23.
4. Chetham PM: Anesthesia for heart or single or double lung transplantation in the adult patient. *J Card Surg* 2000; 15(3): 167–74.
5. Della Rocca G, Pugliese F, Antonini M, et al: Hemodynamics during inhaled nitric oxide in lung transplant candidates. *Transplant Proc* 1997; 29:3367–70.
6. Dietrich CC, Tobias JD: Intraoperative administration of nitric oxide. *J Intensive Care Med* 2003; 18(3):146–9.
7. DiNardo JA, Zavara DA: Anesthesia for heart, heart-lung and lung transplantation. In: *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell Science, Boston: 2008, 252–88.
8. Dwarakanata K, Rother AL, Collard CD: Anesthetic management of cardiac transplantation. In: Hensley FA Jr, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013, 481–505.
9. Feltracco P, Serra E, Barbieri S, et al: Anesthetic concerns in lung transplantation for severe pulmonary hypertension. *Transplant Proc* 2007; 39(6):1976–80.
10. Hurford WE, Kolker AC, Strauss W: The use of ventilation/perfusion lung scans to predict oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 1987; 67(5):841–4.
11. Koster A: Anesthesia for cardiac transplantation: a practical overview. *Appl Cariopulm Pathophys* 2011; 15(4):213–9.
12. Macdonald P, Mundy J, Rogers P, et al: Successful treatment of life-threatening acute reperfusion injury after lung transplantation with inhaled nitric oxide. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1995; 110:861–3.
13. Mair P, Balogh D: Anaesthetic and intensive care considerations for patients undergoing heart or lung transplantation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 1997; 111:78–9.
14. Marshall SE, Lewiston NJ, Kramer MR, et al: Prospective analysis of serial pulmonary function studies and transbronchial biopsies in single-lung transplant recipients. *Transplant Proc* 1991; 23(1 P+2):1217–19.
15. Maurer JR, Winton TL, Patterson GA, et al: Single-lung transplantation for pulmonary vascular disease. *Transplant Proc* 1991; 23(1 P+2):1211–12.
16. Patterson GA: Indications. Unilateral, bilateral, heart-lung, and lobar transplant procedures. *Clin Chest Med* 1997; 18: 225–30.
17. Quinlan JJ, Murray AW, Casta A: Anesthesia for heart, lung, and heart-lung transplantation In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savina JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*, 6th edition. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia: 2011, 737–54.
18. Ramakrishna H: Adult cardiac transplantation, PART I. *Annals Card Anesth* 2009; 12(1):71–8.
19. Ramakrishna H: Adult cardiac transplantation, PART II. *Annals Card Anesth* 2009; 12(2):155–65.
20. Siegel LC, Brodsky JB: Choice of anesthetic agents for intrathoracic surgery. In: Kaplan JA, ed. *Thoracic Anesthesia,* 2nd edition. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 1991.
21. Slinger P, Sullivan EA: Anesthetic management for surgery of the lungs and mediastinum. In: Hensley FA, Jr, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013, 737–85.
22. Smith CM: Patient selection, evaluation, and preoperative management for lung transplant candidates. *Clin Chest Med* 1997; 18:183–97.
23. Thomas Z, et al: Anesthetic management of cardiac transplantation. In: Hensley Jr FA, et al, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, 439–63.
24. Williams EL, Jellish WS, Modica PA, et al: Capnography in a patient after single lung transplantation. *Anesthesiology* 1991; 74(3):621–2.

SECTION

7.0 GENERAL SURGERY



CHAPTER

7.1 Esophageal Surgery

SURGEONS

Richard I. Whyte, MD, MBA
Jeffrey A. Norton, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Vivek Kulkarni, MD

ESOPHAGOSTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Esophagostomy** is performed to divert oral secretions away from the esophagus to a stoma in certain types of esophageal perforation. To perform an esophagostomy, the esophagus is approached through a left cervical incision. The sternocleidomastoid muscle and carotid sheath are retracted laterally and the thyroid medially, exposing the cervical esophagus (Fig. 7.1-1). The esophagus is mobilized with care being taken not to injure the left recurrent laryngeal nerve, which typically lies in the tracheoesophageal groove. The esophagus is brought to the skin surface as a loop or end stoma and sutured to the skin with absorbable sutures.

Variant procedure or approaches: The procedure is usually performed via a left cervical approach; the right side is an alternative.

Usual preop diagnosis: Esophageal perforation; distal esophageal obstruction

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with head rotated to right
Incision	Cervical
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop
Surgical time	45 min
EBL	25–50 mL
Postop care	Stoma pouch to collect saliva PACU → ward
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	Skin irritation: 15–20% Saliva leakage: 5–10% Wound infection: < 5% Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury: 1–2%
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–60 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Surgically created
Associated conditions	Esophageal perforation; pharyngeal cancer

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Esophageal Surgery following Esophagectomy, p. 494.

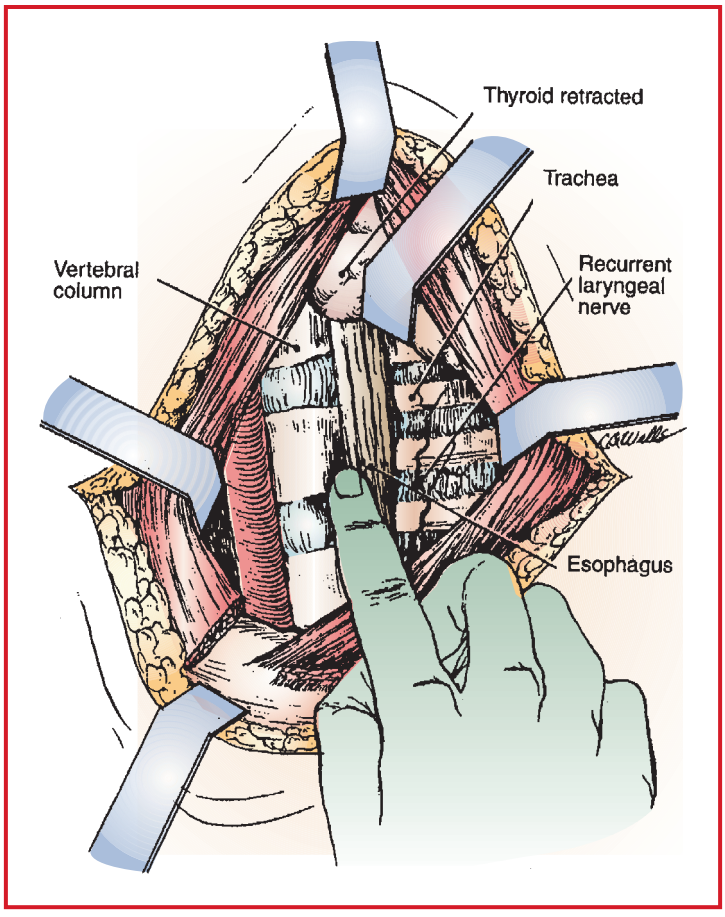


Figure 7.1-1. Surgical anatomy for cervical esophagostomy. (Reproduced with permission from Nora PF, ed: *Operative Surgery Principles and Techniques.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1990.)

Suggested Readings

1. Carrott PW Jr, Low DE: Advances in the management of esophageal perforation. *Thorac Surg Clin* 2011; 21(4):541–55.
2. Wu JT, Mattox KL, Wall MJ Jr: Esophageal perforations: new perspectives and treatment paradigms. *J Trauma* 2007; 63:1173–84.

ESOPHAGEAL DIVERTICULECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Esophageal diverticula are divided into three anatomic types: **pharyngoesophageal (Zenker's), midesophageal,** and **epiphrenic.** Structurally, they are either "true" diverticula—meaning they consist of all three layers of the esophageal wall (mucosa, submucosa, and muscularis)—or "false" diverticula consisting of only mucosa (or mucosa and submucosa). Pharyngoesophageal diverticula account for 60–65% of all cases. These are false diverticula that originate in Killian's triangle, a weak point in the posterior esophagus, just proximal to the transverse fibers of the cricopharyngeal muscle (Fig. 7.1-2A). They are associated with incomplete, or discoordinate, upper esophageal sphincter relaxation and the resultant increased hypopharyngeal pressure produces a

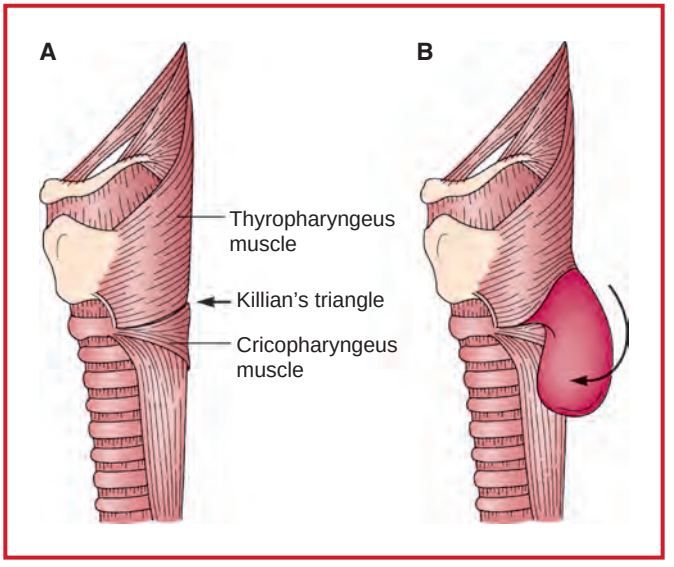


Figure 7.1-2. Formation of Zenker's diverticulum. **A:** Herniation of the pharyngeal mucosa and submucosa occurs at the point of potential weakness (Killian's triangle [*arrow*]) between the oblique fibers of the thyropharyngeus muscle and the more horizontal fibers of the cricopharyngeus muscle. **B:** As the diverticulum enlarges, it drapes over the cricopharyngeus sphincter and descends into the superior mediastinum in the prevertebral space. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland, MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001. After Orringer MB: Diverticula and miscellaneous conditions of the esophagus. In: Sabiston DC Jr, ed. *Textbook of Surgery,* 13th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1986.)

narrow-mouthed posterior diverticulum. These diverticula frequently present in the seventh decade and are 2–3 times more common in men. Symptoms depend on the stage of the disease. Early on, patients may complain of vague pharyngeal sensations, dysphagia, cough, and excess salivation. Later, more severe symptoms—such as severe (or frequent) dysphagia, regurgitation of food, halitosis, voice changes, aspiration, and odynophagia (painful swallowing)—may occur.

Surgery is the only effective therapy for Zenker's diverticulum. Respiratory complications (aspiration) or nutritional deficiencies (weight loss) may be directly attributable to the diverticulum and should not be contraindications to surgery. Multiple different operative approaches are advocated: **diverticulectomy alone, cricopharyngeal myotomy, diverticulectomy with myotomy, and myotomy with suspension of the diverticulum**. Myotomy alone, which corrects the underlying physiologic abnormality, is up to 78% effective and may be considered for patients with small (< 2 cm) diverticula. **Diverticulectomy** or **suspension** should be added if the diverticulum itself is large or dependent. Both procedures are performed via a left cervical incision (Fig. 7.1-3: inset) and are associated with a low rate of recurrence and complications. The upper esophagus is exposed by retracting the sternocleidomastoid muscle and carotid sheath laterally and the thyroid gland medially. The diverticulum is located in the prevertebral space. Care is taken not to injure the recurrent laryngeal nerve. Following excision of the diverticulum, a cricopharyngeal myotomy may be performed, starting on the upper esophagus and extending across the cricopharyngeal muscle near the neck of the diverticulum, and on to the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle.

Recent emphasis has been placed on endoscopic treatment of Zenker's diverticulum (**Dohlman procedure**). In this procedure, a modified laryngoscope and endoscopic stapler are used to divide the common wall between diverticulum and true esophageal lumen. This is advantageous because it does not require an incision, and it does not injure the recurrent laryngeal nerve. It has similar results to open procedures.

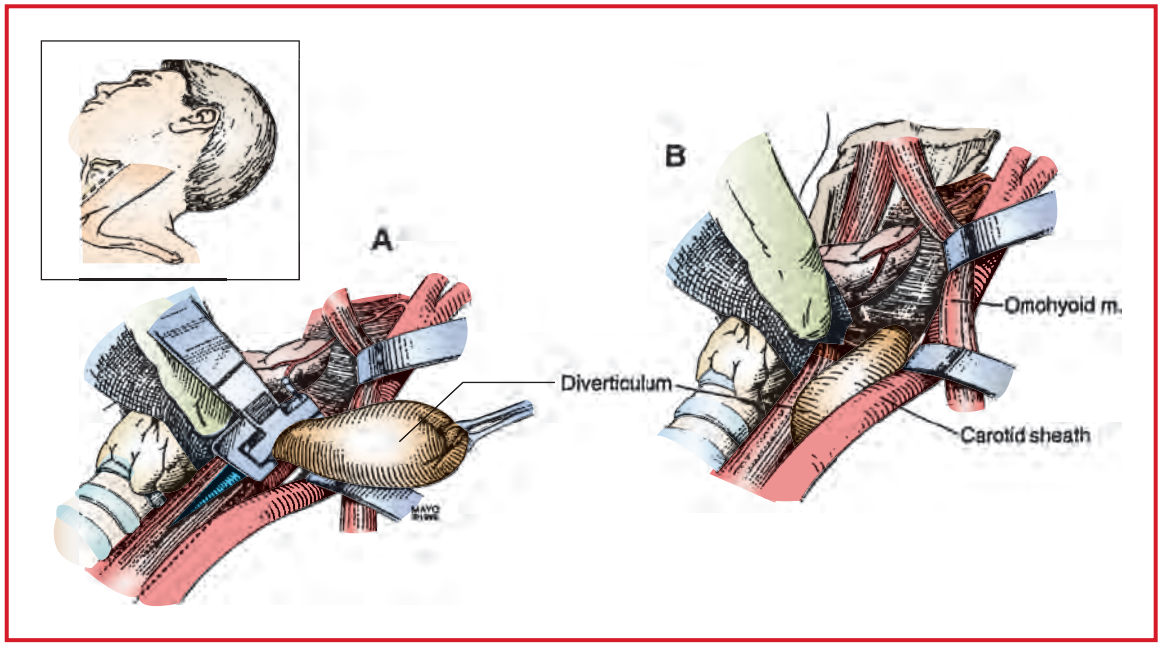


Figure 7.1-3. Zenker's diverticulum approached through a left cervical incision (**inset**). **A:** The diverticulum is grasped, and a cricopharyngeal myotomy is extended onto the upper esophagus. **B:** The base of the diverticulum is stapled, and the diverticulum is resected. (Reproduced with permission from Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB: *General Thoracic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

Midesophageal diverticula, by definition, occur in the middle 3rd of the esophagus. These "true" diverticula typically arise in the setting of mediastinal granulomatous disease whereby a fibrotic reaction around inflamed mediastinal lymph nodes results in traction on the muscular wall of the esophagus. Diverticula usually arise within 4–5 cm of the carina and comprise an estimated 10–17% of all esophageal diverticula. Most midesophageal diverticula are asymptomatic and do not require surgical intervention. In cases that require intervention because of either regurgitation or development of an esophagobronchial fistula, the approach is through a **right thoracotomy** with excision of the inflammatory mass. Primary closure of the fistula and the interposition of viable tissue, such as muscle, should be performed.

Epiphrenic diverticula arise in the distal 10 cm of the esophagus and are thought to be related to an underlying esophageal motility disorder. These false diverticula are most commonly present in the 6th decade. The clinical presentation is variable; most patients have symptoms related to their underlying dysmotility syndrome: dysphagia, chest pain, or regurgitation. Most patients with epiphrenic diverticula are asymptomatic, and there appears to be no relation between size of the diverticulum and symptoms. Surgery for epiphrenic diverticula typically consists of **diverticulectomy with myotomy** either through a **left thoracotomy** (Fig. 7.1-4) or via **laparoscopy**. With the transthoracic approach, a low, **left thoracotomy** is used, the esophagus is mobilized and encircled, and the diverticulum is mobilized and excised. A **myotomy** should be performed opposite the diverticulectomy and should extend proximally above the diverticulum and distally onto the stomach. Because there is, by definition, an underlying motility disorder, the myotomy should be carried onto the stomach, and a nonobstructing **fundoplication** may be added to prevent significant postoperative reflux.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Laparoscopic diverticulectomy and myotomy** has gained increasing acceptance, and reported outcomes are similar to those obtained with the open procedure. The surgical approach is similar to that used during laparoscopic fundoplication (see p. 585). Dissection of the diverticula may be facilitated by the passage of a bougie or video endoscope. After the diverticulum is amputated using an endoscopic stapler, a myotomy is performed opposite the diverticula, and a partial fundoplication is fashioned.

Usual preop diagnosis: Esophageal diverticulum

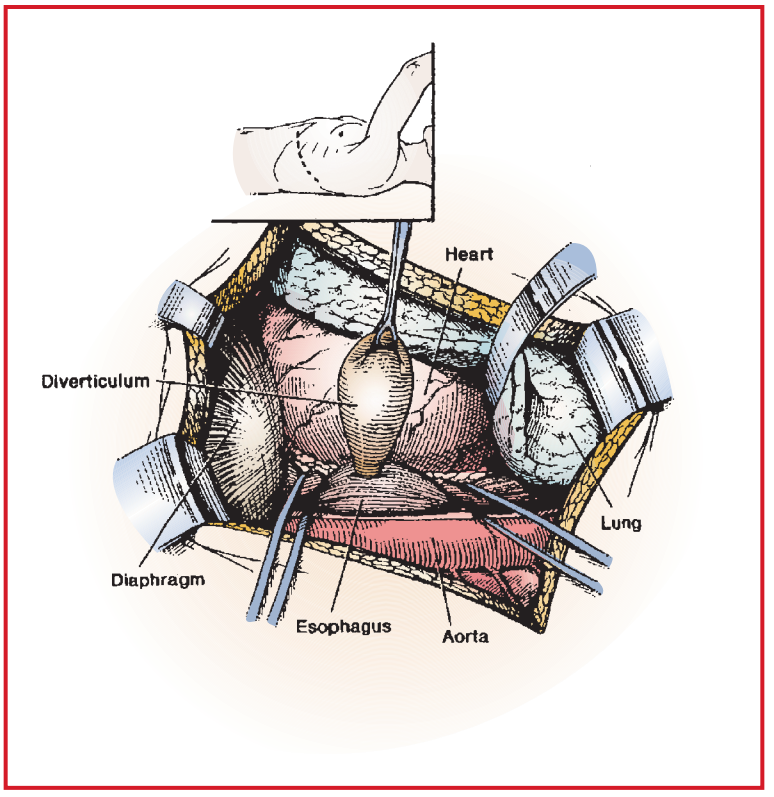


Figure 7.1-4. Epiphrenic diverticulum. Through a left thoracotomy, the diverticulum is mobilized and resected. A contralateral myotomy is then created and extended distally to the stomach to eliminate any functional obstruction secondary to the preexistent dysmotility. (Reproduced with permission from Shields TW, LoCicero J III, Ponn RB: *General Thoracic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Hypopharyngeal	Epiphrenic
Position	Supine	Right lateral decubitus
Incision	Left, right cervical, endoscopic	Left thoracotomy
Special instrumentation	None	Chest retractor
Unique considerations	Care not to injure recurrent laryngeal nerve	10 cm myotomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Inspect for perforation	⇐
EBL	50–100 mL	100–200 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward	ICU × 1–2 d

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Hypopharyngeal	Epiphrenic
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Recurrent nerve paralysis: < 5% Temporary phonetic problems: < 5% Esophageal stricture: < 3% Esophageal fistula: < 2%	Atelectasis: 5–10% Esophageal perforation: < 2% < 2%
Pain score	6–7 (< 2 with endoscopic)	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	35–90 yr (50% of patients > 70 yr)
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Uncoordinated cricoesophageal muscle and lower esophageal sphincter; weakness of esophageal wall.
Associated conditions	Cachexia (25–30%); hiatus hernia with or without reflux (25%); chronic pulmonary infection (15–20%); aspiration (30–40%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Esophageal Surgery following Esophagectomy, p. 494.

Suggested Readings

1. Bock JM, Van Daele DJ, Gupta N, et al: Management of Zenker's diverticulum in the endoscopic age: current practice patterns. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 2001; 120:796.
2. Dzeletovic I, Ekborn DC, Baron TH: Flexible endoscopic and surgical management of Zenkar's diverticulum. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; 6(4):449–65.
3. Ferreira LE, Simmons DT, Bain TH: Zenker's diverticula: pathophysiology, clinical presentation, and flexible endoscopic management. *Dis Esophagus* 2008; 21:1–8.

MANAGEMENT OF ESOPHAGEAL PERFORATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Esophageal perforation** may be spontaneous, instrumental (iatrogenic), traumatic, or 2° intrinsic esophageal disease. **Spontaneous (or emetogenic) perforation** most commonly occurs in the lower 3rd of the esophagus. **Instrumental perforations** may occur at any level, but are most common just above the cardia and in the cervical esophagus. The level of **traumatic perforation** depends on the location of the penetrating wound. Symptoms of esophageal perforation at the cricopharyngeal sphincter include neck pain, fever, and crepitations in the substernal and neck areas. Perforation in the mediastinum may result in hydropneumothorax, mediastinitis, fever, and substernal pain. Cervical perforations are managed with antibiotics and drainage in the cervical area. Therapy for intrathoracic perforation generally requires emergent operation. Surgical options include **primary repair, drainage and diversion, placement of temporary covered stents,** and **esophageal resection.** The optimal choice depends on the nature and duration of the perforation as well as the clinical condition of the patient. Spontaneous perforations are often amenable to primary repair—either through the abdomen or the left chest. Patients suffering from iatrogenic perforation incurred during dilation of a malignant, or nondilatable, stricture may require urgent **esophagectomy**.

Patients with delayed recognition of a perforation may be hemodynamically unstable and may only tolerate drainage and diversion (generally through a cervical esophagostomy).

Variant procedure or approaches: Cervical or right thoracic drainage is indicated when the perforation occurs in the neck or high in the mediastinum.

Usual preop diagnosis: Esophageal perforation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Left Thoracotomy	Cervical or Thoracic Drainage
Position	Right lateral decubitus	Supine or right lateral decubitus
Incision	Left thoracotomy	Cervical or right chest
Antibiotics	Zosyn (piperacillin & tazobactom) 3.375 g iv q6h	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5,000 units sq	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h	1 h
Closing considerations	Chest drain	Cervical or thoracic drain
EBL	100–200 mL	50–100 mL
Postop care	Chest tube to suction; PACU → ward	⇐
Mortality	5–10%	2–5%
Morbidity	Pneumonia: 5–10% Esophageal leak: 2–5% Pericarditis: 1–3%	— 10% —
Pain score	8–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Variable: 20–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1 in 8000 admissions
Etiology	Instrumental (endoscopy, dilatation, intubation); traumatic (penetrating, foreign body, caustic agents); intrinsic disease (carcinoma, peptic ulceration); spontaneous
Associated conditions	Esophageal stricture (75%); cancer (25%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Esophageal Surgery following Esophagectomy, p. 494.

Suggested Readings

1. Fell SC: Esophageal perforation. In: Pearson FG, Cooper JD, Deslauriers J, et al, eds. *Esophageal Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2002, 615–36.
2. Schembre DB: Recent advantages in the use of stents for esophageal disease. *Gastrointestinal Endosc Clin N Am* 2010; 20:103.
3. Wu JT, Mattox KL, Wall MJ: Esophageal perforations: new perspectives and treatment paradigms. *J Trauma* 2007; 63: 1173–84.

ESOPHAGOMYOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Esophagomyotomy** is performed for achalasia and other motility disorders to facilitate esophageal emptying into the stomach. Most authors recommend incising the muscular layer of the distal esophagus and continuing down across the gastroesophageal junction for at least 1 cm (**Heller's myotomy**). The muscle is dissected back from the mucosa so that roughly 180° is exposed (Fig. 7.1-5). The distal esophagus is mobilized either from below the diaphragm or via a left thoracic approach. Care is taken not to injure the vagus nerves.

When approached from the abdomen, the esophagus is exposed by incising the gastroesophageal ligament. The distal esophagus is mobilized and pulled downward to perform the myotomy. The procedure is usually done endoscopically.

Variant procedure or approaches: The procedure usually is performed through a **left thoracotomy**, but some surgeons prefer a **transabdominal approach.** Laparoscopic or thoracoscopic approaches are used to perform esophagomyotomy (see p. 588).

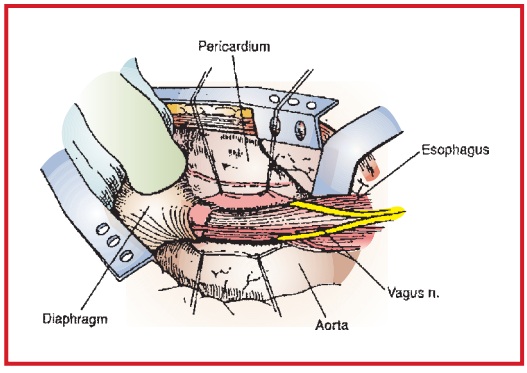


Figure 7.1-5. Surgical anatomy for esophagomyotomy. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Achalasia; diffuse esophageal spasm; nutcracker esophagus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thoracic Approach	Abdominal Approach	Endoscopic Approaches
Position	Right lateral decubitus	Supine	Supine
Incision	Left thoracotomy in 6th interspace	Midline upper abdomen	Multiple small abdominal incisions
Special instrumentation	Chest retractor	Denier retractor	Laparoscopic instrumentation
Unique considerations	Care should be taken to avoid extending gastric myotomy too far to prevent esophageal reflux.	⇐	Legs spread apart (laparoscopic approach)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop	⇐	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	✓ for perforation. Consider fundoplication to prevent esophageal reflux.	⇐	⇐
EBL	150–200 mL	100–150 mL	50 mL
Postop care	ICU × 1–2 d	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	< 0.5%	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Thoracic Approach	Abdominal Approach	Endoscopic Approaches
Morbidity	Esophagitis: ≤ 20% Transient dysphagia/reflux: 5% Esophageal leak: 1–2%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–9	6–8	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–50 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	0.6/100,000
Etiology	Neuromuscular disorder of unknown etiology often characterized by absence of ganglion cells of Auerbach's plexus.
Associated conditions	Predisposition to development of carcinoma (1–20%); pulmonary complications 2° aspiration (5–10%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Esophageal Surgery following Esophagectomy, p. 494.

Suggested Readings

1. Pellegrini C, Wetters LA, Palti M, et al: Thorascopic esophagomyotomy. *Ann Surg* 1992; 216:29.
2. Zhu ZJ, Chen LQ, Duranceau A: Long-term results of total vs. partial fundoplication after esophagomyotomy for primary esophageal motor disorders. *World J Surg* 2008; 32:401–7.

ESOPHAGOGASTRIC FUNDOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Esophagogastric fundoplasty** represents a variety of operations designed to prevent esophageal reflux by wrapping the fundus of the stomach around a 3- to 4-cm segment of the lower esophagus. This fundal wrapping acts to reinforce the lower esophageal sphincter. Surgery may be performed transabdominally, transthoracically, or laparoscopically, depending on surgeon's preference. The most common approach is the open or laparoscopic **Nissen fundoplication,** wherein the anterior and posterior walls of the stomach are sutured together around the lower esophagus with nonabsorbable sutures (Fig. 7.1-6A). This is accomplished by incising the gastrosplenic ligament and ligating three or four short gastric vessels. Care must be taken not to injure the spleen or vagus nerves during the repair.

Variant procedure or approaches: Modifications of the Nissen fundoplication include the **Toupet procedure,** a posterior partial fundoplication, and the **Hill procedure,** in which the gastroesophageal junction is sutured to the median arcuate ligament of the diaphragm or to the preaortic fascia (Fig. 7.1-6B). Another modification is the **Belsey Mark IV** repair, in which there is a 240° semifundoplication between the stomach and esophagus, making it easier for the patient to overcome the resistance of the wrap. There are proponents of each repair, although the Nissen fundoplication remains the standard to which others are compared. The **laparoscopic approach** is widely used, although the left transthoracic approach provides excellent exposure for either Nissen or Belsey repairs (see p. 588).

Usual preop diagnosis: Sliding hiatus (hiatal) hernia, paraesophageal hiatus hernia, or free reflux

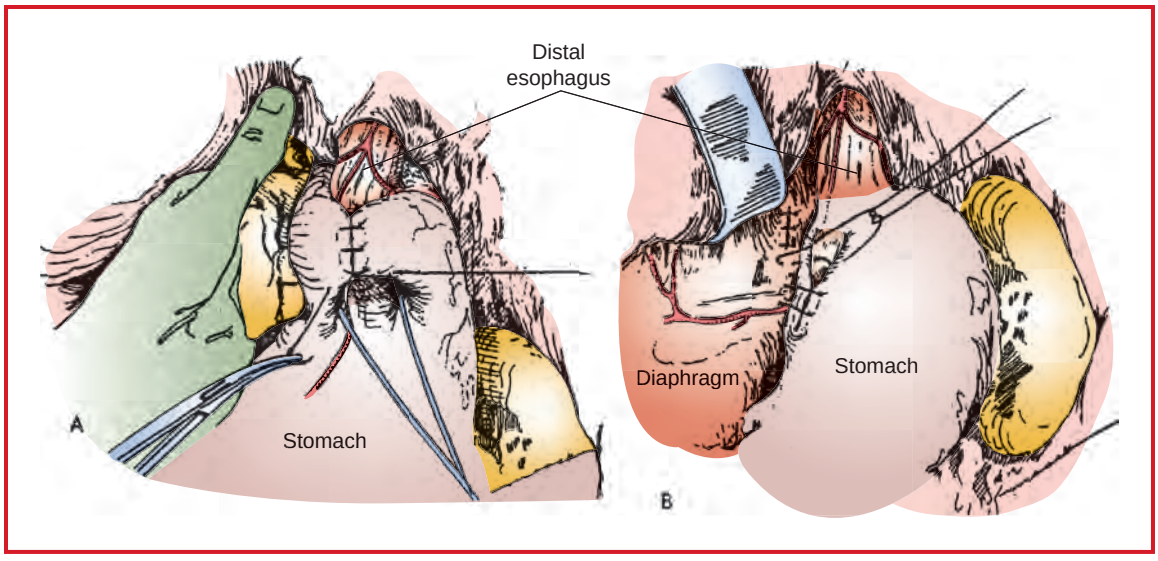


Figure 7.1-6. **A:** Nissen fundoplication may be performed via either the transabdominal or transthoracic approach. **B:** Hill repair is performed through the abdomen. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Nissen (Toupet) Fundoplication	Laparoscopic Nissen	Hill Procedure	Belsey Mark IV
Position	Supine	Supine, legs apart	⇐	Right lateral decubitus
Incision	Midline abdominal or laparoscopic ports	Laparoscopic ports	Midline abdominal	Left posterolateral thoracotomy
Special instrumentation	#40–50 Hurst dilators; NG tube	Laparoscopic instrumentation	NG tube	Chest retractor; NG tube
Unique considerations	Fundoplication should be loose; parietal cell vagotomy performed if peptic ulcer disease present. Fundoplication may be limited to 180–280° posterior wrap (Toupet)	CO_2 insufflation		⇐ 240° semi-fundoplication
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Inspect spleen for bleeding	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	100–150 mL	50 mL	100–150 mL	100–200 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward	⇐	⇐	ICU × 1–2 d

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Nissen (Toupet) Fundoplication	Laparoscopic Nissen	Hill Procedure	Belsey Mark IV
Mortality	< 0.5%	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Recurrent hernia: 20%	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Gas-bloat syndrome: 10–20%	⇐	< 5%	⇐
	Temporary dysphagia: 5–10%	⇐	5%	2%
	Gastric fistula: < 2%	⇐	⇐	⇐
Pain score	6–8	2–4	7–8	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	46–60 yr
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Esophagogastric reflux (100%); esophageal hiatus hernia (80–90%)
Associated conditions	Diverticulosis of colon (30–35%); cholelithiasis (25–30%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Esophageal Surgery following Esophagectomy, p. 494.

Suggested Readings

1. Belsey R: Mark IV repair of hiatal hernia by the transthoracic approach. *World J Surg* 1977; 1(4):475–81.
2. Cuschieri A: Laparoscopic antireflux surgery and repair of hiatal hernia. *World J Surg* 1993; 17(1):40–5.
3. Weber C, Davis CS, Shankaran V, et al: Hiatal hernias: a review of the pathophysiologic theories and implication for research. *Surg Endosc* 2011; 25(10):3149–53.

ESOPHAGECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Esophagectomy** is most commonly performed for malignant disease of the middle and lower 3rd of the esophagus and gastric cardia. This procedure also may be indicated for intractable benign stricture, **Barrett's esophagus** with in situ multifocal adenocarcinoma and end-stage achalasia. There are several surgical options for esophageal resection, including the **Ivor Lewis approach,** which involves a laparotomy and right thoracotomy; the transhiatal approach, whereby the esophagus is mobilized through abdominal and neck incisions, and the **left thoracoabdominal approach** (Fig. 7.1-7). Although there are advantages and disadvantages to each, the final result is to use a portion of the stomach to replace the esophagus. In all approaches, the stomach is mobilized while preserving its blood supply from the right gastroepiploic and gastric arteries. The stomach is then transposed into the chest, and a gastroesophageal anastomosis is fashioned either in the chest (Ivor Lewis and left chest approaches) or in the neck (transhiatal approach). To avoid delayed gastric emptying, a **pyloroplasty** or **pyloromyotomy** is often added, as is placement of a temporary jejunal feeding tube. Regardless of the surgical technique, patients with larger or locally advanced tumors may have received preoperative chemotherapy or radiation. In these patients, the combination of less distinct tissue planes and radiation-induced inflammation tends to lead to increased bleeding and/or increased insensible fluid losses.

The previously mentioned variants of esophagectomy all involve use of the **stomach** as an esophageal replacement. When the stomach is not available (as with prior resection or caustic injury), the **colon** can be used as an esophageal substitute. Both the left and right colon can be used, with the vascular supply to the grafts based on either the ascending branch of the left colic artery or the right colic artery. Colon interpositions typically have higher complication rates than esophagectomies using gastric conduits. Supercharged jejunum has also been used with excellent success. Supercharged means an arterial and venous anastomosis is also made in the neck.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of esophagus or gastroesophageal junction; Barrett's esophagus; benign strictures

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Ivor Lewis	Transhiatal Esophagectomy	Thoracoabdominal	Total Esophagectomy + Colonic Interposition
Position	Supine and left lateral decubitus	Supine	Right lateral decubitus	Supine and right lateral decubitus
Incision	Midline abdominal + right chest and/or cervical incisions	Cervical and midline abdominal	Thoracoabdominal across costal margin (see Fig. 7.1-8)	Midline + right thoracic and cervical
Unique considerations	DLT	None	DLT	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g iv preop	⇐	⇐	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–4 h	4–5 h	3–4 h	5–6 h
Closing considerations	Lung reexpansion	Pneumothorax	Lung reexpansion	Vascular integrity of colonic interposition
EBL	300–800 mL	⇐	⇐	⇐
Postop care	ICU × 1–2 d	⇐	⇐	ICU × 2–3 d
Mortality	5–10%	⇐	⇐	10%
Morbidity	Respiratory complications: 15–20%	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Anastomotic leakage: < 5%	5–10%	< 5%	10%
	Anastomotic stricture: < 5%	⇐	⇐	10%
	Wound infection: < 5%	⇐	⇐	⇐
Pain score	7–9	6–8	7–9	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	4–80 yr
Male:Female	2:1 for carcinoma
Incidence	1–2% of malignant disease
Etiology	Alcohol and tobacco; dietary factors—hot spicy foods; lye burns
Associated conditions	Barrett's esophagus; hiatus hernia; reflux esophagitis; radiation esophagitis; caustic burns

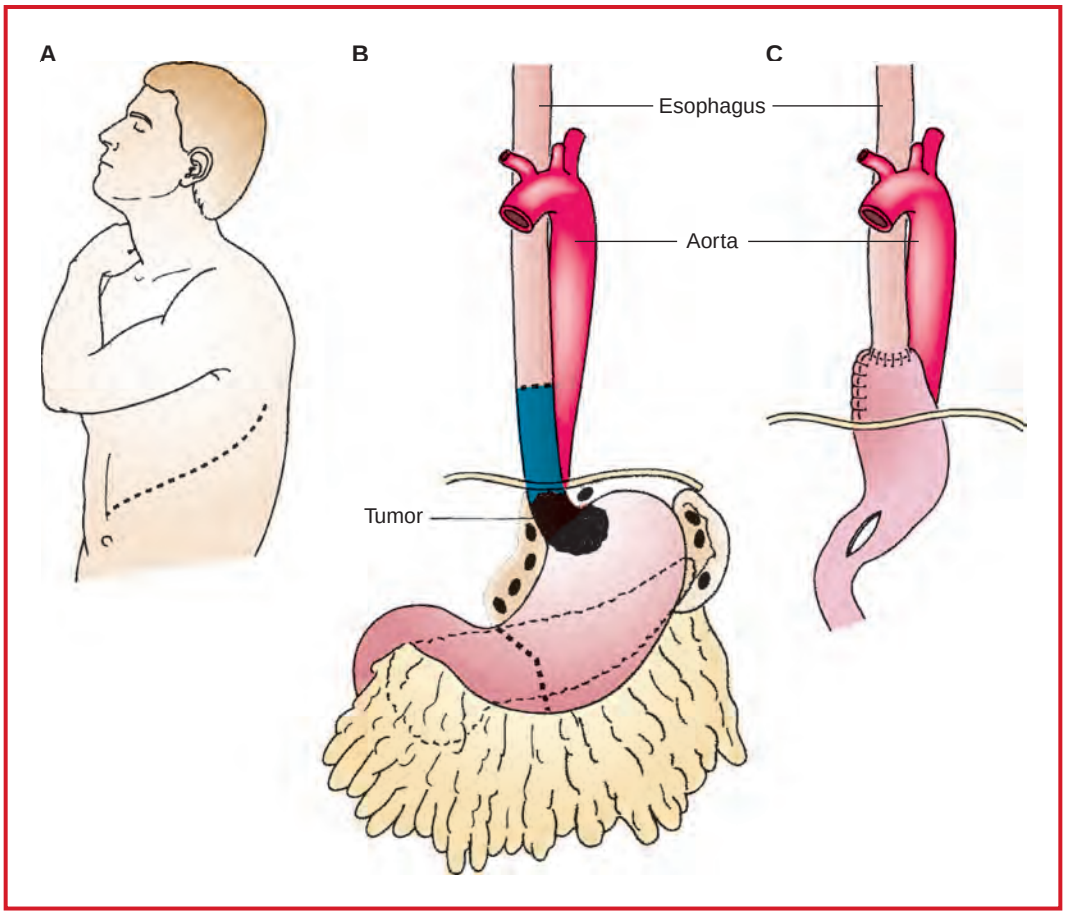


Figure 7.1-7. Standard thoracoabdominal esophagosgastrectomy for carcinomas of the distal esophagus and cardia. **A:** Thoracoabdominal incision. **B:** Tissue to be resected (darker area). **C:** Completed reconstruction after intrathoracic esophagogastric anastomosis and either pyloromyotomy or pyloroplasty to prevent postvagotomy pylorospasm. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland, MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001).

Suggested Readings

1. Barzin A, Norton JA, Whyte R, Lee GK: Supercharged jejunum flap for total esophageal reconstruction: single surgeon 3-year experience and outcome analysis. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 127:173.
2. Dantoc MM, Cox MR, Eslick GD: Does minimally invasive esophagectomy (MIE) provide for comparable oncologic outcomes to open techniques? A systematic review. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2012; 16(3):486–94.
3. Raymond D: Complications of esophagectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(5):1299–313.
4. Sanghera SS, Nurkin SJ, Demmy TL: Quality of life after an esophagectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(5):1315–35.
5. Stiles BM, Altorki NK: Traditional techniques of esophagectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(5):1249–63.
6. Sudarshan M, Ferri L: A critical review of minimally invasive esophagectomy. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2012; 22(4):310–8.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR ESOPHAGEAL SURGERY

(Procedures covered: esophagostomy; esophageal diverticulectomy; closure of esophageal perforation; esophagomyotomy; esophagogastric fundoplasty; esophagectomy; colonic interposition)

Patients presenting for esophageal surgery typically are those with carcinoma, motility disorders, strictures, hiatal hernia, reflux esophagitis, diverticula, and perforation. Patients tend to be elderly, with a history of tobacco abuse

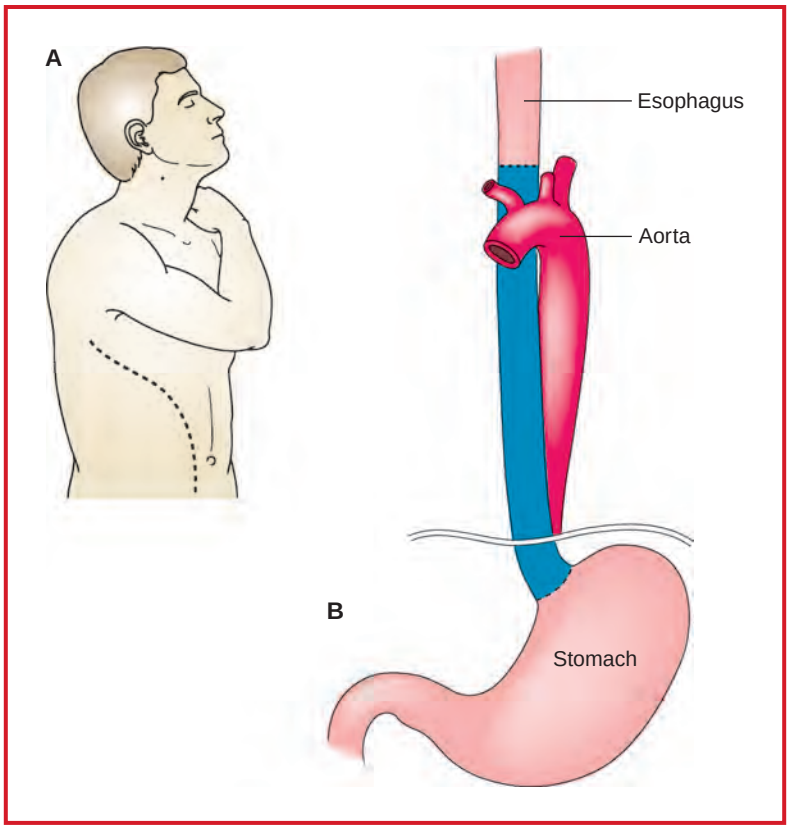


Figure 7.1-8. Standard thoracoabdominal esophagogastrectomy for tumors of the upper and middle 3rd of the thoracic esophagus. **A:** Either a continuous thoracoabdominal incision or separate thoracic and abdominal incisions are used. **B:** Portion of esophagus to be resected (*darker area*). **C:** Completed reconstruction with high intrathoracic esophagogastric anastomosis and gastric drainage procedure. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland, MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

and alcohol consumption, and may have associated cardiopulmonary disease. Obesity and ischemic heart disease are increasingly frequent comorbid conditions. Esophageal disorders such as hiatal hernia, Barrett's esophagus, and carcinoma with incomplete obstruction predispose the patient to recurrent aspiration pneumonitis from intermittent reflux of gastric contents. Patients with esophageal diverticula, stricture, achalasia, and carcinoma with obstruction may present with retained food and oral secretions. Therefore, patients may need to be considered nonfasted. Minimally invasive techniques for esophagectomy (with laparoscopy and thoracoscopy) have potential benefits of decreased tissue injury, and hence pain, with earlier recovery and reduced hospital stay. These advantages are not yet clearly established. The anesthetic considerations are broadly similar with the additional issues that accompany laparoscopic and thoracoscopic (VATS) procedures.

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Many patients with esophageal cancer have a long history of smoking resulting in COPD. Mediastinal lymphadenopathy and tumors of the upper esophagus may lead to tracheal/bronchial compression or erosion that may be revealed by CT and bronchoscopy. A history of gastric reflux and recurrent aspiration pneumonia → ↓ pulmonary reserve and ↑ risk of regurgitation/aspiration during anesthetic induction. (See Premedication, below.) If thoracotomy is a part of the procedure, the patient should be evaluated to ensure that OLV will be tolerated (see below). Determine if patient has been exposed to radiation and chemotherapeutic

Respiratory (cont'd)	agents that may cause pulmonary fibrosis. Some agents, such as Bleomycin, may cause pulmonary toxicity (above a total dose of 300 U) that is worsened by high concentrations of O_2, which should be avoided during the perioperative period. **Tests:** Consider PFTs (FEV1, FVC, DLCO), ABG, and flow-volume loops, if indicated by H&P. They can be helpful in predicting the likelihood of perioperative pulmonary complications and the possible need for postoperative ventilatory support. Patients with baseline hypoxemia/hypercarbia on room air have a greater likelihood of postop complications and ventilatory insufficiency. Severe restrictive or obstructive lung disease also will increase the chance of pulmonary morbidity in the periop period. A-P, lateral CXR (if suggestive of tracheal compression obtain MRI/CT).
Cardiovascular	Elderly patients may have coexisting CAD. In the setting of a recent angioplasty/stent, continued management with antiplatelet agents (clopidogrel) may preclude the use of epidural techniques. Patients may be hypovolemic and malnourished from dysphagia or anorexia. Preop chemotherapy treatment with agents such as doxorubicin may cause acute dysrhythmias and chronic cardiomyopathy (seen increasingly in patients if total dose is > 550 mg/m^2). Some esophageal tumors are related to alcohol consumption and chronic abuse may produce a toxic cardiomyopathy. Preop optimization of cardiac status is important. **Tests:** ECG to r/o dysrhythmias, myocardial ischemia, or prior MI. ECHO or dobutamine stress ECHO will provide important functional information about the heart at rest or under stress, respectively. Reversible ischemia and significant cardiomyopathy should prompt further cardiac consultation.
Hematologic	**Tests:** CBC with differential.
Laboratory	PT & PTT, basic metabolic profile and tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv. Consider H_2-antagonists (e.g., ranitidine 50 mg iv), metoclopramide (10 mg iv 1 h preop), and Na citrate (30 mL po 10 min preop) in patients with reflux and partial obstruction. Patients with esophageal motility disorders, strictures/tumors with complete obstruction may not tolerate oral antacids.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA (with or without epidural for intraop/postop analgesia). If the patient is clinically hypovolemic, restore intravascular volume before epidural placement and induction of GA. Surgeries involving only a cervical or endoscopic approach typically do not require epidural analgesia. If epidural analgesia is planned, placement and testing of the catheter before anesthetic induction is recommended. This is accomplished by injecting 5–7 mL of 1–2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine via the epidural catheter and eliciting a segmental block. If a thoracic or thoracoabdominal approach is performed, placement of a DLT is indicated to provide OLV for optimal surgical conditions. (For additional discussion of DLT placement and OLV, see Anesthetic Considerations in Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy in Thoracic Surgery, p. 285.)

Induction	Patients with esophageal disease are often at risk for pulmonary aspiration; therefore, the trachea should be intubated after rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure. In cases with a difficult airway needing a DLT, placement of a single lumen tube should be accomplished (a) with the aid of a bougie, (b) via an LMA, or (c) with FOB. The single lumen tube is then changed to a DLT using a tube exchange catheter.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3), with or without N_2O (for OLV). Alternatively, a combined technique may be used. A local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine or 0.25% bupivacaine) can be infused or injected into a thoracic (3–5 mL) or lumbar (5–10 mL) epidural catheter to provide both anesthesia and optimal surgical conditions (contracted bowel and profound muscle relaxation). Continuous infusion of local anesthetic generally provides better hemodynamic stability than hourly bolus injections. To enhance the effect of epidural analgesia, a loading dose of opiates (e.g., hydromorphone 0.4–1 mg [thoracic] or 1–1.5 mg [lumbar]) can be administered early during the surgery and at least 1 h before conclusion of the case. Esophagectomy procedures can cause significant third-space

Maintenance (cont'd)	losses; thus, maintenance of euvolemia with close monitoring of BP and UO. Esophageal procedures involving transient compression of the myocardium (i.e., thoracic approach for esophagomyotomy or esophagectomy) can induce dysrhythmias and/or ↓ BP. Monitoring of BP with an arterial catheter is recommended. When OLV is necessary there can be ventilation-induced lung injury, oxygen toxicity, atelectasis and ischemia-reperfusion injury. The use of PEEP, lower tidal volumes and low ventilatory pressures may be protective ventilator strategies. The goals of fluid management are (1) optimize the tissue blood flow and oxygen delivery and (2) avoid excessive fluid administration, which could lead to anastomotic edema with impaired wound healing and pulmonary edema with increased cardiopulmonary morbidity. A balance of colloid + crystalloid and blood products when necessary help achieve this goal directed fluid therapy.	
Emergence	Generally, tracheal extubation should be anticipated at the end of the case. The decision to keep the patient intubated postop depends on cardiopulmonary status and the site and extent of the surgical procedure. Patients with significant intraop fluid shift may develop airway edema that can → airway obstruction if extubated prematurely. This may also occur in operations involving high anastomoses in the neck. For those who may require prolonged postop ventilation, the DLT should be exchanged to a single-lumen ETT before transport to ICU. The use of an airway exchange catheter is safe, and direct laryngoscopy during the exchange prevents inadvertent seepage of blood or silent aspiration. Weaning from mechanical ventilation should begin when the patient is awake and cooperative, able to protect the airway, hemodynamically stable, and has adequate return of pulmonary function (as measured by VC > = 10 mL/kg; MIF of > 30 cmH_2O; rapid, shallow breathing index of ≤ 100 [RR÷TV(L)]; respiratory rate < 25; and ABG that demonstrates adequate gas exchange).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × l–2 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h Warm fluids Consider T&C for 2–4 U PRBC	Plt, FFP, and cryoprecipitate (if required) should be administered according to lab tests (Plt count, PT, PTT, DIC screen, thromboelastography [TEG]). Maintain euvolemia based on estimates of blood loss, fluid shifts, fluids administered, and HR, BP, UO, base deficit, and invasive monitoring when employed.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Urinary catheter ± Arterial line ± CVP	CVP cannulation site determined by surgical approach. Attempt to prevent hypothermia during long operations. Consider forced-air warmer, heated humidifier, warming blanket, warming the OR, keeping patient covered until ready for prep, etc.
Positioning	If lateral decubitus position, use axillary roll, airplane arm holder ✓ pressure points, including ears, eyes, and genitals ✓ radial pulses to ensure correct placement of axillary roll (if misplaced, will compromise distal pulses)	Problems that can arise include brachial plexus injuries, damage to soft tissues, ears, eyes, genitals from malpositioning. Check down eye at frequent intervals. Placing the oximeter probe on the down arm may assist in monitoring adequacy of perfusion.
Complications	Hypoxemia	Hypoxemia during OLV most commonly results from luminal obstruction (by blood or pulmonary secretions) of the DLT; ↑ shunting, or malposition of DLT, which can move during surgical manipulation. Rx: suction DLT and ✓ position; PEEP to ventilated lung (but may ↑ shunting); CPAP to nonventilated lung; return to double-lung ventilation. Temporary clamping of the PA (or inflate the balloon of the PA catheter, if available) may be necessary to improve shunting and oxygenation.
	Hypercarbia	Ensure adequate TV and RR.
	Dysrhythmia	✓ for mechanical compression of heart or great vessels. Check K^+.

Complications (cont'd)	Hypotension	✓ volume status and cardiac function. Consider neosynephrine for BP support if ↓ BP 2° epidural anesthetic. Avoid epidural bolus dosing (↓ BP). Maintaining an adequate BP is important for adequate perfusion and hence integrity of a newly formed anastomosis.
	VTE Prophylaxis	See Appendix B

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Aspiration Atelectasis	For patients at risk for atelectasis or aspiration, recover in the 45° head up or Fowler position (semisitting)
	Hemorrhage	For hemorrhage, ✓ coags; replace factors as necessary.
	Pneumothorax Hemothorax	Dx for pneumothorax and hemothorax: wheezing, coughing, dyspnea, ↓ PO_2, ↓ PCO_2. Confirm by CXR. Rx: chest tube drainage as necessary. In emergency (e.g., tension pneumothorax), use needle aspiration. Supportive Rx: O_2, vasopressors, volume, ± ETT and IPPV.
	Hypoxemia Hypoventilation	For hypoxemia and hypoventilation; Rx: adequate analgesia, minimize sedation, supplemental O_2, may require IPPV.
	Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	For laryngeal nerve injury, Dx: indirect visualization of vocal cords; patient usually will be hoarse.
	Esophageal anastomotic leak	Surgical repair Rx for esophageal anastomotic leak.
	VTE prophylaxis	Esophageal cancer, like other cancers, predisposes patients to VTE with ↑ risk following the commonly used chemotherapeutic agents Cisplatin and 5-FU.
	SVT/AFib	Treat underlying cause and correct electrolyte abnormalities. Adenosine (6 mg iv, push and repeat to 12 mg iv) may be used for SVT. Most postop SVTs are 2° catecholamine surge. AFib may resolve spontaneously. Hemodynamically unstable patients will require cardioversion. β-blockers, amiodarone, Ca^{++} channel blockers, and overdrive cardiac pacing are effective in patients with stable AFib.
Pain management	Lumbar-thoracic epidural analgesia: hydromorphone (0.5–1.5 mg load, 0.1–0.3 mg/h infusion) + local anesthetic PCEA (p. C-4).	Patient should recover in ICU or hospital ward that is accustomed to treating side effects of epidural opiates (e.g., respiratory depression, hypotension, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus)
	PCA	When an epidural cannot be used, a PCA with an opiate such as fentanyl or morphine/hydromorphone may be used for pain control.
	NSAID	Ketorolac is helpful as adjuvant therapy for postop pain management.
Tests	CBC, basic metabolic profile, ABG CXR (r/o pneumothorax, atelectasis).	

General Surgery

Suggested Readings

1. Al-Rawi OY, Pennefather SH, Page RD, et al: The effect of thoracic epidural bupivacaine and an intravenous adrenalin infusion on gastric tube blood flow during esophagectomy. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 106:884–7.
2. Cohen E, Neustein SM, Eisenkraft JB: Anesthesia for thoracic surgery. In: Barash, PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK eds. *Clinical Anesthesia,* 5th edition. JB Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 813–55.

3. Hashimi S, Smith M: Medical evaluation of patients preparing for an esophagectomy. Surg Clin North Am. 2012; 92(5): 1127–33.
4. Jaeger JM, Collins SR, Blank RS: Anesthetic management for esophageal resection. *Anesthesiology Clin* 2012; 30:731–47.
5. Nagawa H, Kobori O, Muto T: Prediction of pulmonary complications after transthoracic oesophagectomy. *Br J Surg* 1994; 81(6):860–2.
6. Ng JM: Update on anesthetic management for esophagectomy. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol* 2011; 24:37–44.
7. Nichols FC, Allen MS, Deschamps C, et al: Ivor Lewis Esophagogastrectomy. *Surg Clin N Am* 2005; 85: 583–92.
8. Pennefather SH: Anesthesia for oesophagectomy. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20:15–20.
9. Raymond D: Complications of esophagectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(5):1299–313.
10. Sanghera SS, Nurkin SJ, Demmy TL: Quality of life after an esophagectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(5):1315–35.
11. Slinger PD, Hickey DR: The interaction between applied PEEP and auto-PEEP during one-lung ventilation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 1998; 12(2):133–6.
12. Smetana GW: Preoperative pulmonary evaluation. *N Eng J Med* 1999; 340(1):937–44.
13. Stiles BM, Altorki NK: Traditional techniques of esophagectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(5):1249–63.

CHAPTER

7.2 Stomach Surgery

SURGEONS

Dan Eisenberg, MD, MS
Myriam J. Curet, MD, FACS (*Open operations for morbid obesity*)
Sherry M. Wren, MD
Maureen M. Tedesco, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Kevin A. Malott, MD
Jay B. Brodsky, MD (*Open operations for morbid obesity*)
Jerry Ingrande, MD

GASTRIC RESECTIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATION

Description: **Total or partial gastrectomy** is performed most commonly for gastric cancers (adenocarcinomas or gastrointestinal stromal tumors [GIST]) and will include **omentectomy, lymph node dissection,** and occasionally resection of adjacent organs such as the **spleen** or **colon,** depending on the pathology, location, and extent of the tumor. Historically there have been other indications for gastrectomy such as ulcer disease, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, and uncontrollable hemorrhagic gastritis, but these operations are rarely if ever performed for those indications in current surgical practice. Rarely patients who suffer from severe and uncontrollable gastroparesis postgastric surgery may require total gastrectomy.

In a gastric resection, the abdomen is entered through an upper midline incision, and the lateral segment of the left lobe of the liver is retracted anteriorly and to the patient's right, exposing the esophagogastric junction. The omentum is taken off of the colon and left attached to the greater curvature of the stomach. The spleen may be removed if involved by tumor or if an unplanned splenic injury occurs. The vessels to the stomach are individually ligated and divided. The short gastric vessels high on the greater curvature are difficult to reach and are a source of potential blood loss. This is also the most likely time that a splenic injury may occur by traction or tearing of the capsule while exposing the short gastric arteries. Currently most surgeons are using various devices to ligate the arteries, and these occasionally have a technical failure, which can result in blood loss. In the lesser sac, the left gastric artery as it branches from the celiac axis and vein needs to be divided and can be another point of potential unexpected blood loss. A total gastrectomy is performed for more proximal cancers and a partial resection for distal cancers. In all cases of gastric cancer, the antrum and pylorus are resected, leaving a duodenal stump and requiring **gastroenterostomy** to restore intestinal continuity. One area of potential complication when the stomach is resected is the accidental stapling of the gastric tube, which remains undetected until too late. To prevent this, the tube should be pulled back well into the esophagus, preferably with manual confirmation by the surgeon that the tube is no longer present in the stomach.

After completion of the gastric resection, reestablishment of intestinal continuity is performed. In the case of a total gastrectomy, a Roux limb of jejunum will be brought up to the distal esophagus; in partial gastrectomies a Roux limb or loop of jejunum (**Billroth II**) is connected to the remnant stomach. With a Roux limb the jejunum is divided just beyond the ligament of Treitz, and the distal end is brought up through a hole in the mesentery of the colon and anastomosed to the esophagus or stomach. Intestinal continuity is established by anastomosing the biliary pancreatic limb of the proximal jejunum to the Roux limb of jejunum, approximately 60 cm distal to the anastomosis with the esophagus. A drain is then placed near the closed end of the duodenum. The anastomosis can either be stapled or hand sewn depending on the preference of the surgeon. At completion of the anastomosis a NG tube can be advanced across the proximal anastomosis, and the abdomen is irrigated. A number of surgeons will then place a **feeding jejunostomy** tube into the jejunum, which adds a few minutes to the procedure prior to fascial closure. Total gastrectomy traditionally has been associated with a morbidity and mortality out of proportion to the operation's apparent magnitude. This is most likely a consequence of the patient's underlying condition, which often includes advanced malignancy and, almost invariably, some degree of malnutrition. Venous thromboembolism (VTE) is a significant concern in these patients because of their increased hypercoagulable state from the cancer and an operation of greater than 1 h in duration. Patients undergoing gastric resection should receive sequential compression devices on the lower extremities and subcutaneous heparin thromboprophylaxis.

Variant procedure or approaches: Occasionally a gastric cancer can have extensive local involvement of adjacent organs requiring an **en bloc resection of the stomach** in addition to the **colon, spleen, or pancreas**. For certain distal gastric cancers a combined gastric resection with a **Whipple procedure (pancreaticoduodenectomy)** may be necessary. The need for en bloc resection of the stomach in combination with other organs increases the complexity of the surgery, risk of blood loss, and postoperative morbidity and mortality. In general, exposure for a **partial gastrectomy** is similar to, but less extensive than, that required for a total gastrectomy. The same cancer principles are followed for either a partial or total resection including > 5 cm proximal margin, **lymphadenectomy,** and **omentectomy**. A partial gastrectomy is a simpler resection. The blood supply to the distal stomach is divided, and the duodenum is divided just beyond the pylorus. The body of the stomach is divided with a stapler (care should be taken to not staple the gastric tube) at a level appropriate for the pathology. Reconstruction after resection may be either to the duodenum (**Billroth I**), loop of jejunum (**Billroth II**; Fig. 7.2-1), or a **Roux-en-Y limb of jejunum.**

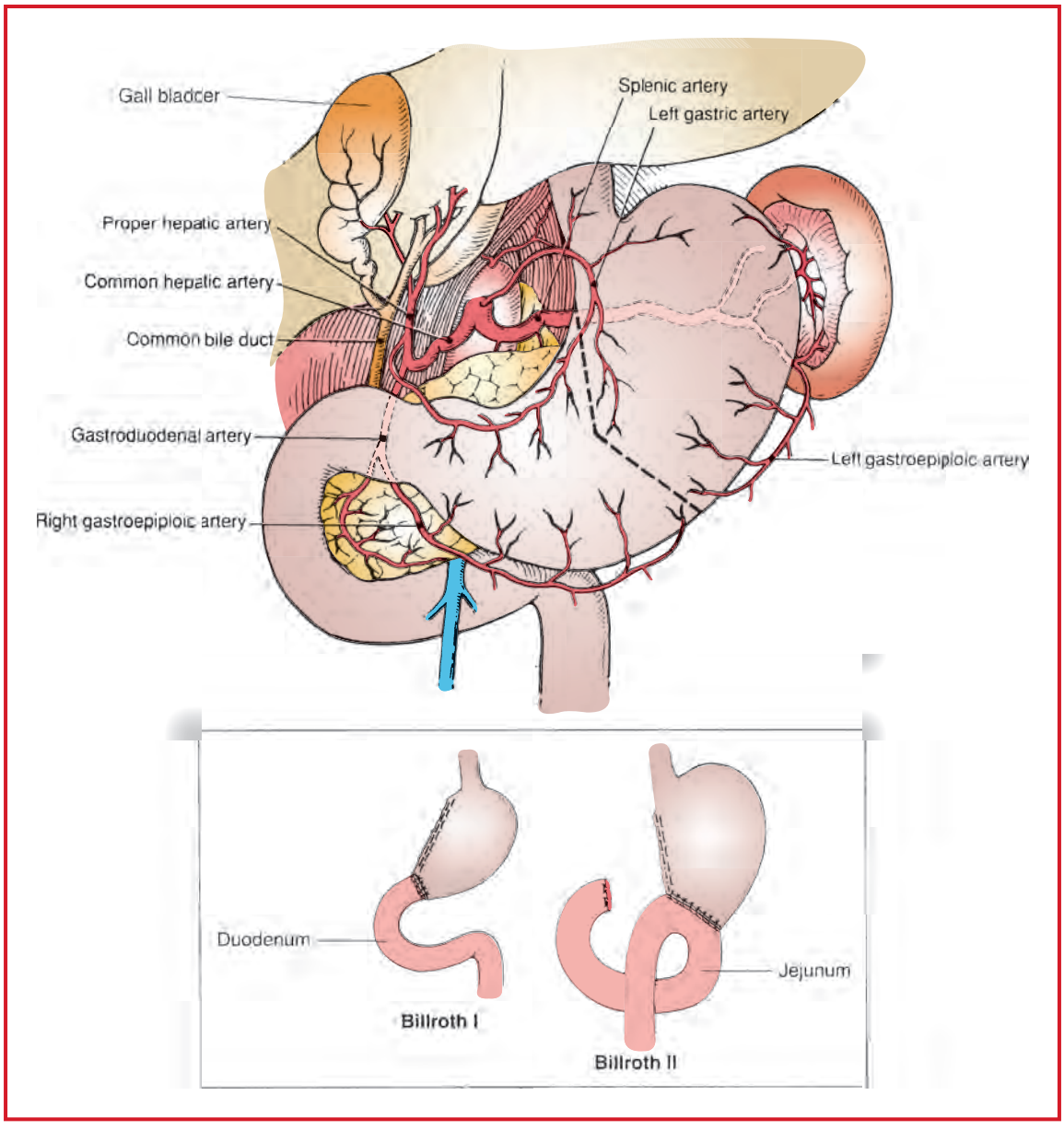


Figure 7.2-1. Anatomy of duodenostomy (Billroth I) and gastrojejunostomy (Billroth II). (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

The anastomoses may be stapled or sewn; then the abdomen is closed. Like many operations, gastric resections are increasingly performed using minimally invasive techniques. The **laparoscopic approach** has the advantages of diminished postoperative pain and quicker recovery, but longer operative time requires a pneumoperitoneum and reverse Trendelenburg positioning.

Tumors (usually adenocarcinoma) of the gastroesophageal (GE) junction are increasing in frequency and may be of either gastric or esophageal origin. If the tumor is associated with Barrett's esophagus (intestinal metaplasia in the esophagus, seen on endoscopy), surgery consists of either an **Ivor Lewis** with esophagogastric anastomosis in the

mediastinum (combined abdominal and transthoracic approach) or **transhiatal esophagectomy** (see p. 492) with gastroesophageal anastomosis in the neck. Bulky GE junction tumors that encompass the upper stomach will limit the extent of esophageal resection if stomach pull-up is used. Postop pain can be severe, and most patients will benefit from continuous epidural analgesia.

Usual preop diagnosis: Total gastrectomy: gastric cancers, GIST, gastroparesis; partial gastrectomy: gastric cancer; GIST, gastric ulcers.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Total Gastrectomy	Partial Gastrectomy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Upper midline or bilateral subcostal	Upper midline or right subcostal
Special instrumentation	Upper-hand or other self-retaining costal retractor	Upper-hand or other costal retractor
Antibiotics	1st (e.g., cefazolin) or 2nd (e.g., cefotetan) generation Cephalosporin iv	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h	1.5–2 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation required; NG suction	⇐
EBL	500+ mL, with potential for significantly more	100–500 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward or ICU	⇐
Mortality	0–22%	0–1.8% (may be > 10% if emergent)
Morbidity	Pulmonary complications: 15% VTE Reoperation: 0–5% Anastomotic leak Sepsis Wound infection Late anastomotic stricture	 ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–8	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Mostly > 50 years
Male:Female	Male predominance
Incidence	In the United States, people of Korean, Japanese, Latino, and African American race have a higher incidence than Caucasians.
Etiology	Gastric adenocarcinoma, gastrointestinal stromal tumors associated with: race, age, alcohol and tobacco use, geographic location, and gastric ulcers.
Associated conditions	Weight loss (common); anemia (common); malnutrition (common); VTE

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Peptic Ulcer Disease, p. 509.

Suggested Readings

1. Brennan MF: Total gastrectomy for cancer. In: Fisher JE, McDermott WD, Holmes CR, et al, eds. *Fischer's Mastery of Surgery*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2012, 1059–67.
2. Mulholland MW: Gastric neoplasms. In: Greenfield LJ, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 743–55.
3. Mullen JT: Subtotal gastrectomy for gastric cancer. In: Fisher JE, McDermott WD, Holmes CR, et al, eds. *Fischer's Mastery of Surgery*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2012, 1067–79.
4. Soybel DI, Zinner MJ: Stomach and duodenum, operative procedures. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* Vol. I, 11th edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2006, 377–416.

GASTRIC OR DUODENAL PERFORATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients who present with gastric or duodenal perforations require emergency surgery because they usually have peritonitis at presentation. The primary reason for perforations that present to the emergency room is ulcer disease most likely from *Helicobacter pylori* infection or from NSAID use. Another cause of gastric perforation is trauma, but that is not in the scope of this section. Simple closure with an omental patch, also called a **Graham's patch,** is the most commonly performed operation to treat a duodenal perforation. It is unusual to perform a definitive ulcer operation unless the patient has failed medical treatment regimens aimed at eradication of *H. pylori* infection along with proton pump inhibitors to suppress acid production.

Duodenal ulcers are most often caused by a benign process whereas gastric ulcer perforation without a history of NSAID use is suspicious of a malignant process. For this reason, surgeons may elect to treat a perforated gastric ulcer by resection. Occasionally in patients who have failed maximal medical management of their peptic ulcer disease and who are not systemically ill at the time of operation, some surgeons may perform **vagotomy and pyloroplasty** or **highly selective vagotomy** at the time of closure of the perforation.

Many surgeons routinely perform simple closure with **Graham's patch** via a **laparoscopic** approach. This requires a few trocars and a pneumoperitoneum and can be combined with abdominal washout and irrigation. If an open approach is used, an upper midline incision is used. The liver is retracted superiorly and the area of perforation identified. An NGT to suction minimizes ongoing leakage from the perforation and decompresses the stomach. Perforation of the stomach may be handled either by resection (see Gastric Resections, p. 502) or by biopsy and simple suture closure. Perforation of the duodenum is usually repaired by simple suturing of the site. Omentum often is used to buttress (Graham's patch) the area of closure of the stomach or duodenum. The abdomen is irrigated and closed.

Variant procedure or approaches: In certain patients, **nonoperative management** of perforated ulcer may be appropriate if they have had an upper GI study that shows an ulcer cavity and no extravasation. These patients are treated with NG decompression, antibiotics, and proton pump inhibitors. In general, this has a relatively high likelihood of success if the candidates are chosen well.

Usual preop diagnosis: Free air under diaphragm and peritonitis, perforated peptic ulcer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline or 3–4 trocars for laparoscopic approach
Special instrumentation	Costal retractor or laparoscopic equipment
Unique considerations	Patients usually have peritonitis.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	Cefotetan or extended spectrum PCN
Surgical time	1 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation required; NG suction
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → ward
Mortality	5–15%, largely dependent on patient population
Morbidity	Pneumonia Intraabdominal abscess Sepsis Wound infection Reperforation
Pain score	7 for open procedure, 3 for laparoscopic

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adult, more common in socially disadvantaged populations
Male:Female	Previous heavy male predominance still exists for duodenal ulcer, but there has been a large increase in incidence in gastric perforation in women > 65.
Incidence	Fairly common. Stable incidence, but with change in distribution, especially more elderly women.
Etiology	Peptic ulcer disease (PUD); nonsteroidal medications; malignancy (if gastric)
Associated conditions	Malignancy (if perforation is gastric); nonsteroidal medications; steroid use, especially during pulse therapy; other risk factors for PUD (e.g., alcoholism, smoking)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Peptic Ulcer Disease, p. 509.

Suggested Readings

1. Mulholland MW: Gastroduodenal ulceration. In: Greenfield LJ, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 722–35.
2. Soybel DI, Zinner MJ: Ulcer complications. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* Vol. I, 11th edition. McGraw-Hill Companies, New York: 2006, 377–416.

OPERATIONS FOR PEPTIC ULCER DISEASE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

These operations are not commonly performed by surgeons, and most recently trained general surgeons have never seen or performed an operation for PUD.

Description: Gastric ulcers are commonly associated with advanced age, and patients often have other medical problems, particularly cardiovascular and pulmonary. Two developments have transformed peptic ulcer disease (PUD) from a common surgical problem to a rare surgical emergency (e.g., perforation and bleeding typically in the chronically ill, hospitalized patient). These developments are (1) inhibitors of gastric acid secretion, and (2) understanding the role of gastric overgrowth by *Helicobacter pylori.* The first antisecretory drugs were H_2-receptor antagonists (e.g., cimetidine, ranitidine); however, proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) have proven to be more effective. The treatment of *H. pylori* consists of 14 d of a PPI, plus antibiotic therapy. The medical management of PUD has so revolutionized the treatment of this disease that few current graduating residents have seen or done the surgical procedures described below. All operations for PUD require exposure of the upper abdomen and may be performed using either an upper midline or a long, right subcostal incision. The choice of surgical procedure depends on a number of considerations, including whether it is performed emergently or electively; the reason for performing the procedure (common factors include bleeding, perforation, intractability, or gastric outlet obstruction); duration of symptoms; condition of the patient; and experience of the surgeon.

Vagotomy and antrectomy (V&A): This is the most extensive of the operations performed for PUD and generally is reserved for healthy patients with intractable symptoms. The esophageal hiatus is exposed either by taking down the lateral segment of the left lobe of the liver and reflecting it to the patient's right or by retracting this segment of the liver superiorly to gain exposure. The phrenoesophageal ligament is divided, and the anterior and posterior vagus nerves (there may be more than one of each) are identified by feel. Division of all vagal trunks at the esophageal hiatus is performed. The blood supply to the antrum is then divided, by dividing the right gastric and gastroepiploic vessels first. The gastrohepatic ligament is divided and the stomach elevated off its attachments to the transverse colon. The gastric antrum is resected, leaving the duodenum just beyond the pylorus and dividing the stomach just above the junction of the body with the antrum. Reconstruction may be as a **Billroth I** (stomach-to-duodenum) or **Billroth II** (stomach-to-jejunal loop; Fig. 7.2-1). The anastomosis may be stapled or hand sewn. Drains are not commonly used if a Billroth I is performed, but may be used in Billroth II because of the concern for a leak from the duodenal stump.

Vagotomy and pyloroplasty (V&P): This is the most commonly performed operation for PUD in the United States and is especially common for emergency operations. It is generally accepted to be simpler and safer to perform than V&A, but not as effective at preventing recurrence of ulcer disease. The abdominal incision and exposure of the hiatus to perform a vagotomy is the same as for V&A. After division of both vagal trunks (Fig. 7.2-2), a longitudinal incision is made through the pylorus. The incision is then sutured together transversely, completing the pyloroplasty.

Parietal cell vagotomy (PCV): This operation requires more meticulous exposure of the esophageal hiatus than that needed for a truncal vagotomy. The hiatus is exposed as above, and the main vagal trunks supplying the stomach are identified, but not divided. The stomach is retracted downward, and it is often helpful to divide a portion of the gastrocolic omentum to facilitate grasping the stomach. Nerve branches supplying the body of the stomach (Fig. 7.2-2) are individually divided and ligated with fine ligatures. Because the nerve fibers run with the blood vessels to the stomach, this necessarily involves division of the blood supply to the proximal lesser curvature of the stomach. This

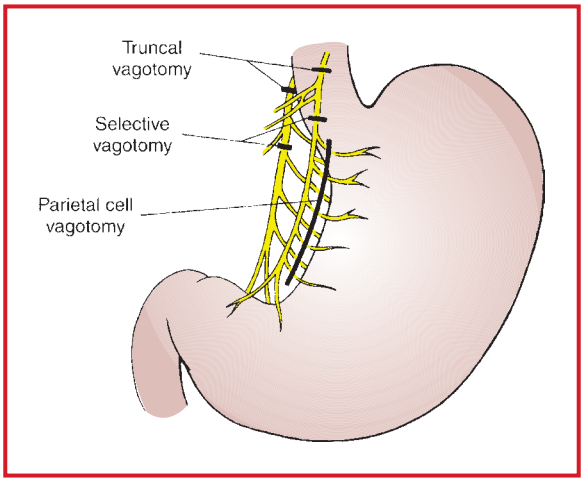


Figure 7.2-2. Types of vagotomy. Heavy lines indicate where vagal trunks are cut.

dissection is carried to the region of the "crow's foot" of the stomach, which is preserved. By denervating only the acid-producing portion of the stomach, while preserving innervation to the antrum, gastric acidity is diminished without significantly impairing gastric motility or emptying. A pyloroplasty is, therefore, not necessary. The operation is relatively tedious compared to the other procedures and usually is performed electively or, rarely, urgently if there is a recent perforation and minimal soilage. It can be recommended only for duodenal ulcer disease, not gastric ulcers. Side effects of this operation are generally less than with other ulcer operations.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Laparoscopic approaches** to the treatment of gastroduodenal ulcer are also being used.

Usual preop diagnosis: V&P: complications of duodenal ulcer disease (bleeding, perforation, and gastric outlet obstruction). V&A: duodenal and prepyloric ulcer disease. PCV: isolated duodenal ulcer disease; recent perforation and minimal peritoneal soilage.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	V&P	V&A	PCV
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Midline or long subcostal	⇐	Midline
Special instrumentation	Costal margin retractor	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefotetan 1–2 g iv	⇐	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–2 h	1.5–3 h	1.5–2.5 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation required for closure; NG suction	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 250 mL; greater for emergency surgeries	250–500 mL	< 250 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward	⇐	⇐
Mortality	0–2% (most series include emergencies)	0–1.6% (most series do not include emergencies)	0–0.4%
Morbidity	Dumping and diarrhea: 6–20% Recurrence: 4.9–12.3%	17–27% 0–2%	— 5–15% Impaired gastric emptying: 0.3% Necrosis, lesser curve: < 0.3% PE: rare
Pain score	6	6	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Adults
Male:Female	Male > female
Incidence	Declining
Etiology	Acid hypersecretion; abnormal mucosal permeability and repair mechanisms; *H. pylori*
Associated conditions	Gastrinoma (rare); hyperparathyroidism (rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: gastric resections; oversew gastric/duodenal perforation operations for peptic ulcer disease; duodenotomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for gastric surgery generally comprise two groups: (1) those presenting for emergency surgery following GI bleeding or perforation, and (2) those presenting with gastric carcinoma or elective treatment of PUD (rare). Patients in the first group are often hemodynamically unstable and require rapid preop assessment and appropriate fluid resuscitation. It is prudent to consider full-stomach precautions in both patient groups (see p. B-5).

Respiratory	Patients with GI bleeding are at ↑ risk for aspiration of blood and gastric contents. If this has occurred, patient may have significant respiratory insufficiency (in urgent need of tracheal intubation for "protection" of airway). **Tests:** CXR; consider ABG.
Cardiovascular	Hypovolemia may be severe due to N/V, diarrhea, poor po intake, peritonitis, or GI blood loss. Sx include ↓ skin turgor, ↑ HR, ↓ BP, ↓ UO. Correct hypovolemia before induction of anesthesia. **Tests:** Orthostatic vital signs; ECG, if indicated from H&P
Renal	GI fluid loss can lead to renal and electrolyte abnormalities. **Tests:** Consider electrolytes; BUN; Cr.
Hematologic	Misleading ↑ Hct 2° GI fluid loss may be present; patients with GI bleeding will likely be anemic and may have a coagulopathy. Correct coagulopathy and anemia before induction, if possible. **Tests:** CBC with Plts, PT/PTT if coagulopathy suspected
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg. Consider H_2-antagonist (ranitidine 50 mg iv slowly), metoclopramide (10 mg iv 1 h preop), and Na citrate (30 mL po 10 min preop).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for postop analgesia (if hemodynamically stable and no coagulopathy). If postop epidural analgesia is planned, insertion of catheter prior to anesthetic induction is helpful to establish correct placement in the epidural space (accomplished by injecting 5–7 mL of 1% lidocaine via the epidural catheter, eliciting a segmental block).

Induction	The patient with gastric disease or upper GI bleeding is often at risk for pulmonary aspiration, and the trachea should be intubated with the patient awake or after rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure (see p. B-5). If patient is clinically hypovolemic, restore intravascular volume (colloid, crystalloid, or blood products) before induction, and titrate induction dose of sedative/hypnotic agents.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Balanced anesthesia with inhalational agents and/or propofol infusion, and opiates. Maintain muscle relaxation based on nerve stimulator response. Discuss with surgeon the need for postop NG tube. If not needed, place OG tube to evacuate stomach contents intraop. **Combined epidural/GA:** A local anesthetic (2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine) can be injected into a thoracic (2–4 mL) or lumbar (3–6 mL q 60–90 min) epidural catheter to provide both anesthesia and optimal surgical exposure (contracted bowel and profound muscle relaxation). A continuous infusion of local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine at 2–5 mL/h [lumbar]; 2–4 mL/h [thoracic]), may enhance hemodynamic stability, compared to an intermittent bolus. Be prepared to

Maintenance (cont'd)	treat ↓ BP with fluid and vasopressors. GA is administered to supplement regional anesthesia and for amnesia. Systemic sedatives should be minimized during epidural opiate administration as they increase the likelihood of postop respiratory depression. Treat ↓ BP with fluid and vasopressors. If epidural opiates are used for postop analgesia, a loading dose (e.g., hydromorphone 0.6–1.0 mg [lumbar]; 0.4–0.6 mg [thoracic]) may be administered at least 1 h before conclusion of surgery.	
Emergence	The decision to extubate at the end of surgery depends on the patient's underlying cardiopulmonary status and extent of the surgical procedure. Patient should be hemodynamically stable, normothermic, cooperative, and fully reversed from any muscle relaxants and without pulmonary compromise before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large third-space losses IV: 14–16 ga ×1–2 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer	T&S, consider T&C for 2–4 U PRBC. Plts, FFP, and cryoprecipitate should be administered according to lab tests (Plt count, PT, PTT, DIC screen, thromboelastography). Expect higher fluid requirements if epidural used (2° sympathectomy → vasodilation). Maintaining euvolemia is important goal.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) UO ± Arterial line ± CVP	Consider others as indicated by patient's status. Prevent hypothermia: Use forced air warmer, fluid warmer, and warming blanket, warm room temperature, keeping patient covered until ready for prep, etc.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Acute hemorrhage Hypoxemia	 2° abdominal packs →↓FRC

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (see p. B-6) Hemorrhage VTE (see p. B-8) Ileus Hypothermia
Pain management	Epidural analgesics (p. C-3) PCA (p. C-3)
Tests	CXR if CVL placed periop

Suggested Readings

1. Nyhus LM: Selective vagotomy, antrectomy, and gastroduodenostomy for the treatment of duodenal ulcer. In: Fisher JE, McDermott WD, Holmes CR, et al, eds. *Fischer's Mastery of Surgery*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2012.
2. Schwaitzberg, SD, Baily RW, Martinez JM, et al: Selective vagotomy and pyloroplasty. In: Fisher JE, McDermott WD, Holmes CR, et al, eds. *Fischer's Mastery of Surgery*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2012, 1012–9.
3. Soybel DI, Zinner MJ: Ulcer complications. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* Vol. I, 11th edition. McGraw-Hill Companies, New York: 2006, 377–416.

OPEN OPERATIONS FOR MORBID OBESITY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Several studies have demonstrated the superiority of laparoscopic operations for weight loss over open operations (see p. 612). In selected patients (e.g., those with previous upper abdominal surgery [see p. 514]), however, open procedures may be appropriate. Open techniques devised to promote weight loss are of two fundamental types: (1) **restrictive procedures,** which work by decreasing the size of the gastric pouch, thereby limiting the amount of food that can be consumed at one time; and (2) **malabsorptive procedures,** which work by bypassing most of the small bowel and creating a state of chronic malabsorption. Of these two general types of procedures, the partitioning procedures may be less effective at promoting weight loss than are the malabsorptive procedures, but are much more popular because they are associated with far fewer serious side effects.

The **Roux-en-Y gastric bypass** (Fig. 7.2-4) is the most common weight loss operation in the United States. The abdomen is entered through an upper midline incision, and the esophagogastric junction is exposed either by retracting the liver superiorly or by taking down the ligamentous attachments of the lateral segment of the left lobe of the liver and retracting this down and to the patient's right. The upper stomach is mobilized, and two rows of staples are used to partition the stomach into a small proximal and large distal pouch. A Roux segment of jejunum is then anastomosed to the small proximal pouch to provide drainage. An NG tube is placed, and the abdomen is closed with drains.

Vertical banded gastroplasty has been replaced by the adjustable gastric band. The abdomen is entered similarly to the gastric bypass operation. The pars flaccida is opened by dividing the gastrohepatic ligament. The base of the right crus is identified, and a tunnel behind the stomach is created. The band is then placed and secured. Silastic tubing from the band is then attached to a port placed in the subcutaneous tissue.

An alternative open procedure is the biliopancreatic diversion with duodenal switch, which involves a longitudinal gastric resection with a proximal small bowel bypass. Another alternative open procedure is a **sleeve gastrectomy,** where a gastric tube is created from the gastroesophageal junction to the pylorus over a 36°F dilator. The remainder of the stomach, based on the greater curvature, is resected. Both of these operations are gaining popularity in the bariatric surgery community.

Usual preop diagnosis: Morbid obesity (> 100 lbs above ideal body weight, 100% over ideal body weight, or BMI > 40), generally in combination with obesity-related comorbidities (e.g., obstructive sleep apnea, hyperlipidemia, osteoarthritis, diabetes, respiratory insufficiency, CHF, hypertension, CAD)

Variant procedure or approaches: The **jejunoileal (JI) bypass** is of historical interest (Fig 7.2-5). One of the early bariatric operations in the 1950s, the JI bypass was constructed by connecting the proximal jejunum to the terminal ileum. This procedure has been largely abandoned because of the many associated complications, including cirrhosis,

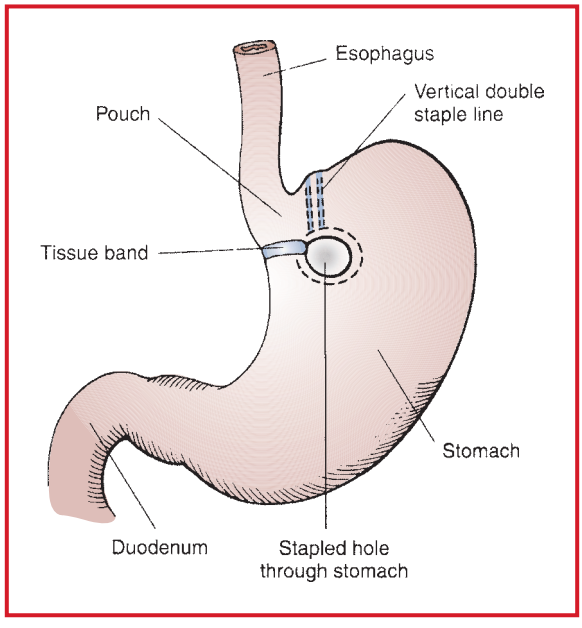


Figure 7.2-3. Vertical banded gastroplasty.

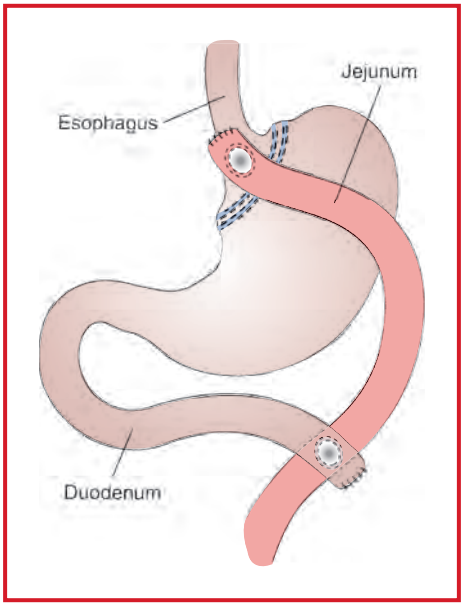


Figure 7.2-4. Proximal Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

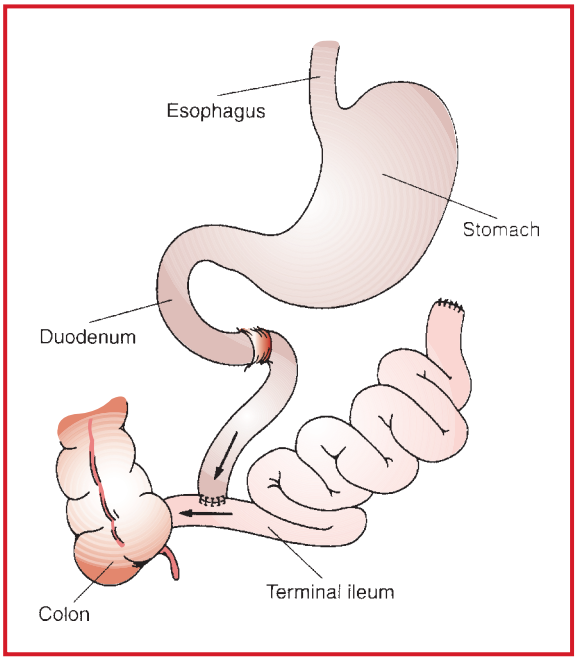


Figure 7.2-5. Schematic representation of jejunoileal by pass. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

osteoporosis, kidney stones, and intractable diarrhea. Another alternative open procedure is a **sleeve gastrectomy** where a gastric tube is created from the gastroesophageal junction to the pylorus over a 36°F dilator. The remainder of the stomach, based on the greater curvature is resected. This procedure, in its laparoscopic approach, is growing in popularity worldwide.

Usual preop diagnosis: Morbid obesity (> 100 lbs above ideal body weight, 100% over ideal body weight, or BMI > 40), generally in combination with obesity-related comorbidities (e.g., obstructive sleep apnea, hyperlipidemia, osteoarthritis, diabetes, respiratory insufficiency, CHF, hypertension, CAD).

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (Sleeve gastrectomy or Roux-en-Y)	
Position	Supine (Fig. 7.2-6) with reverse Trendelenburg
Incision	Midline
Special instrumentation	Large OR tables; heavy-duty retractors; special stapling devices
Unique considerations	Prophylactic cholecystectomy often advocated in symptomatic patients. Pneumatic compression boots may not be large enough; heparin (5000 U sc 2 h preop, then q 12 h) used commonly. ↑↑ aspiration risk + potentially difficult airway
Antibiotics	± Cefoxitin 2 g iv
Surgical time	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Anticipate 30 min closure time; NG suction
EBL	< 500 mL
Postop care	Postop ventilation may be necessary; VTE precautions.
Mortality	0.5–1.6%
Morbidity	Wound infection: 4–8% Anastomotic leak: 3% Dehiscence: 1.6% PE: 1–1.6%
Pain score	7

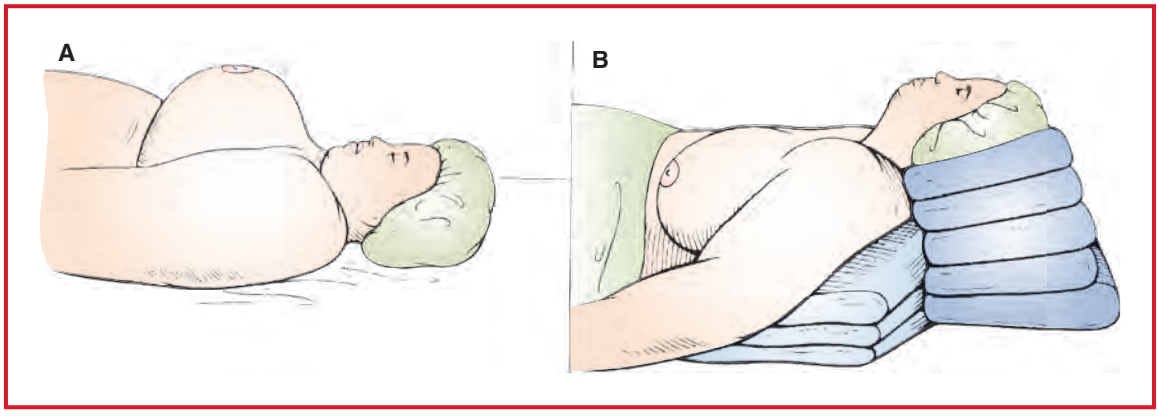


Figure 7.2-6. **A:** In standard supine position, the atlantooccipital gap of morbidly obese patient is obliterated by fat, and access for laryngoscope is hindered by large breasts. **B:** By elevating the shoulders and occiput so that head is in the "sniffing" position, airway access is greatly facilitated.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adult
Male:Female	< 1:1 for disease but 80% of patients who undergo surgery are female
Incidence	20% U.S. population considered morbidly obese
Etiology	Multifactorial
Associated conditions	Sleep apnea ± CO_2 retention; CAD/CHF/cardiomyopathy; pulmonary HTN/systemic HTN; diabetes; unusually high risk of DVT and PE; GERD

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Obesity is associated with many chronic medical problems. Morbidity and mortality rise sharply with increasing age and BMI. Obesity, and length of exposure to obesity, increase the risk of hospital admission and lengthen hospital stay. Medical comorbidities must be optimized before elective bariatric surgery. Evaluate any patient who has had previous bariatric surgery for metabolic changes that can include protein, vitamin, iron, and calcium deficiencies.

Review a list of all current medications the patient is taking, including nonprescription appetite suppressors and diet drugs. Many of these drugs can have important side effects. For example, the combination of phentermine and fenfluramine ("phen-fen"), which is no longer prescribed in the United States, is associated with persistent, serious, heart and lung problems. Another weight loss medication, sibutramine, works in the brain by inhibiting the reuptake of norepinephrine, serotonin, and dopamine, producing a feeling of "anorexia," which limits food intake. Sibutramine has been implicated as a cause of dysrhythmias and hypertension. Orlistat blocks digestion and absorption of dietary fat by binding lipases in the gastrointestinal tract and can cause deficiencies in fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K). A reduction in vitamin K levels can increase the anticoagulation effects of Coumadin (also see Anesthetic Considerations for Laparoscopic Bariatric Surgery, p. 613).

Respiratory	Increased O_2 consumption and CO_2 production (e.g., ↑ basal metabolic rate). ↓ chest-wall compliance (↓ 20–60%) with normal lung compliance. ↓ ERV and FRC; so tidal breathing may fall within the range of closing capacity → V/Q abnormalities. Supine position further ↓ FRC → worsening hypoxemia. ↑ MV is required to remain normocarbic. There is a normal response to CO_2 unless patient develops the obesity hypoventilation (Pickwickian) syndrome (↑ $PaCO_2$, ↓ PaO_2, loss of hypercarbic drive, sleep apnea, hypersomnolence, polycythemia, pulmonary HTN, CHF). **Tests:** CXR; PFTs (FVC, FEV_1, $MMEF_{25–75}$ ± bronchodilators; room-air ABG)
Cardiovascular	Blood volume and CO ↑ with increasing weight. HTN is very common (use correct size BP cuff). LV dysfunction may be present; patient unable to increase CO or tolerate ↑ blood volume. Pulmonary HTN may be present in OSA. Obesity is a risk factor for CAD and sudden death. Anticipate problems with vascular access. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P. (Patient with SOB may require ECHO for LV function, as SOB can have a cardiac or pulmonary etiology.)
Endocrine	Glucose intolerance and diabetes mellitus (DM) common. **Tests:** Fasting glucose
Hepatic	Liver function is often abnormal. Drug metabolism can be significantly affected. Combined with altered pharmacokinetics, many drugs (e.g., midazolam and vecuronium) may have unpredictably prolonged action.
Gastrointestinal	↑ intraabdominal pressure, gastric volume, and acidity, with ↑ incidence of hiatal hernia, make this patient population at risk for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents. Particular risk in patients with previous restrictive bariatric surgery.

Airway	Obese patients can have airway problems including frequent difficult mask ventilation. Careful airway examination (e.g., mouth opening, Mallampati classification, thyromental distance, neck ROM) is paramount. Awake fiberoptic intubation should be considered if difficult airway access is anticipated. Establish availability of OR table large enough to accommodate morbidly obese patient. Special tables are now available.
Hematologic	Polycythemia may occur 2° chronic hypoxemia. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedatives are best avoided for patients with OSA. A small dose of iv midazolam (0.5–1.0 mg) may be appropriate for the especially anxious patient. In the bariatric patient, intramuscular medications can be erroneously injected into adipose tissues. Consider anticholinergics if performing awake fiberoptic intubation (glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv 30 min preop). Consider full-stomach precautions (p. B-5): metoclopramide (10 mg iv 60 min preop), H_2-antagonist (ranitidine 50 mg iv), and nonparticulate antacid (3 M Na citrate) 30 mL, 10 min prior to induction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for postop analgesia in open surgeries. If using a combined anesthetic approach, placement of an epidural catheter should be accomplished before induction, with the patient in the sitting position. A bilateral sensory block (using 5–7 mL 2% lidocaine) will help confirm correct placement of the catheter within the epidural space. Verification of placement is particularly important in this population because regional anesthesia in the obese patient may be technically more difficult.

Induction	Patients are at risk for aspiration of gastric contents and should be intubated either awake (p. B-5) or after rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure. Mask ventilation and ET intubation may be difficult (2° rapid desaturation, head elevated laryngoscopy position, redundant tissue). Following successful intubation and induction of anesthesia, an OG/NG tube should be placed and the stomach contents suctioned. Lipophilic drugs will have a greater volume of distribution, necessitating increased dosage.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). Obese patients metabolize volatile anesthetics to a greater extent than their nonobese counterparts. **Combined epidural/GA:** A local anesthetic (2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine) can be injected into a thoracic (3–5 mL) or lumbar (5–10 mL q 60 min) epidural catheter to provide both anesthesia and improved surgical exposure (contracted bowel and profound muscle relaxation). A continuous infusion of local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine at 5–10 mL/h [lumbar], 3–5 mL/h [thoracic]) may enhance hemodynamic stability. The dose of local anesthetic given via epidural catheter should be decreased to 75% of normal dose. Be prepared to treat ↓ BP with fluid and vasopressors (ephedrine 5–10 mg iv, phenylephrine 50–100 mcg iv). GA is administered to supplement regional anesthesia and for amnesia. Sedative drugs (opiates, benzodiazepines, etc.) should be minimized in the presence of epidural opiates, as they increase the likelihood of postop respiratory depression. If epidural opiates are used for postop analgesia, a loading dose (e.g., hydromorphone 0.6–1.0 mg with lumbar catheter and 0.4–0.6 mg for thoracic) should be administered 1–2 h before end of surgery.
Emergence	The decision to extubate at the end of open surgery depends on patient's underlying cardiopulmonary status and the extent of the surgical procedure. Patients should be hemodynamically stable, normothermic, alert, cooperative, and fully reversed from any muscle relaxants before extubation. Elective ICU admission for postop care may be appropriate. Following laparoscopic surgery, in contrast, patients typically are extubated and admitted to PACU.

Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large fluid loss. IV: 14–16 ga ×1–2 NS/LR @ 10–15 mL/kg/h T&S for 2 U PRBC. Warm fluids.	Third-space losses greatly exceed blood loss. Guide fluid management by UO, filling pressure. Euvolemia is an important goal.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) UO ± Arterial line	Invasive monitoring as clinically indicated. Arterial line if noninvasive BP unreliable 2° extremity size.
Positioning	Supine position = ↓FRC ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes * **NB:** Avoid Trendelenburg	Supine positioning → ↓ lung volumes, which may ↑ V/Q mismatch → hypoxemia. This is exacerbated by use of the Trendelenburg position, which usually is not well tolerated by morbidly obese patients.
Complications	Hypoxemia 2° ↓FRC	100% O_2 → absorption atelectasis

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypoxemia Hypercarbia VTE (see p. B-8) Atelectasis	Recover patient in sitting position to improve ventilatory mechanics. Give supplemental O_2. Verify VTE prophylaxis.
Pain management	Epidural analgesia: hydromorphone (0.6–1.0 mg with lumbar cath and 0.4–0.6 mg for thoracic cath load then 0.1–0.3 mg/h infusion) PCA (p. C-3)	If epidural is used for postop analgesia, Pain Service management recommended.
Tests	ABG CXR	Others as clinically indicated. CXR for central line placement

Suggested Readings

1. Austrheim-Smith I, Brethauer SA, Rogula T, Wolfe BM: Evolution of bariatric minimally invasive surgery. In: Schauer PR, Schirmer BD, Brethauer SA, eds. *Minimally invasive bariatric surgery.* Springer, New York: 2007, 17–24.
2. Brodsky JB, Lemmens HJM, Brock-Utne JG, et al: Morbid obesity and tracheal intubation. *Anesth Analg* 2002; 94:732–6.
3. Brodsky JB, Lemmens HJM: Anesthetic drugs and bariatric surgery. *Expert Rev Neurother* 2006; 6(7):1107–13.
4. Brodsky JB, Lemmens HJM: Regional anesthesia and obesity. *Obes Surg* 2007; 17(9):1146–9.
5. Brolin RE: Bariatric surgery and long-term control of morbid obesity. *JAMA* 2002; 288(22):2793–6.
6. Buchwald H, Buchwald JN: Evolution of operative procedures for the management of morbid obesity 1950–2000. *Obes Surg* 2002; 12(5):705–17.
7. Choban PS, Jackson B, Poplawski S, Bistolarides P: Bariatric surgery for morbid obesity: why, who, when, how, where, and then what? *Cleve Clin J Med* 2002; 69(11):897–903.
8. Clements RH: Open gastric bypass for morbid obesity. In: Fisher JE, McDermott WD, Holmes CR, et al, eds. *Fischer's Mastery of Surgery*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2012, 1012–9.
9. DeMaria EJ: Morbid Obesity. In: Greenfield LJ, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 736–42.
10. Livingston EH: obesity and its surgical management. *Am J Surg* 2002; 184(2):103–13.
11. Ogunnaike BO, Jones SB, Jones DB, Provost D, Whitten CW: Anesthetic considerations for bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2002; 95(6):1793–805.
12. Perilla V, Sollazzi L, Bozza P, et al: The effects of the reverse Trendelenburg position on respiratory mechanics and blood gases in morbidly obese patients during bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 91:1520–5.

GASTROSTOMY PLACEMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **gastrostomy** is a tube placed through the abdominal wall directly into the stomach. Such tubes can be used for gastric decompression or for feeding, and they may be permanent or temporary. Patients undergoing gastrostomy placement often have neurologic impairment that compromises their ability to handle oral secretions and increases their risk of aspiration. **Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG),** in contrast to the other techniques, most commonly is performed using iv sedation and local anesthesia.

Variant procedure or approaches: The traditional **Stamm gastrostomy** usually is placed at the time of a **laparotomy** performed for another purpose; or it may be performed through a separate, small laparotomy incision in patients in whom endoscopic placement is not possible for technical reasons. The incision may be upper midline or transverse directly over the stomach. The anterior wall of the stomach is identified, and two purse-string sutures are placed in the stomach around the site where the tube will enter. The gastrostomy tube is introduced through the abdominal wall directly over the intended site of entry into the stomach. A small hole is made in the stomach in the center of the purse-string sutures, the tube is introduced into the stomach, and the purse-strings are tied securely around the tube. The wound is then closed. GA usually is preferred, but the operation may be performed under local anesthesia in thin patients.

The **Janeway gastrostomy,** a technical modification, also requires a laparotomy. The greater curvature of the stomach is identified and a stapler placed across a portion of this, creating a tube that arises from the main body of the stomach. The staple line may be oversewn, and then the end of the tube is brought through the abdominal wall and matured to the skin as a small stoma. This allows for permanent access to the stomach with removal of the tube between feedings and is useful in patients with long-term dependence on gastrostomy access. The Janeway gastrostomy is rarely used, although young patients with neurologic impairment who are expected to need lifetime gastrostomy feeding are good candidates.

For a **PEG,** the stomach is intubated endoscopically and the gastric and abdominal walls punctured under endoscopic guidance. The gastrostomy tube is introduced through the mouth and passed through the stomach and abdominal wall from inside out. In most centers, this has become the most common technique of gastrostomy placement due to its simplicity and because, in many patients, it can be performed under local anesthesia with MAC. Previous gastric operations may make endoscopic placement difficult or dangerous, as may some obstructing lesions of the esophagus or pharynx. To avoid damage to the back wall of the stomach, the anesthesiologist may be asked to inject air forcefully into the stomach.

Usual preop diagnosis: Temporary gastrostomies often are used after major abdominal surgery as an alternative to NG suction. Percutaneous gastrostomies often are placed in patients with advanced malignancy and intestinal obstruction or inadequate oral intake, and in patients with neurologic impairment and difficulty eating.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Stamm	Janeway	PEG
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Midline or transverse	⇐	Puncture
Special instrumentation	None	⇐	Endoscope, percutaneous gastrostomy kit
Antibiotics	± Cefazolin 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	45 min	1 h	0.5–1 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation for closure	⇐	None
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Wound infection: 2.1–9% Hemorrhage: 0.9–1.1% Aspiration pneumonia: 2.2% Failure to function: 2.2%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	– ⇐ 1.6% –
Pain score	4–5	5	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages, though with peaks in infancy and the elderly
Male:Female	~1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	See Preop Diagnosis, above
Associated conditions	Gastrostomy placed at time of laparotomy, when NG drainage is anticipated for prolonged period. For feeding in the neurologically impaired or in those with complex upper digestive difficulties. Advanced malignancy (for either feeding or palliative decompression).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ostomy Procedures in Intestinal Surgery, p. 527.

Suggested Readings

1. Ozmen MN, Akhan O: Percutaneous radiologic gastrostomy. *Eur J Radiol* 2002; 43(3):186–95.
2. Pennington C: To PEG or not to PEG. *Clin Med* 2002; 2(3):250–5.

CHAPTER

7.3 Intestinal Surgery

SURGEONS

Jeffrey A. Norton, MD
Harry A. Oberhelman, MD, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Kevin A. Malott, MD

DUODENOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **duodenotomy** is performed to ligate a bleeding vessel at the base of a duodenal ulcer or to perform some procedure on the ampulla of Vater or the duct of Santorini or to remove a low-grade duodenal tumor. It is important, therefore, to be familiar with the anatomy of the proximal duodenum in relation to the major and minor pancreatic duct orifices (Fig. 7.3-1). The duodenotomy may be made longitudinally or transversely, depending on the surgeon's preference. A transverse opening allows one to close the duodenotomy without tension; however, it must be made very accurately for the purpose of exposure. Therefore, a longitudinal duodenotomy is preferred. With mobilization it can be closed transversely. Bleeding vessels at the base of an ulcer must be secured with suture ligatures. Care must be taken to avoid perforating the duodenum when performing a sphincterotomy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Duodenal ulcer; impacted common duct stone; chronic pancreatitis 2° alcoholism, gallstones, pancreatic divisum, or other obstruction of the main pancreatic duct, benign ampullary tumor, duodenal neuroendocrine tumor.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal or subcostal
Unique considerations	Magnifying glasses, if operation involves lesser pancreatic sphincter
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Secure closure of duodenum without tension usually two layers
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	± NG decompression
Mortality	< 0.5%
Morbidity	Duodenal leak: < 2% Postop pancreatitis: < 3%
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Duodenal ulcer; impacted common duct stone; villous tumors of ampulla; chronic pancreatitis, pancreatic divisum
Associated conditions	Bleeding duodenal ulcer (50–60%); chronic pancreatitis (20–25%); impacted common duct stones (10–15%), tumor (2%)

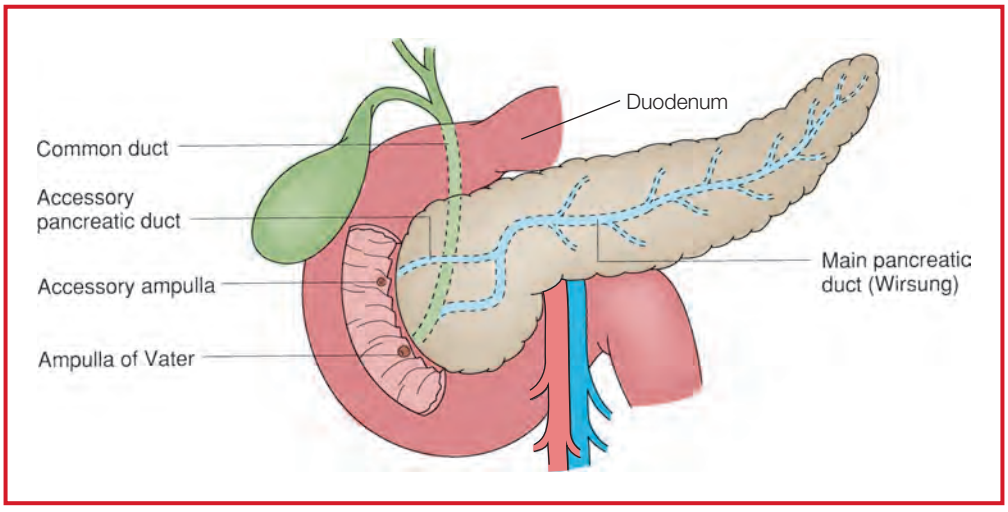


Figure 7.3-1. Anatomy of pancreatic ductal system. In 30% of patients, the accessory duct ends blindly. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Peptic Ulcer Disease, Stomach Surgery, p. 527.

Suggested Reading

1. Cisco RM, Norton JA: Surgery for gastrinoma. *Adv Surg* 2007; 41:65–76.

OPEN APPENDECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Open appendectomy** is performed for appendicitis or suspected appendicitis; however, it has been largely replaced by the **laparoscopic** approach (see p. 611). The negative laparotomy rate has been reduced by the judicious use of preoperative CT examination. Through a RLQ (**McBurney**) or right paramedian incision, the cecum is exposed and pulled into the wound (Fig. 7.3-2). The appendix is then delivered through the wound; and the meso-appendix is clamped, cut, and ligated. The appendix is removed by crushing, ligating, and then transecting the base. The appendiceal stump may be invaginated into the wall of the cecum or left alone. In some instances it may be easier to divide the base of the appendix before delivering the appendix into the wound. The wound should be left open and soft drains used in cases of perforated appendix. In children, the appendix may be inverted and allowed to slough off internally. In laparoscopic procedures, the appendix is usually transected with an endoscopic stapling device. This method is also being used in open procedures.

Variant procedure or approach: Laparoscopic appendectomy (see p. 606).

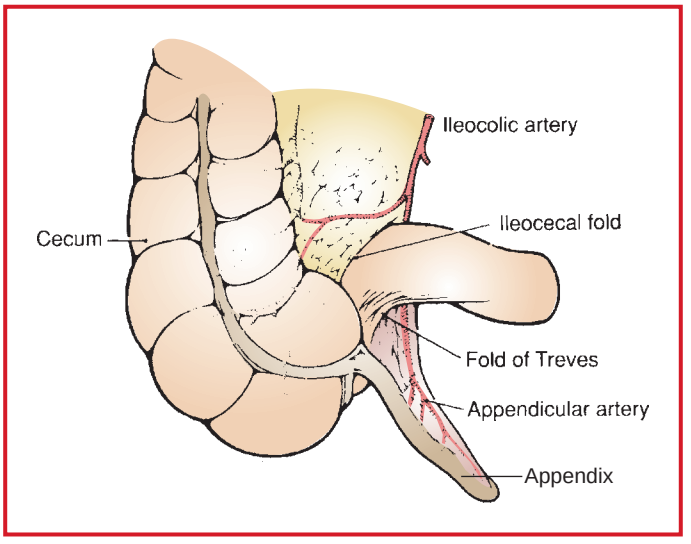


Figure 7.3-2. Relevant anatomy for appendectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Appendicitis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	RLQ (McBurney's) or right paramedian
Unique considerations	Variation in stump closure; NG tube if prolonged ileus expected.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1 h
Closing considerations	Skin wound should not be closed when appendix is perforated. Drain in presence of well-defined abscess cavity.
EBL	< 75 mL
Postop care	Wound care when left open
Mortality	Perforated: 2% Nonperforated: < 0.1%
Morbidity	Pelvic, subphrenic, or intraabdominal abscess (perforation): 20% Wound abscess: < 5% Fecal fistula: < 1% Wound hematoma: < 0.5% Ileus: Variable
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/15 persons
Etiology	Obstruction (80–90%); fecaliths (75%); carcinoid tumors (< 5%)
Associated conditions	None

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Consideration following Excision of Meckel's diverticulum, below p. 524.

Suggested Readings

1. Nguyen NT, Hinojosa MW, Fayad C, et al: Laparoscopic surgery is associated with a lower incidence of venous thromboembolism compared with open surgery. *Ann Surg* 2007; 246:1021–7.
2. See Suggested Readings following Excision of Meckel's diverticulum, pp. 525–526.

EXCISION OF MECKEL'S DIVERTICULUM

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Meckel's diverticulum is a true congenital diverticulum, usually arising within 100 cm of the ileocecal valve. It was first described by Meckel in 1809. Excision of a Meckel's diverticulum is indicated for bleeding, obstruction, perforation, inflammation, intussusception, and when there is a palpable mass near the base of the diverticulum. Ectopic mucosa is present in roughly 50% of symptomatic patients, with gastric mucosa the most frequent. After entering the peritoneal cavity, the distal ileum, along with the diverticulum, is delivered into the wound. The diverticulum is excised, and the wound is closed in two layers. Following excision of the diverticulum, care must be taken not to narrow the bowel lumen during closure. If a diagnosis can be made preop, a laparoscopic approach may be used (see Laparoscopic Bowel Resection p. 602).

Usual preop diagnosis: Meckel's diverticulum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal or RLQ (McBurney's)
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
EBL	< 100 mL
Mortality	< 0.5%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Wound infection: 5% Pulmonary complication: < 5% Anastomotic leak: < 1%
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	< 40 yr
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	0.3–2.5%
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Exomphalos; esophageal atresia; anorectal atresia; gross malformations of CNS or CV system

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: open appendectomy; excision of Meckel's diverticulum)

PREOPERATIVE

This patient population is generally fit and healthy, apart from their acutely presenting illness. These patients are at risk for aspiration pneumonitis due to delayed gastric emptying, ileus, or frank bowel obstruction → full stomach precautions are appropriate. Surgery for appendicitis is one of the most common nonobstetric procedures performed on the pregnant patient (~1/1500 pregnancies). These patients often are more ill at the time of diagnosis because early symptoms may be attributed to pregnancy, and the gravid uterus may hinder an accurate abdominal exam. Anesthesia management for the gravid appendicitis patient mirrors that of the nongravid patient (full-stomach precautions) with consideration of the maternal physiologic changes of pregnancy and the effects of anesthesia on the fetus and uteroplacental perfusion (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cervical Cerclage, Obstetric Surgery, p. 853.)

Respiratory	Respiratory impairment may occur 2° the acute abdominal pain and splinting. Tachypnea and hyperpnea can be heralding Sx of appendiceal perforation and sepsis. Patients with an acute abdomen should be treated as if they have full stomachs. Consider administration of metoclopramide (10 mg iv), H_2-antagonist (ranitidine 50 mg iv), and Na citrate 0.3 M 30 mL po. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	May be dehydrated from fever, emesis, and ↓ oral intake → ↑ HR + ↑ BP (2° pain), or ↓ BP (sepsis, hypovolemia). Assess volume status appropriately and hydrate adequately prior to proceeding with anesthetic induction. **Tests:** ECG, if indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Patient typically has abdominal pain with N/V. Muscular resistance to palpation of abdominal wall frequently parallels the severity of the inflammatory process. With spreading peritoneal irritation (as with perforation), patient will develop abdominal distension and paralytic ileus. Electrolyte abnormalities are common 2° N/V. **Tests:** Electrolytes

Hematologic	Moderate leukocytosis (10,000–18,000) with moderate left shift. Hemoconcentration is probable if patient is dehydrated. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5). Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv. Opiate medications (morphine 0.03–0.15 mg/kg iv) often delayed or minimized until diagnosis made. Opiate analgesics not contraindicated during the evaluation of an acute abdomen including appendicitis.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, with rapid-sequence iv induction, followed by ET intubation (see full-stomach precautions, p. B-5). If systemic sepsis is absent, hydration is adequate, the patient is cooperative, and high abdominal exploration is unlikely, then regional anesthesia may be considered for open procedures.

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia (see p. B-5). Restore intravascular volume prior to anesthetic induction if patient is hypovolemic.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3), without N_2O. Evacuate stomach with OG or NG tube. Maintain muscle relaxation based on nerve stimulator response.	
Emergence	Patient should be extubated awake after return of airway reflexes.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Others, as indicated by patient's status.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Sepsis	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Sepsis (possible with appendiceal rupture)	Adequate antibiotic coverage
	Paralytic ileus	
	Atelectasis	Adequate pain control, incentive spirometry, early ambulation
	PONV (see p. B-6)	
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-5).	
Tests	As indicated clinically.	

Suggested Readings

1. Morgan EG, Mikhail MS, Murray MJ: *Clinical Anesthesiology,* 4th edition. Lange Medical Books, Stamford: 2006, 919–20.
2. Rosen MA: Management of anesthesia for the pregnant surgical patient. *Anesthesiology* 1999; 91:1159–63.

3. Way LW, Doherty GM, eds: *Current Surgical Diagnosis Treatment.* Appleton & Lange, Stamford: 1994, 610–13.
4. Zani A, Eatons S, Rees CM, Pierro A: Incidentally detected Meckel diverticulum: to resect or not to resect? *Ann Surg* 2008; 247:276–81.

ENTEROSTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Enterostomy** is performed for stenting the small intestine with a long tube for feeding purposes, for bypassing small or large bowel obstructions, and as a permanent or temporary procedure following proctocolectomy. An intestinal tube is either purse-stringed into the small bowel and brought through the abdominal wall or the intestine itself is brought to the exterior and fashioned into a stoma. Different tubes are used for feeding, according to surgeon's preference. After purse-stringing the tube in the bowel, the seromuscular layer of the jejunum is sutured over the tube for a distance of 3–4 cm before exiting through the abdominal wall. This is called a Witsell feeding jejunostomy. The **Brooke ileostomy** is created by bringing a 2-inch segment of ileum through an abdominal wall stab wound. The ileum is folded back on itself and sutured to the skin edge or dermis (Fig. 7.3-3). Some surgeons secure the ileum to the underlying peritoneum and/or fascia, but this is not necessary.

Variant procedure or approaches: There are various intestinal or drainage tubes that may be inserted into the bowel, depending on the function required. For example, certain tubes are used for feeding, whereas others may be used for drainage or decompression.

Usual preop diagnosis: Intestinal obstruction due to extensive adhesions; following removal of the large intestine (including the rectum); for enteral feedings

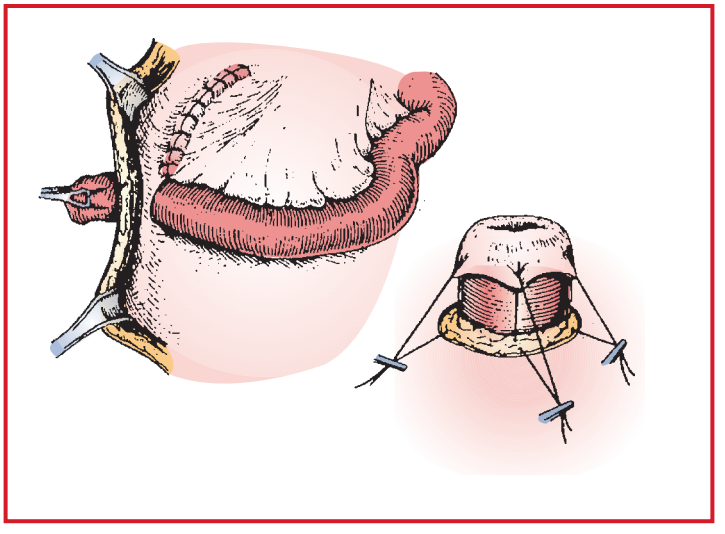


Figure 7.3-3. Brooke ileostomy. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Rhoad's Textbook of Surgery,* 5th edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1977.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Enterostomy	Ileostomy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Midline abdominal	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv preop	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐
Surgical time	1–1.5 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Securing tube to abdominal wall	Viable stoma
EBL	< 100 mL	⇐
Postop care	Tube irrigation	Stoma care
Mortality	< 0.5%	⇐
Morbidity	Ileus: 60–70% Wound infection: < 5%	⇐ ⇐ Stoma necrosis: < 2%
Pain score	5–6	5–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–65 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Intestinal obstruction (60–70%); diseases resulting in total proctocolectomy (10–15%); inability to eat (5–10%)
Associated conditions	Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD); intestinal adhesions; inability to eat

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR OSTOMY PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: enterostomy; continent ileostomy; gastrostomy; gastrojejunostomy)

PREOPERATIVE

This patient population is very diverse and includes those with IBD, cancer, and those presenting post-CVA and trauma. Thus, the population ranges from the otherwise healthy to the critically ill. Many of these patients will have abnormal protective airway reflexes and are at risk of aspiration of gastric contents.

Respiratory	Patients post-CVA or head trauma may have abnormal laryngeal reflexes and difficulty swallowing, making them prone to aspiration of gastric contents and associated pneumonitis (evaluate gag reflex). Decreased pulmonary reserve and hypoxemia can be seen in patients with pulmonary infections. **Tests:** Consider CXR to r/o pneumonia. Consider ABG.
Cardiovascular	Patients may be hypovolemic 2° chronically poor po intake. **Tests:** ECG; orthostatic vital signs
Musculoskeletal	Patients often sick and debilitated (e.g., post-CVA).

Gastrointestinal	Patients often malnourished and prone to electrolyte abnormalities 2° poor po intake. **Tests:** Electrolytes; BUN; Cr, consider PT/PTT.
Laboratory	CBC with differential; others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Depends on patient status. Titrate small doses of benzodiazepines (midazolam 0.25–0.5 mg iv) or opiate (fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv). Consider H_2-antagonists (e.g., ranitidine 50 mg iv, 60 min preop) and metoclopramide (10 mg iv 20 min preop).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is appropriate for most ostomy procedures; MAC with local anesthesia may be appropriate in selected patients.

Induction	Patient may be at risk for pulmonary aspiration. If GA is planned, consider rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure. If patient is hypovolemic, restore intravascular volume (colloid, crystalloid, or blood products) prior to induction and titrate induction doses of sedative/hypnotic agents.
Maintenance	**MAC:** Titration of sedatives (e.g., propofol 25–150 mcg/kg/min) and analgesics (fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv). **GA**: Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).
Emergence	Trachea should be extubated after return of protective laryngeal reflexes, if patient at risk for aspiration of gastric contents.
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Others as clinically indicated.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV, ilEW Aspiration VTE (see appendix p. B-8)
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3).

Suggested Readings

1. Cingi A, Solmaz A, Attaqllah W, et al: Enterostomy closure site hernias: a clinical and ultrasonographic evaluation. *Hernia* 2008; 12(4):401–5.
2. Zinner MJ, Schwartz SI, Ellis H, eds: *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* Vol I, 10th edition. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT: 1997, 427–51.

CONTINENT ILEOSTOMY POUCH (KOCK)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **Kock pouch** consists of an internal reservoir fashioned from the distal ileum and an intussuscepted nipple valve used to provide continence. Approximately 45 cm of small bowel are required for construction of the

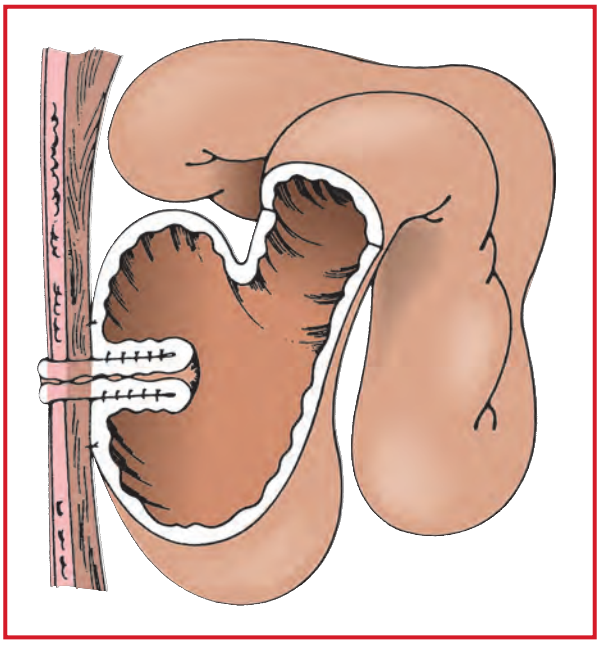


Figure 7.3-4. Continent ileostomy or Kock pouch. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

pouch and valve. After suturing two limbs of the ileum together over a distance of 15 cm, the distal segment is intussuscepted over itself to form the nipple valve. The pouch is then sutured closed and mounted beneath the abdominal wall stoma site (Fig. 7.3-4). The stoma is made flush with the skin for cosmetic reasons and left intubated for 1 month with a special plastic catheter. The pouch remains decompressed for 1 month before intermittent catheterization is initiated. The continent ileostomy reservoir has been modified by **Barnett** to include the construction of an isoperistaltic valve with an intestinal collar around its base to prevent deintussusception and valve prolapse. These procedures are typically performed following a total proctocolectomy or to replace conventional ileostomies.

Usual preop diagnosis: Inflammatory bowel disease; familial polyposis or malfunctioning ileostomies

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (KOCK OR BARNETT POUCH)	
Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	GIA or TA staplers
Antibiotics	Usual bowel prep with antibiotics; cefoxitin 1 g iv preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	3–4 h
Closing considerations	Valve vascularity
EBL	200–300 mL
Postop care	Maintain pouch decompression
Mortality	< 1%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (KOCK OR BARNETT POUCH) (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Intestinal ileus: 5% Wound infection: < 5% Intestinal obstruction: 2–3% Pouch fistula: 1–3% Valve necrosis: < 0.5%
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	18–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Ileostomy (50%); proctocolectomy (5%)
Associated conditions	Extracolonic inflammatory bowel manifestations (10%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ostomy Procedures, p. 527.

Suggested Readings

1. Barnett WO: Modified techniques for improving the continent ileostomy. *Am Surg* 1984; 50(2):66–9.
2. Becker JM, Stuchni AF: Ulcerative colitis. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 1070–89.
3. Little UR, Barboors RN, Shrock TR, et al: The continent ileostomy–long-term durability and patient satisfaction. *J Gastrointest Surg* 1999; 3:625–32.
4. Oncel M, Church JM, Remzi FH, Fazio VW: Colonic surgery in patients with juvenile polyposis syndrome: a case series. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; 48:49.
5. Smith LE: Surgical therapy in ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 1989; 18:99–110.

SMALL-BOWEL RESECTION WITH ANASTOMOSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Resection of the small bowel is performed for a number of diseases (listed below). This is being done by laparoscopy with increasing frequency. After entering the peritoneal cavity, the involved small bowel is delivered into the wound and the lesion resected between bowel clamps (Fig. 7.3-5). Varying amounts of mesentery are included, depending on the diagnosis. More extensive resections are indicated for malignant disease, including regional lymph nodes. Reanastomosis may be accomplished by various suturing techniques or stapling. The peritoneal cavity may be accessed through vertical or transverse incisions or laparoscopy. Operative techniques include **open end-to-end, closed end-to-end, side-to-side,** or **stapled, functional end-to-end anastomoses.**

Variant procedure or approaches: **Laparoscopic small-bowel resections** are being performed more frequently (see p. 602).

Usual preop diagnosis: Intestinal obstruction, complicated by intestinal gangrene due to adhesions, internal hernia, volvulus, intussusception, mesenteric vascular occlusion, Crohn's disease, radiation enteritis, intestinal fistulae, small bowel tumors, trauma, and carcinoid tumors.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Vertical or transverse

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Unique considerations	Adequate fluid resuscitation; NG tube
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–3 h
EBL	50–100 mL
Postop care	NG or long intestinal tube decompression
Mortality	Varies according to etiology: 1–5%
Morbidity	Atelectasis: < 10% Intestinal ileus: < 10% Wound infection: < 5% Intestinal leak, fistula: < 3%
Pain score	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–90 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Interference with blood supply (obstruction, strangulated hernia, volvulus, mesenteric thrombosis); trauma; tumors; Crohn's disease
Associated conditions	Multiple, depending on etiology (see Preop diagnosis, above).

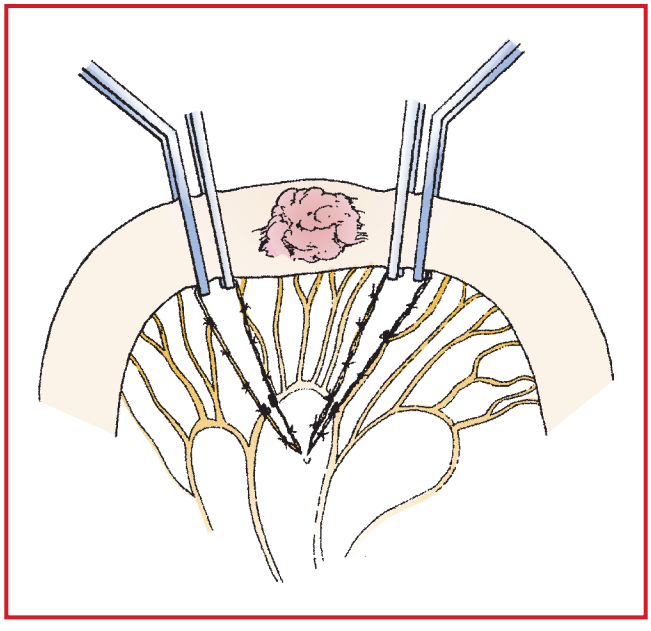


Figure 7.3-5. Block-Potts bowel clamps are applied from the antimesenteric to mesenteric border to avoid twisting. A Kocher clamp is applied on the specimen side, and the bowel is transected with a scalpel. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE, eds: *Mastery of Surgery,* Vol II, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Intestinal and Peritoneal Procedures, p. 534.

Suggested Readings

1. Chaiyasate K, Jain AK, Cheung LY, et al: Prognostic factors in primary adenocarcinoma of the small intestine. *World J Surg Oncol* 2008; 31:6–12.
2. Riccioni ME, Cianci R, Urgesi R, et al: Advances in diagnosis and treatment of small bowel tumors. *Surg Endosc* 2012; 26:438.

ENTEROLYSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Enterolysis consists of separating loops of bowel adhesed to other loops or the abdominal wall by sharp dissection and by excising adhesive bands. Care must be taken to avoid producing enterotomies. Covering potential adhesion sites with a hyaluronic carboxymethylcellulose membrane may lessen the formation of intraperitoneal adhesions. This operation can also be done laparoscopically with fewer recurrent adhesions.

Usual preop diagnosis: Intraabdominal adhesions; intestinal obstruction

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	A long intestinal tube may be necessary for decompression and fixation of bowel loop.
Unique considerations	Bowel decompression
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1 g iv preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–4 h
Closing considerations	Adequate decompression to permit wound closure
EBL	150–500 mL
Postop care	PACU; continued intestinal decompression 2–5 d
Mortality	1–3%
Morbidity	Wound abscess: 15–20% Prolonged ileus: 10–20% Fistula formation: < 10% Pulmonary complications: 5–10% Recurrent intestinal obstruction: 5–8%
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Previous intraabdominal operative procedure (> 90%); malignant tumors (15–20%); hernias (10–15%); volvulus (5–10%); inflammatory bowel disease (5%); gallstone ileus (< 5%); intussusception (< 5%), radiation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Intestinal and Peritoneal Procedures, p. 534.

Suggested Readings

1. Aydeniz B, Teppey-Wessels K, Honig A, et al: Laparoscopic enterolysis before adjuvant radiotherapy in a case of endometrial cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2004; 92:331–3.
2. Vrijland WW, Tseng LN, Eijkman HJ, et al: Fewer intraperitoneal adhesions with use of hyaluronic acid-carboxymethylcellulose membrane: a randomized clinical trial. *Ann Surg* 2002; 235:193–9.

CLOSURE OF ENTERIC FISTULAE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Enteric fistulae may occur between the bowel and abdominal wall (enterocutaneous), between loops of the intestine (enteroenteric or enterocolic), or between the bowel and bladder or vagina (enterovesical or enterovaginal). Surgical repair is usually reserved for fistulae to the abdominal wall, bladder, and vagina and consists of excising the fistula and repairing the bowel and the other organ separately. Most fistulae are characterized by the adherence of the two visceral organs with a communication between their lumens.

The organs involved are separated by blunt-sharp dissection and repaired locally after excision of the indurated margins of the defect. In the case of both the small and large intestines, it may be necessary to resect a segment of bowel with the defect and to perform an end-to-end anastomosis. If the repair sites involved lie close together, it is important to interpose tissue, such as the omentum, between the viscera to minimize chance of recurrence. Occasionally, a fistula may be bypassed rather than surgically resected.

Usual preop diagnosis: Enteric fistula

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal
Unique considerations	Preop nutritional support and fistula wound care
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Separation of repairs by interposition of omentum and other tissue
EBL	50–300 mL
Postop care	NG decompression until bowel function returns; TPN support
Mortality	0–5%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	Ileus: 60–70% Pulmonary complications: 10% Recurrent fistula: 5–10% Wound infection: 5–10%
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Anastomotic leaks (60–70%); carcinoma (10–15%); Crohn's disease (5–10%); iatrogenic bowel injury (5–10%); perforative diverticulitis (5–10%); radiation enteritis (5%); foreign body perforation (< 5%)
Associated conditions	Malnutrition (30%); inflammatory bowel disease (25%); cancer (15%)

Suggested Reading

1. Schecter WP, Hirshberg A, Chang DS, et al: Enteric fistulas: principles of management. *J Ann Coll Surg* 2009; 209:484.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR INTESTINAL AND PERITONEAL PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: small-bowel resection; enterolysis; closure of enteric fistulae; excision of intraabdominal and retroperitoneal tumor; drainage of subphrenic abscess)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients requiring exploratory laparotomy present both electively and emergently for a very wide range of conditions. As a result of their abdominal pathology, these patients are often at high risk for the pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents. Precautions to prevent this are necessary to help ensure safe patient outcome (see p. B-5).

Respiratory	Respiratory insufficiency can be present due to intraabdominal pathology (e.g., ascites, large tumor, free blood, bowel distension, pain); ↓ FRC → ↑ A-a gradient and arterial hypoxemia; diaphragmatic impairment and splinting → ↑ respiratory insufficiency. **Tests:** Consider CXR; ABG.
Cardiovascular	Patients for emergency surgery are often critically ill and unstable and should be evaluated for presence of hypovolemia (hypotension, tachycardia) and should receive adequate volume replacement before anesthetic induction. Elective patients may be hypovolemic 2° bowel prep. **Tests:** ECG; consider orthostatic vital signs.
Musculoskeletal	Abdominal rigidity may be present; abdominal pain is common.
Gastrointestinal	Diarrhea, vomiting, and prolonged NPO status can lead to electrolyte abnormalities. Malnutrition may be present. **Tests:** Electrolytes, consider PT/PTT.
Renal	Renal insufficiency/failure may be present, especially in elderly and/or chronically ill patients and in those who are hypovolemic. **Tests:** Consider BUN; Cr; electrolytes.
Laboratory	CBC with differential; Plt count
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1). Consider H_2-antagonists (e.g., ranitidine 50 mg iv 1 hr preop), metoclopramide (10 mg iv 30 min preop; contraindicated in bowel obstruction/perforation), and Na citrate (30 mL po 10 min preop).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for postop analgesia. If postop epidural analgesia is planned, placement of catheter prior to anesthetic induction is helpful to establish correct placement in the epidural space (accomplished by injecting 5–7 mL of 2% lidocaine via the epidural catheter and confirming segmental block).

Induction	The patient with abdominal pathology is often at risk for pulmonary aspiration, and the trachea should be intubated with patient awake or after rapid-sequence iv induction with cricoid pressure. (See Rapid-Sequence Induction, p. B-5.) If patient is clinically hypovolemic, restore intravascular volume (colloid, crystalloid, or blood products) prior to induction and titrate induction dose of sedative/hypnotic agents.	
Maintenance	**Balanced anesthesia** without N_2O (see Standard Maintenance Techniques, p. B-3): Maintain neuromuscular blockade based on nerve stimulator response. Place OG or NG tube to evacuate stomach contents. **Combined epidural and GA:** Local anesthetic (2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine 5–15 mL initial dose, then 3–5 mL q 60 min) can be injected into the epidural catheter to provide both anesthesia and optimal surgical exposure (contracted bowel and muscle relaxation). A continuous infusion of local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine) at 3–5 mL/h may be used in place of bolus redosing. Be prepared to treat hypotension with fluid and vasopressors. GA is administered to supplement regional anesthesia and for amnesia. If epidural opiates are used for postop analgesia, a loading dose (e.g., hydromorphone 0.5–1.0 mg) should be administered at least 1 h before the conclusion of surgery. Use of systemic analgesics may be minimized during this type of anesthetic with the benefit of decreasing the likelihood of postop respiratory depression.	
Emergence	The decision to extubate at the end of surgery depends on the patient's underlying cardiopulmonary status and the extent of the surgical procedure. Patients should be hemodynamically stable, warm, cooperative, and fully reversed from any muscle relaxants prior to extubation. If the above criteria are not met, consider postop ventilation in the ICU setting.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large fluid shift. IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 T&S, consider T&C NS/LR @ 10–15 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer	Plts, FFP, and cryoprecipitate should be administered according to lab tests (Plt count, PT, PTT, DIC screen, thromboelastography [TEG]). Strive to maintain euvolemia based on estimated blood loss and fluid shifts, HR, BP, UO, ABG, and invasive monitors when used.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). UO ± Arterial line ± CVP/PA catheter ± TEE	Invasive monitors, as indicated by patient's status. Prevent hypothermia: use forced-air warmer; consider warming blanket, warming iv fluids, warm room temperature, keeping patient covered until ready for prep, etc.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hemorrhage Sepsis	Acute septic shock may require aggressive hemodynamic support; PA catheter or TEE may help guide management in the unstable patient.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Sepsis Hemodynamic instability Atelectasis Hypoxemia VTE (see p. B-8) Hemorrhage Ileus PONV (see p. B-6)	Pulmonary function abnormalities may persist for 1 wk postop (↓ vital capacity and ↓ FRC).

Pain management	Epidural analgesia (see p. C-3). PCA (see p. C-3).	Patient should be recovered in ICU or ward accustomed to treating the side effects of epidural opiates (e.g., respiratory depression, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus).
Tests	CBC; CXR (if central line placed); electrolytes; glucose	Others as directed by intraop course.

Suggested Reading

1. Becker HP, Willms A, Schwab R: Small bowel fistulas and the open abdomen. *Scand J Surg* 2007; 96:263–71.

CHAPTER

7.4 Colorectal Surgery

SURGEONS

Andrew A. Shelton, MD
Carlos E. Pineda, MD
Mark Lane Welton, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD
Alimorad G. Djalali, MD

ENHANCED RECOVERY AFTER SURGERY (ERAS)

Fast-track, or enhanced recovery programs after elective surgery incorporate a variety of evidence-based interventions in an attempt to maintain normal physiologic function, enhance recovery, and prevent or minimize postoperative complications. These interventions encompass all phases of a patient's perioperative care from the preoperative phase, to the intraoperative phase, and to the postoperative phase. These programs are being increasingly used in the perioperative management of patients with colorectal conditions. The anesthesiologist is responsible for three key elements in affecting outcomes after surgery: stress reactions to the surgery, fluid therapy, and analgesia. Common components of ERAS programs are noted below.

PREOP	INTRAOP	POSTOP
Avoid preop fasting; allow clear liquids until 2 h before induction of anesthesia	Standard anesthetic protocol allowing rapid awakening	Minimize excessive postop fluids
Preoperative carbohydrate loading	Use of midthoracic epidural for open surgery	Early resumption of enteral feeding
Avoid long-acting sedative medications before surgery	Prevention of PONV	Prevention of postop ileus
DVT prophylaxis with compression stockings and LMWH	Maintenance of intraoperative normothermia	Postop glucose control
Prophylactic antibiotics given 30–60 min before incision	Avoid excessive intraoperative fluids	Early mobilization
Avoid mechanical bowel prep	Use of laparoscopic surgical techniques	Avoid nasogastric tubes Multimodality postop analgesia minimizing narcotics

Several studies have demonstrated that the ERAS programs compared with traditional postoperative care are associated with earlier recovery and discharge after colorectal surgery with decreased morbidity.

Suggested Readings

1. Gustafsson UO, Scott MJ, Schwenk W, et al: Guidelines for perioperative care in elective colonic surgery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS®) Society recommendations. *World J Surg* 2013; 37(2):259–84.
2. Lassen K, Soop M, Nygren J, et al: Consensus review of optimal perioperative care in colorectal surgery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS) Group recommendations. *Arch Surg* 2009; 144(10):961–9.
3. Rossi G, Vaccarezza H, Vaccaro CA, et al: Two-day hospital stay after laparoscopic colorectal surgery under an Enhanced Recovery after Surgery (ERAS) pathway. *World J Surg* 2013; 37(10):2483–9.

LAPAROSCOPIC COLORECTAL SURGERY

Laparoscopic surgery has changed the face of general surgery with the widespread use of laparoscopic cholecystectomy, appendectomy, and other surgical procedures. Although across the country many colorectal procedures continue to be done in the standard open fashion, laparoscopic techniques are being used more and more for procedures on the colon and rectum. All of the following procedures can be done, and have been done, laparoscopically. Advantages to the patient include smaller incisions, less postop discomfort, a decreased in-hospital stay, decreased wound-related complications with early return to work and normal activity. Steep positional changes are often used

to facilitate retraction of the small bowel out of the operative field. The patient is often placed on a beanbag to prevent movement. The term **laparoscopic-assisted** is more appropriate for colorectal procedures because the colon often is mobilized laparoscopically. A small incision is then made, through which the bowel is exteriorized, the mesentery is divided, and an anastomosis is created. **"Hand-assisted" laparoscopy** involves placement of a hand-port through a 5–10 cm incision. The abdominal cavity is then insufflated as in standard laparoscopy, but the surgeon's hand is used alongside the other laparoscopic instruments. Laparoscopic techniques continue to advance with the development of single-incision laparoscopic surgery (SILS) for resection of the colon and rectum; **natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES)** techniques in which the resected specimen is removed from a natural orifice such as the vagina; and the use of the da Vinci robot for the laparoscopic treatment of rectal cancer.

Laparoscopic resections of the colon or rectum are done using a pneumoperitoneum with its associated physiologic changes. Laparoscopic surgery involves the insufflation of carbon dioxide into the peritoneal cavity at a rate of 4–6 L/min to a pressure of 15–20 mm Hg. The raised intraabdominal pressure (IAP) and the effects of carbon dioxide can cause changes in the physiology of the respiratory and cardiovascular systems. Increased IAP affects venous return, systemic vascular resistance, and myocardial function. Pneumoperitoneum also results in cephalad shift of the diaphragm, decreasing the functional residual capacity, possibly to values less than the closing volume. This can result in airway collapse, atelectasis V/Q mismatch, potential hypoxemia, and hypercarbia.

Because of the inability to use retractors as in open surgery, retraction of the bowel out of the operating field is usually accomplished through changes in the patient's position on the operating table, frequently in steep degrees of Trendelenburg position. Because of this, the patient must be secured to the operating table. These position changes can further affect the cardiovascular and respiratory systems in addition to those caused by the pneumoperitoneum itself.

An important consideration for any laparoscopic procedure is that the surgeon might need to convert to an **open laparotomy**. This may occur in a secondary fashion for failure to progress or in an emergent fashion for technical difficulties.

Suggested Readings

1. Bonjer HJ, Hop WC, Nelson H, et al: Laparoscopically assisted vs open colectomy for colon cancer: a meta-analysis. *Arch Surg* 2007; 142(3):298–303.
2. Dwivedi A, Chahin F, Agrawal S, et al: Laparoscopic colectomy vs. open colectomy for sigmoid diverticular disease. *Dis Colon Rect* 2002; 45(10):1309–14; discussion 1314–5.
3. Favuzza J, Delaney CP: Outcomes of discharge after elective laparoscopic colorectal surgery with transversus abdominis plane blocks and enhanced recovery pathway. *J Am Coll Surg* 2013; 217(3):503–6.
4. Gordon PH, Nivatvongs S, eds: *Principles and Practice of Surgery of Colon, Rectum, and Anus*, 3rd edition. Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.
5. Keshava A, Young CJ, Richardson GL, et al: A historical comparison of single incision and conventional multiport laparoscopic right hemicolectomy. *Colorectal Dis* 2013; 15(10):e618–22.
6. Ky AJ, Sonoda T, Milsom JW: One-stage laparoscopic restorative proctocolectomy: an alternative to the conventional approach. *Dis Colon Rect* 2002; 45(2):207–11.
7. Nishimura A, Kawahara M, Honda K, et al: Totally laparoscopic anterior resection with transvaginal assistance and transvaginal specimen extraction: a technique for natural orifice surgery combined with reduced-port surgery. *Surg Endosc* 2013; 27(12):4734–40.
8. Perrin M, Fletcher A: Laparoscopic abdominal surgery: continuing education in anesthesia, critical care, and pain. 2004; 4(4):107–10.
9. Scheidbach H, Schneider C, Konradt J, et al: Laparoscopic abdominoperineal resection and anterior resection with curative intent for carcinoma of the rectum. *Surg Endo* 2002; 16(1):7–13.

TOTAL PROCTOCOLECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **total proctocolectomy** involves the removal of the entire colon, rectum, and anus (Fig. 7.4-1). Indications for this operation include ulcerative colitis (UC), Crohn's disease (CD), and familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP). Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) can be diagnosed at any age, but there are peaks in diagnosis in the teens and twenties and the sixties and seventies. The most common indication for total proctocolectomy in the setting of UC

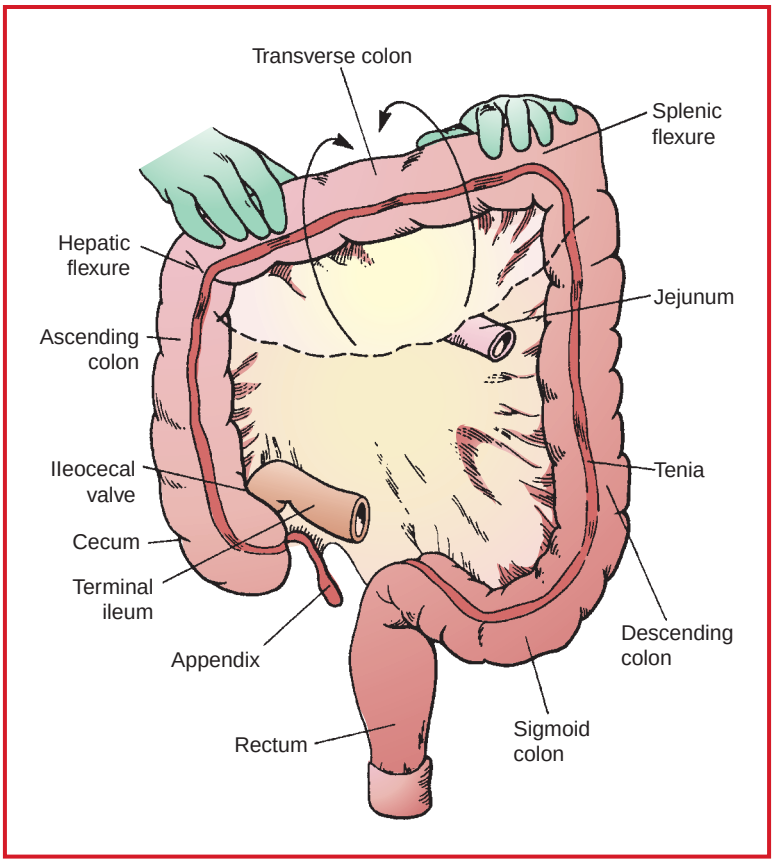


Figure 7.4-1. Anatomy of the colon. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Baltimore: 1988.)

or CD is intractable symptoms despite maximal medical therapy. Patients are commonly chronically or acutely ill and may be malnourished or anemic. They are often on immunosuppressive drugs such as corticosteroids, 6-mercaptopurine or azathioprine, or biologic inhibitors of tumor necrosis factor alpha such as infliximab, adalimumab, or certolizumab. These medications all predispose these patients to an increased risk of postoperative infections and complications due to poor wound healing. Another important indication for proctocolectomy in patients with UC is the presence of dysplasia or cancer.

FAP is an autosomal-dominant disease resulting in hereditary colon cancer. Patients develop hundreds to thousands of adenomatous polyps throughout their colon and rectum, as well as elsewhere in the GI tract. Colorectal cancer is inevitable unless proctocolectomy is performed. This is typically done in the late teens or twenties. In contrast to patients with CD or UC, patients with FAP are usually healthy without other medical comorbidities.

Sequential compression stockings are used for thromboprophylaxis. Patients with CD and UC are at ↑ risk for the development of DVT and should be given subcutaneous unfractionated heparin or low-molecular-weight heparin. Patients taking chronic corticosteroids are given stress-dose steroids before the procedure. Broad-spectrum antibiotics covering gram-negative rods and anaerobes are given prior to the incision.

Total proctocolectomy with **end ileostomy**, total proctocolectomy with **continent ileostomy (Koch pouch)**, and restorative **proctocolectomy with ileal pouch anal anastomosis (IPAA)** all involve complete removal of the colon and rectum, down to the level of the pelvic floor or levator ani muscles. They differ in the fate of the anal canal, creation of a stoma, or construction of an anastomosis. The patient is placed in a lithotomy position in padded Allen stirrups. A Foley catheter is placed. If the procedure is done using laparoscopic techniques, a small incision is made in the periumbilical region, the suprapubic region, or as a Pfannenstiel incision to extract the specimen. If done as an open procedure, it is commonly performed through a midline incision. The abdomen is explored for evidence of unexpected malignancy or, in the case of FAP, for desmoid tumors. The right colon

is mobilized first, and then the small bowel mesentery is mobilized to allow for creation of an ileostomy. The transverse colon may be mobilized by separating it from the greater omentum, or the greater omentum may be resected along with the specimen. The sigmoid and descending colon are mobilized, and the splenic flexure is taken down. The ileum is then divided flush with the cecum, and the vessels in the colon mesentery are ligated. At this point, the entire abdominal colon has been resected. An avascular fascial envelope surrounds the rectum and its mesentery, the mesorectum. It is possible to circumferentially dissect the rectum down to the level of the pelvic floor without ligating any vessels. There may be significant blood loss if an inadvertent injury to the spleen occurs during mobilization of the splenic flexure. Massive blood loss may occur if the presacral venous plexus is entered during posterior rectal mobilization.

Total proctocolectomy with ileostomy: For patients with CD, elderly patients with UC, or FAP patients with low rectal cancer, complete removal of the colon, rectum, and anus is the procedure of choice. After completing the abdominal mobilization of the colon and rectum, the perineal phase of the operation begins. Ideally, two teams of surgeons participate in the operation simultaneously. The abdominal surgeon can create the ileostomy and close the abdomen, while the perineal surgeon finishes removal of the rectum and anus. A circumferential incision is made at the anal verge, and the intersphincteric plane is identified. The dissection proceeds cephalad until the abdominal dissection is encountered, and the specimen is removed. The levator ani muscle, external anal sphincter, and skin are closed. While this is being done, the abdominal surgeon makes a circular incision over the previously marked ileostomy site. A muscle-splitting incision is carried through the rectus fascia. The terminal ileum is then brought through this site. After the fascia and skin are closed, the ileostomy is matured. Some surgeons prefer to do the perineal phase of a proctocolectomy in the prone jackknife position. In this case, after completing the abdominal phase of the operation, the abdomen is closed, the stoma is matured, and the patient is flipped prone to finish the procedure.

Total proctocolectomy with continent ileostomy (Koch Pouch): Because of frequent complications and the development of alternative procedures (see below) this procedure has been largely abandoned

Restorative proctocolectomy with ileal J pouch anal anastomosis (IPAA): IPAA is the procedure most performed for patients with FAP and UC. In this operation, the colon and rectum are removed, down to the level of the pelvic floor; however, the anal canal and anal sphincter complex are preserved. The rectum is stapled and divided at the level of the surgical anal canal, ~1–1.5 cm above the dentate line. An ileal reservoir is constructed by anastomosing the distal 30 cm of ileum in a side-to-side fashion, creating a J pouch. The apex of the pouch is then anastomosed to the anal canal using a circular stapling device. Rarely, a hand-sewn anastomosis is created. A temporary diverting loop ileostomy may or may not be created, depending on the clinical situation.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Total Proctocolectomy	IPAA	Laparoscopic
Position	Modified lithotomy	⇐	⇐
Incision	Midline	Midline	Suprapubic or Pfannenstiel
Special instruments	Two-table setup (separate abdominal and perineal instruments); deep pelvic instruments	Two-table setup; anal retractors	⇐
Unique considerations	Patients frequently on chronic corticosteroids	Plus, epinephrine solutions injected under the rectal mucosa to facilitate dissection of reduce bleeding	⇐
Antibiotics	3–4 h	3–4 h	4–5 h
Closing considerations	Ileostomy completed after skin closed (15–30 min)	Temporary ileostomy commonly used, completed after skin closure	⇐
EBL	100–1000 mL (Most blood loss during pelvic and perineal dissection)	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Transient inability to void common	Small bowel mesentery lengthened by dissection around duodenum. May lead to PONV; transient inability to void	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)			
Morbidity	Dyspareunia 30% Stoma complications 20% SBO 10–15% Erectile dysfunction 2–4%	5–10% NA ⇐ ⇐ Nocturnal incontinence Poor function 5% Pelvic sepsis 0–4%	⇐
Mortality	2–5% (older patients and those with underlying chronic medical problems)	< 1%	⇐
Pain score	8	8	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS		
	Ulcerative Colitis	**Familial Adenomatous Polyposis**
Age range	3rd–5th decade	2nd–4th decade
Male:Female	1:1	⇐
Incidence	6–10/100,000	100–150 cases/yr

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Large Bowel Surgery, p. 546.

Suggested Readings

1. Bertario L, Arrigoni A, Astel H, et al: Recommendations for clinical management of familial adenomatous polyposis. *Tumori* 1997; 83(5):800–3.
2. Ghosh S, Shand A, Ferguson A: Ulcerative colitis. *BMJ* 2000; 320(7242):1119–23.
3. Gordon PH, Nivatvongs S, eds: *Principles and Practice of Surgery of Colon, Rectum, and Anus*, 3rd edition. Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.
4. Guy TS, Williams NN, Rosato EF: Crohn's disease of the colon. *Surg Clin North Am* 2001; 81(1):159–68, ix.
5. Katz JA: Medical and surgical management of severe colitis. *Sem Gastrointest Dis* 2002; 11(1):18–32.
6. King JE, Dozois RR, Lindor NM, et al: Care of patients and their families with familial adenomatous polyposis. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2000; 75(1):57–67.
7. Litle VR, Barbour S, Schrock TR, et al: The continent ileostomy: long-term durability and patient satisfaction. *J Gastrointest Surg* 1999; 3(6):625–32.
8. Metcalf AM: Elective and emergent operative management of ulcerative colitis. *Surg Clin North Am* 2007; 87(3):633–41.
9. Michelassi F, Hurst R: Restorative proctocolectomy with J-pouch ileoanal anastomosis. *Arch Surg* 2000; 135(3):347–53.
10. Sagar PM, Pemberton JH: Intraoperative, postoperative and reoperative problems with ileoanal pouches. *Br J Surg* 2012; 99(4):454–68.
11. Schiessling S, Leowardi C, Kienle P, et al: Laparoscopic versus conventional ileoanal pouch procedure in patients undergoing elective restorative proctocolectomy (LapConPouch Trial)—a randomized controlled trial. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2013; 398(6):807–16.
12. Sica GS, Biancone L: Surgery for inflammatory bowel disease in the era of laparoscopy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; 19(16):2445–8.
13. Wolff BG, Garcia-Aguilar J, Roberts PL, et al, eds: *The ASCRS Textbook of Colon and Rectal Surgery*. Springer Science-Business Media, New York: 2007.

SEGMENTAL (PARTIAL) COLECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Segmental colectomy** involves removal of a portion of the colon (Fig. 7.4-1) with the creation of an **anastomosis** or a **stoma**. The most common indications for the operation in the Western world are colon cancer and diverticulitis. Less-common indications include traumatic perforation, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, ischemic

colitis, volvulus, and inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). Both colon cancer and diverticular disease occur most commonly in patients > 50 yr. Patients may have any of the comorbid medical conditions associated with aging, as well as complications related to the disease requiring colon resection. Free perforation of the colon can occur from a variety of conditions, including diverticulitis, cancer, and ischemia. Patients may be hypovolemic and have systemic sepsis. **Emergent laparotomy** should follow a period of resuscitation and administration of antibiotics. The involved segment of bowel is resected, the abdomen is irrigated, and a stoma is created.

Colon cancer is the second most common cancer in the United States with 153,000 new cases diagnosed annually. Patients may be completely asymptomatic, with the Dx being made only as the result of a screening exam. Because of the large caliber of the colon and the liquid nature of stool, patients with cancers of the right colon are more likely to present with large cancers and anemia. The caliber of the left colon is smaller and the stool more solid. Symptoms of obstruction and change in bowel habits predominate for left-sided lesions.

Colonic diverticula occur in up to 60–70% of people > 50 yr in the United States. A colonic diverticulum is a herniation of the mucosa and submucosa through the relative weakening that occurs in the muscular wall of the bowel at the site of penetrating blood vessels. This occurs predominantly in the sigmoid colon. Most people with colonic diverticula are completely asymptomatic and will never experience any complications related to diverticulosis. Diverticulitis occurs when a microscopic or macroscopic perforation of a colonic diverticulum occurs, resulting in a pericolonic inflammatory and infectious process. The severity of the attack depends on the degree of perforation and how well the body is able to wall it off. This ranges from minor inflammation around the sigmoid colon that can be managed with antibiotics, to an intraabdominal or pelvic abscess requiring **percutaneous drainage**, to free perforation with purulent or feculent peritonitis requiring emergency surgery. Repeated bouts of diverticulitis eventually can result in fibrosis of the colon, stricture formation, and obstruction.

Ideally, surgery on the colon is performed in an elective setting; however, perforation with peritonitis or complete obstruction of the colon may require emergency surgery. Most patients presenting for elective colon resection undergo preop bowel preparation that consists of mechanical cleaning of the colon. As a result, they are frequently hypovolemic and hypokalemic when they come to the OR. Recent randomized controlled trials have not shown a benefit of mechanical bowel prep, and for this reason, many surgeons are abandoning this as a routine practice The patient is positioned either supine or in the modified lithotomy position, depending on the segment of colon to be removed. Sequential compression stockings are used for thromboprophylaxis and chemoprophylaxis for DVT with either unfractionated heparin or low-molecular-weight heparin is given. Intravenous antibiotics covering gram-negative rods and anaerobes should be given prior to the incision with redosing as appropriate for the antibiotic used.

Segmental colectomy: **Segmental resection of the colon** maybe performed laparoscopically or via midline or transverse abdominal incisions, depending on the underlying disease, portion of the colon to be resected, and the surgeon's preference. In general, midline incisions are preferred when: a high-lying splenic flexure must be mobilized, IBD is present, or the extent of the colon resection is not known preoperatively. Transverse incisions are most commonly reserved for resections of the right colon. The most commonly performed partial colon resections are **right hemicolectomy, sigmoid colectomy, left hemicolectomy,** and **abdominal colectomy** with an **ileorectal anastomosis**. The sequence of steps in a **partial colectomy** is the same for all parts of the colon. The right colon and left colon are retroperitoneal structures; whereas, the transverse colon and sigmoid colon are primarily intraperitoneal. The first step is mobilization of the colon and its mesentery. Care must be taken not to injure the left ureter during mobilization of the sigmoid colon or the duodenum during mobilization of the right colon. Proximal and distal sites for resection are selected, and the intervening mesentery is divided. The **anastomosis** may be hand sewn or stapled, which is a decision based primarily on the surgeon's preference.

There is no clear advantage to either anastomotic technique. Creation of a **diverting stoma** rather than an anastomosis may be necessary in patients who are hemodynamically unstable, or when intraabdominal conditions, such as inflammation, make an anastomosis unsafe. There may be significant blood loss if an inadvertent injury to the spleen occurs during mobilization of the splenic flexure. Excessive traction of the hepatic flexure can result in difficult-to-control venous bleeding.

Obstruction of the colon most commonly occurs as a result of cancer of the sigmoid colon or repeated bouts of diverticulitis. Patients present with abdominal distention, obstipation, and N/V. Patients are treated with NG tube decompression and correction of hypovolemia. An attempt may be made to stent the obstructing lesion endoscopically preop to allow decompression and preparation of the colon. If this is not possible, surgical options include segmental resection with a **colostomy,** segmental resection with primary anastomosis, and an on-table colonic lavage, or **subtotal colectomy** with an ileorectal anastomosis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Colon cancer, diverticular disease, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, trauma, ischemic colitis, lower GI hemorrhage, intractable constipation, colon volvulus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or modified lithotomy
Incision	Transverse or vertical midline
Unique considerations	Bowel prep, or underlying disease may → dehydration, electrolyte abnormalities or anemia.
Antibiotics	Ertapenem 1 g iv or 2nd generation cephalosporin
Surgical time	1–3 h
Closing considerations	Colostomy or ileostomy matured after wound is closed (requires 10–20 min).
EBL	100–300 mL (500–2000 mL if splenic injury, loss of major vascular pedicle, or repeat operation for cancer, Crohn's disease)
Postop care	ICU for underlying disease; NG tube for distention or vomiting. Avoid use of long-lasting anticholinergics effects.
Mortality	0.5–2% (mostly related to underlying disease)
Morbidity	SBO: 5–10% Wound infection: 4–10% Anastomotic leak: 2–4% Wound dehiscence: 1–2% Bleeding: 1% Splenic injury: 1%
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Crohn's Disease	Colon Cancer	Trauma	Diverticula
Age range	2nd–4th decade	5th–7th decade	2nd–4th decade	> 40 yr
Male:Female	1:1	1.3:1	3:1	1:1
Incidence	1–6/100,000	30/100,000	1–2/100,000	10/100,000
Etiology	Unknown	Genetic: 5%	Trauma	Western countries: low-fiber diet
Associated conditions	Malnutrition; anemia; intraabdominal sepsis; intestinal fistulae; perianal disease; nephrolithiasis; sclerosing and ankylosing spondylitis	Iron deficiency; colonic obstruction; colonic perforation	Liver fracture; spleen fracture; rib fracture; closed-head injury; penetration of viscera adjacent to colon injury	Hemorrhoids; chronic constipation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Large Bowel Surgery, p. 546.

Suggested Readings

1. Blair NP, Germann E: Surgical management of acute sigmoid diverticulitis. *Am J Surg* 2002; 183(5):525–8.
2. Colquhoun PH, Wexner SD: Surgical management of colon cancer. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2002; 4(5):414–9.
3. Gordon, PH, Nivatvongs S, eds: *Principles and Practice of Surgery of Colon, Rectum, and Anus*, 3rd edition. Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.
4. Greer LT, Gillern SM, Vertrees AE: Evolving colon injury management: a review. *Am Surg* 2013; 79(2):119–27.

5. Makela J, Kiviniemi H, Laitinen S: Prevalence of perforated sigmoid diverticulitis is increasing. *Dis Colon Rect* 2002; 45(7):955–61.
6. Mathis KL, Boostrom SY, Pemberton JH: New developments in colorectal surgery. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2013; 29(1):72–8.
7. Wolff BG, Garcia-Aguilar J, Roberts PL, et al, eds: *The ASCRS Textbook of Colon and Rectal Surgery*. Springer Science-Business Media, New York: 2007.

STOMA CLOSURE OR PERISTOMAL HERNIA REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **temporary colostomy** or **ileostomy** can be made for a variety of staged procedures. An **end colostomy** is often created after resection of obstructing or perforated lesions of the left colon. A proximal **loop ileostomy or colostomy** is often created to protect a "high-risk" anastomosis, such as a low pelvic colorectal or ileoanal anastomosis. A patient with a permanent stoma may develop a hernia at the stoma site. This may result in complications, such as obstruction or strangulation of the bowel, or problems with appropriate fitting of the stoma appliance. The extent of procedure depends on the type of stoma created.

Closure of loop stoma: Closure of a loop stoma is performed through a circular incision, placed just outside the mucocutaneous junction of the stoma and the skin. The proximal and distal ends of the bowel are separated from the subcutaneous tissue and anterior fascia and then the posterior fascia. The bowel is cleaned of adherent skin, and the previously opened antimesenteric border of the bowel is simply closed with sutures. Alternatively, the previously exteriorized portion of bowel is resected, and the two ends are anastomosed with sutures or staples. On rare occasions, it is necessary to extend the incision transversely through the abdominal wall to safely perform an anastomosis. The fascia is closed in the standard fashion. Loop ileostomies are most commonly performed for patients who have had surgery for rectal cancer and who have a low colorectal anastomosis. These patients have frequently received chemotherapy and radiation therapy. A loop ileostomy is also created as part of a **restorative proctocolectomy** with an **ileal J pouch anal anastomosis**. These patients tend to be significantly younger. They may have only recently been weaned off chronic glucocorticoid therapy and may require stress dose steroids as part of the procedure.

Closure of end stoma: Closure of an end stoma usually requires a midline abdominal incision. After entering the peritoneal cavity, the stoma is freed from the abdominal wall. The most common indication for closure of an end colostomy is restoration of intestinal continuity after emergent surgery for perforated diverticulitis or an obstructing rectal cancer. The severity and indication for the original procedure can have a significant impact on the difficulty of the colostomy takedown. Not infrequently, this procedure begins with **cystoscopy** and **placement of bilateral ureteral stents** by a urologist given the risk of ureteral injury in **reoperative pelvic surgery**. Adhesions are lysed, and the dysfunctional distal bowel is identified. It may be necessary to mobilize the proximal bowel to provide a tension-free anastomosis. An anastomosis can then be created using either hand-sewn or stapled techniques.

Paracolostomy hernia repair: The abdomen may be entered via a midline or a peristomal incision. The stoma is freed from the abdominal wall and hernia sac. The stoma is then moved to an alternate site, and the defect in the abdominal wall is closed. Alternatively, the stoma may be left in its original site and the fascia closed around the bowel that then may be reinforced with biologic or prosthetic mesh. When performed laparoscopically, transfascial sutures and tackers are used to hold the mesh in place. These may cause significant postop pain.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Closure of Loop Stoma	Closure of End Stoma	Repair of Parastomal Hernia
Position	Supine	Modified lithotomy	Supine
Incision	Circumstomal	Midline	Midline or circumstomal
Special instruments	Anastomotic staplers	Anastomotic staplers; may undergo cystoscopy and stents before procedure	Prosthetic or biologic mesh

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Closure of Loop Stoma	Closure of End Stoma	Repair of Parastomal Hernia
Antibiotics	Ertapenem 1 mg iv or second generation cephalosporin	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	45 min to 1.5 h	1.5–3 h	Same
Closing Considerations	Requires only a few fascial sutures; skin may be left open	Paralysis for closure of midline fascial incision and stoma site	Stoma matured after fascial and skin closure if it is relocated to a new site
EBL	25 cc	100–500 cc	< 100 cc
Mortality	< 1%	1–3%	1 %
Morbidity	Anastomotic leak SBO Wound infection	⇐	Recurrent hernia formation
Pain score	5	8	6

PATIENT CHARACTERISTICS

	Closure of Loop Stoma	Closure of End Stoma	Repair of Parastomal Hernia
Age range	Variable; older for patient with cancer, younger for patients with IBD	Variable; tend to be older	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Protection of anastomosis after surgery for rectal cancer; IBD; or as treatment of an anastomotic leak	Prior emergent surgery for colon perforation with peritonitis or obstruction	Prior surgery for rectal cancer, or inflammatory bowel disease
Associated conditions	Colorectal cancer, ulcerative colitis, diverticulitis	Colorectal cancer, diverticulitis, trauma	Colorectal cancer, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis

Suggested Readings

1. Ghorra SG, Rzeczycki TP, Natarajan R, et al: Colostomy closure: impact of preoperative risk factors on morbidity. *Am Surgeon* 1999; 65(3):266–9.
2. Gordon PH, Nivatvongs S, eds: *Principles and Practice of Surgery of Colon, Rectum, and Anus*, 3rd edition. Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.
3. Kaiser AM, Israelit S, Klaristenfeld D, et al: Morbidity of ostomy takedown. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2008; 12(3):437–41.
4. Sajid MS, Craciunas L, Baig MK, et al: Systematic review and meta-analysis of published, randomized, controlled trials comparing suture anastomosis to stapled anastomosis for ileostomy closure. *Tech Coloproctol* 2013; 17(6):631–9.
5. Shah NR, Craft RO, Harold KL: Parastomal hernia repair. *Surg Clin North Am* 2013; 93(5):1185–98.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR LARGE BOWEL SURGERY

(Procedures covered: total proctocolectomy; partial colectomy with anastomosis; colostomy; stoma closure and peristomal hernia repair)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients undergoing colorectal procedures present a heterogeneous group regarding their age, nature of the disease, and implications of the surgery. Indications for large bowel surgery include cancer and inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), both of which can be elective and emergent.

Respiratory	In addition to the common pulmonary diseases such as COPD, asthma, chronic bronchitis, restrictive lung disease, etc., patients with IBD may have inflammatory lung involvement with frequently negligible clinical consequences. In emergent cases due to obstruction, perforation, or peritonitis (metabolic acidosis, electrolytes abnormalities), pain, cramping, and distention are the predominate features. Limited diaphragmatic excursion (↓ TV, ↓ FRC) leads to rapid desaturation after induction. In cases of large bowel obstruction, sufficient preoxygenation and RSI are advisable. In addition, patients with IBD may have arthritis and reduced neck ROM. **Tests:** Electrolytes, ABG in septic cases.
Cardiovascular	Even in elective cases, hypovolemia 2° poor PO intake, vomiting, and diarrhea may be encountered. Antihypertensive drugs can exacerbate the problem (ACE-Inhibitors). Mechanical bowel prep is rarely used nowadays. Hemodynamic instability is common in cases of sepsis and peritonitis (↑ HR, ↓ BP). Vasopressor agents may be indicated. **Tests:** ABG, ECG
Renal	Electrolyte abnormalities 2° vomiting or gastric tube suctioning (metabolic alkalosis) are common. Diarrhea and mechanical bowel preparation can cause metabolic acidosis. Mechanical bowel preparation is rarely utilized because it does not improve outcome. **Tests:** Electrolytes
Gastrointestinal	The majority of patients do not have any acute symptoms; some may have nausea or abdominal pain without noticeable implications for anesthesia. Patients with obstruction either have already an indwelling NG tube or may benefit from decompression of the stomach. Risk of aspiration is prevalent requiring RSI. Pulling the NG tube before the induction of anesthesia is controversial. Patients with IBD may have hepatic function impairments and altered drug metabolism.
Hematologic	Chronic bowel inflammation and cancer often associated with chronic and at times acute GI blood loss. Look for anemia. Consider as well dehydration causing hemoconcentration which may mask anemia. Low albumin levels influence the amount of free circulating drugs in blood. Consider coagulopathy 2° malabsorption. **Tests:** CBC, PLTs, INR
Laboratory	CBC, BMP, T&S vs T&C. Other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1) is usually appropriate. Patients with IBD on chronic steroid therapy should receive their usual daily dose of steroids throughout the periop period and may require full stress-dose steroids.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for intra- and postop analgesia provided there are no contraindications. The majority of colorectal procedures are performed laparoscopically, with a relatively small incision for the hand-port. The postoperative pain after laparoscopic cases can be treated with iv opioids in majority of patients. For open procedures, thoracic epidural is associated with improved postoperative pain control, earlier return of bowel function, early intake of food, and out-of-bed mobilization. Intraoperative use of low concentration bupivacaine or ropivacaine blunts the surgical stress and reduces the intraoperative opioid requirements.

Induction	RSI with cricoid pressure should be performed for induction for patients with an acute abdomen due to risk of pulmonary aspiration (p. B-5). An NG tube may not interfere with cricoid pressure and may be left in place or removed immediately prior to induction after suctioning as it may obscure the airway anatomy during laryngoscopy. If patient is clinically hypovolemic, restoring intravascular volume (colloid, crystalloid) before induction may minimize hypotension. Even with titration of induction agents in elderly patients or those with acute abdomen/sepsis, profound hypotension may occur despite fluid resuscitation, requiring the use of pressors to blunt the effect of induction agents (relative hypovolemia). RSI is not indicated for elective patients, fasted patients, without other indications. Preop hypovolemia is less likely with liberalized NPO guidelines and move away from mechanical preop bowel preps.

Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3) without N_2O. **Combined epidural/GA:** local anesthetic (e.g., 0.125% bupivacaine 3–5 mL q 45–60 min or 1.5–2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine 5–10 mL q 60–90 min) can be injected into the epidural catheter to provide both anesthesia and optimal surgical exposure (contracted bowel and profound muscle relaxation). A continuous infusion of local anesthetic (e.g., 0.125% bupivacaine at 4–8 mL/h may enhance hemodynamic stability compared to bolus technique. A loading dose of epidural opiate (e.g., hydromorphone 0.4–0.8 mg) should be administered 1–2 h before conclusion of surgery. Patients receiving epidural opiates should be monitored for development of delayed postop respiratory depression, and systemic sedatives (e.g., opiates, benzodiazepines) should be minimized. If placed intraoperatively, gastric tubes are increasingly removed in the OR at the conclusion of surgery.	
Emergence	The decision to extubate at the end of surgery depends on the patient's volume status, underlying cardiopulmonary status, and extent of surgical procedure. Patients should be hemodynamically stable, warm, alert, and cooperative, and fully reversed from any muscle relaxants before extubation and have adequate return of pulmonary function.	
Blood and fluid requirements	3rd-space losses may be significant in setting of acute abdomen and systemically ill patients. 18 ga iv for elective cases: consider additional and larger ga for emergency cases or hemodynamically unstable patients. NS/LR @ 5–10 mL/kg/h Warm fluids Consider T&S or T&C	NS preferable to LR for fluid replacement in patients with metabolic alkalosis. Maintain euvolemia based on EBL and estimates of fluid shifts, UO, HR, BP, base deficit, lab studies, and invasive monitoring when used.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) UO ± Arterial line ± CVP Temperature	Arterial line and CVP, as indicated by patient's status. Hypothermia may delay healing and predispose patients to wound infections. Avoid hypothermia with forced-air, warming blanket, warming room temperature, and keeping patient covered until ready for prep.
Positioning	Trendelenburg/reverse Trendelenburg ✓ ± lithotomy and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Both Trendelenburg and reverse Trendelenburg may be used during laparoscopic bowel surgery. Position, pad, and secure patient accordingly. Arms usually tucked for laparoscopic cases. ✓ IV access before draping.
Complications	Septic shock Aspiration gastric contents Hemorrhage Injuries to spleen, bowel, and ureters Unresectability of tumor	Hemodynamic instability 2° sepsis, hemorrhage, especially during manipulation of necrotic bowel.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Atelectasis Hemodynamic instability Sepsis VTE (see Appendix B) Injuries to bowel and ureters PONV (see Appendix B)	Patients may have considerable 3rd-space losses that require invasive monitoring, ICU admission, vasopressors. If placed intraop, gastric tubes are often removed in the OR at the conclusion of surgery.

Pain management	Taylor regimen to individual and clinical circumstances and needs. Consider preemptive analgesia: gabapentin 600 mg, acetaminophen, COX-2 inhibitors. Consider use of nonopiate adjuncts: NSAIDS, ketamine, GABA analogues (gabapentin, pregabalin), acetaminophen. Epidural analgesia (p. C-3) PCA (p. C-3)
Tests	CBC; CXR (if central line placed), electrolytes, glucose

Suggested Readings

1. Carli F, Mayo N, Klubien K, et al: Epidural analgesia enhances functional exercise capacity and health-related quality of life after colonic surgery: results of a randomized trial. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 97(3):540–9.
2. Carli F, Trudel J, Belliveau P: The effect of intraoperative thoracic epidural anesthesia and postoperative analgesia on bowel function after colorectal surgery: a prospective, randomized trial. *Dis Colon Rect* 2001; 44(8):1083–9.
3. Chestovich PJ, Lin AY, Yoo J: Fast-track pathways in colorectal surgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2013; 93(1):21–32.
4. Eskicioglu C, Forbes SS, Fenech DS, et al: Preoperative bowel preparation for patients undergoing elective colorectal surgery: a clinical practice guideline endorsed by the Canadian Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons. *Can J Surg* 2010; 53(6):385–95.
5. Hendren SK, Morris AM: Evaluating patients undergoing colorectal surgery to estimate and minimize morbidity and mortality. *Surg Clin North Am* 2013; 93(1):1–20.
6. Lacy AM, Delgado S, Castells A, et al: The long-term results of a randomized clinical trial of laparoscopy-assisted versus open surgery for colon cancer. *Ann Surg* 2008; 248:1–7.
7. Nelson R, Edwards S, Tse B: Prophylactic nasogastric decompression after abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; CDO04929.
8. Richards ER, Kabir SI, McNaught CE, MacFie J: Effect of thoracic epidural anesthesia on splanchnic blood flow. *BR J Surg* 2013; 100(3):316–21.
9. Yong SL, Coulthard P, Wrzosek A: Supplemental perioperative steroids for surgical patients with adrenal insufficiency. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12:CD005367.

OPERATIONS FOR RECTAL PROLAPSE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Rectal prolapse (procidentia) is intussusception of the full thickness of the rectal wall beyond the anal canal. It must be distinguished from rectal mucosal prolapse, caused by elongation of the mucosal attachments to the underlying sphincter muscle, and internal intussusception, where the upper rectum folds into the lower rectum, but does not descend through the sphincter mechanism. Rectal mucosal prolapse is treated as part of the spectrum of hemorrhoidal disease, and mild-to-moderate intussusception does not benefit from surgery. Procidentia is associated frequently with anal incontinence. The surgical approaches to procidentia are determined by patient age, concurrent medical disease, sphincter function, and prior operative history, including previous abdominal surgery and prior attempts at surgical repair. Surgical treatment of procidentia may be undertaken through an abdominal or a perineal approach. Abdominal repair of rectal prolapse can be performed in either an open or laparoscopic fashion. The abdominal approaches have a lower recurrence rate and because they do not diminish the capacity of the rectal reservoir and are generally preferable for maintaining fecal continence. **Rectopexy** is an abdominal approach in which the rectum is mobilized in the posterior plane from the sacral promontory to the levator muscles. The rectum is then pulled cephalad and sutured to the presacral fascia with multiple nonabsorbable sutures, or tacked to the presacral fascia using surgical tacks. Mesh may or may not be used to fix the rectum to the sacrum depending on the operative preference of the surgeon. Many surgeons routinely perform **sigmoid resection** along with rectopexy. They believe that removal of the redundant sigmoid further diminishes the chance of late recurrence and may alleviate constipation. A number of approaches have been described, the most popular being the **Ripstein procedure**. **Sling procedures** have equivalent recurrence rates, but higher complication rates. As in rectopexy, the rectum is mobilized along the presacral plane down to the level of the levators. A band of Marlex mesh is sewn to the presacral fascia at the sacral promontory, upward traction is placed on the rectum, and the mesh is sutured to the rectum. **Transabdominal repair** of rectal prolapse is the favored approach for younger patients with rectal prolapse or older paints with few medical comorbidities due to the significantly lower rate of recurrence of the prolapse.

Not uncommonly, however, patients with rectal prolapse are significantly advanced in age or have significant medical comorbidities. In these higher risk patients, prolapse may be repaired via a perineal approach. The most common of these is **perineal rectosigmoidectomy (or Altemeier procedure)**. The prolapsed rectum is withdrawn through the anal canal to its full extent, and a circumferential incision is made in the outer tube of the prolapsed bowel just proximal to the dentate line. This exposes the inner tube of prolapsed bowel and mesentery. Redundant bowel is mobilized from the distal end, up to the point that no additional bowel can be delivered into the operative field. The redundant bowel is transected, and a primary anastomosis is fashioned between the cut ends of the inner and outer bowel. Prior to anastomosis, the levator muscles are often approximated in the midline in an effort to aid continence. When the volume of prolapsed tissue is small or a previous abdominal approach makes blood supply to the rectum questionable, the **Delorme procedure** often is performed. During this procedure, the mucosa is stripped off the prolapsed rectum, and the prolapsed rectal muscle is foreshortened by plication until it resides above the sphincters. **Perineal repair** of rectal prolapse is most commonly done under a general anesthetic as the patient is typically positioned prone, the procedure can take 60–90 min; and in the case of a **perineal rectosigmoidectomy**, the peritoneal cavity is entered. However, in very high risk patients for whom intubation or general anesthesia is a concern, the procedure can be done under an epidural, or local with sedation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Full thickness rectal prolapse

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Rectopexy	Rectopexy with Sigmoid Resection	Perineal Rectosigmoidectomy	Delorme Procedure
Position	Lithotomy	⇐	Prone jackknife; lithotomy	⇐
Incision	Low transverse; low midline	⇐	No external incision	⇐
Special instrumentation	Deep pelvic instruments; mesh if sling planned	Deep pelvic instruments	Hip-roll for jackknife position; anastomosis may be created with EEA stapler	Hip roll for jackknife position
Unique considerations	Presacral venous plexus bleeding may occur; bowel prep may cause dehydration or hypokalemia.	⇐	Epinephrine solutions may be used to diminish bleeding; bowel prep may cause dehydration or hypokalemia.	⇐
Antibiotics	Ertapenem 1 g iv or 2nd generation cephalosporin	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL; more if reoperation	100–300 mL; more if reoperation	100–200 mL	100 mL
Postop care	No rectal probes or medications	⇐	⇐	⇐
Mortality	0–2%	0–4%	1–4%	0–1%
Morbidity	Rectal stricture (with sling): 5–10% Recurrent prolapse: 2–8% Pelvic infection: 5%	— 2–5% — Anastomotic leak: 2–4%	— 20–40% — —	— 5–10% — —
Pain score	7	7	2	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Women: peak incidence in 6th—7th decade; men: evenly distributed through age range
Male:Female	1:4
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	Decreased pelvic muscular support; congenital deficiency of rectal support; pudendal neuropathy; chronic constipation and straining; multiparity; myelomeningocele; spina bifida; cystic fibrosis (children); acute parasitic diarrheal illness (children)
Associated conditions	Fecal incontinence; urinary stress incontinence; rectocele; cystocele

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Fecal Incontinence, p. 559.

Suggested Readings

1. Fazeli MS, Kazemeini AR, Keshvari A, et al: Delorme's procedure: an effective treatment for a full-thickness rectal prolapse in young patients. *Ann Coloproctol* 2013; 29(2):60–5.
2. Magruder JT, Efron JE, Wick EC, et al: Laparoscopic rectopexy for rectal prolapse to reduce surgical-site infections and length of stay. *World J Surg* 2013; 37(5):1110–4.
3. Mustain WC, Davenport DL, Parcells JP, et al: Abdominal versus perineal approach for treatment of rectal prolapse: comparable safety in a propensity-matched cohort. *Am Surg* 2013; 79(7):686–92.
4. Senapati A, Gray RG, Middleton LJ, et al: PROSPER: a randomised comparison of surgical treatments for rectal prolapse. *Colorectal Dis* 2013; 15(7):858–68.

RECTAL SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Many lesions within the distal two-thirds of the rectum can be excised through a **transanal approach** (Fig. 7.4-2). The most common benign tumors treated by local excision are adenomas. Lesions such as carcinoid tumor, endometrioma, and solitary rectal ulcer also may be locally excised. Transanal excision of benign lesions may be performed in the submucosal plane, whereas suspected malignancies are excised by removing the entire thickness of the rectal wall. A full antibiotic and mechanical bowel prep is given. Transanal excision usually is performed in the prone jackknife position, although the lithotomy position may be used when the lesion is located on the posterior rectal wall. A local anal block, usually 0.25% bupivacaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine, is performed to relax the sphincter mechanism and minimize sphincter injury, aid in hemostasis, and diminish postoperative pain. An **anoscope** is inserted into the anal canal. Stay sutures may be placed adjacent to the area of resection. On occasion, lesions may be prolapsed all the way through the anus and excised outside the body. Generally, the dissection starts at the distal end of the lesion and proceeds proximally. The **proctotomy** may be closed with running or interrupted sutures. These sutures are then grasped and used for further traction. When the specimen is removed, a few final sutures are needed to close the proximal-most incision. **Rigid proctoscopy** is performed to confirm preservation of an adequate lumen.

VARIANT PROCEDURE OR APPROACHES

TEM: A recently developed technique for the removal of larger lesions or lesions more proximally located in the rectum is **Transanal Endoscopic Microsurgery (TEM)**. In this technique, the patient is placed on the operating table in a position that puts the lesion to be removed posterior. Because of this, the patient may be prone, supine in lithotomy, or in the right or left lateral decubitus position. The procedure is performed through a larger operating proctoscope that is secured to the operating table. The colon is insufflated using carbon dioxide to provide an

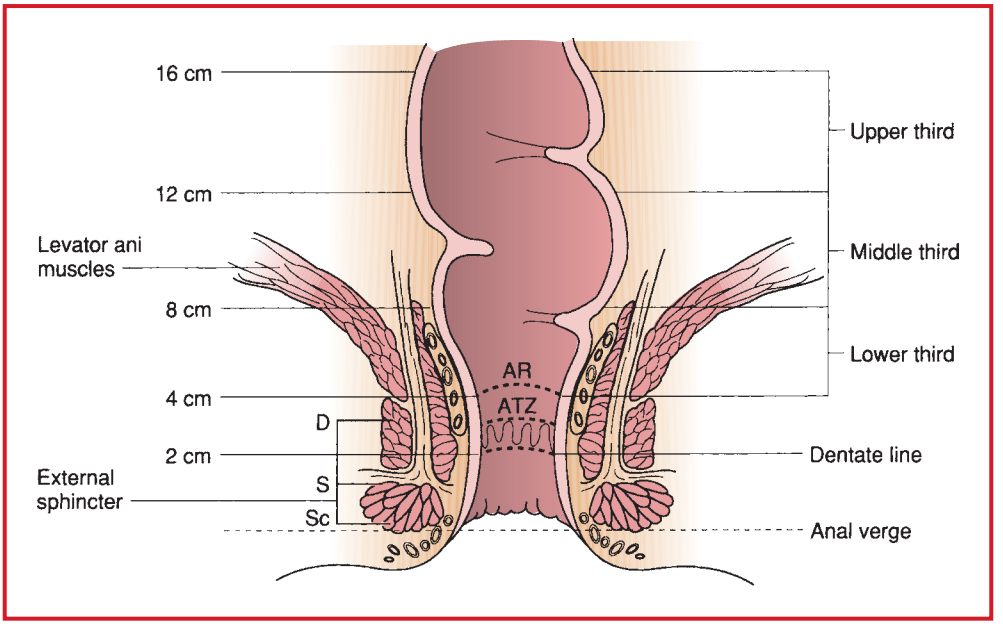


Figure 7.4-2. Anorectal anatomy with important landmarks. Approximate measurements are relative to the anal verge. D = deep; S = superficial; Sc = subcutaneous; AR = anorectal ring; ATZ = anal transition zone. (Reproduced with permission from Yahanda AM, Chang AE: Colorectal cancer. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

operating space. The carbon dioxide will be absorbed through the mucosa of the colon and be exhaled. Laparoscopic like instruments are passed through the proctoscope, and the surgeon views the operation either through a stereo viewer attached to the proctoscope or on a video screen. The lesion in question is removed and the defect in the rectum sutured closed.

Transsacral: The **transsacral (Kraske) approach** to rectal tumors offers wider exposure than the transanal approach, but is more painful and has a substantially greater likelihood of complications (wound infection, fecal fistula, incontinence). A transsacral approach may be advantageous when the lesion is located behind the rectum (retrorectal tumors) and when resection of the lower sacrum or coccyx is anticipated. Transsacral resection generally is performed in the prone jackknife position. An incision is made from the posterior commissure of the anus to the base of the sacrum. The sphincter muscles are spared, but the levator muscles are divided to expose the posterior wall of the rectum. The coccyx may be disarticulated and removed to improve exposure. It is also possible to remove the lower sacral segments through this approach, but increasing morbidity accrues as the sacral nerve roots are sacrificed. For a posterior-wall lesion, the posterior wall of the rectum is opened, and the lesion, along with a full-thickness disc of rectal wall, is excised. If the lesion is on the anterior wall, two proctotomy incisions are necessary. The proctotomy incisions are closed with standard anastomotic techniques. The levator muscles are reapproximated, and the skin is closed. A drain may be placed within the retrorectal space before closing. The transsacral approach may be combined with an **abdominal approach (abdominal-transsacral resection)** in some cases of low rectal cancer.

Transsphincteric: The **transsphincteric (York-Mason)** approach to rectal lesions also gives wider exposure than does the transanal approach, but at the expense of a substantially greater risk of fecal incontinence. Transsphincteric excision is performed with the patient in the prone jackknife position. An incision is made at the posterior commissure of the anus and is extended along the lateral border of the coccyx and sacrum. The external sphincter, internal sphincter, and levator ani muscles are sequentially transected in the posterior midline. As each muscle is cut, the cut edges are tagged with sutures to facilitate accurate reapproximation. The rectal wall is incised, and the lesion is excised. The proctotomy incision is closed via standard anastomotic suturing techniques, and the individual components of the sphincter muscle are reapproximated with interrupted sutures. The overlying skin is closed in a standard fashion.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transanal Excision	Transsacral Excision	Transsphincteric Excision	Transanal Endoscopic Microsurgery
Position	Prone jackknife or lithotomy	Prone jackknife	⇐	Prone jackknife, lithotomy, or lateral decubitus
Incision	Intrarectal	Anus-to-lateral sacral wall	⇐	Intrarectal
Special instrumentation	Rigid proctoscope; headlight and/or fiberoptic retractors; Foley catheter	Gigli or power saw if sacral resection contemplated; headlight and/or fiberoptic retractors; Foley catheter	Headlight and/or fiberoptic retractors; Foley catheter	Proctoscope (40 mm diameter), removable faceplate, optical stereoscope, light cord, pressure transducer, laparoscopic camera, insufflator, instruments (5 mm diameter), Martin arm to hold equipment
Unique considerations	Bowel prep may → dehydration and hypokalemia.	⇐	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Ertapenem 1 g iv or 2nd generation cephalosporin	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	15–120 min	1–2 h	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL	< 100 mL (500 mL if sacral resection)	⇐	⇐
Postop care	No rectal temperatures, suppositories, or enemas	⇐	⇐	⇐
Mortality	0–2%	⇐	⇐	0.3–2%
Morbidity	Tumor recurrence: 5–50%	50%	5–50%	4–20%
	Urinary retention: 10–20%	⇐	⇐	⇐
	Bleeding: 2–5%	⇐	⇐	2%
	Pelvic sepsis: 0–4%	⇐	⇐	0.8%
	Ureteral injury: < 1% (minimized by use of Foley)	⇐	⇐	Intraperitoneal entry: 1–4%
		Fecal fistula: 10–30%		
		Fecal incontinence: 5–10%	10–40%	2%
Pain score	3	7	7	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Rectal adenomas: 5th–7th decades; rectal adenocarcinoma: 6th–9th decades; endometrioma: 2nd–4th decades; solitary rectal ulcer syndrome: 4th–8th decades; carcinoid tumors: 5th–8th decades
Male: Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	Varies with disease; not uncommon
Etiology	Varies with disease
Associated conditions	Preexisting anorectal pathology, such as fecal incontinence, may require concurrent treatment

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Fecal Incontinence, p. 559.

Suggested Readings

1. Cataldo PA: Transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2006; 86(4):915–25.
2. Chapuis P, Bokey L, Fahrer M, et al: Mobilization of the rectum: anatomic concepts and the bookshelf revisited. *Dis Colon Rect* 2002; 45(1):1–9.
3. Glimelius BL: The role of preoperative and postoperative radiotherapy in rectal cancer. *Clin Colorect Can* 2002; 2(2):82–92.
4. Kapiteijn E, van de Velde CJ: Developments and quality assurance in rectal cancer surgery. *Euro J Cancer* 2002; 38(7):919–36.
5. Moore HG, Guillem JG: Local therapy for rectal cancer. *Surg Clin North Am* 2002; 82(5):967–81.
6. Richards ER, Kabir SI, McNaught CE, MacFie J: Effect of thoracic epidural anaesthesia on splanchnic blood flow. *Br J Surg* 2013 Feb; 100(3):316–21.
7. Wolff BG, Garcia-Aguilar J, Roberts PL, et al, eds: *The ASCRS Textbook of Colon and Rectal Surgery*. Springer Science-Business Media, New York: 2007.

ANORECTAL SURGERY

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Anorectal procedures are common general surgical operative procedures. The most common anorectal procedures are done for symptomatic hemorrhoids, perianal abscesses and fistulas, and anal fissures. Many of these procedures can be accomplished under local anesthesia with an anal canal block. This provides anesthesia for the procedure and also provides for postoperative pain control if a long-acting local anesthetic is used. Performing the block can be painful and is usually performed in conjunction with sedation provided by the anesthesiologist. These procedures can be more extensive, and reoperative procedures may require general anesthesia. Anorectal procedures can be safely performed in the prone jackknife position as well as in the lithotomy position at the preference of the surgeon. One of the most common complications after anorectal surgery is urinary retention. This fact should be kept in mind when determining the volume of intravenous fluid to be given during the procedure.

SURGERY FOR ANAL FISTULAS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The majority of perianal fistulae are due to infection in the anal glands within the rectal wall that communicates with crypts located at the dentate line (cryptoglandular fistula). Fistulae also may be the result of trauma, Crohn's disease, inflammatory processes within the peritoneal cavity, neoplasms, or as a consequence of radiation therapy. The ultimate treatment of fistula-in-ano is determined by the etiology and the anatomic course of the fistula. The principle behind treatment of cryptoglandular fistulae is to ablate the offending gland and lay open the tract. Fistulae that track above the majority of the sphincter mechanism must be treated by procedures that either do not cut the overlying sphincter, cut the sphincter and repair it, or cut the sphincter very gradually (seton, see below). A fistula may be treated at the time of drainage of a perianal abscess or as a separate, elective operation. The route of

a fistula tract is best determined by exploration at the time of operation. Although local anesthesia is acceptable for most fistulae, a few fistula operations require regional or general anesthesia because the ultimate route and depth of the fistula is unknown. Special consideration is given to fistulae that arise in the setting of Crohn's disease. Poor wound healing and the importance of sphincter function in patients with chronic diarrhea dictate that only the most superficial fistulae are laid open. The primary goal is palliation, specifically, abscess drainage and recurrence prevention. This is often accomplished by placing a silastic seton (a ligature around sphincter muscles) around the fistula tract and leaving it in place indefinitely. In the absence of active Crohn's disease in the rectum and anus, attempts at fistula cure may be undertaken.

VARIANT PROCEDURE OR APPROACHES

Fistulotomy: Fistulotomy involves cutting all tissues superficial to a fistula so that the fistula tract is brought to the skin level. The opened, fibrotic fistula wall is often sewn to the skin edge (marsupialized). Fistulectomy involves excision of the entire fistula tract. When conventional fistulotomy would cause incontinence, a seton may be used. Other approaches that may be used to avoid fecal incontinence are complete fistulotomy with immediate reconstruction of the sphincter and excision of the internal opening by an endorectal advancement flap technique.

Fistula plug: The fistula plug involves the use of a bioabsorbable xenograft made of lyophilized porcine intestinal submucosa that is reconstituted in saline and placed in the fistula tract. This method may be preferred for fistulae that would require transection of a significant portion of the anal sphincters such that the surgeon is concerned about the impact on continence. It is used for both cryptoglandular fistulas and Crohn's disease-related fistulas.

Lift procedure: A LIFT procedure (ligation of the intersphincteric fistula tract) is a third technique used to treat fistulas that cannot be treated by fistulotomy. An incision is made in the anatomic plane between the internal and external sphincters. After the fistula tract is divided, the openings in the anal canal as well as in the internal and external anal sphincters are sutured closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fistula-in-ano

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Fistulotomy or Fistulectomy	Fistulotomy with Seton	Endorectal Advancement Flap	Fistula Plug
Position	Prone jackknife; rarely lithotomy	⇐	Prone jackknife	⇐
Incision	Perianal	⇐	⇐	None
Antibiotics	None	None	Ertapenem 1 g iv or 2nd generation cephalosporin	None
Surgical time	10–30 min	⇐	60–90 min	5–10 min
EBL	< 50 mL	⇐	⇐	Negligible
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Fecal incontinence: 0–30% Nonhealing, or recurrent fistula: 5%	10–30% 10–20%. (This procedure used only in complex fistulae, so complication rate appears higher.)	0–10% 10–40%. (This procedure used only in complex fistulae, so complication rate appears higher.)	0% 25–50%
Pain score	6	6	6	0–1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	2nd–7th decades
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Infection within anal glands located at dentate line (cryptoglandular fistula); trauma; Crohn's disease; inflammatory processes within the peritoneal cavity; neoplasms; consequence of radiation therapy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Fecal Incontinence, p. 559.

Suggested Readings

1. Bailey HR, Snyder MJ, eds: *Ambulatory Anorectal Surgery*. Springer-Verlag, New York: 2000.
2. Beck D, Roberts P, Saclarides T, eds: *The ASCRS Textbook of Colorectal Surgery,* 2nd edition. Springer and The American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons, New York: 2011.
3. Darrah DM, Griebling TL, Silverstein JH: Postoperative urinary retention. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2009; 27(3):465–84.
4. Gordon PH, Nivatvongs S, eds: *Principles and Practice of Surgery of Colon, Rectum, and Anus,* 3rd edition. Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.
5. Tan KK, Kaur G, Byrne CM, et al: Long-term outcome of the anal fistula plug for anal fistula of cryptoglandular origin. *Colorectal Dis* 2013; 15(12):1510–4.

HEMORRHOIDECTOMY/STAPLED HEMORRHOIDOPEXY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Hemorrhoids are normally occurring vascular tissues located in discrete aggregations known as hemorrhoidal cushions within the distal rectum and anus. Thought to play a role in the fine control of enteric continence, they are only treated if they cause a symptom that persists after conservative therapy. Hemorrhoids may bleed, prolapse, and cause mucous drainage, itching, or pain (when thrombosed). The primary pathophysiologic event in the development of symptomatic hemorrhoids is thought to be mucosal prolapse 2° degeneration of the fibroelastic tissue that tethers vascular cushions and overlying mucosa to the submucosa. Many modern treatments diminish prolapse by fixing the mucosa to the submucosa with scar tissue. Hemorrhoids are classified as internal (when above the dentate line) or external (when below) (see Fig. 7.4-2). Internal hemorrhoids are further classified by symptoms: I—bleed; II— bleed, prolapse, and spontaneously reduce; III—bleed, prolapse, and require manual reduction; IV—bleed, prolapse, and cannot be reduced. The most common symptom from external hemorrhoids is severe pain caused by thrombosis. Surgical treatment involves excision of the thrombosed hemorrhoid, often under local anesthetic, in the office. Internal hemorrhoids may be treated by nonexcisional or excisional techniques. Nonexcisional techniques generally are used in the office or outpatient clinic. They do not require an anesthetic because their use is limited to the insensate tissues above the dentate line. Nonexcisional treatments include rubber-band ligation, infrared coagulation, sclerotherapy, and cryotherapy.

Hemorrhoidectomy: Surgical **hemorrhoidectomy** may be performed in the lithotomy or prone jackknife position. An **anoscope** is placed in the anal canal, and a hemorrhoid column is grasped and tented up into the lumen. A suture is placed at the internal apex of the complex. An incision is started at the external apex of the hemorrhoidal complex and a plane is developed deep to the hemorrhoidal tissue and superficial to the sphincter muscles. When the internal sphincter is identified, the dissection proceeds in the avascular space along its luminal surface. The dissection is continued up into the rectum to the transfixing suture. Lateral incisions along the redundant tissue are completed to excise the hemorrhoid. Care is taken to leave healthy bridges of mucosa between adjacent hemorrhoidal columns. Hemostasis is obtained with cautery, and the mucosal defect may be closed with a running, absorbable suture. It also is acceptable to leave the mucosal wound open. The procedure is repeated over the other enlarged, symptomatic hemorrhoidal complexes, removing redundant tissue and leaving long, vertical scars to prevent further mucosal prolapse.

VARIANT PROCEDURE OR APPROACHES

Whitehead procedure: The **Whitehead hemorrhoidectomy (circumferential hemorrhoidectomy)** and **Lord procedure (sphincter stretch)** have been largely abandoned. Lasers have not been shown to improve results in the treatment of hemorrhoids.

Rubber-band ligation requires no anesthesia because the band is placed on the insensate, distal rectal mucosa. An **anoscope** is inserted into the anal canal to visualize a hemorrhoid column. The most proximal area of redundant mucosa is grasped with a clamp and pulled into the barrel of the ligation gun. A rubber band is placed on the base of the tented-up hemorrhoid tissue. The encompassed tissue sloughs over 4–7 d, and a scar is formed between the mucosa and the underlying muscle.

Stapled hemorrhoidectomy: **A stapled hemorrhoidectomy or hemorrhoidopexy** is used for the correction of mucosal hemorrhoidal prolapse. This procedure is performed in the same position and under the same anesthesia as a conventional hemorrhoidectomy. A circular anal dilator is anchored to the skin with heavy sutures, an obturator is passed, and a purse-string is created with absorbable 2–0 suture 3–4 cm above the dentate line. The stapler head is passed above the purse-string, and the sutures are pulled while the stapler is closed. In women, the vaginal wall must be examined to ensure that it has not been incorporated. The stapler is fired, cutting the incorporated mucosal prolapse, pulling the internal and external hemorrhoids proximally. Thus the hemorrhoids themselves are not removed. Hemostasis is obtained with sutures as needed. Cautery should be used with caution, because of the staples. This procedure is associated with a higher rate of disease recurrence and cost.

Usual preop diagnosis: Symptomatic hemorrhoids, bleeding, and/or prolapse

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Surgical Hemorrhoidectomy	Stapled Hemorrhoidopexy
Position	Prone jackknife, lithotomy, or left lateral decubitus	Prone jackknife, lithotomy
Incision	Series of vertical incisions from anal verge to top of hemorrhoid columns	None
Special instrumentation	Headlight or lighted anoscope; operating anoscope	Circular anal dilator, obturator, stapler
Antibiotics	None	None
Surgical time	30–90 min	10–20 min
EBL	< 100 mL	100 mL
Postop care	Sitz baths, oral fluids, fiber supplements	
Mortality	Rare	
Morbidity	Urinary retention: 15–30% Incontinence: 1–6% Bleeding: 2–5% Stricture: 2–5% Infection: 1–2%	
Pain score	9	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Peak prevalence 45–65 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Prevalence 75/1000
Etiology	Low-fiber diet; genetic; pregnancy
Associated conditions	Constipation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Fecal Incontinence p. 559.

Suggested Readings

1. Corman ML, Gravie JF, Hager T, et al: Stapled haemorrhoidopexy: a consensus position paper by an international working party—indications, contra-indications and technique. *Colorectal Dis* 2003; 5(4):304–10.
2. Gençosmanoglu R, et al: Hemorrhoidectomy: open or closed technique: a prospective, randomized clinical trial. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; 45:70–5.
3. Hussein AM: Ligation-anopexy for treatment of advanced hemorrhoidal disease. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; 44:1887–90.
4. Khan S, Pawlak SE, et al: Surgical treatment of hemorrhoids: prospective, randomized trial comparing closed excisional hemorrhoidectomy and the Harmonic Scalpel technique of excisional hemorrhoidectomy. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; 44:845–9.
5. Shao WJ, Li GC, Zhang GH, et al: Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials comparing stapled haemorrhoidopexy with conventional haemorrhoidectomy. *Br J Surg* 2008; 95(2):147–60.
6. Wolff BG, Garcia-Aguilar J, Roberts PL, et al, eds: *The ASCRS Textbook of Colon and Rectal Surgery*, Springer Science-Business Media, New York: 2007.

OPERATIONS FOR FECAL INCONTINENCE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In the majority of patients, fecal incontinence is caused by a combination of pudendal neuropathy and atrophy of pelvic floor muscles. Only when an anatomic defect in the sphincter mechanism can be identified is surgery likely to be beneficial. **Sphincteroplasty** is performed in the prone jackknife position after a full mechanical bowel prep. An incision is made at the anal verge, centered over the area of injured sphincter, and extended sufficiently around the anus to reach the retracted, cut edges of the sphincter. The anoderm and rectal mucosa are dissected off the internal surface of the sphincter. The external surface of the sphincter mechanism is then dissected free to the level of the pelvic diaphragm. Care must be taken not to injure the inferior hemorrhoidal nerves during dissection around the posterior–lateral sphincter. The fibrotic portion linking the two ends of sphincter is cut, and the ends are overlapped and secured in place with two layers of interrupted horizontal mattress sutures. In women with obstetric injuries, the transverse perineal muscles are reapproximated. The skin may be reapproximated at the anal verge and along the reconstructed perineum or left open. The remainder of the skin is closed as completely as possible.

VARIANT PROCEDURES OR APPROACHES

Parks postanal repair: The surgical options for patients without anatomic defects in their sphincters are generally unsuccessful. The **posterior anoplasty of Parks** was designed to passively enhance continence by increasing the normally occurring angle between the rectum and the anal canal and to increase the mechanical efficiency of weak sphincter muscle by shortening the fiber length. Lack of efficacy has limited its use, although some surgeons still perform it in the setting of continued incontinence after abdominal repair of rectal prolapse. The operation is performed in the prone jackknife position after a standard bowel prep. A hemispherical incision is made at the level of the intersphincteric groove over the posterior half of the anus. The plane between the internal and external anal sphincters is identified and developed proximally to above the puborectalis musculus. The puborectalis fibers are "reefed," or pulled together, as far as possible with nonabsorbable sutures. The external sphincter is plicated together in the midline with a series of nonabsorbable sutures that start at the deep external sphincter and progress to the subcutaneous sphincter. Skin is closed with absorbable sutures.

Thiersch procedure: The **Thiersch operation (pinch graft)** has a high complication rate and should be considered primarily in debilitated patients with symptomatic rectal prolapse or fecal incontinence. As originally described, the anal canal was encircled with a silver wire, which served as a passive obstacle to prolapse or defecation. In more recent years, an elastic sheet of Dacron-impregnated Silastic mesh has been used. Two small incisions are made on opposite sides of the anal verge. A pathway around the anal canal is created by blunt dissection, and a 1.5-cm-wide piece of mesh is led around the anal canal. The ends of the mesh are overlapped in one of the incisions and either sutured or stapled together at an appropriate level of tension. The wounds are irrigated with antibiotic solution, and the incisions are closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fecal (enteric) incontinence

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Overlapping Sphincteroplasty	Parks Repair	Modified Thiersch Procedure
Position	Prone jackknife	⇐	Prone jackknife or lithotomy
Incision	Circumanal	⇐	2 small incisions lateral to the anus
Special instrumentation	Headlight	⇐	Headlight; Silastic mesh
Unique considerations	Urinary catheter preop; standard bowel prep	⇐	None
Antibiotics	Ertapenem 1 g iv or 2nd generation cephalosporin	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	1 h	30–45 min
EBL	< 100 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Early: Sitz baths Late: fiber supplement, stool softener	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Unimproved incontinence: 20% Improved, but minor incontinence: 30% Prolonged wound healing: 20% Infection: 1–2%	60–80% — — —	20% Erosion of prosthesis: 30–60% Obstructed defecation: 20–40% Infection
Pain score	8	7	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Bimodal: 3rd–5th decades for obstetric injury, fistulotomy, and perineal trauma; 6th–8th decades for pudendal neuropathy/pelvic floor atrophy
Male:Female	1:4
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Pudendal neuropathy; pelvic floor atrophy; obstetric injury; injury during anal surgery (fistulotomy, sphincterotomy, hemorrhoidectomy); perineal trauma; neurologic disease; congenital anomalies
Associated conditions	Urinary incontinence; chronic constipation; multiparity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: excision or repair of rectal prolapse; rectal surgery; anal fistulotomy/fistulectomy; anal sphincterotomy/sphincteroplasty; hemorrhoidectomy; operations for fecal incontinence)

Rectal surgery is frequently performed in prone or jackknife positions. Many procedures do not require general anesthesia and can be performed under MAC. Coordination with the surgeon is recommended to determine type and timing of anesthesia.

PREOPERATIVE

Depending on the institutional preference, rectal procedures are frequently performed in prone or jackknife position. Minor rectal surgeries do not necessarily require general endotracheal anesthesia and can be managed with sedation/deep sedation alone.

Respiratory	A careful evaluation of patient's respiratory status is important. If patient has ↓ reserve, the lithotomy position may be better tolerated than the prone or jackknife positions. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Musculoskeletal	Rectoperineal area is very sensitive, thus pain is likely to be present, making it difficult for the patient to stay in supine or sitting position. Consider sufficient pain control preinduction and choose lateral decubitus position if spinal anesthesia is planned.
Hematologic	Acute and chronic GI blood loss not common in this patient population. **Tests:** Consider CBC
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Sedation, GA, spinal techniques may be used. Epidural anesthesia is less common and may spare the anoperineal region.

General anesthesia:

Induction	**General (LMA vs. ETT):** Standard induction (p. B-2). Procedures planned in prone or jackknife position may require careful airway management. Consider ET intubation if airway concerns exist. Management of the prone patient more challenging than the supine position.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)
Emergence	No special considerations

Regional anesthesia:

MAC	IV sedation combined with local perirectal infiltration of local anesthesia by surgeon (such as 4 quadrant pudendal nerve block) is appropriate for many outpatient procedures. Perirectal injection of local anesthetic is painful; rapid acting agents such as propofol, remifentanil, alfentanil, ketamine (hypersalivation may require anticholinergic agents) should be administered to minimize patient discomfort during the injection. As drug effect will vary widely among patients, careful titration of the drugs to desired level of sedation is warranted. Consider need to return patient to supine position quickly (keep bed/gurney at the ready).	
Spinal	Patient may be in either sitting, lateral decubitus, prone, or jackknife position for placement of a subarachnoid block. Doses of local anesthetics should be adequate to provide a high lumbar level (L1-2) of sensory anesthesia (e.g., bupivacaine 8–12 mg). Patients should remain in relative head-up position with hyperbaric solutions and in head-down position with hypobaric solutions to limit cephalad spread of block.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 (depending on scope of rectal procedure NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h	Blood products rarely needed.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Others as clinically indicated.

Positioning	Prone, jackknife or lithotomy may be used ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes and arm positioning ✓ empty stoma bags before turning prone	Chest support or bolsters to optimize ventilation in the jackknife position; care in positioning the patient's extremities and genitals after turning into jackknife position. Avoid pressure on eyes and ears after turning patient.
Complications	Apnea Peripheral nerve injury	May need to convert emergently from MAC to GA. Lithotomy position can damage the peroneal nerve, resulting in foot drop. Improper arm positioning can lead to axillary plexus stretch and nerve damage.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Urinary retention	Catheterize until return of urinary function especially after spinal anesthesia, and may be prevented by restricting the volume of iv fluids administered.
Pain management	Tailor regimen to individual and clinical circumstances and needs. Consider preemptive analgesia: gabapentin 600 mg, acetaminophen, COX-2 inhibitors more extensive and painful procedure. Consider use of nonopiate adjuncts: NSAIDS, ketamine, GABA analogues (gabapentin, pregabalin), acetaminophen PCA (p. C-3)	PO analgesics may be suitable
Tests	As indicated by patient status.	

Suggested Readings

1. Bailey HR, Snyder MJ, eds: *Ambulatory Anorectal Surgery*. Springer-Verlag, New York: 2000.
2. Cosmin BC, Morris AM, Nivatvongs S, et al: Anorectal disorders. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Lillemoe KD, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011.
3. Gordon, PH, Nivatvongs S, eds: *Principles and Practice of Surgery of Colon, Rectum, and Anus*, 3rd edition. Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.
4. Wolff BG, Garcia-Aguilar J, Roberts PL, et al, eds: *The ASCRS Textbook of Colon and Rectal Surgery*. Springer Science-Business Media, New York: 2007.

CHAPTER

7.5 Hepatic Surgery

SURGEONS

Samuel K. S. So, MD, FACS
Harry A. Oberhelman, MD, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens, MD, PhD

HEPATIC RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Samuel K. S. So

Description: **Liver resections** usually are performed to remove primary tumors or metastatic tumors to the liver. The most common malignant primary liver tumor is hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), usually caused by chronic hepatitis B or C, and cirrhosis due to chronic alcohol abuse. Liver resection is also performed for an enlarging hepatic adenoma, which is a benign primary tumor that is susceptible to rupture. The most common secondary tumors removed are metastases from colorectal cancer. In rare cases, it may be necessary to resect a devitalized area of the liver following trauma. The mortality and morbidity following liver resection depends on the extent of the surgery, experience of the surgeon, and the patient's hepatic function. In general, the risk of resection is higher in patients with primary HCC where the uninvolved part of the liver frequently is cirrhotic or diseased from chronic hepatitis B or C. Cirrhotic patients with Plt counts < 80,000, portal HTN with varices, ascites, albumin < 3.5 g/L, and prolonged INR are generally unsuitable candidates for major liver resection because of the high risk of postop liver failure.

Intraop blood loss is the most important predictor of short-term survival. Bleeding is largely from intrahepatic branches of portal and hepatic veins injured during the dissection, potentially leading to massive blood loss within minutes. Liver resection performed by experienced liver surgeon using modern dissection tools often can be performed successfully without the need for blood transfusions (cell salvage techniques should not be used when operating on cancer patients). The mortality rate of major liver resection should be < 2–5%. In my experience, most patients do not require postop ICU care and are usually discharged within 4–5 d. Improved outcomes result from better surgical exposure and mobilization of the liver combined with the standard adoption of new dissection tools to minimize blood loss. These include new ablation devices to coagulate along the planned line of a resection (such as InLine) combined with the use of dissectors using high-pressure water jet (Hydrojet) or ultrasonic pulses (CUSA) to expose the intrahepatic vessels and bile ducts. Intraop ultrasound is very helpful for two reasons: (1) in planning the line of resection and mapping out its relationship with the large intrahepatic portal and hepatic veins and (2) in surveying the entire liver to look for multifocal lesions.

Anatomic vs. nonanatomic liver resection: Until the last decade, most liver surgeons performed **anatomic liver resections** in which the porta hepatitis is dissected and the corresponding extrahepatic branches of the hepatic artery, portal vein, bile duct, and hepatic vein are mobilized and ligated before resection of the liver parenchyma (Fig. 7.5-1). In **nonanatomic liver resections**, only the tumor with a margin of 1–2 cm is removed instead of the entire anatomic lobe or segment. This approach is particularly appropriate in patients with cirrhosis or chronic hepatitis, in whom removing too much of the liver will predispose them to hepatic decompensation, and in patients with liver metastases where the risk of recurrence remains high. When nonanatomic resection is performed, dissection of the porta hepatis is unnecessary. Instead, branches of the vessels and hepatic ducts are ligated and resected as they are encountered during the resection of the liver parenchyma. All patients undergoing liver resection should also be grounded with the appropriate pads prior to draping for possible radiofrequency ablation of lesions found not to be suitable for resection.

Temporary occlusion of the hepaticoduodenal ligament that contains the main portal vein, hepatic artery, and common bile duct (**Pringle maneuver**) can be used in resection to minimize blood loss. Most patients will tolerate this maneuver for 15–20 min. In some patients, it may be necessary to repeat the maneuver twice to complete a major resection. However, with good surgical exposure and standard adoption of new dissection tools to minimize blood loss, the Pringle maneuver is rarely necessary.

Usual preop diagnosis: Benign and malignant primary or metastatic tumors of the liver

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Right/Left Lobectomy/ Trisegmentectomy	Partial Right Lobectomy	Left Lateral Segmentectomy
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Upper midline, extending to right subcostal (Lexus incision)	⇐	Upper midline

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Right/Left Lobectomy/ Trisegmentectomy	Partial Right Lobectomy	Left Lateral Segmentectomy
Special instrumentation	Thompson liver retractor; InLine, Helix Hydro-jet or CUSA; TissueLink dissecting sealer; argon beam laser; tumor ablation device; intraop ultrasound; microwave or radiofrequency tumor ablation devices	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	Maintain normal core temp. Most intrahepatic bleeding can be controlled temporarily by compression. Note the duration of Pringle maneuver, if applied. Give mannitol furosemide for hemoglobinuria associated with extensive microwave or radiofrequency ablation of the liver to reduce the risk of postoperative acute tubular necrosis	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Vancomycin/cefazolin 1 g iv preop	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–8 h	4–6 h	< 3 h
Closing considerations	Secure meticulous hemostasis; place two to three subphrenic or perihepatic Jackson Pratt flat bulb suction drains.	⇐	⇐
EBL	Variable (50–800 mL)	50 mL	50 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 2–5%	⇐	< 1%
Morbidity	Ascites: 20–30% Wound infection: 5–10% Liver failure: < 5% Bile leak: < 5% Postop bleeding: < 2–5%	10–20% ⇐ ⇐ < 2–5% ⇐	< 10% ⇐ < 2% ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–8	7–8	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	19–85 yr
Male:Female	4:1 in primary HCC 2:1 in liver metastases
Incidence	Metastatic colorectal cancer is the most common disease treated with liver resection in the United States. The incidence of primary HCC is rising 2° the prevalence of chronic hepatitis C; however, because of delayed Dx and associated hepatitis C cirrhosis, many are not suitable resection candidates. Primary HCC is a common cancer in Asian Americans because of the high prevalence of chronic hepatitis B. Many young Asians (30–50 yr) with HCC 2° chronic hepatitis B may not have cirrhosis.
Associated conditions	Cirrhosis; chronic hepatitis; and, rarely, hemochromatosis; Hx of colorectal surgery in patients with liver metastases

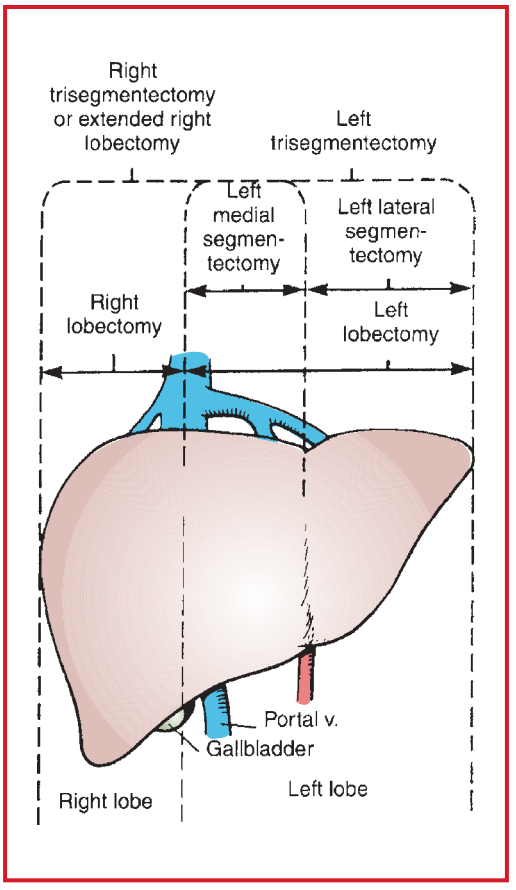


Figure 7.5-1. Types of traditional anatomic liver resection. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Hepatorrhaphy, p. 567.

Suggested Readings

1. D'angelica M, Fung Y: The liver. In: Townsend CM, et al, eds. *Sabiston's Textbook of Surgery,* 18th edition. Sanders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 1463–523.
2. Delman KA, Curley SA: Hepatic neoplasms. In: Mulholland MW, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 956–77.
3. Jarnagin WR: Liver and portal venous system. In: Doherty GM, ed. *Current Surgical Diagnosis and Treatment*, 13th edition. McGraw-Hill Medical, New York: 2010, 509–43.

HEPATORRHAPHY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Harry A. Oberhelman

Description: Although most liver lacerations have stopped bleeding by the time a surgeon sees them, others require suturing or **partial liver resection** to control bleeding. Various techniques are available to control hemorrhage,

including packing, suturing, inflow occlusion, and resection. Small lacerations that have stopped bleeding require no specific therapy other than possible drainage. Lacerations that continue to bleed usually can be sutured and drained. Extensive tears of the liver that are actively bleeding may require temporary occlusion of the porta hepatis, containing the hepatic artery, portal vein, and bile duct (**Pringle maneuver**) to excise devitalized parenchyma and control bleeding with sutures, clips, coagulators, etc. Occasionally, the hepatic vein draining the involved lobe will require clamping to control back-bleeding. When the bleeding cannot be controlled, it is expedient to pack the wound, drain the abdomen, and close. The pack can be removed without much risk of rebleeding within 48–72 h.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma with CT evidence of hepatic laceration

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	Denier retractor
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–2 h
EBL	~300–2000 mL
Mortality	1–2%
Morbidity	Continued bleeding: 2–3% Biliary fistula Perihepatic abscess Intrahepatic hematoma Arterioportal fistula Hepatic and renal failure
Pain score	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Variable
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Trauma (blunt vs penetrating); surgical; hepatic adenomas; needle biopsies of liver

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR HEPATIC PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: hepatic resection; hepatorrhaphy)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for hepatic surgery may have primary or metastatic tumors from GI and other sources. Liver function may be entirely normal in these patients. HCC is seen commonly in males > 50 yr and is associated with chronic active hepatitis B or C and cirrhosis. The preop considerations listed below describe patients without cirrhosis. (See Preoperative Considerations for Surgery for Portal Hypertension, p. 448 for evaluation of patients with cirrhosis).

Respiratory	Respiratory function is typically normal; however, patients with ascites may have respiratory compromise. **Tests:** CXR; others as clinically indicated
Cardiovascular	Patients may be hypovolemic, and volume status should be carefully assessed before induction of anesthesia (skin turgor, UO, orthostatic BP, HR, etc.). Tumors may surround major vascular structures and impede venous return. Consider evaluation with CT/MRI scan.

Hepatic	Liver resection can be indicated for hemangiomas, hydatid cysts, and tumors. It is important to determine the size of the tumor and involvement of vascular structures preop to be adequately prepared for major intraop blood and fluid losses. **Tests:** LFTs; albumin; ultrasound/CT/MRI
Hematologic	The liver produces all clotting factors except VIII, and the degree of hepatic insufficiency determines the extent of any coagulopathy. T&C 2–4 U PRBCs. **Tests:** CBC; PT; PTT; Plt count; others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P. **NB:** For elective cases, if abnormal LFTs are present on preop labs, it is important to perform a complete medical workup. This can include reviewing old lab data, hepatitis serology, and an abdominal ultrasound to r/o cholestatic causes of liver dysfunction. Surgery and anesthesia in the presence of acute hepatitis is associated with a high mortality.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv (see p. B-1). If PT significantly prolonged, consider 10 mg vitamin K iv/po 24 hours before surgery. Consider FFP for rapid correction of PT.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. For major liver resections, the surgeon may attempt to reduce blood loss by applying intermittent vascular inflow occlusion or total vascular exclusion. As the result of ischemia induced by vascular occlusion and the loss of liver mass during resection, liver function may be significantly abnormal in the postop period. Coagulation abnormalities may exist; consequently, an epidural catheter for postop pain relief may be associated with ↑ risk of hematoma formation. Hypovolemia (CVP < 5 mm Hg) prevents liver congestion and results in less bleeding but may increase the likelihood of postoperative renal failure. Euvolemia (CVP 7–10 mm Hg) results in more bleeding and a higher transfusion rate.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Restore intravascular volume before induction. Trauma patients or those with ascites require rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) with cricoid pressure until intubation has been confirmed. If patient is hemodynamically unstable, consider etomidate (0.2–0.4 mg/kg) or ketamine (1–3 mg/kg) in place of propofol.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3); N_2O can be used if bowel distention will not impede surgical exposure/closure. If total vascular occlusion is used, elevate CVP to at least 12 mm Hg by rapid fluid administration before cross-clamping. Have Neo-Synephrine and epinephrine infusions ready to treat ↓ BP. After major resections, significant hemodynamic changes occur. CO and HR increase, and systemic vascular resistance decreases.	
Emergence	For major hepatic resections, the patient will be best cared for in an ICU. After major blood loss, consider keeping the patient mechanically ventilated.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 10–20 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer Humidify gases Consider utilizing rapid-transfusion device	Blood loss can be significant; keep at least 2 U PRBC ahead. Lobectomies often are associated with more blood loss than wedge resections. Massive transfusions may be required and appropriate blood products should be available (e.g., PRBC + FFP + Plt). If procedure does not involve cancer, blood salvage devices may be used.
Control of blood loss	Surgical control Pringle maneuver Total vascular exclusion	Surgical occlusion of the main blood vessels entering the hilar area (Pringle maneuver), or total vascular occlusion. Total vascular exclusion is accomplished by complete occlusion of liver inflow and outflow.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) UO Arterial line ± CVP ± TEE	Others as clinically indicated. If the extent of the resection is not known at the beginning of surgery, appropriate monitoring (CVP, arterial line, additional ivs) should be established prior to beginning resection. Forced-air warmer.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Massive hemorrhage	Ensure adequate vascular access. Consider rapid-transfusion device.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	✓ liver function Hemorrhage Electrolyte imbalance Hypoglycemia Hypothermia, shivering DIC Pulmonary insufficiency	Patients with normal liver function preop may have significant postop impairment of liver function 2° loss of liver mass or ischemic injury induced by vascular occlusion. > 90% of patients will develop some form of respiratory complication (atelectasis, effusion, pneumonia).
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3)	Patient should be recovered in ICU or hospital ward that is accustomed to treating the side effects of opiates (e.g., respiratory depression, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus).
Tests	ABG; CXR; others as clinically indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Clavien PA, Petrowsky H, DeOliveira ML, Graf R: Strategies for safer liver surgery and partial liver transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2007; 356(15):1545–59.
2. Niemann CU, Roberts JP, Ascher NL, et al: Intraoperative hemodynamics and liver function in adult to adult living liver donors. *Liver Transpl* 2002; 8:1126–32.
3. Redai I, Emond J, Brentjens T: Anesthetic considerations during liver surgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2004; 84(2):401–11.
4. Steadman RH, Braunfeld MY: The liver: surgery and anesthesia. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2013, 1294–325.
5. Suman A, Carey W: Assessing the risk of surgery in patients with liver disease. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2006; 73(4):398–404.

CHAPTER

7.6 Biliary Tract Surgery

SURGEON

C. Andrew Bonham, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens, MD, PhD

OPEN CHOLECYSTECTOMY AND COMMON BILE DUCT EXPLORATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: With the advent of laparoscopic cholecystectomy, the traditional **open cholecystectomy** has become a rarity and is generally reserved for gallbladders that are expected to be difficult to remove due to inflammation, previous operations and adhesions, or because of other medical problems, such as coagulopathy or cirrhosis. In most institutions, fewer than 10% of cholecystectomies will be begun as open procedures, and perhaps 5% of laparoscopic cholecystectomies will be converted to open cholecystectomies during the course of the operation due to technical difficulties, complications, or unexpected findings. Because of its rarity, the open cholecystectomy may be a more challenging operation for both surgeon and anesthesiologist than it was in previous decades. A small number of open cholecystectomies are performed in an urgent fashion following a complication of an attempted laparoscopic cholecystectomy and may be associated with significant instability from hemorrhage or sepsis related to an iatrogenic injury of abdominal or retroperitoneal structures.

The technical aspects of open cholecystectomy have not changed since its original description over 100 years ago. The operation can be performed through a right subcostal **(Kocher)**, paramedian, or midline incision. Upward traction is applied to the liver or gallbladder, whereas downward traction on the duodenum exposes the region of the cystic duct and artery and common duct. Adequate exposure is critical to performing a safe operation. Depending on local conditions and the surgeon's preference, the gallbladder may be removed from the top down, excising the gallbladder from the liver bed and isolating the cystic duct and artery as the final stage of the operation. The cystic duct and artery may be isolated and divided first, and the gallbladder removed retrograde from the gallbladder bed as the final step of the procedure. The anatomy of the biliary tree is quite variable, with the classic anatomy present in only 30% of patients, and few surgeons always remove the gallbladder in exactly the same way every time. (Fig. 7.6-1 shows exposure of the gallbladder.)

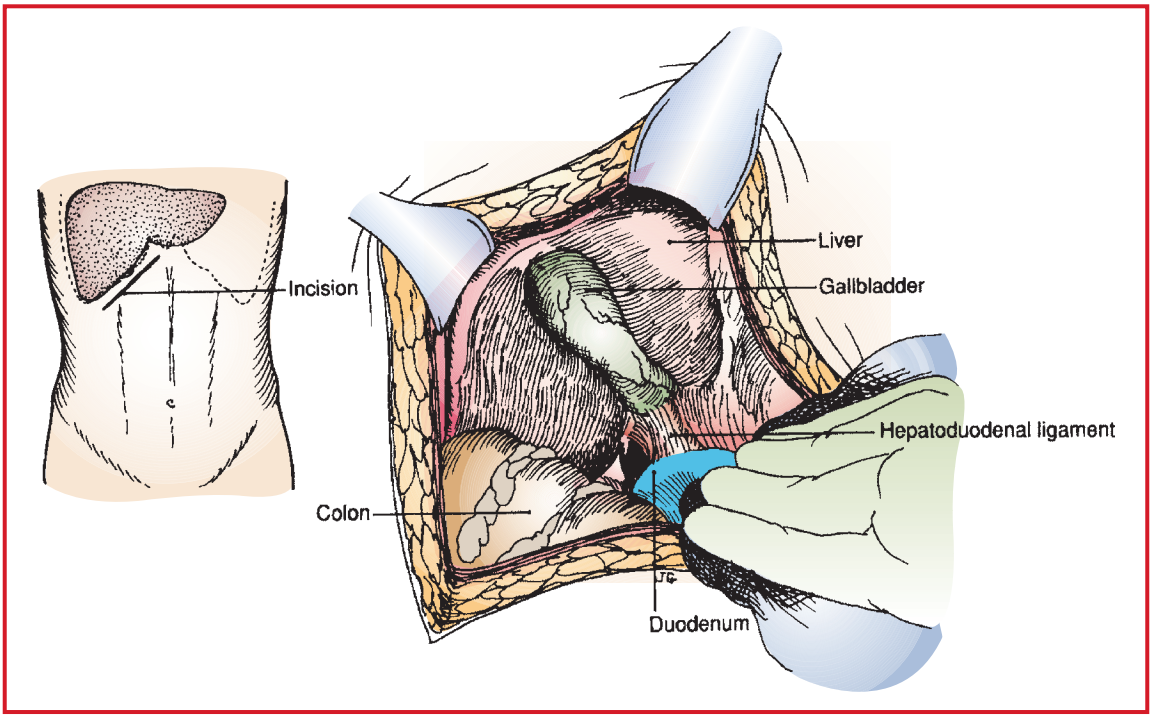


Figure 7.6-1. Incision and exposure of the gallbladder. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2002.)

Cholangiography may be performed at the discretion of the surgeon. Some surgeons perform it in all patients, and others perform it only in patients in whom there is some clinical evidence of choledocholithiasis. The cystic duct is opened and a catheter placed into the duct and secured with a ligature, tie, or special cholangiogram clamp. Dye is injected into the biliary tree via the catheter, and x-rays are taken. If stones are found, a **common duct exploration** may be performed. Alternatively, an **endoscopic retrograde cholangiogram (ERCP)** with stone extraction may be carried out postoperatively. Cholangiography usually adds 10–15 min to the procedure.

Choledochotomy, or **"common duct exploration,"** is the opening and exploration of the common duct for the purpose of extracting stones. Once commonly performed, it is a procedure reserved chiefly for patients who have failed management of common duct stones with endoscopic (ERCP) or laparoscopic techniques. Common duct stones are visualized by operative cholangiography to determine number of stones, position, and the anatomy of the duct. Ducts smaller than 5 mm in diameter are at greater risk of injury with common duct exploration and should be managed endoscopically. An extensive **Kocher maneuver** is performed to allow exposure and palpation of the entire duct, including the intrapancreatic portion. A longitudinal incision is made in the duct, and exploration is carried out through this incision. The duct may be irrigated with NS, balloon catheters may be passed, and various instruments introduced to grasp, remove, or crush retained stones. The duct may be biopsied by this approach, and **choledochoscopy**—the direct visualization of the duct's interior using a small flexible scope—can be performed. Rarely, an impacted stone may require electrohydraulic or laser lithotripsy through the choledochoscope, adding considerable time to the operation in centers equipped to perform the procedure. The choledochotomy is closed over a T-tube to allow decompression of the edematous duct and later extraction of stones missed at the initial exploration. In the past, **transduodenal sphincteroplasty** was utilized for stones impacted near the sphincter of Oddi, but this procedure has largely been replaced by endoscopic or percutaneous techniques at specialized centers. It is reserved for highly unusual cases, such as a patient with a previous **Billroth II gastrectomy**. Depending on the complexity of the findings, a common duct exploration can be expected to add from 30 min to over 1 h to the cholecystectomy. In general, the mortality of patients undergoing common duct exploration is ~2–5 times that of a simple cholecystectomy. This difference can be explained by the fact that patients undergoing common duct exploration tend to be older and sicker or suffering from concomitant cholangitis—the opening of the duct itself is not necessarily a significant physiologic insult.

Variant procedure or approaches: Cholecystectomy remains the mainstay of treatment for symptomatic biliary stone disease. **Nonsurgical treatment of cholelithiasis,** particularly by oral dissolution and/or **lithotripsy**, has very limited usefulness and is rarely used in clinical practice. **Tube cholecystostomy** can be performed as an open procedure or percutaneously. It is generally reserved as a temporary measure in patients too ill to tolerate a more extensive procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Symptomatic cholelithiasis; acute cholecystitis; chronic cholecystitis; biliary dyskinesia; gallbladder polyps or carcinoma; choledocholithiasis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Cholecystectomy	Cholecystectomy/Common Duct Exploration
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Right subcostal or midline	Right subcostal and/or midline
Special instrumentation	Costal margin retractor; cholangiocatheter	Choledochotomy instruments; choledochoscope
Unique considerations	Requires intraop x-ray for cholangiogram.	May include choledochoscopy
Antibiotics	Ampicillin, piperacillin, or mezlocillin, 1–3 g iv; gentamicin; or cefotetan 1–2 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	45–90 min	1–2.5 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation	⇐
EBL	Minimal to 250 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → ward	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Cholecystectomy	Cholecystectomy/Common Duct Exploration
Mortality	0.1% under 50 yr; 0.5% over 50 yr	0–1.5% under 60 yr; 5% in advanced age
Morbidity	Postop bile leak: 0–9% Pancreatitis: 0–4.6% Bile duct injury: 0–0.25% Cardiac and respiratory complications: Rare, but leading cause of death Hemorrhage: Rare	⇐ 2–5%
Pain score	6	6–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Mostly adult; increases with age
Male:Female	1:2–3
Incidence	600,000/yr in the United States; ≥ 90% performed laparoscopically
Etiology	See Associated Conditions (below).
Associated conditions	Ileal disease; cirrhosis; hemolytic disorders; choledocholithiasis; cholangitis or active pancreatitis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Biliary Tract Surgery, p. 580.

Suggested Readings

1. Blumgart LH: Stones in the common bile duct–clinical features and open surgical approaches and techniques. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 528–47.
2. Fried GM, Feldman LS, Klassen DR: Cholecystectomy and common bile duct exploration. In: Souba WW, Fink MP, Jurkovich GJ, et al, eds. *ACS Surgery: Principles and Practice 2006.* WebMD, New York: 2006, 651–72.
3. Gertsch P: The technique of cholecystectomy. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 496–505.
4. Matthews BD, Strasberg SM: Management of common duct stones. In: Cameron JL, ed. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 9th edition. Mosby Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2008, 412–17.
5. Nagle AP, Soper NJ, Hines JR: Cholecystectomy (open and laparoscopic). In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingotis Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw Hill Medical, New York: 2007, 847–63.
6. Zemon H, Ponsky TA: Acute cholecystitis. In: Cameron JL, ed. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 9th edition. Mosby Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2008, 408–12.

BILIARY DRAINAGE PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Biliary drainage procedures may be performed for malignant and nonmalignant indications, and the type of drainage procedure performed depends on factors such as the nature of the biliary obstruction, the patient's overall condition and prognosis, the need for other surgical procedures, and institutional expertise. Most drainage procedures of the biliary tree are performed with **endoscopic** and/or **transhepatic techniques**. These techniques allow concomitant treatment of biliary stone disease, decompression of obstructive jaundice, relief of cholangitis and delineation of the anatomy of the biliary tree. There remain a significant number of patients, however, for whom a traditional surgical procedure is the most appropriate. With the advent of laparoscopic cholecystectomy, surgical bile duct injuries have become the most common reason for surgical biliary drainage procedures. In general, the

complexity of the different operations that may be performed and the morbidity attendant to these has more to do with the indications for operation than with the procedure that is performed.

All of these operations are performed under GA through an upper midline or right subcostal incision. Self-retaining retractors are used to retract the liver superiorly to expose the region of the porta hepatis. If the gallbladder will not be used for the bypass procedure (**cholecystojejunostomy**), then it usually is removed as the first step in the procedure (see **Open Cholecystectomy**, p. 572). If the patient has had previous upper right quadrant surgery, the complexity and duration of the procedure and blood loss may increase significantly. Any associated hepatic cirrhosis may make the procedure particularly demanding. Most patients undergoing surgical biliary drainage procedures have had several nonsurgical instrumentations of the bile duct prior to presenting for surgery. Indwelling stents result in colonization of the biliary tract with any number of bacterial or fungal organisms from which the patient may have already suffered bouts of cholangitis. It is not unusual for the patient to develop bacteremia during the operation while these stents are being manipulated.

Transduodenal sphincteroplasty for benign obstruction of the ampulla of Vater or for extensive choledocholithiasis has largely been abandoned in favor of the more well-tolerated and less-invasive **endoscopic sphincterotomy.** It remains the treatment of choice for rare cases of early ampullary carcinoma. Endoscopic sphincterotomy and/or placement of an internal stent is the most commonly performed technique for opening the ampulla and usually is performed by gastroenterologists outside the OR with iv sedation. **Open sphincteroplasty** is usually reserved for patients in whom endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatogram (ERCP) has been unsuccessful or in whom a laparotomy is required for other reasons. For these open procedures, the second portion of duodenum is incised over the region of the ampulla, and the ampulla is cannulated. A longitudinal incision is made over the course of the ampulla, and the mucosa of the ampulla is sutured to the mucosa of the duodenum with fine interrupted sutures with care being taken not to compromise the pancreatic duct. The duodenum is closed with suture, a small closed suction drain is placed, and the wound is closed. A postop stay of 5–7 d can be expected.

Cholecystojejunostomy usually is performed as palliation for malignant obstruction of the distal bile duct. Its advantage is that it does not require dissection of the portal triad, but the long-term results are poor as biliary obstruction typically recurs as the malignancy advances. The abdomen is opened as described above, and the region of the porta hepatis examined to ensure that the cystic duct is not imminently compromised by tumor. The jejunum is then brought up to the gallbladder, usually bypassing the jejunum through the transverse mesocolon. The anastomosis may be performed either to an intact loop of jejunum (**loop cholecystojejunostomy**) or to a Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum (**Roux-en-Y cholecystojejunostomy**) and is carried out with one or two layers of sutures, depending on surgeon's preference. If a Roux-en-Y is created, a second jejunojejunal anastomosis must be performed. This procedure has largely been replaced by transhepatic and endoscopic techniques.

Choledochoduodenostomy is an archaic procedure in which the bile duct is incised longitudinally and anastomosed directly to the adjacent duodenum. This was performed historically in patients with gallstones impacted at the ampulla. However, loss of the normal sphincter mechanism at the ampulla allows reflux of duodenal contents directly into the bile duct. Patients may suffer from repeated episodes of cholangitis or obstructive jaundice from debris occluding the anastomosis. Secondary biliary cirrhosis may occur, and the author has seen one case proceed to liver transplantation in which a cast of the biliary tree comprised of fibrous food material was extracted from the choledochoduodenal anastomosis. **Roux-en-Y choledochojejunostomy or hepaticojejunostomy** remains the gold standard by which all other biliary drainage procedures are measured. An anastomosis is fashioned between the common bile duct, common hepatic duct, or even the lobar or segmental bile ducts and a Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum. This is often a relatively demanding operation because it requires dissection deep in the porta hepatis to gain access to the bile duct. Furthermore, many patients have had previous surgery in the porta hepatis with extensive formation of adhesions. Long-term results are more reliable, however, and thus surgical drainage is preferred to less-invasive procedures for benign disease. Exposure of the biliary tree is the same as for the above procedures. The gallbladder is always removed (if it is still present). The bile duct is dissected free from the surrounding structures in the porta hepatis and traced proximally into the liver to healthy tissue above the level of obstruction.

Variant procedure or approaches: Endoscopic or transhepatic placement of temporary or permanent **biliary stents** is an increasingly common alternative to surgical drainage in patients with incurable pancreatic or biliary tract disease.

Usual preop diagnosis: Transduodenal sphincteroplasty: extensive choledocholithiasis, often after failed attempt at ERCP; rarely, malignant disease. Cholecystojejunostomy: malignant obstruction of the distal common bile duct, usually due to pancreatic cancer. Choledochojejunostomy or hepaticojejunostomy: benign strictures of the distal bile duct; long-standing stone disease; pancreatitis; iatrogenic injury; Oriental cholangiohepatitis; after resection of some tumors of the pancreas or bile duct.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Cholecysto-jejunostomy	Choledocho-jejunostomy	Choledocho-duodenostomy	Transduodenal sphincteroplasty
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐	⇐
Incision	Midline or right sub-costal	⇐	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Costal retractor	⇐	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	Consider usual prep for patients with obstructive jaundice	⇐	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Ampicillin, piperacillin or mezlocillin, 1–3 g iv ± gentamicin; or cefotetan 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h; may be significantly longer if resection of tumor is considered	1.5–3 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation; NG suction	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 250 mL (greater if tumor resection performed, or in presence of portal HTN)	250–500 mL (greater if tumor resection performed, or in presence of portal HTN)	⇐	< 250 mL (transfusion rarely needed)
Postop care	PACU	⇐	⇐	⇐
Mortality	≤ 35% in advanced pancreatic cancer; otherwise, < 10%	≤ 29%, with pancreatic cancer; 0.5% for benign disease	0–5.4% (usually for benign disease)	0–7%
Morbidity	Sepsis Respiratory complications Renal failure Hemorrhage Wound infection Breakdown of biliary anastomosis Thrombotic complications	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	Pancreatitis: Rare Recurrent cholangitis: Rare
Pain score	7	7	7	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	5th–7th decade; may be younger for repair of laparoscopic cholecystectomy injuries
Male:Female	1.1:2.1
Incidence	Procedure-related incidence not available, but clearly declining in favor of techniques by interventional gastroenterology and radiology.
Etiology	See Usual Preop Diagnosis, above.
Associated conditions	Jaundice (very common); fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies; malignancy, especially pancreatic (common); malnutrition (common)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Biliary Tract Surgery, p. 580.

Suggested Readings

1. Baker MS, Lillemoe KD: Benign biliary strictures. In: Cameron JL, ed. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 9th edition. Mosby Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2008, 420–5.
2. Blumgart LH, DíAngelica M, Jarnagin WR: Biliary-enteric anastomosis. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 455–74.
3. Jarnagin WR, Blumgart LH: Biliary stricture and fistula. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 628–81.
4. Melton GB, Lillemoe KD: Choledochal cyst and biliary strictures. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingotís Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw Hill Medical, New York: 2007, 889–920.

EXCISION OF BILE DUCT TUMOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Primary tumors (cholangiocarcinomas) of the extrahepatic bile ducts, including the hepatic bifurcation (Klatskin tumors) are uncommon malignancies, with the only curative treatment for them being surgical excision. Such tumors are usually classified as being proximal bile duct tumors, involving the hepatic bifurcation and above; middle bile duct tumors, involving the midportion of the common hepatic and common bile duct; and distal bile duct tumors, which involve the distal bile duct, including the intrapancreatic or intraduodenal portion of the bile duct (Fig. 7.6-1). The gallbladder usually will be removed in any such operation.

Distal bile duct tumors, which carry a significantly higher cure rate than either proximal bile duct or pancreatic tumors, may be treated by **pancreaticoduodenectomy**. (See p. 632 for discussion of this operation.)

Mid-bile duct tumors usually are excised by removing a generous portion of the mid bile duct, resecting the ducts up to the hepatic bifurcation, and sometimes performing a **pancreaticoduodenectomy**. Biliary drainage usually is established by anastomosing the proximal bile duct to a Roux loop of jejunum. For proximal bile duct tumors, most of the extrahepatic bile ducts are excised and biliary drainage is established by anastomosis of the right and left hepatic ducts or even multiple segmental ducts to a Roux loop of jejunum. These are often technically demanding operations with the potential for major blood loss. It may be necessary to perform a major hepatic resection at the same time, and the possibility of this should always be assumed when an operation of this sort is carried out. Often, a transhepatic catheter will have been placed radiographically preoperatively to provide relief of jaundice and to facilitate identification of the bile ducts. Colonization of the biliary tract with enteric bacteria or yeast is common and may result in bacteremia during surgical manipulation. Prolonged cholestasis may lead to fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies, in particular vitamin K deficiency, which may cause coagulopathy. Long-standing biliary obstruction may cause moderate atrophy and portal venous compromise.

Surgical exposure for any of these operations usually is achieved through a long midline or transverse subcostal incision with midline extension and the use of self-retaining retractors. The liver and gallbladder are retracted superiorly while downward traction is placed on the duodenum. If the gallbladder is still in place, a **cholecystectomy** is performed (see p. 572). For proximal bile duct tumors and mid-bile duct tumors not requiring pancreaticoduodenectomy, the bile duct is divided distally, just above the duodenum, and the pancreatic portion of the bile duct is oversewn. The bile duct is then resected proximally to the level of the bifurcation of the hepatic ducts. A Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum is anastomosed to the hepatic ducts to establish biliary drainage. Drains are placed, and most surgeons place a NG tube for such cases.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Endoscopic** or **transhepatic stenting** of areas of stricture often is used as a palliative alternative to surgical excision. These are usually performed radiographically and do not require GA. They may be used as an alternative to resection or in preparation for surgery.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cholangiocarcinoma (common); benign strictures of the bile ducts (infrequent); sclerosing cholangitis (rare)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline or subcostal
Special instrumentation	Costal retractor
Unique considerations	Many cases prove unresectable at operation. Intraoperative radiation therapy may be used.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	Ampicillin, piperacillin, or mezlocillin, 1–3 g iv, ± gentamicin; or cefotetan 1–2 g iv; Diflucan 200 mg iv; antibiotics may be adjusted based on preoperative bile cultures
Surgical time	3–8 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation required for closure; NG suction.
EBL	500–5000 mL, depending on need for liver resection and presence of portal HTN.
Postop care	ICU postoperatively
Mortality	5–10%
Morbidity	Sepsis; hemorrhage; anastomotic leakage; wound infection; liver failure; VTE
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	50–70
Male:Female	Male > female
Incidence	4500 cases of bile duct cancer/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Multifactorial
Associated conditions	Ulcerative colitis; sclerosing cholangitis; typhoid carrier state; Clonorchis sinensis; choledochal cyst; Caroli's disease; gallstones

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Biliary Tract Surgery, p. 580.

Suggested Readings

1. DeOliveira ML, Kambakamba P, Clavien PA: Advances in liver surgery for cholangiocarcinoma. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2013; 29(3):293–8.
2. Jarnagin WR, DíAngelica M, Blumgart LH: Intrahepatic and extrahepatic biliary cancer. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 782–826.
3. Taylor BR, Langer B: Procedures for benign and malignant biliary tract disease. In: Souba WW, Fink MP, Jurkovich GJ, et al, eds. *ACS Surgery: Principles and Practice 2006.* WebMD, New York: 2006, 673–87.
4. Whang EE, Zinner MJ: Cancer of the gallbladder and bile ducts. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingotís Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw Hill-Medical, New York: 2007, 921–35.

CHOLEDOCHAL CYST EXCISION OR ANASTOMOSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This rare congenital anomaly includes various types of dilatation of the biliary tree, and patients may present with cystolithiasis, cholangitis, pancreatitis or, rarely, malignancy. Adults with long-standing obstructive jaundice from a choledochal cyst may present with secondary biliary cirrhosis. Although four types of cysts are commonly recognized, the vast majority consist of fusiform dilatation of much or most of the extrahepatic biliary tree. Although the traditional description of choledochal cyst is that of an infant with a palpable abdominal mass and jaundice or cholangitis, this is a relatively rare presentation today. Today, many cysts are found in adults undergoing evaluation for symptoms thought to be due to gallbladder disease. These patients may present with biliary colic, pancreatitis, or cholangitis. Recommended treatment consists of **excision of the cyst** when technically safe. **Cyst-enteric bypass,** usually to a Roux loop of jejunum, is almost never performed today because of the small but real risk of developing malignancy in these cysts. Only in an elderly patient under unusual technical circumstances would this be appropriate.

The operation is performed through a midline or right subcostal incision. The liver is retracted superiorly and the duodenum inferiorly, exposing the biliary tree. The gallbladder is excised, along with as much of the cyst as possible. Intraoperative cholangiogram demonstrates the transition from cyst to normal biliary tract. The duct is divided as distally as possible, just above the duodenum, and the cyst reflected superiorly. The entire cyst should be excised to prevent the development of malignancy in the remnant. This not infrequently requires excision to the hepatic bifurcation, and an anastomosis is performed at this level, often between the common orifice of the right and left hepatic ducts and a Roux loop of jejunum. Diffuse involvement of the intrahepatic bile ducts (Caroliís disease) may require liver resection or transplantation.

Reoperative cases are increasingly common; most follow a cyst-enteric bypass. These cases may be significantly more difficult than first-time operations.

Variant procedure or approaches: There is an increasing tendency among gastroenterologists to perform **endoscopic sphincterotomy** in these patients, rather than to refer them for surgical resection, particularly in older patients. It remains to be seen if these patients will develop cancer in the retained cysts.

Usual preop diagnosis: Choledochal cyst, the most common type involving fusiform enlargement of the entire extrahepatic biliary tree

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline or right subcostal
Special instrumentation	Costal retractor
Antibiotics	Ampicillin, piperacillin, or mezlocillin, 1–3 g iv, ± gentamicin; or cefotetan 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	2–4 h
Closing considerations	NG suction
EBL	250 mL, with potentially greater blood loss in reoperations
Postop care	PACU → ward
Mortality	Very rare
Morbidity	Anastomotic leak Wound infection Pulmonary complications Pancreatitis
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Classically, 60% < 10 yr of age, although this may be changing; also adults of all ages
Male:Female	1:3
Incidence	Rare in the United States; more common in Japan
Etiology	Unclear
Associated conditions	Jaundice; pancreatitis; malignancy within the cyst

Suggested Readings

1. Locke JE, Lipsett PA: Cystic disorders of the bile ducts. In: Cameron JL, ed. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 9th edition. Mosby Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2008, 430–7.
2. Melton GB, Lillemoe KD: Choledochal cyst and biliary strictures. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. *Maingotís Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw-Hill Medical, New York: 2007, 889–920.
3. Nagorney DM: Bile duct cysts in adults. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 991–1004.
4. Nagorney DM, Sarmiento JM: Surgical management of cystic disease of the liver. In: Blumgart LH, ed. *Surgery of the Liver, Biliary Tract, and Pancreas,* 4th edition. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2007, 1021–33.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR BILIARY TRACT SURGERY

(Procedures covered: open cholecystectomy; cholangiography; choledochotomy; biliary drainage procedures; transduodenal sphincterotomy or sphincteroplasty; cholecystojejunostomy; excision of bile duct tumor; choledochal cyst excision/anastomosis)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for biliary tract surgery are an extremely diverse group, ranging from the otherwise healthy to the extremely ill. With the increasing popularity of laparoscopic surgery, open cholecystectomies will be performed rarely, or when it is not possible to complete the laparoscopic procedure. Cirrhosis, even of a mild degree, substantially increases the risk of cholecystectomy, with hemorrhage and postoperative liver failure being the greatest danger. Patients with bile duct tumors are usually jaundiced at presentation and have undergone transhepatic and/or endoscopic studies for diagnostic purposes. Often an external transhepatic biliary drain or common bile duct stent placed endoscopically may be present, and jaundice may have been relieved. Rarely, a hepatic resection may be performed as part of the procedure. Prior operation or the presence of portal HTN may substantially increase the duration, complexity, and blood loss of the procedure.

Respiratory	Pain 2° an acute abdominal process may impair respiratory function (↓ FRC, hypoventilation, atelectasis). For patients undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy, intraabdominal CO_2 insufflation may → atelectasis, ↓ FRC, ↑ PIP, and ↑ $PaCO_2$. Tachypnea, hyperpnea, and acute respiratory alkalosis can be signs of sepsis, or due solely to pain associated with inflammation of the gallbladder. **Tests:** Consider CXR and others as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Patients may be dehydrated from fever, vomiting, and decreased oral intake; assess hemodynamic status by evaluating BP and HR in the supine and standing positions. Fluid resuscitate if patient shows Sx of orthostatic ↓ SBP until hemodynamic status improves. Patients undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy may experience hemodynamic compromise 2° positioning (reverse Trendelenburg → excessive intraabdominal pressure with subsequent impairment of venous return). Epigastric discomfort is common with biliary tract disease and can mimic symptoms of myocardial ischemia. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Renal	In patients with obstructive jaundice, preop administration of bile salts po may prevent renal insufficiency following surgery. **Tests:** UA and others as indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Patients with peritonitis will exhibit guarding and may develop abdominal distention and paralytic ileus. Therefore, full-stomach precautions are warranted. Laparoscopic approach is contraindicated in these patients. Ensure adequate hydration and consider administration of lactulose or bile salts. **Tests:** Bilirubin; AST (SGOT); ALT (SGPT); alkaline phosphatase; albumin
Hematologic	Leukocytosis is often present with a moderate left shift. ✓ coags. Administer vitamin K as needed (10 mg iv/sc). **Tests:** CBC, with differential and Plt
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Meperidine (0.5–0.6 mg/kg iv) is thought to cause less sphincter of Oddi spasm than other opiates. Sphincter spasm can interfere with intraop cholangiograms and cause pain; reverse opiate-induced spasm with naloxone in 40 mcg increments. Atropine (0.4–0.6 mg im or iv) or glycopyrrolate (0.2–0.3 mg im or iv) may help decrease spasm of the sphincter and can be given in combination with the opiate. Parenteral vitamin K is indicated if PT is prolonged (10 mg/d po or im for 3 d). Administer H_2-antagonists (ranitidine 50 mg iv); if patient is at risk for gastric aspiration.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. In patients at risk for aspiration, ET intubation should be accomplished following a rapid-sequence iv induction (see p. B-4).

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) if no aspiration risk. In patients at risk of aspiration, a rapid-sequence induction should be performed (see p. B-4).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxants facilitate surgery and are indicated.	
Emergence	If there is a risk for aspiration of gastric contents, patient should be extubated awake after return of protective airway reflexes; otherwise, no special considerations.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss Possible 3rd-space loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h	Blood products usually not required. Anticipate that patient maybe dehydrated and require generous iv hydration (e.g., 10–15 mL/kg) before anesthetic induction. IV size and number according to risk of significant blood loss.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Others as clinically indicated.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	A steep, reverse Trendelenburg position may be required, causing cardiorespiratory impairment: venous return → ↓ CO
Complications	Atelectasis 2° surgical retraction ↓ BP	These complications are unique to laparoscopic procedures.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Ventilatory impairment Pneumothorax Atelectasis PONV VTE Subcutaneous emphysema	Monitor patients for hypoxemia in the postop period. Administer supplemental O_2, and consider a portable CXR to aid in the diagnosis. See p. B-1 See p. B-2
Pain management	PCA (See p. C-3) Shoulder pain	Intercostal nerve blocks, intrapleural analgesia, or epidural analgesia are also useful techniques. Prolonged PCA meperidine is associated with ↑ normeperidine → CNS disorder, seizures. 2° subdiaphragmatic gas trapping

Suggested Readings

1. Duncan CB, Riall TS: Evidence-based current surgical practice: calculous gallbladder disease. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2012; 16(11):2011–25.
2. Mitra S, Khandelwal P, Roberts K, Kumar S, Vadivelu N: Pain relief in laparoscopic cholecystectomy—a review of the current options. *Pain Pract* 2012; 12(6):485–96.
3. Rondelli F, Manina G, Agnelli G, Becattini C: Venous thromboembolism after laparoscopic cholecystectomy: clinical burden and prevention. *Surg Endosc* 2013; 27(6):1860–4.

CHAPTER

7.7 Laparoscopic General Surgery

SURGEONS

Myriam J. Curet, MD
Sherry M. Wren, MD
Maureen M. Tedesco, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Ruth M. Fanning, MB, BCh, MRCPI, FFARCSI
Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD (*Laparoscopic general surgery*)
Jay B. Brodsky, MD, (*Laparoscopic bariatric surgery*)
Jerry Ingrande, MD, MS (*Laparoscopic bariatric surgery*)
Brendan Carvalho, MBBCh, FRCA (*Laparoscopy in pregnancy*)

LAPAROSCOPIC REPAIR OF PERFORATED PEPTIC ULCER

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Duodenal ulcer perforation occurs in 5–10% of duodenal ulcer patients and is responsible for more than 70% of deaths associated with PUD. These patients can present in shock and often are extremely volume depleted. **Open repair** is indicated if the patient has a "hostile" abdomen, if there is simultaneous bleeding and perforation, if the patient is hemodynamically unstable, if the patient has significant cardiovascular or respiratory risk factors that would make them not tolerate a pneumoperitoneum, or if the surgeon has inadequate experience with the laparoscopic approach. In addition, trained OR personnel and equipment must be available. Risk factors associated with unsuccessful **laparoscopic repair** include shock on admission, delayed presentation (> 24 h), underlying comorbidities, age > 70 yr, and ASA III to IV. For laparoscopic repair, the patient is often placed in a modified lithotomy position with the surgeon standing between the legs. In this case, both arms can be left out. Alternatively, the patient may be in a supine position with the surgeon standing on the patient's left side. In this case, the patient's left arm should be tucked. The patient should be placed in a reverse Trendelenburg position. Access to the abdomen is obtained at the umbilicus with either a **Veress needle** or a **Hasson technique** (peritoneal entry through a ~1 cm skin incision). Two to four additional ports are placed. Generally, the perforation site can be easily identified by laparoscopy. Occasionally, the surgeon may ask the anesthesiologist to insufflate air through an orogastric or nasogastric tube to help localize the perforation site. Several methods of repair have been reported. The most common involves suture closure of the perforation with **omentopexy**. Occasionally omentopexy or suture repair alone is used. Reports of closure with fibrin glue have also been published, although this technique may be associated with a higher leak rate. Some surgeons will perform **endoscopy** after repair to ensure adequate closure. Extensive irrigation of the peritoneal cavity (6–10 L or more) is recommended. The position of the operating table is frequently changed during irrigation to allow better access to the entire abdominal cavity. Adequate irrigation can take 20–30 min. Conversion rates are quite high (10–15%) with inability to localize the perforation the most common reason for conversion to open surgery.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, low lithotomy
Incision	3–5 ports
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
Closing considerations	Port closure only
Special instrumentation	Gastroscope; oro- or nasogastric tube
EBL	< 75 mL
Postop care	2–4 d hospital stay; liquids on postop day 1
Mortality	Typically < 0.1% (as high as 3% in some series)
Morbidity	6–10% overall, including: Abscess (2–8%) Suture leak (~5%) Ileus (3–6%) pneumonia
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–60 yr
Male:Female	May be slightly more common in males

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	~10% lifetime risk for perforation
Etiology	May be related to *Helicobacter pylori* infection; NSAID use; stress; corticosteroid use
Associated conditions	gastrinoma; MEN type 1; COPD; CRF; up to 20% may be in shock at the time of admission

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591.

Suggested Readings

1. Lunevicius R, Morkevicius M: Management strategies, early results, benefits, and risk factors of laparoscopic repair of perforated peptic ulcer. *World J Surg* 2005; 29(10):1299–310.
2. Sanabria AE, Morales CH, Villegas MI: Laparoscopic repair for perforated peptic ulcer disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; 4:CD004778.

LAPAROSCOPIC ESOPHAGEAL FUNDOPLICATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Approximately 40% of Americans suffer from heartburn, and most cases are treated medically. Indications for **esophageal fundoplication** (to ↑ lower esophageal sphincter pressure) include complications of GERD, such as stricture, respiratory problems, esophageal ulcerations, and Barrett's esophagus (a premalignant condition). Other indications include failure of medical management or an unwillingness to submit to a lifetime of medication. Most patients with GERD are treated laparoscopically; those undergoing **laparoscopic fundoplication** have the benefits of a minimally invasive approach—decreased pain, earlier return of GI function, earlier ambulation, earlier discharge, quicker return to normal activities, decreased incidence of wound infections and hernias. The most common fundoplication is the **Nissen (360°) wrap** and its variations include the **Rossetti modification**, a **Toupet (270° posterior) wrap,** and the **Dor (anterior) wrap.** Before surgery, patients with GERD should have documented esophageal hyperacidity (by either pH probe or by esophagitis revealed on upper endoscopy), and also should have a hypotensive sphincter (demonstrated on manometry). Typically, they will have been treated with proton pump inhibitors (e.g., lansoprazole) and sometimes with prokinetic agents (e.g., metoclopramide). The patient is placed supine in a low lithotomy position, with the surgeon standing between the legs. The abdomen is entered ~2 cm above the umbilicus with either a closed (**Veress needle:** blind placement) or open (**Hasson trocar:** direct visual placement through small skin incision) technique. A total of five trocars are inserted—two in the LUQ, two in the RUQ, and one at the umbilicus. The stomach should be decompressed either with an OG tube or with a gastroscope. The liver is elevated with a liver retractor, and the gastroesophageal (GE) junction and both diaphragmatic crura are dissected out. The hiatus should be closed with one or two sutures. The esophagus is encircled (Fig. 7.7-1A), and the vagal nerves are identified and preserved. The short gastrics are then taken down to decrease tension on the wrap. The fundus is brought in through the retroesophageal window (Fig. 7.7-2). An esophageal dilator (56–60 Fr) generally is placed (often by the anesthesiologist) to calibrate the wrap. Passage of the dilator is possibly the most hazardous part of the procedure because it may cause perforation of the esophagus at the GE junction. As the dilator approaches the stomach, it is important to watch the junction on the video monitors to ensure that the dilator is not being held at an angle that will risk perforation. The anesthesiologist should stop passing the dilator immediately if any resistance is felt. The dilator is withdrawn. An NG tube may be placed at this time.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Open surgery** (see Esophageal Surgery, p. 490) may be indicated if the patient has had previous gastric surgery or if there is a complication with an ongoing laparoscopic procedure. In the **Rossetti modification,** the short gastrics are not taken down, which decreases operative time. The **Dor fundoplication** is an anterior hemifundoplication in which the fundus is wrapped and sutured to the left and right sides of the esophagus and to the left and right crura, but anteriorly. A Dor fundoplication is often used in combination with a **Heller myotomy** for treatment of achalasia. A **Toupet procedure** (Fig. 7.7-1B) is a posterior hemifundoplication

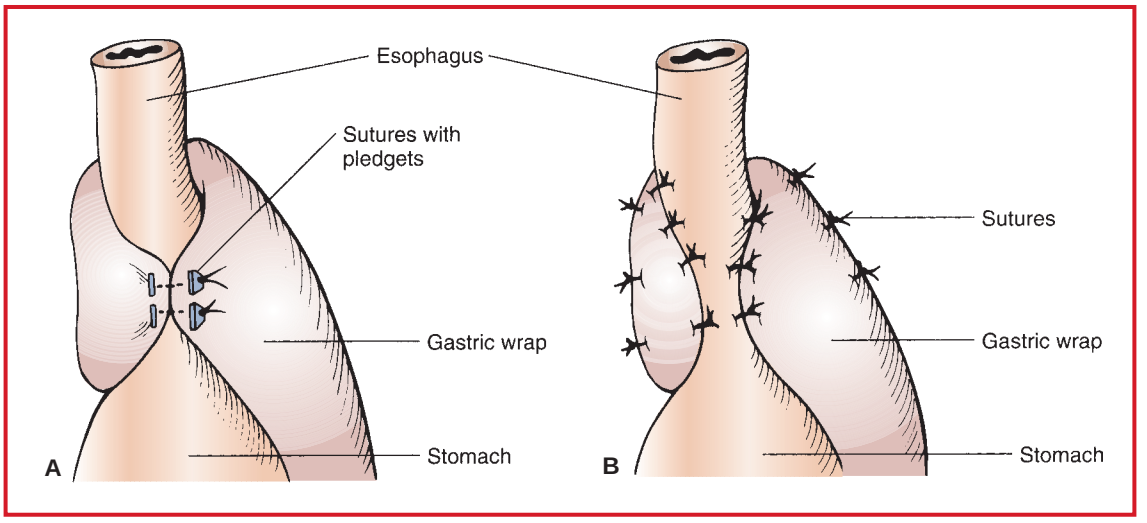


Figure 7.7-1. **A:** Nissen fundoplication. **B:** Partial fundoplication (Toupet procedure).

in which the two walls of the fundus do not actually meet. The stomach is sewn to the left and right walls of the esophagus and then are anchored to the right and left crura. In the past, these procedures were performed commonly in patients with a high risk of postop dysphagia (e.g., those who have impaired esophageal peristalsis or a preop stricture). Now, because of their higher failure rate, they are seldom performed except in patients with severe esophageal dysmotility, such as patients with scleroderma. These procedures are identical to the Nissen fundoplication except for the wrap itself.

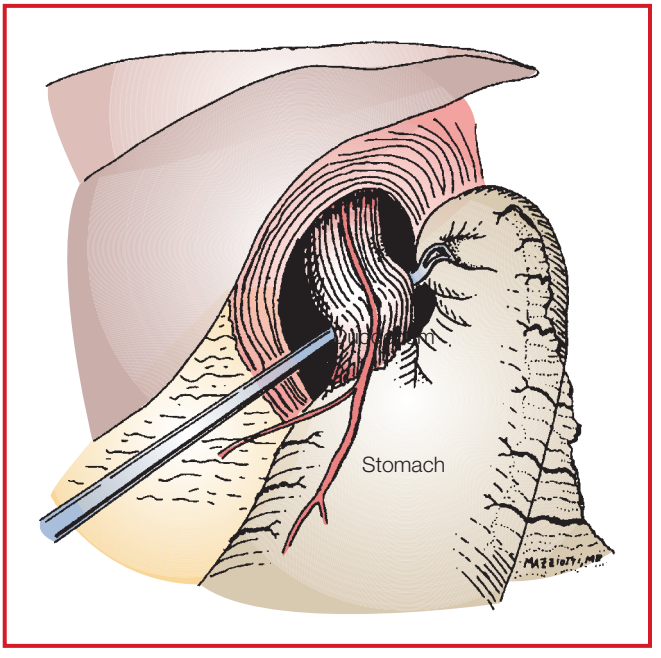


Figure 7.7-2. Gastric fundus is pulled posteriorly and to the right of the esophagus, with the fundus itself used as a retractor, reaching from right to left behind the esophagus to grasp the fundus and retract it back to the right side behind the esophagus. Placing caudad traction on the wrapped fundus, the GE junction and distal esophagus can be brought further into the abdominal cavity. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Usual preop diagnosis: GERD, with or without esophagitis, esophageal stricture, or Barrett's esophagus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine low lithotomy
Incision	Five ports, upper abdomen
Special instrumentation	Harmonic scalpel; bipolar cautery or endoscope. Esophageal dilators should be available.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1.5–2.5 h
Closing considerations	Port closures only; muscle relaxation may be needed for fascial closure
EBL	< 75 mL
Postop care	1–2 d hospital stay; liquids on pod 1
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	Overall: 8% Atelectasis: common Esophageal or gastric perforation: rare (most commonly associated with passage of NG tube or esophageal dilator) Hemorrhage from short gastrics or splenic tear Pneumothorax (does not usually require treatment) Postop dysphagia
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages (incidence ↑ with age). May be performed in infants; next peak occurs in adulthood; rare in children and adolescents.
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1% (increasing significantly over past 5 yr)
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Aspiration risk; reactive airway disease; occasionally, respiratory problems associated with chronic aspiration

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591.

Suggested Readings

1. Bammer TM, Hinder RA, Klaus A, et al: Five-to eight-year outcome of the first laparoscopic Nissen fundoplications. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2001; 5(1):42–8.
2. Champion JK, McKernan JB: Laparoscopic Toupet fundoplication. In: Zucker KA, ed. *Surgical Laparoscopy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 401–8.
3. Cowgill SM, Gillman R, Kraemer E, et al: Ten year follow up after laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication for gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Am Surg* 2007; 73(8):748–53.
4. Dallemagne B: Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication. In: Ballantyne GH, ed. *Atlas of Laparoscopic Surgery*. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 92–101.
5. Hughes SG, Chekan EG, Ali A, et al: Unusual complications following laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 1999; 9(2):143–7.
6. Zucker KA: Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication technique. In: *Surgical Laparoscopy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 375–400.

LAPAROSCOPIC HELLER MYOTOMY ± ANTIREFLUX PROCEDURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Laparoscopic and thoracoscopic esophageal myotomies** have become much more common over the last 5 yr as confidence in laparoscopic esophageal surgery—particularly antireflux surgery—has increased. These procedures are performed for achalasia, an uncommon condition in which the lower esophageal sphincter fails to relax with swallowing, and in which the body of the esophagus is aperistaltic and dilates. Patients typically complain of dysphagia with chest pain and may experience regurgitation. The etiology of this condition remains unknown.

Treatment options consist of pneumatic dilation, botulinum toxin injection of the lower esophageal sphincter, or surgical myotomy. **Pneumatic dilation** remains the most common procedure performed for achalasia and is effective in ~60% of patients. Many gastroenterologists are reluctant to perform this procedure, however, because of the risk of esophageal perforation, which is generally considered to be ~3–5%, but may be as high as 10%. **Botulinum toxin injection** is a newer technique that is effective to some degree in most patients, but the duration of its effectiveness is short. Most patients require retreatment within 1.5 yr, and the efficacy of retreatment may diminish over time. In many centers, **surgical myotomy (Heller's operation)** has become the procedure of choice for the treatment of achalasia.

The patient is positioned as for a laparoscopic antireflux procedure—supine in the lithotomy position with reverse Trendelenburg. The abdomen is usually entered with a **Veress needle** (blind) or **Hasson trocar** (direct vision) at the umbilicus, and five laparoscopic ports are placed across the upper abdomen—two beneath the left costal margin, two beneath the right costal margin, and one in the midline either at the umbilicus or midway between the umbilicus and the xiphoid. The liver is elevated, and the ligamentous attachments anterior to the esophagus are divided. The esophagus is not usually encircled; and, as hiatal hernias are uncommon with achalasia, crural repair is seldom necessary.

The myotomy is begun at the gastroesophageal junction using monopolar cautery, bipolar scissors, or a harmonic scalpel (ultrasonic cutting/coagulation). It is carried proximally until normal musculature is encountered. Some surgeons perform intraop **esophagoscopy** to ensure that the myotomy has been carried proximally enough and that there has not been a mucosal perforation. Generally, a myotomy of 5–8 cm is adequate, although sometimes a longer myotomy may be necessary. Some surgeons then perform a very loose, **partial fundoplication** to prevent reflux. This can be performed as an anterior or posterior fundoplication, bringing the fundus either anterior (Dor fundoplication–our preference) or posterior (Toupet fundoplication) to the esophagus. The stomach is secured to the esophageal wall and crura with sutures, and an NG tube may be passed. The ports are removed and port closure carried out.

Variant procedure or approaches: Although most of these procedures are being performed laparoscopically, they also can be performed by **thoracoscopy or thoracotomy.** If a thoracoscopy or thoracotomy is performed, a DLT is placed to allow collapse of the left lung.

Usual preop diagnosis: Achalasia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine lithotomy, reverse Trendelenburg
Incision	Five ports, upper abdomen
Special instrumentation	Laparoscopic instrumentation ± gastroscope
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1.5–2 h
Closing considerations	None
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	2-d hospital stay; liquids on pod 1

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Insignificant atelectasis: Common Esophageal or gastric perforation: Rare Pneumothorax (does not usually require treatment) Gastroesophageal reflux: > 15%
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–40 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Achalasia: 1 in 20,000 adults
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	None. Chagas' disease may produce identical esophageal findings.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591.

Suggested Readings

1. Bonatti H, Hinder RA, Klocker J, et al: Long-term results of laparoscopic Heller myotomy with partial fundoplication for the treatment of achalaisa. *Am J Surg* 2005; 190(6):874–8.
2. Bonavina L: Minimally invasive surgery for esophageal achalasia. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(37):5291–5.
3. Jeansonne LO, White BC, Pilger KE, et al: Ten-year follow-up of laparoscopic Heller myotomy for achalasia shows durability. *Surg Endosc* 2007; 21(9):1498–1502.
4. Sharp KW, Khaitan L, Scholz S, et al: 100 minimally invasive Heller myotomies: lessons learned. *Ann Surg* 2002; 235(5):631–9.

LAPAROSCOPIC CHOLECYSTECTOMY, ± COMMON DUCT EXPLORATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This operation typically is performed for symptomatic gallstones or acute cholecystitis. A laparoscopic approach is preferred over an open cholecystectomy because of its minimally invasive nature, which allows earlier recovery and return to normal activities. **Laparoscopic cholecystectomy** may be contraindicated for patients with uncorrectable coagulopathy, severe COPD, or severe cardiac disease (unable to tolerate ↑ intraabdominal pressure). In addition, patients with prior abdominal surgery or with acute cholecystitis are at a higher risk for conversion to open surgery. The operation begins with access to the abdominal cavity at the umbilicus, either with a **Veress needle** (closed technique: blind placement) or a **Hasson trocar** (open technique: ↓ risk of vascular, bowel, and bladder injury). If a Veress needle is to be used, the patient will need an OG tube and a Foley catheter to decompress the stomach and bladder before proceeding. CO_2 is insufflated to an intraabdominal pressure of 15 mm Hg. If the patient develops ventilatory or hemodynamic problems, consider decreasing the intraabdominal pressure to 10–12 mm Hg. A total of four trocars are used—one at the umbilicus and three in the RUQ. The patient is placed in a reverse Trendelenburg position and rotated to the left to move the stomach, duodenum, and transverse colon away from the operative field.

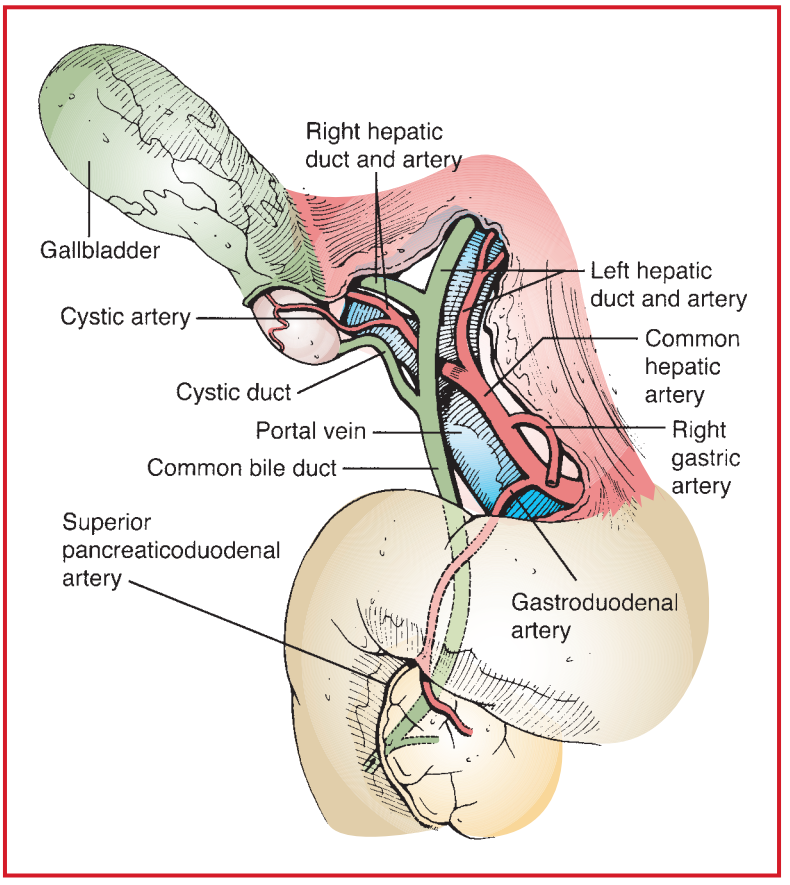


Figure 7.7-3. Surgical anatomy for laparoscopic cholecystectomy and common duct exploration.

The cystic artery and cystic duct (with hepatic duct = triangle of Calot) are clipped and cut (Fig. 7.7-3). The gallbladder is then dissected off the liver with monopolar cautery, placed in a bag, and brought out, usually through the umbilical cord site. Hemostasis is then achieved, the area is irrigated with NS, and the 10-mm trocar sites are closed. The rate of conversion to an open operation is ~5% for elective gallbladder surgery and ~10% for acute cholecystitis. Should this occur, the operation is then converted to an **open cholecystectomy** (see p. 572).

Cholangiography can be added easily to the laparoscopic cholecystectomy. A clip is placed high on the cystic duct; then a small incision is made in the duct just beneath the clip. A cholangiocatheter may be introduced and dye injected into the biliary tree. X-rays—either fluoroscopy or, more commonly, hard copy—are used to assess the biliary anatomy and to look for stones within the ductal system. Cholangiography carries few risks, generally adds about 10–15 min to the procedure, and can be used to identify the important anatomy ~85% of the time. Some surgeons perform it routinely during all cholecystectomies; others perform it selectively and only if there is evidence that the patient has had common duct stones or if the anatomy is in question.

In rare circumstances, **laparoscopic common duct exploration** may be carried out to treat common duct stones. A number of techniques have been used, most employing a thin fiberoptic choledochoscope passed through the cystic duct into the common duct. This procedure is performed in only a relatively few centers. More commonly, **endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)** will be used, either preop or postop, to demonstrate the presence or absence of stones and to remove any stones that are found.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Open cholecystectomy** (p. 572) remains the major alternative to laparoscopic cholecystectomy, either because the cholecystectomy is predicted to be technically difficult or because of the illness of the patient. Approximately 5% or less of laparoscopic cholecystectomies are converted to open cholecystectomy intraop because of difficulties with the procedure. **ERCP** remains the most common means of treating choledocholithiasis in the industrialized world with laparoscopic techniques used in a relatively small number of centers and by a small number of surgeons. **Open common duct exploration** is occasionally necessary for stones not retrievable by ERCP (generally < 5%).

Usual preop diagnosis: Acute or chronic cholecystitis, usually with cholelithiasis, with or without choledocholithiasis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	For upper abdominal ports
Special instrumentation	Routine laparoscopic instruments. May require fluoroscopy and choledochoscopes for cholangiography, common duct exploration; OG tube
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	0.5–2 h; may be longer for common duct exploration.
Closing considerations	Muscular relaxation helpful for closure of umbilical port site
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Usual discharge within 24 h
Mortality	< 1/1000
Morbidity	Bile leak: 1% Common duct injury: 0.5% Hemorrhage (requiring transfusion) Infection Injury to bowel Major vascular injury: Uncommon
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Typically adult, increasing with age
Male:Female	Female > Male
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Stone disease. Risk factors = female gender, age, parity, obesity.
Associated conditions	Hemolytic anemia for pigmented stones

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: repair of perforated peptic ulcer; laparoscopic esophageal fundoplication; laparoscopic Heller's myotomy and antireflux surgery; laparoscopic cholecystectomy)

PREOPERATIVE: LAPAROSCOPIC FUNDOPLICATION/HELLER'S MYOTOMY

Indication for surgery include failed optimal medical management, high volume reflux, severe esophagitis, and benign stricture. Severe reflux may lead to airway and pulmonary symptoms as well.

Respiratory	Patients may have a history of gastroesophageal reflux resulting in aspiration, particularly when recumbent. Recurrent aspiration may result in bronchospasm, pneumonia, and chronic pneumonitis. A prolonged history of reflux may give rise to premalignant Barrett's esophagus, which may result in stricture formation and weakness of the esophageal wall.

Respiratory (cont'd)	Achalasia may result in severe regurgitation and aspiration. Pulmonary physiological changes include both restrictive and obstructive lung defects and broncho-alveolar injury. Physical exam may show wheezing, and rhonchi. **Tests:** Consider PA & lateral CXR. Consider baseline arterial blood gases and pulmonary function tests if significant compromise of pulmonary function is present.
Cardiovascular	Patients with both reflux and achalasia may present with chest pain. Typically the pain of reflux is sharp and substernal. Chest pain in achalasia may radiate to the neck, back, and arms and may be difficult to differentiate from pain of cardiac origin. Differentiation should be made before surgery both by careful history taking and appropriate tests. **Tests:** Consider ECG (r/o MI as cause of pain), exercise or chemical stress testing if source of chest pain remains unclear. Other tests as indicated from H&P.
Laboratory	Patients with severe inflammation and erosion may suffer from an iron deficiency anemia. Consider CBC. Otherwise as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	These patients may be at risk for aspiration and should be treated with full-stomach precautions. H_2 antagonists and continue proton pump inhibitors.

PREOPERATIVE: LAPAROSCOPIC CHOLECYSTECTOMY

The preop evaluation of patients undergoing open cholecystectomy is discussed under Anesthetic Considerations for Biliary Tract Surgery, p. 580.

Respiratory	Patients presenting for laparoscopic cholecystectomy may present electively or acutely. Increasingly, cholecystectomy is performed in patients with acute cholecystitis. Patients presenting acutely may experience severe abdominal pain, leading to diaphragmatic splinting and basal lung atelectasis. During the procedure, intraabdominal CO_2 insufflation → atelectasis, ↓ FRC, ↑ PIP, ↑ $PaCO_2$ and ↓ PaO_2; therefore, laparoscopic procedures may be contraindicated in patients with severe respiratory or cardiovascular disease. Postop respiratory function, however, is less impaired (e.g., ↓ FRC 30% vs. 50%) and is recovered more quickly (24 h vs. 72 h) in patients undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy than in the open procedure.
Systemic	Patients presenting for laparoscopic cholecystectomy with acute cholecystitis may have evidence of mild to moderate sepsis. They may be febrile, tachycardic, and hypotensive and need resuscitation prior to surgery.
Laboratory	CBC. Consider T&S in patients with recurrent and chronic gall bladder disease. They may have liver adhesions. During the acute inflammatory stage there may be ↑ vascularity → bleeding.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv unless patient is unstable or septic. If urgent surgery, check for recent administration of analgesics.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	**Laparoscopic fundoplication** and **Heller's myotomy:** Consider full stomach precautions and rapid sequence intubation technique (p. B-5). Additional iv access may be required if the arms are inaccessible. **Laparoscopic cholecystectomy:** Standard induction (p. B-2). In acutely unwell patients, despite resuscitation, patients may be more susceptible to the effects of anesthesia, and positive pressure ventilation. Consider additional iv access, invasive arterial pressure monitoring, and central access in unstable patients. Etomidate may be a useful induction agent in this setting. OG/NGT prior to incision to ensure stomach decompressed.

Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-2). Continue muscle relaxation. Intraabdominal CO_2 insufflation will → ↑ intraabdominal pressure, which will predispose to passive regurgitation of gastric contents. In addition, intraabdominal pressure > 15 mm Hg → ↓ venous return + ↑ SVR → ↓ CO. Controlled ventilation will minimize the possibility of hypercarbia from absorbed CO_2.	
Emergence	Given the high incidence of PONV, prophylactic antiemetic rx (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv) recommended and should be given 30–60 min before the end of the case (p. B-2).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer	Blood loss typically minimal with these procedures, but potential for major bleeding exists. Consider additional iv access, conversion to open procedure if risk factors for increased bleeding present.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Urinary catheter OG/NG tube	Others as clinically indicated. Prevent hypothermia (forced-air warmer, warming blanket, warm OR, etc.)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Initially in Trendelenburg position (↑ venous return, ↓ lung volumes, potential for mainstem intubation) for trocar placement; then reverse Trendelenburg (↓ venous return, ↑ lung volumes) during subsequent portions of the surgical procedure.
Complications	Respiratory: Pneumoperitoneum Hypercarbia/hypoxemia Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Endobronchial intubation	Pneumoperitoneum with CO_2 allows the surgeon to operate laparoscopically. This creates cephalad displacement of the diaphragm with ↓ FRC, ↓ pulmonary compliance, and atelectasis. This can manifest as ↑ PIP, ↓ PO_2 and ↑ PCO_2. Ventilation should be controlled during the operation to minimize the effects of pneumoperitoneum and hypercarbia. An increase in MV is appropriate. Pneumothorax can occur 2° retroperitoneal dissection of insufflated CO_2. Pneumothorax will manifest as ↓ PO_2, ↑ PIP, hemodynamic instability (↑ HR, ↓ BP), and possibly subcutaneous emphysema. The position of the ETT may change with altered patient position → endobronchial intubation.
	Cardiovascular: ↓ BP Hemorrhage Dysrhythmias	↓ BP can occur 2° patient positioning (reverse Trendelenburg) and from ↓ venous return 2° pneumoperitoneum (↑ intraabdominal pressure > 15 mm Hg). Hemorrhage can result from inadvertent injury to blood vessels (during trocar placement). Vascular injection of CO_2 (air embolism) can cause ↓ BP, dysrhythmias, and even cardiovascular collapse. If cardiopulmonary compromise occurs, the pneumoperitoneum can be released to allow for differential diagnosis and treatment.
	Visceral injury	Injury to the viscera may necessitate an open procedure or may go undiagnosed and → other postop complications, depending on the organ that is injured. At all times, be prepared to convert to an open procedure.
	Hypothermia	2° dry gas insufflation
	Subcutaneous emphysema	Keep CO_2 insufflation pressure < 12 mm Hg.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (common)	
	Shoulder pain	From pneumoperitoneum; usually self-limited (p. B-2).
	Respiratory	Typical postoperative complications are secondary to pneumoperitoneum but mainly to pain.
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3). Oxycodone/hydrocodone in combination with acetaminophen	Shoulder pain responds to ketorolac (15–30 mg iv), or other NSAIDs provided there are no contraindications.
Tests	As indicated from H&P	

Suggested Readings

1. Cunningham AJ, Nolan C: Anesthesia for minimally invasive surgery. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting, RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1061–71.
2. Feteiha MS, Curet MJ: Laparoscopic cholecystectomy. In: Zucker KA, ed. *Surgical Laparoscopy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 121–32.
3. Gadacz TR: Update on laparoscopic cholecystectomy, including a clinical pathway. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; 80:1127–50.
4. Gurbuz AT, Peetz ME: The acute abdomen in the pregnant patient. Is there a role for laparoscopy? *Surg Endosc* 1997; 11(2):98–102.
5. Hein HA: Hemodynamic changes during laparoscopic cholecystectomy in patients with severe cardiac disease. *J Clin Anesth* 1997; 9(4):261–5.
6. Keus F, Broeders IA, van Laarhoven J: Gallstone disease: surgical aspects of symptomatic and acute cholecystitis. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2006; 20(6):1031–51.
7. Keus F, de Jong JA, Gooszen HG, et al: Laparoscopic versus open cholecystectomy for patients with symptomatic cholecystolithiasis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 18(4):CD006231.
8. Nakeeb A, Ahrendt SA, Pitt HA: Calculous biliary disease. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Lillemone MB, Dohersy GM, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 978–98.

LAPAROSCOPIC SPLENECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Laparoscopic-assisted splenectomy** is best suited for normal or slightly enlarged spleens (e.g., idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura [ITP]). Laparoscopic splenectomy usually is contraindicated in patients who have cancer, large hilar lymph nodes, or portal hypertension. At present, the only absolute contraindication to the procedure is massive splenomegaly, with spleens > 30 cm in the longitudinal axis. There is a high conversion rate (to open surgery) if the size of the spleen is between 20 and 30 cm. Sometimes a hand-assisted approach may be helpful for spleens in this size range. Conversion rates are higher in patients with perisplenitis and morbid myeloproliferative disorders. For the procedure, patients should be placed on a beanbag in a 45° lateral decubitus position or a full lateral decubitus position. The advantage of the 45° right lateral decubitus position is that it is easy to rotate the table and place the patient in a supine position if there is an urgent need for conversion. With the 45° lateral decubitus or the full lateral decubitus position, the kidney rest should be elevated and the OR table should be flexed to increase the area between the costal margin and the superior iliac crest. All pressure points should be padded, and the patient should be secured firmly to the table. The first trocar site is generally in the LUQ (see Fig. 7.7-5). Access can be with a closed (Veress needle or Optiview trocar) or open (Hasson trocar) approach. The initial approach may be to the hilum, short gastrics, or inferior pole. Most surgeons use the harmonic scalpel to take down the various ligaments and to dissect out the hilum, which generally is stapled with an endo GIA. The short gastrics are either taken down with the harmonic scalpel or are stapled. The lateral and superior attachments are taken down last. The spleen is then placed in a bag. Removal of the spleen can be done in several ways. Some surgeons remove it with a morselizer placed through one of the trocar sites. Others enlarge one trocar site slightly and remove the spleen in chunks. For very large spleens, some surgeons make a Pfannenstiel incision and extract it through the pelvis.

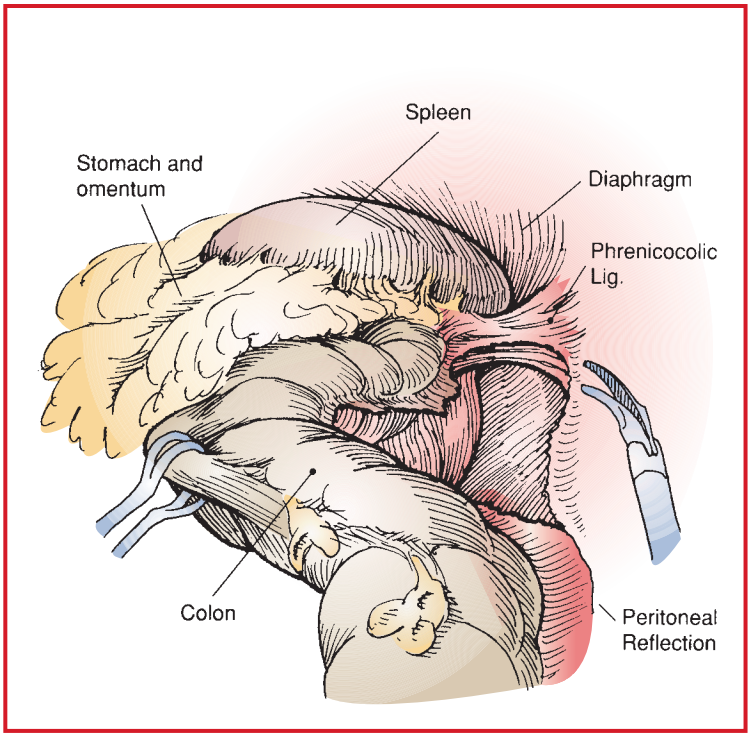


Figure 7.7-4. Anatomy of the spleen. (Reproduced with permission from Wind GG: The spleen. In *Applied Laparoscopic Anatomy: Abdomen and Pelvis.* Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1997.)

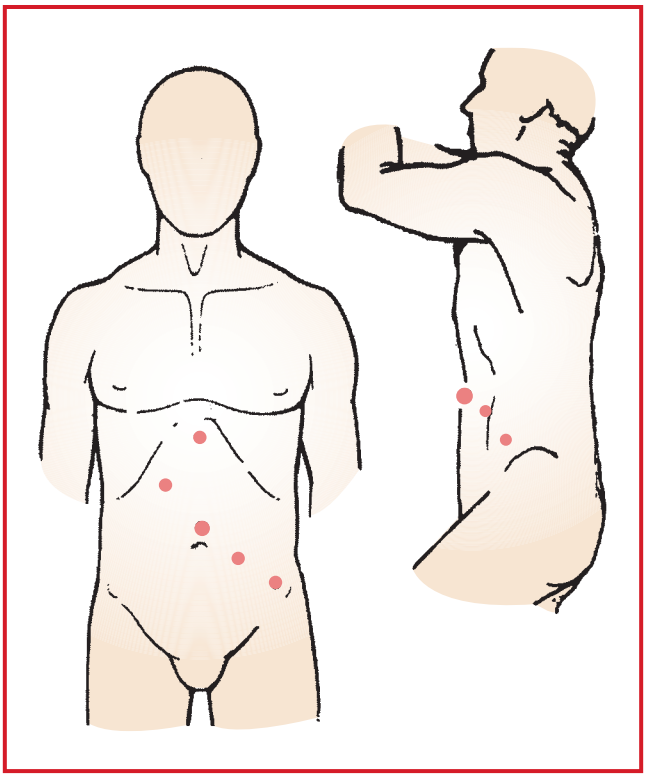


Figure 7.7-5. Trocar location for splenectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

Variant procedure or approaches: **Open splenectomy** (described on p. 645). **A hand-assist device** can be used for larger spleens. In such a case, a larger incision (~5 cm) is made either in the midline or the pelvis and a hand is inserted to assist in retracting and dissecting the spleen, while improving visualization.

Usual preop diagnosis: Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) (60%); hereditary spherocytosis (10%); hemolytic anemia (5%); thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) (5%); lymphoma (5%); hypersplenism (5%)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Usually 45° lateral decubitus, OR table flexed, beanbag
Incision	3–5 trocar ports; 1 enlarged to extract spleen
Special instrumentation	Vascular staplers; Harmonic scalpel; bipolar instruments
Unique considerations	Patients should have received vaccinations (pneumococcal, meningococcal, *Haemophilus influenzae*) preop. DVT prophylaxis; ± stress steroids; ± Plt transfusion.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–3 h
Closing considerations	Rapid closure not requiring muscle relaxation (following search for accessory spleen)
EBL	< 100 mL; if significant enough to require transfusion, may require conversion to laparotomy.
Postop care	PACU → ward. Generally begin liquids pod 1 and discharge pod 2.
Mortality	0.1 % (predominately related to underlying disease)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	5% Hemorrhage Pulmonary complications Injury to pancreas, stomach, or splenic flexure of colon
Pain score	5–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages; more common in adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Hematologic disorders (e.g., ITP, TTP); hemolytic anemia, tumor of the spleen (e.g., Hodgkin's disease); hypersplenism
Associated conditions	Steroid dependence; neutropenia; thrombocytopenia; hemolytic anemias

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients present for laparoscopic splenectomy with a variety of diseases, including ITP, lymphomatous disease (Hodgkin's and non-Hodgkin's), autoimmune hemolytic anemia, TTP, hereditary spherocytosis, Evans syndrome, hairy-cell leukemia, hypersplenism 2° portal HTN, sarcoidosis, polycythemia vera, and myelofibrosis. Open splenectomy is usually reserved for traumatic laceration of the spleen. Previous upper abdominal surgery does contraindicate a laparoscopic approach. Laparoscopic cases tend to take longer than open splenectomies. Patients who have been treated with chemotherapeutic drugs will require careful preop exam to evaluate for potentially toxic side effects. See Anesthetic Considerations for (open) Splenectomy, p. 647. Patients should receive pneumococcal, meningococcal, and *H. influenza* vaccinations at least 1 wk preop.

Respiratory	Splenomegaly may cause left lower-lobe atelectasis. As intraabdominal CO_2 insufflation → further atelectasis, ↓ FRC, ↑ PIP, ↑ $PaCO_2$ and ↓ PaO_2; therefore, laparoscopic procedures may be contraindicated in patients with advanced lung disease. **Tests:** Consider P/A & lateral CXR; ABG and PFTs, if clinically indicated.
Cardiovascular	Cardiovascular changes caused by the pneumoperitoneum include ↓ venous return → ↓ CO and ↑ SVR.
Hematologic	Cytopenias are very common. **Tests:** CBC with differential & Plt count, T&S, consider T&C. Antibodies may be present → allow ↑ time for T&S/T&C. Platelet counts typically low but preop platelet transfusion usually not helpful due to immediate splenic sequestration.
Hepatic	Consider presence of coexisting hepatic dysfunction due to primary disease and/or therapy for it. **Tests:** Hepatic panel, PT/PTT
Laboratory	See above. As indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). In patients with coexisting liver disease, modify medication choice and dosage accordingly. Place OG/NGT prior to incision to ensure stomach decompressed.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-2)	
Emergence	No special considerations. Prophylactic antiemetics are appropriate.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer	Blood loss should be 100 cc. If Plt transfusion is necessary, it should be given after ligation of splenic vessels (↓ sequestration). Be prepared to obtain more iv access if bleeding is excessive. Consider extra iv access if arms inaccessible at the start of the case.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1). Urinary catheter OG/NGT	Others as indicated by patient status. Prevent hypothermia (forced-air warmer, heated and humidified inspired gases, warming blanket, warm OR, etc.).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Careful positioning and padding of patient is essential.
General Considerations		If the spleen is large (> 20 cm), there is a higher rate of conversion to an open procedure. In particular, intraoperative pain will be greater; hence, analgesic requirements will be higher.
Complications	Respiratory: Cardiovascular: ↓ BP Hemorrhage Visceral injury Hypothermia Subcutaneous emphysema	The complications of laparoscopy are discussed in Anesthetic Considerations for Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591. Likely convert to open with significant hemorrhage. Plt transfusion may be necessary.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Shoulder pain PONV Atelectasis	2° pneumoperitoneum; usually self-limited. Ketorolac (30 mg iv) or other NSAIDs effective. See p. B-2. Usually left lower lobe
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3). A multimodal approach to analgesia is useful in these patients. Be cautious with NSAIDs in patients with coexisting bone marrow disease.	
Tests	As indicated by patient status.	

Suggested Readings

1. Fraker DL: The Spleen. In *Greenfield's Surgery Scientific Principles and Practice*, 5th Edition, Mulholland MW, Lillemoe KD, Doherty GM, et al, editors, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 1212–39.
2. Grahn SW, Alvarez J, Kirkwood K: Trends in laparoscopic splenectomy for massive splenomegaly. *Arch Surg* 2006; 141(8):755–62.
3. Katkhouda N, Mavor E: Laparoscopic splenectomy. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; 80:1285–98.
4. Pace DE, Chiasson PM, Schlachta CM, et al: Laparoscopic splenectomy for idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Surg Endosc* 2003; 17(1):95–8.
5. Rescoria RJ: Laparoscopic splenectomy. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2002; 11(4):226–32.

6. Sampath S, Meneghetti AT, MacFarlane JK, et al: An 18-year review of open and laparoscopic splenectomy for idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Am J Surg* 2007; 193(5): 580–3.
7. Tavakkoli A: The Spleen. In *Maingot's Abdominal Operations*, 12th edition, Zinner MJ, Ashley SW, eds. McGraw-Hill Medical, New York: 2013.

LAPAROSCOPIC ADRENALECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Laparoscopic adrenalectomy** typically is performed for a variety of adrenal problems including Conn's disease, functioning adenoma, pheochromocytoma, Cushing's disease, hyperplasia, virilizing or feminizing tumors, and an enlarging, nonfunctioning adenoma. Urologists generally use a retroperitoneal approach, whereas other surgeons use a transabdominal approach. The patient should be on a beanbag in the full lateral decubitus position (Fig. 7.7-6). The kidney rest should be elevated, and the table should be flexed to open up the area between the costal margin and iliac crest. A left adrenalectomy is typically easier than a right adrenalectomy. On the left side, three trocars are required along the costal margin. Surgery begins by immobilizing the spleen and the colon laterally, which allows the spleen to fall away completely from the adrenal gland. The adrenal is then seen behind the hilum of the spleen. Care should be taken to minimize manipulation of a pheochromocytoma to prevent sudden, unexpected HTN during the operation. In general, most surgeons prefer to clip and cut the adrenal vein first. After the adrenal is completely mobilized, it is removed through one of the port sites. For a right-sided approach, four trocars generally are required along the costal margin. The 4th trocar is used to retract the liver. The first step on the right side is to mobilize the lateral attachments of the liver to expose the adrenal. An enlarged right adrenal may be difficult to mobilize enough to see the adrenal vein because the right adrenal vein empties directly into the IVC. Most surgeons recommend using an endo GIA stapler to divide the right adrenal vein.

Variant procedure or approaches: Open procedure (p. 683) or retroperitoneal approach

Usual preop diagnosis: Indeterminate adrenal mass (nonfunctional adenoma); also can be performed for functional adenomas, rarely for pheochromocytoma. Contraindicated for known carcinoma.

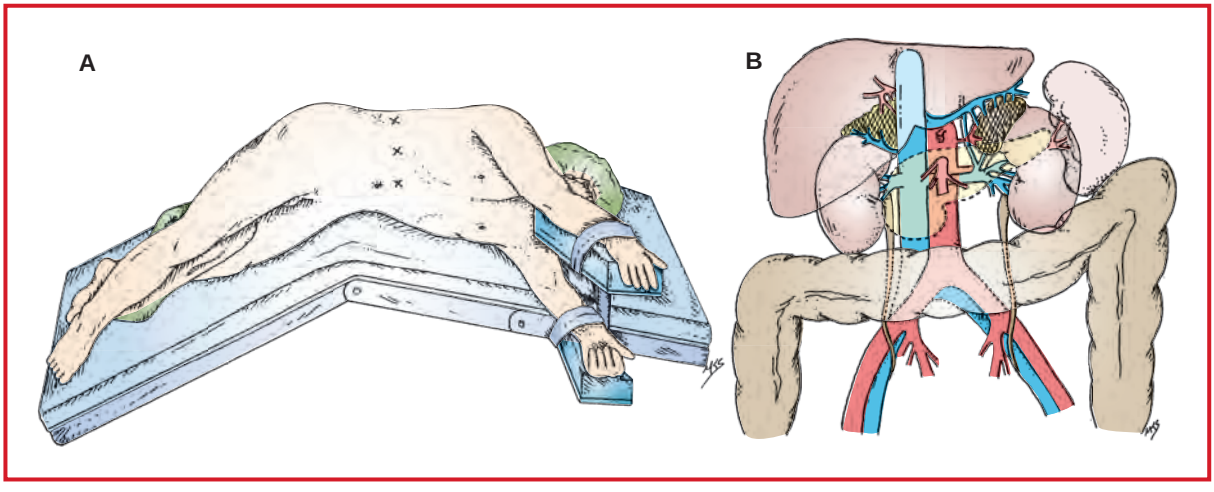


Figure 7.7-6. Laparoscopic adrenalectomy. **A:** Patient positioning and port locations. **B:** Anatomic relationships of adrenals (sutured) to adjacent and overlying structures. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy*, 2nd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lateral decubitus. A patient with bilateral disease may need repositioning between sides; or surgeon may use a supine approach.
Incision	3 ports on left side; 4 ports on right side
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Brief closure; muscle relaxation helpful for fascial repair
EBL	< 75 mL, although occasionally significant blood loss may occur.
Postop care	Patient usually discharged on pod 1 or 2, depending on BP control.
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage/hematoma Injury to pancreas or kidney UTI DVT
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Varies with underlying disorder
Etiology	Pheochromocytoma (25%); nonfunctioning adenomas, aldosteronoma (21%); cortisol-producing adenoma (15%); Cushing's disease (8%)
Associated conditions	Depending on function of tumor (e.g., HTN for aldosteronoma, Cushing's disease)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The preop evaluation of patients undergoing laparoscopic adrenalectomy is discussed under Anesthetic Considerations for (open) Adrenalectomy, p. 687.

Cardiovascular	Cardiovascular changes caused by the pneumoperitoneum include ↓ venous return → ↓ CO and ↑ SVR. Decreased blood flow to the splanchnic and renal circulations (→ ↓ UO) may result from high intraabdominal pressures.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. An epidural should not be necessary for postop analgesia if the procedure is performed laparoscopically. If the surgical team feels that there is a high likelihood of conversion to an open procedure, consider placement of an epidural catheter for postop analgesia.

Induction	See induction under (open) Adrenalectomy, p. 687.
Maintenance	See maintenance under (open) Adrenalectomy, p. 687.

Emergence	See emergence under (open) Adrenalectomy, p. 688. Case is likely to take longer if performed laparoscopically, but usually has a less painful postop course. Prophylactic antiemetics are appropriate.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–14 ga × 1 NS/LR @5–15 mL/kg/h	Warming techniques important (forced-air warmers, fluid warmers, humidified inspired gases, etc.).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) UO Arterial line ± CVP catheter ± PA catheter TEE	 A PA catheter may be useful in the management of patients with pheochromocytoma. TEE may be helpful to evaluate cardiac function and filling.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Careful support and padding of extremities and torso is very important.
Complications: laparoscopic	Respiratory: Pneumoperitoneum Hypercarbia/hypoxemia Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Endobronchial intubation Cardiovascular: ↓ BP Hemorrhage Dysrhythmias Visceral injury Subcutaneous emphysema Hypothermia	The complications of laparoscopy are discussed in Anesthetic Considerations for Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591.
Complications: endocrine	Pheochromocytoma: BP lability Myocardial dysfunction Conn's syndrome: CHF 2° hypervolemia ↓ BP Electrolyte disturbances Hyperglycemia Cushing's syndrome: ↓ BP Acute adrenal insufficiency	Rx: intraop HTN with SNP or phentolamine (2.5–5 mg q 5 min); ↑ HR with esmolol; ↓ BP with phenylephrine or dopamine. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Adrenalectomy, p. 687.) See Anesthetic Considerations for Adrenalectomy, p. 687. Continue replacement steroids. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Adrenalectomy, p. 687.)

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Shoulder pain	See p. B-2. Consider ketorolac 30 mg iv.
Pain management	PCA (p. B-5)	See Anesthetic Considerations for Adrenalectomy, p. 687.
Tests	As indicated	

Suggested Readings

1. Area MJ, Gagner M: Laparoscopic management of adrenal lesions. In: Zucker KA, ed. *Surgical Laparoscopy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 635–42.

2. Ciriac J, Weizman D, Urback DR: Laparoscopic adrenalectomy for the management of benign and malignant adrenal tumors. *Expert Rev Med Devices* 2006; 3(6):777–86.
3. Hasan R, Harold KL, Matthews BD, et al: Outcomes for laparoscopic bilateral adrenalectomy. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2000; 12(4):233–6.
4. Horgan S, Sinan M, Helton WS, et al: Use of laparoscopic techniques improves outcome from adrenalectomy. *Am J Surg* 1997; 173:371–4.
5. Lodin M, Priitera A, Giannone G: Laparoscopic adrenalectomy: keys to success: correct surgical indications, adequate preoperative preparation, surgical team experience. *Surg Laprosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2007; 17(5):392–5.
6. Olson JA, Scher RP: Adrenal gland. In: Lillemoe KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery Scientific Principles and Practice,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 1325–45.
7. Raeburn CD, McIntyre RC Jr: Laparoscopic approach to adrenal and endocrine pancreatic tumors. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; 80:1427–42.

LAPAROSCOPIC BOWEL RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The surgical community has not uniformly embraced **laparoscopic bowel surgery.** It is technically very difficult because the surgeon has to maneuver in several quadrants during the operation. In benign diseases (e.g., ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, diverticular disease, and polyps) there are clear advantages to a laparoscopic approach to bowel resection, including decreased pain, earlier return of GI function, earlier ambulation, and earlier discharge from the hospital. Although these advantages also apply to the patient with cancer, there are still reservations about whether cure and survival rates are the same. Preliminary data from several ongoing multicenter trials indicate

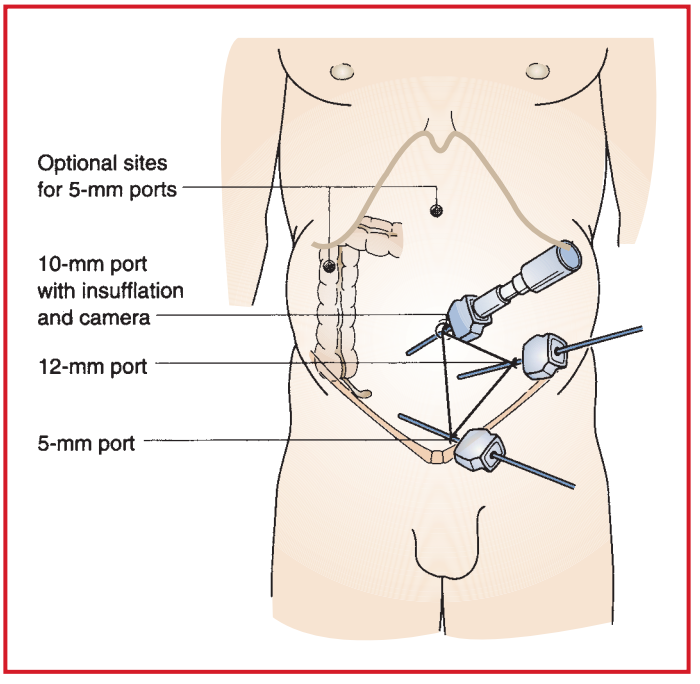


Figure 7.7-7. Trocar placement for a right colectomy. The general principle is to place the camera port so that the surgeon's visual axis is parallel to the telescope, and to place the working ports so that the operative site is at the apex of an isosceles triangle. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven Publishers, Philadelphia: 1997.)

that the length of the specimen and the number of lymph nodes removed are the same with both approaches. Data regarding staging and survival indicate outcomes are similar with laparoscopic or open approaches.

For a **left-sided colon resection**, the patient is placed in a low lithotomy position, while in other bowel resections, a supine position is used. The patient's arms should be tucked to improve access to all four quadrants. Generally, four to five ports are required, one in each quadrant (Fig. 7.7-7). For a **laparoscopic-assisted approach,** one of these ports will be enlarged slightly for removal of the specimen. Very often the operating table will need to be tilted or rotated throughout the course of the procedure to help move the small intestines away from the surgical dissection site. The procedure typically begins with localization of the pathology. This may require an intraop **sigmoidoscopy** if the lesion has not already been marked on colonoscopy or if it is not grossly apparent. The involved section of the intestine is then mobilized. Often, division of the mesentery is done intracorporeally. Occasionally, surgeons will exteriorize the bowel and do extracorporeal division of the mesentery and extracorporeal division of the bowel. For right-sided lesions, the anastomosis typically is done extracorporeally; however, for left-sided lesions, once the bowel is removed, the extraction site will be closed. The pneumoperitoneum will be reinsufflated and the anastomosis will be performed intracorporeally with an end-to-end stapler placed through the anus.

Unipolar and bipolar cautery, the harmonic scalpel, and many different surgical staplers may be used during these procedures. These generally require longer operative times than the corresponding open procedures, but typically, they are associated with shorter hospitalization stays and earlier return to work than traditional laparotomy.

Variant procedure or approaches: Open surgery (see p. 528), laparoscopic-assisted, or totally laparoscopic procedures. Some surgeons also have recommended a hand-assisted procedure where a pneumoperitoneum is still used, but the port site of extraction is enlarged at the beginning of the operation. The surgeon's hand can be placed through a special sleeve that maintains pneumoperitoneum, but also allows the surgeon to retract and dissect manually. Occasionally, the specimen is removed via the anus or through a vaginotomy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Intestinal obstruction; inflammatory conditions (e.g., diverticulitis, bleeding, neoplasms); cancer (controversial)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Usually supine; sometimes lithotomy for left-sided procedures
Incision	4–5 trocar sites, one in each quadrant. One site will be enlarged for specimen removal and/or anastomosis in laparoscopic-assisted procedures.
Special instrumentation	Harmonic scalpel, various laparoscopic stapling instruments
Unique considerations	The operating table will be moved quite frequently to help with visualization.
Antibiotics	Ertapenem 1 g iv or 2nd generation cephalosporin (e.g., cefotetan 1–2 g or cefoxitin 1 g iv)
Surgical time	1.5–2 h (small bowel resection); 3–4 h (colonic resection). Surgical times will ↑ in the presence of acute inflammation and as the bowel resection becomes more extensive.
Closing considerations	Usually requires closure of several port sites; muscle relaxation helpful.
EBL	< 200 mL
Postop care	NG tube seldom used. Most patients begin regular diet within 48 h; discharge, generally 3–4 d.
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	< 5% (similar in magnitude to those seen with open operations) Complications include: Hemorrhage Infection Anastomotic leak Intestinal obstruction
Pain score	6–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages (increases with age)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Varies with disease process.
Etiology	Diverticulitis; polyps; inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
Associated conditions	None

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

For respiratory, cardiovascular, musculoskeletal, gastrointestinal, and renal considerations, see Anesthetic Considerations for Intestinal and Peritoneal Procedures, p. 641.

Additional considerations	Laparoscopic bowel resection is performed for both malignant and benign disease. Patients presenting may have a long history of inflammatory bowel disease such as ulcerative colitis or Crohn's disease. Typically they have received medical therapy, surgical treatments or both. Medical therapies include 5-aminosalicylic acid compounds and immunosuppressants, such as corticosteroids and methotrexate. Side effects of medical therapies include interstitial nephritis, pancreatitis, pleuropericarditis (5-aminosalicylic acids) immunosuppression, truncal obesity, diabetes, and hypertension (corticosteroids). Patients who have had previous surgery or severe disease may have adhesions making the impending laparoscopic surgery more technically challenging. Inflammatory bowel disease is associated with a number of coexisting conditions including arthritis, uveitis, biliary stasis, which may impact on anesthetic management.
Tests	CBC, Renal panel, T&S. Others as per history and physical exam.
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-2).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). Standard rapid-sequence induction if at risk for aspiration (p. B-4). OG/NGT placed prior to incision to decompress the stomach.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-2).	
Emergence	No special considerations unless the patient is at risk for aspiration; extubation should then occur after the patient is fully awake and has protective airway reflexes.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer	Blood loss should be < 200 cc.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1). Urinary catheter	Others as indicated by patient status. Prevent hypothermia (forced-air warmer, warming blanket, warm room, etc.).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

Complications	Respiratory: Pneumoperitoneum Hypercarbia/hypoxemia Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Endobronchial intubation Cardiovascular: ↓ BP Dysrhythmias Hemorrhage Visceral injury Hypothermia Subcutaneous emphysema	These complications (associated with the preperitoneal approach), as well as the general complications of laparoscopy, are discussed in Anesthetic Considerations for Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Shoulder pain	See p. B-2. Ketorolac (30 mg iv) or other NSAIDS
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3)	
Tests	As indicated by patient status.	

Suggested Readings

1. COST (Clinical Outcomes of Surgical Therapy Study Group): A comparison of laparoscopically assisted and open colectomy for colon cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; 350(20):2050–9.
2. Favuzza J, Delaney CP: Outcomes of discharge after elective laparoscopic colorectal surgery with transversus abdominis plane blocks and enhanced recovery pathway. *J Am Coll Surg* 2013; 217(3):503–6.
3. Fleshman JW, Sargent DJ, Green E, et al: Laparoscopic colectomy for cancer is not inferior to open surgery based on 5-year data from the COST Study Group trial. *Ann Surg* 2007; 246(4):655–64.
4. Hinojosa MW, Murrell ZA, Konyalian VR: Comparison of laparoscopic vs open sigmoid colectomy for benign and malignant disease at academic medical centers. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; 11(11):1423–30.
5. Keshava A, Young CJ, Richardson GL, et al: A historical comparison of single incision and conventional multiport laparoscopic right hemicolectomy. *Colorectal Dis* 2013; 15(10):e618–22.
6. Nishimura A, Kawahara M, Honda K, et al: Totally laparoscopic anterior resection with transvaginal assistance and transvaginal specimen extraction: a technique for natural orifice surgery combined with reduced-port surgery. *Surg Endosc* 2013; 27(12):4734–40.

LAPAROSCOPIC APPENDECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Appendectomy** generally is performed for suspected appendicitis. The patient is placed in the supine position with the left arm tucked. An OG/NG tube should be inserted to decompress the stomach. Access is obtained at the umbilicus, either through a closed (**Veress needle**) technique or open (**Hasson trocar**) technique. If a Veress needle is used, a Foley catheter should be inserted. Two additional trocars are inserted—one suprapubic and the other in the LLQ. The port in the LLQ is a 10/12 mm trocar to allow passage of an endo GIA stapler. Occasionally, a 4th trocar may be placed in the RUQ to help with mobilization and retraction. The table will then be rotated to the left side, and the surgeon may ask for it to be placed in Trendelenburg or reverse Trendelenburg position, depending on the location of the cecum. The base of the cecum is identified and the appendix is mobilized (Fig. 7.7-8B). This may require dissection of the peritoneal edge along the right gutter. After the appendix is mobilized, a window is created in the mesoappendix, and the base of the appendix is stapled with an endo GIA. The mesoappendix is then stapled with a vascular-cartridge endo GIA. The appendix generally is placed in a bag prior to delivering it, or it may

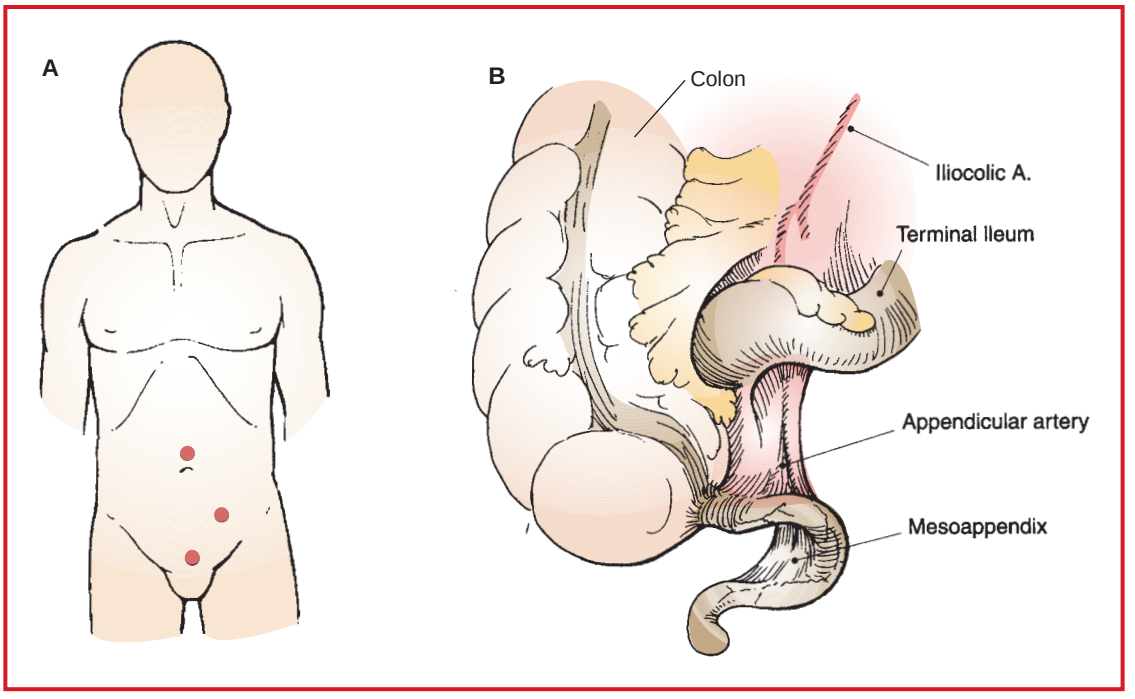


Figure 7.7-8. Setup and initial view for laparoscopic appendectomy. **A:** Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003. **B:** Reproduced with permission from Wind GG: The spleen. In: *Applied Laparoscopic Anatomy: Abdomen and Pelvis.* Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1997.

be brought directly through the 10/12-mm trocar. The umbilical fascia is closed, and the skin is loosely approximated. When unexpected pathology is identified, it can be dealt with by laparoscopy or by laparotomy, with incision placement dependent on findings.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Open appendectomy** (see p. 521) via RLQ or midline incision

Usual preop diagnosis: **Acute abdomen;** possible acute appendicitis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	3–4 ports (see Fig. 7.7-8A)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop
Surgical time	60–90 min
Closing considerations	Muscular relaxation helpful for umbilical closure; NG tube if prolonged ileus anticipated.
EBL	< 75 mL
Postop care	Patients are hospitalized for varying lengths of time, depending on their need for antibiotics. Many with simple acute appendicitis can go home within 24 h.
Mortality	Perforated: 2–5% (nonperforated: < 0.1%); increased in elderly patients and infants.
Morbidity	Overall: 3% if nonperforated; 20–50% with perforation Intraabdominal abscess Hematoma Ileus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity (cont'd)	Risk of intraabdominal abscess, mostly dependent on pathology (e.g., early acute inflammation vs. perforation) Hemorrhage Infection Stump leak: exceedingly rare Conversion to open procedure: dependent on pathology and experience of surgeon
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages; commonly, 19–25 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common (7%)
Etiology	Acute appendicitis; etiology unknown
Associated conditions	Consider other pelvic pathology in women of childbearing age.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This patient population is generally fit and healthy, apart from their acutely presenting illness. Full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5) are appropriate in these patients.

Respiratory	Respiratory impairment can occur 2° acute abdominal pain and splinting. Patients with acute abdomen should be treated as if they have full stomachs. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Cardiovascular changes caused by the pneumoperitoneum include ↓ venous return → ↓ CO and ↑ SVR. Decreased blood flow to the splanchnic and renal circulations (→ ↓ UO) may result from high intraabdominal pressures. May be dehydrated from fever, emesis, and decreased oral intake. Assess volume status with VS and hydrate adequately before anesthetic induction. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Patient typically has abdominal pain with N/V. Muscular resistance to palpation of abdominal wall frequently parallels the severity of the inflammatory process. With spreading peritoneal irritation (as with perforation), patient will develop abdominal distension and paralytic ileus. **Tests:** Renal panel, consider pregnancy test
Hematologic	Moderate leukocytosis (10,000–18,000) with left shift. Hemoconcentration likely if patient dehydrated. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	Others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients with acute appendicitis should be treated as if they have full stomachs (see p. B-5). Ascertain if patient received opiates during ED eval and management. Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, with rapid-sequence iv induction.

Induction	Preoxygenate patient and have an assistant apply cricoid pressure. Etomidate 0.1–0.4 mg/kg or propofol 1.5–3 mg/kg + succinylcholine 1.5 mg/kg, for intubation (see p. B-5). OG/NGT placed prior to incision to decompress the stomach.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3), without N_2O.	
Emergence	Extubate when the patient is awake and with active laryngeal protective reflexes.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1). Urinary catheter	Others as indicated by patient status. Prevent hypothermia (forced-air warmer, warming blanket, warm room, etc.)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Secure or tuck arms	Trendelenburg position with elevation of the right side of the abdomen improves surgical exposure.
Complications	Respiratory: Pneumoperitoneum Hypercarbia/hypoxemia Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Endobronchial intubation Cardiovascular: Hypotension Dysrhythmias Visceral injury Hypothermia Subcutaneous emphysema	These complications (associated with the preperitoneal approach), as well as the general complications of laparoscopy, are discussed in Anesthetic Considerations for Lap Cholecystectomy, p. 591.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Urinary retention	See p. B-2. Straight catheterization of the bladder
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Oral analgesics Ketorolac	 Acetaminophen 650–1000 mg po q 6 h or Percocet: 1–2 tab po q 6 h 30 mg iv
Tests	As indicated by patient status.	

Suggested Readings

1. Bennett J, Boddy A, Rhode M: Choice of approach for appendicectomy: a meta-analysis of open versus laparoscopic appendicectomy. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2007; 17(4):245–55.
2. Mathews JB, Hodin, RA: The Appendix. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemoe KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery Scientific Principles and Practice*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 1199–211.

LAPAROSCOPIC INGUINAL HERNIA REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Laparoscopic hernia repair** is clearly preferred in patients with recurrent or bilateral hernias (Fig. 7.7-9). In patients with first-time unilateral hernias, there are no clear advantages in terms of operative time, postop pain, time to discharge, or time to return to normal activities, compared with tension-free open repair (see p. 651). There are three types of laparoscopic hernia repairs. The first, **ONLAY,** generally has been discarded because of high recurrence rates. The other two are the **totally extraperitoneal** (**TEP**) and the **transabdominal preperitoneal** (**TAPP**) techniques. Of these, the TEP is somewhat more difficult to learn, but is associated with lower recurrence rates and complications than is the TAPP. For both the TEP and the TAPP, the patient is placed in the supine position with both arms tucked. Some surgeons insert a Foley, but many do not. A small incision is made at the umbilicus. For a **TEP,** this incision only goes to the preperitoneal space, and a balloon is then used for dissection. Two additional ports are placed in the midline—one suprapubic and one halfway between the umbilicus and the suprapubic port. Further dissection is required to identify the hernia defects, which are then reduced. The cord structures are completely freed, and any cord lipomas are dissected. Mesh is placed to cover the entire area and is tacked to Cooper's ligament. For a **TAPP** repair, the umbilical incision extends into the abdomen. Two additional ports are placed at the level of the iliac crest—one in the RLQ and one in the LLQ. A peritoneal flap over the hernia defect is created, and the preperitoneal space is entered. The rest of the dissection and the placement of the mesh are the same as with the TEP repair. At the end of the TAPP procedure, the peritoneal flap is placed over the mesh and tacked into place to prevent exposure of the bowel to the mesh.

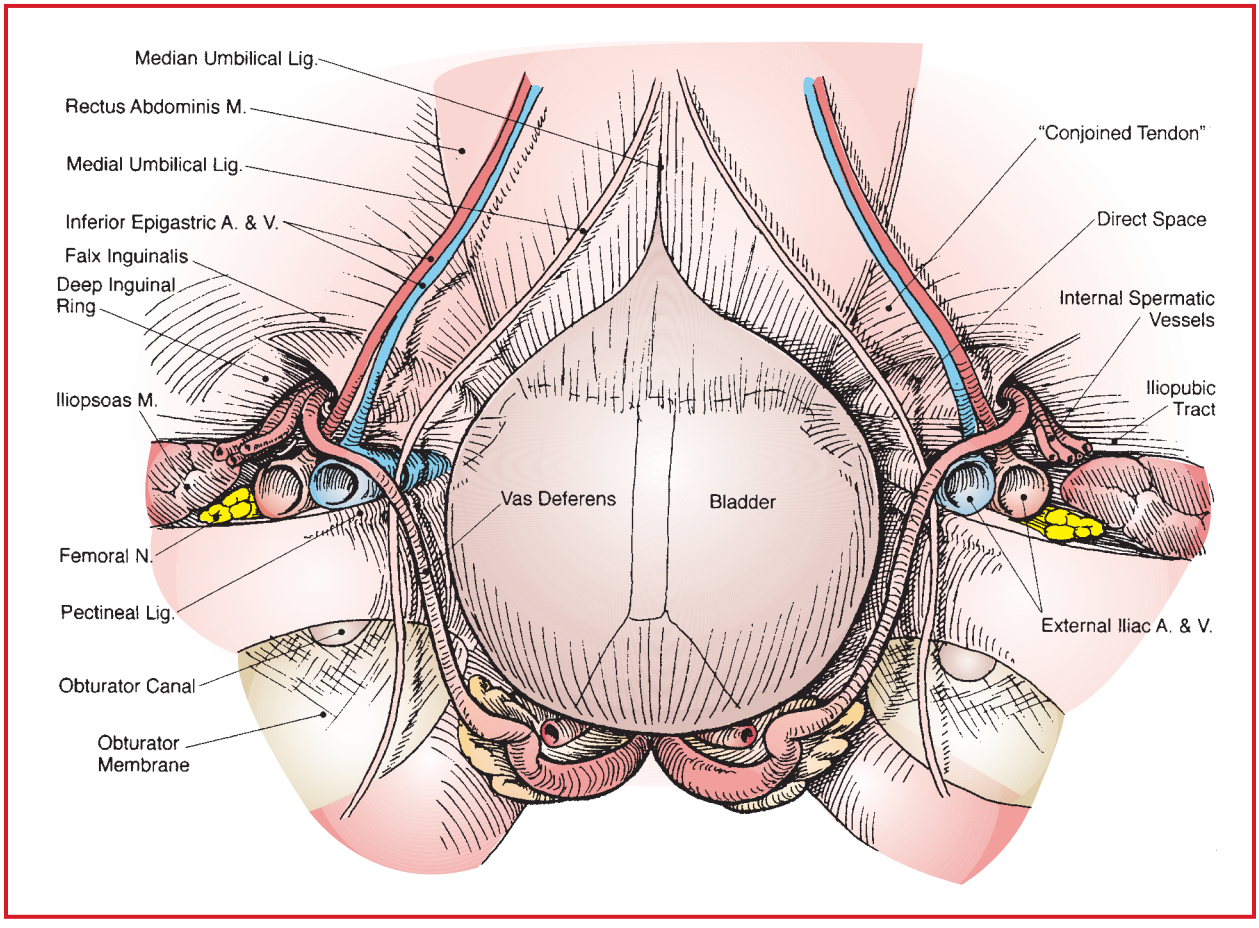


Figure 7.7-9. The inguinal region. (Reproduced with permission from Wind GG: The inguinal region. In: *Applied Laparoscopic Anatomy: Abdomen and Pelvis.* Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1997.)

Variant Procedure or approaches: **Open hernia repair** (see Inguinal Herniorrhaphy, p. 651).

Usual preop diagnosis: Inguinal hernia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, arms tucked
Incision	3 ports—1 at the umbilicus; 2 either in the midline or RLQ or LLQ, depending on the laparoscopic approach.
Special instrumentation	Balloon dissector for TEP repair
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Minimal time; muscle relaxation may be helpful.
EBL	< 50 mL
Postop care	1–2 h in PACU/holding area → home
Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	2% Orchialgia, neuralgia Recurrence of hernia: significant learning curve Bowel obstruction Bladder injury: rarely reported
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Mostly adults
Male:Female	Male > Female
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Most hernias congenital; chronically increased intraabdominal pressure (e.g., chronic cough, obesity)
Associated conditions	None important

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The preop evaluation of patients undergoing laparoscopic hernia repair is discussed in Anesthetic Considerations for Inguinal Hernia, p. 652. Patients presenting for this procedure are generally healthy. Laparoscopic repair of inguinal hernia is usually associated with less pain and earlier return to preop function when compared to the open procedure. Patients with strangulated or incarcerated hernias usually require emergent open procedures.

Cardiovascular	Cardiovascular changes caused by the pneumoperitoneum include ↓ venous return → ↓ CO and ↑ SVR. Decreased blood flow to the splanchnic and renal circulations (→ ↓ UO) may result from high intraabdominal pressures.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct (healthy patients); otherwise, as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Standard premedication (p. B-2)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). OG/NG tube prior to incision to decompress the stomach.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-2)	
Emergence	No special considerations except to minimize coughing on emergence. Consider 1 mg/kg iv lidocaine.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h	Blood loss should be minimal.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Urinary catheter	Others as indicated by patient status. Prevent hypothermia (forced-air warmer, heated and humidified gases, warming blanket, warm OR, etc.).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Careful positioning and padding of the patient is essential.
Complications	Hemorrhage from trocar insertion. Subcutaneous emphysema	These complications (associated with the preperitoneal approach), as well as the general complications of laparoscopy, are discussed in Anesthetic Considerations for Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy, p. 591.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Urinary retention	See Appendix B Straight catheterization of the bladder
Pain management	Oral opiates Ketorolac	Tylenol #3 – 2 po q 6 h or Percocet – 2 po q 6 h. 15–30 mg iv
Tests	As indicated by patient status.	

Suggested Readings

1. Crawford DL, Philips EH: Totally extraperitoneal laparoscopic herniorrhaphy. In: Zucker KA, ed. *Surgical Laparoscopy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 571–84.
2. Matthews RD, Anthony T, Kim LT, et al: Factors associated with postoperative complications and hernia recurrence for patients undergoing inguinal hernia repair: a report from the VA Cooperative Hernia Study Group. *Am J Surg* 2007; 194(5):611–7.
3. Neumayer L, Giobbie-Hurder A, Jonasson O, et al: Open mesh versus laparoscopic mesh repair of inguinal hernia. *N Engl J Med* 2004; 350(18):1819–27.

LAPAROSCOPIC BARIATRIC SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Morbid obesity is increasing worldwide. Currently, nearly two-thirds of Americans are overweight (BMI 25–30 kg/m^2) or obese (BMI > 30 kg/m^2). According to the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 35% of American adults are obese. Many patients have associated comorbidities, including HTN, diabetes, and sleep apnea, which they have been unable to correct by dieting and exercise. In 1998, the NIH recommended bariatric surgery as the primary treatment for morbid obesity. Surgical treatment results in weight loss of approximately 2/3–3/4 of excess body weight, usually with consequent correction of comorbidities. Operations for morbid obesity are classified as restrictive, such as the **adjustable gastric banding** and **vertical banded gastroplasty;** malabsorptive, such as a **jejunoileal bypass;** or a combination, such as the **Roux-en-Y gastric bypass.** The 1991 NIH consensus

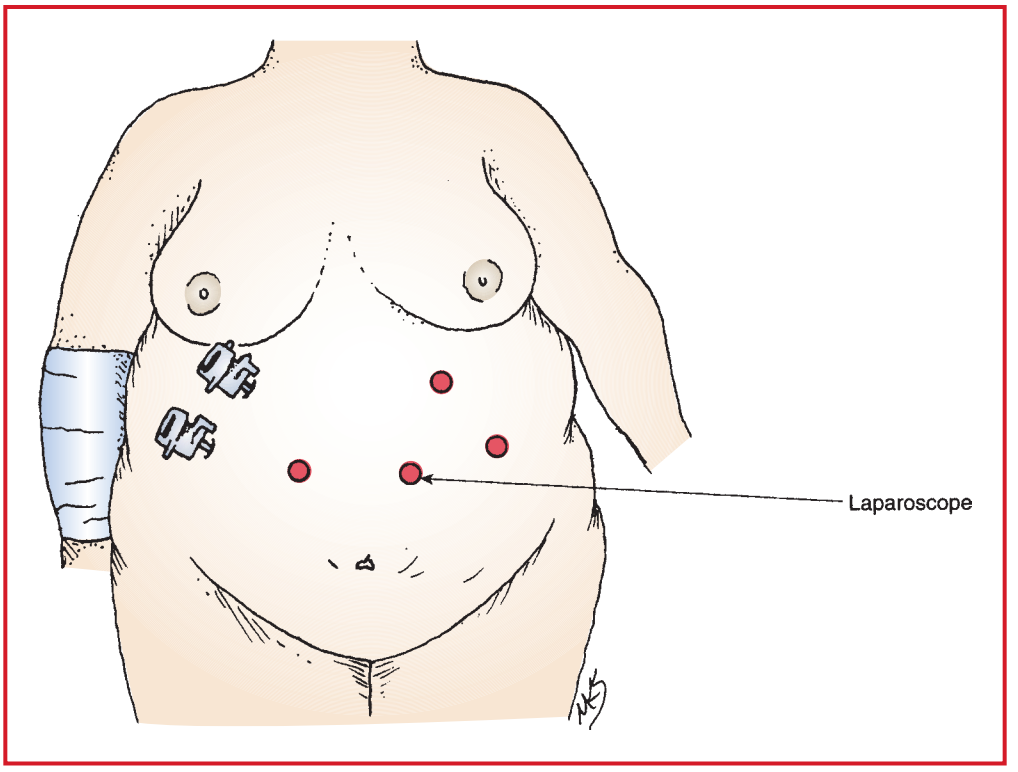


Figure 7.7-10. Patient position and trocar position for bariatric laparoscopic surgery. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Connors CEH, Dawson, DL: *Operative Anatomy,* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

statement identified the Roux-en-Y bypass as the best surgical treatment for morbid obesity. In general, this operation is approached laparoscopically in most patients because of the decreased pain, earlier ambulation, earlier discharge from the hospital, quicker return to regular activity, and decreased wound complication rates, when compared with an open approach. Open approaches, though very rare, are undertaken in patients with previous upper abdominal surgery; patients who may not tolerate an increased intraabdominal pressure (e.g., CHF, severe CAD, severe pulmonary disease), patients undergoing revision bariatric surgery, and occasionally in patients who fall into a super morbidly obese group (BMI > 60 kg/m^2). Surgery is indicated in patients with a BMI of 35–40 kg/m^2, if they have associated comorbidities, or > 40 kg/m^2, if they have no associated comorbidities.

In these procedures, the patient generally is placed in Reverse Trendelenberg-Head Elevated Laryngoscopic Position (RT-HELP). Some surgeons prefer a split-leg table, with the surgeon standing between the legs. For a laparoscopic Roux-en-Y bypass, the first incision is made in the midline, approximately halfway between the umbilicus and the xyphoid; 4–5 additional ports are then placed in the LUQ and the midline (Fig. 7.7-10). Most surgeons begin by performing a jejunojejunostomy. During this time, the patient is placed in a reverse Trendelenburg position to drop the small intestines into the pelvis. The omentum is placed in the upper abdomen, and the ligament of Treitz is identified. The jejunum is divided with an endo GIA stapler ~20 cm from the ligament of Treitz. A Roux limb of 100 cm is then measured. (Occasionally, this Roux limb may be 150 cm, if the patient's BMI is > 50 kg/m^2.) The jejunojejunostomy is created with a stapler, and the enterotomy is closed. Some surgeons prefer a **retrocolic approach,** wherein a passage is made through the transverse mesocolon. Other surgeons prefer an **antecolic approach,** in which the omentum is divided to allow for a place where the Roux limb can pass without tension. At this point, the liver retractor is placed, and the gastric pouch is created. Before stomach stapling, everything in the stomach, OG tubes, and calibrating tubes, should be removed. The gastric pouch is then stapled and cut. Often a calibrating tube is placed after the first two staple firings to help maintain the size of the pouch and the anastomosis. Some surgeons hand sew the gastrojejunostomy, and some staple it with a linear stapler. Some surgeons staple the anastomosis and place the anvil of the end-to-end anastomotic stapler through the mouth (rarely done). Other surgeons place the anvil through a separate gastrotomy prior to complete division of the pouch. At the end, the gastrojejunostomy typically is tested by inflating air into the gastric pouch, either through an OG tube, the sizing

tube, or a gastroscope. Generally, the NG or OG tube is removed at the end of the procedure. Often, at this point, surgeons will close the defect of the transverse mesocolon.

Variant procedure or approaches: Open bypass (see p. 511).

Usual preop diagnosis: Morbid obesity generally in combination with a medical condition(s) felt to be worsened by the obesity (e.g., osteoarthritis, diabetes, respiratory insufficiency, CHF, hypertension, sleep apnea); BMI > 40 kg/m^2, or BMI > 35 kg/m^2 if associated comorbidities present.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or split leg (see Fig. 7.2-6 in Open Operations for Morbid Obesity, p. 511 for suggested positioning.)
Incision	Five to six port sites
Unique considerations	Patients are at high risk for aspiration, and airway management may be difficult. Patients are at high risk for thromboembolic events and VTE prophylaxis is critical (p. B-2).
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g iv
Surgical time	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Typically, fascial defects are not closed.
EBL	< 50 mL
Postop care	Most patients receive an upper GI study the next day. Clear liquids are begun if the study is normal, and most patients are discharged within 48 h.
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Overall: 10% Stricture: 10% Leak: 1–2% VTE Pneumonia Hemorrhage Hernia Obstruction Infection
Pain score	5–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age Range	Generally, between 18–60 yr
Male:Female	Female > Male
Incidence	5%
Etiology	Genetic; environmental
Associated conditions	Sleep apnea; HTN; diabetes; GERD, osteoarthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Obesity is associated with many chronic medical problems. Morbidity and mortality rise sharply with increasing age and BMI. Obesity and length of exposure to obesity, increase the risk of hospital admission and lengthen hospital stay. Medical comorbidities must be optimized before elective bariatric surgery. Evaluate any patient who has had previous bariatric surgery for metabolic changes that can include protein, vitamin, iron, and calcium deficiencies.

Review a list of all current medications the patient is taking, including nonprescription appetite suppressors and diet drugs. Many of these drugs can have important side effects. For example, the combination of phentermine and fenfluramine ("phen-fen"), which is no longer prescribed in the United States, is associated with persistent, serious, heart and lung problems. Another weight loss medication, sibutramine, works in the brain by inhibiting the reuptake of norepinephrine, serotonin, and dopamine, producing a feeling of "anorexia," which limits food intake. Sibutramine has been implicated as a cause of dysrhythmias and hypertension. Orlistat blocks digestion and absorption of dietary fat by binding lipases in the gastrointestinal tract and can cause deficiencies in fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K). A reduction in vitamin K levels can increase the anticoagulation effects of warfarin.

Respiratory	Adipose tissue is metabolically active. Oxygen consumption and CO_2 production rise with increasing weight 2° ↑ metabolic demands. The work of breathing is increased, while respiratory muscle performance is impaired. Mass loading of the thoracic and abdominal walls causes abnormalities in both lung volume and gas exchange, especially when the patient is supine. The increased total respiratory resistance and decreased compliance associated with extreme obesity result in shallow, rapid breathing. Decreased FRC 2° ↓ ERV → ↓ TLC. Airways close during normal ventilation → ↑ pulmonary shunt → hypoxemia. These changes increase in direct proportion with increasing BMI. General anesthesia and the supine position further reduce FRC. Preop PFTs show a restrictive breathing pattern. For symptomatic patients, an ABG obtained while the patient breathes room air is useful to establish a baseline. Younger obese patients have an increased ventilatory response to hypoxia and a relatively decreased response to hypercapnia. Their arterial blood sample often demonstrates alveolar hyperventilation ($PaCO_2$ 30–35 mm Hg) and relative hypoxemia (PaO_2 70–90 mm Hg) while breathing air. With increasing age, sensitivity to CO_2 decreases, so that $PaCO_2$ rises and PaO_2 falls further. Preop assessment of a patient's face, neck, and upper airway is required because mask ventilation and tracheal intubation can be a challenge in some obese patients. A large neck circumference and high Mallampati score may predict difficult intubation. A review of the patient's previous anesthetic records will reveal whether airway problems had been encountered during previous surgical procedures. Thorough preparation requires that multiple laryngoscopy blades and sizes, a gum elastic bougie, and laryngeal mask airway are readily available prior to laryngoscopy. Video laryngoscopes and fiberoptic intubation are increasingly used for known or anticipated problematic laryngoscopy. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Cardiac output rises proportionally with increased weight. Lean body weight, which increases with increasing obesity, is significantly related to cardiac output. ↑ CO and normal PVR → ↑ BP. Mild to moderate hypertension is seen in most morbidly obese patients. The increased left ventricular wall stress caused by increased stroke volume and the resultant ventricular dilation leads to cardiac hypertrophy. Left ventricular dysfunction is often present in young, asymptomatic patients. Even normotensive patients have increased preload and afterload, ↑ PAP (which may be exacerbated with hypercarbia and hypoxia) and elevated right and left ventricular stroke work. Because these patients are often not physically active, they may appear to be asymptomatic even in the presence of significant cardiovascular disease. Signs of pulmonary HTN (exertional dyspnea, fatigue, syncope) should be sought and TEE obtained in symptomatic patients. RV failure is common in older patients. A medical consultation with a cardiologist may be indicated before bariatric surgery. The ECG may show increased rate, changes in QRS voltage, left QRS axis shift, slowed conduction, and evidence of ischemia or previous myocardial infarction. Polycythemia suggests chronic hypoxemia. **Tests:** ECG and others as indicated from H&P
Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) syndrome	Many obese patients maintain a normal $PaCO_2$ during the day, but have CO_2 retention, sleep disturbances, intermittent airway obstruction with hypoxemia, pulmonary hypertension, and cardiac dysrhythmias at night. OSA syndrome is characterized by frequent episodes of apnea (> 10 sec cessation of airflow, despite continuous respiratory effort against a closed airway) and hypopnea (50% reduction in airflow or reduction associated with a decrease of SpO_2 > 4%). OSA is frequently undiagnosed in patients scheduled for bariatric surgery. OSA occurs more often in patients with large necks and high Mallampati (III and

Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) syndrome (cont'd)	IV) scores. The patient may not be aware of symptoms, so it is important to interview the patient's sleeping partner. If OSA is present, the partner will describe loud snoring followed by silence as airflow ceases with obstruction, then gasping or choking as the patient awakes and airflow restarts. The STOP-BANG questionnaire is a useful screening tool for OSA. A recent study found that a STOP-BANG score of 5–8 identified patients with a high probability of moderate/severe OSA. However, a definitive diagnosis of OSA can only be confirmed by polysomnography. Because of fragmented sleep patterns, OSA patients may complain of daytime sleepiness and headaches. Chronic sleep apnea leads to secondary polycythemia, hypoxemia, and hypercapnia, all of which increase the risk of cardiac and cerebral vascular disease. Patients with a history of snoring or OSA are often difficult to ventilate by mask, and their tracheas may be more difficult to intubate than those of similar weight patients without OSA. OSA patients who use CPAP devices at home should be instructed to bring them to the hospital to use following surgery. A patient known or even suspected of having OSA should be continuously monitored by pulse oximetry in the postop period, even following a completely uneventful operation. Patients are at highest risk for hypoxic respiratory failure 72 h after tracheal extubation.
Obesity hypoventilation syndrome	A small number of patients have obesity hypoventilation syndrome (OHS), characterized by somnolence, cardiac enlargement, polycythemia, hypoxemia, and hypercapnia. OHS patients tend to be older, super obese (BMI > 50 kg/m^2), and have more restricted pulmonary function than other patients with OSA. Hypoventilation that is central and independent of intrinsic lung disease is probably caused by the respiratory center's progressive desensitization to hypercapnia from nocturnal sleep disturbances. In the most severe form of OHS, the "Pickwickian Syndrome," hypersomnolence, hypoxia, hypercapnia, pulmonary hypertension, right ventricular enlargement, and hypervolemia occur. These patients rely on a hypoxic ventilatory drive and may hypoventilate or even become apneic following emergence from general anesthesia after being given 100% O_2 to breathe.
Gastrointestinal	It is widely believed that morbidly obese patients are at greater risk for acid aspiration during induction of general anesthesia. Recently this belief has been challenged. One study reported that fasting obese patients actually had a lower incidence of high-volume, low-pH gastric fluid than lean patients, whereas another found no differences in gastric volume or pH between lean and moderately obese surgical patients. Obese patients without GERD symptoms have relatively normal gastroesophageal sphincter tone. Obese patients at special risk for gastric acid aspiration may be those with diabetes and gastroparesis. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH, "fatty hepatitis"), with or without liver dysfunction, is extremely common. Histologic abnormalities are present in the livers of as many as 90% of morbidly obese patients. Preop liver function tests should be obtained, but they often do not reflect the actual severity of liver dysfunction. Alanine aminotransferase (ALT) is the most frequently elevated liver enzyme. Hepatic metabolism of many anesthetic agents is usually not clinically altered with NASH.
Renal	There is ↑ RBF and ↑ GFR associated with obesity. Renal clearance of drugs may be greater than in the normal weight patient. The most common renal abnormality seen is proteinuria. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedative drugs should be avoided. For the very anxious patient small amounts of midazolam (1–2 mg, iv) can be given. If a fiberoptic airway intubation is planned, atropine or glycopyrrolate will decrease oral secretions. Most medications for chronic HTN are continued before surgery. An exception are the angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor and angiotensen II receptor blocker (ARB) classes of antihypertensives, which should be stopped preop because they can cause ↓↓ BP following induction of anesthesia. Diabetic medications (insulin, oral hypoglycemics) are usually withheld on the morning of surgery, but blood sugar levels must be closely monitored in the perioperative period. Antibiotics and heparin (VTE prophylaxis) are usually administered before surgery at the surgeon's request. For protection against acid aspiration an H_2-receptor antagonist can be given the night before and again on the morning of surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Despite conflicting evidence that morbidly obese patients are at greater risk for acid aspiration, it remains prudent to establish a secure airway as quickly and safely as possible. Patients cannot tolerate the supine position and should be preoxygenated in the reverse Trendelenburg position (RTP) until SPO_2 is 100% for several min. With apneic patients expect rapid desaturation because FRC is reduced and O_2 reserves are limited. Preoxygenation in RTP can increase O_2 reserves, but may cause pooling of blood and → ↓ BP. The increase in adipose tissue seen in obese subjects increases volume of distribution of lipophilic anesthetic agents. However, drug distribution is dependent on cardiac output, which is strongly related to lean body mass. Administration of intravenous induction agents and opioids should be based on lean body weight (LBW) to avoid drug overdose.

Tracheal intubation is necessary for controlled ventilation and airway protection. High Mallampati score and large neck circumference are the most reliable predictors of potential intubation difficulties. If a problem is anticipated preop, an "awake intubation" with a fiberoptic bronchoscope is recommended. Appropriate nerve blocks and topical anesthesia to the airway are applied, and sedative drugs are kept to a minimum. It is important that the patient breathes supplemental O_2 during the intubation procedure. Successful direct laryngoscopy requires proper patient position. The patient must be placed with the head, upper body and shoulders significantly elevated ("stacked" or "ramped") so that the ear is level with the sternum (head elevated laryngoscopy position, H.E.L.P.; see Fig. 7.2-6). When a morbidly obese patient is in this position, the endoscopist's view during direct laryngoscopy is significantly improved.

Induction	For most patients a rapid sequence induction with propofol (2–2.5 mg/kg LBW) and succinylcholine (1 mg/kg TBW), combined with cricoid pressure (~10 lb), is the best means for securing the airway. Bag and mask ventilation is often difficult 2° upper airway obstruction and ↓ pulmonary compliance. Gastric insufflation during ineffective mask ventilation will further increase the risk of regurgitation and acid aspiration. A 2nd person experienced with airway management, preferably another anesthesiologist, must always be present to assist when difficulty is anticipated. Aids for difficult intubation, including a short laryngoscope handle, a variety of laryngoscope blades, special laryngoscopy equipment (Glidescope™, Airtraq™), a gum elastic bougie, and equipment for cricothyroidotomy and transtracheal jet ventilation should be available. A Pro-Seal LMA or intubating LMA can serve as a "bridge" until an endotracheal tube is placed when difficulty is encountered.
Maintenance	Patients should be ventilated with an FiO_2 of 0.5–1.0 and a tidal volume 10–12 mL/kg IBW, preferably in the RTP. Larger tidal volumes will only marginally improve oxygenation, while producing hypocapnia and potentially causing lung trauma. PEEP superimposed on a large tidal volume can actually worsen hypoxemia by ↓ CO, which in turn will ↓ O_2 delivery. Placement of subdiaphragmatic packs or retractors or changing to lithotomy or Trendelenburg positions will also impair ventilation. The patient is ventilated with an inhalational anesthetic (isoflurane, sevoflurane or desflurane) with a FiO_2 of 50–100% O_2. All inhalational anesthetics, including isoflurane, are rapidly eliminated. With appropriate timing there are no clinical differences in the recovery time after general anesthesia with any inhalational anesthetic agent. N_2O can be used because it does not dilate the bowel during laparoscopic bariatric surgery, but its role is limited due to the high oxygen demand of many patients. For analgesia, incremental boluses of fentanyl or a remifentanil infusion are commonly used. Fentanyl infusions have also been used successfully in this patient population. Dexmedetomidine may be used as a supplemental infusion as it may minimize opioid requirements. Morphine and dilaudid, which have prolonged onset and duration of action, should be avoided. The anesthesiologist is usually responsible for proper placement of the gastric tube to decompress the stomach and to help size the gastric pouch. The anesthesiologist may be asked to help perform leak tests for anastomotic integrity, either by insufflation of the gastric tube or placement of saline or dye down the tube. It is extremely important that the gastric tube be completely withdrawn before the gastric pouch is stapled. Esophageal or nasopharyngeal temperature probes are not recommended as they may be inadvertently stapled if not completely withdrawn. Heat loss may be exaggerated by the CO_2 pneumoperitoneum and by cold irrigating fluids. Warming blankets and other devices should be employed intraop, and warmed iv and irrigating fluids are occasionally needed if there is a significant drop in temperature.

Maintenance (cont'd)	Loss of pneumoperitoneum may indicate incomplete paralysis. Because nondepolarizing muscle relaxants are hydrophilic, there is limited distribution to adipose tissue and no clinical advantage between any of the commonly used agents. Neuromuscular recovery time is similar in obese and nonobese patients with atracurium, vecuronium or rocuronium. Relaxants should be administered in incremental doses based on IBW, and neuromuscular blockade must be completely reversed before extubation of the trachea.	
Emergence	The inhalation agent is discontinued several min before surgery is completed. Once the patient is spontaneously ventilating, fentanyl may be titrated according to respiratory rate. If a remifentanil infusion is being used, it should be turned off just prior to extubation to allow spontaneous ventilation. The patient should be extubated when fully awake. In most cases, a nasal trumpet may be inserted to minimize upper airway obstruction after extubation. If hemodynamically stable, the patient's airway should be extubated with the upper body elevated 30–45°. Then, the patient should be transferred from the OR in that position. Postop admission to an ICU and/or mechanical ventilation is rarely needed. Factors that may necessitate ventilatory support include extremes of age, super obesity, coexisting cardiac disease or pulmonary disease and CO_2 retention, fever or infection, and an uncooperative or extremely anxious patient. The need for postop admission to an ICU is relatively common after open bariatric procedures, but rare after laparoscopic surgery.	
Blood and Fluid Requirements	IV: 16–18 × 1 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h Fluid warmer	Intraop fluid requirements are usually greater than would be anticipated in a normal weight patient. Several liters of crystalloid should be given during a laparoscopic bariatric operation. It is essential that adequate amounts of iv fluid be given to reduce postop renal failure and to avoid other rare but serious complications such as rhabdomyolysis.
Monitoring	± CVP Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Noninvasive cuff pressure may be inaccurate if the anatomy of the upper arm doesn't allow a proper fit. Cuff pressures can be obtained from the forearm or ankle. Because venous access is often limited, a central line can be helpful for postop needs. Note that the length of a standard iv catheter placed percutaneously in the neck of a very large patient may not be long enough to reach an intrathoracic location.
Positioning	RTP ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes SCD's	In the supine position FRC is ↓↓ → V/Q mismatch + ↑ O_2 consumption, ↑ CO, and ↑ PAP. A left lateral tilt will prevent inferior vena cava compression in the supine patient. The Trendelenburg and lithotomy positions further decrease lung volumes. If possible, the patient should always be in the reverse Trendelenburg position (RTP) during surgery because in this position the diaphragm is "unloaded" and FRC is maximized.
CO_2 Pneumoperitoneum	↑ PIP + ↓ TV ↑ $ETCO_2$ + $PaCO_2$ ↑ HR + ↑ MAP	The physiologic effects of the CO_2 pneumoperitoneum are usually well tolerated by the patient and require no intervention. Maintaining the patient in the RTP minimizes the restriction of respiratory mechanics from the CO_2 insufflation. All changes return to normal once the pneumoperitoneum is relieved. However, complications can occur.
Complications	Hypoxemia Massive gas embolism Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum	The pneumoperitoneum can displace the diaphragm cephalad, causing the position of the endotracheal tube to change. Occasionally the endotracheal tube's tip can enter a bronchus, so always consider tube displacement in the differential diagnosis of hypoxemia during laparoscopy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Position and Oxygenation	Semirecumbent and RTP	Maximize oxygenation by allowing the diaphragm to fall and FRC to increase. Patients can become hypoxemic if supplemental O_2 is withheld in the immediate recovery period. Restoration of normal pulmonary function after open abdominal surgery may take several days.
	CPAP/BiPAP	In theory, CPAP could distend the gastric pouch, but its use following bariatric surgery has not been associated with anastomotic leaks. Patients who use nocturnal CPAP/BiPAP should be encouraged to bring their equipment the day of surgery for use during the postoperative period.
Complications	Venous thromboembolism	VTE prophylaxis should always be considered in the postop period, even for patients with epidural catheters. A vena cava umbrella is occasionally placed preop in older and high-risk patients. Early ambulation must be encouraged.
	PONV	Multimodal intraop prophylaxis with several antiemetic agents will reduce but not eliminate PONV. Dexamethasone (4–8 mg) should be part of the therapeutic regimen (see p. B-2).
Pain Management	PCA	PCA with opioid dose based on LBW is usually satisfactory. Avoid large amounts of opioids, which can depress ventilation. The use of nonopioid analgesic adjuncts should be instituted early. Dexmedetomidine, which has no respiratory depressant effects, is a useful alternative or supplement to opioids. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs are helpful initially, but should be discontinued within a day or two to avoid the potential complication of gastric ulceration.
Tests	As indicated by patient status	

Suggested Readings

1. Altermatt FR, Munoz HR, Delfino AE, et al: Pre-oxygenation in the obese patient: effects of position on tolerance to apnoea. *Br J Anaesth* 2005; 95:706–9.
2. Arain SR, Barth CD, Shankar H, et al: Choice of volatile anesthetic for the morbidly obese patient: sevoflurane or desflurane. *J Clin Anesth* 2005; 17:413–9.
3. Brodsky JB: Positioning the morbidly obese patient for anesthesia. *Obes Surg* 2002; 12:751–8.
4. Brodsky JB, Lemmens HJM, Collins JS, et al: Nitrous oxide and laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg* 2005; 15:494–6.
5. Frappier J, Guenoun T, Journois D, et al: Airway management using the intubating laryngeal mask airway for the morbidly obese patient. *Anesth Analg* 2003; 96:1510–5.
6. Helling TS, Willoughby TL, Maxfield DM, et al: Determinants of the need for intensive care and prolonged mechanical ventilation in patients undergoing bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg* 2004; 14:1036–41.
7. Holte K, Klarskov B, Christensen DS, et al: Liberal versus restrictive fluid administration to improve recovery after laparoscopic cholecystectomy. A randomized, double-blind study. *Ann Surg* 2004; 240:892–9.
8. Huerta S, DeShields S, Shpiner R, et al: Safety and efficacy of postoperative continuous positive airway pressure to prevent pulmonary complications after Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2002; 6:354–8.
9. Ingrande J, Lemmens HJM: Dose adjustments of anaesthetics in the morbidly obese. *Br J Anaesth* 2012; 105 (Suppl 1):16–23.
10. Juvin P, Vadam C, Malek L, et al: Postoperative recovery after desflurane, propofol, or isoflurane anesthesia among morbidly obese patients: a prospective, randomized study. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 91:714–9.
11. Lemmens HJM, Brodsky JB: The dose of succinylcholine in morbid obesity. *Anesth Analg* 2006; 102:438–42.
12. McCarty TM, Arnold DT, Lamont JP, et al: Optimizing outcomes in bariatric surgery. Outpatient laparoscopic gastric bypass. *Ann Surg* 2005; 242:494–501.
13. Nguyen NT, Wolfe BM: The physiologic effects of pneumoperitoneum in the morbidly obese. *Ann Surg* 2005; 241:219–26.
14. Ogunnaike BO, Jones SB, Jones DB, et al: Anesthetic considerations for bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2002; 95:1793–805.
15. Perilli V, Sollazzi L, Bozza P, et al: The effects of the reverse Trendelenburg position on respiratory mechanics and blood gases in morbidly obese patients during bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 91:1520–5.

ANESTHESIA FOR LAPAROSCOPY IN PREGNANCY

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Approximately 0.75–2% of pregnant woman require nonobstetric surgery, accounting for more than 80,000 anesthetics for non-obstetric surgery per year, and 10–20% of those will require intraabdominal surgery (diagnostic or therapeutic), most commonly for appendectomy, cholecystectomy, trauma or gynecological indications. If surgery cannot be avoided, it is best carried out in the 2nd trimester. Warn patients about possible fetal loss (3–12% in 1st trimester) and premature labor (5–8% in 2nd and 25–40% in 3rd trimesters). Anesthesia and surgery are associated with increased spontaneous abortion, growth retardation, and perinatal mortality; however, no increase in congenital abnormalities has been found. Rates of fetal loss, premature labor, and maternal mortality are higher among sicker patients. It is unclear whether adverse outcomes after surgery relate to the disease process itself, disturbances in nutrition, the surgical procedure, exposure to radiation, or drugs. No correlation has been found between outcome and any specific anesthetic technique or agent (including N_2O).

Laparoscopy is the procedure of choice for many surgeries in nonpregnant patients. Historically, its use in pregnancy was controversial, although significant experience now supports its safety and efficacy. Advantages of laparoscopy include more rapid recovery, shorter hospital stays, less postop narcotic use (→ ↓ fetal depression), lower risk of wound infection, less postoperative ileus, and better cosmesis. No differences in fetal outcome or incidence of preterm labor have been found when compared to open procedures. However, regardless of the method of abdominal access, the laparoscopic or open appendectomy and cholecystectomy population is at high risk (37–41%) for perinatal complications. Risks of laparoscopy include difficult surgical access and potential uterine injury with Veress needles or trocars. Current recommendations suggest either an open technique (e.g., Hasson cannula) or Veress needle/optical trocar are appropriate for obtaining laparoscope access with adjustments for fundal height.

Note that acute appendicitis and cholecystitis often present with advanced or complicated disease because of difficulty diagnosing the "acute abdomen" and a reluctance to use radiation-based diagnostic tests in pregnancy.

Respiratory	Pregnant patients have ↑ MV with respiratory alkalosis ($PaCO_2$ = 32–34 mm Hg) and are subject to the rapid onset of hypoxemia if ventilation is compromised due to alterations in lung and metabolic functions, including a 20% ↓ in FRC and a 20% ↑ in O_2 consumption. Avoid hyperventilation ($PaCO_2$ < 30) which causes decreased uterine artery blood flow. Uptake of and sensitivity to inhalational anesthetics is enhanced (↓ FRC, ↓ MAC, and hyperventilation). During laparoscopy, peritoneal insufflation and head-down positioning may further compromise lung function (↓ FRC and ↓ lung compliance). Mucosal capillary engorgement in upper airways may necessitate a smaller ETT and mandates careful airway suctioning to avoid bleeding. Airway management is more difficult in this patient population. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Pregnancy → ↑ CO, ↓ MAP, ↑ HR, ↑ blood volume, and ↓ oncotic pressure → ↑ risk of pulmonary edema. Supine hypotensive syndrome: To minimize aortocaval compression and → ↓ ↓ BP (> 20 wk gestation), the supine position should be modified by the use of a left lateral pelvic tilt to displace the uterus. Moderate abdominal insufflation pressures (8–12 mm Hg) should be used to minimize further caval compression and ↓ uterine blood flow. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	WBC count is elevated during pregnancy (8000–12,000/mm) and may delay diagnosis of concurrent infections (e.g., appendicitis). Iron deficiency anemia often is superimposed on the dilutional anemia of pregnancy (Hct 33%). Pregnant patients are hypercoagulable, and antiembolic compression devices should be used. **Tests:** Hb/Hct. T&S if significant blood loss is anticipated. Coag studies and Plt count if + PIH.
Gastrointestinal	Emergency surgery, ↓ gastric motility, ↑ GERD, ↑ intragastric pressure, ↓ lower esophageal sphincter tone, and gastric hyperacidity → ↑ risk of aspiration pneumonitis. All pregnant patients (> 16–20 wk) should be considered to have full stomachs and should receive a nonparticulate antacid (e.g., 0.3 M Na citrate 30 mL) immediately before GA, as well as iv metoclopramide 10 mg and ranitidine 50 mg 30–60 min before surgery.

Renal	Pregnancy → ↑ renal blood flow and ↑ creatinine, clearance and ↓ serum creatinine and ↓ BUN. Dependent edema results from increased water and sodium retention and ↓ oncotic pressure. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Others tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Full-stomach precautions (see Gastrointestinal, above); midazolam (1–2 mg) given as appropriate to decrease anxiety.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: After 16 wk gestation, anticipate ↑ risks of aspiration and difficult intubation. Plan ahead for management of a potentially difficult airway (see pp. 595–596). GA is the preferred technique because laparoscopy and abdominal surgery are poorly tolerated under regional anesthesia. A lead shield should be used to protect the fetus during fluoroscopy.

Fetal Monitoring: The primary obstetric care provider should be notified and a qualified person should be readily available to interpret the fetal heart rate (FHR) and perform cesarean delivery if indicated. If the fetus is considered to be viable (~24 wk gestation), FHR and contraction monitoring should be performed before and after the procedure to confirm fetal well-being and the absence of uterine contractions. If feasible, continuous intraoperative monitoring of FHR during surgery (electronic FNR monitoring, transvaginal Doppler) may be appropriate. Each case requires a team approach and a management plan for evaluation and action if a nonreassuring trace develops. Surgery should only be done at an institute with adequate facilities and neonatal services.

General anesthesia: If difficult intubation is anticipated, an awake fiberoptic intubation (p. B-4) or video laryngoscopy is recommended. In any event, emergency airway management equipment (e.g., LMA, transtracheal jet ventilator), must be immediately accessible in the OR. Communication with the surgeon and obstetrician regarding maternal and fetal condition is essential.

Induction	Left uterine displacement is best achieved by elevating the right hip with a wedge, towel, or equivalent device. Standard rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure (p. B-5) as appropriate. To optimize intubation, place patient in maximal "sniff" position and consider ramping obese patients (Fig. 7.2-6, p. 513). If tracheal intubation is unsuccessful, follow the difficult intubation/ventilation drill (p. B-5). After ETT is secured, pass OG tube and decompress stomach to minimize injury from the Veress needle or trocar.	
Maintenance	0.8–1% isoflurane or 1.5–2.0% sevoflurane in air/O_2 (50%) mixture. Avoid N_2O → distention of bowel and PONV. Administer an opioid (e.g., fentanyl 50–200 μg iv) and/or midazolam (1–2 mg) to ↓ volatile requirements and ↓ maternal awareness. Administer muscle relaxants (e.g., vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg). Control ventilation, avoiding hypocapnia (PCO_2 < 30 mm Hg) → ↓ uterine blood flow, and hypercapnia (PCO_2 > 36 mm Hg) → fetal acidosis. Maintain $ETCO_2$ or $PaCO_2$ at 32–36 mm Hg by ↑ MV. Use low insufflation cut-off pressure (8–12 mm Hg, not 15 mm Hg as for nonpregnant patient). Maintain adequate placental perfusion by keeping maternal blood pressure at preoperative baseline levels. Fluids and vasopressors (phenylephrine, ephedrine) should be utilized as indicated.	
Emergence	Reverse muscle relaxation with neostigmine 0.05 mg/kg and glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg or atropine 0.02 mg/kg. Anticholinergics (glycopyrrolate/atropine) given before neostigmine may minimize possible ↑ uterine tone 2° neostigmine. Delay extubation until patient is fully awake and muscle strength has returned to normal. O_2 by mask and transport in the lateral position. Consider metoclopramide (10 mg iv) and/or ondansetron (4 mg iv) PONV prevention.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR 4–6 ml/kg/h	Laparoscopy is associated with minimal blood loss, however, inadvertent vascular injury may occur.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± Arterial line (major surgery) FHR monitor (see above) Uterine contraction monitor	Maternal and neonatal outcome good, and severe acidosis absent when maternal ventilation controlled by $PaCO_2$ or $ETCO_2$ measurement. Clinical experience indicates no long-term adverse neonatal effects.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes ± Left uterine displacement	Changes in position have marked effects on respiration (↓ compliance, ↑ pressure, hypoxemia) and hemodynamics. Head-up position + GA + peritoneal insufflation → 50% ↓ CO in the nonpregnant patient and even greater decrease in late pregnancy. **Position changes should be gradual** to minimize adverse effects. If > 20 wk gestation, left uterine displacement to avoid aortocaval compression.
CO_2 peritoneum: Maternal effects	↓ ventilation ↓ BP ↑ GI reflux (↑ abdominal pressure) CO_2 absorption	Maternal hypoxemia and respiratory acidosis. ↓ venous return → ↓ BP. → ↑ MAP & ↑ SVR.
CO_2 peritoneum: Fetal effects	↓ uterine blood flow ↑ preterm labor Fetal acidosis Fetal ↑ HR/↑ BP	Up to 60% in animal studies → fetal hypoxia. 2° ↑ abdominal pressure 2° absorbed CO_2
Complications	Uterine injury Bowel/organ injury Venous air embolism Thromboembolism/PE Pneumothorax	 Dx: ↓ $ETCO_2$, hypoxemia, hypotension. Rx: 100% O_2, stop insufflation immediately, volume and pressors, attempt CVP air aspiration. Prevention: Pneumatic compression devices. Rx: Supportive Dx: ↑ Airway pressure, ↓ breath sounds, and hyperresonance. Rx: 100% O_2, stop insufflation, tube thoracostomy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Standard pain management (p. C-2)	Avoid NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen) → pulmonary and CV fetal effects (closure of ductus venosus). Consider intravenous acetaminophen 1000 mg. Preemptive or rescue transversus abdominus plane blocks may be appropriate in select patients.
Tests	Hct/CBC Others as indicated by operative course.	

Suggested Readings

1. ACOG Committee Opinion Number 474, February 2011; Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; 117:420–1.
2. Cheek TG, Baird E: Anesthesia for nonobstetric surgery: maternal and fetal considerations. *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 2009; 52: 535–45.
3. Cohen-Kerem R, Railton C, Oren D, et al: Pregnancy outcome following non-obstetric surgical intervention. *Am J Surg* 2005; 190:467–73.
4. Corneille M, Gallup T, Bening T, et al: The use of laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy: evaluation and safety and efficacy. *Am J Surg* 2010; 200:363–7.
5. Curet MJ: Special problems in laparoscopic surgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; 80(4):1093–110.
6. Erekson E, Brousseau E, Dick-Biascoechea M, et al: Maternal postoperative complications after nonobstetric antenatal surgery. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med* 2012; 25(12):2639–44.
7. Kucskowski K: Nonobstetric surgery in the parturient: anesthetic considerations. *J Clin Anes* 2006; 18:5–7.
8. Pearl J, Price R, Richardson W, Fanelli R: Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment, and use of laparoscopy for surgical problems during pregnancy. *Surg Endosc* 2011; 25:3479–92.
9. Practice Guidelines by the Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons (SAGES). Published 1/2011. Accessed 08/2012.
10. Steinbrook RA, Bhavani-Shankar K: Hemodynamics during laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy. *Anesth Analg* 2001; 93:1570–1.
11. Upadhyay A, et al: Laparoscopic management of a nonobstetric emergency in the third trimester of pregnancy. *Surg Endosc* 2007; 21:1344–8.

CHAPTER

7.8 Pancreatic Surgery

SURGEON

Jeffrey A. Norton, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Martin S. Angst, MD

OPERATIVE DRAINAGE FOR PANCREATITIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Surgical treatment for pancreatitis is indicated for drainage or debridement of infected peripancreatic tissue or pancreatic necrosis. Pancreatic necrosis is defined by areas of poor perfusion in the pancreas on CT-angiogram. Infected pancreatic necrosis occurs with the presence of gas and/or bacterial invasion. Pancreatic abscesses usually develop in the lesser sac, but may spread to the subphrenic spaces or into the pericolic gutters. Fistulization into adjacent organs, particularly the transverse colon and duodenum may occur. Severe intraabdominal hemorrhage from erosion into major arteries lying adjacent to the pancreas is uncommon, but may occur prior to, during, or after operative drainage. Intraop, exploration of the peritoneal cavity is performed before opening the lesser sac. Areas lateral to the left and right sides of the colon, as well as the base of the transverse mesocolon and the subhepatic areas, should be palpated to identify fluid or abscess collections. The gastrocolic ligament is then incised to approach the pancreas through the lesser sac. There are different operative approaches, depending on location of involved tissue and surgeon's preference. Upper midline or transverse abdominal incisions are used most often. Posterior drainage through the bed of the 12th rib, or retroperitoneal lateral approaches, may be used (Fig. 7.8-1). Recently, laparoscopic opening between the stomach and retroperitoneum has also been used in select cases.

Usual preop diagnosis: Severe pancreatitis 2° to gallstones, alcohol, or post ERCP.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or rotated slightly (Fig. 7.8-1) for posterior approach
Incision	Midline, transverse, flank, or synchronous anterior and posterior
Unique considerations	Must perform adequate debridement of necrotic tissue and provide adequate drainage of abdomen; NG tube; jejunal feeding tube
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g 30 min preop, or antibiotic directed at cultured organisms
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Adequate drainage of pancreatic bed and fluid resuscitation of patient
EBL	300–750 mL
Postop care	Routine wound and drain care; usually ICU and intubated; often, subsequent operative procedures are required.
Mortality	8–30%
Morbidity	Fistulae formation: 18–55% Delayed gastric emptying: 50% Unremitting sepsis: 10–30% Atelectasis: 5–10% Respiratory deterioration: 5% Hemorrhage Bowel perforations
Pain score	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–60 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	10–30% of patients with pancreatitis
Etiology	Alcoholism (30–50%); postop pancreatitis (15–40%); biliary tract disease (20–30%); idiopathic pancreatitis (15–20%)
Associated conditions	Malnutrition; glucose intolerance; multiorgan dysfunction

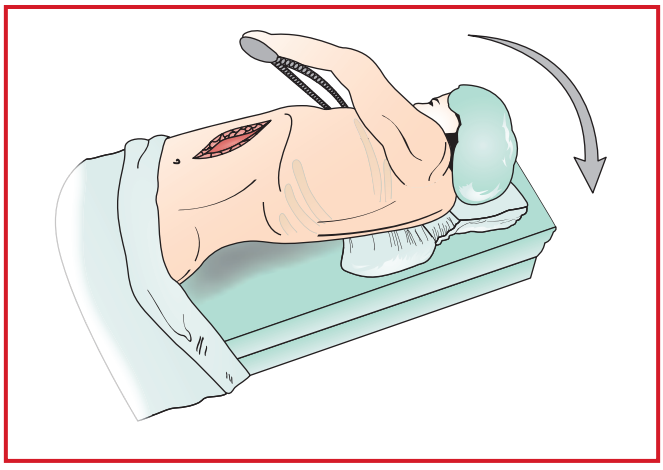


Figure 7.8-1. Incision for anterior and posterior drainage in pancreatitis. Note that bed or table is rotated until patient is almost supine. (Reproduced with permission from Berne TV, Donovan AJ: Synchronous anterior and posterior drainage of pancreatic abscess. *Arch Surg* 1981; 116:527–33. Copyright 1981, American Medical Association.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pancreatic Surgery, p. 634.

Suggested Readings

1. Berne TV: Pancreatic abscesses. *Probl Gen Surg* 1984; 1:569–82.
2. Bradley EL: Fifteen-year experience with open drainage for infected pancreatic necrosis. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1993; 177(3): 215–22.
3. Feranandez-del Castillo C, Rattner DW, Makary MA, et al: Debridement and closed packing for the treatment of necrotizing pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 1998; 228:676–84.
4. Freeman ML, Werner J, van Santovoort MC, et al: Interventions for necrotizing pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2012; 41:1176.
5. Gotzinger P, Sautner T, Kriwanek S, et al: Surgical treatment for severe acute pancreatitis: extent and surgical control of necrosis determine outcome. *World J Surg* 2002; 474–8.
6. Shinzeki M, Ueda T, Takeyama Y, et al: Prediction of early death in severe acute pancreatitis. *J Gastroenteral* 2008; 43:152–8.
7. Villazon A, Villazon O, Terrazas F, et al: Retroperitoneal drainage in the management of the septic phase of severe acute pancreatitis. *World J Surg* 1991; 15:103–8.

DRAINAGE OF PANCREATIC PSEUDOCYST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Internal **drainage of a pancreatic pseudocyst** may be accomplished by anastomosing the cyst to the stomach, duodenum, or other small bowel via a Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum. The procedure of choice for internal decompression depends on the location of the pseudocyst in relation to the portion of the GI tract that will provide maximal dependent drainage of the cyst. Both open and laparoscopic procedures have been used with success. The two approaches should be equivalent. Operation is reserved for patients with refractory symptoms. At operation, the abdomen is entered via a midline incision or laparoscopically. The pseudocyst is localized by palpation with or without intraoperative ultrasound. If the pseudocyst lies behind the stomach (or duodenum), it is approached anteriorly, through the posterior wall of the stomach (or duodenum). A portion of the posterior wall is excised, allowing entry into the cyst cavity, which is then drained. An anastomosis is created between the cyst and stomach (or duodenum). The anterior wall of the stomach (or duodenum) is then closed. If the cyst presents inferior to the stomach, it is anastomosed

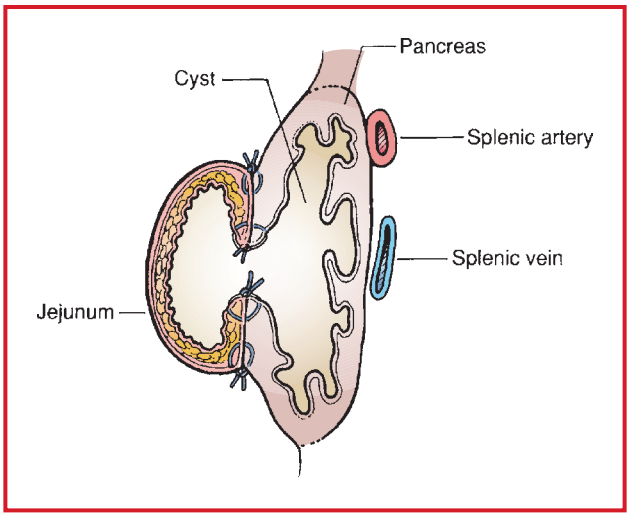


Figure 7.8-2. Roux-en-Y drainage of a pseudocyst. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

in a similar fashion to a Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum (Fig. 7.8-2). Drains are placed; external drainage is sometimes necessary, especially in the setting of infection. Spontaneous resolution of pancreatic pseudocyst may be expected in most patients with cysts < 6 cm. If infection of the pseudocyst occurs with clinical signs of sepsis, percutaneous drainage under CT guidance can be performed, although subsequent operative drainage is often necessary.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pancreatic pseudocyst 2° to acute pancreatitis refractory to medical management

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal or transverse
Unique considerations	Location of pseudocyst in relation to GI tract; NG tube
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv 30 min preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Adequate drainage
EBL	100–300 mL
Postop care	± NG decompression
Mortality	5–10%
Morbidity	Bleeding: 5–7% Sepsis: < 5% Recurrence: 2–3%
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Acute pancreatitis; trauma
Associated conditions	Acute pancreatitis: 90%; gallstones; alcohol use; chronic pain

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pancreatic Surgery, p. 634.

Suggested Readings

1. Barthlet M, Lamblin G, Gasmi M, et al: Clinical usefulness of a treatment algorithm for pancreatic pseudocysts. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; 67:245–52.
2. Mori T, Abe N, Sugiyama M, et al: Laparoscopic pancreatic cystogastrostomy. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2002; 9:548.
3. Neff R: Pancreatic pseudocysts and fluid collections. *Surg Clin North Am* 2001; 81(2):399–403.

LONGITUDINAL PANCREATICOJEJUNOSTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Pancreaticojejunostomy,** as described by **Puestow,** is typically done for chronic pancreatitis with pancreatic ductal obstruction. It consists of a longitudinal opening of the pancreatic duct, which is then anastomosed to a Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum (Fig. 7.8-3). This approach is necessary to ensure adequate drainage of a duct with multiple strictures and dilations. Through a midline or transverse abdominal incision, the pancreas is exposed by mobilizing the duodenum (**Kocher maneuver**), exposing the head of the pancreas, and opening the lesser sac to visualize the body and tail. The pancreatic duct may be aspirated to identify its location, and intraoperative ultrasound is commonly used, then it is incised longitudinally. A Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum is then brought up to the pancreas and anastomosed to the opened duct. A drain is left along the anastomosis, and the wound is closed in the usual fashion.

Variant procedure or approaches: A **Whipple resection (pancreaticoduodenectomy;** see p. 632) is an alternative surgical treatment for chronic pancreatitis confined to the head of the gland. Rarely, subtotal or near-total pancreatectomy is indicated. **Fry procedure** is near-total pancreatectomy with Roux-en-y drainage of the pancreatic head, and **Beger procedure** is doudenal presenting pancreatic head resection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abdominal pain with chronic pancreatitis and dilated pancreatic duct (chain of lakes)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal or transverse
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Adequate drainage
EBL	300–400 mL
Postop care	Monitor for glucose intolerance

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Mortality	1–4%
Morbidity	Failure to relieve pain: 25–50% Pancreatic leak: 5–10% Wound infection: 5%
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	17–72 yr
Male:Female	2.5:1
Etiology	Alcoholism; biliary tract disease; idiopathic; trauma; familial pancreatitis
Associated conditions	Biliary tract disease (25–50%); hyperparathyroidism (< 5%); chronic pain; narcotic dependency

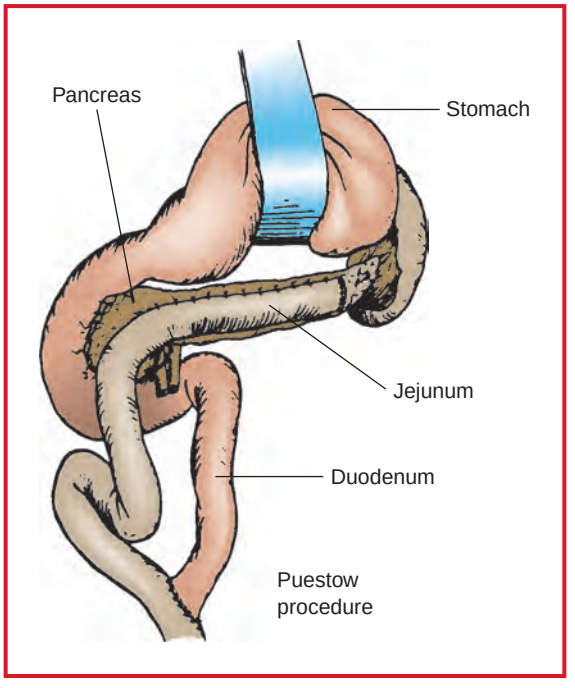


Figure 7.8-3. Operative management of chronic pancreatitis with onlay Roux-en-Y pancreaticojejunostomy (Puestow). (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery.* JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pancreatic Surgery, p. 634.

Suggested Readings

1. Nealon WH, Aatin S: Analysis of success in preventing recurrent acute exacerbations in chronic pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 2001; 233:793–800.
2. Yin Z, Sun J, Yin D, et al: Surgical treatment strategies in chronic pancreatitis. *Arch Surg* 2012; 147:961.

PANCREATECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Distal pancreatectomy** is performed for tumors in the distal half of the pancreas (Fig. 7.8-4). The lesser sac is opened by dividing the gastrocolic ligament. After entering the lesser sac, the gastrosplenic ligament is divided, ligating the short gastric vessels and the left gastroepiploic vessel. The peritoneum is incised along the inferior surface of the pancreas, with care being taken to avoid injury to the middle colic vessels. Following mobilization of the spleen, the splenic artery is ligated near its origin. The inferior mesenteric vein is ligated sometimes at the inferior border of the pancreas, and the splenic vein is ligated at the proposed point of transection. The transected pancreas (Fig. 7.8-5) is usually stapled and drained, although some surgeons suture the cut end and ligate the duct. The spleen may be preserved when operating for benign disease. This surgery is being done laparoscopically. One method to preserve the spleen is not dividing the short gastric vessels, but still dividing the splenic artery and vein.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Subtotal pancreatectomy** usually implies resecting the pancreas from the mesenteric vessels distally, leaving the head and uncinate process intact. This procedure may be performed for tumor or chronic pancreatitis. **Child's procedure** (near-total pancreatectomy) consists of removing the entire pancreas except a rim of tissue along the lesser curvature of the duodenum (Fig. 7.8-6); preserving the duodenum makes it unnecessary to reconstruct the bile duct. This procedure is usually reserved for patients with chronic pancreatitis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of pancreas; islet cell tumors; cystic neoplasms; chronic pancreatitis; solid pseudopapillary tumors

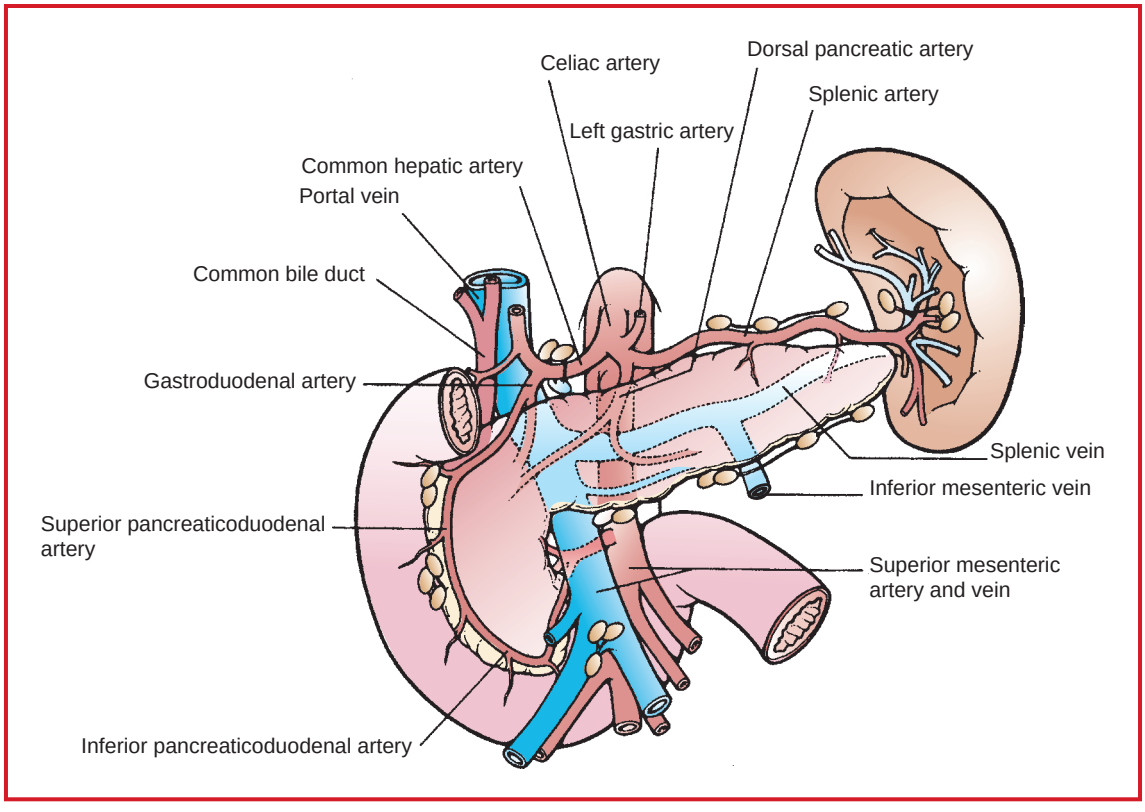


Figure 7.8-4. Pancreatic anatomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

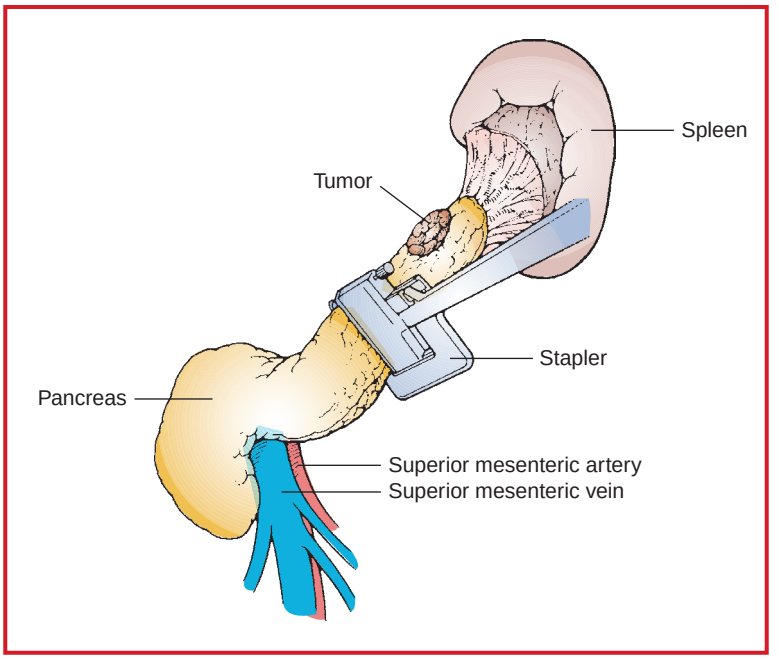


Figure 7.8-5. Resection of distal pancreas. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

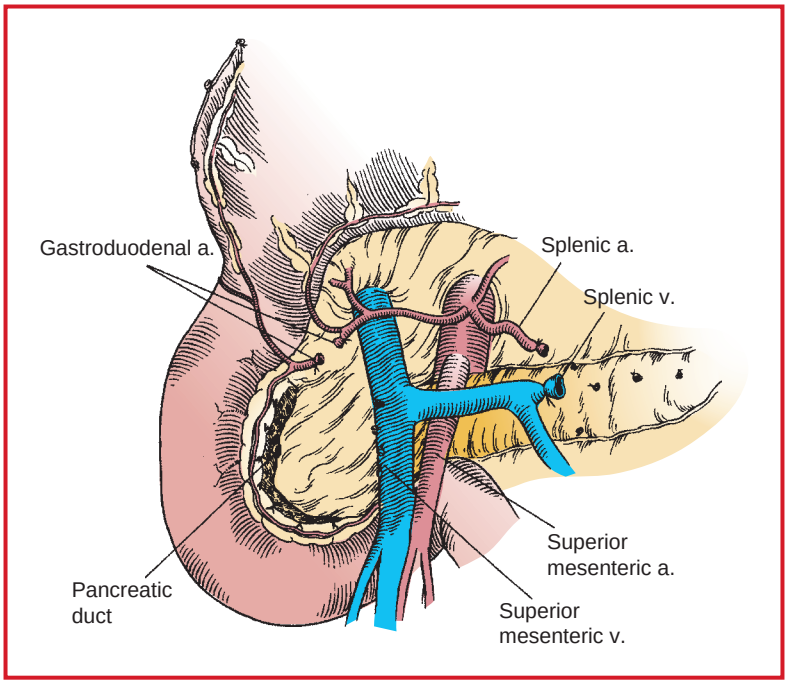


Figure 7.8-6. Near-total pancreatectomy. Shown is the operative field at the conclusion of the procedure. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Distal Pancreatectomy	Subtotal Pancreatectomy	Child's Procedure
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Midline abdominal or transverse	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	NG tube	⇐	Preservation of vasculature of duodenum
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	⇐	3–4 h
Closing considerations	Adequate drainage	⇐	⇐
EBL	300–500 mL	500–750 mL	500–1000 mL
Postop care	NG decompression; PACU	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Diabetes: 5% Wound infection: 5% Pancreatic fistula: < 5% Common bile duct injury Hemorrhage Duodenal necrosis Pancreatic leakage Pancreatic insufficiency	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ 90% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–8	6–8	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–60 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~26,000/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Adenocarcinoma; chronic pancreatitis; islet cell tumors
Associated conditions	Alcoholism and biliary tract disease with chronic pancreatitis (90%); other endocrine disorders (3–5%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pancreatic Surgery, p. 634.

Suggested Readings

1. Ding X, Tan J, Qian J: Laparoscopic spleen preserving distal pancreatectomy. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2012; 60:10.5754.
2. Samuel I, Joehl RJ: Chronic pancreatitis. In: Mulholland MW, et al., eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 849–60.

WHIPPLE RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **Whipple resection** is usually done for pancreatic cancer. It consists of a **pancreaticoduodenectomy,** followed by a **pancreaticojejunostomy**, a **hepaticojejunostomy,** and a **gastrojejunostomy** (Fig. 7.8-7). On entering the peritoneal cavity, the resectability of the pancreatic tumor is determined. Contraindications to standard resection include liver or peritoneal metastases; involvement of the superior mesenteric vessels; infiltration by tumor into root of the mesentery; and extension into the porta hepatis, with involvement of the hepatic artery. If the tumor is deemed resectable, further mobilization of the head of the pancreas is performed. The common duct is transected above the cystic duct entry, and the gall bladder is removed. After the superior mesenteric vein is freed from the pancreas, the latter is transected, with care being taken not to injure the splenic vein. The duodenum is transected 2 cm distal to

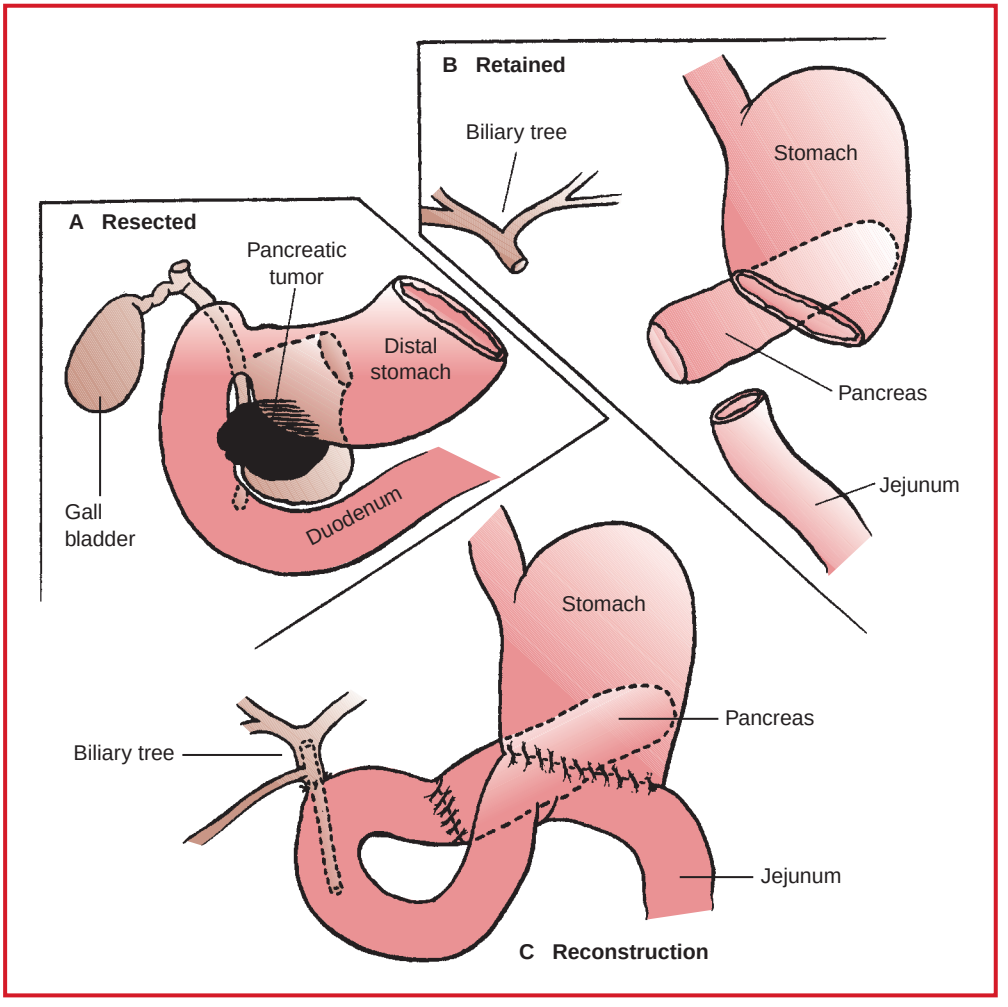


Figure 7.8-7. Standard pancreaticoduodenectomy. **A:** Structures resected, including distal stomach, entire duodenum, head and neck of pancreas with tumor, gallbladder, and distal extrahepatic biliary tree. **B:** Structures retained, including proximal stomach, body and tail of pancreas, proximal biliary tree, and jejunum distal to ligament of Treitz. **C:** Reconstruction: proximal pancreaticojejunostomy, hepaticojejunostomy over T tube, and distal gastrojejunostomy. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

the pylorus, or the stomach proximal to the pylorus if involved by tumor. The jejunum is transected 20 cm beyond the ligament of Treitz and the specimen is removed by severing the vascular connections with the mesenteric vessels. Reconstitution is achieved by anastomosing the pancreatic stump, bile duct, and duodenum into the jejunum. Drains are placed adjacent to the pancreatic anastomosis.

Variant procedure or approaches: There are several variants that consist of extensions of the Whipple procedure: **total pancreatectomy; regional pancreatectomy,** involving resection and reconstruction of the retropancreatic superior mesenteric vein and/or artery; and the pylorus-preserving **pancreaticoduodenectomy** as described above. In addition, the distal pancreatic stump may be anastomosed to the posterior wall of the stomach.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of the pancreas; malignant cystadenomas; chronic pancreatitis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Whipple	Total Pancreatectomy	Regional Pancreatectomy
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Midline abdominal or transverse (chevron)	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	Large-bore iv lines	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq		
Surgical time	4–5 h	4–6 h	5–6 h
Closing considerations	Adequate drainage	⇐	⇐
EBL	500–750 mL	750–1000 mL	750–1500 mL
Postop care	NG decompression; PACU/ICU	NG decompression; diabetes management	
Mortality	5–10%	12%	15%
Morbidity	Delayed gastric emptying: 25% Pancreatic fistula: 10–20% Sepsis: 5–15% Hemorrhage: 5% MI: 1–3% Biliary fistula: < 2%	⇐ NA 5% < 5% ⇐ < 1 %	⇐ 10–20% 25% 5% < 5% < 2%
Pain score	7–9	7–9	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (FOR CANCER OF PANCREAS)

Age range	40–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	10th most common cancer in the United States. (~33,000/yr)
Etiology	Familial and genetic factors (p16, K-vas); tobacco; diabetes; alcohol; diet; pancreatitis
Associated conditions	See Etiology, above.

Suggested Reading

1. Fernandez-del Castillo C, Morales-Oyarvide V, McGrath D, et al: Evolution of the Whipple procedure at Massachusetts General Hospital. *Surgery* 2012; 152:556.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR PANCREATIC SURGERY

(Procedures covered: drainage for pancreatitis; drainage of pancreatic pseudocyst; pancreaticojejunostomy; pancreatectomy; Whipple resection)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for pancreatic surgery can be divided into four groups: (1) those with acute pancreatitis, who failed medical treatment and may be extremely ill, presenting for operative excision or drainage of necrotic or infected foci; (2) patients with adenocarcinoma of the pancreas; (3) patients with neuroendocrine active (60–70%) or inactive islet cell tumors (mainly insulinoma and gastrinoma; rarely VIP-oma and glucagonoma); and (4) patients suffering from the sequelae of chronic pancreatitis (e.g., pseudocyst or abscess).

Respiratory	Respiratory compromise—such as pleural effusions, atelectasis, and ARDS, progressing to respiratory failure, may occur in up to 50% of patients with acute pancreatitis. Postop mechanical ventilation may be needed for these patients **Tests:** Consider CXR; ABG; others as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	Patients with acute pancreatitis may suffer from severe intravascular volume depletion 2° plasma exudation and in severe cases 2° hemorrhage (erosion of blood vessels). Aggressive volume resuscitation with crystalloids, colloids, and blood products may be required during surgery. Hypocalcemia is often present (arrhythmias and ↓ myocardial contractility). Serum K^+ may be elevated (2° acidosis or renal failure associated with acute pancreatitis) or decreased (2° watery diarrhea associated with gastrinoma, VIP-oma, prolonged NG suction) and should be corrected before surgery. Hypokalemia resistant to K^+ replacement may point to ↓ Mg^{++} and warrants replacement. **Tests:** ECG; electrolytes; others as indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Jaundice and abdominal pain are common presenting Sx in this group of patients. The presence of ileus (common in acute pancreatitis) or intestinal obstruction should mandate full-stomach precautions and rapid-sequence induction. Electrolyte abnormalities are common and may be 2° metabolic acidosis (↑ K^+ 2° acute pancreatitis) or alkalosis and intestinal losses (↓ K^+ and ↓ Mg^{++} 2° diarrhea, NG suction). Acute pancreatitis is associated with ↓ Ca^{++} (omental fat saponification) and ↑ Na^+ (dehydration). Gastrinoma (Zollinger-Ellison syndrome) is associated with diarrhea, severe peptic ulcer, and GERD. VIP-oma often causes massive watery diarrhea (up to 20 L). Electrolyte abnormalities should be treated preop. **Tests:** Electrolytes; glucose; LFTs; others as indicated from H&P
Renal	Patients should be evaluated for renal insufficiency predominantly 2° dehydration, with anesthetic plan adjusted accordingly. **Tests:** BUN; creatinine; others as indicated from H&P
Endocrine	Many patients with acute pancreatitis have diabetes 2° loss of islet cells. Endocrine tumors of the pancreas are linked (10–30%) with multiple endocrine syndrome type I (MEN 1; Wermer's syndrome), including adenoma of the parathyroid gland (> 90%), the pituitary gland (20–30%), and the pancreas (~50%). Hyperparathyroidism is common, some pituitary adenomas secrete prolactin > growth hormone > ACTH, and some pancreatic island cell tumors secrete gastrin > insulin >> VIP, glucagon. Insulinoma can result in severe hypoglycemia necessitating frequent perioperative blood glucose measurements. Surgical manipulation of the insulinoma may result in massive release of insulin. VIP-oma (Verner-Morrison syndrome) can be associated with hypercalcemia. **Tests:** Electrolytes; glucose; others as indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Hct may be falsely elevated, 2° hemoconcentration, or low, 2° hemorrhage. Coagulopathy may be present (DIC). **Tests:** CBC with differential; Plt; consider PT, PTT, fibrinogen, D-Dimer.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg. Note: full-stomach precautions in patients with intestinal obstruction (see p. B-5), and consider placement and suctioning of a NGT prior to induction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for postop analgesia. If postop epidural analgesia is planned, establishing correct catheter placement in the epidural space can be accomplished by injecting 1–2% lidocaine (50–100 mg) via the catheter to elicit a segmental block. The use of epidural anesthetic techniques for postoperative pain management in patients undergoing major, nonvascular abdominal surgery has been shown to provide superior pain control compared with IV-PCA. However, adequate pain control can be achieved with the use of IV-PCA.

Induction	The patient with bowel obstruction or ileus is at risk for pulmonary aspiration, and rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure is indicated (see p. B-5). If the patient is clinically hypovolemic, restore intravascular volume (colloid, crystalloid, or blood products) prior to induction and titrate induction dose of sedative/hypnotic agents. Etomidate (0.2–0.4 mg/kg iv) or ketamine (1–3 mg/kg iv) may provide better hemodynamic stability during induction of anesthesia. Propofol is associated with a significant reduction of SVR.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). **Combined epidural/GA:** The epidural catheter ideally is placed at the level of a dermatome corresponding to the surgical site (generally mid-thoracic spine). This allows the use of both lipophilic and hydrophilic drugs at the lowest possible dose and adds flexibility to the anesthesiologist's drug selection while also minimizing the likelihood of side effects. A continuous infusion (after an initial bolus) is the preferred mode of administering local anesthetics via the epidural catheter because satisfactory analgesia can be achieved without major fluctuations in BP. Lower concentrations (e.g., bupivacaine 0.125–0.25%) are used to provide supplemental analgesia, while higher concentrations (e.g., bupivacaine 0.5%) generally provide optimal surgical conditions (i.e., a complete sensory and motor block). The infusion rate is contingent on the desired segmental spread, but often ranges between 5–10 mL/h. Lipophilic opioids can effectively be given by continuous infusion (e.g., fentanyl 2 mcg/mL) and offer the advantage of limited segmental spread. Longer-acting hydrophilic opioids (e.g., hydromorphone 0.4 mg or morphine 2 mg for epidural placement at mid-thoracic spine) can be injected as a bolus along with an initial bolus dose of local anesthetics. However, hydrophilic opioids tend to spread rostrally within the intrathecal space and may cause sedation and respiratory depression if dosed too aggressively. Vulnerable patients include the elderly, patients with obstructive airway disease, and patients with ↑ BMI. The use of epidural local anesthetics is associated with sympatholysis and ↓ BP has to be anticipated. Critical ↓ BP is treated with fluids and/or vasopressors (e.g., ephedrine 5–10 mg iv). In patients undergoing a surgical procedure with a significant risk for major bleeding it is prudent to delay administration of epidural local anesthetics until the critical part of surgery has been completed. Systemic sedatives (e.g., opiates and benzodiazepines) should be minimized as they increase the likelihood of postop respiratory depression. **Low-dose ketamine:** If the placement of an epidural catheter is not an option, the use of a low-dose ketamine iv infusion may be considered as an adjuvant analgesic regimen (e.g., 0.5 mg/kg bolus before surgical incision, followed by an infusion of 0.2 mg/kg/hr that is stopped 30 min before the end of surgery). Low-dose ketamine provides opioid-sparing effects (30–50%), reduces postoperative pain, reduces the incidence of opioid-mediated side effects, decreases postop wound hyperalgesia, and may decrease development of chronic pain after surgery. Escalating ketamine doses beyond 30 mg/d is unlikely associated with increased opioid-sparing effects. The risk for occurrence of psychomimetic side effects appears to be low in patients undergoing general anesthesia. **Gabapentin/pregabalin:** Single-dose administration of 600–1200 mg gabapentin or 150–300 mg pregabalin before surgery should be considered in patients not eligible for an epidural anesthetic technique. Gabapentin and pregabalin provide opioid-sparing effects (30–50%), reduce postop pain, somewhat lower the incidence of opioid-mediated side effects, and may decrease the development of chronic pain after surgery. Gabapentin and pregabalin can cause postop sedation. However, available data suggest the pronounced sedation only occurs in a small fraction of patients (e.g., frail and elderly).

Maintenance (cont'd)	**Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and acetaminophen:** Perioperative administration of nonselective NSAIDs, COX-2-selective NSAIDs, and acetaminophen is associated with moderate opioid-sparing effects. Overall, NSAIDs seem to be somewhat more effective than paracetamol and only NSAIDs have conclusively been shown to reduce opioid-mediated side effects. Whether aggressive dosing with iv acetaminophen (1 g q 6 h) will provide additional benefits has not been established. Potential benefits of adding NSAIDs need to be balanced against the risk of drug-related side effects including bleeding and renal failure.	
Emergence	The decision to extubate a patient at the end of surgery depends on the patient's underlying cardiopulmonary status. Patients undergoing extensive surgery with major fluid shifts may require prolonged intubation until sufficient reduction of soft tissue edema (compromised airway) is achieved.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large fluid loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 (particularly Whipple, pancreatectomy and drainage/debridement for pancreatitis) Warm fluids T&C or T&S	Blood loss can be significant, and blood products should be immediately available. Adequate large-bore iv access is mandatory. Procedures tend to be long and extensive, leading to hypothermia and large 3rd-space fluid loss. If procedure does not involve cancer or infection, cell-saving devices can be utilized. Intraoperative fluid management should be titrated to a patient's particular needs (adequate peripheral perfusion, urine output > 0.5 mL/kg/min, no base deficit). Overly generous intraoperative fluid administration may be associated with increased postoperative morbidity (e.g., delayed recovery of bowl function) and extended hospital stay.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) UO Arterial line ± CVP or PA catheter	Most pancreatic surgery is associated with major fluid shifts and fluid loss. Availability of an infusion device assisting rapid delivery of intravenous fluids at body temperature is advised. Invasive monitoring is usually required. In patients with cardiopulmonary compromise, a PA catheter may prove helpful for intraop cardiovascular and fluid management. Use forced-air warmer to maintain normothermia.
	± TEE	TEE may be useful for assessment of volume status and cardiac function.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypocalcemia	Release of pancreatic lipase → omental fat saponification.
	Hypovolemia	Extensive 3rd-spacing, major hemorrhage during pancreatic dissection.
	Severe hypoglycemia	Uncontrolled insulin release from insulinoma
	Sepsis	Manipulation of infected tissue → cardiovascular instability, respiratory deterioration, DIC.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hyperglycemia Electrolyte imbalance Hypovolemia Hypothermia Hypocalcemia PONV (see p. B-6) VTE (see p. B-8)	Total pancreatectomy is associated with a brittle diabetes that can be very difficult to control. Subtotal resections lead to variable hyperglycemia.

Pain management	Continuous epidural analgesia (see p. C-3). PCA (see p. C-3).	Patient should be recovered in an ICU or hospital ward that is accustomed to treating the side effects of epidural analgesic techniques using opiates and local anaesthetics (e.g., arterial hypotension, respiratory depression, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus). Postop pain control with an epidural rather than a PCA regimen is superior in patients undergoing major abdominal surgery. Particularly in high-risk patients suffering from pulmonary impairment, an epidural regimen may reduce the incidence of respiratory failure. The use of epidural (or systemic) local anesthetics can speed up bowel recovery and reduce hospital length of stay. The improvement of other major clinical outcomes (e.g., cardiovascular) has not yet been demonstrated convincingly in patients undergoing nonvascular abdominal surgery.
Tests	CXR (if CVP placed); ABG; Hct	Electrolytes; Ca^{++}; glucose; Plts—as indicated for postop management.

Suggested Readings

1. Angst MS, Ramaswamy B, Riley ET, et al: Lumbar epidural morphine in humans and supraspinal analgesia to experimental heat pain. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 92:312–24.
2. Bell RF, Dahl JB, Moore RA, et al: Perioperative ketamine for acute postoperative pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 25:CD004603.
3. Clarke H, Bonin RP, Orser BA, et al: The prevention of chronic postsurgical pain using gabapentin and pregabalin: a combined systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115:428–42.
4. Ginosar Y, Columb MO, Cohen SE, et al: The site of action of epidural fentanyl infusions in the presence of local anesthetics: a minimum local analgesic concentration infusion study in nulliparous labor. *Anesth Analg* 2003; 97:1439–45.
5. Ho K-Y, Gan TJ, Habib AS: Gabapentin and postoperative pain–a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Pain* 2006; 126:91–101.
6. Jimenez C, Gagel RF: Disorders affecting multiple endocrine systems. In: Fauci AS, Braunwald E, Kaspan DL, et al, eds. *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine*, 17th edition. McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., New York: 2008, 2358–64.
7. Jorgensen H, Wetterslev J, Moinishe S, et al: Epidural local anesthetics versus opioid-based analgesic regimens on postoperative gastrointestinal paralysis, PONV and pain after abdominal surgery. *Cochroane Database Syst Rev* 2000: CDO01893.
8. Macario A, Royal MA: A literature review of randomized clinical trials of intravenous acetaminophen (paracetamol) for acute postoperative pain. *Pain Pract* 2011; 11:290–6.
9. Maund E, McDaid C, Rice S, et al: Paracetamol and selective and non-selective non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the reduction in morphine-related side-effects after major surgery: a systematic review. *BR J Anaesth* 2001; 115:428–42.
10. Murakami Y, Uemura K, Hayashidani Y, et al: No mortality after 150 consecutive pancreaticoduodenectomies with duct to mucosa pancreaticogastrostomy. *J Surg Oncol* 2008; 97:205–9.
11. Nakeeb A, Lillemoe KD, Yeo CJ, et al: Neoplasms of the exocrine pancreas. In: Mulholland MW, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 861–79.
12. Nisanevich V, Felsenstein I, Almogy G, et al: Effect of intraoperative fluid management on outcome after intraabdominal surgery. *Anesthesiology* 2005; 103:25–32.
13. Park WY, Thompson JS, Lee KK: Effect of epidural anesthesia and analgesia on perioperative outcome: a randomized, controlled Veterans Affairs cooperative study. *Ann Surg* 2001; 234:560–9.
14. Rigg JR, Jamrozik K, Myles PS, et al: Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomized trial. *Lancet* 2002; 359:1276–82.
15. Swenson BR, Gottschalk A, Wells LT, et al: Intravenous lidocane is as effective as epidural bupivacaine in reducing ileus duration, hospital stay, and pain after open colon resection: a randomized clinical trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2010; 35:370–6.
16. Tiippana EM, Hamunen K, Kontinen VK, et al: Do surgical patients benefit from perioperative gabapentin/pregabalin? A systematic review of efficacy and safety. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 104:1545–56.

CHAPTER

7.9 Peritoneal Surgery

SURGEONS

Jeffrey A. Norton, MD
Harry A. Oberhelman, MD, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Martin S. Angst, MD

EXPLORATORY OR STAGING LAPAROTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Exploratory laparotomy** is indicated primarily in patients suffering abdominal trauma or other acute abdominal catastrophes. It is important that a thorough and systematic intraabdominal examination be carried out to prevent missing significant injuries (e.g., ruptured duodenum or transected pancreas). Any active bleeding should be controlled prior to a systematic examination. Other indications for laparotomy include certain patients with fever of undetermined origin or those in whom a specific diagnosis cannot be made, or for staging of selected patients with Hodgkin's disease. A **staging laparotomy** (Fig. 7.9-1) consists of **splenectomy, wedge** and **needle biopsies** of both lobes of the liver, and biopsies of the periaortic, celiac, mesenteric, and portahepatic lymph nodes. In young women, suturing (pexing) the ovaries in the midline protects them from radiation. Indications for staging in Hodgkin's disease and lymphomas vary from institution to institution, but PET /CT scans have limited their use.

Basically, the procedure begins with a midline abdominal incision; then the abdomen is explored, and both needle and wedge biopsies of the liver may be performed. The spleen may be removed by incising the lateral peritoneal attachment and delivering the spleen into the wound. The short gastric vessels are cut and ligated and the splenic vessels exposed. These are cut individually and ligated, and the spleen is removed. Paraaortic nodes are exposed through a left paraaortic incision in the retroperitoneum and removed for biopsy. Lymph channels are clipped to prevent lymphatic leakage. The nodes dissected extend to the inferior margin of the duodenum. It may be necessary to cross the aorta and biopsy any enlarged nodes on the right side. More recently, **laparoscopy** is being performed for staging of certain intraabdominal malignancies (e.g., pancreatic and gastric cancer); however, its use has decreased with improved multiphasic CT scans.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abdominal trauma; Hodgkin's disease or other lymphomas

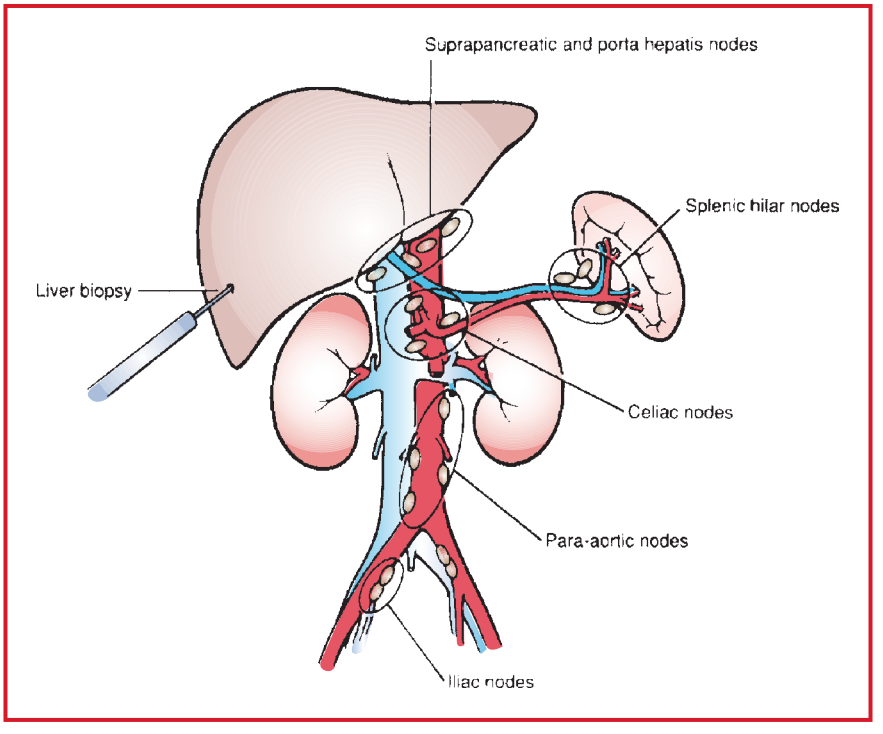


Figure 7.9-1. Staging laparotomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Staging Laparotomy	Exploratory Laparotomy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Midline abdominal	⇐ or transverse
Special instrumentation	Abdominal retractor	⇐
Unique considerations	Ovarian pexy	Careful monitoring of VS in trauma patients
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv	Cefazolin iv 1–2 g
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–2 h	Variable, 1–2 h+
Closing considerations	Splenic bed hemostasis	Hemostasis
EBL	100–200 mL	Variable, 200–500 mL
Postop care	± NG decompression; PACU → ward	ICU for trauma patients
Mortality	< 1%	2–5%
Morbidity	Prolonged ileus: 10–15% Pulmonary complications: 5–10% Wound infection: 2–3% Small bowel obstruction: 1% Intraperitoneal bleeding: < 1%	⇐ Atelectasis: 5–10% Wound infection: 5–10% Hemorrhage: 1–3% Pneumonia: < 1%
Pain score	6–8	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–60 yr	15–75 yr
Male:Female	1:1.5	1:1
Incidence	Common	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	Trauma
Associated conditions	Hodgkin's disease (95%); lymphoma (5%)	Other visceral or vascular injuries in trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: exploratory/staging laparotomy that is not trauma-related; splenectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, nongynecologic patients presenting for **staging laparotomy** (which may include **splenectomy**) have Hodgkin's disease, or other lymphomatous or cancerous disorders. Apart from the primary disease, these patients are often in reasonably good health and will not have had radiation or chemotherapy before the staging laparotomy. Patients presenting for splenectomy may be divided into two less healthy groups: (a) trauma patients (whose management is described in Trauma Surgery, p. 751) and (b) a more complex group with myeloproliferative disorders

and other varieties of hypersplenism. The periop management of these two groups is more complicated. The latter group may have received chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy, which may affect a variety of organ systems. It is incumbent on the anesthesiologist to be aware of the periop implications of these adjunctive treatments. The actual extent of a staging or exploratory laparotomy can vary substantially. A good understanding of the surgeon's plan and its inherent risks (e.g., removing tumor in close proximity to a major blood vessel) is crucial for providing adequate anesthesia care.

Respiratory	Patients who have splenomegaly may have a degree of left lower lobe atelectasis and compromised ventilation 2° intraabdominal pathology: ↓ FRC → ↑ A-a gradient + ↓ PaO_2. This should be evaluated by physical exam. Some may have been treated with chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., bleomycin at a total dose > 200 mg/m^2) that cause pulmonary pathology including fibrosis. Toxic drug effects are potentiated by smoking, XRT, and high FiO_2. **Tests:** CXR, PFTs, and ABG as clinically indicated
Cardiovascular	Patients with systemic disease requiring splenectomy may be chronically ill and have ↓ cardiovascular reserve. Patients who have received certain chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., doxorubicin at a dose > 550 mg/m^2) may suffer from cardiotoxic side effects that can be worsened by XRT. Manifestations include CHF and dysrhythmias. **Tests:** ECG, ECHO, and stress test as clinically indicated
Neurological	Patients may have neurological deficits from receiving certain chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., peripheral neuropathies caused by vinblastine and cisplatin or CNS pathology caused by 5-fluorouracil and mithramycin). Evidence of neurologic dysfunction should be documented in the preop evaluation.
Hematologic	Patients are likely to present with splenomegaly 2° hematologic disease (e.g., Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, chronic leukemia, myeloid metaplasia, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, idiopathic autoimmune hemolytic anemia, and sickle cell disease). Cytopenia is very common. Preop replacement of platelets should be considered in patients with severe thrombocytopenia. However, the effectiveness of preop platelet replacement may be limited in patients with hypersplenism because transfused platelets are mostly sequestrated by the spleen. Myelosuppression should be anticipated in all patients receiving active chemotherapy. **Tests:** CBC
Hepatic	Some chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., methotrexate and mithramycin) may be hepatotoxic. Evaluation of LFTs should be considered in patients at risk. **Tests:** LFTs including INR
Renal	Some chemotherapeutic drugs (e.g., methotrexate and cisplatin) are nephrotoxic, and patients may present with impaired renal function. **Tests:** BUN, creatinine and electrolytes
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv. In patients with suspected gastrointestinal stasis the use of full-stomach precautions should be considered (see p. B-5) to minimize the risk of pulmonary aspiration. A supplemental intravenous steroid dose (e.g., 25–100 mg hydrocortisone) should be considered in patients receiving preop corticosteroids as part of their chemotherapeutic regimen.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for postop analgesia. If postop epidural analgesia is planned, placement of catheter prior to anesthetic induction is helpful to establish correct placement in the epidural space (accomplished by injecting 1–2% lidocaine (50–100 mg) via the epidural catheter to elicit a segmental block). The use of epidural anesthetic techniques for postoperative pain control in patients undergoing major, nonvascular abdominal surgery has been shown to provide superior pain control compared with IV-PCA. However, adequate pain control can be achieved with the use of IV-PCA.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) except in patients at risk for pulmonary aspiration, who require a rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). High inspired O_2 concentrations (> 30%) may aggravate chemotherapy-induced (e.g., bleomycin) lung injuries. **Combined epidural/GA:** The epidural catheter ideally is placed at a level corresponding to the surgical site (generally low to mid-thoracic). This allows the use of both lipophilic and hydrophilic drugs at the lowest possible dose, adds flexibility to the anesthesiologist's choice of agents, and minimizes the likelihood of side effects. A continuous infusion (after an initial bolus dose) is the preferred mode of administering epidural local anesthetics because satisfactory analgesia can be achieved with less fluctuations in BP. Lower concentrations of bupivacaine (0.125–0.25%) can be infused to provide supplemental analgesia, whereas higher concentrations (0.5%) may improve surgical conditions (complete sensory and motor block). The infusion rate is contingent on the desired segmental spread, but often ranges between 5 and 10 mL/h. Lipophilic opiods (e.g., fentanyl) can effectively be given by continuous infusion. Longer-acting hydrophilic opioids (e.g., hydromorphone 0.4 mg or morphine 2 mg for an epidural placement at the lower to mid-thoracic spine) can be injected as a bolus along with the initial bolus dose of a local anesthetic. However, hydrophilic opioids tend to spread rostrally within the intrathecal space and may cause sedation and respiratory depression if dosed too aggressively. Vulnerable patients include the elderly, patients with obstructive airway disease, and patients suffering from obesity. The use of epidural local anesthetics is associated with sympatholysis, and ↓ BP has to be anticipated. Critical ↓ BP is treated with fluids iv and/or vasopressors (e.g., ephedrine 5–10 mg iv). In patients undergoing a surgical procedure with a significant risk for major bleeding, it is prudent to delay administration of epidural local anesthetics until the critical part of surgery has been completed. Systemic sedatives (e.g., opiates and benzodiazepines) should be minimized as they increase the likelihood of postop respiratory depression. **Low-dose ketamine:** If the placement of an epidural catheter is not an option, the use of a low-dose ketamine iv infusion may be considered as an adjuvant analgesic regimen (e.g., 0.5 mg/kg bolus before surgical incision, followed by an infusion of 0.2 mg/kg/h that is stopped 30 min before the end of surgery). Low-dose ketamine provides opioid-sparing effects (30–50%), reduces postop pain, decreases the incidence of opioid-mediated side effects, reduces wound hyperalgesia, and may decrease the development of chronic pain after surgery. Escalating ketamine doses beyond 30 mg/d is not associated with increased opioid-sparing effects. The risk for the occurrence of psychomimetic side effects appears to be low in patients undergoing general anesthesia. **Gabapentin/pregabalin:** Single-dose administration of 600–1200 mg gabapentin or 150–300 mg pregabalin before surgery should be considered in patients not eligible for an epidural anesthetic technique. Gabapentin and pregabalin provide opioid-sparing effects (30–50%), reduce postop pain, somewhat lower the incidence of opioid-mediated side effects, and may decrease the development of chronic pain after surgery. Gabapentin and pregabalin can cause postop sedation. However, available data suggest that pronounced sedation only occurs in a small fraction of patients (e.g., frail and elderly). **Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and acetaminophen:** Perioperative administration of nonselective NSAIDs, COX-2-selective NSAIDs and acetaminophen is associated with moderate opioid-sparing effects. Overall, NSAIDs seem to be somewhat more effective than acetaminophen, and only NSAIDs have conclusively been shown to reduce opioid-mediated side effects. Whether aggressive dosing with iv acetaminophen (1 g q 6 h) will provide additional benefits has not been established. Potential benefits of adding NSAIDs need to be balanced against the risk of drug-related side effects including bleeding and renal failure.
Emergence	Most patients can be extubated at the end of surgery. Patients undergoing extensive surgery with major fluid shifts may require prolonged intubation until cardiovascular stability and sufficient reduction of soft-tissue edema (compromised airway) is achieved.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2	Potential for major blood loss. In patients with difficult iv access, postinduction placement of additional access is prudent. In splenectomy patients with hypersplenism, Plt transfusion is best given after ligation of the splenic vessel (avoid sequestration).
	Anticipate large fluid loss IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 Warm fluids T&C or T&S	Intraoperative fluid therapy should be titrated to a patient's particular needs (adequate peripheral perfusion, urine output > 0.5 mL/kg/h, no base deficit). Overly generous intraoperative fluid administration may be associated with postoperative morbidity (e.g., delayed recovery of bowl function) and extended hospital stay.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). UO ± Arterial line ± CVP (large volume shifts, need for vaso-active drugs, postop care) ± TEE (assessment of volume status)	Others as indicated by patient's status. To prevent hypothermia during long operations, use warming blanket(s), consider heated humidifier and warming room temperature. Place an arterial line in patients with hemodynamic instability or those at risk for significant intraop bleeding. Availability of a rapid infusion device for delivery of IV fluids at body temperature should be considered in patients at risk for large blood loss. Consider CVP for guiding fluid management, particularly in patients with concomitant cardiovascular disease.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Unexpected bleeding	Plt transfusion may be necessary.

General Surgery

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding Atelectasis (usually left lower lobe) PONV (see p. B-6) VTE (see p. B-8)	Patient should be recovered in ICU or hospital ward that is accustomed to treating side effects of epidural local anesthetics and opiates (e.g., arterial hypotension, respiratory depression, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus).
Pain management	Epidural analgesia PCA (see p. C-3).	Postop pain control with an epidural rather than a PCA regimen is superior in patients undergoing major abdominal surgery. In high-risk patients with pulmonary impairment an epidural regimen may reduce the incidence of respiratory failure. The use of epidural (or systemic) local anesthetic can speed up bowel recovery and reduce hospital length of stay. The improvement of other major clinical outcomes (e.g., cardiovascular) has not yet been demonstrated convincingly in patients undergoing nonvascular abdominal surgery.
Tests	CXR, if CVP placed perioperatively CBC	

Suggested Readings

1. Angst MS, Ramaswamy B, Riley ET, et al: Lumbar epidural morphine in humans and supraspinal analgesia to experimental heat pain. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 92:312–24.
2. Bell RF, Dahl JB, Moore RA, et al: Perioperative ketamine for acute postoperative pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006: CD004603.
3. Brown CJ, Buie WD: Perioperative stress dose steroids: do they make a difference? *J Am Coll Surg* 2001; 193:678–86.
4. Clarke H, Bonin RP, Orser BA, et al: The prevention of chronic postsurgical pain using gabapentin and pregabalin: a combined systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115:428–42.
5. Ginosar Y, Columb MO, Cohen SE, et al: The site of action of epidural fentanyl infusions in the presence of local anesthetics: a minimum local analgesic concentration infusion study in nulliparous labor. *Anesth Analg* 2003; 97:1439–45.
6. Jorgensen H, Wetterslev J, Moiniche S, et al: Epidural local anesthetics versus opioid-based analgesic regimens on postoperative gastrointestinal paralysis, PONV and pain after abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2000: CDO01893.
7. Macario A, Royal MA: A literature review of randomized clinical trials of intravenous acetaminophen (paracetamol) for acute postoperative pain. *Pain Pract* 2011; 11:290–6.
8. Maund E, McDaid C, Rice S, et al: Paracetamol and selective and non-selective non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the reduction in morphine-related side-effects after major surgery: a systematic review. *BR J Anaesth* 2011; 106:292–7.
9. Nisanevich V, Felsenstein I, Almogy G, et al: Effect of intraoperative fluid management on outcome after intraabdominal surgery. *Anesthesiology* 2005; 103:25–32.
10. Rigg JR, Jamrozik K, Myles PS, et al: Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2002; 359:1276–82.
11. Swenson BR, Gottschalk A, Wells LT, et al: Intravenous lidocane is as effective as epidural bupivacaine in reducing ileus duration, hospital stay, and pain after open colon resection: a randomized clinical trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2010; 35:370–6.
12. White R, Winston C, Gonen M, et al: Current utility of staging laparoscopy for pancreatic and peripancreatic neoplasms. *J Am Coll Surg* 2008; 206:445–50.

SPLENECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Through a midline abdominal or left subcostal incision or laparoscopically, the spleen is mobilized by dividing the lateral peritoneal attachments while the spleen is retracted medially. (Relevant anatomy is shown in Fig. 7.9-2.) Once the spleen is delivered into the operative wound, the short gastric vessels are clamped, cut, and ligated. This can be done with the Ligasure device. The splenic artery and vein are then exposed with care being taken not to injure the tail of the pancreas. By keeping the splenic hilum between the operator's fingers and thumb, inadvertent bleeding can be controlled easily. Accessory spleens (incidence, 15–30%) also should be looked for if the splenectomy is being done for ITP. They are found along the cephalad and caudad edges of the pancreas behind the stomach and in the area of the gastrohepatic ligament, greater omentum, and the splenic hilum. All patients undergoing splenectomy should receive polyvalent pneumococcal and *Haemophilus influenza* vaccines. Children may also require vaccination against meningococcus.

Variant procedure or approaches: Following trauma, efforts at splenic salvage (**splenorrhaphy**) may be made, if possible, to preserve all or part of the spleen. This may be accomplished by the use of local hemostatic techniques (electrocoagulation, argon beam coagulator, Surgicel or Gelfoam soaked in thrombin, microfibrillar collagen, and the use of fine sutures or mattress sutures with Teflon felt pledgets). Recently, splenectomy has been performed laparoscopically if the spleen is near normal size (see Laparoscopic Splenectomy, p. 595).

Usual preop diagnosis: Staging laparotomy results; trauma; immune thrombocytopenic purpura; hereditary spherocytosis; other hereditary hemolytic anemia types; or a variety of myeloproliferative disorders

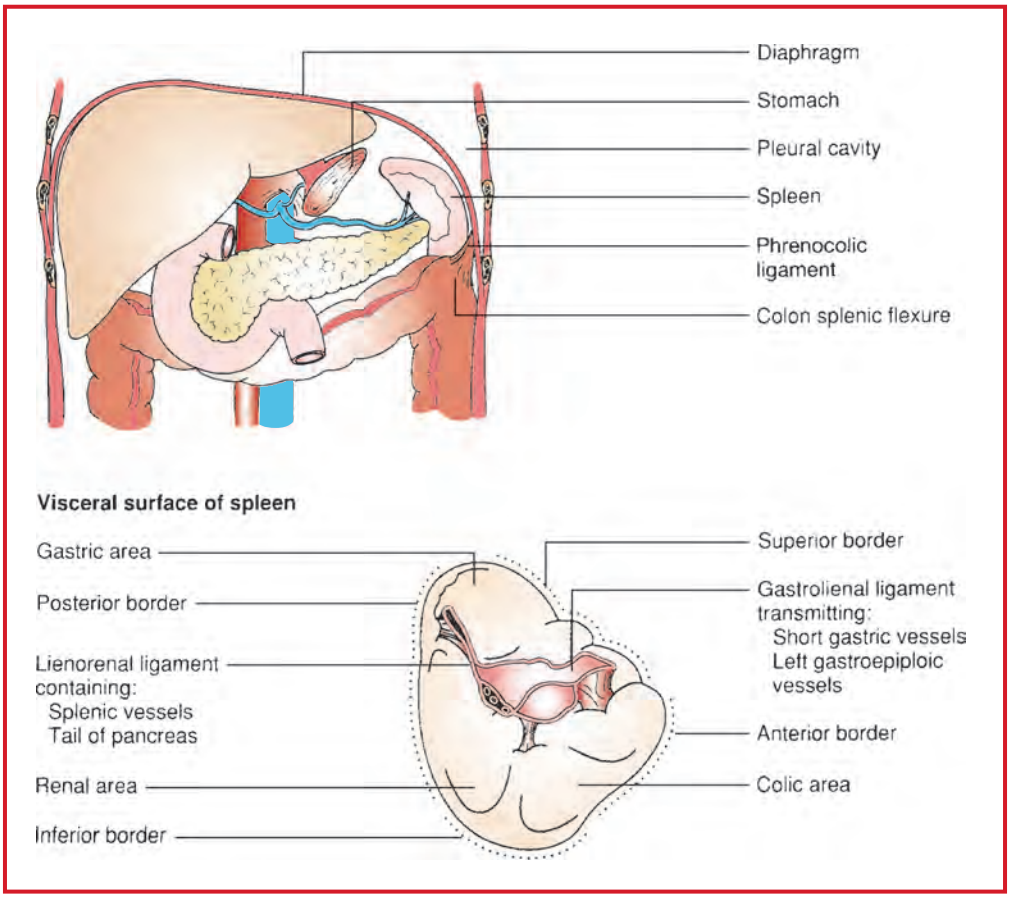


Figure 7.9-2. Anatomic relation of the spleen to the liver, diaphragm, pancreas, colon, and kidney. The stomach is sectioned to illustrate the anatomic relations in situ. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Splenectomy	Splenorrhaphy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Midline or left subcostal	⇐
Special instrumentation	Suitable abdominal retractors	⇐
Unique considerations	Potential for major blood loss during procedure; avoid splenic laceration and damage to tail of pancreas.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	1–2 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Splenectomy	Splenorrhaphy
Closing considerations	Adequate hemostasis	⇐
EBL	50–100 mL	200–500 mL
Postop care	± NG decompression; PACU (nontrauma)	⇐
Mortality	0–3%	⇐
Morbidity	Thrombocytosis: > 1,000,000 → VTE Pulmonary complications: 3–23% Pancreatitis and/or pancreatic fistula: 1–8% Subphrenic abscess: 0–6% Bleeding: 1–5% Overwhelming sepsis: 0.3–2%	⇐
Pain score	5–7	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	See Usual preop diagnosis, above.
Associated conditions	Blood dyscrasia (30–50%); abdominal or thoracic trauma (25%); Hodgkin's disease (5–10%); tumors (5%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Exploratory or Staging Laparotomy, p. 641.

Suggested Readings

1. Davidson RN, Wall RA: Prevention and management of infection in patients without a spleen. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2001; 12:657–60.
2. Fraker DL: Splenic disorders. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery, Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1222–50.
3. Nurden AT, Nurden P: Increasing the platelet count in chronic ITP. *Lancet* 2008; 371:362–4.

EXCISION OF INTRAABDOMINAL, RETROPERITONEAL TUMORS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Intraabdominal and retroperitoneal tumors, other than those of visceral origin, consist primarily of sarcomas (liposarcoma, fibrous histiocytomas, mesenteric fibromas, and gastrointestinal stromal tumors). They are usually approached through a long midline incision for adequate exposure and to assess their resectability. Resection of such lesions may require excision of adjacent or involved small bowel or large intestine or other involved abdominal viscera. Care must be taken not to injure the ureters or major vessels, particularly at the root of the mesentery to the small bowel. It may be prudent to have ureteral stents placed to avoid injury to the ureters. If residual microscopic

tumor remains, intraoperative radiation therapy (IORT) may be indicated. In certain tumors, the patient may still benefit from "tumor debulking" (removing as much tumor as possible and treating the remaining tumor with radiation and/or chemotherapy). Operative approaches are dictated by location of tumor. Although most operative approaches are transabdominal, some retroperitoneal tumors may be approached retroperitoneally via oblique incision on either side of the abdomen. Some require thoracoabdominal incisions.

Usual preop diagnosis: Intraabdominal or peritoneal tumor

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal or transverse
Unique considerations	Availability of blood
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv preop
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	3–4 h
Closing considerations	Hemostasis
EBL	300–1000 mL
Mortality	1–3%
Morbidity	Respiratory problems: 5–10% Wound infection: 2–4% Hemorrhage: 1–3%
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Variable, 20–75 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Partial bowel obstruction (10–15%); hydronephrosis (10–15%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Intestinal and Peritoneal Procedures, p. 534, and for Exploratory or Staging Laparotomy, p. 641.

Suggested Readings

1. Gholanai S, Jacobs CD, Kapp DS, et al: The value of surgery for retroperitoneal sarcoma. *Sarcoma* 2009; 2009:605840.
2. Sabel MS: Sarcomas of bone and soft tissue. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery, Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 2151–76.
3. Shukla PJ, Bareto SG, Shrikhande SV: Retroperitoneal sarcoma. *Br J Surg* 2007; 94:1057–8.

DRAINAGE OF SUBPHRENIC ABSCESS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Abscesses may occur in subphrenic spaces, including the right subphrenic, right subhepatic, left subphrenic, lesser sac, or bare area of the liver (Fig. 7.9-3), following peritonitis, abdominal surgery or trauma. It is important to know the anatomy of these spaces for making a correct diagnosis and for treatment. Most commonly abscesses are drained by interventional radiology (85%), but some may require an open surgical approach.

Drainage is accomplished by a **posterior** or **anterior extraperitoneal approach** or by a **transpleural approach,** depending on location of the abscess. Lesser sac abscesses are best approached by an **anterior transperitoneal route.** Abscesses in the bare area of the liver are drained posteriorly. After the abscess is localized, the cavity is entered by finger dissection and drained. Loculations are broken up and the cavity thoroughly irrigated with NS or a suitable antibiotic solution. Appropriate drains are placed, and the wound is closed in a conventional manner. Cultures are routinely obtained.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Percutaneous approaches** have become more popular as experience is gained by interventional radiologists. This technique should be reserved for unilocular collections, where sterile cavities are not penetrated and a safe route is available.

Usual preop diagnosis: Subphrenic abscess

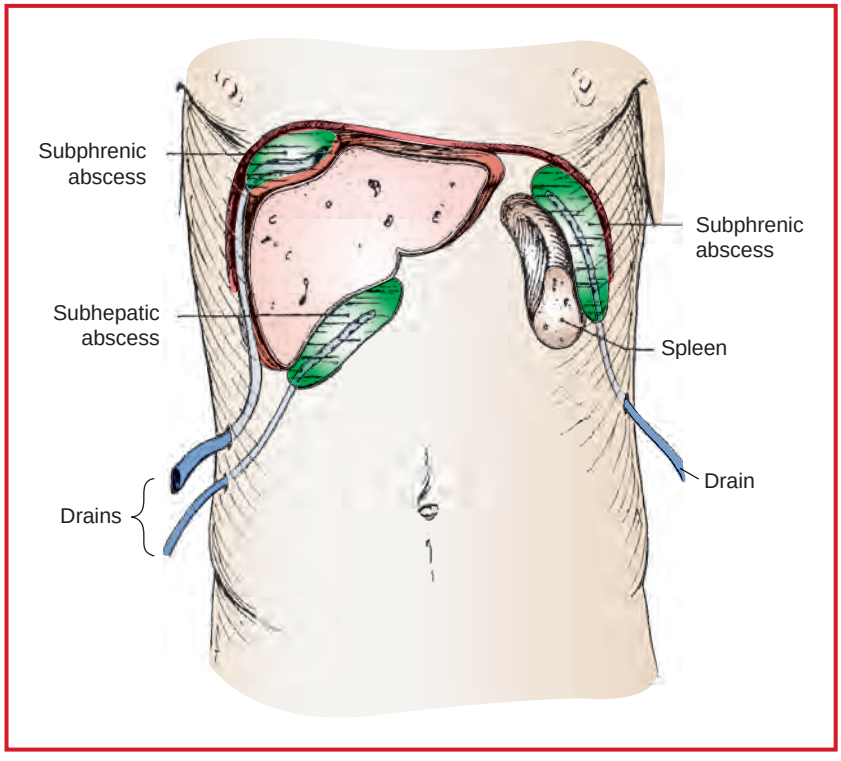


Figure 7.9-3. Anatomy of subphrenic abscess. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* Vol. I. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Subphrenic Abscess Drainage	Percutaneous Approach
Position	Supine or lateral decubitus, right or left	⇐
Incision	Subcostal or oblique abdominal	None
Special instrumentation	Drainage tubes	Special catheters; CT guidance
Antibiotics	Zosyn (Piperacillin & Tazobactam) 3.375 g q 6 h	⇐
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq	⇐
Surgical time	1–1½ h	⇐
EBL	50–100 mL	10–25 mL
Postop care	Maintain patency of the drainage tubes	⇐
Mortality	< 5%	⇐
Morbidity	Inadequate drainage: 5–10% Pulmonary complications: 5–10% Bowel perforation: < 2%	⇐
Pain score	7–9	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Variable, 15–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Postop (70–80%); peritonitis (25–30%); trauma (5–10%)
Associated conditions	See Etiology, above.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Intestinal and Peritoneal Procedures, p. 534.

Suggested Readings

1. Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 1075–80.
2. Doherty GM, Way LW: Peritoneal cavity. In: Doherty GM, ed. *Current Surgical Diagnosis and Treatment,* 12th edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2005, 493–507.
3. Goulet CJ: Endoscopic transgastric drainage of subphrenic abscess. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; 65:733–5.

INGUINAL HERNIORRHAPHY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Groin hernias are defects in the transverse abdominis layer, where a direct hernia comes through the posterior wall of the inguinal canal and an indirect hernia comes through the internal inguinal ring (Fig. 7.9-4). Direct hernias are medial to the inferior epigastric artery and vein, whereas indirect hernias are lateral to these vessels. Surgical approach can be either anterior or posterior. In general, an **anterior approach** (Bassini, McVay's, Shouldice, or mesh repair) is used for primary repair of an indirect or direct inguinal hernia. The **Bassini repair** consists of ligation of the hernia sac and suturing the conjoint tendon to the shelving edge of Poupart's ligament. **McVay's repair** sutures the conjoint tendon to Cooper's ligament and usually is reserved for femoral inguinal hernias. **Shouldice** emphasizes the closing of the transverse fascia and transversus abdominal muscle layers. Currently, the interposing of Marlex mesh or insertion of a Marlex plug between the conjoint tendon, the internal oblique muscle, and the inguinal ligament is commonly used. Mesh is associated with improved outcomes and less pain. Other modifications are indicated in special situations.

A **posterior approach** is used by some surgeons for the repair of femoral hernias and recurrent inguinal hernias and for treating incarcerated and strangulated hernias. The **posterior preperitoneal approach** is normally performed by suturing the transversus abdominis arch on the superior aspect of the hernia defect to Cooper's ligament and the iliopubic tract on the inferior aspect of the defect.

The **laparoscopic approach** is indicated for the repair of recurrent or bilateral inguinal hernias and utilizes a **preperitoneal patch repair** and results in less postop pain and an earlier return to normal physical activity (see Laparoscopic Inguinal Hernia Repair, p. 609). Randomized studies suggest that laparoscopic repair has lesser results.

Usual preop diagnosis: Groin pain or lump

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Oblique or transverse
Unique considerations	Avoid damage to nerve structure and spermatic cord. Avoid interfering with blood supply to testes.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
Postop care	PACU → room
EBL	25–50 mL
Mortality	3/100,000
Morbidity	Wound abscess: < 3% Wound hematoma: < 2%
Pain score	4–5

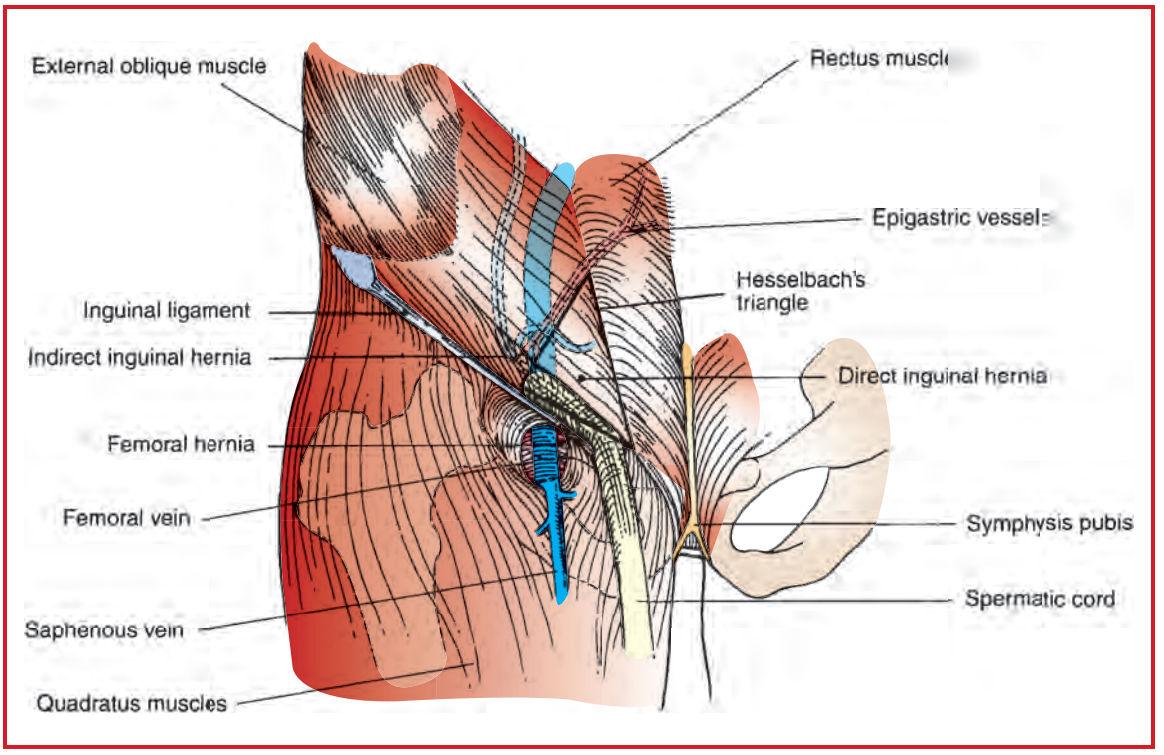


Figure 7.9-4. Inguinal anatomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1–90 yr
Male:Female	85:15
Incidence	15/1000
Etiology	Congenital variants; reduced collagen synthesis in adults
Associated conditions	Chronic cough; urinary retention; chronic constipation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Repair of Abdominal Dehiscence, p. 656.

Suggested Readings

1. Gray SH, Hawn MT, Itani KM: Surgical progress in inguinal and ventral hernia repair. *Surg Clin North Am* 2008; 88:17–26.
2. Hallen M, Bergenfelz A, Westerdahl J: Laparoscopic extraperitoneal inguinal hernia repair versus open mesh repair: long-term follow-up of a randomized control trial. *Surgery* 2008; 143:313–7.
3. Javid PJ, Brooks DC: Hernias. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley JS, eds. *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2007, 105–40.
4. Neumayer L, Giobbie-Hurden A, Jonasson O, et al: Open mesh versus laparoscopic mesh repair of inguinal hernia. *N Engl J Med* 2004; 350:1819.
5. Richards AT, Quinn TH, Fitzgibbons RJ: Abdominal wall hernias. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1172–209.
6. Suzuki S, Furui S, Okinaga K, et al: Differentiation of femoral vs inguinal hernia: CT findings. *AJR* 2007; 189:78–83.

FEMORAL HERNIORRHAPHY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The hernia sac is exposed as it exits the preperitoneal space through the femoral canal (Fig. 7.9-5). If the hernia cannot be reduced, the possibility of strangulation needs to be kept in mind. The peritoneal sac in most cases should be opened proximal to the femoral canal to gain control of the intestine before it reduces itself into the peritoneal cavity. If the bowel is ischemic, it may require resection. The repair consists of suturing the iliopubic tract to Cooper's ligament, taking care not to compromise the femoral vein (McVay repair).

Usual preop diagnosis: Bulging of tissues over femoral canal

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Oblique
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
EBL	25–50 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward
Mortality	< 1% (6–20%, if strangulated)
Morbidity	Recurrence: 6%
Pain score	5–6

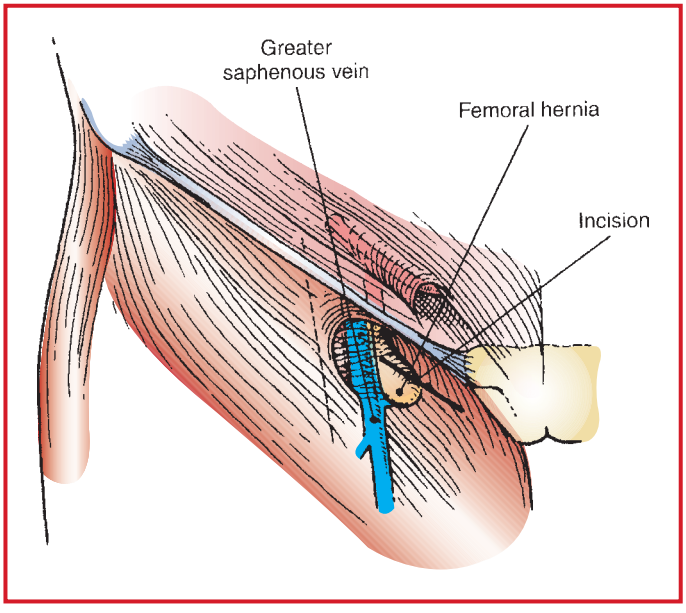


Figure 7.9-5. Femoral hernia repair. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adults; rare in children
Male:Female	1:4
Incidence	1.5% of all groin hernias
Etiology	Failure of preformed peritoneal sac to obliterate; muscle atrophy in older age group

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Repair of Abdominal Dehiscence, p. 656.

Suggested Readings

1. Javid PJ, Brooks DC: Hernias. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley JS, eds. *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2007, 105–40.
2. Richards AT, Quinn TH, Fitzgibbons RJ: Abdominal wall hernias. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1172–209.
3. Suzuki S, Furui S, Okinaga K, et al: Differentiation of femoral vs inguinal hernia: CT findings. *AJR* 2007; 189:78–83.

REPAIR OF INCISIONAL HERNIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Incisional hernias can occur after any abdominal incision, but are most common following midline incisions. Factors leading to herniation are wound infection, trauma, inadequate suturing, and ischemia. Following skin incision, the skin edges and subcutaneous fat are retracted and the dissection is carried down to the hernia defect. The redundant hernia sac is excised and the fascia is freed up on both sides of the wound. Primary closure is preferred, if possible.

Variant procedure or approaches: In addition to primary repair, the latter may be reinforced by an onlay mesh prosthesis, or the prosthesis may be used to fill the hernial defect or placed behind the muscle layer. In the repair of incisional hernias, laparoscopic tacking of mesh is gaining in popularity.

Usual preop diagnosis: Incisional hernia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Vertical or transverse
Special instrumentation	Mesh prosthesis (when indicated)
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Retention sutures
EBL	100–200 mL

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Postop care	± NG decompression; abdominal binder; PACU → ward
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Ileus: 5–10% Respiratory complications: 5–10% Wound infection: 1–2%
Pain score	5–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–70 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	3–5% of midline abdominal incisions
Etiology	Wound infection; trauma; inadequate suturing; weak tissues
Associated conditions	Obesity; malnutrition

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Repair of Abdominal Dehiscence, p. 656.

Suggested Readings

1. Condon RE: Ventral abdominal hernia. In: Baker RJ, Fischer JE, eds. *Mastery of Surgery,* Vol II, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 1983–8.
2. Gray SH, Hawn MT, Itani KM: Surgical progress in inguinal and ventral hernia repair. *Surg Clin North Am* 2008; 88:17–26.
3. Javid PJ, Brooks DC: Hernias. In: Zinner MJ, Ashley JS, eds. *Maingot's Abdominal Operations,* 11th edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2007, 105–40.
4. Richards AT, Quinn TH, Fitzgibbons RJ: Abdominal wall hernias. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM, et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1172–209.

REPAIR OF ABDOMINAL DEHISCENCE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Dehiscence implies a "splitting apart" or "bursting open" of the abdominal wall fascia. A complete dehiscence is a separation of all layers of the abdominal wall and often is associated with an extrusion of abdominal viscera. If incomplete, the separation of fascial and muscular layers results in an incisional hernia or an obstruction of a herniated loop of intestine. The earliest sign of a wound dehiscence is the presence of serosanguineous drainage from the wound. Minimal disruptions may be treated conservatively with occlusive dressings and an abdominal binder. Major dehiscence requires operative repair using careful fascial closure and retention sutures.

Variant procedure or approaches: Variations in the type of closure depend on surgeon's preference. Interrupted, nonabsorbable sutures and skin bridges are often used.

Usual preop diagnosis: Wound dehiscence

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Closure of previous incision
Unique considerations	Adequate muscle relaxation essential
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv
VTE prophylaxis	Heparin 5000 units sq
Surgical time	1–2 h
EBL	50–100 mL
Postop care	Abdominal binder to relieve tension on suture line; PACU → ward
Mortality	5–10%
Morbidity	Recurrent incisional hernia: 5–10% Wound infection: < 5% Wound ischemia: 1–2%
Pain score	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	25–90 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1.3% in patients < 45 yr 5.4% in patients > 45 yr
Etiology	Wound infection; excessive coughing or sneezing; excessive abdominal distention; weak tissue; poor nutrition; hematoma formation; poor surgical technique with tissue ischemia
Associated conditions	Malnutrition (25–30%); ascites (20–25%); hypoproteinemia (20%); chronic anemia (5–10%); vitamin C deficiency (< 5%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: inguinal herniorrhaphy; femoral herniorrhaphy; incisional hernia repair; repair of abdominal dehiscence)

PREOPERATIVE

Predisposing factors for hernia often include increased abdominal pressure 2° chronic cough, bladder outlet obstruction, constipation, pregnancy, vomiting, ↑ BMI, and acute or chronic muscular effort. These factors should ideally be managed preop to avoid postop recurrence. The patient population may range from premature infants to the elderly, who have the potential for presenting with multiple medical problems.

Musculoskeletal	Pain is likely to be present in area of hernia; evaluate bony landmarks if regional anesthesia is planned.
Gastrointestinal	Hernias may become incarcerated, obstructed, or strangulated, requiring emergency surgery. Fluid and electrolyte imbalance is likely. **Tests:** Electrolytes, if indicated from H&P
Hematologic	For regional anesthesia, ✓ patient's coagulation status, if indicated from H&P. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If necessary, standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA, regional, or local anesthesia ± iv sedation (MAC) may all be appropriate anesthetic techniques for uncomplicated cases (e.g., without incarceration or obstruction). GA and epidural for postop pain control may be appropriate for patients with unusually large incisional hernias or abdominal dehiscence (see Anesthetic Considerations for Exploratory or Staging Laparotomy p. 641). Choice depends on factors such as site of incision, patient physical status, and preference of both patient and surgeon. Profound muscle relaxation may be necessary to facilitate exploration and repair.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	**Single-shot vs. continuous:** Patient in sitting or lateral decubitus position (operative site down) for placement of hyperbaric subarachnoid block. Doses of local anesthetics are as follows for T4–T6 level: 0.75% bupivacaine in 8.25% dextrose (10–15 mg); 0.5% tetracaine in 5% dextrose (12–16 mg). Consider adding fentanyl (10–20 mcg) and/or morphine (100–200 mcg).
Epidural	Patient in sitting or lateral decubitus position for placement of epidural catheter. After locating the epidural space, administer a test dose (e.g., 3 mL of 1.5% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine) to determine whether the catheter is subarachnoid or intravascular. Titrate local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine or 0.5% bupivacaine or ropivacaine) until desired surgical level is obtained (5–7 mL at a time), usually about 20 mL. Consider adding fentanyl (25–100 mcg). Consider adding single-shot morphine (3–5 mg) rather than fentanyl if the epidural catheter is removed shortly after the end of surgery (prolonged duration of action; requires monitoring for 16–24 h after injection).
Local	Requires gentle surgical technique. Surgical field block, plus ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerve blocks, using 0.5% bupivacaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine. Usually performed by surgeon.

General anesthesia:

Induction	**LMA vs. ETT:** Standard induction (see p. B-2). LMA may be suitable for the patient who presents with a simple chronic hernia. If there is obstruction, incarceration, or strangulation, however, a rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-6) with ET intubation is indicated. GETA also may be indicated in the patient with wound dehiscence and large incisional hernias.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxants may be necessary to facilitate surgical repair.
Emergence	Consider extubating the trachea while patient is still anesthetized to prevent coughing and straining. Patients who are at risk for pulmonary aspiration and require awake intubation or rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) are not candidates for deep extubation.
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitoring (see p. B-2).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes
Complications	↓↓ HR + ↓ BP — Vagal reflex evoked by bowel traction.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications (cont'd)	PDPH after neuraxial block Urinary retention, common with regional anesthesia Wound dehiscence with coughing/straining	Patients with urinary retention may require catheterization
Pain management	PO analgesics: acetaminophen and codeine (Tylenol #3 1–2 tab q 4–6 h) or acetaminophen and oxycodone (Percocet 1 tab q 6 h)	Surgical field block or regional anesthesia should provide sufficient analgesia postop.

Suggested Readings

1. Abbott DE, Dumanian GA, Halverson AL: Management of laparotomy wound dehiscence. *Am Surg* 2007; 73:1224–7.
2. Cousins MJ, Bridenbaugh PO, eds: *Neural Blockade Pain Management,* 4th edition. Lippincott-Raven Publishers, Philadelphia: 2008.

CHAPTER

7.10 Breast Surgery

SURGEONS

Irene L. Wapnir, MD, FACS
Stefanie S. Jeffrey, MD, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

BREAST BIOPSY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Breast biopsy,** or **lumpectomy,** is the surgical removal of breast tissue for histopathological examination. Many biopsies are done percutaneously as office procedures. These include **fine-needle aspiration (FNA) cytology** and **core needle biopsy.** Needle biopsy may also be done under image guidance with breast ultrasound, mammography, or breast magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) if lesions are not palpable. **Open breast biopsies** are performed primarily in the OR for palpable or nonpalpable abnormalities. Palpable lesions include masses, nodules, or areas of asymmetric breast thickening. Breast pathology can manifest as skin changes—specifically, edema, redness, brawny discoloration, or ulceration—mandating biopsy of the involved skin and underlying breast tissue. The term **excisional biopsy** is usually applied to benign entities and implies the complete removal of the lesion in question (e.g., excision of a fibroadenoma). The term **lumpectomy** is used to characterize cancerous lesions that are removed with a rim of normal breast tissue to achieve tumor-free margins.

Another reason for excisional biopsy is the occurrence of bloody or pathological nipple discharge. The underlying cause of this abnormality is, in most instances, a benign intraductal papilloma or, infrequently, carcinoma. **Ductoscopy** may be used to explore breast ducts that produce abnormal discharge fluid. The ductoscope is a 0.9-mm fiberoptic microendoscope. It is inserted into the duct(s) following progressive dilatation with lacrimal probes. After the intraductal lesion is visually identified, the surgeon injects methylene blue to further guide the duct excision and breast biopsy.

Nonpalpable lesions are usually discovered on routine screening mammography or on diagnostic workup using breast ultrasound or breast MRI. Microcalcifications, masses, densities, and architectural distortion fall into the category of potentially malignant lesions. Breast ultrasound can identify complex cystic or solid masses, and MRI can show areas of abnormal vascular enhancement. In these instances, the breast usually feels and looks normal. Typically, the radiologist places one or more percutaneous hookwires in close proximity to the lesion, using local anesthesia. Later, in the operating room, the surgeon then uses the hookwire(s) as an anatomical guide to locate and excise the area of abnormality. These procedures are referred to as **wire-localization breast biopsies** or **lumpectomies**. In the OR, the surgeon removes the breast tissue surrounding the wire and confirms the removal of the wire and target lesion on specimen radiography and/or ultrasound. Bracket wire localization refers to placement of multiple hookwires to mark the periphery of a larger lesion or multiple lesions so tissue can be removed between the bracketing wires.

Breast biopsies, or lumpectomies, may be performed under local field block or regional anesthesia including paravertebral block combined with intravenous sedation/MAC or with GA. Factors influencing anesthetic technique include size and location of the lesion, multiple lesions, trajectory of the guiding wires, patient preference, or concerns of implant injury for patients who have subglandular implants.

Usual preop diagnosis: Breast mass; nipple discharge; atypical hyperplasia; known in situ, or invasive cancer; mammographic, sonographic, or MRI abnormalities

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Breast Biopsy/Lumpectomy	Wire Localization Breast Biopsy
Position	Supine with ipsilateral arm abducted. Table may be banked to center breast.	⇐
Incision	Over the breast mass, circumareolar, along the inframammary fold or radial	⇐ Incision may or may not incorporate skin entry site of wire.
Special instrumentation	Ductoscope; ultrasound	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (optional)	⇐
Surgical time	0.5–1.5 h	1–1.5 h
Closing considerations	Steri-Strips™ or transparent dressing (Tegaderm™, Opsite™), covered by gauze	⇐ + specimen radiograph result must be obtained before completion of operation.
EBL	< 25 mL	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Breast Biopsy/Lumpectomy	Wire Localization Breast Biopsy
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Seroma: very common Ecchymosis or hematoma: < 10% Infection: 1–2%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Wire transected; Target lesion is missed (may be due to misplacement or dislodging of wire)
Pain score	2–5	2–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	> 15 yr	25–90 yr
Male:Female	Mainly female	⇐
Incidence	Common	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Breast Biopsy and Sentinel Lymph Node Biopsy, p. 663.

SENTINEL LYMPH NODE BIOPSY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Sentinel lymph node biopsy** is a technique applied to patients with invasive breast cancers who do not have clinically pathologic lymph nodes. The sentinel lymph node (SLN) is the first node to drain afferent lymphatics from the particular region of the breast where the cancer is located and is commonly located in the axilla but may be situated in the internal mammary chain or other extraaxillary sites. Because the SLN is the first lymph node to drain lymphatics from a breast cancer, it is the most likely lymph node to harbor metastatic tumor cells. The absence of metastasis on histological examination of SLN predicts tumor-free status of nonsentinel lymph nodes, and this approach avoids conventional Level I and II axillary lymph node dissection in node-negative patients. The technique has been validated in institutional and multicenter studies and in prospective randomized trials.

Two types of agents have been principally tested for lymphatic mapping and sentinel node identification procedures: **vital blue dyes** (1% isosulfan blue or methylene blue) and **99^m-technetium-labeled sulfur colloid** (TSC; unfiltered or filtered). Methylene blue can be used in lieu of isosulfan blue. Different injection sites of these agents may be used: peritumoral or around biopsy cavity, periareolar/subareolar, or in combination. The first method instills 3–5 mL of isosulfan blue subareolar or at 3, 6, 9, and 12 o'clock surrounding the lesion. The breast is massaged, and the axilla is incised 3–7 min later, inferior to the hair-bearing area a few cms inferior to the axillary skin fold, depending on the distance of the tumor to the axilla. Typically, blue afferent lymphatics and blue nodes are identified below the clavipectoral fascia. The surgeon should inform the anesthesiologist when injecting the dye because a transient drop in the pulse oximeter reading of 2–5% is frequently seen, with maximal drop occurring within 20–25 min after injection. This is artifactual due to effects of blue dye spectral absorption, and blood oxygen remains normal. Patients' skin may retain a bluish hue, and the urine, stool, or emesis can be blue for up to 24 h (the patient needs to be advised of this prior to discharge). Allergic reactions consisting of "blue hives" to full-blown, life-threatening anaphylaxis have been reported following the injection of isosulfan blue dye. Methylene blue has a lower incidence of allergic reactions, but can cause skin necrosis if injected undiluted intradermally.

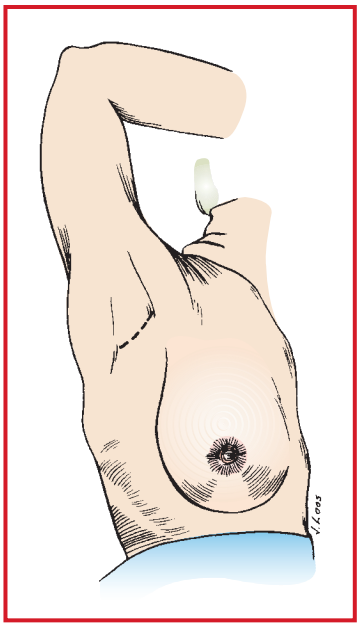


Figure 7.10-1. Arm may be draped into field and positioned on arm board at 90° or suspended over head, as shown. Incision site for lymph node biopsy is indicated by dotted line. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2012.)

Sentinel lymph nodes can also be identified using **TSC** (~1–2 mCi). This agent is usually injected in the nuclear medicine department the day of or the day before the operative procedure. The tracer has very low radioactivity, and no special protection is required around the patient or in handling tissue specimens. Postinjection **lymphoscintigraphy** is considered optional. After induction of GA or regional anesthesia, the operative field (chest and lymph node-bearing areas) is surveyed with a handheld gamma probe (a slim rod, similar to a Geiger counter). The "hot" spot(s), denoting accumulated tracer in lymph nodes, are identified, and an incision is made in the overlying skin. It was previously customary to have a pathologist examine the sentinel node intraop using touch-prep cytology or frozen section to identify node-positive cases for proceeding with standard axillary dissection during the course of the same operation. More recent studies suggest that patients with clinically negative but 1–2 histologically positive sentinel lymph nodes do not have worse outcome if axillary lymph node dissection is omitted.

Combination of blue dye and TSC yields the highest sentinel node identification rates. Whenever the sentinel node cannot be identified, a conventional axillary dissection should be performed. Failure to identify sentinel node either by palpation or above-described techniques mandates proceeding with a standard **level I and II axillary lymph node dissection**. Limiting axillary lymph node dissections is now valid for patients with two or fewer positive sentinel nodes, provided the patient will be treated with postoperative whole breast or regional radiation therapy. **Completion axillary dissection** is performed in mastectomy-treated patients with positive sentinel lymph nodes.

Usual preop diagnosis: Invasive breast cancer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Small transverse or curvilinear axillary incision
Special instrumentation	Handheld gamma-detection probe
Unique considerations	Avoid BP cuff or iv in ipsilateral arm. Possible need to avoid muscle relaxants. Isosulfan blue vital dye → allergic reaction (1–2/100). Methylene blue can cause skin necrosis when injected intradermally but does not cause anaphylaxis.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (optional)
Surgical time	10–30 min, up to 1.5 h for axillary lymph node dissections
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Discoloration of urine and stool up to 48 h (usually gone by 24 hours) Permanent tattooing of skin with blue dye Transient blue staining of skin Allergic reaction to dye or radioisotope: ~1–2% Anaphylaxis: 1/2000
Pain score	2–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	> 25 yr
Incidence	~1/8 American women will develop breast cancer.
Etiology	Unknown in most cases; familial history may be related to genetic mutation (BRCA I & 2).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR BREAST BIOPSY AND SENTINEL LYMPH NODE BIOPSY

PREOPERATIVE

Breast masses may vary in size and depth, which will, in part, determine what type of anesthetic is most suitable for the procedure in these frequently healthy patients. Excisional biopsies can usually be usually accomplished with iv sedation and local anesthesia; however, patient wishes must be considered in the anesthetic plan. The suitability of local/MAC versus GA is best addressed by preoperative discussion with the surgical team. A paravertebral block may be considered for more extensive breast tissue excisions and when a separate incision is made for lymph node removal (see Anesthetic Technique for Mastectomy section, p. 666).

Psychosocial	Patients are likely to be anxious concerning the possibility of breast cancer and should be supported and premedicated appropriately.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P. No testing may be appropriate.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA or local anesthesia + iv sedation are both appropriate techniques. Choice of anesthetic technique depends on the size and depth of lesion and the wishes of the patient. Surgery is typically done on an outpatient basis.

MAC	Propofol infusion (25–100 mcg/kg/min), combination of analgesics (e.g., fentanyl/remifentanil) and anxiolytics (e.g., midazolam), titrated to effect, are most commonly used. Adding Na bicarbonate to 1% lidocaine (1:10) will reduce injection pain. The anesthesiologist may give remifentanil 0.5–1 mcg/kg 90 sec before initial injection of local anesthetic into the skin.	
Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Mask or LMA anesthetic may be appropriate.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxants are not necessary for surgical procedure.	
Emergence	No special considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). If MAC, then monitor adequacy of ventilation and depth of sedation.	Other monitors as clinically indicated. Isosulfan blue vital dye → artifactual ↓ O_2 sat as low as 92–94%.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

Complications	Inadequate analgesia	May have to supplement surgical field block with local anesthetic or convert to GA.
	Isosulfan dye reaction	Pruritus, localized swelling, blue hives. Rx: diphenhydramine (10–50 mg iv). ↓ BP may require epinephrine.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	No specific complications anticipated.	Inform patients that urine, emesis, or stool may be blue for 24–48 h.
Pain management	PO analgesics (see p. C-3)	
Tests	As clinically indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Dooley WC: Routine operative breast endoscopy for bloody nipple discharge. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2002; 9(9):920–3.
2. Edge SB, Byrd DR, Compton CC, et al, eds: *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual*. 7th edition. Springer-Verlag, New York: 2010.
3. Freire AR, White PF: Monitored anesthesia care. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia,* 6th edition. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2005, 2609–11.
4. Guiliano AE, Hunt KK, Ballman KV, et al: Axillary dissection vs no axillary dissection in women with invasive breast cancer and sentinel node metastasis randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2011; 305(6):569–75.
5. Krag DN, Anderson SJ, Julian TB, et al: Technical outcomes of sentinel-lymph node resection and conventional axillary lymph node dissection in patients with clinically node negative breast cancer: results from the NSABP B-32 randomised phase III trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2007; 8(10):881–8.
6. Kuerer HM, ed: *Kuerer's Breast Surgical Oncology.* McGraw-Hill Professional, New York: 2010.
7. Thevarajah S, Huston TL, Simmons RM: A comparison of the adverse reactions associated with isosulfan blue versus methylene blue dye in sentinel lymph node biopsy for breast cancer. *Am J Surg* 2005; 189(2):236–39.
8. Vokach-Brodsky L, Jeffrey SS, Lemmens HJM, et al: Isosulfan blue affects pulse oximetry. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 93:102–3.
9. Wilke LG, McCall LM, Posther KE, et al: Surgical complications associated with sentinel lymph node biopsy: results from a prospective international group trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2006; 13(4):491–500.

BREAST-CONSERVING SURGERY AND MASTECTOMY ± RECONSTRUCTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The treatment of invasive breast cancer has evolved greatly in the last 35 years. **Modified radical mastectomy** refers to removal of the breast and the **axillary lymph nodes;** total mastectomy with **sentinel lymph node biopsy** refers to removal of the breast and the sentinel lymph node(s); and **lumpectomy (partial mastectomy)** and sentinel lymph node biopsy or axillary lymph node dissection refers to removal of the cancer in the breast with a tumor-free margin and the sentinel lymph node(s) or a more complete axillary lymph node dissection, as indicated. All offer equivalent survival for operable, earlier-stage breast cancer. Lymphatic mapping with **sentinel lymph node biopsy** is used in women with clinically negative lymph nodes. Modified radical mastectomy is performed through a single elliptical incision, whereas lumpectomy and sentinel lymph node, or axillary lymph node dissection, are normally done through separate incisions. Postop adjuvant radiation therapy is routinely recommended in breast-conserving surgery and is administered following the completion of adjuvant chemotherapy. For in situ breast cancer, lymphatic mapping and sentinel node biopsy are generally not done with the exception of large or high grade DCIS or in select cases undergoing mastectomy. Newer accelerated and partial radiation techniques are being integrated into breast care, including the insertion of brachytherapy balloons during surgery or administering a single dose of intraop radiation.

In an **axillary dissection,** Levels I and II lymph nodes are removed. These nodes lie behind and lateral to the edge of the pectoralis minor muscle. The Level III, or highest group of axillary lymph nodes, are medial to the pectoralis minor muscle and are not routinely removed unless clinically involved. As part of the axillary dissection, the surgeon preserves the thoracodorsal nerve (innervates the latissimus dorsi muscle) and the long thoracic nerve (innervates the serratus anterior muscle), as well as the blood and nerve supply to the pectoral muscles. The intercostobrachial nerves (sensory to the upper arm) course through the axillary contents and its preservation usually can be accomplished, avoiding the occurrence of permanent dysesthesias. Reverse arm lymphatic mapping may be used selectively in patients undergoing lymphadenectomy in an effort to preserve arm lymphatics and prevent lymphedema. Typically, 3–5 mL of isosulfan blue is injected intradermally and subcutaneously into the upper arm, which is then massaged for five minutes to enhance drainage.

A **total mastectomy** (also known as a **simple mastectomy**) removes only breast tissue. It is done mainly for treatment of extensive duct carcinoma in situ or for prophylaxis in high-risk patients. Total mastectomy may be combined with sentinel lymph node biopsy for treatment of early-stage breast cancer in clinically node-negative patients. **Skin-sparing** or **nipple-sparing mastectomies** are being increasingly performed to improve cosmesis of breast reconstruction. During the mastectomy, the surgeon typically preserves the entire skin envelope, commonly lengthening the duration of the operation. Ischemic skin flaps are a big concern, and techniques such as infrared camera imaging of perfusion using iv indocyanin green may be used. Indocyanin green should be avoided in patients with iodine allergies.

Immediate breast reconstruction is an option for most women undergoing mastectomy. Postop chest radiation may be a relative, but not absolute, contraindication to immediate reconstruction. Two approaches are commonly used: (a) **prosthetic reconstruction** with a temporary tissue expander or a saline-filled implant placed behind the pectoral muscles and (b) **autologous myocutaneous flaps** (see Breast Reconstruction, p. 1153). Truly excellent cosmetic results are possible with mastectomy techniques that preserve much of the breast skin (skin-sparing, areolar-sparing, or nipple-sparing mastectomies). The latter are usually performed through smaller incisions therefore requiring more operative time. Patients who carry BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene mutations are at risk for developing breast and ovarian cancer and may choose to undergo prophylactic bilateral mastectomies, which also lengthens operative duration.

Usual preop diagnosis: Invasive or in situ breast cancer, high-risk patients (e.g., genetic susceptibility to breast cancer; family history of breast cancer)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Modified Radical Mastectomy	Total Mastectomy	Lumpectomy, Axillary Lymph Node Dissection
Position	Supine with ipsilateral arm abducted and may be prepped on field. Avoid brachial plexus stretch. Repositioning may be required (latissimus dorsi reconstruction).	⇐	⇐
Incision	Elliptical oblique or elliptical transverse to include nipple/areola and previous biopsy; periareolar, or "tennis-racquet."	⇐	Incision over breast mass or previous biopsy site. Separate transverse or oblique incision in axilla.
Unique considerations	Avoid iv and BP cuff on ipsilateral arm; many surgeons prefer no paralytics during axillary portion of surgery	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (optional)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–3 h (+ 1–7 h, if immediate breast reconstruction performed); longer for bilateral surgery	1–2 h (+ 1–7 h, if immediate breast reconstruction performed)	1–3 h
Closing considerations	Gauze bandage over incision	⇐	⇐
EBL	150–500 mL, depending on whether scalpel or electrocautery is used.	⇐	25–100 mL
Postop care	PACU → 2 d hospitalization	PACU → 1–2 d hospitalization or occasionally → home	PACU → home

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Modified Radical Mastectomy	Total Mastectomy	Lumpectomy, Axillary Lymph Node Dissection
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Lymphedema: 5–30% (depending on extent of axillary dissection)	⇐	⇐
	Seroma: 25%	⇐	⇐
	Infection: 2–10%	⇐	⇐
	Flap necrosis: < 5%	⇐	
	Hematoma: < 5%	⇐	< 10%
	Injury to axillary neurovascular structures: Rare		
	Pneumothorax: Rare (may occur with attempts to obtain hemostasis of intercostal perforating vessels)	⇐	⇐
Pain score	4–8	4–6	4–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–90 yr (generally > 40 yr)
Incidence	Over their lifetime, ~1/8 of American women develop breast cancer. In 2013, according to American Cancer Society it is estimated, there will be 232,340 new cases of invasive breast cancers in women and 2240 in men; there are also expected to be 64,640 new cases of carcinomas in situ.
Etiology	Unknown in most cases; about 5–10% of female breast cancers and 4–40% of male breast cancers may be related to a gene such as BRCA1 and BRCA2.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients often have no other coexisting medical problems. Consider implications of advanced disease including metastatic spread to lung, brain, liver, and bone, and related debility.

Respiratory	Respiratory compromise can be present if patient has received XRT to the thorax as part of treatment. **Tests:** Consider CXR if pulmonary Sx or signs of disease present. Others as indicated by H&P.
Cardiovascular	Chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., doxorubicin at doses > 550 mg/m^2) may cause significant cardiomyopathies. **Tests:** ECG if > age 60 or if cardiac disease or Sx present. Review any relevant cardiac studies. Consider echo if cardiomyopathy or HF Sx's present.
Neurological	Breast cancer may metastasize to the CNS and can present with focal neurologic deficits, ↑ ICP, or altered mental status. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Look for anemia and thrombocytopenia following chemotherapy. **Tests:** CBC, with differential and Plt count
Laboratory	Other as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or GA with LMA. Regional anesthesia (paravertebral block [PVB]) in breast surgery is associated with less PONV, less postop pain, earlier discharge from the hospital, and less chronic incisional pain.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2)
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). The use of muscle relaxants during axillary dissection should be avoided to permit surgical identification of nerves by nerve stimulator or if electrocautery is used in the axilla.
Emergence	Pressure dressings may be applied with the patient anesthetized and "sitting up" at the end of the procedure. Discuss with surgeons whether they intend to apply this type of dressing, to enable appropriate timing of emergence. Consider PONV prophylaxis (see p. B-6).

Regional anesthesia: Unilateral multiple-level PVB provides satisfactory anesthesia for modified radical mastectomy and lumpectomy with axillary lymph node dissection. A block from T1-T6 is required. Suitable local anesthetics (4–5 mL/level) are 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.5% ropivacaine with 1:400,000 epinephrine. Sedation is useful during block placement and is continued intraop. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Breast Biopsy, p. 663.) PVB is contraindicated for the following reasons: (a) patient refusal, (b) local anesthetic allergy, (c) pathology or previous surgery → anatomic distortion of paravertebral space, and/or (d) infection at sites of injection.

Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal-to-moderate blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 (avoid operative side) NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Others as indicated by patient status. BP cuff on arm opposite surgical site or on leg.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Pneumothorax	Deep surgical exploration may cause inadvertent pneumothorax; monitor patient for Sx (e.g., ↑ PIP, ↓ $PaCO_2$, asymmetric breath sounds, hemodynamic instability). Dx: CXR. Rx: Chest tube and ↑ FiO_2.
Complications 2° PVB	Inadequate block (10%) Pleural puncture Pneumothorax Horner's syndrome Inadvertent epidural spread of local anesthetic	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax Psychological trauma PONV (see p. B-6)	If index of suspicion for pneumothorax is high, maintain oxygenation (100% FiO_2) and ventilation; inform surgeons of the likelihood of the Dx. If patient is hemodynamically stable and not hypoxemic, a portable CXR may aid in diagnosis.
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3) PO analgesics (see p. C-3)	
Tests	Postop portable CXR, if pneumothorax is suspected.	

Suggested Readings

1. Alander JT, Kaartinen I, Laakso A, et al: A review of indocyanine green fluorescent imaging in surgery. *Int J Biomed Imaging* 2012; 940585.
2. Boneti C, Badgwell B, Robertson Y, et al: Axillary reverse mapping (ARM): initial results of phase II trial in preventing lymphedema after lymphadenectomy. *Minerva Ginecol* 2012; 64(5):421–30.
3. Boneti C, Yuen J, Santiago C, et al: Oncologic safety of nipple skin—sparing or total skin-sparing mastectomies with immediate reconstruction. *J Am Coll Surg* 2011; 212(4):686–93; discussion:693–5.
4. Greengrass RA, Duclas R: Paravertebral blocks. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 50(1):56–73.
5. Kairaluoma P, Bachmann M, Rosenberg P, et al: Preincisional paravertebral block reduces the prevalence of chronic pain after breast surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2006; 103(3):703–8.
6. Peled AW, Foster RD, Stover AC, et al: Outcomes after total skin—sparing mastectomy and immediate reconstruction in 657 breasts. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; 19(11):3402–9.

CHAPTER

7.11 Endocrine Surgery

SURGEONS

Julia Park, MD
Dana T. Lin, MD
Ralph S. Greco, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Sara Nikravan, MD
Frederick G. Mihm, MD

EXCISION OF THYROGLOSSAL DUCT CYST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Thyroglossal duct cysts typically are located in the midline at or below the hyoid bone (Fig. 7.11-1). Differential diagnoses after initial physical exam include epidermoid cysts or lymph nodes. Cysts should be removed because of an associated high risk of infection with oral flora and a slight (< 1%) risk of either squamous-cell or papillary-thyroid cancer developing in the cyst itself. A transverse skin incision is made over the cyst, and if the cyst was previously infected and sinus tracts through the skin are present, the skin should be removed along with the cyst. The cyst is identified and followed cephalad to the hyoid bone (Fig. 7.11-2). Then, the midportion of the hyoid bone is resected to minimize recurrence. There may be many small tracts associated with the cyst that tend to attenuate beyond the hyoid bone. The base of the tract or tracts is resected up to the level of the floor of the mouth at the foramen cecum and ligated with absorbable suture (**Sistrunk procedure**). The wound is irrigated copiously and closed in layers. The wings of the hyoid bone are not reapproximated.

Usual preop diagnosis: Thyroglossal duct cyst

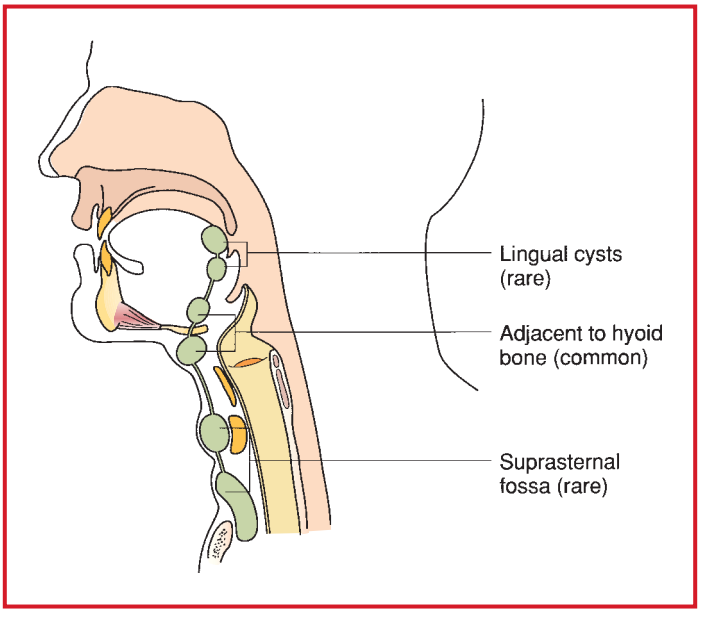


Figure 7.11-1. Location of thyroglossal duct cysts. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with neck in hyperextended position
Incision	Transverse skin incision
Unique considerations	Surgeon may request assistance, by placing finger at base of tongue to identify the cephalad extent of the needed dissection.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
Closing considerations	Careful hemostasis. Coughing may be associated with venous congestion and hematoma formation.
EBL	5–10 mL

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Mortality	< 0.1%
Morbidity	Bleeding: < 5% Infection: < 5%
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6 mo–30 yr (40% present at < 10 yr)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~ 1:3000
Etiology	Persistence of undifferentiated epithelial cells in area of hyoid bone that later become squamous-cell epithelium or glandular tissue

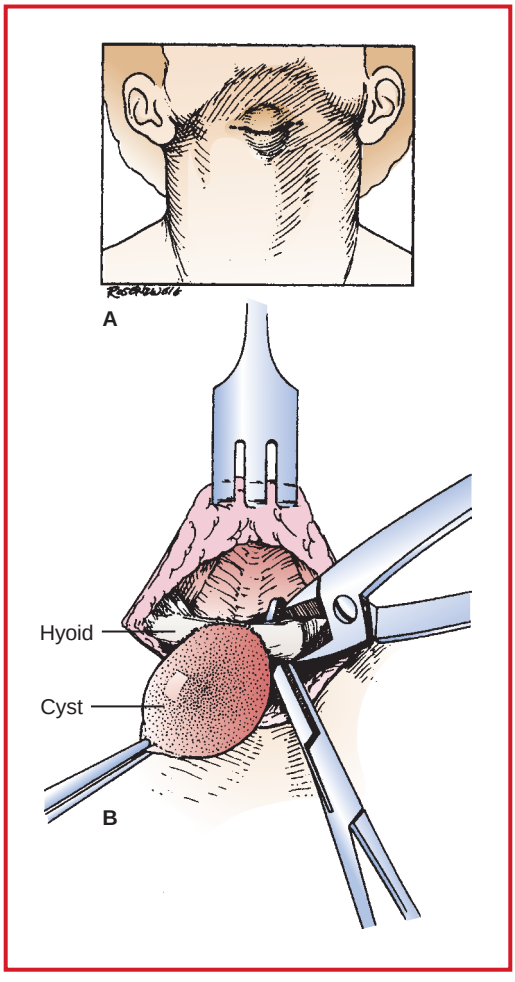


Figure 7.11-2. Thyroglossal duct cyst excision. **A:** Incision placed over presenting cyst; no skin excised. **B:** Cyst has been dissected from surrounding tissues, and hyoid is exposed after division of sternohyoid and thyrohyoid muscles at insertion. The bone is encircled with a short right-angle clamp 1 cm from its midpoint, where it is divided with a bone cutter or cautery. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Thyroidectomy, p. 674.

Suggested Readings

1. Gauger PG: Thyroid gland. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery, Scientific Principles and Practice*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1289–309.
2. Organ GM, Organ CH: Thyroid gland and surgery of the thyroglossal duct: exercise in applied embryology. *World J Surg* 2000; 24(8):886–90.
3. Tracy TF Jr, Muratore CS: Management of common head and neck masses. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2007; 16(1):3–13.

THYROIDECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Thyroidectomy** is performed through a transverse neck incision (Fig. 7.11-3), usually 6–8 cm long. In the **traditional approach,** the platysma muscle is divided sharply and subplatysmal flaps are developed superiorly and inferiorly. The two large anterior jugular veins must be avoided and are occasionally a source of blood loss, although rarely of any hemodynamic significance. Once the flaps are adequately developed, a spring or self-retaining retractor may be placed to expose the midline prethyroid fascia (median raphe). This is divided in the midline to expose the strap muscles, which can then be separated from the thyroid gland.

After the thyroid gland is exposed, resection can proceed. Resection may be total, subtotal (lobe + isthmus ± partial remaining lobe), or lobar. Degree of resection depends on diagnosis and may be modified based on operative findings. During this portion of the operation, hemostasis is critical to maintain adequate visualization. Resection of a lobe usually begins with ligation and division of the middle thyroid vein along the midlateral aspect of the gland (Fig. 7.11-4).

The superior pole is mobilized by controlling and dividing the superior thyroid vessels close to the thyroid capsule to avoid injury to the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve. As the dissection proceeds, care is taken to identify and preserve the superior and inferior parathyroid glands. The lobe is retracted medially to expose the

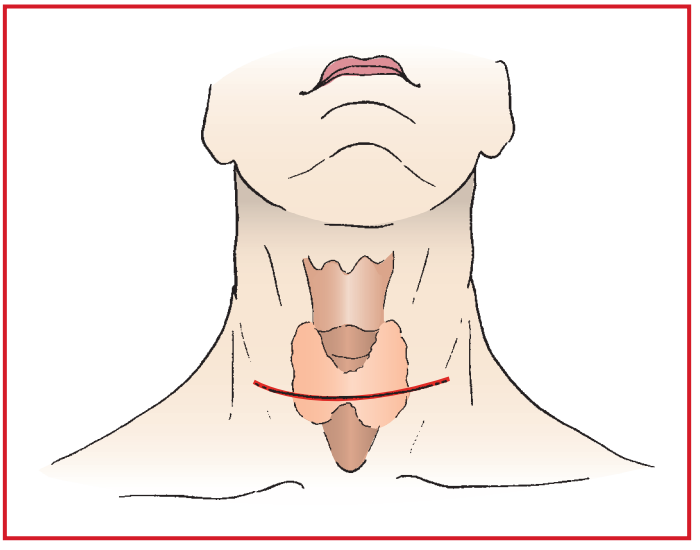


Figure 7.11-3. Transverse incision at base of neck for thyroidectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

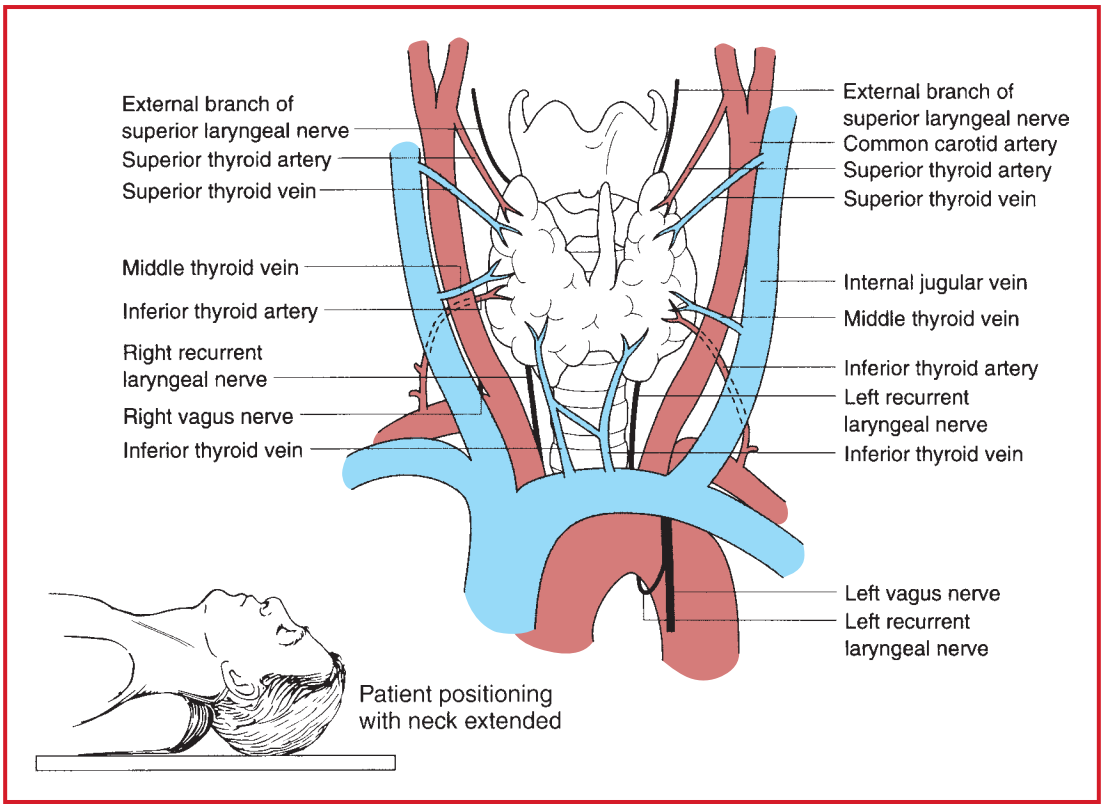


Figure 7.11-4. Vascular relationships to the thyroid gland. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.) **Inset** shows patient positioning with neck extended.

tracheoesophageal groove. The recurrent laryngeal nerve (RLN) is then visualized and traced along its entire course. Its function may be confirmed using a nerve monitor. The gland is gently dissected away from the nerve and then mobilized off the trachea to complete the resection. Any enlarged or suspicious lymph nodes are also excised and sent for pathologic examination. Before closing, hemostasis is ensured and can be tested with a Valsalva maneuver. The midline fascia and platysma are closed using absorbable suture and the skin with a running monofilament suture. The use of drains remains controversial and has not been shown to decrease the rate of hematoma formation.

Minimally invasive techniques, such as video-assisted mini-incision or remote-access thyroidectomy via an endoscopic or robotic approach, have been described but have not gained widespread use. Video-assisted thyroidectomy has been shown to have similar rates of cure with superior voice preservation, improved cosmesis, shortened hospitalizations, and faster patient recovery when compared with conventional open surgery. Remote-access procedures have utilized various entry sites to reach the thyroid, namely, the anterior chest wall, breast, axilla, and post-auricular area through a facelift incision. Remote-access surgery avoids the presence of a cervical scar altogether while offering enhanced visualization and dexterity as well as comparable postoperative outcomes. Limitations that have prevented widespread adoption of these minimally invasive approaches include narrow patient selection criteria (based on the nature, size, and extent of thyroid pathology as well as body habitus), surgeon inexperience, lengthy operative time, and greater cost.

Intraoperative nerve monitoring (IONM) is increasingly being used as an adjunct to identify, dissect, and confirm the function of the recurrent laryngeal nerve. Specialized endotracheal tubes are inserted with surface electrodes contacting the luminal surface of the vocal cords on either side. The electrodes are connected to a monitoring device that continually senses EMG activity of the thyroarytenoid muscles. When the surgeon stimulates the RLN using a probe wired to the monitor, the device detects the electrical impulse from the vocal cords and sounds an audible alert, as well as a visual signal in some systems.

Usual preop diagnosis: FNA findings of definite/suspicious/inconclusive for malignancy; goiter; thyroid cancer (papillary, follicular, medullary, anaplastic); thyroid nodule; hyperthyroidism; Graves' disease

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with head elevated to 30° and neck extended (see Fig. 7.11-4, inset)
Incision	Transverse cervical
Unique considerations	Patients with uncontrolled hyperthyroidism are at ↑ risk for developing thyroid storm during surgery. Hyperthyroidism may be controlled preop with either ß-adrenergic blockade or propylthiouracil. Preop iatrogenic hypothyroidism may be associated with ↓ BP and circulatory collapse during induction of anesthesia.
Antibiotics	None routinely used
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Adequate hemostasis; minimize coughing
EBL	50–75 mL
Postop care	Observe for postop respiratory problems 2° recurrent laryngeal nerve injury (bilateral), hematoma, or ↓ Ca^{++}. Admit × 24 h. ✓ Ca^{++} the night of surgery and the following a.m. Same-day surgery remains controversial 2° delayed discovery of hematoma (16 h) and hypocalcemia.
Mortality	< 0.5%
Morbidity	Hypoparathyroidism (↓ Ca^{++}): 3–5% Hematoma: 1–2% Thyroid storm (usually in association with Graves' disease) Wound infection: 0.2–0.5% Recurrent laryngeal nerve damage Unilateral (hoarseness): 0.77% Bilateral (aphonia, respiratory obstruction): 0.39%
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–80 yr
Male:Female	Overall: 1:8 Cancer: papillary (1:2); follicular (1:3); medullary; anaplastic; lymphoma (1:1)
Incidence	Cancer (uncommon) Benign (relatively common)
Etiology	Cancer (50%): papillary (80%); follicular (10%); medullary (5%); anaplastic (1%); lymphoma (1%) Benign lesions (50%): nontoxic goiter (20%); thyrotoxicosis (10%); thyroiditis (5%); benign nodules (5%); other (10%)
Associated conditions	Other endocrine disorders (e.g., pheochromocytoma in association with medullary thyroid carcinoma in patients with MEN 2A and 2B)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: excision of thyroglossal duct cyst; thyroidectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Hyperthyroidism may be 2° Graves' disease (common), toxic multinodular goiter, thyroid adenomas, TSH-secreting tumor (rare), or overdosage of thyroid hormone. Common Sx are fatigue, sweating, intolerance to heat, ↑ appetite, ↑ HR, ↑ BP, ↑ pulse pressure, ↑ T, weight loss or gain, thyroid goiter, and exophthalmos. Some older patients exhibit apathetic thyrotoxicosis, which is often mistaken for hypothyroidism. CHF and AF are common with these patients. Hypothyroidism may be iatrogenic or 2° autoimmune thyroiditis. Common Sx are intolerance to cold, anorexia, fatigue, weight gain or loss, constipation, ↓ HR, ↓ pulse pressure, ↓ DTR, ↓ T, ↓ mentation. An important aspect of

the preop visit is to ensure that the patient is in a physiologically euthyroid state (✓ T, HR, pulse pressure, reflexes). Patients presenting for thyroidectomy usually are made euthyroid before surgery and may be taking one or more of the following medications: propylthiouracil, methimazole, potassium iodide, glucocorticoids, or ß-blockers.

General: Although cases have been reported describing total thyroidectomy for noneuthyroid patients with worsening cardiac function who have failed aggressive medical therapy (*J Laryngol Otol* 2012 July; 126(7):701–5).

Respiratory

Beware of tracheal compression with large goiters, → tracheal deviation, stridor.
Tests: CXR; consider preop CT scan of neck to evaluate possible tracheal involvement, especially in patients with large goiters.

Endocrine

	T4	T3ru	T3	TSH
Hyperthyroid	↑	↑	↑	Normal or ↓
1° hypothyroid	↓	↓	↓ or normal	↑
2° hypothyroid	↓	↓	↓	↓

Tests: Thyroid function; Ca^{++}; Mg^{++}; phosphate; alkaline phosphatase; glucose

Hyperthyroidism:

Respiratory

↑ BMR → ↑ VO_2 → rapid desaturation on induction.

Cardiovascular

↑ HR, AF (10–40% incidence), palpitations, CHF. A normal resting HR is helpful in determining whether the patient is ready for surgery. If the situation calls for it (e.g., emergency surgery), the patient can be treated with ß-blockers to blunt the sympathomimetic effects of the hyperthyroid state. ß-blocker therapy can be problematic in patients with CHF (titrate while monitoring filling pressures and CO).
Tests: ECG; consider preoperative ECHO for evaluation of LV function.

Neurological

Warm, moist skin, nervousness, anxiety (may require generous sedation), tremor, ↑ DTRs.

Musculoskeletal

Higher incidence of myasthenia gravis and skeletal muscle weakness (↑ sensitivity to muscle relaxants), clubbing of the fingers, weight loss, myopathy
Tests: CK, urine myoglobin, BMP

Hematologic

Mild anemia, thrombocytopenia
Tests: CBC

Gastrointestinal

Weight loss and diarrhea
Tests: BMP + others as indicated from H&P

Laboratory

Other tests as indicated from H&P

Premedication

Midazolam 1–2 mg iv. Continue antithyroid medications preop. Hyperthyroid patients must be made euthyroid before **elective** surgery and may be on the following drugs: propylthiouracil, methimazole, potassium iodide, ß-blockers, and glucocorticoids.

Thyroid storm

A life-threatening exacerbation of hyperthyroidism occurring during periods of stress, which is manifested by hyperthermia (> 40°C), tachycardia, widened pulse pressure, anxiety, altered mental state → psychosis → coma, and myopathy (rhabdomyolysis in 50%; severe in 4%). (Thyroid storm has been mistaken intraop for malignant hyperthermia, sepsis, anaphylaxis, and other hypermetabolic reactions, e.g., neuroleptic malignant syndrome.) Thyroid storm is most often associated with Graves' disease that has been incompletely treated prior to surgery. **General Rx:** ↑ FiO_2; fluid resuscitation; electrolyte replacement/correction (↑ Ca^{++}); cooling blankets; acetaminophen; maintain diuresis (**maintain euvolemia**) if rhabdomyolysis; treat precipitating event (infection, CHF, DKA, pregnancy). **Specific Rx:** propylthiouracil (block synthesis) (200–250 mg po q 4 h); sodium iodide (block release; 1–2.5 g iv); steroids (mechanism unclear)—hydrocortisone (100 mg iv q 8 h), or dexamethasone (4 mg iv q 24 h); ß-blockers (use with caution in patients with reactive airway disease, AV block, or CHF)—propranolol (20–120 mg po q h or 0.25–1.0 mg iv q 5 min), and/or esmolol (50–300 mcg/kg/min). Note: Block synthesis **BEFORE** (1 h is adequate) giving iodides to block release, otherwise "iodine escape" will occur later.

Hypothyroidism:

Respiratory	Beware of tracheal compression with large goiters → tracheal deviation, stridor. ↓ ventilatory response to ↑ CO_2 and ↓ O_2 (caution with opioids and sedatives). **Tests:** CXR; consider preop CT scan of neck to evaluate possible tracheal involvement, especially in patients with large goiters.
Cardiovascular	Bradydysrhythmias, diastolic HTN, pericardial effusions, ECG → ↓ voltage, ST-T wave Δ's, ↑ QT, occasional VT (torsades de pointe—pause-dependent). This type of VT is treated with $MgSO_4$, cardioversion; then isoproterenol or pacing to shorten QT. Thyroid replacement must be weighed against the risk of precipitating myocardial ischemia in patients with known CAD. Diastolic dysfunction, ↓ LV compliance → **cautious** volume expansion. **Tests:** ECG; consider preoperative ECHO for evaluation of LV systolic/diastolic function, pericardial effusion/tamponade.
Endocrine	Addison's disease occurs in 5–10% of patients with severe hypothyroidism; some patients may receive a "stress dose" of steroids (hydrocortisone 100 mg iv q 8 h × 3) in the periop period. **Tests:** Cortisol stimulation test
Neurological	↓ BMR → slow mentation and movement, cold intolerance, ↓ reflexes with "hangup" (delayed relaxation phase)
Musculoskeletal	Arthralgias and myalgias
Renal	Impaired renal function 2° amyloidosis, urinary retention, oliguria. (50% incidence of ↓ Na^+) **Tests:** Consider BUN; Cr; Na^+.
Hematologic	Coagulation abnormalities, anemia **Tests:** CBC
Gastrointestinal	GI bleeding, constipation, ileus **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 1–2 mg iv. (None in the patient who is clinically hypothyroid and requires emergent surgery.) Hypothyroid patients can safely undergo anesthesia/surgery if they have mild-to-moderate disease. Clinically hypothyroid patients (↓ HR, ↓ T, ↓ pulse pressure, ↓ DTRs) should be given thyroid replacement before elective surgery.
Myxedema comma	Severe hypothyroidism constituting a medical emergency, with mortality of > 50%. Manifestations include stupor or coma, hypothermia (which correlates inversely with mortality), hypoventilation with hypoxemia, bradycardia (HR 50–60), hypotension, apathy, hoarseness, and hyponatremia. **Supportive measures:** early intubation and mechanical ventilation; treat ↓ BP with **cautious** volume expansion (risk of pulmonary edema), inotropes (risk of arrhythmias), pacing (carefully, 60–70 b/min) and r/o pericardial effusion, passive rewarming only, especially if ↓ BP (active warming for T < 30°C); correct ↓ Na^+ carefully (risk of Central Pontine Myelinolysis); correct ↓ glucose. **Specific Rx:** L-thyroxine (T_4; 200–500 mcg iv loading dose, 100–300 mcg iv the next day); or tri-iodothyronine (T_3; 20–50 mcg iv q 6–12 h); hydrocortisone (100–300 mg iv q d). T_4 onset is slow (6 h after iv administration) and has to be converted peripherally (slowed in hypothyroid state) to biologically active T_3. Also, T_4 may be converted in some critically ill patients to biologically inactive rT_3 ("reverse T_3"). ↓ TSH level is the earliest sign of response.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Normally, GETA; infrequently, under local anesthesia. If using IONM, insert the specialized endotracheal tube, preferably with the aid of a video laryngoscope, and ensure direct contact of the electrodes with the vocal cords on either side. A short-acting, nondepolarizing paralytic may be given to allow for full relaxation during intubation; however, long-acting neuromuscular blocking agents should be avoided. For inadequately treated hyperthyroid patients, it is important to establish an adequate depth of anesthesia to prevent an exaggerated sympathetic

response to surgical stimulation. Avoid agents that stimulate the sympathetic nervous system (e.g., ketamine, pancuronium, meperidine). Hypothyroidism may be associated with ↑ sensitivity to anesthetic agents and muscle relaxants.

Induction	Standard induction for euthyroid patients (p. B-3). If the patient has airway compromise 2° a large thyroid goiter, consider an awake fiberoptic intubation (p. B-6). If using IONM, intubation via a video laryngoscope allows for both anesthesiologist and surgeon to visualize and confirm the position of the ETT electrodes in relation to the vocal cords.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). Maintain muscle relaxation, except if using IONM (avoid paralytic agents). Use nerve stimulation to guide relaxant dosing.	
Emergence	Airway obstruction 2° recurrent laryngeal nerve damage, tracheomalacia (especially in patients with large destructive goiters), or hematoma can occur. Consider visualizing vocal cord function before extubation.	
Blood and fluid	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h Head-up position	Slight head-up position can help make for a bloodless surgical field without substantially increasing the risk of VAE.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1).	+ others as indicated by patient's status (i.e., pulmonary artery catheter in the setting of emergent surgery in thyrotoxic patients with congestive heart failure). **Maintain normothermia,** especially in hypothyroid patients.
Positioning	✓ pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Supine, with head slightly hyperextended, allows for surgical exploration of the neck.
Complications	Cardiorespiratory depression	In hypothyroid patients, marked ↓ BP and ↓ RR may occur with minimal anesthetic doses.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Recurrent laryngeal nerve damage	Bilateral: patient will be unable to speak and will require reintubation. CPAP may temporize situation and make reintubation less emergent. Unilateral: characterized by hoarseness.
	Tracheomalacia or hematoma with airway compromise	Acute airway obstruction may occur immediately postop, and rapid reintubation may be lifesaving. If airway compromise is 2° hematoma, reopen incision and drain remaining blood; if patient still requires artificial airway, consider CPAP or awake reintubation.
	Acute hypoparathyroid state (hypocalcemia)	Acute hypocalcemia can present as laryngeal stridor (24–48 h postop), although it most often presents with tingling in the fingertips and lips. If untreated and severe, this can progress to tetany and seizures. Administering 1 amp Ca^{++} gluconate given iv over 20 min usually alleviates symptoms. Rx: measure Ca^{++}; replace if necessary. CPAP is effective for airway compromise.
	Thyroid storm	Can mimic MH (see Rx above).
Pain management	PCA hydromorphone or fentanyl Oral narcotic analgesics	
Tests	Vocal cord function	Ability to phonate "e" implies continued vocal cord function.

Suggested Readings

1. Abbas G, Dubner S, Heller KS: Re-operation for bleeding after thyroidectomy and parathyroidectomy. *Head Neck* 2001; 23(7):544–6.
2. Arora N, Dhar P, Fahey TJ III: Seminars: local and regional anesthesia for thyroid surgery. *J Surg Oncol* 2006; 94(8): 708–13.
3. Bhattacharyya N, Fried MP: Assessment of the morbidity and complications of total thyroidectomy. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2002; 128(4):389–92.
4. Fitzgibbons SC, Brams DM, Wei JP: The treatment of thyroid cancer. *Am Surg* 2008; 74(5):389–99.
5. Gauger PG: Thyroid gland. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM et al, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1289–311.
6. Gaz, RD: Hyperthyroidism. In: Cameron JL, ed. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 7th edition. Mosby Inc, St. Louis: 2001, 653–7.
7. Kearney T, Dang C: Diabetic and endocrine emergencies. *Postgrad Med J* 2007; 83(976):79–86.
8. Lee C, Stack BC Jr: Intraoperative neuromonitoring during thyroidectomy. *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 2011; 11(9):1417–27.
9. Linos D: Minimally invasive thyroidectomy: A comprehensive appraisal of existing techniques. *Surgery* 2011; 150(1):17–24.
10. McHenry C: Thyroidectomy for nodules of small cancers. In: Duh QY, Clark OH, Kebebew E, eds. *Atlas of Endocrine Surgical Techniques*. Saunders: 2010, 3–24.
11. Schwartz JJ, Rosenbaum SH: Anesthesia and the endocrine system. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1129–51.
12. Zeiger, MA: Nontoxic goiter. In: Cameron JL, eds. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 7th edition. Mosby Inc, St. Louis: 2001, 642–4.

PARATHYROIDECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The traditional approach for primary hyperparathyroidism requires **four-gland visualization** with removal of any abnormally large glands. Newer methods of localization and confirmation of adenomas have ushered in an era of **minimally invasive parathyroid surgery**. Minimally invasive techniques involve a focused operative dissection via **mini-incision, endoscopic, or robotic approach**. **Focused parathyroidectomy** is aided by the preop localization studies, the mainstays of which are ultrasound and sestamibi scanning. If localization fails to identify the correct gland, then the minimally invasive approach is converted to the standard incision, and all four glands are explored until the diseased gland is identified.

For the standard open operation, an incision in the lower neck (Fig. 7.11-5) is made, and the platysma is divided. Subplatysmal flaps are created superiorly and inferiorly to allow for increased working space and to expose the prethyroid fascia. The midline between the strap muscles is opened, exposing the thyroid gland. The superior parathyroids are located behind the upper pole, which may be mobilized to reveal the parathyroid. The inferior glands are located near the junction of the inferior thyroid artery and the recurrent laryngeal nerve (Fig. 7.11-6). Hemostasis is crucial to maintain adequate visualization in the surgical field. In the traditional approach, all four glands are identified and biopsied for confirmation of parathyroid tissue. Abnormal glands are removed. If four-gland hyperplasia is found, which may occur with multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) 1 or 2A, secondary or tertiary hyperparathyroidism, then either a 3.5-gland parathyroidectomy or total parathyroidectomy with forearm reimplantation is performed.

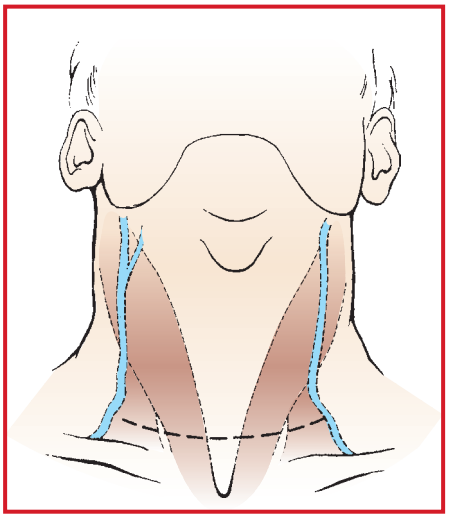


Figure 7.11-5. Skin incision for parathyroid exploration, made 1–2 fingerbreadths superior to sternal notch, as far lateral as the external jugular veins on both sides. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

With preop imaging studies dissection may be limited to the area of suspicion and the abnormal gland or glands are removed. Successful resection is confirmed by observing a 50% decrease in or normalization of the parathormone level 5–10 min after removal, as compared to preop value. This very sensitive assay is rapidly becoming the standard of care in the treatment of primary hyperparathyroidism. The administration of preop methylene blue or radioactive tracers may aid in localizing parathyroid tissue. If the parathyroid adenoma cannot be found, the

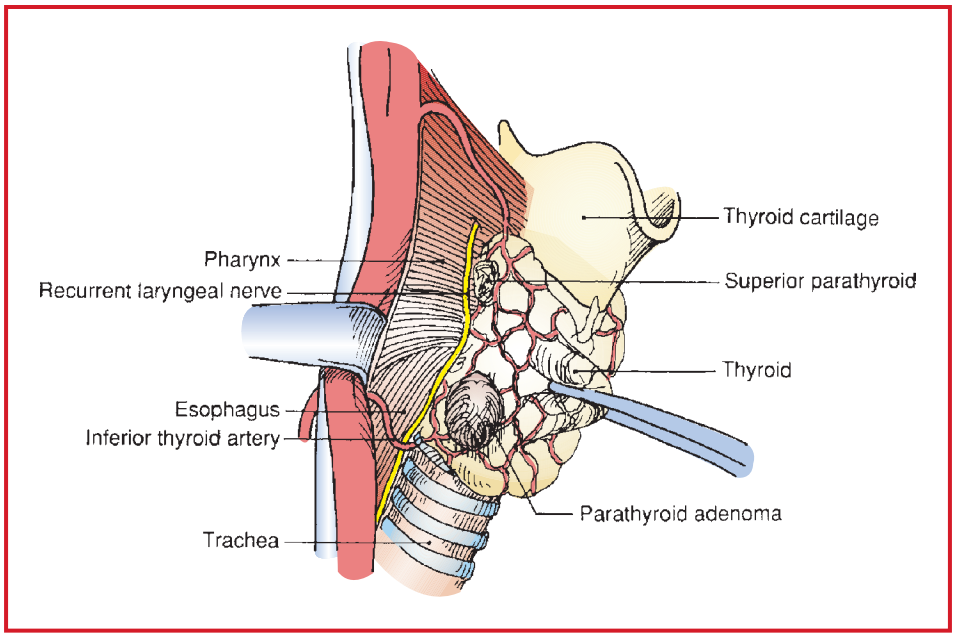


Figure 7.11-6. Identification of upper parathyroid gland on right side. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003).

surgeon should explore other areas of the neck, including the paraesophageal and retroesophageal space, carotid sheath, and thymus. Unilateral thyroid lobectomy may be performed when three normal glands have been found and the fourth gland is missing, as the adenoma may be within the thyroid substance. Mediastinal exploration should not be done on primary exploration.

Intraoperative nerve monitoring (IONM) can be used during parathyroid surgery to assist in identifying and preserving the recurrent laryngeal nerves. IONM is particularly helpful in the reoperative setting for persistent or recurrent hyperparathyroidism.

Variant procedure or approaches: Variations of minimally invasive parathyroid surgery utilizing endoscopic and robotic techniques have been described. Those involving a mini-incision in the neck include video-assisted and totally endoscopic parathyroidectomy. "Scarless" remote-access endoscopic and robotic procedures via extracervical sites are also being performed in select centers. Several studies have demonstrated similar morbidity and cure rates between the video-assisted and traditional approach, with improved visualizations of neck structures, less postop pain, and better cosmetic results. However, cost, lengthy operative time, and surgeon inexperience has limited wide adoption of many of these techniques.

Usual preop diagnosis: Primary hyperparathyroidism due to a single adenoma (most common, 85%), double adenoma, hyperplasia, or carcinoma (very rare, < 1%); secondary or tertiary hyperparathyroidism in patients with a history of renal failure.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; shoulder roll; reverse Trendelenburg or 30° tilt; head rest (gel donut)
Incision	Transverse cervical (4–8 cm; see Fig. 7.11-5)
Unique considerations	Methylene blue (7.5 mg/kg in 500 mL of NS) may be administered in the preop holding area 30 min before surgery → spurious ↓ SpO_2. Radioactive technetium sestamibi (20 mCi) may be administered 60–90 min before operation. Methylene blue and radioactive tracers may be used independently or simultaneously to aid in identification of parathyroid tissue.
Antibiotics	None routinely used
Surgical time	1–2 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Closing considerations	Coughing may be associated with venous congestion and hematoma formation.
EBL	25–50 mL
Postop care	Monitor serum Ca^{++} (nl = 8.5–10.5 mg% total Ca; 1–1.3 mM ionized Ca^{++}). Patients typically admitted for 24 h observation to ✓ serum Ca^{++} levels and monitor for hematoma/airway compromise.
Mortality	< 0.5%
Morbidity	Hypocalcemia: < 15% Hypoparathyroidism: < 5% Hematoma: 1% Infection: 1% Recurrent laryngeal paralysis: < 1%
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Increases with age
Male:Female	4:1
Incidence	50–100/100,000 (1.5/100 in elderly)
Etiology	Single adenoma (85%); double adenoma (2–3%); hyperplasia (10–15%); cancer (< 1%)
Associated conditions	Bone disease (5–15%); duodenal ulcer (5–10%); renal calculi (60–70%); MEN-1 (parathyroid + hyperplasia + pituitary adenoma + pancreatic neuroendocrine tumor); MEN-2A (parathyroid hyperplasia + medullary thyroid cancer + pheochromocytoma); HTN (20–50%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

These patients typically present with hypercalcemia (hyperparathyroidism), which must be controlled before surgery. Although 25–50% of cases are asymptomatic, many will present with a variety of Sx, including fatigue, muscle weakness, depression, anorexia, nausea, constipation, abdominal and bone pain, HTN, renal stones, polydipsia, muscle cramps, bronchospasm, and anxiety. Differential diagnosis for the hypercalcemic patient includes metastatic disease, multiple myeloma, milk-alkali syndrome, vitamin D intoxication, sarcoidosis, hyperthyroidism, thiazide diuretics, adrenal insufficiency, Paget's disease, immobilization, or an exogenous parathyroid hormone-producing tumor.

Respiratory	Hyperparathyroidism is associated with ↓ clearance of secretions from the tracheobronchial tree → postop atelectasis. Avoid respiratory or metabolic acidosis, which will ↑ the free fraction of Ca^{++} → hypercalcemia (↑ BP, ↑ muscle weakness, ↑ HR). **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Airway	Hyperparathyroidism and thyroid nodules often times coexist. Being aware of their presence, size, extension, and effect on the airway is crucial for airway management. (*Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2008; 25(9):772–4).
Cardiovascular	HTN (usually resolves with treatment; if severe or episodic, r/o pheochromocytoma); ECG may show tachycardia with ↓ PR and ↓ QT intervals. Patients may be hypovolemic (2° anorexia, N/V, and polyuria) and have ↑ sensitivity to digitalis + resistance to catecholamines.

Cardiovascular (cont'd)	↓ BP may result from polyuria → hypovolemia. **Preop management** includes correction of intravascular volume and electrolyte abnormalities. Preop treatment of hypercalcemia includes aggressive expansion of intravascular volume, followed by diuresis (**maintain euvolemia**), to ↑ renal Ca^{++} excretion, usually accomplished with iv NS, and then furosemide. Calcium channel blockers (verapamil, nifedipine, diltiazem) can be used. Hypophosphatemia can impair myocardial contractility and should be corrected; hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis can be performed to lower dangerously elevated serum Ca^{++} levels. Mithramycin, calcitonin, bisphosphonates, cisplatin, or steroids are not useful for acute Rx of ↑ Ca^{++} (too slow). **Tests:** ECG; electrolytes; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	Patient may present with seizures, hyporeflexia, mental status changes (somnolence, depression, memory loss, psychosis, coma), or peripheral neuropathy. Significant improvement often follows correction of hypercalcemia.
Musculoskeletal	These patients may have muscle atrophy and weakness, osteopenia, arthralgia, pathologic fractures (take care during laryngoscopy and positioning), osteitis fibrosa cystica. Response to NMBs may be enhanced 2° ↑ Ca^{++} → muscle weakness.
Hematologic	Patients also tend to be hypophosphatemic and may show signs of hemolysis, plt dysfunction, impaired ventricular contractility, and leukocyte dysfunction. **Tests:** CBC with Plt count, PO_4^{-2}
Endocrine	Primary hyperparathyroidism is most commonly due to benign parathyroid adenoma (90%) or hyperplasia (9%) and rarely carcinoma. It may be associated with MEN syndrome. MEN-1 consists of tumors of the pituitary, parathyroid, and pancreatic islets; MEN-2 is characterized by parathyroid tumors, medullary thyroid carcinoma, pheochromocytoma, and mucosal neuromas. ***NB: Anesthetizing a patient with an unrecognized pheochromocytoma could result in a fatality.** **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Renal	Patients may have renal dysfunction 2° nephrolithiasis, nephrocalcinosis, renal tubular disorders, and glomerular disorders. Polyuria 2° ↑ Ca^{++} → electrolyte disturbances. **Tests:** BMP, Mg^{++}
Gastrointestinal	These patients may have constipation, anorexia, N/V, epigastric pain.
Laboratory	Symptoms not related as well to absolute Ca^{++} level but to rate of change. Serum Ca^{++} < 12 mg/dL: likely asymptomatic; 12–14 mg/dL: mild symptoms; > 16 mg/dL: life-threatening. Albumin (↑ albumin by 1 g/dL will ↑ total serum Ca^{++} by 0.8 mg/dL); electrolytes; Mg^{++}; phosphate (usually low).
Premedication	All medications to lower hypercalcemia should be continued unless Ca^{++} levels have normalized. Often, this strategy includes a combination of hydration and diuresis to increase urinary secretion of calcium. If patient has been treated with steroids in the preop period, administer a stress dose (hydrocortisone 100 mg iv q 8 h × 24 h) before induction of anesthesia and continue into the early postop period. Standard premedications (p. B-1) are usually appropriate in this patient group, unless patient has mental status changes.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, with head slightly hyperextended, allows for adequate exposure of the neck. Cervical plexus blocks may be appropriate in selected patients; however, phrenic nerve block → respiratory compromise.

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). If patient is clinically hypovolemic, restore intravascular volume before induction and titrate induction dose of sedative/hypnotic agents. If using IONM, insert specialized ETT (glidescope helpful) and ensure direct contact of the electrodes with the vocal cords on either side. A short-acting, nondepolarizing paralytic may be used to facilitate intubation; however, long-acting neuromuscular blocking agents should be avoided.

Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3), with muscle relaxant titrated to effect. Avoid hyperventilation or hypoventilation (acidosis will ↑ Ca^{++} levels, while alkalosis will ↓ Ca^{++} levels). Maintain adequate hydration and UO throughout the procedure.	
Emergence	No special considerations (see Postop Complications, below).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS @ 5–8 mL/kg/h	Avoid Ca^{++}-containing iv solution (e.g., LR), use Normosol, NS. Surgeon may request blood samples to be drawn for pre- and postexcision PTH levels.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± arterial line	Others as indicated by patient status. Frequent blood samples for PTH are required during a parathyroidectomy.
Positioning	✓ and pad all pressure points ✓ eyes	Patients should be positioned carefully as they tend to be osteopenic and are prone to pathologic bone fractures. Slight head-up position may ↓ blood loss and improve surgical visibility without significantly ↑ risk of VAE.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypocalcemia Hypocalcemic tetany	Hypocalcemia may occur in the immediate postop period. Sx include paresthesias, muscle spasm, tetany, laryngospasm, bronchospasm, and apnea. Rx: oral Ca^{++} supplementation; if severe, 10–20 mL Ca^{++} gluconate 10% over 10 min. Follow levels and repeat therapy until the clinical signs of hypocalcemia are controlled. CPAP is effective for airway obstruction.
	Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury Hematoma with airway compromise	Recurrent laryngeal nerve dysfunction can be monitored by having the patient vocalize the letter "e." Unilateral vocal cord dysfunction results in hoarseness, whereas bilateral vocal cord dysfunction results in aphonia. CPAP is effective for airway obstruction.
Pain management	Oral narcotic analgesics	
Tests	Serial measurements of: Ca^{++} Phosphate Mg^{++} Others as clinically indicated	The lowest Ca^{++} level usually is seen after 4–5 d postop. Follow clinical Sx of hypocalcemia: Trousseau's sign (carpopedal spasm in response to application of a BP cuff at a pressure > SBP for 3 min); Chvostek's sign (contracture of the facial muscles produced by tapping on the facial nerve).

Suggested Readings

1. Abbas G, Dubner S, Heller KS: Re-operation for bleeding after thyroidectomy and parathyroidectomy. *Head Neck* 2001; 23(7):544–6.
2. Bellantone R, Raffaelli M, DE Crea C, et al: Minimally invasive parathyroid surgery. *Acta Otorhinolaryngol Ital* 2011; 31(4):207–15.
3. Carling T, Udelsman R: Focused approach to parathyroidectomy. *World J Surg* 2008; 32(7):1512–7.
4. Doherty GM: Parathyroid gland. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore KD, Doherty GM, eds. *Greenfield's Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006, 1310–33.
5. Gauger PG, Thompson NW: Persistent or recurrent hyperparathyroidism. In: Cameron JL, eds. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 7th edition. Mosby Inc, St. Louis: 2001, 668–71.
6. Greene A, Milas M, Siperstein A: Bilateral neck exploration for primary hyperparathyroidism. In: Duh QY, Clark OH, Kebebew E, eds. *Atlas of Endocrine Surgical Techniques.* Saunders, Philadelphia: 2010, 113–133.
7. Mihai R, Farndon JR: Parathyroid disease and calcium metabolism. *Br J Anaesth* 2000; 85:29–43.
8. Schwartz JJ, Rosenbaum SH: Anesthesia and the endocrine system. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1129–51.

ADRENALECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Adrenalectomy** can be performed via a number of different approaches, each with its own merits. Traditionally, the adrenal glands have been removed with an open incision through either the **transperitoneal** or **extraperitoneal** (flank) approach (Fig. 7.11-8). With some exceptions (see below), **laparoscopic** approaches are becoming the favored methods. Indication in malignant disease or metastasis remains controversial and is currently being evaluated. Relative contraindications include large adrenal adenocarcinomas (> 5 cm), malignant pheochromocytoma, invasive adrenal mass, large adrenal mass (> 8–10 cm), or other contraindications to abdominal laparoscopic surgery (e.g., multiple previous abdominal surgeries). Each approach is discussed individually, but their basic principles remain the same. The anatomy of the retroperitoneum is shown in Fig. 7.11-7.

Open transperitoneal approach: This approach allows for easy access to both adrenals and is preferred for large tumors. A midline or bilateral subcostal incision (Fig. 7.11-8) is used, with the patient in the supine position. The left adrenal is accessed by incising the lateral peritoneal attachments of the spleen. The spleen and tail of the pancreas are reflected medially, Gerota's fascia is incised, and the upper pole of the kidney is separated from the adrenal gland. The left adrenal vein is identified arising from the renal vein and is ligated and divided between ties or using an endovascular stapler. A combination of blunt and sharp dissection is used to fully mobilize and resect the gland. The right gland is exposed by retracting the liver cephalad and taking down the hepatic flexure inferiorly. The duodenum and pancreas are rotated medially to expose the inferior vena cava (IVC). Downward traction is placed on the right kidney and the right adrenal vein is identified entering the IVC. The adrenal vein is circumferentially controlled and divided and the gland is excised.

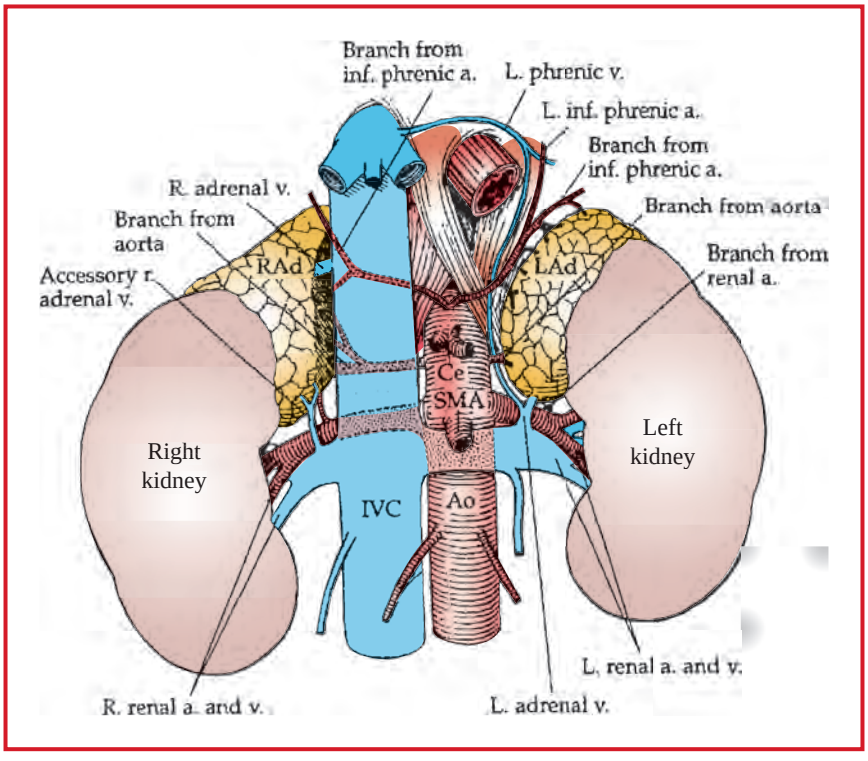


Figure 7.11-7. Anatomic relationships of the adrenal glands. Note the origins of the three main arteries: inferior phrenic, aortic, and renal branches. Note also the single draining veins (except for a small accessory right adrenal vein): the right-located superior and medial, and the left-found inferior and medial. (Ao = aorta; Ce = celiac; LAd = left adrenal gland; RAd = right adrenal gland.) (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

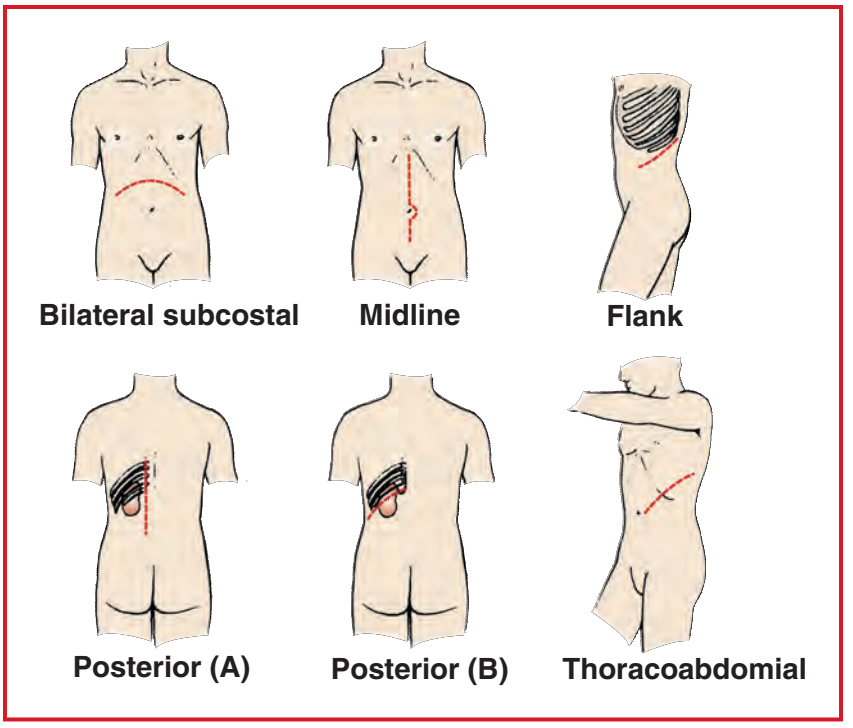


Figure 7.11-8. Potential incisions for adrenalectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Open extraperitoneal approach (flank): Before the advent of laparoscopic surgery, this approach was favored to minimize pain and improve postop recovery of adrenalectomy through the use of a smaller incision and by remaining extraperitoneal. In general, this approach is best used for unilateral, smaller tumors. The patient is placed in the prone jackknife position, and a dorsal curved flank incision is made, exposing the 12th rib. The rib is resected, Gerota's fascia is identified and incised, and the adrenal gland is removed.

Laparoscopic anterior transperitoneal approach: This approach may be used for **bilateral adrenalectomy** with the patient in the supine position. The surgical plan is similar to that of the transabdominal open approach, but is associated with longer operating times and additional trocar sites for placement of more retractors to mobilize the intraabdominal organs.

Laparoscopic lateral transperitoneal approach: This is the preferred approach for adrenalectomy in most centers. The patient is positioned in the lateral decubitus position with the operative site up and is immobilized with a carefully placed beanbag to minimize nerve compression injuries. The patient is prepped for either an open or laparoscopic approach (so that conversion to an open procedure may be done swiftly, if necessary). If both adrenal glands are to be removed, the right is done first, as there is a slightly higher risk of converting to an open procedure because of the proximity of the adrenal vein to the IVC.

For **right adrenalectomy**, pneumoperitoneum is established, and four ports are inserted several fingerbreadths below the costal margin between the midabdomen and midaxillary line (Fig. 7.11–9). Attachments to the right lobe of the liver are divided, and the liver is reflected medially in order to bring the adrenal and IVC into view. The retroperitoneum is incised too close to the IVC to expose the right adrenal vein, which is carefully isolated, clipped, and divided. Dissection of the gland then proceeds out laterally and up superiorly using a laparoscopic energy device. Once fully mobilized, the gland is removed through a laparoscopic retrieval bag.

The **left adrenal gland** is approached in a similar fashion. After placement of the trocars, the lateral splenic attachments are incised and the spleen and tail of the pancreas are rotated medially to expose the anterior surface of the kidney (Fig. 7.11-10), the inferior and medial edges of the gland are mobilized first, allowing for the left adrenal vein to be identified. After the vein is controlled, the remainder of the gland is dissected free and the gland is withdrawn as above.

Laparoscopic retroperitoneal approach: This technique is particularly good for patients who have undergone previous abdominal surgery as it avoids the peritoneal cavity and adhesions altogether. The patient is intubated on the stretcher and positioned prone on the operating table with slight flexion at the hips and knees. Bolsters are placed under the hips and chest to allow space for the abdomen and pannus. Three ports are placed horizontally below the costal margin into the retroperitoneal space. The posterior retroperitoneal plane is developed, separating perinephric and periadrenal fat away from the peritoneum and paraspinous muscles. The inferior border of the adrenal is divided from the superior pole of the kidney, which is rotated inferiorly and medially to help expose the adrenal vein. Medial dissection of the adrenal gland from the paraspinous muscles will reveal the inferior phrenic vein on the left and IVC on the right. These structures further facilitate identification of the adrenal vein, which is ligated and divided with clips or an energy sealant device. Once controlled, the adrenal gland is separated from the filmy attachments to the peritoneum and removed via an extraction bag.

Robot-assisted approach: Both **robotic transperitoneal and retroperitoneal adrenalectomy** have been described. Advantages of the robot include a 3-dimensional view of the operative field, superior ergonomics, and a stable camera platform. Although patient outcomes have been comparable to that of laparoscopic adrenalectomy, training and cost are major drawbacks to the approach.

Usual preop diagnosis: Functioning adrenal tumors (i.e., aldosteronoma, pheochromocytoma, cortisol-producing adrenal tumor), nonfunctioning adrenal lesions (i.e., incidentaloma, angiomyolipoma), solitary adrenal metastasis with otherwise negative metastatic survey, adrenocortical carcinoma.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open Adrenalectomy	Laparoscopic Adrenalectomy
Position	Transperitoneal: supine; extraperitoneal: prone jackknife	Transperitoneal anterior: supine; transperitoneal lateral: decubitus; retroperitoneal: prone
Incision	Transperitoneal: midline or bilateral subcostal (Fig. 7.11-8); extraperitoneal: dorsal flank oblique or curved posterior	Transperitoneal anterior: 4–5 trocar incisions (Fig. 7.11-9); transperitoneal lateral: 3–4 trocar incisions; retroperitoneal: 3 trocar incisions
Special instrumentation	Transperitoneal: Denier or Bookwalter retractor; extraperitoneal: none	Transabdominal anterior/lateral; retroperitoneal: video set-up
Unique considerations	BP monitoring essential for pheochromocytoma patients	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	1–3 h
Closing considerations	Hemostasis; hemodynamic stability	⇐
EBL	100–250 mL	⇐
Postop care	Continue monitoring BP; PACU → ward; ± ICU, based on hemodynamic stability	⇐
Mortality	< 0.5%	⇐
Morbidity	Overall: 1–12% Bleeding: < 10% Pancreatic fistula: < 1% DVT: 0.8% PE: 0.5% Renovascular HTN: < 1% Peroneal nerve palsy: < 1% Venous thrombosis with embolism (Cushing's): 2%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–8	5–6

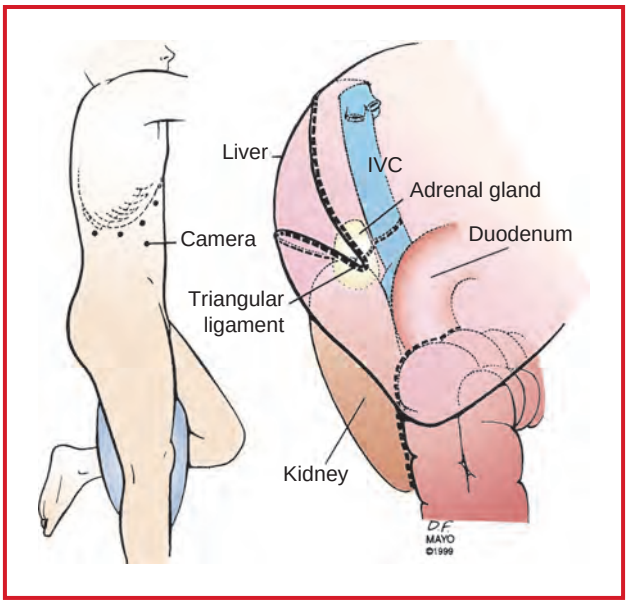


Figure 7.11-9. Port placement for laparoscopic right adrenalectomy. Relevant anatomy is displayed through the right lobe of the liver. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

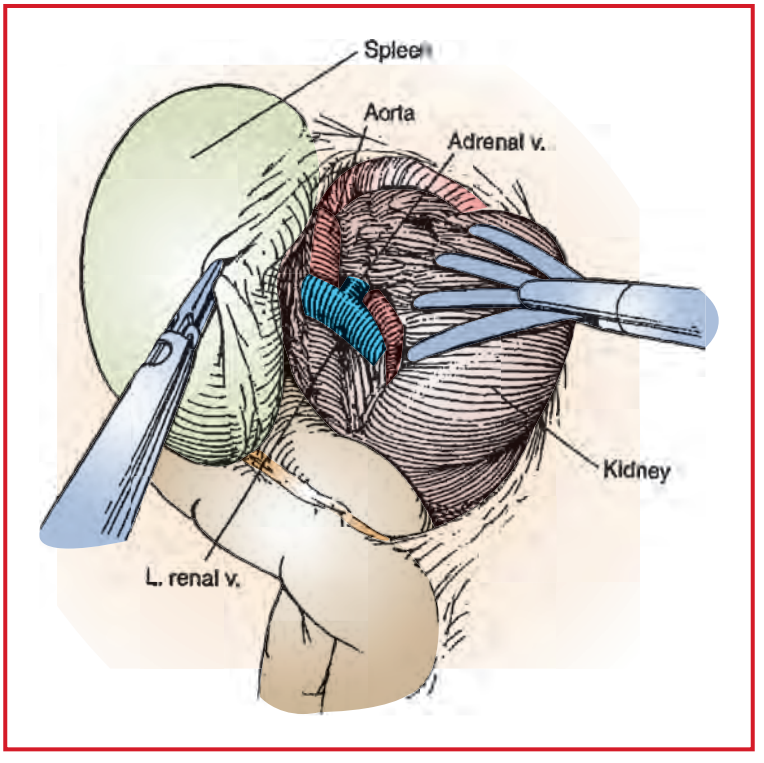


Figure 7.11-10. Exposure of left adrenal after mobilization of the spleen. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	13–75 yr
Male:Female	1:2.8
Incidence	Pheochromocytoma: 0.4–2% of all hypertensive patients Primary hyperaldosteronism: ~4% of all hypertensive patients Cushing's syndrome: 6/1 million
Etiology	Functional cortical adenoma (aldosteronoma, cortisol-secreting tumor), adrenocortical carcinoma, pheochromocytoma (benign or malignant), large nonfunctioning incidentaloma, solitary adrenal metastasis; palliation for persistent Cushing's disease, ectopic ACTH syndrome. Idiopathic bilateral hyperplasia is usually treated medically.
Associated conditions	HTN (75–80%); diabetes mellitus (10–15%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Cushing's syndrome: Hyperadrenocorticism can be due to adrenal hyperplasia, adrenal carcinoma, pituitary hypersecretion (Cushing's disease), hypersecretion from exogenous tumor, or exogenous steroid administration (most common). Adrenalectomy is the traditional treatment for hyperadrenocorticism 2° adrenal carcinoma. These typically moon-faced patients present with one or more of the following: HTN 2° glucocorticoids, renin (usually not severe); renal calculi; osteoporosis; glucose intolerance; personality changes; and myopathy. In addition, a fragile vasculature predisposes these patients to easy bruising and difficult vascular access.

Respiratory	Patient may be obese with all attendant problems of morbid obesity (see Preoperative Considerations in Operations for Morbid Obesity, p. 514). **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	HTN, hypervolemia, dysrhythmias 2° hypokalemia **Tests:** ECG; orthostatic vital signs; consider ECHO to evaluate LV function, if indicated from H&P.
Renal	Excess steroid production → Na^+ retention, K^+ excretion and insulin intolerance (hyperglycemia). **Tests:** UA; creatinine; glucose; urine concentrations of catecholamine metabolites; others as appropriate
Neurological	Psychiatric changes, headache
Musculoskeletal	Striae, muscular wasting, buffalo hump, truncal obesity, thin skin, easy bruisability, osteopenia (compression fractures), weakness
Hematologic	Polycythemia
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Midazolam (1–2 mg iv), consider withhold if morbidly obese

Conn's syndrome: Hyperaldosteronism can be primary (Conn's syndrome–adrenal adenoma or hyperplasia) or secondary (caused by excess renin secretion related to renal dysfunction). These patients are typically hypokalemic and alkalotic → muscle weakness, paresthesias, tetany and polyuria. They may also be hypervolemic → CHF, hypernatremic and hypertensive (diastolic).

Respiratory	Respiratory muscle weakness. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	HTN, dysrhythmias, T wave, + U wave **Tests:** ECG; orthostatic vital signs; consider ECHO to evaluate LV function, if indicated from H&P.
Renal	Renal HTN, polyuria, polydipsia, ↓ K, ↑ Na. Correction of hypokalemia requires > 24 h supplemental K infusion (e.g., 5–20 mEq/h). **Tests:** UA; creatinine; glucose; urine concentrations of catecholamine metabolites; others as appropriate
Musculoskeletal	Conn's syndrome: muscle weakness, tetany, sensitivity to muscle relaxants, osteoporosis
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Spironolactone often given to inhibit excess aldosterone effects. Midazolam (1–2 mg iv); hydrocortisone 100 mg q 8 h.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA (± epidural for postop analgesia). If postop epidural analgesia is planned, placement of catheter prior to anesthetic induction is helpful in establishing correct placement in the epidural space and ensuring a bilateral block (accomplished by placing 5–7 mL of 1% lidocaine via the epidural and eliciting a segmental block). Epidurals cannot be used for a posterior approach because they are in the operative field.

Induction	Gentle iv induction and muscle relaxation (vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg). Patient should be adequately anesthetized prior to any stimulation. Unopposed parasympathetic response to laryngoscopy may → bradycardia/asystole.	
Maintenance	Volatile anesthetic (sevoflurane), opiate, muscle relaxant. N_2O may cause bowel distention and is best avoided. Local anesthetic (2% lidocaine 3–5 mL q 60 min) can be injected into the epidural catheter to provide both anesthesia and optimal surgical exposure (contracted bowel and profound muscle relaxation). A continuous infusion of local anesthetic (e.g., 2% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine) at 3–5 mL/h may enhance hemodynamic stability. Some anesthesiologists will not use the epidural catheter intraop because chemical "sympathectomy" is more difficult to reverse. If epidural opiates are used for postop analgesia, a loading dose (e.g., hydromorphone 0.4–1.0 mg) should be administered at least 1 hour before the conclusion of surgery. Systemic sedatives (opiates, benzodiazepines, etc.) should be minimized during this type of anesthetic as they increase the likelihood of postop respiratory depression.	
Emergence	Depends on ease of the surgical procedure and the hemodynamic stability of the patient intraop. If patient is hemodynamically unstable, hypothermic, or has a large 3rd-space fluid requirement, consider postop ventilation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large fluid loss. IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 10–15 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids. ± Cell Saver Central line	As blood loss can be significant, blood should be immediately available. If procedure does not involve cancer, cell-saving devices can be utilized. Guide fluid management by EBL, known volume deficits, UO, and filling pressures/CO if available.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) UO	Others as clinically indicated. Forced air warmer useful for maintaining body temperature.
Complications	Labile HTN	Surgical manipulation of the adrenal may cause ↑↑ BP and dysrhythmias. Rx: Alert surgeon and control BP with esmolol/SNP.

Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Strict attention to patient positioning, padding, and taping are important in patients with glucocorticoid excess because of osteopenia and thin, easily traumatized skin.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax Hypoglycemia Hypoadrenocorticism after tumor resection Cushing's syndrome: Hypoventilation 2° to obesity (hypoxemia, hypercarbia) HTN	Dx: pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea, ↑ RR, ↓ breath sounds, hypoxemia, lethargy or altered mental status. Frequent glucose checks and CXR. Treat with glucose, O_2, chest tube, and reintubation as necessary. Consider glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement—hydrocortisone 100 mg q 8 h.
Pain management	Epidural analgesia (p. C-3) PCA (p. C-3)	Patient should be recovered in an ICU or ward accustomed to treating the side effects of epidural opiates (e.g., respiratory depression, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus).
Tests	CXR; ECG; electrolytes; glucose	

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA

Pheochromocytoma: Tumors of chromaffin tissue origin release massive amounts of catecholamines (norepinephrine > epinephrine) and are responsible for the patient's clinical presentation. The tumor is usually found unilaterally in one of the adrenal glands, but also can be found anywhere in the body that chromaffin tissue arises (e.g., urinary bladder, sympathetic chain). There is an increased incidence of pheochromocytoma in certain diseases (multiple-endocrine neoplasia II, neurofibromatosis, tuberous sclerosis, Sturge-Weber syndrome, von Hippel-Lindau disease).

These patients require extensive preop preparation, consisting of α-blockade (phenoxybenzamine 40–400 mg/d) and should ideally be monitored closely by the anesthesiologist who is to provide the intraop management. In contrast to its use in essential HTN, ß-blockade is not indicated to control hypertension in patients with pheochromocytoma and is dangerous when used alone. When used alone, ß-blockade may cause serious hypertension, ↓ CO, intense vasoconstriction → CHF, organ ischemia, and shock (unopposed α-agonism). Patients with tachydysrhythmias may require ß-blockade to control reflex tachycardia but only after institution of α-blockers. Titration of adrenergic blockade may take 2–8 wk and should be titrated to relief of all episodic symptoms (HAs, sweating, palpitations) and control of blood pressure. Patients should receive their effective α-blocker dose for 1–2 wk before surgery. Inadequate preop preparation will increase the perioperative morbidity of patients with pheochromocytomas. The adequacy of medical therapy is assessed by the absence of symptoms of catecholamine excess, and BP in the normal range. "Resetting" of autoregulation, including cardiac "recovery" from catecholamine-induced myocarditis/cardiomyopathy and organ recovery from ischemia, may be an important process that prepares the patient to tolerate the surgery and posttumor removal period. It is anticipated that some degree of postural hypotension will be observed during titration of phenoxybenzamine. A max BP of = 150/80 (usually much better than this can be achieved) in the 36 h preceding surgery, SBP dropping by > 15% on standing, but not less than an absolute BP of 80/45; no ST-T wave changes, and resolution of episodic symptoms, for 2 wk prior to surgery is the goal. There is no rush to surgery.

Respiratory	Cardiogenic pulmonary edema
Cardiovascular	Paroxysmal/continuous HTN, tachydysrhythmias, orthostatic hypotension, hypovolemia, myocardial dysfunction, cardiomyopathy, ventricular ectopy, ↓ intravascular volume, ↓ sensitivity of α and β (cardiac)-receptors to normal levels of catecholamines, CHF, acute myocarditis. **Tests:** ECG; ± CK/TP enzymes, orthostatic vital signs; ECHO to evaluate LV function and mitral valve, and r/o cardiomyopathy (hypertrophic, takotsubo, dilated, etc.)

Renal	HTN from excess catecholamine state may damage kidneys; hyperglycemia. **Tests:** UA; creatinine; glucose; HbA_{1c} urine concentrations of catecholamine metabolites; others as appropriate
Neurological	Sx include: Tremulousness, headache, anxiety, nervousness, personality changes, psychosis (rare), paresthesia in arms, hypertensive retinopathy, dilated pupils.
Musculoskeletal	Weight loss, weakness, fatigue
Hematologic	Polycythemia 2° hemoconcentration (common) or tumor erythropoietin production (rare)
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	± Midazolam (0.025–0.05 mg/kg iv). Preop steroid replacement if bilateral adrenalectomy is contemplated.

Anesthetic technique: GETA: Establish invasive hemodynamic monitoring (arterial and PA lines) PRIOR to induction using iv fentanyl (50–200 mcg) and generous local anesthesia. (This is not difficult, can be done safely with ultrasound, and provides all hemodynamic information to the anesthesiologist from the start; it also lets the anesthesiologist pay attention to the patient at the start of the anesthesia/surgery, rather than being distracted with placing invasive lines after induction). Femoral or axillary arterial pressure monitoring is preferred over radial artery because of the concern over monitoring "central" arterial pressures in a patient who may experience high catecholamine levels during surgery with intense vasoconstriction. If postop epidural analgesia is planned (open surgical procedures), placement of catheter prior to anesthetic induction is helpful in establishing correct placement in the epidural space and ensuring a bilateral block (accomplished by placing 5–7 mL of 2% lidocaine **without epinephrine)** via the epidural and eliciting a segmental block. Administering epidural narcotic (hydromorphone 0.4–1.0 mg) prior to skin incision will enhance preemptive analgesia effect if lidocaine test dose is not used. Epidural catheters cannot be used for a posterior approach because they are in the operative field. Epidurals are not indicated for laparoscopic procedures. Epidurals block neurally mediated sympathetic responses and may → ↓ tumor release of catecholamines, but do not block catecholamine release resulting from direct surgical manipulation of tumor. Local anesthetic-induced sympathetic block after tumor resection may compound ↓ BP at this important stage in the operation.

Induction	Gentle iv induction (titration to effect with propofol) and muscle relaxation (vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg or rocuronium 0.8 mg/kg). Deep mask GA prior to laryngoscopy. Consider double DL with LTA spray (4% lidocaine, 4 mL).
Maintenance	Volatile anesthetic (isoflurane, sevoflurane), opiate (hydromorphone), muscle relaxant. Most patients who undergo laparoscopic surgery are able to be extubated at the end of the case, so use of sedatives (opiates, benzodiazepines, etc.) should be minimized during this type of anesthetic to avoid postop respiratory depression. **Intraop HTN Rx:** 1. Na^+ nitroprusside 0.5–3.0 mcg/kg/min 2. Fenoldopam 0.1–1 .5 mcg/kg/min 3. Nitroglycerin 0.5–10 mcg/kg/min $MgSO_4$, (1–2 g iv) may provide some additional BP control. The surgeon may need to interrupt the tumor manipulation to control BP. **Intraop Arrhythmia Rx:** Esmolol is **not** used to control htn, but can be used (50–300 mcg/kg/min) for controlling reflex tachycardia from the above agents or excessive β stimulation from tumor-released catecholamines. Amiodarone (150 mg bolus, then infusion 1 mg/min) may be needed for supraventricular/ventricular ectopy (especially with epinephrine-secreting tumors). **Hypotension (after tumor removal) Rx:** 1. anticipation → fluid loading prior to tumor removal 2. fluid resuscitation based on PA pressures, TEE, stroke volume response, SvO_2 3. inotropes (epinephrine) if ↓ CO 4. vasopressor (vasopressin) if ↓ MAP with normal or ↑ CO Good communication with surgical team is very important, especially when the adrenal gland is being mobilized, and when the tumor veins are being ligated.

Emergence	Depends on ease of the surgical procedure and the hemodynamic stability of the patient after tumor removal. If patient is hemodynamically unstable, hypothermic, or has a large 3rd-space fluid requirement, consider postop ventilation, as with any other surgical case. Most cases done laparoscopically can be extubated.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Prepare for large fluid loss (unusual). IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 10–15 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids. ± Cell Saver	As blood loss may be significant (esp with R sided tumors–near IVC), blood should be available. Guide fluid management by UO, filling pressures, CO, TEE, SvO_2, PPV, SVV. ? safety of cell saver blood if tumor margins breached
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) UO Arterial line (femoral/axillary) CVP/± PA catheter with continuous $ScvO_2$ or SvO_2 ± TEE	Forced air warmer useful for maintaining body temperature. The use of TEE may be helpful in establishing fluid depending on other monitors used.
Complications	↑↑↑ BP and dysrhythmias ↓↓ BP (postexcision—most dangerous part of anesthetic)	Surgical manipulation of the tumor will cause ↑↑ BP ± dysrhythmias. Rx: Control BP with SNP/fenoldopam/TNG and HR with esmolol and alert surgeon if you need him to interrupt dissection. ↓↓ BP common after removal of tumor. May be severe and life-threatening. Rx: anticipate event; fluids, vasopressin, or epinephrine infusions depending on need for inotropic support. Standard vasopressers (phenylephrine) may not be effective in face of residual α-blockade.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax	Dx: pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea, ↑ RR, ↓ breath sounds, hyperresonance to percussion on side of ptx, hypoxemia. ✓ CXR. Rx: O_2; chest tube and reintubation as necessary.
	Hypoglycemia	Return of normal insulin sensitivity can cause profound hypoglycemia. Rx: anticipate + use D5LR as maintenance fluids.
	Hypoadrenocorticism after tumor resection (usually only with bilateral tumors)	Consider glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement → hydrocortisone 100 mg q 8 h.
	HTN	Patient may have other cause for HTN (e.g., essential HTN).
	Hypotension Myocardial dysfunction Pulmonary edema	Continue vasopressor/inotropes, fluids as indicated. Patient should be recovered in ICU overnight.
Pain management	Epidural analgesia (p. C-3). PCA (p. C-3).	After leaving an ICU, patients with epidurals should be recovered on a ward accustomed to treating the side effects of epidural opiates (e.g., respiratory depression, breakthrough pain, nausea, pruritus).
Tests	CXR; ECG; electrolytes; close glucose monitoring q 1–2 h × 12 h	

Suggested Readings

1. Brunt LM: Laparoscopic adrenalectomy. In: Cameron JL, eds. *Current Surgical Therapy,* 7th edition. Mosby Inc., St. Louis: 2001, 1460–7.
2. Colen TY, Mihm FG, Mason TP, Roberson JB: Catecholamine-secreting paragangliomas: recent progress in diagnosis and perioperative management. *Skull Base* 2009; 19(6):377–85.
3. Kebebew E, Siperstein AE, Clark OH, et al: Results of laparoscopic adrenalectomy for suspected and unsuspected malignant adrenal neoplasms. *Arch Surg* 2002; 137(8):948–53.
4. Mihm FG: Pheochromocytoma: decreased perioperative mortality. *Anesth Clin North Am* 1998; 16(3):645–62.
5. Nigri G, Rosman AS, Petrucciani N, et al: Meta-analysis of trials comparing laparoscopic transperitoneal and retroperitoneal adrenalectomy. *Surgery* 2013; 153(1):111–9.
6. Olson JA: Adrenal gland. In: Mulholland MW, Lillemore ED, Doherty GM eds. *Greenfield's Surgery, Scientific Principles and Practice,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1334–53.
7. Schwartz JJ, Rosenbaum SH: Anesthesia and the endocrine system. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1129–51.
8. Taskin H, Berber E: Robotic adrenalectomy. *J Surg* Oncol 2012; 106(5):622–5.
9. Witteles RM, Kaplan EL, Roizen MF: Safe and cost-effective preoperative preparation of patients with pheochromocytoma. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 91:302–4.

CHAPTER

7.12 Liver/Kidney/Pancreas Transplantation

SURGEONS

Amy E. Gallo, MD (*Kidney, pancreas transplantation*)
Marc L. Melcher, MD, PhD (*Kidney, pancreas transplantation*)
Dev M. Desai, MD, PhD, FACS (*Liver transplantation*)
Carlos O. Esquivel, MD, PhD (*Liver transplantation*)

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Timothy Angelotti, MD, PhD (*Kidney, pancreas transplantation, multiorgan procurement*)
Hendrikus J. M. Lemmens, MD, PhD (*Liver transplantation*)

KIDNEY TRANSPLANTATION—CADAVERIC AND LIVE-DONOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Kidney transplantation offers patients with end-stage renal disease (ESRD) freedom from dialysis. The source of the renal graft may be a cadaveric donor, a relative (e.g., parent, sibling) or a genetically unrelated donor such as a spouse, friend, or person through paired donor exchange.

After induction of anesthesia, a 3-way Foley catheter is placed into the bladder. The kidney allograft is placed in the extraperitoneal iliac fossa. A curvilinear incision is made in the right or left lower quadrant. The retroperitoneal space is developed by retracting the peritoneum medially and cephalad exposing the iliac vessels. A self-retaining retractor is usually placed to maintain exposure. The external iliac artery and vein are identified and surrounding lymphatics are ligated and divided. Several centimeters of the vessels are mobilized. The external iliac vein is clamped first and the renal-vein-to-iliac-vein anastomosis is performed. Then the external iliac artery is clamped and an artery-to renal-artery anastomosis is performed. The clamps are then released starting with the renal vein. (Fig. 7.12-1). The patient should be euvolemic at this point; mannitol and/or furosemide can be given. The bladder is filled with an antibiotic irrigation solution to facilitate the implantation of the ureter. The spatulated ureter is anastomosed to the mucosa of the bladder. The detrusor muscle is then reapproximated over 3–4 cm of ureter to create an antireflux valve. The wound is closed, normally leaving native kidneys intact.

Variant procedure or approaches: Cadaveric or live-donor transplantation

Usual preop diagnosis: ESRD

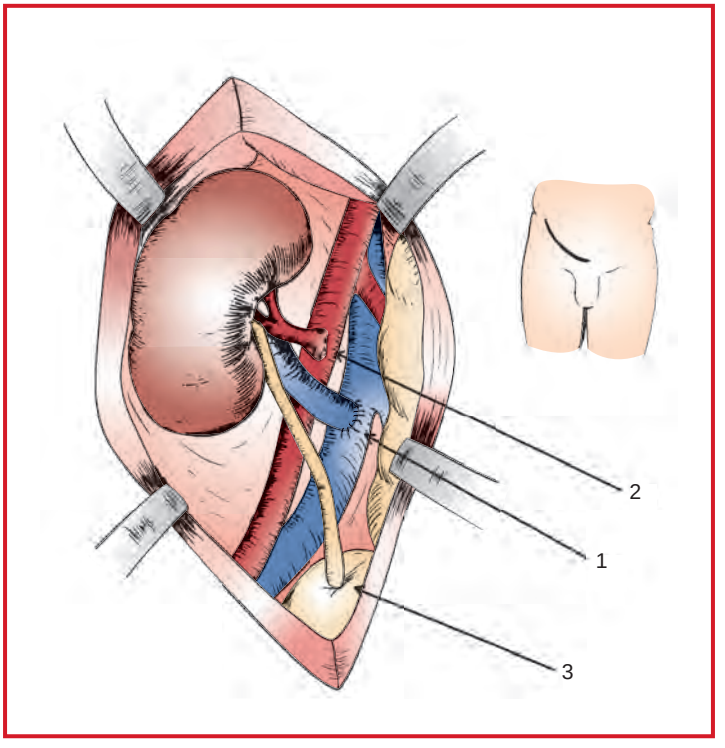


Figure 7.12-1. Sketch of a kidney transplant labeled 1, 2, 3 in the order of the surgical anastomoses. 1-renal vein to external iliac vein; 2-renal artery to external iliac artery, and 3-ureter to bladder. The **inset** shows the lower quadrant curvilinear incision. (Paul Gallo, DDS).

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Cadaveric Kidney	Live-Donor Kidney
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Lower quadrant curvilinear (Fig. 7.12–1 inset)	⇐
Special instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor; vascular instruments; CVP; Foley catheter (3-way)	⇐
Unique considerations	CVP 10–12 mm Hg; mannitol 12.5–25 g; intraop immunosuppression before reperfusion (steroids, antilymphocyte preparation); potassium-free iv fluid; protection of shunt or fistula important.	⇐
Antibiotics	Pipercillin/tazobactam 3.375 g iv, within 1 h preop	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv, 1 h preop
Surgical time	1.5–3 h	2–3 h
EBL	100–200 mL	⇐
Postop care	Replace UO mL/mL with i.v. fluids; may have delayed graft function 2° prolonged cold storage; ICU selectively	Fluid replacement; delayed graft function unlikely; ICU selectively
Mortality	1–2%	⇐
Morbidity	Lymph or serous leak/stenosis: 3–5% Postop bleeding: 3–5% MI: 2–3% Ureteral leak/stenosis: 2–3% Wound infection: 2–3% Arterial thrombosis: 1–2% Venous thrombosis: 1–2% Wound hematoma: 1–2% Other infectious complications: 15–40%	⇐ 1–2% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–70 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	60/1,000,000
Etiology	Diabetes mellitus (45%); HTN (20%); polycystic disease and others (20%); glomerulonephritis (15%)
Associated conditions	CAD (40%); HTN (25%); uremic and/or diabetic neuropathy (25%); hyperparathyroidism (15–20%); SVC syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Cadaveric Kidney/Pancreas Transplantation, p. 698.

Suggested Readings

1. Kahan BD, Ponticelli C: *Principles and Practice of Renal Transplantation.* Martin Dunitz, Ltd., London: 2000.
2. Morris PJ: *Kidney Transplantation.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2001.
3. Odorico JS, Sollinger HW: Technical and immunosuppressive advances in transplantation for insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *World J Surg* 2002; 26:194–211.

CADAVERIC KIDNEY/PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Pancreas transplantation:** Combined kidney and pancreas transplantation not only provides renal replacement for the Type I diabetes patient with end-stage renal disease (ESRD), but also controls diabetes. Over 80% or more of pancreas transplants are performed in combination with kidney transplantation from the same donor (**simultaneous kidney/pancreas transplant [SPK]**). Pancreas transplantation also can be performed for patients who have already received a kidney transplant (**pancreas after kidney [PAK]**). Less commonly, pancreas transplantation is done for patients with brittle diabetes or with impending complications while they still enjoy normal or near-normal kidney function. Immunosuppression regimen for pancreas transplantation is generally more aggressive than that used for kidney transplantation, and induction therapy with antilymphocyte preparation (ATG, IL-2 blockers) is commonly used.

The pancreas transplant is placed in the right iliac fossa, and the kidney transplant is placed in the left iliac fossa. This can be done through a transperitoneal lower midline incision or through two separate extraperitoneal lower-quadrant incisions in the same manner as kidney transplantation. The graft is first prepared on the back table. For arterial in-flow, a Y-graft is fashioned using the donor iliac artery bifurcation. The portal vein coming off the pancreatic graft is anastomosed to the external iliac vein. The Y extension vascular graft is then anastomosed to the recipient external or common iliac artery. The donor duodenum is anastomosed to a loop of small bowel or to the urinary bladder to drain the exocrine secretions (Fig. 7.12-2A). With pancreas transplantation, there may be significant blood loss if the graft mesenteric vessels are not occluded properly. After the pancreas is implanted, the kidney transplant is placed into the opposite iliac fossa (as described in Kidney Transplantation, p. 694).

Variant procedure or approaches: The pancreas may be placed in the upper abdomen with the portal vein anastomosed to the superior mesenteric vein. The exocrine secretions are bowel-drained. This more physiologic approach, however, is associated with a higher technical failure rate and requires a long upper midline incision (Fig. 7.12-10). Pancreatic islet cells may be infused via a radiological **portal vein approach,** a procedure that is usually performed in the radiology/angio suite.

Usual preop diagnosis: ESRD 2° diabetes mellitus (DM)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; cushion heels
Incision	Midline or bilateral lower quadrant
Special instrumentation	Thompson retractor; vascular instruments; Foley catheter; NG tube; CVP; arterial line
Unique considerations	Do not correct hyperglycemia < 300 mg/dL. Maintain adequate hydration, CVP 10–12 mm Hg; mannitol 0.25–0.5 g/kg on unclamping; intraop immunosuppression before reperfusion (125–250 mg methylprednisolone, monoclonal or polyclonal preparation [e.g., ATG, Zenepax, OKT3, Simulect]).
Antibiotics	Pipercillin/tazobactam 3.375 g iv q 6 h × 5 d; fluconazole 200–400 mg (nl creatine clearance)
Surgical time	4–6 h
EBL	250–500 mL
Postop care	ICU × 1–2 d, hourly monitoring of glucose; serum glucose should decline by 50 mg/dL each hour and remain < 200 mg/dL.
Mortality	2%
Morbidity	Thrombosis of graft: 5–10% Postop bleeding: 5–10% Wound infection: 2–6%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity (cont'd)	Pancreatitis: 2–4% Anastomotic leak: 1%
Pain score	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–55 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	15–20% of all patients with ESRD
Etiology	Type I diabetes
Associated conditions	Retinopathy (100%); uremic and/or diabetic neuropathy (50%); CAD (25–50%); gastropathy (25%); hyperparathyroidism (15–20%)

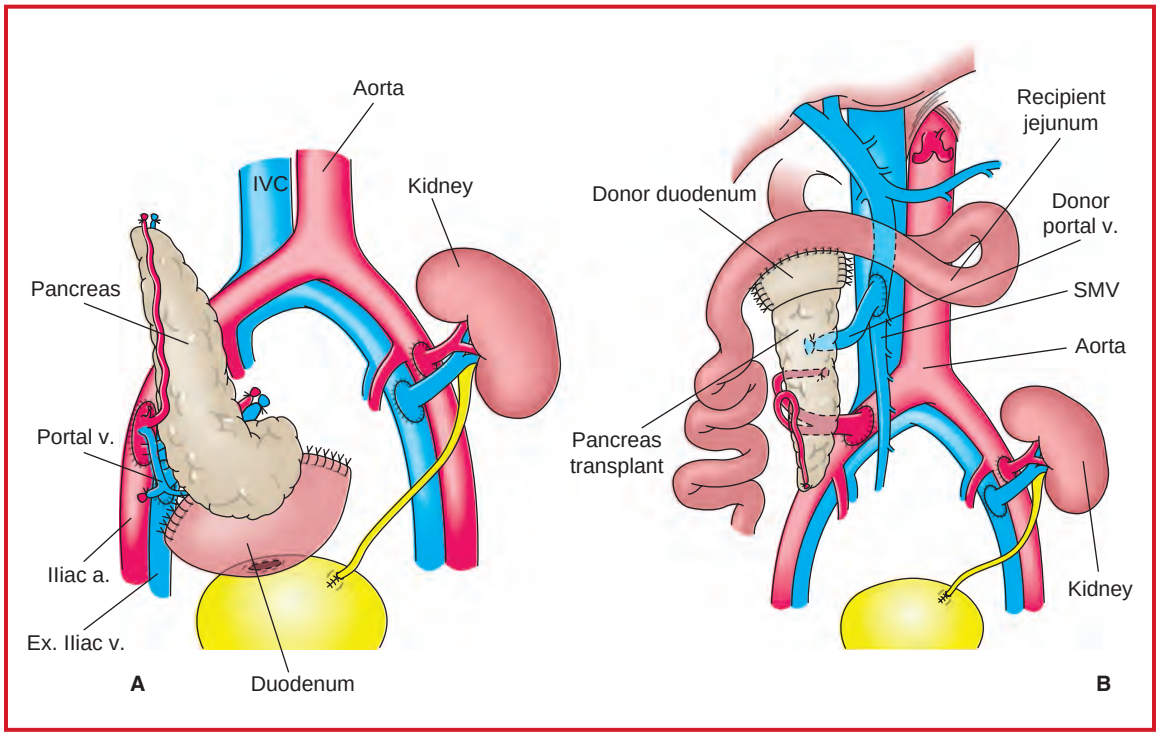


Figure 7.12-2. **A:** SPK transplantation, with drainage of pancreatic exocrine secretions into the bladder. Note that portal vein drains into iliac vein (systemic venous [SV] drainage). In normal individuals, 50% of secreted insulin is extracted from the circulation in the first pass through the liver. Transplant recipients with SV have peripheral insulin levels 2-2½ × higher than normal. **B:** SPK transplantation with drainage of pancreatic exocrine secretions into the proximal jejunum (enteric drainage [ED]). This technique has been adopted for SPK by most transplant centers in the United States for solitary pancreas transplantation, most centers still utilize ED to allow monitoring of the urinary amylase. Note that donor portal vein drains into the recipient superior mesenteric vein (portal venous [PV] drainage) preventing peripheral hyperinsulinemia. Most centers continue to place the pancreas in the pelvis, combining ED and SV, which requires enteric anastomosis to a more distal segment of jejunum or ilium. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR KIDNEY AND KIDNEY/PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, patients presenting for renal transplantation fall into two patient populations: (1) the young and relatively healthy (following dialysis), or (2) an older, more chronically ill group. Rarely, patients will present for transplant surgery without adequate preparation (e.g., ↑ K^+, ↓ pH, hypervolemia). Patients presenting for pancreas transplantation are usually severe diabetics with many of the associated problems, such as CAD, autonomic neuropathy, gastroparesis, and stiff-joint syndrome (difficult intubation).

Respiratory	Pleuritis and pleural effusions may occur in this patient population. Increased susceptibility to infection is common in the patient with chronic uremia.
Cardiovascular	Pericarditis (acute or constrictive), HTN, CHF, dysrhythmias, pericardial effusion are common, especially in the undialyzed patient. Diabetes, a common cause of ESRD, is often associated with PVD, CAD, and autonomic neuropathy. **Tests:** ECG (rhythm, CAD, electrolyte abnormalities, pericarditis, LVH). Other tests (ECHO, stress, etc.) as indicated from H&P.
Gastrointestinal	Gastroparesis may occur, especially in diabetic patients with autonomic neuropathy. Consider full stomach precautions. Ranitidine (50 mg iv) and metoclopramide (10 mg iv) should be given 60 min preop to aid gastric emptying and ↓ acidity.
Renal	Patients are usually on dialysis. Postdialysis goals include: K^+ = 4–5 mEq/L, BUN < 60 mg%, creatinine < 10 mg%. Metabolic acidosis, hypocalcemia, and hypermagnesemia often present and may require preop correction. Patients may be hypovolemic following dialysis; ✓ pre- and postdialysis weight (> 2 kg loss is significant). Rapid correction of severe hyperkalemia can be achieved by giving 50 mL of 50% glucose iv, together with 10 U regular insulin and 50 mEq NaHCO. Further correction can be obtained by coadministration of an inhaled β-agonist (e.g., albuterol; 5–10 puffs). **Tests:** Cr; BUN; creatinine clearance; electrolytes
Hematologic	These patients are frequently anemic. Preop correction usually not needed. A coagulation disorder may be present with abnormal Plt function (improved by dialysis) as well as thrombocytopenia, resulting in a prolonged bleeding time. There is a high incidence of posttransfusion hepatitis in this patient population. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; Plt count; hepatic screen, consider platelet function assay.
Endocrine	Assess glycemic control preop. Individualize diabetic Rx for day of surgery. In general, hold oral agents 12–24 h, and ↓ or hold usual insulins, and consider sliding scale insulin day of surgery. Favor hyperglycemia (≥ 120–200 mg/dL) over tight glucose control. Preop/intraop corticosteroid immunosuppressive Rx will likely → hyperglycemia. Postop glycemic management complex and dynamic. **Tests:** Serial glucose levels
Neurologic	Peripheral neuropathy may occur, and specific deficits should be documented. Autonomic neuropathy can → cardiac problems (e.g., orthostatic hypotension, ↑ HR, or ↓ HR), silent MI, and GI problems.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA favored. Spinal, epidural, or combined spinal-epidural anesthesia may be considered for renal transplantation, if coagulation and platelet function acceptable. Ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric and intercostal nerve blockade can be utilized as an alternative method for postop pain control. Avoidance of hypotension after organ(s) transplantation is an important consideration that may limit effectiveness of RA techniques.

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5). ET intubation is aided by succinylcholine (1 mg/kg), if K^+ < 5.5 mEq/L; otherwise, use cisatracurium (0.2–0.5 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg). Fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg) may be used to suppress the cardiovascular response to intubation.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Maintain muscle relaxation with cisatracurium or rocuronium, titrated to effect using a nerve stimulator. Avoid meperidine (accumulation of normeperidine → CNS toxicity). Anticipate prolonged drug effects, and avoid agents that are primarily excreted by the kidney.	
Emergence	Usually extubated in the OR after protective laryngeal reflexes have returned. Ensure adequate reversal of NMB's drugs. Pancreatic transplant patients (e.g., brittle diabetics, hemodynamically unstable) are sent to the ICU for close glycemic management.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1 NS/colloid to keep CVP = 10–15 mm Hg Warm fluids	Preop fluid status is highly variable (hypo→hypervolemia). Give fluids to maintain CVP 10–15 mm Hg. Important to maintain adequate vascular volume and BP. Mannitol (0.25–1 g/kg), furosemide (5–20 mg), and low-dose dopamine are often given with reperfusion of the kidney.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line CVP/PA line Hct, K+, and glucose Neuromuscular	Arterial pressure is often monitored. Avoid the side of AV fistulae. Axillary artery is a useful alternative. CVP is essential, and a PA line is needed occasionally (severe cardiac disease). CVP is kept at 10–15 mm Hg, especially after the new kidney is reperfused, to ensure adequate renal blood flow. In pancreatic transplant patients, glucose should be checked q 30 min and then q 10 min for the first h following reperfusion. Keep glucose < 300 mg/dL prior to reperfusion, but do not fully correct to < 150 mg/dL. Monitor neuromuscular block to avoid excessive use of neuromuscular relaxants; anticipate prolonged effects.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Protect/pad AV fistulas	 Pressure on AV fistula may lead to thrombosis. Document bruit q15 minutes.
Complications	Disruption of renal anastomoses Hemorrhage Low UO Reperfusion injury (pancreas transplant)	Bucking or coughing during emergence, due to inadequate neuromuscular blockade, may → forceful tugging on transplanted kidney. This "popping" of kidney may → disruption of venous and arterial anastomoses and possible ischemic damage requiring urgent surgical revision.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Fluid overload and CHF Femoral neuropathy Hemorrhage Electrolyte abnormalities Hypo/hyperglycemia PONV VTE	Monitor UO. Dialysis may be needed until renal function returns. Sudden cardiac arrest can complicate pancreatic transplantation (due to autonomic neuropathy). Especially dynamic in pancreas tx See p. B-6. See p. B-8.

Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3). Epidural	Anticipate prolonged effect of some opiates. Strive to avoid hypotension.
Tests	Hct Electrolytes Cr, BUN Amylase Glucose	A rise in amylase and blood glucose may indicate failure of the pancreatic transplant.

Suggested Readings

1. Hadimioglu N, Ertug Z, Bigat Z, et al: A randomized study comparing combined spinal epidural or general anesthesia for renal transplant surgery. *Transplant Proc* 2005; 37(5):2020–2.
2. Halpern H, Miyoshi E, Kataoka LM, et al: Anesthesia for pancreas transplantation alone or simultaneous with kidney. *Transplant Proc* 2004; 36(10):3105–6.
3. Lemmens HJM: Kidney transplantation: recent developments and recommendations for anesthetic management. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2004; 22(4):651–62.
4. SarinKapoor H, Kaur R, Kaur H: Anaesthesia for renal transplant surgery. *Acta Anaesthesio Scand* 2007; 51:1354–67.
5. Shoeibi G, Babakhani B, Mohammadi SS: The efficacy of ilioinguinal-iliohypogstric and intercostal nerve co-blockade for postoperative pain relief in kidney repair recipients. *Anesth Analg* 2009; 108(1):330–33.

LIVE-DONOR NEPHRECTOMY—LAPAROSCOPIC AND OPEN

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Use of a kidney donated by a healthy genetically or emotionally related donor greatly increases the number and quality of kidneys available for transplantation. Kidney transplantation from living donors is associated with a better patient and graft survival rate. **A laparoscopic (LSC) approach** for kidney donation was introduced in 1995 as an alternative that would reduce postop pain, wound morbidity, and recovery time associated with open nephrectomy. Now the LSC approach is the procedure of choice for more than 75% of the live kidney donations in the United States. Initial concerns regarding ureteral complications and longer warm ischemic time have mostly subsided with the improvement of the surgical technique and greater experience. The left kidney is preferred for the LSC approach, as the renal vein is longer. Some centers use the LSC approach for the right kidney with comparable results.

The patient is positioned in lateral decubitus over a cushioned beanbag, the kidney rest is slightly elevated, and pillows and an axillary roll are used to prevent compression injuries. Three or four ports are used for the pure laparoscopic approach. The hand-assisted approach, however, has gained popularity over the years and is currently the preferred technique of the majority of Transplant Centers in the United States. In this approach two or three ports are used with a 6–8 cm incision made at the level of the umbilicus or infra-umbilical. The pneumoperitoneum is kept < 15 mm Hg to avoid decreased perfusion to the kidney. Aggressive hydration and intermittent use of iv mannitol help improve kidney perfusion. On the left side, the descending colon and spleen are mobilized medially; the renal vessels are exposed; the adrenal, lumbar, and gonadal veins are clipped and divided; the ureter is mobilized en bloc, along with the gonadal vein, down to the pelvic inlet. The artery is freed from surrounding lymphatic and neural tissue as it comes off the aorta (Fig. 7.12-3). Gerota's fascia is mobilized to completely free the kidney. The ureter is transected distally. If the procedure is done purely laparoscopically, a 6-cm suprapubic incision is then made, the peritoneum is exposed in the midline, and an 18-mm port is used to insert a 15-mm Endocatch retrieval bag. The kidney is placed in the bag as it continues to be perfused, avoiding warm ischemia. With the hand-assisted approach the incision is already made for retrieval with the surgeon's hand. The patient is fully heparinized. An endo TA vascular stapler is used to staple and transect the artery close to the aorta and the vein close to the vena cava. An endo GIA

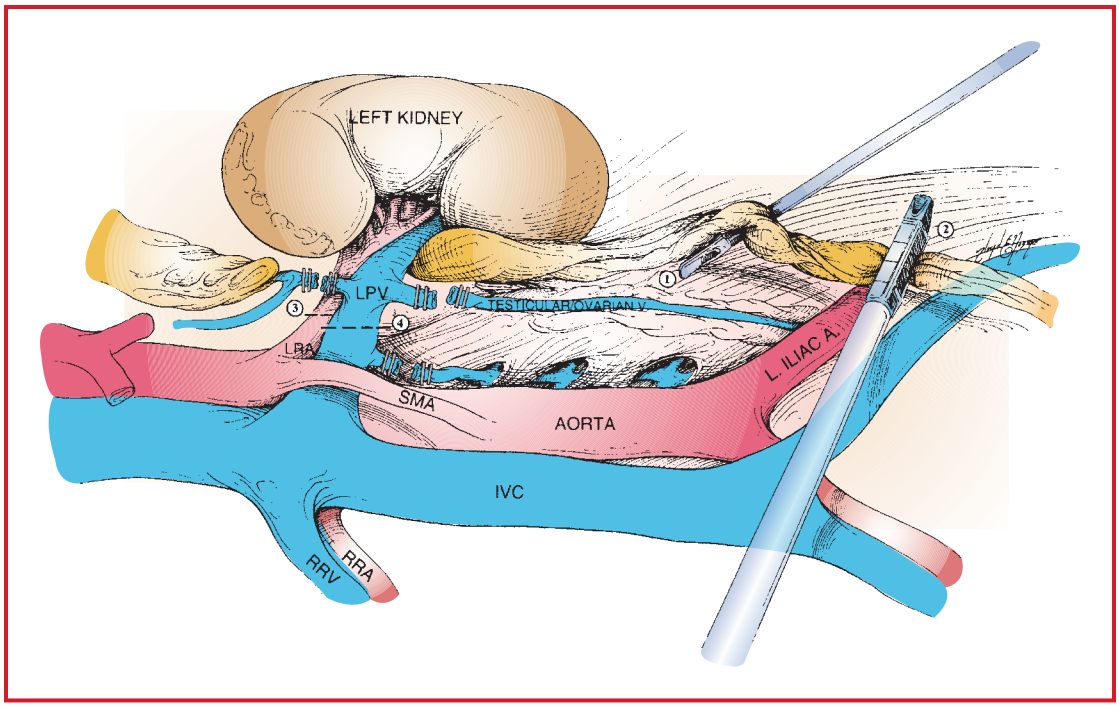


Figure 7.12-3. Anatomy for laparoscopic live-donor nephrectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Cho ES, Flowers JL: Laparoscopic live-donor nephrectomy. In: Zuker KA, ed. *Surgical Laparoscopy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

vascular stapler can also be used. The kidney is brought to the suprapubic incision and gently extracted. The kidney is immediately immersed in cold slush. The kidney is perfused with preservation solution in the usual manner. The heparin is reversed with protamine, the suprapubic incision is closed, and homeostasis is verified before extracting the ports. For a right nephrectomy, the right colon and duodenum are mobilized medially and the liver is retracted upward. The remainder of the operation is as described for the left kidney.

In **open nephrectomy,** the **donor/patient** is placed in a lateral decubitus position on a flexible OR table with a kidney rest. A beanbag or sandbags are also helpful for positioning. An incision is made from the rectus muscle, angling slightly cephalic to cross into the flank just below the tip of the 12th rib. The retroperitoneum is exposed using a Thompson retractor. The kidney is then mobilized, and the ureter is transected. A clamp is placed across the renal artery at the aorta and the renal vein at the IVC. Just before clamping the renal artery, furosemide and/or mannitol may be given to stimulate diuresis. It is important to keep the vascular volume expanded in these patients before kidney removal. The kidney is removed and taken to the back table, where it is flushed with a cold preservation solution. It is then transported into the recipient room for reimplantation. Some surgeons use a full dose of heparin (75 U/kg) before clamping and use protamine afterward. Smaller incisions and muscle-sparing incisions are now used to improve postop recovery.

Usual preop diagnosis: Donor nephrectomy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Laparoscopic Nephrectomy	Open Nephrectomy
Position	Lateral decubitus	⇐
Incision	3–4 ports; retrieval incision, Pfannenstiel's or vertical suprapubic	Flank; may require 12th rib resection

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Laparoscopic Nephrectomy	Open Nephrectomy
Special instrumentation	Foley catheter; flexible OR table with kidney rest; beanbag; SCDs for DVT prophylaxis; harmonic scalpel	Foley catheter; Thompson retractor; flexible OR table with kidney rest; beanbag or sandbags; SCDs for DVT prophylaxis
Unique considerations	Avoid ETT dislodgement when turning patient from supine to flank position; vigorous hydration.	Possible pneumothorax; avoid ETT dislodgement when turning patient from supine to flank position. Vigorous hydration to encourage urine production.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv	Cefazolin 1–2 g, iv
Surgical time	2.5–4.5 h	2–2.5 h
Closing considerations	–	Delfex table to facilitate closure
EBL	Minimal	100 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward; PCA for pain management	PACU → ward; PCA for pain management
Mortality	< 0.1%	⇐
Morbidity	Ileus: 2–5% Urinary retention: 2–5% Wound infection: 1–2% Bleeding: 0.1–0.5%	5–10% 5–10% 1–3% Pneumothorax: 1%
Pain score	3–5	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–70 yr	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐
Incidence	Up to 50% of all kidney transplants at some centers	⇐
Etiology	N/A	⇐
Associated conditions	Good health is mandatory for kidney donation.	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Kidney Transplant Nephrectomy, p. 704.

KIDNEY TRANSPLANT NEPHRECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: With improvements in graft survival and immunosuppressive therapy, the necessity of removing a kidney transplant graft for uncontrolled rejection has decreased significantly. This operation is divided into categories: **early nephrectomy,** performed during the first month posttransplant, and **late nephrectomy,** thereafter. **Early transplant nephrectomy** may be required for primary nonfunction, vascular thrombosis, and, rarely, refractory rejection. In these cases, an **extracapsular approach,** through the original transplant incision, is used.

The kidney is freed from the surrounding adhesion to obtain vascular control of the renal artery and renal vein. These structures are clamped and oversewn individually. The ureter is ligated as close as possible to the bladder and excised completely, with primary repair of the bladder. A suction drain is used if minimal oozing or lymph drainage is present. **Late transplant nephrectomy** is performed most commonly for acute, irreversible rejection with failure of the renal allograft. Most of these patients have returned to dialysis, and the immunosuppressive medications are stopped. Chronic infection and HTN associated with nonfunctional grafts are also an indication for surgical removal of the kidney allograft. It may be a difficult operation, as intense inflammatory adhesions are present between the renal capsule and the surrounding tissue. In the setting of acute late rejection, the graft is usually swollen and enlarged. Hematuria may be present, and the graft is friable. Spontaneous rupture and hemorrhage have been reported. The surgical approach is through the same incision as the implantation. In contrast to early transplant nephrectomy, extracapsular dissection may not be possible with late nephrectomy. To avoid injury to extrarenal structures, such as the iliac vessels, an **intracapsular approach** may be preferred. The kidney is mobilized gently from within the capsule toward the hilum. The capsule is reopened on the medial side to have access to the renal vessel high in the hilum. When the hilum is sufficiently mobilized, a strong vascular clamp is applied high in the hilum of the kidney away from the iliac vessels. After clamping the hilum en bloc, confirmation of distal pulses is obtained; then the kidney is excised over the vascular clamp. A running suture is used over the clamp, which is then released, and hemostasis is obtained. The ureter is identified and excised as close as possible to the bladder. The intracapsular dissection of the kidney may be associated with significant bleeding, as the kidney may fracture. This step should be done expeditiously to avoid excessive bleeding. The patient must have good vascular access for fluid resuscitation. Blood must be available for transfusion. After hemostasis is obtained, a low-pressure suction drain may be placed before closing.

Usual preop diagnosis: Transplant rejection

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Previous incision used for kidney transplant
Instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor; vascular instruments
Unique considerations	Large-bore vascular access; PRBCs available; stress dose of steroids, if chronic usage; protection of shunt or fistula
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–2.5 h
EBL	200–1000 mL
Postop care	PCA for pain management → PACU → ward
Mortality	1–3%
Morbidity	Overall: 3–5% Wound infection: 3–5% Abscess formation: 1–2% Exsanguinating hemorrhage: < 1%
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–75 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	60/1,000,000
Etiology	Failed kidney transplant
Associated conditions	CAD (40%); HTN (25%); uremic and/or diabetic neuropathy (25%); hyperparathyroidism (15–20%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR LIVE-DONOR AND POSTTRANSPLANTATION NEPHRECTOMY

PREOPERATIVE

In order to be a live donor, one must be in good health with bilaterally functional kidneys. Diabetes, HIV infection, liver disease, and malignancy are all contraindications to kidney donations.

Cardiovascular	Assess for HTN and CAD.
Renal	Normal bilateral renal function is required. **Tests:** IVP; Cr, creatinine clearance
Fluid status	Adequate hydration is important, and UO should be > 1.5 mL/kg/h. Various regimens are used to ensure adequate hydration, usually with iv fluid starting the night before.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv. Organ donors are making a great sacrifice and should be treated with special care. Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural for postop pain management. Epidurals are not necessary for most laparoscopic donor nephrectomies.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Avoid long-acting, renally excreted drugs. Ventilate to maintain normocapnia to avoid possible renal artery vasoconstriction. Use of an epidural with local anesthetic and/or narcotic may aid both intraop and postop pain relief, but ↓ BP should be avoided.	
Emergence	Routine extubation in OR	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga ×2 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/h Warm fluids UO ≥ 1.5 mL/kg/h	Aim for a minimum of 1.5 mL/kg/h UO. Mannitol (0.25–1 g/kg) given iv once kidney is being manipulated, and if UO decreases. Consider dopamine infusion to ↑ BP as needed. Limit use of direct vasoconstrictors.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	CVP or invasive arterial monitoring are rarely required. Lower extremity NIBP measurements on the same side as implant will be inaccurate during period of iliac vessel clamping.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hemorrhage Pneumothorax	Because the vessels are tied close to the aorta and IVC, the possibility of severe hemorrhage exists. Pneumothorax is always possible, especially when the 12th rib is resected.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax/pulmonary problems Hemorrhage Infection PONV (see p. B-6) Electrolyte abnormalities VTE (see p. B-8) Ileus

Pain management	Epidural narcotics (see p. C-3). Avoid hypotension. PCA (see p. C-3).
Tests	CXR Hct. electrolytes, BUN/Cr

Suggested Readings

1. Lemmens HJM: Kidney transplantation: recent developments and recommendations for anesthetic management. *Anesth Clin North Am* 2004; 22(4):651–62.
2. Morris PJ: *Kidney Transplantation.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2001.
3. Odorico JS, Sollinger HW: Technical immunosuppressive advances in transplantation for insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *World J Surg* 2002; 26:194–211.
4. Sener M, Torgay A, Akpek E, et al: Regional versus general anesthesia for donor nephrectomy: effects on graft function. *Transplant Proc* 2004; 36(10):2954–8.

LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Liver transplantation is the treatment of choice for patients with acute and chronic end-stage liver disease (ESLD). Patients with ESLD, besides intrinsic liver dysfunction, also may have other organ system disease including hepatorenal and hepatopulmonary syndrome resulting in oliguria and hypoxia, respectively, and hepatic hydrothorax. Patients with alcohol-mediated cirrhosis and Wilson's disease are at risk for significant cardiomyopathy, whereas those with fulminant hepatic failure may have significantly elevated intracranial pressures. These additional comorbidities present an added level of complexity to the anesthetic and surgical management of the liver transplant recipient. The liver transplant operation can be divided into three stages: **(1) hepatectomy; (2) anhepatic phase,** which involves the implantation of the liver; and **(3) postrevascularization,** which includes hemostasis and reconstruction of the hepatic artery and common bile duct. There are many variations in the technical aspects of the liver transplant operation that may result in physiologic changes during anesthesia. The anesthesiologist must be aware of these technical variations to optimize the intraoperative management of the liver transplant recipient. Examples of these variations include cross-clamping of the vena cava during the implantation of the liver, which results in impairment of the systemic venous return, with possibility of profound hypotension; utilization of the venovenous bypass, which may be associated with thrombus or air embolism, and/or fibrinolysis; and the use of a "cutdown liver," which may result in significant bleeding from the cut surface following revascularization.

The **hepatectomy** may be a formidable task in patients with severe portal hypertension (HTN), coagulopathy, and previous surgery in the upper abdomen. In such circumstances, blood loss is significant and may be minimized by placing the patient on venovenous bypass or by creating a temporary portocaval shunt to relieve the portal HTN. Table 7.12-1 lists factors that may be associated with significant blood loss during the transplant operation. The hepatectomy is usually much easier in patients with acute fulminant hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, or inborn

Table 7.12-1. Contributing Factors Associated with Increased Blood Loss in Liver Transplantation

1. Severe coagulopathy	7. Retransplantation
2. Severe portal HTN	8. Transfusion reaction
3. Portal or splenic vein thrombosis	9. Venous bypass-induced fibrinolysis
4. Previous surgery in the RUQ	10. Primary graft nonfunction
5. Renal failure	11. Intraop vascular complications
6. Uncontrolled sepsis	

errors of metabolism than in patients with shrunken cirrhotic livers, such as in postnecrotic cirrhosis from hepatitis B or C, alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency, or Wilson's disease, among others. The liver transplant incision is traditionally bisubcostal, extending from the left midclavicular line across the midline to just medial of the right 12th rib, with a vertical midline extension from the xiphoid process to the transverse incision. This provides wide exposure to the upper abdomen.

The hepatectomy begins with manual exploration of the abdomen to ensure there are no occult malignancies, abscesses, or other abdominal processes that may contraindicate proceeding with the transplant. The liver is then mobilized by freeing the falciform and left cardinal ligaments, followed by entering the lesser sac through the division of the gastrohepatic ligament. The mobilization of the liver and the subsequent dissection of the portahepatis may be significantly complicated and a tedious process due to large, thin-walled varices that require careful dissection and ligation. The dissection of the portahepatis begins with identification and ligation of the hepatic artery, followed by the common bile duct. The portal vein is carefully dissected from its bifurcation into left and right branches, proximally to its emergence from behind the pancreas. If the degree of portal HTN is severe—such that mobilization of the liver may result in significant blood loss—or the patient is hemodynamically unstable—then portal vein mobilization may be performed early so that a temporary portocaval shunt or venous bypass may be instituted to allow decompression of the varices and enhance venous return to the heart.

After the portal dissection is complete, the right lobe of the liver is mobilized. The infrahepatic vena cava is carefully dissected to prevent injury to the right renal and adrenal veins, followed by mobilization of the suprahepatic vena cava. The liver can be removed easily by cross-clamping and dividing the supra- or infrahepatic vena cava, with or without the use of venous bypass. Alternatively, the recipient vena cava may be left in situ (piggyback technique) by further mobilization of the liver with division of the short hepatic veins that run from the anterior surface of the vena cava directly into the posterior aspect of the liver. To gain access to the short hepatic veins, the liver must be lifted and rotated to the left. This maneuver may result in partial occlusion of the inferior vena cava, which may impair venous return causing a temporary drop in blood pressure. The piggyback technique, where the recipient vena cava is left in situ, has the advantage that venous return is not compromised during the anhepatic phase and thus precludes the need for venous bypass; however, the hepatectomy phase is longer and can be associated with greater bleeding.

The **anhepatic phase** may be associated with significant hemodynamic changes, depending on the technique used for vascular control. This stage of the operation consists of implantation of the liver allograft, with or without venous bypass. The use of venous bypass is particularly helpful in coagulopathic patients with severe portal HTN. In these high-risk patients, the goal of the venous bypass system is to relieve the portal HTN by "bypassing" the liver. Cannulas, placed in the femoral and portal veins, draw the blood out of the systemic and splanchnic venous systems into a Biomedicus pump that delivers the blood into the axillary or jugular vein, maintaining the venous return (Fig. 7.12-4). This system allows the interruption of the vena cava with mild-to-moderate hemodynamic changes, depending on the blood flow rate through the system. The benefits and potential complications of the venous bypass system are listed in Table 7.12-2.

Wound complications and nerve injuries may be prevented by introducing the bypass cannulas percutaneously, rather than approaching the vessels through a surgical incision. A subclavian or internal jugular line placed preop can be easily and rapidly exchanged during the operation to bypass cannulas using the **Seldinger technique.** If lines are placed preoperatively for the specific purpose of venous bypass, a confirmatory CXR should be performed to ensure that the 15 Fr or larger bypass cannula will lie in the appropriate vessel when placed later in the operation. This also obviates the need for a CXR when the bypass cannula is placed later during the operation when the patient may be unstable. In cases where venous bypass is utilized, vascular control is obtained by placing vascular clamps across the supra- and infrahepatic vena cava or the confluence of the hepatic veins (piggyback technique) and the portal vein. The splanchnic venous return is interrupted during the anhepatic phase while the systemic venous return is either interrupted in the case of formal cross-clamping of the supra- and infra-hepatic vena cava or mildly diminished in the case of the piggyback technique, which can lead to significant hypotension unless preventive measures, as reviewed in Anesthetic Considerations (p. 713), are taken (Fig. 7.12-5).

In a **standard orthotopic liver transplant,** with or without venous bypass, the recipient's vena cava is removed, leaving two cuffs—one just below the diaphragm and the other distal to the confluence of the renal veins. The

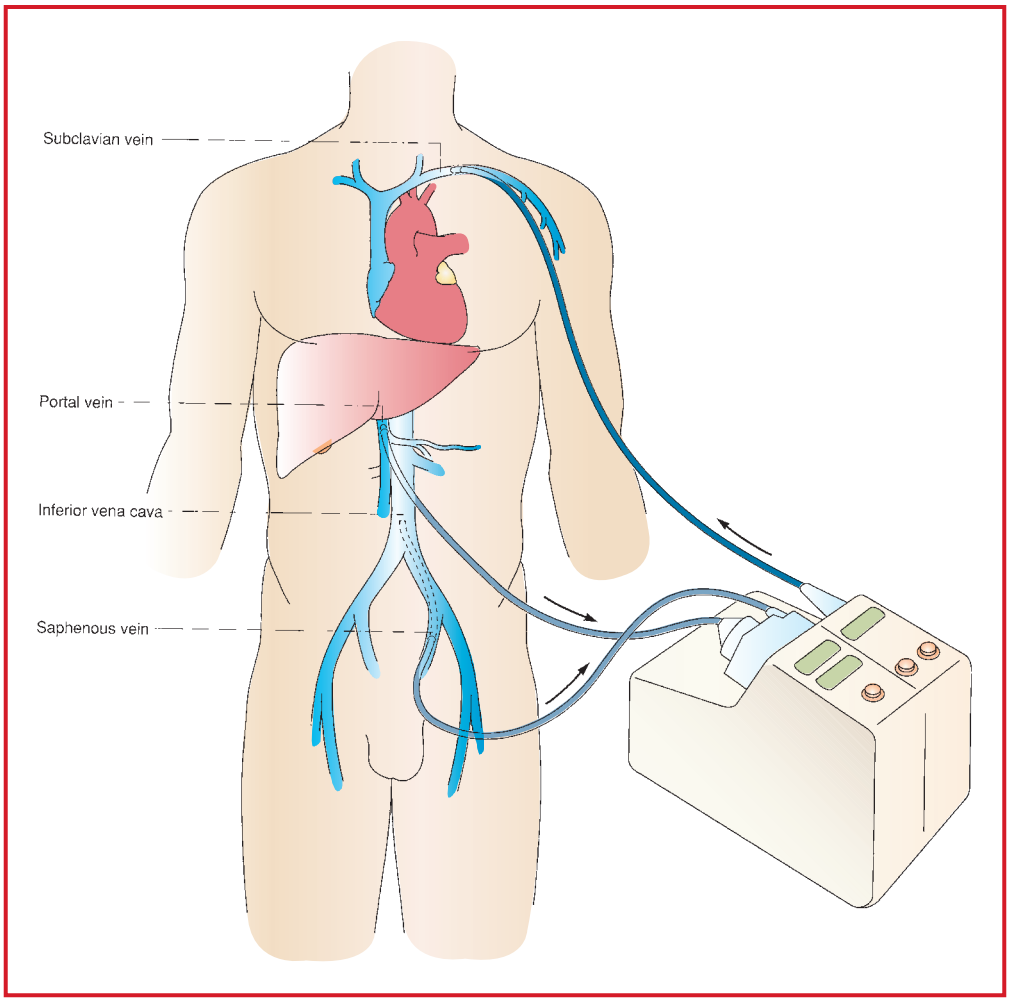


Figure 7.12-4. Setup for venovenous bypass during hepatic transplantation. Cannulas are placed into the portal vein to decompress the splanchnic bed and inferior vena cava (through the greater saphenous vein) to decompress the lower extremities and kidneys during the anhepatic phase of the transplant. A peristaltic pump is used to deliver bypassed blood to the central circulation by means of a cannula introduced into the axillary veins. Cannulas also may be placed percutaneously directly into the femoral and subclavian veins. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Table 7.12-2. Benefits and Potential Complications of the Venovenous Bypass System

Benefits	Complication
Improved hemodynamics during anhepatic phase	PE
↓ blood loss	Air embolism
May improve perioperative renal function.*	Brachial plexus injury Wound seroma/infection Vascular injury

*In a prospective randomized trial comparing venovenous bypass with no bypass, no difference was found in the periop renal function between the two groups.

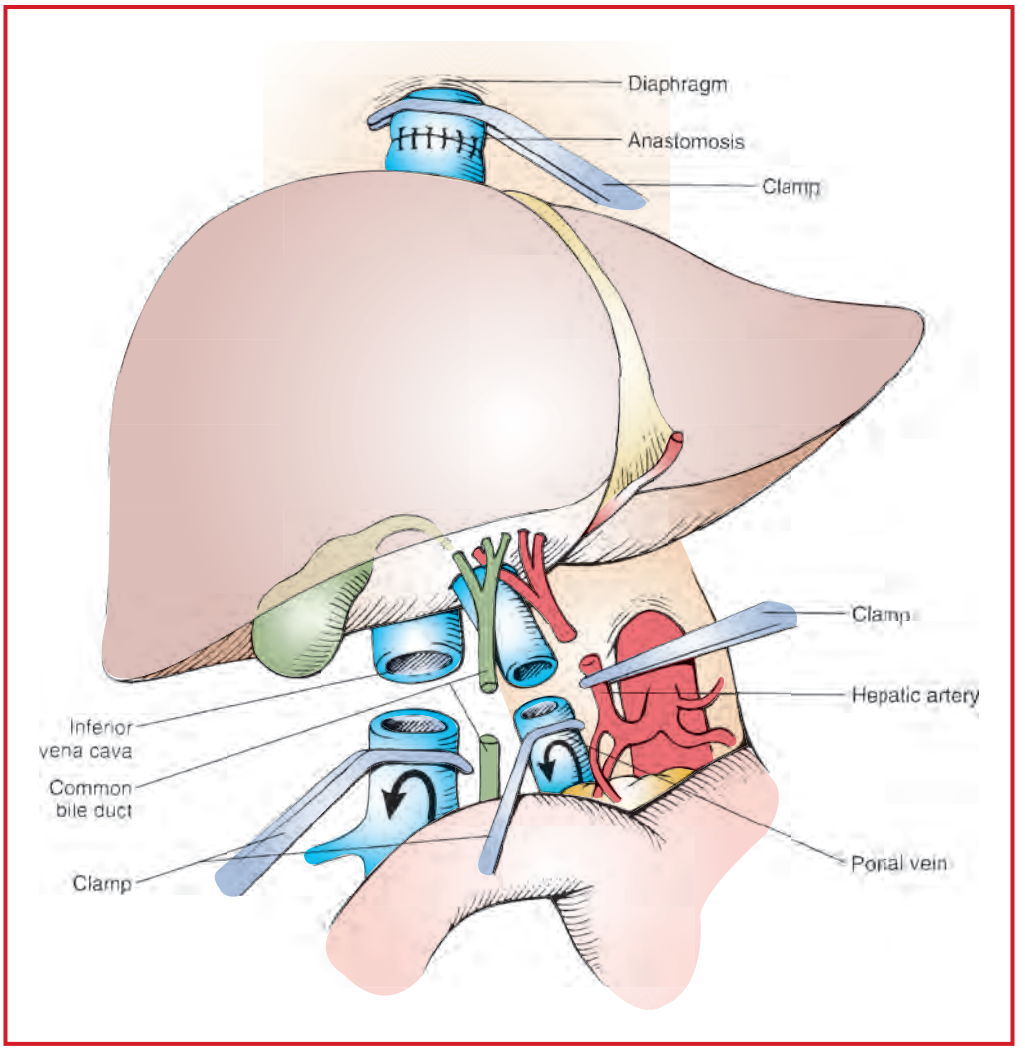


Figure 7.12-5. Standard liver transplantation without venovenous bypass. Venous return is significantly impaired.

deceased donor liver, with the corresponding segment of the vena cava, is used for restoring the continuity of the recipient's vena cava. The first vascular anastomosis consists of an end-to-end anastomosis of the allograft suprahepatic vena cava and the cuff of the recipient's infradiaphragmatic vena cava. This is followed by the reconstruction of the infrahepatic vena cava with an end-to-end anastomosis. Immediately prior to completion of the infrahepatic vena caval anastomosis, the liver is purged with chilled or room temperature albumin and/or crystalloid solution via the allograft portal vein to remove the preservative solution, which may contain high concentrations of potassium (~145 mEq/L K^+). In addition, flushing the liver also removes a significant amount of the air that gets introduced during the procurement and preparation of the allograft for transplantation. Finally, the portal vein reconstruction is completed with an end-to-end anastomosis. At this point, the clamps are removed, ending the anhepatic phase of the operation.

Venous bypass is not necessary when the **piggyback technique of liver transplantation** is utilized because the diseased liver is separated from the vena cava (systemic venous return remains unimpaired), and vascular control is obtained by placing a clamp across the confluence of the hepatic veins as they join the vena cava (Fig. 7.12-6). A temporary portocaval shunt may be created to minimize bleeding in cases with severe portal HTN. The first anastomosis is between the suprahepatic vena cava of the liver allograft and the cuff created from the hepatic veins. The

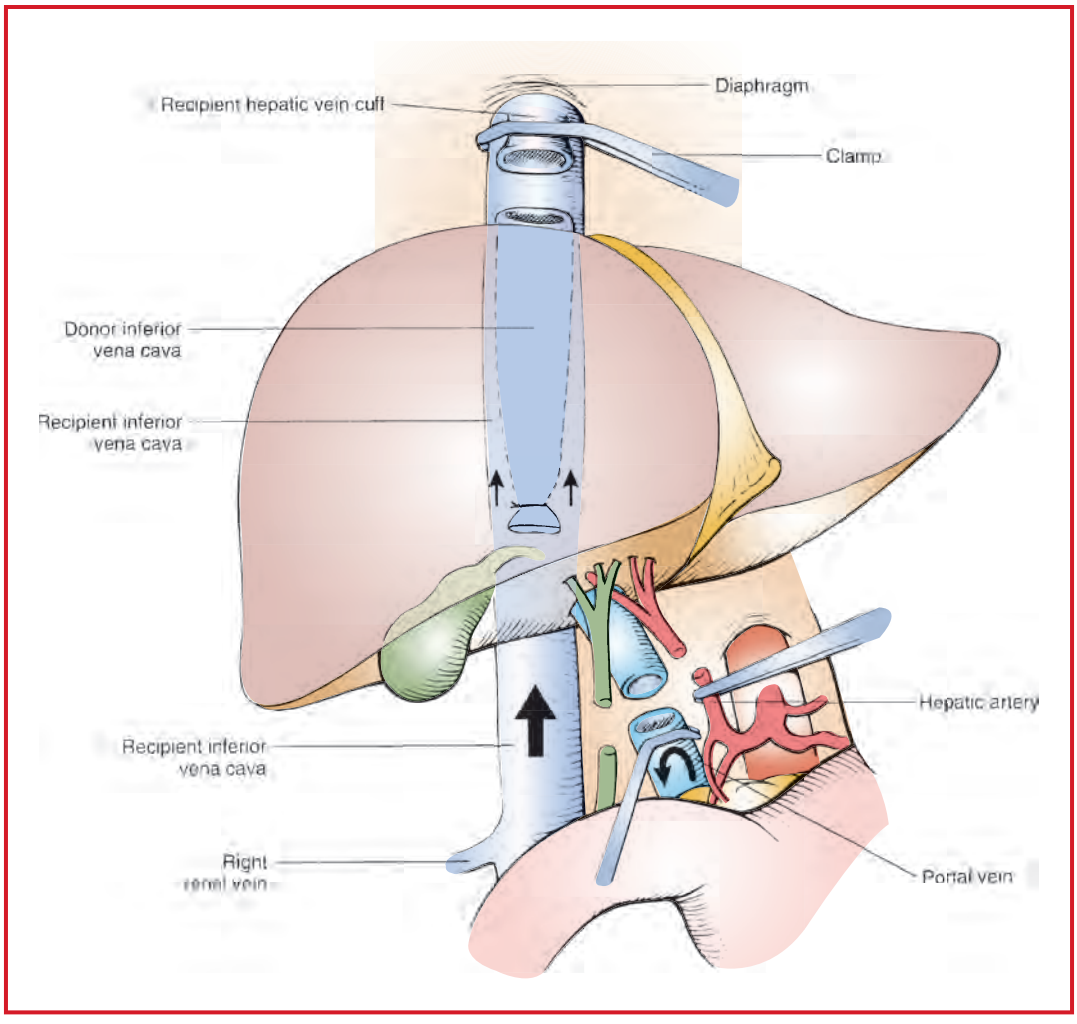


Figure 7.12-6. Piggyback liver transplantation. Note that the recipient's vena cava is left intact and systemic venous return is unimpaired.

infrahepatic vena cava of the liver allograft is ligated, and the portal vein reconstruction is then completed. The clamps are then removed and the liver is revascularized.

The **postrevascularization stage** of the transplant begins with the removal of the vascular clamps. The reperfusion of the liver may be the most critical part of the operation. Despite flushing the liver to remove the high K^+-containing organ preservation solution, hyperkalemia may be troublesome following liver reperfusion, particularly with livers that sustained significant injury during preservation and reperfusion. In addition, massive air embolism is an immediate concern following revascularization, as it may quickly lead to cardiac arrest. It is also during this stage that the patient may experience pulmonary HTN, which can lead to right heart failure and severe systemic hypotension. Pulmonary hypertension and right heart failure must be treated aggressively with inotropic agents; otherwise, the liver is subjected to high outflow resistance resulting in congestion and worsening of the allograft preservation injury. The cause of this phenomenon is not well understood; fortunately, it is seen in very few patients. Another reperfusion phenomenon is that of systemic hypotension secondary to peripheral vasodilation. This may be due to the release of systemic inflammatory mediators, which include kinins, cytokines, and free radicals from the liver allograft. Reperfusion of the liver also can have dramatic effects on coagulation, such as fibrinolysis resulting in severe hemorrhage or hypercoagulation that can result in venous thrombosis and massive pulmonary embolism with cardiovascular collapse.

Immediately prior to revascularization, the patient is usually given methylprednisolone (250–1000 mg) as part of the immunosuppressive regimen, as well as an adjunct to counteract the systemic effects of ischemia-reperfusion injury

of the liver. At this point, all of the vascular anastomoses, the peritoneum, and the liver (especially the cut surface in segmental or reduced-size grafts) are inspected for surgical bleeding.

The hepatic artery reconstruction is performed after stabilization of the patient following revascularization of the liver. After the hepatic arterial anastomosis is completed, it is important to maintain adequate arterial BP (MAP > 65 mm Hg) to prevent hepatic artery thrombosis. This is especially critical in pediatric transplant recipients, where the hepatic artery diameter ranges from 1–3 mm. The last part of the procedure involves hemostasis, removal of the gallbladder, and reconstruction of the bile duct (Fig. 7.12-7). There are two basic methods for the **bile duct reconstruction:** an end-to-end anastomosis, with or without a T tube (in patients with normal common bile ducts), or a choledochojejunostomy to a Roux-en-Y limb of jejunum (Fig. 7.12-8; in patients with biliary atresia, primary sclerosing cholangitis, or diseased common bile ducts, or when there is a size discrepancy between the donor and recipient common bile duct). In cadaveric or live-donor segmental transplantation, the technique for the recipient's hepatectomy and the implantation of the allograft is not different from that of full-size liver transplantation; however, the technique of piggyback liver transplantation must be used with live donors because the allograft segment does not include the vena cava. The anesthesiologist must be alert during the reperfusion of a segmental graft because significant bleeding may ensue from the raw surface of the liver.

After the biliary reconstruction is completed and hemostasis has been achieved, a feeding jejunostomy tube and 2–3 closed-suction drains may be placed. The position of an OG or NG tube (placed at the beginning of the case) is confirmed and the abdomen is closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: ESLD

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; arms tucked. Left arm and left groin area out for access to the axillary and femoral veins if venous bypass is anticipated.
Incision	Bilateral subcostal, in children; in adults, incision must extend cephalad to the xiphoid process.
Special instrumentation	Upper hand or Thompson retractor; venous bypass pump; rapid-infusion system; cell salvage system; argon beam coagulator, ultrasound.
Unique considerations	Thrombus or air embolism may occur during removal of clamps from vena cava or with the use of venovenous bypass. Right heart failure, ↓ BP, and ↓ SVR may be observed after revascularization. Continuous AV hemofiltration may be required if renal failure is present. Head and extremities should be covered with plastic to maintain core body temperature, particularly in children. Gastric tube required.
Antibiotics/drugs	Third-generation cephalosporin or broad-spectrum penicillin/beta lactamase prior to incision. Methylprednisolone and antilymphocyte antibody preparations for immunosuppression.
Surgical time	4–12 h
EBL	6 U average blood loss (range 0–100 U)
Postop care	ICU: 1–2 d. HTN commonly seen.
Mortality	10% at 1 yr
Rejection	10–30% during first yr
Morbidity	Infectious complications: 20–50% Biliary stenosis or leaks: 5–15% Retransplantation: 6–14% Primary graft nonfunction: 2–5% Hepatic artery thrombosis: 0–6% Portal vein thrombosis: 1–4%
Pain score	7–8

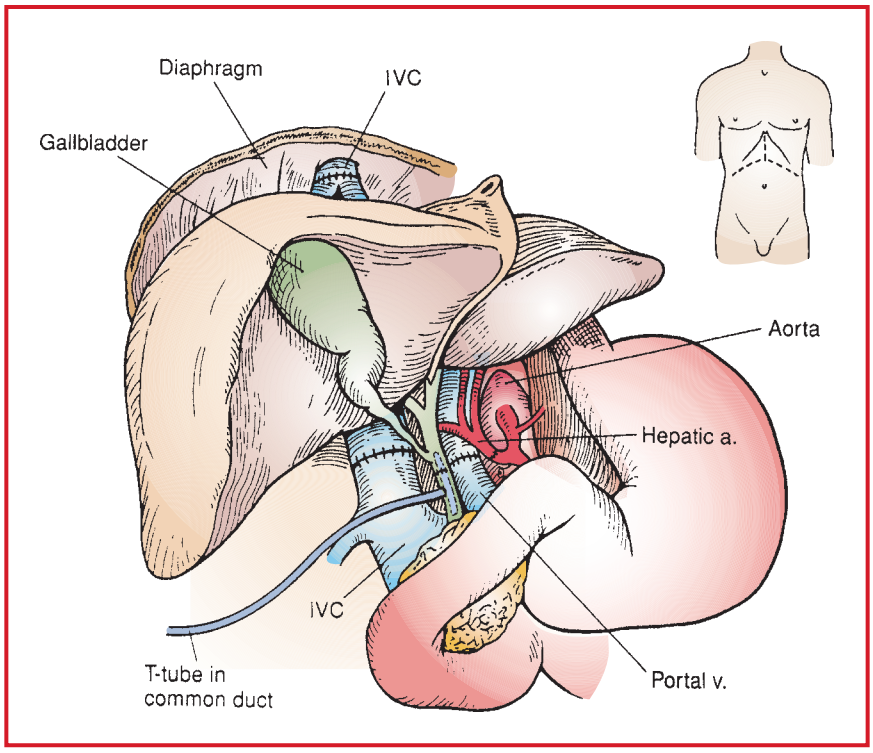


Figure 7.12-7. Liver transplantation. Anastomoses—including suprahepatic and infrahepatic IVC, portal vein, hepatic artery, and common bile duct—are complete as shown here. Roux-en-Y loop of small intestine is an alternative biliary drainage conduit. Inset shows a chevron incision with midline extension. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery*, 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Neonate–70 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	10/million/yr (15% pediatrics)
Etiology	Adult: hepatitis C cirrhosis; alcoholic cirrhosis; primary biliary cirrhosis; primary sclerosing cholangitis; hepatitis B cirrhosis; hepatocellular carcinoma. Pediatric: biliary atresia; inborn errors of metabolism, hepatoblastoma.
Associated conditions	Coagulopathy; hypoalbuminemia; ascites; cardiomyopathy (in alcoholic patients, hemochromatosis, and Wilson's disease); hepatorenal syndrome; hepatopulmonary syndrome, portopulmonary hypertension/GI bleed, hepatic encephalopathy, and hypoglycemia in acute fulminant hepatitis.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients needing liver transplantation represent a formidable challenge to the anesthesiologist. Frequently, these patients present for surgery with multiorgan system failure.

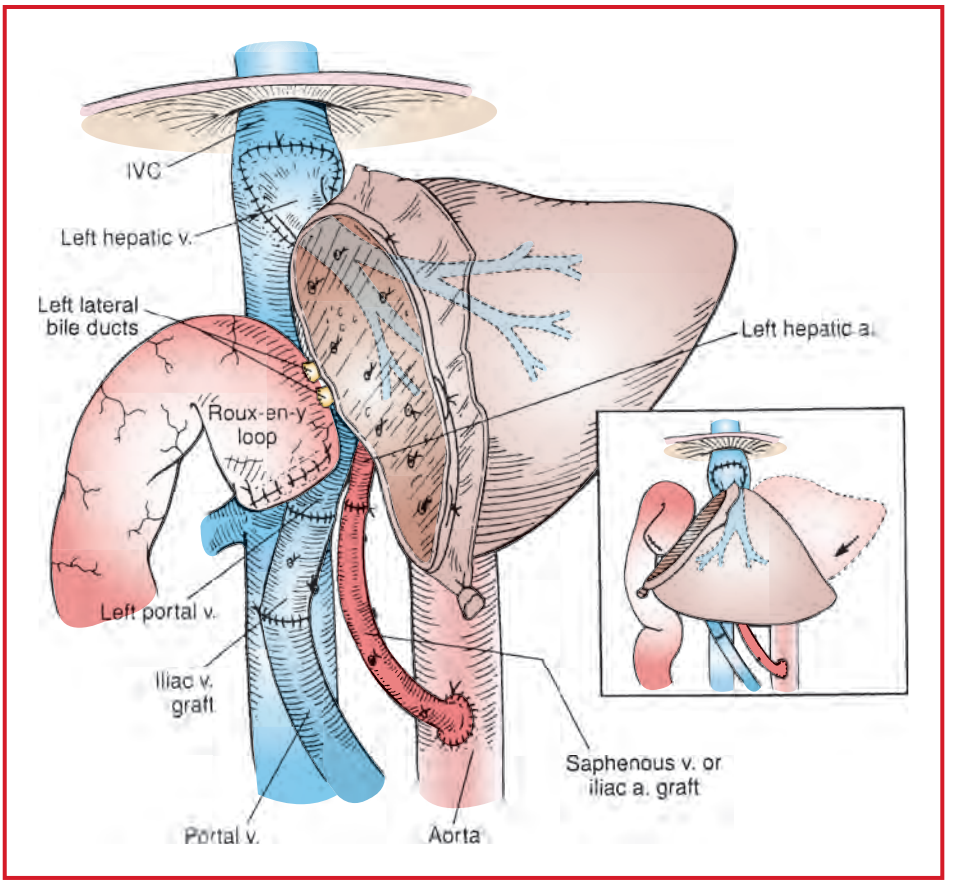


Figure 7.12-8. Liver transplantation (child) using left lateral segment from an adult liver. The hepatic artery and portal vein are extended with donor iliac artery and vein, respectively. The final position of the graft is shown **(inset)**. A Roux-en-Y loop of small intestine is used to drain the bile duct(s). The IVC is left intact. The cut surface of the liver can bleed excessively if the central venous pressure is too high. (Reproduced with permission from Broelsch CE, et al: Liver transplantation in children from living related donors: surgical techniques and results. *Ann Surg* 1991; 214(4):432.)

Respiratory	Patients are often hypoxic because of ascites, pleural effusions, atelectasis, V/Q mismatch, pulmonary AV shunting, or hepatopulmonary syndrome. As a result, they are usually tachypneic and have a respiratory alkalosis. Evidence of pulmonary infection is usually a contraindication to surgery, but ARDS that may occur with hepatic failure is not. **Tests:** ABG; PFTs, as indicated. CXR: ✓infection, effusions, atelectasis.
Cardiovascular	These patients demonstrate a hyperdynamic state with ↑ plasma volume, ↑ CO, and ↓ SVR 2° arteriolar vasodilation in the splanchnic circulation, with intense vasoconstriction in other vascular territories (e.g., renal, brain, muscle, spleen). The SVR usually is not responsive to α-agents. AV fistulae may occur across the pulmonary circulation, so that precautions to prevent air embolism are important. Ejection fraction (EF) is usually high (> 60%), but some patients have cirrhotic cardiomyopathy → ↓ contractility 2° ↓ β-receptors, alterations in myocardial cell membrane properties, and ↑ myocardial depressant substances. This cardiac dysfunction, however, usually is masked by a reduction in afterload. Pericardial effusions may be present and should be drained at surgery. Many of these patients will have dysrhythmias, HTN, pulmonary HTN (very high risk), valvular disease, cardiomyopathy (alcoholic disease, hemochromatosis, Wilson's disease), and CAD. These patients will require appropriate preop consultation and workup. **Tests:** ECG; stress ECHO: ✓EF, contractility, pulmonary HTN, wall motion abnormalities, valve problems. If abnormal, right- and left-heart catheterization with coronary artery angiography should be performed.

Neurological	Patients are often encephalopathic and may be in hepatic coma; however, other organic causes of coma should be ruled out. In fulminant hepatic failure, ↑ ICP is common, accounting for 40% of mortality (herniation) and may require prompt treatment (mannitol, hyperventilation, etc.). **Tests:** Continuous ICP monitoring in fulminant hepatic failure
Hepatic	Hepatitis serology and the cause of hepatic failure should be determined. Vascular abnormalities, previous RUQ surgery or portal-vein decompressive surgery places the patient in a high-risk group. Albumin is usually low, with consequent low plasma oncotic pressure → edema, ascites. The magnitude and duration of drug effects may be unpredictable, but generally, these patients have ↑ sensitivity to all drugs and their actions are prolonged. **Tests:** Bilirubin; PT; ammonia level; SGOT; SGPT; albumin
Gastrointestinal	Portal HTN, esophageal varices, and coagulopathies ↑ risk of GI hemorrhage. Gastric emptying is often slow and, together with the emergent nature of this surgery, warrants rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5). H_2-antagonists are indicated preop.
Renal	Renal function ↓, especially in fulminant hepatic failure (hepatorenal syndrome). The kidneys often recover after transplantation, but simultaneous kidney transplantation may be justified. These patients are often hypervolemic, hyponatremic, and possibly hypokalemic. Ca^{++} is usually normal. Metabolic alkalosis may be present. **Consider preop dialysis and intraop continuous veno-venous hemofiltration (CVVH)**. CVVH corrects fluid overload, acidosis, electrolyte abnormalities, and results in the washout of released cytokines after reperfusion of the graft liver. Mannitol (0.5–1 g/kg) may be used intraop to maintain renal function. **Tests:** BUN; Cr, creatinine clearance; electrolytes; ABG
Endocrine	Patients often glucose-intolerant or frankly diabetic, although acute hypoglycemia may be seen in acute hepatic failure. Hyperaldosteronism may be present. **Tests:** Glucose; electrolytes
Hematologic	These patients are often anemic 2° either blood loss or malabsorption. Coagulation is impaired because of ↓ hepatic synthetic function (all factors except VIII and fibrinogen are ↓), abnormal fibrinogen production, ↓/impaired Plt, fibrinolysis, and low-grade DIC. **Tests:** PT; PTT; Plt count; bleeding time; fibrinogen; fibrin-split products (FSP); TEG
Premedication	Low doses of benzodiazepines may be used judiciously, but often nothing is given prior to surgery. Usually good preop evaluation and discussion suffice. Intramuscular injection should be avoided. Full-stomach precautions are justified.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. These patients are extremely complex to manage because of the hemodynamic instability, massive blood loss, coagulopathy, and metabolic problems. It is convenient to divide the operation into three stages: preanhepatic, anhepatic and neohepatic (discussed later).

Induction	Often, a narcotic (e.g., fentanyl 2–5 mcg/kg) is given just before induction; and rapid-sequence induction is preferred. Etomidate (0.3 mg/kg) with succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg), together with cricoid pressure.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) with fentanyl 10–50 mcg/kg. A benzodiazepine (e.g., midazolam 0.1–0.3 mcg/kg) often is given to ensure amnesia during periods of hemodynamic instability when the volatile agent may need to be off. N_2O is avoided because of bowel distention and possible air embolism. Ventilation with $FiO_2 > 0.5$ and $PaCO_2 = \sim 35$ mm Hg. Occasionally, PEEP (5 cm H_2O) is added. Antibiotics and immunosuppressants should be given per surgeon's direction. Muscle relaxation usually is maintained with vecuronium.
Preanhepatic phase	The **preanhepatic phase** starts at skin incision and ends with removal of the recipient liver. Pleural and pericardial effusions are drained, which may improve oxygenation. Hyperglycemia is common during this period. A drop in filling pressures may be 2° hemorrhage or

Preanhepatic phase (cont'd)	vascular compression. Hemorrhage can be severe 2° portal HTN. Coagulation problems usually increase during this stage, although fibrinolysis is not usually a problem. Blood loss replacement is accomplished with blood (PRBC) and FFP. Cryoprecipitate and Plts are given as needed, but a hypercoagulable state should be avoided, particularly if venovenous bypass is contemplated. Hemodynamic instability is not uncommon during the hepatic vascular dissection 2° manipulation of the liver and ↓ venous return. Venovenous bypass relieves most of the complications of portal and IVC cross-clamping (↓ venous return, low CO, tachycardia, acidosis, ↓ renal function, intestinal swelling.) Blood is pumped from the femoral vein and the portal system (either portal vein or inferior mesenteric) via a centrifugal pump to the right internal jugular vein. Generally, no heparin is used, but heparin-bonded cannulas and tubing are used. Bypass flow need to be at least 1 L/min to avoid possible thromboembolism. Bypass flow depends on venous inflow and is drawn into the pump by negative pressure. Low flows may be caused by hypovolemia or obstructed cannulae. Complications include unexpected decannulation, thromboembolism, and air embolism, all of which may need rapid termination of bypass and treatment of ↓ BP; fibrinolysis is seen with prolonged venovenous bypass. Massive blood transfusion is associated with ↓ Ca^{++}, and replacement is usually needed (± 500 mg/1000 mL of blood/FFP/plasmalyte mixture). If hyperkalemia occurs, it should be treated aggressively. Metabolic acidosis > 5 mEq/L should be treated with bicarbonate or THAM acetate (tris-hydroxymethyl aminomethane) to avoid a rapid increase in sodium. Typical loading dose: mL of 0.3M THAM = lean body weight [kg] x base deficit [mmol/L]. Occasionally, inotropic support is needed, but α-adrenergic agents should be avoided because of ↓ renal and peripheral perfusion. UO needs to be maintained by ensuring adequate intravascular volume; occasionally mannitol may be needed.
Anhepatic phase	The **anhepatic phase** begins with clamping of the hepatic vessels and vena cava and removal of the liver; it ends with the reperfusion of the donor liver. Problems during this period include hemorrhage, increasing coagulopathy and fibrinolysis, acidosis, hypothermia, and ↓ renal function. The hemodynamic instability associated with clamping of the hepatic vessels and the congestion of the bowel that occurs can be decreased by venovenous bypass (see the previous text). Care should be taken to maintain intravascular volume, while avoiding volume overload, because this would worsen fluid overloading on reperfusion. At the completion of vena caval anastomoses, the liver is flushed via the portal vein to remove air, preservation fluid, and metabolites. Reperfusion may take place after completion of the portal vein anastomosis or after both portal vein and hepatic artery anastomoses are completed. As in the preanhepatic phase, acidosis, ↓ Ca^{++}, glucose, coagulation, and other electrolyte abnormalities should be treated. Fibrinolysis usually starts in this period, but is not usually treated unless severe because of the potential for embolism during venovenous bypass.
Neohepatic phase	The **neohepatic phase** begins with the unclamping of the portal vein, hepatic artery, and vena cava and reperfusion of the donor liver. Preparation for this phase is important because this may be a period of great hemodynamic instability. Before removal of the clamps, acidosis should be corrected, ionized Ca^{++} should be normal, and K^+ should be < 4.5 mEq/L. $CaCl_2$, $NaHCO_3$, and epinephrine should be readily available. Fluid overload prior to declamping should be avoided. High venous filling pressures decrease hepatic perfusion, especially prior to hepatic artery anastomosis. Declamping can be attended by ↓ BP, ↓ HR, dysrhythmias, hypothermia, lactic acidosis, coagulopathy, hyperglycemia, and thromboembolism.
Reperfusion syndrome	**The "reperfusion syndrome"** (which can occur in this phase) is characterized by ↓ HR, ↓ BP (30% of patients develop MAP < 70% of baseline), conduction defects, and ↓ SVR in the face of acutely ↑ RV filling pressures. Cause unknown. A rapid ↑ K^+ can → cardiac arrest. (Rx: ensure normal pH and electrolytes prior to unclamping; rapid therapy when it occurs.) ↓ BP and ↓ HR are treated with epinephrine (10 μg increments), whereas $CaCl_2$ and $NaHCO_3$ are used to correct hyperkalemia and acidosis. Pulmonary edema may occur as a result of fluid overload and can be treated with diuretics, inotropes, and phlebotomy.

Reperfusion syndrome (cont'd)	A high venous pressure will cause graft congestion and should be avoided. Reperfusion is associated with severe coagulopathy due to fibrinolysis (usually primary), release of heparin, and hypothermia. As liver function returns, there should be an improvement in coagulation, acid-base status (metabolic alkalosis may occur), ↓ lactic acidosis, return of glucose to normal, and bile production. Hypokalemia may occur 2° uptake by the liver. Graft failure is associated with coagulopathy, ↑ lactic acid, citrate intoxication, hyperglycemia, and ↓ bile formation.	
Emergence	Extubation is deferred. These patients are generally ventilated postop in ICU until stable and able to be weaned from ventilatory support. Apart from the usual tests, monitor hepatic function. Also ensure immunosuppression provided, infection controlled, analgesia adequate (usually fentanyl), and peptic ulcer prophylaxis given (ranitidine preferred).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Massive blood loss IV: 10 Fr × 2 Plasmalyte A or Normosol UO > 1 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids Humidify gases Rapid-infusion system Cell salvage system 20 U PRBC 20 U FFP 2 U PLT	Generally, iv's are placed in the right antecubital fossa, left IJ or EJ. The right IJ is reserved for veno venous bypass. Plasmalyte A or Normosol are preferred (absence of glucose, Ca^{++}, and lower Na^{+} content) over NS or LR. Hypernatremia may occur due to administration of $NaHCO_3$. The ability to infuse up to 1.5 L/min of blood should be available. Usually a mixture of Normosol (250 mL), PRBC (1 U), and FFP (1 U) is used, yielding Hct = 26–30%. Actual blood loss estimation is extremely difficult, and usually replacement is judged by hemodynamic status, UO, and S_vO_2. Cell salvage systems are used to conserve blood. Anticoagulation is achieved with citrate solution to avoid heparin contamination, and cells are washed with Normosol/Plasmalyte A. Discontinue use before biliary reconstruction (infection) or in neoplasms, hepatitis B, or spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ECG (5-lead) Temp-bladder	Include 5-lead ECG and bladder T. (These patients sustain significant heat loss.) A full-time anesthesia technologist and lab/blood bank runner are useful. Lab and blood bank should be notified of the expected transplant. An automated data acquisition system also is useful because there are times during the case when record keeping may not be kept up to date in favor of providing patient care.
	ETN_2 Arterial line(s)	One or two arterial lines are placed at the outset—one in the right radial, for ongoing lab and blood gas sampling; another line, in the right femoral artery is utilized for continuous pressure measurement.
	PA catheter/S_vO_2/CO	A PA catheter is essential for management of hemodynamics in these patients because of the rapid changes in VS and the fact that a significant number of patients have recognized or nonrecognized pulmonary hypertension. A catheter capable of measuring mixed-venous O_2 sat is very useful because it gives early clues to impending decompensation. Coagulopathy complicates the placement of central lines, and the use of ultrasound-guidance is recommended.
	TEE	TEE is useful to monitor cardiac filling and function and to diagnose problems such as PE or air embolism. Care needs to be taken in placing the TEE because many of these patients have esophageal varices.

Monitoring (cont'd)	ICP	ICP should be measured in patients with fulminant hepatic failure if ↑ ICP is a concern.
	Laboratory	ABG, acid base status, electrolyte, lactate, osmolality, Ca^{++}, PT, PTT, Plt, Hct—all should be monitored on a regular basis (hourly or half-hourly; occasionally, more frequently).
	Thromboelastograph (TEG)	TEG is useful for monitoring coagulation (see the subsequent discussion of coagulation management).
Coagulation management	PT PTT Plt counts Fibrinogen FSP	Patients are prone to a variety of coagulopathies (↓ Plt, ↓ coagulation factors, DIC, fibrinolysis, etc.) because of preop factors, massive hemorrhage, anhepatic period, and reperfusion of the new liver; therefore, monitoring and treatment are necessary. Also, states of hypercoagulopathy need to be avoided because of unheparinized venovenous bypass.
	TEG	Although PT, PTT, Plt counts, fibrinogen, and FSP may provide relevant information, they may not reflect the true coagulability of patient's blood and tend to take considerable time to perform. Thus, in some centers, TEG has gained in popularity. It measures whole blood coagulability, not specific factors. TEG works by measuring viscoelastic properties of blood as it forms clot (fibrin connections) between a rotating cuvette and a spindle. Characteristic patterns are formed by the various coagulopathies with the common types shown in Fig. 7.12-9. Evaluation of the TEG leads to more rational transfusion therapy, reducing the number of units of blood products used. Comparing specimens of native whole blood vs blood mixed with EACA or protamine can guide pharmacologic therapy of coagulopathies. Table 7.12-3 gives specific recommendations.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Table and arm boards should be very well padded. Head should be placed on a foam rest. Particular care should be taken to pad the retractor supports where they may impinge on the arms and on the radial nerve as it curls around the humerus.
Temperature control	Warming blanket Humidifier	Patient's arms, head, and legs should be wrapped in plastic to protect against heat loss. Plastic drapes and the use of a cesarian section-type drape to protect the ECG electrodes and direct fluid flow off the table are useful to prevent the patient from lying in a pool of fluid. A warming blanket under the patient and over the lower legs is very useful.
Complications	Coagulopathy Hemorrhage Air embolism RV failure Metabolic acidosis	

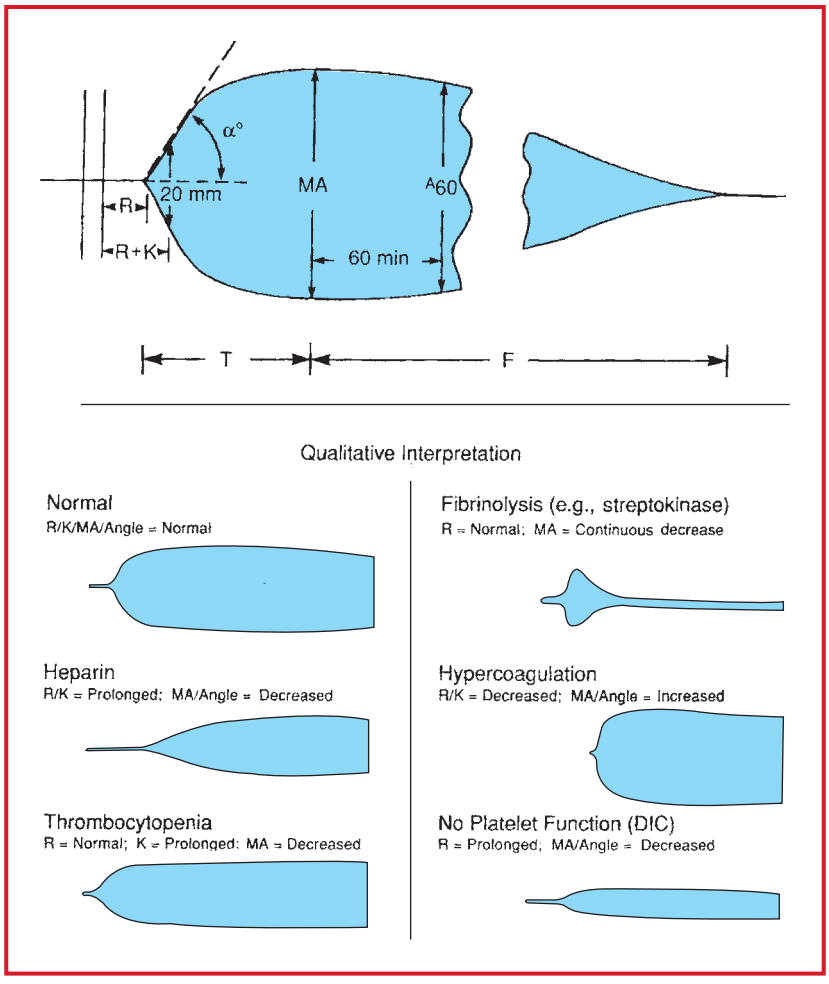


Figure 7.12-9. Variables and normal values measured by TEG: R = reaction time, 6–8 min R + k = coagulation time, 10–12 min α = clot formation rate, > 50° MA = maximum amplitude, 50–70 mm A_{60} = amplitude 60 min after MA A_{60}/MA-100 = whole blood clot lysis index, > 85% F = whole blood clot lysis time, > 300 min (Reproduced with permission from Kang YG, et al: Intraoperative changes in blood coagulation and thromboelastographic monitoring in liver transplantation. *Anesth Analg* 1985; 64:891.)

Table 7-12-3. Coagulation Therapy Guided by TEG Monitoring

1. Maintenance fluid
   RBC: FFP: Plasmalyte A = 300:200:250 mL
2. Replacement therapy
   a. FFP (2 U) for prolonged reaction time (R > 15 min)
   b. Plt (10 U) for small MA (MA < 40 mm)
   c. Cryoprecipitate (6–12 U) for persistent slow-clot formation rate (α < 40°) with normal MA
3. Pharmacologic therapy
   a. Compare coagulability of whole blood, blood treated with protamine sulfate, and blood treated with epsilon aminocaproic acid.
   b. Epsilon aminocaproic acid (1 g) for severe fibrinolysis (F < 60 min)
   c. Protamine sulfate (50 mg) for severe heparin effect
   d. Heparin (1000–2000 U) for hypercoagulable state

POSTOPERATIVE

Monitoring of hepatic function	Serial LFTs PT, PTT Ammonia level Lactate TEG Bile output	Initial LFTs often show very high liver enzymes, which subside over a period of days. PT generally improves to normal levels, while lactic acidosis usually corrects quickly. Often a metabolic alkalosis follows and may need HCl treatment.
Complications	Bleeding Partial vein thrombosis Hepatic artery thrombosis Biliary tract leaks Primary nonfunction Rejection Infection Pulmonary complication HTN Electrolyte abnormalities (hypokalemia, ↓ Ca^{++}, ↑ Na) Alkalosis Renal failure Peptic ulceration Neurologic	This is not a complete list. Feared complications that may → graft loss include portal vein thrombosis, hepatic artery thrombosis, bile leaks, and rejection. These are attended by ↑ LFTs, lactic acidosis, coagulopathy, hypoglycemia, ↓ renal function, and poor bile formation.

Suggested Readings

1. Adachi T: Anesthetic principles in living-donor liver transplantation at Kyoto University Hospital: experiences of 760 cases. *J Anesth* 2003; 17(2):116–24.
2. Grande L, Rimola A, Cugat E, et al: Effect of venovenous bypass on perioperative renal function in liver transplantation: results of a randomized controlled trial. *Hepatology* 1996; 23:1418–28.
3. Merritt WT: Metabolism and liver transplantation: review of perioperative issues. *Liver Transpl* 2000; 6(4 Suppl 1):S76–84.
4. Nakazato PZ, Concepcion W, Bry W, et al: Total abdominal evisceration: an en bloc technique for abdominal organ harvesting. *Surgery* 1992; 111:37–47.
5. Shaw BW, Martin DJ, Marquez JM, et al: Venous bypass in clinical liver transplantation. *Ann Surg* 1984; 200:524–34.
6. Starzl TE, Demetris AJ: Liver transplantation: a 31-year perspective, Part III. *Curr Probl Surg* 1990; 27:181–240.
7. Starzl TE, Iwatsuki S, Esquivel CO, et al: Refinements in the surgical technique of liver transplantation. *Semin Liver Dis* 1985; 5:349–59.
8. Warnaar N, Mallett SV, de Boer MT, et al: The impact of aprotinin on renal function after liver transplantation: an analysis of 1,043 patients. *Am J Transplant* 2007; 7(10):2378–87.
9. Washburn WK, Lewis WD, Jenkins RL: Percutaneous venovenous bypass in orthotopic liver transplantation. *Live Transpl Surg* 1995; 1(6):377–82.

LIVING-DONOR LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The success of deceased donor liver transplantation has resulted in an ever-increasing number of patients with end-stage liver disease (ESLD) waiting for transplantation; however, the number of deceased donors has remained relatively constant. Consequently, the waiting time to receive an organ has increased significantly, and ~15% of patients will die while waiting. The success of **living-donor renal transplantation,** coupled with the experience in adult-to-pediatric living-donor liver transplantation, as well as advances in surgical and postsurgical care of patients undergoing major liver resections, has lead to the implementation of adult-to-adult living-donor liver transplantation.

Potential living liver donors undergo extensive medical and psychosocial evaluation to ensure psychological as well as physical fitness to undergo a major surgical procedure that provides no medical benefits to the donor. Donors must have full blood typing to ensure compatibility with the recipient and then fill out an extensive medical questionnaire, followed by a complete physical exam and screening lab tests. Any evidence of diabetes, HTN, or renal, pulmonary,

cardiovascular, or hepatic abnormalities usually is a contraindication to donation. After the potential donor is medically and psychosocially cleared, they undergo a detailed magnetic resonance imaging study of the liver to assess liver segment size, anastomosis, and possible anatomical contraindications.

The donor and recipient operations are usually conducted simultaneously to minimize the ischemic injury to the donor liver segment. The donor operation, however, is initiated first, with the recipient operation commencing only after the donor liver has been directly examined and no unforeseen anatomic barriers to donation are found. The living donor operation is similar to a right or left hepatic lobectomy undertaken for hepatic disease, although there are some differences that can have a significant impact on anesthetic management.

The donor may elect to have an epidural catheter for postop analgesia, and this usually is placed before surgery. Living donor liver resection has been successfully performed laparoscopically; however, due to limited experience and utilization of this technique, it will not be detailed here. A vertical midline incision is made from the xiphoid to just above the umbilicus and extended transversely to the right anterior axillary line. Occasionally, bisubcostal incisions are required. Following exploration of the abdomen, intraoperative ultrasound may be performed to map the hepatic venous anatomy so the plane of resection can be delineated. In addition, an intraoperative cholangiogram is performed via the cystic duct (a cholecystectomy is performed in either right or left hepatic lobectomy) or the common bile duct, to define the biliary anatomy. After this is performed, the corresponding portal vein and hepatic artery are isolated. Unlike in a hepatic lobectomy for tumor, the venous and arterial inflow to the liver segment is not ligated; thus, the transaction of the liver parenchyma may result in significant hemorrhage. The respective lobe of the liver is mobilized from its attachments, and the liver is dissected from the retrohepatic vena cava, with ligation of the short-hepatic veins. This maneuver can cause transient hypotension secondary to torque and compression of the IVC and hepatic veins, as well as potential bleeding from the vena cava itself. Next, the hepatic vein is isolated, and the liver parenchyma is then divided, which can be a slow and tedious process. Following division of the hepatic parenchyma, the liver segment is ready to be removed. Heparin (80–100 U/kg) is given to prevent intrahepatic clot formation. Following heparinization, the hepatic artery and portal vein are ligated and divided, followed by the hepatic vein. The donated hepatic lobe is immediately placed in ice and flushed with organ preservation solution. Once the donated liver segment has been removed, the abdomen and cut surface of the remaining liver are inspected for hemostasis and bile leak. Closed drains are placed, after which the abdomen is closed. Essentially, the same procedure is followed for a left lateral segmentectomy (adult-to-child), except that the amount of donor liver removed is about 25%, compared with 40% and 60% for a left or right hepatic lobectomy, respectively.

Usual preop diagnosis: Healthy, living liver donor

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; arms tucked
Incision	Vertical midline with a right and/or left subcostal extension, depending on liver segment being utilized. Laparoscopic or laparoscopically assisted technique described.
Special instrumentation	Retractor; laparoscopic or laparoscopically assisted technique described ultrasonic or hydrojet dissection/aspirator; irrigating bipolar cautery; argon beam coagulator; Cell salvage system; rapid-infusion system
Unique considerations	Intraop cholangiogram and/or ultrasound. Hemodilution immediately before surgery, with removal of 1 U whole blood if Hct ≥ 40. Patients also may have donated 1–2 U of autologous blood. Heparin (80–100 U/kg)
Antibiotics	Ampicillin 1 g and ceftriaxone 1 g iv before skin incision
Surgical time	3–5 h
EBL	250–500 mL
Postop care	ICU overnight or surgical floor. Hospital stay 5–7 d.
Mortality	34 deaths reported world-wide (as of August 2010) following ~11,553 donor operations.
Morbidity	Infectious complications: 15% Biliary leak: 8% Reoperation: 3–5% Acute hepatic failure: < 0.1%
Pain score	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	18–55 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthesia for Hepatic Resection, p. 567.

Suggested Readings

1. Abecassis MM, Fischer RA, Olthoff KM, et al: Complications of living donor hepatic lobectomy—A comprehensive report. *Am J Transpl* 2012; 12(5):1208–17.
2. Baker TB, Jay CL, Ladner DP, et al: Laparoscopy-assisted and open living donor right hepatectomy: a comparative study of outcomes. *Surgery* 2009; 146(4):817–23.
3. Barr ML, Belghiti J, Villamil FG, et al: A report of the Vancouver Forum on the care of the live organ donor: lung, liver, pancreas and intestine data and medical guidelines. *Transplantation* 2006; 81:1373–85.
4. Cheah YL, Simpson MA, Pomposelli JJ, et al: The incidence of death and potentially life threatening "near miss" events in living donor hepatic lobectomy: a world-wide survey. *Liver Transpl* 2012 Nov 21 (epub ahead of print).
5. Singer PA, Siegler M, Whitington PF, et al: Ethics of liver transplantation with living donors. *N Eng J Med* 1989; 321:620–2.

MULTIORGAN PROCUREMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The families of brain-dead patients may allow donation of the patient's functioning organs—which may include, but is not limited to, heart, lungs, liver, kidneys, pancreas, and small intestine. The process of organ procurement can be chaotic, with multiple operative teams and technicians working simultaneously. Moreover, brain-dead patients may be hemodynamically unstable, sometimes requiring multiple pressors, and the possibility of acute decompensation is ever present.

The donor patient's chest and abdomen are opened in the midline from sternal notch to pubis (Fig. 7.12-10). The chest is opened with a sternal saw, and generally an extra-large Balfour retractor is used to widely retract the abdomen. The aorta and IVC are dissected first to allow rapid placement of a flush line in the event that the patient experiences a cardiovascular collapse. Following this, the liver vasculature is identified in the hepatoduodenal ligament and is dissected out. This part of the procedure generally takes about 1.5 h. In cases where the pancreas is procured, an additional 45–60 min is required for mobilization of the pancreas. During pancreas procurement, a Betadine/amphotericin B solution is administered through an NG tube into the stomach and duodenum. A total of about 300–500 mL of the Betadine solution is passed in two divided aliquots. After the heart, liver, pancreas, and kidneys have been mobilized, the supraceliac aorta just below the diaphragm is dissected for placement of the aortic cross-clamp. Immediately before cross-clamping, 30,000 U of heparin (300 U/kg) is given systemically, with the α-antagonist phentolamine in some cases. The supraceliac aorta is then clamped, and the organs are perfused with an organ preservation solution. At this point, the ventilator can be turned off, except in cases where the lungs are procured. The lungs must be inflated with 100% O_2 just before removal. The heart is the first organ to be removed, followed by the lungs.

If the lungs are procured, an extra 20–30 min of perfusion time is required. After removal of the heart and/or lungs, the liver can be removed, followed by the pancreas, small intestines, and kidneys. After the organs are removed, spleen and lymph nodes for tissue typing are obtained from the abdominal and thoracic cavities; and because of the possible need for vascular reconstruction in the recipients, bilateral iliac veins and arteries are removed. The total time for multiorgan procurement is ~4 h, although the anesthesia time typically ends with aortic cross-clamping.

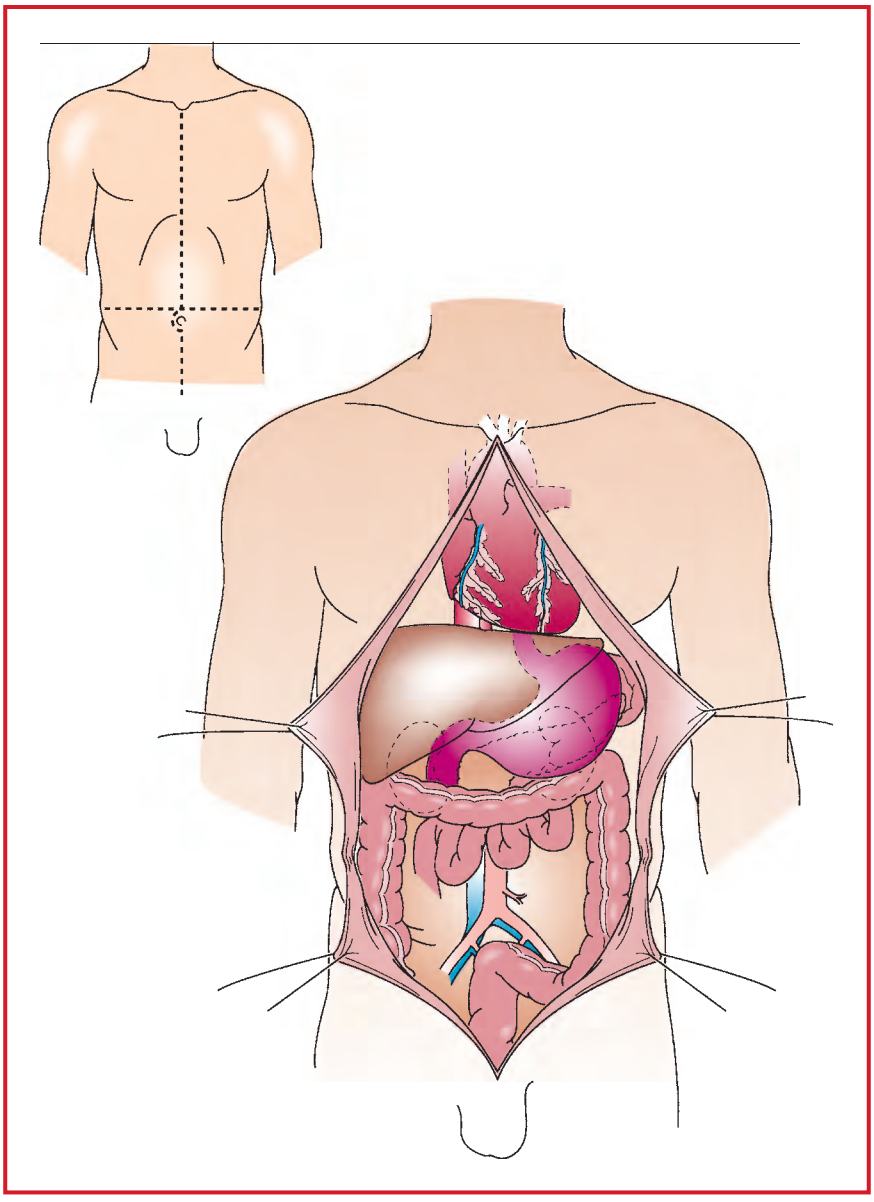


Figure 7.12-10. A complete midline incision, from suprasternal notch to pubis, is made for multiple organ procurement; and the sternum is split. If necessary, cruciate abdominal incisions are added to facilitate exposure of the intraabdominal organs. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Variant procedures: During the "**rapid-flush" technique** used by some procurement teams, the dissection of individual abdominal organs is minimized and an en bloc resection is done after clamping the aorta below the diaphragm and flushing preservation solution through the distal aorta. The en bloc organs are then dissected ex vivo, often at the transplant center, in preparation for transplantation. This technique is more rapid, requiring only about 1.5 h.

A second variant procedure, developed in response to the chronic shortage of transplantable organs, is the use of non-heart-beating donors. Patients, who are not brain-dead, but who have no hope of recovery (due to irreversible brain injury or pulmonary or cardiac failure), may be suitable donors. In this case, the patient is taken to the OR and,

under the supervision of a physician who is not part of the transplant team, the life-sustaining treatment (e.g., pressors, ventilator) is D/C'd. When it has been determined that the donor has suffered cardiac death, the body is rapidly cooled with ViaSpan through a cannula that is located in the aorta at the level of the renal arteries. Depending on the regional regulations, this cannula may be placed before cardiac death or immediately following the declaration of cardiac death. After the preservative flush is initiated, the abdomen is entered as rapidly as possible, the peritoneal cavity is packed with ice, and the organs are removed expeditiously. The anesthesiologist's role is ended when cardiac death has been declared. The disadvantage of this approach is that there can be significant warm ischemia from the time the life-sustaining treatment is stopped to the time that cardiac death is reached.

Usual preop diagnosis: Brain death

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Midline only, neck to pubis, ± bilateral transverse extensions
Special instrumentation	Chest and abdominal retractors
Unique considerations	Maintain oxygenation and BP as if live patient. May require pressors and/or blood transfusion. Temporarily deflate lungs for sternal sawing.
Antibiotics	Ampicillin (1 g iv), ceftriaxone (1 g iv); Betadine/Amphotericin B via NG tube for pancreas (with duodenal segment) procurement.
Surgical time	4 h; rapid-flush technique: 1.5 h
EBL	200 mL

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Neonate–70 yr
Male:Female	N/A
Incidence	Approximately 5000/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Usually head trauma (e.g., motor vehicle accidents, gunshot wounds to the head) or intracranial bleeding
Associated conditions	Vasomotor instability; diabetes insipidus; intracranial HTN

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In general, organ donors are previously healthy individuals who have suffered catastrophic, irreversible brain injury of known etiology, most commonly due to blunt head trauma, penetrating head injury, or intracranial hemorrhage. A declaration of brain death by physicians not participating in the organ procurement must be documented. This documentation, together with certification of death and familial consent, should be verified by the anesthesiologist before organ procurement. The United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) has produced *The Critical Pathway for the Organ Donor* to facilitate the administrative aspects of organ procurement (http://www.unos.org/docs/Critical_Pathway.pdf). There should be no evidence of disease or trauma involving the organs targeted for donation, and in general, the patient should be hemodynamically stable with minimal inotropic requirements. After brain death has been declared, it is important to shift the emphasis away from cerebral resuscitation efforts and to focus instead on the maintenance of adequate tissue perfusion and oxygenation. Brain death is frequently followed by a series of pathophysiological events that may complicate the management of these patients.

Recently, Donation after Cardiac Death (DCD) has been instituted at many medical centers, where a non-brain-dead patient is brought to the operating room for withdrawal of life support and subsequent removal of organs for transplant. Although the ethics of such organ donation had been debated, the ASA and other organizations have developed protocols to separate the teams caring for the patient during the withdrawal of life support and the operating room team responsible for organ retrieval. However, in most institutions, an anesthesiologist is present in the operating room as a member of the latter team (http://webinars.asahq.org/session.php?id=4047). After withdrawal of life support has been initiated and the patient meets criteria for cessation of cardiopulmonary function, organ removal is initiated as quickly as possible to limit warm ischemia time and possible damage to the organs to be removed. DCD patients often do not have as serious pathophysiological alterations as patients who meet brain-death criteria.

Respiratory	Pulmonary dysfunction following brain death has many possible etiologies: aspiration, atelectasis, pneumonia, and pulmonary edema. In addition, trauma may cause pulmonary dysfunction related to contusion, pneumothorax, or hemothorax. Meticulous pulmonary toilet is essential to prevent atelectasis and pneumonia. Maintenance of adequate oxygenation is requisite to ensure preservation of other organs for transplantation. Use mechanical ventilation with TVs of 8–10 mL/kg and a minute ventilation that maintains $PaCO_2$ 30–35 mm Hg and pH 7.35–7.45. The FiO_2 should ensure a PaO_2 75–150 mm Hg and arterial saturation > 95%. PEEP usually is applied at 3–5 cmH_2O and should not exceed 7.5 cmH_2O because of the deleterious effects on CO and regional blood flow and possible barotrauma. The FiO_2 generally should be increased to 100% before transport to the OR. An important exception is in the case of heart-lung or lung retrieval, where it is important to maintain FiO_2 < 40% to minimize possible effects of O_2 toxicity. Ideally, PIP should be < 30 cmH_2O to minimize possible barotrauma to the lungs. **Tests:** Frequent ABGs, including immediate preop period. Proper position of the ETT should be confirmed preop.
Cardiovascular	Hypotension should be anticipated in all organ donors. This results most commonly from neurogenic shock (derangement of descending vasomotor control → progressive ↓ SVR and venous pooling) and hypovolemia. Hypovolemia is usually the result of dehydration therapy for cerebral edema, hemorrhage, DI, or osmotic diuresis 2° hyperglycemia. Hypothermia, LV dysfunction, and endocrine abnormalities also can contribute to ↓ BP. Fluid resuscitation with crystalloid, colloid, and PRBCs to maintain Hct > 30% should be initiated preop. Hemodynamic goals are (1) CVP 10–12 cmH_2O (6–8 cmH_2O if lungs are to be procured); (2) MAP between 60–100 mm Hg; (3) SBP > 100 mm Hg; (4) PCWP ≤ 12 mm Hg; (5) SVR 800–1200 dynes/second × cm^{-5} (or 800–1200 woods units); and (6) UO > 1 mL/kg/h. Donors are often placed on inotropic therapy to maintain these parameters; however, following adequate volume resuscitation, preop inotropic therapy often may be gradually decreased or D/C'd. If inotropic therapy remains necessary, typically it would consist of dopamine (2–10 mcg/kg/min), followed by dobutamine (3–15 mcg/kg/min) or epinephrine (0.1–1.0 mcg/kg/min), then norepinephrine. The latter 3 agents may be combined with dopamine (2–3 mcg/kg/min) in an attempt to augment or preserve renal, mesenteric, and coronary arterial blood flow. It should be noted that brain death may be accompanied initially by a transient hypertensive crisis that may require short-term treatment with SNP and/or esmolol. ECG abnormalities are common in patients with intracranial injury and are of no pathologic consequence. Atrial and ventricular dysrhythmias and various degrees of conduction block occur frequently in organ donors; the etiology may be electrolyte imbalance, ABG disturbance, ↑ ICP, loss of the vagal motor nucleus, inotropic therapy, hypothermia, or myocardial contusions or ischemia. Antidysrhythmic therapy should follow the usual guidelines except for ↓ HR, which is resistant to atropine in this setting. Bradycardia, if accompanied by ↓ BP, should be treated with isoproterenol, dopamine, epinephrine, or temporary cardiac pacing. **Tests:** ECG; ECHO (to assess wall motion abnormalities) and possibly coronary angiography (if CAD is suspected).

Neurological	Diabetes insipidus (DI) frequently occurs in brain-dead donors; it is likely the result of destruction of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis. Untreated, it may cause marked hypovolemia and electrolyte disturbances (↑ Na^+, ↑ Mg^{++}, ↓ K^+, ↓ PO^-_4, ↓ Ca^{++}). Therapy with iv vasopressin (titrated from 2 mcg/kg/min) or DDAVP (titrated from 0.3 mcg/kg/min) often is initiated to maintain UO < 1.5–3 mL/kg/h. Many believe that the benefits of minimizing electrolyte imbalance, fluid shifts, and reduction of core T outweigh the risks of vasopressin or desmopressin therapy, including coronary and renal vasoconstriction and possible organ ischemia or uneven distribution of the preservation solutions during flushing. It may be prudent, however, to D/C vasopressin or DDAVP infusions for at least 1 h prior to aortic cross-clamping and infusion of preservation solutions. Thermoregulation is abnormal in brain-dead donors due to hypothalamic dysfunction, and core T should be monitored (bladder, or esophageal). Aggressive warming techniques may have to be employed early to maintain a core T > 34–35°C, as there are numerous undesirable consequences of significant hypothermia (< 32°C) in the organ donor (e.g., cardiac dysrhythmia, cardiac instability, ↓ GFR and cold diuresis, a left shift in the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, and pancreatitis). Although other endocrine or metabolic disturbances may exist as a result of destruction of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, currently there is no consistent recommendation for any other hormonal replacement therapy. **Tests:** Serum electrolytes and osmolality every 4 h
Hematologic	Donors may be anemic from hemodilution and/or hemorrhage. To ensure adequate tissue O_2 delivery, PRBCs are transfused to maintain Hct > 30. Some donors may exhibit a coagulopathy; clinically significant bleeding should be treated with clotting factors and Plts. Persistent or severe primary fibrinolysis or DIC may require rapid transfer of the donor to the OR for organ retrieval. Administration of epsilon-aminocaproic acid to treat fibrinolysis is avoided for fear of microvascular thrombosis in the donor organs. **Tests:** Hb/Hct; PT; PTT; Plt count; DIC screen as clinically indicated
Other	The role of oxygen-free radicals, with regard to reperfusion injury, has prompted the suggested use of mannitol and steroids (and other compounds) as scavengers.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Although anesthesia is unnecessary in brain-dead organ donors, both visceral and somatic reflexes can lead to physiologic responses during the procedure. The goals of intraop management with regard to respiratory, cardiovascular, hematologic, and neurologic status are identical to those discussed under preop considerations earlier.

Induction	Settings for mechanical ventilation parallel those of the ICU, although it may be advisable to begin with an FiO_2 of 100% until the first ABG result is obtained. The exception is when procurement of the lungs or heart-lungs is anticipated; then FiO_2 should not exceed 40%. To eliminate reflex neuromuscular activity and to facilitate surgical retraction, a longer acting neuromuscular blocking agent should be given at the beginning of the procedure and supplemented as necessary.
Maintenance	Reflex hypertensive responses to surgical stimulation occur frequently and may → excessive intraop blood loss and damage to donor kidneys; management should include the weaning of vasopressors and the initiation of vasodilator therapy with isoflurane, SNP, or NTG. Anesthetic care continues until the proximal aortic cross-clamp is applied. D/C all monitoring and supportive therapy at this point. The notable exception is the case of heart-lung or lung procurement; in this situation, all monitoring except FiO_2 should cease with proximal aortic cross-clamping. All supportive care is terminated, with the exception of mechanical ventilation of the lungs at 4 breaths/min or as directed by the transplant team and suctioning of the ETT after cessation of mechanical ventilation just prior to removal of the tube. Extubation marks the termination of anesthetic care of the heart-lung or lung donor.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	Significant 3rd-space losses may require large volumes of crystalloid, colloid (up to 1 L) and PRBCs (not uncommon to transfuse 2 or more U to maintain Hct > 30). Central venous access is necessary for monitoring and for vasoactive drug delivery.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Art line CVP line UO	If a PA catheter is in place, it may be used or removed based on concerns of catheter-related, right-side endocardial lesions. Rarely is insertion of a PA catheter warranted in these operations. ABG, Hb/Hct, serum electrolytes, and glucose should be monitored hourly; for operations involving procurement of lungs or heart-lungs, ABGs should be obtained at least every 30–60 min.
Complications	Hypotension	Most commonly 2° hypovolemia and neurogenic shock (loss of descending vasomotor control). Ensure adequate volume repletion as described previously, then institute or increase inotropic/vasopressor therapy as previously outlined.
	Dysrhythmias	Multiple possible etiologies as described previously. Standard treatment and diagnosis should be employed, with the exception of bradycardia, which is atropine-resistant and should be treated with isoproterenol, dopamine, epinephrine, or transvenous pacing.
	Cardiac arrest	CPR should be instituted in an effort to maintain the viability of the liver, kidneys, and other abdominal viscera intended for transplantation. Procurement of the liver and kidneys should proceed rapidly to aortic cross-clamping at the diaphragm and administration of cold preservation fluid into the aorta and portal vein. This series of events will undoubtedly preclude use of the heart and lungs for transplantation.
	Oliguria	Ensure adequate volume replacement and BP as outlined, then add dopamine (2–3 mcg/kg/min), if not previously instituted to promote renal vasodilation and to increase renal blood flow, glomerular filtration rate, and UO. If these measures are ineffective at restoring adequate UO (> 1 mL/kg/h), then furosemide or mannitol may be used, after consultation with the transplant team.
	Diabetes insipidus (DI)	Fluid and electrolyte therapy as determined by filling pressures and hourly serum electrolyte values. Adjustment of vasopressin or DDAVP infusion to maintain UO < 1.5–3.0 mL/kg/h; initiation of this infusion should be done in consultation with the transplant team. As previously discussed, it may be advisable to D/C vasopressin or DDAVP at least 1 h before aortic cross-clamping.
	Coagulopathy	Transfuse Plt, FFP, and cryoprecipitate as necessary for clinical bleeding in the setting of abnormal coagulation studies. Avoid EACA due to risk of microvascular thrombosis in the donor organs.
	Hyperglycemia	Avoid dextrose-containing solutions, which may aggravate existing hyperglycemia and contribute to osmotic diuresis and electrolyte abnormalities.

Complications (cont'd)	Hypothermia	Early aggressive attempts to minimize intraop heat loss are essential and include warming the OR, use of a forced-air warming blanket, insulating exposed areas, warming all fluids, and using heated, humidified inspired gases.
Special considerations	Heart-lung procurement	Division of the mediastinal pleura and tracheal dissection with manipulation of each lung outside the mediastinum may result in ↓↓ BP and may cause problems with oxygenation and ventilation. Adequate intravascular volume is essential, and inotropic therapy may be required during this period. Problems with ventilation and oxygenation must be communicated immediately to the transplant team. Following aortic cross-clamping and infusion of cardioplegia solution, the lung preservation fluid will be infused via the right and left PAs. During this period, the lungs should be ventilated manually with 4 bpm, or as otherwise directed by the transplant team. It is prudent early on in the procurement procedure to verify the position of the ETT with the transplant surgeon to ensure that the tube does not contribute to mucosal injury at the site of the anticipated suture line.
	Organ preservation	Therapy aimed at improving organ preservation may require several pharmacologic manipulations, as directed by the transplant team. Agents commonly used during organ procurement include dopamine (2–3 mcg/kg/min), furosemide, mannitol, allopurinol (free-radical scavenger), chlorpromazine and phentolamine (vasodilators), heparin (prevents microvascular thrombosis and promotes reperfusion), and PGE_1 (vasodilator, membrane stabilizer, antiplatelet effect). Systemic infusion of PGE_1 prior to aortic cross-clamping (commonly used in heart-lung or lung procurement) will lead to predictable and profound ↓ BP; efforts at volume resuscitation toward optimal CVP should continue until the aortic cross-clamp is applied. If heparin is to be administered iv, a catheter should be used after verifying the ability to freely aspirate blood. Methylprednisolone (30 mg/kg) is commonly administered at least 2 h before organ retrieval in an effort to protect the heart and kidneys from ischemic injury.

Suggested Readings

1. Bernat JL, D'Alessandro AM, Port FK, et al: Report of a National Conference on Donation after Cardiac Death. *Am J Transplant* 2006; 6:281–91.
2. Fanelli V, Mascia L: Anesthetic optimization for non-heart-beating donors. *Curr Opin Anaesth* 2010; 23:406–10.
3. Mandell MS, Hendrickse A: Donation after cardiac death. *Curr Opin Organ Transplant* 2007; 12:298–302.
4. Powner DJ, Kellum JA, Darby JM: Abnormalities in fluids, electrolytes, and metabolism of organ donors. *Prog Transplant* 2000; 10(2):88–94.
5. Van Norman GA: Another matter of life and death: what every anesthesiologist should know about the ethical, legal and policy implications of the non-heart-beating cadaver organ donor. *Anesthesiology* 2003; 98:763–73.

CHAPTER

7.13 Trauma Surgery

SURGEONS

Daniel J. Riskin, MD
David A. Spain, MD
Ronald Jou, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Charles C. Hill, MD

INITIAL ASSESSMENT AND AIRWAY MANAGEMENT FOR TRAUMA SURGERY

INITIAL ASSESSMENT

The Advanced Trauma Life-Support (ATLS) Program, developed by the Committee on Trauma American College of Surgeons, provides a safe and reliable method for the immediate treatment of injured patients. The crucial components of ATLS are the rapid and accurate assessment of a patient's condition, the resuscitation and stabilization of the patient according to a sequence of priorities, determining the need for and arranging interhospital transfer, and ensuring optimal care throughout the entire process. The initial assessment and management consists of the primary survey and resuscitation.

During the primary survey, life-threatening conditions are identified and treated following the ABCDE sequence. Airway patency should be assessed while maintaining cervical spine protection. In situations when a patient's airway integrity is unclear or at risk, a definitive airway should be established. Breathing and ventilation are assessed, paying attention to any chest injuries that can impair adequate gas exchange. Conditions such as tension pneuomothorax, massive hemothorax, flail chest, and open pneumothorax should be identified and treated. Supplemental oxygen should be delivered and oxygenation should be monitored with pulse oximetry. Circulation is assessed, and shock, if present, should be recognized. In trauma, the presence of shock is usually due to hemorrhage, and definitive control of bleeding and replacement of intravascular volume are crucial. Disability from neurologic injury should be assessed. Patients with severe neurologic injury may require definitive airway management or urgent neurosurgical evaluation. Exposure involves undressing the patient to identify any other life-threatening injuries while keeping the patient warm.

EXTENDED FOCUSED ASSESSMENT WITH SONOGRAPHY FOR TRAUMA (eFAST)

An ultrasound screening examination of the trauma patient that allows for the rapid detection of pericardial fluid (pericardial tamponade), pneumothorax, hemothorax, and peritoneal free-fluid can speed triage and treatment of trauma patients. It is important to note that many injuries cannot be detected by ultrasound (e.g., bowel perforations, torn diaphragm), and that eFast examinations have a small but significant false negative rate. Ultrasound is not a substitute for more definitive diagnostic procedures.

AIRWAY MANAGEMENT

In trauma, indications for definitive airway can be divided into conditions that require airway protection and conditions that require control of ventilation or oxygenation. Airway patency can be compromised by obtundation, severe facial injuries, bleeding or vomiting, or obstruction from neck or airway injuries. The need for ventilation or oxygenation is indicated by apnea, respiratory distress, severe closed head injury, or hemodynamic instability.

Although airway management in injured patients does not differ fundamentally from airway management in other situations, attention must be paid to cervical spine protection, high risk of vomiting and aspiration, and recognition of maxillofacial, neck, laryngeal, or head injuries that can cause airway compromise.

Airway maneuvers such as the chin-lift or jaw-thrust maneuver are useful techniques to improve airway patency in unconscious or obtunded patients, although they must be performed without extending the neck and potentially exacerbating a cervical spine injury.

Airway adjuncts such as oropharyngeal airway, nasopharyngeal airway, or laryngeal mask airway are useful for providing temporary ventilation and oxygenation until a definitive airway (oral or nasal ETT or surgical airway) can be established.

Oraltracheal intubation, with the use of appropriate neuromuscular blockade and cricoid pressure, is the preferred technique. The approach is rapid, but at least three people are required to perform it safely in the patient with suspected C-spine injury.

In-line stabilization of the neck is performed to minimize neck and spine movements. Because a failed intubation may force operative airway intubation, equipment for cricothyrotomy should be immediately accessible. Fiberoptic assistance and other techniques for endotracheal intubation including video laryngoscopy may be used in the stable patient with a difficult airway. Patients in respiratory distress with severe facial or neck trauma or unstable cervical spine injury require a surgical airway. An airway placed in transport should be immediately assessed for position and changed to a definitive airway when appropriate.

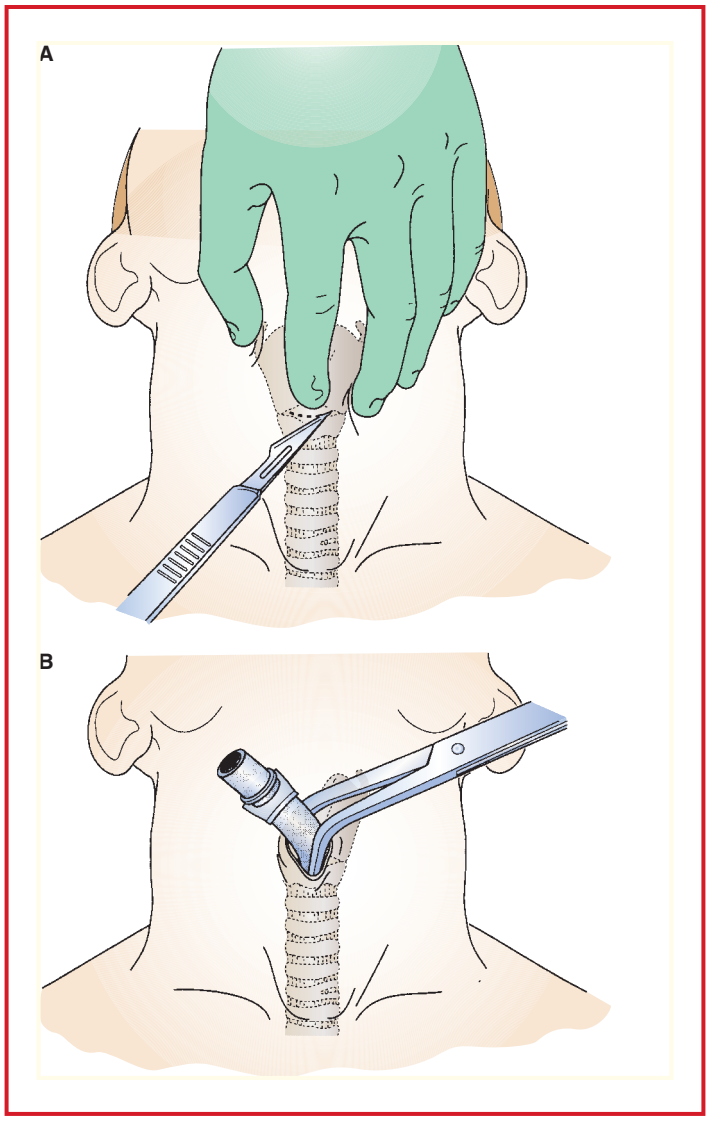


Figure 7.13-1. Cricothyrotomy (vertical skin incision not shown). **A:** Identification of the cricothyroid membrane by palpation and incision of the membrane transversely. **B:** Insertion of a tracheostomy tube or ETT through the cricothyroid membrane, which is spread with a tracheal dilator. (Redrawn with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1997.)

Nasotracheal intubation, used only in spontaneously breathing trauma patients, can be performed without the use of pharmacologic agents or special equipment. It is, however, associated with higher incidence of vomiting and aspiration. In the intoxicated patient with a depressed level of consciousness, the success rate may be as low as 65%. Blind nasal intubation is contraindicated in patients with unstable midface fractures, penetrating neck trauma, or significant neck hematomas.

Cricothyrotomy (Fig. 7.13-1) is the preferred method in adults who require a surgical airway. The important anatomic landmarks of the superior and inferior borders of the thyroid and cricoid cartilages are palpated. The thyroid cartilage is then stabilized, a vertical skin incision is made, and the ETT or tracheostomy tube is rapidly advanced through subcutaneous tissue. The cricothyroid membrane lies very superficially, covered only by the skin and platysma muscle. The cricothyroid membrane is incised transversely with the scalpel. In emergency situations, a standard small-caliber ETT is generally easier to insert than a tracheostomy tube (Fig. 7.13-1B). Cricothyrotomies should be converted to tracheotomies within 72 h after the initial injury, provided the patient's condition permits.

A **tracheostomy** is indicated for patients requiring surgical airway in less emergent situations or if a cricothyrotomy cannot be performed due to direct laryngeal injury. A tracheostomy can be accomplished through the same incision, extended caudally, if laryngeal injury is found (see p. 728). Rarely, the injury is in the distal cervical or proximal intrathoracic trachea. In such cases, it may be necessary to intubate the distal end of the airway through the wound. A subsequent median sternotomy may be required to expose the injury. Right thoracotomy provides access to the distal intrathoracic trachea (see Chest Trauma, p. 737).

Usual preop diagnosis: Airway compromise

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Midline longitudinal incision in the neck
Unique considerations	The large number of legal claims involving failed intubation suggests that surgical cricothyrotomy remains an underutilized technique.
Antibiotics	Usually not given until clear indications related to the primary injury are apparent.
Surgical time	2 min
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Mechanical ventilation
Mortality	Related to the primary injury
Morbidity	Cricothyrotomy is more likely to result in airway stricture or damage to more proximal structures in the larynx. On this basis, cricothyrotomy is converted to tracheostomy within 48–72 h of admission if patient's general condition permits.
Pain score	3

EMERGENCY TUBE THORACOSTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In the United States, trauma is the most common cause of death in young people; 25% of these deaths (~16,000 per year) are the result of thoracic trauma. Most of these are due to lethal injuries at the scene (e.g., cardiac rupture, free aortic transection). For patients who reach the hospital, proper management is crucial because many deaths can be prevented. Early deaths are due to airway obstruction, tension pneumothorax, massive hemothorax, flail chest, cardiac tamponade, and open pneumothorax. Later deaths are due to respiratory failure, sepsis, and unrecognized injuries.

Eighty percent of blunt thoracic injuries are caused by motor vehicle collisions (MVCs). Penetrating injuries to the chest are almost as common as blunt trauma. The death rate in hospitalized patients with isolated chest injury is 4–8%; this increases to 10–15% when one other organ system is involved and to 35% if multiple additional organs are injured. Eighty-five percent of chest injuries do not require thoracotomy, and the patient can be managed with relatively simple measures, such as airway control, tube thoracostomy, and pain management. Blunt trauma can induce injury by three distinctive mechanisms: direct blow, deceleration injury, and compression injury. Rib fracture is the most common sign of blunt thoracic trauma. Fracture of the upper ribs (1st–3rd), clavicle, or scapula implies high-energy impact and is associated with a higher likelihood of major vascular injury.

Life-threatening injuries caused by penetrating trauma are distinctly different from those caused by blunt trauma. In penetrating chest injuries, pneumothorax is almost always present, and hemothorax is present in 80% of cases. Hemodynamic instability in penetrating chest injury generally heralds a major intrathoracic vascular injury.

Tension pneumothorax may be caused by blunt or penetrating trauma. Venous return to the heart is impaired by the increased intrathoracic pressure and compression of the vena cava → ↓ BP resulting in distended neck veins. Loss of lung volume on the ipsilateral side and subsequent compression of the contralateral side leads to

impaired ventilation and hypoxia. The diagnosis of tension pneumothorax is made clinically. The presence of respiratory distress and absent or diminished breath sounds warrant immediate needle decompression (14–16-ga catheter through the 2nd intercostal space, midclavicular line), followed by subsequent tube thoracostomy. Treatment should not be delayed for radiographic confirmation. In the hemodynamically stable patient, however, suspicion of a pneumothorax should be confirmed by x-ray. On the CXR, a 20% loss of lung dimension corresponds to ~50% loss of lung volume. A small, simple pneumothorax (< 10%) with no respiratory compromise may be observed. These patients require close observation in the hospital and a repeat CXR in 4–6 h. Tube thoracostomy should be performed for a large pneumothorax (> 10%), for patients with respiratory compromise or multiple injuries, or when it is not possible to adequately monitor the patient (e.g., during extended transport). Recent developments in emergency ultrasonography have led to the adoption of the "eFAST" examination, which includes ultrasound examination of the anterior chest to detect pneumothoraces. An abnormal eFAST exam may alert the team to the presence of a significant pneumothorax even before a CXR can be obtained. In the presence of an anterior pneumothorax, the eFAST may even be superior in sensitivity to a supine CXR.

As much as 40% of the circulating blood volume can accumulate in a **hemothorax**. The most frequent sources of bleeding are the intercostal and internal mammary vessels. Some degree of hemothorax is present in almost every patient with chest injury. A supine CXR may miss up to 1 L of blood. Although an upright CXR is more sensitive, this is generally impractical in a multiple-trauma patient (whose spine often has not been fully evaluated). Following chest tube placement, blood loss > 1200–1500 mL or an ongoing loss of 250 mL/h for 4 h suggest the need for surgical intervention.

Simple pneumothorax without associated hemothorax can be treated with a 20–22 Fr chest tube placed in the 4th intercostal space in the midaxillary line or in the 5th intercostal space in the anterior axillary line. Hemothorax and tension pneumothorax require a large-bore, 28–36 Fr chest tube placed in the midaxillary line through the 5th intercostal space (Fig. 7.13-2). A 20-mL syringe with 1% lidocaine can be used not only to provide local anesthesia, but also to locate the upper edge of the rib in the obese patient. A generous 3-cm incision should be made one interspace below the targeted level. The subcutaneous tissues are dissected bluntly, creating a tunnel that is directed

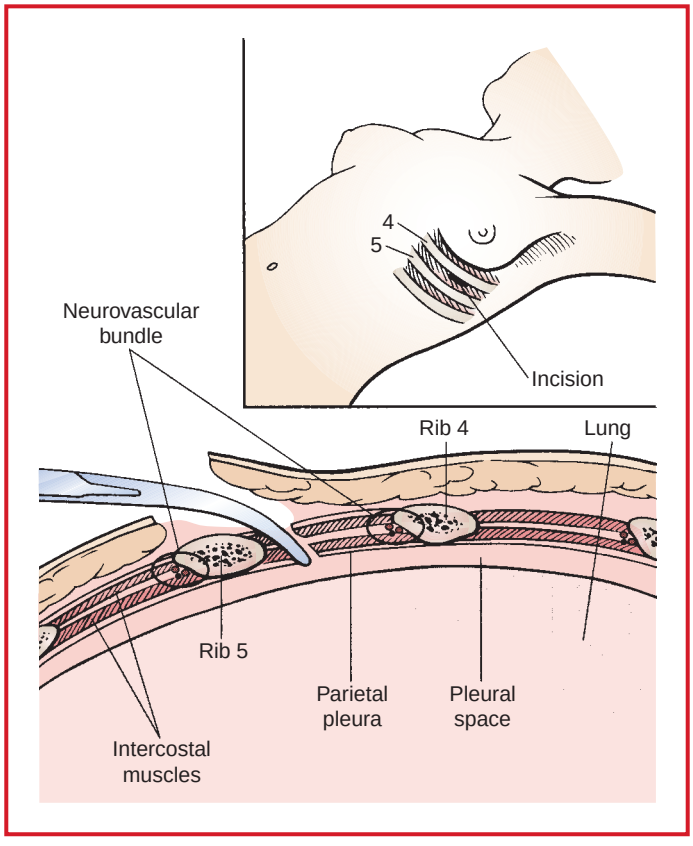


Figure 7.13-2. Tube thoracostomy. Incision through 4th or 5th interspace at anterior axillary line. Forceps are used to tunnel over the superior edge of the rib and to bluntly enter the pleural space.

upward. The pleural space should be entered just above the upper edge of the rib to avoid injury to the intercostal neurovascular bundle, located just below the lower edge of the rib. After the pleural space has been entered bluntly, it should be explored with the operator's finger swept around to ensure proper location and to free potential adhesions. The chest tube should be inserted and advanced in the posterior and superior direction. The tube then should be connected to a suction/collection system under 20 cm of water-negative pressure, preferably through an autotransfusion device. Repeat chest exam and CXR should immediately follow chest tube placement to evaluate decompression and assess for other injuries. If the pleural space still contains blood, another chest tube could be inserted or video-assisted thoracoscopy (VAT) could be considered if major vascular injury is not suspected.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tension pneumothorax; pneumothorax; hemothorax

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine with arm abducted 90°
Incision	3 cm in interspace below 5th intercostal space in midaxillary line
Special instrumentation	38–40 Fr chest tube should be used in most patients. Small, 20–22 Fr tube reserved for simple pneumothorax in stable patients. Autotransfusion device should be available in ED.
Unique considerations	In tension pneumothorax, a large-bore needle inserted in the 2nd intercostal space of the midclavicular line can relieve tension and save a patient's life.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	5 min
EBL	Minimal from tube placement. Variable amounts drained out, depending on extent of hemothorax and associated injuries.
Postop care	Chest tube may be removed after at least 48 h, when there is no air leak from lung and < 100–150 mL of fluid drainage per 24 h.
Mortality	Isolated chest injury: 4–8% When one other organ system is involved: 10–15% When two or more organ systems involved: > 35%
Morbidity	Clotted hemothorax Empyema Lung abscess Lung contusion
Pain score	5

EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT THORACOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Rarely, emergency department **thoracotomy** may offer the only chance of survival in highly selected trauma patients. Its use should be restricted largely to patients who show signs of life in the emergency department (ED) but lose such signs shortly thereafter. The usual indications are (a) massive exsanguination in the left chest, usually due to cardiac, vascular, or pulmonary injuries and (b) pericardial tamponade. For patients with penetrating cardiac injuries who show signs of life in the ED, survival may be as high as 15%. For blunt trauma in this setting, survival is < 1%, regardless of presentation. With either mechanism, functional survival is almost unprecedented if the patient arrives without vital signs and unreactive pupils.

A **left anterolateral thoracotomy** is the preferred approach because pericardiotomy, open cardiac massage, and aortic occlusion are best achieved by this means. This incision can be extended easily across the sternum and into the right chest to improve exposure and to control massive blood loss and/or air embolism from the right lung. The entire chest is prepped liberally, and left anterolateral thoracotomy is performed rapidly in the 5th intercostal space

using a large-blade scalpel. Heavy scissors can be used to quickly divide the intercostal muscles and to cut across the sternum. If pericardial tamponade is encountered, the pericardium is opened longitudinally, anterior to the phrenic nerve. Blood and clot are evacuated and bleeding sites controlled with gentle digital pressure. Large, full-thickness lacerations that extend into the chambers may be controlled by inserting a Foley catheter, inflating the balloon, and pulling it snug against the myocardium. The open end of the Foley can be clamped or used as an infusion line for resuscitation. During ED thoracotomy, placement of clamps on the atria or ventricles should be avoided as they may extend the laceration. Attempts to repair cardiac lacerations should be delayed until resuscitative measures have been completed. In the nonbeating heart, suturing is performed prior to defibrillation. If coronary or systemic air embolism is present, the appropriate hilum is cross-clamped and air is aspirated from the left ventricle through the elevated apex. Cardiac arrest is an indication for immediate internal massage. The two-hand method is preferred, and internal defibrillation should be instituted. If internal defibrillation does not restore proper cardiac activity, cross-clamping of the aorta will improve coronary perfusion. To cross-clamp the aorta, the left lung is retracted anteriorly and superiorly, and the posterior pleura is dissected under direct vision. An orogastric or nasogastric tube placed in the esophagus aids in the identification of the esophagus by feel, allowing for cross-clamping of the aorta without risking injury to the adjacent esophagus.

Usual preop diagnosis: Penetrating chest trauma with cardiac arrest and recent recorded signs of life

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Left anterolateral thoracotomy. Extension of incision across sternum could be considered for improved exposure.
Special instrumentation	ED thoracotomy tray; internal defibrillator paddles; suction device; Foley catheter; rapid-infusion device; O(–) blood
Unique considerations	Airway should be secured first. OG/NGT tube should be placed if possible. Typically, patients are not anesthetized for this procedure.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	10 min
EBL	1–2 L
Postop care	ICU
Mortality	Blunt trauma: 98% All penetrating chest injuries requiring ED thoracotomy: 85% Penetrating cardiac injury: 50%
Morbidity	Arrhythmias Acute MI
Pain score	10

EXPLORATORY SURGERY FOR NECK TRAUMA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The neck contains vital structures in a relatively unprotected region of the body (Fig. 7.13-3). The cardiovascular, respiratory, digestive, endocrine, and CNS systems are all represented in the neck; injury to any of these can be fatal.

Injuries to the neck may result from blunt or penetrating trauma. In blunt trauma, < 5% of cases will have C-spine injuries. Because the consequences are so grave, however, all patients should be evaluated for C-spine injuries (H&P, x-rays, CT), and full spinal precautions should be maintained until the C-spine is cleared. Blunt airway injuries can

be devastating and present significant management difficulties; however, the majority of blunt neck trauma consists of minor soft-tissue injuries that can be managed nonoperatively. Blunt cerebrovascular injuries can occur from a direct blow to the cartoid or vertebral arteries, or from a severe hyperextension or rotation mechanism.

Penetrating neck trauma is defined as penetration of the platysma muscle. For these injuries, the neck is usually divided into three horizontal zones (Fig. 7.13-3, inset). Zone I extends from the sternal notch to the cricoid cartilage. Penetrating injuries in this area are associated with a high mortality. Zone II extends from the cricoid cartilage to the angle of the mandible. Because this is the most exposed region of the neck, injuries can be evaluated and explored using standard operative techniques. Zone III extends from the angle of the mandible to the base of the skull. Because of anatomic

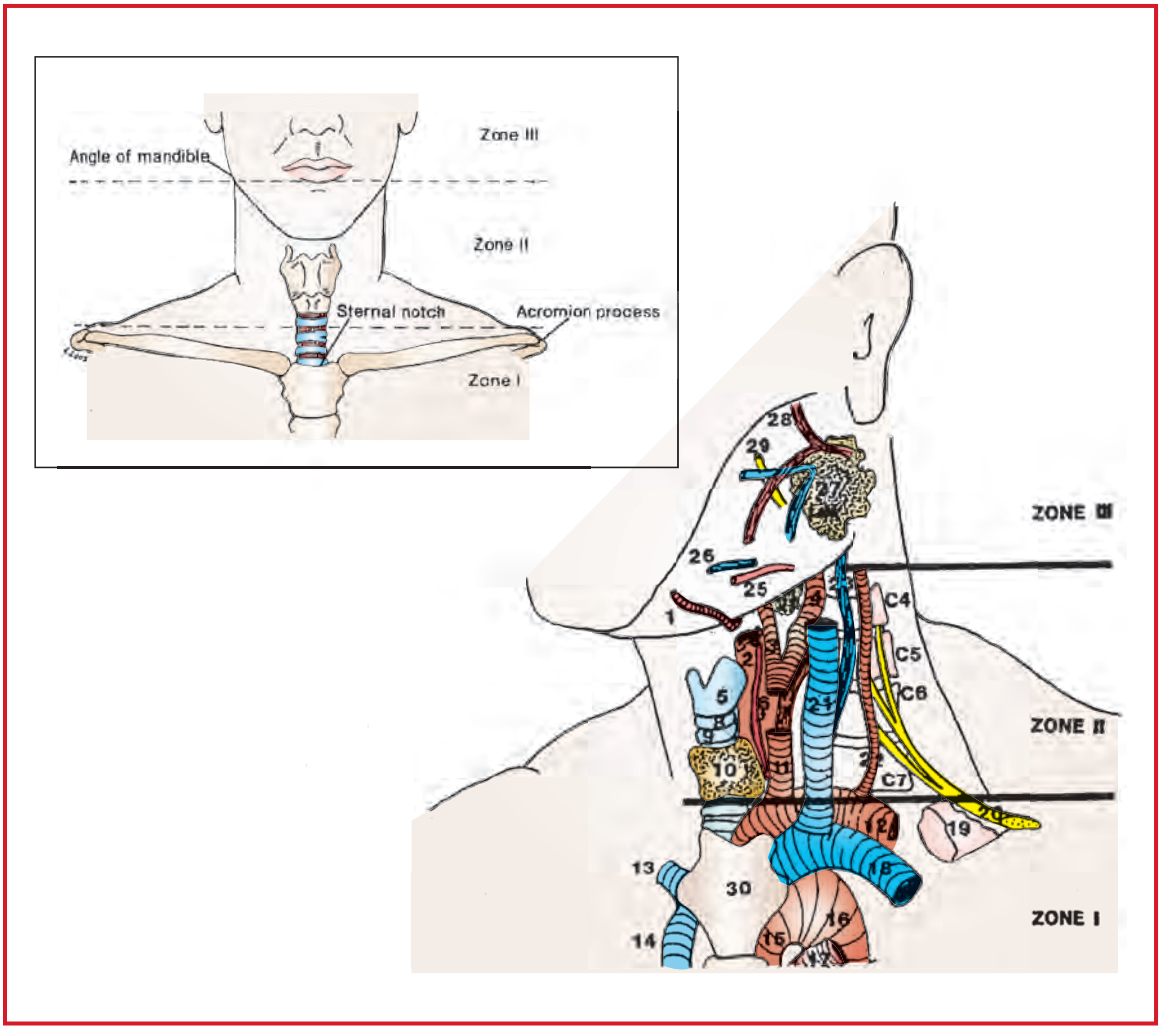


Figure 7.13-3. Cervical structures contained in Zones I, II, and III: (1) facial artery; (2) esophagus; (3) internal carotid artery; (4) external carotid artery; (5) thyroid cartilage; (6) sympathetic trunk; (7) vagus nerve; (8) cricothyroid membrane; (9) cricoid cartilage; (10) thyroid cartilage; (11) common carotid artery; (12) subclavian artery; (13) right innominate vein; (14) SVC; (15) ascending aorta; (16) descending aorta; (17) PA; (18) subclavian vein; (19) clavicle; (20) brachial plexus; (21) IJ vein; (22) vertebral artery; (23) phrenic nerve; (24) submandibular gland; (25) lingual artery; (26) hypoglossal nerve; (27) parotid gland and duct; (28) facial nerve and its branches; (29) maxillary artery; (30) sternal manubrium. The thoracic duct is not shown in this figure. (Adapted with permission from Ordog GJ, et al: *J Trauma* 1985; 25:238). (Inset reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

constraints, injuries to Zones I and III can be difficult to identify and repair. In patients with a Zone I injury, iv access should be established in the contralateral upper extremity because of the possible injury to the ipsilateral internal jugular vein or subclavian vein.

Until recently, evaluation and management of stable patients with neck injuries that penetrated the platysma depended on location of injury. Injuries to Zones I and III were evaluated radiographically, whereas injuries to Zone II were indications for mandatory exploration. With the increased availability of CT and arteriography, however, a selective exploration strategy is now favored. The presence of so-called hard signs, including airway compromise, shock, active bleeding, an expanding hematoma, an evolving stroke, or extensive subcutaneous air generally mandate operative exploration. "Soft signs," which include hoarseness, hemoptysis, hematemesis, dysphagia, or prominent ecchymosis, can be evaluated with CT and endoscopy.

Management of hemodynamically unstable or symptomatic patients with penetrating neck injuries should be limited to applying direct pressure, protecting the airway, establishing iv access, and obtaining a CXR. Exploration and definitive management of the injury in the OR should follow as soon as possible. In stable patients with penetrating injuries and no indications for exploration, CT is generally the first diagnostic test.

A **median sternotomy incision** may be used for patients with right-neck Zone I injuries or if injuries to the mediastinum involving the innominate artery or right subclavian artery are suspected. Exposure of injuries to the proximal left subclavian artery is extremely difficult via median sternotomy. In this case, a left anterior thoracotomy is preferred. The chest and left arm should be prepped and draped to allow arm manipulation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Penetrating neck injury

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with head turned away from side of exploration and neck extended. If both sides of neck require exploration, head should be in midposition. It is helpful to clear the C-spine before exploration.
Incision	Sternocleidomastoid anterior border
Unique considerations	Monitor BP and HR carefully during carotid sinus manipulation.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv. If pharyngoesophageal injury: ampicillin 1 g and gentamicin 80 mg iv.
Surgical time	1 h
Closing considerations	Wound requires drainage, especially in Zone I exploration and if esophagus or airway was violated.
EBL	Variable
Postop care	ICU 12–24 h for neurologic and airway monitoring. After carotid injury repair, angiography should be considered.
Mortality	1%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage: acute from injuries; delayed from pseudoaneurysms Airway injury: acute loss of airway; delayed tracheal stenosis Damage to neural or vascular structures Esophageal fistula
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Typically young adult
Etiology	Typically male
Incidence	5–10% of all trauma involves neck structures.
Associated conditions	Intrathoracic injuries; spinal cord injuries; recurrent laryngeal nerve injury; phrenic nerve injuries; thoracic duct injury

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR NECK TRAUMA SURGERY

PREOPERATIVE

Patients with neck injuries often present unique challenges for ET intubation. Extensive internal damage may be present despite minimal external signs. High-velocity deceleration events, or "clothesline" injuries, are often associated with airway compromise. Vascular injuries, particularly involving the carotid artery, can markedly distort internal anatomy and prevent visualization of laryngeal structures or passage of an ETT. Known or suspected C-spine injuries will restrict optimal positioning of the head and neck for laryngoscopy. Facial or dental injuries may impede access for laryngoscopy because of limited mouth opening or the presence of blood in the oropharynx. The use of alternative methods to secure the airway (e.g., fiberoptic bronchoscopy or video laryngoscopy) or a surgical approach may be the safest option. Equipment for a surgical airway should be available prior to attempting ET intubation.

Airway	Preop assessment of the airway and nature and extent of the cervical injury is crucial. Stridor and hoarseness may be present with laryngeal injury or compression of the trachea. Assess patient's ability to talk as a part of the airway evaluation. C-spine injury (though not common with penetrating neck injuries) should be evaluated by x-ray or CT scan. Airway injury can be associated with subcutaneous emphysema or pneumothorax. The extent of mouth opening, dental injuries, and any distortion of internal and external structures due to tissue swelling or hematoma should be determined before intubation. The CXR or CT should be examined carefully for evidence of tracheal deviation compression or pneumothorax. **Tests:** x-ray; CT scan; ABG
Cardiovascular	The patient should be evaluated for the extent of blood loss (eFAST results, BP, HR, capillary refill, peripheral pulse, skin condition). In addition to vascular injuries, associated facial and dental injuries may result in significant occult blood loss accumulated in the stomach. Venous lacerations can allow air embolism.
Neurological	Deficits associated with acute compromise of cerebral arterial blood flow should be evaluated on physical exam. Damage to the recurrent laryngeal nerve can occur, resulting in changes in voice and ↑ aspiration risk. C-spine injuries should be assessed by physical exam (neck pain, neurologic examination) and radiologic studies (lateral C-spine x-rays [including C-7] CT scan, MRI).
Premedication	Full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	The induction technique will depend on the associated injuries and physical exam. In the hypovolemic patient, induction doses of propofol should be reduced by 50–75% to minimize ↓↓ BP. Consider etomidate (0.2–0.3 mg/kg) or ketamine (0.5–1 mg/kg iv) as alternative induction agents. A rapid-sequence iv induction with cricoid pressure is usually required. In the presence of a vascular injury, the cough reflex and the BP response to intubation should be suppressed (e.g., remifentanil 1 mcg/kg iv), in addition to induction agents, to prevent expansion of the hematoma. A wide range of ETT sizes (5.0–8.0 mm) should be available. If C-spine injury is suspected, in-line stabilization of the patient's head and neck should be provided by an assistant. In the presence of an unstable C-spine, cricoid pressure may be associated with further injury. If a difficult intubation is anticipated, fiberoptic intubation (see p. I-2), video laryngoscopy, or an awake surgical airway (cricothyrotomy or tracheotomy) should be considered. In patients with penetrating neck injuries; "blind" intubation techniques should be avoided.

Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3) is usually appropriate for the normotensive neck-trauma patient. In cases of vascular injury, careful control of BP in the low normal range is advantageous. When nerve testing is anticipated, either no muscle relaxation or a short-acting agent (e.g., mivacurium) should be used.	
Emergence	Postop intubation and mechanical ventilation is prudent in patients with residual neurological deficits or oropharyngeal swelling. BP control at low normal levels and slight elevation of the head of the bed (10–20°) will help to resolve tissue edema. Awake extubation is the goal in patients with minimal distortion of the airway at the conclusion of the procedure.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Blood transfusion may be necessary with vascular injuries.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line	Invasive monitoring may be indicated for patients with major vascular injuries; however, the placement should not delay the start of emergency surgery.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	With suspected or known C-spine injuries, stabilization of the head and neck in the neutral position is required.
Complications	Awareness Hypothermia	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage Hematoma Airway compromise	BP control at low normal levels (SNP infusion, labetalol, NTG) and elevation of the head of the bed (10–20°) will help minimize tissue edema and hematoma formation, which could lead to airway compromise.
Pain management	See p. C-1.	
Tests	As indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma: Advanced trauma life support for doctors. In *Student Course Manual*, 9th edition. American College of Surgeons, Chicago: 2012.
2. Dutton RP, McCunn M, Grissom TE.: Anesthesia for trauma. In: Miller RD, et al., eds. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 7th edition, Vol 2. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2010, 2277–312.
3. Hemmila MR, Wahl WL. Management of the injured patient. In: Doherty GM, ed. *Current Diagnosis and Treatment Surgery*. McGraw-Hill Medical, New York: 2010.
4. Mattox KL, Moore EE, Feliciano DV, eds.: *Trauma*, 7th edition. McGraw Hill, New York: 2012.

CHEST TRAUMA: PERICARDIAL WINDOW, RELEASE OF TAMPONADE, REPAIR OF CARDIAC LACERATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Cardiac contusions may occur in patients with blunt chest trauma. The degree of injury varies from localized contusion to cardiac rupture, but most are clinically insignificant if the patient survives to the hospital. Autopsy studies of victims of immediately fatal accidents show that as many as 65% have rupture of one or more cardiac

chambers, and 45% have pericardial lacerations. Most of the patients with cardiac rupture die at the scene; however, survivors are reported if vital signs are present during transport. Early clinical findings in cardiac contusion are most commonly dysrhythmias, but occasionally patients can develop cardiac failure. The initial ECG in the ED is the most sensitive diagnostic test. The most common abnormalities are atrial arrhythmias and right bundle branch block. Serial cardiac monitoring is indicated only if the initial ECG is abnormal. Serum enzymes are not helpful. Management is symptomatic. Arrhythmias should be treated in the standard fashion and are not a contraindication to surgery. In the presence of blunt cardiac injury, hemodynamic abnormalities mandate echocardiographic examination to evaluate for structural lesions such as valve or myocardial rupture. Pericardial lacerations from stab wounds tend to seal and cause tamponade, present in 80–90% of patients with stab wounds to the heart. Accumulation of 150 mL of blood in the pericardium may impair preload and cause shock. **Beck's triad** of distended neck veins, muffled heart sounds, and ↓ BP is present in only 30% of patients with tamponade. Pulsus paradoxus is even less reliable. The diagnostic test of choice is ultrasound, performed in the ED as part of the focused assessment by sonography for trauma (eFAST) exam.

Treatment of penetrating cardiac injuries has gradually changed from initial management by **pericardiocentesis** to prompt **thoracotomy** and **pericardial decompression.** Pericardiocentesis, with ultrasound guidance, may be used to stabilize a patient until **sternotomy** or thoracotomy can be performed. A **subxiphoid pericardial window** is an option, but is best performed in the OR.

Gunshot wounds (GSWs) can produce extensive myocardial damage, multiple perforations, and massive bleeding into the pleural space. Hemothorax, shock, and exsanguination occur in nearly all cases of cardiac GSWs. Pericardial tamponade is often absent. Hemodynamically stable patients with penetrating injuries close to the heart should have ECHO evaluation in the ED only if equipment is immediately available. The presence of pericardial fluid should be evaluated with a eFAST scan. If a hemopericardium is confirmed, blood should be evacuated and injury treated in the OR.

Patients who are stable enough to be transported to the OR have excellent prognosis with reported survival of 97% for stab wounds and 71% for GSWs. In contrast, patients who require ED thoracotomy have only a 15% survival rate for penetrating injuries.

Subxiphoid pericardial window under local or GA: The entire chest is prepped for potential sternotomy. A vertical midline incision is made over the xiphoid process and upper epigastrium. The xiphoid is elevated or excised, allowing access to the pericardiophrenic membrane and anterior mediastinum. The pericardium is opened between two stay sutures and inspected for the presence of blood. With the use of eFAST scanning, this diagnostic test is most useful when the patient is already undergoing an **exploratory laparotomy** and there is a suspicion for a cardiac injury. If blood is present, a median sternotomy should be performed.

Median sternotomy provides excellent exposure to the heart, great vessels, and pulmonary hila. This approach is ideal for anterior injuries and for the unstable patient, but is less well suited for posterior injuries and left subclavian injuries.

Left anterior/anterolateral thoracotomy in the 5th intercostal space can be used in the stable patient or in the newly unstable ED patient with penetrating injury. The pericardium is opened anterior to the phrenic nerve, and tamponade is relieved. The bleeding heart is controlled with digital occlusion, and the laceration is closed with mattress sutures, with care being taken not to occlude coronary flow. Small coronary branches can be ligated, whereas others should be repaired and may even require **CPB**.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cardiac laceration

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, L arm abducted 90°
Incision	Median sternotomy or left anterior or anterolateral thoracotomy in 5th intercostal space. (See Fig. 7.13-4.) Further exposure may be obtained by transsternal extension into the R chest.
Special instrumentation	Rapid-infusion device; active rewarming system; internal defibrillator
Unique considerations	Massive blood loss is expected on opening pericardium and during repair of laceration. Large-bore peripheral lower extremity iv and central venous access are recommended for monitoring of volume replacement. A Foley catheter can be used to occlude laceration and as access for infusion. Arrhythmias are common.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	45 min
Closing considerations	Hypothermia and coagulopathy contribute to mortality.
EBL	1–2 L
Postop care	ICU
Mortality	Without tamponade: ~90% With tamponade: ~30%
Morbidity	Overall: 85% Pulmonary complications Acute MI Arrhythmias Intracardiac shunts Ventricular aneurysms Valvular lesions Retained foreign bodies
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually young adult
Etiology	GSWs, stab wounds, blunt trauma
Associated conditions	Hemothorax; pneumothorax; great-vessel injury; lung contusion

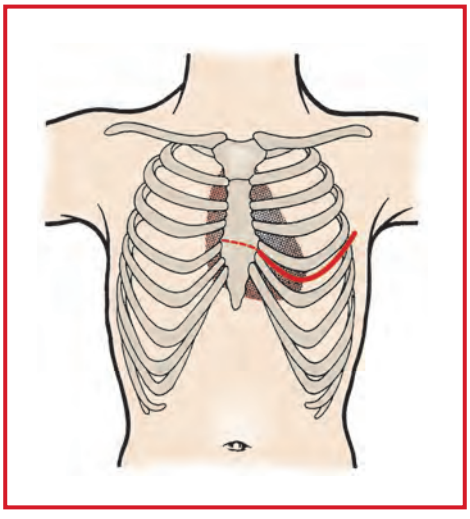


Figure 7.13-4. Incision (*dashed/solid line*) for ED thoracotomy: made immediately below the nipple, extending from sternum as far laterally as possible. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Chest Trauma, p. 743.

CHEST TRAUMA: REPAIR OF GREAT VESSELS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Thoracic great vessel injury accounts for 8–9% of all vascular injuries seen in the trauma center. The subclavian artery and descending thoracic aorta are the vessels injured most often (21% of cases), followed by pulmonary artery (16%), subclavian vein (13%), vena cava (11%), and innominate artery and pulmonary veins (9%).

Rupture of the thoracic aorta is the most lethal injury following blunt chest trauma and causes up to 50% of fatalities in MVCs. Proposed mechanism of injury is a deceleration force causing flexion or torsion of the aortic arch and subsequent disruption of the aortic wall at the ligamentum arteriosum immediately distal to the left subclavian artery. Survival of the patient depends on retention of the hematoma by the adventitial layer of the aorta. The mechanism of injury and the mediastinal silhouette on CXR are the two most sensitive markers for an injured thoracic aorta. Depressed left mainstem bronchus, apical capping, and a deviated trachea or esophagus (OG/NT tube) seen on CXR may be suggestive of aortic injury. CT angiogram of the chest has high sensitivity and is the preferred modality of evaluation in most trauma centers as a screening test. Arteriography is the gold standard for evaluating aortic injuries and may also allow therapeutic intervention.

Smaller dissections in blunt trauma may be managed in the ICU with tight control of heart rate and systolic blood pressure. Injuries requiring operative intervention are traditionally managed with **thoracotomy** and **graft interposition**. Newer endovascular techniques are increasingly used as an adjunct to surgery or for definitive repair. Investigation of these techniques is ongoing.

Ascending aorta: Rupture requires median sternotomy, CPB, and repair with a Dacron graft. Penetrating injury to the anterior aspect of the aorta can be repaired primarily; if there is additional posterior injury, CPB is required for successful repair.

Aortic arch: Complete exposure of the great vessels is required; median sternotomy with extension to the neck and division of the innominate vein may be utilized. Complex injuries may require CPB.

Innominate artery, right carotid artery: Approach is via a median sternotomy with right cervical extension and division of the innominate vein, if necessary. Blunt trauma typically involves the proximal innominate artery, in contrast to penetrating trauma, which usually involves the distal portion of the artery near the carotid or subclavian bifurcation. Injuries are repaired using an interposition graft of Dacron or Gore-Tex. Because cerebral perfusion is maintained through the L carotid and subclavian arteries, shunting is not necessary.

Descending thoracic aorta: 97% of patients with great-vessel injury who arrive alive at the hospital will have an injury at the isthmus. Clamping and direct reconstruction are required under temporary bypass shunt or pump-assisted shunt. Left posterolateral thoracotomy via the 4th intercostal space is the preferred access. Distal control of the descending aorta is obtained first; then the transverse aortic arch is exposed and umbilical tape is applied between L carotid and L subclavian arteries. Vascular clamps are applied at the proximal aorta, distal aorta, and subclavian artery. Graft interposition is utilized in 85% of the cases. An aortic cross-clamp time of < 30 min minimizes the incidence of paraplegia.

Subclavian artery or vein: Approach is via a cervical extension of the median sternotomy for right-sided injuries. Exposure of injuries to the proximal, left, subclavian artery via median sternotomy is usually inadequate. In patients with such injuries, a high left thoracotomy, often with either a supraclavicular or trap-door incision, is needed. Graft interposition is often necessary.

Pulmonary artery and veins: In major hilar injury, a **pneumonectomy** may be necessary, despite high mortality. Cross-clamping of the hilum prevents air embolus and hemorrhage. Simultaneous cross-clamping of the vessels and bronchus may reduce mortality in those patients requiring pneumonectomy. Fluid administration should be kept to a minimum to prevent right heart failure.

Thoracic vena cava: Intrathoracic IVC injury may cause hemopericardium and tamponade. Repair often is performed through the R atrium. SVC repair often is performed via a lateral venorrhaphy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Thoracic great vessel injury

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Anterolateral thoracotomy is preferred as it provides access to the descending aorta for cross-clamping, good access to heart, and may be extended across sternum into right chest.
Special instrumentation	Intraop blood recovery device; rapid-infusion device; graft materials for any vessels larger than 5 mm. CPB may be necessary.
Unique considerations	Use of vasodilators (SNP) prevents cardiac strain during cross-clamping of the aorta. Large amount of fluid is required to prevent hypotension after clamp removal.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–3 h
EBL	≥ 1 –2 L
Postop care	ICU. Careful hemodynamic monitoring is critical because underlying pulmonary contusion may be worsened by inappropriate fluid administration. PA catheter may be necessary to optimize hemodynamic parameters, particularly in older patients. Coagulation studies must be carefully monitored and corrected with appropriate blood products.
Mortality	In general, mortality is associated with multisystem trauma and usually 2° concomitant head injury, infection, respiratory insufficiency, and renal failure. Pulmonary artery or vein, suprahepatic IVC, or SVC injury: > 70% Ascending thoracic aorta, aortic arch (in patients with stable vital signs on arrival): 50% Blunt injury to the descending thoracic aorta: 5–25% Subclavian artery injury: 5%
Morbidity	Paraplegia: ~8% (with descending aortic injuries)
Pain score	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Typically young adult
Incidence	Thoracic great vessel injury accounts for 8–9% of all vascular injuries seen in the trauma center.
Etiology	Blunt trauma from MVC; penetrating trauma from stab wounds or GSWs
Associated conditions	Pneumothorax; hemothorax; head injury

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Chest Trauma, p. 743.

CHEST TRAUMA: PNEUMONECTOMY, LOBECTOMY, REPAIR OF TRACHEOBRONCHIAL INJURY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Penetrating injuries to the chest can be divided into high- and low-velocity injuries. All stab wounds are classified as low-velocity injuries. GSWs may be considered low- or high-velocity injuries, depending on energy of the bullet. The majority of GSWs seen in the ED are low-velocity; however, higher velocity injuries are being seen

with increased frequency. The extent of tissue destruction in high-velocity injuries is related to blast effect, tumbling, and fragmentation of the missile, as well as secondary missiles, such as bone fragments. Patients with such injuries are more likely to require **thoracotomy** and **pulmonary resection**. In general, pulmonary resection is required in 1% of stab wounds and 2% of GSWs. The indications for early operation are continued shock, prolonged bleeding, a larger air leak with inability to oxygenate or ventilate the patient, and suspected concomitant injuries to the vital intrathoracic structures. In most patients with stab wounds or low-velocity GSWs, bleeding from the lung tissue stops spontaneously after evacuation of the hemothorax and reexpansion of the lung. Only 5–10% of such patients will require thoracotomy to control bleeding as compared to a thoracotomy rate of 70% for high-velocity injuries. Pulmonary contusion is a frequent sequela of GSWs or blunt trauma to the chest. Pulmonary contusion occurs in 75% of patients with flail chest but also can occur following blunt trauma without rib fracture. Alveolar rupture with fluid transudation and extravasation of blood are early findings.

The incidence of tracheobronchial injuries reported in the autopsy series from MVC is 1%. Mechanisms of injury include rapid deceleration, direct blow, or sudden increase of intratracheal pressure against a closed glottis. The most common injury is transverse rupture, occurring in 74%, followed by longitudinal rupture in 18%, and complex in the remaining 8%. Approximately 80% of cases with tracheal rupture occur within 2.5 cm of the carina. Patients with injury to the airway may present with severe dyspnea and with massive subcutaneous emphysema. About 90% of these patients will have an abnormal CXR, showing pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, subcutaneous emphysema, or pleural effusion.

Tracheobronchoscopy should be performed in all patients with suspected tracheobronchial injuries to establish the diagnosis and plan operative treatment.

Parenchymal lacerations are repaired by the simplest method available to stop bleeding or air leak. If pulmonary resection is required, formal segmental resection is not necessary. A stapling device should be used to preserve as much lung tissue as possible.

Anatomic pulmonary resections are indicated when bronchial injury repair is not feasible or may lead to complete lobar collapse. **Pneumonectomy** may be required for major hilar injuries but is associated with a mortality rate of 75%. **Primary repair of tracheobronchial injuries** should be performed as soon as possible. Transverse rupture may require the placement of a sterile tracheal tube into the distal trachea through the operative field. After posterior sutures are placed, an orotracheal tube is advanced beyond the area of injury. **Main stem bronchial repair** is performed under one-lung ventilation. High-frequency jet ventilation may be required to maintain oxygenation. Occasionally, total **CPB** is necessary for repair of complex airway injuries. Before closing, the suture line is pressure-tested and evaluated by **fiberoptic bronchoscopy**.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tracheobronchial injury; penetrating/blunt chest trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with neck extended for proximal tracheal injury, or lateral decubitus
Incision	Transverse cervical for almost all proximal tracheal injuries Right posterolateral thoracotomy in 5th intercostal space for thoracic trachea and right bronchial wounds. Left posterolateral thoracotomy for L bronchial injury
Special instrumentation	Fiberoptic bronchoscope, intrabronchial tube, jet ventilator/oscillator
Unique considerations	In patients with lobar resection or after pneumonectomy, PEEP may result in bronchopleural fistula
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	2–3 h
EBL	Variable
Postop care	ICU (typically)
Mortality	Pneumonectomy for trauma: 75% Penetrating tracheobronchial injuries: ~15%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Bronchopleural fistula: 10% Empyema: 5% Hemothorax: 2–5% Pneumothorax ARDS (depends on extent of injuries)
Pain score	Cervical approach: 5–7 Thoracic approach: 8–10

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR CHEST TRAUMA SURGERY

Blunt and penetrating chest trauma may present as hemopericardium, hemo/pneumothorax, blunt cardiac injury, airway injuries, pulmonary contusion with or without associated flail-chest syndrome, and diaphragmatic injury. Hemopericardium may rapidly progress to pericardial tamponade, requiring immediate pericardiocentesis or pericardial window, followed by surgical exploration and repair of the cardiac or vascular laceration. These patients typically present in shock (↓↓ BP) with distended neck veins (↑↑ venous pressure) and distant heart sounds (Beck's triad) without evidence of tension pneumothorax. Hemothorax may present as respiratory failure, shock, and absent breath sounds over the affected hemithorax. Blunt cardiac trauma may present with findings ranging from isolated ECG changes to cardiac rupture. The right ventricle and interventricular septum are most commonly affected. Arrhythmias and ventricular dysfunction are frequently observed. Intrathoracic tracheobronchial injuries are less frequent than upper airway injuries, although they are associated with a high mortality and usually require operative intervention. Pulmonary contusion often presents with hypoxia and tachypnea; hemoptysis may also be present. Large flail-chest defects may require mechanical ventilation. VATS has emerged as the leading diagnostic tool for detection of diaphragmatic injury. Preoperatively, and particularly during the induction of GA, the patient's intravascular volume must be expanded and myocardial contractility, HR, and SVR maintained. Inotropes and antiarrhythmic drugs may be required if hemodynamic instability occurs and does not respond to iv fluid administration. CPB is usually not required.

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Associated injuries, such as hemothorax and/or pneumothorax, may be present, requiring thoracostomy tube placement. Fractures of the first or second rib should prompt a detailed search for associated intrathoracic injuries. A widened mediastinum, apical pleural capping, or fracture of the first or second rib often occurs with injury to the great vessels. Multiple rib fractures are often associated with pulmonary contusions, which may not be apparent on the initial CXR, but can progressively impair oxygenation. With tamponade, spontaneous respiration is preferred over PPV (→ ↓ venous return + ↓ CO). Significant intrathoracic tracheobronchial disruption may require rigid bronchoscopy or a surgical airway. **Tests:** CXR (PA + lateral views). Upright inspiratory films best delineate chest structures; expiratory films enhance visualization of pneumothorax, but are difficult to obtain in multiple-trauma patients; ABG; chest CT if the patient's condition permits.
Cardiovascular	BP and HR should be followed and responses to fluid resuscitation noted. With adequate resuscitation, the EJ veins should appear full. CO can be significantly reduced despite normal BP measurements. Pulsus paradoxus may be present, with decreases in SBP of 10–12 mm Hg during inspiration. Preop, intravascular volume should be restored, especially in the setting of suspected severe RV dysfunction, and myocardial contractility supported with inotropes as necessary. Correction of metabolic acidosis with iv bicarbonate may be indicated (e.g., 1 mEq/kg, then ✓ ABG). Myocardial contusion also can occur and can be associated with atrial or ventricular arrhythmias, RBBB, and RV failure, because the right heart is substernal and most directly involved in blunt trauma to the sternum. Supportive therapy with antiarrhythmics (e.g., lidocaine 1–2 mg/min) and inotropes (dopamine or epinephrine) may be required. Electrolyte abnormalities should be corrected. Substantial intravascular access should be obtained, with strong consideration given to the need for invasive monitoring (arterial line, CVP, etc.). **Tests:** ABG, serial ECGs with myocardial contusion. eFAST-scan is the test of choice for detection of pericardial effusions. TTE or TEE may definitively diagnose cardiac tamponade, significant hemothorax, and major aortic injuries.

Neurological	↓ BP and ↓ CO may compromise cerebral perfusion. Associated head injury also can contribute to alterations in mental status. Pupil size and reactivity should be noted. Glasgow Coma Scale score ≤ 8 indicates significant brain injury.
Musculoskeletal	Known or suspected C-spine fractures require intubation precautions, with laryngoscopy performed while an assistant provides in-line stabilization of the patient's head in the neutral position. **Tests:** Lateral C-spine x-rays, including C-7; CT; MRI

INTRAOPERATIVE

***Anesthetic technique:** GETA with full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5). **NB:** In the patient with an unstable C-spine, cricoid pressure (~10 lb) may cause spinal cord injury, and consideration should be given to the establishment of a surgical airway under local anesthesia.

Induction	GETA is required for exploration through a median sternotomy or left thoracotomy. In the latter case, a DLT or BB is desirable. If a difficult airway is anticipated, a single-lumen ETT may be placed initially with a DLT placed with an airway exchange catheter. Rapid-sequence induction with ketamine (0.5–2.0 mg/kg) and succinylcholine is attractive because higher doses of ketamine are usually associated with ↑ HR, ↑ BP, and ↑ CO. Careful consideration should be given to the catecholamine-depleted trauma patient, in whom the direct myocardial depressant effects of ketamine may be unmasked. Etomidate (0.2–0.6 mg/kg) is a useful alternative for patients with head injuries. Inotropic agents (ephedrine, dopamine, epinephrine) should be immediately available to treat ↓ BP. Agents that tend to decrease SVR, such as inhalational anesthetics and narcotics, should be introduced with caution. The potential for sudden and substantial blood loss exists, and PRBCs (cross-matched, type-specific or O neg) should be available in the OR prior to induction.	
Maintenance	Initially, low-dose inhalational agents and low-dose narcotics may be used, as tolerated. ↓ BP may require dopamine infusion (1–10 mcg/kg/min). Muscle relaxation and PPV are used. N_2O should be avoided if there will be a need for one-lung ventilation or there is associated pulmonary contusion. If the patient is hypotensive and acidotic, scopolamine (0.2–0.4 mg iv) will ↓ risk of recall. As cardiac and vascular injuries are repaired, BP and CO often will improve, permitting increased depth of anesthesia and decreased inotropic support. Indicators of improved tissue perfusion should be followed, such as resolution of lactic acidosis, central or mixed venous oxygen saturation, and improved urine output.	
Emergence	Trauma patients often require prolonged intubation; however, hemodynamically stable patients with limited injuries may be extubated awake. Patients who received significant blood replacement (> 50% of blood volume), those requiring inotropic support, intoxicated patients and those with head injuries should remain intubated and mechanically ventilated postop. Consideration for continued mechanical ventilation should be given to those patients with large pulmonary contusions and/or flail-chest segments.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Be prepared for large blood loss. IV: 14 ga × 2 Fluid warmer Rapid-infusion device Airway humidifier T&C PRBCs	Large blood may occur, depending on the severity of the injury. Crystalloid and/or blood products should be infused to maintain BP and CVP (full jugular veins).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line CVP ± PA catheter ± TEE	ECG should be observed for changes associated with myocardial contusion (atrial/ventricular dysrhythmias, RBBB, ST-T wave changes). CVP monitoring can be useful in guiding fluid management. With release of tamponade, CVP rapidly drops toward normal, and CO and BP will markedly improve. Will provide excellent monitor of LVEDV and SVR, as well as RVSP.

Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes ± C-spine: neutral position	Axillary roll, if lateral decubitus position; chest roll if median sternotomy.
Complications	Hypothermia	Hypothermia → dysrhythmias + ↓ CO → acidosis. Rx: warm OR, warm iv fluids, humidify gases, and use patient warming devices.
	Awareness	May be unavoidable in unstable patients. Rx: Consider scopolamine 0.2–0.4 mg iv.
	Renal failure	Usually 2° ↓ renal perfusion (prerenal). Rx: Restore CO with volume and inotropes.
	Coagulopathy	Most commonly 2° dilutional thrombocytopenia. DIC may require replacement therapy with Plts, FFP and cryoprecipitate. Massive transfusion may benefit from a 1:1 ratio of PRBC to FFP. Maintain nl Ca^{++} (1.05–1.3 mM/L).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypotension Arrhythmias	Cardiogenic shock may be 2° prolonged ↓ BP or cardiac contusion. Neurogenic shock may be seen with associated spinal cord injuries. Hemodynamic instability with atrial/ventricular dysrhythmias may occur. Treatment with inotropic infusions (dopamine 5–10 mcg/kg/min or epinephrine 50–200 ng/kg/min) and antiarrhythmics.
	Hypothermia	Active warming of iv fluids and warming blanket should be continued in ICU or PACU if hypothermia persists. If neurologic injury is present, consideration should be given to mild hypothermia.
	ARDS	Interstitial and alveolar edema → progressively worsening pulmonary function requiring prolonged mechanical ventilation. Institution of lung protective ventilation strategies should be considered.
	Coagulopathy Renal failure	Based on clinical assessment and laboratory data (PT, Plt count, fibrinogen); transfusion of Plts, FFP, and/or cryoprecipitate may be indicated.
	VTE	See p. B-8.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-1) or parenteral narcotics Epidural (p. C-3)	Epidural infusions of narcotic and/or low dose local anesthetics can be effective in patients without coagulopathy. Continuous epidural anesthesia will also be beneficial in the setting of multiple rib fractures.

ABDOMINAL TRAUMA: DAMAGE CONTROL

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The incidence of abdominal injuries requiring laparotomy approaches 25% for penetrating and 5–8% for blunt abdominal trauma. In blunt trauma, liver and spleen injuries occur with an incidence of ~50%. In

penetrating trauma, the most common injuries are small bowel (29%), liver (28%), colon (23%), and stomach (13%). Many preventable deaths in trauma patients are related to shock from unrecognized intraabdominal hemorrhage caused by solid organ injury.

Victims of severe multisystem trauma are particularly susceptible to development of a fatal coagulopathic state 2° hypothermia, acidosis, dilution, and consumption. Replacement of two or more blood volumes with NS and PRBCs will decrease the level of coagulation factors to 15%. Because of delays in obtaining coagulation profile results, coagulation factors should be replaced empirically in the setting of a large transfusion requirement (e.g., 1 U FFP/1.5 U PRBC). Metabolic acidosis affects both the circulatory system and coagulation, → ↓ CO and triggering DIC. Chances of salvaging a patient with pH < 7.0 approach zero. To stop this self-perpetuating downward cycle, the concept of "Damage Control" has evolved. This involves **rapid laparotomy** to control hemorrhage and GI spillage, followed by temporary closure of the abdomen and subsequent exploration after the patient has been warmed and stabilized. With the use of this technique, ~40% of critically injured patients can be saved from otherwise fatal injuries.

With the patient on a heated operating table, the patient is prepped from the thighs to the neck and draped, and the abdomen is entered through a midline incision. This critical moment can be associated with significant blood loss and may require rapid blood transfusion. Four-quadrant packing with laparotomy pads is performed in the abdominal cavity, and manual compression of the subdiaphragmatic aorta may be instituted if packing alone does not control the hemorrhage. If necessary, the operation is stopped, and blood/fluid resuscitation is performed. After consultation with the anesthesiologist, the surgeon proceeds with the sequential unpacking of each of the four quadrants and identifying injuries. Vascular injuries are controlled with clamping and ligation or shunting, bowel injuries are stapled across, but no attempt is made to restore bowel continuity. Liver and retroperitoneal injuries are controlled with packing alone. When damage control is performed, the abdomen is closed with a running skin suture, if appropriate; otherwise, a temporary vacuum dressing is used. PIP should be monitored during closure, as patients may develop **abdominal compartment syndrome** (↑↑ intraabdominal pressure → ↑ PIP, ↓ UO, normal filling pressures). The patient is then transported to ICU and actively warmed and resuscitated. Reoperation should be performed at 24–48 h when the patient is rewarmed and acidosis and coagulopathy have resolved. Definitive repair of the injured organs should be completed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Intraabdominal trauma and hemorrhage

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	Fluid-warming, rapid-infusion device
Unique considerations	Autotransfusion device (e.g., Cell Saver) may be of use if no contamination of abdominal cavity.
Antibiotics	Cefotetan 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	45–90 min
Closing considerations	Even temporary closure may not be possible because of severe bowel edema. A silo made from a plastic iv bag may be used to cover the bowel. Monitor PIP and UO during abdominal wall closure because abdominal compartment syndrome may develop.
EBL	Average transfusion requirement: 12 L crystalloids, 20 U PRBCs, 10–15 U FFP, 6 U Plts
Postop care	ICU; patient remains intubated. Active rewarming is of primary importance.
Mortality	70%
Morbidity	Intraabdominal abscess: 30% Fistulas: 10%
Pain score	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Typically young adult
Male:Female	9:1
Incidence	25% for penetrating and 5% for blunt abdominal trauma
Etiology	MVC; penetrating injury (e.g., GSW or stab wound)
Associated conditions	Chest trauma; closed head trauma; pelvic fracture

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Abdominal Trauma Surgery, p. 751.

ABDOMINAL TRAUMA: HEPATIC AND SPLENIC INJURIES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The liver is the most commonly injured organ in patients with penetrating trauma, while the spleen is the most commonly injured organ with blunt trauma. Approximately 30% of all patients requiring laparotomy for trauma will have hepatic injuries. The majority of injuries can be managed nonoperatively unless other injuries mandate laparotomy. Thus, most liver injuries that require operation are complex (grades IV–V), with large blood loss and high mortality (up to 30%).

In a patient with massive **intraabdominal hemorrhage,** sudden cardiovascular collapse is predictable when the abdomen is opened. Laparotomy with manual compression of the aorta at the aortic hiatus is recommended. Access for subsequent aortic clamping is rapidly obtained by blunt finger dissection of the lesser sac. After removing all clots and free blood, four-quadrant packing is used to control bleeding. Significant liver bleeding should be controlled with manual compression, the Pringle maneuver, and perihepatic packing.

Several maneuvers can be used to facilitate **repair of liver injuries: Manual compression** temporarily controls bleeding and allows time for volume resuscitation. **Portal triad occlusion** (**Pringle maneuver**; Fig. 7.13-5) decreases blood loss and identifies the patient who might benefit from selective hepatic artery ligation. **Perihepatic packing and planned reexploration** is a lifesaving maneuver and should be used early for patients with severe injuries, before they become hypothermic, coagulopathic, and acidotic. Extensive liver mobilization, parenchymal disruption (i.e., finger fracturing), and atriocaval shunts are rarely indicated. Hepatic angiogram and embolization in the immediate or early postop phase may be very useful for patients with severe injuries. At reexploration, intrahepatic omental packing may be used for obliterating dead space. Closed suction drains should be used in all patients.

Portal triad (portal vein, hepatic artery, common bile duct) injuries, although rare, are associated with extremely high mortality. Isolated portal vein injuries are associated with a 70% mortality. The portal vein should be repaired if possible; however, ligation can be tolerated. Careful volume resuscitation should follow portal vein ligation to avoid ↓ BP 2° fluid sequestration in the splanchnic bed. Simple ligation of the hepatic artery, preferably proximal to the gastroduodenal artery, is recommended for most major hepatic artery injuries. Shock and transfusion-related coagulopathy occurring in the immediate postop period are responsible for 80% of the deaths in liver injury patients. Control of hemorrhage remains the critical component in the successful management of liver injuries.

More than 90% of splenic injuries are caused by blunt trauma. Approximately 75–80% of these patients can be managed nonoperatively. Hemodynamic instability or failure of nonoperative management necessitates **splenectomy**. Grade IV (active intraperitoneal bleeding) or V (shattered/avulsed injuries) are associated with the highest rates of splenectomy. Massive bleeding from the LUQ is probably caused by splenic injury. In trauma, the spleen is delivered into the wound by blunt dissection. The spleen is removed by cross-clamping the hilum and dividing the short gastric

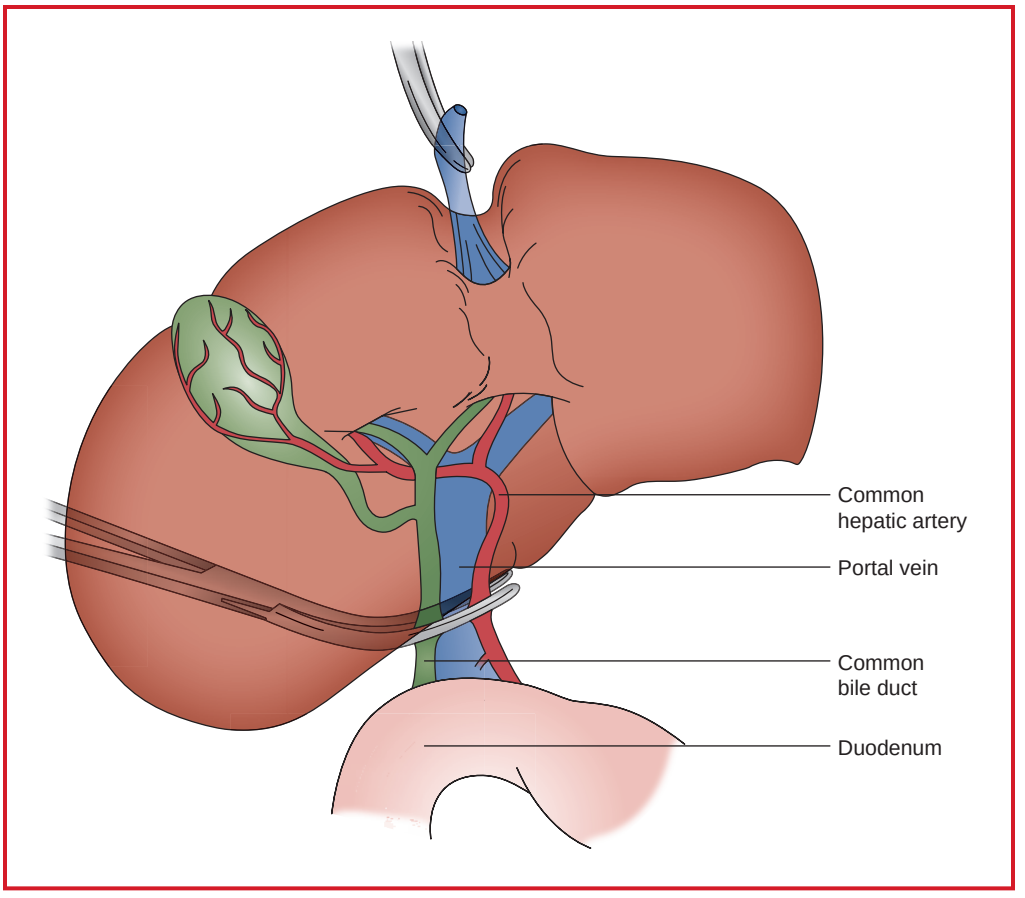


Figure 7.13-5. Pringle maneuver compression of the portal triad structures with a noncrushing vascular clamp for hepatic inflow control. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

vessels. The LUQ is packed and reinspected for hemostasis once better resuscitation is provided. The splenic salvage rate in the pediatric population approaches 90%.

Usual preop diagnosis: Hepatic injury; splenic injury

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	Active rewarming device; cell salvage
Unique considerations	Most emergency laparotomies require close cooperation between anesthesiologist and surgeon. The procedure may need to be interrupted for fluid or blood resuscitation if patient becomes hypotensive. The entire chest and abdomen, including both groins, need to be accessible to the surgeon; ECG electrodes are placed preferably on the patient's back.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1–2 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Closing considerations	After massive fluid resuscitation, concern over compartment syndrome may preclude primary fascial closure. The abdomen may be left open for later closure.
EBL	2–10 L (transfusion requirement 6–20 U)
Postop care	ICU: shock and coagulopathy management; monitoring for possible rebleeding and abdominal compartment syndrome.
Mortality	Liver: 10% Spleen: 10% (usually due to associated injuries)
Morbidity	Liver: perihepatic abscess: 10% Spleen: septic complications: 7%
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	Liver: 30% of patients requiring laparotomy for trauma Spleen: 10% of patients requiring laparotomy for trauma
Etiology	Liver: penetrating wound (80%) with gunshot wounds responsible for 60% and stab wounds for 40% Spleen: blunt trauma (90%), mostly due to MVC
Associated conditions	Liver: isolated hepatic injury (30%); injury to one or two other organs (50%), with diaphragm, major vascular structures, stomach, lung, and colon being most common.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Conditions for Abdominal Trauma Surgery, p. 751.

ABDOMINAL TRAUMA: VASCULAR INJURIES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Penetrating trauma is the most common cause of abdominal vascular injuries: IVC/hepatic veins, 36%; celiac/mesenteric vessels, 30%; iliac vessels, 11%; and aorta, portal/splenic, and renal vessels, each 5%. Patients with gunshot wounds to the abdomen have ~25% incidence of major vascular injury; however, only ~10% of patients with penetrating stab wounds will have vascular injuries. Patients sustaining blunt abdominal trauma who require laparotomy have a 5–10% incidence of vascular injury.

Initial resuscitation of the patient with abdominal vascular injuries depends on the patient's condition. Multiple large-bore catheters should be inserted in the upper extremities, or if necessary, central venous access should be obtained. Because of the probable intraabdominal venous injury, lower-extremity venous access is not indicated. Blood replacement during resuscitation is done preferably with type-specific blood. It is a good practice to have 2 U of O neg blood available immediately in the ED in case there is no time for a limited cross-match. Efforts to limit hypothermia should start as soon as the patient arrives (use of warmed fluids and high-flow blood warmers and covering the patient with warm blankets or a forced-air warming blanket).

Injuries to the abdominal vessels can be grouped into four regions, which require different surgical approaches:

Midline supramesocolic hemorrhage or hematoma (superior to the transverse mesocolon) is usually 2° injury to the suprarenal aorta, celiac axis, proximal superior mesenteric artery, or proximal renal artery. Proximal aortic control should be obtained at the hiatus by either aortic compression or manually by entering the lesser sac and digitally splitting the muscle fibers of the crura. Once this is done, direct access to the vessels is achieved through medial visceral rotation of all left-sided viscera. Injuries to the aorta are then repaired directly or with the appropriate graft. An injured celiac axis probably can be ligated safely if the remaining visceral vessels are intact. Superior mesenteric artery injuries must be repaired, usually with a jump graft. Repair of the superior mesenteric vein is preferred, but the vein may be ligated if complex injuries are present. These patients require substantial fluid resuscitation postop and are at high risk for abdominal compartment syndrome. Injuries to the IVC or right side of the aorta can be exposed by **duodenal mobilization (Kocher maneuver).**

Midline inframesocolic hemorrhage or hematoma results from infrarenal aorta or IVC injury. Exposure is obtained by incising posterior peritoneum in the midline after displacement of the small bowel and cephalic retraction of the transverse mesocolon. A proximal aortic clamp is then placed just below the left renal vein, with a distal clamp near the aortic bifurcation. The defect is repaired primarily, using patch aortoplasty, end-to-end anastomosis, or a graft. If the aorta is intact and an inframesocolic hematoma seems to be more extensive on the right side, or if there is active bleeding coming through the base of the mesentery, then injury to the IVC should be suspected. Access to the infrahepatic IVC is preferably obtained by mobilization of the right colon and duodenum. Proximal and distal controls are best obtained by either digital compression or two sponge sticks. The injury is then repaired directly. Blind clamping should be avoided, but occasionally, with good exposure, a **Satinsky clamp** can be placed. In young patients with exsanguinating hemorrhage, the infrarenal IVC can be ligated, providing time for appropriate fluid management. These patients require significant fluid postop, and **leg fasciotomies** should be performed.

Lateral perirenal hematoma or hemorrhage suggests injury to the renal vessels or kidney. In patients with blunt abdominal trauma who have a negative abdominal CT, IVP, or arteriogram, surgery is not required. A penetrating injury usually requires surgical exploration. Vascular control of the ipsilateral renal artery is obtained before the hematoma is entered. If there is active bleeding from the kidney or overlying retroperitoneum, then the kidney is exposed via a lateral incision, and a vascular clamp is applied to the renal vessel. This usually is followed by **nephrectomy** (after palpation and a one-shot IVP to verify function of a normal contralateral kidney). If the contralateral kidney is missing or nonfunctional, then **back-table salvage surgery and autotransplantation** of the injured kidney should be attempted. Only 30–40% of kidneys with arterial injuries can be salvaged.

Lateral pelvic hematoma or hemorrhage indicates injury to the iliac vessels. Pelvic hematoma 2° blunt trauma and pelvic fracture should not be explored. Primary control of bleeding is by **angiography/embolization** and possibly **external fixation of the pelvis**. This need should be recognized and arranged early in the resuscitative period. For penetrating injuries, vascular control is obtained at the aortic bifurcation proximally and close to the inguinal ligament distally. The internal iliac artery is best visualized by elevating common and external iliac arteries on vascular tapes. Unilateral internal iliac artery injuries can be ligated. Common or external iliac artery injuries can be repaired or a graft can be inserted. Grafts may be used even in the presence of GI contamination, provided the abdomen is thoroughly irrigated and the retroperitoneum is closed over the graft. A temporary intravascular shunt should be used in patients requiring damage control surgery. Injuries to the iliac veins are treated with lateral venorrhaphy or ligation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abdominal vascular injury

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with left arm abducted 90°
Incision	Midline abdominal
Special instrumentation	Autotransfusion device (e.g., Cell Saver); thoracotomy tray; aortic compressor
Unique considerations	Prevent heat loss and warm all infusions and irrigation solutions. Ventilator warming should be used for cold patients. For the patient requiring massive transfusion, ratio of 1 U FFP:1.5 U PRBCs useful. After prolonged aortic cross-clamp, prophylactic administration of $NaHCO_2$ (1–2 mEq/kg) may be indicated to prevent "washout" acidosis.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Surgical time	Variable
Closing considerations	Once vascular injuries are repaired, hepatic injuries are controlled with packing, bowel injuries are closed with staplers, and the abdominal wall is closed temporarily.
EBL	5–10 L
Postop care	ICU; Patients after infrarenal vena cava ligation require volume expansion and prevention of lower extremity venous pooling. Elastic wraps and lower-extremity elevation should be maintained for at least 1 wk. Similarly, after superior mesenteric vein ligation, splanchnic hypervolemia requires vigorous fluid resuscitation and lasts ~3 d.
Mortality	Combined injury to the suprarenal aorta and IVC: 100% Aorta: 60% Infrarenal abdominal aorta: 50% Superior mesenteric artery: 40–80% Iliac artery: 40% Iliac vein: 30% Infrarenal vena cava: 30% Superior mesenteric vein: 20% Renal artery: 15%
Morbidity	Abdominal compartment syndrome (↑↑ abdominal pressure → ↑ PIP + ↓ UO) Acute renal failure Intraabdominal infection Fistula
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Typically young adult
Male:Female	Male > female
Incidence	15% of patients with abdominal trauma
Etiology	10% of penetrating stab wounds and 25% of gunshot wounds to the abdomen will cause a major vascular injury.
Associated conditions	Multiple vascular injuries; hollow viscus perforation; fecal contamination

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR ABDOMINAL TRAUMA SURGERY

Abdominal injuries range from relatively simple penetrating injuries (e.g., a stab wound) to severe blunt trauma (e.g., liver lacerations and pelvic fractures) and are often associated with massive hemorrhage. Head injuries and spinal fractures may complicate management plans. The ability to provide rapid, aggressive volume replacement is often the key to survival. Coagulopathy (DIC) and hypothermia present additional challenges.

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	Associated injuries, such as hemothorax and/or pneumothorax, may be present, requiring thoracostomy tube placement. A widened mediastinum, apical pleural capping, or fracture of the 1st or 2nd rib often occurs with serious vascular injuries. Multiple rib fractures suggest possible pulmonary contusions, which may not be evident on initial CXR, but can progressively impair oxygenation and ventilation. **Tests:** CXR (PA + lateral views); ABG

Cardiovascular	BP and HR should be followed and responses to fluid resuscitation noted. Tachycardia can maintain an adequate BP with reduced pulse pressure, despite 25–30% loss of blood volume. Attempt to quantify overt blood loss (e.g., scalp lacerations, open fracture sites). Blunt chest trauma (e.g., steering wheel contact) may result in myocardial contusion with various dysrhythmias, most often premature ventricular or atrial complexes. **Tests:** Serial Hct; ECG in patients > 50 yr of age or with blunt chest trauma.
Neurological	Seek physical evidence of open or closed head injuries, such as palpable depressions of the skull or scalp lacerations, abrasions, or contusions. Pupil size and reactivity should be noted. Intubation in the ER is necessary for patients who are unable to protect their airway, require hyperventilation, or are combative and unable to cooperate with medical staff for exam and treatment. In general, any patient with a Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) ≤ 8 (no spontaneous eye opening, inappropriate or incomprehensible speech, and only reflexive motor responses) requires intubation. Motor and/or sensory deficits may reflect spinal cord injury and may be associated with neurogenic ("spinal") shock, particularly with upper thoracic or cervical cord injuries. **Tests:** C-spine x-rays (lateral view, including C7) is a good screening exam: ✓ for altered vertical alignment and unequal disk interspaces. CT scan or MRI of head: ✓ for gross asymmetry, hemorrhage, or midline shift.
Musculoskeletal	Known or suspected C-spine injuries require intubation precautions. In urgent cases, intubation without neck extension is achieved with an assistant providing in-line stabilization of the head in the neutral position. Basilar skull fractures contraindicate nasal ET or NG tubes. Pelvic and femur fractures may represent sources of significant (> 1000 mL) occult blood loss. **Tests:** Radiographs of C-spine (see above), skull, extremities
Hematologic	Depending on estimations of prior, ongoing, and anticipated surgical blood losses, preop T&C appropriate. O neg or type-specific blood should be available until crossmatched product available. **Tests:** Serial Hct; T&C; ✓ Ca^{++} and K^{+} following massive transfusions.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P or suspected injuries, including electrolytes, liver panel, toxicology screen, blood alcohol level.
Premedication	Premedication is rarely useful due to the urgency of the procedures and the need to have an alert, responsive patient for serial evaluations of mental status or abdominal pain. Sedative premedication should be avoided in patients who are hemodynamically unstable and those with probable head injuries. Virtually all patients are considered to have full stomachs, and any compromise of the ability to protect the airway is inappropriate.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA with full-stomach precautions (p. B-5)

Induction	Before induction, a variety of laryngoscope blades, ETT tube sizes, and ideally intubating adjuncts including video laryngoscope and FOB in preparation for potiential difficult airway should be ready. LMA may be useful for providing temporary airway control without C-spine manipulation if direct laryngoscopy is difficult. LMA may be used as a conduit for ET intubation (fiberoptic or fast-track LMA). Equipment for emergent cricothyrotomy (a 14-ga iv catheter + adapter) and jet ventilation should be in OR. Most often, preoxygenation is followed by a rapid-sequence iv induction with cricoid pressure (Sellick's maneuver) using Propofol (1–2.5 mg/kg) and succinylcholine (1.0–1.5 mg/kg). If hypotension is present or a concern, alternate induction agents (e.g., ketamine 0.5–2.0 mg/kg iv or etomidate 0.1–0.3 mg/kg iv) may be used. Verify any meds already administered in ED and field. Axial head and neck stabilization is necessary if C-spine injury is present or suspected.

Induction (cont'd)	Some trauma patients are intubated in the ED. Verify ETT placement by auscultation and $ETCO_2$ monitoring. Very low $ETCO_2$ values may be obtained in patients with markedly reduced CO. Ventilation with 100% O_2 and paralysis with muscle relaxant is appropriate. Ongoing fluid resuscitation should be continued during this time. Consider sending lab studies/ABG at this point and ensuring availability of blood products.	
Maintenance	Titrate O_2/air, muscle relaxants, narcotics, and volatile agents. Avoid N_2O in the presence of pneumothorax, pneumocephalus, bowel distention, or prolonged procedures. Shorter-acting agents (e.g., volatile agents, remifentanil, rocuronium), carefully titrated, may be preferred in patients with head injuries to facilitate early postop assessment of neurologic status. If ↓ BP precludes use of volatile anesthetics and opiates, consider low-dose scopolamine (0.1–0.3 mg iv) or ketamine (0.25 mg/kg/15–30 min) for amnesia. Use forced-air warming blanket(s) and warmed IV fluids, and consider elevated OR temperatures and warmed irrigation fluids (surgical field, bladder) to maintain normothermia.	
Emergence	Prior to extubation, patient should be awake and able to protect his/her airway and should be hemodynamically stable and spontaneously ventilating with ease through the ETT. Consider postop mechanical ventilation and ICU care for trauma patients with the following conditions: elderly with rib fractures, significant pulmonary compromise/trauma, ongoing acidosis, hemodynamic instability, ongoing or anticipated significant fluid and blood product resuscitation, coagulopathies, intoxication, or neurological impairment.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 or 7–9 Fr × 2 NS/LR variable depending on blood loss Fluid warmers Rapid-infusion device T&C PRBCs, ± other blood products	Large blood losses may have already occurred and continue to occur, depending on the mechanism of injury (e.g., liver lacerations, major vascular injury, pelvic fractures). Determine prior fluid administration in field and ED. Early determination of availability of blood products advised. Crystalloid, colloid, and blood products should be given to reestablish euvolemia-based injuries, EBL, and clinical assessment, which may include BP, HR, CVP/PCWP, UO, Hct, ABG, TEE, etc. With massive transfusion, Plts and FFP will be needed. Consider a transfusion ratio of 4 U plasma/6 U PRBC/1 U (pooled) during massive and ongoing hemorrhage. Vigilant assessment of bleeding, EBL, and hemodynamic status essential during ongoing massive bleeding. Frequent assessment of Hct/Hgb, Plts, coags, Ca^{++}, and ABG also essential in managing significant ongoing hemorrhage and resuscitation. Postop hypothermia is best minimized by warming all iv and irrigating fluids, maintaining OR temperature @ 78–80°F, humidifying inspired gases, and use of forced air and circulating water warming blankets.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see B-1). Urinary catheter ± Arterial line ± CVP line ± PA catheter ± TEE	Monitor patient during transport to OR and apply standard monitoring as soon as patient enters the OR. Arterial line useful in unstable patient or when frequent lab sampling anticipated. CVP line or PA catheter may be useful if vasoactive infusions needed or if ventricular dysfunction apparent. Placement of additional monitoring should be accomplished without delaying the surgical control of hemorrhage or without interrupting aggressive volume resuscitation.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	If C-spine has not been cleared by both radiographically and clinically, neck should remain immobilized intraop and postop.

Complications	Hypothermia	Preexisting hypothermia common in trauma patient. Measures to manage hypothermia early are key and include warm OR, use of forced air warming, and warm iv fluids.
	Awareness	May be unavoidable in unstable or hypotensive patients. Rx: Consider scopolamine 0.2–0.4 mg iv or midazolam 1–2 mg iv in such situations.
	Coagulopathy	Causes include dilutional, hypothermia and brain injury. Assess status and treat early.
	Aspiration	Assume full stomach; aspiration may have occurred prior to OR
	Airway trauma	Sources include trauma or subsequent AW management

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypothermia	Active warming of fluids and blood products and forced-air warming blankets and warm room temperatures should be continued in PACU/ICU if hypothermia persists.
	Atelectasis, V/Q mismatch	Pulmonary compliance may decrease with large volumes of fluid replacement. Pulmonary contusions may aggravate this problem and severely compromise oxygenation and ventilation, requiring high-inspired O_2 concentration, high PIP, and PEEP.
	Coagulopathy	Causes include dilutional, hypothermic, brain injury, and development of SIRS/sepsis.
	VTE	See p. B-8.
Pain management	PCA or parenteral narcotics epidural narcotic (see p. C-3, C-4)	Patients with rib fractures benefit from epidural narcotic and/or low-dose local anesthetic infusions.
Tests	Hb/Hct CXR	PT/PTT, Plt counts, if unexplained bleeding postop Fibrinogen, fibrin split products, if DIC suspected

Suggested Readings

See p. 737 and end of this chapter.

PEDIATRIC TRAUMA

AIRWAY AND VASCULAR ACCESS

Description: Children younger than 15 yr are victims in about 25% of all trauma occurring in the United States. This incidence translates to ~200,000 hospitalizations and 10,000 deaths annually. Another 10,000–12,000 children sustain permanent impairment as a result of their injuries. According to the National Pediatric Trauma Registry, 40% of all pediatric injuries occur as a result of MVC, and 35% are injuries sustained at home. Falls remain the most common cause of severe injury in infants and toddlers, whereas bicycle accidents cause most of the injuries in older pediatric groups. The majority of pediatric injuries that occur are 2° blunt trauma, and infants < 2 yr of age are known to have higher mortality rates for the same level of injury compared to older children.

The same sequence of primary survey, resuscitation, secondary survey, and definitive care should be followed as in adults. Confirmation of a patent airway is the essential first step. The best method for restoring airway patency

is the **jaw-thrust maneuver** and removal of any debris from the mouth. In infants, the head is relatively large compared to the body, causing the neck to be in flexation when the patient is positioned on a flat surface. Padding the torso and allowing the occiput to rest on the supporting surface allows for more favorable airway alignment. The most common reason for intubation in the pediatric trauma patient is loss of consciousness or as part of resuscitation from shock. Only 2% of children sustaining trauma will present with complete mechanical obstruction to the airway. In the rare child who presents with acute airway obstruction, **needle cricothyrotomy** is the preferred method of securing the airway until definitive airway control can be achieved. This technique of ventilation uses the principle of jet insufflation as defined in the adult. **Surgical cricothyrotomy** in children results in a high incidence of subglottic stenosis, but it is still a viable option in children > 10 if needle cricothyrotomy fails to be effective.

Because infants are obligatory nasal and diaphragmatic breathers, fractures and soft-tissue injuries that occlude the nostrils may actually obstruct the airway. Because air swallowed by the infant or insufflated into the stomach may cause acute gastric distention and restrict diaphragmatic excursion, the stomach should be decompressed with an OG tube.

Once the airway is secured and breathing is ensured, attention should be given to the circulation. In the noncrying child, the SBP should be ~80 + their age in years × 2. Children may compensate for as much as 25% of circulating volume blood loss without a change in BP. Poor peripheral perfusion, decreased level of consciousness and ↓ UO are suggestive of hypovolemia. IV access must be obtained rapidly to begin crystalloid resuscitation in any child with impending signs of shock. If the peripheral iv access is difficult to obtain, as is often the case, saphenous vein cutdown at the saphenofemoral junction should be performed. In infants, if iv access cannot be obtained within 2 min, intraosseous access should be attempted (see below and Fig. 7.13-6). After iv access has been obtained, as many as three boluses of crystalloid, using a volume of 20 mL/kg, can be given. If the hypovolemic shock state has not been reversed after the 2nd bolus, and other causes of shock—such as spinal injury, cardiac tamponade, or pneumothorax—are excluded, blood (10 mL/kg) should be administered without delay.

Another important problem in the management of pediatric trauma is related to a high ratio of body surface area to body mass and a lack of substantial subcutaneous tissue. A small infant who is hypothermic may be refractory to therapy; therefore, every attempt should be made to prevent heat loss, and all iv fluids should be warmed.

Needle cricothyrotomy: With the head in neutral position (which may require placement of towels under the shoulders), the neck should be prepped from the jaw to the chest. The neck is protected by in-line immobilization. The cricothyroid membrane should be identified, and the thyroid cartilage immobilized with the surgeon's left hand. The

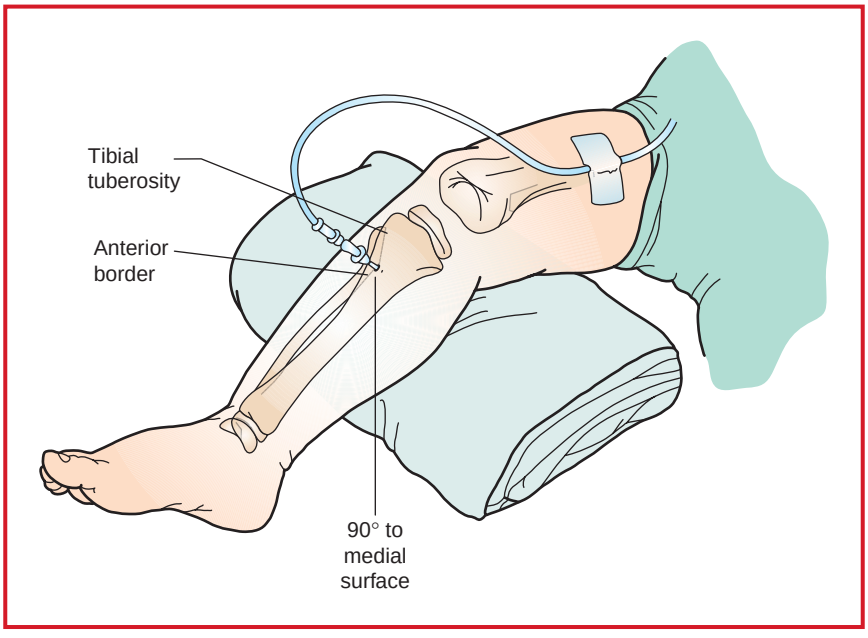


Figure 7.13-6. Intraosseous infusion. (Reproduced with permission from *Textbook of Pediatric Life Support.* American Heart Association, 1994.)

cricothyroid membrane is punctured perpendicularly with a 14–16-ga iv catheter over a needle. The needle is then redirected caudally, the catheter slid off into the trachea, and jet insufflation initiated. Placement of a permanent airway should follow.

Intraosseous infusion: After skin preparation, an incision is made 2 cm distal to the tibial tuberosity on the flattened medial aspect of the tibia. An 18–20-ga spinal needle (with obturator) can be used in children < 18 months of age. Older patients may require use of a 13–16 bone marrow biopsy needle. Pressure and rotational motion are applied in a direction perpendicular to the bone until a decrease in resistance is felt. Position of the needle can be confirmed by bone marrow or blood aspiration. This route can be used for rapid fluid infusion, and most resuscitation medications can be given this way. Interosseus infusion, however, is only an emergency maneuver and should be used to restore circulating volume to the level that enables more permanent iv access.

Saphenous cutdown: The groin should be prepped and draped and a curvilinear incision made 1–2 cm below and parallel to the inguinal ligament. The saphenous vein is identified at the saphenofemoral junction medial to the femoral artery. Two ligatures are passed underneath; the distal ligature is tied and used to apply tension to the vein. The vein is punctured with a scalpel blade (No. 11) and cut, creating a small flap. Tension applied to the proximal ligature reduces backbleeding during cannulation. A catheter is then introduced, the proximal ligature is tied, and the distal ligature is used to secure the catheter in place.

Usual preop diagnosis: Airway obstruction; hypovolemic shock; hypovolemic shock with difficult iv access

Suggested Readings

1. Capan LM, Miller SM: Trauma and burns. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2006, 1262–97.
2. Davis JW, Davis IC, Bennink LD, et al: Are automated blood pressure measurements accurate in trauma patients? *J Trauma* 2003; 55:860.
3. Ferraris VA, Bernard AC, Hyde B: The impact of antiplatelet drugs on trauma outcomes. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg* 2012; 73:492.
4. Ley EJ, Clond MA, Srour MK, et al: Emergency department crystalloid resuscitation of 1.5L or more is associated with increased mortality in elderly and nonelderly trauma patients. *J Trauma* 2011; 70:398.
5. Mackersie RC: Pitfalls in the evaluation and resuscitation of the trauma patient. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2010: 28.
6. Pfeifer R, Pape HC: Missed injuries in trauma patients: a literature review. *Patient Saf Surg* 2008; 2:20.
7. Raja AS, Sullivan AF, Pallin DJ, et al: Adoption of video laryngoscopy in Massachusetts Emergency departments. *J Emerg Med* 2012; 42:233.
8. Seamon MJ, Feather C, Smith BP, et al: Just one drop: the significance of a single hypotensive blood pressure reading during trauma resuscitations. *J Trauma* 2010; 68:1289.
9. Tobin JM, Varon AJ: Review article: update in trauma anesthesiology: perioperative resuscitation management. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(6):1326–1333.
10. Wilson WC, Christopher MD, Hoyt DB, eds: *Trauma: Emergency Resuscitation, Perioperative Anesthesia, Surgical Management.* Informa Healthcare, New York: 2007.

SECTION

8.0 OBSTETRIC/ GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY

CHAPTER

8.1 Gynecologic Oncology

SURGEONS

Gina Westhoff, MD
Nelson N. Teng, MD, PhD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

STAGING LAPAROTOMY FOR OVARIAN, FALLOPIAN TUBE, AND PRIMARY PERITONEAL CANCER

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Ovarian carcinoma has the highest mortality rate of all gynecologic malignancies because it is usually discovered in advanced stages with a pelvic mass, omental caking, and ascites. Surgery is used for staging as well as therapy. Studies have demonstrated an inverse relationship between postop residual tumor mass and survival; therefore, the goals of surgery are accurate staging and optimal tumor debulking (< 1 cm residual disease). The standard procedure consists of a meticulous exploration of the abdominopelvic cavity, abdominopelvic cytology, multiple random and targeted biopsies, **total abdominal hysterectomy (TAH), bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO), pelvic** and **paraaortic lymph node dissection, infracolic omentectomy, appendectomy,** and additional cytoreductive procedures. After access to the abdomen is obtained through a midline abdominal incision, cytologic washings of the pelvis, pericolic gutters, lesser sac, and hemidiaphragms are done. The peritoneal cavity is carefully explored. A TAH/BSO is performed by ligating and transecting the round, infundibulopelvic, broad, cardinal, and uterosacral ligaments on both sides. The specimen is cut away from the vagina and the cuff closed. Pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissections are then performed. Pelvic lymphadenectomy is performed by opening the pelvic peritoneum, developing the paravesicle and pararectal space, identifying the ureter and removing the lymph node tissue

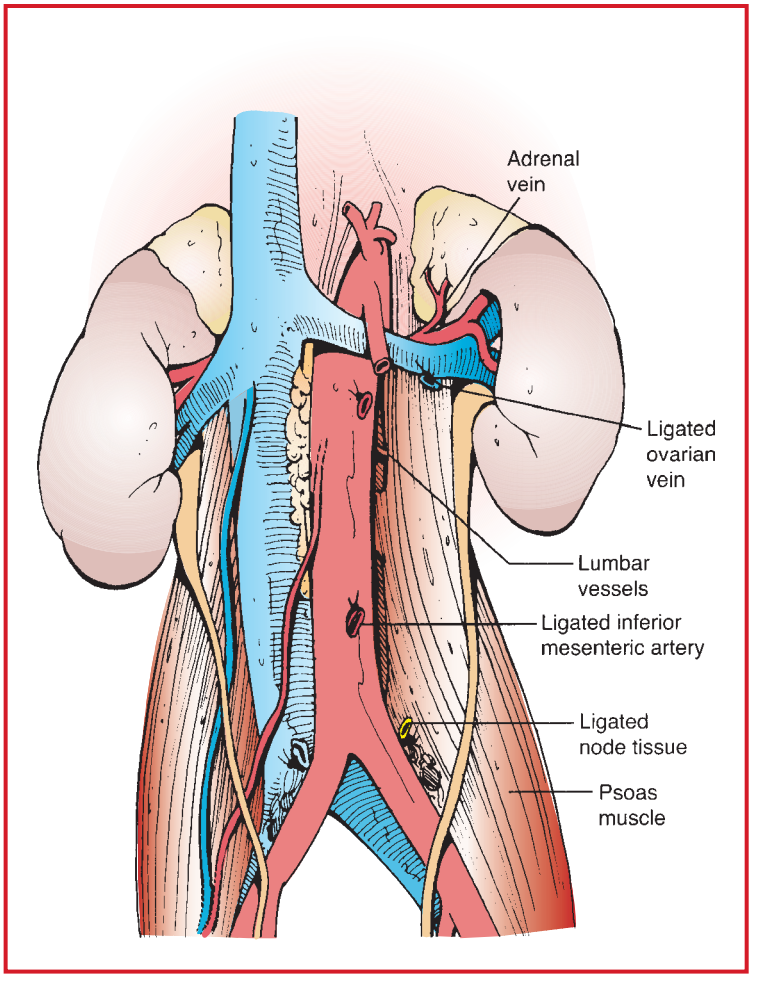


Figure 8.1-1. Aortic node dissection in staging laparotomy for ovarian cancer. In this case, both right and left node dissections have occurred, leaving the kidney, renal hilum, and psoas muscle exposed. Because the dissection is infrarenal and anterior to the lumbar vessels, there is residual fatty and nodal tissue at the posterior limit of the dissection.

adjacent to the common and external iliac vessels and obturator vein and nerve. Paraaortic lymph node dissection is performed by opening the peritoneum over the great vessels followed by removal of the lymph node bundles from the preaortic, lateral aortic, and retroaortic spaces. All residual tumor is removed, using sharp dissection and/or Cavitron Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator (CUSA) and/or argon beam coagulator (ABC), and then an appendectomy is usually performed. The omentum is clamped, transected, and ligated along its attachment to the transverse colon. A **bowel resection** with possible **colostomy** formation may be necessary to achieve optimal cytoreductive surgery (see **Pelvic Exenteration,** p. 781). Next, the peritoneal cavity is irrigated copiously. Targeted and random biopsies of bladder, cul-de-sac of Douglas, pericolic gutters, hemidiaphragms, small bowel, large bowel, and anterior abdominal wall are performed. A peritoneal port may be placed subcutaneously for use in future intraperitoneal chemotherapy. Approximately 25% of patients undergoing cytoreductive surgery for advanced stages of ovarian carcinoma require bowel resection with either primary reanastomosis or colostomy. **A splenectomy** is not routinely done unless the spleen is involved with tumor. Some patients with unresectable disease and bowel obstruction will require a **gastrostomy tube** placement at this time. A less extensive surgical procedure may be appropriate if a large volume of unresectable tumor is discovered. Surgery in these cases must be individualized. In addition, **laparoscopic surgical staging** has recently become more common for early stage lesions.

In some Stage I lesions, a **unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy** (USO) is sufficient therapy. The decision to use this approach depends on cell type, age, reproductive status, and extent of disease. Limited USO staging is usually performed as a fertility sparing procedure for young women with early stage tumors. Generally, biopsies**, a retroperitoneal lymph node dissection,** omentectomy**,** and appendectomy also are performed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ovarian cancer/pelvic mass

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, dorsal lithotomy (if anticipating lower bowel resection)
Incision	Midline or paramedian abdominal
Special instrumentation	CUSA, Vital View (suction-irrigation device combined with light source) helpful; laparoscopic biopsy forceps (laparoscope, laparoscopic instruments for evaluation of upper abdomen through lower vertical abdominal incision); Argon beam coagulator (ABC); TA, GIA, EEA stapling devices.
Unique considerations	Removal of large amounts of ascites may → fluid shifts and intravascular volume depletion intraop and postop. Consider preop prophylactic heparin. Most patients will have had bowel prep and will be hypovolemic at the start of surgery. Optimal debulking may require bowel resection, splenectomy, pancreatectomy, or other advanced procedure. During lymphadenectomy, there is a risk of vascular injury that may lead to significant blood loss and need for rapid volume replacement.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or Cefotetan 1–2 g iv; redose or as indicated by large EBL, duration of surgery.
Surgical time	1–5 h, including splenectomy and bowel surgery for more advanced stages
Closing considerations	Consider NG tube placement by anesthesiologist (in select cases with extensive bowel involvement or bowel procedures); peritoneal or central venous access for subsequent chemotherapy
EBL	500–1000 mL; 250–500 mL for Stage I lesions; > 1000 mL for more advanced stages
Postop care	Extensive peritoneal raw surfaces → intraperitoneal fluid 3rd-spacing. Patients require aggressive hydration to maintain intravascular volume. Central hemodynamic monitoring and ICU admission are useful in selected patients. Use SCDs and prophylactic heparin for VTE prophylaxis.
Mortality	1–2/1000
Morbidity	Grade 3-4 hemorrhage 7% Postop fever: 14–19% Wound infection: < 5% Wound dehiscence: 0.3–3% VTE: 1–2% Ureteral injury: < 1% Vaginal vault prolapse: Rare
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All age groups; most common, 60–69 yr, mean age 63
Incidence	9.4/100,000 (22,280 new cases/yr); 1.4% lifetime risk of ovarian cancer
Etiology	Unknown
Risk factors	Family Hx of ovarian carcinoma; personal or family Hx of breast cancer (BRCA gene mutations); ↑ age at first pregnancy; nulliparity; advancing age; late menopause; obesity; gonadal dysgenesis; exposure to radiation; environmental factors
Associated conditions	Familial cancer syndromes (e.g., Lynch, BRCA); Peutz-Jeghers syndrome—5% of cases develop gonadal stromal tumor; XY gonadal dysgenesis—gonadoblastomas; multiple nevoid basal cell carcinoma (Gorlin's syndrome); ataxia telangiectasia (hereditary, progressive cerebellar lack of muscular coordination associated with recurrent pulmonary infections and ocular and cutaneous telangiectasias)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Ovarian carcinoma is usually diagnosed at a late stage, and therefore, the patient may have malignant ascites and pleural effusion, large tumor mass, and omental spread. Surgery is indicated for resection of localized tumor and for staging of distant and local metastases. Additional procedures, including bowel resection or lymph node dissection, may be performed at the same time.

Respiratory	Significant ascites and pleural fluid may produce respiratory compromise. The presence of dyspnea, orthopnea, tachypnea, or other chest findings need to be investigated. Underlying lung diseases, such as asthma, also may be exacerbated by the abdominal distension/ascites. **Tests:** Consider CXR; ± ABG; others as indicated from H&P. Consider pleural effusion drainage preop if severe respiratory compromise.
Cardiovascular	An ECHO or other studies may be requested to evaluate cardiac function. Exercise tolerance should be evaluated in every patient and any pre-existing cardiac disease explored in the preop visit. Irreversible, dose-dependent cardiotoxicity may result from doxorubicin chemotherapy. **Tests:** Consider ECG, others as indicated from H&P.
Gastrointestinal	Patient should have adequate preop iv hydration if given a bowel prep overnight. Opiate use may cause ↓ GI motility. May be malnourished.
Neurological	Not usually significant. Taxol and cisplatin may → peripheral neuropathy.
Hematologic	Bone marrow suppression common following chemotherapy. Carboplatin, commonly used for ovarian cancer, often induces thrombocytopenia. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	CBC, hepatic function, PT/PTT, T & S or T & cross, Assess renal function if large pelvic mass at risk of causing postrenal impairment.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural analgesia. Typically, a balanced anesthetic with inhalational agents and/or propofol infusion (25–150 mcg/kg/min) and narcotics. An epidural catheter may be placed for postop pain management and also may be used intraop to ↓ anesthetic requirements.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2), though consider full stomach precautions if ascites present.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). Continue muscle relaxation based on nerve stimulator response. Epidural bupivacaine/narcotic combination if catheter is placed preop. Consider NG/OG tube. Patients with combined regional/GA may require increased fluids due to vasodilation and ↓ BP.	
Emergence	The patient may be extubated at the conclusion of surgery, unless hemodynamically unstable and/or requiring continued vigorous fluid resuscitation. Reverse muscle relaxant with neostigmine 0.07 mg/kg and glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg, and give supplemental O_2 after extubation. Consider postop ICU bed for unstable patients or those requiring invasive monitoring for fluid management.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Significant blood loss possible IV: 16–18 ga × 2 NS/LR at 4–6 mL/kg/h 5% albumin 6% hetastarch	Blood loss may be > 1 L. Order T & S or T & cross preop. 5% albumin or 6% hetastarch are useful for rapid volume replacement if Hct is acceptable. If large volumes of ascites are removed, significant ↓ BP may develop. Third-space losses may be significant (≥10–15 mL/kg/h). Consider alternating NS and LR to avoid development of a nonanion gap hyperchloremic acidosis 2° NS. Warm fluids. Strive to maintain euvolemia based on clinical data: BP, HR, ABG, UO, EBL, and fluid shift estimates, ± CVP, etc.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial catheter ± CVP catheter Foley catheter	Arterial and CVP catheters indicated for extensive surgery and/or patients with significant comorbidities (CHF, CAD, COPD, CKD, etc.).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points, especially important for longer surgeries ✓ eyes Antiembolism stockings and SCDs	
Complications	Hypothermia	Hypothermia likely to develop. Warm all iv fluids. Heating blanket on bed and forced-air warming blanket should be used.
	Coagulopathy	Preop malnutrition and/or significant blood loss may → coagulopathy

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage VTE Ascites/pleural effusion Respiratory insufficiency PONV	 See p. B-8 See p. B-6
Pain management	PCA Epidural	See PCA and epidural narcotic recommendations on pages C-2 and C-3. Epidural may ↓ pain, PONV, and risk of VTE.
	Adjuncts	Consider PO/IV tylenol, gabapentin, celebrex

Suggested Readings

1. Berek JS, Longacre TA, Friedlander M: Ovarian, fallopian tube, and peritoneal cancer. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 15th edition. Lippincott Williams, & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 1350–1427.

2. Cohn DE, Alvarez RD: High-grade serous carcinomas of the ovary, fallopian tube, and peritoneum. In: Karlan BY, Bristow RE, Li AJ, eds. *Gynecologic Oncology Clinical Practice and Surgical Atlas*. McGraw-Hill Professional, New York: 2012, 237–256.
3. Copeland LJ: Epithelial ovarian cancer. In: DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT, eds. *Clinical Gynecologic Oncology.* CV Mosby, St Louis: 2007, 289–350.
4. Fleming GF, Ronnett BM, Seidman J, Zaino RJ, Rubin SC: Epithelial ovarian cancer. In: Barakat RR, Perelman RO, Markman M, Randal M, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams, & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 763–831.

INTERVAL, SECONDARY CYTOREDUCTIVE, AND SECOND LOOK ASSESSMENT LAPAROTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

In patients where neoadjuvant chemotherapy was utilized or when optimal debulking could not be performed at initial surgery, an interval (after 3–6 cycles of chemotherapy) or secondary debulking laparotomy is done to achieve optimal cytoreduction. Similar to primary cytoreduction, the surgery involves methodical and meticulous exploration of all of the abdomen and pelvis, multiple cytologies and biopsies, lysis of adhesions, and resection of the residual tumor, as well as the pelvic and periaortic lymph nodes (if not done at time of first surgery). Patients may also be candidates for secondary or tertiary cytoreductive surgical procedures, particularly if isolated recurrences are found in the setting of longer disease-free intervals.

Description: Historically, surgery in the form of **"second-look" laparotomy** was undertaken to determine whether a patient was surgically and pathologically free of disease, after an appropriate number of treatment cycles with platinum-based (CDDP or carboplatin) chemotherapy. However, 50% of patients with negative second-look surgeries ultimately recur, and the number of second-look surgeries has decreased significantly in favor of noninvasive evaluation including the use of tumor markers (CA-125) and imaging techniques (CT, MRI, PET). Select patients will benefit from second-look surgery to guide further therapy. Intraabdominal assessment may be performed in conjunction with placement of an intraperitoneal port.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ovarian carcinoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or dorsal lithotomy
Incision	Midline or paramedian vertical abdominal
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv, further doses as indicated by large EBL, duration of surgery
Surgical time	2–3 h
Additional considerations	Placement of permanent central venous or intraperitoneal access; Preoperatively consider prophylactic heparin
EBL	350–700 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward
Mortality	1–2/1000
Morbidity	Postop fever: 14–19% Wound infection: < 5% Wound dehiscence: 0.3–3% PE: 1–2% Incisional hernia: 0.5–1% Ureteral injury: 0.5–1%
Pain score	7–8

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients undergoing interval cytoreductive laparotomy have generally been treated with 3–6 cycles of chemotherapy. Depending on the type of adjunctive treatment given, the patient may come to surgery in poor physical condition from malnutrition or toxicity from chemotherapy (see Table 8.1-1). Vascular access may be difficult to obtain due to sclerosis or thrombosis of peripheral veins.

Respiratory	Pulmonary function may be impaired by several chemotherapeutic drugs, most commonly bleomycin. Patients often have a Hickman catheter or other central line already in place, which can be used for induction of anesthesia. Consider preop CXR to assess the presence of lung injury if prior chemo given. Patients with dyspnea at rest or with mild exertion, or who have known pulmonary fibrosis, should be evaluated by PFTs, including FVC, FEV_1, $MMEF_{25-75}$, and ABGs. Patients who received bleomycin should not receive $O_2 > 39\%$ intraop, but arterial O_2 saturation ideally should be kept $\geq 93\%$. The pulmonary toxicity of bleomycin is dose-related with a much higher incidence occurring if > 200 mg/m^2 received. Combination chemotherapy with vincristine or cisplatin also increases pulmonary toxicity. **Tests:** Consider CXR; others as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	Cardiotoxicity is seen with several antineoplastic agents, especially daunorubicin and doxorubicin. The cardiomyopathy produced by these drugs occurs in two forms: (1) acute—ST-T wave changes and dysrhythmias, which are transient and usually not a serious problem; and (2) chronic—a dose-related toxicity manifested by CHF. Total doses of doxorubicin as low as 250 U can cause myocardial damage, but is more common at doses > 400 U. Cardiac irradiation, or combination chemotherapy with cyclophosphamide, increases the risk of cardiac toxicity. Patients who have received cardiotoxic drugs are usually followed by serial ECHOs, and the results should be reviewed preop. Patients with CHF or ECG changes should have a cardiology consultation preop to optimize their medical condition. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P

Table 8.1-1. Toxicities of Selected Antineoplastic Chemotherapeutic Agents

Agent	Toxic Effects
Vincristine, vinblastine	Neuropathies, SIADH, myelosuppression
Cyclophosphamide	Prolonged neuromuscular block
Mechlorethamine	Prolonged neuromuscular block
Bleomycin	Pulmonary fibrosis
Doxorubicin, daunorubicin	Cardiotoxicity, GI upset, myelosuppression
Methotrexate	Myelosuppression, GI upset, stomatitis, pulmonary infiltrates
Fluorouracil	Myelosuppression, hepatic and GI alterations, nervous system dysfunction
Mercaptopurine	Myelosuppression
Thioguanine	Myelosuppression
Actinomycin D	Myelosuppression, GI upset, stomatitis
Mitomycin	Myelosuppression, GI upset
Cisplatin	Myelosupression, GI upset, electrolyte disturbances, nephrotoxicity, peripheral neuropathy
Carboplatin	Myelosuppression, peripheral neuropathy, GI upset, electrolyte disturbances
Paclitaxel	Myelosuppression, peripheral neuropathy, GI upset, arthralgia/myalgias, mucositis, interstitial pneumonitis
Docetaxel	Myelosuppression, peripheral neuropathy, malaise, maculopapular rash, GI upset

Neurological	Peripheral neuropathies are produced by vincristine, cyclophosphamide, Taxol (paclitaxel), 5-fluorouracil and several other drugs. Vincristine can also → SIADH. Other CNS effects include N/V, seizure, and cerebellar dysfunction. A preop neurologic exam is useful for patients with evidence of neurotoxicity. Document presence of neurologic deficits preop for subsequent comparisons.
Endocrine	Corticosteroids (e.g., prednisone) are commonly used with chemotherapeutic agents, as treatment for pulmonary fibrosis and other complications of chemotherapy. The use of > 10 mg prednisone (or equivalent) per day for > 2 wk suppresses the endogenous secretion of the adrenal cortex, which may take up to 6 mo to recover fully. Hydrocortisone 100 mg iv, preop with an additional 2–3 subsequent doses q 8 h will provide adequate "stress dose" coverage perioperatively. The dose is tapered rapidly over 2 or 3 d postop. **Tests:** As indicated by the H&P
Renal	Many chemotherapeutic drugs have renal toxicity; therefore, renal function testing indicated. Patients with impaired renal function should be given appropriate dosages of medications (e.g., antibiotics), which depend on renal excretion. **Tests:** Renal function tests
Musculoskeletal	Vincristine produces a neurotoxicity manifested by numbness and tingling in the extremities, weakness, foot drop, loss of reflexes, ataxia, and muscle pains. Muscle weakness in the arms and legs indicates that the drug should be stopped. Muscle weakness may also involve the larynx and extraocular eye muscles. Reduced amounts of NMBs should be used intraop and a nerve stimulator used to follow twitches.
Gastrointestinal	Consider hydration overnight if given a bowel prep or if there is significant N/V. Look for ascites and malnutrition. **Tests:** Consider electrolytes, LFTs.
Hematologic	Bone marrow suppression is a common side effect of antineoplastic drugs. The toxicity usually produces a reversible drop in leukocytes, erythrocytes, and platelets, with a nadir 10–14 d posttreatment. Patients with a total neutrophil count of < 1000 should be kept in isolation until counts improve. A low Plt count (< 50,000) is an indication for Plt transfusion preop. Regional anesthesia in patients with thrombocytopenia needs to be considered carefully due to ↑ risk of bleeding complications.
Laboratory	Consider CBC, Cr, albumin, lytes, PT/PTT.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv. Stress-dose hydrocortisone (100 mg iv) if indicated.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or combined GETA/epidural. Consider CSE ± sedation if severe bleomycin pulmonary toxicity present.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Consider renal function and surgery duration when deciding on agents.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance: see Anesthetic Considerations for Staging Laparotomy, p. 641. An epidural may be used to reduce GA requirements (p. B-2).
Emergence	Extubate when patient is responsive and neuromuscular block is fully reversed. In patients with borderline pulmonary function, extubation may be delayed until patient is in the PACU or ICU, and after ABG is checked while the patient breathes spontaneously. Consider PONV prophylaxis (see p. B-6).

Regional anesthesia:

Epidural	2% lidocaine ± epinephrine 1:200,000 (10–20 mL) or 0.25% bupivacaine (10–20 mL) initially; then at ~3–5 mL/h. Narcotics, such as morphine (2–4 mg) or hydromorphone (0.3–0.6 mg) may be given in the epidural for postop pain control.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR at 7–10 mL/kg/h Keep UO > 0.5 mL/kg/h Consider PRBC for Hct < 25% 5% albumin 6% hetastarch FFP/Plt	Excessive use of NS can lead to hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis; therefore, alternating NS and LR solutions makes sense when giving large volumes of iv fluids. 5% albumin or 6% hetastarch may be used as volume replacement, although no proven advantages over crystalloid solutions. Consider FFP and Plt if evidence of significant coagulopathy (↑ PT, ↑ PTT, ↓ Plt).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP catheter Foley catheter	Consider arterial and CVP catheters for patients with compromised cardiac or pulmonary function or patients having extensive surgical procedures.
Positioning	✓and pad pressure points ✓eyes Anti-embolism stockings and SCD	It is useful to maintain access to at least one arm for blood drawing and additional iv access.
Complications	Hypothermia Bleeding	Warm fluids; keep heating pad on bed; use forced-air warmer ✓PT; PTT, Plts periodically if large blood loss

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding Infection PONV (see p. B-6) Respiratory insufficiency VTE (see p. B-8)	
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3). Epidural/spinal narcotics (see p. C-2).	Surgeons may infiltrate wound edges with 0.25% bupivacaine in those patients without epidurals. Consider iv ketorolac (30 mg)
Tests	CXR ABG	As indicated by postop clinical findings.

Suggested Readings

1. Berek JS, Longacre TA, Friedlander M: Ovarian, fallopian tube, and peritoneal cancer. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 15th edition. Lippincott, Williams, & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 1350–1427.
2. Chabner BA, Bertino J, Cleary J, et al: Cytotoxic agents. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LE, Gilman AG, eds. *Goodman and Gilman's: The Pharmacologic Basis of Therapeutics,* 12th edition. McGraw Hill, New York: 2011, 1677–730.
3. DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT: Epithelial ovarian cancer. In: DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT, eds. *Clinical Gynecologic Oncology.* CV Mosby, St. Louis: 2002, 289–350.
4. Fleming GF, Ronnett BM, Seidman J, et al: Epithelial ovarian cancer. In: Barakat RR, Perelman RO, Markman M, Randal M, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams, & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 763–831.

RADICAL VULVECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Historically, invasive vulvar carcinoma has been treated with en bloc dissection of the inguinal-femoral region and the vulva. The surgery involves bilateral excision of lymphatic and areolar tissue in the inguinal and femoral regions, combined with removal of the entire vulva between the labia-crural folds, from the perineal body to the upper margin of mons pubis (Fig. 8.1-2). A large surgical wound is created and, if 1° closure without tension is not possible, a skin or myocutaneous graft may be necessary. Deep pelvic nodes are almost never involved with metastases when the superficial and deep groin nodes are free of disease; therefore, a **pelvic lymphadenectomy** is no longer routinely performed. If presence of tumor is documented in the groin nodes, particularly in Cloquet's sentinel nodes (the most cephalad, deep inguinal nodes), a **deep pelvic lymphadenectomy** may be performed. **Postop radiation therapy,** however, is widely used instead of a pelvic lymph node dissection to minimize operative morbidity and confer a survival advantage.

A skin incision in the shape of a bull's head (Fig. 8.1-2) allows access to the inguinal-femoral region. (The incision ideally should extend 2+ cm beyond the tumor margin.) The inguinal ligament and rectus fascia should be cleared bilaterally of all nodal tissues and the fossae ovalis on both sides identified. The lateral aspect of the femoral sheath is incised along the sartorius muscle, with care being taken not to injure the femoral nerve or vessels, and the cribriform fascia is cleaned off the femoral artery. The external pudendal artery, which marks the entrance of the saphenous vein into the fossa ovalis, should be identified and ligated. The proximal and distal segments of the saphenous vein should be ligated and excised as the fibrofatty, lymph-bearing tissue of the femoral sheath is resected. Cloquet's nodes at the femoral ring beneath the inguinal ligaments on both sides should be resected and submitted for frozen-section pathology evaluation. The deep inguinal lymphatic chain is removed on both sides by opening the inguinal canal from the external inguinal ring. The vulvar incision is carried down through the labia-crural folds. The internal pudendal vessels at the posterior lateral margin of the vulvar incision are identified as they emerge from Alcock's canal, and then they are ligated and incised.

Use of electrocautery in this portion of the procedure usually tends to decrease operative blood loss. The dissection is continued along the periosteum of the symphysis at the level of the fascia of the deep muscles of the urogenital diaphragm. The bulbocavernosus, ischiocavernosus, and superficial transverse perinei muscles are removed. A circumferential vaginal incision, excluding the urethral meatus, is then performed and the vulva is removed. The incisions overlying the groin node dissections should be closed with minimal tension after placement of closed-suction Jackson-Pratt drains. The vulvar surgical wound is closed by slightly undermining the skin of the edges of the incision

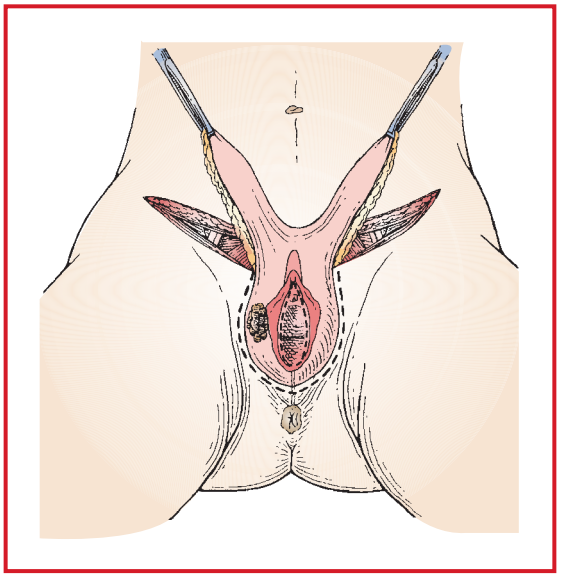


Figure 8.1-2. En bloc radical vulvectomy incisions shown; bilateral inguinal lymphadenectomy is complete. (Reproduced with permission from Rock JA, Thompson JD: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology,* 8th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

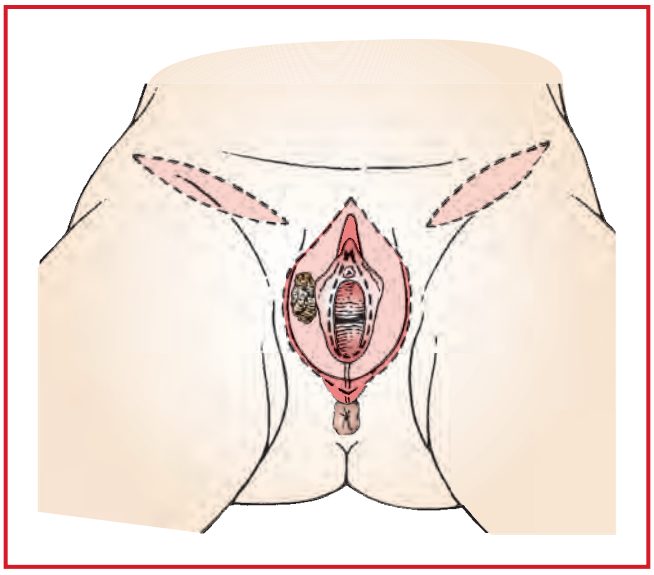


Figure 8.1-3. 3-incision radical vulvectomy and bilateral inguinofemeral lymphadenectomy. (Produced with permission from Rock JA, Thompson JD: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology,* 8th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

and suturing them to the vaginal mucosa. A **vulvar reconstruction,** using myocutaneous flaps, also can be performed at this time (see Pelvic Exenteration, p. 781).

Variant procedure or approaches: In 1962, Byran and associates popularized a **3-incision technique** first described by Kehrer in 1918. This 3-incision technique, with separate vulva and groin incisions, is the most common approach (Fig. 8.1-3). This operative approach has led to a significant decrease in wound infection and breakdown, apparently without increasing tumor recurrence in the inguinal dermal bridge above the symphysis pubis. Another variant is the **hemivulvectomy** (Fig. 8.1-4), in which unilateral radical hemivulvectomy and groin node dissection are performed in selected stage I, nonmidline, unifocal vulvar cancer patients. This procedure will minimize morbidity, disfigurement, and sexual dysfunction. The observation that almost no contralateral groin metastases occur in the

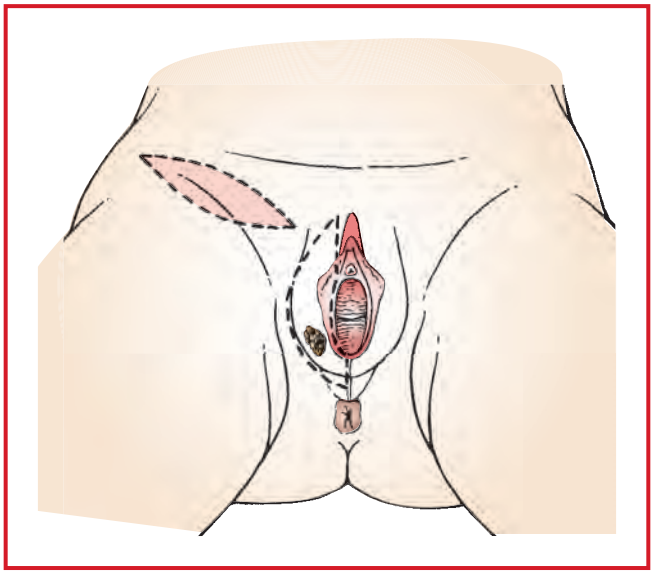


Figure 8.1-4. Unilateral lymphadenectomy for a well-lateralized lesion. (Produced with permission from Rock JA, Thompson JD: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology,* 8th edition, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

absence of positive ipsilateral groin nodes allows the surgeon to perform only a **unilateral groin node dissection**. Recent trials have shown sentinel lymph node mapping may be an alternative to groin lymphadenectomy in select patients with early stage disease. For this approach, a radioactive tracer is injected intradermally 20–30 min before groin incision. Blue dye is also injected to improve visualization, but this is done after the patient is prepped due to the rapid movement of the dye to lymphoid tissue. Using both radioactivity and direct visualization allows identification of the sentinel lymph node. If a sentinel lymph node(s) is not found, full lymphadenectomy is performed. Benefits of this approach include less dissection of tissue and lower rates of postoperative complications.

Usual preop diagnosis: Invasive vulvar cancer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	En Bloc Dissection	3-Incision	Hemivulvectomy
Position	Modified dorsolithotomy in Allen universal stirrups	⇐	⇐
Incision	Bull's head, from iliac crest to iliac crest and along labia-crural folds (Fig. 8.1-2)	2 separate groin incisions from iliac crest to pubic tubercle; 1 vulvar incision (Fig. 8.1-3)	1 or 2 separate groin incisions from iliac crest to pubic tubercle; vulvar incision (Fig. 8.1-4)
Special instrumentation	Argon Beam Coagulator	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	Two-team approach to minimize surgical time. Preop bowel prep and constipating medications (e.g., Lomotil) to ↓ postop bowel movements. Consider preoperative prophylactic heparin	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–4 h	⇐	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Possible skin graft; vulvar and groin suction drains	⇐	⇐
EBL	500–1000 mL	⇐	250–500 mL
Postop care	PACU or ICU, if necessary; aggressive local wound care. VTE prophylaxis (see Appendix B). **NB:** trauma to femoral vessels at time of groin lymph node dissection increases risk of thrombophlebitis and PE.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	1–2%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Wound infection and breakdown: 40–80%	15%	< 15%
	Introital stenosis and dyspareunia: 50%	⇐	⇐
	Lymphedema of lower extremities: 25–30%	⇐	< 25% (if deep groin nodes not dissected)
	Lymphocysts: 10%	⇐	⇐
	Genital prolapse: 7%	⇐	1–2%
	Stress incontinence: 5%	⇐	1–2%
	Thrombophlebitis: 3–5%	⇐	1–2%
	Hernia: 1–2%	⇐	⇐
	PE: 1–2%	⇐	⇐
Pain score	8	8	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Median = 70 yr
Incidence	2.2/100,000; 4% of female genital malignancies
Etiology	Two pathways of vulvar cancer are thought to exist, one related to HPV infection and the second related to chronic inflammation or an autoimmune process.
Risk factors	HPV infection, vulvar dystrophies, tobacco use, immunosuppression, HIV
Associated conditions	Bowen's disease, condyloma acuminata, diabetes, obesity, HTN, arteriosclerosis, cervical malignancy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients with vulvar carcinoma are usually elderly. Consider and evaluate coexisting medical conditions, including HTN, CAD, and diabetes. Radical vulvectomy is performed for invasive tumor that has not metastasized to distant sites.

Respiratory	The presence of lung disease and smoking Hx should be discussed with the patient preop. Consider CXR and PFTs for patients with significant respiratory disease. **Tests:** Others as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	There is an increased incidence of HTN and atherosclerosis in these patients. A cardiology consultation is indicated for angina, recent MI, CHF, or heart murmurs. Review ECG (< 1 yr) for patients > 60. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P.
Renal	With age, creatinine clearance decreases 2° ↓ renal mass, but serum creatinine remains unchanged because of decreased muscle mass. **Tests:** Serum creatine; others as indicated from H&P.
Gastrointestinal	Patients should have iv hydration preop if given bowel prep overnight.
Neurological	Document a neurological exam if Hx of stroke, Sz, or other neurologic disease. Hx of peripheral neuropathy or autonomic dysfunction should be assessed in diabetic patients. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P.
Endocrine	Diabetes, obesity, and hypothyroidism are common in this patient population. **Tests:** Fasting blood sugar; thyroid function; others as indicated from H&P.
Hematologic	Chronic anemia may be present. **Tests:** Hb/Hct; Plt count
Laboratory	Cr, if age > 65 (cr = creatinine)
Premedication	Consider midazolam iv 1–2 mg.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or regional anesthesia, alone or in combination.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).
Emergence	No special considerations

Regional anesthesia:

Epidural	2% lidocaine ± epinephrine 1:200,000 (10–20 mL) or 0.25% bupivacaine (10–20 mL) are used; then at ~3–5 mL/h. Narcotics such as morphine (2–4 mg) in the epidural for postop pain control.	
CSE	Hyperbaric bupivacaine (10–12 mg), ± preservative-free morphine (0.1–0.2 mg) → T10 sensory level.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 2 NS/LR at 6–8 mL/kg/h Warm iv fluids UO > 0.5 mL/kg/h	Occasionally, femoral vessels may be injured, requiring rapid blood replacement. Consider PRBCs for Hct < 21% in healthy patients and < 25% in patients with cardiac or pulmonary disease.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial line ± CVP line Foley catheter	Invasive monitors indicated for patients in poor condition or with cardiovascular or respiratory disease. An arterial catheter is useful for drawing labs in surgery to check Hct, coags, glucose, or ABGs.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Antiembolism stockings and SCD	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypothermia Bleeding PONV VTE	 See p. B-6. See p. B-8.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Epidural or spinal narcotics (p. C-2)	Incisions may be left open to granulate in or be covered with skin grafts. Epidural analgesia allows earlier ambulation with less sedation in elderly patients.
Tests	Tests as indicated from postop clinical findings	

Suggested Readings

1. DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT: Invasive cancer of the vulva. In: DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT, eds. *Clinical Gynecologic Oncology.* CV Mosby, St. Louis: 2002, 211–39.
2. Eifel P, Levenback C: Surgery for vulvar cancer. In: *American Cancer Society Atlas of Clinical Oncology, Cancer of the Female Lower Genital Tract.* BC Decker, Hamilton: 2001, 203–16.
3. Hacker NF: Vulvar cancer. In: Berek JS, Hacker NF, eds. *Practical Gynecologic Oncology,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2004, 543–83.
4. Hoffman MS: Malignancies of the vulva. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003, 1293–1350.
5. Holschneider CH, Berek JS: Vulvar cancer. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 15th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 1428–57.
6. Moore DH, Koh WJ, McGuire W, et al: In: Barakat RR, Perelman RO, Markman M, Randal M, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 553–90.

CONIZATION OF THE CERVIX

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Conization of the cervix** can be used for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. It is performed in cases of biopsy-proven dysplasia with unsatisfactory colposcopy (inadequate visualization of the endocervical canal) or following endocervical curettage showing dysplasia or atypical glandular epithelial cells (Fig. 8.1-5). Persistent abnormal cytology associated with normal colposcopy, colposcopic suspicion of invasion, and/or cervical biopsy showing microinvasive cancer is also an indication for this procedure. The surgery consists of the annular removal of a cone-shaped wedge of tissue from the cervix with a scalpel. With the advent of the LEEP (loop electrosurgical excision procedure), most cone biopsies are done under local paracervical/intracervical block in an office setting and do not require the services of an anesthesiologist.

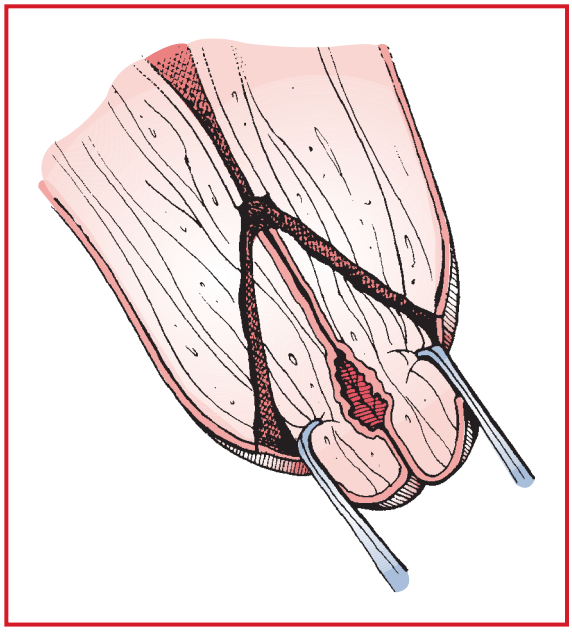


Figure 8.1-5. Cut across endocervix to complete cone excision.

Variant procedure or approaches: In selected patients, a **laser** is used in place of the scalpel. This procedure can be performed under local anesthesia with less blood loss, but operative time is usually longer. The thermal effect of the laser at the cone margins, although usually minimal, may interfere with pathologic interpretation. In pregnant patients, a **shallower cone** is done to minimize complications. Approximately 1% of women with cervical carcinoma are pregnant at the time of diagnosis, and 1/1240 pregnancies is complicated by cervical cancer. Recognition and therapy of preinvasive cervical lesions during pregnancy, therefore, are of paramount importance. Because of the increased vascularity of the pregnant uterus and cervix, conization is usually associated with increased blood loss and morbidity.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical dysplasia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Conization	Laser Conization	Shallow Cone In Pregnancy
Position	Lithotomy	⇐	Lithotomy; with left lateral tilt in 3rd trimester
Incision	Cervical	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Colposcope	CO_2 laser; protective eye wear; colposcope	Colposcope
Unique considerations	Infiltration of cervix with dilute vasopressin or phenylephrine solution. A 1:200,000 epinephrine solution also can be used. Vaginal pack necessary in selected patients.	⇐	Phenylephrine, vasopressin, or epinephrine should not be used during pregnancy. Liberal use of hemostatic sutures should be made.
Antibiotics	None	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)			
Surgical time	30–60 min	30–90 min	⇐
EBL	50–200 mL	50 mL	100–350 mL
Postop care	Monitor for postop bleeding	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 0.01%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Hemorrhage: 5–10% Preterm delivery: 16% Cervical stenosis: 2–3% Dysmenorrhea: Rare Infertility: Rare Injury to rectum and bladder: Rare Pelvic cellulitis: Rare Uterine perforation: Rare	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	10–15% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Fetal loss: 10–15% (up to 30% in 1st trimester)* Premature labor: 5–10% (controversial) Rupture of membrane: 2–5%
Pain score	3	3	3

*The naturally higher incidence of spontaneous miscarriages in the 1st trimester contributes to this figure.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive and postreproductive years
Incidence	~5% of Pap smears (+ for dysplasia); 10–17% of patients who undergo colposcopic exams
Etiology	Majority of cervical dysplasia is caused by persistent HPV infections
Risk factors	Smoking; human papilloma virus (HPV); herpes simplex virus (HSV); multiple sexual partners; early age of onset of coitus; multiparity; lower socioeconomic status; HIV; immunocompromised hosts

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Conization is done for diagnosis and treatment of cervical lesions. Occasionally it is necessary to perform the procedure during pregnancy, which increases the risk of bleeding complications. The effect of anesthetic agents on the fetus (especially 1st trimester) also needs to be considered when choosing anesthetic technique (see p. 852).

Respiratory	Not significant unless underlying lung disease.
Cardiovascular	These patients are generally young and, therefore, less likely to have significant heart disease.
Neurological	Usually not significant, unless there is Hx of seizure disorder or other neurologic illness.
Hematologic	Consider hemogram
Laboratory	Consider pregnancy test
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv (though generally held if pregnant).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Usually a local or MAC anesthetic; occasionally, GETA or spinal. Pregnancy makes it desirable to perform the procedure under local or regional anesthesia if appropriate (1% of cases).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). If pregnant patient, rapid-sequence induction (p. B-5) with cricoid pressure is appropriate if > 12 weeks gestation.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)
Emergence	No special issues

Regional anesthesia: Both spinal and epidural techniques are acceptable and may be preferred for pregnant patients who cannot tolerate local anesthesia. Prehydration with 1000 mL LR before block is recommended. Treat ↓ BP with ephedrine 5–10 mg iv, or phenylephrine 50–100 mcg, titrated to effect.

Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Fetal monitoring may be indicated for viable pregnancies	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Left uterine displacement Antiembolic stockings + SCD	***NB** peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop. Left uterine displacement with a wedge under mattress should be used for pregnant patients (after ~20 wk) or earlier gestation if cardiovascular compromise when supine.
Complications	Laser eye damage Fire Premature labor (if pregnant)	If a laser is used, eye protection is required for the patient and all OR personnel; be alert for fire hazards when using a laser.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury (2° lithotomy position) PONV Premature labor Bleeding	Nerve injury manifested as foot drop and loss of sensation over dorsum of foot. See p. B-6.
Pain management	Oral analgesics	Consider acetaminophen alone or in combination with opiates (Vicodin, Percocet) ± NSAIDs (if not pregnant).

Suggested Readings

1. Copeland LJ, Landon MB: Malignant disease in pregnancy. In: Gabbe SG, Niebyl JR, Simpson JL, eds. *Obstetrics: Normal and Problem Pregnancies.* Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2002, 1255–81.
2. DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT: Cancer in pregnancy. In: DiSaia PJ, Creasman WT, eds. *Clinical Gynecologic Oncology.* CV Mosby, St. Louis: 2000, 439–72.
3. Simeoens C, Goffin F, Simon P, et al: Adverse obstetrical outcomes after treatment of precancerous cervical lesions: a Belgian multicentre study. *BJOG* 2012; 119:1247–55.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR LASER THERAPY TO VULVA, VAGINA, CERVIX

PREOPERATIVE

Laser therapy is indicated for preinvasive lesions of the vulva, vagina, or cervix. It destroys tissues by the selective application of light energy focused into a beam. Vaporized tissues tend to heal without scarring, and blood loss is minimal due to the cauterizing effect of the laser. Many gynecological laser procedures are done with local anesthesia in the clinic setting and do not require the services of an anesthesiologist.

Respiratory	Not significant, unless there is underlying lung disease.
Cardiovascular	In elderly patients, exercise tolerance should be assessed. **Tests:** ECG if > 60 yr
Hematologic	**Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Consider pregnancy test in young women
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Usually MAC; GETA/LMA or regional technique may be used. Sedation with propofol, midazolam, and fentanyl in small doses usually is effective.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2)
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation not necessary. A technique with relatively rapid emergence (e.g., propofol and/or sevoflurane/desflurane/N_2O combinations) is useful for outpatient surgery.
Emergence	Limit opiates

Regional anesthesia: Spinal, epidural anesthesia, or CSE may be used with a sensory level to T10. Provide supplemental O_2 if iv sedation given.

Spinal	A T10 sensory level is desirable; hyperbaric bupivacaine 10–12 mg can be used. Small-diameter spinal needles (e.g., 25-ga Sprotte needles) minimize chance of postdural puncture headache (PDPH).
Epidural	2% lidocaine, ± epinephrine 1:200,000 (10–15 mL), or 0.25% bupivacaine (10–15 mL) is used; redose as needed with 3–5 mL. Narcotics, such as morphine (2–4 mg) or hydromorphone (0.3–0.6 mg), may be given in the epidural for postop pain control.
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h Consider prehydrating patient if using neuraxial block.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Antiembolic stockings + SCDs	
Complications	Eye injury OR fires Aerosolization of viral particles	Goggles should be worn by the patient and all OR personnel during laser use to prevent injury to eyes. Whenever laser is in use, be prepared for fires: know where fire extinguisher is located, and watch for improper handling of lasers.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV PDPH	See p. B-6. PDPH may require epidural blood patch for treatment.
Pain management	Oral analgesics	Consider acetaminophen alone or with opiates (Vicodin, Percocet) ± NSAIDs.

Suggested Reading

1. Garcia F, Hatch KD, Berek JS: Intraepithelial disease of the cervix, vagina, and vulva. In: Berek JS, eds. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology*. 15th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2011, 574–618.

SUCTION CURETTAGE FOR GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Suction curettage** is the most efficient method of evacuating a gestational trophoblastic neoplasm (mole). The procedure involves dilation of the cervix by instruments or by laminaria tents, followed by insertion of suction cannula of appropriate diameter into the uterine cavity. Standard negative pressures used are in the range of 30–70 mm Hg. IV oxytocin—to maintain uterine contraction and minimize blood loss—is started after a moderate amount of tissue has been removed. Suction curettage is followed by gentle, sharp curettage of the uterus to ensure adequate evacuation. Currettage may be performed under ultrasound guidance to decrease the risk of uterine perforation and to ensure adequate evacuation. Paracervical injection of dilute vasopressin solution or 1% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine may decrease operative blood loss (in cases not complicated by thyrotoxicosis or HTN).

Variant procedure or approaches: Evacuation of a mole > 16 wk gestation size is associated with a significant risk of trophoblastic embolization and cardiorespiratory compromise (2° pulmonary HTN/edema, cyanosis, ↓ CO, ↓ BP, right heart failure). Consider hemodynamic monitoring with TEE or a CVP catheter to manage cardiovascular changes associated with trophoblastic embolization and to prevent inadvertent fluid overload. In general, earlier diagnosis of molar pregnancies has decreased the incidence of complications such as HTN and thyroxicosis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Gestational trophoblastic disease (GTD)

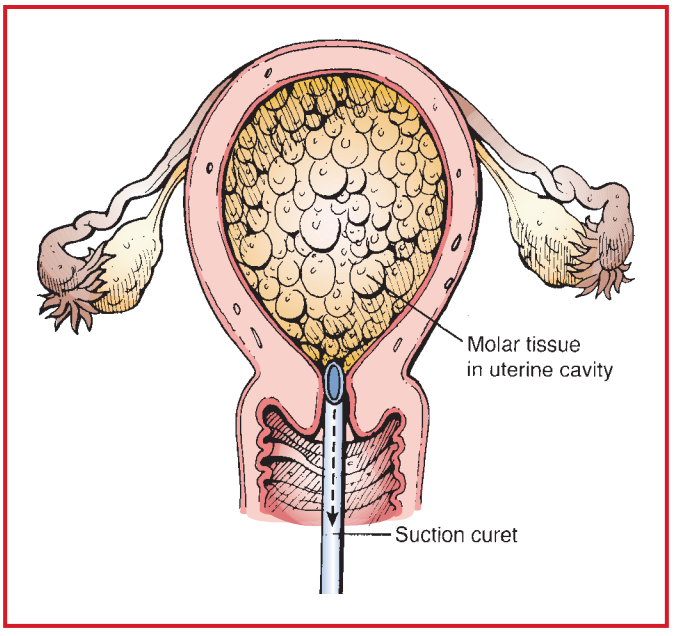


Figure 8.1-6. Suction curettage of a molar pregnancy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Small Mole < 16 Wks' Size	Large Mole > 16 Wks' Size
Position	Lithotomy	⇐
Incision	None	⇐
Special instrumentation	Suction evacuation kit	⇐
Unique considerations	If mole > 12 wk size, laparotomy setup should be readily available. Oxytocin drip, anesthesia, or surgery may precipitate thyroid storm. If hyperthyroidism is suspected before induction of anesthesia, beta-blockers should used. In PACU, monitor for signs of trophoblastic embolization or amniotic fluid embolus. If patient is Rh negative, give Rhogam.	⇐ ± central hemodynamic monitoring with TEE or CVP catheter; avoid overzealous use of fluids
Antibiotics	Cefotetan 2 g iv or doxycycline 200 mg po before procedure and 100 mg po after procedure.	⇐
Surgical time	30–60 min	⇐
EBL	200–400 mL	⇐
Postop care	Outpatient (usually)	Consider inpatient observation or ICU admission.
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Trophoblastic embolization: rare Excessive bleeding: 2% Infection: < 2% Uterine perforation: < 1%	11–27% 10% ⇐ 1–2% Acute pulmonary edema: 2–11%
Pain score	3	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive age group
Incidence	1/1000 deliveries in the United States
Etiology	Genetics: androgenous (all chromosomes in true moles are paternal in origin); nutritional deficiency: protein, folic acid, carotene (vitamin A)
Risk factors	Extremes of reproductive age, prior GTD (incidence 0.6–2.0%), Asian, Hispanic populations
Associated conditions	Hyperemesis gravidarum (2° ↑ levels of HCG); preeclampsia in 1st trimester; thyrotoxicosis (because of its analogy to TSH molecule, ↑ levels of HCG can bind TSH receptors and cause thyrotoxicosis)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Some 80% of cases are diagnosed at 12–18 wk of development. Most patients have an unusually large uterus for the length of the pregnancy, and vaginal bleeding is common. Trophoblastic disease is classified by the degree of invasiveness; **retained mole** is the most common type, and the least invasive; **invasive mole** involves the wall of the uterus; and **metastatic mole** involves more distant sites. Chemotherapy with methotrexate and actinomycin D usually is given postop for invasive or metastatic disease. (See Table 8.1-1 for toxicities of chemotherapeutic agents.)

Respiratory	Pulmonary edema may complicate preeclampsia, which occurs in 25% of patients with GTD. If respiratory distress is present, it also may be 2° embolization of tumor to lungs. Avoid overhydration → pulmonary complications in patients with large moles. **Tests:** Consider preop ABG if pulmonary function impaired and in patients at high risk of developing trophoblastic embolization. Others as indicated by H&P.
Cardiovascular	Dehydration and/or ↓ blood volume may exist due to hyperemesis and vaginal bleeding. Adequate hydration should be given preop if patient shows Sx of hypovolemia (e.g., tachycardia, orthostatic ↓ BP, low UO). Preeclampsia also may complicate this disease and can be diagnosed by HTN, proteinuria, ± edema. If the patient has severe preeclampsia, invasive monitoring of BP may be advisable. Also, if patient is receiving Mg^{++} therapy, a serum level should be ✓'d preop. Mg^{++} therapy may inhibit myocardial contractility in high doses. Ca^{++} is the preferred antidote for myocardial depression. $MgSO_4$ → uterine atony → ↑ blood loss.
Neurological	Sz prophylaxis with Mg^{++} is indicated for women with preeclampsia. Magnesium 4–6 mg loading dose iv over 20 min, then 1–2 g/h maintenance infusion. A 2nd bolus of 2 g over 5 min can be administered if the initial bolus dose is complete. If Sz occurs a small dose of propofol (20–40) mg or midazolam (1–2 mg) should be given iv and respiration assisted with supplemental O_2 by mask. The trachea should be intubated for airway protection in patients with full stomachs and in those who are difficult to ventilate by mask.
Musculoskeletal	✓reflexes if patient has received Mg^{++}. Reduce amount of muscle relaxant to compensate for the effects of Mg^{++} on muscle strength.
Hematologic	Anemia may be masked by hypovolemia. Rh– patients with Rh+ partners should receive 300 mcg of Rh immune globulin (RhoGAM) within 72 h postop to ↓ possibility of Rh isoimmunization in future pregnancies. **Tests:** CBC; ✓ Plt in preeclamptics. If patient has received chemotherapy recently, ✓ HCT; complete blood count (WBC, Plt).
Endocrine	Hyperthyroidism occurs in 5% of women with hydatidiform moles and is 2° the thyroid-stimulating effects of HCG. **Tests:** Thyroid function tests should be ✓'d preop in women with Sx of hyperthyroidism, and managed before surgery.

Laboratory	Serum HCG level; consider thyroid function tests; LFTs; PT; PTT; Plt count; Mg^{++} level; UA—as indicated from H&P, T&S or T&C.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Usually GETA, although may be carried out under spinal or epidural anesthesia.

General anesthesia:

Induction	A rapid-sequence induction (p. B-5) with cricoid pressure should be used. For RSI, consider supplementation with labetalol, hydralazine, esmolol, or remifentanil to obtund exaggerated laryngoscopic hypertensive response in preeclampsia.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). Control BP, if preeclamptic, with labetalol, hydralazine, or SNP. Try to keep DBP at 90–100 mm Hg. NDMR potentiated by magnesium.
Emergence	Extubate when fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned. Consider PONV prophylaxis.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	A T10 sensory level is desirable; hyperbaric bupivacaine (10–12 mg) may be used.	
Epidural	Use 2% lidocaine ± epinephrine 1:200,000 (10–20 mL) or 0.25% bupivacaine (10–15 mL)	
Blood and fluid requirements	Possible large blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h	One large-volume iv line should be placed and blood readily available. The usual causes of bleeding are uterine perforation, cervical laceration, or uterine atony. Cautious use of fluids if on magnesium infusion due to risk of pulmonary edema.
Control of bleeding	Oxytocin (30–40 U/L) infusion ↑ % volatile anesthetic may → ↓ uterine tone Methylergonovine maleate 0.2 mg im	Oxytocin is begun about halfway through procedure at 250 mL/h (consult obstetrician). Large oxytocin boluses may → ↓ BP. Try to keep anesthetic < 1 MAC to prevent uterine relaxation. Methylergonovine may be given for severe bleeding. Because this drug can cause HTN, it is contraindicated in any hypertensive etiology (e.g., preeclampsia).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) ± Arterial catheter ± CVP/PA catheter Foley catheter	An arterial catheter ± CVP are indicated in cases of thyrotoxicosis, preeclampsia, or significant hemorrhage. The use of vasodilators, such as SNP, is also an indication for invasive monitoring.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes TEDS + SCDS	* **NB:** peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Embolization of trophoblastic material	Embolization may occur, especially if > 16 wk gestation. Significant respiratory and cardiac compromise may occur, requiring postop ventilation and PEEP, hemodynamic support, ICU.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding	Continue oxytocin infusion. Significant hemorrhage should be evaluated by surgeons for possible perforation, laceration, or atony.
	PONV	Consider PONV prophylaxis with ondanestron 4 mg.
	HTN	BP should be monitored closely in preeclamptics. Consider ICU admission if unstable.
	↓ BP	Consider trophoblastic embolization and manage aggressively.
	Peroneal nerve injury (2° to lithotomy position)	Nerve injury manifested as foot drop and loss of sensation over dorsum of foot.
Pain management	Oral analgesics	Acetaminophen (325–650 mg po). Vicodin, or ketorolac (15–30 mg iv) for pain control.

Suggested Readings

1. Berkowitz RS, Goldstein DP: Gestational Trophoblastic Disease. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology*, 15th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. Philadelphia: 2001, 1458–78.
2. Berkowitz RS, Goldstein DP: Molar pregnancy and gestational trophoblastic disease. In: Barakat RR, Perelman RO, Markman M, Randal M, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology*, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 875–96.
3. Hoffman BL, Word LE: Surgeries for benign gynecologic conditions. In: Hoffman BL, Schorge Cunningham G, Calver LE, eds. *Williams Gynecology*, 2nd edition. McGraw-Hill Co., Columbus: 2012.

PELVIC EXENTERATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Pelvic exenteration** was introduced by Brunschwig as an ultraradical surgical approach for advanced and radioresistant cervical cancer. Although advanced vaginal and vulvar carcinoma occasionally have been treated with this procedure, its most important role is in the management of centrally recurrent, surgically resectable, radioresistant cervical carcinoma. **Total pelvic exenteration** involves **en bloc resection** of all pelvic tissues, including uterus, cervix, vagina, bladder, and rectum. Involvement of the distal vagina may require resection of vulva and groin nodes. The goal of this procedure is curative with removal of all cancer tissue and reconstruction of appropriate diversions for the urine and stool, if the colon cannot be reanastomosed to the rectum. It is rare for cervical and vaginal cancer to involve the lower 5 cm of the rectum and anus. It is, therefore, often possible to mobilize the descending colon and anastomose it primarily to the distal rectum. Otherwise, an **end colostomy** is created. A **continent or incontinent urinary diversion, omental pelvic carpet** or **sling,** and **gracilis myocutaneous flaps** for vaginal and perineal reconstruction are performed. A **rectus abdominis muscle flap** also can be used for vaginal reconstruction. This type of flap yields excellent aesthetic and functional results. In cases where an omental sling (shown in Fig. 8.1-7) cannot be developed, an absorbable synthetic mesh is sutured to the pelvic peritoneum to create a pelvic lid (like a hammock) to keep the small bowel off the denuded pelvic peritoneum, thus decreasing the possibility of small-bowel obstruction. In general, an additional 2–3 h of surgical time and an additional 300 mL of EBL are expected when a vaginal reconstruction is undertaken. An **exploratory laparotomy** is needed prior to initiation of the exenterative procedure to exclude spread of disease outside the pelvis and/or extension to pelvic sidewalls and pelvic lymph nodes, all of which are absolute contraindications to this procedure.

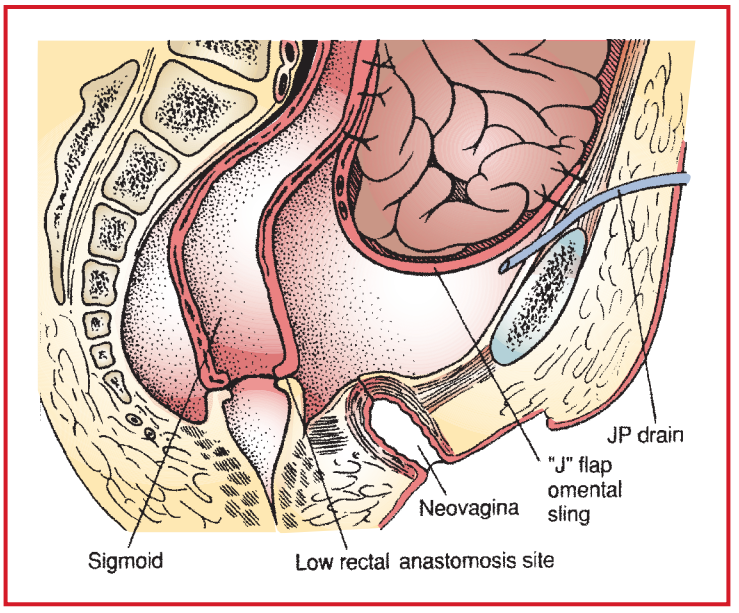


Figure 8.1-7. Sagittal section of the pelvis after a total pelvic exenteration. Note that all the reproductive organs, along with their supporting structures, the rectum and the bladder, have been resected. Drains can be placed through separate stab incisions in the abdomen. The small bowel is kept away from the operative site by a pelvic lid. The urinary and fecal diversions are not diagrammed. (Reproduced with permission from Wheeless CR: *Atlas of Pelvic Surgery*. Lea & Febiger: 1988.)

Resectability is evaluated by examination of pelvic and paraaortic lymph nodes, liver, hemidiaphragms, and peritoneal surfaces of the upper abdomen and pelvic wall. Washings are obtained for cytology. Evaluation of lymph nodes is then performed and all suspicious nodes are submitted for frozen-section pathologic examination. The pararectal, paravesical, and presacral spaces are then developed. If the patient is found to be inoperable, Cavitron Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator (CUSA) can be used to decrease the tumor burden. Consideration also should be given to **intra-operative radiation therapy,** which may provide an adjunctive treatment to radical surgery in the setting of: (1) recurrent disease close to the pelvic sidewalls; and (2) microscopically positive surgical margins or "close" resection margins. If the patient is deemed operable, the space of Retzius is developed. The round ligaments are then transected close to the pelvic sidewall bilaterally, and the infundibulopelvic ligaments also are ligated and transected. The ureters are divided as close to the bladder as possible. The superior hemorrhoidal vessel is ligated and transected, and the colon is transected at the appropriate level. The anterior divisions of the internal iliac artery on both sides are ligated and divided, and the web of tissue is clamped close to the pelvic sidewall, transected, and suture-ligated. Following this, sharp dissection can be done to free up the specimen from the low attachments to the levator muscles. In larger tumors, the levator muscle is partially removed with the specimen to provide adequate margins. From a combined perineal and abdominal approach, the distal vagina, urethra, and perineum (± rectum) can be resected. The specimen is handed off the field, hemostasis is achieved, and the bladder is reconstructed with a continent urinary diversion using an ileocolonic segment, ileal loop, or transverse colon conduit. An ileal loop or other urinary conduit is performed, a colostomy or low rectal anastomosis is done, vaginal reconstruction is undertaken, and the pelvic floor is covered. (Figs. 8.1-7 and 8.1-8 show the completed exenteration.)

Variant procedure or approaches: **Anterior pelvic exenteration** is technically similar to a total pelvic exenteration, except the rectum is left intact. **Posterior pelvic exenteration** involves preservation of bladder. Posterior exenteration has proved more useful in cancer of vulva or vagina than in cervical cancer. Anterior and posterior exenterations are used in selective cases because of the increased risk of an incomplete tumor resection and multiple complications and malfunctioning of the preserved organ.

Usual preop diagnosis: Recurrent cervical carcinoma following radiotherapy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Modified dorsolithotomy with Allen stirrups
Incision	Midline longitudinal, perineal
Special instrumentation	Vital View, ABC may be helpful; EEA, GIA, TA staplers; Robo-retractor or similar devices
Unique considerations	NG tube placement intraop. VTE prevention with preop SCDs and prophylactic heparin. Preop PFTs. Consider preop Greenfield IVC filter placement to avoid PE for high-risk patients. Consider intraop radiation of tumor bed and/or of resection margins. Abort case for positive lymph nodes, extrapelvic metastases and/or tumor extension to pelvic sidewalls noted.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv preop and continue q 12 h for 3 days. Alternatively, ertapenum 1 mg iv, or a combination of ampicillin (1 g), gentamicin (80 mg), and metronidazole (500 mg) may be given.
Surgical time	8–12 h (2-team approach); 5–10 h (for anterior and posterior exenteration)
Closing considerations	Abdominal drains; colostomy; ureteral stents; urostomy; intraop radiation therapy. Triple-lumen central line placement. Copious irrigation of the operative sites.
EBL	1200–4000 mL
Postop care	ICU: 2–3 d. Correction of electrolyte imbalance. Extensive peritoneal raw surfaces → intraperitoneal fluid 3rd-spacing. Patients require good hydration to maintain intravascular volume. SCDs and heparin VTE prophylaxis. Early and aggressive use of TPN is important. Remove ureteral stents 1–2 wk postop, when the edema at the ureterointestinal site has subsided.
Mortality	< 5%
Morbidity	Intraop hemorrhage requiring a median of 5 U PRBC Infectious: Wound breakdown: 20–30% Nonspecific: 25% Flap necrosis: 1–15% Pelvic abscess: 9–17% Pyelonephritis: 14–27% Wound infection: 35% Sepsis: 5–27% Psychiatric: Confusion: 24% Intestinal: Ileus: 2–20% GI fistula: 10–32% Stoma breakdown: 3% Small bowel obstruction: 4–9% Renal: Ureteral stricture: 8% Ureteral fistulae: 4–8% Failure: 1–5% Cardiovascular: Venous thrombosis: 7–11% DIC: 3% Dysrrhythmia: 3% MI: 3% Pulmonary: Pneumonia: 9% PE: 2% Neurologic: CVA: 2%
Pain score	7–8

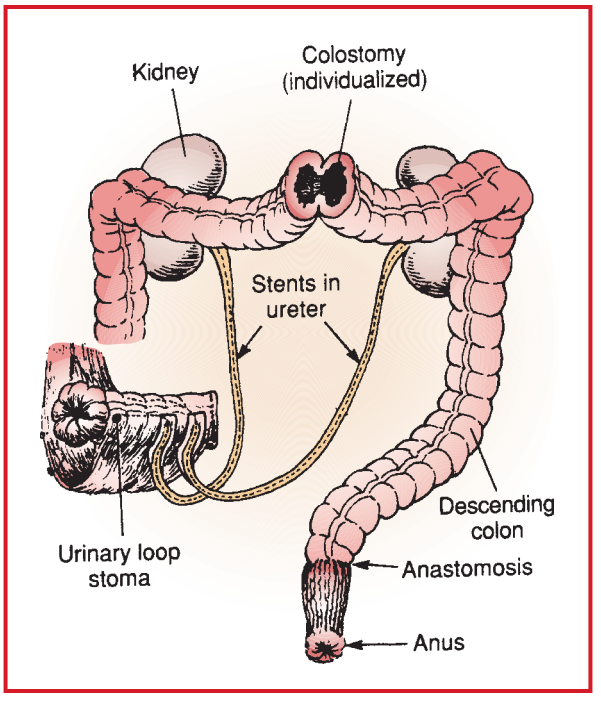


Figure 8.1-8. Conceptual drawing shows the urinary and fecal diversions after a total pelvic exenteration. (Reproduced with permission from Wheeless CR: *Atlas of Pelvic Surgery.* Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All age groups
Incidence	1.5–17% of cervical cancers treated with radiation therapy (depending on stage and cell type)
Associated conditions	Advanced or recurrent gynecologic malignancies; radiation injury

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This procedure is performed for recurrent rectal, cervical, or other gynecologic cancers and involves removal of all pelvic organs. Occasionally, the bladder or rectum is preserved, if not involved with tumor. Most patients have undergone preop radiation or chemotherapy.

Respiratory	Usually not significant unless there is Hx of smoking or lung disease. Consider prior chemotherapy. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Second-Look/Reassessment Laparotomy for Ovarian Cancer, p. 765.) **Tests:** Consider CXR; others as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	Exercise tolerance should be assessed. Underlying CAD or CHF should be medically optimized preoperatively. Any exposure to cardiotoxic chemotherapy should be investigated; consider ECHO. **Tests:** Consider ECG; others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Any Hx of stroke, Sz, carotid artery disease, or other neurologic disease should be evaluated and documented.

Endocrine	Any endocrine disease, such as diabetes, should be optimized in consultation with the patient's primary care physician or endocrinologist. Ask about recent corticosteroid use. **Tests:** Fasting blood sugar in the diabetic; others as indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Consider ascites and malnutrition.
Hematologic	Many patients will be anemic from chronic disease and malnutrition. Consider T&S/T&C. **Tests:** CBC, PT, PTT
Laboratory	Additional testing as indicated from preop H&P.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv. Detailed explanation about the procedure and the potential for postop events including intubation and mechanical ventilation are worthwhile.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± supplemental epidural anesthesia.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2), unless otherwise indicated by patient condition. Keep in mind possibility surgery could be significantly shortened if patient deemed inoperable during initial exploration.	
Maintenance	Balanced anesthetic technique based on comorbidities, use of concomitant epidural anesthesia and likelihood of needing ICU postop. Epidural anesthetic and narcotic (morphine or hydromorphone) can be given to reduce anesthetic requirements.	
Emergence	If patient is hemodynamically stable, with favorable oxygenation and pulmonary function, normothermic, and responsive at the end of surgery, extubation may be appropriate. Any patient who is unstable, hypothermic, has high-oxygen requirements, significant edema of the face or airway, is acidotic, or who has ongoing fluid requirements should be admitted to ICU and remain intubated. Due to the large fluid shifts and significant complication rates, postop monitoring in the ICU is appropriate.	
Epidural	Consider epidural for intraop and/or postop use: 2% lidocaine (10–15 mL), or 0.25% bupivacaine (10–20 mL), with or without hydromorphone (0.3–0.8 mg), may be given in the epidural for postop pain control. Intraop use may ↑ hemodynamic instability in setting of ↑ bleeding and fluid shifts.	
Ventilation	5–7 cm H_2O PEEP may help prevent atelectasis.	✓ABGs during surgery. Adjust ventilation to keep normocarbic. Correct the underlying cause of any metabolic acidosis.
Blood and fluid requirements	Potential large blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR at 10–15 mL/kg/h Colloid solutions	Renal ultrafiltration improved by NS/LR, bowel edema ↑'d. LR useful when acidosis occurs. NS is better when giving blood products or when metabolic alkalosis is present. Rapid-infuser should be available. Strive to maintain euvolemia based on BP, HR, UO, ABG, invasive monitoring (CVP, CO, art line tracing), and estimates of ongoing EBL and fluid shifts.
	Hetastarch Consider PRBCs when Hct < 27% Maintain UO of 0.5–1 mL/kg/h.	Use of 6% hetastarch should be limited to 1000 mL due to potential coagulopathy with larger volumes.
	Ionized Ca^{++}	Measure ionized Ca^{++} and K^{+} after rapid administration of blood products; replace Ca^{++} as necessary.
	FFP/Plt	Plt or FFP for coagulation abnormalities. Monitor values at regular intervals based on PT stability and events.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP Foley catheter ± TEE	Invasive hemodynamic monitoring with arterial and CVP catheters usually helpful in these cases which are of very long, and associated with major bleeding, fluid shifts, ICU postop, and potential need for vasoactive infusions. TEE allows intraop assessment of myocardial function and may be appropriate in selected patients.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Antiembolism stockings and SCD	* **NB:** peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Hypothermia VTE Coagulopathy Trauma to kidney ± Ureters Bleeding Metabolic acidosis Peripheral nerve injury	Use forced air and fluid warmers and monitor temperature. See Appendix B Watch for hematuria or ↓ UO Monitor hemoglobin and coagulation status periodically during long surgery. Keep adequate reserve blood products available. Prolonged surgery: carefully pad, secure, and monitor all extremities.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding Fluid overload Hypothermia PONV VTE Peripheral nerve injury	✓Hct and coags periodically. Be prepared for continued increased fluid requirements for 24 h postop. Maintain euvolemia, if significant fluid gain occurs, consider ICU postop ventilation. If extubated. See p. B-6. See p. B-8. For prolonged surgery, carefully pad, secure, and monitor all extremities.
Pain management	Epidural or iv opiates	See p. C-2.
Tests	CBC, chemistry panel, coags, ABG	Others as indicated from postoperative course. Patient will likely need ongoing critical care/ICU management.

Suggested Readings

1. Benn T, Brooks RA, Zhang Q, et al: Pelvic exenteration in gynecologic oncology: a single institution study over 20 years. *Gynecologic Oncology* 2001; 122:14–8.
2. Berek S, Howe C, Lagasse LD, et al: Pelvic exenteration for recurrent gynecologic malignancy: survival and morbidity analysis of the 45-year experience at UCLA. *Gynecologic Oncology* 2005; 99:153–9.
3. Burke TW, Morley GW: Pelvic exenteration. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *Te Linde's Operative Gynecology*, 9th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003, 1523–36.
4. Husain A, Curtin J, Brown C, et al: Continent urinary diversion and low-rectal anastomosis in patients undergoing exenterative procedures for recurrent gynecologic malignancies. *Gynecol Oncol* 2000; 78:208–11.
5. Maggioni A, Raviglione G, Landoni F, et al: Pelvic exenteration: ten-year experience at the European Institute of Oncology in Milan. *Gynecologic Oncology* 2009; 114:64–8.
6. Randall ME, Michael H, Long H, et al: Uterine cervix. In: Barakat RR, Perlman OR, Markman M, Randal M, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 623–82.

EXPLORATORY LAPAROTOMY OR LAPAROSCOPY, HYSTERECTOMY/BSO FOR UTERINE CANCER

SURGICAL CONSIDERATION

Description: Currently, endometrial cancer is the most common gynecologic malignancy in the United States. The first step in the management of this cancer is surgical staging via laparotomy or laparoscopy. The objective, aside from 1° therapy, is to obtain as much surgical and pathological staging data as feasible for determination of adjuvant postop therapy. Traditionally, surgery for uterine cancer was performed via laparotomy; however, laparoscopy has become a preferred approach for early stage uterine cancer after recent trials have shown decreased operative morbidity and similar survival outcomes compared to laparotomy. In laparoscopy, or an open-approach, the first step is careful exploration, which is carried out for evidence of omental, liver, peritoneal, and adnexal metastases. Aortic and pelvic areas are evaluated for metastases, and suspicious nodes are removed. In patients with low-grade histology and no or minimal suspected invasion, complete lymph node dissection remains an area of controversy, and treatment is generally individualized based on clinicopathologic factors. In patients with more extensive disease, a pelvic and periaortic lymph nodes dissection is performed. The lymph node sampling may be omitted in the treatment of some uterine sarcomas. A **total hysterectomy** with **BSO** is then performed in the usual manner (see discussion of TAH/BSO in Staging Laparotomy for Ovarian Cancer, p. 760).

As a result of recent clinical trials, minimally invasive surgery via laparoscopy or robotic-assisted laparoscopy has become the first approach for uterine cancer staging. The GOG conducted a randomized prospective study evaluating exploratory laparotomy with open staging versus laparoscopic staging (GOG LAP2) to compare outcomes and safety. In 2009, the GOG published the data regarding perioperative morbidity and showed that the laparoscopic approach was associated with a shorter hospital stay and fewer moderate-to-severe postoperative complications. In 2012, the GOG published the survival data, which did not show statistical equivalence between two approaches relative to survival; however, a recent Cochrane meta-analysis has shown equivalent recurrence free and overall survival with laparoscopy compared to laparotomy. When proceeding with a laparoscopic approach, it is important to note that adhesions of variable severity may be present from prior surgery or radiation. Care should be taken to avoid possible bowel injury at time of trocar insertion. Patient needs to be in steep Trendelenburg position for duration of the procedure, and both arms should be tucked in at the patient's sides. Because argon is a heavy gas, prolonged use of the endoscopic ABC in a patient in steep Trendelenburg can → significant facial and neck subcutaneous emphysema. As with the open technique, the lymph nodes being removed are in the immediate proximity of the great pelvic vessels. The surgeon and anesthesiologist should be mindful of the potential for severe hemorrhage if these vessels are injured.

Usual preop diagnosis: Endometrial carcinoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open Technique	Laparoscopic and Robotic Technique
Position	Supine	Modified dorsolithotomy in Allen stirrups
Incision	Midline longitudinal abdominal/transverse	Vertical infraumbilical and multiple small transverse incisions. For robotic surgery, midline incision is supraumbilical.
Special instrumentation	None	Uterine manipulator, Videolaparoscopy equipment. Endoscopic GIA staplers, endoscopic ABC, endoscopic vascular clips, and CO_2 laser. For robotic surgery, bean bag positioner, additional padding for shoulders, neck, and arms.
Unique considerations	None	Mechanical bowel preop; steep Trendelenburg
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv; additional doses based on EBL and duration of surgery.	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)		
Surgical time	2–4 h	2–3 h
Closing considerations	± NG tube placement	Release the pneumoperitoneum completely. Closure of fascia at trocar sites ≥ 10 mm diameter
EBL	400–750 mL	100–500 mL
Postop care	Consider using SCDs and heparin for DVT prophylaxis.	Begin early ambulation and feeding. Patients generally can be discharged on POD 1 or 2.
	Open Technique	**Laparoscopic Technique**
Mortality	0.1%	⇐
Morbidity	Hemorrhage requiring transfusion: 15% Thrombophlebitis: 7% UTI: 7% Paralytic ileus: 2–5% Wound infection: 3–7% VTE: 1–3% Pelvic infection: 1–2% Wound dehiscence: 1% Bowel injuries: < 1% Urinary tract injuries: < 1%	4–7% ⇐ ⇐ 1–2% Rare ⇐ ⇐ N/A 1% 1–5% Trocar site herniation: 0.5–2% Trocar site tumor: <1%
Pain score	7	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive and postreproductive ages (average = 61 yr)
Incidence	24/100,000; 47,130 new cases in 2012, lifetime risk 2.6%
Etiology	Exposure to unopposed endogenous or exogenous estrogen; ↑ extraglandular conversion of androstenedione to estrone; sequential oral contraceptive pills; exposure to radiation (sarcomas)
Risk factors	Nulliparity, late menopause, early menarche, family hx, chronic anovulation, PCOS, tamoxifen use
Associated conditions	Obesity; diabetes; HTN; nulliparity; late menopause; early menarche; family Hx; Stein-Leventhal syndrome; chronic anovulation; ovarian and colon cancer; granulosa cell ovarian tumors; arthritis; hypothyroidism; HNPCC (Lynch) syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Endometrial cancer usually is diagnosed in postmenopausal women who present with vaginal bleeding. Exploratory laparotomy or laparoscopy and TAH/BSO are commonly performed for removal of the primary tumor as well as staging of metastatic disease. Occasionally, preop radiation therapy may be in progress, with consequent systemic effects.

Respiratory	✓for Hx of lung disease or smoking. **Tests:** Others as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Hx of CAD, HTN, or CHF Sx (e.g., angina, dyspnea, or peripheral edema) should be investigated. Assess patient's exercise tolerance and current medications. Tests such as an exercise treadmill or ECHO may be indicated if patient has significant angina or CHF. **Tests:** Patients > 60 yr should have a preop ECG.

Neurological	Look for cerebrovascular disease, Sz, or other neurologic disease.
Endocrine	Inquire about the presence of endocrine diseases, such as diabetes and hypothyroidism, which have been associated with this tumor. If the patient has received corticosteroids within the previous 6 mo, a supplemental dose of hydrocortisone (100 mg iv q 12 h × 2 d) should be considered. **Tests:** Consider tests if indicated from H&P.
Neuromuscular	Osteoarthritis and osteoporosis common in this patient population. Ask about NSAID usage.
Hematologic	If vaginal bleeding has been profuse or of long duration, significant anemia may occur. Consider preop iron supplements if there are several days until surgery. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	Additional testing based on preop H&P.
Premedication	Consider anxiolytic, such as midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural or spinal analgesia/anesthesia.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2)
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)
Emergence	Reverse muscle relaxant with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg with glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg). Provide supplemental O_2 until patient is fully recovered from anesthesia. Consider PONV prophylaxis (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv).

Regional anesthesia:

Epidural	2% lidocaine (10–20 mL), ± epinephrine 1:200,000, or 0.25% bupivacaine (15–20 mL) is used; then at ~3–5 mL/h. Narcotics, such as morphine (2–4 mg) or hydromorphone (0.3–0.6 mg), may be given in the epidural for postop pain control.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR at 4–6 mL/kg/h Consider PRBC for Hct < 25%	Crystalloid is used for volume replacement. If anemia is present preop, it may be necessary to give PRBCs to keep Hct > 25%.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Foley catheter ± Arterial line, CVP ± NG tube	Direct monitoring of arterial pressure is indicated in patients with CAD, severe HTN, or lung disease. Consider art line and/or CVP if significant comorbidities exist.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Antiembolism stockings and SCD	
Complications	Hypothermia Trauma or obstruction of ureter	Warm iv fluids; use forced-air warmer. Heating pad on OR table. Watch for hematuria or ↓ UO

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV VTE Hypothermia Bleeding	See p. B-6. See p. B-8.

Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Epidural/spinal narcotics (p. C-2)	Ketorolac (30 mg im/iv) is useful for breakthrough pain. A multimodal approach—including local anesthetics, NSAIDs, and acetaminophen, or even low-dose (0.1–0.2 mg/kg/h) ketamine—in the OR may provide analgesia and ↓ PONV.

Suggested Readings

1. Coronoado PJ, Herrai MA, Magrina JF, et al: Comparison of perioperative outcomes and cost of robotic-assisted laparoscopy, laparoscopy, and laparotomy for endometrial cancer. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Repro Biol* 2012; https://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ejogrb.2012.07.006
2. Galaal K, Bryant A, Fisher AD, et al: Laparoscopy versus laparotomy for the management of early stage endometrial cancer. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; Issue 9.
3. Sutton G, Kavanagh J, Wolfson A, et al: Corpus: Epithelial tumors. In: Barakat RR, Perlman RO, Markman M, Randal M, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology*, 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 683–732.
4. Walker JL, Piedmonte MR, Spirtos NM, et al: Recurrance and survival after random assignment to laparoscopy versus laparostomy for comprehensive surgical staging of uterine cancer: a Gynecologic Group LAP2 study. *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 2012; 30:695–700.
5. Walker JL, Piedmonte MR, Spirtos NM, et al: Laparoscopy compared with laparotomy for comprehensive surgical staging of uterine cancer: Gynecologic Oncology Group Study LAP2. *J Clin Oncology* 2009; 32:5331–6.

RADICAL HYSTERECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Radical hysterectomy** is the preferred mode of therapy for young women with Stage IA, IB, or non-bulky IIA cervical carcinoma, who want to preserve ovarian function. It is also appropriate with Stage II endometrial and Stage I vaginal carcinoma. The operation involves the removal of the uterus, along with the upper vagina and all the parametrial tissues to the pelvic sidewall. A pelvic and paraaortic **lymph node dissection** usually is performed at the beginning of the procedure. Suspicious nodes are submitted for pathological frozen-section evaluation. The paravesical and pararectal spaces are then developed, with the "web" of tissue between these two spaces being palpated carefully (Fig. 8.1-9). In cases of cervical or vaginal cancer, if parametrial tumor extension is noted and/or the lymph nodes are positive on frozen section, the hysterectomy may be aborted. The radical hysterectomy is performed after the pararectal and paravesical spaces have been developed. The uterine arteries are divided at their origin from the anterior division of the internal iliac artery. The ureters are dissected free of the parametrial tissues, which are then transected close to the pelvic sidewall. Next, the rectovaginal space is developed (Fig. 8.1-10). The uterosacral ligaments are transected between their uterine and sacral attachments. The upper third of the vagina is cross-clamped and divided in such a manner as to provide a 3-cm margin, and the specimen is delivered en bloc. Note that during this procedure the ureters and bladder are dissected free and left intact. With the increasing use of minimally invasive surgery in gynecologic oncology, radical hysterectomy is frequently performed laparoscopically or robotically. Similar to laparoscopic surgery for endometrial cancer, steep Trendelenburg is required during the procedure, and special care is taken to support the head, shoulders, and arms (see p. 787).

In reproductive-age women, who may require postop radiotherapy, ovarian function is preserved by performing an **oophoropexy.** This is accomplished by severing the uteroovarian ligament and mobilizing the ovarian vessels as they course through the infundibulopelvic ligament. The ovaries are then sutured outside the radiation therapy field and marked with metal clips for future identification.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Stallworthy, Dolstad, Novak, Rutledge, Wertheim,** and other surgeons have proposed several modifications in an effort to reduce the incidence of ureteral and bladder fistulae. These approaches include preservation of blood supply to the terminal 2 cm of the pelvic ureter by widely displacing ureters (not dissecting them from their fascial beds) and limiting parametrial dissection to the proximal 1/3 or 1/2.

Usual preop diagnosis: Stage IA, IB, or nonbulky IIA cervical carcinoma; Stage II endometrial or Stage I vaginal carcinoma (less common)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Laparotomy	Laparoscopy or Robotic-Assisted Laparoscopy
Position	Supine/modified lithotomy	Modified dorsal lithotomy
Incision	Midline longitudinal or low transverse abdominal (Maylard/Cherney)	Supra- or infraumbilical midline incision and multiple small transverse incisions
Special instrumentation	ABC, Vital View (suction, irrigation, and light source combined in 1 instrument) helpful	
Unique considerations	Abort case if positive paraaortic lymph nodes found on frozen section, or if obvious parametrial involvement noted. Consider intraop radiation therapy (investigational), if patient is inoperable.	⇐ + mechanical bowel prep, steep Trendelenburg
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv; then q 12 h × 2 doses; additional doses based on EBL and duration of surgery.	⇐
Surgical time	3–6 h	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Vaginal and abdominal drains; ± NG tube placement; suprapubic bladder catheter placement; oophoropexy; copious irrigation	Release the pneumoperitoneum completely. Closure of fascia at trocar sites > 10 mm diameter
EBL	500–1500 mL	100–500 mL
Postop care	Transient ileus very common. Advance diet slowly. Transient bladder dysfunction very common; therefore, continued bladder drainage for 1+ wk may be necessary. Consider using SCDs and heparin for DVT prophylaxis.	Early ambulation and feeding. Patients can be discharged POD#1 or 2. Transient bladder dysfunction common; urinary catheter kept in place 5–7 d. Consider preoperative prophylactic heparin
Mortality	0.3–2.0%	0.1–0.2%
Morbidity	Paralytic ileus: 3–11% Pelvic lymphocyst: 2–3% Intraop hemorrhage: 3–5% Thrombophlebitis: 7% Pneumonia: 1.5–4% Wound infection: 3.5% Vesical injury: 2–3% Pelvic infection: 1–2% PE: 1–2% Vesical fistulae: 1–2% Small bowel obstruction: 1–2% Ureteral fistulae: 1–2% Uretral injury: 1–2% Wound dehiscence: 1% Postop lymphedema: <1% Rectal injury: <1% Pelvic urinoma: Rare	Ileus: 1–2% Lymphocyst: 2–6% Intraop hemorrhage: 1–3% Thrombophlebitis: 7% Pneumonia: 1.5–4% Wound infection: Rare Vesical injury: 2–3% Ureteral injury: 1–3% Pelvic infection: 1–2% PE: 1–3% Small bowel obstruction: Rare Wound dehiscence: Rare Postop lymphedema: Rare Conversion to laparotomy: 1–2% Cuff dehiscence: 5–8% Trocar site herniation: 0.5–2% Bladder dysfunction: 10–20%
Pain score	8	5–6

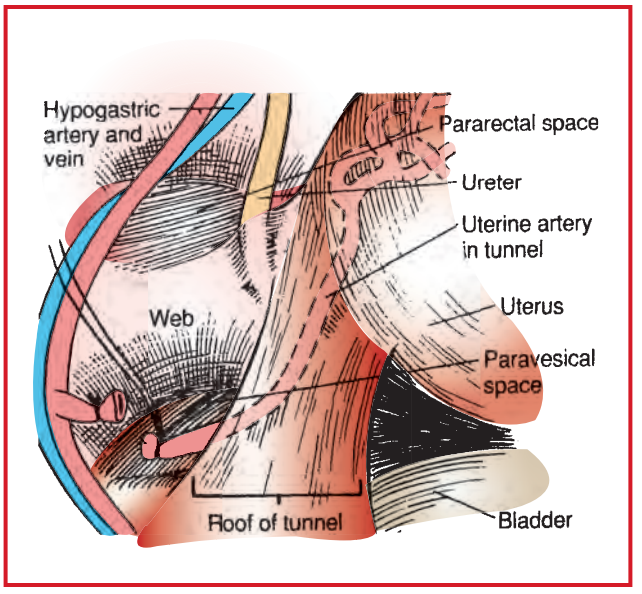


Figure 8.1-9. View of parametrial area, showing positions of ureter and uterine artery to web, hypergastric vessels, paravesical, and pararectal spaces. (Reproduced with permission from Wheeless CR: *Atlas of Pelvic Surgery.* Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

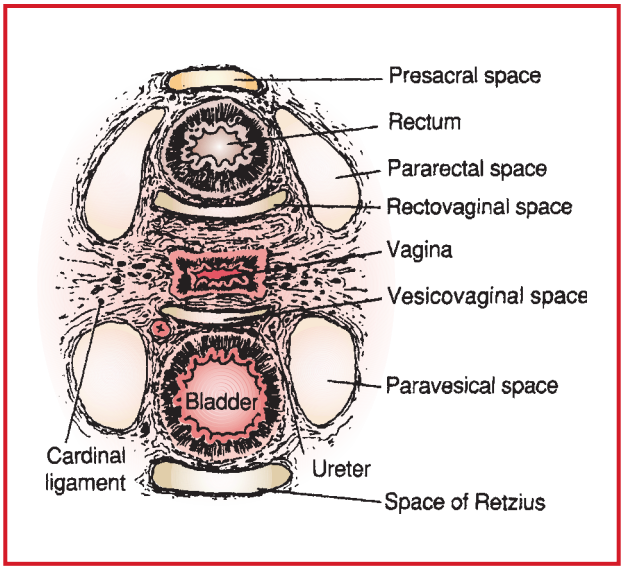


Figure 8.1-10. Schematic diagram of a cut in the anteroposterior plane with positions of all spaces in relation to pelvic organs. (Reproduced with permission from Wheeless CR: *Atlas of Pelvic Surgery.* Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Reproductive and postreproductive years
Incidence	10/100,000
Etiology	Human papilloma virus (HPV), subtypes 16, 18 (most common), and others
Associated conditions	Smoking; venereal warts; genital herpes; multiple sexual partners; early-age onset of coitus; multiparity; lower socioeconomic status; HIV infection

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This surgery usually is performed for cervical carcinoma in young women who wish to preserve ovarian function, and whose tumor has not spread beyond local invasion. Lymph nodes are removed to confer a therapeutic advantage and to plan postop adjuvant therapy, if any.

Respiratory	These tumors have been associated with cigarette smoking. ✓ for preexisting lung disease. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Patients > 60 yr need a preop ECG. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	✓ NSAID usage in the previous week. **Tests:** Hemogram
Laboratory	Renal panel if age ≥ 65 yr, HTN, renal disease, DM
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural or spinal analgesia for postop pain control.

		Laparotomy	Laparoscopy
Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2)		
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)		
Emergence	No special considerations		
Blood and fluid requirements	500–1500 mL IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR at 6–8 mL/kg/h Maintain UO > 0.5 mL/kg/h Warm iv fluids	Maintain euvolemia based on HR, BP, UO, invasive monitoring, ABG, and estimates of ongoing blood loss and fluid shifts.	100–500 mL iv 16–18 ga x1-2 NS/LR at 6 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Foley catheter ± Arterial catheter ± CVP catheter	Consider invasive monitoring for patients with underlying cardiopulmonary disease, advanced age, or in cases of large anticipated or unanticipated blood loss.	⇐
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Antiembolism stockings and SCD		Steep Trendelenburg
Complications	Injury to ureters Hypothermia	Watch for hematuria or ↓ UO. Warm iv fluids; use forced-air warmer.	⇐

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Atelectasis Hypothermia Bleeding VTE PONV	Give supplemental O_2 postop. Encourage use of incentive spirometer. See p. B-6 See p. B-8
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Epidural or spinal narcotics (p. C-2)	Consider ketorolac 15–30 mg im/iv q 8 h for breakthrough pain.

Suggested Readings

1. Randall ME, Michael H, Long H, et al: Uterine cervix. In: Barakat RR, Perlman RO, Markman M, et al, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology,* 5th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2009, 623–82.
2. Wright JD, Herzog TJ, Neugut AI, et al: Comparative effectiveness of minimally invasive radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; 127:11–17.

ROBOTIC-ASSISTED LAPAROSCOPY AND SURGERY IN GYNECOLOGIC ONCOLOGY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Laparoscopy and robotic-assisted laparoscopy are both widely used to treat gynecologic cancers. As reviewed previously, a recent Cochrane review has shown equivalent disease-free and overall survival when comparing laparoscopy to an open approach for the treatment of endometrial cancer. In addition, other advantages of a laparoscopic approach include a shorter hospital stay, better pain control, faster recovery time, ↓ morbidity, and cosmetically appealing smaller incisions. Increasingly, more studies are being published to better answer questions regarding the safety of use in malignant diseases, differences in operative time, and cost, as well as survival and morbidity differences based on cancer type. The authors believe that there is a role for laparoscopy in select situations, such as:

- Assessment of adnexal masses and diagnosis of ovarian cancer;
- Laparoscopic lymphadenectomy with laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy or laparoscopic hysterectomy in staging of endometrial cancer;
- Laparoscopically assisted radical vaginal hysterectomy or laparoscopic radical hysterectomy with lymphadenectomy in early-stage cervical cancer;
- Laparoscopically assisted application of interstitial brachytherapy implants; and
- Interval or secondary cytoreductive surgery for ovarian cancer.

Details of each of these procedures are beyond the scope of this section; however, common principles of laparoscopic techniques (e.g., adhesiolysis, biopsies, oophorectomy, omentectomy) apply (see discussion in Laparoscopic Procedures for Gynecologic Surgery, p. 864). The patient is placed in the dorsal lithotomy position, with the buttocks extended over the edge of the table to allow for instrument manipulation, and may need to be placed in steep Trendelenburg position during surgery. Various techniques are used for entry into the abdominal cavity, but the open laparoscopic technique is favored by many and may ↓ risk of vascular or visceral injuries. Other incision-related complications include dehiscence and hernia.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ovarian tumor and other gynecological cancers/tumors

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy; legs in Allen universal stirrups; steep Trendelenburg
Incisions	Intraumbilical; bilateral suprapubic; midline suprapubic
Special instrumentation	CO_2 laser; bipolar Ligasure or other device; suction irrigator; may require Harmonic Scalpel; various laparoscopic stapling instruments; beanbag or other support for robotic surgery
Unique considerations	Extended operative time and period of abdominal insufflation for radical procedures. Possible rapid need for laparotomy. Extensive use of electrocautery, ABC, CO_2 laser
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	1.5–5 h
Closing considerations	Quicker than with laparotomy; but fascia of all 10- to 12-mm ports need to be closed. 5-mm trocar sites can be closed in a subcuticular fashion.
EBL	50–1500 mL, depending on extent of procedure
Postop care	Advance diet as tolerated, ambulate POD#0, discharge POD#1-2
Mortality	0.1%
Morbidity	Overall complication rate: 0.2–10.3% Conversion to laparotomy: 2.1–7% Port-site metastasis: < 1% Subcutaneous emphysema: 0.3–2% Pneumomediastinum: 0.26% Brachial plexus neuropathy: 0.16% Incisional hernia: 0.5–2% Bowel injury: 1% Major vascular injury: < 1% Bladder/ureteral injury: 1–3% Gas embolism: Rare Wound infection: Uncommon
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Reproductive and postreproductive year
Incidence	Depends on primary disease
Etiology	Numerous, depending on primary disease (see appropriate sections earlier in this chapter).
Associated conditions	See specific procedures in this chapter.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Laparoscopic Hysterectomy, p. 864.

Suggested Readings

1. Coronoado PJ, Herrai MA, Magrina JF, et al: Comparison of perioperative outcomes and cost of robotic-assisted laparoscopy, laparoscopy, and laparotomy for endometrial cancer. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Repro Biol* 2012; https://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ejorgb.2012.07.006
2. Galaal K, Bryant A, Fisher AS, et al: Laparoscopy versus laparotomy for the management of early stage endometrial cancer. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; Issue 9.

3. Husain A, Chi DS, Prasad M, et al: The role of laparoscopy in second-look evaluations for ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2001; 80:44–7.
4. Joshi GP: Complications of laparoscopy. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2001; 19:89–105.
5. Magrina JF: Complications of laparoscopic surgery. *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 2002; 45:469–80.
6. Ramirez PT, Frumovitz M, Escobar PF: Minimally invasive surgery. In: Karlan BY, Bristow RE, Li AJ, eds. *Gynecologic Oncology: Clinical Practice and Surgical Atlas,* 1st edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2012.
7. Walker JL, Piedmonte MR, Spirtos NM, et al: Laparoscopy compared with laparotomy for comprehensive surgical staging of uterine cancer: Gynecologic Oncology Group Study LAP2. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; 32:5331–6.
8. Walker JL, Piedmonte MR, Spirtos NM, et al: Recurrance and survival after random assignment to laparoscopy versus laparostomy for comprehensive surgical staging of uterine cancer: a Gynecologic Group LAP2 Study. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; 30:695–700.
9. Wright JD, Herzog TJ, Neugut AI, et al: Comparative effectiveness of minimally invasive and abdominal radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; 127:11–7.

INTERSTITIAL PERINEAL IMPLANTS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Radiotherapy** is the treatment of choice for International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) Stage IIB-IVA carcinoma of the cervix; Stage I, II, III, and IVA vaginal cancers; selected vulvar cancers; and pelvic recurrences of gynecologic cancers. In addition, radiotherapy is also commonly used as an adjuvant treatment with chemotherapy and surgery for advanced endometrial cancer. Often, **external-beam therapy** is combined with brachytherapy, either in the form of intracavitary insertion or as an interstitial perineal template implant. Intracavitary radiotherapy utilizes devices such as Fletcher-Suit tandem and ovoid applicators (Fig. 8.1-11) or cylinders that are fitted into the vagina and provide a therapeutic boost to the vaginal apex region after external beam irradiation. In general, these devices do not require a laparotomy or laparoscopy for guidance. For selected patients with distorted anatomy and/or bulky tumors, interstitial implants provide superior dose distribution and better local tumor control. The two most widely used systems are the **Martinez Universal Perineal Interstitial Template (MUPIT)** and the **Syed-Neblett applicator**. These systems have similar efficacy, and both are performed in the OR with the patient under MAC or GA. A **laparoscopy** or **laparotomy** is frequently performed at the time of interstitial implant placement to accurately guide the needles into their target tissues and to avoid radiation injury to bowel and/or other pelvic organs not involved with tumor. To minimize postop patient discomfort, some centers use laparoscopy instead of laparotomy for needle guidance. A two-team approach is used: a gynecologic oncology team performs the laparotomy or laparoscopy and guides the needles from above; a radiation oncology team inserts the implants from below. The implants are afterloaded with the appropriate radiation sources when the patient has returned to her shielded room. If a **hysterectomy** has been done previously, an **omental pelvic carpet,** or a **pelvic lid** made of delayed, absorbable mesh, is performed to provide additional space between the radiation source and bowel.

One important and recent advance in radiation therapy is the technique, intensity-modulated radiation therapy (IMRT). IMRT is a form of external beam radiation and allows creation of a gradient of radiation dose over a specified treatment area, in contrast to the previous method of delivering a constant dose to all tissues. As more IMRT is being used, fewer patients are needing an operative procedure to assist with delivery of the appropriate radiation dose.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical, vaginal, vulvar carcinomas; pelvic recurrence of gynecologic malignancies

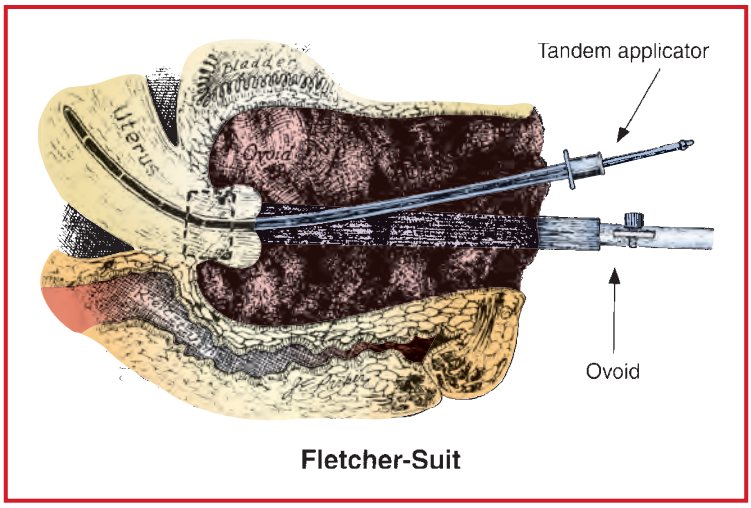


Figure 8.1-11. "Fletcher-Suit." The tandem and ovoid applicators are packed into the vagina, leaving the maximum distance between the bladder and radium sources. (Reproduced with permission from Wheeless CR: *Atlas of Pelvic Surgery.* Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Laparotomy-Guided	Laparoscopy-Guided
Position	Modified dorsolithotomy; Allen stirrups	⇐
Incision	Midline longitudinal abdominal	Vertical infraumbilical and multiple small transverse incisions at the pubic hairline
Special instrumentation	Syed-Neblett or MUPIT systems, or modifications thereof	⇐ + videolaparoscopy equipment, preferably with a 3-chip camera
Unique considerations	MRI and/or CT scans + information from physical exam are used to preplan implant with a computer dosimetry program. Patients require thorough preop mechanical and antibiotic bowel prep. Preop epidural placement or postop PCA (see p. C-3) may prove helpful for pain control. Foley catheter needs to be inserted through an opening at the top of the clear plastic template prior to implant positioning.	⇐ + Adhesions of variable severity may be present from prior surgery or radiation. Care should be taken to avoid possible bowel injury at time of trocar insertion. Patient needs to be in steep Trendelenburg position for duration of procedure.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g or cefotetan 1–2 g iv; then q 12 h × 3 doses	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–3 h	⇐
EBL	150–350 mL	Minimal
Closing considerations	Suture template to perineum. Perform rectal exam and adjust any needles that are too close to, or have protruded through, the rectal mucosa. Pack any space between template and perineum with Vaseline gauze. Obtain A-P and lateral orthogonal localization films with the patient in the supine bed-rest position. Insert Hypaque dye into Foley catheter balloon before localization films. Consider insertion of a large Foley into the rectum, and attach to a drainage bag. Consider NG tube placement.	⇐ + Release the pneumoperitoneum completely. Consider insertion of 1 L heparinized LR to cause the bowel to float and remain mobile, thus minimizing the risk of radiation injury.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)		
Postop care	Patient is confined to bed while interstitial implants are in place. SCDs and minidose heparin for DVT prophylaxis. Vigorous use of incentive spirometry. Consider constipating medications (e.g., Lomotil). Patient must be placed in a shielded room. Visitors and medical personnel should interact with patient from behind a lead shield until radiation sources have been removed.	⇐
Mortality	0.1–0.3%	⇐
Morbidity	Hemorrhagic proctitis with diarrhea and tenesmus: 7–18% Radiation cystitis: 7–10% Cervical necrosis: 5–6% Rectovaginal fistula: < 5% Vesicovaginal fistula: < 5% Vaginal vault necrosis: 3–5% Rectal fibrosis: 2–5% Pelvic infection: 2–3%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	8–9	8–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive and postreproductive age; childhood—rare
Etiology	Cervical, vaginal, or vulvar carcinomas; pelvic recurrence of gynecologic malignancies

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Radiation implants are used for palliation or cure in cervical, endometrial, and ovarian cancer. The implants concentrate the radiation close to the site of the tumor and may be supplemented by external beam radiation. The unique tolerance of the uterus and vagina to radiation permits large doses and accounts for the success in treating cervical lesions. The sigmoid, rectum, and large bowel are much more sensitive to radiation injury, limiting the dose of radiation that may be given to the pelvis. There is a trend toward the use of sophisticated external beam radiation (intensity-modulated), resulting in fewer cases requiring radiation implants.

Respiratory	Usually not significant unless underlying lung disease is present.
Cardiovascular	Many patients with pelvic tumors are elderly and prone to cardiovascular disease. **Tests:** ECG if age ≥ 60; others as indicated from H&P.
Hematologic	**Tests:** CBC, consider PT/PTT if at risk for coagulopathy.
Laboratory	Renal panel
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional or GA, depending on site involved. A postop epidural is useful for pain management.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).
Emergence	Consider PONV prophylaxis (see p. B-6).
Blood and fluid requirements	Small blood loss IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).
Positioning	May be necessary to keep patient motionless during implant insertion. ✓and pad pressure points ✓eyes Antiembolism stockings and SCD

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Epidural narcotics (see p. C-2). PCA (see p. C-3).	Consider ketorolac 15–30 mg im/iv q 6 h for breakthrough pain. Implants are associated with significant discomfort.

Suggested Readings

1. Koh WJ, Sales LR: Principles of radiation therapy. In: Karlan BY, Bristow RE, Li AJ, eds. *Gynecologic Oncology Clincal Practice and Surgical Atlas,* 1st edition. McGraw-Hill Co., San Francisco, 2012.
2. Perez CA, Hall EJ, Purdy JA, et al: Biologic and physical aspects of radiation oncology. In: Hoskins WJ, Perez CA, Young RC, Barakat RR, et al, eds. *Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2004, 327–402.
3. Syed AM, Puthawala AA, Abdelaziz NN, et al: Long-term results of low-dose-rate interstitial-intracavitary brachytherapy in the treatment of carcinoma of the cervix. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2002: 54(1):67–78.

CHAPTER

8.2 Gynecology/ Infertility Surgery

SURGEONS

Bertha Chen, MD
Eva D. Littman, MD
Amin A. Milki, MD
Lynn M. Westphal, MD
Brooke E. Friedman, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

DILATATION AND CURETTAGE (D&C)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: During **dilatation and curettage (D&C)**, the endometrial lining of the uterus and coexisting lesions (myoma, polyp) are sampled or removed. This procedure is performed to diagnose and treat bleeding from uterine and cervical lesions, to treat cervical stenosis, to complete an incomplete or missed spontaneous abortion, or as a method for pregnancy termination. A D&C is performed less frequently with the advent of the office endometrial biopsy and medical management of bleeding problems.

With the patient in the dorsal lithotomy position, the surgeon initially performs a bimanual examination under anesthesia to obtain information about both the presence of adnexal pathology and anatomic detail of the uterus. A speculum is inserted into the vagina, and the cervix is grasped with a clamp. The cervix is pulled gently toward the operator, who then uses a uterine probe to delineate the length of the uterus and the angulation between the cervical canal and uterus. The uterine cavity is reached by dilating the cervical canal with progressively larger dilators (Hegar's or Pratt) to an 8- to 9-mm diameter. A ureteral stone forceps is often used at this stage to remove existing polyps, and a curette is used to systematically remove the endometrial lining (Fig. 8.2-1). A suction curette is often used for abortion procedures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Uncontrolled uterine bleeding refractory to hormonal treatment in young women; abnormal uterine bleeding; incomplete, missed, or induced abortion; pregnancy termination; cervical stenosis causing dysmenorrhea or obstruction of menstrual flow.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy with stirrups
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	To prevent peroneal nerve injury, the area of the leg leaning against the stirrup should be well cushioned.
Unique considerations	Following induction, perineum is positioned at the very end of the table to ensure optimum exposure. During the cervical dilatation, a vasovagal response can occur, with subsequent bradycardia and ↓ BP. Uterine perforations will often manifest as severe postop pain.
Antibiotics	Doxycycline 100 mg iv
Surgical time	5–15 min
EBL	50–100 mL
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Postop fever: 1.7% Uterine perforation: 0.63% Severe immediate postop bleeding (caused by either uterine artery perforation or cervical injury): < 1%
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–80 yr
Incidence	> 1/50 females
Etiology	Dysfunctional uterine bleeding, endometrial pathology, pregnancy issues
Associated conditions	Obesity; HTN

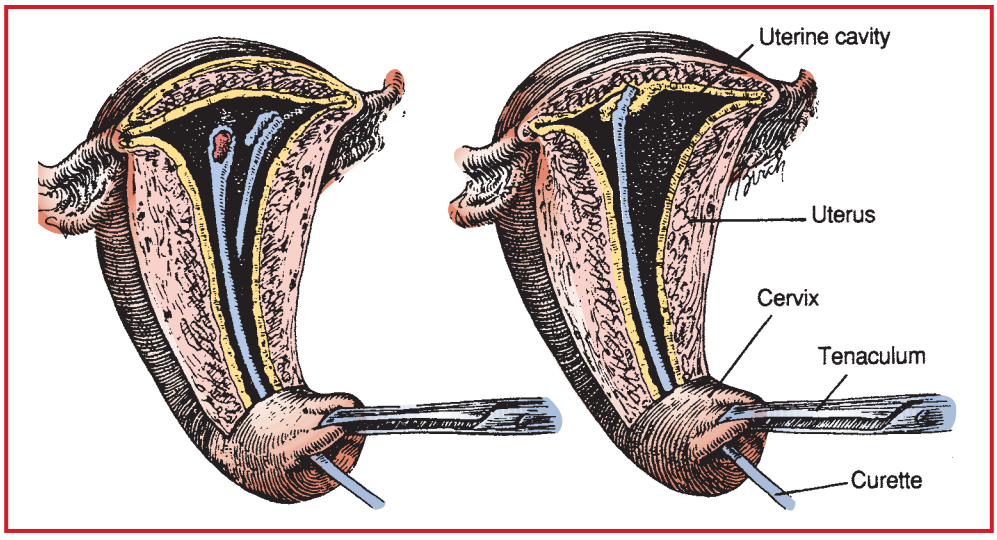


Figure 8.2-1. Curettage of endometrial lining. (Reproduced with permission from Rock JA, Thompson JD, eds: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 10th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2008.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Therapeutic Abortion, Dilatation, and Evacuation, p. 805.

Suggested Readings

1. Bulter WJ, Carnovale DE: Normal and abnormal uterine bleeding. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 10th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, 585–608.
2. Mackenzie IZ, Bibby JG: Critical assessment of dilatation and curettage in 1029 women. *Lancet* 1978; 2(8089):566–8.
3. Stovall TG: Early pregnancy loss and ectopic pregnancy: In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology*, 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.

THERAPEUTIC ABORTION, DILATATION, AND EVACUATION (D&E)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Therapeutic abortion (TAB)** is the elective termination of a pregnancy prior to viability (usually considered to be 24 wk). In 2008, 2 million abortions were reported in the United States, a rate of 19.6 abortions per 1000 women aged 14–44. **Suction curettage** is the most efficient method to terminate pregnancies during the first trimester (< 12 wk), and the great majority of abortions are performed this way. Few (< 5%) first trimester abortions in the United States are performed with a sharp curette. Increased operative time and blood loss are seen with this method, resulting in its being practiced mainly in locations where a suction apparatus is not available. Suction curettage for a spontaneous abortion is performed in a manner identical to a regular TAB, except that a cervical dilatation might not be needed. Very early termination can be performed without anesthesia via medical termination.

The TAB procedure consists of a standard cervical dilatation (required for gestations > 6 wk), followed by vacuum aspiration of the uterine contents using a plastic suction curette (Fig. 8.2-2). Alternatively, the cervical canal can

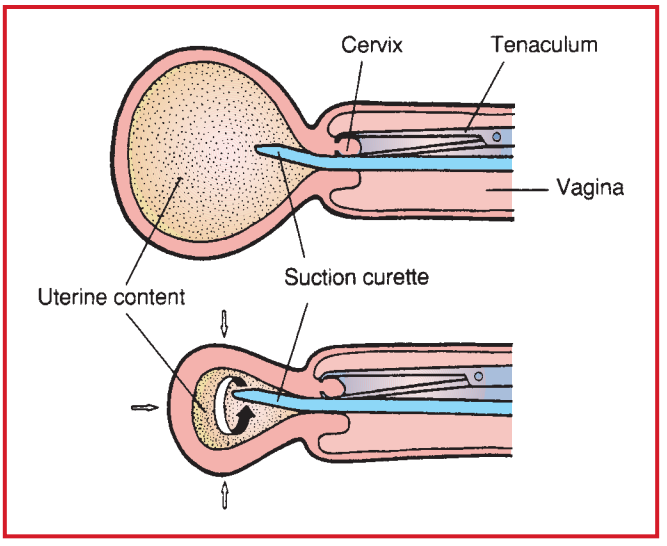


Figure 8.2-2. Uterine aspiration. Top—uterus at beginning of procedure; bottom—at conclusion of procedure. (Reproduced with permission from Rock JA, Thompson JD, eds: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 8th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

be dilated > 6 hr prior to the operation with laminaria or synthetic osmotic dilators, which, after insertion, swell to provide dilatation. A sharp curette is sometimes used at the very end to gently verify the emptiness of the cavity. Due to the risk of missing the pregnancy, most physicians wait until 7–8 wk following the LMP before performing the operation. Ergonovine maleate (0.2 mg im) and oxytocin (Pitocin) 20–30 U/1000 mL iv can be administered during the procedure to reduce bleeding, although the efficacy of oxytocin has been questioned. The procedure is performed under either local with or without iv sedation or GA; it is generally felt that local is safer. Regardless of the method used, the obtained products of conception (POC) are sent for histological examination to exclude the presence of trophoblastic neoplasm or ectopic pregnancy.

Variant procedure: **Dilatation and evacuation (D&E)** remains the safest method for midtrimester pregnancy termination. It is performed similar to first-trimester suction curettage with the addition of using large-ring forceps to grasp and remove fetal parts intermittently. This procedure is often performed under GA.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pregnancy (viable or nonviable): 52% within 8-wk estimated gestational age; 90% within 12-wk estimated gestational age.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

	1st-Trimester Suction Curettage or 2nd-Trimester D&E
Position	Dorsal lithotomy with patient in Allen stirrups. Following induction, perineum positioned at end of table to ensure optimum exposure.
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Suction; + large-ring forceps for 2nd trimester D&E
Unique considerations	To prevent peroneal nerve injury, the area of the leg leaning against stirrup should be cushioned well. During cervical dilatation, a vasovagal reaction can occur → ↓ HR + ↓ BP. During injection of lidocaine for paracervical block, seizure may occur. Uterine perforations often will cause excessive postop pain.
Antibiotics	Doxycycline 100 mg iv

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Surgical time	5–15 min; 15–45 min (2nd trimester D&E)			
EBL	Number week gestation: 1–4 – 10 mL 5–8 – 10–30 mL 9–10 – 30–80 mL 11–12 – 80–200 mL 13–14 – 200–400 mL 300–500 mL (2nd trimester D&E)			
Postop care	PACU			
Mortality	0–3.1/100,000; 13/100,000 (2nd trimester D&E)			
Morbidity	Mild infection Resuctioned day of surgery Resuctioned subsequently Cervical stenosis causing amenorrhea Cervical incompetence Underestimation of gestational age Seizure (after local anesthesia)	1/216 1/553 1/596 1/6071 1/9444 1/15,454 1/25,086	for 2nd trimester D&E: T > 38° for > l d Cervical injury Cervical tear Retained POC Hemorrhage UTI	 13.4/1000 11.6/1000 10/1000 9/1000 7.1/1000 1.8/1000
Complications requiring hospitalization	Incomplete abortion Sepsis Uterine perforation Vaginal bleeding Inability to complete Coexisting tubal pregnancy Total	1/3617 1/4722 1/10,625 1/14,166 1/28,333 1/42,500 1/1405	for 2nd trimester: D&E: Endometritis Uterine perforation Need for laparotomy Need for blood transfusion	 8.5/1000 3.2/1000 2.1/1000 1.9/1000
Pain score	5			

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–45 yr
Incidence	Abortions: 19.6/1000 women age 14–44 yr in the United States (2008.)
Etiology	Desire for pregnancy termination

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR D&C, TAB, D&E

PREOPERATIVE

These are among the most common procedures performed in gynecology. Patients presenting for these procedures are generally healthy; however, bleeding and sepsis may alter ASA status.

Cardiovascular	Hemodynamic status may be impaired 2° preop uterine bleeding, and patient may be septic from retained uterine products. ✓BP and HR. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Hb/Hct; consider T & S/T & cross; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Local/MAC, regional, or GA all may be appropriate. In the younger patient population, spinal anesthesia may be less desirable because of increased incidence of postdural puncture headache (PDPH).

Local anesthesia: Some obstetricians/gynecologists perform these procedures under local anesthesia. Paracervical block has the potential for inadvertent iv administration, with consequent local anesthetic toxicity.

Regional anesthesia: A T10 sensory level is sufficient to provide anesthesia for procedures on the uterus.

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 7.5–12 mg in 8.25% dextrose ± 10–20 mcg fentanyl (IT). (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.) If spinal anesthesia is indicated, a pencil-point spinal needle (e.g., Whitacre or Sprotte) should be used to decrease the incidence of PDPH.
Epidural	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL (1:200,000), 15–20 mL. Supplemental iv sedation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.)
CSE	**Combined spinal/epidural (CSE):** An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia. Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position patient as for spinal or epidural. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle. After the epidural space is located with a standard 17 ga Tuohy needle, insert a 4" 26- to 27-ga pencil-point spinal needle through it to administer 7.5–12 mg of spinal bupivacaine (0.75%) ± fentanyl 10–20 mcg and ± morphine sulfate 0.1–0.2 mg. Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed (a test dose is advisable).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) used commonly, although frequently done by mask with O_2/N_2O + volatile anesthetic and spontaneous ventilation. May also use propofol infusion (50–200 mcg/kg/min), ± inhaled anesthetics. A small amount of opiate may be used. Consider keeping MAC < 1 to lower the risk of uterine atony + bleeding. Consider RSI if 2nd or 3rd trimester to lower risk of aspiration.	
Emergence	Be ready with suction in the event of vomiting on emergence. Consider NSAIDS iv. Consider ketorolac (15–30 mg) after bleeding controlled.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 (unless hypovolemic) NS/LR at 2 mL/kg/h	Usual replacement of maintenance fluids and overnight deficit with crystalloid to restore euvolemia. Blood transfusion rarely indicated.
Control of blood loss	Oxytocin 20–30 U/L iv Methylergonovine maleate 0.2 mg im	Oxytocin causes uterine contraction, with a consequent decrease in blood loss. Rapid iv bolus may lead to hypotension. 20–30 U Oxytocin is usually diluted in 1 L of crystalloid and then infused. Methylergonovine maleate also causes uterine contraction. Dose is usually 0.2 mg im. Side effects include HTN, myocardial ischemia and dysrhythmias. Do not give iv.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ hip, leg, hand position ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Shoulder abducted < 90°	Lithotomy position may worsen pulmonary function. Consider L uterine displacement if > 20 weeks, or < 20 weeks if cardiovascular instability.

Vagal stimulation	Bradycardia	When the cervix is grasped and dilated, the patient may have excessive vagal stimulation, which can be treated by prompt cessation of stimulation and glycopyrrolate 0.1–0.2 mg iv, or if preferred, atropine 0.2–0.4 mg.
Complications	Nerve injury	Common peroneal nerve palsy (e.g., foot drop) is possible if pressure on the nerve over the fibula is not prevented by adequate padding or positioning. Hyperflexion of the hip joint can cause femoral and lateral femoral cutaneous nerve palsy. Obturator and saphenous nerve injury are also complications of the lithotomy position.
	Finger trauma	Take care to ensure safety of patient's fingers when manipulating foot of the bed. Avoid finger injury by placing patient's arms on arm boards or by wrapping her hands.
	Laryngospasm	Avoid light anesthesia.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (see p. B-6).	
	Uterine perforation with severe abdominal pain (rare)	
	Severe hemorrhage, necessitating blood transfusion (rare)	Severe postop bleeding may be caused by uterine atony, retained POCs, uterine perforation, or cervical injury.
Pain management	IV opiates	Fentanyl Oral pain medications may be satisfactory. With extreme pain consider uterine perforation.
	Oral analgesia	Tylenol +/– opiates, NSAIDs
Tests	Hb/Hct, if hemorrhage	

Suggested Readings

1. Grimes DA: Management of abortion. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 9th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003, 483–506.
2. Stovall TG: Early pregnancy loss and ectopic pregnancy: In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.

HYSTEROSCOPY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Hysteroscopy** is a procedure in which the endometrial cavity can be examined, allowing for direct visualization of lesions. The procedure is used primarily to investigate abnormal uterine bleeding, often caused by intrauterine submucous myoma and polyps. After the diagnosis, these lesions can be removed through the operative hysteroscope using a variety of techniques.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Diagnostic hysteroscopies** can be performed under both GA and local anesthesia with iv sedation, whereas **operative hysteroscopies** are usually performed under GA. An examination under

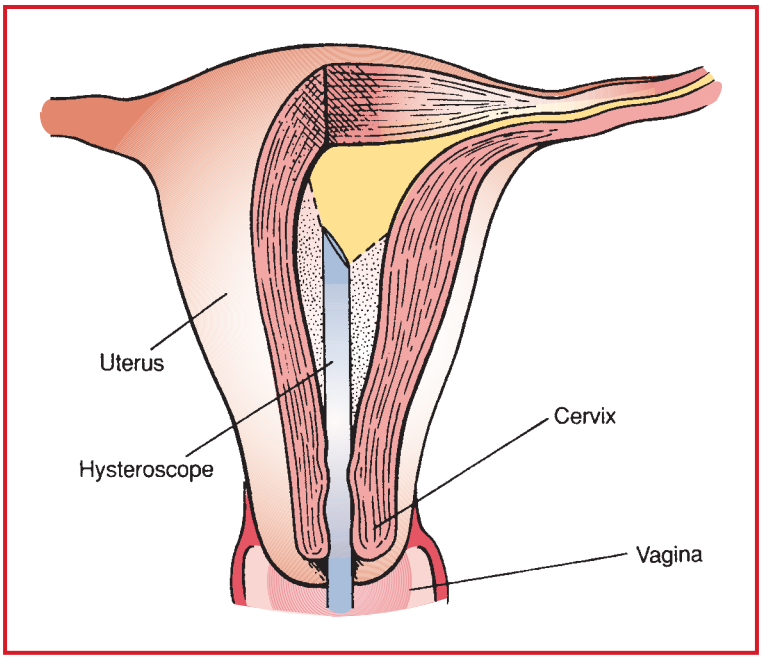


Figure 8.2-3. Hysteroscopy. (Reproduced with permission from Baggish MS, Barbot S, Valle RF: *Diagnostic & Operative Hysteroscopy.* Year Book Medical Pub: 1989.)

anesthesia is performed, followed by the insertion of open speculum and the attachment of a tenaculum to the cervix. The cervical canal is dilated until the hysteroscope can be introduced with its sheath (Fig. 8.2-3). A distention medium—usually a low-viscosity fluid—is then used to provide visualization of the uterine cavity. It has been recommended that no more than 500 mL of this solution be used. The most commonly used low-viscosity fluids are NS, sorbitol 3%/mannitol 0.5%, and mannitol 5% solutions. NS is most commonly used for diagnostic hysteroscopies, whereas the other nonconductive fluids are used for operative hysteroscopies. Certain bipolar operative hysteroscopies also allow the use of NS.

It is important for the surgeon to be vigilant regarding the fluid uptake by closely monitoring the infused volume and the collected volume. At a fluid uptake of 500 mL of a hypoosmolar solution (e.g., sorbitol/mannitol) or 1000 mL of an isoosmolar solution (e.g., NS), consideration should be given to stopping the procedure given concerns for fluid overload. Communication between the surgeon and anesthesiologist is essential, as iv fluids can add to increased circulatory volume and potential fluid overload.

The distension medium is delivered to the hysteroscope by means of gravity or by a pump. Most systems use gravity, whereby the fluid is delivered via a wide-bore tubing and the maximum intrauterine pressure (IUP) is determined by the height of the fluid container above the uterus. The maximum IUP is thus limited by gravity, making this system relatively safe. The lowest IUP necessary to provide adequate visualization should be used to decrease the rate of absorption of the distention medium. A video camera is usually attached to the hysteroscope to allow for easier visualization. During operative cases, an accompanying laparoscope is sometimes inserted into the abdomen to evaluate the progress of the hysteroscopy and to safeguard against uterine perforation and potential bowel injury.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abnormal uterine bleeding; infertility; recurrent pregnancy loss

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy (Allen stirrups)
Incision	None

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Fluid pump; laser; electrocautery equipment
Unique considerations	Accelerated fluid absorption with prolonged procedures or with resections may → pulmonary edema. Laparoscopy may accompany this procedure.
Surgical time	15 min to 2 h
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
EBL	0–100 mL
Postop care	Excessive postop bleeding can be controlled by using a 5-mL Foley balloon catheter in the uterus for several h.
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Pleural effusion can be seen with use of low-viscosity medium.
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–80 yr
Incidence	> 1/50
Etiology	Unexplained uterine bleeding; infertility
Associated conditions	Obesity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Hysteroscopy may be performed for diagnosis or treatment of intrauterine pathology.

Cardiovascular	As patient may be undergoing hysteroscopy for uterine bleeding, consider hypovolemia and anemia. ✓BP, HR and consider Orthostatic VS. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Hb/Hct if bleeding Hx. Other tests as indicated from H&P; consider pregnancy testing.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Local, regional, or GA may be used. If spinal anesthesia is indicated, pencil-point spinal needles (e.g., Sprotte or Whitacre) should be used to decrease the incidence of PDPH.

Local anesthesia: Some procedures may be done under local, usually with supplemental iv sedation, especially if they are diagnostic. Paracervical block has the potential for an inadvertent intravenous administration, with local anesthetic toxicity.

Regional anesthesia: A T10 sensory level is sufficient to provide anesthesia for these procedures.

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 7.5–10 mg in 8.25% dextrose ± 10–20 mcg fentanyl. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.)
Epidural	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL (1:200,000), 15–20 mL; Supplemental iv sedation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.)
CSE	**Combined spinal/epidural (CSE):** An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia. Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position patient as for spinal or epidural. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle. After the epidural space is located with a standard 17-ga Tuohy needle, insert a 4" 26- to 27-ga pencil-point spinal needle through it to administer 7.5–12 mg of spinal bupivacaine (0.75%) ± fentanyl 10–20 mcg and ± morphine sulfate 0.1–0.2 mg. Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed (a test dose is advisable).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). LMA may be appropriate	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).	
Emergence	Standard emergence	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h	
Positioning	✓ hip, leg, and hand positions ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Shoulder abduction < 90°	Lithotomy position can be deleterious to pulmonary function, as it may impair respiratory mechanics. Common peroneal nerve palsy is possible if pressure on the nerve over the fibula is not prevented by adequate padding or positioning. Hyperflexion of hip joint can cause femoral and lateral femoral cutaneous nerve palsy. Obturator and saphenous nerve injury are also complications of the lithotomy position.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Surgical stimulation	When cervix is grasped and dilated, patient may have excessive vagal nerve stimulation.	Rx: prompt cessation of stimulation by surgeons and treatment with glycopyrrolate (0.1–0.2 mg) or atropine (0.2–0.4 mg).
Complications	Pulmonary and cerebral edema (2° hypotonic fluid overload) Coagulopathy Air embolism Anaphylactoid reactions	Air embolism can occur with the use of gas distention media; thus, most institutions currently use low-viscosity fluids for distension. Low-viscosity media can be grouped, based on their tonicity and electrolyte content: (1) hypotonic, electrolyte-free media that may cause hypotonic fluid overload; and (2) isotonic, electrolyte-containing media that may cause isotonic fluid overload. It is not uncommon to use 10–20 L of distention fluid during an operative hysteroscopy. Monitor for fluid balance. Adjust iv fluid to maintain euvolemia.
	Finger injury (2° positioning)	When manipulating the foot of the bed, avoid finger injury by placing patient's arms on arm boards or by wrapping her hands.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (see p. B-6) Fluid overload/pulmonary edema from excessive fluid absorption	
Pain management	Small dose of titrated opiate Oral analgesia	Patients usually tolerate oral pain medications. Acetominophen +/– opiates, NSAIDs
Tests	Consider CXR and ABG Serum electrolytes	For patient with respiratory compromise (rare)

Suggested Readings

1. Baggish MS: Operative hysteroscopy. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 10th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, 336–9.
2. Cooper JM, Brady RM: Intraoperative and early postoperative complications of operative hysteroscopy. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am* 2000; 27(2):247–66.
3. Stovall TG: Hysteroscopy. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.

PELVIC LAPAROTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Laparotomy** and its variants are all common gynecological procedures. Laparotomy is most frequently performed via a Pfannenstiel incision, which permits good pelvic exposure. A vertical incision is used in oncological surgery or in the presence of a large uterus. A knife or electrocautery (Bovie) is used to cut through the skin and underlying tissue until the rectus fascia is reached. The fascia is nicked and then sharply incised bilaterally 2–4" with scissors or Bovie. The rectus muscle is separated sharply in the midline down to the pubis, and the peritoneum is entered. The peritoneal incision is then extended vertically or transversely. The pelvis and entire abdominal cavity are explored first by palpation. Then the bowels are usually packed in a cephalad direction with surgical laparotomy sponges (laps) to prevent them from falling back into the pelvis. Good muscle relaxation is important during this stage to ensure optimal packing. A self-retaining retractor is frequently used to keep the laps in place and to enhance exposure. After the desired operation has been performed, the retractor and packs are removed. During the peritoneal closure, abdominal muscle relaxation is again important to minimize tension on this layer and risk of bowel injury with the needle. The rectus fascia, the subcutaneous tissue, and the skin are closed in succession.

Variant procedures: **Myomectomies** are performed to remove myomata that are causing pain, abnormal bleeding, or infertility. Myomata are heavily vascularized at the base, and the surgeon has several ways to minimize this bleeding. A clamp can be placed across the uterine vasculature to minimize blood flow to the uterus. A common alternative is the use of a vasoconstrictor, such as a diluted epinephrine (1:200,000) or vasopressin (1–5 U/10 mL NS) solution. The solution (2–10 mL) is injected around the myoma prior to incising the uterus, which invariably →↑ HR (epi) or ↓ HR (vasopressin) and ↑ BP. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (Gn-RH) agonists may be used for a few months prior to the operation to render the patient hypoestrogenic and, thus, decrease the vascularity of the myomata. After the myomata have been removed, the uterine defects are closed with several layers of suture, and the uterine serosa is closed.

Ovarian cystectomies are performed to alleviate related pain and to diagnose the identity of asymptomatic cysts. Small, single-functional ovarian cysts are found at different stages in a woman's menstrual cycle. At times, these cysts can increase in size and quantity, which may cause severe pain. The ovary can also contain various nonfunctional cysts (e.g., tumors) which have to be removed, even if asymptomatic, to exclude malignancy. After the pelvic structures are well visualized, the cystic ovary is stabilized with instruments or surgical laps. Sharp or blunt dissection is used to shell out the cyst intact. If there is any suspicion about the nature of the cyst, an intraop frozen section is obtained. The ovary is then reapproximated and the abdomen closed. If the cyst is large and little healthy ovarian stroma remains, an **oophorectomy** is performed.

Ectopic pregnancies are usually medical emergencies. Laparoscopy is the most common method, although procedure may be performed open. The abdomen is entered, and the pregnancy located quickly. An attempt is made to control the bleeding with the surgeon's hand, clamp, or suture. Frequently, large amounts of blood in the pelvis are suctioned, and the ectopic pregnancy is removed via a **partial tubal resection, salpingostomy,** or **salpingectomy;** then the abdomen is closed. A **D&C** may be performed at the end to prevent late bleeding from the pregnancy-induced endometrial proliferation (see p. 802).

In **abdominal, laparoscopic, or robotic colpopexy** (fixation of vagina), the patient is placed in the lithotomy position, usually with Allen stirrups, to perform an examination under anesthesia, as well as to insert a vaginal pack needed to identify the vaginal apex. A urethral catheter is inserted prior to staging the laparotomy, laparoscopy, or robotic surgery. Typically, a synthetic graft is used. The bowel is packed and the defect is examined from the abdominal perspective. Frequently there is an accompanying enterocele that must be closed initially (see **Moschowitz procedure,** below). The peritoneum over the vaginal apex is then entered, and the neighboring rectum and bladder are dissected a distance away from the vaginal apex. The peritoneum over the sacrum is incised, and the cephalad end of the graft is sutured to the anterior sacral ligament of the third vertebrae. Severe bleeding can occur if there is injury to the middle sacral artery. The caudal end of the graft is attached to the vaginal apex. The peritoneum and abdomen are closed, and the patient's legs are elevated to the dorsal lithotomy position for a high-posterior **colporrhaphy** (repair of vagina).

The **Moschowitz procedure** is used to reduce enteroceles via an abdominal approach. The abdomen is entered in the usual fashion, the uterus held up with a traction suture, the bowel packed, and the patient placed in the Trendelenburg position. Multiple concentric purse-string sutures are used to close the defect in the pouch of Douglas, and the abdomen is closed. A McCall's procedure can also be performed to prevent enterocele formation. Here the uterosacral ligaments are plicated and sutured together in the midline, at the level of the pouch of Douglas, to obliterate that space.

The **presacral neurectomy** is an operation performed for women with severe chronic midline pelvic pain. Usually the patient has a history of prior surgeries to diagnose and treat the problem. A laparotomy is initially performed with packing of the bowels. The rectosigmoid is brought over to the left to make a vertical, posterior, parietal, peritoneal incision over the sacral area. The anatomy is examined closely, and the presacral nerves are obliterated or excised; then the peritoneum and abdomen are closed. Severe bleeding can be seen intraop from the hemorrhoidal and sacral veins, but can usually be controlled with pressure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Myomata (pelvic pain, menorrhagia, pelvic pressure symptoms, infertility); ovarian cysts and pelvic pain with undiagnosed ovarian mass; ectopic pregnancy; vaginal vault prolapse; enterocele; presacral neurectomy (chronic pelvic pain)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lithotomy
Incision	Pfannenstiel or low midline abdominal laparoscopic or robotic incisions
Unique considerations	Muscle relaxation is important during bowel packing and abdominal closure. Vasoconstrictor solutions for controlling myomata bleeding (1:200,000 epinephrine and 1–5 U vasopressin/10 mL NS) are often used and can alter BP and HR.
Antibiotics	1–2 g iv cefoxitin or cefotetan
Surgical time	45 min–4 h Abdominal colpopexy: 4–5 h
EBL	150–1000 mL (maximum related to procedure)
Postop care	PACU
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Gastric dilatation: 3% Thrombophlebitis: 3% PE: 2% Ureteral stenosis: 1%
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Myomectomy	Ovarian Cystectomy, Oophorectomy	Ectopic Pregnancy	Abdominal Colpopexy, Moschowitz	Presacral Neurectomy
Age range	20–45 yr	20–85 yr	15–45 yr	40–80 yr	20–50 yr
Incidence	> 1/5 females	⇐	1/100 females	1/500 females	⇐
Etiology	Congenital	Endometriosis Anovulation Adenoma	Preexisting tubal disease	Multiparous Obesity Chronic cough older age group	Endometriosis
Associated conditions	Menorrhagia and pelvic symptoms associated with bulk.	Endometriosis	Pelvic adhesions	Pelvic relaxation	Endometriosis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Infertility Operations, p. 816.

Suggested Readings

1. Berek JS, ed: *Berek & Novak's Gynecology.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007.
2. Rock JA, Jones HW, eds: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology.* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008.
3. Sharp HT, Francis SL, Murphy AA: Operative hysteroscopy. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2008, 336–70.

TRANSVAGINAL OOCYTE RETRIEVAL (TVOR)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Transvaginal oocyte retrieval (TVOR)** is performed on patients who have undergone ovarian stimulation using ovulation-inducing agents. This procedure is performed 35–36 h after the patient has been injected with human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) to induce oocyte maturation. It is very important for the success of the procedure that retrieval be performed within this time period. If a retrieval is performed too late, ovulation will have occurred, and oocyte retrieval will no longer be possible.

In the procedure room, the patient is placed in the dorsal lithotomy position, and moderate to heavy iv sedation is started. A sterile speculum is inserted into the vagina and a vaginal prep is performed. Next an ultrasound probe with a 16- to 17-ga needle on a needle guide is placed into the patient's vagina. One of the ovaries is identified and entered by inserting the needle through the vaginal fornix. Patients may experience a combination of pain and pressure at this point in the procedure. After the needle is in the ovary, the surgeon will then proceed with sequential aspiration of the ovarian follicles. It is important that the patient remain relaxed and motionless as movement may prevent aspiration of oocytes and increase the risk of injury to the surrounding organs and vessels. After retrieval is completed in the first ovary, the needle is withdrawn; the other ovary is identified, and a second puncture is made through the vaginal fornix. Procedure duration is 10–30 min, depending on the number of follicles present. After all of the follicles have been aspirated, the needle and ultrasound probe are removed. A sterile speculum is then reintroduced into the vagina, and the vaginal wall and cervix are inspected for hemostasis. Pressure is applied for 3–5 min if bleeding is noted. The patient is then recovered for 30–60 min before going home.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy
Incision	Vaginal punctures (usually 2)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Ultrasound probe with needle guide, 16- to 17-ga needle
Unique considerations	Requires complete relaxation/sedation to prevent injury and loss of oocyte during follicle aspiration.
Antibiotics	Cefotetan of cefazolin 1 g iv prior to procedure
Procedure time	Setup: 5–10 min Procedure: 10–30 min (depending on # of follicles)
Postop care	PACU→ Home
Morbidity	Bleeding: rare Infection: rare
Pain score	1–3 (abdominal cramping)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	18–50 yr (rare after age 43)
Incidence	It is estimated that at least 14% of American couples of reproductive age who desire pregnancy are unable to conceive within 1 yr.
Etiology	A male factor is responsible for 35%; pelvic factor, 25%; ovulatory factor, 20%; cervical factor, 10%; and 10% are unexplained.
Associated conditions	Thyroid disorders; polycystic ovarian syndrome; endometriosis; depression

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This is generally a healthy patient population. Little is required beyond routine tests, unless otherwise indicated.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Moderate to heavy iv sedation or, rarely, local or regional anesthesia and GA have been used. Intravenous sedation (hypnotic agent, ± benzodiazepine, ± a narcotic analgesic), however, propofol is the most commonly used and the safest technique for IVF. The most stimulating parts of the procedure occur when the vaginal fornix is pierced on each side and when the ovarian follicles are entered for aspiration of the eggs.

MAC	Propofol infusion (50–200 mcg/kg/min), ± midazolam (1–2 mg iv) and ± fentanyl titrated to achieve the desired combination of moderate to heavy sedation and analgesia (see p. B-5).
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 20–22 ga × 1
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)
Positioning	✓ hip, leg, and hand positions ✓ and pad pressure points

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (p. B-6) Bleeding: rare	PONV rare with propofol based-TIVA. Minimal post op pain →limit intraop opiates.
Pain management	Pain: usually minimal	Oral analgesics are usually sufficient or small doses fentanyl (25–50 mcg iv).

Suggested Readings

1. Baggish MS: Operative hysteroscopy. In: Rock JA, Jones HW. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 10th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008.
2. Burney RO, Schust DJ, Yao MW: Infertility: In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology*, 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 1185–276.
3. Hadimioglu N, Titiz TA, Dosemeci L, et al: Comparison of various sedation regimens for transvaginal oocyte retrieval. *Fertility Sterility* 2002; 78(3):648–9.
4. Meniru GI: *Cambridge Guide to Infertility Management and Assisted Reproduction.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 2001, 130–1.

INFERTILITY OPERATIONS/ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGIES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: These operations all deal with reproductive problems. The general trend is to avoid laparotomies and to perform operations using outpatient laparoscopy and hysteroscopy techniques whenever possible.

Fimbrioplasty is used to repair distal fallopian tubal occlusion—a common cause for infertility—which is usually a consequence of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID). The operation may be performed by **pelvic laparotomy** or **laparoscopy** (see p. 811). If done by laparotomy, a urethral catheter is inserted to empty the bladder, followed by the insertion of a transcervical uterine catheter for chromopertubation (dye injection). The abdomen is opened, and the pelvic structures are exposed. During the operation, microsurgical techniques are followed closely to minimize trauma. Meticulous hemostasis is important. A wound protector is often used instead of self-retaining retractors. The peritoneum and pelvic structures are kept moist with intermittent irrigation. **Salpingolysis** and **ovariolysis** may be performed microsurgically. After the adnexae have been freed, they are elevated by loosely packing the pouch of Douglas with insulated pads (plastic sheathed covered laps). **Chromopertubation** is then performed and, if occlusion is present, a new stoma is created using microsurgical instruments and sutures. The abdomen is then closed.

Tubal reanastomosis, performed to restore fertility, is very similar to fimbrioplasty, with microsurgical techniques followed diligently. After the tubal segments have been freed slightly from their underlying mesosalpinx, the occluded ends are cut, and chromopertubation is performed to ensure patency. After patency has been established, anastomosis is performed in two layers. The mesosalpinx is reapproximated to the tubal serosa and the abdomen closed.

The uterus is embryologically formed by the fusion of two paramesonephric tubes. At times, the fusion is incomplete, and a septated uterus or bicornuate uterus is formed. The malformed uterus is associated with an increased risk for miscarriages and preterm labor. **Metroplasty** is used to correct this condition. The **Strassmann procedure** (extremely rare) for bicornuate uteri uses a standard pelvic laparotomy. Following uterine exposure, an incision is made on the medial side of each hemicorpus and carried down until the uterine cavity is entered. The edges are reapproximated to form a single uterus. Septated uteri are usually repaired via a hysteroscopic approach (see Hysteroscopy, p. 807) with scissors or laser.

Proximal tubal cannulation is a procedure in which proximal tubal occlusion can be repaired through either fluoroscopic or hysteroscopic approach. The hysteroscopic approach, usually performed under GA, allows the surgeon to insert a small cannula to restore tube patency. This procedure is often done with laparoscopy to follow the progress of the cannulization and to visualize the chromopertubation (see Hysteroscopy, p. 807, and Laparoscopy, p. 862).

Gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT), **zygote intrafallopian transfer** (ZIFT), and **tubal embryo transfer** (TET) are methods of **assisted reproductive technology (ART), but are seldom used**. Couples who have undergone extensive infertility workups and treatment without success may become candidates for GIFT, ZIFT, or TET procedures. Ovarian follicles are stimulated to grow with the help of gonadotropins. These follicles are then punctured with a needle transvaginally to "harvest" the eggs. These eggs can be mixed with semen and placed directly into the distal end of the fallopian tube (GIFT) using laparoscopic techniques and a small tubal catheter (see Laparoscopy, p. 862). In the ZIFT and TET procedures, the semen and eggs are allowed to incubate 1–2 days in vitro; embryos form and are transferred to the fallopian tubes in a manner similar to the GIFT procedure. Most patients undergoing ART procedures utilize conventional in vitro fertilization (IVF) and do not need laparoscopy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Infertility; history of multiple spontaneous abortion and preterm labor

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

(For summaries of specific procedures, see Laparoscopy, p. 862; Hysteroscopy, p. 807; or Pelvic Laparotomy, p. 811.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–50 yr
Incidence	1/20 women
Etiology	PID; endometriosis; idiopathic
Associated conditions	Obesity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: pelvic laparotomy for myomectomy; ovarian cystectomy; oophorectomy; ectopic pregnancy removal; abdominal colpopexy; Moschowitz enterocele repair; presacral neurectomy; infertility operations)

PREOPERATIVE

This is generally a healthy patient population; however, this procedure can be performed for a wide variety of pathologic conditions.

Cardiovascular	Patients undergoing myomectomy and, especially, ectopic pregnancy removal may have had a significant amount of preop bleeding; therefore, assess for hypovolemia. Preexisting comorbidities and preop status will vary considerably. Assess as appropriate. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Hb/Hct. Consider T&S/T&cross. Patients with ectopic pregnancy may have urine/serum pregnancy tests, as well as pelvic ultrasound.
Premedication	Patients with ruptured ectopic pregnancies may come to the OR urgently and should be treated with full stomach precautions.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is indicated for patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery and in patients presenting for emergency surgery. Regional anesthesia is best avoided in hemodynamically unstable patients (i.e., ectopic pregnancies) and for laparoscopy where breathing difficulty may develop 2° to pneumoperitoneum and Trendelenburg position. Regional anesthesia may be suitable for simple pelvic laparotomies. In the younger patient population, spinal anesthesia is less desirable because of an increased incidence of postdural puncture headache (PDPH). If spinal anesthesia is indicated, a pencil-point needle (e.g., Whitacre, Sprotte) should be used to decrease the incidence of PDPH.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) In a patient with a ruptured ectopic pregnancy, bleeding and hemodynamic instability, consider ketamine 1–2 mg/kg or etomidate 0.1–0.4 mg/kg. These patients are generally considered unfasted and would require rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5). Use OGT/NGT to decompress stomach after induction for laparoscopic surgery
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Consider PONV prophylaxis.
Emergence	Standard emergence

Regional anesthesia: A T4-6 sensory level is recommended for pelvic/lower abdominal surgery.

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 12–14 mg in 8.25% dextrose. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.) + 10–20 fentanyl ± 0.1–0.2 mg morphine.	
Epidural + Narcotic	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–20 mL; redose with 3–5 mL as needed. Provide supplemental iv sedation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.)	
CSE	**Combined spinal/epidural (CSE):** An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia. Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position patient as for spinal or epidural. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle. After the epidural space is located with a standard 17-ga Tuohy needle, insert a 4" 26- to 27-ga pencil-point spinal needle through it to administer 12–14 mL of spinal bupivacaine (0.75%) ± fentanyl 10–20 mcg ± morphine sulfate 0.1–0.2 mg. Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed (a test dose is advisable).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss will vary by procedure. Generally limited unless ruptured ectopic pregnancy or vascular complication of laparoscopy. IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR at 4–7 mL/kg/h	
Control of blood loss	Epinephrine Vasopressin	During myomectomies, surgeons may inject vasopressors into the area surrounding myomata prior to excision. This may cause HTN ↑ HR (epic) or ↓ HR (vasopressin).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± Foley catheter ± Arterial catheter	Patients with ectopic pregnancies may need intra-arterial monitoring if major hemorrhage occurs.
Positioning	✓and pad pressure points ✓eyes	During abdominal colpopexy, patient is placed intermittently in both the lithotomy and supine positions. (See p. 805 for concerns regarding the lithotomy position.)

Complications	Pneumoperitoneum ↑ $PaCO_2$, ↓ PaO_2 ETT migration	Pneumoperitoneum with CO_2 insufflation and steep Trendelenburg position cause cephalad displacement of diaphragm with ↓ FRC, ↓ pulmonary compliance, and ↑ airway closure/atelectasis. Hypercarbia and hypoxia, due to respiratory compromise, can result unless ventilation is controlled during GA. Check for endobronchial migration of ETT upon assumption of Trendelenburg position.
	Pneumothorax	Pneumothorax due to retroperitoneal dissection of insufflated gas into the mediastinum can cause hypoxemia, ↑ airway pressure, subcutaneous emphysema, and ↓ BP.
	↓BP	↓ BP can result from ↓ venous return caused by pneumoperitoneum.
	Hemorrhage Dysrhythmias Peripheral nerve injury	Hypotension may result from hemorrhage or rapid reversal of head-down position.
	Venous CO_2 embolism	Unintended intravascular injection of CO_2 gas can → ↓ BP and dysrhythmias.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (see p. B-6) Anemia Shoulder pain
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3)
Tests	Hb/Hct if hemorrhage occurs.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGIES (ART)

PREOPERATIVE

This is generally a fit, healthy patient population. Little is required beyond routine tests, unless otherwise indicated.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Conscious sedation, local anesthesia, regional (e.g., spinal and epidural) and GA all have been employed for ART. The standard in vitro fertilization (IVF) technique consists of transvaginal egg retrieval and embryo transfer (not laparoscopic technique), and one study suggests higher pregnancy and delivery rates if iv sedation or epidural anesthesia is used as opposed to GA. Laparoscopy is only performed for GIFT, ZIFT, or TET, but not for in vitro fertilization. For TVOR, use moderate → heavy iv sedation. For laparoscopic procedures, breathing difficulty can develop due to pneumoperitoneum and Trendelenburg position. Therefore, GETA with controlled ventilation is most commonly used. No difference in pregnancy rates with the use of isoflurane, propofol, N_2O, or midazolam has been demonstrated.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Avoidance of succinylcholine may decrease postop myalgia.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). N_2O does not appear to adversely affect success of fertilization.	
Emergence	No special considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2 mL/kg/h	Blood loss minimal, unless trauma to vasculature. Rarely, trauma to blood vessels or organs following laparoscopy may necessitate laparotomy.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓and pad pressure points ✓eyes	
Complications	Ventilatory	Pneumoperitoneum with CO_2 and steep Trendelenburg position cause cephalad displacement of diaphragm with ↓ FRC, ↓ pulmonary compliance, and ↑ airway closure/atelectasis. Hypercarbia and hypoxia, due to respiratory compromise, can result unless ventilation is controlled during GA. Check for endobronchial migration of ETT upon assumption of Trendelenburg position.
	Pneumothorax	Pneumothorax due to retroperitoneal dissection of insufflated gas into the mediastinum can cause hypoxemia, ↑ airway pressure, subcutaneous emphysema and ↓ BP.
	Cardiovascular	↓ BP may result from ↓ venous return 2° pneumoperitoneum.
	Hemorrhage	Hemorrhage may result from blood vessel injury or rapid reversal of head-down position.
	Venous CO_2 embolism Dysrhythmias	Unintended intravascular injection of CO_2 gas → ↓ BP and dysrhythmias.
	Nerve injury Bowel injury	Use of Trendelenburg position incurs risk of nerve injury. Hyperextension of arm may result in brachial plexus injury, and careful padding of vulnerable points is necessary.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Shoulder pain	Postop pain may be referred to the shoulder, due to irritation of diaphragm by residual pneumoperitoneum or bleeding.
Pain management	Oral analgesics are usually sufficient.	(NSAIDS) or Acetaminophen

Suggested Readings

1. Beilin Y, Bodian C, Eisenkraft J, et al: The use of propofol, nitrous oxide, or isoflurane does not affect the reproductive success rate following gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT). *Anesthesiology* 1999; 90:36–41.
2. Burney RO, Schust DJ, Yao MW: Infertility: In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 1185–276.
3. Gonen O, Shulman A, Ghetler Y, et al: The impact of different types of anesthesia or *in vitro* fertilization-embryo transfer treatment outcome. *J Assist Reprod Genet* 1995; 12(10):678–82.
4. Meniru GI: *Cambridge Guide to Infertility Management and Assisted Reproduction*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 2001, 130–1.

5. Rock JA, Jones HW, eds: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 10th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 2008.
6. Tanbo T: Assisted fertilization in infertile women with patent tubes: a comparison of *in vitro* fertilization, gamete intrafallopian transfer and tubal embryo stage transfer. *Hum Reprod* 1990; 5:266–70.

HYSTERECTOMY—VAGINAL, ABDOMINAL, LAPAROSCOPIC OR ROBOTIC

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Hysterectomy** is one of the most commonly performed operations in the United States (650,000/year). Several approaches are possible: vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic, and robotic. The **vaginal approach,** performed with the patient in a dorsal lithotomy position, is preferred because it offers significantly less morbidity and mortality. Use of the vaginal approach may be limited by such factors as the pelvic bony architecture, excessive uterine size, pelvic adhesions, or the presence of gynecological cancers, thus requiring an **abdominal or laparoscopic/robotic approach.** The approach may be changed in the OR, where a pelvic examination under anesthesia will determine the true uterine size, degree of prolapse, and the presence of pelvic pathology. More recently, minimally invasive approaches with laparoscopy and robotic surgery have allowed for decreased morbidity and recovery time when compared to an abdominal approach. For a **total laparoscopic, laparoscopic-assisted, or robotic-assisted hysterectomy** patients are placed in a low lithotomy position, and abdominal entry is confirmed with the laparoscope once the abdomen has been insufflated. The procedural steps are identical to the abdominal approach. For a laparoscopic or robotic-assisted hysterectomy, the patient is placed in a steep Trendelenburg. Pelvic organ prolapse (POP) is the most frequent preop diagnosis in patients having a vaginal hysterectomy. POP includes one or more of the following: prolapse of the uterus; intestine into the pouch of Douglas (enterocele); bladder into the anterior vaginal wall (cystocele); urethra into the anterior vaginal wall (urethrocele); and rectum into the posterior vaginal wall (rectocele). In these cases, the hysterectomy is often accompanied by an anterior/posterior **colporrhaphy, vault suspension,** and **perineoplasty**.

Variant approaches: **Abdominal hysterectomy** is performed through a Pfannenstiel or midline incision, depending on the uterine size and the need to perform a **lymph node dissection** for cancer. A Pfannenstiel incision often can be extended with two types of muscle-splitting steps: the **Maylard,** in which the rectus muscles are cut, or a **Cherney rectus muscle detachment** performed at the pubic insertion. After entering the abdomen, a self-retaining retractor is placed, and the round, ovarian, and broad ligaments are clamped, cut, and tied, in that order. The uterine vessels are identified and ligated, and, finally, the cutting and ligation of the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments. The vagina is entered and the cervix removed. Then the vaginal cuff is closed in a way that incorporates the uterosacral ligaments for support. The visceral peritoneum is reapproximated, the retractors removed, and the abdominal layers closed. During a **supracervical hysterectomy**, the uterine corpus is detached from the cervix and the vagina is not entered.

In a **vaginal hysterectomy,** the cervix is retracted, a paracervical incision is made, and the anterior and posterior cul-de-sacs are entered (Fig. 8.2-4). The uterosacral and cardinal ligaments and the uterine vessels are cut and ligated. With steady downward traction, the broad ligament is ligated in a stepwise manner until either the ovarian or infundibulopelvic ligament is reached, and one of the two is ligated, depending on whether the ovaries are to be removed or not. After the uterus has been removed, followed by closure of the vaginal cuff, which often includes the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments for support. A vaginal pack often is left in place. **Laparoscopic-assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH)** is sometimes performed to facilitate bilateral salpino-oopherectomy (BSO) by ensuring good visualization of the infundibulopelvic and uterine-ovarian ligaments as well as ovarian vessels. Once the abdomen is entered, the ureters are identified as they cross the iliac vessels at the level of the pelvic brim. The infundibulopelvic ligaments with their corresponding ovarian vessels are then coagulated and cut followed by the broad ligaments and uterine vessels. Attention is then paid to the vagina, where the remaining portion of the procedure is performed through the vaginal approach. Once the vaginal cuff is closed, and pneumoperitoneum achieved, the surgeon can look into the abdomen through the laparoscope to ensure hemostasis at the end of the case. The procedure for laparoscopic or robotic supracervical hysterectomies is similar, the primary difference is that the uterus is removed through the abdominal incisions with the help of an uterine morcellator.

Usual preop diagnosis: Uterine myoma; pelvic organ prolapse; pelvic pain 2° endometriosis or adhesions; uncontrolled uterine bleeding/dysmenorrhea; endometrial hyperplasia; gynecological cancers; pelvic masses

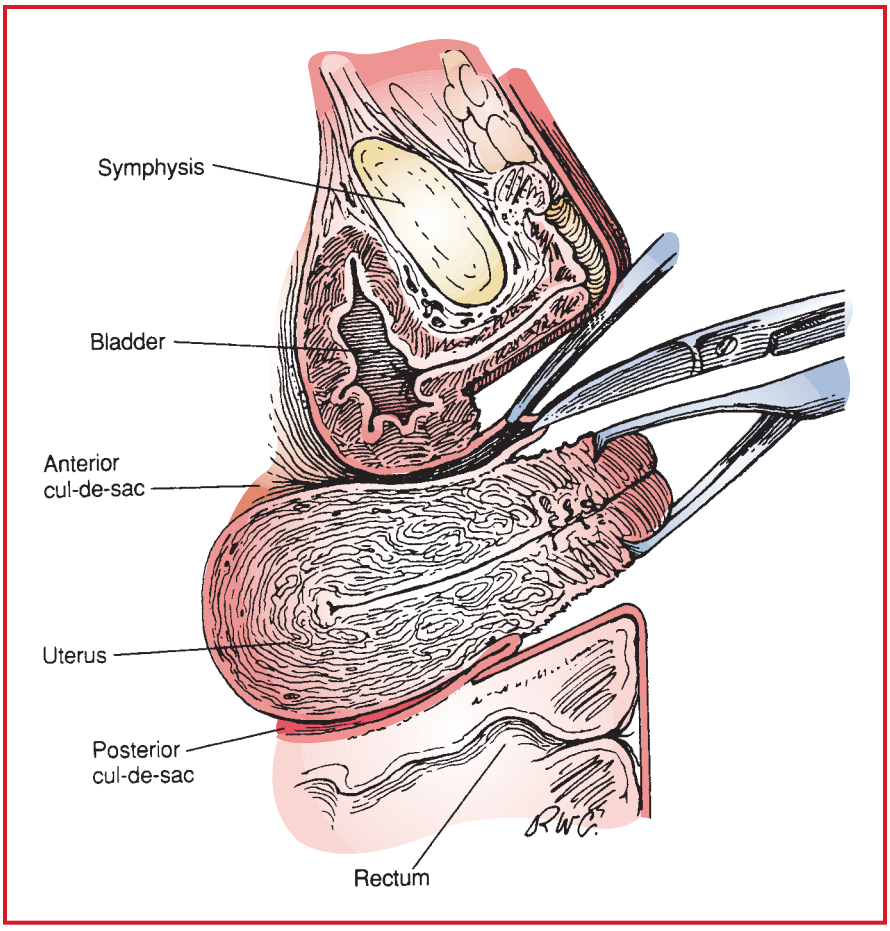


Figure 8.2-4. Surgical anatomy for vaginal hysterectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Rock JA, Thompson JD, eds: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology,* 8th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Abdominal Approach	Vaginal Approach
Position	Supine	Lithotomy. Following induction, position patient so that the perineum is at the end of operating table to ensure optimum surgical exposure.
Incision	Pfannenstiel or low midline. The Pfannenstiel incision can be extended with a Maylard muscle-splitting procedure or a Cherney rectus muscle detachment at pubic insertion.	Pericervical vaginal
Special instrumentation	None	Stirrups
Unique considerations	None	To prevent peroneal nerve injury, the area of leg leaning against stirrup should be well cushioned. Often, vasoconstriction agents (1:200,000 epinephrine and vasopressin) are used to cut down perioperative vaginal cuff bleeding.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Abdominal Approach	Vaginal Approach
Antibiotics	1–2 g cefoxitin or cefotetan + clindamycin 600 mg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	45 min–1.5 h
EBL	200–300 mL	100–200 mL
Postop care	PACU	⇐
Mortality	Overall (10,000 patients): 14.6 < 25 yr: 8.9 25–34 yr: 4.7 35–44 yr: 3.8 45–54 yr: 6.5 55–64 yr: 41.3 65–74 yr: 93.0 > 75 yr: 255.8	20 0 0.9 0.5 2.7 1.9 18.3 56.8
Morbidity	Infection: Unexplained fever: 10–20% Pelvic infection: 3.2–10% Wound infection: 4–8% Urinary tract: 1.1–5% Femoral nerve injury: 11.6% Hemorrhage: Intraop: 1–2% Requiring transfusion: 2–12% Unintended major procedures: 1.7% Injury: Bladder: 1–2% Bowel: 0.1–0.5% Ureter: 0.1–0.5% Vesicovaginal fistula: 0.1–0.2% Thromboembolic events: 0.4–1.3%	⇐ 5–8% 3.9–10% – 1.7–5% – ⇐ 0.7–2–5% 2–8.3% 5.1% ⇐ 0.5–1.5% 0.1–0.8% 0.05–0.1% ⇐ 0.62–1.7%
Pain score	5–8	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–80 yr
Incidence	> 1/5 females; 650,000/yr in the United States.
Etiology	Uterine myomata; endometriosis; uterine prolapse; uterine cancer; pelvic mass.
Associated conditions	Stress urinary incontinence; obesity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Although many patients presenting for this procedure are otherwise healthy, others may have advanced cancer.

Respiratory	CXR may be indicated to r/o pleural effusion or other lung pathology in cancer patients. In addition, ABG, ± PFTs, may be indicated preop in patients with significant pulmonary involvement. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Cardiovascular	Patient may have blood loss from the primary problem. Bowel prep may cause dehydration and electrolyte abnormalities. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Hb/Hct. Consider T&S/T&cross.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA is commonly used; however, spinal, epidural, or combined spinal-epidural (CSE) anesthesia is appropriate for adequately hydrated patients who are undergoing simple hysterectomy through a Pfannenstiel incision or vaginal hysterectomy. If spinal anesthetic is indicated, a pencil-point needle (e.g., Sprotte or Whitacre) should be used to decrease the incidence of PDPH.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation is necessary if the procedure is performed abdominally. These patients have a high incidence of PONV; consider prophylaxis (see p. B-6).
Emergence	Standard emergence

Regional anesthesia: A T4-6 sensory level is sufficient to provide anesthesia for procedures on the uterus.

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–15 mg in 8.25% dextrose ± fentanyl 10–20 mcg; ± morphine 0.1–0.2 mcg. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835) Supplement with iv sedation.
Epidural	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL (1:200,000), 15–20 mL; supplement with 3–5 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.) Supplement with iv sedation.
CSE	**Combined spinal/epidural (CSE):** An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia. Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position patient as for spinal or epidural. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle. After the epidural space is located with a standard 17-ga Tuohy needle, insert a 4" 26- to 27-ga pencil-point spinal needle through it to administer 0.6 mL of spinal bupivacaine (0.75%) ± fentanyl 10 mcg ± morphine sulfate 0.1–0.2 mg. Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed (a test dose is advisable).
Blood and fluid requirements	Consider ↑ blood loss in cancer patients, prior XRT, prior abdominal surgery. IV: 18 ga × 1–2 Warm fluids Type & screen/cross patients at ↑ risk of bleeding
Control of blood loss	**Vaginal, laparoscopic, and robotic hysterectomy:** Minimal blood loss NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h **Abdominal hysterectomy:** Moderate-to-heavy blood loss NS/LR at 4–5 mL/kg/h

Monitoring	**Vaginal hysterectomy:** Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Foley catheter **Abdominal hysterectomy:** Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Foley catheter ± Arterial line ± CVP line	Consider in patients with anticipated ↑ blood loss or major medical comorbidities.
Positioning	✓and pad pressure points Shoulder abduction < 90°	The lithotomy position has several considerations for safety. (See p. 805 for details.)
Complications	**Vaginal hysterectomy:** Cervical stimulation Epinephrine/vasopressin injection **Abdominal hysterectomy:** Blood loss Epinephrine/vasopressin injection	Vagal stimulation and ↓↓ HR may occur with cervical/peritoneal manipulation. Surgeon may inject epinephrine or vasopressin to decrease local bleeding → HTN and brady or tachydysrhythmias.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (see p. B-6). VTE (see p. B-8). Anemia	
Pain management	Epidural opiates (p. C-3) PCA (p. C-3)	If catheter to be used postop.
Tests	Hct CXR (if CVP catheter placed intraop)	CXR to evaluate central line placement and rule out pneumothorax.

Suggested Readings

1. Carley ME, McIntire D, Carley JM, et al: Incidence, risk factors and morbidity of unintended bladder or ureter injury during hysterectomy. *Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct* 2002; 13(1):18–21.
2. Clough TF: Perioperative morbidity of hysterectomy for benign gynaecological disease. *J Obstet Gynaecol* 2001; 21(5):504–6.
3. Davies A, Hart R, Magos A, et al: Hysterectomy: surgical route and complications. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2002; 104(2):148–51.
4. Howard FM, Koval SR, Jones HW: Hysterectomy. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology*, 10th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, 2008, 721–73.
5. Stovall TG: Hysterectomy. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology*, 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.

OPERATIONS FOR PELVIC ORGAN PROLAPSE: ANTERIOR AND POSTERIOR COLPORRHAPHY, ENTEROCELE REPAIR, SACROSPINOUS LIGAMENT VAGINAL VAULT SUSPENSION, UTEROSACRAL LIGAMENT VAGINAL VAULT SUSPENSION, SACROCOLPOPEXY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pelvic organ prolapse often includes coexisting anatomical hernias that can be reported as symptomatic vaginal pressure or bulges (e.g., enterocele [Fig. 8.2-5C] and uterine prolapse). Cystocele (Fig. 8.2-5A) and

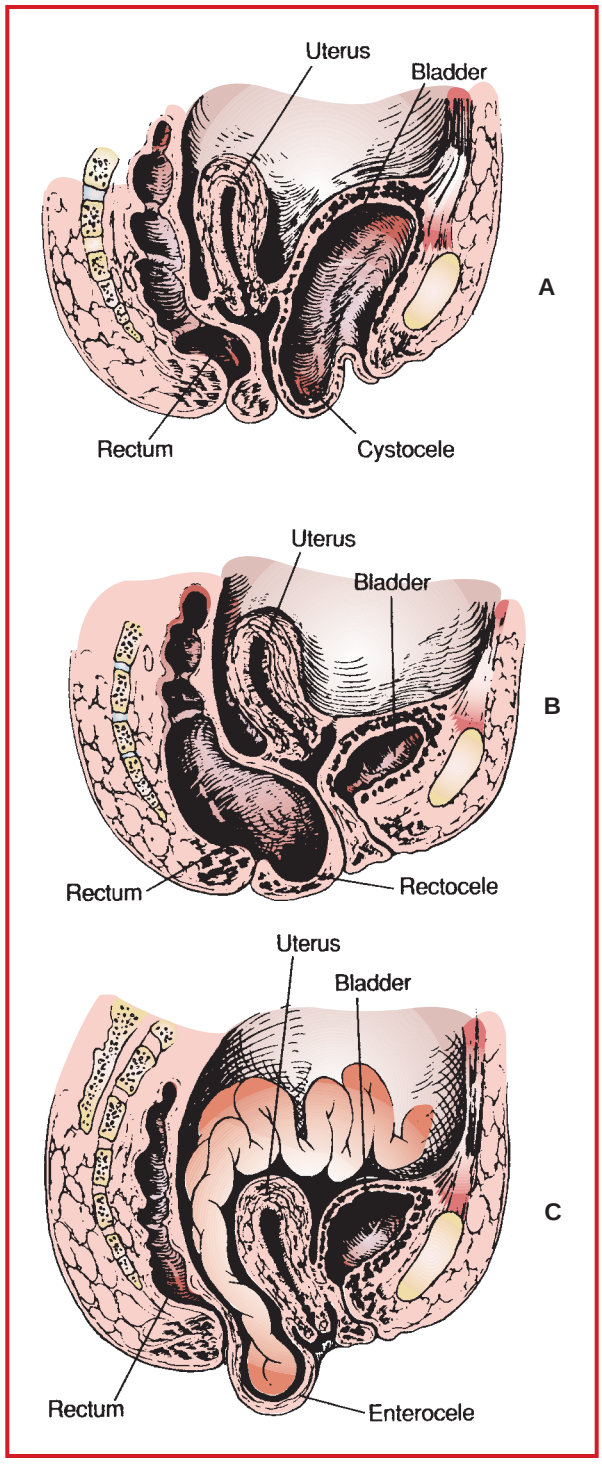


Figure 8.2-5. **A:** Anatomy of cystocele. **B:** Anatomy of rectocele. **C:** Anatomy of enterocele. (Reproduced with permission from Pernoll ML, ed: *Current Obstetrics and Gynecological Diagnosis and Treatment.* Appleton & Lange: 1991.)

rectocele (Fig. 8.2-5B) are prolapses (relaxations) of the anterior and posterior vaginal wall, respectively. Cystoceles are often symptomatic due to bladder protrusion past the introitus during straining. Often this relaxation will allow the bladder neck to lose its important anatomical relationship to the urethra and the rest of the bladder. The result can be bothersome stress urinary incontinence and/or incomplete emptying for the patient (see Operations for Stress

Urinary Incontinence, p. 828). The rectocele often is experienced as a vaginal bulge during straining and tends to cause incomplete evacuation of stool. The goal of the colporrhaphy is to restore the original anatomy. Due to the frequent coexisting relaxations, a **posterior colporrhaphy** (vaginal repair), **enterocele repair**, and **vaginal hysterectomy** are frequently performed at the same time.

In an **anterior colporrhaphy,** the patient is placed in a high-dorsal lithotomy position with the perineum at the end of the operating table for surgical access. The bladder is emptied, and a weighted speculum is inserted into the vagina. A **vaginal hysterectomy** is performed at this point, if indicated (see Vaginal Hysterectomy, p. 820). The extent of the urethrocystocele is determined manually, and the vaginal mucosa is grasped at its cephalic border with two clamps. From this point to the external urethral meatus, the mucosa is undermined with a vasoconstrictive solution epinephrine (5–10 mL, 1:200,000), phenylephrine (1:200,000), or vasopressin (1–5 U/10 mL NS). This decreases blood loss significantly and helps to determine the depth of the vaginal mucosa. The mucosa is cut over this undermined area and, with the help of sharp and blunt dissection, the mucosa is dissected laterally from its underlying fascia. A series of fascial plication sutures are placed to reduce the cystourethrocele. The redundant mucosa is excised and the edges are reapproximated.

Paravaginal repair is another procedure for repair of cystocele and can be performed via the abdomen or the vagina. The space between the bladder and pubic bone is entered, and the bladder is dissected off the pelvic sidewall, taking care to avoid injury to the obturator nerve and vessels. The arcus tendineus fascia pelvis is visualized, running from the inferior margin of the pubic symphysis posteriorly to the ischial spine. The surgeon places a hand in the vagina to elevate the lateral vaginal sulcus to the arcus tendineus fascia. Multiple fine sutures are placed to secure the paravaginal tissues to the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis. The same is done for the opposite pelvic sidewall if bilateral defects are present.

If necessary, a **posterior colporrhaphy** may be performed. A small portion of perineum posterior to the introitus is removed initially. The vaginal mucosa over the rectocele is undermined with vasoconstrictor fluid prior to incision, followed by dissection of the overlying mucosa in a manner nearly identical to anterior colporrhaphy. One or several layers of stitches are placed to plicate the pararectal fascia, allowing for reduction of the rectocele. Redundant mucosa is excised, and the edges are reapproximated. A vaginal pack is usually placed to minimize bleeding.

An **enterocele** often is first noticed during a posterior colporrhaphy procedure and is repaired during the posterior repair. The enterocele is well identified and dissected away from the surrounding tissue. Two or more parallel purse-string stitches are used to close the enterocele. The enterocele tissue distal to the purse-string closure is excised. To reduce the enterocele in an optimal fashion, intraabdominal pressure has to be at a minimum.

Abdominal approach: An **abdominal sacrocolpopexy** or **sacrocervicopexy** can be performed for vaginal vault or cervical stump prolapse. This procedure can be performed through a Pfannenstiel or midline incision or via the laparoscopic/robotic approach. After entering the abdomen a self-retaining retractor is used to retract the bowels. The peritoneum over the sacral promontory is carefully incised longitudinally, and the sacral promontory is exposed. The peritoneum is opened along the right pararectal space down to the right uterosacral ligament and to the vaginal cuff or cervical stump **(cervicopexy)**. Careful attention is paid to visualization of the right ureter. An EEA sizer is introduced into the vagina, and the peritoneum is dissected off the anterior and posterior vagina. The bladder and rectum are also dissected from the vaginal vault. A "Y" shaped polypropylene mesh graft is then introduced into the abdomen. One end of the mesh is attached to the vaginal cuff (cervix), and the opposite end attached to the sacral promontory, thereby elevating the vaginal apex. The peritoneum is then closed over the mesh.

During laparoscopy or a robotic-assisted abdominal sacrocolpopexy or cervicopexy the patient is placed in steep Trendelenburg to aid in bowel retraction. The procedure is performed in the same fashion as an abdominal sacrocolpopexy. **Cystourethroscopy** is performed after the procedure to ensure ureteral and bladder integrity. A **midurethral urinary incontinence sling is** often performed after completion of the sacrocolpopexy to prevent stress urinary incontinence.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Vaginal sacrospinous ligament suspension** is an alternative to sacrocolpopexy. The patient is placed in a dorsal lithotomy position, and an examination under anesthesia is performed. A vasoconstrictive solution is injected (usually epinephrine 3–5 mL, 1:200,000) in the posterior vaginal wall. A vertical incision is made, and the mucosa is bluntly dissected off the rectum in an anterolateral direction. An enterocele, if found, is repaired at this time. The pararectal tissue is then bluntly pierced to enter the pararectal space. The anatomy surrounding the sacrospinous ligament is well palpated and, with the help of the special Miya hook, a large suture

is placed into the sacrospinous ligament. The other end of the suture is placed at the apex of the vagina, which, after tying, is pulled in a lateral cephalad direction. The mucosa is finally closed.

Uterosacral ligament suspension, or **high McCall's culdoplasty,** is an alternate procedure for vaginal apex support. After the uterus is removed by a **vaginal hysterectomy**, the uterosacral ligaments are identified. Two separate permanent sutures are placed along the uterosacral ligament as far cephalad (toward the sacrum) as possible. The same is done on the opposite side. An additional stitch of absorbable suture is placed at the vaginal corners bilaterally and carried through the uterosacral ligaments as well. A cystoscopy is then carried out with all four stitches placed on tension to r/o ureteral obstruction due to ligation or kinking of the ureters. The stitches are replaced if obstruction is observed. After ureteral patency has been confirmed, these stitches are sutured to the fibromuscular layer of the vaginal cuff and tied to bring the apex as cephalad as possible. The vaginal cuff is closed with absorbable sutures.

The **Le Fort procedure**, **colpectomy** and **colpocleisis**, are highly efficacious, minimally invasive operations performed in women with complete prolapse of the uterus and/or vagina, respectively, who do not desire to remain sexually active. With the patient in a dorsal lithotomy position, the anterior and posterior vaginal mucosa are dissected from the underlying fascia, and then the anterior and posterior vaginal fascia are plicated together, resulting in near-complete closure of the vagina. Advantages of these techniques are that they can be performed rapidly, they do not require general anesthesia, and most patients can be discharged from the hospital the following day. Closure procedures are ideal for patients who are elderly and/or have multiple medical conditions that make more invasive surgery risky.

Use of vaginal mesh kits: Vaginal mesh kits are currently available for the treatment of pelvic organ prolapse. Some systems treat anterior vaginal wall and apical prolapse, whereas others (used less commonly) treat posterior vaginal wall prolapse. Similar to a cystocele repair (for an anterior mesh kit), the vaginal mucosa is hydrodissected with a vasoconstrictive solution. The vaginal mucosa is sharply dissected from the underlying bladder to the levator muscles bilaterally. Two tunnels are gently created for palpation of the sacrospinous ligament bilaterally. The graft is trimmed to the appropriate size based on the patient's prolapse. The distal mesh arms, if present, are introduced into the obturator internus muscles. The proximal arms are introduced into the sacrospinous ligaments. Careful attention is paid to avoid the pudendal neurovascular bundies. The vaginal apex (or cervix if the uterus is present) is then attached to cephalad edge of the graft and the upper arms of the graft are pulled through the sacrospinous ligaments, thereby elevating the vaginal apex. The anterior vaginal mucosa is closed in a full-thickness manner with absorbable suture over the graft.

Cystourethroscopy is performed after the procedure to ensure ureteral and bladder integrity.

Usual preop diagnosis: Symptomatic cystocele; symptomatic uterine prolapse; enterocele; rectocele

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy
Incision	Vaginal mucosal; peritoneum for enterocele repair
Unique considerations	To prevent peroneal nerve injury, the area of the leg leaning against the stirrup should be well cushioned. Putting the legs in a high position increases venous return to the heart. Infiltration with epinephrine and vasopressin often is used to reduce intraop bleeding. This causes changes in CO, HR, and BP. Low intraabdominal pressure (good muscle relaxation) is needed during the enterocele reduction.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin or cefotetan 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	45 min (anterior colporrhaphy) 30 min (posterior colporrhaphy/enterocele repair) 45 min (uterosacral ligament suspension) 1 h (paravaginal repair)
Closing considerations	Suprapubic catheter (anterior colporrhaphy); vaginal pack (enterocele repair)
EBL	20–500 mL
Postop care	PACU
Mortality	1%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	**Anterior colporrhaphy** Delayed voiding 1–7 d: 30% Foul vaginal discharge: 14% Bacteriuria: 13% Pyrexia (>100.4° F): 11% Atelectasis: 3% Delayed voiding > 7 d: 0.6% Need for blood transfusion: 0.6% Urethrovaginal fistula: 0.4% Acute gastric dilatation: 0.2% **Uterosacral ligament suspension** Ureteral obstruction Perirectal abscess due to stitch in rectum	**Vaginal sacrospinous suspension (Miya hook)** Bleeding in gluteal and pudendal vessels Pararectal burning pain × 2 mo Sciatic pain (indicating misplaced sutures, which must be removed) Peritoneal tear (during Miya hook insertion) **Paravaginal repair** Obturator vessel laceration Obturator nerve injury Ureteral obstruction Bladder laceration
Pain score	5–8	

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–80 yr
Incidence	> 1/5 women
Etiology	Multiparous state; obesity; chronic cough; previous pelvic surgery
Associated conditions	Pelvic relaxation syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations for Stress Urinary Incontinence, p. 831.

Suggested Readings

1. Richter HE, Varner RE: Pelvic organ prolapse. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.
2. Zimmerman CS, Shull B, Yandell PM, Thomas JM, Leeman SD, Karrem MM: Surgery for correction of defects in pelvic support and pelvic fistulas. In: Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology,* 10th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, 854–934.

OPERATIONS FOR STRESS URINARY INCONTINENCE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Stress urinary incontinence is a common condition affecting mostly older and multiparous women. It is a disorder of the musculofascial support to the bladder neck, urethra, and pelvic floor. Many of these patients have had extensive preop workup to exclude urge or other types of urinary incontinence and many have been treated with pelvic floor exercises (Kegel) prior to surgery. Many surgical approaches exist: **abdominal suspension** procedures, **suburethral slings**, and **transurethral injections of bulking agents**. Evidence suggests that **midurethral slings** are the most successful procedures. Given that they can be performed with regional or even local anesthesia as outpatient procedures, midurethral slings are the most commonly used procedures to treat stress urinary incontinence. **Bladder neck slings** and injection of urethral bulking agents can also be used for those with contraindication to a midurethral sling. Patient positioning is crucial for all vaginal surgery.

Vaginal approaches: The **Kelly urethral plication** was historically used as the primary surgical treatment, especially when other vaginal surgery is to be performed. The patient initially is placed in a high-dorsal lithotomy position with the perineum at the end of the operating table for surgical exposure. The bladder is emptied, and a weighted speculum is inserted into the vagina. The extent of the cystourethrocele is determined and the vaginal mucosa is grasped at its cephalad border with two clamps. From this point to the external urethral meatus, the mucosa usually is undermined with 5–10 mL of a vasoconstrictive solution (epinephrine 1:200,000, phenylephrine 1:200,000, or vasopressin 1–5 U/10 mL NS). This decreases blood loss significantly and helps to determine the depth of the mucosa. With the help of sharp and blunt dissection, the mucosa is freed laterally from its underlying adherent fascia. A series of vertical mattress sutures are placed in the mobilized paraurethral and paravesical fascia to reduce the cystourethrocele and elevate the posterior urethra to a high-retropubic position. The redundant mucosa is excised and the edges are reapproximated. A suprapubic catheter is often inserted at the end of the surgery to prevent bladder overdistention. The Kelley urethral plication is rarely performed in modern practice and has been supplanted by the midurethral sling.

Two anterior bladder neck suspension techniques—Stamey and **modified Pereyra**—are very similar procedures wherein the vaginal mucosa is incised and dissected off the underlying paraurethral fascia, much the same way as in the Kelly plication. Instead of using a layer of mattress sutures, both suspension methods use two lateral sutures that suspend the vesical neck on each side (see Fig. 9-21, p. 919). The ends of the sutures are tied over the rectus fascia to provide support. The Stamey method uses a small Dacron cuff to prevent the suture from tearing through the paravesical fascia, whereas in the modified Pereyra method, the posterior loop is attached firmly to the pubourethral ligament. One or two small suprapubic abdominal incisions must be made to allow for the tying of the sutures. Specialized long needles are used to help the placement of these sutures, and a cystoscope often is used to verify their placement. Perforation of the bladder is a common complication found upon cystoscopy. Finally, a suprapubic catheter is placed at the end of the operation. Stamey and Pereyra suspensions are rarely performed and are mostly of historical significance as they have been replaced by midurethral urinary incontinence slings.

Abdominal approaches: **Burch (urethropexy)** and the **Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz (M-M-K)** are probably the most common abdominal suspension procedures, though most clinicians have abandoned the MMK procedure due to higher complication rates. The patient is placed in Allen stirrups the frog-leg position with a urethral catheter in place. A Pfannenstiel incision is used to enter the space of Retzius, which lies between the parietal peritoneum and the rectus fascia under the pubic bone. Blunt dissection is used to open and extend this space. The surgeon then inserts two fingers into the vagina to raise the anterior vagina and bladder neck. This enables the surgeon to place two or more sutures in the tissue just lateral to the urethra and attach them to Cooper's ligament (Burch) or to the periosteum of the pubic symphysis (M-M-K).

The **pubovaginal sling** and highlight sling is often reserved for women in whom other incontinence operations have failed. It can also be used as primary treatment for stress urinary incontinence, though it is more invasive than a midurethral sling. The goal of the sling procedure is to produce extrinsic compression of the urethrovesical junction with the help of a strip anchored to the rectus fascia or pubic bone (see Fig. 9-21, p. 919). With the patient in the dorsal lithotomy position, a urethral catheter is placed and the vaginal mucosa incised and dissected off the underlying paravesical and paraurethral fascia, similar to the Kelly plication. The retropubic space is entered through a Pfannenstiel's incision, and a strip of rectus fascia, is obtained. The strip is then brought through the vagina, around the urethra, and back to the abdomen, where it is fastened to the rectus fascia, creating a sling under the urethra at the junction of the bladder neck. The vaginal and abdominal incisions are closed, and a suprapubic catheter is often placed. If donor fascia lata or synthetic material is used, a small (~2") horizontal incision is made above the pubic bone for attachment of the sling. The patient's own fascia lata (from the lateral thigh) can also be used.

Midurethral sling placement may be performed under local, regional, or general anesthesia. Local anesthesia may be combined with conscious sedation. If local anesthesia is used, it will also be administered to the vaginal incision site as well as the groin areas or suprapubic areas where the trocar and mesh will exit.

Tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) sling is a newer sling procedure for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. A polypropylene mesh sling is used to support the urethra, although it is not attached to the fascia. The mesh is woven in such a way that the sling does slide out over time. Fibroblasts grow into the sling to anchor it throughout the endopelvic fascia and around the dependent surface of the urethra. The patient is placed in a high dorsal lithotomy position with the perineum at the end of the operating table for surgical exposure. The bladder is emptied and a weighted speculum or retractor is inserted into the vagina. The vaginal mucosa is grasped near the middle of the urethra with two clamps. The vaginal mucosa is hydrodissected with a small amount of vasoconstrictive solution (epinephrine 1:200,000; phenylephrine 1:200,000; vasopressin 1–5 u/10 mL NS). This decreases blood loss significantly

and helps to determine the depth of the mucosa. With the help of sharp and blunt dissection, the mucosa is freed laterally from its underlying adherent fascia, and two midurethral submucosal tunnels are made toward the underside of the pubic symphysis. The TVT curved needle is introduced from the vagina through the space of Retzius on each side of the urethra and is brought out to the abdomen above the pubic bone. The sling mesh is attached to the ends of each needle; thus, when both needles are pulled through the abdominal sites, the mesh will rest under the urethra. A cystoscopy is done before pulling the mesh through to verify that neither needle is in the bladder or the urethra. The mesh is then adjusted so that the urethra is resting on the sling, under no tension. The **transobturator tape (TOT) sling** is a commonly used alternative to the TVT sling that does not enter the retropubic space. The sling is inserted under the midurethra and exits through the obturator membrane, inferior to the adductor longus tendon, through a poke incision lateral to the vagina in the groin. There are two variations: **inside-out**, where the trocars are passed from a midurethral vaginal incision to exit through bilateral groin incisions, or **outside-in**, where the trocars are passed from bilateral groin incisions to exit through a midurethral vaginal incision.

Usual preop diagnosis: Stress urinary incontinence; intrinsic sphincter deficiency

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Kelly Plication	Mid-Urethral Sling	M-M-K/ Burch	Pubovaginal Sling
Position	Dorsal lithotomy	Lithotomy	Frog-leg	⇐
Incision	Vaginal mucosa	2 suprapubic and a vaginal incision	Pfannenstiel	Vaginal and suprapubic incision
Unique considerations	Cushion area of leg against stirrup to prevent peroneal injury. Epinephrine (1:200,000) or vasopressin are often infiltrated to reduce intraop bleeding for vaginal approaches. Injections may cause ↑ BP and tachydysrhythmias (epi) or bradydysrhythmias (vasopressin). The urethral catheter is frequently removed and reinserted during surgery.	⇐	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1–2 g iv	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	⇐	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Suprapubic catheter	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	50 mL	Roughly 50 mL	100–200 mL	50–100 mL
Postop care	Inpatient	Outpatient	⇐	± Outpatient
Mortality	Minimal	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Detrusor instability: Rare (due to vaginal approach) Enterocele: Rare Incisional hernia: Rare Osteitis pubis: Rare Voiding difficulties: Rare Wound infection: Rare	< 7% Rare ⇐ Rare < 2% Rare	14% 15% 0.09% ⇐ 2% 8.7%	⇐ N/A Rare ⇐ ~40% Rare Prolonged catheter time: > 50% Outlet obstruction: 10–20% Urethral perforation: 7% Bladder perforation: 1%
Pain score	4–6	1–3	6–8	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	40–80 yr
Incidence	>1/5 women
Etiology	Multiparous state; obesity; chronic cough
Associated conditions	Other components of pelvic relaxation syndrome (rectocele, uterine prolapse, enterocele)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: anterior and posterior colporrhaphy; enterocele repair; vaginal sacrospinous suspension; operations for stress urinary incontinence)

PREOPERATIVE

This is usually an older patient population, past childbearing age. Assess for medical comorbidities.

Laboratory	Hb/Hct, as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional or GA may be used.

Regional anesthesia: A T10 sensory level is sufficient to provide anesthesia for procedures using a perineal approach, but a T4 level is recommended for abdominal/combined approaches.

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–15 mg in 8.25% dextrose (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.) ± 10–20 mg fentanyl ± 0.1–0.2 mg morphine
Epidural	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–20 mL; supplement with 3–5 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, p. 835.) Spinal may provide better perineal block.
CSE	**Combined spinal/epidural (CSE):** An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia. Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position patient as for spinal or epidural. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle. After the epidural space is located with a standard 17-ga Tuohy needle, insert a 4" 26- to 27-ga pencil-point spinal needle through it to administer 0.6 mL of spinal bupivacaine (0.75%) ± fentanyl 10 mcg ± morphine sulfate 0.1–0.2 mg. Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed (a test dose is advisable).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).
Emergence	No special considerations
Blood and fluid requirements	Normally minimal blood loss IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2–4 mL/kg/h

Control of blood loss	Epinephrine, vasopressin, phenylephrine used by surgeons.	Surgeons may inject vasopressors into the submucosa to minimize blood loss, which may cause ↑ BP and tachydysrhythmias (epi) or bradydysrhythmias (phenylephrine/vasopressin).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Although bladder catheterization prior to incision is normal, the catheter is not left in place throughout surgery in those patients undergoing anterior and posterior colporrhaphy, enterocele repair, and Kelly urethral plication. Suprapubic bladder catheters are placed toward the end of surgery in these procedures, as well as in the Stamey, Pereyra, and urethral sling procedures.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	See p. 805 for concerns regarding the lithotomy position.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV (see p. B-6).
Pain management	IV opiates, ketorolac Usually rapid conversion to po pain medications
Tests	None indicated

Suggested Readings

1. Bent AE: Urinary stress incontinence. In: *TeLinde's Operative Gynecology,* 10th edition. Rock JA, Jones HW, eds. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2008, 942–58.
2. Nygaard I, Menefee SA, Wall LL: Lower urinary tract disorders. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.
3. Pereyra AJ, et al: Pubourethral supports in perspective: modified Pereyra procedure for urinary incontinence. *Obstet Gynecol* 1982; 59(5):643–8.
4. Richter HE, Varner RE: Pelvic organ prolapse. In: Berek JS, ed. *Berek & Novak's Gynecology,* 14th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 601–36.
5. Ross BK, Chaduck HS, Mancuso JS, et al: Sprotte needle for obstetric anesthesia: Decreased incidence of post dural puncture headache. *Reg Anesth* 1992; 17:29–33.

CHAPTER

8.3 Obstetric Surgery

SURGEONS

M. Mark Taslimi, MD
Yasser Y. El-Sayed, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Brendan Carvalho, MBBCh, FRCA
Lee Coleman, MD

CESAREAN SECTION—LOWER SEGMENT AND CLASSIC

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Cesarean section (C-section) is the delivery of the fetus through a horizontal or, less commonly, through a vertical incision in the lower uterine segment. The skin incision is made either as a Pfannenstiel's (transverse in the crease above the pubis), a Maylard (in extremely obese patients), or vertical midline from umbilicus to pubis. The peritoneal cavity is entered as in any laparotomy. A retractor is placed inferiorly, and the reflection of visceral peritoneum from the bladder dome to the anterior lower segment of the uterus (bladder flap) is incised and may be displaced inferiorly, along with the bladder. The uterus is entered sharply and the incision extended with digital pressure and/or bandage scissors. The fetal head is elevated out of the pelvis and delivered through the uterine incision. In cases of nonvertex lie, the infant's breech or foot is grasped and brought out of the incision. After the delivery of the fetus, the cord is double-clamped and cut, and cord blood is obtained for analysis. The placenta is removed manually and the uterine cavity cleared of all debris and clots. The uterine incision is closed with a running, interlocking stitch, followed by a 2nd imbricating layer. The bladder flap and parietal peritoneum do not require closure and the rectus muscles do not routinely require re-approximation. Finally, the fascia is closed and the skin reapproximated with staples. **Classic C-section** usually involves a fundal vertical uterine incision (Fig. 8.3-1). Patients with a history of prior classical C-section should be delivered abdominally via a repeat C-section, because their risk of uterine rupture with labor and vaginal delivery is ~12%.

Usual preop diagnosis: Failure to progress in labor; elective repeat C-section; fetal distress; malpresentation

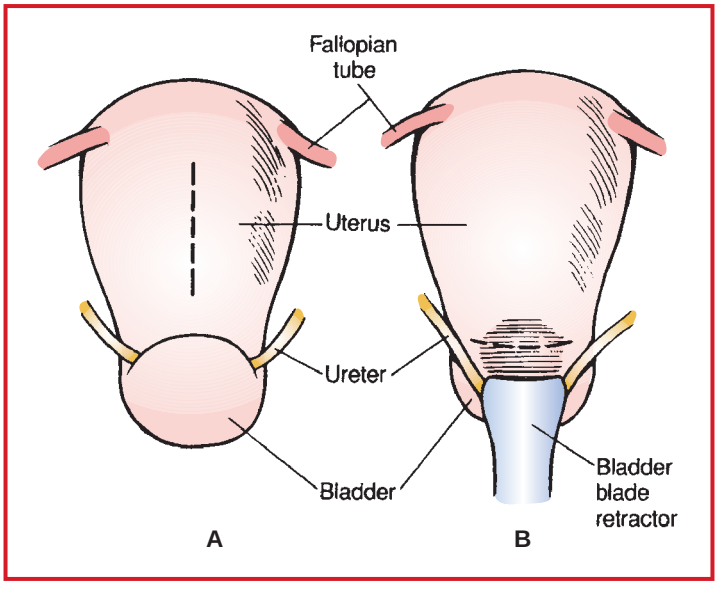


Figure 8.3-1. Typical C-section incisions. **A:** Classic incision, in upper uterine segment. **B:** Low transverse incision.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Lower-Segment C-Section	Classic C-Section
Position	Supine with left lateral tilt. (In obese patients, the pannus may be lifted superiorly by tape or towel clips or inferiorly for a supraumbilical incision.)	⇐
Incision	Skin: transverse low abdominal (Pfannenstiel's) or repeat vertical. Uterus: transverse (Kerr) or low vertical (for premature infants or nonvertex lie)	Skin: Pfannenstiel's or, more commonly, vertical midline. Uterus: vertical fundal

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Lower-Segment C-Section	Classic C-Section
Special instrumentation	Bladder blade retractor; small ring forceps; bandage scissors; suction bulb; DeLee suction trap (if meconium)	⇐
Unique considerations	✓ fetal heart tones before procedure. If for CPD: vaginal exam within last 15 min before procedure. If for fetal distress: continuous monitoring until skin incision.	⇐
Antibiotics	If in labor or membranes ruptured: continue prophylactic antibiotics or cefazolin 1–2 g iv (prior to incision or 30 min prior to delivery)	⇐
Surgical time	20–90 min	40–90 min
Closing considerations	Low transverse: closed in 2 layers. Low vertical: 2 layers; may require additional operative time for control of incision bleeding or repair of incision extension into cervix.	3-layer closure requires additional time.
EBL	750–1000 mL	1000–2000 mL
Postop care	Observation for bleeding and ↓ BP	Special attention to VS needed due to additional blood loss.
Mortality	< 0.1%	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: Not in labor: < 5% In labor/ruptured membranes: 50% (antibiotics reduce incidence to 15%) Small-bowel obstruction (SBO): Rare	 ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain Score	4	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	14–45 yr
Incidence	10–30%
Etiology	Failure to progress (30%); repeat C-section (30%); fetal anomaly/other (20%); abnormal presentation (10%); fetal distress (10%)
Associated conditions	Preeclampsia/eclampsia; DIC; hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme, low Plt count (HELLP) syndrome; obstetrical hemorrhage/shock; chorioamnionitis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: C-section; emergent obstetrical hysterectomy; repair of uterine rupture)

PREOPERATIVE

In general, patients are young and healthy, although the pregnant patient has undergone profound physiologic changes that affect the administration of anesthesia. Women present for C-section for a multitude of reasons, including failure to progress in labor, repeat cesarean delivery, breech presentation, and also for emergency cesarean delivery for nonreassuring fetal heart rate tracing and/or hemorrhage (placenta previa, abruptio placenta, and, rarely, uterine rupture).

Respiratory	The pregnant patient has a compensated respiratory alkalosis (PCO_2 = 32–34), ↑ minute ventilation (MV; ↑ 50%), and ↓ FRC (↓ 20%). ↑ O_2 consumption (↑ 20%) with ↓ FRC results in rapid onset of hypoxemia if ventilation is compromised. Small airway closure due to elevation of diaphragm (exaggerated by obesity and supine position) can → VQ mismatch and ↓ PaO_2. ↑ MV and ↓ FRC enhance uptake of inhalational anesthetics. Mucosal capillary engorgement in upper airways may necessitate a smaller ETT and mandates careful airway suctioning to avoid bleeding. Avoid any nasal airways. Airway changes can occur in labor and necessitate an airway evaluation just prior to administration of anesthesia. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Typically, there is a ↓ SVR (↓ 15%), ↓ diastolic pressure and ↓ MAP (↓ 15%) with ↑ HR (↑ 20%) and ↑ CO (↑ 30–40%, higher in multifetal pregnancy, higher in labor). Use left uterine tilt (15°) to minimize aortocaval compression and supine hypotension. Immediately postpartum, 600–800 mL blood enters the central circulation, due to placental autotransfusion, with further ↑ in CO. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	These patients have ↑ red cell mass (↑ 300–400 mL), ↑ plasma volume (↑ 1200–1300 mL), ↑ blood volume (↑ 1500–1600 mL), ↑ more with multifetal pregnancy. WBC count may ↑ to 15,000/mm^3. Iron deficiency anemia often is superimposed on the dilutional anemia of pregnancy (Hct 33%). The typical blood loss of 700–1000 mL is usually well tolerated. Excessive blood loss is possible with uterine atony, multiple gestation, previous C-section, PIH, placenta previa, abruptio placenta, and prolonged labor. Repeat C-section associated with placenta previa poses high risk for hemorrhage because of increased risk for associated placenta accreta. **Tests:** Hgb/Hct
Gastrointestinal	Abnormalities, including ↑ intragastric pressure, ↓ esopageal spinchter tone, and ↓ gastric motility (after onset of labor), predisposes to aspiration pneumonitis. All parturients should be considered to have full stomachs and should receive nonparticulate antacid (e.g., 0.3 M Na citrate 30 mL) immediately prior to general or regional anesthesia. Administer iv metoclopramide 10 mg and ranitidine 150 mg or famotidine 20 mg before all C-sections.
Hepatic	Liver enzymes can be mildly elevated, alkaline phosphatase is elevated from placental source, and plasma protein concentration is diminished (↑ unbound drug levels). **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Renal	These patients have ↑ renal blood flow (↑ 50%), ↑ GFR, and ↑ creatinine clearance, and ↓ serum creatinine and ↓ BUN. Dependent edema results from increased water and Na^+ retention 2° resetting of the osmotic threshold for thirst and vasopressin secretions. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	T&S maternal blood if risk factors for blood loss are present (e.g., third C-section). Routine cross-match unnecessary unless significant blood loss is anticipated. Routine autologous blood donation is not recommended. Coagulation studies and Plt count recommended with PIH, abnormal placentation, heavy maternal bleeding. BUN, Cr, UA, and fasting blood glucose; others as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Agents to decrease risk of aspiration pneumonitis include a nonparticulate antacid (e.g., Na citrate 30 mL po), ranitidine 150 mg iv and metoclopramide 10 mg iv. Sedatives are not routinely administered. In extremely anxious patients, however, 0.5–1.0 mg midazolam iv is an excellent anxiolytic, without apparent effect on maternal memory or alertness or neonatal condition.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

Pregnancy-induced hypertension (PIH)	PIH is characterized by generalized vasoconstriction with relative intravascular volume depletion and, occasionally, diffuse capillary leak. There may be ↑ risk of hypotension with regional anesthesia. Cautious hydration prior to regional anesthesia is necessary to prevent hypotension or pulmonary edema. Hepatic dysfunction may be present (HELLP syndrome). Epidural, spinal, and combined spinal-epidural (CSE) are all considered safe

Pregnancy-induced hypertension (PIH) (cont'd)	techniques in PIH assuming normal Plt count. Cardiovascular stability is better with regional than GA, provided intravascular volume is adequate. Abnormal coagulation (↓ Plt count or dysfunctional Plt) contraindicates regional anesthesia. If GA is necessary, it is vital that precautions are taken to ↓ laryngoscopic hypertensive response. Use supplementation along with RSI technique; lidocaine (1 mg/kg), emolol (1–2 mg/kg), and/or remifentanyl (0.5-1 mg/kg). Labetalol (20 mg) or hydrolazine (5–10 mg) can be used, but beware of onset times (< 5 min and 5–15 min, respectively), so choose drugs appropriate to urgency. There is a potential for difficult intubation in PIH due to airway edema; therefore, a small ETT (6.0 mm) should be available. $MgSO_4$ potentiates neuromuscular blocking agents; avoid defasciculating dose of muscle relaxant before induction, use smaller than normal doses of nondepolarizing agents, and monitor neuromuscular function. $MgSO_4$ may potentiate hypotension and increase vasopressor requirements. **Tests:** PT; PTT; Plt; TEG or bleeding time; LFTs
Eclampsia	Treat eclamptic Sz with adequate oxygenation and a small dose of either midazolam (2 mg) or propofol (20–40 mg). Intubate if necessary to protect airway. Initiate $MgSO_4$ therapy (loading dose: 4–6 g iv over 20 min; then infuse @ 1–2 g/h). If 2nd seizure occurs during maintenance dose (rare); can administer 2nd bolus dose of 2 g over 5 min.
Massive maternal hemorrhage: • Placenta previa • Abruptio placenta • Ruptured uterus	Administer massive transfusion protocol (MTP) available at institution. Insert 2 large-bore iv catheters (14–16 ga) and consider sending Hg/HCT and coagulation studies. Ensure immediate availability of cross-matched blood and if unavailable consider uncross-matched or O-negative blood. Rapidly restore intravascular volume with crystalloid, colloid, or both until blood is available. If bleeding continues, administer MTP, consisting of a transfusion of PRBC, plasma, and platelets. Induction with either ketamine (1–1.5 mg/kg) or etomidate (0.2–0.6 mg/kg) is preferred in hypovolemic or unstable patients. DIC and dilutional coagulopathy may follow abruptio placenta, amniotic fluid embolism, massive blood loss, and resuscitation. A ratio of RBC:FFP:PLT of 6:4:1 or RCB:FFP of 1:1 is currently recommended during massive transfusion. Uterine atony is treated with oxytocin 20–40 U/L in NS @ rate sufficient to control atony (250–500 mL/h). Small boluses 1–2 U are appropriate, but avoid larger doses (risk of ↓ BP); alternatively, methylergonovine, 0.2 mg im (risk of HTN), Carboprost Tromethamine (Hemabate®; a synthetic analog of PGF2x), 0.25 mg im or intramyometrially (risk of pulmonary HTN, bronchospasm) or misoprostol (600 mg buccal or 1000 mg PR). Uterine artery embolization may be effective in controlling continued postpartum bleeding and may be considered before surgical artery ligation or hysterectomy. Emergency hysterectomy, however, may be the only solution to continued bleeding. Induction of GA may be necessary if massive bleeding occurs during regional anesthesia.
Diabetes	Diabetic patients have an increased propensity to ↓ BP following regional anesthesia. Determine blood glucose hourly and maintain at 80–100 mg/dL. Insulin requirements decrease drastically after delivery, and insulin dosage must be reduced to prevent maternal hypoglycemia. **Tests:** Fasting blood glucose; UA
Response to anesthetic drugs	In pregnant patients, MAC is ↓ 30% for inhaled agents; combined with more rapid uptake, this predisposes to anesthetic overdose. Sensitivity to local anesthetics also is increased. Epidural space capacity is decreased 2° engorgement of epidural veins; this decreases requirements for local anesthetics and increases possibility of intravascular injection of drugs. Increased sensitivity to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants (especially in patients receiving $MgSO_4$) mandates careful monitoring and use of reduced doses. Decreased protein binding may increase toxicity of highly protein-bound drugs such as bupivacaine.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional (neuraxial) anesthesia has a number of materno-fetal advantages (↓ maternal morality, ↓ risks of aspiration, participation in childbirth, better pain control) than GA. Anesthetic choice in specific

circumstances depends on maternal and fetal conditions and degree of urgency. Properly conducted GA or regional anesthesia probably are equally safe for the fetus.

Spinal anesthesia is preferred for elective or semielective C-section (unless patient has an existing epidural) when no contraindications to regional anesthesia exist (e.g., patient refusal, coagulopathy, active neurological disease, elevated ICP, hypovolemia, infection at site of insertion). With the use of a pencil-point needles (e.g., Sprotte, Whitacre), the risk of headache is low (0.5–2%). Advantages of spinal over epidural anesthesia include technical ease, rapid onset of block, and more reliable anesthesia. ↓ BP, however, is more common with spinal anesthesia. Fluid (1–1.5 L crystalloid/500 mL colloid) preloading or coloading (at time of the spinal), leg wrapping (e.g., compression stockings), and vasopressors infusions (phenylephrine 25–50 mcg/min) reduce the incidence and severity of ↓ BP, but do not eliminate it. Additional boluses of vasopressors (e.g., phenylephrine [50–100 mcg] or ephedrine [5–10 mg]), should be used as appropriate to treat ↓ BP. Phenylephrine should be considered the vasopressor of choice due to its rapid onset, efficacy in treating ↓ SVR, and limited placental transfer. Ephedrine may be associated with ↑ fetal acidosis. Atropine (0.4 mg iv) should be used to treat ↓ HR. Consider using epinephrine (50–100 mcg iv) if other vasopressors are unsuccessful in reversing severe ↓ BP or profound ↓ HR.

General anesthesia normally is used when regional anesthesia is contraindicated or when there is inadequate time to institute regional blockade. Obstetric emergencies for which rapid induction of GA may be indicated include severe maternal hemorrhage, prolapsed umbilical cord, severe fetal bradycardia, severe persistent fetal decelerations, or the need for intrauterine manipulation. Less dire situations often permit the performance of a quickly placed spinal or extension of a functioning epidural block with an agent having a rapid onset (e.g., 15–20 mL 3% 2-chloroprocaine or 2% lidocaine with epinephrine 1:200,000 and bicarbonate). Continuous monitoring of the fetal heart rate (FHR) in the OR may allow use of regional anesthesia if the FHR tracing is reassuring. Constant communication with the obstetrician regarding maternal and fetal condition is essential. Although situations exist in which a GA is preferable to regional, the risks must be weighed against the benefits for patients with greater potential for complications. If difficult intubation is anticipated, rapid-sequence induction of GA with cricoid pressure should not be undertaken. Alternative approaches include awake intubation, regional anesthesia, or local infiltration by the obstetrician. Sometimes, a nonreassuring FHR pattern is diagnosed as "fetal distress." Fetal distress is an imprecise and nonspecific term with little positive predictive value. The severity of any FHR abnormality should be considered when the urgency of delivery and type of anesthesia are determined. C-section performed for a nonreassuring FHR pattern does not necessarily preclude the use of regional anesthesia.

Regional anesthesia:

Epidural	Apply monitors, fluid load, and place the patient in the sitting or lateral decubitus position. Locate the epidural space with a 17-18 ga Tuohy needle and LOR to saline (preferable) or air technique. A 3 mL test dose of 1.5–2% lidocaine (45–60 mg) with 1:200,000 epinephrine (15–20 mcg) is given through the epidural needle or catheter to exclude intravascular injection (Sx: tachycardia, palpitations, dizziness, tinnitus, new taste in mouth) or subarachnoid placement (motor/sensory block in lower extremities, rapid onset of pain relief). After 3–5 min, inject 15–20 mL 2% (300–400 mg) lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine (75–100 mcg) incrementally over 5–10 min. Sodium bicarbonate, 1 mEq/10 mL lidocaine, hastens onset of block and improves the block quality, but increases risk of ↓ BP. Bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, or ropivacaine 0.5%, 15–20 mL (75–100 mg), with or without epinephrine 1:200,000 and/or fentanyl (50–100 mcg), or 2-chloroprocaine (450–600 mg) or 2% lidocaine with epinephrine should produce adequate surgical anesthesia within 5–10 min. Left uterine displacement is best achieved by evaluating the right hip with a wedge or towel. Administer O_2 by mask or nasal cannula, and continue to monitor FHR prior to abdominal prep. Monitor BP every min until stable, then every 3–5 min. Treat ↓ in BP with further uterine displacement, additional fluids, and vasopressors as outlined earlier. Maintain BP at baseline levels to optimize placental perfusion. For inadequate anesthesia, give additional epidural local anesthetic, 50–100 mcg fentanyl iv or epidurally, 50% N_2O/O_2, ketamine 10–20 mg iv, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, and/or infiltrate with local anesthetic. The patient must remain conscious to avoid risk of aspiration. If anesthesia is still inadequate, induce GA (see below).

Epidural (cont'd)	After delivery of infant and placenta, rapidly infuse oxytocin 10–20 U/hr. Monitor for excessive blood loss, recognizing that significant blood loss can occur quickly and outside of direct observation, and is often underestimated. Chest pain, mild oxyhemoglobin desaturation, and SOB after delivery may be due to irritation of diaphragm by blood or packs, too high or inadequate level of anesthesia, or venous air or amniotic fluid embolization. Transient S-T segment changes on ECG may occur, but do not usually signify myocardial ischemia.
Spinal	Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position as for epidural anesthesia. Metoclopramide 10 mg iv, 5–10 min prior to block decreases intraop N/V. Insert 25–27-ga pencil-point needle and verify free flow of CSF. If technical difficulties or urgent situations are encountered, a larger pencil-point needle (e.g., 22-ga Sprotte) may be considered. Inject hyperbaric 0.75% spinal bupivacaine 11.25–12.0 mg (1.5–1.6 mL) ± fentanyl 10–20 mcg and preservative-free morphine 0.1–0.2 mg, and position the patient with left uterine displacement. Monitor and treat ↓ BP as for epidural. Adjust operating table position to insure a T4 level of anesthesia. If anesthesia is inadequate and time permits, consider repeating block with CSE, spinal (caution with dosing), or epidural catheter. Treat persistent inadequate anesthesia as for epidural. Induce GA if other measures fail.
Combined spinal-epidural (CSE)	An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia (e.g., if necessary to extend the duration or intensity of the block). Apply monitors, administer fluid, and position as for spinal/epidural. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle. When the epidural space is located with a standard 17–18 ga Tuohy needle, insert a 25–27 ga pencil-point spinal needle through it and administer either a standard C-section spinal dose of bupivacaine and narcotics as described for spinal or reduced dose if indicated (e.g., repeated block after failed spinal or epidural; maternal cardiac disease or short stature). Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed. Appreciate that the epidural catheter is untested and an epidural test dose is advisable prior to dosing.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Elevate the right hip (wedge or towel) to provide left uterine displacement. Preoxygenation for 3–5 min is optimal; however, 4–8 maximal inspiratory breaths in 30 sec is a satisfactory substitute in an emergency. Head up and CPAP may improve oxygenation in obese parturients. Place patient in maximal "sniff" position (ramp patient if necessary), to optimize position for intubation. After patient is prepped and draped and obstetric team is ready to begin, perform rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure. Administer propofol 2–3 mg/kg (or ketamine 1–1.5 mg/kg or etomidate 0.2-0.6 mg/kg in hypovolemic or cardiovascularly unstable patients) and succinylcholine 1–1.5 mg/kg to induce GA and facilitate intubation. Inflate cuff of ETT and verify tracheal placement by $ETCO_2$ waveform and auscultation of bilateral breath sounds.
Failed intubation	If tracheal intubation is unsuccessful, oxygenation and mask ventilation must become a priority, and numerous attempts to intubate should be avoided. Summon experienced help and quickly decide whether surgery must proceed. The risks of continuing with mask GA and cricoid pressure must be weighed against the risk of allowing the mother to awaken. If mask ventilation is impossible, quickly attempt ventilation with an LMA. If this succeeds, either continue to use throughout the case or place an ETT (6 mm ID) through LMA blindly or with FOL; alternatively, use an intubating LMA. A Pro-seal LMA has been used successfully as a rescue supraglottic airway device in this situation and may negate the necessity for ET intubation. Cricoid pressure may interfere with mask ventilation or LMA placement and should be released if necessary. If LMA fails to allow ventilation, attempt emergency transtracheal ventilation using a 12–14 ga iv catheter (or specific cricothyroid airway device) and appropriate tubing to connect to a high-pressure O_2 source (e.g., jet ventilator). If these measures are unsuccessful, an emergency cricothyrotomy or tracheostomy should be performed by experienced personnel. **Planning for a failed intubation must occur before it actually happens.** A difficult-intubation tray, including video laryngoscopes, supraglottic airways, and equipment for emergency jet ventilation, must be immediately accessible in or very near the delivery room.

Maintenance	50% N_2O/O_2 with isoflurane, sevoflurane, or desflurane (limit MAC < 1.5 to prevent uterine atony). Propofol infusion for maintenance negates the uterine relaxant effect of the halogenated agents but may lead to more neonatal depression. Avoid hypocapnia during controlled ventilation which may ↓ umbilical blood flow. After delivery, NDMR rarely required, additional opioid (e.g., fentanyl 150–250 mcg) and increase volatile and N_2O concentrations if necessary. Administer small doses of muscle relaxants (e.g., vecuronium 2–3 mg or rocuronium 10–20 mg) if needed. Reverse with neostigmine 0.05 mg/kg and glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg or atropine 0.02 mg/kg. Consider titrating longer-acting opioids (e.g., hydromorphone 1–2 mg) for postpartum analgesia. Midazolam (1–2 mg), given after delivery, helps avoid maternal awareness, which occasionally occurs with this anesthetic technique. Consider TAP (transversus abdominus plane) blocks preemergence.	
Emergence	Delay extubation until patient is fully awake and muscle strength has returned to normal.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 (additional larger IV access if hemorrhage) NS/LR 1–3 L typical replacement	Infuse 1–2 L dextrose-free crystalloid (± colloid 500 mL) immediately prior to regional anesthesia. Typical blood loss = 700–1000 mL. A rapid-fluid infuser and blood warmer should be available in the event that large-volume blood transfusion is required.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) FHR monitor ±CVP ±arterial line	Arterial BP monitoring via automated BP device, or arterial line for severe or labile HTN. CVP useful in PIH for oliguric patients unresponsive to fluid challenges. Occasionally, a PA catheter is indicated (e.g., for pulmonary edema, unresponsive oliguria).
Positioning	Left uterine displacement (blanket under right hip and/or table tilt)	Minimizes aortocaval compression.
Complications	Amniotic fluid embolism	Rare cause of hemodynamic instability, hypoxemia, and DIC. Often fatal. Rx: supportive: 100% O_2, PEEP, and vasopressors. Correct Plt, clotting factors, and metabolic disturbances. CPB has been used successfully.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	VTE	Pregnancy and C-section increases risk of venous thromboembolism. DX: pleuritic chest pain, cough, hypoxemia, ↑ RR, ↑ HR, ↑ A-a gradient. Rx: supportive: 100% O_2, volume expansion, and vasopressors. See p. B-8.
	Postpartum hemorrhage	See Anesthetic Considerations for Removal of Retained Placenta, p. 855.
Pain management	**Epidural:** 2–4 mg (preservative-free) morphine after delivery. **Intrathecal:** Morphine (preservative-free) 0.1–0.2 mg given with spinal local anesthetic. Chloroprocaine may interfere with analgesia from epidural opioids	Common side effects include: pruritus 70%, nausea 30–40%, and, rarely, respiratory depression. Nalbuphine (5–10 mg) and naloxone (0.1–0.4 mg) are used for reversal of these side effects. Metoclopramide (10 mg iv) and/or ondansetron (4 mg iv) may be needed for persistent nausea. Risk of delayed respiratory depression in healthy patients is small; however, adequately trained nursing staff and a protocol for treatment of complications are mandatory if neuraxial opioids are used. These patients should not routinely receive sedatives or other systemic opioids for 12 h, and close monitoring of RR and level of consciousness every hour is necessary

Pain management (cont'd)	**Parenteral opioids:** iv opioids (e.g., fentanyl 50–100 mcg, hydromorphone 0.1–0.2 mg) boluses prn or PCA instituted in recovery room. NSAIDS (e.g., ketorolac): iv either in OR at end of case or in PACU or if unable to take orally post surgery. Acetaminophen: iv 1000 mg in OR or in PACU. **Oral analgesics:** NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen) and acetaminophen around-the-clock dosing for 48–72 postcesarean. Oxycodone or Hydromorphone (or equivalent oral opioid), for breakthrough pain management. TAP block is a beneficial rescue analgesic option in select patients.	for 12 h then every 2 h for the next 12 h. Pulse oximetry and monitors of ventilation (e.g., $ETCO_2$) should be considered in high-risk patients, including those with obstructive sleep apnea, morbid obesity, and patients receiving additional sedatives.
Tests	As indicated	

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia: Practice guidelines for obstetric anesthesia: an updated report by the ASA Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 2007; 106:281–7.
2. Bloom SL, Spong CY, Weiner SJ, et al: Complications of anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Obstetric Gynecol* 2005; 106:281–7.
3. Fettes PD, Jansson JR, Wildsmith JA: Failed spinal anesthesia: mechanics, management, and prevention. *Br J Anesth* 2009; 102:739–48.
4. Hawkins JL, Koonin LM, Palmer SK, et al: Anesthesia-related maternal mortality in the United States: 1979–2002. *Obstetric Gynecol* 2011; 117:69–74.
5. Ngan Kee WD, Khaw KS, Tan PE, et al: Placental transfer and fetal metabolic effects of phenylephrine and ephedrine during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Anesthesiology* 2009; 111:506–12.
6. Rollins M, Lucero J: Overview of anesthetic considerations for cesarean delivery. *British Medical Bulletin* 2012; 101:105–25.
7. Silver RM, Landon MB, Rouse DJ, et al: Maternal morbidity associated with multiple cesarean deliveries. *Obstetric Gynecol* 2006; 107:1226–32.
8. Soltanifar S, Russell R: The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence guidelines for caesarean section, 2011 update: implications for the anesthetist. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 2012; 21:264–72.
9. Wray S, Plaat F: Regional anesthesia for caesarean section and what to do when it fails. *Anesth Intensive Care Med* 2007; 8(8): 320–22.

MEDICAL AND SURGICAL MANAGEMENT OF POSTPARTUM HEMORRHAGE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The most common indication for **postpartum uterine devascularization and hysterectomy** is **intractable postpartum hemorrhage** (**PPH**). PPH is clinically defined as any uncompensated postpartum blood loss → tissue hypoperfusion. There are four major causes of PPH: retained products of conception (POC), laceration of the genital tract, uterine atony, and coagulopathies. Inherited coagulopathies include von Willebrand's disease,

hemophilia, and factor XI deficiency. Acquired coagulopathies are most often related to thrombocytopenia 2° preeclampsia/eclampsia, hypofibrinogenemia 2° long-standing fetal demise, placental abruption, and DIC related to massive blood loss.

Postpartum blood loss can be reduced by prophylactic use of oxytocin, methylergonovine, or prostaglandins, and these same agents are used as the first line of treatment for PPH. A concentrated oxytocin infusion (e.g., 80–100 U in 500 mL over 30 min) may be used. Methylergonovine should be given im only (0.2 mg q 2–4 h up to 1 mg) because iv infusion has been reported to cause acute HTN, stroke, and Sz. Ergot derivatives are contraindicated in patients with Hx of HTN, asthma, Raynaud's syndrome, or migraine. $PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Hemabate) may be injected im (intramyometrial) at a dose of 0.25 mg, up to a total of 2 mg. Misoprostol, an inexpensive PGE, may be given rectally (up to 800 mcg).

Simultaneously, the surgeon should explore the cause of PPH and apply a specific treatment. If PPH is not controlled with treatment of uterine atony, and after volume replacement and correction of any coagulopathy, temporizing measures should be applied while preparing the patient for definitive invasive treatments. Temporizing measures include packing of uterine cavity with a long gauze and use of balloon tamponade. Extensive experience on nonpneumatic antishock garment (ASG) on nonpregnant patients is applied to postpartum patients with remarkable success in temporizing hypovolemic shock from abdominal and pelvic bleeding. ASG can be applied quickly and results in an immediate 1500–2000 mL autotransfusion. ASG should not be used with fetus in situ or thoracic site of hemorrhage. After stabilization, patient should be transferred to radiology for uterine artery embolization under fluoroscopic control where uterine arteries are selected and absorbable Gelfoam pledgets are introduced. Treatment may be repeated until bleeding is stopped. In known cases of placenta accreta, in anticipation of PPH, catheters have been placed in uterine arteries before C-section.

If selective embolization is not available or fails to stop hemorrhage, more invasive surgical intervention should be employed, including uterine compression sutures, iliac artery ligation, **uterine devascularization**, and **hysterectomy**. The decision for surgical intervention is made when other options (i.e., medical, interventional radiology) have not been successful in decreasing the hemorrhage. Volume and coagulation factor replacement should continue while proceeding with surgery.

The technique for an **emergent obstetrical hysterectomy** is largely similar to a hysterectomy for other indications. Of note is the engorged and prominent nature of the vessels supplying the gravid uterus. The edematous tissues surrounding the uterus are very friable and may bleed profusely if improperly manipulated. A **supracervical** or **total hysterectomy** may be performed. Through a midline or Pfannenstiel's incision, the uterus is elevated out of the abdominal cavity. The round ligaments are clamped, transected, and ligated; and the anterior leaf of the broad ligament is incised bilaterally from the transected round ligaments to the vesicouterine reflection. The posterior leaf of the broad ligament adjacent to the uterus is entered at a level just below that of the fallopian tubes and uteroovarian ligaments. These are then clamped, transected, and ligated. Next, incision of the posterior leaf of the broad ligament toward the cardinal ligaments is performed. With gentle blunt dissection, the bladder and attached vesicouterine peritoneal flap are dissected off the lower uterine segment. The ascending uterine arteries and veins are identified bilaterally, then clamped, transected, and ligated. If a **subtotal hysterectomy** is planned, the body of the uterus is amputated at this level, and the cervical stump is closed with interrupted sutures. If a total hysterectomy is planned, dissection of the bladder off the cervix is continued until the cervicovaginal margin is identified. The cardinal and uterosacral ligaments are clamped, transected, and ligated, with clamps placed as close to the cervix as possible without including cervical tissue. After the level of the lateral vaginal fornix is reached, a clamp is swung below the cervix, across the lateral vaginal fornix. The cervix is then amputated off the vaginal cuff. Throughout the procedure, it is vital to clamp and ligate any bleeding vessels and to take extra care to avoid damage to the ureter or bladder. Following removal of the uterus and cervix, the vaginal cuff angles are sutured to the ipsilateral cardinal ligament stumps, and the vaginal cuff is closed with a running locked stitch. The abdominal wall is closed in layers.

Usual preop diagnosis: Intractable postpartum bleeding; rupture of gravid uterus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with left lateral tilt
Incision	Pfannenstiel's or midline longitudinal
Unique considerations	Monitoring of coagulation parameters and correction of DIC. Consider central venous hemodynamic monitoring. Pediatrics team present, if indicated.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 8 h; total 3 doses
Surgical time	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Subcutaneous intraperitoneal drains, if indicated.
EBL	3000–4000 mL
Postop care	ICU if blood loss severe; patient may require continued intubation and mechanical ventilatory support. Monitor for infectious morbidity and acute renal failure.
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Postop febrile morbidity DIC Wound infection Sheehan's syndrome Bladder injury Intraperitoneal bleeding requiring reoperation Vesicovaginal fistula Ureterovaginal fistula Transfusion-related complications
Pain score	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	0.11% of obstetric patients
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Placenta accreta; uterine atony nonresponsive to medical or other surgical intervention; extension of cervical tear to lower uterine segment; placenta previa; uterine rupture; uterine inversion

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Cesarean Section, p. 835.

Suggested Readings

1. AbdRabbo SA: Stepwise uterine devascularization: a novel technique for management of uncontrolled postpartum hemorrhage with preservation of the uterus. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994; 171:694–700.
2. B-Lynch C, Coker A, Lawal AH, et al: The B-Lynch surgical technique for the control of massive postpartum haemorrhage: an alternative to hysterectomy? Five cases reported. *Br J Obstet Gynecol* 1997; 104:372–5.
3. Bukowski R, Hankins GDV: Managing postpartum hemorrhage. *Contemporary OB/GYN* 2001; 9:92–105.
4. Cho JH, Jun HS, Lee CN: Hemostatic suturing technique for uterine bleeding during cesarean delivery. *Obstet Gynecol* 2000; 96(1):129–31.
5. Cunningham FG, MacDonald PC, Gant NF, et al: Cesarean delivery and cesarean hysterectomy. In: *Williams Obstetrics*, 22nd edition. Appleton & Lange, Stamford: 2005.
6. Hansch E, Chitkara U, McAlpine J, et al: Pelvic arterial embolization for control of obstetric hemorrhage: a five-year experience. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1999; 180(6):1454–60.
7. Hensleigh PA: Anti-shock garment provides resuscitation and haemostasis for obstetric haemorrhage. *BJOG* 2002; 109(12):1377–84.
8. Mousa H, Walkinshaw S: Major postpartum hemorrhage. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol* 2001; 13(6):595–603.
9. Oyelese Y, Scorza W, Mastrolia R, et al: Postpartum hemorrhage. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am* 2007; 34(3):421–41.
10. Tamizian O, Arulkumaran S: The surgical management of postpartum hemorrhage. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol* 2001; 13(2):127–31.

REPAIR OF UTERINE RUPTURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Rupture of the gravid uterus** is considered a true obstetric emergency and can be catastrophic, with significant maternal and fetal mortality. The classic symptoms are "shearing" pain, cessation of uterine contractions, loss of fetal heart tones, and the onset of vaginal bleeding. Unfortunately, these warning symptoms occur only in a minority of uterine rupture cases. Extrusion of the placenta through the uterine rupture may result in late decelerations due to uteroplacental insufficiency. Extrusion of the umbilical cord may be manifested by recurrent variable decelerations. Suprapubic pain as the only symptom has not been associated with uterine rupture. Causes of **uterine rupture** include breakdown of a previous uterine scar, obstructed labor, or uterine trauma. In cases where the uterine rupture occurs at the site of a prior uterine scar, the clinical course is usually less severe and the blood loss less than in cases of primary rupture of an intact uterus. The incidence of uterine rupture at the site of the old scar is 0.5% for lower-uterine transverse C-sections and 12% for classic C-sections.

Total abdominal hysterectomy (see p. 820), or **supracervical hysterectomy** (p. 841), is the definitive therapy; however, depending on the clinical situation and the patient's wishes for future fertility, a **uterine repair** may be undertaken. This consists of a 2- to 3-layered closure of the defect, using synthetic absorbable sutures. A transverse abdominal incision is made ~3 cm above the symphysis pubis and carried to the anterior rectus fascia. The fascia is incised and the muscles of the anterior abdominal wall separated sharply and bluntly from the midline. The peritoneum is elevated and entered sharply. Because of the emergent nature of this condition and the possible massive blood loss associated with rupture of a gravid uterus, the anesthesiologist must act quickly. Prompt O_2 administration, together with aggressive iv fluid resuscitation, followed by transfusion of PRBC, Plt, and FFP, is indicated. Serious consideration should be given to the use of unmatched O(−) or type-specific blood until cross-matched blood becomes available. Intraop hypogastric or uterine artery ligation may help minimize blood loss. Patient's coagulation parameters must be monitored because hypoxia and massive blood loss are associated with DIC.

Usual preop diagnosis: Uterine rupture

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with left-lateral tilt
Incision	Pfannenstiel's (low, transverse abdominal) or midline longitudinal
Unique considerations	Pediatrics team present for infant resuscitation, if necessary. Thorough surgical exploration of the urinary tract (bladder and ureters), because ~10% of cases are associated with bladder lacerations. Cell Saver may be helpful.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 8 h × 3 doses
Surgical time	1–2 h
EBL	500–3000 mL
Postop care	ICU if blood loss severe; MTP for continued hemorrhage; continued intubation and mechanical ventilatory support if aggressive fluid resuscitation results in pulmonary edema. Acute renal failure may occur 2° hypoxic and hypovolemic renal injury at time of acute uterine rupture with massive bleeding; monitor UO and serial renal function tests.
Mortality	Fetal : 35–45% Maternal: 5%
Morbidity	Blood transfusion > 5 U: 58% Postop wound infection: 33% Pelvic abscess: 8% Repeat uterine rupture with subsequent pregnancies: 5%
Pain score	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	1/1400 deliveries
Etiology	Prior uterine surgery; grand multiparity; obesity; manual removal of placenta; injury from tools of abortion; direct or indirect violence; oxytocin use; intraamniotic or vaginal prostaglandins; breech extractions; internal or external version; forceps rotation; shoulder dystocia; fundal pressure; neglect (cephalopelvic disproportion, etc.); congenital uterine anomaly; cornual pregnancy; gestational trophoblastic neoplasia; placenta percreta; abruptio placenta

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Cesarean Section, p. 835.

Suggested Readings

1. Chazotte C, Cohen WR: Catastrophic complications of previous cesarean section. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1990; 163(3):738–42.
2. Cunningham FG, MacDonald PC, Gant NF, et al: Surgical sterilization. In: *Williams Obstetrics*, 22nd edition. Appleton & Lange, Stamford: 2005.
3. Eden RD, Parker RT, Gall SA: Rupture of the pregnant uterus: a 53-year review. *Obstet Gynecol* 1986; 68(5):671–74.
4. Kaczmarczyk M, Sparen P, Terry P, et al: Risk factors for uterine rupture and neonatal consequences of uterine rupture: a population-based study of successive pregnancies in Sweden. *BJOG* 2007; 114(10):1208–14.
5. Plauche WC, VonAlmen W, Muller R: Catastrophic uterine rupture. *Obstet Gynecol* 1984; 64(6):792–97.
6. Sawyer MM, Lipshitz J, Anderson GD, et al: Third-trimester uterine rupture associated with vaginal prostaglandin E_2. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1981; 140(6):710–11.
7. Walsh C, Baxi L: Rupture of the primigravid uterus: a review of the literature. *Obstet Gynec Surv* 2007; 62(5):327–34.

POSTPARTUM TUBAL LIGATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Postpartum tubal ligation (PPTL)** is female surgical sterilization performed at the time of cesarean section (C-section) after delivery of the infant and repair of the uterine incision or within the first several days after a vaginal delivery. Although PPTL can be performed immediately postpartum, problems in the neonate may not be immediately evident, and a delay in surgery may be appropriate. If performed after a vaginal delivery, a small infraumbilical incision is made in the skin and carried down through the parietal peritoneum. The fallopian tubes are identified and brought out of the incision. It is important to identify the fimbriated end of the tube to ensure that the structure ligated is not the round ligament. A midsegment portion of the tube over an avascular portion of mesosalpinx is selected, and tubal patency is disrupted by a variety of methods (**Pomeroy, Parkland, Irving, Uchida,** etc.). The Pomeroy, or a modification of it, is the most common technique used. The segment of tube grasped is ligated with absorbable suture, and the knuckle of tube formed is excised. The cut ends of the tubes should be hemostatic before replacing the tubes into the abdomen. The wound is closed in layers in the usual fashion.

The consent for sterilization requires special consideration. The procedure is strictly elective and voluntary and must be considered permanent, even though reversal may be possible. Some patients will eventually regret the decision to undergo permanent sterilization. The risk of sterilization failure and an increased risk of ectopic pregnancy in case of failure must be reviewed. The full range of alternatives to PPTL, including an interval sterilization procedure (sterilization performed remote from pregnancy) must also be considered.

Usual preop diagnosis: Desire for permanent sterilization

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine; steep Trendelenburg often required to allow bowel to fall away for exposure.
Incision	Infraumbilical
Special instrumentation	Small Richardson and Army/Navy retractors; Babcock clamps; vein retractor
Unique considerations	A special consent form for sterilization must be signed by the patient in advance of the surgery. The bladder must be drained prior to the procedure.
Antibiotics	None recommended
Surgical time	15–25 min (Uchida technique may ↑ operative time)
EBL	10 mL
Postop care	Routine postpartum care after recovery from anesthesia
Mortality	3/100,000
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Infection Incidental damage to bowel or bladder
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	The most common contraceptive procedure in the United States.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Optimal timing of tubal ligation remains controversial. Often, it is more convenient for both the surgeon and the parturient with a functioning epidural catheter to have surgery immediately after delivery. Some obstetricians however, favor waiting 8–24 h, when adequate assessment of the neonate should be complete and risk of postpartum complications, including maternal hemorrhage are lessened. Alternatively, the patient's existing labor epidural catheter can be left in place and reinjected at a later time (successful epidural reactivation within 24 h is possible in > 92% of patients and drops to < 80% after 24 h). Because pulmonary aspiration remains a theoretical risk, initiation of GA or spinal anesthesia often is delayed 8–24 h until the acute GI changes of pregnancy have regressed and the patient is NPO for 8 h. Shorter hospital stays after vaginal delivery are encouraging more tubal ligations during the first 12 h after delivery and it is unknown whether this affects morbidity or mortality.

Respiratory	FRC returns to normal almost immediately after delivery. Laryngeal edema may persist in postpartum patients after protracted expulsive efforts during labor and in the preeclamptic → requirement for a small ETT. Laryngeal edema can also turn an expected easy airway into a difficult intubation. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	The physiologic changes of pregnancy return to normal at varying intervals after delivery. For example, risk of aortocaval compression disappears immediately. Blood volume and hemodynamic changes return to prepregnant values over several days to weeks. Postpartum hemorrhage can occur without warning. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Gastrointestinal	Postpartum patients continue to be at risk for acid aspiration, although it is not known exactly when normal GI function returns. If elective PPTL is planned within 8 h of delivery, patient should have no oral intake of solid foods during labor and the postpartum period. Precautions for prevention of acid aspiration should be followed as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.
Neurological	Local anesthetic requirements for spinal and epidural anesthesia remain decreased compared to nonpregnant patients for 36–48 h after delivery.
Laboratory	Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Precautions should be taken to ↓ risk of aspiration pneumonitis, as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal anesthesia is preferred, if a functioning labor epidural catheter is not in place. Epidural catheters frequently become dislodged after a patient becomes ambulatory. GA is acceptable if patient has a strong preference or if contraindications to regional anesthesia exist. These patients may be at risk for aspiration of gastric contents at least 8–24 h post-delivery.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	For technique and monitoring for spinal anesthesia, see Cesarean Section, p. 838. Hyperbaric bupivacaine (7.5–10 mg) ± fentanyl (10–20 mcg), with goal of obtaining a T6 level of anesthesia. Sedate patient as necessary with small doses of iv midazolam 0.5–1.0 mg.
Epidural	A 3 mL epidural test dose, followed after 3–5 min by 15–20 mL of either 2% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine or 3% chloroprocaine injected incrementally. Titrate local anesthetic as needed to ensure adequate level of anesthesia. Consider adding fentanyl 100 mcg epidurally to reduce local anesthetic requirements and extend the duration of analgesia for several hours postoperatively.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction with propofol (2–3 mg/kg) and succinylcholine (1–1.5 mg/kg) for ET intubation. In selected patients >24 h after delivery, supraglottic airway devices (e.g., proseal LMA) may be appropriate.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)	
Emergence	Extubation should be delayed until patient is fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1	1–1.5 L dextrose-free crystalloid immediately prior to regional anesthesia
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	None specific	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Minimal bleeding

Pain management	**Neuraxial opioids:** Fentanyl intrathecally 10–20 mcg or epidurally 50–100 mcg. Some authors propose small doses of intrathecal or epidural morphine to improve duration of analgesia but patients then require 24 h monitoring. **Oral or Parenteral opioids:** Oral opioids (e.g., oxycodone 5–10 mg), iv opioids (e.g., morphine 2–4 mg iv, up to 20 mg), or hydromorphone 1–2 mg iv instituted in the recovery room. **NSAIDs:** Intravenous (e.g., ketorolac 15–30 mg) or oral (e.g., ibuprofen 600 mg) as necessary may be effective for pain of a cramping nature.
Tests	None routinely indicated.

Suggested Readings

1. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG Committee Opinion, Committee on Ethics: Sterilization of women, including those with mental disabilities. No 371, 2007 (replaces No 63, 1988, No 73, 1989, and No 216 1999). *Obstet Gynecol* 2007; 110(1):217–20.
2. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG Committee Opinion, Committee on Obstetrics, Maternal and Fetal Sterilization: Postpartum tubal sterilization. No 105, 1992. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 1992; 39(3):244.
3. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG technical bulletin. Benefits and Risks of Sterilization. No 46, 2003 (replaces No 222, 1996 and No 113, 1988). *Obstet Gynecol* 2003; 102(3):647–58.
4. Bucklin BA: Postpartum tubal ligation: timing and other anesthetic considerations. *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 2003; 46(3)657–66.
5. Evans NR, et al: A prospective observational study of the use of the Proseal laryngeal mask airway for postpartum tubal ligation. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 2005; 14:90–5.
6. Gupta L, et al: Ambulatory laparoscopic tubal ligation: a comparison of general anesthesia with local anesthetic and sedation. *J Anesth Clin Pharmacol* 2011; 27:97–100.
7. Habib AS, et al: Intrathecal morphine for analgesia after postpartum bilateral tubal ligation. *Anesth Analg* 2005; 100:239–43.
8. Marcus RL, et al: Postoperative epidural morphine for postpartum tubal ligation analgesia. *Anesth Analg* 2005; 101:876–81.
9. Rastogi S, Ruether P: Visceral pain during tubal ligation under spinal anesthesia for caesarean section. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 2008: 78–96.

REPAIR OF VAGINAL/CERVICAL LACERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Vaginal and cervical lacerations may occur 2° trauma of spontaneous and operative vaginal delivery. Adequate repair requires optimal surgical assistance, exposure, and patient comfort. Repair may be performed in a birthing bed or may require patient positioning, lighting, anesthesia, or monitoring capabilities available only in an OR. Vaginal and cervical lacerations can extend into the perineum, rectum, urethra, bladder, lower uterine segment, broad ligament, or peritoneal cavity.

Lacerations of the lower vagina generally are easy to identify and repair. Small, superficial lacerations that do not bleed often do not need repair, whereas larger ones should be approximated. Deep lacerations may cause profuse bleeding; if it persists despite placement of multiple stitches, brief tamponade may be adequate to achieve hemostasis or vaginal packing may be required. Lacerations involving the perineum are classified as follows: First degree—involves break in mucosa and skin. Second degree—involves deeper tissue (bulbocavernosus and levator ani fascia and muscle). Third degree—involves anal sphincter. Fourth degree—extends into rectal mucosa. First- and second-degree lacerations are repaired in layers with continuous or interrupted stitches. The skin usually is closed with a subcuticular stitch. When the anal sphincter is lacerated, it often retracts. The ends are grasped with Allis clamps and approximated with multiple stitches. When the laceration extends into the rectum, the rectal mucosa usually is closed in two layers, with the second layer imbricating the first. With periurethral lacerations, a catheter may need to be placed in the urethra to prevent passing a stitch through it. A laceration involving the urethra or bladder should be closed in multiple layers, followed by bladder drainage for several days.

Lacerations of the upper vagina are often difficult to visualize. Uterine bleeding and the umbilical cord of an undelivered placenta can obscure the field, and it can be difficult to determine if bleeding is vaginal or uterine. It is helpful to deliver the placenta and control uterine bleeding before proceeding. After visualization is adequate, it is important

to place the first stitch above the apex of the laceration to control bleeding from vessels that may have retracted. Again, vaginal packing may be required if oozing of blood persists.

Superficial **lacerations of the cervix** occur with most deliveries but usually do not require treatment. Deep lacerations can cause significant blood loss, especially when they involve larger branches from the uterine artery or extend into the lower uterine segment. Again, the first stitch must be placed above the apex of the laceration to control bleeding from vessels that may have retracted. A **laparotomy** may be necessary if a laceration extends into the lower uterine segment or broad ligament and is causing significant bleeding that cannot be controlled otherwise. Alternatively, uterine artery embolization may be considered.

Usual preop diagnosis: Vaginal or cervical laceration

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Dorsal lithotomy
Incision	None (unless exploratory laparotomy is performed)
Special instrumentation	Right-angle retractors; ring forceps; Allis clamps; Gelpi retractor; vaginal packing
Antibiotics	May be used for lacerations involving entry into the peritoneal cavity or the rectal mucosa.
Surgical time	10–45 min (possibly longer if exploratory laparotomy is performed)
EBL	Variable. Possible need for transfusion. Areas that persistently ooze after repeated placement of suture may be managed with vaginal packing.
Postop care	PACU → ward
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Hematoma Infection Rectovaginal fistula Vesicovaginal fistula
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Trauma 2° spontaneous or operative vaginal delivery (98%); other vaginal/pelvic trauma (2%)
Associated conditions	Major blood loss possible; with nonobstetric etiology, the possibility of sexual assault needs to be explored.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Vaginal and cervical lacerations are reported in up to 6% of women during vaginal delivery. These lacerations may be associated with severe postpartum hemorrhage and can extend into the lower uterine segment leading to considerable blood loss that may go undetected. Patients should be examined carefully for Sx of hypovolemia with appropriate volume resuscitation prior to anesthesia. Evaluation and exploration of all but the most superficial of lacerations needs to be done in the operating room to optimize anesthesia options, hemodynamic monitoring, and surgical exposure.

Respiratory	FRC returns to normal soon after delivery. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Cardiovascular	The physiologic changes of pregnancy return to normal at varying intervals after delivery. For example, risk of aortocaval compression disappears immediately. Blood volume and hemodynamic changes return to prepregnant values over several days to weeks. Postpartum hemorrhage can occur without warning. Ensure adequate fluid resuscitation prior to induction of GA or regional anesthesia. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Postpartum patients continue to be at risk for acid aspiration, although it is not known exactly when normal GI function returns. Precautions for prevention of acid aspiration should be followed as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.
Neurological	Local anesthetic requirements for spinal and epidural anesthesia remain decreased compared to nonpregnant patients for 36–48 h after delivery.
Laboratory	Hct; consider coagulation studies with excessive blood loss; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Precautions should be taken to ↓ risk of aspiration pneumonitis, as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: In many patients, a functioning epidural catheter will be in place, and supplemental doses of anesthetic may be given to provide adequate analgesia for the surgery. If no epidural is in place and the patient is hemodynamically stable, a spinal anesthetic may be satisfactory. GA may be required when regional is contraindicated.

Regional anesthesia:

Epidural	Supplemental doses of local anesthetic (1.5–2% lidocaine 10–15 mL) with or without fentanyl (50–100 mcg) injected incrementally with patient in sitting position (if tolerated) to promote perineal anesthesia.
Spinal	Hyperbaric bupivacaine 0.75% 7.5–10 mg combined with fentanyl 10–20 mcg with patient in sitting position, if tolerated. 25–27 ga pencil-point needle to ↓ incidence of spinal headache. Anesthesia to T10 is usually adequate. Repair of more extensive lacerations may require a higher anesthetic dermatomal level and, consequently, a higher dose of anesthetic.
Combined spinal-epidural (CSE)	An alternative technique combining the rapid onset and density of spinal anesthesia with the flexibility of continuous epidural anesthesia (e.g., if necessary to extend the duration or intensity of the block). Position and prepare patient as for any neuraxial anesthetic. The most common technique is the needle-through-needle, which entails after locating the epidural space with a 17-ga Tuohy needle, a 25–27 pencil-point needle is then inserted through the Tuohy needle into the intrathecal space. An intrathecal dose of 7.5–10 mg of bupivacaine is administered and after removal of the spinal needle, the epidural catheter is threaded through the Tuohy needle. Secure the epidural catheter and use if needed. (An epidural test dose is advisable.)

General anesthesia:

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) with propofol (2–3 mg/kg) and succinylcholine (1–1.5 mg/kg) for ET intubation. If significant blood loss, ketamine 1.5 mg/kg or etomidate 0.3 mg/kg is preferred for induction.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).
Emergence	Extubation should be delayed until patient is fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1	1–1.5 L dextrose-free crystalloid or 500–1000 mL of colloid immediately prior to regional anesthesia. Blood loss may be extensive until laceration is repaired.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	
Complications	Bleeding	
Positioning	✓ Pad pressure points ✓ eyes	To avoid peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding Peroneal nerve injury (2° lithotomy position)	Nerve injury manifests as foot drop and loss of sensation over dorsum of foot.
Pain management	**Neuraxial opioids:** 10–20 mcg fentanyl intrathecally or 50–100 mg fentanyl epidurally enhances intraop anesthesia and provides 3–4 h postop analgesia. **Oral or Parenteral opioids:** Oral opioids (e.g. oxycodone 5–10 mg) or iv opioids (e.g. morphine 2–4 mg iv up to 20 mg, or hydromorphone 1–2 mg iv) instituted in the recovery room.	Avoid NSAIDs if significant bleeding
Tests	Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Chia CC, Huang SC: Postpartum hemorrhage of genital tract origin. *Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol* 2010; 49:513–14.
2. Chia CC, Huang SC: Third- and fourth-degree perineal laceration in vaginal delivery. *Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol* 2012; 51:148–52.
3. Landy HJ, et al: Characteristics associated with severe perineal and cervical lacerations during vaginal delivery. *Obstetrics Gynecology* 2011; 117(3):627–35.
4. Melamed N, et al: Intrapartum cervical lacerations: characteristics, risk factors, and effects on subsequent pregnancies. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2009; 200:388.e1–388.e4.
5. Parikh R, Brotzman S, Anasti J: Cervical lacerations: some surprising facts. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2007; 11:e17–e18.

CERVICAL CERCLAGE—ELECTIVE AND EMERGENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Cervical cerclage is the reinforcement of the cervix to prevent premature cervical dilation in a patient with an incompetent cervix. With cervical incompetence, there is painless dilation of the cervix in the midtrimester of pregnancy. The membranes bulge through the cervix and rupture, followed by delivery of a severely premature infant.

An **elective cerclage** is performed prophylactically before pregnancy or usually after the first trimester of pregnancy on a patient with a Hx of cervical incompetence. If cerclage is performed before pregnancy, it may need to be removed because of spontaneous abortion or fetal anomalies. It generally is performed between 14 and 16 wk gestation, but may be performed as early as 10 wk gestation. An **emergent (rescue) cerclage** is performed in a patient who presents in the second trimester with painless cervical dilation and/or effacement. Ultrasound is performed before the procedure to confirm viability and to r/o major congenital anomalies. An emergent

cerclage should not be performed if there is advanced cervical dilation or any evidence of infection, contractions, or uterine bleeding.

There are two types of cerclage procedures generally performed: the McDonald and the Shirodkar. The **McDonald cerclage** is technically easier and the one most commonly performed. A purse-string stitch with nonabsorbable monofilament suture is placed high around the cervix near the level of the internal os and tied at the twelve o'clock position. The end of the suture is cut long to facilitate removal. The cerclage is removed electively at term or earlier if there is rupture of membranes, persistent contractions, bleeding, or evidence of infection. The **Shirodkar cerclage** involves incising the cervix transversely, anteriorly, and posteriorly and advancing the bladder off the cervix. A nonabsorbable monofilament suture is placed submucosally between the incisions, and the mucosa is closed, burying the stitch. A Shirodkar cerclage may be left for future pregnancies if abdominal delivery is performed. If the cervix cannot be adequately accessed through the vagina, cerclage may be attempted through laparotomy or laparoscopy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical incompetence

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy, with use of cane stirrups. Left lateral pelvic tilt (if performed during pregnancy); Trendelenburg
Incision	None with McDonald cerclage; transverse cervical with Shirodkar cerclage
Special instrumentation	Right-angle retractors; monofilament, nonabsorbable stitch
Unique considerations	For emergent cerclage, when prolapsing membranes are present, they may be reduced by filling the bladder and/or possibly removing amniotic fluid transabdominally.
Antibiotics	None recommended.
Surgical time	30 min–1 h (may be longer for Shirodkar cerclage)
EBL	25–50 mL (may be higher with the Shirodkar cerclage)
Postop care	PACU → ward; tocolysis with indomethacin or other agent can be considered.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Morbidity is increased for emergent cerclage, especially when performed later in 2nd trimester. The McDonald cerclage is associated with less trauma and bleeding than the Shirodkar cerclage. Cervical trauma Rupture of membranes Chorioamnionitis Preterm labor Spontaneous abortion
Pain score	McDonald—2; Shirodkar—3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Cervical trauma from previous vaginal delivery; cervical trauma at time of previous D&C; previous treatment for cervical dysplasia (laser therapy, cryotherapy, loop electrosurgical excision procedure [LEEP]/large loop excision of transitional zone [LLETZ], cone biopsy); congenital anomalies; idiopathic

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Cervical insufficiency affects approximately 1% of pregnant women, and approximately 40,000 cerclage placement procedures are preformed annually in the United States. This patient population is generally healthy and little work-up is needed unless otherwise indicated. Cerclage is usually performed between 14–24 wk of pregnancy. When performed after 20 wk, relevant physiologic changes are as discussed under Cesarean Section. Women requiring a cerclage may also have uterine irritability and potentially receive drugs such as β-sympathomimetics (e.g., terbutaline), nifedipine, or indomethacin.

Laboratory	Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	None usually, but the significantly anxious patient may benefit from midazolam (0.5–2 mg). Avoid diazepam during the period of organogenesis (may → cleft lip). If >18 wk gestation, precautions should be taken to decrease risk of aspiration pneumonitis, as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Drug exposure during the critical period of organogenesis (15–56 d) should be minimized, although no particular anesthetic techniques or agents have proven teratogenic in humans. Although N_2O is teratogenic in rodents, there is no evidence of human teratogenicity when used for cervical cerclage or other operations. Ensure adequate uteroplacental perfusion and fetal oxygenation by maintaining normal maternal BP and oxyhemoglobin saturation. Use left uterine displacement after 20 wk gestation. Maternal hyperventilation and IPPV may diminish uteroplacental and umbilical blood flow. Monitoring FHR may permit optimization of fetal well-being by adjustment of maternal blood pressure, oxygenation, or position. Spinal anesthesia is ideal as it minimizes fetal drug exposure and provides good operating conditions. Risk of headache is low with the use of 25–27 gauge pencil-point needles (e.g., Sprotte, Whitacre). Epidural anesthesia is an appropriate alternative for this procedure. GA may be required if regional anesthesia is contraindicated or if uterine relaxation is desired to facilitate cerclage placement (e.g., increased uterine tone with bulging fetal membranes).

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	Hyperbaric bupivacaine 7.5–10 mg ± fentanyl 10–20 mcg. Position patient to obtain T8–T10 block. Monitor BP every min until stable, then every 3–5 min. Treat ↓ in BP below baseline with fluids and a vasopressor (e.g., phenylephrine 50–100 mcg or ephedrine 5–10 mg iv).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). If > 16–18 wk gestation, rapid-sequence induction is indicated (see p. B-5).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). If < 16–18 wk gestation, use of LMA or mask anesthesia with either O_2/N_2O/volatile agent/opioid or propofol infusion is appropriate. If > 16–18 wk gestation, ET intubation will be necessary.	
Emergence	If > 16–18 wk gestation, extubate patient when fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1	Fluid pre-loading (prior to regional anesthesia) or co-loading (at time of spinal) with 1–1.5 L dextrose-free crystalloid may be beneficial in decreasing spinal hypotension.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ±FHR monitor	Consider FHR monitoring for viable fetuses and in earlier gestation, as the FHR may indicate inadequate placental perfusion and can guide BP management.

Positioning	Left uterine displacement, if > 20 wk gestation ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Lithotomy positioning: * **NB:** peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Preterm labor Hypotension Peroneal nerve injury	Observe for preterm labor in recovery area. Tocolytic agents β-adrenergic agents) given to inhibit uterine contractions can cause maternal dysrhythmias or ↓ BP. Manifests as foot drop and loss of sensation over dorsum of foot.
Pain management	**Intraspinal opioids:** 10–20 mcg fentanyl **Parenteral opioids:** iv opioids (e.g., fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, morphine 2–4 mg iv, or hydromorphone 1–2 mg) instituted in the recovery room. **Oral analgesics:** NSAIDS (e.g., ibuprofen) should not be prescribed for analgesia during pregnancy (cardiopulmonary and renal effects in developing fetus). Acetaminophen ± oxycodone (or equivalent oral narcotics), once patient can tolerate oral medication.	Intrathecal fentanyl given with spinal improves intraop analgesia and provides several hours of postop analgesia.

Suggested Readings

1. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cervical Cerclage, Prophylactic. ACOG Criteria, Set 17. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Washington: 1996.
2. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cervical Cerclage, Therapeutic. ACOG Criteria, Set 18. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Washington: 1996.
3. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cervical insufficiency. ACOG Practice Bulletin, No. 48. *Int J Gynecol Obstet* 2004; 85:81–9.
4. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 474. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; 117:420–1.
5. Berghella V, Seibel-Seamon J: Contemporary use of the cervical cerclage. *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 2007; 50:468–77.
6. Drassinower D, et al: Perioperative complications of history-indicated and ultrasound indicated cervical cerclage. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2011; 205:531–5.
7. Goodman S: Anesthesia for nonobstetric surgery in the pregnant patient. *Semin Perinatol* 2002; 26(2):136–45.
8. Koduri O, et al: Effect of cerclage on cesarean delivery. *Am J Perinatol* 2011; 28:395–98.
9. Lee G, et al: Spread of subarachnoid sensory block with hyperbaric bupivacaine in second trimester of pregnancy. *J Clin Anes* 2009; 21:482–85.
10. Rosen MA: Management of anesthesia for the pregnant surgical patient. *Anesthesiology* 1999; 91:1159–63.

REMOVAL OF RETAINED PLACENTA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In most deliveries, the placenta is easily removed with gentle cord traction and uterine massage. If, after 30 min, the placenta remains undelivered, **manual removal,** following either parenteral analgesia or GA, must be initiated. NTG (100–200 mcg iv or 0.4 mg sublingually) may induce uterine relaxation during manual removal.

A possible alternative to manual removal involves injection of 10 mL of oxytocin (10 U/mL) into the umbilical vein; however, the success of this procedure is unpredictable. A retained placental fragment may cause immediate or late postpartum hemorrhage. An ultrasound evaluation of the uterus may help in the detection of a retained fragment. If retained products are found, **curettage** is recommended. Frequently, the retained product will already have been flushed out of the uterus by brisk bleeding. In such cases, iv oxytocin, rectal misoprostol, im prostaglandins, or methylergonovine may be administered to contract the uterus prior to curettage.

Bleeding from a retained placenta or fragment is frequently brisk, so the anesthesiologist must be ready to administer iv fluids and O_2 and to correct any coagulopathy. Cross-matched blood must be available. Placenta accreta, if extensive, can cause profuse bleeding at delivery, and a hysterectomy is often necessary.

Oxytocin 20–40 U in 1000 mL of LR should be administered at a rate sufficient to maintain uterine tone after manual removal of the placenta or after sharp/suction curettage of a retained placental fragment.

Usual preop diagnosis: Retained placenta

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Dorsal lithotomy
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Banjo curette/suction cannula
Unique considerations	IV fluids; use of blood and blood products, as needed; monitoring of VS
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 8 h; 3 total doses
Surgical time	30 min
EBL	300–900 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward. Monitor for infection and further bleeding.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Endometritis Uterine perforation 2° curettage Asherman's syndrome Transfusion-related morbidity (hepatitis, HIV, transfusion reactions)
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	0.25–0.8% of vaginal deliveries
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Placenta accreta; avulsed cotyledon; succenturiate lobe

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The incidence of retained placenta is about 1–3%. The degree of urgency associated with these patients may vary dramatically. Some patients may be hemodynamically unstable as a result of heavy and/or persistent bleeding in the postpartum period; others may have a retained placenta with minimal bleeding. Delays in delivery of placenta

increases the risk of significant postpartum hemorrhage. Evaluation of the patient in the OR to optimize monitoring, anesthetic options, and surgical exposure is essential.

Respiratory	Laryngeal edema may persist in postpartum patients after protracted expulsive efforts during labor and increases the likelihood of difficult intubation. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Volume status should be carefully assessed and resuscitation started early. Restore intravascular volume prior to institution of analgesia or anesthesia. Neuraxial anesthesia (either spinal or extension of existing lumbar epidural blockade) may aggravate hypovolemia. Consider possibility of placenta accreta (placental villi are attached to myometrium), especially if placenta is difficult to remove, and expect greater blood loss.
Gastrointestinal	Postpartum patients continue to be at risk for acid aspiration, although it is not known exactly when normal GI function returns. Precautions for prevention of acid aspiration should be followed as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.
Neurological	Local anesthetic requirements for neuraxial anesthesia remain decreased compared to nonpregnant patients for 36–48 h after delivery.
Hematologic	Coagulopathy can develop rapidly with retained placenta, especially if bleeding is severe and persistent. **Tests:** Hct, PT, PTT, Plt, Fibrinogen, as indicated.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P. T&C for 2–4 U+ if time permits. Emergency transfusion with Type O(−) or type-specific blood may be necessary. If available, consider activation of MTP if severe hemorrhage, significant coagulopathy, unstable hemodynamics, and/or if there are significant delays in receiving cross-matched blood.
Premedication	Precaution should be taken to decrease risk of aspiration, as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836. Anxiolysis (e.g., midazolam 0.5–2 mg iv) may be indicated.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: There are several anesthesia options (MAC/GA/neuraxial technique) for the removal of a retained placenta depending on the urgency and severity. MAC may be sufficient to enable the obstetrician to manually extract the placenta. If better analgesia and additional uterine relaxation are needed, however, then GA may be required. If intravascular volume has been restored and an existing labor epidural catheter is in place, the sensory block can be extended to provide adequate anesthesia. Initiating spinal anesthesia is also an option if intravascular volume status is adequate, there is no significant active bleeding, and time permits. Small doses of iv opioids and midazolam sometimes provide sufficient analgesia and sedation to allow removal of a retained placenta without compromising maternal safety. If this proves inadequate or hemorrhage is severe, however, GA with ET intubation is required. NTG in 100 mcg iv boluses or sublingual NTG 400 mcg provides uterine relaxation and may aid delivery of a retained placenta in normovolemic patients.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	For technique and monitoring of spinal anesthesia, see Cesarean Section, p. 838. Hyperbaric bupivacaine 7.5–10 mg, with or without fentanyl 10–20 mg, to obtain T8 level of anesthesia.
Epidural	For technique and monitoring, see Cesarean Section, p. 838. Administer increments of 2% lidocaine (with 1:200,000 epinephrine and bicarbonate) or 3% 2-chloroprocaine until block level adequate. Additional local anesthetic and fentanyl 50–100 mcg can be administered epidurally as needed to ensure adequate level of anesthesia.
MAC	Titrate small doses of opioids (e.g., fentanyl 25–50 mcg) and midazolam 0.5–2.0 mg or ketamine 0.1–0.2 mg/kg. Sedation and analgesia should be titrated carefully, due to the potential risk of pulmonary aspiration in the parturient with an unprotected airway. Ensure patient is awake and responsive throughout. Consider NTG 100 mcg iv for uterine relaxation, repeated as necessary to obtain the desired effect. Transient ↓ BP may follow vasodilation due to NTG and should be treated with volume and pressors if necessary.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Preoxygenation, rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure (see p. B-5), and hydration, as discussed in Cesarean Section. Ketamine (1 mg/kg) is preferred for induction of hypotensive patient; but, in larger doses (> 1.5 mg/kg), it theoretically may increase uterine tone and make removal of placenta more difficult. Etomidate 0.2–0.4 mg/kg is also a suitable induction agent in this setting.	
Maintenance	Anesthesia with N_2O/O_2 + volatile + opioid often permits delivery of placenta. If uterine relaxation is necessary, administer volatile agent (> 1.5 MAC) or NTG (see above) until uterine tone decreases.	
Emergence	Extubation should be delayed until patient is fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2	1–1.5 L NS/LR or colloid 500 mL to maintain BP or minimize hypotension after neuraxial anesthesia. Treat ↓ BP with fluids and pressors and by decreasing concentration of volatile agent. Surgery is usually brief; additional muscle relaxation not usually necessary.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	
Complications	Bleeding Uterine atony	Oxytocin is the first line uterotonic agent. Consider small boluses 1–3U in addition to an infusion (e.g., 30–60 U in 500–1000 mL NS at 250–500 mL/hr). Second line uterotonics include methylergonovine 0.2 mg im (may →↑ BP), $PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Hemabate) 250 mcg im/intrauterine (may → cardiovascular collapse/bronchospasm) and/or misoprostol (cytotec) 600–1200 mg rectal/sublingual.
Positioning		***NB:** peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury (2° lithotomy position) Bleeding	Nerve injury manifested as foot drop and loss of sensation over dorsum of foot. See uterine atony, above.
Pain management	Parenteral: Opioids (e.g., fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv; titrated to effect) instituted in recovery room. Avoid NSAIDs in patients with persistent or significant bleeding. Administer acetaminophen and oral opioids (e.g., oxycodone 5–10 mg) for postoperative pain management.	
Tests	Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Abdel-Aleem H, et al: Tocolysis for management of retained placenta. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; 19(1):CD007708.
2. Ahonen J, et al: Management of post-partum hemorrhage. *Acta Anesthesiol Scand* 2010; 54(10):1164–78.
3. Chedraui P, Insuasti D: Intravenous nitroglycerin in the management of retained placenta. *Gynecol Obstet Invest* 2003; 56(2):61–4.
4. Dyer RA, Butwick AJ, Caravalho B: Oxytocin for labor and caesarean delivery: implications for the anesthesiologist. *Current Opinion in Anesthesiology* 2011; 24:255–61.

5. Jha S, Chiu J, Yeo I: Intravenous nitroglycerine versus general anaesthesia for placental extraction—a sequential comparison. *Med Sci Monit* 2003; 9(7):CS63–6.
6. Mercier FJ, Van de Velde M: Major obstetric hemorrhage. *Anesthesiology Clin* 2008; 26:53–66.
7. Weeks A: The retained placenta. *Best Prac Res Clin Obstet Gyn* 2008; 22(6):1103–17.
8. Yoo K, et al: The effects of volatile anesthetics on spontaneous contractility of isolated human pregnant uterine muscle: a comparison among sevolfurane, desflurane, isoflurane, and halothane. *Anesth Analg* 2006; 103(2):443–47.

MANAGEMENT OF UTERINE INVERSION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Uterine inversion is associated with fundal implantation of the placenta whereby a thinning of the uterine wall, together with placental separation, causes an invagination of the myometrium, resulting in inversion. Vigorous fundal pressure or cord traction also can contribute to uterine inversion, which can be complete or incomplete. **Complete inversion** results in the inverted fundus extending beyond the cervix and appearing at the vaginal introitus, whereas in an **incompletely inverted uterus,** the fundus does not extend beyond the external cervical os. Uterine inversion can cause hemorrhage and shock out of proportion to observed bleeding and must be managed as an obstetrical emergency. An anesthesiologist must be called to the delivery room as soon as a diagnosis of uterine inversion is made. The ready availability of GA is paramount. IV access with two infusion systems and appropriate fluid resuscitation must be initiated emergently. Blood and blood products should be available for administration as indicated.

Frequently, **uterine replacement** can be accomplished with iv tocolytics, such as terbutaline, $MgSO_4$, and, more recently, NTG; however, GA with a volatile agent may be necessary. Delay in treatment of uterine inversion is associated with increased blood loss. Initiate iv resuscitation and iv tocolytics (or anesthesia). Three primary methods for uterine replacement are the Johnson, Huntington and Haultain procedures. Normally, the **Johnson method** is attempted first. Leave the placenta attached. Cup the inverted fundus in the palm of the hand, elevate the inverted prolapsed fundus. Apply persistent upward pressure to the ring of inversion with the tip of the operator's fingers. Once the fundus is replaced, keep a fist inside the uterus and apply external fundal massage. Continue uterotonic treatments. Attempt manual removal of the placenta at this stage. Watch for reinversion. Laparotomy must be performed if uterine replacement with the Johnson method is unsuccessful. The **Huntington procedure** involves grasping the round ligaments and applying upward traction on them, while an assistant exerts upward pressure on the uterus via a hand in the vagina. If the inverted uterus is trapped below the cervical ring, the **Haultain procedure** is used. This procedure involves making a longitudinal fundal incision posteriorly to allow easier reinversion of the fundus. Hydrostatic and laparoscopic reduction of uterine inversion have also been described.

Usual preop diagnosis: Uterine inversion

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Manual Reinversion	Huntington/Haultain
Position	Dorsal lithotomy	Supine
Incision	None	Pfannenstiel's or midline longitudinal
Unique considerations	Prompt O_2 and iv fluid resuscitation; use of blood and blood products as necessary.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 8 h; total 3 doses	⇐
Surgical time	30 min	1–2 h
EBL	150–4000 mL	⇐
Postop care	±ICU. ARDS may necessitate mechanical ventilation. Monitor for acute renal failure 2° hypoxia and hypovolemia.	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)		
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Febrile morbidity Clinical shock Infectious morbidity from blood transfusion	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	5	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive age
Incidence	1/2000–6000 deliveries
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Fundal implantation of the placenta; primiparity; intrapartum oxytocin; placenta accreta; therapy of preeclampsia with $MgSO_4$; macrosomic fetus

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Uterine inversion is an obstetric emergency as it usually is accompanied by hemorrhage and shock. Management requires prompt recognition and action. These patients often present in shock out of proportion to blood loss because of the parasympathetic effect of traction on the ligaments supporting the uterus. Immediate resuscitation almost always is necessary. Blood loss varies from 500–2500 mL and is easily underestimated. Patient condition will improve as soon as the uterus is replaced, and therefore surgical treatment should not be delayed. Consider activation of MTP if available.

Respiratory	FRC returns to normal almost immediately after delivery. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Massive hemorrhage and pain usually present with complete inversion. Prior to induction, insert large-bore iv and rapidly begin fluid resuscitation to treat ↓ BP. Blood transfusion may be necessary, although is seldom available until after surgery.
Gastrointestinal	Postpartum patients continue to be at risk for acid aspiration, although it is not known exactly when normal GI function returns. Precautions for prevention of acid aspiration should be followed as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.
Neurological	Local anesthetic requirements for neuraxial anesthesia remain decreased compared to nonpregnant patients for 36–48 h after delivery.
Laboratory	Hct; Plt; consider coagulation studies and other tests as indicated from H&P. T&C for 2–4 U PRBC; keep 2 U ahead.
Premedication	Na citrate 30 mL po within 30 min of induction. If time permits, other agents to decrease risk of aspiration pneumonitis, as discussed in Cesarean Section, p. 836.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Attempted uterine replacement and induction of anesthesia should not await intravascular volume replacement. Bleeding usually stops when uterus is replaced. Uterotonic therapy should be discontinued, and iv NTG (50–200 mcg) will often provide uterine relaxation to facilitate replacement, and can be administered in the labor suite. Other tocolytics, such as terbutaline or Mg^{++}, also may assist in restoration of the uterine fundus. **Do not give oxytocin before uterine replacement.** If regional anesthesia (e.g., epidural or

spinal) was used for delivery, replacement of uterus may be accomplished with little further anesthetic intervention, with or without NTG. If regional anesthesia was not used for delivery, iv analgesia with small doses of fentanyl (25–50 mcg iv) or ketamine (10–20 mg iv) may allow reduction. Sometimes, however, GETA is required, often with increasing concentrations of volatile agents to facilitate uterine replacement. GETA also provides the opportunity for a laparotomy to correct the inversion if other measures fail.

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) with ketamine (1.0 mg/kg) or etomidate (0.3 mg/kg) preferred. Higher dose of ketamine may adversely increase uterine tone.	
Maintenance	Isoflurane and sevoflurate are effective uterine relaxants, but sevoflurane is most rapidly eliminated. ↓ BP should be treated with fluids + vasopressors and transfusion as necessary.	
Emergence	Extubation should be delayed until patient is fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Significant blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 or 2	Possible continued blood loss after reduction of uterus due to uterine atony.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	Arterial line may be useful, if time allows.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Uterine atony Massive blood loss	Rx:↓ volatile anesthetic concentrations. Oxytocin infusion, uterine massage, ± methylergonovine 0.2 mg im (may ↑ BP), $PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Hemabate) 250 mcg/im/intrauterine (may → cardiovascular collapse/bronchospasm); cytotec (misoprostol) 600–1200 mg rectal/sublingual

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding
Pain management	**Oral or parenteral opioids:** oral opioids (e.g., oxycodone 5–10 mg) or iv opioids (e.g., morphine 2–4 mg iv, up to 20 mg; hydromorphone 1–2 mg iv) instituted in the recovery room. Avoid NSAIDS if significant bleeding.
Tests	Hct

Suggested Readings

1. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG practice bulletin: postpartum hemorrhage. No 76, 2006 (replaces No 243, 1998 and No 143, 1990). *Obstet Gynecol* 2006; 108(4)1039–47.
2. Duri D, et al: Acute postpartum uterine inversion: report of two cases. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 2008; 17:83–4.
3. Hostetler DR, Bosworth MF: Uterine inversion: a life threatening obstetric emergency. *J Am Board Fam Pract* 2000; 13(2): 120–3.
4. Marshall N, Catling S: Cardiac arrest due to uterine inversion during caesarean section. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 2009; 10:231–4.
5. Mirza F, Gaddipati S: Obstetric emergencies. *J Semin Perinatol* 2009; 1:97–103.
6. Pinder A, Dresner M: Massive obstetric hemorrhage. *Curr Anesth Crit Care* 2005; 16:181–8.
7. Riley ET, Flanagan B, Cohen SE, et al: Intravenous nitroglycerin: a potent relaxant for emergency obstetrical procedures. Review of literature and reports of 3 cases. *Int J Obstet Anesth* 1996; 5:264–8.
8. Tan KH, Luddin NS: Hydrostatic reduction of acute uterine inversion. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2005; 1:63–4.
9. Witteveen T, et al: Puerperal uterine inversion in the Netherlands: a nationwide cohort study. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2012; 1–11.

CHAPTER

8.4 Laparoscopic Procedures for Gynecologic Surgery

SURGEONS

Camran R. Nezhat, MD, FACOG, FACS
Jacqualin Miller, MD
Amanda Stevens, MD
Chandhana Paka, MD
Elizabeth Buescher, MD
M. Ali Parsa, MD, FACOG

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY FOR ENDOMETRIOSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Endometriosis is defined as the presence of endometrial glands and stroma in ectopic locations. There are numerous theories about the etiology of endometriosis, including (a) the peritoneal cavity is seeded with cells which are transported via the fallopian tubes during menses; (b) totipotent cells in the peritoneal cavity are transformed by hormonal exposure into endometrial cells; (c) endometrial cells are transported intravascularly or via lymphatics to ectopic sites, where they respond to hormonal stimuli (this theory has been used to explain the presence of endometriosis in the brain and pleura); (d) failure of natural killer cells to eliminate ectopic endometrial cells, which is suggested by decreased cytotoxic response of the immune system; and (e) it is an inherited disorder. Intervention usually is indicated for intractable pain, infertility, or impaired function of the gastrointestinal (GI) or genitourinary (GU) tracts or thoracic cavity. GU endometriosis may range from superficial involvement of peritoneum overlying the ureters and bladder to deep infiltrating endometriosis penetrating through to bladder mucosa. Scarring and fibrosis can cause ureteral obstruction and hydronephrosis with renal insufficiency. Patients with GI endometriosis may have thickening of the rectovaginal septum, suggesting obliteration of the posterior cul-de-sac or rectosigmoid involvement. Adhesions may make rectovaginal examination difficult or painful. Pelvic structures may be immobile (known as "frozen pelvis"), suggesting adhesions are fixing bowel or bladder to the uterus. In severe cases of GI endometriosis, sigmoidoscopy should be performed to r/o malignancy and to determine whether endometriosis has penetrated through to the bowel mucosa.

Laparoscopy (Fig. 8.4-1) is the most appropriate surgical technique for the diagnosis and treatment of endometriosis. Data from animal and clinical studies suggest laparoscopic surgery is more effective for adhesiolysis, causes fewer de novo adhesions than laparotomy, and reduces impairment of tuboovarian function. Special consideration must be given to the patient's past history of abdominal or pelvic surgery, pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), and endometriosis. These factors will affect the choice of surgical approach. Conservative surgery is indicated for women who desire pregnancy and whose disease is responsible for their symptoms of pain or infertility. Surgery improves fertility and offers at least temporary pain relief. **Bilateral oophorectomy** might be necessary to eliminate the estrogen that sustains and stimulates the ectopic endometrium. **Hysterectomy** with **bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO)** may be indicated for patients with severe symptoms who have not responded to medical or conservative surgical treatment and who do not desire fertility (please see Laparoscopic Hysterectomy, p. 869).

Pelvic Endometriosis: A Foley catheter should be placed prior to the beginning of the procedures to allow continuous drainage of the bladder, thereby reducing the likelihood of trocar injury to the bladder. In a patient with no history of pelvic surgery, the direct trocar insertion method may be used with an intraumbilical incision because this is the anatomical area closest to the fascia and peritoneum and involves the least risk of injury to retroperitoneal structures. Once the incision is made, towel clips on either side of the umbilicus are placed, the abdominal wall is lifted up, and the trocar is placed through the skin incision. Using an intraumbilical incision and inserting the trocar at 90° facilitates access to the abdominal cavity and decreases the risk of injury to the major pelvic vessels. This technique of direct trocar insertion may not be suitable for patients who have had prior laparotomy or laparoscopy because of risk of adhesions. Another method of entry uses the Veress needle. An intraumbilical incision is made, the abdominal wall is lifted, and the Veress needle is inserted through the skin incision while connected to a high flow CO_2 insufflation. This method allows for the abdomen to be insufflated prior to trocar placement. The patient is then placed in steep Trendelenburg position. Two lateral 5-mm ports are placed about 2 cm cephalad and 2 cm medial to the anterior superior iliac spine under direct visualization, taking care to avoid the inferior epigastric vessels. A third 5-mm port is placed 2–3 cm above the pubic symphysis, again under direct visualization. The suction irrigator, a blunt laparoscopic grasper, and the bipolar cautery are placed into trocars. Filmy adhesions of the bowel or omentum to the anterior abdominal wall or uterus are lysed using CO_2 laser, bipolar cautery, monopolar scissors, or hydrodissection. Treatment of peritoneal endometriosis ranges from laser ablation of superficial peritoneal implants to excision and dissection of deeply embedded, fibrotic areas. Scarring from endometriosis that has penetrated the peritoneum to involve deeper structures destroys normal surgical planes and distorts anatomical relationships, and patients are at risk for accidental ureteral or vascular injury at the time of surgery. Identifications of ureters and blood vessels are critical prior to treatment of the pelvic sidewall disease. Although different modalities have been used, hydrodissection and high-power superpulse or ultrapulse CO_2 lasers are the best option for endometriosis treatment. Because the CO_2 laser does not penetrate water, this fluid backstop allows the surgeons to work on selected tissue with a greater safety margin.

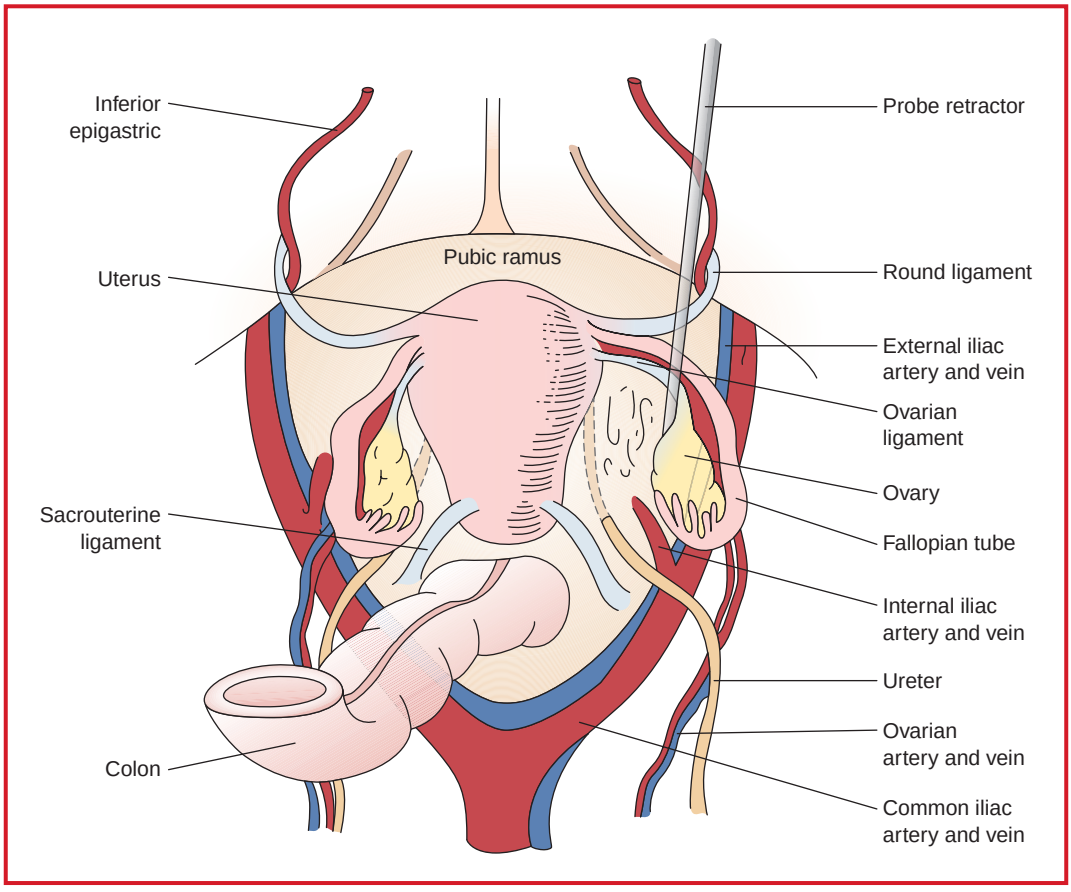


Figure 8.4-1. Laparoscopic view of the female pelvis.

Ovarian endometriosis: Type 1 endometrioma < 2 cm are resected using laser or bipolar coagulation. Larger Type I endometriomas may require excision using laparoscopic graspers and scissors., for Type II endometriomas, the procedure begins with lysis of periovarian adhesions using CO_2 laser or monopolar scissors. The ovarian cortex is evaluated, the endometrioma is identified, the cyst wall is perforated, and an irrigation device is inserted to assess the cyst contents and wall. Suspicious areas are biopsied and sent to pathology. A plane is developed between the cyst wall and ovary by grasping the wall and separating it from ovarian stroma. Difficult areas where endometriosis has embedded through the cyst wall, disrupting planes, require hydrodissection with vasopressin solution and bipolar cautery to control bleeding in the ovarian bed. In some cases, it is necessary to remove a portion of the ovary attached to the cyst wall until a plane can be found. Redundant ovarian tissue is approximated with low power laser or electrosurgery to avoid adhesions. Suturing should be avoided if possible but, if needed, can be used to close the defect.

Bladder endometriosis: If the lesions are superficial, hydrodissection and vaporization are adequate for treatment. Using hydrodissection, the areolar tissue between the serosa and muscularis beneath the implants is dissected. The lesion is circumscribed with the CO_2 laser and fluid is injected into the resulting defect. The lesion is grasped and dissected with the laser. Traction allows the small blood vessels supplying the surrounding tissue to be coagulated as the lesion is resected. Frequent irrigation is necessary to remove char, ascertain the depth of vaporization, and ensure that the lesion does not involve the muscularis or mucosa. Endometriosis extending to the muscularis but without mucosal involvement can be treated laparoscopically, and any residual or deeper lesions may be treated successfully with hormonal therapy. When endometriosis involves full bladder wall thickness, the lesion is excised and the bladder is reconstructed in one later. Cystoscopy is performed simultaneously, and bilateral ureteral stents may be inserted for ureteral identification. The lesion is excised by first holding the bladder dome near midline with laparoscopic graspers. An incision is made 5 mm beyond the lesion with the CO_2 laser. The specimen is completely excised and removed from the abdominal cavity. CO_2 is used to distend the bladder, allowing observation of its interior. After again identifying the ureters and examining the bladder mucosa, the bladder is closed with laparoscopic suturing. Cystoscopy is performed to identify any leaks; the duration of laparoscopic segmental cystotomy is about 35 min.

Patients are discharged the same day and instructed to take antibiotics while an indwelling catheter is present. The catheter is removed 7–14 days later, and a cystogram or iv contrast computed tomography scan is performed.

Appendectomy: Appendix (a common site for endometriosis) is identified, mobilized, and examined laparoscopically. If adhesions are present they are lysed using either the CO_2 laser or laparoscopic scissors. The meso-appendix is then coagulated using laparoscopic bipolar cautery and scissors or a vessel-sealing device. At this time a laparoscopic GI stapler is introduced through a 10- to 12-mm port and placed across the meso-appendix and appendix. It is extremely important to closely examine the placement of the stapler and its proximity to the rectum. After adequate placement is observed, the entire appendix and meso-appendix are stapled and cut in a single motion. The specimen is removed, and the staple line is inspected for hemostasis. Copious amounts of irrigation fluid are used to minimize bacterial contamination.

Thoracic endometriosis: Laparoscopically identified endometrial lesions on the diaphragm can be visualized and treated with hydrodissection and CO_2 laser fulguration, but this requires an experienced gynecologist and thoracic surgeon. If large lesions are visualized then video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) is the preferred method of treatment. Lesions found during VATS are treated either by bipolar diathermy, CO_2 laser, or sharp dissection.

Robotic assistance: Robotic-assisted laparoscopic surgery is relatively new to the field of gynecologic surgery. The available evidence demonstrates the feasibility and safety of robotic-assisted laparoscopic surgery in benign gynecologic disease, but further studies are needed to define the role of robotics in this field. With the advent of robotic-assisted surgery, the previously described procedures can be performed with three-dimensional visualization, improved magnification, and greater operative flexibility. The only major difference is location and sometimes size of the trocars used for the robotic arms as well as possible increased operative time. Patient positioning is not different from standard laparoscopy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Ovarian Endometriosis Procedure	Pelvic/GI/GU Endometriosis Procedures
Position	Dorsal lithotomy, legs in stirrups ± steep Trendelenburg	⇐
Incision	Intraumbilical; lateral suprapubic; or midline suprapubic	⇐
Special instrumentation	CO_2 laser or other cutting instrument; bipolar Kleppinger forceps; suction irrigator, uterine manipulator	⇐ ± Ureteral stenting, cystoscope, sigmoidoscope
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1g iv before procedure	⇐
Surgical time	45 min–3 h, depending on extent of disease	1–4 h
Closing considerations	Close fascia of all 10–12-mm ports; subcuticular closure for 5-mm trocar sites	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	Mild disease: PACU → home; otherwise, discharge on POD 1 (peritoneal disease (pain control issues)).	⇐
Mortality	0.08–0.2/1000	⇐
Morbidity	Overall complication rate: 2.5% Conversion to laparotomy: 0.42% VAE (CO_2 embolism) Peroneal nerve damage Vascular damage Bowel injury: Rare Urinary tract injury: Rare	Urinary tract injury ⇐
Pain score	4–8	4–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS		
Age range	Reproductive age	20s–40s
Incidence	10–15% of all reproductive age women/25% of all gynecologic laparotomies	1–11% of women with known endometriosis
Etiology	Numerous theories (see above).	Extensive disseminated endometriosis
Associated conditions	Infertility; pelvic pain; bladder or bowel symptoms; HTN (2° to urinary tract involvement); GI tract involvement (3–7%)	Pelvic pain; GI or GU symptoms

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laparoscopic Hysterectomy, p. 869.

Suggested Readings

1. Cho JE, Shamshirsaz AH, Nezhat C, et al.: New technologies for reproductive medicine: laparoscopy, endoscopy, robotic surgery and gynecology. A review of the literature. *Minerva Ginecol* 2010; 62(2):137–67.
2. Nezhat C, Lewis M, Kotikela S, et al: Robotic versus standard laparoscopy for the treatment of endometriosis. *Fertil Steril* 2010; 94(7):2758–60.
3. Nezhat C, Nezhat F, eds: *Nezhat's Video-Assisted and Robotic-Assisted Laparoscopy and Hysterectomy*. Cambridge University Press, New York: 2013.
4. Tinelli A, Malvasi A, Gustapane S, et al: Robotic assisted surgery in gynecology: current insights and future perspectives. *Recent Pat Biotechnol* 2011; 5(1):12–24.

LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY FOR ECTOPIC PREGNANCY OR ADNEXAL MASS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Ectopic pregnancy is defined as a pregnancy occurring outside the uterus. The majority of ectopic pregnancies occur in the fallopian tubes (95–97%); the remainder occurs in the cornua (2–4%), ovary (0.1%), cervix (0.1%), or abdomen (0.03%). Ectopic pregnancy remains a leading cause of maternal morbidity and mortality. Predisposing factors include Hx of tubal ligation or other tubal surgery, pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), IUD use, and Hx of in vitro fertilization (IVF) or other treatments for infertility. Other associations include developmental anomalies of the Müllerian system, intrauterine polyps, or myomas.

Patients present with lower quadrant pain, vaginal bleeding, and an ↑ β-hCG. Treatment options for an asymptomatic ectopic gestation include operative laparoscopy or a trial of medical management with intramuscular methotrexate. In cases where the size of the ectopic pregnancy is too large for conservative medical management (> 3.5 cm), and the patient is hemodynamically stable, operative management is essential. Hypotension or an acute abdomen in the presence of a positive β-hCG value are strongly suggestive of rupture and require expeditious surgical intervention.

Access to the abdomen is obtained in the usual fashion (e.g., through a Veress needle or direct-trocar insertion, as described in previous section). Ruptured tubal pregnancies can be treated endoscopically if the bleeding has ceased or can be controlled. Actively bleeding vessels are identified and cauterized, and forced irrigation is used to dislodge clots and trophoblastic tissue. Depending on their size, the products of conception (POCs) are removed through either a 5- or 10-mm trocar sleeve or placed into an endoscopic bag for removal; for larger POCs a minilaparotomy can be performed. Copious irrigation should follow to ensure hemostasis and identify and remove any remaining trophoblastic tissue. Trophoblast is invasive, and residual tissue may implant into bowel, bladder, peritoneum, or other abdominal structures and cause significant future morbidity.

For an unruptured ectopic pregnancy, the tube is identified and stabilized using laparoscopic forceps. To minimize bleeding, 5–7 mL of a solution of 50 U vasopressin in 100 mL NS is injected into the mesosalpinx just below the

ectopic pregnancy and over the antimesenteric surface of the tubal segment containing the gestation. Intravascular injection of vasopressin solution can precipitate acute arterial HTN, bradycardia, or even death; therefore, care must be taken to avoid intravascular injection. A linear incision is made over the thinnest portion of the tube. The pregnancy usually protrudes through the incision, and forceful irrigation will dislodge the POCs from its implantation site.

In a ruptured tubal or isthmic pregnancy, resection of the tubal segment containing the gestation is preferable to salpingostomy. **Segmental tubal resection** is performed with bipolar cautery, laser sutures, or stapling devices. Similarly, **total salpingectomy** can be performed by progressive coagulation and cutting the mesosalpinx, which is separated from the uterus using bipolar coagulation and scissors or laser. The isolated tube segment containing the ectopic pregnancy is removed intact or in sectioned parts through the 10-mm trocar sleeve. At the completion of the procedure, the abdomen is irrigated and inspected, and incisions are closed in the usual fashion.

Hydrosalpinx: A hydrosalpinx is a fluid-filled fallopian tube, which occurs after an inflammatory process (e.g., PID, tuboovarian abscess, or endometriosis) damages the serosa and mucosa of the tube. This results in occlusion at the fimbriated end and accumulation of tubular fluid. This can occur unilaterally or bilaterally. Currently, for women with hydrosalpinges who are to undergo IVF, strong consideration should be made for laparoscopic salpingectomy prior to IVF treatment. This is the most widely used method for treatment of hydrosalpinges in the group of infertile women undergoing IVF. The procedure is performed as described earlier for resection of a tubal segment.

Tuboovarian Abscess: Tuboovarian abscess (TOA) is a severe complication of pelvic inflammatory disease. PID results from an ascending infection from the vagina or cervix, which results in salpingitis. If this is not recognized early and adequately treated with antibiotics, this infection can then spread to the ovaries, resulting in unilateral or bilateral TOAs. Laparoscopic access to the abdomen is performed with an umbilical port and two lateral ports. Using a suction-irrigator and laparoscopic forceps, the entire abdominal cavity is examined for purulent material. Once the abscess is localized, it is drained with the suction-irrigator. Care is taken to lyse adhesions as needed using blunt dissection and hydrodissection. Adhesions encountered in this situation are usually filmy and can be disrupted without need for sharp dissection. Meticulous dissection of the abscess and surrounding adhesions is vital for the success of this procedure. Once the ovary is freed, a small incision is made to allow for copious irrigation. The laparoscopic forceps can be used to separate any adhesions at the fimbriated end of the fallopian tubes. The procedure is completed with copious irrigation of the abdominal cavity. In cases where the TOA is chronic, laparoscopy will show that the walls of the abscess are denser, and surrounding adhesions may cause structures to be matted together. In this case, sharp dissection may be needed, but care should be taken as planes of dissection can be difficult to define.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ectopic pregnancy; adnexal mass

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy, legs in Allen universal stirrups, steep Trendelenburg
Incision	Intraumbilical, lateral suprapubic, midline suprapubic
Special instrumentation	CO_2 laser; laparoscopic instrumentation, uterine manipulator
Unique considerations	Intraperitoneal hemorrhage and hemodynamic instability are potential risks. Patient should be cross-matched for 2 U PRBCs.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitan 1g iv before procedure
Surgical time	45 min–2 h
Closing considerations	Fascia of 10–12-mm trocar sites closed in layers. Smaller 5-mm ports closed in a subcuticular fashion.
EBL	100 mL, severe hemorrhage, if ruptured.
Postop care	The patient may be admitted overnight for observation. Quantitative β-hCG should be followed until undetectable, to r/o the possibility of retained trophoblastic tissue.
Mortality	5/1000. For any laparoscopy: 0.08–0.2/1000

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Overall complication rate: 2.5% hemorrhage and need for transfusion Conversion to laparotomy: 4.2/1000 Air embolism: Rare Unintended puncture of a viscus: Rare Puncture of a major vessel: Rare Insufflation of incorrect site: Rare
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive-age females
Incidence	1/100 pregnancies
Etiology	Distorted tubal or uterine anatomy
Associated conditions	Hx of PID; endometriosis; tubal damage; IUD; IVF

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laparoscopic Hysterectomy, p. 869.

Suggested Readings

1. Bangsgaard N, Lund CO, Ottesen B, et al.: Improved fertility following conservative surgical treatment of ectopic pregnancy. *BJOG* 2003; 110:765–70.
2. Farquar CM: Ectopic pregnancy. *Lancet* 2006; 366:583–91.
3. Murray H, Baakdah H, Bardell T, et al.: Diagnosis and treatment of ectopic pregnancy. *CMAJ* 2005; 173:905–12.
4. Nezhat C, Nezhat F, eds: *Nezhat's Video-Assisted and Robotic-Assisted Laparoscopy and Hysterectomy*. Cambridge University Press, New York: 2013.

LAPAROSCOPIC MYOMECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Uterine myomata or fibroids are the most common uterine neoplasm, affecting ~20–25% of women of reproductive age. Their growth is influenced by many factors, such as estrogen acting alone or synergistically with growth hormone and human placental lactogen in pregnancy. The severity of symptoms depends on the number, size, and location of the tumors. Symptoms may include constipation, pelvic or abdominal pressure, urinary frequency, and, most commonly, menorrhagia. Patients often present with profound anemia from menorrhagia or menometrorrhagia, the usual indications for surgery. Other indications include rapidly changing size, ureteral compression, hydroureter, or hydronephrosis. Size, number, and location are the primary factors that will determine surgical approach to myomata.

For women who have completed childbearing, a vast majority are offered a **hysterectomy**. It is associated with a high degree of patient satisfaction, but is not free from complication. Anatomic distortions from a myomatous uterus pose an increased risk of injury to surrounding structures. For women wanting to maintain their fertility, a **myomectomy** is offered. The simplest approach is a combination of **laparoscopy** and **minilaparotomy** for removal of myomas. This approach limits operative time. Three major objectives of **laparoscopic myomectomy** are minimizing blood loss, which can be severe; minimizing postop adhesion formation; and maintaining uterine-wall integrity. Preop treatment with GnRH analogues to shrink fibroids has been shown to decrease the size of the myoma and reduce the

need for transfusion. For a large myomatous uterus, in which a pure laparoscopic procedure may be tedious and difficult, a **laparoscopically-assisted myomectomy (LAM)** is an alternative. Although myomectomy may be performed to preserve fertility, postop adhesion formation often jeopardizes this goal. This can be minimized by using a single, vertical, anterior midline uterine incision.

The abdomen is entered in the usual fashion for laparoscopy (e.g., through Veress needle or direct trocar insertion, followed by insufflation and insertion of accessory trocars). To reduce blood loss in pedunculated myomas, diluted vasopressin (3–5 mL) is injected into the base of the stalk where it joins the uterine wall. IV vasopressin can cause ↑ BP, myocardial ischemia, dysrhythmias, or cardiac arrest and should be avoided. The pedicle is coagulated with the bipolar forceps and cut with CO_2 laser or scissors. For subserosal or intramural myomas, diluted vasopressin is injected between the myometrium and the myoma pseudocapsule. An incision is made on the serosa overlying the myoma using the CO_2 laser or monopolar needle. As the incision is made, the myometrium is retracted away from graspers to expose the tumor. Vessels are coagulated prior to cutting. After the myoma is removed, the myoma bed is copiously irrigated, and bleeding points are coagulated again. After closure, the serosa is irrigated. Uteroperitoneal fistulae may follow laparoscopic myomectomy because complete laparoscopic approximation of all layers of the myometrium is impossible. The use of electrocoagulation for hemostasis inside the uterine defect also may increase the risk of fistula formation.

Removal of the specimen is frequently the most challenging aspect of the operation. The myoma can be removed either by **morcellation of the specimen** or by extending the suprapubic incision. Alternatively, **posterior culdotomy** may be performed and the myoma removed via the vagina. A retractor is placed in the vagina, and the laser is used to cut along the tented vaginal mucosa. After the myoma is removed, the incision can be closed using laparoscopic suturing. **Minilaparotomy** or **culdotomy** facilitate removal but increase postop wound complication risks, such as infection or hernia formation. After myoma removal, the abdomen and pelvis are irrigated, the patient is taken out of the Trendelenburg position, and any fluid that might have tracked into the upper abdomen is suctioned. The ports are closed in the usual fashion.

Robotic assistance: Robotic-assisted laparoscopic surgery is relatively new to the field of gynecologic surgery. The available evidence demonstrates the feasibility and safety of robotic-assisted laparoscopic surgery in benign gynecologic disease, but further study is needed to define the role of robotics in this field. With the advent of robotic-assisted surgery, the previously described procedures can be performed with three-dimensional visualization, improved magnification, and greater operative flexibility. The only major difference is location and sometimes size of the trocars used for the robotic arms as well as possible increased operative time. Patient positioning is not different from standard laparoscopy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Uterine myoma, fibroids

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy; steep Trendelenburg to move bowel out of operating field
Incisions	Infraumbilical, 5 mm lateral and 5–12 mm midline suprapubic; minilaparotomy via extension of suprapubic incision or posterior culdotomy for removal of large myomata
Special instrumentation	CO_2 laser; laparoscopic instrumentation, uterine manipulator
Unique considerations	For large myomata: pretreatment with GnRH analogues (3–6 mo). Intraop injection of dilute vasopressin (1 IU in 100 mL LR) into myometrium to ↓ bleeding.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1g iv before procedure
Surgical time	1–4 h
Closing considerations	Close fascia of all 10–12-mm ports; 5-mm ports are closed in a subcuticular fashion. Fascial closure essential in minilaparotomy. Posterior culdotomy requires laparoscopic suturing or vaginal closure.
EBL	100–600 mL
Postop care	Usually PACU → Home. Occasionally 24 hr hospital stay; early ambulation; clear liquids POD 0; gradually advance diet after discharge home.
Mortality	0.08–0.2/1000

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Rates: 1.3–5.9/100 Peroneal nerve damage from positioning Severe bleeding with possible need for transfusion Uteroperitoneal fistulae Infertility GI/GU injury Air embolism
	Puncture of a major vessel Insufflation in the wrong place Need for emergent laparotomy Uterine rupture in pregnancy: 2% Adhesion formation
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Reproductive-age women; myomas shrink in postmenopausal women and are less symptomatic.
Incidence	20–25% of all women
Etiology	Benign transformation and proliferation of a single smooth-muscle cell
Associated conditions	Menorrhagia; anemia; ureteral obstruction; pelvic pain or pressure

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laparoscopic Hysterectomy, p. 869.

Suggested Readings

1. Nezhat C, Lavie O, Hsu S, et al.: Robotic-assisted laparoscopic myomectomy compared with standard laparoscopic myomectomy—a retrospective matched control study. *Fertil Steril* 2009; 91(2):556–9.
2. Nezhat C, Nezhat F, eds: *Nazhat's Video-Assisted and Robotic-Assisted Laparoscopy and Hysterectomy*. Cambridge University Press, New York: 2013.
3. Tinelli A, Malvasi A, Gustapane S, et al: Robotic assisted surgery in gynecology: current insights and future perspectives. *Recent Pat Biotechnol*, 2011; 5(1):12–24.

LAPAROSCOPIC HYSTERECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Hysterectomy** is the second most common gynecologic operation, after **cesarean section**. The indications for **hysterectomy** ± **salpingo-oophorectomy** include leiomyomata (38%); malignancy (15%); ovarian tumors (10%); abnormal bleeding (13%); adenomyosis (9%); pelvic pain or adhesions (5%); endometriosis (3%); and uterine prolapse (1%). Other less common indications include parametrial disease, pelvic infection, and complications of pregnancy and delivery. Selection of surgical approach to hysterectomy requires consideration of the patient's age, medical Hx, Hx of prior pelvic surgery, the presence or possibility of adhesions or endometriosis, uterine size, adnexal pathology, and the presence or amount of uterine prolapse.

Laparoscopic hysterectomy offers the advantages of shorter recovery time, rapid return of bowel function, less pain, and a lower wound complication rate. The disadvantages are higher cost and the surgical expertise required. The most commonly performed procedure is the **laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy** (LAVH), in which hysterectomy is begun by laparoscopy, but four or more steps are performed vaginally. Variants include **total**

laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH), in which all steps are performed laparoscopically; **subtotal laparoscopic hysterectomy** (SLH), a **supracervical hysterectomy;** and **vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy** (VALH), in which four steps are completed laparoscopically and the procedure is completed vaginally. Combinations are usually performed, depending on findings at surgery. A mechanical bowel preparation is advised. Consultation with a urologist, bowel surgeon, and oncologist are sought as necessary.

Access to the abdomen is obtained in the usual fashion (e.g., through a Veress needle or direct-trocar insertion, followed by insufflation and insertion of accessory trocars). **Diagnostic laparoscopy** is performed, adhesions lysed, and any endometriosis treated. The course of the ureters is noted through the peritoneum until they are no longer visible at the level of the cardinal ligaments. When ureters cannot be identified clearly because of severe scarring or endometriosis, they are dissected retroperitoneally, and the dissection proceeds as for a radical hysterectomy. At the cardinal ligaments, the peritoneum is opened above or below the ureter, and hydrodissection is performed to lift the peritoneum off the ureter without damaging it. Routine hysterectomy using hydrodissection to identify tissue planes and limit blood loss can be performed following identification of the ureters.

If the ovaries are to be spared, the uteroovarian ligament, proximal tube, and mesosalpinx are cauterized and cut progressively, and the posterior leaf of the broad ligament is opened with hydrodissection. The bladder is dissected free from the cervix and uterus. If bladder trauma is suspected, 5 mL of indigo carmine is injected iv (possible ↑ BP) that may help identify the site of perforation. Next, the uterine vessels are identified, noted to be free of ureter, desiccated, and cut. At the level of the cardinal ligaments, the ureters and descending branches of the uterine artery are close to one another and the cervix; therefore, cardinal ligament dissection and cautery must be precise to prevent bleeding and ureteral injury. A small uterus can be removed easily through the vagina. In benign disease, a large uterus can be morcellated and then removed segmentally through the vagina. Pneumoperitoneum will be lost during this procedure, and care must be taken to keep instruments free of bowel or other abdominal structures as this occurs.

If the procedure is to be completed entirely laparoscopically, pneumoperitoneum can be maintained by placing a glove containing two 4" × 4" sponges in the vagina. The vaginal wall is cut circumferentially, and the uterus is pulled to mid vagina, but not removed, to preserve the pneumoperitoneum. Alternatively, the uterus may be morcellated and removed through a 10-mm suprapubic port or placed in a laparoscopic specimen bag. The suprapubic incision also may be extended into a minilaparotomy incision for specimen removal. The vaginal cuff is closed transversely using laparoscopic sutures, and any coexisting cystocele or enterocele is repaired. After the uterus is removed and the vaginal cuff closed, the pelvic and abdominal cavities are reevaluated, irrigated, and cleared of blood and debris. The skin and fascia are closed in the usual fashion. **Cystoscopy** is performed at the end of the procedure to verify ureter function.

Variant procedure: In patients with severe rectovaginal and vesical endometriosis, the retroperitoneal space is entered using hydrodissection, and the external iliac vessels, hypogastric artery, and ureters are identified. In cases where extensive dissection and resultant blood loss is anticipated, coagulation or ligation of the hypogastric artery with laparoscopic clips may be performed. Endometriosis of the rectum, rectovaginal septum, and uterosacral ligaments is treated by vaporization, excision, or a combination of both. **Sigmoidoscopy** with concurrent laparoscopic visualization of the pelvis may be necessary to r/o the presence of incidental enterotomy. Cystoscopy with ureteral stenting also may be indicated to identify anatomy. (Treatment of bladder and bowel endometriosis have been described in Laparoscopic Surgery for Endometriosis, p. 862.) After the ureter is identified along its course and entry into the bladder, the uterine vessels are retracted medially and separated from the ureter using a CO_2 laser. The uterus is retracted medially and the ureter laterally as the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments are cauterized and cut with the ureter under direct visualization. After these vascular pedicles have been ligated and all endometriosis treated, the hysterectomy and specimen removal proceed as described earlier.

Robotic Assistance: With the advent of robotic-assisted surgery all of the above procedures can be performed with three-dimensional visualization, improved magnification, and greater operative flexibility. With this setup, the surgeon sits at a console, and two or three assistants are at the side of the patient. The only major difference is location and size of trocars used for the robotic arms as well as possible increased operative time. Patient positioning is not different from standard laparoscopy.

After or at the time of closure of the vaginal cuff, some gynecologic surgeons perform a culdoplasty to close the posterior cul-de-sac. This is recommended to decrease the risk of enterocele formation and the potential development of vaginal vault prolapsed. There are different types of culdoplasty. They can be done vaginally or laparoscopically. The most common vaginal culdoplasty is the McCall culdoplasty where the uterosacral-cardinal complex is plicated and attached to the peritoneal surface of the posterior cul-de-sac to elevate the posterior vaginal cuff. After the uterus is removed, the patient is placed in dorsal lithotomy position to allow for vaginal access. Before closure of the cuff, an absorbable suture is placed through the full thickness of the posterior vaginal wall from outside to in, then passed through the left uterosacral ligament pedicle, the posterior peritoneum, the right uterosacral ligament pedicle, and

back through the full thickness of the posterior vaginal cuff from inside out. The two ends of the suture are then tied, which brings the uterosacral ligaments together and this procedure is called Moskowitz culdoplasty. After the vaginal cuff is closed, a separate absorbable suture is closed the posterior cul-de-sac. Suture is passed through one of the uterosacral ligaments, through the posterior peritoneum, through the other uterosacral ligament, and then through another portion of the posterior peritoneum and tied to form a purse string. Another type of laparoscopic culdoplasty is the **Halban's culdoplasty**. After the vaginal cuff is closed, interrupted suture are placed vertically across the posterior cul-de-sac starting with the posterior peritoneum over the rectum and taking small portions of the peritoneum up to and including the vaginal cuff apex. Usually three to four interrupted sutures are used. The most common complications of culdoplasty are injury to the ureter. Because of the suturing of the uterosacral ligaments, which are very close to the ureters, the ureters are at risk for being obstructed by the culdoplasty stitch. Indigo carmine should be given intravenously prior to the procedure to help better identify the ureter. Cystoscopy should also be performed after the culdoplasty to ensure ureteral patency. Another complication, although uncommon, is rectal injury. The rectum is directly under the posterior peritoneum and can occasionally get sutured into the culdoplasty. If this is suspected, then proctoscopy should be performed to evaluate the rectum.

Usual preop diagnosis: Leiomyomata; malignancy; ovarian tumors; abnormal bleeding; adenomyosis; pelvic pain or adhesions; endometriosis; uterine prolapse; parametrial disease; pelvic infection; complications of pregnancy and delivery

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy; legs in stirrups; steep Trendelenburg
Incisions	Ports: Intraumbilical; midline suprapubic (5 or 10 mm); lateral lower quadrant
Special instrumentation	CO_2 laser; laparoscopic instruments, uterine manipulator
Unique considerations	Extensive ureterolysis and treatment of endometriosis may require addition of cystoscopy, ureteral stent placement, and/or sigmoidoscopy.
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1g iv before procedure
Surgical time	2–6 h. Operative time is increased in cases of extensive adhesiolysis or endometriosis.
Closing considerations	Close fascia of all 10–12-mm ports; 5-mm trocar sites closed in a subcuticular fashion. Minilaparotomy closure if needed.
EBL	100–800 mL, depending on anatomy and difficulty of dissection
Postop care	PACU → Home. May need 24 h observation.
Mortality	0.08–0.2/1000
Morbidity	Overall complication rate: 2.5% Conversion to laparotomy: 4.2/1000 Air embolism: Rare Peroneal nerve damage from positioning: Rare Unintended puncture of a viscus: Rare Puncture of a major vessel: Rare Insufflation of incorrect site: Rare Urinary and ureteral trauma, including fistulae: 1.6%
Pain score	4–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30s–90s
Incidence	20% of women < 40 yr; 37% of women < age 65
Etiology	See Associated Conditions.
Associated conditions	Myomata; abnormal uterine bleeding; adenomyosis; malignancy; pelvic pain; endometriosis

Suggested Readings

1. Nezhat CR, et al: When will video-assisted and robotic-assisted endoscopy replace almost all open surgeries? *Minim Invasive Gynecol* 2012; 19:238–43.
2. Nezhat C, Nezhat F, eds: *Nezhat's Video-Assisted and Robotic-Assisted Laparoscopy and Hysterectomy*. Cambridge University Press, New York: 2013.

LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY FOR VAGINAL VAULT SUSPENSION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pelvic organ prolapse (POP) is a more common finding in older women. There are both nonsurgical and surgical approaches to treatment. The nonsurgical options include pessaries and pelvic floor training and are often used for women who are not surgical candidates or who would rather not undergo surgery. A surgical approach to treating POP is more definitive and can be performed abdominally, vaginally, laparoscopically, or robotically. When being performed laparoscopically or robotically, the patient benefits from a shorter hospital stay, less postop pain, and faster recovery. **Sacrocolpopexy** is considered the surgical standard for treatment of POP. This procedure aims to provide apical support for defects in the cardinal-uterosacral ligament complex. This procedure is not without unique complications. They include mesh and suture erosion, dyspareunia, and alterations to bowel or bladder function.

The abdomen is entered in the usual fashion for laparoscopy through a Veress needle or direct trocar insertion followed by insufflations and insertion of accessory trocars. If the patient has not had a hysterectomy, a hysterectomy is performed as described in the previous section. The bowel is removed from the pelvis for visualization. There are two main areas of dissection, pelvic and presacral. Using hydrodissection, laparoscopic graspers, and a cutting device (CO_2 laser or laparoscopic scissors) the bladder is mobilized and dissected away from the anterior surface of the vagina. In a similar fashion, the rectum is dissected and mobilized away from the posterior surface of the vagina. It is important in this dissection to identify tissue planes and avascular spaces. Vasopressin injection may be used during the dissection to control bleeding and allow for better visualization. The dissections may go as far down as the bladder neck anteriorly and the perineal body posteriorly. Attention is then turned to the presacral area. The peritoneum over the sacrum is tented up with laparoscopic graspers and incised. Oftentimes, hydrodissection in this area is beneficial for identification of the correct tissue planes. The dissection is carried down to and through the presacral adipose to the level of the anterior longitudinal ligament. Particular attention must be taken to avoid injury to the middle sacral vessels, the right ureter, and sigmoid colon. At this time the peritoneum between the presacral dissection and the posterior vaginal dissection is opened. This will be closed later over mesh, making it retroperitoneal. A "Y" shaped mesh is inserted through a trocar into the abdomen. The mesh is then secured to the posterior and anterior side of the vagina, taking full thickness bites and using laparoscopic suturing technique. The tail of the mesh is then secured to the anterior longitudinal ligament in a similar fashion, suspending the vaginal apex. The peritoneum is then closed over the mesh to help prevent bowel adhesions. The pelvis is then irrigated and hemostasis confirmed. The ports are closed in the usual fashion. If a concurrent **hysterectomy** was performed, a **cystoscopy** is done at the end of the procedure to ensure that the ureters are patent.

Variant Procedure: The vaginal posterior and anterior dissection, as well as the type of graft material used for the suspension, are the two main areas that may vary during this procedure. Both of these factors are highly dependent on the surgeon.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Dorsal lithotomy, legs in stirrups, steep Trendelenburg
Incisions	Ports: intraumbilical, lateral lower quadrants, midline suprapubic
Special instruments	CO_2 laser or other cutting instrument, bipolar Kleppinger forceps, suction irrigator, uterine manipulator

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Unique considerations	Depending on the amount of dissection, cystoscopy, ureteral stent placement, and sigmoidoscopy may be needed
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 1 g iv before procedure
Surgical time	2–6 h
Closing considerations	Close fascia of all 10–12-mm ports, subcuticular closure for 5-mm trocar sites
EBL	100–800 mL
Postop care	PACU → home, may need 24 h observations
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Ureter injury or occlusion
	Vascular injury
	Viscus perforation
	Insufflations of incorrect site
	Adhesions
Pain score	4–9
Patient Population Characteristics	
Age range	30–90s
Incidence	20% of women > 40 yo; 37% of women > 65 yo
Etiology	See associated conditions
Associated conditions	Cystocele, rectocele, enterocele

Suggested Reading

1. Nezhat C, Nezhat F, eds: *Nezhat's Video-Assisted and Robotic-Assisted-Laparoscopy and Hysterectomy*. Cambridge University Press, New York: 2013.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: laparoscopic surgery for endometriosis, ectopic pregnancy, myomectomy, hysterectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory	There can be intraop respiratory compromise from ↑ intraabdominal pressure 2° CO_2 insufflation; however, patients without significant respiratory disease tolerate the insufflation quite well. Look for diaphragmatic hernia, advanced pulmonary disease, which → ↑ risk of laparoscopic approach. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Insufflation of the abdomen (typically with pressures of 14–22 mm Hg) → ↑ SVR and ↓ venous return. ↑ $PaCO_2$ → ↑ dysrhythmias. These are usually well tolerated in the otherwise healthy patient. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Gastrointestinal	Consider dehydration if patient had mechanical bowel prep. Consider NPO status for emergent ectopic pregnancy patients. High BMI complicates steep Trendelenburg positioning during laparoscopic pelvic surgery. Prior pelvic and abdominal surgery and intraabdominal disease including endometriosis and pelvic inflammatory disease → will ↑ complicate laparoscopic surgery and my force conversion to open procedure. Large The combination of ↑ intraabdominal pressure + Trendelenburg position → ↑ aspiration risk. **Test:** Electrolytes
Hematologic	These patients often are having surgery for abnormal uterine bleeding → consider anemia, which may be severe. **Tests:** Hgb/Hct; consider T&S/T&C, especially if patient anemic preop.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Consider midazolam 1–2 mg iv

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique:GETA

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Rapid sequence induction (see p. B-5) usually is indicated for patients with an ectopic pregnancy. OGT/NGT to decompress stomach prior to laparoscopic trocar insertion.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation helpful for initial trocar insertions and may be helpful throughout procedure.	
Emergence	Standard emergence	
Blood and fluid requirements	Usually minimal blood loss though may be significant during some procedures. Discuss with surgeon ahead of time. IV: NS/LR @ 2–6 mL/kg/h	Consider preop hypovolemia if mechanical bowel prep used and in setting of acute bleeding (ectopic pregnancy w rupture). Establish iv access accordingly. During surgery, large volumes of fluid are sometimes given intraabdominally for irrigation and hydrodissection → fluid overload; therefore, carefully account for all fluids, and titrate iv fluids to maintain euvolemia.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Foley catheter	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Sciatic and femoral nerve injuries may occur in the lithotomy position. Check to minimize hip abduction and external rotation. Carefully pad and secure knees and heels. Watch hands and fingers carefully when arms tucked at patient's side.
Complications	Abdominal access injuries	Most complications occur during abdominal access. These include injuries to major and minor vessels and may lead to catastrophic and even fatal bleeding. Bowel and bladder injuries may occur and may go undiagnosed until postop period.
	Pneumoperitoneum effects	Effects may include subcutaneous emphysema, mediastinal emphysema, pneumothorax, shoulder pain, CO_2 retention, air embolism following venous injury, and dysrhythmias. Physiologic changes induced by pneumoperitoneum including ↑ HR, MAP, PVR, and SVR and ↓ VC, venous return, preload, and CO may be poorly tolerated in patients with advance pulmonary and/or cardiac disease.

Complications (cont'd)	Bradydysrhythmias	May be profound. Halt surgery, consider deflate pneumoperitoneum, and treat with atropine (0.5 mg) or glycopyrolate (0.2–0.4 mg) if persistent or severe.
	Abdominal wall hematoma Nerve injury Hypothermia	See positioning.
	Neuropathies	These can be long cases, with the patient in lithotomy position. Make sure the pressure points are padded well and, if the arms are out, relieve stress on the brachial plexus.
	Fluid overload	✓ fluid volume entering and exiting the abdomen. Fluid absorption → fluid overload → CHF, edema.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV VTE Hypothermia	↑↑ Risk for PONV. See p. B-6. See p. B-8.
Pain management	Consider ketorolac 15–30 mg and LA into surgical wounds	Patients may complain of shoulder pain due to diaphragmatic irritation.

Suggested Readings

1. Gerges FJ, Kanazi GE, Jabbour-Kohoury SI: Anesthesia for laparoscopy–a review. *J Clin Anesth* 2006; 18(1): 67–78.
2. Goulson DT: Anesthesia for outpatient gynecologic surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20(3):195–200.
3. Hayden, P, Cowman, S: Anaesthesia for laparoscopic surgery. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care & Pain* 2011; 11(5):177–180.

SECTION

9.0 UROLOGY

SURGEONS

Harcharan S. Gill, MD
Benjamin I. Chung, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Ronald G. Pearl, MD, PhD

DIAGNOSTIC TRANSURETHRAL (ENDOSCOPIC) PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Many urologic diseases are diagnosed and evaluated endoscopically through the urethra with the use of specialized instruments, such as cystoscopes and resectoscopes. With the patient in a lithotomy position, the cystoscope is introduced into the urethra and advanced under direct vision all the way into the bladder (Figs. 9-1 and 9-2), allowing inspection of the urethra (**urethroscopy**) and bladder (**cystoscopy**). If pathology is noted, a biopsy can be obtained easily through the cystoscope. It is also possible to introduce a small catheter into the ureteral orifice and advance it up to the kidney for radiologic evaluation (**retrograde pyelography**) to collect a urine specimen or to bypass areas of obstruction. If the upper urinary tract needs to be visualized, a ureteroscope is introduced through the urethra into the bladder and through the ureteral orifice into the ureter and advanced up to the kidney, allowing inspection of the ureter (**ureteroscopy**) and intrarenal collecting system (**nephroscopy**). These procedures often precede a major surgical operation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Hematuria; hydronephrosis; benign prostatic hypertrophy; cancer of the urethra, prostate, bladder, ureter, and renal pelvis; urinary tract stones; strictures; ureteropelvic junction obstruction; hemorrhagic or interstitial cystitis

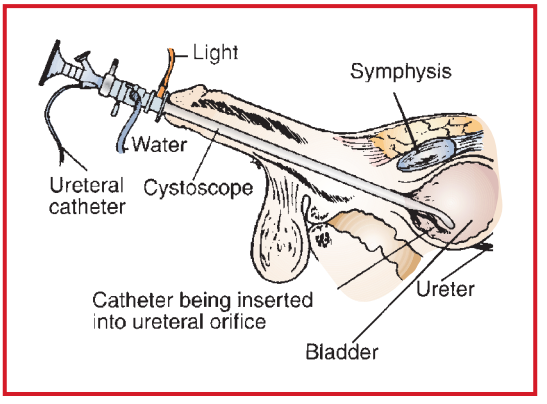


Figure 9-1. Cystoscope introduced into bladder via urethra (male anatomy). (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Textbook of Surgery.* JB Lippincott: 1988.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Urethroscopy/Cystoscopy	Ureteroscopy/Nephroscopy
Position	Lithotomy	⇐
Incision	None	⇐
Special instrumentation	Cystoscope	Ureteroscope
Unique considerations	Use of x-ray and fluoroscopy	⇐
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg iv	⇐
Surgical time	15 min	45 min
EBL	None	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Urethroscopy/Cystoscopy	Ureteroscopy/Nephroscopy
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: 5%	⇐ Ureteral perforation: < 5%
Pain score	1	1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐
Incidence	30% of all urologic procedures	⇐
Etiology	Hematuria Urethral and bladder tumors Stones Urethral strictures	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Ureteropelvic junction obstruction
Associated conditions	Prostatic hypertrophy Cystitis	Hydronephrosis ⇐

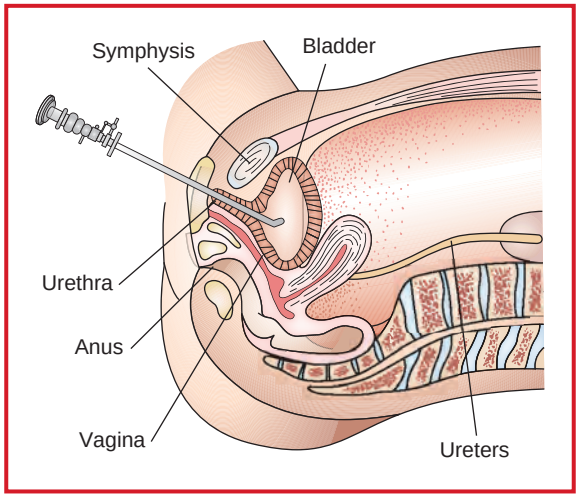


Figure 9-2. Cystoscope introduced into bladder (female anatomy). (Reproduced with permission from Govan DE: *Roche Manual of Urologic Procedures.* Hoffmann-LaRoche: 1976.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Therapeutic Transurethral Procedures (Except TURP), p. 881.

THERAPEUTIC TRANSURETHRAL PROCEDURES (EXCEPT TURP)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Therapeutic transurethral procedures, the most common urologic operations, require the use of specialized instruments, such as cystoscopes and resectoscopes. Because of continuously improving instrumentation and fiberoptics, the range and complexity of these operations are widening, and more operations are being done transurethrally now than ever before. These operations are **transurethral resection (TUR)** of any urethral, prostatic, or bladder pathology; **fulguration** of bleeding vessels; **instillation of chemicals,** such as oxychlorosene (Chlorpactin) and formalin, into the bladder; **extraction** of stones; and **incision and dilation** of strictures.

With the patient in the lithotomy position, the cystoscope or resectoscope is introduced into the urethra and advanced under direct vision into the bladder, allowing inspection of the urethra and bladder (Figs. 9-1 and 9-2). The pathology is identified. If it is a tumor, it is resected piecemeal with the electrode of the resectoscope, using the cutting current and cauterizing the base of the tumor with the coagulating current. If the pathology is a stone, it is extracted with special forceps or a stone basket. Large stones have to be fragmented, prior to extraction, with a mechanical lithotrite, electrohydraulic probe, ultrasound lithotrite, or laser (holmium or pulsed dye). Chemicals can be instilled through the cystoscope to control interstitial and hemorrhagic cystitis. Bleeding vessels can be coagulated with the electrode. Strictures of the urethra can be dilated or incised with an endoscopic knife. Strictures of the ureter also can be treated endoscopically by dilatation with a balloon catheter or by incision with electrocautery. Balloon catheters with attached cutting electro-wires (Acucise) often are used. A temporary ureteral stent is placed at the end of most endoscopic ureteral surgeries.

Variant procedure or approaches: Occasionally, access to the intrarenal collecting system (renal pelvis and calyces) and upper ureter is easier and more appropriately done by a **percutaneous nephrostomy** than by a transurethral procedure. The patient is placed in a prone or flank position, a percutaneous stab wound is made at the costovertebral angle, and a tube is introduced into the kidney under fluoroscopic control.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tumors of the urinary tract; stones; interstitial or hemorrhagic cystitis; strictures

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Transurethral	Percutaneous
Position	Lithotomy	Flank or prone
Incision	None	Stab wound
Special instrumentation	Cystoscope; resectoscope; catheters; stents	Percutaneous nephrostomy kit; nephroscope; urethroscope; catheters; stents
Unique considerations	Use of x-rays, fluoroscopy, and electrocautery	⇐
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg iv, slowly	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	2–3 h
EBL	100 mL	500 mL
Postop care	Irrigation of tubes and catheters to clear clots and prevent obstruction	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding: 10% Infection: 5% Perforation: 2% Retained stones: 2%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	1	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS		
Age range	All ages	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐
Incidence	10% of urologic diseases involve these procedures	⇐
Etiology	Urethral and bladder tumors; bladder and ureteral stones; interstitial cystitis; hemorrhagic cystitis; urethral stricture	Kidney stones; upper ureteral stones; ureteropelvic junction obstruction

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR TRANSURETHRAL PROCEDURES (EXCEPT TURP)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients of all ages may present for ureteral stone extraction. Paraplegics and quadriplegics have a predilection for nephrolithiasis and may present for repeated cystoscopies. Bladder tumors usually are seen in older patients, who may present for cystoscopy or TUR. These patients may have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular diseases, COPD, and/or renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions prior to anesthesia.

Neurological	Paraplegics and quadriplegics may present for repeated cystoscopies and stone extractions. Note Hx of autonomic hyperreflexia; Sx may include flushing, headache, and nasal stuffiness, associated with voiding or noxious stimuli below the level of spinal cord injury (see below).
Musculoskeletal	Contractures and pressure sores may make positioning difficult in paraplegics or quadriplegics.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation prn anxiety (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h before surgery; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal, continuous lumbar epidural, and GA are acceptable, with the choice dependent on type and length of procedure, age, coexisting disease, and patient preference. Simpler transurethral procedures (e.g., cystoscopy) are amenable to topical anesthesia, whereas longer and more complex procedures (e.g., ureteral stone extraction) will require regional or GA (see discussion below regarding autonomic hyperreflexia). Note that many of these procedures are done on an outpatient basis, and the anesthetic should be planned accordingly. For regional anesthesia, a sacral block is required for urethral procedures (T9–T10 level for procedures involving the bladder and as high as T8 for procedures involving the ureters).

Regional anesthesia:

Topical	2% lidocaine jelly
Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–12 mg. For shorter procedures (< 1 h), consider low-dose bupivacaine (0.75%, 7.5 mg); mepivacaine (1.5%, 45 mg); or procaine (10%, 100–150 mg). Lidocaine may be used, but the incidence of transient neurologic symptoms may be as high as 30% for procedures performed in the lithotomy position.
Lumbar epidural	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–25 mL; supplement with 5–10 mL boluses as needed. Supplemental iv sedation.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). ET intubation may not be necessary for shorter procedures; consider LMA. Succinylcholine should be avoided in paralyzed (e.g., paraplegic, quadriplegic) patients 2° ↑ K^+ → VF or asystole.	
Maintenance	Pure inhalation anesthetic (e.g., N_2O, sevoflurane/desflurane) for short cases. IV technique (e.g., propofol 100–200 mcg/kg/min; supplement with N_2O ± volatile anesthetic ± remifentanil. Muscle relaxation is not essential. Long-acting narcotics unnecessary because postop pain is usually minimal.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Usually minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	* **NB:** In lithotomy position, peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Anticipate ↓ BP upon returning from lithotomy position. Autonomic hyperreflexia (**AH**): • Severe HTN • Bradycardia • Dysrhythmias • Cardiac arrest	Rx: volume (200–500 mL NS/LR) or ephedrine (5 mg iv) may be necessary. Patients with spinal cord injury level above T10 are at risk for autonomic hyperreflexia (**AH**) associated with stimulation below the level of transection. Transection levels below T5 may be associated with less severe manifestations. AH can be prevented by GA, spinal, or epidural anesthesia. If AH occurs intraop, it should be treated by deepening the level of anesthesia, and iv antihypertensive agents (e.g., SNP 0.5–5 mcg/kg/min; labetalol 5–10 mg iv; phentolamine 2–5 mg iv), if necessary.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury 2° lithotomy position Fever/bacteremia Bladder perforation	Peroneal nerve injury manifested as foot drop with loss of sensation over dorsum of foot. Seek neurology consultation. Bladder perforation may present as shoulder pain in the awake patient but may go unnoticed in a patient under GA. Sx include unexplained HTN, tachycardia, ↓ BP (rare).
Pain management	Pain usually mild	Rx: morphine 2–4 mg iv q 10–15 min prn, fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv, ketorolac 15–30 mg im or iv

Suggested Readings

1. Gunduz H, Binak DF: Autonomic dysreflexia: an important cardiovascular complication in spinal cord injury patients. *Cardiol J* 2012; 19(2):215–9.
2. Hambly PR, Martin B: Anesthesia for chronic spinal cord lesions. *Anesthesia* 1998; 53:273–89.

TRANSURETHRAL RESECTION OF THE PROSTATE (TURP)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **TURP** is one of the most common urologic operations, performed to relieve bladder outlet obstruction by an enlarging prostate gland. It is often preceded by **cystoscopy,** which is used to evaluate the size of the prostate gland and to rule out any other pathology, such as bladder tumor or stone. The operation is performed with the resectoscope, a specialized instrument having an electrode capable of transmitting both cutting and coagulating currents. Resectoscopes are either single inflow only or continuous flow with an inflow and outflow system. The latter allows the surgeon to maintain low pressure in the bladder and prostatic fossa and thus limit fluid absorption. Two different electrical options are available. The traditional resectoscope is a monopolar system, and this requires a grounding pad and possible interference with electric devices, such as pacemakers. Bipolar resectoscopes have both the active and return electrode fitted in the resectoscope and do not cause any electrical interference with cardiac electrical devices. In addition, the use of bipolar cautery allows saline to be used as an irrigant during surgery.

The resectoscope is introduced into the bladder (Fig. 9-3), and the tissue protruding into the prostatic urethra is resected in small pieces called "chips." Bleeding vessels are coagulated with the coagulating current. The resection is performed with continuous irrigation using an isotonic solution, such as sorbitol 2.7% with mannitol 0.54% in monopolar resectoscopes and normal saline in bipolar resectoscopes. After the obstructing prostatic tissues are completely resected and bleeding vessels coagulated, the chips are irrigated from the bladder and the resectoscope is removed. An indwelling Foley catheter is introduced into the bladder. The time of transurethral resection should not exceed 2 h because excessive absorption of the irrigating fluid may → dilutional hyponatremia, confusion, seizures, and heart failure. However, this is less of an issue with a continuous flow bipolar resectoscope where saline is used as an irrigant. Although fluid absorption can occur, hyponatremia does not occur with the use of saline. The size of the enlarged prostate or adenoma, therefore, needs to be carefully assessed preop to determine if it is possible to complete the resection within 2 h. If not, an **open prostatectomy** is performed. This variant approach is discussed under Open Prostate Operations, p. 887.

Variant procedure or approaches: A number of techniques have been developed to avoid the morbidity of TURP. These are either **vaporization** (electrocautery or laser) or **thermocoagulation** of the prostate (laser, microwave, radiofrequency). The following techniques are available and approved:

TUVP: Transurethral vaporization of the prostate with a standard resectoscope using a roller ball electrode at 275–300 watts setting.

Laser Ablation: Laser coagulation of the prostate is done with Nd:YAG or Ho:YAG laser through a standard cystoscope. This procedure has been largely replaced by laser ablation with the KTP laser (PVP, green light laser) or diode laser. This wavelength allows vaporization of the prostate tissue with minimal blood loss. This is currently the most popular minimally invasive technique used for treatment of BPH. It can also be done on patients while on anticoagulation or with bleeding disorders. All personnel in the OR, including the patient, must wear protective glasses to protect the eyes from inadvertent exposure from a break in the laser fiber.

TUNA: Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate is done with a special disposable device connected to a radiofrequency generator.

TUMT: Transurethral microwave thermotherapy is done with a catheter that has a microwave antenna attached to it. A microwave generator is needed for this procedure.

All of the above have several advantages over TURP, including shorter surgical time, no blood loss, and reduced risk of fluid absorption and all can be done as outpatient procedures.

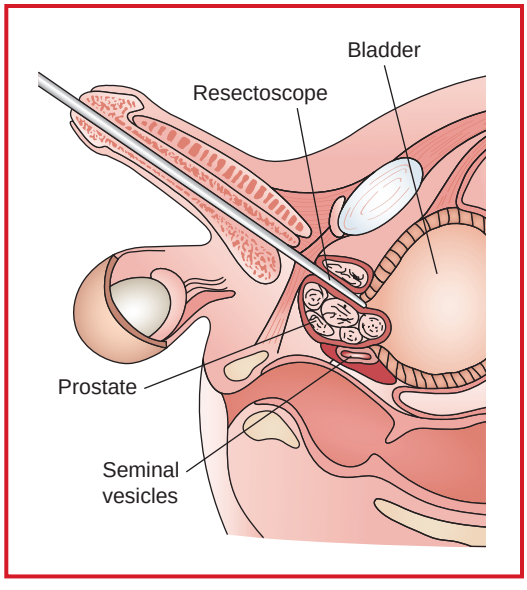


Figure 9-3. Transurethral resection of prostate using a resectoscope. (Reproduced with permission from Govan DE: *Roche Manual of Urologic Procedures.* Hoffmann-LaRoche: 1976.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Benign prostatic hypertrophy; prostate cancer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	TURP	Thermotherapy
Position	Lithotomy	⇐
Incision	None	⇐
Special instrumentation	Cystoscope; resectoscope; catheters; electrocautery	Cystoscope; resectoscope; catheters; electrocautery (standby); laser equipment
Unique considerations	During resection, the patient should be absolutely still because any movement may lead to perforation or injury to the external sphincter, → postop incontinence.	During laser resection, the patient and all personnel should wear protective eyeglasses.
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg iv, slowly	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h (not to exceed 2 h)	1 h
EBL	500 mL	None
Postop care	Irrigation of the Foley catheter to clear it of clots and keep it from being blocked. Determination of serum Na^+	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Significant intraop bleeding: 10% intraop perforation and fluid extravasation, which may require placement of retropubic drain: < 0.5% Postop bleeding, which may necessitate a return to OR for fulguration of bleeding vessels: < 5% Absorption of irrigating fluid, which may → dilutional hyponatremia, mental confusion, and heart failure: 2–5%	Prolonged catheterization: 10% Postop bleeding: 1%
Pain score	1	1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	49–90 yr; typically, 70s and 80s
Incidence	Very common; 90% of men will develop benign hypertrophy; 20% may need surgical intervention.
Etiology	Aging; benign prostatic hypertrophy; prostate cancer
Associated conditions	COPD (10%); heart disease (10%); HTN (10%); diabetes mellitus (DM) (5%); DIC (1–2% of patients with prostate cancer may also have a low-grade, subclinical DIC, which becomes clinically manifest postop).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for prostate surgery are generally elderly and may have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular disease, COPD, and renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions before anesthesia.

Respiratory	COPD common in this age group. Patients with > 50 pack-year smoking Hx, or with any respiratory Sx, may need PFTs. For dyspnea with moderate exercise, ✓ VC, FEV_1, MMEF. If VC < 80%, FEV_1 < 60%, or MMEF < 40% predicted, ✓ ABG. If ABG and PFT markedly abnormal, consider postponing surgery until patient's respiratory condition has been optimized. **Tests:** PFT; CXR; ABG, as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	HTN, CAD common in this age group. Assess exercise tolerance by H&P (e.g., should be able to climb a flight of stairs without difficulty or SOB). **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	Cerebrovascular disease, Alzheimer's, and other neurologic problems may be present in this age group. Assess mental status to guide evaluation of any intraop or postop changes.
Renal	Anticipate renal impairment 2° chronic obstruction. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes. If ↑ BUN and ↑ Cr, ✓ creatinine clearance (nl = 95–140 mL/min).
Musculoskeletal	Various arthritides in this age group may cause problems with positioning for regional anesthesia and surgery.
Endocrine	Increased incidence of DM
Hematologic	Moderate blood loss expected with larger glands. If gland < 80 g, no T&C necessary. **Test:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Continue commonly used drugs (e.g., digitalis, β-blockers, NTG) to prevent cardiovascular problems. Sedation prn anxiety (e.g., midazolam 1–2 mg iv before surgery).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional or GA. Choice of technique depends on the coexisting disease and the patient's preference. Regional anesthesia may hold some advantage over GA for TURP in that it allows evaluation of mental status and, thus, earlier detection of TURP syndrome. The incidence of postdural puncture headache is very low in this age group (< 1%). A T9 level is optimal. Continuous lumbar epidural anesthesia has no advantage over spinal anesthesia for TURP, because a sacral block may be less reliable, the procedure is relatively short and supplemental doses are usually not necessary.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine, 12 mg in 7.5% dextrose solution (1.6 mL)

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation is not mandatory, although patient movement during the procedure must be avoided.	
Emergence	Postop pain is usually not significant. Anticipate ↓ BP when legs are repositioned from lithotomy. Avoid stress on lumbar spine by slowly and simultaneously bringing legs together and returning to supine position.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss (TURP) Minimal blood loss (thermotherapy)	Blood loss can be large (TURP) if venous sinuses are entered; it also can be difficult to quantify because of irrigant. To flush away blood and tissue and to promote

Blood and fluid requirements (cont'd)	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	visibility during TURP (or thermotherapy), continuous irrigation is used. For monopolar procedures, irrigating fluid must be nonelectrolytic to prevent dispersion of current but near iso-osmotic to prevent hemolysis. For these reasons, sorbitol (2.7%) with mannitol (0.54%) or glycine (1.5%) is added to distilled water to produce solutions that are nearly isotonic.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Regional anesthesia allows monitoring of mental status. Invasive monitoring, if indicated from H&P.
TURP syndrome	Intravascular volume overload Hyponatremia Hypotonicity 2° absorption of irrigant Symptoms include • N/V • Visual disturbances • Mental status changes • Coma • Sz • HTN • Angina • Cardiovascular collapse	Factors that influence the absorption of irrigant include surgical technique (TURP or thermotherapy); hydrostatic pressure of irrigant (height of bag); number of venous sinuses opened; peripheral venous pressure; duration of surgery; and experience of the surgeon. Resections should optimally be limited to 1 h or less. Some CNS manifestations (e.g., visual disturbances, nausea, confusion) are 2° glycine and its metabolites. Rx may include observation, diuresis (e.g., furosemide 5–20 mg iv), and administration of hypertonic saline (e.g., 100 mL of 3% saline over 1–2 h). Serum sodium < 120 is associated with more severe symptoms, and the goal of therapy is to restore sodium to > 120. In milder cases, observation and water restriction may be sufficient.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	***NB:** In lithotomy position, peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Bladder perforation TURP syndrome	Bladder perforation may produce shoulder pain in the awake patient. Bladder perforation (and TURP syndrome) may go unnoticed under GA; Sx: ↑ BP, ↑ HR (occasionally ↓ BP).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	TURP syndrome Bladder perforation Fever/bacteremia/sepsis Hypothermia	See discussion of TURP syndrome, above.
Pain management	Minimal postop pain	Rx: Morphine 1–4 mg iv prn until comfortable.
Tests	Hct; electrolytes Blood cultures if febrile	Consider serum osmolarity, CXR, ECG in TURP syndrome

Suggested Readings

1. Hawary A, Mukhtar K, Sinclair A, Pearce I: Transurethral resection of the prostate syndrome: almost gone but not forgotten. *J Endourol* 2009; 23(12):2013–20.
2. Kavanagh LE, Jack GS, Lawrentschuk N: Medscape: prevention and management of TURP-related hemorrhage. *Nat Rev Urol* 2011; 8(9):504–14.
3. Smith RD, Patel A: Transurethral resection of the prostate revisited and updated. *Curr Opin Urol* 2011; 21(1):36–41.
4. Teng J, Zhang D, Li Y, et al: Photoselective vaporization with the green light laser vs transurethral resection of the prostate for treating benign prostate hyperplasia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BJU Int* 2013; 111(2):312–23.
5. van Rij S, Gilling PJ: In 2013, holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP) may be the new 'gold standard'. *Curr Urol Rep* 2012; 13(6):427–32.
6. Wang J, Zhang C, Tan G, Chen Q, Yang B, Tan D: Risk of bleeding complications after preoperative antiplatelet withdrawal versus continuing antiplatelet drugs during transurethral resection of the prostate and prostate puncture biopsy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Urol Int* 2012; 89(4):433–8.

OPEN PROSTATE OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Open (in contrast to transurethral or endoscopic) operations on the prostate gland are common. They include **simple prostatectomy and radical prostatectomy** and are done through either a midline extraperitoneal incision, which extends from the umbilicus to the symphysis pubis, or through a Pfannenstiel's incision (Fig. 9-4, inset).

Simple prostatectomy: When the benign prostatic hypertrophy or adenoma is too large to be resected transurethrally, it is removed by a simple prostatectomy. The prostate gland is exposed through a retropubic approach (Fig. 9-4A), and the anterior capsule is incised, exposing the adenoma—the central part of the prostate, which is excised, "shelled" out by blunt dissection (Fig. 9-4B), leaving behind the peripheral prostate and all the associated structures. A Foley catheter is left indwelling in the urethra, and the incision in the prostate capsule is closed. In a **suprapubic prostatectomy,** the incision is made in the bladder and the adenoma shelled from within the bladder.

Radical prostatectomy: The term **radical prostatectomy** is used because the entire prostate, both seminal vesicles and pelvic nodes, are removed. It is used to differentiate this cancer operation from a simple prostatectomy (used for benign prostatic hypertrophy). Radical prostatectomy can be achieved through a **retropubic approach**. In radical prostatectomy, all of the prostate gland is removed, together with the bladder neck, the seminal vesicles, and the ampullae of the vas deferens. A **limited pelvic lymphadenectomy** (Fig. 9-5) also is performed. After the prostate gland and its associated structures are removed, the bladder neck is reduced to 1 cm diameter and anastomosed to the membranous urethra over an indwelling Foley catheter. Most of the blood loss occurs during control of the dorsal vein complex. In early-stage cancers, which nowadays comprise 90% of patients, a nerve sparing procedure is done. This involves preserving potency by preserving the nerves to the corpora cavernosa. More recently, radical

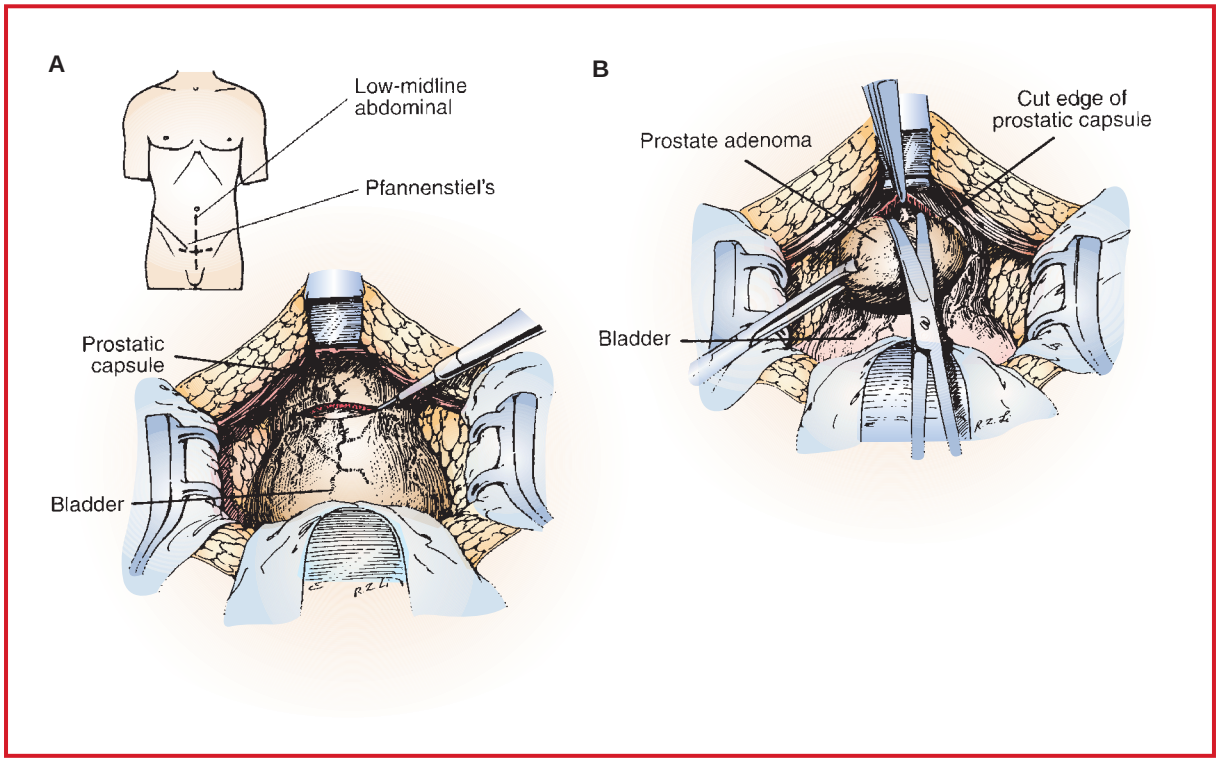


Figure 9.4. Retropubic prostatectomy: **A:** A transverse capsulotomy is made between heavy hemostatic stay sutures. **B:** The cleavage plane between the adenoma and the surgical capsule is developed with scissors. (Reproduced with permission from Fowler JE: *Urologic Surgery.* Little & Brown: 1990.)

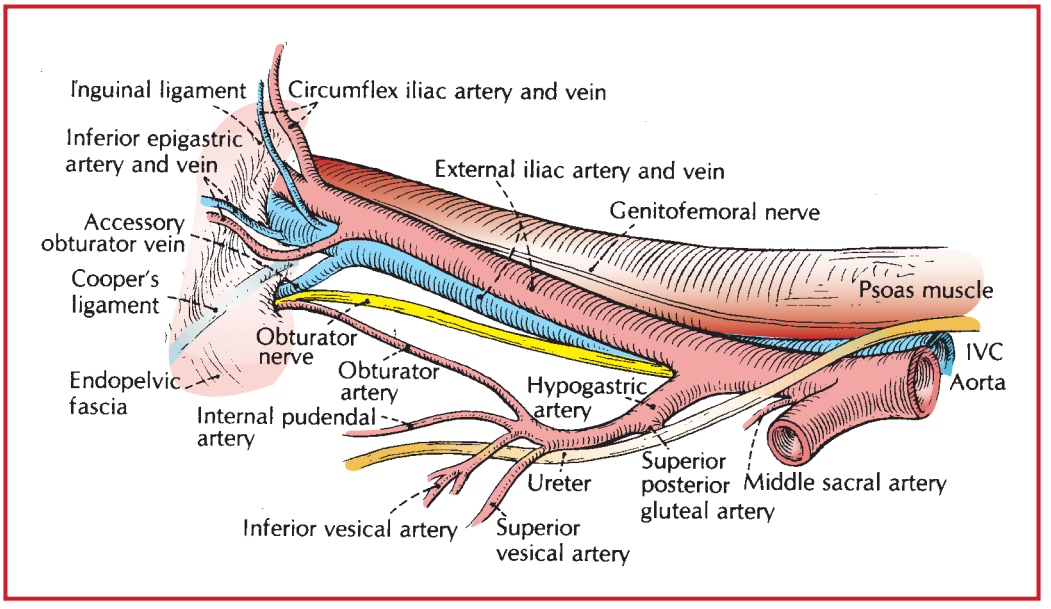


Figure 9-5. Right lateral pelvic wall. Anatomy of pelvic blood vessels and nerves encountered in a pelvic lymph node dissection. (Reproduced with permission from Graham SD Jr: *Glenn's Urologic Surgery.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1998.)

prostatectomy is being done by laparoscopy. This procedure has been popularized with the use of robots. Please see section of robotic urologic surgery.

Variant approach: Minimally invasive prostate cancer surgery has expanded with the use of the **Da Vinci robotic system**. Most laparoscopic radical prostatectomies are done with the assistance of the robot. With the robotic system, the surgeon sits at a console away from the patient and has a three-dimensional view with 10× magnification. A bedside assistant is necessary for instrument change and retraction. See page 922 for special Anesthetic Considerations for Robotic-Assisted Laparoscopic Surgery.

Usual preop diagnosis: Benign prostatic hypertrophy; prostate cancer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Simple Prostatectomy	Radical-Retropubic
Position	Supine	⇐; lithotomy → steep Trendelenburg (robotic)
Incision	Extraperitoneal, low midline, or Pfannenstiel's (Fig. 9-4A, inset)	⇐; multiple port sites (robotic)
Unique considerations	None	⇐; Da Vinci robotic system is used increasingly (> 80%); abdominal insufflation
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg	cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1 h	2–3 h (experienced surgeon)
EBL	500 mL	1500 mL (open)
Postop care	Irrigate catheter to clear blood clots and prevent obstruction; frequently, if urine is bloody.	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Simple Prostatectomy	Radical–Retropubic
Morbidity	Bleeding: 2% DVT: 2% Infection: 2% PE: 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Impotence: Non-nerve-sparing: 100% Nerve-sparing: 20–50% Lymphocele: 4%
Pain score	8	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	40–80 yr
Incidence	20% of men will develop symptomatic benign prostatic hypertrophy; 9% will develop clinically evident prostate cancer.
Etiology	Aging
Associated conditions	COPD (10%); CAD (10%); HTN (10%); diabetes mellitus (5%); renal failure (1%)

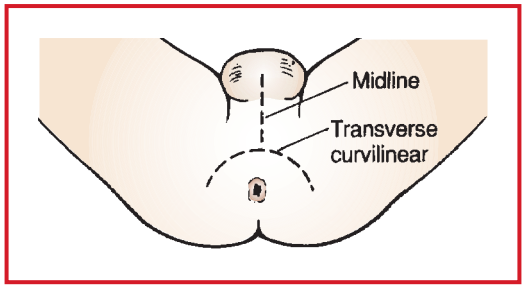


Figure 9-6. Perineal incisions.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for prostate surgery are generally elderly and may have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular disease, COPD, and renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions prior to anesthesia. A bowel prep may have been completed before surgery.

Respiratory	COPD common in this age group. Patients with Hx of > 50 pack-year smoking, or with respiratory Sx, may require PFTs. For dyspnea with moderate exercise, check VC, FEV_1, MMEF. If VC < 80%, FEV_1 < 60%, or MMEF < 40% predicted, ✓ ABG. If ABG and PFT are markedly abnormal, consider postponing surgery until patient's respiratory condition has been optimized. In robotic surgery, steep Trendelenburg position will compromise pulmonary function. **Tests:** PFT; CXR; ABG, as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	HTN, CAD common in this age group. Assess exercise tolerance by H&P (e.g., should be able to climb a flight of stairs without difficulty or SOB). Transition plans for patients on anticoagulants for coronary stents should be discussed with both the cardiologist and surgeon before surgery. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P

Neurological	Cerebrovascular disease, Alzheimer's, and other neurologic problems may be present in this age group. Assess mental status to guide evaluation of any intraop or postop changes. In robotic cases, steep Trendelenburg position and CO_2 insufflation → ↑ ICP and ↑ intraocular pressure. A preop neurosurgical consult is recommended for patients with intracranial lesions or VP shunts. Blindness has been reported following robotic prostatectomy.
Renal	Anticipate renal impairment 2° chronic obstruction. Pneumoperitoneum during robotic surgery may ↓ renal blood flow and oliguria postop. **Tests:** Cr
Musculoskeletal	Various arthritides may cause problems with positioning for regional anesthesia and surgery.
Endocrine	Increased incidence of diabetes mellitus.
Hematologic	Moderate blood loss expected with larger glands. For glands < 30 g, no T&C necessary; for glands 30–80 g, T&C 2 U PRBCs; for glands > 80 g, T&C 4 U PRBCs. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Continue commonly used drugs (e.g., digitalis, β-blockers, diuretics, NTG) to prevent cardiovascular complications. Sedation prn anxiety (e.g., midazolam 1–2 mg iv on call to OR).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional (spinal, continuous spinal, continuous lumbar epidural), GA, or combined techniques are acceptable for open procedures. Robotic procedure typically require GA. If regional anesthesia used, optimal block level is T8–T10 (depending on incision site). Advantages of regional anesthesia include potential for lower intraop blood loss, possible lower incidence of DVT postop, and faster return of bowel function. Disadvantages include positioning considerations (see below).

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	Bupivacaine (0.75%) 12 mg in 7.5% dextrose solution (1.6 mL)
Epidural	1.5–2% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–25 mL, supplemental iv sedation as necessary. Additional epidural lidocaine (5–10 mL boluses) may be needed, depending on length of procedure. Alternatively, smaller volumes of bupivacaine (0.25–0.5%) or ropivacaine (0.5–1%) may be used. The addition of opiates has been associated with ↑ urinary retention in noncatheterized patients.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). In robotic cases, recheck ETT position after the patient has been positioned and the abdomen insufflated to avoid mainstem intubation. Patient movement is not well tolerated by the robot → visceral/vascular injury.	
Emergence	No special considerations. Airway edema may occur after prolonged steep Trendelenburg position.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate-to-large blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Additional requirements dependent on type of anesthesia. Regional techniques are associated with higher fluid requirement because of sympathectomy and systemic vasodilation; they also may be associated with lower blood loss than GA.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Depending on underlying disease: ± CVP ± Arterial line	Some patients require CVP to aid in assessment of volume status. Arterial line is often useful for continuous BP monitoring and frequent blood draws. Patients at particularly high risk (e.g., Hx of preexisting cardiopulmonary disease) should probably have both.
Positioning	Anticipate ↓ BP on return from lithotomy position. ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Rx: volume (200–500 mL NS/LR) or ephedrine (5 mg iv) may be necessary. Elderly patients with arthritis or respiratory impairment may not tolerate the extreme positioning associated with robotic prostatectomy. *(A combined technique with GA maybe considered.) * **NB:** In lithotomy position, peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Indigo carmine reaction Hemorrhage Hypothermia VAE Robot malfunction	Indigo carmine → false ↓ O_2 sat ± ↑ BP; rare allergic reaction → rash + bronchoconstriction + ↓ BP. Insufflation pressure may exceed venous pressure → VAE

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury 2° lithotomy position DVT Airway edema → obstruction	Manifested by foot drop with loss of sensation on dorsum of foot. Seek neurology consultation. Incidence of DVT less with regional than GA. Sx: variable, with pain and tenderness over involved area.
Pain management	Significant postop pain. Rx: hydromorphone 0.01–0.02 mg/kg iv in incremental doses (e.g., 10–15 min prn).	Consider epidural infusion of dilute local anesthetics/opiates or PCA (see p. C-3). Robotic procedure patients have lower postop pain.
Tests	Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Awad H, Walker CM, Chaikh M, et al: Anesthetic considerations for robotic prostatectomy: a review of the literature. *J Clin Anesth* 2012; 24(6):494–504.
2. Kalmar AF, Dewaele F, Foubert L, et al: Cerebral haemodynamic physiology during steep Trendelenburg position and CO_2 pneumoperitoneum. *Br J Anaesth* 2012; 108(3):478–84.
3. Whalley DG, Berrigan MJ: Anesthesia for radical prostatectomy, cystectomy, nephrectomy, pheochromocytoma, and laparoscopic procedures. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2000; 18(4):899–917.
4. Wilson T, Torrey R: Open vs robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy: which is better? *Curr Opin Urol* 2011; 21(3):200–5.

NEPHRECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Nephrectomies fall into three basic groups: simple, partial, and radical. (Surgical anatomy is shown in Fig. 9-7.)

Simple nephrectomy, performed for benign conditions, is the surgical excision of the kidney and a small segment of proximal ureter. The dorsal approach is well suited for this operation and begins with an incision extending from the 12th rib to the iliac crest along the lateral edge of the sacrospinalis muscle and quadratus lumborum muscle. The dorsolumbar fascia is opened, exposing Gerota's fascia and the perinephric fat (Fig. 9-8). The kidney is mobilized until

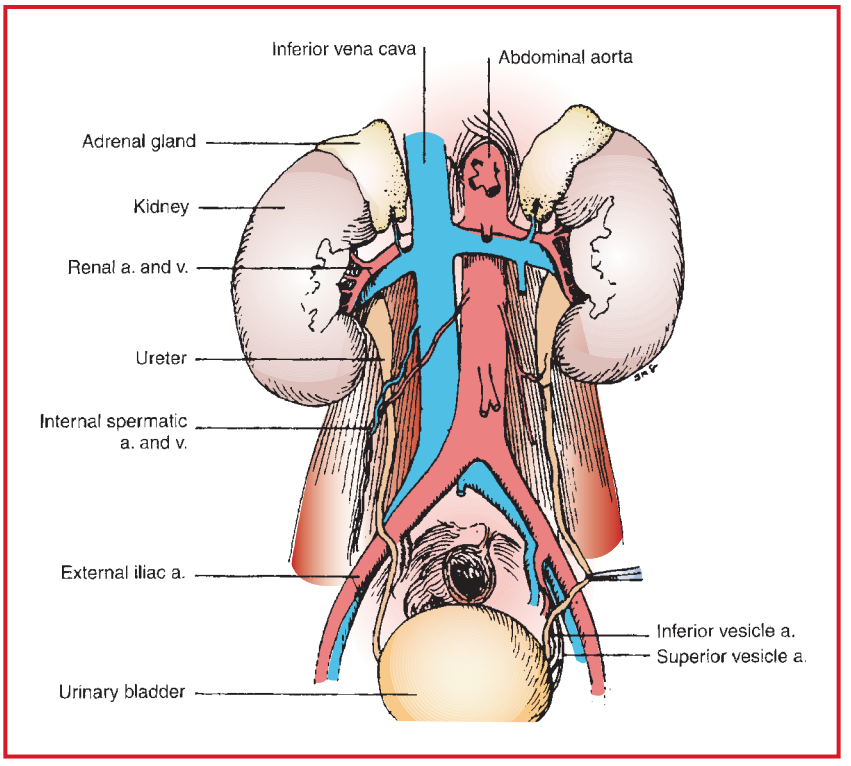


Figure 9-7. Surgical anatomy of the urinary tract. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Textbook of Surgery.* JB Lippincott: 1988.)

the hilum is exposed. The artery and vein are tied, suture-ligated, and transected. The ureter is followed distally as far as possible, tied, and transected. The kidney is delivered out of the incision, which is then closed by approximating the dorsolumbar fascia and the fascia of the sacrospinalis muscle.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic hydronephrosis; hypoplastic kidney; renovascular HTN; double collecting system

Partial nephrectomy is the surgical excision of the segment of the kidney harboring the pathology. It is performed for small renal cell carcinomas and benign tumors of the kidney, such as angiomyolipomas, and for duplicated collecting

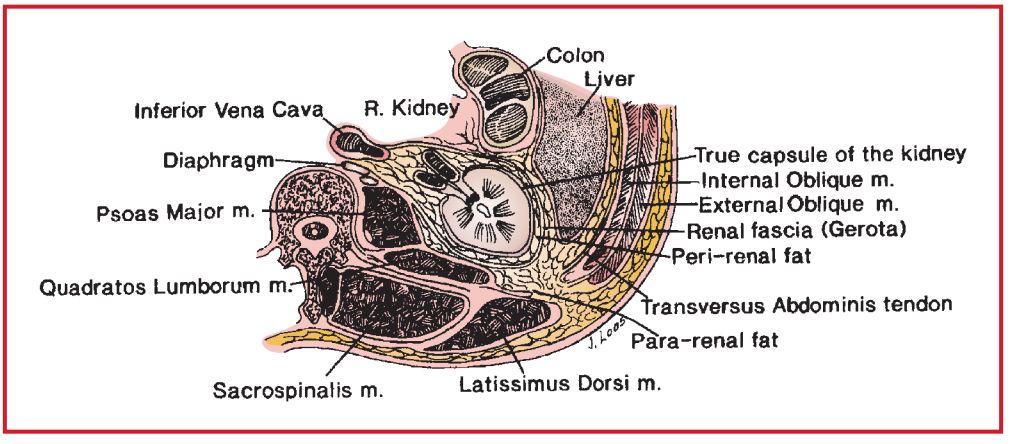


Figure 9-8. Transverse section showing the relation of the renal fascias to the right kidney. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery,* 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

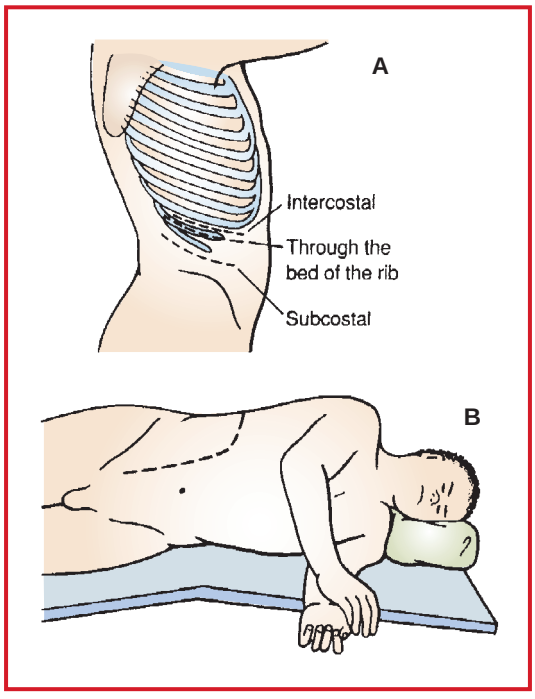


Figure 9-9. **A:** Flank incisions. **B:** Subcostal transabdominal incision.

systems with a diseased moiety. If the partial nephrectomy is being done for renal cell carcinoma, it may be accompanied with a **regional lymphadenectomy.** The flank approach (Fig. 9-9A) is well suited for this operation and begins with an incision over the 12th or 11th rib, or in between, and extends anteriorly over the external and internal oblique muscles, which are transected. The transversalis muscle and fascia are opened, exposing Gerota's fascia. The renal capsule is exposed at the planned site of resection. Control of the renal vessels and local hypothermia with ice slush is advised for control of bleeding, if excessive. Incision in the renal parenchyma is made by sharp and blunt dissection, suture-ligating all bleeders. If the collecting system is opened, it should be closed with absorbable sutures. After complete hemostasis, Gelfoam, thrombin, Floseal, or perinephric fat is used to cover the raw surface of the kidney.

Usual preop diagnosis: Renal cell carcinoma; double collecting system.

Radical nephrectomy is the surgical excision of the kidney with its surrounding perinephric fat and Gerota's fascia and the proximal 2/3 of the ureter, accompanied by paracaval or para-aortic **lymphadenectomy.** It is performed for renal cell carcinoma. Early control of renal vessels is advised before excessive manipulation of the tumor to minimize blood loss and hematogenous spread. Transabdominal or flank approaches (Fig. 9-9A, B) are best suited for this operation. Surgery in patients with renal vein or inferior vena cava involvement is more complex and prone to more intraoperative complications, including blood loss. When the tumor thrombus involves a large segment of the vena cava or is in the right atrium, a team approach with cardiac surgeons is used. Often patients have to be put on cardiopulmonary bypass under hypothermia.

Laparoscopic simple or radical nephrectomy: A pneumoperitoneum is created by insufflating CO_2 to a pressure of 14–16 mm Hg. Three to four trocars are inserted as necessary (Fig. 9-10). Typically, the patient is placed in a flank position as in an open radical nephrectomy. This procedure can be either **transperitoneal** or **retroperitoneal,** depending on the surgeon's preference or experience. The transperitoneal approach may be modified by using a hand-assistance device through one of the ports (**hand-assisted laparoscopic nephrectomy**). Most radical nephrectomies can be done by an experienced laparoscopic surgeon.

Usual preop diagnosis: Renal cell carcinoma, nonfunctioning kidney 2° infection or obstruction; kidney donation for transplant.

Nephroureterectomy is a radical nephrectomy with ureter resection, including the ureteral orifice and a cuff of bladder wall around it. It is accompanied by a regional lymphadenectomy because it is performed for a cancerous condition. The approach is either **transabdominal** or **extraperitoneal** through an extended flank incision, starting at the tip of the 11th rib and curving caudally along the lateral edge of the rectus abdominis muscle down to the pubic

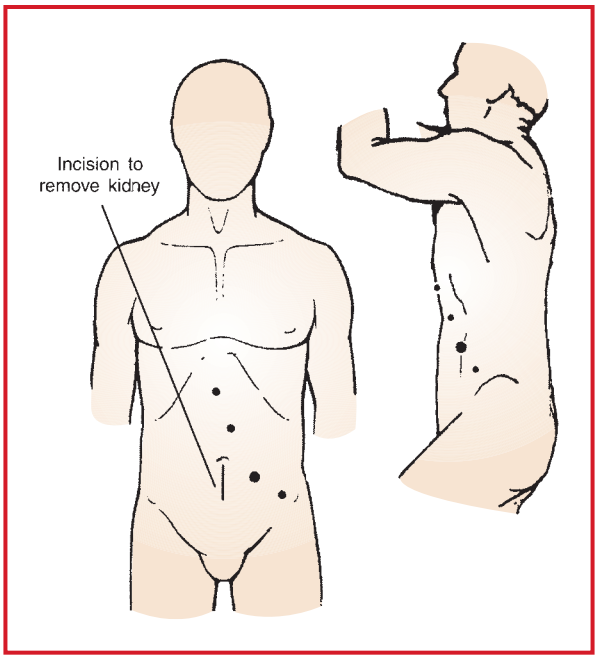


Figure 9-10. Incision and placement of trocars in laparoscopic nephrectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy.* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2003.)

bone (Fig. 9-9B). Some surgeons prefer two separate incisions: a flank incision for the radical nephrectomy part and a lower abdominal incision for the ureterectomy. This procedure can be done by laparoscopy with a lower midline incision made to remove the specimen. It is often done as a combined laparoscopic and open procedure. The kidney is removed laparoscopically while the distal ureter is excised by open surgery. The specimen is removed through the infraumbilical incision. This technique involves positioning, prepping, and draping the patient twice during the case.

Usual preop diagnosis: Transitional cell carcinoma of the renal collecting system or ureter

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Simple Nephrectomy	Partial Nephrectomy	Radical Nephrectomy	Laparoscopic Nephrectomy or Nephroureterectomy
Position	Flank or prone	Flank	Supine or flank	Flank
Incision	Flank (Fig. 9-9A) or dorsal along paraspinous muscles	Flank (Fig. 9-9A)	Midline or subcostal transabdominal (Fig. 9-9B) or flank; subcostal or intercostal or through bed of 11th or 12th rib (Fig. 9-9A)	3–4 ports (Fig. 9-10)
Unique considerations	None	⇐	If tumor involves renal vein and/or IVC, clamp IVC.	Risk of emergent conversion to open case
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	3–4 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Chest tube may be required if pleura opened with flank incision.	⇐	⇐	A small incision is made at the end of the case to remove the specimen.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Simple Nephrectomy	Partial Nephrectomy	Radical Nephrectomy	Laparoscopic Nephrectomy or Nephroureterectomy
EBL	500 mL	1200 mL	500 mL	300 mL
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	1%	⇐
Morbidity	Prolonged ileus: 5% Pneumothorax 2° unrecognized pleural perforation: 2%	⇐	⇐	Vascular injury requiring conversion to open case
Pain score	10	10	10	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages	⇐	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐	⇐
Incidence	< 1%	⇐	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Double collecting system; chronic hydronephrosis; hypoplastic kidney; renovascular HTN	Localized renal cell carcinoma	Wilms' tumor (8% of all childhood malignancies); transitional cell carcinoma (7% of all kidney tumors); renal cell carcinoma (3% of adult malignancies)	
Associated conditions	HTN (if nephrectomy was used to treat renovascular HTN).			

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Operations on the Renal Pelvis and Upper Ureter, p. 897.

Suggested Readings

1. Aboumarzouk OM, Stein RJ, Eyraud R, et al: Robotic versus laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Urol* 2012; 62(6):123–33.
2. Conacher ID, Soomro NA, Rix D: Anaesthesia for laparoscopic urological surgery. *Br J Anaesth* 2004; 93(6):859–64.
3. Piros L, Langer RM: Laparoscopic donor nephrectomy techniques. *Curr Opin Organ Transplant* 2012; 17(4):401–5.

OPERATIONS ON THE RENAL PELVIS AND UPPER URETER

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Operations on the renal pelvis and upper ureter are becoming less common because of the increasing use of endoscopic and percutaneous procedures. The basic surgical approach is the same as that for nephrectomy (see p. 891). Specific procedures include the following:

Pyeloplasty is the surgical correction of congenital ureteropelvic junction stenosis to relieve obstruction. The most commonly used is the **dismembered pyeloplasty,** or **Anderson-Heinz pyeloplasty,** wherein the diseased

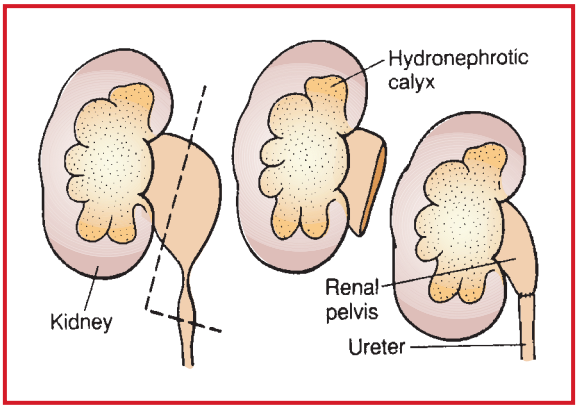


Figure 9-11. Dismembered pyeloplasty.

ureteropelvic junction is excised, the redundant renal pelvis is reduced, and an anastomosis is established between the renal pelvis and ureter (Fig. 9-11).

Usual preop diagnosis: Ureteropelvic junction obstruction

Pyelolithotomy and ureterolithotomy are used to remove calculi from the renal pelvis or ureter. The upper ureter and renal pelvis are exposed, usually through a flank approach, the calculus is palpated, and an incision is made in the ureter or renal pelvis over the calculus, which is then delivered. The incision is closed with fine, absorbable sutures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Renal pelvic or ureteral stone

Transureteroureterostomy is the transposition of one ureter across the midline and anastomosing it to the other ureter (Fig. 9-12). This operation is performed whenever the distal ureter is traumatized or diseased, and the proximal ureter is not long enough to reimplant into the bladder. The recipient ureter should be normal.

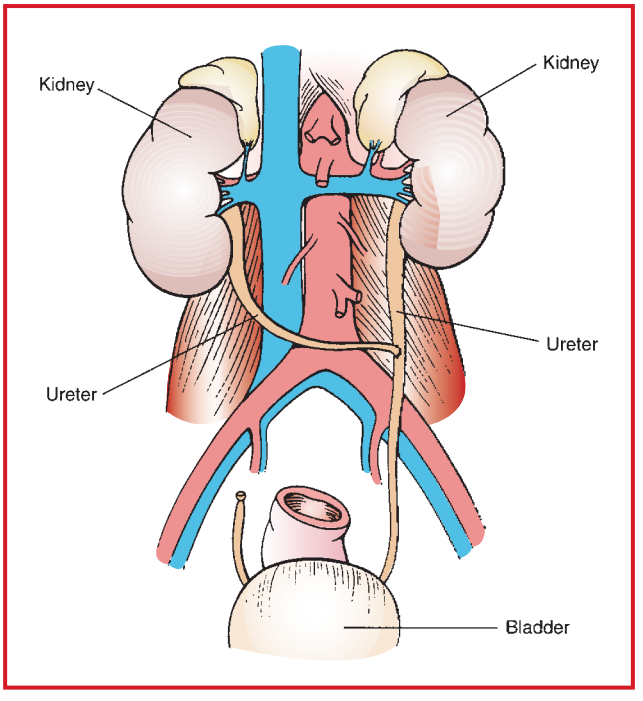


Figure 9-12. Transureteroureterostomy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Traumatic loss of distal ureter; distal ureteral tumor requiring distal ureterectomy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Pyeloplasty	Pyelolithotomy/ Ureterolithotomy	Transureteroureterostomy
Position	Flank or prone	⇐	Supine
Incision	Flank (Fig. 9-9A) or dorsal	⇐	Midline abdominal (Fig. 9-9A, inset)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3 h	1–2 h	3 h
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Urinary leakage: 5% Infection: 2%	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	10	10	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐
Incidence	Rare	Extremely rare	⇐
Etiology	Ureteropelvic junction obstruction: 80% of causes of dilated collecting system in the newborn	Renal pelvic and upper ureteral stone	Traumatic loss of lower ureter; lower ureteral tumor
Associated conditions	Renal failure: 1%		

Urology

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: nephrectomy and operations on the renal pelvis and upper ureter)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for nephrectomy and operations on the renal pelvis and upper ureter may be of any age, depending on the etiology of the abnormality. Many patients may have renal insufficiency 2° the underlying problem or from renovascular HTN. Elderly patients frequently have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular disease, COPD, and renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions prior to anesthesia.

Respiratory	Increased postop pulmonary complications because of location of incision (nonlaparoscopic). If Hx of pulmonary disease (e.g., asthma, COPD), consider postop respiratory therapy. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Consider possibility of renal HTN.

Hematologic	Polycythemia may be seen in association with polycystic kidney disease, renal cell carcinoma. Consider preop blood donation for autologous transfusion. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Electrolytes; BUN; Cr; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA is recommended for these procedures; technique depends on underlying disease. Regional techniques (spinal or epidural) may be alternatives for some open procedures but are less than optimal because of awkward positioning that may → patient discomfort and pain resulting from diaphragmatic stimulation. Consider combined technique with regional opiates.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). If intraperitoneal or laparoscopic approach is used, consider limiting N_2O to avoid distention of bowel and interference with operative field.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Mild-to-moderate blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h Warm all fluids.	Intraperitoneal approach associated with higher fluid requirements (8–10 mL/kg/h). When renal vessels are to be cross-clamped, mannitol (0.5 g/kg) is often given prior to occlusion (20 min maximum).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Urinary catheter Arterial line (partial nephrectomy) ± CVP line	Invasive monitoring if indicated from H&P. CVP line useful for partial nephrectomy in patients with solitary kidneys (↑↑ blood loss).
Positioning	Use axillary roll if lateral. Avoid stretching brachial plexus—limit abduction to 90°. If prone, repeatedly ✓ eyes and pressure points. Assure free excursion of abdomen.	The lateral position with kidney rest and table flexion may → ↓ BP, possibly 2° vena cava obstruction. Moderate iv volume administration and gradual assumption of the position are recommended to avoid this complication.
Complications	Pneumothorax ↓ BP with positioning (see above). Indigo carmine → ↑ BP, ↑ SVR Methylene blue → ↓ BP	Sx of pneumothorax include: ↑ RR, ↑ PIP, hypoxemia, hypercarbia. If in doubt, ✓ CXR.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Postnephrectomy syndrome Eye injury (if prone) Brachial plexus injury (if lateral) Pneumothorax Atelectasis Pneumonia	Postnephrectomy syndrome 2° retractor injury. L1 nerve root damage with resulting pain, dysesthesia, and sensory loss in L1 dermatome distribution.

Pain management	Morphine 0.1–0.3 mg/kg iv in incremental doses Consider epidural narcotic	Postop analgesia critical to minimize pulmonary complications. PCA. See p. C-3.
Tests	Hct CXR	Others dependent on operative course, coexisting disease.

CYSTECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Open (in contrast to transurethral or endoscopic) bladder operations (cystectomies) account for 15–20% of all urological procedures. They are grouped as simple, partial, and radical procedures.

Simple cystectomy is performed for benign conditions of the bladder, such as severe hemorrhagic cystitis, radiation cystitis, and contracted bladder. It involves the removal of the bladder only. The operation is performed through a lower abdominal incision. The peritoneal reflections are incised down to the pouch of Douglas; the vasa deferentia and superior vesical arteries are identified, cross-clamped, transected, and tied. The ureters are identified, separated from the surrounding tissues, cross-clamped near the bladder, transected, and tied. The bladder is bluntly separated from the anterior rectal wall all the way to the apex of the prostate. The lateral pedicles of the bladder are cross-clamped, cut, and tied. The endopelvic fascia is incised, separating the prostate from the lateral pelvic wall. The puboprostatic ligaments are transected, and the dorsal vein of the penis is suture-ligated. The tied dorsal vein and urethra are incised just distal to the apex of the prostate. The specimen is delivered out of the incision and hemostasis secured with electrocautery. An ileal conduit is then performed (see below).

Partial cystectomy is the excision of only the part of the bladder containing the pathology. This is not a commonly performed operation and is reserved for tumors located in the dome of the bladder of older patients who are poor surgical risks for major operations, such as radical cystectomy. The operation is preceded by a cystoscopy to identify the site of pathology. Beginning with a lower abdominal incision, the dome and lateral walls of the bladder are separated from the surrounding tissues, which are covered by wet packs to minimize contamination. An incision is made in the dome of the bladder at least 2 cm away from the pathology. The inside of the bladder is inspected and the pathology identified. The incision in the bladder is continued around, and at least 2 cm away from, the pathology, until the latter is completely excised. Bleeders in the wall of the bladder are electrocoagulated. The bladder wall is then closed in two layers—a through-and-through layer and an inverting layer—using absorbable material. Wet packs are removed, a drain is left in the region, and the abdominal incision is closed.

Radical cystectomy (or **radical cystoprostatectomy**) is performed for treatment of invasive bladder cancer. It encompasses the removal of the bladder and the lower ureters, the prostate gland, and seminal vesicles in men (Fig. 9-13A), and the uterus, ovaries, and anterior vaginal wall in women (Fig. 9-13B). Accompanied by a **pelvic lymphadenectomy,** it is performed in the supine position, except when a concomitant **urethrectomy** is required, wherein a lithotomy position is used.

Following cystectomy, whether radical or simple, some form of **urinary diversion** is required. This can be accomplished with either a standard ileal conduit or a bladder substitution. The **ileal conduit** is constructed from 6–8 inches of terminal ileum isolated, with its blood supply, from the small intestine. The continuity of the small intestine is accomplished by a simple anastomosis. The ureters are implanted into the proximal end of the conduit, and the distal end is brought through the abdominal wall as a stoma (Fig. 9-14). **Bladder substitution** is a more complex operation wherein a longer segment of bowel is isolated, with its blood supply, and fashioned into a pouch. The ureters are implanted in the pouch, and the most dependent part of the pouch is connected to the membranous urethra, avoiding a stoma (Fig. 9-15). Not all patients undergoing cystectomies are candidates for bladder substitution. For example, patients who require a urethrectomy are not candidates because of the need to remove the urethra.

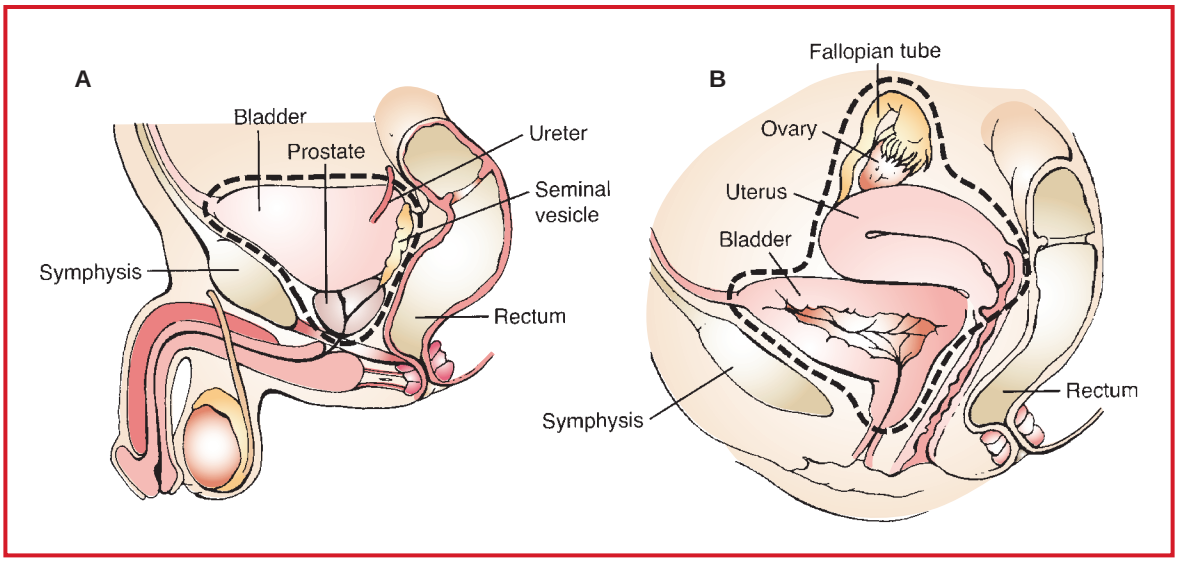


Figure 9-13. Anatomy of the pelvis with tissue to be excised outlined by *dashed line*: **A:** male; **B:** female.

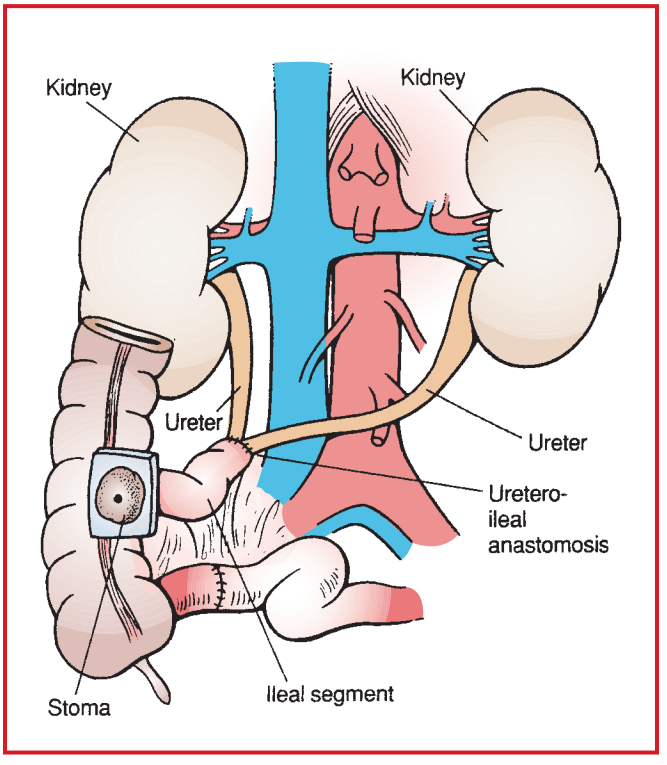


Figure 9-14. Ileal conduit: A segment of ileum is isolated from terminal ileum, and continuity of the bowel is reestablished with an end-to-end anastomosis. Ureters are joined to the proximal end of the ileal segment, and the distal end is brought out to the skin as a stoma.

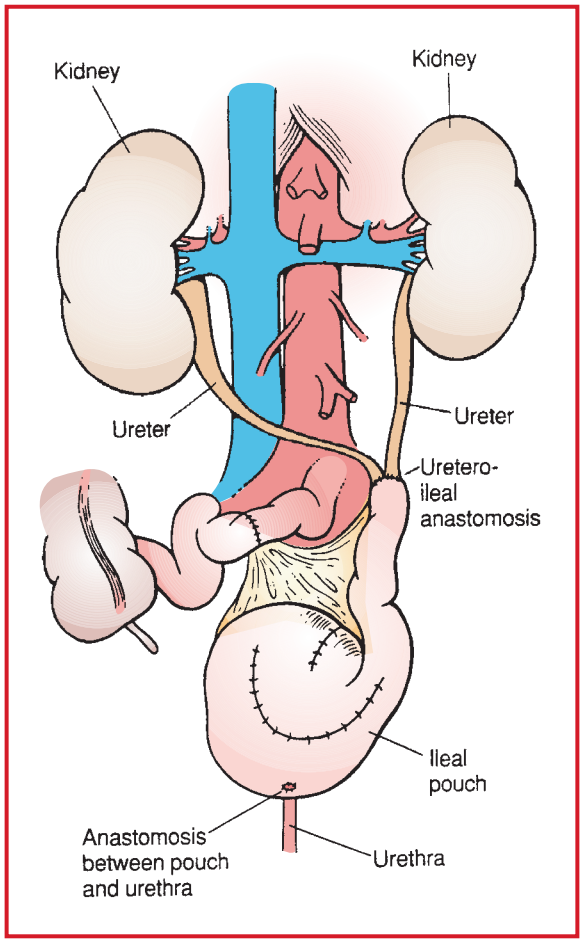


Figure 9-15. Bladder substitution: A segment of ileum is fashioned into a pouch and anastomosed to the urethra. The ureters are joined to the proximal, nondetubularized segment.

Usual preop diagnosis: Bladder cancer; contracted bladder; hemorrhagic cystitis; radiation cystitis; bladder diverticulum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Simple Cystectomy	Partial Cystectomy	Radical Cystectomy
Position	Supine	⇐	Supine or lithotomy
Incision	Transperitoneal, midline	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefotetan or ceftriaxone 1 g	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4 h	2 h	6 h
EBL	1000 mL	Minimal	1500 mL
Postop care	Care of the stoma	Catheter care	Care of the stoma
Mortality	1%	< 1%	2%
Morbidity	Prolonged ileus: 5% Infection: 2%	— — Hematuria: 5%	5% 2%
Pain score	10	10	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Simple Cystectomy	Partial Cystectomy	Radical Cystectomy
Age range	40–80 yr	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	3:1	⇐	⇐
Incidence	60,000 new cases of bladder cancer diagnosed/yr; 20% treated with cystectomy.	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Contracted bladder; hemorrhagic and radiation cystitis	Bladder cancer; bladder diverticulum	⇐
Associated conditions	Heart disease (10%); HTN (10%); COPD (5%); diabetes mellitus (5%)	Heart disease (10%)	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for cystectomy are frequently elderly and may have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular disease, COPD, and renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions prior to anesthesia.

Respiratory	✓ for pulmonary disease in older patients. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	✓ for cardiac disease, HTN in older patients. **Tests:** Consider ECG; others as indicated from H&P.
Gastrointestinal	Bowel prep likely and may cause dehydration and electrolyte disturbances. **Tests:** Electrolytes, if indicated
Hematologic	T&C for 2–4 U PRBC. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation prn anxiety in adults (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h preop; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal, continuous lumbar epidural, or GA are acceptable, with choice dependent on length of procedure, coexisting disease, and patient preference. A combined technique using GA and regional anesthesia may be preferable. A T4 sensory level is recommended, because peritoneal stimulation is likely during this procedure.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 12–15 mg in 7.5% dextrose; hyperbaric tetracaine 10–15 mg with 200 mcg epinephrine for procedures > 3 h.
Epidural	1.5–2% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–25 mL; supplement with 5–10 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation (e.g., midazolam 1 mg iv prn; fentanyl 50 mcg iv prn). Bupivacaine (0.25–0.5%), levobupivacaine (0.25–0.5%), or ropivacaine (0.5–0.75%), with or without sufentanil or fentanyl, may also be used. The addition of opiates has been associated with ↑ urinary retention in noncatheterized patients.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). These patients may be significantly dehydrated and require volume replacement before induction.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Significant blood loss possible IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 6–10 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	Blood loss may be less with regional than GA.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line CVP line	Consider PA catheter or TEE in patients with cardiopulmonary disease. UO as measure of volume status may be unavailable during procedure.
Complications	Major blood loss 3rd-space losses Hypothermia	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypothermia	
Pain management	Morphine 0.1–0.3 mg/kg iv in incremental doses Consider epidural narcotics or PCA.	 See p. C-3.
Tests	Hct	Others as indicated by intraop course.

Suggested Readings

1. Azzouni F: Current status of robot-assisted radical cystectomy for bladder cancer. *Net Rev Urol* 2012; 9(10):573–82.
2. Cheung G, Dasgupta P, Guru KA, Billia M, Khan MS: Minimally invasive cystectomy approaches in the treatment of bladder cancer. *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 2012; 12(6):733–41.
3. Poch MA, Raza J, Nyquist J, Guru KA: Tips and tricks to robot-assisted radical cystectomy and intracorporeal diversion. *Curr Opin Urol* 2013; 23(1):65–71.

OPEN BLADDER OPERATIONS (OTHER THAN CYSTECTOMY)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Open bladder operations include

Augmentation cystoplasty (or **enterocystoplasty**): Small, contracted bladders can be enlarged and their size and capacity augmented with a segment of intestine. The bladder is opened widely, anteroposteriorly, or from side-to-side, or with a cruciate incision. A segment of intestine—small bowel, cecum, or colon—is isolated from the intestinal tract, detubularized, and added onto the bladder.

Variant procedure: The antrum of the stomach can also be used (**gastrocystoplasty**).

Usual preop diagnosis: Contracted bladder from chronic cystitis or neurogenic bladder.

Repair of vesicovaginal or enterovesical fistulas: The communication between the vagina and bladder or bladder and bowel is identified and excised, and the edges freshened until normal, noninflamed tissues are exposed. The

openings in the bladder and in the vagina or bowel are closed, and omentum is interposed in between to promote healing and prevent recurrence. With enterovesical fistulas, often the diseased segment of the intestine is excised, and an **end-to-end anastomosis** of the intestine is performed.

Variant procedure: Transvaginal repair of vesicovaginal fistula (see Vaginal Operations, p. 918).

Usual preop diagnosis: Vesicovaginal or enterovesical fistula

Ureteral reimplantation, performed to correct vesicoureteral reflux, is more commonly used in the pediatric group than in adults. In adults, it is performed mainly for lower ureteral injuries, iatrogenic or traumatic. The lower ureter is identified and dissected proximally until adequate length is obtained. The bladder is opened and a 2- to 3- cm submucosal tunnel is created in or near the trigone, and the ureter is brought into the tunnel and fixed with sutures. If there is a large gap between the ureter and the bladder, a **psoas hitch procedure** is necessary. The bladder is mobilized and stitched to the psoas muscle to reach the ureter. In children, if the ureter is dilated, its diameter is reduced by imbrication before reimplantation. In adults, a nonrefluxing implantation is usually not necessary if the operation is being performed for ureteral injury.

Usual preop diagnosis: Vesicoureteral reflux; lower ureteral injuries

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Augmentation Cystoplasty	Repair of Fistulas	Ureteral Reimplantation
Position	Supine	Supine or lithotomy	Supine
Incision	Low abdominal	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg iv, slowly	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4 h	3 h	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Care of catheters and stents	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Infections: 5% Urinary leakage: 1%	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	10	10	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	1:4	⇐	⇐
Incidence	Rare	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Contracted bladders from chronic cystitis	Traumatic fistulas; vesicovaginal; regional enteritis; diverticulitis; colon cancer	Vesicoureteral reflux; injury to lower ureters

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for open bladder operations may be of any age, depending on the etiology of the abnormality. Elderly patients frequently have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular disease, COPD, and renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions prior to anesthesia.

Respiratory	✓ for pulmonary disease in elderly patients. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	✓ for cardiac disease in elderly patients. **Tests:** Consider ECG; others, if indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Paraplegics and quadriplegics may present for operations on the bladder and urinary tract. Obtain Hx of autonomic hyperreflexia (AH). Sx are: flushing, HA, nasal stuffiness, and HTN associated with voiding or noxious stimuli below level of transection.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation prn anxiety (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h before surgery; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal, continuous lumbar epidural, or GA are acceptable, with choice dependent on length of procedure, coexisting disease, and patient preference. A combined technique using light GA with regional anesthesia is also acceptable. A T10 sensory level is sufficient to provide anesthesia for procedures on the bladder, but a T4 level is recommended if the peritoneum is opened. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures [except TURP)] p. 881, for patients with AH.)

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–12 mg. For shorter procedures (< 1 h), consider low-dose bupivacaine (0.75%, 7.5 mg); mepivacaine (1.5%, 45 mg); or procaine (10%, 100–150 mg). Lidocaine may be used, but the incidence of transient neurologic symptoms is significant (30%).
Epidural	1.5–2% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–25 mL; supplement with 5–10 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation. Bupivacaine (0.25%), levobupivacaine (0.25–0.5%), or ropivacaine (0.5–0.75%), with or without sufentanil or fentanyl, may also be used. The addition of opiates has been associated with ↑ urinary retention in noncatheterized patients.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Consider limiting N_2O for long intraperitoneal procedures to minimize bowel distention.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal-to-moderate blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases for lengthy procedures.	Intraperitoneal procedures have considerably higher requirements (e.g., NS/LR @ 6–10 mL/kg/h).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) for simpler procedures. ± Arterial/CVP lines	UO as a measure of volume status may be unavailable during the procedure. Consider arterial line, CVP for longer, more complex procedures.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	* **NB:** In lithotomy position, peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	AH in spinal cord injured patients	See discussion in Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures, p. 881.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypothermia Fever, bacteremia	
Pain management	Morphine 0.1–0.3 mg/kg in incremental doses. Consider epidural narcotics or PCA.	 See p. C-3.
Tests	Hct Blood cultures if febrile	Others as indicated by intraop course.

INGUINAL OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Inguinal operations are very common and are usually performed on an outpatient basis. Groin dissection, however, may necessitate inpatient care.

Inguinal herniorrhaphy: A 3″ inguinal incision is made, starting 1″ medial to the anterior-superior iliac spine, and ending at the pubic tubercle. The external oblique aponeurosis is excised, opening the external inguinal ring. The spermatic cord and the hernial sac are freed off the inguinal canal; then, the hernial sac is dissected off the spermatic cord and followed proximally into the internal inguinal ring, where it is suture-ligated and excised. The floor of the inguinal canal is strengthened by approximating the conjoined tendon to the reflected part of the inguinal ligament. Modifications include laparoscopic repair and use of surgical mesh. Please see Section 7.9 for details.

Usual preop diagnosis: Inguinal hernia (See Figs. 9-16 and 9-17 for details of anatomic relationships.)

Orchiopexy is performed through the same incision as used in herniorrhaphy. After the inguinal canal is exposed, a search for the undescended testis begins. The testis and cord are dissected free from all surrounding tissue until adequate length is obtained to bring the testis down to the scrotum. Next, a pouch is created in the wall of the scrotum by incising the scrotal skin and dissecting it off dartos fascia. The testis is brought down into the pouch and fixed to the dartos fascia with sutures, and the incisions are closed. Often a **herniorrhaphy** is performed at the same time.

Unusual preop diagnosis: Undescended testis.

Radical orchiectomy is performed through a herniorrhaphy incision (described above). The spermatic cord is freed and cross-clamped at the internal inguinal ring, transected, and suture-ligated. The testis, with its tunica vaginalis, is then delivered through the incision by blunt and sharp dissection, and the inguinal incision is closed. Sometimes, a testicular prosthesis is inserted and fixed in the scrotum before the inguinal incision is closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Testicular cancer

Ligation of spermatic vein is performed through a small, transverse incision 1–2″ above the internal inguinal ring. Muscles are split and peritoneum reflected medially to expose the spermatic vessels; the vein is identified and ligated. This operation can also be done through a scrotal incision.

Usual preop diagnosis: Varicocele causing infertility

Groin dissection, or **inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy** (lymph node dissection), is the most critical of the inguinal operations. It is performed through either an inguinal incision (Fig. 9-17, inset) curved distally over the femoral vessels or through two incisions, inguinal and upper-thigh (Fig. 9-17, inset), over the femoral triangle. A complete inguinal and femoral lymphadenectomy is performed.

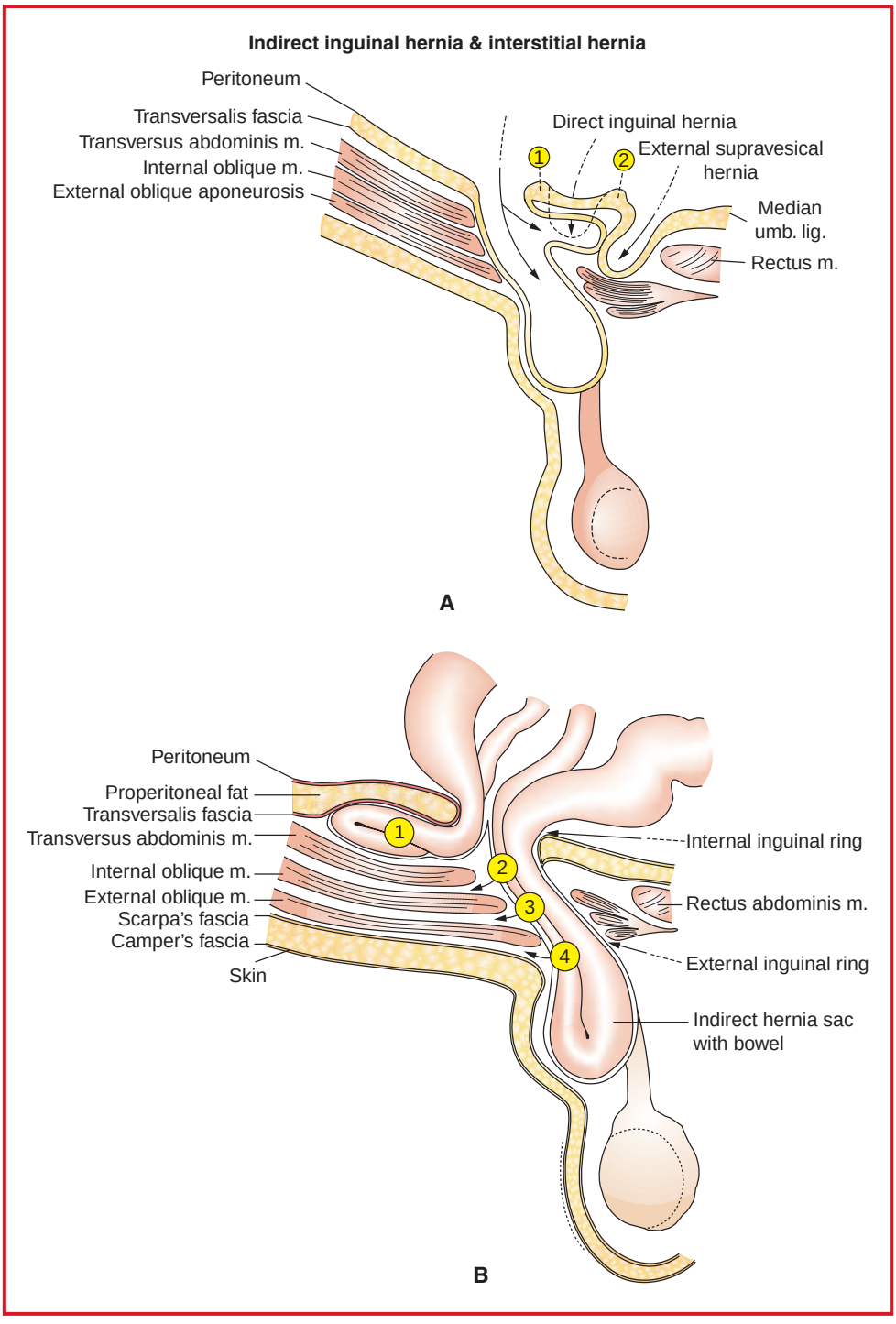


Figure 9-16. **A:** Relationships of four groin hernias in one patient. Indirect inguinal hernia with intraparietal diverticulum, direct hernia, and external supravesical hernia. 1 = lateral umbilical ligament; 2 = medial umbilical ligament. Arrows indicate different sites of origin of each hernia. (Reproduced with permission from Skandalakis JE, Gray SW, Burns WB, et al: Internal and external supravesical hernia. *Am Surg* 1976; 42:142.) **B:** Diagram of intraparietal hernia. The sac, entering at the internal ring, may pass into any one or more spaces between layers of the abdominal wall. 1, properitoneal; 2 and 3, interstitial; 4, superficial. An indirect hernia also may be present. (Reproduced with permission form Skandalakis JE, Gray SW, Akin JT Jr: The surgical anatomy of hernial rings. *Surg Clin North Am* 1974; 54:1227.)

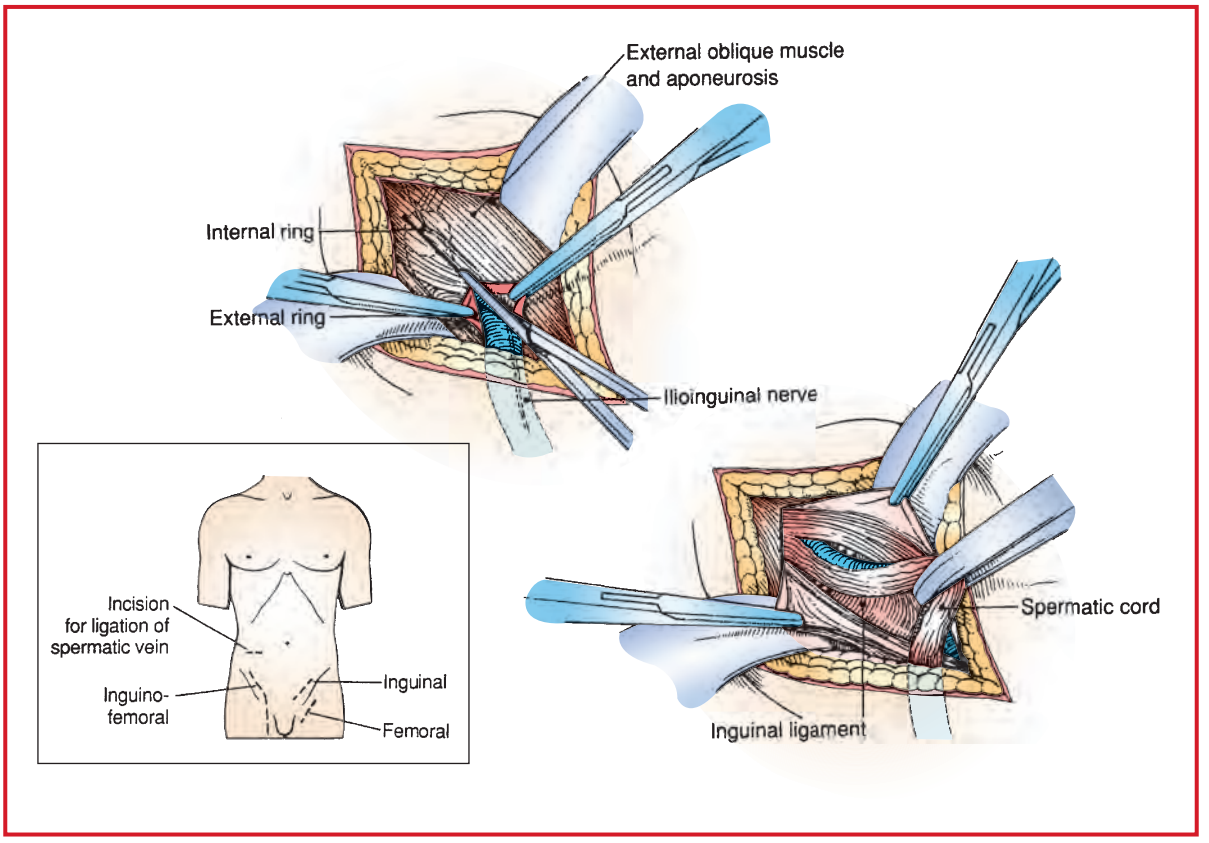


Figure 9-17. Incisions and exposure of the spermatic cord for inguinal hernia repair. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy.* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2003.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Penile cancer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Herniorrhaphy, Orchiopexy, Orchiectomy	Ligation of Spermatic Vein	Groin Dissection
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Inguinal (Fig. 9-17, inset)	Transverse groin (Fig. 9-17, inset)	Inguinal and upper thigh (Fig. 9-17, inset)
Antibiotics	None	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	⇐	3 h
EBL	Minimal	⇐	200 mL
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐	PACU → ward; leg elevation
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Wound infection: 2%	⇐	⇐
Pain score	7	5	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS			
Age range	All ages	Young adults	Middle age
Incidence	Hernia: 5% of population Undescended testis: 0.8% of male children Testis cancer: 6/100,000	1% of young men	Extremely rare, < 1% of all males
Etiology	Unknown; congenital	Varicocele	Penile cancer (very rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, patients presenting for inguinal operations are healthy, with most returning home on the day of surgery. The most common inguinal operation is herniorrhaphy. In these patients, consider causes of increased intraabdominal pressure during H&P. (Pediatric inguinal operations are discussed in Pediatric General Surgery, p. 1337.) A hernia may strangulate → acute abdomen.

Respiratory	Chronic cough is a common precipitating factor.
Gastrointestinal	Constipation may be a precipitating factor.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation for adults prn anxiety (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h before surgery; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Local anesthesia (with sedation), spinal, epidural, or GA are acceptable techniques with the choice dependent on patient age and coexisting disease, type and length of procedure, and patient preference. Local anesthesia is acceptable for simple herniorrhaphy, although discomfort may be elicited if the peritoneum is manipulated. If a spinal or epidural anesthetic is chosen, a T6 level should be sought. Most inguinal procedures are done on an outpatient basis, and the anesthetic should be planned appropriately.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–12 mg. For shorter procedures (< 1 h), consider low-dose bupivacaine (0.75%, 7.5 mg); mepivacaine (1.5%, 45 mg); or procaine (10%, 100–150 mg). Lidocaine may be used, but the incidence of transient neurologic symptoms is significant.
Epidural	1.5–2.0% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–25 mL; supplement with 5–10 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation with local or regional technique in adults; e.g., midazolam (1–2 mg iv), fentanyl (25–50 mcg iv prn anxiety or discomfort), or propofol infusion (25–50 mcg/kg/min).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). ET intubation and/or controlled ventilation may not be needed for shorter cases; consider LMA.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3); consider propofol infusion (100–200 mcg/kg/min). Muscle relaxation usually not required.
Emergence	No specific considerations

Blood and fluid requirements	Usually minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	Minimize NS/LR to avoid postop urinary retention after herniorrhaphy.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Failure to void	May delay discharge from PACU → home.
Pain management	Local anesthesia Ketorolac 30 mg im or iv in adults ± morphine 2–4 mg iv or fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv	Instillation (2 min) or infiltration of wound with 0.25% bupivacaine or ilioinguinal nerve block provides prolonged postop analgesia and decreases need for narcotics in outpatients. This can be used in both adult and pediatric patients.

Suggested Readings

1. Castorina S, Luca T, Privitera G, El-Bernawi H: An evidence-based approach for laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair: lessons learned from over 1,000 repairs. *Clin Anat* 2012; 25(6):687–96.
2. Joshi GP, Rawal N, Kehlet H, et al: Evidence-based management of postoperative pain in adults undergoing open inguinal hernia surgery. *Br J Surg* 2012; 99(2):168–85.

PENILE OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Penectomy is the total or partial resection of the penis for squamous cell carcinoma of the penile skin. If the tumor can be resected with a safe margin of at least 2 cm, partial penectomy is usually enough. A tourniquet is placed at the base of the penis, which is amputated at least 2 cm proximal to the tumor. The corpora cavernosa are sutured, and the tourniquet is released, followed by inspection for bleeding. The edges of the urethra are sutured to the ventral skin, and the lateral and dorsal skin edges are approximated over the ends of the corpora cavernosa. Often, an **inguinal lymph node biopsy** follows the penectomy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Squamous cell carcinoma of the penile skin

Insertion of penile prosthesis is performed for impotence. The prosthesis is inserted into the corpora cavernosa (Fig. 9-18) through a penile or suprapubic incision. Penile prostheses are either malleable or inflatable. The latter have a reservoir in the retropubic space and a pump in the scrotum.

Usual preop diagnosis: Impotence

Hypospadias repair is performed primarily on children < 5 yr. (See Pediatric Urology, p. 1369.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Penectomy	Insertion of Penile Prosthesis
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Circumferential penile	Bilateral incisions at base of penis
Special instrumentation	None	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Penectomy	Insertion of Penile Prosthesis
Unique considerations	None	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	Gentamicin 80 mg iv, slowly; ampicillin 2 g iv
Surgical time	2 h	⇐
Closing considerations	None	⇐
EBL	200 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Penile hematoma: 5%	Malfunction: 10% Edema: 5% Infection: 2% Extrusion of the prosthesis: 1%
Pain score	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Adults	⇐
Incidence	< 1% of all males	1–2% of all males
Etiology	Poor hygiene	Organic impotence

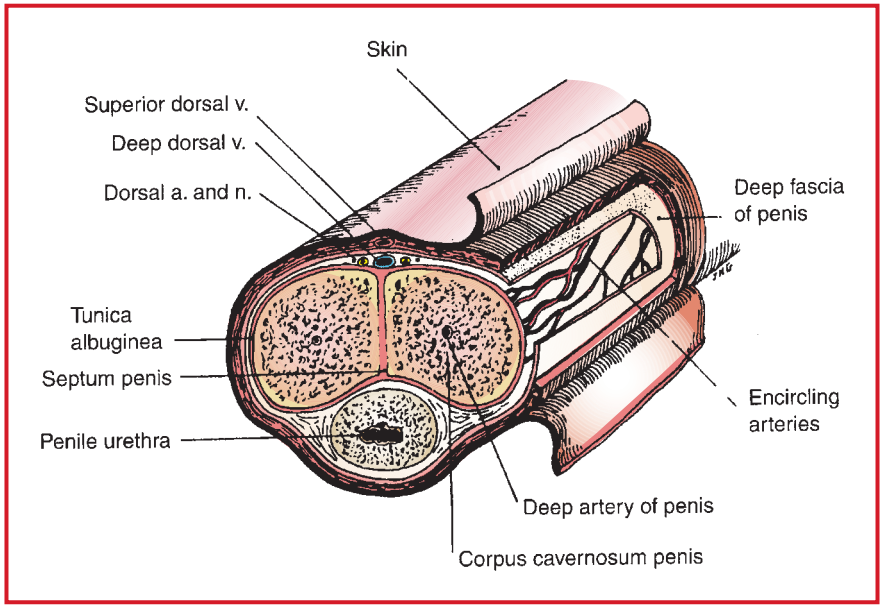


Figure 9-18. Anatomy of the penis. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Textbook of Surgery*. JB Lippincott: 1988.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for insertion of a penile prosthesis are frequently elderly and often have preexisting medical problems, including CAD, CHF, PVD, cerebrovascular disease, COPD, and renal impairment. Preop evaluation should be directed toward the detection and treatment of these conditions prior to anesthesia.

Neurological	Patients presenting for insertion of a penile prosthesis often have Hx of diabetes or spinal cord injury. Note presence of neuropathy or Hx of autonomic hyperreflexia (AH) (see Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures [except TURP], p. 881). Sx suggestive of AH include HA, flushing, nasal stuffiness, and HTN associated with voiding or noxious stimuli below the level of transection. It is important to document neurological deficits prior to regional anesthesia.
Hematologic	Coagulation defects may be present in patients with priapism. There is a high incidence of priapism in patients with sickle cell anemia. **Tests:** Hct, if indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation prn anxiety in adults (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h prior to surgery; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal, caudal, or lumbar epidural and GA are acceptable, with choice dependent on length of procedure, patient age, coexisting disease, and patient preference. Sacral anesthesia (saddle block) is sufficient; lumbar epidural anesthesia may be less reliable than spinal or caudal at blocking sacral fibers.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	5% lidocaine 50 mg (controversial); 0.75% bupivacaine 10 mg in 7.5% dextrose; hyperbaric tetracaine 10 mg with epinephrine for longer procedures
Caudal	0.5% bupivacaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL 15–20 mL
Epidural	1.5% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL 15–25 mL; supplement with 5–10 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). ET intubation may not be necessary for shorter procedures; consider LMA.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Deeper levels of anesthesia usually are required to obtund autonomic reflexes (e.g., HTN, laryngospasm) resulting from intense surgical stimulation that may occur during these procedures.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR at 2 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Complications	AH	See Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures, p. 882.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Urinary retention
Pain management	Morphine 0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv or fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv prn; ketorolac 30 mg im or iv

SCROTAL OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Scrotal operations are minor, common urologic procedures, performed on an outpatient basis.

Simple orchiectomy is performed as an alternative to medical castration (which uses either estrogens or LH-RH agonists on men with metastatic prostate cancer for androgen ablation). Orchiectomy is always bilateral. A small scrotal incision is made, and the testis delivered. The spermatic cord is cross-clamped, transected, and suture-ligated.

Usual preop diagnosis: Metastatic prostate cancer

Vasovasostomy is the reestablishment of the continuity of the vas deferens and restoration of fertility following a previously performed vasectomy. Through a small scrotal incision, the testis and spermatic cord are delivered. The site of previous vasectomy is identified and excised and the two ends of the vas deferens anastomosed. It is bilateral and requires the use of either the operating microscope or magnifying loupes.

Usual preop diagnosis: Infertility 2° vasectomy

Hydrocelectomy: The testis, with the surrounding hydrocele (Fig. 9-19), is delivered through a scrotal incision. The wall of the hydrocele is excised and the edges sutured around the epididymis to prevent recurrence.

Variant procedure or approach: Aspiration used as a temporizing approach because recurrence is almost 100%.

Usual preop diagnosis: Hydrocele

Spermatocelectomy: A spermatocele is a cyst of the epididymis, usually excised with the part of the epididymis from which it arises.

Variant procedure: Aspiration as a temporizing maneuver until the operation can be performed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Spermatocele or epididymal cyst

Insertion of testicular prosthesis: A small incision is made in the scrotal skin, and a pouch is created by blunt dissection in dartos fascia. The prosthesis is placed in the pouch and fixed to the dartos fascia to prevent prosthesis migration.

Usual preop diagnosis: Absent testis, either congenital or following orchiectomy

Reduction of testicular torsion is an emergency operation that must be performed within 6 h of occurrence to prevent irreversible ischemic damage to the testis. Through a small scrotal incision, the testis is reduced and fixed to the dartos fascia to prevent retorsion.

Usual preop diagnosis: Acute testicular torsion

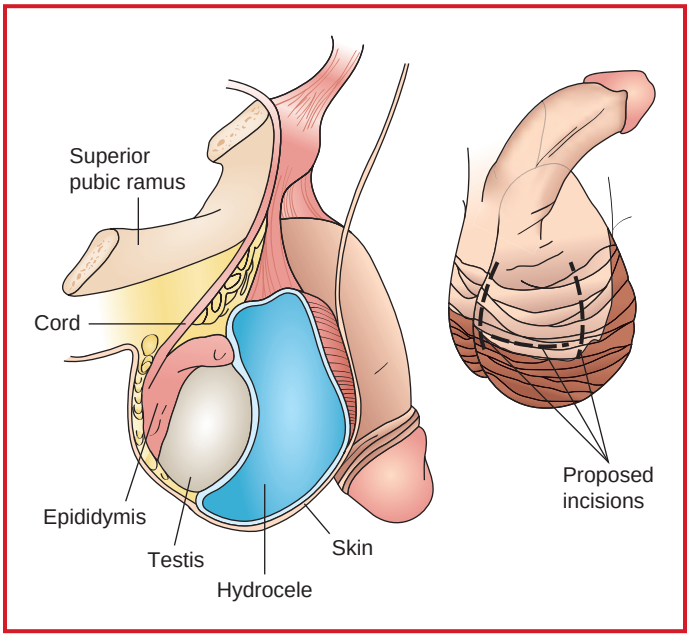


Figure 9-19. Scrotal hydrocele: scrotal incision.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES	
Position	Supine
Incision	Scrotal (Fig. 9-19, inset)
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope: magnifying loupe for vasovasostomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1 h
EBL	Negligible
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Scrotal hematoma: 2% Wound infection: 2%
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages
Incidence	Common
Etiology	See preop diagnosis for each procedure, above.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for scrotal operations typically fall into two groups: young, otherwise healthy patients, and an older population who may present with metastatic prostate cancer accompanied by other medical conditions. The latter group is the focus of this preop evaluation.

Respiratory	Pulmonary disease may be present in elderly patients requiring orchiectomy. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Cardiac disease may be present in elderly patients requiring orchiectomy. **Tests:** Consider ECG; others, if indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Document neurologic exam before regional anesthesia in patients with metastatic prostate carcinoma (spinal-cord or nerve-root compression may be present preop).
Musculoskeletal	✓ for presence of spinal metastases if orchiectomy is done for palliation of prostate carcinoma. Extensive lumbar metastases may preclude the use of spinal or epidural anesthesia (relative contraindication). **Tests:** L-spine films if Hx suggestive of spinal metastases.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation prn anxiety (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h prior to surgery; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Local anesthesia (with sedation) is acceptable for simpler operations (vasectomy, orchiectomy). Procedures that are longer or more complex may require spinal, epidural, or GA. A sensory level of T10 is required to block pain 2° testicular manipulation. Many of these procedures are done on an outpatient basis, and the anesthetic should be appropriately planned to facilitate early discharge.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–12 mg. For shorter procedures(< 1 h), consider low-dose bupivacaine (0.75%, 7.5 mg) or mepivacaine (1.5%, 45 mg). Lidocaine may be used, but the incidence of transient neurologic symptoms is significant.
Epidural	1.5–2% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–20 mL; supplement with 5–10 mL as needed. Supplemental iv sedation with local or regional techniques (e.g., midazolam 1–2 mg, fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv prn anxiety or discomfort).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Consider use of LMA.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation usually not imperative. Deeper levels of anesthesia are usually required to obtund autonomic reflexes (e.g., HTN, laryngospasm) resulting from intense surgical stimulation that may occur during these procedures.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV:18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	***NB:** peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury 2° lithotomy position	Peroneal nerve injury manifested by foot drop and loss of sensation on dorsum of foot. Seek neurology consultation.

Pain management	Ketorolac 30 mg im or iv in adults ± morphine 2–4 mg iv or fentanyl 25–50 mcg iv prn	Following orchiopexy, high incidence of postop pain, which may be reduced by ilioinguinal/iliohypogastric nerve blocks.

PERINEAL OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Urethroplasty: Urethral strictures that do not respond to transurethral dilation and incision are corrected with urethroplasty. A transverse or longitudinal perineal incision is made and carried down to the urethra, which is dissected free from surrounding tissues. The strictured area is excised and end-to-end anastomosis is performed over a catheter. Repair of a long urethral stricture may require placement of a patch from the scrotum, foreskin, or buccal mucosa.

Variant procedure: **Transurethral incision and dilation**, which is associated with a 30–50% recurrence rate.

Usual preop diagnosis: Urethral stricture, usually posttraumatic

Urethrectomy: Partial or total urethrectomy is done through a longitudinal perineal incision. The urethra is dissected free of surrounding tissues and followed proximally and distally from the membranous urethra to the external urethral meatus. In total urethrectomy, a tubularized skin graft is interposed between membranous urethra and perineal skin.

Usual preop diagnosis: Urethral carcinoma

Insertion of artificial urinary sphincter, performed for incontinence, consists of a perineal incision, through which a cuff is inserted around the bulbar urethra. A suprapubic incision is made to place the reservoir and pump, which inflates and deflates the cuff.

Usual preop diagnosis: Urinary incontinence

Transperineal prostate seed implantation (brachytherapy): High doses of radiation can be delivered to the prostate by implanting radioactive seeds directly into the prostate gland. Using a transrectal ultrasound probe,

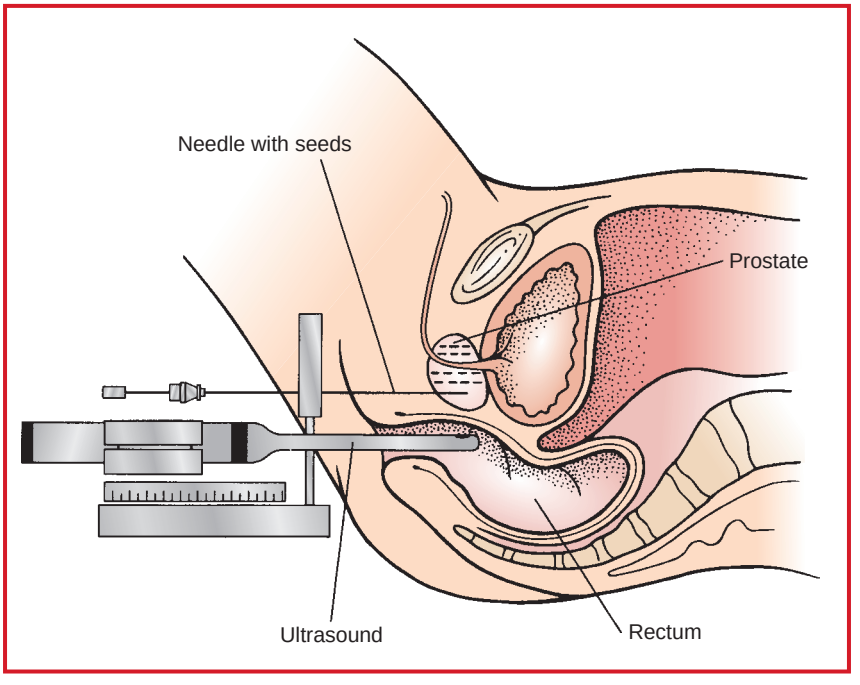


Figure 9-20. Transperineal brachytherapy of prostate gland.

radioactive seeds (iodine 125 or palladium 103) are implanted into the prostate (Fig. 9-20). The patient is placed in lithotomy position, and a rectal ultrasound probe, with a perineal grid attached, is introduced to image the prostate. Radioactive seeds are then placed transperineally using preloaded needles. Preop dosing calculations determine the number and location of the seeds. This procedure is done by a combined team of radiation oncologists and urologists. No special radiation precautions are necessary for the OR team.

Usual preop diagnosis: Prostate cancer

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Urethroplasty	Urethrectomy	Insertion of Sphincter	Brachytherapy
Position	Lithotomy	⇐	⇐	⇐
Incision	Perineal (Fig. 9-6)	⇐	⇐ and scrotal (Fig. 9-19, inset)	None
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg im/iv	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3 h	2 h	3 h	2 h
EBL	100 mL	300 mL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐	⇐	PACU, outpatient
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Wound infection: 2%	⇐	⇐ Erosion of the urethra: 10% Extrusion of sphincter: 2%	Urinary retention
Pain score	3	3	4	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages	Adults	Older adults	50–80 yr
Incidence	< 1% of urologic procedures	⇐	2% of radical prostatectomy	10% of prostate cancer
Etiology	Traumatic strictures	Unknown	Radical prostatectomy (2%); incontinence	Aging

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This is a generally healthy patient population; preop considerations should be based on H&P.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedation prn anxiety in adults (e.g., lorazepam 1–2 mg po 1–2 h prior to surgery; midazolam 1–2 mg iv in preop area).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal or GA are acceptable, with choice dependent on length of procedure, position, patient age, coexisting disease, and patient preference. A sacral sensory level (saddle block) is usually sufficient. Lumbar epidural anesthesia may be less reliable at providing sacral anesthesia and offers no advantages over the above techniques for shorter procedures, although caudal anesthesia may be an acceptable alternative.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10 mg in 7.5% dextrose: hyperbaric tetracaine 10 mg (with epinephrine [200 mcg] for longer procedures)
Caudal	0.5% bupivacaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL 15–20 mL. Supplemental iv sedation.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Consider use of LMA.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3); muscle relaxation usually not required. Deeper levels of anesthesia are usually required to obtund autonomic reflexes (e.g., HTN, laryngospasm) resulting from intense surgical stimulation that may occur during these procedures.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV:18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patients with arthritis or other musculoskeletal disorders may not tolerate the exaggerated lithotomy position, thus precluding the use of a regional technique. ***NB:** In lithotomy position, peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Anticipate ↓ BP on return from lithotomy position.	Rx: volume (200–500 mL NS/LR) or ephedrine (5 mg iv) may be necessary.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury 2° lithotomy position	Peroneal nerve injury manifested as foot drop with loss of sensation over dorsum of foot. Seek neurology consultation.
Pain management	Mild-to-moderate pain	Rx: morphine 0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv prn

VAGINAL OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Vaginal operations are performed by both urologists and gynecologists. They include the following:

Repair of vesicovaginal fistulas: The vaginal approach is usually recommended for small and distally located vesicovaginal fistulas; otherwise, a transabdominal repair is performed (see Open Bladder Operations, p. 903). An incision

is made in the anterior vaginal wall around the fistula, which is excised. Bladder and vaginal walls are separated and closed with interposition of tissues or flaps to separate the incisions and prevent recurrence. A Foley catheter is left indwelling.

Variant approach: Transabdominal repair of vesicovaginal fistula (see Open Bladder Operations, p. 903).

Usual preop diagnosis: Vesicovaginal fistula

Operations to correct stress urinary incontinence: Many procedures have been designed to correct female urinary incontinence. They fall into two basic groups: (a) operations to correct hypermobility of the urethra and (b) operations to correct nonfunctioning urethra. The operation most commonly used by urologists to correct hypermobility is the **Stamey procedure** (Fig. 9-21) or **vesical neck suspension.** The operation is performed through two small suprapubic incisions, one on each side of the midline, and an anterior vaginal incision. A nylon suture is placed in a loop from either side of the bladder neck and not around it. Cystoscopy is used to ensure proper placement and to prevent the suture from transversing the bladder. When the sutures are pulled up and tied over the anterior rectus sheath, they pull the bladder neck up to its original position behind the symphysis pubis and restore the acute posterior ureterovesical angle. A variant of this procedure is the **Raz bladder neck suspension,** where bolsters are not used.

Operations to correct a nonfunctioning urethra include **submucosal collagen injection** at the bladder neck or construction of a **sling.** Rectus fascia, fascia lata of the thigh, or the vaginal wall can be used to construct a sling around the urethra. All these techniques involve a combined suprapubic and vaginal approach.

Sling operations are the most common procedures done for correction of stress incontinence. These procedures can be done vaginally or open via a suprapubic incision. A variety of materials, both natural and synthetic, have been used. Many modifications have been made with reference to the placement of anchorage of the sling; therefore, there are a large number of procedures with different names utilizing the same principle. Most slings are placed midurethra.

Variant approach: The **Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz operation,** which is performed retropubically, sutures the anterior portion of the urethra, bladder neck, and bladder to the pubic bone. Other modifications include laparoscopic suspensions and ligament surgery. Some patients have cystoceles and rectoceles, which can be repaired at the same time as the vaginal sling surgery.

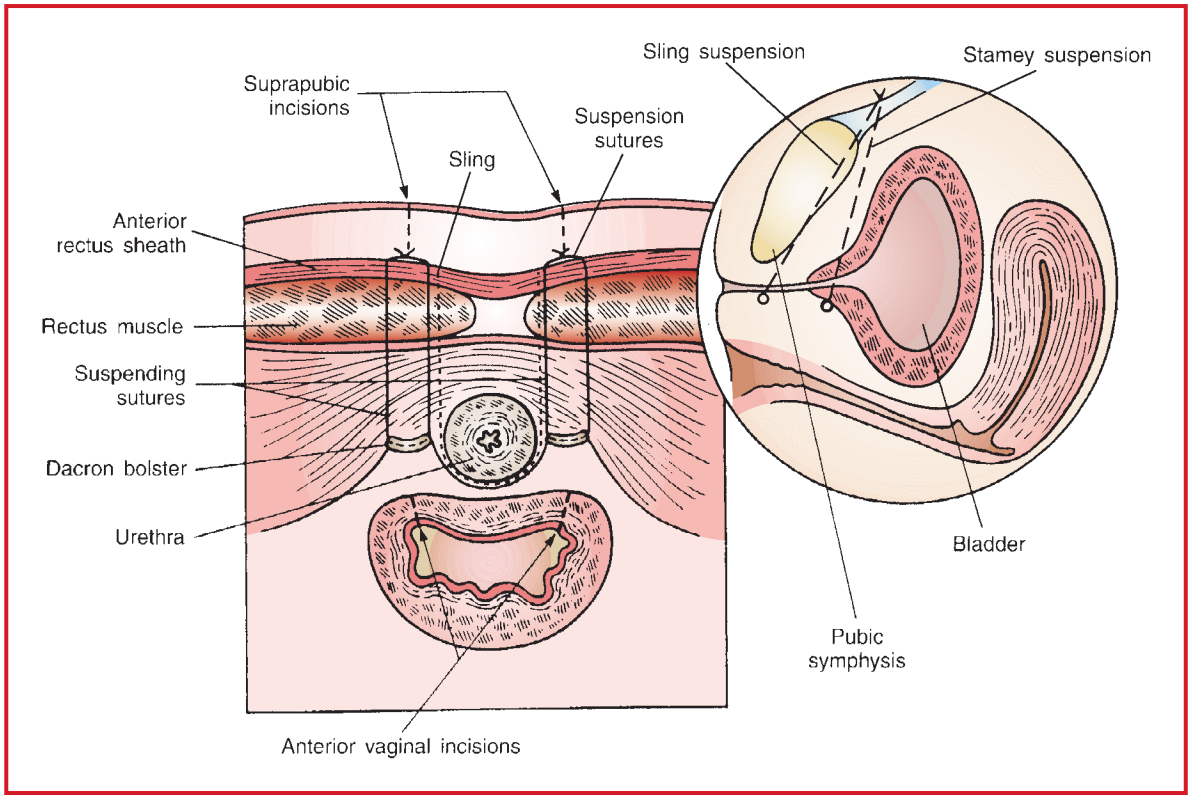


Figure 9-21. Stamey and sling procedures, sectional view; **inset** shows lateral view.

Usual preop diagnosis: Stress urinary incontinence

Excision of urethral diverticulum: Urethral diverticula are extremely rare and need excision only if they are the cause of recurrent UTIs. An incision is made in the anterior vaginal wall over the urethral diverticulum, which is dissected all around until it is attached only by its neck. It is excised and the neck closed. A Foley catheter is left indwelling, and the vaginal incision is closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Recurrent UTI 2° infected urethral diverticulum

Repair of cystocele and rectocele: Some patients with urinary incontinence also present with prolapse of the bladder or rectum into the vagina. These can be repaired at the same time as incontinence surgery. A vaginal incision (anterior for cystocele, posterior for rectocele) is made and dissected laterally to free the bladder or rectum from the vagina. The defect is repaired and the redundant vaginal wall excised.

Usual preop diagnosis: Incontinence with pelvic prolapse, cystocele, or rectocele

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Repair of Vesicovaginal Fistula	Correction of Stress Incontinence	Excision of Urethral Diverticulum
Position	Lithotomy	⇐	⇐
Incision	Anterior vaginal	Anterior vaginal; suprapubic	Anterior vaginal
Special instrumentation	None	Cystoscope	None
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 80 mg iv, slowly	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	1 h	⇐
EBL	200 mL	500 mL	200 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: 2% Recurrence: 2%	⇐ 10% Urinary retention: 20%	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3	5	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–80 yr	⇐	⇐
Incidence	< 1% of urologic procedures	5% of urologic procedures	< 1% of urologic procedures
Etiology	Traumatic delivery; iatrogenic following hysterectomy (< 1%)	Childbirth	Congenital (extremely rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

This is a generally healthy patient population. Preop considerations should be based on H&P.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Spinal, continuous lumbar epidural, or GA are acceptable, with choice dependent on age, coexisting disease, and patient preference. A block level of T9–T10 is recommended for operations involving the bladder, whereas somewhat higher levels of anesthesia may be necessary if a suprapubic incision is made. Epidural anesthesia may be less reliable than spinal in providing sacral anesthesia.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	0.75% bupivacaine 10–12 mg (1.6 mL)
Epidural	2% lidocaine with epinephrine 5 mcg/mL, 15–20 mL. Supplemental iv sedation.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation not imperative.	
Emergence	No specific considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	***NB:** In lithotomy position, peroneal nerve compression at lateral fibular head → foot drop.
Complications	Anticipate ↓ BP when returning from lithotomy. Bladder perforation	Rx: volume (200–500 mL NS/LR) or ephedrine (5 mg iv) may be necessary. Bladder perforation may present as shoulder pain in the awake patient but may go unnoticed in the patient under GA. Sx include unexplained HTN, tachycardia, ↓ BP (rare).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury 2° lithotomy position Bladder perforation (see above).	Peroneal nerve injury is manifested as foot drop with loss of sensation on dorsum of foot. Seek neurology consultation.
Pain management	Consider ketorolac 30 mg iv/im in adults; supplement with morphine 0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv prn.	

Suggested Reading

1. Ashok K, Petri E: Failures and complications in pelvic floor surgery. *World J Urol* 2012; 30(4):487–94.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR ROBOTIC-ASSISTED LAPAROSCOPIC PROCEDURES

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

The anesthetic considerations for the majority of laparoscopic and robotic procedures on the urologic system are similar and are thus summarized in this section rather than repeated for each individual procedure.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: In general, because laparoscopic surgery involves insufflation of the abdomen with CO_2, and may also require steep Trendelenburg position, GA with tracheal intubation and controlled ventilation is the technique of choice.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-1)	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation advised.	
Emergence	Ensure airway patency (subcutaneous emphysema → airway compromise)	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga x 1 LR/NS @ 2–6 mL/kg/h warm fluid, humidify gasses	Blood loss may be difficult to estimate. In general, less than for open procedures.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± arterial line ± CVP	Consider invasive monitors for nephrectomy, prostatectomy
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points	Prolonged duration of robotic procedures in lithotomy position of special concern (peroneal nerve injury).
Complications	CO_2 insufflation	→ ↑ intraabdominal pressure → ↓ venous return, ↓ BP; also ↑ airway pressure, ↑ PCO_2/$ETCO_2$. * **NB:** right mainstem intubation can occur because of shift of diaphragm cephalad.
	Retroperitoneal gas insufflation	→ subcutaneous emphysema (can track to head and neck → airway compromise), pneumothorax.
	VAE	Gas embolism via prostatic venous sinuses reported

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Peroneal nerve injury (foot drop) Upper airway obstruction	Other pressure point injuries may occur 2° subcutaneous emphysema tracking up to the head and neck
Pain management	Consider ketorolac 30 mg iv/im in adults	Pain less than for open procedures. Supplement with morphine 0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv prn, followed by PCA.
Tests	Hct	If excessive blood loss

Suggested Readings

1. Conacher ID, Soomro NA Rix D: Anaesthesia for laparoscopic urological surgery. *Br J Anaesth* 2004; 93(6):859–64.
2. Nelson JB: Debate: open radical prostatectomy vs. laparoscopic vs. robotic. *Urol Oncol* 2007; 25(6):490–3.
3. Zorn KC, Gofrit ON, Orvieto MA, et al: Da Vinci robot error and failure rates: single institution experience on a single three-arm robot unit of more than 700 consecutive robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomies. *J Endourol* 2007; 21(11):1341–4.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

TURP: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WNCsunVC4Rs

KTP Laser TURP (green light laser prostatectomy): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TKtMMao5vpY

Weill Cornell Robotic Prostatectomy: 3-D Animation (2/6): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5Exd86dbT68

Nephrectomy (laparoscopic, hand-assisted): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JJK5n6RGC_s

Robotic / DaVinci™ Partial Nephrectomy; Kurt Strom MD, Joshua Holyoak MD:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=w5zfOsyz1wQ

Minimally Invasive, Open Robotic Cystectomy for Bladder Cancer Removal:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fJ7JjDqrr-g

SECTION

10.0 ORTHOPEDIC SURGERY

CHAPTER

10.1 Hand Surgery

SURGEONS

Vincent R. Hentz, MD
Kimberley Wirsing, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Lindsey Vokach-Brodsky, MB, ChB, FFARCSI

DARRACH PROCEDURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The **Darrach procedure** (Fig. 10.1-1) is a resection of the distal ulna. The distal 2 cm of the ulna is resected subperiosteally, and local soft tissues are used to stabilize and cover the remaining ulna. It is commonly performed in patients who have had a disruption of the distal radioulnar joint with subluxation of the ulna. It also is indicated for patients who have had a malunion of a distal radius fracture such that the radius has shortened relative to the ulna or is abnormally angulated, resulting in dorsal subluxation of the ulna and impingement of the ulnar head upon the carpus. This causes painful motion of the wrist and forearm and posttraumatic degenerative arthritis of the ulnar head, carpus, and sigmoid notch of the distal radius. Disorders of the distal radioulnar joint and degeneration of the ulnar head, which may lead to attrition rupture of the overlying extensor tendons, are common in rheumatoid arthritis. This dorsal prominence of the ulnar head is treated by **Darrach resection,** combined with a soft-tissue procedure to stabilize the remaining ulna. Osteoarthritic degeneration of the distal radioulnar joint, either 2° trauma (see above) or due to idiopathic osteoarthritis, responds well to this procedure.

Variant procedure or approaches: The **Soavé-Kapandji procedure** retains the articular portion of the distal ulna and fuses it to the sigmoid notch. The area of distal ulna that is resected is proximal to the joint; instability of the proximal stump may become problematic. Hemiresection with tendon interposition as well as distal ulnar arthroplasty are less common techniques for managing distal radioulnar arthritis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Arthritis or derangement of the distal radioulnar joint; rheumatoid arthritis; ulnar impingement syndrome; malunion of Colles' fracture or other fracture of the distal radius

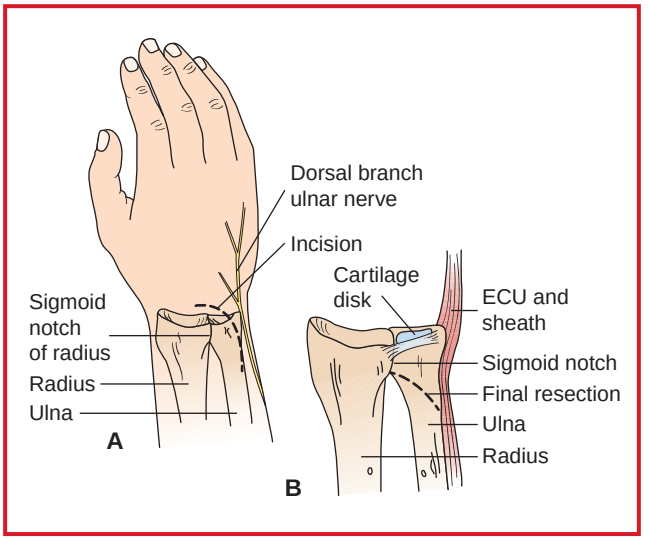


Figure 10.1-1. The Darrach procedure. **A:** Skin incision. Avoid dorsal cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve. **B:** The distal ulna is resected at the radioulnar articulation just proximal to the sigmoid notch. (ECU = extensor carpi ulnaris) (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Dorsal-ulnar, over distal ulna
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1–2.5 h, depending on associated procedures
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Routine skin closure; postop splint placed at conclusion of procedure.
EBL	Minimal; performed under tourniquet control
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Ulnar nerve injury: Rare Postop swelling (rarely requires specific treatment)
Pain score	5–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adult population
Male:Female	Slight predominance of females, due to incidence of malunion of Colles' fractures in women with senile osteoporosis as well as incidence of inflammatory arthropathies in women
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	See Usual preop diagnosis, above.
Associated conditions	Rheumatoid arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.

Suggested Reading

1. Grawe B, Heincelman C, Stern P: Functional results of the Darrach procedure: a long-term outcome study. *J Hand Surg Am* 2012; 37(12):2475–80.
2. Nolan WB, Eaton RG: A Darrach procedure for distal ulnar pathology derangements. *Clin Orthop* 1992; 275:85–9.

DORSAL STABILIZATION AND EXTENSOR SYNOVECTOMY OF THE RHEUMATOID WRIST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure is indicated for patients with rheumatoid arthritis and extensor tenosynovitis refractory to medical treatment, as well as extensor tendon ruptures and/or intercarpal synovitis. The procedure is performed under tourniquet control through a straight dorsal incision over the wrist. A **radical tenosynovectomy** of the extensor tendons in all six extensor compartments is carried out. Tendon ruptures or impending ruptures are repaired with tendon grafts or side-to-side anastomoses. Bone spurs are removed, and a synovectomy of the distal radioulnar joint is carried out. A **modified Darrach procedure,** with resection or osteoplasty of the distal ulna, is usually performed. If there is evidence of synovitis within the wrist joint, a synovectomy is performed through a dorsal arthrotomy. A flap of the extensor retinaculum is transposed beneath the extensor tendons to reinforce the dorsal wrist ligaments and, thus, stabilize the wrist

to prevent volar subluxation of the carpus. A posterior interosseous neurectomy is carried out at the same time. The remaining extensor retinaculum is divided into two transverse strips, and one is used to stabilize the distal ulna. The second strip is placed dorsal to the extensor tendons so they will not bowstring during wrist extension.

Usual preop diagnosis: Rheumatoid arthritis with extensor tendon tenosynovitis; extensor tendon rupture; distal radioulnar joint synovitis and/or subluxation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Dorsal wrist (Fig. 10.1-2)
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Postop splint
EBL	Minimal; tourniquet used until dressing in place
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Extremity swelling (typically does not require treatment) Delayed healing 2° immunosuppression and steroid use Wound infection: Rare (unless patient is immunosuppressed)
Pain score	3–5

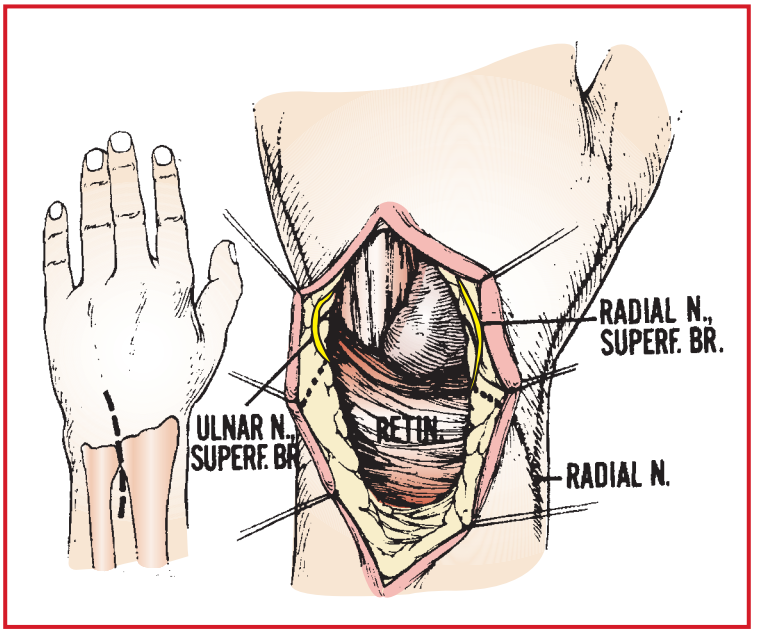


Figure 10.1-2. Incision and exposure for dorsal tenosynovectomy. Note superficial branches of radial and ulnar nerves protected in skin flaps. (Illustration by Elizabeth Roselius, 1988. Reproduced with permission from Green DP, Hotchkiss RN and Pederson WC, eds: *Operative Hand Surgery,* 2nd edition. Churchill Livingstone: 1988.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Procedure uncommon before 4th decade
Male:Female	As in all patients with rheumatoid arthritis, females more common.
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Connective tissue disorder; rheumatoid arthritis or variant
Associated conditions	All conditions associated with connective tissue disorders, including active rheumatoid arthritis, steroid dependency, immunosuppressive therapy, and/or skin fragility

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.

Suggested Reading

1. Papp SR, Athwal GS, Pichora DR: The rheumatoid wrist. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2006; 14(2):65–77.
2. Purdy BA, Wilson, RL: Synovectomy/tenosynovectomy tendon rupture and repair. In: Cooney RP, ed. *The Wrist*, 2nd edition. Wolters Kluwer, Philadelphia: 2010.

METACARPOPHALANGEAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINT ARTHROPLASTY AND ARTHRODESIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Joint replacement** (arthroplasty) in the hand is most commonly indicated in patients with rheumatoid arthritis with severe joint destruction → pain and dysfunction. Another option in these patients is arthrodesis or joint fusion, which involves removing the degenerative cartilaginous surfaces and using implanted metal to secure two opposing bone surfaces. Joint arthroplasty is rarely indicated in patients with osteoarthritis. The most common prostheses, made of silicone rubber and popularized by Swanson, differ from total joint replacement in the hip or knee in that they do not function as true joints, but rather as spacers in a **resection arthroplasty.** Most of the stability and motion of these joints depend on meticulous soft-tissue reconstructions involving tendon and ligament transfers, as well as intensive postop physical therapy. To obtain good results, patients must be well motivated and understand their disease process and what will be asked of them during the recovery period. The results for **metacarpophalangeal (MP) arthroplasty** are far better than those obtained in the proximal interphalangeal joints. **Proximal interphalangeal joint arthroplasty** is sometimes complicated by soft-tissue deformities in rheumatoid arthritis such as swan-neck and boutonniere deformities. A swan-neck deformity consists of hyperextension of the PIP joint and flexion of the DIP joint. Conversely, a boutonniere deformity involves flexion at the PIP joint and hyperextension of the DIP joint. It is generally not indicated for the index finger due to the high stresses associated with pinch that may compromise the longevity or stability of an arthroplasty. **Distal interphalangeal (DIP) arthroplasty** is rarely performed because these patients do well with fusions. The procedure for the MP joints is performed through a dorsal transverse incision under tourniquet control. The metacarpal heads are removed with an oscillating saw and the intramedullary canals reamed to accept the stems of the prostheses. After they have been placed with a no-touch technique, the capsule is closed, and the supporting ligaments are reconstructed with centralization of extensor tendons. Technique for PIP joints is similar, although some surgeons will use a volar approach. A splint with support for each finger is placed at the conclusion of surgery. Reconstructive procedures of the wrist and fingers can be combined with arthroplasty.

Variant procedure or approaches: Some surgeons favor longitudinal incisions rather than a transverse incision for the approach to the MP joints. A volar approach to the PIP joint may be used.

Usual preop diagnosis: Rheumatoid arthritis or other connective-tissue disorder

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Dorsal hand, transverse, or longitudinal
Special instrumentation	MP or PIP joint prostheses and associated instruments for preparing the medullary canal; power for bone cuts; K-wires, plates, or wire loop for fusion; pneumatic tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2.5 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Critical postop splinting
EBL	Minimal; tourniquet used throughout procedure.
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Swelling (may require early splitting of dressing) Wound infection: Rare (if it occurs, requires removal of prosthesis) Prosthesis infection: Rare
Pain score	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	> 50 yr
Male:Female	As in rheumatoid arthritis, females predominate.
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Rheumatoid arthritis or other connective-tissue disorder
Associated conditions	As in rheumatoid arthritis (e.g., skin fragility, steroid dependency, immunosuppression)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.

ARTHRODESIS OF THE WRIST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A variety of arthrodeses can be performed about the wrist. These include **radiopancarpal arthrodesis (total wrist fusion)** and radiolunate, radioscapholunate, and intercarpal arthrodeses (partial wrist fusions). Radiopancarpal arthrodesis is generally performed as a salvage procedure for wrist pathology that cannot be treated with a procedure that preserves wrist motion. These indications include posttraumatic degenerative arthritis following fractures, dislocations and ligamentous injuries, idiopathic osteoarthritis, and/or rheumatoid arthritis. Predictable patterns of arthritis occur as a result of both scapholunate interosseous ligament injury (scapholunate advanced collapse) and scaphoid nonunion (scaphoid nonunion advanced collapse). As arthritic changes progress patients are no longer candidates for either reconstruction of the ligaments or fixation of the scaphoid. Another alternative to fusion is a proximal

row carpectomy, which is a motion preserving procedure that may be used in patients without advanced capitolunate arthritis. In the nonrheumatoid patient, an effective procedure is an arthrodesis using an iliac crest bone graft fixed with plate and screws. More recent techniques with improved plate designs may not require iliac crest bone graft. As another option, local bone from the distal radius may be utilized. It has been shown that a position of fusion in 10–15° of dorsiflexion provides the greatest grip strength. In the rheumatoid patient, a technique using intramedullary fixation with a large-diameter Steinmann pin is preferred. Rheumatoid bone is osteoporotic, 2° disuse and chronic steroid administration and screw fixation is not ideal in this soft bone. Bone graft is obtained locally in these patients, usually from the resected ulnar head. **Radiolunate fusion** also is indicated in rheumatoid patients who have progressive ulnar translation of the carpus. The lunate acts to block this translation of the carpus. **Radioscapholunate fusion** is indicated in patients with radiocarpal arthritis. This procedure preserves about 50% of wrist motion that occurs at the midcarpal joint. Bone graft is necessary and is easily obtained from the distal radius through the same incision. There are a variety of **intercarpal arthrodeses,** including **triscaphe** (scaphotrapezial trapezoid), **scaphocapitate, lunotriquetral** and **four-corner** (capitate-hamate-triquetral-lunate). These procedures are indicated for the treatment of intercarpal arthritis, carpal instabilities due to intercarpal ligament tears, and Kienböck's disease (aseptic necrosis of the lunate). The **Cloward cervical spine fusion instrumentation** is useful for obtaining a bicortical plug of bone from the iliac crest with minimal dissection. Local bone graft from the distal radius may be obtained using curettes or larger core needles.

Usual preop diagnosis: Posttraumatic arthritis; osteoarthritis or rheumatoid arthritis; Kienböck's disease; carpal instability

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table. The iliac crest may be prepped and elevated with a sandbag beneath the ipsilateral buttock.
Incision	Dorsal wrist, transverse or longitudinal
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet; possibly power for preparation of opposing bone surfaces; K-wires, screws or special instrumentation for fusion
Unique considerations	Bone-graft donor site
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Immobilization with splints
EBL	Minimal; procedure is performed under tourniquet control. If iliac crest bone graft is used, there may be increased blood loss.
Postop care	PACU → home, sometimes admission for pain control and elevation
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Nonunion of fusion: ≤ 20%
Pain score	5–7, if no iliac graft; 6–9, if iliac graft used

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	> 40 yr
Male:Female	Females predominate in rheumatoid arthritis; males in posttraumatic arthritis.
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma (common); rheumatoid arthritis (common)
Associated conditions	Typical for rheumatoid arthritis (e.g., skin fragility, steroid dependency, immunosuppression)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.

Suggested Reading

1. Rizzo M, Cooney WP III: Current concepts and treatment for the rheumatoid wrist. *Hand Clin* 2011; 27(1):57–72.
2. Wysocki RW, Cohen MS: Complications of limited and total wrist arthrodesis. *Hand Clin* 2010; 26(2):221–8.

TOTAL WRIST REPLACEMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The major indication for this procedure is rheumatoid arthritis of the wrist. **Total wrist replacement (TWR)** is often recommended in patients with bilateral wrist disease. An arthrodesis will be carried out on the nondominant helping hand and a TWR on the dominant hand to preserve dexterity. Many surgeons prefer to avoid **bilateral wrist arthrodesis,** although some patients with bilateral fusions have been able to function relatively well. Currently available protheses are suitable only for low-demand patients and are not indicated for high-demand patients with posttraumatic arthritis, especially younger patients. These patients will do better with wrist arthrodesis. Silastic wrist prostheses are associated with a high failure rate and silicone synovitis, and their use has been abandoned by many surgeons. The most commonly used prostheses today are metal on ultra-high-molecular-weight polyethylene articulations that are fixed with methylmethacrylate cement or bone ingrowth into porous stems. The distal radius articular surface is resected to accept the implant, the proximal carpal row is resected, and the distal carpus is prepared to accept the distal implant. All of these prostheses depend on intact, normally functioning wrist extensor tendons, especially the extensor carpi radialis brevis, for balance and function. Absence of this tendon is felt by many to be an absolute contraindication to this procedure. Because these tendons are so commonly affected by rheumatoid arthritis, the patient population for this procedure is limited. In addition to functioning tendons, meticulously accurate placement of the components in relation to the centers of rotation of the wrist is critical for success. If the centers of rotation of the prosthesis do not duplicate those of the normal wrist, early component loosening and failure is likely. Intraop radiographs are useful in verifying component position. These patients frequently have other upper extremity deformities that will require reconstruction. Because of the complexity of TWR, other reconstructive procedures are not carried out at the same time.

Usual preop diagnosis: Rheumatoid arthritis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Dorsal wrist
Special instrumentation	TWR instrumentation; power for bone cuts; pneumatic tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Postop splint
EBL	Minimal; procedure performed under tourniquet control.
Postop care	PACU → home vs admission for pain control and elevation
Mortality	None associated with procedure

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Infection: Rare (but requires removal of prosthesis and methylmethacrylate cement, if used) Poor wound healing
Pain score	4–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Rare before 4th decade; most in 6th and 7th decades
Male:Female	Females outnumber males, as in rheumatoid arthritis.
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Rheumatoid arthritis
Associated conditions	Rheumatoid arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.

Suggested Reading

1. Weiss AP, Kamal RN, Shultz P: Total wrist arthroplasty. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2013; 21(3):140–8.

THUMB CARPOMETACARPAL JOINT FUSION/ ARTHROPLASTY/STABILIZATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients with degenerative arthritis of the carpometacarpal (CMC) joint of the thumb present with subluxation, pain, and synovitis of the joint. A **synovectomy and ligament reconstruction** to restore stability will treat pain and may delay further degeneration. This procedure is performed through a curvilinear incision over the joint. A distally attached graft of the radial 1/2 of the flexor carpi radialis tendon is passed through a drill hole in the base of the metacarpal and woven into the joint capsule. In the later stages of degeneration, patients must be treated with either an arthroplasty or an arthrodesis. For more progressive arthritis a variety of **arthroplasty techniques** are available to the surgeon; most involve removal of degenerated articular surfaces, soft-tissue interposition and often K-wire fixation to suspend the metacarpal is used. Cemented arthroplasty techniques were initially associated with a high loosening rate and fell out of favor. Newer designs and techniques do not have long-term follow-up yet. The status of the MCP joint of the thumb must be considered prior to CMC intervention. Hyperextension at the MCP joint will increase forces across any CMC procedure.

Variant procedure or approaches: Some surgeons choose to address CMC arthritis arthroscopically with joint debridement and sometimes material interposition.

Usual preop diagnosis: Osteoarthritis of CMC joint; basal joint arthritis; synovitis of CMC joint; CMC joint dislocation; trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Curvilinear over joint at base of thumb. If soft-tissue interposition is used, additional incisions may be required.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet; power if K-wire suspension is to be used
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1.5–2 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
EBL	Minimal; procedures performed under tourniquet control.
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Nonunion of arthrodesis: ≤ 20% Particulate synovitis (silicone rubber prostheses)
Pain score	8–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Joint stabilization in 3rd–5th decades; arthroplasty and arthrodesis in 5th–8th decades
Male:Female	Basal joint instability and arthritis much more prevalent in women
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma may play a role in producing instability. Intraarticular fracture of the base of the first metacarpal with a nonanatomic reduction → incongruence of the joint → posttraumatic arthritis. Rheumatoid arthritis → instability and degeneration of the joint. Congenital ligamentous laxity → unstable basal joints and arthritis in many patients.
Associated conditions	Rheumatoid arthritis; osteoarthritis; carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR WRIST PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: Darrach procedure; dorsal stabilization and extensor synovectomy of the rheumatoid wrist; metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joint arthroplasty; arthrodesis of the wrist; total wrist replacement; thumb carpometacarpal joint fusion/arthroscopy/stabilization)

PREOPERATIVE

Airway	Rheumatoid involvement of the C-spine, TMJ, and cricoarytenoid joint (CAJ) are common in this patient population. Erosion of cervical vertebrae → unstable C-spine (e.g., atlantoaxial subluxation) necessitates extreme care in head and neck manipulation. C-spine fusion (↓ neck ROM), TMJ arthritis (↓ mouth opening) and CAJ arthritis (laryngeal narrowing, hoarseness, DOE, stridor) portend difficult intubation and may necessitate awake fiberoptic intubation (p. B-6). In the case of CAJ arthritis, use of a smaller ETT may be required.
Respiratory	Rheumatoid patients may exhibit Sx of pleural effusion (✓ CXR) or pulmonary fibrosis (dyspnea, diffuse rales, ↓ diffusing capacity, honeycomb appearance in CXR). **Tests:** Consider CXR, PFTs, ABGs in affected patients.
Cardiovascular	Rheumatoid patients may suffer from pericarditis, myocarditis, valvular disease, and cardiac conduction defects. Because of the physical limitations imposed by the disease process, it may prove difficult to evaluate these patients' cardiovascular status; hence, cardiology consultation, ECG, and ECHO may be useful in preparing for surgery. **Tests:** Consider ECG and ECHO, especially in patients with severe rheumatoid arthritis.

Neurological	Rheumatoid patients may have cervical or lumbar radiculopathies that should be documented carefully preop. In addition, peripheral neuropathy with consequent sensory/motor defects may be present. **Tests:** Consider C-spine radiographs to r/o occult subluxations in rheumatoid patients with neck pain or upper extremity radiculopathy.
Musculoskeletal	Bony deformities or muscle contractures may necessitate special attention to positioning.
Hematologic	Anemia, eosinophilia, and thrombocytosis may be present. Venous access may be difficult 2° vasculitis and ↑ skin fragility (steroid-induced). Virtually all of these patients will be on some type of anti-inflammatory medication that may result in anemia or Plt inhibition. Ideally, patients should discontinue NSAIDs at least 5 d preop; aspirin, 7 d preop.
Endocrine	Rheumatoid patients may be on oral corticosteroids and require supplemental periop steroids (e.g., 100 mg hydrocortisone q 8 h iv) to treat adrenal suppression, although the routine use of "stress-dose steroids" has been questioned.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct serves as a minimum in otherwise healthy rheumatoid patients. Severe rheumatoid patients may require more extensive testing to screen for drug effects, etc. (e.g., serum electrolytes; glucose; kidney function tests; LFTs).
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional anesthesia, GA, or a combination of the two is commonly used. A brachial plexus block via the supraclavicular, axillary, or infraclavicular approach is excellent for this procedure; it is a means of avoiding tracheal intubation for GA if airway difficulty is anticipated. Furthermore, it decreases admission rate, speeds discharge from PACU in day surgery setting, and increases patient satisfaction. Intravenous regional anesthesia (Bier block) is most useful for short procedures (< 1 h). If regional anesthesia is contraindicated, rheumatoid patients may require awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6).

Regional anesthesia: 1.5% mepivacaine, 30–40 mL for routine, superficial cases; 0.5% bupivacaine, or 0.5% ropivacaine, 30–40 mL for procedures > 2.5 h or if extended analgesia is desired. Epinephrine (2.5–5 mcg/mL) may be added to decrease peak plasma concentrations of local anesthetics, although its use is controversial.

Ultrasound-guided brachial plexus block	Ultrasound-guided brachial plexus using supraclavicular, infraclavicular, or axillary approaches are all suitable for surgery below the shoulder. The infraclavicular approach is the most effective for placement of peripheral nerve catheters. The supraclavicular approach is associated with phrenic nerve blockade in 50% of patients and should be avoided in patients with respiratory compromise.
Axillary block	Infrequently used for these procedures given the superiority of a brachial plexus block. To provide similar coverage, an axillary block usually requires supplemental blocks for the intercostobrachial nerve (T2) and the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.
Bier block	The Bier block (intravenous regional anesthesia) is a technique for short (< 60 min) wrist and hand surgeries. 40–50 mL of 0.5% lidocaine is commonly used. For short procedures (< 30 min) consider reducing the dose of iv anesthetic (e.g., 25 mL of 0.5% lidocaine) and using a forearm tourniquet instead of an upper arm tourniquet. The OR staff should be alerted that iv regional anesthesia is being used, so that all are ready to proceed after the tourniquet is inflated (i.e., surgical prep ready to be performed; surgeons scrubbed, gowned, and gloved). Tourniquet pain and postop pain are reduced by adding ketorolac (20 mg) or clonidine (1 mcg/kg) to the lidocaine solution.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2) in patients with normal airways	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)	
Emergence	Skin closure frequently is followed by application of a splint, and the patient should remain anesthetized during the splinting procedure. Cases with difficult airways require awake extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h	IV placed in the contralateral upper extremity.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	Special handling required. ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes ✓ C-spine instability	As with nearly all orthopedic cases, positioning is a subtle, yet crucial aspect of anesthetic management. Rheumatoid patients may have contractures that require special attention. Steroid-dependent patients require special handling because of fragile skin.
Brachial plexus block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Inadequate block Intravascular injection Pneumothorax Persistent paresthesia	 Less frequent occurrence, compared with axillary block. Pneumothorax is very rare.
Axillary block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Inadequate block Intravascular injection Persistent paresthesia Axillary hematoma Axillary artery thrombosis	Minimal doses of local anesthetic can cause CNS toxicity if reverse flow occurs during an intraarterial injection. Axillary thrombosis is extremely rare.
Bier block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Inadequate block Thrombophlebitis	Proper exsanguination and tourniquet function is critical. Upper arm torniquet should remain inflated a minimum of 25 min. Systemic toxic reaction to the local anesthetic may occur as a result of tourniquet leak or inadvertent premature (<20 min) upper arm tourniquet release. Treatment is supportive. Sz are controlled with midazolam, with appropriate airway protection. Rx severe toxicity with Intralipid® 20% 1.5 mL/kg iv. Even with a functioning tourniquet, it is possible to overcome tourniquet pressure by injecting too vigorously. Care must be taken when switching from proximal to distal upper arm tourniquet; never deflate proximal tourniquet until verifying that distal tourniquet is working.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	PCA (p. C-3), in combination with regional block	Regional or combined regional-general anesthetic techniques are excellent for wrist procedures, especially with respect to postop pain management.
Tests	None routinely indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Arslanian B, Mehrzad R, Kramer T, Kim DC: Forearm Bier block: a new regional anesthetic technique for upper extremity surgery. *Ann Plast Surg* 2013. [Epub ahead of print]
2. Falcão LF, Perez MV, de Castro I, Yamashita AM, Tardelli MA, Amaral JL: Minimum effective volume of 0.5% bupivacaine with epinephrine in ultrasound-guided interscalene brachial plexus block. *Br J Anaesth* 2013; 110(3):450–5.
3. Green DP, Hotchkiss RN, Pederson WC, et al, eds: *Operative Hand Surgery,* 5th edition. Elsevier, New York: 2005.
4. Halaszynski TM: Ultrasound brachial plexus anesthesia and analgesia for upper extremity surgery: essentials of our current understanding, 2011. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(5):581–91.
5. Keenan MA, Stiles CM, Kaufman RL: Acquired laryngeal deviation associated with cervical spine disease in erosive polyarticular arthritis. *Anesthesiology* 1983; 58(5):441–9.
6. Lee HJ, Cho YJ, Gong HS, Rhee SH, Park HS, Baek GH: The effect of buffered lidocaine in local anesthesia: a prospective, randomized, double-blind study. *J Hand Surg Am* 2013; 38(5):471–5.
7. Marhofer P, Chan VW: Ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia: current concepts and future trends. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 104(5):1265–9.
8. Steinberg RB: The dose-response relationship of ketorolac as a component of intravenous regional anesthesia with lidocaine. *Anesth Analg* 1998; 86(4):791–3.
9. Ustuner E, Yilmaz A, Ozgencil E, Okten F, Turhan SC: Ultrasound anatomy of the brachial plexus nerves in the neurovascular bundle at the axilla in patients undergoing upper-extremity block anesthesia. *Skeletal Radiol* 2013; 42(5):707–13.
10. White RH: Preoperative evaluation of patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 1985; 14(4):287–99.

EXCISION OF GANGLION OF THE WRIST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Ganglion cysts about the wrist most commonly occur dorsally, originating from the scapholunate joint. The second most common site is volar to the scaphotrapezial joint. To prevent recurrence, these synovial fluid-filled outpouchings of the joint capsule must be excised completely. This requires isolating the stalk of the cyst to its origin and excising a small cuff of normal joint capsule with the cyst. The joint, therefore, must be entered for a complete excision. For patients with dorsal ganglia who have considerable preoperative pain a posterior interosseous neurectomy may be done at the same time as the excision. Older studies found that the recurrence rate was decreased by the use of GA, as opposed to local or regional anesthetics. This was due to the fact that a more complete excision was performed when the patient was under GA. Hand specialists today feel that regional anesthetics are quite acceptable for this procedure, as long as the surgeon performs a meticulous excision. Volar wrist ganglions commonly are near the radial artery, which is at risk during excision. A preop Allen test should be performed to ensure that, if the radial artery is interrupted, there will not be ischemia in the hand. Primary small dorsal ganglions may be approached arthroscopically.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ganglion cyst, primary or recurrent

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Longitudinal or transverse directly over cyst
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	0.5–1.5 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Routine skin closure. Large recurrent cysts may require a repair of the wrist capsule. Splint applied in OR.
EBL	Minimal; performed under tourniquet control.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Injury to radial artery: Rare (Because of the vascular interconnections between radial and ulnar arteries, loss of radial artery flow rarely → complications.)
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Very common
Etiology	Unknown. Trauma has been associated with ~50% of ganglion cysts. Underlying carpal instabilities, such as scapholunate instability, have been implicated.
Associated conditions	Carpal instability; trauma (wrist sprains and strains)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Repair of Flexor Tendon Laceration, p. 943.

PALMAR AND DIGITAL FASCIECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure is indicated for the treatment of Dupuytren's contractures of the digits, which produces a neoplastic thickening of the palmar and digital fascia. These pathologic cords (whose active cell is the myofibroblast) contract and, through their connections with the skin, tendon sheath, and phalangeal bone, cause flexion contractures of the metacarpophalangeal, proximal interphalangeal, and distal interphalangeal joints. The disease is progressive, and the only treatment is surgical excision of the fascia. Research into nonsurgical options for treatment is ongoing; some surgeons perform **needle aponeurectomy**, which incises the diseased fascia but does not remove it. In addition to the pathologic changes in the fascia of the hands, many patients also have thickening of the plantar fascia of the foot (Ledderhose disease) and the dorsal fascia of the penis (Peyronie's disease). Patients with severe contractures that have been neglected may require amputation. Because the pathologic fascia is so intimately connected to the skin, it is sometimes necessary to excise the skin and replace it with full-thickness skin grafts. The groin is an excellent donor site for these grafts.

Usual preop diagnosis: Dupuytren's contracture

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Transverse or longitudinal palmar. Groin may be used as a full-thickness skin graft donor site.
Antibiotics	Cephazolin 1g iv
Surgical time	1–3 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min. Because of the need to deflate tourniquet so that hemostasis can be obtained, Bier block is not suitable.
Closing considerations	Must obtain meticulous hemostasis. Z-plasties and skin grafts used frequently.
EBL	Minimal; dissection done under tourniquet control. A small amount of blood loss occurs when tourniquet is released and hemostasis is obtained.
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Hematoma (usually requires operative intervention) Skin necrosis (may require secondary skin grafting) Digital nerve and artery injury (Vascular injuries typically recognized immediately. An operating microscope may be needed, and the procedure will be prolonged.) Reflex-sympathetic dystrophy (so-called sympathetic flare reaction; requires prompt treatment, including stellate ganglion blockade)
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Typically, 40–60 yr
Male:Female	More common in males
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Definite heritance—associated with strong family Hx. Ethnic diathesis for northern Europeans with fair hair and skin, blue eyes. Almost never seen in Blacks. Experimental studies suggest that microhematomas 2° repetitive trauma may be important in the disease process.
Associated conditions	Cigarette smoking; alcoholism; antiseizure medications

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Repair of Flexor Tendon Laceration, p. 943.

REPAIR OF LACERATED TENDONS/NERVES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The prognosis and difficulty of a flexor tendon repair depends on the anatomic site of the laceration. There are five zones of injury in the upper extremity (Fig. 10.1-3). Zone I is distal to the flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS) tendon insertion and involves only the flexor digitorum profundus (FDP) tendon. Zone II extends from the entrance to the fibroosseous sheath at the metacarpal head to the FDS insertion. Lacerations usually involve both the FDS and FDP. These are the most difficult to repair and have the worst prognosis, as the tendons are apt to become scarred to each other and limit gliding. Zone III is the palm; Zone IV is at the level of the carpal canal; and Zone 5 is in the forearm. Lacerations in these areas are easier to repair and have good prognoses for restoration of tendon gliding and, thus, digit motion. Associated injuries to the neural structures are common. Digital nerve lacerations are seen in Zone II; median or ulnar nerve injuries, in Zone IV and proximal. Lacerations to the dorsal side of the hand involving the extensor tendons may be repaired in the emergency room as they often do not involve neurovascular

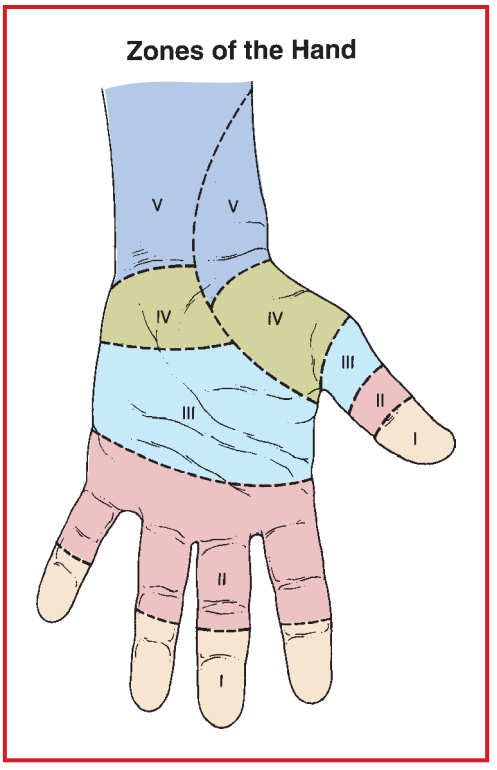


Figure 10.1-3. Zone classification of flexor tendon injuries. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2003.)

structures, and the extensor digitorum communis tendon as well as the junctura tendinea may prevent retraction of the proximal tendon into the forearm. The exception to this is the thumb and radial dorsal hand, where the extensor and abductor tendons may retract, and the dorsal sensory branch of the radial nerve is at risk.

In general, nerve injuries are repaired at the time of the tendon repair. Depending on the surgeon, an operating microscope or loupe magnification may be used. Tendons lacerated in the finger are often pulled back into the palm by muscular contraction. A palmar incision is required to retrieve the tendon, which must then be threaded carefully through the pulleys in the digit. Suture techniques for tendon repair create a juncture that is far weaker than an intact tendon. For this reason, the juncture must be protected from mechanical stress for a period of 8 wk or more. This is done by splinting the hand with the wrist and digits flexed so that the pull on the tendon by its muscle is limited. It is important that the patient emerges gently from anesthesia to limit the stress on the repair. The best results are obtained when repair is carried out within 7 d of the injury, although primary repair can be performed up to 3 wk. After 7 d, the muscle begins to undergo irreversible contracture. If the flexor tendon is advanced after this has occurred, a flexion contracture results. If a flexor tendon laceration is neglected, a palm-to-fingertip tendon graft, using a different flexor tendon, should be performed. If the tendon bed is suitable for gliding, the graft can be accomplished in one stage. If not, a Silastic tendon spacer (rubber rod) must be placed at the first stage; 6–8 wk later, a palm-to-fingertip graft is placed in the bed prepared with the Silastic rod. Tendon graft donor sites include the palmaris longus tendon and toe extensors.

A variant of the sharp flexor tendon laceration is the FDP avulsion from its insertion in Zone 1. This is the so-called jersey finger— initially named for the classic mechanism of someone grasping the jersey of a ball carrier. This injury occurs during forceful grasp and most commonly affects the ring finger. The FDP tendon retracts to various predictable levels per the classification system of Leddy. Type I retracts in to the palm; this injury is most likely to disrupt the blood supply to the tendon via the vinculae. Type II retracts to the level of the PIP joint, and type III retracts to the level of the DIP joint. In general, these injuries should be explored and repaired within 7 days. Repair may require mini-suture anchors or a button/pullout suture through the nail/distal phalanx because there is not sufficient tendon distally for a primary repair. If neglected, these patients should be treated with a **distal interphalangeal (DIP) arthrodesis.** A flexor tendon graft through an intact FDS tendon usually is not indicated because tendon adhesions will commonly interfere with

the function of the FDS, leading to decreased overall active motion of the digit. The most common complication is the development of tendon adhesions, which limit tendon gliding and digit motion. If these patients fail to improve within a 3- to 6-mo course of physical therapy, they require an operative tendolysis to lyse the adhesions.

Usual preop diagnosis: Flexor tendon laceration; FDP avulsion ("jersey finger"); digital nerve laceration; median nerve laceration

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table. The foot may be prepped for a graft.
Incision	Zig-zag (Brunner) within the digits, extensile approach hand or wrist
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet, possibly operating microscope for nerve injuries
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1–2 h; may be extended for nerve repair and treatment of associated injuries.
Closing considerations	Tendon and nerve repairs must be protected with splints before emergence from GA. Smooth extubation (see Emergence, below).
EBL	Minimal; procedure performed under tourniquet control
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure.
Morbidity	Tendon adhesions: 25% Rupture of tendon repair: < 5% Infection: Rare
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adult population, rarely children.
Male:Female	Slight male predominance, due to occupational injuries
Incidence	Not uncommon
Etiology	Trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: excision of ganglion of the wrist; palmar and digital fasciectomy; repair of flexor tendon laceration)

PREOPERATIVE

The majority of patients presenting for these procedures are usually otherwise healthy. Many of them present for elective surgery as a result of progressive functional impairment and pain, and preop workup is routine.

Neurological	If regional anesthesia is contemplated, preexisting sensory or motor defects should be documented carefully.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct (healthy patients); otherwise, as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional anesthesia (most common), GA, or a combination of the two may be used. Intravenous regional anesthesia (Bier block) is most useful for short procedures that last for < 1 h (see Anesthetic Considerations, p. 948). A brachial plexus block via the axillary, infraclavicular, or supraclavicular approach is excellent for this procedure. Because most of these procedures are done on an outpatient basis, brachial plexus block without GA is usually preferred to promote early "street-readiness."

Regional anesthesia: 1.5% mepivacaine 30–40 mL with alkalization for routine, superficial cases; 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.5% ropivacaine 30–40 mL for procedures > 2.5 h or if extended analgesia is desired. Epinephrine (2.5–5 mcg/mL) may be added to decrease peak plasma concentrations of local anesthetics (controversial).

Ultrasound-guided brachial plexus block	Ultrasound-guided brachial plexus using supraclavicular, infraclavicular, or axillary approaches are all suitable for surgery below the shoulder. The infraclavicular approach is the most effective for placement of peripheral nerve catheters. The supraclavicular approach is associated with phrenic nerve blockade in 50% of patients and should be avoided in patients with respiratory compromise.
Infraclavicular block	The coracoid approach using nerve stimulation is a safe and effective regional technique when ultrasound guidance is unavailable. A single injection will provide anesthesia distal to the midhumerus. No additional injections are necessary, and the patient's arm does not need to be abducted for block placement. If intraop sedation is necessary, propofol (50–100 mcg/kg/min) by continuous infusion or intermittent bolus injection of opioid/benzodiazepine are good choices.
Axillary block	Infrequently used for these procedures given the superiority of a brachial plexus block. To provide similar coverage, an axillary block usually requires supplemental blocks for the intercostobrachial nerve (T2) and the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.
Bier block	The Bier block (intravenous regional anesthesia) is useful for short (< 60 min), wrist and hand surgeries. 40–50 mL of 0.5% lidocaine is commonly used. For short procedures (< 30 min) consider reducing the dose of iv anesthetic (e.g., 25 mL 0.5% lidocaine) and using a forearm tourniquet instead of an upper arm tourniquet. The OR staff should be alerted that iv regional anesthesia is being used, so that all are ready to proceed after the tourniquet is inflated (i.e., surgical prep ready to be performed; surgeons scrubbed, gowned, and gloved). Tourniquet pain and postop pain is reduced by adding ketorolac (20 mg) or clonidine (1 mcg/kg) to the lidocaine solution.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2)	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)	
Emergence	Standard emergence (p. B-4). Skin closure is frequently followed by application of a splint; patient should remain anesthetized during splinting procedure.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h	An 18-ga iv catheter placed in the contralateral upper extremity should be adequate.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

Supraclavicular block complications	Inadequate block Intravascular injection Persistent paresthesia Local anesthetic toxicity Pneumothorax Phrenic nerve block	Ulnar nerve sparing Respiratory impairment possible
Infraclavicular block complications	Inadequate block Intravascular injection Pneumothorax Phrenic nerve block Persistent paresthesia Local anesthetic toxicity	Less frequent occurrence, compared with axillary block. Pneumothorax is very rare Usually asymptomatic. Incidence ≤ 50%
Axillary block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Intravascular injection Inadequate block Persistent paresthesia Axillary hematoma Axillary artery thrombosis	Minimal doses of local anesthetic can cause CNS toxicity during an accidental intravascular injection. Sz should be treated with midazolam titrated to effect, accompanied by airway control. Rx severe toxicity with Intralipid® 20% 1.5 mL/kg iv, initially. If there is any question of a full stomach, intubation should be accomplished rapidly. Axillary thrombosis is very rare.
Bier block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Inadequate block Thrombophlebitis	Proper exsanguination and tourniquet function is critical. Upper arm tourniquet should remain inflated a minimum of 25 min. Systemic toxic reaction to the local anesthetic may occur as a result of upper arm tourniquet leak or inadvertent premature (< 20 min) upper arm tourniquet release. Treatment is supportive. Sz are controlled with midazolam, with appropriate airway protection. Even with a functioning tourniquet, it is possible to overcome tourniquet pressure by injecting too vigorously. Care must be taken when switching from proximal to distal upper arm tourniquet; never deflate proximal tourniquet until verifying that distal tourniquet is working.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Oral analgesics are usually sufficient.	The lingering analgesia of the brachial plexus block is often sufficient for pain relief in the recovery room; oral analgesic therapy can be instituted prior to discharging patient to home.
Tests	None routinely indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Arslanian B, Mehrzad R, Kramer T, Kim DC: Forearm Bier block: a new regional anesthetic technique for upper extremity surgery. *Ann Plast Surg* 2013. [Epub ahead of print]
2. Halaszynski TM: Ultrasound brachial plexus anesthesia and analgesia for upper extremity surgery: essentials of our current understanding, 2011. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(5):581–91.
3. Steinberg RB: The dose-response relationship of ketorolac as a component of intravenous regional anesthesia with lidocaine. *Anesth Analg* 1998; 86(4):791–3.
4. Ustener E, Yilmaz A, Ozgencil E, Okten F, Turhan SC: Ultrasound anatomy of the brachial plexus nerves in the neurovascular bundle at the axilla in patients undergoing upper-extremity block anesthesia. *Skeletal Radiol* 2013; 42(5):707–13.

WRIST ARTHROSCOPY/REPAIR OF TRIANGULAR FIBROCARTILAGE COMPLEX TEARS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Wrist arthroscopy** may be performed for either diagnostic or therapeutic indications. A smaller diameter version of the standard arthroscope is used for visualizing the wrist joint. All of the entry portals are on the dorsum of the wrist and course between the extensor compartments. Irrigation is used during the procedure, and a cannula is routinely placed ulnar to the extensor carpi ulnaris tendon. Unlike the knee joint, where visualization is obtained by distention of the joint, in-the-wrist visualization is obtained by distraction. The digits are placed in finger traps, and up to 10 lb of traction can be placed on the wrist. Specialized instrumentation is available to resect and debride intraarticular structures and to place sutures to repair torn ligaments. The **triangular fibrocartilage complex** is a source of ulnar-sided wrist pain. It is a term given to the soft tissues spanning the distal radioulnar joint. It is composed of the articular disk, radioulnar ligaments, ulnocarpal ligaments, extensor carpi ulnaris tendon sheath, and meniscus homologue. Advances in both imaging and arthroscopic techniques in the recent past have led to our ability to better treat patients with injuries to the triangular fibrocartilage complex (**TFCC**). The classification of these injuries credited to Palmer involves both traumatic and degenerative tears, which are associated with ulnar positive variance and ulnar impaction or impingement syndrome. If an open procedure, such as repair of an intercarpal ligament or an ulnar shortening procedure, is contemplated following diagnostic arthroscopy, either GA or regional block is preferred.

Variant procedure or approaches: The standard approach is to suspend the forearm vertically in traction. The forearm also can be placed horizontally on the hand table in traction.

Usual preop diagnosis: Internal derangement of the wrist of unknown etiology; tears of the triangular fibrocartilage complex; intercarpal instability due to intercarpal ligament tears; scapholunate dissociation; lunotriquetral dissociation; fracture of distal radius; ulnar impingement syndrome.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Small incisions are made on the dorsum of the wrist for instrument insertion.
Special instrumentation	2.7-mm diameter arthroscope, 0 or 30° field of view; light source and video camera; television monitor; surgical power shaver; joint irrigation system; traction device for forearm; pneumatic tourniquet
Unique considerations	Patient is often awake and observes surgery on monitor.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin I g iv
Surgical time	30 min–2 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Arthroscopic portals are each closed with a single skin suture.
EBL	Minimal; procedure performed with tourniquet control.
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Infection: < 1% Swelling (2° to irrigation fluid): Common Nerve and artery damage: Uncommon
Pain score	1–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Adults
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Least common form of arthroscopy
Etiology	See Usual preop diagnosis, above.
Associated conditions	Antecedent trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Carpal Tunnel Release, p. 948.

Suggested Reading

1. Ahsan ZS, Yao J: Complications of wrist arthroscopy. *Arthroscopy* 2012; 28(6):855–9.
2. Wolf JM, Dukas A, Pensak M: Advances in wrist arthroscopy. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(11):725–34.

CARPAL TUNNEL RELEASE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This is the most commonly performed procedure in hand surgery. It consists of the transection of the transverse carpal ligament through either an open-palmar or an endoscopic approach (Fig. 10.1-4). In patients with severe synovitis, as in rheumatoid arthritis, a synovectomy should be performed at the same time. If there is advanced thenar atrophy and weakness of thumb opposition, a tendon transfer may be done at that time. The most common transfer is the **Camitz opponensplasty,** in which the palmaris longus tendon is prolonged with palmar fascia and transferred to the thumb. Transfers of the extensor indicis proprius and superficial flexor tendons also can be performed. Surgeons differ in their approach to anesthesia for this procedure: some prefer local infiltration, whereas others prefer regional as there is less fluid edema.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS); median nerve compression at the wrist

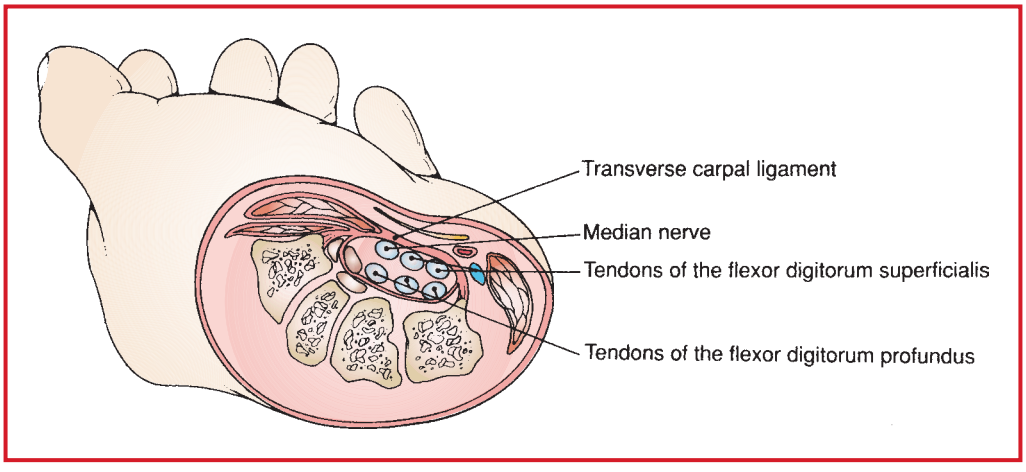


Figure 10.1-4. Exposure of the carpal tunnel. (Reproduced with permission from Scott-Conner CEH, Dawson DL: *Operative Anatomy,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2003.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open Carpal Tunnel Release	Endoscopic Carpal Tunnel Release
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Longitudinal incision in palm; may extend to forearm.	2 cm transverse at proximal flexion crease of wrist; some use a distal palmar incision also
Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet	Endoscopic carpal tunnel release system: endoscope, sheath and trocar, special cutting tools
Unique considerations	Although rare, damage to neurovascular structures	Danger of intraop injury to digital nerves, median nerve, tendons, superficial vascular arch
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	30–90 min	30 min
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min	⇐
Closing considerations	Simple skin closure, some surgeons will splint	⇐
EBL	Minimal; performed under tourniquet control.	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	None associated with procedure	⇐
Morbidity	Overall complication rate: 4% Reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD): < 5% Hematoma: Rare Infection: Uncommon	⇐ Rare Complications of ulnar nerve palsy < 5% Tendon and nerve laceration: Rare (< 1%) Vascular injury: Less common than nerve injury
Pain score	1 –2	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–80 yr; 50% are 40–60 yr
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Compression of the median nerve within the carpal tunnel by synovitis; mass effect 2° tumor or fracture fragments, peripheral neuropathy, gout, anomalous structures, thrombosis of a persistent median artery, and idiopathic; repetitive trauma (e.g., computer use)
Associated conditions	Rheumatoid arthritis; thyroid imbalance; diabetes; amyloidosis; multiple myeloma; alcoholism; hemophilia; pregnancy; menopause; gout; fractures of the distal radius; Kienböck's disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: tendolysis of flexor or extensor tendon; wrist arthroscopy; carpal tunnel release)

PREOPERATIVE

In general, there are two patient populations involved: (a) healthy patients with Hx of wrist trauma, and (b) rheumatoid patients. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936, for discussion of preop concerns in the rheumatoid patient.)

Laboratory	Hb/Hct (healthy patients); otherwise, as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Intravenous regional anesthesia is suitable only for procedures that are < 1 h. For longer procedures, an axillary, supraclavicular, or infraclavicular brachial plexus block are good alternatives. Regional techniques are especially appropriate for outpatients.

Intravenous regional block	The Bier block (intravenous regional anesthesia) is for short (< 60 min), superficial wrist and hand surgeries. 40–50 mL of 0.5% lidocaine is commonly used. A very brief operative procedure may be an indication to reduce the dose of iv anesthetic agent by, for example, having the surgeon use a forearm tourniquet instead of an upper-arm tourniquet. The OR staff should be alerted that iv regional anesthesia is being used, so that all are ready to proceed after the tourniquet is inflated (i.e., surgical prep ready to be performed; surgeons scrubbed, gowned, and gloved). Tourniquet pain and postop pain are reduced by adding ketorolac (20 mg) or clonidine (1 mcg/kg) to the lidocaine solution.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–2 mL/kg/h	An 18-ga iv catheter placed in the nonoperative upper extremity should be adequate.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Intravenous regional block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Inadequate block Thrombophlebitis	Proper exsanguination and tourniquet function are critical. A tourniquet should remain inflated a minimum of 25 min. Systemic toxic reaction to the local anesthetic may occur as a result of tourniquet leak or inadvertent premature (< 20 min) tourniquet release. Treatment is supportive. Sz are controlled with midazolam, with appropriate airway protection. Even with a functioning tourniquet, it is possible to overcome tourniquet pressure by injecting too vigorously. Care must be taken when switching from proximal to distal tourniquet; never deflate proximal tourniquet until verifying that distal tourniquet is working.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Oral analgesics usually sufficient	Residual analgesia with iv regional anesthesia is minimal unless ketorolac or clonidine is used. Some iv opioid may be necessary until the patient is tolerating fluids in the recovery room.
Tests	None routinely indicated	

Suggested Readings

1. Grice SC, Morell RC, Balestrieri FJ, et al: Intravenous regional anesthesia: evaluation and prevention of leakage under the tourniquet. *Anesthesiology* 1986; 65(3):316–20.
2. Maga JM, Cooper L, Gebhard RE: Outpatient regional anesthesia for upper extremity surgery update (2005 to present) distal to shoulder. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 50(1):47–55.
3. Mintalucci DJ, Leinberry CF Jr: Open versus endoscopic carpal tunnel release. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2012; 43(4):431–7.
4. Nouette-Gaulain K, Capdevila X, Rossignol R: Local anesthetic 'in-situ' toxicity during peripheral nerve blocks: update on mechanisms and prevention. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2012; 25(5):589–95.
5. Sukhani R, Garcia CJ, Munhall RJ, et al: Lidocaine disposition following intravenous regional anesthesia with different tourniquet deflation technics. *Anesth Analg* 1989; 68(5):633–7.

FIXATION OF FRACTURES AND DISLOCATIONS OF THE WRIST AND HAND

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients with fractures of the distal radius, distal ulna, carpus, metacarpals, and phalanges that cannot be treated adequately with closed methods require fixation. Difficult fractures may require a combination of techniques such as percutaneous pinning or external fixation in addition to **open reduction and internal fixation** (ORIF). The criteria for adequate treatment include anatomic reduction of the fracture fragments with focus on articular congruity and stable fixation for maintenance of this reduction. Cast/splint treatment or fixation of any kind is an effort to decrease motion at the fracture site and allow the body to produce a bony union with acceptable length, alignment, and rotation. Patients with carpal/wrist fractures or dislocations may have signs of neurologic compromise, specifically the median nerve. Often a closed reduction will improve these symptoms, but if not urgent operative treatment is indicated. Most dislocations within the hand are reducible in the emergency room setting with adequate anesthesia; there are irreducible varieties that warrant immediate operative treatment. Vascular compromise of the hand associated with these injuries is rare, usually occurring in patients with severe crush or high-energy injuries. The devascularized hand is a surgical emergency, and revascularization must be carried out as soon as possible. High-energy injuries such as gunshot wounds may have significant soft-tissue components that must be treated. The possibility of a coexisting compartment syndrome should be considered, and a fasciotomy may be needed at the time of surgery. Open fractures are, by definition, contaminated and should be irrigated and debrided within 8 h of the injury. Surgical approaches depend on the nature and location of the fracture, but typically are longitudinal. Some fractures of the articular surface of the distal radius are amenable to percutaneous pin fixation using fluoroscopy and possibly arthroscopic assistance. Screw fixation of the scaphoid also can be accomplished via percutaneous methods using image guidance. This injury may be associated with a picture of perilunar instability. Damage to intercarpal ligaments may require open repair or reduction and percutaneous pinning. Intraoperative fluoroscopy often is utilized, as are standard portable radiographs to monitor and assess the quality of the reduction of the fracture.

Soft-tissue coverage of these injuries may be problematic, and **local flaps** or **free microvascular tissue transfers** may be indicated. Rarely are these procedures done with the initial operative debridement; an antibiotic bead pouch or wound vac may be used to temporize open wounds. Free transfers can come from the same limb (radial forearm flap, based on the radial artery; lateral upper arm flap, based on the posterior radial collateral artery) or a remote site (latissimus dorsi muscle, based on the thoracodorsal artery; or scapular skin flap, based on the circumflex scapular artery). Remote flaps require special patient positioning and draping. Microsurgical tissue transfers also may need special pharmacological considerations, such as the administration of heparin or dextran to prevent thrombosis of the anastomosis. These procedures also significantly increase operative time and equipment needs.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fractures of the distal radius (Colles', Barton's, Smith's are common eponyms); wrist dislocations (perilunate, lunate); fractures of the carpus, metacarpals, or phalanges; GSW; crush injuries; blast injuries

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Usually volar, longitudinal for distal radius; longitudinal either midaxial, midlateral or dorsal for phalanges; dorsal for metacarpals and carpal fractures; a volar incision is used if symptoms of acute carpal tunnel syndrome are present.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Fluoroscopy; internal and external fixation devices and power tools; pneumatic tourniquet
Unique considerations	Associated injuries and soft-tissue problems in high-energy fractures
Antibiotics	Cephalosporin prophylaxis is indicated for the treatment of closed fractures. Open fractures may require the addition of an aminoglycoside or penicillin depending on the amount and type of contamination.
Surgical time	30 min–3 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Some injuries require local flaps or free microsurgical tissue transfers for closure. Fasciotomy wounds may be left open. Splint applied at surgery.
EBL	Minimal for fracture treatment, as tourniquet control is used.
Postop care	PACU → home unless significant soft-tissue injuries requiring additional procedures
Mortality	Usually 2° associated injuries
Morbidity	Loss of reduction, requiring repair Nonunion (requires additional surgical procedure) Infection
Pain score	3–9 (Great variation, probably depending on degree of median, ulnar, or dorsal radial sensory nerve involvement. Postop pain management is often problematic. Early use of stellate ganglion blocks may be beneficial in preventing the development of sympathetic mediated pain syndromes.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages. More conservative approaches are used with elderly patients.
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Very common
Etiology	Trauma
Associated conditions	Traumatic injuries

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The majority of patients presenting for these procedures are relatively young and healthy. Most present for elective repair of a traumatic injury, and preop workup is routine. Replantation and some injuries, such as irreducible dislocations or open fracture, require immediate attention and necessitate emergency surgery and full-stomach considerations (see p. B-5).

Neurologic	If regional anesthesia is contemplated, preexisting sensory or motor defects should be documented carefully preop.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct (healthy patients); otherwise, as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, regional anesthesia, or a combination is commonly used. A brachial plexus block is excellent for short (1–2 h) procedures on the wrist and hand. Ultrasound-guided block may be performed with a supraclavicular or axillary approach. Using a nerve stimulator, infraclavicular or axillary approaches are usual. Regional anesthesia alone is a means of avoiding the risk of aspiration pneumonitis associated with GA in the patient with a full stomach whose operation must be done emergently (see Rapid-Sequence Induction of Anesthesia, p. B-5). A combination of regional and general anesthesia is appropriate for prolonged cases and those that require the use of bone grafts harvested from the iliac crest or a free-tissue transfer.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2)
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3)
Emergence	Skin closure is frequently followed by application of a splint; patient should remain anesthetized during splinting procedure.

Regional anesthesia: 1.5% mepivacaine (40 mL) for routine superficial cases; 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.5% ropivacaine, 40 mL for procedures > 2.5 h or if extended analgesia is desired. Epinephrine (2.5–5 mcg/mL) may be added to decrease peak plasma concentrations of local anesthetics.

Ultrasound-guided brachial plexus block	Ultrasound-guided brachial plexus using supraclavicular, infraclavicular, or axillary approaches are all suitable for surgery below the shoulder. The infraclavicular approach is the most effective for placement of peripheral nerve catheters. The supraclavicular approach is associated with phrenic nerve blockade in 50% of patients and should be avoided in patients with respiratory compromise.	
Infraclavicular block	The coracoid approach using nerve stimulation is a safe and effective regional technique when ultrasound guidance is unavailable. A single injection will provide anesthesia distal to the midhumerus. No additional injections are necessary, and the patient's arm does not need to be abducted for block placement. If intraop sedation is necessary, propofol (50–100 mcg/kg/min) by continuous infusion or intermittent bolus injection of opioid/benzodiazepine are good choices.	
Axillary block	Infrequently used for these procedures given the superiority of a brachial plexus block. To provide similar coverage, an axillary block usually requires supplemental blocks for the intercostobrachial nerve (T2) and the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal-to-moderate blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h	An 18-ga iv catheter placed in the nonoperative upper extremity should be adequate.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Infraclavicular block complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Inadequate block Intravascular injection Pneumothorax Persistent paresthesia Phrenic nerve block	Rx severe toxicity with Intralipid® 20% 1.5 mL/kg iv initially. Pneumothorax is very rare with the lateral coracoid approach. Usually asymptomatic. Incidence ≤ 50%

Axillary block complications	Inadequate block Intravascular injection Persistent paresthesia Axillary hematoma Axillary artery thrombosis	Minimal doses of local anesthetic can cause CNS toxicity during an accidental intravascular injection. Sz should be treated with propofol or midazolam titrated to effect, accompanied by airway control. If there is any question of a full stomach, then intubation should be accomplished rapidly. Axillary thrombosis is extremely rare.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Continuous nerve block can be considered in appropriate cases. PCA (p. C-3), in combination with regional block	Regional or combined regional-general anesthetic techniques are excellent for wrist procedures, especially with respect to postop pain management.
Tests	None routinely indicated	

Suggested Readings

1. Draeger RW, Messer TM: Suprascapular nerve palsy following supraclavicular block for upper extremity surgery: report of 3 cases. *J Hand Surg Am* 2012; 37(12):2576–9.
2. Jones NF, Jupiter JB, Lalonde DH: Common fractures and dislocations of the hand. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 130(5): 722e–736e.
3. Madison SJ, Humsl J, Loland VJ, et al: Ultrasound-guided root/trunk (interscalene) block for hand and forearm anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2013; 38(3):226–32.
4. Sia S: Axillary brachial plexus block using peripheral nerve stimulator: a comparison between double- and triple-injection techniques. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2001; 26(6):499–503.
5. Ustuner E, Yilmaz A, Özgencil E, Okten F, Turhan SC: Ultrasound anatomy of the brachial plexus nerves in the neurovascular bundle at the axilla in patients undergoing upper-extremity block anesthesia. *Skeletal Radiol* 2013; 42(5):707–13.

DIGIT AND HAND REPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients with traumatic amputations of digits and the hand are candidates for emergency microsurgical replantation of these parts. In children, replantation is attempted for essentially all amputations. In the adult, replantation is carried out for amputations of the thumb, multiple digits, and amputations through the palm or proximal. In general, amputations of a single digit are not candidates for replantation because of the minimal loss of function in relation to the long rehabilitation period and expected outcome. Certainly, a single digit amputated proximal to the insertion of the flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS) tendon (Zone II; Fig. 10.1-3) should not be replanted. The condition of the amputated part plays an important role in the decision to proceed with replantation. A severely crushed, contaminated, or burned part cannot be expected to survive and function. In addition to the condition of the amputated part, the method of preservation and the time from initial injury play a role in deciding on whether or not replantation is attempted. The patients also may have associated traumatic injuries (i.e., intraabdominal bleeding with a positive peritoneal lavage, chest injuries), which will take precedence over replantation. The patient's overall health status must be assessed and may play a role in deciding whether or not to proceed with replantation.

There are a variety of reasons that people suffer amputations. Some studies of these patients have shown an increased incidence of psychopathology, such as alcohol or substance abuse. More often than not these injuries occur in industrial accidents or in a population of people using power tools at home. Rarely children will gain access to dangerous objects, and self-inflicted injuries can occur. Because these procedures are emergent, patients often arrive

at the hospital with full stomachs. Although regional anesthesia techniques provide peripheral vasodilation through their sympatholytic effect, surgeons prefer GA because of the unpredictable length of the procedures. While the patient is being readied for induction, the surgeon prepares the amputated part in the OR. At this time, the structures to be repaired are tagged, which saves a great deal of anesthetic time. When the patient is prepped and draped, the hand is irrigated and debrided, and the corresponding structures are tagged in similar manner. The amputated part is brought to the field, and the actual replantation is performed. Once arterial blood flow is reestablished, the patient must be kept warm to prevent vasospasm. As with other microsurgical procedures, pharmacologic intervention is indicated to prevent thrombosis; iv heparin and dextran are normally administered. Skin grafts for soft-tissue coverage and vein grafts to replace segmental vascular defects are commonly used. Vein grafts can be obtained from the ipsilateral upper extremity or from the lower extremity, especially the dorsum of the foot. Either the lateral thigh or abdomen is an excellent donor site for split-thickness skin grafts. Rarely is an immediate microsurgical free-tissue transfer indicated for soft-tissue coverage.

Usual preop diagnosis: Traumatic amputation of the digits or hand

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand-surgery table
Incision	Incisions extend both proximal and distal to traumatic amputation to explore neurovascular structures as well as define the zone of injury. Lower extremity prepped and draped as donor site for vein grafts from dorsum of foot, split-thickness skin graft from the thigh.
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; microsurgical instrumentation
Unique considerations	Emergency procedure
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	3–12 h
Tourniquet	150 mm Hg above SBP; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Routine volar hand splint
EBL	< 500 mL
Postop care	ICU → requires monitoring in intensive nursing environment. Should be kept pain-free for extended period postop to minimize vessel spasm. Patients will benefit from postop sedation.
Mortality	Minimal for digit and hand. Mortality becomes an important issue when large amounts of muscle are part of the reattachment.
Morbidity	Loss of replanted part (vessel thrombosis): 10% Infection: Rare
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages, typically adults of working age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Trauma
Associated conditions	Substance abuse; alcoholism

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In general, there are two patient populations for hand replantation: (a) isolated hand injury patients (common), and (b) multiple trauma victims (rare).

Respiratory	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. Evidence of occult chest injury, including pneumothorax and pulmonary contusion, should be sought. **Tests:** Consider CXR, ABGs in victims of significant trauma.
Cardiovascular	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. ✓ for evidence of occult cardiac or mediastinal injuries, such as myocardial contusion or great vessel rupture. **Tests:** Consider CXR (with NG tube in place to assess mediastinal widening) and ECG in victims of significant trauma.
Neurological	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. The possibility of closed head injury should be addressed in multiple-trauma victims. Verify integrity of C-spine. **Tests:** Consider head CT prior to beginning a long procedure under GA in a patient with evidence of head trauma; C-spine x-ray.
Gastrointestinal	All patients should be considered to have a full stomach and to be at risk for aspiration pneumonitis. In general, they should receive preop medication to reduce stomach volume and acidity (e.g., metoclopramide 10 mg iv and ranitidine 50 mg iv).
Hematologic	Multiple-trauma victims are likely to suffer from acute blood loss. Although blood loss from these procedures is generally modest, a preop T&C for several U PRBCs is wise for trauma patients. **Tests:** CBC
Metabolic	~50% of trauma victims are intoxicated. Anesthesia-related implications of ethanol intoxication include decreased anesthetic requirements, diuresis, vasodilation, and hypothermia.
Laboratory	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. In general, most victims of significant trauma are best served by obtaining a wide variety of baseline lab studies to screen for unrecognized injury. These studies normally include ABGs, UA, renal function tests, LFTs, serum amylase, tox screen.
Premedication	Full-stomach precautions: Na citrate 0.3 M 30 mL, metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv; H_2-blocker

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, after rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5). Because of the unpredictable length of these procedures and the possible need for bone and/or vessel grafts, regional anesthesia is not feasible as the primary technique. A concurrent, continuing brachial plexus block, however, will provide sympathetic blockade, as well as postop analgesia, and catheter placement should be considered before inducing GA. The hand injury repair may be done concurrently with other procedures in multiple-trauma victims.

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (p. B-5) is mandatory in emergency cases, unless awake intubation is performed. C-spine fracture patients and those with facial injuries may require awake fiberoptic intubation (p. B-6). Hemodynamically unstable, acute-trauma patients may be induced more safely with etomidate or ketamine.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3) for stable patients. Hemodynamically unstable, acute-trauma victims undergoing emergency surgery may be better served by using a combination of medications designed to have minimal hemodynamic consequences (e.g., fentanyl for analgesia, vecuronium for muscle relaxation, and scopolamine or midazolam for amnesia). N_2O is best avoided in the trauma patient.

Emergence	Difficult airway or full-stomach cases require awake extubation. Trauma victims who have undergone a prolonged procedure or who have significant associated cardiopulmonary injuries should remain intubated for postop mechanical ventilation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Significant blood loss IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h + replacement of blood loss Fluid/blood warmers, heating blanket, warmed circuit humidifier	A 16-ga iv catheter in nonoperative upper extremity should be adequate in hemodynamically stable patients. Acute-trauma victims who are unstable require a minimum of two large-bore iv catheters or large-bore central lines.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Invasive hemodynamic monitoring and TEE should be considered in acute, multiple-trauma victims.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hemodynamic instability	Previously unrecognized injuries (e.g., pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, intracranial bleeding) should be considered as a cause of unexplained intraop hemodynamic instability in all acute-trauma victims.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Sepsis ARDS
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3)
Tests	None routinely indicated

Suggested Readings

1. Hartzell TL, Benhaim P, Imbriglia JE, et al: Surgical and technical aspects of hand transplantation: is it just another replant? *Hand Clin* 2011; 27(4):521–30.
2. Maricevich M, Carlsen B, Mardini S, Moran S: Upper extremity and digital replantation. *Hand (NY)* 2011; 6(4):356–63.
3. Morrison WA, McCombe D: Digital replantation. *Hand Clin* 2007; 23(1):1–12.
4. Scheker LR, Becker, GW: Distal finger replantation. *J Hand Surg Am* 2011; 36(3):521–8.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Hand Ganglion Cyst Excision (Dorsal) with Bier Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_7ihlyW7LxQ

Wrist Arthroscopy Surgery: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Wg1GwRBMiZ4

Carpal Tunnel Surgery: Inside the Operating Room: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JdHrRf7JinA

Trigger Finger Surgery: Inside the Operating Room: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DISCFr0YeiM

Dupuytren's Contracture Release: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yjYRlo_Zupw

CHAPTER

10.2 Shoulder/Arm Surgery

SURGEONS

Amy L. Ladd, MD
Andrew C. Karich, MD
Emilie V. Cheung, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Lindsey Vokach-Brodsky, MB, ChB, FFARCSI

ARTHROSCOPIC SHOULDER SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The role of arthroscopy in shoulder surgery has advanced tremendously in the past decade and is now routinely performed by most shoulder surgeons. Arthroscopic procedures include **subacromial decompression (SAD), distal clavicle resection (Mumford procedure), debridement** (for labral tear, infection, or synovitis), **rotator cuff (RC) repair, anterior capsule-labral repair** for recurrent dislocation (**Bankart repair**), **capsular plication** for multidirectional instability (MDI), **capsular release for frozen shoulder,** and **repair of SLAP lesions** (superior labral anterior-posterior tears).

Procedures done arthroscopically are less painful postoperatively than open procedures because they produce less trauma to normal tissues. Rehabilitation is, therefore, facilitated. Interscalene block has been shown to provide good postop analgesia of shorter duration, but its clinical application with arthroscopic procedures is surgeon-dependent because the postoperative pain is usually moderate to mild. Some surgeons prefer only a general anesthesia for shoulder arthroscopy. The use of indwelling intra-articular pain catheters has fallen out of favor in the past few years due to multiple case reports of chondrolysis, a devastating complication characterized by end-stage arthrosis of the glenohumeral joint.

Arthroscopic shoulder surgery may be performed in the beachchair or lateral decubitus position. Beachchair positioners are available with a trough for the head and a breakaway shoulder pad to provide important access to the posterior shoulder. The lateral decubitus position utilizes distal traction of 5–10 lbs, with the arm abducted 30–45°. Both are safe positions for the brachial plexus because the shoulder is not excessively abducted. The "down" arm in the lateral position is placed in forward flexion, and an axillary roll is placed underneath the upper chest wall.

Initially, an 18-ga spinal needle is inserted into the glenohumeral joint, passing through the posterior deltoid and infraspinatus muscle and the posterior capsule of the joint (see shoulder anatomy, Fig. 10.2-1). Placement is verified by injecting saline to inflate the joint capsule. A stab incision is made using a No. 11 blade in the direction previously defined by the finder needle. Sharp, then blunt trocars are used to gain access to the joint and permit insertion of the arthroscopic device. Improper insertion of the instruments can injure the axillary or suprascapular nerves and the cartilage of the glenohumeral joint. Initial diagnostic arthroscopy is carried out through the posterior portal. Bupivacaine 0.5% with epinephrine 1:200,000 often is infiltrated into portals and the joint or subacromial space at the onset of surgery to help with hemostasis. An anterior portal is used for instrumentation within the glenohumeral joint. After joint arthroscopy, the scope is placed into the subacromial space, where a direct lateral portal is used for instrumentation. Accessory portals are established as needed, depending on the procedure performed. Joint debridement and anterior capsulolabral stabilization are usually performed through anterior portals. RC repair, subacromial bursectomy, acromioplasty, and distal clavicle resection are done within the subacromial space (deep to the deltoid and superficial to the RC). Epinephrine (1 mg/3 L) in the irrigation fluid and maintaining MAP < 80 mm Hg help control bleeding, thus enhancing visualization during surgery.

Usual preop diagnosis: Rotator cuff tear; subacromial impingement; glenohumeral instability; AC arthritis; labral tear

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lateral decubitus or beachchair
Incision	Posterior arthroscopic portal, anterior instrumentation portal, lateral instrumentation portal for visualizing subacromial bursa; superior portal for semisitting position
Special instrumentation	Arthroscope; power burrs; arthroscopic shavers; suture-passing instruments; bone anchors; radiofrequency cautery
Unique considerations	Rigid eye patch over ipsilateral eye, to prevent corneal abrasion, suggested. Positioning of the head with appropriate support, removing upper section of operating table, if possible, for better access with semisitting position. ETT taped to opposite side of face. MAP ≤ 80.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop, particularly if bone work performed
Surgical time	Positioning the patient is time-intensive; can add as much as 45 min. Reconstructive: 1–4 h Diagnostic: < 1–1.5 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
EBL	Minimal: < 200 mL (less with use of epinephrine, electrocautery, and laser)
Postop care	Frequently outpatient; may be overnight if interscalene or supraclavicular block is given or reconstructive procedure performed. Intraarticular pain catheter commonly used.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	VAE possible Extravasation of fluid (NS or LR): > 50% Brachial plexus injury (lateral decubitus position): Rare Breakage of instruments: < 1% Infection: 0–3%
Pain score	4 (diagnostic); 5–7 (reconstruction)

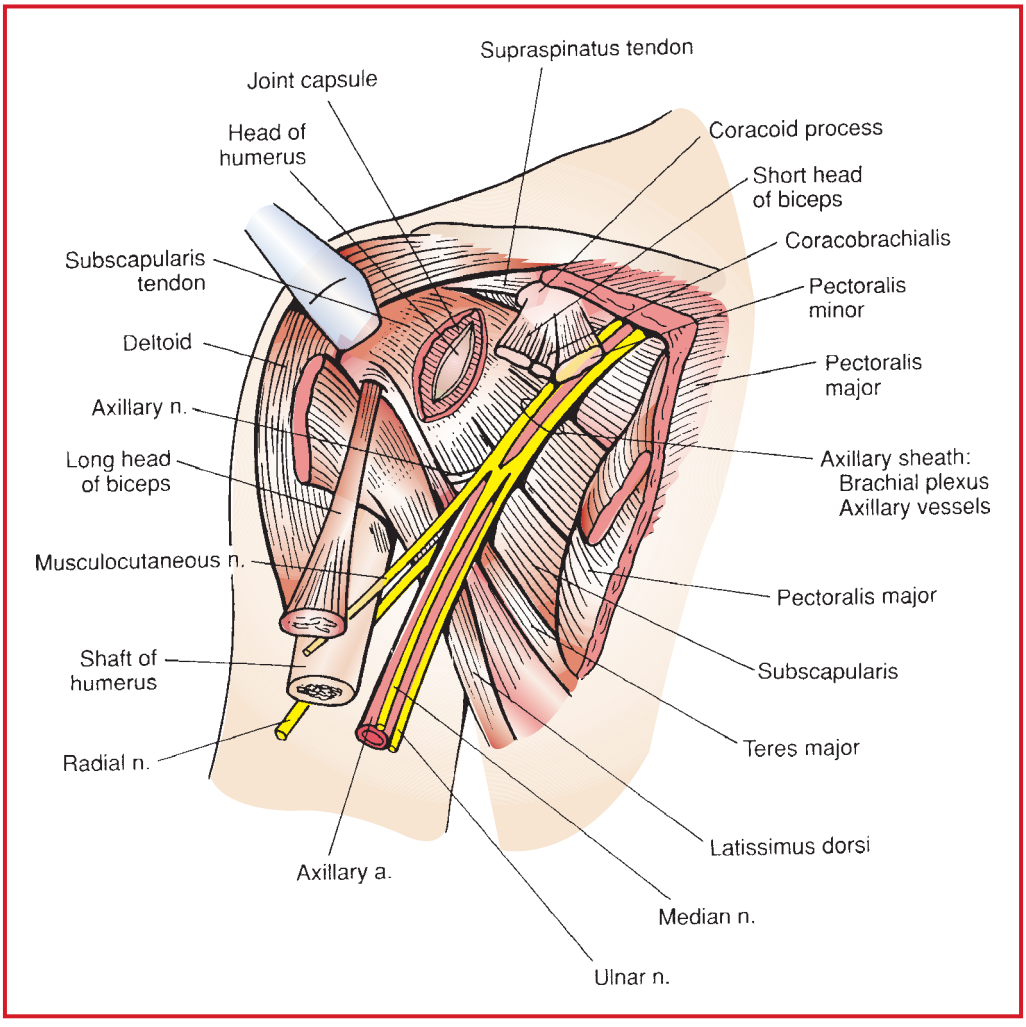


Figure 10.2-1. Anatomy of the shoulder joint, anterior. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1994.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	15–40 yr (instability); 35–75 yr (rotator cuff and acromial pathology)
Male:Female	2:1–4:1
Incidence	Very common: > 50,000/yr
Etiology	Young patients: usually sports-related Older patients: cuff and acromial pathology; age-wear phenomenon Rotator cuff pathology and acromial impingement (frequently coexist)
Associated conditions	Cervical arthritis and radiculopathy with rotator cuff pathology

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Surgery for Shoulder Instability, p. 966.

Suggested Readings

1. Baechler MF, Kim DH: Patient positioning for shoulder arthroscopy based on variability in lateral acromion morphology. *Arthroscopy* 2002; 18(5):547–9.
2. Bigliani LU, Flatow EL, Deliz ED: Complications of shoulder arthroscopy. *Orthop Rev* 1991; 20(9):743–51.
3. Dattani R, Smith CD, Patel VR: The venous thromboembolic complications of shoulder and elbow surgery: a systematic review. *Bone Joint J* 2013; 95-B(1):70–4.
4. Pearsall AW IV, Osbahr DC, Speer KP: An arthroscopic technique for treating patients with frozen shoulder. *Arthroscopy* 1999; 15(1):2–11.
5. Ruotolo C, Nottage WM, Flatow EL, et al: Controversial topics in shoulder arthroscopy. *Arthroscopy* 2002; 18(2 Suppl 1):65–75.
6. Salazar D, Sears BW, Andre J, Tonion P, Marra G: Cerebral desaturation during shoulder arthroscopy: a prospective observational study. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2013; 471(12):4027–34.

SURGERY FOR ACROMIAL IMPINGEMENT, ROTATOR CUFF TEARS, AND ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT ARTHRITIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Subacromial impingement** is a common degenerative condition of middle age. It may be related to extrinsic anatomic factors (e.g., hooked acromion), a traumatic episode, or intrinsic factors (e.g., tissue degeneration). The subacromial space (space between the acromion and humeral head) is occupied by the supraspinatus (superior rotator cuff [RC]) muscle and tendon and the bursa, which allows for smooth gliding of the cuff tendon under the acromion. Trauma produces hemorrhage and inflammation in the bursa; swelling of the bursa decreases the space available under the acromion. These tissues may then be "pinched" between the greater tuberosity of the humerus and the lateral aspect of the acromion (Fig. 10.2-2) with forward elevation or abduction of the arm. This further increases the inflammation, producing a vicious cycle.

Impingement of the anterolateral acromion on the insertion of the supraspinatus (along with poor vascularity of this part of the cuff) is a leading hypothesis for the etiology of degenerative **RC tears.**

AC joint arthritis is a common radiographic finding in adults, but it is often asymptomatic. Distal clavicle excision is performed for clinically symptomatic AC joint arthritis.

Subacromial impingement: Surgical treatment of subacromial impingement is indicated when nonoperative treatment (e.g., cortisone injection, physical therapy) fails. Surgery involves shaving of the anterolateral aspect of the undersurface of the acromion (creating a flat surface and providing more room in the subacromial space). This may be accomplished with open techniques in combination with open RC repair, but it is more commonly done arthroscopically. The bursa is usually inflamed and quite vascular. Bleeding may obscure arthroscopic visualization and is controlled with electrocautery, with epinephrine in the irrigant, and by maintaining relative ↓ BP (MAP < 80 mm Hg).

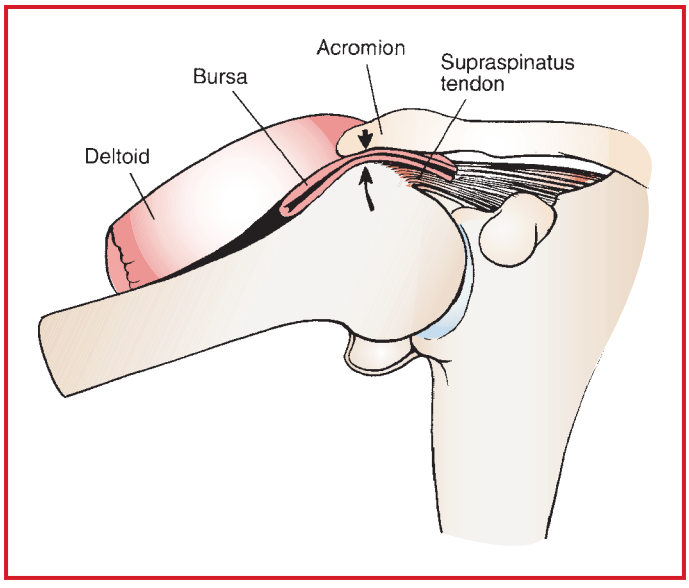


Figure 10.2-2. Abduction of the arm can impinge the subacromial bursa between the greater tuberosity and the undersurface of the acromion and coracoacromial ligament (between *arrows*). (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1994.)

Rotator cuff tears: RC (Fig. 10.2-3) repair may be performed using the **direct lateral open approach, the mini-open (deltoid-splitting) approach** in conjunction with arthroscopy, or all arthroscopically. If a deltoid-splitting incision is used, care is taken not to extend the split more than 5 cm distal to the acromion because of possible injury to the axillary nerve, which innervates the deltoid 5 cm or more from the lateral aspect of the acromion. If the beachchair position is used for open RC surgery or arthroscopy, the upper limb is draped free. The arm is manipulated, and traction is frequently applied. It is important that the head is secured (the head may be taped to the table or special beachchair positioner), the eyes are protected, and the anesthesiologist frequently checks to see that the surgeon is not pulling the patient off the table (not always apparent from the surgeon's side of the drape). Traction on the brachial plexus is more likely in the lateral decubitus position 2° arm traction.

Open RC repair involves suturing the cuff insertion back to the greater tuberosity through drill holes or with suture anchors. Arthroscopic repair requires percutaneous anchor placement and arthroscopic suture-passing and knot-tying. Bleeding is minimal with the arthroscopic technique, but may approach 400 mL with an open procedure. Both require that the patient remain relaxed until all dressings are applied and he/she is fitted with an abduction sling. Patients typically are admitted for 24 h for pain control or if a drain is used.

AC joint disease: Surgery for **AC joint arthritis** is usually performed in conjunction with SAD and/or RC repair and may be done open or arthroscopically. It involves simple resection of the distal 5 mm of the clavicle through an incision directly over the joint or through an accessory anterior portal. Again, relative ↓ BP is required for the arthroscopic procedure.

Repair of AC joint dislocation ("shoulder separation") is uncommon. Most AC separations are treated nonoperatively because long-term functional results are the same or better than those treated surgically. Severe AC separations occasionally require surgery, when the dislocated clavicle is buttonholed posteriorly through the trapezius, the deltoid origin has been avulsed from the clavicle, or the clavicle is displaced inferiorly below the cricoid process. Repair is performed in the beachchair position with the incision carried out over the AC joint and distal third of the clavicle. The clavicle is reduced and held in place with a large screw into the base of the coracoid, a large suture wrapped around the coracoid, or with K-wires across the AC joint. The coracoclavicular ligament often is repaired or reconstructed with tendon graft, or the coracoacromial ligament is transferred from the edge of the acromion to the clavicle. Following reduction and fixation, the deltoid is reattached to the clavicle if it has been avulsed, and the patient is placed in an immobilizer after skin closure. The operation is technically challenging, and the brachial plexus and subclavian vessels are at risk with screw placement and with inferior dislocations.

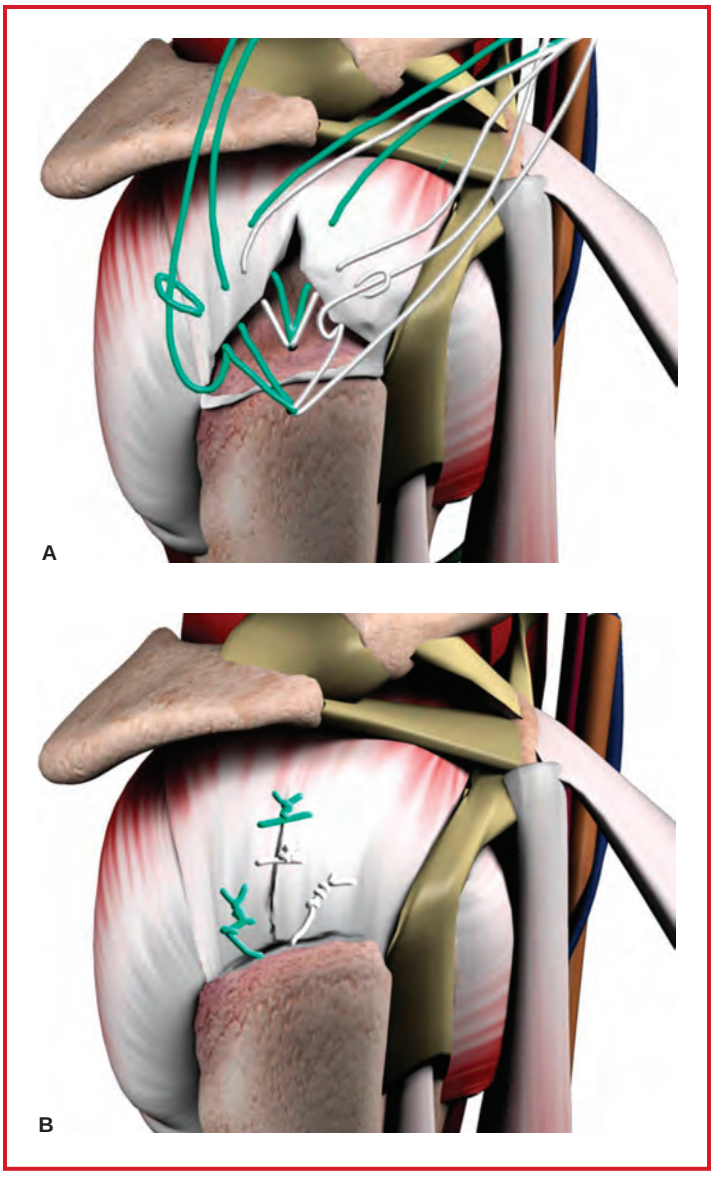


Figure 10.2-3. Lateral view of the right shoulder showing a rotator cuff repair. (Reproduced with permission from Lafosse L, Brozska R, Toussaint B, et al: The outcome and structural integrity of arthroscopic rotator cuff repair with use of the double-row suture anchor technique. *J Bone Joint Surg* 2007; 89(7):1533–41.) **A:** Rotator cuff tear. **B:** Rotator cuff repair with suture anchors.

Usual preop diagnosis: RC tears (partial or complete); AC arthritis; impingement; bursitis; bicipital tendinitis; AC separation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Beachchair; semisitting, ~40–70°; or lateral decubitus
Incision	Oblique, saber-type incision anteriorly over distal acromion; lateral or deltopectoral incision for wider exposure; deltoid-splitting incision for RC tears

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Special instrumentation	Power equipment for bone work; self-retaining retractors for cuff repairs; suture anchors
Unique considerations	Rigid eye protection for ipsilateral eye and careful head positioning
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–3 h
Closing considerations	Muscle relaxation when mobilizing cuff and during closure. Arm in sling and swathe, or abduction pillow for large tears. Immobilizer should be positioned prior to awakening patient to minimize potential for rupture of repair.
EBL	200–400 mL
Postop care	Maintenance of position in sling and swathe; no active motion of shoulder girdle for 2 d–6 wk, depending on procedure.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Infection: 1–5% Axillary nerve damage: < 2% Musculocutaneous nerve damage: < 2% Breakage of instruments: < 1% Brachial plexus damage (position-dependent) Suprascapular nerve at risk for RC mobilization
Pain score	5–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Rotator cuff tears > 40 yr (younger for athletes)
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence[2]	5–30% of general population affected by RC and acromial conditions, depending on age, thickness of tear, associated conditions
Etiology	Age-related; trauma (70% involved in light work)
Associated conditions	Bursitis; tendinitis; impingement; RC disease (especially in first-time glenohumeral dislocations > 40 yr); diabetes and renal failure; hypermobility

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Surgery for Shoulder Instability, p. 966.

Suggested Readings

1. Chelly JE, Greger J, Al-Samsam T, et al: Reduction of operating and recovery room times and overnight hospital stay with interscalene blocks as sole anesthetic technique for rotator cuff surgery. *Minerva Anestesiol* 2001; 67(9):613–9.
2. Cofield RH, Parvizi J, Hoffmeyer PJ, et al: Surgical repair of chronic rotator cuff tears. A prospective long-term study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2001; 83A(1):71–7.
3. Hata Y, Saitoh S, Murakami N, et al: A less invasive surgery for rotator cuff tear: mini-open repair. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 2001; 10(1):11–16.
4. Martin SD, Baumgarten TE, Andrews JR: Arthroscopic resection of the distal aspect of the clavicle with concomitant subacromial decompression. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2001; 83A(3):328–35.
5. Yamaguchi K, Ball CM, Galatz LM: Arthroscopic rotator cuff repair: transition from mini-open to all-arthroscopic. *Clin Orthop* 2001; 390:83–94.

SURGERY FOR SHOULDER INSTABILITY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Shoulder instability** is classified as multidirectional (MDI)/atraumatic, or unidirectional/traumatic.

MDI is associated with generalized ligamentous laxity (e.g., Ehlers Danlos or Marfan syndromes, or idiopathic), and is treated primarily nonoperatively with physical therapy. Open or arthroscopic **capsular shift** is performed for recalcitrant cases. This involves "plication" of the capsule and/or labrum to decrease the capsular volume of the shoulder. Patients with MDI, known as "voluntary dislocators," frequently have psychiatric disorders and are very poor candidates for surgery.

Traumatic instability is usually anterior and is quite common in the young, active population. The shoulder is the most commonly dislocated joint. Recurrent dislocation in young, active patients is common (80–90%) and is associated with avulsion of the capsule/labrum from the anterior-inferior glenoid rim (Bankart lesion). The population undergoing a **Bankart repair** is almost invariably young and healthy. Older first-time dislocators (age > 50 yr) more commonly sustain rotator cuff (RC) tears or fractures, which do not result in chronic instability, but may require operative reduction and RC repair or fracture fixation. Posterior traumatic dislocation is much less common and is associated with high-energy trauma, seizures, or electrocution.

Instability surgery is often preceded by exam under anesthesia and arthroscopic examination, either in the beachchair or lateral decubitus position. The essential feature of instability surgery, whether arthroscopic or open, is the reattachment of the anterior inferior capsulolabral complex back to the rim of the glenoid, thus reestablishing the normal "bumper" effect of the anterior-inferior labrum and decreasing the capsular volume of the shoulder. Nonanatomic procedures (reconstructive) are much less common, but are still performed occasionally. These include transfer of the coracoid process to the anterior glenoid rim (**Bristow or Latarjet procedure**).

The **open Bankart repair** is performed in the beachchair position using the deltopectoral approach, with the interval between the deltoid and pectoralis major. The subscapularis (anterior RC muscle) lies just anterior to the joint capsule (Fig. 10.2-4), and this is either detached from its insertion or split. The capsule may then be opened to visualize the joint and rim of the glenoid. The glenoid rim is decorticated, providing bleeding bone to promote healing, and the anterior capsule is reattached through drill holes in the glenoid or with suture anchors. The capsule often is imbricated (overlapping folds) if it is redundant.

The shoulder and deltoid are highly vascular; however, bleeding is usually slight, with careful surgical technique. Major nerves are close but out of the plane of the operative field. The **musculocutaneous nerve** may be stretched by excessive medial retraction of the coracobrachialis (especially if a coracoid osteotomy is used) and the **axillary nerve** may be injured if the surgeon strays too far inferiorly.

If a **subscapularis-releasing technique** is used, the muscle is reattached and must be protected postop. External rotation of the shoulder is prevented for several weeks while the repair heals, and the surgeon prefers that the patient remain anesthetized until a shoulder immobilizer is applied.

The **arthroscopic Bankart repair** is similar to the open procedure but is performed through two anterior portals with the scope coming in posteriorly. This procedure is less painful postop and allows for more rapid rehabilitation, because the subscapularis is not detached.

Open surgery for posterior dislocation is similar to the open Bankart repair, but it is done in the lateral position and utilizes the interval between the infraspinatus and teres minor. The RC attachment is preserved, but the posterior deltoid is detached and must be protected postop.

Usual preop diagnosis: Recurrent traumatic anterior or posterior instability; MDI; fracture dislocation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open	Arthroscopic
Position	Beachchair for anterior; lateral decubitus for posterior	Lateral decubitus or beachchair
Incision	Deltopectoral (anterior); posterior approach (posterior)	Multiple small portals

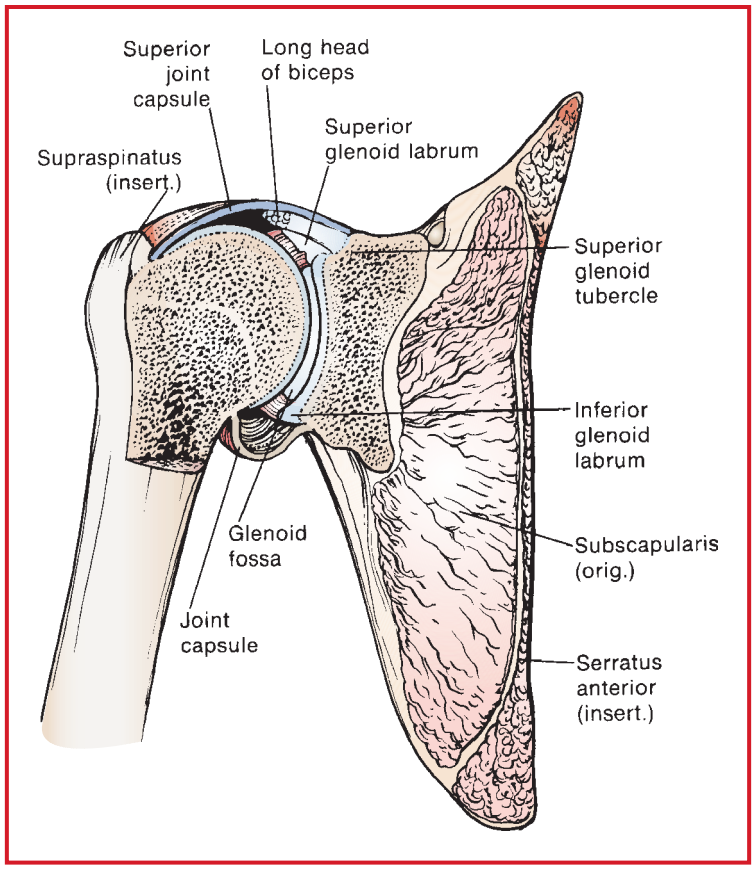


Figure 10.2-4. Cross section of the joint: The joint capsule is redundant inferiorly to allow abduction. The long head of the biceps tendon traverses the joint. The tendon is surrounded by synovium and, therefore, is anatomically intracapsular but extrasynovial. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1994.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Open	Arthroscopic
Special instrumentation	Arthroscopic shaver; suture anchors; glenoid and humeral instrumentation	⇐ + arthroscopic instruments for suture passing and knot-tying
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop if bone work performed	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Continuous anesthesia until application of sling and swathe or abduction pillow	⇐
EBL	200–400 mL	Minimal
Postop care	No active motion for 6 wk	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Axillary nerve palsy: 15% (may be preexisting) Suprascapular nerve injury	
Pain score	8	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	15–35 yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma; hypermobility; Sz
Associated conditions	RC tears (> 50 yr); hypermobility syndrome; Sz disorder; Hill-Sachs lesion (humeral head defect) may require bone grafting; superior labral tears; in most axillary nerve palsies from the injury; iatrogenic (rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: shoulder arthroscopy; surgery for acromial impingement, RC tears, and AC disease; surgery for shoulder dislocations or instability)

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, three patient populations present for repair of RC tears or shoulder arthroscopy: (a) healthy posttrauma, (b) nonrheumatoid arthritic, and (c) rheumatoid arthritic. Individuals presenting for repair of shoulder dislocations also may include those with a joint hypermobility syndrome (e.g., Marfan or Ehlers-Danlos) or Sz disorder patients.

Respiratory	Arthritic patients may exhibit Sx of pleural effusion or pulmonary fibrosis. Hoarseness may indicate cricoarytenoid joint (CAJ) involvement → difficult intubation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.) Seizure disorder patients who suffer from recurrent shoulder dislocation as a result of frequent grand mal Sz also may suffer from occult aspiration pneumonia or pneumonitis. **Tests:** Consider CXR; PFTs; ABGs in debilitated rheumatoid patients.
Cardiovascular	Arthritic patients may suffer from chronic pericardial effusions, valvular disease, and cardiac conduction defects. Patients presenting for shoulder stabilization because of joint hypermobility syndromes are likely to have valvular dysfunction and are vulnerable to aortic dissection 2° HTN. These patients may require antibiotic prophylaxis for bacterial endocarditis. **Tests:** Consider ECG, ECHO in patients with severe rheumatoid arthritis. Recent ECHO to assess valve function and aortic root size indicated in most patients with Marfan syndrome.
Neurological	Arthritic patients may have cervical or lumbar radiculopathies that should be documented carefully preop. For example, head flexion may cause cervical cord compression. Patients with severe Sz disorders can suffer from recurrent shoulder dislocations 2° frequent violent grand mal Sz. Such patients should be treated maximally for Sz disorder prior to elective surgery. Be aware that as many as 15% of shoulder dislocations can be accompanied by axillary nerve palsy, which should be documented carefully preop. **Tests:** Consider C-spine radiographs to r/o occult subluxations in arthritic patients with neck complaints or upper extremity radiculopathy. Verify therapeutic levels of antiepileptic medication in Sz disorder patients.
Musculoskeletal	Arthritic patients may have limited neck and jaw ROM and may require fiberoptic intubation techniques. Bony deformities or muscle contractures may necessitate special attention to positioning. Patients with joint hypermobility syndromes presenting for shoulder surgery also may suffer other joint dislocations 2° positioning problems.

Hematologic	Virtually all patients will be on some type of anti-inflammatory medication that may result in anemia or Plt inhibition. Ideally, patients should D/C NSAIDs at least 5 d preop; aspirin, 7 d. In addition, selected patients with Ehlers-Danlos are known to have severe coagulation defects that may preclude the use of regional anesthesia. **Tests:** A coag profile is mandatory in Ehlers-Danlos patients.
Endocrine	Rheumatoid patients may be on oral corticosteroids and may require supplemental perioperative steroids (e.g., 100 mg hydrocortisone q 8 h iv) to treat adrenal suppression, although the routine use of "stress-dose steroids" has been questioned.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct (in healthy patients); other tests as indicated from H&P. Patients with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome should always have banked blood available for surgery, except for the most trivial of procedures.
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or regional anesthesia (interscalene block), or a combination of the two techniques, can be used. A suprascapular block (when interscalene block is contraindicated) can be used for intraop → postop pain control in arthroscopic shoulder procedures. When logistically feasible, a combined technique is ideal. Unless contraindicated, a long-acting local anesthetic should be used in regional anesthesia for shoulder surgery to ameliorate postop pain.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Arthritic patients may require awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3)
Emergence	Management of emergence and extubation should be routine, except in difficult airway cases, which require awake extubation. Patients should remain anesthetized until the shoulder is immobilized.

Regional anesthesia:

Local anesthetics	2% lidocaine or 1.5% mepivacaine have similar onset times (10–15 min) and similar duration (4–6 h). If extended postop pain control is desired, 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.5% ropivacaine (each with epinephrine 1:400,000) can be used. Onset is usually within 30 min, with duration up to 10–12 h. Ropivacaine may be preferred for peripheral nerve block due to its decreased cardiotoxicity.
Interscalene block	0.5% bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, or ropivacaine 20–30 mL The skin on the top of the shoulder (C3-C4) and the medial aspect of the upper arm (T2) may require separate subcutaneous field blocks. Phrenic nerve block → hemidiaphragmatic paralysis is an inevitable consequence of the interscalene block, which may not be tolerated by patients with significant preexisting respiratory compromise. Major complications, such as total spinal or pneumothorax resulting from interscalene block, are extremely rare. Interscalene block is contraindicated in patients with contralateral recurrent laryngeal nerve or phrenic nerve palsy (e.g., post CABG). If sedation is needed, midazolam (0.5–1.0 mcg boluses) or propofol (50–100 mg/kg/min by infusion), given initially in subanesthetic doses and thereafter titrated to effect, are good choices.
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal-to-moderate blood loss IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h IV catheter placed in contralateral upper extremity.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Precordial Doppler ± Arterial line	BP cuff should be placed on the arm for beachchair procedures. To help detect VAE, consider precordial Doppler monitoring when semisitting position used. Consider intraarterial BP monitoring for patients with hypermobility disorders because of risk for aortic dissection 2° HTN.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓eyes ↑ VAE risk in semisitting position	Postural ↓ BP is the most common complication of the semisitting position. Changing to this position gradually can help prevent ↓ BP, as can the use of antiembolism stockings, plus fluid-loading the patient. Marfan and Ehlers-Danlos patients require very gentle positioning to prevent joint dislocations.
Interscalene block complications	Total spinal Accidental epidural injection Local anesthetic toxicity (Sz/dysrhythmias) Stellate ganglion block (Horner's syndrome) Laryngeal nerve block Phrenic nerve block Pneumothorax Persistent paresthesia	Resuscitative equipment, including airway management tools, should be immediately available. When possible, nerve blocks should be performed in responsive and cooperative patients to minimize complications. May last ≤ 6 wk
Other complications	↓ BP during surgical prep and positioning Cardiac dysrhythmia VAE	↓ BP during long surgical preps normally can be avoided by using light inhalation anesthesia (e.g., isoflurane 0.3–0.5%) to ensure amnesia, with moderate muscle relaxation to prevent bucking on the ETT, and maintaining adequate hydration. Antiembolism stockings will help prevent venous pooling in lower limbs. Dysrhythmias may be 2° to irrigation fluids containing epinephrine.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3) or regional block techniques.	Combined regional-general anesthetic techniques are excellent for shoulder procedures, especially with respect to postop pain management.
Tests	None indicated routinely	

Suggested Readings

1. Borgeat A: Acute and nonacute complications associated with interscalene block and shoulder surgery. *Anesthesiology* 2001; 95(4):875–80.
2. Bottoni CR, Wilckens JH, DeBerardino TM, et al: A prospective, randomized evaluation of arthroscopic stabilization vs nonoperative treatment in patients with acute, traumatic, first-time shoulder dislocations. *Am J Sports Med* 2002; 30(4):576–80.
3. Gill TJ, Micheli LJ, Gebhard F, et al: Bankart repair for anterior instability of the shoulder. Long-term outcome. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1997; 79(6):850–7.
4. Kim SH, Ha KI, Kim SH: Bankart repair in traumatic anterior shoulder instability: open vs arthroscopic technique. *Arthroscopy* 2002; 18(7):755–63.
5. Murphy DB: Upper extremity blocks for day surgery. *Tech in Reg Anes Pain Manag* 2000; 4(1):19–29.
6. Reginster JY, Damas P, Franchimont P: Anaesthetic risks in osteoarticular disorders. *Clin Rheum* 1985; 4(1):30–8.
7. Sperber A, Hamberg P, Karlsson J, et al: Comparison of an arthroscopic and open procedure for posttraumatic instability of the shoulder: a prospective, randomized multicenter study. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 2001; 10(2):105–8.
8. Weiss KS, Savoie FH III: Recent advances in arthroscopic repair of traumatic anterior instability. *Clin Orthop* 2002; 400:117–22.

GLENOHUMERAL SHOULDER ARTHROPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Shoulder replacement is performed for pain associated with end-stage arthritis. Primary osteoarthritis (wear-and-tear arthritis) is much less common in the shoulder than in the weight-bearing joints, such as the hip and knee. The most common causes of shoulder arthritis requiring **total shoulder arthroplasty (TSA)** are osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis; avascular necrosis (AVN); posttraumatic arthritis, and rotator cuff tear arthropathy. Most patients are older than 65 yr.

TSA involves replacement of the humeral head with a stemmed prosthesis and resurfacing the glenoid with a polyethylene component. Both components may be cemented or uncemented, depending on the surgeon's preference. **Hemiarthroplasty** involves only replacement of the humeral side. This is indicated when the humeral head is involved primarily and the glenoid is in good condition, as in severe proximal humerus fractures, AVN of the humeral head, and some chronic dislocators. Replacement of the glenoid is contraindicated in the presence of an unreconstructable massive RC tear because eccentric forces lead to rapid loosening of the glenoid component. Some revision cases require glenoid bone grafting, which increases the complexity and potential blood loss.

Shoulder arthroplasty utilizes the beachchair position and the deltopectoral incision (Fig. 10.2-5). The deltopectoral interval is developed. The subscapularis insertion is incised, and the muscle is reflected medially. The capsule is incised and the joint exposed. The humeral head is dislocated anteriorly, and the head is removed with an oscillating saw. Reamers and broaches are used to prepare the proximal humerus for the prosthesis. If the glenoid is to be resurfaced, it is done before implantation of the final humeral component. The labrum is excised and a motorized reamer is used to remove the cartilage of the glenoid. Glenoid drill holes are made to conform to the back of the prosthesis. The glenoid prosthesis is cemented into place, with the component held in position manually until the cement hardens (~15 min). Trial humeral components are placed, and the appropriate sizing of the head and stem are assessed. The final humeral component is inserted with or without cement. The joint is reduced, and the subscapularis is repaired. Skin closure is followed by placement of a sling or shoulder immobilizer. Postop management includes early passive ROM, limiting active internal rotation, and passive external rotation until the subscapularis has healed. Additional limitations may be instituted in revision situations or if RC repair is performed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Rheumatoid arthritis; posttraumatic arthritis; AVN; RC arthropathy; 4–part proximal humerus fracture

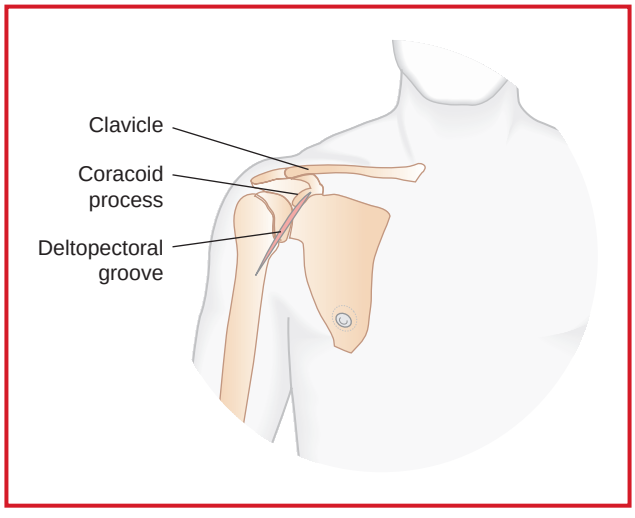


Figure 10.2-5. Incision in the deltopectoral groove. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1994.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Semisitting, beachchair
Incision	Deltopectoral incision (Fig. 10.2-5) or extended incision for complex revision
Special instrumentation	Glenoid and humeral instrumentation, in addition to usual shoulder instruments; mixing and introduction of cement
Unique considerations	Systemic illnesses of the patient; systemic complications of use of cement in the patient; precautions in pregnant staff working with methylmethacrylate; usage of laminar flow or UV lighting for total joint precautions, depending on the surgeon's preference and capabilities of the OR
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop, and 48 h postop
Surgical time	2–5 h
Closing considerations	Drain; sling and swathe
EBL	200–1,000 mL
Postop care	Immediate passive motion. No active internal rotation for 6 wk.
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Blood loss Nerve injury: Rare ↓ BP 2° cement: Rare Infection
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	45–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Osteoarthritis; inflammatory arthritis; trauma; avascular necrosis; systemic disease
Associated conditions	Inflammatory disease; systemic disease; alcoholism; RC pathology; arthritis and radiculopathy; cervical arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, three patient populations present for shoulder arthroplasty: (a) healthy posttrauma, (b) nonrheumatoid arthritic, and (c) rheumatoid arthritic.

Respiratory	Rheumatoid arthritic patients may exhibit Sx of pleural effusion or pulmonary fibrosis. Hoarseness may indicate cricoarytenoid joint (CAJ) involvement → difficult intubation. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Wrist Procedures, p. 936.) **Tests:** Consider CXR; PFTs; ABGs in debilitated rheumatoid patients.
Cardiovascular	Rheumatoid arthritic patients may suffer from chronic pericardial effusions, valvular disease, and cardiac conduction defects. **Tests:** Consider ECG and ECHO in patients with severe rheumatoid arthritis.
Neurological	Arthritic patients may have cervical or lumbar radiculopathies that should be documented carefully preop. For example, head flexion may cause cervical cord compression. **Tests:** C-spine radiographs to r/o occult subluxations in rheumatoid patients with neck complaints or upper extremity radiculopathy

Musculoskeletal	Arthritic patients may have limited neck and jaw ROM that may require special intubation techniques. Bony deformities or muscle contracture may necessitate special attention to positioning.
Hematologic	Virtually all nontrauma patients will be on some type of anti-inflammatory medication that may result in anemia or Plt inhibition. Ideally, patients should D/C NSAIDs at least 5 d preop. Immunosuppressive treatment may ↑ risk of infection.
Endocrine	Rheumatoid patients may be on oral corticosteroids and may require supplemental perioperative steroids (e.g., 100 mg hydrocortisone q 8 h iv) to treat adrenal suppression, although the routine use of "stress-dose steroids" has been questioned.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct (healthy patients); other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or a combination of GETA and regional anesthesia can be used. An interscalene brachial plexus block in combination with GA is excellent for surgical procedures on the shoulder. Unless contraindicated, a long-acting local anesthetic should be used in regional anesthesia for shoulder surgery to ameliorate postop pain.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Rheumatoid patients may require awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Avoid N_2O in patients taking methotrexate. Because of the typically long duration of these cases, the opioid selected as part of the balanced anesthetic technique may be given by continuous infusion (e.g., iv sufentanil [0.25–1.0 mcg/kg/h]). Some surgeons prefer muscle relaxation beyond that provided by volatile anesthetic. The surgeon may request reduction in BP: maintain cerebral perfusion pressure.
Emergence	Management of emergence and extubation should be routine except in difficult airway cases that require awake extubation. Emergence from anesthesia should be delayed until patient's shoulder is securely immobilized in the sling and swathe to prevent undesired movement of the newly placed prosthesis.

Regional anesthesia:

Local anesthetics	Significant discomfort may be associated with this procedure; therefore, extended postop pain control is desirable. When a single-shot technique is used, 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.5% ropivacaine (± epinephrine 1:400,000) can be used. Onset is usually within 30 min, with duration up to 10–12 h. Ropivacaine may be preferred for peripheral nerve block, due to its decreased cardiotoxicity. For continuous catheter techniques, a postop infusion of 6–8 mL/h of 0.2% of any of these agents is appropriate.
Interscalene block	Typical anesthetics and doses. Epinephrine [2.5–5 mcg/mL] may be added to the local anesthetic to decrease peak plasma concentrations: • 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.5% ropivacaine, 20–30 mL. The skin on the top of the shoulder (C3-C4) and the medial aspect of the upper arm (T2) may require separate subcutaneous field blocks. Phrenic nerve block → hemidiaphragmatic paralysis is an inevitable consequence of the interscalene block, which may not be tolerated by patients with significant preexisting respiratory compromise. A continuous interscalene catheter (tunneled away from the surgical field) may be placed for postop pain management. Major complications, such as total spinal or pneumothorax resulting from interscalene block, are extremely rare. Interscalene block is contraindicated in patients with contralateral recurrent laryngeal nerve or phrenic nerve palsy. If sedation is needed, midazolam (0.5–1.0 mg boluses), or propofol (25–100 mcg/kg/min by infusion), titrated to effect, are good choices.

Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate-to-significant blood loss IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1.5–3.0 mL/kg/h	RBC recovery and reinfusion techniques (e.g., Cell Saver) are advisable because blood loss can be considerable. IV in nonoperative upper extremity.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) Precordial Doppler	Consider invasive, hemodynamic monitoring in the debilitated or elderly patient. Because VAE is a possible complication of the semisitting position, consider using precordial Doppler for cases done in this position.
Positioning	✓and pad pressure points ✓eyes ↑ VAE risk	Postural ↓ BP is the most common complication of the semisitting position. Changing patient to this position gradually can help prevent ↓ BP, as can the use of antiembolism stockings and fluid-loading the patient. Care with neck positioning. Check head position intraoperatively as shoulder traction may lead to injury.
Interscalene block complications	Total spinal Epidural anesthesia Local anesthetic toxicity (Sz/dysrhythmias) Stellate ganglion block (Horner's syndrome) Laryngeal nerve block Phrenic nerve block Pneumothorax Persistent paresthesia	Resuscitative equipment, including airway management tools, should be immediately available. May last ≤ 6 wk.
Other complications	Potential for embolic event ↓ BP during prep and positioning	Because of the increased risk of VAE during shoulder arthroplasty, N_2O may be D/C'd during placement of humeral component. Use of methylmethacrylate cement has been associated with the sudden onset of ↓ BP and even cardiac arrest, presumably due to profound vasodilation ± associated VAE. ↓ BP during long surgical prep usually can be avoided by using light inhalation anesthesia (isoflurane 0.3–0.5%) to ensure amnesia, with moderate muscle relaxation to prevent bucking on ETT, and maintaining adequate hydration.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3) or regional block/catheter	Combined regional-general anesthetic techniques are excellent for shoulder procedures, especially for postop pain management.
Tests	None indicated routinely	

Suggested Readings

1. Borgeat A: Acute and nonacute complications associated with interscalene block and shoulder surgery. *Anesthesiology* 2001; 95(4):875–80.
2. Cheung E, Willis M, Walker M, Clark R, Frankle MA: Complications in reverse total shoulder arthroplasty. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2011; 19(7):439–49.
3. Conroy PH, Awad IT: Ultrasound-guided blocks for shoulder surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(6):638–43.
4. Goldberg BA, Smith K, Jackins S, et al: The magnitude and durability of functional improvement after total shoulder arthroplasty for degenerative joint disease. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 2001; 10(5):464–9.
5. Gray AT: Ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia: current state of the art. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 104:368–73.

6. Green A, Norris TR: Shoulder arthroplasty for advanced glenohumeral arthritis after anterior instability repair. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 2001; 10(6):539–45.
7. Liu SS, Strodtbeck WM, Richman JM, Wu CL: A comparison of regional versus general anesthesia for ambulatory anesthesia: a meta analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg* 2005; 101(6):1634–42.
8. Murphy DB: Upper extremity blocks for day surgery. *Tech in Reg Anes Pain Manag* 2000; 4(1):19–29.
9. Pohl A, Cullen DJ: Cerebral ischemia during shoulder surgery in the upright position: a case series. *J Clin Anesth* 2005; 17(6):463–9.
10. Reginster JY, Damas P, Franchimont P: Anaesthetic risks in osteoarticular disorders. *Clin Rheum* 1985; 4(1):30–8.
11. Shapiro J, Zuckerman JD: Glenohumeral arthroplasty: indications and preoperative considerations. *Instr Course Lect* 2002; 51:3–10.
12. Wand RJ, Dear KE, Bigsby E, Wand JS: A review of shoulder replacement surgery. *J Perioper Pract* 2012; 22(11):354–9.

SHOULDER GIRDLE PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Trauma about the shoulder girdle in young patients ranges from athletic injuries to life-threatening trauma. Some of these injuries include common athletic injuries, such as **acromioclavicular joint separations,** which rarely require surgery unless there are associated **acromial** or **clavicular fractures. Posterior sternoclavicular dislocations** may warrant surgical stabilization if the trachea is compressed. **Clavicle fractures,** frequently associated with **scapular fractures,** occasionally require open reduction.

Scapular fractures involving the glenoid also may require surgical stabilization. Extreme fractures involving the shoulder girdle (**scapulothoracic dissociations**) include scapular fracture, clavicle fracture, subclavian or axillary artery disruption, and brachial plexus injury. These may coexist with **proximal humerus fractures,** rib fractures, and pneumothorax. In the older, debilitated patient, the most common injury is proximal humeral fracture, which may be amenable to surgical stabilization or may be so comminuted as to warrant hemiarthroplasty.

A displaced proximal humerus fracture may require open reduction internal fixation with a plate and screws or hemiarthroplasty through a deltopectoral approach utilizing a beachchair position (see Surgery for Shoulder Instability, p. 964, and Glenohumeral Shoulder Arthroplasty, p. 969). A displaced clavicle fracture may require open reduction internal fixation with a plate and screws utilizing a beachchair or supine position. A scapular body fracture would be stabilized with a plate and screws via a posterior approach utilizing a prone or lateral position (see Surgery for Shoulder Instability, p. 964). As with other shoulder procedures, relaxation is necessary upon awakening the patient after the shoulder is placed into an immobilization device.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma about the shoulder girdle

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Anterior	Posterior
Position	Semisitting or prone	Lateral decubitus (scapula)
Incision	Anterior, superior, or oblique for acromioclavicular; supraclavicular for clavicle; deltopectoral for proximal humerus and glenoid	Posterior lateral border or medial border of scapula, spinous scapula, depending on location
Special instrumentation	Plates and screws; tension band wiring; proximal humerus replacement for comminuted fractures	⇐
Unique considerations	Multiple traumas warrant early stabilization; may require vascular repair and brachial plexus exploration.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	2–10 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Fracture-dependent; most commonly requires application of sling and swathe.	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Anterior	Posterior
EBL	200–1200 mL or greater, depending on trauma	⇐
Postop care	May require ICU for multiple-trauma patients; otherwise, early mobilization with physical therapy	⇐
Mortality	Mortality dependent on associated conditions: Infection Neurologic injury Respiratory failure Massive blood loss Unrecognized pneumothorax Cardiac tamponade	⇐
Morbidity	Nerve injury (axillary, brachial plexus) Stiffness Poor healing	Axillary and suprascapular ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–10	6 (clavicle and AC joint) 8 (scapula and proximal humerus)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15–80 yr, depending on nature of trauma
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma
Associated conditions	Axillary nerve palsy; musculocutaneous nerve palsy; brachial plexus injury; arterial disruption in high-energy trauma; brachial and great vessel injuries and posterior sternoclavicular dislocation; pneumothorax

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Brachial Plexus Surgery, p. 976.

Suggested Readings

1. Cole PA, Gauger EM, Schroder LK: Management of scapular fractures. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(3):130–41.
2. Pandya NK, Namdari S, Hosalkar HS: Displaced clavicle fractures in adolescents: facts, controversies, and current trends. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(8):498–505.

BRACHIAL PLEXUS SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Brachial plexus injuries occur most commonly in two groups: traumatic birth injuries and high-energy trauma. Surgery ranges from exploration with neurolysis, to repairs, to cable nerve grafting. Typically, the latter requires grafting with the sural nerve, and nerve pedicle transfer, such as transfer of the spinal accessory nerve to denervated paralyzed muscle, combined with muscle transfers. C5-C6 is most commonly injured in obstetrical (Erb's) palsy. Injuries in adults are more commonly closed-traction. Similar to obstetrical palsy, they occur with an outstretched, abducted arm with the neck rotated in the opposite direction. The most severe form includes complete avulsion at the preganglionic level, presenting with a Horner's syndrome, winging of the scapula, and a flail arm.

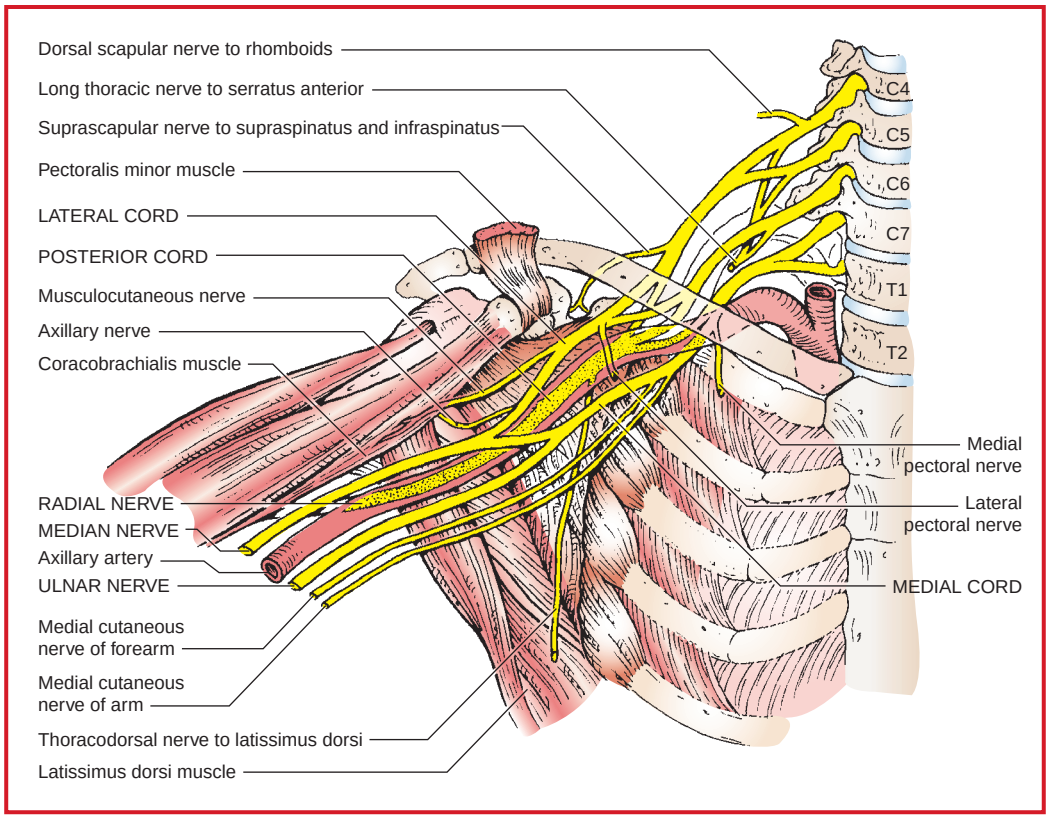


Figure 10.2-6. Brachial plexus: Its division into supraclavicular and infraclavicular portions is apparent. The proximal origin of the dorsal scapular nerve and the long thoracic nerve are demonstrated. The T1 spinal nerve arises below the head of the 1st rib. The relation of the cords of the plexus to the axillary artery at the level of the coracoid process (origin of the pectoralis minor and coracobrachialis muscles) is illustrated. The posterior cord and the radial nerve behind the axillary artery are stippled for clarity. (Reproduced with permission from Tindall GT, Cooper PR, Barrow DL: *The Practice of Neurosurgery,* Vol III. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 1996.)

These are typically "supraclavicular" injuries, and have a poorer prognosis. Surgical exposure may proceed above the clavicle similar to an anterior neck dissection or may require an extension below the clavicle. Occasionally, an osteotomy of the clavicle for extensive dissection is required. For axillary nerve dissection, a posterior approach also is used. Open injuries, such as gunshot or knife wounds, are typically "infraclavicular" and have a better prognosis. (See diagram of brachial plexus, Fig. 10.2-6.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Obstetrical palsy; adult trauma—most commonly motorcycle accident

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lateral decubitus or semisitting
Incision	Supra- or infraclavicular, extensile to include deltopectoral incision. Clavicle osteotomy incision will provide for improved exposure. Supraclavicular incision used for supraclavicular brachial plexus.
Special instrumentation	Nerve stimulator
Unique considerations	Associated trauma
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	4–10 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Closing considerations	Other incisions if nerve grafts obtained
EBL	400–2000 mL
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Bleeding Hematoma Pneumothorax Clavicular nonunion
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Infants and children: 3 mo–8 yr; adults: 20–40 yr
Male:Female	Adult: 5:1
Incidence	Infants: 0.3–8/1000 births; adults: commonly associated with motorcycle accidents
Etiology	Obstetrical palsy; trauma
Associated conditions	None known

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: shoulder girdle procedures; brachial plexus surgery)

PREOPERATIVE

With the exception of traumatic birth injuries, most of these patients are healthy males who have suffered major blunt or penetrating trauma. For the acute and subacute trauma victim, the major anesthesia-related concerns center on associated traumatic injuries. Many adult trauma victims with brachial plexus injuries will be operated on in the first few days after their injury. For infants (usually operated on at 6–12 mo), the major anesthesia-related concerns are those routinely associated with pediatric anesthesia (see Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery, p. 1393). Approximately half of all trauma victims are intoxicated. The anesthesia-related implications of ethanol intoxication include decreased anesthetic requirements, diuresis, vasodilation, and hypothermia.

Respiratory	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. Look for evidence of occult chest injury, including pneumothorax (tachypnea, wheezing, ↓ BP, ↓ PaO_2, CXR changes) and pulmonary contusion (multiple rib fracture, ↓ PaO_2). **Tests:** Consider CXR and ABGs in victims of significant trauma; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. Look for evidence of occult cardiac or mediastinal injuries, such as myocardial contusion (e.g., ECG abnormalities typically consistent with ischemia) or great vessel rupture (e.g., widened mediastinum). **Tests:** Consider CXR (with NG tube in place to assess mediastinal widening) and ECG in victims of significant trauma; others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Victims of shoulder trauma are vulnerable to brachial plexus damage. Look for evidence of upper extremity nerve dysfunction and document any injuries preop. The possibility of closed-head injury also should be considered. **Tests:** Head CT prior to beginning a procedure under GA in a patient with evidence of head trauma
Musculoskeletal	As suggested by coexisting disease or acute trauma injuries. The amount of force necessary to produce a brachial plexus injury mandates a C-spine series to r/o C-spine fracture in all victims of brachial plexus trauma.

Laboratory	In general, most victims of significant trauma are best served by obtaining a wide variety of baseline lab studies to screen for unrecognized injury. These studies generally should include Hct, CBC, ABGs, UA, renal function tests, LFTs; serum amylase.
Premedication	None

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is preferred over regional techniques because of the unpredictable and prolonged length of these procedures and the need to evaluate brachial plexus function postop.

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) is mandatory in unscheduled cases, unless awake fiberoptic intubation is performed (see Anesthetic Considerations for Thoracolumbar Neurosurgical Procedures, p. 127). C-spine fracture patients or those with facial injuries may require awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6) or other special airway techniques, as indicated from H&P. Hemodynamically unstable, acute-trauma patients can be induced more safely with etomidate (0.3–0.4 mg/kg iv) or ketamine (1–3 mg/kg iv).	
Maintenance	Balanced anesthesia with low-dose isoflurane (0.4–0.6%), iv fentanyl, and N_2O in O_2 is suitable for stable patients. Hemodynamically unstable, acute-trauma victims undergoing emergency surgery are not likely to tolerate this regimen and are better served by using a combination of medications designed to have minimal hemodynamic consequences (e.g., fentanyl for analgesia, vecuronium for muscle relaxation, and scopolamine or midazolam for amnesia). N_2O is best avoided in the trauma patient. For brachial plexus surgery, some surgeons prefer minimal muscle relaxation after tracheal intubation so that a nerve stimulator can be used to help identify surgical anatomy.	
Emergence	Management of emergence and extubation should be routine except in difficult airway or full-stomach cases, which require that extubation be delayed until the patient's airway reflexes have returned and the patient is fully awake.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Significant blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h + replacement of blood loss @ 3 × volume Fluid warmer Airway humidifier	IV catheter placed in the nonoperative upper extremity is usually adequate in hemodynamically stable patients. Unstable, acute-trauma victims require a minimum of 2 large-bore iv catheters or large-bore central lines.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± SSEP ± TEE	Invasive hemodynamic monitoring and TEE should be considered in acute, multiple-trauma victims. Some surgeons request SSEP to make continuous assessment of preop intact brachial plexus possible. When using SSEP monitoring, high doses of volatile anesthetic agents should be avoided because they adversely affect SSEP readings.
Positioning	✓and pad pressure points ✓eyes VAE risk	Postural ↓ BP is the most common complication of the semisitting position, particularly during the surgical prep period. SCD or antiembolism stockings may be beneficial. VAE is a potential complication of this position.
Complications	Hemodynamic instability Possible VAE	Previously unrecognized injuries (e.g., pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, intracranial bleeding) should be considered as a cause of unexplained intraop hemodynamic instability in all acute-trauma victims. VAE risk is increased with patient in semisitting position.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications (cont'd)	Sepsis ARDS	Many trauma victims survive the initial insult only to die later of sepsis or ARDS.
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3)	
Tests	Based on concurrent injuries	

Suggested Readings

1. Johnstone RE, Graf DF: Acute trauma with multiple injuries. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2001; 14(2):211–5.
2. Lee SK, Wolfe SW: Nerve transfers for the upper extremity: new horizons in nerve reconstruction. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(8):506–17.
3. Popinchalk SP, Schaffer AA: Physical examination of upper extremity compressive neuropathies. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2012; 43(4):417–30.
4. Thompson RW, Petrinec D, Toursarkissian B: I. Surgical treatment of thoracic outlet compression syndromes. II. Supraclavicular exploration and vascular reconstruction. *Ann Vasc Surg* 1997; 11(4):442–51.

ARM SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Surgical procedures on the arm are primarily for trauma or tumor surgery. Other procedures include extended approaches from the shoulder for significant trauma or tendon transfer. Exploration of peripheral nerves, most commonly of the radial nerve, are also included in this category, as are distal extensile approaches from the elbow for trauma or for lateral epicondylitis ("tennis elbow"). Depending on the lesion or fracture, the incision is developed through an internervous or intramuscular compartment. Procedures include **excisional biopsy** for soft-tissue or bone tumors of the arm; **tumor excision,** which may be marginal, wide, or radical, depending on the tumor encountered; **tendon transfers,** such as pectoralis transfer to replace biceps function, used primarily for brachial plexus injuries; and **fractures and nonunion fractures of the humerus.** Positioning and location of incision is dependent on the level of the pathology. For example, for fractures involving the proximal half of the humerus, the standard **deltopectoral incision** may be extended distally along the interval between the biceps and triceps on the lateral aspect of the arm. This approach requires a beachchair (Figure 10.2-7) or, occasionally, supine position. Distal-third fractures are best approached posteriorly with the **triceps-splitting approach.** Distal fractures that extend into the elbow joint often require an olecranon osteotomy to visualize the fractured joint surface. Posterior approaches to the distal humerus are performed in either the lateral or prone position.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma; tumor

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; semisitting position for extended deltopectoral; lateral decubitus or prone for distal humerus fractures
Incision	Anterolateral approach; posterior approach in the lateral decubitus or prone position
Special instrumentation	Plate and screws; external fixators; intramedullary rods; occasionally, methylmethacrylate cement for tumor surgery; sterile tourniquet for distal humerus; I.I. for fracture surgery
Unique considerations	CT-guided sclerotherapy preop for vascular tumors; longitudinal incisions for biopsy and tumor excisions (not violating fascial planes)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	45 min–6 h
Closing considerations	Drain frequently required

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
EBL	Minimal—500+ mL, depending on pathology
Mortality	Varies with pathology
Morbidity	Bleeding Shoulder stiffness Nerve injury
Pain score	4–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Varies with procedure
Male:Female	Varies with procedure
Incidence	Procedure-dependent
Etiology	Fractures; nerve entrapment (radial) following trauma; tumors
Associated conditions	Radial or ulnar nerve injury with humeral fractures

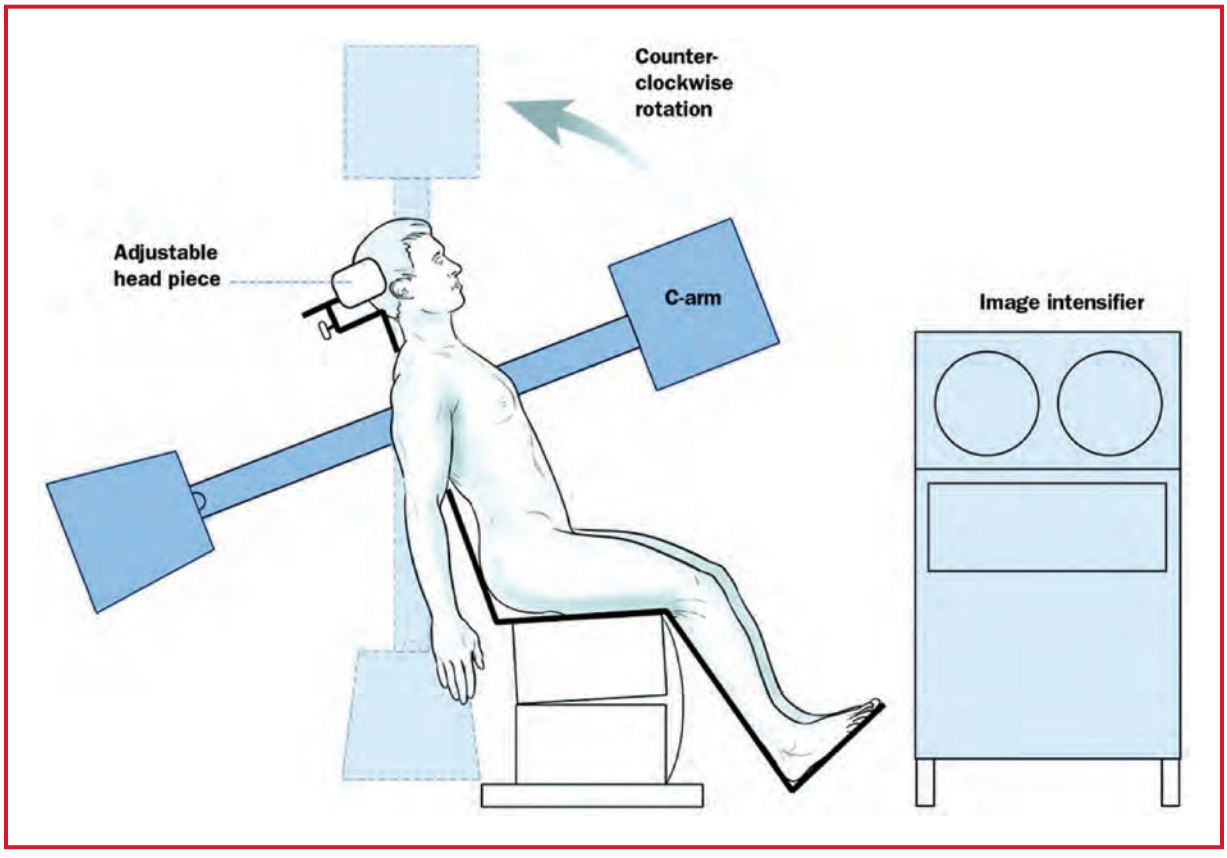


Figure 10.2-7. Beachchair positioning for shoulder surgery. Image intensification may be needed for intraoperative radiography (e.g., fracture surgery). (Reproduced by permission from Robinson CM, Page RS: Severely impacted valgus proximal humerus fractures. *J Bone Joint Surg* 2004; 86A:143–55.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for arm procedures are relatively young and otherwise healthy. Most of these patients present for elective repair of a traumatic injury. The preop workup is appropriate to patient's medical history. Some arm procedures, such as repair of a compound fracture, require immediate attention and necessitate emergency surgery and full-stomach considerations (p. B-5).

Laboratory	Hb/Hct (healthy patients); other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Mild-to-moderate premedication (e.g., in adults, midazolam 1–2 mg iv, fentanyl 50–100 mcg iv, titrated to effect) is often desirable before placement of a regional block.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA or regional anesthesia, or a combination of the two, can be used for surgical procedures on the arm. A brachial plexus block via the supraclavicular, infraclavicular or axillary approach is excellent for procedures on the distal arm. The interscalene approach to the brachial plexus is suitable for more proximal humerus procedures. Regional anesthesia alone is a means of avoiding the risk of aspiration pneumonitis associated with GA in the patient with a full stomach. Procedures longer than 3 h usually require general anesthesia in addition to regional. Regional anesthesia with sedation is usually well tolerated in shorter procedures.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) except in acute-trauma patients, where rapid-sequence induction is appropriate (see p. B-5)
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3)
Emergence	Management of emergence and extubation should be routine, except in difficult airway cases, which require awake extubation. Skin closure is frequently followed by application of a splint; patient should remain anesthetized during splinting procedure.

Regional anesthesia:

Local anesthetics	2% lidocaine or 1.5% mepivacaine have similar onset times (10–15 min) and similar duration (4–6 h). If extended postop pain control is desired, 0.5% bupivacaine or ropivacaine (± epinephrine 1:400,000) can be used. Onset is usually within 30 min, with duration of 8–12 h. If GA is planned, 0.25% ropivacaine or bupivacaine is sufficient.
Brachial plexus block	For proximal humerus surgery an interscalene block is indicated with a catheter for postop pain management. Supraclavicular, infraclavicular and axillary approaches are all suitable for more distal surgery. Supraclavicular or infraclavicular blocks are better tolerated in fracture patients, because the arm need not be moved. Ultrasound guidance can improve speed and comfort during block placement. A peripheral nerve catheter (infraclavicular approach) may be placed to prolong pain relief in appropriate patients. • 2% lidocaine or 1.5% mepivacaine 30 mL for procedures lasting ≤ 2.5 h. • 0.5% bupivacaine, or ropivacaine 30 mL for procedures lasting > 2.5 h. If sedation is needed, midazolam (0.5–1.0 mg boluses) or propofol (25–100 mcg/kg/min by infusion), titrated to effect, are good choices. Sensation to the skin of the upper inner arm is supplied by the intercostobrachial nerve (T2), which must be blocked separately.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Shoulder Arthroscopy, Removal of Bone Spur (Subacromial Decompression): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Yb2YsSbSdck

Brachial Plexus – Structure and Location – 3D Anatomy Tutuorial: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hrKesc_XSzo

Ultrasound-Guided Interscalene Brachial Plexus Nerve Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Dg9BJ-32yLc

Ultrasound-Guided Infraclavicular Brachial Plexus Nerve Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hRyDtXrfYqc

Ultrasound-Guided Supraclavicular Brachial Plexus Nerve Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ztOIvfjsB-U

CHAPTER

10.3 Spine Surgery

SURGEONS

Eugene J. Carragee, MD, FACS
Ivan Cheng, MD
Nima Salari, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Adam P. Brown, MD
C. Philip Larson, Jr., MD, CM

MINIMALLY INVASIVE POSTERIOR LUMBAR DISCECTOMY (MICRODISCECTOMY)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Since the mid-1990s, a number of techniques have been developed to allow the decompression of lumbar roots (removal of disc material) with as little trauma to the nerves and surrounding tissues as possible. In most instances, little or no bone is removed, and therefore, this is not technically a laminectomy or laminotomy. These minimally invasive procedures typically are carried out in healthy young or middle-aged adults with sciatica and are not done for more involved pathology, such as deformity, tumor, or infection. **Transpedicular fixation** and **short-segment fusions** may be attempted using modifications of these techniques.

Microdiscectomy approach: This can be done under GA, regional (epidural or spinal), or local anesthesia. The patient is placed in a prone or kneeling position, and the posterior landmarks are palpated to identify the approximate level (e.g., L4/5); then the overlying skin is infiltrated with local anesthetic. A spinal needle is placed to the level of the lamina, and an x-ray or fluoroscopic image is taken to confirm the level. A 1" incision is made over the proposed interspace, and using either traditional or specialized retractors, the soft tissue is displaced to expose the ligamentum flavum. With the use of an operating microscope, the ligamentum flavum is removed, the nerve retracted, and the extruded disc excised. For a single level, this should take between 30 and 90 min, depending on the size of the patient and whether there is any scarring or adhesions from previous surgery.

Variant approach: **Percutaneous discectomy** through a posterolateral approach is usually reserved for "contained discs"—protrusions into, but not through, the outer annulus of the disc. These are usually done under MAC with local anesthetic. The percutaneous instruments may be positioned using fluoroscopic guidance with or without a fiberoptic light source and camera/monitor setup. The disc space is entered posterolaterally. The surgeon usually avoids anesthetizing the area around the nerve root so that the patient can alert the team if the root is struck by an instrument (quite painful). After the disc space is entered, fluoroscopic or camera images are used to guide the surgeon in the removal of the herniated disc. The disc material can be removed with specialized grabbers or automatic power-driven shavers.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic back pain 2° herniated lumbar disc; lumbar radiculopathy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Microdiscectomy	Percutaneous Discectomy
Position	Prone or kneeling, with bolster or frame support. The abdomen must hang free to decompress the epidural veins.	Prone or lateral decubitus
Incision	Posterior midline or slightly off midline, at the appropriate vertebral level	About 8–12 cm lateral to the midline at the appropriate vertebral level
Special instrumentation	Microscope; light source; specialized retraction and dissection instruments for working in a small, deep incision	Percutaneous instruments, including trocars, sounds, and arthroscopic-type grabbers and shavers; fluoroscopy; and, sometimes, camera/monitor and fiberoptic light setup
Unique considerations	Often outpatient procedure. Need to make room for microscope at head of bed.	Patient must be alert enough to respond to pain if nerve roots are encountered.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin I g iv	⇐
Surgical time	0.5–1.5 h	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Minimal suturing	Usually no closure (Band-Aids)
EBL	25–100 mL	Minimal

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Microdiscectomy	Percutaneous Discectomy
Postop care	PACU. Mobilization as soon as tolerated. Usually discharged within 24 h.	PACU → home. Mobilization as tolerated.
Mortality	Very rare	⇐
Morbidity	Nerve injury Dural laceration Infection	Failure to decompress the nerve adequately – ⇐
Pain score	4	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	16–60 yr
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Degenerative; trauma (rare)

MINIMALLY INVASIVE ANTERIOR LUMBAR INTERBODY FUSION THROUGH A TRANSPSOAS APPROACH

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Traditional open techniques of lumbar fusion have shown long-term clinical efficacy. However, the morbidity of the approach, extensive blood loss, and length of postop recovery can offset the benefits of the intervention. Recently, minimally invasive techniques have decreased morbidity. One approach involves lateral approach via a small incision through retroperitoneal fat and the psoas major muscle for access to the lateral lumbar spine with the aid of neuromonitoring to avoid nerves of the lumbar plexus.

The orientation of neural structures of the lumbar plexus has a relatively high level of variability, necessitating the use of neuromonitoring for this approach. After induction of GETA, the surgeon places needle electrodes into muscles of the bilateral lower extremities to record the EMG response to lumbar nerve stimulation. The EMG threshold is the current (mA) required to stimulate the nerve, producing a muscle contraction. Direct nerve stimulation studies have shown that normal nerves elicit an EMG response with an average of 2 mA. Neuromuscular blockade should be avoided, and the use of intravenous anesthesia is encouraged.

The patient is positioned in the lateral decubitus position and held in position with straps and tape. The arms should remain in a neutral position, and an axillary roll is placed just inferior to the axilla to support the area of the upper rib cage to relieve pressure on the axillary nerve and artery. The table is typically flexed to increase the distance between the iliac crest and the rib cage to gain access to the lateral lumbar spine. Fluoroscopic imaging is required to determine true anteroposterior and lateral axes of the desired spinal level. After the patient has been prepped and draped, an incision is made posteriorly at the border between the erector spinae muscles and the abdominal obliques to accommodate the surgeon's index finger and help identify the retroperitoneal space. With care, perforation of the peritoneum is avoided, and the finger is used to sweep this anteriorly. After identifying the psoas muscle, the index finger is swept up to a previously marked direct lateral target over the center of the affected intervertebral segment. An incision is made on the patient's side, through which dilators are placed, and the index finger is used to escort

them safely to the psoas muscle, all while protecting the intraabdominal contents. Careful passage of the dilators and EMG neuromonitoring avoid injury to the lumbar plexus. Once the self-retaining retractor system is positioned, care is taken to determine the course of the lumbar plexus in relation to the blades of the retractor. Once the retractor is positioned over the disc space, under direct vision, a discectomy is performed. Care is taken not to disrupt the anterior longitudinal ligament and risk injury to the main vascular structures coursing anteriorly.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic back pain; lumbar radiculopathy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lateral decubitus with axillary roll. Table flexed.
Incision	Posterior border between erector spinae and abdominal oblique muscles
Special instrumentation	Fluoroscopic imaging
Unique considerations	EMG monitoring: avoid muscle relaxation
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1g iv
Surgical time	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Minimal suturing
EBL	20–100 mL
Postop care	PACU. Mobilization as tolerated. Usually discharged within 24 h.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Reported complication rates: 6.2–52% Iliopsoas weakness Anterior thigh numbness Quadriceps weakness Radiculopathy Foot drop Durotomy
Pain score	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–80 yr
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	Increasingly common
Etiology	Degenerative

Suggested Reading

1. Adamus M, Hrabalek L, Wanek T, Gabrhelik T, Zapletalova J: Intraoperative reversal of neuromuscular block with sugammadex or neostigmine during extreme lateral interbody fusion, a novel technique for spine surgery. *J Anesth* 2011; 25(5):716–20.
2. Arnold PM, Anderson KK, McGuire RA Jr: The lateral transpsoas approach to the lumbar and thoracic spine: a review. *Surg Neurol Int* 2012; 3(Suppl 3):S198–215.
3. Ozgur BM, Aryan HE, Pimenta L, Taylor WR: Extreme Lateral Interbody Fusion (XLIF): a novel surgical technique for anterior lumbar interbody fusion. *Spine J* 2006; 6(4):435–43.
4. Rodgers WB, Gerber EJ, Patterson J: Intraoperative and early postoperative complications in extreme lateral interbody fusion: an analysis of 600 cases. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2011; 36(1):26–32.
5. Tohmeh AG, Rodgers WB, Peterson MD: Dynamically evoked, discrete-threshold electromyography in the extreme lateral interbody fusion approach. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2011; 14(1):31–7.
6. Youssef JA, McAfee PC, Patty CA, et al: Minimally invasive surgery: lateral approach interbody fusion: results and review. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2010; 35(26 Suppl):S302–11.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients undergoing minimally invasive spine procedures are no more likely than the general population to have any specific medical condition; they require normal preop evaluation.

Musculoskeletal	Because these patients may have chronic back pain with radiculopathy, they may not be suitable candidates for regional anesthetic techniques. Postop exacerbation of symptoms may be incorrectly ascribed to the anesthetic technique. A careful motor and sensory evaluation of the lower extremities should be documented. Patients commonly taking centrally acting analgesics or narcotics may require higher doses of sedative-hypnotics and analgesics in the periop period.
Hematologic	Patients should stop taking aspirin or NSAIDs at least 2 wk before surgery. In addition, an INR or PT and PTT should be checked preop. **Tests:** Hct; Plt; INR
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Minimally invasive spine procedures are commonly done under GA; however, local or regional anesthetic techniques are suitable in selected patients. Percutaneous discectomies typically require only MAC with sedation. These patients must be awake to alert the surgeon to inadvertent nerve root contact. In some centers, regional anesthesia (spinal or epidural) is the anesthetic of choice.

General Anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Consider using wire-reinforced ETT to prevent kinking, with patient in prone position.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Usually 1–2 h operation. After exposure, further muscle relaxant use is unnecessary.
Emergence	No special considerations
MAC	See p. B-4–B-5.

Regional anesthesia:

Spinal	Patient in sitting, lateral decubitus, or prone position for placement of subarachnoid block. Doses of local anesthetics should be adequate to provide a high lumbar level of sensory anesthesia (e.g., bupivacaine 6–10 mg with fentanyl 10 mcg).
Epidural	Patient in sitting or lateral decubitus position for placement of epidural catheter. A test dose (e.g., 3 mL of 1.5% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine [5 mcg/mL]) is administered, and the patient is observed for development of subarachnoid block or Sx of an intravascular injection. Titrate lidocaine 2% with epinephrine (3–5 mL at a time) until desired surgical level is obtained.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5 mL/kg/h Blood not likely to be required.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)

Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points	Lateral position: use axillary roll Prone position: Jackson table, Wilson frame, or bolsters to support shoulders/hips and optimize ventilation. Knee-chest position: Andrews table.
	✓ eyes	Place head in cushioned holder with cutout for eyes, nose, chin (e.g., ProneView®). Make certain eyes, nose, and chin are free and clear. Ensure that there is no posterior pressure on the ET tube, as this may result in injury to the uvula or soft palate. Pad elbows, knees, other pressure points. Limit both upper arm abduction and elbow extension to < 90°.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Urinary retention in the older patient	Rx: Consider catheterization.
	Transient numbness/paresthesias, weakness	Due to nerve-root irritation from operation. Rx with analgesics and/or muscle relaxants methocarbamol, cyclobenzaprine.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Ketorolac 30 mg iv	PO analgesics may be suitable: acetaminophen and codeine (Tylenol #3 1–2 tab q 4–6 h) or oxycodone and acetaminophen (Percocet 1 tab q 6 h)
	Epidural analgesia (p. C-2)	Dose prior to the removal of an epidural catheter at the end of the case if it is already in place (p. C-2).
Tests	As indicated by patient status	Patient usually discharged from hospital within 24–48 h.

Suggested Readings

1. Javedan S, Sonntag VK: Lumbar disc herniation: microsurgical approach. *Neurosurgery* 2003; 52(1):160–4.
2. Maroon JC: Current concepts in minimally invasive discectomy. *Neurosurgery* 2002; 51(5 Suppl):S137–45.
3. Rodriguez HE, Connolly MM, Dracopoulos H, et al: Anterior access to the lumbar spine: laparoscopic versus open. *Am Surg* 2002; 68(11):978–83.
4. Schick U, Dohnert J: Technique of microendoscopy in medial lumbar disc herniation. *Minim Invasive Neurosurg* 2002; 45(3):139–41.
5. Spengler DM: Lumbar disc herniation. In *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery*, 3rd edition. Chapman MW, ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 3765–74.
6. Surgical treatment of lumbar disk disorders. *JAMA* 2006;296(20):2485–7.

SPINAL RECONSTRUCTION AND FUSION—THORACIC AND THORACOLUMBAR SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Traditionally, most spinal procedures have been approached posteriorly. The advent of surgical treatment for vertebral TB and postpolio spinal deformities during the 1960s saw the development of surgical approaches to the anterior spine. These procedures initially were reserved for patients with significant deformities, especially kyphosis. More recently, the treatment of traumatic, neoplastic, and degenerative conditions have been included in

the anterior approach. Regardless of the condition under treatment, the approach is similar for a given level. There are several more or less distinct types of surgical exposures, depending on the level.

Cervicothoracic approach: Most cephalad and difficult is the approach to the upper thoracic spine (T1-T3). This generally includes a modified anterior cervical exposure with a caudal extension, including a resection of the clavicle, part of the manubrium, and sometimes the rib at the thoracic outlet. Dangers in this exposure are to the great vessels at the thoracic outlet, trachea (rare) and esophagus (more common), lung parenchyma, sympathetic ganglia, lymphatic duct (on the left), and brachial plexus. Once the spine is exposed and the discs and/or vertebrae are removed, the spinal cord is at risk. This procedure occasionally involves entering the thoracic cavity, in which case it is usually done intrapleurally—that is, through the parietal pleura. The lung needs to be collapsed at least partially. Spinal cord monitoring is usually performed; wake-up tests are not. Manipulation of the carotid artery and aortic arch may cause wide HR and BP fluctuations.

Transthoracic approach: Further down the spine, the levels from T5-T10 are more easily reached via a transthoracic approach (Fig. 10.3-1). This involves a typical thoracotomy with the resection of a rib. The level of the rib resection is usually 1–2 levels above the highest vertebral level being approached. The great vessels and lung parenchyma are at risk, as is the thoracic duct (on the left). The patient is in the lateral decubitus position, and the mediastinum and heart usually fall to the opposite side, out of harm's way. Risk to the spinal cord depends on the difficulty and extent of the vertebral disease and the reconstruction. Spinal cord monitoring usually is performed intraop. The need for the lung to be deflated varies with the extent of the exposure. In centers where this procedure is frequently performed and the surgeons are accustomed to the respiratory motion during operation, DLTs are not routinely used. Because there is no (intended) violation of the lung parenchyma, air leaks and parenchymal repairs are not common.

Transdiaphragmatic approach: When the exposure must transverse the diaphragm, a combined retroperitoneal and transthoracic approach is used. This requires the diaphragm to be sectioned circumferentially from the chest wall and spine. If only the very low segments of the thoracic spine (T10-T12) are exposed, the required deflation of the involved lung is minimal. The risks are the same as those encountered with the transthoracic or retroperitoneal approaches alone. Regardless of the level of exposure, the operating table may be used during the procedure to manipulate the spine for better exposure and to "lock in" implants, bone grafts, etc. Usually, the area of the spine to be exposed is centered above the "breaking" joint and kidney rests of the table (Fig. 10.3-2). After the initial exposure, the table is

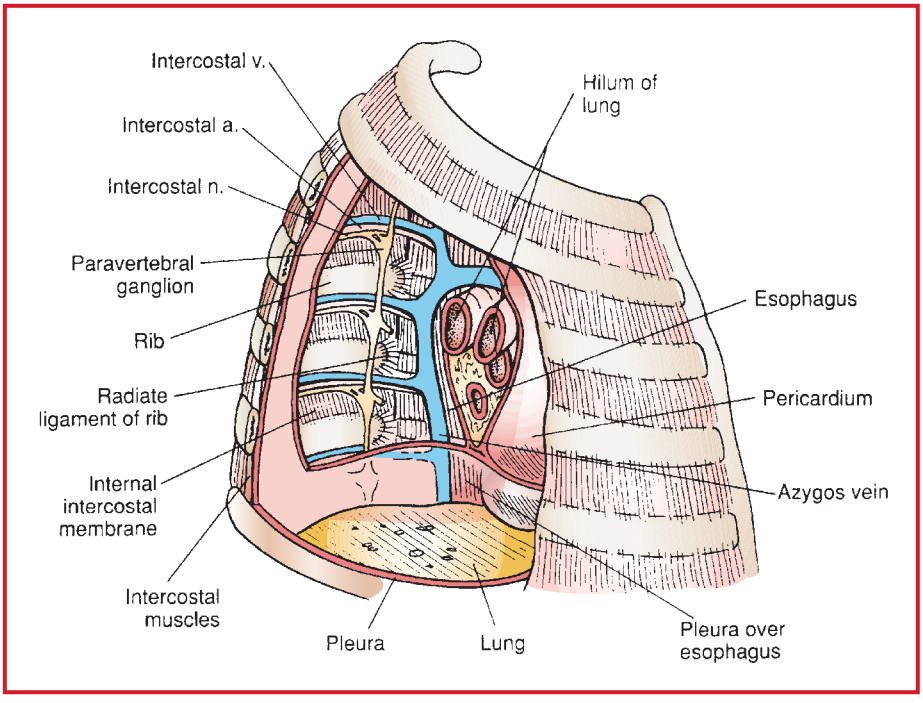


Figure 10.3-1. Surgical anatomy of the transthoracic approach. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics*. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1984.)

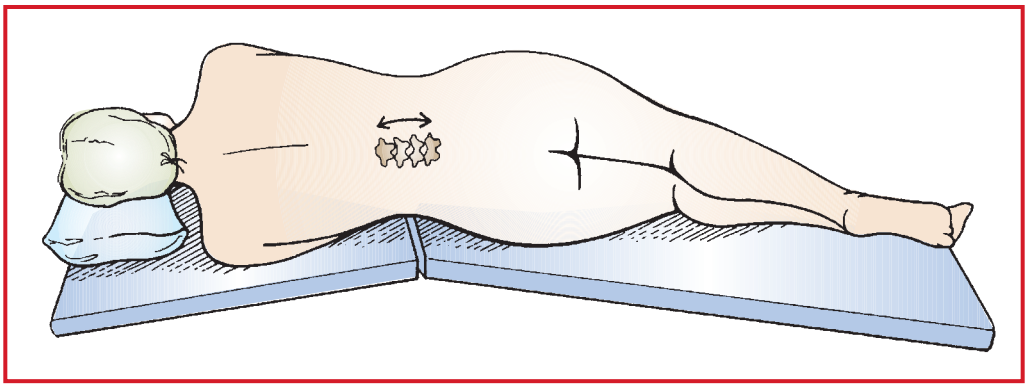


Figure 10.3-2. Patient position for transdiaphragmatic or retroperitoneal approach. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics*. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1984.)

angled in the center with the head and legs pointing down and kidney rests elevated to "open up" the section of spine facing the surgeon. After removal of the disk, abscess, or tumor, a reconstruction—using bone graft, metal implants, bone cement, or a combination of these—is performed. In some cases, the operating table is straightened and, with the spine in neutral alignment, the stability of the reconstruction is tested.

The **morbidity** of these procedures depends primarily on the nature of the underlying disease. Obviously, bleeding and visceral injury are more likely when debriding a grapefruit-sized Potts abscess with several destroyed vertebrae than in removing a degenerated lumbar disk for fusion.

In some instances, the anterior procedure may be followed with a posterior fusion, either immediately or after 5–7 d of convalescence. If done immediately after, the patient needs to be placed in the prone position, and the second procedure needs to be done through a midline exposure. Sometimes anterior and posterior surgeries are performed simultaneously by two surgical teams. The most common reason for a staged anterior/posterior procedure (in the United States) is scoliosis; however, fractures at the thoracolumbar junction, after anterior decompression and reconstruction, are often instrumented and fused posteriorly.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fractures (usually at thoracic lumbar junction); idiopathic scoliosis; primary neoplasm or metastatic disease to the spine; pyogenic or TB osteomyelitis of the spine; Scheuermann's kyphosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Cervicothoracic Approach	Transthoracic Approach	Transdiaphragmatic Approach
Position	Supine; towel roll placed between shoulder blades, head slightly extended and turned away from operated side	Lateral decubitus (Fig. 10.3-2); intended segments over the table break and kidney rests; axillary roll	⇐
Incision	Inverted "L" longitudinally along manubrium to sternal notch, then transversely above clavicle	Along a rib, two levels above the highest segment to be exposed	⇐
Special instrumentation	Instrumentation rarely used. Strut grafts—using rib, fibula, clavicle or cement—may be used to replace excised vertebrae. ± DLT	For thoracolumbar scoliosis, a Zielke-type rod and screws may be used; more rigid instrumentation sometimes used in fractures. ± DLT	⇐ (More common to use instrumentation at the affected level than above.)
Unique considerations	Aortic arch and carotid manipulation may cause BP/HR changes. Postop respiratory distress well described.	During spinal reconstruction, manipulation of operating table may be essential to "lock in" graft or implant (see above).	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Cervicothoracic Approach	Transthoracic Approach	Transdiaphragmatic Approach
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (+ gentamicin 80 mg iv, if indwelling bladder catheter)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2–6 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Patient usually transferred to bed prior to emergence; sudden jerking motions may dislodge graft or implant.	⇐	⇐
EBL	200–5000 mL. Blood loss is extremely variable; when bleeding occurs, it may be torrential from the aorta, vena cava, or iliac vessels and branches. In nontumor or infection cases, 200–400 mL is usual.	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Chest drain; NG suction usually needed; short period of ICU observation is usual.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	< 0.1%, except in cases of malignancy or sepsis	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	For elective degenerative cases: 5–10% overall	⇐	⇐
	DVT: 6%	⇐	⇐
	Neurological: 3%	⇐	⇐
	Infection: 1%	⇐	⇐
	Sexual dysfunction	⇐	⇐
	For sepsis or tumor: 50–80% (overall)	⇐	⇐
	Cardiorespiratory failure	⇐	⇐
	Sepsis	⇐	⇐
Pain score	7–8 (if patient sensate at level of surgery)	7–8 (if patient sensate at level of surgery)	7–8 (if patient sensate at level of surgery)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	12–30 yr (scoliosis surgery); > 40 (tumor and infection surgery); 15–35 yr (fractures)
Male:Female	1:1, except more scoliosis surgery in females (1:4) and more fractures in males
Incidence	20,000/yr
Etiology	Scoliosis: idiopathic (50%), neuromuscular (15%), congenital (5%); trauma (20%); infections, tumors (10%)
Associated conditions	Pulmonary HTN and impaired pulmonary function; neuromuscular scoliosis (poliomyelitis, CP, muscular dystrophy, Friedreich's ataxia); aspiration; cardiomyopathy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Spinal Reconstruction and Fusion, p. 997.

Suggested Readings

1. Butler J, Schafer MF: Anterior approach to scoliosis. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 4011–30.
2. Chrastil J, Patel AA: Complications associated with posterior and transforaminal lumbar interbody fusion. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(5):283–91.

3. Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: An Anatomic Approach*, 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1994, 215–302.
4. Jain AK: Treatment of tuberculosis of the spine with neurologic complications. *Clin Orthop* 2002; 398:75–84.
5. McLain RF, Benson DR: Operative treatment of thoracic and thoracolumbar fractures. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 3725–45.
6. McLain RF, Lieberman I: Surgical treatment of adult scoliosis. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 4101–14.
7. Taft E, Francis R: Evaluation and management of scoliosis. *J Pediatr Health Care* 2003; 17(1):42–4.
8. Tay BK, Deckey J, Hu SS: Spinal infections. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2002; 10(3):188–97.
9. Yeo JM, Vertinsky AT, Chew JB, et al: Imaging in adult scoliosis: preoperative assessment and postoperative complications. *Semin Musculoskeletal Radiol* 2011; 15(2):143–50.

SPINAL RECONSTRUCTION AND FUSION—LUMBOSACRAL SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The same general considerations apply here as in thoracolumbar reconstruction segments. The thoracic cavity is not entered, nor is the diaphragm sectioned. Careful preop assessment is needed, as these patients may have a wide range of coexisting diseases. The same operative procedure is performed for removal of a degenerative disk in a healthy patient as is carried out to decompress the cauda equina in a debilitated patient with metastatic breast carcinoma.

Retroperitoneal approach: Below the diaphragm, exposure of the lumbar spine (L2-S1) can be performed through a retroperitoneal approach (Fig. 10.3-3). This often involves a flank incision, often with resection of the 11th or 12th rib. The patient lies in a decubitus or partial decubitus position. At risk here are the great vessels above and below the bifurcation of the aorta (L4-L5). The ureter crosses the operative field and must be identified and protected. The sympathetic chain may be damaged along the vertebrae, but the consequences of this are minimal. The presacral plexus further down may be injured and result in persistent retrograde ejaculation.

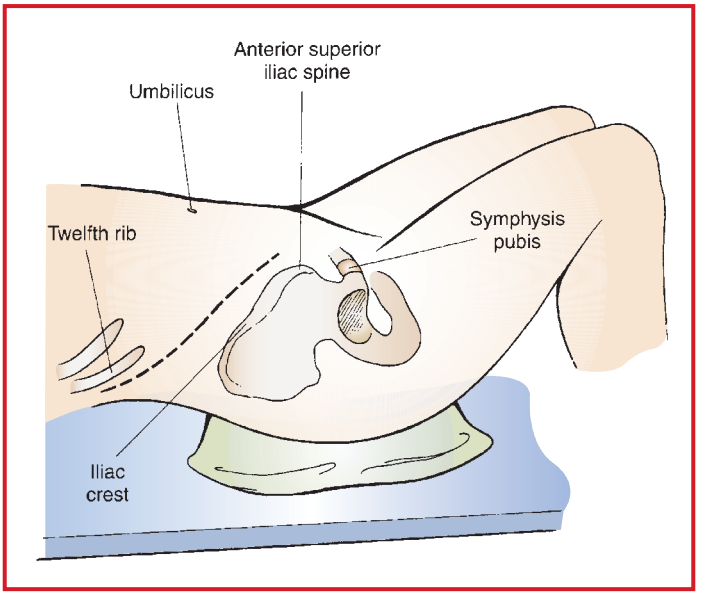


Figure 10.3-3. Retroperitoneal approach to lumbar spine. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics*. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1984.)

A Pfannenstiel's incision may be used to approach L5/S1 or L4/5. Regardless of the level of exposure, the operating table is used during the procedure to manipulate the spine for better exposure and to "lock in" implants, bone grafts, etc. Usually the area of the spine to be exposed is centered above the 'breaking' joint and kidney rests of the table (Fig. 10.3-2). After initial exposure, the table is angled in the center with the head and legs pointing down and the kidney rests elevated to open up the section of spine facing the surgeon. After the removal of the disc, abscess, or tumor, a reconstruction—using bone graft, metal implants, bone cement, or a combination of these—is performed. The table is then straightened; with the spine in neutral alignment, the stability of the reconstruction is tested by this maneuver, which may need to be repeated several times.

In some instances, the anterior reconstruction and fusion is followed with a **posterior fusion,** either immediately or after 5–7 d of convalescence. If done immediately after, the patient needs to be positioned prone on the operating table and the second procedure done through a midline exposure. Sometimes anterior and posterior surgeries can be performed simultaneously by two surgical teams. The most common reason for a staged anterior/posterior procedure (in the United States) was scoliosis. Recent trends in degenerative lumbar disk surgery indicate that anterior and posterior fusion has become more common with some evidence suggesting better results in fusion and pain relief.

Variant procedure or approaches: When the L5 vertebra and sacrum need to be exposed widely, a **transperitoneal approach** may be needed. This involves a laparotomy or Pfannenstiel's incision, displacement of the bowels out of the pelvis, and exposure of the lumbosacral junction (Fig. 10.3-4). The patient is supine for this procedure, and the surgical risks are similar, as with other intraabdominal approaches.

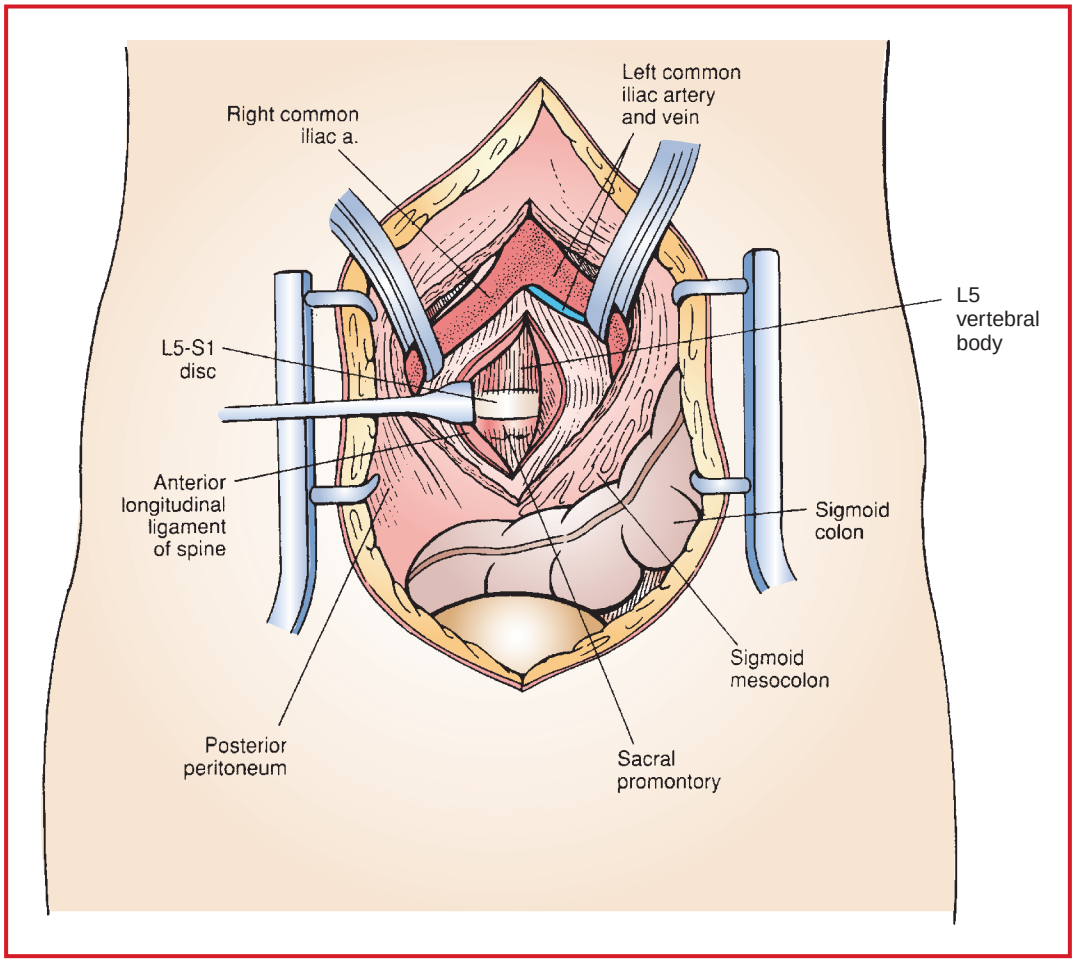


Figure 10.3-4. Transperitoneal approach to lumbosacral junction. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics.* JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1984.)

In a recent modification to the retroperitoneal approach, the patient is placed in the supine position. In this **supine retroperitoneal approach,** an incision is made in either a longitudinal or transverse fashion between the umbilicus and the pubis. The rectus abdominus fascia is incised and the rectus abdominus is retracted medially or laterally, allowing access to the retroperitoneal space without violating the peritoneal cavity. The advantage of this approach over the transperitoneal approach includes decreased need for bowel manipulation, → ↓ 3rd-space loss of fluid and ↓ heat loss.

Usual preop diagnosis: Degenerative disc disease; segmental instability; vertebral fractures requiring decompression; vertebral osteomyelitis or tuberculosis; neoplastic disease of the lumbar spine

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Retroperitoneal Approach (Lateral)	Transperitoneal Approach
Position	Lateral decubitus, affected side up. The up hip and knee are flexed to relax psoas muscle and allow its reflection to expose the lumbar vertebral bodies.	Supine
Incision	Flank incision curving anteriorly to the lateral margin of the rectus abdominus (Fig. 10.3-3)	Pfannenstiel's above the pubis
Special instrumentation	Occasional use of anterior instrumentation to stabilize fractures or to reconstruct the spine when entire vertebrae are removed	⇐
Unique considerations	In performing spinal reconstruction, manipulation of operating table is essential to "lock in" graft or implant (see above).	⇐ + A general bowel prep usually is performed preop.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (+ gentamicin 80 mg iv, if indwelling bladder catheter already in place); exception is when infection is suspected and specific cultures are obtained intraop.	⇐
Surgical time	3–6 h	⇐
Closing considerations	The spine may be more or less stable after reconstruction, and patient usually transferred to bed prior to being awakened. Sudden jerking motions, etc., may dislodge graft or implant.	⇐
EBL	200–5000 mL. Blood loss extremely variable. When bleeding occurs, it may be torrential from the aorta, vena cava, or iliac vessels and branches. In nontumor/infection cases, 200–400 mL is usual.	⇐
Postop care	Patients with degenerative conditions and elective surgeries normally recover in PACU and return to ward. Patients with infections, fractures, and tumors are usually observed in ICU for 24 h postop. Ileus for 24–72 h is usual; NG suction usually continues until bowel sounds and passing flatus are present. Generally, mobilization depends on final stability.	⇐
Mortality	Malignancy or sepsis: 1–2% Elective: < 0.1%	⇐ ⇐
Morbidity	In patients with malignancy, sepsis or fractures with cauda equina compression, overall serious complications: 25–50% Cardiopulmonary failure Neurologic deficit Pneumothorax Sepsis	⇐ ⇐ – – ⇐
Pain score	6	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Variable (infant–adult)
Male:Female	1:1, except more scoliosis surgery in females (1:4)
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Infection (osteomyelitis, TB); trauma; congenital; neoplasia; idiopathic

SPINAL RECONSTRUCTION AND FUSION—CERVICAL SPINE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Both an anterior or posterior approach can be used to decompress nerve roots (radiculopathy) and the spinal cord (myelopathy). Generally, involvement of one- or two-level pathology is best accomplished through an anterior approach, whereas the posterior approach may better serve multilevel pathology. An anterior approach is also preferred when the cervical spine has lost its normal lordotic contour. Posterior pathology, such as unilateral foraminal disc herniations, and ossification of the posterior longitudinal ligament (OPLL) often dictate a posterior approach. Complex pathology may necessitate combined approaches.

Anterior approach: This is done under GA. The patient is positioned supine on the operating table and a roll is placed between the scapulae to facilitate a neutral to slightly extended neck position. The arms are tucked in at the side, and gentle traction of the upper extremities may be applied to provide visualization of C7 using intraop fluoroscopy. Surface landmarks and fluoroscopy are used to locate the intended level. A transverse incision can be used up to four-level discectomies, whereas a longitudinal incision can be utilized for more levels. Generally a left-sided approach is preferred to minimize recurrent laryngeal nerve (RLN) injury, but more recent data suggest no difference between a right- versus left-sided approach. After skin incision, the platysma muscle layer is exposed and divided either longitudinally or in line with the incision. A plane deep to the platysma is developed, and the medial border of the sternocleidomastoid (SCM) muscle is identified. Blunt dissection is initiated between the identified medial border of the SCM and the strap muscles. While staying medial to the carotid sheath, the trachea and esophagus are retracted to the contralateral side, and the dissection is carried deep to expose the spine. The desired disc levels are identified using fluoroscopy. The longus colli muscle is identified and elevated carefully subperiosteally on either side to facilitate the insertion of deep-bladed, self-retaining retractors. Some data indicates that deflation of the endotracheal tube cuff with adjustments of the retractor may reduce the incidence of RLN and esophageal injury. Complete removal of the disc, other compressive pathology, or full versus complete corpectomy can be performed with the aid of curettes and a high-speed burr. Appropriately sized grafts are inserted and further stabilized with the aid of a plate and screws. The operative time for a single-level is generally between 1 and 2 h, and the wound is typically closed over a drain to avoid a compression hematoma causing airway compromise. Cases involving three or more levels are at high risk for excessive soft-tissue swelling and airway obstruction, and continued intubation may be a strong consideration.

Posterior approach: The patient is placed under GA in the supine position. Prior to turning the patient prone, a head holder (Mayfield versus Gardner-Wells) is applied, and the surgeon generally controls the head while the anesthesiologist controls the airway in the process of log-rolling. As with the anterior approach, the arms are tucked in at the side, and gentle traction is applied for visualization of the entire cervical spine with fluoroscopy. The hips and knees are gently flexed in a sling while the remainder of the body is supported by bolsters allowing the abdomen to hang free on an open frame (Jackson) operating table. A reverse Trendelenburg position further aids in distribution of blood into the abdomen and legs. An extensive exposure can be created from the greater occipital protuberance to the thoracic spine. Dissection is carried down sharply through subcutaneous tissue and fat to the trapezius fascia with care taken to stay in the midline. A dry surgical dissection with electrocautery can be achieved in this manner as the ligamentum nuchae is relatively avascular. Subperiosteal dissection is then carried from the tip of the spinous processes over the laminae elevating the paraspinal muscles as a cuff. Depending on the intended surgery, procedures such as laminoforaminotomies, laminotomies, and laminectomies can be performed. Blood loss may be significant depending on the length of surgery as well as the extent of bony resection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cervical radiculopathy, cervical myelopathy, spinal cord syndromes secondary to trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Anterior	Posterior
Position	Supine, roll between scapulae, tuck arms at sides with gentle traction	Prone, Jackson table, head holder, Gardner-Wells Tongs/Mayfield head holder, tuck arms at sides with gentle traction
Incision	Transverse versus longitudinal depending on number of levels	Longitudinal
Special instrumentation	Microscope; light source; fluoroscopy; specialized retractors and dissection instruments for working in a small, deep incision	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	Cefazolin 1 g iv ± Gentamicin usually 80 mg iv
Surgical time	1.0–2.0 h/level	2–5 h
Closing considerations	Minimal suturing over a drain	Several layer closure over a drain
EBL	Minimal	Wide range
Postop care	PACU, mobilization as soon as tolerated. Multilevel procedures may require continued intubation postop	⇐
Mortality	Very rare	⇐
Morbidity	Dysphagia Nerve injury Dural laceration Vertebral artery injury Esophageal injury Airway obstruction Dysphonia Horner's syndrome	Nerve injury Dural laceration Vertebral artery injury Infection Air embolus

Suggested Readings

1. Audu P, Artz G, Scheid S, et al: Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy after anterior cervical spine surgery: the impact of endotracheal tube cuff deflation, reinflation, and pressure adjustment. *Anesthesiology* 2006; 105(5):898–901.
2. Beutler WJ, Sweeney CA, Connolly PJ: Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury with anterior cervical spine surgery risk with laterality of surgical approach. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2001; 26(12):1337–42.
3. Emery SE, Bohlman HH, Bolesta MJ, Jones PK: Anterior cervical decompression and arthrodesis for the treatment of cervical spondylotic myelopathy. Two to seventeen-year follow-up. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1998; 80(7):941–51.
4. Fountas KN, Kapsalaki EZ, Nikolakakos LG, et al: Anterior cervical discectomy and fusion associated complications. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2007; 32(21):2310–7.
5. Gregorius FK, Estrin T, Crandall PH: Cervical spondylotic radiculopathy and myelopathy. A long-term follow-up study. *Arch Neurol* 1976; 33(9):618–25.
6. Herkowitz HN: A comparison of anterior cervical fusion, cervical laminectomy, and cervical laminoplasty for the surgical management of multiple level spondylotic radiculopathy. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 1988; 13(7):774–80.
7. Hukuda S, Mochizuki T, Ogata M, Shichikawa K, Shimomura Y: Operations for cervical spondylotic myelopathy. A comparison of the results of anterior and posterior procedures. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1985; 67(4):609–15.
8. Jung A, Schramm J, Lehnerdt K, Herberhold C: Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy during anterior cervical spine surgery: a prospective study. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2005; 2(2):123–7.
9. Smith GW, Robinson RA: The treatment of certain cervical-spine disorders by anterior removal of the intervertebral disc and interbody fusion. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1958; 40-A(3):607–24.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR SPINAL RECONSTRUCTION AND FUSION

(Procedures covered: anterior reconstruction and fusion of thoracic, thoracolumbar, and lumbosacral spine)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for spinal reconstruction commonly have either idiopathic or acquired scoliosis, a complex deformity involving both lateral curvature and rotation of the spine, as well as an associated deformity of the rib cage → ↓ pulmonary function. Types of scoliosis include idiopathic, congenital, neuromuscular, myopathic, traumatic, tumor-related, and mesenchymal disorders. The majority of cases are idiopathic, with a male:female ratio of 1:4. Normally, the cervical spine and lumbar spine are lordotic, whereas the thoracic spine is kyphotic. The instrumentation is intended to stabilize the spine until bony fusion of the spine has occurred. After the fusion is solid (6–12 mo), the instrumentation may be removed if it is broken, causes protrusions or lumps in the back, or the patient is having residual back pain. Nonscoliotic patients presenting for this surgery may have spinal instability as a result of trauma, metastatic cancer, or infection (e.g., TB). These patients are usually healthy, apart from their underlying pathology. The patients with metastatic cancer may need a careful workup with regard to respiratory, nutritional, and chemotherapeutic status. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, p. 285, or Mastectomy, p. 666.)

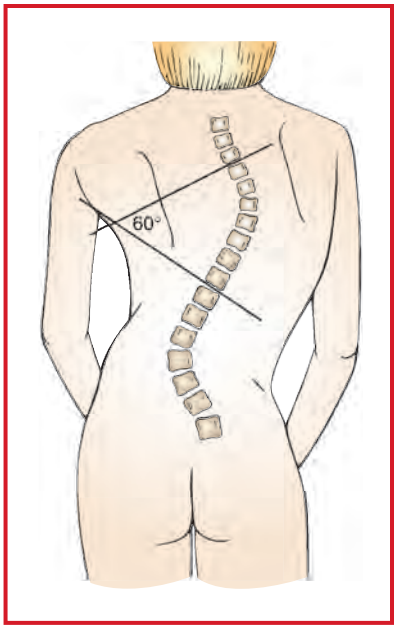


Figure 10.3-5. Cobb angle.

Respiratory	Respiratory impairment proportional to angle of lateral curvature (Cobb angle; Fig. 10.3-5) Cobb Angle: 30°–60° / 60°– 90° / > 90° VC: ↓ 25% / ↓ 50% / ↓ 70% TLC: ↓ 27% / ↓ 37% / ↓ 50% Restrictive pattern: ↓ TLC + ↓ ↓ VC • If VC > 70% predicted, respiratory reserve is adequate. • If VC < 40% predicted, postop ventilation usually is required. Expect further significant (~40%) ↓ VC immediately postop, requiring 7–10 d to resolve. ↑ RR + ↓ TV → ↑ dead space + ↓ alveolar ventilation → V/Q mismatch → hypoxemia. Patients with scoliosis of neuromuscular origin are more susceptible to aspiration and respiratory failure. **Tests:** CXR; ABG; PFT; assess exercise tolerance by Hx.
Cardiovascular	↑ PVR (**NB:** independent of severity of scoliosis). High incidence of CHD and mitral valve prolapse. **Tests:** ECG; ECHO—consult cardiologist if apical systolic murmur or other evidence of cardiovascular impairment is present.
Neurological	SSEPs (posterior cord) and MEPs (anterior cord) will be monitored in most patients who are undergoing spinal reconstruction. Some surgeons, however, may request that the patient be awakened intraop, after completion of the instrumentation, but before closure of the wound, to ensure that no motor deficits have developed as a result of the correction. If an intraoperative wake-up test is planned, explain to the patient what

Neurological (cont'd)	the procedure entails, why it is necessary, and what to expect. Reassure the patient that the test will be brief, pain will be controlled, and that you will be there to keep them safe and as comfortable as possible. If preop focal neurological lesions exist, they should be documented to distinguish them from changes associated with the surgical correction.
Musculoskeletal	When the Cobb angle is > 25°, the degree of respiratory impairment will be significant, and the need for postop ventilatory support becomes more likely. Patients with muscular dystrophy may be more sensitive to myocardial depression from anesthetic agents and also may require postop ventilation 2° muscle weakness. Succinylcholine may cause severe rhabdomyolysis with hyperkalemia. These patients also may be at risk for MH.
Hematologic	Avoid use of platelet inhibitors 2 wk before surgery. Have at least 2 U PRBCs available in the room at the start of the operation. Consider use of a red cell salvage device. Discuss use of controlled ↓ BP with surgeon. If anticipated blood loss is substantial and the patient is not anemic, consider encouraging autologous blood donation (time permitting) or performing isovolemic hemodilution intraop. Be aware that patients with previously placed spinal support (e.g., Milwaukee brace) for correction of scoliosis may have more blood loss than usual.
Laboratory	✓ INR, PT, PTT, and Plt count preop. ✓ Hct the morning of operation or after induction of anesthesia if autologous donations have been made because, with modest blood loss and fluid therapy, the Hct may rapidly ↓ to < 26%.
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1), if appropriate. Long-acting benzodiazepines may interfere with wake-up testing.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. For pediatric cases, preheat room to 78°F. For operations in the prone position, use a wire-reinforced tube to prevent kinking and airway obstruction. If a transthoracic approach is used, lung isolation will be necessary. Double-lumen tubes provide the best method of achieving lung isolation overall and are available as small as 28 Fr (OD = 9.3 mm), which is typically suitable for children as young as 12 yrs. If a wake-up test is required, consider the use of an endotracheal tube designed to allow laryngotracheal instillation of topical anesthetic (LITA® tube).

Induction	Standard induction (p. B-2). Assuming MEP monitoring will be used, consider succinylcholine vs. low dose rocuronium (0.5 mg/kg) vs. deep anesthesia and remifentanil bolus (1.5 mcg/kg) to facilitate intubation.
Maintenance	Neuromuscular blockers will completely abolish MEPs and must be avoided when using this monitoring technique. Normal doses of volatile anesthetics interfere with MEP and, to a lesser extent, SSEP monitoring. When monitoring MEPs, TIVA may be requested (see p. B-3). When monitoring SSEPs only, a continuous infusion of a narcotic (ideally remifentanil) together with a reduced dose of inhaled anesthetic (0.5–1 MAC) and neuromuscular blockade usually produces satisfactory monitoring conditions. A BIS-type monitor may help with the timing of a wake-up test. The neurophysiology monitoring team must be updated if conditions that affect the evoked potentials change (depth of anesthesia, anesthetic agent, blood pressure, PCO_2, PO_2).
Emergence	As soon as neuromonitoring is complete, switching to an inhaled anesthetic and stopping the propofol will allow for a timely emergence. Some surgeons may place an epidural catheter before closure for postop pain management or perform intercostal local anesthetic injections for the transthoracic approach. Prior to emergence, scoliosis patients may be fitted with a plaster mold to be used as a brace that will be worn several mo postop. Transfer from the operating table to bed must be smooth and gentle. The patient is typically extubated following transfer to the bed. Keep in mind that remifentanil will not provide postop analgesia and that another longer acting opioid must be administered before emergence.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h not to exceed 40 mL/kg Hetastarch 6% ≤ 20 mL/kg or albumin 5% prn Warm all fluids. Humidify gases. T&C 2–4 U PRBCs. ± Red cell salvage	Anticipate substantial blood loss (proportional to the number of levels) from extensive dissection of muscles from bony spine; less so with isolated thoracic fusion. It may vary from 25–100% of the patient's blood volume, although blood loss is usually less with the anterior approach (Dwyer's). Colloid is preferred because it will remain intravascular until metabolized. Low-volume units (e.g., Medtronic, AutoLog) are best.
Control of blood loss	Position to prevent venous engorgement. ↓ MAP to 60–70 mm Hg ± ↓ Hct to 25–28% (isovolemic hemodilution)	Although of questionable benefit, some surgeons may request deliberate hypotension. Decreasing MAP ≤ 20% below the lowest preop values may ↓ blood loss. Generally maintain MAP > 60 mm Hg in young, healthy patients, and > 85 mm Hg in older patients, for spinal cord perfusion. Once dissection is complete, higher BP values acceptable. Maintain UO at 0.5–1 mL/kg/h during controlled hypotension.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1) Arterial line CVP line Urinary catheter SSEP, MEP, ± BIS	CVP monitor helpful for continuous infusions and to assess fluid Rx. Trends in CVP may be more reliable than measurement of UO to assess changes in volume status in patients in the prone and lateral positions. Frequent labs (ABG, lytes, coag) may be useful.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes, neck Bite Block (essential for MEP) Avoid posterior pressure on ETT	**Prone:** Place head on cushioned head holder with cutout for eyes, nose, chin. Make certain that none of the face rests on bed. ✓ elbows, knees, feet. **Lateral:** Place head on donut with C-spine in neutral position. Pad and support both arms in neutral position. Ensure no pressure on eyes or ears.
Wake-up test	30 min advance warning from surgeons is needed. • Decrease anesthetic agents. • Reverse muscle relaxants • Target BIS in high 50s. • About 10 min before testing, turn off anesthetics. • ↓ remifentanil infusion to 0.05 mcg/kg/min or less. • If a LITA tube was used, administer 3–4 mL 1% lidocaine into the trachea. • Begin speaking to the patient. • Request movement of all four limbs sequentially. **Dangers:** Air embolus Dislodgement of spinal instrumentation Accidental extubation	The wake-up test assesses integrity of motor pathways in the ventral cord. Uncontrolled patient movement during wake-up test can result in accidental extubation or dislodgement of the spinal instrumentation. Unrestrained inspiratory efforts may provoke venous air embolism. The anesthesiologist must be prepared to rapidly reanesthetize the patient.

SSEP and MEPs	SSEP: Dorsal cord function only MEPs: Ventral cord function	SSEP and MEP are used routinely. Avoid changes in anesthetic conditions (depth of anesthesia, agents, MAP, PCO_2, PO_2). An increase in the latency (> 10%) or decrease in the amplitude (≥ 50%) usually indicates cord injury from hardware impingement, cord stretch or compression, or hypoperfusion. The surgeon and anesthesiologist should be notified immediately if the evoked potentials change. Unilateral changes to MEP/SSEP signals may indicate a positioning problem.
Complications	Spinal cord ischemia Massive blood loss Fat embolism	SSEP indications of spinal cord ischemia should be treated by alerting the surgeon and ensuring optimal perfusion (↑ BP, normalize PCO_2, ↑ PO_2, optimal Hct, ↓ PEEP, ↓ traction or pressure on the cord). Prompt transfusion may be necessary, and blood should be available in the room. Be prepared for the possibility of massive transfusion.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding	Postop bleeding is common. Rarely, the bleeding occurs in a space that is not drained and can result in complications such as epidural hematoma or hemothorax.
	Pulmonary insufficiency Hypothermia Pneumothorax Dislodgement of internal fixation	Postop ventilation may be required in patients with severe respiratory impairment (see Preoperative Considerations, above). In addition, thoracotomy, surgical trauma to the diaphragm, fat embolism, and inadequate analgesia may further ↑ the risk of postop pulmonary insufficiency. Careful handling of patient in transfer is mandatory.
	Neurologic sequelae[16]	Neurologic sequelae probably remain the most feared complication, and it is important to document postop neurologic exam.
Pain management	PCA (p. C-3) Intrathecal morphine 0.1–0.25 mg by surgeon intraop	Pain is a significant problem for postop scoliosis patients. Most need analgesia × 3–4 d. Preop consultation with patient (and parents) about different pain management techniques is important.
	Thoracic/lumbar epidural opiates/local anesthetics IV acetaminophen, 1 g q 6 h for adults, 15 mg/kg q 6 h if ≤ 50 kg or ≤ 12.	See p. C-2.
Tests	CXR; ABG; Hct	✓ for pneumothorax and line placement.

Suggested Readings

1. Adamus M, Hrabalek L, Wanek T, Gabrhelik T, Zapletalova J: Intraoperative reversal of neuromuscular block with sugammadex or neostigmine during extreme lateral interbody fusion, a novel technique for spine surgery. *J Anesth* 2011; 25(5):716–20.
2. Arnold PM, Anderson KK, McGuire RA Jr: The lateral transpsoas approach to the lumbar and thoracic spine. A review. *Surg Neurol Int* 2012; 3(Suppl 3):S198–215.
3. Buvanendran A, Thillainathan V: Preoperative and postoperative anesthetic and analgesic techniques for minimally invasive surgery of the spine. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2010; 35(26 Suppl):S274–80.

4. Chapman MW: *Operative Orthopaedics,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1993, 4017–73.
5. Colovic V, Walker RW, Patel D, et al: Reduction of blood loss using aprotonin during spinal surgery in children for non-idiopathic scoliosis. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2002; 12(9):835.
6. Fritzell P, Hagg O, Wessberg P, et al: Chronic low back pain and fusion: a comparison of three surgical techniques: a prospective multicenter randomized study from the Swedish Lumbar Spine Study Group. *Spine* 2002; 27(11):1131–41.
7. Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach,* 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1994, 215–302.
8. McGirt MJ, Ambrossi GL, Datoo G, et al: Recurrent disc herniation and long-term back pain after primary lumbar discectomy: review of outcomes reported for limited versus aggressive disc removal. *Neurosurgery* 2009; 64(2):338–44; discussion 344–5.
9. Mendiratta A, Emerson RG: Neurophysiologic intraoperative monitoring of scoliosis surgery. *J Clin Neurophysiol* 2009; 26(2):62–9.
10. Morrissy RT: *Atlas of Pediatric Orthopaedic Surgery.* JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1992, 75–97.
11. O'Brien T, Akmakjian J, Ogin G, et al: Comparison of one-stage versus two-stage anterior/posterior spinal fusion for neuromuscular scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1992; 12(5):610–15.
12. Ozgur BM, Aryan HE, Pimenta L, Taylor WR: Extreme Lateral Interbody Fusion (XLIF): a novel surgical technique for anterior lumbar interbody fusion. *Spine J* 2006; 6(4):435–43.
13. Paul JE, Ling E, Lalonde C, Thabane L: Deliberate hypotension in orthopedic surgery reduces blood loss and transfusion requirements: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Can J Anesth* 2007; 54(10):799–810.
14. Perez-Cruet MJ, Fessler RG, Perin NI: Review: complications of minimally invasive spinal surgery. *Neurosurgery* 2002; 51(5 Suppl):26–36.
15. Rodgers WB, Gerber EJ, Patterson J: Intraoperative and early postoperative complications in extreme lateral interbody fusion: an analysis of 600 cases. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2011; 36(1):26–32.
16. Schubert A, Deogaonkar A, Lotto M, Niezgoda J, Luciano M: Anesthesia for minimally invasive cranial and spinal surgery. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol* 2006; 18(1):47–56.
17. Sloan TB, Heyer EJ: Anesthesia for intraoperative neurophysiologic monitoring of the spinal cord. *J Clin Neurophysiol* 2002; 19(5):430–43.
18. Slosar PJ: Indications and outcomes of reconstructive surgery in chronic pain of spinal origin. *Spine* 2002; 27(22):2555–63.
19. Soriano SG, McCann ME, Laussen PC: Neuroanesthesia. Innovative techniques and monitoring. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2002; 20(1):137–51.
20. Sudhir KG, Smith RM, Hall J, et al: Intraoperative awakening for early recognition of possible neurologic sequelae during Harrington-rod spinal fusion. *Anesth Analg* 1976; 55(4):526–8.
21. Tay BK, Deckey J, Hu SS: Spinal infections. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2002; 10(3):188–97.
22. Tohmeh AG, Rodgers WB, Peterson MD: Dynamically evoked, discrete-threshold electromyography in the extreme lateral interbody fusion approach. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2011; 14(1):31–7.
23. Youssef JA, McAfee PC, Patty CA, et al: Minimally invasive surgery: lateral approach interbody fusion: results and review. *Spine (Phila PA 1976)* 2010; 35(26 Suppl):S302–11.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Posterior Spinal Instrumentation & Fusion for Idiopathic Scoliosis: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TbQaT7z54E4

Scoliosis Spinal Fusion Animation: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WBIf4AQj5s0

Minimally Invasive Tubular Microdiscectomy: 3-D Video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Cpkr_oy5Enc

Dr. Ali Bydon Performs a Minimally Invasive Lumbar Discectomy: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2j9QyiOxVF4

CHAPTER

10.4 Hip, Pelvis, Upper Leg Surgery

SURGEONS

James I. Huddleston, MD
Michael J. Bellino, MD
Stuart B. Goodman, MD, PhD, FRCSC, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Frederick G. Mihm, MD
Pedro P. Tanaka, MD

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF PELVIS OR ACETABULUM

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pelvic fractures present several challenging treatment problems. Surgical management is complex and often difficult in nature. Specialized training and equipment are required for a successful outcome. Major trauma mechanisms produce pelvic-ring injuries, and patients with pelvic-ring disruptions frequently have associated systemic injuries, which may be life-threatening (e.g., hemorrhagic shock). Pelvic stabilization and surgical control of hemorrhage may be performed acutely in the polytrauma patient who is hemodynamically unstable. This is in conjunction with an exploratory laparotomy performed by a trauma surgeon. The majority of patients with pelvic fractures who are treated operatively are taken to the OR on a delayed basis, after they have been stabilized. Pelvic fractures that do not heal are "nonunions," whereas those that heal in an unsatisfactory position are "malunions."

Anterior approaches to the pelvis include Pfannenstiel's and ilioinguinal incisions, which are utilized for reduction and fixation of dislocations and fracture/dislocations of the symphysis pubis, fractures of the pubic rami, and access to the anterior aspect of the sacroiliac (SI) joint. **Posterior approaches** to the pelvis involve either vertical or curved incisions along the iliac crest and are used for reduction and fixation of SI joint dislocations, fracture/dislocations of the SI joint, and fractures of the iliac wing and of the sacrum. These procedures are often lengthy

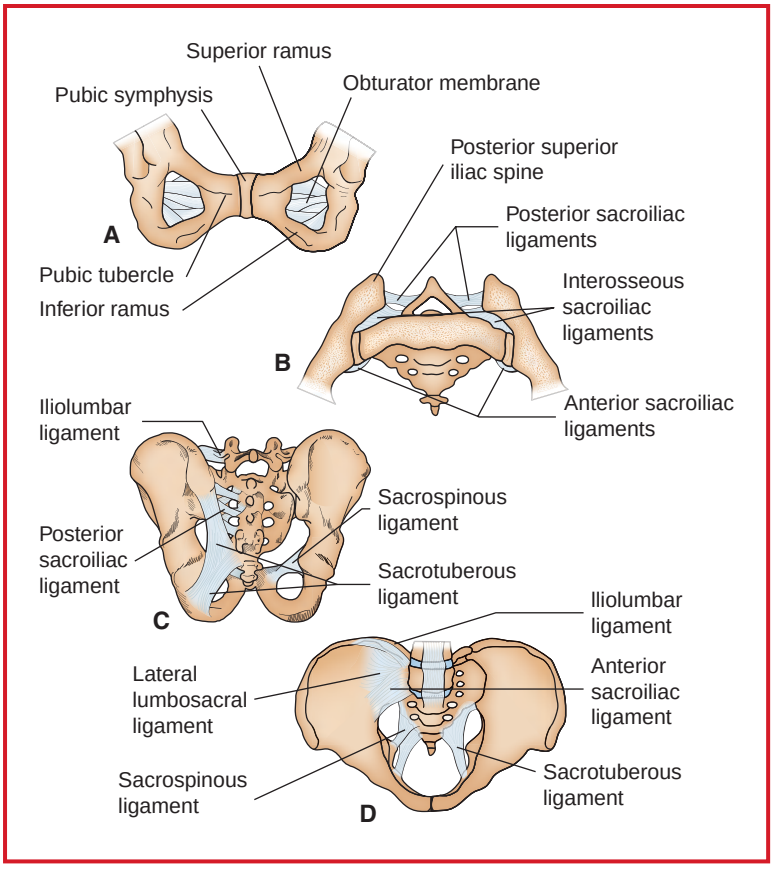


Figure 10.4-1. Schematic views of the pelvis with the principal ligamentous supports. **A**: Symphysis pubis fibrocartilage. **B:** Posterior SI ligaments. **C:** Posterior view. **D:** Anterior view. (Redrawn from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* Vol 1, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

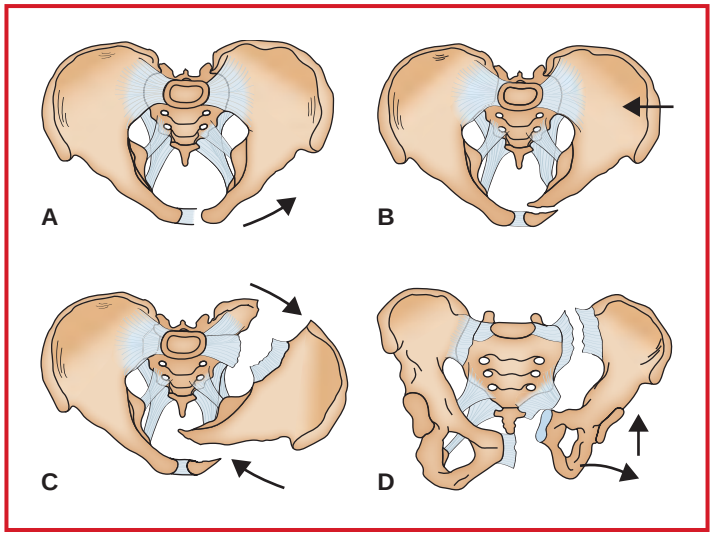


Figure 10.4-2. Schematic view of the principal pelvis injury patterns, as determined by the vector of the provocative blow. **A:** Anteroposterior compression or external rotation injury. **B:** Stable lateral compression or internal rotation injury. **C:** Unstable lateral compression or internal rotation injury. **D:** Unstable vertical shear disruption. (Redrawn from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* Vol 1, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

and are staged, requiring changes in patient position. Reductions are facilitated by neuromuscular paralysis. The posterior approach requires a large operative field, which may prevent the use of an epidural catheter. In addition, postop anticoagulation for DVT prophylaxis is used uniformly and may contraindicate the use of epidural catheters. The goal of pelvic reconstruction is to restore the anatomy and stability of the pelvis, which will decrease hemorrhage in the hemodynamically unstable patient, aid in mobilization of the multiply injured patient, and improve long-term function.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fractures of pelvis/acetabulum; nonunion/malunion of the pelvis/acetabulum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine (anterior); prone (posterior)
Incision	Pfannenstiel's, ilioinguinal (anterior); posterior, curving along iliac crest (posterior)
Special instrumentation	Radiolucent table; pelvic instruments and implants; Cell Saver; I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	1–6 h (anterior); 3–6 h (posterior)
Closing considerations	May require neuromuscular relaxation to aid reduction and closure; postop radiograph
EBL	≥ 1000 mL
Postop care	Multiple-trauma patient → ICU; others → PACU
Mortality	10%+, dependent on extent of multiple trauma
Morbidity	Ileus: Common Neurologic injury: Common

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity (cont'd)	Genitourinary injuries: Not uncommon Failure of fixation: Rare Infection: Rare Malunion: Rare Nonunion: Rare
Pain score	9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age, but predominance of males < 30 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	1–2%
Etiology	Motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents (60–80%); falls (10–15%); crush injuries (5%); other (5%)
Associated conditions	Frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems, including head and neck, chest, abdomen, and extremities. These often will be addressed concurrently with pelvic or acetabular fracture.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Procedures about the Pelvis and Hip (p. 1015).

Suggested Readings

1. Guyton JL: Fractures of hip, acetabulum, and pelvis. In: Canale ST, ed. *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics,* 10th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 2003.
2. LaVelle DG: Delayed union and nonunion of fractures. In: Canale ST, ed. *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics,* 10th edition. CV Mosby, St. Louis: 2003, 3125–65.
3. Leighton RK: Nonunions and malunions of the pelvis. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* Vol I, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 921–34.
4. Mears DC, Durbhakula SM: Fractures and dislocations of the pelvic ring. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* Vol I, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 531–85.
5. Prevezas N: Evolution of pelvic and acetabular surgery from ancient to modern times. *Injury* 2007; 38(4):397–409.
6. Rice PL Jr, Rudolph M:. Pelvic fractures. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2007; 25(3):795–802.

CLOSED REDUCTION AND EXTERNAL FIXATION OF THE PELVIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure entails manipulating the pelvis to obtain an acceptable reduction by closed means under GA, and then applying an anterior external fixation device to maintain the reduction. The pins for the external fixator are inserted into the iliac crest either percutaneously or through small incisions. During this procedure, either radiographs or the I.I. is used to confirm that an acceptable reduction has been obtained. In some centers, this procedure is done in the emergency department as a lifesaving procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Displaced fracture of the pelvis; unstable fracture of the pelvis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Percutaneously or through small incisions along the iliac crest
Special instrumentation	External fixation; often performed on a radiolucent table using I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic); combination antibiotics, if multiple severe, open fractures or other significant injuries are present.
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
EBL	Negligible from surgical procedure; however, anticipate large blood losses (4+ U) from the pelvic fracture alone.
Postop care	Multiple-trauma victim → ICU; others → PACU
Mortality	10% or more, depending on extent of multiple trauma; 50% in open fractures
Morbidity	Ileus: Virtually 100%; Sacroiliac (SI) pain: 15–30%+ Genitourinary problems, including bladder or urethral rupture: 13% Neurological deficit to lumbosacral plexus: 1–10% Malunion/severe deformity: 5% Leg-length discrepancy: 3–5% Impotence: 1–5% Residual instability: 1–3% Vascular complications: 1% Hypotension 2° to retroperitoneal hematoma: Common Respiratory distress: Common Gynecological and colorectal injuries: More common with open fractures/dislocations Delayed union, nonunion: Not uncommon Osteomyelitis: Rare Rupture of diaphragm: Rare
Pain score	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age, but predominance of males < 30 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents (60–80%); falls (10–15%); crush injuries (5%); other (5%)
Associated conditions	Frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems, including head and neck, chest, abdomen, and extremities. Patient sustaining a pelvic fracture also has a probability of having other injuries, including: musculoskeletal (85%); respiratory (60%); CNS (40%); GI (30%); urologic (12%); CVS (6%). These often will be addressed concurrently with the pelvic fracture.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Procedures about the Pelvis and Hip (p. 1015).

Suggested Readings

1. Guyton JL, Perez EA: Fractures of acetabulum and pelvis. In: Canale ST, Beaty JH, eds. *Campbell's Operative Orthopediacs*, Vol 3, 12th edition. Mosby, St. Louis: 2012, 2777–820.
2. Mears DC, Durbhakula SM: Fractures and dislocations of the pelvic ring. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* Vol I, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 531–85.
3. Prevezas N: Evolution of pelvic and acetabular surgery from ancient to modern times. *Injury* 2007; 38(4):397–409.
4. Rice PL Jr, Rudolph M: Pelvic fractures. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2007; 25(3):795–802.

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF ACETABULUM FRACTURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Although the acetabulum is contained within the bony architecture of the pelvis, surgical management of acetabulum fractures are approached separately from pelvic fractures. The goal of surgical treatment of acetabulum fractures is to preserve the hip joint by accurately reconstructing the supporting bony anatomy. Surgical treatments of these challenging injuries are performed by surgeons who have undergone specialized training in orthopedic pelvic surgery. The mechanism of injury is usually high-energy trauma (e.g., motor vehicle, motorcycle accidents), industrial accidents, or a fall from a height that drives the femur into the acetabulum. Associated injuries to the pelvis are common, as are associated systemic injuries.

Optimal results are achieved when surgery is performed within 7 d. The approach is dictated mainly by the unique characteristics of the fractures. Essentially, three approaches are commonly used: the **ilioinguinal** (anterior, Fig. 10.4-3), the **extended iliofemoral** (lateral, Fig. 10.4-4), and the **Kocher-Langenbeck** (posterior, Fig. 10.4-5). The most difficult portion of the procedure is the reduction; it may be facilitated by neuromuscular relaxation, pelvic reduction instruments, and traction. The I.I. is used frequently throughout the procedure to assess the reduction and position of implants, which necessitates the use of lead aprons. A radiograph also is obtained at the end of the case to verify a satisfactory reduction and position of the implants. Patients are anticoagulated in the postop period to prevent

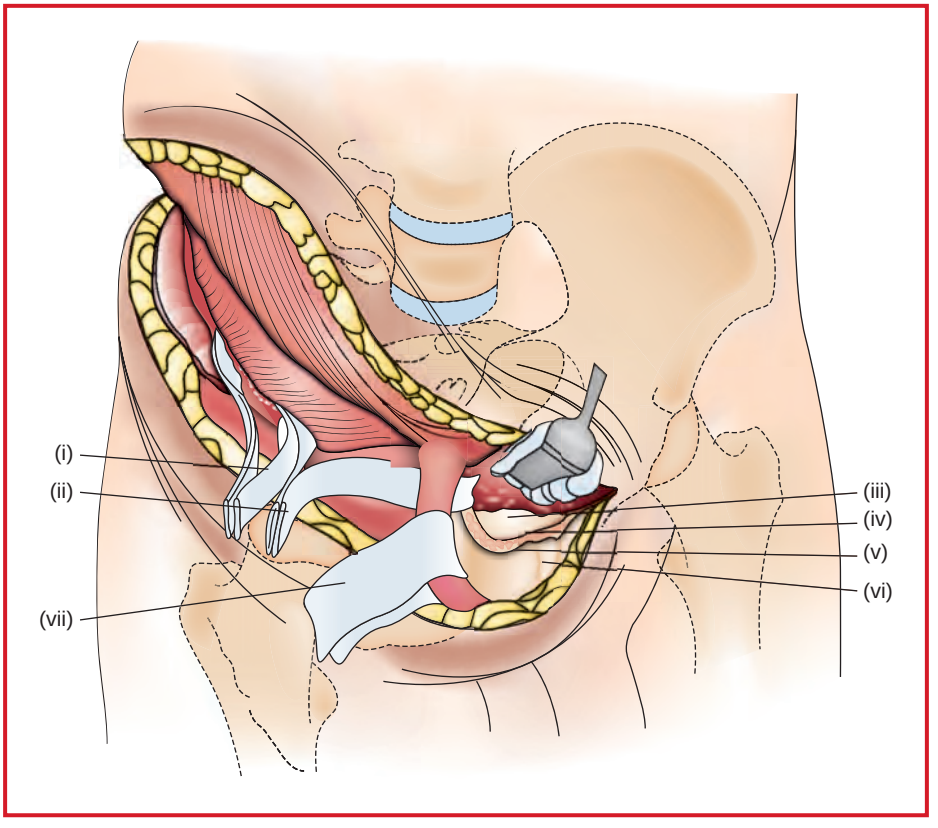


Figure 10.4-3. Ilioinguinal approach, right side: (i) Penrose drain around iliopsoas, femoral nerve, and lateral femoral cutaneous nerve; (ii) Penrose drain around femoral vessels; (iii) bladder and space of Retzius; (iv) pubis; (v) pubic tubercle; (vi) symphysis pubis; (vii) Penrose drain around spermatic cord. (Redrawn from Sledge CB, ed: *The Hip.* Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

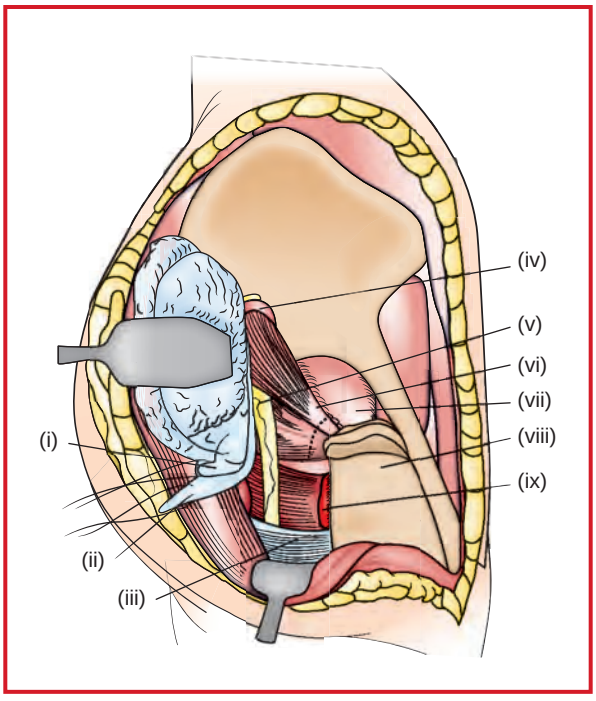


Figure 10.4-4. Extended iliofemoral approach: (i) Gluteus minimus tendon; (ii) gluteus medius tendon; (iii) gluteus maximus tendon; (iv) superior gluteal neurovascular bundle; (v) sciatic nerve; (vi) piriformis and conjoint tendons; (vii) hip joint capsule; (viii) greater trochanter; (ix) medial femoral circumflex artery overlying quadratus femoris. (Redrawn from Sledge CB, ed: *The Hip*. Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

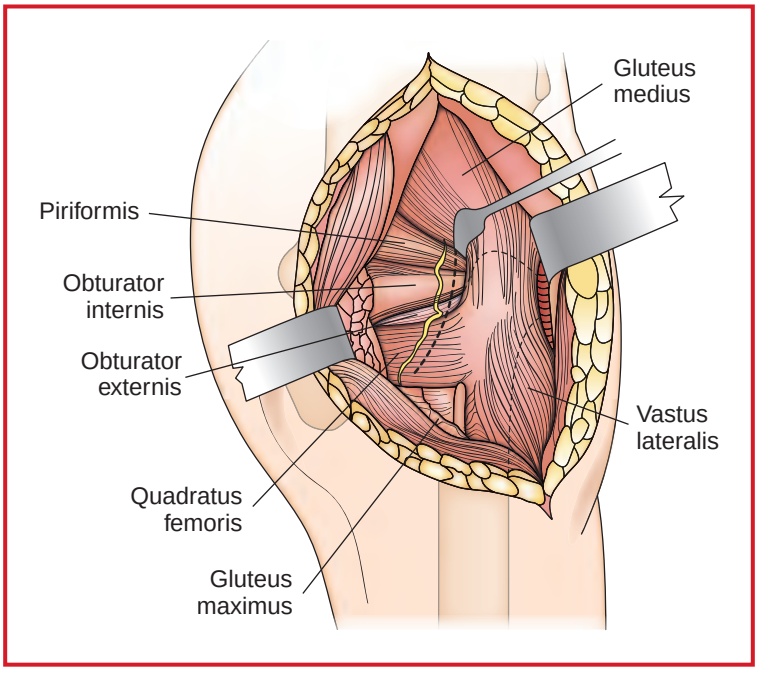


Figure 10.4-5. Kocher-Langenbeck approach. (Redrawn from Sledge CB, ed: *The Hip*. Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

thromboembolic complications. Weight-bearing restrictions are maintained until enough healing has occurred to permit functional ambulation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture of the acetabulum; nonunion/malunion of the acetabulum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine (anterior); lateral decubitus (lateral); prone (posterior)
Incision	Ilioinguinal (anterior, Fig. 10.4-3); extended iliofemoral (lateral, Fig. 10.4-4), Kocher-Langenbeck (posterior, Fig. 10.4-5)
Special instrumentation	Pelvic table; pelvic instruments and implants; I.I.; Cell Saver
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	2–5 h
EBL	100–2000 mL
Postop care	Multiple-trauma: ICU; others: PACU
Mortality	2.28%
Morbidity	Ectopic ossification: 24.4% Osteoarthritis after perfect reduction: 10.2%; after imperfect reduction: 35.7% Injury to lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh: 12% Sciatic nerve damage: 6.3% Infection: 4.2% Avascular bone necrosis: 4.1% DVT: 3% Wound hematoma: 1.5% Secondary displacement of fracture site: 1.5% PE: 1% Pseudoarthrosis: 0.7% Ileus after ilioinguinal approach: Common
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	12–85 yr
Male:Female	65.6% (M); 34.6% (F)
Etiology	Motor vehicle accidents (70%); motor vehicle/pedestrian accidents (13%); falls (14%); other (3%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Procedures about the Pelvis and Hip, p. 1015.

Suggested Readings

1. Briffa N, Pearce R, Hill AM, Bircher M: Outcomes of acetabular fracture fixation with ten years' follow-up. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2011; 93(2):226–36.
2. Gettys FK, Russell GV, Karunakar MA: Open treatment of pelvic and acetabular fractures. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2011; 42(1):69–83, vi.
3. Guyton JL. Perez EA: Fractures of acetabulum and pelvis. Chapter 56. In: Canale ST, Beaty JH, eds. *Campbell's Operative Orthopediacs*, Vol 3, 12th edition. Mosby, St. Louis: 2012, 2777–820.
4. Prevezas N: Evolution of pelvic and acetabular surgery from ancient to modern times. *Injury* 2007; 38(4):397–408.
5. Rice PL Jr, Rudolph M: Pelvic fractures. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2007; 25(3):795–802.

OSTEOTOMY AND BONE GRAFT AUGMENTATION OF THE PELVIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Acetabular insufficiency (acetabular dysplasia) is characterized by deficient anterior and lateral coverage of the acetabulum on the femoral head. This condition of the hip produces joint incongruity and instability, eventually leading to arthrosis and a dysfunctional hip joint. Treatment is aimed at reorienting the dysplastic acetabulum (Fig. 10.4-6). In children, bone grafting alone may be sufficient; in adults, however, pelvic osteotomy, to reorient or broaden the weight-bearing surface, is necessary. A supplemental bone graft to expand the weight-bearing surface may be added. In certain instances following pelvic osteotomy, incongruity of the hip may persist. In this situation, the pelvic osteotomy is combined with a proximal femoral osteotomy to restore congruence. Pelvic and proximal femoral osteotomies usually are fixed internally with screws and plates to allow early mobilization without displacement. Weight-bearing is permitted after healing of the osteotomy at ~8 wk.

Usual preop diagnosis: Acetabular dysplasia; developmental dysplasia of the hip

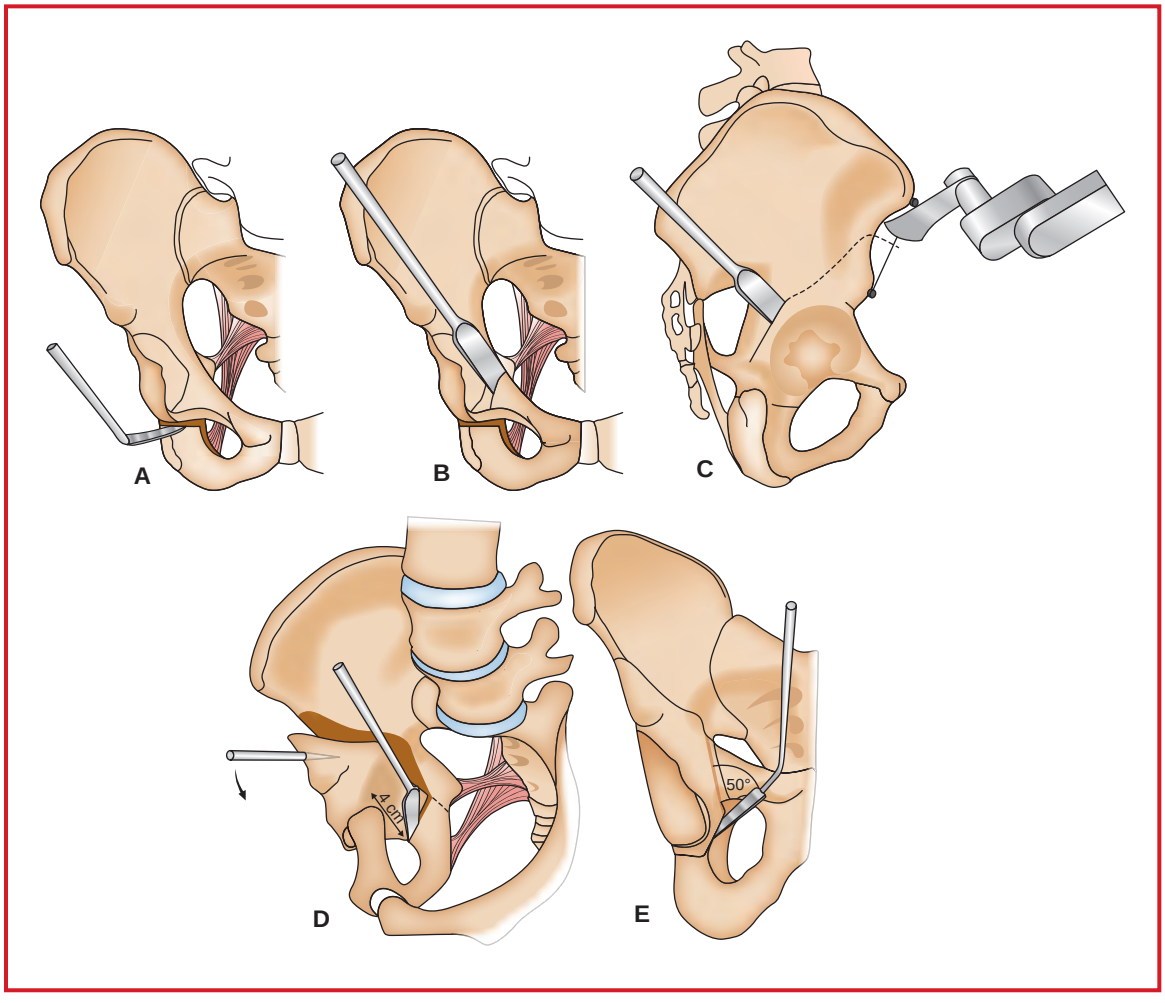


Figure 10.4-6. The Bernese periacetabular osteotomy. (Redrawn from Ganz R, Klaue K, Vinh TS, et al: A new periacetabular osteotomy for the treatment of hip dysplasias: technique and preliminary results. *Clin Orthop* 1988; 232:26–36.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior: ilioinguinal or iliofemoral and Smith-Peterson
Special instrumentation	Pelvic instruments and implants; special osteotomes and saws; I.I., Cell Saver
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs and use of I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	3 h
EBL	500+ mL
Postop care	PACU → room; usually on protected, weight-bearing walker or crutches × 8 wk
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Ileus: 100% Leg-length discrepancy: Uniformly present after pelvic osteotomy Injury to lateral cutaneous nerve: Common (50%) Sciatic nerve: Uncommon (1%) Thromboembolism: 5–10% Wound infection: 1–5% Septic arthritis, osteomyelitis: 1–7% Delayed union, nonunion, malunion: 1–2% Genitourinary problems—urinary retention requiring catheterization: Common Hematoma: Common Hypotension 2° to retroperitoneal hematoma: Rare Vascular complications: Rare
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–50 yr
Male:Female	3–4 × higher incidence in females for congenital hip dysplasia; equal incidence for other causes
Etiology	Congenital hip dysplasia; neuromuscular disorders (cerebral palsy, meningomyelocele); pediatric trauma to acetabular growth plate
Associated conditions	Depends on Dx

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Procedures about the Pelvis and Hip (p. 1015).

ARTHRODESIS OF THE SACROILIAC JOINT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In this procedure, a painful and/or unstable sacroiliac (SI) joint is fused, usually by excising the joint through an **anterior** or **posterior approach** and employing an iliac crest bone graft. Supplemental screw fixation of the joint is used. The incision follows the iliac crest from the anterior superior iliac spine past the convexity of the iliac tubercle; the aponeurosis of the external abdominal musculature is elevated from the iliac crest. The internal iliac

fossa is exposed subperiosteally, posterior to the SI joint; then the joint cartilage is excised and packed with cancellous bone strips. The SI joint is fixed with plates and screws. Alternatively, a posterior approach to the SI joint may be used. A straight vertical incision is made just lateral to the posterior superior iliac spine. The origin of the gluteus maximus is elevated from its origin off the posterior ilium and sacrum and reattached laterally. The SI joint is identified, debrided of cartilage, and packed with strips of cancellous bone. It is then fixed with screws.

Variant procedure or approaches: Anterior or posterior approach

Usual preop diagnosis: Arthritis or arthrosis of the SI joint; pelvic instability

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine (anterior) or prone (posterior)
Incision	Lateral portion of ilioinguinal (anterior); posterior approach to SI joint (posterior)
Special instrumentation	Radiolucent table; pelvic instruments and implants; I.I.; Cell Saver
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs or use of I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	2–3 h
EBL	250–500 mL
Postop care	Usually on protected, weight-bearing walker or crutches × 6–8 wk; anticoagulation for DVT prophylaxis
Mortality	Extremely low
Morbidity	Ileus: Virtually always Osteomyelitis: < 1% Wound infection: < 1% Genitourinary problems; urinary retention requiring catheterization: Common Delayed union, nonunion, malunion, leg-length discrepancy: Not uncommon Neurological deficit; injury to lumbosacral plexus: Rare, unless present preop; L5 nerve root susceptible in anterior approaches Hypotension 2° to retroperitoneal hematoma: Rare Injury to bowel: Rare Vascular complications; injury to iliac arteries: Rare Thromboembolism
Pain score	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–50 yr
Male:Female	Increased incidence in males (trauma)
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Trauma—postpelvic fracture dislocation; painful septic arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Procedures about the Pelvis and Hip (p. 1015).

Suggested Readings

1. Prevezas N: Evolution of pelvic and acetabular surgery from ancient to modern times. *Injury* 2007; 38(4):397–409.
2. Rice PL Jr, Rudolph M: Pelvic fractures. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2007; 25(3):795–802.
3. Wise CL, Dall BE: Minimally invasive sacroiliac arthrodesis: outcomes of a new technique. *J Spinal Disord Tech* 2008; 21(8):579–84.

AMPUTATIONS ABOUT THE HIP AND PELVIS: DISARTICULATION OF THE HIP AND HINDQUARTER AMPUTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: These surgical procedures accomplish an excision of the entire lower extremity. In a **hip disarticulation,** the amputation is performed through the hip joint. An anterior, racquet-shaped incision is made, and all muscles crossing the hip joint are incised or detached. The femoral artery, vein, and nerve; obturator vessels; sciatic nerve; and deep vessels are isolated and ligated. The gluteal flap is brought anteriorly and sewn to the anterior portion of the incision. In a **hindquarter amputation,** excision of the lower extremity, hip joint, and a portion of the pelvis is performed. Anterior and posterior incisions are used, the iliac wing is divided posteriorly, and the symphysis pubis is disarticulated anteriorly. Either the common iliac or external iliac vessels are ligated, as are all nerves to the lower extremity. Usually the gluteal flap is drawn anteriorly for closure. These procedures are performed very rarely—for severe trauma, tumor, or infection—and are often lifesaving surgeries. They often are performed in conjunction with a general surgeon, and standard bowel prep is done. The operations are long and tedious, with extensive blood loss, in patients who are usually systemically ill.

Usual preop diagnosis: Malignant tumor of femur, hip or pelvis; traumatic amputation to femur, hip, or pelvis; uncontrollable infection to leg, hip, or pelvis (e.g., clostridia)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Hip Disarticulation	Hindquarter Amputation
Position	Supine	Lateral decubitus; stabilized by bean bag and/or kidney rests.
Incision	Anterior racquet type (rare)	Anterior and posterior
Unique considerations	Urinary catheter should be placed.	Urinary catheter; NG tube; scrotum strapped to opposite thigh; anus stitched closed/sealed.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)	⇐
Surgical time	3–4 h	4–5 h
EBL	1000–2000 mL (intraop blood salvage system recommended, except for tumors)	2000–3000 mL
Postop care	ICU	⇐
Mortality	Rare in patients undergoing elective amputation for trauma or localized tumor; higher for patients with debilitated trauma, chronic infection, or extensive invasive malignant tumor; highest in clostridial infections: ~50%+	⇐
Morbidity	Anemia: Common Electrolyte abnormalities: Common Hematoma: Common Neurological injury to lumbosacral plexus or peripheral nerves: Common Paralytic ileus: Common Psychosocial problems: Common UTI: Common Flap necrosis: Not uncommon	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Hip Disarticulation	Hindquarter Amputation
Morbidity (cont'd)	Incomplete excision with recurrence of tumor or infection: Not uncommon	⇐
	Injury to peritoneal or retroperitoneal contents, including bowel and bladder: Not uncommon	⇐
	Vascular injury—iliac, other vessels: Not uncommon	⇐
Pain Score	10	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	Similar, except higher incidence in males for traumatic etiologies
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Malignant tumor; trauma; infection—clostridial myonecrosis, chronic osteomyelitis, etc.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR PROCEDURES ABOUT THE PELVIS AND HIP

(Procedures covered: ORIF, pelvis, acetabulum; closed reduction, external fixation, pelvis; osteotomy and bone graft of pelvis; arthrodesis of SI joint; amputations about hip and pelvis: disarticulation of hip and hindquarter amputation)

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for pelvic surgery generally fall into two categories: (1) Major trauma—pelvic fracture requires substantial force and seldom occurs alone. These patients require aggressive fluid resuscitation with large-bore ivs and invasive monitors (arterial line and CVP). If the patient can be made hemodynamically stable with volume resuscitation, a thorough evaluation for coexisting neurological, thoracic, or abdominal trauma should be undertaken before anesthesia. (2) Tumor resection and amputation of thigh, hip, and pelvis. Because of large intraop blood loss and 3rd-spacing of fluids, invasive hemodynamic monitoring is necessary. Although epidural anesthesia is seldom adequate for surgery, postop epidural analgesia is an effective means of controlling the tremendous pain caused by this type of surgery. Other patient populations covered in this section include otherwise healthy patients with congenital or acquired hip dysplasia presenting for augmentation procedures.

Respiratory	Trauma patients are at risk for hemothorax, pneumothorax, pulmonary contusion, fat embolism (preop and postop), and aspiration. A chest tube will be needed before surgery if either a hemothorax or pneumothorax is present. Pulmonary fat embolus occurs in 10–15% of patients with long-bone fractures and can occur after isolated pelvic fractures. Sx include hypoxemia, tachycardia, tachypnea, respiratory alkalosis, mental status changes, conjunctival petechiae, fat bodies in the urine, and diffuse pulmonary infiltrates. Sx of pulmonary aspiration are similar to those of fat embolism. Preop therapy for either should include supplemental O_2 to correct hypoxemia (may necessitate mechanical ventilation) and meticulous fluid management to prevent worsening of pulmonary capillary leak. The best predictor of aspiration/hypoventilation is reduced level of consciousness, usually measured using the Glasgow Coma Score. **Tests:** CXR, or others as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Blunt chest trauma can produce both cardiac contusion and aortic tear. Preop ECG and CPK isoenzymes will help evaluate the presence of myocardial injury. A wide mediastinal silhouette suggests aortic tear, which requires evaluation with TEE or angiography. **Tests:** Consider ECG; CPK isoenzymes; others as indicated from H&P.

Neurological	The possibility of coexistent neurologic trauma necessitates a thorough preop mental status review and peripheral sensory exam. A CT scan of the head is indicated for any patient with loss of consciousness prior to anesthesia.
Musculoskeletal	For trauma patients, C-spine films will evaluate the stability of the C-spine before neck manipulation during ET intubation. Thoracic and lumbar x-rays also should be evaluated for the presence of traumatic spinal deformity or instability that would require special stabilization in the anesthetized patient. **Tests:** C-spine x-rays or others as indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Restore Hct to 25% prior to inducing anesthesia. Have available 1 blood volume (70 mL/kg) or l total erythrocyte mass (20 mL/kg) for intraop transfusion. Transfusions of more than 1 blood volume will require monitoring and possible replacement of Plts and coag factors. The incidence of DVT is very high in these patients, and prophylaxis with SCDs or low-dose sc heparin is indicated whenever feasible.
Renal	Renal injury commonly results from trauma to the collecting system, myoglobinuria from rhabdomyolysis and ischemic, acute, tubular necrosis from hypovolemia or aortic dissection. Foley catheters should be placed only after urologic consultation for possible urethral tear. Suprapubic catheters are often necessary. Monitoring of UO is mandatory to detect intraop compromise of the collecting system and to monitor adequacy of renal perfusion. **Tests:** Consider UA; BUN; Cr; others as indicated from H&P.
Laboratory	Hct; electrolytes; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	In hemodynamically stable patients, pain can be treated with morphine (1–2 mg iv q 10 min titrated to pain relief) prior to anesthesia.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA is indicated due to the duration and extent of the surgery, as well as the varied positions that are necessary to accomplish pelvic fixation. Regional anesthesia is generally inadequate for major pelvic surgery; however, in elective surgeries, serious consideration should be given to postop epidural analgesia.

Induction	A rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) is necessary for trauma patients to minimize aspiration risk. Elective cases can undergo a standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Ventilation: lung protective strategy. A ventilatory strategy should be adopted with tidal volumes around 5–8 mL/kg and plateau airway pressures below 30 cmH_2O. A minimum PEEP of 5 cmH_2O should be applied and adjusted.	
Emergence	Extubate trauma patients when fully awake and protective airway reflexes have returned. Do not extubate patients with evolving pulmonary injuries (fat embolism, aspiration, or contusion). Monitoring in an ICU usually is indicated for trauma and cancer patients. Prolonged stays can be anticipated for patients with severe coexistent trauma.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Large blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 8–12 mL/kg/h 2–4 U PRBC in OR Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	Expect large blood losses (from 0.5 to 2 or more blood volumes) with all but augmentation procedures. Cell-scavenging techniques are useful to reduce the requirement for blood. Care should be taken to ensure that cells have been adequately washed to minimize ↓ BP on reinfusion.

Control of blood loss	Deliberate hypotension Hemodilution In trauma patients	Patients with severe cardiovascular disease or carotid artery stenosis are not candidates for ↓ BP. Full replacement of any volume deficit is mandatory before inducing ↓ BP. Commonly used agents are isoflurane (1–3%) or esmolol (50–200 mcg/kg/min) ± SNP (0.25–3 mcg/kg/min). These agents are titrated to produce a 30% ↓ in preop MAP (but not < 60 mm Hg). A cerebral perfusion pressure of > 65 mm Hg is advocated. A case-by-case decision should be made, balancing the requirements of cerebral oxygenation against the risk of worsening hemorrhage. In isolated head injury, hypotension must not be tolerated: an arterial pressure of 85–90 mm Hg may be beneficial.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line CVP line ± PA catheter ± TEE UO	Patients for shelf procedures may require only standard monitoring. Patients with myocardial dysfunction should have fluid and inotropic/pressor therapy, guided by continuous central venous saturation monitoring, a PA catheter and/or TEE.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Meticulous padding of the chest, pelvis, and extremities is imperative to prevent nerve injury and ischemia of the extremities. ↓ BP → risk of neurovascular injury.
Complications	Hypothermia Damage to urinary collecting system Major blood loss Coagulopathy	Warming of hypothermic patient may unmask severe volume depletion that will increase fluid requirement to well above apparent losses.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Nerve root damage Peripheral nerve damage	Preop or intraop damage to L4–S5 nerve roots and cauda equina, resulting in hemiplegia and bladder and bowel dysfunction. Neuropathy of the femoral, genitofemoral, and lateral femoral cutaneous nerves can result from pressure on the ilioinguinal ligament during surgery.
Pain management	IV morphine Spinal opiates	Morphine 1–2 mg iv q 10 min prn Epidural hydromorphone 50 mcg/mL infused at 100–250 mcg/h, ± bupivacaine 0.125–0.25% at 4–8 mL/h, provides excellent analgesia.
Tests	Hct CXR Coag profile, as indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Harris T, Davenport R, Hurst T, Jones J: Improving outcome in severe trauma: trauma systems and initial management: intubation, ventilation and resuscitation. *Postgrad Med J* 2012; 88:588–94.
2. Masursky D, Dexter F, McCartney CJ, et al: Predicting orthopedic surgeons' preferences for peripheral nerve blocks for their patients. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 106(2):561–7.
3. Nutescu EA: Assessing, preventing, and treating venous thromboembolism: evidence-based approaches. *Am J Health Syst Pharm* 2007; 64(11 Suppl 7):S5–13.

4. Ranawat AS, Ranawat CS: Pain management and accelerated rehabilitation for total hip and total knee arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty* 2007; 22(7 Suppl 3):12–5.
5. Rosencher N, Bonnet MP, Sessler DI: Selected new antithrombotic agents and neuraxial anaesthesia for major orthopaedic surgery: management strategies. *Anaesthesia* 2007; 62(11):1154–60.

ARTHROPLASTY OF THE HIP

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Total hip arthroplasty** is one of the most successful procedures in orthopedic surgery. In this procedure, the hip joint (Fig. 10.4-7) is approached through one of several standard incisions. The femoral head is dislocated from the acetabulum, and the arthritic femoral head and a portion of the neck are excised. The acetabulum is

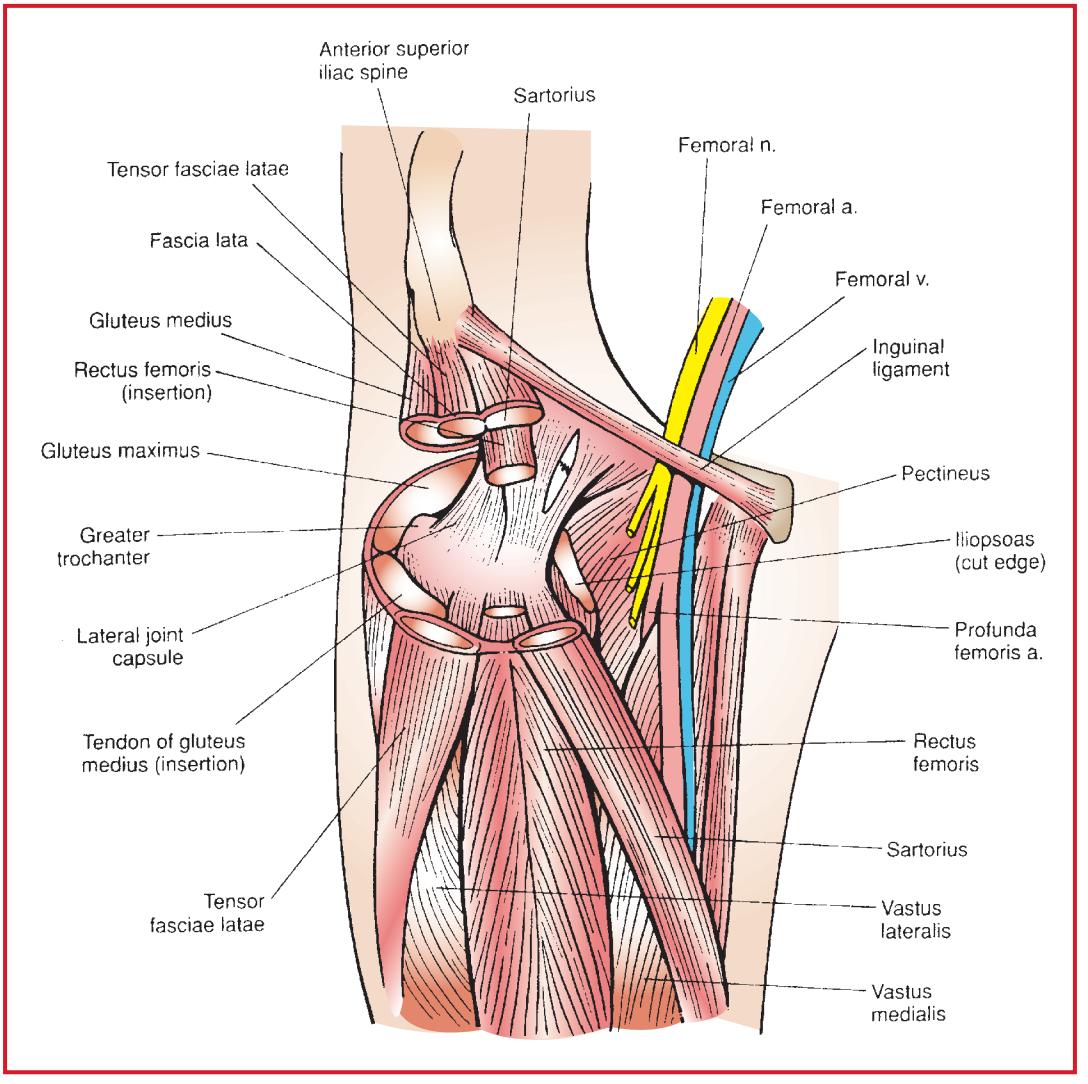


Figure 10.4-7. Surgical exposure of the hip joint. The hip joint may be exposed through a number of approaches. The relevant anatomical landmarks are shown here. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics.* JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1984.)

reamed to accept a cemented or cementless cup made of metal and plastic. The femoral stem and head are usually modular, allowing for numerous shapes, sizes, lengths, etc. The metallic femoral component may be cemented or cementless. A hybrid total hip combines a cemented femoral stem and a cementless acetabular cup. After relocation of the new prosthetic hip joint and closure of the tissues, the patient may be given an abduction pillow to minimize the risk of dislocation. Mobilization takes place over the ensuing days.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Unipolar** (only the femoral side is replaced); **bipolar** (both the femoral side and the acetabular side are replaced; the acetabular cup is not fixed to the pelvis). **Revision procedures** are more arduous and time consuming, as the "failed" or loose component(s) must be removed and the bone prepared to accept new cemented or cementless components. These procedures require more specialized equipment for extracting prostheses and cement and rebuilding the femoral or acetabular bone stock (allografts, autografts, etc.). Often, special components are needed for implantation of a new prosthesis. In the **Girdlestone procedure (resection arthroplasty),** the components are removed, but not replaced. This procedure is usually performed for infection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture of femoral neck; arthritis of hip; arthrosis of hip; loose (or malpositioned) hip prosthesis; chronic dislocation of hip arthroplasty; infected hip arthroplasty

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Unipolar, Bipolar, Total Hip Replacement	Revision, Total Hip Replacement	Girdlestone Resection Arthroplasty
Position	Supine (for anterior or anterolateral approaches); lateral decubitus position (for lateral or posterior approaches)	⇐	⇐
Incision	Anterolateral, lateral or posterolateral over hip joint	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Appropriate prostheses and instrumentation	Special instruments for excising cement	⇐
Unique considerations	In lateral decubitus position, patient is usually stabilized by bean bag and/or kidney rests. SCDs used.	A trochanteric osteotomy may be performed.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)	⇐	⇐ after intraop cultures
Surgical time	2–3 h	3–6 h or more	3 h or more
EBL	250–750 mL (intraop blood retrieval system may be useful).	≥ 1000 mL; intraop blood retrieval recommended.	⇐
Postop care	Patient's legs immobilized between abduction wedge; or operated leg suspended in a splint or placed in traction.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	1–2% (increasing with age)	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	DVT:	⇐	⇐
	• Without prophylaxis: ≥ 50%	⇐	⇐
	• With chemoprophylaxis and mechanical prophylaxis: 2–3%	⇐	⇐
	Heterotopic ossification: 3–50% (average, 13%; significant, 4–5%)	> 3–50%	⇐
	Intraop cementless fracture: 5–20%	⇐	⇐
	UTI: 7–14%	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

Morbidity (cont'd)	Late aseptic loosening requiring revision: 5–10% (after 10 yr)	> 5–10%	⇐
	Wound infection: 1% • Primary psoriatic and diabetic patients: 5–10% • Primary OA: 1%	3–10%	⇐
	Hematoma (major): < 5%	⇐	5–10%
	Femoral/sciatic nerve injury: 0.7–3.5%	⇐	⇐
	PE: 1.8–3.4% (if no prophylaxis)	⇐	⇐
	Intraop cemented fracture: 1–3%	2–3%	1–3%
	Postopsubluxation/dislocation: 0.5–3%	⇐	–
	Vascular injury to iliac vessels: < 0.5%	> 0.5%	⇐
	Urinary retention requiring catheterization: Common	⇐	⇐
	GI bleed, MI, cholecystitis: Rare	⇐	– Neurological injury: 3–10%
Pain score	7	8	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Hip fracture and cases of arthrosis of the hip joint: generally > 60 yr Arthritis of the hip (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis or juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, traumatic arthritis): all ages
Male:Female	Dependent on disease etiology
Incidence	Common: approximately 250,000/yr in United States
Etiology	Osteoarthritis; seropositive or seronegative arthritis; avascular necrosis; traumatic arthritis; congenital dislocation of the hip
Associated conditions	Dependent on primary conditions (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis patients may have numerous deformities, cardiorespiratory disease)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Hip Procedures (p. 1023).

Suggested Readings

1. Barrack RL: Current guidelines for total joint VTE prophylaxis: dawn of a new day. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):3–7.
2. Berry DJ: Primary total hip arthroplasty. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition, Vol III. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 2769–94.
3. Johnson RL, Kopp SL, Hebl JR, Erwin PJ, Mantilla CB: Falls and major orthopaedic surgery with peripheral nerve blockade: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth* 2013; 110(4):518–28.
4. Sugano N: Computer-assisted orthopaedic surgery and robotic surgery in total hip arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Surg* 2013; 5(1):1–9.
5. Watts CD, Pagnano MW: Minimising blood loss and transfusion in contemporary hip and knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):8–10.

ARTHRODESIS OF THE HIP

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In adults, this procedure is accomplished by fusing the femur to the acetabulum. Some form of internal fixation is usually employed; a spica cast is sometimes placed immediately postop or a few days later. The patient is usually not a good candidate for total hip arthroplasty (e.g., a young, healthy male with unilateral traumatic arthritis). The hip usually is fused in 30° of flexion, 10–30° of external rotation, and neutral-to-slight adduction. The surgical procedure may be performed through anterior, lateral, or posterior incisions with the lateral being most common. A **trochanteric osteotomy** facilitates exposure. After excising the cartilage surfaces, internal fixation, using screws ± a plate, is performed (Fig. 10.4-8).

Usual preop diagnosis: Arthritis or arthrosis of the hip; previous septic arthritis of the hip; recurrent subluxation or dislocation of the hip

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Usually supine; occasionally lateral decubitus
Incision	Anterior or lateral thigh
Special instrumentation	Plates and screws or other internal fixation; reamers from surface replacement arthroplasty set also may be useful; intraop x-ray; fracture table
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs or I.I. used with patient on fracture table
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	3–4 h
EBL	500–1000 mL; Cell Saver recommended.
Postop care	Spica cast
Mortality	Extremely low
Morbidity	Limb shortening: Some shortening is always present Delayed union, nonunion, malunion: 10–15% Femoral shaft fracture: 5–10% Wound infection: < 1% Genitourinary problems: urinary retention requiring catheterization: Common Ileus: Common Late degenerative arthritis of other lower extremity joints or back: Common, many years later Injury to iliac or femoral vessels: Rare Neurological deficit; injury to lateral cutaneous nerve, sciatic, or femoral nerves: Not uncommon Osteomyelitis: Rare Vascular complications: Rare Superior mesenteric artery syndrome causing duodenal obstruction: Extremely rare Thromboembolism: See Arthroplasty of the Hip, p. 1018.
Pain score	9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–50 yr
Male:Female	Usually males > females
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Trauma, general; neuromuscular disorders (cerebral palsy, meningomyelocele); trauma to acetabular growth plate; congenital hip dysplasia
Associated conditions	Depends on etiology.

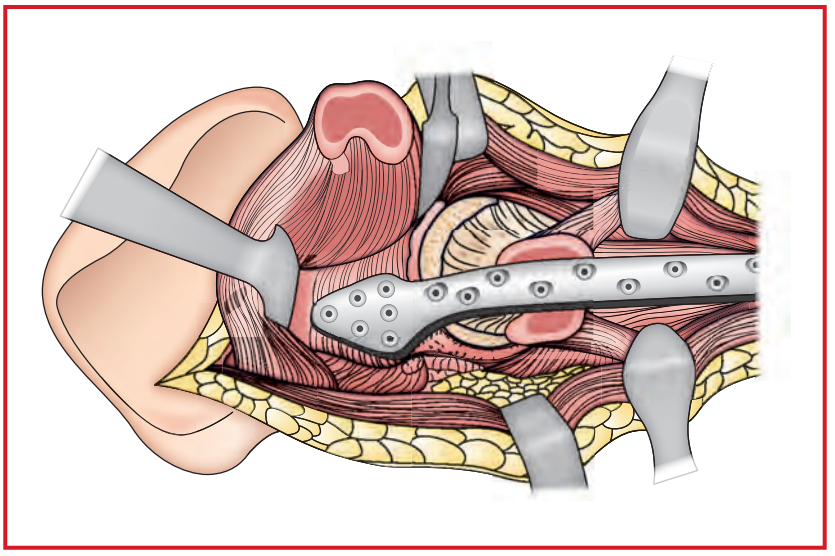


Figure 10.4-8. Application of cobra plate after it has molded to the shape of the acetabulum and femur, and initial fixation with one proximal + distal outrigger compression screws. (Redrawn from Sledge CB, ed: *The Hip.* Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Hip Procedures (p. 1023).

Suggested Reading

1. Gill PS, Paprosky WG: Failed hip arthroplasty: revision and arthrodesis. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition, Vol III. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 2795–858.

SYNOVECTOMY OF THE HIP

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: An **arthrotomy** of the hip joint is performed through one of several standard approaches (anterior, anterolateral, lateral, posterior). A **capsulotomy** is performed and is closed with reabsorbable sutures later in the case. Generally, the hip is not dislocated, but the cartilage surfaces are inspected and documented. The synovium, as well as any loose bodies, cartilage flaps, and osteophytes, are excised. Although weight bearing is usually protected, ROM and strengthening exercises are begun early.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic synovitis of hip; loose bodies in hip; juvenile and adult rheumatoid arthritis; pigmented villonodular synovitis; synovial chondromatosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine for anterior or anterolateral surgical approaches; lateral decubitus for posterior approaches
Incision	Overlying hip joint, depending on specific surgical approach
Unique considerations	Patient may have systemic disease (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis); careful positioning of limbs is necessary to avoid fracture or skin slough.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Surgical time	2 h
EBL	< 500 mL
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Thromboembolism: 10–50% Neurovascular injury—femoral or sciatic nerve, or iliac vessels: < 3% Wound infection or dehiscence: < 3% Septic arthritis and osteomyelitis: < 1% (unless synovectomy is performed for infection) Avascular necrosis of femoral head: Rare (if hip is not dislocated) Hematoma: Rare (if drainage tubes used) Inability to void, requiring urinary catheterization: Common
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	< 60 yr
Male:Female	Dependent on disease etiology (e.g., preponderance of females in rheumatoid arthritis)
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Septic arthritis (very common); rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile/adult (rare); pigmented villonodular synovitis (rare); trauma (rare)
Associated conditions	See Etiology, above.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR HIP PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: hip arthroplasty, arthrodesis, synovectomy)

PREOPERATIVE

Osteoarthritis is the most common indication for hip arthroplasty. These patients are usually elderly, and their anesthetic management is tailored to any concurrent disease. Rheumatoid and other inflammatory arthritides form another group of candidates for these procedures, and the special anesthetic considerations for these patients are outlined below. Avascular necrosis of the hip is seen in patients with sickle-cell disease and in heart transplant patients. Consider preemptive analgesia with: Gabapentin 600 mg po, celebrex 200 mg po, and acetaminophen 1 g po/iv to be given in the preop holding area.

Respiratory	Patients with rheumatoid arthritis frequently have associated pulmonary complications. SOB on performing activities of daily living or exercise (e.g., climbing a flight of stairs) warrants further evaluation with PFTs. Pulmonary effusions are common. Pulmonary fibrosis (rare) often manifests as cough and dyspnea. Rheumatoid arthritis involvement of the cricoarytenoid joints may produce glottic narrowing (requiring small ETT) and manifest as hoarseness. Arthritic involvement of the TMJ limits mouth opening and may necessitate special techniques (e.g., fiberoptic or light wand) for ET intubation. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	The severity of the arthritis often limits exercise; thus, a dobutamine stress ECHO and/or dipyridamole/thallium imaging may be necessary for adequate cardiac evaluation in patients with poor exercise tolerance. HTN and cardiovascular disease are common in elderly patients (dysrhythmias/TIAs → fall → hip fracture). Rheumatoid arthritis is associated with pericardial effusion, cardiac valve fibrosis, cardiac conduction abnormalities, and aortic regurgitation (AR). An ECG is indicated in all rheumatoid arthritis patients, and ECHO is indicated for patients with physical Sx suggestive of tamponade or cardiovascular disease. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Neurological	In patients with rheumatoid arthritis, a thorough neurological exam preop often yields evidence of cervical nerve-root compression. Patients with arthritis involving the cervical spine should have lateral neck films preop to determine the stability of the atlanto-occipital joint. After the stability of the spine has been established, full ROM of the neck should be evaluated for evidence of further nerve-root compression or cerebral ischemia (suggesting vertebral artery compression). Evidence of cerebral ischemia mandates a neurovascular evaluation to plan intraop BP management. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Musculoskeletal	Pain and ↓ joint mobility make positioning and regional anesthesia difficult in patients with arthritis.
Hematologic	Rheumatoid arthritis patients often have anemia. Also, anemia may be 2° NSAID gastritis. Patients with Hb > 12 g/dL are candidates for preop autologous blood donation. Hip fracture → potential large-volume blood loss at fracture site. DVT is common after hip surgery, and prophylaxis for its occurrence reduces mortality. Effective preventive measures include SCDs and sc heparin. NSAID-induced coagulopathy may preclude the use of regional anesthesia. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Renal	Estimation of renal function may be useful to predict drug clearance and the need for invasive monitoring in this elderly population. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	In the absence of limited pulmonary reserve or severe cardiac disease, a standard premedication (see p. B-1) is appropriate. Full-stomach precautions (p. B-6) may be necessary for patients in acute pain. Consider preemptive analgesia (see above).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or regional anesthesia (may be difficult 2° pain on positioning).

General anesthesia:

Induction	The lateral position may mandate ET intubation for patients undergoing GA. A careful preop airway evaluation will determine the need for special airway techniques (e.g., fiberoptic intubation, video laryngoscope, or light wand). Aggravation of cricoarytenoid arthritis that is common in rheumatoid arthritis patients can be minimized if a small ETT (6–7 mm cuffed) is used. For otherwise healthy patients, standard induction (p. B-2) is appropriate.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (p. B-3). Neuromuscular blockade facilitates the placement and testing of the prosthesis. In otherwise healthy patients, induced hypotension (e.g., ↓ 20%) → ↓ blood loss. Maintain normothermia (forced air blanket and fluid warmer).
Emergence	No special considerations. PONV prophylaxis (e.g., Ondansetron 4 mg iv).

Regional anesthesia: Regional anesthesia offers the advantages of decreased periop DVT and pulmonary embolus, decreased intraop blood loss, and a drier surgical field (which may improve conditions for cementing). However, induction of regional anesthesia, with its attendant positioning requirements, can be uncomfortable in patients with limited joint mobility. Rheumatoid arthritis patients, however, rarely have involvement of the lumbar spine, and regional anesthesia offers the advantages of decreased periop DVT, decreased intraop blood loss, and no need for airway manipulation. Sedation or general anesthesia should be offered to supplement the regional technique. A typical dose for a subarachnoid block is 12.5–15 mg bupivacaine. 10–25 mcg of fentanyl and 100–200 mcg of morphine may be added for improved pain control up to 24 h postoperatively. Anesthesia to T10 is adequate. Full motor blockade is essential for placement of the prosthesis and assessment of the passive ROM. Lumbar epidural block (initial dose of 10–15 mL 2% lidocaine with epinephrine 1:200,000, administered over 10 min) has the advantage of slow onset, allowing time to treat the induced

cardiovascular changes. Postop epidural opiates can provide excellent analgesia. Finally, a lumbar plexus block by the posterior approach (psoas compartment block) provides reliable postoperative analgesia, and hypotension and urinary retention are less common than with SAB or epidural analgesia. However, it is not sufficient for surgical anesthesia as the sole anesthetic. Continuous infusion is always initiated after the initial bolus of 15–20 mL of 0.125% bupivacaine or 0.2% ropivacaine. For patients with a high opioid tolerance, the use of a continuous epidural anesthetic (for either hip replacement or knee replacement) should be considered. For opioid tolerant patients, low-dose iv ketamine (e.g., 250 mcg/kg/h) for all anesthetic techniques (not just GA) may be given intraop as an adjunct. In an effort to reduce adverse events associated with perioperative opioid consumption, there is emerging interest from the orthopaedic community in eliminating the routine use of opioids in spinal anesthetics.

Blood and fluid requirements	Major blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 4–8 mL/kg/h	Cell scavenging helps reduce total transfusion requirement. Care should be taken to ensure that cells have been adequately washed to minimize ↓ BP on reinfusion.
Control of blood loss	Regional anesthesia Controlled hypotension	These techniques may be appropriate in selected patient populations.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± CVP line ± Arterial line	Invasive monitoring is indicated in the presence of exercise-limiting cardiac or pulmonary disease.
Positioning	Axillary roll, bean bag ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Meticulous padding of extremities and maintaining a neutral neck position are mandatory. A bean bag and axillary roll also are necessary to stabilize patient in the lateral position and to protect dependent arm from neurovascular compression injuries.
Complications	Methylmethacrylate: • ↓ BP 2° vasodilation • ↓ PaO_2 2° embolization • Cardiovascular collapse VAE Major blood loss DVT (femoral vein: 80%) Nerve damage Femur fracture	Microemboli of air, fat, bone fragments, and cement may occur during pressurized cementing, which may lead to hypotension and hypoxia. Hypotension may be used to achieve a dry operating field, which improves cement penetration into the bone. However, significant hypovolemia must be avoided because this predisposes to a severe reaction to pressurized cementing. Systemic ↓ BP and pulmonary HTN may occur. Care should be taken to ensure that patient is adequately hydrated before and during the procedure, and pressors may be necessary to maintain BP (ephedrine 5–20 mg iv or epinephrine 10– 100 mcg iv and increasing the dose as necessary).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Nerve damage DVT Continued blood loss	Sciatic nerve injury is evidenced by foot drop and an inability to flex the knee.
Pain management	Neuraxial regimens: • SAB • Epidural analgesia	Intrathecal morphine 0.2–0.3 mg provides analgesia for up to 24 h after administration. May be administered along with bupivacaine for surgical anesthesia. Epidural bupivacaine 0.0125% 6–8 mL/h and hydromorphone 50 mcg/mL infused at 100–250 mcg/h provides good analgesia. Prior to removal of the epidural catheter a 0.2 mg bolus of hydromorphone may be given. Epidural catheters are typically removed on the morning of postoperative day 2. Low-molecular-weight heparin may be started 2 h after catheter removal.

Pain management (cont'd)	Continuous lumbar plexus (psoas compartment) block Systemic regimens	Infusion with 0.2% ropivacaine or 0.125% bupivacaine maintained at 6–12 mL/h. Acetaminophen (1 g q 6h) and celebrex (200 mg q d) should be initiated immediately postop (if not contraindicated). Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with iv morphine or hydromorphone may be initiated as alternative to neuraxial blocks or to supplement a continuous lumbar plexus (psoas compartment) block. Consider pain service consult.
Tests	Hct CXR, if CVP was placed. Monitor UO	

Suggested Readings

1. Fung DL: Anesthesia and pain management. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition, Vol I. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 133–56.
2. Masursky D, Dexter F, McCartney CJ, et al: Predicting orthopedic surgeons' preferences for peripheral nerve blocks for their patients. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 106(2):561–7.
3. Miller AG, McKenzie J, Greenky M, et al: Spinal anesthesia: should everyone receive a urinary catheter?: a randomized, prospective study of patients undergoing total hip arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2013; 95(16):1498–503.
4. Ranawat AS, Ranawat CS: Pain management and accelerated rehabilitation for total hip and total knee arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty* 2007; 22(7 Suppl 3):12–5.
5. Rosencher N, Bonnet MP, Sessler DI: Selected new antithrombotic agents and neuraxial anaesthesia for major orthopaedic surgery: management strategies. *Anaesthesia* 2007; 62(11):1154–60.
6. Vieira EM, Goodman S, Tanaka PP: Anesthesia and rheumatoid arthritis. *Rev Bras Anesthesiol* 2011; 61:367–75.

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF PROXIMAL FEMORAL FRACTURES (FEMORAL NECK, INTERTROCHANTERIC, SUBTROCHANTERIC FRACTURES)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Fractures of the proximal femur are seen in two distinct populations: most commonly in elderly patients as the result of falls, and in younger patients following trauma. In elderly patients, the fracture occurs through osteoporotic bone in the femoral neck, intertrochanteric, or subtrochanteric area (Fig. 10.4-9). Displaced femoral neck fractures are usually treated by **prosthetic replacement.** Nondisplaced or minimally displaced femoral neck fractures are usually treated by **closed reduction and percutaneous pinning** of the fracture. Intertrochanteric and subtrochanteric fractures, whether displaced or nondisplaced, are usually treated by **ORIF with a sliding hip screw and side plate, cephalomedullary nail, or blade plate** (Fig. 10.4-10). Prosthetic replacement is performed only rarely. Elderly patients frequently have numerous medical problems, which means that the fractures require prompt internal fixation/prosthetic replacement to facilitate early mobilization. In younger patients (16–40 yr), proximal femoral fractures are almost always treated by ORIF with screws, plates and screws, or intramedullary devices. These are normally much higher energy fractures, often associated with multiple traumas.

Variant procedure or approaches: Variants include: **percutaneous pinning** of nondisplaced femoral neck fracture; **ORIF of displaced femoral neck fracture** (also see Arthroplasty of the Hip, p. 1018); **ORIF of intertrochanteric or subtrochanteric fracture.**

Usual preop diagnosis: Nondisplaced femoral neck fracture; displaced femoral neck fracture (those not requiring prosthetic replacement); intertrochanteric ± subtrochanteric fracture

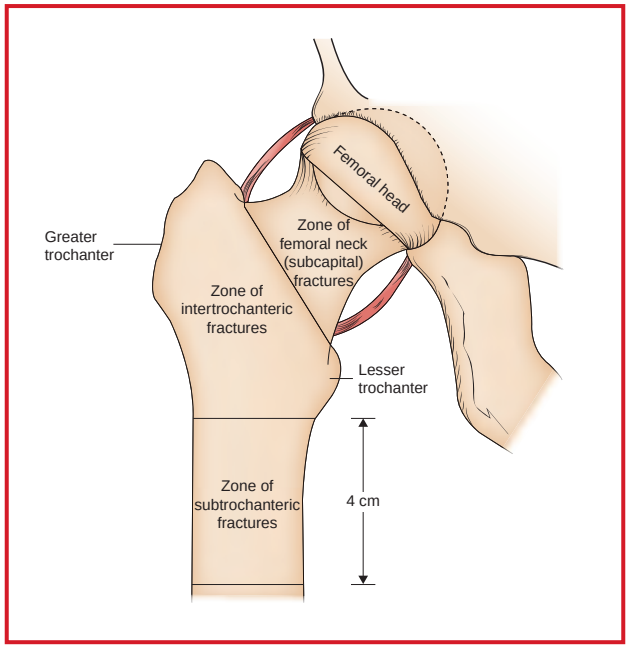


Figure 10.4-9. Anatomical classification of fractures of the proximal femur. (Redrawn from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott: 1988.)

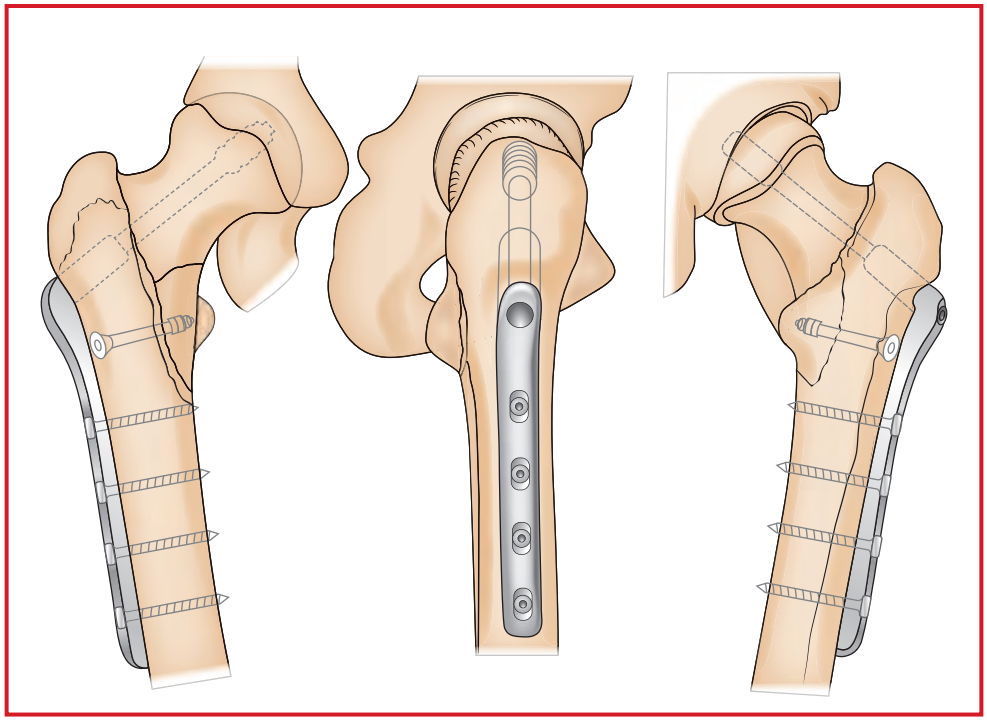


Figure 10.4-10. Intertrochanteric hip fracture treated with dynamic hip screw. (Redrawn from Sledge CB, ed: *The Hip.* Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Nondisplaced Femoral Neck Fracture	Displaced Femoral Neck Fracture	Intertrochanteric ± Subtrochanteric Fracture
Position	Supine, on fracture table	⇐	⇐
Incision	Proximal lateral thigh	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Usually multiple percutaneous pins	Multiple screws or other devices	Screw-plate device or intramedullary device
Unique considerations	Fracture table and I.I. used. Percutaneous pinning may be accomplished with local anesthesia only.	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	1.5–2 h, including placing patient on fracture table and obtaining adequate reduction of fracture	1.5–3 h
EBL	< 100 mL	250–500 mL	500+ mL
Postop care	Generally PACU → room; if medically unstable, → ICU	⇐	⇐
Mortality	10–30% in first 12 mo postop in elderly; in younger patients, depends on other involved trauma.	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Dysrhythmias: ~50%	⇐	⇐
	MI: ~50%	⇐	⇐
	Respiratory failure: ~50%	⇐	⇐
	Urinary retention requiring catheterization: ~50%	⇐	⇐
	UTI: ~50%	⇐	⇐
	Thromboembolism: 40%+	⇐	⇐
	Avascular necrosis and late segmental collapse: 10–20%	≥ 15–35%	1%
	Infection, deep: 2–17%	⇐	⇐
	Infection, superficial: 2–17%	⇐	⇐
	Septic arthritis: 2–17%	⇐	⇐
	Nonunion: 5–15%	20–30%	2%
	Malunion: < 10%	> 10%	10–20%
	Loss of reduction: < %5	> 10%	10%
	Hematoma	–	–
	Intraop comminution of the fracture	–	–
	Neurological injury: Rare	⇐	⇐
	Vascular injury: Rare	⇐	⇐
Pain score	5–6	7	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually > 60 yr (patients with an intertrochanteric fracture average 65–70 yr); occasionally, younger patients, 16–35 yr (as part of multiple-trauma situation)
Male:Female	Elderly 1:4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	Extremely common—about 5–100/100,000; femoral neck fractures are about twice as common as intertrochanteric fractures.
Etiology	Accidents and falls (may be 2° TIA, stroke, MI, dysrhythmia); pathological fracture; multiple trauma (younger patients); stress fracture
Associated conditions	Numerous serious medical conditions often present in elderly; senile dementia; multiple trauma often

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures (p. 1083).

Suggested Readings

1. Kearns RJ, Moss L, Kinsella J: A comparison of clinical practice guidelines for proximal femoral fracture. *Anaesthesia* 2013; 68(2):159–66.
2. Moja L, Piatti A, Pecoraro V, et al: Timing matters in hip fracture surgery: patients operated within 48 hours have better outcomes. A meta-analysis and meta-regression of over 190,000 patients. *PLoS One* 2012; 7(10):e46175.
3. Palmer JS, Huber CP: Operative management of hip fractures: a review of the NICE guidelines. *Br J Hosp Med (Lond)* 2012; 73(9):C141–44.
4. Pivec R, Johnson AJ, Mears SC, Mont MA: Hip arthroplasty. *Lancet* 2012; 380(9855):1768–77.

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF DISTAL FEMUR FRACTURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: ORIF of the distal femur fracture involves a longitudinal incision along the femoral shaft, obtaining reduction by direct visualization of the fracture fragments, and applying plates and screws along the femur for rigid internal fixation. An iliac crest bone graft may be necessary. Some intramedullary devices are also available for fixation of these fractures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture of the distal femur; nonunion/malunion of the distal femur; degenerative arthritis of knee, with deformity

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine. Patient usually arrives at OR in balanced traction if fracture is acute.
Incision	Anterior knee, lateral or medial thigh along the femoral shaft
Special instrumentation	Special plates, screws, rods, reduction clamps; radiolucent table; intraop blood salvage
Unique considerations	Usually requires intraop radiographs; tourniquet.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	3 h (or more, depending on difficulty)
EBL	750 mL or more
Postop care	Multiple-trauma victim → ICU; others → PACU
Mortality	~3–4%, depending on the extent of multiple trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Nonunion: 4–33% Malunion: 4–31% Infection, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis; closed/open: Grade I: 1–5% Grade II: 5–20% Grade III: > 20% Delayed union: 0–17% Vascular complications: 2–3% Neurological deficit to peripheral nerves, peroneal nerve: ~3% Compartment syndrome: Rare Hypotension: Rare Leg-length discrepancy: Rare Respiratory distress and fat embolism: Rare
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age; predominance of males < 40 yr (trauma); degenerative arthritis of knee < 60 yr. Special rare case is elderly patient with a supracondylar fracture above a total knee replacement.
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Common in trauma center patients; rare in cases of degenerative arthritis of knee (osteotomy) or elderly patient with a supracondylar fracture above a total knee replacement.
Etiology	Motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents; falls; industrial injury; degenerative arthritis of knee
Associated conditions	Frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures (p. 1083).

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF THE FEMORAL SHAFT WITH PLATE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: ORIF of the femoral shaft involves obtaining a reduction by open means, usually through a longitudinal lateral incision along the length of the femur, and applying plates and screws along the femur to maintain the reduction. An iliac crest bone graft may be necessary.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture of femur

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Incision	Lateral thigh along length of femur ± iliac crest incision
Special instrumentation	Special plates, screws; reduction clamps; blood salvage device

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Unique considerations	Fracture or radiolucent table; I.I. Patient usually arrives at OR in balanced traction.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	3 h or more, depending on difficulty
EBL	750 mL; Cell Saver recommended.
Postop care	Multiple-trauma victims: ICU Others: PACU
Mortality	Dependent on extent of multiple trauma
Morbidity	Knee stiffness: 20–30% Delayed union, nonunion, malunion: 5–21% Leg-length discrepancy: 0–11% Failure of fixation: 5–10% Infection, osteomyelitis: < 5% Hypotension: Not uncommon Respiratory distress and fat embolism: Not uncommon, often subclinical Compartment syndrome: Rare Neurological deficit to peripheral nerves: Rare Vascular complications: Rare
Pain score	9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age, but predominance of males < 30 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	Motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents; falls; industrial injuries
Associated conditions	Frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures (p. 1083).

Suggested Readings

1. Nahm NJ, Vallier HA: Timing of definitive treatment of femoral shaft fractures in patients with multiple injuries: a systematic review of randomized and nonrandomized trials. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg* 2012; 73(5):1046–63.

INTRAMEDULLARY NAILING OF FEMORAL SHAFT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Intramedullary nailing of the femur is the standard procedure for fractures of the femoral shaft (Fig. 10.4-11). It is indicated for virtually any fracture, from the lesser trochanter to the distal femur, within 7 cm of the articular surface. The procedure also is used for the treatment of nonunions and malunions of the femoral shaft. Typically, the nail is placed in an anterograde fashion from proximal to distal. There are, however, indications in which

the nail is inserted in a retrograde fashion from distal to proximal (e.g., bilateral femur fractures; ipsilateral femur and tibia fractures; distal femur fractures; and multiple-trauma, obese, and pregnant patients). Early fixation of femoral shaft fractures in severe polytrauma has several benefits. The advantages of early fixation of long bones include improved pain control, early mobilization, improved pulmonary function, and decreased morbidity and mortality.

Femoral nails are inserted after reaming the intramedullary canal, which allows a larger diameter implant and improves the mechanical properties of the bone implant interface. Reaming may produce systemic effects by embolic showering of medullary contents to the pulmonary vasculature, a phenomenon that has been documented by TEE. This situation may be exacerbated in the polytrauma patient with pulmonary injury and may produce posttraumatic pulmonary failure. Patients with femur fractures may have associated injuries.

Patients may arrive from the ICU in skeletal traction or from the emergency department, especially in the case of an open fracture. Hemorrhage up to 1 L may be contained in the thigh following a femur fracture; therefore, patients may be hypovolemic at the start of the procedure. Because the procedure is essentially percutaneous, apparent blood loss may be underestimated because of the hemorrhaged blood contained in the thigh.

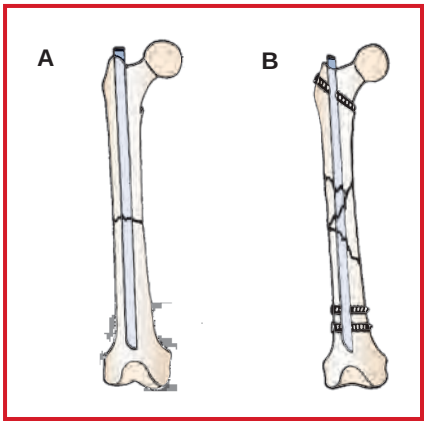


Figure 10.4-11. **A:** Simple and **B:** locked intramedullary fixation of femoral shaft. (Reproduced with permission from Hardy JD: *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1988.)

The patient is placed in the supine or lateral decubitus position on either a radiolucent table or a fracture table. Antegrade insertion of the nail requires a lateral incision several cm in length proximal to the greater trochanter. The hip abductors are split, and portal into the femoral canal is created in the piriformis fossa. The femoral canal is reamed over a guide wire. The intramedullary nail is then inserted into the intramedullary canal with gentle taps, using a hammer.

Retrograde insertion of the nail is performed through an incision several cm long over the anterior aspect of the knee. The knee joint is entered and the portal to the intramedullary canal is made in the non-weight-bearing portion of the intercondylar notch. The nail is inserted in the same fashion as the anterior nail. Cross-locking screws are commonly used, and they are inserted through the rod.

Variant procedure or approaches: The application of femoral nailing has been expanded to treat nonunions, malunions, posttraumatic deformities of the femur, and leg-length differences. Specialized additional equipment, such as an intramedullary saw or an external fixator, may be required for these procedures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Femur fracture; nonunion/malunion of the femur; leg-length discrepancy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Incision	Proximal lateral thigh or anterior knee
Special instrumentation	Intramedullary nails; intramedullary saw for closed femoral shortening of femur; fracture or radiolucent table; I.I.
Unique considerations	Patient may have multiple traumas with other associated injuries. Procedure is heavily dependent on I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	2–3 h; 3+ h for nonunion/malunion of femur or closed femoral shortening of femur
EBL	250–500 mL; ≥ 750 mL for nonunion/malunion of femur or closed femoral shortening of femur (Cell Saver recommended).
Postop care	If surgery performed acutely, patient is usually a multiple-trauma victim with numerous injuries and extensive blood loss; usually goes to ICU.
Mortality	Dependent on extent of trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	Respiratory distress and fat embolism: 10% Malunion: 5–10% Infection, osteomyelitis: Open technique: 1–10% Closed technique: 0–1% Neurological deficit to peripheral nerves: 2% Vascular complications: ~2% (up to 15% have occult vascular abnormalities) Delayed union: 1% Nonunion: 1% Hypotension: Common in multiple-trauma situations Knee stiffness: Common Leg-length discrepancies: Not uncommon Compartment syndrome: Rare Failure of fixation: Rare
Pain score	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age, but predominance of males < 30 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Very common
Etiology	Motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents (60–80%); falls (5–10%); industrial injuries (5–10%); previous trauma (rare)
Associated conditions	Frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures (p. 1083).

Suggested Readings

1. Rhorer AS: Percutaneous/minimally invasive techniques in treatment of femoral shaft fractures with an intramedullary nail. *J Orthop Trauma* 2009; 23(5 Suppl):S2–5.
2. Ricci WM, Gallagher B, Haidukewych GJ: Intramedullary nailing of femoral shaft fractures: current concepts. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2009; 17(5):296–305.

REPAIR OF NONUNION/MALUNION OF PROXIMAL THIRD OF FEMUR, PROXIMAL FEMORAL OSTEOTOMY FOR OSTEOARTHRITIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Operations for nonunion/malunion of the proximal femur entail realigning the bones with a femoral osteotomy (as necessary); stabilizing the reduction with internal fixation (using a nail/plate-nail/rod device); and supplementing this with a bone graft. In young patients (< 50 yr) in whom early osteoarthritis of the hip spares some of the cartilage, the hip may be realigned with **proximal femoral osteotomy.** This entails cutting the bone at the level of the lesser trochanter, realigning the hip, and stabilizing the osteotomy with internal fixation.

Variant procedure or approaches: Osteotomy of proximal 1/3 of femur for degenerative arthritis of hip

Usual preop diagnosis: Nonunion/malunion of proximal 1/3 of femur; early degenerative arthritis of hip

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Repair Nonunion/Malunion	Proximal Femoral Osteotomy
Position	Supine or lateral decubitus	⇐
Incision	Proximal lateral thigh	⇐
Special instrumentation	Plates, screws; reduction clamps; occasionally, an intramedullary device. Cell Saver recommended. Some surgeons use fracture or radiolucent table with I.I.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)	⇐
Surgical time	2 h for bone grafting alone; 3 h or more if difficult malunion	3 h
EBL	500–750 mL or more	500 mL +
Mortality	Rare: < 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Leg-length discrepancy: Common Technical complications/fixation failure: 1–5% Superficial, deep infection/osteomyelitis: 1% Malunion: Not uncommon Compartment syndrome: Rare Neurological deficit to peripheral nerves: Rare Vascular complications: Rare	– ⇐ ⇐ – ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Progressive pain/arthritis (by 5–10 yr): 40–50% Delayed union: 5–10% Nonunion: 1–5%
Pain score	8	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐
Incidence	Rare	⇐
Etiology	Previous surgery (rare); previous trauma (rare)	Early degenerative arthritis of the hip (not uncommon)
Associated conditions	May accompany multiple traumas	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures (p. 1083).

CLOSED REDUCTION AND EXTERNAL FIXATION OF FEMUR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure entails manipulating the femur to obtain an acceptable reduction by closed or limited-open means, then applying an external fixation device to maintain the reduction. The pins for the external fixator are inserted percutaneously or through small incisions. This method of treatment may be used for severe open fractures (e.g., grade III) with extensive bone and soft-tissue injury.

Usual preop diagnosis: Displaced, open fracture of the femur

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine or lateral
Incision	Done percutaneously or through small incisions
Special instrumentation	External fixation device of surgeon's choice; radiolucent table with I.I.
Unique considerations	Fracture is usually an open, extremely comminuted fracture in a multiple-trauma patient.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	1 h
EBL	Operative blood loss usually 100–200 mL; however, blood loss may be extensive before surgery.
Postop care	Multiple-trauma victims → ICU; others → PACU
Mortality	Dependent on extent of trauma
Morbidity	Refracture: 2–12% Hypotension 2° blood loss and other injuries: Common Stiffness of knee: Common Delayed union, nonunion, malunion: More common in comminuted, open fractures Leg-length discrepancy: More common in severely comminuted fractures Osteomyelitis: More common in open fractures Respiratory distress: More common in multiple-trauma situations Amputation: Rare Compartment syndrome: Rare Neurological deficit to peripheral nerves: Rare Vascular complications: Rare
Pain score	9–10 (due to extensive open fracture)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age, but predominance of males < 30 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents; falls; industrial injury
Associated conditions	Frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems, including head and neck, chest, abdomen, and extremities; these will often be treated simultaneously with the femur fracture.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures (p. 1083).

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Hip Fractures, Types and Fixation – Everything you Need to Know – Dr. Ebraheim: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6wok5JGEpTQ

Hip Replacement Surgery: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BYwVaKkRdF4

Femoral Shaft Fracture Intramedullary Nailing: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vOCf8MhnQBs

Ultrasound-Guided Femoral Nerve Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5ht_N8j2KL8

Ultrasound-Guided Subgluteal Sciatic Nerve Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rl8rZOEMveE

CHAPTER

10.5 Knee Surgery

SURGEONS

James I. Huddleston, MD
John J. Csongradi, MD
Stuart B. Goodman, MD, PhD, FRCSC, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Frederick G. Mihm, MD
Pedro P. Tanaka, MD

ARTHROPLASTY OF THE KNEE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In this procedure, an arthrotomy of the knee joint is performed, and metallic and plastic components are used for replacement of the knee joint surfaces (**total knee replacement**). The femur, patella, and tibia are exposed; cartilage and minimal bone are excised with a saw. The new components may be cemented or uncemented. Alternatively, arthroplasty may be performed on only one compartment of the knee (i.e., medial/lateral **unicompartmental knee replacement**). In **revision procedures,** one or more components of the old joint are removed, and new components are placed. In **resection or excision arthroplasty** of the knee (usually for infection of the prosthesis), the components are removed, but not replaced.

Usual preop diagnosis: Arthritis of knee; arthrosis of knee; loose (or malpositioned) knee prosthesis; infected knee

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Knee Replacement	Revision	Resection/ Excision
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Anterior or anteromedial over patella	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Appropriate prostheses and instrumentation	Special instruments for excising cement	⇐
Unique considerations	± Tourniquet; ± SCD	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	3–4 h or more	3 h
Closing considerations	In infected or complex revision cases (rare), a local or free flap is required.	⇐	⇐
EBL	300–500 mL	500–1000 mL	⇐
Postop care	Bulky dressing or splint; continuous passive motion (CPM) may begin in the PACU or ward	⇐	Splint/cast
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	DVT, without prophylaxis: 50–75%	⇐	⇐
	DVT, with prophylaxis (e.g., low-molecular-weight heparin, coumadin, SCD, antiembolism stockings): 2–3%	⇐	⇐
	Postop subluxation/dislocation of patella: 20%	> 30%	–
	Superficial wound necrosis: 10–15%	> 10–15%	≥ 10–15%
	Wound infection: Primary rheumatoid or psoriatic arthritis, diabetes: 5–10%	> 5–10%	Rare
	Primary osteoarthritis (OA): 1%		
	PE: 1–7%	⇐	⇐
	Postop subluxation/dislocation of knee joint: 1–6%	≥ 1–6%	–
	Late aseptic loosening requiring revision after ~10 yr: 5%	–	–
	Peroneal nerve injury: 1–5%	> 1–5% (more common in difficult revisions)	1–5%
	Urinary retention requiring catheterization: Common	–	–

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Knee Replacement	Revision	Resection/ Excision
Morbidity (cont.)	Hematoma requiring reoperation: Rare	–	–
	Hypotension	–	–
	Knee stiffness	–	–
	Intraoperative fracture: Rare	⇐	⇐
	Wound dehiscence: Rare	–	–
	Fat embolism: Rare	–	–
	Vascular injury to popliteal vessels: Rare	–	–
Pain score	7	8	9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Generally, > 60 yr. Arthritis of the knee (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis or juvenile rheumatoid arthritis); hemophilia, ≥ 18 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common (~400,000/yr in the United States)
Etiology	Arthrosis of the knee (degenerative joint disease [DJD] or OA); seropositive or seronegative arthritis; traumatic arthritis; hemophiliac arthropathy of the knee
Associated conditions	Dependent on primary condition (e.g., osteoarthritis)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

Suggested Readings

1. Barrack RL: Current guidelines for total joint VTE prophylaxis: dawn of a new day. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):3–7.
2. Ganapathy S: Wound/intra-articular infiltration or peripheral nerve blocks for orthopedic joint surgery: efficacy and safety issues. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2012; 25(5):615–20.
3. Higuera CA, Deirmengian C: The new technologies in knee arthroplasty. *J Clin Rheumatol* 2012; 18(7):345–8.
4. Johnson RL, Kopp SL, Hebl JR, Erwin PJ, Mantilla CB: Falls and major orthopaedic surgery with peripheral nerve blockade: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth* 2013; 110(4):518–28.
5. Kuper M, Rosenstein A: Infection prevention in total knee and total hip arthroplasties. *Am J Orthop* 2008; 37(1):E2–5.
6. NIH Consensus Statement on total knee replacement. *NIH Consens State Sci Statements* 2003; 20(1):1–34.
7. Watts CD, Pagnano MW: Minimising blood loss and transfusion in contemporary hip and knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):8–10.

ARTHRODESIS OF THE KNEE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In this procedure, the femur is fused to the tibia, obliterating the knee joint. Through a midline incision and anterior or median parapatellar arthrotomy, the cartilage surface and a small amount of bone are excised. The cut ends are opposed and aligned in 0–20° of flexion and 5–10% of valgus. The bones are stabilized with plates, screws, an intramedullary rod, or an external fixator.

Usual preop diagnosis: Arthritis or other arthrosis of the knee; previous septic arthritis of the knee; failed or infected knee arthroplasty

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Usually supine
Incision	Anterior midline over knee
Special instrumentation	External fixator; internal fixation with plates and screws or intramedullary nail
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs or I.I.; tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	3 h (+ 1 h, if necessary, to excise total knee arthroplasty)
Closing considerations	Cast or splint while anesthetized
EBL	< 100 mL, if tourniquet and local fixation used. 500–1000 mL, if no tourniquet used, or if intramedullary procedures are used.
Mortality	Rare, but depends primarily on age and medical condition of patient.
Morbidity	Thromboembolism ≥ incidence following total knee replacement: DVT (without prophylaxis): 50–75% DVT (if prophylaxis used): 10–20% PE (if no prophylaxis; reduced if anticoagulation or SCDs used): 1–7% Failure of fusion (nonunion), malunion: 10% After failed knee replacement: 19–44% With Charcot joint: as high as 50% Pin tract infection: ≥ 1–10% Wound infection: 5% Deep infection and osteomyelitis Urinary retention requiring catheterization, UTI: Common Breakage or failure of internal or external fixation: Rare Fat embolism: Rare GI bleed, MI: Rare Hematoma: Rare Hypotension: Rare Intraop femoral or tibial fracture: Rare Neurological injury, usually popliteal nerve or peroneal nerve: Rare Superficial wound necrosis and wound dehiscence: Rare Vascular injury to popliteal vessels: Rare Amputation: Extremely rare (usually 2° acute arterial occlusion or uncontrollable local sepsis)
Pain score	9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Failed or infected total knee replacement (probably most common etiology); trauma to knee—unreconstructable, intraarticular fractures; total unstable knee or failed ligament repairs with severe DJD in a young patient

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

Suggested Reading

1. Somayaji HS, Tsaggerides P, Ware HE, Dowd GS: Knee arthrodesis—a review. *Knee* 2008; 15(4):247–54.

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF PATELLAR FRACTURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In ORIF of patellar fractures, a short incision over the patella is used to perform a reduction by direct visualization of the fracture fragments of the patella. Because this is generally an intraarticular fracture, the fragments should be reduced precisely. The torn quadriceps retinaculum is also repaired. Part or all of the patella may be excised; pins, wires, and/or screws are normally used to fix the patellar fragments together internally. Thereafter, the knee is casted, or early motion of the knee is started.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture of patella; severe degenerative arthritis of patellofemoral joint

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior over patella
Special instrumentation	Wire, pins, screws as necessary
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs may be obtained; tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 24 h (vancomycin or clindamycin for 24 h if penicillin allergic)
Surgical time	1.5–2 h
Closing considerations	Splint or cast usually applied.
EBL	< 100 mL
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Late degenerative arthritis of patellofemoral joint: ~50–60% DVT: ~5% Wound infection, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis: ~5% Delayed union, nonunion, malunion: ~2–5% Knee stiffness: Common Weakness: Common Avascular necrosis: Rare Complex regional pain syndrome: Rare Following patellectomy—quadriceps strength: ~75% of normal
Pain score	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age; frequently seen in young, active, healthy adults.
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~1% of all skeletal injuries
Etiology	Trauma: falls (60%); motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents (25–35%); industrial injury (6%); degenerative arthritis of patellofemoral joint (rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

Suggested Readings

1. Callaghan JJ, O'rourke MR, Saleh KJ. Why knees fail: lessons learned. *J Arthroplasty* 2004; 19(4 Suppl 1):31–4.
2. Dy CL, Little MT, Berkes MB, et al: Meta-analysis of re-operation, nonunion, and infection after open reduction and internal fixation of patella fractures. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg* 2012; 73(4):928–32.
3. Melvin JS, Mehta S: Patellar fractures in adults. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2011; 19(4):198–207.

REPAIR OR RECONSTRUCTION OF KNEE LIGAMENTS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Collateral ligaments usually are repaired by direct suture or by stapling the torn ligaments to bone. Cruciate tears are generally repaired only if bone is avulsed at one end of the ligament, again with direct suture, staples, or screws. For collateral ligament repair, a longitudinal incision is made directly over the ligament medially or laterally. The ligament is exposed by deep dissection and elevation of skin flaps. The torn ligament is repaired by direct suture or by fixing it to bone with a screw or staple. Following closure, the knee is immobilized with a long leg splint or cast. Cruciate ligaments are repaired in similar fashion, except for the approaches: medial parapatellar (with anterior arthrotomy) for the anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) and posteromedial (with posterior arthrotomy) for the posterior cruciate ligament (PCL). Cruciate ligament reconstruction is performed for instability 2° intrasubstance tears of these ligaments. Homografts, such as a portion of the patellar tendon or semitendinosus tendon, normally are used, but allografts or synthetics also are available. (The ligaments of the knee are illustrated in Figs. 10.5-1 and 10.5-2.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma

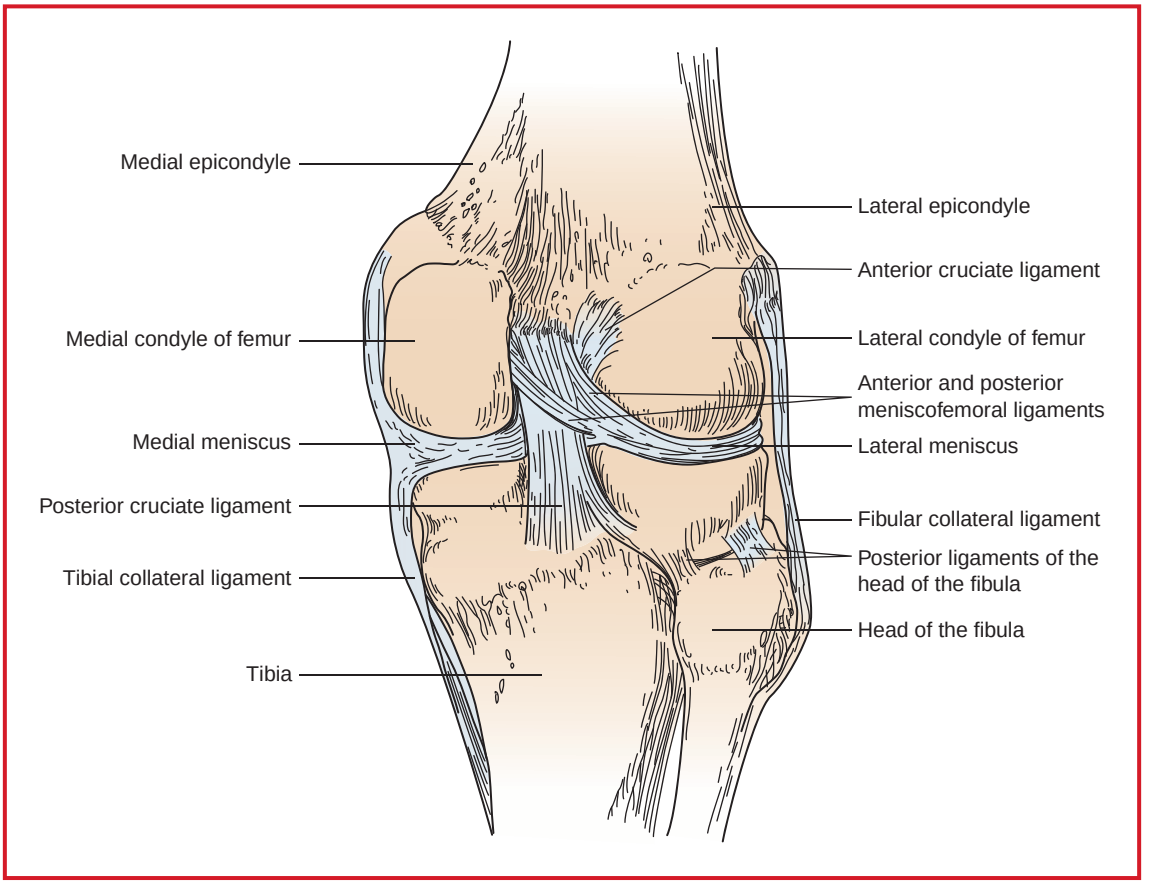


Figure 10.5-1. The cruciate ligaments (posterior view). (Reused with permission from Clemente CD. *Clemente's Dissector*, 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 2007, 270.)

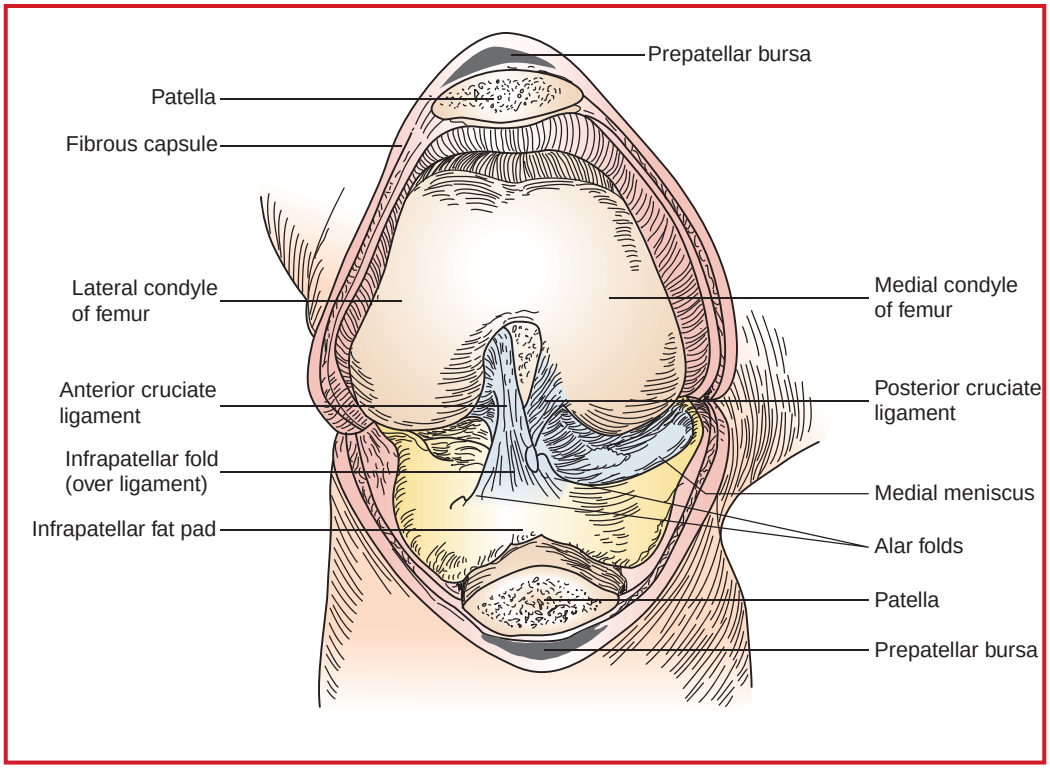


Figure 10.5-2. The knee joint opened anteriorly. (Reused with permission from Clemente CD. *Clemente's Dissector*, 2nd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore: 2007, 269.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Repair or Collateral Reconstruction	Repair or Cruciate Reconstruction
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Over collateral ligament	Anterior and lateral ACL or medial PCL
Special instrumentation	Staples	Drill guides, staples, screws
Unique considerations	Often arthroscopically assisted; tourniquet	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (vancomycin or clindamycin if penicillin allergic)	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Splint or cast while anesthetized	⇐
EBL	100 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room or home	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: < 1%	⇐
	Thrombophlebitis: < 5%	⇐
Pain score	4	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Young adult
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma: 100%

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

Suggested Readings

1. Dwyer T, Whelan D: Anatomical considerations in multiligament knee injury and surgery. *J Knee Surg* 2012; 25(4):263–74.
2. McCulloch PC, Lattermann C, Boland AL, et al: An illustrated history of anterior cruciate ligament surgery. *J Knee Surg* 2007; 20(2):95–104.
3. Siegel L, Vandenakker-Albanese C, Siegel D: Anterior cruciate ligament injuries: anatomy, physiology, biomechanics, and management. *Clin J Sport Med* 2012; 22(4):349–55.
4. Tjoumakaris FP, Herz-Brown AL, Bowers AL, Sennett BJ, Bernstein J: Complications in brief: anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2012; 470(2):630–6.

PATELLAR REALIGNMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The goal of this procedure is prevention of chronic subluxation or dislocation of the patella. Soft-tissue components of the surgery include incision (release) of the lateral patellar retinaculum and reefing or tightening of the medial retinaculum (Fig. 10.5-3). In cases of severe malalignment of the extensor mechanism, the insertion of

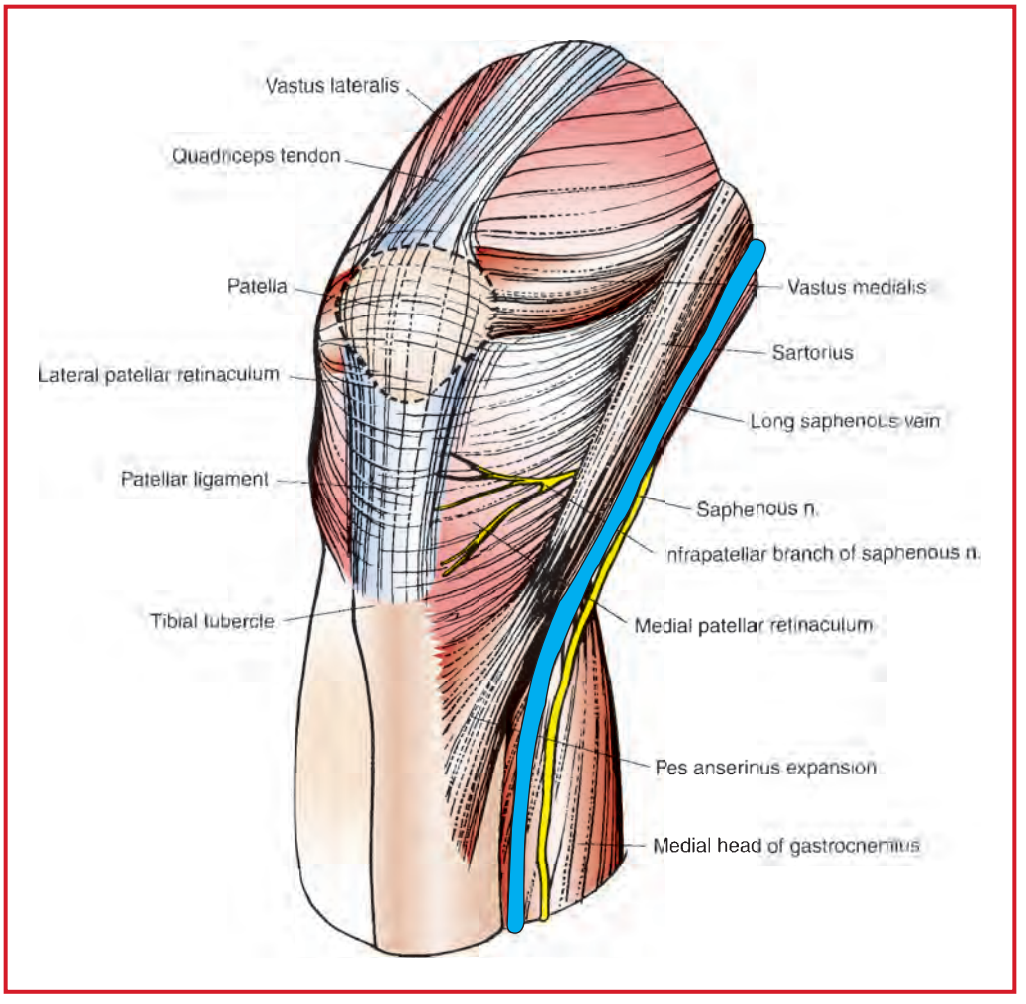


Figure 10.5-3. Outer layer of anteromedial aspect of the knee joint. Shows anatomy of the patellar retinaculum. (Reproduced with permission from Hoppenfeld S, deBoer P: *Surgical Exposures in Orthopaedics: The Anatomic Approach.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 1994.)

the patellar tendon may be moved to a new, more medial location (**tibial tubercle transfer**). In this procedure, the tibial tubercle generally is detached with a saw or osteotomes, leaving a bone pedicle attached distally. The tubercle is then rotated medially on the pedicle and fixed in its new position with a screw. Many surgeons routinely perform an **anterior compartment fasciotomy** to prevent postop compartment syndrome.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic patellar subluxation or dislocation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Patellar Realignment	Tibial Tubercle Transfer
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Anteromedial or anterolateral to knee	⇐
Special instrumentation	None	Screws or staples
Unique considerations	Tourniquet	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (vancomycin or clindamycin if penicillin allergic)	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	1.5 h
Closing considerations	None	Splint or cast while anesthetized
EBL	50 mL	100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room or home	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Hemarthrosis: 100% Redislocation: 20% Thrombophlebitis: 10–20% Compartment syndrome: < 1% Infection: < 1%	5% 25% ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually young adult
Male:Female	1:2
Etiology	Trauma (70%); congenital (30%)
Associated conditions	Patellofemoral dysplasia (60–70%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

Suggested Readings

1. Colvin AC, West RV: Patellar instability. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2008; 90(12):2751–62.
2. Feller JA: Distal realignment (tibial tuberosity transfer). *Sports Med Arthrosc* 2012; 20(3):152–61.

ARTHROSCOPY OF THE KNEE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Knee arthroscopy** is used to diagnose and treat intraarticular problems, most commonly torn meniscus, but the procedure is also used for ligament injuries (Figs. 10.5-1 and 10.5-2), osteochondral fractures, loose bodies, arthritis, and infections. In knee arthroscopy, multiple portals or entry points for the arthroscope and instruments generally are used. The most common portals are anteromedial and anterolateral adjacent to the patellar ligament. Other portals may be suprapatellar, parapatellar, and posterior. Portals are made by making a stab wound with a knife and then entering the joint with a combination of sharp and blunt trochars. A diagnostic inspection from one of the anterior portals is normally performed at the outset. A second portal is used with a nerve hook to manipulate intraarticular tissues. If resection or repair is performed, the appropriate instruments are inserted through one of the portals. Meniscus repair and cruciate reconstruction may require separate longitudinal incisions, which are usually posteromedial or posterolateral, for placement of sutures and/or drill holes.

Meniscectomy and/or **debridement** often are performed in conjunction with arthroscopy. **Cruciate ligament reconstruction** usually is performed with arthroscopic assistance. At the end of the procedure, the knee joint is copiously irrigated with NS or LR solution through one of the portals. Portals are closed with a single suture and Steri-Strips®; compression bandages are applied; and often a knee immobilizer is used.

Usual preop diagnosis: Torn meniscus; cruciate ligament tear; arthritis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Arthroscopy	Meniscectomy/Debridement	Cruciate Reconstruction
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	3–4.5 cm portals	⇐	⇐ + anterior midline and lateral
Special instrumentation	Arthroscopic video system; small biters and graspers	⇐ + shaver	⇐ + drill guides and drills; fixation screws
Unique considerations	Thigh holder; foot of table 90°; ± tourniquet	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (vancomycin or clindamycin if penicillin allergic)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	0.5 h	1–2 h	2–3 h
Closing considerations	No splint; local anesthetic injected	⇐	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐	50 mL
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐	⇐ or overnight
Mortality	< 0.1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Hemarthrosis: 5–20% Thrombophlebitis: < 2% Infection: 0.1% Stiffness: < 0.1%	5% ⇐ ⇐ < 4%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3	4	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	10–70 yr (usually 20–40 yr)
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	The most common arthroscopic procedure (85% of total)
Etiology	Trauma (~85%); arthritis (~10%); infection (~5%)
Associated conditions	Usually healthy; systemic arthritis (< 5%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

Suggested Readings

1. Gwathmey FW Jr, Golish SB, Diduch DR: Complications in brief: meniscus repair. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2012; 470(7): 2059–66.
2. Minas T: A primer in cartilage repair. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):141–6.
3. Silvis ML, Clinch CR, Tillett JS, et al: Clinical inquiries. What is the best way to evaluate an acute traumatic knee injury? *J Fam Pract* 2008; 57(2):116–8.

KNEE ARTHROTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Arthrotomy** of the knee is the opening of the joint for drainage, excision of intraarticular tissue (synovium, meniscus, loose bodies), ligament repair/reconstruction, or fracture fixation. The knee generally is opened with a parapatellar incision, either medial or lateral, and the joint capsule is incised just adjacent to the patella. After the intraarticular pathology is addressed, a tight capsular closure is performed, followed by subcutaneous tissue and skin closure.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Arthrotomy with debridement** may be used for infection or arthropathy which produces debris. In both cases, **synovectomy** may be necessary.

Usual preop diagnosis: Infection; trauma (fracture, sprain, torn meniscus); arthritis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES			
	Arthrotomy	**Arthrotomy with Debridement**	**Arthrotomy with Synovectomy**
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Medial or lateral parapatellar	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (vancomycin or clindamycin if penicillin allergic)	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Arthrotomy	Arthrotomy with Debridement	Arthrotomy with Synovectomy
Surgical time	1 h	2 h	2 h
Closing considerations	Compressive dressing; may be splinted; suction drain	⇐	⇐
EBL	100 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Hemarthrosis: 100% Degenerative arthritis: 5–20% Stiffness: 5% Thrombophlebitis: 5% Infection: 1 %	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 10%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 20%
Pain score	7	7	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Infant–elderly (usually young adult)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Infection; trauma; arthritis
Associated conditions	Inflammatory arthritis (20%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Knee Procedures (p. 1049).

REPAIR OF TENDONS—KNEE AND LEG

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Acute ruptures of tendons in the lower limb are repaired by **direct suture** and sometimes reinforced with part of another tendon. At the knee, patellar tendon ruptures are most common; at the ankle, Achilles tendon ruptures are most common. A longitudinal incision generally is made directly over the tendon. The tendon sheath is opened, and tendon ends reapproximated with a nonabsorbable tendon stitch. If necessary, the repair may be augmented by synthetic tape or fascia or protected with a wire that takes tension off the repair. The tendon sheath is closed separately from the skin incision, and a cast or splint is applied. **Achilles tendon repair** and **posterior tibial tendon repair** require different positioning. For an Achilles tendon repair, the patient is placed prone, and a longitudinal incision is made just medial to the tendon, spanning the rupture. The tendon sheath is incised and carefully protected. Torn ends of the tendon are approximated with multiple tendon stitches and may be protected with a fascial flap developed from the gastrocnemius fascia. The tendon sheath is closed carefully, followed by skin wound closure. A splint or cast is applied with the foot in equinus (plantar flexion).

Usual preop diagnosis: Tendon rupture

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Posterior Tendon Repair	Achilles Tendon Repair
Position	Supine	Prone
Incision	Over tendon	⇐
Special instrumentation	Wire or synthetic tape for augmentation	⇐
Unique considerations	Tourniquet	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv (vancomycin or clindamycin if penicillin allergic)	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Splint or cast while anesthetized	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room or home	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Weakness: ~10% Wound slough: 5% Adhesions: < 1% Infection: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Rerupture: 5–10%
Pain score	3	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Trauma (90%); chronic tendinitis (10%)
Associated conditions	Obesity; diabetes mellitus (DM); inflammatory arthritis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR KNEE PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: arthroplasty; arthrodesis; ORIF of patellar fractures; repair/reconstruction of ligaments; patellar realignment; arthroscopy; arthrotomy; tendon repair—knee and leg)

PREOPERATIVE

Trauma and osteoarthritis (OA) are the most common indications for these procedures. Trauma patients (e.g., those with sports injuries) are often young and healthy, whereas arthritic patients are often elderly, and anesthetic management must be tailored to any concurrent disease. Patients with rheumatoid and other inflammatory arthritides form another group of candidates for these procedures; the special anesthetic considerations for these patients are described in Anesthetic Considerations for Hip Procedures, p. 1023. A final group of patients undergoing these

procedures are hemophiliacs, who develop arthritis from recurrent bleeding into their joints. The hematologic management of these patients is discussed below.

Respiratory	These patients often have **rheumatoid arthritis** and associated pulmonary conditions. For example, pulmonary effusions are common. Limited respiratory reserve warrants further evaluation. Pulmonary fibrosis (rare) often manifests as a cough and dyspnea. Rheumatoid arthritis involving the cricoarytenoid joints may manifest as hoarseness, glottic narrowing, and difficult intubation. Arthritic involvement of the TMJ and cervical spine may further complicate airway management. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	The severity of the arthritis often limits exercise and makes assessment of cardiovascular status difficult. Dobutamine stress ECHO, and dipyridamole thallium imaging may be necessary for an adequate cardiac evaluation. Rheumatoid arthritis is associated with pericardial effusion, cardiac valve fibrosis, cardiac conduction abnormalities and aortic regurgitation (AR). **Tests:** ECG and others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	In arthritic patients, a thorough preop neurological exam often yields evidence of cervical nerve root compression. After the stability of the neck has been established, the full range of neck motion should be evaluated for evidence of nerve compression or cerebral ischemia (suggesting vertebral artery compression). Consider preop lateral neck films to determine stability of atlantooccipital joint and evidence of vertebral spurs that may interfere with intubation. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Musculoskeletal	Pain and ↓ joint mobility may make positioning and regional anesthesia difficult in this patient population.
Hematologic	**Hemophiliacs** require restoration of clotting factors preop. Administer 1 U of factor concentrate/kg body weight for each 2% increase necessary to achieve clotting factor activity of 40% normal. FFP contains l U/mL and cryoprecipitate 20 U/mL. Hemophilia B (Factor IX deficiency), but not hemophilia A (Factor VIII deficiency), can be treated with prothrombin complex concentrate; however, these products can activate clotting factors and → DIC. Approximately 10% of hemophiliacs develop antibodies to exogenous clotting factors, and the care of these patients should be guided by a hematologist. **Tests:** Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1). Preop patellar pain is treated effectively with a femoral nerve block at the inguinal ligament, using 10 mL of lidocaine 1.5% with epinephrine 1:200,000. Consider preemptive analgesia with: gabapentin 600 mg po, celecoxib (Celebrex®) 200 mg po, and acetaminophen 1 g po/iv to be given in the preop holding area.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: For many of these patients, regional anesthesia may be the preferred technique, offering the advantages of ↓ blood loss, ↓ DVT, minimal respiratory impairment, and effective postop analgesia. Patients with rheumatoid arthritis rarely have involvement of the lumbar spine. Because rheumatoid arthritis frequently affects the C-spine, however, these patients may have limited range of neck motion, an unstable atlantooccipital joint, and cricoarytenoid and TMJ arthritis. Careful airway evaluation, therefore, is important to determine the appropriateness of special intubation techniques (e.g., fiberoptic).

Regional anesthesia: A continuous peripheral nerve block (CPNB) provides similar effect on postop length of hospital stay and rehabilitation compared to an epidural pain management but has a lower incidence of side effects (urinary retention, hypotension, and dysesthesia). A combined femoral and sciatic nerve block provides superior pain control in the first 36 postoperative hours over a single, femoral nerve block. In addition to the nerve block, either a GA or an SAB is needed for the intraoperative phase because a CPNB does not reliably provide surgical anesthesia. Both nerves can be localized conventionally using a nerve stimulator or with ultrasound guidance. A typical initial local anesthesia dose for each nerve is 20 mL of 0.5% bupivacaine or 0.75% ropivacaine. As an alternative, a continuous adductor canal (lower femoral nerve) block can be used to provide minimal motor blockade while maintaining

good analgesia. A bolus of 30 mL of 0.5% ropivacaine with epinephrine 1:200,000 is used, and a continuous infusion (0.2% at 10 mL/h) started in the recovery room. There are emerging data supporting the safe and efficacious use of adductor canal blocks/indwelling catheters and local infiltration of analgesics in total knee arthroplasty. Currently this is our preferred approach, in combination with a general anesthetic, for total knee arthroplasty.

An epidural block provides both intraop surgical anesthesia and postop pain control but it is contraindicated in patients receiving Coumadin postop. If the patient prefers not to receive a peripheral nerve or an epidural block, a subarachnoid block provides a useful alternative regional anesthesia technique, depending on the patient population (e.g., younger patients may be at ↑ risk of spinal headache following SAB). Anesthesia extending from S2 to T12 (T8, if tourniquet is used) is adequate for knee surgery. Full motor blockade is essential for fixation of the patella or placement of the joint prosthesis and assessment of the passive ROM of the prosthesis. Typical drugs and doses include: subarachnoid—12.5–15 mg of 0.75% bupivacaine with morphine 0.2 mg; epidural—15–20 mL 2% lidocaine with epinephrine 1:200,000 in divided doses.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate for patients with normal airways.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Neuromuscular relaxation facilitates the placement of the prosthesis. Hemophiliacs will require infusion of clotting factors. For hemophilia A and von Willebrand's disease, 1.5 U/kg/h; for hemophilia B, 0.75 U/kg/h. Maintain normothermia (forced air blanket), and use fluid warmer.	
Emergence	The tourniquet is deflated around the time of emergence. In patients with moderate-to-severe lung disease, controlled ventilation should be continued until after the lactic acid that has accumulated in the leg has been metabolized (3–5 min) because these patients may be unable to increase ventilation to buffer this acid load. Provide PONV prophylaxis with ondansetron 4 mg.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance during the case, and 5–10 mL/kg bolus prior to tourniquet deflation	A tourniquet blocks intraop blood loss. When it is deflated, prepare for a 1–2 U blood loss over the ensuing h; more if the posterior tibial artery has been damaged in the dissection. Avoid underresuscitation.
Control of blood loss	Tourniquet	Inflation pressure is typically 100 mm Hg + systolic pressure. Maximum tourniquet time is 2 h, followed by a 30 min reperfusion interval, if further tourniquet time is necessary.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± CVP line ± Arterial line	 A CVP line is indicated if monitoring the CVP trend is expected to affect anesthetic care. Additional monitoring (CVO_2Sat, PA cath, TEE) may be indicated in special cases.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	In rheumatoid arthritic patients, meticulous padding of the extremities is mandatory.
Complications	Posterior tibial artery trauma Peroneal nerve palsy	A 20% ↓ MAP is common on tourniquet deflation. Additional crystalloid (5–10 mL/kg) may be necessary to replace edema fluid and blood loss to the leg.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hemorrhage from the posterior tibial artery	✓ surgical drain output
	Peroneal nerve palsy → foot drop	Examine patient for evidence of neurologic dysfunction and notify surgeons as necessary.
	Tourniquet-related nerve injury	
	Posttourniquet syndrome (PTS)	PTS is a self-limiting condition in which the affected limb is edematous, pale, and weak.

Pain management	Neuraxial regimens:	
	• Epidural anesthesia	Epidural bupivacaine 0.0125% infused at 6–8 mL/h with hydromorphone 50 mcg/mL infused at 100–250 mcg/h provides good analgesia. Prior to removal of the epidural catheter a 0.2-mg bolus of hydromorphone may be given. Epidural catheters are typically removed on the morning of postop day 2. Low-molecular-weight heparin may be started 2 h after catheter removal.
	• SAB	Intrathecal morphine 0.2–0.3 mg provides analgesia for up to 24 h. May be administered along with bupivacaine for surgical anesthesia.
	Peripheral regimens:	
	• Single-shot peripheral nerve block (femoral or combined femoral/sciatic block)	These nerves may be blocked preop or postop as a pain rescue measure. A typical dose for each nerve is 20 mL of 0.5% bupivacaine or 30 mL of 0.5% ropivacaine.
	• CPNB	Continuous infusion of bupivacaine 0.125% through standard or portable infusion pumps at 6–10 mL/h. Anticoagulation may continue with a peripheral nerve catheter in place. Catheter is removed on POD#2 at the latest. Foley catheters are not required with peripheral nerve catheters.
	Systemic regimens:	Oral pain management with acetaminophen (1 g every 6 h if not contraindictated) should be continued immediately postop. Celecoxib (Celebrex®) 200 mg once a day. Oxycodone 5–20 mg po q 2 h PRN. Morphine 0.5–2 iv mg q 3 h PRN. Consider pain service consult as well as the use of controlled-release oxycodone (OxyContin®) and PCA with iv morphine or hydromorphone in opioid dependent patients, as an alternative to neuraxial blocks or to supplement peripheral nerve blocks.
Tests	Hct; other studies as indicated	Patients with coagulopathies require replacement therapy for 6–10 d.

Suggested Readings

1. Barrack RL: Current guidelines for total joint VTE prophylaxis: dawn of a new day. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):3–7.
2. Bono JV, Robbins CE, Mehio AK, Aghazadeh M, Talmo CT: Pharmacologic pain management before and after total joint replacement of the hip and knee. *Clin Geriatr Med* 2012; 28(3):459–70.
3. Fowler SJ, Symons J, Sabato S, et al: Epidural analgesia compared with peripheral nerve blockade after major knee surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Br J Anaesth* 2008; 100(2):154–64.
4. Ganapathy S: Wound/intra-articular infiltration or peripheral nerve blocks for orthopedic joint surgery: efficacy and safety issues. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2012; 25(5):615–20.
5. Gibbs DM, Green TP, Esler CN: The local infiltration of analgesia following total knee replacement: a review of current literature. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(9):1154–9.
6. Hebl J: Clinical pathways for total joint arthroplasty: essential components for success. *Refresher Course Lect Anesthesiol* 2012; 324:1–10.
7. Hebl JR, Dilger JA, Byer DE, et al: A pre-emptive multimodal pathway featuring peripheral nerve block improves perioperative outcomes after major orthopedic surgery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2008; 33(6):510–17.
8. Jæger P, Zaric D, Fomsgaard JS, et al: Adductor canal block versus femoral nerve block for analgesia after total knee arthroplasty: a randomized, double-blind study. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2013; 38(6):526–32.
9. Johnson RL, Kopp SL, Hebl JR, Erwin PJ, Mantilla CB: Falls and major orthopaedic surgery with peripheral nerve blockade: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth* 2013; 110(4):518–28.
10. Kuper M, Rosenstein A: Infection control in total knee and total hip arthroplasties. *Am J Orthop* 2008; 37(1):E2–5.
11. Mudumbai SC, Kim TE, Howard SK, et al: Continuous adductor canal blocks are superior to continuous femoral nerve blocks in promoting early ambulation after TKA. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2013. [Epub ahead of print].
12. Scuderi GR: Preoperative planning and perioperative management for minimally invasive total knee arthroplasty. *Am J Orthop* 2006; 35(7 Suppl):4–6.
13. Watts CD, Pagnano MW: Minimising blood loss and transfusion in contemporary hip and knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2012; 94(11 Suppl A):8–10.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Total Knee Replacement Surgery by Dr. Eric W. Janssen: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GRSWV57u9eg

Knee Arthroscopy: Portal Placement and Examination Course: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=thlpKv9XftA

Anterior Cruciate Ligament (ACL) Reconstruction Animation: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=q96M0jRqn7k

Knee Ligament Anatomy Animation: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RTV5Yo3E7VQ

Continous Adductor Canal (Saphenous Nerve) Block: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SDI0WVW3omY

Continuous Femoral Nerve Block: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IkfWm0XPTMo

CHAPTER

10.6 Lower Leg, Ankle, Foot, and Other Lower-Extremity Procedures

SURGEON

John J. Csongradi, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Frederick G. Mihm, MD
Pedro P. Tanaka, MD

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF THE TIBIAL PLATEAU FRACTURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **ORIF of the tibial plateau** or proximal tibia fracture involves making a longitudinal incision along the proximal leg, lateral to the knee, obtaining a reduction by direct visualization of the fracture fragments, and applying plates and screws along the tibia for rigid internal fixation. An iliac crest bone graft may be necessary. A **proximal tibial osteotomy** involves correcting malalignment (valgus and varus) of the lower extremity by excising a wedge of bone from the tibia and correcting the mechanical axis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tibial plateau or proximal tibial fracture; nonunion/malunion of the tibial plateau or proximal tibia; degenerative arthritis of the knee, with varus or valgus deformity

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	ORIF Tibial Plateau Fracture	Proximal Tibial Osteotomy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Lateral to knee, usually; medial, rarely	Transverse or lateral incision
Special instrumentation	Special plates, screws; reduction clamps; radiolucent table	⇐
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs or I.I.; tourniquet	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin or cefamandole 1 g iv q 6–8 h × 48 h	⇐
Surgical time	~2.5–3 h; more, depending on difficulty	⇐
Closing considerations	Splint, cast while anesthetized	⇐
EBL	< 200 mL	⇐
Postop care	Multiple-trauma victim → ICU; others → PACU; ± CPM	PACU → ward
Mortality	Rare, except in severe multiple trauma	None
Morbidity	Compartment syndrome: 10–20% Wound infection: 7–15% DVT (symptomatic): 3–5% Delayed union, nonunion, malunion: < 5% Peripheral nerve damage: 3% Intraarticular fracture: 2% Hypotension (multiple trauma) Leg-length discrepancy Osteomyelitis, septic arthritis Respiratory distress and fat embolism Vascular complications	< 25% ~2% 2% ⇐ 0.2%
Pain score	7	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age; fracture most common in younger trauma patients and elderly Degenerative arthritis of knee, < 60 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma: falls, motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents, industrial injuries Degenerative: arthritis of knee

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

Suggested Readings

1. Atesok K, Doral MN, Whipple T, et al: Arthroscopy-assisted fracture fixation. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc* 2011; 19(2):320–9.
2. Thomas CH, Athanasiov A, Wullschleger M, Schuetz M: Current concepts in tibial plateau fractures. *Acta Chir Orthop Traumatol Cech* 2009; 76(5):363–73.

INTRAMEDULLARY NAILING, TIBIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In intramedullary nailing of the tibia, a metal nail is placed into the medullary canal of the tibia to stabilize (or prevent) a fracture. The affected leg generally is placed in traction, on a fracture table, via stirrup or calcaneal pin. Following the incision, an awl is used to make an entry hole in the proximal metaphysis of the tibia, through which a guide wire is introduced. The guide wire is placed across the aligned fracture, and the nail is introduced and driven over the guide wire. Before nail insertion, the medullary canal often is reamed to allow use of a larger nail. Most nails are interlocked both proximally and distally with screws that pass from the bone through holes in the nail.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture, nonunion or malunion of the tibia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, on fracture table. Consider inducing anesthesia before moving patient.
Incision	Proximal longitudinal incision over the patellar tendon; stab wound for screws
Special instrumentation	Nails, screws, and insertion instruments; intramedullary reamers; I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	2 h
Closing considerations	No splint or cast
EBL	200 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Compartment syndrome: < 5% Infection: < 2% Neuropraxia: < 1 %
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	> 16 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Etiology	Trauma (95%); tumor (5%)
Associated conditions	Multiple trauma (50%); compartment syndrome (5%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

EXTERNAL FIXATION, TIBIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Fractures of the tibia are fixed with percutaneous pins that are clamped to an external frame. Stainless steel pins are drilled into the proximal and distal fragments of the fracture through stab wounds in the skin and subcutaneous tissues. Usually 2–3 pins are placed on either side of the fracture. Pin clamps and an external frame are attached and the fracture aligned with the assistance of the I.I. or under direct vision. Following fracture alignment, the pin clamps and frames are tightened to hold fracture alignment. External fixation is often used with open fractures. **Small-pin fixators** (e.g., Ilizarov) are used for fracture fixation, leg lengthening, and treatment of bony defects. Wound irrigation and debridement often accompany application of the fixation frame.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tibial fracture; tibial nonunion or malunion; tibial shortening

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Stab wounds. Small-pin fixator may require metaphyseal incision for osteotomy.
Special instrumentation	Pins; fixation frame; I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	0.5–1 h Small-pin fixator: 3–5 h
Closing considerations	May be open fracture (usually left open)
EBL	50 mL; small-pin fixator, 100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Infection: 15% Compartment syndrome: < 2% Neuropraxia: < 1%
Pain score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Trauma (95%); shortened limb (< 2%); ununited or malunited fracture (< 2%)
Associated conditions	Open fracture (95%); compartment syndrome (< 2%); congenital anomaly (< 1%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION (ORIF) OF DISTAL TIBIA, ANKLE, AND FOOT FRACTURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: ORIF is nearly always required for displaced fractures involving the ankle or joints in the foot. A longitudinal incision is made over the fractured medial and/or lateral malleoli. Dissection is carried directly down to the bone, and the fracture is identified and reduced under direct vision.

Open fractures may require **irrigation and debridement.** The fractures are realigned under direct vision and fixed and stabilized with pins, plates, and/or screws. An intraop radiograph is obtained to confirm reduction and placement of hardware. The incisions are closed and a splint or cast is applied.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture of the distal tibia, ankle, or foot

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	ORIF Ankle	With Irrigation and Debridement
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Longitudinal over fracture site	⇐ + extension of existing wound
Special instrumentation	Pins, plates, and screws; tourniquet; x-ray or I.I.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Splint or cast while anesthetized	Splint or cast; may leave wound open.
EBL	50 mL	100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Wound dehiscence: 10% Loss of reduction: 7% Infection: 3%	⇐ ⇐ 15%
Pain score	4	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Infant–elderly (usually > 60 yr)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~ 250,000 cases/yr in the United States
Etiology	Trauma: 100%
Associated conditions	Alcohol abuse; obesity; diabetes mellitus (DM)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

Suggested Readings

1. Mandi DM: Ankle fractures. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg* 2012; 29(2):155–86, vii.
2. Shindle MK, Endo Y, Warren RF, et al: Stress fractures about the tibia, foot, and ankle. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(3): 167–76.

REPAIR NONUNION/MALUNION, TIBIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure is used to treat a fracture that has not healed or was misaligned upon healing. The fracture is mobilized, usually grafted with autogenous or allograft bone, and realigned. With an anterior approach, a longitudinal incision is made anteromedial or anterolateral to the shaft of the tibia. Dissection is carried directly down to the bone and the nonunion identified. If the tibia is approached with a posterolateral incision, the patient is turned prone and a longitudinal incision is made just posterior to the fibula. Dissection is carried down posteriorly to the interosseous membrane, to the tibia, and the procedure becomes identical to the anterior approach. Tissue interposed between the bone ends may or may not be debrided. The cortex of the bone adjacent to the nonunion is roughened with an osteotome. Autogenous or allograft bone is placed adjacent to or in the nonunion site. In the case of a malunion, the bone may be osteotomized with a saw or osteotomes to allow realignment. If skeletal fixation is used, a plate may be attached to the bone through the same incision. Alternatively, an intramedullary nail may be placed through an incision anterior to the tibial tubercle. If an intramedullary device is used, the canal may be reamed with intramedullary reamers prior to placement of the nail. A third type of **skeletal fixation** is the external fixator that stabilizes the nonunion via percutaneous pins placed into the proximal and distal tibia, which are then spanned by a device with pin clamps at both ends. An intraop x-ray is often used to confirm fixation and placement of devices; alternatively, an I.I. may be used.

Variant procedure or approaches: Autogenous **bone grafting from the iliac crest** is commonly used to stimulate healing. An incision is made directly over the iliac crest, and muscles are stripped from the crest and table of the ilium. Osteotomes and gouges are used to remove either the inner or outer table of the ilium and cancellous bone between the two tables. The wound is closed over a suction drain.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ununited or malunited fracture

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Basic Repair	With Iliac Graft	With Skeletal Fixation
Position	Supine (prone with posterior lateral graft)	⇐	⇐
Incision	Anteromedial or posterolateral to shaft of tibia	Anteromedial; parallel to iliac crest	
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet; x-ray or I.I.	⇐	Pins, plates, screws, rods, external fixator; tourniquet; x-ray or I.I.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop. (If infected nonunion anticipated, antibiotics are withheld until cultures are obtained.)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	2.5 h	3 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Basic Repair	With Iliac Graft	With Skeletal Fixation
Closing considerations	Splint or cast applied while anesthetized.	⇐	No splint or cast
EBL	100 mL	200–300 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Thrombophlebitis: 5% Compartment syndrome: 1% Infection: 1% Hematoma: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 5%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ 1–3%
Pain score	5	8	5–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	10–80 yr (usually 20–40 yr)
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	5–10% of tibia fractures; 50–75% of open fractures
Etiology	Trauma: 100%
Associated conditions	Poor nutrition (50%); infection (10%); metabolic disease (10%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

Suggested Readings

1. Mechrefe AP, Koh EY, Trafton PG, DiGiovanni CW: Tibial malunion. *Foot Ankle Clin* 2006; 11(1):19–33, vii.
2. Ng A, Barnes ES: Management of complications of open reduction and internal fixation of ankle fractures. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg* 2009; 26(1):105–25.

ARTHROSCOPY OF THE ANKLE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Ankle arthroscopy** is usually a diagnostic procedure, although it may be used for debridement or removal of loose bodies. The ankle joint generally is inspected through anterolateral and anteromedial portals (entry wounds). Posterolateral and posteromedial portals also may be used. Each portal is made via a 5-mm stab wound in the skin (Fig. 10.6-1); then instrumentation is placed, using trochars. If the ankle joint is tight, a mechanical distractor (external fixator distraction apparatus spanning the ankle joint) may be used. The distractor is attached to the bones via percutaneous pins, as in the case of the application of an external fixator. The portals are closed with sterile tape or a single suture. **Debridement** may be used to reduce local or generalized articular damage.

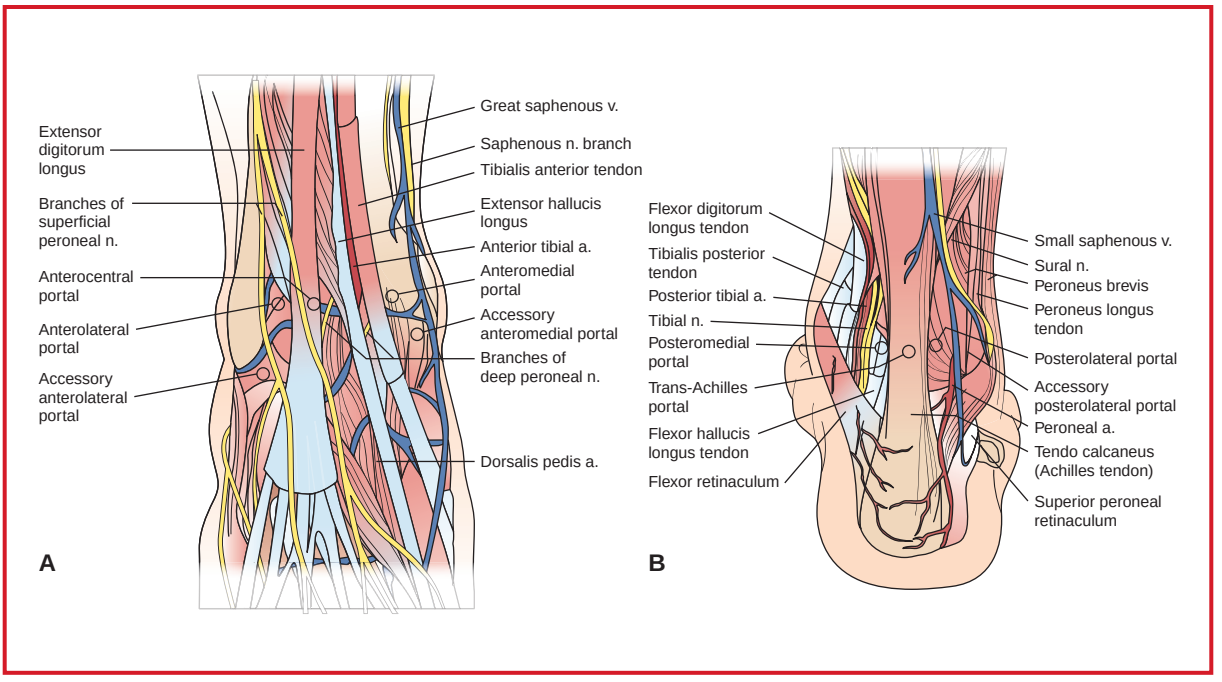


Figure 10.6-1. Portals for ankle arthroscopy. **A:** Anterior anatomy and portals. The anterolateral and anteromedial portals are used routinely. **B:** Posterior anatomy and portals. The posterolateral portal also is used routinely. (Redrawn from Ferkel RD: *Arthroscopic Surgery: The Foot and Ankle.* Lippincott-Raven: 1996.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma; infection; arthritis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Arthroscopy	Arthroscopy + Debridement
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	0.5 cm portals (incisions)	⇐
Special instrumentation	Arthroscopic video system; small biters and graspers	⇐ + shaver
Unique considerations	± Tourniquet. May use distractor with pins through tibia and calcaneus.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop (optional)	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	1–2 h
Closing considerations	No splint; incisions injected with local anesthetic.	⇐
EBL	Minimal	50 mL
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	< 0.01%	⇐
Morbidity	Hemarthrosis: 5% Thrombophlebitis < 2% Infection: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	2–3	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	12–70 yr (usually 20–40 yr)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Trauma (70%); arthritis (20%); infection (5%)
Associated conditions	Usually healthy; may have systemic arthritis.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

Suggested Readings

1. Glazebrook MA, Ganapathy V, Bridge MA, Stone JW, Allard JP: Evidence-based indications for ankle arthroscopy. *Arthroscopy* 2009; 25(12):1478–90.
2. Jennings MM, Bark SE: Practical aspects of foot and ankle arthroscopy. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg* 2011; 28(3):441–52.
3. Lui TH: Arthroscopy and endoscopy of the foot and ankle: indications for new techniques. *Arthroscopy* 2007; 23(8):889–902.

ANKLE ARTHROTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Arthrotomy of the ankle is the opening of the joint for drainage, debridement, or fracture treatment. The joint usually is opened with an anterolateral midline or anteromedial longitudinal incision. Tendons and neurovascular structures are carefully retracted to expose the joint capsule, which is then opened in line with the skin incision. After intraarticular pathology is addressed, careful closure of the capsule is performed, taking care to obtain good hemostasis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Infection; trauma; arthritis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior midline or anteromedial longitudinal
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	± Splint while anesthetized; may have suction drain.
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Hemarthrosis: 20% Thrombophlebitis: 5% Infection: 1%
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Infant–elderly
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Trauma (70%); arthritis (20%); infection (10%)
Associated conditions	Inflammatory arthritis; multiple trauma; immunosuppression

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

ANKLE ARTHRODESIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: An **ankle fusion** may need to be performed for severe pain 2° arthritis of the ankle. In most cases, an anterior approach is made to the ankle joint. An alternative approach is through the medial malleolus. The ankle joint is exposed, and the surfaces of the joint are debrided either with osteotomes or a burr. Cancellous bone is exposed on the distal tibia and talus, and the joint is clamped together either with a simple external fixation device with pins going through the distal tibia and talus, or with bone screws that go from the distal tibia into the talus. The wound is closed over a drain, and a splint may be applied.

Usual preop diagnosis: Arthritis of the ankle

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior midline over distal tibia
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet; external fixator or bone screws
Unique considerations	Intraop radiographs; tourniquet use
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	2 h
Closing considerations	May be splinted; suction drain.
EBL	100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Nonunion (late): 15% Thrombophlebitis: 10%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity (cont'd)	Hematoma: 5% Wound dehiscence: 5% Infection: 1%
Pain score	8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All adult
Male:Female	1:1
Etiology	Degenerative arthritis; trauma; avascular necrosis of talus; septic arthritis
Associated conditions	Inflammatory arthritis; any disease requiring steroids

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

REPAIR/RECONSTRUCTION OF ANKLE LIGAMENTS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Lateral ankle ligaments may be repaired acutely, but generally are reconstructed at a later date, if necessary, with the peroneus brevis used in most reconstructions. An incision is made posterior to the distal fibula, curving around the lateral malleolus and ending in the anterolateral foot. The peroneus brevis tendon is identified and detached from its musculotendinous junction in the leg, and the peroneus brevis muscle is sutured to the peroneus longus tendon. A hole is drilled from anterior to posterior in the distal lateral malleolus; then the detached end of the peroneus brevis tendon is threaded through the hole. It is then attached to either the calcaneus or the talus, anterior to the lateral malleolus, with a staple or by suturing into a hole in the bone. The skin and subcutaneous tissues are closed and a splint or cast is applied.

Usual preop diagnosis: Lateral instability of the ankle

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Incision	Posterolateral aspect of ankle
Special instrumentation	Bone staples; tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin, 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	2 h
Closing considerations	Splint or cast while still anesthetized.
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → room or home
Mortality	Minimal

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Infection: < 1% Rerupture: < 1% Wound dehiscence: < 0.1%
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Young adults
Male:Female	2:1
Etiology	Ankle sprain
Associated conditions	Alcohol abuse; obesity; diabetes mellitus (DM)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

AMPUTATION THROUGH ANKLE (SYME)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Syme's amputation** (Figs. 10.6-2 and 10.6-3) is ankle disarticulation with closure, using a posterior flap, including the heel pad. It is more functional than below-knee amputation because patients can bear weight on the end of the stump; however, success is poor in patients with vascular disease or peripheral neuropathy. The posterior flap is dissected directly from the calcaneus, carefully preserving the tough heel pad and its blood supply. The heel pad is sutured directly to the distal tibia to prevent migration and to cover the bone end. The posterior flap is then sutured to the anterior flap with interrupted sutures and a compression dressing applied.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma; infection

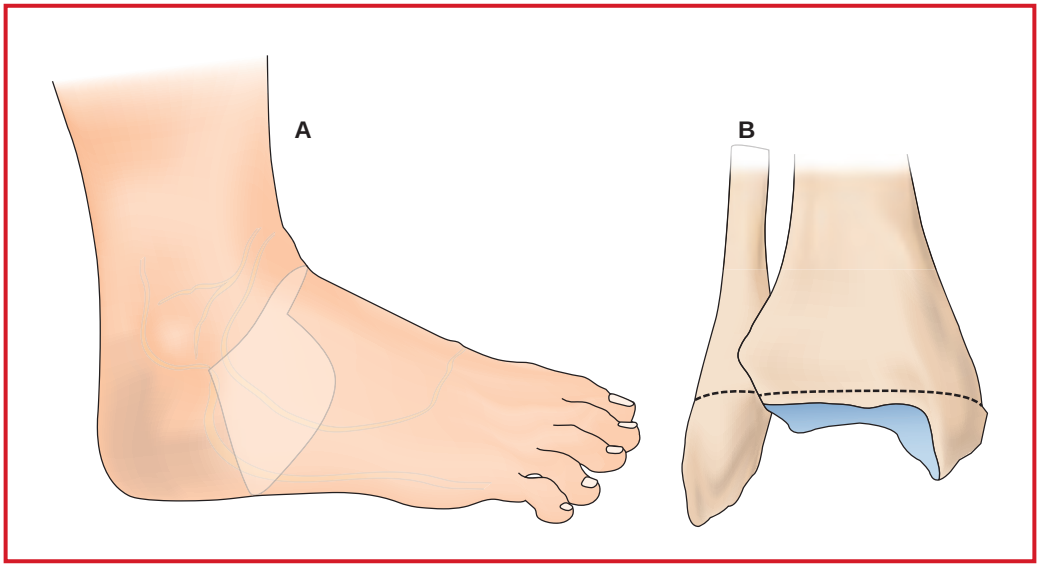


Figure 10.6-2. Syme's amputation. **A:** Skin incisions. **B:** Level of bone transection in adults. (Reproduced from Bohne WHO: *Atlas of Amputation Surgery.* Thieme Medical: 1987.)

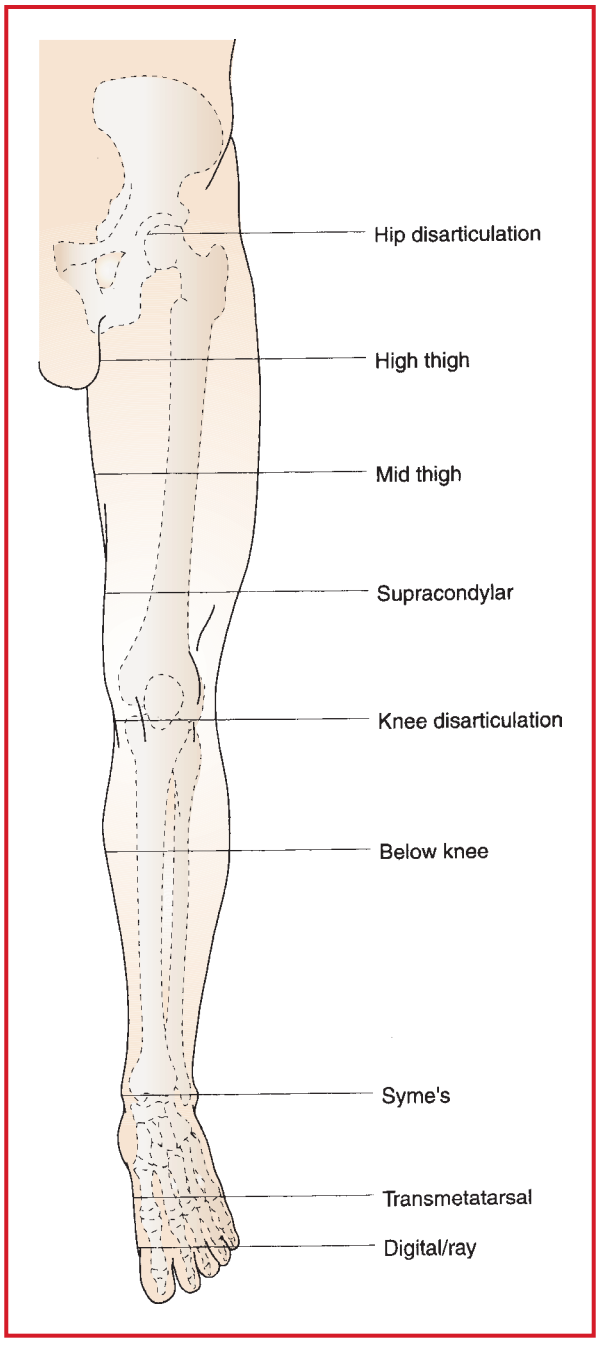


Figure 10.6-3. Common amputation levels for the lower extremity. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practices,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior and posterior flaps
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	1.5–2 h
Closing considerations	Bulky dressing; if infection present, wound may be left open.
EBL	100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Phantom pain: 90% Infection: 10–15% Wound breakdown: 10–15% Pneumonia: 12% MI: 7% PE: 6% Hematoma: 5% Stroke: 5%
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Typically, > 60 yr
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	20,000–30,000/yr
Etiology	Trauma (50%); infection (30%); congenital anomaly (5%)
Associated conditions	Peripheral vascular disease (30–40%); diabetes mellitus (DM) (< 20%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

AMPUTATION, TRANSMETATARSAL

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This amputation, usually for infection or ischemic necrosis of the toes, is performed at the midmetatarsal level, leaving the patient able to walk without a prosthesis. A transverse dorsal incision is made at the transmetatarsal level, and a plantar incision is made beginning at the corners of the dorsal incision and extending distally to the metatarsal heads to create a long plantar flap. The plantar flap is reflected proximally to the midmetatarsal level and tapered distally. The metatarsals are sectioned with a saw, and nerves and tendons are sectioned proximal to the osteotomies. The plantar flap is then brought over the ends of the bones and sutured with interrupted sutures to the dorsal flap. A compression dressing is applied.

Variant procedure or approaches: Other partial-foot amputations, such as **midtarsal** and **ray amputation,** are much less common. They are managed in a fashion similar to that of the transmetatarsal amputation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Gangrene of the toes; infection

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Dorsal and plantar flaps
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Bulky dressing
EBL	50 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Phantom pain: 90% Infection: 10–15% Wound breakdown: 10–15% Hematoma: 5%
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	> 60 yr
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	20,000–30,000 total amputations/yr
Etiology	Vascular disease (70%); infection (25%) trauma (< 5%); congenital anomalies (< 1%)
Associated conditions	Vascular disease (70%); diabetes mellitus (30%); pulmonary disease (30%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

LENGTHENING OR TRANSFER OF TENDONS, ANKLE, AND FOOT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In cases of motor imbalance from neuromuscular disease or trauma, tendons are lengthened or transferred to a new insertion to partially restore balance or normalize joint motion. For **tendon lengthening,** a longitudinal incision generally is made directly over the tendon. Subcutaneous tissues and tendon sheath are incised to expose the tendon, which is transected with a Z-type incision. The tendon is placed in its lengthened position, and

the ends of the Z are closed with absorbable suture. If present, the tendon sheath is closed separately from the skin closure. In a **tendon transfer,** the tendon usually is cut close to its insertion and transferred to a new bony insertion, which often requires a separate incision. The tendon is attached to the bone either with a metal staple or by suturing it into a drill hole in the bone.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Achilles tendon lengthening** is used to bring the ankle out of equinus. A **posterior tibial tendon lengthening** and/or **posterior ankle capsulotomy** may accompany the procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Contracture of muscle

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Tendon Lengthening	Achilles Tendon Lengthening
Position	Supine	Prone
Incision	Over tendon; sometimes multiple incisions	Over tendon
Special instrumentation	Tourniquet	⇐
Antibiotics	If young, none; in elderly or infirm, cefazolin 1 g iv preop	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	1 h
Closing considerations	Splint or cast while anesthetized	⇐
EBL	10 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	PACU → room or home
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: < 1 %	⇐
Pain score	4	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Neuromuscular disease (80%); trauma (20%)
Associated conditions	Static encephalopathy/cerebral palsy (75%); other neuromuscular disease (25%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

AMPUTATION ABOVE THE KNEE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In above-the-knee amputations, the distal part of the lower extremity is excised, starting just above the knee at the level of the distal third of the femur (Fig. 10.6-3). A stump is fashioned and will require prosthetic fitting at a later time. The most commonly performed stumps incorporate anterior and posterior flaps of equal length. The

underlying muscles (hamstrings and quadriceps) are either sewn to each other (**myoplasty**) or to bone (**myodesis**). In a **guillotine,** or **open amputation,** the stump is not fashioned (tissues are not closed) until later. This is a multistage procedure used for dirty, traumatic amputations, infection, or above-knee amputations with questionable survival and usually is done as a lifesaving measure. Internal fixation of part of the remaining femur may be indicated in traumatic amputations. The patient returns to the OR every 1–3 d for redebridement until closure of the clean stump can be performed.

Usual preop diagnosis: PVD or gangrene of lower extremity; trauma to lower extremity; open-femur fracture with traumatic amputation; tumor of lower extremity

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior and posterior on thigh
Special instrumentation	Amputation saw and rasp; drill for myodesis
Unique considerations	Patient often very ill from sepsis, chronic disease, or trauma
Antibiotics	Cefazolin or cefamandole 1 g iv q 6–8 h), ± gentamicin (80 mg iv q 8 h); adjust dosage for renal status, ± penicillin (1–2 million U iv q 4 h).
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Compressive dressing ± special stump sock
EBL	250 mL or more; higher for traumatic amputations
Postop care	Generally PACU → room (if medically unstable → ICU)
Mortality	Approximately 10–20%; higher in PVD (10–39%)
Morbidity	Phantom limb: 85–95% Phantom pain: 2–15% Wound infection ± deep infection: < 15% in PVD Respiratory failure or pneumonia: 10–15% MI: 7–10% Thromboembolism: 6–10% Cerebrovascular accident: 5–10% Contractures—flexion and abduction: Common Urinary retention requiring catheterization: Common Failure to heal ± wound dehiscence: Uncommon Hematoma: Rare Neuromas: Rare Reamputation: Rare UTI: Rare Contralateral amputation, especially in diabetics and those with PVD Postop depression
Pain score	7–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	PVD, diabetic gangrene: 70–90% > 60 yr Multiple trauma with traumatic amputation, tumor of lower extremity: 18–35 yr
Male:Female	Overall, 3:1 Elderly, predominance of males Multiple trauma, 4–5:1 Tumor 1:1
Incidence	Common for PVD patients; rare for trauma or tumor

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	PVD and diabetic gangrene (70–90%); multiple trauma (younger patients) (rare—usually with severe grade IIIC injuries with neurovascular severance); tumor (rare); uncontrollable infection (e.g., gas gangrene) (rare)
Associated conditions	Diabetes (70–80% of patients presenting for this procedure); numerous other serious medical conditions; multiple trauma in younger patients

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Above- and Below-Knee Amputation, p. 1073.

AMPUTATION BELOW THE KNEE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Below-the-knee amputation** is ablation of the lower limb, usually at the level of the midleg. A long, posterior flap normally is used to cover the stump. The condition of the soft tissues may dictate the level and/or type of flaps used. The procedure begins with an anterior transverse incision made over the midtibia. A long posterior flap, which is 2–3 times the diameter of the leg in length, is then made. The bone is exposed anteriorly, and the anterolateral neurovascular structures and muscles are transected and ligated as appropriate (Fig. 10.6-4A). The bone is then

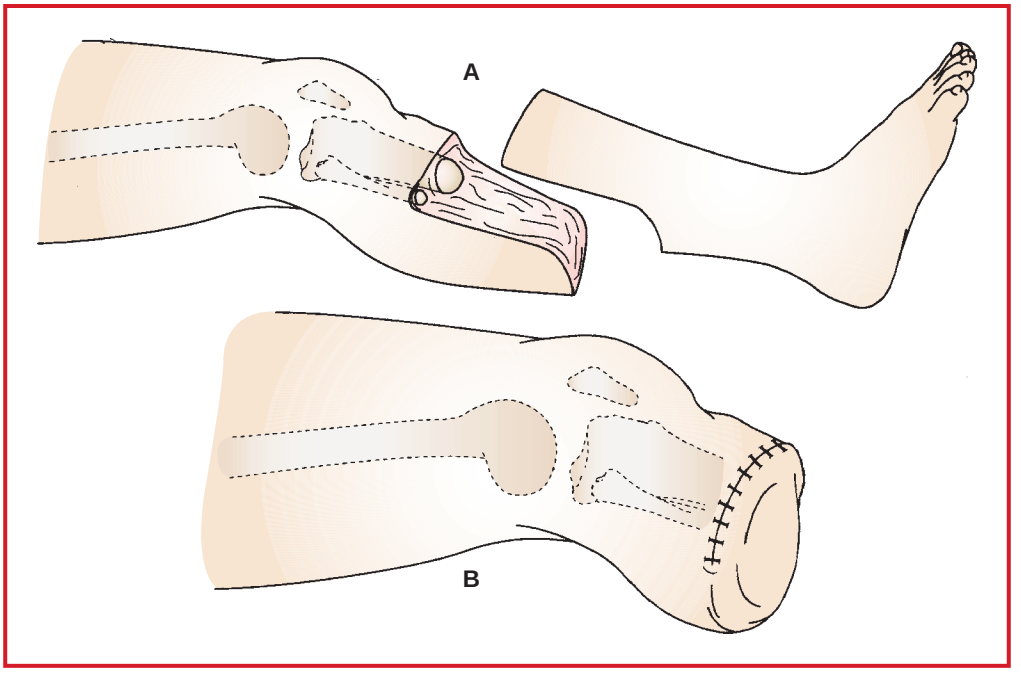


Figure 10.6-4. Below-knee amputation. **A:** The tibia is transected 1 cm proximal to the skin incision, and the fibula is transected an additional 1 cm proximal to the level of the tibial transection. The posterior calf muscles are incised along the plane of the skin incision. **B:** The posterior flap is rotated anteriorly and approximated. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

transected with a bone saw, and the posterior structures are transected and ligated as appropriate. The amputated leg and foot are then removed from the table, and the posterior flap is tapered and shaped for closure (Fig. 10.6-4B). Deep sutures are placed to secure the posterior muscles to the anterior tibia. The skin opening and subcutaneous tissues are closed with interrupted sutures. Finally, a drain is placed (sometimes), and either a compression dressing or an immediate postop cast is applied.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Guillotine amputation** may be used as the first of a two-stage procedure in infected or contaminated cases. With a guillotine amputation, the bone and soft tissues are transected very quickly in guillotine fashion at the midtibial level. Neurovascular structures are ligated as appropriate. These wounds are usually left open and a compression dressing applied.

Usual preop diagnosis: Dysvascular limb; infection; trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Anterior and posterior flaps; for guillotine amputation, circumferential incision
Special instrumentation	Bone saw; tourniquet, if traumatic (tourniquet contraindicated if infected or avascular)
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	1.5 h; for guillotine amputation, 0.5 h
Closing considerations	May use cast; drain. Bulky dressing needed for guillotine amputation.
EBL	200 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	10%
Morbidity	Phantom pain: 90% Infection: 10–15% Wound breakdown: 10–15% Pneumonia: 12% MI: 7% PE: 6% Hematoma: 5% Stroke: 5%
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Usually, > 60
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	20,000–30,000 total amputations/yr
Etiology	Dysvascular limb (70%); trauma (20%); infection (5%); tumor (5%); congenital anomaly (< 1%)
Associated conditions	Vascular disease (70–80%); malnutrition (50%); diabetes mellitus (30%); pulmonary disease (30%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR ABOVE- AND BELOW-KNEE AMPUTATION

PREOPERATIVE

Vascular disease and tumors are the two most common indications for these surgeries. Patients presenting for amputations often have severe systemic vascular disease. Their inability to perform exercise limits the usefulness of preop Hx in evaluating cardiopulmonary reserve and often necessitates invasive studies for full evaluation.

Respiratory	Smoking is a risk factor common to both vascular and pulmonary diseases. Chronic bronchitis or COPD patients should have maximum medical therapy (e.g., inhaled bronchodilators, theophylline, and steroids, when appropriate) prior to anesthesia. Regional anesthesia is an excellent choice for patients with severe pulmonary disease. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Significant cardiovascular disease is present in ~30% of these patients. Particularly in diabetics, CAD is often silent. Dipyridamole thallium imaging of the heart can reveal the preop myocardium at risk of ischemia; however, therapy of stenotic coronary arteries usually can be undertaken only after the amputation. Medical management, to include β-blockers when tolerated, will reduce perioperative MIs. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	Peripheral and autonomic neuropathies may be present in the diabetic patient. Hence, these patients may be more susceptible to injury from malpositioning and are less able to tolerate the hemodynamic changes associated with regional anesthesia. Preexisting neurological deficits should be carefully documented. Autonomic neuropathy is diagnosed by any of the following: postural ↓ BP (in patient not bedridden); loss of sinus arrhythmia; resting ↑ HR; miosis–abnormal response to darkness.
Musculoskeletal	Rhabdomyolysis can occur in the presence of partial ischemia. (See Renal, below.)
Hematologic	Often a trial of heparin, warfarin, or thrombolytic therapy will have been undertaken before amputation. Coag studies, including PT, PTT, and bleeding time are, therefore, often necessary to determine the appropriateness of epidural or intrathecal anesthesia. Warfarin-induced elevation of the PT can be reversed preop with FFP 5–10 mL/kg body weight. This therapy may induce fluid overload in patients with poor cardiac reserve. For these patients, diuretics should be administered to maintain normovolemia. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Renal	Limb ischemia can result in myoglobinemia from rhabdomyolysis. Evidence of progressive renal failure or rising CPK-MM fractions should be treated with hydration, forced alkaline diuresis and prompt amputation. **Tests:** Consider Cr; BUN; CPK enzymes; urine myoglobin.
Laboratory	Diabetic patients require preop control of blood glucose and periop glucose monitoring.
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Either regional or GA may be appropriate.

Regional anesthesia: Both SAB and epidural blocks are useful techniques. Subarachnoid anesthesia has the advantage of limited spread of the block above the level of surgery, while obtaining adequate blockade of the sacral roots that are resistant to low-dose epidural techniques. Epidural anesthesia allows for extending the duration of anesthesia and for the administration of postop epidural analgesia. Anesthesia from T12 (T8 with tourniquet) is adequate. Full motor blockade is not necessary. Typical drugs and doses include: subarachnoid—75 mg of 5% lidocaine in 5% dextrose (controversial) with morphine 0.2 mg; epidural—12–15 mL 2% lidocaine with epinephrine 1:200,000 in divided doses.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate for patients with normal airways. Intubation is indicated for diabetic patients with gastroparesis. Beware of difficult airway in long-standing insulin-dependent diabetics.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3)

Emergence	No special considerations	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Expect 100–200 mL blood loss, mostly during cleaning of the wound made while developing a flap.
Control of blood loss	Tourniquet may be used.	Inflation pressure is typically 100 mm Hg + systolic pressure. Maximum "safe" tourniquet time is 1.5–2 h, followed by a 5- to (preferably) 15-min reperfusion interval, if further tourniquet is necessary.
Special considerations	Tourniquet deflation and limb reperfusion	Mild ↓ BP is common. In patients with moderate-to-severe lung disease, continue controlled ventilation until after the lactic acid accumulated in the ischemic leg is metabolized (3–5 min) because these patients may be unable to increase ventilation adequately to buffer this acid load.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± CVP line ± Arterial line	Invasive monitoring is indicated in the presence of severe cardiac or pulmonary disease. Serial blood glucose determination should be made in the diabetic patient.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Meticulous padding of the extremities is necessary to prevent ischemic skin ulceration in patients with vascular insufficiency.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hematoma Bleeding	✓ drains
Pain management	Spinal opiates Epidural analgesia	Epidural hydromorphone 50 mcg/mL infused at 50–200 mcg/h provides excellent analgesia.
Tests	CXR if CVP was placed.	Other studies as indicated

Suggested Readings

1. De Tran QH, Clemente A, Finlayson RJ: A review of approaches and techniques for lower extremity nerve blocks. *Can J Anaesth* 2007; 54(11):922–34.
2. Hebl JR, Dilger JA, Byer DE, et al: A pre-emptive multimodal pathway featuring peripheral nerve block improves perioperative outcomes after major orthopedic surgery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2008; 33(6):510–17.
3. Sites BD, Brull R: Ultrasound guidance in peripheral regional anesthesia: philosophy, evidence-based medicine, and techniques. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2006; 19(6):630–9.

FASCIOTOMY OF THE THIGH

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Increased intracompartmental pressure in the thigh requires surgical release of tight skin and fascial structures (Fig. 10.6-5). This usually occurs after severe trauma to the thigh (e.g., crush injury, comminuted fracture), after prolonged vascular surgery (with ischemia to the thigh), or with infection. Compartment syndrome is a true emergency and must be treated within minutes of recognition. Failure to do so may result in loss of limb or

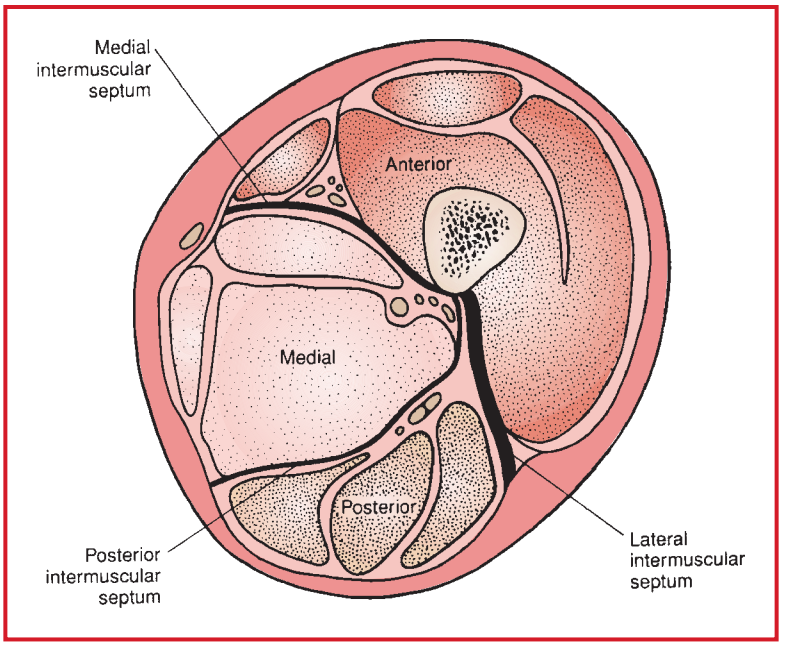


Figure 10.6-5. Cross-section of the thigh showing the 3 major compartments.

death. Conventional devices may be used to measure intracompartmental pressure, which usually is abnormal if > 30–35 mm Hg (normal = < 30 mm Hg). **Fasciotomy of the thigh** involves incising the skin and fascia over the thigh and debriding any necrotic tissue. The wound is left open for later redebridement, delayed primary closure, or skin grafting. Thus, the fasciotomy begins a multistage procedure of incision and debridement with subsequent reconstruction.

Usual preop diagnosis: Compartment syndrome of thigh; crush injury to thigh; necrotizing fasciitis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Incision	Lateral thigh
Unique considerations	Patient may be very ill. If an ipsilateral femoral fracture is present with a compartment syndrome, the surgeon may want to perform ORIF, intramedullary nailing, or external fixation of the fracture.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin or cefamandole 1 g iv q 6 h
Surgical time	1.5–2 h for fasciotomy alone
Closing considerations	Wound left open and covered by sterile dressings.
EBL	250–500 mL
Postop care	If surgery is performed acutely, patient frequently will be a multiple-trauma victim with numerous injuries and extensive blood loss; usually goes to ICU.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Mortality	Dependent on extent of multiple trauma
Morbidity	Hypotension and fluid loss: Common Neurological deficit to peripheral nerves: Common, if decompression delayed Respiratory distress and fat embolism: Not uncommon, if concomitant femur fracture Vascular complications: Not uncommon Amputation: Rare, if decompression prompt Systemic sepsis: Rare Wound infection: Rare New compartment syndrome; insufficient fasciotomy: Rare
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Any age, but predominance of males < 30 yr
Male:Female	5:1
Incidence	Extremely rare
Etiology	Trauma—motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents, falls, industrial injury, crush injuries; post-surgery—local hematoma and swelling; thrombosis or disruption of blood supply to thigh (e.g., failed proximal vascular bypass surgery, aortic dissection); massive infection of thigh compartment (e.g., gas gangrene)
Associated conditions	Burns; drug and alcohol overdose; frequently associated with trauma to other organ systems

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Fasciotomy of the Leg, p. 1079.

Suggested Readings

1. Rush RM Jr, Arrington ED, Hsu JR: Management of complex extremity injuries: tourniquets, compartment syndrome detection, fasciotomy, and amputation care. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(4):987–1007, ix.
2. Ojike NI, Roberts CS, Giannoudis PV: Compartment syndrome of the thigh: a systematic review. *Injury* 2010; 41(2):133–6.

FASCIOTOMY OF THE LEG

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure is the surgical decompression of fascial compartments for treatment or prevention of compartment syndrome. Patients are often very ill and unstable with other injuries or disease. Compartment syndrome is a true emergency and must be treated within minutes of recognition. Failure to do so may result in loss of limb or death. There are four compartments in the leg: anterior, lateral, deep posterior, and superficial posterior (Fig. 10.6-6). Generally, all four compartments are released during the procedure. A **four-compartment fascial decompression** can be performed through two incisions—medial and lateral. A medial longitudinal incision is made just posterior to the tibia; through this incision, the superficial and deep posterior compartments are identified and the fascia incised in longitudinal fashion. A straight, lateral, longitudinal incision is made, and the

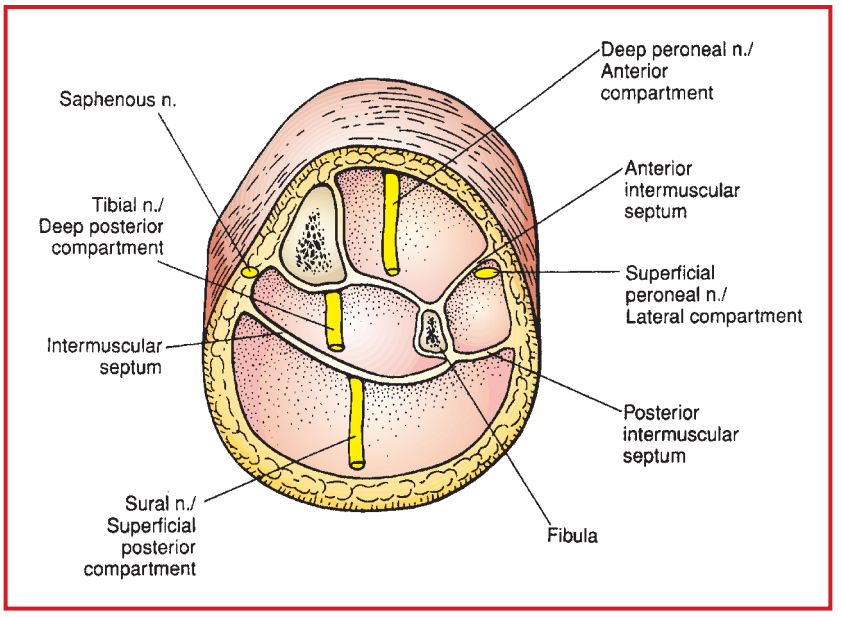


Figure 10.6-6. Cross-section of the left leg, middle lower third, showing the four compartments with associated peripheral nerves.

deep fascia overlying the anterior and lateral compartments is identified. The fascia of each compartment is then incised longitudinally. Skin incisions are rarely closed because of the swelling. A compression dressing is applied, and splints may be used.

Usual preop diagnosis: Compartment syndrome; vascular trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Medial and lateral parallel to tibia
Unique considerations	Often associated with fracture; may require fixation.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv preop
Surgical time	30 min+
Closing considerations	Wounds left open; splint may be required.
EBL	100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; vascular monitoring is carried out clinically via a pulse oximeter on toes.
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Myonecrosis: 50% Thrombophlebitis: 10–20% Infection: 10–15%
Pain score	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~5% of tibia fractures
Etiology	Trauma—blunt fracture, vascular (90%); drug overdose (10%); burns (< 5%); revascularization (< 5%)
Associated conditions	Multiple trauma (60%); vascular disease (15%)

Suggested Reading

1. Frink M, Hildebrand F, Krettek C, Brand J, Hankemeier S: Compartment syndrome of the lower leg and foot. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2010; 468(4):940–50.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR FASCIOTOMY OF THIGH AND LEG

PREOPERATIVE

Compartment syndromes and necrotizing fasciitis are the indications for these procedures (necrotizing fasciitis also may cause compartment syndrome). Patients with compartment syndrome often have no systemic disease, whereas patients with necrotizing fasciitis have a rapidly life-threatening infection that requires prompt surgical debridement and often is complicated by rhabdomyolysis and DIC.

Respiratory	Usually no special considerations, unless massive sepsis.
Cardiovascular	Sepsis is uniformly present in patients with necrotizing fasciitis. Management includes antibiotics and hemodynamic support with dopamine (5–15 mcg/kg/min) or epinephrine (0.02–0.25 mcg/kg/min), with therapy guided by invasive hemodynamic monitoring, which may include PA catheter.
Neurological	If fasciotomy is for compartment syndrome, there may be compromise of distal nerves and blood flow. Perform a thorough neurologic exam of the involved extremity to document preop deficits.
Hematologic	If infection is the indication for the fasciotomy, DIC is likely. Evaluate for pathologic bleeding. Administer factors necessary to correct coagulopathy during the procedure. **Tests:** CBC; PT; PTT; fibrinogen; fibrin split products; Plt count
Renal	Both necrotizing fasciitis and compartment syndrome often cause myoglobinuria and rhabdomyolysis. Myoglobinuria can be inferred from urine that is dipstick-positive for occult blood but microscopically free of RBCs in the absence of hemolysis (therefore, no free Hb in the urine).
Laboratory	Hct; serial K^+ levels if there is an active diuresis; other studies as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Regional techniques are appropriate for compartment syndrome decompression, unless there is evidence of DIC or systemic infection. These surgeries are usually of short duration (< 1 h). Sepsis and hemodynamic instability usually mandate GETA for fasciotomy in patients with necrotizing fasciitis.

Regional anesthesia: Either subarachnoid or epidural blocks are useful in the absence of systemic infection or severe coagulopathy. Subarachnoid anesthesia has the advantage of adequate blockade of the sacral roots that are

resistant to low-dose epidural techniques. Anesthesia from T10–S2 is adequate. Typical drugs and dosages include: subarachnoid—15 mg of 0.5% bupivacaine; epidural—12–15 mL 2% lidocaine with epinephrine 1:200,000 in divided doses.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3).	
Emergence	Consider postop ventilation for patients with impaired oxygenation or ongoing hemodynamic instability; otherwise, no special considerations.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16 ga × 1 (compartment syndrome) 14–16 ga × 2 (necrotizing fasciitis) NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	To prevent renal damage, **insure adequate circulatory volume**; induce osmotic diuresis with mannitol 0.25 g/kg iv. Furosemide 10–100 mg also may be necessary to maintain diuresis. Replace UO with 0.5 NS + 50 mEq bicarbonate/L, or as guided by invasive monitoring.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). UO ± Arterial line (± ABG) ± CVP or PA catheter	Fluid losses (3rd-spacing, bleeding) may be significant. Patients with necrotizing fasciitis require an arterial line and either a CVP or PA catheter to guide fluid and inotropic/pressor therapy.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	DIC Renal failure 2° rhabdomyolysis Hypo/hyperkalemia Sepsis syndrome, including ARDS	
Pain management	PCA or epidural analgesia	See p. C-3.
Tests	Hct Electrolytes UA (dipstick and microscopic)	For patients with sepsis: coag profile, including PT/PTT, fibrin split products, and Plt count

BIOPSY, LEG AND FOOT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Biopsy is performed to excise tissues for pathologic evaluation, usually through a small, longitudinal wound. For **incisional biopsy,** a longitudinal incision is made over the mass. Overlying soft tissues are incised with minimal undermining. The area in question is incised and the biopsy removed, with care being taken to prevent spillage into the adjacent tissues. The pathologist often is asked to perform a frozen section to determine whether diagnostic tissue is present. The wound is closed with interrupted sutures and a compression dressing applied. A splint or cast may be used if a significant amount of bone has been removed. If the lesion is small, x-ray control or image intensification may be necessary for localization. **Needle biopsy** may be used for distinct osseous lesions to obtain small amounts of tissue for culture or histology. **Excisional biopsy** may be used for benign lesions like exostoses or lipomas.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tumor; infection

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Incisional Biopsy	Needle Biopsy	Excisional Biopsy
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Short longitudinal	Stab wound	Stab wound
Special instrumentation	Bone-cutting instruments; x-ray or I.I.	Trephine (e.g., Craig needle); x-ray or I.I.	X-ray or I.I.
Unique considerations	Tourniquet	⇐	⇐ (Bone graft may be necessary.)
Antibiotics	None (May be given postop.)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	I h	0.5 h	0.5–2 h
Closing considerations	May be splinted.	Usually no splint	May be splinted.
EBL	50 mL	Minimal	100–200 mL
Postop care	PACU → room or home	⇐	PACU → room
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Hematoma: 5% Tumor spread: < 5% Infection: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3	2	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All ages
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Tumor (75%); infection (25%)
Associated conditions	Metastatic disease; immune compromise

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lower-Extremity Procedures, p. 1083.

BIOPSY OR DRAINAGE OF ABSCESS/EXCISION OF TUMOR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure involves obtaining a piece of tissue for histologic and/or bacteriologic Dx by closed, percutaneous means or by open biopsy. Subsequently, the area may be drained (abscess or infection) or an open excision of a tumor may follow (± internal fixation). For excision of tumors of the pelvis, acetabulum, or femur, please consult the appropriate section describing fractures of the area. Each case must be individualized.

Variant procedure or approaches: Excision of infection or tumor of proximal or distal femur, femoral shaft, pelvis, or acetabulum

Usual preop diagnosis: Femur: biopsy of mass; infection; osteomyelitis. Pelvis or acetabulum: biopsy of pelvis or acetabulum; drainage of abscess or infection of pelvis or acetabulum; osteomyelitis of pelvis or acetabulum; septic arthritis of acetabulum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral decubitus
Incision	Percutaneous, short or long; location depends on site of lesion.
Special instrumentation	Biopsy needles and instruments to take a core biopsy; bone cement may be used to plug biopsy site. Some surgeons use fracture table or radiolucent table with I.I.
Unique considerations	May require intraop frozen section and Gram stain.
Antibiotics	After tissue has been obtained, cefazolin or cefamandole 1 g iv q 6 h × 48 h. A Gram stain will help decide immediate antibiotic coverage, but cultures and sensitivities are ultimately necessary.
Surgical time	1 h for simple procedures; much longer (up to 12 h) for more extensive excisional procedures ± further reconstruction.
EBL	100–1000 mL or more
Postop care	If procedure is extensive with much blood loss, or the patient is unstable or ill from chronic sepsis or invasive tumor, it is prudent to send patient to ICU.
Mortality	Dependent on extent of procedure. Biopsy or drainage of a small, localized abscess in soft tissue or bone is rarely life-threatening. Wide/radical excision of a malignant tumor in the pelvis or extremities is frequently life- and/or limb-threatening.
Morbidity	The following are dependent on site and procedure: Intraop fracture Nonunion Chronic osteomyelitis Compartment syndrome Residual instability of pelvis or hip joint Fracture of pelvis or acetabulum, nonunion Chronic osteomyelitis or septic arthritis Hypotension 2° to blood loss Respiratory distress Neurological injury to lumbosacral plexus, sciatic nerve, or other peripheral nerves Vascular injury to iliac or other vessels Injury to GI, genitourinary, or gynecological organs
Pain score	2–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Any age; predominance of elderly patients with tumors
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Benign and malignant tumors (common); infection (rare); previous surgery (rare); previous trauma (rare)
Associated conditions	Metastatic disease or other foci of infection

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR LOWER-EXTREMITY PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: ORIF of femur, tibia, ankle, and foot; intramedullary nailing of femur and tibia; closed reduction and external fixation of femur and tibia; distal tibia, ankle and foot procedures; repair nonunion/malunion of femur and tibia; ankle arthroscopy, arthrotomy, arthrodesis; repair/reconstruction, ankle ligaments; Syme's amputation; transmetatarsal amputation; tendon (ankle, foot) lengthening; biopsy of leg and foot; biopsy or drainage of abscess/excision of tumor)

PREOPERATIVE

Trauma victims comprise the largest group of patients for these procedures. Minimizing the time between fracture and surgery for open wounds significantly reduces the incidence of wound infection. Evaluations for other injury, adequacy of fluid resuscitation, and preexisting conditions need to be undertaken promptly and used as a guide for anesthetic management. Patients with bone cancer form another subset of patients and often have concurrent medical conditions and have undergone chemotherapy or radiation therapy preop.

Respiratory	Pulmonary fat embolus occurs in 10–15% of patients following bone fracture. Sx include hypoxemia, ↑ HR, tachypnea, respiratory alkalosis, mental status changes, and conjunctival petechiae. Lab analysis may reveal fat in the urine. Preop therapy for this condition should include supplemental O_2 with mechanical ventilation, to correct hypoxemia, and meticulous fluid management to prevent worsening pulmonary capillary leak. **Tests:** Consider CXR; others as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	Cardiac contusion or tamponade are possible if blunt chest trauma has occurred during the injury. A large volume of blood can be hidden around a long bone fracture site. ↑ HR, orthostasis, or ↓ BP indicate hypovolemia, and this should be corrected with crystalloid (10–40 mL/kg) or blood if Hct < 24%. In patients with a tibial or distal femur fracture, and who are presenting with hemodynamic instability and ongoing blood loss, consider applying a tourniquet to the thigh prior to induction. **Tests:** Consider ECG; CPK enzyme levels and ECHO will help evaluate the presence of cardiac injury.
Neurological	Perform a thorough neurological evaluation, including mental status and peripheral sensory exams. A CT scan of the head is indicated for any patient with prolonged loss of consciousness prior to anesthesia. Drug abuse is common in trauma patients and they should be asked specifically about any drug use. **Tests:** Patients with inappropriate behavior or a positive drug abuse Hx should undergo a urine and plasma drug screen.
Musculoskeletal	Consider cervical instability and obtain spine films if mechanism of injury included rapid deceleration or trauma to the head or neck. Myoglobinemia and ↑ K^+ may result from crush injury.
Hematologic	Patients with cancer who have undergone chemotherapy and multiple transfusions often develop sensitivities to blood products and may require specialized blood products, such as leukocyte-poor PRBC or red cells negative for a particular antigen. The availability of these blood products should be confirmed before surgery. **Tests:** Hct and others as indicated from H&P
Renal	**Tests:** UA
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Due to the risk of gastric aspiration, minimal or no premedication is given to trauma victims. For other patients, standard premedication (see p. B-1). Narcotic premedication (morphine 1–2 mg iv q 10 min titrated to effect) is appropriate for patients experiencing pain with movement.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: For trauma patients, regional anesthesia permits evaluation of mental status, provides intact airway reflexes, and ↓ blood loss. Combative patients and those requiring multiple concurrent surgical procedures or prolonged (> 2 h) procedures are often managed with GETA.

Regional anesthesia: Either subarachnoid or epidural blocks are useful techniques. Subarachnoid anesthesia has the advantage of adequate blockade of the sacral roots that are resistant to low-dose epidural techniques. Epidural anesthesia allows for the administration of postop epidural analgesia. Anesthesia from T12 (T8 with tourniquet) to S2 is adequate. Full motor blockade is desirable. Typical drugs and doses include: subarachnoid—15 mg of 0.5% bupivacaine with morphine 0.2 mg (omit if outpatient); epidural—12–15 mL 2% lidocaine with epinephrine 1:200,000 in divided doses (Na bicarbonate 0.1 mg/mL will speed onset of block).

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate for patients with normal airways. Trauma patients require a rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) and intubation with cricoid pressure to prevent gastric aspiration.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Trauma patients are often cold and require active warming if < 35°C (convection blanket and active humidifier). Warming the patient may unmask severe hypovolemia that should be corrected.	
Emergence	Trauma patients should have full return of protective airway reflexes and, given the possibility of fat embolus, evidence of adequate oxygenation on 50% O_2 prior to extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 14–16 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 4–8 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	Some fractures can involve large (30 mL/kg) blood losses that are hidden in the leg or thigh. Clinical signs of hypovolemia and serial Hct determination should guide fluid therapy.
Control of blood loss	Tourniquet	Inflation pressure is typically 100 mm Hg + systolic pressure. Maximum "safe" tourniquet time is 1.5–2 h, followed by a 5– to (preferably) 15-min reperfusion interval, if further tourniquet time is necessary.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line	Arterial/CVP lines indicated for patients with ↓ BP not readily correctable with crystalloid infusion, massive blood loss (> 1 blood volume), or the need for postop ventilation.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Special considerations	Release of tourniquet	A 20% ↓ MAP is common on tourniquet deflation. Additional crystalloid (5–10 mL/kg) may be necessary to replace edema fluid and blood loss to the leg.
Complications	Fat embolism Myoglobinemia	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications (cont'd)	Hypoxemia VTE (DVT)	May be 2° fat embolism. See VTE prophylaxis guidelines p. B-8.
Pain management	Spinal opiates: Epidural anesthesia Spinal anesthesia	Epidural hydromorphone 50 mcg/mL infused at 100–250 mcg/h provides excellent analgesia. Intrathecal morphine 0.2–0.3 mg provides analgesia for up to 24 h after administration. (Monitor for delayed respiratory depression.)
Tests	Hct CXR, if CVP placed or oxygenation is impaired.	Other studies as indicated

Suggested Readings

1. De Tran QH, Clemente A, Finlayson RJ: A review of approaches and techniques for lower extremity nerve blocks. *Can J Anaesth* 2007; 54(11):922–34.
2. Ganapthy S: Wound/intra-articular infiltration or peripheral nerve blocks for orthopedic joint surgery: efficacy and safety issues. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2012; 25(5):615–20.
3. Johnson RL, Kopp SL, Hebl JR, Erwin PJ, Mantilla CB: Falls and major orthopaedic surgery with peripheral nerve blockade: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth* 2013; 110(4):518–28.
4. Nutescu EA: Assessing, preventing, and treating venous thromboembolism: evidence-based approaches. *Am J Health Syst Pharm* 2007; 64(11 Suppl 7):S5–13.
5. Sites BD, Brull R: Ultrasound guidance in peripheral regional anesthesia: philosophy, evidence-based medicine, and techniques. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2006; 19(6):630–9.
6. Williams BA, Matusic B, Kentor ML: Regional anesthesia procedures for ambulatory knee surgery: effects on in-hospital outcomes. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2005; 43(3):153–60.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

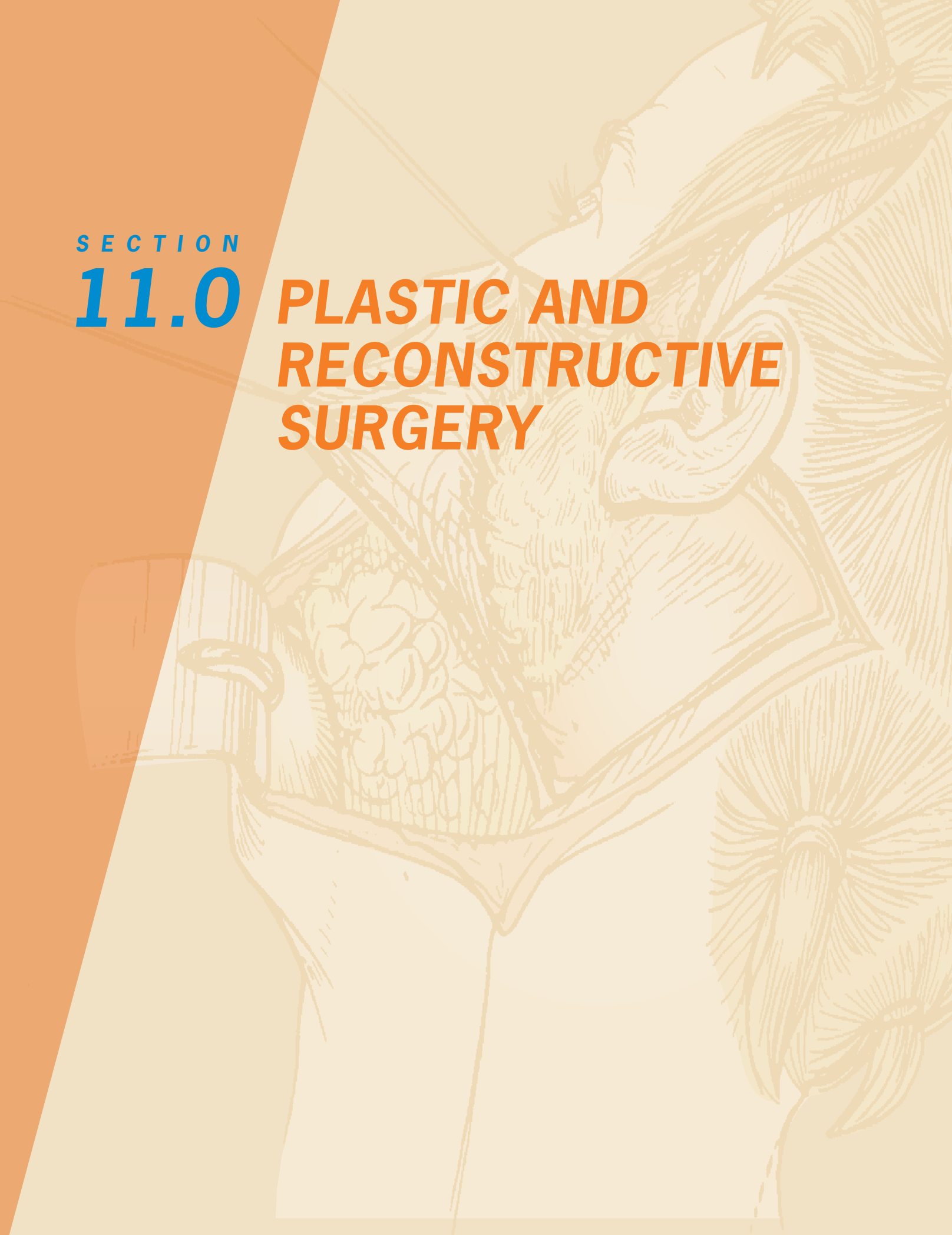
Tibial Plateau Fracture Surgery (Arthroscopically Assisted): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mfbgeC5H9To

Treatment of Ankle Fractures: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fKDAhnwy0ec

Ultrasound-Guided Popliteal Sciatic Nerve Block: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=kzhSiQBPE7s

SECTION

11.0 PLASTIC AND RECONSTRUCTIVE SURGERY



CHAPTER

11.1 Facial Cosmetic Surgery

SURGEONS

Thomas S. Satterwhite, MD
David M. Kahn, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Vanila Singh, MD

INTRODUCTION TO COSMETIC FACIAL SURGERY

The presenting signs of the aging face are predictable, based on the effects of gravity, soft tissue atrophy, changes in the bony skeleton, facial expression, ultraviolet radiation exposure, and connective tissue changes. Patients present with concerns about appearing tired, angry, or aged. They also may have functional difficulties, such as difficulty breathing or visual field obstruction due to drooping brows or eyelids. Other common complaints are wrinkles around the eyes and mouth and a sagging or fatty chin and neck.

Cosmetic facial surgery aims to rejuvenate and restore the facial form by surgical manipulation of the hard and soft tissues. The techniques used involve any or all of the following: soft tissue release, resection, plication, and resuspension.

Facial aging takes place simultaneously in all areas of the face and neck; combined procedures are not uncommon. Generally in combined procedures, a browlift would precede a necklift, followed by a facelift. Blepharoplasty procedures can be performed at different times in the surgical scheme because of their effect on eyelid tissue and brow posture. A rhinoplasty ideally is reserved for last, as it can cause bleeding and swelling that can obscure other facial surgical fields.

FACELIFT AND NECKLIFT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

FACELIFT (OR MELOPLASTY OR RHYTIDECTOMY)

Description: **Facelifts** and **midface lifts** are procedures to rejuvenate the face by surgical manipulation of the soft tissues between the inferior orbital rim and the inferior border of the mandible. The lips and nose are generally unaffected. Many types of "facelift" procedures have been developed to address the diverse challenges of facial aging and rejuvenation. Traditional facelift procedures took place in the subcutaneous plane, with some skin resection. Today, three planes of dissection are used (Fig. 11.1-1). **Subcutaneous dissection** continues to be popular, traversing the adipose tissue below the skin and many of the vessels supplying the skin. The **subSMAS** technique develops the plane between the superficial musculoaponeurotic system of the face (SMAS) and the parotid gland. Finally, **subperiosteal dissections** (midface lifts) have become popular, due to the decreased risk of postoperative hematomas. Combinations of these dissection planes also have been described. More recently, greater attention has been paid to minimal access techniques. Surgeries such as the minimal access cranial suspension lift, as well as adjunctive procedures such as the barbed suture lift, are being performed more frequently.

Local anesthetics with epinephrine are injected presurgically for the various procedures. A number of subcutaneous infiltration mixtures may be used, including one described by **Klein** that consists of NS 1000 mL with 1.0 mL epinephrine (1:1000) and 50 mL of 1% lidocaine ± 12.5 mL of 8.5% sodium bicarbonate solution. It has been shown that with the use of this mixture, 5–7 times the traditionally accepted maximum dose of lidocaine with epinephrine can be injected safely into the subcutaneous space. Not only does this solution provide hemostasis and hydrodissection, but decreased operative time and excellent perioperative analgesia also have been attributed to its use.

Traditional incisions typically are made in the preauricular region with temporal and postauricular scalp extensions. The approaches for the subcutaneous and SMAS techniques resemble those used for bilateral facial palsy and parotid gland operations. The midface procedures may be carried out through intraoral, temporal, and/or lower-lid incisions and may be combined with other facelift procedures.

A typical facelift may begin with subcutaneous dissection of the facial skin flap (Fig. 11.1-2) on one side, with meticulous hemostasis accomplished with bipolar electrocautery. The SMAS layer can then be mobilized and resuspended. Some surgeons continue on the same side with skin resection and closure before beginning on the other side, whereas others temporarily pack the first side and perform an identical procedure on the opposite side. In the latter case, a second look for bleeding is made on each side after a waiting period.

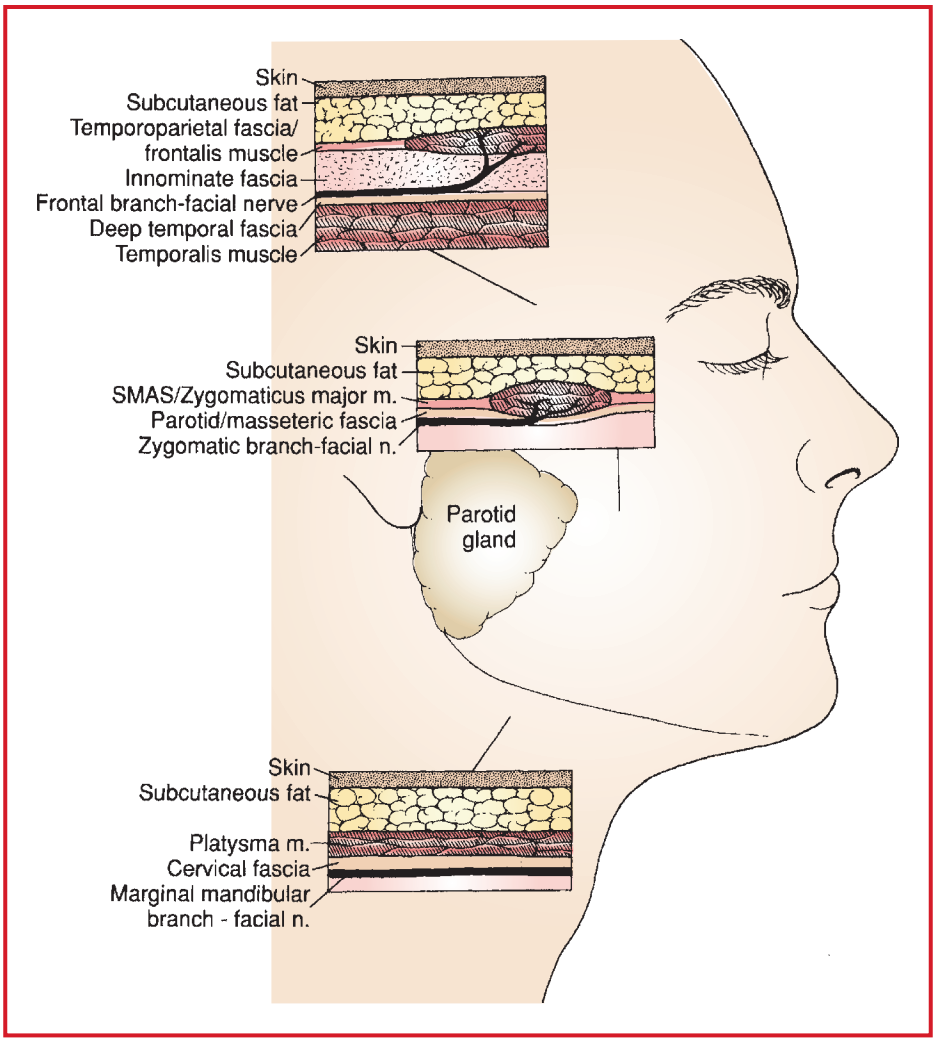


Figure 11.1-1. Anatomic layers of the face. Although the names vary, the arrangement persists, regardless of the area of the face. The facial nerve (CN VII) branches innervate their respective muscles of the SMAS layer via the deep surfaces. (Reproduced with permission from Thorne CHM, Aston SJ: Aesthetic surgery of the aging face. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

Hematoma is the most common complication of facelift surgery. Because hypertension is the most frequently encountered medical condition in the age group that typically presents for facelift, perioperative hypertension must be anticipated and treated preemptively to avoid development of hematoma. The risk is highest in male patients, perhaps due to increased perfusion of the bearded region, hormonal gender differences, or increased sebaceous gland density. Commonly used salicylates and other NSAIDS are contraindicated in the immediate preoperative period (i.e., within 10 d of surgery).

Smoking also has been shown to be detrimental to facelift results, especially with regard to skin flap survival. Ideally, patients should not smoke for 2 wk before and after surgery.

One of the least desirable complications is injury to the facial nerve, which can produce a disastrous result following an elective cosmetic surgery. Many surgeons prefer that no paralytics be used during the procedure to allow for careful monitoring of facial nerve function.

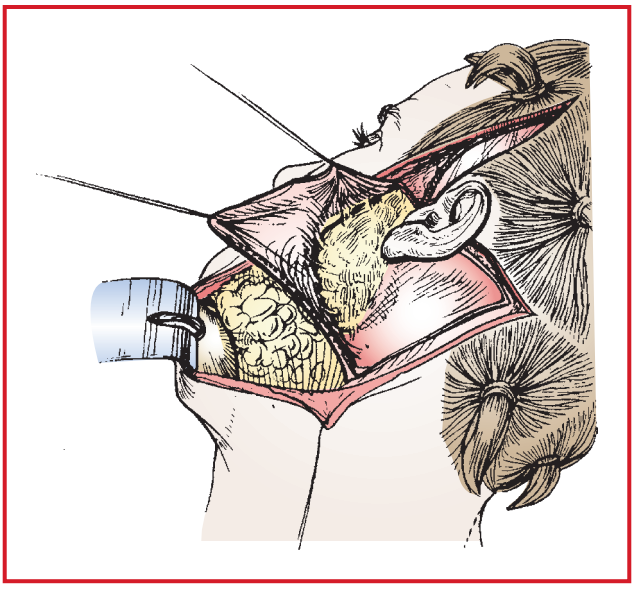


Figure 11.1-2. Dissection of SMAS/platysma flap. If a composite rhytidectomy is performed, the same plane of dissection is used. If SMAS dissection extends to the zygomaticus major muscle, it is termed "extended." (Reproduced with permission from Thorne CHM, Aston SJ: Aesthetic surgery of the aging face. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

NECKLIFT

Description: Necklift is the rejuvenation of the area from the inferior mandibular margin to the clavicles. This procedure often is combined with facelift procedures to sharpen the chin and smooth the anterior neck (i.e., improve the cervicomental angle). It usually is achieved by extending the facelift dissection inferiorly through the preauricular incision. A small submental incision may also be used to allow for **submental liposuction, lipectomy,** or **platysma muscle modifications** (plication, suspension, resection, or transection techniques).[8] Some platysmal suspension techniques require the facelift incisions to remain open with continuity in the subcutaneous plane laterally.

Variant procedures or approaches: **Laser resurfacing** (see p. 1104 and p. 1566), especially in the perioral and periorbital regions; **blepharoplasty** and **browlift** (see p. 1095) are common adjunct procedures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Facelift: facial rhytids (wrinkles/creases); solar or senile elastosis; jowling; deep nasolabial folds; tear troughs; nasojugal folds; malar bags. Necklift: "turkey gobbler" neck; platysmal bands; cervical laxity; cervical rhytids

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Facelift	Necklift	Midface lift
Position	Supine, reverse Trendelenburg	⇐	⇐
Incision	Preauricular, scalp	Postauricular extension of facelift incision + submental incision.	Intraoral ± subciliary or inferior lid
Special instrumentation	Infiltration equipment for super wet techniques; endoscopic equipment (more frequent with brow lifts)	⇐ ± liposuction instrumentation.	—

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Facelift	Necklift	Midface lift
Unique considerations	Oral intubation; ability to move ETT side-to-side. Consider securing ETT with floss or suture around teeth. Watch for: oculocardiac reflex (OCR), retrobulbar hematoma with periorbital approaches.	⇐	⇐
	If laser is used:	⇐	⇐
	• Special fire-retardant ETT and drapes		
	• Laser eye protection for all in room		
	• Cannula-administered O_2 should be far away from laser (fire safety).		
	• Smoke evacuation system (See Facial Laser Resurfacing, p. 1104.)	⇐	—
	Infiltration of large volumes of local anesthetic with epinephrine in facelift and liposuction procedures.		
Antibiotics + other meds	Cefazolin 1 g iv (± methylprednisolone 125 mg iv). Antivirals periop if laser used (e.g., acyclovir 2400 mg × 2 d preop and 14 d postop)	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	4–6 h	1–2 h	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Trendelenburg for final hemostasis ± drains	—	—
	Some surgeons prefer gentle ↑ in BP during hemostasis.	⇐	⇐
	Tissue thrombin agents may be used between the elevated flaps.	⇐	—
	Sensory nerve blocks by surgeon	⇐	⇐
	± Full head/face wrap before patient awakens	—	—
	Gentle, nonagitated awakening to prevent sudden ↑ BP.		
EBL	100–200 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Monitor for hematoma: most common complaint is pain; therefore, r/o hematoma before increased analgesia or sedation.	⇐	⇐
	Lightly compressive dressing, ± drains: both removed at 24 h.	⇐	⇐
	2 wk no aspirin, moderate activity	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Early hematoma:	⇐	Very rare
	• Large expanding: 1–15% (return to OR)		
	• Small (> 30 mL): 10–15% (± aspiration in office)	⇐	
	Late hematoma (average = 9 d postop; 2° to exertion or aspirin use; from superficial temporal vessels)	⇐	—
	Infection: 0–0.33%	⇐	⇐
	Nerve injury:		
	• Motor (temporal/marginal mandibular branches)		Very rare
	• Temporary: 0.1–2.6%	⇐	
	• Permanent: 0–0.66%	⇐	
	• Motor (spinal accessory nerve): Rare	⇐	—
	Sensory injury:		
	• Great auricular nerve → ↓ sensation in lower ½ of ear ± painful neuromas or paresthesias.		—
	• Lesser occipital nerve painful → neuroma.	⇐	—
	Alopecia: 0.4% (most temporary, along the incision)	⇐	—
	Skin slough: 14% (especially in retroauricular area) (12.5 × greater in smokers)		—
	Dehiscence: 0.1–0.35%	⇐	⇐
	Parotid cysts: Rare	⇐	—

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Facelift	Necklift	Midface lift
	Poor cosmetic result: • Hyperpigmentation • Telangiectasia (preexisting lesions may worsen) • Hypertrophic scarring • Keloids: Very rare • "Pixie" (pulled-down earlobe) deformity (technique-dependent) • Hairline shifts Ectropion (midface, approached via lid incisions only): Up to 3%	⇐	⇐
Pain score	3	3	3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	> 35 yr
Male:Female	1:9 to 1:5 (increased from 1:17 in the 1970s)
Incidence	119,026 facelift procedures in the United States (2011); fifth most common cosmetic plastic surgery procedure.
Etiology	Facial rhytids 2° solar elastosis, senile elastosis, facial expression
Associated conditions	Cancers of the skin (basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma and precursors, and melanoma), in solar elastosis cases, especially fair-skinned patients

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Browlift and Blepharoplasty, p. 1099.

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Plastic Surgeons web site: www.plasticsurgery.org
2. Bloom JD, Immerman SB, Rosenberg DB: Face-lift complications. *Facial Plast Surg* 2012; 28(3):260–72.
3. Graham DW, Heller J, Kurkjian TJ, Schaub TS, Rohrich RJ: Brow lift in facial rejuvenation: a systematic literature review of open versus endoscopic techniques. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 128(4):335e–41e.
4. Hochman M: Midface barbed suture lift. *Facial Plast Surg Clin N Am* 2007; (15):201–7.
5. Kaye BL: Complications of face-lift. *Adv Plast Reconstr Surg* 1990; 6:125–76.
6. Marcus BC: Rhytidectomy: current concepts, controversies, and the state of the art. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2012; 20(4):262–6.
7. Rasko YM, Beale E, Rohrich RJ: Secondary rhytidectomy: comprehensive review and current concepts. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 20(4):262–6.
8. Tonnard P, Verpaele A, Monstrey S, et al: Minimal access cranial suspension lift: a modified S-lift. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 109(6):2074–86.
9. Warren RJ, Aston SJ, Mendelson BC: Facelift. *Plastic Reconstr Surg* 2001; 128:747–64.
10. Woodward JA, Reddy UP, Ramey NA, Woodward DJ, Massry GG: Oculofacial anesthesia. In: Massry GG, Murphy MR, Babak A, eds. *Master Techniques in Blepharoplasty and Periorbital Rejuvenation*. Springer, New York: 2011, 45–53.

BROWLIFT AND BLEPHAROPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

BROWLIFT (OR FOREHEAD LIFT)

Description: Browlift is the resuspension of the brows and elimination of upper facial rhytids to restore the youthful appearance of the upper face. This procedure has a significant effect on the results of an upper blepharoplasty, with which it is frequently paired. Patients presenting for browlift usually have specific concerns about lateral brow hooding, forehead wrinkles, and glabellar creases that give them an angry appearance.

Like facelift procedures, browlifts have been performed in the subcutaneous plane, but the relatively avascular subgaleal and subperiosteal planes are more commonly used. The subgaleal and subperiosteal approaches have become more popular with the incorporation of **endoscopic techniques.** The incision may be a complete bicoronal or three to five small, interrupted access incisions along the hairline or within the hair-bearing scalp (Fig. 11.1-3). In the open technique, the bicoronal flap is dissected off the upper face (Fig. 11.1-4). The brows are elevated by **scalp resuspension ± resection**. Closure of the scalp helps maintain the resuspended position. The soft tissues may also be fixated directly to the cranium with screws or resorbable fixation devices and sutured to the temporal fascia to maintain their new positions. Release of the periosteum along the superior orbital rims is a prerequisite to adequate resuspension when using a subperiosteal approach. Elimination of the upper facial rhytids (i.e., glabellar wrinkles) is achieved by resection of the medial brow musculature (corrugator and procerus) from beneath the elevated flap. Muscular bleeding is controlled with bipolar electrocautery.

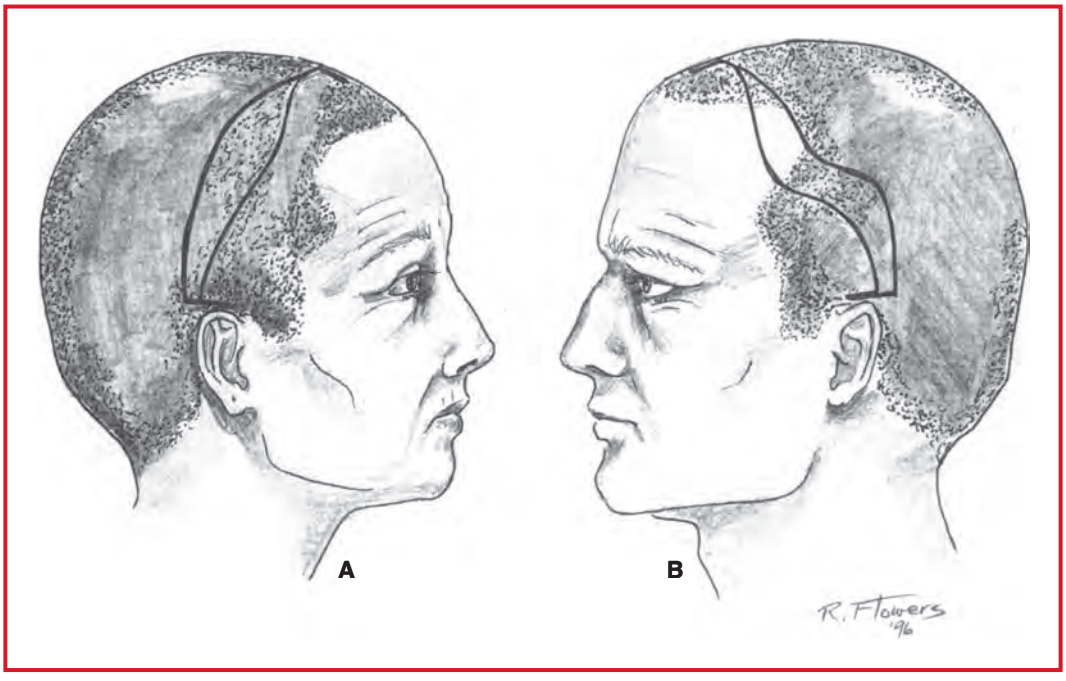


Figure 11.1-3. Incisions for forehead/brow lifting. Consistent blepharoplasty results demand appropriate frontal lifting technique. **A:** Standard coronal incision. **B:** Male and female balding incision. Note the posterior displacement of the ascending incision for maximum camouflage. Hair perimeter incisions are rarely necessary. The central brow corrects nicely from only parietotemporal scalp excisions (after appropriate supraperiosteal release). (Reproduced with permission from Flowers RS, DuVal C: Blepharoplasty and periorbital aesthetic surgery. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

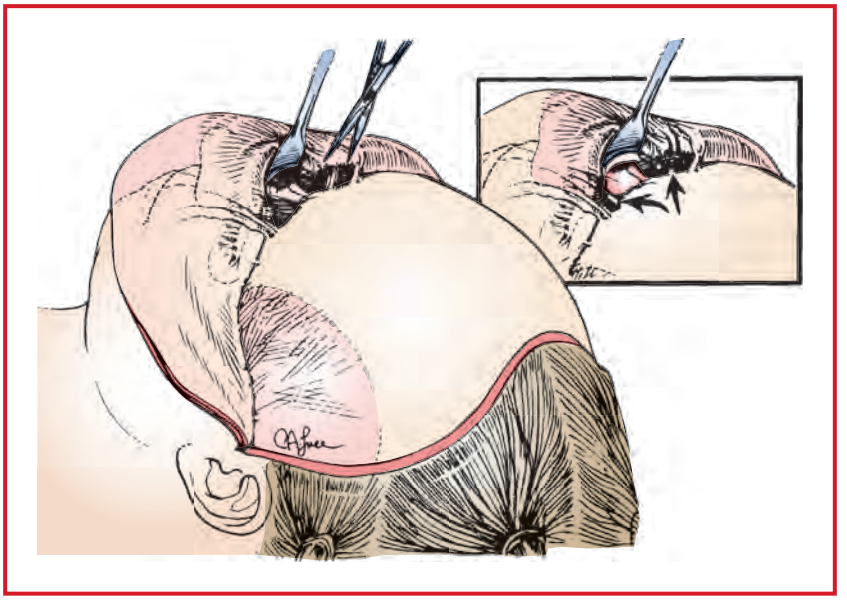


Figure 11.1-4. Exposure after subgaleal, supraperiosteal dissection of the forehead. The supraorbital nerves can be seen easily, but the supratrochlear nerves are more superficial and are hidden by the corrugator muscles. Scissors are used to tease through the corrugator muscles to locate the supratrochlear nerve branches. The muscle is then aggressively resected, preserving the sensory branches. (Reproduced with permission from Thorne CHM, Aston SJ: Aesthetic surgery of the aging face. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

Variant procedures or approaches: The browlift has become the facial plastic surgery procedure most adaptable to the techniques of **endoscopy.** Multiple smaller (1–1.5 inch) incisions are used within the scalp for access, and small, elliptical excisions also may be used to achieve the desired effect. The muscle resection is accomplished endoscopically with very small biting forceps from beneath the flap.

Usual preop diagnosis: Brow ptosis; brow droop; upper facial rhytids (wrinkles or creases)

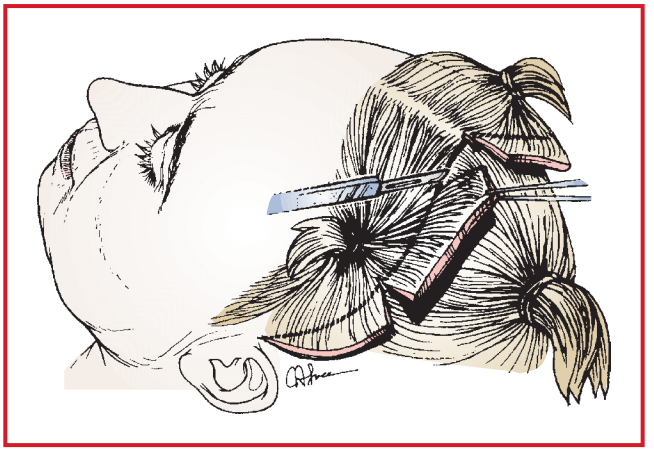


Figure 11.1-5. Redraping the forehead/brow using "key" fixation sutures. Maximal tension is placed laterally to elevate the lateral brow to a greater extent than the medial brow. (Reproduced with permission from Thorne CHM, Aston SJ: Aesthetic surgery of the aging face. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Browlift	Blepharoplasty
Position	Supine; table rotated 90 or 180°	⇐
Incision	Hairline, coronal; multiple scalp for endoscopic procedure	Upper: tarsal fold; lower: subciliary, transconjunctival
Special instrumentation	Fibrin glue, screws, or resorbable fixation devices for suspension; endoscopic equipment	Bipolar electrocautery
Unique considerations	Local anesthetic with epinephrine	Retrobulbar hematoma; OCR; local anesthetic with epinephrine
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv ± methylprednisolone 125 mg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Place dressing before arousing patient. Gentle arousal from anesthesia (↑ in BP or emesis → risk of hematoma)	No dressing (ointment)
EBL	50 mL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU → room/home Lightly compressive dressing Head of bed elevated	⇐ Cool packs ⇐ Ophthalmic lubricant Vision checks
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Hematoma: Rare Alopecia: Rare (more common with bicoronal approach) Infection: < 1% Frontalis paralysis: Rare (usually transient) Poor cosmetic result Sensory nerve dysfunction Lagophthalmos	⇐ — ⇐ — ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Blindness: Extremely rare Ectropion Entropion
Pain score	3	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Most ≥ 35 yr
Male:Female	Blepharoplasties: 1:4 Browlifts: 1:7.33
Incidence	Blepharoplasties: 196,286 (fourth most common cosmetic procedure in the United States, 2011) Browlifts: 46,931 (ninth most common cosmetic procedure in the United States, 2011)
Etiology	Facial rhytids secondary to solar elastosis, senile elastosis, facial expression, and increased muscle resting tone; Asian eyelids
Associated conditions	Cancers of the skin (basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma and precursors, and melanoma) in solar elastosis cases, especially fair-skinned patients

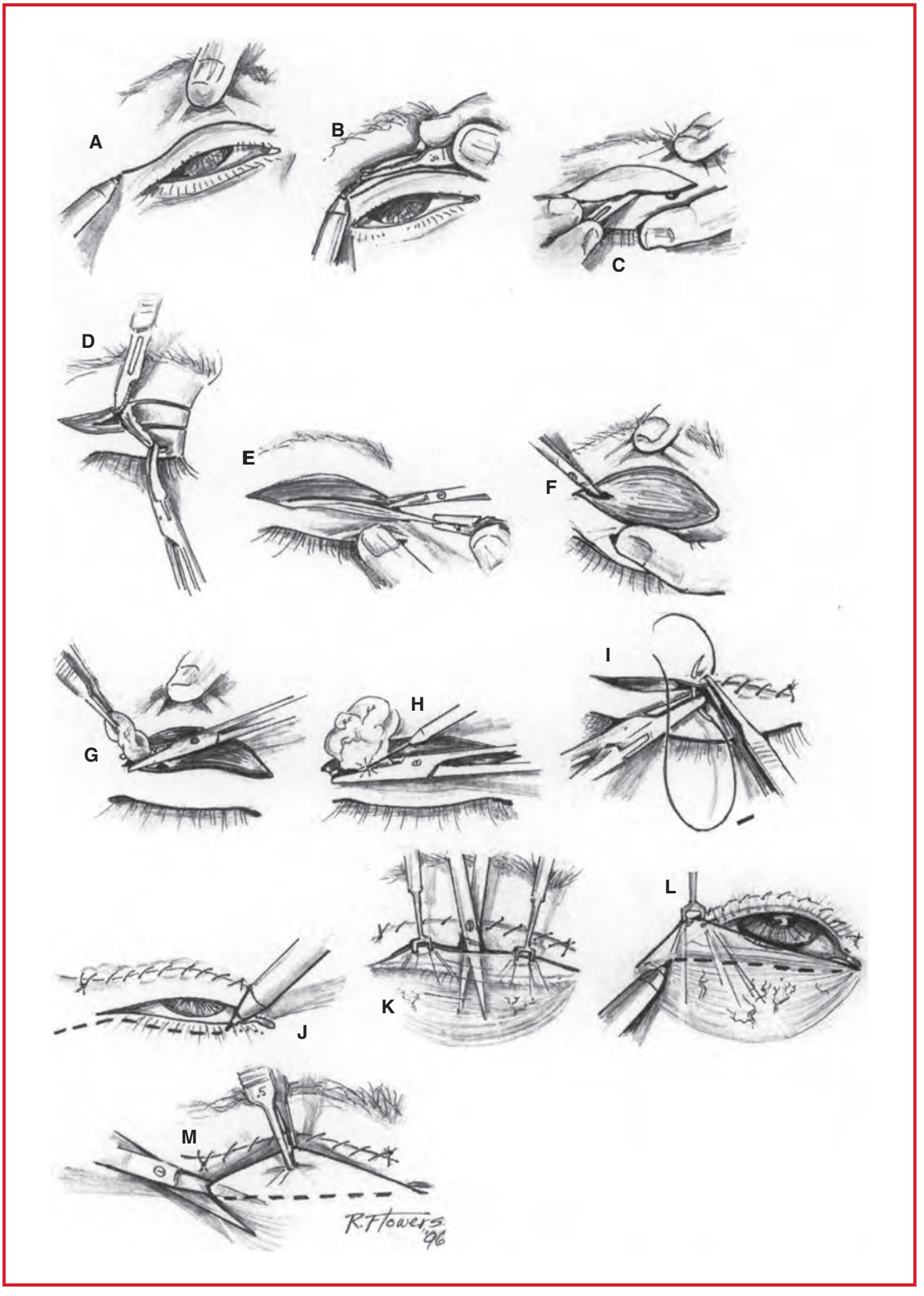


Figure 11.1-6. Traditional blepharoplasty technique. **A:** The caudal margin of the excision is marked and **(B)** the upper eyelid skin is pinched. Skin and muscle are excised **(C, D, E)**; excess or herniated fat is removed from medial and lateral compartments **(F, G, H)**; and the wound is closed **(I)**. On the lower lid, the traditional approach is flap elevation, consisting of skin or skin with attached muscle (**J, K**). The skin is draped upward and outward so the surgeon can assess and remove excess skin **(L, M)**. (Reproduced with permission from Flowers RS, DuVal C: Blepharoplasty and periorbital aesthetic surgery. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

BLEPHAROPLASTY (OR LIDLIFT)

Description: Blepharoplasty (Fig. 11.1-6), or lidlift, is the surgical rejuvenation of the periorbital region to eliminate the tired and aged appearance of the eyes. Westernizing the Asian eyelid also has become quite commonplace. Presenting complaints include excess lid skin, prominent periorbital fat, and absence of upper lid folds. Blepharoplasty can involve resection of skin, muscle (orbicularis oculi), and fat. Many patients presenting for this procedure will require a simultaneous browlift to reestablish the baseline position of the brows, revealing the true amount of upper-lid redundancy. Eyelid ptosis repair also can be achieved in the same surgery.

Although a seemingly benign procedure, the manipulation of periorbital fat can have very serious consequences. Retrobulbar hematoma and blindness can occur postoperatively, and the oculocardiac reflex (OCR) can complicate the intraoperative course with bradycardia and hypotension. This generally resolves with elimination of the stimulus.

Blepharoplasty, as an isolated procedure, is often performed with local anesthetic and intravenous sedation so that patients can open and close their eyes during the surgery. This helps to achieve a good result and decreases the risk of lagophthalmos, which is especially important if a ptosis repair is also planned.

Variant procedures or approaches: CO_2 **laser blepharoplasty** techniques have proven effective but must be done under the safety parameters of eye protection and fire and burn prevention (see p. 1104). With this technique, the fat and skin resections are achieved with a laser, replacing the use of a scalpel. Using the laser to gain some of the skin tightening associated with blepharoplasty has also been described.

Usual preop diagnosis: Blepharochalasis; periorbital fat; blepharoptosis; dermatochalasis; supratarsal fold absence; Asian eyelid

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Plastic Surgeons web site: www.plasticsurgery.org
2. Angelos PC, Stallworth CL, Wang TD: Forehead lifting: state of the art. *Facial Plast Surg* 2011; 27(1):50–7.
3. Codner MA, Kikkawa DD, Korn BS, Pacella SJ: Blepharoplasty and brow lift. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; 126:1–17.
4. De Cordier BC, de la Torre JJ, Al-Hakeem MS, et al: Endoscopic forehead lift: review of technique, cases, and complications. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 110(6):1558–68.
5. Lyon DB: Upper blepharoplasty and brow lift: state of the art. *Mo Med* 2010; 107(6):1558–68.
6. Mack WP: Blepharoplasty complications. *Facial Plast Surg* 2012; 28(3):273–87.
7. Matarasso A: The oculocardiac reflex in blepharoplasty surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1989; 83(2):243–50.
8. Ridgway JM, Larrabee WF: Anatomy for blepharoplasty and brow-lift. *Facial Plast Surg* 2010; 26(3):177–85.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: facelift, necklift; browlift, blepharoplasty)

PREOPERATIVE

Cosmetic facial surgery is elective and should be performed preferably on ASA I or II patients. Often, several cosmetic procedures (including facial laser resurfacing) are performed during the same surgical session. A preop discussion with the surgical team is important to help define the anesthetic plan. The above procedures are usually done under GA in the hospital but can also be done under MAC with local anesthesia.

Airway	A careful inspection of the airway should be performed. Surgeon may request intraop manipulation of the oral ETT from side-to-side or may prefer a nasal ETT.
Cardiovascular	A thorough cardiovascular evaluation should be performed. HTN is the most common medical condition in this patient population. Many procedures involve the use of significant amounts of local anesthetic with epinephrine, placing the patient at higher risk for iatrogenic HTN, dysrhythmias, and coronary artery spasm. In addition, consider patient suitability for the use of mild controlled ↓ BP (particularly the facelift patient). **Tests:** ECG, if indicated from H&P

Hematologic	✓ for recent aspirin/NSAID use, and h/o easy bleeding, bruising, frequent epistaxis, etc. If possible, stop aspirin 1 wk before surgery. **Tests:** CBC, if indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Preop sedation with midazolam usually is appropriate. Preop steroids (dexamethasone 4–8 mg) also may be used to reduce PONV and swelling.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Cases are usually done under GA, using an ETT or LMA, as appropriate. Several authors describe the use of a propofol/ketamine MAC or "dissociative anesthetic" in the office-based setting. There are varying descriptions of this technique, generally involving a propofol infusion with incremental ketamine boluses or infusion, resulting in elimination or significant reduction in the administration of iv opiates.

MAC with local anesthetic also is an option and may be advantageous for certain patients (e.g., with Hx of PONV) or for cases that benefit from a patient's intraop ability to follow commands (e.g., ptosis repair).

Induction	For those procedures done under GETA, a standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate. An oral RAE ETT may be used to minimize intrusion into the surgical field. For cases involving a laser, a shielded ETT manufactured for laser surgery should be used. (Note: No shielded ETT is 100% laser-proof; always use standard precautions.)	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) with volatile anesthetic ± propofol infusion is appropriate in most cases. Muscle relaxation should be avoided in cases with facial nerve monitoring. Mild, controlled ↓ BP may be requested and used to facilitate hemostasis. HTN should be avoided and treated immediately if it occurs. Maintain anesthesia during application of head/face wrap.	
Emergence	Antiemetic prophylaxis (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv + dexamethasone 4 mg iv if nondiabetic) is recommended, as postop emesis greatly increases the likelihood of hematoma formation. Perform thorough oropharyngeal suctioning. A smooth emergence with no notable increase in BP is the goal.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss generally minimal IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	
Control of blood loss	Local infiltration with epinephrine Surgical hemostasis Mild degree of ↓ BP	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points Rotate OR table 90–180°.	Scleral shields ± ophthalmic ointment
Complications	OCR Retrobulbar hematoma Local anesthetic toxicity	Remove inciting stimulus. Consider atropine 0.5 mg and deepening anesthetic. Rx: 20% lipid emulsion: 1.5 mL/kg iv bolus (may repeat × 2) + start infusion @ 0.5 mL/kg/min (max dose in 30 min = 12 mL/kg).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV	Vigorous treatment of nausea is important. Consider ondansetron 4 mg iv ± prochlorperazine 5–10 mg iv slowly or 25 mg pr.
Pain management	Local infiltration + iv/po narcotics, if needed	R/O expanding hematoma as cause of increasing pain.

Suggested Readings

1. Bogan V: Anesthesia and safety considerations for office-based cosmetic surgery practice. *AANA J* 2012 Aug; 80(4):299–305.
2. Facial Plastic Surgery Clinics of North America: Management of anesthesia and facility in facelift surgery. Stephen Prendeville, MD, Seth Weiser, URNVL. 531–38.
3. Friedberg BL: Propofol ketamine anesthesia for cosmetic surgery in the office suite. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2003; 41(2):39–50.
4. Mustoe TA, Buck DW II, Lalonde DH: The safe management of anesthesia, sedation, and pain in plastic surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010 Oct; 126(4):165e–76e.
5. Ozcan MS, Weinberg G: Update on the use of lipid emulsions in local anesthetic systemic toxicity: a focus on differential efficacy and lipid emulsion as part of advanced cardiac life support. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2011 Fall; 49(4):91–103.
6. Yoho RA, Romaine JJ, O'Neil D: Review of the liposuction, abdominoplasty, and face-lift mortality and morbidity risk literature. *Dermatol Surg* 2005; 31:733–43; Erratum in: *Dermatol Surg* 2005; 31(9 Pt 1):1158.

RHINOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Rhinoplasty,** one of the greatest challenges of plastic surgery, is the surgical manipulation of the nasal form for aesthetic and/or functional improvement. In combination with nasal septal surgery, it is called **septorhinoplasty.** Common patient requests are for dorsal hump reduction and improved tip definition. Cosmetic surgery of the nose can be divided into four major types: **tip rhinoplasty, dorsal rhinoplasty, alarplasty,** and **septoplasty,** in addition to other ancillary procedures to enhance airway function.

Tip and **dorsal procedures** may be accomplished by either **reduction** or **augmentation.** Augmentation can be achieved with synthetic materials such as silicone, expanded fibrillated polytetrafluoroethylene polymer (Gore-Tex), porous polyethylene implants (Medpor), and hydroxyapatite. Cadaveric or autologous tissue (cartilage, bone, fascia, or dermis) also is utilized. Common donor sites for cartilage are the ear concha (via an anterior or posterior approach), the nasal septum (internal nasal approach), and the ribs. Bone harvest sites may include the outer table of cranium, the iliac crest, and the ribs. Dermal graft is commonly harvested from the groin, and fascial graft harvest is often taken from the temporoparietal region. (Table 11.1-1 shows the range of open and closed rhinoplasty techniques.)

A throat pack is useful to prevent aspiration or ingestion of blood, as significant blood pooling can occur in the naso/oropharynx area, especially with nasal osteotomies used to narrow or straighten the nasal dorsum. Cases where such pooling is expected are safer under GA with a throat pack. Often rhinoplasties are done with local or regional (nasociliary and infraorbital blocks) anesthesia with sedation. Vasoconstrictor-soaked nasal packs (cocaine vs. epinephrine vs. oxymetazoline) are placed before the first incision.

The decision of open versus closed technique is based on patient requirements and surgeon preference. An **open approach** will utilize a transcolumellar incision to allow elevation of a nasal skin flap and degloving of the lower alar cartilages for direct and wide exposure of the nasal framework. **Closed approaches** use intercartilaginous, intracartilaginous, infracartilaginous, rim, hemitransfixion, and transfixion incisions (all hidden within the nose).

A typical **closed rhinoplasty** (Fig. 11.1-7) begins with dorsal work through intercartilaginous incisions. The dorsum may be reduced using a scalpel and/or rasps beneath the undermined dorsal skin and periosteum. The septum is addressed as necessary through a hemitransfixion incision (± cartilage harvest). Tip reduction by scalpel or scissor resection of the lower alar cartilage ± tip suture is next. Nasal osteotomies with an osteotome and mallet begin at the base of the nasal bones along the piriform aperture. Access points for the osteotomies can be intranasally, externally, or through an intraoral vestibular incision. Digital manipulation completes the fractures, and this is when most of the blood loss occurs. Dorsal and tip grafts are applied as necessary, with alar modifications made last. **Alar reduction** entails wedge resection of the lateral alar base and primary closure.

Table 11.1-1. Rhinoplasty Techniques

Open	Closed/Open	Closed
Incisions/skin flap elevation ↓ Tip analysis/cephalic crura excision ↓ Extramucosal tunnels ↓ Dorsal modification ↓ Caudal septum/anterior nasal spine ↓ Septoplasty/harvest ↓ Osteotomies ↓ Graft preparation ↓ Definitive dorsum/spreader grafts ↓ Tip: Columella strut/tip sutures ↓ Closure ↓ Alar base modification ↓ Dressing/postop management	Intercartilaginous/transfixion incisions ↓ Skin elevation/extramucosal tunnels ↓ Rasp bony hump/ excise cartilaginous hump ↓ Radix reduction ↓ Check profile line/septal angle ↓ Caudal septum/anterior nasal spine ↓ Infracartilaginous/ transcolumellar incisions ↓ Tip exposure and analysis ↓ Septal correction/harvest ↓ Osteotomies ↓ Definitive dorsum/spreader grafts ↓ Tip/columellar modification (excision/sutures/grafts) ↓ Closure ↓ Alar base modification ↓ Dressing	Transcartilaginous/ transfixion incision ↓ Skin elevation/extramucosal tunnels ↓ Rasp bony hump/ excise cartilage hump ↓ Radix reduction ↓ Check profile line/septal angle ↓ Caudal septum/anterior nasal spine ↓ Septoplasty/harvest ↓ Infracartilaginous incisions ↓ Alar cartilage delivery ↓ Excision/incision/sutures ↓ Osteotomies ↓ Grafts (spreader/dorsum/columella/tip) ↓ Closure ↓ Alar base modifications ↓ Dressing

Note: Only those steps appropriate for the individual case are performed.

Depending on the type of rhinoplasty performed, different dressings will be applied at the end of the procedure. When nasal bone osteotomies are used, the patient will require a dorsal nasal splint ± bilateral nasal packing. Nasal packing is generally removed at 24–72 h postoperatively. When septal manipulation is needed, nasal packing or some sort of septal splint may be placed. The packs are generally removed within 3 d, but the splints can be maintained much longer and the nasal airways kept patent with vasoconstrictor nasal sprays.

Variant procedures or approaches: Placement of a **columellar strut (cartilage graft)** and **release of the tip depressor muscle** often are achieved via intraoral vestibular incisions (behind the upper lip).

Usual preop diagnosis: Posttraumatic nasal deformity (including disordered breathing, "saddle nose," crooked nose, septal deviation); developmental nasal deformities (bulbous tip, flat tip, drooping tip, broad dorsum, dorsal hump, alar widening, "Pinocchio nose"); congenital nasal malformation (cleft nasal deformities)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table may be rotated 180°. If GA: oral ETT toward foot of bed, shoulder roll, neck extended, scleral lubricant, shields
Incision	External vs. internal nasal incisions
Special instrumentation	Headlight
Unique considerations	Throat pack for expected nasopharyngeal bleeding. Intranasal vasoconstrictors.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Surgical time	1–2.5 h
Closing considerations	Suction stomach via OG tube at the end of surgery. **Remove throat pack prior to extubation.** Internal and/or external nasal splints are placed for dressings.
EBL	Tip rhinoplasty: 20 mL Dorsum with osteotomies: 75–150 mL Septoplasty: + 50 mL
Postop care	PACU → room (most patients are home the same day). Ensure minimal PONV; elevate head of bed; no pressure on nose (e.g., O_2 mask).
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Infection: > 1% Adverse cosmetic result: Alar notching Alar collapse Dorsal irregularity Asymmetry Tip droop Adverse functional result (i.e., poor airway) Septal perforation
Pain Score	3 (4 with osteotomies)

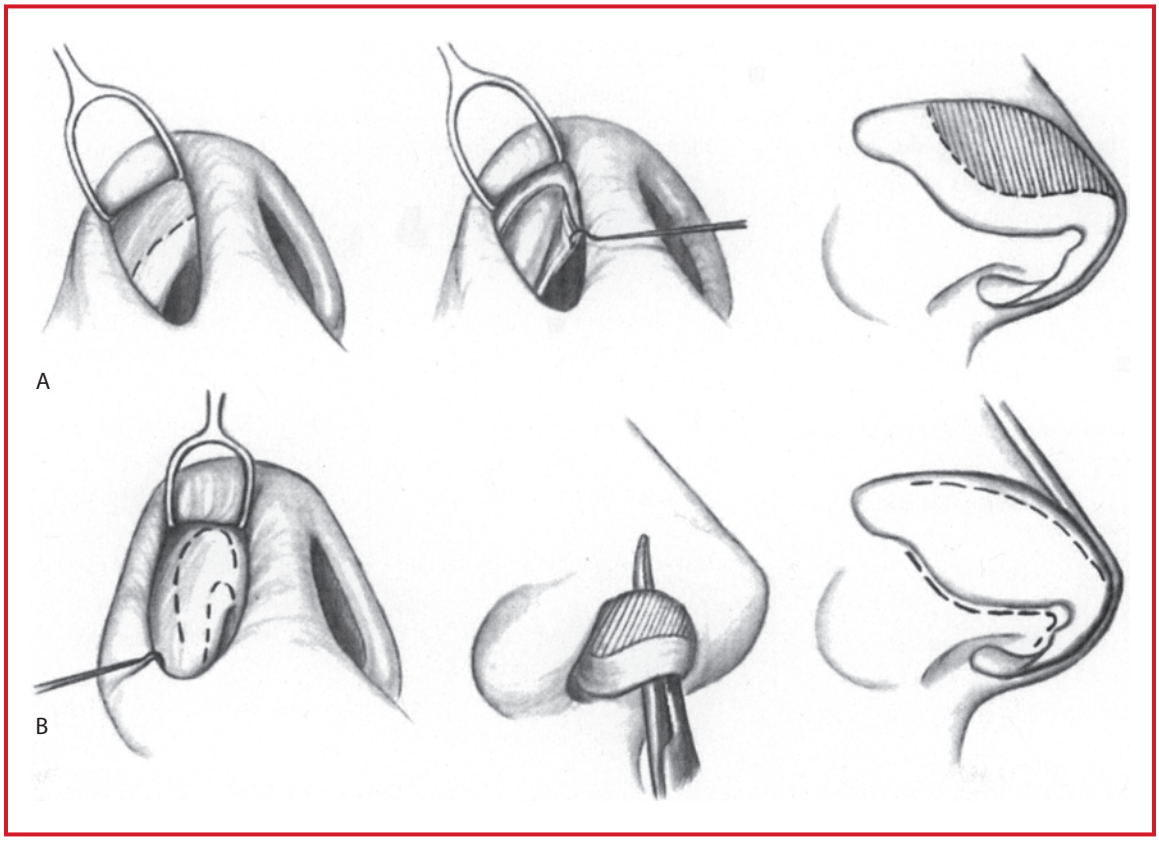


Figure 11.1-7. Closed rhinoplasty. **A:** Transcartilaginous approach using an intracartilaginous incision. **B:** Delivery approach, using a high intercartilaginous incision and a marginal incision to facilitate delivery of the lateral crura. (Reproduced with permission from Daniel RK: Rhinoplasty. In: Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM, eds. *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age Range	Most ≥ 15 yr
Male:Female[1]	1:1.7
Incidence[1]	243,772 (second most common cosmetic procedure in the United States, 2011)
Etiology	Developmental; acquired (posttraumatic); congenital (see Secondary Cleft Lip and Nasal Surgery, p. 1457).
Associated conditions	Breathing difficulties; psychosocial issues (body dysmorphic disorder)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Nasal and Sinus Surgery, p. 233.

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Plastic Surgeons web site: www.plasticsurgery.org, 444 East Algonquin Rd, Arlington Heights, IL 60005-4664.
2. Angelos PC, Been MJ, Toriumi DM: Contemporary review of rhinoplasty. *Arch Facial Plast Surg* 2012 Jul–Aug; 14(4):238–47.
3. Becker DG, McLaughlin RB, Loevner LA, et al: The lateral osteotomy in rhinoplasty: clinical and radiographic rationale for 2. osteotome selection. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2000; 105(5):1806–19.
4. Cannon DE, Rhee JS: Evidence-based practice: functional rhinoplasty. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2012 Oct; 45(5):1033–43.
5. Cuzalina A, Qaqish C: Revision rhinoplasty. *Oral Maxillofac Surg Clin North Am* 2012 Feb; 24(1):119–30.
6. Facial Plastic Surgery Clinics of North America: Management of anesthesia and facility in facelift surgery. Stephen Prendeville, MD, Seth Weiser, URNVL. pp. 531–38.
7. Molliex S, Navez M, Baylot D, et al: Regional anaesthesia for outpatient nasal surgery. *Br J Anaesthesia* 1996; 76:151–3.
8. Rohrich RJ, Ahmad J: Rhinoplasty. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 128:49–73
9. Stevens MR, Emam HA: Applied surgical anatomy of the nose. *Oral Maxillofac Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 24(1):25–38.

OTOPLASTY

See Chapter 12.8, Surgery for Craniofacial Malformations, Otoplasty, p. 1462.

FACIAL LASER RESURFACING

Description: Laser resurfacing is a technique by which a controlled burn is administered to the skin of the face with laser technology, creating a healing process that reduces the signs of aging or acne. **CO_2 laser resurfacing** is commonly used with facial cosmetic procedures. It is used widely for the periorbital and perioral creases and wrinkles not addressed by previously described facial cosmetic surgical techniques. Nerve blocks, local anesthesia, intravenous sedation, and GA are all possibilities for laser treatment. The choice of anesthetic depends more on the specific surgical procedures to be performed first, as the laser procedure is usually adjunctive and added at the end. Facial laser resurfacing is done frequently in an office-based setting (see Chapter 14.0, Office-Based Procedures, p. 1566). Because laser resurfacing is usually an adjunct to another facial cosmetic procedure, the following discussion pertains primarily to the unique set of **safety issues** that must be addressed in the OR.

Ocular Hazards: These include direct and reflected injury to the eye. Everyone present, including the patient and all medical personnel, requires laser-specific (i.e., wavelength-specific) safety eyewear. Laser-specific scleral shields must be available for the patient in cases where the patient's eyewear would be in the operative field. Protective eyewear must be undamaged and have

- Permanent labels with wavelength and optical density tolerance
- Side shields
- Damage threshold of > 10 sec

- No surface reflection
- Good fit
- Approval from the laser safety officer

Fire and reflectivity hazards: Many items used in the OR (e.g., drapes, sponges, plastic cannulas) are made of materials that can be fire hazards if not kept from interacting with the laser beam. Protection from fire and reflectivity is provided by:

- Having fire-retardant or moist draping
- Having water basin available
- Having a fire extinguisher readily available
- Avoiding all alcohol-containing prep solutions
- Avoiding use of plastic and rubber instruments (may melt or ignite)
- Using special fire-resistant ETTs or wet sponge protection for plastic ETTs to decrease the possibility of tube breach or ignition
- Avoiding open sources of O_2 (nasal cannulas, etc.)
- Avoiding metal or other reflective materials

Airborne contaminants: The laser destruction of cells releases carbon particles, microbials, DNA, and toxic fumes. Protection for the patient and medical personnel is provided by:

- Utilizing a smoke evacuation system 2 cm from created plume
- Wearing high-filtration masks. Note that these masks become less effective if moistened from perspiration during a long case; if the laser is to be used at the end of a case, changing masks before using the laser may be prudent.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Browlift and Blepharoplasty, p. 1099, or Office-Based Laser Skin Resurfacing, p. 1567.

Suggested Readings

1. Alster TS, Apfelberg DB, eds: *Cosmetic Laser Surgery: A Practitioner's Guide.* 2nd edition. Wiley-Liss, New York: 1999.
2. Cillo JE Jr, Finn R: Moderate intravenous sedation for office-based full face laser resurfacing using a continuous infusion propofol pump. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2005; 36(7):903–7.
3. Facial Plastic Surgery Clinics of North America: Management of anesthesia and facility in facelift surgery. Stephen Prendeville, MD, Seth Weiser, URNVL. pp. 531–38.
4. Potter JK, Finn R, Cillo J: Modified tumescent technique for outpatient facial laser resurfacing. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2004; 62(7):829–33.
5. Ramos-Zabala A, Pérez-Mencía MT, Fernández-García R, Cascales-Núñez MR: Anesthesia technique for outpatient facial later resurfacing. *Lasers Surg Med* 2004; 34(3):269–72.
6. Wald D, Michelow BJ, Guyuron B: Fire Hazards and CO_2 Laser Resurfacing. *Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery* 1998; 101(1):185–8.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Live Surgery Split Thickness Skin Graft: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pvbxmm9inoo

Liposuction Surgery Video: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nfRsBijqS4E

BSSO & Osseous Genioplasty: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oQI8L5Sxa6w

LeFort III Osteotomy: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Hk_AUbVuDWE

LeFort II Osteotomy: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5YddYjhThgw

LeFort I Osteotomy: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7z5TNrJcE3U

TRAM flap narrated: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xcew3ycbG50

CHAPTER

11.2 Nonfacial Aesthetic Surgery

SURGEONS

Thomas S. Satterwhite, MD
David M. Kahn, MD
George W. Commons, MD (*Liposuction*)

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Vanila Singh, MD
Bruce D. Halperin, MD (*Liposuction*)

AUGMENTATION MAMMOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Augmentation mammoplasty** is accomplished through the use of saline or silicone gel–filled breast implants. The surgery may be performed under GA or local anesthesia with sedation. The patient is positioned either with the arms abducted at 90° or with the hands tucked at the sides. Local anesthetic (± epinephrine) is infiltrated into the skin at the incision site and under the glandular tissue. Implant insertion can be done through inframammary, periareolar, transaxillary, or transumbilical incisions. The implant is placed in a pocket that is created beneath the mammary gland (subglandular), under the pectoralis muscle (submuscular), partially subglandular and partially submuscular (dual plane), or beneath the pectoralis fascia (subfascial), depending on the surgeon's preference and the amount of tissue available. An endoscope may be used to assist with dissection of the pocket. When the implant is placed in the submuscular position, the pectoralis muscle is divided from its insertion along the inframammary fold and sometimes along the sternal insertion to allow the muscle to drape over the implant. Regardless of the location of the pocket, the surgical wound is carefully irrigated and inspected for hemostasis. Sizers, either predetermined volumes of silicone gel or adjustable saline- or air-filled temporary implants, may be used to help determine the appropriate final volume and placement. The patient may be placed in the seated position to assess the size, shape, and symmetry of the breasts. The sizers are then replaced with the permanent prostheses. If permanent saline implants are used, they are filled with saline until the desired volume is reached; gel-filled implants do not have alterable volumes. The wounds are closed, and dressings are applied (Fig. 11.2-1).

Augmentation mammoplasty usually is performed as an outpatient procedure, although some patients may want an overnight stay for pain management and antiemetics. PONV is not uncommon, and all efforts should be made to decrease its frequency.

Variant procedure or approaches: The endoscopic transumbilical approach is used much less frequently.

Preop diagnosis: Hypomastia, breast ptosis

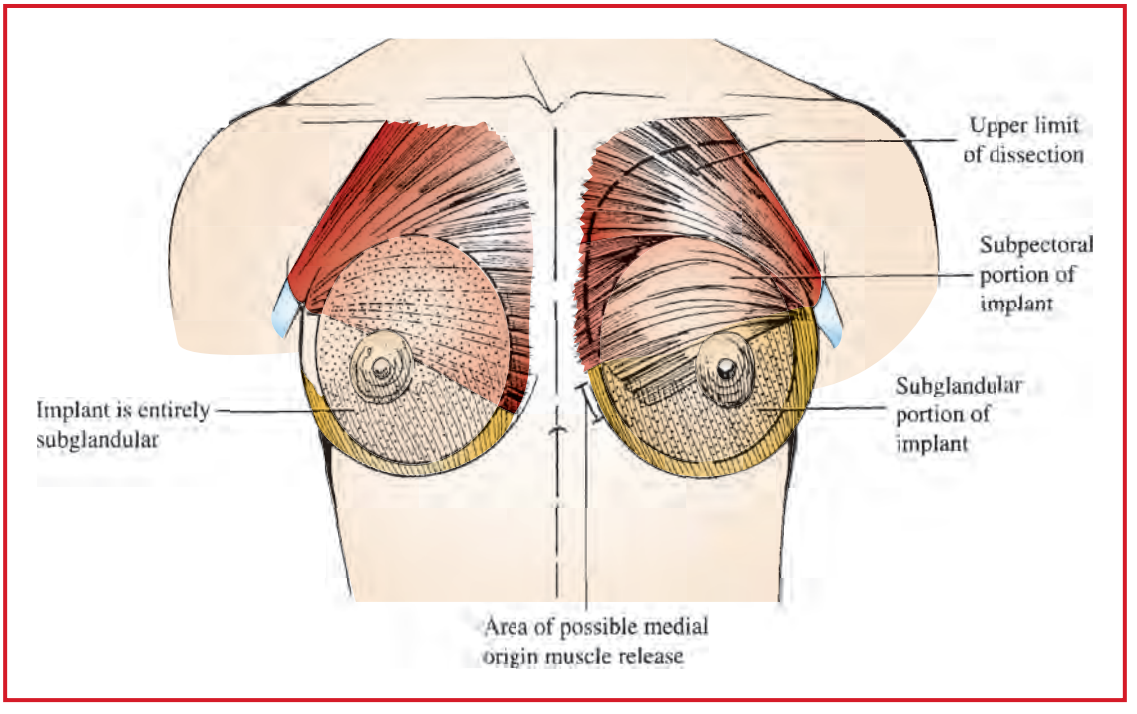


Figure 11.2-1. Breast augmentation. Implants may be placed in a subglandular or subpectoral position. (Reproduced with permission from Spear SL: *The Breast: Principles and Art.* Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Inframammary, periareolar, transaxillarym, or transumbilical
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Unique considerations	May place patient in sitting position during procedure.
Surgical time	1 h
Closing considerations	May need patient in sitting position for application of dressings.
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Outpatient procedure
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Prosthesis failure: 5% Capsular contracture: 5% Hematoma: 3% Infection: 2% Wound dehiscence: < 1% Cosmetic disappointments
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Typically 17–45 yr but also may be done on the contralateral breast in a patient undergoing breast reconstruction.
Incidence	307,180 performed in the United States in 2011; the most common cosmetic surgical procedure
Etiology	Developmental; involution after breast-feeding; age-related atrophy or ptosis
Associated conditions	Not common but can be seen with Poland's syndrome.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Mastopexy/Breast Lift, p. 1113.

Suggested Readings

1. Alpert B, Lalonde D: MOC-PS CME article: breast augmentation. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2008; 121:1.
2. Coopey SB, Specht MC, Warren L, Smith BL, Winograd JM, Fleischmann K: Use of preoperative paravertebral block decreases length of stay in patients undergoing mastectomy plus immediate reconstruction. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; 20(4):1282–6.
3. Gardiner S, Rudkin G, Cooter R, Field J, Bond M: Paravertebral blockade for day-case breast augmentation: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(5):1053–9.
4. Graf RM, Bernandes A, Rippel R, et al: Subfascial breast implant: a new procedure. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2003; 111(2): 904–8.
5. McLaughlin JK, Lipworth L, Murphy DK, et al: The safety of silicone gel-filled breast implants: a review of the epidemiologic evidence. *Ann Plast Surg* 2007; 59(5):569–80.
6. Nahabedian MY, Patel K: Management of common and uncommon problems after primary breast augmentation. *Clin Plast Surg* 2009; 36:127–138.
7. Tebbetts JB: Dual plane breast augmentation: optimizing implant-soft tissue relationships in a wide range of breast types. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 107(5):1255–72.
8. Thorne CH: An evidence-based approach to augmentation mammaplasty. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 126:2184.
9. See Suggested Readings Mastopexy/Breast Lift, p. 1114.

REDUCTION MAMMOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Breast reduction surgery can be done as an outpatient procedure or with an overnight stay. One might choose to admit the patient overnight in a hospital setting to monitor for hematoma formation and evidence of decreased blood supply to the nipple-areola complex. For these patients, the pain from this procedure is relatively low; therefore, PONV tends to be the greater issue in the immediate postoperative period.

The traditional type of breast reduction performed in the United States is the **inferior pedicle technique** using a Wise pattern ("anchor-type" scar) for the skin excision (Fig. 11.2-2). Markings are made with the patient upright in the preoperative holding area. The areola is marked circumferentially with an areola sizer and incised. The remaining incision lines are scored with a scalpel. Next, the inferior pedicle, which contains the neurovascular supply to the nipple-areola complex, is deepithelialized. Excess skin and breast tissue are excised, preserving the pedicle of tissue that will compose the breast mound. The resected tissue from each breast, which can range from 200–1000 g, is weighed as to an adjunctive method of ensuring symmetry. Temporary skin closure with staples allows the patient to be placed in a sitting position so that the breasts can be evaluated for symmetry. When the surgeon is satisfied with the appearance of the breasts, they are closed with sutures. Drains may be placed, depending on surgeon preference (Fig. 11.2-2). After the skin has been closed, the location of the nipple and areola is marked and excised, and the nipple-areola complex is delivered and sutured into position. Soft, supportive dressings are placed.

A technique that has gained in popularity recently is the **vertical reduction mammoplasty**, which shares the fundamental principles of excision of excess breast tissue and preservation of blood flow to the nipple-areola complex but differs in choice of skin incision and pedicle. Relatively more time is spent performing the tissue excision and pedicle shaping, but wound closure time is greatly decreased (resulting in a "lollipop-type" scar) compared with the traditional Wise-pattern technique.

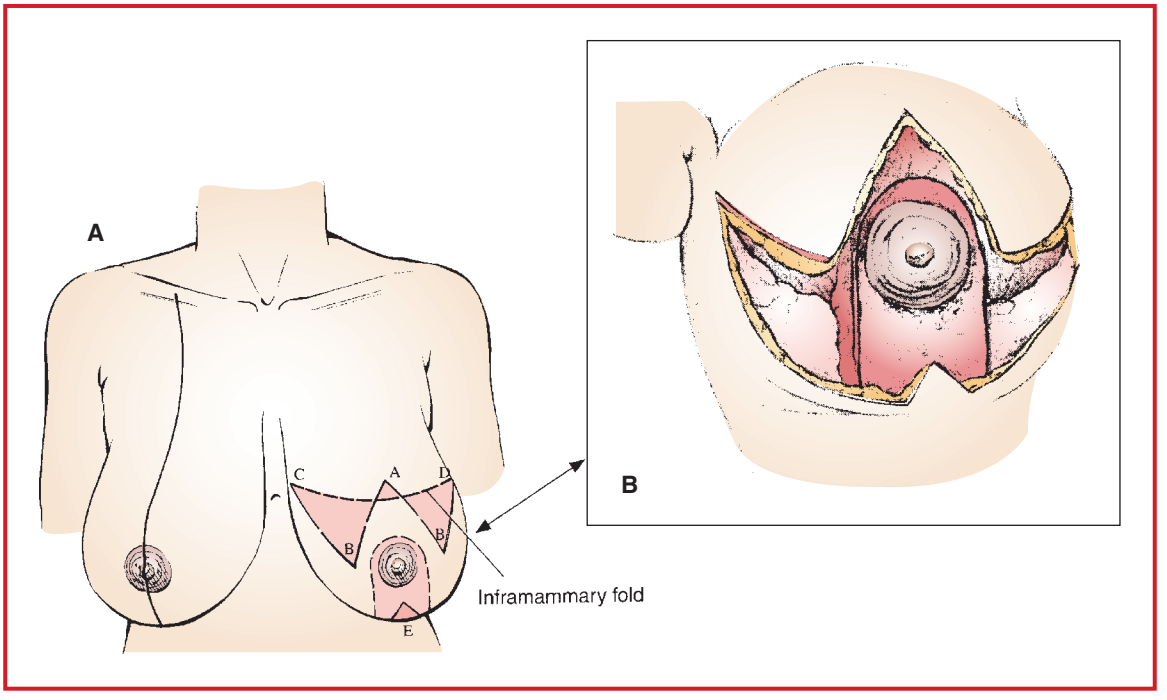


Figure 11.2-2. Reduction mammoplasty using an inferior pedicle technique. **A:** The skin and breast tissue on the medial and lateral sides of the pedicle are resected. **B:** The medial and lateral skin envelopes are sutured at the midline, leaving an inverted T-shaped scar. (Reproduced with permission from Spear SL: *The Breast: Principles and Art*. Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

Variant procedure or approaches: **Liposuction** may be used in combination with this procedure. Reduction mammoplasty using liposuction alone has increased in popularity.

Preop diagnosis: Macromastia, gigantomastia, mammary hypertrophy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, arm abducted 90°
Incision	Marked preop. Most have circumareolar incision with an inferior anchor-shaped extension (Fig. 11.2-2) or a short vertical component ("lollipop" scar).
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Unique considerations	May place patient in sitting position during procedure to assess symmetry; Foley catheter; SCDs
Surgical time	2–5 h, depending on volume of reduction and technique
Closing considerations	May place patient in sitting position for application of dressings.
EBL	100–200 mL
Postop care	Outpatient or 24–h stay for pain/nausea management. Avoid the use of Toradol in the first 24 h because of the large, raw surface created between the skin flaps and breast tissue.
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Dehiscence: 5% Infection: 1% Seroma/hematoma: < 1% (may require reexploration) Skin flap necrosis Loss of nipple-areola complex (may require urgent reexploration) Loss of nipple-areola sensation Hypertrophic scarring Cosmetic disappointments
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	25–65 yr
Incidence	63,109 performed in the United States in 2011
Etiology	Developmental; childbearing; obesity
Associated conditions	None common

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Mastopexy/Breast Lift, p. 1113.

Suggested Readings

1. Hall-Findlay E: A simplified vertical reduction mammaplasty: shortening the learning curve. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1999; 104(3):748–59.
2. Lund HG Jr, Kumpf AL: Aesthetic breast surgery: emerging trends and technologies. *Mo Med* 2010; 107(3):203–9.
3. Palmieri B, Benuzzi G, Costa A, et al: Breast reduction and subsequent cancer: a prophylactic perspective. *Breast* 2006; 15(4):476–81.
4. See Suggested Readings Mastopexy/Breast Lift, p. 1113.

MASTOPEXY/BREAST LIFT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Mastopexy procedures reduce the volume of the skin envelope to match the volume of the breast gland. Depending on the degree of ptosis ("droopy breasts") and the wishes of the patient, the ptosis may be treated by augmentation alone to increase the volume of the breast, by skin excision alone to reduce the skin envelope appropriately, or by a combination of a mastopexy and an augmentation.

The operation itself resembles a reduction mammoplasty, except that breast tissue is generally excised minimally or not at all, and an implant may be added (**mastopexy/augmentation**). The patient is marked before surgery in the upright position. After the induction of anesthesia, the arms are positioned either tucked at the patient's sides or abducted 90°. The procedure begins with the areola being marked circumferentially with an areola sizer and then incised. Next, the skin flaps are elevated. The breast tissue is moved to a higher position on the chest wall, and the skin is redraped and tailor-tacked closed. The patient is placed in a sitting position to assess for symmetry and nipple location. The nipple-areola complex is then brought out into its new position, and dressings are applied.

Preop diagnosis: Breast ptosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Circumareolar ± inferior vertical extension or complete anchor
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Unique considerations	May place patient in sitting position during procedure.
Surgical time	2–4 h
Closing considerations	May place patient in sitting position for application of dressings.
EBL	> 100 mL
Postop care	Outpatient or 24-h stay
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Wound healing: 5% Infection: 1% Seroma/hematoma: < 1% Hypertrophic scarring Cosmetic disappointments
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	35–65 yr
Incidence	90,679 performed in the United States in 2011
Etiology	Age-related ptosis; involution after breastfeeding; weight loss
Associated conditions	None common

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR MAMMOPLASTY/MASTOPEXY

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, three patient populations present for mammoplasty: (a) healthy individuals, for breast reduction/augmentation/lift or removal of an implant; (b) morbidly obese, for breast reduction; and (c) breast cancer patients, for reconstruction after mastectomy. (For preop considerations in the morbidly obese patient, see Anesthetic Considerations for Abdominoplasty, p. 1118.) Breast cancer patients undergoing mastectomy with immediate reconstruction will not have had either chemotherapy or radiation. The following considerations are for breast cancer patients undergoing delayed reconstruction post-chemotherapy.

Respiratory	Pulmonary fibrosis may complicate chemotherapy. Alkylating agents (e.g., cyclophosphamide and melphalan), used to treat breast cancer, have some pulmonary toxicity. Consider pulmonary fibrosis in a patient reporting dyspnea, nonproductive cough, and fever. **Tests:** Consider CXR; ABG, PFTs as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	Cardiomyopathy and CHF may result from chemotherapy, especially doxorubicin (Adriamycin) > 550 mg/m^2. **Tests:** Consider ECG; ECHO, if indicated from H&P.
Neurologic	Note any pre-existing injury to long thoracic nerves, as evidenced by winged scapula deformity.
Musculoskeletal	Avoid upper extremity iv and BP cuff on mastectomy side.
Hematologic	Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and anemia from chemotherapy may be present. **Tests:** CBC; Plt count
Renal/Hepatic	Methotrexate can produce some renal and hepatic dysfunction. **Tests:** Cr; LFTs
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P, prior chemotherapy
Premedication	Midazolam 1–2 mg iv immediately preop. Surgeon may want to mark the patient's skin preop, with patient standing. Delay premedication until this has been done.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). ✓ with surgeons regarding use of a nerve stimulator during dissection (and the need to avoid muscle relaxants). Consider intratracheal lidocaine 4% LTA to minimize coughing during position changes.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Surgeons may want patient sitting for part of the procedure. Pneumothorax should be considered with any change in lung inflation pressure, O_2 sat, or BP.	
Emergence	During some of the procedure and for application of dressing, patient may be moved to sitting position, with consequent coughing, bucking, etc. (Rx: deeper anesthesia, e.g., propofol 0.5 mg/kg or lidocaine 1 mg/kg.) Watch BP carefully and treat orthostatic hypotension if it occurs, usually with a fluid bolus if the patient is not volume sensitive (Hx of CHF or renal failure).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–8 mL/kg/h	Minimal blood loss for simple reconstruction, augmentation, or reduction; larger blood losses anticipated for combined procedures (e.g., mastectomy with immediate reconstruction or flap reconstruction).

Monitoring	Standard monitors (p. B-1)	Arterial line in the morbidly obese may be necessary to obtain accurate BP measurements.
Positioning	Patient may need to be sitting for application of dressing.	Avoid HTN, bucking, and straining; these may cause or exacerbate bleeding at reconstruction site. Careful padding of arms to protect them during position change.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax	
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3) Regional nerve blocks	Consider multimodal therapy including gabapentin, opiates, and paravertebral/intercostal nerve blocks.

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Plastic Surgeons web site: www.plasticsurgery.org
2. Arain MR, Buggy DJ: Anaesthesia for cancer patients. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20(3):247–53.
3. Elliott LF: Circumareolar mastopexy with augmentation. *Clin Plast Surg* 2002; 29(3):337–47.
4. Gardiner S, Rudkin G, Cooter R, Field J, Bond M: Paravertebral blockade for day-case breast augmentation: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(5):1053–9.
5. Kuruba R, Koche LS, Murr MM: Preoperative assessment and perioperative care of patients undergoing bariatric surgery. *Med Clin North Am* 2007; 91(3):339–51.
6. Matarasso A: Suction mammoplasty: the use of suction lipectomy alone to reduce large breasts. *Clin Plast Surg* 2002; 29(3):433–43.
7. Schnabel A, Reichl SU, Kranke P, Pogatzki-Zahn EM, Zahn PK: Efficacy and safety of paravertebral blocks in breast surgery: a mata-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Br J Anaesth* 2010; 105(6):842–52.
8. Warren AG, Morris DJ, Houlihan MJ, Slavin SA: Breast reconstruction in a changing breast cancer treatment paradigm. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2008; 121(4):1116–26.

BRACHIOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Brachioplasty** is performed as outpatient surgery for patients who note "flabbiness" or a "bat-wing" appearance of their upper arms. Markings are done in the preoperative holding area with the patient upright, arms abducted and flexed. An incision is made starting along the chest wall or in the axilla, extending onto the upper arm, and stopping before the elbow. Excess skin and soft tissue are excised, and the incision is closed, sometimes over a drain. Dressings are applied, often followed by a compression garment or ACE wraps.

Usual preop diagnosis: Upper arm laxity or redundancy, lipodystrophy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, arms abducted
Incision	From chest/axilla, extending along lower inner arm
Unique considerations	Both arms must be mobile and prepped circumferentially; SCDs
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1–2 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Avoid ketorolac first 24–48 h
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Seroma: 10% Hypertrophic scarring: 10% Dehiscence: 7.5% Infection: 5–7% Nerve injury: 5%
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–65 yr
Male:Female	1:50
Incidence	14,998 performed in the United States in 2011
Etiology	Overweight; aging; massive weight loss
Associated conditions	Obesity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for brachioplasty have often undergone gastric bypass surgery with massive weight loss. IV access may be difficult. Consider need for iv access in lower limb or neck due to bilateral arm surgery. (See Anesthesia Considerations in Morbid Obesity, p. 514)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, routine monitors

Procedure may be combined with other plastic procedures, necessitating position changes.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) for healthy patients. Special considerations for the morbidly obese include prophylaxis for aspiration, followed by rapid-sequence induction in an appropriately positioned patient (see Fig. 7.2-6). If mandibular and cervical mobility are decreased by excessive soft tissue, an awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6) with the patient sitting may be necessary. Anticipate rapid O_2 desaturation during periods of hypoventilation, even with adequate preoxygenation.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Calculate most drug doses on basis of lean body mass. In the obese, controlled ventilation with larger TVs, PEEP, and high inspired O_2 concentration is recommended. Positioning may be difficult, and care must be taken to give adequate padding and support.
Emergence	Give antiemetics (ondansetron 4 mg) 20 min before conclusion of surgery.
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss, 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–8 mL/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	PCA Oral medications for outpatients
Tests	As indicated by patient condition

Suggested Readings

1. Hurwitz DJ, Holland SW: The L brachioplasty: an innovative approach to correct excess tissue of the upper arm, axilla, and lateral chest. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 117(2):403–11; discussion 412–3.
2. Knoetgen J III, Moran SL: Long-term outcomes and complications associated with brachioplasty: a retrospective review and cadaveric study. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 117(7):2219–23.
3. Lockwood TE: Brachioplasty with superficial fascial system suspension. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1995; 96(4):912–20.

ABDOMINOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients who present for **abdominoplasty** have laxity in the abdominal wall musculature and excess skin and adipose tissue. This laxity may be associated with rectus muscle diastasis. **Liposuction** often is performed before abdominoplasty to remove additional adipose tissue and improve contour.

Incision lines are marked on the patient preoperatively in the upright position (Fig. 11.2-3). The umbilicus is circumscribed, with care taken to preserve its blood supply. An incision is made above the pubic hairline and extended

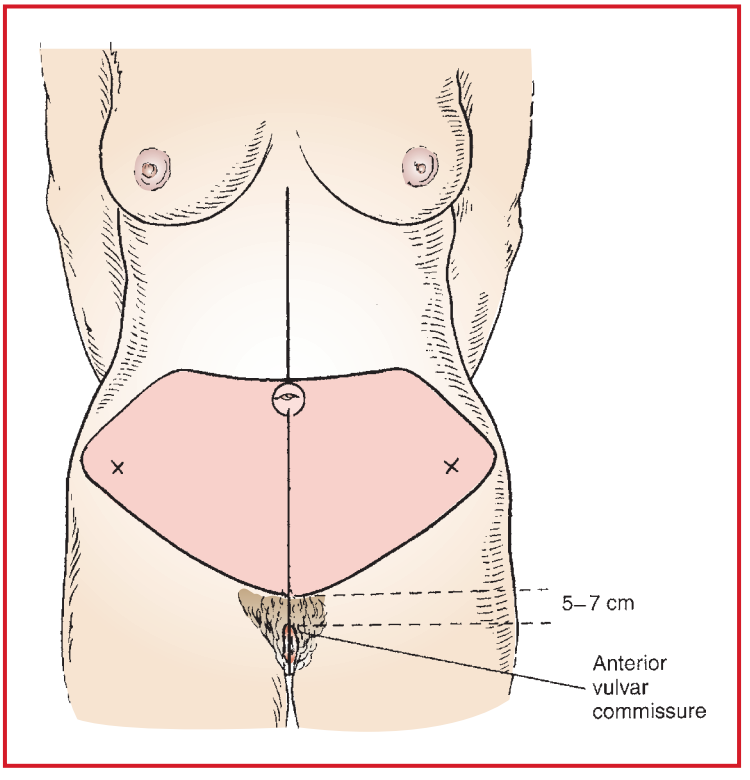


Figure 11.2-3. Abdominoplasty, markings for incisions. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM: *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

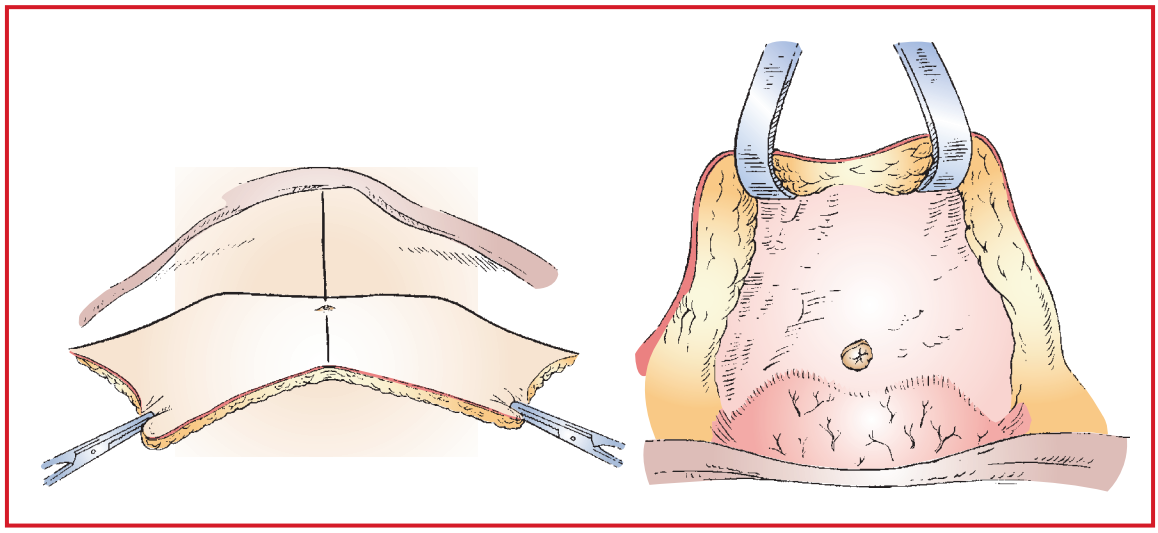


Figure 11.2-4. After the lower incision has been made and the abdominal flap has been elevated, the flap is pulled down to overlap the inferior incision, and the redundant soft tissue is excised in a tailor-tack fashion. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM: *Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery*, 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997).

bilaterally to each anterior-superior iliac spine. Electrocautery is used to raise a flap of skin, subcutaneous tissue, and fat at the level of the abdominal wall fascia. The dissection extends cephalad to the costal margin. The operating table is flexed to place the patient in the semi-Fowler position. The elevated flap is pulled down to overlap the inferior incision, and the redundant soft tissue is excised in a tailor-tack fashion (Fig. 11.2-4). The surgical area is inspected for hemostasis and irrigated. Sutures may be placed to plicate the abdominal wall musculature if there is laxity. Fibrin sealant may be sprayed to aid in hemostasis. The wound is closed over drains, and the umbilicus is brought out through a new incision. Dressings, which may include an abdominal binder, are applied. The patient is maintained in the semi-Fowler position during transfer from the operating table. The patient may elect to have the procedure as an outpatient or with an overnight stay in a monitored facility.

Variant procedure or approaches: Patients who require additional width reduction may have a fleur-de-lis abdominoplasty (vertical midline extension of incision and scar). Panniculectomy (simple resection of overhanging skin and soft tissue) can be performed alone without the fascial plication, particularly in the case of morbidly obese patients. Mini-abdominoplasty may be performed in those patients who require less extensive dissection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Abdominal wall laxity; rectus diastasis; lipodystrophy; redundant skin and soft tissue

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Extended Pfannenstiel's; periumbilical; vertical midline extension if needed
Unique considerations	Foley catheter; SCDs
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	1.5–4 h
Closing considerations	Flex table to facilitate closure; patient must subsequently remain in semi-Fowler position.
EBL	~100 mL, not including blood contained in specimen.
Postop care	Maintain flexed position; avoid ketorolac in the first 24–48 h.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Mortality	0–1%
Morbidity	Ileus: 10% Infection: 2–3% Dehiscence: 1% Fat embolism: 1% DVT: 1% Hematoma Seroma
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–65 yr
Male:Female	1:25
Incidence	115,902 performed in the United States in 2011
Etiology	Overweight; laxity of skin after pregnancy; massive weight loss
Associated conditions	Obesity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, there are two patient populations for abdominoplasty: the generally healthy and the morbidly obese. Some patients have Hx of amphetamine, cocaine, or thyroid hormone abuse and ↑ incidence of hiatal hernia. The following considerations focus on the morbidly obese patient (body weight ≥ 2 × ideal weight. Ideal body weight can be estimated by subtracting 100 (male) or 105 (female) from height in cm).

Respiratory	In the morbidly obese patient, findings include: ↑ O_2 consumption, ↑ CO_2 production, restrictive lung disease, ↓ FRC, ↓ ERV, ↓ VC, and ↓ PaO_2. These changes are exacerbated by the supine position. Younger patients may show alveolar hyperventilation in response to hypoxemia; older patients may not and may retain CO_2. Patients may have obesity hypoventilation syndrome (Pickwickian syndrome) and sleep apnea; with intermittent airway obstruction, hypoxemia, and hypercarbia during sleep, which may → pulmonary HTN. Obese patients are at ↑ risk of pulmonary aspiration due to ↑ incidence of hiatal hernia, GERD, and ↑ gastric volumes (typically > 25 mL with pH < 2.5). See Premedication, below, for aspiration prophylaxis. **Tests:** Consider CXR, room-air ABG, and PFT (helpful, but generally do not predict postop complications, e.g., atelectasis, pneumonia).
Cardiovascular	↑ CO and ↑ blood volume → LVH. Chronic hypoxia and pulmonary compromise may produce right heart failure, ↓↓ exercise tolerance, ↑ risk of CAD, and pulmonary HTN. Patients with LVH may have ↑ dysrhythmias. Some patients may have previously taken fenfluramine alone or in combination with phentermine for weight loss. Those patients should be evaluated for pulmonary HTN (e.g., dyspnea, central cyanosis, right axis deviation, and CXR changes) and valvular heart disease. **Tests:** ECG (↑ HR, conduction abnormalities, LVH); CXR (cardiomegaly)
Metabolic	Increased incidence of diabetes, hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, liver abnormalities, ↓ plasma folate, B_{12}, ↑ incidence of cholelithiasis, nephrolithiasis. Determine whether electrolyte abnormalities are present in patient s/p ileojejunal bypass. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Hematologic	Polycythemia suggests chronic hypoxemia (see Respiratory, above). **Tests:** Hb/Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Sedative premedication is usually avoided in the morbidly obese due to their pulmonary compromise and increased sensitivity to sedative agents. Aspiration prophylaxis is useful: ranitidine 50 mg iv 30–60 min before surgery, plus nonparticulate antacid (Na citrate 0.3 M, 30 mL po) preinduction. In addition, metoclopramide 10 mg iv may be given, although it has not been shown to be more effective in combination with an H_2-blocker than the H_2-blocker alone. For the healthy outpatient, midazolam 1–2 mg iv immediately before transport to the OR may lessen anxiety.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Morbidly obese patients may not tolerate the supine position for an extended period of time. Consider placement of thoracic epidural for postop pain control.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) for healthy patients. Special considerations for the morbidly obese include prophylaxis for aspiration (see above), followed by rapid-sequence induction in an appropriately positioned patient (see Fig. 7.2-6). If mandibular and cervical mobility are decreased by excessive soft tissue, an awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6) with the patient sitting may be necessary. Anticipate rapid O_2 desaturation during periods of hypoventilation, even with adequate preoxygenation (e.g., 4 VC breaths of 100% O_2 in 30 min).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Calculate most drug doses on basis of lean body mass. In the obese, increased plasma fluoride concentrations are found after anesthesia with volatile anesthetics; controlled ventilation with larger TVs, PEEP, and high inspired O_2 concentration is recommended. Because epinephrine infiltration generally is used to decrease blood loss, isoflurane is recommended as the least dysrhythmogenic of the inhalation agents in the presence of epinephrine. ***NB:** Midazolam has a prolonged half-life in obese patients, but awakening times from inhalational or narcotic-based anesthetics are comparable to those of nonobese patients.	
Emergence	Smooth emergence with minimal bucking, coughing, or retching to minimize tension on the suture line; give antiemetics (metoclopramide 10 mg and ondansetron 4 mg) 20 min before conclusion of surgery. Maintenance of flexed position will minimize tension on suture line. Small additional doses of narcotic (e.g., meperidine 10–20 mg) may be titrated to RR if patient is allowed to resume spontaneous respiration before the end of the case.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 6–10 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line	Additional monitoring for the morbidly obese patient may include arterial and CVP lines.
Positioning	Flexed position Pillows under knees ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Flexed position minimizes tension on suture line. Morbidly obese may require two OR tables side-by-side. Supine position may be poorly tolerated; monitor ventilation closely.
Complications	Fat emboli Rhabdomyolysis	More common during liposuction. Increased risk with prolonged surgery.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Patients may have postop ileus of 1- to 2-d duration.	The morbidly obese should not be outpatients; they have an ↑ incidence of wound infection, DVT, PE, and postop pulmonary complications. Provide supplemental O_2 for the first 2 d postop. Keep patient in semisitting or flexed position to avoid undue stress on wound.
Pain management	Epidural narcotics or PCA may be used (p. C-3).	Monitor patient for postop respiratory depression.
Tests	Pulse oximetry	Maximum reduction of arterial saturation may occur on postop day 2–3.

Suggested Readings

1. Aldenkortt M, Lysakowski C, Elia N, Brochard L, Tramer MR: Ventilation strategies in obese patients undergoing surgery: a quantitative systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth* 2012; 109(4):493–502.
2. Dellon AL: Fleur-de-lis abdominoplasty. *Aesth Plast Surg* 1985; 9:27–32.
3. Hatef DA, Trussler AP, Kenkel JM: Procedural risk for venous thromboembolism in abdominal contouring surgery: a systematic review of the literature. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; 125(1):352–62.
4. Joshi GP, Ankichetty SP, Gan TJ, Chung F: Society for ambulatory anesthesia consensus statement on preoperative selection of adult patients with obstructive sleep apnea scheduled for ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(5):1060–8.
5. Kirkham L, Thomas M: Anaesthesia in obese patients. *Br J Hosp Med (Lond)* 2011; 72(9):515–20.
6. Michaels, BN, Eko FN: Outpatient abdominoplasty facilitated by rib blocks. *Plastic Reconstr Surg* 2009; 124(4):635–42.
7. Peterson PL, et al: The transversus abdominis plane block: a valuable option for postoperative analgesia? A topical review. *Acta Anaesthsiol Scand* 2010; 54(3):529–35.
8. Schumann R: Anaesthesia for bariatric surgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 25(1):83–93.
9. Staalesen T, Elander A, Strandell A, Bergh C: A systematic review of outcomes of abdominoplasty. *J Plast Surg Hand Surg* 2012; 46(3–4):139–44.

BODY LIFTS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: With heightened awareness of the importance of nutrition and exercise as well as the advent of improved gastric bypass and restriction techniques, more patients with massive weight loss are presenting to plastic surgeons for treatment of the resultant skin excess and laxity. Patients frequently have multiple areas of concern, from the face (see **Facelifts**) to the breasts (see **Mastopexy**) to the abdomen and thighs. Often patients will require circumferential torsoplasty (combining **Abdominoplasty** with a modified buttocks lift) and/or extensive lower body work (medial and lateral thigh lifts). All of these body lift procedures may be combined with **liposuction** for additional contouring.

The patient is marked in the standing position in the preoperative holding area. Depending on surgeon preference, the initial operative position may begin supine, lateral decubitus, or prone. Incisions are made, and the marked excess skin and soft tissues are elevated and excised. The patient's position is changed as needed to allow for access to all of the surgical areas. Drains are placed. During wound closure, care is taken to close in several layers, beginning with the strength layer of the superficial fascial system. Dressings are applied, and compression garments or ACE wraps may also be used. The patient may elect to have the procedure as an outpatient but frequently choose so stay overnight in a monitored facility.

Usual preop diagnosis: Thigh and buttock laxity; lipodystrophy; redundant skin and soft tissue

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Multiple: supine, lateral decubitus, prone
Incision	Depending on the combination of procedures; may include circumferential waistline, transverse groin crease, possible medial thigh vertical extension
Unique considerations	Foley catheter; knee-high SCDs; appropriate pressure point padding
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2–6 h
EBL	50–100 mL, not including blood contained in specimen
Postop care	Avoid ketorolac in the first 24–48 h; maintain semi-Fowler position for any procedures involving abdominoplasty
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Seroma: 1–16% Dehiscence: 1–32% Skin necrosis: 1–10% Infection: 0.5–3.5% DVT/PE: 2–3%
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	20–65 yr
Male:Female	1:4
Incidence	Thigh lift: 9761 performed in the United States in 2011 Lower body lift: 7615 performed in the United States in 2011
Etiology	Overweight; massive weight loss
Associated conditions	Obesity

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Patients may have had massive weight loss or may be morbidly obese. (See Anesthetic Considerations for Abdominoplasty, p. 1118). Body lift procedures may be combined with liposuction. (See Anesthetic Considerations, see p. 1123)

Suggested Readings

1. Capella JF: Body lift. *Clin Plast Surg* 2008; 35(1):27–51.
2. Nemerofsky RB, Oliak DA, Capella JF: Body lift: an account of 200 consecutive cases in the massive weight loss patient. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 117(2):414–30.
3. Rohrich RJ, Gosman AA, Conrad MH, et al: Simplifying circumferential body contouring: the central body lift evolution. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 118(2):525–35; discussion 536–8.
4. Shermak MA: Body contouring. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 129(6):963e–78e.
5. Shermak MA: Pearls and perils of caring for the postbariatric body contouring patients. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 130(4):586e–97e.
6. Strauch B, Herman C, Rohde C, et al: Mid-body contouring in the post-bariatric surgery patient. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 117(7):2200–11.

LIPOSUCTION

George W. Commons, MD

Body contour surgery remains one of the most commonly performed cosmetic surgical procedures in North America. The surgical techniques used to achieve body contour change continue to evolve. The use of epinephrine-containing wetting solutions injected in the subcutaneous tissue prior to aspiration of fat has dramatically reduced perioperative blood loss and allowed the surgeon to achieve a more dramatic body contour change. New technologies continue to be developed that may achieve a better cosmetic outcome with less tissue trauma and fewer complications. Randomized controlled studies comparing differing technologies and surgical techniques have yet to be performed. Perioperative surgical and anesthetic complications continue to occur during liposuction surgery. Adverse outcome associated with body contour surgery includes pulmonary embolus, fat emboli, fluid overload from intravenous fluid and use of the wetting solution, and local anesthetic toxicity from the wetting solution. Careful coordination of the surgical procedure with all members of the surgical team is mandatory to ensure patient safety.

Confirmation of the planned surgical procedure, review of the planned volume of injection of wetting solution, and the composition of the wetting solution must be done prior to the start of surgery. Local anesthetic dosing errors during liposuction have led to complications and death during liposuction surgery. Current surgical techniques in liposuction involve the injection of dilute solutions of epinephrine into the subcutaneous fat prior to the start of fat disruption to reduce perioperative blood loss. Although the epinephrine component of the wetting solution causes vasoconstriction and reduces blood loss, the local anesthetic added to the wetting solution reduces intraop anesthetic requirements and provides postop analgesia. The wetting solution is compounded by adding 200–500 mg of lidocaine and 1 mg of epinephrine to a 1 L bag of lactated Ringer's. The final epinephrine concentration of 1:1,000,000 provides enough vasoconstriction to reduce blood loss to 2–8% of the total volume of lipoaspirate obtained. Higher concentrations of local anesthetic may be necessary for patient comfort for surgery performed without general or regional anesthesia as the primary anesthetic technique. Adequate time (10 min or longer) after injection of the wetting solution must be given for epinephrine-induced vasoconstriction to take effect. Excessive blood loss during liposuction may occur after failure to add epinephrine to the wetting solution, the use of larger diameter liposuction cannulae or accidental blood vessel puncture.

External ultrasound/internal ultrasound/laser: The application of energy sources to disrupt the integrity of fat tissue prior to aspiration may be used to achieve improvements in body contour. Anecdotal reports of improvement in cellulite of the skin in the liposuction area after laser/ultrasound energy have been published. Disruption of fat tissue with ultrasound or laser prior to aspiration reduces the physical work of the surgical procedure. Complications reported with the use of ultrasound or laser include seroma formation, increased blood loss, skin loss secondary to burn, and body cavity perforation with the energy applying cannula.

Small incisions are made in strategic locations to hide scars. Prefabricated wound protection inserts may be used to protect the skin from cannula irritation. Following completion of the surgery, depending on the degree of surgery and the comfort of the patient. Postop pain is highly variable depending on surgical area and the magnitude of the surgical procedure. Oral analgesics starting with opioids and rapidly tapering to nonnarcotic analgesics over the course of 1–2 wk are usually satisfactory.

Ultrasonic energy is now being used for the treatment of axillary osmidrosis (hyperhidrosis). Use of the ultrasonic probe in the superficial planes of the skin of the axilla has successfully treated hyperhidrosis. The procedure may be performed under local anesthesia or general anesthesia.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	According to body region (repositioning during surgery is common)
Incision	Incisions may be hidden in skin folds and by clothing. Long infusion cannulas and long liposuction probes help minimize the number of incisions necessary.
Special instrumentation	Specialized laser cannulas, ultrasonic probes, and power assisting equipment. Suction machines and canisters used to aspirate and collect fat.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2–9 h depending on the volume of resection and the number of surgical sites
EBL	2–8% of total aspirate volume when using epinephrine-containing wetting solution before aspiration

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Postop care	PACU for small-volume liposuction; hospitalization for postop monitoring for resection volume > 5–6 L of fat depending on body size of the patient and the number of regions of the body undergoing surgery.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Pulmonary emboli, fat emboli, fluid overload, local anesthetic toxicity, body cavity perforation, skin burn, and tissue loss from ultrasonic energy application or tissue trauma from lipo cannula
Unique considerations	Wetting solution must be warmed before infiltration to prevent hypothermia, Foley catheter should be used during larger-volume surgeries to monitor fluid status and prevent bladder distension. TEDs, SCDs used on all cases. Postop use of anticoagulant drugs during the first week may lead to excessive bleeding. IVC filter considered for patient with pulmonary embolus postop.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Teens–70 yr
Female:Male	10:1
Etiology	Quest for eternal youth

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Bruce D. Halperin, MD

PREOPERATIVE

Patients considering liposuction should be ASA category I or II. The ideal candidate for surgery should be physically active and have maintained a stable body weight for 6 mo–1 yr. Current techniques use the injection of wetting solution into the fat prior to aspiration to reduce blood loss and to deliver local anesthetic for postop analgesia. Most wetting solutions contain lidocaine 200–500 mg/L combined with epinephrine 1 mg/L (1/1,000,000). Typically, 1 mL of wetting solution will be injected for each 1 mL of anticipated fat resection. Determining the maximum amount of fat that is safe to remove in one surgical setting is complex. Safety is partially determined by the size of the patient and the number or surgical regions planned to have liposuction. Large-volume (> 5000 mL) resection may require overnight medical observation and monitoring (fluid shifts, drop in Hct, fluid overload). Large volumes of wetting solution are often used in these procedures and require limiting iv fluid administration. In contrast, small-volume liposuction often requires larger volumes of iv fluid administration because of the small volumes of wetting solution that would be available for postop redistribution from the fat tissue into the central circulation. Performing several small-volume resections may be preferable than a single very large resection given concerns with fluid shifts, blood loss, respiratory compromise, and local anesthetic toxicity.

Respiratory	Postop discomfort following chest, upper back, and upper abdomen liposuction may interfere with respiration. Restrictive compression garments applied to the chest or upper abdomen may also restrict breathing. Patients with respiratory impairment may not be candidates for this procedure. Careful postop monitoring of O_2 saturation is mandatory.
Cardiovascular	Patients with a history of cardiac dysfunction will not be candidates for liposuction. Fluid management is based on estimation of the patient's intravascular volume status, the volume of tumescent (wetting) fluid injected during surgery, and the quantity of iv fluid given. Tumescent solution injected into the subcutaneous tissue is absorbed over 48 h. Postop pulmonary edema has been reported secondary to fluid overload. Regional anesthesia may make perioperative fluid management more difficult in large-volume surgeries secondary to peripheral vasodilation. Large doses of epinephrine may lead to increases in blood pressure and cardiac arrhythmias. After tumescent injection, epinephrine levels peak at 5–6 h vs. 10–12 h for local anesthetic levels.

Neurologic	Preop neurologic exam should be normal. Local anesthetic in the wetting solution may cause numbness in the surgical region for several hours after surgery. Nerve trauma caused by the liposuction instruments has been reported. Careful body positioning during surgery is mandatory as the patient's position on the operating room table is frequently changed during the course of the surgery. Repeated checking of the patient's body position on the table is needed because of the vigorous motion of the liposuction procedure.
Hematologic	Vasoconstriction from epinephrine-containing wetting solutions reduces blood loss to 2–8% of the total aspirate volume. Heavy bleeding during liposuction should cause the procedure to be halted and the cause of bleeding investigated. Failure to add epinephrine to the wetting solution as a cause of bleeding has been reported. Blood vessel injury, accidental puncture of a body cavity, or unknown coagulopathy may be the cause of increased blood loss. **Tests:** Hct, PT, PTT, platelet count
Laboratory	No other preop testing is needed in healthy patients.
Premedication	Midazolam 1–2 mg iv or lorazepam 1 mg po 1–2 h preop

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Local anesthesia may be suitable for smaller-volume liposuction. New technology (laser, ultrasound) claims decreased pain during surgery, but that has yet to be objectively confirmed. Regional anesthesia (spinal, epidural) may be used when the surgical regions are appropriate for this type of anesthetic. Concerns have been raised because of vasodilation causing an increase in blood loss and an increased risk of fat embolization. Adding local anesthetics to an epidural catheter in combination with local anesthetic in the wetting solution requires careful planning to avoid local anesthetic toxicity. GA ensures patient comfort and allows liposuction to be performed on all body regions. Control of the airway and control of ventilation provide safety during surgery, particularly for patients in the prone position. SCDs or foot/ankle compression devices are used for all patients to reduce the risk of PE. Routine use of 1 or 2 forced air thermal blankets to maintain normal body temperature is recommended.

Induction	Standard induction (see pp. B-2). Steroids (dexamethasone 8 mg) may be used to reduce postop swelling, reduce the incidence of postop nausea, and may be of benefit in the event of fat embolism.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) with volatile anesthetics or propofol infusion. Neuromuscular blockade as appropriate. GA is maintained during application of compression garments at the end of the procedure.	
Emergence	Antiemetic prophylaxis with combination drug therapy (metoclopramide 10–20 mg) and ondansetron (4 mg) is appropriate. Careful monitoring of respiratory function is necessary when surgery has been performed on the chest, back, or upper abdomen because compression garments and postop pain may limit respiration.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 or 20 ga ×1 NS/LR	Fluid administration determined by the needs of the case. Open surgery (abdominoplasty) performed in combination with liposuction will require careful monitoring of intravascular status and monitoring of urine output during surgery. Transfusion rarely needed, diuretics (furosemide 5–10 mg) may be needed for patients receiving large volumes of wetting solution. Larger intravenous fluid volumes are needed during smaller-volume liposuction because less wetting solution has been used. IV fluids may need to be limited in patients undergoing larger-volume liposuction because larger volumes of wetting solution will be absorbed into the circulation.
Monitoring	Standard monitoring Foley catheter	Urine output monitoring mandatory on all large-volume lipo cases. Careful temperature monitoring.

Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ and protect eyes while in prone position Repeat positioning check frequently.	Frequent intraop position checks are needed as patient position may change during surgery → ↑ risk of peripheral nerve injury. Document eye checks Q 15 min while patients are in the prone position.
Complications	Local anesthetic toxicity Excessive blood loss Volume overload Abdominal cavity perforation Peripheral nerve injury Hypothermia Fat embolism Pulmonary embolism	Lidocaine in a dose of 35 mg/kg in the wetting solution with epinephrine 1,000,000 has been shown to produce safe serum levels when used for tumescent injection during liposuction. Peak plasma lidocaine levels occur 10–12 h after infusion. Peak epinephrine levels occur 5–6 h after infusion and may lead to increases in heart rate and/or blood pressure. Postop hypoxia may be caused by multiple factors, including fluid overload and pulmonary edema, pneumothorax, restricted ventilation, pulmonary embolus, respiratory depression. Unexplained postop hypoxia will require hospitalization. Anticoagulation for PE may lead to severe blood loss because of large tissue areas that have been injured during liposuction. Blood transfusion must be readily available before beginning anticoagulation therapy in a patient who has recently undergone liposuction. Inferior vena caval filter may be needed for a patient with PE. Hypertention may be caused by fluid overload, epinephrine effect, or surgery-induced pain.
Pain management	PO analgesics IV opiates	Patients often will be comfortable 2° to residual local anesthesia that may persist for 8–24 h. Oral analgesics are usually satisfactory for postop pain control.
Tests	Rarely needed, Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Blugerman G, Schavelzon D, Paul M: A safety and feasibility study of a novel radiofrequency-assisted liposuction. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; 125(3):998.
2. Burk RW III, Guzman-Stein G, Vasconez LO: Lidocaine and epinephrine levels in tumescent technique liposuction. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1996; 97:1379.
3. Commons GW, Chang CC, Vistnes D, Halperin BD: Role of liposuction in morbid obesity. In: *Problems in General Surgery*. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2000.
4. Commons GW, Halperin BD, Chang CC: Large volume liposuction: a review of 631 consecutive cases over 12 years. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 108:1753.
5. Commons GW, Halperin BD: Considerations in large volume liposuction. *Sem Plast Surg* 2002; 16(2).
6. Do DV, Kelley LC: Tumescent anesthesia: evolution and current uses. *Adv Dermatol* 2007; 23:33–46.
7. Gilliland M, Commons GW, Halperin BD: Safety issues in ultrasonic assisted large volume lipoplasty. *Clin Plast Surg* 1999; 26(2):317–35.
8. Grazer FM, deJong RH: Fatal outcomes from liposuction: census survey of cosmetic surgeons. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2000; 105(1);436–48.
9. Hunstand JP: Body contouring in the obese patient. *Clin Plast Surg* 1996; 23(4):647–70.
10. Kenkel JM, et al: Hemodynamic physiology and thermoregulation in liposuction. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2004 Aug; 114(2):503–13.
11. Kenkel JM, Spencer AB, Love EJ, et al: Hemodynamics, electrolytes, and organ histology of larger-volume liposuction in a porcine model. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2004; 113:1391.
12. Kim YH, Cha SM, Shenthilkumar N, Hwang WJ: Analysis of postoperative complications for superficial liposuction: a review of 2,398 cases. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 127:863.
13. Lipschitz AH, Kenkel JM, Luby M, et al: Electrolyte and plasma enzyme analyses during large-volume liposuction. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2004; 114:766.
14. Meister F: Possible association between tumescent technique and life-threatening pulmonary complications. *Clin Plast Surg* 1996; 23:642.
15. Rohrick RJ, Leedy JE, Swamy R, Brown SA, Coleman J: Fluid resuscitation in liposuction: a retrospective review of 89 consecutive patients. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 117(2):431–5.

CHAPTER

11.3 Craniofacial Surgery

SURGEON

Stephen A. Schendel, MD, DDS, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

REPAIR OF FACIAL FRACTURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Facial fractures are classified by location and the involved bones.

Upper and midface region: Frontal sinus fractures may involve the anterior wall alone or also may involve the nasofrontal ducts and/or posterior wall. Nasofrontal duct disruption may require obliteration of the duct and sinus, which is done with an electric burr and loupe magnification to remove all mucosa before grafting the area with bone, fat, or pericranium. A posterior wall disruption is a fracture into the anterior cranial fossa that may require CSF leak repair ± cranialization of the sinus (complete removal of the posterior wall of the sinus). Each frontal bone forms a large component of the orbital roof, and as such, ocular injury or periorbital entrapment must be considered.

Fractures of the maxilla are classified as **LeFort I, II,** or **III,** depending on the level of the fracture (Fig. 11.3-2). **LeFort I** is a horizontal fracture, separating the teeth and lower maxillary components from the upper facial structures. **LeFort II** is a triangular fracture with a fracture line across the nose, below the infraorbital rims, and extending through the entire lower maxillary structures. **LeFort III** is essentially a disassociation of the cranium and face. In these cases, the maxilla is usually mobile or impacted posteriorly and occasionally closes off the posterior airway. Further mobility of the segments may be present with a sagittal split of the palate. Associated fractures in the maxillary region include fractures of the zygoma, orbital fractures (most commonly orbital floor), isolated nasal fractures, naso-orbital-ethmoid (NOE) fractures (usually with severe comminution of the upper face), and cranial base fractures with the potential for dural tears and CSF rhinorrhea. Added procedures which may be required to complete the repair of these fractures include **local flap closure** of a CSF leak and **primary bone grafting,** usually from cranium or distant sites, such as the ilium, to highly comminuted areas (e.g., NOE, orbital floors).

Lower face: **Fractures of the mandible** are classified by the type of fracture and location (Fig. 11.3-3), the most common being the subcondylar fracture. Fractures involving the mandibular body, such as a parasymphyseal fracture, may result in unstable mandibular segments. In cases of bilateral mandibular body fractures associated with symphyseal fractures, the mandible can be flail and fall posteriorly in the supine position, allowing the tongue to block off the airway. All of the fractures involving change in occlusion (LeFort maxillary and all mandibular fractures) require reestablishment of a normal occlusion by the application of arch bars and wires also called intermaxillary fixation (IMF). This may be combined with rigid fixation, most commonly internal plates. In some cases, rigid fixation will allow removal of the IMF at the end of the case; in others, IMF may be required for postop healing. Removal of the throat pack prior to final IMF is of paramount importance.

Trismus may be associated with any of the above injuries 2° direct injury to the muscles of mastication but is more commonly associated with fractures of these muscular attachments (e.g., mandible, zygoma). Associated **dentoalveolar fractures** of the maxilla or mandible may require preop wiring in the ER. The intent is to hold steady those segments with tenuous stability and blood supply. Intubation techniques should avoid displacing these segments. Fractures not involving change in occlusion (e.g., orbital zygomatic, nasal fracture) can be orally intubated. Most fractures with a change in occlusion should be nasally intubated with RAE or 60° curved connector. Exceptions include edentulous segments allowing tube to pass versus edentulous patient with a splint fabricated for oral intubation. Another preop consideration is the amount of blood loss at the scene or in the ER. Facial and scalp vessels can bleed profusely (hypovolemia), and patients may arrive in the OR with both anterior and posterior nasal packs in place (difficult ventilation).

The **surgical approach** depends on the extent of fractures and associated lacerations. Periorbital incisions can be external, on or below the lower eyelid and over the brow, or internal, along the lower eyelid conjunctiva. Upper facial repair may include a bicoronal approach (Fig. 11.3-4) designed to peel the face off the upper facial skeleton via an ear-to-ear scalp incision. Rainey clips are used to minimize scalp bleeding. Of note, periorbital dissection to explore and repair NOE or orbital floor fractures involves some retraction on the globe. This may cause ↓ HR and ↓ BP via the oculocardiac reflex. The mandible can be approached through external, preauricular or inferior border, or intraoral incisions. A panfacial fracture treatment protocol is illustrated in Figure 11.3-1.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Endoscopic approaches** are being developed for multiple fracture sites. **Resorbable plates and screws,** especially for pediatric cases, can be applied through the same surgical approaches.

Usual preop diagnosis: Facial trauma

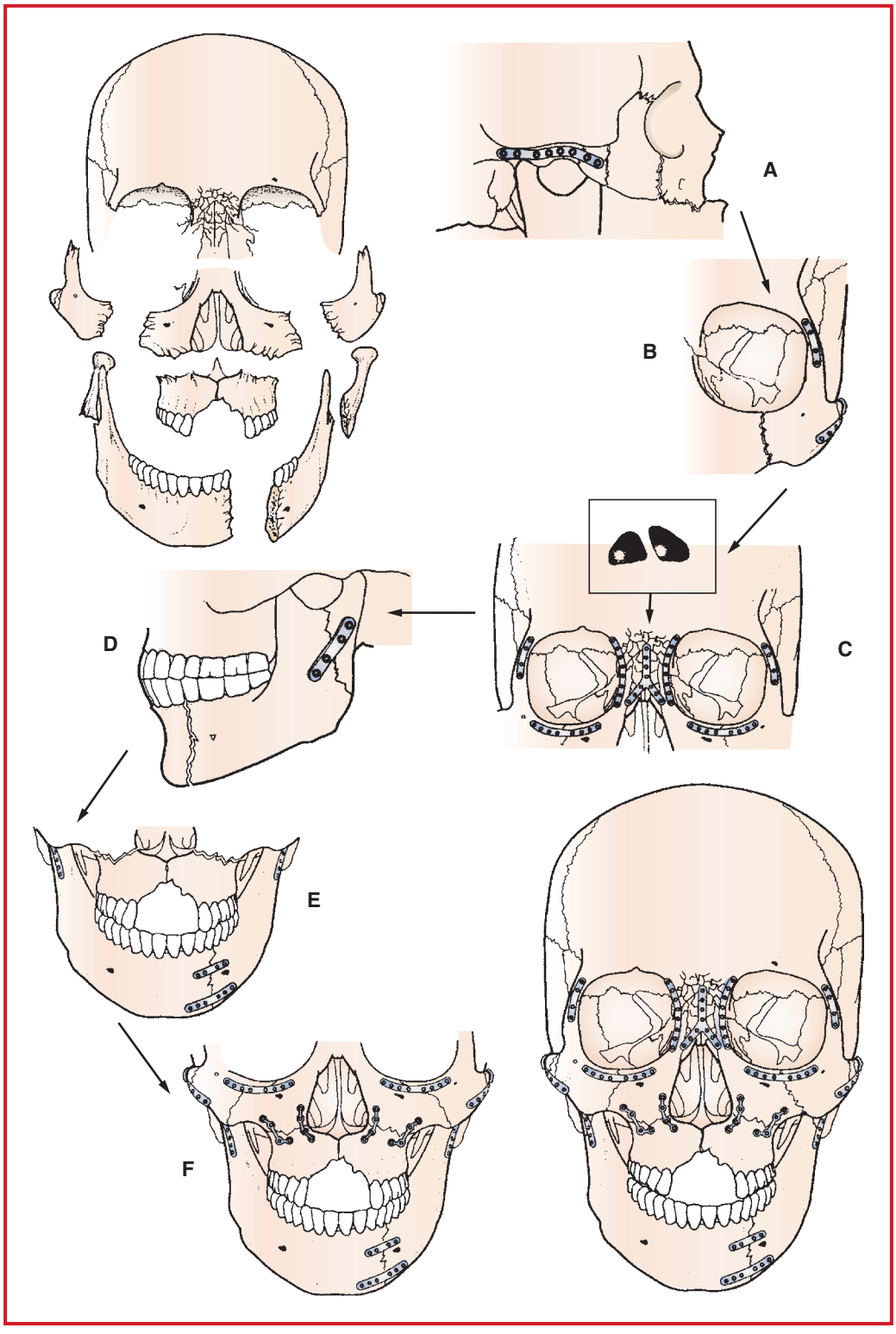


Figure 11.3-1. Panfacial fracture treatment protocol, based on reconstructing load-bearing structures of the facial skeleton. **A:** Projection of the midface is created by reconstructing the zygomatic arches, starting from the stable part of the temporal bone. **B:** The zygomas are fixed to the arches and to the frontal bone to create the final projection of the midface. **C:** The width of the midface is reconstructed by repositioning the central midface (orbits and nose) to its correct position, in relation to the zygomas and frontal bone. Concomitantly, canthopexy is fixed, and the frontal bone and sinus fractures are treated. (This procedure is independent of the occlusion.) **D:** The posterior vertical height of the face is reconstructed by positioning and fixing the condylar fractures. **E:** Intermaxillary fixation is applied, and the mandible is reconstructed. **F:** Finally, the LeFort I-level fractures are positioned to natural occlusion. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

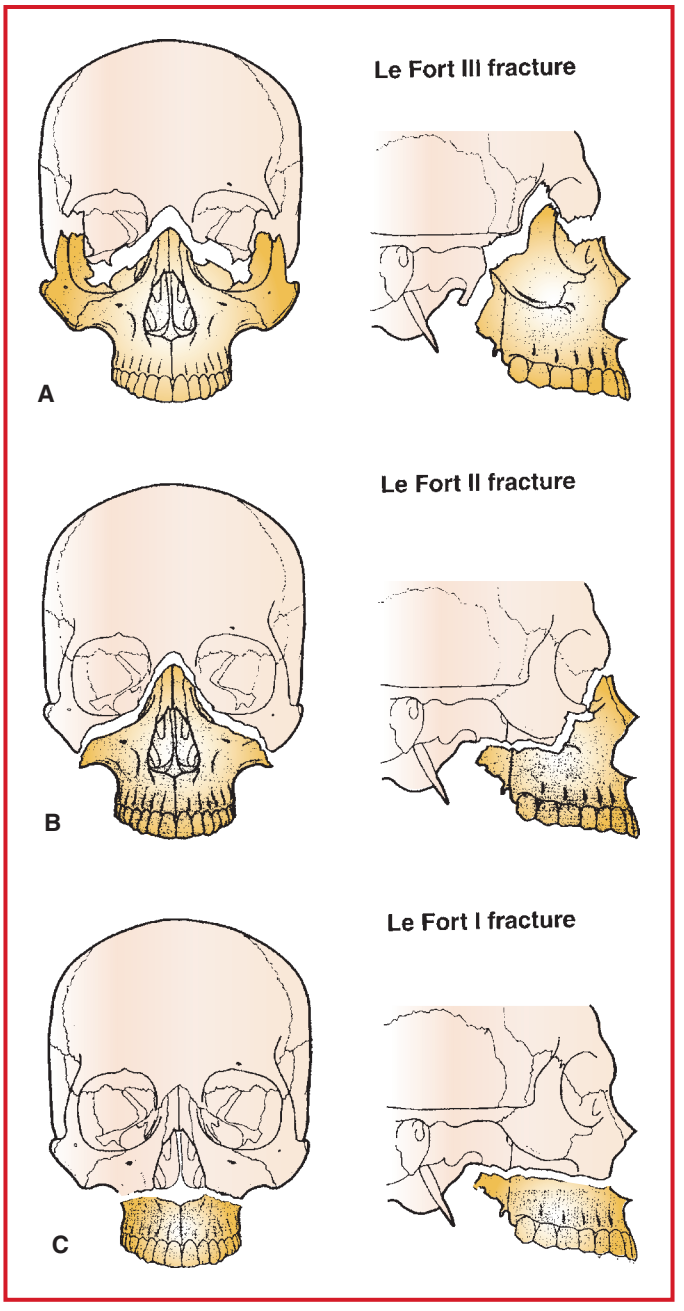


Figure 11.3-2. Schematic of the LeFort fracture lines. **A:** LeFort III involves separation of cranium from facial bone structure. **B:** LeFort II is a pyramid-shaped fracture, including the dentition and nasal structures. **C:** LeFort I is a horizontal fracture involving mobilization of dentition and maxilla. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

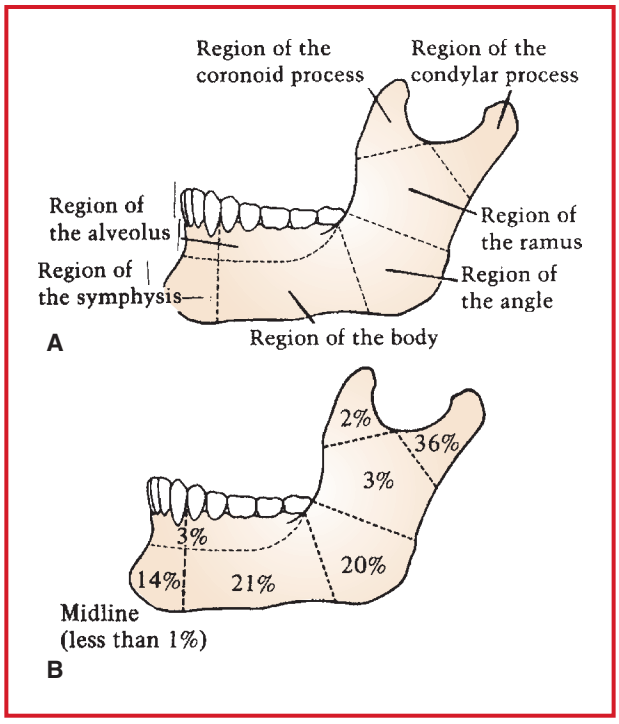


Figure 11.3-3. **A:** Anatomic regions of the mandible and **B:** frequency of fractures in those regions. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

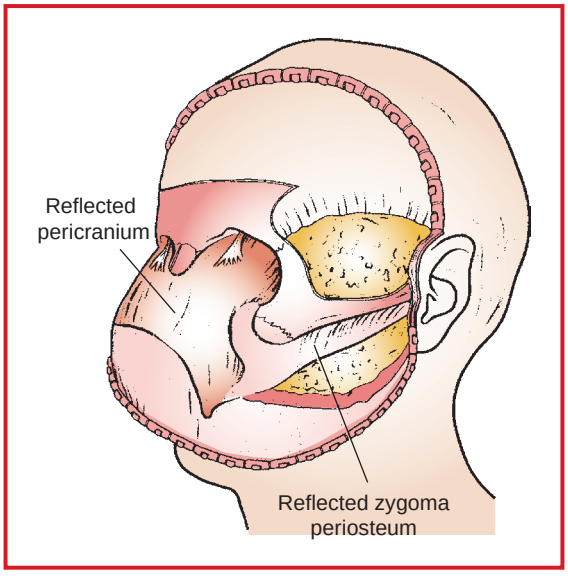


Figure 11.3-4. Bicoronal approach. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

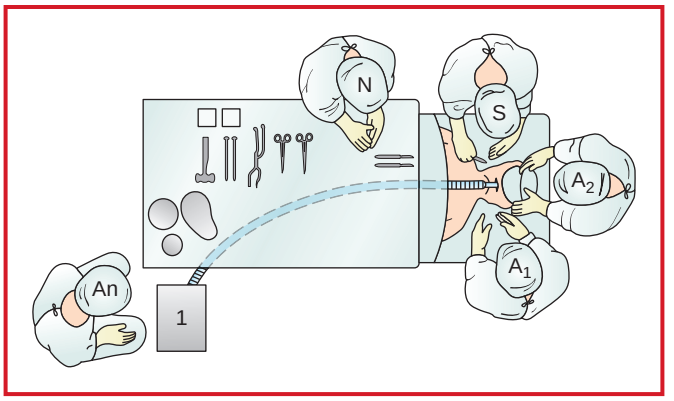


Figure 11.3-5. Standard anesthesia and surgical setup for a maxillofacial surgical procedure and certain craniofacial surgical procedures. The table may be rotated 90°–180° with anesthesia equipment and personnel at the foot or off to one side. (Reproduced with permission from Bell WH, ed: *Modern Practice of Orthognathic Surgery,* Vol I. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1990.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Mandibular	Maxillary Orbital/Zygomatic	Nasal
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Intraoral; lateral, submandibular	Intraoral, ± subciliary; possibly coronal	Closed reduction; possibly intranasal
Special instrumentation	Air power tools; plate fixation; headlight	⇐ + Periorbital malleable retractors; Rowe disimpaction forceps; acrylic dental split	⇐
Unique considerations	Nasal RAE (sutured to dentition or septum); throat pack; corticosteroids periop to ↓ edema.	Panfacial smash; airway swelling associated with head injury; burns or other system involvement. Consider preop tracheostomy. Close monitoring for and removal of stimulus until oculocardiac reflex recovery.	—
Antibiotics, etc.	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐ + Methylprednisolone 125 mg iv (adults)	⇐
Surgical time	1–3 h	1–6 h (bicoronal approach adds 1.5 h)	1 h
Closing considerations	NG at end of procedure, maintained for 24 h; IMF postop; **NB:** Throat pack removal.	⇐	—
EBL	100–800 mL, depending on extent of fractures, need for graft harvest, patient age	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Airway or respiratory status may be compromised (preop and postop swelling/aspiration/associated injuries), requiring maintenance of intubation → ICU.	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Mandibular	Maxillary Orbital/Zygomatic	Nasal
Mortality	Minimal (↑ due to associated injuries and blood loss)	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Trismus Poor occlusion Drooling Poor cosmetic result Chronic pain/sensation changes Loss of taste	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Loss of smell Visual problems/epiphora Sinus problems Breathing difficulty	– – – ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ – ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	4–8	4–8	4–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	> 4 yr
Male:Female	1:1 (varies by age group)
Incidence	The most common are nasal bones, zygoma and arch, mandible, and orbital floor (on the rise due to airbags in autos).
Etiology	**Adults:** Motor vehicle accidents (MVAs), mostly young males (43–67%); assaults (13–48.8%); sports-related (3.8%); falls (3.6%); gunshot wounds (3%) **Children:** Uncommon: only ~5% of all facial fractures occur in ages < 12 yr; falls (33%); MVA (28%); abuse (3%); dog bites (rare). 69% are periorbital or nasal.
Associated conditions	Airway compromise/closed head trauma (40%); extremity fractures (33%); thoracic injury (29%); open or radiographic brain injury (25%); intraabdominal (12%); globe injuries (11%); oral trauma (11%); pelvic fractures (10%); C-spine fractures (4–10%); T-L spine injuries (4%); shock; multisystem trauma; burns; massive soft-tissue loss. Mandibular fractures during MVAs are associated with a 65% incidence of life-threatening injuries and mortality of up to 8%; up to 1/3 of LeFort fractures will require intubation, most often due to upper respiratory tract blood and secretions.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The forces required to produce facial fractures are considerable and frequently result in other associated trauma (e.g., closed head trauma; spine injuries; thoracic injury, including pneumothorax and myocardial contusion; intraabdominal bleeding). Soft-tissue injury to the tongue or larynx can make airway management difficult. When in doubt, a tracheostomy under local anesthesia or awake intubation should be considered. In mandible or maxillary fractures, nasal intubation is usually best because the patient will be placed in intermaxillary fixation (IMF; teeth brought together via wires or rubber bands) at the conclusion of the procedure. In malar or nasal bone fractures, the fixation may be precarious, making it undesirable to use mask ventilation at the termination of the procedure and necessitating awake extubation. Facial nerve monitoring may be required, contraindicating the use of muscle relaxants.

Frequently, the anesthesiologist's first encounter with these patients is in the ER, where prompt airway management decisions are essential—often before diagnostic imaging studies are complete. These patients should be treated with full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5) and may have already aspirated. Patients may be unable to open their mouths 2° pain or mechanical factors. The cause of limited mouth opening should be determined before induction of anesthesia. Several options exist. Often, the airway can be managed simply by inserting an oropharyngeal airway; failing this, an emergency intubation will be necessary. Blind nasal intubation should be avoided in patients with CSF rhinorrhea or other evidence of nasopharyngeal trauma, where the potential for creating false passages and additional trauma is significant. An awake oral intubation with topical anesthesia is often the safest approach. Emergency oral

intubation may be complicated by an unstable C-spine and limited jaw opening, together with blood and debris in the oropharynx, making visualization difficult if not impossible. Often the only recourse is tracheostomy under local anesthesia. As with any trauma victim, attention is first directed toward maintaining the airway and restoration of fluid volume. The repair of the facial fracture may be carried out incidental to the primary trauma surgery or, more often, is deferred until the patient's condition is stabilized. The following preop assessment will focus primarily on the patient coming to the OR for semielective repair of a facial fracture.

Airway	**Semielective:** Usually, facial swelling and intraoral bleeding will have resolved, although mouth opening may be limited 2° pain or mechanical factors. Airway management requires knowledge of the fracture site(s). Patients with a maxillary fracture may benefit from an oral intubation to allow inspection of the nasopharynx before nasal intubation and definitive repair. The possibility of an awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6) should be discussed with the patient. Patients with an isolated orbital, zygomatic, or nasal fracture usually do not present airway management problems. The surgeon should be consulted regarding the preferred intubation route. **Trauma:** Airway and nasal obstruction following trauma can be extreme, as a result of soft-tissue swelling and accumulated blood and secretions. The extent of facial fractures, particularly in the midface, should be identified as they may preclude nasal intubation. Mandibular fractures may make access to the oropharynx difficult. Unstable dentoalveolar fractures may require preop wiring in the ER. In the case of massive trauma to the face, urgent tracheostomy should be considered. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Respiratory	**Trauma:** Evaluate for associated trauma and respiratory insufficiency 2° aspiration. ✓ that chest tubes are functioning properly. **Tests:** CXR; others as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	**Semielective:** Typically, several days will have elapsed since the initial trauma, and the patient should be hemodynamically stable. **Trauma:** Blunt chest trauma may be associated with myocardial contusion, pericardial effusion/tamponade, and aortic tear/dissection. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	**Semielective:** Document any neurological deficits and altered mental status. Meningitis may occur in patients with persistent CSF rhinorrhea or pneumocephalus. **Trauma:** Intracranial injury may be associated with facial fractures. Patients with head trauma may have ↑ ICP; therefore, appropriate methods (e.g., CO_2 ↓, fluid ↓, smooth induction/intubation) are used to prevent further ↑ ICP. Basilar skull fractures preclude passage of nasotracheal and NG tubes. In the presence of otorrhea or rhinorrhea, positive-pressure mask ventilation is inadvisable due to the potential for causing pneumocephalus. **Tests:** Review skull and C-spine x-rays.
Musculoskeletal	**Semielective:** May be associated with other fractures and soft-tissue trauma that may affect patient positioning. **Trauma:** C-spine injuries are commonly associated with facial injuries. The C-spine should be cleared by clinical and x-ray exam before transport to OR. If C-spine cannot be cleared, intubation should be done with the head in a neutral position (splinted or with axial stabilization), using direct FOL (see p. B-6).
Hematologic	**Trauma:** Maxillary surgery may be associated with major blood loss. For elective cases, autologous donation should be encouraged. **Tests:** Hct; others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1) is appropriate for nontrauma, neurologically intact patients with normal airways. **Trauma:** Trauma patients should be considered to have full stomachs, and sedative premedications are best avoided. Aspiration prophylaxis with 0.3 M Na citrate (30 mL po), ± metoclopramide 10 mg iv ± ranitidine 50 mg iv, should be considered.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The majority of patients presenting for elective procedures are healthy and have normal airways. In the case of facial trauma, however, intubation of the trachea may be impossible. Hence, a tracheostomy under local anesthesia may be lifesaving.

Induction	If there is any doubt regarding the ease of intubation, an awake FOL should be performed (see p. B-6). Nasal intubation is preferred for patients with mandibular and maxillary (Le-Fort) fractures involving a change in occlusion. Patients with orbital, zygomatic, or nasal fractures usually are intubated orally. In patients with normal airways, a standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate. Nasal or oral ETTs (RAE), or anode ETTs are commonly used to minimize intrusion into the surgical field. A nasal or oral ETT may not be appropriate in some patients (e.g., with midface fractures who also require maxillomandibular fixation). An alternative to tracheostomy in these patients is submental intubation: following oral ETT placement using a wire-reinforced tube, the surgeon will tunnel the covered connector end of the tube (with pilot balloon) through the floor of the mouth to emerge below the submental area of the mandible where it is reconnected to the ventilator.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3); muscle relaxation usually is required except with facial nerve monitoring. Controlled ↓ BP may be appropriate. Administration of an antiemetic (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv and ondansetron 4–8 mg iv) is beneficial in patients who have their jaws wired or banded together.	
Emergence	Patients with difficult airways or with jaws wired together should be extubated when fully awake. Extubation over a tube changer may be appropriate. A wire cutter (or scissors for elastic bands) should be at the bedside at all times. Ensure that all throat packing has been removed before extubation. Thorough oropharyngeal suctioning is essential. NG tube may be used postop, so consider placement prior to extubation. Some patients with multiple trauma or extensive soft-tissue swelling may require continued postop intubation and mechanical ventilation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate—large blood loss iv: 16–18 ga × 1–2 **Trauma:** NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/h **Other:** NS/LR @ 2–4 mL/h	Blood loss from facial fractures or orthognathic procedures can be extensive. T&C patient so blood is immediately available in OR.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line	Invasive monitoring may be required in patients with intracranial or other trauma, or for controlled ↓ BP. Muscle relaxants will interfere with facial nerve monitoring.
Control of blood loss	Surgical hemostasis Topical vasoconstrictors Posterior oropharyngeal packing Controlled ↓ BP	Surgical hemostasis should control most bleeding in these procedures. Topical vasoconstrictors, such as phenylephrine or cocaine, can be applied on the surgical field. Posterior oropharyngeal packing can keep blood from passing undetected into the upper GI tract. Controlled ↓ BP often can be achieved simply by increasing volatile anesthetic levels.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Some surgeons prefer that the OR table be rotated 90° or 180°. Be prepared with long hoses and appropriate connectors. Consider protecting eyes with an ophthalmic ointment.
Complications	ETT damage Oculocardiac reflex ↓↓ HR + ↓ BP	Nasal ETT may be wired inadvertently to the maxilla, making extubation difficult. In case of ETT damage, be prepared to reestablish the airway rapidly by reintubation, usually over an intubating stylet. Notify surgeon (stop surgical stimulus). Consider atropine and increasing depth of anesthesia.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway obstruction	Wire cutters (or scissors) should be available at bedside to facilitate emergent reintubation or other form of airway management. Consider retained throat pack.
	PONV	Multimodal treatment of nausea is important.
Pain management	Parenteral narcotics (see p. C-3) or PCA with antiemetics (see p. C-3).	Local anesthetic infiltrated at end of procedure.

Suggested Readings

1. Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* 2nd edition. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2006.
2. Fischer K, et al: Injuries associated with mandible fractures sustained in motor vehicle collisions. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 108(2):328–31.
3. Greenberg AM, Prein J, eds: *Craniomaxillofacial Reconstructive and Corrective Bone Surgery.* Springer, New York: 2002.
4. Girotto JA: Long-term physical impairment and functional outcomes after complex facial fractures. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 108(2):312–27.
5. Hoffmann JF: Naso-orbital-ethmoid complex fracture management. *Fac Plast Surg* 1998; 14(1):67–76.
6. Kim KF, Doriot R, Morse MA, et al: Alternative to tracheostomy: submental intubation in craniomaxillofacial trauma. *J Craniofac Surg* 2005; 16(3):498–500.
7. Lima SM Jr, Aspirno L, Moreira RW, de Moraes M: A retrospective analysis of submental intubation in maxillofacial trauma patients. *J Oral Macillofac Surg* 2011; 69(7):2001–5.
8. Mohan R, Iyer R, Thaller S: Airway management in patients with facial trauma. *J Craniofac Surg* 2009; 20(1):21–3.
9. Perry M, Morris C: Advanced trauma life support (ATLS) and facial trauma: can one size fit all? Part 2: ATLS, maxillofacial injuries and airway management dilemmas. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2008; 37(4):309–20.
10. Thoren H, Schaller B, Suominen AL, Lindqvist C: Occurrence and severity of concomitant injuries in other areas than the face in children with mandibular and midfacial fractures. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2012; 70(1):92–6.

LEFORT OSTEOTOMIES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: LeFort osteotomies are used to correct maxillary deformities. The most common is the **LeFort I,** a transverse osteotomy, above the apices of the teeth, used to correct maxillary retrusion or maxillary vertical excess or deficiency. One of the goals in achieving improved function is to improve the occlusion, as classified by Angle (Fig. 11.3-6). One or both jaws may be moved to achieve normocclusion. An intraoral vestibular incision is used for this approach, followed by an osteotomy of the maxilla, with either a burr or a saw, and completed with osteotomes. The osteotomy extends through the maxillary sinus toward the ETT, within the piriform aperture. There is potential for nasal ETT damage with this maneuver. Of note, BP usually will increase at the start of the osteotomies, increasing bleeding if anesthesia/analgesia is inadequate. The maxilla is subsequently downfractured (Fig. 11.3-7) and mobilized with Rowe disimpaction forceps. This is when most of the bleeding occurs. Further interdental osteotomies creating multiple maxillary segments may be required. **LeFort II** or **LeFort III** maxillary osteotomies may be used to correct severe midfacial retrusion. In these cases, infraorbital incisions are used with either brow or coronal (Fig. 11.3-4) incisions. With maxillary advancements, iliac or cranial bone grafts are often necessary to close the bony gap created. Most of these patients have orthodontic appliances and will require intermaxillary fixation (IMF), with either wire or elastics at the end of the procedure, with or without a prefabricated splint. The maxilla is fixed rigidly in the new position with miniplates.

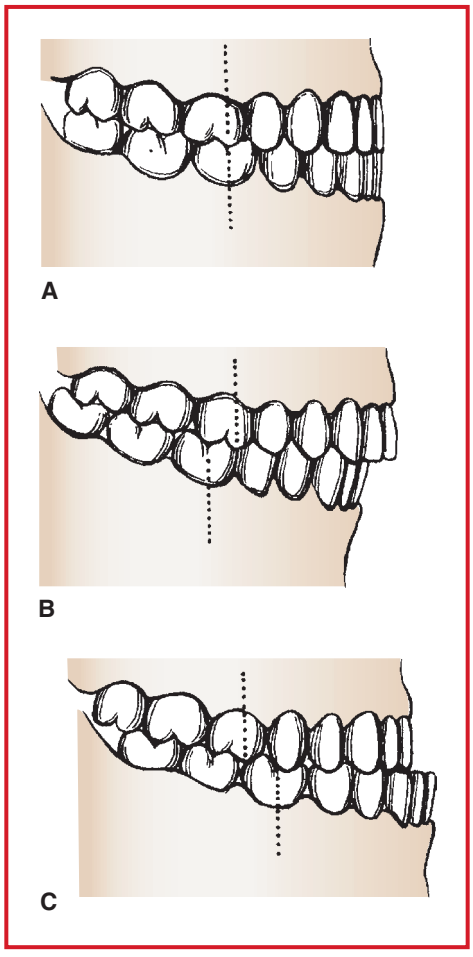


Figure 11.3-6. The Angle classification of occlusion. **A:** Class I, normal occlusion. **B:** Class II, retroocclusion or mandibular deficiency. **C:** Class III, prognathic occlusion (maxillary deficiency or mandibular excess). The key relationships to be discerned are those of the first molar teeth, cuspids, and incisors. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery.* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

Variant procedure or approaches: Recently, **distraction osteogenesis** after LeFort osteotomy has been shown to be effective for correction of severe deformity that would be difficult to correct with single movements and internal fixation. This technique creates new bone as the osteotomized bones are slowly separated. No bone grafts are necessary. Distraction hardware is applied either internally or externally. External devices are stabilized via halo and compression bolts into the skull. IMF is not indicated, as the upper jaw must be free to be distracted in relation to the lower jaw. A second operation may be required for removal of distractor hardware. **Absorbable internal devices** also are available.

Usual preop diagnosis: Facial deformities; dentoskeletal dysplasia

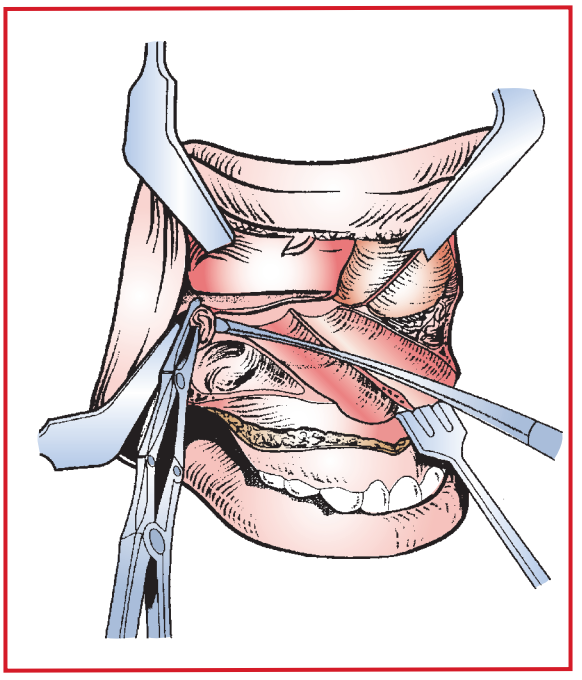


Figure 11.3-7. Removal of bone around the perpendicular plate of the palatine bone. The descending palatine vessels may be ligated. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	LeFort I	LeFort II	LeFort III	Distractor
Position	Supine; table may be rotated 90° or 180°	⇐	⇐	⇐
Incision	Intraoral	Intraoral and facial ± coronal	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Miniplates and screws; burr or saws	⇐	⇐	Distractors
Unique considerations	Jaw frequently closed (wires or elastic); nasal RAE or armored tube. ***NB: Keep SBP < 100 mm Hg during osteotomy closure.** With cranial bone graft harvest, the nasal ETT goes opposite to the donor side and is repositioned later.	⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐	No IMF ⇐
Antibiotics, etc.	Cefazolin 1 g iv; methylprednisolone 125 mg iv (adults)	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–6 h	⇐	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	***NB: Throat pack removal.** NG at end of case × 24 h. NSAIDs contraindicated.	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	400–800 mL	⇐	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	LeFort I	LeFort II	LeFort III	Distractor
Postop care	PACU → room	ICU × 1 d	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Relapse Infection Bone/tooth loss: Uncommon Severe intraop bleeding: Uncommon Blindness: Very rare Temporomandibular joint dysfunction Nasal obstruction Nasolacrimal obstruction Oronasal fistulas (multipiece osteotomies, uncommon) Poor cosmetic result Sensory nerve dysfunction	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Distractor malfunction
Pain score	4	5	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	15 yr–adulthood, usually < 30 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Up to 5% of population
Etiology	Usually developmental in nature; also cleft lip and palate patients Rarely syndromic: Apert (1/100,000); Crouzon (1/25,000)
Associated conditions	Usually none with developmental cases; sleep apnea; or part of a recognized condition associated with congenital anomalies (e.g., cleft lip and palate, proptotic eyes, severe mitten-hand syndactylies)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Mandibular Osteotomies/Genioplasty, p. 1143.

Suggested Readings

1. Adke M, Medonca C: Concealed airway complication during LeFort I osteotomy. *Anesthesia* 2003; 58(3):294–5.
2. Bidoli SJ, Dumont L, Mattys M, Mardirosoff C, Damseaux P: A serious anesthetic complication of a Lefort I osteotomy. *Eur J Anesthesiol* 1999; 16(3):201–3.
3. Frost DE: Orthognathic surgical techniques. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1273–95.
4. Lo LJ, Hung KF, Chen YR: Blindness as a complication of LeFort I osteotomy for maxillary distraction. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 109(2):688–700.
5. Mohan R, Iyer R, Thaller S: Airway management in patients with facial trauma. *J Craniofac Surg* 2009; 20(1):21–3.
6. Morris DE, Lo LJ, Margulis A: Pitfalls in orthognathic surgery: avoidance and management of complications. *Clin Plast Surg* 2007; 34(3):e17–29.
7. Schendel SA, Mason ME: Adverse outcomes in orthognathic surgery and management of residual problems. *Clin Plast Surg* 1997; 24(3):489–505.
8. Zellin G, Rasmusson L, Pålsson J, et al: Evaluation of hemorrhage depressors on blood loss during orthognathic surgery: a retrospective study. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2004; 62(6):662–6.

MANDIBULAR OSTEOTOMIES/GENIOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Mandibular deformities include either a retruded mandible or a prognathic mandible involving a malocclusion (Class II or III) and may occur in combination with a small chin (microgenia). Surgical correction of the basic mandibular deformity involves either advancing or retruding the mandible. The most common procedure for this is the **sagittal ramus split osteotomy (Obwegeser;** Fig. 11.3-8). The mandible is split with the inferior alveolar nerve solely within the anterior segment, such that the tooth-bearing anterior segment can slide forward or backward to correct the original deformity. A variety of other techniques of mandibular osteotomies exist, often involving the ramus area of the mandible, and are performed via an intraoral approach.

In some very large deformities, an external incision (**Risdon** type) and bone graft placement may be necessary to complete the mandibular ramus reconstruction. Many patients will be treated for dentoskeletal deformities with a combination of LeFort movement and sagittal-split osteotomies of the mandible. When the mandible is set back, mandibular bone is resected and often can be used in combined procedures as bone graft for the LeFort osteotomy. This avoids cranial bone harvest and, therefore, avoids repositioning the ETT during the procedure for cranial bone access and avoids donor site morbidity. Occasionally, deformities may be corrected by mandibular body osteotomies.

Rigid fixation of mandibular osteotomies is often accomplished by the use of small miniplates and screws. Fixation also can be accomplished with elastic traction (rarely, wire fixation) between mandible and maxilla (IMF), placed either at the time of surgery or several days following, and held in position for 1–2 wk. These procedures may be

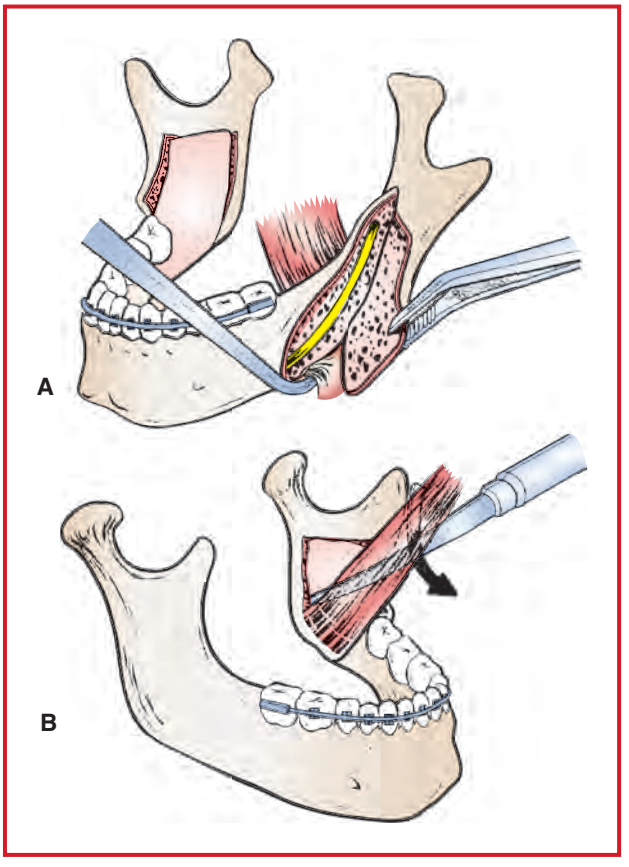


Figure 11.3-8. A, B: "J" stripper used to remove muscle attachments from medial aspect of distal segment. Used through the osteotomy split. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

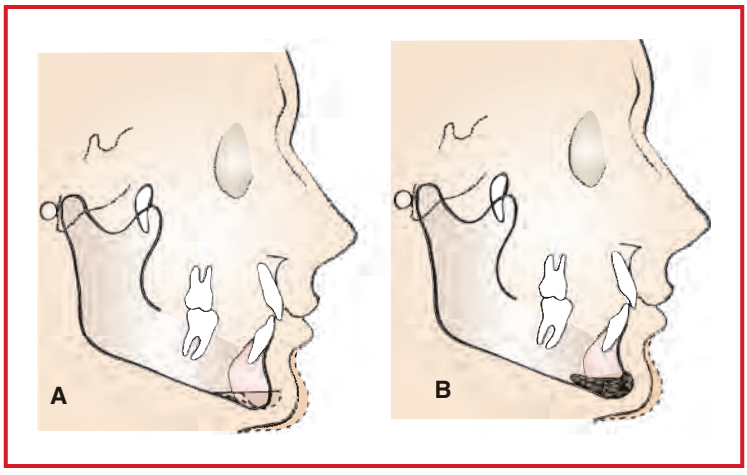


Figure 11.3-9. An osseous genioplasty **(A)** can be used to augment the chin, move it posteriorly, alter its vertical position or change the transverse position of the chin. Alloplastic implants **(B)** can be used to augment the chin anteriorly. These are less effective for vertical augmentation. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

combined with a **genioplasty** to correct the chin deformity; or, genioplasty may be performed as an isolated procedure. The most common type is a horizontal osteotomy of the inferior mandible, with the chin segment repositioned with internal fixation (Fig. 11.3-9A). Augmentation of the chin also is accomplished with alloplastic onlay materials (Fig. 11.3-9B) placed via either the oral route or the extraoral route through a small submental incision. As an isolated procedure, genioplasty is performed most frequently with local anesthesia and sedation.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Distraction osteogenesis** is being used more frequently in treating certain acquired and congenital jaw deformities. This involves a partial mandibular osteotomy and placement of a distraction device (Fig. 11.3-10). Depending on the application, this may be an external or internal device. External devices are visible over the skin with percutaneous pins into the bone. Internal devices are placed beneath the oral soft tissues, with a single adjustment pin exposed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Mandibular deformity

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table may be rotated 90° or 180°. Nasal RAE tube toward head of bed (sutured through nasal septum), padded, and secured to forehead; shoulder roll; neck extended
Incision	Usually oral but may be external in the submental or posterior mandibular area; preinjection with local anesthetic with epinephrine
Special instrumentation	Miniplates and screws; burrs/saws; osteotomes; distractor for distraction osteogenesis; throat pack
Unique considerations	Scleral lubricant and shields needed. Postop, patient may have IMF with inability to open the mouth. (IMF not used with distractor cases). ***NB: Remove throat pack** before extubation; thorough oro- and nasopharyngeal suction.
Antibiotics, etc.	Cefazolin 1 g iv; methylprednisolone 125 mg iv (adults)
Surgical time	Genioplasty: 0.5–1 h Mandibular osteotomy: 2–4 h
EBL	Genioplasty: 50 mL Mandibular osteotomy: 100–200 mL

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Postop care	PACU → room. If sleep apnea present, ICU overnight + extubation.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Mandibular relapse: ≤ 30% Mental nerve paresthesia: 5–20% Lingual nerve injury: 1–16% Infection/nonunion: < 1% Facial nerve injury: Rare (most reported cases resolve without treatment) Aseptic necrosis (buccal plate or genioplasty fragment) Worsening TMJ problems Adverse cosmetic result
Pain score	4

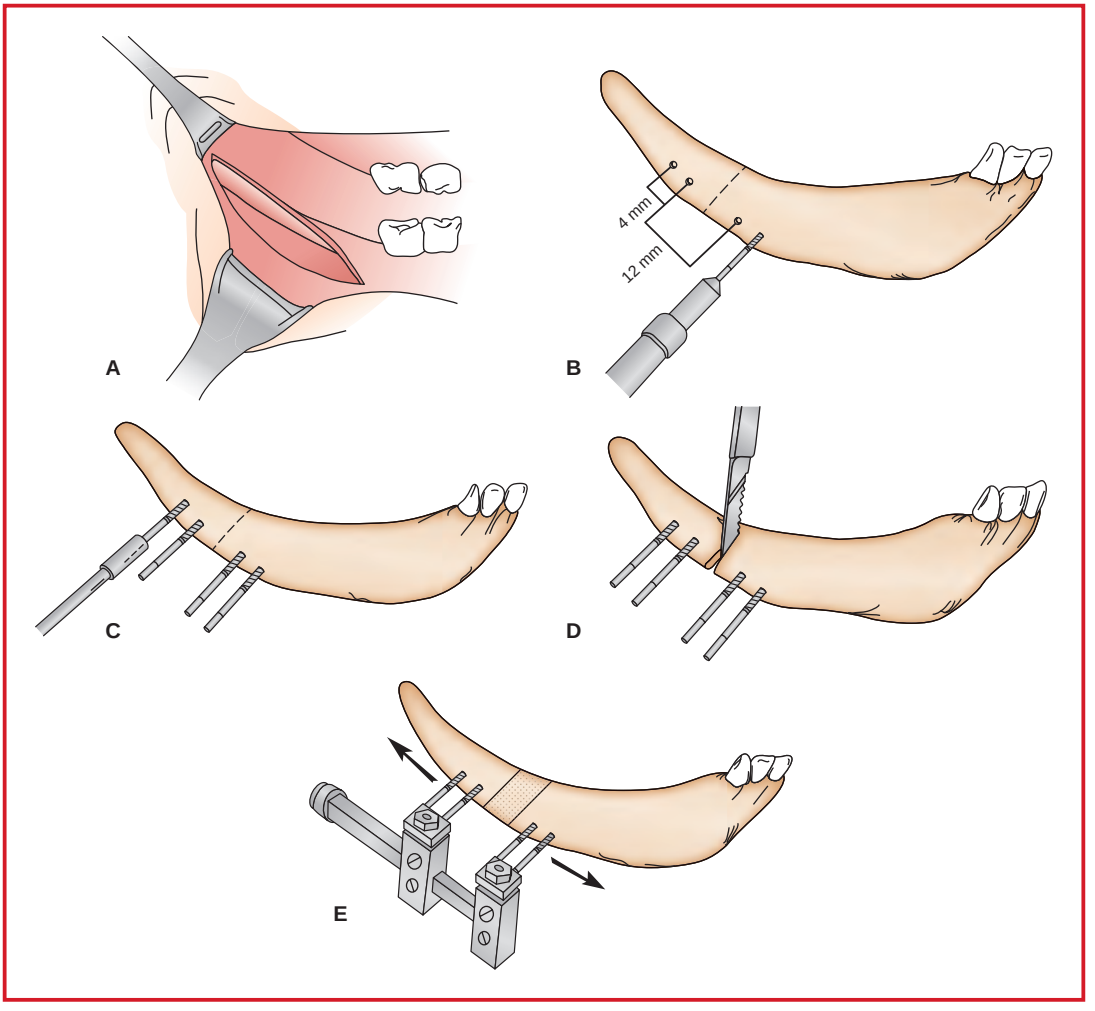


Figure 11.3-10. Mandibular distraction technique: **A:** An intraoral incision is made along the oblique line of the mandibular remnant. **B:** Sites of the pinholes and proposed osteotomy (interrupted line). **C:** Pins have been inserted. **D:** The osteotomy is performed. **E:** Commencement of distraction with the appliance in position. The arrows designate the movement of the mandibular segments with formation of bony regenerate in the resulting gap. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Infant-adult
Male:Female	Unknown
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	Developmental (90%); acquired (10%)
Associated conditions	Usually none with developmental cases; sleep apnea; congenitally small mandible may be associated with a large tongue and cleft palate (Pierre Robin syndrome), hemifacial microsomia (which may be associated with heart, vertebral, and other anomalies), Treacher Collins syndrome, or Nager's syndrome (many of the congenital cases may be tracheostomy- and gastrostomy-dependent, with associated TMJ ankylosis).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: LeFort osteotomies; mandibular osteotomies; genioplasty)

PREOPERATIVE

These surgeries are usually performed on patients with facial disproportion. In general, this patient population is young and healthy; however, many of them will present with challenging airway management problems. In addition, facial disproportion will often accompany congenital anomalies (e.g., Crouzon, Apert, Pierre Robin, or Treacher Collins syndromes). (For discussion of specific syndromes, see Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Limbs, p. 1426).

Airway	As usual, a careful airway evaluation is essential because many of these patients have abnormal airway anatomy and may be difficult to mask ventilate or intubate. Visual inspection often reveals the reasons for the surgery and allows the anesthesiologist to determine the safest approach to intubation. When a difficult intubation is anticipated, the need for awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6) should be discussed with the patient.
Respiratory	Consider the anesthetic implications of associated congenital syndromes in this patient population. Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA, see p. 263) also may be associated with patients in need of mandibular surgery. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	As above, consider the implications of possible congenital syndromes. Assess whether patient is a suitable candidate for the use of controlled ↓ BP, particularly those undergoing maxillary procedures. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hematologic	Encourage autologous blood donation for maxillary procedures. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1) is usually appropriate.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	If there is any doubt regarding the ease of intubation or ability to mask ventilate, an awake FOL should be performed (see p. B-6). Nasal intubation is preferred for patients undergoing elective mandibular or maxillary osteotomies, as well as genioplasty. In patients with normal airways, a standard induction (see p. B-2) is appropriate. Nasal or oral ETTs (RAE), or anode ETTs, are commonly used to minimize intrusion into the surgical field.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3); muscle relaxation is usually required. Administration of an antiemetic (e.g., metoclopramide 10–20 mg iv and ondansetron 4 mg iv) is essential in patients who have their jaws wired or banded together.	
Emergence	Patients with difficult airways or with their jaws wired (or banded) together should be extubated when fully awake. Perform thorough oropharyngeal suctioning. If not placed previously, an NG tube should be placed before extubation. A wire cutter (or scissors for elastic bands) should be at the bedside at all times. Ensure that all throat packing has been removed before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate—large blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 5–8 mL/kg/h	Maxillary osteotomies may be associated with major blood loss (e.g., 1500–2000 mL). The majority of blood loss occurs when the maxilla is down-fractured. Controlled ↓ BP (SBP < 90 mm Hg) may be particularly useful during this part of the case, and blood should be readily available for this and all maxillary procedures.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line or 2nd iv	Direct arterial pressure measurements are useful for deliberate ↓ BP. Central venous access or a 2nd peripheral iv may be useful for vasodilator infusions.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Eyes should be protected with an ophthalmic ointment and eye shields or possible tarsorrhaphy by the surgeons. Some surgeons prefer to have the OR table rotated 90° or 180°. Be prepared with circuit-extension tubing.
Complications	ETT damage Hemorrhage	ETT may be cut during maxillary osteotomy, necessitating rapid reintubation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway obstruction	Wire cutters (or scissors) should be available at bedside to facilitate emergent reinduction or other form of airway management. Consider retained throat pack.
	PONV	Multimodal treatment of nausea is important.
Pain management	Parenteral narcotics (see p. C-2) or PCA with antiemetics (see p. C-3).	

Suggested Readings

1. Adke M, Mendonca S: Concealed airway complication during LeFort I osteotomy. *Anesthesia* 2003; 58(3):294–5.
2. Bidgoli SJ, Dumont L, Mattys M, Mardirosoff C, Damseaux P: A serious anesthetic complication of a LeFort I osteotomy. *Eur J Anesthesiol* 1999; 16(3):201–3.
3. Blanco G, Melman E, Cuairn V et al: Fibreoptic nasal intubation in children with anticipated and unanticipated difficult intubation. *Paediatric Anaesthesia* 2001; 11(1):49–53.

4. Degoute CS: Controlled hypotension: a guide to drug choice. *Drugs* 2007; 67(7):1053–76.
5. Denny A, Kalantarian B: Mandibular distraction in neonates: a strategy to avoid tracheostomy. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 109(3): 896–904.
6. Frost DE: Orthognathic surgical techniques. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1273–95.
7. Hunt JA, Hobar PC: Common craniofacial anomalies: the facial dysostoses. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 110(7):1714–28.
8. Mohan R, Iyer R, Thaller S: Airway management in patients with facial trauma. *J Craniofac Surg* 2009; 20(1):21–3.
9. Morris DE, Lo LJ, Margulis A: Pitfalls in orthognathic surgery: avoidance and management of complications. *Clin Plast Surg* 2007; 34(3):e17–29.
10. Richardson D, Pospisil OA: Avoiding surgical complications in orthognathic surgery. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1307–20.
11. Schendel SA, Mason ME: Adverse outcomes in orthognathic surgery and management of residual problems. *Clin Plast Surg* 1997; 24(3):489–505.
12. Silva AC, O'Ryan F, Poor DB: Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) after orthognathic surgery: a retrospective study and literature review. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2006; 64(9):1385–97.

CHAPTER

11.4 Functional Restoration

SURGEONS

James Chang, MD
David M. Kahn, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Vanila Singh, MD

MICROSURGERY-FREE-FLAP RECONSTRUCTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

James Chang

Description: **Microsurgical reconstruction** involves moving tissue from one site of the body to another (see Fig. 11.4-1, Table 11.4-1). This may be muscle, skin, bone, or any combination of these tissues. An artery and vein that supply the tissues are connected to an artery and vein at the new recipient site, thereby reestablishing blood flow and ensuring tissue survival. Once transplanted, the tissue is molded and shaped to replace the missing part. Vascular anastomoses are performed on vessels as small as 1.5 mm in diameter. Complex reconstructions may require 12 h of GA with significant blood loss and fluid shifts. Patients with comorbid conditions may need additional medical tests before surgery to ensure that they are able to withstand this type of operation.

Peripheral, central, and arterial lines should be placed at the start of the case only after consultation with the reconstructive surgeon. For example, radial forearm flap may be injured by placement of a peripheral iv in the antecubital fossa or within the body of the flap. The neck is a common site for microvascular anastomoses in head and neck reconstruction. The placement of internal jugular lines should be discussed with the surgeon before surgery. The rectus muscle flap relies on the deep inferior epigastric vessels for its perfusion. Femoral arterial or venous line placement may injure these vessels and is, therefore, contraindicated. In bilateral breast reconstruction with free flaps, the iv lines should be placed in the lower extremities if possible. The reconstructive surgeon will try to operate in conjunction with the extirpative surgeon to minimize operating time. This often necessitates repositioning the patient as the case progresses.

Microsurgical reconstructions are often long operations, and large surface areas of the patient are exposed during the surgery. The patient's core temperature should be monitored closely with the use of a bladder or esophageal temperature probe. Body and fluid warmers should be used routinely to maintain the patient's body temperature. There is no

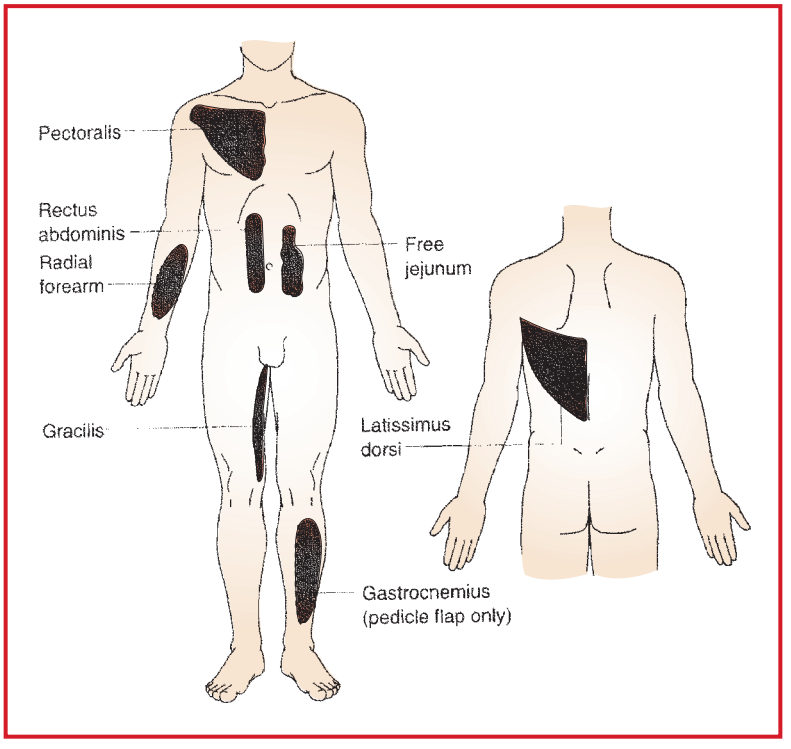


Figure 11.4-1. Locations of commonly used flaps. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Principles and Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

Table 11.4-1. Types of Flaps

Reconstruction	Commonly Used Flaps	Location	Positioning
Head and neck	Fibula	Leg	Supine
	Radial forearm	Arm	Supine
	Scapula	Back	Lateral decubitus
	Iliac crest	Hip	Supine
	Anterolateral thigh	Thigh	Supine
	Gracilis	Thigh	Supine
Breast	TRAM	Abdomen	Supine
	Gluteal	Buttocks	Lateral decubitus
	Rubens/iliac crest	Hip	Supine
	Tensor fascia lata	Lateral thigh	Supine
	Latissimus dorsi	Back	Lateral decubitus
Lower extremity	Rectus abdominis	Abdomen	Supine
	Latissimus dorsi	Back	Lateral decubitus
	Serratus anterior	Back	Lateral decubitus
	Gracilis	Thigh	Supine

standard practice for anticoagulation in microsurgery. No randomized prospective clinical trial has definitively documented the efficacy of a particular type of anticoagulation in routine reconstructive microsurgery. Aspirin, dextran, and heparin are the most commonly used agents. Close communication between the surgeon and anesthesiologist is critical so that the desired agent is administered at the appropriate time.

The survival of the flap relies on the patency of the anastomosis. Thrombosis requires reexploration and may → complete loss of the tissue. If thrombosis is encountered during reexploration, tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) may sometimes be administered to help reestablish patency. Anastomotic patency is diminished by vasospasm or emergent vascular constriction. The common causes of vasoconstriction include dehydration, hypothermia, pain, and administration of vasoconstrictors; therefore, during microsurgery, vasoconstrictors are contraindicated and should be given only when absolutely necessary, after consultation with the reconstructive surgeon. The patient must be adequately hydrated so that there is good perfusion to the transplanted tissue. Diuretics should be avoided. Postop pain control is important to prevent vasoconstriction on emergence from anesthesia. After surgery, patients are transferred to an area of the hospital where the free flap can be monitored. In many hospitals, this is an ICU.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma, cancer, chronic wounds, congenital anomalies, and burns are some of the common diagnoses that result in the need for microsurgical reconstruction.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Requirements of the recipient site take precedence; optimal position for the donor site is then considered.
Incision	Each site will have specific incision.
Special instrumentation	Microscope; tourniquet for extremities
Unique considerations	Multiple surgical teams; avoid hypothermia; ± anticoagulation; if intraop nerve stimulation is planned, muscle relaxants should be avoided.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin (1 g iv) in uncomplicated cases; broader coverage in complicated circumstances
Surgical time	Simple flap: 4–6 h Complex cases: 8–12 h
Closing considerations	Splints and dressings should be secured before emergence.
EBL	Skin flap: 200 mL Muscle flap: 200–500 mL Bone flap: 500–1000 mL

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Postop care	ICU for flap perfusion monitoring
Mortality	< 2% (usually associated with coexisting disease)
Morbidity	Soft-tissue complications: 20–30% Vascular complications requiring reexploration: 5–10% Flap failure: 5%
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	2–90 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	50–200/yr/major center
Etiology	Malignancy; trauma; chronic infection
Associated conditions	Complications of underlying disease (e.g., anemia)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

These surgeries are carried out on patients who have sustained major soft-tissue losses and require flap procedures to cover the defects. There are four typical patient populations presenting for this surgery: (a) those presenting for reconstruction following cancer surgery (e.g., radical neck dissection and mastectomy); (b) patients following trauma, usually with upper or lower limb defects; (c) patients with congenital defects; and (d) previous burn victims. In general, these patients should present few problems for the anesthesiologist. In a patient with a congenital lesion, however, it is prudent to look for evidence of CHD, musculoskeletal deformities, and airway problems.

Respiratory	Exposure of the thorax to radiation may produce pathologic changes in the lungs and related structures, including pneumonitis (→ dyspnea, hypoxemia) that may progress to fibrosis (→ ↓ pulmonary compliance). Tracheal or bronchial fibrosis may → partial airway obstruction. Many burn patients have pulmonary pathology 2° smoke inhalation injury. The pathology usually includes edema, inflammation, and loss of ciliary activity, but can vary depending on the length and amount of smoke exposure, as well as the composition of the material that burned. Patients with breast cancer may have been treated with chemotherapeutic agents (e.g., methotrexate, cyclophosphamide, bleomycin) that may cause pulmonary fibrosis, interstitial infiltrates, and pleural effusions. **Tests:** Consider CXR, PFT, and pulmonary consult.
Cardiovascular	Exposure of the heart to radiation may produce pathologic changes in the heart and related structures, including accelerated atherosclerotic changes, myocardial fibrosis, pericarditis, and valvular dysfunction. Patients with breast cancer may have been treated with doxorubicin (Adriamycin), which may produce cardiomyopathy (usually seen at total doses > 550 mg/m^2) → CHF. XRT increases the incidence of clinically significant cardiomyopathy.
Hematologic	Myelosuppression may be present in patients with Hx of chemotherapy. **Tests:** CBC, with differential and Plt count
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Coordinate iv and/or invasive monitoring sites with the surgical team. Adjunctive regional anesthesia is an option for the appropriate patient who will not be anticoagulated. Some authors propose that the resultant vasodilation causes ↑ blood flow through the flap, but this has not been definitely shown in clinical trials.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) and intubation. Avoid succinylcholine in burn patients.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance with sevoflurane (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation usually is required. The patient must be kept warm and well hydrated to minimize peripheral vasoconstriction, which might impair graft perfusion. Surgeon may request intraop anticoagulation, usually in the form of aspirin, dextran, or heparin.	
Emergence	Smooth emergence to avoid disrupting the surgical repair. Patients usually are transported to the ICU for continuous monitoring of flap perfusion.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–5 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	Keep patient warm, and maintain a positive fluid balance. A Hct of 30–35% will provide adequate O_2 transport, while minimizing viscosity. Dextran 40 may be used to further ↓ viscosity, thereby ↑ flap blood flow.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). UO ± Arterial line	An arterial line may be useful for prolonged procedures where regular ABGs and blood chemistries will be needed.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	These can be very lengthy surgeries, and careful monitoring of pressure points is essential.
Complications	Hypothermia Decubitus ulcer Dextran reaction	Maintain normal body temperature with warming blankets, fluid, and airway warmers. Pressure necrosis can occur in as little as 2 h. Carefully pad and repeatedly ✓ pressure points. Prophylactic use of very low molecular weight dextran (Promit) usually prevents allergic reactions to higher molecular weight dextran. Adult dose = 20 mL 1–15 min before dextran infusion.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Arterial thrombosis Hematoma	May require reexploration. May require reexploration.
Pain management	Parenteral opiates (see p. C-3). PCA (see p. C-3). Multimodal approach	Pain should be treated promptly to minimize reflex peripheral vasoconstriction and impaired graft perfusion. Consider a combination of gabapentin, iv acetaminophen, opiates, and regional nerve block.

Suggested Readings

1. Erni D, Banic A, Signer C, et al: Effects of epidural anaesthesia on microcirculatory blood flow in free flaps in patients under general anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 1999; 16(10):692–8.
2. Evans BC, Evans GR: Microvascular surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2007; 119(2):18e–30e.
3. Gardiner MD, Nanchahal J: Strategies to ensure success of microvascular free tissue transfer. *J Plast Reconstr Anesthet Surg* 2010; 63(9):e665–73.
4. Hagau N, Longrois D: Anesthesia for free vascularized tissue transfer. *Microsurgery* 2009; 29(2):161–7.
5. Hallock GG: The complete classification of flaps. *Microsurgery* 2004; 24(3):157–61.

6. Lee RG, Baskin JZ: Improving outcomes of locoregional flaps: an emphasis on anatomy and basic science. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2006; 14(4):260–4.
7. Lipa JE: Breast reconstruction with free flaps from the abdominal donor site: TRAM, DIEAP, and SIEA flaps. *Clin Plast Surg* 2007; 34(1):105–21.
8. Pattani KM, Byrne P, Boahene K, Richmon J: What makes a good flap go bad? A critical analysis of the literature of intraoperative factors related to free flap failure. *Laryngoscope* 2010; 120(4):717–23.
9. Pereira CM, Figueiredo ME, Carvalho R, Catre D, Assunção JP: Anesthesia and surgical microvascular flaps. *Reve Bras Anesthesiol* 2012; 62(4):563–79.

MICROSURGERY-REPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patients who require replantation surgery are trauma victims and must be evaluated carefully preop, by both surgeons and anesthesiologists, to ensure that replantation is appropriate and that other injuries are not overlooked. In these cases, time is critical, as the amputated tissue is ischemic and may require immediate revascularization if it is to be salvaged. Coordination between the microsurgeon, anesthesiologist, and trauma team is important to minimize the time between injury and replantation.

As in any microsurgical procedure, it is critical to prevent vasoconstriction in these procedures. These patients may have experienced significant blood loss at the time of the trauma and require iv hydration and/or blood transfusion. The need for hemodynamic support often indicates another injury that may preclude transplantation. The patient may be hypothermic and require active rewarming. Vasoconstrictors and diuretics should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. During the replantation procedure, other tissues (e.g., skin, vein, bone) are required to aid in the reconstruction. These are routinely harvested from the leg, groin, or foot, which will be prepped into the surgical field.

The amputated stump is initially examined using loupe magnification. The arteries, veins, and nerves are dissected and tagged. The surgeon determines if the part is replantable. The amputated stump is prepared by dissecting the recipient arteries, veins, and nerves. The need for a vein graft may be determined at this time. The sequence of replantation varies; however, a general algorithm is:

Bone fixation → Extensor tendon repair → Flexor tendon repair → Nerve repair → Arterial and venous anastomoses → Skin closure

The replanted tissue must be monitored on an hourly basis to ensure continued viability. In many hospitals, this is performed in a microsurgical unit, whereas in others, the ICU is used. Patients should be kept adequately hydrated, warm, and pain-free to prevent vasoconstriction and subsequent thrombosis. Vascular thrombosis requires immediate exploration and revision of the vascular anastomosis.

Specific variations of replantation procedures have unique features, as follows.

Replantation of fingers and hands: Generally, two surgeons work simultaneously. One surgeon at the back table explores the amputated parts, tagging significant nerves, vessels, and tendons. A second surgeon debrides the amputation sites and identifies the stumps of reparable structures. The surgeons then proceed with replantation. Generally, bone fixation and tendon repairs are performed first. Vessel and nerve repairs are performed next, using a microscope. The need for vein grafting and anticoagulation is determined intraop. Blood transfusions are rarely needed except when using anticoagulants.

Replantation of extremities: Replantation of arms or legs must be handled very efficiently because irreversible muscle damage occurs within 4 h of ischemia. Generally, the sequence of surgery is similar to finger replantation, with the exception being that a temporary arterial circulation (using a dialysis shunt) is established as soon as possible to minimize ischemia time in an amputated part. Ongoing venous blood loss occurs while skeletal repairs are done, and transfusion is frequently required. Definitive vessel repairs (often requiring vein grafts) and nerve repairs are done under the microscope.

Scalp replantation: Scalp avulsions are caused by entanglement of hair in machinery. These amputations are frequently replantable, sparing the patient a grotesque and unstable deformity. Initial evaluation should include careful assessment of the C-spine because the patient transiently hangs by the neck until the scalp separates. Initial blood

loss can be significant and should be replaced preop. Replantation proceeds by identifying matching vessels at the margin of the defect and the avulsed scalp. The superficial temporal vessels are most commonly repaired, and use of vein grafts should be anticipated. Following the first artery repair, brisk bleeding generally occurs at the scalp margin until vein repairs are completed. This blood loss should be anticipated.

Usual preop diagnosis: Trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Fingers/Hands	Extremities	Scalp
Position	Supine, injured arm extended	Supine	Supine or side (depending on vessel position)
Incision	Conventional hand exposure	Extension of injury; fasciotomies may be done.	Preauricular
Special instrumentation	Microscope; hand table; tourniquet	Microscope; tourniquet	Microscope; neurosurgical headrest
Unique considerations	Anticoagulation	⇐	RAE or anode tube; table, turned 180°
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1st finger: 3–4 h; 2 h/subsequent finger Hand: 4 h	4–8 h	4 h
Closing considerations	Splint applied before emergence.	Cast or splint applied before emergence.	Elevate head as much as possible.
EBL	100–200 mL	2–6 U	2–8 U
Postop care	ICU for monitoring	⇐	⇐
Mortality	None	Rare	None
Morbidity	Replant failure: 5–15%	Failure: 10–20%	Vascular occlusion → reexploration
Pain score	5–6	5–6	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Childhood–old age	⇐	Young adult
Male:Female	> 10:1	⇐	1:2
Incidence	250/yr/major center	Rare	⇐
Etiology	Trauma	⇐	⇐
Associated conditions	Other injuries	Other injuries, blood loss	C-spine injuries, blood loss

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR REPLANTATION

PREOPERATIVE

In general, there are two patient populations for replantation procedures: (a) isolated limb and scalp injury patients (common) and (b) multiple trauma victims (rare). Most patients are otherwise healthy, and the preop workup is routine.

Gastrointestinal	All of these patients should be considered to have full stomachs and, therefore, are at increased risk for aspiration pneumonitis. In general, they should receive preop medication to reduce stomach volume and acidity (e.g., metoclopramide 10 mg iv and ranitidine 50 mg iv) 30–60 min before induction, time permitting.
Metabolic	~50% of trauma victims are intoxicated. Anesthesia-related implications of acute ethanol intoxication include: ↓ anesthetic requirements, diuresis, vasodilation, and hypothermia.
Neurologic	Assess for possible head or C-spine injury, particularly in the trauma patient presenting with facial or scalp injuries.
Laboratory	As suggested by coexisting disease.
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1). Full-stomach precautions: Na citrate 0.3 M 30 mL immediately before induction of anesthesia.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, after rapid-sequence induction. These procedures are often lengthy, and regional anesthesia is usually not appropriate as the primary technique but may be considered as an adjunct.

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) is mandatory in emergency cases, unless awake intubation is performed. C-spine fracture patients or those with facial injuries may require awake fiberoptic intubation (see p. B-6).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3) for stable patients.	
Emergence	Difficult airway or full-stomach cases require awake extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Significant blood loss possible IV: 16 ga × 1–2 (extremity/scalp) IV: 18 ga × 1 (digit) NS/LR @ 1.5–3 mL/kg/h + 3 × blood loss Fluid/blood warmers, heating blanket, warmed circuit humidifier	A 16-ga iv catheter in a nonoperated upper extremity should be adequate in hemodynamically stable patients. Keep patient warm and hydrated to maximize perfusion to the replanted site. Avoid vasoconstrictors if possible. HCT > 33% may ↑ viscosity + ↓ perfusion
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line, CVP	Invasive hemodynamic monitoring should be considered in cases where large blood loss is anticipated.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Control of blood loss	Tourniquet may be used.	Inflation pressure is typically 100 mm Hg greater than systolic pressure. Maximum "safe" tourniquet time is 1.5–2 h, followed by a 5- (preferably) 15-min reperfusion interval if further tourniquet time is necessary.
Special considerations	Tourniquet deflation and limb reperfusion	Mild ↓ BP is common. In patients with moderate-to-severe lung disease, continue controlled ventilation until after the lactic acid that has accumulated in the ischemic limb is metabolized (3–5 min) because these patients may be unable to increase ventilation adequately to buffer this acid load.
Complications	Hemodynamic instability	Previously unrecognized injuries (e.g., pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, intracranial bleeding) should be considered as a cause of unexplained intraop hemodynamic instability in all acute trauma victims.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Reperfusion failure	May require immediate reexploration.
Pain management	PCA (see p. C-3) Regional nerve block	With continuous infusion of local anesthetic will provide excellent analgesia.
Tests	None routinely indicated.	Reimplant perfusion must be monitored.

Suggested Readings

1. Goldner RD, Urbaniak JR: Replantation. In: Green DP, Hotchkiss DP, Hotchkiss RN, et al., eds. *Green's Operative Hand Surgery,* 6th edition. Churchill Livingstone, San Francisco: 2010, Chapter 48.
2. Ilfeld BM, Enecking FK: Continuous peripheral nerve blocks at home: a review. *Anesth Analog* 2011; 113(4):904–25.
3. Su HH, Lui P-W, Yu CL, Liew CS, et al: The effects of continuous axillary brachial plexus block with ropivacaine infusion on skin temperature and survival of crushed fingers after microsurgical replantation. *Chang Gung Med J* 2005; 28(8):567–74.
4. Wijayaratna SBT, Suraweera HJ, Lamawansa MD, et al: Post-operative critical care and outcomes of limb replantation: experience in a developing country. *Injury* 2008; 39(2), 203–8.

BREAST SURGERY—INTRODUCTION

David M. Kahn

Patients presenting for plastic surgery of the breast can be grouped into four basic categories along a continuum ranging from amastia/hypomastia to hypertrophy. Plastic surgery procedures are designed to create or make adjustments in the amounts of skin and glandular tissue or to make adjustments in their relationship to each other to create an aesthetic breast. The first type of patient is one who has acquired amastia after undergoing a mastectomy; it is this patient who is featured in this section on functional restoration. In this patient, the goal is to replace the missing tissue, both skin and glandular, with like tissue or an implant. The second type is a person presenting for augmentation mammoplasty (see p. 1108). In this situation, the breast is deficient of skin and glandular tissue. The third type is the patient who presents for a reduction mammoplasty (see p. 1110). In this situation, there is an excess of glandular tissue and skin. The fourth type is the patient who presents for a mastopexy or breast lift (see p. 1112). In this patient, there exists a discrepancy between the amount of glandular tissue present and the volume of the skin envelope, resulting in ptosis.

For all breast procedures, the patient's breasts are marked preop with the patient in either sitting or standing position. This is a necessity, and its importance cannot be overstated. The appearance of the breasts in the supine position versus the upright position is significantly different due to the effects of gravity.

BREAST RECONSTRUCTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The goal of breast reconstruction is to create an aesthetic breast that is symmetrical with the contralateral breast. Typically, this can be accomplished in three ways: expander/implant reconstruction; latissimus flap reconstruction, ± an implant; and TRAM flap reconstruction, performed using either a pedicled technique or a free-tissue transfer. If abdominal tissue is not available, autologous breast reconstruction can also be performed using free flaps from other areas such as the gluteal region (superior gluteal artery perforation flap) or medial thigh (transverse upper gracilis flap). Each type of reconstruction follows the principle of replacing glandular and cutaneous breast tissue. In patients undergoing mastectomy, reconstruction may be performed immediately after the mastectomy or it may be delayed and performed at a later date.

In **expander/implant reconstruction** (Fig. 11.4-2), a tissue expander is placed underneath the pectoralis major muscle and a portion of the serratus anterior muscle, followed by skin closure. Thus, two layers exist above the implant—skin and muscle. The patient returns to the office for expansions, with saline being injected into the implant port. This is continued until the desired size is reached. Then, the patient returns to the OR for the exchange of the expander for a permanent implant that contains either saline or silicone gel as filler material. Except for the psychosocial aspects of patient management, much of the technique and perioperative concerns are similar to those for breast augmentation (see p. 1108).

Autologous breast reconstructions: Two types of flaps are used for these procedures—latissimus myocutaneous flap and transverse rectus abdominis muscle (TRAM) flap. The **latissimus dorsi myocutaneous flap** consists of the muscle with overlying skin that is rotated from the back to the anterior chest for the creation of a breast. The flap does not supply sufficient bulk to be used in breast reconstruction unless the contralateral breast is very small. Usually a breast implant is placed between the latissimus and pectoralis muscles, thus increasing the volume of the reconstruction. The patient is placed in the lateral decubitus position for the latissimus flap harvest. The incision is designed to surround the skin paddle. The ellipse of skin is incised, and the dissection then proceeds along the superficial surface of the latissimus muscle toward its lateral, superior, and inferior borders. Dissection is performed underneath the latissimus muscle to separate it from the deep tissues of the back. The muscle is released from its insertions on the posterior superior iliac crest, medial fascial attachments, and surrounding muscle attachments (i.e., serratus anterior, teres major). The flap is tunneled through the axilla, and the back wound is closed (Fig. 11.4-3). The patient is then returned to the supine position. The muscle is disinserted from the humerus, if necessary, and brought out onto the anterior chest wall. At this point, the muscle is inset into the mastectomy defect. An implant or tissue expander may be placed under the muscle if necessary for size and symmetry. Often, the patient is placed in the seated or semi-Fowler position for closure. The incisions are closed over a drain, and dressings are applied. The skin flap is monitored postop for signs of flap ischemia and congestion, which may necessitate a return to the OR.

The **TRAM flap** procedure replaces the breast with an ellipse of abdominal skin and subcutaneous tissue based on the rectus abdominis muscle (Fig. 11.4-4). There are several variations in the type of abdominal tissue that is transferred. Traditionally, the TRAM flap consists of the entire rectus muscle and overlying subcutaneous tissue and skin. Modified techniques minimize the amount of muscle removed to decrease the occurrence of postoperative hernias. These include muscle-sparing TRAM (MS-TRAM) flaps that take out only a small portion of rectus. Deep inferior epigastric artery perforator (DIEP) flaps involve only the skin and subcutaneous tissue with the perforators dissected from the rectus muscle. DIEP flaps require more tedious dissection. Superficial inferior epigastric artery (SIEA) flaps are based off the SIEA and do not involve any dissection within the rectus muscle. In selecting patients for a TRAM flap reconstruction, the patient must have adequate lower abdominal tissue to make a breast; however, obese patients, smokers, diabetics, and those with a Hx of prior abdominal surgery may have a higher incidence of complications and flap loss. The benefit of this procedure is that it creates a natural appearing breast from the patient's

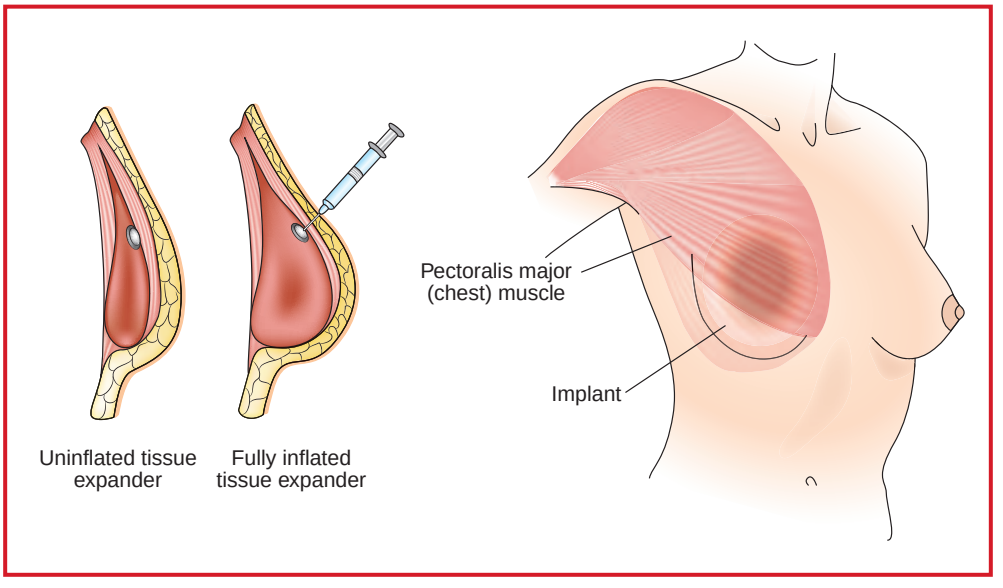


Figure 11.4-2. Expander-implant reconstruction. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practices*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

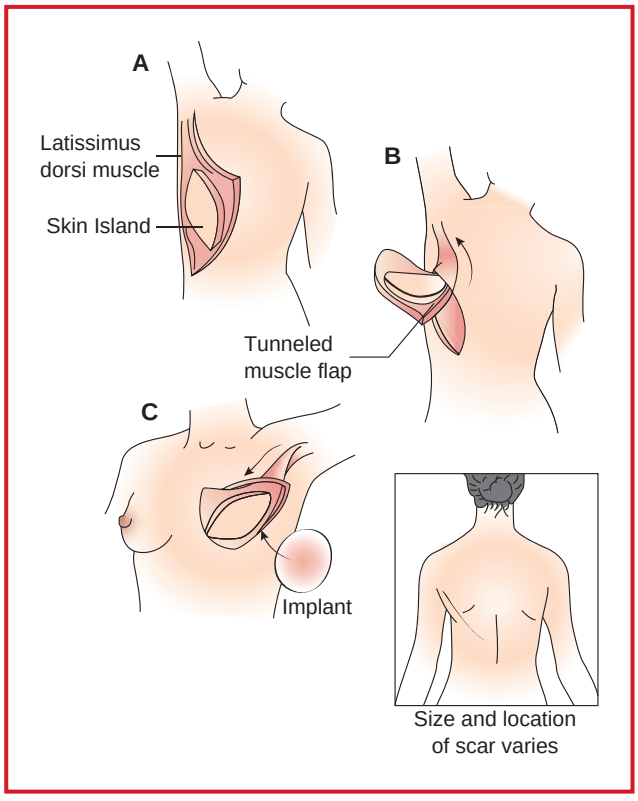


Figure 11.4-3. **A–C:** Latissimus dorsi flap reconstruction. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practices*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: 2001.)

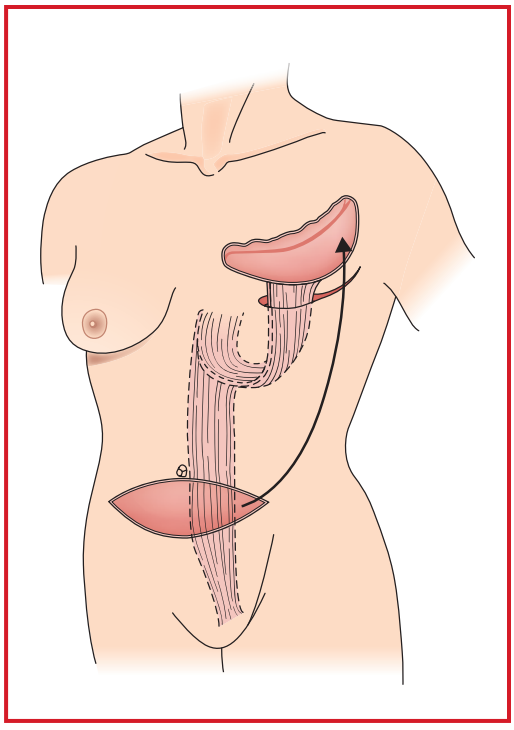


Figure 11.4-4. Breast reconstruction using peclicled TRAM flap. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield, LJ, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*, 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

own tissue without an implant. As a bonus, the abdominal donor site is closed as though the patient had undergone abdominoplasty ("tummy tuck"). The myocutaneous perforators that arise from the superior epigastric and inferior epigastric arteries provide blood supply to the flap. This flap can be harvested in either a pedicled fashion, based on the superior epigastric artery, or as a free flap, based on the inferior epigastric artery. The inset of the flap and closure of the donor site are the same in both cases. The basic difference between the two methods of flap transfer is that, in the free TRAM procedure, the flap is removed from the abdomen, brought into the mastectomy wound, and the operating microscope is used to suture the vascular pedicle of the flap to the recipient vessels, either the thoracodorsal or internal mammary arteries. In the case of the pedicled TRAM flap, the flap is passed through a tunnel, created under the skin, maintaining the blood supply via the superior epigastric artery. The flap is brought out into the mastectomy wound where it is sutured into position.

Pedicled TRAM flap: The patient is marked preop in the upright position. The midline and inframammary folds are marked, as is the abdominal ellipse. The arms are placed at 90° abduction. The breasts and abdomen are prepped and draped. A general surgeon performs the mastectomy and, if possible, the TRAM flap harvest is started at the same time. Incising the skin along the superior marking of the abdominal ellipse begins the harvest of the flap. The upper abdominal skin and subcutaneous fat are elevated off the abdominal wall fascia up to the level of the costochondral cartilage, as in an abdominoplasty. The table is then flexed, and the upper skin and subcutaneous tissue are brought to overlap the TRAM flap to ensure that the location of the marked incision at the lower border of the flap will allow for abdominal closure. The patient is returned to the supine position. The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the flap are raised from a lateral to medial direction off the abdominal wall fascia until the lateral border of the rectus muscle is identified. Care is taken to preserve the myocutaneous perforators supplying the flap. The anterior rectus sheath is incised, and the rectus muscle is elevated away from the posterior rectus sheath. The inferior epigastric vascular pedicle is identified and divided, preserving as much length as possible. The portion of the rectus muscle below the flap is transected so that the muscle, along with the overlying ellipse of skin and subcutaneous tissue, can be rotated into the mastectomy site. A tunnel is created under the skin to connect the abdominal wound and mastectomy site. The flap is passed through this tunnel and rotated into position on the chest wall (Fig. 11.4-5).

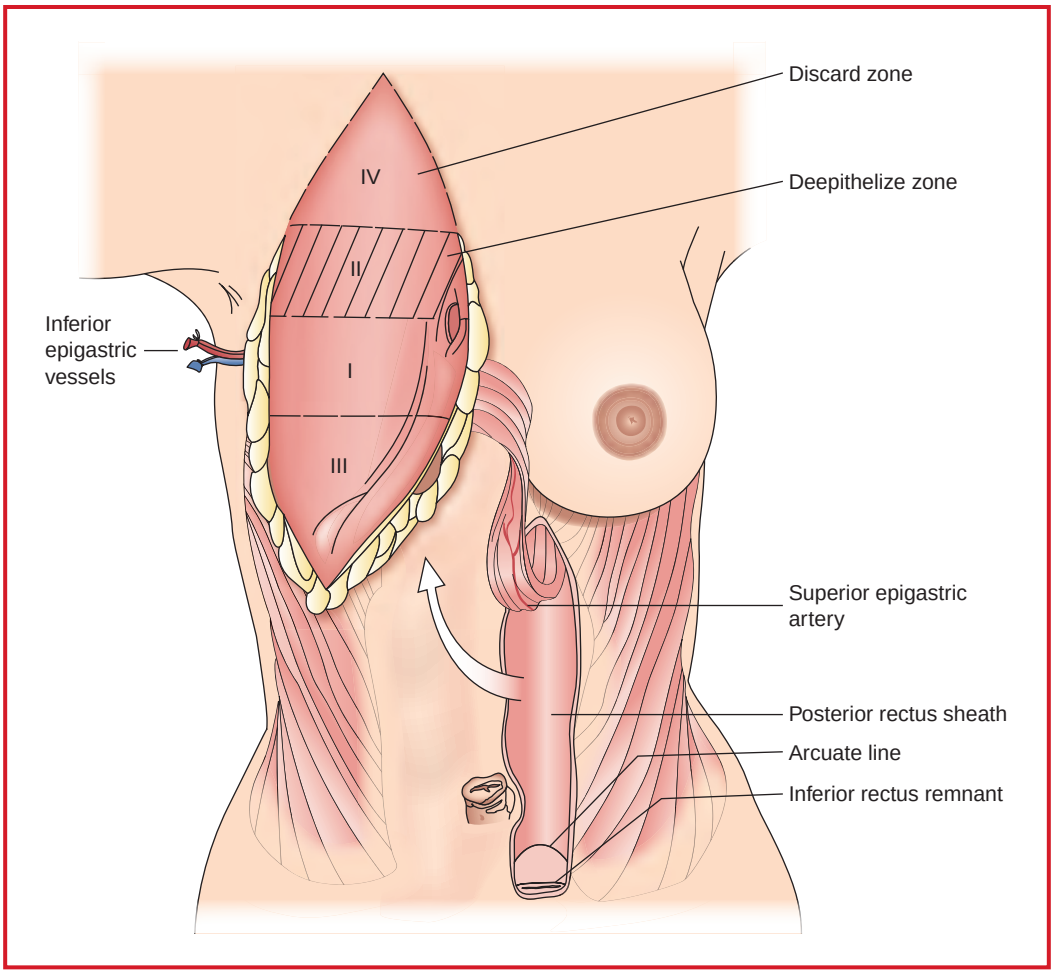


Figure 11.4-5. TRAM flap reconstruction of the breast. A contralateral pedicle TRAM flap has been elevated and will be tunneled under the skin to be inset at the mastectomy site. The zone of tissue furthest from the blood supply is discarded. A portion of the TRAM flap will be deepithelialized and placed under the mastectomy skin flaps. (Reproduced with permission from Spear SL: *Surgery of the Breast: Principles and Art*. Lippincott-Raven: 1998.)

In flap reconstructions, the harvested tissue receives its blood supply through a single artery and vein. It is important in these cases to maintain a stable BP that will allow for continued perfusion of the flap tissue. Vasopressors are to be avoided, as they will constrict the artery and thus restrict the inflow into the flap. Paralytics may be requested in the case of DIEP flaps to minimize muscular twitching while the surgeon dissects through the rectus to follow the vascular pedicle. It is preferred, if possible, to maintain a stable BP with volume replacement. Once the flap is in place at the mastectomy site, the table is again flexed as much as 45–60° for closure. Drains are placed within both the chest and abdominal wound beds. The flap is trimmed and sutured into position to create symmetry with the contralateral breast. The abdomen is closed in a fashion similar to an abdominoplasty. Many surgeons prefer that N_2O (which can distend the abdomen) be avoided during the abdominal closure. The surgeon will evaluate the flap to monitor for signs of ischemia and congestion. This is done both by clinical evaluation (color, temperature, and turgor) and by Doppler. If inflow or outflow is inadequate for flap survival, blood flow may be supplemented by performing a microvascular anastomosis between the inferior epigastric pedicle and the thoracodorsal vessels. In some cases, the surgeon may choose to convert the pedicled flap to a free flap.

Usual preop diagnosis: Carcinoma of the breast; radiation therapy; cardiovascular surgery; Poland syndrome

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Tissue Expander/Implant	Latissimus Dorsi Flap	TRAM Flap
Position	Supine	Lateral decubitus → supine	Supine
Incision	Breast	Posterior (supine); lateral (thorax)	Abdominal
Unique considerations	May have to place patient in sitting position during procedure; SCDs; Foley catheter if case > 3–4 h.	⇐	⇐ + Avoid use of N_2O.
Surgical time	1–2 h	4 h (+ mastectomy time)	6–8 h (free TRAM) 4 h (pedicled TRAM) (not including mastectomy time)
Closing considerations	Extensive dressing required	⇐	⇐ + Flex table for abdominal closure.
EBL	Minimal–100 mL	200–300 mL	200–400 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐ (free TRAM flap → ICU)
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Capsular contraction: ± 30% Decreased sensation: 15% Hematoma: 2.2% Fat/skin necrosis: 1.7–1.9% Nipple areola necrosis: 1.4%	— ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ — Flap loss: Rare	— ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ — ⇐ Abdominal hernia: Infrequent
Pain score	5	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–70 yr
Male:Female	Mostly female
Incidence	Breast reconstruction is performed in 9% of female population
Etiology	Cancer; trauma; idiopathic; radiation or postcardiovascular surgery
Associated conditions	Breast cancer; cardiovascular disease; S/P chemotherapy; pulmonary disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Breast and Chest Wall Reconstruction, p. 1373.

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Plastic Surgeons' Website: www.plasticsurgery.org.
2. DellaCroce FJ, Wolfe ET: Breast reconstruction. *Surg Clin North Am* 2013; 93(2):445–54.
3. Hunt KK, et al: *Schwartz's Principles of Surgery*. 9th edition. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2010.
4. Serletti JM, Fosnot JA, Disa JJ, Bucky LP: Breast Reconstruction after breast cancer. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 127:124–35.
5. Zhong T, McCarthy CM, Price AN, Pusic AL: Evidence-based medicine: breast reconstruction. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2013; 132(6):1658–69.

CHEST WALL RECONSTRUCTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Chest wall reconstruction is most commonly performed for infections, sternal dehiscence, tumor extirpation, and radiation injuries. Complications after median sternotomy make up a large number of these cases. The patients often have comorbidities and are at high risk for anesthetic and surgical complications. The goals of reconstruction are to provide a stable chest wall for respiration, to eradicate infection, and to obtain a healed wound.

Sternal wound infections and dehiscences: Wound complications after median sternotomy include dehiscence of the sternum and mediastinitis. In these cases, radical debridement of all devitalized tissue is the cornerstone to a successful outcome. The initial debridement is, therefore, performed in conjunction with the cardiovascular surgeons. During this debridement, blood loss may be extensive, requiring transfusion. The resulting dead space around the heart and great vessels is obliterated, most commonly with **pectoralis major or rectus abdominis muscle (TRAM) flaps.** For patients who have failed the initial reconstruction or are not candidates for these flaps, a **latissimus dorsi muscle flap** may be used. The omentum can also be used to help obliterate the dead space. Despite radical excision of the sternum, the respiratory function of these patients remains adequate, and no bony stabilization is required.

Tumor extirpation and radiation injury: Tumor resection or removal of osteoradionecrosis of the chest wall often involves the full-thickness removal of skin, muscle, and underlying rib cage. The rib cage may be reconstructed with prosthetic mesh or bone grafts. These structures are then covered with muscle flaps. The pectoralis major, rectus abdominis, and latissimus dorsi muscles are the muscle flaps most commonly used. After surgery, the patient's ventilatory capacity may be diminished by the rib resection, and this should be anticipated preop.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chest wall infections; tumor; sternal dehiscence; radiation injuries

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Pectoralis Flap	Latissimus Flap	Rectus (TRAM) Flap	Omental Flap
Position	Supine	Lateral decubitus → supine	Supine; table flexed	Supine
Incision	Chest	Posterolateral thorax	Abdominal	Abdominal
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g	⇐	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3 h	⇐	4–6 h	3 h
Closing considerations	✓ flap perfusion.	⇐	⇐	⇐
EBL	200–400 mL	⇐	300–500 mL	200 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Thrombosis/flap failure Hematoma Fat/skin necrosis	⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Abdominal hernia: Infrequent	⇐ Diaphragmatic hernia Bowel obstruction Bowel perforation
Pain score	4–5	4–5	4–5	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	30–80 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Cancer; trauma; radiation; postcardiovascular surgery
Associated conditions	Breast cancer; cardiovascular disease; S/P chemotherapy; pulmonary disease; mediastinitis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR BREAST AND CHEST WALL RECONSTRUCTION

PREOPERATIVE

These surgeries are performed most commonly for reconstruction following cancer surgery, such as radical neck dissection and mastectomy (see Anesthetic Considerations for the primary procedure), as well as complications after median sternotomy. The following considerations focus on patients undergoing reconstruction post-chemotherapy.

Respiratory	Pulmonary fibrosis may complicate chemotherapy. Bleomycin (> 200 mg/m^2) carries the greatest risk of pulmonary toxicity (10%), but alkylating agents (e.g., cyclophosphamide and melphalan) may cause a degree of pulmonary toxicity as well. Avoid FiO_2 > 30% in bleomycin patients (to prevent progressive pulmonary fibrosis and edema). Patients presenting with complications from a prior sternotomy may have ↓ respiratory function/reserve and will require further work up. **Tests:** CXR; ABG and PFTs as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Cardiomyopathy and CHF may result from chemotherapy, especially doxorubicin (Adriamycin) > 550 mg/m^2. Previous XRT increases risk of clinically significant cardiomyopathy. Patients with median sternotomy-related complications who have undergone prior cardiac surgery will require careful evaluation of their current cardiovascular status. **Tests:** ECG; ECHO, if indicated from H&P
Neurological	Note any previous damage to long thoracic nerves, as evidenced by winged scapula deformity.
Musculoskeletal	It is traditional to avoid iv and BP cuff in the upper extremity on mastectomy side.
Hematologic	Myelosuppression/toxicity from chemotherapeutic agents may be present. **Tests:** CBC; Plt count; coag profile; Hb/Hct
Renal/Hepatic	Methotrexate can produce renal and hepatic dysfunction. Elevated alkaline phosphatase may suggest metastatic bone invasion. **Tests:** Electrolytes; BUN; Cr; LFTs
Gastrointestinal	Tamoxifen, used in hormonal chemotherapy, can cause preop N/V and dehydration.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P, prior chemotherapy
Premedication	Midazolam 1–2 mg iv immediately preop

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) and intubation. Avoid iv and NIBP monitoring on mastectomy side.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation is usually appropriate. These patients should be kept warm and well hydrated to minimize peripheral vasoconstriction, which might impair graft perfusion.
Emergence	During some of the procedure and for application of dressing, patient may be moved to sitting position, with consequent coughing, bucking, etc. (Rx: deeper anesthesia, e.g., propofol 0.5 mg/kg or lidocaine 1 mg/kg.) Watch BP carefully, and treat orthostatic hypotension if it occurs, usually with a fluid bolus if the patient is not volume-sensitive (e.g., Hx of CHF or renal failure).

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	Extensive blood loss may occur with debridement of sternum in cases of infection or dehiscence. Keep patient warm and maintain a positive fluid balance. Hypothermia may impair flap perfusion.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). UO	Use invasive monitoring in cardiovascular-challenged patients or in cases with significant expected blood loss, where regular ABGs and blood chemistries will be useful.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Pneumothorax Decubitus ulcer Dextran reaction	Pneumothorax should be considered with any ↑ lung inflation pressure, ↓ O_2 sat, or ↓ BP. Pressure necrosis can occur in as little as 2 h. Carefully pad and repeatedly ✓ pressure points. Prophylactic use of very low molecular weight dextran (Promit) usually prevents allergic reactions to higher molecular weight dextrans. Adult dose = 20 mL (pediatric dose = 0.3 mL/kg) iv 1–2 min (maximum 15 min) before dextran infusion.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Pneumothorax ↓ Flap perfusion	
Pain management	Parenteral opiates (see p. C-2). PCA (see p. C-3). Regional nerve blocks	Pain should be treated promptly to minimize reflex peripheral vasoconstriction and impaired graft perfusion. Paravertebral and TAP blocks are effective for pain control

Suggested Readings

1. Hivelin M, Wyniecki A, Plaud B, et al: Ultrasound-guided bilateral transversus abdominis plane block for postoperative analgesia after breast reconstruction by DIEP flap. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 128(1):44–55.
2. Kitowski NJ, Lansercasper J, Gendrum JD, et al: Local and paravertebral block anesthesia for outpatient elective breast cancer surgery. *Arch Surg* 2010; 145(6):592–4.
3. Petit JY, Rietjens M, Lohsiriwat V, et al: Update on breast reconstruction techniques and indications. *World J Surg* 2012; 36(7):1486–97.

PRESSURE SORE RECONSTRUCTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pressure sores occur when constant pressure is placed on an area of the body. They tend to occur in debilitated, bedridden, paralyzed, and wheelchair-bound patients. Multiple factors—including altered sensory perception, poor nutrition, incontinence, moisture, and shear forces—also may contribute to the formation of the

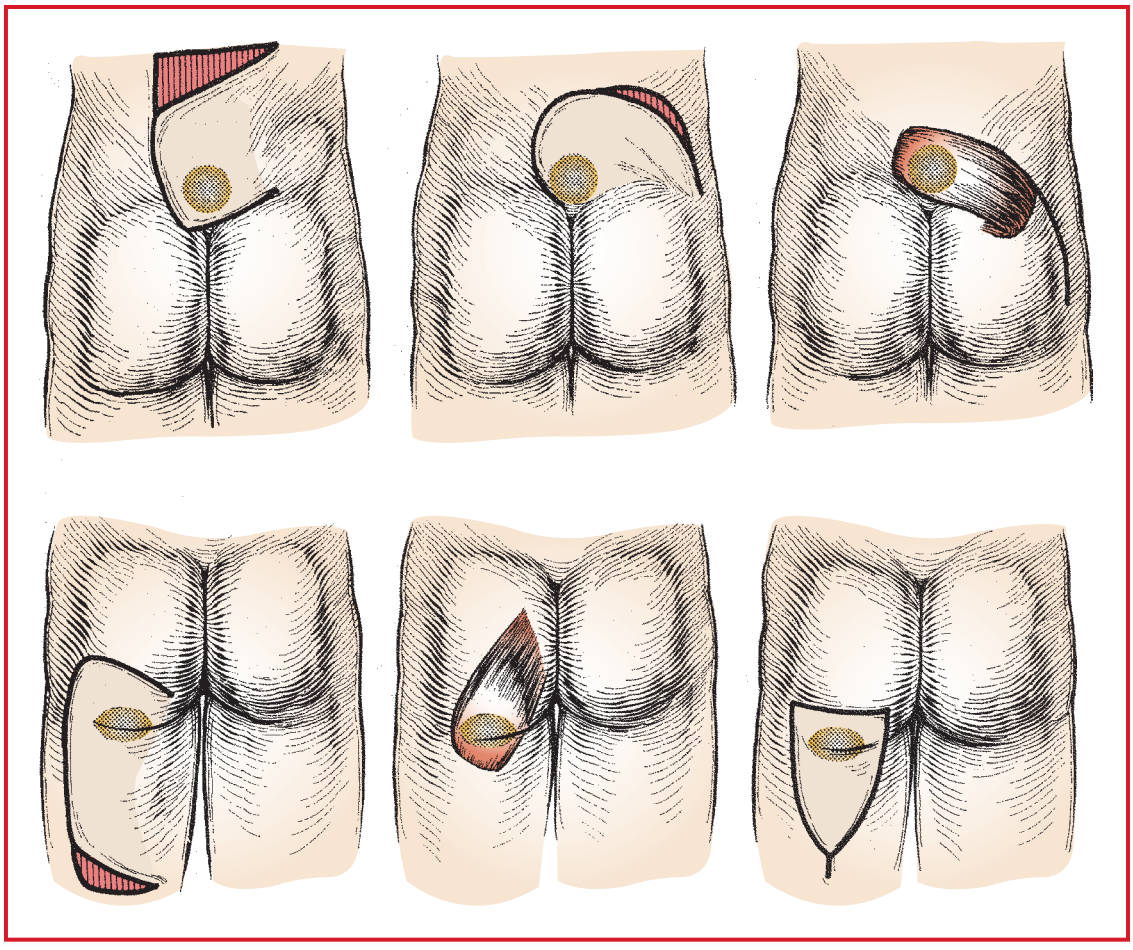


Figure 11.4-6. Commonly used flap designs for coverage of sacral and ischial pressure sores. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CHM: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

pressure sores. The most common locations are the sacrum, ischium, and greater trochanter regions, as well as the heel and scalp.

The management of pressure sores is multidisciplinary and involves more than just debridement and wound closure. Patient compliance is the most important factor of wound management, as recurrence rates after closure are high. All components that contributed to the formation of the ulcer must be addressed before wound closure. This is best done in a team setting, with the goal of preventing further sores. In this effort, nutrition must be optimized; infection, muscle spasm, and contractures controlled; pressure relief measures instituted; and the psychological issues addressed. Once these are in place, wound reconstruction may begin.

Reconstruction is based on adequate debridement, elimination of dead space and pressure points, and closure of the wound with healthy, durable tissue. Multiple flap designs have been described for the coverage of pressure sores, depending on their location (Fig. 11.4-6). An important point in the design of a flap is the consideration for future reconstructions because of the high incidence of recurrent wounds. The choice of flap also needs to take into consideration the donor site morbidity. Skin-only flaps, fasciocutaneous flaps, and musculocutaneous flaps are commonly used.

The patient is placed in the prone position and may be jackknifed to facilitate exposure of the wound. Debridement of the wound is performed; and the bursa and underlying bony prominences may be removed. Hemostasis is obtained, and the wound is irrigated with pulsed lavage. The flap to be used is designed over the vascular pedicle. The donor site for sacral, gluteal, and greater trochanteric wounds are typically the tissues of the buttocks and posterior thigh. The skin is incised and the flap is raised to include the appropriate layers of tissue, depending on whether a skin, fasciocutaneous, or musculocutaneous flap is to be used. The flap is then rotated into position in the wound. A portion of

the flap may be deepithelialized and placed into the wound to eliminate dead space. Drains are placed into the wound, and the flap is sutured into its new location. The donor site defect that occurs after rotation of the flap may be closed directly or may require a skin graft. Once the operation is complete, the patient is transferred to a pressure-relief bed (e.g., Clinitron or air-fluidized bed) and extubated.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pressure sores

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Prone or lateral decubitus
Incision	Gluteal or posterior thigh
Unique considerations	Foley catheter; SCDs
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv. Some surgeons may prefer broader polymicrobial coverage.
Surgical time	3 h
Closing considerations	None
EBL	200–300 mL
Postop care	Strict bed rest on a pressure-relief bed for up to 3 wk. Care must be taken to ensure that the patient is turned every 2 h so that excessive pressure is not transferred to a new location. Antibiotics and the control of urine and stool are important to prevent soiling of the suture lines.
Mortality	0–1%
Morbidity	Infection: 2–3% Dehiscence: 1% DVT: 1% Recurrence
Pain score	4–6 (depends on spinal cord status)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	20–70 yr
Male:Female	Predominantly male
Etiology	Immobility; unrelieved pressure; altered sensation
Associated conditions	Paraplegia; debilitation; quadriplegia

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, these surgeries are carried out on nonambulatory patients, with the spinal cord injury patient comprising a large subset. Anesthesia for plegic patients may well present several challenges, as discussed below.

Respiratory	Plegic patients may have intercostal muscle weakness → atelectasis and ↓ clearance of secretions → recurrent URIs and V/Q mismatching → hypoxemia. **Tests:** PFT; ABG; others as indicated from H&P

Cardiovascular	Autonomic hyperreflexia (AH) may present as acute episodes of uninhibited hyperactivity in the patient with an injury level of T10 or above. The main clinical signs are paroxysmal HTN and bradycardia, in response to stimulation below the lesion. Severe HTN can result in pulmonary edema, myocardial ischemia, and cerebral hemorrhage. Identify triggering stimuli (e.g., bowel or bladder distension, cutaneous stimulation). T4 or higher lesions may → ↓ BP on induction of GA or regional anesthesia, initiation of IPPV, or postural changes. **Tests:** ECG; others as indicated from H&P
Neurological	✓ level of cord injury. AH in patient with spinal cord injury (see Cardiovascular, above) may manifest as headaches, sweating, facial flushing, or syncope. Hyperreflexia below injury level.
Musculoskeletal	Immobility → skeletal muscle atrophy, osteoporosis, and decubitus ulcer formation.
Gastrointestinal	Spinal cord injury → ↓ GI function → constipation/full stomach.
Renal	Chronic spinal cord injury → recurrent UTIs and calculi → renal failure. Foley catheter placement may → AH. **Tests:** UA; BUN; Cr; others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Immobility → ↑ Ca^{++}, → dysrhythmias and nausea. **Tests:** Others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. B-1) is usually appropriate. Patients with limited respiratory reserve should receive minimal sedation. Nifedipine (10 mg sublingually 5 min or po 20 min before induction) may be used to blunt AH.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. If flap donor and recipient sites are confined to the lower half of the body, regional anesthesia may be considered for short procedures. Spinal or epidural anesthesia will minimize AH; however, anesthetic level may be difficult to assess, and regional anesthesia may not be tolerated for prolonged surgery. Lighter levels of GA will not prevent AH.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) and intubation. Although the risk of ↑ K^+ 2° succinylcholine is reportedly decreased 6 mo after injury, NMRs are still preferred. AH may occur with Foley catheter placement.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation is usually appropriate and may be necessary to reduce muscle spasticity. Avoid drugs that are primarily renally excreted in patients with CRI. Direct arterial vasodilators and alpha-adrenergic blocking agents should be readily available. Plegic patients are prone to hypothermia. These patients should be kept warm and well hydrated to minimize peripheral vasoconstriction, which might impair graft perfusion.	
Emergence	AH 2° distended bladder or rectum may occur on emergence from anesthesia.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h Warm fluids. Humidify gases.	Keep patient warm and maintain a positive fluid balance. Hypothermia may impair flap perfusion. Initial debridement of ulcer may be extensive and significant blood loss can occur. T&C as appropriate.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). UO ± Arterial line	An arterial line may be useful in patients susceptible to AH and for prolonged procedures where regular ABGs and blood chemistries will be useful.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Many of these patients may be osteoporotic, so great care should be used in moving and positioning.

Complications	Hypothermia	Patients with spinal cord injury often have impaired thermoregulation. Maintain normal body temperature with warming blankets, fluid, and airway warmers.
	AH	AH should be promptly controlled with SNP bolus (5–50 mcg) and infusion, while anesthesia is deepened. A continuous trimethaphan infusion (0.5–4 mg/min) is another option.
	Decubitus ulcer	Pressure necrosis can occur in as little as 2 h. Carefully pad and repeatedly ✓ pressure points.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Respiratory Insufficiency	Quadriplegic patients may have ↓ VC and ↓ ERV and be uniquely susceptible to residual respiratory depressant effects.
	AH	AH may occur 2° distended bladder or rectum. Rx: phentolamine 1 mg iv q 1 min and/or SNP bolus/infusion; removal of stimulus.
Pain management	Parenteral opiates (see p. C-2). PCA (see p. C-3).	Pain should be treated promptly to minimize reflex peripheral vasoconstriction and impaired graft perfusion.
	Regional nerve block	Useful for pain control in extremities.

Suggested Readings

1. Bass MJ, Phillips LG: Pressure sores. *Curr Probl Surg* 2007; 44(2):101–43.
2. Bauer J, Phillips LG: MOC-PSSM CME article: pressure sores. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2008; 121(1 Suppl):1–10.
3. Levi B, Rees R: Diagnosis and management of pressure ulcers. *Clin Plast Surg* 2007; 34(4):735–48.
4. O'Neill DK, Tsui SM, Ayello EA, et al: Anesthesia protocol for heel pressure ulcer debridement. *Adv Skin Wound Care* 2012; 25(5):209–19.
5. Tchanque-Fossuo CN, Kuzon WM Jr: An evidence-based approach to pressure sores. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011; 127(2):932–9.

CHAPTER

11.5 Burn Surgery

SURGEON

Kenneth K. Yim, MD, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Melissa T. Berhow, MD, PhD

FREE SKIN GRAFT FOR BURN WOUND (WITH TANGENTIAL EXCISION, EXCISION TO FASCIA, OR DEBRIDEMENT)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Until the mid-1970s, management of burn wounds involved daily debridement, hydrotherapy, and spontaneous eschar separation, with subsequent skin grafts applied to the granulated tissue. Operative management has become much more aggressive with the description of **tangential excision** by **Janzekovic.** In burn patients without inhalation injury, early excision and grafting (days 1–5) can reduce mortality and length of hospital stay. There are two surgical approaches to burn wounds—tangential excision and fascial excision.

Tangential excision (TE) is the more frequently performed procedure. The concept of TE is extremely simple, but requires considerable experience and teamwork. Thin slices of burn eschar (burned, necrotic tissue) are shaved sequentially with manual or power dermatomes until a healthy wound bed is developed. Assessment of the wound bed is done with visualization of bleeding and/or the clinical appearance of the excised bed. Blood loss is generally diffuse and can be massive; therefore, communication between anesthesiologist and surgeon is essential. In large excision, PRBCs should be available in the OR before excision so that the anesthesiologist does not get behind in blood and fluid replacement.

Diffuse bleeding, especially dermal, is controlled by laparotomy pads soaked with warm 1:100,000 epinephrine solution. These pads are replaced every 3–5 min and, after ~10 min, are removed one at a time, with persistent bleeding points controlled by electrocautery. Although very high plasma epinephrine levels have been reported after major burn excision, systemic manifestations are very rare in acute burn patients (probably 2° chronic high-level endogenous catecholamine secretion).

TE in the extremities usually is accomplished with a pneumatic tourniquet to minimize blood loss. In some centers, subcutaneous injection of a diluted (1:1,000,000) epinephrine solution under the burn wound also is used to minimize blood loss; however, the resulting vasoconstriction makes the end point of excision—i.e., bleeding—difficult to ascertain.

Fascial excision involves removing the burn eschar and all underlying fat en bloc to the level of muscle fascia or beyond. Fascial excision can be performed more rapidly and with less blood loss than TE. Its disadvantages, however, are the marked cosmetic deformities and functional limitations that occur because of the loss of all soft tissue overlying the musculature. Because of its disadvantages, fascial excision is reserved for 4th-degree burns or for patients with very extensive, life-threatening, full-thickness (3rd-degree) burns.

In patients with serious burns (> 40% total body surface area [TBSA]), excision usually commences on postop days 2–5, after completion of fluid resuscitation, and is performed every 2–3 d, as the patient's condition permits. If eschar excision can be completed before secondary sepsis supervenes, management of the patient is easier and the complications and morbidity are lessened considerably.

The end points for surgical excision in large burns are (a) operative time of 2–3 h; (b) core temperature of 35°C; or (c) blood loss of 10 U of PRBC. The violation of any of these parameters invites coagulopathy and increasing problems with hemostasis and VS stability. Adverse effects occurring after 3–4 h of operative time are usually the result of massive transfusion or hypothermia.

Due to loss of skin integrity and large exposed surfaces, these patients lose heat rapidly. Fluids, gases, and the OR should be warm, although there is no demonstrable benefit to warming the OR past the point of isothermic neutrality (~82°F [28°C]). Many surgeons, however, will maintain the room at ~ 100°F (38°C). All areas not in the operative field should be covered, and a warming blanket (Bair Hugger) is used frequently.

Coverage: After excision of wounds and attainment of hemostasis, wounds are covered, using either an autograft or temporary coverage with an allograft, xenograft, or synthetic/biologic dressing. An autograft is used for coverage when the wound bed is deemed suitable, a donor site is available, and the patient is stable. A split-thickness skin graft (STSG) often is used for coverage of a burn wound. Because an STSG is harvested at the dermal level, bleeding also is controlled with topical epinephrine-soaked laparotomy pads before application of dressings. Depending on the location of donor sites, many surgeons use subcutaneous infiltration of diluted (1:1,000,000) epinephrine in saline solution to smooth out irregularities (e.g., underlying ribs) or to create a flat surface (e.g., scalp) to physically improve the ease of taking skin grafts. A substantial volume of saline may be infiltrated, and this should be added into the total fluids administered to the patient.

Intraop position change may be necessary between the burn excision and the STSG harvest. For example, donor skin may be harvested from the back for application to the chest or abdomen.

The STSG is held temporarily in place with staples or sutures. Uncontrolled patient movement may dislodge the graft. To protect against this eventuality, grafts are secured with circumferential dressings and splints. This procedure may be time consuming, and any uncontrolled patient movement should be avoided.

It has become apparent that early eschar excision is advantageous even if wounds are so extensive they cannot be covered with autografts. In this situation, temporary coverage of the excised wound is accomplished with the application of an allograft, porcine xenograft, or synthetic/biologic dressing. The wound is maintained in this way, with further debridement and biologic dressing changes as necessary, until autograft becomes available.

Usual preop diagnosis: Thermal, electrical, or chemical burn

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	TE	Fascial Excision
Position	Supine, prone, or lateral	⇐
Incision	Anywhere eschar is to be excised.	⇐
Special instrumentation	Dermatomes, as determined by the surgeon—manual or powered.	—
Temperature considerations	Keep room T at ~82°F (28°C).	⇐
Unique considerations	Possible subcutaneous infiltration of diluted lidocaine-epinephrine-saline solution.	None
Antibiotics	Cefazolin (adult = 1 g; child = 15 mg/kg) iv on induction of anesthesia	⇐
Surgical time	2–3 h	⇐
EBL	Massive; limit to 10 U PRBC transfusion	250–500 mL
Postop care	Generally, patients can be extubated at the end of these procedures, recovered in the PACU, and returned to the burn center. If patient remains intubated, generally he/she is transported directly to the burn center, where body T can be maintained more easily.	⇐
Mortality	18–40% (Mortality is a function of burn size, plus other associated conditions, especially inhalation injury [Figs. 11.5-1, 11.5-2])	⇐
Morbidity	Massive blood loss Sepsis Infection 2° to catheters and lines	— ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	2–5 (Most patients are maintained on sustained-release methadone or iv morphine, for periop pain control.)	⇐

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All
Male:Female	More commonly male
Incidence	45,000 burn center admissions/yr
Etiology	Scald; flame burns; chemicals; electric burns
Associated conditions	Generally few, except in elderly patients

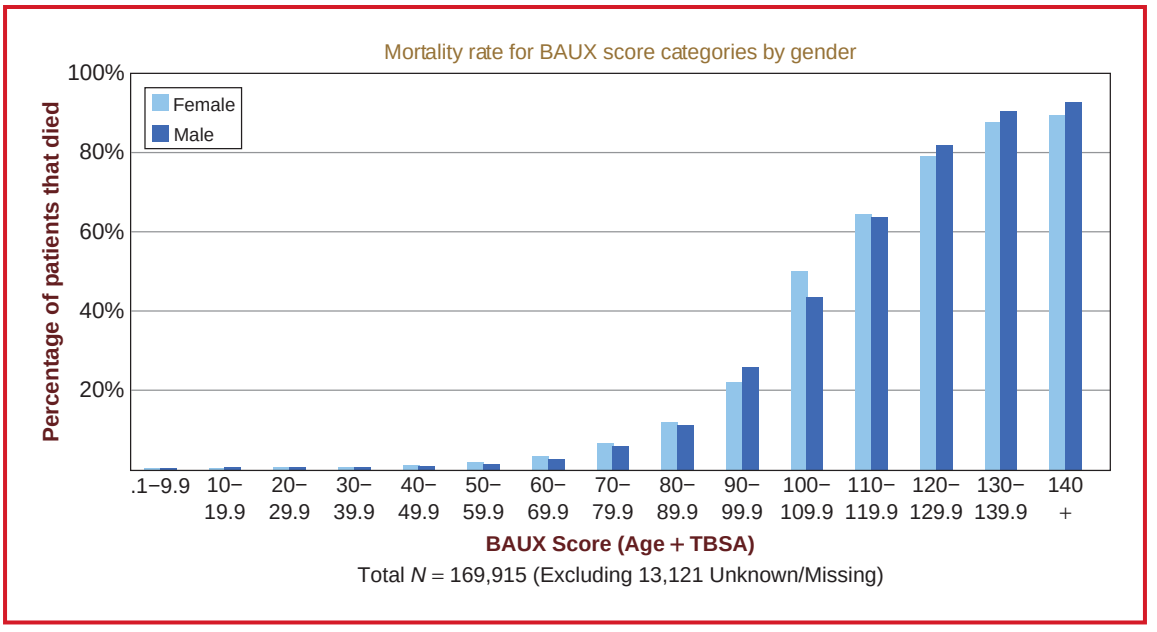


Figure 11.5-1. This figure demonstrates the relationship between death, increasing age, and burn size. The proportion of patients who died (case fatality) is plotted as a function of the sum of age and the total percentage of BSA burned, the so-called BAUX Score. There is a strong association between BAUX score and case fatality for both men and women. Overall, women had a higher case fatality than men (4.20% vs 3.48%, P < 0.01). The sum of age and burn size (BAUX score) associated with a case fatality of 50% (P 50) was 108. There was no significant difference between genders. A report from the American Burn Association, 2012.

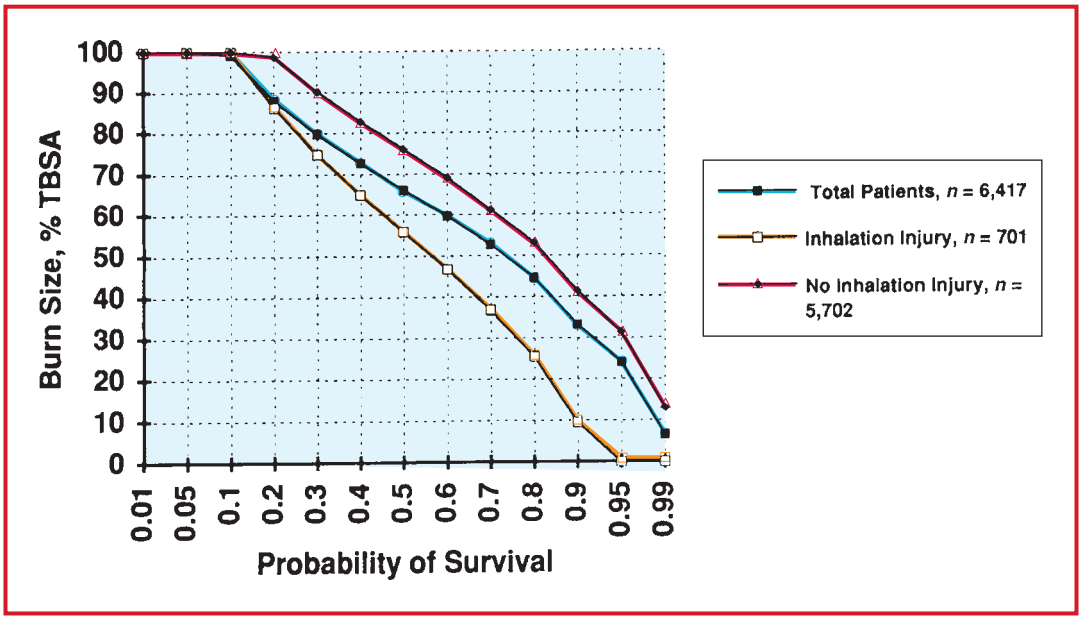


Figure 11.5-2. Probability of survival for patients with and without inhalation injury. (Reproduced with permission from Saffle JR, Davis B, Williams P, et al: Recent outcomes in the treatment of burn injury in the United States: a report from the American Burn Association Patient Registry. *J Burn Care Rehab* 1995; 16:219–32.)

Table 11.5-1. Burn wounds—Classified According to Depth of Burn

Degree	Burn Depth	Tissue Involved
1st degree	Superficial	Epidermis only
2nd degree	Partial thickness	Various thickness of dermis
3rd degree	Full thickness	Entire thickness of dermis
4th degree	To underlying tissue	Beyond dermis (e.g., subcutaneous fat, fascia, or muscle)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Burn injuries may result in a broad spectrum of physiologic impairments. These vary, depending on the percent of TBSA burned, location of burns, age of the patient, time elapsed since initial injury, and interim treatment. In the first hours following burn injury, patients may be affected by both carbon monoxide (CO) and cyanide (CN) toxicities. CO impairs O_2 transport, O_2 release at the tissue level, and mitochondrial function → tissue hypoxia + metabolic acidosis. Pulse oximetry measurement will be falsely high in the presence of CO. CN toxicity is usually the result of inhaled combustion products that include cyanide and hydrocyanic acid → metabolic acidosis, ↓ BP, and dysrhythmias. Ideally, burn patients are fluid-resuscitated and stabilized before being brought to the OR. Typically, skin grafts to cover the burn area start on postinjury day 3. Blood loss and hypothermia are the predominant considerations during surgery on burn patients. Blood loss can be rapid and massive, as much as 8 U in 15 min, and can be difficult to estimate as it generally is not collected into the suction.

Respiratory	**Upper airway:** A patient with burns around the airway (e.g., singed nose hairs) should be intubated as early as possible. Direct inhalational/thermal injury and fluid resuscitation may make delayed intubation more difficult 2° upper airway edema. **Lower airway:** Physiologic derangements may include pulmonary edema and ARDS. In addition, burn patients can be severely hypermetabolic (e.g., a patient with 40% TBSA burns may have twice the normal metabolic rate) with corresponding increased CO_2 production. These patients may have high PIPs and high minute-ventilation requirements. Pressure control ventilation and high levels of PEEP may be useful. Other possible effects of severe burns include: ↓ lung and chest wall compliance, ↓ FRC, ↑ A-a gradient, pneumonia, and pulmonary embolism. **Tests:** ABG, depending on pulmonary status; CXR, PRT
Cardiovascular	24–48 h post-burn injury the hypermetabolism associated with burns increases cardiac demand, and burn patients have greatly elevated circulating levels of catecholamines → ↑↑ HR + ↑ CO. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	Evaluate for burn encephalopathy. Characterize baseline mental status before anesthesia to allow evaluation of recovery postop.
Musculoskeletal	Damaged muscle → ↑ acetylcholine receptor density, resulting in ↓ sensitivity to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants and potentially fatal elevations of K^+ in response to succinylcholine. In burns > 5% TBSA, avoid succinylcholine after 24 h postburn and for at least 1 yr thereafter for burns > 10% TBSA (↑↑ K^+). Recovery of normal response to muscle relaxants does not occur until burns have healed completely.
Hematologic	Coagulopathies may result directly from the burn injury, as well as from rapid replacement of blood loss during operative procedures. **Tests:** Hb/Hct; electrolytes; coagulation profile
IV access	May be difficult; assess preop. Consider central line placement with a large-bore catheter, such as a Cordis®.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P. For recent injury, blood COHb should be measured.

Premedication	Patients are commonly placed on high-dose narcotics after the initial injury; additional narcotics are frequently required to provide adequate analgesia for transport and movement to the OR table.
Transport	For patients with severe ARDS, transportation from burn unit to OR may pose formidable challenges with regard to ventilation. Cardiopulmonary monitoring must be continued during transport; the ventilation system used in transport must be capable of delivering high minute-volumes, PEEP, and inspiratory pressures. These requirements may not be satisfied by standard bag-valve systems and may require a high-quality transport ventilator.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Regional techniques are rarely feasible, given the multiple surgical sites for harvesting and grafting. Some surgeons will employ tumescent infiltration of the burn and donor sites using a large volume of lidocaine-epinephrine-saline solution to facilitate debridement and graft harvest (↓ blood loss + ↓ postop pain). LMAs are not recommended, given the potential for significant fluid resuscitation and subsequent airway edema, as well as the frequent repositioning of patient intraop.

Induction	If the patient is adequately volume-resuscitated, propofol (1.5–2.5 mg/kg iv) may be used. If the patient is intravascularly volume-depleted, etomidate (0.3 mg/kg) or ketamine (1–3 mg/kg) is recommended. Patients with extensive burns (> 30% TBSA) will develop a decreased sensitivity to nondepolarizing NMBs; therefore, 1.5 × the usual intubating dose of NMB is recommended: vecuronium (1.5 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1.5 mg/kg). If rapid-sequence induction is indicated, succinylcholine should not be used if the initial injury is > 24 h old. Under these circumstances, high-dose rocuronium (2 mg/kg) can be used. If the face is burned, awake FOI may be necessary and securing the ETT may be difficult. Alternatives to taping the ETT include suturing the tube to the teeth or using umbilical tape.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Physiologic derangements of the respiratory system (ARDS, pulmonary edema) and a hypermetabolic state may require minute-volumes > 30 L/min, and high inspiratory pressures and PEEP for adequate ventilation. Depending on the anesthesia machine, an ICU ventilator (capable of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation) may be necessary. Intraop, surgeons may use epinephrine-soaked sponges to ↓ blood loss. Systemic absorption of epinephrine will cause tachycardia and increase the probability of dysrhythmias; therefore, it is best to avoid halothane or desflurane. Isoflurane and sevoflurane are acceptable.	
Emergence	Estimation of an adequate dose of narcotic to provide postop analgesia may be difficult because these patients are often receiving high doses of narcotics preop. Ketamine has been used with success in providing improved analgesia in the setting of escalating opioid doses. If large-volume resuscitation has occurred intraop, there is the possibility of clinically significant airway edema; use caution before extubating to ensure a patent airway.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Extensive blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 2 or a Cordis® NS/LR @ 8–10 mL/kg/h Keep UO @ 0.5–1 mL/kg/h. Blood: ~200 mL/1% BSA excised and grafted. Fluid warmer T&C 2–4 U PRBC (to keep ahead).	Blood must be in OR before induction. The major blood loss generally is associated with eschar excision, usually the first part of the procedure. For patients without contraindications to hemodilution (e.g., CAD, anemia), it is often better to delay PRBC transfusion until major blood loss is complete. IV hyperalimentation should be continued during surgery or replaced with 10% dextrose infusion to avoid hypoglycemia. If sudden ↓ BP occurs during very rapid infusion of blood (> 150 mL/min), consider using Ca^{++} to counteract the chelating effect of citrate. Avoid fluid overload, especially if patient has ARDS, is a small child, or is elderly. As the surgical site is superficial, there is not much 3rd-space loss.

Thermal considerations	Room = 80–82°F Warm all fluids. Humidify gases. Warming blanket Reflective head cover	Temperature must be monitored throughout the case. The surgeon should be notified if patient's core T is dropping.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) + ART line ± CVP line ± PA catheter/TEE	ECG may require needle electrodes or alligator clip electrodes to skin graft samples if there is no skin availability to apply adhesive electrodes. The hemodynamically unstable patient should be monitored with a PA catheter/TEE and ART line.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	The burn patient may be uniquely susceptible to laryngeal or upper airway edema in the prone position; therefore, examination of the upper airway before extubation is recommended to avoid emergent reintubation.
Complications	Massive blood loss VTE	

POSTOPERATIVE

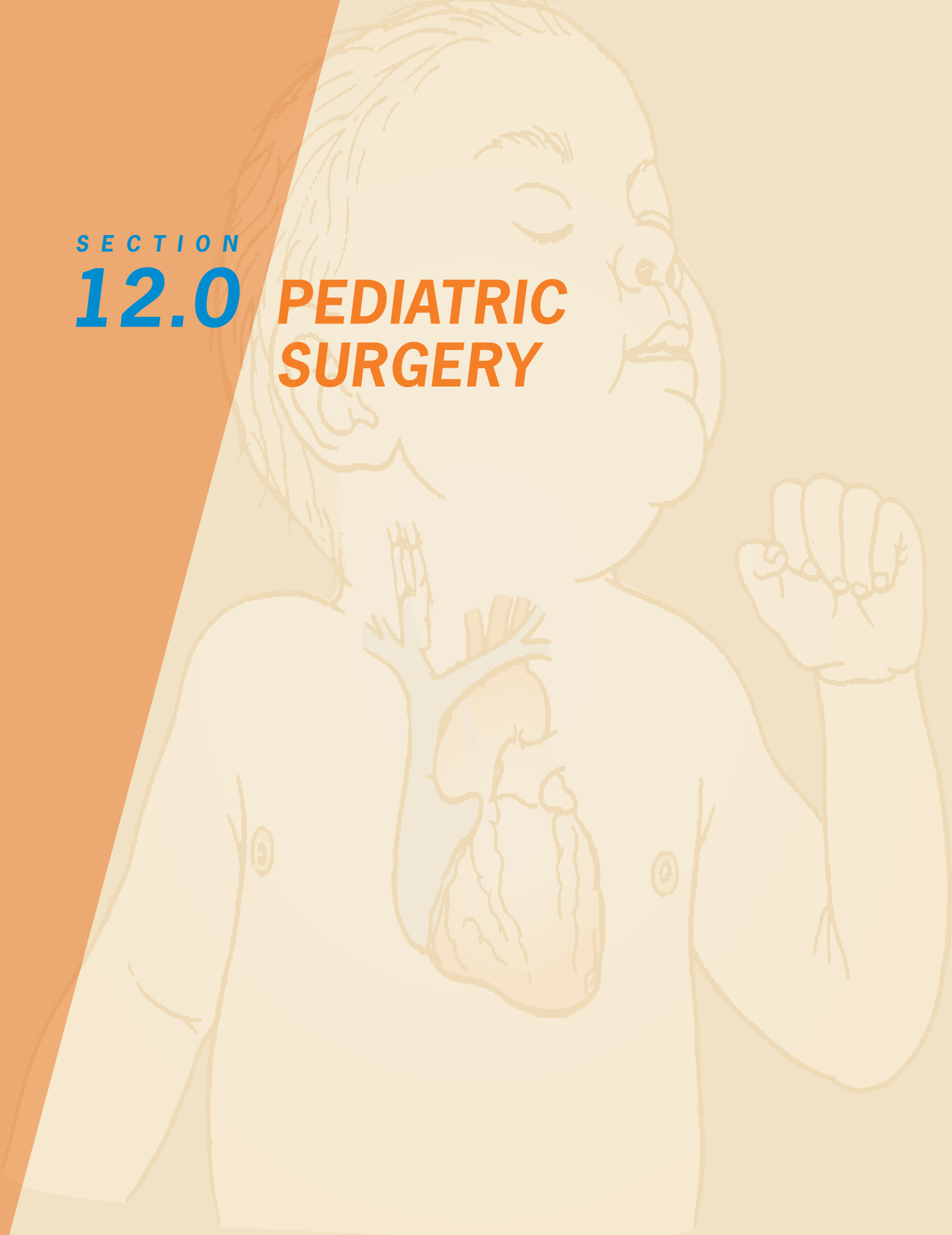
Complications	Hypothermia Coagulopathy	May occur as the result of massive blood loss and replacement.
Transport	Continue cardiopulmonary monitoring. High minute-ventilation requirements ↑ PIP ↑ PEEP	Verify adequacy of transport ventilation system before departing OR.
Pain management	Oral methadone or sustained-release morphine sulfate IV fentanyl or morphine sulfate	Titrate analgesia to effect.
Tests	Hct, ABG, electrolytes, PT, PTT, Plt, if massive transfusion given.	

Suggested Readings

1. Barret JP: Burns reconstruction. *BMJ* 2004; 329:274–6.
2. Edrich T, Friedrich A, Eltzschig HK: Ketamine for long-term sedation and analgesia of a burn patient. *Anest Analg* 2004; 99:893–5.
3. Harbin KR, Norris TE: Anesthetic management of patients with major burn injury. *AANA J* 2012; 80(6):430–9.
4. Karaaslan P, Arsian G, Basaran O, et al: Anesthesia management in pediatric burn patients: experience of one center. *Burns* 2007; 33(1 Suppl 1):S50–1.
5. Kearns RD, Cairns CB, Holmes JH IV, Rich PB, Cairns BA: Thermal burn care: a review of best practices. What should prehospital providers do for these patients? *EMS World* 2013; 42(1):43–51.
6. Moran KT, O'Reilly TJ, Furman W, et al: A new algorithm for calculation of blood loss in excisional burn surgery. *Am Surg* 1988; 54(4):207–8.
7. Osler T, Glance LG, Hosmer DW: Simplified estimates of the probability of death after burn injuries: extending and updating the BAUX score. *J Trauma* 2010; 68(3):690–7.
8. Tenenhaus M, Rennekampff HO: Surgical advances in burn and reconstructive plastic surgery: new and emerging technologies. *Clin Plast Surg* 2012; 39(4):435–43.

SECTION

12.0 PEDIATRIC SURGERY



CHAPTER

12.1 Pediatric Neurosurgery

SURGEONS

Michael Edwards, MD
Sam Cheshier, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Michael I. Chen, MD
William W. Feaster, MD

CRANIOFACIAL SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Craniofacial surgery** is a broad term that refers to both cranial and/or facial reconstructive procedures for cranial dysostosis or craniofacial dysmorphism. Cranial dysostosis is the congenital maldevelopment of the cranial base and/or vault, 2° premature fusion of cranial sutures. More commonly referred to as **craniosynostosis,** the surgical correction of this disorder involves removal of the affected suture(s) and reconstruction of the cranial, orbital, or facial bones. The most common form of craniosynostosis—scaphocephaly—is caused by the fusion of the sagittal suture, which leads to a long and narrow calvarium. Other forms of craniosynostosis, in order of decreasing frequency, are coronal synostosis (brachycephaly), metopic synostosis (trigonocephaly), and lambdoidal synostosis (posterior plagiocephaly). Deformational occipital plagiocephaly refers to flattening of the occiput 2° preferential sleep position and the resultant deformation of the skull, ear, and face. This condition is not a form of craniosynostosis, and despite the potential for significant flattening of the head, reconstructive surgery is not indicated. Crouzon and Apert syndromes are inherited craniofacial disorders associated with craniosynostosis and facial/orbital dysmorphism. The facial deformities common to Crouzon and Apert are shallow and misplaced orbits, exophthalmos, and midface hypoplasia. In each form of craniosynostosis, sporadic or inherited, the abnormality is present at birth, but may not become recognizable until the rapid phase of brain growth, occurring in the 1st year of life, begins to accentuate the limitations on skull shape produced by the premature suture closure. In simple terms, the growth of the underlying brain drives the expansion of the skull, and closure of a suture produces reduced skull growth in the opposite direction.

Early recognition and correction of craniosynostosis results in the best cosmetic and neurologic outcome because, with release of the fused suture, the growing brain helps correct the abnormal cranial shape. Most procedures are scheduled during the 1st 6 mo of life; thus, the issue of blood volume and replacement becomes a critical factor for surgical and anesthetic consideration. The main principles of surgical treatment of craniosynostosis involve removal of the abnormal suture through a craniectomy or craniotomy, followed by reconstruction of the calvarium and/or orbit to overcome the cranial deformity and optimize the chance for normal cranial development. The surgery most often is done in conjunction with a pediatric neurosurgeon and a plastic surgeon. Patient positioning varies, depending on the approach to the craniectomy, and is generally prone for sagittal and lambdoidal synostosis and supine for coronal and metopic synostosis. Another surgical principle important for synostosis surgery is to minimize intraop blood loss. The surgical team should make every effort to reduce blood loss during the procedure by infiltrating the scalp with 1:400,000 epinephrine, using point electrocautery, preserving the pericranium, and fastidiously waxing the bone edges. The most common skin incision is a bicoronal opening that allows for access to the entire calvarium. The extent of the bone removal and reconstruction varies, depending on the type and number of sutures involved. Surgical correction of patients with Crouzon or Apert syndromes is often staged with correction of the cranial component, followed by a later procedure for the face, as described by Tessier and colleagues. Invariably, blood loss occurs from the scalp and bone, and the surgeon must remain mindful of the volume contained within the surgical field and readily communicate to the anesthesiologist when bleeding is felt to be either continuous or excessive. Injury to the underlying dural venous sinuses is rare, but the potential for catastrophic blood loss is great. Recent advances in endoscopy have led to the development of minimally invasive techniques for craniosynostosis in some centers, and reports suggest that use of the endoscope may reduce blood loss. Recombinant erythropoietin administered preop also has been studied in an attempt to reduce the need for intraop transfusion associated with repair of craniosynostosis. Rarely are subgaleal or epidural drains placed at the close of the procedure. The patient is monitored closely in the PICU for postop bleeding that may require additional transfusions in the 1st 24 h after surgery. In healthy infants, hematocrit values of 21–23 are tolerated, reducing the need for and amount of blood transfusion.

Usual preop diagnosis: Craniosynostosis (sagittal, coronal, metopic, lambdoidal); craniofacial dysmorphism; Apert syndrome; Crouzon syndrome; Pfeiffer syndrome; Saethre-Chotzen syndrome

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or prone (less common); or table 180°
Incision	Bicoronal, biparietal, Meisterschnitt, midsagittal
Special instrumentation	Midas Rex craniotome; absorbable plates and screws, Colorado needle

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Unique considerations	↑ ICP and/or hydrocephalus may coexist. ↑ ICP is usually seen with multiple-suture synostosis; it rarely occurs in single-suture craniosynostosis (< 5–10%). Hydrocephalus typically is seen in monogenic conditions (e.g., Apert, Crouzon). Most neurosurgeons shunt the hydrocephalus and treat the ↑ ICP prior to craniosynostosis surgery.
Antibiotics	Vancomycin (15 mg/kg) or ceftriaxone (25–50 mg/kg; do not mix with Ca^{++}-containing solutions) for cranial surgery. Vancomycin or cefotaxime (50 mg/kg) for craniofacial surgery involving nasal sinuses (for 1 mo or 50 kg).
Closing considerations	Watch for ↑ blood loss from the scalp. To prevent excessive blood loss, reapproximate only one portion of the scalp at a time.
EBL	Highly variable; must be minimized. Amount depends on the preoperative condition, number of sutures involved, age of the patient, and magnitude of the repair. Operative injury to the venous sinuses may be catastrophic if hemostasis cannot be achieved or volume loss is excessive.
Postop care	PICU. Postop Hct/Hb levels required. If significant blood loss occurs during surgery, INR and coagulation parameters should be obtained. Blood transfusion is often necessary in infants (< 10 kg) or if Hct is between 21 and 23.
Mortality	< 1–2%
Morbidity	Meningitis Infection CSF rhinorrhea Pseudomeningocele formation due to unrecognized dural tear ↑ ICP (2° skull reshaping) Venous thrombosis or injury Neurological injury: Rare
Pain score	1–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–young adult
Male:Female	1.2:1
Incidence	1/2000/yr
Etiology	Sporadic; heritable (monogenic and chromosomal syndromes); environmentally induced (amniotic bands, iatrogenic)
Associated conditions	Congenital defects (limbs, heart, brain, kidneys); hydrocephalus; encephalocele (sincipital/basal); fibrous dysplasia; craniometaphyseal dysplasia; holoprosencephaly

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Surgeons can repair the same craniosynostosis in several ways. It can range from a minor (endoscopic) to moderate (strip craniotomy) to major (cranial vault remodeling) surgery. If a surgeon chooses to perform less than a complete cranial vault remodeling, there is a higher possibility that a revision may be necessary in the future. The anesthetist must fully understand the surgeon's plan to prepare for the issues that are more common with major surgery. The main issues are airway management and bleeding. Management of these issues is made more difficult because the repair is usually performed during the first 6 months of life.

Airway/ Respiratory	Patients with craniosynostosis are often challenging intubations. Special considerations should be taken to ensure that their skull is well positioned prior to induction of anesthesia. Because Crouzon and Apert's syndrome are associated with midface hypoplasia, the patient should be carefully evaluated for a difficult airway, and preparations should be made if one is anticipated. This may include FOI or Video laryngoscope.

Neurological	Presenting Sx in infants with craniosynostosis include progressive head deformation, progressively increasing irritability, crying, failure to eat, and failure to grow in head circumference. These Sx may be due in part to ↑ ICP. On physical examination, one or more of the cranial sutures are fused. Infants with other types of craniofacial deformity usually have no Sx related to their abnormalities.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P. Preop Hct, Hgb, platelets, INR
Premedication	Premedication is generally not necessary because the surgery is generally performed on infants. However, if necessary, midazolam 0.5 mg/kg can be used (see p. D-1), and sedatives may be contraindicated in the patient with ↑ ICP.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. The room and the bed should be kept warm prior to incision because the time from induction to draping may be extensive for line placement. Infants can unexpectedly cool rapidly during this period resulting in coagulopathies. There is no role for intraoperative cooling (neuroprotection) in craniosynostosis repair.

Induction	Standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1). Tape the tube firmly in place at one side of the mouth using benzoin adherent. Some surgeons like to suture the ETT in place. Verify ETT placement after the patient is in final position (see p. D-2). In prone patient, the anesthesia is usually placed in a horseshoe and not pinned for this procedure. For supine cases, the surgery usually involves reflection of the scalp down over the eyes and nose. Cornea shields or suturing the eyelids shut is preferred over eye tape.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-2). Muscle relaxation is useful during line placement and positioning. The surgeon may request mild hypotension during the removal of the bone flap to minimize bleeding. Hyperventilation to PCO_2 of 30 is often desired to lower the ICP at the beginning of the case.	
Emergence	If the case is uncomplicated, the patient is extubated and goes to PICU for observation. In the rare situation that large amounts of blood products are transfused, extubation should be handled with care, as facial and airway swelling may result in airway compromise or loss of airway. Leave intubated if in doubt. If the ETT or eyes are sutured shut, the suture should be removed prior to extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Mod-to-large blood loss IV: 20–22 ga × 2–3 NS/LR @ 4 mL/kg/h 5% albumin Fluid warmer	Administer crystalloid and blood products as needed. Most of the bleeding is occult (lost in the drapes and sponges), and so it is not uncommon to begin transfusion pRBCs during incision to avoid getting behind. Correct any intraoperative coagulopathies. Aggressive transfusion must be tempered to prevent increased ICP. A tight dura may result in risk of dural sinus injury or get in the way of replacing the bone flaps. Tranexamic acid (TXA) 50 mg/kg followed by infusion of 5 mg/kg/hr has been shown to decrease blood loss.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Foley catheter ± Doppler ± Arterial line ± CVP line	Surgery is rarely done in sitting position so life-threatening venous embolism is rare. Due to the young age of these patients, a central line may be difficult. Some surgeons feel that an IJ central line may decrease venous drainage in infants. ↑ K^+ and ↓ Ca^{++} may occur with transfusions of blood products.
Positioning	OR table usually rotated 180°. ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Prevent compression to the patient's thorax by placing a Mayo stand over the chest area.

Complications	Major blood loss VAE	Treatment of venous air embolism—notify surgeon who will flood the field with saline, D/C N_2O, attempt to aspirate air from CVP, if present. Lower head of bed, compress jugular veins to decrease the rate of air entry. CPR as needed. PEEP is not recommended and may be deleterious. VAE more likely if dural sinus entered.

POSTOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

Complications	Bleeding Extubation Hypovolemia	Significant bleeding may continue in the postop period.
Pain management	Parenteral opioids (see p. E-1). Avoid oversedation.	Fentanyl 1–2 mcg/kg q 60 min or morphine 0.05–0.1 mg/kg q 2 h.
Tests	Hct/Hb Coagulation parameters	Hct/Hb levels are necessary to determine adequacy of blood replacement. Monitor closely for hypovolemia.

Suggested Readings

1. Bissonnette B, Brady KM, Wasley RB: Anesthesia for neurosurgical procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 540–569.
2. Dahmani S, et al: Perioperative blood salvage during surgical correction of craniosynostosis in infants. *Br J Anesth* 2000; 85(4): 550–5.
3. Fearon JA: Reducing allogenic blood transfusions during pediatric cranial vault surgical procedures: a prospective analysis of blood recycling. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2004; 113(4):1126–30.
4. Fearon JA, Weinthal J: The use of recombinant erythropoietin in the reduction of blood transfusion rated in craniosynostosis repair in infants and children. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 109(7):2190–6.
5. Goobie SM, Meier PM, Pereira LM, et al: Effect of tranexamic acid in pediatric craniosynostosis surgery: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesthesiology* 2011; 144(4):862–71.
6. Hoffman HJ: Congenital malformations of the spine and skull. In: Goldsmith HS, ed. *Practice of Surgery.* Harper & Row, New York: 1980.
7. Jimenez DF, Barone CM, Cartwright CC, et al: Early management of craniosynostosis using endoscopic-assisted strip craniectomies and cranial orthotic molding therapy. *Pediatrics* 2002; 110:97–104.
8. Tessier P: Relationship of craniostenoses to craniofacial dysostoses and to faciostenoses: a study with therapeutic implications. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1971; 48(3):224–37.
9. Vavilala MS, Soriano SG: Anesthesia for neurosurgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 713–45.

CLOSURE OF MYELOMENINGOCELE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Myelomeningocele is a neural tube defect characterized by failure of the spinal cord to fuse posteriorly during primary neurulation. This results in an open neural placode joined to the incomplete epithelial defect, usually located in the thoracolumbar spine, and rarely in the cervical spine. Associated CNS conditions are hydrocephalus and Chiari II hindbrain malformation, both of which usually contribute more to long-term morbidity than to the spinal cord defect itself. The presence of the myelomeningocele may be detected before birth by high-resolution ultrasound and/or elevated maternal serum alpha fetoprotein, as well as fetal MRI scans. The incidence of neural tube defects is declining in the United States, possibly due to maternal dietary folate supplementation and prenatal Dx and selective termination.

The fundamental goals of surgery are preservation of neural tissue, reconstitution of a normal intrathecal environment, and complete skin closure to prevent a spinal fluid leak and meningitis. Despite a very thin parchment of dystrophic epithelium attached to the placode, most myelomeningoceles leak spinal fluid from the time of birth.

Because of the risk of ventriculitis associated with the exposed subarachnoid space, closure of the myelomeningocele is recommended within 72 h after birth. Infants with neural tube defects have a higher incidence of other congenital anomalies, including neurogenic bladder and bowel, hydronephrosis, malrotation of the gut, VSD or ASD, and craniofacial disorders. The neonate should be screened for these potential abnormalities before undergoing surgery and, in general, this can be accomplished within 24 h after birth. During the procedure, the child is in the prone position. The defect is dissected so that the various anatomic layers can be separated. The edges of the placode (spinal cord) are mobilized from the adjacent epithelium and often imbricated to form a closed tube. The laterally displaced dura is dissected from the fascia and closed over the spinal cord, thus reconstituting the elements of the spine, except for the lamina defect that is not reconstructed. The paraspinous muscle and fascia are mobilized as a separate layer and the subcutaneous and skin layers comprise the final layer. In cases of large defects, local skin or myocutaneous flaps may be necessary to cover the spinal defect adequately. Progressive hydrocephalus usually presents within days to weeks after closure of the myelomeningocele, but ~15% of patients will present at birth with significant hydrocephalus that requires early insertion of a VP shunt. Finally, in rare circumstances, prominent vertebral angulation, or kyphosis, at the defect could necessitate vertebrectomies to reestablish normal spinal alignment, usually at an older age.

Variant procedure or approaches: The efficacy of **intrauterine myelomeningocele repair** is currently being explored through a randomized multicenter trial, and the results may alter future approaches in favor of intrauterine closure if the incidence of hydrocephalus and neurologic deficit is reduced in these patients.

Usual preop diagnosis: Myelomeningocele; myeloschesis; meningocele; myelodysplasia; spina bifida aperta

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Prone with rolls under chest and hips
Incision	Surrounding the defect, preserving skin that can be utilized in the closure. Use of plain lidocaine (0.25%) local anesthetic decreases blood loss.
Special instrumentation	Loupes or operating microscope
Unique considerations	Concomitant hydrocephalus, lower brain stem dysfunction. Need for blood replacement rare in straightforward cases. Latex precautions should be used in all cases (p. G-1).
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg iv), do not infuse with Ca^{++}-containing solutions; vancomycin (15 mg/kg iv, infuse over 60 min)
Surgical time	1.5–3 h
Closing considerations	Skin closure may be complex and require rotation of flaps or aid of plastic surgeon.
EBL	Negligible–25 mL (in most cases)
Postop care	Neonatal nursery. Postop, child often nursed on stomach or side. Head size and head ultrasound are used to monitor for development of progressive hydrocephalus, which may require shunting.
Mortality	Approaching zero
Morbidity	Meningitis/ventriculitis Hind brain dysfunction Wound infection CSF leak Apnea, vocal cord paralysis
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn (diagnosed at birth)
Male:Female	~1:1
Incidence	1/1000 live births

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Hydrocephalus; lower extremity weakness; bowel and/or bladder dysfunction (neurogenic bladder) and/or hydronephrosis; scoliosis; Chiari II malformations; congenital cardiac anomalies **NB: Latex allergy is increased in this population. Latex precautions should be used beginning with the 1st operation. See Appendix G.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Myelomeningoceles are congenital abnormalities of the spinal cord that result in a saccular protrusion near the base of the spine. The sac, containing neural elements and CSF, can vary in size from very small to a volume that occupies the whole lower spinal region. The Dx may be suspected from maternal alpha-fetoprotein screening, fetal ultrasound, or prenatal MRI and is confirmed at birth. It is generally believed that immediate repair of the sac and covering of the defect with skin is desirable to preserve neurological function and avoid infections. These newborns, therefore, usually are brought to surgery within 24–72 h after birth.

Cardiovascular	May have associated congenital anomalies. **Test:** ECHO
Neurological	Although difficult to assess at this age, newborns may have motor and/or sensory deficits in the lower extremities, neurogenic bladder, and lower cranial nerve dysfunction. Most have an Arnold-Chiari malformation, which requires a ventriculoperitoneal shunt after the myelomeningocele repair.
Renal	May have associated congenital anomalies. **Tests:** Renal ultrasound
Laboratory	Routine preop studies
Premedication	None necessary
Other	**NB**: Latex precautions for all patients (beginning from birth). See p. G-1.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA using pediatric circle is preferred; forced air warmer; warm room to 75–80°F. Spinal anesthesia has been reported.

Induction	Before induction, the patient is placed in the supine position, and the back defect is protected by a sterile donut or rolls to prevent pressure on or rupture of defect. Patients usually will come to the OR with an iv in place, allowing for a standard iv induction (see p. D-1). If not, a standard inhalational induction followed by establishment of iv access is indicated. See p. D-1. Sevoflurane is preferred because of its low blood–gas partition coefficient and absence of airway irritability, which allows a smooth, rapid induction. Oral ETT intubation usually follows muscle relaxation with rocuronium (0.6–1 mg/kg) or vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg). Atropine (0.05–0.1 mg) may be administered before intubation to reduce secretions and to prevent reflex bradycardia. Verify ETT placement and tape tube securely in place at one side of the mouth with benzoin adherent to facilitate prone positioning.
Maintenance	Sevoflurane 2–3% or isoflurane 1–2% or less, with N_2O or air/O_2 mixture to maintain arterial O_2 sat at 95–97%. Depending on duration of operation, additional doses of rocuronium (0.3 mg/kg) or vecuronium (0.05 mg/kg) may be needed. Maintain a near-normal BP. Maintain normal temp by keeping OR warm (78°F) and using warming lights and forced air warming as needed. Ventilation is controlled to maintain $PetCO_2$ = 35–40 mm Hg.

Emergence	Patients undergoing simple repair are usually extubated at the end of the case after reversal of the muscle relaxants. Those undergoing complex repair with fascial releases and a tight abdomen almost always remain intubated for the 1st 24 hours. The newborn is nursed in the prone or lateral positions for the first few days postop.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22–24 ga × 1 D10 @ 2–4 mL/kg/h (newborn) D10 ¼ NS @ 4 mL/kg/h (> 24 h) Warm fluids.	Administer crystalloid, usually D10 ¼ NS, via a continuous infusion pump, etc. Blood is rarely, if ever, necessary.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Prone with shoulders and hips on bolsters to elevate abdomen off operating table. Head turned to the side, which results in the ETT being furthest from the bed. ✓ tube placement by listening for bilateral breath sounds after repositioning.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	CSF leak Wound healing complications Infection Hydrocephalus Renal failure Respiratory compromise from a tight abdomen
Pain management	Parenteral opioids (see p. E-3).

Suggested Readings

1. Cochrane D, Irwin B, Chambers K: Clinical outcomes that fetal surgery for myelomeningocele needs to achieve. *Eur J Pediatr Surg* 2001; 22(Suppl 1):S18–20.
2. Cragen J, Roberts H, Edmonds L, et al: Surveillance for anencephaly and spina bifida and the impact of prenatal diagnosis - United States, 1985-1994. *Morbid Mortal Wkly Rep* 1995; 44(S-4):1–13.
3. Ferschl M, Ball R, Lee H, Rollins MD: Anesthesia for in utero repair of myelomeningocele. *Anesthesiology* 2013; 118(5): 1211–23.
4. Gupta N, Farrell JA, Rand L, Cauldwell CB, Farmer D: Open fetal surgery for myelomeningocele. *J Neurosurg Pediatr* 2012; 9(3):265–73.
5. Idowu OE, Oyeleke SO: Spinal anesthesia and monitored conscious sedation for repair of infantile meningomyelocele. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2011; 27(11):1985–8.
6. Tulipan N, Sutton LN, Bruner JP, et al: The effect of intrauterine myelomeningocele repair on the incidence of shunt-dependent hydrocephalus. *Pediatr Neurosurg* 2003; 38(1):27–33.

SURGICAL CORRECTION OF OCCULT SPINAL DYSRAPHISM

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Occult spinal dysraphism** covers a spectrum of spinal anomalies generally related to defects in secondary neurulation, in contrast to a myelomeningocele, which occurs as a result of defective primary neurulation. These forms of congenital spinal defects are covered by intact skin and share the common pathophysiology of spinal cord tethering. Occult spinal dysraphism includes tight filum terminale, intramedullary lipoma, lipomyelomeningocele, split cord malformations (diastematomyelia), dermal sinus tracts, meningocele manque,

neurenteric cyst, and myelocystocele. Each of these lesions can result in a tethering, or stretching, of the spinal cord as the vertebral axis elongates during normal growth. The fixed spinal cord is stretched by motion and by the growing spine, resulting in neurological dysfunction, most likely as a result of reduced spinal cord blood flow. Excision of the lesion and release of the tethering elements are recommended to prevent either the onset or worsening of cord dysfunction.

The surgical principles for correction of occult spinal dysraphism involve excision of the intradural lesion and release of the tissue element that is tethering the spinal cord, while preserving the normal neural structures. In cases of tight filum terminale, this is easily accomplished with little threat to the spinal cord or nerve root function, whereas excision of lipomyelomeningoceles may be extremely challenging procedures. Any tethering lesion needs to be carefully separated from the spinal cord and adjacent nerve roots without disrupting neurological function. Intraop neurophysiological monitoring may be a useful adjunct to monitor cord and nerve root function during the dissection and release of the tethering lesion. Following the intradural procedure, closure of the dura and myofascial layers is critical in prevention of postop spinal fluid leaks, and dural grafts may be necessary in some cases.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tethered spinal cord; fibrolipoma filum terminale; lipomyelomeningocele; lipoma of the filum; diastematomyelia; spinal dysraphism; dermal sinus tract; caudal agenesis; caudal regression, anterior sacral meningocele

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Prone
Incision	Posterior midline centered over abnormality
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope; laser
Unique considerations	Blood replacement with loss of significant amount of blood in the infant (rare). Minimal latex exposure
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg iv; do not use with Ca^{++}-containing solutions); or vancomycin (10–15 mg/kg iv over 60 minutes, max 1 g).
Surgical time	1.5–5 h (longer for diastematomyelia and lipomyelomeningocele)
Closing considerations	Surgeon often wants to test integrity of dural closure with Valsalva maneuver: sustained (10–20 sec) inspiratory pressure at 20–40 cmH_2O.
EBL	5–100 mL
Postop care	Patient often kept flat postop to prevent CSF leakage and pseudomeningocele.
Mortality	Approaching zero
Morbidity	Infection Neurological deficit Aseptic meningitis CSF leak Pseudomeningocele formation Urinary dysfunction; check preop renal function, renal U/S
Pain score	3–5
Other	Latex precautions (see p. G-1).

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–adults
Male:Female	~1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Congenital

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Associated conditions	Ankle/foot deformity (talipes); neurologic impairment; neurogenic bowel/bladder; scoliosis; vertebral abnormalities; VACTERL/VATER association (vertebral, anal, cardiac, tracheoesophageal, renal, and limb anomalies); cutaneous anomaly over spine; syringomyelia; caudal agenesis; urinary anomalies; check abdominal ultrasound, renal function prior to OR

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

A variety of spinal abnormalities fall under the category of spinal dysraphism, the most common being a tethered cord or a lipoma of the spinal cord. In the case of the tethered cord, there may be a Hx of myelomeningocele repair at birth or an overlying cutaneous lesion or mass.

Neurological	Presenting Sx in older children are usually pain in the lower back radiating into the legs and/or progressively worsening motor or sensory deficits in the anal region or involving the lower extremities (document carefully).
Musculoskeletal	Lower extremity foot deformity as well as sensory or motor deficits may be present and should be carefully documented.
Renal	Renal function may be impaired in patients with Hx of recurrent UTIs. **Tests:** UA; BUN; Cr; others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	For children, midazolam 0.5 mg/kg po (see p. D-1) generally provides satisfactory preop sedation after ~30 min. For young children (< 5 yr) who refuse PO meds, administration of midazolam 0.3 mg/kg intranasally provides rapid amnesia, sedation, and easy separation from parents.
Latex allergy	Latex precautions should be used in all patients even at 1st operation. Meningomyelocele patients may have developed a latex allergy (see p. G-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard induction (see p. D-1) with sevoflurane, N_2O, and O_2. This is followed by establishment of iv access, then ETT intubation with the use of a muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 1 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.05–0.1 mg/kg). Sevoflurane is preferred because of its rapid, smooth induction. Tape the tube firmly in place at one side of the mouth, using benzoin adherent to facilitate prone positioning. Latex precautions.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-2). Upon completion of placement of the dural graft, and before closure of the wound, the surgeon will want to check the integrity of the graft to eliminate any CSF leaks. The surgeon will ask that positive pressure be applied to the airway to at least 20 cmH_2O for 10–20 sec. If graft leaks are detected, they will be repaired and the test repeated.	
Emergence	The ETT is removed at the conclusion of the anesthetic after reversal of muscle relaxants. The patient may be nursed flat in the prone or lateral position for the 1st few days postop to lessen the chance of a CSF leak developing.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	In children, administer fluids via a volumetric infusion set. Blood is rarely necessary.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Foley catheter ± UO	If the operation is anticipated to last several hours, or in the case of neurogenic bladder, a Foley catheter should be inserted.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Prone with the shoulders and hips on bolsters to elevate the abdomen off the operating table. Head turned to the side, resulting in the ETT being furthest from bed. ✓ tube placement by listening for bilateral breath sounds after repositioning. Positioning in larger patients may require a prone headrest.
Complications	Severe bradycardia Latex allergy	Manipulation of the spinal cord may produce ↓↓ HR reflexly. See p. G-1 for latex allergy considerations.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Possible neurological deficits Infection CSF leak Urinary retention Incontinence	Major complications from this operation are uncommon but include new neurological deficits from irritation of the spinal cord during surgery, localized infection, and CSF leak from the wound site.
Pain management	Parental opioids or PCA (see pp. E-3–E-4).	

Suggested Readings

1. Filippidis AS, Kalani MY, Theodore N, Rekate HL: Spinal cord traction, vascular compromise, hypoxia, and metabolic derangements in the pathophysiology of tethered cord syndrome. *Neurosurg Focus* 2012; 29(1):E9.
2. von Koch CS, Quinones-Hinojosa A, Gulati M, et al: Clinical outcome in children undergoing tethered cord release utilizing intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring. *Pediatr Neurosurg* 2002; 37(2):81–6.
3. Warf BC: Pathophysiology of tethered cord syndrome. In: McLone DG, ed. *Pediatric Neurosurgery: Surgery of the Developing Nervous System,* 4th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2001, 282–8.
4. Zerah M, Kulkarni AV: Spinal cord malformations. *Handb Clin Neurol* 2013; 112:975–91.

CRANIOTOMY FOR VEIN OF GALEN MALFORMATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A vein of Galen malformation is a large, AV fistula between arteries, mainly of the posterior cerebral circulation, and a massively enlarged vein of Galen (deep venous drainage of the brain). Patients can present with high-output CHF (infants), progressive macrocephaly from hydrocephalus (infants, children, adults), or, rarely, IC hemorrhage in adult patients. Most cases present at birth or during the infant years, and immediate care is often directed toward stabilizing cardiac function related to CHF. Patients undergoing surgery with high-output CHF carry the highest risk of periop mortality. Many patients will have some degree of accompanying hydrocephalus, but decisions regarding the placement of ventricular shunts are best postponed until the malformation has been treated, as hydrocephalus may improve with reduction in intracranial venous pressure. High-output CHF is addressed by treating the fistula. Embolization via the arterial or venous system minimizes resistance or reduces flow in the fistula, improving cardiac function.

Treatment is directed at staged occlusion of the arterial feeders to the AV fistula and eventually thrombosis of the fistula itself from the venous side. Open microsurgical techniques, endovascular methods, or a combination of both may be used to reduce flow through the malformation. With reduction in the aneurysmal flow, CO will decrease, SVR will improve, and mixed venous PO_2 will decrease. Because of the high mortality associated with treatment by surgery alone and the advances in endovascular techniques, vein of Galen malformations currently are managed without direct primary surgical approaches. Surgery, as an option, is more likely to occur in the setting of staged or attempted embolizations. Subtemporal, midline occipital, or bilateral occipital craniotomies can be used to isolate and occlude arterial feeders to the malformation. Stereotactic radiosurgery has been used successfully as an adjunct to embolization for surgery.

Variant procedure or approaches: Alternative approaches may access the torcular (confluence) of venous sinuses through a burr hole to allow direct retrograde placement of thrombogenic coils in the AV fistula.

Usual preop diagnosis: Vein of Galen aneurysm; IC hemorrhage; hydrocephalus; progressive neurologic deficits; current management focuses on embolization in the cath lab prior to surgical repair

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lateral decubitus, Concorde (modified prone), or semisitting; for burr hole, lateral
Incision	Temporal or occipital; for burr hole, occipital
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope, microscopic instruments; intraop angiography; for burr hole, endovascular catheters and equipment; intraop SSEP monitoring
Unique considerations	Careful attention to blood loss in infants Central venous access and A-line mandatory
Antibiotics	Vancomycin (1 g iv slowly q 12 h for adults; 10–15 mg/kg iv slowly q 6 h for children); cefotaxime (1 g iv q 6 h for adults; 40 mg/kg iv q 6 h for children)
Surgical time	3–5 h
Closing considerations	Meticulous hemostasis; avoid ↓ BP or HTN (MAP 80% of usual values).
EBL	< 250 mL
Postop care	Monitor for ↑ ICP (use of extraventricular drain) as a result of venous HTN 2° rapid occlusion of AV fistula. ICU × 1–3 d.
Mortality	Approaches 100% if high-output CHF not resolved
Morbidity	Deep venous infarct: 5–10% Intracranial hemorrhage Hydrocephalus Stroke Subdural hygroma Infection: Rare
Pain score	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Birth–3 yr (typically)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Other intracranial vascular malformations; high-output CHF

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Vein of Galen vascular malformations are usually diagnosed in infants because of high-output CHF and may cause an abnormal increase in head size due to the aneurysmal dilation and obstruction of the dural sinus. The abnormal vasculature constitutes a high-flow shunt, much like an AVM. The more severe the CHF, the higher the risk or morbidity and mortality during the procedure. Surgical repair is becoming less frequent as interventional radiologists get better at embolization. Patients that present for surgical repair have generally undergone multiple embolizations over months or years. Patients that present to the OR are often the highest risk group. During the procedure hypotension can result in ischemia to the brain (cerebral steal). Hypertension can cause bleeding and stress on the failing heart. Sudden uncontrolled bleeding, the surgery should be anticipated.

Cardiovascular	Because these lesions constitute high-flow shunts through the brain, the infants are prone to develop high-output CHF, which is fatal in more than 40% of patients. Newborns present with h/o CHF.
Neurological	Infants usually present with an abnormal head size, Sz disorder, or bizarre neurological signs, such as high-pitched crying, posturing, or failure to eat or thrive.
Laboratory	CT; MRI; cerebral angiography. The infant may need sedation and anesthetic management to obtain adequate diagnostic studies. Check renal function.
Premedication	For children, midazolam 0.5 mg/kg po (see p. D-1) generally provides satisfactory preop sedation after ~30 min.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, with the goals being the same as those for IC vascular malformations

Induction	Whenever possible, an iv induction is preferred. If the patient does not have advanced cardiac disease, propofol 1–2 mg/kg, fentanyl 2–3 mcg/kg, and rocuronium 0.6–1 mg/kg are satisfactory induction agents. If the patient has cardiac compromise, then etomidate or ketamine should be considered.	
Maintenance	Neuromonitoring for sensory and motor evoke potentials is commonly used during the cases. Analgesics like remifentanil (0.05–0.15 mcg/kg/min) or fentanyl infusion do not affect the patient's potentials. However, because hypnotic/sedatives do, the choice should be one with which the neurologist is familiar. Volatile agent (1/2 mac) with or without N_2O (50%) can be used, but most anesthesiologists use propofol (100–150 mcg/kg/min). Dexmedetomidine (0.4–0.7 mcg/kg/h) is progressively finding more acceptance as an adjuvant.	
Emergence	Plan to leave ETT in place for at least 24 h postop; infant should receive controlled ventilation and sedation during that interval.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 1–2 Central venous access	Prepare for sudden blood loss. Blood should be available in the room and transfused as needed. IVF should be used judiciously when there is no bleeding in order not to cause cerebral swelling, which can hinder a surgeon's progress. A central venous line may be useful. A subclavian approach is preferred over an IJ approach because it may compromise cerebral venous drainage.
Control of brain volume	Same as for AVMs (see p. 21).	

Monitoring	Same as for AVMs (see p. 21).	
Control of BP	Goal = normal range for age	Tight blood pressure control is essential for optimal surgical conditions and patient perfusion. Keeping the BP within 10% of the age-appropriate range should be the goal except when cross-clamping is necessary. Vasoactive infusions to raise blood pressure (epinephrine or neosynephrine) should be chosen based on HR. An antihypertensive infusion (nicardipine, nitroprusside, esmolol) is useful. Labelolol can be used for less complex cases. Tachycardia should generally be avoided.
Positioning	Same as for AVMs.	
Complications	Coagulopathy	If large volumes of blood are needed, a coagulopathy may ensue. Monitoring of coagulation status during surgery is important.
	Hypothermia	After the aneurysm is surgically corrected, hypothermia needs to be continued for 24–72 h.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Neurological deficits IC hemorrhage Heart failure
Pain management	Postop sedation (propofol 50–100 mcg/kg/min, dexmedetomidine, or fentanyl/versed) overnight. When the patient is extubated, then an analgesic (fentanl, morphine, or hydromorphone) may be necessary.
Tests	Same as for AVMs (see p. 22). Most patients will require a postop MRI the following day. It is generally best not to extubate patients prior to the scan. Some patients may also require a postop cerebral angiogram.

Suggested Readings

1. Bissonnette B: Cerebral protection. *Pediatr Anesth* 2004; 14:403–6.
2. Bissonnette B, Brady KM, Easley RB: Anesthesia for neurosurgical procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blockwell, Oxford: 2012, 540–69.
3. Hassan T, Nassar M, Eighandour M: Vein of Galen aneurysms: presentation and endovascular management. *Pediatr Neurosurg* 2012; 46(6):427–34.
4. Recinos PF, Rahmathulla G, Pearl M, et al: Vein of Galen malformations: epidemiology, clinical presentations, management. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2012; 23(1):165–77.
5. Vavilala MS, Soriano SG: Anesthesia for neurosurgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children,* 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 713–45.

VENTRICULOSCOPY AND THIRD VENTRICULOSTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Ventriculoscopy** is the technique of intraop visualization of the lateral, 3rd, and, occasionally, 4th ventricles using rigid or less commonly fiberoptic endoscopes inserted through standard cranial burr holes. The ventriculoscope permits direct inspection and limited navigation within the ventricle for both diagnostic and therapeutic

purposes and often is most commonly applied in the setting of hydrocephalus. In addition to CT scans, preop MRI exam of the brain is obtained to better depict the anatomy of the ventricular system, which is distorted frequently by congenital lesions. The enlarged ventricles produced by the hydrocephalus contribute to the safety and feasibility of most endoscopic approaches, enabling a variety of procedures. The endoscope can be used to fenestrate multicompartmental periventricular or arachnoid cysts, position ventricular catheters during shunt insertion, biopsy, or, in some cases, resect intraventricular tumors. Neuroendoscopy generally does not help in the initial cannulation of the ventricle (a common misconception).

Endoscopic ventriculoscopy may be performed through either frontal or parietal–occipital approaches, with the patient typically supine with the neck slightly flexed. Standard small incisions similar to shunt insertions are used. A twist drill or burr hole is created and the ventricle cannulated by insertion of the shunt catheter or an introducer with a peel-away sheath (for larger endoscopes). Endoscopes vary in size from 1.1 mm, for use inside a standard shunt catheter, to larger endoscopes (12–14 Fr), equipped with working channels, for more complex intraventricular procedures. After the ventricle is "tapped" through conventional methods, the endoscope can be inserted and the ventricular anatomy identified. After the intraventricular anatomic landmarks—such as the choroid plexus and/or Foramen of Monroe—are recognized, the scope can be navigated to the site of interest. Smaller endoscopes are used to position the catheter in the optimal ventricular location during shunt placement or revision. Larger endoscopes equipped with channels for instrumentation are used for biopsy, tumor resection, cyst aspiration, or fenestration procedures. Most scope systems have a separate channel for fluid irrigation if minor bleeding or debris obscure visibility.

Intraop complications associated with neuroendoscopic procedures include minor or major intraventricular hemorrhage; air entrapment (pneumocephalus); injury to paraventricular structures (basal ganglia, hypothalamus, brain stem); cardiorespiratory depression; and delayed arousal from anesthesia. Intraventricular hemorrhage is caused by direct or indirect injury to ependymal and extraependymal blood vessels. Fortunately, most bleeding encountered

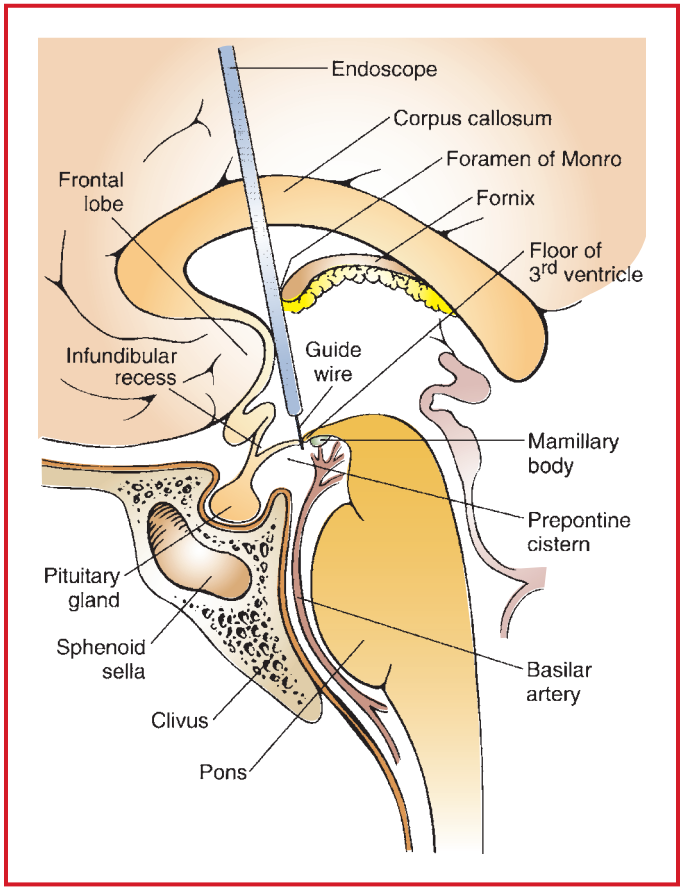


Figure 12.1-1. Endoscopic 3rd ventriculostomy. The figure depicts fenestration of the floor of the 3rd ventricle by a blunt probe inserted through the endoscope.

is minor but may be sufficient to interfere with visualization and illumination of the ventricle. Cardiorespiratory depression and cardiac arrhythmia are due, at least in part, to phenomena attributed to ↑ ICP from excessive irrigation without equal extracranial egress, rate of fluid instillation, and/or nonisothermic irrigant irritating the hypothalamic nuclei adjacent to the 3rd ventricle.

Third ventriculostomy is one of the more common endoscopic procedures and refers to fenestration of the floor of the 3rd ventricle to create a communication between the 3rd ventricle and the basilar cistern (Fig. 12.1-1). The technique is most commonly applied to patients with obstructive, or noncommunicating, hydrocephalus, although broader indications are being explored. This form of hydrocephalus results from impaired CSF flow through the sylvian aqueduct or 4th ventricle outlets. For patients with noncommunicating hydrocephalus, successful 3rd ventriculostomy allows CSF communication between the 3rd ventricle and the interpeduncular subarachnoid space, thereby alleviating the hydrocephalus and avoiding shunt placement. The fenestration is conducted first by direct visualization of the floor of the 3rd ventricle and then by perforation of the ependymal and arachnoid tissue between the mammillary bodies and the infundibular recess. The perforation can be dilated by inflation of a balloon catheter passed through the fenestration. Because of the proximity to the brain stem—in addition to the complications encountered with ventriculoscopy—3rd ventriculostomy carries the additional risk of mesencephalic injury, hypothalamic dysregulation, cranial nerve injury, and hemorrhage from the basilar artery and adjacent perforating vessels. Minor bleeding can be controlled easily by steady irrigation. In the event of excessive bleeding, conversion to an open craniotomy is unlikely to improve control of the hemorrhage. Patients also may be prepped for shunt insertion in the event the ventriculostomy is aborted because of unfavorable 3rd ventricular anatomy. A temporary extraventricular drain (EVD) may be left in place following some procedures to control CSF drainage postop and/or to allow assessment of ICP.

Usual preop diagnosis: Obstructive hydrocephalus; shunt malfunction; loculated multicompartmental hydrocephalus; intraventricular mass; arachnoid cyst; retained catheter

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with head neutral; table 90° or 180°
Incision	Small frontal or parietal–occipital
Special instrumentation	Endoscope (1.1–6 mm diameter); video system
Unique considerations	Hydrocephalus, ↑ ICP; suspicion of latex allergy in patients with spina bifida (see p. G-1). Body temperature irrigation is used.
Antibiotics	Ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg q 24 h iv × 2; do not combine with Ca^{++}-containing solutions); or vancomycin (10–15 mg/kg iv over 60 minutes, max 1 g.)
Closing considerations	Monitor for delayed intraventricular or subdural hemorrhage, ventricular collapse, acute hydrocephalus, CSF leak.
Postop care	Floor or ICU setting with cardiac and O_2 sat monitoring × 24 h. Measurement of serum sodium. Fluid intake/output recording. CT to r/o hemorrhage and to evaluate ventricular volume may be necessary. EVD used in cases of 3rd ventriculostomy for draining CSF and testing ICP.
Mortality	0–7% (most series report 0%)
Morbidity	Intraventricular hemorrhage Acute hydrocephalus CSF leak/pneumocephalus Meningitis/ventriculitis Subdural effusions or hematoma Cranial nerve palsy Hemiparesis Diabetes insipidus SIADH Temperature dysregulation
Pain score	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–adult
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	3/1000 live births (congenital only)
Etiology	Congenital and acquired
Associated conditions	Hydrocephalus; spinal dysraphism; Chiari malformation; posthemorrhagic hydrocephalus; arachnoid cyst

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Ventricular shunts are inserted to ameliorate hydrocephalus or cyst formations, which are either congenital or acquired. Many patients require frequent revisions of these shunts.

Cardiovascular	↑ ICP →↑ BP & ↓↓ HR (Cushing's response) **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	The most common presenting Sx is HA. If hydrocephalus is severe, Sx of ↑ ICP (> 15 mm Hg) (e.g., N/V, drowsiness, papilledema, Sz, and focal neurological defects) develop.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated by H&P, CT, and/or MRI
Premedication	Usually not required; should be avoided in patients with ↑ ICP.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA; forced air warmer

Induction	If ↑ ICP, iv induction with propofol (1.5–3.5 mg/kg) is preferred, because of its ability to decrease cerebral blood volume and, hence, ICP. ETT intubation is accomplished with the use of a nondepolarizing NMB (e.g., vecuronium [0.1 mg/kg] or rocuronium [0.7–1 mg/kg]).	
Maintenance	Isoflurane < 1% or sevoflurane < 2% inspired with N_2O/O_2 mixture to maintain O_2 sat ~99%. Depending on duration of operation, additional doses of vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) or rocuronium (0.2 mg/kg) may be needed. Maintain normal T in children by keeping OR warm (78°F) and using warming lights and forced air warming as needed. Ventilation is controlled mechanically (ventilator) or manually from the start of anesthesia until the surgical wound is closed. TV and frequency are adjusted so that $PetCO_2$ = 35–40 mm Hg. Hyperventilation and hypocarbia are undesirable because they make cannulation of the ventricle(s) more difficult for the surgeon. Maintain normotension.	
Emergence	ETT is usually removed at the conclusion of the anesthetic after reversal. Prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., ondansetron 0.1 mg/kg, max = 4 mg) should be given 30 min before extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–20 ga × 1 (22 ga for children) NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	Administer crystalloid (via measured volume system in a child). Blood is rarely, if ever, necessary.
Management of ICP	Low normal $PaO_2 \geq 100$ Minimize fluids Isoflurane < 1% or sevoflurane < 2% Hyperventilate to $PaCO_2$ = 25–30 mm Hg ($PetCO_2$ = 20–25 mm Hg)	Patients with malfunctioning VP shunts may be on the steep portion of the intracranial compliance curve such that any increase in intracranial volume may ↑↑ ICP. Transient increases in ICP are tolerated, provided that they are promptly terminated. Sustained increases in ICP > 25–30 mm Hg are associated with severe neurological injury and poor outcome.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	Table turned 90–180° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Supine with a bolster under the shoulder on the operative side. The head, chest, and abdomen are prepped for possible VP shunt insertion, so all anesthesia equipment and lines must be at the sides of the patient.
Complications	Infection Valve malfunction	Major complications from this operation are uncommon but include infection at the valve site or in the tubing, and malfunction of the valve, either draining too little or too much CSF.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	Children < 2 yr: Acetaminophen suppositories (up to 40 mg/kg intraop, then 10–15 mg/kg q 4 h). Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg iv Fentanyl 0.5–1 mcg/kg MSO_4 0.05–0.1 mg/kg	New shunts are painful as a result of subcutaneous tunneling.

Suggested Readings

1. Bouras T, Sgouros S: Complications of endoscopic third ventriculostomy: a systematic review. *Acta Neurochir Suppl* 2012; 113:149–53.
2. Kirolous RW, Javadpour M, May P, et al: Endoscopic treatment of suprasellar and third ventricle-related arachnoid cysts. *Childs Nsrv Syst* 2001; 17(12)713–8.
3. Maldonado IL, Valery CA, Boch AL: Shunt dependence: myths and facts. *Acta Neurochir (wien)* 2010; 152(9):1449–54.

PEDIATRIC BRAIN ARTERIOVENOUS MALFORMATIONS (AVM)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: An arteriovenous malformation is the most common cause of nontraumatic intracranial hemorrhage in childhood. It consists of direct connections between arteries and veins without an interposed capillary network and leads to a tangle of malformed vessels and channels (the nidus), carrying blood at arterial pressure. They may occur in any location of the brain, brain stem, or spinal cord; however, cerebral malformations are the most common. The arterial vessels deliver blood to the veins at systolic blood pressure and that may cause bleeding. The lack of an interposed capillary network prevents local oxygen delivery leading to focal ischemia (steal) and seizures. This steal may result in a progressive neurologic deficit. In addition, venous congestion with arterial pressure blood may produce neurologic symptoms due to venous congestion and reduced perfusion to surrounding brain. AVMs can vary in size from lesions having only one feeding vessel to very complex lesions with multiple feeders and draining veins encompassing an entire hemisphere. It is estimated that 80–90% involve the cerebral hemisphere. Most are conical in shape with the apex near the ventricle. Small AVMs are more likely to exhibit spontaneous hemorrhage, resulting in headache, neurologic deficit, coma, and rarely death. Aneurysms within the nidus of the AVM (nidal aneurysm) or involving the feeding arteries are the most likely source of bleeding. The risk of hemorrhage is reported to be 2% per year. It is reported that after a hemorrhage, the risk may be as high as 6% during the subsequent year. AVMs residing

in the brain stem or cerebellum are more likely to result in permanent neurologic deficit or death if hemorrhage develops compared to those in the hemispheres. Recurrent headache or new-onset seizure may herald the symptomatic AVM. However, the sudden onset of headache often followed by neurologic deficit should lead to an imaging study (CT or MRI) to demonstrate the lesion. If no lesion is identified, a lumbar puncture to confirm the presence of subarachnoid blood is indicated. Although CT angiography (CTA) or magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) is very sensitive in the diagnosis of AVM, four-vessel cerebral angiography is still the gold standard to confirm the presence and define the anatomy of these lesions. If the initial angiogram following a hemorrhage is nondiagnostic, the study should be repeated in 1–3 mo, after resolution of hematoma and local compression of the vessels in the nidus. The ideal treatment of AVMs is complete surgical excision, which removes the risk of hemorrhage, decreases or eliminates seizures, and may alleviate or resolve neurologic symptoms of "cerebral steal" or venous congestion. A treatment decision for AVMs depends on size, location, complexity, presence of associated aneurysms, as well as patient age, neurologic status, surgical expertise, and requires consideration of family and patient preference. The surgeon's decision to treat or observe a child with an AVM is complex with the ultimate goal of preservation of neurologic function. Some lesions situated in eloquent or deep regions of the brain are best observed or considered for interventional and/or stereotactic radiosurgery rather than craniotomy and resection. Angiography and embolization is most often performed under general anesthesia in the radiology suite. However, operating rooms have been constructed that can be used for complex angiographic procedures, open neurosurgical operations, magnetic resonance imaging and image-guided surgery. During angiography and embolization, physiologic monitoring (sensory and motor evoked potentials) is usually carried out. Careful blood pressure control is mandatory, and mild hypothermia (33°C) may be desirable. The duration of anesthesia is usually measured in hours, and postembolization the children are cared for in the PICU. Frequently, multiple episodes of embolization over weeks or even months are required for large or complex AVMs before the lesion is amenable to surgery or radiosurgery. However, embolization as the sole treatment for AVMs is not recommended; rather it should be used as an adjunct to surgery or to decrease size to successfully treat with radiosurgery. Surgery is most often performed under GA. In older teenagers with lesions in eloquent cortex, especially those involving speech, awake craniotomy and direct brain mapping may be used. Obtaining adequate brain relaxation may be difficult using awake techniques. For most children, GA is recommended. The use of image guidance helps in localization of the lesion allowing for more precise placement of the craniotomy flap and better localization of subcortical lesions. Intubation should be completed without the patient straining or becoming hypertensive so as to decrease the risk of hemorrhage. Mild hyperventilation is begun to decrease and maintain the $PaCO_2$ to 30–35 mm Hg. A lumbar subarachnoid drain may be used to allow for brain relaxation and access to deep lesions. At least two peripheral intravenous lines, an arterial line, pulse oximeter, Foley catheter, and a CVP line are placed. The use of mild (33°C) or moderate hypothermia requiring central cooling may be undertaken. Minimal isotonic fluids should be administered, and the serum Na^+ is kept in the 140–150 mEq range. If needed, hypertonic (3%) saline is administered. Mannitol and/or Lasix may be given to aid in brain relaxation if a lumbar drain is not placed. The use of dexamethasone (1–2 mg/kg/d; max 16 mg/d) is controversial but is used more often than not. Anticonvulsants are not routinely administered unless there is a history of seizures. Routine prophylactic antibiotics (e.g., ceftriaxone) are given 30–60 min before the skin incision. If intraop angiography is to be used, the catheter sheath is placed in the femoral artery and covered beneath a sterile dressing. The patient is carefully positioned on the table, and a radiolucent headholder is applied to the skull. Evoked potential monitoring electrodes are placed, and baseline potentials are established (special anesthetic techniques are required and motor paralytic agents are minimized or avoided). Image guidance is established, and the patient is draped and padded to avoid pressure points, allow access to the femoral arterial sheath, and allow a clear line of sight to the image guidance system. The skin incision is infiltrated with 1/4–1/2% bupivacaine with 1/200,000 or 1/400,000 epinephrine to minimize skin bleeding. After the elevation of the bone flap, either CSF drainage via the lumbar drain or hypertonic agents are used to allow for minimal brain retraction and/or manipulation during the approach and resection of the AVM. If planned temporary occlusion of a major feeding vessel is required, barbiturates may be administered. Surgery may be prolonged and intraop angiography performed on multiple occasions during the procedure. MAP is maintained at the preop resting levels or within a set range determined by the surgical team using SNP and other vasoactive agents. To prevent perfusion pressure breakthrough and cerebral swelling, hypertension is avoided. If the procedure is prolonged, the AVM is very complex, or a subtotal or planned staged removal is the surgical outcome, then the patient should remain intubated and ventilated postoperatively. Strict control of MAP is mandatory, and the range is based on the patient's age, AVM complexity, location, use of and degree of hypothermia, and preop blood pressure. Intraop MRI scans are being studied at many institutions. MRI requires very careful planning to allow the patient's head to be moved or rotated into the MRI donut during the operative procedure. MRI eliminates the ability to perform evoked potential monitoring. The use of this advanced technology, albeit attractive, produces a complex and hostile operating room environment and increases the anesthesia workload. Its benefit for AVM surgery is as yet to be determined.

Summary of Procedures: See Chapter 1, Craniotomy for Intracranial Aneurysms, p. 5.

Anesthetic Considerations: See Chapter 1, Craniotomy for Intracranial Aneurysms, p. 6.

Suggested Readings

1. Bissonnette B, Brady KM, Easley RB: Anesthesia for neurosurgical procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blockwell, Oxford: 2012, 540–69.
2. Bissonnette B: Cerebral protection. *Pediatr Anesth* 2004; 14:403–6.
3. Brain Trauma Foundation, American Association of Neurological Surgeons, Congress of Neurological Surgeons: Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. Prophylactic hypothermia. *J Neurotrauma* 2007; 24(Suppl1):S21–5.
4. Hamilton MG, Spetzler RF: The prospective application of a grading system for arteriovenous malformations. *Neurosurgery* 1994; 34(1):2–6.
5. McIntyre LA, Furgeson DA, Hebert PC, et al: Prolonged therapeutic hypothermia after traumatic brain injury in adults. *JAMA* 2003; 289:2992–9.
6. Robin PH: Arteriovenous malformations. In: Albright AL, Pollack IF, Adelson PD, eds. *Principles and Practice of Pediatric Neurosurgery.* New York, Thieme: 2008, 983–1003.
7. Smyth MD, Sneed PK, Ciricillo SF, et al: Stereotactic radiosurgery for pediatric intracranial arteriovenous malformations: the University of California at San Francisco experience. *J Neurosurg* 2002; 97(1):48–55.
8. Vavilala MS, Soriano SG: Anesthesia for neurosurgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 713–45.

CHAPTER

12.2 Pediatric Ophthalmic Surgery

SURGEONS

D. M. Alcorn, MD
Natalia F. Callaway, MD
Darius M. Moshfeghi, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Julie Williamson, DO, FAAP

STRABISMUS SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Surgical correction of strabismus is a common procedure in ophthalmic practice, as strabismus occurs in 3–5% of the general population. Strabismus surgery is the most common pediatric eye surgery performed. The goal of this procedure is to correct the ocular misalignment caused by this condition. This can be achieved by several methods: (a) **weakening the muscles** (either by recession, marginal myotomy, or inserting a spacer); (b) **strengthening the muscles,** by shortening their length (resection), moving the muscle's insertion toward the limbus (advancement), or tightening the muscle's fibers (plication or tuck); or (c) by **transposing the muscles.** Surgery can be performed on any of the four recti muscles (medial rectus, lateral rectus, superior rectus, and/or lateral rectus muscle) or the two oblique muscles (superior oblique and inferior oblique).

There are many indications for strabismus surgery. These include maintaining and restoring binocular vision, improvement in diplopia, improvement of anomalous eye movements, locating and/or transposition surgery for lost muscle, improvement in asthenopic symptoms, improvement in anomalous/altered head posture, dampening of nystagmus, and improvement in psychosocial function.

Often, **forced duction testing (FDT)** is performed during surgery to determine if there is evidence of limited ductions. This helps to differentiate a paretic muscle vs. a restriction that may limit motility. The eyes should be immobile during FDT as well as during surgery. If succinylcholine has been used, at least 20 min should pass before performing duction testing because succinylcholine causes contraction of extraocular muscles. Alternatively, a different muscle relaxant may be used.

Eye position under GA is well documented: the eyes will become more divergent, and this tendency is increased in misaligned eyes; therefore, exotropic eyes appear more outwardly deviated, and esotropic (inward deviation) eyes actually appear straighter (less esotropic). Hence, it is important that the surgeon have solid measurements preoperatively.

The surgery usually is performed through one of two possible approaches. The **limbal incision** is made at the junction of the cornea and the conjunctiva, with radial relaxing incisions in the quadrants on either side of the muscle. The other is a **fornix** or **cul-de-sac incision,** which is made ~4–8 mm from the limbus in the quadrant adjacent to the muscle on which to operate. This approach is subposterior to tenon's capsule. Comfort and cosmesis immediately postop are superior with the fornix incision.

Variant procedure or approaches: In very cooperative older children, an **adjustable suture** technique may be used. Unlike fixed sutures, the adjustable suture technique allows modification of the position of the muscle. An adjustable suture involves temporarily positioning the muscle, but not finally tying it down until the patient is awake and has been remeasured. After the patient is free of the effects of anesthesia, measurements are retaken, and the muscle is placed in its optimum position, to properly align the eyes, and then securely tied down. This adjustment may be performed the same day of surgery or the following day. **Adjustable strabismus surgery** ideally reduces the frequency of reoperations by eliminating undesirable early postop undercorrections or overcorrections and increases the rate of surgical success.

Although GA is most commonly used, strabismus surgery may be done using a **retrobulbar, peribulbar, subtenon,** or **subconjunctival block**, or even **topical anesthesia**. Both topical and peribulbar anesthesia have the advantage of providing good akinesia and anesthesia but without the risks associated with a retrobulbar injection (e.g., hemorrhage, optic nerve damage, ocular perforation). When using topical anesthesia, this may be augmented by the use of minimal sedation and/or antianxiety medications.

Usual preop diagnosis: Strabismus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine (turned 180°)
Incision	Limbal or fornix
Antibiotics	Topical and/or conjunctival by surgeon

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Unique considerations	Avoid neuromuscular blockade for forced duction test. Succinylcholine will compromise forced duction test for 15–20 min after administration. A stable deep plane of anesthesia will keep eyes from moving or being disconjugate. Incidence of PONV is 45–85% without prophylaxis. Topical tetracaine may ↓ postop pain. Oculocardiac reflex may cause ↓↓ HR. Hypercarbia, light anesthesia, and remifentanil may increase incidence of OCR.
Surgical time	20–90 min, dependent on procedure and number of involved muscles. Some surgeons use preop antibiotic eye drops (day of surgery, at time of surgery) or use of topical 5% povidone iodine solution in conjunctival fornices with surgical prep. Timing of antibiotic administration may add to surgical time.
EBL	Minimal
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Failure to achieve ocular alignment Infection Hemorrhage Anterior segment ischemia Dissatisfaction with cosmetic result
Postop care	PACU with discharge home within hours. Typically eye patches not required but varies by surgical preference. Some children may need "no-nos" or arm restraints. High incidence of emergence delirium. Topical tetrocaine, one drop at beginning of case, and one drop at end has been shown to ↓ postop pain. Postop issues: All patients respond differently to the strabismus surgery. Some may be drowsy or have PONV. Pain is usually mild and responds to acetaminophen. Many physicians avoid NSAIDs due to potential bleeding. Children may be frightened to open their eyes, but generally this improves within a few days.
Pain score	2–4 (moderate)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Children
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	3–5% of general population
Etiology	Generally idiopathic; muscle palsies may be associated with trauma, inflammation, tumors, and/or ischemia; restrictive strabismus may occur with thyroid disease (Graves' disease), fibrosis syndromes, or to a scleral buckle or mass.
Associated conditions	↑ incidence in premature infants, small-for-gestational-age infants, those with a positive family history of strabismus, craniosynostosis syndromes, or associated craniofacial syndromes (Apert, Crouzon, Pfeiffer, etc.), trisomy 21, fetal alcohol syndrome, CNS disease affecting ocular muscles or nerves. No longer considered an independent risk factor for malignant hyperthermia.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Strabismus is the most frequent ophthalmic condition in children requiring surgical repair. Most children will be healthy, but the association of strabismus with cerebral palsy, prematurity, and craniofacial and neurological disorders requires careful preop evaluation. Unlike adult eye surgeries that often are performed using retrobulbar or peribulbar blocks, in children GETA is required to achieve successful operative conditions. For the anesthesiologist there are three key perioperative problems associated with strabismus surgery: the oculocardiac reflex (OCR), an extremely high incidence of PONV in the untreated patient (45–85%), and a high incidence of emergence delirium (10–80%). At one time, it was believed that children undergoing strabismus surgery were at increased risk for malignant hyperthermia.

Although this has been shown to be inaccurate, many neuromuscular syndromes are associated with musculoskeletal abnormalities including strabismus and ptosis. A thorough family history of anesthetic problems must be obtained. The surgeon may plan to execute a forced duction test (FDT) in which the eye is grasped at the limbus causing a slight proptosis and moved into each field of gaze to determine if the strabismus is the result of paresis or restrictive extraocular muscles. Succinylcholine compromises the test by causing tonic contractions of the extraocular muscles for 15–20 min after administration, so it is avoided when possible. Neuromuscular blockade will also confuse the results of the FDT.

Anesthetic technique: GETA, LMA

Induction	Following standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1) the anesthesiologist should have available a vagolytic agent (atropine or glycopyrrolate 0.01–0.02 mg/kg) to attenuate the OCR. Sevoflurane maintenance is associated with diminished OCR compared to propofol and remifentanil. FDT may be performed prior to the administration of NMB. Rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) may be used to facilitate endotracheal intubation. An oral RAE tube or flexible LMA secured to the mandible will keep the airway away from the surgical field.	
Maintenance	May use inhalation anesthetic or TIVA. Avoid N_2O as this is a highly emetogenic surgery. Propofol infusion (150–200 mcg/kg/min) may require NMB or augmentation with remifentanil to maintain a motionless patient (be aware that remifentanil may increase OCR). Postop analgesia should be multimodal to minimize opioids (due to high risk of PONV). Acetaminophen (30–40 mg/kg PR or 10 mg/kg iv) and a short-acting opioid (fentanyl 1–2 mcg/kg iv) should be used. Combination therapy for PONV prevention is most effective. Ondansetron (0.1 mg/kg up to 4 mg) plus dexamethasone (0.15 mg/kg up to 5 mg) is preferred. "Super" hydration with 30 mL/kg of crystalloid has also been shown to ↓ PONV. Children exhibiting OCR are more likely to have PONV.	
Emergence	The surgeon may request "deep extubation." In this case, the anesthetic (sevoflurane or TIVA) is increased until the patient has no response to airway manipulation such as suctioning but has steady spontaneous ventilation. The ETT or LMA is removed and an oral airway placed. The patient is allowed to awaken with no further stimulation, monitoring carefully for signs of laryngospasm.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Peripheral iv: 22–20 g Crystalloid to replace calculated deficit plus maintenance during care. Hydration with 30 mL/kg has been shown to reduce PONV.	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Temperature.	
Positioning	Supine ± shoulder roll. Head of bed usually rotated 180° away.	
Complications	Oculocardiac reflex	Traction on the extraocular muscles or the levator, or external pressure to the globe, initiates a trigeminal reflex via parasympathetic output from the vagus nerve. This may cause bradyarrhythmias, AV block, ventricular ectopy, or even asystole. May be attenuated by pretreatment with anticholinergics (see above). Tends to extinguish with repeated manipulation. Treat by removing pressure to globe or tension on the extraocular muscle and administer atropine or glycopyrrolate. Rarely may require epinephrine (1–10 mcg/kg). The oculorespiratory reflex (ORR) is a less well-understood response to trigeminal nerve stimulus that results in cessation of spontaneous ventilation and should be considered if spontaneous ventilation via LMA is the preferred technique.
	Accidental extubation	May result from surgical repositioning or removal of drapes. The ETT/LMA should be firmly secured, and the anesthesiogist should be attentive in changes to positioning (e.g., moving from one eye to the other) and removal of drapes.

Complications (cont'd)	Emergence delirium	Dexmedetomidine (0.5–1 mcg/kg iv over 10 min) or clonidine (1–2 mcg/kg iv) decrease emergence delirium and may increase parental satisfaction. Dexmedetomidine plus ketamine (1–3 mg/kg/h) decrease emergence delirium, the OCR, pain, and need for postop analgesia in one study. The sub-Tenon block, usually performed by the surgeon, also may decrease emergence delirium.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV	Even with prophylaxis, up to 10% experience PONV. Rescue antiemetic therapy: ondansetron 0.01 mg/kg up to 4 mg; metoclopramide 0.1 mg/kg up to 10 mg; promethazine (> 2 yr old) 0.25–1 mg/kg PO/PR/im/iv up to 25 mg).
	Emergence delirium	May be decreased with use of alpha-agonists dexmedetomidine or clonidine (see above). At emergence or in the PACU, treat with opioid analgesia (fentanyl 0.2–0.5 mcg/kg iv) or propofol (1 mg/kg iv).
Pain management	Continue acetaminophen 10 mg/kg PO Q 4 h. May require additional opioids in PACU. Intraop NSAIDS are typically avoided due to concern for local bleeding, but may be discussed with surgeon for postop analgesia.	

Suggested Readings

1. Anninger W, Forbes B, Quinn G, et al: The effect of topical tetracaine eye drops on emergence behavior and pain relief after strabismus surgery. *J AAPOS* 2007; 11(3):273–6.
2. Aouad M, Yazbeck-Karam V, Nasr V, et al: A single dose of propofol at the end of surgery for prevention of emergence agitation in children undergoing strabismus surgery during sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 2007; 107:733–8.
3. Goodarzi M, Matar MM, Shafa M, et al: A prospective randomized blinded study of the effect of intravenous fluid therapy on postoperative nausea and vomiting in children undergoing strabismus surgery. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2006; 16(1):49–53.
4. Hahnenkamp K, Honeman C, Fischer L, et al: Effect of different anesthetics on the oculocardiac reflex during pediatric strabismus surgery. *Pediatric Anesth* 2000; 10:601–8.
5. Keaney A, Diviney D, Harte S, et al: Postoperative behavioral changes following anesthesia with sevoflurane. *Pediatric Anesth* 2004; 14(10):866–70.
6. Madan R, Bhatia A, Chakithandy S, et al: Prophylactic dexamethasone for postoperative nausea and vomiting in pediatric strabismus surgery: dose ranging and safety evaluation study. *Anesth Analg* 2005; 100:1622–6.
7. Min S-W, Hwang J-M: The incidence of asystole in patients undergoing strabismus surgery. *Eye* 2009; 23:864–6.
8. Mizrak A, Erbagci I, Arici T, et al: Dexmedetomidine use during strabismus surgery in agitated children. *Med Princ Pract* 2011; 20:427–32.
9. Seo I-S, Seong C-R, Jung G, et al: The effect of sub-Tenon lidocaine injection on emergence agitation after general anesthesia in pediatric strabismus surgery. *Eur J Anesthesiol* 2011; 28:334–9.

PEDIATRIC VITREORETINAL SURGERY

OVERVIEW

The majority of pediatric vitreoretinal surgery requires GA for children 18 yr and younger. As with any surgery, preop education of the common risks must be discussed with the family and understood by all members of the patient care team. Initial ophthalmic examination can be performed with simple sedation, using mask blow-by, with conversion to GETA should the exam demonstrate pathology requiring intervention. If the patient is a mature, cooperative adolescent (without claustrophobia) undergoing longer laser procedures (e.g., panretinal photocoagulation) or a noncomplex vitrectomy (e.g., nonclearing vitreous hemorrhage), then MAC with a retrobulbar block may be considered.

The surgeon uses a 25-gauge 1.5-inch needle on a 10-mL syringe containing a 1:1 ratio of 0.75% bupivacaine with epinephrine and 4% lidocaine. The needle is introduced along the inferior orbital rim 1/3 of the way from the lateral orbital rim, aspirated to ensure proper placement, and then the anesthetic is administered at the appropriate quantity for the patient age, weight, and gender (usually ~5 mL).

Communication and teamwork are essential to optimize the surgical experience for all. Discussion should focus on: (1) what the surgical requirements are for the procedure, (2) the best anesthetic approach tailored to the patient and procedure, and (3) alternative situations and complications that may require conversion to GA. The anesthesia team often has a better understanding of what the child may tolerate, but to make informed decisions in the OR, they must understand the surgical procedure and potential complications. These are discussed below.

LASER PHOTOCOAGULATION

Background: Laser photocoagulation is a safe prophylactic and treatment modality for a variety of retinal and choroidal abnormalities. In the pediatric population, laser photocoagulation has success with respect to improving vision outcomes and optimizing vision potential when used for the treatment of severe retinopathy of prematurity (ROP), retinal tear and detachment, familial exudative vitreoretinopathy, incontinentia pigmenti, and other, rarer, retinal vascular disorders. Laser photocoagulation may be performed in conjunction with other vitreoretinal procedures, such as vitrectomy (described in laser section), intravitreal injection, and fluorescein angiography.

Procedure: **Laser photocoagulation** takes advantage of the spatial precision offered by collimated light energy to selectively (to the level of cells) ablate pathologic tissues—usually retina. When the laser is targeted at an ocular structure, the tissue absorbs the light energy and generates heat, and the surgeon can photocoagulate the aberrant tissue while minimally damaging other structures.

The surgeon uses an indirect ophthalmoscope with a condensing lens to treat the fundus. The time and extent of irradiation varies by indication—ranging from 5 min for repair of a monocular retinal tear to an hour per eye, treated for severe ROP. Other pathologies usually fall between these two timelines, for example, a scattered panretinal photocoagulation (PRP) can take 20–60 min for one or both eyes. Two procedures commonly accompany laser photocoagulation: intravitreal injection and fluorescein angiography.

Intravitreal injection of steroids or anti-VEGF medications is performed by opening the eyelid with a speculum, thoroughly sterilizing the injection area with povidone-iodine, locating the limbus and determining the injection location with calipers (varies by age, 1–4 mm from limbus), and then injecting the required medication into the vitreous substance. This is most often performed for vascular proliferative retinopathy secondary to retina ischemia. **Fluorescein angiography** may be used to identify ischemic areas of retina for panretinal or scattered photocoagulation. Intravenous injection of fluorescein carries the dye to the retina and choroidal circulation within seconds, and thus, the ophthalmologist can visualize perfusion of the choroids and retina over the next 5–15 min. The anesthesiologist is usually asked to perform the iv fluorescein push while the retina physician operates the camera.

The potential complications for laser photocoagulation include inadvertent irradiation of other, usually more anterior, ocular structures such as the cornea, iris, lens, and so on. In addition, choroidal effusions, cataract, new retinal tears, hemorrhage, anterior segment ischemia, and retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) tears can complicate the procedure. Optimizing the laser delivery (intensity, duration, and exposure), distributing the treatment over multiple sessions, and continually reassessing the patient's status minimizes the occurrence of adverse events. When complications do occur, early intervention can often prevent or minimize the long-term consequences in visual outcomes; therefore, it is critical for the entire operating team to vigilantly watch for early signs of complications.

VITRECTOMY IN PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

Background: Vitrectomy is usually performed to clear the visual axis or reattach the retina with the goal to restore the highest vision potential. The procedure removes the vitreous gel in the eye. In children, vitrectomy is indicated for a variety of vitreoretinal conditions, but most commonly severe retinopathy of prematurity (ROP), partial or complete retinal detachments, nonaccidental trauma, persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous, genetic conditions affecting the retina, and malignancy.

Vitrectomy in a child under 1 yr of age is the most difficult and least forgiving surgery in ophthalmology. The infant needs to have GETA, with paralysis, and no movement of the bed/table is permissible. The surgery can last from

45 to 75 min. In older children with complex retinal detachments, typically the procedure takes from 45 to 75 min. From an anesthesia perspective, it is imperative that the child awakens without coughing or bucking.

Traumatic and/or rhegmatogenous retinal detachment cases, usually in older children, are often accompanied by a **scleral buckle** procedure, which involves isolating and manipulating the four recti muscles. This ocular manipulation can induce extreme bradycardia or asystole from the OCR and can be associated with significant postop pain that must be adequately controlled. A scleral buckle typically adds 30–45 min to a case duration.

Procedure: After ensuring the eye is fully anesthetized and sterilized, the ophthalmologist creates a three-point sclerotomy with 23- or 25-gauge incisions through the pars plana, which is located 3–4 mm from the limbus (in a child greater than 2 yr; in younger children, pars plicata incisions may be made 1 mm posterior to the limbus), at the inferotemporal, superonasal, and supertemporal locations. At the inferotemporal post an infusion cannula maintains the pressure of the eye by allowing saline to replace the excised tissue. The other two ports are then used for the instrumentation necessary to perform a bimanual vitrectomy (see Fig. 12.2-1). One of these instruments has a light attached to maintain visualization of the retina throughout the procedure. The surgical microscope and a wide-angle viewing system are used to perform the operation. To remove the actual vitreous substance, the posterior hyaloid is carefully elevated and cut with a microvitrectomy hand piece that simultaneously aspirates vitreous components. The core vitrectomy is then performed for all 360° of the globe, utilizing all surgical ports as necessary. Silicone oil

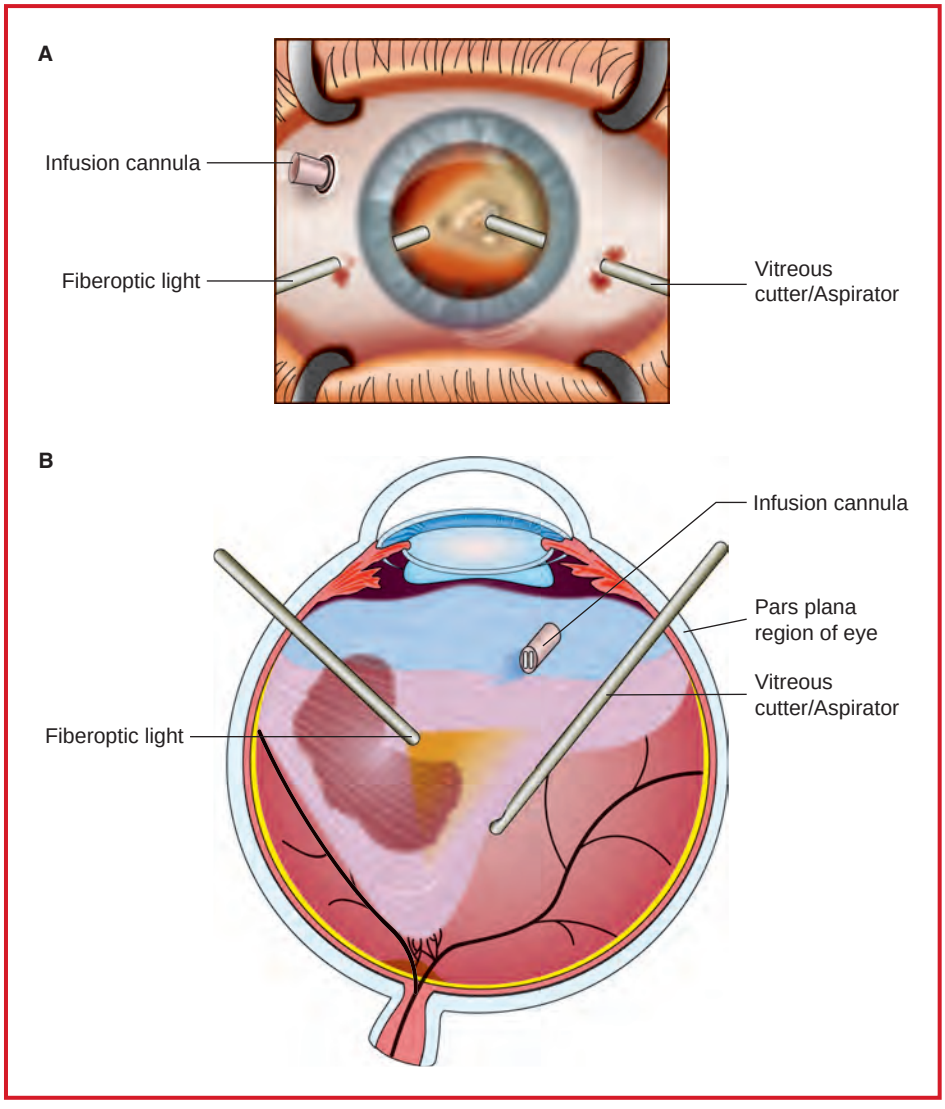


Figure 12.2-1. Vitrectomy procedure. **A:** Ophthalmologist's view. **B:** Cross-sectional view showing removal of vitreous in progress.

may be slowly infused into the posterior portion of the eye to replace the removed vitreous. Ports are sequentially closed. A subconjuctival injection of an antibiotic (usually cefazolin) and steroid (decadron) is then administered.

Complications of vitrectomy include corneal edema, retinal detachment, ↑ IOP (exacerbated when patient has preexisting glaucoma), hyptony (↓ IOP), endophthalmitis (infection), and intraocular hemorrhage. Due to their high regenerative capacity, children have robust scarring responses that create vision-threatening proliferative vitreoretinopathy (PVR) requiring a return to the OR, usually 6–12 wk after the initial surgery. If proliferative vitreoretinopathy develops and a scleral buckle is not present, then one will be placed in older children (> 1 yr). Otherwise, if a buckle is present, a complex vitrectomy with possible diathermy, lens removal, iridectomy, retinectomy, perfluoron, laser, and silicone oil may be needed. This procedure can take 45–75 min. If silicone is placed, it must be removed 6 wk to 6 mo later in a vitrectomy, with possible membrane peel in a 30–45 min procedure, to minimize the risk of vision loss and optimize the child's long-term vision potential.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (VITRECTOMY AND OTHER OPEN GLOBE PROCEDURES)

Position	Supine (turned 180° degrees)
Incision	Pars plana or pars plicata
Antibiotics	Subconjunctival
Unique considerations	A stable deep plane of anesthesia will keep eyes from moving or being disconjugate during initial exam, often done under mask anesthesia. Vitrectomy for infants and open globe emergencies require neuromuscular blockade with GETA and emergence without coughing or bucking. OCR may cause profound bradycardia. Intraocular gas placement (sulfur hexafluoride) or an open globe precludes the use of nitrous oxide. Silicone oil may be injected into the posterior eye to replace vitreous humor. Subconjunctival injection of steroids at the end of procedure is painful. Patients are often premature infants at high risk for postanesthetic apnea.
Surgical time	45–75 min for vitrectomy. Scleral buckle adds 30–45 min.
EBL	Minimal
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Infection, hemorrhage, retinal tear or detachment, corneal edema, cataract
Postop care	For outpatients, PACU with discharge to home or inpatient floor within hours. Eye patches may be required. Some children may need arm restraints. Ex-premature neonates and infants may need inpatient monitoring for apnea. NICU babies may have procedure performed at bedside. They may also require postop controlled ventilation.
Pain score	Moderate to severe (scleral buckle)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	For vitreoretinal surgery, cataracts, and glaucoma: premature newborns, infants. Eye injuries: any age, but most common in 10–30 yr old.
Male:Female	1:1 for complications of prematurity 4:1 for penetrating eye injuries
Incidence	ROP occurs in > 50% of ELBW babies (< 1500 g) Injury occurs ~1 in 100, ages 0–19 yr
Etiology	Retinopathy of prematurity, accidental or nonaccidental trauma, malignancy
Associated conditions	Prematurity, Down syndrome (trisomy 21), Alport syndrome, Marfan and Ehlers-Danlos syndromes, homocystinuria, mucopolysaccharidoses, craniofacial syndromes and phakmatoses (neurofibromatosis, Sturge-Weber syndrome, tuberous sclerosis, incontinentia pigmenti, and ataxia telangiactasia).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Vitreoretinal and open globe surgery in pediatrics may involve special high-risk populations—infants, often premature, and trauma patients. Retinopathy of prematurity (ROP) is a leading cause of blindness worldwide, related to abnormal retinal vascular development and correlated to low birth weight and prematurity. In the United States, all infants with a gestational age ≤ 30 wk or birth weight < 1500 g are screened for ROP starting at postnatal age 4–6 wk. Laser therapy is instituted based on the area and severity of retinal vascular proliferation in an attempt to prevent loss of visual acuity or retinal detachment. The ETROP trial demonstrated improved outcomes with early treatments. Vision-saving surgery for infants with ROP, congenital cataracts, or glaucoma may require surgical intervention while still extremely small (< 1000 g) with significant systemic comorbidities including intraventricular hemorrhage, pulmonary hypertension, congenital heart disease, and acute or chronic pulmonary disease. These infants are at higher risk for perioperative complications than are older children. Perioperative apnea is common in infants below 52–60 wk postconceptual age. Even in the infant requiring no supplemental oxygen preop, controlled ventilation may be necessary even after minor surgical intervention. For term or older infants presenting from home, postop inpatient apnea monitoring is recommended prior to 48 wk postgestational age. For infants with comorbidity or prematurity, consider inpatient admission for those less than 52–60 wk postgestational age.

An initial examination under anesthesia is often performed to determine the need for surgical intervention. Mask anesthesia can allow for an excellent exam with attention to obtaining a deep enough plane for the eyes to return to midline rather than "sundowning" or being disconjugate. Even small premature infants may tolerate a brief exam using mask ventilation. If the exam reveals need for further intervention, intravenous access can then be obtained and the trachea intubated. Having a motionless field is essential for vitreoretinal surgery. GETA with neuromuscular blockade provides a motionless field without requiring a depth of anesthesia that may cause hypotension leading to compromise in retinal artery perfusion and ocular ischemia. Very premature or small infants or those with neurologic disease such as hydrocephalus or significant intraventricular hemorrhage may require controlled ventilation for even a brief exam under anesthesia.

Children with craniofacial syndromes and mucopolysaccharidoses should have careful airway evaluations and are expected to present with challenging airways. Alport syndrome is associated with renal failure and development of myopathy that may preclude the safe use of succinylcholine. Trisomy 21 and Marfan and Ehlers-Danlos syndromes are associated with structural (especially valvular) heart disease. The phakomatoses may have neurologic involvement and seizures as part of the presentation.

Open globe injury presents a different, but also challenging, patient population. In the case of trauma, other life-threatening injuries must be ruled out. Risk of aspiration of gastric contents must be weighed against vision-threatening increases in intraocular pressure (IOP) that may occur during induction with resulting extrusion of intraocular contents including the iris, lens, and vitreous. Painful eye injuries may cause crying and rubbing of the eyes that ↑ IOP. Placement of an intravenous line to accomplish a rapid sequence induction may itself cause screaming and crying that may significantly and dangerously ↑ IOP. Oral benzodiazepine premedication (midazolam 0.5 mg/kg) may be given to calm the child and facilitate intravenous access. In the absence of an intravenous line, inhalational induction (avoiding contact of the mask on the eye) or intramuscular ketamine (with or without succinylcholine or rocuronium) may be considered, balanced against the risk of aspiration of gastric contents. Succinylcholine causes a transient mild ↑ IOP (7–12 mm Hg for 5–6 min, in contrast to coughing which is believed to explosively increase IOP to 40 mm Hg or more). A deep plane of anesthesia does not reliably attenuate the succinylcholine-induced ↑ IOP. "High dose" rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg) takes longer to achieve neuromuscular blockade but is not associated with ↑ IOP. Etomidate and propofol in combination with lidocaine (1 mg/kg iv) and/or fentanyl should be used to achieve a deep plane of anesthesia prior to laryngoscopy. If necessary, the surgeon can physically shield the eye to contain contents during induction. The same attention to stability of IOP is needed at the time of extubation.

Once the trachea is intubated, the ETT and circuit should be secured to be away from the surgical field and still accessible by the anesthesiologist. Maintenance may be inhalational or intravenous agents, planning for a smooth transition to spontaneous ventilation and extubation at the end of the case when appropriate. The oculocardiac reflex (OCR) may occur with manipulation of the eye (please see the section on strabismus surgery for more on the OCR). Prior to extubation, gastric contents should be aspirated by suction catheter and prophylaxis for PONV and adequate analgesia given to ensure a smooth emergence.

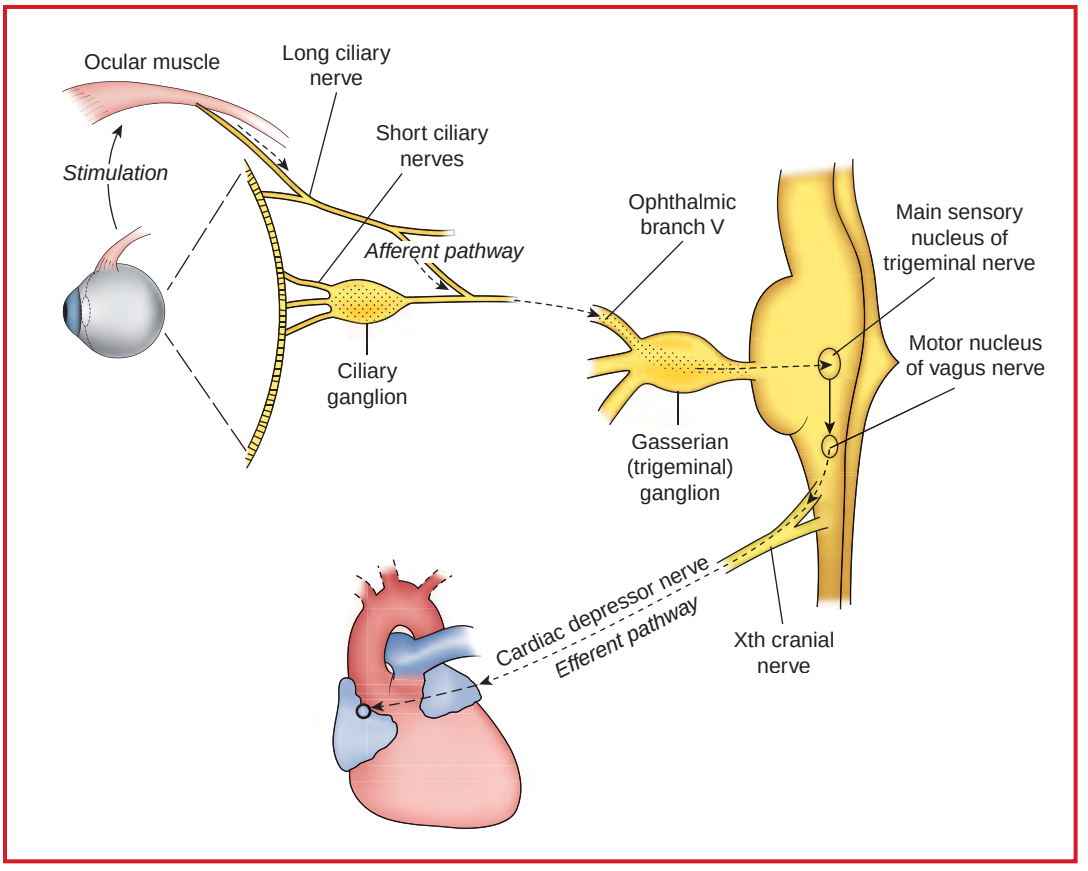


Figure 12.2-2. Anatomy and physiology of the oculocardiac reflex.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Induction	Following standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1), the surgeon may perform an exam under anesthesia. Conversion to GETA may then be required. The anesthesiologist may give vagolytic agent (atropine or glycopyrrolate 0.01–1.02 mg/kg) to attenuate the OCR. Sevoflurane maintenance diminishes the OCR compared to propofol and remifentanil. Forced duction test (FDT) may be preformed prior to the administration of NMB. Rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) may be used to facilitate endotracheal intubation. An oral RAE tube or flexible LMA secured to the mandible will keep the airway away from the surgical field.
Maintenance	May use either inhalational anesthetic or TIVA. Many avoid N_2O, as this is highly emetogenic surgery. N_2O should be avoided if sulfur hexafluoride or carbon octoflourine will be used or has been used in the past 6 wk. Propofol infusion (150–200 mcg/kg/min) may require NMB or augmentation with remifentanil to maintain a motionless patient (be aware remifentanil may ↑ OCR). Multimodal analgesia may decrease opioid use and risk of PONV. Acetaminophen (30–40 mg/kg PR or 10 mg/kg iv) and short-acting opioid (fentanyl 1–2 mcg/kg iv) should be used. Combination prophylactic therapy for PONV prevention is most effective. Ondansetron (0.1 mg/kg up to 4 mg) plus dexamethasone (0.15 mg/kg up to 5 mg) is preferred. "Super" hydration with 30 mL/kg of crystalloid has also been shown to decrease PONV. Children exhibiting the OCR are more likely to have PONV.
Emergence	The surgeon may request "deep extubation." In this case, the anesthetic (sevoflurane or TIVA) is increased until the patient has no response to airway manipulation such as

Emergence (cont'd)	suctioning but maintains steady spontaneous ventilation. The ETT or LMA is removed and an oral airway may be placed. The patient is allowed to awaken with no further stimulation, monitoring carefully for signs of laryngospasm.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Peripheral iv: 20–22 g	Crystalloid to replace calculated deficit plus maintenance during case. Consider augmented hydration with 30 mL/kg crystalloid to reduce PONV if pulmonary edema (i.e., extreme prematurity) is not a risk.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Temperature, especially for premature infants. TOF.	
Positioning	Supine or supine with shoulder roll. Head of bed usually rotated 180° away.	
Complications	Oculocardiac reflex (OCR) (see Fig. 12.2-2)	Traction on the extraocular muscles or the levator, or external pressure to the globe, initiates an afferent trigeminal nerve signal evoking parasympathetic output from the vagus nerve. This may cause bradyarrhythmias, AV block, ventricular ectopy or even asystole. May be attenuated by pretreatment with anticholinergics (see above). Tends to extinguish with repeated manipulation. Treat by removing pressure to globe or tension on the extraocular muscle and administer atropine or glycopyrrolate. Rarely may require epinephrine 1–10 mcg/kg. The oculorespiratory reflex (ORR) is a less well-understood response to trigeminal stimulus that results in cessation of spontaneous ventilation and should be accounted for if spontaneous ventilation via LMA is the preferred technique.
	Systemic effect of topical ophthalmic agents	See Table 12.2-1.
	Accidental extubation	May result from surgical repositioning or removal of drapes. The ETT/LMA should be firmly secured, and the anesthesiologist should be attentive to changes in positioning (e.g., moving from one eye to the other) and removal of drapes.
	Coughing or bucking on emergence	Consider lidocaine 1 mg/kg iv 3 min prior to extubation. Dexmedetomidine (0.5–1 mcg/kg iv over 10 min) or clonidine (1–2 mcg/kg iv) decrease emergence delirium and may increase parental satisfaction. Dexmedetomidine plus ketamine (1–3 mg/kg/h) decreased emergence delirium, the OCR, pain, and postop analgesia requirement in one study. The sub-Tenon block (preformed by surgeon) may also decrease emergence delirium.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Emergence delirium	Dexmedetomidine (0.5–1 mcg/kg iv over 10 min) or clonidine (1–2 mcg/kg iv) decrease emergence delirium and may increase parental satisfaction. Dexmedetomidine plus ketamine (1–3 mg/kg/h) decreased emergence delirium, the OCR, pain, and postop analgesia requirement in one study. The sub-Tenon block (performed by surgeon) also may decrease emergence delirium.
	Postop apnea	Many patients undergoing vitreoretinal surgery are ex-premature neonates or infants. Postanesthetic apnea may necessitate intensive care monitoring or even postoperative ventilation. Caffeine 10 mg/kg iv may protect against postop apnea.
Pain management	Acetaminophen	Continue acetaminophen 10 mg/kg po q 4 h. May require additional opioids in PACU. Intraop NSAIDS are typically avoided due to concern of local bleeding, but may be discussed with surgeon for postop analgesia.

Table 12.2–1. Ophthalmic Medications With Systemic Effects

Medication	Type	Effect
Cyclopentolate	Cycloplegic	GI disturbance, atropine-like toxicity (hyperthermia, tachycardia, delirium)
Phenylephrine	Mydriatic	Hypertension, reflex bradycardia or tachycardia, pulmonary edema, cardiac arrest, subarachnoid hemorrhage
Acetylcholine	Miotic	Bradycardia, hypotension, bronchospasm
Pilocarpine	Miotic agent, parasympathetic, used for glaucoma	GI disturbance, diaphoresis
Timolol, levobunolol	Nonselective beta-agonists	Bronchospasm, bradycardia, hypotension, apnea in neonates

(Adapted from Justice LT, Valley RD, Bailey AG, Hauser MW: Anesthesia for ophthalmic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama Z, eds. Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011.)

Suggested Readings

1. Bhardwaj N, Yaddanapudi S, Singh S, Pandav SS: Insertion of laryngeal mask airway does not increase the intraocular pressure in children with glaucoma. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2011; 10:1036–40.
2. Chhabra A, Sinha R, Subramaniam R, et al: Comparison of sub-Tenon's block with IV fentanyl for pediatric vitreoretinal surgery. *Br J Anesth* 2009; 103:739–43.
3. Cunningham AJ, Barry P: Intraocular pressure-physiology and implications for anesthetic management. *Can Anesth Soc J* 1986; 33:195–208.
4. Haigh PM, Chiswick ML, O'Donoghue EP: Retinopathy of prematurity: systemic complications associated with different anesthetic techniques at treatment. *Br J Ophthalmol* 1997; 81:283–7.
5. Hartnett ME, Penn JS: Mechanisms and management of retinopathy of prematurity. *NEJM* 2012; 367:2515–26.
6. Henderson-Smart DJ, Steer PA: Prophylactic caffeine to prevent postoperative apnea following general anesthesia in preterm infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2001; 4:CD000048.
7. Justice LT, Valley RD, Bailey AG, Hauser MW: Anesthesia for ophthalmic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama Z, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011.
8. Lili X, Jianjun S, Haiyun Z: The application of dexmedetomidine in children undergoing vitreoretinal surgery. *J Anesth* 2012; 26:556–61.
9. McGwin G, Xie A, Owsley C: Rate of eye injury in the United States. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2005; 123:970–6.
10. Seaberg RR, Freeman WR, Goldbaum MH, et al: Permanent postoperative vision loss associated with expansion of intraocular gas in the presence of a nitrous oxide-containing anesthetic. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 91:1309–10.

CHAPTER

12.3 Pediatric Otolaryngology

SURGEONS

Anna H. Messner, MD
Kevin Huoh, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Samuel A. Mireles, MD
Ellen Wang, MD
Gregory B. Hammer, MD

MYRINGOTOMY AND TYMPANOSTOMY TUBE PLACEMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Tympanostomy (PE or pressure equalizing) tubes are placed in the patient with chronic serous otitis media (fluid in the middle ear for > 3 mo) or recurrent acute otitis media (6 or more episodes of otitis media over the prior yr). Occasionally, PE tubes are placed in a child with meningitis of otitic origin or with acute otitis media that is unresponsive to antibiotics. The patient is supine and the OR table in the 0° position. The microscope is positioned over the bed and the head turned to expose the ear. An ear speculum is inserted into the ear canal, cerumen is removed, and an incision is made in the tympanic membrane. Fluid is sometimes suctioned from the middle ear; then, a tympanostomy tube is inserted into the ear, straddling the tympanic membrane. Antibiotic ear drops frequently are inserted into the external auditory canal. Sometimes lidocaine and/or oxymetazoline drops are also inserted into the ear canal. The surgeon moves to the other side of the table, the microscope is repositioned, the head is turned, and the procedure is repeated on the other ear.

Usual preop diagnosis: Chronic serous otitis media (CSOM); recurrent acute otitis media (RAOM)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine; head to anesthesia
Incision	Tympanic membrane
Special instrumentation	Operating microscope
Antibiotics	No parenteral antibiotics (except for SBE prophylaxis); topical antibiotic ear drops
Surgical time	5–10 min. Patients with stenotic ear canals (e.g., Down syndrome) can take longer.
EBL	None
Postop care	PACU → home
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Bleeding from ear Purulent drainage from ear (otorrhea)
Pain score	1–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	3 mo+ (most common, 1–3 yr)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Very common
Etiology	Chronic middle ear infections
Associated conditions	Cleft palate

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The majority of children presenting for PE tubes are < 3 yr and generally in good health. Many of these children, however, have recurrent URI, which contributes to edema of the eustachian tubes, predisposing to episodes of acute otitis media. Intervals between URI may be brief, and scheduling surgery during these interludes is often impractical.

Children with mild URI generally can be anesthetized safely for PE tube placement because tracheal intubation is generally not performed. Surgery should be delayed for patients with acute, febrile illnesses and in those with Sx referable to the lower airways (e.g., productive cough, wheezing). Surgery need not be delayed if fever is 2° acute otitis media.

Respiratory	Surgery in patients with URI Sx referable to the extrathoracic airway alone is generally not delayed. These Sx include nasal congestion and/or discharge and mild conjunctivitis. Fever accompanied by productive cough and wheezing are Sx of lower respiratory tract involvement and should prompt rescheduling of the procedure 2–3 wk after these Sx have abated. In borderline cases (e.g., those with rales auscultated on chest exam but no other lower tract Sx), O_2 sat may be measured by pulse oximetry. Procedures in patients with $SpO_2 < 95\%$ should be deferred.
Laboratory	None
Premedication	Some practitioners advocate withholding premedication, as the duration of action of the premed may outlast the surgery. In general, however, we administer oral midazolam to patients > 9 mo (see p. D-1) and have not found a significant related delay in discharge from PACU. Parental presence in the OR may obviate the need for premedication in selected cases.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA via face mask

Induction	A standard inhalation induction with sevoflurane and $O_2 \pm N_2O$ is performed with routine monitoring. An oral airway commonly is inserted, as soft tissue obstruction may occur when the head is turned fully to the side during surgery. CPAP 5–8 cmH_2O also may be useful in maintaining airway patency. Following induction, a one-time dose of rectal acetaminophen (30–40 mg/kg) may be given for postop analgesia.	
Maintenance	Marked agitation ("emergence delirium") has been noted following emergence from sevoflurane and other inhaled agents. A variety of strategies have been used to minimize this phenomenon, including nasal or im fentanyl (1–2 mcg/kg) or im morphine (0.1 mg/kg). Because an IV catheter is not placed routinely, IV drugs are not usually given.	
Emergence	For bilateral procedures, the potent inhaled anesthetic is D/C'd before or during the 2nd myringotomy to facilitate prompt emergence. N_2O is continued until the completion of surgery. As the patient is awakening, gentle oropharyngeal suctioning can be performed.	
Blood and fluid requirements	None	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Laryngospasm	Secretions → laryngospasm 2° irritation of the vocal cords, especially in children with URI. Rx: 100% O_2 and CPAP or manual ventilation with PEEP ≤ 20–25 cmH_2O. Propofol 1–2 mg/kg iv may be given if iv is present to help break laryngospasm and to facilitate ventilation. If no improvement, succinylcholine (2–4 mg/kg im, or 0.5–1 mg/kg iv if iv is present) may be needed if a significant decrease in SpO_2 occurs and ventilation is not possible. Atropine (0.01 mg/kg iv or im, minimum 0.1 mg) may be given to mitigate bradycardia associated with hypoxia as well as a potential side effect of succinylcholine. Oropharyngeal suctioning and manual ventilation usually result in resolution of the laryngospasm. Rarely, tracheal intubation may be indicated for recurrent laryngospasm.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Laryngospasm	Laryngospasm may occur and should be treated as described above.
Pain management	Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg po/iv q 6 h, or 30–40 mg/kg pr loading dose, followed by 20 mg/kg q 6 h Ibuprofen 10 mg/kg po Fentanyl 1 mcg/kg iv, or hydromorphone 2 mcg/kg iv	Consider previously administered po and/or pr dosing.

Suggested Readings

1. Haupert MS, Pascual C, Mohan A et al: Parental satisfaction with anesthesia without intravenous access for myringotomy. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2004; 130(9):1025–8.
2. Hippard HK, Govindan K, Friedman EM et al: Postoperative analgesic and behavioral effects of intranasal fentanyl, intravenous morphine, and intramuscular morphine in pediatric patients undergoing bilateral myringotomy and placement of ventilating tubes. *Anesthe Analg* 2012; 115(2):356–363.
3. Hoffmann KK, Thompson GK, Burke BL, et al: Anesthetic complications of tympanostomy tube placement in children. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2002; 128(9):1040–3.
4. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 786–820.
5. Lee JA, Jeon YA, Noh HI, et al: The effect of ketamine with remifentanil for improving the quality of anesthesia and recovery in pediatric patients undergoing middle-ear-ventilation tube insertion. *J Int Med Res* 2011; 39(6):2239–46.
6. Lin YC, Tassone RF, Jahng S, et al: Acupuncture management of pain and emergence agitation in children after bilateral myringotomy and tympanostomy tube insertion. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2009; 19(11):1096–101.
7. Olutoye OA, Watcha ME: Eyes, ears, nose and throat surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 777–809.
8. Pappas AL, Fluder EM, Creech S et al: Postoperative analgesia in children undergoing myringotomy and placement equalization tubes in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2003; 96(6):1621–4.
9. Vornov P, Tobin MK, Bilings K, Cote CJ, Iyer A, Suresh S: Postoperative pain relief in infants undergoing myringotomy and tube placement: comparison of a novel regional anesthetic block to intranasal fentanyl-a complete analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008; 8(12):1196–201.

TONSILLECTOMY AND ADENOIDECTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The dissection is carried out with the patient supine, shoulders slightly elevated by a shoulder roll (typically, a rolled towel). A mouth gag is inserted, and a small suction catheter is passed through the nose and brought out the mouth to elevate the soft palate and expose the nasopharynx. The adenoids are viewed with a mirror and/or palpated. A curette, adenotome, microdebrider, or suction electrocautery is used to remove the adenoids; then, typically, the nasopharynx is packed. There are two major types of tonsillectomy: total tonsillectomy and subtotal (partial) tonsillectomy. The traditional total tonsillectomy is performed by grasping the tonsil with Allis forceps and pulling it medially. A vertical incision is made in the anterior tonsillar pillar with a sickle knife, scissors, or electrocautery instruments; then, the tonsil is dissected from the surrounding tissue and removed. A snare may be used to amputate the inferior pole of the tonsil before removal. Hemostasis is obtained through use of packs and suction electrocautery. After hemostasis has been obtained in the tonsillar fossae, the pack is removed from the nasopharynx, and hemostasis is achieved in the nasopharynx using suction electrocautery. Tonsils can also be completely removed using radiofrequency (Coblation), bipolar scissors, bipolar forceps, or laser. The same approach and setup is used for a subtotal tonsillectomy, which can be performed using radiofrequency or a microdebrider. The literature on incisional local anesthetic injection is mixed with some studies reporting benefit and some showing no benefit. Therefore, injection is not generally recommended.

Usual preop diagnosis: Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA); chronic tonsillitis and/or adenoiditis; tonsillar and adenoid hypertrophy; asymmetric enlargement of tonsils (to r/o cancer)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, shoulder roll, head extended; table turned 90°; surgeon at head of table
Incision	Intraoral mucosal
Special instrumentation	Mouth gag (McIvor, Crowe-Davis, Dingman)
Unique considerations	Observe for compression of ETT or accidental extubation when mouth gag is manipulated. Patients with Down syndrome may need to be evaluated preop for possible atlantoaxial subluxation, as the neck is typically extended. A single dose of dexamethasone (0.5 mg/kg) is recommended for children undergoing tonsillectomy.
Antibiotics	Not used routinely.
Surgical time	30 min
EBL	10–200 mL. Monitor closely.
Postop care	Lateral position; suction in midline only. Most commonly, PACU → home. Overnight stay, if < 2 yr, severe OSA, or other comorbidities.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Bleeding: 2–3% Aspiration: Rare Tooth damage: Rare
Pain score	Adenoidectomy, 3–5; tonsillectomy, 6–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1 yr+ (most common, 2–8 yr)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	300,000 cases/yr in the United States
Etiology	OSA; chronic infection; peritonsillar abscess; snoring. (R/O lymphoma, carcinoma, lymphoproliferative disease.)
Associated conditions	Down syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Although most children presenting for tonsillectomy and/or adenoidectomy are healthy, a variety of medical problems may coexist. Severe adenoidal hyperplasia may cause nasopharyngeal obstruction, obligate mouth breathing, failure to thrive 2° poor feeding, and disturbances of speech and sleep. Chronic nasal obstruction may result in narrowing of the upper airway and dental and facial changes (so-called adenoidal facies). Tonsillar hyperplasia may cause airway obstruction, OSA, CO_2 retention, cor pulmonale, and failure to thrive. Most of these changes are reversible with removal of the adenoids and tonsils. Children presenting for adenoidectomy/tonsillectomy also frequently have URI (see Anesthetic Considerations for Myringotomy and Tympanostomy Tube Placement p. 1210).

Respiratory	See discussion under Anesthetic Considerations for Myringotomy and Tympanostomy Tube Placement (see p. 1210).
Dental	Examination of the airway should include inspection of the teeth. Parents should be advised that loose teeth may be dislodged during placement of the mouth gag or laryngoscopy.

Cardiovascular	In children with severe OSA, CXR and EKG should be done to evaluate the presence of cor pulmonale. If significant RVH and/or cardiomegaly are present, consider ECHO and consultation by pediatric cardiologist.
Hematologic	A careful Hx is taken for Sx of easy bruising or bleeding. If present, a CBC with Plt count, as well as PT, INR, PTT, and bleeding time are performed. In patients with a negative Hx, we order no preop lab tests.
Premedication	Children with severe OSA (airway obstruction) who are very anxious may receive a reduced dose of oral midazolam (see p. D-1) in a well-monitored environment (e.g., with an experienced RN or member of the anesthesia team present). SpO_2 should be monitored following administration of premedication.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA with ETT or LMA

Induction	Standard inhalation induction (see p. D-1) is common, but IV induction with propofol can be faster and safer, especially in patients with severe OSA; airway obstruction is common in these patients and usually is alleviated with placement of an oral airway and administration of CPAP: 10–20 cmH_2O. An IV catheter should be placed as soon as possible. Propofol (2 mg/kg) is usually given to facilitate intubation. If needed rocuronium (0.5 mg/kg) may be used. Glycopyrrolate (4–6 mcg/kg) may be used if needed to reduce secretions. If intubation is planned, an oral ETT (standard or RAE) is used and taped securely to the midline position to facilitate placement of the mouth gag. A cuffed ETT is commonly used because, in combination with a throat pack, it minimizes the risk of entry of blood and oral secretions into the trachea during surgery. Care should be exercised that the inferior part of the endotracheal tube is long enough for the cuff to pass beyond the vocal cords. A short tube may easily dislodge with changes in head position, or the cuff may cause vocal cord trauma. Bilateral breath sounds and chest excursion should be confirmed after placement of the mouth gag, which may cause kinking and obstruction of the ETT. An LMA (flexible or reinforced LMA) can be used as an alternative to the ETT in healthy, nonobese patients without OSA, with advantages of reduced airway irritation and total procedure time. Problems with the LMA include inadequate surgical exposure and leaking or kinking resulting in conversion to an ETT.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-3). An intermediate-acting NMR (e.g., rocuronium 0.6–1.0 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg) may be given to facilitate tracheal intubation if needed. Opioids (e.g., fentanyl 2–3 mcg/kg, hydromorphone 3 mcg/kg or morphine 0.02–0.05 mg/kg) are given for postop analgesia. Acetaminophen (30–40 mg/kg) may be given PR after induction (↓ dose if PO acetaminophen given with premedication). IV acetaminophen (10 mg/kg) may also be used. Dexmedetomidine (1 mcg/kg bolus over 10 min, followed by 0.4–0.7 mcg/kg/h infusion) can be used as an adjunct to reduce opioid requirements and emergence agitation. The use of propofol, ± remifentanil, instead of anesthetic vapor, may ↓ the incidence of PONV, which is common following tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy. Ondansetron (0.1 mg/kg, up to 1 mg) and dexamethasone (0.5 mg/kg) are given to reduce airway edema and PONV. Although controversial because of potential postoperative hemorrhage, perioperative use of NSAIDs can also be given to reduce PONV. Administration of 30 mL/kg of IV fluids (lactate Ringer or normal saline) has been associated with reduced PONV.
Emergence	Blood and secretions should be suctioned from the oropharynx and stomach following the completion of surgery. The patient should be fully awake before tracheal extubation, which may be performed supine or in the lateral position with the head down. Verify removal of throat packs. Alternatively, extubating under deep anesthesia decreases coughing, but requires vigilance to avoid airway obstruction and aspiration at emergence and during transport to PACU.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22 or 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 5–10 mL/h	Blood loss is typically ~4 mL/kg and may accumulate in the stomach → N/V (unless prevented by antiemetics).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Airway obstruction ETT dislodgement/kinking	 Usually caused by insertion/manipulation of mouth gag.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway obstruction	Retention of throat pack → airway obstruction. Remove with Magill forceps. Recurrent airway obstruction may require application of positive pressure via face mask (CPAP vs manual ventilation with PEEP) ± placement of an oral airway. Severe postop airway obstruction is more common in patients < 2 yr. In these patients, admission to PICU may be necessary. CPAP via face mask or nasal mask may be helpful. On rare occasions, tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation are required until swelling of the airway resolves.
	Hemorrhage	Bleeding may occur in the immediate postop period or several days later. Patients present with anemia and hypovolemia, as well as airway compromise and a full stomach 2° swallowed blood. IV fluids, including blood, should be given before induction. Rapid-sequence intubation (see p. B-5) should be performed with cricoid pressure in preparation for surgical treatment.
Pain management	Fentanyl 1 mcg/kg iv Hydromophone 2 mcg/kg iv or Morphine 0.025–0.05 mg/kg iv	May be given incrementally in PACU. Subsequently, acetaminophen (10 mg/kg po) alternating with ibuprofen (10 mg/kg po) may be used. ***NB:** Codeine should NOT be used, as some patients may be ultrarapid metabolizers (due to cytochrome P_{4SO}2D6 variant), and this may lead to respiratory depression and death.

Suggested Readings

1. Allford M, Guruswamy V: A national survey of the anesthetic management of tonsillectomy surgery in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2009; 19 (2):145–152.
2. Baugh RF, Archer SM, Mitchell RB, et al: American Academy of Otolaryngology. Head and Neck Foundation. Clinical Practice Guideline: Tonsillectomy in children. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2011; 144 (1 Suppl):S1–30.
3. Ciszkowski C, Madadi P, Philips MS et al: Codeine, ultrarapid metabolism genotype and post-operative death. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 361(8):827–8.
4. Francis A, Eltaki K, Bash T, et al: The safety of preoperative sedation in children with sleep-disordered breathing. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol* 2006; 70(9):1517–21.
5. Kelly LE, Rieder M, Van Dan Anker J, et al: More codeine fatalities after tonsillectomy in North American Children. *Pediatrics* 2012; 129(5):e1343–7.
6. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 786–820.
7. Olutoye OA, Watcha ME: Eyes, ears, nose and throat surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 777–809.

8. Park AH, Pappas AL, Fluder E, et al: Effect of perioperative administration of ropivacaine with epinephrine on postoperative pediatric adenotonsillectomy recovery. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2004; 130(4):459–64.
9. Patel A, Davidson M, Tran MC, et al: Dexmedetomidine infusion for analgesia and prevention of emergence agitation in children with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome undergoing tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy. *Anesth Analg* 2010; 111(4):1004–1010.
10. Raeder J: Ambulatory anesthesia aspects for tonsillectomy and abrasion in children. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(6): 620–626.
11. Sierpina DI, Chaudhary H. Walner DL, et al: Laryngeal mask airway versus endotracheal tube in pediatric adenotonsillectomy. *Laryngoscope* 2012; 122(2):429–35.
12. Smith SL, Pereira KD: Tonsillectomy in children: indications, diagnosis and complications. *ORL J Otorhinolaryngol Relat Spec.* 2007; 69(6):336–9.
13. Voelker R: Children's deaths linked with postsurgical codeine. *JAMA* 2012; 208(10):963.

BRONCHOSCOPY/ESOPHAGOSCOPY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Flexible bronchoscopy** is performed when the dynamics of the larynx and trachea need to be visualized. The child is supine on the OR table, which is turned 90–180°. With the child sedated or under GA, but breathing spontaneously, the bronchoscope is passed through the nose into the pharynx by way of an adapter attached to a standard anesthesia mask. Alternatively, the bronchoscope can be passed through an LMA if visualization of the pharynx is not required. The larynx is viewed with the patient breathing spontaneously so that vocal cord movement can be observed; then the anesthesia is deepened and the bronchoscope passed into the trachea. The trachea and bronchi are viewed, and when indicated, bronchoalveolar lavage or bronchial biopsy can be performed.

Rigid bronchoscopy is preferred when direct ventilation of the trachea is required and/or when foreign bodies (FBs) need to be removed. It also can be used for Dx of airway lesions. Direct laryngoscopy is performed, and topical anesthetic is applied to the larynx and trachea. The rigid bronchoscope is passed through the vocal cords into the trachea. The anesthesia tubing is connected to the bronchoscope, and the patient is ventilated through the scope. If a FB is present, the telescope within the bronchoscope will be removed and optical forceps inserted through the bronchoscope to remove the FB. During the time when the telescope is being changed, a leak will be present in the ventilation system.

Usual preop diagnosis: Airway obstruction; stridor; bronchial FB; pneumonia (requiring bronchoalveolar lavage); tracheal or bronchial lesion

Flexible or rigid esophagoscopy can be performed for diagnostic or therapeutic (removal of FB) purposes. Flexible esophagoscopy can be performed under sedation; however, GETA is preferred for rigid esophagoscopy. The esophagoscope is inserted through the mouth into the esophagus, and the entire length of the esophagus is viewed. If a FB is to be removed with the rigid esophagoscope, the telescope and forceps are passed through the lumen of the esophagoscope. If a FB (especially foodstuff) is to be removed with the flexible esophagoscope, the scope may need to be passed several times.

Esophageal dilation may be performed in one of several ways. Balloon dilation can be performed with the flexible esophagoscope. Alternatively, a guide wire can be passed through the esophagoscope; then Savary/Gilliard dilators, in successively larger sizes, are passed over the wire. Another option is to remove the esophagoscope after the stenosis has been visualized; then, Maloney or Hurst dilators are passed blindly through the mouth and into the esophagus. Care must be taken to avoid accidental extubation of the patient while the dilators are being inserted and removed.

Usual preop diagnosis: GERD; esophageal FB; esophageal stricture

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Bronchoscopy	Esophagoscopy
Position	Patient supine; table turned 90°	⇐
Unique considerations	Ventilate through rigid bronchoscope. Ventilate via mask with adapter for flexible bronchoscope or via LMA. Dexamethasone (0.5 mg/kg) may be indicated, if glottic or subglottic edema is present.	Observe for accidental extubation. ETT taped to left side of mouth.
Antibiotics	None	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Bronchoscopy	Esophagoscopy
Surgical time	10 min–1.5 h	15 min–1 h
EBL	None	< 10 mL
Postop care	Watch for airway compromise; PACU.	PACU
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Laryngospasm Laryngeal edema Dental trauma	Esophageal perforation Bleeding ⇐
Pain score	3–4	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn+
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Associated conditions	Bronchoscopy requiring bronchial alveolar lavage (BAL): immunocompromised patient Esophageal stricture: tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF) Esophageal FB: esophageal stricture

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Laryngoscopy, Supraglottoplasty, Excision of Laryngeal Lesions, p. 1218.

LARYNGOSCOPY, SUPRAGLOTTOPLASTY, EXCISION OF LARYNGEAL LESIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Flexible laryngoscopy** typically is performed in the clinic setting, but may be performed in the OR in an unstable or uncooperative child. In addition, flexible laryngoscopy may be performed as a diagnostic procedure in the OR to identify anatomical obstruction in OSA patients, termed a sleep endoscopy. For this proceure, the ideal plane at anesthesia simulates a physiologic sleep state. The patient should be breathing spontaneously and will be in a sitting (with support) or supine position. Topical anesthesia and vasoconstrictors are applied to the nose; then the scope is passed through the nose into the pharynx, and the larynx is viewed. Vocal cord function is best assessed with the child only mildly sedated.

Diagnostic direct laryngoscopy is performed with the child in a supine position, table turned 90°, with a small shoulder roll in place. The laryngoscope is introduced, and with a lifting motion, a thorough exam of the oropharynx, hypopharynx, and larynx is performed. If more than a brief exam is to take place, the vocal cords are anesthetized with topical lidocaine to help prevent laryngospasm. A telescope (often connected via camera to a video monitor) or rigid ventilating bronchoscope may be passed through the vocal cords to observe the trachea and major bronchi.

Microlaryngoscopy with removal/ablation of laryngeal lesions—most commonly papillomas, nodules, or polyps—is accomplished by suspending the laryngoscope from the Mayo stand or OR table, using a suspension apparatus. The patient continues to breathe spontaneously or is paralyzed and jet-ventilated. Papillomas may be removed with

a cup forceps, microdebrider, or laser. When the laser is used, the patient's eyes and face are covered with a damp cloth. OR personnel must wear protective glasses. A microscope with the laser attached is positioned so that the laser beam passes through the laryngoscope onto the vocal folds. Alternatively, the laser may be held by the surgeon and passed through an optical fiber.

Young infants with severe laryngomalacia may undergo a **supraglottoplasty** for relief of airway obstruction. The laryngoscope is suspended, and the laser or microlaryngeal instruments are used to remove redundant aryepiglottic fold tissue. Children with subglottic or tracheal stenosis may undergo microdirect laryngoscopy with dilation, either by balloon or rigid dilator.

Usual preop diagnosis: Diagnostic laryngoscopy: hoarseness; airway obstruction; stridor; subglottic stenosis. Operative laryngoscopy: laryngeal papillomas; laryngeal nodules; laryngeal web; laryngeal polyps; subglottic hemangioma or cysts; severe laryngomalacia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table turned 90°; shoulder roll
Special instrumentation	± Jet ventilation; laryngoscope suspension apparatus; video equipment; operating microscope
Unique considerations	Potential laser precautions; patient usually not intubated; dexamethasone 0.5–1.0 mg/kg to prevent laryngeal edema; laryngeal topical lidocaine 0.4 mg/kg.
Antibiotics	None
Surgical time	15–90 min
EBL	< 5 mL
Postop care	Observe for airway obstruction in PACU.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Laryngospasm Laryngeal edema Dental trauma
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn +
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Occasional
Etiology	Papillomas: Most commonly, viral infection contracted from mother during vaginal delivery Nodules, polyps: Vocal abuse, gastropharyngeal reflux Subglottic hemangioma: Unknown Subglottic cyst: Prior intubation Laryngeal cysts, webs: Congenital malformation Laryngomalacia: Unknown
Associated conditions	Chronic hoarseness, stridor; GERD; FTT

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: bronchoscopy; esophagoscopy; laryngoscopy; supraglottoplasty; excision of laryngeal lesions)

PREOPERATIVE

Direct laryngoscopy (DL) is performed most commonly for patients with stridor. In infants, stridor is most often 2° laryngomalacia, with vocal cord paralysis and obstructive airway lesions being less common. Patients with severe laryngomalacia and those with posttransplant lymphoproliferative disease involving the epiglottis may undergo supraglottoplasty. Older children may present with stridor 2° laryngeal masses or papillomatosis, for which laser excision may be performed. A careful H&P is contributory to Dx, after which flexible laryngoscopy in the otolaryngology clinic can be confirmatory.

Laryngoscopy and **rigid bronchoscopy** also are performed for the removal of airway foreign bodies (FBs). A Hx of choking and/or coughing while eating is usually elicited. Children may present with agitation, wheezing, and cyanosis. This condition constitutes a true surgical emergency, and the patient should be taken to the OR as soon as possible.

Airway/ respiratory	Stridor usually is worsened with crying or agitation and often is less severe during sleep.
Dental	Any loose teeth may be dislodged.
Laboratory	No routine tests indicated. In stable patients with suspected FB aspiration, CXR may be obtained.
Premedication	Because stridor often is decreased during quiet breathing and sleep, premedication with oral midazolam is usually beneficial in patients > 9 mo. Children with FB aspiration generally should not be given PO medications. They may benefit from small doses of iv midazolam. EMLA or ELA-max® cream may be applied 45 or 20 min (respectively) in advance to iv sites for topical anesthesia.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA. Primary and backup plans for airway management during the procedure should be discussed in detail with the otolaryngologist surgeon in advance of anesthetic induction.

Induction	Mask induction is followed by placement of an iv catheter, if not already in place. Spontaneous breathing is preferred in cases where vocal cord function and airway collapse must be evaluated and can be acheived with sevoflurane in 100% O_2. Alternatively, propofol (2–3 mg/kg) ± ketamine (1–2 mg/kg) may be used for induction followed by a continuous infusion (see below). Glycopyrrolate (4–6 mcg/kg) can be given to reduce oral secretions.
Maintenance	Before removal of the face mask for DL, a deep level of anesthesia is achieved. During DL, blow-by O_2 is administered. Topical airway anesthesia (lidocane) is typically applied by an ENT surgeon to the vocal cords and larynx, and IV dexamethasone is often requested to prevent airway edema postoperatively. For patients in whom vocal cord function must be assessed a gradual reduction of inhalational anesthesia or an iv anesthetic infusion should → ↑ vocal cord excursion. Supraglottoplasty and laser excision of laryngeal lesions may be performed with intermittent mask anesthesia. Propofol ± remifentanil or ketamine may be used, thereby avoiding contamination of the OR with inhaled anesthetics while providing continuous anesthesia. In general, the trachea is not intubated, as even a small ETT will interfere with the surgical procedure. However, a low flow of oxygen through a small ETT can be placed near the glottic opening. For certain procedures (flexible bronchoscopy/laryngoscopy, bronchoaleolar lavage), a LMA car can be used for airway management. For patients who are paralyzed or hypoventilating, jet ventilation may be maintained using a Sanders jet ventilator (see Fig. 3-3, p. 187). Intermittent jets of 100% O_2 are delivered with a high-pressure (40–55 psi) gas source through a tube incorporated into the laryngoscope blade. As the jet is pointed toward the glottic opening, gas is entrained by the Venturi effect. Manual jet ventilation is performed while chest excursion is observed to ensure that excessive inflating pressures and volumes are avoided. During jet ventilation, anesthesia is maintained with iv agents. Propofol 100–200 mcg/kg/min, accompanied by remifentanil 0.5–1 mcg/kg/min. Alternatively, dexmedetomidine 0.5–1 mcg/kg bolus followed by 0.4–0.7 mcg/kg/h iv infusion may be used. Small increments of ketamine 0.1–0.25 mg/kg iv may be bolused if additional sedation is needed.

Maintenance (cont'd)	**NB:** Fire hazard during laser surgery is minimal in the absence of a combustible material (e.g., plastic) in the field. An FiO_2 of 1.0 may, therefore, be used safely, unless a plastic ETT is in place. For selected laser procedures involving the tissues around the glottis, a metal or metal-wrapped ETT may be used. When a plastic ETT is in place, the lowest possible FiO_2 is used (O_2/air mixture) to maintain an acceptable SpO_2. During rigid bronchoscopy, ventilation is performed through a side port of the bronchoscope. Assisted, spontaneous ventilation under deep inhalational anesthesia may be maintained. Alternatively, iv anesthesia with or without muscle relaxation may be preferred, as described earlier. For FB cases, maintenance of spontaneous ventilation generally is preferred to avoid distal displacement of the FB. Gentle, assisted ventilation may be required, however, to ensure adequate oxygenation and ventilation.	
Emergence	A conventional ETT sometimes is placed after removal of the laryngoscope or bronchoscope, as laryngospasm following these procedures is common. Tracheal extubation is performed with the patient fully awake and following complete reversal of neuromuscular blockade, if applicable. Postoperatively, nebulized recemic epinepheine and corticosteroids may be used to treat stridor and airway edema, and ICU admission should be considered in severe cases.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 3–5 mL/kg/h	Blood loss is minimal.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	Table rotated 90° ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Shoulder roll/neck extension for surgery Eyes covered with wet sponges or goggles when laser in use.
Complications	Hypoventilation Hypoxemia Airway injury Pneumothorax Laryngospasm Eye injury Airway fire	Adjust Sanders jet; mask ventilation prn. 2° jet ventilation, DL/bronchoscope Rx: 100% O_2, CPAP vs manual ventilation/PEEP Remove ETT; irrigate with NS; resume ventilation with 100% O_2 when fire extinguished.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Dental trauma Bleeding Eye trauma Pneumothorax	
Pain management	Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg po/iv q 6 h or 30–40 mg/kg pr loading dose, followed by 20 mg/kg q 6 h—check previous acetaminophen usage in OR Fentanyl 1 mcg/kg iv q 10 min prn Hydromorphone 2 mcg/kg iv q 10–20 min prn Ibuprofen 10 mg/kg po q 6	
Tests	CXR	If respiratory distress or ↓ SpO_2 present.

Suggested Readings

1. Best C: Paediatric airway anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2012; 25(1):38–41.
2. Dilos BM: Anesthesia for pediatric airway endoscopy and upper gastrointestinal endoscopy. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2009; 47(3):55–62.

3. Durden F, Sobol SE: Balloon laryngoplasty as a primary treatment for subglottic stenosis. *Arch Otolaryngol Head and Neck Surg* 2003; 133(8):772–5.
4. Farrell PT: Rigid bronchoscopy for foreign body removal: anaesthesia and ventilation. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2004; 14(1):84–9.
5. Jaggar SI, Haxby E: Sedation, anaesthesia and monitoring for bronchoscopy. *Paediatr Respir Rev* 2002; 3(4):321–7.
6. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 786–820.
7. Mandel JE: Laryngeal mask airways in ear, nose, and throat procedures. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 28(3):469–83.
8. Naguib ML, Streetman DS, Clifton S, et al: Use of laryngeal mask airway in flexible bronchoscopy in infants and children. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2005; 39(1):56–63.
9. Olutoye OA, Watcha ME: Eyes, ears, nose and throat surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 777–809.
10. Seybold JL, Ramamurthi RJ, Hammer GB: The use of dexmedetomidine during laryngoscopy, bronchoscopy, and tracheal extubation following tracheal reconstruction. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2007; 17(12):1212–14.
11. Shott SR: Down syndrome: analysis of airway size and a guide for appropriate intubation. *Laryngoscope* 2000; 110(4):585–92.
12. Thompson DM: Abnormal sensorimotor integrative function of the larynx in congenital laryngomalacia: a new theory of etiology. *Laryngoscope* 2007; 117(6 Pt 2 Suppl 114):1–33.
13. Yellon RF: Prevention and management of complications of airway surgery in children. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2004; 14(1):107–11.

REMOVAL OF BRANCHIAL CLEFT CYST OR THYROGLOSSAL DUCT CYST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Branchial cleft cysts and tracts typically present in the lateral neck; thyroglossal duct cysts, in the midline. Removal consists of making an incision in the neck around the opening of the tract (if present), or over the palpable cyst, and following the tract superiorly to its origin. A **Sistrunk procedure** is performed in the case of a thyroglossal duct cyst and involves the removal of the middle section of the hyoid bone.

Usual preop diagnosis: Branchial cleft cyst; thyroglossal duct cyst

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine; head 180° from anesthesia; oral intubation
Incision	Horizontal neck
Antibiotics	Clindamycin 10 mg/kg or cefazolin 25 mg/kg
Surgical time	45–90 min
EBL	10–50 mL
Postop care	Routine
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Bleeding/neck hematoma Infection Recurrence of cyst Damage to CN XI, XII
Pain score	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–adult
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Branchio-oto-renal (BOR) syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Incision/Drainage of Deep Neck Abscess (p. 1223).

INCISION/DRAINAGE OF DEEP NECK ABSCESS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Children with deep neck abscesses (retropharyngeal, parapharyngeal, peritonsillar) are at risk for acute airway obstruction; therefore, the abscesses are drained on an emergent basis. Retropharyngeal and peritonsillar abscesses typically are drained through an intraoral approach; parapharyngeal abscesses, through an external neck approach. In each case, the child must be intubated orally and placed in the supine position. The anesthesiologist or otolaryngologist who is intubating the child must be prepared for abnormal pharyngeal anatomy 2° the abscess. Care must be taken that the abscess is not ruptured in the intubation process. In most cases, the child can be extubated immediately after the abscess is drained; however, in a small number of cases, the child may need to remain intubated until the pharyngeal edema subsides.

Usual preop diagnosis: Retropharyngeal, parapharyngeal, or peritonsillar abscess

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine; table turned 90–180°; oral intubation
Incision	Intraoral (retropharyngeal or peritonsillar abscess); lateral neck (parapharyngeal abscess)
Unique considerations	Acute airway obstruction can occur with induction. Care must be taken to avoid rupture of abscess on intubation; ± dexamethasone 0.5–1 mg/kg.
Antibiotics	Clindamycin 10 mg/kg
Surgical time	30–90 min
EBL	< 30 mL
Postop care	May remain intubated postop.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Aspiration (if abscess ruptures spontaneously) Airway obstruction 2° aspiration or edema Bleeding
Pain score	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Most common, 6 mo–3 yr; can occur at any age.
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	URI

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

(Procedures covered: excision of branchial cleft and thyroglossal duct cyst; incision/drainage of neck abscess)

PREOPERATIVE

These patients generally are otherwise healthy children. A cystic hygroma (cystic lymphangioma), as with other neck masses, may cause airway obstruction and difficult intubation.

Respiratory	The size and extent of the neck mass should be defined carefully in an effort to detect the potential for airway compromise and to avoid soft-tissue trauma during intubation, with consequent acute airway obstruction. Inspiratory stridor suggests supraglottic obstruction, while expiratory stridor is associated with subglottic/intrathoracic obstruction. These patients should have had prior CT/MRI imaging; scans and anesthesia records for these studies should be reviewed. **Tests:** CXR; CT/MRI
Cardiovascular	Cervical masses may be adherent to and/or cause compression of the great vessels. **Tests:** CT/MRI
Hematologic	T&C for cystic hygroma, or if a cervical mass involves great vessels or extends into the mediastinum. **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If > 9–12 mo and asymptomatic, midazolam (0.5–0.75 mg po) 30 min prior to arrival in OR. Avoid all premedication in patients with significant potential for airway compromise.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1) in patients without airway compromise. When airway obstruction is present, iv should be secured prior to mask induction, which may be done with sevoflurane in 100% O_2. As the plane of anesthesia deepens, gently assist ventilation. Consider giving atropine (0.01–0.02 mg/kg iv) prior to laryngoscopy. If partial airway obstruction exists, maintain spontaneous ventilation with CPAP and perform laryngoscopy at ~3 MAC of volatile agent. FOB/Video laryngoscope should be available. Have full range of ETT sizes available airway narrowing may be present. Once airway is secured, proceed with neuromuscular blockade (e.g., rocuronium 0.6–1.0 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg) if needed.
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3). Surgeon may infiltrate incision with local anesthetic. Limit lidocaine to 5 mg/kg when used without epinephrine, or 7 mg/kg when used with epinephrine, bupivacaine to 2.5 mg/kg and ropivicaine 2.5 mg/kg.
Emergence	Reverse neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg iv) and atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv). Extubate when fully awake.

Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss usually IV: 20–22 ga × 1 Great vessel involvement: IV: 20 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 3 mL/kg/h	Minimal 3rd-space losses. Each mL blood loss can be replaced with 3 mL NS/LR. When great vessels involved, place at least 1 iv in lower extremity. Blood loss can be quite sudden; have blood available in OR.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Arterial line, 22 ga	An arterial line is used when there is risk of large blood loss or periop airway compromise.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	ETT dislodged/loss of airway Laryngospasm Bronchospasm Hemorrhage	ETT must be secured carefully. Liberal use of benzoin adherent. Avoid tension on ETT by circuit hoses. Hold ETT during surgeon's intraoral examination to prevent accidental extubation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Subglottic edema Upper airway obstruction from Edema related to tumor resection Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	Dexamethasone (0.5–1 mg/kg iv) and nebulized racemic epinephrine (1.25%) with mist O_2 to treat subglottic edema.
Pain management	Morphine (0.025–0.1 mg/kg iv q 2–4 h) Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg po/iv q 6 h, or 30–40 mg/kg pr loading dose, followed by 20 mg/kg q 6 h	The majority of these procedures are performed on outpatient basis (except cystic hygroma).

Suggested Readings

1. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 786–820.
2. Olutoye OA, Watcha ME: Eyes, ears, nose and throat surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 777–809.

LARYNGOTRACHEAL RECONSTRUCTION, CRICOTRACHEAL RESECTION, LARYNGOTRACHEOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **laryngotracheal reconstruction** (LTR, laryngotracheoplasty) or **cricotracheal resection** (CTR) is performed in the patient with moderate-to-severe subglottic stenosis. Typically, the procedure starts with a diagnostic bronchoscopy. In most of these patients, a tracheotomy will already be present. During the procedure, the tracheotomy tube may be switched for an anode tube, which is sutured or taped to the chest. A horizontal neck

incision is made over the cricoid cartilage. The strap muscles are separated in the midline, and the laryngeal cartilage and trachea are exposed. In an LTR a vertical incision (laryngofissure) is made through the inferior portion of the thyroid cartilage, through the cricoid cartilage, and down to the tracheotomy site. Either before or after the airway is exposed, costal cartilage, auricular cartilage, or thyroid cartilage will be harvested for use as a graft. The cartilage graft is then sutured into the anterior airway, keeping the laryngofissure incision open. Sometimes, a posterior cartilage graft is necessary in a severely stenotic airway, and this is placed after making an incision through the posterior cricoid. The initial exposure for a CTR is the same as an LTR but instead of placing a cartilage graft(s), the anterior portion of the cricoid cartilage and stenotic portion of the trachea are removed and the trachea pulled superiorly and sutured to the thyroid and remaining cricoid cartilages.

In a single-stage procedure, the ETT is removed intraop before the anterior cartilaginous incisions are closed and replaced with an oral or nasal ET tube. This ETT is kept in place for 2–7 d as a stent around which the airway heals. In a two-stage procedure, the tracheotomy tube is kept in place. In this circumstance, there may be a stent superior to the tracheotomy tube, or a T-shaped tracheotomy tube may be used.

A **cricoid split** is most commonly performed in the NICU baby who fails extubation due to subglottic stenosis. Diagnostic bronchoscopy is performed; then the baby is reintubated or the bronchoscope is left in the airway, and the procedure is performed over the bronchoscope. A laryngofissure is performed but no cartilage graft placed. Typically, an ETT 1/2 size larger than the previously placed ETT is inserted.

Usual preop diagnosis: Subglottic stenosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, shoulder roll
Incision	Horizontal neck
Unique considerations	After the cut is made into the airway, a leak may be present, depending on position of the cuff (if present).
Antibiotics	Clindamycin 10 mg/kg, Ampicillin/Sulbactam 50 mg/kg
Surgical time	Laryngotracheal reconstruction (LTR, laryngotracheoplasty), Cricotracheal reconstruction 1.5–4 hours Cricoid split: 45 min
EBL	5–30 mL
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Pneumothorax Bleeding Infection Stent or ETT dislodgement Residual/recurrent subglottic stenosis
Pain score	4–6; 6–8 if costal cartilage harvested.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–adult
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	ETT intubation; congenital
Associated conditions	Prematurity with prolonged NICU course

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

These procedures are performed in patients with subglottic stenosis with a lesion that is either congenital or acquired. Congenital subglottic stenosis varies with regard to the length of trachea involved and the degree of stenosis. Segmental stenosis may occur in the region of the cricoid cartilage, midtrachea, or just above the carina. Sx are severe retractions, especially with agitation or intercurrent URI, dyspnea, and stridor. If the stenotic segment is short and severe, excision with primary anastomosis may be performed. If the involved segment is long, tracheoplasty is usually performed.

Acquired subglottic stenosis occurs as a complication of prolonged tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation, most commonly in premature neonates with severe lung disease (infant respiratory distress syndrome [IRDS]). The stenotic lesion usually is limited to the level of the cricoid cartilage and is treated with the cricoid split procedure. In addition to tracheal stenosis, tracheomalacia may be present.

Respiratory	Patients may be intubated and mechanically ventilated in the PICU. A variable degree of lung disease may be present; some patients may be on minimal ventilatory support, while others may require relatively high FiO_2 and/or inflating pressures. Some patients will have an indwelling tracheostomy tube that bypasses the stenotic lesion and may be cared for at home. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Although not common, cor pulmonale with RVH may be present 2° chronic lung disease.
Hematologic	Anemia is common, especially in infants with chronic lung disease. **Tests:** Hct
Premedication	Infants in PICU usually are receiving a regimen of sedative and analgesia drugs. These should be continued until the patient is transported to the OR, with supplemental doses given preop as needed. Tolerance may be present, and drug doses should be titrated to achieve an adequate level of sedation.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	In intubated or trached patients with iv access, an iv induction is performed; otherwise, a mask induction is done with inhalation agents. Care should be taken to preserve upper airway patency, as even mild obstruction tends to exacerbate tracheal collapse. In cases of severe obstruction, iv access should be established prior to induction and may then be followed by either inhalation induction or iv induction. Following induction, tracheal intubation is performed with an ETT smaller than normal for age. In patients with severe stenosis, an ETT as small as 2.5 mm may be required. A cuffed tube is recommended, and the surgeon should be careful not to damage the cuff during the procedure. If prolonged sedation and mechanical ventilation are planned postop, central venous access should be considered.
Maintenance	Plans for postop mechanical ventilation are discussed with the surgeon. In those patients for whom mechanical ventilation is planned for > 24 h, high-dose opioid anesthesia can be considered (e.g., fentanyl 20–50 mcg/kg), as well as a muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium, if needed). A mixture of air and O_2 is used to minimize the risk of airway fire.
Emergence	The majority of patients are transported to the PICU with indwelling ETT and residual sedation, narcosis, and neuromuscular blockade. These patients should be transported with IV sedation (propofol, benzodiazepine, or dexmedetomidine). Emergent reintubation poses a higher risk in these patients should an accidental extubation occur.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 24 or 22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance	Blood loss < 30 mL
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Tracheal edema Injury to neck structures: Trachea Vascular structures Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	Rx: dexamethasone (0.5–1 mg/kg)

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Tracheal disruption (leak) Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	Presents with subcutaneous emphysema of the neck, face, and chest wall. May cause vocal cord dysfunction.
Sedation/ analgesia	Heavy sedation	To minimize head and neck movement and tracheal wound disruption while ETT is in place.

Suggested Readings

1. Boardman SJ, Albert DM: Single stage and multistage pediatric laryngotracheal reconstruction. *Otolaryngeal Clin N Am* 2008; 41:947.
2. Cotton RT: Management of subglottic stenosis. *Otolaryngol Clin N Am* 2000; 33(1):111.
3. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 786–820.
4. Olutoye OA, Watcha ME: Eyes, ears, nose and throat surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 777–809.

CHOANAL ATRESIA REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Infants born with bilateral choanal atresia typically have severe airway distress shortly following birth because neonates are obligate nasal breathers. The distress resolves after the child is intubated or a McGovern nipple (large nipple with cross-cuts in the end) or oral airway is positioned in the oral cavity. These infants undergo primary repair of the atresia within the first few days of life. Children with unilateral choanal atresia usually do not have severe respiratory distress, and thus, surgery is often postponed until a later age.

Intranasal repair involves opening up the atretic area with choanal dilators, urethral sounds, a microdebrider, or drill. Endoscopic sinus instruments are used to view the choanae and remove the posterior nasal septum. Sometimes an intranasal stent is placed. A labial approach can be used to better visualize the choanale. If a transpalatal repair is performed, a Dingman mouth gag is placed in the mouth, a palatal flap is raised, and the posterior portion of the hard palate and posterior septum is removed. A stent is positioned in the nose. The infant should be able to breathe spontaneously through the nose at completion of either procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: Bilateral or unilateral choanal atresia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine; rotate bed 90–180°
Incision	Intranasal or intraoral
Special instrumentation	Choanal dilators; Dingman mouth gag
Antibiotics	Clindamycin 10 mg/kg, Ampicillin/Sulbactam 50 mg/kg
Surgical time	30 min–2 h
EBL	< 10 mL
Postop care	Observation in PICU for respiratory distress
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Bleeding CSF leak Meningitis Pressure necrosis to nasal ala and septum from stent Infection Airway obstruction if stents become malpositioned
Pain score	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–young child
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Rare
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Coloboma, heart disease, atresia choanae, retarded growth, genital anomalies, and ear deformities (CHARGE) association (see Anesthetic Considerations, below).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Because many neonates are nasal breathers, choanal atresia may present with cyanosis at rest, resolving with crying or placement of an oral airway. Unilateral atresia is usually asymptomatic; bilateral lesions usually → respiratory distress in the neonatal period, but occasionally are asymptomatic. Although choanal atresia is most commonly an isolated anomaly, it may present as part of the CHARGE association.

Respiratory	Classic findings include cyanosis at rest, resolving with crying.
Cardiovascular	When part of the CHARGE association, cardiac defects include tetralogy of Fallot, ASD, VSD, PDA, AV canal, or right-side aortic arch.
Neurologic	When part of the CHARGE association, a variety of CNS abnormalities may be present. Hypoxia 2° airway obstruction may cause CNS impairment and Sz.
Premedication	Repair of choanal atresia usually is performed in infancy, and premedication is not indicated.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1). Airway obstruction may develop during induction of anesthesia. Early placement of an oral airway is recommended to relieve airway obstruction. An oral RAE ETT is preferred, especially if a transpalatal repair is planned using a Dingman mouth retractor.	
Maintenance	Inhalational or IV anesthesia is maintained during the procedure. During the first mo of life, opioids (other than remifentanil) should be avoided generally because of the risk of postop respiratory depression. For infants undergoing repair after the first mo of life, small doses of fentanyl (1–2 mcg/kg) may be given. Muscle relaxation does not need to be maintained following tracheal intubation.	
Emergence	Nasal stents placed following the repair must be secure and free of secretions prior to tracheal extubation. Patients must be fully awake and capable of maintaining patency of their oropharynx in the event of postop swelling and transient obstruction of the nasopharynx.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 24 or 22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance	Blood loss is usually < 10 mL; may be greater in older infants.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) .	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Airway obstruction Bleeding	2° obstruction or displacement of nasal stents into oral pharynx especially in older infants

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	See Intraop Complications, above.	
Pain management	Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg po/iv q 6 h, or 30–40 mg/kg pr loading dose, followed by 20 mg/kg q 6 h	Small doses of opioid may be given iv immediately postop, with special attention to avoid respiratory depression/obstruction.

Suggested Reading

1. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 791.

PEDIATRIC TRACHEOSTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A **tracheostomy** is performed in the infant or child with upper airway obstruction (subglottic stenosis, laryngeal web, etc.) or in the child in whom prolonged mechanical ventilation is anticipated. In most cases, the child will already be intubated and the procedure will be performed over the ETT. In selected infants, the tracheostomy can be performed with a rigid bronchoscope in the airway through which the patient is being ventilated. A midline horizontal neck incision is made just inferior to the cricoid cartilage. The dissection is carried out in the midline until the trachea is reached. In children, the tracheal incision is vertical. Stay sutures may be placed in the right and left sides of the trachea on either side of the incision to facilitate replacement of the tracheotomy tube should it become displaced. Alternatively, a formal tracheal stoma may be created by securing the skin flaps directly to the trachea. One method

of formalizing the stoma is a starplasty where the tracheal incision is made in the shape of a "+", the skin incision an "x", and the skin is sutured to the trachea. A large air leak will be present as soon as the tracheal incision is made. As the ETT or bronchoscope is being removed, a tracheostomy tube is inserted in the neck. The ventilation tubing is moved and connected to the tracheotomy tube, which is secured with neck sutures and/or ties around the neck. The starplasty has the advantage that in case the tracheotomy tube is dislodged accidentally, it can be fairly easily reinserted, even on the first postoperative day, providing an additional safety factor over the conventional approach.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ventilator dependence; subglottic stenosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine; head to anesthesia; shoulder roll; neck extended
Incision	Horizontal neck
Special instrumentation	Tracheostomy hook
Unique considerations	Patient is draped to allow easy access to ETT. When trachea is opened, a large air leak may be present. On entering the airway, the ETT may be ruptured. Unlike adult tracheostomy tubes, pediatric trachs typically do not have an "inner" cannula and often do not have a cuff.
Antibiotics	Clindamycin 10 mg/kg or cefazolin 25 mg/kg
Surgical time	30 min–1 h
EBL	< 10 mL
Postop care	Close observation in PICU. CXR immediately following procedure to r/o pneumothorax.
Mortality	Intraoperative: rare. Postop 1–3%, usually 2° tracheostomy tube plugging or dislodgement.
Morbidity	Pneumothorax Subcutaneous emphysema Bleeding Infection Plugging Skin abrasion around trach edges or trach ties in patient with short, chubby neck
Pain score	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–adult
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Anatomical airway obstruction; ventilatory dependence; high, spinal-cord, or head injury
Associated conditions	Prematurity; trauma

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations following Tracheostomy in Chapter 3.0, Otolaryngology (p. 191).

Supplemental Readings

1. Landsman IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 786–820.
2. Olutoye OA, Watcha ME: Eyes, ears, nose and throat surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 777–809.

CHAPTER

12.4 Pediatric Cardiovascular Surgery

SURGEONS

Katsuhide Maeda, MD, PhD
V. Mohan Reddy, MD
Frank L. Hanley, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Claudia Benkwitz, MD, PhD
Komal Kamra, MD
M. Gail Boltz, MD
Chandra Ramamoorthy, MD

SURGERY FOR ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECT (OSTIUM SECUNDUM)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Atrial septal defects (ASDs) are among the most common congenital cardiac defects. ASDs vary widely in size and location and are broadly classified as **ostium secundum, ostium primum, sinus venosus,** and **coronary sinus** types (Fig. 12.4-1). Ostium secundum defects—the most common (80%)—result from an incompletely formed or fenestrated septum primum covering the fossa ovalis. A L → R shunt results in augmented pulmonary blood flow which, if left uncorrected, may → RV failure, atrial arrhythmias, pulmonary HTN, and, rarely, pulmonary vascular occlusive disease (PVOD). In 1953, Gibbon successfully repaired an ASD using a pump-oxygenator and, in doing so, ushered in the era of open cardiac surgery.

Secundum ASDs that fail to close spontaneously should be closed electively in early childhood to avoid long-term complications. Currently, ASD closure is performed through a minimally invasive midline partial sternotomy approach on CPB. A right anterolateral thoracotomy through the 4th intercostal space also provides satisfactory exposure and provides female patients with better cosmesis. After CPB and cardioplegic arrest or ventricular fibrillation have been instituted, a right atriotomy is created, and the ASD is visualized.

Repair is affected by direct suture closure or patch closure, using autologous pericardium or prosthetic material (e.g., Gore-Tex, Dacron). After the repair is completed and the atriotomy is closed, standard de-airing maneuvers are performed, the aortic cross-clamp is released, and CPB is discontinued. The chest is then closed in the standard fashion.

Variant procedure or approaches: Patent foramen ovale (PFO) in adults is becoming a common indication for device closure to avoid risk of paradoxical embolism and stroke during surgery.

Usual preop diagnosis: ASD; ostium secundum defect; other variants

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or lateral decubitus (thoracotomy)
Incision	Minimally invasive midline incision with limited right median sternotomy; right anterolateral thoracotomy (4th intercostal space): Robotic-assisted total endoscopic surgery
Unique considerations	R → L shunt → systemic embolization
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp or ventricular fibrillation time: 10–30 min Total: 2 h
Closing considerations	Routine closure with chest tube in pericardial space; temporary atrial pacing wire (older patients); possible left atrial line for monitoring
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Extubation in OR or within 1st 4 h; 24-h monitoring in ICU
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Postpericardiotomy syndrome Atrial arrhythmias
Pain score	6–8

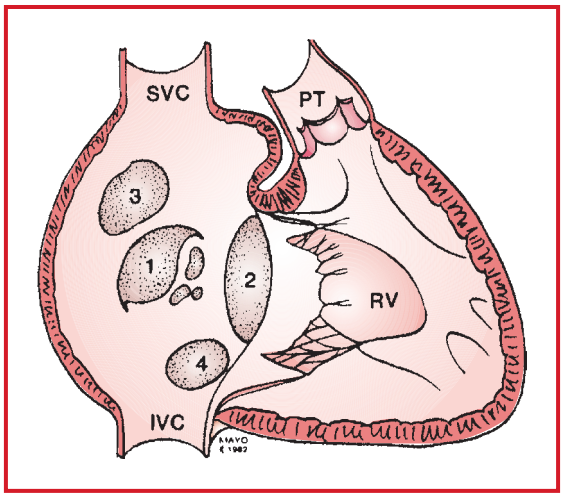


Figure 12.4-1. Location of ASDs, numbered in decreasing order of frequency: 1 = secundum; 2 = primum; 3 = sinus venosus; 4 = coronary sinus type. IVC = inferior vena cava; PT = pulmonary trunk; RV = right ventricle; SVC = superior vena cava. (Reproduced with permission from the Mayo Foundation for Education and Research.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Neonate–adults
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	10–15% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	Unknown; sometimes associated with syndromes such as Holt-Oram.
Associated conditions	ASD may coexist with nearly any of the other recognized congenital cardiac anomalies but is more commonly associated with pulmonary stenosis (10%), partial anomalous pulmonary venous return (7%), VSD (5%), PDA (3%), and mitral stenosis (2%). ASDs are also part of other malformations, including tricuspid atresia, total anomalous pulmonary venous connection (TAPVC), and mitral atresia.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	Although the septum secundum ASD is the most common one (~80% of all ASDs), periop management varies little among all types of ASDs (including ostium primum, sinus venosus, and coronary sinus types). One principle guideline in all L → R shunts is the estimation of shunt flow: Q_p:Q_s. The size of the defect and relative compliances of both ventricles are the two main factors determining the degree of shunting at the atrial level and thereby ultimately pulmonary blood flow (Q_p). Patients are generally asymptomatic until the Q_p:Q_s ratio exceeds 3.0. As the shunt flow increases, Sx of pulmonary overcirculation may develop (e.g., feeding difficulties, failure to thrive, tachypnea at rest, frequent URIs, and arrhythmias related to atrial dilatation). L → R shunt → ↑ pulmonary blood flow (Q_p) → ↑ PA pressures → ↑ PVR → RV overload → RV failure. The larger the area of the defect, the greater the shunt.

Cardiovascular and respiratory	Most infants with ASDs are asymptomatic. ASDs are detected on cardiac auscultation (fixed splitting of S2) or sometimes during neurological workup for TIAs or strokes secondary to paradoxical emboli. Depending on the degree of shunting (Q_p/Q_s), young children may have h/o frequent URIs. Cyanosis is rare and indicates shunt reversal and development of pulmonary HTN. Although almost 90% of small secundum ASDs close spontaneously in the first year of life, surgical repair is usually recommended between 3 and 5 years of age as these patients are at risk for paradoxical embolism, stroke, bacterial endocarditis, and ultimately CHF. For some patients (depending on age, size, and location of the ASD), endovascular closure in the cath lab, or more recently with hybrid procedures, may be suitable alternatives, with both obviating the need for CPB. **Tests:** EKG: normal or RVH. CXR: cardiomegaly and ↑ pulmonary vascular markings. ECHO. TEE: essential for locating and estimating size of defect, other valvular abnormalities, and identification of pulmonary vein anatomy. Cardiac CT may be indicated for delineation of the pulmonary veins in sinus venous ASDs because of the association of anomalous pulmonary venous return.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct; T&C
Premedication	Patients > 8 mo old may benefit from midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po 20 min before induction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Most of these patients are candidates for **fast-tracking**—the practice of extubating cardiac patients in the OR or within 4 h of completion of surgery. To achieve this goal, the anesthetic technique must be adjusted to allow for early extubation.

Criteria for fast-tracking include patients > 4 mo of age, short CPB run, stable hemodynamic profile, minimal inotropic support, normal acid-base status, and adequate surgical hemostasis. Patients who are pacemaker-dependent are not suitable candidates for fast-tracking. Generally, patients selected for fast-tracking have undergone repair of a secundum ASD, VSD (no evidence of postop pulmonary HTN), bidirectional Glenn and Fontan procedures, or a RV → PA conduit change. For patients with a single ventricle, resumption of spontaneous ventilation decreases intrathoracic pressure thereby increasing venous return and improving CO.

Induction	Following inhalation induction using sevoflurane (O_2/N_2O), an iv is placed and intubation facilitated with rocuronium (0.6–1 mg/kg). After ET intubation, an arterial line is placed for close BP monitoring. **Fast-track:** Inhalation induction (sevoflurane ± N_2O) is followed by placement of a PIV. Fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg) and a muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 0.6–1 mg/kg) are administered, and the airway is secured. Subsequently, an arterial line is placed. For patients who are not candidates for regional anesthesia (e.g., parent preference, spine abnormality, bleeding disorder), intravenous techniques are used (e.g., remifentanil 0.1–0.4 mcg/kg/min). Because most patients have good myocardial function, propofol (100–200 mcg/kg/min) may also be used, often with ketamine (20–50 mcg/kg/min). Propofol may also be used after separation from CPB and in transport to the ICU, usually at a lower dose (25–75 mcg/kg/min), weaned, and discontinued just prior to extubation. **Non-fast-track:** An inhalation induction with sevoflurane ±N_2O is usually well tolerated. Then, iv access is established and intubation facilitated by muscle relaxant (rocuronium 0.6–1 mg/kg) and supplemental fentanyl. For patients who are not candidates for fast-tracking, the standard anesthetic is fentanyl 20–40 mcg/kg in divided doses with supplemental isoflurane before and during CPB. Additional midazolam (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) may be administered to reduce chance of recall and awareness. An iv induction should be used in patients with significant pulmonary HTN and/or RV failure. iv induction can be accomplished with etomidate 0.1–0.3 mg/kg or ketamine 0.5–1 mg/kg, followed by a muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 1 mg/kg).

Maintenance	For maintenance of anesthesia, inhaled agents, iv agents, regional anesthetic, or a combination may be used. N_2O is turned off after induction to avoid expansion of any VAE. In patients with pulmonary HTN, RV failure and/or other medical conditions requiring postop mechanical ventilation, a high-dose narcotic technique may be appropriate (e.g., fentanyl 50–150 mcg/kg ± inhalation agent).	
Emergence	If the choice is made to extubate the patient receiving remifentanil in the OR, check level of paralysis and reverse as appropriate; isoflurane is terminated during skin closure, and the remifentanil is turned off last, when the dressing is applied. Extubation is performed once the patient meets standard criteria (e.g., –25 cm H_2O NIF, spontaneous ventilation, adequate sat, hemodynamic stability, none or minimal inotropic support). Because remifentanil has an extremely short half-life, and in the absence of regional anesthetic, it is necessary that a long-acting opioid (e.g., hydromorphone 10–15 mcg/kg) is administered in a timely fashion to ensure postop analgesia. Propofol 25–75 mcg/kg/min ± remifentanil may be used for transport. Extubation is then performed in the ICU. Vasodilators are usually not required for BP control. O_2, bag, mask, airway equipment, and emergency drugs should be available during transport.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: appropriate for patient's size × 1–2 LR @ TKO Blood warmer ✓ for air bubbles T&C 1 U PRBC.	**NB:** It is extremely critical to avoid iv air bubbles in all patients with intracardiac shunts. Meticulous attention must be paid to clearing the iv tubing and stopcocks of any bubbles to avoid paradoxical air embolism and possible stroke. Have blood available in the OR. Blood transfusion may be required in patients < 10 kg.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Cerebral oximetry O_2 sat probes (two sites) Arterial line CVP line Urinary catheter ACT monitoring TEE	ABG, electrolytes, and Hct should be checked as needed during the procedure. Place at least two O_2 probes to ensure readings during critical times. Avoid dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial arterial lines (inaccurate 2° spasm post-CPB). Femoral arterial line may be used. Double-lumen CVP in IJ preferable. TEE monitoring is used to assess anatomy and repair. On CPB, if the aorta is not cross-clamped, monitor for intracardiac air.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Pre-CPB	Heparinization (200–400 U/kg) ✓ ACT > 480 sec ✓ NMB ✓ UO	Confirm that antibiotics have been given 30–60 min before skin incision and repeat q 4–6 h per protocol. If a regional technique is used, allow for a minimum of 60 min between needle placement and heparinization.
CPB	Ventilation stopped Hypothermia ✓ sufficient analgesia/sedation ✓ adequate flow and pressure during CPB ✓ face for venous congestion ✓ ABG and ACT ✓ UO ✓ blood availability	The patient is not actively cooled for secundum ASD closure. Temperature is allowed to drift to 33–34°C during CPB. Supplemental fentanyl/midazolam may be handed to the perfusionist and administered directly into the CPB circuit.

Transition off CPB	Rewarming ✓ sufficient analgesia/sedation Vasoactive infusions started at 34–35°C. Flush lines. Zero transducers. Suction ETT. Resume ventilation. ✓ ABG	Surgeon will de-air heart, and this maneuver is monitored with TEE. Observe inflation of both lungs. Turn on vaporizer. Vasoactive infusions (e.g., dopamine 3–5 mcg/kg/min) may be started but are not always necessary in uncomplicated cases.
Post-CPB	Reversal of heparin with protamine ✓ UO ± Modified ultrafiltration (MUF)	1 mg of protamine will reverse 100 U of residual heparin. MUF uses the CPB machine to remove excess water and inflammatory mediators. It has been shown to transiently ↓ postop edema and improve cardiopulmonary function. This technique is not routinely performed at Stanford.
Complications	Air embolism (VAE) Supraventricular dysrhythmias Heart block Ventricular dysfunction	Potential for paradoxical embolization Likely 2° atriotomy

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding
Tests	ABG Electrolytes; Hct CXR

Suggested Readings

1. Allen HD, Driscoll DJ, Shaddy RE, et al: *Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents*, 7th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007.
2. Bacha EZ, Hijazi AM: Hybrid procedures in pediatric cardiac surgery. Seminars in thoracic and cardiovascular surgery. *Pediatric Cardiac Surgery Annual* 2005: 78–85.
3. Boltz MG, Hammer GB, Andropoulos DB: Regional anesthesia and postoperative pain management. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, et al, eds. *Anesthesia for congenital heart disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell: 2010, 356–70.
4. Chaudhary V, Chauhan S, Choudhury M, Kiran U, Vasdev S, Talwar S: Parasternal intercostals block with ropivacaine for postoperative analgesia in pediatric patients undergoing cardiac surgery: a double-blind, randomized, controlled study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2012; 26:439–42.
5. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. *Anesth for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden MA: 2008, 167–251.
6. Gadhinglajkar S, Sreedhar R, Jayakumar K, Misra M, Ganesh S, Mathew T: Role of intraoperative echocardiography in surgical correction of the superior sinus venous atrial septal defect. *Ann Card Anesth* 2010; 13:59–63.
7. Peterson KL, DeCampli WM, Pike NA, Robbins RC, Reitz BA: A report of 220 cases of regional anesthesia in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 90:1014–19.
8. Reitz BA, Yuh DD, eds: *Congenital Cardiac Surgery*. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2002.
9. Torracca L, Ismeno G, Alfieri O: Totally endoscopic computer-enhanced atrial septal defect closure in six patients. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2001; 72(4):1354–7.
10. Walker SG: Anesthesia for left-to-right shunt lesions. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell, Chichester, UK: 2010, 373–97.
11. Wilson NJ, Smith J, Prommete B, et al: Transcatheter closure of secundum atrial septal defects with the amplatzer septal occluder in adults and children-follow-up closure rates, degree of mitral regurgitation and evolution of arrhythmias. *Heart Lung Circ* 2008; 17(4):318–24.

SURGERY FOR ATRIOVENTRICULAR CANAL DEFECT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Atrioventricular (A-V) canal defects comprise a spectrum of congenital cardiac anomalies stemming from the embryonic maldevelopment of endocardial cushions. This leads to the absence of septal tissue immediately above and below the level of the A-V valves and defects in the A-V valves in continuity with these septal defects. **Partial A-V canal defects** (or **ostium primum atrial septal defects**) involve the atrial septum and mitral valve, whereas **complete A-V canal defects** involve the atrial and ventricular septa and have a common atrioventricular valve. Intermediate or transitional A-V canal have varying degree of pathology between the above two common patterns. Pathophysiologically, these defects result in L → R shunting at the atrial and/or ventricular levels, leading to pulmonary HTN and CHF. A-V valvular insufficiency is also frequently observed with these defects, contributing to the early development of CHF.

Palliative repair of A-V canal defects consists of **pulmonary artery banding** (Fig. 12.4-2) to reduce excessive pulmonary blood flow. Palliation is rare and is reserved for very small infants with complicating conditions, such as RSV and

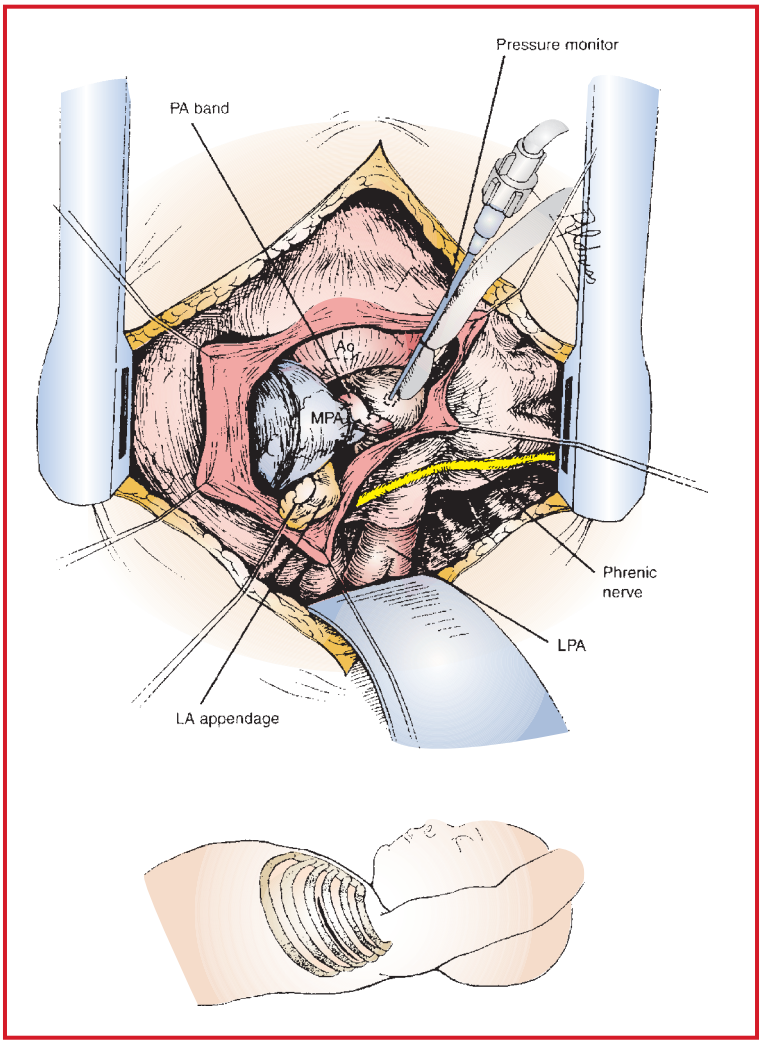


Figure 12.4-2. Placement of pulmonary artery band. PA = pulmonary artery; Ao = aorta; MPA = main pulmonary artery; LPA = left pulmonary artery; LA = left atrial. (Reproduced with permission from Kaiser LR, Kron IL, Spray TL, eds: *Mastery of Cardiothoracic Surgery*. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1998.)

other pneumonias. **Total correction** is now performed routinely, even in neonates. Repair consists of the closure of atrial and ventricular septal defects (VSDs) with closure of the cleft in the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve and repair of associated defects, such as a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) or secundum atrial septal defect (ASD). The septal defects may be repaired with either a **"two-patch technique,"** consisting of a Dacron or pericardial patch on the ventricular septum and pericardial patch on the atrial septum, or a single patch (pericardium) covering both ASDs and VSDs. A modified single-patch technique where the A-V valve is plastered down to the ventricular septum is currently used by some surgeons.

Partial A-V canal defects: Exposure is obtained through a standard median sternotomy. CPB is instituted with aortic cross-clamping and cardioplegic arrest. Through a right atriotomy, the mitral valve cleft is sutured. A pericardial patch is placed across the top of the ventricular septum, around the coronary sinus orifice, and along the free edge of the superior portion of the ASD. The atriotomy is closed and the aorta unclamped after de-airing. The patient is rewarmed and weaned from bypass.

Complete A-V canal defects: Following median sternotomy, CPB is instituted with aortic cross-clamping and cardioplegic arrest. In the **single-patch technique,** one patch is used to close both the ASD and VSD components. The anterior and posterior bridging leaflets often are divided and resuspended to the patch, thereby creating two separate valves. The cleft in the left AV valve is usually closed. If AV valve regurgitation is present, repair is undertaken. In the two-patch technique, two separate patches are used to close the ASD and VSD, and the common AV valve is sandwiched in between the two patches. Repair of AV valve is the same in either technique. Closure of the right atrium, de-airing, aortic unclamping, rewarming, and resuscitation of the heart are commenced, and CPB is discontinued. Closure proceeds in the standard fashion. In ~5% of patients with complete A-V canal defects, tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) or left ventricular outflow tract obstruction (LVOTO) has to be addressed surgically.

Usual preop diagnosis: A-V canal defects (complete, intermediate, or partial); endocardial cushion defects

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Partial A-V Canal Defect	Complete A-V Canal Defect
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Median sternotomy/right anterolateral thoracotomy	Standard median sternotomy
Unique considerations	None	Repair performed through a right atriotomy; no ventriculotomies required.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h	⇐
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–40 min Total: 1.5–2 h	Aortic cross-clamp: 60–80 min Total: 2.5–3 h
Closing considerations	Chest tube in pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possibly right or left atrial line for monitoring	⇐
EBL	Moderate	⇐
Postop care	ICU for 1–2 d, with 12- to 24-h assisted ventilation; minimal need for inotropes.	1- to 3-d assisted ventilation; pulmonary HTN protocol, including hyperventilation and sedation; need for pulmonary vasodilators (e.g., NO) is uncommon; use of inotropes for adequate CO. Avoid excessive volume to prevent distension and mitral valve regurgitation.
Mortality	0–1%	1–2%
Morbidity	Transient heart block Atrial dysrhythmias Hemorrhage Infection	Pulmonary vasospasm Right heart dysfunction Mitral valve regurgitation Low CO Heart block/atrial dysrhythmias Residual VSD Hemorrhage
Pain score	6–10	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS		
Age range	1–20 yr (usually 2–3 yr)	2–6 mo (occasionally older; rarely, adults)
Male:Female	1:1	⇐
Incidence	0.5–1% of congenital heart defects	⇐
Etiology	Down syndrome: Rare, in patients with partial A-V canal defect	Commonly associated with Down syndrome (75% in patients with complete A-V canal defect)
Associated conditions	Left A-V valve insufficiency	Pulmonary HTN, left A-V valve insufficiency, minor associated cardiac anomalies (e.g., PDA or ASD); major associated anomalies (e.g., TOF, LVOTO)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	A-V canal defects may be partial, transitional, or complete. The partial A-V canal has no interventricular communication and has an ostium primum ASD. There is often a cleft in the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve → MR. The complete A-V canal has communications at both the atrial and ventricular levels with a single A-V valve that is regurgitant. The transitional AVC has a pathology in between the 2 ends of the spectrum. The degree of L → R shunting depends on the size of the defect, the pressure gradient between the chambers, and the PVR/SVR. Patients with large L → R shunts are at risk of developing pulmonary HTN, requiring early surgical correction.
Respiratory	✓ for pulmonary congestion, frequent URIs, tachypnea, diaphoresis on feeding, FTT. Pulmonary HTN can be present in patients with partial or complete A-V canal defects. **Tests:** CXR: enlarged heart + increased pulmonary markings
Cardiovascular	Complete A-V canal → CHF and biventricular failure. **Tests:** ECG: RAE, RVE; ECHO diagnostic; rarely cardiac cath may be indicated to assess PVR.
Down syndrome	A-V canal defects account for 40% of cardiac defects in the Down syndrome patient. These patients are at risk of atlantoaxial instability (20%); therefore, avoid excessive flexion-extension of the head and neck. Additional airway considerations (subglottic stenosis, large tongue, hypotonia) make these patients unsuitable for fast-tracking and early extubation. Furthermore, trisomy 21 patients are more prone to developing PVOD/pulmonary HTN resulting in an increase in the PVR/SVR ratio with the possibility of developing bidirectional shunting or, as a late finding, shunt reversal (R → L).
Laboratory	See ASD, p. 1234.
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	In children with small defects, no severe MR, or in the absence of PVOD, a mask induction with sevoflurane in air and O_2 is acceptable. Otherwise, an iv induction with fentanyl provides more stable hemodynamics. If the iv is in place, ketamine 1–2 mg/kg or fentanyl 5–10 mcg/kg and rocuronium 1 mg/kg may be used. Verify ETT position (see p. D-2). In children with Down syndrome, anticipate difficult airway and atlantoaxial instability. Excessive neck flexion should be avoided in this population. The non-Down partial A-V canal patients may be candidates for early extubation if the intracardiac defects are small and surgery was uncomplicated. In this case, induction and maintenance regimes should be tailored accordingly (see ASD).

Maintenance	Air-oxygen with volatile anesthetic and narcotics is the standard. In patients requiring postop mechanical ventilation, fentanyl 50–100 mcg/kg total, rocuronium prn, and midazolam (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) ± volatile agent may be used.	
Emergence	Patients undergoing repair of complete A-V canal defects are seldom suitable for fast-tracking. On conclusion of procedure, the patient is taken to CVICU, intubated, ventilated, sedated, and monitored, with emergency drugs and airway equipment immediately available.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22–24 ga × 2 LR @ TKO Blood products	
Monitoring	See ASD, p. 1235. TEE	 TEE is used to assess left A-V valve regurgitation, valvular function, residual shunt, and ventricular function.
CPB	Management of CPB is discussed in Intraoperative Considerations for ASD, p. 1235.	In the immediate post-CPB period, TEE exam is valuable for evaluation of ventricular function and residual mitral valve regurgitation.
Transition off CPB	✓ rewarming ✓ sufficient analgesia/hypnosis ✓ vasoactive infusions started at 34–35°C ✓ Flush lines ✓ Zero transducers ✓ Suction ETT ✓ Resume ventilation	Surgeon will de-air heart, and this maneuver is monitored with TEE. Turn on vaporizer. Vasoactive infusions may be started but are not always necessary in uncomplicated cases. Dopamine 3–5 mcg/kg/min, milrinone 0.5 mcg/kg/min Observe inflation of both lungs. In patients with PVOD, there is a significant potential for pulmonary HTN—be ready to assist with ventilatory measures, ± pharmacological interventions. → NO or milrinone (> reduction of PVR vs. SVR).
Complications	Air embolism A-V block, ventricular dysfunction Persistent bleeding Pulmonary HTN	Avoid air embolism in A-V canal patients (potential for shunt reversal → paradoxical embolization). A-V block may be temporary 2° edema and/or cardioplegic arrest. Permanent injury can occur to the conduction system at the A-V node or bundle of His with repair of the VSD. Temporary atrial and ventricular pacing wires are placed. Ventilatory measures for managing PHTN aim to ↓ PVR independently of SVR. A combination of hyperventilation ($PaCO_2$ 20–30 mm Hg), alkalosis (pH ~7.5–7.6), high FiO_2, PaO_2 > 60 mm Hg, and low PIP/PEEP usually achieve this goal. Pharmacological measures such as inhaled NO, prostacyclins, phosphodiesterase inhibitors, as well as endothelin antagonists, may be necessary to ↓ PVR in select patients. High PEEP or TV → ↑ intrathoracic pressure, thereby ↓ systemic venous return, while at the same time ↑ RV afterload, both of which could be detrimental in the setting of pulm HTN. Since control of ventilation is the most reliable way to manipulate PVR, ventilatory measures represent a key concept of anesthetic management of cardiac lesions in which balancing PVR over SVR is crucial (e.g., large VSD, CAVC, truncus arteriosus).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Residual VSD/ASD AV valve regurgitation	
Tests	TEE	Analysis of postrepair function is best done by TEE.

Suggested Readings

1. Allen HD, Driscoll DJ, Shaddy RE, et al. eds: *Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents,* 7th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007.
2. Bacha EA, Hijazi ZM: Hybrid procedures in pediatric cardiac surgery. Seminars in thoracic and cardiovascular surgery. *Pediatr Cardiac Surg Annu* 2005: 78–85.
3. Boltz MG, Hammer GB, Andropoulos DB: Regional anesthesia and postoperative pain management. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, et al, eds: *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2010, 356–70.
4. Diaz LK: Anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in pediatric patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Pediatric Drugs* 2006; 8:223–33.
5. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. In: *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
6. El-Morsy GZ, El-Deeb A, El-Desouky T, et al: Can thoracic paravertebral block replace thoracic epidural block in pediatric cardiac surgery? A randomized blinded study. *Ann Card Anesth* 2012; 15:259–63.
7. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, et al: Atrial septal defect. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 800–49.
8. Reitz BA, Yuh DD, eds: *Congenital Cardiac Surgery.* McGraw-Hill, New York: 2002.
9. Walker SG: Anesthesia for left-to-right shunt lesions. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell, Chichester, UK: 2010, 373–97.

SURGERY FOR VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Ventricular septal defect (VSD) is the most common congenital cardiac anomaly. VSDs can occur anywhere in the interventricular septum (Fig. 12.4-3). One of the most common locations is the perimembranous (conoventricular) in the region of membranous septum near the tricuspid and aortic valves. Supracristal (subarterial) defects are common in the Pacific Rim population. Muscular defects occur in the inlet, trabecular, or outlet muscular septum. A-V canal defects are present under the septal leaflet of the tricuspid valve. Physiologically, these defects result in L → R shunting in proportion to the defect size. Untreated, this defect can → RV volume overload and CHF in infancy and irreversible pulmonary HTN later in life. As PVR rises, shunt reversal to a R → L shunt can occur, producing hypoxemia and cyanosis; this is known as Eisenmenger's syndrome and occurs in ~10% of untreated, nonrestrictive VSDs (rare). Moderate-to-large VSDs that remain open > 6 mo of age should be closed. Severe, intractable CHF in infants refractory to medical therapy (e.g., diuretics, digoxin), or ↑ PVR in infants > 6 mo are indications for earlier VSD repair.

Lillehei et al. performed the first successful VSD repairs using normothermic cross-circulation in 1955. Kirklin subsequently described successful VSD closure using extracorporeal circulation in 1957. VSD repair is performed now through a median sternotomy on CPB with bicaval cannulation. Deep hypothermia (18°C) with circulatory arrest is used in neonates < 1800 g to facilitate repair. After CPB and cardioplegic arrest have been instituted, a right atriotomy is created, and the VSD is visualized by retracting the tricuspid valve leaflets. The VSD is then closed with a patch (e.g., pericardium, Gore-Tex, Dacron), with care being taken not to place sutures through the nearby conduction fiber bundles or the aortic valve. After the repair is completed and the atriotomy is closed, standard de-airing maneuvers are performed, the aortic cross-clamp is released, and CPB is discontinued. The chest is then closed in the standard fashion.

Variant procedure or approaches: Supracristal defects may be more easily exposed through a pulmonary arteriotomy, while some inferiorly located muscular VSDs may be better accessed through a right ventriculotomy. Multiple VSDs or "Swiss cheese" ventricular septum can be a challenging surgical problem. Many can be closed with the approaches described above. Some may require a combined surgical and device closure. Palliative pulmonary artery banding may be required in Swiss cheese muscular VSD, with the hope that many of the VSDs may close spontaneously. At a 2nd stage, the remaining VSDs are closed and the PA band is removed.

Usual preop diagnosis: VSD

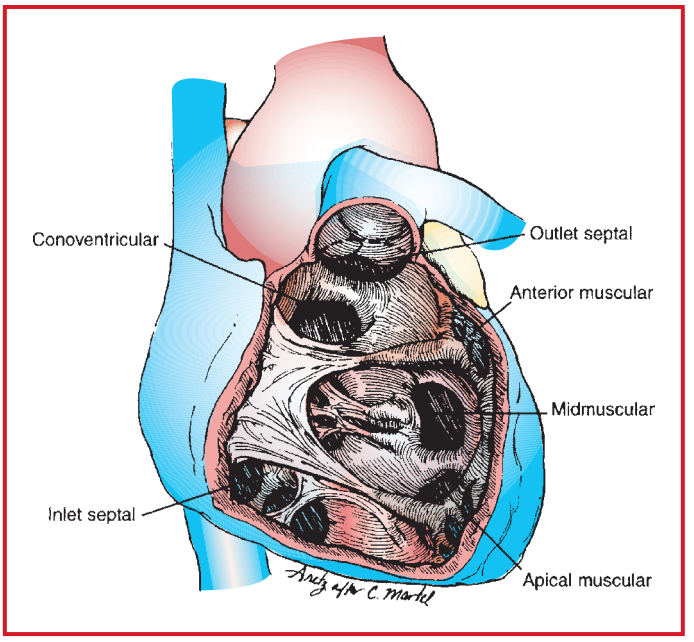


Figure 12.4-3. The right ventricular free wall has been resected to show the VSDs: conoventricular = perimembranous; conal septal = outlet septal (subpulmonary); inlet septal = A-V canal type. Muscular (trabecular) defects may be midmuscular, anterior, or apical. The penetrating bundle is closely related to the inferior margin of the conoventricular defect and diverges away from this margin into the trabecular septomarginalis beneath the muscle of Lancisi. (Reproduced with permission from Kaiser LR, Kron IL, Spray TL, eds: *Mastery of Cardiothoracic Surgery*. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1998.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Median sternotomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 15–45 min Total: 2–3 h
Closing considerations	Routine closure with chest tube in the pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possibly right/left atrial and/or pulmonary arterial lines for monitoring
EBL	Minimal-to-moderate
Postop care	Extubation in OR or within several h; 24-h monitoring in ICU.
Mortality	≤ 1%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Low CO Atrial dysrhythmias Complete A-V heart block Residual shunting; tricuspid regurgitation
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Neonate – adult
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	20% of congenital heart defects; 2/1000 births
Associated conditions	PDA (6%); coarctation of the aorta (5%); congenital AS (2%); congenital mitral valve disease (2%); also part of other malformations, including TOF, TGA, DORV, tricuspid atresia; truncus arteriosus; others

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	VSDs are classified by their location. Patients may be asymptomatic or may present with varying degrees of CHF ± pulmonary HTN, depending on the age of the patient, size of the VSD, and the flow across the VSD. Small VSDs, in which the flow is related to the size of the defect and in which there may be significant pressure gradient across the defect, are considered restrictive. These may close spontaneously in early childhood. Large VSDs in which the degree of L → R shunting is independent of the size and only determined by the PVR/SVR ratio are described as "nonrestrictive." Patients with large VSDs present with CHF and other signs of pulmonary overcirculation once their Q_p:Q_s > 2.0. Cyanosis indicates pulmonary HTN and shunt reversal (Eisenmenger's syndrome).
Cardiovascular and respiratory	Similar to patients with other L → R shunting lesions (ASD, ACV). ✓ for signs and Sx of CHF and pulmonary overcirculation (include: tachypnea, frequent URIs, sweating during feeding, FTT, reduced exercise tolerance, fatigue). Children with small VSDs may be asymptomatic. A holosystolic murmur may be present (particularly in restrictive defects) and can be heard best at the left lower sternal border. Cyanosis is absent unless there is R → L shunting (suggesting pulmonary HTN). **Tests:** EKG, CXR, ECHO. If pulmonary NTH is suspected, cardiac catheterization is performed for measurement of PA pressures. If PA pressures are elevated, O_2 and NO responsiveness is tested. VSDs may be closed surgically, via a device in the catheter (in the absence of pulmonary HTN), or with a hybrid procedural approach.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct: electrolytes (children on diuretic, digoxin Rx), others as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po may be useful.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The anesthetic management of a patient with VSD (without pulmonary HTN and CHF) is similar to the patient with ASD. These patients may be candidates for fast-tracking and early extubation. Refer to fast-tracking in ASD section (see p. 1234). For patients with unrestrictive VSDs, avoid factors that ↓ PVR and ↑ shunt flow (i.e., high FiO_2, hyperventilation, ↓ pH). This will compromise DBP and thereby CPP. For patients who are not candidates for fast-tracking, the standard anesthetic is fentanyl 20–40 mcg/kg in divided doses with supplemental isoflurane before and during CPB. Additional midazolam (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) may be administered to prevent recall and awareness.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: appropriate for patient size × 1–2 LR @ TKO Blood warmer T&C	Minimize administration of iv fluids. Both ventricles are volume-overloaded in large VSDs.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Arterial line Surgical LA line Surgical RA/PA line (to assess for elevated PA pressures) Urinary catheter ACT monitoring TEE	A transthoracic LA line may be placed by the surgeon if there is concern about postop mitral valve and LV dysfunction. In the immediate post-CPB period, TEE exam is valuable for evaluation of residual VSD and ventricular function.

Pre-CPB	See ASD (see p. 1235).	
CPB	See ASD (see p. 1235).	Most VSDs are closed under mild/moderate hypothermic CPB (28–32°C).
Transition off CPB	See ASD (see p. 1235).	
Post-CPB	Maintenance of adequate filling pressure (LA = 5–10 mm Hg) Temporary pacemaker wires TEE Pulmonary HTN	 Placed in patients with conduction disturbances; pacemaker wires are placed routinely but may not be connected to a pacemaker. ✓ for residual shunt and ventricular and valvular function, residual air.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Persistent bleeding Heart block Ventricular dysfunction/failure JET	May occur particularly after perimembranous VSD closure Especially in patients with ventriculotomy Dx: TEE. Evaluate for need of esmolol, amiodarone, procainamide, ✓ for cooling, paralysis.
Tests	ABGs Electrolytes; Hct; coags prn CXR	

Suggested Readings

1. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russell L, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
2. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, et al: Ventricular septal defect. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 850–910.
3. Walker SG: Anesthesia for left-to-right shunt lesions. Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell, Chichester, UK: 2010, 373–97.

SURGERY FOR PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) usually is located between the proximal descending thoracic aorta and the main PA. Pathophysiologically, this results in L → R shunting and augmented pulmonary blood flow, which, if left untreated, may lead to pulmonary HTN and CHF. A relatively common congenital heart anomaly, comprising 12–15% of CHDs, PDA was first successfully ligated by Gross in 1938. Early administration of indomethacin may promote ductal closure in many premature infants, obviating surgical intervention; however, this mode of therapy generally is contraindicated in the setting of renal insufficiency or intracranial bleeding.

Surgical ductal closure is indicated for significant L → R shunting. The ductus usually can be exposed via a small, left, posterolateral thoracotomy in the 4th intercostal space or via the thoracoscopic approach. The ductus is identified and dissected with special care taken to avoid injury to the phrenic and left recurrent laryngeal nerves (Fig. 12.4-4). The ductus is interrupted with a surgical clip in neonates; in older children, the ductus is double- or triple-ligated or divided between vascular clamps, and the ends are oversewn. A small thoracostomy tube is placed, and the thoracotomy is closed. The thoracostomy tube is removed in the OR immediately after the chest is closed or a few hours later.

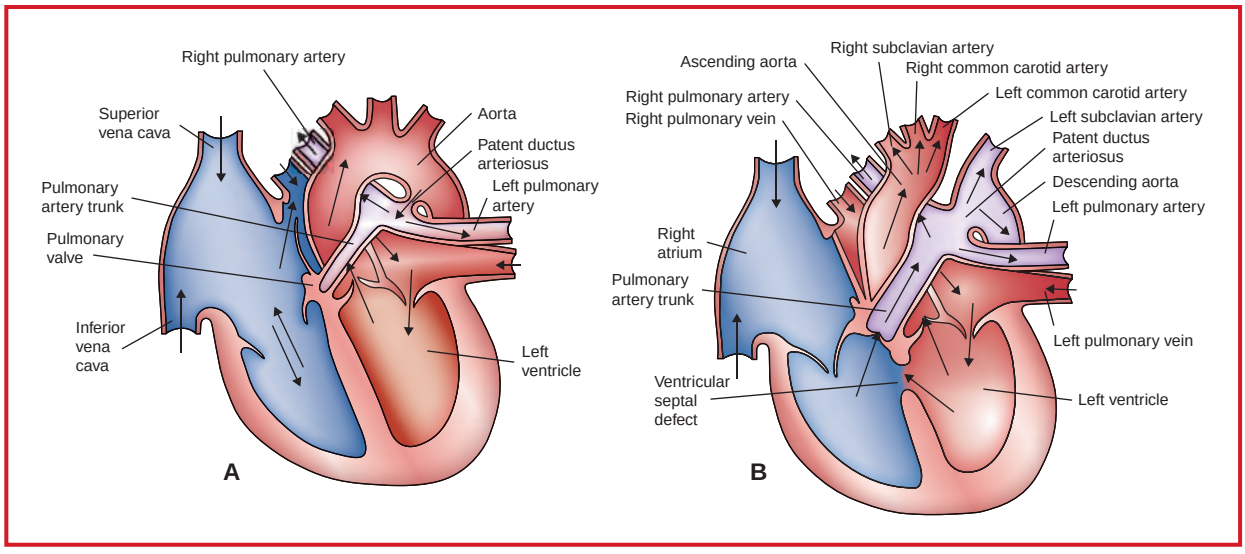


Figure 12.4-4. PDA. **A:** Ductal dependency for pulmonary blood flow in pulmonary valvular atresia. The ductus arteriosus must be open for blood to enter the pulmonary arteries; as the ductus arteriosus closes, pulmonary blood flow is lost, and the patient becomes cyanotic. **B:** Dependence on the ductus arteriosus for perfusion of the distal aorta is shown in a patient with interrupted aortic arch. Left ventricular blood (oxygenated) is able to cross the VSD and enter the PA, where it mixes with right ventricular blood. The flow is then distributed to the branch PAs and across the ductus arteriosus to the descending aorta. (Reproduced with permission from Ungerleider RM, Plunkett MD, Gaynor JW: Congenital heart disease. In: Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP, eds. *Surgery of Infants and Children*. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997).

Variant procedure or approaches: **Percutaneous coil embolization** and **thoracoscopic clip ligation** are standard alternative approaches. A **robotic approach**.

Usual preop diagnosis: PDA

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Right lateral decubitus (in case of right-sided PDA with right aortic arch, left lateral decubitus)
Incision	Small left posterolateral thoracotomy; 3rd or 4th intercostal space
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg q 4 h
Surgical time	30–60 min
Closing considerations	Routine closure ± left thoracostomy tube
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	24-h observation in ICU; extubation in the OR or within several h
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury Chylothorax
Pain score	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1 mo–adulthood
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	12–15% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	Failure of complete ductal closure

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Closure of a PDA in the preterm infant is done at the bedside in the NICU. These patients are intubated, mechanically ventilated, hemodynamically unstable, and may require inotropic support. The premature infant requiring surgical closure of a PDA typically presents because indomethacin Rx has failed or is contraindicated. They often have primary pulmonary disease and multisystem organ problems. In these infants, the symptoms of large L → R shunt and pulmonary overcirculation → cardiac and respiratory failure and ventilator dependence. Ductal runoff causes ↓ diastolic blood pressure thereby compromising coronary perfusion pressure and distal organ perfusion. Older patients may be eligible for endovascular closure in the cath lab, leaving a small percentage for open surgical closure in the OR. Surgical closure may be performed with video-assisted thoracoscopy (VAT) or via thoracotomy. More recently, a hybrid approach has been applied in select patients in some centers. In older asymptomatic patients, risk of bacterial endocarditis necessitates closure.

Cardiovascular	Clinical presentation depends on the degree of L → R shunting which is dictated by the size of the ductus, its location, the PVR/SVR ratio, and any additional congenital cardiac abnormalities. An infant with a large ductus can present with CHF due to pulmonary overcirculation as well as with tachypnea, tachycardia, diaphoresis, failure to thrive (FTT), and hepatosplenomegaly. A continuous systolic murmur heard best at the left upper sternal border and widened pulse pressure with bounding pulses may be present. **Tests:** CXR: Normal or cardiomegaly with ↑ PA size and ↑ pulmonary vascular markings. EKG: Normal or LVH/RVH. ECHO diagnostic: documents patency, evaluates left-sided cardiac chamber sizes and aortic arch anatomy, and estimates size of shunt.
Laboratory	Hct; others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Not indicated in premature infants. Midazolam 0.5–0.7 mg/kg po 20 min prior to induction for children > 9 mo having routine PDA closure.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Most children presenting for elective closure of PDA via thoracotomy are candidates for a thoracic epidural or, in patients < 10 kg, a caudal catheter can be threaded up to thoracic level 8–10. If a neuraxial block is contraindicated or not desired, a subcostal or paravertabrel block are reasonable alternatives for postop analgesia. In patients undergoing thoracoscopic closure, an epidural is not required. Although in small patients, retraction of the left lung may be sufficient to expose the surgical site. In patients >25 kg, placement of a DLT for selective ventilation of the right lung may be necessary to improve surgical access. In general, these patients are candidates for early extubation in the OR (see fast-track in ASD, p. 1234).

Induction	At the bedside of the preterm infant, anesthesia can be provided with ketamine (1–2 mg/kg) and muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 1 mg/kg iv). Small doses of fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg) may be given for supplemental analgesia. During lateral decubitus positioning, careful attention to the airway and close monitoring of BP is necessary. Children presenting in the OR for elective operation tolerate an inhalation induction with sevoflurane in 50% N_2O + O_2. Once the patient is anesthetized, iv access is established, followed by oral intubation, with administration of a muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 1 mg/kg).

Maintenance	In patients for whom immediate postop extubation is planned, anesthesia is maintained with isoflurane in air + O_2 ± remifentanil (0.1–0.4 mcg/kg/min). Surgical retraction of the left lung, specifically if a VATS is performed, may require ↑ FiO_2 to prevent hypoxemia. Prior to lung isolation, hyperoxia and hypocarbia should be avoided to limit degree of L → R shunting.	
Emergence	Older patients with an isolated PDA and no PVOD may be candidates for fast-tracking and may be extubated awake in the OR. In these cases, and if a thoracotomy has been performed, an effective regional anesthetic is particularly helpful for fast-tracking.	
Epidural	Thoracic level T8–10 preferred. For neonates < 10 kg, a caudal catheter can be advanced to thoracic levels. Correct tip location should be verified either via US/Doppler or fluoroscopy. Then, an initial bolus of bupivacaine (0.25%) or ropivacaine (0.2%) at 0.3–0.5 mL/kg with either hydromorphone (5–10 mcg/kg) ± clonidine (0.5–1 mcg/kg) is administered (Max 20 mL, in intermittent doses titrated to hemodynamic tolerance). Subsequently, bupivacaine or ropivacaine may either be infused or bolused at a rate of 0.2–0.4 mg/kg/h depending on the patient's age. ✓ coagulation parameters prior to placing epidural/caudal catheter.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22–24 × 1–2 Continue iv dextrose. Blood warmer T&C ✓ for air bubbles	Usually blood loss is minimal but may become significant if the ductus is torn during ligation. Have blood available for rapid transfusion. Clear air bubbles from iv tubing and stopcocks (potential bidirectional shunt → paradoxical embolism).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line	Both blood pressure monitoring and pulse oximetry should be applied to the upper extremity, preferably the right arm (preductal) as well as the lower extremity (postductal) to detect inadvertent aortic ligation: → ↓ LE pulses/pressure/perfusion. Inadvertent PA occlusion → ↓ SpO_2 + ↓ $ETCO_2$.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Occlusion of aorta or PA Torn ductus → hemorrhage Residual PDA Creation of coarctation Lung trauma ± pneumothorax	 ✓ ECHO.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury Vagus nerve injury	
Tests	Hct CXR	Other tests as indicated

Suggested Readings

1. Bacha EA, Hijazi ZM: Hybrid procedures in pediatric cardiac surgery. Seminars in thoracic and cardiovascular surgery. *Pediatr Card Surg Annu* 2005: 78–85.
2. Boltz MG, Hammer GB, Andropoulos DB: Regional anesthesia and postoperative pain management. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, et al, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2010, 356–70.
3. Chaudhary V, Chauhan S, Choudhury M, Kiran U, Vasdev S, Talwar S: Parasternal intercostals block with ropivacaine for postoperative analgesia in pediatric patients undergoing cardiac surgery: a double-blind, randomized, controlled study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2012; 26:439–42.

4. Diaz LK: Anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in pediatric patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Pediatric Drugs* 2006; 8:223–33.
5. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russell IA, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
6. Hammer GB: Regional anesthesia for pediatric cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 1999; 13:210–3.
7. Janvier A, Martinez JL, Barrington K, et al: Anesthetic technique and postoperative outcome in preterm infants undergoing PDA closure. *J Perinatology* 2010; 30:677–82.
8. Peterson KL, DeCampli WM, Pike NA, et al: A report of 220 cases of regional anesthesia in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2000; 90:1014–19.
9. Walker SG: Anesthesia for left-to-right shunt lesions. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, et al, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell Publishing, Chichester, UK: 2010, 373–97.

SURGERY FOR COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Coarctation of the aorta is a congenital narrowing of the upper descending aorta, typically located at the juxtaductal region (Fig. 12.4-5). Coexisting intracardiac defects are not uncommon. Surgical repair of aortic coarctation, first performed by **Crafoord** in 1944, consisted of resection of the narrowed aortic segment, followed by an **end-to-end repair.** The same year, **Blalock** and **Park** proposed an alternative technique in which the left subclavian artery was divided distally and sutured into the descending thoracic aorta, creating a bypass. Subsequently, the use of an onlay prosthetic graft to widen the area of coarctation and the use of a **subclavian artery flap** were described by **Waldhausen. Prosthetic interposition tube graft repairs** have been described in patients with diffuse aortic hypoplasia. Patients with an associated intracardiac L → R shunt (e.g., VSD) may require concomitant pulmonary artery banding following repair of the coarctation.

In infants, a left posterolateral thoracotomy approach is used. The lung is retracted anteriorly, and the pleura are incised vertically over the aorta, along the left subclavian artery and the descending aorta. The aortic arch, all the arch branches, and the descending aorta are thoroughly mobilized. The PDA/ligamentum arteriosus is ligated and divided. Vascular clamps are placed across the aortic arch and the descending aorta. The aortic arch clamp also

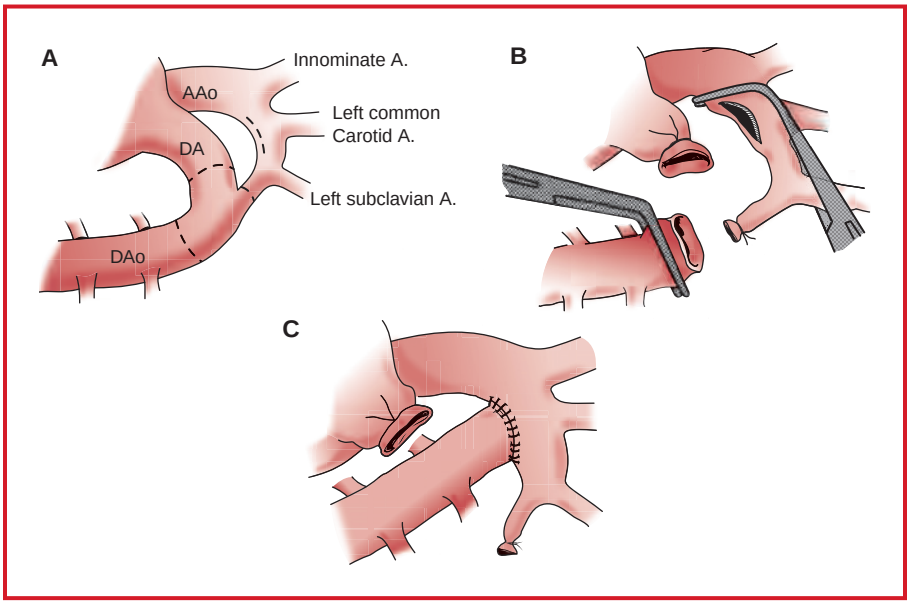


Figure 12.4-5. Redrawn with permission from Younoszai AK, Reddy VM, Hanley FL, et al: Intermediate term follow-up of the end-to-side aortic anastomosis for coarctation of the aorta. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2002; 74(5):1631–4.

partially occludes the distal ascending aorta. The aortic isthmus is ligated. The coarctated segment and all ductal tissue from the descending aorta are excised. An aortotomy is made in the aortic arch (may extend on to the distal ascending aorta), and the descending aorta is anastomosed to the aortic arch. Rarely if a subclavian flap angioplasty is performed, the distal left subclavian artery is ligated and opened longitudinally down into the aorta, across the coarctation, and into the descending aorta. The subclavian flap is then turned down and anastomosed to the descending aorta across the coarctated segment. Patch aortoplasty is performed by creating a longitudinal aortotomy above and below the coarctation and suturing a generously sized patch onto the defect. Following repair, the aortic cross-clamps are released, and hemostasis is secured. A pleural drainage tube is placed, and the pleura are sutured over the aorta, followed by standard closure.

Variant procedure or approaches: In adults and older children (teens), **balloon dilatation with stent placement** is an acceptable alternative.

Usual preop diagnosis: Coarctation of the aorta

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Infant	Child or Adult
Position	Right lateral decubitus	⇐
Incision	Posterolateral left thoracotomy, 3rd–4th interspace	⇐
Unique considerations	Right upper limb arterial line. Avoid iv or arterial lines in left arm. Mild hypothermia and surface cooling (35°C).	Collateral circulation is adequate if distal aortic MAP > 50 mm Hg. In rare cases of inadequate collateral circulation, left atrial-to-descending-aorta or femoral bypass should be considered. Mild hypothermia of 35° may be useful.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h	⇐
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 12–20 min Total: 1–1.5 h	Aortic cross-clamp: 10–15 min Total: 2–2.5 h
Closing considerations	Thoracostomy tube	⇐
EBL	Minimal	1–2 mL/kg
Postop care	Early extubation in ICU; consider intercostal nerve block or epidural analgesia; careful control of MAP may require SNP or esmolol infusion.	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Chylothorax Bleeding Infection Paraplegia: < 0.5%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	8–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Infant	Child or Adult
Age range	1 wk–1 yr	1 yr–adult
Male:Female	2:1; 1:1 for coarctations with associated defects	⇐

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)

	Infant	Child or Adult
Incidence	5–8% of congenital heart defects	5% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	Unknown. Ductal sling may be the single most contributory factor.	⇐
Associated conditions	PDA (50%); VSD (36%); congenital mitral stenosis (7%); single ventricle (7%); TGA/VSD (7%)	Usually an isolated defect. When repaired at a later age, bicuspid aortic valve.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	Coarctation is a narrowing of the aortic arch, most commonly occurring at the junction of the ductus arteriosus (juxta-ductal) and distal to the left subclavian artery. The clinical presentation of the neonate or infant with coarctation depends on (a) location and degree of obstruction, (b) rate at which high-grade stenosis developed thereby affecting the degree of collateralization to the distal aorta, (c) patency of the ductus, (d) PVR, and (e) associated cardiac anomalies. It has been hypothesized that coarctation develops in the setting of reduced anterograde flow in the aorta, thereby providing a possible explanation why this anatomic pathology is found in the setting of left-obstructive lesions (MS, AS, HLHS, aortic arch hypoplasia) but virtually never along with right-obstructive lesions. Neonates with critical stenosis will demonstrate ductal-dependent aortic flow (R → L shunt) resulting in differential cyanosis. With the PVR initially being high and systemic RV pressure being low, LE pulses may be palpable, obscuring the diagnosis. In these patients, closure of the duct over the ensuing 4–10 d of life will result in near loss of distal perfusion leading to acidemia, gut ischemia, and cold lower extremities. If there is an associated ASD/VSD, the acute increase in LV afterload will further enhance L → R shunting and divert blood from the distal aorta. These neonates may present in shock and require prompt resuscitation and surgery. Patients with mild-to-moderate stenosis and no associated abnormalities will be asymptomatic with upper extremity HTN and diminished lower extremity pulses.
Respiratory	**Tests:** CXR (cardiomegaly, characteristic aorta, PE)
Cardiovascular	**Neonates:** Neonates present with "critical" coarctation and are ductal-dependent. If the ductus is closing, PGE_1 administration to reopen the duct—or to at least relax juxtaductal tissue—can be life saving. PGE_1 treatment may also allow time for ECHO assessment of associated lesions. **Infants:** Present with upper extremity hypertension and murmur. Imaging studies such as MRI or CT scan may be needed to confirm diagnosis if gradient is not well detected by ECHO. **Older children:** Often present with upper extremity HTN, HA, and diminished or absent femoral pulses. The indication for operation is similar to that of infants. Systemic HTN and LVH may not resolve following repair. **Tests:** ECHO; ECG; ABG; CXR—rib notching 2° collateral vessels. (This is a late finding.) Recently, cardiac MRI or CT angio of the chest are used to diagnose coarctation and other associated anomalies.
Renal	**Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes
CNS	PGE_1 is associated with apnea in the newborn. Generally, the neonate is intubated once the prostaglandin infusion is started.
Laboratory	Hct; T&C
Premedication	Not appropriate in severely ill infants. Otherwise, for patients > 9 mo, midazolam 0.5–0.7 mg/kg po (maximum of 20 mg). For children > 25 kg, lorazepam 1–2 mg po 2 h before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. For the neonate, fast-tracking is not appropriate.

Induction	In neonates, an iv induction with fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg) and rocuronium (0.6–1 mg/kg) is appropriate to achieve stable hemodynamic conditions. Maintain HR, preload, and contractility to maintain cardiac output. Avoid ↓ SVR and myocardial depression, as well as ↑ SVR, as the latter may further reduce LV cardiac output. In older patients, with only proximal systemic HTN, iv induction or inhalation induction (sevoflurane and O_2) is usually well tolerated. In most neonates, infants and children, single-lumen ETT is sufficient. In some children, selective ventilation of the right lung with a DLT will facilitate surgery.	
Maintenance	An opioid technique (10–20 mcg/kg fentanyl ± volatile agent) is appropriate for critically ill neonates. Consider mild hypothermia (34–35°C) for CNS protection. The operation usually is via a left thoracotomy. The aortic arch, isthmus, and descending aorta are mobilized. 100 U/kg of heparin may be given. The ductus arteriosus is ligated, then the aortic arch and descending aorta are occluded. The anesthesiologist should observe the arterial line trace closely during proximal occlusion and immediately inform the surgeon of any damping, check BP/SaO_2 in UE (right arm) and LE. If early postop extubation is planned, see fast-tracking (see p. 1234). In neonates with critical stenosis, continuation of a PGE_1 infusion until CPB has been established may be necessary to avoid cardiovascular collapse.	
Emergence	Older infants and children, without coexisting disease, undergoing elective operation can usually be extubated in the OR. In young infants, SBP consistently > 120 mm Hg should be treated, and an esmolol and or SNP infusion may have to be started in the OR. In neonates or infants with compromised cardiac function, extubation should be delayed until their clinical status has improved. Dopamine or milrinone may be required. A chest tube is left in place to monitor blood loss or the appearance of a chylous effusion.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: appropriate for patient size × 1–2 LR @ TKO (D5 LR in neonates) Blood warmer T&C 1–2 U.	As a rule, infants and children undergoing coarctation repair will not require transfusion. Infrequently, however, sudden and substantial blood loss can occur, necessitating rapid transfusion. Adequate iv access and immediate availability of blood are essential in this operation.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). RUE arterial line ± CVP	BP must be monitored above and below the level of coarctation. A right radial arterial line allows BP monitoring during occlusion of the aortic arch. If a percutaneous radial arterial line cannot be placed, a surgical cutdown should be performed or a right axillary arterial line should be placed.
	BP cuffs × 2 (UE + LE)	Both upper and lower extremity cuff pressures should be monitored.
	Temperature	Monitor rectal temperature and maintain it below 35°C.
	NIRS	Both cerebral and somatic ✓ ABG, glucose, Hct at intervals.
Control of BP	Anesthetic depth	In neonates and infants, GA is usually sufficient to control BP during aortic cross-clamp; however, SNP may be necessary to control BP in some patients. Caution should be exercised to avoid ↓↓ BP, because ↓ aortic pressure and ↑ CSF pressure will impair spinal cord perfusion.

Aortic cross-clamping	± Heparin 100 U/kg Ductus arteriosus ligated Aorta cross-clamped × 2 ✓ arterial line for damping. Ischemia time = 10–20 min Maintain distal perfusion. Lactic acidosis → ↓ SVR + ↓BP.	Aortic cross-clamping presents an acute afterload to the LV. In preparation for release of cross-clamp, decrease or eliminate volatile anesthetic. Be prepared for volume resuscitation (blood, colloid, crystalloid) and hyperventilation. $NaHCO_3$ is frequently required (1–2 mEq/kg). ✓ ABG and treat accordingly.
Complications	Spinal cord ischemia HTN Bleeding Hypothermia Residual coarctation	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Paraplegia HTN Bleeding GI bleed Abdominal pain and ileus Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury Phrenic nerve injury Chylous effusion Residual or recurrent coarctation	Incidence = 0.14–0.4%. The cause is likely 2° spinal cord ischemia. Occurs infrequently. Attributable to mesenteric arteritis. Neonates are at risk for GI reperfusion injury following repair. These patients are kept npo for 12–24 h.
Tests	CXR Hct ABGs	

Suggested Readings

1. Boltz MG, Hammer GB, Andropoulos DB: Regional anesthesia and postoperative pain management. 2nd ed. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, et al, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease,* 2nd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2010, 356–70.
2. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
3. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EG, Doty DB, et al: Coarctation of the aorta and interrupted aortic arch. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds. *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 1315–76.
4. Maddali MM, Valliattu J, Al Delamie T, et al: Selection of the monitoring side and outcome after neonatal coarctation repair. *Asian Cardiovascular & Thoracic Annals* 2010; 16:236–9.
5. Spaeth JP, Loepke AW: Anesthesia for left-sided obstructive lesions. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel LA, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*. Blackwell Publishing, Chichester, UK: 2010, 398–418.

SURGERY FOR TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In **tetralogy of Fallot (TOF),** the RV infundibulum is maldeveloped, resulting in RV outflow tract obstruction (RVOTO), a large malalignment (overriding aorta) VSD, RVH (see Fig. 12.4-6), and, occasionally, an ASD (**pentalogy of Fallot**). TOF is the most common cyanotic congenital cardiac defect. Pathophysiologically, RVOTO leads to significant R → L shunting across a nonrestrictive VSD, which, in turn, leads to inadequate pulmonary blood flow and varying degrees of cyanosis. The variation in presentation depends primarily on the severity and type of RVOTO.

Patients with TOF were first treated palliatively beginning in 1944, with the introduction of the **Blalock-Taussig** (B-T) **systemic-to-pulmonary artery shunt.** This procedure augments pulmonary blood flow and, hence, systemic

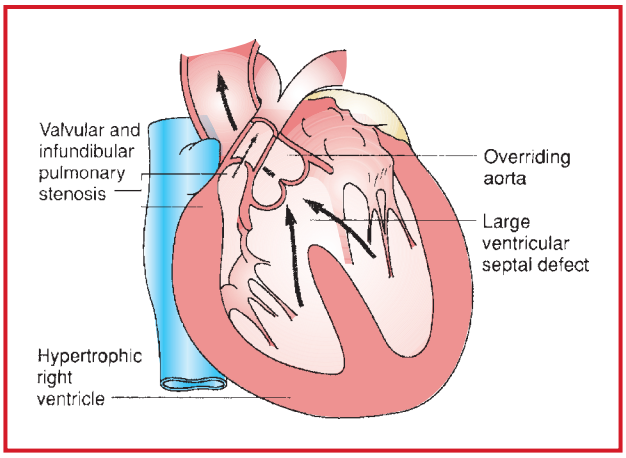


Figure 12.4-6. Anatomic features of tetralogy of Fallot. The primary morphologic abnormality, anterior and superior displacement of the infundibular septum, results in malalignment VSD, overriding the aortic valve and obstructing RV outflow. RV hypertrophy is a secondary occurrence. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 2nd edition. Lippincott-Raven Publishers, Philadelphia: 1997.)

oxygenation. Currently, however, most cases of TOF are treated routinely with early complete correction between 3–12 mo of age. Neonatal repair is performed in infants who are severely cyanotic (SaO_2 < 80%), have ductal-dependent pulmonary blood flow, or have cyanotic spells. Initial palliation with the B-T procedure is now reserved for patients with severe pulmonary arterial hypoplasia and (by some surgeons) for an anomalous left anterior descending coronary artery originating from the right coronary artery.

Surgical correction is performed through a standard median sternotomy on standard CPB with moderate hypothermia. During cooling, the modified B-T shunt, if present, is ligated and divided, followed by aortic cross-clamping, cardioplegic arrest, and topical cooling. The pulmonary valve and RVOT are accessed through a longitudinal pulmonary arteriotomy and the tricuspid valve (via a right atriotomy), respectively. RVOTO is treated as necessary by infundibular muscle resection, pulmonary valvotomy or valvectomy, and patch augmentation of the main PA or its branches. Autologous pericardium, Gore-Tex, or other type of synthetic/biologic material may be used for patch widening the RVOT at any level, from the RV to the PAs. The primary goal in relieving the RVOTO is to save the pulmonary valve, avoid a transcannular patch, and minimize pulmonary valve insufficiency. The VSD, accessed through the tricuspid valve, is closed with a patch (pericardial/Dacron) in the standard fashion with care being taken to avoid injury to the bundle of His.

Variant procedure or approaches: In patients with severe hypoplasia or atresia of the RVOT, or in patients with an anomalous origin of the LAD coronary artery from the right coronary artery, a **Rastelli procedure** is performed. This operation consists of patch closure of the VSD and reconstruction of the RVOT in which a conduit, in the form of a cryopreserved homograft or valved prosthesis, is placed between the RV and the PA.

Usual preop diagnosis: TOF; cyanotic CHD; severe cyanotic spells; failure to thrive (FTT)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Neonate Repair	Infant and Adult Repair With Standard CPB
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Standard median sternotomy	⇐
Unique considerations	R → L shunt → systemic embolization	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Neonate Repair	Infant and Adult Repair With Standard CPB
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–60 min CPB: 90–120 min Total: 3–4 h	30–50 min 75–100 min 3–4 h
Closing considerations	Chest tube in pericardial (and possibly pleural) space, if opened; temporary ventricular pacing wires; routine right- and left-atrial lines for monitoring.	⇐
EBL	Moderate	⇐
Postop care	ICU × 2–3 d. 1- to 3-d assisted ventilation; inotropes for RV dysfunction	ICU for 1–2 d
Mortality	~2%	⇐
Morbidity	Junctional tachycardia Atrial dysrhythmias Hemorrhage Infection Low CO Stroke Heart block Residual VSD Transient, right-side CHF	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	8–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Neonate–adult (usually < 6 mo)
Male:Female	3:2
Incidence	10% of congenital cardiac defects
Etiology	22 g microdeletion is seen in some patients, who also may have DiGeorge syndrome; higher than expected prevalence of older maternal age at time of conception of affected children.
Associated conditions	A-V canal; PDA; previous systemic-to-pulmonary arterial shunt; anomalous left coronary artery from pulmonary artery (ALCAPA); metabolic acidosis (profound hypoxia); right-sided aortic arch

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	TOF is the most common form of cyanotic heart disease. Its clinical presentation can vary greatly (e.g., signs of CHF, pink-tets, profound cyanosis) reflecting its wide anatomic variations. The critical factor is the degree of RVOTO, which determines the amount of R → L shunting across the VSD. In TOF, the RVOTO usually has fixed and dynamic components. The latter can be related to RV infundibular spasm and variations in pH, $PaCO_2$, and PaO_2. The onset of hypercyanotic episodes in an infant < 3 mo of age is an indication for complete surgical repair.
"TET" spells	Hypercyanotic episodes or "TET" spells: These constitute medical and surgical emergencies; however, they are seen less frequently due to early surgical intervention. TET spells may present in early infancy and are related to infundibular spasm resulting in ↑ R → L shunting.

Table 12.4-1. Treatment for TET Spells

Treatment Modalities	Effect
1. Knee-chest position	↑ SVR.
2. Abdominal compression	Simulates squatting. ↑ SVR, ↑ preload, opens RVOT.
3. Volume administration	↑ preload, opens RVOT.
4. O_2	Pulmonary vasodilator
5. Sodium bicarbonate	Correction of metabolic acidosis, normalizes SVR (1–2 meq/kg)
6. Analgesia and sedation	Negative inotropy → reduced RVOT spasm. Morphine sulfate 0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv
7. Alpha-agonist (phenylephrine)	↑ SVR. Dose: 10 mcg/kg bolus and repeat. 2–5 mcg/kg/min (may not be effective in cases of severe RVOT)
8. Beta-blockers (esmolol)	Negative inotropy. Dose: 50 mcg/kg bolus. 50–300 mcg/kg/min infusion.

"TET" spells (Con'd)	If untreated, these episodes can progress to unconsciousness, Sz, and death. For management of TET spells, see Table 12.4-1, above.
Respiratory	Infectious/asthmatic pulmonary processes will complicate preop and postop cardiopulmonary function. Optimize pulmonary function preop. **Tests:** CXR: ↓ pulmonary vascular markings.
Cardiovascular	Although not typical for TOF, patients may present with CHF if left unrepaired and if there is only minimal RVOTO. An understanding of the patient's anatomic defects and their pathophysiology (e.g., is their RVOTO fixed or dynamic?) is essential for formulating the anesthetic plan. Avoid prolonged fasting to prevent profound decreases in preload on induction. **Tests:** ABG; ECG: ✓ for RVH, right axis deviation (RAD) ± complete or incomplete RBBB. CXR: ✓ heart size, "coeur en sabot" (elevation of apex 2° RVH, RAE). Cardiac cath and ECHO: Locate site of pulmonary outflow obstruction, VSD, bronchopulmonary collaterals, PDA, abnormal patency of previous surgical shunts (e.g., B-T shunt). Define aortic arch anatomy, abnormal coronary or subclavian arteries, tricuspid regurgitation/aortic insufficiency (TR/AI), ventricular function.
Hematologic	Polycythemia (typical with chronic O_2 sat < 90%) → ↑ blood viscosity → thromboembolic events. Polycythemia → ↓ Plt + coagulopathy. Extreme polycythemia (> 70 HcT) may require isovolemic hemodilution intraop. **Tests:** CBC; Plt; bleeding time; coag profile
Laboratory	Electrolytes if on diuretics; otherwise, tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Desirable to ↓ anxiety, avoid TET spells and facilitate separation from parents. Midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po 20 min before induction in a monitored setting.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Patients with TOF, pulmonary atresia, and MAPCAS (major aortopulmonary collaterals) requiring unifocalization, present a challenge for surgical and anesthetic management. Placement of a cuffed ET is necessary. OLV also may be required to facilitate surgical exposure. Bronchial bleeding 2° extensive surgical dissection requires frequent ETT suctioning. A significant portion of the procedure is done off-CPB, and hemodynamic instability with ST segment changes may occur during surgical dissection. Closely monitor blood loss and replace mL/mL with PRBCs. Avoid air bubbles in iv tubing/stopcocks. In older patients presenting for conduit change or revisions, massive blood loss should be anticipated.

Induction	Typically mask induction with sevoflurane, O_2 ± air. If iv in place, ketamine (1–2 mg/kg) and/or fentanyl (10 mcg/kg) with rocuronium (1 mg/kg) ± volatile agent. Avoid ↓ ↓ SVR. Aggressive volume expansion (10–15 mL/kg; 5% albumin) may be necessary. Verify ETT position (see p. D-2). Minimize mean airway pressure to avoid ↑ RV afterload.

Maintenance	For patients not undergoing unifocalization (subset diagnosed with TET/PA/MAPCA), anesthesia is maintained with isoflurane or sevoflurane. Maintain preload, heart rate, contractility and aggressively treat hypercyanosis. TET spells may occur due to surgical manipulation. For example, during surgical dissection for cannulation before CPB. In that case, the surgeon can provide direct aortic compression or urgently proceed to CPB. Refer to Table 12.4-1 for treatment. For patients who are undergoing unifocalization, no anesthetic technique has so far been shown to be superior to another. We prefer TIVA with propofol/ketamine/midazolam infusion. Antifibrinolytics, such as Amicar (bolus 75 mg/kg after induction, followed by 75 mg/kg by perfusionist and an infusion at 75 mg/kg/h), are routinely given to redo-patients to reduce blood loss.	
Emergence	Patients are transported to ICU monitored, intubated, and ventilated.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22 or 24 ga as approp × 2 LR @ TKO T&C PRBC	Blood in OR before incision. For all repeat sternotomy patients, have blood available for immediate administration. Have massive transfusion system setup for older patients.
Monitoring	Standard monitors Urinary catheter Arterial line (usually radial) CVP line TEE: Transthoracic LA land PA line: have transducers available.	 Double-lumen CVP placed in IJ or femoral vein. During MAPCA dissection and RVOT change with beating heart close monitoring of TEE for function and air.
Pre-CPB	Heparinization (4 mg/kg) ACT > 400 sec MAP ~70 mm Hg ✓ muscle relaxation. ✓ pupils. ✓ UO.	In the pre-CPB period, crystalloid and/or 5% albumin is administered as needed to compensate for bleeding and 3rd-space losses.
CPB	Ventilation stopped. Hypothermia: ~28°C–32°C Hct 30 typical during CPB ✓ adequate flow/pressure. ✓ anesthetic/NMB levels. ✓ pupils. ✓ face for venous congestion. ✓ ABG, electrolytes, UO, Hct, and ACT q 30 min.	Furosemide (0.5–1 mg/kg) for ↓ UO and hemoconcentration.
Transition off CPB	Rewarming Vasoactive infusions started at 32°C. Flush lines. TEE Zero transducers. Suction ETT. Resume ventilation. Observe lung inflation. Supplement NMB and deepen anesthesia. Rewarm to 36°C. ✓ bilateral breath sounds. ✓ ABGs, electrolytes, Hct (~40). ✓ ACT (> 400). ✓ ECG: pacing may be necessary.	Surgeons de-air heart, which can be monitored by TEE. A measurement of the RV and LV pressure ratio helps to judge adequacy of repair of the RVOTO. TEE also is used to evaluate the anatomy, the repair, and pressures. Infants are at risk for development of junctional ectopic tachycardia (JET). Avoid excessive warming > 37°C. Have amiodarone available (5–10 mg/kg load) given in 1 mg/kg aliquots, followed by 5–10 mcg/kg/min infusion.

Table 12.4-2. Blood Product Utilization[8]

Age of Patient	< 1 mo (Neonate)	1–12 mo (Infant)				>1 yr (Child)	
Min temp (°C) (CPB)		< 32		> 32		< 32	> 32
CPB time (min)				>90	<90		
Surgery			Complex	Simple			
a-Plt, reduce vol.	1	1	1	1	–	1 (< 20 kg)	–
a-Plt, full vol.	–	–	–	–	–	1 (> 20 kg)	–
Plt, random	–	–	–	–	A	–	A
Cryo	2	2	2	–	–	–	–
FFP	A	A	A	A	A	A	A

A = Available, but not in OR; a-Plt = Apheresis platelets; Plt = Platelets; FFP = Fresh frozen plasma; Cryo = Cryoprecipitate

Post-CPB	Inotropic support (dopamine, milrinone, epinephrine, and $CaCl_2$) Rx pulmonary HTN (↓ PVR): FiO_2 = 1 $PaCO_2$ ~35 Early use of inhaled nitric oxide (40 ppm) AV sequential pacemaker (heart block not uncommon). Transthoracic PA or LA line placed to monitor hemodynamics. Reverse anticoagulation. ✓ ECHO to assess for residual VSDs, residual RVOTO, B/V function. Rx coagulopathy	↓ RV compliance is expected. RV afterload reduction is essential, initially through ventilatory efforts: clear unobstructed ventilation; do not allow wheezing (albuterol pm); use gentle hyperventilation on 100% O_2. Inotropic support of RV also typically is used—dopamine/initially and epinephrine reserved for severe RV dysfunction. Milrinone 0.5 mcg/kg/min and $CaCl_2$ 10–20 mg/kg/h are routine in infants. See Table 12.4-2 for blood product utilization. MUF uses the CPB machine to remove excess H_2O and inflammatory mediators (↓ edema and improved cardiopulmonary function). Transport to ICU, intubated, sedated, and ventilated.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	See Postoperative Complications, below.	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Persistent bleeding Persistent RVOTO Dysrhythmias (JET) Residual VSDs Heart block RV dysfunction Pulmonary hemorrhage Phrenic/laryngeal nerve injury Horner's syndrome Chylothorax Shunt thrombosis	For neonatal repairs, a PFO may be left surgically open to allow RV decompression via a R → L intraatrial shunt. This often will result in a ↓ systemic O_2 sat. TEE will confirm the existence of interatrial shunting.
Tests	ABGs + electrolytes Coag profile CXR: ✓ line, ETT placement.	

Suggested Readings

1. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
2. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EG, Doty DB, et al: Ventricular septal defect with pulmonary stenosis or atresia. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 946–1075.
3. Reitz BA, Yuh DD, eds: *Congenital Cardiac Surgery*. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2002.
4. Schmitz ML, Ullah S: Anesthesia for right-sided obstructive lesions. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, Muoosad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*. Blackwell Publishing, Chichester, UK: 2010, 419–443.

SURGERY FOR TOTAL ANOMALOUS PULMONARY VENOUS CONNECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Total anomalous pulmonary venous connection (TAPVC) is a rare congenital cardiac malformation in which the entire pulmonary venous return empties either directly into the systemic venous channels via anomalous veins or the right atrium (Fig. 12.4-7). An interatrial R → L shunt, in the form of a PFO or an ASD, is required to maintain systemic output and, hence, survival in the postnatal period. The objective of surgical correction is to redirect the entire pulmonary venous return to the left atrium.

TAPVC was first successfully repaired in 1956 by Lewis and Varco at the University of Minnesota by joining the pulmonary venous sinus to the left atrium and closure of the ASD. Although mortality for this lesion was initially quite high, particularly in infants with obstruction of the pulmonary veins, improvements in intraop and postop management have permitted successful correction in most neonates and infants. There are four TAPVC drainage patterns as defined by Darling et al. These include **supracardiac** (45%), **cardiac** (25%), **infracardiac** (25%), and **mixed** patterns (5%) of venous drainage. The anomalous drainage in supracardiac TAPVC is usually by a left vertical vein into the innominate vein. In cardiac TAPVC, drainage is usually into the coronary sinus and occasionally into the right atrium. In infracardiac TAPVC, drainage is usually into the portal vein. The mixed type consists of combinations of the other three varieties of TAPVC.

When pulmonary venous drainage is obstructed, patients present with cyanosis severe pulmonary edema, pulmonary HTN, and ↓ CO. Symptomatic TAPVC is repaired at any age. TAPVC with obstruction is a true surgical emergency. Critically ill neonates with obstructed pulmonary venous return must undergo emergent correction after initial stabilization (i.e., intubation/ventilation, diuretics). Occasionally, preop ECMO may be required.

In most cases, the right and left pulmonary veins drain into a common pulmonary venous sinus, allowing for its anastomosis to the left atrium for a definitive repair. Through a standard median sternotomy, the aortic and venous

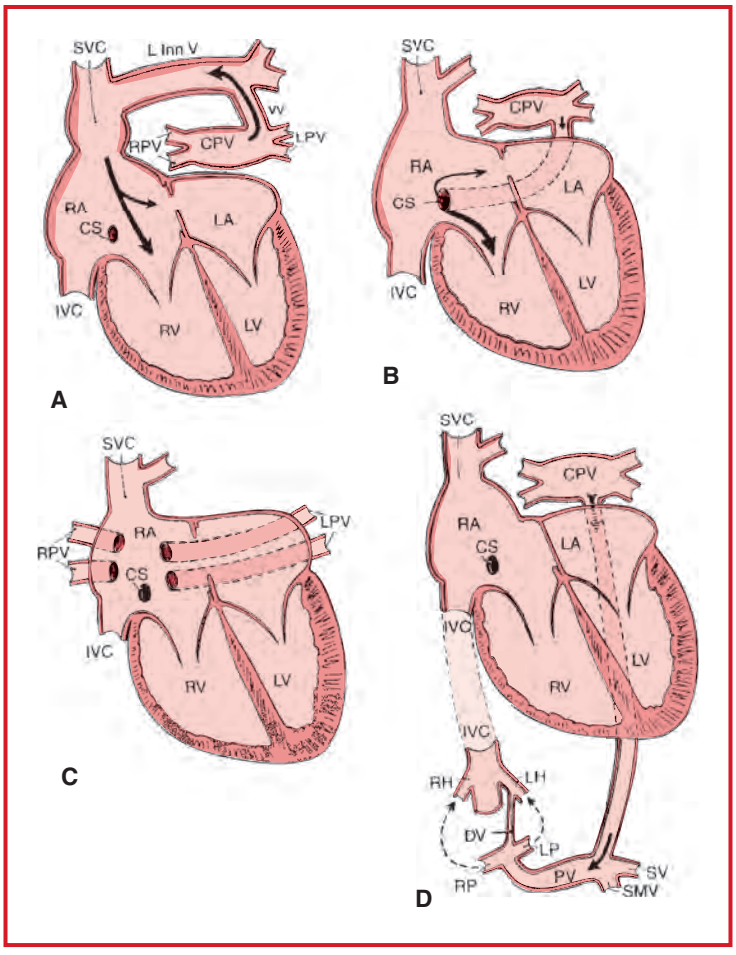


Figure 12.4-7. Common forms of TAPVC: **A:** TAPVC to the left innominate vein (L inn V) by way of a vertical vein (VV). **B:** TAPVC to coronary sinus (CS). The pulmonary veins join to form a confluence designated as the common pulmonary vein (CPV), which connects to the coronary sinus. **C:** TAPVC to right atrium (RA) The left and right pulmonary veins (LPV and RPV) usually enter the RA separately. **D:** TAPVC to the portal vein (PV). The PVs form a confluence, from which an anomalous channel arises. (Reproduced with permission from Emmanouilides GC, Allen HD, Riemenschneider TA, et al: *Clinical Synopsis of Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents*. Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1998.)

cannulae are placed and CPB with cooling is initiated. The aorta is cross-clamped, immediately followed by cardioplegic arrest. The cardiac apex is lifted up, and the pulmonary veins are identified through the posterior pericardium. The left atrium is then opened transversely with extension onto the left atrial appendage, followed by the direct anastomosis of the pulmonary venous confluence to the left atrium. Finally, via a right atriotomy, the ASD or PFO is closed. The heart is de-aired, aortic cross-clamp is released, and the patient is rewarmed and separated from bypass. Successful outcomes are dependent on early and immediate correction of TAPVC with obstruction, before lung damage ensues. Other important factors include repair without residual obstruction and postop control of pulmonary HTN.

Variant procedure or approaches: Alternatively, repair of TAPVC may be accomplished through a right atriotomy and across the atrial septum, constructing the anastomosis between the pulmonary venous confluence and left atrium from within the left atrium or through a transverse sinus approach.

Usual preop diagnosis: TAPVC; total anomalous venous return; total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage—all of these ± obstruction and either supracardiac, cardiac, or mixed types

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Standard median sternotomy
Unique considerations	Patients often require urgent or emergency surgery. Obligatory R → L shunting → risk of systemic embolization. Myocardial preservation using blood or crystalloid cardioplegia, in addition to topical myocardial hypothermia, is used.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–60 min Circulatory arrest: occasionally, 30–45 min Total: 2–3 h
Closing considerations	A fine polyvinyl catheter inserted through the free wall of the right ventricle and advanced into the pulmonary trunk will allow monitoring for pulmonary HTN. A chest tube is inserted into the pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wires are placed. Left atrial lines normally needed.
EBL	Moderate
Postop care	2–6 d of assisted ventilation, sedation and hyperventilation; pulmonary vasodilators, including isoproterenol, PGE_1, SNP; inotropes as needed for right heart dysfunction. Sometimes, if pulmonary injury is severe or pulmonary HTN is uncontrollable, ECMO may be indicated.
Mortality	2–10%, depending on presence of preop pulmonary venous obstruction and metabolic acidosis.
Morbidity	Pulmonary vasospasm: 25–40% Low CO: 10% Hemorrhage: 2–3%
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	1 d–20 yr (usually < 1 mo)
Male:Female	4:1 in infracardiac type; equal distribution in other types
Incidence	0.5–2% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	Failure of fusion of the pulmonary vein evagination (from posterior left atrium) with the pulmonary venous plexus surrounding the lung buds.
Associated conditions	PDA present in nearly all infants within the first few wk of life and in about 15% of cases overall. VSD occasionally occurs (may be associated with TOF, DORV, interrupted aortic arch, and other lesions).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	In the most common form (supradiaphragmatic type), all the pulmonary venous return drains into the right atrium via a vertical vein → innominate vein → SVC. When this vein or the pulmonary confluence is stenotic or obstructed, severe pulmonary venous HTN, cyanosis, pulmonary edema, systemic/suprasystemic RV/PA pressure, and shock ensue. This is a true surgical emergency, requiring immediate intervention. Delivery of all pulmonary venous blood to the RA results in a large L → R shunt. There is a total mixing of the blood in the RA and an ASD or PFO are essential for survival.
Respiratory	In patients with obstructed TAPVR, expect severe pulmonary edema and pulmonary venous HTN. **Tests:** ✓ CXR: ↑ heart size, ↑ pulmonary vascularity, "figure-of-8," or "snowman" cardiac silhouette.

Cardiovascular	ECHO findings: large RV and small LA. In unobstructed patients with restrictive ASD, a balloon or blade septostomy may be necessary to improve R → L shunting. **Tests:** ✓ ECG for right axis deviation (RAD), RAE, and RVH.
Laboratory	ABG and Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Generally not indicated and not necessary in severely ill infants.
Transport of critically ill newborn	All critically ill neonates are intubated, ventilated, and often are on PGE_1 and/or dopamine infusions for hemodynamic stability. To facilitate transport of these patients, notify the nurse in advance and request all drips transferred to OR syringe pumps. Maintain a dextrose-containing infusion during and after transport to ensure normoglycemia. Verify that the transport monitor has ECG, SaO_2, and invasive pressure transducers. Resuscitation medications and airway equipment must accompany the patient.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Profound hypothermic CPB (16–18°C) with low flow may be required. For patients who weigh < 3.0 kg, we prefer to use the ICU ventilator in the OR, as this allows for maximum flexibility in ventilator support.

Induction	Infants are often severely ill and come to the OR intubated and ventilated, with invasive lines and inotropic support. Verify ETT placement. Patients are subject to rapid cardiovascular decompensation. Rocuronium (1 mg/kg) is given, as is fentanyl (1–3 mcg/kg) as tolerated. Volatile agents are rarely tolerated in obstructed TAPVC.	
Maintenance	Fentanyl (20–50 mcg/kg) in divided doses on CPB. Patients with TAPVR, especially with obstruction, have a highly reactive pulmonary vasculature. High opioid doses are useful to blunt increases in PVR due to surgical stimulation. However, for patients with TAPVR and venous obstruction, ventilatory interventions or pulmonary vasodilators to reduce PVR will worsen the pulmonary edema.	
Emergence	Transport to ICU intubated and ventilated. If NO used in OR, must have delivery system ready for transport to ICU. There may be continued requirement for inotropic support.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22–24 ga × 2 LR @ TKO Continue iv dextrose in neonates. 5% albumin PRBC Blood warmer	Avoid air bubbles with R → L shunt—can cause systemic embolization of air. ✓ blood glucose. Avoid hyperglycemia, especially during profound hypothermic CPB. Be careful with volume administration. Even small amounts of fluid in the setting of a small, noncompliant LA/LV can result in LV failure. See Table 12.4-2 for blood product utilization.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Transthoracic LA, PA, RA lines	Severely ill infants usually present with invasive monitoring and ETT. ✓ correct placement of UAC and UVC preop.
Complications	Bleeding	
	Refractory pulmonary HTN (see p. 1244)	Pulmonary HTN may be difficult to control. Ventilation maneuvers (e.g., ↓ $PaCO_2$; 100% O_2), vasodilators, and deep anesthesia to ↓ PVR. NO is started for refractory pulmonary HTN; if NO (40 ppm) is unsuccessful, ECMO may be instituted. In these instances, sternum is not closed.
	Biventricular failure	Inotropic support (dopamine, milrinone, epinephrine, calcium chloride)
	Overdose of NO → methHb	✓ metHb while on NO therapy.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	See above.	
Tests	ABG Hct; electrolytes; coags Methemoglobin CXR TEE	To assess PV → LA anastomosis and ventricular function.

Suggested Readings

1. Allen HD, Clark EB, Gutgesell HP, et al, eds: *Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents,* 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.
2. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
3. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EG, Doty DB, et al: Total Ventricular Septal Defect with pulmonary stenosis or atresia. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 946–1075.
4. Reitz BA, Yuh DD, eds: *Congenital Cardiac Surgery*. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2002.
5. Walker SG: Anesthesia for left-to-right shunt lesions. In: Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russel L, et al, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition. Blackwell Publishing, Chichester, UK: 2010, 373–97.

SURGERY FOR COMPLETE TRANSPOSITION OF THE GREAT ARTERIES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Complete **transposition of the great arteries (TGA)** is a congenital cardiac defect in which the aorta arises from the RV and the PA arises from the LV (Fig. 12.4-8). TGA is associated with an intact ventricular septum (TGA/IVS) or a ventricular septal defect (TGA/VSD). Pathophysiologically, this discordant ventriculoarterial configuration results in systemic and pulmonary circulations placed in a parallel (normally in series) configuration. Thus, a L → R shunt in the form of an atrial septal defect (ASD), VSD, or patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) is required to permit oxygenated blood to enter the "right-sided" systemic circulation. The earliest surgical treatment for TGA was described by **Blalock** and **Hanlon** in 1950 with a procedure in which an **atrial septectomy** was performed, improving the mixing of pulmonary and systemic blood at the atrial level. In the 1950s, a variety of partial physiologic corrections were developed in which the pulmonary veins or the vena cava were transposed to the alternate atria. Palliative treatment was advanced by **Rashkind's** description of a **balloon atrial septostomy** in 1966. More complete physiologic correction was obtained by **atrial switch** operations, described by **Senning** in 1959 and **Mustard** in 1963, in which systemic and pulmonary venous return were baffled to the appropriate ventricles. Postop complications with the atrial switch operations, however, led to the development of the more "anatomic" **arterial switch** operations described by **Jatene, Yacoub,** and others beginning in the 1970s. By 1987, the arterial switch operation in neonates was widely accepted as the standard approach to TGA.

Total correction is now performed routinely in the first 2 wk of life. The heart is exposed through a standard median sternotomy, and CPB is instituted. The aortic cross-clamp is applied, followed by cardioplegic arrest and induced hypothermia. The ascending aorta is transected just above the sinotubular junction at and the pulmonary trunk is transected just proximal to its bifurcation. Two buttons from the "neopulmonary artery" (former aortic root) containing the origins of the left and right coronary arteries are transposed and anastomosed to the "neoaorta" (former main pulmonary trunk). The distal aortic segment is swung beneath the PA bifurcation **(Lecompte maneuver)**. Pericardial patches are used to repair the defects resulting from excision of the coronary artery buttons, and any associated ASDs and/or VSDs are repaired. The distal aortic segment is anastomosed to the neoaorta, and the distal bifurcated pulmonary artery segment is anastomosed to the neopulmonary artery. If hypothermia has been induced, a brief period of circulatory arrest facilitates repair of the ASD and/or VSD, if present. The aortic cross-clamp is removed, and rewarming is begun during the neopulmonary arterial anastomosis. CPB is then discontinued, and closure is routine.

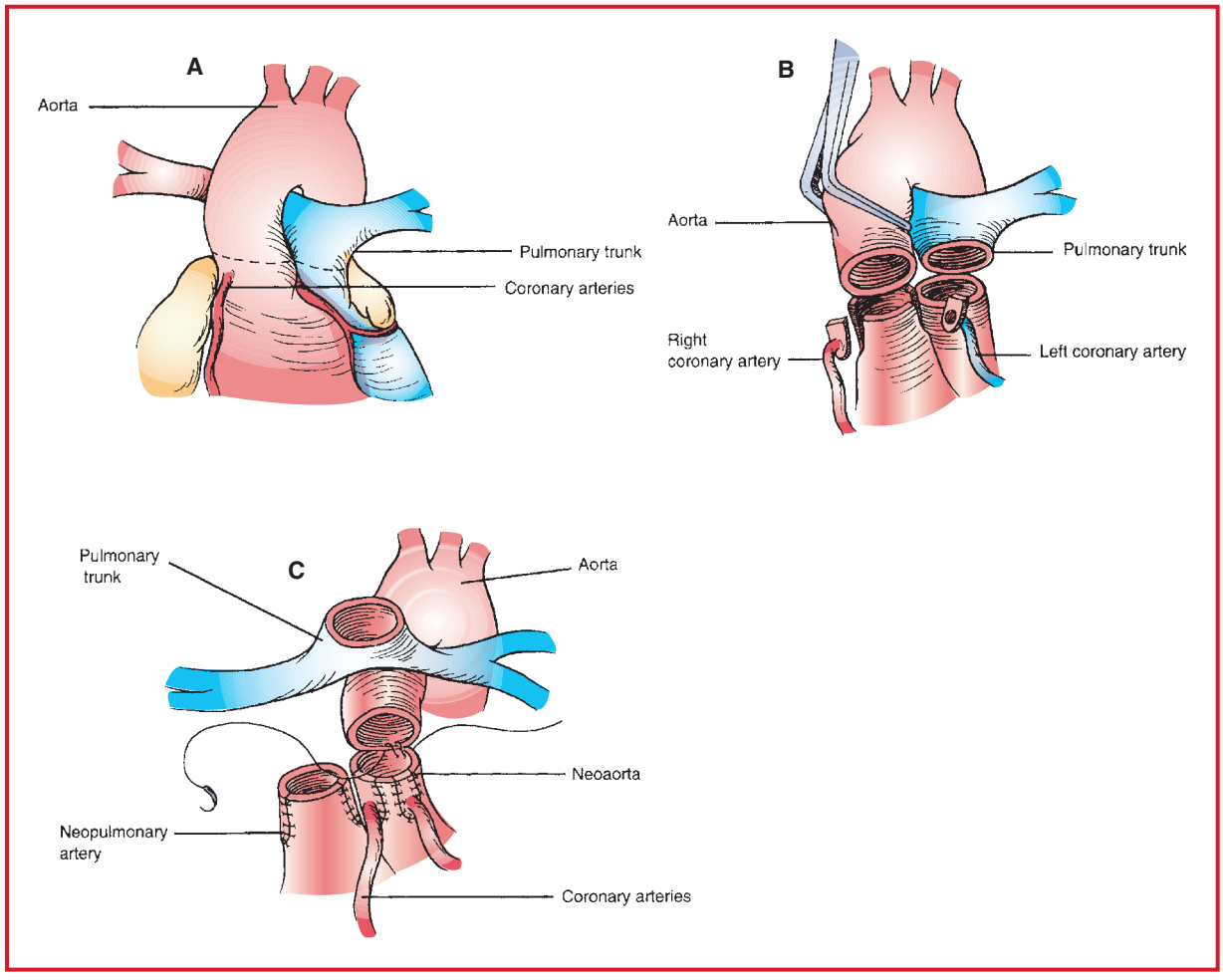


Figure 12.4-8. TGA: **A:** Typical anatomy of transposition of the great vessels, with the aorta anterior and slightly to the right of the pulmonary artery. The coronary arteries can be seen arising from the aorta. **B:** Repair is best accomplished by an arterial switch procedure in infancy. The great vessels are transsected, and the coronary arteries are removed from the aorta and placed into the proximal pulmonary artery (neoaorta). **C:** The distal aorta is brought behind the pulmonary artery bifurcation (Lecompte maneuver), and the neoaorta anastomosis is completed. (Reproduced with permission from Ungerleider RM, Plunkett MD, Gaynor JW: Congenital heart disease. In: Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP, eds. *Surgery of Infants and Children*. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

Variant procedure or approaches: In children with TGA and VSD, additional cardiac anomalies are common. These include pulmonary stenosis, pulmonary atresia, straddling atrioventricular valves, hypoplasia of ventricular chambers, and coarctation or interruption of aorta. Dynamic or structural subpulmonic obstruction is also more common in TGA and VSD than in TGA/IVS.

Rastelli procedure: The VSD is baffled to the aorta with construction of a RV → PA valved conduit and is the procedure of choice for patients with TGA/VSD and pulmonary atresia or significant valvular pulmonary stenosis. Often the VSD may have to be enlarged to prevent LVOT obstruction. Alternatively, in some cases, an aortic root translocation may be required.

Coronary arteries in TGA: Abnormalities in the origin and course of coronary arteries are common in TGA and, in the past, influenced the success of surgery. A simple rule that accounts for virtually all variations is that the coronaries

arise from the sinuses of Valsalva, which face the pulmonary artery, and follow the shortest route to their ultimate destination. Only a small number pose a problem in switching the great arteries.

Usual preop diagnosis: Complete TGA; transposition of the great vessels; transposition ± VSD; ASD; PDA

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Standard median sternotomy
Unique considerations	Operation to be performed before LV pressure falls substantially 2° ↓PVR.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 45–90 min No circulatory arrest Total: 3 h
Closing considerations	Routine closure with chest tube in the pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possible right or left atrial line for monitoring.
EBL	Moderate
Postop care	1–5 d of assisted ventilation; pulmonary HTN protocol consisting of hyperventilation and sedation and use of pulmonary vasodilators; inotropes for adequate CO.
Mortality	1–3%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Atrial dysrhythmias ↓ CO Coronary artery kinking and myocardial ischemia Pulmonary HTN
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1–21 d; ≤ 3–6 mo in TGA/VSD
Male:Female	2:1; for TGA/IVS, 3.3:1
Incidence	7–8% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	Usually no associated syndromes or other noncardiac abnormalities
Associated conditions	ASD; VSD; PDA; LVOTO; pulmonary atresia; coarctation of the aorta

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	In TGA, the pulmonary and systemic circulations flow in parallel, unlike the normal series circulation. Deoxygenated blood returns to the right heart and is pumped to the aorta and systemic circulation without passing through the lungs for gas exchange. The oxygenated blood returns via the pulmonary veins and recirculates through the LV back into the lungs. Survival depends on mixing of pulmonary and systemic blood at some level (PFO, ASD, VSD, PDA). In the absence of a septal defect, a balloon atrial septostomy (Rashkind-Miller) may be required before surgery to promote mixing.

Respiratory	Some patients are maintained preop on PGE_1 (0.01–0.05 mcg/kg/min) to maintain ductal patency. PGE_1 can cause apnea; therefore, mechanical ventilation may be required. **Tests:** CXR: ✓ enlarged heart and pulmonary edema.
Cardiovascular	Number, size, and location of sites that allow for intercirculatory mixing will determine the degree of mixing (Q_p/Q_s) and thus O_2 sats. In the absence of pulmonic stenosis, patients with nonrestrictive VSD have ↑ pulmonary blood flow (R → L shunt) and are at risk for developing CHF and PVOD. Marked cyanosis (PaO_2 25–40 mm Hg) is seen in patients with TGA/IVS restrictive PFO/ASD or with PS even if a large VSD may be present. **Tests:** EKG: right axis deviation (RAD) and RVH. ECHO. Cardiac cath defines anatomy, coronary arteries, septal defects, PFO, PDA, bronchopulmonary collaterals, LVOT, pulmonic valve function and pressures, including PVR and LV:RV ratio. Balloon atrial septostomy (Rashkind-Miller) may be required to improve mixing in some patients.
Laboratory	Hct; coags; lactate; other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Generally not necessary in children < 9 mo.
Transport of critically ill newborn	All critically ill neonates are intubated, ventilated, and often on PGE_1 and/or dopamine for hemodynamic stability. To facilitate transport of these patients, notify the nurse in advance and request all drips transferred to OR syringe pumps. An air-O_2 blender should be available so the inspired O_2 concentration can be adjusted as needed. Verify that the transport monitor has EKG, SaO_2, and invasive pressure transducers. Resuscitation medications and airway equipment must accompany the patient. Patients can be transported on room air with gentle manual ventilation, taking care to avoid hyperventilation. Avoid oversedation and use of muscle relaxants before transport.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	Neonates with TGA and intact ventricular septum are placed on PGE_1 to maintain ductal patency and promote mixing of pulmonary and systemic blood. Anesthetic management is based on maintaining a balance between systemic and pulmonary blood flows. Avoid increase in PVR/SVR ratio because this will reduce intercirculatory mixing and will worsen cyanosis. Excessive pulmonary blood flow → ↓ systemic perfusion. IV induction with ketamine (1–2 mg/kg incrementally), fentanyl (e.g., 2–15 mcg/kg incrementally), and muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 1 mg/kg) is the technique of choice. Inotropic infusion and PRBC transfusion may be required to support BP.	
Maintenance	For patients with inadequate intercirculatory mixing and ↓ pulmonary blood flow, treatment should include ventilation maneuvers to ↓ PVR (see TOF, Post-CPB, p. 1256) and improve mixing. Deep GA helps to blunt reactive pulmonary HTN. Avoid ↓ HR → ↓ CO in infants with limited myocardial reserve.	
Emergence	Control aortic BP and treat any coagulopathy. Monitor LA pressures closely. ✓ for myocardial ischemia, which can be 2° coronary air emboli or at the implantation site of the coronaries. Transport to ICU intubated and ventilated.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22–24 ga × 1–2 LR @ TKO Continue IV dextrose in neonates. 5% albumin Antifibrinolytics (e.g., aminocaproic acid)	Avoid air bubbles in patients with R → L and L → R shunts. See Table 12.4-2 for blood product utilization. Administer blood and products slowly with close monitoring of LAP. Overtransfusion can cause systemic HTN, LA dilation, or pulmonary edema, producing additional suture line bleeding or mitral regurgitation.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	Severely ill infants often present with invasive monitoring and mechanical ventilation. Correct placement of UAC and UVC should be checked preop. Also verify position of ETT.
	Transthoracic monitoring lines (RA, LA, or PA)	Placed routinely on rewarming, before weaning from CPB. These are for monitoring and administration of inotropes and other medications. The LV can be deconditioned, may be dysfunctional, and require inotropic support (dopamine, milrinone, epinephrine, and CaCl infusion). During weaning from CPB, it is critical to monitor LAP, as a reflection of left-sided filling, simultaneously with RA pressure monitoring.
	TEE	Abnormalities in coronary perfusion may manifest as changes in EKG rhythm and should be closely followed. TEE is useful both as a monitor of function and volume status. ECMO may be needed for severe ventricular dysfunction.
CPB	Management of CPB is discussed in Intraoperative Considerations for TOF (p. 1254).	Low flow or moderate hypothermic CPB. Cool with pH stat management (T corrected ABG). Warm on reperfusion with alpha stat management.
Complications	Bleeding LV dysfunction and failure Myocardial ischemia Residual structural defects Dysrhythmias Pulmonary HTN Cerebral emboli (following balloon septostomy)	In patients with TGA and IVS, the LV may be inadequate to support the systemic circulation. The LV becomes deconditioned after the PVR drops in early infancy. The LV is then unable to function as the systemic ventricle. Inotropic support (dopamine and epinephrine) and afterload reduction (e.g., SNP) may be necessary to separate from CPB. ECMO may be required for severe ventricular dysfunction.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypothermia Bleeding Dysrhythmias Myocardial ischemia LV failure	Ischemia 2° coronary artery stenosis, stretching, spasm, or compression. Spasm can be treated with NTG and ↑ aortic pressure. If the now-anterior PA dilates (↓ PaO_2, ↑ $PaCO_2$, ↓ T, ↓ pH, excessive or too little PIP, or RV failure), the coronary arteries may be compressed. Measures to ↓ PA pressure are often essential.
Tests	ABGs; electrolytes; coag profile CXR TEE	✓ line, chest tube placement; ✓ for pneumothorax.

Suggested Readings

1. DiNardo JA, Zvara DA: Congenital heart disease. *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Malden, MA: 2008, 167–251.
2. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, et al: Complete transposition of the great arteries. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 1438–508.
3. Rouine-Rapp K: Anesthesia for transposition of the great vessels. In: Andropoulos D, Stayer SA, Russel L, Mossad EB, eds. *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*. Edited by Wiley-Blackwell Publishing, Chichester, UK: 2010, 444–55.

SURGERY FOR TRUNCUS ARTERIOSUS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Truncus arteriosus is a rare cardiac anomaly in which there is a common aortopulmonary trunk originating from the base of the heart by way of a single, semilunar valve (truncal valve). This single great artery gives rise to the pulmonary, systemic, and coronary circulations. A nonrestrictive VSD is almost always found immediately below the truncal valve. An anatomic classification scheme proposed by **Collett** and **Edwards** in 1949 describes four types of truncus. In **type I** truncus (60%), a single arterial trunk gives rise to the aorta and main PA (Fig. 12.4-9A). In **type II** truncus (20%), the right and left PAs arise separately from the posterolateral aspect of the truncus. **Type III** truncus (10%) designates cases in which the two PAs also originate from the posterior truncus, but with widely separated orifices. In **type IV** truncus (10%), the PA branches are absent with pulmonary blood flow derived from aortopulmonary collaterals. Pathophysiologically, there is significant L → R shunting at the truncal and ventricular levels, leading to unrestricted pulmonary blood flow, CHF, and pulmonary HTN. Patients become symptomatic in infancy 2° CHF when the PVR ↓ and CO ↑. Untreated, 90% of infants die within 6 mo.

The first total repairs of this congenital anomaly were reported in the early 1960s and included the insertion of **nonvalved artificial conduits** and **aortic allograft and valve conduits.** In the early and mid-1970s, repair was performed at younger ages, with abandonment of palliative banding of the PA branches. Currently, early primary repair is carried out during the first few weeks of life.

Through a median sternotomy, the truncus and PA branches are dissected, and cannulation for CPB is performed. The PAs are snared to block pulmonary flow during perfusion. Hypothermia is induced, and the aorta is cross-clamped. The PAs are separated from the main truncus, the resultant aortic defect is repaired with a patch, and a

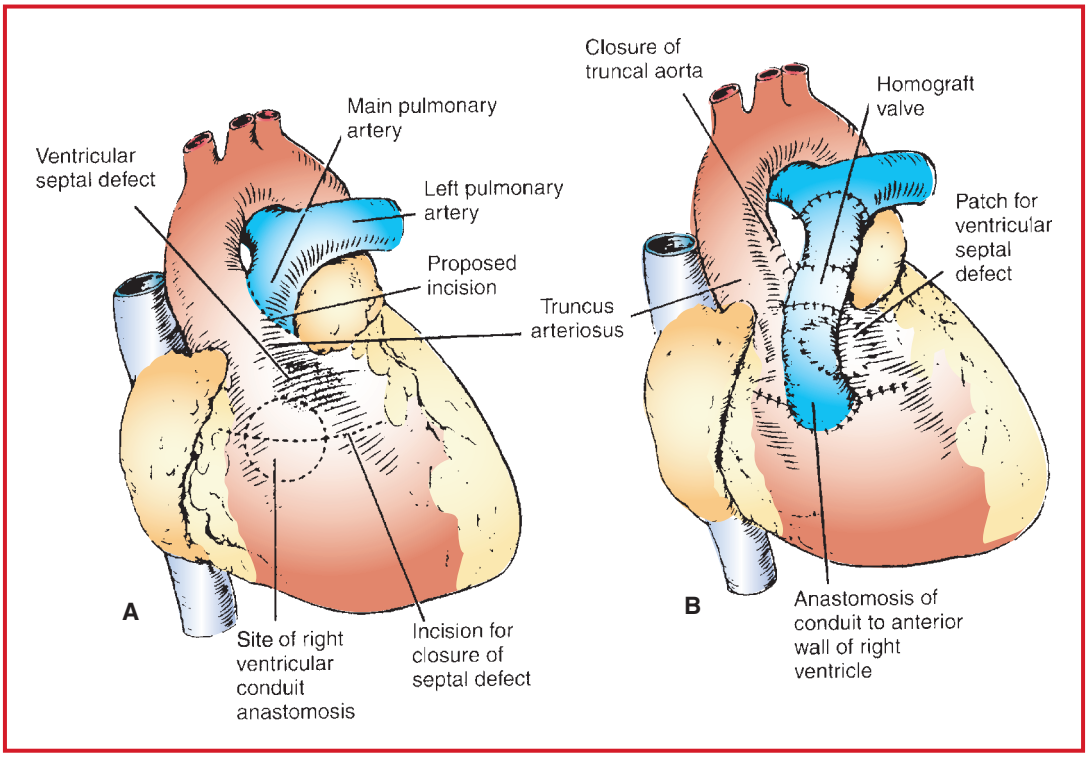


Figure 12.4-9. Truncus arteriosus. **A:** Cohen-Edwards (Type I). **B:** Surgical correction involves the separation of the main PA from the truncus, VSD patch closure, and insertion of a conduit between the RV and the distal main PA. (Reproduced with permission from Way LW: *Current Surgical Diagnosis and Treatment,* 10th edition. Lange Medical Publications, Los Altos, CA: 1973.)

valved homograft (12–14 mm) is prepared. An end-to-end anastomosis of the distal homograft to the PA opening is performed, the VSD is closed through a right ventriculotomy, and the proximal end of the homograft is then anastomosed to the right ventriculotomy (Fig. 12.4-9B). The heart is de-aired, the aorta is unclamped, rewarming and resuscitation are performed, and CPB is discontinued.

There are several **special considerations** associated with this repair that warrant mention. The truncal valve may exhibit insufficiency, necessitating valve repair or replacement using a cryopreserved aortic or pulmonary homograft. In older infants, the PVR may be elevated, and pulmonary hypertensive crises should be anticipated. In some patients, an associated interruption of the aortic arch has to be addressed and increases the complexity of the procedure. Coronary artery abnormalities are common in patients with truncus arteriosus and may contribute to their mortality.

Usual preop diagnosis: Truncus arteriosus (types I, II, III, IV)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Standard median sternotomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–90 min Total: 2.5–3 h
Closing considerations	Routine closure with chest tube in the pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possible right or left atrial line for monitoring
EBL	Moderate
Postop care	1–5 d of assisted ventilation; pulmonary HTN protocol consisting of hyperventilation and sedation and use of pulmonary vasodilators. Inotropes for adequate CO.
Mortality	< 3%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Atrial dysrhythmias Pulmonary vasospasm Truncal valve insufficiency ↓ CO
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	3 wk–6 mo
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1.7–4.6% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	No known etiology
Associated conditions	Coexisting interrupted aortic arch or coarctation with PDA (10–20%); right aortic arch (16%); mitral valve anomalies (10%); moderate-size or large ASD (10%); DiGeorge syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	A single, common aortopulmonary artery—the truncus—overlies the two ventricles and VSD. Depending on the configuration, the truncus gives rise to coronary and pulmonary arteries and ascending aorta. Complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary circulations occurs at the VSD and truncal valve, resulting initially in cyanosis. After birth, as PVR

Pathophysiology (cont'd)	decreases, significant L → R shunting occurs at the level of the VSD. This causes pulmonary blood flow and CHF. If present, truncal valve insufficiency causes ventricular dilatation and low diastolic coronary perfusion, → myocardial ischemia. If untreated, 80% die of CHF in the 1st yr. Early total correction is indicated.
Airway	The facial anomalies (e.g., micrognathia) in DiGeorge syndrome may make intubation difficult.
Respiratory	Typically, these infants present with the respiratory Sx of CHF (dyspnea, tachypnea, hypoxemia). **Tests:** CXR: ↑ pulmonary markings and wide mediastinum.
Cardiovascular	Frequently, neonates are intubated and ventilated for hemodynamic support. Arterial saturation > 85% indicates excessive pulmonary blood flow. This may be controlled by the use of hypoxic gas mixtures (17–19% FiO_2), inspired CO_2 (3–5%), and PEEP. **Tests:** EKG. ECHO: Usually diagnostic. Identifies the origin of the PA from the common trunk and the presence (subtype A) or absence (subtype B) of a VSD. Evaluates truncal valve competency.
Endocrine	In DiGeorge syndrome, thymic hypoplasia occurs with hypoparathyroidism and symptomatic hypocalcemia. **Tests:** ✓ Ca^{++} levels; parathyroid hormone
Premedication	Not indicated.
Transport to OR	See Transport of the Critically Ill Newborn (see p. 1265).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	The goal for induction is maintenance of hemodynamic stability. If not intubated prior to induction, do not preoxygenate or hyperventilate. IV induction with ketamine (1–2 mg/kg), fentanyl (2–4 mcg/kg), and muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 1 mg/kg) is preferred. After ETT is secured, avoid hyperventilation and maintain arterial saturation 75–85%. Keep DBP > 20 mm Hg to maintain coronary perfusion. Treat ↓ BP on induction with additional inotropes, transfusion of blood, or occlusion of a PA by the surgeon as soon as the chest is opened.	
Maintenance	Fentanyl (20–50 mcg/kg). Rocuronium as needed ± midazolam 0.1–0.2 mg/kg ± volatile agent. FiO_2 = 0.21. Avoid hyperventilation (↓ PVR → ↑ shunt + CHF). PEEP may be useful to maintain PVR. The surgeon may leave a PFO to serve as a "pop-off" to preserve systemic perfusion when ↑ PVR and RV dysfunction occur. A transthoracic left atrial line is frequently placed for monitoring. In some cases, the sternum may be left open due to chest wall and mediastinal edema and the presence of the anterior RV-PA conduit (Rastelli conduit).	
Emergence	Transport to ICU intubated and ventilated. Maintain narcotic and muscle relaxant infusions (e.g., fentanyl and rocuronium) for initial postop period (2–3 d) to minimize pulmonary hypertensive crises.	
Blood and fluid requirements	See Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF).	Continue dextrose infusion in neonates. See Table 12.4-2, p. 1257 for blood product utilization.
Infusions	Inotropic support	These patients require inotropic support (dopamine, milrinone, epinephrine, and CaCl infusion).
Monitoring	Standard monitors + LA, RA, PA lines TEE	 Transthoracic lines TEE is helpful to assess function, truncal valve competency, RV function, and the direction of atrial shunt.

Positioning	See TOF (p. 1254).	
CPB	See TOF (p. 1254).	
Complications	Pulmonary HTN	
	Truncal valve insufficiency	
	Coronary artery insufficiency	
	Residual lesion	
	Bleeding	
	Pulmonary hypertensive crisis	Frequent in patients > 1 mo old. Rx: NO, sedation, hyperventilation.
	A-V block	Generally temporary, injury to conduction system unlikely because it is remote from VSD closure. Occasionally, a pacemaker may be required.
	Ventricular dysfunction	May require inotropic support.
	Residual lesions	Residual VSD, severe truncal valve incompetence or obstruction, obstruction of coronary flow, LVOTO.

Suggested Readings

1. Allen HD, Clark EB, Gutgesell HP, et al, eds: *Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.
2. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, et al: Truncus arteriosus. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds. *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 1200–22.
3. Ramamoorthy C, Tabbutt S, Kurth CD, et al: Effects of inspired hypoxic and hypercapnic gas mixtures on cerebral oxygen saturation in neonates with univentricular heart defects. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 96:283–8.
4. Reitz BA, Yuh DD, eds: *Congenital Cardiac Surgery*. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2002.
5. Tabbutt S, Ramamoorthy C, Montenegro LM, et al: Impact of inspired gas mixtures on preoperative infants with hypoplastic left heart syndrome during controlled ventilation. *Circulation* 2001; 104(Supp I):I159–64.

SURGERY FOR TRICUSPID ATRESIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In tricuspid atresia, there is a developmental failure of the tricuspid valve, isolating the RA from the RV. There are three types of tricuspid atresia, based on the relationship of the great vessels to the ventricles, otherwise known as **ventriculoarterial concordance.** Type I, the most common (60–80%), consists of normal ventriculoarterial concordance. Type II (15–25%) consists of *d*-transposition, and type III (3%) consists of *l*-transposition. In most cases of tricuspid atresia, the RV is hypoplastic, an ASD is present, and pulmonary blood flow is restricted 2° pulmonary stenosis or atresia. Together, these malformations lead to R → L shunting and varying degrees of cyanosis. Those patients with unobstructed pulmonary blood flow develop pulmonary overcirculation and CHF. Consequently, the initial palliative surgical management of this defect depends on the magnitude of pulmonary blood flow; the initial procedure may be either a modified **Blalock-Taussig systemic-to-PA shunt** or a **PA band.** The subsequent definitive surgical management consists of a bidirectional **Glenn shunt** and a modified **Fontan procedure.** Patients undergo these operations sequentially or, in rare cases, directly to the definitive Fontan operation.

The systemic-to-PA shunt, developed by **Blalock** and **Taussig** in 1944, was the first palliative treatment for this condition. Later, other shunts were introduced by **Potts** (descending aorta-to-left PA) and **Waterston** (ascending aorta-to-right PA). In 1958, Glenn described a shunt from the SVC to the right PA applied specifically to patients with tricuspid atresia. A modification of this shunt to a **bidirectional cavopulmonary anastomosis** was performed clinically by **Azzollina** in 1974 and has since gained widespread acceptance. In 1971, Fontan proposed a surgical

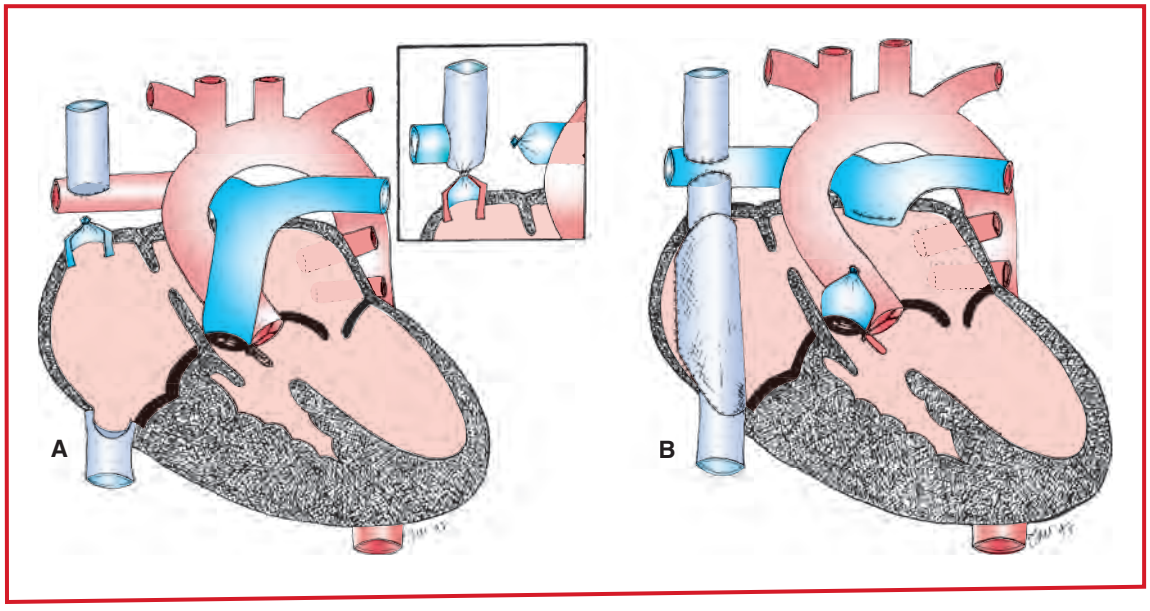


Figure 12.4-10. Surgery for tricuspid atresia. **A:** Bidirectional Glenn shunt. Inset shows classic unidirectional Glenn shunt. **B:** Lateral tunnel Fontan operation. (Reproduced with permission from Emmanouilides GC, Allen HD, Riemenschneider TA, et al: *Clinical Synopsis of Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents.* Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 1998.)

repair for tricuspid atresia based on separation of the right and left circulations. Subsequent modifications to Fontan original operation were designed to bypass the RV and direct systemic venous return to the pulmonary circulation. The most recent modifications divert vena caval blood directly to the PA—now referred to as a **total cavopulmonary connection** (modified Fontan). In 1988, **Laks** suggested leaving a small ASD between the right and left circulations, creating a R → L shunt for the purposes of augmenting systemic CO while still maintaining adequate oxygenation.

Modified Blalock-Taussig (B-T) shunt: In neonates with tricuspid atresia or other single ventricle variants with low pulmonary blood flow, a modified B-T shunt is the procedure of choice. The preferred approach is through a midsternotomy. The right PA and the right innominate and subclavian arteries are mobilized. The patient is heparinized, and clamps are applied on the right PA and the innominate/subclavian arteries. Arteriotomies are performed and a Gore-Tex tube graft is interposed and anastomosed to the right PA and the subclavian/innominate arteries. The size of shunt (3–4 mm) is dictated by patient size and arterial anatomy. Alternatively, the procedure can be performed via right thoracotomy or through a left thoracotomy if the morphology dictates a left-sided shunt. A midline approach can be used for any variation of the shunt and also gives the option of using CPB in case of patient instability.

Pulmonary artery banding: In patients with tricuspid atresia or other variants of single ventricle and increased pulmonary blood flow, PA banding is performed to protect the pulmonary vascular bed, prevent pulmonary HTN, and prevent CHF. A midline sternotomy is the preferred approach. The main PA is exposed, and a 2- to 3-mm-wide strip of silastic band is placed around the main PA and tightened to adjust the pulmonary blood flow. The goal is a SaO_2 of ~80–85%.

Bidirectional Glenn shunt: A standard median sternotomy approach is used. If concomitant intracardiac repairs are not anticipated, the bidirectional Glenn (BDG) shunt may be performed without CPB by placing a temporary shunt between the high SVC and the RA. If the patient has a preexisting Blalock-Taussig shunt on the right, it is divided after instituting CPB. A shunt on the left side may be left open, while the bidirectional Glenn shunt is created on the right. The SVC is divided, and the cardiac end is oversewn. The remaining caval end is anastomosed end-to-side to the superior aspect of the right PA (Fig. 12.4-10A).

Fontan procedure: The heart is accessed via a standard median sternotomy. Previously placed systemic-to-PA shunts are dissected and occluded prior to bypass. Bicaval cannulation and CPB with hypothermia are used. The IVC is transected at its PA junction, and a Gore-Tex tube graft is interposed end-to-end between the IVC and the

inferior surface of the right PA. This operation, in conjunction with the previously performed bidirectional Glenn shunt, establishes a total cavopulmonary connection (Fig. 12.4-10B). After completing the anastomosis, the aortic cross-clamp is removed, the heart is rewarmed, and the patient is weaned from CPB. Fenestration of the Fontan circuit may be desirable in high-risk patients but is generally not required in patients with tricuspid atresia and good ventricular function. Our current standard is to perform the Fontan procedure without using cardiopulmonary bypass.

Variant procedure or approaches: **A RA → RV connection** can be performed in patients with tricuspid atresia without pulmonary obstruction and an adequately functioning RV. This is accomplished with a direct anastomosis or a valved/nonvalved conduit (e.g., aortic homograft, Dacron graft).

Usual preop diagnosis: Tricuspid atresia after B-T shunt or PA banding; univentricular heart or single ventricle after shunt or band; cyanotic congenital heart disease

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Bidirectional Glenn (BDG) Shunt	Cavopulmonary Fontan Procedure
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Standard median sternotomy	⇐
Unique considerations	Particulate or gaseous emboli from iv lines can become systemic emboli.	Areas of PA stenosis need to be repaired concomitantly; subaortic obstruction needs to be considered if there is a restrictive VSD and the great vessels are transposed.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h	⇐
Surgical time	If a simple anastomosis is constructed, the aorta is not cross-clamped. Total: 1.5–2 h	⇐ Total: 3–4 h
Closing considerations	Chest tube in the pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possible atrial monitoring line to assess ventricular filling pressure	Chest tube in the pericardial space; possible pleural tubes; temporary ventricular and atrial pacing wires; possible atrial line to correlate with CVP to determine the transpulmonary gradient
EBL	Moderate	⇐
Postop care	Cardiac ICU; early extubation to minimize positive intrathoracic pressure	ICU or early extubation; inotropes for ventricular function, including low-dose dopamine, milrinone for afterload reduction. Maintain sinus rhythm, A-V pacing, if required.
Mortality	< 2%	2–4%
Morbidity	Bleeding Infection Atrial dysrhythmias ↑ SVC pressure Upper extremity edema (SVC syndrome) ↓ CO Cyanosis 2° ↓ pulmonary blood flow Pulmonary arteriovenous fistula	Pleural effusions – ⇐ – – ⇐ – Protein-losing enteropathy (late)
Pain score	8–10	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	4 mo–1 yr	2–5 yr
Male:Female	1:1	⇐

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)		
Incidence	1–3% of congenital heart defects	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	⇐
Associated conditions	TGA; AV valve insufficiency requiring repair or replacement; residual PA obstruction from previous procedures; dextrocardia; asplenia or polysplenia syndromes	

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	This is characterized by absence of the tricuspid valve and a hypoplastic RV with no communication between RA and RV. Survival in the neonatal period depends on presence of an interatrial communication. The degree of cyanosis reflects the size of the VSD and magnitude of RVOTO. Thirty percent of patients have CHF from pulmonary overcirculation 2° a large VSD and unobstructed RVOT and may require PA banding. Tricuspid atresia requires staged palliation, beginning with the establishment of adequate pulmonary blood flow. Patients undergo a balloon septostomy or a systemic-pulmonary artery shunt (B-T shunt) in the newborn period to augment pulmonary blood flow. Subsequently, at 3–4 mo of age, they undergo cardiac catheterization, and a palliative bidirectional Glenn shunt (SVC → PA) is performed and the B-T shunt is ligated. The Glenn shunt reduces the volume load of the systemic ventricle. Patients coming in for a BDG procedure need careful control of PVR and SVR. Any ↑ PVR 2° light anesthesia, stimulation, pain, and ventilation problems can affect the oxygen saturation by decreasing the pulmonary blood flow. These patients may also have hypoxemia due to pulmonary arterial venous AVMs. The final palliative procedure—the Fontan operation—is done between 1.5 and 3 yr of age, where the IVC is connected to the PA via an extracardiac conduit. At this stage, the patients may present with ventricular dysfunction and pulmonary hypertension. Early extubation and spontaneous ventilation should be planned in advance in patients undergoing either Glenn or Fontan procedures, since PPV and/or hypovolemia will decrease pulmonary blood flow and cardiac output resulting in reduced SaO_2 and CO.
Respiratory	Identify any infectious or asthma-related problems. Optimizing pulmonary function is imperative as the pulmonary blood flow will be supplied passively from the systemic venous return. **Tests:** CXR; O_2 sat
Cardiovascular	**Tests:** EKG, ECHO, cath
Laboratory	Hct; others as indicated by H&P
Premedication	Midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po 20 min before induction in children > 9 mo old

INTRAOPERATIVE/POSTOPERATIVE

For intraop and postop considerations for tricuspid atresia, see Anesthetic Considerations for Surgery for HLHS (see p. 1279).

Suggested Readings

1. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, et al: Tricuspid atresia and management of single ventricle physiology. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 1113–76.

SURGERY FOR DOUBLE-OUTLET RIGHT VENTRICLE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: In double-outlet right ventricle (DORV), at least 50% of both of the great arteries arise from the RV. By necessity, there is a VSD that is usually large but may in some cases be restrictive or, rarely, multiple and muscular. The VSD may be located primarily below the aorta (**DORV/subaortic VSD;** Fig. 12.4-11A), below the pulmonary valve (**DORV/subpulmonic VSD** or **Taussig-Bing DORV;** Fig. 12.4-11B), below both great vessels (doubly committed; Fig. 12.4-11C), or remote from both great vessels (noncommitted; Fig. 12.4-11D). In DORV/subaortic VSD, oxygenated LV blood is directed to the aorta, and deoxygenated systemic venous return from the RV is directed to the PA, resulting in minimal-to-no cyanosis. L → R shunting across the VSD, however, leads to pulmonary overcirculation, pulmonary HTN, and CHF. In DORV/subpulmonic VSD, oxygenated LV blood is directed to the PA, and deoxygenated systemic venous return from the RV is directed to the aorta → pulmonary overcirculation and significant cyanosis. If early PA banding or primary correction is not performed in patients with pulmonary overcirculation, PVOD may result at an early age. In patients with some degree of pulmonary stenosis (usually infundibular), R → L shunting and cyanosis results; the natural history resembles that of patients with tetralogy of Fallot.

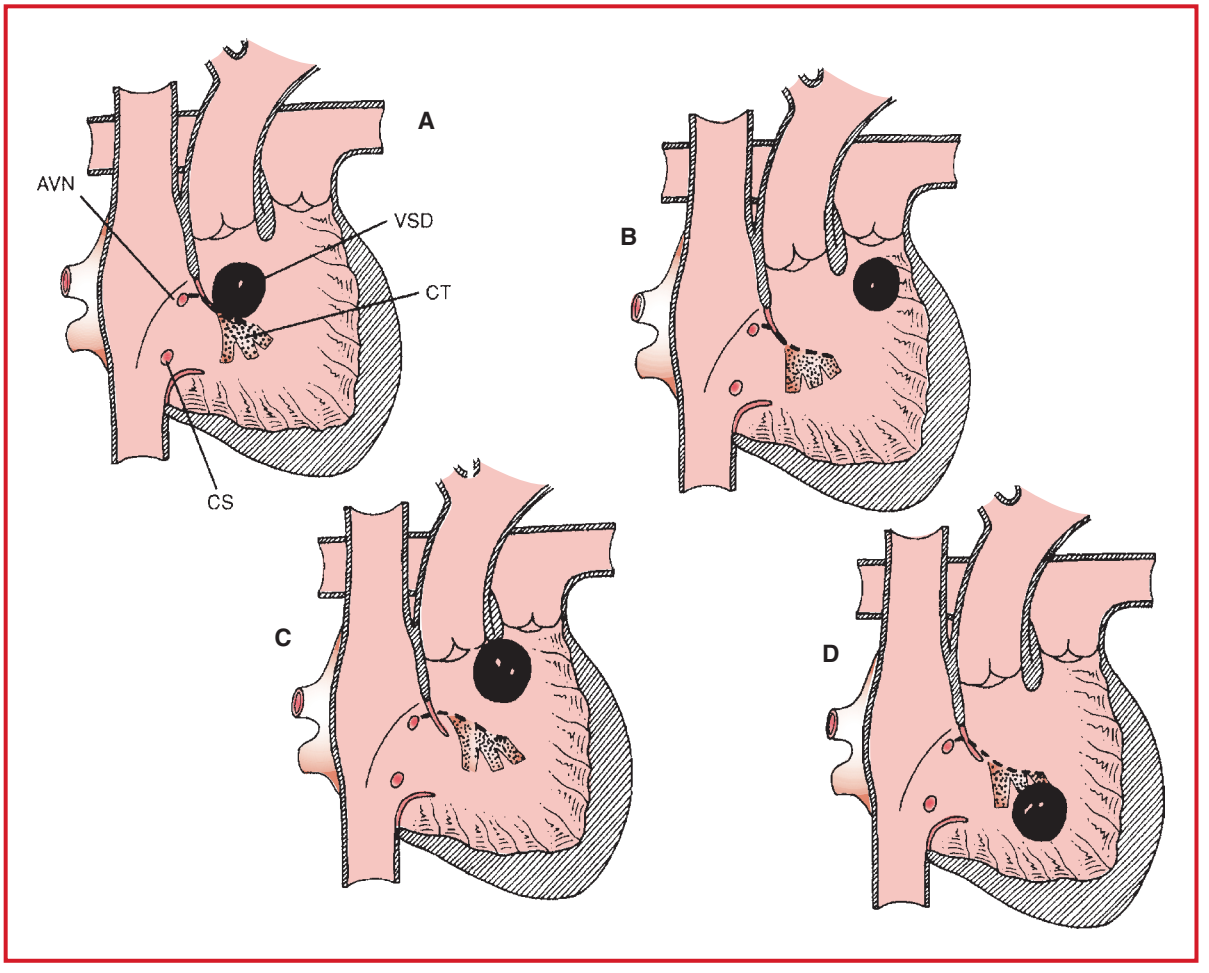


Figure 12.4-11. Types of double-outlet right ventricle classified by the relationship of the VSD to the great arteries. The location of the atrioventricular node and conduction tissue is depicted. **A:** Subaortic VSD. **B:** Subpulmonary VSD. **C:** Doubly committed VSD. **D:** Noncommitted VSD. AVN = atrioventricular node; CS = coronary sinus; CT = conduction tissue. (Reproduced with permission from Kaiser LR, Kron IL, Spray TL, eds: *Mastery of Cardiothoracic Surgery*. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1998.)

The first repairs of DORV were described by **Kirklin** in 1957. The Taussig-Bing DORV was first corrected in 1967. In recent years, management has been simplified for this variant by combining the **arterial switch operation** with an **intraventricular baffle to the pulmonary valve.** From a surgical standpoint, the anatomic variations and past attempts at correction may lead to unique intraop challenges. For example, if a previous Blalock-Taussig shunt has been performed, it needs to be controlled prior to initiating CPB. A previous pulmonary band may require removal and PA reconstruction.

DORV/subaortic VSD generally is repaired with an **intraventricular tunnel repair,** in which LV blood from the VSD is channeled through the RV to the aorta. Through a median sternotomy, CPB is instituted, and previous shunts are ligated. The aorta is cross-clamped, and cardioplegia is administered. After performing a right atriotomy, the interior of the RV is inspected through the tricuspid valve; a right ventriculotomy may be necessary for adequate exposure. A tunnel constructed of pericardial or Dacron patch is then placed between the VSD and the subaortic infundibulum. Augmentation of the RVOT, in the form of an outflow patch or extracardiac RV → PA conduit, is often necessary if the outflow tract is obstructed or if the RVOT is encroached upon by the intraventricular tunnel. The heart is then rewarmed and resuscitated, CPB is discontinued, and standard chest closure is begun.

DORV/subpulmonic VSD (Taussig-Bing DORV) can be corrected with an arterial switch operation and VSD closure under CPB (see Surgery for Complete Transposition of the Great Arteries, p. 1264). DORV with significant pulmonary stenosis repair resembles that for the TO. DORV with doubly committed VSD is similar to DORV/subaortic VSD. DORV with uncommitted VSD poses a surgical challenge. A two-ventricle repair requires intracardiac baffles. Alternatively, a single-ventricle approach is taken.

Usual preop diagnosis: DORV ± pulmonary stenosis; s/p PA band or modified Blalock-Taussig shunt; Taussig-Bing type of DORV; CHF

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Standard median sternotomy
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–80 min Total: 2–3.5 h
Closing considerations	Routine closure with chest tube in the pericardial space; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possible LA line for monitoring
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	ICU for 1–4 d of controlled ventilation; possible pulmonary HTN protocol in cases of unrestricted pulmonary blood flow (see description of management for A-V canal defect, p. 1237).
Mortality	~2%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage ↓ CO Atrial dysrhythmias RV dysrhythmias Intraventricular tunnel obstruction Baffle leakage; residual RVOTO Heart block
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–24 mo
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	1–3% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	No specific correlations or associated conditions
Associated conditions	Pulmonary stenosis; complete A-V canal defect; coarctation of the aorta; interruption of the aortic arch; straddling tricuspid valve

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	Both great vessels arise from the RV, and there is a single, large VSD, whose location may vary (subaortic, subpulmonic). The pathophysiology varies according to the VSD location and other concomitant cardiac anomalies, such as aortic stenosis (AS) or pulmonary stenosis (PS). Those with subaortic VSD, in the absence of PS, present with minimal or no cyanosis but may have large L → R shunt pulmonary overcirculation, CHF, and pulmonary HTN. In infants with PS in addition to subaortic VSD, the physiology is similar to TOF with pulmonary oligemia and R → L shunt. In DORV with subpulmonic VSD, deoxygenated venous return from RV is directed to the aorta, leading to cyanosis. The oxygenated LV output is directed through the VSD into the PA, leading to pulmonary overcirculation. This physiology resembles TGA. The surgical approach may consist of VSD closure or TOF or TGA repair. DORV with subpulmonary VSD and transposition is called the Taussig-Bing anomaly.

Anesthetic management: Is dictated by specific surgical repair. See sections on VSD, TOF, and TGA, for Anesthetic Considerations (p. 1243, 1254, 1264).

Suggested Reading

1. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB et al: Double outlet right ventricle. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds: *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 1509–40.

SURGERY FOR HYPOPLASTIC LEFT HEART SYNDROME

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) represents a spectrum of left-sided cardiac malformations centered around a markedly hypoplastic LV and an atretic or hypoplastic aortic valve and ascending aorta; the mitral valve is also usually hypoplastic or atretic (Fig. 12.4-12). Consequently, the RV supports both the pulmonary and systemic circulations. The pulmonary venous return (PVR) enters the RA via an ASD, and the admixture of systemic and pulmonary venous return is delivered into the RV and main PA. Systemic flow is delivered into the aorta by way of a typically large PDA. Cyanosis, CHF, and systemic hypoperfusion result as PVR decreases and pulmonary blood flow increases at the expense of systemic blood flow.

Until the mid-to-late 1980s, patients born with this anomaly usually died within the first 2 wk of life, with survival beyond 6 wk being very rare. A palliative surgical treatment was reported by Norwood in 1983. This treatment of HLHS comprises staged operations, with the first stage designated as the **Norwood operation.** The procedure is directed toward establishing effective CO from the RV to the systemic circulation and to support the pulmonary circulation with a systemic-to-pulmonary arterial shunt. An adequate atrial septal communication is essential.

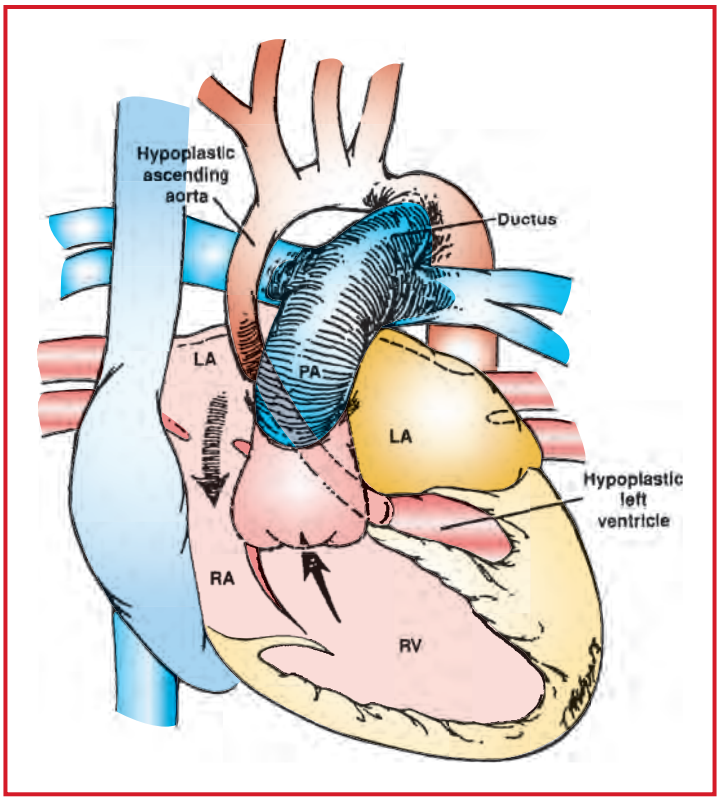


Figure 12.4-12. The anatomic features of hypoplastic left heart syndrome. The right atrium (RA), right ventricle (RV), and main pulmonary artery (PA) are larger than in neonates with normal circulation. LA = left atrium. (Reproduced with permission from Kaiser LR, Kron IL, Spray TL, eds: *Mastery of Cardiothoracic Surgery*. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1998.)

Stage I (Norwood): A midline sternotomy approach is used. The innominate artery (alternatively, the main PA or ascending aorta, if it is of adequate size) and RA appendage are cannulated, and CPB with cooling is instituted. The arch vessels and proximal descending thoracic aorta are dissected. Deep hypothermia with low-flow CPB technique is used. During arch reconstruction, cerebral blood flow is maintained, although many surgeons prefer total circulatory arrest. The ductus arteriosus is then divided, and the pulmonary end is oversewn. Next, the main PA is divided, and the distal PA is oversewn. An aortotomy is created, extending from the interior aspect of the aortic arch through the lateral aspect of the ascending aorta to the level of the transected pulmonary trunk. The entire aortic arch complex is then augmented, creating a "neoaorta" from the proximal portion of the transected main PA, which is anastomosed to the ascending aorta and arch. A cryopreserved homograft patch is used to facilitate the repair. The RA is opened, and the atrial septum is excised to maximize the size of the interatrial communication. The heart is de-aired, and rewarming is started with full CPB. If circulatory arrest was used, the cannulae are reinserted, and rewarming begins. Finally, a B-T systemic-to-PA shunt is created to provide pulmonary blood flow. The patient is weaned from CPB, a pericardial drainage tube is placed, and the chest is closed in standard fashion.

Currently, a modification of the Norwood procedure strongly advocated by Japanese surgeons is being adopted by many surgeons worldwide, including the United States. This involves abandoning the modified B-T shunt in favor of RV-PA shunt ± valve. This modification eliminates the diastolic runoff and preserves coronary blood flow. The major advantage is a stable early postop course. The long-term implications of right ventriculotomy in a systemic RV are not known at the present time.

Stage II (bidirectional Glenn procedure): As the PVR normally falls in the weeks after the first-stage operation, excessive pulmonary blood flow from the B-T shunt may → RV volume overload and CHF. The 2nd-stage procedure for HLHS is intended to reduce the volume load on the single ventricle, while maintaining adequate pulmonary blood flow. This operation consists of a bidirectional cavopulmonary (Glenn) shunt (see Surgery for Tricuspid Atresia, p. 1252) and usually is performed in children 4–6 mo old.

Stage III (Fontan procedure): The 3rd and final stages of the Norwood procedure usually are performed about 6–12 mo after the 2nd stage and consist of the completion of the Fontan procedure (see Surgery for Tricuspid Atresia, p. 1252). It is designed to divide the systemic venous return from the pulmonary venous return by establishing continuity from the IVC to the confluence of the PA and SVC.

Usual preop diagnosis: HLHS; mitral and aortic atresia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Standard median sternotomy
Unique considerations	Hypothermia (< 18°C) ± circulatory arrest; manipulation of PVR and SVR, both preop and postop, is extremely important, with the FiO_2 and ventilation being crucial in regulating pulmonary blood flow. For very high pulmonary blood flows and O_2 sats > 85%, consider the addition of N_2 to lower the FiO_2 to < 20%; use of afterload reduction to manipulate SVR and ↓ ventricular work.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 4 h
Surgical time	Aortic cross-clamp: 30–60 min Circulatory arrest (if used): 30–45 min Total: 2.5–3.5 h
Closing considerations	Sternum often left open, with chest tube in the pericardial space, with closure delayed until POD 2–4; temporary ventricular pacing wire; possible left atrial line for monitoring
EBL	Minimal-to-moderate
Postop care	2–7 h of controlled ventilation; moderate need for inotropic drugs; balancing PVR and SVR to optimize pulmonary blood flow and systemic CO.
Mortality	10–20%
Morbidity	Hemorrhage Infection ↓ CO RV dysfunction Inadequate/excessive pulmonary blood flow Tricuspid regurgitation
Pain score	8–10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	5–30 d
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	3–5% of congenital heart defects
Etiology	Often associated with genetic disorders, but no single associated defect
Associated conditions	CNS defects (29%); microencephaly (25–27%); VSD (5%); TGA

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pathophysiology	HLHS is characterized by a hypoplastic or atretic aortic and mitral valves associated with hypoplasia of the LV, ascending aorta, and aortic arch. Pulmonary venous return enters the LA and then passes into the RA via an ASD or the PFO. Rarely, pulmonary venous return is via TAPVC to the RA. The systemic circulation is supplied entirely through the ductus arteriosus. Perfusion of the ascending aorta, coronary arteries, and transverse arch is retrograde via the ductus. Maintenance of adequate systemic perfusion relies on ductal patency and is achieved with continuous administration of PGE_1. Maintaining ↑ PVR by ↓ FiO_2 to 0.17–0.20 (less common now), or by adding CO_2 to breathing gas mixture, may be necessary. As the ductus closes, the systemic perfusion is compromised, → ischemia, acidosis, and eventually death. Survival is dependent on maintaining ductal patency and adequacy of mixing at the atrial level and a balance between PVR and SVR to ensure adequate pulmonary and systemic perfusion.
Cardiovascular	**Tests:** EKG; RAE/RVH; ECHO: assessment of tricuspid or common AV valve regurgitation. Severe TR is a contraindication for 1st-stage repair.
Neurological	Preop head ultrasound to r/o intracranial pathology (e.g., hemorrhage). Periop neurological monitoring, including cerebral oximeter is recommended (e.g., both hemispheres and flank to assess somatic oxygenation)
Laboratory	BUN; Cr; Hb/Hct; Plt count
Premedication	Not indicated.
Transport to OR	See Transport of the Critically Ill Newborn (p. 1265).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA

Induction	On arrival in the OR, monitors are applied and ventilation should be adjusted to maintain arterial O_2 sat = 75–85%. Avoid hyperventilation (→ ↑ pulmonary blood flow). Arterial sat > 85% will cause systemic hypoperfusion. See Truncus Arteriosus, p. 1268.	
Maintenance	Fentanyl (20–40 mcg/kg) with muscle relaxant (rocuronium 1 mg/kg) in divided doses on CPB. Volatile anesthetics on CPB. Midazolam (0.1–0.2 mg/kg) as tolerated.	
Emergence	Transport to ICU intubated, ventilated, and monitored.	
Blood and fluid requirements	See Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) (p. 1256).	Blood loss can be due largely to dilutional coagulopathy and multiple suture lines.
Infusions	See Truncus Arteriosus. (p. 1269).	
Monitoring	See Truncus Arteriosus (p. 1269).	
CPB	See TGA (p. 1266).	
Transition off CPB and Post-CPB	See TOF (p. 1256).	After Stage I (Norwood) surgical repair, the blood flow continues to be supplied in a parallel fashion from the single ventricle. At Stanford, a small homograft conduit is placed from the RV to PA (Kishimoto/Sano modification) instead of the traditional modified B-T shunt. This prevents the diastolic runoff of the B-T shunt and improves coronary perfusion. Optimal PaO_2 30–50 mm Hg with MAP 40–50 mm Hg.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding Pulmonary overcirculation Myocardial dysfunction and failure Aortic arch obstruction Pulmonary HTN CNS injury

Suggested Readings

1. Allen HD, Clark EB, Gutgesell HP, et al, eds: *Moss and Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents*, 6th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.
2. Kouchoukos NT, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, et al: Aortic atresia and other forms of hypoplastic left heart physiology. In: Kouchoukos NT, Karp RB, Blackstone EH, Doty DB, Hanley FL, eds. *Kirklin/Barratt-Boyes Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia: 2003, 1377–1400.
3. Maddali MM, Valliatu J, Delamie T, et al: Selection of the monitoring side and outcome after neonatal coarctation repair. *Asian Cardiovasc Thorac Annu* 2010; 16:236–39.
4. Ramamoorthy C, Tabbutt S, Kurth CD, et al: Effects of inspired hypoxic and hypercapnic gas mixtures on cerebral oxygen saturation in neonates with univentricular heart defects. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 96:283–8.
5. Reitz BA, Yuh DD, eds: *Congenital Cardiac Surgery*. McGraw-Hill, New York: 2002.
6. Sano S, Ishino K, Kado H, et al: Outcome of right ventricle to pulmonary artery shunt in first stage palliation of hypoplastic left heart syndrome–a multi-institutional study. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2004; 78(6):1951–7.
7. Tabbutt S, Ramamoorthy C, Montenegro LM, et al: Impact of inspired gas mixtures on preoperative infants with hypoplastic left heart syndrome during controlled ventilation. *Circulation* 2001; 104(Supp I):I159–64.

CHAPTER

12.5 Pediatric General Surgery

SURGEONS

James Wall, MD, MSE
Craig Albanese, MD, MBA

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Rebecca E. Claure, MD
Brenda Golianu, MD
Gregory B. Hammer, MD

RESECTION OF CYSTIC HYGROMA, BRANCHIAL CLEFT CYST, THYROGLOSSAL DUCT CYST, OR OTHER CERVICAL MASS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Common lesions requiring dissection in the neck and floor of the mouth include branchial cleft remnants; thyroglossal duct remnants; vascular malformations (hemangiomas); lymphatic malformations (cystic hygromas); and infected or enlarged lymph nodes refractory to antibiotic therapy.

Surgical approach: Ideally, an acutely inflamed node (typically *Staphylococcus aureus*) usually is incised and drained; a chronically infected node (e.g., cat-scratch disease, atypical TB) or an enlarged node (lymphoma) is excised. Remnants of the first and second (rarely third) branchial clefts are lateral masses found and excised from (respectively), the parotid region anterior to the ear, sometimes extending to the external auditory canal, or the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, sometimes extending through the carotid bifurcation to the tonsillar fossa. Thyroglossal duct remnants are midline lesions that involve the central portion of the hyoid bone and may extend up to the base of the tongue. When acutely infected and resistant to a course of antibiotics, they can be drained; when quiescent, thyroglossal duct remnants are excised. Occasionally, it is advantageous for the anesthesiologist to digitally depress the tongue near the foramen cecum to help the surgeon know when the dissection approaches this structure. Vascular and lymphatic malformations may overlap; they tend to be lateral and are sometimes extensive. Significant blood loss may result, and resection may involve tedious dissection of neurovascular structures, including the carotid sheath, brachial plexus, sympathetic chain, phrenic nerve, and cranial nerves V, VII, X, XI, and XII.

Transaxillary subcutaneous **endoscopic surgery** allows an alternate approach to resecting selected lesions. This approach involves using tiny incisions placed in the ipsilateral axilla through which endoscopic ports are placed and tunneling under the skin to the neck, aided by carbon dioxide insufflation, to resect benign lesions using laparoscopic tools. This approach is not widely practiced; however, it appears to be safe and effective for a wide variety of lesions, including thyroid and parathyroid lesions. It completely avoids a neck incision, which can be cosmetically unappealing.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cystic hygroma; branchial cleft cyst/fistula; thyroglossal duct cyst; atypical mycobacterial adenitis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Lateral Lesions (Branchial Cleft Remnant Lymph Node, Vascular + Lymphatic Malformations)	Midline Lesions (Thyroglossal Duct Remnants)
Position	Neck extended, turned to contralateral side	Neck extended
Incision	Oblique	Transverse
Special instrumentation	Facial nerve monitor; nerve stimulator	None
Unique considerations	Nerve testing	None
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–6 h	1 h
EBL	5–20 mL/kg	< 5 mL/kg
Postop care	PICU; airway monitoring	None
Mortality	< 2%	< 1%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Lateral Lesions (Branchial Cleft Remnant Lymph Node, Vascular + Lymphatic Malformations)	Midline Lesions (Thyroglossal Duct Remnants)
Morbidity	Airway compromise Fluid accumulation Infection	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–4	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–school age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Etiology	Developmental anomaly; mycobacteria
Associated conditions	Hygroma-mediastinal airway involvement; branchial cleft

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

These patients generally are otherwise healthy children. Cervical masses, including cystic hygroma (cystic lymphangioma), may cause airway obstruction and difficult intubation (also see Exit Procedures, p. 1346).

Respiratory	The size and extent of the cervical mass should be defined carefully in an effort to detect the potential for airway compromise. Inspiratory stridor suggests supraglottic obstruction, whereas expiratory stridor is associated with subglottic/intrathoracic obstruction. If these patients have had prior CT/MRI imaging, these records, including prior anesthesia records, should be reviewed. **Tests:** CXR ± CT/MRI scans
Cardiovascular	Cervical masses may be adherent to and/or cause compression of the great vessels. **Tests:** CT/MRI scans
Hematologic	**Tests:** For cystic hygroma, or if a cervical mass involves great vessels or extends into the mediastinum, T&C and HcT.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If patient > 7–9 mo and asymptomatic, consider midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po) 30 min. prior to arrival in OR. Use premedication cautiously in patients with potential airway compromise.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA with pediatric circuit; OR temperature 75–80°; forced-air warmer on OR table; maintain SpO_2 between 92–94% to minimize retinopathy in premature infants at risk.

Induction	Standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1) in patients without airway compromise. IV access should be secured before induction when airway compromise is present or suspected. Mask induction with sevoflurane in 100% O_2. As plane of anesthesia deepens, gently assist

Induction (cont'd)	ventilation. (Keep PIP < 20 cmH_2O). Prior to laryngoscopy, consider atropine (0.02 mg/kg, minimum dose 0.1 mg), if < 1 month, to prevent vagal response. If difficult airway is anticipated, proceed with difficult airway algorithm. If partial airway obstruction exists, maintain spontaneous ventilation and perform laryngoscopy under deep anesthesia (e.g., ~2 MAC of volatile agent). FOB should be available. Have full range of ETT sizes available because airway narrowing may be present. Once airway is secured, proceed with NMB (e.g., rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg iv, or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg iv), unless monitoring facial nerve function.	
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3). Surgeon may infiltrate incision with local anesthetic. Limit bupivacaine to 2.5 mg/kg (maximum: 10 mL of 0.25 % bupivacaine).	
Emergence	Reverse neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg) and glycopyrrolate (0.01 mg/kg). Confirm air leak around ETT and extubate when fully awake.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss usually IV: 20–22 ga × 1; 2nd iv if great vessel involvement NS/LR @ maintenance (see D-3).	Minimal 3rd-space losses. Each mL blood loss can be replaced with 3 mL NS/LR, or 1 mL albumin 5%. If great vessels are involved, place at least one iv in lower extremity. Blood loss can be quite sudden; have blood available in OR.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) ± Arterial line, 22 ga	An arterial line is used when there is risk of large blood loss or to assist management of ventilation
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	ETT dislodged/loss of airway Laryngospasm Bronchospasm Hemorrhage	ETT must be carefully secured. Liberal use of benzoin. Avoid tension on ETT by circuit hoses. Hold ETT during surgeon's intraoral examination.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Subglottic edema Upper-airway obstruction from edema related to tumor resection Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury	Dexamethasone (0.5–1 mg/kg) and nebulized racemic epinephrine (2.25%) with mist O_2.
Pain management	Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg q 1–2 h) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg q 1–2°) Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv q6°; 20 mg/kg PR q6°, one-time dose 30–40 mg/kg PR)	
Tests	As indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Esmaeli MR, Razavi SS, Havofteh MR, et al: Cystic hygroma: anesthetic considerations and review. *J Res Med Sci* 2009; 14(3):191–5.
2. Foley DS, Fallat ME: Thyroglossal duct and other congenital midline cervical anomalies. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2006; 15(2):70–5.
3. Gross, E, Sichel JY: Congenital neck lesions. *Surg Clin North Am* 2006; 86(2):383–92.

ESOPHAGUS-FOREIGN BODY REMOVAL AND DILATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Flexible, diagnostic **esophagogastroduodenoscopy—a** common procedure in pediatrics—usually is performed under GA or heavy sedation in an endoscopy suite or special procedure area. **Rigid esophagoscopy** usually is performed for therapeutic indications such as removal of a foreign body (FB), dilation of an esophageal stricture, or injection of varices. The procedure is similar for each diagnosis and generally is performed with ET intubation. FB removal is normally a very short procedure, whereas dilation and variceal injection can be prolonged and may require multiple insertions/removals of the endoscope. Compression of the trachea distal to the ETT by the rigid esophagoscope may occur. **Radial balloon dilation,** which involves less shear stress than repeatedly passing a bougie catheter, is becoming a popular method of dilation. This is done under endoscopic and fluoroscopic guidance and is accompanied by a very low rate of complications.

Usual preop diagnosis: Esophageal FB; stricture; esophageal varices

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, head to the side for rigid esophagoscopy
Special instrumentation	Rigid esophagoscopes; forceps; dilators
Unique considerations	Esophagoscope may obstruct airway; dilation may perforate esophagus.
Surgical time	5 min–2 h
Closing considerations	Abrupt ending
EBL	< 5 mL/kg
Postop care	Airway support
Mortality	< 5%
Morbidity	Esophageal perforation: 2–5%
Pain score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–school age
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/1000
Etiology	Varices–portal HTN; FB–possible stricture
Associated conditions	Esophageal atresia–stricture; portal HTN–varices

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Esophagoscopy for FB removal is usually performed in healthy infants and toddlers, although it can occur in any age group. All of these patients should be treated with full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5). Esophageal dilation is usually performed in three distinct patient populations: (a) those with prior tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF) repair;

(b) those with prior ingestion of a caustic substance; and (c) those with skin and connective tissue diseases (e.g., epidermolysis bullosa [EB]).

Respiratory	Patients with TEF may have residual BPD, chronic lung disease, or subglottic stenosis. Check anesthesia records for ETT size used. Those with prior caustic ingestion and pulmonary aspiration may have resultant chemical pneumonitis and/or fibrosis. Patients with EB may have limited mouth opening and may have a difficult airway or require special care regarding placing and securing of ETT. **Tests:** CXR, if clinically indicated
Cardiovascular	There may be persistent congenital cardiac anomalies in the TEF patient. **Tests:** EKG, ECHO as indicated. Cardiology consultation, as needed.
Laboratory	No routine lab analyses are required.
Premedication	For esophageal dilation, patient preference is extremely important because some patients have undergone this procedure several times. For FB removal, iv access is usually recommended before induction, though a mask induction may be selected by the anesthesiologist as well.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, using a pediatric circuit. Room temperature should be maintained at 75–80°F. Forced-air warmer may be used.

Induction	If the patient is presenting for dilation alone and has no evidence to suggest reflux or retained food in the esophagus, a standard inhalation or iv induction may be performed. Rapid-sequence induction is usually appropriate for FB removal. Atropine (0.02 mg/kg if < 1 mo, minimum 0.1 mg) may be administered to attenuate bradycardia from intubation. Preoxygenate for 2–3 min. Apply cricoid pressure. Propofol (2–3 mg/kg) followed by succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg). Rocuronium (1 mg/kg) may be used if longer procedure anticipated. Intubate trachea with age-appropriate ETT. If succinylcholine was used, consider additional neuromuscular blockade.	
Maintenance	Maintain anesthesia with volatile agent/N_2O/O_2 or propofol (100–250 mcg/kg/min) + remifentanil (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min). Supplement inhalation anesthetic with small doses of fentanyl (e.g., 1–2 mcg/kg), hydromorphone (0.005-0.01 mg/kg), or morphine (0.05–0.1 mcg/kg). Maintain neuromuscular blockade or deep plane of anesthesia. Movement must be avoided with rigid esophagoscopy.	
Emergence	Extubate when fully awake. Neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg) and glycopyrrolate (0.01 mg/kg) to reverse neuromuscular blockade. Do not attempt reversal of neuromuscular blockade until first twitch of train-of-four has returned.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance (See p. D-3)	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) Peripheral nerve stimulator	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Esophageal perforation Aspiration Accidental extubation Stridor 2° subglottic edema	Esophageal perforation, more common with rigid esophagoscopy, may lead to pneumothorax (R > L).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Residual neuromuscular blockade Pneumothorax, esophageal perforation	
Pain management	Minimal postop pain	If patient reports marked substernal discomfort, suspect esophageal perforation.
Tests	None	

Suggested Readings

1. Gercek A, Ay B, Dogan V, et al: Esophageal balloon dilation in children: prospective analysis of hemodynamic changes and complications during general anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth* 2007; 19:286–89.
2. Lan LC, Wong KK, Lin SC, et al: Endoscopic balloon dilatation of esophageal strictures in infants and children: 17 years' experience and a literature review. *J Pediatr Surg* 2003; 38(12):1712–5.
3. Landsmen IS, Werkhaven JA, Motoyama EK: Anesthesia for pediatric otorhinolaryngologic surgery. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Publishing, Philadelphia: 2011, 819–20.
4. Li ZS, Sun ZX, Zou DW, et al: Endoscopic management of foreign bodies in the upper-GI tract: experience with 1088 cases in China. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; 64(4):485–92.
5. Parray T, Siddiqui SM, Hughes M, et al: Tension pneumothorax and subcutaneous emphysema during retrieval of an ingested lithium button battery. *J Anesth* 2010; 24:469–71.

REPAIR OF TRACHEOESOPHAGEAL FISTULA AND ESOPHAGEAL ATRESIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The majority of infants with tracheoesophageal fistulae (TEF) have an associated esophageal atresia (EA), as shown in Fig. 12.5-1 (Type C). The Dx is made presumptively when an NG tube cannot be advanced past 8–13 cm and gas is present in the stomach. The complications of aspiration (gastric contents come up the fistula into the trachea) and GI distention compromising respiration (from passage of air down the fistula into the intestines) are diminished by repair within a few days of birth. Primary repair without gastrostomy is routine. The absence of stomach and bowel gas suggests a pure EA without fistula (Type A). A staged procedure—initial gastrostomy with deferred EA repair—may be used in babies < 1 kg, those with pure EA, or with more critical associated anomalies.

Surgical approach: All cases with TEF should begin with rigid bronchoscopy while the patient is spontaneously breathing. Bronchoscopy allows identification of the level of the TEF, detection of a second fistula, and rules out a tracheosophageal cleft that would be managed differently. The operation is performed in left-lateral decubitus position through a 4th interspace right thoracotomy. Preop ECHO is advised to look for cardiac anomalies and confirm a normal left-sided aortic arch. In the case of a right-sided arch (10%), most surgeons approach the fistula through a left thoracotomy. Debate continues on whether the best approach is retropleural or transpleural. The former is slower, but it may diminish the chances of empyema if the esophageal anastomosis leaks.

Another approach is thoracoscopy. There is now extensive experience with this approach, and it is proven to be a safe and effective method of repair in children, even those with complex congenital heart disease. It is performed using three or four trocars in the modified (prone) left-lateral decubitus position, causing the lung to drop forward as 5 mm Hg capnothorax is achieved. Dividing the azygous vein is necessary to find the subjacent fistula, branching off the posterior aspect of the trachea (Type C). The right bronchus, aorta, and (rarely) left bronchus may be mistaken for this structure. Division of the fistula may dramatically improve ventilation; until this moment, it is sometimes necessary to operate in short 3- to 5-min bursts, relaxing lung and mediastinal retraction for 1–2 min when saturations descend to critical levels. Afterward, the proximal fistula is located (when the anesthesiologist pushes downward on the indwelling [Replogle] tube), and then is dissected upward into the root of the neck to achieve sufficient length for anastomosis. After the posterior wall of the anastomosis is complete, some surgeons will ask for the NG tube to be

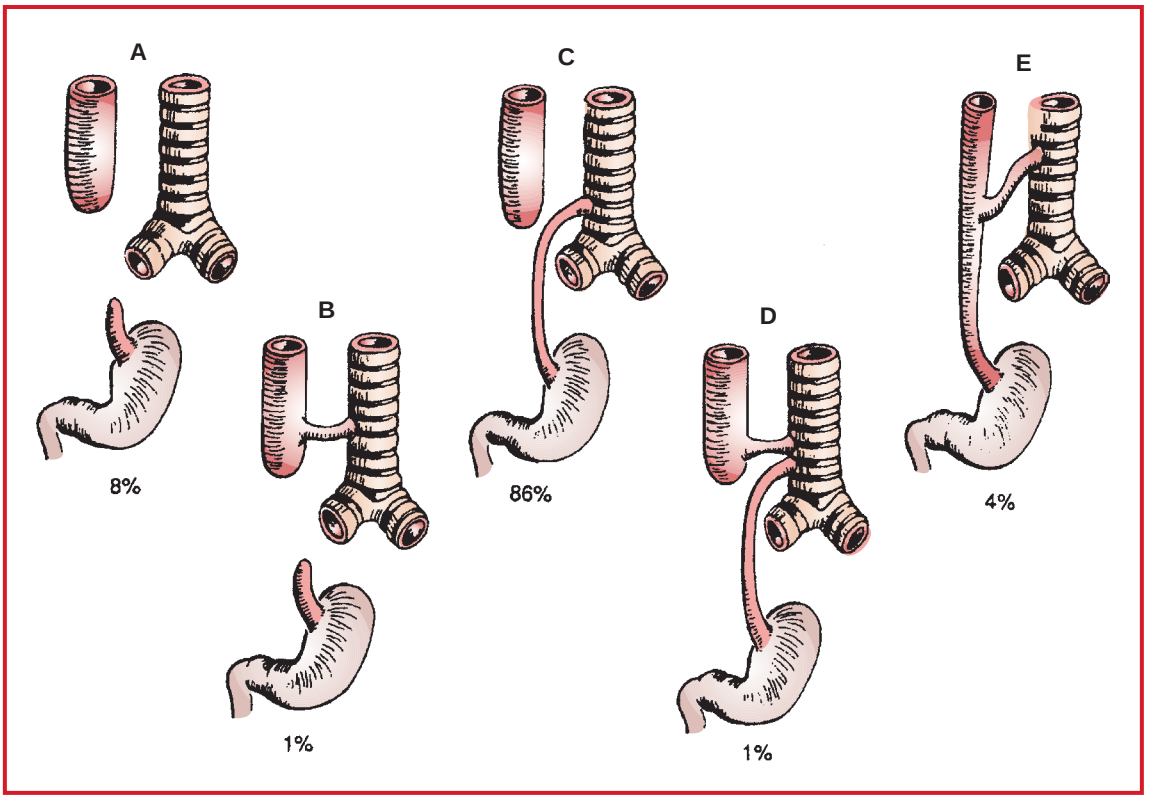


Figure 12.5-1. Types of esophageal atresia: **A:** pure esophageal atresia; **B:** proximal fistula; **C:** esophageal atresia, distal fistula; **D:** proximal and distal fistula; **E:** pure tracheoesophageal fistula. (Redrawn from Ravitch MM, et al, eds: *Pediatric Surgery*, Vol 1, 3rd edition. Year Book Medical Publishers, Chicago: 1979.)

replaced by a small (5 or 6 Fr) feeding tube, which is advanced into the stomach, separating the anterior from posterior esophageal wall during closure and permitting enteric feeds during the customary 1 wk before an esophagram is performed. This tube must be fixed in place because it has a tendency to become dislodged. Because neck hyperextension, as would occur during direct laryngoscopy, places significant tension on the anastomosis, postoperative reintubation is to be avoided. When the length of native esophagus is too short, even after lengthening maneuvers, both ends can be tied to the prevertebral fascia or attached to monofilament sutures and brought tangentially out of the back skin (Foker). In the former case, one reoperates months later, after differential growth of the esophagus elongates it relative to the vertebral bodies—or if not, to replace it with stomach or bowel. In the latter case, stretching daily over 1–2 wk may provide sufficient length for secondary anastomosis. A chest tube usually is left in place.

Variant procedures or approaches: Pure EA without fistula (Type A) indicates a long gap—the initial operation is a feeding G-tube along the lesser gastric curve, followed by definitive operation months later or the **Foker procedure.** A pure fistula without EA (Type E) is usually diagnosed later in life and occurs in the neck; it is repaired through a cervical incision.

Usual preop diagnosis: EA; TEF

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Primary Repair	Gastrostomy
Position	Lateral	Supine
Incision	Posterolateral thoracotomy (side opposite aortic arch)	LUQ

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Primary Repair	Gastrostomy
Special instrumentation	NG tube in upper pouch	G-tube
Unique considerations	Loss of ventilation via fistula; lung compression	May be done under local anesthesia
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h	1 h
Closing considerations	Extubation favored	Local anesthetic; wound infiltration
EBL	10 mL/kg	5 mL/kg
Postop care	NICU; humidified mist; avoid CPAP and neck hyperextension	⇐
Mortality	1–20%, depending on associated anomalies	5%
Morbidity	Stricture: 20–40% Leak: 10–20% Aspiration Atelectasis Stridor	– – ⇐ – –
Pain score	7–8	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Days–weeks
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1 in 4000 births
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Vertebral, anal, TEF, renal (or radial) anomalies (VATER association); vertebral, anal, cardiac, TEF, renal, limb anomalies (VACTERL association); trisomy 13, 18; hydrocephalus

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

EA and TEF usually are detected in the first day of life, although TEF without atresia may be difficult to diagnose until the patient experiences recurrent pneumonia, cyanosis associated with feeding, or abdominal distention. The fistula is usually at the distal trachea near the carina. Because of the risk of pulmonary aspiration, initial gastrostomy may be performed in babies < 1 kg. Associated conditions frequently associated with TEF include prematurity (30–40%) and congenital anomalies such as cardiac (20–35%), VATER, and VACTERL associations (see above).

Respiratory	The upper esophageal pouch should be suctioned to minimize aspiration. These patients frequently have respiratory insufficiency 2° prematurity (RDS), or aspiration pneumonitis, and may be intubated and on mechanical ventilation. Single-lung ventilation is typically not tolerated in small babies, and unnecessary surgical working space is created by regulated pneumothorax for thoracoscopy or retraction for open surgery. **Tests:** CXR, ABG

Cardiovascular	Associated cardiac abnormalities include VSD, PDA, tetralogy of Fallot, ASD, and coarctation of the aorta. At risk for pulmonary HTN with R → L shunt. In ductal-dependent patients, maintain prostaglandin infusion (PGE_1). **Tests:** ECHO
Gastrointestinal	Associated GI anomalies may occur (e.g., imperforate anus, midgut malrotation, duodenal atresia, pyloric stenosis).
Musculoskeletal	Musculoskeletal anomalies are usually of little anesthetic significance, except for possible C-spine involvement.
Hematologic	For the first 2–3 mo of life, the O_2-carrying capacity of blood is increased because of the presence of fetal Hb with its ↓ sensitivity to 2,3-DPG. A shift to the right of the O_2 sat curve results in ↑ O_2-Hb affinity. As a result, tissue oxygenation may be reduced, especially with anemia (Hb < 12 g/dL @ < 2–3 mo). Although TEF repair is not usually associated with significant blood loss, a T&C is indicated. Patients should be well hydrated and should have adequate urine output. **Tests:** Hct; T&C; others as indicated from H&P.
Laboratory	Serum electrolytes, ABG, blood glucose, to determine metabolic state.
Premedication	Usually none

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA for thoracoscopy, using a pediatric circuit. Warm room to 75–80°F and use forced-air warmer. If thoracotomy, the child is otherwise healthy and extubation is planned within 48 h, consider placing a caudal or lumbar epidural catheter (see p. D-4) after airway is secured and the child is anesthetized. Patients with large fistulas may need awake gastrostomy or a Fogarty catheter placed via the gastrostomy, using FOB, to occlude the distal end of the fistula. Alternatively, the Fogarty catheter can be used to occlude the proximal end of the fistula via the trachea.

Induction	Atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv in children < 1 mo, minimum 0.1 mg) is given before induction to ablate vagal response to laryngoscopy. Traditionally, spontaneous ventilation is advocated to minimize gastric distention; however, most cases will do well with iv induction. IV induction may be performed with care during ventilation to minimize PIP and potential inflation of stomach. Advance ETT to right mainstem and withdraw until bilateral breath sounds are present. Rotate ETT so the bevel faces posteriorly (to prevent intubation of the fistula). If rigid bronchoscopy is performed after induction, place ETT 1 cm above where fistula was visualized. Otherwise, have flexible pediatric bronchoscope available to verify placement of ETT and site of TEF. Keep air leak around ETT to a minimum (leak at 18–35 cmH_2O) to minimize alterations in ventilation 2° changes in chest and pulmonary compliance. The depth of the TEF should be noted on the initial rigid bronchoscopy. This depth guides ETT placement intraop and any postop attempts at reintubation that can be catastrophic if the ETT is advanced through the fistula repair.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance with inhalational anesthetic, TIVA, or combination. Avoid high FiO_2 if possible in premature neonates at risk for retinopathy. Use air/O_2 mixture for ventilation to maintain O_2 sat between 95% and 100%. Use low PIPs to avoid gastric distention by gases passing through fistula. Careful adjustment of ventilation will be necessary during surgical retraction of lung or during insufflation if procedure is done thoracoscopically. Manual ventilation may be helpful in assessing pulmonary compliance. If the patient is not tolerating manipulation by the surgeon, brief breaks may be necessary to restore ventilation and oxygenation. Muscle relaxation (rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg iv, vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg iv) is usually necessary. If epidural is used, GA drug requirements will be reduced. Frequent tracheal suctioning may be needed.
Emergence	Patients usually remain intubated. Opioid-sparing techniques and either thoracoscopic surgery or the use of regional anesthesia may facilitate earlier extubation. Reintubation may compromise the new anastomosis.

Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss usually minimal IV: 22–24 ga × 2 NS/LR (maintenance) (see p. D-3). 5% albumin	Continue dextrose-containing solution from NICU. Replace 3rd-space losses (6–8 mL/kg/h) with NS/LR. Replace blood loss with 5% albumin mL for mL; maintain Hct > 35%.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Arterial line (24 ga)	ABG, Hct, and glucose q 60 min. Consider preductal, postductal SaO_2 in premature neonates or those with cardiac lesions.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes Axillary roll	The patient is turned to the left-lateral decubitus position for a right thoracotomy. Monitor breath sounds in dependent lung. Consider using FOB to recheck tube position.
Complications	Hypothermia Metabolic acidosis Hypoxemia Aspiration/gastric insufflation Pneumothorax Mucus plug	 Migration of ETT above fistula may lead to gastric insufflation and difficult ventilation. Typically in ETT or large bronchi

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Apnea/hypoventilation Pneumothorax Tracheal leak Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury Pneumonia	Maintenance of normothermia lessens incidence of apnea, hypoventilation, and metabolic acidosis. Spontaneous hip flexion is the most reliable indication of adequate neuromuscular function.
Pain management	Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg q 1–2 h) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg q 1–2 h) Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv/po q 6; 20 mg/kg PR q 6; one-time dose perioperatively 30–40 mg/kg pr)	
Tests	ABG; Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Brett C, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general surgery in the neonate. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Publishing, Philadelphia: 2011, 574–78.
2. Broemling N, Campbell F: Anesthetic management of congenital tracheoesophageal fistula. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2011; 21:1092–99.
3. Diaz LK, Akpek EA, Dinavahi R, et al: Tracheoesophageal fistula and associated congenital heart disease: implications for anesthetic management and survival. *Pediatr Anesth* 2005; 15:862–69.
4. Holcomb GW III, Rothenberg SS, Bax KM, et al: Thoracoscopic repair of esophageal atresia and tracheoesophageal fistula: a multi-institutional analysis. *Ann Surg* 2005; 242(3):422–8.
5. Knotten G, Costi D, Stephens P: An audit of anesthetic management and complications of trachea-esophageal fistula and esophageal atresia repair. *Pediatr Anesth* 2012; 22:268–74.
6. Krosnar S, Baxter A: Thoracoscopic repair of esophageal atresia with tracheoesophageal fistula: anesthetic and intensive care management of a series of eight neonates. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2005; 15:541–6.
7. Liu LM, Pang LM: Neonatal surgical emergencies in anesthesiology. *Clin North Am* 2001; 19(2):272–6.
8. Morton NS, Fairgrieve R, Moores A, et al: Anesthesia for the full-term and ex-premature infant. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthsia* 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 506–10.
9. Motoyama EK, Davis PJ, eds: *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children,* 7th edition. Mosby-Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2006, 550–2.
10. Rice-Townsend S, Ramamoorthy C, Dutta S: Thoracoscopic repair of a type D esophageal atresia in a newborn with complex congenital heart disease. *J Pediatr Surg* 2007; 42(9):1616–9.

MEDIASTINAL MASS—BIOPSY OR RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Mass lesions** in the mediastinum are classified as anterior, middle, and posterior, based on their relationship to the heart, which occupies the middle mediastinum. **Anterior tumors** include lymphomas, thyroid tumors, teratomas, and thymomas. Large lymphomas and, less commonly, teratomas or metastatic germ cell tumors may cause **anterior mediastinal mass syndrome** and/or **SVC compression.** Preop preparation includes a rigid bronchoscope, plans to advance the ETT into a mainstem bronchus, and consideration of the need to rapidly roll the patient prone. These masses often are approached through a **3rd-rib anterior mediastinotomy (Chamberlain procedure)** or thoracoscopically. For patients with compromised airway, light sedation and core-needle biopsy after appropriate imaging (e.g., MRI or CT scan) are preferable. **Middle mediastinal tumors** include esophageal duplications, bronchogenic cysts, lymphangiomas and variants, pericardial cysts, and lymph nodes. They are typically approached through a 5th intercostal space posterolateral thoracotomy or thoracoscopically. **Posterior mediastinal lesions** are usually neurogenic tumors; less commonly, neuroenteric cysts. The former may communicate with the spinal cord through the intervertebral foramina, giving them the appearance of central narrowing ("dumbbell tumor"). They usually arise from the sympathetic ganglia, and when high in the chest, excision may cause Horner's syndrome. They are approached thoracoscopically or via posterolateral thoracotomy.

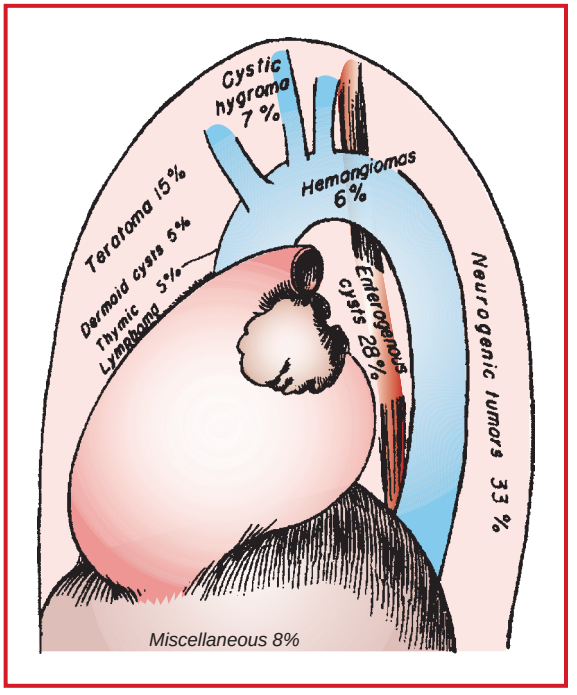


Figure 12.5-2. Distribution of mediastinal cysts and tumor. (Reprinted with permission from Ravitch MM, et al: *Pediatric Surgery*. Year Book Medical Publishers, Chicago: 1986.)

Surgical approach: The potential for blood loss and airway compromise must always be anticipated when operating on chest lesions adjacent to the great vessels and tracheobronchial tree. When SVC or anterior mediastinal mass syndromes are suspected, they may be confirmed clinically and should be discussed among surgeon, anesthesiologist, and oncologist. **Thoracoscopy** is the gold standard for biopsy. In the absence of an adequate workspace, a mini-thoracotomy may be necessary, but adequate biopsy for diagnostic purposes can typically be achieved with core needle biopsy. For resection, thoracotomy or median sternotomy is performed based on location of the tumor. A chest tube is typically left in place after resection or biopsy to drain the pleural space and ensure lung expansion postop.

Variant Procedure: In the past, it was a dictum that at least 1 cm^2 of tumor was needed for architecture to diagnose and classify lymphomas. In the age of histochemistry and chromosomal studies, this is less true. Sometimes the Dx can be made on bone marrow aspirate, pleural effusion aspirate, or a Tru-Cut needle biopsy. These alternatives should be considered when large anterior mediastinal masses are encountered. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided needle biopsy is an accepted technique for lesions near the esophagus. A new technique of transesophageal endoscopic surgery has been used for excision of mediastinal lymph nodes and masses.

Usual preop diagnosis: Neuroblastoma; teratoma; duplication cyst of foregut; mediastinal mass (lymphoma)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Lateral Thoracotomy	Median Sternotomy
Position	Lateral	Supine or semirecumbent
Incision	Posterolateral	Median, parasternal
Special instrumentation	None	Bronchoscope; ± CPB
Unique considerations	Airway or cardiovascular collapse after induction in anterior mediastinal masses	⇐
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv; intraop: cephalosporin irrigation (1 g/500 mL NS)	⇐
Surgical time	2–4 h	1–4 h
Closing considerations	Lung inflation; intercostal block; epidural catheter	⇐
EBL	10–30 mL/kg	10–50 mL/kg
Postop care	Aggressive respiratory therapy; analgesia	⇐
Mortality	< 5%, except symptomatic anterior masses	⇐
Morbidity	Atelectasis/respiratory Cardiovascular collapse with anterior masses	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	7–8	6–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–teens
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/5000
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Cervical or axillary cystic hygroma; hemangioma; SVC syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The clinical presentation of a mediastinal mass is often nonspecific in an otherwise healthy child. Often, a routine CXR (for some incidental Sx) will show the presence of an anterior mediastinal mass. These patients may suffer acute cardiorespiratory compromise on induction of anesthesia. A careful preop workup is essential. The presence of orthopnea, dyspnea, use of accessory muscles of ventilation, or upper body edema may indicate compression of trachea and/or great vessels and increase risk of anesthesia-related complications. Radiological evaluation, including CXR, CT or MRI, and ECHO will be essential in guiding treatment plan.

For large masses, consider rigid bronchoscopy and/or CPB standby. If severity of symptoms and size of tumor preclude anesthesia, possible options include preop radiation therapy or steroids. Both of these therapies will decrease tumor mass and relieve airway obstruction, but will interfere with accurate histologic diagnosis.

Current practice is to obtain a diagnostic biopsy under light sedation, due to concern for airway compromise. Treatment is then initiated to decrease tumor burden. Patients may return after treatment for resection of residual tumor.

Respiratory	Respiratory Sx (e.g., dyspnea, cough, stridor, wheezing) are extremely important. Note that, when mild airway compromise is present in the awake patient, this can indicate that total obstruction may occur when the patient is anesthetized or after muscle relaxation. The ability to lie supine without respiratory compromise should be determined, but does not guarantee adequate air exchange after receiving sedation or anesthesia. Tracheal and bronchial compression from the tumor may be positional. **Tests:** CXR; chest CT/MRI; echocardiogram; supine-sitting flow/volume loops can be useful for evaluating location and extent of airway obstruction in patients who are cooperative > 5 yr; oxygen saturation or ABG is indicated if symptomatic.
Cardiovascular	May include SVC syndrome (e.g., venous engorgement of head and neck, edema of upper body). Other Sx and signs may include syncope and headaches (↑ ICP) made worse in the supine position, JVD, papilledema. Cardiac insufficiency may occur due to tumor compression. **NB:** In severely symptomatic patients or large mediastinal masses, consider necessity for cardiopulmonary fem-fem bypass standby. **Tests:** ECHO
Laboratory	Electrolytes; CBC; If resection, T&C for 2–4 U, depending on body weight and tumor size; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	IV premedication with midazolam (0.02–0.05 mg/kg). Use premedication cautiously especially in patients with large masses, or those that are symptomatic.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA using pediatric circle. OR temperature 75–80°; forced-air warmer.

Induction	For diagnostic biopsy, the usual practice is light sedation with ketamine/midazolam and/or dexmedetomidine/midazolam, with generous infiltration of local anesthetic by the surgeons. If patient has undergone treatment, tumor has decreased in size, and there is no risk for airway compromise, a standard iv induction is appropriate. An iv is mandatory. If SVC syndrome is present, it is important to have iv access in the lower extremity. An awake FOB and intubation in the sitting position may be necessary. A mask induction with sevoflurane/O_2 in the semi-Fowler's (reclining) position may also be performed. Intubation should be performed with preservation of spontaneous ventilation. Have small styletted ETTs available, in the event of tracheal compression. Use muscle relaxants with caution because the change from spontaneous to positive pressure ventilation may not be tolerated and may lead to obstruction. Be prepared for obstruction distal to ETT. If obstruction occurs, gently pushing a smaller ETT into the R mainstream bronchus may alleviate obstruction. Rigid bronchoscopy/one lung ventilation may be needed. **NB:** Surgeon must be present (with rigid bronchoscope immediately available) in the event of acute airway obstruction on induction. If obstruction is unabated, options include median sternotomy and femoral access for CPB. **NB:** A simple positional change (e.g., supine to lateral, prone or sitting) may relieve cardiorespiratory collapse.
Maintenance	Spontaneous ventilation/assisted ventilation with volatile agent and 100% O_2 may be appropriate. Supplemental epidural analgesia may be administered if a major resection is planned as opposed to a small incision for biopsy (see p. D-2). Have surgeon infiltrate wound with local anesthetic to reduce volatile anesthetic and opiate requirements.
Emergence	Confirm air leak around ETT (with cuff deflated). Have all emergency airway equipment available and surgeon present. Patient should be fully awake before extubation.

Blood and fluid requirements	Usually minimal blood loss IV: 18–24 ga × 2, depending on age NS/LR @ maintenance (see p. D-1) T&C for major resections	If mediastinoscopy is performed, sudden blood loss from torn great vessel may occur.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) ± Arterial line	Esophageal or precordial stethoscope is earliest monitor of airway obstruction. Preop a-line may be indicated in patients with large masses or in symptomatic patients.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Cardio/respiratory failure Loss of airway Hypotension	If obstruction worsens acutely, be prepared to change to lateral-decubitus or prone position, which may help alleviate tracheal, bronchial compression and cardiovascular collapse. These cases require great attention to detail. All efforts must be made to maintain spontaneous ventilation. Preparations must be made for resuscitation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Respiratory failure Pneumothorax	Anesthesiologist must be readily available in the PACU to manage acute airway problems.
Pain management	Ketorolac 0.5 mg/kg (up to 30 mg) iv q 6 h × 24 h Epidural analgesia PCA (see pp. E-3–E-4)	Cervical biopsy/mediastinoscopy have minimal postop pain and can be effectively treated with NSAID and local anesthetic infiltration. Use opiates cautiously.
Tests	Hct, ABG, CXR, as clinically indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Anghelescu DL, Burgoyne LL, Liu T, et al: Clinical and diagnostic imaging findings predict anesthetic complications in children presenting with malignant mediastinal masses. *Pediatr Anesth* 2007; 17(11):1090–8.
2. Golianu B, Hammer GB: Pediatric thoracic anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesth* 2005; 18(1):5–11.
3. Hack HA, Wright NB, Wynn RF: The anesthetic management of children with anterior mediastinal masses. *Anesthesia* 2008; 63:837–46.
4. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracic, urologic, and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Pub, Philadelphia: 2011, 772–78.
5. Hammer GB: Anesthetic management for the child with a mediastinal mass. *Pediatric Anaesth* 2004; 14:95–7.
6. McJadyen G, Budac S, Richards M, et al: Anesthesia for thoracic surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia,* 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 580–3.
7. Narang S, Harte BH, Body SC: Anesthesia for patients with a mediastinal mass. *Anesth Clin North Am* 2001; 19(3):559–79.
8. Tsao K, St Peter SD, Sharp SW, et al: Current application of thoracoscopy in children. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech* A 2008; 18(1):131–5.

NEONATAL LUNG RESECTION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Neonatal lung resection is performed for a few disorders relatively unique to children, including congenital pulmonary airway malformations (CPAM); sequestrations (intralobar 75%, extralobar 25%); congenital lobar overdistention (CLO, formerly called "emphysema"); and congenital pulmonary cysts (Fig. 12.5-3). Many lesions are

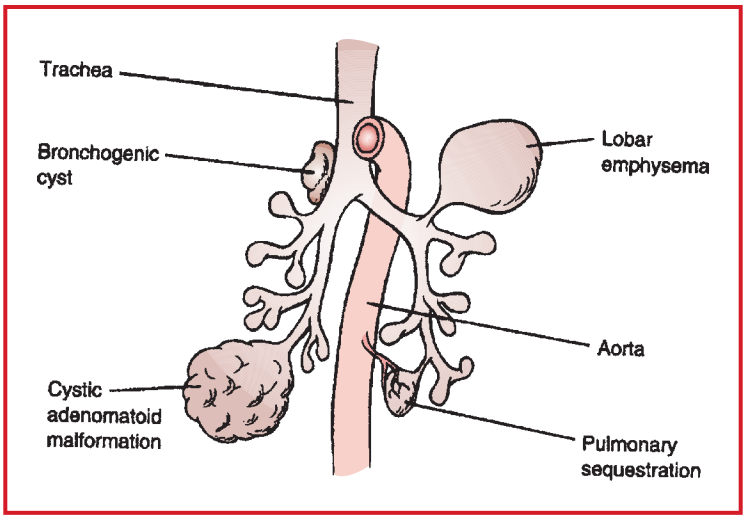


Figure 12.5-3. Classic developmental abnormalities of the tracheobronchial tree. (Reproduced with permission from Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP: *Surgery of Infants and Children*. Lippincott-Raven, 1997. After Haller JA Jr, Golladay ES, Pickard LR, et al: Surgical management of lung bud anomalies: lobar emphysema, bronchogenic cyst, cystic adenomatoid malformation, and intralobar pulmonary sequestration. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1979; 28:34.)

asymptomatic; they are diagnosed by antenatal ultrasound or later when a CXR is performed for other reasons. CPAMs may compromise respiration, develop infections, and have a small but real risk of malignant degeneration. Sequestrations have little long-term risk, but they are frequently fed by a large systemic artery of near-aortic caliber (often from below the diaphragm) with independent venous drainage back into the vena cava, causing significant L → R shunting. CLO resection is performed when the volume of ineffective, dilated lung compresses adjacent functioning lobes, compromising their function. (This condition is worsened by positive pressure ventilation.) The key therapy is surgical—opening the hemithorax enables an oversized lobe to herniate through the incision, decompressing the healthy lung beneath. Most resections are performed on a ventilated lung because it is difficult to selectively intubate small airways.

Surgical approach: Patients undergoing lateral thoracotomy through the 4th, 5th, or 6th intercostal space benefit from preop placement of an epidural catheter. In some institutions, thoracoscopic resection may be performed. Significant blood loss is possible (infrequent). Often ventilation improves when the aberrant lung segment is removed. A large CPAM, intralobar sequestration, or CLO usually requires formal **lobectomy.** Smaller CPAMs, pulmonary cysts, and extralobar sequestrations are treated with lesser resections. A chest tube usually is left in place at the end of the case to drain the pleural cavity and promote lung expansion.

Variant procedures or approaches: Thoracoscopic lobectomy is increasingly the technique of choice for lung resections. It can be performed safely and effectively and avoids the morbidity and poor cosmesis of a thoracotomy. Upper-lobe resections can be technically more challenging, but are still possible with thoracoscopy. Insufflation of the hemithorax with 7 mm Hg carbon dioxide can aid in lung collapse. Some argue for observation of asymptomatic low-risk cystic lung lesions, but the criteria for observation are yet to be rigorously studied.

Usual preop diagnosis: CPAM; sequestration; CLO; pulmonary cysts; congenital diaphragmatic hernia; pneumothorax

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thoracotomy	Thoracoscopy
Position	Lateral decubitus	⇐
Incision	Lateral thoracotomy	⇐
Special instrumentation	Pediatric rib retractor	4 mm 30° scope

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Thoracotomy	Thoracoscopy
Unique considerations	Rapid thoracotomy improves ventilation in CLO. Aggressive high-pressure ventilation should be avoided.	Controlled pneumothorax creates working space but can increase CO_2 through absorption.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg	⇐
Surgical time	2 h	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Extubation preferable and aided by epidural catheter.	Extubation preferable, intercostal block, epidural unnecessary
EBL	10 mL/kg	5 mL
Postop care	NICU	NICU/PICU
Mortality	< 5%	< 2%
Morbidity	Bleeding Air leak Atelectasis pneumothorax	⇐
Pain score	7–8	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Days-weeks
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/5000 live births
Etiology	Bronchopulmonary foregut maldifferentiation
Associated conditions	**Extralobar sequestration:** may occur below the diaphragm. **Sequestrations:** may be associated with high-output heart failure and diaphragmatic hernia. **CCAM:** may cause hydrops fetalis and fetal death. Intermediate forms of sequestration and CCAM exist.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In general, children have significantly decreased respiratory reserve compared with adults because:

1. FRC is closer to RV in children, thereby making airway closure more likely.
2. O_2 consumption is higher (6–8 mL/kg/min vs. 3 mL/kg/min).
3. In adults, the decubitus position increases blood flow to the ventilated, dependent lung, while decreasing perfusion to the operated nondependent lung. In children, the nondependent lung may actually receive greater perfusion than the dependent lung, which may be due to a more compliant chest wall in infants and young children.

Premedication	None usually needed. In older infants > 7–9 mo, consider midazolam 0.5 mg/kg or 1–2 mg iv. If airway obstruction or severe pulmonary disease is present, use premedication judiciously.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, forced-air warmer; OR warmed to 75–80°F; use warming pad on OR table, and warm iv fluids. Consider epidural if thoracotomy.

Induction	Either inhalation or iv induction may be performed. (For OLV, see below.) The trachea is intubated. An arterial line is indicated for children having a thoracotomy and for VATS in patients with significant lung disease. A CVP is generally not required if iv access is adequate.
One-lung ventilation (OLV) in pediatric patients	OLV is used to allow deflation of the operative lung, which is especially useful during VATS. Alternatively, the surgeon may insufflate CO_2 to compress the operative lung. OLV also isolates the lungs to help prevent contamination of the nonoperative lung with blood or purulent fluid from the operative lung. The **three techniques for OLV** in infants and children include the following: Use of a **single-lumen tube:** a single-lumen tube is advanced into the mainstem bronchus of the nonoperative lung. FOB may be placed through ETT to confirm placement. Disadvantages: may obstruct upper lobe bronchus; cannot suction operative lung; may not have complete collapse of operative lung. Use of a **bronchial blocker:** For placing blocker OUTSIDE the ETT: Operative lung intubated with ETT, guide wire passed through ETT, BB advanced over guide wire; second smaller ETT placed in trachea, alongside the BB. BB also can be advanced under direct visualization with FOB guidance via ETT. For placing blocker THROUGH ETT, multiport adapters allow oxygenation while positioning. Disadvantages: requires small ETT, FOB, or fluoroscopy. If bronchial blocker not available, consider balloon tipped Fogarty catheter. Care must be taken to not place a bronchial blocker too deep in a small infant as it can be inadvertently incorporated into the surgical closure of the bronchus. Use of a **double-lumen tube (DLT):** Can be placed for older children (see table below for approximate sizes). (See Lobectomy, Pneumonectomy, for details.)
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-3). Muscle relaxation is appropriate. Inhalation agent or TIVA (see p. B-3) may be used; 100% O_2 or O_2/air mixture; N_2O is avoided. Fentanyl 2–5 mcg/kg or other iv opioid should be given if epidural is not in place.
Emergence	In most cases, the patient can be extubated at the end of surgery. An OG tube should be placed before and suctioned prior to extubation. Ensure ability to oxygenate and ventilate adequately before extubation.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 2 NS/LR @ maintenance Potential for moderate blood loss. Transfuse to maintain Hct > 23. If > 2 mo of age, dextrose-containing solutions are not required.

Table 12.5-1. Tube Selection for OLV in Children

Age (yr)	ETT (Inner Diameter)	Fogarty Catheter	Bronchial Blocker	Univent Tube	DLT (Fr)
0.5–1	3.5–4.0	3	2(a)		
1–2	4.0–4.5	4	3(a)		
2–4	4.5–5.0	4	5(b)		
4–6	5.0–5.5	5	5(b)		
6–8	5.5–6	6	5(b)	3.5	
8–10	6.0 cuffed	6	5(b)	3.5	26
10–12	6.5 cuffed	6	5(b)	4.5	26–28
12–14	6.5–7.0 cuffed	6	5(b)	4.5	32
14–16	7.0 cuffed	7	5,7(b)	6.0	35
16–18	7.0–8.0 cuffed	7	7,9(b)	7.0	35–37

(a) Edwards Life Science, LLC. Irvine, CA
(b) Cook Critical Care, Inc., Bloomington, IN.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Arterial line (22 ga) Foley catheter	For thoracotomy, ABG, Hct, and glucose should be evaluated as clinically indicated; UO monitored and kept at 1 mL/kg/h.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypoxia Hypercarbia ↓ BP	DDX: Movement of ETT or BB, bronchospasm; obstruction of ETT by kinking or secretions; preexisting disease. Permissible during OLV (40–50 mm Hg) to minimize barotrauma. Blood loss; hypovolemia; ↓ venous return 2° ↑ intrathoracic pressure

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Atelectasis Hypoventilation Hypoxia Pneumothorax	 Supplemental O_2 Check breath sounds, chest wall motion, CXR. May require chest tube.
Pain management	Thoracic epidural Ketorolac 0.5 mg/kg iv q 6 h × 48–72 h	Lumbar (or caudal if < 8 kg and < 1 yr) epidural catheter may be placed and threaded up to thoracic levels. (NB- 1st dilate space with NS prior to threading catheter; ultrasound guidance may also be used to guide placement.) max 30 mg/dose, if needed to enhance analgesia
Tests	Hct ABG CXR	

Suggested Readings

1. Dinesh K: Single lung ventilation in pediatric anesthesia. *Anesth Clin North Am* 2005; 23:693–708.
2. Gregory GA, ed: *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 4th edition. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2002, 428–34.
3. Hammer GB: Single lung ventilation in infants and children. *Pediatr Anesth* 2004; 14:98–102.
4. Hammer GB, Harrison TK, Vricella LA, et al: Single lung ventilation in children using a new paediatric bronchial blocker. *Pediatr Anesth* 2002; 12:69–72.
5. Rothenberg SS, Albanese CT: Experience with 144 consecutive pediatric thoracoscopic lobectomies. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech* A 2007; 17(3):339–41.

DRAINAGE OF EMPYEMA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Most empyemas occur in otherwise healthy children when a necrotizing pneumonia causes a parapneumonic effusion that becomes infected. The infected fluid (empyema) has the tendency to become solid over days to weeks. It compresses the diseased lung and responds poorly to antibiotics because it is remote from the circulatory system. Three phases of empyema are recognized, and the key variable determining outcome is fibrin.

The early or **exudative phase** occurs when the effusion becomes purulent—liquid pus without fibrin is successfully treated with a chest tube if it is recognized early (uncommon). The second phase, **fibrinopurulent,** occurs over the next days as thick strands of infected fibrin replace exudative fluid. It is the most common phase and is most expeditiously treated by **thoracoscopic ± open empyemectomy.** The last phase, **organized,** occurs when all exudate has been replaced by thick, infected fibrin, compressing the lung and adhering to both visceral and parietal pleura. Fortunately, this stage is rare in children; tedious **thoracoscopic decortication** may be successful, but often **thoracotomy** is required and the procedure is bloody. Some previously common organisms (e.g., *Haemophilius influenzae*) are decreasing with the advent of pediatric vaccines; *Streptococcus pneumonia, Staphylococcus aureus,* and *Streptococcus pyogenes* remain common pathogens, joined more recently by gram-negative rods. Significant bleeding is not uncommon, and bronchopleural fistulae, if not already present, may occur when dead lung adheres to débrided overlying fibrin.

Surgical approach: Ipsilateral long-term venous access (peripherally inserted central or subclavian catheter) is placed before or during surgery. In larger children, a BB may protect the healthy lung from pus, which may extrude from the infected side into the trachea during operation. A **two- or three-port thoracoscopic technique** is most common, aided by hermetic trocars used with 5 mm Hg intrathoracic pressure (unless a bronchopleural fistula exists). The first port is placed into a preexisting chest tube site or the largest known pocket of pus/fibrin observed on preop imaging. Gradually, this space is enlarged until the remaining ports can be inserted under direct vision. As fibrin and pus are removed, trapped lung is liberated, and the procedure continues somewhat tediously until the entire lung is free and most fibrin is removed. One or two large-bore chest tubes are placed at the end of the procedure.

Alternate approach is placement of one or more pigtail chest tubes and flushing the chest cavity with a fibrinolytic agent (e.g., tissue plasminogen activator). There is debate whether this approach may result in longer hospital stays, and thoracoscopy remains the gold standard.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Thoracoscopic	Thoracotomy
Position	Contralateral decubitus	⇐
Incision	Three ports	5th interspace
Special instrumentation	Suction irrigator; chest tube	Rib retractor; suction; chest tube
Unique considerations	5 mm Hg capnothorax	—
Antibiotics	Cefuroxime (25 mg/kg) and clindamycin (10 mg/kg)	⇐
Surgical time	1.5 h	2 h
Closing considerations	Local anesthetic	± Epidural catheter
EBL	10–20 mL/kg	⇐
Postop care	May be septic for 24 h Extubation ideal	⇐ ⇐
Mortality	< 5%	< 10% when used for advanced disease
Morbidity	Air leak Bleeding Sepsis Atelectasis Pneumatocele	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–4	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1–17 yr
Male: Female	1:1
Incidence	1/150 pneumonias
Etiology	Bacteria infect pleural effusion.
Associated conditions	Chronic granulomatous disease (uncommon)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Neonatal Lung Resection for guidelines for OLV, p. 1297.

Suggested Readings

1. Choudry DK: Single lung ventilation in pediatric anesthesia. *Anesth Clin North Am* 2005; 23:693–708.
2. Fuller MK, Helmrath MA: Thoracic empyema, application of video-assisted thoracic surgery and its current management. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2007; 19(3):328–32.
3. Golianu B, Hammer GB: Pediatric thoracic anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anesth* 2005; 18(1):5–11.

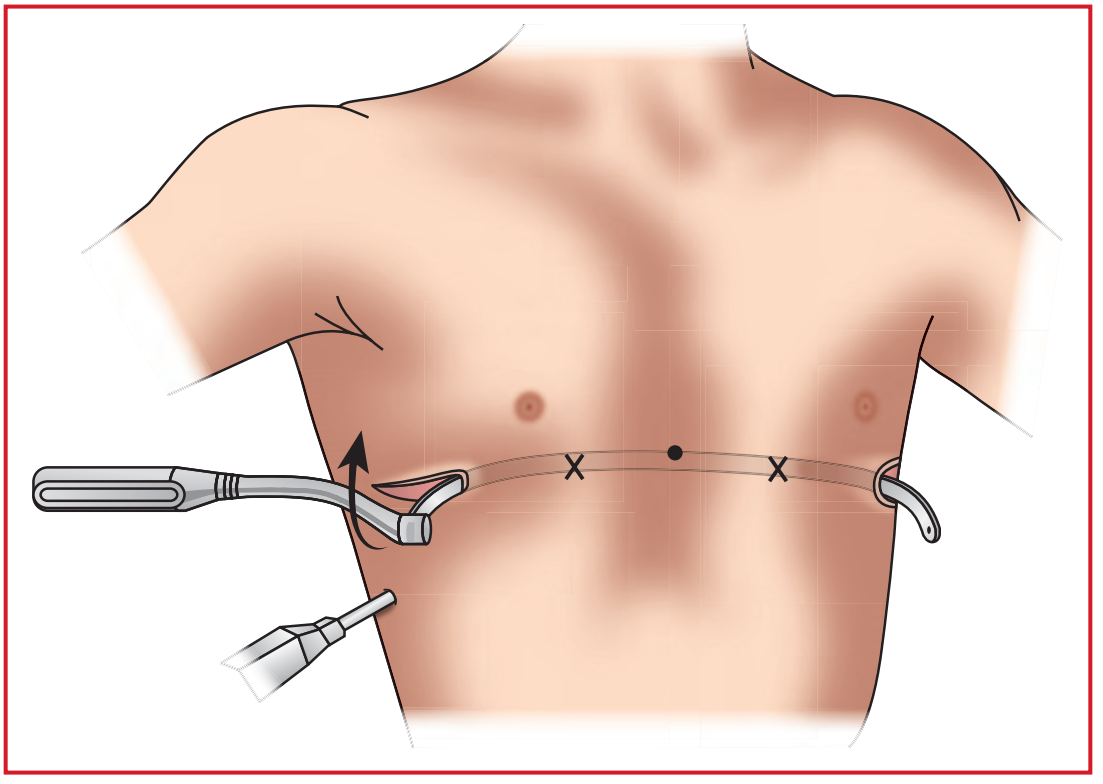
REPAIR OF PECTUS EXCAVATUM/CARINATUM

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pectus excavatum ("funnel chest") is a sternochondral deformity more common in boys and of greater frequency than pectus carinatum ("pigeon chest"). Both may be associated with scoliosis, spontaneous pneumothorax, and Marfan syndrome. Severe excavatum lesions may be associated with significant cardiorespiratory compromise. It may be associated with pain, though often the impetus for repair is for cosmetic reasons. The timing of repair is variable; some surgeons preferring to operate on younger children (5–6 yr) because of the ease and decreased bleeding, whereas others prefer doing surgery during adolescence to prevent possible recurrence during puberty.

Surgical approach: The classic **Ravitch** approach involves an omega-shaped chest incision in the supine position. The pectus muscles are detached from the sternum, and 3–5 pairs of costochondral cartilages are resected, leaving the perichondrium for subsequent cartilage regeneration (Fig. 12.5-4). A transverse osteotomy of the upper sternum corrects its appearance. In some excavatum patients, a metal bar or "strut" may be placed beneath the sternum but on top of the ribs. If used, the strut is removed 2 yr later in a short operation through a small lateral incision. Hemovac drains are placed beneath the skin to trap bleeding from cut bony surfaces; chest tube(s) are placed if the pleura or pericardium is violated. Significant blood loss from cut surfaces of bones and cartilage occurs in older patients.

A newer approach (**Nuss procedure**) is now widely practiced. This involves placement of a curvilinear stainless steel bar (pectus bar) via lateral axillary incisions through the rib space under thoracoscopic guidance beneath the sternum at the point of maximal sternal depression. The bar travels through both hemithoraces anterior to the heart and lungs; when "flipped" 180° it exerts powerful forces backward on the ribs and forward on the sternum. Sometimes fixation devices must be added to the ribs to keep the bar from "flipping back" into original position. A chest tube is not always necessary; however, very significant pain results, optimally treated with an epidural catheter. The rapid change of chest-wall shape has also caused thoracic outlet syndrome. The downside of both the Ravitch and Nuss procedures is that they try to instantaneously reverse years of bone malformation. A very new approach in the process of FDA approval seeks to reverse PE slowly through the use of magnetic force. A magnet is implanted in the retrosternal space and a complimentary magnetic brace is worn regularly to slowly force the sternum back into normal position.



Nuss Procedure (Redrawn from Coran (ed.): *Pediatric Surgery,* 7th edition. Elsevier: 2012.)

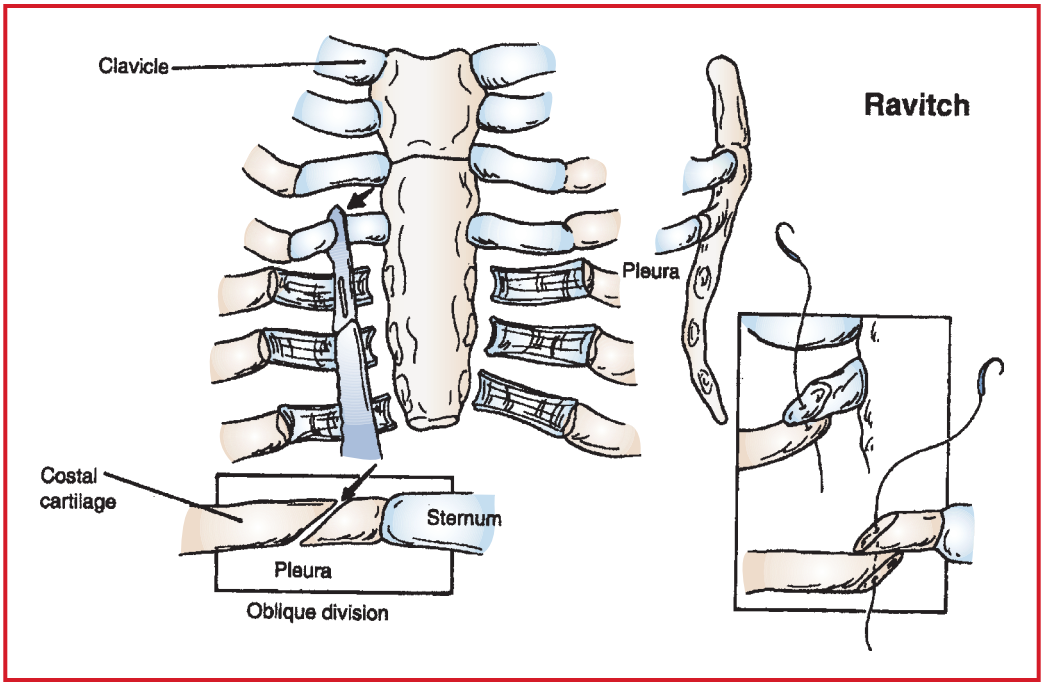


Figure 12.5-4. Ravitch approach: The costal cartilage immediately above the most cephalad abnormal costal cartilage is divided obliquely from medial to lateral, as shown. This is often at the level of the second costal cartilage, at the manubrial-sternal junction. The divided normal costal cartilages are allowed to overlap, the medial portion being anterior and the lateral being posterior. Suture fixation of the transected cartilage provides immobilization, ensuring sternal support at this level **(inset)**. (Reproduced with permission from Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP: *Surgery of Infants and Children*. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Pectus excavatum; carinatum

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Ravitch	Nuss
Position	Supine	⇐, R side slightly elevated
Incision	Omega, chest	Two right axilla, one left axilla
Special instruments	Periosteal elevators; sternal saw; possible strut	Steel bar; bar bender; stabilizers
Unique considerations	Heart and lungs beneath	Cosmetically superior
Antibiotics	1st generation cephalosporin	⇐
Surgical time	~3 h	≤ 1 h
Closing considerations	Extubate; epidural, if possible	Epidural very important
EBL	10–20 mL/kg	< 5 mL/kg
Postop care	Drains out 1–3 d → home 5 d	→ home 5 d
Mortality	< 2%	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding Recurrence Pneumothorax Cardiac injury	⇐ Bar "flips" Thoracic outlet syndrome ⇐
Pain score	5–6	8–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	5 yr–adolescent
Male:Female	5–9:1
Incidence	Uncertain
Etiology	Relationship with reactive airway disease
Associated conditions	Marfan syndrome (5%); mitral valve prolapse (5%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Pectus excavatum , a condition in which there is concave depression of the lower sternum, may be associated with CHD and restrictive lung disease in severe cases. Usually however, the deformity is primarily cosmetic, and the patient is asymptomatic. Surgery usually occurs between 12 and 15 yr of age. **Pectus carinatum** (a convex lower sternum) usually is repaired for cosmetic reasons only and usually during the teenage years. Both pectus conditions may be associated with connective tissue disorders (e.g., Marfan's, Ehler's, Danlos), therefore CHD may be present.

Respiratory	Restrictive lung disease 2° chest-wall deformity may be present in severe deformities. If patient has exercise limitations, there is a need to differentiate between cardiac and pulmonary components. **Tests:** CXR: AP, lateral; PFTs; ABG, if symptomatic, SaO_2

Cardiovascular	In both conditions, CHD should be investigated if present. Pulmonary HTN may be 2° pulmonary overcirculation (e.g., VSD), or chronic hypoxemia. **Tests:** ECG; ECHO
Laboratory	Hct; T&C
Premedication	If patient is an asymptomatic child, midazolam (0.5–0.75 mg/kg max 20 mg, or 1–2 mg iv).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, forced-air warmer; maintain OR temperature 75–80°.

Induction	IV or mask induction. With restrictive lung disease, there is ↓ FRC, which will shorten the time to alveolar equilibration for the volatile anesthetics; institute early manual hyperventilation. Tracheal intubation, facilitated by neuromuscular blockade (rocuronium 1 mg/kg, vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg). Use appropriately sized ETT (see p. D-2).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance with inhalational anesthetic, TIVA or combination. Insertion of thoracic epidural catheter will provide for supplemental anesthesia and treatment of postop pain and is highly recommended. Usually ropivacaine/clonidine/hydromorphone (see App. E). If no epidural is placed, bolus with long acting iv opioid (morphine 0.1 mg/kg, hydromorphone 10 mcg/kg) for postoperative pain control, and titrate to effect.	
Emergence	Plan for extubation in OR. Ensure adequate reversal of neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg iv) and glycopyrrolate (0.014 mg/kg iv).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Usually minimal blood and 3rd-space losses IV: 18 or 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 3–5 cc/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Elbow padding to avoid ulnar nerve compression. Careful positioning to avoid nerve compression.
Complications	Pneumothorax Atelectasis	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Respiratory insufficiency Pneumothorax Nerve injury related to positioning	2° splinting, preexisting restrictive pulmonary disease
Pain management	Epidural (thoracic) or PCA Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg q 6°	Standard epidural infusion. Ketorolac (0.5 mg/kg iv q 6 h × 24–72 h), if needed, in addition to the above measures (see Appendix E)

Suggested Readings

1. Golianu B, Hammer G: Pediatric thoracic anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anesth* 2005; 18(1):5–11.
2. Goretsky ML, Kelly RE, Croituru D, et al: Chest wall anomalies: pectus excavatum and pectus carinatum. *Adolesc Med Clin* 2004; 15(3):455–71.
3. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracic, urologic, and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Pub, Philadelphia: 2011, 764–65.
4. McFadyen G, Budac S, Richards M: Anesthesia for thoracic surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*. Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 581–84.

5. Nuss D, Kelly RE Jr: Indications and technique of Nuss procedure for pectus excavatum. *Thorac Surg Clin* 2010; 20(4):583–97.
6. Obermeyer RJ, Goretsky MJ: Chestwall deformities in pediatric surgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2012; 92(3):669–84.

ESOPHAGEAL REPLACEMENT, COLON INTERPOSITION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Esophageal replacement in children usually is performed for caustic stricture or esophageal atresia (EA) refractory to other therapy. Caustic esophageal strictures—usually in toddlers following lye ingestion—are becoming less common; esophageal replacement is indicated after failed attempts at balloon dilation (BD). Patients with EA may have a primary replacement for known long-gap atresia (Type A) or will have a secondary replacement after failed attempts at anastomosis (all types). There is no good long-term esophageal replacement; a segment of colon, stomach, or (rarely) jejunum is the best surrogate.

Surgical approach: Depending on anatomy and surgeon preference, the **distal dissection** occurs in the abdomen and/or chest; the **proximal anastomosis** occurs in the chest or neck. Position changes with redraping may be required, depending on the selection of incisions. The esophageal substitute usually is brought through the bed of the esophagus with small risks to the pulmonary vessels, recurrent laryngeal nerves, and brachiocephalic vein. The **retrosternal approach** may be safer but is less optimal in children because of long-term problems with obstruction and emptying.

Variant procedures or approaches: Colon is the most frequent substitute, with the transverse colon attached to either the R colon (isoperistaltic) or L colon (reverse peristaltic) being used. When the stomach is used, it may be pulled up entirely from the abdomen through the chest with **gastroesophageal anastomosis** in the neck **(Orringer)**; alternatively, a **gastric tube** of greater (common) or lesser curve maybe constructed for cervical or thoracic anastomosis. Small bowel is used only when other substitutes are inappropriate—because an additional microvascular anastomosis is needed for graft survival.

Usual preop diagnosis: EA; caustic stricture

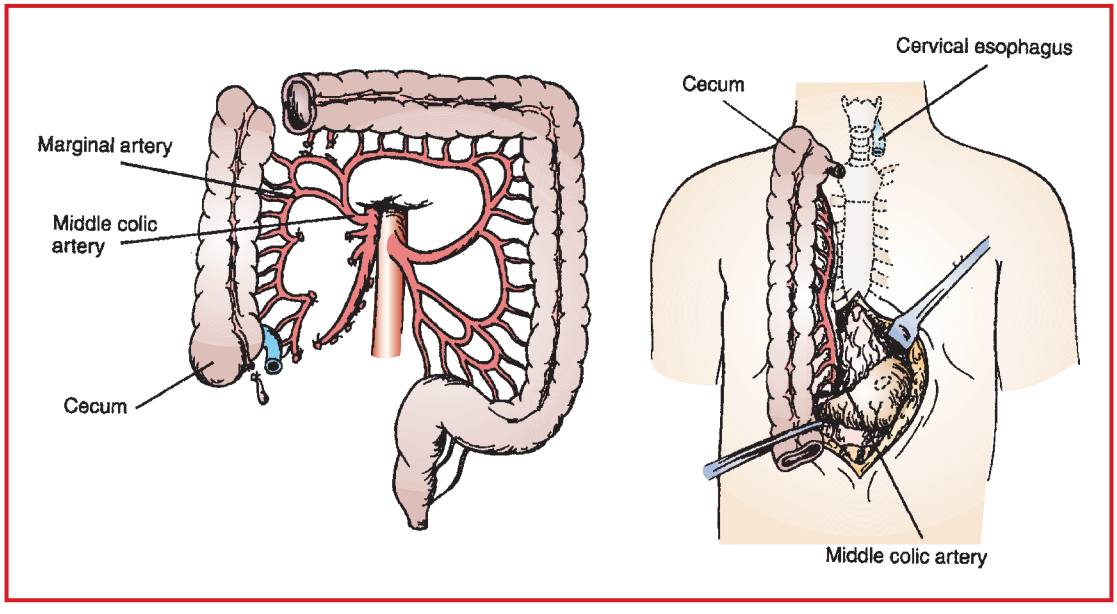


Figure 12.5-5. Esophageal replacement using a right colon interposition in a retrosternal position. (Reproduced with permission from Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP: *Surgery of Infants and Children*. Lippincott-Raven: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, tilted; or supine, ± lateral
Incision	Abdominal and cervical ± thoracotomy
Special instrumentation	Bougie (upper esophagus)
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	3–5 h (4–6 h with position change)
EBL	20–40 mL/kg
Postop care	PICU
Mortality	< 5%
Morbidity	Respiratory failure Anastomotic leak Sepsis Stricture
Pain score	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1–5 yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	~200/yr in the United States
Etiology	Caustic ingestion; EA
Associated conditions	Caustic stricture; imperforate anus; VACTERL association

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

These patients usually are children presenting with a Hx of caustic substance ingestion and subsequent development of esophageal stricture. They frequently have undergone multiple esophageal dilations under GA. Previous anesthesia records should be obtained. Preop, these patients are admitted for bowel prep and, consequently, may be hypovolemic.

Gastrointestinal	Varying degrees of esophageal reflux may be present. Preop H_2-blocker administration may be appropriate (e.g., ranitidine 1.0 mg/kg iv). If a gastrostomy is present, it should be vented. **Tests:** Electrolytes
Hematologic	Anemia due to poor nutrition **Tests:** CBC; T&C
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	IV may already be in place, and midazolam (1–2 mg iv) can be administered in holding area. Alternatively, midazolam usually can be given (0.5–0.75 mg/kg po) 30 min. before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, forced-air warmer; heating pad on OR table. Warm room to 75–80°F. An epidural catheter (for intraop and postop pain management) may be placed once child is anesthetized and airway is secured.

Induction	IV induction preferred. If reflux concerns present, preoxygenate for 2–3 min and perform rapid-sequence induction and intubation with cricoid pressure (see p. B-5). Use appropriately sized ETT (see p. D-2). Continue neuromuscular blockade with vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) or rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg).	
Maintenance	Use air/O_2/isoflurane. Avoid N_2O to minimize increase in bowel air, possible pneumothorax related to surgical dissection, use NMB with train-of-four monitoring, and dose epidural catheter as needed (see Appendix E).	
Emergence	Possible extubation in OR vs. postop intubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss moderate IV: 22 ga × 2 NS/LR @ –10 mL/kg/h	Replace 3rd-space losses with NS/LR (~10 mL/kg/h). Replace blood loss mL for mL with albumin 5%. Transfuse to maintain Hct > 22.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) CVP: 4 Fr DL or 5Fr TL or PICC for postop TPN ± Arterial line (22 ga) Foley catheter	Marked arterial waveform variation with ventilation is a sensitive indicator of hypovolemia. ABG/Hct prn.
Positioning	Shoulder roll ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Beware of tracheal extubation with head extension. If necessary, reconfirm ETT position with laryngoscopy.
Complications	Hypoventilation Hypothermia Pneumothorax Dysrhythmias Aspiration	Suprasternal dissection involves traction on trachea and recurrent laryngeal nerve. Mediastinal pull-through may damage great vessels and → pneumothorax, manipulation-induced dysrhythmias, impaired chest-wall compliance.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypoventilation Pneumothorax Recurrent laryngeal nerve injury Mediastinitis	Inadequately treated pain → hypoventilation.
Pain management	Epidural analgesia (see Appendix E). Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv) Ketorolac (0.5 mg/kg iv up to 15 mg q 6 h × 24–72 h)	
Tests	CXR Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Loukogeorgakis SP, Pierro A: Replacement surgery for esophageal atresia. *Eur J Pediatr Surg* 2013; 23(3):182–90.
2. Schecter NL, Berde CB, Yaster M, eds: *Pain in Infants, Children, and Adolescents,* 2nd edition. Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2003, 363–96.

REPAIR OF CONGENITAL DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Posterolateral congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH; Bochdalek hernia) remains a potentially lethal anomaly due to pulmonary HTN, pulmonary hypoplasia, and associated cardiac dysfunction. In utero Dx allows for delivery at (ideally) or transport to a tertiary center with sophisticated ventilatory support techniques. Early NG tube placement is important to minimize distention of the intrathoracic viscera. Surgery transiently worsens pulmonary HTN and may cause "persistent fetal circulation," in which the fetal circulation reopens to shunt blood around the lungs, causing further hypoxemia, hypercarbia, and acidosis—all stimuli for further pulmonary HTN. Thus, in the sickest newborns, surgery is delayed until after cardiorespiratory stabilization, with the following supportive measures: low-pressure, high-frequency ventilation; passive hypercapnia; oscillating or jet ventilation; NO; and even ECMO, which is becoming less common with the success of the former methods. When ECMO (with anticoagulation) is used, diaphragm repair may be performed: **early during ECMO** (less swelling, more bleeding); **late during ECMO** (more swelling, ability to "come off" if bleeding); or **after ECMO** (less bleeding, less swelling, little recourse if surgery worsens ventilation). (For a description of ECMO, see p. 1558.) When the intestines are reduced from the chest, there is sometimes insufficient room in the abdomen, in which case, an abdominal silo is placed transiently.

Surgical approach: Left-side lesions (Fig. 12.5-6) are 7× more frequent than right; repair is traditionally performed through a subcostal incision, but increasingly a laparoscopic or thoracoscopic approach is being utilized. In children with significant hypercarbia and/or pulmonary hypertension, insufflation with carbon dioxide may not be tolerated, precluding this approach. However infants are surprisingly resilient to intrathoracic insufflation, and respiratory acidosis can be effectively managed with hyperventilation.

Small defects cause few ventilation problems and are closed primarily. Larger defects are associated with more challenging ventilation and require prosthetic mesh augmentation. Recurrent defects may be approached through the abdomen or chest and sometimes require transfer of muscle flaps (interior oblique). Unless ECMO is used, a chest tube is not always necessary. Prognosis is determined by severity of associated cardiac lesions or other associated anomalies. Another reliable predictor of severity (and mortality) is the presence of liver herniation.

Variant procedure: **In utero therapies** for CDH, including tracheal occlusion, have not been shown to improve survival. Although the defect commonly originates in the posterolateral diaphragm (Bochdalek), less common retrosternal defects (Morgagni) present later in life without the same degree of cardiorespiratory compromise.

Usual preop diagnosis: Diaphragmatic hernia; Bochdalek's hernia (posterolateral diaphragm)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine (lateral for thoracic approach)
Incision	Subcostal (posterolateral for thoracic approach)
Special instrumentation	Pre- and postductal arterial monitors
Unique considerations	Reactive pulmonary vasculature
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Assess for changes in ventilation (e.g., PIP, pre- and postductal ABG).
EBL	5–10 mL/kg

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Postop care	Paralysis maintained, high level of paralysis needed on ECMO; hyperventilation; fentanyl infusion @ 2–5 mcg/kg/min
Mortality	15–50% without ECMO 25–30% with ECMO 7% if liver below diaphragm 65% if liver above diaphragm
Morbidity	Pulmonary HTN Respiratory failure Sepsis Intestinal obstruction/dysfunction
Pain score	6–7 (7–8 for thoracic approach)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–wk or mo
Male:Female	1–2:1
Incidence	1 in 4000
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Malrotation (40–100%); congenital heart disease (23%- VSD, ASD, PDA, TOF); renal anomalies (rare); esophageal atresia (rare); CNS abnormalities (e.g., myelomeningocele, hydrocephalus) (rare)

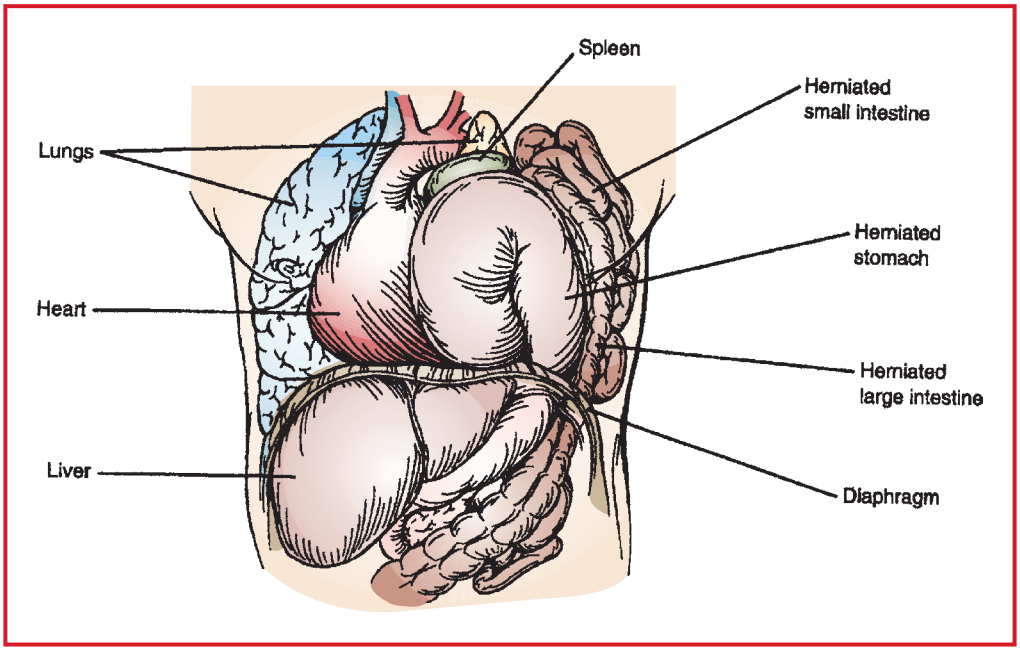


Figure 12.5-6. Left-sided congenital diaphragmatic hernia demonstrating translocation of the abdominal viscera into the left hemothorax and displacement of the mediastinum to the contralateral side. (Reproduced with permission from Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP: *Surgery of Infants and Children.* Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

These infants present with varying degrees of respiratory distress. Surgery is performed after the child has been stabilized medically. The majority are already mechanically ventilated, sedated, and paralyzed in the NICU prior to anesthesia consultation. Some infants may be on ECMO (see p. 1560). The anesthesiologist needs to be aware of the distinction between early and late diaphragmatic hernias. Late events (occurring near or even after delivery) are associated with mature, well-developed lungs and minimal problems with ventilation. These babies often can be extubated in the early postop period, facilitated by epidural analgesia. Frequently associated with other congenital abnormalities, including chromosomal abnormalities, CHD.

Respiratory	The lung on affected side is variably hypoplastic, and the lung on the contralateral side may be compressed and also may be hypoplastic. Pulmonary hypoplasia is most severe in patients with early herniation and may be minimal in cases of late (even postnatal) herniation. The prognosis is correlated with magnitude of pulmonary hypoplasia. Mediastinal shift may prevent normal development of the contralateral lung. Thickening arterial smooth muscle can increase PA pressures, lead to R → L shunting. Persistent pulmonary HTN and progressive hypoxemia may be present. Nitric oxide may be indicated to ↓ PVR **Tests:** CXR; ABG
Cardiovascular	Associated congenital heart defects common and should be addressed prior to repair. R → L shunting may occur at level of PDA or preductally (e.g., PFO). The degree of R → L shunting may be dramatically increased by pulmonary vasoconstriction (2° ↓ PO_2, ↑ PCO_2, ↑ pH, ↑ sympathetic tone) → severe systemic hypoxemia. ↓ CO 2° persistent pulmonary HTN and hypoxemia will lead to metabolic acidosis. **Tests:** CXR; ABG; ECHO
Neurological	Myelomeningocele and/or hydrocephalus may be present. Repeated bouts of hypoxemia predispose to intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH) in preterm infant. These areas of hemorrhage have loss of cerebral autoregulation, and BP increases are directly transmitted to the microvasculature, with ↑ risk of recurrent hemorrhage and edema. **Tests:** Head ultrasound
Hematologic	Hct should be maintained at 35%. HbF has ↑ affinity for O_2 and ↓ sensitivity to 2,3-DPG. This will aggravate cellular hypoxia. Confirm that vitamin K was administered at birth. **Tests:** CBC; T&C; PT; PTT
Metabolic	Dextrose supplementation needed due to negligible glycogen stores in neonate. In patients with CHF, diuretic administration leads to ↓ K^+. **Tests:** Electrolytes; glucose; BUN; Cr
Gastrointestinal	Constant NG/OG suction. Gastric distention will worsen ventilation.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	None

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, using a pediatric circle. Forced-air warmer. Warm room to 75–80°. Maintain body temperature as close to 37° as possible. Use pressure-limited ventilation (PIP < 30 cmH_2O). Continue NO if administered preop. Consider use of NICU ventilator, particularly if high RR (> 30/min) is required.

Induction	Transported from NICU to OR by anesthesia team. If infant is already intubated, confirm paralysis prior to transport to lessen the risk of patient movement and inadvertent extubation. Transport with full monitoring (ECG, pulse oximetry, arterial pressure tracing).

Induction (cont'd)	Have airway equipment available (Miller 1 laryngoscope blade, ET 3.0–3.5 with stylets, neonatal mask). Resuscitation drugs (e.g., epinephrine 1 and 10 mcg/mL) should be drawn up. Prior to any further anesthetic administration, reestablish all monitoring in OR. For non-intubated patients, rapid-sequence induction (p. B-5) is appropriate. Atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv) given prior to induction to counteract bradycardia. If necessary to mask ventilate, avoid high inflation pressures, as this may further dilate the stomach. Place an OG tube prior to induction. Avoid N_2O and maintain PIPs as low as possible. For patients with late herniations and healthy lungs, consider caudal epidural catheter advanced to thoracic space instead of iv opioids and early extubation (OR or NICU; see p. E-4). If surgery is performed on ECMO, give high-dose iv opioids (may be given in ECMO circuit) and muscle relaxant.	
Maintenance	Opiate-based anesthetic (fentanyl 10–25 mcg/kg iv total), if no epidural in place, with isoflurane supplementation. Ventilate with air/O_2 to maintain O_2 saturation 95–100%, as measured by preductal ABGs/pulse oximetry. Avoid hypoxia, acidosis, hypothermia, which will ↑ pulmonary vasoconstriction. Keep CO_2 slightly ↑ (permissive hypercapnia). Continue neuromuscular blockade with rocuronium, or vecuronium. May need to momentarily pause surgery to restore adequate oxygenation and ventilation.	
Emergence	Transport back to NICU with full monitoring, airway equipment, and drugs.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Blood loss minimal IV: 22–24 ga × 2 NS/LR @ 4 mL/kg/h maintenance	These infants are fluid-restricted in NICU. Continue dextrose-containing solution from NICU. If umbilical venous line not present, dopamine may be infused via peripheral iv with dextrose solution serving as the carrier fluid. In emergency, NS/LR, albumin 5%, PRBCs (Hct < 50%) may be given via umbilical artery line.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) Right-side precordial stethoscope Arterial line (umbilical or radial – 24 ga); if possible, right hand (preductal) ± Umbilical vein line Preductal and postductal pulse oximetry	Contralateral pneumothorax is detected using a right axillary precordial stethoscope. ABG, Hct, glucose q 30–60 min. Changes in pre- and postductal pulse oximetry provide early warning of R→L shunt/pulmonary HTN. (L hand postductal SaO_2 will drop with R→L shunt.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Pneumothorax Hypoventilation Hypothermia Metabolic acidosis R → L shunting CHF	With acute deterioration in O_2 sat, pneumothorax on unaffected side is likely. Do not attempt to expand lungs vigorously. Hypoplasia, not atelectasis, is the primary problem. Keep PIP <30 cmH_2O, if possible.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Same as Intraoperative Complications, above.	Severely affected neonates will usually have been stabilized on high-frequency jet ventilation or ECMO. The goal is to schedule semi-elective surgery when the neonate is medically stable. In case of acute deterioration in the OR, discuss with NICU criteria for initiation of HFJV or ECMO for infants whose oxygenation continues to worsen.

Complications (cont'd)		Postoperatively, these neonates go through a "honeymoon period" of up to 24 h, after which they may develop ↑ pulmonary HTN and deteriorate clinically.
Pain management	Fentanyl (0.5–2.0 mcg/kg/h iv), Hydromorphone (0.010 mg/kg) Epidural analgesia	Tachyphylaxis can develop in 24–48 h.
Tests	CXR ABG Hct Glucose Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. Arca MJ, Barnhart DC, Lelli JL Jr, et al: Early experience with minimally invasive repair of congenital diaphragmatic hernias: results and lessons learned. *J Pediatr Surg* 2003; 38(11):1563–8.
2. Becmeur F, Reinberg O, Dimitriu C, et al: Thoracoscopic repair of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in children. *Semin Pediatric Surgery* 2007; 16(4):238–44.
3. Bikhazi GB, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for neonates and premature infants. In: Motoyama EK, Davis PJ, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 6th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 2006, 545–50.
4. Ellinas H, Seefelder C: Congenital diaphragmatic hernia repair in neonates: is thoracoscopy feasible? *Pediatr Anesth* 2010; 20(10):967–9.
5. Gregory GA, ed: *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 4th edition. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2002, 434–40.
6. Hedrick HL: Management of prenatally diagnosed congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Semin Pediatric Surgery* 2013; 22(1): 37–43.
7. Holcomb GW III, Ostlie DJ, Miller KA: Laparoscopic patch repair of diaphragmatic hernias with surgisis. *J Pediatr Surg* 2005; 40(8):E1–5.
8. Liu LM, Pang LM: Neonatal surgical emergencies in anesthesiology. *Clin North Am* 2001; 19(2):268–72.
9. Nguyen TL, Le AD: Thoracoscopic repair for congenital diaphragmatic hernia: lessons from 45 cases. *J Pediatr Surg* 2006; 41(10):1713–5.
10. Stayer SA, Liu Y: Pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. *Best Pract Res Clin Anesthesiol* 2010; 24(3):375–86.
11. Yang EY, Allmendinger N, Johnson SM, et al: Neonatal thoracoscopic repair of congenital diaphragmatic hernia: selection criteria for successful outcome. *J Pediatr Surg* 2005; 40(9):1369–75.

PYLOROMYOTOMY FOR PYLORIC STENOSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pyloric stenosis due to idiopathic hypertrophy of the muscular layers of the antrum and pylorus occurs in infants from 1 to 3 months of age, causing projectile vomiting with subsequent dehydration and metabolic alkalosis. Surgical division of the hypertrophied fibers—**pyloromyotomy**—is the treatment of choice. Preop hydration and electrolyte replacement are becoming less frequently needed, as early Dx by ultrasound becomes more common. Aspiration (of food or barium contrast) is avoided by NG suction.

Surgical approach: The operation is performed through either a RUQ, periumbilical, or three laparoscopic incisions. The RUQ incision is now less utilized, whereas laparoscopic approach in experienced hands can be performed very quickly and effectively. With the open approach, the serosa and hypertrophic muscle of the pylorus are divided with a scalpel handle or Benson spreader. With the laparoscopic approach, a combination of sharp division of the muscular fibers followed by blunt retraction are used to perform the myotomy. The anesthesiologist is typically asked to instill 40–60 cc of saline or air by orogastric tube into the stomach so that leaks can be detected. Careful inspection for a mucosal tear will avoid a subsequent leak, the most common serious complication. Mucosal injury is treated by a simple repair or by closing the entire myotomy and creating a new one at an alternate site.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pyloric stenosis; gastroenteritis; GERD

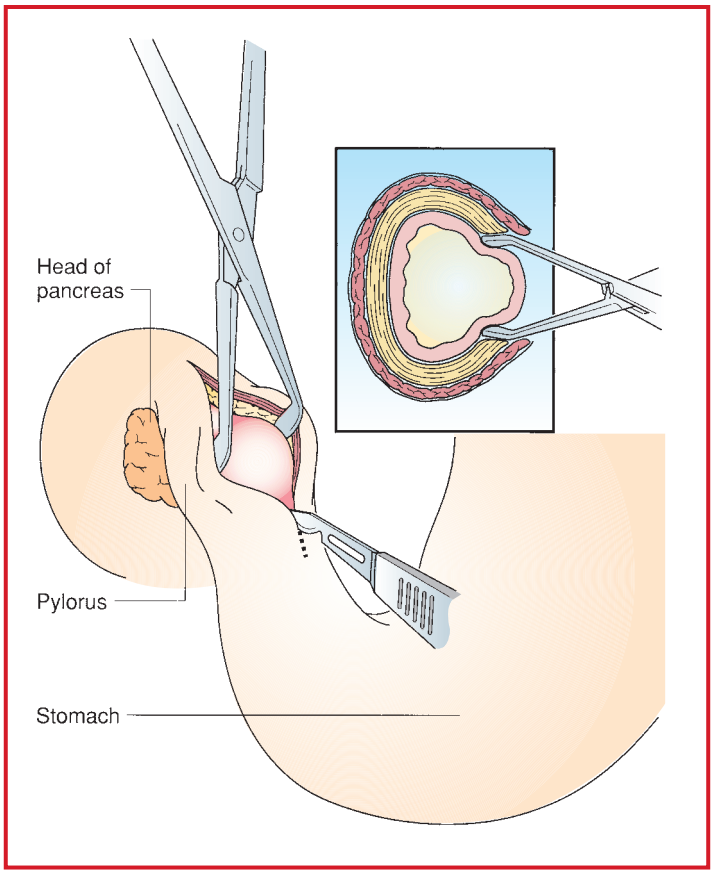


Figure 12.5-7. Ramstedt pyloromyotomy for infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. The cross-sectional view shows herniation of the submucosa into the myotomy site, indicative of an adequate myotomy. (Reproduced with permission from Sato TT, Oldham KT: Pediatric abdomen. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Transverse; RUQ; periumbilical, or three laparoscopic ports
Special instrumentation	Benson pyloric spreader; arthrotome (laparoscopy)
Intraop antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	0.5–1 h
EBL	< 5 mL/kg
Postop care	Cardiac/apnea monitoring
Mortality	0.3%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	Duodenal perforation Incomplete myotomy with recurrent vomiting Dehiscence Hernia
Pain score	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	1–12 wk
Male:Female	4:1
Incidence	3/1000 births
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Has occurred following repair of other congenital anomalies, such as esophageal atresia, omphalocele.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients with pyloric stenosis are usually term infants that present in the first month of life with dehydration 2° intractable vomiting. While in past these infants usually presented with moderate to severe dehydration, diagnosis by ultrasound has led to earlier intervention, thereby minimizing the degree of electrolyte imbalance. Correction of volume deficit and metabolic abnormalities is the first line of treatment. Surgery should proceed only after patients are medically stabilized, adequate urine output is ensured, and metabolic alkalosis is corrected. These procedures are usually done with laparoscopy.

Cardiovascular	Mild-to-moderate dehydration is common and deficit should be replaced with NS over ~12 h. **Tests:** Urinary Cl > 20 mEq/L or plasma Cl > 100 mEq/L, when fluid volume restored.
Metabolic	Protracted vomiting → dehydration with hypochloremic hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis. Up to 30% of infants may be hyperkalemic. ↓ K^+ should be treated once alkalemia is resolved and UO is confirmed. **Tests:** ABGs; electrolytes; Ca^{++}; glucose
Gastrointestinal	Full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5). Prior to induction, it is necessary to pass an OG tube several times to adequately decompress the stomach.
Laboratory	Hct; other tests as indicated from H&P.
Premedication	None

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, forced-air warmer. Warm OR to 75–80° F. Maintain body temperature close to 37°C.

Induction	An iv catheter should be in place prior to induction for preop fluid management. Decompress stomach with NG or OG tube. Atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv, 0.1 mg minimum) commonly given before stomach decompression. Preoxygenate 2–3 min. Rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure should be performed, using propofol (2–3 mg/kg) or

Induction (cont'd)	succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg iv) or rocuronium (1 mg/kg). Use awake laryngoscopy if difficulty with intubation is anticipated. Intubate trachea with a appropriately sized tube, usually 3.0-mm cuffed ETT, or 3.5-mm uncuffed ETT. Air leak should be between 20 and 30 cm H_2O pressure. If succinylcholine is used, further NMB with rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) or vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg) will be necessary. Laparoscopic technique and insufflation may displace diaphragm and carina cephalad, leading to right mainstem intubation. Confirm BS after insufflation.	
Maintenance	Volatile agent and air/O_2 or N_2O/O_2. Avoid opioids to lessen risk of postop apnea due to tendency to hypoventilate due to previous metabolic alkalosis. Maintain muscle relaxation. Surgeon should infiltrate wound site with bupivacaine 0.25% (with epinephrine 1:200,000)—not to exceed 2.5 mg/kg (1 mL/kg), for postop pain relief. Rectal acetaminophen 30 mg/kg can be administered.	
Emergence	Reverse NMB with appropriate agent (see p. D-3). Prior to extubation, suction stomach contents via NG/OG tube. Extubate when fully awake.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ (maintenance)	Minimal 3rd-space loss
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Aspiration	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Apnea Hypoglycemia (rare)	Pulse oximetry/apnea monitor × 24 h. Previous metabolic alkalosis decreases sensitivity to respiratory acidosis predisposing to hypoventilation and apnea. This may be exacerbated by administration of opioids. Differential diagnoses of apnea includes hypoglycemia and hypothermia. Rx for hypoglycemia: dextrose 0.5 g/kg iv
Pain management	Acetaminophen (10–15 mg/kg po, 20 mg/kg pr q 6 h prn) Avoid opioids	For child with severe dehydration and electrolyte abnormalities, ICU admission may be necessary.
Tests	None routinely indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracic, urologic, and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Pub, Philadelphia: 2011, 750–51.
2. Liu LM, Pang LM: Neonatal surgical emergencies in anesthesiology. *Clin North Am* 2001; 19(2):265–8.
3. Schwartz D, Connelly NR, Manikantan P, et al: Hyperkalemia and pyloric stenosis. *Anesth Analgesia* 2003; 97:355–7.
4. Sun LS, Saraiya NR, Houck PJ: Anesthesia for abdominal surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 732–33.
5. Vegunta RK, Woodland JH, Rawlings AL, et al: Practice makes perfect: progressive improvement of laparoscopic pyloromyotomy results, with experience. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2008; 18(1):152–6.

ABDOMINAL TUMOR: RESECTION OF NEUROBLASTOMA, WILMS' TUMOR, HEPATIC TUMORS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pediatric abdominal tumors occur most commonly in children 1–4 yr old, may be massive, and usually arise from the sympathetic chain (including adrenal gland), kidney, or liver. Neuroblastoma and Wilms' tumors are the most common; hepatic tumors (including hemangiomas) are less common but challenging. Because they originate in sympathetic tissue, many neuroblastomas produce catecholamines; however, these rarely have hemodynamic consequences.

Surgical approach: At first operation, a central line is placed and very large neuroblastomas and hepatoblastomas are biopsied; definitive resection usually follows chemo- and/or radiation therapy. Small neuroblastomas, small hepatoblastomas, and even large Wilms' tumors (without vascular extension or bilateral involvement) may be excised primarily. The principles of operation for these tumors are similar, beginning with a generous incision (transverse, midline, or thoracoabdominal), depending on tumor location and surgeon preference. The incision may be extended into the chest if control of the suprahepatic vena cava is necessary. Mobilization of the tumor from adjacent structures may precede vascular control when the latter is difficult to obtain early, as is often the case. Tumors encasing vessels may be divided to preserve end-organ blood supply. Neuroblastomas tend to invade local structures. Wilms' tumors and hepatoblastomas tend to push aside adjacent structures. Wilms' tumors are bilateral in 10–15% of cases and are prone to vascular extension into the renal vein, IVC, and (rarely) right atrium. Major hepatic resections are sometimes required for hemangiomas that cause CHF or thrombocytopenia (Kasabach-Merritt syndrome).

Laparoscopic assistance is limited generally to biopsy of these lesions for tissue diagnosis. Some hepatoblastomas may be amenable to laparoscopic liver resection. Small, localized neuroblastomas and posterior mediastinal neural crest lesions are quite amenable to laparoscopic or thoracoscopic resection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Neuroblastoma; Wilms' tumor; hepatoblastoma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Neuroblastoma	Wilms' Tumor	Hepatic Resections
Position	Supine, 15° lift	⇐	⇐
Incision	Transverse, possible thoracic extension (Fig. 12.5-8)	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	None	Bypass instruments	CUSA; laser; argon beam coagulator
Unique considerations	Rarely, hormonally active; may wrap blood vessels	Atrial tumor; ivC may be obstructed →↓ ↓ CO.	Possible CHF; Plt trapping
Antibiotics	Cefotaxime 25 mg/kg	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	3–6 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	None	⇐	Hypoglycemia
EBL	20–50 mL/kg	⇐	20–100 mL/kg
Postop care	PICU; epidural is ideal	± PICU	PICU
Mortality	< 5%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Intestinal obstruction: 10% Postop respiratory atelectasis	⇐ ⇐	– ⇐ Hypoglycemia: 10% Bile leak: 5–10%
Pain score	7–8	7–8	7–8

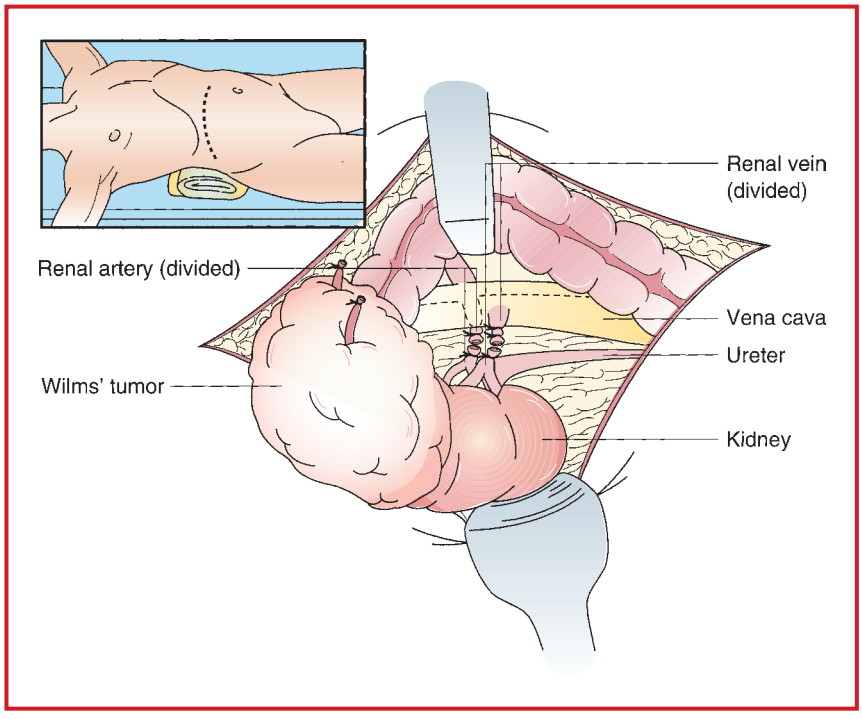


Figure 12.5-8. Operative approach to resection of a right renal Wilms' tumor. Insert shows transverse incision. (Reproduced with permission from Laquaglia MP: Childhood tumors. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Neuroblastoma	Wilms' Tumor	Hepatic Resections
Age range	Few months—school age	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	1:1	⇐	⇐
Incidence	1/10,000	< 1/10,000	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	⇐	⇐
Associated conditions		Beckwith-Wiedemann; Neurofibromatosis; aniridia 1%; hemihypertrophy 2%; GU abnormalities 5%	

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Neuroblastoma, Wilms' tumor (nephroblastoma), and hepatic tumors commonly present as abdominal masses in infants and children < 4 yr old. Symptoms and signs at presentation depend on size and location of the tumor and any metastases. Neuroblastomas are usually associated with increased circulating and urinary catecholamines (usually not clinically significant). Though hypertension is rare, tumor manipulation may result in sudden release of catecholamines. Elevated catecholamines may be suspected if following Sx exist: flushing, diaphoresis, palpitations, and hypertension.

The majority of patients with Wilm's tumor have HTN due to increased renin activity and may be on antihypertensive medications.

Respiratory	There may be respiratory compromise (as a result of a large abdominal mass pushing up on the diaphragm), which may worsen in the supine position. Wilms' tumor commonly metastasizes to the lungs. **Tests:** CXR, if indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	↑ BP is associated with Wilms' tumor and rarely with neuroblastoma, and volume status should be assessed carefully. Tumor bulk may impede venous return by occluding the IVC. Wilms' tumor may extend through the IVC into the right atrium. These patients may have received chemotherapy, for example adriamycin or doxorubicin, which is associated with cardiac toxicity (most commonly at doses > 200 mg/m^2). Cardiology consultation may be appropriate. **Tests:** Echocardiogram
Renal	Wilms' tumor may present with hematuria and other GU anomalies such as horseshoe kidney, duplication of urinary tract, aplastic or hypoplastic kidneys. Renal function is usually normal unless both kidneys are affected. **Tests:** BUN; Cr
Endocrine	Neuroblastomas are associated with ↑ catecholamine production. Preop adrenergic blockade (as would be required for a pheochromocytoma) is usually not necessary. **Tests:** Urine VMA and HVA
Gastrointestinal	Intestinal compression from tumor may ↑ risk of gastric aspiration. Persistent, watery diarrhea (→ hypovolemia, ↓ K^+) is associated with neuroblastoma 2° VIP secretion. **Tests:** Electrolytes
Hematologic	Severe anemia and thrombocytopenia may be present. Blood should be available because of possible massive intraop blood loss. **Tests:** CBC; T&C. ✓ availability of parental/directed donor blood, if requested. ✓ PT, PTT.
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients > 9 mo may benefit from midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po) 30 min before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Combined epidural/GETA, warm OR to 75°–80°F; warm all iv fluids.

Induction	IV catheter insertion before induction may be preferable. Access above the diaphragm, such as an upper extremity or EJ site is preferred (due to possible tumor invasion of IVC or need for IVC cross-clamping). A modified rapid-sequence induction is recommended in those patients with a large intraabdominal mass compressing the GI tract. Otherwise, standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1) is appropriate.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-2). Muscle relaxation is appropriate. HTN associated with tumor manipulation can be treated with SNP (0.5–2.0 mcg/kg/min) or esmolol (50–150 mcg/kg/min).	
Emergence	In most instances, patient can be extubated at the end of surgery. Suction NG tube and confirm air leak around ETT before extubation. If there is no air leak, consider laryngeal edema and need for continued intubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Potential for large blood loss/moderate 3rd-space loss IV: 18–20 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ maintenance 5% albumin may be useful to replace 3rd-space losses (8–10 mL/kg/h). Transfuse to maintain Hct > 23. If > 1 mo of age, dextrose-containing solutions are not required.	Tumor resection may be associated with massive blood loss, especially with IVC or renal vein involvement. Avoid placement of iv catheter in lower extremities.

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Arterial line: 22 ga ± CVP line: (subclavian or IJ) confirm position by CXR	ABG, Hct, blood glucose should be measured regularly. CVP measurement may be useful to evaluate fluid status. Monitor UO and keep at 1 mL/kg/h.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypotension HTN PE	↓ BP 2° blood loss or following tumor removal due to decreased catecholamines. ↑ BP 2° tumor or adrenal manipulation 2° tumor embolization usually from IVC →↓ BP.
	Hypothermia Hypoventilation	Abdominal retractors and packing will interfere with ventilation.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Atelectasis Hypoventilation	
Pain management	Epidural optimal Hydromorphone or morphine PCA (see p. E-5) Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg q 1–2) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg q 1–2°) Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv q 6° or 20 mg/kg PR q 6°)	See p. E-5 for dosing schedule.
Tests	Hct ABG CXR	

Suggested Readings

1. Hammer GH: Pediatric thoracic anesthesia. *Anesth Analgesia* 2001; 92:1449–964.
2. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthsia for general abdominal, thoracic, urologic, and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Mosby., Philadelphia: 2011, 751–5.
3. Kako H, Taghon T, Veneziano G, et al: Severe intraoperative hypertension after induction of anesthesia in a child with a neuroblastoma. *J Anesth* 2013; 27:464–67.
4. Lacreuse I, Valla JS, de Lagausie P, et al: Thoracoscopic resection of neurogenic tumors in children. *J Pediatr Surg* 2007; 42(10):1725–8.
5. Landsman IS, Ziegler LN, Deshpande JK: Anesthesia for pediatric urological procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 748–50.
6. Leclair MD, de Lagausie P, Becmeur F, et al: Laparoscopic resection of abdominal neuroblastoma. *Ann Surg Onco/* 2008; 15(1):117–24.
7. Mayhew JF: Intraoperative hyperthermia in a child with neuroblastoma. *Ped Anesthesia* 2006; 16:890–1.
8. Naaas MH, Cransberg K, van Grotel M, et al: Renin-induced hypertension in Wilm's patients. *Pediatric Blood Cancer* 2007; 48(5):500–3.
9. Whyte SD, Ansermino JM: Anesthesia considerations in the management of Wilm's tumor. *Pediatric Anesth* 2006; 16: 504–13.

LAPAROTOMY FOR INTESTINAL PERFORATION, NECROTIZING ENTEROCOLITIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC) is an ischemic/inflammatory condition of the entire GI tract, most commonly affecting the terminal ileum, occurring in stressed, premature infants, often after feeding with formula. It may resolve with conservative management (npo, antibiotics, NG suction) or progress to necrosis and perforation, treated by resection and stoma formation or drainage procedure, according to patient weight and surgeon preference. Isolated ileal perforation—occurring without precedent pneumatosis intestinalis—may be a different disease entity; it is sometimes treated by primary repair. Infants with NEC may be septic, thrombocytopenic, and coagulopathic, with organ dysfunction related to prematurity, and have marginal ventilation. Despite expeditious surgery, several blood volumes may be lost, and hypothermia may develop. Unstable infants may have surgery performed in the NICU.

Surgical approach: If not already present, central venous access is established at the time of surgery. A transverse laparotomy incision enables inspection of all intestines; dead bowel is resected, a proximal stoma is created in the healthy bowel, and a distal mucous fistula is created to protect potentially viable bowel. Less commonly, a **Hartmann's pouch** is created (distal intestine remains inside without stoma). When proximal bowel is of intermediate viability, a second-look operation is wise.

Variant procedures or approaches: Placement of peritoneal drain. The procedure involves placement of a RLQ Penrose drain into the abdominal cavity as a bedside procedure. It is quick, relatively easy, and attended by little bleeding or hypothermia. Between 60 and 80% of drained children subsequently will require laparotomy.

Usual preop diagnosis: Perforated NEC

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Resection	Drainage
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Transverse	RLQ
Special instrumentation	None	Penrose drains
Unique considerations	Temperature support	⇐
Antibiotics	Ampicillin 50 mg/kg + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg + clindamycin 10 mg/kg iv preop	⇐
Surgical time	1–2.5 h	0.5 h
EBL	10–100 mL/kg	1–2 mL/kg
Postop care	NICU	⇐
Mortality	20–25%	16–20%
Morbidity	Respiratory failure Sepsis Stricture Intracranial hemorrhage	⇐
Pain score	6–7	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Newborn–weeks
Male:Female	> 1:1
Incidence	5–8% NICU admissions
Etiology	Multifactorial, including intestinal ischemia; bacterial colonization; perinatal stress; immaturity; hypoxia; hyperosmolar feeding; splanchnic ischemia
Associated conditions	Prematurity (80–90%); respiratory distress; PDA

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Most (80–90%) of these patients are premature infants (< 36 wk gestational age) presenting with sepsis. Severity of symptoms, complications, and mortality are inversely related to gestational age. Respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) is often present 2° prematurity of the lungs, and pulmonary insufficiency is likely present. In addition to sepsis, significant 3rd-space losses contribute to hypovolemia and metabolic acidosis. If the patient is extremely unstable, consider peritoneal drainage or surgical intervention at the bedside in the NICU.

Respiratory	Premature infants are at risk for RDS. These infants are usually on mechanical ventilation with ↑ FiO_2 prior to surgery. They also are at ↑ risk for hypoventilation, hypercapnea, and hypoxemia. Enlarged abdomen may compromise respiratory function. ✓ ventilator settings and recent ABG in preparation for OR mechanical ventilation. Consider need for NICU ventilator in OR. **Tests:** CXR; ABG
Cardiovascular	Likely hemodynamic instability 2° to sepsis and/or underresuscitation. Inotropes. (e.g., dopamine 5–10 mcg/kg/min) may be required to maintain adequate CO. Associated cardiac anomalies (e.g., VSD, PDA) can lead to CHF, further complicating fluid management. Pulmonary overcirculation and intrinsic pulmonary disease contribute to pulmonary HTN. **Tests:** CXR; ABG; ECHO
Neurological	Intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH) may be 2° to prematurity or birth asphyxia. These hemorrhagic regions have impaired autoregulation, and wide variations in BP (20–30 mm Hg) can aggravate ischemia/hemorrhage. In addition, these patients may have a seizure disorder. **Tests:** Head ultrasound, if indicated from H&P
Renal	Presence of PDA and previous Rx with NSAID can lead to impaired renal perfusion and clearance. Aggravating factors are aminoglycoside antibiotics, sepsis, and CHF. **Tests:** BUN; Cr
Metabolic	Metabolic acidosis 2° to sepsis and/or CHF will further worsen myocardial function. Neonate has minimal glycogen stores and are more prone to hypoglycemia. **Tests:** ABG; Ca^{++}; glucose; electrolytes
Hematologic	DIC, and associated thrombocytopenia, anemia may be present. **Tests:** CBC, PT, PTT, fibrinogen, availability of irradiated, washed RBCs or freshest pRBC.
Laboratory	Others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	None

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, using a pediatric circle. Warm OR to 75°–80°F. Forced-air warmer and warming pad on OR table. Use air/O_2 mixture for ventilation and maintain SpO_2 between 92–94% (PaO_2 < 70 mm Hg) to minimize

risk of retinopathy. Avoid high concentrations of O_2 if possible. Consider use of NICU ventilator if patient requires ↑ RR or ↑ PIPs. Epidural catheter insertion is not recommended in the presence of sepsis.

Induction	These patients usually are intubated. If not, intubate with full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5). Suction stomach. Give atropine 0.02 mg/kg iv (0.1 mg minimum dose) before laryngoscopy. Preoxygenate for 3 min Miller 0/1 blade. Apply cricoid pressure until airway secured. ETT should have leak at 18–35 cmH_2O pressure.	
Maintenance	Low-dose volatile agent supplemented with fentanyl, titrated for hemodynamic stability (10–30 mcg/kg). Avoid N_2O. Muscle relaxation required. Inotropes (dopamine 3–5 mcg/kg/min and epi 0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) may be needed to maintain hemodynamic stability and perfusion. Neonates may be under-resuscitated upon arrival from NICU. 3rd-space losses are usually significant. Treat hypotension with volume before increasing pressor support. Maintain Hct >35%. Albumin 5% (10 mL/kg iv). PRBC 10 mL/kg, FFP Plt 10 mL/kg.	
Emergence	Postop ventilation generally required. Transport to NICU with full monitoring (pulse oximetry, ECG, arterial line). Have laryngoscope and appropriately sized mask and ETT available. Extra volume (albumin 5% in 20 mL syringes) may be needed during transport.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate moderate-to-large blood and fluid losses. IV: 22–24 ga × 2 (or 1 + CVP)	Neonates may be under-resuscitated upon arrival from NICU. 3rd-space losses are usually significant. Rx: ↑ BP with volume before increasing dopamine. Maintain Hct > 35%. Albumin 5% (10 mL/kg iv) boluses as needed. Crystalloid/colloid > 100 mL/kg total not uncommon. Hct, glucose, Ca^{++}, ABG, Plt count, PT/PTT, electrolytes q 30–60 min. I-stat if available. Check ionized serum Ca^{++} frequently (q30 while transfusing). Citrate is present in blood and blood products, especially FFP, and binds serum Ca^{++}. Neonatal liver has limited ability to clear citrate, and neonatal heart is especially dependent on ionized Ca^{++}.
	Continue dextrose-containing solution from NICU to avoid hypoglycemia. Warm fluids.	Because of the potentially large blood loss/kg, ensure that blood replacement is available in the room and that additional factor replacement is available on call.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) A-line pref. preductal (RUE) ± CVP line	CVP line is not as important as arterial line for intraop care, but may be useful for administering inotropic drugs.
Positioning	✓ eyes ✓ pad pressure points	
Complications	Hypothermia Metabolic acidosis Hypovolemia	Aggressive volume replacement and maintaining normothermia will prevent or ameliorate metabolic acidosis. Bicarbonate replacement = base deficit × wt (kg) × 0.3.
	Hyperkalemia 2° blood products	Minimized by requesting that newest blood available be sent up. If irradiated, it may need to be washed. (check w/ blood bank for policy).
	Pneumothorax	↓ O_2 sats, ↑ PIPs. ✓ for mucus plugging or mainstem intubation.
	Hypocalcemia	Frequent blood sampling is necessary. Rx: $CaCl_2$ (10 mg/kg iv) in dilute solution via CVP line or Ca gluconate (30 mg/kg iv) via peripheral line.
	Hypoglycemia	Continue 10% dextrose infusion from NICU.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypovolemia due to blood loss, and 3rd-spacing Metabolic acidosis Sepsis Pulmonary edema Retinopathy of prematurity (ROP)
Pain management	Morphine (0.05–0.10 mg/kg iv) q 1–2 h prn or via continuous infusion for initial 24–48 h
Tests	CBC Electrolytes, Ca^{++}, Glucose ABG CXR, if central line placed.

Suggested Readings

1. Brett C, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general surgery in the neonate. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthsia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Pub, Philadelphia: 2011, 579–84.
2. Gregory GA: Anesthesia for premature infants. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 480–96.
3. Liu LM, Pang LM: Neonatal surgical emergencies in anesthesiology. *Clin North Am* 2001; 19(2):277–9.

REPAIR OF BILIARY ATRESIA AND CHOLEDOCHAL CYSTS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: "Biliary atresia" is a misnomer because the pathology seems to be an ascending progressive fibrosis of the biliary tree ultimately manifested by intrahepatic bridging fibrosis and cirrhosis. The obstruction develops postnatally, typically in an otherwise healthy 4- to 6-wk-old girl, though it may be confused with neonatal hepatitis or with the cholestasis seen in sick neonates fed intravenously. Preop studies often are not diagnostic. There is some time pressure for diagnosis and surgery because several studies have shown worse outcomes if the procedure is delayed beyond 8–10 wk of age. Even if the Kasai is not successful long term, it can be an important bridge that allows infants to grow, making subsequent liver transplantation outcomes more successful. **Todani** classified choledochal cysts into five types. The first type is the most common: a fusiform ballooning of the extrahepatic bile ducts often involving the gallbladder. Cysts are prone to bile stasis, obstruction, and malignant conversion in adulthood. Some are detected when they become symptomatic, whereas others are detected on antenatal ultrasound.

Surgical approach: Following preop administration of vitamin K, operation for biliary atresia begins through a transverse RUQ incision (or laparoscopically) for liver biopsy and operative cholangiography. Ascent of contrast into the liver and descent into the duodenum occurs in up to 20% of cases, which excludes biliary atresia and will terminate the operation. Failure to establish patency of the biliary tree is indication to extend the incision to excise the gallbladder and extrahepatic biliary tree. In doing so, the portal vein and hepatic artery are skeletonized up to the base of the liver (called the portal or hepatic "plate"; Fig. 12.5-9). This region is excised (attended by some bleeding) in the hope that bile will drain from the liver above into a Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum, which is sewn to the undersurface of the liver (**portoenterostomy** or **Kasai procedure**). There is currently little support for early liver transplantation. **Choledochal cyst resection** involves a smaller incision, possible cholangiogram, and dissection similar to the Kasai procedure, but only to a level above the cyst (frequently, the bifurcation of the hepatic ducts). Liver biopsy is not always required, and cirrhosis is uncommon. Bleeding may result when an inflamed cyst is adherent to the portal vein or hepatic artery. The distal end of the cyst is ligated, the body of it excised, and the proximal bile duct (usually

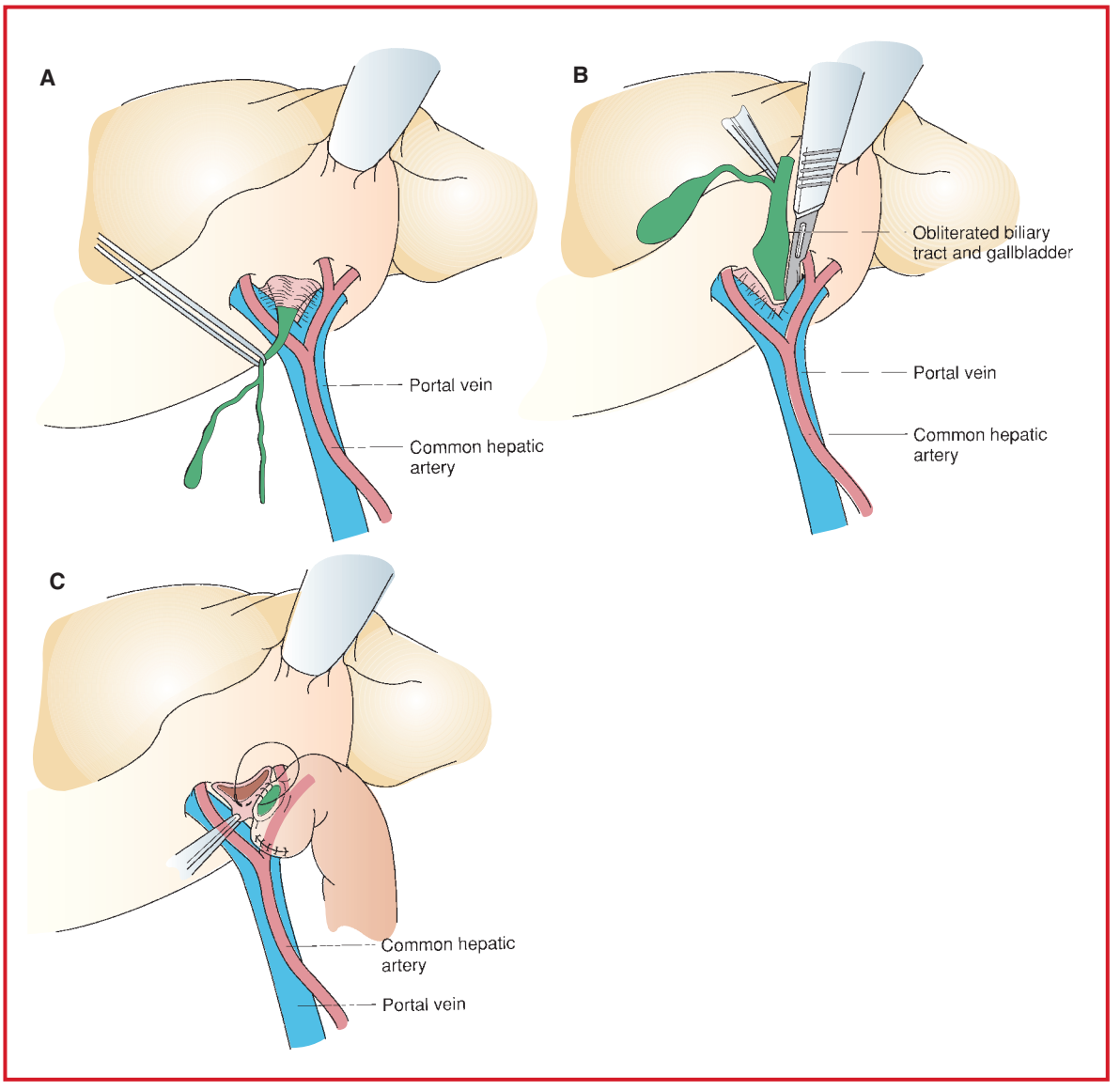


Figure 12.5-9. The essential features of the portoenterostomy for biliary atresia include appropriate mobilization **(A)** and transection **(B)** of the fibrous biliary tract remnant. **C:** Creation of a Roux-en-Y jejunal conduit with biliary enteric anastomosis completes the procedure. (Reproduced with permission from Sato TT, Oldham KT: Pediatric abdomen. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

the common hepatic duct) sewn to a Roux-en-Y limb of jejunum. Kasai can be performed laparoscopically with or without robotic assistance. However, concerns have been raised about the effectiveness of biliary drainage when performed laparoscopically.

Variant procedures: Infant ERCP has recently been reported as an alternative to intraop cholangiogram for the definitive diagnosis of biliary atresia.

Usual preop diagnosis: Biliary atresia; choledochal cyst; obstructive jaundice

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Upper transverse-chevron; right transverse for cholangiogram
Special instrumentation	Cholangiography equipment
Unique considerations	Cholangiogram, if gallbladder patent
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv Intraop: cephalosporin irrigation (1 g/500 mL NS)
Surgical time	4–6 h (1–2 h if cholangiography/biopsy only)
EBL	5–10 mL/kg
Postop care	PICU
Mortality	< 5%
Morbidity	Bile leak: 10–15% Obstruction: 10% Sepsis: 5–10% Respiratory failure: 5%
Pain score	7–8 (4–5 for cholangiogram)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6–12 wk
Male:Female	> 1:1
Incidence	1/15,000 births
Etiology	Viral; autoimmune
Associated conditions	NB: Asplenia syndrome (5–10%); polysplenia (5–10%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Biliary atresia is a postnatal inflammatory disorder of the hepatobiliary tree resulting in fibrosis, cirrhosis, and obstructive jaundice. The Kasai procedure is indicated if the diagnosis of biliary atresia is made in the first 2–3 mo of life. If the Kasai procedure is unsuccessful, the patient may require a liver transplant.

Gastrointestinal	Hepatic function preserved initially (i.e., normal albumin synthesis). Cholestatic jaundice usually present. There may be impaired elimination of drugs, particularly NMBs. Glucose homeostasis is usually normal.
Hematologic	Anemia 2° chronic disease. Impaired vitamin K absorption 2° lack of bile salts. Elevated PT will variably correct with vitamin K administration (phytonadione 1 mg im/iv given during the week before surgery). Have FFP available if PT not corrected after vitamin K. **Tests:** PT; PTT; CBC; T&C
Laboratory	Electrolytes: BUN, Cr, LFTs, albumin, bilirubin, direct and indirect, glucose, others as indicated from H&P. Confirm availability of blood products (PRBCs, FFP).
Premedication	None

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA/caudal. Warm OR to 75°–80°F; use forced-air warmer, warming pad on OR table. (Remember, majority of heat loss is radiant.)

Induction	Mask induction is appropriate if no iv in place. NMB (e.g., rocuronium 0.6–1 mg/kg or cisatracurium 0.1–0.2 mg/kg) to facilitate tracheal intubation, using appropriately sized ETT (usually 3.0–3.5 cuffed ETT; with leak at 18–35 cmH_2O). If coagulation factors are normal, consider caudal catheter, and advance to thoracic position. Preservative free NS may be used to dilate the epidural space. Position may be confirmed with ultrasound.	
Maintenance	Sevoflurane or isoflurane/air/O_2; no N_2O, to avoid bowel distention. Continue muscle relaxant to facilitate abdominal closure.	
Emergence	Patient usually extubated in OR and transported to PACU or, in the case of prolonged surgery and/or significant blood loss, to PICU.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 22 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @ 10 mL/kg/h Albumin 5%	Potential for large 3rd-space losses. Plan 10 mL/kg/h of NS/LR for replacement, and be prepared for sudden blood loss. Use albumin 5%, or NS/LR to replace blood loss.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) Urinary catheter NG tube ± Arterial line (22–24 ga)	Hct, blood glucose, ±ABG pm. Maintain UO @ 1 mL/kg/h. The presence of ↑ ↑ BP variations with respiration is a useful indicator of hypovolemia.
Positioning	✓ padding – heels, elbows, occiput ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypothermia Hypovolemia Hypoventilation Metabolic acidosis	In upper abdominal surgery, the retractors and abdominal packing may limit diaphragmatic excursion, thus requiring higher PIP to adequately ventilate the patient. Need ETT leak (PIP) > 20 cmH_2O to ensure ability to adequately ventilate. ETT position may also change with packing, resulting in R mainstem intubation, requiring repositioning.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypovolemia Atelectasis Cholangitis	3rd-space losses continue in the immediate postop period.
Pain management	Fentanyl 1–2 mcg/kg iv q 1 h prn MSO(subset 4) (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv q 2–4 h prn) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg q 1 iv)	Caudal analgesia if catheter in place (see p. E-5). Bupivacaine dose should be limited to 0.25 mg/kg 2° decreased hepatic clearance and serum protein-binding capacity.
Tests	Hct ABG	

Suggested Readings

1. Dutta S, Woo RK, Albanese CT: Minimal access portoenterostomy: advantages and disadvantages of standard laparoscopic and robotic techniques. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2007; 17(2):258–64.
2. Green DW, Howard ER, Davenport M: Anesthesia, perioperative management and outcome of correction of extrahepatic biliary atresia in the infant: a review of 50 cases in the King's College Hospital Series. *Pediatr Anesth* 2000; 10(6):581–9.

3. Le D, Woo RK, Sylvester KG, et al: Laparoscopic resection of type 1 choledochal cysts in pediatric patients. *Surg Endosc* 2006; 20(2):249–51.
4. Meunier JF, Goujard E, Dubousset AM, et al: Pharmakokinetics of bupivacaine after continuous epidural infusion in infants with and without biliary atresia. *Anesthesiology* 2001; 95(1):87–95.
5. Shteyer E, Wengrower D, Benuri-Silbiger I, et al: Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in neonatal choleotasis. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; 55(2):142–45.
6. Woo RK, Le D, Albanese CT, et al: Robot-assisted laparoscopic resection of a type I choledochal cyst in a child. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2006; 16(2):179–83.

REPAIR OF ABDOMINAL WALL DEFECTS: OMPHALOCELE/GASTROSCHISIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Omphalocele** is a herniation of bowel and sometimes viscera into an enlarged umbilical cord that may be categorized as small (< 2 cm, sometimes called a "hernia of the cord"); medium (2–5 cm defect); or giant (≥ 6 cm and containing liver). The larger the defect, the more difficult the repair for lack of skin and muscle; primary repair is virtually never possible for giant defects. Omphaloceles are associated with genetic defects (trisomy 21) and may be part of other syndromes (e.g., OEIS, pentalogy of Cantrell, which includes cardiac defects). The surprisingly tough membrane of the umbilical cord protects the intestines from exposure to amniotic fluid. **Gastroschisis** is not associated with chromosomal anomalies or syndromes. It involves a 1–2 cm defect to the right of the umbilicus, through which bowel, and sometimes stomach or gonads, extrude and are exposed to the sclerosing effects of amniotic fluid, causing variable degrees of "peel" (bowel-wall thickening).

Surgical approach: Central venous catheter placement precedes or accompanies the initial operation for gastroschisis as postoperative parenteral nutrition is required in almost all cases. Enlargement of the defect is sometimes necessary to permit visceral reduction, provided there is sufficient space in the abdominal cavity. If not, reduction will cause bowel ischemia and respiratory compromise. Some surgeons will use a maximal transduced bladder or stomach pressure (20 mm Hg) or maximal PIP (35 mm Hg) as an indicator that primary repair may potentially lead to abdominal compartment syndrome. In this case, a prosthetic abdominal wall of Silastic is created or a preformed device is placed, creating a "silo." In the NICU the silo is gradually reduced in size over 3–10 d, whereupon the abdomen is closed primarily (Fig. 12.5-10). Small and medium-size omphaloceles are treated similarly. Return of intestinal function will typically take 3–7 d for omphaloceles and 1–4 wk for gastroschisis.

Variant procedures or approaches: Sutureless approaches to both gastroschisis and omphalocele are emerging and can be effective means of closing these defects with outstanding cosmetic results. For giant omphalocele, sclerosing solutions (silver sulfasalazine, tincture of mercurochrome) are applied to cause epithelialization. The omphalocele is thus effectively converted into a ventral hernia. Months to years later the ventral hernia can be closed without undue respiratory or bowel compromise. Alternatively compression wraps applied around the abdomen work to reduce bowel content over a period of months. The remaining fascial defect decreases in size until it resembles an umbilical hernia, which may close spontaneously or require later minor surgical closure. With gastroschisis, sutured closure of the fascial defect is unnecessary. In cases where the bowel can be primarily reduced, the remnant umbilical cord is used as a biological dressing over the defect, and a large plastic dressing is applied (e.g., Tegaderm). The defect closes spontaneously over the ensuing weeks, and reepithelialization occurs, as bowel function returns. For irreducible bowel, a silo is applied and sequential reduction is performed. After the bowel is reduced completely, a plastic dressing with absorbant nonstick gauze is applied, and spontaneous closure ensues. Cosmetic results are typically superior to suture closure, and there is never a concern for high ventilatory pressures.

Usual preop diagnosis: Omphalocele; gastroschisis; pentalogy of Cantrell

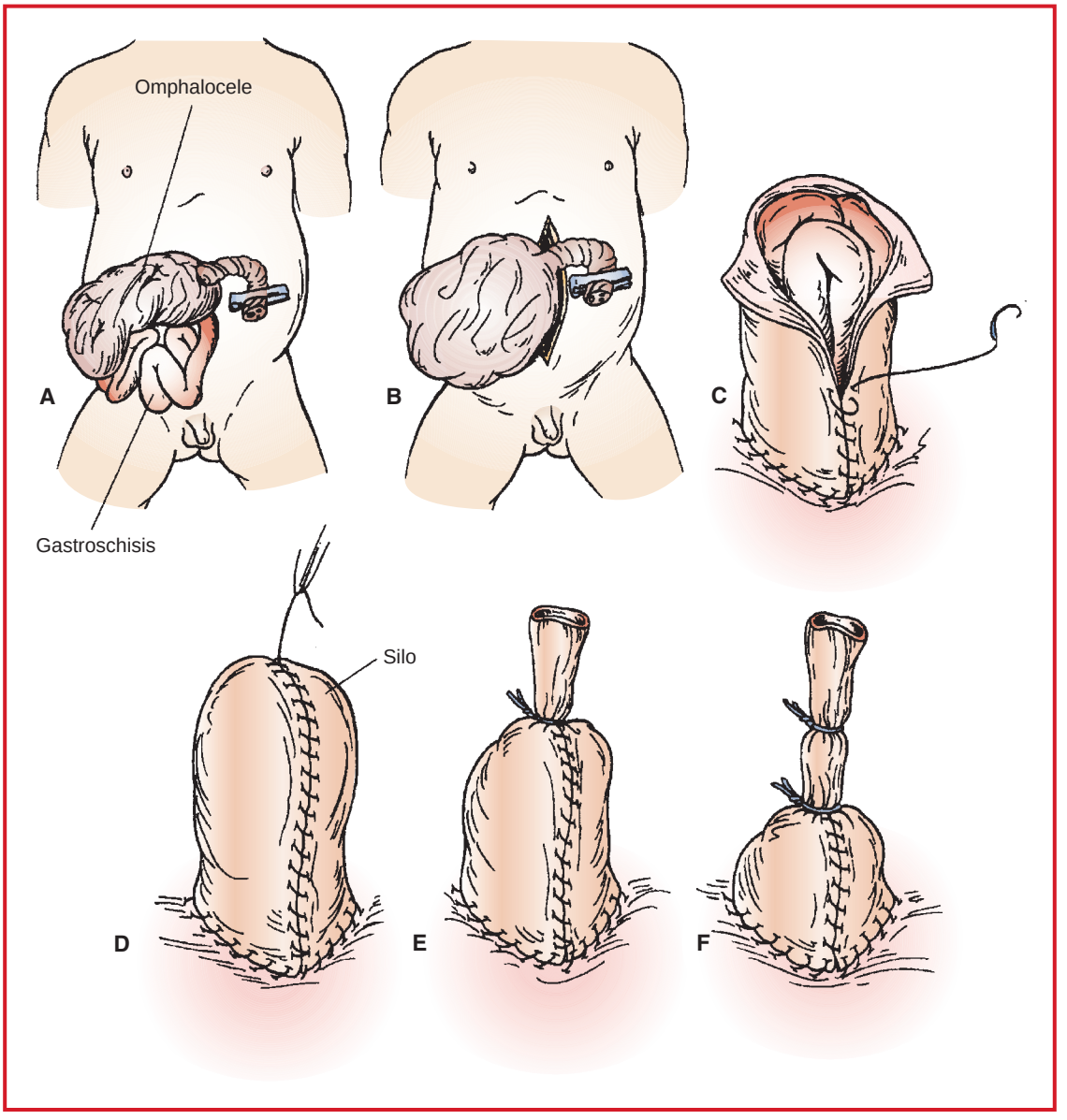


Figure 12.5-10. Management of gastroschisis and omphalocele (both shown together): **A:** Gastroschisis defect. **B:** Extension of opening with midline incision (optional). **C:** Use of silo if primary closure is not possible. **D:** Finished silo. **E, F:** Staged ligation of silo with reduction of silo contents into abdominal cavity proper. (Reproduced with permission from Oldham KT, Colombani PM, Foglia RP: *Surgery of Infants and Children.* Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Midline
Special instrumentation	None; for staged repair, reinforced Silastic sheeting or premade (Bentec) silo

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	2 h
Closing considerations	Assess respiratory and cardiovascular function after muscle closure by PIP, ABG, MAP. Impaired ventilation and venous return will result from overaggressive attempts at closure.
EBL	5–10 mL/kg
Postop care	Assisted ventilation; volume resuscitation as needed (gastroschisis)
Mortality	Omphalocele: 28% Gastroschisis: 15–23%
Morbidity	Respiratory failure Intestinal ischemia/obstruction Infection
Pain score	5–6 (primary); 4–5 (staged repair)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/3000–1/10,000 live births
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Gastroschisis: malrotation, intestinal atresia—usually not associated with chromosomal abnormalities or syndromes. Omphalocele: cardiac, renal anomalies Trisomy 13, 18, 21 Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome (hypoglycemia, macroglossia) Pentalogy of Cantrell: omphalocele, sternal, diaphragmatic, pericardial, cardiac anomalies Exstrophy cloaca: omphalocele, exstrophy bladder, imperforate anus

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Newborns with omphalocele/gastroschisis may present for urgent surgery. The large exposed surface area of abdominal contents allows substantial evaporative heat and fluid losses. Omphalocele is associated with other congenital anomalies (e.g., VSD, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome [infantile gigantism, macroglossia, hypoglycemia]; see above list). The majority of these patients should be medically stabilized in the nursery before coming to the OR.

Respiratory	If premature (< 36-wk gestational age), infant is at ↑ risk for RDS and respiratory insufficiency. **Tests:** CXR; ABG
Cardiovascular	With omphalocele, there is a 20% incidence of cardiac anomalies (VSD, PDA). **Tests:** ECHO for omphalocele, or if murmur is found.
Gastrointestinal	Intestinal atresia may be present. Hypovolemia from evaporative loss and underresuscitation likely; check for evidence of dehydration, urine output, ABG. Full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5).

Endocrine	Beckwith-Wiedemann associated with hypoglycemia (term infant glucose should be > 36 mg/dL). **Tests:** Glucose; electrolytes
Laboratory	CBC; T&C; PT; PTT; UA; ABG

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, warm OR to 75°–80°F; forced-air warmer, warming pad on OR table. (Remember, majority of heat loss is radiant.)

Induction	Atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv, minimum dose, 0.1 mg) is given before induction to ablate vagal response to laryngoscopy. Pass an OG tube to decompress stomach. Ensure adequate intravascular volume status (capillary refill < 2 sec; warm, pink extremities). Preoxygenate with 100% O_2 for 2–3 min. prior to rapid-sequence intubation. Propofol (2–3 mg/kg) and rocuronium (1 mg/kg) or succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg) iv administered to facilitate tracheal intubation. Use appropriately sized ETT to keep air leak at 18–35 cmH_2O. Lower pressure air leak may make ventilation difficult if primary closure of abdomen is accompanied by significant rise in intraabdominal pressure. For small defects, place an epidural catheter inserted via the caudal after intubation. If positioning for the epidural catheter insertion is difficult, do not proceed; use iv fentanyl, morphine, or hydromorphone for pain management.	
Maintenance	Avoid high FiO_2. Use air/O_2 mixture for ventilation to maintain O_2 sat 95–100% and PaO_2 < 100. If no epidural is placed, then use a primarily narcotic-based technique with fentanyl (10–25 mcg/kg iv total), low-dose sevoflurane as needed. Note initial PIP prior to abdominal closure. Maintain neuromuscular blockade to facilitate abdominal closure. If an epidural catheter is available, dose with local anesthetic and opiate (see p. D-5) to supplement inhalation/iv agent.	
Emergence	Remain intubated postop unless defect is very small. An epidural catheter may also be placed at the end of procedure if defect is small and early extubation is planned. Transport to NICU on 100% O_2.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Marked 3rd-space fluid loss Minimal–moderate blood loss IV: 22–24 ga × 1–2, upper extremities NS/LR @ 4 mL/kg/h	Continue dextrose-containing solution from NICU. Replace 3rd-space losses (10– 15+ mL/kg/h). Replace blood loss with albumin 5% and/or blood mL for mL. Maintain Hct > 30%. Lower extremities usually edematous due to abdominal venous and lymphatic compression.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) Arterial line (24-ga radial) ± CVP/Broviac planned Urinary catheter	ABG pre- and postabdominal closure. Hct, glucose, electrolytes q 60 min. CVP; reserve 1 lumen for postop TPN. Respiratory variation on arterial waveform is sensitive indicator of hypovolemia.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypothermia Hypovolemia Respiratory insufficiency/hypoventilation Atelectasis Volume overload/pulmonary edema Abdominal compartment syndrome	If intragastric pressure is > 20 mm Hg and CVP increases by 4 mm Hg with initial primary closure, it should be converted to a staged repair. Raised abdominal pressure will cause an acute restrictive ventilatory defect and promote abdominal visceral ischemia.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bowel ischemia/necrosis Peritonitis Sepsis/metabolic acidosis Pneumothorax	Respiratory insufficiency due to raised abdominal pressure; may require release of repair and converting to a staged repair.
Pain management	Continuous epidural or iv opioid infusion per NICU (see p. E-5)	
Tests	ABG Hct Glucose Electrolytes, Ca^{++}	UO maintained at > 0.5 mL/kg/h

Suggested Readings

1. Brett C, Davis PJ: Anesthsia for general surgery in the neonate. In: Davis PT, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier Pub, Philadelphia: 2011, 564–7.
2. Lee SL, Beyer TD, Kim SS, et al: Initial nonoperative management and delayed closure for treatment of giant omphaloceles. *J Pediatr Surg* 2006; 41(11):1846–9.
3. Liu LM, Pang LM: Neonatal surgical emergencies in anesthesiology. *Clin North Am* 2001; 19(2):276–7.
4. Mhamane R, Dave N, Garasia M: Delayed primary repair of giant pmphalocele: anesthesia challenges. *Pediatr Anesth* 2012; 22(9):935–6.
5. Morton NS, Fairgrieve R, Moores A, et al: Anesthsia for the full-term and ex-premature infants. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthsia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 503–6.
6. Motoyama EK, Davis PJ, eds: *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children,* 7th edition. Mosby-Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2006, 542–5.
7. Sandler A, Lawrence J, Meehan J, et al: A "plastic" sutureless abdominal wall closure in gastroschisis. *J Pediatr Surg* 2004; 39(5):738–41.

PULL-THROUGH FOR HIRSCHSPRUNG'S DISEASE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Congenital aganglionosis, called **Hirschsprung's disease** (HD), begins at the dentate line of the anus and extends proximally for a variable distance. It produces functional obstruction because the involved bowel is tonically contracted. The "transition zone" to ganglionic bowel occurs in the distal colon in 80% of cases; in 10%, it occurs in the small bowel. Sx range from mild-to-severe constipation, sometimes complicated by toxic enterocolitis. When severe, it may be life-threatening and mandates a rapid **loop colostomy**. Three classical operations (**Swenson, Soave, Duhamel**) and a newer perineal one-stage pull-through (**POOP**) were developed to remove or bypass the affected bowel (Fig. 12.5-11). Today, classic three-stage operations are being reduced to one or two stages, often assisted by laparoscopy.

Surgical approach: Initial diagnosis is with contrast enema, followed by a transanal rectal biopsy to demonstrate absence of ganglion cells. Standard surgical approach in a neonatally diagnosed Hirschsprung's disease is now a **one-stage neonatal repair,** using a Soave or Swenson procedure, which avoids a colostomy and may be performed via a circumanal incision. Laparoscopy or umbilical incision is used to biopsy the colon to determine the transition zone. Once ganglionated bowel is identified on frozen section, it is pulled down to the anus by the transanal approach.

A more traditional approach is to biopsy through a LLQ incision initially, bringing out a loop ("leveling") colostomy above the transition zone, identified using frozen sections. Subsequent definitive repair is performed when the child is larger in one stage (or two if a protective proximal stoma needs subsequent closure). Positioning depends on the approach chosen; some surgeons prefer a lower body antibacterial preparation, others position the child in lithotomy position and prepare the abdomen and perineum. Positioning neonates transversely across an operating table rotated 90° affords good surgical access to the perineum and anesthesia access to the head. Significant bleeding is infrequent; operative time often is determined by the delay for frozen sections, which are challenging for most pediatric pathologists. Where skilled pediatric pathologists are unavailable, some surgeons will perform a RUQ transverse colostomy

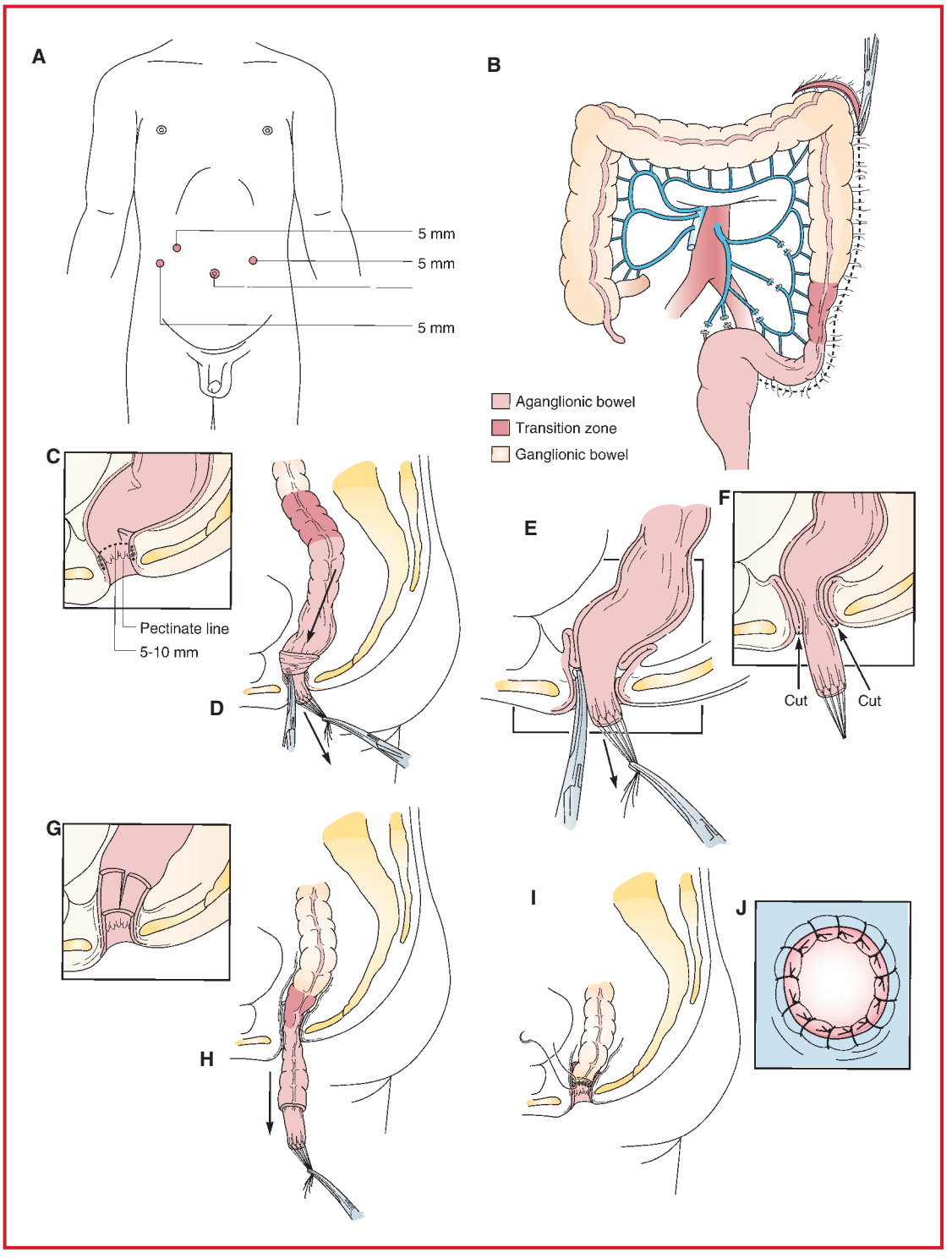


Figure 12.5-11. Laparoscopically assisted pull-through for Hirschsprung's disease. **A:** Sites for operative trocar placement. **B:** Division of colon and rectal mesentery with mobilization of proximal colon. **C:** Circumferential incision in rectal mucosa 5–10 mm cephalad to the pectinate line. **D:** Mucosal traction sutures to facilitate further dissection from rectal muscular cuff. **E:** Transanal submucosal dissection is continued cephalad to meet the caudal extent of the transperitoneal rectal dissection. **F:** Circumferential incisions of rectal muscular cuff. **G:** Rectal muscular cuff is split posteriorly to accommodate the pull-through segment (segment is not shown here). **H:** Rectum and sigmoid colon are pulled through the rectal muscular cuff to the anastomotic sites. **I:** Colon is transected at appropriate site with confirmation of ganglion cells by frozen section. **J:** Transanal, end-to-end single-layer colorectal anastomosis. (Reproduced with permission from Sato TT, Oldham KT: Pediatric abdomen. In: Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al, eds. *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

in the hope that the transition zone is distal to it. This is a significantly faster procedure, followed by permanent sections on which ganglia are more easily identified; it is inadequate in 10–20% of "long-segment" patients.

Usual preop diagnosis: Hirschsprung's disease; congenital aganglionosis; congenital megacolon

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Preliminary Colostomy	Pull-through
Position	Supine	Supine → lithotomy
Incision	LLQ transverse	Low transverse
Special instrumentation	None	Staplers
Unique considerations	Frozen section to confirm ganglion cells	No monitors or iv lower extremity; frozen sections
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–1.5 h	1–2 h (POOP) 3–4 h (Duhamel, Swenson, Soave)
Closing considerations	None	Reprep/drape
EBL	< 5 mL/kg	5–10 mL/kg
Postop care	Cardiac/apnea monitor	PICU
Mortality	With enterocolitis: 10% Without enterocolitis: 0–2%	< 5%
Morbidity	Prolapse Stricture Hernia	Anastomotic leak: 5% Wound infection: 4% Pelvic abscess: 3%
Pain score	4	6–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–18 mo (normally)	1 yr
Male:Female	4:1	⇐
Incidence	1/5000	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	⇐
Associated conditions	Trisomy 21 (5%); GU anomalies (< 5%); neurofibromatoses	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Children with Hirschsprung's disease (congenital aganglionosis) may have had prior colostomies and may present for colorectal reanastomosis. They may be mildly malnourished, but otherwise healthy.

GI	Diarrhea may be present with associated malabsorption state. **Tests:** Electrolytes
Laboratory	Hct; T&C
Premedication	For infants > 7–9 mo, consider midazolam 0.5 mg/kg po administered 30 min. before induction.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Combined epidural/GETA, warm OR to 75–80°F; forced-air warmer.

Induction	Mask induction, unless iv is already in place. Keep air leak around ETT to 18–35 cmH_2O. For more involved procedure, consider placement of epidural catheter.	
Maintenance	Low-dose volatile agent and air/O_2 with muscle relaxation for majority of cases. Epidural anesthesia provides the majority of analgesia, but not the required degree of muscle relaxation. Supplemental muscle relaxants (e.g., rocuronium 0.1 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg) are necessary.	
Emergence	The goal is to extubate at end of case. Reverse neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg iv) and atropine (0.02 mg/kg) or glycopyrrolate (0.01 mg/kg).	
Blood and fluid requirements	Mild blood loss IV: 20–22 ga × 1–2 in upper extremities NS/LR @ 10 mL/kg/h	These cases are usually not associated with large blood losses. Use 5% albumin for rapid volume expansion, if needed. As a result of bowel prep, patient may require 10–20 mL/kg iv of NS/LR to offset volume deficit. Neonates should have supplemental glucose infusion.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (See p. D-1) Urinary catheter ± Arterial line (22 ga)	Maintain UO @ 1 mL/kg/h.
Positioning	✓ padding, particularly over lateral fibular head (common peroneal nerve) ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypothermia Hypovolemia	Majority of heat loss is radiant (skin), but potential for large volume shifts mandates warming fluids.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypothermia Hypovolemia	
Pain management	Continuous epidural Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg q 1–2°) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg q 1–2°) Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv/po q 6°; one time dose 30–40 mg/kg PR, continuing doses 20 mg/kg PR q 6°)	Ropivacaine or Bupivacaine ± hydromorphone, clonidine will provide analgesia for 8–16 h (see p. E-4).
Tests	Hct if sig blood loss	

Suggested Readings

1. Georgeson KE, Robertson DJ: Laparoscopic-assisted approaches for the definitive surgery for Hirschsprung's disease. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2004; 13(4):256–62.
2. Tannuri AC, Tannuri U, Romao RL: Transanal endorectal pull-through in children with Hirschsprung's disease—technical refinements and comparison of results with the Duhamel procedure. *J Pediatr Surg* 2009; 44(4):767–72.

PULL-THROUGH FOR IMPERFORATE ANUS, CLOACA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Imperforate anus anomalies** are classified as **high** or **low,** depending on whether the distal rectum ends above or below the levator muscle. Usually the rectum terminates as a "fistula" entering the perineum or pelvic structures anterior to the external anal sphincter. Rarely the rectum ends blindly, often associated with Trisomy 21. If the fistula terminates on the perineum, it is called a "perineal fistula" or "anterior anus." In girls, it often terminates inside the fourchette but outside the hymen, called a "vestibular" fistula. Fistulas to the vagina or uterus are rare; when they occur, they may be in conjunction with urethral anomalies. This combined structure—including rectum, vagina, and urethra—is called a "cloaca." In boys, the fistula often ends in the urethra, occasionally the prostate, and rarely the bladder neck.

Surgical approach: At birth, associated conditions (e.g., VACTERL syndrome) are excluded while one waits 24 hours for the appearance of meconium through a sometimes-hard-to-see perineal fistula. The operation is then performed according to the estimated site of the fistula. Low lesions are dilated or repaired; high lesions are treated with a divided RLQ or loop colostomy. Definitive repair of high lesions occurs after several months following contrast studies. This operation—called a **perineal sagittal anorectoplasty (PSARP)** or **Pena procedure**—is performed in the prone jackknife position. If the fistula is high, it occasionally will be necessary to turn the patient over for abdominal mobilization of the sigmoid colon.

Laparoscopic approaches are quickly replacing the PSARP, especially for high lesions. High lesions are also amenable to early **laparoscopic mobilization and pull-through.** This can be done with low fistulas as well, but dissection of the common wall between the urethra and fistula must be performed with care.

Usual preop diagnosis: Imperforate anus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Low Lesions	High Lesions
Position	Supine, lithotomy	Prone, possible turn to spine or lithotomy
Incision	Midline perineal	Midline sacral, transverse abdominal
Special instrumentation	Muscle stimulator	⇐ + Urethral sound; vaginal pack
Unique considerations	None	Pressure points; prone position
Antibiotics	Preop: ampicillin 25 mg/kg iv + gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1–1.5 h	3–6 h
EBL	< 5 mL/kg	5–10 mL/kg
Postop care	Apnea monitor if neonate	
Mortality	20%, due to associated anomalies	≤ 40%, due to associated anomalies

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Low Lesions	High Lesions
Morbidity	Anal stenosis: 5–10% Mucosal prolapse: 5%	⇐ Intestinal obstruction: 5–10% Neurogenic bladder: < 5% Urethral stricture: 1–3%
Pain score	3–4	5–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Newborn–6 mo	12–18 mo
Male:Female	1.5:1	⇐
Incidence	1/5000	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	⇐
Associated conditions	CHD (common); esophageal atresia (15%); GU anomalies; sacral/spinal cord anomalies; VATER association	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Definitive repair is performed via the sacral and/or perineal route at ~12 mo. Children with rectal or anal agenesis without fistula will have had colostomies in newborn period. Other anomalies (e.g., VATER association VATER/VACTERL, vertebral anomalies, anal agenesis, cardiac defects, tracheoesophageal fistula [TEF]), esophageal atresia (EA), and/or renal or radial bone abnormalities may be present.

Respiratory	If VATER association present, ✓ cervical spine. Avoid extreme head flexion. If prior TEF repair, concerns as previously noted in Anesthetic Considerations for Repair of Tracheoesophageal Fistula/Esophageal Atresia, p. 1289. **Tests:** CXR; cervical spine film
Cardiovascular	Patients with VATER association have a 20% incidence of CHD (e.g., VSD). Obtain echocardiogram and, if needed, cardiology consultation preop. **Tests**: ECHO
Gastrointestinal	Colostomy may be present; thus, anesthesia records may be available for review.
Renal	Renal abnormalities may be present. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes
Musculoskeletal	Radial bone deformities may be present.
Laboratory	Hct; T&C (✓ parental/directed donor blood availability.)
Premedication	If > 9 mo, consider midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po) 30 min prior to arrival in OR.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Combined epidural/GETA, warm OR to 75°–80°F; heating pad on OR table.

Induction	Standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1). Secure iv access and administer muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 0.5–1 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg) to facilitate ET intubation. Maintain air leak at > 18–35 cmH_2O. Lumbar epidural catheter inserted after induction.

Maintenance	Volatile agent/air/O_2 with epidural analgesia (2 cc ropivacaine 0.2% or bupivacaine 0.25%), or morphine (0.1 mg/kg iv), hydromorphone (10–15 mcg/kg iv), or fentanyl (2–5 mcg/kg iv). Maintain neuromuscular blockade as surgically indicated.	
Emergence	Usually extubated at end of case. Reverse neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg iv) and atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv). Ability to flex hips is a sign of adequate reversal.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood/3rd-space losses IV: 20–22 ga × 2 NS/LR@ maintenance	Place ivs in upper extremities because positioning of legs may impede venous flow. 3rd-space losses ~5 mL/kg/h. Neonates should have supplemental glucose infusion.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) Urinary catheter ± 24-ga radial arterial line	Maintain UO @ 0.5–1 mL/kg/h. Marked arterial wave-form variation with ventilation is a sensitive indicator of hypovolemia. ABG/Hct/glucose prn.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patient may be turned during procedure.
Complications	Metabolic acidosis Hypovolemia →↓ BP Hypothermia	Mild metabolic acidosis may occur with significant bleeding, or when 3rd-space losses are replaced with bicarbonate-deficient fluids (NS, albumin 5%, PRBCs).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Subglottic edema Respiratory depression 2° to opiates	
Pain management	Continuous epidural analgesia. Fentanyl (1–2 mg/kg iv q 1 h prn), Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv q 1–4 h) Dilaudid (0.002 mg/kg iv q 1 h)	See p. E-4. Aggressive pain management warranted.
Tests	Hct ABG Electrolytes	

Suggested Readings

1. Schecter NL, Berde CB,Yaster M, eds: *Pain in Infants, Children, and Adolescents.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2002.
2. Sydorak RM, Albanese CT: Laparoscopic repair of high imperforate anus. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2002; 11(4):217–25.

REPAIR OF INGUINAL & UMBILICAL HERNIAS, HYDROCELE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Inguinal hernia repair (**herniorrhaphy**) and its variant, **hydrocele repair,** are the most frequently performed operations in pediatric surgery. Most pediatric hernias are indirect; they occur when the processus vaginalis (a small pouch of peritoneum dragged down to the scrotum during gonadal descent) fails to obliterate. Infants,

particularly the premature, are more likely than toddlers to develop bilateral and incarcerated hernias. Hydroceles are identical to hernias in origin but have a smaller neck and derive their name because this neck is so small that only intraperitoneal fluid, not bowel, can pass through it. Hydroceles tend to close spontaneously (~80%) during the first 2 yr of life; those that fail to resolve are repaired at ~2 yr. Hydroceles are termed "communicating" when they empty/fill with postural change. Umbilical hernias have a tendency to close over the first 5 yr of life (~95%), and are repaired when large (> 2 cm) or persistent. Complications of hernia/hydrocele repair include damage to the vas deferens or testicular vessels, metachronous contras-lateral hernias (~10%) if just one side is repaired initially, and a very low incidence of infertility when bilateral repairs are undertaken. Bleeding, if any, is minor, recurrence uncommon (≤ 1%), and bowel resection is rarely necessary, even when a hernia is incarcerated. Overnight admission for apnea monitoring is suggested in premature children (≤ 54–60 wk corrected age). **Hydrocele repair** complications are similar to those of herniorrhaphy. **Umbilical hernia repairs** have very few complications. Acetaminophen PR at the beginning of the procedure aids postop pain management.

Surgical approach: Inguinal hernias and hydroceles are repaired through a lower-lateral abdominal skin crease incision (more recently, laparoscopically), permitting separation of the sac from spermatic cord structures, followed by high ligation ± distal fenestration (in hydroceles). Umbilical hernia repair is performed through a transverse incision in the infraumbilical skin fold, through which the sac is resected from the undersurface of the skin and healthy fascial edges closed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Inguinal hernia; umbilical hernia; hydrocele

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Inguinal	Umbilical
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Inguinal, bilateral	Infraumbilical
Unique considerations	Prematurity	Abdominal compression if hernia large
Antibiotics	None	⇐
Surgical time	40 min	⇐
Closing considerations	Nerve block, caudal	Umbilical block
EBL	5 mL/kg	⇐
Postop care	Apnea monitor; hospitalization for premature infants	None
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Apnea Recurrence	None
Pain score	3–5	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Premature–adolescent	> 2 yr
Male:Female	5:1	N/A
Incidence	1–2%	1%
Etiology	Patent processus vaginalis	Persistent umbilical defect
Associated conditions	Gonadal dysgenesis (Rare)	None

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Hernia repair is most commonly performed in otherwise healthy infants in the first 2 yr of life, often on an outpatient basis. It is also performed on premature infants (< 37-wk gestational age at birth). Premature infants are particularly prone to inguinal hernias. Postop apnea can occur in infants ≤ 60 wk postconceptual age, particularly if the infant was premature, has neurologic disease, anemia, or required intensive care in the early neonatal period. Infants ≤ 60 wk postconception usually require overnight admission Br monitoring (postop apnea and ↓ HR).

Respiratory	Bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD), tracheomalacia, and subglottic stenosis are consequences of prolonged mechanical ventilation and immature lungs at birth. ✓ prior NICU Hx. ↓ FRC and ↑ PVR make infants with BPD more susceptible to hypoxia. They may require supplemental nasal O_2 on a chronic basis, have immature respiratory centers, and may exhibit paradoxical apneic/bradycardic episodes in response to hypoxemia. **Tests:** CXR
Cardiovascular	Prior PDA ligation is possible. These patients may be on diuretic therapy for intrinsic lung disease (e.g., BPD) with resultant decreased intravascular volume. **Tests:** CXR; electrolytes
Neurological	Premature infants may be prone to seizure disorders. **Tests:** Anticonvulsant levels
Hematologic	Anemia is common at ~3 mo of age (physiologic nadir) and increases risk of postop apnea.
Tests	Hct; PT; PTT; Plt, as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If appropriate (e.g., infants > 9 mo), midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po) 30 min prior to arrival in OR.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Typically, GETA or LMA (± caudal [especially for bilateral repair] or ilioinguinal/iliohypogastric block [for single-sided repair]). An alternative in ex-preterm infants at high risk for postop apnea is spinal anesthesia without GA (see p. E-4), though this is practiced more rarely. Warm OR to 75°–80° F and use a forced-air warmer

Induction	Mask induction in children with sevoflurane/N_2O/O_2. Secure iv. If appropriate, position child for placement of caudal anesthetic: ropivacaine 0.2% or bupivacaine 0.25% ± epinephrine 1:200,000 @ 1 mL/kg (max 10cc). If child otherwise healthy and >18 mo old, can proceed with LMA; otherwise, tracheal intubation is preferred. If premature, consider atropine. Intubation may be facilitated with rocuronium (0.5–1 mg/kg) or vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg).	
Maintenance	Standard pediatric inhalational anesthetic (see p. D-2) is appropriate. With caudal anesthetic or nerve block, decrease amount of volatile anesthetic and avoid or reduce opiates. If LMA and spontaneous ventilation is used, deepen anesthetic to 2 MAC of inhalational agents at incision to minimize risk of laryngospasm. Caudal onset time 10–15 min.	
Emergence	Reverse neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg iv) and atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv). Extubate only when fully awake. LMA may be removed deep and oral airway is placed.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Negligible blood loss IV: 22–24 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance	Infants receiving diuretics will require 10–20 mL/kg iv of NS/LR to avoid ↓ BP 2° volatile anesthetics. In children < 1 mo old, use dextrose-containing iv solution (e.g., D10W for maintenance, LR for replacement fluids)

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1)	Premature infants may become hypoglycemic. ✓ blood glucose during surgery.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Laryngospasm Bronchospasm Local anesthetic toxicity Hypothermia Hypoglycemia	Rx bronchospasm: albuterol inhaler, mist, mask, deepen anesthesia

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Apnea/bradycardia Subglottic edema	Can ↓ incidence of apnea/bradycardia by administering caffeine (10 mg/kg iv) intraop or in NICU/PACU.
Pain management	Field block Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg po/iv, 20 mg/kg PR q 6° prn)	If no caudal used, a field block (bupivacaine 0.25% 2–3 mL) at end of surgery reduces pain in the immediate postop period. It is usually performed by the surgeon.
Tests/monitoring	Apnea monitor and pulse oximeter for 12–18 h for: term infants ≤ 44 wk; premature infants ≤ 60 wk	Caffeine is no substitute for monitoring and attentive parents/nurses.

Suggested Readings

1. Gregory GA: Anesthesia for premature infants. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, Sussex, UK: 2012, 475–96.
2. Laituri CA, Gareey CL, Peiters B, et al: Overnight observation in former premature infants undergoing inguinal hernia repair. *J Pediatr Surg* 2012; 47(1):217–20.
3. Morton NS, Fairgrieve R, Moores A, et al: Anesthesia for the full-term and ex-premature infants. In: Gregory GA, Andropolous DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, Sussex, UK: 2012, 497–519.

SURGERY FOR THE UNDESCENDED TESTICLE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Also called "cryptorchidism," this occurs when a testicle fails to follow the usual pattern of descent. Testicles begin fetal life just inferior to the kidney and, through differential growth, migrate to the base of the ipsilateral hemiscrotum, attached there by the gubernaculum. Problems occur when testicular descent does not occur, occurs partially, or occurs incorrectly. Testicles that are found in the abdomen, inguinal canal, perineum, thigh, suprapubic fat, or contralateral scrotum may be associated with subsequent problems, including infertility and malignant degeneration. Transposition and fixation of the testicles into their normal location (**orchidopexy**), does not eliminate these problems; rather, it places the testicle in a position where it can be more easily evaluated and may mitigate the progressive infertility thought to occur when testicles remain outside the scrotum. Because testicular descent is a dynamic process, cryptorchidism is not addressed until 18–24 mo of life since a significant portion of initially cryptorchid testes will descend into the scrotum during this time.

Surgical approach: The operation begins in a similar fashion to a hernia repair, as 95% of cryptorchid testes have an associated hernia sac. One exception is if the testicle is thought to be **intraabdominal.** In this circumstance, many

surgeons will begin with a laparoscopic abdominal examination, using the vas deferens and testicular vessels to locate the testis. If it is high in the abdomen, it may be brought immediately to the perineum (difficult if the testicular vessels are short), or a two-step **Fowler-Stevens** approach is undertaken. In this approach, the gubernacular vessels supplying the inferior pole of the testis are encouraged to hypertrophy by division of the spermatic vessels, and the testicle is left in the abdomen near the internal ring. At a second operation ~6 months later, the testicle is brought down, much as in the primary operation following hernia repair. This involves creation of a passage down to the base of the ipsilateral hemiscrotum, through which the testicle is advanced as far as the vas deferens permits. The tough outer layer of the testicle—the tunica albuginea—is then attached to the scrotum in a subcutaneous pocket outside the dartos fascia to discourage migration back up to a high location. There is scant blood loss; however, there is a small risk to testicular viability. Small, high, abnormal testes with short vessels and vas associated with poor gubernacular vessels are deemed better removed than left in a high location where malignant degeneration might go undetected. A caudal block may be preferable to injection of local anesthesia at multiple sites.

Usual preop diagnosis: Undescended testicle; cryptorchidism

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Orchidopexy	First of Two-stage Repair
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Lower groin crease	Laparoscopic or open
Special instrumentation	–	One to three ports if laparoscopic
Unique considerations	Length of vas and vessels	Length of vas deferens
Antibiotics	None	⇐
Surgical time	1–1.5 h	30 min
EBL	< 5 mL/kg	⇐
Postop care	Home	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding Orchiectomy	⇐
Pain score	4–5	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18–24 mo
Incidence	1/2000 births
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Prematurity; gastroschisis; intersex anomaly; Turner's syndrome (potential for airway, cardiac, and renal problems)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Urology, Inguinoscrotal Procedures, p. 1375.

Suggested Readings

1. Thorup J, Haugen S, Kollin C, et al: Surgical treatment of undescended testes. *Acta Paediatr* 2007; 96(5):631–7.

RESECTION OF SACROCOCCYGEAL TERATOMA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Occasionally during gestation, a group of cells composing all three germ layers segregates and begins autonomous development as a teratoma. When this occurs just anterior to the coccyx, the tumor may remain small and local, or grow up into the abdomen or down into the peritoneum, attaining sizes as large as the child itself. Although a few centers attempt fetal surgery for very large lesions, in most hospitals the child is delivered by the appropriate route (cesarean delivery for large external lesions), and the mass is addressed in the neonatal period or whenever it is diagnosed thereafter. Most (though not all) sacrococcygeal teratomas (SCTs) are initially benign; however, they may soon transform into malignancy beginning at 2 mo of age.

Surgical approach: Small teratomas are approached prone from the rectum; larger ones, with high blood flow, may first have an intraabdominal procedure to ligate feeding vessels and mobilize the tumor. Once prone, a V-shaped incision is created down to the posterior aspect of the anteriorly displaced anus. Surgical principles of dissection include avoiding entry into the rectum (a colostomy is rarely necessary); meticulous hemostasis, including ligation of the median sacral artery; and removal of the coccyx, from which the tumor arises and may recur. At the end of the procedure, the levator muscles are brought together, and the anus is suspended from the presacral fascia. Bleeding can be massive, and adjacent structures (bowel, bladder, and presacral nerve plexus) are distorted and prone to injury.

Usual preop diagnosis: Sacrococcygeal teratoma

Differential diagnosis: May appear similar to meningomyelocele.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Prone, sometimes preceded by supine
Incision	Perineal chevron, sometimes preceded by transverse abdominal
Special instrumentation	Hegar dilators
Unique considerations	Intraabdominal blood supply
Antibiotics	Ampicillin 25 mg/kg and gentamicin 2.5 mg/kg
Surgical time	2–5 h
Closing considerations	Extubation depends on duration and blood loss
EBL	20–80 mL/kg
Postop care	NICU, prone
Mortality	Fetal, due to hydrops and high flow state; < 10% neonatal
Morbidity	Bleeding Colostomy Pelvic nerve damage → bowel and bladder dysfunction Recurrence and/or malignant degeneration

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1–2 mo
Male:Female	1:1

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Incidence	1/15,000 births
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	Constipation; heart failure; Currarino's triad; malignant degeneration

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Sacrococcygeal teratoma is a rare tumor of infancy. Sometimes diagnosed prenatally, it also can present as late as 18–24 mo. Patients may present with urinary obstruction by the tumor mass; lower extremity pain, numbness, or weakness; or bowel obstruction. ~10% may have a sacral anomaly or myelomeningocele.

Respiratory	There may be respiratory compromise as a result of a large abdominal mass pushing up on the abdominal contents and the diaphragm. **Tests:** CXR, if indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Sacrococcygeal teratoma may be associated with high-output cardiac failure due to AV fistulae within the tumor. Consultation with a cardiologist may be appropriate. **Tests:** ECG; ECHO may be necessary.
Renal	Postrenal obstruction may compromise renal function. **Tests:** BUN; Cr
Gastrointestinal	Intestinal compression by the tumor may cause ↑ risk of gastric aspiration. **Tests:** Electrolytes
Hematologic	This tumor may be associated with coagulopathy. **Tests:** PT; PTT; INR
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients > 9 mo may benefit from midazolam (0.5 mg/kg) po 30 min. before surgery. If iv is present, iv midazolam 0.05–0.1 mg/kg may be used (e.g., for 10 kg child, 0.5–1 mg midazolam).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, using a pediatric circle; warm OR to 75–80°F; warm all iv fluids. Due to risk of coagulopathy and the possibility of spine malformations, epidural catheter usually is not considered.

Induction	Usually an inhalation induction. If an iv is present, then an iv induction is performed. A modified rapid-sequence induction is recommended in those patients with a large intraabdominal mass compressing the GI tract. Otherwise, standard pediatric induction (see p. D-1) is appropriate. The appropriate size for the ETT is one that will allow a small leak around the tube when positive pressure is applied (18–35 cmH_2O).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-3). Muscle relaxation is appropriate.
Emergence	Depending on blood loss and fluid requirements, the patient may need to remain intubated at the end of the procedure. If extubation is elected, suction NG and confirm air leak around ETT before extubation. If there is no air leak, consider laryngeal edema and the need for continued intubation.

Blood and fluid requirements	Potential for massive blood loss. IV: Two large-bore iv catheters (e.g., 20–22 ga)	Tumor resection may be associated with massive blood loss, due to large pelvic venous bed, AV fistula, coagulopathy. Close monitoring of Hct is necessary, along with correction of acidosis and Ca^{++} replacement.
Monitoring	Standard monitor (see p. D-1) ± Central line Arterial line (22 ga)	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding Coagulopathy Hypoventilation Laryngeal edema	PICU usually required. Maintain normothermia; correct metabolic acidosis. Postop ventilation requirement due to hypoventilation, laryngeal edema. Serial Hct may help detect postop hemorrhage.
Pain management	Fentanyl 1 mcg/kg/h iv Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv q 1–2 h) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg iv q 1–2 h) Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv q 6; 20 mg/kg pr q 6; one time intraop dose 30–40 mg/kg pr)	Approximate doses; titration required.
Tests	ABG Hct PT/PTT	

Suggested Reading

1. Cowles RA, Stolar CJ, Kandel JJ, et al: Preoperative angiography with embolization and radiofrequency ablation as novel adjuncts to safe surgical resection of a large, vascular sacrococcygeal teratoma. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2006; 22(6):554–6.

ANESTHESIA FOR MINIMALLY INVASIVE SURGERY IN PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

Gregory B. Hammer

In recent years there has been a significant increase in the practice of minimally invasive surgery in pediatric patients. Specific considerations for these surgeries (as in adult patients) include the effects of pneumoperitoneum on respiratory and cardiac function. ↑ abdominal pressure → ↓ diaphragmatic excursion, ↑ atelectasis, and V/Q mismatch. ↑ CO_2 levels can be difficult to control with mechanical ventilation; thus, manual ventilation may be necessary. There is risk of pneumothorax and pneumomediastinum. Use of Trendelenburg position further decreases FRC and lung compliance and increases the work of breathing. Cephalad movement of the carina may cause endobronchial intubation. Venous return may be impaired, causing ↓ CO. These effects are most pronounced in children < 6 mo old. These children also may be at risk for reversal of L → R shunts through a patent foramen ovale (PFO) or ductus arteriosus.

Minimally invasive procedures that are frequently performed in pediatrics include appendectomy, pyloric stenosis, hernia repair, Nissen fundoplication, cholecystectomy, splenectomy, laparoscopically assisted bowel resection, thoracoscopy (VATS), and congenital diaphragmatic hernia repair. The general principles for anesthesia for minimally invasive surgery in pediatric patients are as follows:

PREOPERATIVE

1. Be vigilant about respiratory and cardiac function. Note baseline lung function (SaO_2, CXR, ABG); ✓ for any cardiac defects (e.g., L → R shunt, ↓ CO).
2. Epidural usually not placed for laparoscopy or thoracoscopy, but it should be considered at the end of the procedure if the decision is made to do open surgery, or for large resections. Consider need for PT/PTT if significant bleeding, or if preop health status indicates (e.g., oncology PT, malnutrition, renal/liver dysfunction).
3. Blood should be available for major cases including VATS for empeyma. Although there usually is little blood loss with minimally invasive surgery, the potential for large-vessel disruption exists.

Premedication	Patients > 7–9 mo may benefit from midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po) 30 min before surgery.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA; forced-air warmer; warm OR to 70–75°F; warm iv fluids.

Induction	Inhalation induction using sevoflurane, N_2O, followed by iv placement. If patient is at risk for aspiration, rapid-sequence induction as appropriate. For ET intubation in children, cuffed tube is usually placed, with the goal is to attain a seal allowing for a leak of 18–35 cmH_2O. A cuffed tube is usually 1/2 size smaller than corresponding uncuffed tube for age. If OLV is required, see Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Thoracic Surgery p. 1297, for placement. Note distance of end of ETT from carina. As abdominal girth is increased during CO_2 insufflation, it is common for the tube to advance to an endobronchial position.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-3). Muscle relaxation is appropriate. An OG tube is placed to empty the stomach of any residual premedication and excess air introduced during PPV. Continued communication between anesthesiologist and surgeon is essential. Pay attention to changes in positioning (e.g., Trendelenburg), intraabdominal pressure (n1 = 15 cmH_2O), airway pressures, BP. Recheck that BS = after insufflation, as cephalad movement of diaphragm may lead to endobronchial intubation.	
Emergence	In most cases, the patient can be extubated at the end of surgery.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22–20-ga catheter × 1 Maintenance fluids	Potential for 3rd space and blood loss, especially with VATS surgery for empyema.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) ± Arterial line Urinary catheter	Consider arterial line if patient has significant cardiac or respiratory compromise.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	↑ CO_2 (40–50 mm Hg) (common) ↑ PIP (common) Subcutaneous crepitus (moderately common) Endobronchial intubation (common) Difficult ventilating (common)	2° Trendelenburg position, ↑ abdominal girth. In thoracoscopy, if SLV is used, may need to raise lung and ventilate transiently.
	Hypovolemia	→ ↓ CO. Rx: crystalloid or albumin 10–20 mL/kg.
	Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum (rare) Inadvertent cannulation of vessel (rare)	CO_2 embolus (rare)

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Respiratory function impairment Bleeding Residual subcutaneous CO_2 Pneumothorax	Respiratory function may still be significantly impaired in the postop period and should be monitored closely.
Pain management	Ketorolac 0.5 mg/kg iv q 6 h Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv q 1–2 h) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg iv q 1–2 h) Acetaminophen (10 mg/kg iv q 6; 20 mg/kg pr q 6; one-time intraop dose 30–40 mg/kg pr)	If significant intraoperative bleeding, avoid ketorolac for 24 h postop

Suggested Readings

1. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracic, urologic, and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Mosby Inc., Philadelphia: 2011, 745–9.
2. Sun LS, Saraiya NR, Houck PJ: Anesthesia for abdominal surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropolous DB, eds. *Gregory's Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, West Sussex, UK: 2012, 736–8.

EX UTERO INTRAPARTUM TREATMENT (EXIT) PROCEDURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The EXIT (Ex Utero Intrapartum Treatment) strategy was developed as a means of establishing an airway after iatrogenic occlusion of the fetal trachea to promote lung growth for fetuses with severe congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH). The EXIT strategy can be viewed as a "half" delivery in which a **hysterotomy** is performed, only the head and shoulders are "delivered", and uterine relaxation is maintained by high concentrations of an inhalational anesthetic and intravenous tocolytics, ensuring the maintenance of uteroplacental blood flow and gas exchange. Using this strategy, operations as long as 3 h on uteroplacental "bypass" have been performed without significant maternal bleeding and uterine contraction. It provides time to perform procedures such as direct laryngoscopy, bronchoscopy, tracheotomy, arterial and venous access, administration of surfactant, resection of neck or lung masses, and cannulation for ECMO (extracorporeal membrane oxygenation) support, thereby converting a potential emergent crisis into a controlled situation.

Surgical technique: A successful EXIT procedure is a carefully orchestrated event in which all members of the OR team have specific roles and responsibilities. The scrubbed personnel consist of two pediatric/fetal surgeons, a maternal-fetal medicine specialist/obstetrician, a pediatric anesthesiologist, a neonatologist, other specialists as indicated, with appropriate nurses and techs as needed. Unlike the EXIT procedure, a conventional Cesarean delivery makes no attempt to prevent bleeding from the hysterotomy because hemostasis is achieved by return of uterine tone following the relatively rapid delivery of the fetus. Because of the significant hemorrhage from a conventional hysterotomy, the EXIT procedure is carried out using a **hemostatic uterine stapling device** (US Surgical CS 57, US Surgical/Tyco, Norwalk, CT). First, a low transverse skin crease incision is used. The decision to use a Mallard versus Pfannenstiel fascial incision is determined by uterine size (e.g., presence/absence polyhydramnios) and placental position. If the operation is performed in the late 3rd trimester and the placenta is posterior or fundic, the lower uterine segment can be opened and the uterus left in situ. An anterior or previa placenta often necessitates moving the uterus out of the abdomen/pelvis. The hysterotomy in this situation is not in the lower uterine segment. Intraop ultrasonography is critical to map placental position. If polyhydramnios is present, amnioreduction is performed to avoid underestimation of the proximity of the placental edge to the hysterotomy. Two applications of the uterine stapler are usually necessary for an adequate opening. Bleeding often occurs where

the staple lines fail to intersect and is easily controlled with suture ligation. Only the necessary fetal parts are delivered in order to maintain uterine volume and avoid vigorous contractions and placental separation. A **sterile pulse oximeter** is attached to the palm of the fetal hand. It is covered with foil and Tegaderm tape to prevent aberrant readings due to the operating room lights. The long oximeter cord is passed across the field to the anesthesiologist. The fetal eyes are covered with a warm wet laparotomy pad. The fetus is continuously bathed in warm saline. Care is taken not to manipulate or unnecessarily expose the umbilical cord to avoid spasm of the vessels. Sterile instruments that need to be available include a laryngoscope with at least two different sized blades and extra bulbs (batteries are not sterilized and are inserted separately), two sizes of a rigid bronchoscope, a light cord, various endotracheal (some with surfactant adapters) and tracheostomy tubes, endotracheal tube stylettes, a hand bag device with a manometer and sterile tubing that is passed off the field to an oxygen source, a sterile neonatal stethoscope, and a sterile syringe filled with surfactant (if necessary). IV access is obtained if possible. Alternatively, a mixture of fentanyl and an NMB agent such as rocuronium, vecuronium, or pancuronium can be administered im (deltoid) to the fetus immediately after the hysterotomy. After the airway is obtained and secured, the umbilical cord is clamped and divided and the child taken to the resuscitation table by the neonatologist. The placenta is delivered and the uterus closed in the standard fashion. Oxytocin is administered immediately prior to clamping the umbilical cord to enhance uterine tone.

Indications: Clinical situations in which the fetal airway or cardiovascular well-being is significantly threatened by conventional Cesarean or vaginal delivery are candidates for the EXIT strategy. Some examples are

- Intrinsic laryngotracheal anomalies resulting in congenital high airway obstruction syndrome (CHAOS): laryngeal web/atresia/cyst/stenosis, tracheal stenosis/atresia
- Extrinsic airway compression: cervical teratoma/lymphangioma (may or may not result in CHAOS)
- Epignathus
- Severe hydrops from a cystic adenomatoid malformation of the lung after 32 wk gestation
- EXIT to ECMO for severe CDH with congenital heart disease
- Delivery of thoracoomphalopagus twins
- Delivery of twins discordant for a potentially obstructing neck lesion

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	L uterine displacement
Incision	Low transverse
Special Instructions	Fetal monitoring
Unique Considerations	Need to maintain uterine relaxation
Child	Monitor for fetal hypoxia, bradycardia
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Surgical time	2 h
Closing Considerations	Extubation
Postoperative care	Variable—moderate
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Risk of hemorrhage

STERILE EQUIPMENT (ON SURGICAL FIELD)

ETT	3.0 cuffed; 2.5, 3.0, 3.5 uncuffed, and available stylets
Laryngoscopes and blades	Miller 0,1 Wis-Hipple 1,1.5

STERILE EQUIPMENT (ON SURGICAL FIELD) (cont'd)	
LMA	1, 1.5
Suction catheters	6 Fr, 8 Fr
Other	Mask, capnograph tubing, oral airways, umbilical tape, steri strips, stethoscope

NONSTERILE EQUIPMENT READILY AVAILABLE	
Fiberoptic bronchoscope	Appropriate for neonatal airway
Ambu-bag	
Additional oxygen source	

Maternal Risks and Outcomes: The most serious and immediate maternal risk during the EXIT procedure is **intraop hemorrhage**. This may result from **uterine atony** and can be minimized by decreasing the concentration of the inhalational anesthetic and administering oxytocin before umbilical cord ligation. This, in combination with the hemostatic uterine stapling device, has kept the average maternal blood loss well within the accepted range for traditional Cesarean delivery. In addition, **placental injury** may occur during hysterotomy, resulting in hemorrhage. This has occurred in the setting of polyhydramnios, in which the edge of the placenta was compressed, obscuring it from view by the ultrasonographer. It is advisable to perform intraop amnioreduction in cases with severe polyhydramnios with a potentially nearby placenta before performing an EXIT procedure to allow better placental visualization. In one study, the short-term maternal outcomes after 34 EXIT procedures were compared to those from 52 nonlaboring patients who underwent nonemergent primary cesarean delivery of singleton fetuses. The rates of chorioamnionitis and endometritis, and the postop hematocrit and hospital stays were similar between groups. The incidence of **wound infection** was increased in those undergoing EXIT procedure (15%) compared to controls (2%).

Lower uterine segment transverse hysterotomy is preferred for the EXIT procedure as it allows the possibility of future vaginal delivery. However, a low anterior placenta or an extremely large neck mass may make this incision impossible. In such cases, a classical hysterotomy is necessary which would preclude future vaginal deliveries because of the risk of uterine rupture during labor. Thus, all pregnant women should be counseled that Cesarean delivery may be required for all future pregnancies and that there is an increased risk of abnormal placentation with subsequent pregnancies.

ANESTHESIA CONSIDERATIONS

The features that distinguish the EXIT procedure from a conventional Cesarean delivery are, in large part, due to the anesthetic management. Of paramount importance is the uterine relaxation achieved with an inhalational agent, most commonly isoflurane. Isoflurane has been administered in concentrations up to 2.5% to completely anesthetize the fetus to allow fetal laryngoscopy, bronchoscopy, tracheostomy, or tumor resection. Preservation of uteroplacental gas exchange with high concentrations of maternal isoflurane is well tolerated by the fetus for EXIT procedures lasting up to 180 min. Careful attention to the maintenance of maternal systemic blood pressure, often with the use of phenylephrine and ephedrine, is essential to safely use the high concentration of isoflurane required for uterine relaxation. Intraop fluid administration is kept to an absolute minimum 2° the postop predisposition to maternal pulmonary edema while on tocolytic agents. Occasionally, additional uterine relaxation is required, even when the end-tidal isoflurane concentration is ≥ 2.5%. This suggests that extensive manipulation of the uterus, (e.g., forward displacement of the uterus to perform a posterior hysterotomy because of an anterior placenta), may stimulate the uterus to contract, even if high concentrations of isoflurane are used. For this situation, the intraop use of nitroglycerine provides excellent temporary uterine relaxation and is well tolerated. Pulmonary edema does not occur as a result of intraop intermittent dosing of nitroglycerine when it is used as an adjunct for uterine relaxation.

PREOPERATIVE

Conduct a rigorous preop evaluation of the mother, including CV history; evaluate all fetal anomalies in question. The most common indication for an EXIT procedure is the presence of a prenatally diagnosed neck mass, which is

anticipated to result in severe airway obstruction following birth; severe micrognathia, mandibular hypoplasia may also require this approach. Preoperative consultation and coordination between treating providers is necessary.

Full stomach precautions	Pretreatment with Bicitra 30 mL po, ranitidine 50 mg iv
Positioning	Left uterine displacement

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, rapid-sequence induction. Primary goal is to maintain complete uterine relaxation, to support materal–fetal gas exchange, and ensure fetal oxygenation. Uterine blood flow is not autoregulated, but directly related to MAP.

Maintain blood pressure with phenylephrine and ephedrine as necessary. Maintain fluid resuscitation to moderate due to propensity of pulmonary edema while on tocolytic agents. High concentration of isoflurane or sevoflurane to maintain uterine relaxation. Nitroglycerin can also be used to facilitate relaxation. Intrauterine infusion with normal saline may be necessary to preserve uterine volume and prevent separation of placenta.

Induction	Rapid sequence induction, with propofol, and succinylcholine (see p. B-5).	
Maintenance	Volatile agent at high concentration to maintain uterine relaxation. Propofol (150–250 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.2–0.5 mcg/kg/min) may help reduce uterine contractility in a dose-dependent manner and thereby reduce the need for large quantities of volatile anesthesia. With uterine exposure reduce propofol to 50–75 mcg/kg/min.	
Special considerations	Coordination necessary between maternal anesthesia team, surgical team and pediatric anesthesia regarding cord clamping and delivery. Cord is clamped, volatile agent immediately discontinued, N_2O continued, fentanyl and midazolam given; oxytocin bolus and continuous infusion of oxytocin titrated to uterine response. Once hemostasis is achieved, and uterine tone is restored, anesthetic agents are restarted.	
Care of fetus/ neonate	Infant: delivery of fetal head and upper extremity. Commence fetal monitoring with fetal scalp electrode, O_2 Sat monitoring (normal SaO_2—65–75%). If possible, place iv catheter. Alternatively, additional anesthetic can be administered im via deltoid muscle (fentanyl 2–3 mcg/kg; rocuronium 0.5–1 mg/kg, vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg, or pancuronium 0.1 mg/kg). After the airway is secured, the cord is clamped and delivery completed. Once airway secure, O_2 sat should increase to > 90%. If unable to secure, consider surgical intervention. Secure ETT with umbilical tape, steri-strips. Secure iv access if not obtained previously. Hemodynamic management may include resuscitation with iv fluids, transfusion. Transfer to NICU unless further immediate surgical intervention needed.	
Emergence	Usually extubated	
Blood and fluid requirements	Moderate blood loss IV: 16–18 ga × 1–2	Blood products available in room due to potential for hemorrhage; Cautious crystalloid administration due to potential for pulmonary edema related to the use of tocolytics.
Monitoring	Standard monitors A-line	CVP to guide fluid resuscitation
Positioning	L-uterine displacement	
Complications	Maternal hemorrhage Uterine atony	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications (maternal)	Hemorrhage	✓ H/H regularly (e.g., 30 min for the 1st h); transfuse as necessary
	Pulmonary edema	2° overly aggressive resuscitation, prolonged use of NTG
Complications (neonate)	Hypovolemia	2° fetal hemorrhage via umbilical cord
	Respiratory compromise	2° aspiration, overresuscitation-ventilatory support as necessary
Tests	CXR to verify ETT position	
Pain management	Maternal	Patient-controlled analgesia
	Neonate	Fentanyl 1–2 mcg/kg iv q 1° prn; Morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv q 1–2 h) Hydromorphone (0.005–0.01 mg/kg iv q 1–2 h) Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg iv q 6; 20mg/kg pr q 6; one-time intraop dose 30–40 mg/kg pr

Suggested Readings

1. Bouchard S, Johnson MP, Flake AW, et al: The EXIT procedure: experience and outcome in 31 cases. *J Pediatric Surgery* 2002; 37(3):418–26.
2. Crombleholme TM, Albanese CT: The fetus with airway obstruction. In: Harrison MR, Evans MI, Adzick NS, et al, eds. *The Unborn Patient. The Art and Science of Fetal Therapy*. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2001, 357–71.
3. Hedrick HL: Ex utero intrapartum therapy. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2003; 12:190–5.
4. Hirose S, Sydorak RM, Tsao K, et al: Spectrum of intrapartum management strategies for giant fetal cervical teratoma. *J Pediatr Surg* 2003; 38:446–50.
5. Myers LB: *Anesthesia for Ex Utero Intrapartum Treatment (EXIT Procedure).* BC Decker Inc, Hamilton: 2005.
6. Ngamprasertwong P, Vinks AA, Boat A: Update in fetal anesthesia for the ex-utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 50(4):26–40.
7. Noah MM, Norton ME, Sandberg P, et al: Short-term maternal outcomes that are associated with the EXIT procedure, as compared with cesarean delivery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2002; 186:773–3.
8. Otteson TD, Jackam DJ, Mandell DL: The ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure. *Arch Otolaryng Head Neck Surg* 2006; 132:686–9.

PEDIATRIC BARIATRIC SURGERY

Description: Childhood obesity, defined by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control as a BMI above the 95th percentile for age, is pandemic in the United States, with rates up to 18% for adolescents aged 12 to 19. Adolescent bariatric surgery has been shown to improve both the quality of life as well as significantly decrease the comorbidities of obesity including obstructive sleep apnea (OSA), hypertension, type II diabetes, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, pseudotumor cerebri, joint disease, and depression. There are two fundamental strategies to accomplish weight loss through surgery. The first approach is **restriction** in which the stomach volume is reduced to physically limit the amount of food that can be consumed comfortably at a given time. The second approach is **malabsorption** in which a given amount of intestine is bypassed to decrease absorptive capacity for nutrients.

Surgical approach: Prior to any consideration of surgical intervention, pediatric patients with obesity must be assessed by a multidisciplinary team including pediatricians, psychologists, social workers, physical therapists, and nutritionists. Nonsurgical weight loss options should be thoroughly investigated and exhausted prior to offering surgery.

The three most commonly performed procedures for obesity in the adolescent population are gastric band, sleeve gastrectomy, and Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. The **gastric band** (Fig. 12.5-12) is an adjustable device surgically placed around the stomach just distal to the GE junction. The procedure is generally done laparoscopically. An access port is placed in the subcutaneous tissue of the abdomen. The device variably compresses the stomach and restricts intake. **Sleeve gastrectomy** (Fig. 12.5-13) is performed by resecting the bulk of gastric tissue along the greater curvature

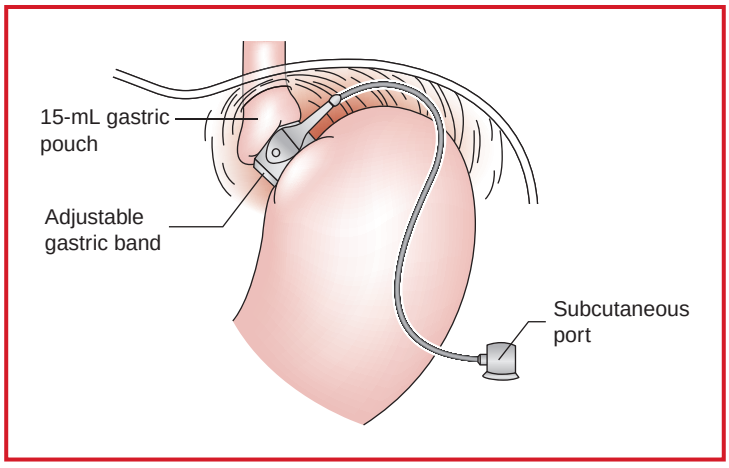


Figure 12.5-12. Gastric band approach.

leaving a small tubular stomach resulting in restriction and some malabsorption. The procedure is generally performed with laparoscopic staplers using a bougie (34-40 Fr) or endoscope in the stomach to guide the sizing of the resection. Finally, the **Roux-en-Y gastric bypass** (Fig. 12.5-14) involves division of the stomach leaving a small gastric pouch and creation of separate alimentary and pancreaticobiliary limbs of intestine that delay the mixing of nutrients and pancreaticobiliary secretions thus limiting absorption. Again the preferred approach is laparoscopic. Perioperative complications associated with obesity must be considered in management of bariatric patients. Increased risk of thromboembolic disease and wound infection warrants prophylaxis. OSA and hypercapnia warrant postop monitoring.

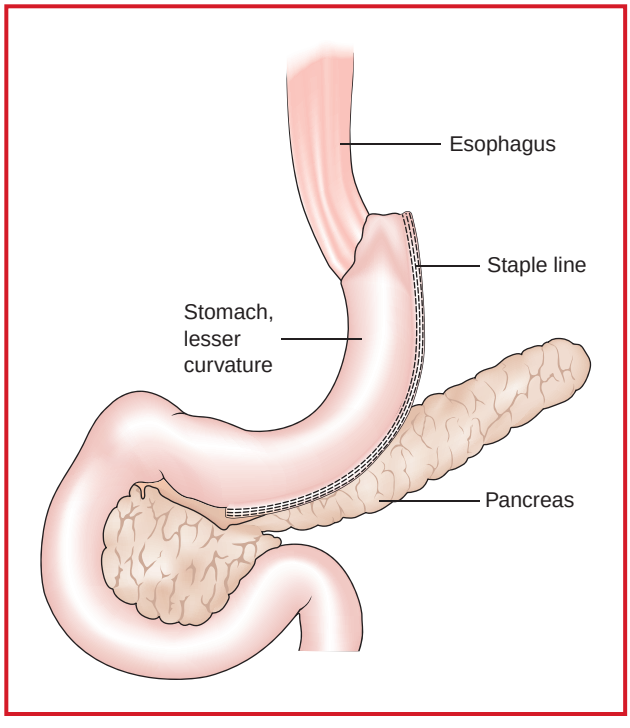


Figure 12.5-13. Sleeve gastrectomy.

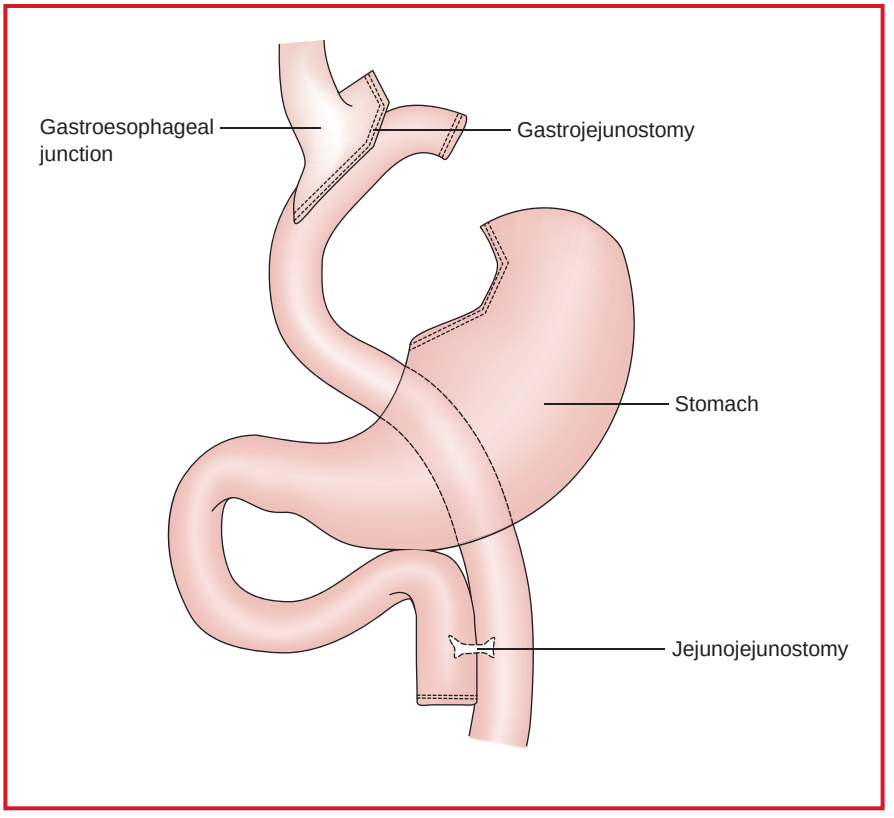


Figure 12.5-14. Roux-en-Y gastric bypass.

Variant procedures or approaches: A number of emerging endoscopic bariatric technologies aim to reduce the morbidity and mortality of existing techniques. Intragastric balloons and duodenal sleeves are promising but investigational at this time.

Usual preop diagnosis: Pediatric obesity (BMI > 50 or BMI > 45 with comorbid conditions). Major comorbidities include OSA, Type II diabetes, pseudotumor cerebri.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Roux-en-Y Gastric Bypass	Sleeve Gastrectomy/Gastric Band
Position	Supine on bariatric OR table with legs separated	<=
Incision	5 laparoscopic ports	4 laparoscopic ports
Special Instrumentation	Long laparoscopic ports	<=
Unique Considerations	DVT prophylaxis	<=
Antibiotics	Cefoxitin 2 g	<=
Surgical Time	2–4 h	1–2 h
EBL	5–50 mL	5–50 mL
Postop Care	Apnea monitoring	<=
	± UGI to eval for leak	
Mortality	<1%	<0.5%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Roux-en-Y Gastric Bypass	Sleeve Gastrectomy/Gastric Band
Morbidity	↓ PaO_2, ↑ $PaCO_2$	<=
	DVT	
	PE	
	Anastomotic leak	
Pain score	5–6	4–5
Age range	Adolescents	
Male:Female	1:1	
Incidence	1:6	
Etiology	Diet and sedentary lifestyle	
Associated conditions	Obstructive sleep apnea, hypertension, diabetes, joint disease, depression	

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Morbid obesity, with a BMI > 40%, is associated with multiple comorbidities, including OSA, HTN, Type II diabetes, fatty liver disease, and in extreme cases, pulmonary hypertension. A multidisciplinary evaluation must be performed prior to scheduling surgery, and a thorough preop evaluation is warranted, including review of medications, associated comorbidities, review of previous anesthetics, airway examination, and discussion of perioperative anesthesia plan. Also include a review of any dieting strategies, especially medications taken for weight loss, as these may result in decreased response to vasopressors intraop. Patients with obesity may present challenges in iv placement, and airway management. Postop pain management starts in the preop period with instruction in use of the incentive spirometer, visual analogue scale, and PCA if appropriate. A bariatric bed must be ordered preop.

Respiratory: Adipose tissue is metabolically active, leading to ↑ O_2 consumption and increased work of breathing. Increased mass of the thoracic wall → ↑ resistance, ↓ compliance, and a restrictive breathing pattern. In addition, ↑ abdominal pressure → atelectasis and ↑ closing volume. Obese patients also frequently suffer from OSA. Adolescent patients may have an increased response to hypoxia and relatively decreased response to hypercapnea. With increasing age, sensitivity to increased levels of CO_2 is diminished, and $PaCO_2$ rises further. These changes predispose the obese patient to hypoventilation, hypoxemia, and hypercarbia. In addition, changes to the airway related to increased adiposity of face and neck may make mask ventilation and intubation difficult. Closely review previous anesthetic records.

Nighttime hypoxemia and hypercarbia are frequently seen in obese patients. A sleep study helps to document severity of apneic episodes. Number and severity of apnea and hypopnea episodes (apnea: > 10 s of no airflow; hypopnea: > 50% reduction of airflow, associated with ↓ O_2 sat > 4%). Symptoms include snoring, daytime sleepiness, headaches, and difficulty concentrating. Treatment is usually a BIPAP mask. Close monitoring is needed in the postop period, as administration of narcotics may exacerbate symptoms, leading to further hypoxemia and hypercarbia.

Tests: CXR, baseline O_2 sat, sleep study, documenting hypoxemia while asleep

Cardiovascular: Because cardiac output rises proportionately with weight, obesity in both children and adults is frequently associated with hypertension and possibly LVH. Even normotensive patients have increased preload and afterload, ↑ PAP, and elevated left and right heart stroke volume. Symptoms of pulmonary HTN (dyspnea on exertion, fatigue, syncope, baseline hypoxemia) should be elicited and ECG obtained in symptomatic patients.

Tests: ECG, ECHO if indicated

Gastrointestinal: Obese patients have higher intraabdominal pressures and may be at increased risk of aspiration. Studies have shown that acidity and volume do not statistically differ from nonobese patients. The presence

of diabetes or gastroparesis increases risk of aspiration. Fatty liver disease may be present, frequently indicated by a rise in ALT. Increased volume of distribution may necessitate higher initial doses of anesthetic induction agents, especially lipid soluble agents such as propofol.

Tests: Chem 23

Renal: Increased RBF and GFR may necessitate increased doses of renally cleared medications.

Premedication: Premedication should be used with caution, as obese patients are at increased risk of hypoventilation and hypoxemia. Midazolam 1–2 mg iv may be given if needed, with constant monitoring. Presurgery medications are continued, with the exception of ACE inhibitors, which are held the night prior to surgery, to minimize risk of intraop hypotension.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Induction	Assuming a reassuring airway examination and history, a rapid sequence induction with preoxygenation and cricoid pressure, followed by propofol 2–2.5 mg/kg (TBW) and succinylcholine 1 mg/kg TBW is the safest way to secure the airway. If history of difficult intubation exits, or examination suggestive of difficult airway, consider awake FOI, using topical anesthesia, midazolam iv, and remifentanil infusion (0.05 to 1 mcg/kg/min) or dexmedetomidine infusion (0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h). Positioning should include the use of a ramp to facilitate neck extension. This allows alignment of laryngeal, pharyngeal, and oral axes and promotes optimal visualization of the airway with laryngoscopy.
Maintenance	Propofol 200 mcg/kg/min combined with low-dose sevoflurane or desflurane; rocuronium for NMB (after recovery of NM function following succinylcholine). Use opioids cautiously, as may lead to increased sedation on awakening. Suggest loading with hydromorphone 10 mcg/kg TBW, followed by remifentanil infusion 0.5–1 mcg/kg/min. Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg iv, and ketorolac 0.5 mg/kg iv may reduce opioid requirement.
Emergence	Extubate awake. NG tube suction prior to extubation. Caution in immediate postop period, as patient may have ↓ ventilatory drive with ↓ responsiveness to hypoxemia and hypercarbia. Cautiously titrate opioids. Postop pain control—PCA may be used, with cautious dosing regimens (e.g., hydromorphone—no basal rate, 1–2 mcg/kg bolus dose). Ketorolac 0.5 mg iv q 6 may be used with caution, after checking renal function. Acetaminophen 10 mg/kg iv q 6 h should be continued postop. Postop monitoring is essential. Supplemental O_2 may be necessary via nasal cannula.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypoxia, hypercarbia, apnea, airway obstruction	Close monitoring, supplemental O_2 if needed, relatively small frequent opioid dosing
	Pain control challenging due to respiratory risk factors	Multimodal analgesia, judicious use of opioids, use of adjuvants, including acetaminophen, ketorolac, lorazepam (see Appendix E)
	Difficult postop ambulation	Assistance with ambulation, including physical, occupational therapy—additional doses of opioid should be utilized around ambulation sessions
	DVT PE	DVT and PE prevention—ambulation, compression stockings while in bed, Lovenox®—discuss with surgical team

Suggested Readings

1. Alqahtani AR, Antonisamy B, Alamri H, Elahmedi M, Zimmerman VA: Laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy in 108 obese children and adolescents aged 5 to 21 years. *Ann Surg* 2012; 256(2):266–73.
2. Hassink S: *Clinical Guide to Pediatric Weight Management and Obesity.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007.

3. Lee DY, Guend H, Park K, et al: Outcomes of laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass versus laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding in adolescents. *Obesity Surg* 2012; 22(12):1859–64.
4. Li Y, Raychowdhury S, Tedders SH, Lyn R, Lòpez-De Fede A, Zhang J: Association between increased BMI and severe school absenteeism among US children and adolescents: findings from a national survey 2005–2008. *Inter Obesity* 2012; 36(4):517–23.
5. Moreno M, Furtner F, Rivara FP: Adolescent bariatric surgery. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2012; 266(8):784.
6. Nijhawan S, Martinez T, Wittgrove AC: Laparoscopic gastric bypass for the adolescent patient: long-term results. *Obesity Surg* 2012; 22(9):1445–9.
7. Ogden CL, Carroll MD, Kit BK, Flegal KM: Prevalence of obesity and trends in body mass index among US children and adolescents, 1999–2010. *JAMA* 2012; 307(5):483–90.
8. Picot J, Jones J, Colquitt JL, et al: The clinical effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of bariatric (weight loss) surgery for obesity: a systematic review and economic evaluation. *Health Technol Assess* 2009; 13(41):1–190, 215–357.
9. Samuels PF: Anesthesia for adolescent bariatric surgery. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2006; 44(1):17–31.
10. Trigueros L, Pena S, Ubidos AF, et al: Food ingredients as anti-obesity agents: a review. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* 2013; 53: 929–42.

CHAPTER

12.6 Pediatric Urology

SURGEONS

Philip Barbosa, MD
Linda M. Dairiki Shortliffe, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Imad M. Yamout, MD
Anita Honkanen, MD

KIDNEY AND UPPER URINARY TRACT OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: With the increase in perinatal ultrasonographic detection of renal masses and hydronephrosis, the number of pediatric kidney and upper urinary tract surgeries has increased significantly in the past two decades. Children come to surgery at an earlier age, leading to a lower incidence of renal dysfunction.

Nephrectomy: Although the main indications for nephrectomy in adults are renal cell carcinoma or benign renal tumors, tumor nephrectomy is uncommon in children (with the exception of Wilms' tumors) and is performed to remove poorly or nonfunctioning kidneys secondary to congenital anomalies such as ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction or end-stage reflux nephropathy. Multicystic dysplastic kidneys (MCDK) were removed in the past, but currently are only removed if they become symptomatic or increase in size as they have a benign course. Unlike adults, who require a more painful intercostal or rib incision because of their general muscular flexibility, excellent renal exposure in children is obtained through a subcostal incision. As in the adult population, laparoscopic nephrectomy and renal surgery are becoming more common.

When a flank/subcostal incision is used, careful positioning of the patient is crucial. Failure to properly stabilize and secure the patient to the OR table can cause devastating consequences; therefore, efforts must be coordinated to properly position the patient. A rolled sheet or gel pad should be positioned beneath the dependent axilla, elevating the thorax to avoid brachial plexus neuropraxia. The dependent lower extremity is flexed at the hip and knee, while the overlying leg is kept straight. Padding is placed between the knees. In older children, in this lateral flank position, the kidney rest at the break of the table may be elevated to increase the distance between the rib and iliac crest, thus increasing exposure of the kidney. Attention is needed by the anesthesiologist during positioning, including care of the ETT, attention to pressure points, application of wide tape to secure patient safely, and repositioning of leads. After the patient is positioned, a transverse incision is made below the 12th rib. The peritoneum is reflected, and surgery remains retroperitoneal; the ureter is dissected to the hilum, and the vessels are ligated. The kidney is excised, and the wound is closed.

The lumbodorsal incision (incision parallel to the paraspinous muscle group) is performed with the patient in the prone or lateral position. This has an advantage of being a muscle-splitting, rather than a muscle-cutting, incision and, as such, is associated with less postoperative pain and fewer incisional hernias. Abdominal padding may be added to raise the lumbodorsal area, and care should be taken to ensure complete pulmonary expansion in this position.

Most often in either the flank or lumbodorsal positioning, a urethral catheter is positioned for dependent drainage with care taken to avoid obstructing the tubing. In this way, the anesthesiologist may measure urinary output, though urinary extravasation may occur within the surgical site depending on the operation.

Usual preop diagnosis: MCDK; Wilms' tumor; nonfunctioning kidney; dysplastic kidney; ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction; partial nephrectomy of in duplicated collecting systems with obstructive ectopic uretere or ureterocele.

Partial nephrectomy: Partial nephrectomies are common in children and are usually performed for a partially or nonfunctioning upper pole of a duplicated system. Ectopic ureters and ureteroceles are frequently the cause of loss of function. Again, these can be approached through either a lumbodorsal or a flank incision. If the upper pole is obstructed but functional, a **pyeloureterostomy** from the upper pole ureter to the pelvis of the lower pole may be performed to salvage as much functioning parenchyma as possible. Partial nephrectomies may be performed for bilateral Wilms' tumor or other renal masses through a chevron or midline incision. An increasing number of partial nephrectomies are performed in a laparoscopic fashion.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nonfunctioning upper pole of a duplex system; ureterocele; ectopic ureter; bilateral Wilms' tumor; angiomyolipoma (more common in patients with tuberous sclerosis)

Nephroureterectomy: Nephroureterectomy often is performed for the upper pole of a duplex system that is obstructed due to an ureterocele or ectopic ureter. After the nephrectomy/partial nephrectomy is performed through a dorsal lumbotomy or flank approach, the ureter is dissected as low as possible (usually to the level of the iliac vessels). The ureteral stump is left open if there is no vesicoureteral reflux and tied off if there is reflux. If indicated, distal ureterectomy can be performed via a second lower abdominal incision (typically a Pfannenstiel incision). If the initial incision was done in the prone position, the patient may need to be repositioned supine.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nonfunctioning upper pole of a duplex system; ureterocele; ectopic ureter

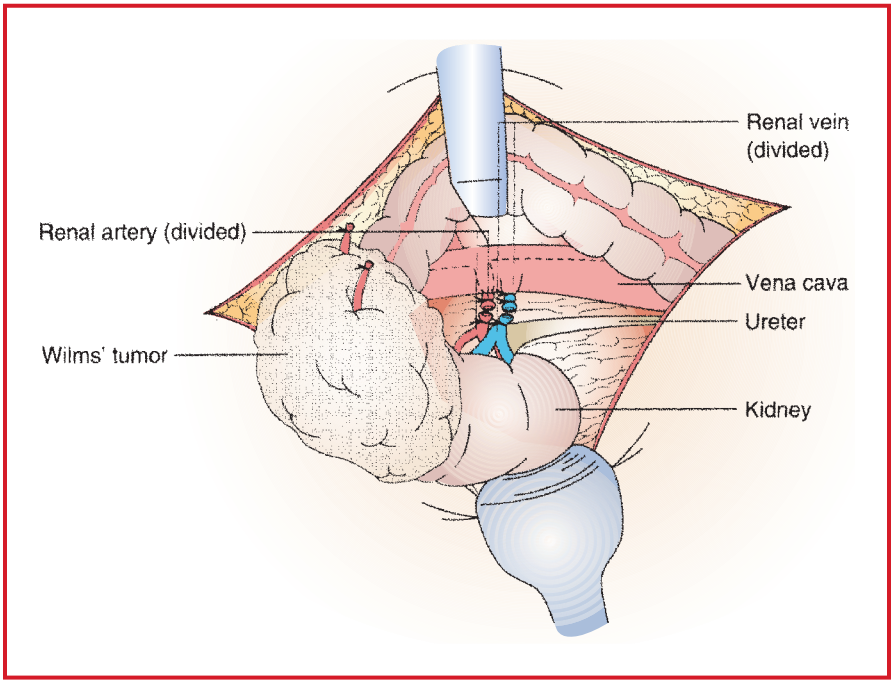


Figure 12.6-1. Anatomy for nephrectomy. (Reproduced with permission from Greenfield LJ, Mulholland MW, Oldham KT, et al: *Surgery: Scientific Principles and Practice*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Pyeloplasty: Fetal hydronephrosis is detected in approximately 1 in every 300 pregnancies. Pyeloplasty to correct congenital obstruction of the ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) is therefore one of the most common pediatric upper urinary tract surgical procedures. The hydronephrotic kidney usually is exposed through either a dorsal lumbotomy or a subcostal flank incision. The patient may be in a prone or modified lateral decubitus position (see details related to subcostal or lumbodorsal incision above). In most instances, the operation is performed entirely retroperitoneally with exposure of the upper ureter and renal pelvis. The abnormal UPJ is excised, followed by an end-to-end anastomosis (**dismembered pyeloplasty** or **Anderson-Hynes pyeloplasty**). If the renal pelvis is intrarenal and dependent drainage is not possible via a conventional pyeloplasty, an **ureterocalicostomy** may be performed by removing an area of thin renal parenchyma and anastomosing the ureter to a lower pole calyx. At the conclusion of the procedure, a perirenal Penrose drain typically is placed near the anastomosis, and, depending on surgeon preference, a ureteral stent or nephrostomy tube may be used. A urethral catheter may or may not be left after the procedure. Recently, more of these procedures have been performed robotically or laparoscopically. A major difference between these approaches is that a robotic approach requires a intraperitoneal approach, while laparoscopic or open approaches are usually extra or retroperitoneal.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fetal hydronephrosis 2° UPJ obstruction; hydronephrosis with a decrease in kidney function and/or flank pain

Transureteroureterostomy (TUU): This procedure, in which a ureter is anastomosed to the contralateral ureter, is used when there is problematic drainage of the distal ureter into the bladder. It is sometimes required to salvage a failed reimplantation or to transform a conduit-type diversion to an orthotopic neobladder or augmented native bladder. This technique can also be used to provide drainage in ureteral trauma. A midline or Pfannenstiel incision is used, and the peritoneum is entered. The ureters are dissected, and the affected ureter is retroperitonealized and brought to the contralateral side anterior to the great vessels. It is anastomosed to the contralateral ureter end-to-side with absorbable suture. If required, the recipient ureter is then reimplanted into the neobladder or augmented bladder.

In routine open surgery of the kidney and renal pelvis, use of intraoperative local anesthesia (infiltration of local anesthetic in the surgical incision) and higher dosage of nonoploid pain medications (acetaminophen) appear to decrease pain intensity during the first postoperative day. Continuous epidural or caudal catheters can be effective for postoperative pain management but may result in urinary retention.

Usual preop diagnosis: Failed ureteral reimplant; undiversion; distal ureteral trauma

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Nephrectomy/Pyeloplasty	Nephroureterectomy	TUU
Position	Flank/prone	Supine/flank	Supine
Incision	Dorsal lumbotomy; subcostal; flank; midline	Subcostal flank 2nd incision: Pfannenstiel	Midline or Pfannenstiel
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 1.7 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	2.5 h	3 h (repositioning may be required)	⇐
EBL	Minimal; if partial nephrectomy, 300 mL	Minimal	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Bleeding: < 5% Infection: < 5% Ileus: < 5%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Urinary fistula : < 5%
Pain score	Flank: 10 Lumbotomy: 5	10	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

	Ureteroceles	MCDK*	UPJ Obstruction	Wilms' Tumor
Age range	Pediatric	Neonates	Neonates, children	Children (average, 4 yr)
Male:Female	1:4	⇐	M > F	M < F in the United States
Incidence	1:2000	⇐	1:500 birth	1:100,000
Etiology	Congenital	⇐	⇐	Genetic: WT1 gene
Associated conditions	UPJ; VUR; duplicated collecting system	⇐	VUR**; renal insufficiency	Hemihypertrophy, aniridia, HTN, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome

*MCDK = multicystic dysplastic kidney
**VUR = vesicoureteral reflux

Suggested Readings

1. Kelalis PP, Maizels M, Das S, et al: Kidney reconstruction. In: Hinman F Jr, ed. *Atlas of Pediatric Urologic Surgery.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1994, 112–17, 123–43.
2. Marshall FF, Massad C, Hensle TW, et al: Kidney excision. In: Hinman F Jr, ed. *Atlas of Pediatric Urologic Surgery.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1994, 155–88.
3. Richey ML: Pediatric urologic oncology. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology,* Vol 3, 4th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 2002, 2623–46.
4. Ritchy ML: Pediatric urologic oncology. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Vaughn ED, et al, eds. *Campbell's Urology,* 8th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2002, 2649–94.
5. Shaffer BS: Pearls and perils of patient positioning. *AUA Update Series* 1995; 14:178–83.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In infants and children, most upper urinary tract surgical procedures are performed to preserve or restore renal function. Patients may present with renal function that varies from minimally abnormal, requiring little or no modification of anesthetic plan, to end-stage renal disease (ESRD) with its associated abnormalities, including hypoproteinemia, chronic anemia, and serum electrolyte disturbances. A careful preop workup is required to determine the presence or absence of abnormal physiologic factors that will affect anesthesia management. For most cases, the workup will have been performed by the patient's physicians before surgery and will provide the rationale for the surgical procedure. Such nonspecific findings as anorexia, headache, nausea, fatigue, alterations in urine output, and the presence of edema will alert the clinician to the likelihood of renal failure.

Renal abnormalities often are present as one component of a congenital malformation syndrome (e.g., polycystic kidneys, cerebrohepatorenal syndrome). In formulating the anesthetic plan, drugs eliminated by the kidney (e.g., pancuronium, meperidine) should be avoided.

Respiratory	An evaluation of pulmonary function, including auscultation of the lungs, may indicate the presence of pulmonary edema (uremic lung) or a pleural effusion. **Tests:** ABG; CXR; pulse oximetry
Cardiovascular	HTN is commonly seen in these patients, who may be taking antihypertensive medications and diuretics. In severe cases, CHF or pulmonary edema may be present, necessitating the use of cardioactive drugs and diuretics to optimize the patient's clinical condition before surgery. **Tests:** ABG; CXR; digitalis level; electrolytes
Renal	In cases requiring unilateral urinary tract surgery, the opposite kidney is usually normal. In the presence of renal insufficiency, a detailed evaluation of renal function is essential. Chronic metabolic acidosis may be present 2° poor kidney function, electrolyte abnormalities (↑ K+, ↓ Ca^{++}, ↑ or ↓ Na), hypovolemia, hypervolemia, and/or poor tissue perfusion. Children with ESRD will have been dialyzed before surgery. Preop K^+ < 6 mEq/L is usually safe. These patients may have an AV fistula, which must be protected during surgery (padded, no BP cuff). More commonly, a double-lumen central venous catheter will have been placed for hemodialysis (e.g., permacath). **Tests:** UA; UO; serum electrolytes; BUN; Cr; total protein; A/G ratio; ABG
Gastrointestinal	Renal failure is associated with increased incidence of delayed gastric emptying and gastroesophageal reflux. Modified rapid sequence induction should be considered.
Hematologic	Anemia, bone marrow depression, and coagulopathies are common in patients with poor renal function, particularly platelet dysfunction. An Hct of 20–23% is not uncommon. **Tests:** Hb/Hct, PT/PTT; Plt count
Medications	Patients with ESRD will be taking many medications, which may influence the anesthetic plan. For example, chronic steroid therapy → Cushing facies, glycosuria; therefore, ✓ blood sugar and ✓ airway. Patients taking digitalis or diuretics → ↓ K^+ → arrhythmias. Aminoglycosides → prolongation of neuromuscular blockade. If possible, avoid renal toxic drugs in patients with renal insufficiency (e.g., NSAIDs, aminoglycosides).
Premedication	Standard preop medication if renal function is normal (see p. D-1). Patients with ESRD may have increased sensitivity to sedatives; doses should be titrated carefully to effect.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA ± epidural. (Platelet dysfunction should be assumed in ESRD and the risk/benefit of epidural placement carefully weighed.) Warm OR to 70–75°F; use warming pad on OR table and/or forced-air warming.

Induction	Mask induction is preferable, unless iv is already in place. If an indwelling permacath is to be accessed, heparin should be aspirated from the lumen before use. Routine use of dialysis catheters is discouraged due to need for strict sterile technique in handling of the catheter to avoid line infection. Succinylcholine should not be used in renal failure patients due to risk of K^+ release in borderline hyperkalemic patients. In the presence of renal insufficiency, antibiotics (e.g., aminoglycosides) may interfere with the metabolism of muscle relaxants and prolong their effect and may further compromise renal function. Tracheal intubation, facilitated by an NMR (e.g., rocuronium 0.6–1 mg/kg or cisatracurium 0.2–0.3 mg/kg) is appropriate in patients with renal insufficiency. In appropriate patients (normal coags and no platelet dysfunction), epidural anesthesia with bupivacaine (see p. E-6) may reduce anesthetic requirements and provide postop analgesia (**NB:** local anesthetic clearance may be impaired in ESRD). Maintain muscle relaxation with rocuronium or cisatracurium.
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3). Moderate hyperventilation may be beneficial (→ ↓ K^+ + ↑ pH).

Emergence	Reverse neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine and glycopyrrolate or atropine (see p. D-3).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV × 1 in upper extremities NS @ (maintenance): 4 mL/kg/h (1–10 kg) + 2 mL/kg/h (11–20 kg) + 1 mL/kg/h (> 20 kg)	Usually minimal blood loss; however, renal surgery may be associated with ↑ blood loss. Transfuse with whole blood or PRBCs as needed to maintain an adequate Hct, based on physiologic response (usually 25–30%). If K+ is high and patient has ESRD use freshest PRBC or washed PRBC to minimize the K+ load. Minimal iv flush should be administered in the presence of oliguric renal insufficiency. Fluids in excess can lead to pulmonary edema especially in an aneuric patient. Avoid K+ containing crystalloid infusions.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Arterial line	Consider placing an arterial line in patients with significant renal failure particularly for those patients with poorly controlled HTN as they may exhibit marked hypotension or BP variability after induction; ✓ serum electrolytes and ABG frequently.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	✓ eyes frequently if prone or flank positions are used.
Complications	Peripheral nerve injury Eye trauma Hemorrhage Dysrhythmia Indigo carmine administration may lead to ↑ BP, ↓ HR, ↓ BP, bronchospasm	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypovolemia Anemia Hypothermia Electrolyte abnormalities Coagulopathy Metabolic/respiratory acidosis	
Pain management	Acetaminophen (see p. E-4). Narcotics by epidural catheter (see p. E-6) or PCA (see p. E-4)	In renal failure, reduce analgesic doses by 50% to minimize cumulative effects. Note: morphine-6-glucuronide is renally excreted and accumulates in patients with renal failure. It leads to increased analgesia. Morphine-3-glucuronide is antanalgesic and likewise increases in patients with ESRD. It is therefore preferred to use hydromorphone. For patients without renal failure, epidural or caudal catheters can be effective for postoperative pain management but may result in urinary retention. Peripheral nerve blockade (e.g., transversus abdominus block, TAP), ilioinguinal, and iliohypogastric blocks avoid this issue. Single-shot caudal may also be used for minor procedures. (See discussion in surgical section on page 1366.)
Tests	As indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Change KSK, Zhong MZ, Davis RF: Indigo carmine inhibits endothelium dependent and independent vasodilatation. *HTN* 1996; 27:228–34.
2. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracis, urologic and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 745–86.
3. Hobai IA: Atrioventricular block induced by indigo carmine. *Can J Anesth* 2008; 55(10):717–8.
4. Landsman IS, Ziegler LN, Deshpande JK: Anesthesia for pediatric urologic procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 740–57.
5. Lee WJ, Jang HS: Cardiac arrest from intravenous indigo carmine during laparoscopic surgery. A case report. *Korean J Anesthesiol* 2012; 62(1):87–90.
6. Nguyen AC, Kost E, Farmstad M: Indigo carmine-induced severe hypotension. *Anesth Analg* 1998; 27(5):1194–5.

TRANSURETHRAL PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Transurethral procedures are not as common in children as they are in adults; however, the instrumentation, general principles, and considerations are similar. The most common pediatric endoscopic procedures are **cystoscopy** and **vaginoscopy**, primarily as diagnostic procedures; **removal of foreign bodies** (FBs) including indwelling ureteral stents; **transurethral incision of urethral stricture**, for congenital lesions or complications of urethral surgery; **transurethral incision of posterior urethral valves** (PUV); **transurethral incision of ureterocele**; **subureteric injection for vesicoureteral reflux**; and **endoscopic injection for urinary incontinence**.

The positioning and techniques are identical to those in the adult. Careful attention to positioning is required when the pediatric patient is placed in the lithotomy position. For smaller children, this involves the frog leg position at the distal end of the bed rather than the stirrups. The patient can remain supine if a flexible cystoscope is used. The most frequent neurological complication from lithotomy position may be injury to the common peroneal nerve → foot drop and sensory deficit. After the patient is positioned, a lubricated cystoscope or resectoscope (7–18 Fr) is introduced through the urethra. In infants, posterior urethral valves may be resected using a small cutting electrode or a laser, whereas a resectoscope is used in older children. With the advent of prenatal ultrasonography, posterior urethral valves (hydronephrosis and azotemia) often are resected in the neonatal period.

Foreign bodies or stones are removed using forceps, after crushing or pulverization with a laser, if necessary. Eye protection should be worn by all operating room staff if a laser is used. Occasionally, ureteral stents are placed/removed (after renal transplants, for instance) and an intraoperative retrograde pyelogram is performed to evaluate the upper tract collection system. During cystoscopy, localization of the ureteral orifices may be difficult due to inflammation, prior bladder surgery, or congenital ectopia. The anesthesiologist may be asked to administer iv indigo carmine, which will filter through the kidneys and produce blue urine to assist with locating the ureteral orifices. This has potential effects of ↑ BP by increasing afterload and causing reflex bradycardia.

Because most endoscopic procedures are short and the prostate and large resections are not involved, fluid absorption toxicity is rare, as opposed to that seen during "TURP syndrome." The operative team, however, must still be aware of the metabolic consequences of fluid reabsorption, as this can also occur through catastrophic ureteral or bladder perforation during endoscopic procedures in addition to the routine water reabsorption through venous channels. If a long-term indwelling uretheral catheter was present before surgery, adequate antibiotic treatment and culture is imperative as the urine must be considered infected.

For pain control aside from opioids in the immediate postoperative period, lidocaine gel may be injected transurethrally at the completion of the transurethral procedure to avoid postoperative urethral irritation. Some surgeons administer phenazopyridine (Pyridium) via nasogastric tube to decrease catheter irritation. Finally, if a catheter is left, an antimuscarinic may be given to decrease bladder spasms (Ditropan).

Usual preop diagnosis: Intravesical foreign body; bladder calculus; bladder outlet obstruction; urethral stricture; ureterocele; hematuria; urethral/vaginal mass; posterior urethral valves, urogenital sinus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lithotomy
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Cystoscope, resectoscope, catheters, stents, video camera unit, laser (optional)
Unique considerations	Use of cautery, fluoroscopy, PUV (prematurity or azotemia), and possible fluid reabsorption. Children with an obstructing ureterocele and pyelonephrosis may be at risk for urosepsis and should have close hemodynamic monitoring
Antibiotics	If infected urine preop, gentamicin 1.7 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	Cystoscopy: 10 min Transurethral procedure: 1 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	PACU; basic catheter management, with oral Pyridium in the PACU for bladder analgesia
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Bleeding Urethral stricture Infection Overdistention in augmented bladder
Pain score	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	0–18 yr
Male:Female	Posterior urethral valves, strictures: male only Ureterocele 1:6 Vesicoureteral reflux 1:4
Incidence	1/1000–1/5000
Etiology	Posterior urethral valves; vesicoureteral reflux; intravesical FB; bladder calculus; bladder outlet obstruction; urethral stricture; ureterocele
Associated conditions	Spina bifida; paraplegia/quadriplegia; repeat cystoscopies; strictures; bladder stones; latex allergy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures, Open Bladder Procedures, Penile Surgery, Genital Procedures, p. 1372.

Suggested Readings

1. Strand WR, Bloom DA: Pediatric endourology. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology,* Vol 3, 4th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 2002, 2719–28.
2. Warner MA: Lower extremity neuropathies associated with lithotomy positions. *Anesthesiology* 2000; 93:938–42.

OPEN BLADDER OPERATIONS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Open bladder operations commonly performed on children include **ureteral reimplantation** for correction of vesicoureteral reflux, obstructive megaureters, or ureterocele; **vesicostomy (Blocksom);** and **bladder neck operations.**

Ureteral reimplantation: Vesicoureteral reflux (VUR) is one of the most common abnormalities of the urinary tract in children and is present in about 25–50% of those who have UTI. Although VUR resolves spontaneously in many children, there are a number of indications for correction of VUR. These include high-grade VUR, progressive VUR and renal scarring, failure to resolve within several years, other bladder surgery, breakthrough UTIs, and poor medical compliance.

Ureteral reimplantations can be performed using different approaches to the bladder (e.g., extravesical, intravesical, or a combined approach); however, these different approaches require a similar exposure and abdominal incision. In general, these are extraperitoneal rather than intraperitoneal operations. Initially, cystoscopy may be performed to plan a potentially complex reimplantation (e.g., duplex systems, ectopia, or periureteral diverticula). A lower abdominal suprapubic (Pfannenstiel) incision (Fig. 12.6-2) is usually made, the fascia is opened (may either be muscle cutting or splitting incision; in the latter, the fascia may be opened in the vertical midline), and the bladder is exposed. Sufficient muscle relaxation is required to enable the surgeon to place a self-retaining retractor to expose the bladder. The anesthesiologist also may be asked to limit N_2O to decrease the amount of peritoneal contents bulging toward the bladder surgical field. The bladder is then opened (intravesical approach), and the ureter(s) is (are) reimplanted. Alternatively, the bladder is mobilized to expose the posterolateral ureter, which is then reimplanted (extravesical approach). When required, ureteral stents are brought to the abdominal skin through the bladder wall. A Penrose drain may be left in place, which is either brought through the incision or through a separate skin puncture.

Obstructive megaureters and ureteroceles are other conditions that may require ureteral reimplantation. The abdominal exposure and indications do not differ significantly from ureteral reimplantation for VUR; however,

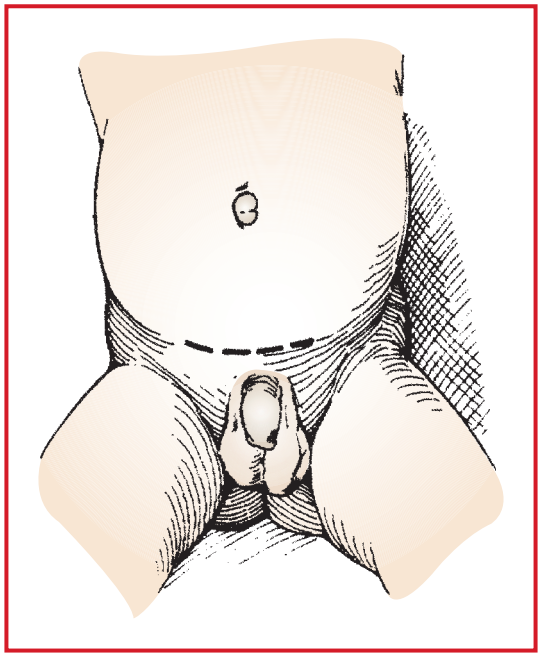


Figure 12.6-2. A Pfannenstiel's incision in Langer's lines is a low transverse incision that provides good access to the bladder and other pelvic organs and good cosmesis. (Reproduced with permission from Hinman F: *Atlas of Pediatric Urologic Surgery*, 2nd edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1994.)

tailoring of the ureter by reducing its caliber and excising redundant tissue or plicating it may be necessary. A procedure on the bladder neck also may be required if an ureterocele extends distally through the bladder outlet.

Regional anesthesia techniques—specifically caudal or epidural analgesia—have gained popularity for these procedures. They have been shown to decrease postoperative pain medication requirements. However, as the patient usually leaves the hospital within 48 h, long-term epidural or caudal anesthesia is usually not required. As there may be increased risk of urinary retention following neuraxial anesthesia, it is often easier to leave a urethral catheter in place postoperatively. The diagnosis of urinary retention may be difficult to make following bladder surgery, and catheterization trauma may occur. An indwelling catheter may also cause increased discomfort from bladder spasms and irritation. Intravesical lidocaine gel may alleviate some bladder irritation. Without a catheter, children usually void spontaneously within 6–9 h after surgery. For these reasons, the surgeon's preference on whether an indwelling urethral or urethral catheter is planned at the conclusion of the procedure should be elicited at the beginning of the case and considered in the selection of a regional block.

Usual preop diagnosis: VUR; obstructive megaureter; ureterocele

Vesicostomy: Infants and very young children may require bladder drainage until definitive bladder or urethral surgery. A vesicostomy may be performed, allowing the urine to flow continuously from a small, lower abdominal vesicocutaneous fistula. A 2-cm transverse incision is made halfway between the umbilicus and the pubis, and the bladder is dissected extraperitoneally to expose the dome. The bladder is opened at the dome (urachus) and is anastomosed to abdominal skin with absorbable sutures, creating a small fistula.

Usual preop diagnosis: Posterior or anterior urethral valves; severe VUR; neurovesical dysfunction; prune belly syndrome

Bladder neck operations: These procedures usually are required in patients with severe anomalies, such as exstrophy, or severe incontinence due to an incompetent bladder neck. These are more complex procedures, with dissection often difficult. The approach to the bladder is similar to that of ureteral reimplantation, using a lower abdominal (Pfannenstiel) incision (Fig. 12.6-2). The space of Retzius is dissected bluntly and the anterior bladder wall and pubic bone are exposed. The bladder is opened and the bladder neck dissected and reconstructed. Various techniques to tubularize the anterior bladder wall, elongate the urethra, and increase the outlet resistance have been described. Bilateral ureteral reimplantation and bladder neck suspension can be performed at the same time. One special consideration is latex allergy (see Appendix G).

Usual preop diagnosis: Exstrophy/epispadias complex; spina bifida; neurogenic bladder; incontinence; bladder-neck reconstruction

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Reimplantation	Vesicostomy	Bladder Neck
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Pfannenstiel or low midline extraperitoneal	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	None	⇐	Latex allergy (see p. G-1)
Antibiotics	None unless indicated	⇐	Gentamicin 1.7 mg/kg iv, slowly
Surgical time	1.5 h	45 min	2 h
EBL	Minimal	→	200 mL
Postop care	PACU; ± urethral catheter ± stents. Anticholenergics for bladder spasms; belladonna and opioid suppositories, if given, must be monitored because of the potential of oversedation and respiratory depression. Older children may benefit from epidural anesthesia.	PACU	Urethral catheter 4–7 d; PACU → ward

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Reimplantation	Vesicostomy	Bladder Neck
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: < 3% Bleeding: < 3% Urinary retention: Unilateral: < 5% Bilateral: 8–10% Ureteral obstruction Persistent reflux	⇐ ⇐ – 	⇐ < 5% Urinary retention ⇐
Pain score	7	4	7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	1 mo–teenage	⇐	⇐
Male:Female	1:4	1:1	⇐
Incidence	1%	⇐	⇐
Etiology	Unknown	Congenital	⇐
Associated conditions	UTI; renal failure	⇐	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures, Open Bladder Procedures, Penile Surgery, Genital Procedures, p. 1372.

Suggested Readings

1. Canning DA, Koo HP, Duckett JW: Anomalies of the bladder and cloaca. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology*, Vol 3, 3rd edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1996, 2445–88.
2. Dixon Walker R: Vesicoureteral reflux and urinary tract infection in children. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology*, Vol 3, 3rd edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1996, 2459–95.
3. King LR: Vesicoureteral reflux, megaureter, and ureteral reimplantation. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Stamey TA, et al, eds. *Campbell's Urology*, Vol 2, 6th edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1992, 1689–1742.
4. Merguerian PA, Sulters PA, Tang E, Kaji D, Hang B: Efficacy of continuous epidural analgesia versus single dose caudal analgesia in children after intravesical ureteroneocystostomy. *Urol* 2004; 172(4pt2):1621–5.
5. Smith GHH, Duckett JW: Urethral lesions in infants and children. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology*, Vol 3, 3rd edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1996, 2411–43.
6. Wilton NT: Postoperative pain management for pediatric urologic surgery. *Urologic Clin North Am* 1995; 22(1):189–201.

BLADDER AUGMENTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: A variety of pathologies may be associated with neurogenic bladder, including spina bifida, cerebral palsy, and spinal cord injury. Failure of bladder storage and/or compliance may cause urinary incontinence or high voiding pressures leading to upper tract deterioration. In such cases, and in cases where infectious or fibrotic processes have caused a reduction in bladder capacity, the patient may be a candidate for **bladder augmentation** with native intestine, colon, stomach, or ureter (in the case of significantly dilated upper tracts). A **continent catheterizable stoma** may be performed at the same time due to the frequent need for catheterization subsequent to the

procedure. Patients with limited mobility who require urethral catheterization can also opt for the placement of a continent catheterizable stoma using appendix or ileum. This may be done as a separate procedure with or without augmentation. These patients have often had many operations, and the operative team needs to consider possible latex sensitivity (see Appendix G).

In some cases for treatment of urinary incontinence, bladder augmentation and stoma formation is combined with closure of the bladder neck or insertion of an **artificial urethral sphincter.**

Patients with neurogenic bowel may become dehydrated more easily during bowel preparation prior to surgery. Although traditionally mechanical and antibiotic bowel preparation for 1–2 d prior to surgery was recommended, growing evidence in the general surgery literature suggests that bowel preparation does not reduce wound infections and anastomotic leaks and may actually increase ileus rates. Anesthesiologists should be aware of the length and extent of preop bowel preparation in case the patient has became dehydrated or suffered electrolyte imbalance due to this process. Special consideration should be made for patients who have ventriculoperitoneal (VP) shunts; typically care is made to sequester the shunt in sterile fashion, keeping it away from any spillage from bowel segments.

Bladder augmentation: Bladder augmentation is usually performed on children with a small capacity bladder, resulting from congenital abnormalities or fibrosis with resulting poor compliance. Cystoscopy may or may not be performed in association. The patient is usually in supine position and the operation may be performed through a lower midline or Pfannenstiel incision. The bowel and bladder are mobilized, with wide intraperitoneal exposure so that consideration to insensible loss may be large in small children. The relevant bowel segment is harvested, and the remaining native bowel is reanastomosed across the defect in the standard stapled or hand-sewn fashion. The "patch" of bowel segment is then sewn on to the bladder using running absorbable suture to minimize risk of subsequent nidus for bladder calculi. At the end of the procedure, a suprapubic tube is placed to decompress the bladder and allow irrigation of mucus produced by the bowel segments. Postoperatively, nasogastric decompression is maintained until return of bowel function, and perioperative antibiotics are usually continued for a minimum of 3 d.

Bladder perforation: With larger numbers of patients undergoing bladder augmentation, perforation is not uncommon. Extraperitoneal bladder perforation of a normal bladder may sometimes be managed with drainage alone, perforation of an augmented bladder is almost always managed operatively because the perforation is intraperitoneal and usually involves bacteriuria.

Usual preop diagnosis: Spinal cord injury, spina bifida, exstrophy, cerebral palsy; urinary incontinence; bladder tuberculosis, schistosomiasis, interstitial cystitis.

Continent catheterizable stoma (Mitrofanoff appendicovesicostomy or Monti tube): In the case of a child who needs lifetime catheterization, a continent catheterizable abdominal stoma is often preferred due to its greater ease of catheterization, particularly for children with motor impairment. Use of the appendix as a flap-valve conduit between the bladder and the abdominal wall was first described by Mitrofanoff in 1980. Operative setup is similar to that of a bladder augmentation. After amputation of the appendix, its base is brought through the abdominal wall to form a stoma at the umbilicus. The tip of the appendix is amputated to create a tube, and a small submucosal trough is made in the posterolateral bladder and an indwelling catheter is placed in the channel to maintain patency immediately postoperatively. Other continent stomas that can be catheterized may be constructed from short segments of bowel.

Usual preop diagnosis: Spina bifida, spinal cord injury, or cerebral palsy with neurogenic bladder; urinary retention or urinary incontinence, limited mobility.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Bladder Augmentation	Continent Catheterizable Stoma
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Lower midline incision	⇐
Special instrumentation	Catheter in bladder/suprapubic tube, NG tube	Catheter in bladder/suprapubic tube, NG tube, catheter in stoma
Unique considerations	Spina bifida pts may have latex allergy	Pts with chronic catheterization may have infected urine; treat with preop antibacterial irrigation and culture-specific antibiotics

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Bladder Augmentation	Continent Catheterizable Stoma
Antibiotics	Broad-spectrum antibiotics (e.g., 3rd-generation cephalosporin)	⇐
Surgical time	3.5 h	4.5 h (with augmentation) or 1.5 h (without augmentation)
EBL	100 cc	⇐
Postop care	PACU – > ward	⇐
Mortality	<1%	⇐
Morbidity	Electrolyte abnormalities, growth retardation (>50%) Bladder calculi (10–50%) Rupture of augmented bladder (5–10%) Small bowel obstruction (3%) Bladder cancer (1%)	Stomal stenosis (30–40%)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures, Open Bladder Procedures, Penile Surgery, Genital Procedures (p. 1372).

Suggested Readings

1. Adams MC, Joseph DB: Urinary tract reconstruction in children. In: Wein A, Kavoussi L, Novick AC, et al, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*, Vol 4, 10th edition. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia: 2012, 3457–502.
2. Camey M, Thuroff J, Reddy P, et al: Principles of bladder substitution. In: Hinman F Jr ed. *Atlas of Urologic Surgery*, 2nd edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1992, 768–82.
3. Gilbert SM, Hensle TW: Metabolic consequences and long-term complications of enterocystoplasty in children: a review. *J Urol* 2005; 173(4):1080–6.

PENILE SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pediatric penile operations usually correct congenital urethral abnormalities or involve circumcision. The most common surgical operation performed in the United States, **circumcision,** consists of the excision of the preputial skin to expose the glans. It can be performed for religious, ethnic, social, or medical reasons (e.g., phimosis or recurrent balanitis).

Circumcision: Freehand circumcision involves excising preputial skin using two incisions to remove a sleeve of penile skin to fully expose the glans. At times, various clamps (Gomco, Mogen, etc.) can be used to circumcise in the newborn period. Most circumcisions performed in the operating room on older children or those with penile skin anomalies will be freehand excisions of the foreskin. Newer considerations regarding analgesia even in the neonate recommend a penile block for this procedure. In older children being circumcised, both caudal and penile block can offer similar duration of anesthesia (4–8 h), but school-age children may, however, be bothered more by leg numbness and inability to void from the caudal block.

Usual preop diagnosis: Phimosis, balanitis, family preference for circumcision

Hypospadias is the abnormal opening of the urethral meatus resulting from incomplete development of the urethra. The defect can be located anywhere from the corona of the glans to the perineum. Accordingly, surgical correction can require

limited reconstruction as in the **meatal advancement glanuloplasty (MAGPI)** procedure or extensive dissection and reconstruction requiring 3–4 h of surgery. Although most pediatric urologists perform one-stage reconstruction for the majority of hypospadias, some more extensive cases may require a two-staged repair. An artificial erection is obtained by infusion of normal saline into the corpora to judge need for and adequacy of repair. This may cause significant fluid absorption in a small child.

The surgeon may choose not to use a urethral catheter in distal hypospadias repairs and some midshaft repairs. In such cases, caudal anesthesia should be avoided due to risk of urinary retention and risks of surgical complications relating to need for postoperative catheterization. A **penile nerve block** may be helpful in such cases with care given to avoiding a penile hematoma or disrupting penile anatomy or blood flow to the dorsal penis. Should a penile nerve block be performed, it is imperative that the surgeon ensure that no pharmacologic sympathomimetic agents such as epinephrine or ephedrine be included as this may cause penile glanular necrosis. In all cases, postoperative urethral instrumentation should be avoided because catheterization of the newly formed urethra could cause disruption of the repair. Catheters, when placed, are usually secured by stitching to the glans penis. Often at the conclusion of the surgery, the surgeon may require an additional 3–5 min of anesthesia to properly apply dressings to protect the hypospadias repair.

In reoperative cases for repair of fistulae or other complications, bladder or buccal mucosa may be needed to create a new urethra. Use of buccal mucosa is popular but may require access to the patient's mouth and inner buccal area.

Usual preop diagnosis: Hypospadias ± chordee; fistula repair; epispadias repair; penile torsion; concealed penis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Circumcision	Hypospadias
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Circumferential penile	⇐ + ventral penis
Special instrumentation	None	Optical magnification, microscope
Unique considerations	1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine for better hemostasis.	Tourniquet; injectable NS for artificial erection; 1% lidocaine. If a catheter is placed, liberal iv fluids may be given.
Antibiotics	None	⇐
Surgical time	30 min	1.5–4 h
EBL	Minimal	< 50 mL
Postop care	Outpatient	Outpatient or ward ± urethral catheter
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: 2% Hematoma: 2%	⇐ ⇐ Urethrocutaneous fistula (5–20%), urethral stricture, urethral diverticulum.
Pain score	2	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Neonates–children	> 4 mo
Incidence	61%	1:300
Etiology	Acquired	Congenital
Associated conditions	Infection	Cryptorchidism; inguinal hernia; bifid scrotum

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Procedures, Open Bladder Procedures, Penile Surgery, Genital Procedures (p. 1372).

Suggested Readings

1. Efe E, Resim S, Bulut BB, et al: Successful treatment with enoxaparin of glans inschemia due to local anesthesal after circumcision. *Pediatrics* 2013;13(2):e608–11.
2. Snodgrass W, Baskin LS: Abnormalities of the genitalia in boys and their surgical management. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology*, Vol III, 4th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 2002, 2509–32.
3. Weksler N, Atias I, Klein M, et al: Is penile block better than caudal epidural block for post-circumcision analgesia? *J Anesth* 2005; 19(1):36–9.
4. Wilton NT: Postoperative pain management for pediatric urologic surgery. *Urologic Clin North Am* 1995; 22(1):189–201.

GENITAL PROCEDURES (CLITOROPLASTY, VAGINOPLASTY, URETHROPLASTY)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Masses of the introitus include urethral prolapse, prolapsed ectopic ureterocele, and rhabdomyosarcoma. Genitoplasty usually is performed in female patients with abnormal genitalia, for example, ambiguous genitalia resulting from abnormal steroidogenesis (congenital adrenal hyperplasia [CAH], danazol exposure) and urogenital sinus or cloacal anomalies.

Urethral prolapse repair: With the patient in a lithotomy position, a simple circumferential incision is made at the junction between the prolapsed mucosa and the urethral meatus. The prolapsed tissue is excised, and anastomosis is performed with absorbable suture. Introital rhabdomyosarcoma often requires open or transurethral biopsy of the mass and is usually treated with chemotherapy.

Vaginoplasty/clitoroplasty: These procedures are performed in patients with ambiguous genitalia and are usually associated with hormonal imbalance (CAH). In the past, this surgery was performed urgently in neonates for gender assignment reasons, but current belief is that there is little reason for this and repair can be delayed until later or puberty. The initial procedure usually requires reduction of the enlarged clitoris and reconstruction of the labioscrotal folds. With the patient in a lithotomy position, skin incisions are made to allow partial resection of the corporal bodies and glans with nerve sparing. Periclitoral skin flaps are used to reconstruct the clitoris and labial folds. Vaginoplasty is performed through a perineal approach by creating an urethrovaginal septum. The vagina usually can be pulled into its normal position between the urethra and rectum and anastomosed to perineal skin flaps using absorbable sutures. Vaginoplasty can be performed with clitoroplasty in an infant. If performed later in life (puberty), a vaginoplasty with complex flaps and bowel interposition is necessary. Many of these patients are on long-term corticosteroid replacement therapy, and therefore, preop stress dosing of steroids may be indicated; if a long, complicated intraabdominal procedure is anticipated, an abdominoperineal approach is required. A loop of sigmoid colon or ileum is isolated, along with its mesentery and is brought through the perineal incision. It is then anastomosed proximally to the vagina and distally to skin flaps. Also, these procedures may be used for **gender reassignment** if masculinization of the ambiguous genitalia in a genotypic male is not possible.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ambiguous genitalia; CAH; cloacal exstrophy; urogenital sinus persistence; danazol exposure

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Lithotomy
Incision	Perineal
Special instrumentation	Loupes (magnification)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Position	Lithotomy
Unique considerations	Steroid replacement may be necessary (CAH)
Antibiotics	Gentamicin 1.7 mg/kg iv (children)
Surgical time	2–4 h
EBL	10–15 mL
Postop care	± Urethral catheter
Mortality	< 1%
Morbidity	Infection: < 5% Bleeding: < 5% Flap necrosis: < 5%
Pain score	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Clitoroplasty: 3–6 mo; vaginoplasty: puberty
Incidence	1:30,000 births (ambiguous genitalia)
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Hypothalamic-pituitary axis suppression; adrenal hyperplasia; steroid replacement therapy

Suggested Readings

1. Hussman D: Intersex. In: Gillenwater JY, Grayhack JT, Howards SS, et al, eds. *Adult and Pediatric Urology*, Vol 3, 4th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 2002, 2533–64.
2. Rink R, Kaefer M: Surgical management of intersexuality, cloacal malformations, and other genitalia in girls. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Vaughn ED, et al, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*, 10th edition. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia: 2012, 3629–66.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR TRANSURETHRAL PROCEDURES, OPEN BLADDER PROCEDURES, PENILE SURGERY, GENITAL PROCEDURES

PREOPERATIVE

Typically, infants and children presenting for these procedures are otherwise healthy, with some notable exceptions. **Vesicoureteral reflux** may be associated with renal dysplasia and HTN. The **prune belly (Eagle-Barrett) syndrome** includes dystrophic abdominal musculature, requiring an evaluation of pulmonary function. **Bladder and cloacal exstrophy** may be accompanied by a spinal cord abnormality (e.g., tethered cord, spina bifida). Congenital cardiac anomalies may be present, and an evaluation should be performed prior to surgery.

Pediatric urology patients with lower urinary tract dysfunction and underlying neurologic disorders (e.g., myelomeningocele) and exstrophy are at risk for developing latex allergy as a result of repeated urethral catheterizations or surgical procedures. (See p. G-1.)

Circumcision and hypospadias repair are most commonly performed in the first 2 years of life in otherwise healthy children.

Respiratory	Prune belly syndrome: pulmonary function may be decreased. ✓ for Hx of respiratory compromise. Postop ventilatory support may be necessary. ✓ adequate reversal of NMB and force of cough. **Tests:** CXR; others as indicated from H&P

Renal	Renal anomalies may be present as part of a congenital malformation complex. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Endocrine	Surgery for genital disorders usually are performed to reshape anatomic abnormalities 2° congenital endocrine disorders. Ambiguous genitalia are associated with congenital adrenal abnormalities. They are usually detected in the first month of life and may lead to severe salt-losing crises with ↑ Na^+ and ↓ K^+. The electrolyte status of these patients must be evaluated in the preop period. Treatment consists of steroid replacement. **Tests:** Electrolytes; blood sugar
Premedication	If > 7–9 m of age, consider midazolam premedication (0.5 mg/kg) po or 1–2 mg iv (see p. D-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GA (ETT or LMA) using a pediatric circle. A combined technique with epidural or caudal anesthesia is often used. For small children, warm OR to 70–75°F. Use warming pad and/or forced air warming on OR table.

Induction	For patients < 5–10 yr, standard mask induction with sevoflurane/N_2O/O_2. Older patients may agree to standard iv induction, facilitated by the use of topical local anesthetic cream or patch (see p. D-1). For open-bladder and complex genital procedures, an indwelling epidural catheter for intraop and postop pain relief is recommended.	
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3). With epidural anesthesia, volatile and/or iv anesthetic requirements are reduced.	
Emergence	Typically, no special considerations. Carefully evaluate patient for adequate ventilation prior to extubation in those with prune belly syndrome.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 22 or 24 ga × 1 NS/LR @ (maintenance): 4 mL/kg/h (1–10 kg) + 2 mL/kg/h (11–20 kg) + 1 mL/kg/h (>20 kg)	Complex cases may be associated with significant blood loss and require transfusion with whole blood or PRBC.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Arterial line	Place arterial line for measurement of arterial gases or to ✓ Hct and blood glucose if significant blood loss or long case is anticipated, in patients with concurrent renal dysfunction.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Nerve damage	In lower extremities, ✓ if padding is insufficient with lithotomy position.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Prune belly: hypoventilation Adrenogenital syndrome: adrenal insufficiency	Assisted ventilation may be required.
Pain management	Acetaminophen Epidural (p. E-6) or PCA (p. E-4) analgesia IV opioids	See p. E-4. Ditropan or ketorolac will ↓ bladder spasm. Ketorolac → renal insufficiency. Do not use if renal function is abnormal.

Suggested Readings

1. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracis, urologic and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 745–86.
2. Landsman IS, Ziegler LN, Deshpande JK: Anesthesia for pediatric urologic procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 740–57.

INGUINOSCROTAL PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Undescended testis (cryptorchidism), hydrocele, and inguinal hernia are common in pediatric urology, and surgery is usually performed on an outpatient basis. Testicular torsion is one of the few true pediatric urologic emergencies because testicular infarction will occur within hours of the torsion. Testicular tumors in children, accounting for 1–2% of all pediatric solid tumors, are more frequently benign than those in adults and represent the main indication for **radical or simple orchiectomy.**

Orchiopexy: Orchiopexy for a palpable undescended testis is performed through a small inguinal incision. A nonpalpable testis may warrant diagnostic laparoscopy as the initial procedure; otherwise, the external oblique fascia is opened, exposing the inguinal canal. An initially nonpalpable testis may become palpable with anesthetic relaxation. The testis is localized, and the cord is dissected to gain adequate length for scrotal fixation, without torsion or tension, to prevent postop ischemia and atrophy. If the testicle is high and adequate inguinal mobilization is not possible, dissection into the retroperitoneum may be required. The scrotal pouch is created by skin incision two-thirds the way down to the scrotum and blunt dissection between the skin and dartos muscle. The testis is fixed with suture material.

Both ilioinguinal nerve block and caudal analgesia appear to be equally effective in management of postorchiopexy pain, but parents should be counseled on the risk of postoperative urinary retention with caudals. When inguinal block is contemplated prior to incision, this should be discussed with the surgeon. At times, inguinal infiltration distorts the anatomy and may perforate the hernia sac, thus turning a relatively simple operation into a more complex one. Alternatively, the block may be performed at the end of the procedure or the wound irrigated with 0.25% bupivacaine, which provides excellent postoperative analgesia and facilitates early discharge from the surgical recovery unit. (Also see Surgery for the Undescended Testicle, p. 1375.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Cryptorchidism; nonpalpable testis

Testicular torsion is a pediatric urologic emergency. There is no definitive diagnostic imaging study, although Doppler and isotope scans of the testis can be useful. At times, symptoms of testicular torsion may be indistinguishable from epididymitis or torsion of the testicular appendages (embryonic remnants). The testis is delivered through a scrotal incision, examined, detorsed, and assessed for viability. If the testis is nonviable, a **simple scrotal orchiectomy** is performed. If the testicle is viable, it is fixed in a **scrotal dartos pouch,** or some may perform 3-point suture fixation. The contralateral testis is fixed in a similar fashion. A torsion of a testicular appendage usually is treated medically with pain control and anti-inflammatory agents. If this condition is discovered at surgical exploration, the diseased tissue is excised, the testis is simply reinserted in the scrotum, and the wound is closed. It should be noted that neonatal (antenatal) or perinatal torsion may be performed in the newborn period. If the diagnosis is unclear, and/or there is an associated hydrocele or hernia, this operation may be performed through an inguinal incision.

Usual preop diagnosis: Testicular torsion; torsion of the testicular appendage

Hydrocelectomy–inguinal hernia repair: This procedure is performed through an inguinal incision and dissection of the inguinal canal. The patent processus vaginalis is carefully dissected from the cord structures; the peritoneal sac is ligated at the level of the internal inguinal ring; and the wound is closed after evacuation of the hydrocele liquid. (Also see Repair of Inguinal and Umbilical Hernias, Hydrocele, p. 1375.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Hydrocele; inguinal hernia

Radical orchiectomy: Although simple orchiectomy is performed through a scrotal incision, radical orchiectomy (used when testicular cancer is suspected) is performed through an inguinal incision. The external oblique fascia is

opened, and the spermatic cord is isolated and clamped at the level of the internal ring. The testis is delivered through the incision and examined. If the testis is felt to contain malignancy, the cord is ligated and divided at the level of the internal inguinal ring. If there is uncertainty in the Dx, a biopsy can be performed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Testicular mass

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Hydrocelectomy, Hernia Repair	Orchiopexy, Orchiectomy
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Inguinal/scrotal	⇐ + Can be extended to reach retroperitoneum ± laparoscopic exploration.
Antibiotics	None	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Infection: 1–2% Recurrence: 1%	Testicular atrophy: 7%
Pain score	5	5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	1 yr–puberty	Cryptorchidism: 1–2 yr Torsion: 0–18 yr
Incidence	1–4%	Cryptorchidism: 3% Torsion: 1:4000
Etiology	Congenital	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Orchiopexy, orchiectomy, hydrocelectomy, and hernia repair are performed most commonly in otherwise healthy children.

Renal	With phimosis, there may be Hx of UTIs. Possible pyelonephritis. Hematuria requires GU workup. **Tests:** UA; renal function (BUN, Cr), as clinically indicated
Laboratory	Hct; others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	If > 7 to 9 m of age, consider midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po) before induction. If > 10 yr old: standard premedication (see p. D-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or LMA/mask anesthetic, using a pediatric circle (consider using humidified and warmed gases for infants). A combined technique with caudal anesthesia often is used for nonendoscopic procedures. For small children, warm OR to 70–75°F. Use warming pad and/or forced air warming on OR table.

Induction	In younger patients, mask induction is customary before iv placement. If the surgical procedure will be > 30 min, tracheal intubation or LMA is preferred. Intermediate-acting NMR (e.g., rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg iv or vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg iv) is administered to facilitate tracheal intubation. If appropriate, caudal anesthesia can be obtained using ropivacaine 2%, bupivacaine 0.125 or 0.25% ± epinephrine 1: 200,000; 1 mL/kg up to 10 mL total. Test dose of 1 mL should be given after a negative aspiration through the catheter or needle. A positive test dose, in contrast to adults epidural test dose, could be indicated by an increase in HR, a decrease in HR, a decrease in BP, or ST-T wave changes. The caudal local anesthetic dose should be fractionated with frequent aspirations. The addition of clonidine (1–2 mcg/kg) to the caudal block intensifies and prolongs the analgesia, with minimal sedation. Acetaminophen 30–40 mg/kg PR or 10 mg/kg iv over 30 min may be given following intubation.	
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3). If no regional block is performed, at least 2 MAC anesthesia is required prior to skin incision to prevent laryngospasm in nonintubated patients. Caudal anesthesia can be used to provide the majority of analgesia in nonendoscopic procedures.	
Emergence	If neuromuscular blockade is used, reverse with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg iv) and atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv) or glycopyrrolate (0.01 mg/kg iv). Extubate when patient is fully awake or deep.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Negligible blood loss IV: 20–22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance	Pediatric maintenance: 4 mL/kg/h (0–10 kg) + 2 mL/kg/h (11–20 kg) + 1 mL/kg/h (>20 kg)
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Ocular compression/corneal abrasion may occur with oversized mask.
Complications	Laryngospasm	Rx: 100% O_2, jaw thrust, positive pressure. If iv is present, first deepen the level of anesthesia with propofol. If necessary, administer succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg iv) in addition to atropine (0.02 mg/kg iv). If no iv, can give succinylcholine 3 mg/kg im, atropine 0.02 mg/kg im.
	Intravascular local anesthetic administration	Epinephrine in caudal anesthetic (to detect intravascular administration) does not significantly prolong analgesia.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Bleeding	
Pain management	Caudal or regional block Acetaminophen (10–20 mg po/iv and 10 mg q 6 h pr 30–40 mg pr on 1st dose, followed by 20 mg q 6 h prn)	Optimal analgesia and presence of parents in PACU will minimize child's agitation/movement/crying.

Suggested Readings

1. Barthold JS: Abnormalities of the testis and scrotum and their surgical management. In: Wein A, et al, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*, 10th edition. Elseview Sanders, Philadelphia: 2012, 3557–96.
2. Fernandes ML, Pires KC, Tiburcio MA, Gomez RS: Caudal bupivacaine supplemented with morphine or clonidine, or supplemented with morphine plus clonidine in children undergoing infra-umbilical and genital procedures: a prospective, randomized and double-blind study. *J Anesth* 2012 Apr; 26(2):213–8. [Epub 2011 Dec 10.]

3. Hammer G, Hall S, Davis PJ: Anesthesia for general abdominal, thoracis, urologic and bariatric surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 745–86.
4. Jagannathan N, Sohn L, Sawardekar A, et al: Unilateral groin surgery in children: with the addition of an ultrasound-guided ilioinguinal nerve block enhance the duration of analgesia of a single-shot caudal block? *Paediatr Anaesth* 2009; 19(9): 892–8.
5. Landsman IS, Ziegler LN, Deshpande JK: Anesthesia for pediatric urologic procedures. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 740–57.
6. Manickam A, Vakamudi M, Parameswari A, Chetan C: Source Department of Anesthesiology Critical Care and Pain Medicine, Sri Ramachandra University, Porur, Chennai, Tamil, Nadu, India. Efficacy of clonidine as an adjunct to ropiuacaine for caudal analgesia in children undergoing subumbilical surgery. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol* 2012; 28(2):185–9.
7. Polaner DM, Taenzer AH, Walker BJ, et al: Pediatric regional anesthesia network (PRAN): a multi-institutional study of the use and incidence of complications of pediatric regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(6):1353–64.
8. Ponde VC: Recent developments in pediatric neuraxial blocks. *Indian J Anaesth* 2012; 56(5):470–8.
9. Rubin K, Sullivan D, Sadhadivan S: Are peripheral and neuraxial blocks with ultrasound guidance more effective and safe in children? *Paesiatr Anaesth* 2009; 19(2):92–5.
10. Tobias JD: Caudal epidural block: a review of test dosing and recognition of systemic injection in children. *Anesth Analg* 2011; 93(5):1156–61.

LAPAROSCOPIC PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Laparoscopy has become a useful technique for many pediatric urologists. It is used widely to locate the impalpable testis (**diagnostic laparoscopy**), with subsequent **laparoscopic orchidopexy** as needed and has gained popularity for other procedures such as **nephrectomy, partial nephrectomy, nephroureterectomy, adrenalectomy, pyeloplasty,** and **varicocelectomy.**

As in adults, pneumoperitoneum is created by insufflating CO_2 (to a pressure of 12–16 mm Hg) either through the Veress needle technique or after trocar insertion in the peritoneal cavity through a small, 1-cm periumbilical incision under direct vision **(Hasson technique)**. Other trocars (2, 5, or 10 mm) are then inserted, as necessary, under direct laparoscopic vision, avoiding abdominal wall vessels and internal organs.

Impalpable testis: If diagnostic laparoscopy reveals blind ending vessels, confirming the absence of a testis, the procedure is terminated and no inguinal incision is made. An inguinal testis remnant usually indicates either antenatal testicular ischemia or torsion. If the vessels are seen to enter the inguinal ring, the laparoscopy is ended and inguinal exploration is performed. If the testis is located intraabdominally, it is evaluated for size and location to determine whether to proceed to **orchiectomy** or a one- to two-stage (**Fowler Stevens**) **orchiopexy.** Laparoscopic ligation of the gonadal vessels may be done with placement of the testis into a scrotal pouch (**dartos pouch**) in one stage, if adequate cord length permits. In other situations, **laparoscopic or open dissection** of testicular vessels on a peritoneal pedicle in the retroperitoneum may be performed. A 2nd-stage Fowler Stevens is performed after ligation of the gonadal vessels to allow adequate collateral vascular development before the intraabdominal testis is brought into the scrotum. Laparoscopic orchiectomy or **gonadectomy** also may be performed in intersex situations for a dysgenetic (streak), nonviable gonad or for a gonad in which inadequate cord length exists.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nonpalpable testis; cryptorchidism

Varicocele ligation: Through a transperitoneal approach identical to that of the approach for diagnostic laparoscopy, the spermatic veins are isolated from the abdominal wall and are ligated with metallic clips to reduce the varicocele. The primary complications from this procedure are hydrocele and varicocele recurrence.

Usual preop diagnosis: Varicocele

Heminephrectomy, nephroureterectomy, and pyeloplasty: With the patient in the lateral-decubitus position, the initial trocar is inserted extraperitoneally on the anterior axillary line just below the 12th rib. The prone position has also been described for a retroperitoneal approach. Gas dissection is used to open the retroperitoneal space, and kidney dissection is performed. In a nephrectomy, the hilar vessels are ligated with metallic clips. The kidney is then retrieved through the 10-mm port by morcellating it or the incision can be dilated or elongated. Laparoscopic

pyeloplasty is carried out using the same principles as open pyeloplasty, namely dismembering the ureter from the renal pelvis, spatulation of the ureter, and careful reassembly of the ureteropelvic unit. Whether surgery is performed intra or extraperitoneal laparoscopic/robotic surgery with CO_2 insufflation is associated with significant systemic hemodynamic changes in children.

Usual preop diagnosis: UPJ obstruction; infected or nonfunctioning kidney; HTN; multicystic or dysplastic kidney; protein-losing nephropathy in ESRD

ROBOTIC-ASSISTED PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Robotic laparoscopic procedures are becoming increasingly common, with **robotic pyeloplasty** and **ureteral reimplantation** being among the most common. Advantages to the use of the robot include improved 3D visualization and instrument control for surgical precision compared to traditional laparoscopy. Though the data are limited, there is increasing evidence that robotic surgery may afford decreased postop pain, shorter hospital stays, and decreased blood loss. However, approximately 20–45 min of robot setup time should be calculated into the time under anesthesia. Adequate leg padding and solid securing of the patient to the bed during these procedures is again of paramount importance both for ease of the surgery as well as patient safety during the procedure.

Robotic vesicoureteral reimplantation: After initial cystoscopy to determine that there is adequate size for a robotic procedure, the patient is placed in a supine position with legs splayed. This procedure may be performed extravesically intraperitoneal or intravesically. These approaches have similar concerns to other robotic intraperitoneal surgery, and urethral catheters are usually left in place. A Hassan port is placed through a midline incision one-third of the way from the umbilicus to the pubis. The bladder is cleared, and a balloon trocar is placed through a cystotomy into the bladder, followed by two robotic working ports. The robot is then docked, coming in from the direction of the patient's feet and the patient is dropped into the Trendelenburg position, which provides improved exposure of the pelvic organs, allowing bowel to drop away. At this point, either extravesical or intravesical repair may be attempted. Primary complications following robotic reimplant include bladder leak, transient obstruction, and persistent reflux.

Usual preop diagnosis: Vesicoureteral reflux

Robotic pyeloplasty: A urethral stent may be placed before approach to pyeloplasty to help identify the ureter during the case. The patient is then placed in a modified flank position, pressure points padded and secured firmly to the table. A test roll of the table should occur prior to the docking of the robot. The abdomen is insufflated, and the trocars are placed. Once the UPJ is identified, a hitch stitch is often placed through the abdominal wall. The diseased portion of ureter is then removed and reanastomosed. Prior to definitive closure of the anastomosis, a stent is usually placed with a periureteral drain.

Usual preop diagnosis: UPJ obstruction

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Undescended Testis/ Varicocele	Robotic Reimplant	Renal Surgery
Position	Supine; 15° Trendelenburg	Supine, legs splayed, Trendelenburg	Lateral decubitus
Incision	5- to 10-mm umbilical port + one or two additional ports	12-mm umbilical port and 5- to 8-mm working ports × 2	Four ports usually necessary

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Undescended Testis/ Varicocele	Robotic Reimplant	Renal Surgery
Special instrumentation	Bladder catheterization, NG tube	Cystoscopy, bladder catheterization	⇐
Unique considerations	Secure child firmly to avoid movement with table tilting. Intraabdominal pressure = 14–16 mm Hg. Lower pressure may be needed if pulmonary mechanics are compromised. Urethral catheter commonly placed.		⇐
Antibiotics	None	As necessary per preop urine culture	⇐
Surgical time	30 min to 1 h	3–5 h	2.5 h (nephrectomy) to 4 h (pyeloplasty)
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → home	PACU → ward	PACU → ward
Mortality	< 1%	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Overall: 0.6–5%	⇐	⇐
	Trocar misplacement: bowel perforation	⇐	⇐
	Vascular/organ thermal injury from electrocautery	⇐	⇐
	CO_2 embolus	⇐	Bleeding < 5%
	Grounding pad thermal injury	Bladder leak	
	Trocar site bleeding, trocar hernia	Transient obstruction	
	Varicocele only: Recurrent varicocele (1–11%), hydrocele (1–5%)	Recurrent reflux	
Pain score	2	4	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	10 mo–18 yr
Male:Female	Male (cryptorchidism)
Incidence	3% of newborn boys
Etiology	Congenital
Associated conditions	Renal insufficiency

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

During mask induction, care should be taken to avoid excessive positive pressure with consequent insufflation of the stomach. An OGT should be placed immediately after induction and intubation to remove air from the stomach, decreasing the risk of gastric puncture with placement of trocars and improving surgical view during procedure. Creation of a pneumoperitoneum as part of a laparoscopic procedure impairs ventilation and can restrict venous return. The use of Trendelenburg and lithotomy positions can further compromise respiratory function. Anesthetic considerations for pediatric patients undergoing laparoscopic procedures are further considered in 12.5 (Anesthesia for Minimally—Invasive Surgery in Pediatric Patients, p. 1352). Severely limited patient access in robotic-assisted surgery makes it difficult to respond to the patient. A practice trial maneuvering the cumbersome robotic equipment should be performed to ensure rapid access to the patient in case of emergency. Care should be taken not to move the operating room table after the robotic arm/instruments are placed to avoid patient injury.

Suggested Readings

1. Carr MC, Casale P: Anomalies and surgery of the ureter in children. In: Wein A, et al, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*, 10th edition. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia: 2012, 3212–35.
2. Mariano ER, Furukawa L, Woo RK, et al: Anesthetic concerns for robot-assisted laparoscopy in an infant. *Anesth Analg* 2004; 9(6):1665–7.
3. Peters CA: Robotically assisted surgery in pediatric urology. *Urol Clin N Am* 2007; 31(4):743–752.
4. Sweeney DD, Smaldone MC, Docimio SG: Minimally invasive surgery for urologic disease in children. *Nat Clin Prac Urol* 2007; 4(1):26–38.

STONE PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The incidence of urinary tract calculi is becoming more common in children in the United States as well as in other parts of the world (e.g., Turkey). The reasons for this are unclear. For this reason, however, all stone surgical procedures are becoming more common and adapted to children. General techniques including extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL), **ureteral stent placement, cystolitholapaxy, and ureteroscopy** are being used in infants and children. Often, these procedures require fluoroscopy, which may bring with it both equipment considerations (fluorocompatible moving tables) and positioning requirements to allow C-arm placement.

ESWL (extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy): This procedure utilizes ultrasound to break apart the stone from outside the body. The child is placed in a supine position on a special bed. The need for general anesthesia or sedation is still required to reduce movement as this procedure requires aiming the burst in 3 dimensions but may depend on the child's age, extent of stone burden, and the kind of extracorporeal lithotripter being used. In some cases, electrohydraulic lithotripsy has required general anasethia with endotracheal intubation in young children, but in some cases, electromagnetic lithotripsy has been performed with sedation.

Ureteroscopy and laser lithotripsy: Positioning for this procedure requires lithotomy. If lasers are used, eye protection for staff and the patient is required. Most lasers now used have a very short working distance so eye injury risk is small. Paralysis is needed for upper tract instrumentation as patient movement for a cough could cause ureteral perforation, especially when using the semirigid ureteroscope. After the stone is fragmented and removed, a stent is often left to prevent obstruction from ureteral edema or fragments. The stent is removed at a later date.

Usual preop diagnosis: Nephrolithiasis, ureterolithiasis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	ESWL	Ureteroscopy
Position	Supine	Lithotomy
Incision	None	⇐
Antibiotics	None	Septra or amp/gent
Surgical time	1 h	1–2 h
EBL	None	⇐
Postop care	PACU → home	⇐
Mortality	< 1%	⇐
Morbidity	Sepsis < 1%	Pyelonephritis < 5%
	Hematoma < 1%	Ureteral perforation < 5%
Pain score	2	2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6 yr–puberty
Incidence	36 per 100,000

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See anesthetic considerations p. 1372.

In addition, every child with renal calculi should undergo metabolic evaluation. Renal function should be checked preoperatively. General anesthesia is usually required due to limited patient cooperation in the pediatric population and need for precise positioning. Moderate pain may be expected and should be treated with opioid therapy. Ketorolac should not be used due to potential renal effects.

Suggested Readings

1. D'Addessi A, Bongiovanni L, Sasso F, Guliro G, Falabella R, Bassi P: Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy in pediatrics. *J Endourol* 2008; 22(1):1–12.
2. Dwyer MA, et al: Temporal trends in incidence of kidney stones among children: a 25 year population based study. *J Urol* 2012; 188(1):247–52.
3. Gravenstein D: Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2000; 18(4):953–71.
4. Gnessin E, Chertin L, Chertin B: Current management of pediatric urolithiasis. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2012; 28(7):659–65.
5. Ost M, Schneck F: Surgical management of pediatric stone disease. In: Wein A, et al, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*, 10th ed. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia: 2012, 3667–4.

CHAPTER

12.7 Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery

SURGEONS

James G. Gamble, MD, PhD
Amy L. Ladd, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Genevieve D'Souza, MD
Brenda Golianu, MD
R. J. Ramamurthi, MD, FRCA

PERCUTANEOUS PINNING OF DISPLACED SUPRACONDYLAR HUMERUS FRACTURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Supracondylar fractures of the humerus are the most common elbow fractures in children and the most common pediatric fractures requiring reduction under GA. They have a justifiable reputation for complications because of the risk to the brachial artery and a high incidence of median or radial nerve palsies. The most serious potential complication is a compartment syndrome of the forearm, resulting in the need for emergency reduction and fasciotomy.

The vast majority of these injuries result from falling on an outstretched arm with the elbow extended—a extremely common childhood event. Type 1 supracondylar fractures are minimally displaced and usually stable. They can be managed with a splint alone. Most supracondylar fractures are either Type 2 or Type 3 completely displaced fractures and require general anesthesia for **closed reduction and percutaneous pinning.**

Flexion-type supracondylar fractures are more likely to require open reduction than extension-type injuries.

Documentation of the neurovascular examination is mandatory immediately before anesthesia and upon awakening. When a patient appears in the emergency department, if the neurovascular status is normal, and if the patient has eaten recently, it may be safe to wait 6–8 h with continued monitoring of the neurovascular status. Reduction is obtained by a combination of traction and manipulation. Complete muscular relaxation is essential during the reduction maneuver. Usually two small smooth Kirschner wires are inserted under fluoroscopic control. Many surgeons prefer to use the intensifier screen as a platform; thus requiring the patient to be at the edge of the OR table. Occasionally, the fracture cannot be reduced closed, and an open reduction is necessary. In that case, the arm is reprepped, and a small, lateral incision is made to openly visualize and reduce the fracture. The same type of smooth pin fixation is then used. Prolonged skeletal traction, although used in the past, is rarely used, and the standard of care is reduction and percutaneous pinning. Following the pinning, either a splint or well-padded cast is applied before the patient is awakened.

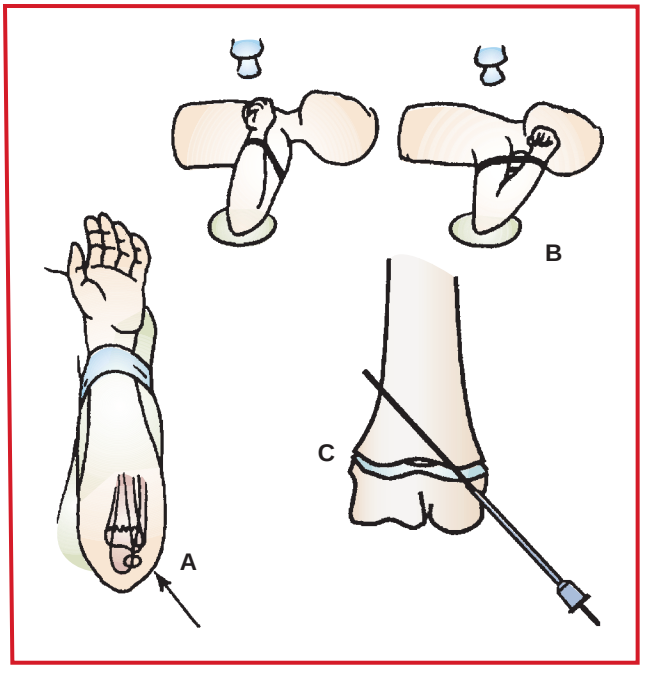


Figure 12.7-1. Percutaneous pinning of supracondylar humerus fracture. **A:** The fracture is manually reduced and held with elbow flexed. **B:** Fracture reduction is assessed with I.I. **C:** The fracture is stabilized with percutaneous K-wires. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Supracondylar fracture of the elbow

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Percutaneous Pinning	Open Reduction
Position	Usually supine, occasionally prone or lateral	⇐
Incision	None	1" lateral
Special instrumentation	Power drill, image intensifier, or FluoroScan	⇐
Unique considerations	Full stomach; impending compartment syndrome	⇐
Antibiotics	Usually none	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg
Surgical time	30–60 min	30–90 min
Closing considerations	Cast or splint	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room; close neurovascular monitoring	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Late angular deformity, especially cubitus varus: 10% Nerve palsy (typically radial nerve) from the fracture itself: 7% Compartment syndrome (Volkmann's contracture): < 0.5% (some degree of vascular spasm or loss of radial pulse much more common) Stiffness, myositis ossificans Ipsilateral fracture	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–5	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–10 yr with peak age range of 5–8 yr.
Male:Female	1.6:1
Incidence	Frequent
Etiology	Trauma, usually a fall
Associated conditions	Usually normal, healthy child

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Upper-Extremity Procedures, see p. 1393.

Suggested Readings

1. Franklin CC, Skaggs DL: Approach to the pediatric supracondylar humeral fracture with neurovascular compromise. *Instr Course Lect* 2013; 62:429–33.
2. Georgopoulos G, Carry P, Pan Z, Chang F, Heare T, Rhodes J, et al: The efficacy of intra-articular injections for pain control following the closed reduction and percutaneous pinning of pediatric supracondylar humeral fractures: a randomized controlled trial. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2012; 94:1633–42.
3. Gordon JE, Patton CM, Luhmann SJ, et al: Fracture stability after pinning of displaced supracondylar distal humerus fractures in children. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2001; 21(3):313–8.

4. Kasser JR, Beaty JH: Supracondylar fractures of the distal humerus. In: Beaty JH, Kasser JR, eds. *Fractures in Children.* Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 2001;577–624.
5. Mehan ST, May CD, Kocher MS: Operative management of displaced flexion supracondylar humerus fractures in children. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2007; 27:551–6.
6. Mehlman CT, Strub WM, Roy DR, et al: The effect of surgical timing on the perioperative complications of treatment of supracondylar humeral fractures in children. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2001; 83A(3):323–7.
7. Mulpuri K, Wilkins K: The treatment of displaced supracondylar humerus fractures: evidence-based guideline. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2012; 32 (Suppl 2):143–52.

CLOSED OR OPEN REDUCTION OF DISPLACED LATERAL CONDYLE HUMERUS FRACTURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Lateral condylar fractures of the distal humerus are second only to supracondylar fractures in frequency. Initial radiographs of lateral condyle fractures can look deceptively normal; however, because these fractures cross the physis (growth plate) and enter the articular surface, they require anatomic reduction to restore joint surface congruity and to avoid a premature physeal arrest. In addition, the elbow may be unstable and dislocate if the fracture extends into the trochlea of the humerus. Accurate and stable reduction minimizes the risk of nonunion, a well-known complication resulting from unsuspected rotation of the fracture fragment and by traction forces of the extensor muscles attaching to this condyle. Unlike supracondylar fractures, neurovascular complications are rare with lateral condyle fractures.

Although minimally displaced fractures can be treated with a cast, 60% of lateral condyle fractures are displaced and require manipulation and pinning. Casting without manipulation, and thus requiring no anesthesia, is indicated for stable fractures that are displaced < 2 mm. **Closed reduction and percutaneous pinning** under fluoroscopic control requires general anesthesia and is indicated for stable fractures with 2–4 mm displacement. **Open reduction and pinning** is necessary for fractures that are unstable, rotated, or displaced more than 4 mm. Muscular relaxation is advantageous when performing either a closed or open reduction of the fracture. A sterile tourniquet is used for cases requiring open reduction.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Displaced lateral condyle humerus fracture

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Closed Reduction/Pinning	Open Reduction/Pinning
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	None	1–2" lateral
Instrumentation	Power drill, fluoroscopy	⇐
Unique considerations	None	⇐
Antibiotics	Usually none	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg
Surgical time	30–60 min	45–90 min
Closing considerations	Cast or splint	⇐
EBL	Negligible	⇐
Postoperative care	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Closed Reduction/Pinning	Open Reduction/Pinning
Morbidity	Delayed or nonunion Cubitus valgus (more common) or varus Lateral condylar overgrowth Physeal arrest Osteonecrosis of lateral trochlea Ulnar nerve palsy	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐ Avascular necrosis of trochlea
Pain score	3–5	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	5–10 yr; average = 6 yr
Incidence	15% of all elbow fractures; more common in summer
Etiology	Trauma
Associated conditions	Usually normal, healthy child

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Upper-Extremity Procedures, see p. 1393.

Suggested Readings

1. Beathy JH: Fractures of the lateral humeral condyle are the second most frequent elbow fracture in children. *J Prthop Trauma* 2010; 24:434–8.
2. Launay F, Leet AI, Jacopin S, et al: Lateral humeral condyle fractures in children: a comparison of two approaches to treatment. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2004; 24:385–91.
3. Song KS, Water PM: Lateral condyle humerus fractures: which one should we fix? *J Pediatr Orthop* 2012; 32 (Suppl 1):S5–9.
4. Thomas DP, Howard AW, Cole WG, et al: Three weeks of Kirschner wire fixation for displaced lateral condylar fractures of the humerus in children. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2001; 21(5):565–9.

ASPIRATION AND INJECTION OF UNICAMERAL BONE CYST

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Unicameral bone cysts (UBCs) are benign lesions typically located in the metaphyseal regions of long bones, most commonly in the proximal humerus of a growing child. The cyst is rarely a source of pain until presentation (typically after a fracture). The benign radiographic appearance allows clinicians to follow most lesions without the need for surgical biopsy. Surgical care is indicated when the UBC is of sufficient size and location to cause mechanical weakening of the bone and predispose to a pathologic fracture. The goals of surgical care are to confirm the diagnosis of UBC and to reestablish the mechanical integrity of the bone. Diagnosis of a UBC is made by percutaneous aspiration of the lesion, using a standard 16- to 18-gauge spinal needle under general anesthesia. Fluoroscopic guidance facilitates needle placement. The presence of clear, straw-colored fluid confirms diagnosis of UBC. An alternative diagnosis, such as aneurismal bone cyst, is more likely if frank blood is aspirated. If the lesion contains no fluid, it may be a nonossifying fibroma.

Open biopsy may be necessary if the diagnosis is unclear. However, most cases can be treated adequately with percutaneous aspiration and injection of a radiopaque dye to verify that the entire cavity is contiguous. If the cystic cavity is loculated by bony trabecula, a **curette** or **percutaneous Kirschner** wire is used to convert the lesion into a unicompartmental space so the subsequent injection will easily access the entire lesion. Scraping the inner cyst walls also helps to disrupt the cyst lining and is thought to improve the chance of filling in the cavity. The final surgical step

is to introduce a second "venting" needle into the cyst to allow lavage with sterile saline, followed by injection of the cavity with a substance to promote new bone formation. Historically, methylprednisolone has been used, but more recent evidence suggests a higher success rate when autologous bone marrow is injected. **Injectable allograft bone** preparations also can supplement the bone marrow injection. Care must be taken to avoid aspirating from the first needle after the second has been placed, to avoid intraosseous air embolism.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Unicameral bone cyst

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Percutaneous	Open
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	None	Length of cyst
Instrumentation	Spinal needles, Kirschner wires, I.I.	Curettes
Unique considerations	Risk of air embolus	Additional time for intraop pathology evaluation
Antibiotics	Usually none	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg
Surgical time	30–60 min	60–90 min
Closing considerations	None	Cast or splint
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postop care	PACU → home	PACU → room/home
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Infection Iatrogenic fracture Growth arrest: rare	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	0–2	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	5–15 yr; not found in adults
Male:Female	1:3
Incidence	20% of benign bone lesions; most common location is the proximal humerus (67%), followed by the proximal femur (15%)
Etiology	Unknown. Venous obstruction → fluid transudate containing high levels of interleukin-1 and interleukin-6, which stimulate osteoclasts
Associated conditions	Usually normal, healthy child. Initial presentation typically follows a pathologic fracture.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Upper-Extremity Procedures, see p. 1393.

Suggested Readings

1. Alvarez RG, Arnold JM: Arthroscopic assistance in minimally invasive curettage and bone grafting of a calcaneal unicameral bone cyst. *Foot Ankle Int* 2007; 28:1198–9.
2. Rougraff BT, Kling TJ: Treatment of active unicameral bone cysts with percutaneous injection of demineralized bone matrix and autogenous bone marrow. *J Bone Joint Surg* 2002; 84A(6):921–9.

RELEASE FOR TORTICOLLIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Congenital muscular torticollis** is a painless tilting of the head due to contracture of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The head tilts toward the involved side and rotates toward the opposite side (a "cock-robin" posture such that the chin points to the opposite side). It is associated with breech and difficult deliveries, as well as other musculoskeletal disorders, such as metatarsus adductus, hip dysplasia, and talipes equinovarus. Multiple theories regarding the etiology of congenital muscular torticollis have been proposed, including fibrosis of the sternocleidomastoid muscle following a peripartum intramuscular bleed, fibrosis resulting from a compartment syndrome of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, intrauterine crowding, and a primary myopathy of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Eighty percent of cases of torticollis are a result of this congenital contracture of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Less common etiologies—such as congenital cervical spine malformations (e.g., Klippel-Feil syndrome), neurologic disorders, a cranial or cervical neoplasm, inflammatory conditions (e.g., Grisel's syndrome), or an ocular dysfunction—should also be excluded. Congenital muscular torticollis is seen more frequently on the right side. A persistent torticollis will lead to skull and facial deformities (plagiocephaly). If the child sleeps prone, he will usually lie with the affected side down, resulting in flattening of the face on that side. If the child sleeps supine, flattening of the contralateral skull occurs. This plagiocephaly will become permanent if the torticollis persists and is left untreated.

Initial treatment includes physical therapy for stretching exercises. For children < 1 yr of age, a program of sternocleidomastoid muscle stretching is recommended, with 90% of cases being resolved with this treatment. After 2 yr of age, nonoperative treatment is not likely to be effective. Children with persistent torticollis and an unacceptable amount of facial asymmetry preferably are treated surgically before the age of 3 yr; however, some improvement in facial asymmetry has been shown even in children surgically treated up to 8 yr of age.

Surgical options include a **unipolar release,** a **bipolar release, middle-third transection,** or a **complete resection.** Unipolar release involves division of the distal insertion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle and usually is performed for a mild deformity. Bipolar release entails division of both the sternocleidomastoid origin and insertion and usually is done for more marked involvement. **Z-plasty** of the clavicular head or transfer of the clavicular head to the sternal head may be done to maintain a more normal cosmetic contour of the neck. Potential surgical complications include injury to the spinal accessory nerve, jugular veins, carotid vessels, and the facial nerve. Postop, patients may perform simple stretching exercises, but they often require bracing to maintain a corrected alignment.

Usual preoperative diagnosis: Congenital muscular torticollis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Unipolar	Bipolar
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Transverse, 1.5 cm superior to sternum and clavicle over muscle insertion	⇐ + 1 cm distal to mastoid process behind ear at muscle origin
Unique considerations	Plagiocephaly	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg	⇐
Surgical time	30 min	45 min
EBL	Minimal	⇐
Postoperative care	PACU → room/home	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Unipolar	Bipolar
Morbidity	Hypertrophic scar Loss of normal muscle contour	⇐ ⇐ Spinal accessory nerve injury
Pain score	3–5	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Onset at birth, surgery after age 1 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/500
Etiology	Fibrosis of sternocleidomastoid; possible intrauterine or perinatal muscle compartment syndrome
Associated conditions	Usually normal, healthy child; hip dysplasia in 20%

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Upper-Extremity Procedures, see p. 1393.

Suggested Readings

1. Shim JS, Noh KC, Park SJ: Treatment of congenital muscular torticollis in patients older than 8 years. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2004; 24:683–8.
2. Von Heideken J, Green DW, Burke SW, et al: The relationship between developmental dysplasia of the hip and congenital muscular torticollis. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2006; 26:805–8.

POLLICIZATION OF A FINGER

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: This procedure is indicated in the infant with congenital absence or hypoplasia of the thumb. A normal finger—usually the index finger—with its tendon, nerve, and vascular supply is shortened and rotated into the position of the thumb (Fig. 12.7-2). Tendon transfers are performed to substitute for the absent or hypoplastic thenar muscles. These patients may have many other associated congenital anomalies, which should be ruled out prior to surgery.

Variant procedure or approaches: There are several different surgical techniques, which share the basic transposition and rotation of the finger to the thumb position.

Usual preop diagnosis: Aplastic thumb; hypoplastic thumb; radial club hand; radial longitudinal deficiency

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with arm extended on hand surgery table
Incision	Multiple incisions on the hand

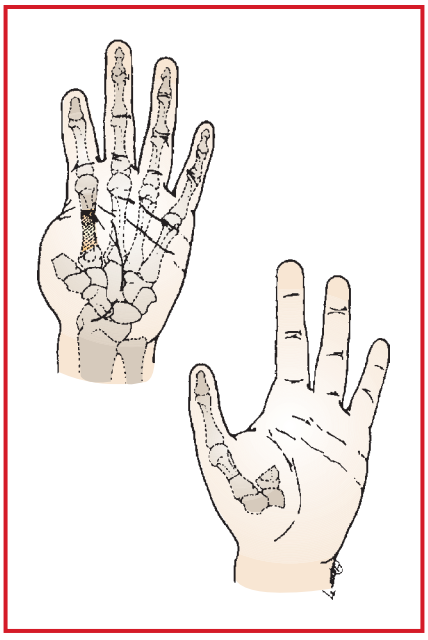


Figure 12.7-2. Pollicization of a finger. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Special instrumentation	Pneumatic tourniquet; magnification loupes
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg (children)
Surgical time	3–4 h
Tourniquet	100 mm Hg above systolic; max time = 120 min
Closing considerations	Complex skin flaps are necessary. A plaster splint is placed while the patient is still anesthetized.
EBL	Minimal; performed under tourniquet control.
Postop care	PACU → overnight admission for observation or perfusion to the transposed finger
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Ischemia (loss of digit): Rare Skin flap necrosis: Moderately common
Pain score	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	1–2 yr is ideal time for surgery. Procedure should be done before patient begins school.
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Overall, about 1/20,000 live births require a variant of this procedure.
Etiology	Unknown; also associated with thalidomide ingestion.

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Associated conditions	Associated congenital anomalies of the upper extremity, esophagus, spine, and lower extremities Absence of radius (radial club hand), common Various forms of syndactylies, common Abnormalities of the hematopoietic system (Fanconi's syndrome), cardiovascular system (ASDs in Holt-Oram syndrome), spine, and GI system, along with hypothyroidism, are frequently associated.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Upper-Extremity Procedures, see p. 1393.

SYNDACTYLY REPAIR

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Syndactyly refers to congenital failure of separation of two or more fingers. It is complete if it extends to the ends of the fingers; incomplete syndactyly extends short of the finger ends. A **simple syndactyly repair** joins fingers by only skin and fibrous tissues. A **complex syndactyly repair** signifies fusion of adjacent phalanges or interposition of accessory phalanges, with frequent abnormalities of the neurovascular structures. Surgical separation is performed in the first few years of life for functional as well as aesthetic reasons. The technique involves creation of a dorsal, proximally based skin flap to recreate the web. A zigzag dorsal and palmar incision is then created, separating from the distal end in a proximal direction. The digital nerve and arteries are dissected proximally as far as possible. Primary closure is almost never possible, and supplemental full-thickness skin graft harvested from the groin is used to complete the closure. Usually only one site is done at a time per hand, and never should both sides of a digit be released because of risk to the vascular supply. It is not always possible to save all the bony elements. Patients with conditions such as Apert syndrome must undergo careful evaluation of the airway.

Usual preop diagnosis: Syndactyly of fingers; bifid finger, thumb/finger

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	Zigzag between digits; skin graft donor site from groin
Special instrumentation	Magnification loupes always necessary. Tourniquet is mandatory.
Unique considerations	Groin skin also must be taken for graft closure.
Antibiotics	Usually none
Surgical time	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Above-the-elbow cast or splint to keep incision away from mouth and other hand of the infant or child
EBL	20 mL
Postop care	PACU → home, if simple syndactyly
Mortality	None associated with procedure.
Position	Supine

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Morbidity	Partial slough of flaps or skin graft requiring revision Scarring and some stiffness of fingers Angulatory deformities late, occasionally depending on degree of involvement of the skeleton and joint
Pain score	1–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6 mo–5 yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	1/2000 births (the most common significant congenital hand anomaly)
Etiology	Family Hx (10–40%); failure of differentiation in the 6th–8th wk of intrauterine life
Associated conditions	Polydactyly, accessory phalanges; Apert syndrome; Poland syndrome

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Upper-Extremity Procedures, see p. 1393.

Suggested Readings

1. Bauer TB, Tondra JM, Trusler HM: Technical modification in repair of syndactylism. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1956; 17:385–92.
2. Chang J, Danton TK, Ladd AL, et al: Reconstruction of the hand in Apert's syndrome: a simplified approach. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2002; 109(2):465–70.
3. Ecoffey C: Pediatric regional anesthesia—upper extremity blocks. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 431–4.
4. Lammers C, Wyckaert C: Anesthesia for orthopedic surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 757–77.
5. Oda T, Pushman AG, Chung KC: Treatment of common congenital hand condition. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 126:121e–33e.
6. Smith GD: Congenital hand anomalies and reconstruction. *Br J Hosp Med (Lond)* 2012; 73:203–9.
7. Zuckerberg AL, Yaster M: Anesthesia for orthopedic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 842–69.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR UPPER EXTREMITY PROCEDURES

(Procedures covered: percutaneous pinning; displaced supracondylar humerus fracture; closed/open reduction; displaced lateral condylar humerus fracture; aspiration/injection unicameral/bone cyst; torticollis release; pollicization of finger; syndactyly release)

PREOPERATIVE

The majority of children presenting for repair of upper-extremity fractures are otherwise healthy. Most of these patients present for repair of a traumatic injury; thus, the preop workup is routine. Some arm procedures, such as repair of a compound fracture, require immediate attention and necessitate emergency surgery and full-stomach considerations (see p. B-5).

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Standard premedication (see p. D-1).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA or LMA because children rarely tolerate regional anesthesia alone. In the older patient, regional anesthesia may be appropriate and can reduce the risk of aspiration pneumonitis associated with

GA in the patient with a full stomach. A combined technique offers the advantages of reduced anesthetic requirements and postop pain relief; however, regional anesthesia is relatively contraindicated in patients with neurovascular damage.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. D-1) except in acute trauma patients, where rapid-sequence induction is appropriate (see p. B-5).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-3).
Emergence	Management of emergence and extubation should be routine, except in difficult airway cases, which require awake extubation. Skin closure is frequently followed by application of a splint; patient should remain anesthetized during splinting procedure.

Regional anesthesia:

Ultrasound guidance: Ultrasound-guided nerve block techniques are increasingly used in pediatric anesthesia. The use of ultrasonography increases the ability to position the needle as close to the nerve as possible avoiding inadvertent trauma to the adjacent structures. Direct visualization also helps in optimizing the volume and distribution of the local anesthetic thus improving the safety and efficacy of the block.

Anesthetics and doses	See Table 12.7-1.
Interscalene block	Performed at levels of C6 to minimize risk of pneumothorax. The phrenic nerve lies anterior to the brachial plexus and is frequently blocked by anterior spread of LA, leading to hemidiaphragm paralysis. This is usually well tolerated; however, care must be taken in patients with respiratory compromise. Temporary Horner's syndrome may result from LA migration to sympathetic chain. Major complications (e.g., total spinal or pneumothorax) resulting from interscalene block are very rare; therefore, this technique is suitable for outpatients. Interscalene block is contraindicated in patients with contralateral recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy.
Infraclavicular block	The infraclavicular approach to brachial plexus block has the advantage of blocking the axillary and musculocutaneous nerves. The coracoid approach is shown to be safer than the classical approach. Use of ultrasonography increases the efficacy and safety of this block.
Axillary block	The medial aspect of the upper arm is innervated by the intercostobrachial nerve (T2) and requires a separate subcutaneous field block in the axilla, especially when a tourniquet is used. The lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm, a sensory branch of the musculocutaneous nerve supplying sensation to the lateral forearm, is frequently missed by the axillary approach to the brachial plexus. Thus, a block of this nerve at the elbow is sometimes necessary. The maximum recommended doses for local anesthetics are shown in Table 12.7-1.
Supplemental sedation	Supplemental sedation may be accomplished with use of propofol by continuous infusion (50–150 mcg/kg/min).
Blood and fluid requirements	Minimal blood loss IV: 22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4-2-1 rule maintenance IV catheter should be placed in the contralateral upper extremity.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes

Table 12.7-1. Maximum Recommended Doses of Anesthetics for Regional Anesthesia

Drug	mg/kg (*with epinephrine)	Duration (min)
Lidocaine	5 (*7)	45–180
Bupivacaine	2.5 (*3)	180–600
Ropivacaine	3	180–600
Tetracaine	1.5	180–600
2-Chloroprocaine	8 (*10)	30–60
Procaine	8 (*10)	60–90

Interscalene block complications	Total spinal Epidural anesthesia IV injection (Sz/dysrhythmias) Stellate ganglion block (Horner's syndrome) Laryngeal nerve block Phrenic nerve block Pneumothorax	Resuscitative equipment, including airway management tools, and intralipid should be immediately available. Dose of 20% intralipid: 1 mL/kg repeat × 2 max 3 mL/kg; infusion rate 0.25 mL/kg/min.
Infraclavicular block complications	Hematoma Pneumothorax Inadvertent intravascular injection	The coracoid approach has reduced risk of complications.
Axillary block complications	Inadequate block Intravascular injection Peripheral nerve damage Axillary hematoma Axillary artery thrombosis Pneumothorax	Very minimal doses of local anesthetic can cause CNS toxicity if reverse flow occurs during an intra-arterial injection. Axillary thrombosis and pneumothorax are extremely rare.

POSTOPERATIVE

Pain management	PCA (see p. E-4). Regional block	Combined regional-GA provides excellent postop pain management.
Tests	None routinely indicated.	

Suggested Readings

1. Ecoffey C: Pediatric regional anesthesia—upper extremity blocks. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 431–4.
2. Lammers C, Wyckaert C: Anesthesia for orthopedic surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 757–77.
3. Marhofer P, Greher M, Kapral S: Ultrasound guidance in regional anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth* 2005; 94(1):7–17.
4. Marhofer P, Invani G, Suresh S, Melman E, Zaragoza G, Bosenberg A: Everyday regional anesthesia in children. *Pediatr Anesth* 2012; 22(10):995–1001.
5. Marhofer P, Sitzwohl C, Greher M, et al: Ultrasound guidance for infraclavicular brachial plexus anesthesia in children. *Anaesthesia* 2004; 59:642–6.
6. Surech S, Wheeler M: Practical pediatric regional anesthesia. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2002; 20(1):83–113.
7. Zuckerberg AL, Yaster M: Anesthesia for orthopedic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 842–69.

POSTERIOR SPINAL INSTRUMENTATION AND FUSION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Posterior spinal instrumentation** refers to implanted metal rods affixed to the spine to correct and internally splint the deformed spine. Originally designed for scoliosis, posterior spinal instrumentation is commonly performed simultaneously with **spinal fusion** for a variety of diagnoses, including fracture, tumor, degenerative changes, and developmental spinal deformity. Although posterior spinal instrumentation with the ratcheted **Harrington rod** gained widespread usage in the 1970s, it is no longer used by spinal surgeons. The current standard is a hook-rod system, such as the **Cotrel-Duboussett** (C-D), the **Texas Scottish Rite Hospital** (TSRH), the **Miami Modular Orthopaedic Spinal System** (MOSS), and the **Universal Spine System** (USS). Regardless of the surgeon's choice of instrumentation, the spine is approached by an extensive midline posterior incision, in which a subperiosteal exposure (typically T2-5 down to L1-4) is used to elevate all the paraspinous muscles as far laterally as the tips of the transverse processes. Typically, 4–8 hooks are affixed to the posterior spinal elements (lamina, pedicles, or transverse processes) on both the concave and convex sides of the spine (Fig. 12.7-3). These points of spinal fixation are then joined to two contoured rods. By compressing along the convex surfaces and distracting along the concave surfaces, some degree of rotational correction is possible. Some spine surgeons advise the patient to wear a brace for the initial months following surgery; however, body casts are no longer necessary.

Sublaminar wire loops (Fig. 12.7-4) are commonly used instead of the hook-rod method of spinal instrumentation when treating neuromuscular spinal deformity (e.g., cerebral palsy, muscular dystrophy, myelomeningocele, or spinal muscular atrophy). This alternative construct provides more points of fixation to the spine and eliminates the need for postop bracing. When a large degree of pelvic obliquity is a component of the patient's deformity, the instrumentation often is extended into the iliac wings (Fig. 12-7.5).

Somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEPs) and **motor evoked potentials** (MEPs) are used routinely in centers where spinal deformity correction surgery is common. Close coordination among the surgeon, spinal cord monitoring personnel, and anesthesiologist is necessary to properly recognize adverse intraop spinal events and to minimize the occurrence of false-positive findings. Many spine surgeons also request that an intraop wake-up test be performed to further verify spinal cord function.

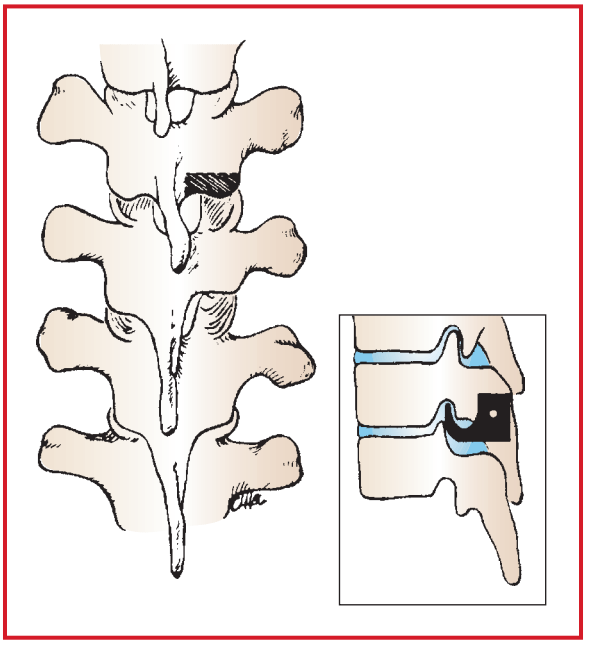


Figure 12.7-3. Placement of a standard pedicle hook, in a hood-rod device. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW, ed: *Operative Orthopaedics*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

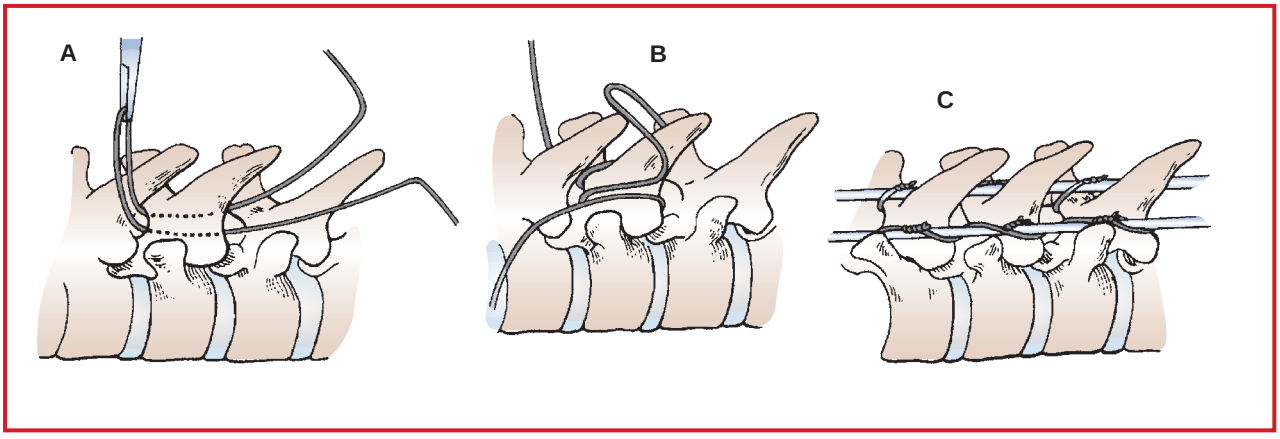


Figure 12.7-4. An example of passing and attaching sublaminar wires. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW, ed: *Operative Orthopaedics*, 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

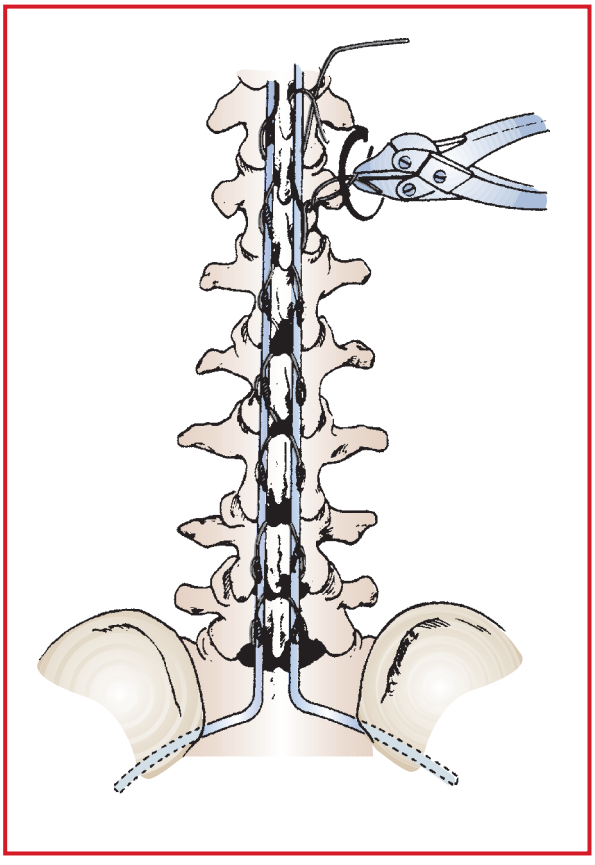


Figure 12.7-5. Positioning rods in pelvis; sublaminar wires being tightened. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW, ed: *Operative Orthopaedics,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Scoliosis (usually idiopathic or neuromuscular); kyphosis (increased round back); reconstruction for tumor, trauma, or other

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Prone (on spinal frame or bolsters); avoid abdominal, elbow, and ocular compression.
Incision	Posterior midline; optional separate iliac crest bone graft
Special instrumentation	Rods, hooks, pedicle screws, wires
Unique considerations	"Wake-up" test and/or SSEPs; frequently, induced ↓ BP is requested; prolonged prone positioning places brachial plexus and ulnar nerve at risk.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1–2 g iv
Surgical time	2–6 h
Closing considerations	Greatest blood loss typically toward the end of procedure. Avoid hypotension after instrumentation is implanted.
EBL	1200–3000 mL
Postop care	ICU: 1–2 d
Mortality	0–0.5%
Morbidity	Acute ileus: very common Genitourinary infection: 5–7% Hematoma, massive bleeding: 1–5% Pneumothorax, pneumonia, atelectasis: 1–5% Hook dislodgement requiring reoperation: 0–2% Wound infection: 0–2% Superior mesenteric artery syndrome: 0–1% Thromboembolism: < 1% Spinal cord injury and/or root injury: 0.6% Delayed: Pseudarthrosis: 0–5% Late rod fracture: 0–5% Progression of spinal deformity: 0–2%
Pain score	7–9

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually 8–40 yr
Male:Female	1:5
Incidence	1–2/10,000
Etiology	Idiopathic (50–75%); neuromuscular (20–30%); associated with syndromes such as osteochondral dystrophies, osteogenesis imperfecta, etc. (5%); congenital scoliosis (2–5%)
Associated conditions	*Neuromuscular:* Friedreich's ataxia (myocarditis and other cardiovascular anomalies; sudden death) Myelomeningocele (latex allergy, chronic UTI, hydrocephalus) Muscular dystrophy (muscle weakness, cardiomyopathy, dysrhythmias, succinylcholine → prolonged muscle contraction, ↑ sensitivity to respiratory depressant effect of barbiturates, opiates, and benzodiazepines) Cerebral palsy (GERD,↓ airway protective reflexes, ↑ postop pulmonary complications, malnourishment, Sz, medication may interfere with Plt function) Higher incidence of MH *Connective tissue disease:* Ehlers-Danlos and Marfan syndromes (avoid ↑ BP → aortic dissection; ↑ risk of pneumothorax). Osteogenesis imperfecta (position and intubate with great care). Congenital osteochondral dystrophies

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Spinal Reconstruction and Fusion, (see p. 997).

Suggested Readings

1. Abu-Kishk I, Kozer E, Hod-Feins R, et al: Pediatric scoliosis surgery—is postoperative intensive care unit admission really necessary? *Paediatr Anaesth* 2013; 23:271–7.
2. Auerbach JD, Lonner BS, Antonacci MD, et al: Perioperative outcomes and complications related to teaching residents and fellows in scoliosis surgery. *Spine* 2008; 33(10):1113–8.
3. Borgeat A, Blumenthal S: Postoperative pain management following scoliosis surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2008; 21(3): 313–6.
4. Heller KD, Wirtz DC, Siebert CH, et al: Spinal stabilization in Duchenne muscular dystrophy: principles of treatment and record of 31 operative treated cases. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2001; 10(1):18–24.
5. Mathieseen O, Dahl B, Thomsen BA, et al: A comprehensive multimodal pain treatment reduce opioid consumption after multilevel spine surgery. *Eur Spine J* 2013; 22(9):2089–96.
6. Rusy LM, Hainsworth KR, Nelson TJ, et al: Gabepentin use in pediatric spinal fusion patients: a randomized, double-blind, controlled trial. *Anesth Analg* 2010; 110(5):1393–8.
7. Thomson JD, Banta JV: Scoliosis in cerebral palsy: an overview and recent results. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2001; 10(1):6–9.
8. Torre-Healy A, Samdani AF: Newer technologies for the treatment of scoliosis in the growing spine. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2007; 18(4):697–705.

ANTERIOR SPINAL FUSION FOR SCOLIOSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Anterior spinal fusion** is performed through a transthoracic and/or retroperitoneal approach to the vertebral bodies, in which the intervertebral discs are removed and a bone graft is placed between the vertebral bodies. The disc removal ("release") loosens the spine and allows greater deformity correction than posterior-only procedures. Often, no instrumentation is used anteriorly when the anterior fusion is performed as a first stage to a "front-and-back" fusion. (In such cases, posterior spinal instrumentation is subsequently implanted to correct the spinal deformity.) Anterior spinal instrumentation is performed when a posterior spinal fusion is not needed (e.g., idiopathic thoracolumbar or lumbar scoliosis).

When **instrumentation of the anterior spine** is performed, the surgical approach is through a flank incision, then through a rib bed on the convex side of the curve (usually the 10th rib). The retroperitoneal plane is entered and developed by blunt dissection behind the transversus abdominis muscle. The pleural cavity is entered, and the diaphragm usually must be divided circumferentially near its costal origin and around posteriorly to the spine. The prevertebral areolar plane is then entered and the segmental vessels to each vertebral body are clipped or cauterized in the midline. The psoas muscle is elevated off the lateral aspects of the vertebral bodies. Each disc in the fusion area (usually 3–5 discs) is excised back to the posterior longitudinal ligament. Next, vertebral screws (e.g., **Texas Scottish Rite Hospital** [TSRH], **Miami Modular Orthopaedic Spine System** [MOSS], **Universal Spine System** [USS] instrumentation) are inserted transversely across the appropriate bodies and joined at their heads by a rod (Figs. 12.7-6 and 12.7-7). Bone graft (typically from the rib harvested during the surgical approach) is placed within each discectomy level. A chest tube is placed before closure of the thoracic cavity.

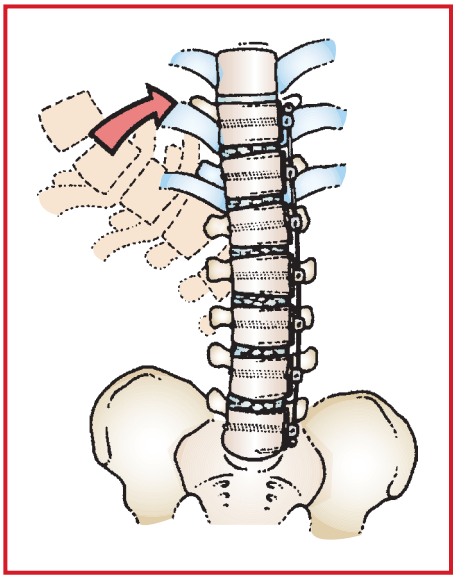


Figure 12.7-6. Dwyer instrumentation used to make spinal correction. (Reproduced with permission from Crenshaw AH, ed: *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics*, 8th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1992.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Idiopathic or neuromuscular scoliosis

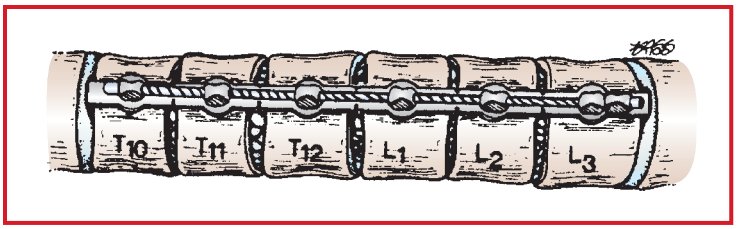


Figure 12.7-7. Instrumentation from T10-L3 (Zielke). (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW, ed: *Operative Orthopaedics,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Fusion with Instrumentation	Release (No Instrumentation)
Position	Full lateral decubitus (Fig. 12.7-8)	⇐
Incision	Flank: over rib at top vertebra in the curve (usually T9–T11)	⇐
Special instrumentation	Screws, staples, rods	None
Unique considerations	Flex OR table at thoracolumbar junction until disc removal and deformity correction. Procedure often followed by posterior spinal fusion. Proximity of great vessels → potential for major bleeding. Patients with neuromuscular scoliosis often have poor generalized nutrition. SSEP/MEP often used to monitor spinal cord function.	⇐ Uninstrumented release is always followed by posterior spinal fusion with instrumentation.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	3–4 h	2–3 h
Closing considerations	Chest tube always used; hypotension, if used electively, must be reversed before closure.	⇐
EBL	500–2000 mL	250–2000 mL
Postop care	ICU 1–2 d	⇐
Mortality	0–2%, depending on underlying conditions	⇐
Morbidity	Overall: 30%, depending on underlying condition	20%
	Ileus and atelectasis: ~50%	⇐
	UTI: 10–25% (common in spina bifida)	⇐
	Minor transient root weakness or paraesthesia: 10–20%	1–5%
	Partial sympathectomy: common	⇐
	Late kyphosis above instrumentation: 5–10%	–
	Nonunion and hardware failure: 5%	–
	Massive blood loss: 2–5%	⇐
	Respiratory failure: 1–2%	⇐
	Pneumonia: 1%	⇐
	Paraplegia (acute anterior spinal artery syndrome): < 1%	⇐
	Thromboembolism: rare (< 5% in children)	⇐
Pain score	5–8	4–7

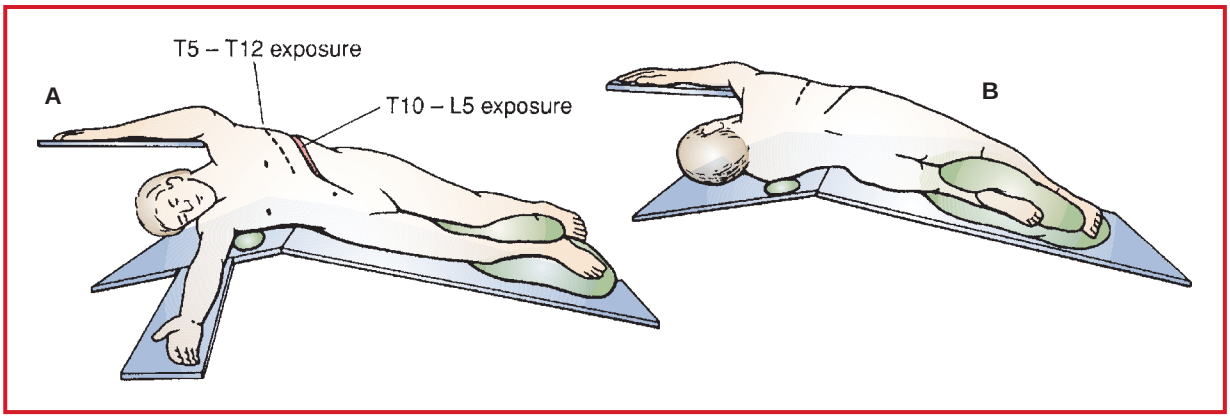


Figure 12.7-8. Lateral decubitus position (diagrammatic) for anterior spinal procedures: (**A**) anterior view; (**B**) posterior view. Roll is placed under axilla to minimize axillary artery compression. Skin incision for exposure of T5–T12 is shown with the dotted line. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW, ed: *Operative Orthopaedics,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	5–35 yr
Male:Female	Idiopathic: 1:10 Neuromuscular: 1:1
Incidence	< 1/10,000
Etiology	Idiopathic scoliosis; neuromuscular disease (especially cerebral palsy, spina bifida, polio, myopathies, muscular dystrophies); other genetic bone dysplasias; Marfan syndrome
Associated conditions	See Associated Conditions for Posterior Spinal Instrumentation and Fusion, p. 1396.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Spinal Reconstruction and Fusion, (see p. 997).

Suggested Readings

1. Betz RR, Shufflebarger H: Anterior versus posterior instrumentation for the correction of thoracic idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine* 2001; 26(9):1095–100.
2. Rusy LM, Hainsworth KR, Nelson TJ, et al: Gabapentin use in pediatric spinal fusion patients: a randomized, double-blind, controlled trial. *Anesth Analg* 2010; 110(5):1393–8.

PELVIC OSTEOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Pelvic osteotomy is used to improve hip instability in cases of developmental hip dysplasia. The purpose of the procedure is to improve the coverage of the femoral head and stimulate appropriate growth of the shallow acetabulum. It is frequently performed in conjunction with open reduction and occasionally with femoral osteotomy.

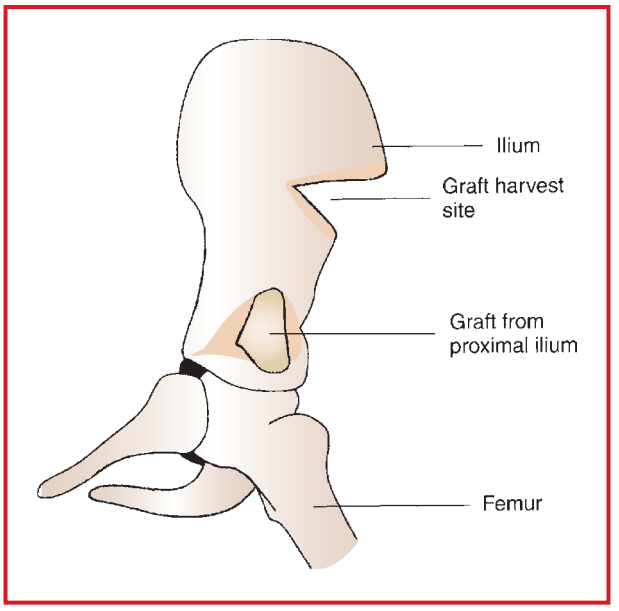


Figure 12.7-9. Pemberton osteotomy: A triangular graft is cut from the proximal ilium, and the graft is carefully wedged into the osteotomy site. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

The surgical approach is made along the iliac crest, exposing the external (gluteal) surface of the iliac bone and sometimes the internal (iliac) surface as well. The pelvis is osteotomized closely above the acetabulum and sometimes through the pubis and ischium, depending on the direction of rotation and reorientation desired. Pelvic osteotomies either reorient an intact acetabular hyaline cartilage surface or are designed as salvage procedures to enlarge the acetabulum by fibrocartilage metaplasia (see Acetabular Augmentation and Chiari, p. 1404). **Salter's innominate osteotomy** is the classic reorientation osteotomy, in which a complete cut of the supra-acetabular iliac bone allows rotation through the symphysis pubis. **Pemberton's operation** is a slightly more difficult incomplete iliac osteotomy, rotating on the triradius cartilage (Fig. 12.7-9), which is at the center of the acetabulum in young children. The **Steel, "Dial"** or **Eppright osteotomies** are the most difficult reorientation procedures. In each, the acetabulum is freed totally from any bony contact with the remainder of the pelvis and rotated into better position.

Usual preop diagnosis: Acetabular dysplasia due to congenital or developmental hip dislocation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Salter	Pemberton	Steel, Dial
Position	Supine or slightly lateral	⇐	⇐
Incision	Oblique or longitudinal anterior hip	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Steinmann pins	Special curved, custom osteotomes	Steinmann pins
Unique considerations	Frequently follows previous unsuccessful open hip surgery.	⇐	⇐ + additional ischial incision
Antibiotics	Usually, cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–2 h	2–3 h	2–4 h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Salter	Pemberton	Steel, Dial
Closing considerations	Hip spica	⇐	⇐
EBL	100–300 mL	⇐	200–600 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; care as needed for spica cast	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Avascular necrosis of the hip: 5–6%	–	–
	Persistent hip subluxation: 5%	⇐	⇐
	Infection: 1%	⇐	⇐
	Sciatic or perineal palsy: <0.1%	⇐	⇐
	Excess bleeding from superior gluteal artery: Rare	⇐	Occasional
	Ileus: Rare	⇐	Occasional
Pain score	2–5	2–5	3–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	18 mo–6 yr, if dislocated 18 mo–10 yr, if only subluxated	18 mo–7 yr	12 yr
Male:Female	1:2	⇐	⇐
Incidence	1/10,000	1/10,000	1/10,000
Etiology	Congenital and/or developmental hip dysplasia: 98% Perthes disease: 1%	⇐	⇐
Associated conditions	Torticollis: < 1%	⇐	⇐
	Other joint contractures in cases of neuromuscular dislocation: <1%	⇐	⇐

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Pogliacomi F, De Filippo M, Costantino C, et al: 2006: the value of pelvic and femoral osteotomies in hip surgery. *Acta Biomed* 2007; 78(1):60–70.
2. Sanchez-Sotelo J, Trousdale RT, Berry DJ, et al: Surgical treatment of developmental dysplasia of the hip in adults: I. Nonarthroplasty options. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2002; 10(5):321–33.
3. Vitale MG, Skaggs DL: Developmental dysplasia of the hip from six months to four years of age. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2001; 9(6):401–11.

ACETABULAR AUGMENTATION (SHELF) & CHIARI OSTEOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Acetabular augmentation is a "salvage" procedure used to deepen the hip socket when a realignment osteotomy of the pelvis and/or femur would not adequately cover the femoral head. This is accomplished by securing strips of cortical cancellous bone graft onto the proximal surface of the hip capsule. The surgical approach is anterior to the hip, elevating the gluteal muscles subperiosteally from the outer surface of the ilium. The reflected head of the rectus femoris tendon is elevated, and a domed-shaped slot is created just above the capsular attachment to the ilium. Abundant cortical cancellous strips of bone graft are then harvested from the upper two-thirds of the outer wall of the ilium. These bone grafts have a natural curve and lie on the convexity of the hip capsule. No internal fixation, other than suture repair, is used to hold the bone graft in place. This creates a large bony augmentation (shelf) over the uncovered femoral capsule.

Variant procedure or approaches: The bone graft may be taken as a large, sculpted, solitary, cortical cancellous strut or wedge, or more commonly, as curved "shavings" anchored in a dome-shaped slot just above the hip capsule. In the **Chiari procedure,** a complete dome-shaped osteotomy allows lateral displacement of the ilium just above the proximal hip capsule (Fig. 12.7-10). The line of the osteotomy corresponds more or less with the slot of the shelf procedure. In either case, the result is abundant bony coverage over the hip capsule, which undergoes metaplasia into fibrocartilage.

Usual preop diagnosis: Acetabular dysplasia (shallow socket) due to congenital hip dislocation or developmental neurologic subluxation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Acetabular Augmentation	Chiari Osteotomy
Position	Supine or slightly tilted up (reverse Trendelenburg)	⇐ or lateral decubitus
Incision	Oblique or longitudinal; anterior hip region	⇐
Special instrumentation	Usually no internal fixation; I.I. or intraop x-ray	Two large screws or pins; I.I. or intraop x-ray
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐

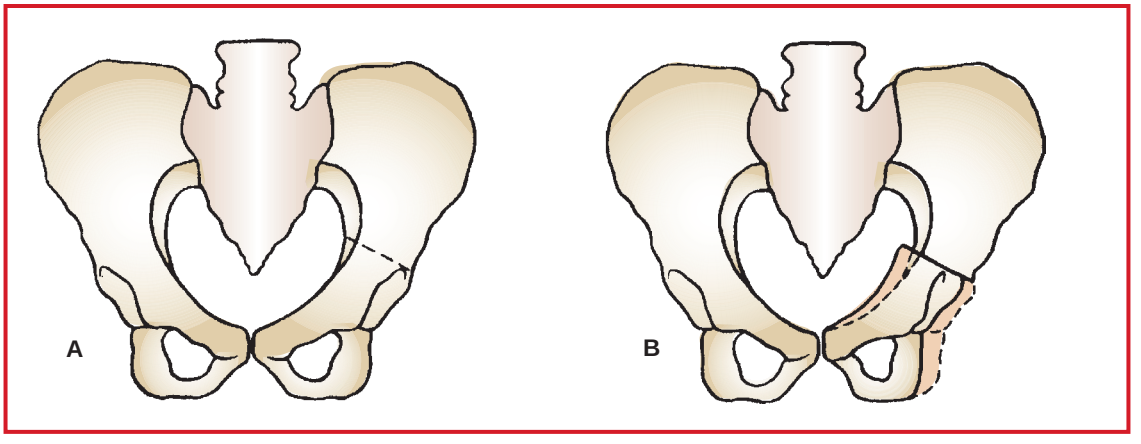


Figure 12.7-10. Chiari osteotomy: **A:** Line of osteotomy. **B:** Completed osteotomy. (Reproduced with permission from Crenshaw AH, ed: *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics,* 8th edition. Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1992.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Acetabular Augmentation	Chiari Osteotomy
Surgical time	1.5–3 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Unilateral or 1.5 spica cast mandatory	Spica cast (optional)
EBL	100–500 mL	200–800 mL
Postop care	PACU → room. Care as necessary for cast.	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve dysfunction: 30–50% Infection: 1%	Sciatic or peroneal palsy: 2% Possible need for later C-section: Rare
Pain score	4–6	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6–35 yr
Male:Female	1:1.5
Incidence	< 1/10,000 in general population; in neuromuscular population (e.g., cerebral palsy, poliomyelitis residuals): 5–10%
Etiology	Neuromuscular hip subluxation with shallow acetabulum; residual shallow acetabulum (poor coverage from congenitally dislocated hip)
Associated conditions	Cerebral palsy; polio; spina bifida; myopathy; congenital atrophies; Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Betz RR, Kumar Si, Palmer CT, et al: Chiari pelvic osteotomy in children and young adults. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1988; 70(2): 182–91.
2. Fong HC, Lu W, Li YH, et al: Chiari osteotomy and shelf augmentation in the treatment of hip dysplasia. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2000; 20(6):740–4.
3. Piontek T, Szulc A, Gowacki M, et al: Distant outcomes of the Chiari osteotomy 30 years follow up evaluation. *Orthop Traumatol Rehabil* 2006; 8(1):16–23.
4. Summers BN, Turner A, Wynn-Jones CH: The shelf operation in the management of late presentation of congenital hip dysplasia. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1988; 70(1):63–8.
5. Zuckerman JD, Staheli LT, McLaughlin JF: Acetabular augmentation for progressive hip subluxation in cerebral palsy. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1984; 4(4):436–42.

OBER FASCIOTOMY, YOUNT-OBER RELEASE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Ober's fasciotomy** is performed to release flexion, abduction, and external rotation contracture at the hip. This contracture usually occurs as a result of profound flaccid paralysis → prolonged positioning in a so-called

frog position of 90° flexion, abduction, and lateral rotation at the hips. This results in tightening of the iliotibial (IT) band (the greatly thickened lateral aspect of the fascia lata) and related structures. The operation is performed through an anterolateral incision just distal to the iliac crest. All of the fascial investments of the tensor, sartorius, and, at times, the rectus femoris and gluteus medias and minimus are divided, while preserving any normal-appearing muscle fibers. The limb is stretched into progressively more adduction and extension, until a neutral position can be obtained. The **Yount procedure** is added when the knee also is contracted in a flexed mode due to tightness of the IT band. The Yount procedure consists of further resection of a segment of the IT band and a lateral intermuscular septum through a separate distal midlateral longitudinal incision just above the knee. An oblique segment of the IT band and septum are removed and not repaired.

Usual preop diagnosis: Flaccid paralysis and "frog"-type contracture due to poliomyelitis, myelomeningocele, or myopathy

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Ober Fasciotomy	Yount-Ober Release
Position	Supine; both legs must be prepped and draped to well above the iliac crest area for intraop stretching.	⇐
Incision	Oblique iliac crest	Midlateral longitudinal above knee joint, ~10 cm
Unique considerations	Patients with sensory and motor loss have a tendency to get pressure sores.	⇐
Antibiotics	Usually none	⇐
Surgical time	1 h/side	30 min/side
Closing considerations	Bilateral above-knee casts	⇐
EBL	< 150 mL	< 50 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; extensive physical therapy program of stretching exercises. Myopathic patients at risk for postop respiratory compromise.	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Hematoma: ~1% Fracture of atrophied bone postop: < 1% Infection < 1% Pressure sores from positioning or casts: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	3–4	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2–15 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Extremely rare in children born in the United States; however, polio is seen commonly in southeast Asian and Latin-American immigrants.
Etiology	Polio; myelomeningocele; myopathy or dystrophy
Associated conditions	Other contractures; incontinence; pressure sores in myelomeningocele

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Irwin CE: The iliotibial band, its role in producing deformity in poliomyelitis. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1949; 31:141–52.
2. Ober FR: The role of the iliotibial band and fascia lata as a factor in the causation of low-back disabilities and sciatica. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1936; 18:105–19.

HIP, OPEN REDUCTION & FEMORAL SHORTENING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Open reduction of the hip** replaces a dislocated femoral head into the anatomic acetabulum, at times after an unsuccessful attempt to reduce the hip by closed means. A developmental dislocation presents with a more normal acetabulum and occurs around birth or later. A teratologic congenital dislocation of the hip occurs early in utero and, as a result, has a high-riding dislocation with a poorly developed acetabulum, presenting much more difficulty in obtaining and maintaining reduction. The most common surgical approach is through an extended anterior incision. The hip capsule is exposed circumferentially, after division and tagging of the origins of the rectus, femoris, and sartorius muscles and retraction of the tensor and gluteal muscles. The iliopsoas tendon is either lengthened or divided. The capsule is opened in an oblique fashion, the ligamentum teres is excised, and any obstacle to reduction is removed. The femoral head is replaced in the socket, and the capsule is repaired in a "vest-over-pants" imbrication, with the hip reduced under direct visualization (Fig. 12.7-11). A medial approach through the adductor region can be used in very young children (< 18 mo) but does not allow a capsular repair. If femoral shortening is necessary, the surgical excision is either extended anterolaterally or a separate lateral incision is made longitudinally over the proximal femur.

Variant procedure or approaches: Most children < 2 yr old can simply have the hip repositioned—closed or open—and subsequently have normal hip development. In older children, especially with a high dislocation, a segment of the femur is removed subtrochanterically to allow reduction without pressure (thus allowing "descent" of the femoral head). If the acetabulum is very shallow, a pelvic osteotomy may be added.

Usual preop diagnosis: Developmental dislocation of hip; teratologic congenital dislocation of hip

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open Reduction	Open Reduction + Femoral Shortening
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Oblique ("bikini") along the iliac crest or medial longitudinal over joint	⇐ + anterolateral thigh over joint
Special instrumentation	None	Plates and screws
Unique considerations	Preliminary arthrogram and, often, attempted closed reduction. I.I. is used.	⇐
Antibiotics	Usually cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–3 h	2–4 h
Closing considerations	Hip spica cast applied on child's spica frame. **NB:** Do not wake patient until last radiograph is taken, in case cast has to be reapplied.	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL	100–400 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; care as necessary for spica cast	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐

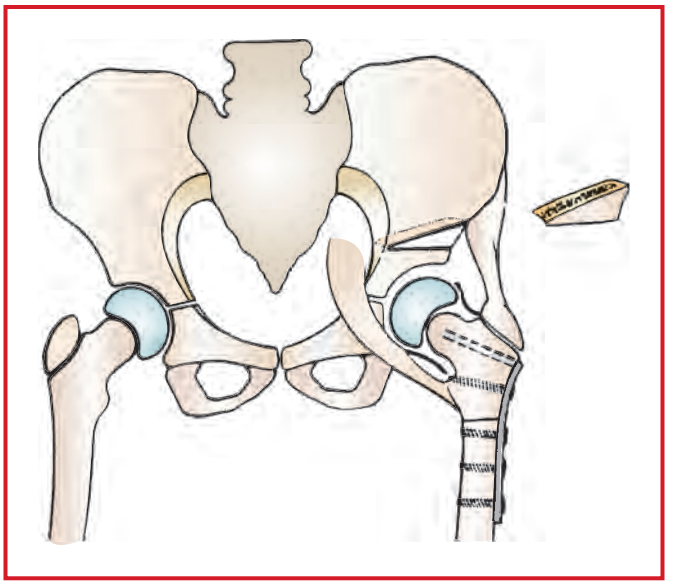


Figure 12.7-11. Open reduction with femoral shortening. (Reproduced with permission from Crenshaw AH, ed: *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics,* 8th edition Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis: 1992.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Open Reduction	Open Reduction + Femoral Shortening
Morbidity	Avascular necrosis of femoral head	⇐
	Stiffness and late arthritis	⇐
	Limb length discrepancy	⇐
	Marked scrotal or labial swelling: temporary	⇐
	Redislocation	⇐
	Infection	⇐
Pain score	2–4	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Closed reduction: 3 mo–3 yr Open reduction: 6 mo–10 yr Open reduction femoral shortening: 2–14 yr
Male:Female	1:5 (approximate)
Incidence	1:10,000
Etiology	Genetic background; breech presentation; firstborn girl
Associated conditions	Arthrogryposis; Larsen's disease; myelomeningocele; chromosomal anomalies; congenital torticollis; cerebral palsy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Hogan KA, Blake M, Gross RH: Subtrochanteric valgus osteotomy for chronically dislocated, painful spastic hips. Surgical technique. *J Bone Joint Surg* 2007; 89(Suppl 2):226–31.
2. Moseley CF: Developmental hip dysplasia and dislocation: management of the older child. *Instr Course Lect* 2001; 50:547–53.
3. Wenger, DR, Lee CS, Kolman B: Derotational femoral shortening for developmental dislocation of the hip: special indications and results in the child younger than 2 years. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1995; 15(6):768–79.

ADDUCTOR RELEASE OR TRANSFER, PSOAS RELEASE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The adductor tendons and often the iliopsoas tendon are released in spastic and other neurologic conditions (especially cerebral palsy). The goal is to allow greater abduction by decreasing the strength of the adductors and flexors. The releases are also performed for other causes of hip contracture due to developmental hip dislocation, juvenile arthritis, etc. The procedure is performed with the patient supine, using a medial groin incision in which the tendons (usually the adductor longus, brevis, and gracilis) are isolated and divided by electrocautery. In the classic procedure, popularized by **Banks** and **Green,** the anterior branch of the obturator nerve is divided on the surface of the adductor brevis to affect more permanent adductor weakness. This procedure is now less popular because the denervated muscles can undergo denervation fibrosis resulting in recurrent contracture. The iliopsoas tendon may be released at its insertion on the lesser trochanter, in the base of the adductor incision; or just the tendinous portion of the combined iliopsoas may be released at the pelvic rim, which produces a more modest degree of the flexor lengthening. Some surgeons transfer the adductor longus and gracilis muscles proximally and laterally, suturing them to the ischium to convert the adductors to hip extensors by changing their mechanics.

Usual preop diagnosis: Adduction and flexion contracture of the hip with subluxation due to cerebral palsy, acquired encephalopathy, or progressive neurologic disorder.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Adductor Release	Adductor Transfer	Psoas Release
Position	Supine	Supine or lithotomy	⇐
Incision	Medial proximal groin, longitudinal or transverse	Transverse medial groin	Anterior groin
Unique considerations	Frequently bilateral; often poor hygiene, especially if severe contracture; proximity to perineum	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	± cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	1.5 h	1 h
Closing considerations	Bilateral leg casts or double spica cast	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room; care as necessary for spica cast	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Hematoma, drainage Infection: < 1% Recurrence of adduction deformity	⇐ ⇐ 	⇐ ⇐
Pain score	2–4	2–4	2–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2–20 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	0 in general population; 30% of cerebral palsy patients (0.6–5.9/1000)
Etiology	Cerebral palsy (90%); slowly progressive degenerative neurologic conditions (8–10%); head injury and drowning (1–2%)
Associated conditions	Multiple other contractures; GERD; poor general nutrition; mental retardation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. El Hage S, Rachkidi R, Noun Z, et al: Is percutaneous adductor tenotomy as effective and safe as the open procedure? *J Pediatr Orthop* 2010; 30:485–8.
2. Presedo A, Oh CW, Dabney KW, et al: Soft-tissue releases to treat spastic hip subluxation in children with cerebral palsy. *J Bone Joint Surg* 2005; 87:832–41.
3. Reimers J, Poulsen S: Adductor transfer versus tenotomy for stability of the hip in spastic cerebral palsy. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1984; 4(1):52–4.
4. Rinsky LA: Surgery for cerebral palsy. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 4485–504.

PINNING OF SLIPPED CAPITAL FEMORAL EPIPHYSIS (SCFE)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Slipped capital femoral epiphysis is a mechanical failure of the proximal femoral growth plate. During the rapid growth period, the shearing stress of the body weight on the proximal femoral growth plate may cause the femoral head (capital epiphysis) to gradually move relative to the femoral neck through the physis or growth cartilage. The displacement occurs over weeks to months, with the head appearing to move posteriorly and inferiorly on the neck. Percutaneous **in situ pinning** (no reduction) is the most common treatment. The goal is to prevent further slipping and subsequent arthritis by causing closure of the growth plate. The procedure must be performed under radiographic control (usually I.I.), using a variety of threaded pins or screws, which are passed through the neck into the femoral head. Currently, the favored technique uses one cannulated screw, which is passed percutaneously over a guide wire from the anterolateral aspect of the proximal femur.

Variant procedure or approaches: Although most slips are chronic, occasionally following mild trauma, an acute slip will supervene. Following severe trauma, a previously normal hip with an open physis (growth plate) may suffer an acute displacement. In such acute slips, some degree of reduction may be possible, and two pins are usually necessary. Because pin-related complications are common, some surgeons prefer to close the growth plate by open drilling and curettement, with bone grafting across the cartilaginous plates. This is performed through an anterior incision, opening the hip capsule widely from an oblique groin incision. No pins are used, but an iliac bone graft is placed across the physis. A body spica cast is frequently needed. After the physis is closed, if there is severe residual deformity, a corrective osteotomy is performed in the trochanteric region (see Proximal Femoral Osteotomy, Southwick Procedure, p. 1414).

Usual preop diagnosis: Acute or chronic SCFE

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Pinning of SCFE	Variant Open Epiphysiodesis
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Short, proximal thigh or stab incision	Anterolateral groin
Special instrumentation	Guide wires; cannulated screws; I.I.; fracture table	I.I. (recommended)
Unique considerations	Frequently bilateral (≤ 20%); often obese	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Pinning of SCFE	Variant Open Epiphysiodesis
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv	⇐
Surgical time	0.5–2 h	1–3 h
Closing considerations	None	Frequently needs spica cast
EBL	Negligible	200–500 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	Body spica cast, occasionally
Mortality	Minimal	⇐
Morbidity	Unsuspected pin penetration: ≤ 37% Avascular necrosis: ≤ 33% (in acute slip cases) Chondrolysis, hip stiffness: 1–28% Fracture after pin removal : <1% Infection: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	2–3	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	10–16 yr
Male:Female	2–3:1
Incidence	1–3/100,000 (higher in African Americans)
Etiology	Excessive loading of the growth plate (obesity or increased angle of inclination of the physis) Insufficient tensile strength of collagen and proteoglycans around the femoral neck Increased thickness of the physis as from excessive growth hormone, hypogonadism, hypothyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, renal osteodystrophy, almost any other significant endocrinopathy Radiation therapy
Associated conditions	Obesity; endocrinopathies; renal osteodystrophy

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Aadalen RJ, Weiner DS, Hoyt W, et al: Acute slipped capital femoral epiphysis. *J Bone Joint Surg*; 1974; 56(7):1473–87.
2. Aronsson DD, Loder RT, Breur GJ, et al: Slipped capital femoral epiphysis: current concepts. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2006; 14:666–79.
3. Dobbs MB, Weinstein SL: Natural history and long-term outcomes of slipped capital femoral epiphysis. *Instr Course Lect* 2001; 50:571–5.
4. Lee FY, Chapman CB: In situ pinning of hip for stable slipped capital femoral epiphysis on a radiolucent operating table. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2003; 23(1):27–9.
5. Loder RT: Unstable slipped capital femoral epiphysis. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2001; 21(5):694–9.
6. Novais EN, Millis MB: Slipped capital femoral epiphysis: prevalence, pathogenesis, and natural history. *Clin Orthop Related Res* 2012; 470:3432–8.

FLEXIBLE INTRAMEDULLARY NAILING OF LONG-BONE FRACTURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The purpose of flexible nailing of long bones is to obtain stability with minimal surgical risk. This method is applicable to both lower- and upper-extremity fractures. Casting is unnecessary in many cases because of the balanced dynamic forces exerted by the elastic memory of the implanted precontoured nails. This is particularly appealing when treating femur fractures that otherwise would require spica casting and prolonged immobility. This technique results in a high rate of fracture union, promoted by the implant load-sharing characteristics with a modulus of elasticity that is close to bone, thereby avoiding stress shielding. The flexible nailing technique for treatment of femur fractures in children also avoids the risk of avascular necrosis of the femoral head because of a more distal entry point on the bone, compared to standard rigid intramedullary nails that enter the medullary canal at the base of the femoral neck, where the primary vascular supply to the femoral head is located.

The child is placed supine on a radiolucent operating table, although some surgeons prefer to use a fracture table when treating femur fractures with this method. The surgeon performs a closed reduction of the fracture with fluoroscopy assistance, proceeding to an open incision and reduction only if an acceptable fracture reduction cannot be achieved with closed techniques. After the fracture is aligned, a small incision for each nail is made on the extremity proximal to the physis at the knee. A drill is used to create an entry point in the cortex of the bone, and each nail is contoured before insertion through this entry point. No intramedullary reaming is performed before nail insertion. The rare need for cast application is judged by intraop imaging for rotational and angular stability.

Usual preop diagnosis: Fracture

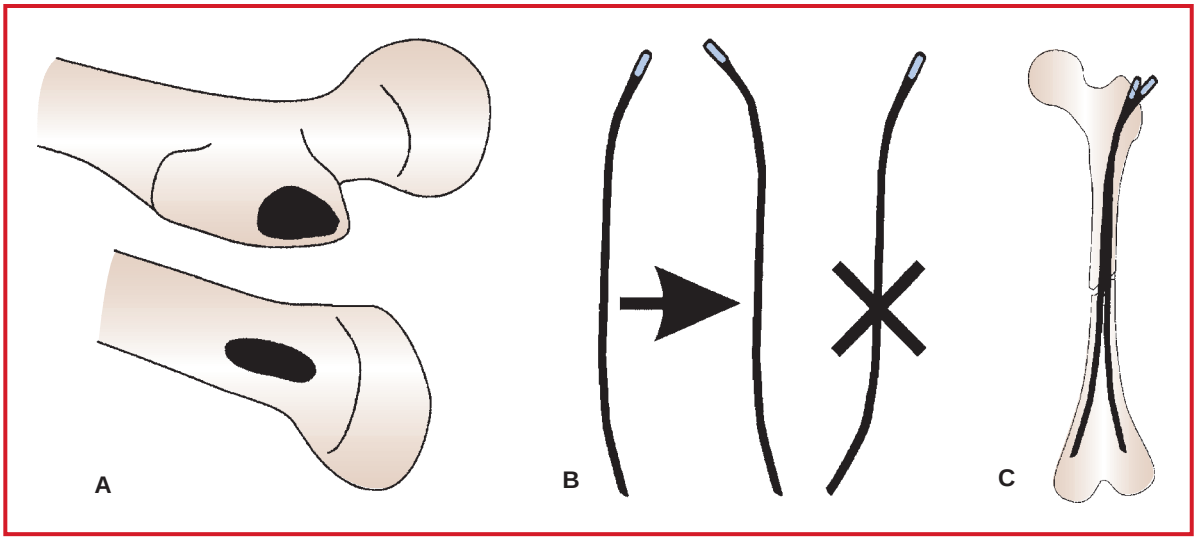


Figure 12.7-12. Intramedullary nailing. **A:** Nail entry site through greater trochanter (antegrade) or distal metaphysic (retrograde). **B:** Nails are contoured before insertion. **C:** Fracture stabilized with two antegrade nails. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Closed Reduction	Open Reduction
Position	Supine; may be performed on fracture table if femoral.	⇐
Incision	2–3 cm at entry site for each nail	Incision at fracture site and 2–3 cm at entry site for each nail
Instrumentation	Intramedullary nails, power drill, I.I.	⇐
Unique considerations	Blood loss from fracture; muscle relaxation may be necessary to obtain reduction.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg	⇐
Surgical time	45–60 min	60–90 min
Closing considerations	May supplement with cast.	⇐
EBL	Minimal	50–200 mL
Postoperative care	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	Rare, except in multitrauma	⇐
Morbidity	Nonunion, malunion Shortening Infection Painful instrumentation	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	4–7	4–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6–14 yr
Male:Female	2.6:1
Incidence	19/100,000 for femoral shaft
Etiology	Trauma
Associated conditions	Usually normal, healthy child

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Kocher MS, Sink EL, Blasier RD, et al: Treatment of pediatric diaphyseal femur fractures. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2009; 17:718–25.
2. Rathjen KE, Riccio AI, De La Garza D: Stainless steel flexible intramedullary fixation of unstable femoral shaft fractures in children. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2007; 27:432–41.
3. Vrsansky P, Bourdelat D, Al Faour: Flexible stable intramedullary pinning technique in the treatment of pediatric fractures. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2000; 20(1):23–7.

PROXIMAL FEMORAL OSTEOTOMY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Femoral osteotomy is performed in the inter- or subtrochanteric area to redirect the femoral head more superiorly (valgus) or inferiorly (varus) and/or for rotational correction of excessive medial/femoral torsion (anteversion). A plate and screws are commonly used, but an **external fixator** and/or spica cast may be placed instead. The usual surgical approach is direct lateral over the proximal shaft of the femur, beginning at the greater trochanter. The deep fascia is split, and the underlying vastus muscle is elevated subperiosteally to expose the femoral shaft. Normally, a power saw is used to make the osteotomy, and depending on the correction desired, a variety of internal fixation devices can be used.

Variant procedure or approaches: Different named plates (e.g., AO blade, Coventry screw, Richards screw, Wagner) may be used to affix the proximal to the distal femoral segments. A 1- to 4-cm segment of femur may be removed in cases of superior hip dislocation to allow soft tissue relaxation and descent of the femoral head into the socket. Most proximal femoral osteotomies are performed in the subtrochanteric area, but some are performed in the intertrochanteric or base of the neck (**Kramer compensating**). The **Southwick osteotomy** is a more complicated example of a subtrochanteric osteotomy, which corrects for three directions (varus, lateral rotation, and extension).

Usual preop diagnosis: Developmental hip subluxation; excessive hip anteversion; residual deformity from Perthes disease; coxa vara; slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE); residual deformity

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Varus Derotation Osteotomy + Plate and Screws	External Fixator	Southwick or Kramer
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Lateral thigh or, occasionally, long anterior thigh	⇐	⇐
Special instrumentation	Plate and screws; power drill and saw; I.I.	External fixator; multiple pins; I.I.	Plate and screws; power drill and saw; I.I.
Unique considerations	Fracture or radiolucent table	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	± Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1.5–2.5 h		2–4 h
Closing considerations	Spica cast, frequently	± Spica cast	Spica cast, occasionally
EBL	250–750 mL	⇐	500–1000 mL
Postop care	PACU → room. Spica cast; Nonweight bearing ~6 wk; no full weight bearing, 3 mo.	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Persistent hip dysplasia: 5–20% (depending on etiology)	⇐	⇐
	Excess blood loss from a perforating branch of the profunda femoris: < 1%	⇐	⇐
	Infection: < 1%	⇐	⇐
	Loss of fixation, instrument failure: < 1%	⇐	⇐
	Nonunion: < 1%	⇐	⇐
	Persistent hip stiffness: < 1%	⇐	⇐
	Avascular necrosis: rare	⇐	⇐
Pain score	6–8	6–8	6–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2–21 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Depending on Dx
Etiology	Coxa varum, coxa valgum due to muscle imbalance; hip dislocation; excessive medial femoral torsion (anteversion); osteochondrodystrophies (dwarfing syndromes); Perthes disease; SCFE
Associated conditions	Cerebral palsy; myelomeningocele, neuromyopathies; congenital hip dislocation; occasionally, hypothyroidism as a cause of SCFE

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Koyonos L, Slenker N, Cohen S: Complications in brief: Osteotomy for lower extremity malalignment. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2012; 470:3630–6.
2. Raney EM, Grogan DP, Hurley ME, et al: The role of proximal femoral valgus osteotomy in Legg-Calve-Perthes disease. *Orthopedics* 2002; 25(5):513–17.
3. Southwick WO: Osteotomy through the lesser trochanter for slipped capital femoral epiphysis. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1967; 49(5):807–35.

EPIPHYSIODESIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Epiphysiodesis is performed in skeletally immature adolescents to eliminate or retard growth of the longer limb in cases of leg length discrepancy (anisomelia). The timing of the procedure is critical, based on the child's bone age and discrepancy, which are plotted on a graph or computer program. The procedure is most commonly performed through small incisions (1") above the knee, centered on the growth plate (physis) of the distal femur or proximal tibia. The original **Phemister technique** (Fig. 12.7-13) is an approach in which a ¾"–1¼" square or rectangular block of bone is removed using a box chisel centered on the physis, visualized directly. The bone block is rotated 90° or 180° and reinserted, causing a bony bridge across the physis. **Blount** subsequently used stout, reinforced staples to bracket the physis and "lock it." This provides a theoretical advantage of reversibility (i.e., if staples are removed, growth may resume if the procedure was performed at too early an age). More recently, a **percutaneous technique** of simply drilling directly across the cartilaginous physeal growth plate, causing a bony bridge, has been used. This is accomplished through small stab incisions, under fluoroscopic control.

Usual preop diagnosis: Limb-length discrepancies of 2–5 cm in adolescents (willing to accept a slight diminution in adult stature)

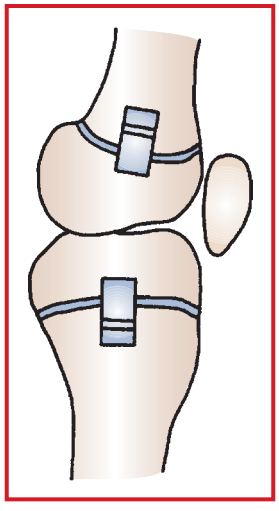


Figure 12.7-13. Phemister method of epiphysiodesis (block of bone reversed, then reinserted to form osseous bar). (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW: *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Open Epiphysiodesis	Percutaneous Epiphysiodesis	Epiphyseal Stapling
Position	Supine, with tourniquet	Supine	Supine, with tourniquet

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Open Epiphysiodesis	Percutaneous Epiphysiodesis	Epiphyseal Stapling
Incision	3–4 cm longitudinal incision, medial and laterally centered incisions over distal femoral and/or proximal tibial epiphysis	1 cm, same area as open epiphysiodesis	4–5 cm, same area as open epiphysiodesis
Special instrumentation	Box chisel	Drill point and sleeve	Heavy, reinforced staples
Unique considerations	Tourniquet used	I.I. control mandatory; tourniquet (optional)	⇐
Antibiotics	± Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1 h	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Cylinder cast or knee immobilizer	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 50 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room; crutches for comfort	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Under- or overcorrection with regard to length: 5–10%	⇐	⇐
	Wound problems: < 5%	⇐	⇐
	Asymmetric growth arrest → valgus or varus deformity: 2–5%	⇐	⇐
	Anterior or lateral compartment syndrome: 1 %	–	–
	Fracture: 1 %	–	–
	Peroneal palsy: < 1 %	–	–
Pain score	3–5	2–3	3–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	9–14 yr (adolescents, usually healthy with limb-length discrepancy 2–6 cm)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	< 1/1000
Etiology	Idiopathic hemihypertrophy; neurologic (e.g., polio, hemiplegia); congenital deformities of the lower extremities (e.g., congenitally short femur, fibular hemimelia); osteomyelitis; development of tumorous conditions (e.g., enchondromatosis); traumatic growth plate injuries occurring near puberty; epiphyseal problems related to hip (slipped epiphysis, sequelae of Perthes disease); Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber syndrome
Associated conditions	Other contractures in neurologic conditions (e.g., polio); neurofibromatosis, AV fistulae; Wilms' tumor (rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Blair VP III, Walker SJ, Sheridan JJ, et al: Epiphysiodesis: a problem of timing. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1982; 2(3):281–4.
2. Bowen JR, Torres RR, Forlin E: Partial epiphysiodesis to address genu varum or genu valgum. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1992; 12(3):359–64.

3. Kemnitz S, Moens P, Fabry G: Percutaneous epiphysiodesis for leg length discrepancy. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2003; 12(1):69–71.
4. Waseem M, Fischer J, Paton RW: Partial percutanous epiphysiodesis in patients with congenital abnormalities of the growth plates. *J Pediart Orthop B* 2004; 13:39–42.

SOFIELD PROCEDURE

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The **Sofield procedure,** or "**fragmentation rodding,"** is most commonly performed for deformity of the long bone and to prevent recurrent fracture, usually a result of osteogenesis imperfecta. The procedure involves exposure of at least one end and a varying amount of the bony shaft. If the deformity is severe, the entire shaft is exposed via a longitudinal incision, usually laterally. The bone is divided (osteotomized) into the minimum number of segments that will allow a straight intramedullary rod to traverse the segments (usually 2–4 osteotomies). The construct is justly referred to as a "shish kebab." It is needed less frequently in the upper extremities.

Variant procedure or approaches: Because a growing bone will elongate beyond the end of a simple intramedullary rod after 1–2 yr, the resulting unsupported portion of the bone will be liable to fracture or develop a new deformity. To obviate this problem, **Bailey** and **Dubow** developed an **elongating rod system**, consisting of an outer tubular rod sleeve (the female portion) and an inner obturator portion (male). Both ends of the telescoping rod are anchored in the ends of the bones. The system elongates much like a car radio antenna and decreases the need for frequent revisions. The surgical technique is, however, identical to any fragmentation rodding, except that both ends of the bone must be exposed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Osteogenesis imperfecta; fibrous dysplasia (occasionally); rickets; congenital pseudarthrosis of the tibia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Lateral for femur; anterolateral for tibia
Special instrumentation	± fluoroscopy (I.I.) table
Unique considerations	Tendency to hyperthermia; other bones may fracture in more severe cases, even as a result of a BP cuff. If dentinogenesis imperfecta is present, extreme care should be taken during intubation to prevent tooth trauma. In these patients, neck motion is often limited.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	1–1.5 h/tibia; 1.5–2.5 h/femur (often done sequentially on the same day)
Closing considerations	Double spica cast if femur is rodded.
EBL	Depending on patient age and size, as well as use of a tourniquet for the femur, 50–250 mL; for the tibia, 50–100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room; avoid trauma to teeth, mouth, or other bones in PACU.
Mortality	< 1% (usually related to severe restrictive lung disease, in the most severely involved cases)
Morbidity	Intraop hyperthermia: common Intraop fracture of other bones Late rod migration: common Late refracture: common Nonunion: rare Exuberant callus simulating osteosarcoma: rare Infection: < 1% of rodding Radial nerve palsy (in cases of humerus or radius rodding)
Pain score	2–3 (It is surprising how little discomfort these children have, especially the 2nd or 3rd time a bone is rodded.)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	2–25 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	1/20,000 (osteogenesis imperfecta); other etiologies much less common
Etiology	Congenital (hereditary deficit in collagen synthesis), most commonly as autosomal dominant or spontaneous mutation: all cases
Associated conditions	Dentinogenesis imperfecta; diminished vital capacity due to associated kyphoscoliosis ↓ hearing due to otosclerosis and impingement of the 8th cranial nerve; pelvic distortion causing chronic constipation; basilar impression and other C-spine abnormalities causing brain stem compression or even hydrocephalus (rare)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Gamble JG, Strudwick WJ, Rinsky LA, et al: Complications of intramedullary rods in osteogenesis imperfecta: Bailey-Dubow rods versus non-elongating rods. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1988; 8(6):645–9.
2. Marafioti RL, Westin GW: Elongating intramedullary rods in the treatment of osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1977; 59(4):467–72.
3. Rodriquez RP, Bailey RW: Internal fixation of the femur in patients with osteogenesis imperfecta. *Clin Orthop* 1988; 159:126–33.
4. Wilkinson JM, Scott BW, Clarke AM, et al: Surgical stabilization of the lower limb in osteogenesis imperfecta using the Sheffield Telescopic Intramedullary Rod System. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1998; 80(6):999–1004.

LIMB LENGTHENING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Limb lengthening usually is performed in the lower extremity for congenital or acquired leg-length discrepancies of at least 5 cm. Lesser discrepancies are dealt with by bone shortening or epiphysiodesis of the long side. The basic principles include (a) application of an adjustable, external fixator; (b) "low-energy," transverse bone cut (osteotomy without use of a power saw) through a small, longitudinal incision over the involved bone; (c) preservation of the periosteal sleeve; (d) gradual lengthening, usually 1 mm/day in fractional adjustments; and (e) when the desired limb length is obtained, either use bone graft and plate acutely or leave until the bone gap fills in and stabilizes (average 38 d/cm gained).

Limb lengthening dates back to the early 1900s, but it fell into disfavor because of the high rate of major complications. **Wagner** improved the technique by introducing a simplified, unilateral, large-pin fixator, but performed the osteotomy in the midshaft and began lengthening immediately (Fig. 12.7-14). This technique usually requires a bone graft and later plating as a second operation to obtain healing. **DeBastiani** uses a similar large-pin fixator (**Orthofix**) but performs the osteotomy more toward the end of the bone (metaphysis) and waits a week before beginning the lengthening. Spontaneous healing is usual. **Ilizarov** introduced a more complex, but more adaptable, small-pin transfixation system with a circular fixator. In a similar fashion, the Ilizarov method stretches the healing callus (callotasis). Typically, 4–10 cm/bone are gained with any of the above techniques.

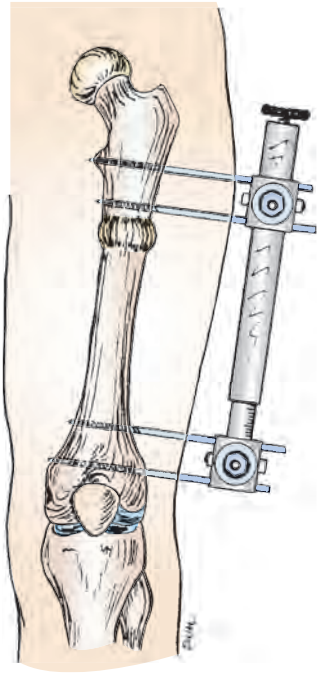


Figure 12.7-14. Wagner apparatus for leg lengthening. (Reproduced with permission from Chapman MW, ed: *Operative Orthopaedics,* 2nd edition. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia: 1993.)

Usual preop diagnosis: Congenital or acquired anisomelia (limb-length discrepancy) due to overgrowth or growth retardation > 5 cm.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Wagner	Orthofix	Ilizarov
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Longitudinal midshaft	Longitudinal proximal shaft (metaphyseal)	⇐
Special instrumentation	I.I.; Wagner device (Fig. 12.7-14); large bone pins	I.I.; Orthofix device; large bone pins	Ilizarov frame ("Erector set"); multiple 1.5–1.8 mm small diameter wires
Unique considerations	Acute lengthening may cause ↑ BP.	–	Frame should be prepped prior to surgery because of "fiddle factor."
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h	⇐	2–4 h
EBL	< 100 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room; early initiation of physical therapy and/or CPM machine	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	While the device remains in place, at least one of the following complications is usual; frequently, several occur before healing is complete:	⇐	⇐
	• Joint stiffness or localized pin infection: Very common (50% temporary)	⇐	⇐
	• Edema, swelling, pressure sores: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Joint subluxation: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Psychological decompensation due to pain: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Premature consolidation: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Skin necrosis: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Wound infection: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Localized osteomyelitis: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Axial deviation of the bone: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Delayed union, nonunion, late fracture: Common	⇐	⇐
	• Pin penetration of a vessel or nerve: Rare	⇐	⇐
	• Compartment syndrome: Rare	⇐	⇐
	• Sudeck's atrophy: Rare	⇐	⇐
Pain score	7–8	7–8	7–8

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	10–30 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Dependent on underlying Dx (common in polio)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Congenital deficiencies of the lower extremities (e.g., proximal focal femoral deficiency, congenitally short femur, fibular hemimelia); osteomyelitis, traumatic growth plate injury, fracture; asymmetric neurologic conditions (e.g., polio or cerebral palsy); congenital hemihypertrophy
Associated conditions	Hip and knee contractures; in cases of polio, other deformities, and weaknesses; AVM; congenital or developmental hip dislocation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Aronson J: Limb-lengthening, skeletal reconstruction, and bone transport with the Ilizarov method. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1997; 79(8):1243–58.
2. Friend L, Widmann RF: Advances in management of limb length discrepancy and lower limb deformity. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2008; 20(1):46–51.
3. Murray JH, Fitch RD: Distraction histogenesis: principles and indications. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 1996; 4(6):317–27.
4. Noonan KJ, Leyes M, Forriol F, et al: Distraction osteogenesis of the lower extremity with use of monolateral external fixation. A study of two hundred and sixty-one femora and tibiae. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1998; 80(6):793–806.
5. Sabharwal S, Rozbruch SR: What's new in limb lengthening and deformity correction. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2011; 93: 2323–32.

PATELLAR REALIGNMENT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Patellar realignment encompasses over 100 procedures designed to prevent lateral subluxation and dislocation of the patella. These disorders include a spectrum of malalignments of the patella, ranging from simple excess lateral tilt, recurrent partial subluxation, and recurrent episodic dislocation, to irreducible chronic dislocation. As such, the surgical procedures also encompass a spectrum of complexities, depending on the degree of instability. Nowadays, an arthroscopic inspection often is performed first. The basic principles of the repair include both proximal and distal realignment. **Proximal realignment** includes (a) lateral release, which is the division of the contracted lateral patellar retinacular joint capsule and other tight lateral tissue—the first step in all surgical repair; (b) medial tightening, including reefing and/or advancement of the medial capsule and vastus medialis muscle insertion; and (c) distal realignment, consisting of redirection of the patellar tendon more medially (and sometimes more anteriorly).

Variant procedure or approaches: **Arthroscopic or open lateral release** is the simplest and first-step procedure. It may be sufficient when there is only subluxation and not true dislocation, and it has the advantage of being an outpatient procedure. For frank dislocation, an open "proximal realignment" also includes the medial tautening. If this is not sufficient to hold the patella centralized and if the patient has open epiphyses (< 16 yr), the lateral half of the patellar tendon may be released (distal realignment) and reattached medially (**Roux-Goldthwait**) or the patella may be held medially by tenodesing the semitendinosus tendon to it. In skeletally mature patients, the bony insertion of the patellar tendon is osteotomized and transferred medially (**Trillat**) or anteriomedially (**Maquet**). The **Hauser procedure** of distal and medial transfer of the tibial tubercle has had a very poor long-term outcome and is seldom performed.

Usual preop diagnosis: Lateral patellar subluxation; recurrent dislocation; congenital or chronic lateral patellar dislocation

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES			
	Proximal Realignment	**Trillat**	**Maquet**
Position	Supine, with tourniquet	⇐	⇐
Incision	Anterior transverse or longitudinal or oblique, about the knee, or arthroscopic	Anterior longitudinal	Transverse or oblique

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Proximal Realignment	Trillat	Maquet
Special instrumentation	None	Single bone screw	⇐
Unique considerations	Tourniquet	⇐	May use iliac or bank bone graft.
Antibiotics	Optional, cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	Usually, cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐
Surgical time	1.5 h	1–2 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Cylinder cast	⇐	Skin closure may be difficult, depending on elevation of tibial tubercle.
Postop care	PACU → home, if arthroscopic	PACU → room	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Recurrence: 5–10%	⇐	⇐
	Late stiffness or ↑ knee pain: 5%	⇐	⇐
	Superficial wound dehiscence or infection: ≤ 5%	<5%	≤ 5%
	Anterior compartment syndrome of the leg (Hauser procedure): 1–5%	⇐	⇐
	Deep infection: 1–2%	⇐	⇐
	Peroneal palsy: < 1%	⇐	⇐
Pain score	4–6	4–6	4–6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2–20 yr (most commonly, 13–20 yr)
Male:Female	1:3
Incidence	Subluxation: very common Recurrent dislocation: rare Congenital dislocation: very rare
Etiology	Generalized ligamentous laxity; familial tendency; congenital hypoplasia at a lateral femoral condyle; abnormal attachment or contracture of the IT band; medial femoral torsion or genu valgum; trauma
Associated conditions	Diffuse hyperlaxity syndromes (Ehlers-Danlos, Marfan, etc.); nail patella syndrome (hypoplastic nails and dislocated radial heads, as well as hypoplastic patellae)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Baker RH, Carroll N, Dewar FP, et al: The semitendinosus tenodesis for recurrent dislocation of the patella. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1972; 54(l):103–9.
2. Hennrikus W, Pylawka T: Patellofemoral instability in skeletally immature athletes. *Instr Course Lect* 2012; 62:445–53.
3. Hughston J, Walsh WM: Proximal and distal reconstruction of the extensor mechanism for patellar subluxation. *Clin Orthop* 1979; 144:36–42.
4. Mulford JS, Wakeley CJ, Eldridge JD: Assessment and management of chronic patellofemoral instability. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2007; 89(6):709–16.

5. Nelitz M, Dreyhaupt J, Reichel H, Woelfle J, Lippacher S: Anatomic reconstruction of the medial patellofemoral ligament in children and adolescents with open growth plates: surgical technique and clinical outcome. *Am J Sports Med* 2013; 41:58-63.
6. Spindler KP: Reconstruction of the medial patellofemoral ligament was effective for traumatic patellar dislocation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2012; 94:2093.
7. Tachdjian MO: *Pediatric Orthopaedics.* WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1990, 1551–95.
8. Wall JJ: Compartment syndrome as a complication of the Hauser procedure. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1979; 61(2):185–91.

TENDON TRANSFER, LENGTHENING (POSTERIOR TIBIAL)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Extremity tendons may be lengthened (for contracture) or transferred to change the muscle force vector and compensate for paralysis or paresis of other muscle groups. Originally used for the treatment of poliomyelitis sequelae, these lengthenings and transfers are now used for a variety of deformities 2° more common neuromuscular disorders, such as cerebral palsy, muscular dystrophies, Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease, and traumatic nerve palsies. Basic principles are that the muscles to be transferred should be at least grade 4/5 strength and that the loss of normal function should be well compensated. The posterior tibial muscle (PTM) is a representative example, but many extremity muscles have one or more described lengthenings or transfers. Such procedures frequently are combined with other transfers or fusions.

For moderate spastic ankle varus, the simplest procedure, **PTM lengthening,** is accomplished by an intramuscular myotendinous "slide." This refers to simply cutting the tendinous fibers well within the distal muscle belly and leaving a small gap in the tendon, while the surrounding muscle fibers remain intact. An alternative for spastic varus is the **split posterior tibial transfer** of the PTM. Four short, 2- to 3-cm incisions are used to expose and dissect half of the posterior tibia tendon at its insertion on the navicular. Then half of the tendon is passed proximally up its sheath to a second incision just posterior to the distal tibial shaft medially. The freed half tendon is passed laterally to the peroneal tendon sheath just distal to the lateral malleolus, where, through a final incision, the tendon is anastomosed to the peroneus brevis.

For complete flaccid foot drop (e.g., peroneal nerve palsy), the entire posterior tibial tendon is transferred. First, it is detached at its medial insertion, delivered proximally at the distal tibia posteriorly, passed **anteriorly** through a window in the interosseous membrane, and then subcutaneously passed to the mid-dorsal surface of the foot, where it is fixed into the middle cuneiform by a pull-out stitch.

Usual preop diagnosis: Flaccid or spastic developmental deformity, such as varus or valgus foot neuromuscular disease

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Lengthening	Split Transfer	Anterior Transfer
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Longitudinal posteromedial calf	Medial foot; posteromedial calf; lateral ankle; lateral foot	Medial foot; posteromedial calf; anterior ankle; dorsal foot
Special instrumentation	None	Tendon passer	Pull-out suture; buttons
Unique considerations	Underlying neurologic disease. Usually added to other procedures (e.g., Achilles tendon lengthenings).	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Usually none	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	30 min	1 h	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Lengthening	Split Transfer	Anterior Transfer
Closing considerations	Below-knee cast	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 20 mL	< 50 mL	⇐
Postop care	PACU or room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Over- or undercorrection Hematoma Drainage: < 1%	⇐ ⇐ ⇐	⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	1–3	3–4	3–4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–30 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Dependent on Dx
Etiology	Poliomyelitis; cerebral palsy, spina bifida; traumatic peroneal nerve injury; neuropathies, myopathies (e.g., Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease)
Associated conditions	Multiple other contractures

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Barnes MJ, Herring JA: Combined split anterior tibial-tendon transfer and intramuscular lengthening of the posterior tibial tendon. Results in patients who have a varus deformity of the foot due to spastic cerebral palsy. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1991; 73(5): 734–8.
2. Green NE, Griffin PP, Shiavi R: Split posterior tibial-tendon transfers in spastic cerebral palsy. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1983; 65(6):748–54.
3. Hoffer MD, Barakat G, Koffman M: 10-year follow-up of split anterior tibial tendon transfer in cerebral palsied patients with spastic equinovarus deformity. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1985; 5(4):432–4.
4. Miller G, Hsu JD, Hoffer MM, et al: Posterior tibial tendon transfer: a review of the literature and analysis of 74 procedures. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1982; 2(4):363–70.
5. Richards BM: Interosseous transfer of tibialis posterior for common peroneal nerve palsy. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1989; 71(5):834–7.
6. Rinsky LA: Surgery for cerebral palsy. In: Chapman MW, ed. *Chapman's Orthopaedic Surgery,* 3rd edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001, 4485–504.

TRIPLE ARTHRODESIS AND GRICE PROCEDURE (EXTRA-ARTICULAR SUBTALAR ARTHRODESIS)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Triple arthrodesis** is used to realign the hind foot of skeletally mature patients with significant fixed or flexible deformities of multiple etiologies. The technique involves denuding the cartilaginous surfaces of the talonavicular, talocalcaneal (subtalar), and calcaneocuboid joints and fusing them. The approach is always through

an oblique lateral sinus tarsi incision and often an additional short medial incision over the talonavicular joint. For supple (passively correctable) deformities, the fusion is performed easily in situ. Fixed deformities are more difficult, but basically, any deformity (valgus, varus, planus, cavus, etc.) can be corrected by resecting appropriate wedges of bone. Fixation is usually internal with pins, screws, or staples, in addition to an external cast.

Variant procedure or approaches: Because the triple arthrodesis removes growth cartilage, it is unsuitable in growing children (< 12–14 yr). **Grice** developed an **extra-articular subtalar fusion** that can be performed as early as age 3. It is basically a block of autologous bone graft placed between the talus and the calcaneus to stabilize a valgus heel. Tibial, fibular, or, preferably, iliac autologous graft is used through the same lateral sinus tarsi incision as for a triple arthrodesis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Varus or cavovarus foot deformities; severe valgus or equinovalgus

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Triple Arthrodesis	Grice Procedure
Position	Supine, slightly tilted up on the operative side	⇐
Incision	2" oblique over the sinus tarsi; optional medial incision	⇐
Special instrumentation	Pins, screws, or rods	Pin or screw
Unique considerations	Intraop x-ray to confirm pin position	Iliac or tibial autologous graft
Antibiotics	Usually, cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv up to 1 g	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv up to 1 g
Surgical time	1–2 h	1.5 h
Closing considerations	Above-the-knee cast	⇐
EBL	< 100 mL	< 50 mL
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐
Morbidity	Superficial skin slough Superficial infection Nonunion of at least one arthrodesis site (usually talonavicular) Aseptic necrosis of the talus: rare	⇐ ⇐ ⇐ ⇐
Pain score	6–8	4–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	> 12 yr (triple arthrodesis); 3–10 yr (Grice)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	< 1% (depends on diagnosis and severity of deformity)
Etiology	Neuromuscular imbalance (most cases); congenital malformations (e.g., coalitions, severe pes planus); incompletely treated or overcorrected clubfoot; postfracture of calcaneus or talus
Associated conditions	Poliomyelitis; cerebral palsy (↑ GERD, ↓ airway protective reflexes, ↑ postop pulmonary complications); myelomeningocele; Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease (↑ sensitivity to muscle relaxants); congenital tarsal coalition

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Front NL, Grassbaugh JA, Baird G, Caskey P: Triple arthrodesis with lateral column lengthening for the treatment of planovalgus deformity. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2011; 31:773–82.
2. Masrouha KZ, Morcuende JA: Relapse after tigialis anterior tendon transfer in idiopathic clubfoot treated by the Ponseti method. *J Pediatrb Orthop* 2012; 32:81–4.

SURGICAL CORRECTION OF CLUBFOOT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Turco** popularized the one-stage surgical correction of resistant (uncorrected by casting) clubfoot (talipes equinovarus) in 1971. The orthopedic literature, however, is replete with reports of varying techniques for surgical correction of clubfoot. The three components of the deformity are (a) hindfoot equinus (back of the heel is up); (b) varus (rolled inwardly); and (c) forefoot adductus (medial deviation). Beyond this, however, there exists considerable disagreement as to the pathologic anatomy, ideal skin incision, position, and which structures to release. Most surgeons vary the degree of release in proportion to the degree of deformity, often performing release of the same deep structures through totally different skin incisions. The most important structures released include the entire posterior capsule of the ankle and subtalar joint; capsule of the subtalar, talonavicular, and calcaneocuboid joints; tendo Achilles, posterior tibial tendon, and usually the toe flexors; and origin of the abductor, halluces, and plantar fascia. The navicular is repositioned on the talus and usually held with a small pin.

Variant procedure or approaches: **Turco's procedure** is essentially a posteromedial procedure only and is performed through one incision on the medial aspect of the foot. **Crawford** described a much more extensile approach through an incision (**Cincinnati**) that runs from anteromedial, around the back of the tendo Achilles, and then anterolateral to the calcaneocuboid joint. This approach is also used by **McKay**, **Simons**, and others for a more complete release. If there is severe equinus deformity, however, the incision is difficult to close posteriorly when the foot is brought up. **Carroll** accomplishes much the same correction using a separate medial and posterolateral incision.

Usual preop diagnosis: Resistant idiopathic clubfoot; secondary clubfoot due to paralysis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Turco	Cincinnati/McKay/Simons	Carroll
Position	Supine	Prone or supine	Supine
Incision	Straight medial foot	Transverse from the navicular bone medially posteriorly across the heel cord, then laterally to the cuboid	Medial zigzag and posterolateral longitudinal
Special instrumentation	Usually loupe magnification; small K wires to hold reduction	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	Tourniquet mandatory and often bilateral	⇐	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv	⇐	⇐
Surgical time	1–2 h/foot	⇐	⇐
Closing considerations	Well padded, loose-fitting, above-the-knee cast × 10–14 d	⇐	⇐
EBL	< 30 mL	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	Turco	Cincinnati/McKay/Simons	Carroll
Morbidity	Mild, persistent deformity: very common Hematoma: 2% Superficial infection: 1–2% Avascular necrosis Overcorrection valgus, planus Pressure changes of the navicula Wound dehiscence or necrosis Transection of posterior tibial nerve or artery branch: Rare (except in patients who have had multiple operations)	⇐	⇐
Pain score	2–5	2–5	2–5

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3 mo–6 yr
Male:Female	2:1 (idiopathic type)
Incidence	1.2/10,000 live births (idiopathic type)
Etiology	Genetic or hereditary effects; neuromuscular defects of the calf muscles; primary defect of formation of the talus and/or other tarsal bones; shortened ligaments and muscles
Associated conditions	Arthrogryposis (difficult intubation; ±VSD, other CHD); Larsen's syndrome (difficult intubation, ± ↑ ICP); Freeman-Sheldon syndrome (difficult intubation); osteochondral dystrophies (e.g., diastrophic dwarfism); spinal dysraphism; tethered spinal cord; congenital constricting bands; poliomyelitis

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Surgery of the Pelvis and Lower Extremities, see p. 1426.

Suggested Readings

1. Cummings RJ, Davidson RS, Armstrong PF, et al: Congenital clubfoot. *J Bone Joint Surg* 2002; 84A(2):290–308.
2. Duffy CM, Salazar JJ, Humphreys L, McDowell BC: Surgical versus Ponseti approach for the management of CTEV: a comparative study. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2013; 33:326–32.
3. Turco VJ: Resistant congenital club foot-one-stage posteromedial release with internal fixation. A follow-up report of a fifteen-year experience. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1979; 61(6A):805–14.
4. Verma A, Mehtani A, Sural S, et al: Management of idiopathic clubfoot in toddlers by Ponseti's method. *J Pediatr Orthop B* 2012; 21:79–84.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR PEDIATRIC ORTHOPEDIC SURGERY OF THE PELVIS AND LOWER EXTREMITIES

(Procedures covered: pelvic osteotomy; acetabular augmentation & Chiari osteotomy; Ober fasciotomy; Yount Ober release; hip, open reduction; adductor release and/or transfer; psoas release; pinning of SCFE; femoral osteotomy; epiphysiodesis; Sofield procedure; limb lengthening; tendon transfer or lengthening; triple arthrodesis, Grice procedure; correction of clubfoot)

PREOPERATIVE

Children undergoing orthopedic procedures of the lower extremities typically fall into two groups: (a) posttrauma but otherwise healthy and (b) those with a variety of chronic medical problems, including cerebral palsy, congenital hip dislocation, limb deformities, osteogenesis imperfecta, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, epidermolysis bullosa, and various myopathies and muscular dystrophies. The anesthesiologist should review the anesthetic implications of these various syndromes or diseases (see Table 12.7-2). Many of these patients will have cardiac, respiratory, endocrine, and metabolic derangements, as well as airway abnormalities that may affect anesthetic management. In addition, the surgical procedures may run the gamut from a simple syndactyly repair of the toes with little blood loss to pelvic osteotomies (in small children) with blood loss approaching the patients' blood volume. Many patients with slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE) are obese and require anesthetic techniques that minimize the risk of aspiration.

Respiratory	Patient's preop activity level is a good indication for baseline respiratory function. Careful assessment is necessary as associated anomalies may affect airway or lungs. Chronic otitis 2° eustachian tube dysfunction is common. Postpone surgery (~2–3 wk) if Sx of acute URI (e.g., runny nose, fever, sore throat, cough) are present. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P; CXR
Cardiovascular	Some pediatric patients with congenital musculoskeletal anomalies presenting for orthopedic procedures have coexisting cardiovascular anomalies. Preop review of patient's H&P is essential. Patients should not be accepted for orthopedic surgery and anesthesia until they are in the best possible physical and emotional condition. For children with CHD or who require cardiac medication, it is advisable to consult with a pediatric cardiologist before surgery. If taking ACE inhibitors, hold AM of surgery, as may lead to intractable intraop hypotension. ***NB:** The consequences of VAE may be disastrous (e.g., cerebral or myocardial embolization) in patients with R→ L shunt lesions. All iv lines, injection ports, and syringes should be air free. **Tests:** EKG; Hct; baseline SaO_2 ; CXR, as necessary; ECHO
Neurological	For patients with cerebral palsy presenting for orthopedic surgery, preop understanding of their intellectual functional capacity is necessary. Information about patient's behavioral or intellectual abilities is usually best obtained from parents or guardian. If patient is on seizure-control medication, it is recommended that the medication be continued until surgery. All patients who require Ober fasciotomy or Yount release will have profound weakness of lower extremities, if not of the entire body. Must be careful in choice of muscle relaxant (generally avoid depolarizing agents). Many patients with muscular dystrophy present for repeated orthopedic procedures. Patients with congenital muscular dystrophy (especially Duchenne's or Becker's) can have significant associated cardiac dysfunction. A pediatric cardiologist should be involved in the preanesthetic evaluation of their LV function, size, LV ejection fraction, shortening fraction, and ECHO exam. It is important to note that asymptomatic carriers of these X-linked muscular dystrophies can have associated ECHO and EKG abnormalities.
Hematologic	Complications of blood loss remain a major anesthetic consideration in pelvic osteotomies, especially in small children or those who have ↑ bleeding 2° osteogenic bone or bleeding disorders. There is no hard-and-fast rule for an acceptable amount of blood loss before transfusion therapy begins; each case must be individualized. Patients who need ↑ O_2-carrying capacity (e.g., congenital heart disease, sickle cell anemia (SSA), evidence of V/Q mismatch from preexisting pulmonary disease) will require transfusion at lower levels of blood loss than otherwise healthy children. Blood transfusion therapy must be considered after the loss of 15–20% of the patient's total blood volume. Predonation is limited by age, size, and level of cooperation with blood-collecting techniques. Hemodilution is not used frequently in pediatrics. Cell salvaging can introduce both intracellular and surgical debris back into circulation but may avoid heterologous transfusion.

Table 12.7-2. Preop Anesthesia Considerations for Pediatric Orthopedic Diseases

General Considerations	Pediatric orthopedic patients may present with a spectrum of congenital and acquired problems. Congenital malformations and deformations include clubfoot, developmental dislocation of hip, and congenital limb deficiencies. Acquired conditions include trauma, infections, and growth disturbance. A variety of patients with neuromuscular disorders present for orthopedic procedures and present special challenges to the anesthesiologist (e.g., cerebral palsy, spina bifida, muscular dystrophy). Other syndromes and chronic conditions with orthopedic manifestations include osteogenesis imperfecta, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, and epidermolysis bullosa. The anesthesiologist should review and understand the anesthetic implications of these various syndromes.
Anesthetic Considerations	
Specific Disease	
Achondroplasia	± Unstable spine: preop neuro and ortho exams are critical. Careful positioning necessary; prevent compression of cervicomedullary junction by placing a bolster under shoulders. Difficult iv access. ± GERD 2° obesity. Anticipate difficult mask fit and intubation. Possible choanal stenosis/narrow nasopharynx; may preclude nasal airway/nasal intubation and placement of NG tube. Smaller ETTs are needed. ± Restrictive lung disease and chronic respiratory infections common.
Apert syndrome	C-spine fusion and small nasopharynx. Hypoplastic maxilla, prominent mandible/cleft palate. Difficult laryngoscopy and ET intubation. ± Tracheal stenosis/abnormal tracheal cartilage. Possible choanal stenosis/atresia; may preclude nasal airway, nasal ETT, and NG tube placement. Difficult vascular access. ±Craniosynostosis → ↑ ICP. ± CHD.
Arthrogryposis	Poor cervical mobility; TMJ ankylosis; possibility of difficult intubation. IV access and positioning difficult 2° flexion or contracture deformity. 10% incidence of CHD.
Cerebral palsy	Communication difficulties. Scoliosis → restrictive lung disease. ± GERD. ↑ sensitivity to succinylcholine. ↑ resistance to NMRs. MAC decreased. Contractures → restricted access for examination and positioning. ± Latex allergy. Difficult iv access.
Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis	Poor cervical mobility; TMJ ankylosis; possibility of difficult intubation. ± Restrictive pulmonary disease. ± Restrictive pericarditis and tamponade.
Klippel-Feil syndrome	Limited C-spine mobility → difficult intubation. Impaired renal drug excretion.
Marfan syndrome	Atlantoaxial instability: evaluate C-spine before laryngoscopy. Care in positioning needed. May require larger than normal doses of spinal epidural anesthesia 2° height. Aortic dilatation → aortic insufficiency ± aortic dissection/aneurysm. Avoid ↑ BP. Anticipate difficult intubation 2° narrow palate. Lung cysts → pneumothorax.
Muscular dystrophy	Possible cardiomyopathy: Avoid cardiac depressant drugs. ↑ sensitivity to muscle relaxants. MH susceptibility. ↓ gastric emptying and weak laryngeal reflexes. Avoid succinylcholine. May have MVR and cardiac conduction abnormalities. May require postop ventilation.
Myopathies	Avoid all muscle relaxants and respiratory depressants. Postop ventilation may be necessary.
Osteogenesis imperfecta	Bones fracture easily (e.g., with BP cuff): Use extreme care in positioning and intubation. Hypermetabolic fever may occur during anesthesia. Plt dysfunction: Difficult airway. Use atropine with caution as it may exacerbate pyrexia. CHD may require antibiotic prophylaxis. ± Difficult airway. ± Restrictive lung disease. Deafness may make communication difficult.
Septic arthritis	Infection/systemic toxicity slows gastric emptying; requires rapid sequence intubation (Appendix B-4). Dehydration 2° ↑ T and ↓ fluid intake → hypovolemia/hemodynamic instability. Rx: adequate fluid resuscitation with balanced salt solution.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Premedication for separation anxiety (e.g., midazolam) and facilitating induction. Care must be taken if premedication is used in patients with respiratory or cardiac dysfunction. Dosage must be individualized (see p. E-4). Children with valvular disease, prosthetic valves, and/or most forms of CHD, as well as postcardiac-correction patients, should receive antibiotics for bacterial endocarditis prophylaxis preop.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: As indicated in the preop considerations, these patient populations cover a vast spectrum, from fit and healthy children to those suffering from a variety of clinical syndromes with airway and cardiorespiratory problems. Thus, anesthesia needs to be tailored to the individual patient. Some older children may benefit from regional anesthesia with sedation. Some may do well with a combined regional/GA technique, whereas still others with difficult airways may require awake FOB (see p. B-5). The following sections address some of these concerns.

Induction	**Otherwise healthy:** Standard pediatric (< 12 yr) (see p. D-1) or adult induction (see p. B-2). **Difficult airway:** A mask induction and FOL during spontaneous respiration should be considered. Alternatives include use of LMA/intubating LMA, Video laryngoscope, FOL or light wand stylet, retrograde wire intubation, and tracheostomy. **Muscle abnormalities:** These patients may be very sensitive to muscle relaxants, have gastric hypomotility, and be predisposed to MH. Induction should be accomplished by nontriggering agents (e.g., propofol 1–2 mg/kg and rocuronium 0.5–1 mg/kg) if necessary for intubation. Succinylcholine usually is contraindicated in these patients. Dantrolene must be available, but it need not be administered prophylactically. A study of MH patients showed that 32 out of 89 had preexisting musculoskeletal abnormalities. **Cardiorespiratory compromise**: Inhalational induction, when administered cautiously, may be used safely in this group of patients. Intramuscular (e.g., ketamine 4–8 mg/kg im) inductions are usually safe and effective in neonates and infants with severe cardiac disease.
Maintenance	**Otherwise healthy:** Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3). **Muscle abnormalities:** Maintenance of anesthesia with a nontriggering agent (e.g., N_2O, opiates) and short-acting NMRs is prudent. A peripheral nerve stimulator should be used to monitor muscle relaxation, as the effects of muscle relaxants may be unexpectedly prolonged. **Cardiorespiratory compromise**: The maintenance of anesthesia in this group most commonly is accomplished by use of inhalational agents, additional narcotics, or other iv agents, depending on patient tolerance and postop plans for ventilatory management.
Emergence	**Otherwise healthy:** If a muscle relaxant is used, reverse with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg) and glycopyrrolate (0.01 mg/kg iv) or edrophonium (0.5 mg/kg) and atropine (0.015 mg/kg iv). Make sure patient is awake and able to protect airway. A vital capacity of >15 mL/kg is considered an adequate sign of recovery of respiratory reserve. **Muscle abnormalities:** Anticipate postop respiratory impairment. Suction airway carefully. The response to neostigmine is unpredictable and may precipitate myotonia. Continued postop mechanical ventilation may be required. **Cardiorespiratory compromise:** Tourniquet release may cause significant. ↓ CO and ↓ BP, requiring temporary inotropic support. Otherwise, emergence as in normal patients.

Regional anesthesia: Used in patients undergoing lower-extremity surgery

Caudal epidural	In young children, the epidural space can be reached easily by the caudal epidural approach, with less risk of dural puncture than with thoracic or lumbar epidural approaches. There is minimal risk of cord injury at the level of the sacrococcygeal ligament. The dural sac, however, can extend to the level of the third or fourth sacral vertebra in the newborn; therefore, care must be taken to avoid an inadvertent intrathecal injection. Bupivacaine provide reliable, long-lasting anesthesia and postop analgesia when given via the caudal epidural route. Bupivacaine 0.25% (or ropivacaine 0.2%) with epinephrine 1:200,000 (1 mL/kg) provides 3–6 h of analgesia for all procedures below the umbilicus. In infants (< 2.5 kg), a more dilute solution is used (0.125% or 0.175%), and the volume can be increased to remain below the toxic dose range (2.5 mg/kg). Intraop anesthesia with bupivacaine 0.25% with epinephrine 1:200,000 is given as a bolus with volumes determined by level desired (0.05 mL/kg/segment, not to exceed l mL/kg). Preservative-free clonidine (1–2 mcg/kg) as an additive to bupivacaine caudal anesthesia has been shown to increase the efficacy and duration of the analgesia.

Continuous epidural infusion	Use bupivacaine 0.1–0.125% at rate of 0.1 mL/kg/h in patients < 5 yr; thereafter, patients may require 0.05–0.15 mL/kg/h. Maximum hourly dose not to exceed 0.5 mg/kg/h of bupivacaine. Usually requires postop Foley catheter.	
Peripheral nerve blocks	Use of ultrasonography helps to improve the efficacy and safety of these blocks. Femoral, obturator, and lateral cutaneous nerve of thigh can be blocked by doing a lumbar plexus block at the level of the L4 vertebra or by doing a 3-in-1 block at the groin. Sciatic nerve can be blocked in the posterior thigh at the apex of the popliteal fossa. Saphenous/sciatic or femoral/sciatic combinations can provide excellent analgesia for distal extremity surgeries. If used in combination, these blocks can provide excellent postoperative analgesia for most of the lower limb procedures with minimal side effects. Catheters can be left in place for providing continuous postoperative analgesia. With the availability of safer and less-expensive programmable pumps, most of the blocks can be done even for outpatient procedures, and the children can be sent home with On-Q® pump infusions.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 22 ga or greater × 1–2 NS/LR (at maintenance) 4 mL/kg/h: 0–10 kg + 2 mL/kg/h: 11–20 kg + 1 mL/kg/h: >20 kg (e.g., 25 kg = 65 mL/h) Warm fluids for long cases.	There may be rapid fluid shifts in pediatric patients undergoing orthopedic procedures. Close monitoring and adequate fluid replacement will ensure hemodynamic stability. In hip or pelvis surgery, blood loss may be substantial, and adequate iv access is important as blood transfusion may be required.
Control of blood loss	Tourniquet: 120-min limit	Use of pneumatic tourniquets has become common practice in peripheral orthopedic procedures. They reduce intraop blood loss; however, they cause pain and, upon removal, release products of anaerobic metabolism.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). ± Arterial line ± CVP line Temperature	Most pediatric patients presenting for extremity surgery do not require invasive monitoring. An arterial or CVP line may be helpful, depending on patient's medical condition, length of surgery, and anticipated blood loss.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Patients with osteogenesis imperfecta or osteoporosis are at risk for fractures and joint dislocations and require special care in positioning.
Complications	MH	Early Sx of MH include: Hypercapnea, tachycardia, tachypnea, unstable BP, dysrhythmias, cyanotic mottling of skin, rapid rise in T (1°/15 min), discolored urine, metabolic acidosis, respiratory acidosis, hyperkalemia, myoglobinuria. Rx: stop surgery and anesthesia immediately; hyperventilate with 100% O_2; administer dantrolene sodium iv (starting dose = 1–2 mg/kg q 5–10 min; maximum cumulative dose = 10 mg/kg) by rapid infusion. Procainamide (15 mg/kg) over 15 min may be required for dysrhythmias. Initiate cooling, correct acidosis and hyperkalemia. Maintain UO of at least 2 mL/kg/h. Monitor patient in ICU until danger of subsequent episodes is over (24 h).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	MH Respiratory insufficiency	For MH considerations, see above.
Pain management	PCA Parenteral opiates Spinal/epidural opiates	(see p. E-4).

Suggested Readings

1. Aydogan MS, Korkmaz MF, Ozgul U, et al: Pain, fentanyl consumption, and delirium in adolescents after scoliosis surgery: dexmedetomidine vs midazolam. *Pediatr Anesth* 2013; 23:446–52.
2. Ceviz N, Alehan F, Alehan D, et al: Assessment of left ventricular systolic and diastolic functions in children with merosin-positive congenital muscular dystrophy. *Int J Cardiol* 2003; 87(2–3):129–33.
3. Ecoffey C: Pediatric regional anesthesia—upper extremity blocks. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 419–43.
4. Grain L, Cortina-Borja M, Forfar C, et al: Cardiac abnormalities and skeletal muscle weakness in carriers of Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophies and controls. *Neuromuscul Disord* 2001; 11(2):186–91.
5. Howell TK, Patel D: Plasma paracetamol concentrations after different doses of rectal paracetamol in older children. A comparison of 1 g vs. 40 mg × kg(-1). *Anaesthesia* 2003; 58(1):69–73.
6. Lammers C, Wyckaert C: Anesthesia for orthopedic surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatr Anesth*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 757–77.
7. Marhover P, Ivani G, Suresh S, et al: Everyday regional anesthesia in children. *Peadiatr Anaesth* 2012; 22(10):995–1001.
8. Nowicki PD, Vanderhave KL, Gibbons K, et al: Perioperative pain control in pediatric patients undergoing orthopedic surgery. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2012; 20(12):755–65.
9. Piraccini E, Albarello R, Biagini C, et al: Spinal anesthesia plus ketamine-medazolam sedation for pediatric orthopedic surgery in a developing country. *HSR Proc Inten Care Cardiovasc Anesth* 2012; 4(3):176–8.
10. Polaner DM, Taenzer AH, Walker BJ, et al: Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network (PRAN): a multi-institutional study of the use and incidence of complications of pediatric regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(6):1353–64.
11. Racca F, Mongini T, Wolfler A et al: Recommendations for anesthesia and perioperative management of patients with neuromuscular disorders. *Minerve Anesthesiol* 2013; 79(4):419–33.
12. Stein BE, Srikumanran U, Tan WE, et al: Lower-extremity peripheral nerve blocks in the perioperative pain management of orthopedic patients: AAOS exhibit selection. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2012; 94(22):e167.
13. Wongprasartsuk P, Stevens J: Cerebral palsy and anesthesia. *Ped Anesth* 2002; 12:296–303.
14. Zuckerberg AL, Yaster M: Anesthesia for orthopedic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 842–69.

SURGERY FOR EPIDERMOLYSIS BULLOSA

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Epidermolysis bullosa (EB) is a disabling inherited condition affecting the skin and submucosa. Recessive dystrophic EB is the most common type requiring surgical treatment. Children develop lesions associated with minimal trauma, which most commonly result in contractures of the hands and feet, mouth, and esophagus. Special care is required in handling patients with EB because minor trauma from iv or EKG lead placement can cause severe blistering. Hand surgery typically involves opening up the contracted fingers by removing the cocoon of epidermis. The defects are grafted with full-thickness skin grafts, typically taken from the abdomen. Following sedation or anesthesia, the affected extremity is gently sponged with dilute chlorhexidine solution. A tourniquet is not applied because it is typically not required. A wrist block is administered by the surgeon. The cocoon of scar tissue is removed, the fingers manipulated to expose the defects, and a full-thickness skin graft harvested. Generous Bactroban ointment and nonadhesive dressings are placed on the hand, and a well-padded cast is applied at the end of the procedure. Adhesive tape is avoided throughout the procedure.

Usual preop diagnosis: EB

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine
Incision	As necessary to relieve skin contractures on the hands
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 20–40 mg/kg iv up to 1 g.
Surgical time	1–2 h. Positioning, iv placement, and sedation/anesthesia are time consuming, often longer than the procedure itself.
EBL	< 100 mL
Postop care	PACU → home. Return in 2 wk for intraop removal of cast, dressing change, and first splint application. Splinting and special gloves are the mainstay of postop treatment.
Mortality	None associated with procedure
Morbidity	Trauma from positioning and monitoring → new blisters
Pain score	7–9 (similar to 2nd-degree burns)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1–20 yr; older patients with precancerous or cancerous hand lesions
Male:Female	2–3:1
Incidence	Extremely rare
Etiology	Inherited
Associated conditions	Malnutrition; esophageal strictures; generalized skin contractures; malignant transformation of skin lesions

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

EB is a heterogenous group of rare hereditary disorders characterized by blister formation in the skin in response to minor trauma, friction, or pressure. The most minor form of EB is EB simplex, in which the blisters heal without scarring. The junctional form often is diagnosed at birth, with blisters caused by the physical trauma of delivery. These patients develop severe scarring and have a short life expectancy. Patients with the recessive dystrophic form may have strictures of the oropharynx, larynx, and esophagus. Patients may be on long-term corticosteroid treatment. Periop hydrocortisone treatment may be required to compensate for adrenal suppression.

Airway	A careful airway evaluation is essential because these patients may have a difficult airway 2° mucous membrane and skin involvement in the area of the oropharynx, face, and neck. Patients with EB also may have limited mouth opening and neck movement as the result of scarring and contractures. Poor dentition: ✓ for loose teeth.
Skin	Because of the fragility of skin and mucous membranes in patients with EB, the anesthetic plan should be designed to minimize trauma to skin and mucous membranes. Friction and shearing forces, not direct pressure, are responsible for new bullae and wound formation.
Gastrointestinal	The most common sites of involvement are the oropharynx, esophagus, and anus. Dysphagia, esophageal stricture, and constipation are common and are the major causes of morbidity, nutritional deficiencies, and growth retardation. Esophageal dilatation, insertion of NG feeding tubes, gastrostomy, and colonic interposition have been performed in patients with EB. Esophageal stricture increases the risk of regurgitation and aspiration, and precautions to avoid aspiration should be taken.
Musculoskeletal	Skin lesions can be painful, and some patients will be on chronic opiate medication for pain management.

Hematologic	Chronic blood loss from denuded skin can → anemia and hypoalbuminemia. **Tests:** CBC
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Adequate premedication is essential to minimize movement during induction. An orally administered combination of midazolam (0.6 mg/kg) and ketamine (3.5 mg/kg) facilitates the atraumatic placement of iv lines in the OR. Glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg can be given as antisialagogue. EMLA cream can be applied without adhesive dressing.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Patients are placed on sheepskin to cushion pressure points. The following should be available: Albolene liquefying cleanser, Surg-O-Flex (flexible tubular bandage), Vaseline gauze, Zeroform, Kerlix, Webril, cotton umbilical tape, Mepitel dressing, and Coban wrap. No adhesive tape is used. Adhesive portions of EKG leads and electrocautery dispersion plates are removed; the leads and plates are secured to the patient, using Webril or Surg-O-Flex. BP cuff must be applied over multiple layers of cotton padding. Carefully trim the adhesive off the pulse oximetry probe, wrap around the palm or finger, and wrap Coban around the probe. Alternatively, use adult clip-on probe. Anesthesia masks, ETTs, temperature probes, and all attached monitoring equipment are lubricated with Albolene. Venipuncture can be difficult, and the iv lines are secured with Vaseline gauze and Coban.

Anesthetic technique: GETA is the preferred method of anesthesia when upper airway manipulation is required or airway protection is compromised. Anticipate difficult airway. Planned FOL is safer than DL. Use smaller ETT to avoid formation of laryngeal bullae. ETT and laryngoscope blade, if used, should be well lubricated. Smaller-than normal LMA has been used, with the shaft and cuff lubricated. Secure tube with umbilical tape. The safety of GETA, however, is not well documented in junctional EB patients, where columnar epithelium can be involved. Succinylcholine should be used with caution due to potential ↑ K^+ 2° muscle atrophy, although it has been used safely in many instances. NMRs prolong duration of action 2° ↓ muscle mass and changes in volume of distribution 2° hypoalbuminemia, which results from ill health and poor nutritional status.

IV anesthesia: Ketamine has been utilized for patients with EB undergoing surgical procedures. For anesthesia, use a loading dose of midazolam 0.1–0.2 mg/kg with ketamine 0.25–0.5 mg/kg, followed by a continuous infusion of ketamine (1 mg/kg/h) and midazolam (0.1 mg/kg/h). Glycopyrrolate can be used as an antisialagogue in these patients. Alternatively, propofol (50–100 mg/kg/h) with remifentanil (0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/h), or dexmedetomidine (0.4–0.7 mcg/kg/h) infusions may be used. Titrate both medications according to patient's response to the surgical stimulation.

Inhalation anesthesia: Inhalation anesthesia may also be performed in cases of difficult iv access and low risk of aspiration.

Local anesthesia: At our institution, deep local anesthetic infiltration may be used.

Regional anesthesia: In some patients with EB, regional anesthesia techniques allow maintenance of airway patency, involve minimal epidermal/dermal damage, and can offer prolonged postop pain relief. Brachial plexus anesthesia, epidural anesthesia, and spinal anesthesia have been used successfully in patients with EB.

Emergence	Adequate postop analgesia and parental presence in the PACU may help prevent excessive struggling and skin trauma during emergence and recovery. Plastic O_2 delivery masks should be avoided as they have sharp edges. Avoid rectal route for pain management, as it may cause perianal trauma and blistering. Acetaminophen, ketorolac, and opioids can be used for postop analgesia. PONV should be avoided by using combination antiemetic therapy. Pruritus, a common side effect of opiates, should be treated promptly.

Suggested Readings

1. Allegaert K, Naulaers G: Gabapentin as part of multimodel analgesia in a newborn with epidermolysis bullosa. *Pediatr Anesth* 2010; 20:958–76.
2. Baum VC, O'Flaherty JE: *Anesthesia for Genetic, Metabolic and Dysmorphic Syndromes of Childhood,* 2nd edition. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007, 122–4.
3. Borgeat A, Blumenthal S: Postoperative pain management following scoliosis surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2008; 21(3):313–6.

4. Boschin M, Ellger B, Van Den Heuvel I, et al: Bilateral ultrasound-guided axillary plexus anesthesia in a child with dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa. *Pediatr Anesth* 2012; 22:490–507.
5. Fine JD, Johnson LB, Weiner M, et al: Tracheolaryngeal complications of inherited epidermolysis bullosa: cumulative experience of the national epidermolysis bullosa registry. *Laryngoscope* 2007; 117(9):1652–60.
6. Herod J, Denyer J, Goldman A, et al: Epidermolysis bullosa in children: pathophysiology, anaesthesia and pain management. *Paediatr Anesth* 2002; 12:388–97.
7. Iohom G, Lyons B: Anaesthesia for children with epidermolysis bullosa: a review of 20 years' experience. *EU J Anesthesiol* 2000; 18:745–54.
8. Lin YC, Golianu B: Anesthesia and pain management for pediatric patients with dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa. *J Clin Anesth* 2006; 18(4):268–71.
9. Nasr AA, Almathami A, Alhathal N, et al: Combined spinal and epidural anesthesia in a child with pidermolysis bullosa. *Pediatr Anesth* 2008; 18:1278–9.

CHAPTER

12.8 Surgery for Craniofacial Malformations

SURGEON

Stephen A. Schendel, MD, DDS, FACS

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Nai Yi Sun, MD
Mary Laughlin, MD
Louise Furukawa, MD

SURGICAL CORRECTION OF CRANIOSYNOSTOSIS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Premature fusion of cranial sutures, or **craniosynostosis,** causes various well-recognized patterns of cranial vault and facial deformities. Rarely, these are related to conditions such as Crouzon, Apert, Saethre-Chotzen, and Pfeiffer syndromes. Single or multiple sutures can be involved, the most common being the sagittal suture. This condition is called **scaphocephaly,** in which the cranial vault is bitemporally narrow, with AP elongation. **Anterior or posterior plagiocephaly** involves a single coronal suture or lambdoid suture and is characterized by flattening of the forehead on the affected side. **Oxycephaly** ("tower-head deformity") involves bilateral coronal sutures, with a flat, high forehead, whereas **brachycephaly** also involves the cranial base sutures and results in bitemporal bulging, midfacial hypoplasia, an anterior open bite, and hypertelorism. These patients may have severe sleep apnea and can pose a challenge for airway management. **Trigonocephaly** (triangular head shape; Fig. 12.8-1), with a keel-shaped forehead and hypoteloric tendency, involves the metopic suture.

Surgical correction of these craniofacial anomalies requires a combined plastic surgery and neurosurgery team approach involving the release or resection of the affected suture and simultaneous correction of the asymmetric skull by **bone-flap repositioning or advancement.** Frontal/orbital abnormalities are addressed with **bifrontal craniotomy** and **forehead advancement,** along with advancement of the supraorbital bar **(fronto-orbital advancement;** Fig. 12.8-2). For example, in plagiocephaly, because of the unilateral coronal synostosis, the frontal bone is retruded and the superior orbital rim is elevated and retruded on this side. Craniectomy is performed, the forehead is removed, the involved coronal suture is resected, and the supraorbital bar is cut above the orbit and down to the lateral orbital wall across the midline. The bar is bent, advanced on the involved side—sometimes up to 1.5 cm—and

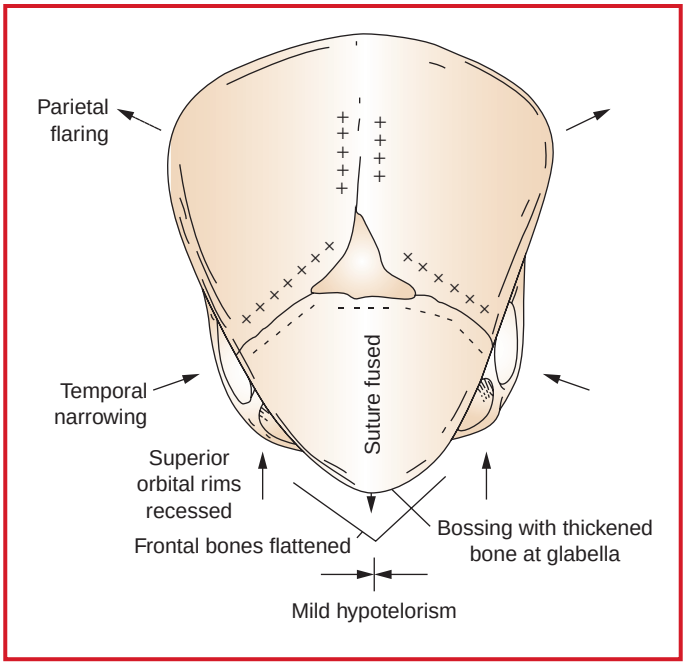


Figure 12.8-1. Skull shape abnormalities in metopic synostosis: Regions of reduced bone deposition (———). Regions of compensatory increased bone deposition (+++). (From Belfrey ME, Pershing JA, et al: Surgical Treatment of Metopic Synostosis. In: Pershing JA, Jane JA, eds. *Neurosurgical Clinics of North America*. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1991, used with permission.)

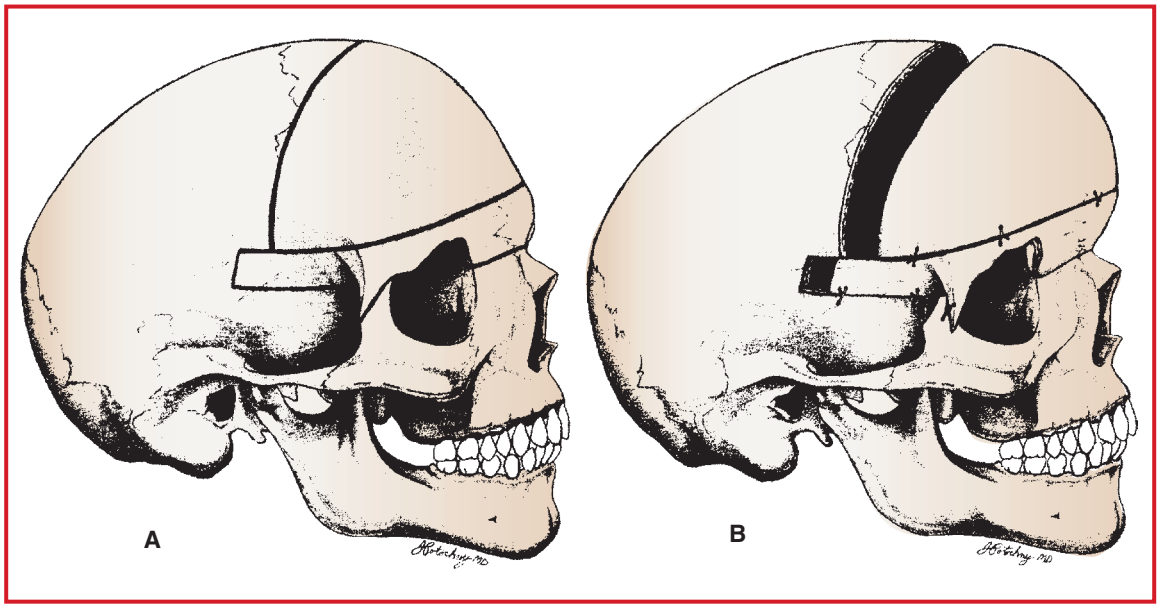


Figure 12.8-2. Fronto-orbital advancement. **A:** Lines of osteotomy for forehead and supraorbital bar advancement. **B:** Fronto-orbital advancement in a tongue-in-groove manner and fixation with wires. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

fixed in this position. Additional bone strips are taken from the posterior cranium and split for use as graft material; the other bone pieces are replaced and fixed with wires, suture, or restorable plates, which is the most common method now.

Patient positioning, type of headrest, and incision all vary, depending on location of the suture abnormality. If the deformity is mostly posterior (e.g., a sagittal or plagiocephaly case), a prone approach with biparietal or midsagittal incision can be used and may be done endoscopically in the younger infant. Resection of the involved suture and **barrel staving** of the cranium, with grafting for reshaping, works well. Reconstruction as above usually is accomplished at ~3–6 mo of age. Brain mass doubles in size the first 6 mo and triples by 3 yr of age, when ~80% of the brain growth is completed (the driving force for cranial vault growth).

All procedures are extradural. Dural tears, if they occur, are repaired to prevent CSF leak and CNS infection.

In the syndromic cases, the cranial synostosis deformity is treated similarly to the procedure described, usually before the age of 12 mo, with a view to midfacial advancement of the primary dentition at maturity either by **LeFort III or by monobloc advancement with or without distraction.** (See p. 1443 LeFort Osteotomies, and p. 1442 Major Secondary Craniofacial Surgical Procedures.)

Postsurgical orthopedic distraction devices like the **Delaire mask** also can be used to encourage midfacial growth. The syndromic cases may require repeat craniotomy and reshaping at a young age if signs of ↑ ICP appear. Other synostotic cases also should be monitored for ↑ ICP and the need for urgent secondary craniotomy. Marchac and Renier detected ↑ ICP in 13% of single-suture synostosis and 42% of multisuture synostosis. ↑ ICP may increase the risk of dural breach during craniotomy 2° cranial bone resorption and thinning.

Blood loss can be significant at first incision through the vessel-rich scalp. Rainey clips are applied immediately to minimize blood loss. In anticipation of major blood loss, transfusion should be started with the first incision. Severe life-threatening blood loss can occur if the sagittal sinus is breached, and neurosurgical repair must be accomplished quickly. Elevation of the bone flaps usually causes diffuse bleeding, which is stopped easily with irrigated bipolar cautery and thrombin-soaked sponges. It is useful to have the patient in the reverse Trendelenburg position from the start. Diffuse bleeding at the cut bone edges and over the bone surfaces can be further controlled with bone wax. Focal bleeding from around the orbit and in the temporal fossa region subperiosteally also can be controlled with

bone wax. A LeFort/monobloc component to the surgery increases blood loss, especially during the initial mobilization of the facial segment. Local anesthetic with epinephrine injected, and/or on sponge packs for pressure, will control the diffuse mucosal bleeding. BP control is also paramount. Electrocautery and Ligaclips to larger vessels (e.g., descending palatine pedicles) may be necessary.

Variant procedure or approaches: In older children (> 2 yr), split cranial bone grafts may be required to correct defects caused by bone-flap advancement. Excision of skull segments is commonly accompanied by rigid fixation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Craniosynostosis (sagittal, coronal, metopic, lambdoid); syndromes such as Apert and Crouzon syndromes; ↑ ICP

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Usually supine; prone for correction of lambdoidal suture synostosis or posterior sagittal synostosis. If entire cranial vault reshaping (multiple sutures), special padded occipital-cheek headrest, because pin fixation is not safe until > 2 yr.
Incision	Usually bicoronal, biparietal, Meisterschnitt, midsagittal
Special instrumentation	Horseshoe headrest, usually pediatric; occasionally, Gardner tongs; Midas Rex craniotomy; resorbable plates and screws
Unique considerations	Control of ICP — spinal drain may be placed. Blood in room, if transfusion anticipated.
Antibiotics	Pediatric: cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 8 h, or vancomycin 10–15 mg/kg q 6 h, and cefotaxime 25–50 mg/kg q 6 h for oropharyngeal contamination and following dural tears
Surgical time	2–6 h
Closing considerations	Blood loss with Rainey clip removal. Full head-wrap dressing causes head/neck movement → bucking.
EBL	200–800 mL; may be formidable.
Postop care	ICU: 1–2 d (further transfusion often necessary in first 2 h to replace drain losses)
Mortality	0.6–1.6%
Morbidity	Major complications: 14.3% Bone infection: 3–7% Meningitis CSF leak: 4.5% ↑ ICP Air embolus: < 1% Blindness: < 1% Massive bleeding: < 1% Venous thrombosis Neurologic injury: Rare
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2–24 mo (primary correction)
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Nonsyndromic: 1/10,000 births (most sporadic; few familial patterns) Crouzon syndrome: 1/25,000 Apert syndrome: 1/100,000

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS (cont'd)	
Etiology	Idiopathic; however, some are associated with specific genetic conditions (e.g., Crouzon and Apert syndromes). Other cases may be 2° ↓ brain growth.
Associated conditions	Hydrocephalus; ↑ ICP; mental retardation; airway problems; ocular abnormalities; exotropia (29% Crouzon or Apert syndrome); lagophthalmus; exorbitism

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients may have craniofacial anomalies—particularly Apert and Crouzon syndromes—which are associated with midface hypoplasia, obstructive sleep apnea, and in some cases difficult intubation. Apert syndrome may also be associated with congenital cardiac anomalies. Hence, detailed preop evaluation is necessary. Children with single-suture craniosynostosis are usually healthy. Surgery is often performed between 3 and 6 mo of age, preferably when the infant weighs > 5 kg.

Respiratory	Patients with long-standing upper-airway obstruction due to choanal atresia, mandibular and maxillary hypoplasia, or other causes, may have chronic hypoventilation and hypoxia and may experience episodes of apnea. If the patient has Sx of acute URI, delay elective surgery at least 2 wk. The presence of fever, cough, and abnormal chest auscultation necessitates surgical cancellation and pediatric consultation. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Airway	Be aware of other congenital anomalies affecting the patient's airway, such as Apert, Klippel-Feil, Goldenhar, Pierre Robin, Treacher Collins, or Crouzon syndromes. Review any previous anesthetic records for patient to gain insights into appropriate airway management (e.g., Video laryngoscope or FOI may be necessary). Consider elective tracheostomy under local anesthesia in patients with severe airway abnormalities.
Cardiovascular	Consider the coexistence of congenital cardiopulmonary anomalies, particularly in patients with Apert syndrome (autosomal dominant trait, craniosynostosis, midface hypoplasia, syndactyly of hands and feet, ASD, and VSD). Preop evaluation of a patient with a known or suspected heart defect should include thorough H&P, ECG, Hct, baseline O_2 sat, and echocardiogram. For children with Sx of cardiac dysfunction or those requiring cardiac medication, it is advisable to consult with a pediatric cardiologist to optimize the patient's condition prior to surgery. **Tests:** Preop EKG indicated for patients with CHD, CXR, ECHO; others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	If only the sagittal suture is involved, ICP is usually normal. If more than one suture is involved, brain growth will be impaired, the patient will be developmentally delayed, and intracranial HTN may be present. Older patients presenting for repair are more likely to show signs and symptoms of elevated ICP. Syndromic craniosynostosis often have associated hydrocephalus.
Hematologic	Surgery in early infancy (< 9 mo) is common; thus, allowable blood loss is small; blood transfusion usually is required. **Tests:** Hct; PT; PTT; T&C blood
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients > 9–10 mo old may benefit from premedication with midazolam (0.5 mg/kg po). Antibiotic prophylaxis for CHD may be warranted. Consult latest AHA guidelines.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA. Anticipate possible difficult airway. Heat OR to 78–80°. Forced air warmer. Heat all fluids to body temperature.

Induction	Surgery for craniectomies is extradural. Either mask induction with N_2O and inhalational agent or iv induction is suitable for the infant with a normal airway. If ICP is suspected to be elevated, consider mild hyperventilation after loss of consciousness. For a difficult airway, intubation may be facilitated by using Video laryngoscope or FOI while patient is anesthetized and spontaneously ventilating. In rare situations, tracheostomy, under sedation and local anesthesia, may be necessary. Consider suturing ETT to prevent accidental extubation in prone cases, as unsutured endotracheal tubes can slip through tape due to pooling of oral or nasal secretions.	
Maintenance	Maintenance anesthesia with inhalational agent or balanced (iv) anesthesia, and long-acting muscle relaxant should be adequate. Surgery may be prolonged. Control of ICP may be necessary (see below). A remifentanil infusion 0.1–0.2 mcg/kg/min provides profound intraop analgesia, BP control, and allows for rapid awakening.	
Emergence	Prompt awakening to allow neurological evaluation is an important goal. Excessive facial edema due to prolonged surgery or high blood loss requiring large-volume fluid replacement, particularly in patients with preoperative sleep apnea, may require the patient to remain intubated postoperatively. Check for presence of air leak around ETT in patients with significant facial edema to determine readiness for extubation.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss. IV× 2 (as large as possible) LR @: 4 mL/kg/h – 0–10 kg + 2 mL/kg/h – 11–20 kg + 1 mL/kg/h – > 20 kg (e.g., 25 kg = 65 mL/h) Warm all fluids. Humidify gases.	Have 1–2 U PRBC or whole blood available in the room. Consider splitting PRBC into aliquots preoperatively to minimize donor exposure. Use freshest compatible PRBC available for infants to minimize risk of hyperkalemia. Consider antifibrinolytics such as Tranexamic acid (loading dose 50 mg/kg, followed by infusion of 5 mg/kg/h) to decrease intraoperative blood loss and blood transfusion needs. Use LR for replacing deficit, maintenance, and 3rd-space fluid loss. Replace blood loss with colloid and PRBC mL for mL. Warm all fluids administered. Significant blood loss begins with scalp incision; allowable blood loss is small so that it is important to begin transfusion early before hypovolemia occurs. Estimation of intraoperative blood loss may be difficult because of significant loss of blood onto surgical drapes and gowns. EBV for an infant in this age group is 80 mL/kg. Monitor for signs of coagulopathy and transfuse FFP and cryoprecipitate platelets as needed. Avoid NS (acidosis, ↑ bleeding) in children < 5 yr. Beware of ↑ K^+ and ↓ Ca^{++} associated with massive transfusion.
Control of ICP	Hyperventilation Osmotic diuretic Loop diuretic	In some cases, it may be desirable to ↓ ICP. This can be accomplished by ↑ ventilation ($PaCO_2$ = 25–30 mm Hg), diuretics (furosemide 0.5–1 mg/kg iv).

Monitoring	Standard monitors (Appendix D-1). + Arterial line ± CVP line ± Precordial Doppler ± Urinary catheter	Arterial cannulation for BP, monitoring of ABG, Hct, electrolytes, etc., ↑ K^+ and ↓ Ca^{++} are most common following transfusion with whole blood or FFP. VAE has been reported during craniectomies in infants; hence, a precordial Doppler and CVP line will be helpful. CVP may be particularly helpful in the infant with marginal cardiovascular status for volume assessment and drug administration. Close attention to $ETCO_2$ and, if available, ETN_2 monitoring is useful. If VAE is suspected, the surgical field should be flooded and the head lowered immediately. CVP may be particularly helpful in the infant with marginal cardiovascular status for volume assessment and drug administration and if peripheral iv access is limited. Precordial or esophageal stethoscope is useful in cases where the patient is turned 180° or in cases of marginal pulmonary function.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Positioning depends on surgical approach; most are performed with patient supine. The head-up position is commonly used to help decrease venous pressure and blood loss.
Complications	Oculocardiac reflex (OCR) → ↓↓ HR and ↓↓ BP VAE	Notify surgeons. If does not resolve, give atropine 0.02 mg/kg iv (min 0.1 mg). Be prepared to make prompt Dx of VAE (↓ $ETCO_2$, change in Doppler sounds, ↑ ETN_2 ↓ O_2 sat, ↓ BP, ↑ HR) and Rx: notify surgeons, flood wound, ± head down, aspirate CVP, ± vasopressors. Minimizing head-up position, avoiding hypovolemia, and introducing PEEP can help to prevent VAE.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hypovolemia with ↓ BP Hypothermia Airway complications	Inadequate volume replacement may result in ↓ BP and acidosis. ✓ Hct to establish need for further fluid or blood therapy. Coagulopathy may develop postoperatively, check coags to establish need for blood component therapy. Excessive facial edema, history of a marginal airway preoperatively, or severe obstructive sleep apnea with sensitivity to opioids may necessitate maintenance of a secure airway postoperatively
Pain management	Parenteral opioids and acetaminophen (see p. E-4).	
Tests	Follow-up Hct postop	Transfuse to keep Hct ≥ 30%.

Suggested Readings

1. Chiaretti A, Pietrini B: Safety & efficacy of remifentanil infusion in craniosynostosis repair in infants. *Ped Neurosurg* 2002; 36(1):55–6.
2. Cladis F, Grunwaldt L, Losee J; Anesthesia for plastic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 821-41.
3. Davies DW, Munro IR: The anesthetic management and intraoperative care of patients undergoing major facial osteotomies. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1975; 55(1):50–5.

4. Farbod F, Kanaan H, Farbod J: Infective endocarditis and antibiotic prophylaxis prior to dental/oral procedures: latest revision to the guidelines by the American Heart Association published April 2007. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2009; 38(6):626–31.
5. Goobie SM, Meir PM, et al: Efficacy of transexamic acid in pediatric craniosynostosis surgery: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesthesiology* 2011; 114(4):862–71.
6. Guzman R, Lobby JF, Schendel SA, Edwards MS: Fronto-orbital advancement using and en bloc frontal bone craniectomy. *Neurosurgery* 2011; 68(1 Suppl Operative):68–74.
7. Harris MM, Yemen TA, Davidson A, et al: Venous embolism during craniectomy in supine infants. *Anesthesiology* 1987; 67(5):816–19.
8. Hayden Gephart MG, Woodard JI, Arrigo RT, et al: Using bioabsorbable fixation systems in the treatment of pediatric skull deformities leads to good outcomes and low morbidity. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2012 Oct 26. [Epub ahead of print]
9. Huang M, Mouradian WE, Cohen SR, et al: The differential diagnosis of abnormal head shapes: separating craniosynostosis from positional deformities and normal variants. *Cleft Palate Craniofacial J* 1998; 35(3):204–11.
10. Ko EW, Chen OK, Tai IC, Huang CS: Fronto-facial monobloc distraction in syndromic craniosynostosis. Three-dimensional evaluation of treatment outcome and facial growth. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2012; 41(1):20–7.
11. Koh JL, Gries H: Perioperative management of pediatric patients with craniosynostosis. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2007; 25(3):465–81.
12. Marchac D, Renier D, Jones BM: Experience with the "Floating Forehead." *Br J Plast Surg* 1988; 41(1):1–15.
13. Muhling J: Surgical treatment of craniosynostosis. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 877–88.
14. Palmisano BW, Rusy LM: Anesthesia for plastic surgery. In: Gregory GA, ed. *Pediatric Anesthesia,* 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2002, 707–45.
15. Posnick JC: Surgical management of Crouzon, Apert and related syndromes. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 863–75.
16. Schindler E, Martini M, Messing-Junger M: Anesthesia for plastic and craniofacial surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 810–44.
17. Sticker PA, Shaw TL, DeSouza DG, et al: Blood loss, replacement and associated morbidity in infants and children undergoing craniofacial surgery. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2010; 20(2):150–9.
18. Tessier P: Relationship of craniostenoses to craniofacial dysostoses and to faciostenoses: a study with therapeutic implications. *Plast Reconstruct Surg* 1971; 48(3):224–37.
19. Thomas K, Hughes C, Johnson D, et al: Anesthesia for surgery related to craniosynostosis: a review Part 1. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2012; doiL10.111/j/1460-9595.2012.03927.x
20. Thomas K, Hughes C, Johnson D, et al: Anesthesia for surgery related to craniosynostosis: a review Part 2. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2013; 23(1):22–7.

MAJOR SECONDARY CRANIOFACIAL SURGICAL PROCEDURES

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: These procedures usually are performed on children ≥ 5 yr. There are two basic approaches. The first involves advancement of the upper face and frontal bone, frequently described as a **monobloc** (Fig. 12.8-3) or **frontofacial advancement.** Occasionally, a LeFort III osteotomy and advancement may be performed depending on the anatomy. The second variation, called **facial bipartition** or **periorbital osteotomy,** is for correction of telorbitism (widely spaced eyes), usually accomplished by a combined extra- and intracranial approach, using both plastic and neurosurgery teams.

Variant procedure or approaches: Many different variations of the above-named procedures can be performed; however, from an anesthetic standpoint, they are not significantly different. The use of **cranial bone grafts** and **rigid fixation** have shortened these somewhat lengthy procedures. Other bone grafts, however, from ribs and iliac crest, are occasionally required. These procedures frequently last ≥ 6 h, and blood loss can be very heavy. Reconstruction of the forehead and orbital area following a tumor excision, for example, uses a similar approach but requires additional bone grafts. The use of external or internal distraction devices has eliminated the need for bone grafts and decreased associated complications such as infection.

Usual preop diagnosis: Craniofacial malformations; craniofacial deformities; telorbitism or hypertelorism; craniofacial dysostosis

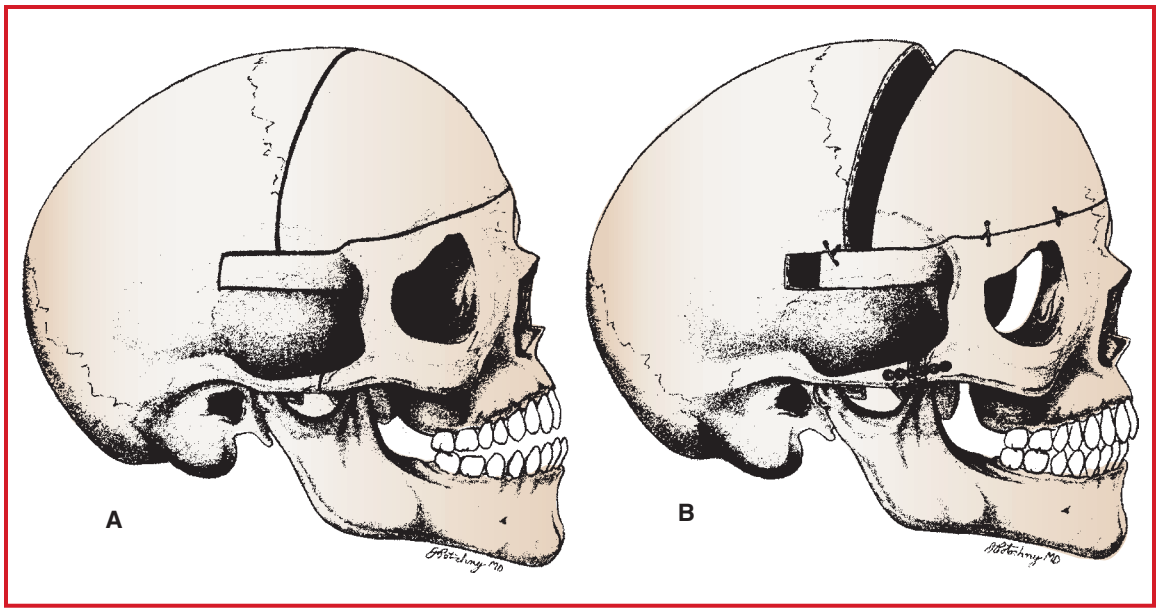


Figure 12.8-3. Monobloc advancement. **A:** Lines of osteotomy for monobloc osteotomy. **B:** Advancement of midface, orbits, and frontal bone, and stabilization with bone grafts and miniplates. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Monobloc/Frontofacial Advancement	Facial Bipartition, Periorbital Osteotomies
Position	Supine	⇐
Incision	Bicoronal, oral	Bicoronal, infraorbital
Special instrumentation	Horseshoe headrest, usually pediatric; disimpaction forceps; Midas Rex craniotomy; resorbable plates and screws; mini/micro titanium plates and screws; ± distraction device to supplant bone grafting and rigid fixation.	⇐
Unique considerations	Control of ICP: spinal drain may be placed, hyperventilation. Blood in room for anticipated transfusion.	⇐
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 8 h or vancomycin 10–15 mg/kg q 6 h, and cefotaxime 25–50 mg/kg q 6 h for oropharyngeal contamination and following dural tears	⇐
Surgical time	4–10 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Blood loss with Rainey clip removal for suturing. Full head-wrap dressing → head/neck movement with awakening.	⇐
EBL	400–800 mL; may be formidable	⇐
Postop care	ICU: 1–2 d; monitor Hct.	⇐
Mortality	0.6–1.6%	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

Morbidity	Major complications: 14.3%	⇐
	Bone infection: 3–7%	⇐
	Meningitis	⇐
	Infection rates higher if:	⇐
	Adults rather than children (10×)	⇐
	Longer OR times and longer hospital stay	⇐
	Tracheostomy	⇐
	Foreign body (plates/screws/other alloplast)	⇐
	Anterior fossa entered	⇐
	Large dead space (e.g., in adult nongrowing brain)	⇐
	CSF leak: 4.5%	⇐
	↑ ICP	⇐
	Air embolus: < 1%	⇐
	Blindness: < 1%	⇐
	Massive bleeding: < 1%	⇐
	Venous thrombosis	⇐
	Neurological injury: Rare	⇐
Pain score	6	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–20 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Crouzon syndrome: 1/25,000 Apert syndrome: 1/100,000
Etiology	Congenital (80%); occasionally trauma or tumor (20%)
Associated conditions	Depends greatly on the syndrome or disease entity. See Craniosynostosis, p. 1436.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Craniofacial syndromes often are associated with maxillofacial deformities, mandibular abnormalities and challenging airway management.

Respiratory	Patients with long-standing upper airway obstruction due to choanal atresia, mandibular and maxillary hypoplasia, etc., may have chronic hypoventilation and hypoxia and may have apnea episodes. If Sx of acute URI, delay elective surgery at least 2 wk. The presence of fever, cough, and abnormal chest auscultation necessitates surgical cancellation and pediatric consultation. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Airway	Be aware of other congenital anomalies affecting the airway, such as Apert, Goldenhar, Klippel-Feil, Pierre Robin, Treacher Collins, or Crouzon syndromes. Review any previous anesthetic records for insights into airway management (e.g., need for Video laryngoscope or FOI). Consider elective tracheostomy under local anesthesia in patients with severe airway abnormalities.

Cardiovascular	Frequency of CHD is increased in patients with craniofacial abnormalities. Preop evaluation of patient with known or suspected heart defect should include H&P, ECG, Hct, baseline O_2 sat. For children with Sx of cardiac dysfunction or those requiring cardiac medication, it is advisable to consult with a pediatric cardiologist to optimize patient's condition prior to surgery. **Tests:** Preop ECG, echocardiogram, CXR indicated for patients with CHD; others as indicated from H&P.
Neurological	Neurologic deficits, if any, should be documented preop.
Laboratory	Hb/Hct; therapeutic drug levels for patients taking anticonvulsants.
Premedication	Premedication is helpful for patients > 1 yr—oral midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg or oral ketamine 6 mg/kg about 30–60 min before induction.
Pain	Pain management should be discussed preoperatively. Perioperative nerve blockade can be considered.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA, with special consideration given to associated CHD, pulmonary, and airway problems.

Induction	In an otherwise healthy patient, inhalational induction with subsequent placement of iv lines is appropriate. Muscle relaxants facilitate intubation but should be used only when adequate mask ventilation can be ensured. An oral RAE ETT is useful for this procedure and should be secured carefully in place (often by suturing). Intubation in a patient with airway abnormalities may be facilitated by using an FOI or Glidescope with patient lightly anesthetized and spontaneously ventilating. In rare situations, tracheostomy, under sedation and local anesthesia, may be necessary.	
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-2). Consider use of remifentanil infusion (0.1–0.2 mcg/kg/min) for supplemental analgesia and to facilitate rapid awakening.	
Emergence	Extubate trachea when patient is awake and protective airway reflexes have returned.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Anticipate large blood loss. IV: 18 ga × 1–2 NS/LR @: 4 mL/kg/h – 0–10 kg + 2 mL/kg/h – 11–20 kg + 1 mL/kg/h – > 20 kg (e.g., 25 kg = 65 mL/h) Warm fluids.	The goal of intraop fluid therapy is to replace preop deficits, intraop fluid, electrolyte, and blood losses, while providing maintenance fluids. Half of the calculated deficit (hours fasting × hourly maintenance fluid requirement) generally is replaced during the 1st h of anesthesia and the balance over the next 1–2 h. Surgical manipulation of tissue will cause 3rd-space fluid loss proportional to the degree of surgical trauma and tissue exposure. It may range from 0 to 10 mL/kg/h.
Control of blood loss	Deliberate ↓ BP	Deliberate ↓ BP can be accomplished by use of SNP, esmolol, or potent inhalational agents titrated to effect (MAP 50–60 mm Hg).
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1). Arterial line ± CVP line	Arterial line is essential for monitoring BP during deliberate ↓ BP and for ABGs and blood chemistries.

Control of ICP	Hyperventilation Mannitol Loop diuretics CSF drainage (> 1 yr)	For some procedures, it is essential to reduce intracranial volume to facilitate surgical access. If prolonged brain retraction is required, postop cerebral edema may ensue. ↓ ICP by ↑ ventilation ($PaCO_2$ = 25–30 mm Hg), diuretics (furosemide 0.5–1 mg/kg iv)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Positioning head above the heart facilitates venous drainage but also increases the incidence of VAE. Do not hyperextend or hyperflex the head and neck. Flexion of the neck will move the ETT downward (mainstem intubation); extension will move the ETT upward (cuff leak).
Complications	Displacement of ETT Oculocardiac reflex (OCR)→ ↓↓ HR ↓ BP VAE Major blood loss	Suture ETT to alveolar ridge. Notify surgeon. If necessary, Rx: atropine 0.02 mg/kg. VAE should be suspected if sudden ↑ ETN_2, ↓ $ETCO_2$, ↓ O_2 sat, ↓ BP, ↑ HR. Notify surgeon, flood surgical field with NS, support patient hemodynamically and D/C N_2O.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	↑ ADH secretion Diabetes insipidus (see Appendix D-1). Cerebral edema Pneumothorax Bleeding	SIADH or DI may follow brain manipulation and may require pharmacologic intervention for Rx. Cerebral edema may → ↑ ICP (headache, N/V, ↓ mental status, etc.) Pneumothorax (Sx = ↑ respirations, wheezing, ↓ BP, ↓ CO, ↓ O_2 sat) may occur 2° rib resection for bone graft. ✓ CXR.
Pain management	PCA (see p. E-4).	Regional anesthesia may be considered (infraorbital block for cleft lip, scalp blocks for frontofacial advancement)
Tests	Hct	

Suggested Readings

1. Bradley JP, Gabbey JS, Taub PJ, et al: Monobloc advancement by distraction osteogenesis decreases morbidity and relapse. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006; 118(7):1585–97.
2. Cladis F, Grunwaldt L, Losee J: Anesthesia for plastic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 821–41.
3. David DJ, Cooter RD: Craniofacial infection in 10 years of transcranial surgery. *Plast Reconstruct Surg J* 1987; 80(2): 213–23.
4. Nargozian C: The airway in patients with craniofacial abnormalities. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2004; 14(1):53–9.
5. Posnick JC: Surgical management of Crouzon, Apert and related syndromes. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 863–75.
6. Schindler E, Martini M, Messing-Junger M: Anesthesia for plastic and craniofacial surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 810–44.
7. Suresh S, Voronov P: Head and neck blocks for infants, children and adolescents. *Pediatr Anesth* 2012; (22):81–7.
8. Williams JK, Longaker MT: Surgical complications of craniofacial surgery. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 905–16.

CLEFT LIP REPAIR—UNILATERAL/BILATERAL

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Cleft lip may be either unilateral or bilateral, associated frequently with clefts of the alveolus and palate. Surgical repair involves the design and execution of geometric flaps on the medial and lateral sides of the cleft and primary repair of the cleft nasal deformity. The most common unilateral technique is the **rotation advancement flap of Millard** (Fig. 12.8-4). Multiple bilateral lip repairs have been described, some repairing both sides simultaneously and some one side at a time (Fig. 12.8-5). Technique depends on the amount of prolabial and lateral element tissue available. Recently, **primary nasal repair** has been coupled with these bilateral procedures. These nasal repairs involve extensive mobilization of the alar cartilages and transfer of tissue up into the cleft nasal vestibule and floor, with nasal stents often placed. All of these factors can decrease or occlude nasal airway breathing. Although only a minority of neonates has been found to be true nasal obligatory breathers, this should be kept in mind for those postop patients with respiratory distress.

Variant procedure or approaches: Other approaches commonly performed are those of the **Davies-** or **Tennison**-type (Z-plasty) lip repairs (Fig. 12.8-6). In large clefts, a lip adhesion may be performed as an initial stage several months before the actual definitive correction of the cleft lip. This procedure basically involves creating a wound on either side and suturing the muscles, mucosa, and skin together. The procedure itself is very short (~45 min).

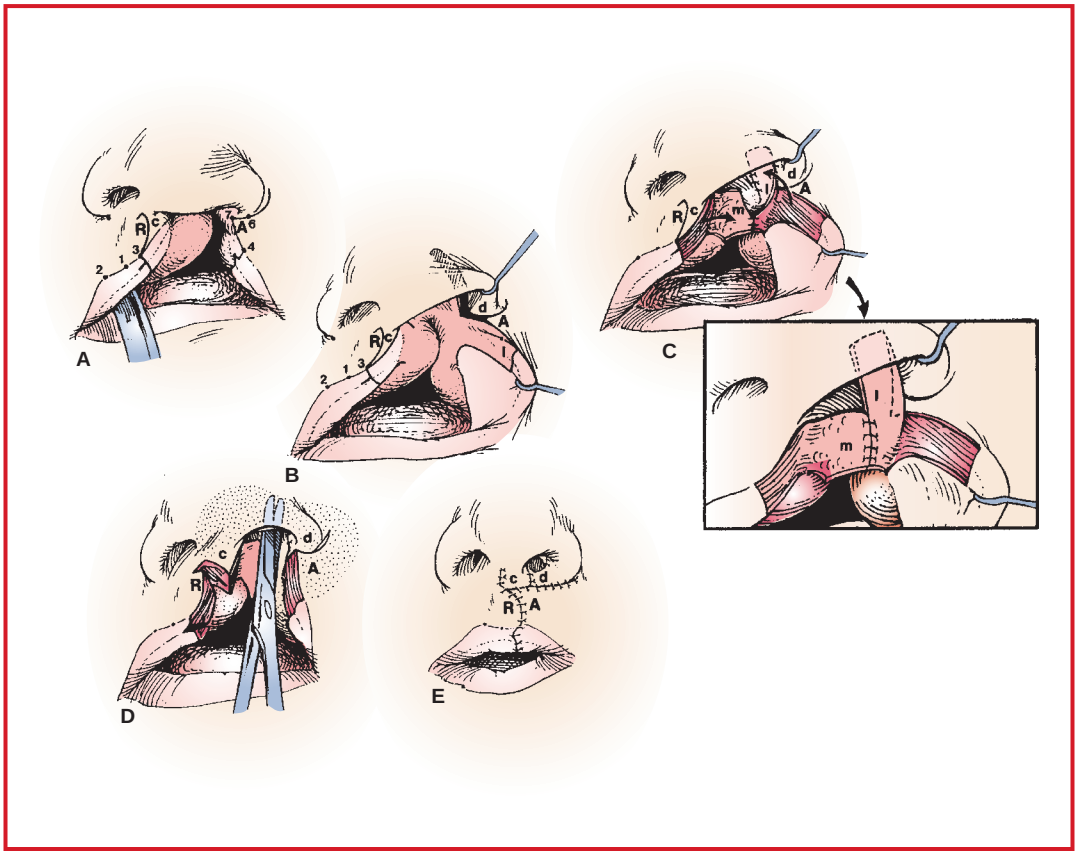


Figure 12.8-4. Step-by-step unilateral complete cleft rotation advancement: m = medial mucosal flap; l = lateral mucosal flap. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

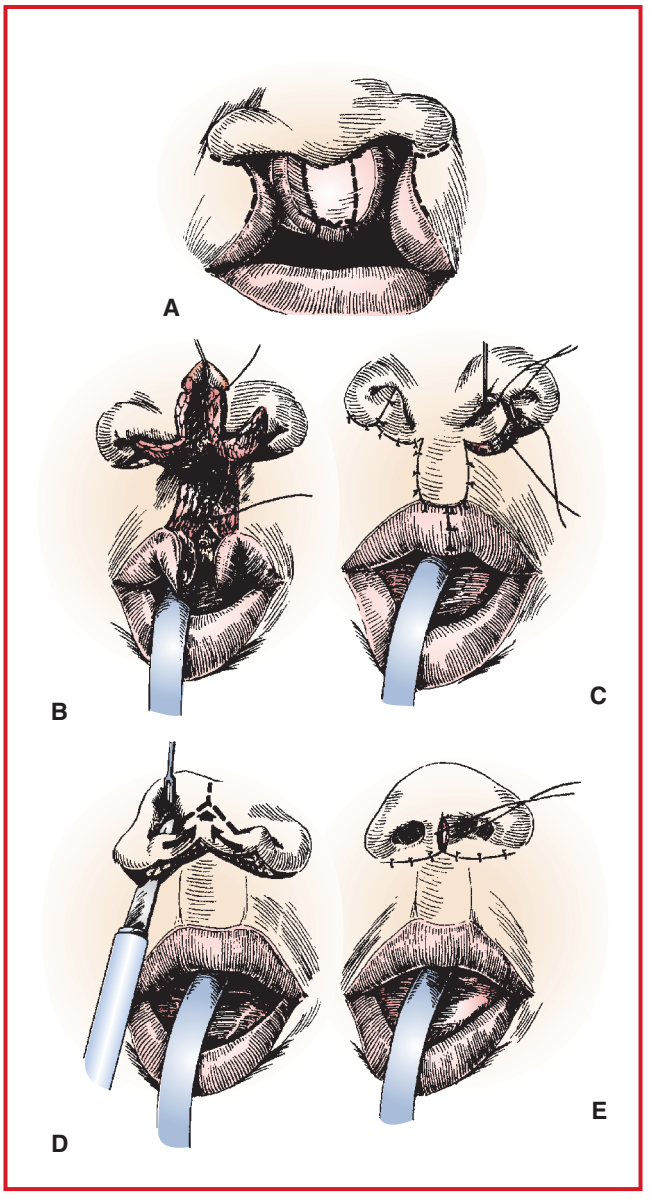


Figure 12.8-5. Banked fork-flap procedure. In the first stage **(A-C)**, bilateral straight line repairs are done after the prolabium is divided vertically into three forks. The central limb is used to construct the center of the lip. The lateral forks are "banked" at the alar bases for later use in constructing a columella. At the second stage **(D-E)**, bipedicle flaps from the nasal floor, which include the banked forks, are used in combination with a membranous septum incision to elongate the columella and increase tip projection. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997. After Millard DR Jr: Closure of bilateral cleft lip and elongation of columella by two operations at infancy. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1971; 47:324–31.)

Presurgical orthopedic devices may be placed and manipulated, instead of a lip adhesion, to bring a wide, bony cleft into better opposition for a tension-free complete repair. These are custom-fitted and may be fixed with pins to the palate. They are removed in the OR at time of repair.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cleft lip/palate

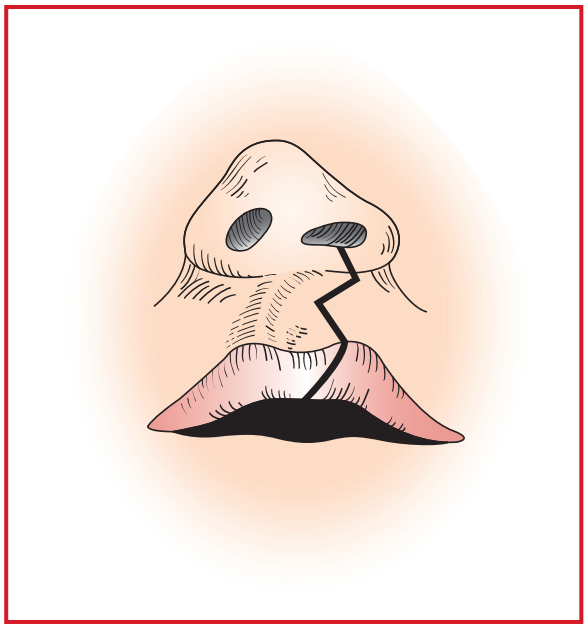


Figure 12.8-6. Z-plasty closure of lip. (Reproduced with permission from McCarthy JG, ed: *Plastic Surgery*. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1990).

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table rotated either 90° or 180°, with oral RAE or reinforced tube toward chin; patient's head at the edge of head of bed; shoulder roll; neck extended; entire face exposed; scleral shields
Incision	Medial and lateral cleft margins into the nose and in the maxillary vestibule on the cleft side
Special instrumentation	*Throat pack (**NB:** ✓ removal before extubation); oral RAE or anode tube.
Unique considerations	Local anesthesia with epinephrine injected **after** lip and nose markings complete. Pediatric patients should wake up in an unagitated state because undue crying may place excessive tension on the repair. Immediate elbow restraints for children × 2 wk.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg iv
Surgical time	1.5 h (bilateral usually ½ h longer) Lip adhesion: 45 min
Closing considerations	Nasal stent; swelling and ointment may occlude nasal airway; smooth emergence important.
EBL	5–10 mL (higher with palatoplasty)
Postop care	Elbow restraints × 2 wk; PACU → room overnight → home POD 1.
Mortality	Minimal
Morbidity	Infection Wound breakdown Hypertrophic scars
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	1 wk–6 mo
Male:Female	2:1—cleft lip and palate. Isolated cleft palate more common in females.
Incidence	1/750 for Caucasians; more common in Asians; less in African Americans. Left cleft more common than right; both more common than bilateral, in the ratio of 6:3:1.
Etiology	Multifactorial, including both genetic and environmental aspects
Associated conditions	Associated anomalies are seen in ~29% of cleft lip cases and may include major chromosomal deletions and/or duplications, along with possible severe mental retardation and CHD.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lip and Nose Surgery (p. 1460).

Suggested Readings

1. Arosarena OA: Cleft lip and palate. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2007; 40(1):27–60.
2. Gundlach KKH: Etiology, prevalence, growth and trends in cleft lip, alveolus and palate. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 991–1003.
3. Liao YF, Hsieh YJ, Chen IJ, Ko WC, Chen PK: Comparative outcomes of two nasoalveolar molding techniques for unilateral cleft nose deformity. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2012; 130(6):1289–95.
4. Mommaerts Y: The traditional 'Millard' approach to lip and palate repair. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1029–45.
5. Mulliken JB: Primary repair of bilateral cleft lip and nasal deformity. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2001; 108(1):181–94.
6. Schendel SA: Unilateral cleft lip repair–state of the art. *Cleft Palate-Craniofac J* 2000; 37(4):335–41.
7. Sullivan WG: Respiratory distress following cleft lip repair: the role of obligatory nasal breathing in the infant. *Ann Plast Surg* 1988; 20(6):590–2.
8. Winters JC, Hurwitz DJ: Presurgical orthopedics in the surgical management of unilateral cleft lip and palate. *Plast Reconstruct Surg J* 1995; 95(4):755–64.

PALATOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Cleft palate can be seen as either an isolated condition or in conjunction with clefting of the lip. The mildest form of cleft palate is the submucous, or occult cleft, in which there is no visible cleft but, rather, a nonunion of the soft-palate muscles. This is followed by the incomplete soft-palate cleft and, finally, the complete cleft, which includes soft and hard palates and may extend through the alveolar portion of the maxilla. Repair involves mobilizing the lateral soft tissue and moving it toward the midline to close the cleft and elongate the palate, if necessary. The most important goal of cleft-palate repair is the attainment of normal speech. Children with unrepaired or inadequately repaired clefts develop nasal-sounding speech patterns termed *rhinolalia*. Cleft-palate repair, therefore, usually is done when the child is 9–18 mo old, before consequential speech development. In addition to closing the cleft itself, an important goal of palate repair is normal anatomic approximation of the levator palati muscles, which are responsible for oronasal valving in speech and swallowing. The cleft palate is closed by elevating the mucoperiosteum from the underlying bones and approximating it in the midline (**von Langenbeck technique**; Fig. 12.8-7) or using a V-Y type of retrodisplacement and closure (**Wardill-Kilner technique**). In either method, the levator muscles are specifically dissected and the levator sling is reconstructed. A layered closure usually is accomplished, including repositioning of the uvular muscles.

There are several different approaches to the muscle reconstruction in the soft palate, generally termed **intravelar-veloplasties.** Z-plasty of the soft palate, also called a **Furlow procedure** (Fig. 12.8-8), has been used to lengthen the palate and reorient the palatal muscles across the cleft. The other procedures basically involve direct closure of the muscles and a push-back to lengthen the palate.

Usual preop diagnosis: Cleft palate

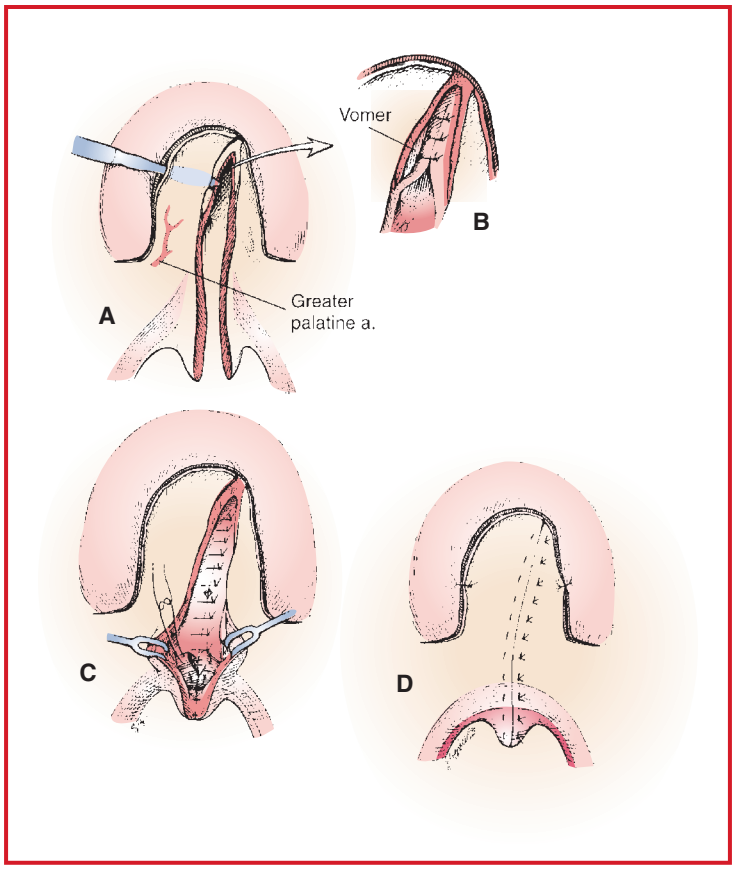


Figure 12.8-7. Palatoplasty technique. **A:** Cleft palate closure after healing of gingivoperiosteoplasty at 11–12 mo of age. Bilateral, unipedicled mucoperiosteal flaps, based on the greater palatine arteries, are elevated. **B:** Anteriorly, the nasal floor is repaired by suturing the vomerine mucosa to the nasal mucosa on the cleft side. **C:** The levator muscles are dissected free from the oral and nasal mucosa and released from the posterior edge of the hard palate. The levator muscles are approximated to each other in the midline. **D:** The oral mucosa is reapproximated in the midline with interrupted horizontal mattress sutures. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table rotated 90°–180° with oral RAE tube extending down the midline of the lower jaw and taped to the chin.
Incision	Edges of the cleft palate and, possibly, the alveolar and pterygomandibular raphe areas.
Special instrumentation	Dingman mouth gag (when setting the gag, communication between surgeon and anesthetist allows ETT compression to be noted early); usually, a headlight; oropharyngeal pack
Unique considerations	The gag may be released intermittently to allow reperfusion of the tongue; each manipulation may affect the ETT. Minimal-to-moderate amount of blood in the oropharynx at end of procedure, should be carefully suctioned. Also, there may be some respiratory difficulties on emergence. Traction with a tongue suture often proves helpful in restoring patient's airway (maintained 24 h). Usually, oral or nasopharyngeal airways should not be placed in children.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 5–6 h (up to 1 g) × 5 d

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Surgical time	1–1.5 h
Closing considerations	Child should not wake up crying and hypertensive. Tongue suture may be placed prior to extubation. **NB:** Dingman gag will stick to the ETT; therefore, holding the tube with a forceps deep in the oropharynx and careful removal of the gag avoids accidental extubation.
EBL	50 mL
Postop care	Elbow restraints; PACU → room; → home next day. OG tube placed, suctioned, and removed.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Recurrent bleeding (requiring early return to OR): Rare Hematoma under palate Dehiscence of palate
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6–18 mo
Male:Female	1:3 (isolated cleft palate)
Incidence	1/1000
Etiology	Failure of fusion of the palatal shelves from anterior to posterior. (Can be due to a persistent high-tongue position in utero, increased facial width, reduced facial mesenchyme and/or drugs such as steroids, anticonvulsants, and benzodiazepines, or infection.)
Associated conditions	Multiple associated conditions. Most common is the Pierre Robin syndrome, in which cleft palate is found in association with glossoptosis and a micrognathic retruded mandible. These children frequently have airway obstruction and, even at an older age, may have sleep apnea. Other associations include Klippel-Feil syndrome, Treacher Collins syndrome, CHD, chronic URI, chronic otitis media, subglottic stenosis.

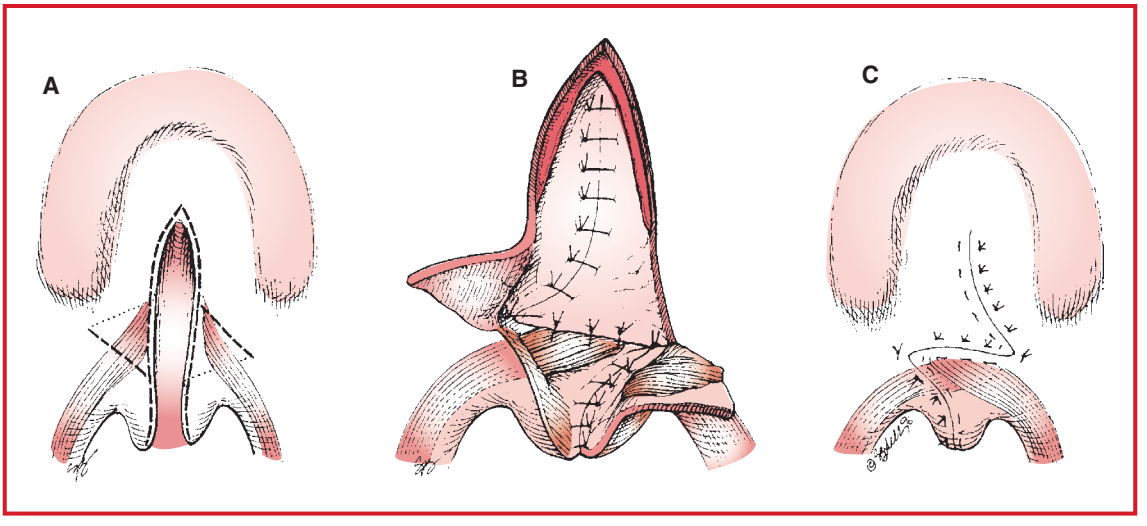


Figure 12.8-8. Double opposing Z-plasty closure of an isolated cleft palate. **A:** Design of the incisions. **B:** Muscle included in the posteriorly based flap. **C:** Final result with recreation of the levator sling. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lip and Nose Surgery, p. 1460.

Suggested Readings

1. Arosarena OA: Cleft lip and palate. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2007; 40(1):27–60.
2. Gundlach KKH: Etiology, prevalence, growth and trends in cleft lip, alveolus and palate. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 991–1003.
3. Kirschner RE, Wang P, Jawad AF, et al: Cleft-palate repair by modified Furlow double-opposing Z-Plasty: The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia Experience. *Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery* 1999; 104(7):1998–2014.
4. Mommaerts Y: The traditional 'Millard' approach to lip and palate repair. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen, J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery.* Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1029–45.

PHARYNGOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Following the initial repair of palatal clefts, some children or young adults demonstrate continued hypernasal speech patterns, a condition called "velopharyngeal incompetence." This can be 2° a short soft palate, a large nasopharynx, or a soft palate that has inadequate movement either 2° scarring or due to neurogenic problems. The typical repair would be a palatal Z-plasty or superiorly based **pharyngeal flap** (Fig. 12.8-9) to the soft palate.

Variant procedure or approaches: The **Jackson modification of the Orticochea flap** uses the posterior tonsillar pillars, which consist of the palatopharyngeus muscle and overlying mucosa, to create a competent oronasal sphincter (Fig. 12.8-10). The flaps are based superiorly and repositioned horizontally to meet above and behind the soft palate. Although they act to augment the posterior pharyngeal wall, they also are intended to maintain their innervation

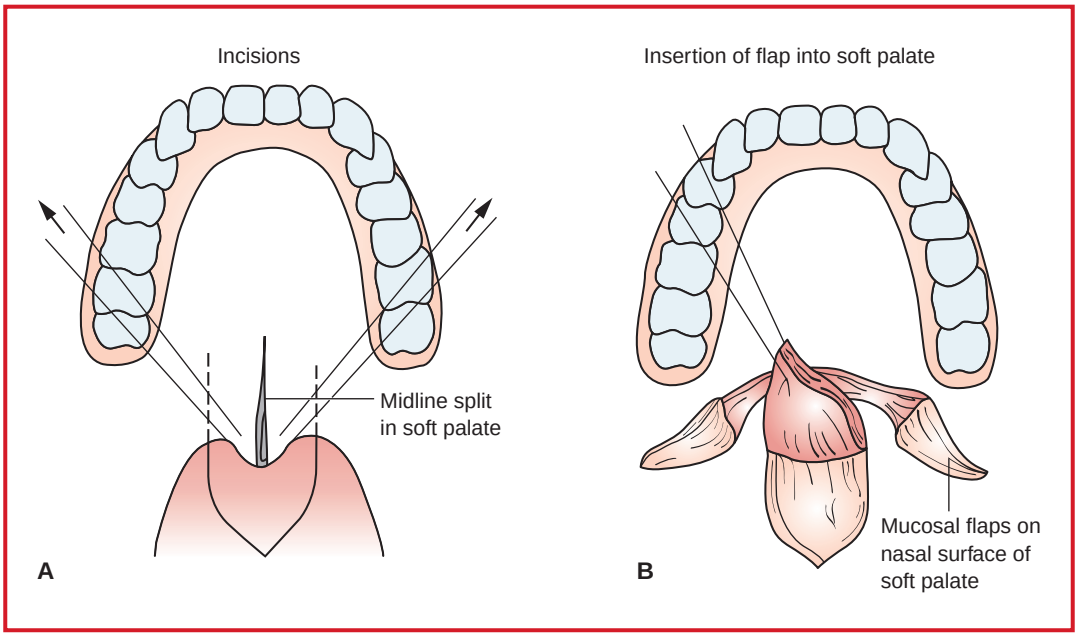


Figure 12.8-9. Pharyngeal flap, superiorly based. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

and, therefore, augment sphincter activity. A posterior pharyngeal wall implant also may be placed. Obstructive sleep apnea may be caused by these procedures and may make airway management difficult.

Usual preop diagnosis: Velopharyngeal incompetence

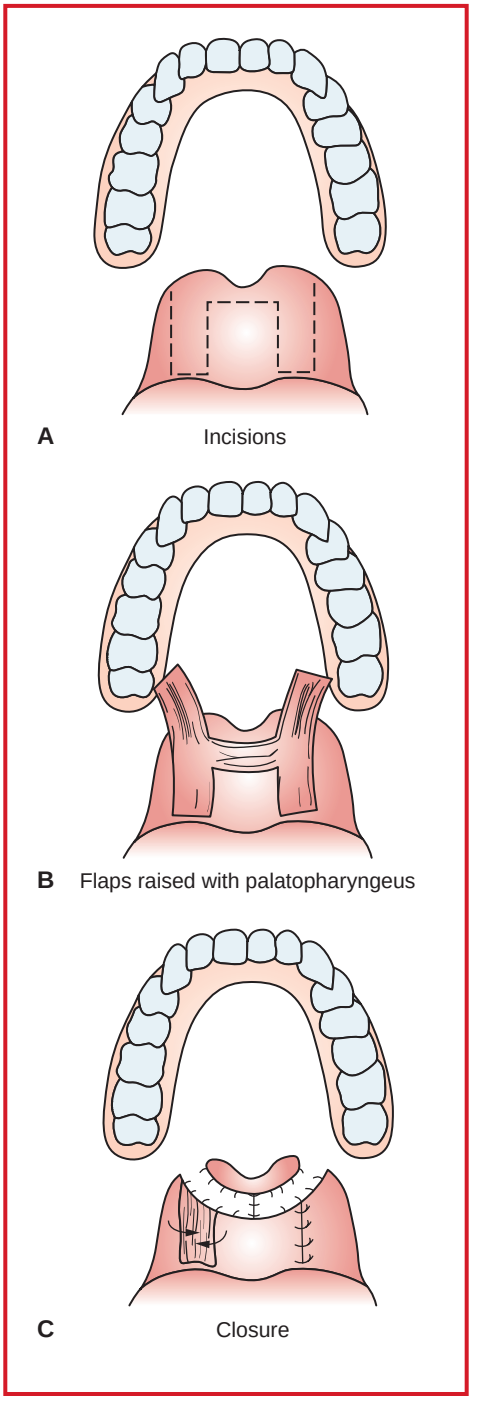


Figure 12.8-10. Sphincter pharyngoplasty. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90° or 180°; oral RAE tube extending down the midline chin and taped in position.
Incision	Involves incisions in soft and hard palates and in the posterior pharyngeal wall.
Special Instrumentation	Dingman mouth gag (caution with removal and manipulation re ETT); headlight
Unique considerations	Avoid oral or nasopharyngeal airways or nasal suctioning.
Antibiotics+ other meds	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg q 6–8 h (up to 1 g) × 3 d; periop steroids, depending on preop airway.
Surgical time	1–1.5 h
Closing considerations	Pediatric patients should not become hypertensive (↑ bleeding).There will be some nasopharyngeal drainage; thorough oral suctioning is important.
EBL	50–100 mL
Postop care	Avoid postop oral or nasopharyngeal airways or nasal suctioning. Be aware of possible occlusion of nasopharynx with flap and bleeding. Tongue suture can be placed for 24 h.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Recurrent bleeding Hematoma under palate Dehiscence of palate Nasopharyngeal obstruction Secondary sleep apnea
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	3–11 yr most common
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	~15% of children undergoing cleft palate repair will need some type of secondary palatal lengthening procedure after 3 yr.
Etiology	Short and scarred palate; neurogenic palate; palate-to-pharyngeal ratio that is too small.
Associated conditions	Sleep apnea; Pierre Robin sequence, with glossoptosis and micrognathia. Treacher Collins syndrome; microtia with craniofacial malformation; subglottic stenosis; CHD. Of special interest: some patients with cleft palate may have **velocardiofacial syndrome.** These children may have **medially displaced internal carotid arteries,** placing these major arteries in harm's way during dissection along the posterior pharyngeal wall.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lip and Nose Surgery (p. 1460).

Suggested Readings

1. Boorman JG, Bharathwaj S: Secondary palatal surgery and pharyngoplasty. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1083–99.
2. Ettinger RE, Oppenheimer AJ, Lau D, et al: Obstructive sleep apnea after dynamic sphincter pharyngoplasty. *J Craniofac Surg* 2012; 23(7 Suppl 1):S32–4.
3. Jackson IT: Sphincter pharyngoplasty. *Clin Plastic Surg* 1985; 12(4):711–17.
4. Markus AF, Precious DS: Secondary surgery for cleft lip and palate. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1057–72.

5. Ruda JM, Krakovitz P, Rose AS: A review of the evaluation and management of velopharyngeal insufficiency in children. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2012; 45(3):653–69.
6. Sloan GM: Posterior pharyngeal flap and sphincter pharyngoplasty: the state of the art. *Cleft Palate Craniofac J* 2000; 37(2):112–22.

Also see Suggested Readings for Cleft Lip (p. 1460).

ALVEOLAR CLEFT REPAIR WITH BONE GRAFT

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Alveolar cleft occurs as both bony and soft-tissue defects in the alveolar portion of the maxilla in the position of the lateral incisor tooth; thus, an oral/nasal fistula exists with this deformity. The size of the cleft is variable; it may be unilateral or bilateral and is associated with cleft lip and palate. The alveolar segments are often collapsed such that orthodontic expansion is required before bone graft and repair. These devices are maintained to stabilize the graft in situ for a 3-mo healing period. The surgical procedure involves raising mucosal-gingival-periosteal flaps, advancing them, and performing a layered closure, starting with the nasal floor and working toward the oral cavity. A bone graft is placed in between these two layers to consolidate the upper arch. Cancellous bone usually is taken from the iliac crest or corticocancellous bone from the outer table of the skull.

Most commonly, the bone is harvested from the ilium. This can be accomplished via limited access and a trephine or via an open technique, depending on the amount of bone required. This portion of the procedure, especially by open technique, can add 50–100 mL of blood loss. Most nasal and lip revision surgery should be put off until the alveolus is reconstructed because this is the base on which the lip and nose sit.

Variant procedure or approaches: In young children, the alveolar cleft procedure may be performed without the use of bone grafts at the time of lip or hard palate closure (**gingivoalveoloplasty,** Fig. 12.8-11) with the hope that preop alignment of the clefted alveolus and periosteal creation of new bone will fill the bony defect and allow subsequent normal tooth eruption. This is not always complete, and some of these children will need later bone grafting at age 7–8 yr, before eruption of the permanent canine teeth.

Usual preop diagnosis: Congenital alveolar cleft

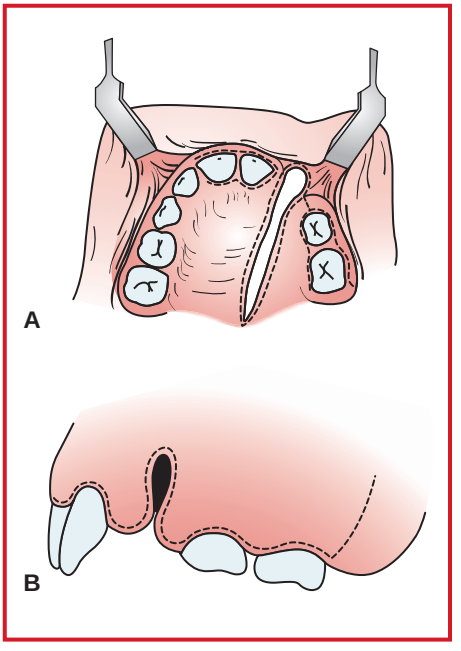


Figure 12.8-11. Gingivoalveoloplasty (GAP). Gingival and mucosal incisions are shown on the palate **(A)** and vestibular **(B)** surfaces, extending along the cleft borders. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table rotated 90°–180° ± roll under hip (bone harvest)
Incision	Oral, with the addition of iliac crest incision or scalp incision, either parasagittal or coronal
Special instrumentation	Throat pack; Dingman mouth gag; headlight. Two instrument setups used, to prevent cross-contamination from oral to iliac surgical sites.
Unique considerations	Important to ensure that the hip iliac crest bone graft site is on the opposite side from the anesthesiologist if the table is rotated only 90°. Midline oral RAE tube to chin. Care when manipulating Dingman, as it sticks to ETT.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg (up to 1 g) iv preop
Surgical time	1.5–2.5 h
Closing considerations	***NB:** Ensure that throat pack has been removed. Pediatric patients should not wake up in agitated state. Non-cleft-side oral mouth gag and gentle oral suctioning permissible; avoid nasal suctioning, especially from the cleft side.
EBL	100–200 mL
Postop care	PACU → ward; walking POD 1 or 2 postiliac graft.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Bone graft loss: 2–10% Infection: 2–10% Refistulization: 2–10% Prolonged hip discomfort (bone graft donor site) Bleeding—oral or at bone donor site
Pain score	6

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	8–12 yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	Multifactorial, including both genetic and environmental aspects
Associated conditions	Associated anomalies are seen in ~29% of cleft lip cases and may include major chromosomal deletions and/or duplications, with the possibility of severe developmental delay, CHD.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lip and Nose Surgery (p. 1460).

Suggested Readings

1. Brusati R, Mannucci N: Primary repair of the lip and palate using the Delaire philosophy. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1005–28.
2. Posnick JC: *Craniofacial and Maxillofacial Surgery in Children and Young Adults*. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2000, 785–980.
3. Stassen LFA: Alveolar bone grafting–how I do it. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1047–55.
4. Trindade-Suedam IK, da Silva Filho OG, Carvolho RM, et al: Timing of alveolar bone grafting determines different outcomes in patients with unilateral cleft palate. *J Craniofac Surg* 2012; 23(5):1283–6.
5. Wolfe SA, Kawamoto HK: Taking the iliac bone graft: a new technique. *J Bone Joint Surg* 1978; 60-A(3):411.

Also see Suggested Readings for Cleft Lip, p. 1460.

SECONDARY CLEFT LIP/NASAL SURGERY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Secondary deformities of the nose and lip develop, following the initial repair of either bilateral or unilateral cleft lip deformities. These subsequent deformities depend on the extent of the initial congenital anomaly,

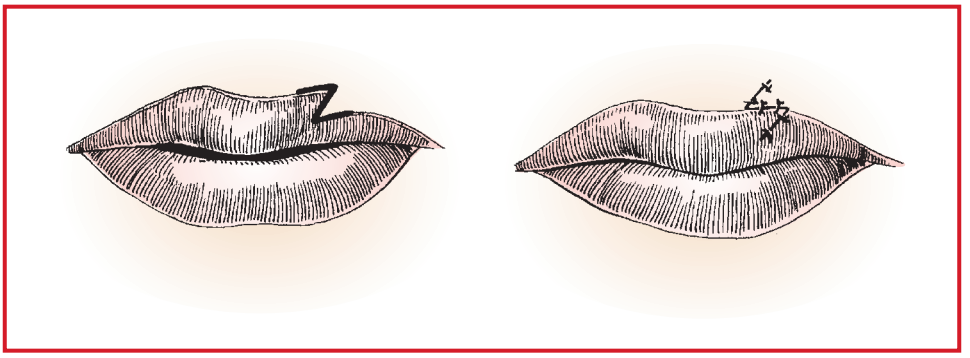


Figure 12.8-12. Z-plasty to correct notching of the vermillion border. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997. Originally from Millard DR Jr: *Cleft Craft: The Evolution of Its Surgery*. Little & Brown, 1976.)

the quality of the surgical repair, and resulting oral/facial function. Revision can vary from a minimal scar revision (Fig. 12.8-12) to a complete opening and reconstruction of the lip and nose, with or without ancillary procedures such as **septorhinoplasty ± cartilage grafting, forked flaps** (Fig. 12.8-13), **fascial lip augmentation, or Abbe-Estlander flap** (lip-switch flap; Fig. 12.8-14).

Occasionally, the individual born with a cleft lip and palate is severely deficient in tissue of the upper lip. This occurs most frequently in the bilateral condition. Correction involves switching tissue from the midline of the lower lip to the central portion of the upper lip, maintaining a pedicle of soft tissue between the lips, which usually contains the labial artery on one side. This pedicle normally is cut between 7–11 d. The redundant tissue in the midportion of the upper lip is transferred to the columellar portion of the nose at the same time, which elongates this section (Fig. 12.8-14). To avoid disruption of the flap, the older child should be cautioned to avoid wide mouth opening in the postop period.

Usual preop diagnosis: Secondary cleft deformity

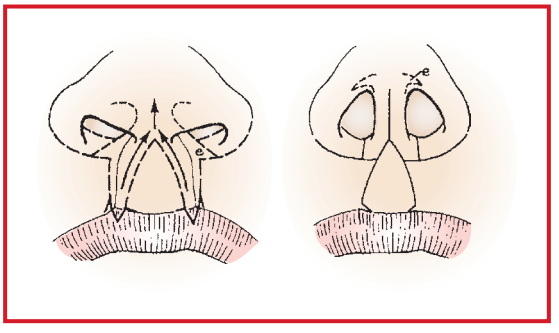


Figure 12.8-13. Short columella associated with the bilateral cleft nose, elongated by forked flaps. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, table rotated 90°–180°; oral RAE; nasal RAE tube when working on lips only (especially if lips are held closed by a flap pedicle, making extubation more difficult).
Incision	Variable, in lip or nasal areas. (See Figs. 12.8-12, 12.8-13, and 12.8-14.)
Special instrumentation	Throat pack; possibly rhinoplasty instruments; oral RAE tube; head light; loupe magnification.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Unique considerations	Procurement of a cartilage graft is usually from the nasal septum or ear; thus, the head may need to be turned to one side and this area also prepped. Elbow restraints for children. A switch flap leaves the lips connected at their midportion by a thin, easily damaged, soft-tissue pedicle; therefore, the patient should wake up unagitated.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg (up to l g) iv preop
Surgical time	Variable, depending on the extent of revision: 0.5–3 h
Closing considerations	***NB:** Remove throat pack.
EBL	Minimal–75 mL
Postop care	May be obligatory mouth breathing postrhinoplasty, or lips may be held mostly closed by the pedicle and swelling of a lip-switch flap; consider oral-pharyngeal airway; avoid wide mouth opening. PACU → room; elbow restraints in young children.
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Infection Wound breakdown Flap necrosis: < 1% (with lip switch) Bleeding
Pain score	3–5 (depending on extent of procedure)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	2–50 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	20–60% of patients with primary clefts
Etiology	Unsatisfactory outcome of previous lip/nose surgery
Associated conditions	Associated anomalies are seen in ~29% of the clefts and may include major chromosomal deletions or duplications, with a possibility of severe mental retardation.

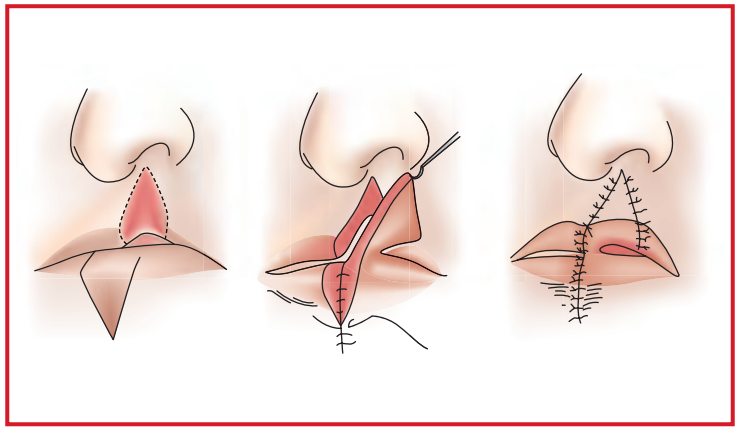


Figure 12.8-14. Abbe-Estlander flap. Note lips sutured together. (Reproduced with permission from Converse JM, ed: *Reconstructive Plastic Surgery,* Vol 3, 2nd edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 1977.)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Lip and Nose Surgery, p. 1460.

Suggested Readings

1. Cladis F, Grunwaldt L, Losee J: Anesthesia for plastic surgery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia. 2011, 821–41.
2. Sadove AM, Eppley BL: Correction of secondary cleft lip and nasal deformities. *Clin Plastic Surg* 1993; 20(4):793–801.
3. Schindler E, Martini M, Messing-Junger M: Anesthesia for plastic and craniofacial surgery. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 810–44.
4. Talmant JC: Cleft rhinoplasty. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1133–71.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR LIP AND NOSE SURGERY

(Procedures covered: cleft lip repair; palatoplasty; pharyngoplasty; alveolar cleft repair with bone graft; secondary cleft lip/nasal surgery)

PREOPERATIVE

The anesthesiologist should be aware of the parents' feelings about their child with a congenital malformation. The whole family needs to be treated with sensitivity and compassion. Cleft lip closure may be carried out as early as the first week of life in the healthy neonate; however, many surgeons and anesthesiologists find the Kilner's rule of 10 helpful: the child should have an Hb >10 g, be 10 wk old, and weigh 10 lbs. The hard palate usually is closed between the ages of 1 and 5 yr; however, the soft palate should be closed prior to speech development (12–15 mo). **Palatoplasty** and **pharyngoplasty** usually are carried out from 1–15 yr. Patients with these midline facial defects are most likely to have other associated anomalies, including CHD, subglottic stenosis, and Pierre Robin or Treacher Collins syndrome. In patients with severe OSA, postop edema may impair ventilation. The possibility of remaining intubated postop should be discussed with the surgical team and the family.

Respiratory	Careful assessment is necessary as associated anomalies may affect airway or lungs. Chronic otitis 2° eustachian tube dysfunction is common. Treat with antibiotics before surgery. Postpone surgery (~2 wk) if Sx of acute URI present (e.g., runny nose, fever, sore throat, cough). Chronic aspiration may be associated with cleft lip/palate. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Airway	Be aware of other congenital anomalies affecting the airway, such as Apert, Goldenhar, Klippel-Feil, Pierre Robin, or Treacher Collins syndrome. Review any previous anesthetic records for insights into airway management. Consider fiberoptic intubation (FOI or Video laryngoscope) in patients with suspected difficult airway. Also consider elective tracheostomy under local anesthesia in patients with severe airway abnormalities. Patients with severe subglottic stenosis may require preop tracheostomy. Patients with difficult airways or severe obstructive sleep apnea undergoing palatal surgery should be evaluated for ICU monitoring postoperatively.
Cardiovascular	CHD is frequently associated with cleft palate. Preop evaluation of a patient with a known or suspected heart defect should include thorough H&P, EKG, Hct, baseline O_2 sat, and CXR. For children with Sx of cardiac dysfunction or those requiring cardiac medication, it is advisable to consult with a pediatric cardiologist to optimize the patient's condition prior to surgery. **Tests:** Preop ECG, echocardiogram indicated for patients with CHD; others as indicated from H&P
Nutritional	Infants with cleft lip/palate may have problems with oral feeding. Assess nutritional status from physical exam and by comparison to expected growth for age. **NB:** NPO after midnight for solids. Patients should continue to have breast milk until 4 h preop and clear liquids up until 2 h preop.

Neurological	Delayed development of speech is common in the older child with cleft palate. Some of these children may be hearing impaired. Preop preparation and discussion is important to minimize the impact of these communication problems.
Psychological	Many patients with orofacial congenital malformations require multiple procedures; emotional support and psychological assessment of these patients are essential. Preoperative visits and consultation with play-therapists can be helpful, particularly if the child with a difficult airway will need a preoperative iv.
Hematologic	High incidence of iron deficiency anemia; T&C for 1 U PRBC (cleft palate). **Tests:** Hct
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	< 9 mo old rarely needs premedication; > 9 mo old may benefit from midazolam (0.5–0.75 mg/kg po); alternatively ketamine (5 mg/kg po) ~30 min preop may be used (rarely). Consider parent present induction for children with separation anxiety provided no difficult airway is anticipated.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA; warm room to 75–80°F; forced air warmer.

Induction	Typically, an inhalational induction (sevoflurane ± N_2O/O_2) while patient is breathing spontaneously. Airway obstruction is best treated with an oral airway. Anticipate difficult laryngoscopy if large, prepalatal cleft present. Intubate with oral RAE tube and secure in midline of lower lip. In patients with difficult airways, preoperative iv and FOI is the technique of choice. IV glycopyrrolate and nebulized local anesthetics may facilitate FOI. Include amount of inhaled local anesthetic into the calculated max allowable local anesthetic to avoid toxicity. Avoid muscle relaxants for difficult intubations until ETT is placed. For children with difficult airways and a small posterior pharynx, consider preop dexamethasone 0.5 mg/kg iv to decrease palatal edema. After induction, consider morphine 0.1 mg/kg, ketamine 0.1 mg/kg for analgesia.
Maintenance	Standard pediatric maintenance (see p. D-3) ± muscle relaxant. Airway is shared with the surgeons. The Dingman mouth gag is used for surgical exposure and may inadvertently compress the ETT or cause an endobronchial intubation. Monitor PIP before and after placement of Dingman. Flexion of the neck also may cause endobronchial intubation. Extension of the neck may cause complete or partial extubation. Adequacy of ventilation should be checked after every position change. Bilateral breath sounds should be equal after final positioning. In cases with the table turned 180°, a precordial stethoscope placed over the left chest can help elucidate endobronchial tube migration. ETT should be sutured to the alveolar ridge. In palatoplasty, the palate is infiltrated with epinephrine (in lidocaine usually) → ↓ blood loss + ↑ dysrhythmias ↑ $PaCO_2$ → ↑ dysrhythmias. Confirm maximal allowable local anesthetic dose with surgeons. Moderate risk of airway fire. Reduce FiO_2 and consider throat pack if endotracheal tube leak is substantial. Approx 18 cm H_2O or greater if patient requires increased venitilator pressure. Throat pack insertion and removal can cause inadvertent extubation. Ensure firm airway connections prior to relinquishing airway. Always have a spare styletted ETT ready in the event of inadvertent extubation.
Emergence	*Pharyngeal (throat) packs are usually placed to prevent aspiration of blood. **NB:** Packs must be removed before extubating the trachea. Consider laryngoscopy to inspect airway and remove blood and clots before extubation. A tongue stitch is useful postop following cleft palate surgery. It may be used to pull the tongue forward to relieve postop respiratory obstruction. Extubation in the lateral (tonsillar) position is useful in promoting drainage of blood and secretions.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18–22 ga × 1 NS/LR @: 4 mL/kg/h – 0–10 kg + 2 mL/kg/h –11–20 kg + 1 mL/kg/h – > 20 kg (e.g., 25 kg = 65 mL/h)	Blood loss replaced by 3:1 crystalloid or 1:1 colloid (e.g., 5% albumin or 6% hetastarch). Rarely, a blood transfusion may be indicated for hemorrhage.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Obstructed ETT→ ↑ PIP Mucous plugging Hemorrhage Airway fire	✓ ETT to see that it is not partially or completely obstructed by mouth gag. ✓ bilateral breath sounds. Inadvertent extubation/endobronchial intubation

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Retained throat pack Airway edema → croup Hemorrhage Obstructive sleep apnea	✓ for retained throat pack if there are Sx of airway obstruction in immediate postop period. Rx of postintubation croup consists of cool, humidified, 100% O_2 mask, or nebulization 2.25% racemic epinephrine (0.5 mL in 3 mL NS). Racemic epinephrine is given for its vasoconstrictor, rather than its bronchodilator, effect. If posterior pharyngeal edema is present, consider dexamethasone 0.5 mg/kg iv.
Pain management	Acetaminophen (10–15 mg/kg po/iv or 20–30 mg/kg pr) q 6 h Fentanyl 1 mcg/kg iv Morphine 0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv q 2–3 h prn Hydrocodone/acetaminophen elixir (Hycet) 0.15 mg/kg po q 6°	Avoid oversedation in patients with Abbe-Estlander repair 2° airway obstruction. Aim for child to be mildly sedated (decreases bleeding) but not obstructing; intraop morphine, ketamine helpful to ensure smooth awakening. Caution for airway obstruction in PACU.
Tests	Hct, if indicated.	Others as indicated.

OTOPLASTY

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: There are a number of congenital ear malformations. The two most frequently encountered in the OR are **prominent ear** and **microtia.** Both conditions can be unilateral or bilateral.

Prominent ears are usually an isolated finding. The ear is examined in thirds to determine where the prominence lies, and the surgery is tailored to correct the specific excesses. The antihelical fold is usually flattened and requires reshaping. The prominence of the ear, as measured by its projection from the mastoid process, is decreased accordingly. This usually involves an elliptical skin incision in the posterior ear area, dissection over the mastoid, and one or a combination of three techniques—mattress sutures, cartilage scoring, and/or resection.

Variant procedure or approaches: All procedures are similar, with minor differences in suturing and amount of resected tissue. In addition to the posterior incisions, an anterior incision can be used in some approaches.

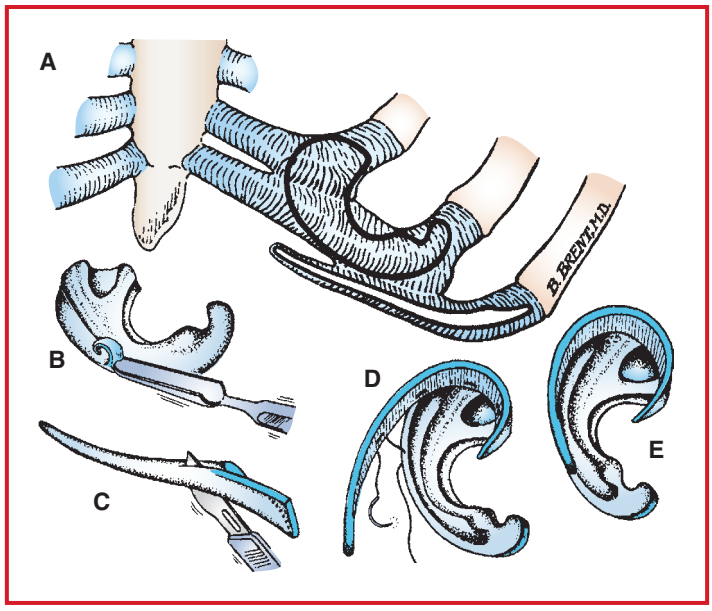


Figure 12.8-15. Fabricating an ear framework from costal cartilage. **A:** Donor site: the contralateral thorax. The helical rim is obtained from a "floating" rib cartilage, the main pattern from the synchondrosis of two cartilages. **B:** Sculpting the main block. **C:** Thinning the "floating" rib cartilage to produce a delicate helical rim. **D:** Affixing the rim to the main framework block. **E:** Completed framework. (Reproduced with permission from Aston SJ, Beasley RW, Thorne CH, eds: *Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery,* 5th edition. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia: 1997.)

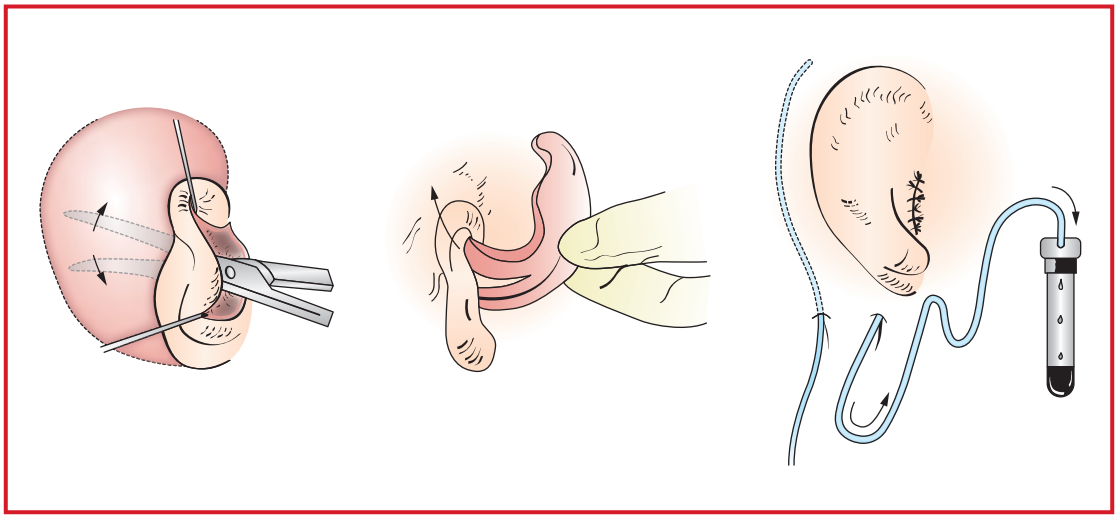


Figure 12.8-16. The cutaneous "pocket." The vestigial native cartilage is excised; then, a skin pocket is created. To provide tension-free accommodation of the framework, the dissection is carried out well beyond the proposed auricular position. Using two silicone catheters, the skin is coapted to the framework by means of vacuum tube suction. (Reproduced with permission from Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds: *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999.)

Microtia is within the congenital anomaly spectrum of hemifacial microsomia, and the associated facial malformation may include a small asymmetric jaw, creating a difficult intubation. Microtia reconstruction is done by two philosophically different techniques. The first is by autogenous tissue, usually rib, and is done in multiple stages. The second technique uses an alloplastic framework and is done in one longer stage. Reconstruction with autologous rib graft as a multistaged procedure. This donor site comes with the attendant risks of pneumothorax and hemothorax (Fig. 12.8-15). Stage one is the creation of a cartilaginous framework, with placement into a cutaneous pocket symmetric with the normal ear, if present (Fig. 12.8-16). Stage one is accomplished once the rib cartilage has grown to sufficient size—usually, ~6–7 yr of age. Stage two requires transposition of the lobule 3 mo after stage one. Stage three is the elevation with skin graft of the framework from the head posteriorly. Stage four is the creation of a tragus and conchal excavation.

Variant procedure or approaches: Recently, **porous polyethylene implants** have been used to avoid donor-site morbidity, and **temporoparietal fascial flaps** provide coverage to avoid alloplastic extrusion.

Usual preop diagnosis: Ear malformation; prominent ears; microtia; anotia

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine; table rotated either 90° or 180°; oral intubation
Incision	Posterior ear; occasionally anterior ear; microtia, stage-dependent; and chest wall
Unique considerations	Head turned from side-to-side during operation.
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 25 mg/kg (up to 1 g) iv preop
Surgical time	2–4 h (depends on unilateral vs. bilateral); 1st stage microtia much longer
Closing considerations	Ear dressing requires 5–10 min at end of procedure. Delicate vacuum test-tube drainage system in 1st stage microtia repair fixed to head dressing.
EBL	10–100 mL
Postop care	PACU → room
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	**Protruding ears:** Hematoma formation: < 1% Infection: < 1 % Asymmetrical ear reduction: < 1% Suture extrusion < 1% **Microtia:** Pneumothorax or hemothorax Hematoma, infection, and skin loss: 1.6% (total) Overgrowth: 41%
Pain score	4

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	6+ yr
Male:Female	2:1
Incidence	Unknown
Etiology	**Microtia:** 9.2% bilateral; 32% left vs. 58% right; 4.9% recurrence within immediate family **Protrusion:** Also seen among family members. Most are bilateral.
Associated conditions	**Protruding ears:** none known **Microtia:** Brachial arch deformities: bone/soft-tissue deficit, 36.5%; facial nerve weakness, 15.2%; cleft lip ± palate, 4.3%; macrostomia, 2.5%; urogenital defects, 4%; cardiovascular malformations, 2.5%; other, 1.6%

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

See Anesthetic Considerations for Ear Surgery, Chapter 3.0 Otolaryngology, p. 233.

Suggested Readings

1. Bosenberg AT: Anesthesia for cleft lip and palate surgery. *SAJAA* 2007; 13(5):9–14.
2. Brent B: Ear reconstruction. In: Booth PW, Schendel SA, Hausamen J-E, eds. *Maxillofacial Surgery*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh: 1999, 1419–28.
3. Brent B: Technical advances in ear reconstruction with autogenous rib cartilage grafts: personal experience with 1200 cases. *Plastic Reconstruct Surg J* 1999; 104(2):319–38.
4. Breugem CC, Stewart KJ, Kon M: International trends in the treatment of microtia. *J Caniofac Surg* 2011; 22(4):1367–9.
5. Roberson JB Jr, Reinisch J, Colen TY, Lewin S: Atresia repair before microtia reconstruction: comparison of early with standard surgical timing. *Otol Neurotol* 2009; 30(6):771–6.
6. Smith D, Abdullah SEFHJ, Moores A, Wynne DM: Post-operative respiratory distress following primary cleft palate repair. *Laryngol Otol* 2013; 127:65–66.

CHAPTER

12.9 Pediatric Transplantation

SURGEONS

Waldo Concepcion, MD
Amy E. Gallo, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Julianne Mendoza, MD
Louise Furukawa, MD
Gregory B. Hammer, MD

PEDIATRIC RENAL TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Renal transplantation is the therapy of choice for children with end-stage renal disease providing freedom from dialysis and improvement in growth. Preemptive transplantation is recommended when possible to minimize loss of growth potential and currently accounts for 25% of transplants. The source of the renal allograft may be a cadaveric (40%), living related, or living unrelated donor. More than 90% of donors are adults.

A right curvilinear incision, starting at the pubic symphysis and extending to just below the ribs, is the approach most commonly used even for children as small as 10 kg. The donor renal artery and vein are anastomosed directly to the recipient aorta and vena cava, respectively. An adult-sized kidney may occupy the majority of the right upper quadrant in a small recipient. Meticulous attention to the positioning of the kidney will prevent kinking or twisting of the donor vasculature. This may require mobilization of the right lobe of the liver or even hepatectomy in some cases and almost always a right nephrectomy in small children. The donor kidney can be temporarily taken out of ice and placed into the recipient to determine the best site for the anastomoses. In this manner, the vessel length necessary to fashion straight, yet tension-free anastomoses can be determined. It is important to avoid redundancy in the vessels and ensure a straight line from the renal hilum to the aorta and vena cava without the hooking of one vessel over another. The venous anastomosis is fashioned first. The vena cava is clamped, and an appropriate size cavotomy is made. The renal vein is sutured to the vena cava in an end-to-side fashion. A small vascular bulldog clamp is then applied to the renal vein above the anastomosis to allow for removal of the vena caval clamp and reconstitution of lower extremity venous return to the heart. Heparin is administered, and the aorta is then cross-clamped proximal and distal to the aortotomy. An end-to-side anastomosis is fashioned between the renal artery and aorta, taking care to interrupt the front wall sutures and prevent the purse-string effect of a running suture. Warm ischemia can be minimized during this time by intermittently placing iced slush around the kidney. It is critically important to achieve substantial hypervolemia prior to reperfusion of the adult-sized kidney (ASK) because reperfusion will cause an immediate drain of a large portion of a child's relatively small blood volume into the ASK. This necessitates bringing the central venous pressure to approximately 10–15 cm H_2O before reperfusion with a combination of crystalloid and colloid to minimize tissue edema. As prophylaxis against ischemia-reperfusion injury, a single dose of iv mannitol is administered at the time of graft revascularization, and low-dose dopamine is also initiated. Adequate renal blood flow to an ASK cannot be obtained in children without maintenance of a hypervolemic state, and infants and small children are frequently kept intubated for 24 to 48 h postop to maintain control of their respiratory function while large volumes of fluid are administered.

The type of ureteral reimplantation depends on the quality of the recipient bladder. An extravesicular ureteral reimplantation can be considered in a healthy bladder of adequate size. This requires distending the bladder with GU irrigant via a three-way Foley catheter. The bladder is reflected medially to accomplish the implantation near the postero lateral portion of the bladder with the ureteral orifice located close to the trigone. The detrusor muscle is divided, and a mucosal-to-mucosal anastomosis is fashioned between the bladder and the donor ureter over a ureteral stent. The detrusor muscle is reapproximated over the ureter for an adequate length to create an antireflux valve. If the bladder is of small capacity or defunctionalized, a transvesicular approach to ureteral reimplantation is required. A bladder cystotomy is made at the dome, and the transplant ureter is brought into a shallow, mucosa-denuded, rectangular trough extending from a superiorly placed ureteral hiatus distally to the trigone. The ureter is then spatulated and directly sutured to the urinary mucosa over a ureteral stent. The ureteral stent is sutured to a cystotomy tube brought out through a separate incision in the bladder for easy removal of the urethral catheter with its associated discomfort, while ensuring adequate drainage and prevention of clot obstruction. The cystotomy is then closed and the kidney inspected for perfusion and hemostasis.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Lower quadrant curvilinear

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Special instrumentation	Self-retaining retractor Vascular instruments Foley catheter (three-way)
Unique considerations	Recipient hypervolemia (CVP 10–15 mm H_2O) Mannitol, Furosemide Dopamine Immunosuppression Potassium-free iv fluids
Antibiotics	Cephalosporin
Surgical time	3–5 h
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Maintain hypervolemia (CVP > 10 mm Hg) Maintain adequate SBP > 120 mm Hg with dopamine Maintain high UO with a combination of iv fluids + Lasix. Goal 150–200 cc/h ICU postop Transplant ultrasound postop
Mortality	< 2%
Morbidity	Primary nonfunction: 2.6% Vascular thrombosis: 10.3% Renal artery stenosis: 0.7% Other technical: 1.3% Bleeding: 2% Wound infection: 5%
Pain Score	7

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR KIDNEY TRANSPLANTATION IN INFANTS AND CHILDREN

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for renal transplantation tend to fall into two groups: (a) children in the infant/toddler age group who suffer from congenital syndromes (congenital nephrotic syndrome, severe polycystic kidney disease, obstructive uropathies, FSGS) or (b) the older child who may have a variety of conditions including severe autoimmune nephropathies. These children are often the recipients of a living-related transplant, and as such, the surgery proceeds as a somewhat elective procedure. Most patients have been on a well-established regimen of peritoneal or hemodialysis.

Airway	Some renal conditions may have associated syndromes and dysmorphia. A thorough airway examination as well as perusal of old anesthetic records should reveal any potential airway problems.
Respiratory	Patients with autoimmune diseases (e.g., lupus) may have pulmonary involvement. Any patient presenting with signs and symptoms of URI should be allowed adequate time for resolution of heightened airway reactivity. Children born with large polycystic kidneys may have pulmonary hypoplasia. **Tests:** Pulmonary function tests, if indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Relatively long-standing hypertension and LVH can be seen in this patient population and may require bilateral nephrectomies prior to or during the transplantation. Adequate control of hypertension should be achieved during the preoperative admission period. **Tests:** EKG, echocardiogram

Gastrointestinal/ hepatic	Patients with polycystic kidney disease may also have hepatic dysfunction and require future liver transplantation. Patients with congenital nephrotic syndrome tend to be hypoalbuminemic and may be on continuous albumin infusions. **Tests:** Albumin, LFTs, PT, PTT if applicable
Renal	Most patients are well maintained on hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis. Other common electrolyte abnormalities are metabolic acidosis, hypocalcemia, and hypermagnesemia. Be aware of current weight relative to dry weight as some patients may present with dehydration in the postdialysis period. **Tests:** Serum electrolytes, BUN, and creatinine
Hematologic	Anemia and platelet dysfunction are commonly seen. **Tests:** CBC, platelet count
Premedication	Most children will require a premedication to allay separation anxiety. Oral midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg or iv midazolam 0.1 mg/kg (maximum 2 mg) is usually sufficient.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA.

Induction	An inhalational induction with standard monitors will work well in patients without prior iv access. Patients in the infant/toddler age group may have significant venous access problems, and the hemodialysis catheter (if present) may be used provided that sufficient heparinized blood has been aspirated from the dead space of the catheter lumen. Use of muscle relaxation once iv access has been established is necessary for adequate surgical visualization and mobilization. If recently dialyzed, pt may be hypovolemic. Induction of immunosuppression begins in the preop period and continues intraop. Care should be taken to discuss with the surgeon and nephrologist which immunosuppressive agents should be given intraop. If thymoglobulin is used, a dedicated central line port is needed and premedication with iv solumedrol (1 mg/kg), diphenhydramine (1 mg/kg), and acetaminophen (15 mg/kg) is initiated prior to infusion. Solumedrol (10 mg/kg) is given just prior to unclamping of the renal artery upon reperfusion.	
Maintenance	Standard balanced anesthetic maintenance. Titration of a long-acting narcotic is recommended, although high doses of meperidine should be avoided due to accumulation of normeperidine. Adequate muscle relaxation is especially important in the patient under 20 kg to facilitate surgical exposure. Any coughing or straining can result in vascular injury to the renal allograft. Significant hypothermia can be seen when the iced organ is placed in the peritoneum. Tachycardia is frequently seen following reperfusion of the ASK due to the relatively large vascular volume it can accommodate and the low vascular resistance. Urine output should be closely monitored postreperfusion.	
Emergence	Most children weighing < 20 kg remain intubated in anticipation of large fluid shifts due to volume loading. Extubation in the operating room is usually feasible for patients larger than 20 kg. All patients recover in the ICU for monitoring of hemodynamics and urine output.	
Management of reperfusion	**Blood and fluids:** Maintenance IV fluids without K^+ Volume loading Albumin loading	Preop fluid status is variable. Maintenance fluids should be devoid of K^+. Volume loading to a CVP of 15–20 or titrated to renal allograft turgor postreperfusion is usually requested by the surgeon for infants and small children receiving ASKs to avoid stasis and thrombosis within the allograft. Albumin boluses (10 mL/kg) or PRBC transfusion may be needed to achieve goal CVP. Dopamine

Management of reperfusion (cont'd)	Blood may be required Warm all fluids **Promoting diuresis** **Pressor support**	(3–5 mcg/kg/min) is started to increase perfusion pressure to the allograft. In addition, epinephrine infusion may be needed to achieve systolic blood pressure of greater than 120 mm Hg necessary for the ASK. For patients > 20 kg, the magnitude of volume loading is decreased to a goal CVP of 10–15, which can usually be achieved with crystalloid and albumin alone. Constant communication with the surgical team regarding allograft turgor after reperfusion will assist in guiding fluid management. Consider use of TEE in patients with hypertensive cardiomyopathy to guide volume loading to avoid pulmonary edema. Diuresis is promoted just prior to reperfusion of the renal artery with mannitol (0.5 mg/kg) and furosemide (1 mg/kg). Goal urine output after reperfusion is 5–10 mL/kg/h.
Monitoring	Standard Monitors (see p. D-1) Arterial line CVP (2–3 lumen) Hct/electrolytes Urine output (Foley catheter) PIP Temperature control	Adequate blood pressure to perfuse the ASK is crucial as is sufficient preload (CVP 10–15) prior to reperfusion. Invasive arterial blood pressure monitoring is necessary to monitor beat-to-beat variation in perfusion pressure and guide in titrating volume and vasoactive infusions. CVP monitoring is critical to management of volume status. Electrolyte derangements may occur during the case 2° large volume replacement with albumin or blood products. ↓ Ca^{++} and ↑ K^{+} should be corrected. Hematocrit goal after reperfusion is above 25% though caution should be taken with regard to transfusion to avoid renal artery thrombosis. Urine output is closely monitored after ureteral reimplantation. Peak inspiratory pressures should be closely followed as risk of pulmonary edema is increased from volume loading. Care should be taken to avoid hypothermia that may occur following placement of iced allograft into abdominal cavity.
Complications	Ventilatory difficulties Electrolyte abnormalities Hypotension/inadequate renal perfusion Low urine output	

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Electrolyte abnormalities Ventilatory difficulties Inadequate pain control in the face of hypotension Hemorrhage Clot retention given small catheter size	
Pain management	Fentanyl 1 mcg/kg iv Small doses of ketamine (e.g., 1–5 mg iv) can be used for analgesia if patient is intubated	Care must be taken in the administration of iv opioids to prevent ↓ BP, which may compromise ASK perfusion.

Suggested Readings

1. Coupe N, O'Brien M, Gibson P, et al: Anesthesia for pediatric renal transplantation with and without epidural analgesia—a review of 7 years experience. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2005; 15(3):220–8.
2. Fine RN, Ho M, Tejani A: The contribution of renal transplantation to final adult height: a report of the North American Renal Transplant Cooperative Study (NAPRTCS). *Pediatr Nephrol* 2001; 16:951–6.
3. Giessing M, Muller D, Winkelmann B, et al: Kidney transplantation in children and adolescents. *Transplant Proc* 2007; 39(7):2197–201.
4. Salvatierra O Jr, Millan M, Concepcion M: Pediatric renal transplantation with considerations for successful outcomes. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2006; 15(3):208–17.
5. Salvatierra O, Tanney D, Mak R, et al: Pediatric renal transplantation and its challenges. *Transplant Rev* 1997; 11:51–69.
6. Scott VL, Wahl KM, Soltys K, et al: Anesthesia for organ transplantation. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 931–38.
7. Shapiro R: Living donor kidney transplantation in pediatric recipients. *Pediatr Transplant* 2006; 10(7):844–50.
8. Smith JM, Fine RN, McDonald RA: Current state of pediatric renal transplantation. *Front Biosci* 2008; 13:197–203.
9. Smith JM, Stablein DM, Munoz R, et al: Contributions of the transplant registry: the 2006 annual report of the North American Pediatric Trials and Collaborative Studies (NAPRTCS). *Pediatr Transpl* 2007; 11(4):366–73.
10. Stayer SA, Williams G, Andropoulos DB: Anesthesia for transplantation. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 693–97.
11. Uejima T: Anesthetic management of the pediatric patient undergoing solid organ transplantation. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am* 2004; 22(4):809–26.

PEDIATRIC LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Liver transplantation was first pioneered in the 1960s as a lifesaving experimental procedure for children with end-stage liver disease (ESLD). Since then, it has developed into the accepted treatment modality for pediatric patients with ESLD or fulminant hepatic failure. The indications for liver transplantation in children are broad and range from cholestatic cirrhosis secondary to biliary atresia to inborn errors of metabolism that, if untreated, result in devastating neurological injury.

The current liver allocation system prioritizes pediatric recipients based on a calculated numerical value known as the Pediatric End-Stage Liver Disease (PELD) score. The PELD score was validated as a model for predicting the 3-month wait-list mortality. Although exemption points can be petitioned for on a case-by-case basis, a patient's degree of illness generally correlates with the PELD score. Absolute contraindications for liver transplantation include irreversible encephalopathy, uncontrollable infection, and untreatable extrahepatic malignancy. A general contraindication is poor quality of life postoperatively.

The main constraint to pediatric liver transplantation compounding the preexisting organ shortage involves the donor-to-recipient size ratio. The minimum acceptable graft-to-body weight ratio to provide adequate postop liver function is 1%. However, the suitability of a donor is more often determined by the maximum amount of donor liver that a recipient can accommodate in the abdominal cavity. This results in the utilization of several different types of grafts in pediatric liver transplantation.

Type of Graft	Artery	Portal Vein	Venous Outflow	Biliary Reconstruction
Cadaveric full size	Celiac trunk	Main PV	Full VC	Main HD
Cadaveric reduced size	Celiac trunk	Main PV	Full VC	Main HD
Cadaveric left lobe	Common HA	Left PV	Left HV	Left HD
Cadaveric left lateral segment	Common HA	Left PV	Left HV	Left HD
Live donor left lateral segment	Left HA	Left PV	Left HV	Left HD

Although the type of graft used determines certain technical aspects of the hepatectomy and implantation, the general sequence of events consists of:

1. Recipient hepatectomy
2. Anhepatic phase (during which portal venous inflow and hepatic venous outflow are reconstituted)
3. Allograft reperfusion
4. Reconstitution of hepatic arterial inflow
5. Biliary reconstruction

A bilateral subcostal incision is used with a midline subxiphoid extension as needed. The abdomen is explored, and adhesions are lysed taking care to suture-ligate varices in patients with portal hypertension. This portion of the procedure may be tedious and bloody in patients with prior liver surgery. The falciform ligament is divided down to the suprahepatic vena cava. The left coronary ligament is divided, and the left lateral segment is mobilized from the diaphragm. The lesser omentum is divided and the lesser sac entered. The peritoneum of the hepatoduodenal ligament is divided, and a hilar dissection is performed. The connective and vascular tissue of the hepatoduodenal ligament is carefully divided taking care to suture-ligate any varices en masse until the common bile duct is identified. This portion of the procedure may result in significant blood loss in patients with severe portal hypertension and coagulopathy. The common bile duct is then suture-ligated and divided high in the hilum of the liver. The hepatic artery is similarly identified, suture-ligated, and divided. The portal vein is then completely skeletonized. The right lobe of the liver is mobilized from its retroperitoneal attachments to expose the lateral border of the vena cava. In the standard technique the infra and suprahepatic vena cava are encircled taking care not to injure the right adrenal vein, right renal vein, or inferior phrenic veins. The portal inflow is occluded with a vascular clamp followed by occlusion of the infrahepatic and suprahepatic vena cava. At this point, the patient must have adequate circulatory volume to support the interruption of subdiaphragmatic venous return to the heart without developing vasopressor refractory hypotension. Although this degree of circulatory compromise is typically well tolerated by very young children and those with chronic portal hypertension, venous congestion can result in troublesome intestinal edema and hemodynamic compromise in metabolic patients or those with fulminant hepatic failure who lack alternative variceal pathways of venous return. Consideration should be given to a temporary portacaval shunt in such cases. The recipient liver and retrohepatic vena cava are excised, and donor liver implantation begins. In the piggyback technique, which is used in the living donor operation, the liver is completely mobilized from the retrohepatic vena cava by individually ligating the short hepatic veins draining directly from the liver to the cava. The liver is excised with preservation of the retrohepatic vena cava, and venous return can be restored prior to implantation by moving the vascular clamp to the junction of the vena cava with the hepatic veins.

The goal of the surgical team during the anhepatic phase is to minimize the duration of caval disruption with its associated intestinal edema and variceal congestion. The hepatic vein outflow is first reconstructed by fashioning the suprahepatic caval anastomosis. In the **piggyback technique,** there is no infrahepatic caval anastomosis and an end-to-end portal vein anastomosis is fashioned next. The liver is flushed with Custodiol[â] solution (low K^+, buffered donor organ transplant solution) or albumin prior to reperfusion to minimize the risk of cardiac arrest 2° ↑ K^+ and ↓ pH. Venous outflow is then reestablished by removing the suprahepatic caval or hepatic venous clamp prior to opening the portal venous anastomosis. In a standard procedure, the infrahepatic caval clamp is also removed. Reperfusion is the portion of the procedure associated with significant hemodynamic lability, as large volume shifts may occur → pulmonary HTN and RV failure. Alternatively, the release of systemic inflammatory mediators may result in vasodilatation and significant ↓ BP. The anesthesia team needs to be ready to pharmacologically intervene. Indiscriminate postreperfusion hypervolemia should be discouraged because CVP > 10 mm Hg can result in significant liver congestion and dysfunction. Hemostasis is achieved prior to arterial reconstruction. Patients who receive cut down or split livers performed ex vivo may have significant bleeding from the cut surface of the liver.

The donor hepatic artery is typically anastomosed in an end-to-end fashion to the recipient common hepatic artery. In situations of large size discrepancy or poor recipient hepatic artery quality, an anastomosis may be fashioned directly to supraceliac or infrarenal aorta. This requires aortic cross-clamping with its associated risk of ischemia/reperfusion injury and renal failure. The surgical team should notice the immediate production of bile and resolution of coagulopathy with clot formation in patients with a well-functioning graft. The biliary reconstruction can then be performed in an end-to-end fashion if possible but frequently requires a Roux-en-Y reconstruction. If a Roux-en-Y is performed, the bowel is divided distal to the ligament of Treitz, and the distal limb is brought up to the bile duct. Intestinal continuity is restored with an end-to-side enteroenterostomy, and a hepaticojejunostomy is fashioned to the Roux limb. Abdominal drains are typically left along the cut surface in split or cut down livers due to the increased incidence of bile leaks.

Compared to adult liver transplant, metabolic disorders account for a larger number of pediatric transplants and have some pre- and intraop considerations that are imperative to successful outcomes. Dual organ transplantation, liver and kidney, are often necessary to prevent disease recurrence.

Common metabolic disorders include:

1. **Methylmalonic Acidemia (MMA):** severe uncontrollable lactic acidosis and metabolic decompensation during surgery. Both glucose and lactic acid levels should be monitored during surgery and consideration should be given to preop dialysis when MMA levels are high.
2. **Oxylosis:** patients should receive pretransplant dialysis to remove oxylate from body tissues so that following liver transplant to correct the enzymatic defect, the kidney transplant will have an improved outcome.
3. **Atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome:** a combination of preop plasmaphoresis and eculizumab (Soliris®) is used to minimize postop recurrence.

Posttransplant, the pediatric patient is then taken to the intensive care unit. In patients with end-to-end arterial anastomosis, the patient should be maintained in a hypervolemic state to ensure adequate hepatic perfusion in the immediate postop period. Keep hematocrit < 30% to decrease viscosity. Dextran and heparin are frequently used as adjuvants in the postreperfusion state to minimize the risk of hepatic artery thrombosis when a microvascular arterial anastomosis has been performed.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with arms tucked
Incision	Bilateral subcostal with midline subxiphoid extension as needed
Special instrumentation	Thompson liver retractor; Vascular instruments; Argon beam coagulator; Arterial and central venous access (above and below diaphragm); Foley catheter
Unique considerations	Hypothermia requiring covering extremities with plastic to minimize convective heat loss, active rewarming Encephalopathy requiring ICP monitoring Hypoxemia secondary to hepatopulmonary syndrome Hyperkalemic cardiac arrest on reperfusion Air embolism on reperfusion RV failure on reperfusion Pressor refractory hypotension with vena caval disruption DIC/fibrinolysis on reperfusion Severe acidosis Renal failure requiring intraoperative CVVH Coagulopathy and hemorrhage requiring massive transfusion Hypoglycemia
Antibiotics	Zosyn (piperacillin + tazobactam) 80 mg of piperacillin component/kg/8h.
Surgical time	4–6 h
EBL	300–1500 mL (1–5 U)
Postop care	Maintain infusion hypervolemia in end-to-end arterial reconstructions. Heparin infusion, Dextran infusion, and aspirin for end-to-end arterial reconstructions ICU postop Monitor closely for signs of bleeding. Monitor closely for acidosis or worsening coagulopathy suggestive of graft dysfunction Transplant ultrasound postop.
Mortality	2–5%
Morbidity	Primary nonfunction: < 5% Portal vein thrombosis: 2–5% early, 10% late Hepatic artery thrombosis: 5–10% Bile leak: 10–20% Bleeding: 10% Wound infection: 5% Reoperation: 18%
Pain score	10

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	0–18 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	500–600 transplants annually
Etiology	Biliary atresia 35–40%; TPN related 15%; metabolic diseases 10%; acute hepatic necrosis 10–15%; hepatoblastoma 3%; autoimmune 3%; congenital hepatic fibrosis 2–3%

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Indications for liver transplant (LT) in children include (a) progressive subacute or chronic primary liver disease, such as biliary atresia, (b) metabolic disease of the liver, (c) acute hepatic failure, (d) hepatic tumors, and (e) retransplantation for hepatic graft failure. The most common disorder for which LT is performed in children is **biliary atresia,** accounting for more than 50% of patients. It is the most common cause of chronic cholestasis in infants and children. For the majority of these patients, a Kasai portoenterostomy is performed in early infancy. Even in those infants in whom bile flow is achieved, however, progressive liver failure commonly ensues, resulting in cirrhosis, portal HTN, and malnutrition. Complications include coagulopathy, esophageal varices, hypersplenism with splenomegaly and thrombocytopenia, ascites, and growth failure. Recurrent cholangitis following the Kasai procedure may lead to progressive hepatic injury and repeated hospitalizations for iv antibiotic therapy.

Children with metabolic liver disease represent the 2nd largest group of patients presenting for LT. Some metabolic liver diseases include proximal urea cycle defects, and organic acidemias result in hyperammonemia that causes neurological injury despite having intact hepatic synthetic function and no portal hypertension. In these patients, LT has been shown to prevent further neurological deterioration resulting in a trend to transplant patients in infancy. Care should be taken with these patients to avoid catabolic states or acidosis that may exacerbate neurologic injuries. Coordination of care with the metabolic geneticists is critical to ensure that these patients receive the appropriate intravenous glucose and lipid infusions in the perioperative period. Other metabolic liver diseases that result in hepatic injury include, Wilson's disease, glycogen storage diseases, and cystic fibrosis. In these patients, impaired hepatic synthetic function and portal hypertension may be present.

Patients with atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS), primarily a disorder of complement regulation that is characterized by a triad of mechanical non-immune-mediated hemolytic anemia, renal dysfunction, and thrombocytopenia, may present for combined liver-kidney transplantation. Combined liver-kidney transplantation may be performed in patients with documented mutations of proteins that are synthesized in the liver where hepatic transplantation provides a possibility of cure. These patients are at high risk of graft thrombosis due to low complement factor H levels. Consult nephrologists and surgeons regarding specific perioperative protocol that includes preop plasma exchange transfusion via hemodialysis catheter to restore normal complement and regulatory factor levels, intraop FFP infusion (20–40 mL/kg) prior to liver reperfusion, and postop anticoagulation.

Respiratory	Previous prolonged intubation may have caused subglottic stenosis. Ascites, pleural effusions, and hepatosplenomegaly cause a reduction in lung volumes in children with liver failure. Intrapulmonary R → L shunting through abnormally dilated pulmonary arterioles and impaired hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction may cause severe hypoxemia.
	Pulmonary edema may result from hypoalbuminemia and iv fluid administration, impairing oxygenation as well as ventilation. Supplemental oxygen and, in advanced cases, mechanical ventilation may be required preop. **Tests:** CXR, ABG in hepatopulmonary syndrome
Circulatory	Chronic liver failure may be accompanied by a hyperdynamic circulatory state with ↓SVR + ↑CO. On the other hand, cardiomyopathy and/or pulmonary HTN may be present, and CO may actually be diminished. These changes appear to be less common in children than adults. **Tests:** ECHO

Neurologic	Hepatic encephalopathy is a life-threatening complication of ESLD. Causes include accumulation of toxins such as ammonia, GABA agonists, and other neuroactive substances. Cerebral metabolism and the blood–brain barrier may also be abnormal in advanced liver disease. The clinical manifestations of hepatic encephalopathy range from mild somnolence to coma. **Tests:** Head CT to assess for bleed and cerebral edema. Acute liver failure may be associated with severe cerebral edema and ↑ ICP, both of which are risk factors for severe posttransplant brain injury. The pathophysiology of cerebral edema in acute liver failure is not well understood though transplantation of a functioning hepatic graft has been shown to reverse the edema. Monitoring of ICP, hypertonic saline, and CVVH to treat hyperammonemia do not appear to improve outcomes in these patients.
Hematologic	In addition to the coagulation problems secondary to poor hepatic synthetic function, patients with ESLD may have anemia and thrombocytopenia. Anemia may arise from malnutrition and bleeding. Thrombocytopenia may be a result of splenic sequestration. Both conditions are worsened by dilutional effects from increased plasma volume. **Tests:** CBC, PT/INR/PTT, fibrinogen
Hepatic	Decreased concentrations of the vitamin K–dependent clotting factors II, VII, IX, and X may lead to severe bleeding. Deficiency of clotting factors may be caused by hepatic synthetic dysfunction as well as malabsorption of vitamin K 2° ↓ bile salts in the gastrointestinal tract or antibiotic therapy. Hypoalbuminemia contributes to low serum oncotic pressure, which predisposes to intravascular hypovolemia, interstitial edema, ascites, and pleural effusions. ESLD results in diminished hepatic drug clearance, reduced hepatic blood flow and hepatic extraction ratio. **Tests:** LFTs, albumin, bilirubin, PT/INR/PTT, fibrinogen, NH_3
GI	Gastrointestinal variceal hemorrhage in patients with portal hypertension is common. Aspiration of blood during an acute bleed can lead to pulmonary decompensation. Previous need for a Blakemore tube should be noted, and one should be available for intraoperative use. Large protuberant abdomen usually warrants rapid sequence or modified rapid sequence induction with rocuronium. Most patients are already on proton pump inhibitors, and some will be on an octreotide drip. Octreotide (a somatostatin mimic) is incompatible with most TPN solutions and usually requires a separate iv for infusion.
Renal	Most children with relative long-term hepatic insufficiency coming to transplant have chronically been on diuretic therapy for management of their ascites. This can result in severe alteration of electrolytes. Hepatorenal syndrome requiring hemodialysis or CVVH is not uncommon in acute hepatic failure. Preop discussion MUST occur with the nephrology team as to the feasibility of intraop CVVH or an intraop dialysis run. For small children with limited vascular access, the dialysis catheter may be needed for fluid resuscitation purposes. Communicate with the blood bank to request both washed units of blood (which take about 1 h to prepare) or freshest units of RBCs. Correction of metabolic acidosis while on dialysis is also preferred. **Tests:** Serum electrolytes, BUN, Cr
Metabolic	Many children with liver failure have severely impaired glycogen metabolism. Preop dextrose infusion (TPN) must be continued intraop. Either the TPN solution or a D25 mixture run at equivalent grams of dextrose per h can be used. Preop consultation with the geneticist is invaluable in the management of complex metabolic disorders. **Tests:** Serum glucose
Premedication	IV midazolam is usually required to facilitate separation from parents. Ketamine 0.5–1 mg/kg iv is also effective in those children with paradoxical reactions to benzodiazepines.
Preop prep	Preparation of the room, including medications and iv fluids, may take 1 h. Underbody forced air warmer and water circulating blanket should be used because the patient is prepped from sternum to pubis. The following infusions are routinely prepared: dextrose-containing carrier, epinephrine, dopamine, and calcium chloride. Rocuronium and

Preop prep (cont'd)	fentanyl infusions may be used. The following resuscitation medications must be readily available at a variety of concentrations; epinephrine, phenylephrine, ephedrine, and atropine. Drugs to treat hyperkalemia should be drawn up as unit doses, including sodium bicarbonate (1 mEq/kg), calcium chloride (10 mg/kg), dextrose (0.5 g/kg), and insulin (0.2 U/kg). A variety of cuffed ETTs should be ready. TEE, ultrasound to aid in vascular access, and rapid infusion systems should be available.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: GETA with postop ventilation.

Induction	Following the placement of standard monitors (see p. D-1), a rapid sequence induction with rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg) should be considered in patients with large abdominal girth from ascites causing decreased lung volumes.
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. D-3) with volatile agent, muscle relaxation, and fentanyl 10–50 mcg/kg. During periods of instability when vapor concentrations may be low, iv ketamine 1 mg/kg can be used. Nitrous oxide is avoided to prevent bowel distention. PEEP is useful to prevent atelectasis exacerbated by surgical retraction of the diaphragm. Antibiotics are dosed per surgical protocol. ABGs are drawn frequently to monitor electrolytes, acid-base status and aid in resuscitation. Establishment of vascular access can be very difficult and may take 1–2 h. Use of ultrasonic guidance can be helpful especially in the profoundly coagulopathic patient. Care should be taken to keep the patient warm during this period of vascular access. Major vascular access should be restricted to the SVC distribution because the IVC will be clamped. In cases of "piggyback" transplantation, the caval clamp time is usually reduced, and if vascular access is severely limited, IVC distribution veins may be used. This should be discussed with the surgical team.
Preanhepatic phase	This phase of surgery begins with surgical incision and concludes when the hepatic/portal vessels are clamped. Opening of the abdomen and drainage of ascites will often improve ventilation though placement of retractors may compromise ventilation. Blood loss during mobilization of the liver may be copious in the presence of portal HTN or adhesions from previous surgeries. "Maintenance fluids" may include FFP and blood. Use of platelets and cryoprecipitate should be discussed with the surgical team as a hypercoagulable state is undesirable when the graft hepatic artery and/or portal vein are small. Hypercoagulability should also be avoided if venovenous bypass is planned (not commonly used in children < 30–40 kg). Large variations in BP and cardiac filling pressures are common during this phase of surgery due to manipulation and rotation of the liver, which may cause intermittent kinking of the vena cava. The anesthesiologist must be constantly aware of the progress of surgery and communicate any protracted periods of hypotension due to surgical manipulation. Transfusion of blood/products may result in hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, and hypothermia. All products need to be warmed. In patients weighing < 10 kg, the freshest available packed red blood cells should be used to minimize potassium load from transfused blood products. A calcium chloride infusion (10 mg/kg/h) can be used to maintain the serum ionized calcium > 1.0 and helps avoid BP changes associated with bolus administration of calcium. Hyperkalemia is treated with furosemide (1 mg/kg), correcting acidosis and infusing dextrose and insulin as required. Goals of this stage in preparation for the anhepatic phase include: (a) serum potassium < 4, (b) correction of metabolic acidosis, (c) ionized calcium > 1.0–1.2, (d) adequate urine output (0.5–1 mL/kg/h), (e) adequate blood pressure at the lowest CVP possible, (f) hematocrit in the 30 range, and (g) euthermia. Mild hyperthermia may help mitigate the hypothermia created by the iced donor liver during the anhepatic phase. Frequent arterial blood-gas sampling is necessary. Hourly sampling is a minimum, and extreme blood loss may necessitate sampling every 15 min. Blood loss and third space losses are considerable in this phase of surgery. Edema of internal organs and eventually the transplanted liver is undesirable. Closure of the small abdominal cavity with an edematous liver can cause pressure necrosis as well as abdominal compartment syndrome.

Anhepatic phase	The anhepatic phase begins with clamping of the hepatic vessels and ends with reperfusion of the donor liver. Problems during this phase include fibrinolysis, acidosis, and hypothermia. During the anhepatic phase, hydrocortisone (20 mg/kg) is given. Care should be taken at this point to avoid hypoglycemia as it can lead to osmotic diuresis and hemoconcentration. Communication must exist between surgical and anesthetic teams regarding the amount of bleeding present and which products should be used to treat it. Respiratory alkalosis may be desirable to compensate for existing or projected metabolic acidosis. Correct any metabolic acidosis with bicarbonate. Placement of the iced donor liver usually decreases the core temperature by 1.5°C. This coupled with preexisting hypothermia can increase coagulopathic bleeding. The anhepatic phase can be as short as 15 min or longer than 1 h depending on surgical difficulty. In the case of short anhepatic times, the metabolic goals should have been achieved in the preanhepatic phase. Anticipation and preparation for reperfusion should be ongoing. A split liver transplant usually entails more bleeding upon reperfusion, so the appropriate blood products must be present in the room. Anticipation and preparation for reperfusion should be ongoing. Reperfusion takes place after the portal vein and bicaval anastomoses are complete. In the piggyback liver transplant, anhepatic time is reduced because only the hepatic vein(s) and portal vein require anastomosis. Prior to tying the anastomotic suture, the liver is flushed to remove any air from the vessels. A 10-min warning to unclamp is usually given to the anesthesia team. Last-minute electrolyte corrections can be made. The patient is then placed on 100% O_2, low-dose epinephrine infusion (0.03–0.05 mcg/kg/min) and dopamine (3–5 mcg/kg/min) may be started, and inhalational agent should be decreased or turned off. IV midazolam or ketamine may be given to ensure amnesia.
Postperfusion phase	This phase begins with slow unclamping of the portal vein and vena cava with reperfusion of the donor liver. Unclamping may be associated with hemodynamic instability and even cardiac arrest. Hypotension, tachycardia, dysrhythmias, hypothermia, severe acidosis, coagulopathy and air- or thromboembolism can occur. During the unclamping the anesthesiologist must simultaneously watch the uniform reperfusion of the liver as well as the blood pressure and ECG waveform. Increased T waves or widening of the QRS complex should be assumed to represent hyperkalemia. IV fluids in the form of RBCs or albumin should be ready in the event of anastomotic bleeding or bleeding from the cut edge of a split liver graft. A small amount of epinephrine (1–2 mcg) bolus of calcium chloride (10 mg/kg) and a bolous of sodium bicarbonate (1 mcg/kg) may help maintain hemodynamic stability during unclamping of the portal vein and vena cava. When giving iv fluids watch the liver for swelling. The hepatic artery anastomosis is then completed, prior to which the surgeon may request that a dose of heparin (10 U/kg) be given. Volatile agent can be restarted and the FiO_2 can be reduced. Blood gas tensions and coagulation parameters should be checked 30 to 60 min after reperfusion to assess synthetic function of liver allograft. Care should be taken to maintain the hematocrit between 25 and 30, because relative polycythemia may lead to hepatic artery thrombosis. The biliary system will be constructed either with a duct-to-duct reconstruction or, in cases of the small child or the patient with biliary atresia, with a Roux-en-Y choledochojejunostomy. Patients with previous Kasai procedures will have an existing Roux limb, and biliary reconstruction takes places quickly. Construction of a new Roux limb may take 1–2 h. During this time, it is important to keep up with third space losses and avoid hemoconcentration while avoiding congestion of the liver. Vasopressors may be required to maintain MAP goals, which should be set after discussion with the surgeons.
Emergence	The patient is taken to the ICU intubated and usually paralyzed to facilitate ventilation. Extubation is deferred to the ICU team.

Blood and fluid requirements	Massive blood loss expected. IV × 2 as large as tolerated based on age. Arterial line in radial and femoral 2–3 lumen CVP line. Warm all fluids UO 0.5–1 mL/kg/h	IV access restricted to SVC distribution. Avoid hand veins for large-volume fluid administration because infiltration is difficult to detect. Two arterial lines are necessary because extreme vasoconstriction may dampen peripheral arterial line; femoral line interrupted if aortic clamping occurs. Avoid iv solutions containing lactate. Normosol preferred over NS due to lower sodium content. Administer blood based on hemodynamics and ABG because EBL is difficult to measure. **Fluids to have available:** Normosol, or normal saline, PRBC, FFP, cryo and platelets; 5% albumin Rapid infusion system if child is large
Monitoring	Standard monitors ETN_2 Arterial line × 2 I-STAT CVP TEE	Five-lead EKG. Bladder temp if child is large enough. Carefully insert nasopharyngeal temp probe. I-STAT (bedside arterial blood gas sampling) system is useful. Take care during insertion of TEE due to varices. May be difficult to use because continuous orogastric decompression is needed.
Coagulation management	PT PTT Plt count Fibrinogen FSP	Preexisting coagulopathy is very common. Coagulopathy may necessitate administration of products during line placement. Discuss use of cryo and platelets with surgical team prior to administration. Postreperfusion, treat clinical bleeding not lab values.
Positioning	Pad and protect lines Pad pressure points ✓ Retraction devices	Wrap all stopcocks near patient. Use gel headrest to protect occiput. Check for pressure points due to surgical retraction devices.
Temperature	Warming blanket Control fluid warmers Wrap patient	Underbody forced air warming. Hotline, Ranger, or rapid infusion system. The patient is wrapped with Webril and Saran wrap for warmth and to keep patient dry.
Complications	Coagulopathy Hemorrhage Air embolism Cardiac arrest Metabolic acidosis IV infiltration	

POSTOPERATIVE

Monitoring	Serial LFTs PT, PTT Lactate Glucose Bilirubin	Initial LFTs are quite high depending on level of preservation injury. Bile production and normal glucose level are good signs.

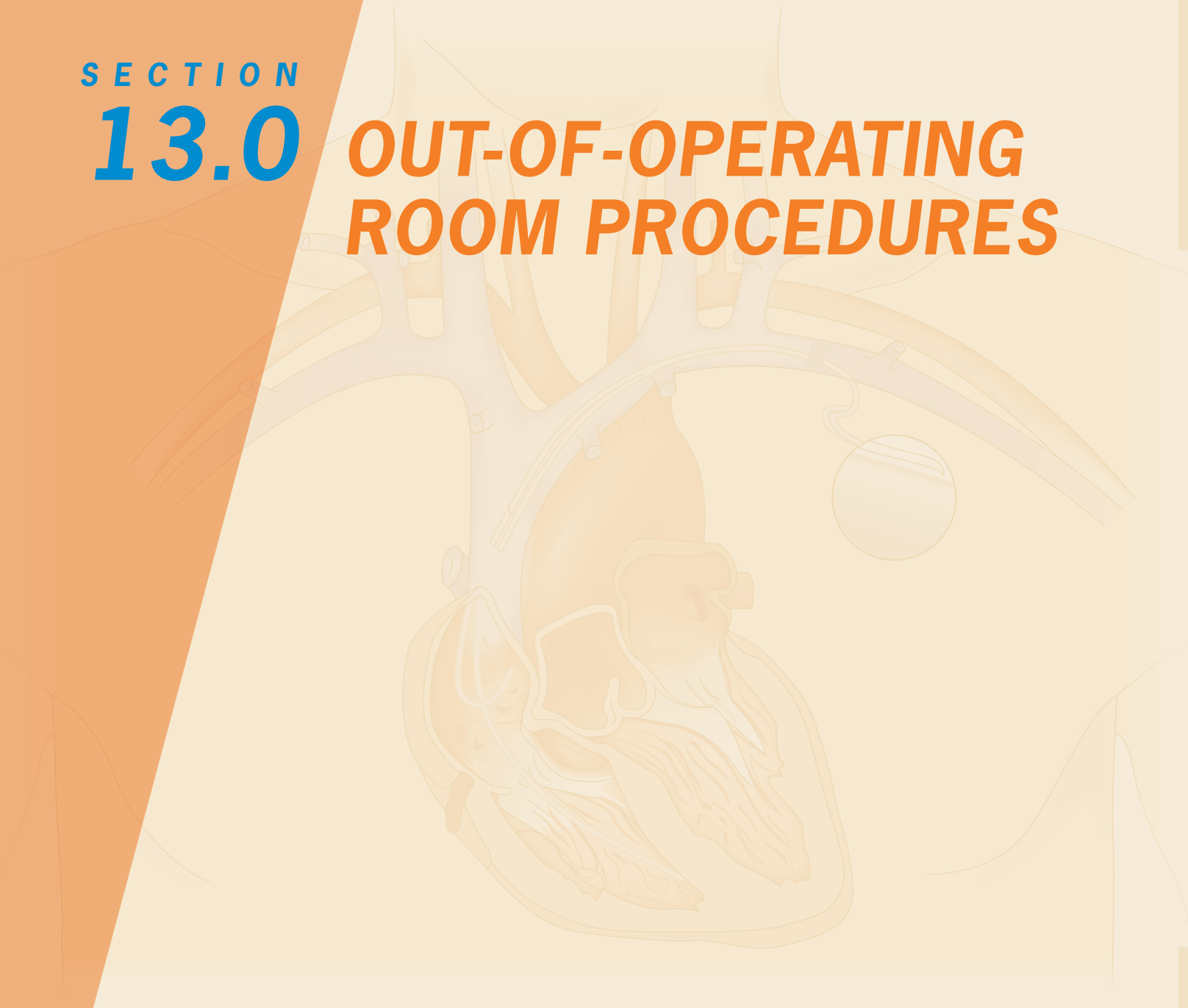
Complications	Bleeding Hepatic artery thrombosis Portal vein thrombosis Biliary leak Primary graft nonfunction Rejection Infection Intracranial bleed Electrolyte abnormalities Alkalosis Renal failure	Most care is deferred to the ICU team. Postop vascular ultrasounds are followed. Hepatic artery thrombosis is ominous, and patients are often relisted for transplant if this complication occurs. Hypertensive swings in the coagulopathic patient can lead to intracranial hemorrhage.

Suggested Readings

1. Alonso EM, Besedovsky A, Emerick K, et al: General criteria for pediatric transplantation. In: Busuttil RW, Klintmalm GB, eds. *Transplantation of the Liver*, 2nd edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2005, 287–302.
2. Campeau PM, Pivalizza PJ, Miller G, et al: Early orthopedia liver transplantation in urea cycle defects: follow up of a developmental outcome study. *Molec Genetics Metaboli*, 2010; 100:584–87.
3. De Goyet JV, Rogiers X, Ott JB: Split-liver transplantation for the pediatric and adult recipient. In: Busuttil RW, Klintmalm GB, eds. *Transplantation of the Liver*, 2nd edition. WB Saunders, Philadelphia: 2005, 689–728.
4. Esquivel CO: Current status and outcome of pediatric liver transplantation. *Clin Liever Dis* 1997; 1(2):397–415.
5. Esquivel CO, Nakazato P, Cox K, et al: The impact of liver reductions in pediatric liver transplantation. *Arch Surg* 1991; 126:1278–86.
6. Farmer DG, Venick RS, McDiarmid SV, et al: Predictors of outcomes after pediatric liver transplantation: an analysis of more than 800 cases performed at a single institution. *J Am Coll Surg* 2007; 204:904–14.
7. Hammer GB, Krane EJ: Anesthetic considerations for liver transplantation in children. *Pediatr Anesth* 2001; 1:3–18.
8. Kerkar N, Emre S: Issues unique to pediatric liver transplantation. *Clin Liver Dis* 2007; 11(2):323–35.
9. Loirat C, Fremeaux-Bacchi V: Atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome. *Orphanet J Rare Diseases* 2011; 6–60.
10. Saland JM, Ruggenenti P, Remuzzi G: Consensus study group: liver-kidney transplantation to cure atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2009; 20:940–9.
11. Scott VL, Wahl KM, Soltys K, et al: Anesthesia for organ transplantation. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 905–31.
12. Stayer SA, Williams G, Andropoulos DB: Anesthesia for transplantation. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell Pub, Oxford: 2012, 682–93.
13. Tan WF, Steadman RH, Farmer DG, et al: Pretransplant neurological presentation and severe posttransplant brain injury in patients with acute liver failure. *Transplantation* 2012; 94(7):1–7.
14. Vanatta JM, Esquivel CO: Status of liver transplantation in infants < 5 kg. *Pediatr Transpl* 2007; 11(1):5–9.

SECTION

13.0 OUT-OF-OPERATING ROOM PROCEDURES



CHAPTER

13.1 Out-of-Operating Room Procedures—Adult

PROCEDURAL SPECIALISTS

Charles DeBattista, MD (*Electroconvulsive therapy*)
L. Bing Liem, DO (*DC cardioversion, ICD*)
Michael P. Marks, MD (*Interventional neuroradiology*)
Stephen T. Kee, MD *(Tracheobronchial stenting, RFA, IRE)*
Daniel Y. Sze, MD, PhD (*Image-guided procedures*)
Joan K. Frisoli, MD, PhD
Eric J. Sirulnick, MD
John Brock-Utne, MD, PhD
Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD

ANESTHESIA FOR OUT-OF-OPERATING ROOM PROCEDURES

GENERAL COMMENTS

Advances in the fields of radiology, cardiology, and neurology have led to an increase in the number of anesthesia procedures performed away from the OR. In line with these changes, the ASA has provided guidelines for the safe delivery of anesthesia at locations remote from the OR environment.

Anesthetic considerations for out-of-OR locations (modified from ASA Guidelines[1]) include

- Primary and backup O_2 sources (e.g., piped O_2 + 1 full E cylinder)
- Adequate and reliable suction
- Adequate and reliable scavenging system (for inhalational anesthesia)
- Self-inflating hand resuscitator bag with ability to deliver at least 90% O_2
- Adequate anesthetic drug supplies and equipment
- Adequate monitoring equipment to allow adherence to the "Standards of Basic Anesthetic Monitoring"[2]
- Sufficient electrical outlets connected to an emergency power supply
- Wet locations (e.g., cysto, arthroscopy, labor, and delivery) should be equipped with either an isolated electrical source or circuits with ground-fault interrupters.
- Adequate illumination for patient observation and monitoring equipment (flashlight backup)
- Sufficient space for expeditious access to patient, machine, and support equipment
- Emergency cart with defibrillator immediately available
- Immediate access to skilled anesthesia support personnel

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists: *Guidelines for Non-Operating Room Anesthetizing Locations*. American Society of Anesthesiologists, Park Ridge: 2008.
2. American Society of Anesthesiologists: *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*. American Society of Anesthesiologists, Park Ridge: 2011.
3. Eichhorn V, Henzler D, Murphy MF: Standardizing care and monitoring for anesthesia or procedural sedation delivered outside the operating room. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2010; 23(4):494–9.
4. Metzner J, Domino KB: Risks of anesthesia or sedation outside the operating room: the role of the anesthesia care provider. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2010; 23(4):523–31.

ELECTROCONVULSIVE THERAPY (ECT)

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)** is the transcutaneous application of small electrical stimuli to the brain to produce generalized seizures for the treatment of selected psychiatric disorders, such as severe depression. There are several important aspects of ECT that are of relevance to the anesthesiologist. The first is the uncontrolled motor activity associated with generalized seizures. Prior to introduction of GA, the most common injuries associated with ECT were compression fractures of the vertebral bodies and broken limbs from violent tonic-clonic motor activity. Even with complete paralysis, the masseter muscles are directly stimulated to contract during seizure induction. As a result, the most common injury currently associated with ECT is broken teeth.

A second consequence of ECT induction is that the electrical stimulus can cause contraction of cranial musculature and a brief dilation of meningeal blood vessels, resulting in postictal headaches in up to 40% of patients. Patients < 50 yr and those with a Hx of migraine headaches appear most at risk for post-ECT headaches that may occasionally require aggressive pain management. Finally, ECT may be a significant hemodynamic stressor. Initially, central parasympathetic centers are activated, resulting in bradydysrhythmias in ~30% of patients. Brief sinus pauses are not uncommon. The initial parasympathetic effects are followed by sympathetically mediated increases in HR and BP up

to 20–30% above baseline. Mean arterial blood pressure has been known to double in some instances. These cardiovascular responses can persist for minutes to an hour or more after the procedure is completed.

The optimal position for ECT is supine. Occasionally, the head is kept slightly raised to help maintain an adequate airway and decrease anxiety. Patients typically come to ECT quite anxious about the procedure. ECT is generally performed in a PACU or specialized ECT suite. In many centers, outpatients make up the majority of patients seen for ECT. The electrical stimulus is applied through plastic adhesive leads prepared with a contact gel. These leads are usually applied to the forehead in a bitemporal or right unilateral placement. Monitoring typically includes a two-lead electroencephalogram (EEG) and frequently an electromyogram (EMG) to measure motor activity. A BP cuff is inflated to act as a tourniquet and prevent neuromuscular blockade in the distal limb. Thus, an arm or leg can be used to measure motor duration of the seizure. A special ECT device is used to generate the appropriate electrical stimulus. Seizures are typically 30–90 sec in duration, and the entire procedure—from the induction of anesthesia to patient awakening—is generally < 15 min. The recovery period averages 45–90 min and allows for monitoring of vital signs, as well as the opportunity for the postictal confusion to clear. Patients can wake up mildly confused-to-frankly delirious and require close nursing supervision. Postictal agitation is also quite common and may require an intervention. Treatments are typically performed every other day, and the average number of treatments is 6–12 in the acute management of major depression. However, ECT treatments currently tend to be tapered rather than stopped abruptly. Thus, the frequency of treatments may go from 3/wk for acute treatment, to 1/wk, 2/mo, and finally 1/mo. Maintenance ECT with a frequency ranging from every few weeks to every few months is commonly prescribed for those patients who respond to ECT but fail to benefit from pharmacotherapy.

The most common morbidities associated with ECT include headaches and myalgias. Postictal confusion is the rule, and some anterograde and retrograde memory loss occurs in most patients who have completed an acute course of ECT. Memory loss is typically confined to the period immediately before, during, and immediately after an acute series of ECT. There tends to be a cumulative memory loss with subsequent ECT treatments within a given series. In most patients, memory deficits largely subside in the first 1–3 mo following an acute series of treatments. In rare instances, autobiographical memory loss has been reported for months or years after an ECT series has been completed. Long-term memory loss appears to be more common with bilateral lead placement. In addition, ECT-related mortality is estimated at approximately 4/10,000. Cardiac events account for 67% of all ECT-related deaths, with malignant arrhythmias and MIs accounting for most fatalities. Pulmonary events (obstruction, pulmonary edema, or emboli) account for most additional mortality. Cerebrovascular infarctions or hemorrhages have rarely been reported with ECT.

Usual preop diagnosis: Depression; mania; catatonia; refractory psychosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Seizure generator & electrodes; EEG/EMG monitors
Unique considerations	Requires muscle relaxation to prevent injury. 50–80 mg of succinylcholine is usually sufficient. Using larger dose of succinylcholine can lead to patient waking up while paralyzed. Nondisposable bite blocks are required to prevent dental injury. Apply tourniquet (BP cuff) to one arm before administration of muscle relaxant. A slow heart rate preop may require atropine. A high BP preop may require aggressive hypotensive Rx with beta-blockers, phentolamine, hydralazine, etc. If the seizure duration is not > 25 sec, then another seizure may be ordered. Give more induction agents as needed. Because one arm is not paralyzed, asking the patient to squeeze your fingers will tell you that she/he is awake.
Antibiotics	None
Procedure time	Setup: 5–10 min Treatment: < 10 min (seizure duration 25–280 sec)
Postop care	PACU → room or home
Mortality	4/10,000
Morbidity	HA/myalgias/nausea: Common Confusion/memory loss: Common. Be aware that postoperative hypoxia can present with confusion.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity (cont'd)	Cardiac dysrhythmias: 10–40% (brief asystole common). Keep a close eye on the EKG. MI: Rare Pulmonary edema from excessive iv fluids: NOT uncommon. Pulmonary aspiration and/or negative pressure pulmonary edema: Rare CVA: Rare
Pain score	2–3 (HA)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	≥ 18 yr. ECT is rarely performed in adolescents and preadolescents; however, patients in their 90s are sometimes candidates for ECT. There is a preponderance of geriatric patients on many ECT services.
Male:Female	1:2
Incidence	The lifetime prevalence of major depression (the primary indication for ECT) is ~17%; 26% of women and 12% of men are affected. < 1% of patients with major depression undergo ECT, and approximately 400,000 ECT procedures are performed in North America annually.
Associated conditions	Substance abuse (30% of all depressed patients meet criteria for alcohol or drug abuse); panic attacks (30% of depressed patients); psychotic symptoms (14% of patients); HTN and sinus tachycardia; dehydration; self-inflicted trauma; pregnancy.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for ECT usually have failed to respond to antidepressants; however, most will continue to take psychotherapeutic agents. Many of the older patients will be taking other medications for coexisting medical conditions. Drug interactions are an important consideration for the anesthesiologist (see Drug Interactions, p. F-1). The most commonly used medications are listed in Table 13.1-1.

Anesthesia for ECT may seem to be a benign procedure; however, these cases—which seldom take > 20 min—can prove very challenging, especially in the geriatric population. ECT can place significant stress on the cardiovascular system; therefore, particular care should be taken to evaluate and optimize the patient's pretreatment cardiovascular status. ECT usually takes place in remote locations, so the anesthesiologist must ensure that the location is properly equipped and complies with ASA Guidelines for Out-of-OR Procedures (see p. 1484) and Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring.

Table 13.1-1. Commonly Used Medications in the Treatment of Depression

Tricyclic	MAOI	SSRI	SNRI and Other Antidepressants
Amitriptyline (Elavil, others) Amoxapine (Asendin) Desipramine (Norpramin) Doxepin (Sinequan) Imipramine (Tofranil) Maprotiline (Ludiomil) Nortriptyline (Pamelor) Protriptyline (Vivactil) Trimipramine (Surmontil)	Isocarboxazid (Marplan) Phenelzine (Nardil) Tranylcypromine (Parnate) Transdermal selegiline (Emsam) **Lithium** (Often used as an adjunctive agent/mood stabilizer in depression)	Fluoxetine (Prozac) Paroxetine (Paxil) Sertraline (Zoloft) Fluvoxamine (Luvox) Citalopram (Celexa) Escitalopram (Lexapro)	Venlafaxine (Effexor) Duloxetine (Cymbalta) Nefazodone (Serzone) Mirtazapine (Remeron) Bupropion (Wellbutrin) Trazodone (Desyrel) **Atypical Antipsychotics** (Used adjunctively) Olanzapine (Zyprexa) Quetiapine (Seroquel) Aripiprazole (Abilify) Risperidone (Risperdal) Ziprasidone (Geodon)

MAOI = Monoamine oxidase inhibitor
SSRI = Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
SNRI = Selective norepinephrine/serotonin reuptake inhibitor

Respiratory	These patients will require airway management and PPV. Hence, preop assessment of the airway must focus on the ease of mask ventilation and the potential need for ET intubation (e.g., airway compromise or severe GERD).
Cardiovascular	A recent MI (< 3 mo) is a contraindication to ECT. Relative contraindications include aortic aneurysm, angina, CHF, and thrombophlebitis. The presence of dysrhythmias, a pacemaker, or ICD is not a contraindication for ECT. For the patient with a pacemaker, a means (e.g., a magnet) should be available to convert the pacemaker to an asynchronous mode. Patients on long-term anticoagulation therapy may require pre-ECT dose adjustment (target INR 1.5–2.5) or they should switch to heparin before each ECT session and return to their standard therapy post-ECT. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Gastrointestinal	Patient should be npo. Patients with Sx of GERD should be pretreated with Na citrate (30 mL po), ranitidine (50 mg iv), and metoclopramide (10 mg iv). ET intubation should be considered for all patients at risk for aspiration.
Neurological	ECT is relatively contraindicated in the presence of ↑ ICP, and recent CVA (< 3 mo), intracranial mass lesions, or recent intracranial surgery (< 3 mo).
Endocrine	Presence of a pheochromocytoma (Sx of which may be confused with a psychiatric disorder) is a contraindication to ECT. < 1% of hypertensive patients will have a pheochromocytoma.
Genetic	✓ for family Hx of pseudocholinesterase deficiency. Mivacurium (0.15 mg/kg) is a suitable alternative to succinylcholine. **Tests:** Dibucaine number (normal ≥ 80) and serum cholinesterase level, if indicated from H&P.
Hepatic	Hepatotoxicity has been associated with use of MAOI. **Tests:** Consider LFTs for patients on chronic MAOI therapy.
Orthopaedic	In patients susceptible to bone fracture (e.g., severe osteoporosis, osteoporosis imperfecta), an increased succinylcholine dosage (1.5 mg/kg) is given to ensure profound muscle relaxation. Patients with severe rheumatoid arthritis may have unstable C-spine, and extreme care should be taken during positioning of head and neck.
Ophthalmologic	Retinal detachment is a relative contraindication to ECT. Succinylcholine should be avoided in patients with glaucoma treated with cholinesterase-inhibitors (e.g., echothiophate). Mivacurium (0.15 mg/kg) is a suitable alternative.
Pregnancy	Pregnancy is not a contraindication for ECT (even in the third trimester). After the 4th mo, the need for full-stomach precautions requires rapid-sequence induction and ET intubation (see p. B-5). Left uterine displacement should be maintained during treatment. Monitor fetal heartbeat.
Psychiatric drugs	Patients receiving tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) may have an exaggerated pressor response to direct-acting sympathomimetic drugs, with the potential for tachycardia, dysrhythmias, and hyperthermia. The response to indirect-acting sympathomimetic drugs (e.g., ephedrine) may be attenuated in these patients. TCAs also will increase the effects of anticholinergic drugs (e.g., glycopyrrolate, atropine). Patients receiving MAOIs will exhibit exaggerated responses to indirect-acting sympathomimetic drugs (e.g., ephedrine). In addition, in these patients, succinylcholine metabolism is inhibited (↑ NMB), and meperidine is contraindicated (↑↑ BP, ↑ Sz, ↑↑ T). It is probably unnecessary to discontinue TCAs or MAOIs prior to ECT, as long as these interactions can be avoided. Lithium should be discontinued for at least 3 d prior to ECT to avoid delayed recovery and subsequent posttreatment agitation and confusion. Lithium also is associated with ↑ NMB (succinylcholine and pancuronium). SSRIs have been associated with prolonged ECT-induced seizure duration and adverse behavioral/neurological effects following haloperidol administration (use droperidol and metoclopramide with caution). No adverse interactions have been reported between anesthetic agents and SSRIs or SNRIs.

Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Although usually not required, some patients may benefit from an antisialagogue (glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv). Patients with Hx of postop N/V will benefit from a prophylactic antiemetic (e.g., ondansetron 4 mg iv). Patients with postseizure muscle pain and headache may benefit from ketorolac (30 mg iv). Some patients will require 500–1,000 mg caffeine iv, or po, to decrease seizure threshold. The iv caffeine effect should be manifest in 5 min. However, po caffeine must be given 30–40 min in advance. Verapamil (not adenosine, which is blocked by caffeine) should be available to control supraventricular tachycardia (0.07–0.25 mg/kg over 2 min). Labetalol, hydralazine, esmolol, and diltiazem are alternative drugs for control of HR and BP.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: A review of previous anesthetic records is very helpful in formulating the anesthetic plan and in anticipating physiological changes unique to each patient. Usually brief iv anesthesia (mask oxygenation and ventilation) with muscle relaxation (1–2 twitches) is required to prevent patient injury during seizures. Prior to induction, a tourniquet (BP cuff) is applied to the non-iv arm and inflated to a pressure above systolic. This prevents neuromuscular blockade distal to the cuff and permits direct monitoring of seizure activity. Preop BP control (e.g., labetalol 5–20 mg, diltiazem 10–20 mg iv, or esmolol 0.5–1 mg/kg iv in increments) is often necessary.

Induction	Preoxygenation should be attempted in all patients. In some patients who are intolerant of a mask, a less-intrusive blow-by technique may be tried. Anesthesia is induced with propofol (1–2 mg/kg), sodium methohexital (0.5–1 mg/kg), or etomidate (0.1–0.2 mg/kg). An induction dose of etomidate will block stress-induced cortisol production for up to 24 h. Propofol (1–1.5 mg/kg) may be used, but may shorten seizure duration. TCAs and MAOIs can increase sleep time. After tourniquet inflation, succinylcholine (0.8–1 mg/kg) is injected to induce paralysis. Hyperventilation is carried out to enhance seizure activity. A bite block is placed, and then the patient is ready for ECT. In barbiturate-tolerant patients, remifentanil (1–3 mcg/kg) has been used as a means of reducing the barbiturate dose, thereby permitting adequate seizure duration. Patients receiving remifentanil need minimal postseizure BP control.	
Maintenance	Given the brevity of this procedure, maintenance of anesthesia is rarely a concern; however, occasionally a second or third treatment may be necessary if the seizures are of inadequate duration (< 25 sec) and quality. In this case, a subsequent dose (10–30 mg) of succinylcholine may be needed. Assisted ventilation is necessary until spontaneous ventilation resumes. Of major concern during the seizure period is the hypertensive response. Some patients may need to be treated prior to induction of anesthesia with either labetalol (5–20 mg iv) or esmolol (10 mg q 1 min) to control HR/BP. SNP (5–50 mcg/bolus iv) is useful to control BP in refractory cases. Profound ↓ HR may occur in the immediate post-ECT period requiring atropine or a chest thump.	
Emergence	Patients should be awake within 5–10 min postseizure and often are disoriented. Small doses of midazolam (e.g., 0.25–0.5 mg iv) may help to control agitation, and blow-by O_2 may be less stimulating. ASA guidelines for postanesthesia care should be followed (see p. 1484).	
Blood and fluid requirements	No blood loss IV: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ TKO	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) Tourniquet EEG EMG	Seizure activity is usually monitored by a psychiatrist observing the tourniqueted limb and by measuring EMG and EEG activity. (These monitors are usually an integral part of the ECT seizure generator.)
Positioning	Supine	

Complications	Dysrhythmias	Brief periods of asystole and profound bradycardia are not uncommon (usually related to parasympathetic overactivity). Treatment is rarely necessary.
	Tachydysrhythmias	Responds well to esmolol (10–15 mg iv) or lidocaine (1 mg/kg iv), although treatment is usually unnecessary.
	↑ BP	↑ BP readily responds to esmolol (10–30 mg) or labetalol (5–20 mg). In refractory cases, 10–50 mcg of SNP may be necessary.
	Dental damage Pulmonary edema Aspiration	Use of bite block is essential. Dental damage is not prevented by muscle relaxation (direct electrical stimulation of facial and jaw muscles).

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	HA, myalgias	Rx: ketorolac 30 mg iv
	N/V	Rx: ondansetron 4 mg iv
	Disorientation	Rx: midazolam 0.25–0.5 mg iv
	Memory impairment	
	MI/ischemia	
	Dysrhythmias	
	Pulmonary edema/aspiration	
	↑ BP	Prolonged ↑ BP is unusual and may suggest the need for further workup.

Suggested Readings

1. Allan CL, Ebmeier KP: The use of ECT and MST in treating depression. *Int Rev Psychiatry* 2011; 23(5):400–12.
2. Cohran M, DeBattista C, Schmiesing C, et al: Negative pressure pulmonary edema. A potential hazard in patients undergoing ECT. *J ECT* 1999; 15:168–70.
3. DeBattista C, Cohran M, Barry JJ, et al: Fetal heart deceleration during ECT induced seizures: is it important? *Acta Anaesth Scand* 2003; 47:101–3.
4. Deiner S, Frost EA: Electroconvulsive therapy and anesthesia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2009; 47(2):81–92.
5. Kurup V, Ostroff R: When cardiac patients need ECT—challenges for the anesthesiologist. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 50(2):128–40.
6. MacPherson RD, Loo CK: Cognitive impairment following electroconvulsive therapy- does the choice of anesthetic agent make a difference? *J ECT* 2008; 24(1):52–6.
7. Mirzakhani H, Welch CA, Eikermann M, Nozari A: Neuromuscular blocking agents for electroconvulsive therapy: a systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 2012; 56(1):3–16.
8. Sharp RP, Welch EB: Takotsubo cardiomyopathy as a complication of electroconvulsive therapy. *Ann Pharmacother* 2011; 45(12):1559–65.
9. Smith D, Angst M, Brock-Utne JG, et al: Seizure duration with remifentanil/methohexital vs. methohexital in middle aged patients undergoing ECT. *Acta Anaesth Scand* 2003; 47:1064–6.

INTERVENTIONAL NEURORADIOLOGY

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

The indications for endovascular therapy for the brain and spine have continued to grow with the technical strides made in both devices and imaging. Endovascular therapy is now widely used in the treatment of intracranial aneurysms, arteriovenous malformations (AVMs), arteriovenous fistulas (AVFs), and tumors. It also is extensively used in revascularization of the cerebral circulation in the setting of acute stroke or for the treatment of cerebrovascular stenoses. Many of these procedures can be performed with the patient awake; however, GA or deep sedation often is used to minimize patient movement during procedures that require careful catheter and device control for safe operation. These procedures can be divided into three broad categories: (a) embolization, (b) aneurysm therapy, and (c) cerebral revascularization.

EMBOLIZATION

This therapy may be used for a variety of lesions, including AVMs in the brain; dural AVFs; vein of Galen malformations; vascular neoplasms, such as meningiomas, hemangiomas, glomus tumors, and juvenile nasal angiofibromas; and for treatment of epistaxis.

AVM embolization usually is performed as an adjunct to radiosurgery or microsurgery, although in selected cases, embolization may be the definitive treatment. Brain AVMs are generally parenchymal lesions with multiple feeding pial arteries and draining veins. The goal of embolization is to reduce the size and shunt burden presented by the AVM before either radiosurgery or microsurgical resection. Liquid embolic agents are preferred, with *n*-butyl cyanoacrylate (NBCA) and ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer (EVOH) being the two materials currently used for the procedure. Embolization often is preceded by neurophysiologic testing, which may include the superselective injection of a barbiturate into the portion of the intracranial circulation being considered for embolization. Some centers perform the procedure with the patient awake to allow for more thorough clinical testing prior to embolization, while others prefer the patient to have general anesthesia to minimize patient motion.

Dural arteriovenous fistulas involve dural veins or sinuses and are most commonly located in the regions of the cavernous, transverse, and sigmoid sinuses. Because of their location, these malformations usually are supplied from meningeal arteries. A cavernous sinus fistula also may develop as a direct large-hole fistula between the internal carotid artery and the cavernous sinus. Patients may have a variety of symptoms depending on the location, size, and drainage pattern of the dural fistula. The embolization process for these dural-based lesions differs somewhat from the technique used for pial-based brain AVMs. Arterial embolization may be used, but venous embolization is often used to definitively occlude the fistula. Embolization of meningeal arteries may be preceded by clinical testing for cranial nerve deficits. This usually is accomplished with the superselective injection of lidocaine before embolization, and it is often preferred to have the patient awake for this procedure. If arterial embolization is utilized, a liquid embolic (NBCA or EVOH) is often utilized. Venous embolization is usually done with platinum coil occlusion.

Vein of Galen malformations are congenital lesions that may present in infancy or early childhood. Presenting symptoms include CHF, hydrocephalus, and neurodevelopmental delay. These lesions often require a staged approach to treatment and present a special challenge in the neonate or infant. In general, arterial embolization is performed as the initial endovascular approach, and a liquid embolic agent is used. In some cases, this may be augmented by a venous approach, with embolization using platinum coils.

Tumor embolization usually is performed as an adjunct to the surgical resection of highly vascular tumors (e.g., meningiomas, hemangiomas, hemangioblastomas, glomus tumors, and juvenile nasal angiofibromas). Generally, arterial embolization of meningeal supply vessels is done before surgery, using PVA or trisacryl gelatin microspheres. Physiologic testing with superselective injection of lidocaine often precedes embolization. When there is tumor encasement of a major artery, the patient may also undergo balloon test occlusion followed by permanent occlusion to reduce the risk of intraoperative bleeding.

ANEURYSM THERAPY

Endovascular therapy is the treatment of choice for many intracranial aneurysms, and it consists of either direct intraaneurysmal obliteration with detachable platinum coils or placement of a flow-diverting stent in the parent artery to produce thrombosis of the aneurysm. A randomized, controlled trial has shown better clinical outcome for patients treated with aneurysm coiling than surgical clipping in the setting of acute subarachnoid hemorrhage. Narrow-necked aneurysms are usually treated with a microcatheter through which coils are introduced directly into the aneurysm. Wider-necked aneurysms are more difficult to treat using this technique because coils may prolapse into the parent artery. In this situation, coiling may be done with either balloon remodeling or the combined use of a stent. Balloon remodeling involves placing a balloon catheter in the parent artery over the ostium of the aneurysm. The balloon is intermittently inflated with each coil insertion to prevent coil prolapse into the parent vessel. Fenestrated stents can also be introduced into the parent artery over the ostium of the aneurysm. The aneurysm is coiled by placing a microcatheter through the stent fenestrations into the aneurysm. Parent artery occlusion is still used for some giant or fusiform aneurysms, but has more recently been largely replaced by the use of flow-diverting stents (e.g., Pipeline™). Parent artery occlusion is generally done in a two-step process. Test occlusion is initially performed with a balloon-tipped catheter, and the patient is evaluated using clinical testing and neurophysiological monitoring. The testing may be done with controlled hypotension to improve the test sensitivity. If the patient

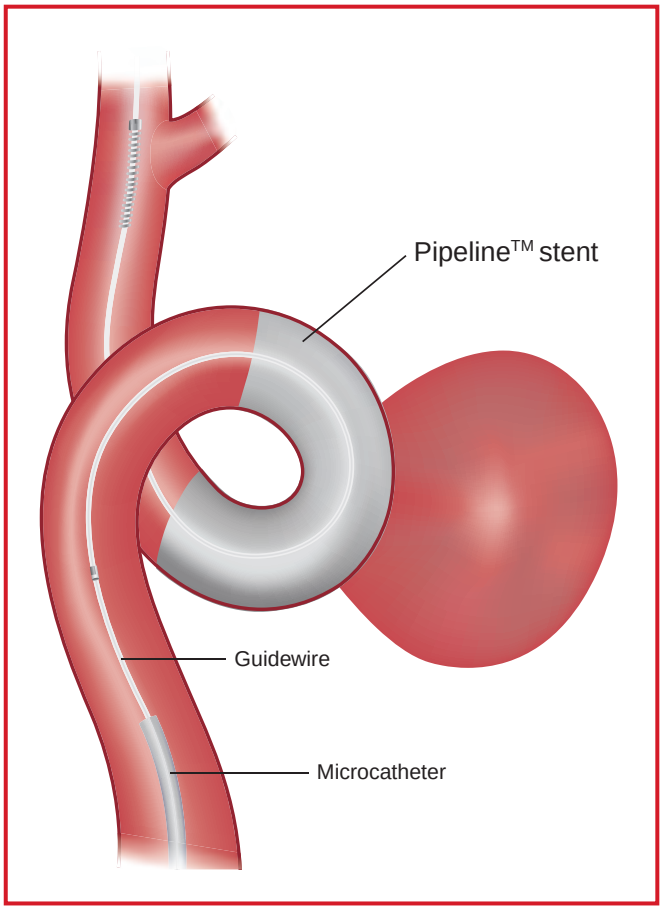


Figure 13.1-1. Example of a fine mesh, flow-diverting stent (Pipeline™) used to treat a wide-neck aneurysm.

tolerates test occlusion, a permanent occlusion is usually done using coils placed into the parent artery. More recently, flow diverter stents have been used to treat giant and wide-necked aneurysms (see Fig. 13.1-1). These stents are constructed using fine mesh self-expanding metal. They are placed in the parent artery to reduce blood flow into the aneurysm sac resulting in gradual thrombosis of the aneurysm while maintaining flow in the parent artery. This treatment is generally reserved for unruptured aneurysms as the patients require treatment with antiplatelet agents.

CEREBRAL REVASCULARIZATION

Acute stroke thrombolysis or thrombectomy is performed to recanalize larger occluded arteries in the cerebrovascular circulation, including the internal carotid, middle cerebral, vertebral, and basilar arteries. Intravenous tissue plasminogen activator (IV-tPA) is used up to 4.5 h following acute stroke onset. Intraarterial thrombolytics and thrombectomy devices are used when IV-tPA has failed to open the occluded artery or patients present beyond 4.5 h. Physiologic imaging with either CT or MR is used at many centers to select patients who will benefit from treatment in these more extended time windows. The FDA has recently approved a device for mechanical thrombectomy in the setting of stroke. These devices include a suction thrombectomy catheter, which can be introduced into the intracranial circulation, and retrievable stents, which are introduced into the thrombus and after entrapping the thrombus are pulled from the circulation. In addition, many endovascular therapists employ intraarterial thrombolytics either alone or combined with a mechanical thrombectomy device.

Angioplasty and stent placement for symptomatic atherosclerotic stenosis in the cerebrovascular circulation are becoming more widely performed in lieu of medical or direct surgical therapy. Stents with distal protection devices

have now been approved for the treatment of cervical carotid artery stenosis. Distal protection devices (e.g., balloon or basket devices) have been shown to reduce the thromboembolic complication rate and are now required for treatment in most cases. A recent large multicenter trial of both symptomatic and asymptomatic carotid stenosis patients found the composite risk of stroke, myocardial infarction, or death did not differ significantly between stented patients and those undergoing endarterectomy. Arterial stenosis located more distally and intracranial lesions either are treated with angioplasty alone or are stented following angioplasty. There are no efficacy data available for these more distal lesions, and a recent trial of stenting versus medical therapy for intracranial stenosis found that medical therapy had lower 12-mo rates of stroke and death.

Vasospasm often accompanies subarachnoid hemorrhage and results in ischemic complications, which are a common cause of morbidity and mortality following aneurysmal rupture. The endovascular therapist is often asked to treat this problem with either drugs or balloons. Direct administration of intraarterial vasodilators, such as verapamil, nimodipine, and nicardipine, has been used particularly for treatment of more distal spasm. More proximal spasm involving the arteries of the circle of Willis is often treated using high-compliance angioplasty balloons.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Embolization	Aneurysm Therapy	Cerebral Revascularization
Position	Supine	⇐	⇐
Incision	Femoral artery, catheterization (may utilize brachial or radial artery)	⇐	⇐
Unique considerations	BP control; AVM; anticoagulation; EP monitoring	BP control; ± EP monitoring; anticoagulation	⇐
Antibiotics	Usually none; occasionally used with closure device	⇐	⇐
Procedure time	2–5 h	2–4 h	⇐
Closing considerations	Femoral artery compression or closure device	⇐	⇐
EBL	Minimal	⇐	⇐
Postop care	Ward or ICU × 24–48 h	ICU	Ward or ICU
Mortality	1–2% (vascular lesions)	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Overall: ~5% Thromboembolic stroke Hemorrhage (AVM, AVF)	⇐ ⇐ SAH	⇐ ⇐ Vessel rupture/dissection
Pain score	1–2	1–2	1–2

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Neonatal–elderly
Male:Female	1:1
Etiology	Congenital; acquired (traumatic, infectious, degenerative, etc.)
Associated conditions	SAH ± vasospasm; ↑ ICP; HTN/CAD/PVD; blood dyscrasia

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for diagnostic neuroradiologic procedures frequently may require only local anesthesia and sedation. The newer nontoxic and low osmolality contrast agents have improved patient comfort and tolerance of these

procedures while minimizing adverse reactions. Patients presenting for therapeutic neuroradiological procedures may be restless and are likely to experience some discomfort and, therefore, may require GA to tolerate these often lengthy procedures. The advantages of GA, however, must be balanced against the potential need for intraop neurological monitoring (e.g., speech, vision, and mental status) that requires the patient to be awake and cooperative. In this set of circumstances, close consultation between the neuroradiologist and anesthesiologist is required in formulating the anesthesia plan. In many cases, time is of the essence, and even short delays may reduce favorable outcome.

Respiratory	Access to the airway may be limited; therefore, examination should focus on the need for elective ET intubation. Patients with chronic cough may require GA to ensure immobility. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Patients with recent intracranial hemorrhage may demonstrate ECG abnormalities (PVCs in 30–80%; ST-T wave changes in > 50%), which need to be differentiated from new ischemic heart disease (ECHO, cardiac enzymes). **Tests:** ECG; other tests as indicated from H&P
Neurological	Symptoms vary with the location, size, and type of lesion. Aneurysms seldom produce neurological symptoms unless they leak or rupture, whereas tumors are commonly associated with symptoms of ↑ ICP (HA, N/V, altered mental status, papilledema). Patients with recent cerebral hemorrhages are likely to be medicated with calcium channel blockers (e.g., nimodipine, nicardipine) to ↓ arterial vasospasm. Patients with ↑ ICP or cranial trauma usually will need GA with intubation and mechanical ventilation.
Premedication	Preop sedation may mask the Sx of ↑ ICP or intracranial hemorrhage. Patients at high risk for contrast-media reactions (e.g., patients with previous contrast reaction, allergy to iodine or seafood) should receive prophylactic treatment consisting of prednisone, 50 mg po q 6 h × 3, starting 18 h before the study, and diphenhydramine, 50 mg po/im, 1 h before the procedure.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: MAC (see p. B-3) may be adequate for patients undergoing diagnostic procedures and necessary for patients requiring neurological assessment during more invasive procedures; otherwise, use GETA or be prepared to rapidly convert to GETA during the procedure. Although several reports suggest that patients receiving GETA for neurointerventional procedures have worse outcomes compared to those receiving sedation, these observations are not based on randomized controlled studies and are inherently biased because the patients most likely to receive only sedation are also the most likely to be stable and uncomplicated at the time of the procedure.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2). Patients with ↑ ICP should be hyperventilated to an $ETCO_2$ of ~30 mm Hg. In patients with vascular lesions that may leak or rupture, BP responses to laryngoscopy and intubation should be blunted (e.g., remifentanil: 3–5 mcg/kg iv 1–2 min in advance).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Muscle relaxation is usually mandatory to control ventilation and minimize the chance of movement. Maintain normocapnia, although hyperventilation may be necessary to ↓ ICP and may also enhance the quality of the angiogram. Heparin (ACT goal: 250–350 sec) may be requested. Protamine should be immediately available.	
Emergence	Prompt awakening is important to permit neurologic evaluation. Ondansetron (4 mg iv) is useful to ↓ postop N/V. Extubate when airway reflexes have returned. Continuous control of BP may be necessary during emergence phase. Patients typically are transported to ICU immediately following the procedure.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1–2 NS @ 3–5 mL/kg/h	Avoid glucose-containing solutions unless the patient is hypoglycemic (< 70 mg/dL)

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). Arterial line Urinary catheter ± EPs	BP can be monitored from femoral line placed by radiologist. However, another arterial line often will be necessary for postop monitoring in the ICU. Place urinary catheter if procedure is lengthy (> 3 h). Keep isoflurane or sevoflurane < 0.5 MAC and N_2O < 50% to minimize interference with EP monitoring. Supplement with remifentanil infusion, if necessary. TIVA may be requested in the erroneous belief that motor or sensory EPs cannot be obtained while using inhalational agents.
	Glucose	Keep serum glucose 70–140 mg/dL. Use insulin infusion to control hyperglycemia.
Control of BP	SNP (0.2–2 mcg/kg/min) Maintain normovolemia. Esmolol (50–200 mcg/kg/min)	BP control may be necessary during intracranial catheter manipulation, embolization, and postembolization. Close communication with the radiologist is important. In patient with acute ischemic stroke or intracranial hemorrhage, keep SBP between 140 and 220 mm Hg (140 and 180 mm Hg after iv tPA). SNP/esmolol may be infused through a second peripheral iv.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	X-ray table may not be well padded → nerve damage.
Complications, contrast related	Common reactions: N/V Itching Urticaria Sensation of warmth Pain Anxiety Rash	These reactions occur in > 5% of patients and may require no treatment apart from reassurance or a mild anxiolytic. Mild allergic reactions may be treated with diphenhydramine 25–50 mg iv. Monitor patients for progression of Sx → need for more aggressive therapy.
	Neurotoxic Sx: Hemiplegia Blindness Aphasia ↓ consciousness	These reactions may be related to the hyperosmolarity of the agent. If persistent, procedure should be terminated. Rx may require steroids and vasopressors to improve perfusion. In the anesthetized patient, these Sx will be masked.
	Major allergic reactions: Bronchospasm ↓ BP Cardiac arrest Pulmonary edema Laryngeal edema Dysrhythmias	Epinephrine (0.25–0.5 mg iv) should be given immediately. **Rx of anaphylaxis** includes: eliminate antigens (e.g., contrast agent, latex); secure airway; administer 100% O_2, iv fluids, epinephrine, and diphenhydramine + ranitidine. Supplemental Rx may include steroids (e.g., hydrocortisone 5 mg/kg), atropine, $NaHCO_3$, vasopressin, and epinephrine infusion.
Complications, other	Hemorrhage	Reverse heparin (1 mg protamine/100 mg heparin). Intracranial bleeding may require immediate transport to OR for surgical repair.
	Vasospasm	Rx: vasodilators (e.g., NTG) or papaverine delivered by catheter, or balloon angioplasty.
	Occlusion of vessel	Deliberate hypertension may be beneficial. Rx: angioplasty. (Recanalization and stenting may be used for thrombotic occlusions.)

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Neurologic deficits	CT scan for evaluation, as prompt neurosurgical intervention may be required.
	Vasospasm	May require Ca^{++} channel blocker (e.g., nimodipine). Consult with neurosurgeon.

Suggested Readings

1. Blackburn SL, Ashley WW Jr, Rich KM, et al: Combined endovascular embolization and stereotactic radiosurgery in the treatment of large arteriovenous malformations. *J Neurosurg* 2011; 114:1758–67.
2. Brott TG, Hobson RW, Howard G, et al: Stenting versus endarterectomy for treatment of carotid-artery stenosis. *NEJM* 2010; 363:11–23.
3. Froehler MT, Fifi JT, Majid A, et al: Anesthesia for endovascular treatment of acute ischemic stroke. *Neurology* 2012; 79: 8167–73.
4. Gahremanpour A, Perin EC, Silva G: Carotid artery stenting versus endarterectomy: a systematic review. *Tex Heart Inst J* 2012; 39(4):474–87.
5. Gupta R, Vora NA, Horowitz MB, et al: Multimodal reperfusion therapy for acute ischemic stroke: factors predicting vessel recanalization. *Stroke* 2006; 37:986–90.
6. Hartmann A, Mast H, Mohr JP, et al: Determinants of staged endovascular and surgical treatment outcome of brain arteriovenous malformations. *Stroke* 2005; 36:2431–5.
7. Jayaraman MV, Marcellus ML, Hamilton S, et al: Neurologic complications of arteriovenous malformation embolization using liquid embolic agents. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2008; 29:242–6.
8. Lakhani S, Guha A, Nahser HC: Anaesthesia for endovascular management of cerebral aneurysms. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2006; 23:902–13.
9. Lee CZ, Young WL: Anesthesia for endovascular neurosurgery and interventional neuroradiology. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(2):127–47.
10. Leong S, Fanning NF: Persistent neurological deficit from iodinated contrast encephalopathy following intracranial aneurysm coiling. A case report and review of the literature. *Interv Neuroradiol* 2012; 18(1):33–41.
11. Marks MP, Wojack JC, Al-Ali F, et al: Angioplasty for symptomatic intracranial stenosis. *Stroke* 2006; 37:1016–20.
12. Molyneux AJ, Kerr RSC, Ya LM, et al: International subarachnoid aneurysm trial (ISAT) of neurosurgical clipping versus endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomised comparison of effects on survival, dependency, seizures, rebleeding, subgroups and aneurysm occlusion. *Lancet* 2005; 366:809–17.
13. Saatci I, Yanvuz K, Ozer C, et al: Treatment of intracranial aneurysms using the pipeline flow-diverter embolization device: a single-center experience with long-term follow-up results. *AJNR* 2012; 33:1436–46.
14. Scharf J, Dempfle CE: Anticoagulation in neurointerventions: basic pharmacology and pathophysiology, current status, practical advice. *Clin Neuroradiol* 2012; 22(1):3–13.
15. Smith WS: Safety of mechanical thrombectomy and intravenous tissue plasminogen activator in acute ischemic stroke: results of the multi Mechanical Embolus Removal in Cerebral Ischemia (MERCI) trial, part 1. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2006; 27:1177–82.
16. Smith WS, Sung G, Starkman S, et al: Safety and efficacy of mechanical embolectomy in acute ischemic stroke. Results of the MERCI Trial. *Stroke* 2005; 36:1432–40.
17. Taqi MA, Vora N, Callison RC, Lin R, Wolfe TJ: Past, present, and future of endovascular stroke therapies. *Neurology* 2012; 79(13 Suppl 1):S213–20.

DIRECT CURRENT (DC) CARDIOVERSION

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Direct current (DC) cardioversion** is a treatment for cardiac arrhythmias that uses a brief, dosed discharge of electricity across the heart. This biphasic waveform energy is more efficient, requiring 20–170 J, than monophasic waveform, which requires 50–360 J. Effective depolarization of a critical mass of the heart terminates the arrhythmia, allowing NSR to resume. The electrical shock is delivered across the chest wall, using two external paddles placed in one of the standard positions (i.e., the anterior-posterior [A-P], basilar-apical, or apical-posterior). The pulse is delivered synchronous to the QRS, thus avoiding the vulnerable period for inducing malignant tachyarrhythmias. Shock to treat ventricular fibrillation is applied emergently and asynchronously (thus, the term "defibrillation"). To avoid discomfort, cardioversion should always be performed with the patient under deep sedation or brief GA. It is unacceptable to deliver this therapy to an awake patient.

Usual preop diagnosis: Atrial fibrillation (AF); atrial flutter; other supraventricular tachyarrhythmias; ventricular tachyarrhythmias

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine with defibrillator pads positioned A-P, basilar-apical, or apical-posterior
Unique considerations	Adequate anticoagulation (INR = 2–3) in patients with AF
Antibiotics	None
Procedure time	≤ 30 min
Postop care	Monitoring of cardiac rhythm in treatment room
Mortality	0.1%
Morbidity	Skin burns: < 15% (1st degree); 2% (2nd degree); lesser incidence with biphasic waveform Embolic event: 2% (↑ risk with mitral valve disease) Acute pulmonary edema: 1% More serious arrhythmia: 1% Myocardial damage: Incidence unknown, but estimated to be very low—proportional to delivered energy.
Pain score	2–3

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	All ages
Male:Female	3:1
Incidence	100,000/yr in the United States
Etiology	Reentry substrates (e.g., atrial flutter and fibrillation, ventricular tachycardia) from hypertensive heart disease, remote MI, cardiomyopathy; idiopathic
Associated conditions	LV dysfunction; CAD; cardiomyopathy; HTN; valvular disease; COPD; obesity; CVA; acute MI; pulmonary edema

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In general, patients presenting for cardioversion fall into one of two categories: elective or emergent. The presence or absence of hemodynamic instability will define the category. In the emergency patient, full-stomach precautions may be necessary (see p. B-5). Elective cardioversions usually are carried out on patients who have failed drug therapy.

Respiratory	Preop evaluation of the airway should focus on the need for elective ET intubation (patients with GERD, difficult mask fit, or airway compromise).
Cardiovascular	Relative contraindications to elective cardioversion include digitalis toxicity (toxic = > 3 ng/mL), ↓ K^+, inadequate anticoagulation, presence of β-blockade, AV block. The presence of significant CHF, CAD, or valvular disease may predispose this patient population to ↓↓ BP in response to anesthetic agents. Consider use of etomidate (0.1–0.2 mg/kg). Patients at ↑ risk for embolization include those with Hx of embolization within 2 yr, mitral stenosis, intraarterial thrombus, CHF, or hyperthyroidism. In these patients, ensure adequate anticoagulation (PT 1.5–2 × baseline, INR 2.0–3.0). It has been suggested that NTG patches near the electrodes be removed prior to cardioversion to avoid risk of explosion. **Tests:** ECG; TEE (✓ for thrombus and size of atrium); digitalis level (toxic = > 3 ng/mL → refractory VF following cardioversion); electrolytes; INR.

Endocrine	Hyperthyroidism → AF
Gastrointestinal	Full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5) may be necessary in the emergency patient.
Neurological	✓ Hx for TIAs or CVAs → ↑ risk of embolic event. Pre- and postprocedure neurologic exams should be done.
Hematologic	✓ need for anticoagulation (see above).
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Usually not needed. For the emergency patient, take full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5).

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Brief GA with mask oxygenation and ventilation

Induction	Preoxygenate patient. For hemodynamically fragile patients, etomidate (0.1–0.2 mg/kg iv) is the agent of choice (**NB:** etomidate-induced clonus → ECG artifact). For the hemodynamically stable patient, use propofol (1.0–1.5 mg/kg iv slowly) until loss of lid reflex. Additional analgesia may be provided by remifentanil (1–2 mcg/kg iv), thereby reducing anesthetic requirements.	
Maintenance	Occasionally necessary to repeat cardioversion. Additional small doses of propofol, etomidate, or remifentanil may be required.	
Emergence	Patients should awaken rapidly with full recovery of airway reflexes. Outpatients are usually discharged to home within 1–2 h.	
Blood and fluid requirements	No blood loss IV: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ TKO	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1).	Avoid placement of ECG electrodes in precordial area.
Positioning	Hospital bed, supine	Procedure takes place at patient's bedside.
Complications	Loss of airway	Use airway manipulation ± artificial airways; be prepared to intubate.
	VF	Use ACLS protocols.
	↑↑ BP/myocardial ischemia	Cardioversion → catecholamine surge → acute MI in susceptible patient population.
	Severe bradycardia	Rx: Atropine (e.g., 0.4 mg iv)
	Thermal injury	Ensure good electrode/skin contact.
	↓ CO	2° anesthetic drugs or myocardial stunning from cardioversion. Rx: inotropic support (e.g., ephedrine)

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Recall	Especially in hemodynamically fragile patients. Discuss possibility with patient in advance.
	Systemic embolization	Neurological exam should be repeated postcardioversion.
	↓ BP/↓ CO/CHF	Atrial contraction may not be effective following cardioversion → ↓ CO/↓ BP.
	New dysrhythmia	
	Renal dysfunction	Incidence: 17%. ✓ renal function labs.
Pain management	Minimal	Myalgias not uncommon; consider ketorolac.
Tests	ECG	Verify NSR.

Suggested Readings

1. Dell'Orfano JT, Naccarelli GV: Update on external cardioversion and defibrillation. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2001; 16(1):54–7.
2. Hellman Y, Cohen MJ, Leibowitz D, et al: The incidence and prognosis of renal dysfunction following cardioversion of atrial fibrillation. *Cardiology* 2013; 124(3):184–9.
3. Hullander RM, Leivers D, Wingler K: A comparison of propofol and etomidate for cardioversion. *Anesth Analg* 1993; 77(4): 690–4.
4. Santini L, Forleo GB, Topa A, et al: Electrical cardioversion of atrial fibrillation: different methods for a safe and effective technique. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther* 2005; 3(4):601–10.

IMPLANTATION OF CARDIOVERTER-DEFIBRILLATOR (ICD) OR CARDIAC RESYNCHRONIZATION THERAPY DEFIBRILLATOR (CRT-D)

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: The implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD) is an effective device for the prevention of premature death from ventricular tachycardia (VT) or ventricular fibrillation (VF). The results of randomized trials involving survivors of cardiac arrest and those considered at risk for sudden death showed the superiority of ICD therapy over conventional medical therapy in lowering the incidence of sudden death and overall mortality. The MADIT II trial showed the device therapy to be advantageous over standard medical therapy in patients with low LVEF (< 30%). Over the past decade, significant advances have occurred in ICD technology. The devices have decreased dramatically in size (now < 30 cc) along with substantial increases in functionality. Newer devices can incorporate the full capabilities of a permanent pacemaker for bradycardia support and resynchronization therapy, as well as hemodynamic monitoring. Therapies for atrial tachyarrhythmias (atrial tachycardia and fibrillation) are also available in select devices. The more efficient biphasic waveform, which results in a much lower defibrillation threshold (DFT) and, hence, lowers required energy delivery and storage, is now standard for all ICDs. Implantation of these small ICDs results in mortality and morbidity rates very similar to those associated with standard pacemaker implantation.

The device system consists of a small pulse generator and transvenous leads that are designed to record ventricular depolarizations and deliver a shock via coils or patches. ICD terminates VT/VF by sensing these rhythms and responding with an appropriate countershock. The most common ICD implantation uses endocardial leads inserted percutaneously (transvenous approach) via pectoral (or, rarely, abdominal) subcutaneous/submuscular pulse generator placement. In the unusual circumstances of difficult endocardial access or high DFT (> 25 J), additional leads can be placed either in the coronary sinus or subcutaneously. Very rarely would the leads (in the form of patches) be applied epicardially via a thoracotomy approach.

In the **transvenous approach,** the insertion of leads and pulse generator requires minimal anesthesia; however, during testing of defibrillation efficacy, VF is induced once or twice and sometimes more frequently. Thus, in addition to continuous monitoring of VS and cardiac rhythm, the anesthesiologist should pay special attention to the patient's hemodynamic stability prior to VF induction and after the defibrillation. In the event of failed defibrillation by the programmed first shock, a somewhat prolonged VF may occur. In the case of repeated DFT testing, it is customary to give at least 5-min intervals between VF inductions to allow for sufficient hemodynamic recovery. In patients with significant LV dysfunction, ↓ BP is not uncommon, but caution should be taken with fluid administration. If recovery from ↓ BP is slow, complications such as pneumo/hemothorax or pericardial effusion/tamponade should be considered. In the absence of a PA catheter (which would interfere with ICD lead positioning), accurate assessment of hemodynamic status is limited. Thus, meticulous attention should be directed at arterial pressure, HR, and oxygenation status. Finally, it is not uncommon to encounter acute atrial fibrillation (AF) from induction and conversion of VF. Fortunately, a cardioversion can be applied easily, using the ICD itself or relying on the external rescue system (external cardioversion).

The **cardiac resynchronization therapy defibrillator (CRT-D)** was developed for heart failure (HF) patients with electrical and/or mechanical dyssynchrony, typically those with intraventricular conduction delay of LBBB type where the delay causes a mechanical dyssynchrony that increases systolic inefficiency. This form of therapy, in addition to preventing premature sudden death from VT or VF, has been shown to reverse ventricular remodeling and improve objective and subjective measure of HF. This form of therapy requires implantation of a left-ventricular lead into one of the tributaries of the coronary sinus system.

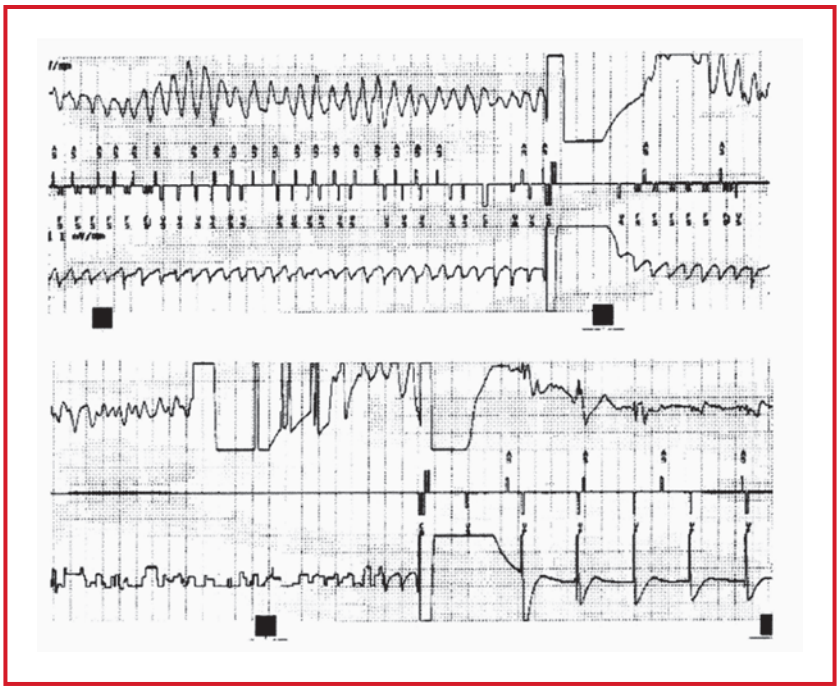


Figure 13.1-2. Induced VF (with underlying AF) is shown on top panel, whereby the first (24-J) shock failed to terminate VF but terminated AF (as indicated by the ICD annotation). The second shock (34-J) terminated VF, resulting in V-paced rhythm with underlying sinus and AV block. Total down-time during VF was 16 sec. Downtime is dependent on the detection time and charge time, which, in turn, depend on the energy programmed.

There are significant differences between ICD/CRT-D implantation and pacemaker implantation. Patients undergoing ICD/CRT-D implantation typically have moderate or severe HF, and their tolerance to sedation may be limited. ICD/CRT-D implantation usually requires induction of VT/VF to assess defibrillation threshold (DFT), which requires a transiently deeper level of sedation. An alternative to VT/VF induction is now available using the Upper Limit of Vulnerability (ULV) method, whereby estimated defibrillation energy is delivered on the vulnerable T-wave period and a failure to induce VF is accepted as the equivalent to the DFT. Nonetheless, VF induction should be anticipated and prepared for. Finally, in CRT-D implantation, the placement of left ventricular lead within a coronary vein tributary may require a significantly longer time than a simple pacemaker implantation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Documented, induced, or high-risk ventricular fibrillation; moderate-severe heart failure

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine with defibrillator pads positioned A-P or basilar-apical
Incision	Left pectoral or abdominal
Special instrumentation	ICD pulse generator, lead(s), and testing system (manufacturer-specific)
Unique considerations	Multiple inductions of VT/VF with associated ↓ CO, ↓ BP
Antibiotics	Standard iv antimicrobial for staphylococcus/streptococcus organism
Surgical time	1–2 h (more for ICD with cardiac resynchronization [CRT])
Closing considerations	Routine subcutaneous/submuscular pocket closure
EBL	5–20 mL
Postop care	Monitoring of arrhythmia, pocket bleeding/hematoma, pneumothorax
Mortality	0.1% (transvenous); ≤ 5% (thoracotomy)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	New-onset arrhythmias: ≤ 5% Pneumothorax: ≤ 5% (transvenous) Pericardial effusion/tamponade: ≤ 1% (transvenous)
Pain score	3 (6–9, thoracotomy)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	5–90 yr
Male:Female	4:1
Incidence	50,000/yr in the United States
Etiology	Reentry substrates from remote MI and cardiomyopathy; congenital anomalies (e.g., Long-QT and Brugada syndromes)
Associated conditions	LV dysfunction; CAD; cardiomyopathy; HTN; valvular disease; COPD; obesity; AF; CVA; anoxic encephalopathy

EXTRACTION OF PACEMAKER (PM) AND IMPLANTABLE CARDIOVERTER-DEFIBRILLATOR (ICD) LEADS

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Permanent pacemaker (PM) implantation procedures have been performed for more than 50 years. With increasing knowledge of its clinical benefits and with the increased number of older patients, the utilization of PM therapy will continue to increase. Similarly, since its inception in the mid 1980s, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD) therapy has demonstrated clinical utility and the rate of ICD implantations is also expected to grow.

Almost all PM and ICD systems are implanted utilizing endovascular lead(s). These leads have excellent longevity, typically beyond 25 years, and hence in the case of a PM implantation for sick sinus syndrome, the patient would not need any lead "replacement" procedure. However, in other scenarios involving younger patients (such as PM implantation in the pediatric population and ICD implantation in the young athlete), "replacement" may become necessary. Unfortunately, some leads may undergo premature degradation due to a manufacturing deficiency. In the majority of lead "replacement" (now more commonly called "revision") procedures the simple addition of a new lead would suffice, but in some cases where multiple leads are already present, a "debulking" procedure is necessary to avoid vascular congestion or unwanted lead-to-lead interaction. Hence, removal of some, or all, of those leads would be necessary.

In some cases (e.g., refractory sepsis or bacteremia), lead removal is considered mandatory. There are other rare scenarios where lead removal is at least strongly recommended. Examples include progressive tricuspid valve regurgitation that is suspected to be caused by the presence of multiple right ventricular leads and where the presence of multiple leads has caused a superior vena cava syndrome.

Leads that have been implanted for longer than one year are likely to have adhered to the adjacent vascular wall or endocardial surface. Binding sites are typically located at the subclavian vein, the junction of the innominate vein and superior vena cava, along the superior vena cava, the tricuspid valve, and the right ventricular tissue (Fig. 13.1-3). The area at the junction of innominate vein and the superior vena cava and along the superior vena cava are the areas of concern in terms of risks for vascular tear because the sheath may not conform to the lead angulation.

Extraction of chronically implanted leads typically requires extraction tools, including sheaths that are advanced over the leads to break the fibrotic tissue (Fig. 13.1-3). Advancement of sheaths can be done either with manual force or with the aid of thermal cutting (LASER or radiofrequency energy). In utilizing any of these methods, tissue injury is evitable and may result (0.5% increase) in transmural injury and rapid exsanguination. Thus, lead extraction

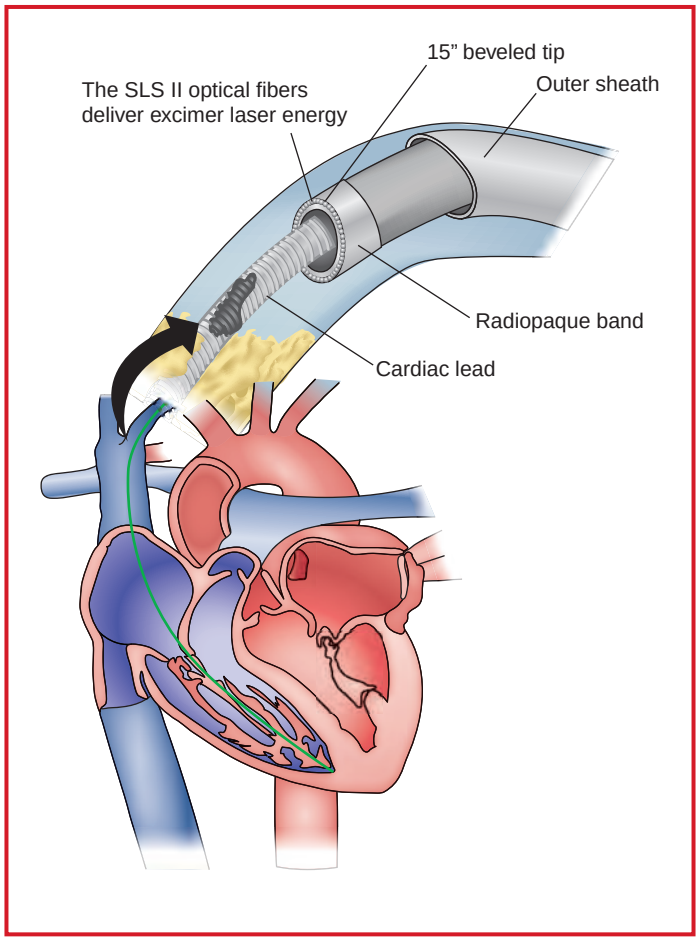


Figure 13.1-3. The laser sheath is placed over the lead to be extracted and advanced into the heart. The laser is then used to ablate scar tissue surrounding the lead to facilitate extraction.

procedures should be performed with complete preparation for immediate emergency sternotomy with a surgical team on active standby. For all of the above reasons, GETA is a necessity. In addition, the patient should be prepped and draped for possible sternotomy and surgical instruments and a cardiopulmonary bypass machine should be in the room with the perfusionist team nearby. Blood should also be available because significant loss of blood can occur. Vascular access should be large bore and a central line is advisable. Continuous blood pressure monitoring via an arterial line is mandatory and continuous TEE or standby TTE should be used.

The surgical approach is similar to a standard implantation or pulse generator change. The patient will have continuous ECG monitoring and external defibrillator/pacer pads applied. The pulse generator is removed from the pocket as usual and the leads are released from encapsulation. For the patient who is pacemaker-dependent, a temporary pacemaker is mandatory. The temporary pacemaker lead should be placed through a venous entry other than the one being used for the extraction. If temporary pacing support is expected to be necessary for several days or weeks (e.g., in the case of an infected system when reimplantation is delayed), it has become customary to utilize a permanent pacemaker lead with an active fixation, as this will provide more reliable backup pacing.

Suggested Readings

1. Kratz JM, Toole JM: Pacemaker and internal cardioverter defibrillator lead extraction: a safe and effective surgical approach. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2010; 90(5):1411–7.
2. Wilkoff BL, Byrd CL, Love CJ, et al: Pacemaker lead extraction with the laser sheath: results of the Pacing Lead Extraction with Excimer Sheath (PLEXES) Trial. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1999; 33:1671–6.
3. Wilkoff BL, Love CJ, Byrd CL, et al: Transvenous lead extraction: Heart Rhythm Society expert consensus on facilities, training, indications, and patient management. *Heart Rhythm* 2009; 6:1085–104.

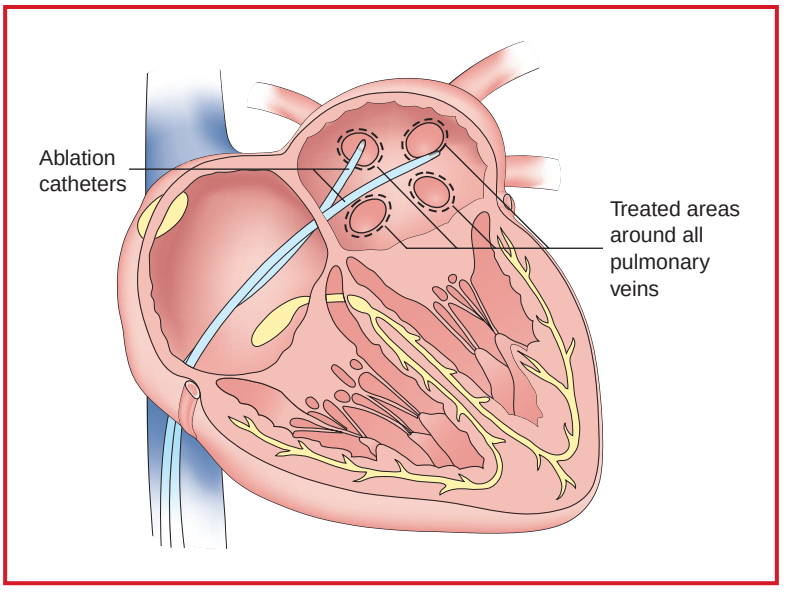


Figure 13.1-4. A transvenous transeptor catheter electrode is used to ablate target areas around the pulmonary vein entry sites to treat atrial fibrillation. Other common target sites include atrial walls as well as SVC and coronary sinus inlets.

CATHETER ABLATION OF ATRIAL FIBRILLATION

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Catheter ablation involves placement of catheters onto the desired cardiac chambers via venous and/or arterial access (most commonly the femoral blood vessels), and more recently via pericardial space. Through the electrodes at the tip of the catheters, intracardiac (or epicardial in the case of pericardial approach) signals can be recorded, arrhythmias can be monitored and/or induced using specific pacing protocols, and small areas of cardiac tissue can be ablated using various modalities. The most common modality is radiofrequency (RF) energy. Other emerging ablation techniques include cooling with cryoenergy and heating using ultrasonic, LASER, and microwave modalities. For atrial fibrillation (AF), the ablation is aimed at the triggers and substrates. The triggers can be found at various sites, most commonly at the entries of the pulmonary veins, superior vena cava, and coronary sinus into the left and right atria. The substrates for atrial fibrillation are believed to be in various areas on the left atrial wall, usually the posterior wall.

Unlike catheter ablation procedures for other arrhythmias with a more focused area of interest, AF ablation requires energy delivery at a significantly greater number of sites. In most cases, the mapping and ablation are guided by a three-dimensional tracking system. The procedure also requires access to the left atrium, typically via a transseptal catheterization, which is usually guided by intracardiac echocardiogram. In the typical scenarios, two transseptal sheaths are placed in the left atrium to facilitate recording, pacing, and application of ablation. Typically pulmonary vein isolation (PVI) is the basic approach. Left appendage isolation is also being performed in some centers. If elimination of left atrial flutter substrate is a target, a significant amount of additional ablations are necessary. Typically a "roof" line is created as well as a line connecting the left lower pulmonary vein to the mitral valve annulus.

The procedure typically requires several (2–8) hours to complete. The patient is continuously anticoagulated with iv heparin. Many centers are now performing the procedure with the patient already fully anticoagulated prior to the start of the procedure. One or more cardioversions may also be necessary, especially in patients with persistent AF. Furthermore, many centers are now using high-dose isoproterenol and adenosine after the ablation to assess likelihood of recurrence.

GETA has been the standard modality for providing comfort and safety for patients. In addition to the length of the procedure, there is a higher risk for cardiac and vascular perforation compared to a simple ablation procedure. The significant volume of ablation is associated with an increased chance of left atrial perforation. A misdirected transseptal catheterization in itself can cause perforation of the aorta, posterior wall of the left atrium, and other structures. An emergency thoracotomy may be necessary. In addition to safety, GETA provides a stationary patient,

which is critical in the acquisition and maintenance of three-dimensional map accuracy. Transesophageal temperature monitoring has become a standard of care and would be poorly tolerated in unanesthetitized patients.

When feasible, AF ablation procedures should be performed in a hybrid procedure room such that, if needed, emergency thoracotomy can be performed with minimal delay. Under expert operators, the need for emergency thoracotomy is low (under 1–2%) and hence surgical "standby" is not usually necessary, but this precautionary step is advisable for centers with low patient volumes.

Suggested Readings

1. Calkins H, Kuck KH, Cappato T, et al: 2012 HRS/EHRA/ECAS expert consensus statement on catheter and surgical ablation of atrial fibrillation: recommendations for patient selections, procedural techniques, patient management and follow-up, definition, endpoints and research trial design. *Heart Rhythm* 2012; 9:632–96.
2. Ouyang F, Tiltz R, Chun J, et al: Long-term results of catheter ablation in paroxysmal atrial fibrillation. Lessons from a 5-year follow-up. *Circulation* 2010; 122:2368–77.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR ICD, CRT-D, AND PACEMAKER PLACEMENT; LEAD EXTRACTION; CATHETER ABLATION

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for **ICD/CRT-D placement** may be divided into three populations, based on symptomatology, associated pathology, and probable outcome: (a) **Supraventricular dysrhythmias** (e.g., Wolff-Parkinson-White [WPW] syndrome): usually young and otherwise healthy patients. May be associated with Ebstein anomaly (tricuspid valve defect → RV failure), mitral valve disease, or CAD. Low periop mortality (1%). (b) **Ventricular dysrhythmias:** usually older patients with significant ventricular dysfunction (EF = 10–35%) and other pathologies, such as CAD or cardiac failure. These patients have either survived an episode of VT/VF or are otherwise at risk for sudden death. (c) **Congestive heart failure (CHF)** without significant dysrhythmias, usually 2° dilated cardiomyopathy. These patients have very low EFs (10–25%), left bundle branch block, and Hx of failed conventional means of CHF treatment. The CRT-D device is implanted in these patients to provide paced "resynchronization" of the contractions of the LV and RV. This requires a third pacer lead placed into the coronary sinus to pace the LV independent of the RV (see Fig. 3.1-5B). In this case, the device is not placed primarily for its defibrillator function, but for its ability to pace both ventricles synchronously (biventricular pacing). Patients presenting for **permanent pacemaker insertion** may have a variety of dysrhythmias, including sick sinus syndrome (SSS), heart blocks (2nd- and 3rd-degree), and tachycardias refractory to medication. CRT patients may be quite frail with significant comorbidities.

Patients presenting for **lead extraction** typically have infected leads (often methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus*) or, less commonly, malfunctioning leads.

Patients presenting for **catheter ablation** usually have paroxysmal or chronic refractory atrial fibrillation and may be at significant risk for thromboembolic events including stroke. They may be receiving a variety of medication, including digitalis, amiodarone, aspirin, clopidogrel, warfarin, direct thrombin inhibitors (e.g., dabigatran), or direct Factor Xa inhibitors (e.g., rivaroxaban, apixaban). The newer anticoagulants lack reversal agents and may increase the risk of refractory bleeding.

Respiratory	May have associated pulmonary disease 2° smoking. **Tests:** CXR; consider PFT, as indicated from H&P.
Cardiovascular	**ICD:** ICD patients are left on full medication because it usually is impossible to wean them from antidysrhythmic medications before surgery. In most studies, patients have a mean LV EF of 35% and a New York Heart Association functional class of II or III. **Supraventricular dysrhythmias:** Look for precipitating factors in the dysrhythmia and any methods that have been used to terminate the dysrhythmia. Usually, drug therapy is terminated before surgery to make a dysrhythmia inducible. Note type of drugs used to terminate a dysrhythmia. **Ventricular dysrhythmias:** Ask about any methods that have been used to terminate dysrhythmia. Look for associated conditions, including CAD, CHF, cardiomyopathy, LV aneurysm, HTN, mitral insufficiency, diabetes. Generally, these patients have poor LV function with ↑ sensitivity to myocardial depressants. It is important to note that they may be on combinations of antidysrhythmics. Many of these drugs have significant negative inotropic effects. Of special note is amiodarone, which has been associated with intractable bradydysrhythmias, refractory vasodilation, and difficulty in weaning from CPB.

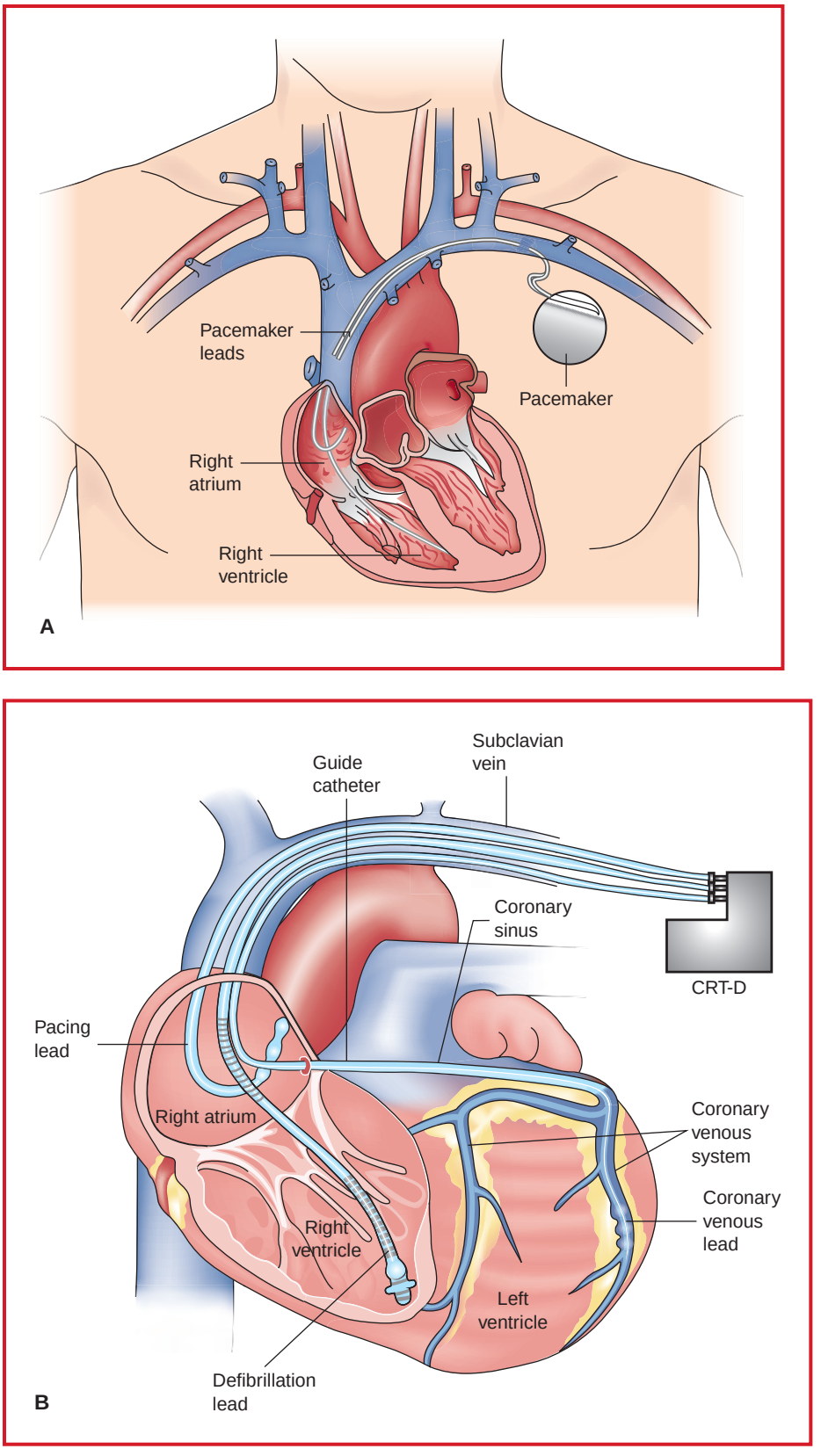


Figure 13.1-5. Placement of cardiac leads.

Cardiovascular (cont'd)	**Pacemaker:** The anesthesiologist should be aware that there is an NASPE code (North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology) that describes pacemaker function with a three- to five-letter code. The first letter refers to the heart chamber that is paced and the second to the chamber that is sensed. These first two letters can be A (atrial), V (ventricular), or D (dual). The third letter indicates whether there is a triggering (T) or inhibiting (I) function, or both (D). For example, a VVI notation indicates that the ventricle is paced and sensed and there is inhibition by native beats. A fourth and fifth letter may be used to describe programmability and dysrhythmia control, respectively. **Catheter ablation:** Most commonly, presenting patients have medically refractory or paroxysmal atrial fibrillation and are at increased risk for thromboembolic events. Preop antidysrhythmic and anticoagulant medications should be managed in consultation with the prescribing physician and the interventional cardiologist. **Infected leads:** Patients with infected leads may have endocarditis, tricuspid valve dysfunction, and sepsis. **Tests:** ECG: ✓ dysrhythmia, ischemia, electrophysiologic report. ECHO: ✓ ventricular function, wall motion abnormalities, valvular problems. Cardiac angiography: ✓ ventricular function, CAD, valvular disease, LV aneurysm.
Renal	Patients with poor ventricular function may have associated renal compromise. Electrolyte abnormalities (K^+, Mg^{++}) may be associated with ↑ cardiac irritability and should be corrected preop. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes
Hematologic	Hb/Hct; coag tests (PT, PTT, Plt)
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	For adults: midazolam 0.5–2.0 mg iv, with careful observation and supplemental O_2.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Local anesthesia with sedation, GA with LMA, or GETA, as indicated. Catheter ablation and placement of most ICDs, CRT-Ds and pacemakers are done in the cardiac catheterization suite. ICDs are very small and are implanted in the same position as a pacemaker. If patients are orthopneic due to their CHF, or if the procedure is projected to be long, GA is often preferable. Also, elderly patients may become disoriented with sedation and, thus, may require GA. Lead extraction is often done under GETA.

Induction	Exact type of induction depends on the patient's medical condition. Sedation can be provided with small doses of midazolam (1–2 mg) ± fentanyl (25–50 mcg) titrated to effect. An alternative technique is to use a propofol infusion (e.g., 25–75 mcg/kg/min). Because local anesthesia is provided by the surgeon, the procedure usually is not painful and does not require postop pain control. It is important to avoid oversedating these patients because they will tend to become disoriented and uncooperative. Even if local anesthesia with sedation is provided for the placement of leads and the device, a brief period of GA is always required for device testing. This can be provided easily with mask ventilation and induction with propofol (e.g., 1 mg/kg iv) or etomidate (e.g., 0.1 mg/kg iv), similar to anesthesia for cardioversion procedures. For those patients requiring GA for the entire procedure, induction with STP (2–4 mg/kg), propofol (1–2 mg/kg), or etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) is often used. Muscle relaxants are not required unless intubation is planned. Narcotics usually are not required because local anesthesia is used.
Maintenance	As previously discussed, verification of correct lead placement involves the induction of ventricular fibrillation or tachycardia and the testing of the device's capability to restore NSR. External defibrillation should be available at all times, as should antidysrhythmics (e.g., lidocaine and amiodarone). While the device is tested, the patient should be breathing 100% O_2. Multiple testing cycles can result in depressed LV function, and inotropes may be needed.

Emergence	These patients are extubated (if GETA or LMA used). Recovery is in the PACU. If, however, multiple test shocks are needed or the heart displays evidence of injury (need for inotropes, ST-segment abnormalities), then extubation may need to be deferred to ICU.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 16–18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 6–8 mL/kg/h	Care should be taken to minimize iv fluids in CHF patients.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± Arterial line ± CVP/PA	A CVP or PA catheter may be placed according to LV function. ICD patients generally require only an arterial line.
	External defibrillation	Because antidysrhythmics may affect the testing procedure, they should be avoided when possible. Defibrillation or cardioversion is treatment of choice.
	Temperature	Normothermia should be maintained.
Positioning	Supine ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Pneumohemothorax Pericardial effusion/tamponade HTN/CHF	
	Coronary sinus rupture	Rarely, cardiac rupture may occur during lead extraction. Coronary sinus rupture has been reported during biventricular lead placement.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Recurrent dysrhythmias Hemorrhage Ischemia	Pacemaker lead thrombosis → PE has been reported.
Pain management	Usually managed with oral analgesics.	
Tests	CXR ECG Electrophysiologic testing Electrolytes	✓ line/lead placement, r/o pneumohemothorax. ✓ for ischemia, dysrhythmias.

Suggested Readings

1. Bardy GH, Lee KL, Mark DB, et al: Amiodarone or an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator for congestive heart failure. *NEJM* 2005; 352(3):225–37.
2. Cox JL: Anatomic electrophysiologic basis for the surgical treatment of refractory ischemic ventricular tachycardia. *Ann Surg* 1983; 198(2):119–29.
3. Kedia R, Saeed M: Implantable cardioverter-defibrillators: indications and unresolved issues. *Tex Heart Inst J* 2012; 39(3):335–41.
4. Lee G, Sanders P, Kalman JM: Catheter ablation of atrial arrhythmias: state of the art. *Lancet* 2012; 380(9852):1509–19.
5. Park KW: Nonsurgical therapy for heart failure. *Int Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 50(3):1–21.
6. Rozner MA: The patient with cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator and management during anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20(3):261–8.
7. Stahlberg M, Lung LH, Zabarovskaja S, Gadler F, Braunschweig F, Linde C: Cardiac resynchronization therapy: a breakthrough in heart failure management. *J Intern Md* 2012; 272(4):330–43.
8. Swerdlow C, Shivkumar K, Zhang J: Determination of the upper limit of vulnerability using implantable cardioverter-defibrillator electrograms. *Circulation* 2003; 107:3028–33.
9. Swygman C, Wang PJ, et al: Advances in implantable cardioverter defibrillators. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2002; 17(1):24–8.
10. Tracy CM, Epstein AE, Darbar D, et al: 2012 ACCF/AHA/HRS focused update of the 2008 guidelines for device-based therapy of cardiac rhythm abnormalities. *Circulation* 2012; 126:1784–800.
11. Upadhyay GA, Mela T, Singh JP: The burden of inappropriate shocks in young people and how to avoid them. *Heart* 2012; 98(19):1457–66.

TRANSJUGULAR INTRAHEPATIC PORTOSYSTEMIC SHUNT (TIPS)

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Hepatic cirrhosis is a progressive disease that eventually results in portal HTN and the development of varices at a variety of sites. Bleeding from esophageal varices is a serious complication of portal HTN, occurring in 25% of patients within 1 year of diagnosis (~50% mortality). Prior to 1989, surgically placed shunts were used to direct high-pressure portal blood into the systemic venous circulation in patients with recurrent bleeding after endoscopic sclerotherapy or banding. The **transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS)** procedure has almost completely replaced surgical shunts.

TIPS is, as the name suggests, a percutaneous shunt between the portal and systemic circulations. The shunt is created between the hepatic vein and portal vein within the liver parenchyma, maintained by placement of a stent graft. This creates a low-resistance conduit to decompress the portal circulation, thereby decreasing variceal blood

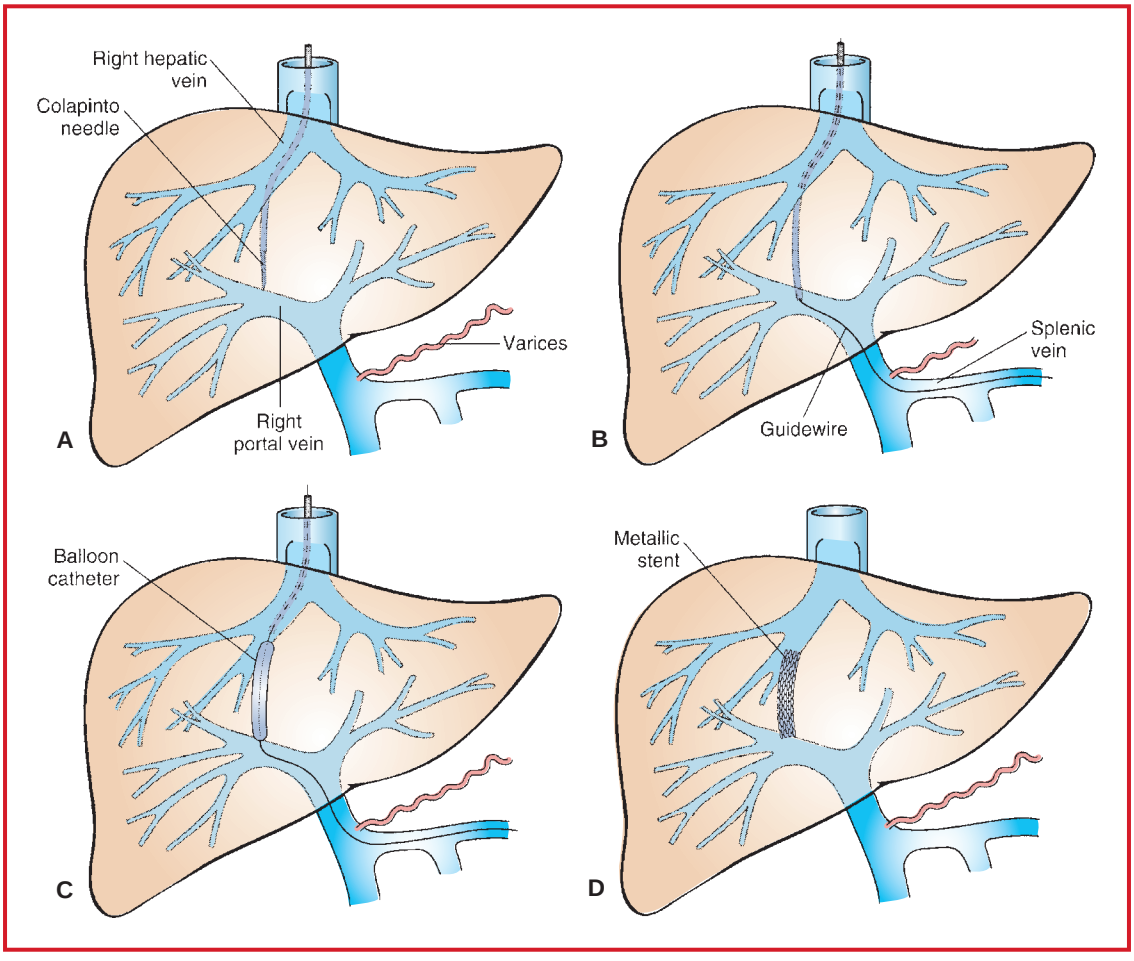


Figure 13.1-6. TIPS placement: **A:** Sheathed Colapinto needle is advanced out of hepatic vein into portal vein branch. Varices are present. **B:** Guidewire is advanced through the needle sheath into splenic vein. **C:** Parenchymal liver tract is dilated using a balloon angioplasty catheter. **D:** The metallic stent is deployed within the shunt tract. (Redrawn with permission from Haskal ZJ, Ring F: *Current Techniques in Interventional Radiology.* Current Science, Philadelphia: 1994.)

flow and ascites formation. Although it can be performed with conscious sedation, balloon dilation of the tract is extremely painful, typically requiring GA.

TIPS was developed initially by Rosch in dog studies in 1969. The first percutaneous portosystemic shunts were performed in humans using an angioplasty balloon in 1982, but the tract closed due to elastic recoil of the cirrhotic liver tissue. Palmaz and Richter performed the first successful TIPS in humans in 1989, using metallic stents to maintain the patency of the tract. Since then, TIPS has become the procedure of choice for patients who fail sclerotherapy and banding. In addition, it addresses another common problem associated with cirrhosis: refractory ascites.

Through the right IJ, a 10 Fr sheath is placed in the upper IVC. A catheter/guidewire combination is used to select the right hepatic vein. A wedged hepatic venogram using CO_2 is performed. Injection of iodinated contrast can result in rupture of the liver capsule and exsanguination. The wedged venogram refluxes contrast through the sinusoids and into the portal vein, thereby providing a map. The catheter is exchanged over a stiff wire for a metallic introducer/needle. A variety of needle kits are available including the Colapinto (Cook Inc., Bloomington, IN), Rosch-Uchida (Cook Inc., Bloomington, IN), and Hawkins set designed for CO_2 injections (Angiodynamics, Queensbury, NY). All include a long introducer sheath and coaxially inserted curved-tip needle or metal cannula, with directional indicator, to help steer the needle toward the right portal vein.

Portal venous pressures are measured, and the pressure gradient between the portal vein and right atrium is determined. Following a portal venogram, the catheter is exchanged for an angioplasty balloon and the tract dilated (Fig. 13.1-6C). The use of covered stents for TIPS creation led to significantly improved patency rates, and for this reason, the Viatorr (Gore, Flagstaff, AZ) self-expanding covered stent has largely replaced the bare metal stents. The Viatorr is positioned across the tract, and the uncovered portion is first deployed within the portal venous system (Fig. 13.1-6D). The covered portion is then pulled into the tract and deployed in a separate step. The stent may be dilated to a diameter of 8–10 mm using an angioplasty balloon, depending on the stent diameter and desired portosystemic gradient. If necessary, a second stent is deployed to cover any remaining unstented portions of the hepatic tract. Following TIPS creating, portal venogram and pressure gradients are remeasured. Ideally, the pressure gradient following shunting should be between 6 and 12 mm Hg. If the gradient is too high, there is a risk of rebleeding; if too low, there is overshunting of blood, thus bypassing the entire portal venous system and increasing the risk of encephalopathy and liver failure. After successful creation of the shunt, all devices, including the right jugular sheath, are removed, and hemostasis is achieved. Patients are closely monitored in an ICU or step-down unit for 24–48 h.

DIPS (Direct IVC-to-portal shunt) is a newer alternative to TIPS. Simultaneous venous access is required from both the internal jugular vein and common femoral vein. For DIPS, an intravascular ultrasound probe is used to guide needle puncture from the IVC, through the caudate lobe, and into the main portal vein. Because the tract traverses extrahepatic regions, placement of a covered stent is mandatory. A theoretically fewer number of passes is needed to access the portal vein because the puncture is ultrasound guided; however, there is likely a greater risk of intraperitoneal hemorrhage with each puncture attempt.

If TIPS/DIPS is performed for the treatment of bleeding varices, it may be necessary to embolize and sclerose the varices if they persistently fill following shunt creation. This may be accomplished using sclerosing agents (e.g., ethanolamine) with an occlusion balloon and embolic agents (e.g., metallic coils, Gelfoam), depending on operator preference.

Usual preop diagnosis: Bleeding esophageal varices (as a result of portal HTN); ascites; Budd-Chiari and hepatorenal syndromes

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Right IJ access
Special instrumentation	Rosch-Uchida, Colapinto, or Hawkins needle set; angioplasty balloons; endovascular stent grafts, marker pigtail, CO_2 injection apparatus, intravascular ultrasound (IVUS) for DIPS, embolic agents (e.g., coils, Gelfoam, ethanolamine) for variceal embolization/sclerosis if necessary.
Unique considerations	May need FFP
Antibiotics	Cefazolin 1 g iv
Procedure time	2–6 h
EBL	0–3000 mL

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Postop care	ICU or step-down unit; careful fluid management
Mortality	Emergency: 50–100% Postprocedure: See Tables 13.1-2, 13.1-3, 13.1-4, 13.1-5
Morbidity	Encephalopathy: 18–30% Late liver failure: 10–25% Shunt occlusion: 10%/yr Liver capsule puncture → intraperitoneal hemorrhage (continue procedure to decompress portal venous system → ↓ bleeding). Hepatic artery puncture: may require embolization. Allergic reactions (see Contrast-related complications, p. 1494). MI (related to ↑ CVP) Renal failure (usually transient)
Pain score	7–8 (first few hours only)

Table 13.1-2. MELD Score Calculation

The MELD (Model for End-stage Liver Disease) score is calculated using three objective indicators—serum bilirubin, serum creatinine level (Cr), and international normalized ratio (INR)—according to the United Network for Organ Sharing modification of the original formula:

$$\text{MELD} = 9.6 \times \log e\,(\text{Cr}) + 3.8 \times \log e\,(\text{Bilirubin}) + 11.2 \times \log e\,(\text{INR}) + 6.4$$

The MELD Score can easily be calculated by accessing the following website:
http://www.mayoclinic.org/meld/mayomodel7.html

Table 13.1-3. Overall Mortality Based on MELD Score

		Mortality Rate (%)		
MELD Score	**No. of Patients**	**30 d**	**3 mo**	**6 mo**
≤10%	28	0 (0, 0)	0 (0, 0)	0 (0, 0)
11–17	83	7.3 (1.7, 12.9)	16.0 (8.0, 24.0)	24.9 (15.1, 34.7)
18–24	40	17.9 (5.9, 29.9)	34.8 (19.4, 50.2)	38.6 (22.4, 54.9)
≥25	15	42.6 (16.7, 68.4)	65.5 (39.9, 91.2)	74.2 (50.0, 98.3)

Patients undergoing elective TIPS creation with a MELD score of 18 or more had a significantly lower 3-mo survival rate than those with a MELD score of 17 or less. Numbers in parentheses are 95% confidence intervals. Mortality tables reprinted with permission from Ferral H, Gamboa P, Postoak DW, et al: Survival after elective transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt creation: prediction with Model for End-Stage Liver Disease Score. *Radiology* 2004; 231(1):231–6.

Table 13.1-4. Mortality Based on MELD Score and Cause of Cirrhosis

			Mortality Rate (%)		
MELD Score	**Group***	**No. of Patients**	**30 d**	**3 mo**	**6 mo**
≤17	A	39	5.1 (0, 12.1)	7.7 (0, 16.1)	13.9 (2.5, 25.2
	B	72	5.6 (0.3, 11.0)	14.4 (6.1, 22.7)	21.4 (11.3, 31.4)
≥18	A	14	42.9 (16.9, 68.8)	57.1 (31.2, 83.1)	57.1 (31.2, 83.1)
	B	41	17.9 (5.9, 29.9)	37.9 (22.0, 53.7)	45.9 (28.1, 63.2)

A = Alcohol-induced disease, B = Non–alcohol-induced disease
Patients undergoing elective TIPS creation with a MELD score of 18 or more had a significantly lower 3-mo survival rate than those with a MELD score of 17 or less. Numbers in parentheses are 95% confidence intervals. Mortality tables reprinted with permission from Ferral H, Gamboa P, Postoak DW, et al: Survival after elective transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt creation: prediction with Model for End-Stage Liver Disease Score. *Radiology* 2004; 231(1):231–6.

Table 13.1-5. Mortality Based on MELD Score and Ascites

MELD Score	Ascites	No. of Patients	Mortality (%) 30 d	3 Mo	6 Mo
≤17	No	48	4.2 (0, 9.8)	4.2 (0, 9.8)	4.2 (0, 9.8)
	Yes	63	6.4 (0.3, 12.5)	18.4 (8.6, 28.3)	31.3 (18.6, 43.9)
≥18	No	18	22.2 (3.0, 41.4)	39.8 (16.8, 62.8)	46.5 (22.6, 70.4)
	Yes	37	25.4 (11.0, 39.8)	44.4 (27.4, 61.4)	48.7 (31.1, 66.3)

Patients undergoing elective TIPS creation with a MELD score of 18 or more had a significantly lower 3-mo survival rate than those with a MELD score of 17 or less. Numbers in parentheses are 95% confidence intervals. Mortality tables reprinted with permission from Ferral H, Gamboa P, Postoak DW, et al: Survival after elective transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt creation: prediction with Model for End-Stage Liver Disease Score. *Radiology* 2004; 231(1):231–6.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for TIPS procedures have portal HTN usually 2° end-stage liver disease (ESLD), which will affect the function of a variety of organ systems, as described below.

Respiratory	Abdominal distension → atelectasis → ↑ pulmonary shunting → hypoxemia (hepatopulmonary syndrome in ESLD). Encephalopathy → hyperventilation → ↓ $PaCO_2$ (respiratory alkalosis with chronic acidosis as compensation). Pulmonary effusion may be present in 5–10% of patients. **Tests:** ✓ CXR (for Sx of atelectasis); ABG and PFT, if indicated.
Cardiovascular	Cardiomyopathy (ETOH) and CAD (tobacco) occur at higher incidence in this patient population. Diuretic therapy → hypovolemia + ↓ K^+ (furosemide) or ↑ K^+ (spironolactone). Hyperdynamic circulation 2° to ↓ peripheral resistance + ↓ cardiac reserve are common findings and correlate with poor postop outcome. **Tests:** ECG; electrolytes; cardiac ECHO, if indicated from H&P
Neurological	Symptoms of hepatic encephalopathy range from mild confusion to coma. These patients may be very sensitive to narcotics and sedatives. A characteristic finding in liver failure is asterixis (liver flap). Hyponatremia and hypoglycemia may mimic hepatic encephalopathy. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Hepatic	Drug metabolism may be markedly reduced; anticipate prolonged effect with sedative and narcotic drugs. Drugs with particularly prolonged action include midazolam, meperidine, ranitidine, and lidocaine. Apparent resistance to pancuronium and all muscle relaxants is most likely due to an increased volume of distribution. Succinylcholine effects may be prolonged in patients with severe ESLD (2° ↓ plasma cholinesterase). **Tests:** Bilirubin; PT; albumin; LFTs
Gastrointestinal	Ascites → ↑ intraabdominal pressure → ↑ risk of aspiration. Full-stomach precautions and rapid-sequence induction are recommended (see p. B-5). Portal HTN → variceal bleeding. If possible, avoid esophageal instrumentation (e.g., TEE, esophageal stethoscope). Gastritis and peptic ulceration may be present.
Renal	Oliguric renal failure may complicate ESLD (hepatorenal syndrome). This may be reversible if liver failure improves. Differential Dx includes prerenal azotemia and acute tubular necrosis. ***NB:** Bilirubin metabolites interfere with creatinine measurement and may mask ↑ creatinine levels. **Tests:** BUN; Cr; electrolytes
Endocrine	Hypoglycemia may be present in cases of severe cirrhosis. ESLD patients may have ↓ response to catecholamines. **Tests:** Glucose

Hematologic	Patients may be anemic 2° GI bleeding. The majority of patients will exhibit coagulopathy 2° ↓ hepatic synthetic function (all factors except VIII and fibrinogen) and ↓ Plt. Patients may require vitamin K (if coagulopathy is present and time permits), FFP (if PT > 2 sec above baseline), or Plt transfusion (if Plt < 100 K) before procedure; these products should be readily available. **Tests:** CBC; Plt; PT; others as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients with significant ascites will require full-stomach precautions (see p. B-5). ***NB:** Benzodiazepines should be used with caution in liver failure patients.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: In some patients (and at some centers), sedation with local anesthesia may be satisfactory; however, balloon dilation of the intrahepatic tract can be exceedingly painful. Remember, these patients may be very sensitive to narcotics → respiratory arrest. GETA is often necessary to provide adequate analgesia and airway protection.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) is necessary in patients with encephalopathy, abdominal distention, and recent variceal bleeds (blood in the stomach).	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). If muscle relaxation is to be maintained, low-dose vecuronium (1–1.5 mcg/kg/min), cisatracurium (3 mcg/kg/min infusion), or rocuronium (5–15 mcg/kg/min) may be used to maintain muscle relaxation.	
Emergence	Extubate when the patient is awake and protective laryngeal reflexes are present. Patient should be transferred to PACU accompanied by anesthesiologist.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Potential for large blood loss IV: 14–16 ga × 1–2 FFP available Plt available 2–4 U PRBC available NS/LR (as appropriate)	Glucose-containing solutions may be required for patients with hepatic failure ± CHF. ✓ blood glucose levels frequently. Vasopressor response may be impaired.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	Ventricular arrhythmias can be provoked by hepatic vein catheterization.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Radiology tables usually are not well padded → nerve damage.
Complications	Portal vein rupture Liver capsule perforation Complete heart block CHF	Intraabdominal hemorrhage may be massive and require emergency surgery. Patients with preexisting LBBB may require a pacemaker pre-TIPS (2° risk of RBBB during procedure). Shunt → ↑↑ venous return → CHF

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Portal vein thrombus ↑ encephalopathy Sepsis Bleeding Fluid/electrolyte disturbance	May mimic symptoms of PE or MI. 2° ↓ hepatic portal blood flow May require hemodynamic support (e.g., dopamine) Stent insertion → ↑ venous return → ↑ diuresis → electrolyte/fluid imbalance.
Pain Management	IV opiates	

Suggested Readings

1. Cejna M, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Thurnher S, et al: Creation of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts with stent-grafts: initial experiences with a polytetrafluoroethylene-covered Nitinol endoprosthesis. *Radiology* 2001; 221:437–46.
2. Charon JM, Alaeddin FH, Pimpalwar SA, et al: Results of a retrospective multicenter trial of the Viatorr expanded polytetrafluoroethylene-covered stent-graft for transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt creation. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2004; 15:1219–30.
3. Fidelman N, Kwan SW, LaBerge JM, Gordon RL, Ring EJ, Kerlan RK Jr: The transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt: an update. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2012; 199(4):746–55.
4. Gaba RC, Khiatani VL, Knuttinen MG, et al: Comprehensive review of TIPS technical complications and how to avoid them. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2011; 196(3):675–85.
5. Hausegger KA, Karnel F, Georgieva B, et al: Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt creation with the Viatorr expanded polytetrafluoroethylene-covered stent graft. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2004; 15:239–48.
6. Huonker M, Schumacher YO, Ochs A, et al: Cardiac function and haemodynamics in alcoholic cirrhosis and effects of the transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt. *Gut* 1999; 44(5):743–8.
7. Nicoll A, Fitt G, Angus P, et al: Budd-Chiari syndrome: intractable ascites managed by a trans-hepatic portocaval shunt. *Australas Radiol* 1997; 41(2):169–72.
8. Petersen B: Intravascular ultrasound-guided direct intrahepatic portocaval shunt: description of technique and technical refinements. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2003; 14:21–32.
9. Riggio O, Nardelli S, Moscucci F, Pasquale C, Ridola L, Merli M: Hepatic encephalopathy after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt. *Clin Liver Dis* 2012; 16(1):133–46.
10. Wadei HM: Hepatorenal syndrome: a critical update. *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 2012; 33(1):55–69.

ENDOSCOPIC RETROGRADE CHOLANGIOPANCREATOGRAPHY (ERCP)

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: ERCP was originally used as a diagnostic procedure; however, it is now almost exclusively used for therapeutic purposes. As with many invasive procedures, success (including the absence of complications) is well correlated with operator experience. Basically, ERCP consists of passing an endoscope through the mouth, esophagus, and stomach into the duodenum, where the papilla of Vater is located. A catheter (sometimes preceded by a wire) is inserted through the sphincter of Oddi into the common bile duct or pancreatic duct (see Fig. 13.1-7). At that point, contrast can be injected, tissue sampled, stones extracted, stents placed, or a sphincterotomy accomplished. The endoscopist may request administration of glucagon (0.25–2 mg iv) to decrease duodenal motility and/or secretin (0.2 mcg/kg iv over 1 min) to help locate the minor papilla.

The overall complication rate is 5–10%, being < 5% for simple stone extraction to 20% or more for sphincterotomy. Post-ERCP pancreatitis is the most common complication (up to 40%), being more common in young patients with sphincter of Oddi dysfunction and normal bilirubin levels. Placement of a pancreatic stent may reduce the risk of post-ERCP pancreatitis and is commonly used in high-risk patients. Unfortunately, stent placement itself may cause complications, including ductal and parenchymal injury and ductal stenosis. Balloon dilation as an alternative sphincterotomy has been associated with a higher risk of pancreatitis.

Usual preop diagnosis: Patients typically present with persistent pain or jaundice as a result of gallstones or other disease processes (e.g., infection, tumor, pancreatitis) that obstruct the bile duct and/or pancreatic duct.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Initially left lateral decubitus, rotating to prone
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Endoscope (duodenoscope) and supporting equipment; mouth guard; fluoroscopy
Unique considerations	X-ray protection will be required; glucagon may be requested (0.25–2 mg iv 10 min before procedure; contraindications: pheochromocytoma, insulinoma)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Antibiotics	Ciprofloxacin 500 mg po 30–60 min before procedure is common
Procedure time	45–90 min
EBL	Usually minimal
Postop care	PACU → home (occasional overnight stay for stone removal or stent placement)
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Pancreatitis: typically 5% (1–40% reported) Bowel or duct perforation: < 1% Hemorrhage: 0.1–2% Cholangitis/cholecystitis Aspiration Cardiopulmonary (e.g., myocardial ischemia, respiratory arrest)
Pain score	2–4

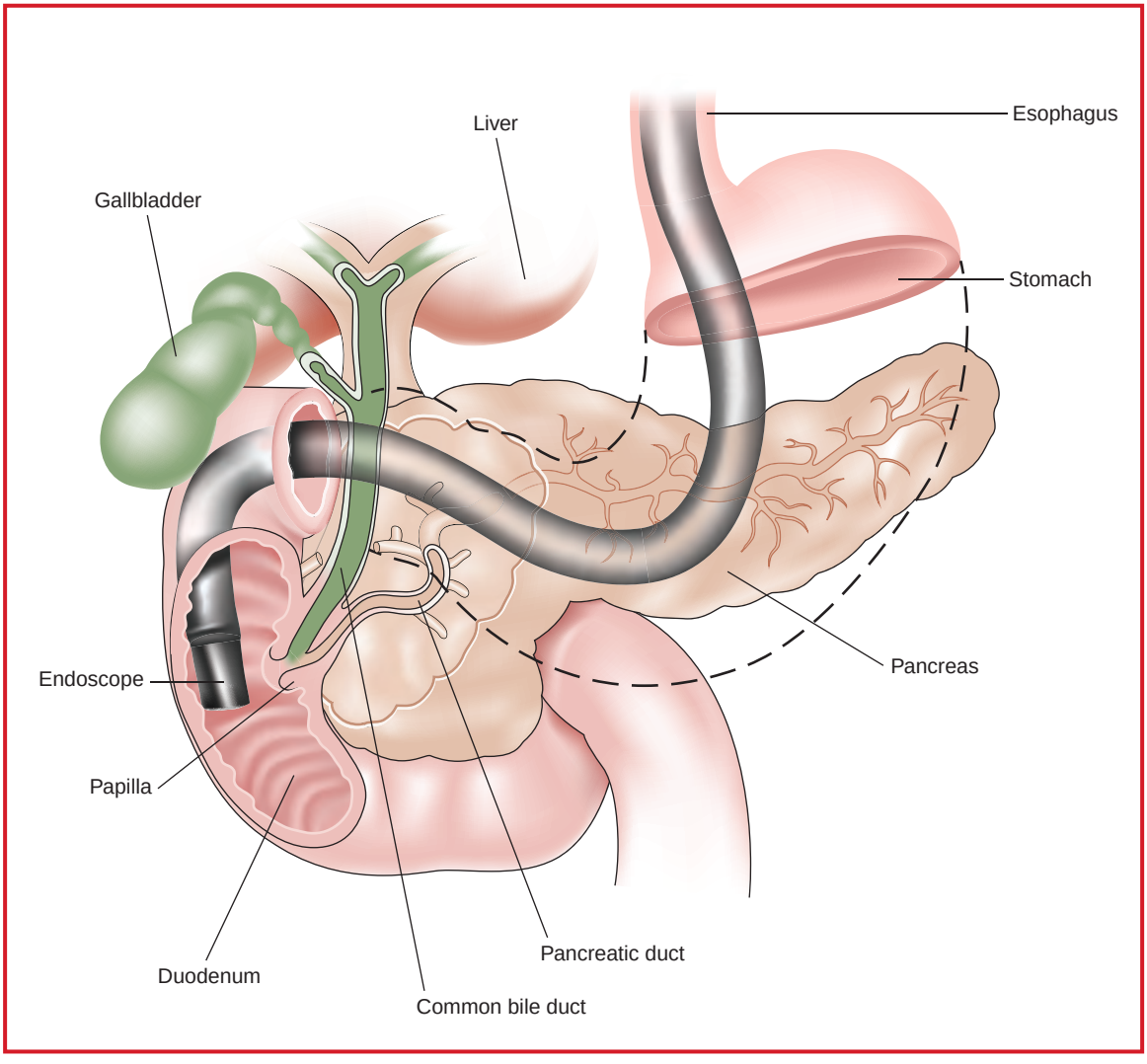


Figure 13.1-7. Anatomy for ERCP.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Patients presenting for ERCP most commonly have obstruction of hepatic and/or pancreatic ducts. They may be jaundiced with elevation of both conjugated and unconjugated bilirubin or exhibit Sx of pancreatic disease with associated peritoneal and pleural effusions. As a result of underlying disease processes (typically ASA 3-4), they may be quite frail with limited physiologic reserve. Discuss intraprocedure management with the endoscopist.

Respiratory	Airway evaluation should focus on the need for GETA. Access to the airway may be limited during the procedure. Ascites and pleural fluid accumulation → impaired ventilation, ↑ aspiration risk. Gas insufflated during the procedure may further compromise ventilation and ↑ aspiration risk. Rales/percussive dullness suggests pulmonary edema/effusion. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	ECG changes are not uncommon during this procedure, and a preop ECG may be helpful. Hypotension is not uncommon. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurological	Altered mental status may result from impaired hepatic function.
Hepatic	Hepatic dysfunction → coagulopathy, altered drug metabolism, and other metabolic disturbances. Jaundice is common. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Renal	↑ BUN/Cr suggest volume depletion or acute renal failure. In acute pancreatitis, fluid deficit may be severe; volume resuscitate before proceeding. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Endocrine	↑ glucose > 180 mg% should be treated preop. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Premedication	Morphine may ↑ sphincter of Oddi tone → ↑ductal pressure + ↑ pain. Midazolam 1–2 mg iv may be appropriate in the anxious patient. Consider aspiration prophylaxis (e.g., Bicitra™ 30 cc po; avoid metoclopramide)

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Deep sedation using propofol (avoiding respiratory depression or loss of protective airway reflexes) supplemented with topical anesthesia of the oropharynx is sufficient for many ERCP procedures. GETA is associated with a higher procedure success rate and should be considered for complex ERCP procedures, patients at high risk for aspiration, or uncooperative patients.

General anesthesia:

Induction	Rapid-sequence induction (see p. B-5) is necessary in patients with gastroparesis or abdominal distention. Otherwise standard induction (see p. B-2). Consider etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg/kg) for hemodynamically unstable patients.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). An immobile patient will be appreciated by the endoscopist. Manipulation of the endoscope may cause ETT movement → mainstem intubation or extubation.	
Emergence	The duodenum and stomach should be decompressed by the endoscopist before extubation. Standard emergence (see p. B-4).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR 3–5 mL/kg/h	Patients with acute pancreatitis may be hypovolemic
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1). ± Arterial line	✓ glucose in patients receiving glucagon.

Positioning	Left lateral decubitus → prone ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Pancreatitis Myocardial ischemia Aspiration	Δ ECG may occur in 25% of patients > 65 yo.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Myocardial ischemia Hypoxemia Hemorrhage	
Pain Management	Usually managed with oral analgesics	Avoid morphine (↑ sphincter of Oddi tone).

Suggested Readings

1. Correia LM, Bonilha DQ, Gomes GF, et al: Sedation during upper GI endoscopy in cirrhotic outpatients: a randomized, controlled trial comparing propofol and fentanyl with midazolam and fentanyl. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; 73(1):45–51.
2. Freeman ML: Complications of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography: avoidance and management. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2012; 22(3):567–86.
3. Goulson DT, Fragneto RY: Anesthesia for gastrointestinal endoscopic procedures. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2009; 27(1):71–85.
4. Martindale SJ: Anaesthetic considerations during endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Anaesth Intensive Care* 2006; 34(4):475–80.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Wire Guided Cannulation Techniques, S Edmundowicz, MD: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RvwTK-BlEeg

Dilation Assisted Stone Extraction (DASE), Dr. Abhitabh Patil, MD:
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ddFVd3TjdNU&list=PL180C343051A415CF&index=1

Animation of Dilation Assisted Stone Extraction (DASE):
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=O-h0j8AUE0Y&list=PL180C343051A415CF

IMAGING AND IMAGE-GUIDED PROCEDURES

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Projectional imaging includes x-ray fluoroscopy, and cross-sectional imaging includes computed tomography (CT), ultrasound (US), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). These techniques have become indispensable in modern diagnosis. In addition, a growing number of invasive procedures are being performed using imaging for guidance, not only for diagnostic purposes but also for therapeutic purposes. Indications include Dx of primary or metastatic tumors; tumor staging; Dx of benign processes, including infections; drainage of fluid collections; local-regional treatment of tumors and vascular malformations, endovascular treatment of hemorrhage, vascular malformations, aneurysms, and dissections; percutaneous treatment of urinary and biliary obstructions; and placement of venous access devices. Selection of imaging modality depends on ease of identification of the target lesion and resolution of surrounding and intervening structures. Patient compliance is crucial to success because image resolution and spatial accuracy require the patient to be immobile during image acquisition and

the procedure itself. In compliant adults, most of these procedures may be done using moderate sedation. For procedures in the pediatric population, as well as for more invasive procedures in adults, GA is frequently necessary.

Diagnostic imaging: **Pediatric:** In general, moderate sedation is sufficient to ensure pediatric patient compliance for diagnostic CT, US, or MRI, but occasionally GA is necessary (see Section 13.2). **Adults:** Almost all CT, US, and MRI studies are performed without anesthesia. Approximately 5% of adult patients are too claustrophobic to complete an MRI study. Some of these may benefit from sedation, but use of GA is rare. Most patients with implanted pacemaker and ICDs can safely undergo MRI if appropriate precautions are observed (see Fig. 13.1-8).

Image-guided procedures: **Pediatric:** Procedures performed on the pediatric patient routinely require GA (see Section 13.2). **Adults:** X-ray fluoroscopy and CT- and US-guided procedures, including biopsies, fluid drainage, and tissue ablation, are routinely performed under moderate sedation. More invasive and painful procedures, such as stent-graft repair of aneurysms and dissections, and radiofrequency (RF) ablation of unresectable tumors (see p. 1526), frequently require GA, spinal, or epidural anesthesia. The required site of access and the positioning of the operators should be considered before the procedure. Position of the ETT and central lines can be immediately confirmed using fluoroscopy. Occasionally, iv injection of iodinated contrast medium is necessary, and adverse reactions—such as urticaria, airway edema, hormone release (e.g., from pheochromocytoma), or anaphylaxis—may occur.

The field of MRI-guided procedures—sometimes referred to as interventional MRI (iMRI) or magnetic resonance-guided therapy (MRT)—reflects the emergence of new magnet geometries, allowing physician access to the patient during imaging. These geometries may be C-arm configurations, parallel discs above and below the patient, or dual rings where the patient is placed either through the apertures of the rings or perpendicularly between the rings. Faster image-acquisition pulse sequences are allowing near-real-time feedback. In addition to guiding biopsies and drainage, this technology enables more aggressive procedures, such as craniotomies or percutaneous tumor ablations, to be performed with immediate feedback showing the progress of excision or ablation. Clearly, many of these procedures require GA and, accordingly, require MRI-compatible monitoring and anesthetic equipment. For safety, the anesthesiologist also is subject to the same restrictions that apply to patients, so having a pacemaker, ICD, ferromagnetic aneurysm clips, or a metallic foreign body in the orbit precludes that person's suitability to perform these cases. Hybrid systems also are being marketed, combining MRI and x-ray fluoroscopy, CT and x-ray fluoroscopy, or CT and positron emission tomography (PET). These may involve overlapping precautions and risks.

Usual preop diagnosis: Tumor, primary or metastatic; lymphadenopathy; abscess, effusion, empyema, pseudocyst, or other fluid collection; arterial occlusive disease; aneurysm or pseudoaneurysm; trauma; DVT; cirrhosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	CT/X-ray Fluoroscopy	US	MRI/MRT
Position	Supine, prone, or lateral decubitus	⇐	⇐ + sitting
Unique considerations	Metallic objects should be kept out of the CT imaging field. Exit the procedure room during scanning to avoid radiation exposure, or use protective lead garment. Contrast reaction possible.	No ionizing radiation. Room lights are frequently dimmed for better viewing of the screen.	All equipment, including monitors, valves, anesthesia machine, O_2 tanks, laryngoscopes, etc., must be nonferromagnetic. Other metals should be removed from the imaging field to avoid artifact.
Antibiotics	Indicated for open procedures or when draining infected fluid collections, including abscesses, empyemas, and obstructed biliary or urinary systems.	⇐	⇐
Procedure time	0.5–2+ h	⇐	⇐

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)

	CT/X-ray Fluoroscopy	US	MRI/MRT
EBL	Procedure dependent; may be internal hemorrhage, may be pre-existing hemorrhage	⇐	⇐
Postop care	PACU → room	⇐	⇐
Mortality	Rare	⇐	⇐
Morbidity	Contrast reaction Hemorrhage Infection/sepsis Organ injury/perforation Pneumothorax Pulmonary embolus Arrhythmia Hemodynamic collapse	⇐	⇐
Pain score	1	1	Procedure dependent

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	All
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	Common
Associated conditions	**Fluid collections:** Patients may present with fever, sepsis, pain, or ileus. Mass effect, such as with empyema or pericardial effusion, may also affect respiratory or cardiovascular function. Instrumentation or relief of mass effect may induce a vasovagal response or acute bacteremia and sepsis. Some infections (echinococcus, entamoeba, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* [MRSA], vancomycin-resistant enterococci [VRE]) may require special precautions, such as respiratory isolation, gown/glove standards, and pre- and postprocedure equipment sterilization. **Solid tumors:** Mass effect may result in obstruction of airways, blood vessels, GI/biliary tract, or urinary tract, or neural impingement. HTN may be seen with significant renal compression and, occasionally, with neuroendocrine tumors. Hematopoietic, hepatic, or renal compromise may result in coagulopathy or Plt dysfunction. **Vascular pathologies:** Aggressive anticoagulation and/or antiplatelet therapy may be used intraop. Restoration of arterial flow to kidneys may → rapid ↓ of renin production and BP. Interventional procedures for venous thrombosis can → PE. Placement of central vascular access catheters can cause air embolism or cardiac arrhythmias from right atrial irritation. Sclerosis of vascular malformations may result in pulmonary embolism, acute pulmonary vasospasm, and hypertension.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

The adult patient population requiring anesthesia for imaging is medically quite diverse; however, many have in common the inability or unwillingness to lie still during the procedure. Some of these patients are very ill, requiring the services of an anesthesiologist to maintain cardiopulmonary stability. Adult patients should be npo for 6 h preprocedure (elective). In general, US and CT scans present fewer problems for the anesthesiologist than MRI. Regardless of the method of anesthesia chosen, these patients must lie perfectly still, the airway must be protected, and IPPV may be required. Thus, children, the cognitively challenged, and claustrophobic, uncooperative, or critically ill patients may all require GA.

Respiratory	As a result of limited access to the patient's airway, the preop examination should focus on the need for elective ET intubation to protect the airway. ET intubation and mechanical ventilation also may be required in trauma patients, the critically ill, or patients with GERD or sleep apnea. An LMA may be suitable for patients not at risk of aspiration.
Cardiovascular	Presence of a cardiac pacemaker or ICD is not a contraindication to MRI (see Safety Checklist, Fig. 13.1-8). The presence of PA catheter thermistors or retained pacing wires and lead fragments is a relative contraindication.
Neurological	Patients with ↑ ICP or cranial trauma usually need GA with mechanical ventilation and intubation. The presence of ferromagnetic aneurysm clips and/or coils may be a contraindication to MRI (✓ with surgeon or radiologist). Some aneurysm clips are nonferromagnetic and are, therefore, MRI compatible.
Musculoskeletal	The presence of spinal instrumentation, metal plates, pins, screws, joint replacements, or other prostheses is usually not a contraindication to MRI.
Premedication	Midazolam 1–5 mg iv (titrated to effect) may be appropriate in the very anxious adult patient; alternatively, lorazepam 1–2 mg po/sl 1 h before procedure.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR MRI/MRT

The MRI/MRT suite poses many challenges to the anesthesiologist. Because of the intense magnetic fields involved in MRI, any equipment containing ferromagnetic components—such as ECG monitors, anesthesia machines—cannot go near the magnet. Thus, MRI-compatible equipment is mandatory in the area of the MRI scanner. The magnetic field will destroy information on credit card/access card magnetic strips and may damage pagers as well as mechanical devices, including wrist watches and infusion pump motors. (A microdrip infusion set is a suitable replacement for an infusion pump.)

Noise	May be very distressing for some patients and may average 95 dB in a 1.5–T scanner. Exposure to noise levels of this magnitude should not exceed 2 h/d. Ear plugs or earphones with music can be helpful.
Thermal injury	Thermal injury is caused by induced currents in metal implants or in looped conductors in contact with the skin.
Projectile effect	The magnet has a strong attraction for ferromagnetic objects that can then become lethal missiles; therefore, all objects, including pens, scissors, iv poles, O_2 cylinders, keys, stethoscopes, and eyeglasses or jewelry containing ferrous materials must be removed prior to entering the scanning room.
Implanted/ foreign material	There are several reports describing problems that may occur with cardiac pacemakers (see Safety Checklist, Fig. 13.1-8; failure to pace), aneurysm clips (hemorrhage), and intravascular wires (induced currents). Metal workers may be at special risk for ocular damage 2° imbedded particles (see Safety Checklist, Fig. 13.1-8).
Contrast agent	Currently, gadolinium chelates are the primary agents in use and have a higher safety margin than iodinated contrast agents. Adverse reactions, however, occur in ~2% of patients and include HA, nausea, dizziness, hemodynamic instability, dysrhythmias, and nephrogenic systemic fibrosis.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Typically, iv/po sedation, often without the services of an anesthesiologist. Patients unwilling or unable to cooperate will require GA.

Section I – This section is to be filled out by the PATIENT:

The MRI room contains a very strong magnet. Before you go into the room, we must know if you have any metal in your body. Please complete the following:

Pacemaker/Wires*	☐ Yes	☐ No	Recent Stent Placement	☐ Yes	☐ No
**If yes, radiology/cardiology staff must complete section III.*					
Aneurysm Clips	☐ Yes	☐ No	Shunt	☐ Yes	☐ No
Surgical Clips	☐ Yes	☐ No	Ear Implant	☐ Yes	☐ No
Eye Implant	☐ Yes	☐ No	IUD	☐ Yes	☐ No
Implantable Defibrillator	☐ Yes	☐ No	Blood Vessel Coil	☐ Yes	☐ No
Bullets, Pellets, etc	☐ Yes	☐ No	Heart Valve	☐ Yes	☐ No
Stimulator/Wires	☐ Yes	☐ No	Artificial Limb	☐ Yes	☐ No
Infusion Pump	☐ Yes	☐ No	Cochlear Device	☐ Yes	☐ No
Penile Prosthesis	☐ Yes	☐ No	Tracheostomy	☐ Yes	☐ No

Do you have kidney disease?	☐ Yes	☐ No
Have you ever been a machinist or metal worker?†	☐ Yes	☐ No
Have you ever had a facial injury from metal?	☐ Yes	☐ No
Have you ever had metal removed from your eyes?	☐ Yes	☐ No
Are you pregnant? Last menstrual period	☐ Yes	☐ No
Do you have any allergies? If yes, please specify	☐ Yes	☐ No
Current medications:		
Weight:		

Section II – This section is to be filled out by the RADIOLOGY STAFF for all patients:

†Orbit Films	☐ Yes	☐ No		
Anyone attending the patient in the MRI room has been cleared for MRI safety requirements.			☐ Yes	☐ No

Section III – This section is to be filled out by the RADIOLOGY/CARDIOLOGY STAFF for patients with implantable cardiac devices:

Was the pacemaker or ICD generator implanted after 1998 or 2000, respectively?	☐ Yes • *If not, cancel MRI*	☐ No
Were the leads implanted ≥ 6 weeks before today?	☐ Yes • *If not, cancel MRI*	☐ No
Are non-transvenous epicardial or abandoned leads present? (Chest x-ray may be necessary if device implantation records are unavailable)	☐ Yes • *If yes, cancel MRI*	☐ No

☐ Pacemaker ☐ ICD

Dependent upon pacing? ☐ Yes
- *If yes, and the device is an ICD, cancel MRI*
- *If yes, and the device is a pacemaker, program pacing to VOO/DOO*

☐ No
- *If not, program pacing to VVI/DDI and deactivate tachycardia detection and therapies*

- *Deactivate magnet, rate, PVC, noise, ventricular sense, and conducted atrial fibrillation response*
- *Monitor blood pressure, ECG, oxygen saturation, and symptoms during MRI*

• *Device Manufacturer & model number:*	Prior to MRI			After MRI		
	RA	RV	LV	RA	RV	LV
Sensing **Capture Threshold** **Impedance**						
Battery Voltage						

- *Keep on ECG monitor after MRI until initial device programming has been restored*
- *Advise follow-up in device clinic in 3-6 months after MRI*

Figure 13.1-8. MRI safety checklist. (From Nazarian S, Beinart R, Halperin HR: Magnetic resonance imaging and implantable devices. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol* 2013 Apr; 6(2):419–28.)

IV sedation	In patients with a normal airway and no Hx of GERD, sedation can be carried out most easily using a dexmedetomidine (1 mcg/kg loading dose over 10 min + 0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h infusion) or propofol infusion (25–100 mcg/kg/min), ± midazolam (0.025–0.10 mg/kg) titrated to effect. ***NB:** Infusion pumps may be damaged by the magnet. (A microdrip infusion is a useful alternative.)

General anesthesia:

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2) on an MRI gantry (typically in the magnet anteroom). The anesthetized patient is then transported into the magnet.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Most commonly, a propofol or dexmedetomidine infusion provides satisfactory sedation for the procedure (see pump considerations, above). Because continuous muscle relaxation is usually not required, spontaneous ventilation may be safest.	
Emergence	Emergence (and extubation) is often accomplished after the patient has been moved to the adjacent anteroom, where additional airway and other support equipment are readily available. The patient should be recovered in the PACU, which may be some distance from the MRI suite. Appropriate monitoring and personnel should accompany the patient.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Usually no blood loss IV: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ TKO	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	Monitoring in the MRI/MRT suite presents special problems, discussed below.
Monitoring, MRI	ECG	ECG may be distorted by magnetic fields. Use MRI-compatible electrodes. Twist leads together to avoid creating loops (↓ artifacts, ↓ burns). V5 and V6 are least likely to develop artifacts.
	Pulse oximetry	MRI-compatible oximeters are available. Locate probe outside bore of the magnet (e.g., toe). Avoid burn injury 2° induced current in looped leads.
	BP (NIBP)	Replace all ferrous connections on cuff and tubing with nylon connectors. Use tubing extensions to keep apparatus away from the field.
	± Arterial line	If an arterial line is medically indicated, keep the transducer close to the patient to avoid recording artifacts. Use MRI-compatible transducers and connectors. Recording equipment should have radiofrequency filters.
	Precordial/esophageal stethoscope	Often unsatisfactory because of magnet noise. An MRI-compatible, infrared, wireless stethoscope is available.
	Temperature	MRI-compatible T monitors are available, although usually not necessary for adults (short procedure).
	Capnography	MRI-compatible capnographs are available. Long sample lines will distort waveforms, and $ETCO_2$ concentration may not be accurate; however, this is still useful for measuring RR and relative changes in $ETCO_2$.
	PA catheter	PA catheters with thermistors or retained pacing wires are contraindication to MRI.
	Urinary catheter	Catheters with T probes must be removed to avoid electrical or burn hazards.
	Verbal/visual	The patient and the monitors may be viewed directly (in procedure room) or through a screened window. Contact should be maintained throughout the procedure.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	CT and MRI gantries may be poorly padded → potential nerve injury.

Complications	Contrast related	Gadolinium → local and systemic reactions (see Contrast-related complications, p. 1494).
	Loss of airway	Patient must be promptly extracted from the magnet bore and moved beyond the range of the magnet to permit use of emergency intubation and resuscitation equipment.
	Psychological	Panic attacks and claustrophobia occur in 5–10% of patients. Use of a blindfold may be helpful in selected patients. Heavy sedation or even GA may be necessary.
	Hearing loss	Temporary hearing loss and tinnitus may be expected in 40% of patients. Prevent by using ear plugs. GA: ↑ risk of hearing damage 2° stapedius muscle relaxation.
	Thermal injury	Results from induced current heating of oximeter probe, and looping cables.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Hearing loss	See discussion above.
	Thermal injury	See discussion above.

Suggested Readings

1. Bock M, Wacker FK: MR-guided intravascular interventions: techniques and applications. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2008; 27:326–38.
2. Brown TR, Goldstein B, Little J: Severe burns resulting from magnetic resonance imaging with cardiopulmonary monitoring. Risks and relevant safety precautions. *Am J Phys Med Rehab* 1993; 72:166–7.
3. Crute D, Sebeo J, Osborn IP: Neuroimaging for the anesthesiologist. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(2):149–73.
4. Hasebroock KM, Serkova NJ: Toxicity of MRI and CT contrast agents. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 2009; 5(4):403–16.
5. Hofer CK, Mizuguchi AK, Popescu WM: Monitoring the patient at risk of hemodynamic instability in remote locations. *Int Anesthsiol Clin* 2012; 50(2):141–72.
6. Murphy KJ, Brunberg JA: Adult claustrophobia, anxiety, and sedation in magnetic resonance imaging. *Magn Reson Imaging* 1997; 15:51–4.
7. Nazarian S, Beinart R, Halperin HR: Magnetic resonance imaging and implantable devices. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol* 2013; 6(2):419-28.
8. Rahmathulla G, Recinos PF, Traul DE, et al: Surgical briefing, checklists, and the creation of an environment of safety in the neurosurgical intraoperative magnetic imaging suite. *Neurosurg Focus* 2012; 33(5):E12.
9. Schulenburg E, Matta B: Anaesthesia for interventional neuroradiology. *Curr Opin Anaesthsiol* 2011; 24(4):426–32.
10. Veenith T, Coles JP: Anaesthesia for magnetic resonance imaging and positron emission tomography. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(4):451–8.

TRACHEOBRONCHIAL STENTING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Tracheobronchial stenting** may be performed for benign or malignant strictures of upper and lower airways that are unsuitable either for surgical reconstruction or as a temporizing measure. Patients may not be considered surgical candidates due to poor medical condition (e.g., comorbidity, recent thoracic surgery, limited life span) or certain characteristics of the stricture (e.g., active disease, airway inflammation, extensive length, or multifocality). The most common cause of tracheobronchial obstruction is bronchogenic carcinoma, with the leading benign cause being stricture secondary to prolonged intubation. Less common causes include radiation stenosis, polychondritis, tracheomalacia, and, in children, extrinsic strictures 2° vascular malformations.

Since the first lung transplant in 1963, postsurgical bronchial stenosis has joined the list of indications for tracheobronchial stenting. Bronchial stenosis is a relatively common complication of lung transplantation, occurring in single-lung, double-lung, and heart/lung transplant recipients. It is believed that this complication is 2° the lack of

bronchial arterial supply, with resulting airway ischemia. These ischemic stenoses occur at the bronchial suture line and in the more distal airway and have been reported to occur in ~10% of patients following transplantation.

Stent types: There are two primary types of airway stents: silicone-based and metallic, with both bare and covered metallic prostheses available.

Silicone stents: Silicone-based stents (Silastic) are available both as straight, short tubes and as bifurcated Y-shaped devices. Straight stents are flanged on both ends to prevent dislodgement and can remain in place in patients for extended periods. The selection of the correct size and length is critical. The stent must be long enough to enable its flanges to anchor the stent within the stricture; short enough to avoid compromise of a lobar bronchus distally or the trachea proximally; and of satisfactory diameter to maintain the caliber of the airway. The main advantage of silicone stents is that they are easily removed, either when the patient's ventilatory status has recovered sufficiently, or when reconstructive surgery is possible. In addition, the stent can be easily repositioned to obtain optimal placement. Bifurcated silicone stents are also available to accommodate the Y-shaped configuration of the carina with extension into the distal trachea and both mainstream bronchi.

Silicone-based stents do have disadvantages. Stenotic airways need to be predilated before stent insertion, whereas metallic stents can be placed within a narrow airway lumen and subsequently dilated. Silicone stents frequently become occluded with mucus plugs and granulation tissue or tumor overgrowth; therefore, regular bronchoscopic examination and treatment are necessary to keep the airway clear. Silicone stents and covered metallic stents are more likely to migrate than bare stents due to lack of incorporation into the bronchial wall. In general, silicone stents must be placed under GA because of the need for rigid bronchoscopy.

Metallic stents: The main advantages of metallic stents are the ease of insertion, an extremely thin wall that rapidly becomes embedded in the airway, and the large gaps in the wall that allow normal ciliary function and reduced mucus impaction. The procedure can be performed using flexible bronchoscopy in the interventional room, under deep sedation. The main disadvantage of metallic stents is the difficulty in removing or repositioning these devices once deployed. Stents become firmly embedded in the wall of the airway and incorporated into the epithelium in < 6 wk. Removal can be accomplished by using forceps to grip the wall of the stent and applying a twisting motion to pull the stent away from the wall. Potential complications from this maneuver may be catastrophic and once these devices are placed they should be considered permanent. However, if removal becomes necessary the patient will require TIVA, muscle relaxants, and IPPV. Complications include tracheal/bronchial disruption, pulmonary artery injury, and pneumothorax and airway obstruction. Another problem associated with metallic stents is the development of granulation tissue either at the ends of the stents or through the interstices. This requires careful follow-up by repeat bronchoscopy and may require subsequent procedures, such as bronchoplasty, restenting, and laser tissue ablation.

Because of the flexibility and low profile of the deployment systems used for metal stents, it is feasible to place them under conscious sedation; however, our practice is to utilize GA for tracheal stent placement to reduce patient movement due to the coughing that occurs with tracheal irritation. Most bronchial interventions can be performed without full GA.

Insertion techniques: **Silicone stents** have low inherent radial force, and strictures need to be dilated before stenting. Rigid bronchoscopy is necessary to allow dilation and subsequent stent placement. Dilation can be performed with the Holinger bronchoscope, which is abutted to the stricture and advanced with a corkscrew motion. Gum-tipped Jackson dilators and various angioplasty balloons also can be used. In patients with tracheal stomas, a T-tube stent can be inserted either via the stoma or the mouth. This extends up to the vocal cords and down as far as the carina. In patients without tracheal stomas, either Y-tubes or straight stents are inserted in a similar fashion. The stent is mounted on the rigid scope, which is advanced across the stricture and then withdrawn, leaving the stent in place. A biopsy forcep is used to advance a limb of the Y-tube into the other bronchus. Placement of stents above the carina in this fashion is relatively straightforward, and the stents can be removed and repositioned until a satisfactory result is achieved. With more distal bronchial stents, the operator's vision is somewhat obscured, and deployment is more difficult.

For insertion of **metallic stents,** cross-sectional and fluoroscopic imaging is used to determine the optimal length and diameter of the stent. During the procedure, selective tracheobronchography may be performed by injecting water-soluble nonionic contrast through a catheter at the level of stricture. Flexible bronchoscopy helps guide the stent placement with a soft-tipped guidewire being advanced through either the scope or the ETT into the distal airway. In the rare case where the stricture is too narrow and tight to allow passage of a small, flexible bronchoscope, the guidewire is passed, and the lesion is stented based on fluoroscopy, reconstructed CT images, or bronchography. Using fluoroscopy, the stent is positioned across the stricture and visually confirmed with bronchoscopy after deployment. For tracheal stenosis, care must be taken during intubation, as the stricture often is close to the vocal cord.

Usual preop diagnosis: Bronchial compression 2° carcinoma; posttransplantation; relapsing polychondritis; sarcoidosis

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	None
Special instrumentation	Bronchoscope (flexible or rigid); self-expanding metallic stent (covered and uncovered); balloon-expandable, short metallic stent
Unique considerations	May have to pull the end of the tracheal tube back to the level of the vocal cords to adequately treat the entire trachea. Alternatively can stent through LMA.
Antibiotics	Not usually administered.
Procedure time	1–2 h
EBL	0
Postop care	ICU or step-down unit
Mortality	1–5%
Morbidity	Tracheobronchial irritation (usually temporary) Stent malposition → bronchial occlusion or vocal-cord paralysis
Pain score	2–4 (first few hours only)

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Respiratory compromise due to airway obstruction may pose a significant management challenge. It is therefore somewhat controversial and highly institution-dependent, whether these procedures should be performed outside of the OR. A thorough preoperative workup is necessary before anesthesia. The majority of patients present for palliation of an obstructing pulmonary malignancy or treatment of granulation tissue obstruction of lung transplant anastomosis. Some may present emergently with impending airway obstruction that precludes a complete preoperative workup. The choice of anesthesia is primarily a function of the type of stent, surgeon preference, and the comorbid conditions of the patient. In general, silicone stent placement, which requires airway dilation with rigid bronchoscopy, will necessitate GA. Metallic stents can be placed without the need for preceding airway dilation; therefore, either topical anesthesia, with or without conscious sedation, or GA can be used. Immediate improvements in FEV_1, FVC, and PEF can be expected after stenting of an obstructed tracheobronchial segment.

Respiratory	Patients with upper or lower airway stricture may present with cough, stridor, dyspnea, and fatigue. Airway obstruction can be classified as dynamic or fixed, depending on whether the obstruction varies with the respiratory cycle. Stridor that worsens during inspiration suggests an extrathoracic dynamic obstruction, whereas expiratory stridor is associated with intrathoracic dynamic obstruction. Other physical findings may include bronchospasm (in COPD patients), clubbing, or cyanosis. Preop fiberoptic bronchoscopic examination and/or high-resolution, thin-section CT scans will help to define the location, size, and extent of the obstruction. In patients suspected of having tracheomalacia, scans are performed at maximal inspiration and maximal expiration to unmask subtle areas of narrowing exacerbated by ↑ intrathoracic pressure on inspiration. Using this information, the appropriate size for an ETT can be estimated and potential problems with tracheal intubation can be anticipated. **Tests:** CXR; PFTs with flow/volume loops (see Fig. 5-14 in Anesthetic Considerations for Mediastinoscopy, p. 335); CT scans preferably with three-dimensional reconstructions.
Cardiovascular	Directed at any underlying disease process. Restoration of intravascular volume before induction of GA is important in patients with hypovolemia 2° chronic malnutrition from malignancy. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Musculoskeletal	Patients with lung cancer may have myasthenic syndrome (Eaton-Lambert) with ↑ resistance to depolarizing muscle relaxants and ↑ sensitivity to NDMRs. Post–lung transplant patients on certain immunosuppressive therapies (e.g., cyclosporine) may have prolonged muscle blockade from NDMRs.
Hematologic	Blood cross-match not necessary unless high risk of hemorrhage from injury (e.g., rigid bronchoscopy used in patients with friable tumors). Maintaining adequate O_2-carrying capacity is important in patients with poor pulmonary reserve. **Tests:** CBC; others as indicated from H&P
Laboratory	Other tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Patients in respiratory distress are extremely anxious; however, anxiolysis has to be balanced against the risk of impending respiratory arrest in some patients. Careful titration of anxiolytic medications is necessary to avoid oversedation. An antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg iv) will help minimize secretions and improve visualization through the bronchoscope. Post–lung transplant patients may be steroid dependent and stress-dose steroid supplement may be required.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Be prepared for an airway emergency. Preparations should be made for emergency rigid bronchoscopy and/or tracheostomy below the lesion. A variety of laryngoscope blades and ETTs of all sizes, including small, uncuffed (5–6 mm) tubes, should be readily available. Endoscopic evaluation of the airway must be performed in a spontaneously breathing patient if the airway lesion has not been defined. Muscle relaxation must be avoided until a detailed examination is completed and the operator is certain an airway can be maintained subsequently. Vocal cord paralysis, which can mimic tracheal stenosis, can be obscured by muscle relaxation.

Topical anesthesia	Anesthetize palate, pharynx, larynx, vocal cords, and trachea with lidocaine (2–4%), using atomizer (e.g., MADgic™ Atomizer) or having the patient gargle viscous lidocaine (4%). Avoid local anesthetic overdose.
Conscious sedation	Midazolam will increase the seizure threshold in the setting of relative local anesthetic overdose. Other options include dexmedetomidine (0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h after loading dose) and propofol (10–100 mcg/kg/min), with or without a short-acting opioid (e.g., fentanyl 25–50 mcg; remifentanil 0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min). Caution should be exercised when mixing opioids and sedatives to avoid respiratory depression.
Induction	Patients should be well preoxygenated. Patients may be unable to lie flat 2° respiratory distress. Low-density helium-oxygen mixtures (Heliox) reduce airflow resistance past the obstruction, which may be beneficial in optimizing the patient. Ideally spontaneous ventilation should be maintained until the airway is secured. Inhaled sevoflurane, intravenous ketamine, judicious propofol (without opioid), or awake FOB with topical anesthesia is appropriate. Optimally, the ETT is positioned ~1 cm above the lesion. Flexible bronchoscopy of the distal airways is then performed through the stricture, and the distal extent of the stricture relative to the carina is identified. In patients with a stricture near the vocal cords, the use of an LMA is a viable option, as it avoids passing an airway through the lesion and offers the ability to bronchoscopically examine the entire lesion. Avoid muscle relaxation if possible; if necessary, consider small dose of succinylcholine (in the future: rocuronium-sugammadex). Distal or mild airway stenoses may be appropriately managed with an RSI.
Maintenance	Inhalational anesthesia is unreliable in most cases due to the limited ventilation with a bronchoscope in situ (resistance and leak). TIVA is preferable: use propofol (50–100 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.05–0.2 mcg/kg/min) infusions. Once the airway is secured, muscle relaxation can be given to avoid movement or coughing during the procedure. Succinylcholine drip (0.25–1 g/250 mL NS, titrated to twitch suppression; avoid phase II block by keeping dose < 5–6 mg/kg), or intermediate-acting (cisatracurium 0.1 mg iv, vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg iv, rocuronium 0.15–0.3 mg/kg iv) muscle relaxant may be used. Manual IPPV

Maintenance (cont'd)	through side-arm of rigid bronchoscope or via the swivel connector if fiberoptic bronchoscope is used. High-flow (up to 20 L/min) O_2 or O_2 flush (barotrauma risk) may be required to compensate for leak if rigid bronchoscope is used. Hyperventilate patient in preparation for periods of apnea. Low-frequency jet ventilation (50 psi at 10/min with I:E 1:2–4) via a Sander's injector is an alternative. Barotrauma and dynamic lung hyperinflation are potential problems with this approach.	
Emergence	Patient must be fully awake before extubation with no residual neuromuscular blockade. Emergence can be "stormy." Patient may cough violently to clear secretions and blood. Wake-up on low-dose (e.g. 0-0.5 mcg/kg/min) remifentanil infusion tends to be smoother; consider airway suctioning and lidocaine (1 mg/kg iv) to decrease airway reactivity. Postop O_2 supplementation (preferably humidified).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 18 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 1–2 mL/kg/h	Transfusion unnecessary except to optimize O_2-carrying capacity or to treat hemorrhage.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± Arterial line	$ETCO_2$ not accurate during rigid bronchoscopy Depending on patient's comorbidities.
Positioning	Supine ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Hypoxemia	Suction secretions/blood; airway instrumentation may have to be interrupted and bronchoscope removed to improve oxygenation and ventilation.
	Hypercarbia	Commonly 2° inadequate ventilation. May cause increased sympathetic drive with 2° hypertension/tachycardia/dysrhythmias. Simply↑ TV and RR.
	Hypertension	Ensure adequate ventilation and sedative/anesthesia.
	Bronchospasm	Rx: bronchodilator (e.g., albuterol puff)
	Stent dislodgement	From coughing or movement. Ensure adequate anesthesia and muscle relaxation.
	Bleeding	More likely with rigid bronchoscope.
	Tracheobronchial injury Aspiration of debris	Requires frequent suctioning. Major hemorrhage may require thoracotomy using DLT or BB to isolate and/or tamponade bleeding site. Transfusion. Patient may need to be kept intubated after the procedure.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	Airway edema	Rx with corticosteroids (dexamethasone 10 mg iv) and/or racemic epinephrine nebulizer. Impending airway obstruction will require reintubation.
	Airway obstruction	May be catastrophic. Secretion retention or stent dislodgement. Rigorous suction. Reintubation or restenting.
	Stent fracture/migration	May be catastrophic. May require emergent reintubation or restenting.
	Pneumothorax	Obtain CXR. May require chest tube placement if > 20%.
	Secretion retention	Humidified O_2
Pain management	None	

Suggested Readings

1. Abdelmalak BB, Gildea TR, Doyle DJ: Anesthesia for bronchoscopy. *Curr Pharm Des* 2012; 18(38):6314–24.
2. Doyle DJ, Abdelmalak B, Machuzak M, Gildea TR: Anesthesia and airway management for removing pulmonary self-expanding metallic stents. *J Clin Anesth* 2009; 21(7):529–32.
3. Lund MD, Garland R, Ernst A: Airway stenting: applications and practice management considerations. *Chest* 2007; 131(2):579–87.
4. McGrath EE, Warriner D, Anderson P: The insertion of self expanding metal stents with flexible bronchoscopy under sedation for malignant tracheobronchial stenosis: a single-center retrospective analysis. *Arch Bronconeumol* 2012; 48(2):43–8.
5. Ochroch EA: Pro: laser endobronchial treatment does not need to occur in the operating room. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2005; 19(1):118–20.
6. Profili S, Manca A, Feo CF, et al: Palliative airway stenting performed under radiological guidance and local anesthesia. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2007; 30(1):74–8.
7. Vaitkeviciute I, Ehrenwerth J: Con: bronchial stenting and laser airway surgery should not take place outside the operating room. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2005; 19(1):121–2.

RADIOFREQUENCY ABLATION OF TUMORS

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: **Radiofrequency ablation (RFA)** was pioneered in 1920 by Harvey Cushing for the creation of small lesions within the CNS. Since then, the technique has been refined so that precise control of lesion size can be achieved by measuring the temperature and electrical resistance within the tissues being treated. Ablating neural tissue with RF is successful in treating pain from trigeminal neuralgia, facet osteoarthritis, and failed-back syndrome. RFA has expanded treatment options for certain solid organ tumors, including hepatocellular carcinomas, colorectal metastasis to the liver, primary and secondary lung cancers, renal cell carcinoma, and painful bone lesions. Because RFA is most often done percutaneously, it is well suited for the treatment of primary and secondary malignancies in the liver, as well as other sites in patients who are not suitable for open surgery.

Mechanism of tissue destruction: In RFA, an alternating current operating in the frequency of radio waves (460–480 kHz) is emitted from the tip of an electrode or needle placed directly into tissues. This alternating current causes the local ions to vibrate, producing heat and inducing cell death by coagulative necrosis. The cytotoxic T threshold is 50°C; however, with RFA, temperatures can exceed this and actually reach the boiling point of water (100°C). A limitation of RFA is the small lesion size it creates. Recent technical advances in RF systems have improved such that lesions > 5 cm in diameter can be created.

Techniques of radiofrequency ablation: Grounding pads are placed on the patient's thighs; if a single RF treatment probe is used, at least two and, preferably, four pads (96 cm^2 surface area each) or the equivalent (minimum total surface area = ~200 cm^2) must be used. If a three-probe cluster is used, at least four RF grounding pads or their equivalent (~400 cm^2 surface area) must be used. Presently available commercial generators usually require four grounding pads. The grounding pads and the treatment probes are connected to the RF generator. When the generator is activated, current flows between the conductive electrode tip and the grounding pads (or "dispersive electrode"). The increase in the tissue T is proportional to the current density. Because the density is highest near the conductive electrode tip, coagulation is induced in the tissue surrounding the treatment probe. The linear extent (depth) of the resulting coagulation is determined by the length of the uninsulated probe tip, while the diameter of coagulation necrosis produced around the probe tip depends on the duration of treatment. Based on our experience using perfusion probes and pulsed current technique, areas of the tissue up to 4.5 cm diameter may be coagulated with a single probe and up to 7.3 cm in diameter with clustered probes.

The lesion to be treated is identified and characterized by ultrasound or CT, which is used to guide the RF probe to the distal margin of the lesion. The generator is activated, and output is gradually increased to a predetermined maximum, based on tip exposure and probe configuration (single vs. clustered probes). Maximum power (90–120 watts) is applied to the treatment probe cluster until tissue impedance rises. At this point, the power is turned off for 60 sec, then increased to maximum until once again impedance is seen to rise. Ultrasound monitoring of the RF site may be carried out throughout the ablation; however, it usually is limited due to the production of tissue water vapor that interferes with the transmission of the sound waves. CT can be used occasionally to check the stable position of the needle. Final tissue temperatures usually range from 60°C to 90°C.

Lesion size varies according to the size of the electrode, the current, duration of the treatment, and local blood flow. Tumor cells adjacent to large blood vessels may not be treated thoroughly due to the heat-sink effect of flowing blood, which carries away the RF energy as fast as it is deposited. Alternatively, cirrhotic livers with extensive fibrosis and ↓ blood flow may need fewer treatments because of increased conduction through the tumor compared to surrounding tissue, a phenomenon termed the "oven effect" that helps achieve larger coagulation diameters.

Liver RF: The most well-known and best-studied application of RF is in the treatment of primary and metastatic liver tumors. RF has been used widely to treat HCC as well as metastases. Prospective and retrospective studies have demonstrated that complete necrosis can be achieved in 90% of tumors measuring < 3 cm in fewer than two sessions. However, the success rate drops markedly in tumors measuring > 3.5 cm, with complete necrosis achieved in < 50% at two sessions.

Lung RF: Recently, RF energy has been used for ablation of certain primary and secondary lung tumors. The work that has been done to date has been performed in patients whose disease extent offers few therapeutic options. The results have been encouraging and there has been a satisfying lack of major complications reported. Pneumothorax is seen in ~30% of cases (similar to rates reported during lung biopsy); and although transcranial Doppler has demonstrated microbubbles in the cerebral vasculature during ablation, there have been no reported sequelae. The same basic technique is used, although lower energies are applied, because there is less solid tissue in the lung, and high levels of impedance are reached sooner.

Bone RF: RF has been applied to both benign and malignant bone tumors. The first use was for the thermocoagulation of small, painful, osteoid osteomas. The pain in an osteoid osteoma is related to prostaglandin production within the cells of the small, central, vascularized tumor nidus. Pain relief is obtained only after complete removal of the nidus, surgically or percutaneously. Surgical removal requires cortical osteotomy and a hospital stay. Recently, RF has emerged as the method of choice for treating osteoid osteoma. The ablation is done percutaneously, usually under CT guidance as an outpatient procedure. The nidus is located, and a single-tip RF electrode is placed in the nidus. Because the area of treatment is almost always < 1 cm, larger, multitined electrodes are not required. Energy required to destroy the nidus is minimal. Patients typically have 1–2 d of postprocedure pain that differs from the pain of osteoid osteoma. Relief of the osteoid osteoma pain almost always occurs within the first 24–48 h. Cure with one session can be as high as 90%, and retreatment can be performed if the first treatment is not immediately successful or if the patient's pain returns in the future.

Preliminary studies in **malignant bone tumor treatment** with RF show promise. Previously irradiated foci of tumor, whether primary or metastatic, that are still biologically active can be treated locally with internally cooled RF electrodes. Local pain control in painful bone metastases and control of hemorrhage in both the axial and appendicular skeletons have responded well to RF ablation. In areas where tumor abuts vital structures, such as the spinal cord, RF may not be effective because local thermal injury may not be desirable. However, spinal RF can be performed in the vertebral body when the cortex between the electrode and the spinal canal is intact.

Usual preop diagnosis: Primary or metastatic hepatic malignancy; primary or metastatic pulmonary malignancy; osteoid osteoma.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or prone
Incision	Over the site to be accessed
Special instrumentation	RFA probes and generator
Unique considerations	Mild ↑ T during procedure; ↑ pain as ablation continues.
Antibiotics	None usually; occasionally, ciprofloxacin 500 mg iv
Procedure time	2–4 h
EBL	None
Postop care	Step-down unit
Mortality	< 5%

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)

Morbidity	Postprocedure pain at site Hepatic hemorrhage: Rare, due to cauterizing nature of procedure Pneumothorax (during hepatic dome lesion ablation, pulmonary ablation) Hepatic abscess (↑ incidence in patients with previous biliary manipulation)
Pain score	5–8 (first few hours only)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Adults
Male:Female	M > F
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Pain (trigeminal neuralgia; facet osteoarthritis; metastatic cancer); primary malignancies
Associated conditions	Lung cancer; cancers of the neck; polychondritis; prolonged ICU stay; lung transplantation

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Patients presenting for RF ablation range from those with end-stage lung cancer to otherwise healthy chronic pain patients. In addition, analgesic/anesthetic requirements are highly variable, depending on the size and location of the target lesions. Close communication between the various care providers is essential to achieving a positive outcome.

Respiratory	Access to the airway may be limited in the typical interventional radiology suite; thus, a patient with a potentially difficult airway may require elective intubation. Appropriate airway adjuncts (LMAs, light wand, fiberoptic cart, etc.) should be readily available. Intraop risks include the possibility of pneumothorax, so needle decompression supplies also should be available. Lung cancer patients presenting for tumor ablation may have compromised pulmonary function and require objective assessment of pathophysiology with PFTs and/or ABG analysis. **Tests:** PFTs, ABG, as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	HTN and CHF are seen frequently in elderly patients presenting for RF procedures. These patients often have a severe disease process, which may be complicated by other significant comorbidities. The potential for cardiac ischemia should be evaluated carefully. Preop beta-blockade and antihypertensive therapy may be required. **Tests:** ECG, ECHO, noninvasive stress testing as indicated from H&P
Neurological	A thorough neurological exam is important to document neurological deficits that are present before the procedure.
Hepatic	Patients may have coagulation defects and mental status changes 2° systemic liver disease. The potential for severe hemorrhage from vascular injury, the risk of aspiration, and the lack of cooperation (encephalopathy) should all be taken into account when planning the anesthesia. Patients with severe liver disease also may exhibit hepatopulmonary or hepatorenal syndrome manifested as hypoxemia or renal failure. Consider the need for preop correction of coagulation and fluid status. **Tests:** LFTs; ammonia; INR
Endocrine	The possibility of endocrine and metabolic derangements should be assessed. Lung cancer patients may have electrolyte problems 2° SIADH, whereas patients with liver disease are prone to developing hypoglycemia. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P

Hematologic	Consider the possibility of chronic anemia or hypercoagulability 2° neoplastic disease. Chemotherapy or systemic disease may have depressed bone marrow function and altered the activity of WBCs and Plts. **Tests:** Hct, Plt count, or CBC, as indicated by H&P
Premedication	Sedation must be adjusted according to patient requirements. Small doses of midazolam, titrated to minimal sedation, are most reasonable (0.5–1 mg increments). Patients with end-stage disease often require very little premedication.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Sedation or GA, depending on the size and location of lesions. Most ablations are well tolerated with MAC; however, large lesions may require GA. The out-of-OR site often involves working in cramped quarters with poor access to anesthesia equipment. Nevertheless, the ASA standards of monitoring should be followed.

MAC: MAC cases are performed with fentanyl (25–150 mcg) and midazolam (0.5–2 mg) boluses, combined with a propofol infusion (25–100 mcg/kg/min). The substitution of remifentanil (0.02–0.1 mcg/kg/min) for fentanyl allows rapid titration of analgesia for the brief periods of intense stimulation.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2), preceding placement of an ETT or LMA.	
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Because procedures are of an unpredictable duration, short-acting muscle relaxants (e.g., rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg) are advised. Propofol (25–100 mcg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.02–0.1 mcg/kg/min) are an appropriate combination that easily can be titrated to effect. Persistent intraop HTN may be treated with labetalol (5–25 mg) or hydralazine (5–20 mg).	
Emergence	Standard emergence (see p. B-4). Short-acting analgesics (e.g., fentanyl 25–150 mcg) should be used in outpatients. Prophylactic treatment with antiemetics (ondansetron 4 mg iv) may be beneficial because there is a high incidence of PONV.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–14 ga × 1–2 NS/LR: 3–5 mL/kg/h	Larger access needed for hepatic lesions.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1) ± Arterial line ± Urinary catheter	 Foley for longer procedures (> 2 h)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Radiology tables often poorly padded.
Complications	Hemorrhage Pneumothorax Hemothorax Electrical shock Thermal injury Hyperthermia	Blood or colloid should be readily available, if the need is anticipated. Large retroperitoneal hemorrhage can develop, yet not be appreciated until blood loss is extensive. Needle decompression and/or thoracostomy tube placement may be necessary during thoracic or high hepatic procedures. Electrocautery devices can produce serious injury if not properly grounded. Patients may develop rapid T increases 2° direct heating of large lesions.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV Hemorrhage	Common. Occult blood loss may continue for several h after the procedure is terminated.

Pain management	Standard pain management (see p. C-2) Postprocedure pain is usually well tolerated.
Tests	Postprocedure HCT, as indicated.

Suggested Readings

1. Ahmed M, Brace Cl, Lee FT Jr, Goldberg SN: Principles of and advances in percutaneous ablation. *Radiology* 2011; 258(2):351–69.
2. Carrafiello G, Mangini M, Fontana F, et al: Complications of microwave and radiofrequency lung ablation: personal experience and review of the literature. *Radiol Med* 2012; 117(2):201–13.
3. Lencioni R, Crocetti L: Image-guided ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Recent Results Cancer Res* 2013; 190:181–94.
4. Livraghi T, Goldberg SN, Lazzaroni S, et al: Hepatocellular carcinoma: radio-frequency ablation of medium and large lesions. *Radiology* 2000; 214(3):761–8.
5. Rhim H, Yoon KH, Lee JM, et al: Major complications after radio-frequency thermal ablation of hepatic tumors: spectrum of imaging findings. *Radiographics* 2003; 23(l):123–34.
6. Salas N, Castle SM, Leveillee RJ: Radiofrequency ablation for treatment of renal tumors: technological principles and outcomes. *Expert Rev Med Devices* 2011; 8(6):695–707.

IRREVERSIBLE ELECTROPORATION (IRE ABLATION)

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Description: Electroporation describes a method of exposing cells to ultra-short high-voltage electrical pulses to create temporary or permanent pores in the membrane. The temporary version takes advantage of a momentary increase in cell permeability to facilitate the delivery of genes and macromolecules such as antibodies, RNA, DNA, drugs, dyes, and tracers into cells. This "reversible" process has been in clinical use for years and is a common method of treating some cancers. Researchers discovered that with higher electrical voltages, permanent pores could be created, resulting in disruption of cell homeostasis and apoptotic cell death. This process is known as irreversible electroporation (IRE) and has recently emerged as a minimally invasive tissue ablation method. IRE presents several advantages to the traditional temperature-based ablation methods (i.e., radiofrequency ablation and cryoablation). Because IRE uses nonthermal energy, it avoids the issue of undesirable thermal damage to surrounding tissues. It also has the advantage in that it can be applied to areas of high perfusion (e.g., within vicinity of blood vessels) without concern for the heat-sink effect. IRE is able to induce cell death in a selective, well-defined manner and has been shown to preserve extracellular structures including blood vessels, connective tissues, and nerves. The procedure time for IRE is substantially shorter than conventional ablative therapies. The current IRE system has the capability of using up to 6 probes simultaneously, which has been useful in ablating larger lesions with short procedure times. IRE is well suited as a treatment option for malignancies in difficult-to-treat areas where there is a need to preserve large blood vessels or other vital structures.

Mechanism of tissue destruction: IRE utilizes high-voltage pulses ranging from 1000 to 3000 v/cm to create an electric field across the tissue between electrodes. Therefore, the shape and size of the IRE ablation field can be manipulated to include the entire area to be ablated. The intensity of the electric field within a given tissue is dictated by the distance between the electrodes and the voltage difference across the electrodes. The creation of permanent nanopores in the cell membrane irreversibly impairs the cell's ability to maintain homeostasis, resulting in cell death via apoptosis. Apoptosis is a natural, tightly regulated process in which cells are phagocytized by immune cells and then replaced by innate cellular regeneration. This process results in minimal damage to surrounding tissues with minimal fibrosis and scarring. Although the major mechanism of tissue ablation in IRE is electroporation, thermal tissue damage is possible if excessive electric fields are applied. Every electrical field produces thermal energy, which is referred to as the joule effect. If the parameters of IRE are not chosen correctly, the electrical field generated can cause thermal damage, negating the nonthermal advantages of this therapy.

Techniques of irreversible electroporation: Precise planning is necessary before beginning IRE treatment to determine the proper placement of electrodes that will achieve the desired outcome. Preablation computerized tomography (CT) data from 3D mapping of the treatment site are very useful. The NanoKnife™ system comes with a

computerized preablation planning program that helps clinicians determine the number and placement of electrodes needed for the ablation zone. The voltage setting is determined by the distance between each pair of electrodes with the purpose of generating at least 1000 V/cm between them. The number of electrodes used depends on the site and volume of the target area and ease of electrode access. Current flow is determined by tissue resistance and degree of IRE achieved.

With the patient anesthetized, electrodes are placed in a predetermined grid pattern in the target area under ultrasound or CT guidance. Typically 90 pulses of high-voltage (1.5–3 kV) direct current between 20 and 50 A are delivered in groups of 10, at intervals of 70 µs (bipolar) or 100 µs (unipolar). At 2-cm probe spacing and 3 kV delivered, the maximum effective treatment area is 2 cm diameter from each probe (maximum of 4 cm total ablation distance); beyond that the ablation cross-section becomes less effective. Like any other ablation methods, probes have to be repositioned to accommodate large tumors or many small tumors.

Pancreas IRE: IRE has been shown to be successful in managing surgically unresectable pancreatic tumors encasing the celiac and superior mesenteric vessels.

Liver IRE: Clinical IRE was first attempted in patients diagnosed with hepatocellular carcinomas (HCC) with promising clinical results. Liver function tests were normal at 24 h and at 1, 3, and 6 mo postop. There was, however, an expected increase in alanine aminotransferase, a marker for acute hepatocyte damage. Most patients with increased levels will return to baseline levels after 1 month.

Usual preop diagnosis: Most centers perform IRE on primary or metastatic malignancies in the liver, kidney, lung, prostate, and pancreas.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine or prone
Incision	Over the site to be accessed determined by preop CT or US
Special instrumentation	AngioDynamics IRE electrodes and NanoKnife IRE generator
Unique considerations	Stimulation of skeletal muscles and diaphragm (minimized by the use of muscle relaxants ↑ cardiac dysrhythmias ↓ T during lengthy procedures in CT room
Antibiotics	None usually; if needed, ciprofloxacin 500 mg iv and/or Flagyl 500 mg iv
Procedure time	1–2 h
EBL	Usually minimal (although large-volume blood loss may occur during ablation of liver tumors)
Postop care	PACU then step-down posttreatment unit
Mortality	< 5%
Morbidity	Postprocedure pain at site Brachial plexus injury (during positioning for liver ablation) Pneumothorax (related to lung ablation, segment VIII, or dome liver ablation) Subcapsular hematoma (related to multiple needle punctures) Intraperitoneal hematoma (related to pancreas ablation)
Pain score	3–8 (first few hours only)

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Adults
Male:Female	50:50
Incidence	Uncommon
Etiology	Primary and metastatic tumors
Associated conditions	Liver, lung, kidney, pancreas cancer

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Anesthetic considerations for IRE are very similar to those for patients undergoing radiofrequency ablation.

Respiratory	Lung cancer patients presenting for tumor ablation may have compromised pulmonary function and require objective assessment with PFTs and/or ABG analysis before the procedure. Access to the airway may be limited in the CT scanning suite. Intraop risks include the possibility of pneumothorax. Tests: PFTs, ABG, as indicated from H&P
Cardiovascular	Patients with underlying cardiac disease are especially susceptible to IRE ablation-induced dysrhythmias. A defibrillator should be available in the CT suite. The potential for myocardial ischemia should be evaluated carefully. A cardiac anesthesiologist is not usually required. **Tests:** ECG, ECHO, noninvasive stress testing as indicated from H&P
Neurological	A thorough neurological exam is important to document preexisting neurological deficits.
Hepatic	Patients may have coagulation defects and mental status changes related to liver disease. Patients with severe liver disease may exhibit a hepatopulmonary or hepatorenal syndrome manifested as hypoxia or renal failure. Consider the need for preop correction of coagulation and fluid status. **Tests:** LFTs; ammonia; INR
Endocrine	The possibility of endocrine and metabolic derangements should be assessed. Lung cancer patients may have electrolyte problems 2° SIADH, while patients with liver disease are prone to developing hypoglycemia. **Tests:** As indicated by H&P
Hematologic	Consider the possibility of chronic anemia or hypercoagulability 2° neoplastic disease. Chemotherapy or systemic disease may have depressed bone marrow function and altered the activity of wbcs and platelets.
Premedication	Consider midazolam 0.5–2 mg iv. Patients with end-stage disease often require very little premedication

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: The choice of sedation or GETA depends on the size and location of lesions. GETA with muscle relaxation is usually required to minimize any involuntary movement caused by IRE ablation. Otherwise, IRE has anesthetic considerations similar to those for radiofrequency ablation. Some small-volume ablations may be tolerated with MAC, and anesthetic requirements should be discussed with the radiologist.

Induction	Standard induction (see p. B-2).
Maintenance	Standard maintenance (see p. B-3). Procedure duration may be unpredictable. It is important that adequate neuromuscular blockade is maintained due to intense direct muscle stimulation that may be caused by IRE treatment.
Emergence	Standard emergence. Short-acting analgesics (e.g., fentanyl 25–150 mcg) should be used in outpatients. Prophylactic treatment with antiemetics may be beneficial because there is a high incidence of PONV.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–14 ga × 1–2 Larger iv access needed for hepatic lesions. NS/LR: 3–5 mL/kg/h

Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1) ± Arterial line ± Foley catheter	↑BP (20–30 mm Hg) is common following treatment cycles, but may be extreme during treatment of upper pole renal tumors (inadvertent adrenal stimulation). Arterial line may be useful for ablation procedures near the heart, for large-volume ablations, and in patients with renal impairment.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Extension of the arms above the head may be required for optimal CT imaging; if prolonged, this may result in a brachial plexus injury, particularly when the patient is in a supine position.
Complications	Hemorrhage	Blood should be readily available. Large retroperitoneal hemorrhage can develop.
	Pneumothorax	Needle decompression and/or thoracostomy tube placement may be necessary during thoracic or high hepatic procedures.
	Muscle stimulation	Intense stimulation of skeletal muscles and the diaphragm may be produced. Movement should be minimalized by use of adequate dosage of muscle relaxants. Neuromuscular monitoring is useful to maintain a constant level of neuromuscular blockade.
	Dysrhythmias	Application of large currents may cause dysrhythmias. Occasionally, the treatment pulses may capture the ventricles resulting in a short run of ventricular tachycardia, which should resolve at the end of each 10 pulse treatment cycle. Although rarely required, a defibrillator/external pacer should be available.
	Acid-base and electrolyte disturbances	Patients may develop ↑ K during ablation of very large tumors or in the presence of preexisting renal impairment. Monitor arterial blood electrolytes during the procedure in those patients.
	Hypothermia	Patients may experience ↓ body temperature during lengthy procedures in the CT scanning room. Lower-body hot-air blankets may be used.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV	Common
	Hemorrhage	Occult blood loss may continue for several hours after the procedure has terminated.
Pain management	Standard pain management	Postprocedural pain is usually mild and well tolerated.
Tests	HCT, as indicated	

Suggested Readings

1. Ball C, Thomson KR, Kavnoudias H: Irreversible electroporation: a new challenge in "out of operating theater" anesthesia. *Anesth Analg* 2010; 110(5):1305–9.
2. Cannon R, Ellis S, Hayes D, et al: Safety and early efficacy of irreversible electroporation for hepatic tumors in proximity to vital structures. *J Surg Oncol* 2013; 107(5):544–9.
3. Gehl J: Electroporation: theory and methods, perspectives for drug delivery, gene therapy and research. *Acta Physiol Scand* 2003; 177(4):437–47.

4. Lee EW, Chen C, Prieto VE, et al: Advanced hepatic ablation technique for creating complete cell death: irreversible electroporation. *Radiology.* 2010; 255(2):426–33.
5. Lee EW, Thai S, Kee ST: Irreversible electroporation: a novel image-guided cancer therapy. *Gut Liver* 2010; Suppl 1: S99–104.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

TIPSS, Transjugular Intrahepatic Porto-Systemic Shunt: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=O2u4_hF3234

ONYX embolization of AVM (skip to minute 5 for the animation): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hgxyPzkiNXU

AVM Embolization Using Onyx-18: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-rI_hOWX39I&NR=1&feature=endscreen

Endovascular Coiling of Unruptured Ophthalmic Artery Aneurysm:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZCF53vczDyo

ICD Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillator: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=F_E06rkY4T8

AERO® Fully Covered Tracheobronchial Stent Video: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0IzNZ4_0rNg

NEJM Procedure: Thrombus Aspiration: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_bUMm8E0w6s

CHAPTER

13.2 Out-of-Operating Room Procedures—Pediatric

PROCEDURAL SPECIALISTS

Claudia Mueller, MD, PhD
William E. Berquist, MD (*Gastroenterology*)
Sarah S. Donaldson, MD, FACR, FASTRO (*Radiation oncology*)
Anne M. Dubin, MD (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization*)
Jeffrey A. Feinstein, MD, MPH (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization*)
Gary E. Hartman, MD (*ECMO*)
Susan Hiniker, MD (*Radiation oncology*)
Neyssa Marina, MD (*Oncology*)
Stanton B. Perry, MD (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization*)
Kalyani R. Trivedi, MD (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization*)
Ann Ming Yeh, MD (*Gastroenterology*)

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Komal Kamra, MD (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization*)
Rebecca E. Claure, MD (*Radiation therapy, oncology, endoscopy, imaging*)
Brenda Golianu, MD (*Radiation therapy, oncology, endoscopy, imaging*)
Manchula Navaratnam, MD (*ECMO*)
Chandra Ramamoorthy, MD (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization, ECMO*)
Kristin Sun, MD (*Oncology*)
Claudia Benkwitz, MD, PhD (*Pediatric cardiac catheterization*)

PEDIATRIC RADIATION THERAPY

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Susan Hiniker and Sarah S. Donaldson

Description: Modern pediatric radiation therapy (XRT) requires that the patient be in a stable and reproducible position for daily treatment. Sharply defined beams with secondary collimation are used to irradiate the tumor volume and to spare normal tissue. Patient movement may undermine techniques for sparing normal tissue, and although movement cannot be completely prevented, it must be minimized. In very young children, it is often impossible to prevent movement and achieve adequate cooperation for radiation treatment. In such cases, daily anesthesia is required. Close cooperation of the radiation oncology and anesthesia teams allows for safe and reproducible daily treatment. In general, children older than 3 or 4 yr can be persuaded to lie still for radiation therapy. Children from 2.5 to 4 yr may cooperate during the treatment (which is usually < 15 min), but not for the treatment planning and simulation, in which an immobilization-stabilization device is made (often requiring 1–1.5 h) (see Fig. 13.2-1). In most infants and young children (< 4 yr), anesthesia is essential.

The optimal position for XRT must also be optimal for the anesthesiologist. Ideally, the area to be treated is determined using 3-dimensional conformal techniques to optimize treatment and to minimize normal tissue exposure. This requires a cross-sectional imaging study (e.g., CT scan), with the patient in the identical position as will be used during the radiation treatment. A series of radiographs are taken at the treatment-planning (simulation) appointment, which typically lasts 1–1.5 h and requires GA. It is essential that there be no patient movement between exposures; if the patient moves, the entire procedure must be repeated. Typically the patient is transported to the CT suite for a 3-dimensional treatment-planning CT scan. Anesthesia preparation may be initiated in the treatment-planning suite, or in a nearby preparation room. After scans are obtained, individual beam-shaping devices are made, and a multistep process of contouring begins for treatment planning.

Seven to 10 days following the initial planning session, the patient often has a verification procedure, which is usually of shorter duration—generally requiring only 30 min of anesthesia time. The verification procedure consists of a series of radiographs using the beam-shaping devices, which simulate the treatment to be given. When this procedure

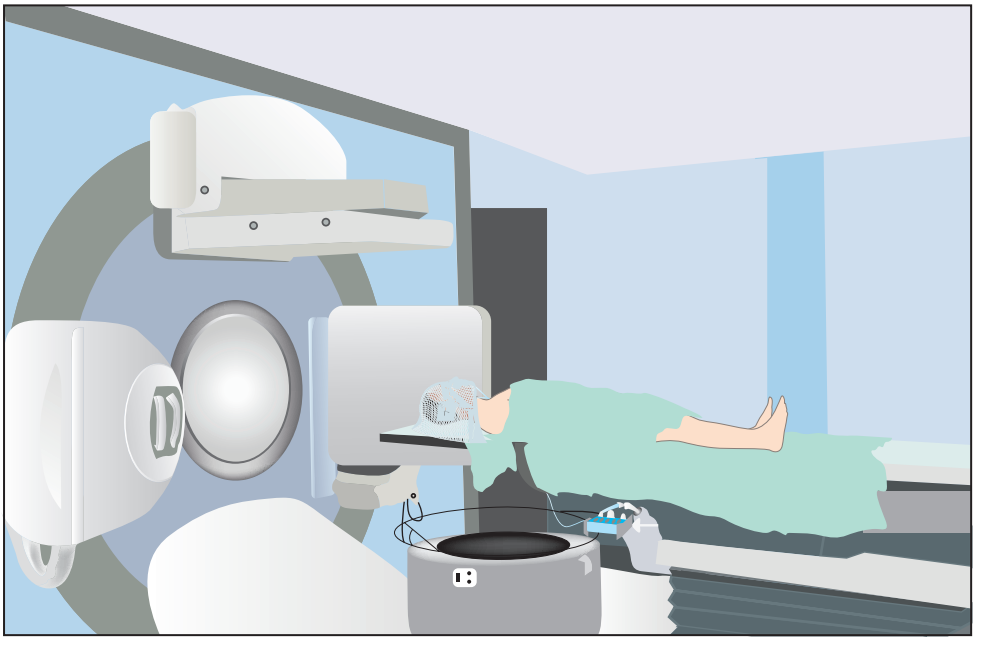


Figure 13.2-1. A radiation therapy vault.

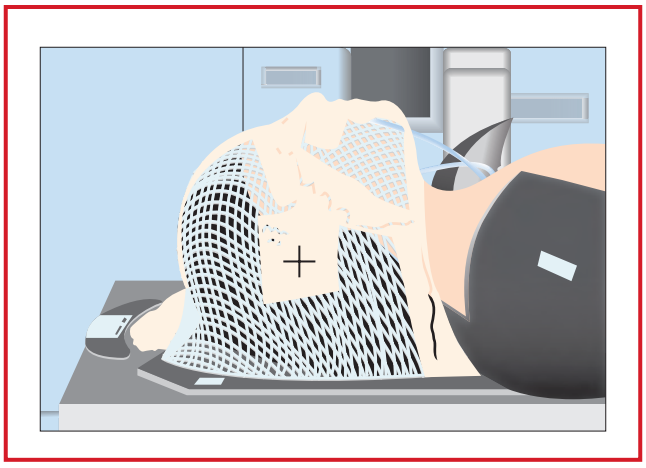


Figure 13.2-2. A plastic immobilization cast of the head.

is successfully completed, the anesthetized patient is moved to the treatment room. The child is put in the identical position achieved during the planning/verification procedures, and treatment is administered.

The first day or two, and weekly thereafter, a verification x-ray (called a "port film") is taken to confirm the accuracy of the treatment field. The treatment itself is only a few minutes in duration for each field; ideally, the entire procedure is completed within 15–30 min. A form of radiotherapy treatment planning and delivery known as intensity-modulated radiotherapy (IMRT) may require slightly longer treatment times due to the larger number and increased complexity of fields treated, while volumetric modulated arc therapy may be of shorter treatment time. A course of treatment may be only a few days or may last for 5–6 wk, generally with treatment given 5 × per week. Occasionally, multiple (2–3) treatments per day are given at 4–8 h (usually 6 h) intervals. At the initial appointment, the patient's optimal position is determined, an immobilization device is constructed, and measurements are taken. The immobilization device is usually a body cradle or cast, and often a head/face mask is made for head and neck or brain treatment (see Fig. 13.2-2). Initially, temporary marks or Band-Aids® are used; however, when the final positioning has been determined, a more permanent mark, such as a tattoo, may be applied. Often, a head holder with a mask is applied to ensure the position for XRT.

In managing certain brain tumors (e.g., medulloblastoma, high-grade intratentorial ependymoma, germ cell tumors, and CNS leukemia), **cranial spinal irradiation** (CSI) may be used. Conventionally, this procedure requires that the patient be placed in the prone position with the head flexed as much as possible to minimize a cervical lordosis. This positioning, however, creates special difficulties for the anesthesiologist. If the child is intubated for the setup, the radiation stabilization device must allow space for the ETT. If the child is not intubated, there must be adequate access to the airway. Current techniques allow patients to be treated with CSI in the supine position, facilitating easier airway access for the anesthesiologist, more secure patient immobilization, and faster treatment times.

Fractionation: Pediatric protocols have been testing the efficacy of giving multiple fractions (treatments) of radiation 2–3 × per day, usually at 6-h intervals, to allow higher total radiation doses to be administered with possible less normal tissue morbidity. These schemes have been or are being evaluated for children with central nervous system tumors and total body irradiation (TBI) in preparation for bone marrow transplantation. Until proven to be of increased efficacy, such schemes should remain part of large protocol studies. The timing of radiotherapy may be at 4-, 6-, or 8-h intervals 2–3 × per day, depending on the protocol. These studies provide several challenges for anesthesiologists, radiotherapists, and parents. Radiotherapy under anesthesia, however, has been successfully administered to infants undergoing multiple fractions per day. Attention must be given to potential malnutrition and/or dehydration from prolonged periods of NPO status.

Total-body irradiation (TBI): Although most TBI techniques are administered with the patient standing, infants and small children must lie prone and supine for the treatment. This positioning requires sedation and/or anesthesia. Gastrointestinal upset, sometimes provoked by the radiation, presents an additional challenge for proper radiotherapy technique, as well as for anesthetic management.

Cranial or Body Radiation/Radiosurgery/IGRT: The technique of using precision, stereotactically localized radiation with a highly collimated radiotherapy photon beam, as generated from a linear accelerator, is currently

being employed for select patients with small cranial, base-of-skull, or body tumors. There is increasing enthusiasm for this technique for infants and children with recurrent posterior fossa and cerebral tumors, craniopharyngiomas, optic nerve and chiasmal gliomas, and small AVMs. Radiosurgery has historically required a frame-based technique that requires 6–10 h of continuous anesthesia while a patient undergoes application of a metal frame, CT localization, and multiport radiotherapy treatment. However, newer technology, using image guidance, called image-guided radiation therapy (IGRT) now allows frameless radiation delivery to the cranium or body. This technique requires a 1–1.5 h treatment planning and simulation session followed by a single fraction or limited number of treatment sessions each lasting 1.5–2 h. These approaches require close coordination between the anesthesiologist, neurosurgeon, oncologic surgeon, and radiotherapist.

IMRT/Protons/VMAT: Recent developments in external beam radiotherapy techniques have allowed for increasingly conformal treatment using intensity-modulated radiation therapy (IMRT) or proton therapy. However, these complex techniques generally involve image-guided therapy and a greater number of beam directions, thereby resulting in longer overall treatment times. The development of volumetric modulated arc therapy (VMAT), in which dose is delivered using a single gantry arc rotation, has allowed for treatment of very conformal volumes with increased speed as well as delivery of fewer monitor units. VMAT is increasingly used in the treatment of pediatric patients, particularly in those who require anesthesia during treatment.

Usual preop diagnosis: Leukemia; brain tumors (benign or malignant); retinoblastoma; solid tumors of childhood.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES

	Standard XRT/IMRT	TBI	Frameless Radiosurgery
Position	Supine or prone	Supine and prone	Supine or prone
Unique considerations	If prone: head flexed for maximal straightening of the C-spine.	May be repeated 2–3 ×/day at 4–6 h intervals.	Head extended for stabilization of airway.
Anesthesia time	Planning: 30–120 min Treatment: < 15 min (IMRT: 15–30 min)	45–60 min < 20 min	30–90 min 90–120 min
Postop care	PACU → home	PACU → room	PACU → home

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

Age range	Usually ≤ 4 yr
Male:Female	1:1
Incidence	NA
Associated conditions:	**Brain tumors:** ↑ ICP is of concern in these patients. Postradiation edema following the first few treatments may further ↑ ICP, with potential for brain stem herniation. Some children with brain stem tumors are particularly difficult to anesthetize, perhaps because of disruption of nerve pathways in those areas of the brain stem that are affected by anesthetics.
Associated conditions: (cont'd)	**Neuroblastoma:** Neuroblastomas are capable of secreting catecholamines and related substances; hence, there is a potential for paroxysmal HTN during anesthesia induction. In these children, the principles of anesthetic management are similar to those for pheochromocytoma. **Retinoblastoma:** It is imperative that the patient be properly immobilized with no movement, as even a mm of change, as occurs with a sigh, may cause unnecessary radiation to the radiosensitive lens and anterior chamber. Optimal anesthesia prevents nystagmus and motion of the head. Even minimal lateral or rotary nystagmus may increase the risk of cataract induction.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Rebecca E. Claure and Brenda Golianu

PREPROCEDURE

Orientation to the XRT suite (see Fig. 13.2-1), positive reinforcement, and play therapy can reduce the number of children requiring anesthesia for XRT; however, the majority of children ≤ 4 yr will require anesthesia. A detailed preanesthesia visit is essential and is also an opportunity to gain the confidence of both child and parents. The majority of these patients will have received chemotherapy and should be evaluated for side effects. The importance of NPO status needs to be stressed repeatedly, discussing the potential danger of emesis during treatment. Written instructions regarding preop protocols are extremely helpful in this context. For children with cancer, prolonged preop fasting for XRT once or twice daily could severely compromise an already marginal nutritional intake. Infants, children, and adolescents should be encouraged to drink clear liquids until 2 h before treatment. Milk and solid foods should be held for an appropriate time interval (6–8 h depending on age. See Appendix D). Reassessment before each anesthetic is recommended because the patient's medical status may change during the course of radiation therapy. Some children will have Sx of ↑ ICP, which must be taken into account when designing an anesthetic plan to avoid ↑ $PaCO_2$ and other factors that may further ↑ ICP.

The most common diagnoses are primary CNS tumor (28–33%), retinoblastoma (9–26%), acute leukemia (9–26%), neuroblastoma (2–18%), lymphoma (8%), rhabdomyosarcoma (5–7%), Wilms' tumor (5%), and Ewings (5%). The total number of treatments can range from 1 to 65 (median 20–24). Many patients require a mold of the head and neck. Children can range in age from infants to adolescents, with a median age of 2.4–3.8 yr.

Respiratory	Careful evaluation for respiratory compromise due to chemotherapy. Patients with Sx of URI (rhinorrhea, cough, fever) are commonly seen during XRT treatment. If Sxs are significant, XRT should be delayed, and the patient should be evaluated by primary service. Fortunately, most children can be managed without the use of an ETT, which itself can increase the risk of oxygen desaturation, laryngospasm, and bronchospasm. The benefit of XRT vs delaying treatment must be balanced against the risks of anesthesia. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Cardiac	Careful evaluation for cardiac compromise due to chemotherapy. **Tests:** As indicated from H&P
Neurologic	Patients with intracranial tumors may have ↑ ICP. Postradiation edema following the first few treatments may further ↑ ICP. Sx includes irritability, HA, N/V, and papilledema. Suspicion of ↑ ICP mandates ETT intubation and controlled ventilation to induce hypocarbia.
Laboratory	Tests as indicated from H&P
Premedication	Usually unnecessary in this patient group. Parents usually present for induction, and majority of patients have some form of central venous access or heplock in situ. If inhalational induction necessary, midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po may be helpful. Inappropriate sedation may cause respiratory or cardiovascular depression and prolong recovery.

INTRAPROCEDURE

Anesthetic technique: Provision of anesthesia to children at sites remote from the OR is challenging. During XRT, patients must remain immobile so that the tumor can be reliably irradiated while minimizing damage to uninvolved tissue. Anesthetic goals should include patient immobility, rapid onset, brief duration of action, and prompt recovery. The anesthetic should allow maintenance of a patent airway and spontaneous ventilation in a variety of body positions. Ketamine is a potent sialogogue and can cause nystagmus, which prevents precision radiation of retinoblastomas. It may cause prolonged or unpleasant emergence and should be avoided in patients with ↑ ICP. Choice of anesthetic technique may be limited by equipment or logistical issues. Anesthesia machines may not be available in all XRT suites.

Induction	**IV:** Propofol (2–4 mg/kg), titrated slowly to effect. Additional propofol boluses may be needed as patients may develop tolerance. Intubation is usually not needed. **Inhalation:** Mask induction with sevoflurane is appropriate in children without iv access and may be preferred by some children. The airway can almost always be maintained by careful positioning and extension of the neck. It is essential that this same degree of extension/flexion be maintained for each treatment. A molded immobilization device may be placed over the patient's head and neck (see Fig. 13.2-2).	
Maintenance	**IV:** Propofol (100–250 mcg/kg/min) by continuous infusion. Supplemental O_2 should be administered via nasal prongs. **Inhalation:** Sevoflurane in O_2	
Emergence	Patients awaken rapidly following cessation of propofol infusion or sevoflurane. XRT may cause nausea/vomiting, so antiemetics should be given (ondansetron 0.1–0.15 mg/kg). Avoid dexamethasone (may conflict with chemotherapy protocols and in rare cases may cause tumor lysis syndrome).	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: Central access NS/LR: Routine maintenance	Majority of children receiving radiotherapy have some form of central venous access.
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. D-1).	A critical problem is the lack of access to the patient and monitors during XRT. A video camera with a zoom lens can focus on the monitors, and a second camera is trained on the patient. In XRT suites with a viewing window, a small marker may be placed on the chest so that the rise and fall of chest motion is seen easily.
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Careful positioning 2° possible chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy.
Complications	Airway obstruction Patient movement	Respiratory obstruction may occur; it usually responds to nasal or oral airways and careful repositioning. Deepen anesthesia.

POSTPROCEDURE

Complications	PONV	Many patients have chemotherapy-induced nausea, which may be exacerbated by anesthesia, XRT, and stress.
	Central line sepsis	Patients may be immunocompromised following chemotherapy. Attention to sterility during access of the central venous line is critical because repeated use by multiple health care providers ↑ risk of catheter contamination. Aseptic preparation of anesthetic iv medications, especially propofol, is important.
	Cerebral edema	In patients with ↑ ICP, XRT can provoke an acute ↑ ICP, with consequent ↑ HA, ↑ N/V, ↓ consciousness, and cardiac arrest. These patients should be monitored × 24-h post-XRT.
Pain management	Standard approaches	Radiation treatments are not associated with pain, but narcotics may be useful in relieving pain associated with neoplastic disease.

Suggested Readings

1. Buehrer S, Immoos S, Frei M, et al: Evaluation of propofol for repeated prolonged deep sedation in children undergoing proton radiation therapy. *Br J Anaesth* 2007; 99(4):556–60.

2. Keidan I, Perel A, Shabtai E, et al: Children undergoing repeated exposures for radiation therapy do not develop tolerance to propofol. *Anesthesiology* 2004; 100(2):251–4.
3. McFadyen JG, Pelly N, Orr RJ: Sedation and anesthesia for the pediatric patient undergoing radiation therapy. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2011; 24(4):433–8.
4. Parker WA, Freeman CR: A simple technique for craniospinal irradiation in the supine position. *Radiother Oncol* 2006; 78(2):217–22.
5. Seiler G, De Vol E, Khafaga Y, et al: Evaluation of the safety and efficacy of repeated sedations for the radiotherapy of young children with cancer: a prospective study of 1033 consecutive sedations. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2001; 49(3):771–83.
6. Tsai YL, Tsai SC, Yen SH, et al: Efficacy of therapeutic play for pediatric brain tumor patients during external beam radiotherapy. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2013; 29(7):1123–9.

PEDIATRIC CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION AND ELECTROPHYSIOLOGY

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Kalyani R. Trivedi, Anne M. Dubin, Stanton B. Perry, and Jeffrey A. Feinstein

Cardiac catheterization and electrophysiology testing have evolved over the recent decades from purely diagnostic tools to combined diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Although the use of GA varies from institution to institution, higher levels of sedation are required at a minimum for critically ill patients, those requiring complex interventional strategies, small children who must remain totally still, and when TEE is used for image-guided therapy. A thorough review of diagnostic and interventional cardiac catheterization and electrophysiology is not possible in this chapter, and the interested reader is referred to the multiple textbooks available on the subject.

The placement of anesthesia equipment for these procedures must allow for (a) proper positioning of the patient, (b) easy access to the head and neck and/or groin for the physician performing the procedure, and (c) rotation and angulation of the imaging equipment. The goal of sedation in all of these procedures is to provide a nontraumatic, safe environment for the patient. Many patients can be cared for adequately and safely using conscious sedation; however, there is a subset of pediatric patients who may require GA. This group may include patients with complex congenital heart disease, ventricular dysfunction, or airway abnormalities. It is important to understand that certain anesthetic agents may alter cardiac conduction, making arrhythmia inducibility more difficult. Catecholamine-dependent arrhythmias, such as an automatic atrial tachycardia, may be impossible to induce with the patient under GA. Furthermore, the arrhythmia itself may complicate anesthetic care, by causing sudden decreases in BP due to excessively rapid rates. In patients undergoing radiofrequency ablation (RFA) in areas close to other critical structures of the heart, GA may be necessary to keep the patient motionless during application of energy.

VASCULAR ACCESS

The modified **Seldinger technique** of cannulating blood vessels percutaneously is used to establish vascular access for cardiac catheterization. (The femoral, IJ, and subclavian veins are most commonly used for venous access.) Transhepatic access to the IVC has been used safely and successfully in patients without femoral venous access. The femoral artery is most commonly used, although the carotid and axillary arteries may be used for specific procedures or when there is bilateral femoral artery occlusion. In newborns, the umbilical artery and vein may be used. Access may be especially difficult in patients who have undergone multiple previous procedures. In the most severe cases, **reconstructive transcatheter techniques,** including **balloon angioplasty** and **stent implantation** to rehabilitate the vessels, have been used to allow future catheter-based diagnostic and therapeutic interventions.

Infiltration of the skin and the subcutaneous tissues with a local anesthetic agent to reduce pain is used when the procedure is being performed under conscious sedation. With GA, infiltration of a local anesthetic agent may be deferred to the end of the procedure to alleviate pain and discomfort at vascular access sites during recovery.

HEMODYNAMIC DATA

O_2 sat measurements are made routinely in the various cardiac chambers, vena cavae, and great vessels. These measurements are used to calculate the systemic flow (CO, Q_s), pulmonary flow (Q_p), the ratio of the pulmonary to systemic flow (Q_p:Q_s), and PVR and SVR.

It is ideal to obtain the data with the patient awake and breathing spontaneously in room air. This is rarely possible in pediatric patients. The use of light anesthesia and sedation during the diagnostic part of the study facilitates acquisition of data in as near-normal state as possible. It is important to recognize and limit effects on intracardiac and intrapulmonary pressures and systemic and pulmonary resistances when the procedure is done under GA with IPPV. At a minimum, and when tolerated, baseline hemodynamic measurements should be performed with an FiO_2 as close to 0.21 as possible. In some cases, additional diagnostic information may be collected to study the effects of O_2, NO, vasodilators or inotropes, exercise and balloon occlusion of intracardiac or extracardiac shunts on the CO, pulmonary flow, and PVR and SVR.

From O_2 sat, dissolved O_2 (PO_2), and Hb measurements, the O_2 content (mL/dL) of the mixed venous blood and systemic arterial blood is used to calculate systemic AV O_2 content difference. Pulmonary AV O_2 content difference is similarly estimated by calculating the O_2 content of pulmonary venous and arterial blood. Systemic (Q_s) and pulmonary flow (Q_p) can then be derived using the **Fick principle:**

$$\text{Flow (Q)(L/min)} = \frac{O_2 \text{ consumption (mL/min)}}{\text{AV } O_2 \text{ difference (mL of } O_2\text{/L of blood)}}$$

When the partial pressure of dissolved O_2 is < 100, the PO_2 portion of the equation can be negated, and the flow can be calculated using the O_2 consumption and O_2 sat measurements alone.

$$\text{Pulmonary Flow } (Q_p) = \frac{O_2 \text{ consumption}}{\text{Pulmonary vein } SaO_2 - \text{Pulmonary artery } SaO_2}$$

$$\text{Systemic Flow } (Q_s) = \frac{O_2 \text{ consumption}}{\text{Systemic artery } SaO_2 - \text{Mixed venous } SaO_2}$$

Based on Ohms law, which states V = IR, where V = voltage (or pressure drop) across a circuit, I = the current (or flow) through the circuit, and R = the resistance in the circuit. SVR and PVR can be calculated as follows:

$$PVR = (PA_p - LA_p)/Q_p$$
$$SVR = (Ao_p - RA_p)/Q_s$$

Where PA_p = pulmonary artery pressure; LA_p = left atrial pressure; Ao_p = aortic pressure; and RA_p = right atrial pressure; pulmonary vascular resistance = PVR; systemic vascular resistance = SVR.

ANGIOGRAPHY

Biplane cineangiography is performed to delineate intracardiac or vascular anatomy and to evaluate ventricular function. Images are obtained by injection of radiographic contrast agents through angiographic catheters positioned in appropriate locations. The angiograms may be performed in posteroanterior and lateral projections or by angling the cameras to obtain cranial, caudal, left anterior, or right anterior oblique projections. Based on the site of injection and the information required, the injection may be performed with a power injector, delivering large amounts of contrast quickly, or by hand.

INTERVENTIONAL PROCEDURES

Valvuloplasty

Aortic valvuloplasty: A retrograde approach from the femoral artery generally is used, although an antegrade and transseptal approach from the femoral vein is preferred by some. In either approach, following hemodynamic evaluation and angiographic estimate of the aortic valve annulus, a wire is positioned across the valve, and a balloon catheter is advanced over the wire and positioned across the aortic valve. The balloon is then inflated and deflated quickly. The inflation of the balloon leads to a transient loss of CO, ↓ SBP, and occasionally may be accompanied by ↓ HR. These hemodynamic changes recover quickly on balloon deflation. Although complications of aortic valvuloplasty are rare, the anesthesiologist must be "prepared for the worst," which includes annular rupture and the creation of significant aortic regurgitation.

Pulmonic valvuloplasty: After femoral venous or IJ access is obtained, the technique for balloon dilation of the pulmonary valve is nearly identical to that outlined above for the aortic valve. Loss of CO and ↓ HR are seen during the time of balloon inflation with this intervention as well. Although annular rupture also is a potential complication of this procedure, the creation of pulmonary insufficiency is of less concern and better tolerated than aortic insufficiency.

Angioplasty

A number of transcatheter treatment options are available for management of **pulmonary artery stenoses,** including **balloon angioplasty** and **endovascular stent implantation.** Angioplasty has been shown to be highly effective in anatomically appropriate cases with a low complication rate. Hemodynamic and angiographic assessment of the lesion is obtained, followed by selection of an optimal balloon catheter, based on both the size of the stenosis and surrounding "normal" tissue. Using the same "over-the-wire technique," a balloon is advanced and centered over the stenosis. Hemodynamic and angiographic data are assessed following each intervention. A high index of suspicion for complications—including dissection or pulmonary artery tear, obstructive intimal flaps, thrombi, and reperfusion pulmonary edema—is justified, as management may require ventilatory manipulations and/or emergent cardiovascular resuscitation.

Balloon angioplasty of coarctation of the aorta may be performed for treatment of native or recurrent coarctation. Angiography of the aorta is performed to delineate the coarctation and estimate the dimension of the coarctated segment and the adjacent aorta. As with other angioplasty techniques, the balloon size is based on the dimensions of the stenotic area and surrounding vessel. Transient loss of lower body perfusion and ↓ HR are to be expected, as with balloon valvuloplasty, on inflation of the balloon. Pressure and angiographic data are obtained to determine adequacy of results and absence of complications. There is a 4–5% incidence of intimal tear and dissection that, in most cases, are nonprogressive. Rarely, aortic disruption may require emergent surgical repair.

Endovascular Stent Placement

Stent implantation in the pulmonary arteries or for aortic coarctation is used to maintain vessel diameter and decreased gradients in patients unresponsive to balloon dilation. Stents are mounted on balloon catheters, and the balloon/stent combination is advanced over a previously placed wire. A long sheath (originating in the groin or neck) is placed across the area of narrowing to prevent the stent from slipping off the balloon catheter as it makes its way through the heart or vessels. After the stent has been properly positioned, the long sheath is withdrawn to expose the balloon/stent combination. The balloon is inflated to expand the stent and appose it to the vessel wall. Placement of long sheaths, particularly through the right ventricular outflow tract (RVOT), can be difficult and may result in transient bradyarrhythmias and loss of CO.

Closure of Congenital Defects

Atrial septal defects (ASDs): As many as 80–85% of secundum ASDs may be amenable to device closure in the cath lab. Most devices currently used include a left atrial disc with an occlusive membrane, a central spool or connecting pin, and a right atrial disc with an occlusive membrane. The membrane occludes flow through the defect, and within months, the device becomes incorporated into the septum due to endothelialization. A sizing balloon inflated across the defect permits estimation of the stretched diameter. A long sheath is then placed across the defect over a wire. The device attached to the delivery cable is loaded in the long sheath and advanced to the left atrium. The left atrial disc is opened, the device is withdrawn until the left atrial disc is in contact with the atrial septum; then the right atrial disc is opened, effectively "sandwiching" the atrial septum between the two discs. TEE is used to guide placement of the device. Intracardiac ECHO offers ECHO guidance without the requirement of GA.

Ventricular septal defect (VSD): Closure with a device can be performed in the cath lab for isolated or multiple muscular VSDs, as well as perimembranous defects. The technique requires establishment of a continuous AV guide wire loop across the defect. Most often, the wire course is from the femoral vein, through the right atrium, into the RV, across the VSD, out the aortic valve, around the aorta, and out the femoral artery. The device is then deployed via a long sheath placed across the VSD through the RV aspect. Hemodynamic compromise may be seen with tension on the wire if aortic or tricuspid insufficiency is induced. Transient arrhythmias are routine while crossing the VSD and deploying the device. Great care must be taken to avoid entrapment in the mitral, aortic, and tricuspid valves during device deployment. In addition to fluoroscopy, TEE is used to guide placement of the device. Improvements in the devices developed more recently have significantly reduced the cath lab morbidity of this procedure.

Coil occlusion: Aortopulmonary collaterals, AVMs, Blalock-Taussig (B-T) shunts, venous collaterals, coronary artery fistulae, and patent ductus arteriosi (PDA) have all been successfully occluded using the technique of coil

embolization. The embolization coils consist of a metal wire, either stainless steel or platinum, ± Dacron strands, and are available in multiple sizes, lengths, and shapes. Although PDA or coronary artery fistula embolization may obviate the need for surgery, most embolizations serve to either reduce the cardiac workload by decreasing the amount of shunting or simplify a planned surgical procedure.

The technique for coil closure of collaterals or other communications is straightforward. A catheter is placed in the vessel to be occluded, and a selective angiogram is done to delineate the anatomy and diameter of the vessel to be closed. Coils that are slightly larger than the diameter of the vessel are used because the vessel will distend when the coil is deployed. Using a long "pusher" wire, the coil is advanced through the catheter and deployed in the vessel. Repeat angiography is performed to confirm complete closure. If residual flow remains, additional coils are placed. Coil dislodgement and embolization to a distal blood vessel are the most common complications. In general, the errant coil can be retrieved in the cath lab without much difficulty and a new coil of a larger size placed to occlude the vessel.

OTHER PROCEDURES

Endomyocardial biopsy is commonly performed for rejection surveillance in patients following cardiac transplantation. It also may be performed in patients presenting with acute onset of cardiomyopathy for histopathological Dx of myocarditis. The preferred site for obtaining cardiac biopsy is the RV aspect of the intraventricular septum. The specimen is obtained with a biopsy forceps advanced to the RV through a long sheath. It is usual to obtain four to five specimens to improve the diagnostic gain, as the histopathological changes can be patchy. Complications of endomyocardial biopsy include cardiac perforation and tricuspid valve damage. GA is required in patients with compromised airway and/or cardiopulmonary status from lymphoproliferative disease or obesity 2° to steroid therapy.

A variety of other transcatheter therapeutic procedures may be performed in the cardiac cath suite. **Rashkind balloon atrial septostomy, static balloon septoplasty, Brockenbrough transseptal needle puncture,** and **radiofrequency-assisted perforation** of the pulmonary valve or the atrial septum are all less commonly used than the procedures described above, but routinely are undertaken in high-volume cath labs.

ELECTROPHYSIOLOGY STUDY (EPS)

Patients with atrial or ventricular arrhythmias may require either diagnostic or therapeutic interventions in the cath lab. EP studies are catheterization procedures in which intracardiac electrical signals are recorded via specialized catheters that can both record electrical activity and stimulate the heart. These studies often are used to make a Dx of the mechanism of arrhythmia, assess the hemodynamic impact of the arrhythmia, assess efficacy of pharmacologic therapy, and map the location of abnormal conduction pathways or automatic foci. Although routine studies usually take 2–3 h, some may be quite lengthy.

Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) is a procedure in which abnormal electrical conducting pathways or automatic electrical foci (identified by EPS) are destroyed, using the application of RF energy delivered through a deflectable electrode catheter. This procedure was first described in pediatric surgery in 1991, but has rapidly become a preferred therapeutic option for supraventricular tachycardia in this population. On some occasions, RF lesions must be placed close to other critical structures in the heart (e.g., AV node).

With advances in technology and an increased understanding of high-risk pediatric patient populations, **transvenous pacemaker** and **implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD)** placements are becoming more common in the pediatric population. Pacemaker placement has become more common as data have accumulated regarding the risk of sudden death in patients with congenital complete heart block, as well as increased survival with postop heart block. New indications for ICD placement in patients with long-QT syndrome, congenital heart disease, and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy have increased the number of ICD implantations in the last 5 yr. These procedures are commonly performed in the cath lab under GA.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Claudia Benkwitz, Komal Kamra, and Chandra Ramamoorthy

PREPROCEDURE

Cardiac catheterization and interventional procedures in children, ranging from those requiring simple diagnostic procedures to those requiring complex interventional procedures, such as balloon angioplasties or stent placements, have facilitated care of younger, smaller, and sicker patients. These patients are often challenging for the

anesthesiologist due to their abnormal cardiac anatomy and physiology. Many of them have undergone repeated catheterizations and have had multiple anesthetics. All patients require a thorough preanesthetic evaluation with emphasis on cardiorespiratory function and associated comorbidities (almost 30% of patients show associated anomalies or syndromes with Down syndrome being the most common). Most children will follow the same NPO protocol as they would for surgery (see NPO Guidelines, p. D-1). Particular attention should be paid to patients with single-ventricle physiology (Fontan circulation), who are dependent on their venous return for hemodynamic stability and oxygenation as well as prone to shunt thrombosis, specifically when dehydrated. In such patients early establishment of iv access to prevent dehydration is advisable. Clear liquids can be given up to 2 h before surgery.

Previous anesthesia	✓ Surgical, interventional and radiological procedures; h/o difficult access; endotracheal tube size and anesthetic techniques; problems with previous anesthetics.
Family history	✓ Family history for anesthetic-related problems; h/o malignant hyperthermia.
Prematurity	✓ Gestational age. Need for postop admission and apnea monitoring if < 55 wk post-conceptual age; any associated clinical problems.
Neurological	✓ Head ultrasound in neonates to rule out ischemia and hemorrhage; note preoperative neurological status due to risk of embolism during procedure; h/o seizures or developmental delay. Heparinization during cardiac catheterization may increase the risk of bleeding.
Craniofacial and airway	✓ H/o difficult airway; any surgery to the airway; h/o tracheal stenosis due to multiple intubations in the past; stridor due to laryngo- or bronchomalacia; h/o loose teeth. **Tests:** Recent bronchoscopy, imaging of the airway.
Respiratory	✓ Current problem(s): ✓ Respiratory reserve (i.e. playing activities, respiratory rate, nasal flaring, intercostal/subcostal retractions, diaphoresis). ✓ H/o cyanosis, chronic cough, steroid use for RAD and other chronic respiratory problems → ensure that they are under optimal control. ✓ H/o recent URI → risk of adverse perioperative events. ✓ Patients with pulmonary hypertension may have obstructive sleep apnea. ✓ Cardiac transplant patients can develop lymphoproliferative disease, which results in redundant lymphoid tissue in the pharynx and epiglottis → possible airway obstruction. ✓ Requirement for supplemental O_2, CPAP, BiPAP, nitric oxide. Medications for pulmonary HTN should be continued. **Tests:** SpO_2, CXR to r/o infiltrates, CHF and cardiomegaly, PFTs. Compare with baseline. Assess perfusion scan for distribution of PBF if necessary.
Cardiovascular	✓Current problem(s): ✓ Past surgical history, pacemaker, ICD, etc. If the patient has a pacemaker → check settings, indication(s), underlying rhythm, pacer dependency, and last interrogation. ✓ Existing shunts → may affect anesthetic plan and FiO_2. ✓ Assess cardiopulmonary reserve (e.g., exercise tolerance, diaphoresis, SOB, feeding difficulties, poor weight gain). ✓ H/o syncope, hypoxic spells, chest pain. Transplant patients may develop CAD. ✓ Arrhythmias, palpitations, murmurs, pulses in all extremities. **Tests:** SpO_2, ECG; BP (upper/lower extremity) ✓ Recent ECHO and cardiac catheterization reports.
Gastrointestinal	✓ Feeding difficulties, reflux due to chronic use of steroids. May have G-tube/Nissen. ✓ Some single-ventricle patients may have hepatic dysfunction and protein-losing enteropathy (↑ risk ascites, pleural/pericardial effusion, infection).
Renal	✓ Patients with CHF are frequently on diuretics and/or ACE inhibitors/digoxin → expect hypovolemia and potential electrolyte disturbances (i.e. ↑ ↓ K^+). ✓ Transplant recipients may develop renal dysfunction due to antirejection medication or HTN. ✓ Patients may have had renal insult during previous surgery. **Tests:** ✓ BUN and Cr as these patients are also at risk for renal injury due to contrast and also to guide hydration therapy.
Endocrine/ steroid	✓ Transplant patients are on steroids. ✓ for other endocrine concerns.
Hematology/ immunology	✓ History of previous transfusions and reactions. Immunological deficiency that may affect the type of blood transfusion (e.g., neonates require CMV negative blood and products). **Tests:** Recent hematocrit

Syndromes	✓ For coexisting syndromes and associated anomalies.
Ob/Gyn	✓ Last menstrual period.
Vascular	✓ H/o thromboembolism. H/o difficult access and vascular occlusion.
Current medications	✓ Stop warfarin before cardiac catheterization. Anticoagulate with heparin if needed. ✓ Coagulation studies prior to procedure. ✓ Antiarrhythmic drugs are usually stopped prior to EP studies unless the arrhythmia is frequent and poorly tolerated. Hold diuretics and ACE inhibitor starting the night before due to ↑ risk for hypotension following induction; continue other cardiac meds.
Laboratory	✓ CBC: Use Hgb/HCT baseline to determine need for transfusion; ↑ Hgb/HCT suggests chronic hypoxia; transfusion threshold will vary depending on patient age and comorbidities. Severe anemia should be corrected prior to cath. ✓ Have T&C blood available in the catheterization lab for procedures with risk of increased bleeding. ✓ WBC: if the child has a h/o fever and recent URI. ✓ Electrolytes/Bun & creatinine, especially if the patient is on diuretics and/or digitalis. ✓ Coagulation studies ✓ Drug levels (e.g., digitalis, antiseizure medications) to ensure therapeutic range. Pregnancy test: must be done the morning of surgery if patient has attained menarche.
Premedication	✓ Midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po. Be cautious in patients with OSA as they are more sensitive to respiratory depression. Cyanotic kids should have O_2 saturation monitored before and continuously after premedication. Antibiotics are given to patients as required for SBE prophylaxis or for those undergoing interventional procedures. In patients scheduled for EP studies in whom anxiety is a known precipitant of the arrhythmia, preop anxiolysis is a relative contraindication as it may result in a false-negative study.
NPO	ASA fasting guidelines should be followed (see D-1, NPO guidelines). Prolonged NPO in single-ventricle physiology and other shunt-dependent lesions should be avoided, as shunt flow might decrease with dehydration → ↑ viscosity → ↑ shunt thrombosis.
Equipment	Transport patient to and from the catheterization lab with a pulse oximeter and other monitors as appropriate. Equipment to manage difficult airway and hemodynamically unstable patients should be readily available (e.g., difficult airway cart, I-stat, arterial line, blood pump, pumps to infuse vasopressors, pacemaker, defibrillator, NIRS).

INTRAPROCEDURE

Anesthetic technique: Cardiac catheterization can be done under sedation, monitored anesthesia care, and general anesthesia. Spontaneously breathing patient is preferable so as to mimic normal baseline cardiac and respiratory physiologic state, and to perform subsequent hemodynamic calculations. General anesthesia may be a safer option for neonates and younger children because of patient anxiety, longer duration of procedure, and clinical state of the patient. Patients with moderate to severe pulmonary hypertension present extra challenges and care for these patients differs among institutions. Because physiological changes associated with intubation, and more likely extubation, might result in a pulmonary hypertensive crisis in these patients, sedation is favored by some anesthesiologists. However, others prefer muscle relaxation and ETT placement, as hypoxia-hypercarbia related to an unsecured airway can also lead to life-threatening increases in PAP. Older children or patients undergoing procedures of shorter duration with no other significant comorbidities may tolerate incremental iv sedation with local anesthesia.

A large variety of drug regimens can be used to provide anesthesia/sedation for children undergoing cardiac catheterization procedures. These include propofol, ketamine, remifentanil, dexmedetomidine, midazolam, fentanyl, and morphine infusions either alone or in combination. While all have been used successfully, bradycardia/sinus arrest, heart block, hypotension, transient increase in systemic and pulmonary pressures (SVR > PVR) after rapid bolus injection, as well as insufficient anesthesia/analgesia and prolonged recovery have repeatedly been reported when dexmedetomidine was used (usually 1 mcg/kg bolus followed by 0.5–2 mcg/kg/h infusion). Independent of what technique is ultimately used, normoxia and normocarbia are key for these procedures, since hypoxemia, hyperoxemia, acidosis/alkalosis, and positive pressure ventilation (PPV) all exert significant disturbances in pulmonary vascular resistance. At our institution, a combination of propofol with ketamine (1–2 mg of ketamine/10 mg of propofol

at 25–200 mcg/kg/min) is the preferred option since it provides an almost ideal combination of deep sedation with analgesia, stable hemodynamics, and a spontaneously breathing patient.

PPV decreases systemic venous return, particularly in the setting of depleted intravascular volume. This is of particular relevance in those patients with restrictive RV or single-ventricle physiology, where pulmonary blood flow is mostly passive and depends on adequate preload. When possible, patients with Fontan physiology should be allowed to breathe spontaneously. This improves pulmonary blood flow and hence systemic blood flow and cardiac output.

ECMO backup should be considered in patients with poor ejection fraction and critically ill neonates. Rarely, for certain interventional procedures, surgical backup and OR availability may have to be prioritized. Significant preparation and coordination are necessary to transport a newborn from the delivery room to catheterization lab for emergent procedure such as atrial septectomy.

Induction	Standard inhalation or iv induction (see D-1). As in all patients with CV morbidities having anesthesia, the choice of anesthetic drugs must include careful consideration of their effects on myocardial contractility, preload and after-load, pulmonary and systemic vascular resistance and respiration.
Maintenance	General anesthesia with volatile agents (e.g., sevoflurane) or iv infusion with ETT/LMA to protect airway or O_2 supplementation via mask/nasal cannula if deemed appropriate. Most catheterizations require the patient to be maintained on room air for accurate O_2 sat and pressure measurements. With higher FiO_2 (> 0.3), firstly, it will be necessary to consider the dissolved oxygen fraction when calculating Qp with the Fick equation. Secondly, high inspired FiO_2 will likely result in a reduction of PVR and thereby increasing the Qp/Qs ratio. More importantly any FiO_2 changes should be communicated with the interventionalist so that Qp:Qs calculations can be corrected. Patients with pulmonary HTN presenting for cardiac catheterization are at high risk for adverse events. Avoid the routine use of antisialogogues so that the heart rate remains at baseline. While there are differences among institutions, our institutional practice for these patients is to maintain spontaneous ventilation (uninstrumented airway) under propofol-ketamine anesthesia. Patients requiring ASD device closure require TEE placement to guide the correct placement of the device; endotracheal intubation is necessary. EP studies are best managed with iv propofol 75–200 mcg/kg/min, because this agent has the least ability to induce dysrhythmias or to interfere with the induction of tachyarrhythmias for diagnostic purposes. Sevoflurane or isoflurane (< 1 MAC) as well as a combination of propofol and ketamine (7.5–20 mcg/kg/min) are also acceptable. In contrast, remifentanil and Dexmedetomidine were both shown to significantly depress sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodal function and are therefore not desirable in patients undergoing EPS for ablation of SVT. Yet, in patients with a history of prolonged QT interval, TIVA (propofol/remifentanil) is recommended since both drugs have been shown to have none to minimal effects on the QTc interval. In this group of patients, dexmedetomidine should be likewise avoided as it prolongs the QT interval. Caution should be exercised with reversal agents and various antiemetics, including 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists, since they can also prolong the QT interval. Since the electrophysiologist is often aware of the likely underlying mechanism of the arrhythmia, this allows for adaptation of the anesthesia technique that is the least likely to interfere with the patient's electrophysiology. Heparin 50–100 U/kg is given for patients with arterial sheaths. The activated clotting time (ACT) should be in the range of > 300 sec during the procedure and < 175 sec when the catheters are removed. Once the sheath is removed, a considerable amount of time is needed to attain hemostasis. NO may be required for the Rx of pulmonary HTN.
Emergence	If the patient's clinical status allows deep extubation, it can be done to prevent coughing. Use of remifentanil infusion may provide analgesia during the procedure, yet allow for a rapid emergence. Consider remifentanil for patients with pulmonary HTN and controlled ventilation, where a smooth emergence is essential to prevent a hypertensive crisis. Interventional procedures and EP/ablation require hospital admission for observation.

Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 1 NS/LR PRBCs Fluid warmer	A second volume iv may be desirable for interventional cases. The cardiologist also will have a venous access line that can be used if necessary. Interventional procedures may cause tearing of vessels and/or myocardium and can cause abrupt hemorrhage; therefore, blood must be available in the room. Neonates can lose significant blood during access and sampling and may also require transfusion. Follow serial Hcts.
Monitoring	Standard monitors, including ± arterial line ± Foley catheter ± NIRS	Respiratory monitoring can be performed via oxygen masks or nasal cannulae adapted to measure CO_2 flow in a spontaneously breathing patient. Discuss with the cardiologist if A-line access is required. Frequently, the femoral artery is cannulated for the catheterization and may be available for use; However, access may be limited at critical times (e.g. stenting or coiling), and therefore a peripheral arterial line may be desirable. For cases of long duration, consider Foley catheter placement. Monitor temperature. Cerebral oximeter monitoring is recommended in single-ventricle and in other cyanotic lesions as pulse oximetry is a poor predictor of changes in cerebral saturation. Arterial line also plays an important role in patients with poor cardiac function and/or placement of melody valve.
Positioning	✓ pad pressure points ✓ cover eyes	Supine, arms may be flexed above head to allow fluoroscopy of chest. Adolescent patients are at risk of brachial plexus injury. Keep extension < 90°. All ECG leads and monitoring wires must be cleared from axilla and chest to allow fluoroscopy.
Complications	Airway obstruction	Rx: Airway support, oral/nasal airway, LMA. Intubate if necessary.
	Aspiration	Rx: Suction, secure airway if needed. Bronchodilators, H_1, H_2 blockers if needed. CXR. O_2 monitoring. Admit if postop oxygen requirement persists.
	Arrhythmias	Determine etiology, whether hemodynamically stable or not. Cardiovert/defibrillate/emergency drugs as necessary. Check electrolytes, ABG. Consult EP.
	Hemorrhage (access site, rupture of vessels, tamponade)	Rx: Fluid resuscitation with crystalloid, 5% albumin and/or blood; vasopressors as needed. Secure airway, 100% FiO_2. Check Hct.
	Valvular incompetence (severe regurgitation/annular rupture)	Rx: Secure airway, volume resuscitation, vasopressor support, consult surgeon and proceed with emergent surgical repair if needed.
	Hypoxemia	Try to determine the cause. Check Hct in single-ventricle patients. Rx: Airway support; increase FiO_2. Intubate and ventilate as needed.
	Pulmonary hypertensive crisis	Avoid hypoxia, hypercarbia, acidosis, pain/agitation. Rx: FiO_2 100%, deepen anesthetic if tolerated. Consider NO, systemic vasopressors.
	Contrast reaction/anaphylaxis	Rx: Support airway, 100% FiO_2, intubate if needed: phenylephrine, volume resuscitation, steroid, antihistamine, H_2 blocker.

Complications (cont'd)	Hypothermia	Especially neonates. Rx: Forced-air warming device, heat lamp. Increase environmental temperature.
	Air embolism	Rx: 100% FiO_2; identify and occlude source; Trendelenburg; fluid resuscitation; vasopressor support. Aspirate air from central access if possible.
	Positioning injury	Especially brachial plexus injury. Careful documentation, consult neurologist. Prevention = diligent positioning is key.
	Vascular thrombosis/stroke	Support airway, 100% FiO_2, intubate if needed; obtain emergent brain CT; consult neuro/stroke team

POSTPROCEDURE

Complications	Hematoma at access site Ischemic limb Emergence delirium Pericardial tamponade Corneal abrasion
Pain management	Postop analgesia usually managed with acetaminophen, fentanyl, morphine, or hydromorphone taking care to avoid hypoxia or hypercarbia. Access sites are commonly infiltrated with local anesthetic by cardiologist.
Tests	CXR, if indicated TTE, if clinical picture is suggestive of tamponade

Suggested Readings

1. Abbas SM, Rashid A, Latif H: Sedation for children undergoing cardiac catheterization: a review of literature. *J Pak Med Assoc* 2012; 62:159–63.
2. Baker CM, McGowan FX Jr, Keane JF, et al: Pulmonary artery trauma due to balloon dilation: recognition, avoidance and management. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2000; 36(5):1684–90.
3. Benson LN, Nykanen D, Collison A: Radiofrequency perforation in the treatment of congenital heart disease. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv* 2002; 56(1):72–82.
4. Chessa M, Carminati M, Cao QL, et al: Transcatheter closure of congenital and acquired muscular ventricular septal defects using the Amplatzer device. *J Invasive Cardiol* 2002; 14(6):322–7.
5. Diaz LK, Jones L: Sedating the child with congenital heart disease. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2009; 27:301–19.
6. Gaitan BD, Trentman TL, Fassett SL, et al: Sedation and analgesia in the cardiac electrophysiology laboratory: a national survey of electrophysiologists investigating the who, how, and why? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2011; 25:647–59.
7. Grifka RD: Cardiac catheterization and angiography, eds. In: Allen HD, Driscoll DJ, Shaddy RE, Feltes TF, *Moss & Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents: Including the Fetus and Young Adults,* 7th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007
8. Hammer GB, Drover DR, Cao H, et al: The effects of dexmedetomidine on cardiac electrophysiology in children. *Anesth Analgesia* 2008; 106:79–83.
9. Holzer RJ, Cheatham JP: Electrophysiologic therapeutic catheterization, eds. In: Allen HD, Driscoll DJ, Shaddy RE, Feltes TF, *Moss & Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents: Including the Fetus and Young Adults,* 7th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007.
10. Joe RR, Chen LQ: Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization lab. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am* 2003; 21:639–51.
11. Jooste EH, Muhly WT, Ibinson JW, et al: Acute hemodynamic changes after rapid intravenous bolus dosing of dexmedetomidine in pediatric heart transplant patients undergoing routine cardiac catheterization. *Anesth Analgesia* 2010; 111:1490–6.
12. Kaplan RF, Yang CI: Sedation and analgesia in pediatric patients for procedures outside the operating room. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am* 2002; 20:181–94.
13. Koruk S, Mizrak A, Kaya Ugur B, et al: Propofol/dexmedetomidine and propofol/ketamine combinations for anesthesia in pediatric patients undergoing transcatheter atrial septal defect closure: a prospective randomized study. *Clin Therap* 2010; 32:701–9.
14. Kugler JD: Electrophysiologic studies. In: Allen HD, Driscoll DJ, Shaddy RE, Feltes TF, eds. *Moss & Adams' Heart Disease in Infants, Children, and Adolescents: Including the Fetus and Young Adults,* 7th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2007.
15. Laussen PC: Sedation and anesthesia in cardiac procedures. *Nadas' Pediatric Cardiology,* 2nd edition. In: Keane JF, Lock JE, Fyler DC, eds. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2006, 291–302.

16. Lock JE: Cardiac Catheterization. *Nada's Pediatric Cardiology*, 2nd edition. In: Keane JF, Lock JE, Fyler DC, eds. Saunders Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2006, 213–50.
17. Maron BJ, Shen WK, Link MS, et al: Efficacy of implantable cardioverter-defibrillators for the prevention of sudden death in patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *N Eng J Med* 2000; 342(6):365–73.
18. McCrindle BW, Blackstone EH, Williams WG, et al: Are outcomes of surgical versus transcatheter balloon valvotomy equivalent in neonatal critical aortic stenosis? *Circulation* 2001; 104(12 Suppl 1):1152–8.
19. Mester R, Easley RB, Brady KM, et al: Monitored anesthesia care with a combination of ketamine and dexmedetomidine during cardiac catheterization. *Am J Therapeutics* 2008; 15:24–30.
20. Munro HM, Tirotta CF, Felix DE, et al: Initial experience with dexmedetomidine for diagnostic and interventional cardiac catheterization in children. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2007; 17:109–12.
21. Niksch A, Liberman L, Clapcich A, et al: Effects of remifentanil anesthesia on cardiac electrophysiologic properties in children undergoing catheter ablation of supraventricular tachycardia. *Pediatr Cardiol* 2010; 31:1079–82.
22. Shields JA: Heart block and prolonged QTc interval following muscle relaxant reversal: A case report. *AANA* 2008; 76:41–5.
23. Shook DC, Savage RM: Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization laboratory and electrophysiology laboratory. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2009; 27:47–56.
24. Tobias JD: Dexmedetomidine: applications in pediatric critical care and pediatric anesthesiology. *Pediatr Criti Care Med* 2007; 8:115–31.
25. Tobias JD, Gupta P, Naguib A, et al: Dexmedetomidine: applications for the pediatric patient with congenital heart disease. *Pediatr Cardiol* 2011; 32:1075–87.
26. Tosun Z, Akin A, Guler G, et al: Dexmedetomidine-ketamine and propofol-ketamine combinations for anesthesia in spontaneously breathing pediatric patients undergoing cardiac catheterization. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2006; 20:515–9.
27. Trentman TL, Fassett SL, Mueller JT, et al: Airway interventions in the cardiac electrophysiology laboratory: a retrospective review. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2009; 23:841–5.
28. Ulgey A, Aksu R, Bicer C, et al: Is the addition of dexmedetomidine to a ketamine-propofol combination in pediatric cardiac catheterization sedation useful? *Pediatr Cardiol* 2012; 33:770–4.
29. Vogel M, Berger F, Dahnert I, et al: Treatment of atrial septal defects in symptomatic children aged less than 2 years of age using the Amplatzer septal occluder. *Cardiol Young* 2000; 10(5):534–7.
30. von Ungern-Sternberg BS Boda K, Chambers NA, et al: Risk assessment for respiratory complications in paediatric anesthesia: a prospective cohort study. *Lancet* 2010; 376(9743):773–83.
31. Williams GD, Maan H, Ramamoorthy C, et al: Perioperative complications in children with pulmonary hypertension undergoing general anesthesia with ketamine. *Paediatr Anaest* 2010; 20:28–37.

PEDIATRIC ONCOLOGIC PROCEDURES

Kristin Sun, Neyssa Marina, Rebecca Claure, Brenda Golianu

Pediatric oncology patients represent a unique population, with a 5-yr survival rate for children with cancer now over 80%. These patients require anesthesia for a variety of procedures: diagnostic imaging, surgical resection, radiation therapy, central line placement, and multiple minor procedures for staging and intrathecal chemotherapy. The pediatric anesthesiologist is in the position of caring for these patients for long periods from initial diagnosis, through years of induction and maintenance therapy, and finishing with end of therapy procedures. More than in other patient populations, the anesthesiologist plays a critical role in a child's experience over several years in the hospital environment.

When patients first present for evaluation of possible malignancy, either solid organ tumors or hematologic cancers, they may undergo multiple imaging studies such as computed tomography scans of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis, bone scintigraphy, and magnetic resonance imaging scans. These studies are not painful, but require patients to be immobile for anywhere from a few minutes to over an hour. Sedation or general anesthesia is usually required, especially in patients under 5 yr of age.

For solid organ tumors of the brain, chest, abdomen, pelvis, and bone, pediatric patients may undergo daily doses of radiation therapy over the course of several weeks before or after resection. Although radiation therapy may only be a few minutes long, the specific anatomic dosing requires the patient to be immobile, again requiring multiple brief anesthetics. Solid organ tumors involve major surgical resection, or diagnostic tissue biopsy, either before or after concomitant radiation therapy or chemotherapy.

In the initial evaluation of hematologic diseases, patients must undergo evaluation of bone marrow with bone marrow aspirates and/or biopsies. Involvement of the cerebrospinal fluid is evaluated with a diagnostic lumbar puncture (LP). These patients then go on to require repeat bone marrow procedure and serial LPs for staging and for intrathecal chemotherapy dosing when indicated. Approximately 50% of leukemia patients will develop CNS disease without intrathecal prophylaxis. Patients may be evaluated and counseled to have these procedures under conscious sedation, but most children under 12 yr of age require a brief general anesthetic for each procedure.

In addition to the above diagnostic and treatment procedures, the majority of pediatric oncology patients undergo placement of indwelling central venous catheters, as percutaneous intravenous central catheters (PICC), Hickman or Broviac catheters, or portacaths. With the exception of PICC placements, most of these catheters are inserted under anesthesia and in a sterile operating room environment. When full therapy is completed, central venous line removal again requires sedation or general anesthesia.

PREPROCEDURE

Pediatric oncology patients are followed very closely during their treatment, undergoing at least monthly physical exams to evaluate for side effects of therapy to determine whether proceeding with the prescribed therapy is indicated. When these patients require invasive procedures, it is essential to work with the primary oncology team to evaluate whether the requested procedure is elective or urgent. All patients undergo routine periodic blood counts to determine the safety of continuing chemotherapy dosing. Occasionally a procedure, such as lumbar puncture for intrathecal chemotherapy, may be postponed if blood counts have dropped too low. It is important to remember that the toxicity of chemotherapeutic drugs may affect every organ in the body beyond the target cancer tissue.

A thorough preanesthetic history and physical exam should be performed for all major and minor cases and the standard NPO protocol applied (see p. D-1).

Respiratory and airway	Major surgical procedures for patients with symptoms of upper respiratory infection (eg., cough, fever) are postponed unless there are circumstances (CNS disease, bone marrow relapse) that require the treatment to proceed. In those circumstances, LPs and BMAs can be performed either with sedation or with the use of local anesthesia. A number of chemotherapeutic agents have been associated with pulmonary toxicity: bleomycin (2–5%), BNCU (20–50%), busulfan (2.5–11.5%), cyclophosphamide (rare), and methotrexate (rare). The use of these agents requires follow-up evaluation to make certain the patient is able to proceed with his/her procedure. Patients who present with an anterior mediastinal mass may present with signs and symptoms of superior vena cava compression, or with superior mediastinal syndrome with tracheal compression. It is critical to recognize and evaluate patients with a mediastinal mass prior to inducing general anesthesia. The adolescent patient presenting with a new diagnosis of Hodgkin's or non-Hodgkin's lymphoma or acute lymphoblastic leukemia should be carefully assessed for the possibility of a mediastinal mass. Younger patients may also present with symptoms of anterior mediastinal compression. Careful preoperative evaluation should be made for respiratory symptoms or compromise, as well as obtaining a chest x-ray, and possibly even chest CT scan. Careful consideration should be given to performing diagnostic procedures under minimal sedation, since general anesthesia in these patients can result in significant cardiorespiratory complications and fatality. Preoperative treatment with irradiation or corticosteroids may reduce tumor size; however, this may also change tissue pathology. Key features in general anesthetic management, if absolutely required, are the maintenance of spontaneous ventilation, no paralysis, having a rigid and flexible bronchoscope immediately available, and preparing for postoperative ICU monitoring. Routine airway assessment is essential. Chemotherapy may result in severe, painful oral mucositis, or stomatitis. Patients are also more susceptible to infectious viral oral lesions, such as herpetic lesions, and may require isolation. Frequent URI may occur due to immune compromise. Fever, loose cough, wheezing, or coarse BS requires evaluation and likely postponement of any procedures. **Tests:** All pediatric oncology patients undergo weekly complete blood counts to evaluate for toxicity from therapy. In addition, patients who have received any of the agents associated with pulmonary toxicity undergo pulmonary function tests at regular intervals. Although some chemotherapy agents are associated with pulmonary toxicity, the cumulative doses of those agents are such that most patients are asymptomatic. CXR may be indicated to evaluate upper respiratory symptoms.

Cardiovascular	Anticancer treatment can produce a wide range of cardiac toxicity. Anthracycline-induced cardiomyopathy, while rare, can lead to significant cardiovascular compromise. This complication is associated with the use of cumulative doses > 300 mg/m. Cardiomyopathy is insidious in origin and most commonly presents many years following treatment with doxorubicin, daunorubicin, or amacrine. The use of high doses of radiotherapy is also associated with cardiac complications, including constrictive pericarditis, atherosclerosis, and early myocardiac infarction. Signs of CV toxicity may include SOB, ECG changes, rhythm disturbances, pericarditis, or CHF. Preoperative hemodynamic status needs to be evaluated. Patients on steroid therapy may develop steroid-induced hypertension. It is important to obtain a careful history of any antihypertensive medication, especially a record of medications taken on the day of the procedure or surgery. Conversely, patients who are dehydrated or anemic may become significantly hypotensive after induction of general anesthesia. These patients may require preoperative hydration, and vasoactive medication should be available for intraoperative use. Patients actively receiving chemotherapy may also have 3rd spacing and may need aggressive hydration and/or pressor support. **Tests:** Patients receiving any agents associated with cardiac toxicity are monitored at yearly interval with echocardiograms and electrocardiograms. These tests do not need to be performed routinely prior to a procedure requiring general anesthesia unless history and physical exam suggest a change in the patient's clinical condition.
Hematologic	Bone marrow suppression occurs with all cytotoxic drugs. The anesthesiologist and oncologist need to work together to evaluate anemia and thrombocytopenia. Due to myelosuppression, anemia is common in oncology patients. In assessing the degree of anemia in a given patient, it is important to assess his or her overall clinical appearance and hemodynamic compensation. A very low hemoglobin level < 6–7 increases the patient's risk of significant BP instability during general anesthesia. For the procedure planned, can the patienttolerate the stress from anesthesia, and is there further blood loss expected during the procedures? Patient assessment with expectations for the surgical/diagnostic procedure will determine whether red blood cell or platelet transfusion is required preoperatively. If no transfusion is planned and the patient is anemic, prepare fluid replacement, colloid (e.g., albumin), and/or vasoactive support. **Tests:** Complete blood counts are performed once to twice a week in all pediatric oncology patients. These tests help determine whether continuing with the prescribed therapy is indicated. Baseline platelet and hemoglobin counts need to be measured before proceeding with lumbar punctures and bone marrow aspirates.
Neurologic	Peripheral neuropathies due to vincristine, vinblastine, cisplatin, and procarbazine may be present. Patient should be carefully positioned and padded. These patients may require additional attention to preop pain management and anxiolysis, with supplemental intraop and postop pain control.
GI/Hepatic	Many chemotherapy agents cause significant nausea and vomiting. Patients may present with these symptoms preop or may be dehydrated due to vomiting and poor fluid intake. Hepatotoxicity may also occur from chemotherapy or radiation therapy. Asparaginase can induce severe pancreatitis. ✓ LFT, Amylase, Lipase.
Endocrine	Most cancer patients are treated with corticosteroids at some point in their therapy. Steroids can lead to weight gain, suppression of the stress response, and rarer complications such as psychosis. In addition, steroid-induced hyperglycemia may require pre- and postoperative glucose monitoring and insulin therapy.

Premedication	For major procedures, individualized premedication is recommended. Since oncology patients often have an indwelling intravenous catheter, or are familiar with having venipunctures and iv placed, iv induction is frequently used. Intravenous midazolam may be easily administered when required for anxiolysis. Some patients may require premedication with oral midazolam or ativan, if they do not have iv access. However, many radiology and minor oncology procedures may be performed in an less restrictive environment, such as a procedure room, where the parents may stay with their child through induction. For the very anxious patient, or a child who has undergone significant emotional trauma in the hospital environment, preoperative counseling with a Child Life Specialist or psychologist can be very important and helpful in alleviating fears and helping the child adjust to the stress of frequent hospital/procedure visits.

INTRAPROCEDURE

Anesthetic technique: For major surgical procedures, GETA management is indicated. Below are recommendations for pediatric oncology patients undergoing minor procedures.

Procedures such as lumbar punctures and bone marrow aspirates are usually short, 10–20 min. Adolescent patients may be evaluated by their provider or the anesthesiologist for possible conscious sedation. Younger patients usually require brief general anesthesia—inhalation or intravenous.

Induction	For lumbar punctures in the patient without iv access, a brief inhalation anesthetic may be adequate. However, since most patients will have iv access, intravenous anesthesia with propofol provides adequate anesthesia, causes less nausea, and allows a rapid recovery. Standard protocol should include meticulous sterile technique in using the central venous line and confirmation of blood aspiration and catheter flow, both prior to beginning induction and after repositioning the patient in a lateral decubitus position. On positioning a patient for lumbar puncture in the left lateral position, it is possible to dislodge the portacath needle, with resulting extravasation of fluid or propofol into the subcutaneous tissue.	
Maintenance	Intermittent boluses of propofol 0.5–1 mg/kg may be used or an infusion of 200 mcg/kg/min. N_2O or low-dose sevoflurane may be added. For BMA, add fentanyl 1 mcg/kg or hydromorphone 1–2 mcg/kg for postop pain management. The provider performing the procedures infiltrates the area with lidocaine. For Broviac catheter removals, heparin must be removed from the catheter and discarded before use for induction. A sufficient bolus of propofol (e.g., 0.5–1 mg/kg) must be given just prior to pulling the catheter. Additional iv usually is not warranted because the procedure is normally ≤ 10 min, but may be desirable if postop pain medication is anticipated. Occasionally, the catheter may break during attempted removal, and the surgeon will have to make a skin incision to allow for removal of the internal fragment. In such cases, a peripheral iv may be inserted quickly to facilitate administration of additional propofol, or mask anesthesia may be given. If the SpO_2 decreases, blow-by O_2 with gentle head and neck positioning are generally sufficient.	
Emergence	Allow child to awaken in procedure room. Ondansetron 0.15 mg/kg for patients receiving intrathecal chemotherapy during their lumbar puncture. Avoid dexamethasone, as steroids may be part of the patient's chemotherapy protocol or may precipitate tumor lysis syndrome.	
Blood and fluid requirements	Patients may require blood or factor supplementation prior to or during procedure based on preoperative laboratory values.	It is important to be aware of patients where fluid restriction may be required, such as in a recent bone marrow transplant patient, or patient with graft vs host disease, who may have complications of fluid overload. Sodium bicarbonate infusion is common during chemotherapy and should be continued during anesthesia when possible.
Monitoring	Standard monitors	

Positioning	Lateral decubitus (lumbar puncture) Supine, seated or prone (bone marrow aspiration, biopsy) Supine (Broviac)	
Complications	Airway obstruction Retained central venous catheter	Head and neck repositioning, jaw thrust. ℞ may require open surgical procedure.
Postprocedure pain management	Lumbar punctures are not generally painful, whereas bone marrow aspirations and biopsies can be. Preoperative care includes the application of EMLA cream to the LP or bone marrow site, as well as having the oncologist infiltrate with lidocaine after induction. For pain management low-dose fentanyl 1 mcg/kg, or hydromorphone 2 mcg/kg may be used, and repeated in the PACU if needed. Check with the oncologist before administering acetaminophen. Acetaminophen is not routinely given for pain prophylaxis due to the possibility of masking a fever. Acetaminophen is not given unless needed and should never be given as a rectal suppository to the immunocompromised patient. Some patients may have chronic or acute pain syndromes due to tumor bone pain, or as a side effect from chemotherapy. These patients need to be evaluated on an individual basis for their pain management. After lumbar punctures, the patient should remain in a horizontal position for at least 30 min to prevent post–dural puncture headache.	

Suggested Readings

1. Anghelescu DL, Burgoyne LL, Liu T, et al: Clinical and diagnostic imaging findings predict anesthetic complications in children presenting with malignant mediastinal masses. *Pediatr Anesth* 2007; 17:1090–8.
2. Anghelescu DL, Burgoyne LL, Liu W, et al: Safe anesthesia for radiotherapy in pediatric oncology: St. Jude children's research hospital experience, 2004–2006. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2008; 71:491–7.
3. Christensen J, Fatchett D: Promoting parental use of distraction and relaxation in pediatric oncology patients during invasive procedures. *J Pediatr Oncol Nurs* 2002; 19(4):127–32.
4. Culshaw V, Yule M, Lawson R: Considerations for anaesthesia in children with haematological malignancy undergoing short procedures. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2003; 13:375–83.
5. Einaudi S, Bertorello N, Masera N, et al: Adrenal axis function after high-dose steroid therapy for childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 2008; 50:537–41.
6. Evans P, Chisholm D: Anaesthesia and paediatric oncology. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care* 2008; 19:50–8.
7. Klein SM, Hauser GJ, Anderson BD, et al: Comparison of intermittent versus continuous infusion of propofol for elective oncology procedures in children. *Pediatr Crit Care Med* 2003; 4(1):78–82.
8. Kurosawa S, Kato M: Anesthetics, immune cells, and immune responses. *J Anesth* 2008; 22:263–77.
9. Kushner BH, Yeh SD, Kramer K, et al: Impact of metaiodobenzylguanidine scintigraphy on assessing response of high-risk neuroblastoma to dose-intensive induction chemotherapy. *J Clin Oncol* 2003; 21:1082–6.
10. Latham GJ, Greenberg RS: Anesthetic considerations for the pediatric oncology patient—part 1: a review of antitumor therapy. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2010; 20:295–304.
11. Latham GJ, Greenberg RS: Anesthetic considerations for the pediatric oncology patient—part 2: systems-based approach to anesthesia. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2010; 20:396–420.
12. Latham GJ, Greenberg RS: Anesthetic considerations for the pediatric oncology patient—part 3: pain, cognitive dysfunction, and preoperative evaluation. *Pediatric Anesthesia* 2010; 20:479–89.
13. Schrappe M, Camitta B, Pui CH, et al: Long-term results of large prospective trials in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Leukemia* 2000; 14:2193–4.
14. Schrappe M, Reiter A, Ludwig WD, et al: Improved outcome in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia despite reduced use of anthracyclines and cranial radiotherapy: results of trial ALL-BFM 90 [In Process Citation]. *Blood* 2000; 95:3310–22.
15. Shimokawa S, Watanabe S, Sakasegawa K: Fatal complication due to a mediastinal tumor. *Ann Thoracic Surg* 2000; 70:340–1.

UPPER/LOWER GI ENDOSCOPY

Ann Ming Yeh, William Berquist, Rebecca E. Claure, and Brenda Golianu

Upper and lower endoscopy allows for accurate diagnosis and treatment of gastrointestinal diseases. Diagnostic indications for upper endoscopy include dysphagia; odynophagia; persistent vomiting; abdominal pain with weight loss/anorexia; acid peptic disease, dyspepsia, and heartburn despite medical therapy; hematemesis or melena; obtaining samples or biopsies; and diagnosis of infection or disease (graft versus host disease, malignancy) especially in an immunocompromised patient. Indications for colonoscopy include evaluation of gross or occult bleeding; symptom

evaluation of new-onset constipation or unexplained diarrhea or abdominal pain; screening or surveillance for inflammatory bowel disease; and screening for colorectal neoplasia. Therapeutic indications for gastrointestinal endoscopy include esophageal dilation, foreign body removal, sclerotherapy or banding of esophageal varices, hemostasis with directed thermal or injection therapy, removal or change out of GJ tubes, percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube placement, decompression of sigmoid volvulus or megacolon; polypectomy; PEG placement; removal or change of gastrostomy or GJ tubes and decompression of sigmoid volvulus or megacolon. Children presenting for endoscopy may have congenital and acquired abnormalities of the GI tract. Examples include repaired tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF) with esophageal dysmotility or strictures, ingestion of a caustic material, and presence of a foreign body.

Many endoscopy procedures are done with sedation only. Requests for anesthesia are dependent on the gastroenterologist's preference, as well as the severity of the patient's underlying illnesses. All patients must receive a complete preanesthesia H&P and follow the same NPO protocol used for surgery (see Appendix D). Patients undergoing colonoscopy require bowel preparation to have the colon free of solid stool for adequate visualization. Common bowel preparation regimens include a combination of magnesium citrate, biscodyl, and polyethylene glycol.

Absolute contraindications of upper and lower endoscopy include suspected perforation and peritonitis in a toxic patient. Relative contraindications include coagulopathy, neutropenia, fulminant colitis, bowel obstruction and toxic dilation with increased risk of perforation, torrential colonic bleeding, poor bowel preparation, and cardiopulmonary instability.

Overall complication rates of upper GI endoscopy are generally rare, with complications estimated at 0.3% risk of bleeding following an EGD with biopsy and risk of perforation in < 0.3% of cases. Hypoxia secondary to sedation, hematoma, missed lesions, and infections are also potential infrequent complications. Complications of colonoscopy occur in < 2% of patients, with bleeding and perforation reported in < 0.3% and 0.3%, respectively.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Gastrointestinal	Carefully evaluate for esophageal dysfunction and Sx of GERD. The stomach and bowel will be insufflated with air during the procedure, possibly increasing the likelihood of reflux.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P. Hct if GI bleeding
Premedication	If inhalation induction planned, midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po for anxious children. Consider midazolam for younger children requiring an iv induction (1–2 mg).

INTRAPROCEDURE

Anesthetic technique: Upper GI endoscopy for esophageal dilation, foreign body removal, severe GERD, gastrointestinal bleeding, and banding/sclerotherapy of esophageal varices requires GETA. For children ≥ 2, with no contraindications, supplemental O_2 via nasal cannula, spontaneous respiration, and propofol infusion can be considered. Children ≤ 2 have a higher incidence of complications when not intubated due to the relatively large endoscope. Complications include partial airway obstruction, tracheal compression, laryngospasm, bronchospasm, and desaturation. Placement of the endoscope in the mouth precludes the ability to use a mask or LMA. For lower GI endoscopy (e.g., colonoscopy), supplemental O_2 via nasal cannula or mask, spontaneous respiration, and propofol infusion may be preferable.

Induction	If rapid-sequence indication indicated, iv catheter placed prior to induction. Proceed with preoxygenation, cricoid pressure, propofol (2–3 mg/kg), and succinylcholine (1–2 mg/kg) or rocuronium (1 mg/kg). ETT should be well secured to the side of the mouth. If risk of aspiration relatively low, a standard pediatric iv or mask induction is appropriate (see Appendix D).
Maintenance	GETA with inhalational agents or iv infusion of propofol (100–250 mcg/kg/min), ± remifentanil (0.05–0.10 mcg/kg/min). Alternatively, GA/sedation may be continued with supplemental O_2 via nasal cannula, spontaneous respiration, and infusion of propofol (100–250 mcg/kg/min), ± remifentanil (0.05–0.10 mcg/kg/min). If intubated, careful observation and/or holding the ETT prevents inadvertent extubation during removal of the endoscope. If spontaneously breathing, careful attention is needed to observe for breath holding, laryngospasm and/or desaturation.

Emergence	If intubated, extubate awake. Emergence in procedure room. Patients usually transported to and recovered in PACU.	
Blood and fluid requirements	No blood loss. IV: 22 or 24 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see Appendix D).	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	Lateral decubitus for upper and lower endoscopy
Complications	Airway obstruction Hypoxemia 2° gastric insufflation Inadvertent extubation Pulmonary aspiration GI perforation	Due to endoscopist working in the mouth and pharynx

POSTPROCEDURE

Pain management	Acetaminophen (35–40 mg/kg pr, or 10–15 mg/kg po 10 mg/kg iv), hydromorphone (0.01–0.015 mg/kg iv) or morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv)

Suggested Readings

1. Dilos BM. Anesthesia for pediatric airway endoscopy and upper gastrointestinal endoscopy. *Int Anaesthesiol Clin* 2009; 47(3): 55–62.
2. Disma N, Astuto M, Rizzo G, et al: Propofol sedation with fentanyl or midazolam during oesophago-gastroduodenoscopy in children. *Eur J Anaesthesiol* 2005; 22(11):848–52.
3. Hussein SA. Anesthesia for pediatric endoscopies. *Int Anaesthesiol Clin* 2004; 44(1):81–93.
4. Koh JL, Black DD, Leatherman IK, et al: Experience with an anesthesiologist interventional model for endoscopy in a pediatric hospital. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2001; 33(3):314–8.
5. Schwartz DA, Connelly NR, Theroux CA, et al: Gastric contents in children presenting for upper endoscopy. *Anesth Analg* 1998; 87(4):757–60.
6. Sury M, Smith JH: Deep sedation and minimal anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2008; 18(l):18–24.

CROSS-SECTIONAL IMAGING (CT, MRI)

Rebecca E. Claure and Brenda Golianu

PREPROCEDURE

A complete preanesthetic H&P should be performed in all cases and the usual NPO protocol followed (see Appendix D). For MRI, thorough questioning regarding potentially ferromagnetic implants (neurostimulators, cochlear implants, pacemakers, surgical clips, infusion pumps, etc.) is critical. Direct questions regarding suitability of implants for scanning to radiologist.

Respiratory	Procedures for patients with Sx of URI (nasal congestion, cough, fever) are usually postponed for 3–4 wk unless the study is urgent. If Sx are minor, the study may proceed.

Cardiovascular	Pacemakers usually contraindicated. Prosthetic heart valves may be contraindicated (identify the type of valve present and consult with radiologist). Fresh surgical clips (e.g., recent PDA ligation) may also represent a contraindication for MRI.
Neurologic	Head CT or MRI may be performed in patients with seizure disorders or brain tumors. Review seizure meds and ✓ serum levels if appropriate. Recent drug levels may not be necessary in children with well-controlled or stable seizure disorders. If ↑ ICP or ↓ intracranial compliance are present (e.g., 2° tumors or hydrocephalus), the anesthesia plan should include tracheal intubation with controlled ventilation. Metal surgical clips or coils are usually contraindications for MRI. Children with head trauma may have concurrent C-spine injuries.
Laboratory	As indicated from H&P. Usually none required.
Premedication	If inhalation induction planned, midazolam 0.5–0.75 mg/kg po for anxious children. If iv induction is planned, apply topical anesthesia (see Appendix D).

INTRAPROCEDURE

Unique considerations for MRI: See Adult Out-of-OR Procedures, p. 1517.

Anesthetic technique: **CT scans**—With current scanners, many studies can be completed in less than 10 min. Each set of data takes 2–3 min to collect, allowing many children to complete scans without any sedation. In some institutions, children undergo noninvasive CT scans with sedation by radiology personnel. For more complex cases, sedation/GA is provided by an anesthesiologist. Most commonly, noninvasive CT scans are performed with inhalation anesthesia via mask or with a continuous infusion of propofol (100–250 mcg/kg/min). For patients undergoing invasive CT-guided procedures (needle biopsy, placement of drainage tubes, such as thoracostomy tube, etc.), GETA is usually performed. Techniques include inhalational anesthesia and/or continuous infusion of propofol (100–200 mcg/kg/min), and remifentanil (0.05–0.10 mcg/kg/min).

MRI—MRI requires GA more often than noninvasive CT because prolonged immobility is required for up to 1–2 h. Options include inhalational anesthesia with an MRI compatible anesthesia machine or continuous propofol infusion with an MRI compatible infusion pump. Hypothermia frequently occurs in small children. The cooling fan for the magnet can sometimes be turned off to decrease heat loss (discuss with MRI technician). One blanket over patient is usually permissible. The iv, airway circuit, and monitors require extensions. Ferromagnetic objects in the MRI environment are a hazard. Objects can be propelled toward the magnet with sufficient speed and force to result in serious or fatal injury to the patient and/or health care provider.

Induction	Standard pediatric mask or iv induction (see Appendix D) can be accomplished in the CT scanner room or in a special induction area outside the MRI scanner. After induction and stabilization of the airway, the patient and all personnel entering the MRI scanner should undergo a second check for removal of metal objects and equipment. Once check completed, transport patient into scanner and resume monitoring.
Maintenance	GA continued with supplemental O_2 via nasal cannula, spontaneous respiration, and infusion of propofol (100–250 mcg/kg/min). In children with an LMA or ETT, maintenance with inhalational agent or propofol infusion. Typically, these patients do not require muscle relaxants, and spontaneous breathing is appropriate unless controlled ventilation is required to treat ↑ ICP, or for protocols involving breath holding for prolonged periods of time (e.g., several minutes for abdominal scans). Most infusion pumps need to remain a specific distance from the MRI scanner. The appropriate distance is dependent on the degree of shielding of each particular magnet. Adequate ear protection should be routinely used during MRI.
Emergence	Transport MRI patient back to induction area for emergence so that airway equipment is readily available. Patients transported to and recovered in PACU.

Blood and fluid requirements	No blood loss. IV, if required: 22 or 24 ga × 1 NS/LR @ maintenance	
Monitoring	Standard MRI-compatible monitors (see p. D-1 for discussion of monitoring considerations).	For infants, use a child-size NIBP cuff on the leg.
Positioning	Ear protection necessary ✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes	
Complications	Airway obstruction Hypothermia Burn injury IV contrast reaction Hearing loss (MRI)	Repositioning, nasal or oral airway. See adult MRI Unique Considerations and Complications, p. 1517. From inappropriate placement of pulse oximeter probe or EKG. Avoid coiling of wires and use only MRI-compatible monitors.

POSTPROCEDURE

Pain management	Noninvasive procedures are painless. Acetaminophen (35–40 mg/kg pr, 10–15 mg/kg po, or 10 mg/kg iv), hydromorphone (0.01–0.015 mg/kg iv) or morphine (0.05–0.1 mg/kg iv) as appropriate for invasive procedures

Suggested Readings

1. De Sanctis Briggs V: Magnetic resonance imaging under sedation in newborns and infants: a study of 640 cases using sevoflurane. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2005; 15(1):9–15.
2. Gregory GA, ed: *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 4th edition. Churchill Livingstone, New York: 2002, 809–18.
3. Motoyama EK, Davis PJ, eds: *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 7th edition. Mosby Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2006, 844–8, 851–3.
4. Serafini G, Zadra N: Anaesthesia for MRI in the pediatric patient. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2008; 21(4):499–503.
5. Usher AG, Kearney RA, Tsui B: Propofol total intravenous anesthesia for MRI in children. *Paediatr Anaesth* 2005; 15(1): 23–8.

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR ECMO

PROCEDURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Gary Hartman and Claudia Mueller

Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) for prolonged periods (3–21 d) allows cardiopulmonary support for newborns and children with reversible respiratory failure. The most common indications are meconium aspiration and pulmonary HTN associated with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. The procedure is performed in the NICU with OR techniques. Patients are given anticoagulants prior to cannulation. Subsequently, repair of the diaphragmatic hernia also may be performed in the NICU on ECMO support before decannulation (Fig. 13.2-3 shows ECMO schematic).

The potential detrimental effects of the diaphragmatic repair on respiratory function can be managed with increased circuit flow. ECMO also has been helpful in some newborns with cardiopulmonary failure following correction of congenital cardiac defects. Vascular access is accomplished with one (venovenous) or two (venoarterial) cannulas. The IJ vein is cannulated in both methods with the tip of the cannula in the right atrium. In venoarterial ECMO, the common carotid artery is used with the tip of the cannula at the aortic arch. The wound is closed around the cannulas, which are secured to the infant's scalp.

Usual preop diagnosis: Meconium aspiration; diaphragmatic hernia

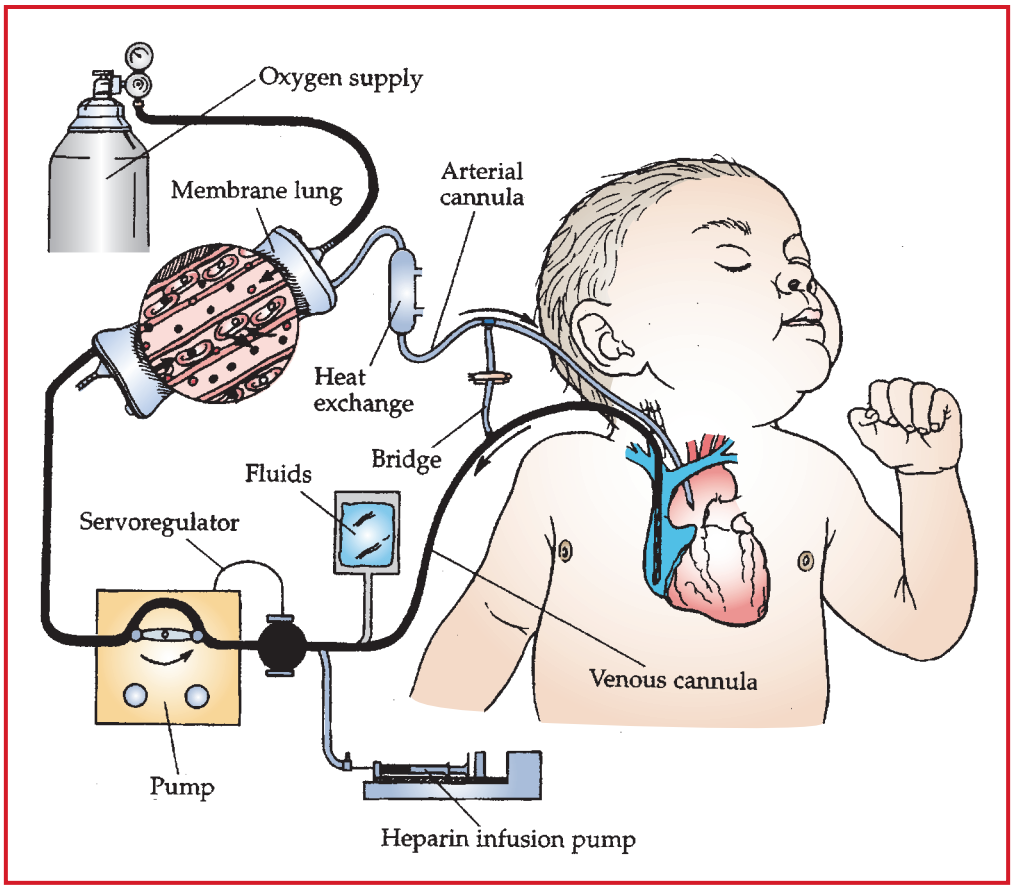


Figure 13.2-3. ECMO circuit illustrating veno-arterial cannulation. Venous blood is withdrawn by gravity through a servoregulator to prevent pump from actively siphoning venous return. A pump delivers blood back to the arterial cannula after it passes through the membrane oxygenator and heat exchanger. Venous return is from the right atrium, whereas arterial infusion is into the aortic arch in double-cannula (venoarterial) or right atrium (venovenous) techniques. (Reproduced with permission from Baker RJ, Fischer JE: *Mastery of Surgery*, Vol I, 4th edition. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia: 2001.)

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine
Incision	Right neck incision; subcostal for hernia repair
Special instrumentation	ECMO circuit (Fig. 13.2-3)
Unique considerations	Anticoagulation
Antibiotics	Broad spectrum based on underlying condition
Surgical time	1–2 h
Closing considerations	Assess for changes in ventilation (e.g., PIP, pre- and postductal ABG); assess hemostasis.
EBL	> 5–10 mL/kg
Postop care	Paralysis maintained; fentanyl infusion @ 2–4 mcg/kg/h

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURES (cont'd)	
Mortality	Based on underlying conditions
Morbidity	Respiratory failure Sepsis
Pain score	6–7

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	Primarily neonatal with increasing use in older children
Male:Female	1–2:1
Incidence	1:4000 live births
Etiology	Unknown
Associated conditions	For diaphragmatic hernia: congenital heart disease (15%); renal anomalies; intestinal atresia; CNS abnormalities

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT FOR SURGICAL PROCEDURES UNDER ECMO

Manchula Navaratnam and Chandra Ramamoorthy

ECMO has become a standard therapy for refractory neonatal and pediatric cardiorespiratory failure. Over the past 2 decades, the indications for ECMO have changed. The use of ECMO for neonatal respiratory failure peaked in the early 90, but its use has now decreased with the development of alternative strategies such as surfactant, high-frequency oscillation, and inhaled nitric oxide. In contrast, pediatric and cardiac indications have continued to increase including the use of ECMO for cardiopulmonary arrest (ECPR) refractory to standard CPR management. Improved patient outcomes with ECMO have been achieved by combining new technologies with refined management strategies and improved training of personnel.

Anesthesiologists may find themselves encountering an increasing number of neonatal and pediatric patients on ECMO support for various surgical procedures and imaging studies. Successful management of these patients includes meticulous planning, comprehensive teamwork, communication, and attention to detail. Intrahospital transport of these patients often requires multiple personnel from various medical specialties, and therefore, it is important to elect a team leader prior to transport and to allocate specific tasks (e.g., protection of ECMO cannulae) in order to avoid any confusion or conflict.

The delivery of anesthetic agents can be via a TIVA technique or a combination of intravenous and inhalation agents.

The plastic components of the bypass circuit can sequester varying amounts of the intravenous agents, especially fentanyl, altering the plasma levels and resulting in unpredictable hemodynamic changes. Volatile anesthetics are not routinely available on ECMO circuits due to difficulties with scavenging. Anesthetic agents cause preload and afterload changes and therefore additional volume (blood products and colloids) and vasoactive agents should be readily available in order to maintain adequate filling and blood pressure.

It is important to keep in mind that altering the surgical table height will have an impact on the venous return to the ECMO circuit (passive gravity-assisted drainage); hence, the perfusionist must be informed before undertaking this maneuver.

Diaphragmatic hernia repair is the most common noncardiac procedure undertaken on ECMO support. ECMO therapy protects the pulmonary alveoli from ventilator-associated barotrauma and oxygen toxicity, while maintaining tissue oxygenation. Prior to surgery, a trial period off bypass is used to assess the adequacy of conventional

ventilation independent of ECMO. If the neonate is unable to be weaned, then the surgery occurs on full ECMO support, ACT is maintained at 160–200 sec by the addition of heparin to the ECMO circuit. The potential detrimental effects of diaphragmatic repair on respiratory function can be managed with increased circuit flow.

Monitoring includes heart rate, arterial blood pressure, temperature, pump flow rate with frequent ABGs and VBGs.

The majority of practitioners employ VA cannulations for ECMO support (see Fig. 13.2-3) although some centers prefer-VV ECMO support if hypoxemia is the primary indication.

Suggested Readings

1. American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Surgery; American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Fetus and Newborn, Lally KP, Engle W: Postdischarge follow-up of infants with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Pediatrics* 2008; 121(3):627–32.
2. ECLS Registry Report: *International Summary, ECMO Registry of the Extracorporeal Life Support Organisation (ELSO).* Ann Arbor, MI, USA, January 2012.
3. Lequier LJ: Extracorporeal life support in pediatric and neonatal critical care: a review. *J Intensive Care Med* 2004; 19(5): 243–58.

SECTION

14.0 OFFICE-BASED ANESTHESIA

SURGEONS

David A. Berman, MD (*Facial Rejuvenation*)
Vernon J. Adams, Jr., DMD (*Dental rehabilitation*)
Azeem K. Lakha, DMD (*Dental implants*)

ANESTHESIOLOGIST

Terri D. Homer, MD

INTRODUCTION—ANESTHESIOLOGIST'S PERSPECTIVE

Terri D. Homer

DEFINITION OF OFFICE-BASED ANESTHESIA

The assumption in this chapter is that office-based anesthesia (OBA) is distinct from outpatient anesthesia in a free-standing surgery facility. OBA is used in many medical specialties, including most dental subspecialties, dermatology, plastic surgery, ophthalmology, otolaryngology, and gynecology. The procedures described in this chapter are but a small sampling of the ways in which anesthesia is used in medical/dental offices. Anesthesiologists who carry out anesthetic procedures in the office setting may be sole practitioners or part of a group of anesthesiologists who have a "division" or rotation devoted to OBA. Although anesthesia practiced in an office carries the same risks, burdens of responsibility, and skill requirements as in a fully equipped surgical center, in the office setting, the anesthesiologist may be expected to arrange for the oxygen supply, suction, monitoring, and emergency equipment. They may even bring a portable anesthesia machine with them from site to site. This unique challenge for the anesthesia provider includes working with personnel unfamiliar with anesthesia concerns, converting the office into a facility appropriate for anesthesia, selecting appropriate patients, providing safe and effective anesthesia/analgesia, and properly preparing and recovering the patients.

STATE REGULATIONS REGARDING OFFICE-BASED ANESTHESIA

Many states have laws listing strict requirements for medical facilities where anesthesia is provided for surgical procedures. Some states have regulations based on the type of surgical procedure performed. Others regulate and credential the facility based on the type of anesthesia used (i.e., GA, iv, local). Still others base regulations on the type of facility itself. In California, for example, dental offices are regulated differently than medical offices. For many years, the California Dental Board has regulated anesthesia in the dental or oral surgery office by credentialing the anesthesia provider and/or the office facility itself. An oral surgeon, dentist, or physician issued a GA permit by the Dental Board goes through a credentialing process by one or two examiners that includes direct observation of an anesthesia case, demonstration of emergency drills, and examination of required monitoring and resuscitation equipment on site. The permit allows the holder to provide GA in any dental office. The Dental Board also issues "Conscious Sedation" permits to those dental practitioners who qualify and want to use this technique. Physicians in California wishing to have iv sedation or general anesthesia available in their office must first be accredited as a surgery center by one of several agencies providing this service such as AAAHC.org.

EQUIPMENT NEEDED FOR OFFICE-BASED ANESTHESIA

In the office setting, the anesthesia provider may or may not have the use of an anesthesia machine or other sophisticated equipment that is readily available in a surgical center. In some respects, however, this setting is analogous to other out-of-OR locations. The ASA Guidelines for Nonoperating Room Anesthetizing Locations[1] covers all types of out-of-OR facilities, and these recommendations should be followed. Appropriate monitoring—including pulse oximetry, ECG, and BP—is required. Many portable monitors have $ETCO_2$ monitoring capability, which may be useful for the spontaneously ventilating, sedated patient. A precordial stethoscope is quite useful for monitoring respirations, especially in the dental patient, in whom airway obstruction is a frequent occurrence during the procedure. Also in accordance with the ASA guidelines, full resuscitation equipment, an adequate source of O_2 (and backup O_2), a functioning suction, adequate lighting and electrical outlets (with backup battery source), and a telephone with immediate access to a hospital ER also must be available. In the credentialed medical (nondental) facility, these items are required to be on site. In the dental facility, they may or may not be present. It is the responsibility of the anesthesia provider to make sure these items are available in the medical or dental facility before administering an anesthetic.

ANESTHETIC TECHNIQUES IN THE OFFICE SETTING

Typically, the anesthetic techniques in the office setting can range from conscious sedation, deep iv sedation to general anesthesia with intubation. The type of procedure, the patient's clinical status, and the surgeon or dentist's

preference all contribute to the decision of which technique is best for that particular situation. In the pediatric patient having dental restoration work, "conscious sedation" is not adequate because most often the dental restoration required is very extensive and will likely take several hours to accomplish. In this situation, general anesthesia with nasal intubation (or oral intubation if nasal intubation is not possible) is usually the best choice of anesthetic technique. In the patient having dental implant placement, minimal or moderate sedation may be all that is required. The oral surgeon may require the patient's cooperation at times during the procedure. The patient undergoing full face laser resurfacing will most likely require deep sedation or general anesthesia because this procedure can be quite painful. However, because sedation is a continuum, the anesthesia provider must be prepared to rescue any patient receiving any sedation in the office (see *Continuum of Depth of Sedation,* ASA Guidelines).

PATIENT SELECTION

As in all medical facilities, the patient's safety is of paramount importance. In the office setting, the ability to achieve a successful outcome is dependent first of all on appropriate patient selection. The patients presenting for OBA will fall into several categories, depending on the procedure and the patient's age and medical condition. An "appropriate patient" can be an ASA 1 or 2 patient. They may even be an ASA 3, if: (a) their medical problems are stable and well controlled with medication, and (b) the office procedure itself will not pose an undue risk to them.

PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION

An important role of the anesthesiologist is to educate the patient (or patient's parents, as appropriate) about the office anesthesia experience. A preop phone call discussing the patient's medical history, past anesthesia experience (in a hospital, surgery center, or dental office), the npo requirements, the anesthesia technique(s) to be used, postanesthesia expectations, and the anesthesia fees is essential. A written packet describing some of this information can be given to the patient in advance.

Safe and accepted npo requirements on the day of the procedure are as follows:

- A light breakfast (e.g., toast and a clear liquid), up to 6 h before the appointment.
- Clear liquids (including Gatorade, Jell-O, fruit popsicles) up to 3 h before the appointment.
- The patient's usual medications should be continued on the day of the procedure.

RECOVERY AND DISCHARGE

In a medical or dental office, often there is no separate recovery area designated as such. It is common practice for the patient to be recovered by the anesthesiologist in the treatment room until they can open their eyes and maintain an adequate airway without assistance. At that point, any iv or monitors that may have been used can be removed. If it is a pediatric patient, the parents may be brought into the room, although recovery remains under the supervision of the anesthesiologist. Office anesthesia patients can be discharged when they are well oriented, their pain and nausea are controlled, and they have a responsible adult to accompany them. They may still feel drowsy, but this should not prevent them from being able to walk with assistance.

Discharge instructions regarding appropriate postop activities should be given to the responsible adult with the patient. Generally, patients are asked to adhere to the following instructions upon discharge:

- NPO except clear liquids in the first 2 h after arriving at home. (Unless the ride is > 1 h, we ask the patient not to drink anything in the car on the way home from the procedure facility.)
- A light meal after the first 2 h, if the patient wishes.
- Adults should take it easy the rest of the day and have a responsible adult companion for at least 4 h after the procedure.
- No driving for 24 h.
- Children should stay home for the rest of the day postprocedure, under the direct supervision of a responsible adult.

The anesthesiologist also should give the responsible party (parent, friend, other relative) his/her pager or cell phone number in the event they need to contact the anesthesiologist after patient discharge.

Suggested Readings

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists: *ASA Statement on Nonoperating Room Anesthetizing Locations.* American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2008. http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx

2. American Society of Anesthesiologists: *ASA Guidelines for Office-Based Anesthesia,* 2009. Available at: http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx
3. American Society of Anesthesiologists: *Continuum of Depth of Sedation, Definition of General Anesthesia and Levels of Sedation and Analgesia.* American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2009. http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx

FACIAL REJUVENATION: LASERS AND RF TISSUE TIGHTENING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

David A. Berman

Description: A variety of medical devices have been approved for use to improve skin concerns, such as wrinkles, precancerous skin lesions (actinic keratoses), discoloration, acne scars, traumatic scars, and sagging skin. In the mid-1990s laser resurfacing using the fully ablative CO_2 laser was very popular. This procedure yielded wonderful results, but extensive heat from this procedure caused some undesirable side effects such as scarring or pigmentation problems, prompting the industry to develop the cooler and more conservative resurfacing tool using the erbium laser. Less than a decade later, a novel fractionated laser resurfacing device was developed that removed only a fraction of the skin in a pattern reminiscent of pixels in newspaper print. Certainly, the risks and side effects were reduced compared to the older technology, though this more conservative approach rendered a more modest improvement of skin concerns. Further research led to the development of nonablative technologies such as radiofrequency/ultrasound/nonlaser light-based devices, most of which resulted in better side effect profiles and positive outcomes. Although the holy grail of devices would render a no-down-time, painless procedure void of negative effects, the search for such continues to elude us. Meanwhile, physicians who perform these procedures should encourage patients to opt for office-based anesthesia and thus make the experience a more pleasant one for all involved.

Because some devices deliver a tremendous amount of heat to the skin surface, ablating both the epidermis and a portion of the dermis, nerve blocks and local anesthetic infiltration are often inadequate, thus requiring either iv sedation or GA. Facial nerve blocks may be performed to supplement iv sedation. After a Betadine® prep, anesthetic eye drops are used, followed by the insertion of protective corneal shields. The treatment then begins with one or more passes performed at various energy levels.

Usual preop diagnosis: Wrinkles, precancerous skin lesions (actinic keratoses), acne scars, and traumatic scars.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, with shoulder roll. Surgeon at head of table
Antibiotics	None during procedure. Some patients will require antivirals and/or antibiotics started 1 d before procedure.
Surgical time	30–60 min
Postop care	Supine position, occasional ice packs, antiviral medications/antibiotics. Some require facial dressings.
Mortality	None reported
Morbidity	Bacterial infection Herpes simplex virus reactivation Delayed re-epithelialization Fat atrophy Hypertrophic or keloid scar formation Corneal abrasion Delayed healing with redness Hyperpigmentation and hypopigmentation
Pain Score	3–6 depending on the type of medical device used

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	18–85 yr
Male:Female	1:4
Incidence	*Laser Skin Resurfacing: 562,7064 *Noninvasive Skin Tightening: 247,500 *Fractionated Laser Resurfacing: 102,016 **Ultherapy Ultrasonic Tightening: over 100,000 performed 2006–2012
Etiology	Solar radiation, acne, or trauma resulting in scars

*2011, American Society for Aesthetic Plastic Surgery.
**Manufacturers' data.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Some facial rejuvenation procedures are quite painful and can be very stressful to the patient; thus, local anesthesia is often inadequate. For these procedures, it is important to make sure that the patient with chronic HTN and/or other cardiovascular or respiratory disease is being adequately treated for these problems before undergoing either laser resurfacing or RF tissue tightening. A preop ECG (taken within the last year) is recommended for those patients > 60 yr old or those being treated for HTN.

Premedication	In the adult patient, an oral premed can be given, if necessary, before the patient arrives in the office for the procedure. Lorazepam 0.5–1.0 mg po 1 h before the appointment will help relax the severely anxious patient.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: MAC and/or GA

MAC/GA	During full-face laser resurfacing procedures, the patient will need to be under deep iv sedation, unless the surgeon is willing to use a large amount of local anesthetic (often RF tissue tightening will require less sedation, depending on the device used). Usually, a combination of intermittent doses of midazolam (1–2 mg iv), meperidine (25 mg iv), ketamine (25–30 mg iv q 1 h prn), and propofol (25–50 mcg/kg/min iv) will provide an adequate anesthetic state. If a nasal airway is inserted, nasal O_2 can be used (limit FiO_2 to ≤ 0.30). Otherwise, O_2 should be administered between facial passes if a laser is used. Again, the patient is not electively intubated, but an LMA may be needed if it is difficult to maintain a patent airway. Usually, patients having this procedure will require at least 75–150 mg meperidine (or its equivalent) to relieve the painful burning caused by multiple passes of these devices. Patients will shiver and sustain HTN and tachycardia unless an adequate level of analgesia is achieved. Because of the narcotic requirement, they should have prophylactic antiemetics during the procedure. Dexamethasone (8 mg iv) and metoclopramide (15 mg iv) or ondansetron (4 mg) are a good combination. In addition, im promethazine (25 mg) is very effective.	
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h	
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)	
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes (eye shields in place)	
Complications	Laser fire	Use intermittent, low-flow O_2. Consider wrapping foil around cannula. Limit FiO_2 to ≤ 0.30.

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV
Pain management	Oral analgesics (see p. C-2)
Recovery and discharge	The patient recovering from a full-face procedure usually has received a lot of potent anesthetic medication in a short period of time. They require at least 45–60 min to recover in the office. Vital signs should be stable (↑ BP and tachycardia must be treated). Pain and nausea also should be under control. These patients must be accompanied by a responsible adult who can stay with them at home for a few hours after the procedure. A follow-up phone call to the patient by the anesthesiologist that evening is very helpful and appreciated.

OFFICE DENTAL REHABILITATION UNDER DEEP IV SEDATION

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Vernon Adams

Description: Dental rehabilitation includes the restoration of good dental health by removal of caries and decayed teeth, replacement of crowns or bridges, root canals, and periodontal treatment. A throat pack with external tie is placed and a mouth prop inserted. Dental rehabilitation is usually done in phases, one quadrant at a time. A rubber dam is placed to isolate the teeth that will be treated. All dental caries are removed, the restorations are placed, and all debris is irrigated and suctioned away from the rubber dam, which is then removed. This sequence is repeated in other quadrants as needed. After the operative phase of treatment is completed, the next treatment phases proceed (e.g., taking impressions for various appliances or dental prosthetics, dental extractions, or a dental prophylaxis). After the treatment is completed, the dentist examines the mouth and removes any loose gauze, debris, or other material left over from the treatment before the anesthesiologist begins the process of emergence from anesthesia.

Usual preop diagnosis: In-office dental rehabilitation usually focuses on treatment of the patient who is unable to be treated in a conventional setting for primarily behavioral/emotional reasons. These include dentophobia; pediatric patients who are excessively apprehensive and/or combative or who have a significant amount of dental caries; "special needs" pediatric patients—autistic, mentally retarded, developmentally delayed—and patients with mild-to-moderate forms of cerebral palsy.

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE

Position	Supine, on a dental chair or bench. A pillow under the knees will improve comfort and prevent sliding.
Incision	± Gingival or intraoral mucosa
Special instrumentation	Dental setup
Unique considerations	Intubation recommended; throat pack placed; airway protection of paramount importance.
Antibiotics	None used routinely
Surgical time	90–180 min
EBL	Minimal
Postop care	Recover in lateral position.
Mortality	Rare

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE (cont'd)	
Morbidity	Biting of lips or tongue 2° local anesthesia: 1% Bleeding: 1% Infection: < 1% Delayed Bleeding: Rare
Pain Score	1–3; higher for certain procedures (e.g., extraction of impacted tooth or when all quadrants of the mouth are restored).

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	13 mo+
Male: Female	1:1
Incidence	> 20,000/yr in the United States
Etiology	Poor oral hygiene and/or dietary habits; lack of continuing periodic dental care

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

In the pediatric dental office, the patients presenting for GA are those who cannot cooperate due to age (too young), too anxious, or to a preexisting mental or physical disease. Examples include a 20-mo-old child with early childhood caries, an 8-yr-old autistic child, or a child of any age with cerebral palsy, obesity, Down syndrome, or other congenital syndrome. Obviously, the anesthetic treatment plan must be tailored to the patient's individual needs. These patients must be screened in advance for clinical conditions that would put them at risk for problems intraop or postop. Specifically, a patient with any cardiac, respiratory, endocrine, or neurologic problem must be evaluated. If the clinical condition is mild, stable, and under good control, the patient may be considered for GA in the office. Examples of such conditions include mild nonsteroid-dependent asthma, corrected congenital heart disease, or a stable Sz disorder. The child with Down syndrome, obesity, snoring, or OSA may pose a very difficult problem in this setting because airway obstruction can occur easily under deep iv sedation. Also, these patients frequently have concurrent congenital heart disease. The child with a current or recent URI always poses a dilemma. Although there is controversy on this issue, these children generally should have their procedures postponed because their chances of sustaining periop respiratory problems are higher than normal.

Premedication	There are several options available for preprocedure sedation. In the older child (> 8 yr) who is psychologically mature, an iv can be placed without premedication. In a dental office that is equipped with N_2O, the patient can breathe a high-flow N_2O/O_2 mix through a nasal mask for 10 min before iv placement. If the patient accepts the mask, this technique can help lessen the patient's fear of the iv. The use of a 30-ga needle for infiltration of buffered local anesthetic and, sometimes, the use of EMLA cream (placed 30 min in advance) also can be very helpful. Oral premedication is used commonly in children 4–8 yr old. Midazolam (0.5–0.7 mg/kg; maximum = 20 mg) mixed in an appropriate dose of liquid acetaminophen, given in the office 20 min before the procedure, can provide adequate sedation. In some, the addition of oral ketamine 2–3 mg/kg to the midazolam solution may result in a better sedating effect, especially in older pediatric patients. Although an oral premed is popular and usually effective in the hospital setting, it may not be appropriate in the setting of the dental office for a variety of reasons. First, many of these children are not cooperative with oral hygiene or with taking oral medications at home and will not cooperate with taking them in the office. The special-needs children or adults will often be totally unable to take an oral premed. Second, many of the patients are anxious that the oral premed is not absorbed well and may not be effective. Third and maybe most important, having any volume in the stomach adds to the risk of aspiration management, which is extremely problematic in the dental office.

Premedication (cont'd)	One safer and certainly more effective and predictable premedication for the young healthy child (6 yr or younger) or for the special-needs child is an intramuscular injection consisting of ketamine 2mg/kg, midazolam 0.2 mg/kg and glycopyrrolate 0.1 mg/kg. The anesthesiologist can administer this injection while the patient is in his or her parents' arms in the waiting area. Within 5 min after the injection, the patient will be sedated adequately to allow a smooth separation from the parent and sufficient amnesia for induction. Most parents will accept this premed option when the anesthesiologist explains the rationale for it in advance, usually during the preop phone call. In the child over age 6, an inhalation induction without premed may work very well, especially when explained properly to the child and the parent. After the premed, the induction of general anesthesia in the adult, pediatric, or special-needs patient in the dental office is similar to the anesthetic induction in the operating room. Monitors are placed, and in the pediatric patient this is followed by an inhalation induction, and then the placement of the iv. Intubation (preferably a nasal ETT) follows. After confirmation of the proper placement of the ETT, throat packs are placed with dental floss tied to them and left outside the mouth as a reminder of their presence in the throat. If x-rays are needed, the dentist and/or the dental assistants will get these done after the patient is intubated and then, finally, dental treatment can begin. There are no special considerations for maintenance of GA and an inhalation agent, TIVA or a combination, can be used. Some intraop narcotic should be used in the pediatric patient for postop analgesia as well as to minimize emergence delirium. Local anesthetic is often avoided in the pediatric patient undergoing this dental procedure under GA to avoid the possibility of the child biting a numb lip, cheek, or tongue as they recover. In the healthy adult patient undergoing dental work or oral surgery with GA, local anesthesia is usually administered by the dentist or oral surgeon intraop. The routine use of prophylactic intraop antiemetics is highly recommended and may include a combination of dexamethasone, metoclopramide, ondansetron, and even a small dose of promethazine.

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: Alternatively, a flexible LMA can be used for airway management, if needed. Following sedation, the patient is placed in the dental chair, with the head positioned to maintain an open airway. A shoulder roll may be needed to help with head extension. Monitoring—including pulse oximeter, ECG, BP cuff, and precordial stethoscope—is attached. O_2 is supplied, and $ETCO_2$ can be measured through a nasal cannula. An iv is started if not previously placed. A nasal airway is positioned with care (to avoid epistaxis) after the dental x-rays are taken. The anesthesiologist must be constantly vigilant in maintaining an open airway in these patients in the face of an oral procedure. Placing a flexible LMA may make airway management easier without interfering with the dental procedure. A propofol infusion can be started at a rate of 100–150 mcg/kg/min. Administration of a small amount of meperidine (e.g., 5–15 mg iv) may be useful in alleviating emergence delirium, especially if there is not adequate local anesthesia.

Emergence	No special considerations, except that throat packs must be removed.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV	These patients may swallow blood, with consequent PONV.
Pain management	Oral analgesics (see p. C-2)	Acetaminophen can be started ~ 4 h after discharge.

Recovery and discharge	In the dental office, there may not be a separate, designated recovery area. Usually, the pediatric patient is recovered by the anesthesiologist in the treatment room for at least 30–50 min, or until the patient is opening his/her eyes and maintaining a normal airway without assistance. At this point, the iv and monitors can be removed and the patient can continue recovering with his/her parents or family in the office until the patient can keep his/her eyes open, follow commands, seem calm, and is free of nausea. Postop instructions given to the parents include no outside or unsupervised activities for the rest of the day, no drinking or eating in the car on the way home, clear liquids for the first h, gradually advancing the diet to soft foods. The anesthesiologist should give the parents his/her pager or cell phone number so they can call with any questions that arise after they are at home. Regardless, a follow-up phone call from the anesthesiologist is always a good policy.

DENTAL IMPLANTS AND BONE GRAFTING

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Azeem K. Lakha

Description: A dental implant consists of a tooth-root-shaped titanium post that is used to support a crown, bridge, or denture. Dental implants are inserted surgically into the mandibular or maxillary alveolar bone where teeth are missing. Single implants may be done with local anesthesia, but multiple or complex procedures are best accomplished with iv sedation. After the local anesthetic is administered, a mucoperiosteal flap is raised over the edentulous alveolus, and the bone is exposed. Precise drill holes are made in the bone, and the implants are screwed or tapped into place. Bone grafting may be necessary around the implants to fill in defects and is carried out using autologous, allogenic, xenogenic, or synthetic materials. In most cases, the gum tissue is closed over or around the implant. The bone is allowed to heal around the implant, and 2–6 mo later the implant can be used to attach crowns, bridges, or dentures. In cases where there is insufficient bone, a bone graft is necessary **before** implants can be placed. Typically, bone grafts are allowed to heal for 6 months before implant insertion. Most minor grafting procedures are accomplished in the dental office under iv sedation and local anesthesia. Major grafts requiring extraoral donor sites may have to be done under GA via nasal ETT intubation.

Usual preop diagnosis: Acquired or congenital absence of dentition

SUMMARY OF PROCEDURE	
Position	Supine, with head tilted back, using an articulating headrest in the dental chair
Incision	Intraoral mucoperiosteal flaps
Special instrumentation	Precordial stethoscope
Unique considerations	Throat packs are used to prevent aspiration of teeth, crowns, blood, and irrigation fluids. Ensure that they are removed at the end of the case.
Antibiotics	Prophylactic antibiotics, given orally before surgery
Surgical time	1–3 h
EBL	25–100 mL
Mortality	Rare
Morbidity	Infection: 1% Bleeding: Rare Delayed Bleeding: Rare Aspiration: Rare
Pain Score	1–4, depending on procedure

PATIENT POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS	
Age range	17+ yr
Male: Female	1:1
Incidence	Becoming more common as technology improves
Etiology	Tooth loss

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE

Many patients having dental implant procedures are elderly and/or have multiple medical problems. The anesthesiologist should be consulted in advance about these patients so that questions about their medical conditions can be answered and a current list of medications can be obtained. Sometimes the patient's primary care physician needs to be contacted to discuss details of medical Hx. If chronic medical conditions are stable, patients often can receive "conscious sedation" and monitoring by the anesthesiologist for this procedure in the office.

Premedication: Usually not necessary

INTRAOPERATIVE

Anesthetic technique: MAC. These patients are not intubated electively. In the adult patient having dental implants, the maintenance of a lightly sedated state is achieved using a combination of iv midazolam, fentanyl (or meperidine), and small amounts of ketamine (20–30 mg/dose). A pulse oximeter, ECG, BP cuff, precordial stethoscope or $ETCO_2$ monitor, and nasal O_2 should be in place. Glycopyrrolate (0.1–0.2 mg) should be given to decrease secretions. Dexamethasone 8 mg and metoclopramide 15 mg are useful as an antiemetic combination. Usually, the oral surgeon needs the patient's cooperation at some point during the procedure; therefore, propofol is not an ideal drug to use. It can be given, however, in small doses to the patient who requires more than the other drugs for sedation. Occasionally, the adult patient in this setting will require a nasal airway.

Emergence	No special considerations, except that throat packs must be removed at end of procedure.
Blood and fluid requirements	IV: 20–22 ga × 1 NS/LR @ 4–6 mL/kg/h
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see p. B-1)
Positioning	✓ and pad pressure points ✓ eyes

POSTOPERATIVE

Complications	PONV	These patients may swallow blood, with consequent PONV.
Pain management	Oral analgesics (see p. C-2)	
Recovery and discharge	See Recovery and Discharge for Office Dental Rehabilitation (p. 1516).	

SECTION

15.0 EMERGENCY PROCEDURES FOR THE ANESTHESIOLOGIST

ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Carlos Brun, MD
Frederick G. Mihm, MD

EMERGENCY CRICOTHYROTOMY

Clinical situation: Typically, this procedure is performed in a hypoxic patient with an obstructed airway who cannot be ventilated with a mask or LMA, and cannot be intubated.

Emergency "Stab" Cricothyrotomy[5]

Equipment	• Scalpel, preferably with #11 blade • ETT #6 • Syringe for inflating cuff • Prep solution such as alcohol, chlorhexidine, or povidone-iodine
Procedure	1. Prep skin if time permits. 2. Identify cricothyroid membrane between cricoid and thyroid cartilages (Fig. 15-1). 3. Make 2–3 cm transverse or vertical incision through skin. 4. Make 2.5-cm incision through cricothyroid membrane with single stab (Fig. 15-2). 5. Reverse scalpel, place handle into wound, and turn 90° to expand incision. 6. Pass tracheostomy tube (or standard ETT) into trachea. 7. Inflate cuff on tracheosomy/ETT. 8. Ventilate patient with capnography if possible. 9. Secure tube.

Emergency "Four-Step" Cricothyrotomy[1,2]

Equipment	• Scalpel with #11 blade • Tracheal hook (may be improvised by bending a 16-g needle into a hook with a hemostat) • ETT #6 • Syringe for inflating cuff • Prep solution such as alcohol, chlorhexidine, or povidone-iodine

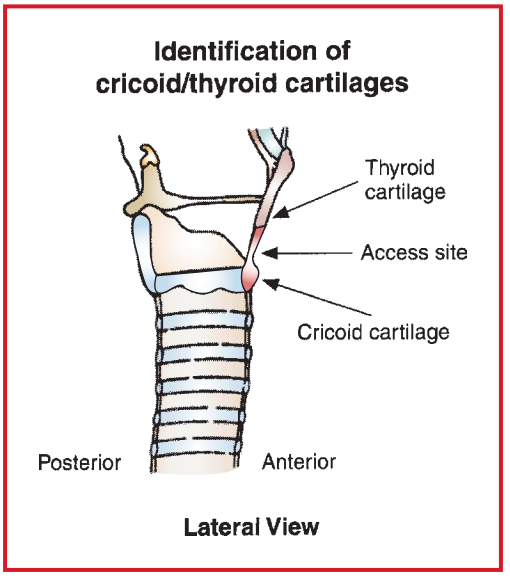


Figure 15-1. Identify cricoid membrane.

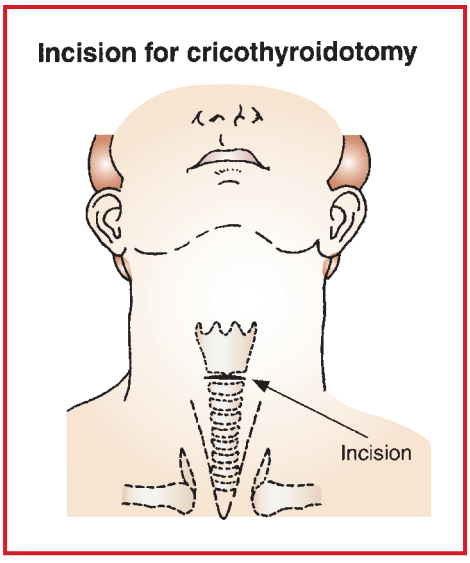


Figure 15-2. If possible extend head and place bolster between scapula. Palpate thryoid and cricoid cartilages, then identify cricothryoidmembrane (CTM). Skin incision may be vertical if unsure of CTM location, as a finger inserted through a vertical incision may have more ability to palpate the CTM by blunt pressure in a vertical or horizontal search.

Procedure	1. Right hand dominant operator stands on patient's left side. Position with head and neck extended. 2. Prep skin if time permits. 3. Nondominant hand identifies cricothyroid membrane while stabilizing thyroid cartilage. Dominant hand makes 2.5-cm transverse incision through skin and cricothyroid membrane with single stab, keeping blade in place. 4. Nondominant hand places tracheal hook into incision, lifting cricoid cartilage ventrally, then scalpel is removed. 5. Dominant hand inserts ETT, then removes tracheal hook. 6. Inflate cuff. 7. Ventilate patient with capnography if possible. 8. Secure tube.

Emergency "Bougie-Guided" Cricothyrotomy[3]

Equipment	• Scalpel and hemostat (central line kit) • ETT #6 • Syringe for inflating cuff • Bougie (pediatric 10 Fr for ETT 4.0–5.5 or adult 15 Fr for ETT 6.0) • Prep solution such as alcohol, chlorhexidine, or povidone-iodine
Procedure	1. Operator may stand at head or either side of patient. Position with head and neck extended. 2. Prep skin if time permits. 3. Nondominant hand identifies cricothyroid membrane while stabilizing thyroid cartilage. 4. Dominant hand makes a 3-cm incision through skin. 5. Nondominant hand index finger placed into incision, palpates cricothyroid membrane with a side-to-side motion, then finger is removed from incision. 6. Dominant hand makes a 2.5 cm horizontal incision in the cricothyroid membrane. 7. Dominant hand inserts coude tip end of bougie via incision seeking tracheal clicks and hang-up sign. 8. Pass ETT over bougie into trachea. If difficult, use hemostat to dilate cricothyroid membrane with bougie in place, and then pass ETT (Fig. 15-3). 9. Remove bougie. 10. Inflate cuff. 11. Ventilate patient and monitor capnogram if possible. 12. Secure tube.

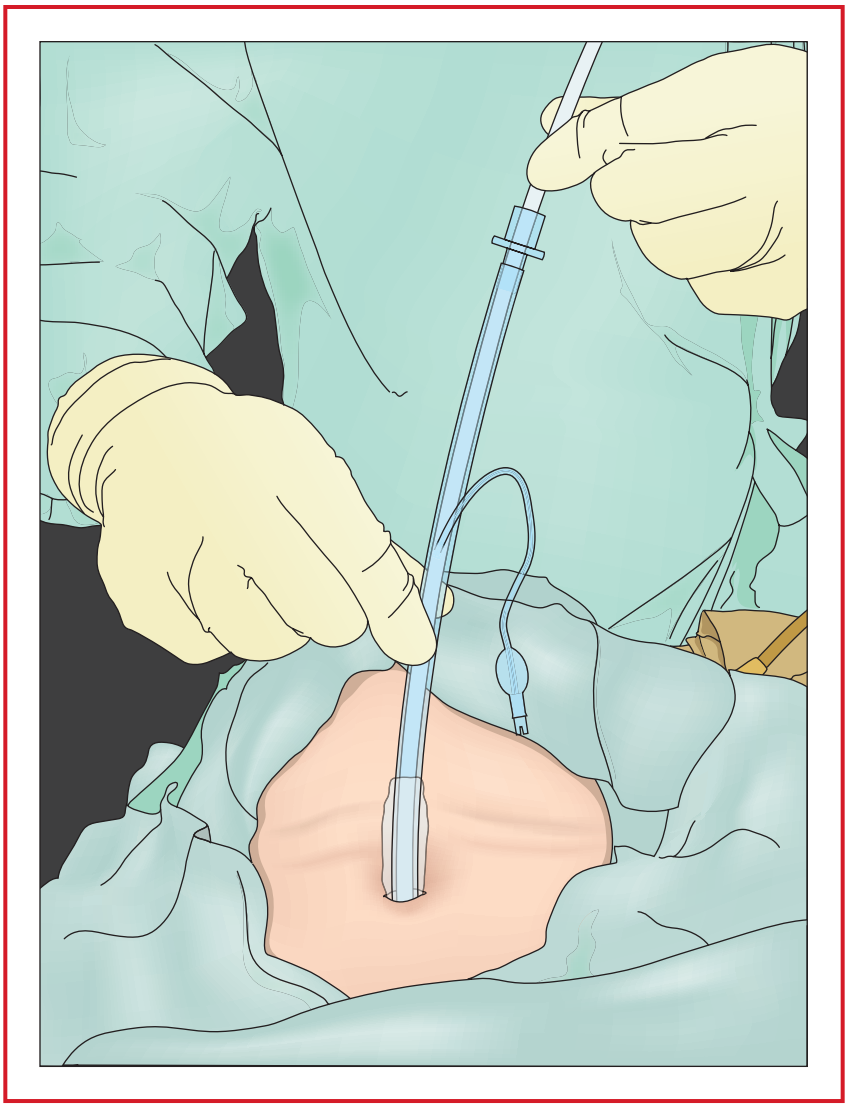


Figure 15-3. Adult bougie 15 Fr passed via incision with coude tip directed caudally attempting to feel for tracheal clicks and/or carinal hang-up sign. Average depth from skin to carina is 12–15 cm. A 6.0 or greater ETT will pass over an Adult 15 Fr bougie.

Emergency "Guidewire" Cricothyrotomy

Equipment	• Melker Emergency Cricothyrotomy Set (Cook Critical Care), or equivalent • Scalpel • 6-mL syringe (half-filled with crystalloid or local anesthetic if time allows) • 18-ga introducer needle or iv catheter/needle • Amplatz extra-stiff guidewire 0.038" • Curved dilator • Airway catheter • Umbilical or twill tape
Procedure	1. Attach syringe to iv catheter and needle, and assemble emergency airway device (Fig. 15-4) by inserting the dilator through the airway catheter until the handle stops against the connector of the airway catheter. 2. Identify cricothyroid membrane between cricoid and thyroid cartilages (Fig. 15-1). 3. Nondominant hand stabilizes cricothyroid membrane. 4. Dominant hand makes a vertical midline incision (Fig. 15-5).

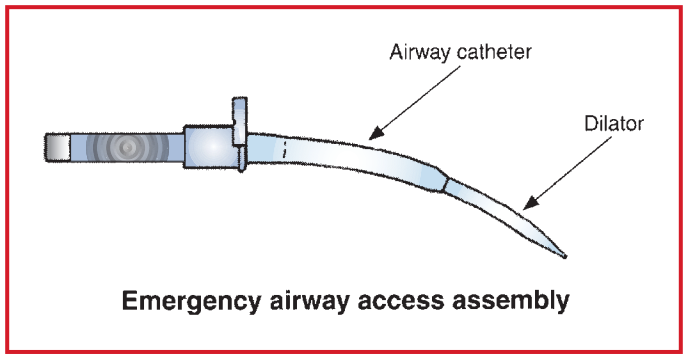


Figure 15-4. Melker cricothryoidotomy kit with dilator passed firmly into airway catheter prior to accessing the CTM.

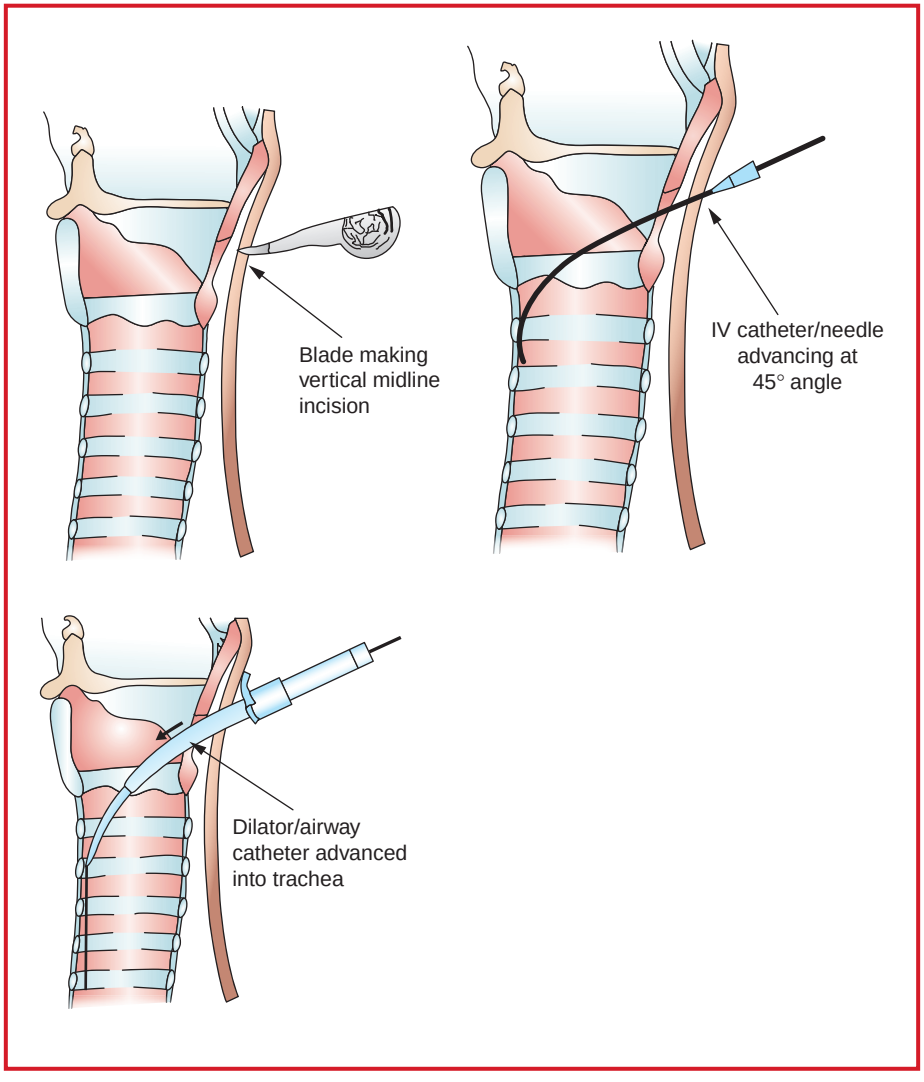


Figure 15-5. Emergency guidewire cricothyroidotomy.

Procedure (cont'd)	5. Dominant hand advances syringe with catheter/needle at a 45° caudad angle through incision until air bubbles can be aspirated (tracheal lumen) (Fig. 15-5). 6. Remove syringe and needle, leaving catheter in place. 7. Advance soft end of guidewire into catheter several cm past end of catheter. 8. Remove catheter. 9. Advance the dilator/airway catheter assembly over the guidewire into the trachea, keeping proximal end of guidewire visible at all times. If difficult to pass dilator/airway, withdraw from incision, use hemostat to dilate cricothyroid membrane with guidewire in place, and reattempt to advance assembly. (Consider replacing angiocatheter over guidewire, removing guidewire, and verifying position with capnography.) Remove guidewire and dilator, leaving airway catheter in place. 10. Ventilate patient and monitor capnogram if possible. 11. Secure airway with umbilical or twill tape around neck.

EMERGENCY PERICARDIOCENTESIS

Clinical situation: The patient typically has severe ↓ BP unexplained by any other causes (e.g., anesthetic drugs, autoPEEP, tension pneumothorax) and consistent with acute cardiac tamponade (dyspnea, tachypnea, ↓ BP, ↑ HR, electrical alternans, ↓ voltage EKG, ↓ pulse pressure or pulsus paradoxus, ↑ CVP/JVD, distant heart sounds) ± equalization of pressures (RAP~RVEDP~PAD~PAOP) ± confirmation by TEE/TTE. Because of the high intrapericardial pressures, all "filling pressures" of both right and left heart appear high when preload is actually very low. In severe cases, patients will experience cardiac arrest with pulseless electrical activity (PEA).

Equipment	• 10-mL syringe • 18-ga spinal needle
Procedure	1. Identify xiphoid process and point 1" below and 1" left of midline (Fig. 15-6). 2. Prep skin below xiphoid. 3. An 18 g spinal needle is directed towards the left shoulder and inserted at a ≤ 45° angle to the skin. 4. Attach needle to syringe, and direct needle at ≤ 45° to the skin under rib toward left shoulder (Fig. 15-6). 5. If pericardial fluid is withdrawn, BP will ↑ immediately.

EMERGENCY ULTRASOUND-GUIDED PERICARDIOCENTESIS[4,5]

In the above-described setting of respiratory and hemodynamic stability, ultrasonography may be used to aid in diagnosis and treatment of cardiac tamponade. If you are unfamiliar with basic cardiac ultrasonography, a stat consult with a skilled ultrasonographer is necessary for performance of an ultrasound-guided pericardiocentesis. Precepted hands-on training must be sought prior to using ultrasound for diagnosis or treatment of cardiac tamponade.

Cardiac tamponade is a clinical diagnosis. Ultrasound findings include pericardial fluid with a "swinging heart" (ultrasound visualization of electrical alternans); increasing pericardial pressure causes right atrial systolic collapse, right ventricle diastolic collapse, septal shift toward left ventricle in systole; respiratory variation across tricuspid and mitral valves; in addition, IVC plethora with no respiratory variation may be seen. Patients with normal, stable hemodynamics and pericardial effusion do not require emergent pericardiocentesis.

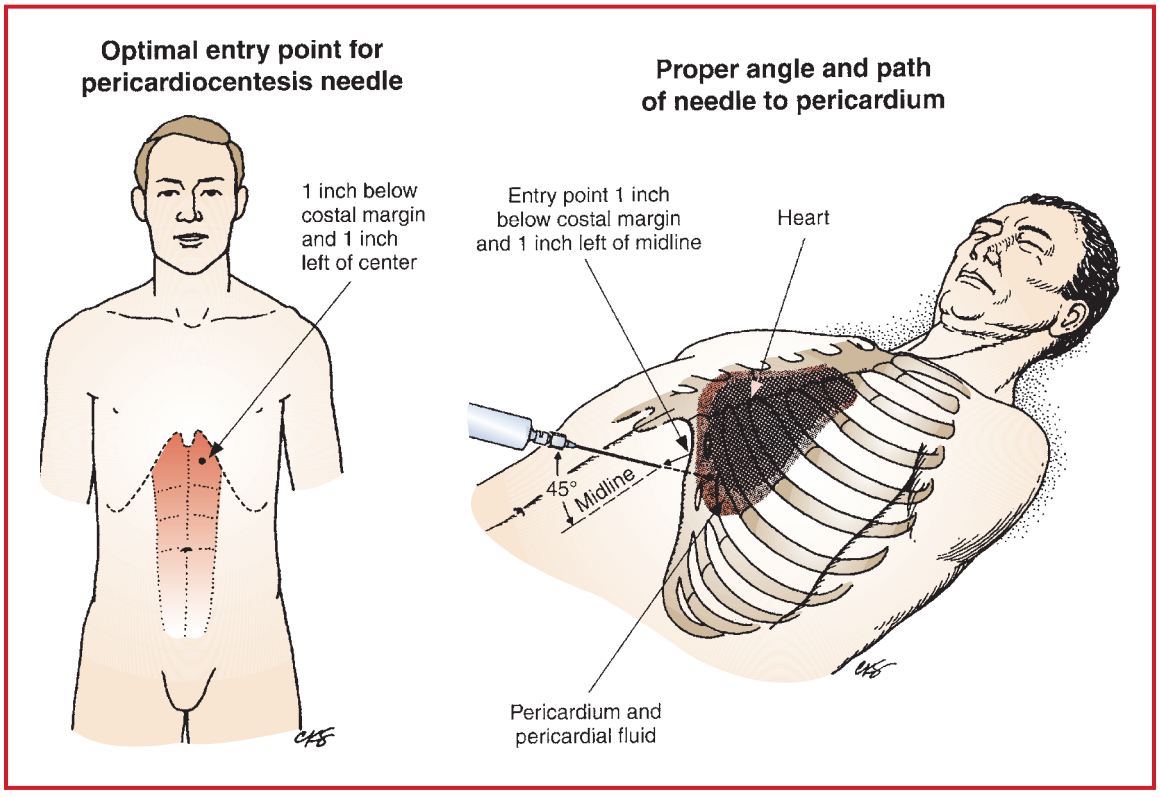


Figure 15-6. Emergency blind pericardiocentesis. Once diagnosis of cardiac tamponade is made, elevate head of bed to 30–45° to allow gravity to assist in fluid access. If hemodynamics do not allow this, place the patient into a supine position. The access site is 2.5 cm below the xiphoid process and 2.5 cm to the patient's left. An 18 g spinal needle is directed towards the left shoulder and inserted at a ≤ 45° angle to the skin. The stylet is removed, a syringe with stopcock attached, and the apparatus advanced with aspiration. If time allows, anesthetize the route with lidocaine 1–2% 5–10 mL.

Equipment	Minimum • Skilled ultrasonographer • Ultrasound machine with phase array, curvilinear, or vascular access probe • Ultrasound gel or lubricant • Syringe • 18-g 5-inch spinal needle or 18-g Tuohy needle or longest 18-g angiocatheter/needle available
	Preferred • Alcohol, chlorhexidine, or povidone iodine skin prep • Sterile gloves • Skilled ultrasonographer • Ultrasound machine with phase array, curvilinear, or vascular access probe • Sterile ultrasound probe sheath with gel • 10-, 20-, or 60-mL syringe • 18-g spinal needle • 3-way stopcock • Lidocaine 1–2% 5–10 mL with 5-mL syringe and 3-inch 25-g needle

Procedure	1. Subxiphoid 2. Identify xiphoid process and point 1" below and 1" left of midline (Fig. 15-6). 3. Prep skin, then attach needle to 3-way stopcock on a syringe. 4. Use ultrasound probe with sterile sheath to find largest accessible collection of pericardial fluid in the subxiphoid space. A subxiphoid four-chamber view or short-axis midpapillary view should be attempted. Note that you may need to pass the needle through the liver to get to the pericardial space. If no chest compressions are being performed, consider positioning the patient in slight head-up or left lateral decubitus position to optimize fluid accessibility. If the patient is conscious, consider local anesthetic injection along anticipated needle path under ultrasound visualization. 5. Place needle next to probe in same alignment to the skin and pericardial fluid (Fig. 15-7). 6. Advance needle tip under direct ultrasound visualization (Fig. 15-7). 7. When needle tip enters fluid collection, withdraw fluid. If flowing freely, continue to withdraw fluid until syringe is full, or you may turn the 3-way stopcock open to atmosphere to allow pericardial pressure to decompress. (If unsure of needle tip position, abort attempt or consider injection of 1–3 mL agitated saline via needle to identify location of tip relative to pericardial fluid.) 8. Remove needle once hemodynamics have improved with fluid removal. 9. Monitor patient for reaccumulation of pericardial fluid and consult for formal evaluation and possible pericardial drain placement.

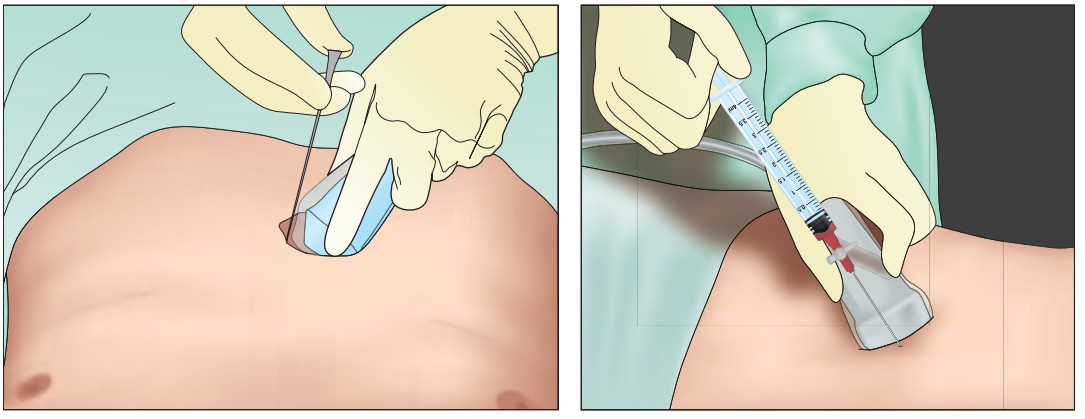


Figure 15-7. Emergency ultrasound-guided pericardiocentesis. Subxiphoid approach. Once ultrasonographic diagnosis of cardiac tamponade is made, elevate head of bed to 30–45° to allow gravity to assist in fluid access. If hemodynamics do not allow this, place the patient into a supine position. The subxiphoid access site is 2.5 cm below the xiphoid process and 2.5 cm to the patient's left. With the ultrasound probe in place, visualizing the effusion and the heart, an 18 g spinal needle is directed towards the left shoulder and inserted at a ≤ 45° angle to the skin. The stylet is removed, a syringe with stopcock attached, and the apparatus advanced with aspiration under direct visualization. If unsure of needle tip location, stop advancement and wait for expert help or consider injection of 1–3 mL of agitated saline to visualize tip location. If time allows, anesthetize the route with lidocaine 1–2% 5–10 mL. Both in plane and out of plane techniques are acceptable.

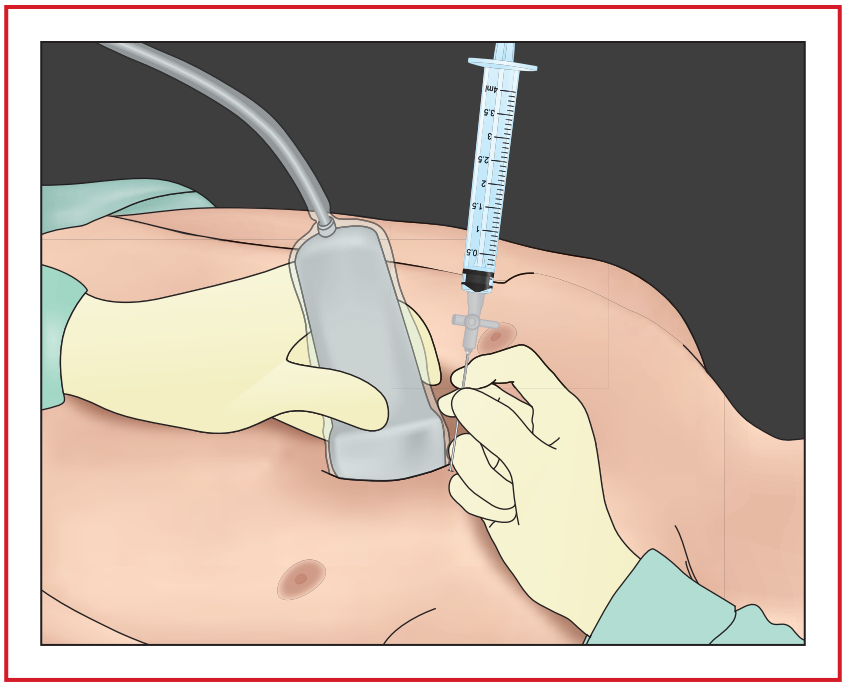


Figure 15-8. Emergency ultrasound guided pericardiocentesis. Parasternal approach. Place the patient supine or in Trendelenburg to maximize fluid collection size in intended needle path. Identify the heart and fluid collection in the 4th or 5th intercostal space between the sternum and the midclavicular line. Be sure that the lung is not entering into ultrasonographic view. An 18 g spinal needle is directed towards the patient's back and inserted at a 90° angle to the skin. The stylet is removed, a syringe with stopcock attached, and the apparatus advanced with aspiration under direct visualization. If unsure of needle tip location, stop advancement and wait for expert help or consider injection of 1–3 mL of agitated saline to visualize tip location. If time allows, anesthetize the route with lidocaine 1–2% 5–10 mL.

Parasternal (Fig. 15-8)	Prep skin, then attach needle to 3-way stopcock onto syringe. Use ultrasound probe with sterile sheath to find largest accessible collection of pericardial fluid in the parasternal area; 4th or 5th rib interspace along left sternal border. Note that you should not pass the needle through the pleural space/lung/vessels to enter the pericardial space. If patient is conscious, consider local anesthetic injection along anticipated needle path under ultrasound visualization. Place needle next to probe in same alignment to the skin and pericardial fluid. You may use color-flow Doppler to visualize vessels in intended needle path. Advance needle tip under direct ultrasound visualization. When needle tip enters fluid collection, withdraw fluid. If flowing freely, continue to withdraw fluid until syringe is full, or you may turn the 3-way stopcock open to atmosphere to allow pericardial pressure/fluid to decompress. (If unsure of needle tip position, abort attempt or consider injection of 1–3 mL agitated saline via needle to identify location of tip relative to pericardial fluid.) Remove needle once hemodynamics have improved with fluid removal. Monitor patient for reaccumulation of pericardial fluid and consult for formal evaluation and possible pericardial drain placement.

Suggested Reading

1. Fitch, MT et al: Videos in clinical medicine. Emergency pericardiocentesis. *N Engl J Med* 2012; 366(12):e17.

Suggested Viewing

Links are available online to the following videos:

Chest Tube Insertion: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hQlt57AyQmg

Emergency surgical airway: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BwWIvJNecSg

Cricothyrotomy: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_VFJGkJy1G8

Ultrasound Guided Pericardiocentesis Procedure - SonoSite Ultrasound: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T6Z9DvPPmXg

Needle Thoracostomy - www.proceduresconsult.com: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4cuotNQPRNc (subscription required to view complete video)

Needle Decompression (thoracostomy): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TZpq8EPJ13Q&list=PLAB3A880AAEFB4992&index=2

Needle decompression hazards: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fQqPktj_gFc

Venous Cutdown.mp4: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AHuJZHvTNGE

EMERGENT NEEDLE/CATHETER THORACOSTOMY

Clinical situation: A patient is experiencing severe hypotension and hypoxemia unexplained by any other cause (e.g., autoPEEP, cardiac tamponade) and consistent with acute tension pneumothorax (dyspnea, tachypnea, tachycardia, syncope, ↑ P_{aw}, ↓ movement of involved chest, ↓ breath sounds, ↑ resonance to percussion, and ↑ rib interspace distance compared to uninvolved side) and cardiovascular Sx related to ↑ thoracic pressures and ↓ preload (↓ BP, ↑ HR, ↑ pulse pressure, ↑ CVP). The CVP is artificially elevated, reflecting the high intrathoracic pressures. Actual (transmural) CVP is very low. In severe cases, patients may experience cardiac arrest with pulseless electrical activity (PEA) because high intrathoracic pressures effectively stop venous return to the heart.

Note: AutoPEEP MUST be ruled out first, particularly when the diagnosis is bilateral tension PTX. Auto PEEP is effectively ruled out (except with a ball valve airway lesion) by disconnecting the ETT from ventilator/Ambu® bag and allowing patient to exhale. If the patient's condition immediately improves, you have made the diagnosis of autoPEEP.

Note: With a pneumothorax, release of the pressure that has built up in the chest is a lifesaving maneuver. A large-bore chest tube does not need to be placed emergently. The much simpler needle/catheter thoracostomy is effective and less demanding for the nonsurgeon.

Equipment	One of the following: • 16-g needle or iv catheter/needle (preferred) with a length of 5 cm • 16-g single-lumen CVP kit • Alcohol, chlorhexidine, or povidone-iodine skin prep
Procedure	1. Identify the space. Identify the 2nd intercostals space by palpitating the angle of Louis (union of manubrium and sternum); then move laterally to find the insertion of the 2nd rib. The interspace directly below this rib is the 2nd intercostal space (Fig. 15-9). Access should occur in the midclavicular line in this space. Alternatively, the anterior or mid-axillary line in the 4th–5th intercostal space may be used. Identify the anterior axillary line by drawing an imaginary line caudally from the anterior axillary fold to rib space at or above the nipple line.

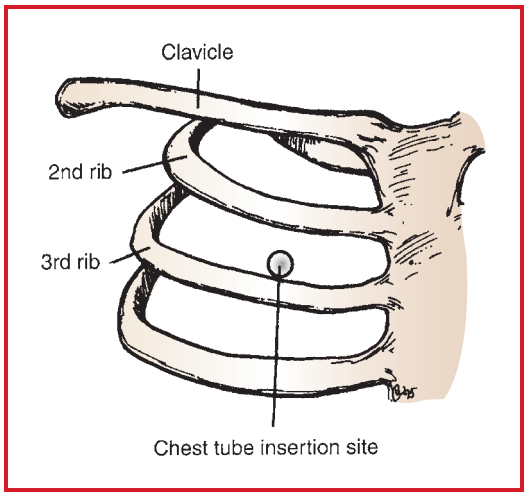


Figure 15-9. Midclavicular 2nd intercostal space. Lateral needle decompression in the 4th or 5th midaxillary line. To avoid injury to neurovascular bundle, insert needle along upper border of the inferior rib at the selected space.

Procedure (cont'd)	2. Prep skin. 3. Enter the selected intercostals space anteriorly over the upper border of the inferior rib to avoid neurovascular bundle running along the underside of the superior rib. 4. With entry into the pleural space, there may be an audible rush of air and with immediate hemodynamic improvement. 5. Remove needle. 6. The angiocatheter may be held in place until a chest tube is inserted. 7. Note: A more permanent chest tube will still need to be placed (i.e., the patient no longer has a tension pneumothorax, but still has a pneumothorax.) This can be done in a more controlled situation by someone skilled in that procedure.

EMERGENT ULTRASOUND-GUIDED NEEDLE/CATHETER THORACOSTOMY

Tension pneumothorax diagnosis and management have been described earlier. If progressive pneumothorax with worsening cardiopulmonary function is suspected, a skilled ultrasonographer is needed to rule out pneumothorax prior to tension pneumothorax development. Lung ultrasound has > 90% sensitivity and > 90% specificity for pneumothorax.[6] A vascular access, curvilinear, or phase array probe with a depth field of 6 cm using 2D imaging may be utilized to detect pneumothorax. 2D and M mode may be used to identify signs to rule in or out a pneumothorax. Precepted hands-on training must be sought prior to using ultrasound to diagnose or treat pneumothorax.

Equipment	• Skilled ultrasonographer • Ultrasound machine with phase array, curvilinear, or vascular access probe • Ultrasound gel or lubricant • 16-g needle or angiocatheter/needle

Procedure	1. Identify pneumothorax with ultrasound.[7] 2. Scan least dependent area of chest with ultrasound probe (in supine patients—3rd–5th rib interspace midclavicular line) at 6 cm in 2D with indicator toward the patient's head and held perpendicular to chest wall (Fig. 15-10). 3. Identify the pleural line and seek lung sliding. Lung sliding confirms that the lung is touching the chest wall. Presence of lung sliding rules out large tension pneumothorax. 4. Seek B lines in 2D. Presence of B line rules out large tension pneumothorax in the scanned space. 5. Check for Seashore sign in M mode at site of lung sliding (Fig. 15-11). Presence of Seashore sign rules out large tension pneumothorax in the scanned space. 6. Alternatively, absence of Seashore sign and presence of bar code (Fig. 15-12) sign indicate pneumothorax. The lung point sign is a moving dark point seen at the interface of normal lung sliding to the air of the pneumothorax. If lung point sign is present, this indicates pneumothorax. 7. If all the above signs are absent and A lines are present, this does not rule out or in pneumothorax. Other modalities such as CXR or CT for diagnosis or continuing with diagnostic/therapeutic needle thoracostomy will be required. 8. Prep skin. Place angiocath/needle to side of probe. 9. Enter the selected intercostal space anteriorly over the upper border of the inferior rib to avoid neurovascular bundle; attempt to visualize needle tip. 10. With entry into the pleural space, there may be an audible rush of air, and there should be immediate hemodynamic improvement. 11. Remove needle once hemodynamics or ventilation improves to avoid lung laceration. The angio catheter may be held in place until a chest tube is inserted.

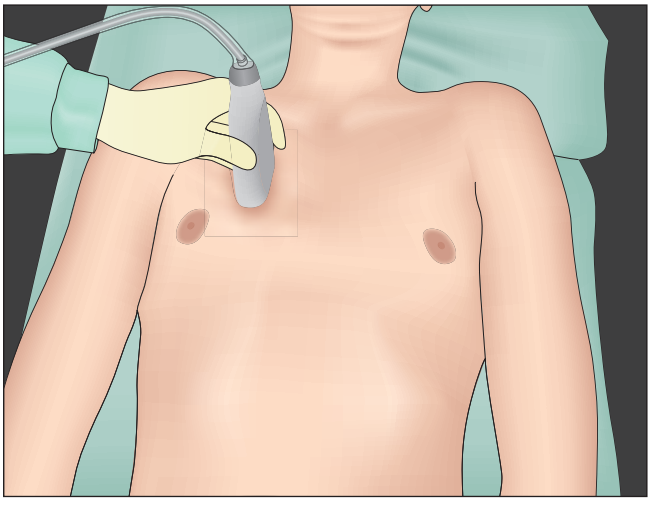


Figure 15-10. Place probe with indicator toward patient's head, perpendicular to chest wall, at the 3rd–5th intercostal space midclavicular line. In a supine patient, gas typically rises to this least dependent area of the chest cavity. You may move the probe caudally to scan multiple rib spaces in the midclavicular and axillary lines.[8]

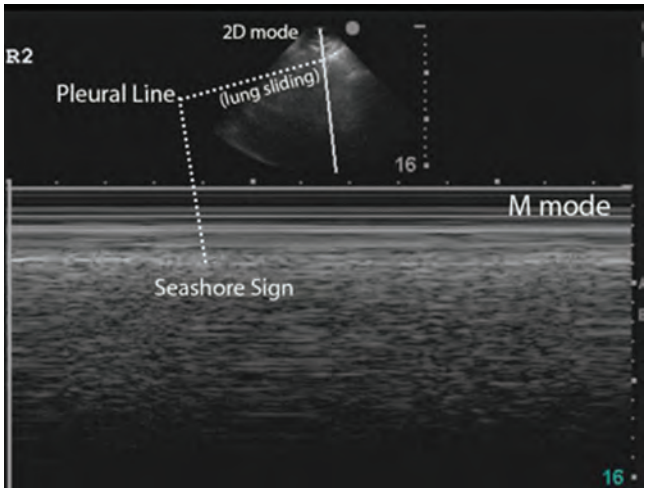


Figure 15-11. Seashore sign. M mode between the rib interspace with normal lung motion. The less mobile subcutaneous tissues and pleural tissues are seen as horizontal lines implying "waves" landing on a "sandy beach," the moving lung tissue represented by granular pattern below the pleural line.

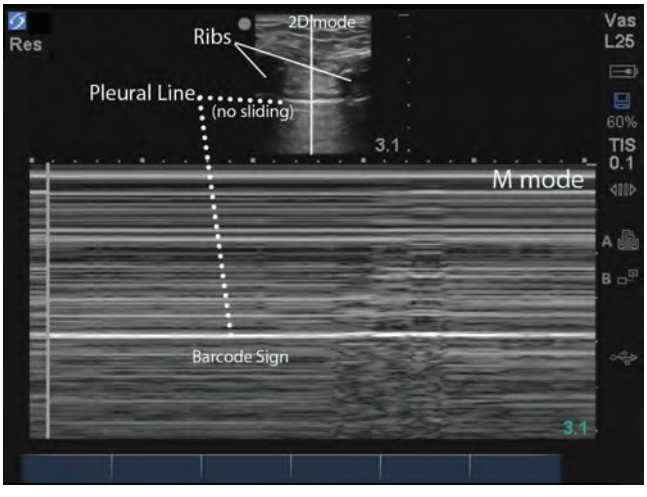


Figure 15-12. Bar code sign. During respiratory cycle, the "sand" (normal granular pattern) under the pleural line is replaced by "bar code" horizontal lines, indicating no lung sliding.[9]

EMERGENCY INTRAOSSEOUS ACCESS

Emergency intraosseous (IO) access is indicated when immediate vascular access is needed, and peripheral/central access is not possible, and endotracheal medication administration will not suffice. We discuss the use of the EZ-IO system of IO access. Contraindications include burn, infection, or fracture of bone selected for access, joint replacement at selected site, or inability to identify landmarks.

Procedure

1. Prior to attaching the EZ-Connect®: Ensure clamp is open. Prime set and purge air. Identify and clean insertion site (Fig. 15-13).
2. Snap EZ-IO needle set with plastic hub onto EZ-IO power driver (Fig. 15-14); (Red 15 ga, 15 mm for < 40 kg. Blue 15 ga, 25 mm for > 40 kg. Yellow hub 15 ga, 45 mm, > 40 kg and excessive tissue or humerus site).
3. Remove needle safety cap.
4. Gently press Needle Set through skin until tip touches bone.
5. At least 5 mm of the catheter must be visible (Fig. 15-15).
6. Squeeze Driver trigger and apply gentle, steady pressure. Release trigger when sudden "give" or "pop" is felt, indicating entry into medullary space. If Driver stalls or will not penetrate the bone, you may be applying too much downward force. Humerus site: to improve stability, needle should be advanced 2 cm after contact with bone. In adults, advance needle until catheter hub is against the skin. Change sites for access rather than have repeated attempts at the same site.
7. Remove Power Driver and stylet; confirm catheter stability with at least three of the following four methods:
   - Stability of catheter
   - Ability to aspirate
   - Physiologic or pharmacologic changes with medication administration
   - Adequate flow rate

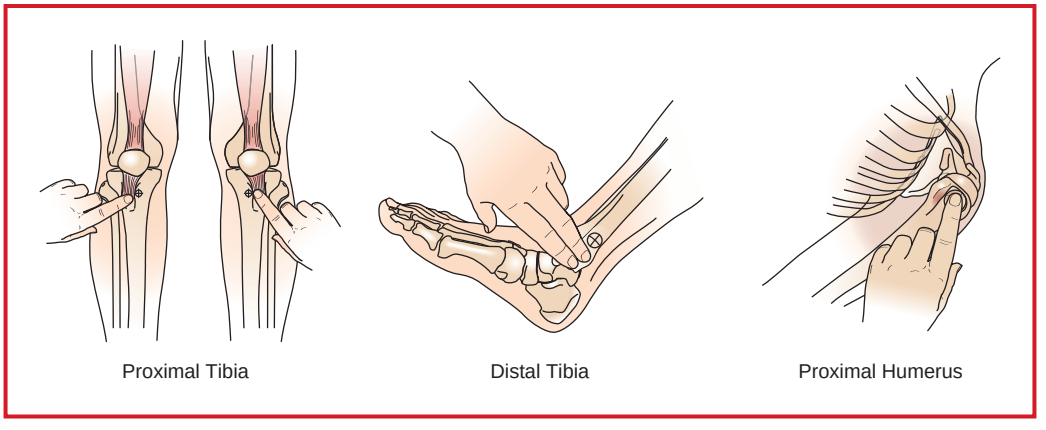


Figure 15-13. Identify and clean insertion site (proximal or distal tibia or humeral head).

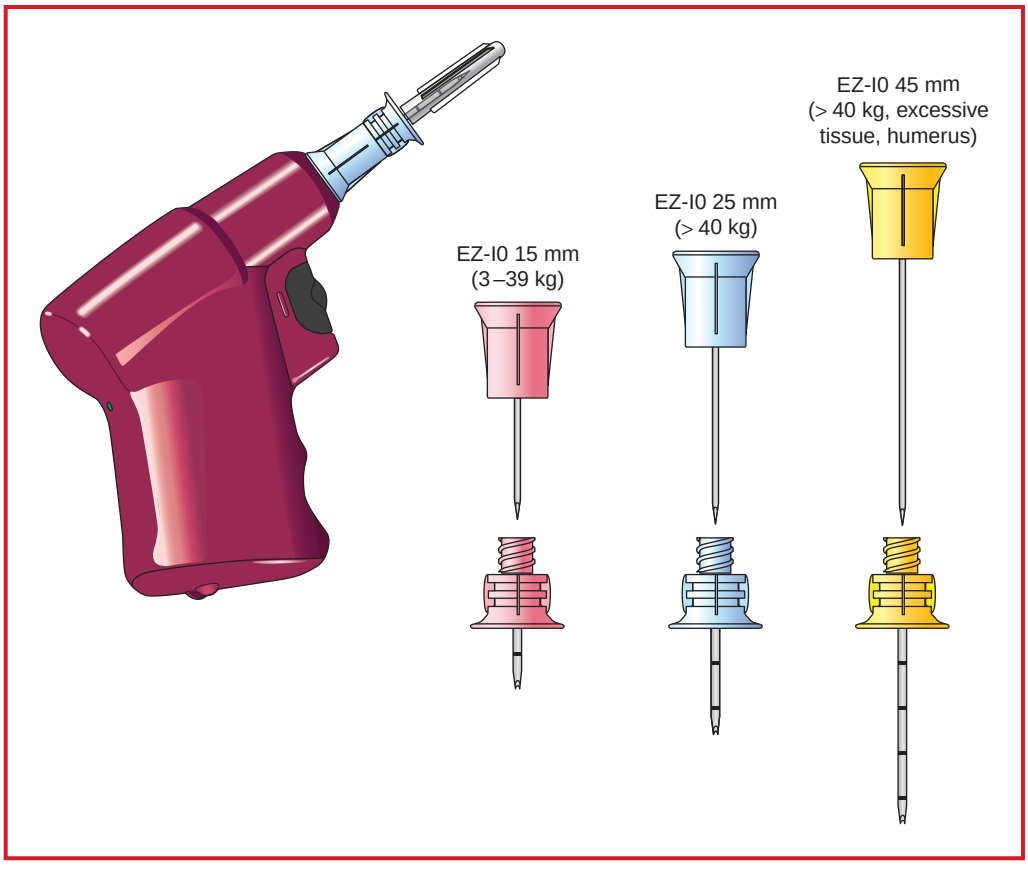


Figure 15-14. EZ-IO power driver and needle set sizes.

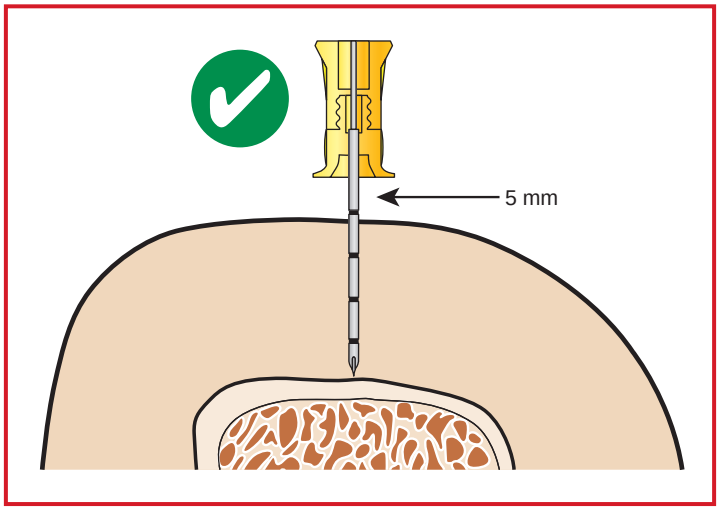


Figure 15-15. At least 5 mm of the catheter must be visible after pressing needle through skin to contact bone and prior to squeezing trigger.

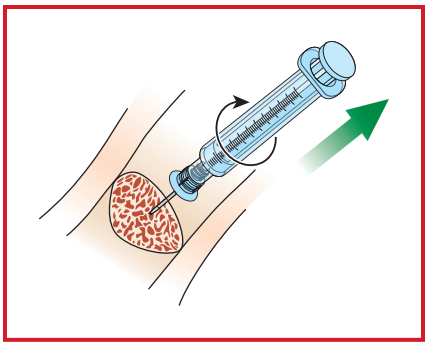


Figure 15-16. To remove EZ-IO catheter, attach Luer-lock syringe. Rotate syringe and catheter clockwise while using traction to withdraw catheter

Procedure (cont'd)	8. Secure with EZ-Stabilizer or have an assistant manually stabilize hub until secured, roll 2 sets of 4 × 4s into tight cylinders, apply cylinders in a parallel orientation around catheter, "sandwiching" the hub, then secure with tape or transparent adhesive film with hole cut out for hub access. 9. Attach EZ-Connect® extension set. DO NOT ATTACH A SYRINGE DIRECTLY TO THE EZ-IO CATHETER HUB EXCEPT WHEN DRAWING BLOOD FOR LABORATORY ANALYSIS (STABILIZE NEEDLE SET). 10. Flush the EZ-IO catheter with normal saline (10 mL for adults; use appropriate weight-based dose for smaller patients). For patients responsive to pain, consider lidocaine up to 0.2–1 mg/kg io slowly prior to saline flush.
EZ-IO Removal	Attach Luer-lock syringe. Rotate syringe and catheter clockwise while using traction to withdraw catheter—DO NOT ROCK OR BEND THE CATHETER DURING REMOVAL (Fig. 15-16).

References

1. Brofeldt BT, Panacek EA, Richards JR: An easy cricothyrotomy approach: the rapid four-step technique. *Acad Emerg Med* 1996; 3(11):1060–3.
2. Hamaikers AE, Henderson JJ: Equipment and strategies for emergency tracheal access in the adult patent. *Anaesthesia* 2011; 66(Suppl 2):65–80.
3. MacIntyre A, et al: Three-step emergency cricothyroidotomy. *Mil Med* 2007; 172(12):1228–30.
4. Fitch MT, et al: Videos in clinical medicine. Emergency pericardiocentesis. *N Engl J Med* 2012; 366(12):e17.
5. Pepi M, Muratori M: Echocardiography in the diagnosis and management of pericardial disease. *J Cardiovasc Med* 2006; 7(7): 533–44.
6. Alrajhi K, Woo MY, Vaillancourt C: Test characteristics of ultrasonography for the detection of pneumothorax: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Chest* 2012; 141(3):703–8.
7. Lichtenstein D: *Whole Body Ultrasonography in the Critically Ill*. Springer, New York: 2010.
8. Ueda K, Ahmen W, Ross AF: Intraoperative pneumothorax identified with transthoracic ultrasound. *Anesthesiology* 2011; 115(3):653–5.
9. Ioos V, et al: An integrated approach for prescribing fewer chest x-rays in the ICU. *Ann Intensive Care* 2011; 1(1):4.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A: PREOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

PREOPERATIVE LABORATORY TESTING AND DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Stephen P. Fischer, MD and Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

The value and utility of preop diagnostic studies have become central issues in evaluating cost-effective health care in the surgical patient. It is estimated that up to $3 billion is spent in the United States annually on preop laboratory and diagnostic studies. Unnecessary testing is inefficient and expensive, and it requires additional technical resources. Inappropriate studies may lead to evaluation of "borderline" or false-positive laboratory abnormalities. This may result in unnecessary OR delays, cancellations, and potential patient risk through additional testing and follow-up.

Surgical patients require preop lab and diagnostic studies that are consistent with their medical conditions, the proposed operative procedures, and the potential for blood loss. Preop lab and diagnostic testing should be ordered for specific clinical indications rather than simply because the patient is about to undergo a certain surgical procedure.

The following preop diagnostic guidelines provide basic recommendations. They are **not** intended as absolute or standard requirements. Practice guidelines should be modified based on clinical needs and individual practice, to ensure the highest quality of anesthesia and surgical patient care.

SUMMARY OF PREOP STUDIES

Chest x-ray (CXR)	**Overview:** A preop CXR should be used to assess the presence of acute, progressive, or chronic changes in cardiac/pulmonary disease. The decision to obtain a preop CXR should be individualized and based on clinical indications (see Table A-1). CXRs should not be part of a routine preop screening protocol. **Clinical indications:** Pneumonia; pulmonary edema; atelectasis; aortic aneurysm; mediastinal or pulmonary masses; tracheal deviation; pulmonary HTN; cardiomegaly; advanced COPD and blebs; dextrocardia; pulmonary embolism.
Electrocardiogram (ECG)	**Overview:** ECGs evaluate cardiac rhythm/conduction disturbances, ischemia, myocardial infarction, hypertrophy, and metabolic and electrolyte disorders. **Clinical indications:** Patients with suspected or known Hx of CAD; patient age > 60; HTN; hx of dysrhythmias, chest pain; CHF; diabetes; OSA, cerebral vascular disease and PVD; syncope or presyncope; dizziness; SOB; DOE; PND; palpitations; leg/ankle edema; abnormal valvular murmurs.
Liver function test (LFT)	**Overview:** LFTs establish the absence or presence of hepatic injury and the degree of hepatic reserve in disease states. LFTs consist of AST(SGOT), ALT(SGPT), GGTP, alkaline phosphatase, serum albumin, and bilirubin. **Clinical indications:** Patients with suspected or known Hx of hepatitis (viral, alcohol, drugs); infiltration (tumor, immunologic); cirrhosis; portal HTN; gallbladder or biliary tract disease; jaundice; intravascular hemolysis.
Renal function testing	**Overview:** Renal function testing measures glomerular filtration and the magnitude of renal tubular dysfunction. These tests include serum creatinine and BUN. **Clinical indications:** Renal function testing is indicated for patients with HTN; increased fluid overload (CHF/peripheral edema/ascites) associated with cardiac, hepatic, or; dehydration; diabetes; nausea, emesis, or anorexia; polyuria; nocturia; oliguria; anuria; high-risk surgery in patients with low CO syndrome; hematuria; costovertebral angle pain: renal transplant Hx; acute and chronic kidney disease; dialysis.
Hemoglobin (Hb), Hematocrit (Hct), CBC	**Overview:** The decision to obtain a preop Hgb, Hct, or CBC should be individualized and based on clinical indications, medical Hx, and the proposed surgical procedure. Hgb/Hct or CBC should not be part of a routine preop screening protocol. **Clinical indications:** Hematological disorder; bleeding/coagulopathy Hx; malignancy; chemotherapy; radiation therapy (CBC); renal disease; anticoagulant and steroid therapy; surgical procedures with high blood loss (> 1500 mL); highly invasive or trauma surgery; malabsorption/poor nutrition status; CNS disease.

Table A-1. Diagnosis-Based Preop Testing

Preop Diagnosis	ECG	CXR	Hct/Hb	CBC	Lytes	Renal	Glucose	Coag	LFTs	Drug levels	Ca^+
Cardiac disease:											
Chronic atrial fib	X									X[2]	
CHF	X	±				±					
HTN	X	±			X[1]	X					
MI history	X				±						
PVD	X										
Stable angina	X				±						
Valvular heart disease	X	±									
CNS disorders:											
Seizures	X			X	X		X			X	
Stroke	X			X	X		X			X	
Tumor	X			X							
Vascular/aneurysms	X		X								
Coagulopathies				X				X			
Endocrine disease:											
Addison's disease				X	X		X				
Cushing's disease				X	X		X				
Diabetes	X				±	X	X				
Hyperparathyroidism	X		X		X						X
Hyperthyroidism	X		X		X						X
Hypoparathyroidism	X				X						X
Hypothyroidism	X		X		X						
Hematological disorders				X							
Hepatic disease:											
Alcohol/drug-induced								X	X		
Infectious hepatitis								X	X		
Tumor infiltration								X	X		
Malabsorption/poor nutrition	X			X	X	X	X	±			
Malignancy				X							
Morbid obesity	X	±					X				
Pulmonary disease:											
Asthma	(PFT only if symptomatic; otherwise no tests required)										
Chronic bronchitis	X	±		X							
Emphysema	X	±								X[3]	
Kidney disease:											
Acute kidney disease			X		X	X					
Chronic kidney disease			X		X	X					
Select drug therapies:											
Anticoagulants			X					X			
Aspirin/NSAID	no tests										
Chemotherapy				X							
Digoxin (digitalis)	X				±					X	
Dilantin										X	
Diuretics					X	X					
Phenobarbital										X	
Steroids				X			X				
Theophylline										X	

X = OBTAIN ± = CONSIDER
1 Patients on diuretics
2 Patients on digoxin
3 Patients on theophylline

SUMMARY OF PREOP STUDIES (cont'd)	
Pregnancy testing	**Overview:** The decision to obtain a preop pregnancy test should be based on clinical Hx and examination. Several assays are available (serum hCG, urine hCG); β-hCG detectable in maternal urine and blood 8–9 d postconception. **Clinical indications:** Sexually active; time of last menstrual period; presence or absence of birth control method; patient intuition
Coagulation testing	**Overview:** Coagulation testing, or clotting function studies, should be obtained in patients with known or suspected coagulopathies as indicated from H&P and drug therapies. Tests include prothrombin time (PT), partial prothrombin time (PTT), INR, platelet (Plt) count. **Clinical indications:** Bleeding disorder Hx; anticoagulants or other drugs affecting coagulation; critical-risk surgeries with significant blood loss expected; hepatic disease: malabsorption/poor nutrition
Urinalysis	**Overview:** Assessment of renal function, infection, intravascular volume status, metabolic disorders **Clinical indications:** There are no routine anesthesia preop requirements for a urinalysis.

Suggested Readings

1. Bapoje SR, Whitaker JF, Schulz T, et al: Preoperative evaluation of the patient with pulmonary disease. *Chest* 2007; 132(5):1637–45.
2. Cohn SL, Auerbach AD: Preoperative cardiac risk stratification 2007: evolving evidence, evolving strategies. *J Hosp Med* 2007; 2(3):174–80.
3. Feely MA, Collins CS, Daniels PR, et al: Preoperative testing before noncardiac surgery: guidelines and recommendations. *AM Fam Physician* 2013; 87(6):414–8.
4. Johansson T, Fritsch G, Flamm M, et al: Effectiveness of non-cardiac preoperative testing in non-cardiac elective surgery: a systematic review. *Br J Anesth* 2013; 110(6):926–39.
5. Mooney JF, Ranasinghe I, Chow CK, et al: Preoperative estimates of glomerular filtration rate as predictors of outcome after surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology* 2013; 118(4):809–24.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION OF PATIENTS WITH A CARDIAC RHYTHM MANAGEMENT DEVICE

Preoperative evaluation should include at least the following:

Device-Specific Considerations	• Date of most recent device interrogation (preferably < 6 mo ago). • Type of device, manufacturer, model number, implant date (information typically on "pacemaker card" carried by patient). • Determine indication (including underlying dysrhythmia) for pacemaker and/or ICD. Include whether patient is "pacemaker dependent." • Determine underlying rate and rhythm. • Confirm adequate battery life. • Presence of freshly implanted leads (< 3 mo old) → ↑ risk of dislodgement. • Programming information including pacing mode, lower rate, pacer/ICD thresholds, and the response to magnet placement (asynchronous mode, ICD inactivation). • If any questions or concerns arise during evaluation, contact patient's cardiologist. Pacemaker companies can be contacted through 24-hour service centers.
Patient-Specific Considerations	• Determine if patient has developed new symptoms possibly related to pacemaker dysfunction since last interrogation, including dizziness, syncope, fatigue, dyspnea, chest pain, or palpitations. • Review status of any associated cardiac disease (CAD, cardiomyopathy, valvular lesions, etc.). • Obtain 12-lead electrocardiogram; consider rhythm strip as needed. • If pacemaker-dependent, consider placing magnet for procedures above T10. • If ICD/CRT, consider placing magnet for procedures above T10. • Advise surgeon to use short electrocautery applications (< 5 sec). • External defibrillation equipment should be immediately available. • Consider placement of external pacer pads. • Use caution when placing upper body central lines with a guide wire. • A magnet should be immediately available.

Procedure-Specific Considerations	• Anatomical location of the surgery and patient position during surgery. • Is monopolar cautery necessary? • Will there be other sources of electromagnetic interference (e.g., IORT, ECT, SSEP, MEP, RF ablation or resection). • Will cardioversion or defibrillation be used during the procedure?

A more complete discussion of this topic can be found in the following consensus statement:

Grossley GH, Poole JE, Rozner MA, et al. The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with implantable defibrillators, pacemakers, and arrhythmia monitors: facilities and patient management: this document was developed as a joint project with the ASA, and in collaboration with the American Heart Association (AHA), and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS). *Heart Rhythm*. 2011; 8(7):1114–54.

ASA PHYSICAL STATUS CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

ASA Physical Status	Preoperative Health Status	Examples
1	A healthy patient	
2	A patient with mild systemic disease	No functional limitations: mild obesity, pregnancy, smoking, well-controlled hypertension or diabetes
3	A patient with severe systemic disease	Functionally limited: morbid obesity, CHF, COPD, poorly controlled HTN or diabetes, stable angina or old MI, renal failure in dialysis
4	A patient with severe systemic disease that is a constant threat to life	Severe functional limitations: Unstable angina, unstable cerebrovascular disease, symptomatic CHF or COPD, ruptured aneurysm
5	A moribund patient who is not expected to survive without the operation	Not expected to survive > 24 h without surgery, severe sepsis, multiorgan failure, severe coagulopathy, or intracranial hemorrhage
6	A declared brain-dead patient whose organs are being removed for donor purposes	

PERIOPERATIVE BETA-BLOCKER THERAPY

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

Initial enthusiasm has been tempered and the apparent benefit of perioperative beta-blockers (PBB) is less dramatic based on the findings of several clinical trials and retrospective and pooled analyses. Although PBB decreases the risk of cardiac complications, it has been shown to increase the risk of stroke. However, there is still a role and benefit for PBB in select patient groups. New updated guidelines released in 2009 by the AHA/ACC are presented in Table A-3. The updated report continues to give a Class I recommendation to continue beta-blockers in patients undergoing surgery who are already receiving the drugs for management of other conditions. The report issued a Class 2a recommendation that beta-blockers, titrated to heart rate and blood pressure, are "probably recommended" in patients undergoing vascular surgery and "reasonable" for patients undergoing intermediate-risk surgery who have a known CAD or preop stress test showing ischemia. When applied to all patients coming for surgery, the percentage of patients who would meet criteria to start PBB therapy is likely small. Based on published guidelines, consider the following general recommendations when starting PBB. "Start low and go slow." Initiate therapy days to weeks in advance of surgery, and titrate to a heart rate of 60–80 beats per minute (assuming not hypotensive), maintain a systolic blood pressure of > 100 mm Hg and monitor vigilantly. Choose medications that are Beta-1 selective (examples: atenolol, metoprolol, and bisoprolol). Consider contraindications before initiating PBB and how the therapy will interact with other medications, medical conditions, and surgical or anesthetic factors.

Table A-2. Recommendations for Perioperative Beta-Blocker Therapy (Adapted from the 2009 Focused AHA/ACC Recommendations for Perioperative Beta-Blocker Therapy Based on Published Randomized Clinical Trials [1])

Surgery Type	≤ 1 Risk Factor	> 1 Risk Factor	CHD or finding of ischemia on preoperative testing	Taking β-blocker
Vascular	Usefulness β-blocker uncertain*+	Reasonable to give β-blocker ‡§	Probably give β-blocker	Continue β-blocker**
Intermediate risk	Usefulness β-blocker uncertain	Reasonable to give β-blocker	Reasonable to give β-blocker	Continue β-blocker
Low risk	Usefulness β-blocker uncertain	Usefulness β-blocker uncertain	Usefulness β-blocker uncertain	Continue β-blocker

*In patients who are not currently taking β-blockers.
+β-blockers should not be given to patients undergoing surgery who have absolute contraindications to β-blockade.
‡Titrated to heart rate and blood pressure.
§Routine administration of high-dose β-blockers in the absence of dose titration is not useful and may be harmful to patients not currently taking β-blockers who are undergoing noncardiac surgery.
**β-blockers should be continued in patients undergoing surgery who are receiving β-blockers for treatment of conditions with ACCF/AHA Class I guideline indications for the drugs.

Suggested Readings

1. Bangalore S, Wetterslev J, Pranesh S, et al: Perioperative beta blockers in patient having non-cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis. *Lancet* 2008; 372:1962–76.
2. Devereaux PJ, Yang H, Yusuf S, et al: Effects of extended-release metoprolol succinate in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery (POISE trial): a randomized controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008; 371:1839–47.
3. Fleischmann KE, Beckman JA, Buller CE, et al: 2009 ACCF/AHA Focused Update on Perioperative Beta Blockade: A Report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2009; 120:2123–51.
4. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al: Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation* 1999; 100:1043–9.

APPENDIX B: STANDARD ADULT ANESTHETIC PROTOCOLS

Richard A. Jaffe, MD, PhD, Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD, and Steven L. Shafer, MD

STANDARD MONITORS (NONINVASIVE)	
Blood pressure (BP)	Usually noninvasive (oscillometric) technique. Match cuff width to arm size to avoid inaccurate BP.
Capnometry/ capnography	Measurement of $ETCO_2$/display of waveform
Gas analyzer (e.g., IR, mass spectrometry)	Measurement of respired gases including end-tidal CO_2 and inhaled anesthetics
Electrocardiogram (ECG)	5-lead preferred. Usual display: lead II and $V_{4 \text{ or } 5}$. EASI lead system can be used to derive a 12-lead ECG that may improve detection of intraop ischemia.
Esophageal or precordial stethoscope	Breath and heart sounds monitored; dysrhythmias and pulmonary system changes may be quickly detected. Seldom used today.
Nerve stimulator	Monitor status of neuromuscular blockade usually by stimulating ulnar or facial nerves
Oxygen analyzer	Measurement of FiO_2
Pulse oximetry	Measurement of O_2 saturation of arterial hemoglobin; also gives a pulse sound that indicates heart rate, rhythm, and change in saturation
Temperature	Nasal, esophageal, bladder, rectal, tympanic, or skin (deep esophageal best approximates core temperature)
Visual observation of patient	Skin color, pupils, edema, sweating, movement
Ventilator function monitors	PIP, TV, disconnect alarm, pressure-volume/flow-volume loops, etc.

STANDARD ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT (ADULT ASA 1 & 2)

★**NB:** The following sections are guidelines only (for an otherwise healthy 70-kg adult). Specific drugs and drug dosages should be individualized, based on the physiological and pharmacological status of the patient, including factors such as age, weight, concurrent medication, and comorbidities.

PREMEDICATION FOR ANXIOLYSIS ± ANALGESIA

Light	Midazolam 1–2 mg iv -or- Lorazepam 1–2 mg -or- Hydroxyzine 25–100 mg	Prior to induction or transport to OR po 1 h preop po 1 h preop
Moderate	Midazolam 2–3 mg iv ± Fentanyl 25–100 mcg iv	Prior to transport to OR Monitor for respiratory depression or apnea.
Heavy	Lorazepam 1–2 mg + Morphine 0.1 mg/kg ± scopolamine 0.2–0.4 mg	po the night before and again po 1–2 h preop im 30–60 min preop (monitor respiration)

PREINDUCTION CHECKLIST

Anesthesia machine	Complete ASA preanesthesia checkout procedures. Sample procedures for specific machines/workstations can be found on the 2014 ASA website: http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Clinical-Information/2008-ASA-Recommendations-for-PreAnesthesia-Checkout/Sample-Procedures.aspx
Airway management	Appropriate-sized face masks Working laryngoscope and blade Working backup laryngoscope and blade Working suction ETT with nonleaking cuff + backup ETTs in other sizes ETT stylet and bougie available Oral and nasal airways available McGill forceps available Ambu® bag or equivalent self-inflating resuscitator available Unexpected difficult airway plan and equipment available
Monitoring	Standard monitors (see section above) Invasive monitoring if necessary before induction
Patient	Working IV access Verify status of regional blocks (if in use) Positioning plans discussed with surgeon Fire risk assessment (especially if open O_2 delivery is planned)
Medication	Emergency drugs available Infusions prepared and pump function verified Anesthetic plan and drugs reviewed

INDUCTION TECHNIQUES

Preinduction	1. Administer 100% O_2 by mask × 3 min (ideally ETO_2 should be > 90%). 2. Administer supplemental sedation/analgesia (as appropriate). e.g.: fentanyl ± midazolam	 1–3 mcg/kg iv 0.03–0.1 mg/kg iv
Induction agents	Propofol Thiopental Etomidate	1.5–2.5 mg/kg iv (in increments) **NB:** Pain on injection may be lessened by prior administration of lidocaine 1% 5–10 mL in conjunction with venous occlusion. 3–5 mg/kg iv (unavailable in US) 0.2–0.4 mg/kg iv **NB:** Pain on injection; myoclonus

Muscle relaxants for intubation

Drugs	Doses	Onset	Duration
Vecuronium	0.1 mg/kg	2–3 min	24–30 min
	0.2 mg/kg (rapid onset)	< 2 min	45–90 min
Rocuronium	0.6 mg/kg	90–120 sec	30–45 min
	1.2 mg/kg	60–90 sec	60–120 min
Pancuronium	0.1 mg/kg	3–4 min	40–65 min
Gantacurium[1]	0.2–0.5 mg/kg	1–2 min	5–10 min
Cisatracurium	0.2 mg/kg	2 min	40–80 min
Succinylcholine:	1.0 mg/kg	30–60 sec	4–8 min
If given after defasciculating dose of NMR	1.5 mg/kg	30–60 sec	4–8 min
Infusion	1 g/250–500 NS: 50–100 mcg/kg/min (titrated to effect)	+60 sec	While infusing (phase II block possible)

[1] Gantacurium is not yet (2014) available in United States

MAINTENANCE TECHNIQUES

Inhalational anesthesia	30–100% O_2 + 0–70% N_2O + Isoflurane (MAC in 100% O_2 = 1.2%) or sevoflurane (MAC = 2.0%) titrated to effect Alternatively, for short procedures consider desflurane (MAC = 6.6%).		
Balanced anesthesia	30–100% O_2 + 0–70% N_2O + Hydromorphone 3–10 mcg/kg/3–4 h (intermittent bolus) or morphine 0.05–0.15 mg/kg/3–4 h (intermittent bolus) or fentanyl 1–10 mcg/kg prn response to surgical stimulation or remifentanil 0.05–2 mcg/kg/min prn response to surgical stimulation (no residual analgesia) + Isoflurane or sevoflurane titrated to effect or propofol 50–200 mcg/kg/min (titrated to effect) Alternatively, for short procedures consider desflurane (MAC = 6.6%).		
Total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA)[1]	*Oxygen usually mixed with air to a final concentration of 30–50%*		
	+ Remifentanil infusion*	Induction infusion	@ 0.5–1 mcg/kg/min × 1–2 min
		Maintenance	@ 0.1–0.35 mcg/kg/min
		10 min before end surgery	@ 0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min
		5 min before end of surgery	infusion off
	+ Propofol bolus + infusion	Induction bolus	1–1.5 mg/kg
		Maintenance	@ 60–90 mcg/kg/min
		10 min before end surgery	@ 20–40 mcg/kg/min
		3 min before end of surgery	infusion off
	*No residual analgesia: Postop pain management depends on type of surgery, and analgesic requirements may be substantial. Recommend having fentanyl or meperidine for quick pain relief followed by morphine or hydromorphone for prolonged pain relief. [1]Steven Shafer, MD		

If **continued muscle relaxation** is required during the above maintenance techniques, several options are available. Always use a nerve stimulator to assess block before bolus redosing.

Short-acting	Gantacurium* Rocuronium	0.2 mg/kg/10–20 min Rocuronium and other steroidal NMRs can be rapidly reversed shortly after administration by using sugammadex (4–8 mg/kg iv).
Intermediate	Vecuronium Rocuronium Cisatracurium	0.025 mg/kg/30 min; 1–2 mcg/kg/min infusion 0.6 mg/kg/30 min; 5–12 mcg/kg/min infusion 0.2 mg/kg/40 min; 1–2 mcg/kg/min infusion
Long-acting	Pancuronium	0.02 mg/kg/60–90 min
	*Not yet (2014) available in the United States	

EMERGENCE

1. Reversal of muscle relaxant	As surgical conditions permit, reverse residual muscle relaxant (when at least 1 twitch is present in train-of-four) with one of the following: Neostigmine 0.05–0.07 (maximum dose) mg/kg iv + glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg iv; or Edrophonium 0.5–1.0 (maximum dose) mg/kg iv + atropine 0.015 mg/kg iv.
2. Analgesia	If remifentanil was used during surgery, supplemental analgesics will be necessary and should be given promptly after emergence.
3. Nausea prophylaxis	Ondansetron (4 mg iv before emergence) (or palonosetron: 75 mcg iv at induction for prolonged effect). Also, consider adding dexamethasone 4 mg at induction, metoclopramide (20 mg iv before emergence), and/or aprepitant (40 mg po 1–3 h before induction). The use of droperidol (0.625 mg iv) is unfortunately controversial because of Q-T prolongation at higher doses. Consider OG tube suction to empty stomach. *See Prevention of PONV (below).*
4. O_2	D/C N_2O/volatile agents and administer 100% O_2.
5. Suction	Suction oropharynx thoroughly.
6. Extubation	Extubate after protective airway reflexes have returned, the patient is breathing spontaneously, and is able to follow commands.

LUNG PROTECTIVE VENTILATION

The traditional use of high tidal volume (10–15 mL/kg) mechanical ventilation may be associated with alveolar overdistention → ventilator-associated lung injury → release of inflammatory mediators → pneumonia and multiorgan dysfunction. Recent studies have suggested that a strategy of lung protective ventilation may improve postop outcomes in a variety of surgical patient populations.

Recommendations for lung protective ventilation in hemodynamically stable patients include

Tidal volume = 6–8 mL/kg predicted body weight (see table below)
PEEP = 6–8 cmH_2O
Regular recruitment maneuvers (CPAP of 30 cmH_2O × 30 sec, repeated every 30 min)

Table B 3-1. Lung Protective Tidal Volumes Based on Predicted Body Weight

Height (in)	Female Predicted Body Weight (kg)	Female Tidal Volume (mL) (@6–8 mL/kg)	Male Predicted Body Weight (kg)	Male Tidal Volume (mL) (@6–8 mL/kg)
5' 0"	45.5	273–364	50	300–400
5' 1"	47.8	287–382	52.3	314–418
5' 2"	50.1	301–401	54.6	328–437
5' 3"	52.4	314–419	56.9	341–455
5' 4"	54.7	328–438	59.2	355–474
5' 5"	57	342–456	61.5	369–492
5' 6"	59.3	356–474	63.8	383–510
5' 7"	61.6	370–493	66.1	397–529
5' 8"	63.9	383–511	68.4	410–547
5' 9"	66.2	397–530	70.7	424–566
5' 10"	68.5	411–548	73	438–584
5' 11"	70.8	425–566	75.3	452–602
6' 0"	73.1	439–585	77.6	466–621

Formula: Males: PBW (kg) = 50 + 2.3 (height (in) – 60); Females: PBW (kg) = 45.5 + 2.3 (height (in) – 60)

In the IMPROVE trial, recruitment maneuvers started immediately after intubation and were standardized as follows:

1. Pressure Support Ventilation mode
2. PEEP set to 30 cm of water
3. Inspiratory gas flow set to the highest value
4. Duration of the maneuver = 30 sec

Suggested Readings:

1. Futier E, Constantin JM, Paugam-Burtz C, et al: IMPROVE Study Group. A trial of intraoperative low-tidal-volume ventilation in abdominal surgery. *N Engl J Med* 2013; 369(5):428–37.

MONITORED ANESTHESIA CARE (MAC)

1. Standard monitoring with regular verbal contact.
2. Nasal O_2 (qualitative measurement of respiratory rate, and $ETCO_2$ can be obtained by attaching a sampling catheter to the nasal cannula). The open administration of O_2 should be limited to a maximum concentration of 30% O_2 for procedures above T4 to minimize fire risk.
3. Light-to-moderate levels of sedation (± analgesia) can be maintained using a propofol infusion (25–100 mcg/kg/min), or with intermittent bolus injections of midazolam (0.25–1 mg) ± fentanyl (10–25 mcg) or with a remifentanil infusion (0.025–0.07 mcg/kg/min), titrated to effect. Monitor closely for respiratory depression.
4. Alternatively, dexmedetomidine (an α–2 agonist) can produce excellent sedation and analgesia without respiratory depression. The loading dose is typically 1 mcg/kg iv over ~ 15 min (↓ BP may occur) followed by an infusion of 0.2–0.7 mcg/kg/h.
5. If the initial local anesthetic injection will be painful (e.g., retrobulbar block), then a brief period of analgesia, sedation, and amnesia can be induced with

	Advantages	Disadvantages
A. Midazolam (0.5–2 mg) ± ketamine (10–20 mg) ± alfentanil 3–7 mcg/kg or remifentanil 0.5 mcg/kg all injected 2–3 min before pain	Profound amnesia and analgesia. Usually no apnea, and airway reflexes maintained. Patient usually able to cooperate.	Patient not "asleep" Possible ↑ BP and HR
B. propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg) ± fentanyl (25–50 mcg/kg)	Patient "asleep"	Possible apnea with loss of airway. ↓ BP may occur; patient may become unresponsive.

RAPID-SEQUENCE INDUCTION OF ANESTHESIA (FULL-STOMACH PRECAUTIONS)[1]

1. ↓gastric volume/acidity	Ranitidine 50 mg iv at least 30–60 min before induction if possible. Metoclopramide 10 mg iv 30–60 min before induction if possible. 0.3 M sodium citrate 30 mL po immediately before induction.
2. Induction	Preoxygenation × 3 min (or until ETO_2 > 90%). Suction must be readily available. Stylet ETT. ± Defasciculate: e.g., vecuronium 1 mg iv 3–5 min before using succinylcholine. Cricoid pressure (Sellick maneuver) by assistant (8–10 lb; beware of force transfer to C6 vertebra). Effective cricoid pressure makes laryngoscopy, mask ventilation, and LMA insertion difficult and may not reduce the incidence of aspiration. Choice of induction agent depends on patient condition including hemodynamic stability. Options include: Etomidate 0.1–0.4 mg/kg or

2. Induction (Cont'd)	Ketamine 1 mg/kg or for patients better able to tolerate ↓ BP: Propofol 1–2.5 mg/kg + Succinylcholine 1.5 mg/kg or rocuronium 1.2 mg/kg (slightly slower onset) for intubation Lungs may be ventilated while waiting for NMB—avoid airway pressure > 20 cmH_2O
3. Intubation	Intubate only when the patient is fully relaxed. After intubation watch chest movement and auscultate for equal BBS. ✓expired CO_2 on monitor. Listen over stomach. Secure ETT and release cricoid pressure. Pass NG/OG tube and suction stomach contents.
4. Failed intubation protocol	[See Anesthetic Considerations for Cesarean Section, Obstetric Surgery, p. 823.]
5. Maintenance	As indicated by patient's condition and type of surgery.
6. Extubation	Repeating NG/OG suction is often useful before emergence and extubation. Extubate when patient is awake and has active laryngeal protective reflexes. Remember, some may require postop ICU care until safe extubation can be assured.

SPECIAL PEDIATRIC CONSIDERATIONS

1. The same principles apply in children requiring surgery and in those who may have full stomachs. Consider emptying the stomach with an OG tube prior to induction in patients with pyloric stenosis or with high-grade intestinal obstruction following po barium. If iv is placed, continue as indicated previously. If iv access is difficult, O_2/sevoflurane induction with cricoid pressure, and succinylcholine (2–4 mg/kg im) will permit intubation and minimize risks of gastric aspiration.
2. Awake intubation in neonates and sick infants may be the safest method.

PREVENTION OF PONV (Adapted from Gan et al, 2007.)

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

PONV risk factors	Patient-related	Female gender Nonsmoking status H/o PONV/motion sickness	Simple Risk Score for PONV in Adults: Assign 1 point for each of the following risk factors: female gender, nonsmoker, hx of PONV, post-op opioids. Risk of PONV: Point sum 0 = 10%; 1 = 20%; 2 = 40%; 3 = 60%, and 4 = 80%.
	Anesthetic-related	Volatile anesthetics Nitrous oxide Intra/postop opioids High-dose neostigmine	
	Surgical-related	Duration of surgery Type of surgery	Each 30 min ↑ in duration ↑ PONV risk by 60% laparoscopy, laparotomy, breast, strabismus, plastic, maxillofacial, gynecologic, abdominal, neurologic, ophthalmologic, urologic

PONV (cont'd)			
Antiemetics	**Pharmacologic Agents**	**Timing of administration**	
	Serotonin blockers	End of surgery	Ondansetron 4–8 mg iv, granisetron 0.35–1.5 mg iv, dolasetron 12.5 mg iv
	Dexamethasone 4–8 mg iv	At induction	Adverse effects not seen with single-bolus dose.
	Droperidol 0.625–1.25 mg iv	30 min before end of surgery	Consider risk of QT prolongation and cardiac dysrhythmias especially at higher doses. Risk low at dose range of 0.625–1.25 mg iv.
	Promethazine 6.25–25 mg iv	30 min before end of surgery	Sedating and may cause local tissue damage if iv catheter infiltration occurs.
	Metoclopramide 10–25 mg iv	30 min before end of surgery	Can cause anxiety, confusion, or visual changes. 20–25 mg more effective than lower doses.
	Prochlorperazine 5–10 mg iv	30 min before end of surgery	
	Scopolamine transdermal patch	2–4 h before surgery	May cause sedation, dry mouth, visual changes, and confusion, especially in the elderly
	Ephedrine 0.5 mg/kg IM	End of surgery or as rescue rx in PACU	
	Neurokinin-1 receptor antagonists (e.g., oral aprepitant 40 mg)	Consider patients at very high risk for PONV as part of multimodal approach or treatment failure of standard antiemetics	Newer class of antiemetic. Long-lasting (48–72 hours), expensive.
Nonpharmacologic	Acupuncture, acupressure	Before or after surgery	
PONV prevention strategies	↓ anesthesia-related RFs	Consider regional anesthesia where appropriate Propofol for induction/maintenance where appropriate Avoid/minimize N_2O and volatile agents Avoid/minimize postop opioids Avoid high-dose neostigmine Adequate hydration	
PONV risk stratification and management	Low risk	No prophylaxis → treat PONV when it occurs.	
	Intermediate risk	Choose 1–2 interventions	
	High risk	Choose 2 interventions	
	Very high risk	Consider 3–4 interventions	Consider including both short- and long-lasting antiemetics that will be effective post–PACU discharge.

Suggested Readings

1. Apfel CC, Kari K, Mona A, et al: A factorial trial of sex interventions for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. N Engl J Med 2004; 350:2441–51.
2. Gan TJ, Meyer TA, Apfel CC, et al: Society for ambulatory anesthesia guidelines for management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 104:1082–89.
3. Jokinen J, Smith AF, Roewer N, et al: Management of postoperative nausea and vomiting: how to deal with refractory PONV. *Anesthesiol Clin* 2012; 30(3):481–93.
4. Lee A, Fan LT: Stimulation of the wrist acupuncture point P6 for preventing postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* (2):2009; CD003281.

VENOUS THROMBOEMBOLISM (VTE) PROPHYLAXIS

(Adapted from Geerts et al, 2008)

Clifford A. Schmiesing, MD

Risk Factors for VTE	
	• Surgery • Trauma (major trauma or lower-extremity injury) • Immobility, lower-extremity paresis • Cancer (known or occult) • Cancer therapy (hormonal, chemotherapy, angiogenesis inhibitors, radiotherapy) • Venous compression (tumor, hematoma, arterial abnormality) • Previous VTE • Increasing age • Pregnancy and the postpartum period • Estrogen-containing oral contraceptives or hormone replacement therapy • Selective estrogen receptor modulators • Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents • Acute medical illness • Inflammatory bowel disease • Nephrotic syndrome • Myeloproliferative disorders • Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria • Obesity • Central venous catheterization • Inherited or acquired thrombophilia

Thromboembolism Risk and Recommended Thromboprophylaxis in Surgical Patients

Level of Risk	Approximate DVT Risk Without Thromboprophylaxis	Suggested Thromboprophylaxis Options
Low risk Minor surgery in mobile patients	< 10%	No specific thromboprophylaxis, early and "aggressive" ambulation
Moderate risk Most general, open gynecologic or urologic surgery patients Moderate VTE risk plus high bleeding risk	10–40%	Low molecular weight heparin (at recommended doses), fondaparinux, oral vitamin K antagonist (INR 2–3). Mechanical thromboprophylaxis§
High risk Hip or knee arthroplasty Hip fracture surgery Major trauma Spinal cord injury High VTE risk plus high bleeding risk	40–80%	Low molecular weight heparin (at recommended doses), fondaparinux, oral vitamin K antagonist (INR 2–3) Mechanical thromboprophylaxis*

*Mechanical thromboprophylaxis includes IPC (intermittent pneumatic compression) or VFP (venous foot pump) and/or GCS (graduated compression stockings); consider switch to anticoagulant thromboprophylaxis when high bleeding risk decreases.

Suggested Reading

1. Geerts WH, Bergqvist D, Pineo GF, et al: Prevention of venous thromboembolism: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines (8th edition). *Chest* 2008; 133:381S–453S.
2. Gould MK, Garcia DA, Wren SM, et al: Prevention of VTE in nonorthopedic surgical patients: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest* 2012; 141:w227S–77S.

APPENDIX C: STANDARD PERIOPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT

Einar Ottestad, MD, Jordan L. Newmark, MD, and Ian Carroll, MD, MS

INTRODUCTION

Perioperative pain management is an important area in which the anesthesiologist can affect patient satisfaction as well as clinical outcomes. According to the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), about 48 million surgical procedures were performed in the United States in 2009. In a recent large survey of perioperative pain management, about 80% of patients experienced acute pain postop, with 86% of those patients characterizing their pain as ranging from moderately to extremely painful. Furthermore, postop pain management was the most common concern of the patients surveyed. The anesthesiologist's expertise in neuraxial and regional anesthesia, as well as analgesic pharmacology, makes this physician the ideal advocate for improving perioperative pain management.

The Joint Commission has recognized the importance of perioperative pain management as a means to reduce perioperative pain and suffering while facilitating improvements in functionality. Poor pain control leads to adverse clinical outcomes, including decreased ability to ambulate with increased risk for thromboembolic events and fatal pulmonary embolism. Inadequate pain control following abdominal and thoracic surgeries may → splinting, atelectasis, and pneumonia.

The neuroendocrine stress response to surgery involves the release of stress hormones and catecholamines, which lead to many deleterious clinical effects and outcomes. These include weight loss, fatigue, immunosuppression, thromboembolism, hypercoagulability, dysrhythmias, urinary retention, and impaired pulmonary function. Furthermore, ongoing, uncontrolled pain in the postop period is a risk factor for chronic postsurgical pain. The continuous nociceptive barrage to the spinal cord and brain can lead to central sensitization, or "windup", which is thought to result in persistent pain beyond the acute recovery period. As we learn more about perioperative pain management, we can minimize pain and suffering while reducing morbidity and mortality in our surgical patients.

Opioids remain the primary treatment for postop pain. However, these medications must be used with caution to avoid respiratory depression. Managing perioperative pain in patients with a preexisting chronic pain condition and/or opioid tolerance presents many challenges. These patients are more likely to have a respiratory depression event, dependence, opioid-induced hyperalgesia as well as decreased testosterone levels, depressed immune function, and even morphological brain changes. Furthermore, the chronic use of high-dose opioids may contribute to a patient's overall lack of functionality and slowed recovery. From a public health perspective, keeping the current prescription drug epidemic in mind, reducing postop opioid utilization could be of benefit to society.

MULTIMODAL ANALGESIA

No single analgesic medication targeted to one receptor system generally allows for sufficient postop pain control. Utilizing agents that act on several receptor systems in the nociceptive pathway is more effective at providing postop analgesia. This concept is referred to as "multimodality analgesia". A number of medication classes have been effectively used for this purpose. Please refer to Table C-1 for an outline of medication classes and examples.

Table C-1. Pain Medication Classes

Class	Examples
Mu opioid receptor agonists	IV or po morphine
Mixed COX inhibitors	IV or po ketorolac
COX-2 inhibitors	PO celecoxib
Central COX inhibitors	IV or po acetaminophen
Sodium channel blockers	IV lidocaine or po mexiletine
Calcium channel modulators	PO gabapentin or pregabalin
SNRIs	PO duloxetine and venlafaxine
TCAs	PO desipramine and nortriptylene
Alpha-2 agonists	Clonidine and dexmedetomidine
NMDA inhibitors	IV ketamine

Postop pain management and patient recovery are most successful when an integrated, multispecialty, rehabilitation-orientated approach is utilized. Input from surgeons, anesthesiologists, rehabilitation specialists, nursing, pharmacy, and other key health care providers is necessary for this to occur. Best outcomes require that the patient be given appropriate preop education, excellent perioperative nociceptive blockade and attenuation of the neuroendocrine stress response, postop exercise, and early enteral nutrition.

PREEMPTIVE ANALGESIA

Preemptive analgesia refers to the administration of antinociceptive agents especially during the preop and intraop periods to prevent the formation of central sensitization caused by incisional and inflammatory injuries. The benefit of preventing sensitization is a reduction in the patient's risk of developing chronic pain after surgery. It has been demonstrated clinically that preincisional analgesics help improve poor postop pain control. A number of perioperative agents have been studied in this context with promising results, including lidocaine, iv ketamine, neuraxial anesthesia, peripheral nerve blockade, topical anesthetics, peripheral opioid, and central opioid agonists.

THE NEW ANALGESIA PARADIGM

This new paradigm utilizes preemptive and multimodal administration of a variety of analgesic classes through various routes of administration, including iv, po, neuraxial, peripheral nerve exposure, and topical agents. Traditionally, the mainstay treatment of postop pain control included mainly short-duration opiates, which was suboptimal. Providing the patient with a more comprehensive perioperative pain management regimen leads to less reliance on short-acting opioids and their associated side effects, as well as reduced risk of sensitization and development of chronic postop pain. When used in conjunction with a structured postop rehabilitation program, these techniques can lead to decreased patient morbidity and mortality, increased patient satisfaction, decreased recovery time, and shorter hospitalization.

Table C–2. An Example of Multimodal Analgesia for a 70-kg Patient Without Specific Drug Contraindications, Undergoing Major Surgery.

Preinduction	Systemic	Ibuprofen 800 mg or celecoxib 200 mg (decreased bleeding risk) po 30–60 min before induction and/or gabapentin 600–1200 mg or pregabalin 150–300 mg po 60 min before induction
	Regional	Neuraxial analgesia (e.g., epidural or spinal opiates) or regional/peripheral nerve blocks
Preincision	Systemic	Ketamine 0.5 mg/kg bolus + 0.25 mg/kg/h infusion during surgery iv (especially in opioid dependant patients) and/or fentanyl 100–250 mcg iv
	Local	Incision-site local anesthetic infiltration
Intraop	Systemic	IV opiates (e.g., fentanyl, hydromorphone) Lidocaine infusion 1–3 mg/kg/h Acetaminophen 1000 mg iv q 8 h Continuous regional anesthetic
Postop	Systemic	IV opiates (e.g. fentanyl, hydromorphone) bolus and PCA Ketorolac 30 mg iv or ibuprofen 200–800 mg po Acetaminophen/codeine combination po (limit total acetaminophen from all sources to < 4000 mg/d)

Suggested Readings

1. Borsook D, Kussman BD, George E, Becerra LR, Burke D: Surgically induced neuropathic pain: understanding the perioperative process. *Ann Surg* 2013; 257:403–12.
2. Buvanendran A, Drpom JS: Multimodal analgesia for controlling acute postoperative pain. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2009; 22(5):588–93.
3. DeOuverira GS Jr, Fitzgerald P, Streicher LF, et al: Systematic lidocaine to improve postoperative quality of recovery after ambulatory laparoscopic surgery. *Anesth Analg* 2012; 115(2):262–7.
4. Hebl JR, Dilger JA, Byer DE, et al: A preemptive multimodal pathway featuring peripheral nerve block improves perioperative outcomes after major orthopedic surgery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2008; 33(6):510–7.
5. Huxtable CA, Roberts LJ, Somogyi AA, MacIntyre PE: Acute pain management in opioid-tolerant patients: a growing challenge. *Anaesth Intensive Care* 2011; 39(5):804–23.
6. Laskowski K, Stirling A, McKay WP, Lim HJ: A systematic review of intravenous ketamine for postoperative analgesia. *Can J Anaesth* 2011; 58(10):911–23.
7. Woolf CJ, Slater MW: Neuronal plasticity: increasing the gain in pain. *Science* 2000; 288(5472):1765–9.
8. Younger JW, Chu LF, D'Arcy NT, Trott KE, Jastrzab LE, Mackey: Prescription opioid analgesics rapidly change the human brain. *Pain* 2011; 152(8):1803–10.

STANDARD ADULT POSTOP PCA ORDER

Typical orders	1. Call anesthesiologist with any questions about PCA. 2. Check respiratory rate q 1 h while PCA in use. 3. Call anesthesiologist if respiratory rate < 10/min. If rate < 6/min, treat with naloxone 0.4–0.8 mg iv push (may repeat q 2–3 min, to 2 mg), and assist ventilation while waiting for anesthesiologist. 4. Encourage patient to ambulate 4–6 h after surgery (unless contraindicated). 5. After PCA D/C'd, start po pain medications (per surgeon). 6. If patient required a large loading dose, the PCA lockout dose may need to be increased. Expect patient to need about 1/3 loading dose q h. Change PCA dose or lockout time to permit this dosing.	
Analgesics	Morphine	2–4 mg q 10–15 min
	Hydromorphone	0.2–0.4 mg q 8–10 min
	Fentanyl	10–25 μg q 8–10 min*
	Ketorolac**	30 mg iv slowly; then 15 mg q 6 h × 3 d max

*Very short actins might need small basal dose.
**Ketorolac may impair hemostasis. Consult with the surgical team.

EPIDURAL ANALGESIA*

Lumbar Epidural		Thoracic Epidural	
Morphine bolus	**Hydromorphone bolus**	**Morphine bolus**	**Hydromorphone bolus**
2–4 mg	0.4–0.8 mg	1–2 mg	0.1–0.4 mg
Morphine infusion	**Hydromorphone infusion**	**Morphine infusion**	**Hydromorphone infusion**
0.5–1 mg/h	0.05–0.2 mg/h	0.25–0.5 mg/h	0.2 mg/h

*Age > 65 consider half dosing.

Special considerations

1. Concentrations of opioids used for epidural infusions (in preservative-free solution):
   - Morphine, 0.15 mg/mL
   - Hydromorphone, 0.05 mg/mL

EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA/POSTOP ANALGESIA*

Surgical Site	Epidural Catheter Location	Initial Bolus of 0.5% Bupivacaine	Infusion Rate of 0.125% Bupivacaine
Thoracic or upper abdomen	T6–T8	4–6 mL	4–8 mL/h
Lower abdomen	T10	10 mL	6–10 mL/h
Hip or knee	L2–3	8 mL	6–10 mL/h

*Divided doses

Special considerations

1. Give initial bolus dose before incision. Then, if patient hemodynamically stable, give 1/2 bolus dose 30 min before end of surgery.
2. In recovery room, ✓sensory level. If no sensory block, ✓whether catheter is functioning with 8 mL 2% lidocaine bolus. (✓ vital signs.) If thoracic epidural starts with 2 mL, redose with 2 mL q 5–10 min, up to 8 mL.

3. Start infusions: If catheter is functional, as evidenced by loss of sensation, start: local anesthetic + opioid infusions (see table, above).
4. Best results: Local anesthetics and opioids are mixed in line using two separate infusion pumps. Thus, if either causes side effects, one can be stopped without the other.

PATIENT-CONTROLLED EPIDURAL ANALGESIA (PCEA)

Bupivacaine	0.125–0.25% with 3–5 mL bolus q 12–20 min
Fentanyl	2–4 mcg/mL

Special considerations:

1. For thoracic epidural, decrease all doses by one-third; if high thoracic, decrease by one-half.

TYPICAL ORDERS FOR POSTOP EPIDURAL/SPINAL ANALGESIA

I. EPIDURAL MEDICATIONS

_____ **1. Epidural Infusion – Opiate**

- ❑ Hydromorphone (Dilaudid) 0.05 mg/mL concentration @_____mg/h =_____mL/h
- ❑ Morphine sulfate 0.15 mg/mL concentration @_____mg/h =_____mL/h
- ❑ Fentanyl (Sublimaze) 10 mcg/mL concentration @_____mcg/h =_____mL/h
- ❑ Range: May vary infusion between_____/h to_____/h prn pain.

_____ **2. Epidural Infusion – Anesthetic**

- ❑ Bupivacaine 0.125% concentration @_____mL/h
- ❑ Bupivacaine 0.25% concentration @_____mL/h
- ❑ Turn off bupivacaine on POD # 1 @ 5 am.

_____ **3 Epidural Bolus – Opiate**

- ❑ Hydromorphone (Dilaudid)_____mg q_____h in 10 mL preservative-free NS (PFNS)
- ❑ Morphine sulfate_____mg q_____h in 10 mL PFNS

_____ **4. Breakthrough Pain**

- ❑ Fentanyl [*50–100*] mcg via epidural q [*1*] h prn pain in 10 mL PFNS
- ❑ Call MD if > 2 doses in [*2*] h.
- ❑ Ketorolac (Toradol) [*15*] mg iv q 6 h × [*3*] d (for a maximum of 12 doses)

II. NURSING CARE

_____ **1. Vital Signs**

❑ For opiates: T, P, BP q 4 h; RR q 2 h; then q 8 h, if stable.
Continuous O_2 sats × 24 h; then D/C if O_2 sats > 90% on room air.

❑ For anesthetics: BP & P q 2 h; then q 4 h, if stable.
Orthostatic BP before ambulation × 24 h.

_____ **2.** Label tubing, pump, infusion as "epidural." Place sign over bed; cover "Y" ports on tubing.

_____ **3.** Place naloxone (Narcan) and syringe at bedside.

_____ **4.** Administration of any additional opiates, sedatives, or antiemetics must be approved by anesthesiologist.

_____ **5.** Assess patient's pain (0–10 scale: 0 = no pain; 10 = worst pain imaginable) and level of sedation (awake, drowsy, asleep, unresponsive), along with VS.

_____ **6.** D/C Epidural Protocol when epidural D/C'd.

III. SIDE EFFECTS MANAGEMENT

_____ **1. Respiratory depression:** For RR < 6 or O_2 sat < 86% (on 2 separate occasions < 5 min apart):
Administer naloxone (Narcan) 0.1 mg–0.2 mg iv STAT; may repeat, to total of 0.6 mg.
Administer O_2 10 L/min via nonrebreathing mask. TURN OFF INFUSION. CALL ON-CALL MD STAT.

_____ **2. Excessive somnolence/sedation:**
Administer naloxone (Narcan) 0.1 mg–0.2 mg iv STAT; may repeat, to total of 0.6 mg.
Administer O_2 10 L/min via nonrebreathing mask. TURN OFF INFUSION. CALL ON-CALL MD STAT.

_____ **3. Nausea/Vomiting:**

- ❑ Metoclopramide (Reglan) [*10 mg*] iv q 4–6 h prn
- ❑ Ondansetron [*4 mg*] q 6 h prn
- ❑ Nalbuphine (Nubain) [*2.5–5.0 mg*] iv q 4 h prn

_____ **4. Pruritus:**

- ❑ Nalbuphine (Nubain) [*2.5–5.0 mg*] iv q 2–4 h prn
- ❑ Diphenhydramine (Benadryl) [*10–25 mg*] iv q 4 h prn

Suggested dosage shown in brackets [–]

APPENDIX D: STANDARD PEDIATRIC ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

Birgit Maas, MD

STANDARD PEDIATRIC MONITORS (NONINVASIVE)	
Blood pressure (BP)	
Capnometry/capnography	Measurement of $ETCO_2$ display of waveform
Gas analyzer (e.g., Raman, IR, or mass spectroscopy)	Measurement of respired gases and anesthetics
Electrocardiogram (ECG)	5-lead preferred
Esophageal or precordial stethoscope if capnography not available	Breath and heart sounds monitored; dysrhythmias and ↓ BP detected
Nerve stimulator	Monitor status of neuromuscular blockade
Oxygen analyzer	Measurement of FiO_2
Pulse oximetry	Measurement of O_2 saturation; 2 pulse oximeters in neonates—1 preductal; 1 postductal
Temperature	Nasal, esophageal, rectal, or skin
Visual observation of patient	Skin color, pupils, temperature, edema, sweating, movement
Ventilator function monitors	PIP, TV, disconnect alarm, etc.

STANDARD PREOP FASTING (NPO) GUIDELINES
• All solid foods should be withheld after midnight or 8 h before procedure. • Nonclear liquids (e.g., milk, infant formula, orange juice) should be withheld 6 h prior to surgery. • Breast milk has a relatively short transit time through the stomach and it can be given up to 4 h prior to surgery. • All clear liquids should be given up 2 h prior to scheduled surgery. • In practice, nonemergency cases may proceed 6 h after solids and nonclear liquids and 2 h after clear liquids and breast milk have been ingested, if needed.

★**NB:** The following sections are guidelines only. Specific drugs and drug dosages should be individualized, based on the physiological and pharmacological status of the patient, including factors such as age, weight, medication, and concurrent diseases.

PREMEDICATION

- In general, patients < 9 mo of age do not need sedative premedication. Infants < 1 mo and premature infants may require atropine 0.01–0.02 mg/kg iv or 0.02 mg/kg im before intubation. Minimum iv atropine dose = 100 mcg.
- Older children (9 mo–10 yr) can be premedicated successfully by using po midazolam (0.5–0.75 mg/kg with maximum of 20 mg) in syrup, grape Kool-Aid, or cherry-flavored acetaminophen elixir (10–15 mg/kg po) 20–30 min before surgery.
- For patients > 35–40 kg, po lorazepam (0.03–0.05 mg/kg) or diazepam (0.1–0.15 mg/kg) may be given 60 min before surgery with a sip of water if needed.

Parental presence may not decrease the need for premedication, but has been shown to increase parental satisfaction.

INDUCTION TECHNIQUES

Preinduction	1. ✓ anesthesia machine, suction, airway equipment, drugs. 2. Attach monitors and verify function. 3. Premedication: < 6–9 mo—consider atropine 0.01–0.02 mg/kg iv before laryngoscopy to prevent vagally mediated bradycardia.

IV induction	Indicated in cases with a difficult airway, full stomach considerations, complex medical conditions, and in older children (> 10). If iv induction is planned, topical anesthesia, such as synera patch (30 min), EMLA (1 h), ELAMAX (20 min) may be applied prior to iv placement.
Induction	**Routes of administration:** 1. IM: ketamine hydrochloride 3–5 mg/kg (with atropine 0.02 mg/kg, or glycopyrrolate 0.01/mg/kg) 2. IV: Propofol 2–3 mg/kg 3. Inhalational: sevoflurane (MAC = 3.3% for neonates and younger infants, 2.5% for older infants and children) in N_2O (up to 70%)/O_2. Increase inspired concentration of sevoflurane incrementally every 3 breaths (up to 8%). Monitor BP and HR closely.
Muscle relaxation	1. Rocuronium: 0.6–1 mg/kg iv; 1 mg/kg recommended for rapid sequence induction. If airway concerns exist, consider awake intubation, use of succinylcholine. 2. Succinylcholine: 1–2 mg/kg iv. May be useful for rapid-sequence intubations, especially if airway concerns exist. Succinylcholine 2–4 mg/kg im should always be available for urgent administration if needed for treatment of laryngospasm during induction that has not responded to CPAP and deepening of inhalational anesthesia. 3. Vecuronium or pancuronium: 0.1 mg/kg iv 4. Deep sevoflurane anesthesia
Laryngoscope	**Blade** — **Age** Miller 0 — Neonate Miller 1 — 6–9 mo Wis-Hipple 1.5 — 9 mo–3 yr Macintosh 2 — 1–5 yr Macintosh 3 or Miller 2 — > 5 yr
	*Succinylcholine may trigger MH in susceptible patients or cause cardiac arrest in myopathic patients; therefore, many pediatric anesthesiologists avoid the use of succinylcholine unless airway concerns exist.

TYPICAL ETT SIZE AT DIFFERENT AGES

Age	Wt	Uncuffed ETT Size	Cuffed ETT Size	LMA Size
Premature Newborn	1–3 kg 3–4 kg	2.5 or 3.0 3.5	n/a 3.0	1 (< 5 kg)
≤ 6–8 mo	6–8 kg	3.5 or 4.0	3.0 or 3.5	1.5 (5–10 kg)
≤ 8–16 mo	10–12 kg	4.0 or 4.5	3.5 or 4.0	2 (10–20 kg)
2–3 yr	13–15 kg	4.5	4.0 or 4.5	2 (10–20 kg)
6 yr	20	Formula (uncuffed tubes): 4+ (age/4) = ETT size (to allow for a slight leak when positive pressure is applied). For cuffed tubes, use 0.5 size smaller and inflate as necessary to attain leak of 20–30 cm H_2O.		2.5 (20–30 kg)
9 yr	30 kg			3 (30–50 kg)
12 yr	40 kg			3 (30–50 kg)

★**NB:** These ETT sizes are guidance only ✓ ET placement of tube by auscultation of breath sounds bilaterally. ✓ depth of carina by auscultation over left axilla as ETT is slowly advanced. Withdraw and secure ETT 2 cm from carina. Positive pressure leak between 20 and 30 cm H_2O is desirable. Leaks < 20 cm may result in volume loss and difficulty in

providing appropriate ventilation during critical phases intraop or postop. Conversely, leaks > 30 cmH_2O may carry a higher risk of subglottic edema and/or stenosis. Consider length of case, difficulty of placing ETT, and adequacy of ventilation. A throat pack may assist in decreasing the leak if tube exchange is not desired.

In the past few years, the trend has been to increasingly use cuffed ETT in order to minimize need for tube exchange and optimize ventilation. This has not been associated with an increased risk of stridor.

MAINTENANCE TECHNIQUES

Inhalational anesthesia only	30–100% O_2 + 0–70% N_2O. In preemies and for cases where N_2O is contraindicated, air should be used to lower FiO_2. + Sevoflurane or isoflurane, titrated to effect. Consider warming and humidifying all gases for long cases. Warm room to 75–80°F for infants; 70–75°F for children.
Balanced anesthesia	30–100% O_2 + 0–70% N_2O + ~0.5% isoflurane or propofol (50–200 mcg/kg/min) **TIVA** - propofol 100–200 mcg/kg/min, + remifentanyl 0.1–0.2 mcg/kg/min +/– N_2O if procedure allows. Consider including amnestic agents: midazolam, low-dose inhalational agents (e.g., sevoflurane, isoflurane). dexmedetomidine 0.5–2 mcg/kg/h + remifentanil 0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min ketamine 0.2–1.5 mg/kg/h + morphine (0.05 mg/kg/h) or fentanyl (1–3 mcg/kg/h) + Dilaudid 2 mcg/kg/h + consider acetaminophen PR 30–40 mg/kg or iv 10 mg/kg for pain control. Temperature monitoring; forced air warming; fluid warming if volume/blood/resuscitation expected. Fluid requirements LR/NS at maintenance: 0–10 kg = 4 mL/kg/h +11–20 kg = 2 mL/kg/h +> 20 kg = 1 mL/kg/h (e.g., 25 kg = 65 mL/h) If continued muscle relaxation is required during the above maintenance techniques, several options are available. Always use a nerve stimulator to assess block before redosing. Neonates may demonstrate delayed return of neuromuscular function.
Intermediate	Rocuronium (most commonly used) — 0.6 mg/kg → 30 min Vecuronium — 0.1 mg/kg → 25–30 min
Long-acting	Pancuronium — 0.1 mg/kg → 40–65 min

EMERGENCE

1. Reverse muscle relaxant	As surgical conditions permit, reverse residual muscle relaxant (when at least 1 twitch is present in train-of-four) with one of the following: • Neostigmine 0.05–0.07 (maximum dose) mg/kg iv + glycopyrrolate 0.01 mg/kg iv, or • Edrophonium 0.5–1.0 (maximum dose) mg/kg iv + atropine 0.01 mg/kg iv. Enlon Plus - 0.05–0.1 mL/kg is equal to edrophonium 0.5–1 mg/kg (max: 10 mg), atropine 0.007–0.014 mg/kg (max: 4 mg).
2. Nausea prophylaxis	Ondansetron 0.1 mg/kg iv or Metoclopramide 0.1 mg/kg iv (~1 h before emergence). Dexamethasone 0.1 mg/kg can be considered (avoid in oncology patients due to special protocols).

3. O_2	D/C N_2O/volatile agents and administer 100% O_2.
4. Suction	Suction oropharynx thoroughly.
5. Extubation	Laryngeal spasm is common in children; therefore, it is common practice to extubate them when they are awake, moving all limbs, and breathing adequately. Infants and children with full stomachs or difficult airways must be extubated when they are fully awake. Deep extubation on 1.5–2 MAC sevoflurane or on propofol infusion is also common, except in patients < 1 year, moderate to severe sleep apnea, full stomach, or difficult airway. The pharynx and stomach should be suctioned thoroughly prior to extubation. If laryngeal spasm occurs, Rx with 100% O_2 and CPAP or PPV. If spasm fails to resolve and hypoxemia occurs, give succinylcholine 0.1–0.5 mg/kg and administer PPV. Consider reintubation if hypoxemia fails to resolve quickly. Consider atropine 0.01–0.02 mg/kg before succinylcholine, to preempt bradycardia.

PEDIATRIC EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA

Epidural anesthesia may be combined with GA for infants and children undergoing surgery involving the lower extremities, abdomen, chest, or spine. Single-dose ("single-shot") techniques may be used, or epidural catheters may be placed for longer procedures and to facilitate postop epidural analgesia (see below). Ropivicaine 0.1–0.2% ± 1:200K epinephrine or bupivacaine 0.25% ± 1:200,000 epinephrine is most commonly used intraop. For patients admitted following surgery, opioids (e.g., hydromorphone [Dilaudid]) are generally added, together with ropivacaine or bupivacaine 0.1% (see Appendix E). Use saline-filled syringe for loss- of- resistance to minimize chances of VAE.

TECHNIQUES AND DOSAGES

1. Caudal

- Single-shot: 22-ga iv catheter is inserted via sacrococcygeal membrane. Usually only preformed for age < 6 years.
- A test dose with 0.1 mL/kg (max 3 mL) lidocaine or bupivacaine + epinephrine 1:100K or 1:200K is given, max 3 mL. (If epidural catheter is used, add 0.8 mL to test dose volume due to dead space volume of catheter.)
- Initial dose: 0.5 mL/kg for lower extremity/perineal/genital procedures; 1.0 mL/kg for abdominal procedures (max 10 mL).
- Catheter technique: 18-ga iv catheter is used; in patients < 10 kg; first dilate the epidural space with 5–10 mL NS; then, a 20-ga epidural catheter may be inserted through 18-ga iv catheter and advanced so that tip is located near level of incision (e.g., ~17 cm from skin to T4 in infant). If resistance is met, it may be necessary to pull the catheter back slightly, together with the needle (to avoid shearing catheter), or repeat procedure. Tip of the catheter may be visualized with ultrasound.
  (If epidural catheter is used, add 0.8 mL to test dose volume due to dead space of catheter.)
- Initial dose: 0.5 mL/kg, max 10 mL.

2. Lumbar

- 18-ga epidural needle inserted via L3-4 or L4-5 interspace for single-shot injection or placement of 20-ga epidural catheter.
- Use loss-of-resistance technique with fluid-filled syringe (air may cause VAE).
- Good estimate of depth to epidural space is 1 mm/kg, up to ~30 kg.
- Catheter should be threaded 3–4 cm beyond tip of needle.
- A test dose with 0.1 mL/kg lidocaine or bupivacaine + epinephrine 1:200K is given, max 3 mL.
  (If epidural catheter is used, add 0.8 mL to test dose volume due to dead space of catheter.)
- Initial dose: 0.5 mL/kg for lower abdominal procedures; 1.0 mL/kg for upper abdominal and thoracic procedures

3. Thoracic

- The technique described for lumbar epidural catheter placement may be used between T6 and T12 in children.
- A test dose with 0.1 mL/kg lidocaine or bupivacaine + epinephrine 1:100K or 1:200K is given, max 3 mL.
  (If epidural catheter is used, add 0.8 mL to test dose volume due to dead space of catheter.)

- Initial dose: 0.5 mL/kg, max 5–7 mL.
- Local anesthetic–dosing guidelines same as above (note that volume will be ~$^1/_3$ less than with caudal approach).

For indwelling catheter techniques, hourly maintenance doses of half the initial dose may be given. For continuous infusion, maximum rate for ropivicaine and bupivacaine is 0.5 mg/kg/h (0.3 mg/kg/h for neonates).

PEDIATRIC SPINAL ANESTHESIA AND ANALGESIA

Spinal anesthesia is used primarily for procedures such as inguinal herniorrhaphy in former preterm infants at risk for postop apnea following GA. By avoiding GA, the incidence of postop apnea is reduced, but not eliminated.

After standard monitors are applied, the infant is placed in a supine or lateral decubitus position. Care is taken to avoid neck flexion, which may cause airway obstruction. The skin is infiltrated with 1% lidocaine using a 27- or 30-ga needle. Lumbar puncture is performed with a 22-ga 1.5" spinal needle to an average depth of 1.5 cm from skin. The most commonly used local anesthetic for spinal anesthesia in infants is tetracaine 1.0%, mixed with an equal volume of 10% dextrose in a dose of 0.8–1.0 mg/kg. Epinephrine 1:1000 0.01 mL/kg is added. This dose usually provides adequate anesthesia for 90–120 min for inguinal herniorrhaphy. Little change in BP or HR occurs in infants < 6 mo of age.

Complications include high spinal anesthesia requiring tracheal intubation. PDPH is very uncommon in children < 12 yr of age and probably rare in infants.

Suggested Readings

1. Cohen IT, Deutsch N, Motoyama EK: Induction, maintenance, and recovery. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthesia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011, 365–94.
2. Lerman J, Sampathi V, Wall S: Induction, maintenance and emergence from anesthesia. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012, 330–60.
3. Litman RS, Maxwell LG: Cuffed versus uncuffed endotracheal in pediatric anesthesia: the debate should finally end. *Anesthesiology* 2013; 118(3):500–1.

APPENDIX E: STANDARD PEDIATRIC POSTOPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT

Genevieve D'Souza, MD, Julie Good, MD, and Brenda Golianu, MD

Traditionally, children have been undermedicated for their pain because of difficulty with assessment, concerns for safety, and lack of understanding of the physiologic consequences of untreated pain. There is now strong evidence that it is not only safe, but also beneficial to treat children's procedural pain. For example, infants have adverse behavioral cardiorespiratory and neuroendocrine responses to pain, which improve when appropriate analgesia is administered.

Pain assessment	Unlike most adults, infants and children < 7 yr have difficulty understanding and using a Visual Analog Scale (VAS). A frequently used tool for assessing pain in children 3–7-yr-old is the Wong-Baker Faces Scale (Fig. E-1). For infants and nonverbal children, observational scales that rely on behavioral and/or physiologic parameters are often used (e.g., the FLACC Pain Scale, Table E-2, PIPP, NIPS, CHEOPS, CRIES as well as appropriate translations). The "gold standard" of pain measurement is to solicit a direct subjective report from the child whenever possible.
Oral medications	For simple outpatient procedures, such as tonsillectomy, hernia repair, circumcision, or closed reduction of a fracture, a weak oral opiate, in combination with acetaminophen, is appropriate (see chart for dosing examples, p. E-4).
Intravenous medications	**Patient-Controlled Analgesia (PCA)** can be considered in patients > 5 yr who are expected to remain hospitalized overnight, especially in those who are unlikely to tolerate oral intake during the initial hours after surgery (see initial dosing chart, p. E-4). For younger children, a **Nurse-Controlled Analgesia (NCA)** can be employed. When the patient begins oral medications, D/C the basal rate but continue to provide the lockout dose for several more hours to be sure that the child is tolerating the oral medication. For opioid-related side effects such as nausea and vomiting, ondansetron can be added (0.1 mg/kg q 6 h to maximum of 4 mg q 6 h), and for pruritus, diphenhydramine (0.5 mg/kg q 6 h max 50 mg), or nalbuphine (0.05 mg/kg q 6 h max 20 mg), especially effective for epidural opioid-related pruritus. For respiratory depression, naloxone can be carefully titrated beginning at 0.001 mg/kg q 1–2 min as needed to restore adequate respiratory effort and wakefulness. Care must be taken, as the naloxone will have a short half-life (10–15 min), and respiratory depression may recur. Reversal of analgesia may also occur if naloxone is administered for treatment of pruritus or respiratory depression.
Adjuvant medications	In addition to opiates, several adjuvant medications are useful in the periop period. **Lorazepam** (Ativan) 0.001 mg/kg iv q 6 h is useful in preventing spasms and lessening fear in an unfamiliar environment. It is important to remember that lorazepam has a half-life of up to 16 h, and doses can be additive. Another useful adjuvant is ketorolac 0.5 mg/kg, up to a maximum of 30 mg loading dose, followed by 0.5 mg/kg q 6 h, up to 72 h. Ketorolac is not recommended in patients with poor renal function or following surgeries where there is a large bleeding surface or complex bone repair. Ketorolac has been shown to cause delay in bony fusion in animal models, but conflicting information has been presented in humans. It also has been reported to cause acute renal failure with prolonged use and is not recommended for use in bariatric patients due to its potential adverse impact on renal function. Given these concerns, it is helpful to observe hydration status, Plt count, and Cr, and discuss the use of this medication with the surgical team. Other adjuvants to consider include **acetaminophen** iv or po (10 mg/kg/dose q 6 h) or pr (20 mg/kg/dose q 6). Medications to manage side effects, such as pruritus, N/V, constipation, and respiratory depression are presented in detail on the PCA order form, p. E-5. Gabapentin (15 mg/kg po) preoperatively, followed by 5 mg/kg po postop 3×/day for 5 days has

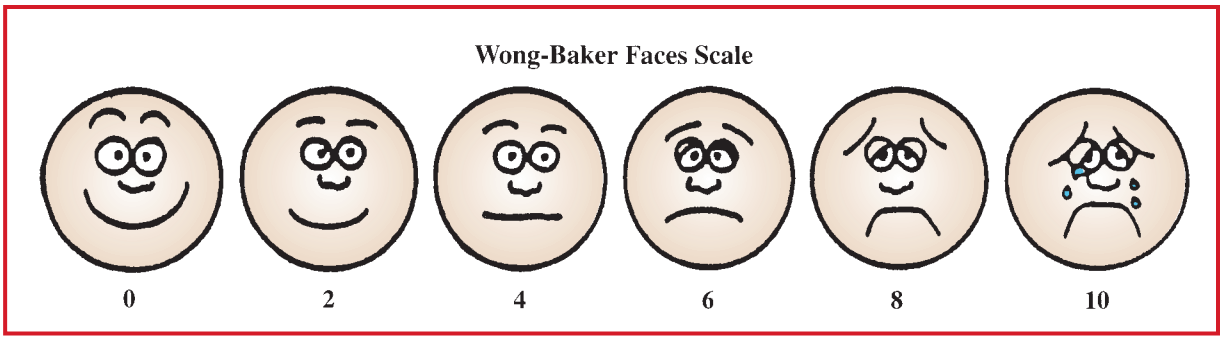


Figure E-1. Wong-Baker Faces Scale used in pain assessment in children (and other patients developmentally from 3 to 7 yr old). The higher the score, the greater the child's pain. (After Wong DL, Bakr CM: Pain in children: comparison of assessment scales. *Pediatr Nurs* 1988; 14:9.)

Adjuvant medications (cont'd)	been shown to decrease opioid requirement postop and should be considered for major surgeries. Ketamine (0.1–1 mg/kg iv) may also be used as an adjuvant, though studies have not found a postop opioid sparing effect.
Epidural pain management	In children, it is generally considered safer to place epidurals after induction of GA to avoid movement during placement. For children 0–12 mo, a **caudal technique** can be used. The patient is placed in the lateral decubitus position, the caudal anatomy is identified, and an 18-ga iv catheter is used to enter the caudal space. The catheter is advanced and aspirated. The space is then dilated with 5–8 mL of preservative-free NS. A 20-ga epidural catheter is then advanced to the desired location or until obstruction is felt (~10–15 cm). The catheter tip may be visualized using ultrasound or nerve stimulation, if available. The catheter is taped securely with a moisture-resistant dressing, as it can easily become dislodged with regular activity. A test dose is given (lidocaine 1.5% with 1:200,000 epinephrine 0.1 mL/kg + 0.8 mL for the dead space of the catheter). **Lumbar** and **thoracic epidurals** can be placed in children > 10–12 mo or earlier in experienced hands. **Contraindications** for epidural catheters include infection at the local site, coagulopathy, low Plt, sepsis, progressive neurologic deficit, and refusal of patient or parent. Epidural placement should be checked by syringe aspiration before starting the infusion. Return of any bloody fluid or > 0.5 mL clear aspirant necessitates further evaluation before use of the catheter for pain control. Patients with indwelling epidural catheters may receive postop analgesia with either continuous infusion alone or continuous infusion with intermittent bolus dosing (patient-controlled epidural analgesia [PCEA]). Similar to PCA, PCEA can be used in ages ≥ 5–7 yr. Typical starting infusions are described in the table below. Medication dosage will depend on patient's age, location of surgical pain, catheter insertion level, and catheter tip location. If the patient has an extra wide incision, other areas of discomfort, or if tolerant to opioids, the anesthesiologist may choose to run the epidural infusion at a fixed rate with local anesthetic alone (ropivicaine or bupivacaine 0.1%) and provide the patient with an IV PCA with bolus (lockout) dose only (i.e., no continuous or basal rate). A bolus dose equivalent to the hourly volume of infusion may be given when a patient is uncomfortable. Increase the infusion by 10% to maintain the new level of analgesia. Infusion should not exceed 0.3 mL/kg/h in children ≤ 6 mo or 0.4 mL/kg/h in older patients. If inadequate analgesia persists after two dosing increases, it may be appropriate to abandon this form of treatment in favor of systemic analgesia. Do not leave a patient in pain for an extended period of time trying to "fix" an epidural catheter. If in doubt, check catheter placement, then bolus catheter with 2% lidocaine w/ 1:200,000 epi 0.1 mL/kg to determine if a level is able to be obtained.
Peripheral nerve catheters	Increasingly, peripheral nerve catheters are being employed for perioperative pain control. Local anesthetic infusions (ropivacaine 0.1% or bupivacaine 0.1%) are continued for 3–5 d postop.

Table E-2. FLACC Pain Scale for pain assessment in non-verbal patients. (From Merkel S, Voepel-Lewis T, Shayevitz JR, Malviya S. et al. *Am J Nursing* 2002; 102:55–8.)

	FLACC Pain Scale (For Non-Verbal Patients)		
	Scoring		
Categories	**0**	**1**	**2**
Face	No particular expression or smile	Occasional grimace or frown, withdrawn, disinterested	Frequent-to-constant quivering chin, clenched jaw
Legs	Normal position or relaxed	Uneasy, restless, tense	Kicking, or legs drawn up
Activity	Lying quietly, normal position, moves easily	Squirming, shifting back and forth, tense	Arched, rigid or jerking
Cry	No cry (awake or asleep)	Moans and whimpers; occasional complaint	Crying steadily, screams or sobs, frequent complaints
Consolability	Content, relaxed	Reassured by occasional touching, hugging, or being talked to; distractible	Difficult to console or comfort

Each of the five categories (F) Face, (L) Legs, (A) Activity, (C) Cry, and Consolability is scored from 0 ot 2, which results in a total score between 0 and 10.

Suggested Readings

1. Dahmani S, Michelet D, Abback PS, et al: Ketamine for perioperative pain management in children: a meta analysis of published studies. *Pediatric Anesth* 2011; 21(6):636–52.
2. Ecoffey C: Pediatric Regional Anesthesia—update. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2007; 20(3):232–5.
3. Howard R, et al: Nurse-controlled analgesia (NCA) following major surgery in a children's hospital. *Pediatric Anaesth* 2010; 20:126–34.
4. Ilfeld BM, Morey TE, Wang RD, et al: Continuous popliteal sciatic nerve block for post-operative pain control at home: a randomized, double-blinded, placebo controlled study. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 97(4):959–65.
5. Kelly LE, Rieder M, van der Anker J, et al: More codeine fatalities after transillectomy in North American children. *Pediatrics* 2012; 129(5):1343–7.
6. Krane EJ: Patient-controlled analgesia: proxy-controlled analgesia? *Anesth Analg* 2008; 107:15–17.
7. Mello SS, Saraira RA, Marques RS, et al: Posterior lumbar plexus block in children: a new anatomical landmark. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2007; 32(6):522–7.
8. Niesters M, Overdyk F, Smith T, et al: Opioid induced respiratory depression in pediatrics: a review of case reports. *Br J Anesth* 2013; 110(2):175–82.
9. Rusy LM, Hainsworth KR, Nielson TJ, et al: Gabapentin use in pediatric spinal fusion patient: a randomized, double-blind controlled trial. *Anesth Analg* 2010; 110(5):1393–8.
10. Russell P, von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Schug SA: Perioperative analgesia in pediatric surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 2013; 26(4):420–7.
11. Williams DG, Patel A, Howard RF: Pharmacogenetics of codeine metabolism in an urban population of children and its implications for analgesic reliability. *Br J Anaesth* 2002; 89(6):839–45.

STANDARD PEDIATRIC INTRAOP EPIDURAL/CAUDAL DOSING

	Ropivacaine 0.2% ± epi	Bupivacaine 0.25% ± epi	Lidocaine
Caudal	0.25 mL/kg	0.25 mL/kg	0.25 mL/kg
Lumbar	0.5 mL/kg	0.5 mL/kg	0.5 mL/kg
Thoracic	0.3 mL/kg	0.3 mL/kg	0.3 mL/kg

Maximum LA dosage: Bupivacaine/ropivacaine 3 mg/kg, lidocaine 7 mg/kg

Common additives

a. Preservative free morphine: 30–50 mcg/kg
b. Hydromorphone 3–5 mcg/kg (commonly 3 mcg/kg in younger children, 5 mcg/kg in older children and teenagers)
c. Fentanyl 0.25–0.5 mcg/kg
d. Clonidine 0.5–2 mcg/kg (commonly 0.1 mcg/kg)

Lumbar epidural space depth (mm): ≈18 + 1.5 × age (yr)

STANDARD PEDIATRIC POSTOP ANALGESICS AND ANTIEMETICS

Analgesics	Acetaminophen	10 mg/kg po iv q 6 h 20 mg/kg po pr q 6 h	Max: 30–45 mg/kg/24 h (neo); 60 mg/kg/24 h (infants); max 80 mg/kg/24° pr
	Hydrocodone/ Acetaminophen Liquid or Tablet	0.15 mg/kg iv q 6 h	Dose based on maximum acetaminophen allowed for weight (up to 10 mg/kg/dose) q 4–6 h, but not to exceed 60 mg/kg/d
	Oxycodone/ Acetaminophen	0.1 mg/kg po q 6 h	Dose should also be based on maximum acetaminophen allowed for weight (up to 10 mg/kg/dose) q 4–6 h, but not to exceed 60 mg/kg/d)
Antiemetics	Metoclopramide*	0.1 mg/kg, may repeat × 1 iv	May increase risk of extrapyramidal reactions
	Ondansetron	0.1 mg/kg iv	
	***NB:** Codeine is not recommended in pediatrics. Patients with CXP2D6 polymorphism may be ultra-rapid metabolizers of codeine, leading to oversedation and in some cases to fatalities in patients with OSA following tonsilectomy. In addition, 16% of people cannot metabolize codeine and thus may have suboptimal analgesia.		

Hydro = Hydrocodone; APAP = Acetaminophen; Cod = Codeine.
Notes:
To prevent irreversible liver damage, it is important to D/C or supervise all other use of acetaminophen when prescribing the above medications, so as not to exceed the maximum dose of 60 mg/kg/d (40 mg/kg/d in neonates) of acetaminophen.

PATIENT-CONTROLLED IV ANALGESIA (PCA)

In a setting with trained nursing supervision, PCA can be used safely by children ≥ 5 yr old (about the age they are able to play video games). The lockout time usually is set at 10 min, but can be as short as 5 min for fentanyl. Common PCA medications and recommended starting doses in opiate-naive patients are listed below, followed by typical order for iv PCA.

Common PCA Medications

Medication	Loading dose	Basal Rate	Patient-Controlled Bolus
Morphine (1 or 5 mg/mL)	0.03 mg/kg	0.01 mg/kg/h	0.02–0.03 mg/kg
Hydromorphone (100 mcg/mL)	5 mcg/kg	1 mcg/kg/h	2 mcg/kg
Fentanyl (50 mcg/mL)	0.3 mcg/kg	0.1 mcg/kg/h	0.2–0.3 mcg/kg

Continuous iv infusion: When PCA is not practical (e.g., in children unable to understand PCA), continuous iv infusion of opiates may be used. Morphine infusion of 10–30 mcg/kg/h results in serum concentrations of 10–22 ng/mL and provides adequate analgesia. A common technique is to initiate iv morphine infusion with 1 mg/kg of morphine in 100 mL of D5W at 1 mL/h (the effective infusion rate is 10 mcg/kg/h). The infusion rate is slowly increased to provide adequate pain relief.

TYPICAL ORDERS FOR PATIENT-CONTROLLED IV ANALGESIA (PCA)

Patient's Name:_____ Medical Record No.:_____

Weight (kg):_____ Allergies:_____

Drug	Recommended Concentration	Loading Dose	Mode (*select one*)			PCA Dose	Lockout Interval	Basal Rate
			PCA Only	Continuous	PCA + Continuous			
Morphine	1 mg/mL	0.03 mg/kg*				0.02–0.03 mg/kg*	6–10 min	0.01 mg/kg/h*
Hydromorphine	100 mcg/mL	5 mcg/kg*				2 mcg/kg*	6–10 min	1 mcg/kg/h*
Fentanyl	50 mcg/mL	0.3 mcg/kg*				0.2–0.3 mcg/kg*	6–10 min	0.1 mcg/kg/h*

Physician: Check all orders that apply: **Recommended starting dose for opiate-naive patients.*

Nursing Care:

❑ 1. For renewed or changed PCA orders only, continue PCA nursing are as previously ordered.

❑ 2. Do not administer any other opioids, benzodiazepines, sedatives, or antiemetics unless approved by:
Service Pager No.:

☒ 3. Continuous O_2 sat monitor. For $SaO_2 < 94\%$, administer O_2 per nasal cannula to maintain $SaO_2 \geq 94\%$.

☒ 4. Assess and record at least q 2 h: RR, O_2 sat, and level of pain, using appropriate tool.
(*0–10 Scale, Wong-Baker Faces Scale, FLACC Scale, or PIPP Scale*)

☒ 5. Assess and record at least q 4 h: HR, BP, and T.

☒ 6. Bag and mask at bedside.

❑ 7. Assess for bladder retention. If no void for_____ h (since surgery or last void), may straight cath prn × 2.

Medications:

❑ 1. For renewed or changed PCA orders only, continue prn medications for PCA as previously ordered.

❑ 2. Metoclopramide (Reglan)_____mg iv q 6 h prn N/V (0.1 mg/kg/dose; max 15 mg).

❑ 3. Ondansetron (Zofran)_____mg iv q 8 h prn N/V (0.1 mg/kg/dose; max 4 mg).

❑ 4. Diphenhydramine (Benadryl)_____mg iv q 6 h prn pruritus (0.5 mg/kg/dose; max 50 mg).

❑ 5. Nalbuphine (Nubain)_____mg iv q 4 prn pruritus (0.05 mg/kg/dose; max 20 mg).

❑ 6. If no stool by_____(POD 3), administer:

- ❑ 1 pediatric glycerin suppository pr 1 or 2 × daily prn (ages 2–6 yr).
- ❑ Bisacodyl 5 mg (½ suppository) pr daily prn (ages 6–11 yr).
- ❑ Bisacodyl 10 mg (1 suppository) pr daily prn (ages > 11 yr).
- ❑ If no stool within 24 h of beginning treatment, notify physician listed above.

❑ 7. If unable to arouse or $SaO_2 < 85\%$, turn off PCA pump, administer O_2 and/or ambu-bag, stimulate patient, administer naloxone_____mg (0.001 mg/kg) q 1–2 min (obtain naloxone from floor stock) as needed to restore consciousness, and STAT page physician.

❑ 8. Other medications:_____

Date: Time:	Physician's Signature: Pager:	Noted by: Date/Time:
Orders signed		RN: Date/Time:

POSTOPERATIVE EPIDURAL ANALGESIA

Patients with indwelling epidural catheters may receive postop analgesia with either continuous infusion alone or continuous infusion with intermittent bolus dosing (patient-controlled epidural analgesia [PCEA]). The infusate may be either local anesthetic with an opioid, local anesthetic alone, or opioid alone. At Stanford, the most commonly used epidural infusate for continuous infusion is bupivacaine 0.1% with hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL. In patients receiving PCEA, bupivacaine 0.1% with hydromorphone 25 mcg/mL is often used (see Typical Orders for Continuous Epidural Analgesia and Epidural PCA, pp. E-7, E-8).

At Stanford, patients receiving epidural analgesia are managed by the Pediatric Pain Service.

Hydromorphone (Dilaudid): May bolus dose 5–10 mcg/kg or just add to continuous infusion. Reduced dose for thoracic catheters.

When opioid epidural analgesia is indicated, hydromorphone is most commonly used because

(a) It causes less itching and nausea, compared with morphine.
(b) It is more water soluble than fentanyl (decreased systemic absorption, spread over more dermatomes).
(c) It is less water soluble than morphine (thereby minimizing late respiratory depression).

STARTING DOSES FOR EPIDURAL INFUSION

Age	Starting dose
0–6 mo	Hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL + 0.1% bupivacaine @ 0.1–0.15 mL/kg/h (max bupiv 0.3 mg/kg/h); for neonates, consider 0.1% bupivacaine infusion only
6 mo–3 yr	Hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL + 0.1% bupivacaine @ 0.1–0.15 mL/kg/h (max bupiv 0.5 mg/kg/h)
3–7 yr	Hydromorphone 3–5 mcg/mL + 0.1% bupivacaine @ 0.1–0.15 mL/kg/h (max bupiv 0.5 mg/kg/h)
≥ 7 yr	Hydromorphone 5–10 mcg/mL + 0.1% bupivacaine @ 0.1–0.15 mL/kg/h + 0.05 mL/kg/h PCEA dose q 30 min lockout (max bupiv 0.5 mg/kg/h)

Notes:
In general, use a lower concentration of opiate infusion for neonates. When spread is desired (for surgeries with incisions that cross multiple dermatomes or when catheter placement is below the level of anticipated pain), a lower concentration and higher volume infusion may be desired.

Suggested Readings

1. Ivani G, Mosetti V: Regional anesthesia for post-operative pain control in children: focus on continuous central and perineural infusions. *Paediatr Drugs* 2008; 10(2):107–14.

TYPICAL ORDERS FOR CONTINUOUS EPIDURAL ANALGESIA
(may also be utilized for Peripheral Nerve Blockade)

Patient's Name:_____ Medical Record No.:_____

Weight(kg):_____Allergies:_____

Drug and Concentration (*Check one*)	**Basal Rate** (0.15 mL/kg/h) (maximum 0.3 mL/kg/h for 0–6 mo)
❑ Hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL with bupivacaine 0.1% →	Epidural infusion rate_____ mL/h
❑ Hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL with bupivacaine 0.1% → **and** Clonidine 0.5 mcg/mL	Epidural infusion rate_____ mL/h
❑ Hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL with levobapivacaine 0.1% →	Epidural infusion rate_____ mL/h

Physician: Check all orders that apply:

Nursing Care:

❑ 1. Do not administer any other opioids, benzodiazepines, sedatives, or antiemetics unless first approved by Pain Management Service.

❑ 2. Maintain iv access until epidural catheter D/C'd.

❑ 3. Check epidural site q d and notify Pain Management Service if site is soiled, red, or tender.

❑ 4. Check lower extremities q 8 h while awake, and notify Pain Management if numbness or weakness exist.

❑ 5. Continuous O_2 sat monitor. For $SaO_2 < 94\%$, administer O_2 per nasal cannula to maintain $SaO_2 \geq 94\%$.

❑ 6. Assess and record at least q 4 h: RR, O_2 sat, and level of pain, using appropriate tool. (0–10/ *Numeric Scale, Wong-Baker Faces Scale, FLACC Scale, or PIPP Scale*)

❑ 7. Assess and record at least q 4 h: HR, BP. Check orthostatic BP before ambulating.

❑ 8. Assess for bladder retention. If no void for 8h (since surgery or last void), may straight cath prn × 2.

❑ 9. Bag and mask at bedside.

Medications:

❑ 1. Metoclopramide (Reglan)_____mg iv q 6 h prn N/V (0.1 mg/kg/dose; max 15 mg).

❑ 2. Ondansetron (Zofran)_____mg iv q 6 h prn N/V (0.1 mg/kg/dose; max 4 mg).

❑ 3. Diphenhydramine (Benadryl)_____mg iv q 6 h prn pruritus (0.5 mg/kg/dose; max 50 mg).

❑ 4. Nalbuphine (Nubain)_____mg iv q 4 prn pruritus (0.05 mg/kg/dose; max 20 mg).

❑ 5. If no stool by_____(POD 3), administer:

- ❑ 1 pediatric glycerin suppository pr 1–2 × daily prn (2–6 yr).
- ❑ Bisacodyl 5 mg (½ suppository) pr daily prn (6–11 yr).
- ❑ Bisacodyl 10 mg (1 suppository) pr daily prn (> 11 yr).
- ❑ If no stool within 24 h of beginning treatment, notify physician listed above.

❑ 6. If unable to arouse or SaO_2 is < 85%, turn off PCA pump, administer O_2 and/or ambu-bag, stimulate patient, administer naloxone (Narcan)_____ mg (0.001 mg/kg) q 1–2 min (obtain naloxone from floor stock) as needed to restore LOC, and STAT page pain Management Service.

❑ 7. Other medications:_____

Date: Time:	Physician's Signature: Pager:	RN Signature: Date/Time:
Orders signed		

TYPICAL ORDERS FOR PATIENT-CONTROLLED EPIDURAL ANALGESIA (PCEA)

Patient's Name:_____ Medical Record No.:_____

Weight(kg):_____Allergies:_____

Drug & Concentration	Mode	Basal Rate* (0.1–0.15 mL/kg/h)	Epidural PCA Dose* (0.05 mL/kg/h)
Hydromorphone 3 mcg/mL with bupivacaine 0.1%	PCA + Continuous		
Hydromorphone 5 mcg/mL with bupivacaine 0.1%	PCA + Continuous		
Hydromorphone 5 mcg/mL with bupivacaine 0.1% **and** Clonidine 0.5 mcg/mL	PCA + Continuous		
	PCA + Continuous		

* When using ropivicaine or bupivicaine 0.1%, Basal Rate and Epidural PCA Dose combined may **not** exceed 0.5 mL/kg/h (0.3 mL/kg/h in ≤ 6 mo).

Physician: Check all orders that apply:

Nursing Care:

- ❑ 1. **For renewed or changed Epidural PCA orders only, continue Epidural PCA Nursing Care as previously ordered.**
- ❑ 2. Do not administer any other opioids, benzodiazepines, sedatives, or antiemetics unless first approved by: Pain Management Service:
- ❑ 3. Maintain iv access until epidural catheter is D/C'd.
- ❑ 4. Check epidural site q 8 h while awake, and notify Pain Management Service if site is soiled, red, or tender.
- ❑ 5. Check lower extremities q 8 h while awake, and notify Pain Management if numbness or weakness exist.
- ❑ 6. Assess and record at least q 4 h: HR and BP. Check orthostatic BP before ambulating.
- ❑ 7. Assess and record at least q 2 h: RR, SaO_2, and level of pain, using appropriate tool. (0–10 *Scale, Wong-Baker Faces Scale, FLACC Scale, or PIPP Scale*)
- ❑ 8. Bag and mask at bedside.
- ❑ 9. Continuous O_2 sat monitor. For $SaO_2 < 94\%$, administer O_2 per nasal cannula to maintain $SaO_2 \geq 94\%$.
- ❑ 10. Assess for bladder distention. If no void for 4 h (since surgery or last void), may straight cath prn × 2.
- ❑ 11. For any pain management issues, notify Pain Management Service.

Medications:

- ❑ 1. **For renewed or changed Epidural PCA orders only, continue prn medications for Epidural PCA as previously ordered.**
- ❑ 2. If unable to arouse or SaO_2<85%, D/C infusion, administer O_2 and/or ambu-bag, stimulate patient, administer naloxone_____mg iv (0.001 mg/kg) q 1–2 min (obtain naloxone from floor stock), as needed, to restore LOC, and **STAT page** Pain Management.
- ❑ 3. Metoclopramide (Reglan)_____mg iv q 6 h prn N/V (0.1 mg/kg/dose; max 15 mg).
- ❑ 4. Ondansetron (Zofran)_____mg iv q 8 h prn N/V (0.1 mg/kg/dose; max 4 mg).
- ❑ 5. Diphenhydramine (Benadryl)_____mg iv q 6 h prn pruritus (0.5 mg/kg/dose; max 50 mg).
- ❑ 6. Nalbuphine (Nubain)_____mg iv q 4 h prn pruritus (0.05 mg/kg/dose) — generally more effective for treatment of epidural opioid induced pruritus than diphenhydramine
- ❑ 7. If no stool by_____ (POD 3), administer:
  - ❑ 1 pediatric glycerin suppository pr once or twice daily prn (ages 2–6 yr)
  - ❑ Bisacodyl 5 mg (½ suppository) pr daily prn (ages 6–11 yr)
  - ❑ Bisacodyl 10 mg (1 suppository) pr daily prn (ages > 11 yr)
  - ❑ If no stool within 24 h of beginning treatment, notify Pain Management Service.
- ❑ 8. When Epidural PCA is D/C'd, D/C all prn medications for Epidural PCA.
- ❑ 9. Other Medications:_____

Date Time:	Physician's Signature: Pager:	Noted by: Date/Time:
Orders signed		RN Signature: Date/Time:

APPENDIX F: TABLES OF DRUG INTERACTIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PREOP MANAGEMENT

Sandra Leigh Bardas, BSP, RPH, FCSHP and Sean Carlton, PharmD, BCPS

These tables are intended only as an advisory overview of potential interactions between various drug classes or herbals that patients may be taking preop and the drugs used in anesthetic practice. They are not intended to be comprehensive lists. Drug interactions are dynamic and depend on a variety of circumstances including dosage, duration of administration as well as the patient's genetics and current physiologic state. An excellent source for the predictive values of drug interactions due to altered metabolism can also be found in references for inhibitors, inducers, and substrates of the cytochrome P450 enzymes. In view of the constant flow of new drug information, the reader is strongly encouraged to check the primary literature of each drug or online resources, such as DRUG-REAX, Lexi-Interact, and Facts and Comparisons for drug interactions and then tailor drug usage to the patient-specific clinical situation.

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (neostigmine, pyridostigmine, donepezil, rivastigmine)	Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers (NMB) (atracurium, rocuronium, vecuronium)	↓ blockade	Titrate to therapeutic effects
Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors	Succinylcholine	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiratory function
Adrenergics/sympathomimetics (ephedrine, epinephrine, norepinephrine, isoproterenol)	Anesthetic gases (desflurane, enflurane, isoflurane, sevoflurane)	↑ risk of dysrhythmias	Limit amount of epinephrine used in local anesthetics
Alfentanil	Propofol, fospropofol	Opisthotonus, seizure	Monitor for ↑ sedation and hypotension
Aliskiren	Any cardiovascular depressant or vasodilator	↓↓ BP	Treat refractory hypotension with vasopressin
Aminoglycosides (gentamicin, tobramycin, amikacin)	Anesthetic gases	↑ potential for nephrotoxicity secondary to fluoride	Monitor renal function postop
Aminoglycosides	Botulinum toxins	↑ neuromuscular blocking	Monitor for ↑ blockade
Aminoglycosides	NMB	↑ respiratory depression	Monitor and support respiratory function
Amiodarone	Anesthetic gases	↑ myocardial depression and conduction defects	Monitor HR and rhythm
Amiodarone	Phenylpiperidone derivative opiate agonists (alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil)	↓ HR and ↓ BP, sinus arrest	Monitor hemodynamic function
Amphetamines	Opioids	↑ analgesic effects	Monitor and support respiration
Anthracyclines (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, idarubicin)	Isoflurane	Prolonged QT interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
Aprepitant fosaprepitant	Midazolam	↑ midazolam levels	Monitor and support respiration

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS (cont'd)

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Aprotinin (limited availability)	Nondepolarizing NMBs	Prolonged or reoccurring apnea	Monitor respiratory status
Aripiprazole	Midazolam	Genotype dependent ↑ aripiprazole concentrations	Monitor response. Consider empiric dose reduction of Aripiprazole
Armodafinil	Midazolam	↓ midazolam effect	Titrate dosage to effect
Arsenic trioxide	Halothane	Prolonged QT interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
Atorvastatin	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Titrate dosage to effect
Atracurium	Propofol, fospropofol	Bronchospasm	Anaphylactoid-type reaction
Azole antifungals (fluconazole, intraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)	Alfentanil	↑ opioid effect	Monitor and support respiration
Azole antifungals	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Dose reduction needed with oral midazolam. Monitor and support respiration
Barbiturates	Midazolam	Potentiation of CNS depression	Monitor and support respiration
Benzodiazepines	Nonpolarizing NMBs	May prolong or antagonize blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Beta-blockers	Alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, sufentanil	↑ risk of hypotension and bradycardia	Monitor HR and BP
Beta-blockers	Alpha/beta agonists (ephedrine, epinephrine, norepinephrine, phenylephrine)	Enhanced vasopressor effect	Use with caution. Reaction dependent upon agent and dosage.
Boceprevir	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Contraindicated
Botulinum toxins	NMBs	↑ blockade	Toxin may spread from injection sites causing muscle weakness
Calcium channel blockers—nondihydropyridines (diltiazem, verapamil)	Alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, sufentanil	↑ risk of hypotension and bradycardia	Monitor HR and BP
Calcium channel blockers—nondihydropyridines	Midazolam	Prolonged sedation	Avoid oral midazolam. Titrate dose to effect
Calcium channel blockers—nondihydropyridines	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑/prolonged blockade	Monitor
Carbamazepine	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↓ blockade	Titrate NMB to therapeutic effect
Carbamazepine	Midazolam	Possible ↓ midazolam effect	Titrate dose to effect
Catecholamines, sympathomimetics	Halothane	↑ risk of catecholamine-induced dysrhythmias	Use alternative inhalation agent

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS (cont'd)

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Clindamycin	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ intensity or prolongation of blockade	Monitor and support respiration. Anticholinesterases or calcium may be beneficial
Clindamycin	Succinylcholine	Prolonged blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Clonidine	Naloxone	Possible hypertension	Monitor BP
Conivaptan	Alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil	↑ analgesic effect	Avoid combination
Conivaptan	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Avoid combination
Corticosteroids	Nondepolarizing NMBs	Muscle weakness possibly progressing to polyneuropathies and myopathies	Titrate NMB to therapeutic effect
Crizotinib	Alfentanil	↑ analgesic effect	Avoid combination
Cyclophosphamide	Succinylcholine	↑ blockade	Dose reduction of succinylcholine. Monitor and support respiration
Cyclosporine	Midazolam	Decreases clearance of midazolam	
Cyclosporine	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Dasatinib	Alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil	↑ analgesic effect	Monitor and support respiration
Digoxin	Succinylcholine	Precipitate new dysrhythmias or potential existing dysrhythmias	Monitor rhythm
Disulfiram	Anesthetic gases	Reduction in gas metabolism	Monitor for ↑ effect of inhalation agent
Dobutamine	Anesthetic gases	Ventricular dysrhythmias	Monitor HR and rhythm
Dofetilide	Sevoflurane	Prolonged QT interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
Dopamine	Anesthetic gases	↑ risk of dysrhythmia	Avoid combination
Echothiophate iodide (ophthalmic)	Succinylcholine	Prolonged blockade	Consider dose reduction or alternative NMB
Enzalutamide	Alfentanil	↓ analgesic effect	Avoid combination
Gabapentin	Anesthetic gases	Case report of myotonia and dystonia	Monitor for potential adverse reactions
Imatinib	Fentanyl	Increases fentanyl concentration and duration	Use lower initial dose and monitor for prolonged effect
Isoniazid (INH)	Enflurane	Fast acetylators of INH facilitate defluorination of enflurane —high-output renal failure	Monitor renal function postop

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS (cont'd)

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Isoniazide (INH)	Halothane	↑ risk of hepatotoxicity	Avoid giving rifampin and/or INH after halothane anesthesia
Ivacaftor	Alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil	↑ opioid effect	Monitor and support respiration
Ivacaftor	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Monitor and support respiration
Ketamine	Halothane	↓ BP, CO	Monitor BP
Ketamine	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Ketorolac	Nondepolarizing NMBs	Case reports of apnea	Monitor respiration
Labetalol	Anesthetic gases	↓ BP	Monitor BP
Linezolid	Alpha/beta agonists	Enhanced vasopressor effect	Use with caution
Linezolid	Metoclopramide	Serotonin syndrome and NMS	Monitor for symptoms of both syndromes, avoid combination if possible
Lithium	Nondepolarizing NMBs	Possible ↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Local anesthetic (large doses)	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Loop diuretics (bumetanide, ethacrynic acid, furosemide, torsemide)	Nondepolarizing NMBs	Low dose — enhance blockade; high dose — diminish blockade	Titrate to effect
Loop diuretics	Succinylcholine	Dose dependent prolongation (low doses) or antagonism (high doses) of blockade	Titrate to effect
Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin, telithromycin)	Alfentanil	↑ analgesic activity	Monitor and support respiration. Sufentanil safe to use.
Macrolides	Midazolam	Prolonged sedation	Monitor and support respiration
Magnesium	NMBs	Enhanced blockade	Monitor and support respiration
MAO inhibitors (nonselective = phenelzine, tranylcypromine) (Type B = rasagiline, selegiline)	Alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, sufentanil	Serotonin syndrome, orthostatic hypotension	Monitor HR, BP, and temperature
MAO inhibitors	Alpha/beta agonists	Enhanced vasopressor effect	Use with caution, reaction dependent upon agent and dosage.
MAO inhibitors	Metoclopramide	Serotonin syndrome	Monitor for symptoms and avoid combination if possible
MAO inhibitors	Succinylcholine	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Mercaptopurine	Nondepolarizing NMBs	May decrease or reverse blockade	Titrate NMB to therapeutic effect

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS (cont'd)

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Methadone	Alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, sufentanil	↑ CNS depression	Avoid combination
Methotrexate	Nitrous oxide	Potentiation of cytotoxic effects	Avoid before or during methotrexate treatment
Methylphenidate	Anesthetic gases	Enhanced hypertensive effect	Hold drug on the day of surgery
Midazolam	Propofol, fospropofol	↓ clearance of midazolam	Monitor and support respiration
Mifepristone	Alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil	↑ analgesic effect	Monitor and support respiration
Mirtazapine	Alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, sufentanil	↑ CNS depression	Avoid combination
Nitrates	Pancuronium	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
NMBs	Anesthetic gases	↑ blockade	Titrate both agents
NNRTIs (note, these drugs are also in combination medications)	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Contraindicated
Octreotide	Opioids	↑ analgesic effects	Monitor and support respiration
Olanzapine	Midazolam	Possible excessive sedation and cardiorespiratory depression	Avoid parenteral olanzapine with parenteral benzodiazepines
Opioids	Anesthetic gases	↑ potential for opiate toxicity	Monitor and support respiration
Opioids	Propofol, fospropofol	↓ BP	Titrate dose of each agent
Opioids	Succinylcholine	↓ HR	Monitor for bradycardia and heart block
Phenothiazines (chlorpromazine, fluphenazine, prochlorperazine, thioridazine)	Metoclopramide	Extrapyramidal symptoms	Monitor for symptoms
Phenothiazines	Ondansetron, granisetron, dolasetron	Prolonged QTc interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
Phenothiazines	Opioids	↑ respiratory depression	Monitor and support respiration
Phenytoin, fosphenytoin	Nondepolarizing NMBs	Acute (< 14 d — ↑ blockade). Long term (> 14 d — ↓ blockade)	Monitor and support respiration
Pimozide	Propofol, fospropofol	QTc prolongation	Avoid combination
Piperacillin/Tazobactam	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Polypeptide antibiotics (bacitracin, colistimethate, polymyxin B)	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade. Colistimethate and polymixin B may have independent NMB activity.	Support respiration. Consider calcium gluconate to reverse prolonged blockade by colistimethate

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS (cont'd)

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Polypeptide antibiotics	Succinylcholine	↑ blockade. Colistimethate and polymixin B may have independent NMB activity.	Support respiration. Consider calcium gluconate to reverse prolonged blockade by colistimethate
Procaine, procainamide	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Procaine, procainamide	Propofol, fospropofol	↑ blockade secondary to competition for pseudocholinesterases	Monitor and support respiration
Protease inhibitors (note, these drugs are also in combination medications)	Fentanyl	CYP3A4 interaction	Consult product literature for specific contraindications
Protease inhibitors	Midazolam	↑ midazolam effect	Do not use oral midazolam. IV midazolam contraindicated with fosamprevenir. IV midazolam should be used with great caution and dose reduction.
Quinidine	NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Quinine	NMBs	↑ blockade	Avoid concurrent use
Quinolones (ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin)	Ondansetron, granisetron, dolasetron	Prolong QTc interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
Rifamycin derivatives (rifampin, rifabutin, rifapentine)	Alfentanil	↓ analgesic effect	Increase dose, titrate to appropriate pain relief.
Rifamycin derivatives	Halothane	↑ risk of hepatotoxicity	Avoid giving rifampin and/or INH after halothane anesthesia
Ropivacaine	Propofol, fospropofol	↑ ropivacaine toxicity	Consider dose reduction of ropivacaine
Sotalol	Sevoflurane	Prolonged QTc interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
Spironolactone	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline)	Metoclopramide	NMS	Monitor for signs/symptoms
SSRIs	Ondansetron, granisetron, dolasetron	Prolonged QTc interval	Monitor HR and rhythm
SSRIs	Opioids	Serotonin syndrome	Monitor HR, BP, and temperature
Succinylcholine	Non deloparizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Succinylcholine	Propofol, fospropofol	↓ HR	Consider atropine premed when propofol precedes succinylcholine
TCAs (amitriptyline, imipramine, nortriptyline)	Metoclopramide	Extrapyramidal symptoms and NMS	Monitor for signs/symptoms

TABLE F-1 DRUG-DRUG INTERACTIONS (cont'd)

Preop Drug or Drug Class	Anesthetic Drug or Drug Class	Interaction	Clinical Management
Telaprevir	Midazolam	Increases midazolam concentrations	Oral midazolam is contraindicated. IV midazolam should be used with great caution and dose reduction.
Tetracyclines	NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Theophylline	Halothane	↑ risk of catecholamine-induced dysrhythmias	Use alternative inhalation agent
Theophylline	Midazolam	↓ midazolam effects	Titrate dose
Thiazide diuretics	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade may be secondary to hypokalemia	Correct hypokalemia
Thiazide diuretics	Opioids	Orthostatic hypotension	Monitor HR and BP
Thiotepa	Nondepolarizing NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Vancomycin	NMBs	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Vecuronium	Propofol, fospropofol	↑ blockade	Monitor and support respiration
Vemurafenib	Midazolam	↓ midazolam concentration	Titrate midazolam to effect

TABLE F-2 HERBAL AGENTS

It may be difficult to accurately predict the potential for drug interactions, because the majority of people neglect to inform health care providers of their consumption of herbal agents, natural remedies, alternative or complimentary medicines, nutritional supplements, and illicit substances. The significance of the potential interaction is also difficult to assess due to variations of botanical species, the different parts of plants that are used, assay of active ingredient(s), and product formulation. Herbs that alter hemostasis should be D/C'd 14 d before surgical, dental, or invasive procedures.

Plant	Precautions for Anesthesia and Surgery
Aloe vera	May impair hemostasis.
Bilberry (*Vaccinium myrtillus*)	May impair hemostasis.
Black cohosh (*Cimicifuga racemosa*)	Potential for hypotension.
Bladderwrack (*Fucus vesiculosus*)	May impair hemostasis.
Cat's Claw (*Uncaria tomentosa*)	May impair hemostasis (Plt inhibition).
Cayenne (*Capsicum annum*)	Has biological effect of ↑ catecholamine secretion. OD may cause hypothermia.
Chamomile. German (*Matricaria chamomilla*)	May enhance CNS depression.
Coleus (*Coleus forskohlii*)	May impair hemostasis. Has potential for hypotension.
Devil's claw (*Harpagophytum procumbens*)	May have chronotropic and inotropic effects. May impair hemostasis.

Plant	Precautions for Anesthesia and Surgery
Dong quai (*Angelica sinensis*)	May impair hemostasis. May cause vasodilation.
Echinacea	May increase the sedative effect of midazolam.
Ephedra (ma huang) (*Ephedra sinica*)	Potent sympathomimetic may cause cardiac arrhythmias and stroke.
Evening primrose (*Oenothera biennis*)	May impair hemostasis (↓ Plt function).
Fenugreek (Trigonella foenum-graecum)	May impair hemostasis. Contains coumarin.
Feverfew (*Tanacetum parthenium*)	May impair hemostasis (↓ Plt function). ↑ risk of serotonin syndrome.
Fish oils	May impair hemostasis.
Garlic (*Allium sativum*)	May inhibit Plt aggregation; potential for enhanced ↓ BP. May ↓ blood glucose.
Ginger (*Zingiber officinale*)	May → prolonged bleeding time (irreversible PLT inhibition); possible ↑ catecholamine secretion; cardioactive in large and prolonged doses.
Ginkgo (*Ginkgo biloba*)	Selective antagonist of Plt aggregation; may cause vasodilation. Antithrombotic effect.
Ginseng, American (*Panax quinquefolius*)	May impair hemostasis (possibly irreversible Plt inhibitor)
Ginseng, Panax (*Panax ginseng*) root	Dose-dependent effects on BP. May cause tachycardia. May impair hemostasis.
Ginseng, Siberian (*Eleutherococcus senticosus*)	May impair hemostasis. Use barbiturates with caution. May affect BP.
Golden Seal (*Hydrastis Canadensis*)	May impair hemostasis. Potential for hypotension and bradycardia. May alter liver enzymes.
Grapefruit	Cytochrome P450 (CYP3A4) inhibition. Onset of midazolam may be delayed and action increased.
Grape seed (*Vitis vinifera*)	May impair hemostasis.
Green tea (camellia sinensis)	May impair hemostasis.
Guggul (Commiphora mukul)	May impair hemostasis.
Hawthorn (*Crataegus oxyacantha*)	High doses may cause hypotension + CNS depression. May ↑ digoxin and ACE inhibition
Horse chestnut (*Aesculus hippocastanum*)	May impair hemostasis (contains coumarin). Has cholinergic properties.
Kava kava (*Piper methysticum*)	Synergy with midazolam and anesthetic drugs. Chronic use may ↑ anesthetic requirements. Antagonizes dopamine.
Licorice (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*)	May impair hemostasis. Mineralocorticoid effect ↓ K^+
Melatonin	May enhance CNS depressants.
Passion flower (*Passiflora spp*)	Synergy with CNS depressants. Avoid combination with MAOI.
Red clover (*Trifolium pratense*)	May impair hemostasis. Contains coumarins.
Reishi (*Ganoderma lucidum*)	May impair hemostasis.
Saw Palmetto (*Serenoa repens*)	May cause ↑ BP. Antiestrogen effect.

Plant	Precautions for Anesthesia and Surgery
Schisandra (*Schizandra chinensis*)	Inducer of Cytochrome P450 enzyme system.
St. John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*)	May have some MAOI activity. May reduce midazolam levels due to enzyme induction. Delayed emergence from anesthesia. Avoid meperidine.
Turmeric (*Curcuma longa*)	May impair hemostasis.
Valerian (*Valeriana officinalis*)	Potentially synergistic with opiates & CNS depressants, including anesthetics.
White willow (*Salix alba*)	Salicylate, may impair hemostasis.
Yohimbe (*Corynanthe yohimbe*) (*Pausinystalia yohimbe*)	May cause CNS stimulation. May have cardiovascular effects.

TABLE F-3 PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF PATIENT MEDICATIONS

Drug/Drug Class	Continue to Time of Surgery	Otherwise Discontinue Before Surgery
Aliskiren (renin inhibitor)	Do not continue unless essential for BP control (consult prescribing MD)	At least 2 days and preferably 7–10 days before lengthy or high blood loss surgery in patients taking other rennin/angiotensin system drugs
Alpha and alpha-beta blockers	Continue except for tamsulosin in cataract surgery	Stop tamsulosin several days prior to cataract surgery to prevent floppy iris syndrome. Consider use of labetalol for intraop blood pressure control.
Amiodarone	Continue (long elimination half-life)	
Angiotensin Converting Enzyme (ACE) Inhibitors		May intensify hypotension in anesthesia—ensure adequate intravascular volume d/c 24 h prior to surgery
Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARB)		May intensify hypotension in anesthesia. Hypotension may be less responsive to vasopressors—ensure adequate intravascular volume. d/c 24 h prior to surgery
Anticytokines in general	Consider consult	
Anticytokines Adalimumab		d/c 1–2 wk prior to surgery. Restart 1–2 weeks after surgery.
Anticytokines Anakinra		d/c 1–2 wk prior to surgery. Restart 1–2 weeks after surgery.
Anticytokines Etanercept		d/c 1–2 wk prior to surgery. Restart 1–2 weeks after surgery.
Anticytokines Infliximab	May continue if indication is inflammatory bowel disease	
Anticytokines Rituximab		d/c 1–2 wk prior to surgery. Restart 1–2 wk after surgery.
Antigout agents in general	Continue	Monitor for fluid and electrolyte shift leading to changes in uric acid levels. Treat flares with NSAIDs or corticosteroids.
Anti-Parkinsonian medications	Continue prior to surgery as prescribed to prevent relapse	

TABLE F-3 PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF PATIENT MEDICATIONS (cont'd)

Drug/Drug Class	Continue to Time of Surgery	Otherwise Discontinue Before Surgery
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Levodopa/carbidopa	Give dose evening before surgery	
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Entacapone		Hold 24 h before surgery
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Tolcapone		Hold 24 h before surgery. Resume when patient is taking po and stable.
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Bromocriptine		Hold 24 h before surgery. Resume with patient is taking po and stable.
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Pergolide		Hold 24 h before surgery. Resume with patient is taking po and stable.
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Ropinirole	Administer morning of surgery to avoid precipitating neuroleptic malignant syndrome	Resume when patient is taking po
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Pramipexole	Administer morning of surgery to avoid precipitating neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS).	Resume when patient is taking po
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Selegiline		d/c 3 d before surgery because it is a MAOI Type B inhibitor
Anti-Parkinsonian medications Anticholinergic agents		Parenteral diphenhydramine and benztropine can be used to control symptoms in patients who cannot take PO meds
Antipsychotic agents	Continue	Haloperidol, olanzapine, and ziprasidone are available parenterally
Antiseizure meds (AEDs)	Continue. Anesthesia, metabolic changes, ethanol withdrawal, neurosurgical procedures may increase risk of seizures.	Check drug levels. Substitute iv alternatives
Antithyroid meds	Continue antithyroid meds and beta-blockers	
Apixaban		d/c 24 h before minor surgery and 48 h before any surgery with a moderate or higher bleeding risk
Aspirin	Continue in vascular surgery or stents. Secondary prophylaxis in patients at high risk	d/c 5–7 d (up to 10 d) before surgery if risk or consequences of bleed is high or if taken only for primary prophylaxis
Benzodiazepines	Continue to prevent development of withdrawal symptoms	Support with iv preparations if necessary
Beta-adrenergic blockers	Continue because abrupt discontinuation is associated with rebound ischemia, hypertension, and tachycardia	If d/c prior to surgery, consider use of esmolol intraop for pressure and rate control
Buspirone	Continue to prevent development of withdrawal symptoms	
Calcium channel blockers	Continue in pts with normal or slightly impaired heart function. Continue with caution in pts with LV dysfunction	

TABLE F-3 PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF PATIENT MEDICATIONS (cont'd)

Drug/Drug Class	Continue to Time of Surgery	Otherwise Discontinue Before Surgery
Cholestyramine, colestipol		Discontinue day before surgery
Cilostazol		d/c 3–5 d before surgery
Clonidine	Continue to prevent withdrawal symptoms such as rebound hypertension, tachycardia, tremors, anxiety	Consider use of transdermal system if pt is NPO perioperatively. Observe for hypotension and bradycardia
Clopidogrel	In patients with: Drug-eluting stents < 12 mo Bare metal stents < 1 mo if asymptomatic Bare metal stents < 12 mo if symptomatic + any others	d/c 5–10 d before surgery
Clozapine	Continue to prevent withdrawal symptoms and disease relapse, may need psychiatric consult	
Corticosteroids	Continue. May need to supplement due to surgical stress.	
Dabigatran		d/c 1–2 d prior to surgery in pts with good renal function and 3–5 d prior to surgery in pts with CrCl < 50 mL/min. consider d/c earlier for patients undergoing major surgery or neuraxial anesthesia. Check aPTT morning of surgery. Not reversible with protamine.
Digoxin	Continue (long-half-life)	
Dipyridamole		d/c 2–3 d before surgery
Diuretics (thiazides, loop)	Continue but monitor for volume depletion and ↓ K	
DMARDS (Disease Modifying Anti-rheumatic Drugs)	Consider consult	May increase immunosuppression and increase the risk of wound infection
DMARDS Methotrexate	Continue in patients with normal renal function	
DMARDS Leflunomide		d/c 2 wk prior to surgery (long half-life)
DMARDS Sulfasalazine	Continue	
DMARDS Azathioprine	Continue	
DMARDS Hydroxychloroquine	Continue	
Ezetimibe		d/c day before surgery
Fibric acid derivatives (gemfibrozil, fenofibrate)		d/c day before surgery
Fondaparinux		d/c 24 h prior to surgery. Start no sooner than 6 h postop. Not reversible with protaime.
H2 blockers	Continue	Consider iv formulations

TABLE F-3 PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF PATIENT MEDICATIONS (cont'd)

Drug/Drug Class	Continue to Time of Surgery	Otherwise Discontinue Before Surgery
Heparin		d/c 4–6 h before surgery. Reversible with protamine. Restart postop 12–24 h after procedures with low risk of postop bleeding. Restart postop 48–72 h after procedures with high risk of postop bleeding. Monitor for HIT (heparin-induced thrombocytopenia)
Herbals		d/c at least 14 days prior to elective surgery due to potential CV effects and/or bleeding
HIV therapy	Be cognizant of drug interactions between HIV meds and anesthetic agents	
HMG Co-A reductase inhibitors ("statins")	Continue — may be cardioprotective and anti-inflammatory	
HRT (e.g., estrogen)	Balance risk of VTE with risks of d/c	Consider VTE prophylaxis
Inhaled pulmonary medications including beta-agonists, ipratropium, steroids	Continue	
Insulin		Reduce evening dose of insulin (give about 2/3 dose). Adjust or omit morning dose of insulin. Use a sliding scale replacement
Insulin pump		Decrease dose on evening of surgery. Switch to insulin infusion except for short, simple cases
Leukotriene inhibitors (montelukast, zafirlukast)	Continue	
Lipid controlling agents (cholestyramine, colestipol, gemfibrozil, niacin)		d/c day before surgery
Lithium	Continue with caution. May prolong blockade of NMBs	Monitor sodium and fluid status
LMWH		d/c 12–24 h prior to surgery and 24 h if planning neuraxial anesthesia. Partially reversible with protamine. Start or restart 4 h after epidural catheter removed.
MAOIs		d/c 10–14 d prior to surgery. Use MAOI-safe anesthetic agents.
Meds for myasthenia gravis	Risk for respiratory insufficiency. Use pyridostigmine evening before surgery.	Postop management with pyridostigmine IM 1/10th dose IV 1/30th dose Continuous infusion at 2 mg/h
Niacin		Discontinue day before surgery.
Nitrates	Continue	May use nitroglycerin 2% ointment to substitute for po nitrates

TABLE F-3 PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF PATIENT MEDICATIONS (cont'd)

Drug/Drug Class	Continue to Time of Surgery	Otherwise Discontinue Before Surgery
NSAIDs		Usually d/c 1–3 d before surgery depending on agent
Opioids, chronic use	Continue to avoid withdrawal and pain exacerbation	Review equianalgesic substitutions. Patient may need multimodal approach to temporarily control the surgical pain
Oral antidiabetic agents (in general)		Hold sulfonylureas and nonsulfonylurea secretagogues evening before surgery. Short procedures—delay morning doses until po intake. Monitor for hypoglycemia especially in the longer-acting sulfonylureas.
Oral antidiabetic agents Metformin		Risk of lactic acidosis. Recommendations vary from holding 48 h prior to surgery to only morning of surgery.
Oral contraceptives	Balance risk of VTE with risks of d/c	Consider VTE prophylaxis.
Pentoxifylline		d/c at least 8 h prior to surgery
PPIs	Continue	Resume, consider iv formulation
Prasugeral		d/c 7 d before surgery
Rivaroxaban		d/c at least 24 h prior to surgery or longer (3 d in patients with CrCl < 50 mL/min) if bleeding risk of primary importance. Nonreversible with protamine. Check aPTT morning of surgery.
Selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERM)	Balance risk of VTE with risks of d/c	Consider VTE prophylaxis.
SSRIs	Continue	If decide to d/c, taper for 3 wk prior to surgery.
TCAs	Long half-life	If decide to d/c, taper for 3 wk prior to surgery. Norepinephrine is pressor of choice.
Theophylline		Hold morning of surgery. Toxic levels are associated with arrthymias.
Thyroid meds	Med has long half-life, so omitting a dose is unlikely to have clinical effect.	
Ticagrelor		d/c 5 d before surgery
Ticlopidine		d/c 10–14 d before surgery
Valproic acid	Continue	Consider iv formulation
Warfarin	Assess bleeding risk of procedure compared with risk of thromboembolism. Consider bridging therapy.	Hold warfarin 3–5 d prior to surgery and consider bridging therapy. Check INR morning of surgery. Consider low dose of vitamin K on day of surgery if INR remains above surgeon's target INR. If INR is significantly elevated and surgery is immediately necessary, consider a warfarin reversal protocol, which includes vitamin K, FFP, PCC, and factors.

APPENDIX G: SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR LATEX ALLERGY

Brenda Golianu, MD, Nai Yi Sun, MD, Rebecca E. Claure, MD, and Anita Honkanen, MD

Latex is the second most common cause of anaphylactic reactions under anesthesia (20%) after neuromuscular blocking agents. Latex gloves are the major source of latex proteins and are implicated in most cases of latex-mediated reactions. Latex exposure may occur through skin contact, mucous membrane exposure, inhalation, ingestion, or parenteral injection. Reactions to latex are divided into three types: irritant contact dermatitis, type IV hypersensitivity (skin reaction similar to poison ivy), and type I, lgE-mediated hypersensitivity, which can lead to life-threatening anaphylaxis.

Populations at Risk:

- Patients with history of multiple surgical procedures, including those with myelomeningocele, spina bifida, and congenital genitourinary tract anomalies.
- Patients with a history of myelomeningocele and spina bifida should be treated with a "latex precautions" regimen from birth, regardless of prior history of exposure or latex reactivity.
- Health care personnel with occupational exposure.
- Other individuals with occupational exposure such as rubber industry workers and hairdressers.
- Patients with history of atopy, hay fever, asthma, or eczema.
- Patients with history of food allergy to tropical fruits (such as avocado, kiwi, banana, mango) and chestnuts, which contain cross-reacting proteins with latex.

It is currently estimated that as many as 17% of health care workers have been sensitized to latex. Occupational exposure can be minimized by avoiding powdered latex gloves and limiting the use of latex-containing gloves. Applying lotion to hands before using latex gloves facilitates the transfer of latex proteins to hands and should be avoided.

In high-risk patients, latex-avoidance protocols are recommended as this may decrease the incidence of subsequent intraoperative allergic reactions. Hospitals and ORs have decreased the use of products that contain latex to the extent that some are essentially latex-free. Anesthesia carts can be assembled with latex-free products, reducing the risk of latex-sensitization for all patients and negating the need for a special "latex-free cart." The latex content of commonly used materials can be identified from external labeling, package inserts, or directly from the manufacturers. Even minimal latex exposure (e.g., an injection through a latex port of iv tubing or opening a package of powdered latex gloves) has resulted in anaphylaxis.

Diagnosis of latex allergy is based on a focused history and physical examination with positive in vivo or in vitro test. In vitro serum tests for latex-specific IgE such as RAST are highly specific but have a high false-negative rate, up to 30%. Skin testing identifies patients with a high titer of IgE to latex, but must be performed with appropriate safeguards because it may induce systemic anaphylaxis.

Pharmacological prophylaxis in the acute setting is controversial for patients with documented latex allergy. Prophylaxis medications, such as diphenhydramine, ranitidine, and hydrocortisone, are not universally successful in preventing latex anaphylaxis. Some authors have argued that pretreatment may mask the early immune responses, leaving anaphylaxis as the first evidence of an allergic reaction.

To prepare a latex-safe environment:

- Notify OR nurses, anesthesia technicians, and surgical staff of the need for a latex-free room.
- Place a sign on the door stating: "LATEX-FREE ROOM."
- Schedule the latex-allergic patient as the first case of the day to minimize the presence of airborne latex particles.
- Set up the room with latex-free materials (e.g., bag, bellows, ECG electrodes, pulse oximeter clip, iv tubing without latex ports, vinyl gloves, vinyl BP cuffs, clear micropore tape).
- Avoid bouffant surgical hair caps and shoe covers that contain latex bands.
- Wrap Webril around latex tubing on stethoscope, BP cuff, or tourniquet with Webril or cotton gauze if they contain latex derivatives.
- Removal of rubber stoppers from drug vials (instead of withdrawing through the stopper) is controversial.

Diagnosis of anaphylaxis or latex allergy:

- **Early Manifestation** Skin: hives or urticaria at site of contact with latex product; red eyes; angioedema of eyelids; nasal congestion; GI cramping; headache; anxiety.
- **Late Manifestation** Respiratory: bronchospasm, wheezing, ↑ PIP, ↓ O_2 sat, upsloping of $ETCO_2$ tracing.
- Intraoperative Cardiac: ↓ BP, ↑ HR, cardiac arrest. Generally, type I hypersensitivity may not occur immediately at the beginning of a surgical procedure, but after exposure of peritoneum or mucous membranes to latex.

Treatment of anaphylaxis:

- Remove latex.
- Notify surgical team.
- Call for help.
- 100% O_2; secure airway; manually ventilate if needed.
- Discontinue all anesthetic agents; Trendelenburg.
- Epinephrine 0.1–1 mcg/kg iv initially, increasing to 10 mcg/kg; repeated boluses may be needed to support BP; may require an epinephrine infusion (0.05–0.1 mcg/kg/min) and may increase up to 1 mcg/kg/min in severe cases.
- Administer iv fluid to ↑ preload and support BP.
- Review field to ensure all possible latex-containing equipment has been removed. (Instruct surgical staff to change to nonlatex gloves and scrutinize all equipment.)
- Administer steroids (hydrocortisone 100 mg or methylprednisolone 0.5 mg/kg), antihistamine (diphenhydramine 50 mg or 0.5 mg/kg iv) H-2 blockers (ranitidine 150 mg iv).
- Administer bronchodilators (albuterol) via nebulizer for bronchospasm.
- Continue steroids and diphenhydramine for 24–48 h or until symptoms resolve.
- Collect blood for mast cell tryptase (peaks at 30 min, t 1/2 is 2h).
- Inform pharmacy of latex sensitivity to ensure all products are prepared latex free.
- Refer patient to allergist to follow-up. Skin prick test or RAST can be performed (4–6 wk after the acute reaction resolves) to specifically test for latex allergy.
- Patients with a history of latex anaphylaxis should be advised to wear a Medic Alert bracelet.

Suggested Readings

1. ASA Committee for Occupational Health of Operating Room Personnel: *Natural Rubber Latex Allergy: Considerations for Anesthesiologists*. 2005. Available at: http://www.asahg.org/PublicationsAndServices/latexallergy.html.
2. De Queiroz M, Combet S, Berard J, et al: Latex allergy in children: modalities and prevention. *Pediatr Anesth* 2009; 19:313–19.
3. Dewachter P, Mouton-Faivre C, Emala CW: Anaphylaxis and anesthesia: controversies and new insights. *Anesthsiology* 2009; 111:1141–50.
4. Dong SW, Mertes PM, Petitpain N, et al: Hypersensitivity reactions during anesthesia. Results from the ninth French survey (2005–2007). *Minerva Ansethsiol* 2012; 78(8):868–78.
5. Flick R: Clinical complications in pediatric anesthesia. In: Gregory GA, Andropoulos DB, eds. *Pediatric Anesthsia*, 5th edition. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford: 2012; 1180–82.
6. Hepner DL, Castells MC: Latex allergy: an update. *Anesth Analg* 2003; 96:1219–29.
7. Laxenaire MD, Mertes PM, et al: Anaphylaxis during anaesthesia. Results of a two-year survey in France. *Br J Anaesth* 2001; 87(4):549–58.
8. Maxwell LG, Goodwin SR, Mancuso TJ, et al: Systemic disorders. In: Davis PJ, Cladis FP, Motoyama EK, eds. *Smith's Anesthsia for Infants and Children*, 8th edition. Elsevier, Philadelphia: 2011; 1169–70.
9. Sampathi V, Lerman J: Case senario. Perioperative latex allergy in children. *Anesthsiology* 2011; 11(3):673–80.
10. Yassin MS, Lierl MB, Fischer TJ, et al: Latex allergy in hospital employees. *Ann Allergy* 1994; 72:245–9.
11. Zucker-Pinchoff B, Stadtmauer GJ: Latex allergy. *M Sinai J Med* 2002; 69:88–95.

APPENDIX H: PERIOPERATIVE ACUPUNCTURE

Jeannie Seybold, MD, Emily Ratner, MD, and Brenda Golianu, MD

INTRODUCTION

Acupuncture is a treatment modality that has been practiced in China for over 3 millennia. Initially transmitted as an oral tradition, it was first described in written form in the Huang Di Nei Jing or the Yellow Emperor's Inner Cannon, the seminal text of ancient Chinese medicine dating back to the 3rd century BC. Acupuncture involves placing very thin needles in the skin to stimulate the flow of qi in a complex network of meridians in the body. There are 12 principal and 8 curious acupuncture meridians that correspond to physiologic and anatomical organ functions. Qi is a dynamic form of physical and spiritual energy that flows within the universe and in all organisms. One of the basic tenets of Chinese medicine is that illness and pain are caused by the stagnation or blockage of qi flow and/or the invasion of pathological influences—traditionally known as wind, heat, cold, dampness, dryness, or fire—that result in imbalances of yin and yang. When a point is needled, a heavy sensation known as "deqi," or a mild paresthesia, may be experienced by the patient. The practitioner may sense a gentle contraction of the connective tissue surrounding the needle or may observe a flare developing around the needle. Needling, electrical and laser stimulation, acupressure, or even herbal therapies (moxibustion or capsicum plaster) over specific points have all been documented to alleviate pain and pathological states. In addition to body acupuncture, which developed in China, Japan, and Korea, many different traditions have been developed that focus on needling specific body parts, that is, the ear, scalp, or hand, as microsystems representing the entire body. Acupuncture has been used to provide analgesia during surgery since the 1950s in China. However, it was little more than a curiosity in the United States before 1971, when reporter James Reston went to China to report on the diplomatic efforts of Henry Kissinger and President Richard Nixon. While in Beijing, Reston required an emergency appendectomy and received acupuncture for postoperative ileus and pain control. The popularity of acupuncture in the United States exploded after he published his experiences in the *New York Times.* In 1997, the NIH released a consensus statement supporting the use of acupuncture for adult postoperative and chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting and postoperative dental pain. It also stated that acupuncture may be a useful adjunctive treatment in addiction, stroke rehabilitation, headache, menstrual cramps, tennis elbow, fibromyalgia, myofascial pain, osteoarthritis, low back pain, carpal tunnel syndrome, and asthma. During the last 10 years, acupuncture has been increasingly studied and used to treat acute postoperative pain as well as in chronic pain clinics throughout the United States.

MECHANISMS

Several mechanisms for acupuncture analgesia have been proposed. The gate control theory by Melzack and Wall in 1965 postulated that stimulation of a-beta fibers inhibits a-delta and c fiber transmission of pain signals. This may be a local mechanism of action. Other studies have shown that electroacupuncture at low (2–4 Hz) and high frequencies (100 Hz and greater) selectively induces endorphin and enkephalin release, respectively. Conflicting evidence exists regarding the ability of naloxone to antagonize the analgesic effects of acupuncture. Some studies show that naloxone reverses acupuncture-induced analgesia, while others dispute this. This suggests the analgesic mechanisms of acupuncture are more complex than the release of endorphins. Additional evidence suggests that the frequency and intensity of stimulation determine the degree of naloxone reversibility. A review of functional MRI and positron-emission tomography studies has shown that electroacupuncture exerts effects over the hypothalamus, somatosensory motor cortex, and rostral anterior cingulate cortex, with nonspecific modulation of the limbic system and hypothalamus. Other mechanisms of action may include the local generation of plasma, nitric oxide and release of adenosine. Acupuncture may also have anti-inflammatory properties.

PERIOPERATIVE USE

Acupuncture is effective for reducing PONV. P6 (Neiguan), the most thoroughly studied acupoint, is located three fingerbreadths proximal to the wrist crease, between the flexor carpi radialis and palmaris longus tendons and directly over the median nerve. A Cochrane review of 26 randomized trials noted significant reduction in nausea and the need for rescue antiemetics with the use of P6 acupoint stimulation. Direct electrical stimulation of this point was shown to be as efficacious as a standard dose of ondansetron for PONV in adults and resulted in a 37% reduction in nausea in children after tonsillectomy. There is evidence that transcutaneous electrical acupoint stimulation

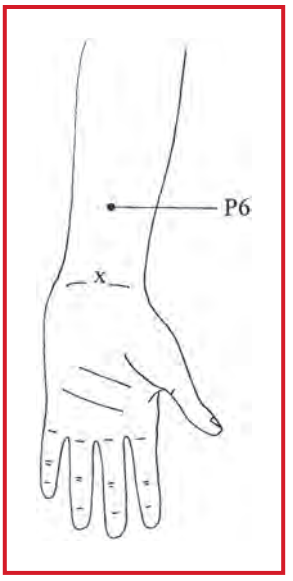


Figure H-1. P6 Acupoint. P6 is located three fingerbreadths proximal to the wrist crease directly over the median nerve and between the tendons of palmaris longus and flexor carpi radialis. For PONV prophylaxis, the two nerve stimulator electrodes can be placed over the median nerve (1) at a point proximal to the wrist crease (marked with an x) 2 cm proximal to P6 and (2) on P6 or 1 cm distal to the P6 point. Stimulus parameters: 1 Hz, 0.2 ms, 50 mA during anesthesia.

is also effective in reducing PONV. Stimulation of P6 by twitch monitoring using a standard nerve stimulator (at 1 Hz, 0.2 ms, 50 mA) during general anesthesia for laparoscopic surgery significantly reduced PONV for 24 h with an efficacy similar to that of commonly used antiemetic drugs. A trained medical acupuncture practitioner would likely integrate P6 with a combination of body and ear acupuncture points to minimize PONV. Acupuncture has not been shown to eliminate the need for anesthetic medications during surgery, but it may be a useful adjuvant for perioperative analgesia and anxiolysis. In a randomized controlled trial of perioperative acupuncture for abdominal surgery, Kotani et al. showed 50% reduction in postoperative morphine use, 20–30% reduction in postop nausea, and 30–50% reduction in plasma cortisol and epinephrine levels. A reduction in postoperative pain and analgesic requirements was also seen in studies of acupuncture in patients having gynecologic, abdominal, thoracic, and orthopedic surgeries. Acupuncture is known to produce deep relaxation and sedation and may be useful for preoperative anxiolysis or for postoperative weaning of narcotic medications in opioid tolerant patients. Two recent studies demonstrated cardioprotective effects of electrical acupuncture in adult and pediatric cardiac surgical patients, as indicated by decreased postoperative serum cTn1 (cardiac troponin 1), decreased duration of postoperative mechanical ventilation, and shorter ICU stay. The risks of acupuncture are rare. The most common are minor bruising, limited capillary bleeding, pain or local infection at the needling site. Anesthesiologists can be trained to provide acupuncture treatment for PONV and anxiolysis. More comprehensive perioperative treatment should be performed by or under the supervision of a trained medical acupuncturist.

Suggested Readings

1. Arnberger M, Stadelmann K, Alischer P, et al: Monitoring of neuromuscular blockade at the P6 acupuncture point reduces the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesthesiology* 2007; 107(6):903–8.
2. Berman BM, Lao L, Langenberg P: Effectiveness of acupuncture as adjunctive therapy in osteoarthritis of the knee: a randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2004; 141(12):901–10.
3. Chernyak GV, Sessler DI: Perioperative acupuncture and related techniques. *Anesth Analg* 2005; 102(5):1031–78.
4. Gan TJ, Jiao KR, Zenn M, et al: A randomized controlled comparison of electro-point stimulation or ondansetron versus placebo for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg* 2004; 99(4):1070–5.
5. Gilbertson B, Werner K, Russell LC, et al: Acupuncture and arthroscopic acromioplasty. *J Orthop Res* 2003; 21(4):752–8.
6. Goldman N, Chen M, Fujita T: Adenosine A1 receptors mediate local antinociceptive effects of acupuncture. *Nat Neurosci* 2010; 13(7):883–8.

7. Golianu B, Krane E, Seybold J, et al: Non-pharmacological techniques for pain management in neonates. *Sem Perinatol* 2007; 31(5):318–22.
8. Han JS: Acupuncture and endorphins. *Neurosci Lett* 2004; 361:258–61.
9. Huang C, Wang Y, Han JS, et al: Characteristics of electroacupuncture-induced analgesia in mice: variation with strain, frequency, intensity and opioid involvement. *Brain Res* 2002; 945:20–5.
10. Kabalak AA, Akcay M, Akcay F, et al: Transcutaneous electrical acupoint stimulation versus ondansetron in the prevention of postoperative vomiting following pediatric tonsillectomy. *J Alt Comp Med* 2005; 11(3):407–13.
11. Kim KS, Nam YM: The analgesic effects of capsicum plaster at the Zusamli point after abdominal hysterectomy. *Anesth Analg* 2006; 103(3):709–13.
12. Kotani NK, Hashimoto H, Sato Y, et al: Preoperative intradermal acupuncture reduces postoperative pain, nausea and vomiting, analgesic requirement, and sympathoadrenal responses. *Anesthesiology* 2001; 95(2):349–56.
13. Kundu A, Berman BM: Acupuncture for pediatric pain and symptom management. *Pediatr Clin North Am* 2007; 54:885–9.
14. Lee A, Done ML: Stimulation of the wrist acupuncture point P6 for presenting postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004; 3:CD003281. DOI:10.1002/14651858.CD003281.pub2.
15. Lewith GT, White PJ, Pariente J: Investigating acupuncture using brain imaging techniques: the current state of play. *eCAM* 2005; 2(3):315–9.
16. Lin YC: Perioperative usage of acupuncture. *Pediatr Anesthesia* 2006; 16:231–5.
17. Ni X, Xie Y, Wang Q, et al: Cardioprotective effect of transcutaneous electric acupoint stimulation in the pediatric cardiac patients: a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Pediatr Anesth* 2012; 22:805–11.
18. Rusy LM, Hoffman GM, Weisman SJ: Electro-acupuncture prophylaxis of postoperative nausea and vomiting following pediatric tonsillectomy with or without adenoidectomy. *Anesthesiology* 2002; 96:300–5.
19. Scuderi PE: P6 Stimulation, a new approach to an ancient technique. *Anesthesiology* 2007; 107(6):870–2.
20. Sim CK, Xu PC, Pua HL, et al: Effects of electro-acupuncture on intra-operative and post-operative analgesic requirement. *Acupunct Med* 2002; 20(2–3):56–65.
21. Takano T, Chen X, Luo F, et al: Traditional acupuncture triggers a local release of adenosine in human subjects. *J Pain* 2012; 13(12):1215–23.
22. Tsuchiya M, Sato EF, Inoue M, et al: Acupuncture enhances generation of nitric oxide and increases local circulation. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 104:301–7.
23. Ulett GA, Han SP, Hang JS: Electroacupuncture: mechanisms and clinical application. *Biol Psychiatry* 1998; 44:129–38.
24. Usichenko TI, Dinse M, Hermsen M, et al: Auricular acupuncture for pain relief after total hip arthroplasty: a randomized controlled study. *Pain* 2005; 114:320–7.
25. Vickers AJ, Rusch VW, Malhotra VT, et al: Acupuncture is a feasible treatment for post-thoracotomy pain: results of a prospective pilot trial. *BMC Anesthesiol* 2006; 6:5.
26. Wang SM, Kain ZN, White P: Acupuncture analgesia I: the scientific basis. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 106:602–10.
27. Wang SM, Kain ZN, White PF: Acupuncture analgesia II: clinical considerations. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 106:602–10.
28. Wang SM, Peloquin C, Kain Z: The use of auricular acupuncture to reduce preoperative anxiety. *Anesth Analg* 2001; 93:1178–80.
29. White P: Use of alternative medical therapies in the perioperative period: is it time to get on board. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 104:251–4.
30. Yang L, Yang J, Wang Q, et al: Cardioprotective effects of electroacupuncture pretreatment on patients undergoing heart valve replacement surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2012; 89:781–6.
31. Zhang RX, Li A, Liu B, et al: Electro-acupuncture attenuates bone cancer pain and inhibits spinal interleukin-1 beta expression in a rat model. *Anesth Analg* 2007; 105:1482–8.
32. Zhang RX, Lao LX, Wang XY, et al: Electroacupuncture attenuates inflammation in a rat model. *J Alt Comp Med* 2005; 11(1):135–42.

APPENDIX I: MANAGEMENT OF THE DIFFICULT AIRWAY

C. Philip Larson, Jr., MD, CM

Management of the airway, particularly the difficult airway, effectively and safely is a skill that every anesthesia provider must have to be qualified to provide clinical anesthesia. Competency in airway management is mandatory before undertaking independent clinical practice of anesthesia.

DIFFICULT AIRWAY VERSUS DIFFICULT VENTILATION

Difficult airway	5–10% of patients depending on type of practice. Tip-offs include: prior history of difficult airway/intubation, small mouth opening, large tongue, prominent teeth, large neck, limited range of motion of head, short thyromental distance (< 3 cm), Mallampati grade > 2, upper-lip bite test below vermillion. Management: multiple options (see below)
Difficult ventilation	Rare, < 1% of patients Causes obvious: large beard, thick redundant jowls, oropharyngeal mass, fractured larynx, mediastinal mass compressing trachea, lingual tonsillar hyperplasia (easily ventilated with LMA) Management: Consider LMA and Plan C (see below) or awake fiberoptic intubation (FOI).

MANAGEMENT OF DIFFICULT AIRWAY

Caution: Always determine that ventilation is possible with bag-mask or LMA before inducing full general anesthesia and paralysis. If not possible and ET tube needed, consider awake intubation.

Patient positioning	Always have head at top edge of table; bed height at umbilical level of operator. Do not bend over.
Direct laryngoscopy (plan A)[2]	Stand sideways facing right wall; keep left arm at side with ET tube in the left axilla (only place where operator does not have to look away once the glottis identified). Put patient's head in sniff position by directing laryngoscope along the plane of handle (do not lift or pull handle towards oneself). With proper positioning, intubation should be a leg activity with the arm only acting as a fulcrum. Do not do more than two direct laryngoscopies. Multiple laryngoscopies result in inability to ventilate as well as intubate.
Endotracheal tube selection	Always use smallest appropriate tube (7.0 men, 6.5–7.0 women). Small tubes are easier to insert than large tubes. If larger tube needed later, can always change tube using airway exchange catheter (AEC). Choice of tubes: standard, wire-reinforced (for prone surgery), EMG #6 (for nerve monitoring), laser, MLT tube (for microlaryngeal surgery).
Choice of LMAs	Either classic or disposable for routine care. Use classic when using as a conduit for FOI or Aintree catheter. Use LMA #4 for men and #3 or #4 for women. Avoid #5 when doing FOI as it blocks glottic opening by invaginating epiglottis. Intubation LMA; success rate 90–95%; less when intubation difficult. Make certain balloon on reusable silicone tube does not leak. Loosen 15-mm connector before inserting tube. Determine that tube is in trachea. Do not drop 15-mm connector while inserting tube holder and removing LMA. Fix connector firmly before utilizing ET tube.
Videolaryngoscopes (plan B)[6]	GlideScope™ or C-MAC™ gives best picture. Use largest blade for most adults. Use either special rigid stylet provided or shape another stylet to same curvature as blade. Watch tube enter mouth before looking at screen to avoid soft tissue trauma. Extract stylet slightly once tube at glottis opening if tube does not advance easily.

Intubating catheters (plan B).[2]	Cook (Frova) catheters: two types, styleted and unstyleted. 70-cm long and styleted has 2 adaptors (15 mm for O_2 insufflation, one for attaching syringe or gas sampling line). Tip rounded so will not perforate soft tissue. Needs some shaping before use. Must see epiglottis to use effectively; cannot be advanced beyond carina. Use ET tube that closely approximates catheter size (6.5–7.5). Can use intubating catheter together with videolaryngocope if catheter bent to conform to the shape of the laryngoscope blade. Eschmann: 60-cm long, easily wound in circle for transport. Loses shape and stiffness after a few washings. Aintree: 60-cm long, hollow tube blunt at both ends; has snap-on 15-mm adaptor for O_2 insufflation. Use classic LMA or Tudor-Williams airway as conduit for insertion; will not advance through disposable LMAs. Must be experienced at FOI as all control and direction done with handle. Use. 7.0–7.5 tube for insertions (6.5 will not advance).

FIBEROPTIC INTUBATION PROTOCOL; AWAKE AND ASLEEP[2–4]

Awake	Preferred technique when ventilation by bag-mask or LMA not possible
Premedication	If not contraindicated, patients should receive mild-to-moderate sedation with dexmedetomidine 1 mcg/kg over 10 min or fentanyl 0.3–0.5 mcg/kg and/or midazolam 2–4 mg iv.
Topical anesthesia	When premedication has been established, for awake FOI the oropharynx is sprayed vigorously ~ 6 times over a span of 10 min with lidocaine 4% solution using a disposable EZ spray unit powered with oxygen. Initially, the spray is directed at the front of the tongue; gradually, it is directed further back in the throat, until the entire oropharynx is numb. Having the patient inhale deeply while spraying enhances the topical effect. In reality, the lateral recesses of the oropharynx need not be anesthetized topically because both fiberoptic laryngoscope (FOL) and ETT are confined to the midline of the mouth.
Tracheal anesthesia	With patient breathing oxygen from anesthesia circuit or transport mask, transtracheal injection of cocaine or lidocaine 4% (4 mL) is made through the cricothyroid membrane, using a 5-mL syringe and a 23-ga, 3/4-inch needle. So that this injection can be made as rapidly as possible, it is important to use a small syringe, making certain that the connection between syringe and needle is tight. It is important that the operator's hand be fixed firmly against the patient's upper chest to assure that needle movement is minimized should the patient start to cough, and that the full injection is made into the trachea. When the injection is complete, the patient is urged to cough vigorously.
Laryngoscopy	After the mouth and trachea are anesthetized with local anesthetic, an oral airway with a central orifice (e.g., Tudor-Williams, Patel, Ovassapian airway) is placed in the midline of the mouth. A 7-mm orotracheal tube, without connector attached, is placed over a FOL. With the operator at the patient's side near the waist, the FOL is introduced through the hole in the airway and advanced to end of airway. At this point, the epiglottis should be visible. The tip of the fiberoptic scope is flexed toward the operator about 15–20°, which should bring arytenoid cartilages and laryngeal opening into view. The scope is advanced into the larynx so that tracheal rings can be visualized. Often, the carina also can be visualized. The laryngoscopist also can place the scope in the airway by darkening the room and using the scope as a light wand, directing the light externally to the sternal notch and advancing it down the trachea. If a wire-reinforced tube is desired, use a Patel or Ovassapian airway instead of the Tudor-Williams airway for guidance, because these airways can be removed with the tube connector in place.
Intubation	The scope is placed on the patient's chest and, holding it so that it not advanced further, the orotracheal tube is advanced gently into the trachea. To facilitate passage of the orotracheal tube past the arytenoid cartilages and into the larynx, it is necessary to rotate the tube counterclockwise 90°—or even as much as 180°—several times as it is being advanced.

Intubation (cont'd)	Using this rotational movement, the operator should never need to push hard on the tube to position it in the larynx. After the tube is in place, the FOL and oral airway are removed, and the 15-mm connector is reattached to the tube. $ETCO_2$ confirms proper placement. The orotracheal tube is then firmly taped in place at one side of the mouth. If manual ventilation of the lungs is possible, it is often beneficial for both patient and anesthesiologist to perform FOI with the patient anesthetized. This is particularly true for patients with cervical spine injuries where manipulation of the head during direct laryngoscopy or coughing during topicalization of the airway or insertion of the tube during awake FOI may aggravate the spinal cord injury. Asleep FOI involves inducing GA, inserting an LMA, and placing the patient on controlled ventilation. Then proceed with plan C (see ref 9). In brief, a 6.0 uncuffed tube is mounted on the FOI, the FOI is inserted into the trachea using the LMA as a guide, and the 6.0 tube is lubricated and inserted into the laryngeal opening. The FOI is removed and the lungs ventilated via the 6.0 tube. A medium-sized airway exchange catheter (AEC) is lubricated on one end and inserted into the trachea via the 6.0 tube. The AEC usually meets resistance at the distal end of the 6.0 tube. If this occurs, rotate the 6.0 tube while pushing on the AEC. Once the AEC is a few cm beyond the tip of the 6.0 tube, the tube and LMA are removed en bloc leaving the AEC in the airway. With the AEC in the far right corner of the mouth, thread the final endotracheal tube on the AEC and gently advance it through the mouth into the larynx, rotating it counterclockwise to avoid obstruction from the right arytenoid cartilage. Then remove the AEC and connect the ETT to the anesthetic circuit.
Asleep (plan C)[2]	Preferred technique when ventilation possible by bag-mask or LMA. Easy to determine by administering very low-dose propofol and initiating assisted/controlled ventilation with sevoflurane. Major induction agent is sevoflurane. Establish excellent anesthesia and paralysis. Insert classic LMA. Disposable LMAs have internal ridge that makes advancement of scope and/or tube impossible. In emergency, ridge can be cut out before insertion in mouth. Mount 6.0 uncuffed ET tube with very tight 15-mm connector onto scope. Focus FOL, maximize light source, minimize room light, insert FOL via center struts of LMA into glottis and trachea. Lubricate #6 tube and advance into trachea; remove FOL; attach tube to circuit and ventilate lungs. Need high gas flow because of leak between tube and LMA. Lubricate medium airway exchange catheter (AEC) and insert via #6 tube about 35–37 cm (5–7 cm beyond tube tip); remove ET tube and LMA together; insert final tube (6.5 or 7.0) rotating gently counterclockwise; remove AEC and palpate balloon on tube for final positioning above sternal notch. Technique can be practiced safely in normal patient so, when needed, operator is comfortable and confident performing it.
Failed plans A–C (plan D)[2]	Plans A–C very rarely fail, but if they should, plan D would present two choices: Proceed with a surgical airway (cricothyrotomy, tracheostomy) or awaken patient and bring back another day for awake FOI.

NASAL FIBEROPTIC

Awake	Requires adequate sedation and excellent topical anesthesia of nose preferably with cocaine 4% pledgets or cotton applicators and oral spray with lidocaine 4% via EZ Spray. Dilate nasal cavity with progressively larger nasal airways. Mount smallest acceptable nasal RAE on scope, insert scope in nose keeping it in the midline and asking an assistant to pull up on the jaw to open the oropharynx. Do not advance nasal RAE until scope is well into the trachea.
Asleep	Preferred to awake as it is much more pleasant for both patient and anesthesia provider. Despite general anesthesia and paralysis, topical anesthesia of the nose with cocaine 4% and gradual nasal dilation are essential to avoid nasal bleeding. Have assistant do jaw thrust to open oropharynx.

CERVICAL SPINE INJURY: INTUBATION OPTIONS

Awake FOL	Preferred technique by many despite serious drawbacks: namely, coughing and bucking during oropharyngeal topicalization; during transtracheal injection (if used); and during insertion of fiberoptic scope and/or tube into the trachea. Should rarely be used now, and only in circumstance where bag-mask ventilation is not possible.
In-line traction	Commonly used in emergency rooms in combination with direct laryngoscopy with patient either sedated or anesthetized. Multiple problems with this technique: 1. No established standard for how in-line traction should be applied, and no documentation of its effectiveness or safety. 2. In-line traction requires the use of excessive leverage on the laryngoscope to visualize the laryngeal opening.[3] 3. In-line traction greatly compromises operator ability to visualize glottis opening, even in patients who are not classified as difficult airways on preop assessment.[8–9]
Plan C (asleep)	Strongly preferred technique since there is no movement of the head during the procedure, and there is no coughing/bucking since the patient is anesthetized and paralyzed. The only prerequisite for use is that bag-mask or LMA ventilation is possible. This is easily determined by administering a sedative dose of propofol in conjunction with low-dose inhaled sevoflurane and seeing if assisted ventilation is possible. If as the depth of anesthesia is increased with sevoflurane the patient becomes more difficult to ventilate, administration of a neuromuscular blocking drug and insertion of an LMA will usually resolve the problem. This technique can be used with a patient in a cervical collar or halo traction.
Difficult pediatric airway	Airway difficulties in infants and small children are generally due to congenital abnormalities of the face, mouth, chin, or upper airway. These can usually be handled effectively and safely by a combination of sedation or GA and insertion of a fiberoptic scope directly into the mouth or via a conduit such as an LMA.
Intubation	The scope is placed on the patient's chest and, holding it so that it is not advanced further, the orotracheal tube is advanced gently into the trachea. To facilitate passage of the orotracheal tube past the arytenoid cartilages and into the larynx, it is necessary to rotate the tube counterclockwise 90°—or even as much as 180°—several times as it is being advanced.

EXTUBATION STRATEGY

Delayed extubation	Always have an extubation strategy. Delaying extubation and mechanically ventilating the lungs for a time postop is frequently a good option.
Postoperative extubation	Establish full recovery from GA and paralysis, with sustained, spontaneous ventilation. Consider deflating the balloon on the tube, occluding the ET tube and determining if ventilation is possible around the tube. This finding is reassuring but no guarantee of sustained airway patency when the tube is removed. Consider inserting an LTA spray down the tube to prolong tolerance to the tube. If there is any question regarding airway patency, insert an AEC 5–7 cm beyond the tube before removing it. As long as it does not touch the carina and is not moved, it will not cause coughing and will not affect voice. Remove AEC when sustained ventilation is evident. If reintubation is necessary, use a tube that closely approximates the AEC in diameter.

MANAGEMENT OF LARYNGOSPASM

Standard technique	Positive pressure ventilation with oxygen along with jaw thrust. Technique may not work until patient sufficiently hypoxic that vocal cords relax. May need to administer succinylcholine 20–50 mg iv or im. If this fails and ET intubation not possible, consider immediate cricothyrotomy.

Best technique	Learn to do the laryngospasm maneuver[5] and apply it immediately after every removal of ETT or LMA. Should be standard of care because if done correctly it always relieves laryngospasm within 15–20 sec. Find "laryngospasm notch," which is behind the pinna of the ears. It is bounded by the coronoid process of the mandible anteriorly, the mastoid process posteriorly, and the base of the skull superiorly. To be effective, operator must feel base of skull. With patient lying supine, very firm pressure is directed inward bilaterally and at the same time pulling upward (skyward) on the coronoid process. Place transport mask with oxygen flowing on patient's face prior to starting laryngospasm maneuver. Continue maneuver until patient moves arms up toward head (Larson reflex). Once patient can do this, laryngospasm will not recur. The maneuver corrects airway obstruction from the tongue because the forward displacement of the mandible pulls the tongue forward. Why it corrects laryngospasm is not known. It is not due to pain because pain elsewhere does not resolve laryngospasm.

CRICOTHYROTOMY

Indications	Every anesthesia provider should be trained to perform a cricothyrotomy and be prepared to do it when needed. The risks associated with doing it are minimal and the benefit life-saving. Indications: partial or complete airway obstruction and inability to ventilate lungs or perform tracheal intubation; massive oral/tracheal bleeding making mask ventilation or tracheal intubation impossible, combined with rapidly decreasing SaO_2.
Technique	Identify cricothyroid membrane between thyroid cartilage superiorly and cricoid cartilage (round, signet ring shape) inferiorly. With scalpel, pen knife, or scissors make 1"–1.5" horizontal incision at level of cricoid. Cut down quickly to the cricoid cartilage, cut through it, and insert a small tube (#4–6F) in the opening. One generally has little time before the patient goes into cardiac arrest from hypoxia, so the maneuver must be done quickly. There are no structures in the midline of the neck that will be harmed by the incision, and bleeding from the incision is generally minimal. Reluctance to perform the maneuver when indicated generally results in patient death. Needle cricothyrotomies are not recommended. They are harder and more time consuming to perform, and far less effective in establishing an airway.

Selected References with Condensed Abstracts/Suggested Readings

1. Larson CP Jr: A safe, effective, reliable modification of the ASA difficult airway algorithm for adult patients. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth* 2002; 23:1–12.
2. Larson CP Jr: Airway management. In: *Clinical Anesthesiology*. Morgan GE, Mikhail MS, Murray MJ, eds. Lange, New York: 2006, 104–5. *A brief review of Plans A–D.*
3. Larson CP Jr: Fiberoptic intubation of the trachea, Part I. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth* 2000; 21:117–28.
4. Larson CP Jr: Fiberoptic intubation of the trachea, Part II. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth* 2001; 21:129–36.
5. Larson CP Jr: Laryngospasm: the best treatment. *Anesthesiology* 1998; 89:1293–4
6. Larson CP Jr: Update on Airway Management, *Curr Rev Clin Anesth* 2009; 30:63–72. *A review of the current concepts in the evaluations of the airway, recommended algorithm for managing the difficult airway, and special consideration of the patient with a cervical spine disorder or injury*.
7. Larson CP Jr., Steadman RH: Management of the full stomach: a reevaluation. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth* 2005; 25:253–64.
8. Robitaille A, William SR, Tremblay MH, Guilbert F, Theriault M, Drolet P: Cervical spine motion during tracheal intubation with manual in-line stabilization, direct laryngoscopy versus Glidescope videolaryngoscopy. *Anesth Analg* 2008; 106:935–41. *The authors conclude that while the Glipdescope gave a better view than the MacIntosh blade, some neck movement was required to visualize the glottis with either blade, and in some patients the glottis could not be visualized until the in-line stabilization was released*.
9. Santorini BG, Hindman BJ, Puttlitz CM, et al: Manual in-lined stabilization increases pressures applied by the larungoscope blade during direct laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology* 2009; 110:24–31. *The Investigators concluded that manual in-line stabilization and standard laryngoscopy in normal adult patients have the potential for causing distortion of the cranio-cervical axis that would be unacceptable in patients with cervical spine injury.*

APPENDIX J: ANTICOAGULATION GUIDELINES FOR NEURAXIAL PROCEDURES

Einar Ottestad, MD, Alex J. Butwick, MD, MS, FRCA, and Brendan Carvalho, MBBCh, FRCA

ANTICOAGULATION GUIDELINES FOR NEURAXIAL PROCEDURES

Guidelines to Minimize Risk of Spinal Hematoma with Neuraxial Procedures

	Minimum time between last dose of anticoagulant & spinal injection or catheter placement * longer in CRI/AKI	**Use of antithrombotic agents in patients with indwelling neuraxial catheters**	**Minimum time between spinal injection or catheter removal & next dose of anticoagulant**
TRADITIONAL ANTICOAGULANTS			
Warfarin	When INR < 1.5	CONTRAINDICATED	2 h
Heparin full dose iv	When aPTT < 40. Check after holding 2 h	Indwelling catheter OK	1 h
Heparin minidose (5000 U) SQ BID	No contraindication		
Heparin minidose (5000 U) SQ TID	When aPTT < 40 or 6 h after last dose		
Heparin full dose (> 5000 U) SQ bid or tid	When aPTT < 40 or 6 h after last dose		
Fondaparinux (Arixtra) < 2.5 mg SQ qd (prophylaxis)	36–42 h	CONTRAINDICATED	6–12 h
Fondaparinux (*Arixtra*) 5–10 mg SQ qd (full dose)	Contraindicated		
Enoxaparin (*Lovenox*) 1 mg/kg SQ bid; 1.5 mg/kg SQ qd (full dose)	24 h*		24 h
Enoxaparin (*Lovenox*) 40 mg SQ qd (prophylaxis)	12 h*		6–8 h
DIRECT THROMBIN INHIBITORS			
Argatroban	Unknown or when DTI assay < 40 or aPTT < 40	CONTRAINDICATED while catheter in place	Unknown
Bivalirudin (*Angiomax*)			
Lepirudin (*Refludan*)			
Dabigatran (Pradaxa)	7 d		
ORAL ANTIPLATELET AGENTS			
Aspirin/NSAIDS	May be given. No time restrictions		
Clopidogrel (Plavix)	7 d	CONTRAINDICATED while catheter in place	2 h
Prasugrel (Effient)			
Ticlopidine (Ticlid)	14 d		
GP IIB/IIIA INHIBITORS			
Abciximab (*Reopro*)	48 h	CONTRAINDICATED while catheter in place	2 h
Eptifibatide (*Integrilin*)	8 h*		
Tirofiban (Aggrastat)	8 h*		
THROMBOLYTIC AGENTS			
Alteplase (TPA) Full dose for stroke, MI, etc	10 d	CONTRAINDICATED while catheter in place	10 d
Alteplase (TPA) 2-mg dose for catheter clearance	May be given. No time restrictions (maximum dose 4 mg/24 h)		
ORAL FACTOR Xa INHIBITORS			
Apixaban (Eliquis)	Unknown for neuraxial procedures but hold 48 hours for surgery		
Rivaroxaban (Xarelto)			
Edoxaban			

APPENDIX K: ABBREVIATIONS

~	approximately
↓BP	hypotension
2°	secondary to
A-a	alveolar-arterial
AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
ABC	argon beam coagulator
ACAS	Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme
ACL	anterior cruciate ligament
ACLS	advanced cardiopulmonary life support
ACT	activated clotting time
ACTH	adrenocorticotropic hormone
ADH	antidiuretic hormone (vasopressin)
AEC	airway exchange catheter
AF	atrial fibrillation
A/G	albumin/globulin
AH	autonomic hyperreflexia
AI	aortic insufficiency
ALCAPA	anomalous left coronary artery from pulmonary artery
ALT	alanine aminotransferase (SGPT)
AOVM	angiographically occult vascular malformations
A-P	anterior-posterior
AR	aortic regurgitation
ARDS	adult respiratory distress syndrome
AS	aortic stenosis
ASA	American Society of Anesthesiologists
ASD	atrial septal defect
AST	aspartate amino transferase (SGOT)
ATG	antithymocyte globulin
ATLS	Advanced Trauma Life-Support
AV	arteriovenous
A-V	atrioventricular
AVF	arteriovenous fistula
AVM	arteriovenous malformation
AVN	avascular necrosis
AVR	aortic valve replacement
BAEP	brainstem auditory evoked potential
BAER	brainstem auditory evoked response
BB	bronchial blocker
BBS	bilateral breath sounds
BD	balloon dilation
BE	base excess
β-HCG	β-human chorionic gonadotrophin
BMI	body mass index
BMR	basal metabolic rate
BCNU	chemotherapy agent
BOR	branchio-oto-renal (syndrome)
BP	blood pressure
BPD	bronchopulmonary dysplasia
BPF	bronchopleural fistula
bpm	beats per minute
BRCA	breast cancer gene
BSA	body surface area
BSO	bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
B-T	Blalock-Taussig (operation)
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
BVH	biventricular hypertrophy
Bx	biopsy
C-section	cesarean section
C-spine	cervical spine
Ca^{++}	calcium
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft(ing)
CAD	coronary artery disease
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia
CAJ	cricoarytenoid joint
CBC	complete blood count
CBF	cerebral blood flow
CBV	cerebral blood volume
CCAM	congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation
CCU	coronary care unit
CD	Crohn's disease
CDDP	cisplatin
CDH	congenital diaphragmatic hernia
CEA	carotid endarterectomy
CHD	congestive heart disease
CHF	congestive heart failure
CI	cardiac index
CK	creatine kinase
CLO	congenital lobar overdistension
cm	centimeter
CMC	carpometacarpal (joint)
cmH_2O	centimeters of water
$CMRO_2$	cerebral O_2 consumption
CN	cranial nerve
CNS	central nervous system
CO	cardiac output
CO_2	carbon dioxide
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CP	cerebral palsy
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure
CPB	cardiopulmonary bypass
CPD	citrate-phosphate-dextrose
CPK	creatine phosphokinase
CPM	continuous passive motion
CPP	cerebral perfusion pressure

Cr	creatinine
CRI	chronic renal insufficiency
CRT	cardiac resynchronization therapy
CSE	combined spinal-epidural
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
CSI	cranial spinal irradiation
CT	computed tomography
CTR	carpal tunnel release
CTS	carpal tunnel syndrome
CUSA	Cavitron ultrasonic surgical aspirator
CV	cardiovascular
CVA	cerebrovascular accident
CVP	central venous pressure
CXR	chest x-ray
d	day(s)
D5W	dextrose 5% in water
D&C	dilation and curettage
D&E	dilation and evacuation
DBP	diastolic blood pressure
DC	direct current
D/C	discontinue
DCR	dacryocystorhinostomy
DDAVP	desmopressin acetate
DFT	defibrillation threshold
DHCA	deep hypothermic circulatory arrest
DI	diabetes insipidus
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DIP	distal interphalangeal (joint)
DJD	degenerative joint disease
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis
dL	deciliter(s)
DL	direct laryngoscopy
DL_{CO}	carbon monoxide diffusion capacity
DLT	double lumen tube
DM	diabetes mellitus
DO_2	oxygen delivery
DOE	dyspnea on exertion
DORV	double outlet right ventricle
DP	dorsalis pedis
DPG	diphosphoglycerate angiography
dTC	d-tubocurarine
DTR	deep tendon reflex
DVT	deep venous thrombosis
Dx	diagnosis
EA	esophageal atresia
EAC	endoaortic clamp catheter
EACA	epsilon aminocaproic acid
EARC	endoaortic return cannula
EB	epidermolysis bullosa
EBL	estimated blood loss
EBV	estimated blood volume
EC-IC	extracranial-intracranial
ECG	electrocardiogram
ECHO	echocardiogram
ECMO	extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy
ED	emergency department
EDAS	encephaloduro-arteriosynangiosis
EEA	end-to-end anastomosis
EEG	electroencephalogram
EF	ejection fraction
EJ	external jugular
EMG	electromyogram
EMLA	eutectic mixture of local anesthetic
ENT	ear-nose-throat
EP	evoked potentials
EPS	electrophysiologic studies
EPV	endopulmonary vent
ER	emergency room
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
ERV	expiratory reserve volume
ESC	endocoronary sinus catheter
ESLD	end-stage liver disease
ESRD	end-stage renal disease
ESS	endoscopic sinus surgery
ET	endotracheal
$ETCO_2$	end tidal CO_2
ETN_2	end tidal N_2
ETOH	alcohol
ETT	endotracheal tube
EVD	endovascular drain (extraventricular catheter)
FAP	familial adenomatous polyposis
FAST scan	focused assessment by sonography for trauma
FB	foreign bodies
FDP	flexor digitorum profundus (tendon)
FDS	flexor digitorum superficialis (tendon)
FDT	forced duction test
FESS	functional endoscopic sinus surgery
FEV_1	forced expiratory volume (in 1 sec)
FFP	fresh-frozen plasma
FHR	fetal heart rate
FIGO	International Federation of Gynecology & Obstetrics
FiO_2	fraction of inspired oxygen
FNA	fine needle aspiration
FOB	fiberoptic bronchoscopy
FOI	fiberoptic intubation
FOL	fiberoptic laryngoscopy
Fr	French (size)
FRC	functional residual capacity
FSP	fibrin-split products
FTSG	full-thickness skin graft
FTT	failure to thrive
FVC	forced vital capacity

g	gram(s)
ga	gauge
GA	general anesthesia
GCS	Glasgow coma scale
GE	gastroesophageal
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
GETA	general endotracheal anesthesia
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GGTP	liver enzyme
GH	growth hormone
GI	gastrointestinal
GIA	gastrointestinal anastomosis
GIFT	gamete intrafallopian transfer
GM-CSF	granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor
Gn-RH	gonadotropin-releasing hormone
GSW	gunshot wound
GTD	gestational trophoblastic disease
GU	genitourinary
h	hour(s)
HA	headache
H&P	history and physical examination
Hb	hemoglobin
Hb/Hct	hemoglobin/hematocrit
HbA	adult hemoglobin
HbF	fetal hemoglobin
HCC	hepatocellular carcinoma
HCG	human chorionic gonadotropin
HCO_3	bicarbonate
Hct	hematocrit
HELLP	hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low-platelet count
HFV	high-frequency ventilation
Hg	mercury
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HLHS	hypoplastic left heart syndrome
HM	hyoid myotomy
Ho	holmium-yag laser
HPV	hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstrictive (reflex)
HR	heart rate
HSV	highly selective vagotomy
HTN	hypertension
HVA	homovanillic acid
Hx	history
IABP	intraaortic balloon pump
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease
IC	inspiratory capacity
ICD	implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
ICP	intracranial pressure
ICU	intensive care unit
ID	inside diameter
IE	inspiratory:expiratory
IgE	immunoglobin E
IHSS	idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis
I.I.	image intensifier
IIC	intermediate intensive care
IJ	internal jugular (vein)
im	intramuscular
IMA	internal mammary artery
IMF	intermaxillary fixation
iMRI	interventional magnetic resonance imaging
INH	isonicotinic acid (isoniazid)
INR	International Normalized Ratio
IOFB	intraocular foreign body
IOL	intraocular lens
IOP	intraocular pressure
IORT	intraoperative radiation therapy
IPAA	ileal pouch and anastomosis
IPG	implantable generator
IPPV	intermittent positive pressure ventilation
IRDS	infant respiratory distress syndrome
ISS	injury severity score
IT	iliotibial
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
IUP	intrauterine pressure
iv or IV	intravenous
IVC	inferior vena cava
IVF	in vitro fertilization
IVH	intraventricular hemorrhage
IVP	intravenous pyelogram
IVS	intact ventricular septum
J	Joule
JET	junctional ectopic tachycardia
JI	jejunoileal
JVD	jugular venous distention
K^+	potassium
KCl	potassium chloride
kg	kilogram(s)
L	liter
LA	left atrium
LAD	left anterior descending
LAE	left atrial enlargement
LAP	left atrial pressure
LAVH	laparoscopy-assisted vaginal hysterectomy
LBBB	left bundle branch block
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LE	lower extremity

LEEP	loop electrosurgical excision procedure
LFT	liver function test
LGL	Lown-Ganong-Levine (syndrome)
LH-RH	luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone
LHSV	laparoscopic highly selective vagotomy
LIMA	left internal mammary artery
LINAC	linear accelerator
LLETZ	large loop excision of transformation zone
LLQ	left lower quadrant
LMA	laryngeal mask airway
LMG	laser midline glossectomy
LMP	last menstrual period
LP	lumbar puncture
LR	lactated Ringer's (solution)
LRD	living related donor
LSC	laparoscope approach
LTA	lidocaine tracheal anesthesia
LUQ	left upper quadrant
LV	left ventricle/ventricular
LVAD	left ventricular assist device
LVEDP	left ventricular end-diastolic pressure
LVEF	left ventricular ejection fraction
LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy
LVOT	left ventricular outflow tract
LVOTO	left ventricular outflow tract obstruction
LVRS	lung volume reduction surgery
m	meter(s)
M	molar
MAC	monitored anesthesia care
MAGPI	meatal advancement glanuloplasty
MAO-B	monoamine oxidase-B
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor (antidepressant)
MAP	mean arterial pressure
MAPCAS	major aortopulmonary collaterals
MCA	middle cerebral artery
MCKD	medullary cystic kidney disease
MDI	multidirectional instability
MEA	multiple endocrine adenopathy
MED	microendoscopic lumbar discectomy
MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia
MEP	motor-evoked potential
mEq	milliequivalent
mEqK^+	milliequivalency of potassium
metHb	methemoglobin
mg	milligram(s)
Mg^{++}	magnesium
$MgSO_4$	magnesium sulfate
MH	malignant hyperthermia
MI	myocardial infarction
MICAB	minimally invasive coronary artery bypass
MICABG	minimally invasive coronary artery bypass graft(ing)
μg	microgram(s)
MIDCAB	minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass
MIDCABG	minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass graft(ing)
MIF	maximum inspiratory flow
min	minute(s)
mL	milliliter(s)
MLT	microlaryngeal tube
mm	millimeter(s)
$MMEF_{25-75}$	maximum mid-expiratory flow
mmHg	millimeters of mercury
mo	month(s)
MOGA	mandibular osteotomy and genioglossal advancement
MR	mitral regurgitation
MRA	magnetic resonance angiography
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MRSA	methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus
MRT	magnetic resonance-guided therapy
MS	mitral stenosis
MUF	modified ultrafiltration
MUGA	multigated acquisition (scan)
MUPIT	Martinez Universal Perineal Interstitial Template
MV	minute ventilation; mitral valve
MVA	motor vehicle accident
MVD	microvascular decompression
MVO_2	mixed venous oxygen content
MVP	mitral valve prolapse
Na^+	sodium
$NaHCO_3$	sodium bicarbonate
NB	nota bene (note well)
NdYAG	neodymium-yag laser
NEC	necrotizing enterocolitis
ng	nanogram(s)
NG	nasogastric (tube)
NIBP	noninvasive blood pressure
NICU	neonatal intensive care unit
NIF	negative inspiratory force
nl	normal
NLD	nasolacrimal duct
NMB	neuromuscular blocker
NMR	nondepolarizing muscle relaxant
NO	nitric oxide
NOE	naso-orbital ethmoid
NPH	neutral protamine Hagedorn (insulin)
npo	nothing by mouth
NS	normal saline
NSAID	nonsteroid anti-inflammatory drug
NS/LR	normal saline/lactated Ringer's (solution)
NSR	normal sinus rhythm
NTE	not to exceed
NTG	nitroglycerin

NTP	nitroprusside
N_2O	nitrous oxide
N/V	nausea & vomiting
OA	osteoarthritis
OATS	osteochondral autograft transfer system
OCR	oculocardiac reflex
OD	outside diameter
OEIS	omphalocele exstrophy imperforate anus spinal defect
OG	orogastric (tube)
OLV	one-lung ventilation
OPCAB	off-pump coronary artery bypass
OPCABG	off-pump coronary artery bypass graft(ing)
OPLL	ossification of the posterior longitudinal ligament
OR	operating room
ORIF	open reduction and internal fixation
ORR	oculorespiratory reflex
OSA	obstructive sleep apnea
O_2	oxygen
O_2 sat	oxygen saturation
P	pulse
PA	pulmonary artery
$PaCO_2$	partial pressure of CO_2 (arterial)
PACU	post anesthesia care unit
PAD	pulmonary artery diastolic
PADP	pulmonary artery diastolic pressure
PAK	pancreas after kidney (transplant)
PAOP	pulmonary artery occlusion pressure
PaO_2	partial pressure of oxygen (arterial)
PAP	pulmonary artery pressure
PAR	postanesthesia room
PAWP	pulmonary artery wedge pressure
PCA	patient-controlled analgesia
PCEA	patient-controlled epidural analgesia
PCL	posterior cruciate ligament
PCO_2	partial pressure of carbon dioxide
PCV	parietal cell vagotomy
PCWP	pulmonary capillary wedge pressure
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
PDPH	postdural puncture headache
PE	pulmonary embolus
PEEP	positive end-expiratory pressure breathing
PEF	peak expiratory flow
PET	positron emission tomography
$PetCO_2$	end-tidal CO_2 partial pressure
PFNS	preservative-free normal saline
PFO	patent foramen ovale
PFT	pulmonary function test
PGE	prostaglandin E
PICC	peripherally inserted central catheter
PICU	pediatric intensive care unit
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PIH	pregnancy-induced hypertension
PIP	peak inspiratory pressure
PKP	penetrating keratoplasty
PLIF	posterior lumbar interbody fusion
Plt	platelet
PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea
po	by mouth
POC	product of conception
POD	postoperative day
PONV	postoperative nausea & vomiting
POOP	perineal one-stage operative pull-through
POPE	postobstructive pulmonary edema
PO_2	partial pressure of oxygen
PPH	postpartum hemorrhage
PPI	proton pump inhibitor
ppm	parts per million
PPTL	postpartum tubal ligation
PPV	positive pressure ventilation
pr	per rectum
PRBC	packed red blood cell
prn	as needed
PS	pulmonic stenosis
PSARP	perineal sagittal anorectoplasty
PT	prothrombin time
PTCA	percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty
PTM	posterior tibial muscle
PTS	post-tourniquet syndrome
PTT	partial thromboplastin time
PUD	peptic ulcer disease
PUV	posterior urethral valve
PVA	polyvinyl alcohol
PVB	paravertebral block
PVC	premature ventricular contraction
PVD	peripheral vascular disease
PVOD	pulmonary vascular occlusive disease
PVR	pulmonary vascular resistance
q	query
qd	every day
Q_P/Q_S	pulmonary-to-systemic flow ratio
QRS	QRS complex of ECG
qs	quantum satis (sufficient quantity)
RA	radial artery
RAD	right axis deviation
RAE	right atrial enlargement
RAP	right atrial pressure
RAST	radioallergosorbent test
RBBB	right bundle branch block

RBC	red blood cell
RC	rotator cuff
RCA	right coronary artery
RDS	respiratory distress syndrome
RF	radiofrequency
RFA	radiofrequency ablation
RFT	renal function test
RIND	reversible ischemic neurological deficit
RLQ	right lower quadrant
r/o	rule out
ROM	range of motion
ROP	retinopathy of prematurity
RR	respiratory rate
RSD	reflex sympathetic dystrophy
RSI	rapid-sequence induction
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus
RUE	right upper extremity
RUQ	right upper quadrant
RV	right ventricle
RVE	right ventricular enlargement
RVEDP	right ventricular end-diastolic pressure
RVESV	right ventricular end-systolic volume
RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy
RVOT	right ventricular outflow tract
RVOTO	right ventricular outflow tract obstruction
Rx	treatment
SA	sinoatrial (node)
SAB	subarachnoid block
SAD	subacromial decompression
SAH	subarachnoid hemorrhage
SAM	systolic anterior motion
SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis
SBO	small-bowel obstruction
SBP	systolic blood pressure
sc	subcutaneous
SCD	sequential compression device
SCFE	slipped capital femoral epiphysis
SCT	sacrococcygeal teratoma
sec	second(s)
SGOT	serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase
SGPT	serum glutamate pyruvate transaminase
SI	sacroiliac
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
SICU	surgical intensive care unit
sl	sublingual
SLAP	superior labral anterior to posterior
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
SLH	subtotal laparoscopic hysterectomy
SMA	superior mesenteric artery
SMV	superior mesenteric vein
SNP	sodium nitroprusside
SOB	short(ness) of breath
S/P	status post
SPK	simultaneous kidney/pancreas (transplant)
SpO_2	oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximetry
SSA	sickle cell anemia
SSEP	somatosensory evoked potential
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
SSS	sick sinus syndrome
S-T	wave of ECG
ST-T	ST-T wave of ECG
STA	superficial temporal artery
STP	sodium thiopental
STSG	split-thickness skin graft
SV	stroke volume
SVC	superior vena cava
S_vO_2	venous O_2 saturation
SVR	systemic vascular resistance
SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
Sx	signs and symptoms
Sz	seizure
T	temperature
T&C	type and cross-match
T&S	type and screen
T/A	tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy
TAAA	thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm
TAB	therapeutic abortion
TAH	total abdominal hysterectomy
TAPVC	total anomalous pulmonary venous connection
TB	tuberculosis
TBI	total body irradiation
TBSA	total body surface area
TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
TCD	transcranial Doppler
TE	tangential excision
TEA	thromboendarterectomy
TEE	transesophageal echocardiogram(graphy)
TEF	tracheoesophageal fistula
TEG	thromboelastogram
TET	tubal embryo transfer
TGA	transposition of the great arteries
TGV	transposition of the great veins
TIA	transient ischemic attach
TID	3 times per day
TIPS	transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt
TIVA	total intravenous anesthesia
TKO	to keep open
TL	thoracolumbar
TLC	total lung capacity
TLH	total laparoscopic hysterectomy
TLIF	transforaminal lumbar interbody fusion

TMJ	temporomandibular joint
TMJD	temporomandibular joint dysfunction
TOF	tetralogy of Fallot, train of force
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TR	tricuspid regurgitation
TRAM	transverse rectus abdominus muscle (flap)
TSA	total shoulder arthroplasty
TSH	thyroid-stimulating hormone
TT	thrombin time
TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
TUMT	transurethral microwave thermotherapy
TUNA	transurethral needle ablation
TUR	transurethral resection
TURBT	transurethral resection of bladder tumor
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
TUVP	transurethral vaporization of the prostate
TV	tidal volume
TVOR	transvaginal oocyte retrieval
TVT	tension-free vaginal tape procedure
TW airway	Tudor Williams airway
TWR	total wrist replacement
Tx	transplant
U	unit(s)
UA	urinalysis
UAC	umbilical artery catheter
UBC	unicameral bone cyst
UC	ulcerative colitis
UE	upper extremity
UO	urine output
UPJ	ureteropelvic junction
UPPP	uvulopalatopharyngoplasty
URI	upper respiratory infection
US	ultrasound
UTI	urinary tract infection
UVC	umbilical vein catheter
UW	University of Wisconsin (solution)
V&A	vagotomy and antrectomy
V&P	vagotomy and pyloroplasty
VA	ventriculoatrial
VAE	venous air embolism
VALH	vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy
VAT	video-assisted thoracoscopy
VATS	video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery
VBG	vertical banded gastroplasty
VC	vital capacity
Vd	volume of distribution
VF	ventricular fibrillation
VIP	vasoactive intestinal peptide
VIP-oma	vasoactive intestinal peptide-secreting tumor
VLAP	visual laser ablation of the prostate
VMA	vanillylmandelic acid
VO_2	oxygen consumption
VP	ventriculoperitoneal
VPI	velopharyngeal insufficiency
V/Q	ventilation-perfusion ratio
VRE	vancomycin-resistant enterococci
VS	vital signs
VSD	ventricular septal defect
VT	ventricular tachycardia
VUR	vesicoureteral reflux
WBC	white blood cell
WPW	Wolff-Parkinson-White (syndrome)
W/U	work-up
XRT	x-ray therapy
yr	year(s)

INDEX

INDEX

Note: Page numbers followed by *f* indicate figures; page numbers followed by *t* indicate tabular material.

A

Abbe–Estlander flap, 1458, 1459*f*
Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA)
  endovascular stent-grafting, 412–416
  surgery of, 428–433, 429*f*, 430*f*
Abdominal approach, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Abdominal colpopexy, 812
Abdominal dehiscence, repair of, 655–658
Abdominal hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Abdominal surgery, 1116–1120, 1116*f*, 1117*f*
Abdominal trauma
  anesthetic issues, 751–754
  hepatic and splenic injuries, 747–749, 748*f*
  laparotomy, exploratory/staging, 640–645, 640*f*
  surgery for damage control, 745–747
  vascular injuries, 749–751
Abdominal tumors, pediatric, 1316–1319, 1317*f*
Abdominal wall defects, 1327–1331, 1328*f*
Abdominoplasty, 1116–1120, 1116*f*, 1117*f*
Abortion
  dilation and curettage (D&C), 802–803, 803*f*, 805–807
  therapeutic, and dilatation and evacuation (D&E), 803–807, 804*f*
Abscess
  biopsy/drainage of, 1081–1085
  drainage of subphrenic, 649–650, 649*f*
  incision/drainage of neck, pediatric, 1222–1224
Acetabular augmentation, 1404–1405, 1426–1431
Acetabular dysplasia, 1011–1012, 1011*f*, 1014–1018
Acetabulum fractures, open reduction and internal fixation, 1008–1010, 1008*f*, 1009*f*, 1014–1018
Acetaminophen, E–1
Acetylcholine antagonists, 75
Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, drug interactions, F–1
Achalasia
  esophagomyotomy, 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498
  laparoscopic Heller"s myotomy, antireflux, 588–589, 591–594
  VATS, 326–329
Achilles tendon
  lengthening, 1070, 1083–1085
  repair, 1048–1052
Achondroplasia, anesthesia issues, 1431
Acoustic neuromas, 250
Acromegaly, transsphenoidal resection, 52–57, 53*f*
Acromial impingement, 960–963, 961*f*, 962*f*, 966–968
Acromioclavicular joint
  arthritis, 960–963, 961*f*, 962*f*, 966–968
  separation, 973–974, 976–978
ACTH-secreting tumor, transsphenoidal resection, 52–57, 53*f*
Acupuncture, H–1–H–2, H–2*f*
Adductor release/transfer, 1409–1410, 1426–1431
Adenoidectomy, 207–211, 208*f*
  pediatric, 1212–1215
Adenoma
  laparoscopic adrenalectomy, 599–601, 599*f*
  rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Adenomyosis, laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
Adenosine, 10
Adjustable gastric banding, 611
Adnexal mass, 865–867
Adrenalectomy
  laparoscopic, 599–601, 599*f*, 685–686
  procedures, 683–691, 683*f*–684*f*, 686*f*
Adrenergics/sympathomimetics, drug interactions, F–1
Aganglionosis, congenital, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
Airway
  control, ABC"s of, 728
  laser surgery, 324–326
  and lung access conflicts, 278
  otolaryngology management, 178
Airway fire, 186
Airway management and assessment
  cricothyrotomy, 729, 729*f*
  initial, 728–730, 729*f*
  intubation, orotracheal and nasotracheal, 729
  pediatric, 754–756, 755*f*
  tracheostomy, 730
Airway obstruction, 1217–1220
Alarplasty, 1101
Alfentanil, drug interactions, F–1
Aliskirin, drug interactions, F–1, F–9
All-arterial revascularization, 354
Alpha blockers, drug interactions, F–9
Alpha-beta blockers, drug interactions, F–9
Altemeier procedure, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Alteplase, drug interactions, J–1
Alveolar microlithiasis, 340–343
Alveolar proteinosis, pulmonary, 340–343
Amantadine, 75
American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) concensus statement, A–5
Aminoglycosides, drug interactions, F–1
Amiodarone, drug interactions, F–1, F–9
Amphetamines, drug interactions, F–1
Amputations
  above the knee, 1070–1075
  ankle, 1066–1068, 1066*f*, 1067*f*, 1083–1085
  around hip and pelvis, 1014–1018
  below the knee, 1072–1075, 1072*f*
  common areas for lower leg, 1067*f*
  Guillotine, 1073
  Syme, 1066–1068, 1066*f*, 1067*f*, 1083–1085
  transmetatarsal, 1068–1069
Amygdalohippocampectomy, 84
Anal fistulotomy/fistulectomy/fistula plug, 554–556, 559–561
Analgesia
  emergence, B–4
  epidural, C–3–C–5
  multimodality, C–1–C–2, C–1*t*
  new paradigm, C–2, C–2*t*
  pediatric, E–4–E–8
  preemptive, C–2
Anastomosis
  choledochal cyst with, 578–581
  end-to-end, 904
  small bowel resection with, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
Anderson–Heinz (Hynes) pyeloplasty, 895–899, 896*f*
  pediatric, 1359–1362, 1359*f*
Anemia, laparoscopic splenectomy for hemolytic, 595–598, 595*f*, 596*f*
Anesthetic management protocols
  adult, B–1–B–8
  pediatric, B–6, D–1–D–5
Aneurysmectomy, left ventricular, 360–361
Aneurysms
  abdominal aorta, surgery of, 428–433, 429*f*, 430*f*
  dissecting, 416–421
  endovascular stent-grafting aortic aneurysm, 412–416
  giant intracranial, 11–14
  intracranial, 4–11
  therapy, 1490–1495, 1491*f*
  thoracic aortic, repair of, 409–411
  thoracoabdominal aorta, repair of, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
Angiographically occult vascular malformations (AOVMs), 17–22
Angiography, 1489–1496
Angioplasty
  balloon, 1489, 1490

cerebral revascularization, 1491–1495
Angiotensin-receptor-blockers, drug interactions, F–9
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, drug interactions, F–9
Anisomelia, congenital/acquired, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431
Ankle
amputation, 1066–1068, 1066*f*, 1067*f*, 1083–1085
arthrodesis, 1064–1065, 1083–1085
arthroscopy, 1061–1063, 1062*f*, 1083–1085
arthrotomy, 1063–1064, 1083–1085
fractures, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1059–1060, 1083–1085
ligaments, repair/reconstruction of, 1065–1066, 1083–1085
Annuloplasty, 369
Anorectal surgery, 554, 559–561
Antecolic approach, laparoscopic bariatric surgery, 612
Anterior capsule-labral repair, 958–960, 966–968
Anterior cervical discectomy, 100
Anterior cervicothoracic spinal surgery, 107–108
Anterior cranial base surgery, 235–236, 235*f*
Anterior fusion/fixation
of mid and lower cervical spine, 100–103
of upper cervical spine, 94–96
Anterior horizontal partial laryngectomy, 203, 203*f*
Anterior instrumentation, 120
Anterior lumbar interbody fusion (ALIF), 119–120
Anterior lumbar/lumbosacral spinal surgery, 119–122, 119*f*, 127–130
Anterior mediastinotomy procedure, 309
Anterior orbitotomy, 170
Anterior pelvic exenteration. *See* Pelvic exenteration
Anterior screw-plate fixation, 100
Anterior spinal reconstruction and fusion of thoracic and thoracolumbar spine, 988–991, 989*f*, 990*f*, 997–1000
Anterolateral retroperitoneal approach, lumbar sympathectomy, 439–442, 440*f*, 448–450
Anthracyclines, drug interactions, F–1
Antibiotic therapy, permanent vascular access, 453–456
Anticytokines, drug interactions, F–9–F–10
Antiemetics
pediatric, E–4
prophylaxis, 180
Antigout agents, drug interactions, F–10
Anti-Parkinsonian medications, drug interactions, F–10
Antipsychotic agents, drug interactions, F–10
Antireflux, laparoscopic Heller"s myotomy, 588–589, 591–594
Antiseizure meds, drug interactions, F–10
Anus, imperforate, 1335–1337
Aorta
arch, 409–411
ascending, 409–411, 416–421
chest trauma and repair of, 740–741
coarctation of, 1248–1252, 1248*f*
descending, 409–411, 416–421
Aortic aneurysms
abdominal aorta, surgery of, 428–433, 429*f*, 430*f*
endovascular stent-grafting of, 412–416
repair of thoracic, 409–411
thoracoabdominal aorta, repair of, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
Aortic dissections
classification systems, 417*f*
repair of acute, 416–421
Aortic insufficiency, 361–364
Aortic stenosis (AS), 361–364
Aortic valve replacement, 361–364
Aortic valvuloplasty, 1489–1490
Aortoiliac occlusive disease, 429
Apert syndrome, 1178–1181, 1431, 1436
Appendectomy, 863*f*, 864, 865
endometriosis, 863*f*, 864, 865
laparoscopic, 521, 605–608, 606*f*, 760–763, 760*f*
open, 521–523, 522*f*, 524–525
Appendicitis, 521–523, 522*f*, 524–525, 605–608, 606*f*
Aprepitant fosaprepitant, drug interactions, F–1
Aprotinin, drug interactions, F–2
Arachnoid cyst
skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*, 250*f*, 251*f*, 252*f*, 253*f*, 254*f*, 255*f*
ventriculoscopy and third ventriculostomy, 1190–1194, 1191*f*
Aripiprazole, drug interactions, F–2
Arm surgery, 978–980, 979*f*
flabbiness/bat-wing, 1114–1116
microsurgery replantation, 1152–1155
Armodafinil, drug interactions, F–2
Arnold–Chiari malformations. *See* Chiari malformation
Arsenic trioxide, drug interactions, F–2
Arterial embolectomy, 435–439
Arteriotomy, 134
Arteriovenous access for hemodialysis, 451–453, 451*f*, 452*f*, 455–456
Arteriovenous fistulas (AVFs)
embolization, 1490, 1492–1495
Arteriovenous malformations (AVMs), 17–22
craniotomy for, 17–22, 18*f*, 19*f*, 22*f*
embolization, 1490, 1492–1495
pediatric, 1194–1195
Arthritis, posttraumatic
glenohumeral shoulder arthroplasty, 969–973, 969*f*
wrist arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
Arthritis, rheumatoid
acromioclavicular joint, 960–963, 961*f*, 962*f*, 966–968
Darrach procedure, 928–929, 928*f*, 936–938
glenohumeral shoulder arthroplasty, 969–973, 969*f*
hip, 1019, 1021
joint arthroplasty, 931–932, 936–938
juvenile, 1431
knee, 1038–1039, 1046
tenosynovectomy, 929–931, 930*f*, 936–938
transoral/transnasal approach to the cervicomedullary junction and odontoid, 50–52, 50*f*, 51*f*, 54–57
wrist arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
wrist replacement, total, 934–938
Arthritis, septic, 1431
Arthrodesis
ankle, 1064–1065, 1083–1085
distal interphalangeal, 942–943
foot, 1423–1431
hip, 1021–1022, 1022*f*, 1023–1026
joint, 931–932, 936–938
knee, 1039–1041
sacroiliac joint, 1012–1018
wrist, 932–934, 936–938
Arthrogryposis, 1431
Arthroplasty
carpometacarpal joint fusion/arthroplasty/stabilization, 935–938
glenohumeral shoulder, 969–972, 969*f*
hip, 1018–1020, 1018*f*, 1023–1026
joint, 931–932, 936–938
knee, 1038–1039
Arthroscopy
ankle, 1061–1063, 1062*f*, 1083–1085
glenohumeral shoulder, 969–973, 969*f*
knee, 1046–1047
shoulder, 958–960, 966–968
temporomandibular joint, 270–271, 270*f*
wrist, 946–949
Arthrotomy
ankle, 1063–1064, 1083–1085
hip, 1023
knee, 1047–1053
temporomandibular joint, 270–271, 270*f*
Arytenoid adduction, 197, 199
Ascites, portal hypertension, 444–450
Asian eyelid lift, 1097–1101, 1098*f*

Aspirin, drug interactions, F–11
Assisted reproductive technologies (ART), 815–819
Asthma, bronchopulmonary lavage, 340–343
Asymmetric septal hypertrophy, 372–375
Atherosclerosis
  thoracic aortic aneurysm repair, 409–411
  thoracoabdominal aorta, aneurysms repair of, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
Atlantoaxial fusion/fixation, 96–97
Atorvastatin, drug interactions, F–2
Atracurium, drug interactions, F–2
Atrial fibrillation (AF), 1495–1498
  catheter ablation, 1502–1506
Atrial flutter, 1495–1498
Atrial septal defect (ASD), 1232–1236, 1233*f*, 1490
Atrial septectomy, 1262
Atrial switch, 1262
Atrioventricular canal defect, surgery, 1237–1240, 1237*f*
Augmentation cystoplasty, 903–906
Augmentation mammoplasty, 1108–1109, 1108*f*, 1113–1114
Aural atresia, otologic/neurotologic surgery, 244–248, 244*f*, 245*f*
AVMs. *See* Arteriovenous malformations (AVMs)
Awake craniotomies, 30, 34–36, 35*f*
Axillary dissection, 664–667
Axillary thoracotomy and high transthoracic thoracotomy, 107
Azole antifungals, drug interactions, F–2
Azzollina bidirectional cavopulmonary anastomosis, 1270–1271

B

Bailey–Dubow rod system, 1417
Balanced anesthesia
  adult, maintenance techniques, B–3
  pediatric, maintenance techniques, D–3
Balloon angioplasty, 1489, 1490
Balloon atrial septostomy, 1262
Balloon compression, 89
Balloon dilatation with stent replacement, 1249
Balloon-tipped catheter, one-lung ventilation, pediatric, 1298
Bankart repair, 958, 964
Banks–Green adductor release/transfer, 1409–1410, 1426–1431
Barbiturates, drug interactions, F–2
Bariatric surgery
  laparoscopic, 611–618, 612*f*
  pediatric, 1350–1354
Barnett ileostomy, 527–530, 529*f*
Barrett"s esophagus, 492–498, 494*f*, 495*f*
Basilar impression, transoral/transnasal approach to, 50–52, 50*f*, 51*f*, 54–57
Bassini repair, 651
Beck's triad, 738
Belsey Mark IV repair, 490–492, 491*f*, 494–498
Benzodiazepines, drug interactions, F–2, F–11
Benztropine, 75
Bernese periacetabular osteotom, 1011, 1011*f*
Beta blockers, drug interactions, A–5, A–6*t*, F–2
Beta-adrenergic blockers, drug interactions, F–11
Bidirectional cavopulmonary anastomosis, 1270–1271
Bifrontal for CSF leak, craniotomy, 47–49, 48*f*
Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO)
  for endometriosis, 862–865, 863*f*
  for ovarian cancer, 760–763, 760*f*
  for uterine cancer, 787–790
  for vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted hysterectomy, 820
Bile duct
  cholecystectomy and exploration of, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
  reconstruction, 710, 711*f*, 712*f*
  tumor, excision of, 577–578, 580–581
Biliary atresia, repair of, 1323–1326, 1324*f*
Biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Biliary stents, 575
Biliary tract surgery
  bile duct tumor, excision of, 577–578, 580–581
  biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
  cholecystectomy and bile duct exploration, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
  choledochal cyst excision/anastomosis, 578–581
Billroth I and II
  gastrectomy, 573
  gastric resection, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
  peptic ulcer disease, 506–510, 507*f*
Biopsies, 978
  abscess/tumor, 1081–1085
  breast, 660–661, 663–664
  excisional, 1080
  incisional, 1080–1081
  leg/foot, 1080–1081, 1083–1085
  needle, 640, 1080
  sentinel lymph node, 661–664, 662*f*
  wedge, 640
Bladder augmentation, pediatric, 1367–1369
Bladder diverticulum, cystectomy, 899–903, 900*f*, 901*f*
Bladder endometriosis, 863–864, 863*f*
Bladder neck operations, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
Bladder operations, open, 903–906
  pediatric, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
Bladder substitution, 899, 901*f*
Blalock–Hanlon septectomy, 1262
Blalock–Park aortic coarctation, 1248
Blalock–Taussig systemic-to-pulmonary artery, 1252, 1270
Blebs/bullae excision, 333–336
Blepharoplasty, 153, 1095–1101, 1095*f*, 1096*f*, 1098*f*
Block–Potts bowel clamps, 531*f*
Blockson vesicostomy, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
Boceprevir, drug interactions, F–2
Bochdalek's hernia, repair of, 1308–1312, 1309*f*
Body lifts, 1120–1121
Bone grafting, 272
  dental, 1571–1572
  from iliac crest, 1060–1061, 1083–1085
  pelvis, 1011–1012, 1011*f*
Botulinum toxin
  drug interactions, F–2
  injection, 588
Bowel resection, laparoscopic, 602–605, 602*f*, 761
Brachial plexus surgery, 974–978, 975*f*
Brachioplasty, 1114–1116
Brachytherapy, 30, 916–917, 916*f*
Bradycardia, 178
Brain disease, stereotactic neurosurgery, 64–68, 68*f*
Brain tumors, craniotomy for, 29–34
  awake, 34–36
  incisions, types of, 29
  intraaxial versus extraaxial, 29*t*
  locations, common, 29*t*
  patient positions, common, 30*t*
Brain tumors, stereotactic neurosurgery, 64–68, 68*f*
Branchial cleft cyst
  pediatric resection of, 1282–1284
  removal of, 1221–1224
Breast cancer
  biopsies, 660–661, 663–664
  mastectomies, 664–667
  sentinel lymph node biopsy, 661–664, 662*f*
Breast reconstruction, 1155–1159, 1156*f*–1158*f*
Breast surgery
  augmentation, 1108–1109, 1108*f*, 1113–1114
  biopsies, 660–661, 663–664
  lift, 1112–1114
  mastectomies, 664–667
  reconstruction, 665, 1108–1114, 1155–1162
  reduction, 1110–1111, 1110*f*, 1113–1114
  sentinel lymph node biopsy, 661–664, 662*f*
Brescia–Cimino fistula, 451, 451*f*
Bristow procedure, 964

Brockenbrough transseptal needle puncture, 1491
Bromocriptine, 75
Bronchial blocker, one-lung ventilation, pediatric, 1298
Bronchiectasis, heart/lung transplant, 469–474
Bronchopleural fistulas (BPFs), thoracoplasty, 299–300, 300*f*, 302–304
Bronchopulmonary lavage, 340–343
Bronchoscopy
  double-lumen tube use of, 278
  flexible, 185, 320
  flexible fiberoptic, 183, 1216
  laser, 320
  pediatric, 1216–1217
  procedure, 182–183, 182*f*, 320–324, 320*f*
  rigid, 182, 186, 320, 1216
Brooke ileostomy, 526–528, 526*f*
Brook's technique, 97, 97*f*
Broviac catheters, 453–454
Browlift, 1095–1101, 1095*f*, 1096*f*, 1098*f*
Budd–Chiari syndrome, 446, 1508–1512
Burch approach, 829
Burns and burn surgery
  anesthetic issues, 1169–1171
  classification of burns, 1169*t*
  facial excision, 1154–1173
  survival rates, 1168*f*
  tangential excision, 1154–1173
Burr hole placement, 38*f*
Buspirone, drug interactions, F–11

C

Calcium channel blockers, drug interactions, F–2, F–11
Caldwell–Luc procedure, 235
Canalplasty, 246
Cancomycin, drug interactions, F–7
Cannulation, CPB, 348
Canthotomy and cantholysis, 155
Capsulectomy, 144
Capsulotomy, 1022
Carbamazepine, drug interactions, F–2
Carbidopa, 75
Cardiac catheterization, pediatric, 1488–1496
Cardiac laceration, 737–739
Cardiac resynchronization therapy defibrillator (CRT-D). *See* Implantation of cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD)
Cardiac rhythm management device, A–4–A–5
Cardiac surgery, 348–382. *See also specific procedures*
  minimally invasive, 384–404
Cardiomyopathy, heart transplant, 464–469
Cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB)
  alpha stat versus pH stat, 351*t*
  coagulation, 353
  description of procedures, 348–354, 349*f*, 350*f*, 351*t*, 354*f*
  full versus partial, 348
  patient preparation, 350
  period, 351
  physiologic response to, 348
  secondary effects of, 348–350
  termination of, 348, 352
  transition onto, 351
  weaning from, 352
Cardiovascular surgery. *See also specific procedures*
  cardiac surgery, 348–382
  heart/lung transplantation, 464–477
  minimally invasive cardiac surgery, 384–404
  vascular surgery, 406–461
Cardiovascular surgery, pediatric atrial septal defect (ostium secundum), 1232–1236, 1233*f*
  atrioventricular canal defect, 1237–1240, 1237*f*
  coarctation of aorta, 1248–1252, 1252*f*
  double-outlet right ventricle, 1274–1276, 1274*f*
  hypoplastic left heart syndrome, 1276–1280, 1277*f*
  patent ductus arteriosus, 1244–1247, 1245*f*
  tetralogy of Fallot, 1252–1258, 1253*f*
  total anomalous pulmonary venous connection, 1258–1262, 1259*f*
  transposition of great arteries, 1262–1266, 1263*f*
  tricuspid atresia, 1270–1273, 1271*f*
  truncus arteriosus, 1267–1270, 1267*f*
  ventricular septal defect, 1241–1244, 1242*f*
Cardioverter-defibrillator, implantation of, 1498–1502
Carotid artery
  chest trauma and repair of, 740–741
  disease, 406–408, 407*f*, 408*f*
  endoscopic sinus surgery complications in, 231
  stenosis, 135
Carotid bifurcation, 407*f*
Carotid endarterectomy (CEA)
  description, 134
  intraoperative considerations, 137–139
  postoperative considerations, 139–140
  preoperative considerations, 136–137
  usual preoperative diagnosis, 135
  variant procedure/approaches, 134–135, 134*f*
  vascular, 406–408, 407*f*, 408*f*
Carpal instability, wrist arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
Carpal tunnel release, 947–949, 947*f*
Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS), 947
Carpometacarpal (CMC) joint fusion/arthroplasty/stabilization, 935–938
Carroll procedure for clubfoot, 1425–1431
Cartilage graft, 1102
Cataract extraction with intraocular lens insertion, 144–146, 144*f*
Cataract surgery, 144
Catatonia, electroconvulsive therapy for, 1484–1489
Catecholamines, drug interactions, F–2
Catheter ablation, atrial fibrillation, 1502–1506
Caudal agenesis, correction of, 1185–1187
Caudal technique, pediatric, D–4, E–2
Causalgia, lumbar sympathectomy, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
Cerebellopontine angle (CPA), 249–257, 249*f*, 250*f*, 251*f*, 252*f*, 253*f*, 254*f*, 255*f*
Cerebral embolectomy, craniotomy for, 15–16, 16*f*
Cerebral infarct, craniotomy for, 4–14, 4*f*
Cerebral palsy, 1431
Cerebral revascularization, 1491–1495
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leaks
  bifrontal craniotomy for, 47–49, 48*f*, 54–57
  brain tumors and drainage, 30
  drainage, 30
  endoscopic approach, 230, 231
  endoscopic sinus surgery complications, 230
  ventricular shunts, 57–61, 58*f*
Cervical approach, tracheal resection, 304–308, 305*f*
Cervical cancer
  hysterectomy, radical, 790–794, 792*f*
  interstitial perineal implants, 796–799, 797*f*
  pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Cervical cerclage, elective and emergent, 851–854
Cervical corpectomy and fusion, 101
Cervical discectomy, anterior, 100–103, 100*f*, 101*f*
Cervical lacerations, repair of, 848–851
Cervical laminectomy, posterior, 103
Cervical lateral mass screw fixation, 104–105
Cervical mediastinoscopy, 309
Cervical pedicle screw plate fixation, 105–106
Cervical spinal surgery
  anesthetic issues, 108–114
  cervicothoracic, anterior, 107–108
  mid and lower, anterior fusion/fixation, 100–103, 100*f*, 101*f*
  mid and lower, posterior fusion/fixation, 103–107, 104*f*, 105*f*
  posterior fusion/fixation, 96–99, 97*f*, 98*f*
  upper, anterior fusion/fixation, 94–96, 94*f*, 95*f*

Cervical spine
injury, intubation options, I–4
reconstruction and fusion of, 995–1001, 997*f*
Cervical stenosis, dilation and curettage (D&C), 802–803, 803*f*, 805–807
Cervical wiring, posterior, 103
Cervicomedullary junction and odontoid, transoral/transnasal approach to, 50–52, 50*f*–51*f*
Cervicothoracic approach, 989
Cervicothoracic junction, 107
Cervix
anesthetic issues for laser therapy to, 776–777
conization of, 773–776, 773*f*
Cesarean section, 834–841, 834*f*
Cessation, CPB, 348
Chamberlain's procedure, 309, 310, 1292
CHARGE syndrome, 1228
Chemotherapy
interstitial, 30
permanent vascular access, 453–456
Cherney rectus muscle detachment, 820
Chest trauma
anesthetic issues, 743–745
pericardial window, tamponade release, cardiac laceration repair, 737–739, 739*f*
pneumonectomy and lobectomy, 741–743
vessels, repair of great, 740–741
Chest x-ray (CXR), preoperative, A–2
Chest-wall
reconstruction, 1160–1162
resection, 293–294
Chiari malformation, 61–68, 62*f*, 68*f*
closure of myelomeningocele, 1181–1184
Chiari osteotomy, 1404–1405, 1404*f*, 1426–1431
Child's procedure, 629
Choanal atresia repair, 1227–1229
Cholangiocarcinoma, bile duct tumor excision, 577–578, 580–581
Cholangiography, 573
laparoscopic cholecystectomy, duct exploration, 589–594, 590*f*
Cholangiohepatitis, oriental, 574–576, 580–581
Cholangitis, bile duct tumor excision, 577–578, 580–581
Cholecystectomy and bile duct exploration, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
laparoscopic, 589–594, 590*f*
Cholecystitis, cholecystectomy and bile duct exploration, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
Cholecystojejunostomy, 575
Choledochal cysts
excision/anastomosis, 578–581
repair of pediatric, 1323–1326, 1324*f*
Choledochoduodenostomy, 575
Choledocholithiasis
biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
cholecystectomy and bile duct exploration, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
Choledochoscopy, 573
Choledochotomy, 573
Cholelithiasis
cholecystectomy and bile duct exploration, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
nonsurgical treatment of, 573
Cholesteatoma, 245
Cholesterol granuloma, skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
Chondrosarcoma, 36
skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
Chordoma, 36
skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
transoral/transnasal approach to, 50–52, 50*f*, 51*f*, 54–57
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)
lung transplant, 344
lung-volume reduction surgery, 336–340
Chronic pain, functional neurosurgery for, 77–80
Chronic serous otitis media (CSOM), myringotomy and tympanostomy tube placement, 1210–1212
Chronic spinal cord stimulation, 77
Cicatricial entropion, 152
Cilostazol, drug interactions, F–11
Cincinnati procedure for clubfoot, 1425–1431
Circulatory arrest with deep hypothermia, 5–11
Circumcision, 1369–1370, 1372–1373
Cisatracurium, doses/duration/onset, B–2–B–3
Claggett procedure, 301
Clamp and suture technique, 290, 290*f*
blebs/bullae excision, 333
Clamshell incision, 278, 279*f*
Clatworthy shunt, 446
Clavicle fractures, 973–974, 976–978
Cleft lip repair
alveolar with bone graft, 1456–1457, 1456*f*, 1460–1462
secondary, 1457–1462, 1458*f*, 1459*f*
unilateral and bilateral, 1447–1450, 1447*f*, 1448*f*, 1449*f*, 1460–1462
Cleft nasal deformities, 1102–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*, 1457–1462
Cleft palate, 1450–1453, 1451*f*, 1452*f*, 1460–1462
Clindamycin, drug interactions, F–3
Clitoroplasty, 1371–1373
CLOACA, 1335–1337
Cloacal exstrophy, 1327–1331, 1328*f*, 1371
Clonidine, drug interactions, F–3, F–11
Clopidogrel, drug interactions, F–11
Closed reduction and external fixation
of femur, 1034–1035
of the pelvis, 1006–1007, 1014–1018
of tibia, 1083–1085
Cloward cervical spine fusion instrumentation, 933
Clozapine, drug interactions, F–11
Clubfoot, 1425–1431
Coagulation test, preoperative, A–4
Coarctation of aorta, 1248–1252, 1252*f*
Cobb angle, 997, 997*f*
Cochlear implantation, 245
Coil occlusion, 1491
Colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
Colestipol, drug interactions, F–11, F–12
Colitis, colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
Colles' fracture, Darrach procedure, 928–929, 928*f*, 936–938
Collett–Edwards truncus arteriosus, 1267–1270, 1267*f*
Colon, anatomy of, 542*f*
Colon cancer, colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
Colon obstruction, 543
Colonic diverticula, 543
Colonic interposition
anesthetic issues, 494–498
esophageal replacement, pediatric, 1305–1307, 1305*f*
esophagectomy, 492–498, 494*f*, 495*f*
Colorectal surgery
anal fistulotomy/fistulectomy/fistula plug, 554–556, 559–561
anorectal, 554, 559–561
colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
fecal incontinence, 558–561
hemorrhoidectomy/stapled hemorrhoidopexy, 556–561
laparoscopic, 538–539
proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
stoma closure/peristomal hernia repair, 545–549
Colostomy, 545–549, 761
pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Colporrhaphy, 812, 824–828, 825*f*
Columellar strut, 1102
Combined anterior and posterior instrumentation, 126
anesthetic issues, 127–130
Combined spinal/epidural (CSE)
cesarean section, 839
dilatation and evacuation (D&E) and dilatation and curettage (D&C), 802–807, 803*f*, 804*f*

hysteroscopy, 807–811, 808*f*
infertility operations and, 817
stress urinary incontinence, 828–832
vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Compartment syndrome of thigh, 1075–1077, 1076*f*, 1079–1080
Composite resection with marginal/segmental mandibulectomy, 217–218
Computed tomography (CT) procedures, 1515–1521
Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformations (CCAM), 1295–1299, 1296*f*
Congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH), 1295–1299, 1296*f*
repair of, 1308–1312, 1309*f*
Congenital lobar overdistention (CLO), 1295–1299, 1296*f*
Congenital muscular torticollis, 1389–1390, 1393–1395
Congenital pseudarthrosis of tibia, 1417–1418, 1426–1431
Congestive heart disease (CHD), heart transplant, 464–469
Congestive heart failure (CHF)
aortic valve replacement, 361–364
asymmetric septal hypertrophy, 372–375
implantation of cardioverter-defibrillator, 1498–1502, 1501*f*
left ventricular aneurysmectomy, 360–361
mitral valve repair/replacement, 365–369
Conivaptan, drug interactions, F–3
Conization of cervix, 773–776, 773*f*
Conjunctival transposition, 157
Conn's disease, laparoscopic adrenalectomy, 599–601, 599*f*
Constrictive pericarditis, 379–382
Continent catheterizable stoma, 1368
Continent ileostomy pouch (Kock), 527–530, 529*f*
proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Corneal transplant, 146–148
Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)
grafting, 384–389, 384*f*–387*f*
minimally invasive, 355–359, 384–389, 384*f*–387*f*
off-pump, 355–359, 384–389, 384*f*–387*f*
procedures, 354–359
Coronary artery circulation, 354*f*
Coronary artery disease (CAD)
heart transplant, 464–469
infrainguinal arterial bypass, 434–437
Coronary artery revascularization, port access, 355
Coronary vein ligation, 447
Corpus callosotomy, 84
Cortical stimulation, 77–80
Corticosteroids, drug interactions, F–3, F–11
Costotransversectomy, 116, 117
Cotrel–Duboussett rods, 1396–1399, 1396*f*, 1397*f*
Crafoord aortic coarctation, 1248
Cranial nerve, microvascular decompression of, 44–47, 45*f*
Cranial spinal irradiation (CSI), 1484
Craniocervical decompression, 61–68, 62*f*, 68*f*
Craniocervical (occipitocervical, craniovertebral) fusion/fixation, 96
Craniofacial malformations
cleft lip repair, alveolar with bone graft, 1456–1457, 1456*f*, 1460–1462
cleft lip repair, secondary, 1457–1462, 1458*f*, 1459*f*
cleft lip repair, unilateral and bilateral, 1447–1450, 1447*f*, 1448*f*, 1449*f*, 1460–1462
craniosynostosis, 1436–1442, 1436*f*
otoplasty, 1462–1465, 1463*f*
palatoplasty, 1450–1453, 1451*f*, 1452*f*, 1460–1462
pharyngoplasty, 1453–1456, 1453*f*, 1454*f*, 1460–1462
Craniofacial surgery
facial fractures, repair of, 1128–1136, 1129*f*–1132*f*
LeFort osteotomies, 1128, 1136–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
mandibular osteotomies, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
pediatric, 1178–1181
procedure, 1442–1446, 1443*f*
Craniopharyngioma, transsphenoidal resection, 52–57, 53*f*
Cranioplasty, 36
Craniosynostosis, 1178–1181, 1436–1442, 1436*f*
Craniotomy
for awake, 34–36, 35*f*
bifrontal for CSF leak, 47–49, 48*f*
for brain tumors, 29–34
for cerebral embolectomy, 15–16, 16*f*
definition, 4
for epilepsy, 84
for extracranial-intracranial revascularization (EC-IC bypass), 23–28, 24*f*
frontal, temporal, and occipital, 84
frontotemporal (pterional), 4–5
for giant intracranial aneurysms, 11–14
for intracranial aneurysms, 4–11, 4*f*, 5*t*
for intracranial vascular malformations, 17–22, 22*f*
middle fossa, 255*f*
operating room setup, 255*f*
posterior fossa, 254*f*
for skull tumor, 36–37
stereotactic, 17
suboccipital, 5
subtemporal, 5
transjugular, 253*f*
for trauma, 37–43, 38*f*, 39*f*, 41*t*
for tumor, 29–34, 29*t*–30*t*
for vein of Galen malformation, 1187–1190
Crawford classification of thoracoabdominal aorta aneurysms and inclusion technique, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
Crawford procedure for clubfoot, 1425–1431
Cricothyroidostomy, needle, 755
Cricothyroidotomy
airway obstruction, 729, 729*f*
procedures, 190–193
surgical in children, 755
Cricothyrotomy, 1574–1576, 1574*f*, 1575*f*, 1576*f*, 1577*f*, 1578, I–4–I–5
Cricotracheal resection, 200–202
pediatric, 1224–1227
Crizotinib, drug interactions, F–3
Crohn's disease
anal fistulotomy/fistulectomy/fistula plug, 554–556, 559–561
colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
Crouzon syndrome, 1178–1181, 1436
Cruciate ligament, arthroscopy, 1046–1047
Cryotherapy, 172
for hemorrhoids, 556
Cryptorchidism, 1340–1341, 1374–1376
Culdoplasty, McCall's, 827
Culdotomy, posterior, 868
Curvilinear/horseshoe-shaped incisions, 29
Cushing's disease
laparoscopic adrenalectomy, 599–601, 599*f*
transsphenoidal resection, 52–57, 53*f*
Cyclophosphamide, drug interactions, F–3
Cyclosporine, drug interactions, F–3
Cystadenomas, Whipple resection, 632–637, 632*f*
Cystectomies
ovarian, 811–812
procedures for simple, partial, and radical, 899–903, 900*f*, 901*f*
Cystic fibrosis
bronchopulmonary lavage, 340–343
heart/lung transplant, 469–474
lung transplant, 344

Cystic hygroma, 1282–1284
Cystic neoplasms, pancreatectomy, 629–631, 629*f*, 630*f*, 634–637
Cystitis, hemorrhagic/interstitial
  cystectomy, 899–903, 900*f*, 901*f*
  cystoscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882
  transurethral resection (TUR), 880–882
Cystocele, repair of, 920–921
Cystoplasty, augmentation, 903–906
Cystoscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882
Cysts
  choledochal, excision/anastomosis, 578–581
  choledochal, pediatric repair, 1323–1326, 1324*f*
  drainage, stereotactic neurosurgery, 64–68, 68*f*
  pediatric resection of branchial cleft/thyroglossal duct, 1282–1284
  removal of branchial cleft/thyroglossal duct, 1221–1224
  skull base surgery and epidermoid/arachnoid, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
  thyroglossal duct, excision of, 670–672, 670*f*, 671*f*, 674–677
Cytoreductive laparotomy, for ovarian cancer, 764–767

D

Da Vinci robotic system, 888
Dabigatran, drug interactions, F–11
Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR), 165–168, 167*f*
Dandy–Walker malformation, 59
Darrach procedure, 928–929, 928*f*, 936–938
  modified, 929
Dasatanib, drug interactions, F–3
Davies lip repair, 1447
DeBastiani limb lengthening, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431
Debridement, 958–960, 966–968, 1046, 1047, 1059, 1061
Decadron, 31
Decompressive laminectomy, 103, 122
Deep brain stimulation (DBS), 73
Deep venous insufficiency, 457–458, 460–461
Delaire mask, 1437
Delayed extubation, I–4
Deliberate relative hypotensive anesthesia, 178
Delorme procedure, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Deltopectoral incision, 978
Dental/oral surgery, 272–273
  anesthetic issues, 274–275
  bone grafting, 1571–1572
  extractions and implants, 272–273
  implants, 1571–1572
  restorative dentistry, 273–275
  sedation, deep IV, in office, 1568–1571
  temporomandibular joint arthroscopy/ arthrotomy, 270–271, 270*f*
Dentoalveolar fractures, 1128
Dentoskeletal dysplasia, 1137–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
Depression, 81
  electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), 1484–1489
  medications used to treat, 1486*t*
Dermal sinus tract, correction of, 1185–1187
Dermoid tumor, 36–37, 40–43
Deviated septum, nasal surgery, 237
Dexamethasone, 13
Dexmedetomidine, 35
Diabetes mellitus (DM)
  infrainguinal arterial bypass, 434–437
  kidney/pancreas transplant, 696–700, 697*f*
Dial osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
Diastematomyelia, correction of, 1185–1187
Difficult airway management, I–1–I–5
Digit replantation, 953–956
  microsurgery replantation, 1152–1155
Digital fasciectomy, 940–941, 943–945
Digoxin, drug interactions, F–3, F–11
Dilatation and evacuation (D&E), 803–807, 804*f*
Dilation and curettage (D&C), 802–803, 803*f*, 805–807
Dipyrimadole, drug interactions, F–11
Direct current (DC) cardioversion, 1495–1498
Direct/extreme lateral interbody fusion (DLIF/XLIF), 125
Discectomy, minimally invasive posterior lumbar, 984–985
Displaced lateral condyle humerus fracture, 1386–1387, 1393–1395
Dissecting aneurysms, 416–421
Distal clavicle resection, 958–960, 966–968
Distal femur fractures, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1029–1030
Distal interphalangeal (DIP)
  arthrodesis, 942–943
  arthroplasty, 931–932, 936–938
Distal tibia, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1059–1060, 1083–1085
Distal ureteral trauma, 1359–1362, 1359*f*
Distraction osteogenesis, 1137–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
Disulfiram, drug interactions, F–3
Diuretics, drug interactions, F–11
Diverticula, colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
Diverticulectomy, esophageal, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*, 494–498
DMARDS, drug interactions, F–11–F–12
Dobutamine, drug interactions, F–3
Dofetilide, drug interactions, F–3
Dohlman procedure, 484
Dolstad modified hysterectomy, 790
Donation after cardiac death, 723
Dopamine, drug interactions, F–3
Dor fundoplication, 585–586
Double-lumen tube (DLT)
  fiber optic bronchoscope to assure positioning, 284*f*
  one-lung ventilation, pediatric, 1298
Double-outlet right ventricle (DORV), 1274–1276, 1274*f*
Drug interaction table, F–1
Duhamel pull-through for Hirschsprung's disease, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
Duodenal ulcer perforation, laparoscopic repair of, 584–585
Duodenotomy, 509–510, 520–521, 521*f*
Duodenum
  gastric resection, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
  perforation, 505–506, 509–510
Dupuytren's contracture, 940–941, 943–945
Dysplasia
  dentoskeletal, 1137–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
  fibrous, 36–37
  hip, 1011–1012, 1011*f*
  Zenker's diverticulectomy, 186, 195–196
Dysrhythmias, implantation of cardioverter-defibrillator, 1498–1502, 1501*f*

E

Ear, nose, throat (ENT) surgery. *See* Otolaryngology
Ears, deformed, 1462–1465, 1463*f*
Ebstein's deformity, 369
Echothiophate iodide, drug interactions, F–3
Ectopic pregnancies, 812, 865–867
Ectropion repair, 151–152, 152*f*
Eisenmenger's syndrome, 469–474
Elbow, tennis, 978
Eldepryl, 75
Electrocardiogram (ECG), preoperative, A–2
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), 1484–1489
Electrophysiologic study (EPS), 1491–1496
  monitoring, 30
Electroporation, irreversible, 1530–1533
Eloesser flap, 301

Embolectomy
arterial, 435–439
Fogarty embolectomy catheter, 443, 443*f*
Embolization, 1490, 1492–1495
Emergence techniques, standards
adult, B–4
pediatric, D–3
Emergency procedures
cricothyrotomy, 1574–1576, 1574*f*, 1575*f*, 1576*f*, 1577*f*, 1578
intraosseous (IO) access, 1586–1588, 1587*f*, 1588*f*
needle/catheter thoracostomy, 1582–1586, 1583*f*, 1584*f*, 1585*f*, 1586*f*
pericardiocentesis, 1578–1582, 1580*f*, 1581*f*
Emphysema
heart/lung transplant, 469–474
lung-volume reduction surgery, 337–340
Empyema
drainage of, 300–304
drainage of, pediatric, 1299–1301
thoracoplasty, 299–300, 300*f*
VATS, 326–329, 327*f*
En bloc dissection, 768–772, 768*f*, 769*f*
pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
En bloc resection, 502
Encephalo-duro-arteriosynangiosis (EDAS), 23
End stage renal failure/disease
arteriovenous access for hemodialysis, 451–453, 451*f*, 452*f*
hemodialysis, 451–453, 451*f*, 452*f*, 455–456
kidney transplants, cadaveric and live-donor, 694–700, 694*f*
kidney/pancreas transplant, 696–700, 697*f*
permanent vascular access, 453–456
End stage valvular heart disease, heart transplant, 464–469
Endarterectomy, carotid. *See also* Carotid endarterectomy (CEA)
vascular, 406–408, 407*f*, 408*f*
Endobronchial ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration (EBUS-TBNA), 315–319, 316*f*
Endocardial cushion defects, 1237*f*, 1238–1240
Endocrine surgery
adrenalectomy, 683–691, 683*f*–684*f*, 686*f*
parathyroidectomy, 678–682, 678*f*, 679*f*
pheochromocytoma, 689–691
thyroglossal duct, excision of, 670–672, 670*f*, 671*f*, 674–677
thyroidectomy, 672–677, 672*f*, 673*f*
Endometrial cancer
exploratory laporatomy, hysterectomy/BSO for, 787–790
hysterectomy, radical, 790–794, 792*f*
Endometrioma, rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Endometriosis
appendectomy, 863*f*, 864, 865
bladder, 864–865
laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
laparoscopic surgery for, 862–865, 863*f*
ovarian, 863
pelvic, 862, 863*f*, 864–865
thoracic, 863*f*, 864, 865
vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Endomyocardial biopsy, 1491
Endorectal advancement flap, 555
Endoscopic biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatogram (ERCP), 573, 590, 1512–1515
Endoscopic sinus surgery (ESS), 229–234
Endoscopic third ventriculostomy (ETV), 59
Endovascular stent
grafting of aortic aneurysms, 412–416
placement, 1490
End-to-side shunt, 445, 445*f*, 446
Enteric fistulae, closure of, 533–536
Enterocele repair, 824–828, 825*f*
Enterocystoplasty, 903–906
Enterolysis, 532–536
Enterostomy, 526–528, 526*f*
Enterovesical fistulas, bladder operations, open, 903–906
Entropion repair, 152–153
Enucleation, 168–169, 168*f*
Enzulatamide, drug interactions, F–3
Eosinophilic granuloma, 36
Ephedrine, bolus, 27
Epidermoid, 36
cyst, skull base surgery, 250, 252
Epidermolysis bullosa, 1431–1434
Epidural anesthesia, pediatric, D–4
Epidural motor cortex stimulation, 77
Epiglottitis, intubation for, 194–195
Epilepsy
asleep-awake-asleep technique, 86
surgery, 83–87
vagal nerve stimulation, 80–82
Epiphrenic diverticulectomy, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*, 494–498
Epiphysiodesis, 1415–1417, 1415*f*, 1426–1431
Epistaxis, 232
Eppright osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
Esophageal atresia (EA), repair of, 1287–1291, 1288*f*
Esophageal diverticulectomy, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*, 494–498
Esophageal fundoplication, laparoscopic, 585–587, 586*f*, 591–594
Esophageal myotomy, 326
anesthetic issues, 494–498
Esophageal perforation
anesthetic issues, 494–498
esophagostomy, 482–483, 483*f*
management of, 487–488
Esophageal replacement, 1305–1307, 1305*f*
Esophageal spasm, 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498
Esophageal surgery, 482–498
anesthetic issues, 494–498
Esophageal transection with stapling, 446, 447
Esophagectomy, 492–498, 494*f*, 495*f*
gastric resection, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
VATS, 326
Esophagogastric fundoplasty, 490–492, 491*f*, 494–498
Esophagogastroduodenoscopy, 1285–1287
Esophagomyotomy, 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498
Esophagoscopy
flexible, 186
flexible fiberoptic, 183, 1216
pediatric, 1216–1217, 1285–1287
rigid, 186, 1216
Esophagostomy
anesthetic issues, 494–498
esophageal perforation, 482–483, 483*f*
Estrogen, drug interactions, F–12
Etomidate, 137
induction, B–2
ETT sizes, D–2
Evisceration, 169
Ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT), 1346–1350
Excision and suture technique, 290–291, 290*f*
Exenteration, 169
pelvic, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Exostoses resection, 245–246
Exstrophy cloaca, 1327–1331, 1328*f*, 1371
Extended iliofemoral approach, 1008, 1009*f*
External sinus surgery, 235–236, 235*f*
Extracapsular technique, 144
Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), 1503–1507, 1504*f*, 1505*f*, 1506*f*
Extracorporeal shock wave lithitripsy (ESWL), 1380
Extracranial-intracranial revascularization (EC-IC bypass), craniotomy for, 23–28, 24*f*
Extrapleural-retroperitoneal approach, 115
Extratemporal epilepsy, 81

Extreme lateral interbody fusion (ELIF), 125
Eye injury, endoscopic sinus surgery complications in, 231. *See also* Ophthalmic surgery
Eyelids. *See also* Ophthalmic surgery
  ectropion repair, 151–152, 152*f*
  entropion repair, 152–153
  lift, 1097–1101, 1098*f*
  ptosis repair, 153–155, 154*f*
  reconstruction, 155–157, 156*f*
Ezetimibe, drug interactions, F–12

F

Face, anatomic layers of, 1091*f*
Facelift, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
Facetectomy, total, 125
Facial bipartition, 1442–1446, 1443*f*
Facial cosmetic/plastic surgery
  blepharoplasty, 240–241, 1095–1101, 1095*f*, 1096*f*, 1098*f*
  browlift (forehead), 1095–1101, 1095*f*, 1096*f*, 1098*f*
  eyelid lift, 1097–1101, 1098*f*
  facelift, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
  laser resurfacing, 1092, 1097
  meloplasty, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
  necklift, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
  rhinoplasty (nose), 238–239, 1101–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
  rhytidectomy, 239–240, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*
Facial deformities, LeFort osteotomies, 1128, 1136–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
Facial fractures, repair of, 1128–1136
Facial nerve, otologic procedures, 246
Facial rejuvenation, 1566–1568
Facial surgery, pediatric craniofacial surgery, 1178–1181
Failure to thrive (FTT), 1253–1257
Fallopian tube cancer, staging laparotomy for, 760–763, 760*f*
Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)
  continent ileostomy pouch (Kock), 527–530, 529*f*
  proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Fascial excision, burns and, 1154–1173
Fasciectomy, palmar and digital, 940–941, 943–945
Fasciotomy
  of leg, 1077–1080, 1078*f*
  Ober, 1405–1407, 1426–1431
  of thigh, 1075–1077, 1076*f*, 1079–1080
Fat filum terminale, correction of, 1185–1187
Fecal incontinence, 558–561
Femoral fractures, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1026–1029
Femoral herniorrhaphy, 653–654, 653*f*, 656–658
Femoral osteotomy, 1033–1034
  pediatric, 1414–1415, 1426–1431
Femoral shaft
  intramedullary nailing of, 1031–1033, 1032*f*
  with plate, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1030–1031
Femoral thrombosis, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
Femur, closed reduction and external fixation of, 1034–1035
Fentanyl
  postoperative, C–3
  premedication, B–1
Fiberoptic intubation protocol, I–2–I–3
Fibrous dysplasia, 1417–1418, 1426–1431
Fick principle, 1489
Fimbrioplasty, 815
Finger, pollicization of, 1390–1392, 1391*f*, 1393–1395
Fibric acid derivatives, drug interactions, F–12
Fistula plug, anal, 554–556, 559–561
Fistulectomy, anal, 554–556, 559–561
Fistulotomy, anal, 554–556, 559–561
FLACC pain scale, E–3*f*
Flaps
  locations of commonly used, 1148*f*
  microsurgery free-flap reconstruction, 1148–1152, 1148*f*, 1149*t*
  pressure sores, 1163*f*
  types of, 1149*t*
Fletcher–Suit, 796, 797*f*
Flexible bronchoscopy, 185
Flexible fiber optic bronchoscopy (FOB), 320. *See also* Bronchoscopy
Flexor digitorum profundus (FDP), repair of lacerated, 941–945, 942*f*
Flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS), repair of lacerated, 941–945, 942*f*
Flexor tendons/nerves, repair of lacerated, 941–945, 942*f*
Flumazenil, 35
Fluorescein angiography, 1202
Fogarty embolectomy catheter, 443, 443*f*
Fondaparinux, drug interactions, F–12
Fontan procedure, 1270, 1278
Foot
  arthrodesis and Grice procedure, 1423–1431
  clubfoot, 1425–1431
  fractures, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1059–1060, 1083–1085
  transmetatarsal amputation, 1068–1069
Foraminotomy, 103
Forbes–Albright syndrome, 53
Forced duction testing (FDT), 1198
Forehead lift, 1095–1101, 1095*f*, 1096*f*, 1098*f*
Foreign body removal, 1285–1287
Fosphenytoin, drug interactions, F–5
Four-gland visualization, parathyroidectomy, 678–682, 678*f*, 679*f*
Fowler–Stevens approach, 1341, 1377
Frame-based stereotaxy, 64, 73
Frameless stereotaxy, 64–65, 68*f*
Free-bone flap, 29
Free-graft techniques, 157. *See also* Conjunctival transposition
Frontalis sling procedure, 154
Frontofacial advancement, 1442–1446, 1443*f*
Fronto-orbital advancement, 1436, 1437*f*
Frontotemporal/pterional craniotomy, 4–5
Frostbite, lumbar sympathectomy, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
Frozen shoulder, 958
Frozen-sections, eyelid reconstruction, 155
Functional endoscopic sinus surgery (FESS), 229–234
Functional neurosurgery
  for chronic pain, 77–80
  epilepsy surgery, 83–87
  percutaneous procedures for trigeminal neuralgia, 89–92
  for spasticity, 87–88
  stereotactic procedures, 73–76
  target identification, 72
  treatment areas, 72
  vagus nerve stimulation, 80–83
Functional stereotaxy, 65
Fundoplication, laparoscopic esophageal, 585–587, 586*f*, 591–594
Funnel chest, pectus excavatum pediatric, 1301–1304, 1302*f*
Furlow procedure, 1450

G

Gabapentin, drug interactions, F–3
Galactorrhea-amenorrhea syndrome, 53
Galen malformation, vein of
  craniotomy for, 1187–1190
  embolization, 1490, 1492–1495
Gallbladder, cholecystectomy and exploration, 572–574, 572*f*, 580–581
Gallie fusion, 97, 97*f*
Gallstones, duodenotomy, 509–510, 520–521, 521*f*
Gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT), 816
Ganglion of wrist, excision of, 939–940, 943–945
Ganglionectomy, lumbar sympathectomy, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*

Ganglionic stimulation, 89
Gangrene
amputation above the knee, 1070–1072
lumbar sympathectomy, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
Gantacurium, doses/duration/onset, B–2–B–3
Gas-fluid exchange, retinal tear, 173
Gastrectomy, total/partial, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
Gastric resections, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
Gastric tube placement, pediatric, 1305–1307, 1305*f*
Gastric/duodenal perforation, 505–506, 509–510
Gastrocystoplasty, 903–906
Gastroenteritis, pediatric, 1312–1315, 1313*f*
Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)
bronchoscopy/esophagoscopy, pediatric, 1216–1217
esophageal fundoplication, 585–587, 586*f*, 591–594
pediatric, 1312–1315, 1313*f*
Gastrointestinal endoscopy, 1499–1501
Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST), 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
Gastrojejunostomy, Whipple resection, 632–637, 632*f*
Gastroplasty, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*
Gastroschisis, 1327–1331, 1328*f*
Gastrostomy placement, 517–518, 761
Gemfirbozil, drug interactions, F–12
Genioplasty, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
Gestational trophoblastic disease (GTD), suction curettage for, 777–781, 778*f*
Giant intracranial aneurysms, craniotomy for, 11–14
Gingivoalveoloplasty, 1456–1457, 1456*f*, 1460–1462
Girdlestone procedure, 1018–1019, 1018*f*, 1023–1026
Glaucoma, 148. *See also* Trabeculectomy
Glenn shunt, 1270, 1271
Glenohumeral instability, 958–960, 966–968
Glenohumeral shoulder arthroplasty, 969–973, 969*f*
Glioblastoma, 30
Glioma, 30
Glomus jugulare, 251
Glomus tumors (GT), 255
Glossectomy
laser midline, 259, 260*f*
procedure, 212–214
Glossopharyngeal neuralgia, microvascular decompression, 44–47, 45*f*
Glycerol injection, 89
Goiters
mediastinal tumor, excision of, 308–309
thyroidectomy, 672–677, 672*f*, 673*f*
Gracilis myocutaneous flaps, pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Graham's patch, 505
Grave's disease, thyroidectomy, 672–677, 672*f*, 673*f*
Grice procedure, 1423–1431
Groin dissection, 906–910, 908*f*
Groin pain/lump, herniorrhaphy, inguinal, 651–652, 652*f*, 656–658
Groshong catheters, 453–454
Growth hormone-secreting tumor, transsphenoidal resection of, 52–57, 53*f*
Guillotine amputation, 1073
Guillotine technique, 207
Gynecologic oncology
anesthetic issues for laser therapy to vulva, vagina, and cervix, 776–777
cervix, conization of, 773–776, 773*f*
gestational trophoblastic disease, suction curettage for, 777–781, 778*f*
hysterectomy, radical, 790–794, 792*f*
interstitial perineal implants, 796–799, 797*f*
ovarian cancer, cytoreductive laparotomy, 764–767
pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
robotic-assisted laparoscopy, 794–795
staging laparotomy for ovarian cancer, 760–763, 760*f*
uterine cancer, exploratory laporatomy, hysterectomy/BSO for, 787–790
vulvectomy, radical, 768–772, 768*f*, 769*f*
Gynecology surgery
assisted reproductive technologies (ART), 815–819
colporraphy, enterocele repair, sacrospinous ligament vaginal vault suspension, uterosacral ligament vaginal vault suspension, sacrocolpopexy, 824–828, 825*f*
dilatation and evacuation (D&E), 803–807, 804*f*
dilation and curettage (D&C), 802–803, 803*f*, 805–807
ectopic pregnancy, laparoscopic procedures for, 812
hysterectomy, vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted, 820–824, 821*f*
hysteroscopy, 807–811, 808*f*
pelvic laparotomy, 811–813, 815
stress urinary incontinence, 828–832
therapeutic abortion (TAB), 803–807, 804*f*
transvaginal oocyte retrieval (TVOR), 813–815
Gynecology surgery, laparoscopic procedures for
ectopic pregnancy/adnexal mass, 865–867
endometriosis, 862–865, 863*f*
hysterectomy, 869–871
myomectomy, 867–869

H

H2 blockers, drug interactions, F–12
Haemophilus influenza, epiglottitis intubation, 194
Hand surgery
carpal tunnel release, 947–949, 947*f*
carpometacarpal joint fusion/arthroplasty/stabilization, 935–938
Darrach procedure, 928–929, 928*f*, 936–938
digit and hand replantation, 953–956, 1152–1155
fractures/dislocations, 950–953
ganglion of wrist, excision of, 939–940, 943–945
joint arthroplasty and arthrodesis, 931–932, 936–938
lacerated tendons/nerves, repair of, 941–945, 942*f*
microsurgery replantation, 1152–1155
palmar and digital fasciectomy, 940–941, 943–945
rheumatoid arthritis and extensor tendon tenosynovitis, tenosynovectomy, 929–931, 930*f*, 936–938
triangular fibrocartilage complex tears, 946–949
wrist arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
wrist arthroscopy, 946–949
wrist replacement, total, 934–938
Hand zones, 942*f*
Harrington rods, 118, 1396
Hassab procedure, 446, 447
Hasson trocar, 585, 589, 595, 596*f*, 602*f*, 605, 1377
Haultain procedure, uterine inversion, 858–860
Hauser patellar realignment, 1420–1422, 1426–1431
Hayes–Martin maneuver, 226
Head surgery. *See* Otolaryngology
Hearing loss, otologic surgery, 245–246
Heart block, pacemaker insertion, 376–378
Heart transplant
adult, 464–469
and lung, 469–474
neonatal/pediatric, 464–469
Heller myotomy, 326
esophagomyotomy, 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498
laparoscopic and antireflux, 588–589, 591–594

Hemangioma, 36
Hematocrit (Hct), preoperative, A–2
Hemiarthroplasty, 969
Hemifacial spasm, microvascular decompression, 44–47, 45*f*
Hemilaminectomy, 125
Hemivulvectomy, 768–772, 768*f*, 769*f*
Hemodialysis, arteriovenous access for, 451–453, 451*f*, 452*f*, 455–456
Hemoglobin (Hb), preoperative, A–2
Hemoptysis, bronchoscopy, flexible and rigid, 320–324
Hemorrhage
  intra-abdominal, 747
  postpartum, 841–843
  vascular injuries, 749–751
Hemorrhoidectomy, 556–561
Hemorrhoids, 556–561
Hemothorax, 731
Heparin, drug interactions, F–12
Heparinization, 13
Hepatic injuries, 747–749, 748*f*
Hepatic surgery
  hepatorrhaphy, 566–569
  resection, 564–566, 566*f*, 567–569
Hepaticoduodenal ligament, temporary occlusion, 564
Hepaticojejunostomy, 575
  Whipple resection, 632–637, 632*f*
Hepatoblastoma, pediatric, 1316–1319, 1317*f*
Hepatorrhaphy, 566–569
Herbal agents, F–7–F–14, F–12
Hernia
  incisional hernia, repair of, 654–658
  inguinal operations, 906–910, 907*f*, 908*f*
  laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair, 609–611, 609*f*
  repair of inguinal and umbilical, 1337–1340
  small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
  stoma closure/peristomal hernia repair, 545–549
Herniorrhaphy
  femoral, 653–654, 653*f*, 656–658
  inguinal, 651–652, 652*f*, 656–658, 906–890, 907*f*, 908*f*
Hess and Hunt clinical grading system, 4, 5*t*
Hetastarch, 14
Hickman catheters, 453–454
High cervical anterior retropharyngeal approach, 94
High transthoracic thoracotomy, 107
Hill procedure, esophagogastric fundoplasty, 490–492, 491*f*, 494–498
Hindquarter amputation, 1014–1018
Hip
  amputations around, 1014–1018
  arthrodesis, 1021–1022, 1022*f*, 1023–1026
  arthroplasty, 1018–1020, 1018*f*, 1023–1026
  disarticulation, 1014–1018
  femoral osteotomy, 1414–1415, 1426–1431
  fractures, 1027*f*
  open reduction and femoral shortening, 1407–1408, 1408*f*, 1426–1431
  synovectomy, 1022–1026
Hirschsprung's disease, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
HIV therapy, drug interactions, F–12
HMG Co-A reductase inhibitors, drug interactions, F–12
Hodgkin's disease, laparotomy, exploratory/staging, 640–645, 640*f*
Horseshoe-shaped incisions, 29
HRT, drug interactions, F–12
Huntington procedure, uterine inversion, 858–860
Hydrocele, repair of, 1337–1340
Hydrocelectomy, 913, 1374–1376
Hydrocephalus
  closure of myelomeningocele, 1181–1184
  craniotomy for vein of Galen malformation, 1187–1190
  stereotactic neurosurgery, 65
  ventriculoscopy and third ventriculostomy, 1190–1194, 1191*f*
Hydrodissection, 863
Hydromorphone, postop, C–3
Hydronephrosis, nephrectomy, 891–895, 892*f*, 893*f*, 894*f*, 897–899
Hydrosalpinx, ectopic pregnancy/adnexal mass, 866, 867
Hydroxyzine, premedication, B–1
Hygroma, subdural, 59
Hyoid myotomy and suspension (HM), 260, 261*f*
Hyperhidrosis, VATS, 326
Hyperplasia
  laparoscopic adrenalectomy, 599–601, 599*f*
  vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Hypersplenism, portal hypertension, 444–450
Hypertension (HTN). *See also* Portal hypertension
  infrainguinal arterial bypass, 434–437
  nephrectomy, 891–895, 892*f*, 893*f*, 894*f*, 897–899
  thoracic aortic aneurysm repair, 409–411
Hyperthyroidism, thyroidectomy, 672–677, 672*f*, 673*f*
Hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS), 1276–1280, 1277*f*
Hypospadias repair, 910, 1369–1370, 1372–1373
Hypotension, controlled, 180
Hypothermia, in craniotomy, 9, 21, 28, 30
Hypovolemic shock, 755
Hysterectomy
  hemorrhage, postpartum, 841–843
  laparoscopic, 869–871
  obstetrical, 842
  radical, 790–794, 792*f*
  subtotal, 842
  supracervical/total, 842
  total abdominal, 760–763, 760*f*
  for uterine cancer, 787–790
  vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted, 820–824, 821*f*
Hysteroscopy, 807–811, 808*f*

I

Iatrogenic injury, biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), laparoscopic splenectomy, 595–598, 595*f*, 596*f*
Ileal conduit, 899, 900*f*
Ileal pouch anal anastomosis (IPAA), 540
Ileostomy
  Brooke, 526–528, 526*f*
  continent (Kock, Barnett), 527–530, 529*f*
  proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Iliac crest bone
  biopsy of, 640*f*
  grafting from, 1060–1061, 1083–1085
Iliac thrombosis, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
Ilioinguinal approach, 1008, 1008*f*
Ilizarov limb lengthening, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431
Image-guided frameless stereotaxy, 64–65, 68*f*
Image-guided navigation, 30
Imaging procedures, 1515–1521
Imatinib, drug interactions, F–3
Imperforate anus, 1335–1337
Implantable medication delivery system, 78
Implantable pulse generator (IPG), 73
Implantation of cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD), 1498–1502, 1501*f*
Implants, dental, 1571–1572
Impotence and insertion of penile prosthesis, 910–913, 911*f*
Incisional hernia, repair of, 654–658
Inclusion technique, thoracoabdominal aorta aneurysms and Crawford's, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
Indirect revascularization, 23
Induction techniques, standards
  adult, B–2
  pediatric, D–1–D–2

Inferior pedicle technique, 1110
Infertility
assisted reproductive technologies (ART), 815–819
hysteroscopy, 807–811, 808*f*
transvaginal oocyte retrieval (TVOR), 813–815
Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
continent ileostomy pouch (Kock), 527–530, 529*f*
proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Infrainguinal arterial bypass, 434–437
Inguinal hernia repair
inguinal operations, 906–910, 907*f*, 908*f*
laparoscopic, 609–611, 609*f*
pediatric, 1337–1340
Inguinal herniorrhaphy, 651–652, 652*f*, 656–658
Inguinal operations, 906–910, 907*f*, 908*f*
Inguinoscrotal procedures, pediatric, 1374–1376
Inhalation anesthesia
adult, maintenance techniques, B–3
drug interactions, F–3
pediatric, maintenance techniques, D–3
Injection laryngoplasty, 197, 199
Instability, shoulder, 964–968, 965*f*
Instrumental perforation, 487–488
Insulin, drug interactions, F–12
Intensity-modulated radiation therapy (IMRT), 796
Intermittent apnea technique, 186
Interphalangeal joint arthroplasty, proximal, 931–932, 936–938
Interspinous wiring, 103
Interstitial chemotherapy, 30
Interstitial perineal implants, 796–799, 797*f*
Interstitial pulmonary fibrosis, heart/lung transplant, 469–474
Intertrochanteric femoral fractures, 1026–1029
Intestinal fistula, small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
Intestinal surgery
appendectomy, open, 521–523, 522*f*, 524–525
continent ileostomy pouch (Kock), 527–530, 529*f*
duodenotomy, 509–510, 520–521, 521*f*
enteric fistulae, closure of, 533–536
enterolysis, 532–536
enterostomy, 526–528, 526*f*
intestinal perforation, pediatric, 1320–1323
Meckel's diverticulum, excision of, 523–525
small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–532, 531*f*, 534–536
Intra-abdominal and retroperitoneal tumors, excision of, 647–648
Intra-abdominal hemorrhage, 747
Intracameral lidocaine, 158
Intracapsular cataract extraction, 144
Intracerebral hemorrhage
Intracranial aneurysms, craniotomy for, 4–11, 4*f*, 5*t*
giant, 11–14
Hess and Hunt clinical grading system, 4, 5*t*
location of aneurysms, 4*f*
Intracranial neurosurgery, 4–68
Intracranial vascular malformations, craniotomy for, 17–22, 22*f*
Intramedullary nailing
of femoral shaft, 1031–1033
of long-bone fractures, 1412–1413, 1412*f*, 1426–1431
of tibia, 1057–1058, 1083–1085
Intraocular lens (IOL) insertion, cataract extraction with, 2–4, 2*f*
Intraocular pressure (IOP), trabeculectomy, 6–8, 6*f*, 7*f*
Intraosseous (IO)
access, 1586–1588, 1587*f*, 1588*f*
infusion, 755*f*, 756
Intrathecal pumps, 77–80
Intravitreal injection, 1202
Intubation
epiglottitis, 194–195
orotracheal and nasotracheal, 729
Iridectomy, 148
Irreversible electroporation (IRE ablation), 1530–1533
Irving technique, postpartum tubal ligation, 845–848
Islet cell tumors, pancreatectomy, 629–631, 629*f*, 630*f*, 634–637
Isoniazid, drug interactions, F–3–F–4
Ivacaftor, drug interactions, F–4
Ivor Lewis approach, 492–498, 494*f*, 495*f*, 503

J

Jackson modification of Orticochea flap, 1453–1454
Janeway gastrostomy, 517–518
Jatene atrial switch, 1262
Jaw thrust maneuver, 754
Jejunoileal bypass, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*, 611
Jejunum, gastric resection, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
Jersey finger, 942
Jet ventilation, 186, 187*f*
Johnson method, 858
Joint arthroplasty and arthrodesis, 931–932, 936–938
Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, 1431

K

Kasai procedure, 1323
Kelly urethral plication, 829
Ketamine, drug interactions, F–4
Ketorolac
drug interactions, F–4
postop, C–3
Kidney transplants
cadaveric and live-donor, 694–700, 694*f*
nephrectomy, laparoscopic and open, 700–705, 701*f*
with pancreas transplants, 696–700, 697*f*
pediatric, 1468–1472
Kidneys
nephrectomy, 891–895, 892*f*, 893*f*, 894*f*, 897–899
pediatric operations, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
Kienböck's disease, wrist arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
Kirklin double-outlet right ventricle, 1273–1276, 1274*f*
Klein procedure, 1090
Klippel–Feil syndrome, 1431
Knee surgery
arthrodesis, 1039–1041
arthroplasty, 1038–1039, 1050–1052
arthroscopy, 1046–1047
arthrotomy, 1047–1053
knee, 1038–1039
ligaments, repair/reconstruction of, 1042–1044, 1042*f*, 1043*f*
open reduction and internal fixation of patella fractures, 1041–1042
patella realignment, 1044–1045, 1044*f*
tendons, repair of, 1048–1052
Kocher incision, 572
Kocher maneuver, 446, 573, 627, 672
Kocher–Langenbeck approach, 1008, 1009*f*
Kock ileostomy pouch, 527–530, 529*f*
proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Kramer osteotomy, 1414–1415, 1426–1431
Kraske excision, rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Kyphosis, posterior spinal instrumentation and fusion, 1396–1399, 1396*f*, 1397*f*

L

Labetolol, drug interactions, F–4
Laboratory testing and diagnostic studies, A–2–A–4, A–3*t*
Lacerated globe repair. *See* Ruptured/lacerated globe repair
Lacerated tendons/nerves in hand, repair of, 941–945, 942*f*
Laks, tricuspid atresia, 1271
Lamellar keratoplasty, 146
Laminectomy, 87
cervical, posterior, 103
decompressive, 103, 122
lumbar, 122
thoracic, 116–119, 117*f*, 127–130

Laminotomy, 103
lumbar, 122
Laparoscopic-assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH), 820
Laparoscopic hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Laparoscopic procedures/surgery
adnexal mass, 865–867
adrenalectomy, 599–601, 599*f*, 685–686
appendectomy, 521–523, 522*f*, 524–525, 605–608, 606*f*
bariatric surgery, 611–618, 612*f*
bowel resection, 602–605, 602*f*
cholecystectomy, duct exploration, 589–594, 590*f*
colorectal surgery, 538–539
diverticulectomy, 484*f*–486*f*, 485–487, 494–498
ectopic pregnancies, 812, 865–867
endometriosis, 862–865, 863*f*
esophageal fundoplication, 585–587, 586*f*, 591–594
exploratory/staging, for uterine cancer, 787–790
Heller's myotomy, antireflux, 588–589, 591–594
hysterectomy, 869–871
inguinal hernia repair, 609–611, 609*f*
live-donor nephrectomy, 700–702, 701*f*
myomectomy, 867–869
pediatric, 1377–1378
peptic ulcer disease, approaches, 506–510, 507*f*
perforated peptic ulcer, 584–585, 591–594
pregnant patients and anesthesia issues, 619–621
robotic-assisted laparoscopy, 794–795
splenectomy, 595–598, 595*f*, 596*f*
vaginal vault suspension, 872–875
Laparoscopic retroperitoneal approach, 120
Laparoscopic transperitoneal approach, 120
Laparotomy
cytoreductive for ovarian cancer, 764–767
interstitial perineal implants, 796–799, 797*f*
intestinal perforation/necrotizing enterocolitis, pediatric, 1320–1323
pelvic, 811–813, 815
Laparotomy, exploratory/staging, 640–645, 640*f*
for ovarian, fallopian tube, and peritoneal cancer, 760–763, 760*f*
for uterine cancer, 787–790
Laryngeal framework surgery, 197–200
Laryngeal lesions, excision of, 1217–1220
Laryngeal mask airway (LMA), 180
Laryngectomy
anterior horizontal partial, 203, 203*f*
glossectomy, 212
partial, 203, 203*f*
procedure, 203–207, 203*f*, 204*f*
supracricoid, 203, 203*f*
supraglottic, 203, 203*f*
total, 205, 212
Laryngomalacia, 1217–1220
Laryngoplasty, injection, 197, 199
Laryngoscopy
micro, 182
operative micro, 186
procedure, 181–182
procedures, pediatrics, 1217–1220
video, 179
Laryngospasm management, I–4–I–5
Laryngotracheal reconstruction, 1224–1227
Laryngotracheoplasty, 1224–1227
Laser bronchoscopy, 320. *See also* Bronchoscopy
Laser conization of cervix, 773–776, 773*f*
Laser lithotripsy, 1380
Laser midline glossectomy (LMG), 259, 260*f*
Laser photocoagulation, 1202
Laser resurfacing, facial, 1092, 1097, 1102–1105
Laser surgery/therapy, 186
airway, 324–326
anesthetic issues for laser therapy to vulva, vagina, and cervix, 776–777
hemorrhoids, 557
prostate, 883
Latarjet procedure, 964
Lateral canthotomy and cantholysis, 151
Lateral extracavitary approach, 117
Lateral neck dissection, 219
Lateral orbitotomy, 170
Lateral position, thoracic surgery, 278, 279*f*
Lateral tarsal strip procedure, 152
Latex allergy, G–1–G–2
Latissimus flap, 1160–1162
Lavage, bronchopulmonary, 340–343
Lecompte maneuver, 1262
Ledderhose disease, 940
LeFort procedure, 820, 1437
angle classification, 1137*f*
fracture lines, 1129*f*, 1130*f*
osteotomies, 1128, 1136–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
Left ventricular aneurysmectomy, 360–361
Leg surgery, lower
amputation above the knee, 1070–1075
amputation below the knee, 1072–1075, 1072*f*
ankle amputation, 1066–1068, 1066*f*, 1067*f*, 1083–1085
ankle arthrodesis, 1064–1065, 1083–1085
ankle arthroscopy, 1061–1063, 1062*f*, 1083–1085
ankle arthrotomy, 1063–1064, 1083–1085
ankle ligaments, repair/reconstruction of, 1065–1066, 1083–1085
biopsy of abscess/tumor, 1081–1085
biopsy of leg/foot, 1080–1081, 1083–1085
closed reduction and external fixation of tibia, 1058–1059, 1083–1085
fasciotomy of leg, 1077–1080, 1078*f*
fasciotomy of thigh, 1075–1077, 1076*f*, 1079–1080
intramedullary nailing of tibia, 1057–1058, 1083–1085
lengthening of tendons, 1070, 1083–1085
nonunion/malunion of tibia, 1060–1061, 1083–1085
open reduction and internal fixation of distal tibia, ankle, and foot, 1059–1060, 1083–1085
open reduction and internal fixation of tibial plateau fracture, 1056–1057
transmetatarsal amputation, 1068–1069
Leg surgery, upper
classification of fractures, 1027*f*
closed reduction and external fixation of femur, 1034–1035
intramedullary nailing of femoral shaft, 1031–1033, 1032*f*
nonunion/malunion of proximal third of femur and proximal femoral osteotomy, 1033–1034
open reduction and internal fixation of distal femur fractures, 1029–1030
open reduction and internal fixation of femoral fractures, 1026–1029
open reduction and internal fixation of femoral shaft with plate, 1030–1031
Legs, microsurgery replantation, 1152–1155
Leiomyomata, laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
Leukemia, pediatric radiation therapy, 1484–1488
Leukotriene inhibitors, drug interactions, F–12
Lidocaine, 8, 21, 56
intracameral, 16
Lid-splitting procedure, 152
Ligation
rubber-band, 556, 557
of spermatic vein, 906–910
varicose vein stripping, 458–461
vein stripping and perforator, 457–458, 460–461

Limb lengthening, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431
Limbal stem-cell transplantation, 147
Linear incisions, 29
Linezolid, drug interactions, F–4
Lingualplasty (LP), 260, 260*f*
Lipectomy, 1092
Lipid controlling agents
  cholestyramine, drug interactions, F–12
Lipodystrophy, 1116*f*, 1117–1120, 1117*f*
Lipoid pneumonitis, bronchopulmonary lavage, 340–343
Lipoma of filum, correction of, 1185–1187
Lipomyelomeningocele, correction of, 1185–1187
Liposuction
  abdominal surgery, 1116–1120, 1116*f*, 1117*f*
  anesthetic issues, 1123–1125
  procedure, 1122–1125
  submental, 1092
  ultrasonic, 1122
Liquid vitreous substitutes, 173
Lithium, drug interactions, F–4, F–12
Lithotripsy, 573
Liver function test (LFT), preoperative, A–2
Liver injuries, 747–749, 748*f*
Liver resection, 564–566, 566*f*, 567–569
Liver transplants
  anesthetic issues, 711–718
  anhepatic phase, 705, 706
  bile duct reconstruction, 710, 711*f*, 712*f*
  blood loss in, 705*t*
  coagulation therapy, 717*t*
  hepatectomy, 705–706
  living donor, 718–720
  pediatric, 1472–1480
  piggyback technique, 708, 709*f*
  postrevascularization, 705, 708
  procedures, 705–712
  venovenous bypass, benefits and complications, 707*t*
  venovenous bypass, setup for, 707*f*
LMWH, drug interactions, F–13
Lobectomy, 281–290, 282*t*, 283*f*, 284*f*, 286*t*
  epilepsy and temporal, 81
  intramedullary nailing of long-bone fractures, 1412–1413, 1412*f*, 1426–1431
  liver resection and right/left, 564–566
  procedures, 281–290, 283*f*, 284*f*
  risk assessment, 286*t*
  spirometric criteria for resection, 282*t*
Local anesthetic, drug interactions, F–4
Long-bone fractures, intramedullary nailing of, 1412–1413, 1412*f*, 1426–1431
Loop cholecystojejunostomy, 575
Loop diuretics, drug interactions, F–4
Lorazepam
  pediatric use of, E–1
  premedication, B–1
Lord procedure, 557
Lower-limb venous thrombosis, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
Lumbar artificial disc, 120
Lumbar laminotomy, 122
Lumbar spine surgery. *See* Spinal surgery, lumbar/lumbosacral
Lumbar sympathectomy, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
Lumbar technique, pediatric, D–4
Lumpectomy, 660–661, 663–664
Lung cancer
  bronchoscopy, flexible and rigid, 320–324
  chest-wall resection, 293–294
  lesions, wedge resection, 290–293, 290*f*
  lobectomy/pneumonectomy, 281–289
  mediastinoscopy, 309–315, 310*f*–313*f*
  staging, 316*f*
Lung lesion, wedge resection, 290–293, 290*f*
Lung protective ventilation, B–4–B–5, B–4*t*
Lungs
  anatomy, 280*f*
  function, physiologic assessment, 283*f*
  lesions, wedge resection, 290–293, 290*f*
  lobectomy, 281–290
  masses, VATS, 326–329
  neonatal resection, 1295–1299, 1296*f*
  pneumonectomy, 281–290
Lungs, transplants, 344
  anesthetic issues, 475–477
  bilateral sequential, 469–474
  grafts, implantation, 470
  and heart, 469–474
  single, 469–474
Lung-volume reduction surgery, 336–340
Luque rectangle/contoured rod and wiring, 98
Lymph node biopsy, 223
  sentinel, 661–664, 662*f*
Lymph node dissection
  inguinal operations, 906–910
  pelvic and para-aortic/retroperitoneal, 760–763, 760*f*, 790
Lymphadenectomy
  paracaval/para-aortic, 893
  pelvic, 768
Lymphangioleiomyomatosis, heart/lung transplant, 469–474
Lymphoma
  laparotomy, exploratory/staging, 640–645, 640*f*
  mediastinal tumor, excision of, 308–309
  mediastinoscopy, 309–315, 310*f*–314*f*
Lymphoscintigraphy, 662

M

Macquet patellar realignment, 1420–1422, 1426–1431
Macrolides, drug interactions, F–4
Magerl technique, 104, 105*f*
Magnesium, drug interactions, F–4
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) procedures, 1515–1521
Magnetic resonance therapy (MRT) procedures, 1515–1521
Maintenance techniques, standards
  adult, B–3
  pediatric, D–3
Mammoplasty
  augmentation, 1108–1109, 1108*f*, 1113–1114
  reduction, 1110–1111, 1110*f*, 1113–1114
Mandible
  anatomic regions, 1131*f*
  facial fractures, repair of, 1128–1136, 1129*f*–1132*f*
Mandibular osteotomies, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
Mandibular osteotomy and genioglossal advancement (MOGA), 260, 261*f*
Mandibulectomy
  marginal, 217
  procedure, 212
  segmental, 217
Mania, electroconvulsive therapy for, 1484–1489
MAO inhibitors, drug interactions, F–4, F–13
Marfan syndrome
  anesthesia issues, 1431
  pectus excavatum/carinatum, 1301–1304, 1302*f*
  thoracic aortic aneurysms, 409
  thoracoabdominal aorta, repair of, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
Marshall–Marchetti–Krantz (M-M-K) approach, 829, 919
Martinez Universal Perineal Interstitial Template (MUPIT), 796
Mason excision, rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Mastectomies, 664–667
Mastoidectomy
  radical, 245
  simple, 245
Mastopexy, 1112–1114

Maxillary deformities, LeFort osteotomies, 1136–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
Maxillary orbital/zygomatic, repair of facial fractures, 1128–1136, 1129*f*–1132*f*
Maxillectomy, 214–217
Maxillomandibular osteotomy and advancement (MMO), 260, 262
Maylard muscle-splitting technique, 820
McCall's culdoplasty, 827
McDonald cerclage, 851–854
McKay procedure for clubfoot, 1425–1431
McVay's repair, 651
Meatal advancement granuloplasty (MAGPI), 1370
Meckel's diverticulum, excision of, 523–525
Medial conjunctival spindle procedure, 151
Medial orbitotomy, 170
Mediastinal tumor
  biopsy/resection, pediatric, 1292–1295, 1292*f*
  excision, 308–309
Mediastinoscopy, 309–315, 310*f*–313*f*
  cervical, 319, 320*f*
  procedures, 319–325, 320*f*
  transthoracic (anterior/Chamberlain's procedure), 320
Mediport devices, 454
Medtronic (METRx), 103
Megacolon, congenital, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
MELD (model for end-stage liver disease), calculation, 1509*t*
Meloplasty, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
Meningioma, 36, 53
  skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
Meniscectomy, 1046
Meniscus, arthroscopy for torn, 1046–1047
Mercaptopurine, drug interactions, F–4
Mesenteric vascular occlusion, small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
Mesocaval shunt, 445*f*, 446
Metacarpophalangeal (MP) arthroplasty, 931–932, 936–938
Metallic tracheobronchial stents, 1521–1526
Methadone, drug interactions, F–5
Methotrexate, drug interactions, F–5
Methylphenidate, drug interactions, F–5
Metroplasty, 815
Miami Modular Orthopaedic Spinal System (MOSS), 1396, 1399
Microdiscectomy, 984–985
Micro-mitral approach, 394
Microsurgery free-flap reconstruction, 1148–1152, 1148*f*, 1149*t*
Microsurgery replantation, 1152–1155
Microsurgical resection, 17
Microvascular decompression
  of cranial nerve, 44–47, 45*f*
  of trigeminal nerve, 78
Midazolam
  drug interactions, F–5
  premedication, B–1
Middle cerebral artery (MCA) embolectomy, 16*f*
Midesophageal diverticulectomy, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*, 494–498
Midface lift, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
Midurethral sling placement, 829
Mifepristone, drug interactions, F–5
Mild hypothermia, 30
Minilaparotomy, 867–868
Minimally invasive coronary artery bypass (MICAB), 355–359
  grafting, 384–389, 384*f*–387*f*
Minimally invasive surgery (MIS), 103, 122
  abbreviations used in, 393*t*
  anesthesia in pediatric patients, 1344–1346
  anterior lumbar interbody fusion, 985–988
  mitral valve surgery, limited approach, 394–396, 395*f*
  parathyroidectomy, 678–682, 678*f*, 679*f*
  port-access coronary, 389–393, 390*f*–392*f*, 393*t*
  posterior lumbar discectomy, 984–985
  thyroidectomy, 672–677, 672*f*, 673*f*
Mirtazapine, drug interactions, F–5
Mitral commissurotomy, 365–369
Mitral insufficiency, 365–369
Mitral regurgitation (MR), 365–369
Mitral stenosis, 365–369
Mitral valve repair/replacement, 365–369
Mitral valve surgery, limited approach, 394–396, 395*f*
Mitrofanoff appendicovesicostomy, 1368
Modified radical neck dissection (MRND), 218
Mohs technique, 155
Molteno implant, 7, 7*f*
Monitored anesthesia care (MAC), B–5
Monobloc advancement, 1442–1446, 1443*f*
Monti tube, 1368
Morcellation of specimen, 868
Morphine
  postop, C–3
  premedication, B–1
Moschowitz procedure, 812
Motor cortex stimulation, 78
Motor evoked potentials (MEP), 1396
Multimodality analgesia, C–1–C–2, C–1*t*
Multiorgan procurement, 720–726, 721*f*
Mumford procedure, 958–960, 966–968
Muscle flaps, pedicled, 299
Muscle relaxants
  drug interactions, B–2
  for intubation, B–2
  reversal of, B–4, D–3
Muscle relaxation, 178
Muscle-sparing incisions, 280
Muscular dystrophy, 1431
Mustard atrial switch, 1262
Myasthenia gravis, 329
Myectomy, septal, 372–375
Myelodysplasia, 1182–1184
Myelomeningocele
  closure of, 1181–1184
  Ober fasciotomy, Yount–Ober release, 1405–1407, 1426–1431
Myomectomies, 811, 867–869
Myopathies, 1431
Myotomy
  esophageal (Heller), 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498
  esophageal diverticulectomy, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*
  laparoscopic Heller's, antireflux, 588–589, 591–594
  septal, 372–375
Myringotomy, 244
  pediatric, 1210–1212

N

Nasal fiberoptic protocol, I–3
Nasal surgery, 237, 1101–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
Nasolacrimal duct, 230
Nasotracheal intubation, 729
Nausea prophylaxis, B–4, D–3
Neck abscess, incision/drainage of pediatric, 14–16, 1222–1224
Neck dissection, 218–222
  composite resection and, 220
  glossectomy, 212
  lateral, 219
  modified radical, 218
  radical, 218
  selective, 219
  submandibular gland removal, 226
  supraomohyoid, 219
Neck trauma
  anesthetic issues, 736–737
  exploratory surgery, 733–735, 734*f*
Necklift, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*
Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC), pediatric, 1320–1323
Neonatal heart transplant, 464–469
Neonatal lung resection, 1295–1299, 1296*f*
Nephrectomy
  laparoscopic simple/radical, 893–895

partial, 892–895
pediatric operations, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
procedures, 891–895, 892*f*, 893*f*, 894*f*, 897–899
radical, 893–895
simple, 891–892, 894–895
Nephrectomy, kidney
laparoscopic and open, 700–702, 701*f*
procedures and anesthetic issues, 702–705
Nephroscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882
Nephroureterectomy, 893–894
pediatric, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
Neuraxial procedures, J–1
Neurectomy, presacral, 812
Neuroblastoma
biopsy/resection, 1292–1295, 1292*f*
pediatric resection, 1316–1319, 1317*f*
Neuroradiology interventional, 1489–1495
Neurosurgery
carotid endarterectomy, 134–140
functional, 72–92
intracranial, 4–68
Neurosurgery, pediatric
arteriovenous malformations (AVM), 1194–1195
closure of myelomeningocele, 1181–1184
correction of spinal dysraphism, 1184–1187
craniofacial, 1178–1181
craniotomy for vein of Galen malformation, 1187–1190
ventriculoscopy and third ventriculostomy, 1190–1194, 1191*f*
Neurotological skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
Neurotology, 244–249, 244*f*, 245*f*
Niacin, drug interactions, F–12, F–13
Nimodipine, 6–8
Nipple discharge, 660
Nissen fundoplication, 490–492, 491*f*, 494–498, 585, 586*f*
Nitrates, drug interactions, F–5, F–13
NMBs, drug interactions, F–5
NNRTIs, drug interactions, F–5
Non-shunt procedures, for portal hypertension, 447–448
Non-union/malunion
of proximal third of femur, 1033–1034
of tibia, 1060–1061, 1083–1085
Norwood operation, 1277
Nose, reconstruction, 1101–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
Novak modified hysterectomy, 790
NSAIDs, drug interactions, F–13
Nuss procedure, 1301–1305
Nutcracker esophagus, esophagomyotomy, 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498

O

Ober fasciotomy, 1405–1407, 1426–1431
Obesity, surgery for, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*
laparoscopic bariatric surgery, 611–618, 612*f*
liposuction, 1122–1125
Obstetric surgery
cervical cerclage, elective and emergent, 851–854
cesarean section, 834–841, 834*f*
hemorrhage, postpartum, 841–843
placenta, removal of retained, 854–857
tubal ligation, postpartum, 845–848
uterine inversion, 858–860
uterine rupture, repair of, 844–845
vaginal/cervical lacerations, repair of, 848–851
Obstetrical hysterectomy, 842
Obstructive jaundice, 1324–1326, 1324*f*
Obstructive pulmonary artery disease, infrainguinal arterial bypass, 434–437
Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA)
tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy, pediatric, 1212–1215
tonsillectomy and/or adenoidectomy, 207–211, 208*f*
Obwegesser osteotomies, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
Occipitocervical contoured rod fixation, 98
Occipitocervical fusion, 98
Occipitocervical plate fixation, 98
Octopus stabilizer, 386*f*
Octreotide, drug interactions, F–5
Odontoid, transoral/transnasal approach to, 50–52, 50*f*–51*f*
Office-based anesthesia
definition, 1564
equipment for, 1564
patients, selecting, 1565
recovery and discharge, 1565
state regulations, 1564
techniques in, 1564–1565
Off-pump coronary artery bypass (OPCAB), 355–359
grafting, 384–389, 384*f*–387*f*
Olanzapine, drug interactions, F–5
Omental pelvic carpet/sling, pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Omental transposition, 299
Omentum-to-brain transposition, 23, 25
Omphalocele, 1327–1331, 1328*f*
Oncology, pediatric procedures, 1496–1499
Ondansetron, B–4, D–3
One-lung ventilation (OLV), pediatric, 1298
Oophorectomy, 812, 862
Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF)
acetabulum fractures, 1008–1010, 1009*f*, 1014–1018, 1088*f*
distal femur fractures, 1029–1030
distal tibia, ankle, and foot, 1059–1060, 1083–1085
femoral fractures, 1026–1029
femoral shaft with plate, 1030–1031
patella fractures, 1041–1042
pelvis, 1014–1018, 1031–1033
tibial plateau fracture, 1056–1057, 1083–1085
Operative microlaryngoscopy, 78
Ophthalmic surgery
cataract extraction with intraocular lens insertion, 144–146, 144*f*
corneal transplant, 146–148
dacryocystorhinostomy, 165–168, 167*f*
ectropion repair, 151–152, 152*f*
entropion repair, 152–153
enucleation, 168–169, 168*f*
eyelid reconstruction, 155–157, 156*f*
orbitotomy, anterior and lateral, 170–171
pediatric, 1198–1208
pterygium excision, 157–162, 158*f*, 160*f*
ptosis repair, 153–155, 154*f*
retinal surgery, 171–176, 172*f*
ruptured/lacerated globe repair, 162–165
strabismus, 1198–1201
trabeculectomy, 148–150, 148*f*
vitreoretinal, 1201–1208
Opioid-based anesthetic techniques, 180
Opioids, drug interactions, F–5, F–13
Optic nerve, endoscopic sinus surgery complications in, 231
Oral antidiabetic agents, drug interactions, F–13
Oral contraceptives, drug interactions, F–13
Oral pathology, 272
Oral surgery, 272–273
Orbit exenteration, 214–217
Orbit, transgression of, 230
Orbital decompression, 232
Orbitotomy, anterior and lateral, 170–171
Orchiectomy
radical, 906–910, 1374–1376
simple, 913
Orchiopexy, 906–910, 1340–1341, 1374–1376
Oriental cholangiohepatitis, biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Orotracheal intubation, 728
Orthofix limb lengthening, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431

Orthopedic surgery
hand, 928–956
hip, pelvis, upper leg, 1004–1035
knee, 1038–1052
shoulder/arm, 958–961
spine, 984–1000
Orthopedic surgery, pediatric
acetabular augmentation, Chiari osteotomy, 1404–1405, 1426–1431
adductor release/transfer, psoas release, 1409–1410, 1426–1431
anesthesia issues, 1431
arthrodesis and Grice procedure, 1423–1431
closed/open reduction of displaced lateral condyle humerus fracture, 1386–1387, 1393–1395
clubfoot, 1425–1431
epidermolysis bullosa, 1431–1434
epiphysiodesis, 1415–1417, 1415*f*, 1426–1431
femoral osteotomy, 1414–1415, 1426–1431
finger, pollicization of, 1390–1392, 1391*f*, 1393–1395
hip, open reduction and femoral shortening, 1407–1408, 1408*f*, 1426–1431
intramedullary nailing of long-bone fractures, 1412–1413, 1412*f*, 1426–1431
limb lengthening, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431
Ober fasciotomy, Yount–Ober release, 1405–1407, 1426–1431
patellar realignment, 1420–1422, 1426–1431
pelvic osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
percutaneous pinning of supracondylar humerus fracture, 1384–1385, 1384*f*, 1393–1395
posterior spinal instrumentation and fusion, 1396–1399, 1396*f*, 1397*f*
scoliosis, anterior spinal fusion, 1399–1401, 1399*f*, 1400*f*
slipped capital femoral epiphysis, 1410–1411, 1426–1431
Sofield procedure, 1417–1418, 1426–1431
syndactyly repair, 1392–1395
tendon transfer/lengthening, 1422–1423, 1426–1431
torticollis, release for, 1389–1390, 1393–1395
unicameral bone cyst, aspiration and injection of, 1387–1389, 1393–1395
Osseointegrated implants, 272
Ossicular chain reconstruction, 245
Osteoarthritis
carpometacarpal joint fusion/arthroplasty/stabilization, 935–938
wrist arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
Osteogenesis imperfecta, 1417–1418, 1426–1431
Osteoplastic flap, 29
Osteoporosis agents, drug interactions, F–13
Osteotomies
Chiari, 1404–1405, 1404*f*, 1426–1431
femoral, 1414–1415, 1426–1431
LeFort, 1128, 1136–1139, 1137*f*, 1138*f*, 1143–1144
mandibular, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
pelvis, 1011–1012, 1011*f*, 1014–1018, 1401–1403, 1402*f*
periorbital, 1442–1446, 1443*f*
proximal femoral, 1033–1034
trochanteric, 1021
Ostium secundum, surgery for, 1232–1236, 1233*f*
Otitis media
otologic surgery, 244–245, 244*f*–245*f*
pediatric myringotomy and tympanostomy tube placement, 1210–1212
Otolaryngology
airway management, 178
anesthesiologist's perspective, 178–179
anesthetic management, 179–181
composite resection with marginal/segmental mandibulectomy, 217–218
endoscopic sinus surgery, 229–234
epiglottitis intubation, 194–195
external sinus surgery, 235–236, 235*f*
facial plastic surgery, 238–244
glossectomy, 212–214
laryngeal framework surgery, 197–200
laryngectomy, partial and total, 203–207, 203*f*, 204*f*
laryngoscopy/bronchoscopy/esophagoscopy, 181–189, 181*f*, 182*f*, 187*f*
lymph node biopsy, 223
maxillectomy and orbit exenteration, 214–217
muscle relaxation and patient positioning, 178
nasal surgery, 237
neck dissection, 218–222
neurotological skull base surgery, 249–257, 249*f*–255*f*
otology and neurotology, 244–249
parotidectomy, 224–226, 224*f*, 225*f*
patient population, 178–179
sleep-disordered breathing, reconstructive surgery, 258–266, 258*f*–262*f*
submandibular gland excision, 226–229, 227*f*
surgeon's perspective, 178
tonsillectomy and/or adenoidectomy, 207–211, 208*f*
tracheal and cricotracheal resection, 200–202
tracheotomy/tracheostomy and cricothyroidotomy, 190–193
Zenker's diverticulectomy (open approach), 195–197
Otolaryngology, pediatric
branchial cleft cyst/thyroglossal duct cyst, removal of, 1221–1224
bronchoscopy/esophagoscopy, 1216–1217
choanal atresia repair, 1227–1229
laryngoscopy, supraglottoplasty, excision of laryngeal lesions, 1217–1220
laryngotracheal reconstruction, cricotracheal resection, laryngotracheoplasty, 1224–1227
myringotomy and tympanostomy tube placement, 1210–1212
neck abscess, incision/drainage of, 1222–1224
tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy, 1212–1215
tracheostomy, 1229–1230
Otologic surgery, 244–249, 244*f*, 245*f*
Otoplasty, 1462–1465, 1463*f*
Out-of-operating room procedures
adult, 1484–1533
pediatric, 1484–1507
Ovarian cancer
cytoreductive laparotomy, 764–767
staging laparotomy for, 640*f*, 760–763, 760*f*
Ovarian cystectomies, 811–812
Ovarian endometriosis, 863, 863*f*, 864–865
Ovarian tumors, laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
Oxycephaly, 1436
Oxytocin, uterine inversion and, 859

P

Pacemaker (PM)
extraction of, 1500–1502
five position code, 376*t*, 1505
insertion, 376–378
Pain
of central origin, 77
surgical analgesics for chronic, 77–80
Pain management
adult, C–1–C–5
FLACC pain scale, E–3*f*
pediatric, E–1–E–8
Wong–Baker faces scale, E–2*f*
Palatopharyngoplasty, 207
Palatoplasty, 1450–1453, 1451*f*, 1452*f*, 1460–1462
Pallidotomy, 71–74, 72*f*
Palmar fasciectomy, 940–941, 943–945
Pancreas
anatomy, 629*f*
transplants, 696–700, 697*f*

Pancreas after kidney (PAK) transplant, 696–700, 697*f*
Pancreatectomy, 629–631, 629*f*, 630*f*, 634–637
Pancreatic duct
  anatomy, 521*f*
  duodenotomy, 509–510, 520–521, 521*f*
Pancreatic pseudocyst, drainage, 625–627, 626*f*, 634–637
Pancreatic surgery
  pancreatectomy, 629–631, 629*f*, 630*f*, 634–637
  pancreatic pseudocyst, drainage, 625–627, 626*f*, 634–637
  pancreaticojejunostomy, longitudinal, 627–628, 628*f*, 634–637
  pancreatitis, drainage, 624–625, 625*f*, 634–637
  Whipple resection, 627, 632–637, 632*f*
Pancreaticoduodenectomy, 502, 577
  Whipple resection, 632–637, 632*f*
Pancreaticojejunostomy
  longitudinal, 627–628, 628*f*, 634–637
  Whipple resection, 627
Pancreatitis
  biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
  drainage, 624–625, 625*f*, 634–637
  duodenotomy, 509–510, 520–521, 521*f*
  pancreatectomy, 629–631, 629*f*, 630*f*, 634–637
  pancreaticojejunostomy, longitudinal, 627–628, 628*f*, 634–637
  Whipple resection, 627, 632–637, 632*f*
Pancuronium, doses/duration/onset, B–2, B–3
Panendoscopy, 183–184
Pannus formation, 53*f*
Parametrial disease, laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
Parathyroidectomy, 678–682, 678*f*, 679*f*
Parenchymal lacerations, 742
Parietal cell vagotomy (PCV), peptic ulcer disease, 506–510, 507*f*
Parkinson's disease (PD), 73
Parkland technique, postpartum tubal ligation, 845–848
Parks repair, fecal incontinence, 558–561
Parotidectomy
  microsurgical techniques, 225
  procedure, 224–226, 224*f*, 225*f*
  radical, 224
  superficial, 224
  supraneural, 224
  total, 225
Partial-thickness transplants, 147. *See also* Lamellar keratoplasty
Patella fractures, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1041–1042
Patella realignment, 1044–1045, 1044*f*
  pediatric, 1420–1422, 1426–1431
Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), surgery for 1244–1247, 1245*f*
Patil–Syracuse mask, 185
Pectoralis flap, 1160–1162
Pectus excavatum/carinatum repair, 295–298
  pediatric, 1301–1304, 1302*f*
Pediatric anesthetic management standards, D–1–D–5
Pediatric heart transplant, 464–469
Pediatric out-of-operating room procedures, 1484–1507
Pediatric pain management, E–1–E–8
Pediatric surgery
  bariatric, 1350–1354, 1351*f*–1352*f*
  cardiovascular, 1232–1280
  craniofacial malformations, 1436–1442
  general, 1282–1354
  neurosurgery, 1178–1195
  ophthalmic, 1198–1208
  orthopedic, 1383–1434
  otolaryngology, 1229–1230
  transplants, 1468–1480
  urology, 1358–1381
Pediatric trauma, airway and vascular access, 754–756, 755*f*
Pedicle screw stabilization, 124
Pedicled muscle flaps, 299
Pedicled TRAM flaps, 1157–1158, 1158*f*
Pelvic endometriosis, 862, 863*f*, 864–865
Pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Pelvic infection, laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
Pelvic laparotomy, 811–813, 815
Pelvic lymphadenectomy, 768
Pelvic organ prolapse (POP), 872–875
Pelvic osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
Pelvis
  acetabulum fractures, open reduction and internal fixation, 1008–1010, 1008*f*, 1009*f*, 1014–1018
  amputations around, 1014–1018
  closed reduction and external fixation, 1006–1007, 1014–1018
  open reduction and internal fixation, 1004–1006
  osteotomy and bone graft augmentation, 1010–1012, 1011*f*, 1014–1018
  sacroiliac joint arthrodesis, 1012–1018
Pemberton osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
Pena procedure, 1335
Penectomy, 910–913, 911*f*
Penetrating keratoplasty (PKP), 146
Penis
  anatomy, 911*f*
  circumcision, 1369–1370, 1372–1373
  hypospadias repair, 910, 1369–1370, 1372–1373
  impotence and insertion of penile prosthesis, 910–913, 911*f*
  inguinal operations and cancer, 906–910
  nerve block, 1370
  pediatric surgery, 1369–1370, 1372–1373
Pentalogy of Cantrell, 1328–1331, 1328*f*
Pentoxifylline, drug interactions, F–13
Peptic ulcer disease (PUD), surgery for, 506–510, 507*f*
  laparoscopic repair for perforated, 584–585, 591–594
Percutaneous approach, subphrenic abscess, drainage of, 649–650, 649*f*
Percutaneous balloon compression, 89
Percutaneous discectomy, 984–985
Percutaneous electrodes, 77
Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG), 517–518
Percutaneous epiphysiodesis, 1415–1417, 1415*f*, 1426–1431
Percutaneous nephrostomy, 880–882
Percutaneous pinning of supracondylar humerus fracture, 1384–1385, 1384*f*, 1393–1395
Pereyra vesicle neck suspension, 829
Perforator ligation, 457–458, 460–461
Peribulbar injections, 158, 1198
Pericardial window, 738
Pericardiectomy, 379–382
Pericardiocentesis, 738, 1578, 1579*f*
Pericarditis, 379–382
Perineal approach, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Perineal operations, 916–918, 916*f*
Perineal rectosigmoidectomy, 550
Perineal sagittal anorectoplasty (PSARP), 1335
Periorbital osteotomies, 1442–1446, 1443*f*
Peripheral artery embolism, 435–439
Peripheral vascular disease (PVD), infrainguinal arterial bypass, 434–437
Peristomal hernia repair, 545–549
Peritomy, 168
Peritoneal cancer, staging laparotomy for, 760–763, 760*f*
Peritoneal surgery
  abdominal dehiscence, repair of, 655–658
  herniorrhaphy, femoral, 653–654, 653*f*, 656–658
  herniorrhaphy, inguinal, 651–652, 652*f*, 656–658
  incisional hernia, repair of, 654–658
  intra-abdominal and retroperitoneal tumors, excision of, 647–648
  laparotomy, exploratory/staging, 640–645, 640*f*
  splenectomy, 645–647, 646*f*
  subphrenic abscess, drainage of, 649–650, 649*f*

Permacath DL catheters, 454
Permanent vascular access, 453–456
Permax, 73
Peyronie's disease, 940
Pfeiffer syndrome, 1436
Phacoemulsification, 144
Pharyngeal flap, 1453–1456, 1453*f*, 1460–1462
Pharyngoesophageal diverticulectomy, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*
Pharyngoplasty, 1453–1456, 1453*f*, 1454*f*, 1460–1462
Phemister technique, 1415, 1415*f*
Phenothiazines, drug interactions, F–5, F–13
Phenytoin, drug interactions, F–5
Pheochromocytoma
  anesthetic issues, 689–691
  laparoscopic adrenalectomy, 599–601, 599*f*
Photodynamic therapy, 320
Pigeon breast/chest, pectus carinatum pediatric, 1301–1304, 1302*f*
Pimozide, drug interactions, F–5
Pinch graft, 558
Pinocchio nose, 1102–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
Piperacillin/tazobactam, drug interactions, F–5
Pituitary surgery, endoscopic sinus surgery complications, 232
Pituitary tumor, transsphenoidal resection of, 52–57, 53*f*
Placenta, removal of retained, 854–857
Plagiocephaly, 1436
Plastic and reconstructive surgery
  abdominal, 1116–1120
  arms, 1114–1116
  body lifts, 1120–1121
  breast, 1108–1114
  burn, 1154–1173
  craniofacial, 1128–1145
  facial cosmetic, 1090–1105
  functional, 1148–1166
  liposuction, 1122–1125
Pleural abrasion, blebs/bullae excision, 333
Pleurectomy, blebs/bullae excision, 333
Pneumatic dilation, achalasia, 588
Pneumonectomy, 281–290, 282*t*, 283*f*, 284*f*, 286*t*
  procedures, 281–289, 283*f*–284*f*
  risk assessment, 286*t*
  spirometric criteria for resection, 282*t*
  VATS, 326
Pneumonitis bronchopulmonary lavage, 340–343
Pneumothorax
  neonatal, 1295–1299, 1296*f*
  simple, 731–732
  tension, 730–732
Poliomyelitis, 1405–1407, 1426–1431
Pollicization, finger, 1390–1392, 1391*f*, 1393–1395
Polypeptide antibiotics, drug interactions, F–5–F–6
Pomeroy technique, postpartum tubal ligation, 845–848
Port access coronary artery revascularization, 355–359
Portacath devices, 454
Portacaval shunt, 446
Port-access approach, mitral valve surgery, 394–396, 395*f*
Port-access coronary artery, minimally invasive, 389–393, 390*f*–392*f*, 393*t*
Portal hypertension
  anesthetic issues, 448–450
  non-shunt procedures, 447–448
  shunt procedures, 445–447, 445*f*
  surgery for, 444–450
Portal triad, 747
Portal vein approach, 696–700, 697*f*
Portarenal shunt, 446
Portazygos disconnection, 447
Portoenterostomy, 1323–1326, 1324*f*
Portosystemic shunt, 445
Positron emission tomography (PET), 1516–1521
Posterior approach, lumbar sympathectomy, 440, 440*f*
Posterior cervical lateral mass screw fixation, 104, 104*f*
Posterior cervical wiring techniques, 103
Posterior fusion/fixation of mid and lower cervical spine, 100–103, 100*f*–101*f*
Posterior fusion/fixation of mid and upper cervical spine, 96–99, 97*f*–98*f*
Posterior lumbar interbody fusion (PLIF), 124
Posterior lumbar spinal fusion, 124–125
Posterior pelvic exenteration. *See* Pelvic exenteration
Posterior spinal instrumentation and fusion, 1396–1399, 1396*f*, 1397*f*
Posterior sternoclavicular dislocations, 973–974, 976–978
Posterior tendon repair, 1048–1052
Posterolateral fusion (PLF), 124
Postoperative extubation, I–4
Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV), preventing, B–6–B–7
Postpartum hemorrhage (PPH), 841–843
Postpartum tubal ligation, 845–848
Potts shunt, 1270
PPIs, drug interactions, F–13
Prasugeral, drug interactions, F–13
Pregnancy
  anesthesia for laparoscopy in, 619–621
  cesarean section, 834–841, 834*f*
  dilatation and evacuation (D&E), 803–807, 804*f*
  dilation and curettage (D&C), 802–803, 803*f*, 805–807
  ectopic, 812, 865–867
  hemorrhage, postpartum, 841–843
  hysteroscopy, 807–811, 808*f*
  induced hypertension (PIH), 836–837
  shallow cone in, 773–776, 773*f*
  suction curettage for, 777–781, 778*f*, 803
  test, preoperative, A–4
  therapeutic abortion, 803–807, 804*f*
Preinduction checklist, anesthetic protocols for adult, B–2
Premedication standards
  adult, B–1
  pediatric, D–1
Preoperative issues
  beta-blocker therapy, A–5, A–6*t*
  cardiac rhythm management device, A–4–A–5
  laboratory testing and diagnostic studies, A–2–A–4, A–3*t*
Preprosthetic surgery, 272
Presacral neurectomy, 812
Pressure sores, reconstruction, 1162–1166, 1163*f*
Pringle maneuver, 564, 567, 747, 748*f*
Procainamide, drug interactions, F–6
Procaine, drug interactions, F–6
Procidentia, 549–551, 559–561
Proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Proctoscopy, rigid, 551
Prolactin-secreting tumor, transsphenoidal resection, 52–57, 53*f*
Propofol, induction, B–2
Prostate
  operations, open, 887–891, 887*f*, 888*f*, 889*f*
  transurethral resection of (TURP), 883–886, 883*f*
Prostatectomy, simple and radical, 887–891, 887*f*, 888*f*, 889*f*
Prosthetic graft, for hemodialysis, 451–453, 451*f*, 452*f*, 455–456
Protamine, 137
Protease inhibitors, drug interactions, F–6
Proximal femoral osteotomy, 1033–1034
Proximal humerus fractures, 973–974, 976–978
Proximal interphalangeal joint arthroplasty, 931–932, 936–938
Psoas hitch procedure, 904
Psoas release, 1409–1410, 1426–1431
Pterional craniotomy, 4–5
Pterygium excision, 157–162, 158*f*, 160*f*
Ptosis repair, 153–155, 154*f*
Pull-through
  for Hirschsprung's disease, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
  for imperforate anus, 1335–1337

Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis, 340–343
Pulmonary artery
banding, 1237, 1237f, 1271
and veins, chest trauma and repair of, 740–741
Pulmonary HTN
heart/lung transplant, 469–474
tricuspid valve repair/replacement, 369–372
Pulmonary resections, 742
Pulmonic valvuloplasty, 1490
Pyelolithotomy, 896–899, 896*f*
Pyeloplasty, 895–899, 896*f*
pediatric, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
Pyloroplasty (pyloromyotomy), 492–498, 494*f*, 495*f*, 505
pediatric, 1312–1315, 1313*f*
peptic ulcer disease, 506–510, 507*f*

Q

Quickert procedure, 152
Quinidine, drug interactions, F–6
Quinolones, drug interactions, F–6

R

Radiation therapy
pediatric, 1484–1488
postop, 768
Radical neck dissection (RND), 218
Radiofrequency (RF), 262
ablation, 1526–1530
rhizotomy, 88, 89
Radiolunate arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
Radioscapholunate arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
Radiosurgery, 65
Radiotherapy, cervical cancer, 796
Rapid-flush technique, 721–722
Rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia, B–5–B–6
Rashkind septostomy, 1262, 1491
Rastelli procedure, 1253, 1262
Ravitch approach, 1301–1304, 1302*f*
Raynaud's phenomenon, lumbar sympathectomy, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
Raz bladder neck suspension, 919
Rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Rectocele, repair of, 920–921
Rectopexy, 549–551, 559–561
Rectus abdominis muscle flap, pelvic exenteration, 781–786, 782*f*, 784*f*
Rectus flap, 1160–1162
Recurrent acute otitis media (RAOM), myringotomy and tympanostomy tube placement, 1210–1212
Recurrent laryngeal nerve (RLN), 995
Reduction mammoplasty, 1110–1111, 1110*f*, 1113–1114
Refractory psychosis, electroconvulsive therapy for, 1484–1489
Renal function test, preoperative, A–2
Renal pelvis, operations on, 895–899, 896*f*
Renal transplants, pediatric, 1468–1472
Replantation
digit/hand, 953–956
microsurgery, 1152–1155
Restorative dentistry, 273–275
Restorative proctocolectomy, 540
Retinal detachments, 171
Retinal surgery, 171–176, 172*f*
Retinoblastoma, pediatric radiation therapy, 1484–1488
Retrobulbar injections/block, 158, 1198
Retrocolic approach, laparoscopic bariatric surgery, 612
Retroperitoneal approach
abdominal aorta aneurysms, surgery of, 428–433, 429*f*, 430*f*
lumbar sympathectomy and anterolateral, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
spinal reconstruction and fusion, 992–995, 992*f*
Retropharyngeal approach, high cervical anterior, 94
Revascularization
all-arterial, 354
minimally invasive, 389–393, 390*f*–392*f*, 393*t*
port access coronary artery, 355
Rhinoplasty, 237, 1101–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
Rhinoplasty-septorhinoplasty, 237
Rhizotomy, dorsal and RF, 88–90
Rhytidectomy, 1090–1094, 1091*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1101
Rib resection, 301
Rickets, 1417–1418, 1426–1431
Rifamycin derivatives, drug interactions, F–6
Rigid bronchoscopy, 320
Ripstein procedure, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Risdon osteotomies, mandibular, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
Rivaroxaban, drug interactions, F–13
Robotic assisted procedures, 1378–1380
Robotic pyeloplasty, 1378
Robotic vesicoureteral reimplantation, 1378
Robotic-assisted hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Robotic-assisted laparoscopic surgery, 922
endometriosis, 862–865, 863*f*
exploratory/staging, for uterine cancer, 787–790
hysterectomy, 869–871
myomectomy, 867–869
and surgery in gynecologic oncology, 794–795
Rocuronium, doses/duration/onset, B–2–B–3
Ropivacaine, drug interactions, F–6
Rose position, for tonsillectomy, 207, 208*f*
Rossetti modification, 585
Rotation advancement flap of Millard, 1447, 1447*f*
Rotator cuff (RC)
repair, 958–960, 966–968
tears, 960–963, 961*f*, 962*f*, 966–968
Roux-en-Y cholecystojejunostomy, 575
Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*, 611, 1351
Roux-en-Y loop of jejunum, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510, 626, 626*f*
Roux–Goldthwait patellar realignment, 1420–1422, 1426–1431
Rubber-band ligation, 556, 557
Ruptured/lacerated globe repair, 162–165
Rutledge modified hysterectomy, 790

S

Sacrococcygeal teratoma, resection of, 1342–1344
Sacrocolpopexy, 824–828, 825*f*
Sacroiliac joint arthrodesis, 1012–1018
Sacrospinous ligament vaginal vault suspension, 824–828, 825*f*
Saddle nose, 1102–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
Saethre–Chotzen syndrome, 1436
Sagittal ramus split osteotomies, 1140–1145, 1140*f*–1142*f*
Salpingectomy, total, 866
Salpingo-oophorectomy, bilateral/unilateral, 760–763, 760*f*, 820, 862
Salter's innominate osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
Saphenous cutdown, pediatric, 756
Sarcoidosis, heart/lung transplant, 469–474
Satinsky clamp, 750
Scalp
flap, 17
microsurgery replantation, 1152–1155
resuspension/resection, 1095–1097, 1095*f*, 1096*f*
Scaphocephaly, 1436
Scapular fractures, 973–974, 976–978
Scapulothoracic dissociations, 973–974, 976–978
Scheuermann's kyphosis, 990
Schwannomas, vestibular, 255
Scleral buckles, 172
Sclerotherapy, 556
Scoliosis
anterior spinal fusion, 1399–1401, 1399*f*, 1400*f*
posterior spinal instrumentation and fusion, 1396–1399, 1396*f*, 1397*f*
Scopolamine, premedication, B–1
Scrotal operations, 913–916, 914*f*
Seashore sign, 1585*f*
Second look laparotomy, for ovarian cancer, 764–767

Segmental colectomy, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
Segmentectomy, liver resection and left lateral, 564–566
Seldinger technique, 706, 1488–1489
Selective amygdalohippocampectomy, 84
Selective dorsal rhizotomy, 87
Selective estrogen receptor modulators, drug interactions, F–13
Selective neck dissection (SND), 219
Senning atrial switch, 1262
Sentinel lymph node biopsy, 661–664, 662*f*
Septal deviation, 1102–1104, 1102*t*, 1103*f*
Septal myectomy/myotomy, 372–375
Septectomy, atrial, 1262
Septic arthritis, 1431
Septoplasty, 232, 237
Septorhinoplasty, 1101
Seton, 555
Shallow cone in pregnancy, 773–776, 773*f*
Shirodkar cerclage, 851–854
Shoulder
  anatomy of, 959*f*
  frozen, 958
Shoulder surgery
  acromial impingement, rotator cuff tears, and acromioclavicular joint arthritis, 960–963, 961*f*, 962*f*, 966–968
  arthroscopic, 958–960, 966–968
  brachial plexus, 974–978, 975*f*
  girdle procedures, 973–974, 976–978
  glenohumeral arthroplasty, 969–973, 969*f*
  instability, 964–968, 965*f*
Shouldice repair, 651
Shunts
  Blalock–Taussig systemic-to-pulmonary artery, 1252–1258, 1253*f*, 1270
  Glenn, 1270
  Potts, 1270
  Pulmonary artery banding, 1252, 1271
  transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic, 1507–1512, 1507*f*
  Waterston, 1270
Shunts, for portal hypertension, 444
  anesthetic issues, 448–450
  Clatworthy, 446
  end-to-side, 445, 445*f*, 446
  mesocaval, 445*f*, 446
  portacaval, 446
  portarenal, 446
  portosystemic, 445
  shunt procedures, 445–447, 445*f*
  side-to-side, 445–446, 445*f*
  splenorenal, 445*f*, 446
  surgery for, 444–450
  Warren, 446
Sibutramine, drug interactions, F–6
Sick sinus syndrome (SSS), 376–378
Side-to-side shunt, 445–446, 445*f*
Sigmoid resection, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Silicone tracheobronchial stents, 1521–1526
Simons procedure for clubfoot, 1425–1431
Simultaneous kidney/pancreas transplant (SPK), 696–700, 697*f*
Single-lumen tube, one-lung ventilation, pediatric, 1298
Sinuses
  endoscopic sinus surgery, 229–234
  external sinus surgery, 235–236, 235*f*
Sistrunk procedure, 670, 1221
Skeletal fixation, 1060–1061, 1083–1085
Skull base surgery, 250
Skull tumor, craniotomy for, 36–37
Sleep-disordered breathing, reconstructive surgery, 258–266, 258*f*–262*f*
Sleeve gastrectomy, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*, 1350, 1351
Sling procedure, rectal prolapse, 549–551, 559–561
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE), 1410–1411, 1426–1431
Small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
Smooth emergence from anesthesia, 180
Soave pull-through for Hirschsprung's disease, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
Soavé–Kapandji procedure, 928–929, 928*f*, 936–938
Sofield procedure, 1417–1418, 1426–1431
Somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEP), 1396
Sotalol, drug interactions, F–6
Southwick, 1414–1415, 1426–1431
Spasticity, 73
  functional neurosurgery for, 87–88
Spermatocelectomy, 913
Spherocytosis, laparoscopic splenectomy, 595–598, 595*f*, 596*f*
Sphincter deficiency, stress urinary incontinence, 828–832
Sphincter stretch, 557
Sphincteroplasty
  biliary drainage and open/transduodenal, 574–576, 580–581
  fecal incontinence, 558–561
Spina bifida
  bladder operations, open, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
  closure of myelomeningocele, 1181–1184
Spinal anesthesia and analgesia, pediatric, D–4–D–5
Spinal cord, tethered, 1185–1187
Spinal dysraphism, correction of, 1184–1187
Spinal instrumentation and fusion, 1396–1399, 1396*f*, 1397*f*
Spinal neurosurgery, cervial
  anesthetic considerations, 108–114
  cervicothoracic, anterior, 107–108
  mid and lower, anterior fusion, 100–103, 100*f*, 101*f*
  mid and lower, posterior fusion, 103–107, 104*f*, 105*f*
  upper, anterior fusion, 94–96, 94*f*, 95*f*
  upper, posterior fusion, 96–99, 97*f*, 98*f*
Spinal neurosurgery, lumbar/lumbosacral
  anesthetic considerations, 127–130
  anterior, 119–121, 119*f*
  combined instrumentation, anterior and posterior, 126
  posterior, 122–123
  posterior fusion and instrumentation, 124–125
Spinal neurosurgery, thoracic
  anesthetic considerations, 127–130
  anterior, 114–116
  combined instrumentation, anterior and posterior, 126
  posterior, 116–118
Spinal reconstruction and fusion of thoracic and thoracolumbar spine, 988–992, 989*f*, 990*f*
Spinal surgery, lumbar/lumbosacral
  anterior lumbar interbody fusion, 985–988
  minimally invasive posterior discectomy, 984–985
  reconstruction and fusion of, 992–995, 992*f*, 993*f*
Spinal surgery, thoracic procedures, 988–991, 989*f*
Spironolactone, drug interactions, F–6
Spleen
  anatomy of, 595*f*, 646*f*
  injuries, 747–749, 748*f*
Splenectomy, 447
  laparoscopic, 595–598, 595*f*, 596*f*
  laparotomy, exploratory/staging, 640–645, 640*f*
  procedures, 645–647, 646*f*
Splenorenal shunt, 445*f*, 446
Splenorrhaphy, 645–647, 646*f*
SSRIs, drug interactions, F–6, F–13
Stab avulsion technique, varicose vein stripping, 458–461
Staging laparotomy for ovarian, fallopian tube, and peritoneal cancer, 760–763, 760*f*
Stallard–Wright incision, 170
Stallworthy modified hysterectomy, 790
Stamey vesicle neck suspension, 829, 919, 919*f*
Stamm gastrostomy, 517–518
Stapedectomy, 245

Stapled hemorrhoidopexy, 556–561
Stapling, 290, 290*f*
  blebs/bullae excision, 333
  esophageal transection with, 446, 447
Steel osteotomy, 1401–1403, 1402*f*, 1426–1431
Stent(s)
  biliary, 575
  endoscopic/transhepatic, 577
  endovascular, 1490
  grafting of aortic aneurysms, endovascular, 412–416
  tracheobronchial, 1521–1526
Stereotactic craniotomy, 17
Stereotactic localization, 19
Stereotactic procedures, 73–76
Stereotactic radiosurgery, 17
Sternocleidomastoid (SCM), 995
Sternotomy
  complete, 330
  median, 278, 282, 290, 308
Sternotomy, median, 735, 738
  excision of mediastinal tumor, 1292–1295
  lesions, wedge resection, 290–293, 290*f*
  mitral valve surgery, 394–396, 395*f*
  pericardiectomy, 378–382
  thoracic surgery and patient positioning and surgical incisions, 278, 278*f*
Stoma closure/peristomal hernia repair, 545–549
Stomach surgery
  gastric resection, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
  gastric/duodenal perforation, 505–506, 509–510
  gastroplasty, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*
  gastrostomy placement, 517–518
  obesity, 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*
  peptic ulcer disease, 506–510, 507*f*
Stone disease, biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Stone procedures, 1380–1381
Strabismus, surgery, 1198–1201
Strassmann procedure, 815
Stress urinary incontinence, 828–832, 918–921
Strictures
  cystoscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882
  esophagus-foreign body removal and dilation, 1285–1287
  transurethral resection (TUR), 880–882
Stridor
  absent, 206
  laryngoscopy, supraglottoplasty, excision of laryngeal lesions, 1217–1220
  moderate, 206
  severe, 206
  tracheal resection, 201
Strokes
  carotid endarterectomy for, 134–140
  cerebral revascularization, 1491–1495
Subacromial decompression (SAD), 958–960, 966–968
Subacromial impingement, 958–963, 966–968
Subclavian artery flap, 1248
Subcutaneous dissection, 1090
Subglottic hemangioma, pediatric, 1224–1227
Subglottic stenosis, pediatric, 1224–1227
Sublaminar wiring, 103
Submandibular gland excision, 226–229, 227*f*
Subperiosteal dissection, 1090
Subphrenic abscess, drainage of, 649–650, 649*f*
Subscapularis-releasing technique, 964
SubSMAS technique, 1090
Subtemporal craniectomy, 84
Subtotal hysterectomy, 842
Subtotal laparoscopic hysterectomy (SLH), 869–871
Subtrochanteric femoral fractures, 1026–1029
Succinylcholine
  doses/duration/onset, B–2
  drug interactions, F–7
Suction curettage for gestational trophoblastic disease, 777–781, 778*f*
Sugiura procedure, 446, 447
Superficial temporal artery (STA)-to-middle cerebral artery (MCA) branch anastomosis, 23, 24*f*
Superficial venous thrombosis, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
Superior labral anterior-posterior (SLAP) tears, 958–960, 966–968
Supine position, thoracic surgery, 278, 278*f*
  percutaneous pinning of supracondylar humerus fracture, 1384–1385, 1384*f*, 1393–1395
Supine retroperitoneal approach, 120
Suppurative thrombophlebitis, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
Supracervical/total hysterectomy, 842
Supracondylar humerus fracture, percutaneous pinning of, 1384–1385, 1384*f*, 1393–1395
Supracricoid laryngectomy, 203, 203*f*
Supraglottic laryngectomy, 203, 203*f*
Supraglottoplasty, 1217–1220
Supraomohyoid neck dissection (SOHND), 219
Surgical extractions, teeth, 272
Surgical myotomy, achalasia, 588
Surgical paddle electrodes, 77
Swenson pull-through for Hirschsprung's disease, 1331–1334, 1332*f*
Syed–Neblett applicator, 796
Syme ankle amputation, 1066–1068, 1066*f*, 1067*f*, 1083–1085
Sympathectomy
  lumbar, 435–437, 439–442, 440*f*
  upper dorsal, 326
Syndactyly repair, 1392–1395
Synovectomy
  extensor, 929–931, 930*f*, 935–938
  hip, 1022–1026
  and ligament reconstruction, CMC joint, 935–938
Syringomyelia, 61

T

Tamponade release, 738
Tangential excision, burns and, 1154–1173
Tansforaminal lumbar interbody fusion (TLIF), 125
Tarsal strip procedure, 151
  lateral, 152
Taussig-Bing double-outlet right ventricle, 1274–1276, 1274*f*
TCAs, drug interactions, F–7, F–13
Technetium-labeled sulfur colloid (TSC), sentinel lymph node biopsy, 661–664, 662*f*
Teeth
  exposure of, 272
  surgical extractions, 272
Telaprevir, drug interactions, F–7
Temporal lobectomy, 81, 83
Temporomandibular joint (TMJ)
  arthroscopy, 270, 270*f*
  arthrotomy, 270, 270*f*
  procedure, 270–271, 270*f*
Tendons
  lengthening of leg, 1083–1085
  lengthening of tendon, 1070
  repair of knee, 1048–1052
  transfer/lengthening, 1422–1423, 1426–1431
Tennis elbow, 978
Tennison lip repair, 1447
Tenosynovectomy, 929–931, 930*f*, 936–938
Tenosynovitis, 929–931, 930*f*, 936–938
Tension-free vaginal tape (TVT), 829–830
Testicular prosthesis, insertion of, 913
Testicular torsion, 913
Testis
  orchiectomy, radical for cancer, 906–910
  orchiopexy for undescended, 906–910, 1340–1341, 1374–1381
  torsion, 1374
Tetracyclines, drug interactions, F–7
Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF), 1252–1258, 1253*f*
Texas Scottish Rite Hospital (TSRH), 1396, 1399
Thalamic DBS, 77
Thalamotomy, 74*f*, 75–78

Theophylline, drug interactions, F–7, F–13
Therapeutic abortion, 803–807, 804*f*
Thermocoagulation, 883
Thermotherapy, 883–886
Thiazide diuretics, drug interactions, F–7
Thiersch operation, fecal incontinence, 558–561
Thigh, fasciotomy of, 1075–1077, 1076*f*, 1079–1080
Thiopental, induction, B–2
Thiotepa, drug interactions, F–7
Thoracic aortic aneurysms
  dissections, 416–421
  endovascular stent-grafting, 412–416
  repair of, 409–411
Thoracic endometriosis, 863*f*, 864, 865
Thoracic pedicle screws, 118
Thoracic surgery
  airway and lung access conflicts, 278
  airway laser surgery, 324–326
  anterior reconstruction and fusion of, 997–1000, 997*f*
  blebs/bullae excision, 333–336
  bronchopulmonary lavage, 340–343
  bronchoscopy, flexible and rigid, 320–324, 320*f*
  chest-wall resection, 293–294
  empyema drainage, 300–304
  endobronchial ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration (EBUS-TBNA), 315–319, 316*f*
  lobectomy/pneumonectomy, 281–290, 282*t*, 283*f*, 284*f*, 286*t*
  lung transplant, 344
  lung-volume reduction surgery, 336–340
  mediastinal tumor excision, 308–309
  mediastinoscopy, 309–315, 310*f*–313*f*
  patient positioning and surgical incisions, 278–281, 278*f*–280*f*
  pectus excavatum/carinatum repair, 295–298
  postoperative issues, 281
  reconstruction and fusion of, 988–992, 989*f*, 990*f*
  technique in pediatrics, D–4
  thoracoplasty, 299–300, 300*f*
  thymectomy, 329–333
  tracheal resection, 304–308, 305*f*
  tubes and tube sizes, 278
  video-assisted thoracoscopy surgery, 326–329, 327*f*
  wedge resection, lung lesion, 290–293, 290*f*
Thoracoabdominal aorta aneurysms (TAA), repair of, 422–428, 423*f*, 424*f*
  Crawford's classification, 422, 423*f*
  inclusion technique, 422, 424*f*
Thoracoabdominal esophagosgastrectomy, 492–498, 494*f*, 495*f*
Thoracoplasty, 299–300, 300*f*
Thoracoscopic decortication, 1299–1301
Thoracostomy, emergency tube, 730–732, 731*f*
Thoracotomy
  anterolateral, 732–733
  emergency, 732–733
  3-incision technique, 768*f*, 769–772, 769*f*
  lateral, 308, 1292–1295
  limited, 290
  mitral valve surgery and limited, 394–396, 395*f*
  open, 301, 333
  pediatric, 1287, 1299–1301
  pericardiectomy, 379–382
  posterolateral, 278
  standard, 290
Thrombectomy, venous, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), laparoscopic splenectomy, 595–598, 595*f*, 596*f*
Thumb, aplastic/hypoplastic, 1390–1392, 1391*f*, 1393–1395
Thymectomy, 329–333
  transcervical, 330
Thymoma, 329
  mediastinal tumor, excision of, 308–309
  mediastinoscopy, 309–315, 310*f*–313*f*
Thyroglossal duct cyst
  excision of, 670–672, 670*f*, 671*f*, 674–677
  pediatric removal of, 1221–1224
  pediatric resection of, 1282–1284
Thyroid meds, drug interactions, F–13
Thyroidectomy, 672–677, 672*f*, 673*f*
Thyroplasty, 197, 199
Tibia
  closed reduction and external fixation of, 1058–1059, 1083–1085
  intramedullary nailing of, 1057–1058, 1083–1085
  nonunion/malunion of, 1060–1061, 1083–1085
Tibial plateau fracture, open reduction and internal fixation of, 1056–1057, 1083–1085
Tibial tubercle transfer, 1044–1045, 1044*f*
Ticagrelor, drug interactions, F–13
Ticlopidine, drug interactions, F–13
Todani procedure, 1323
Tongue, glossectomy for lesions of, 212–214
Tongue-splitting transmandibular approach, 94
Tonsillectomy, 207–211, 208*f*
  pediatric, 1212–1215
Topical anesthesia, 158
Torticollis, release for, 1389–1390, 1393–1395
Total abdominal hysterectomy (TAH), 760–763, 760*f*
Total anomalous pulmonary venous connection (TAPVC), 1258–1262, 1259*f*
Total body irradiation (TBI), 1484–1488
Total cavopulmonary connection, 1270–1271
Total facetectomy, 125
Total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA), maintenance techniques, B–3
Total laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH), 869–871
Total laryngectomy (TL), 205
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN), permanent vascular access, 453–456
Total proctocolectomy, 539–541, 546–549
Total salpingectomy, 866
Total shoulder arthroplasty (TSA), 969–973, 969*f*
Total wrist replacement (TWR), 934–938
Totally implanted pump system, 78
Toupet procedure, 585, 586*f*
  esophageal fundoplication, 585–587, 586*f*, 591–594
  esophagogastric fundoplasty, 490–492, 491*f*, 494–498
Trabeculectomy, 148–150, 148*f*
Tracheal resection, 200–202
  cervical approach, 304
  procedure, 304–308, 305*f*
Tracheobronchial injuries, 742
Tracheobronchial stenting, 1521–1526
Tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF), repair, 1287–1291, 1288*f*
Tracheoesophageal puncture (TEP), 205
Tracheostomy, 52
  glossectomy, 212
  pediatric, 1229–1230
  procedures, 190–193, 728–730
Tracheotomy, 262
  procedures, 190–193
TRAM flap, 1160–1162
Transabdominal approach esophagomyotomy, 489–490, 489*f*, 494–498
Transabdominal preperitoneal (TAPP), laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair, 609–611, 609*f*
Transanal endoscopic microsurgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Transanal excision, rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Transarticular screw fixation, 96
Transaxial lumbo-sacral fusion (Trans1), 125
Transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVI), 396–400, 397*f*, 399*f*

Transcervical thymectomy, 330
Transclavicular approach, 107
Transdiaphragmatic approach, 989–990, 990*f*
Transduodenal sphincteroplasty, biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Transesophageal, 447
Transgastric varix ligation, 447
Transhepatic techniques, biliary drainage, 574–576, 580–581
Transient ischemic attack, carotid endarterectomy for, 134–140
Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts (TIPS), 1507–1512, 1507*f*
Transmetatarsal amputation, 1068–1069
Transobturator tape (TOT), 830
Transoral odontoid excision, 94
Transoral/transnasal approach, to cervicomedullary junction and odontoid, 50–52, 50*f*–51*f*
Transpedicular approach, 117
Transperitoneal approach, 120
  abdominal aorta aneurysms, surgery of, 428–433, 429*f*, 430*f*
  spinal reconstruction and fusion, 992–995, 993*f*
Transplants
  donation after cardiac death, 723
  double-lung, 344
  heart, 464–469
  heart/lung, 469–474
  kidney, cadaveric and live-donor, 694–700, 694*f*
  kidney nephrectomy, laparoscopic and open, 700–702, 701*f*
  kidney, pediatric, 1468–1472
  liver, 705–720
  liver, living donor, 718–720
  liver, pediatric, 1472–1480
  lung, 344, 469–474
  multiorgan procurement, 720–726, 721*f*
  pancreas, 696–700, 697*f*
  single-lung, 344
Transposition of great arteries (TGA), 1262–1266, 1263*f*
Transsacral (Kraske) excision, rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Transsphenoidal resection, of pituitary tumor, 52–57, 53*f*
Transsphincteric (Mason) excision, rectal surgery, 551–554, 552*f*, 559–561
Transsternal approach, 107
Transthoracic approach, 989, 989*f*
Transthoracic mediastinoscopy, 309, 310
Transureterourеterostomy (TUU), 896–899, 896*f*
  pediatric, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
Transurethral microwave thermotherapy (TUMT), 883
Transurethral needle ablation (TUNA), 883
Transurethral procedures, pediatric, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
Transurethral resection (TUR), 880–882
Transurethral resection of prostate (TURP), 883–886, 883*f*
Transvaginal oocyte retrieval (TVOR), 813–815
Transverse arch, thoracic aortic aneurysm repair, 409–411
Trauma
  colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
  craniotomy for, 37–43, 38*f*, 39*f*, 41*t*
  Glasgow coma scale, 41*t*
  hepatorrhaphy and liver, 566–569
  lobectomy/pneumonectomy for, 281–289
  surgical issues, 37, 38*f*, 39
Trauma surgery
  abdominal, 745–754
  airway and vascular access, pediatric, 754–756, 755*f*
  airway assessment and management, initial, 728–730, 729*f*
  chest, 738–745
  neck, 733–737, 734*f*
  thoracostomy, emergency tube, 730–732, 731*f*
  thoracotomy, emergency, 732–733
Triangular fibrocartilage complex (TFCC) tears, 946–949
Triceps-splitting approach, 978
Tricuspid atresia, 1270–1273, 1271*f*
Tricuspid regurgitation (TR), 369–372
Tricuspid valve repair/replacement, 369–372
Trigeminal nerve, microvascular decompression of, 78
Trigeminal neuralgia, percutaneous procedures for, 89–92
Trillat patellar realignment, 1420–1422, 1426–1431
Triple H therapy, 7
Triple-wire technique, 103
Trisegmentectomy, liver resection and, 564–566
Trismus, 1128
Truncus arteriosus, 1267–1270, 1267*f*
Tubal cannulation, proximal, 816
Tubal embryo transfer (TET), 816
Tubal ligation, postpartum, 845–848
Tubal reanastomosis, 815
Tubal resection, segmental, 866
Tube cholecystostomy, 573
Tuberculosis
  spinal reconstruction and fusion, 992–995, 992*f*, 993*f*
  thoracoplasty, 299–300, 300*f*
Tubes and tube sizes, 278
Tuboovarian abscess (TOA), ectopic pregnancy/adnexal mass, 866, 867
Tumors
  biopsy/resection, 1292–1295, 1292*f*
  craniotomy for, 29–34, 29*t*–30*t*
  embolization, 1490, 1492–1495
  excision, 978
  external sinus surgery, 235–236, 235*f*
  mediastinal tumor, 308–309
  tracheal resection, 304–308, 305*f*
Turbinate reduction, 232
Turco procedure for clubfoot, 1425–1431
Turkey gobbler neck, 1092–1095, 1099–1101
Tympanomastoidectomy, 245
Tympanostomy tube placement, 1210–1212
Tympanotomy, exploratory, 245

U

Uchida technique, postpartum tubal ligation, 845–848
Ulcerative colitis (UC)
  colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
  proctocolectomy, total, 539–541, 546–549
Ulnar impingement syndrome
  Darrach procedure, 928–929, 928*f*, 936–938
  wrist arthroscopy, 946–949
Ultrasound (US) procedures, 1515–1521
Umbilical hernias, repair of, 1337–1340
Undescended testis, 906–910, 1340–1341, 1374–1376
Unicameral bone cyst (UBC), aspiration and injection of, 1387–1389, 1393–1395
Unilateral lavage, 340
United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS), 722
Universal Spine System (USS), 1396, 1399
Upper dorsal sympathectomy, 326
Upper sternal split, 330
Ureter, operations on upper, 895–899, 896*f*
Ureteral reimplantation, 904–906
Ureterolithotomy, 896–899, 896*f*
Ureteroscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882, 1380
Urethral diverticulum, excision of, 920–921
Urethrectomy, 916–917
Urethroplasty, 916–917, 1371–1374
Urethroscopy, 878–879
Urinary incontinence, stress, 828–832, 918–921
Urinary sphincter, 916–917
Urinary tract
  anatomy, 892f
  pediatric operations, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
Urinary tract, stones/tumors
  cystoscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882
  transurethral resection (TUR), 880–882

Urine analysis, preoperative, A–4
Urology
bladder operations, open, 903–906
cystectomy, 899–903, 900*f*, 901*f*
cystoscopy, 878–879, 878*f*, 879*f*, 881–882
inguinal operations, 906–910, 907*f*, 908*f*
nephrectomy, 891–895, 892*f*, 893*f*, 894*f*, 897–899
penis operations, 910–913, 911*f*
perineal operations, 916–918, 916*f*
prostate operations, open, 887–891, 887*f*, 888*f*, 889*f*
renal pelvis and upper ureter, 895–899, 896*f*
robotic-assisted laparoscopic procedures, 922
scrotal operations, 913–916, 914*f*
transurethral resection (TUR), 880–882
transurethral resection of prostate (TURP), 883–886, 883*f*
vaginal operations, 918–921, 919*f*
Urology, pediatric
bladder augmentation, 1367–1369
bladder operations, open, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
clitoroplasty, vaginoplasty and urethroplasty, 1371–1373
inguinoscrotal procedures, 1374–1376
kidney and upper urinary tract operations, 1358–1362, 1359*f*
laparoscopic procedures, 1377–1378
penile surgery, 1369–1370, 1372–1373
robotic assisted procedures, 1378–1380
stone procedures, 1380–1381
transurethral procedures, 1363–1364, 1372–1373
Uterine bleeding
dilation and curettage (D&C), 802–803, 803*f*, 805–807
hysteroscopy, 807–811, 808*f*
vaginal, abdominal, laparoscopic/robotic-assisted hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Uterine cancer, exploratory laparotomy, hysterectomy/BSO for, 787–790
Uterine devascularization, 841, 842
Uterine inversion, 858–860
Uterine myoma, 867–869
Uterine prolapse, laparoscopic hysterectomy, 869–871
Uterine rupture, repair of, 844–845
Uterosacral ligament
suspension, 827
vaginal vault suspension, 824–828, 825f
Uvulopalatal flap (UPF), 255*f*, 259
Uvulopalatopharyngoglossoplasty (UPPGP), 259
Uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP), 258, 258*f*

V

VACTERL syndrome, 1335
Vagina, anesthetic issues for laser therapy to, 776–777
Vaginal cancer
hysterectomy, radical, 790–794, 792*f*
interstitial perineal implants, 796–799, 797*f*
Vaginal hysterectomy, 820–824, 821*f*
Vaginal lacerations, repair of, 848–851
Vaginal vault suspension, 872–875
Vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy (VALH), 869–871
Vaginoplasty, 1371–1374
Vagotomy, 505
parietal cell, 506–510, 507*f*
Vagotomy and antrectomy (V&A), peptic ulcer disease, 506–510, 507*f*
Vagotomy and pyloroplasty (V&P), peptic ulcer disease, 506–510, 507*f*
Vagus nerve stimulation (VNS), 80–83
Valproic acid, drug interactions, F–13
Valsalva-like maneuver, 122
Valvular disease
aortic valve replacement, 361–364
heart transplant for end stage, 464–469
tricuspid valve, 369–372
Valvuloplasty, 457
aortic, 1489–1490
pulmonic, 1490
Vancomycin, drug interactions, F–7
Vaporization, 863, 883
Varicocele, ligation of spermatic vein, 906–910
Varicose vein stripping, 458–461
Vascular access
pediatric, 754–756, 755*f*
permanent, 453–456
Vascular injuries, 749–751
Vascular malformation
craniotomy for intracranial, 17–22, 18*f*–19*f*
stereotactic neurosurgery, 64–68
Vascular surgery. *See specific procedures*
Vascular tumors, 255
Vasospasm, cerebral revascularization, 1491–1455
Vasovasostomy, 913
Vecuronium
doses/duration/onset, B–2–B–3
drug interactions, F–7
Vein(s)
chest trauma and repair of, 740–741
excision, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
stripping and perforator ligation, 457–458, 460–461
transposition, 457
varicose, 458–461
Vein of Galen malformation
craniotomy for, 1187–1190
embolization, 1490, 1492–1495
Vemurafenib, drug interactions, F–7
Venotomy, 458–459
Venous air embolism, otologic procedures, 246
Venous surgery
thrombectomy/vein excision, 435–437, 442–444, 443*f*
vein stripping and perforator ligation, 457–458, 460–461
Venous thromboembolism (VTE) prophylaxis, B–8
Venous valve transplant, 457
Ventricular septal defect (VSD), 1241–1244, 1242*f*, 1490
Ventricular shunt, 57–61, 58*f*
Ventriculoarterial concordance, 1270
Ventriculoscopy, 1190–1194
Ventriculostomy, third, 1190–1194, 1191*f*
Verapamil, drug interactions, F–2
Veress needle, 585, 589
Vertical banded gastroplasty (VRG), 511–516, 511*f*, 512*f*, 513*f*, 611
Vertical partial laryngectomy (VPL), 203, 203*f*
Vesicoureteral reflux (VUR), bladder operations, open, 903–906
pediatric, 1365–1367, 1365*f*, 1372–1373
Vesicovaginal fistulas, 903–906, 918–921
Vestibular schwannomas, 250, 255
Video-assisted thoracoscopy surgery (VATS)
blebs/bullae excision, 333
mediastinal tumor excision, 308
procedure, 326–329, 327*f*
Vitrectomy, 173, 1202–1204
Vitreoretinal surgery
laser photocoagulation, 1202
vitrectomy, 1202–1204
Volvulus
colectomy, segmental/partial, 542–544, 542*f*, 546–549
small bowel resection with anastomosis, 530–531, 531*f*, 534–536
Von Langenbeck technique, 1450
Vulva
anesthetic issues for laser therapy to, 776–777
interstitial perineal implants, 796–799, 797*f*
reconstruction, 769
Vulvectomy, radical, 768–772, 768*f*, 769*f*

W

Wagner limb lengthening, 1418–1420, 1418*f*, 1426–1431
Waldhausen artery flap, 1248
Wardill–Kilner technique, 1450
Warfarin, drug interactions, F–13
Warren shunt, 446
Waterston shunt, 1270

Wedge resection, lung lesion, 290–293, 290*f*
Wegener's disease, 200
Wertheim modified hysterectomy, 790
Whipple procedure, 502
Whipple resection, 627, 632–637, 632*f*
Whitehead hemorrhoidectomy, 556–561
Williams airway, 185
Wilms' tumors, pediatric, 1316–1319, 1317*f*
Wong–Baker faces scale, E–2*f*
Wound dehiscence, repair of abdominal, 655–658
Wrist
  arthrodesis, 932–934, 936–938
  arthroscopy, 946–949
  fractures/dislocations, 950–953
  ganglion, excision of, 939–940, 943–945
  replacement, total, 934–938

X

X-ray
  fluoroscopy, 1516–1521
  preoperative chest, A–2

Y

Yacoub atrial switch, 1262
Yount–Ober release, 1405–1407, 1426–1431

Z

Zenker's diverticulectomy, 186, 195–197
Zenker's diverticulum, 184
  surgery for, 483–487, 484*f*–486*f*
Zollinger–Ellison syndrome, gastrectomy, 502–504, 503*f*, 509–510
Z-plasty
  lip repair, 1447, 1447*f*
  palatoplasty, 1450–1453, 1451*f*, 1452*f*, 1460–1462
  torticollis, release for, 1389–1390, 1393–1395
Zygote intrafallopian transfer (ZIFT), 816